

# 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS | TITLE 24, PART 2

TO VIEW, CLICK ON A TITLE.



### HELPFUL LINKS

Please note: you need to be logged onto the Internet to use the web links.



# 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS | TITLE 24, PART 2, VOLUME 1 OF 2

Based on the 2021 International Building Code®  
California Building Standards Commission



**IMPORTANT NOTICE**

Act now to keep your code up-to-date. The purchase of this code includes a free subscription for all State-issued supplements and errata. To receive these important updates through 2025, you **MUST** register online [www.iccsafe.org/CAL22](http://www.iccsafe.org/CAL22)

# 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS TITLE 24, PART 2, VOLUME 1 OF 2

Based on the 2021 International Building Code®

California Building Standards Commission



**Effective January 1, 2023**

For Errata and Supplement effective dates see the History Note Appendix

2022 California Building Code  
California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Volume 1 of Part 2

First Printing: July 2022

ISBN: 978-1-957212-88-3 (loose-leaf edition)  
ISBN: 978-1-957212-89-0 (PDF download)

COPYRIGHT © 2022  
by  
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.** This 2022 *California Building Code*, Volume 1 contains substantial copyrighted material from the 2021 *International Building Code*®, first printing, which is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc. (“ICC”). Without separate written permission from the copyright owner, no part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying or recording by or in an information storage and/or retrieval system). For information on use rights and permissions, please contact: ICC Publications, 4051 Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, Illinois 60478. Phone: 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233).

Trademarks: “International Code Council,” the “International Code Council” logo, “ICC,” the “ICC” logo, “International Building Code,” “IBC” and other names and trademarks appearing in this publication are registered trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc., and/or its licensors (as applicable), and may not be used without permission.

PRINTED IN THE USA

T027503

## PREFACE

This document is Part 2 of thirteen parts of the official triennial compilation and publication of the adoptions, amendments and repeal of administrative regulations to *California Code of Regulations, Title 24*, also referred to as the *California Building Standards Code*. This part is known as the *California Building Code*.

The *California Building Standards Code* is published in its entirety every three years by order of the California legislature, with supplements published in intervening years. The California legislature delegated authority to various state agencies, boards, commissions and departments to create building regulations to implement the State's statutes. These building regulations, or standards, have the same force of law, and take effect 180 days after their publication unless otherwise stipulated. The *California Building Standards Code* applies to occupancies in the State of California as annotated.

A city, county, or city and county may establish more restrictive building standards reasonably necessary because of local climatic, geological or topographical conditions. Findings of the local condition(s) and the adopted local building standard(s) must generally be filed with the California Building Standards Commission (or other filing if indicated) to become effective, and may not be effective sooner than the effective date of this edition of the *California Building Standards Code*. Local building standards that were adopted and applicable to previous editions of the *California Building Standards Code* do not apply to this edition without appropriate adoption and the required filing.

Should you find publication (e.g., typographical) errors or inconsistencies in this code or wish to offer comments toward improving its format, please address your comments to:

California Building Standards Commission  
2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130  
Sacramento, CA 95833-2936  
  
Phone: (916) 263-0916  
Email: cbsc@dgs.ca.gov  
  
Web page: [www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc)

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The 2022 *California Building Standards Code* (Code) was developed through the outstanding collaborative efforts of the Department of Housing and Community Development, Division of State Architect, Office of the State Fire Marshal, Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development, California Energy Commission, California Department of Public Health, California State Lands Commission, Board of State and Community Corrections and the California Building Standards Commission (Commission).

This collaborative effort included the assistance of the Commission's Code Advisory Committees and many other volunteers who worked tirelessly to assist the Commission in the production of this Code.

*Governor Gavin Newsom*  
*Members of the California Building Standards Commission*  
*Secretary Yolanda Richardson – Chair*  
*Rajesh Patel – Vice-Chair*  
*Erick Mikiten*                   *Elley Klausbruckner*  
*Aaron Stockwell*               *Juvilyn Alegre*  
*Peter Santillan*               *Kent Sasaki*  
*Laura Rambin*  
*Mia Marvelli – Executive Director*  
*Michael L. Nearman – Deputy Executive Director*

For questions on California state agency amendments, please refer to the contact list on page iv.

# CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24

## ***California Agency Information Contact List***

The following state agencies may propose building standards for publication in Title 24. Request notice of such activity with each agency of interest. See Sections 1.2 through 1.14 of the California Building Code (Part 2 of Title 24) for more detailed information on the regulatory jurisdiction of each state agency.

### **Board of State and Community Corrections**

[www.bscc.ca.gov](http://www.bscc.ca.gov).....(916) 445-5073  
 Local Adult and Juvenile  
 Detention Facility Standards

### **California Building Standards Commission**

[www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc) .....(916) 263-0916  
 State Buildings including UC and  
 CSU Buildings, Parking Lot and Walkway Lighting,  
 Green Building Standards for Non-residential Buildings

### **California Energy Commission**

[www.energy.ca.gov](http://www.energy.ca.gov) .....**Energy Hotline** (800) 772-3300  
 Building Efficiency Standards  
 Appliance Efficiency Standards  
 Compliance Manual/Forms

### **California State Lands Commission**

[www.slc.ca.gov](http://www.slc.ca.gov).....(562) 499-6312  
 Marine Oil Terminal Standards

### **California State Library**

[www.library.ca.gov](http://www.library.ca.gov) .....(916) 323-9843

### **Department of Consumer Affairs:**

**Acupuncture Board**  
[www.acupuncture.ca.gov](http://www.acupuncture.ca.gov) .....(916) 515-5200  
 Office Standards

**Board of Pharmacy**  
[www.pharmacy.ca.gov](http://www.pharmacy.ca.gov) .....(916) 518-3100  
 Pharmacy Standards

**Bureau of Barbering and Cosmetology**  
[www.barbercosmo.ca.gov](http://www.barbercosmo.ca.gov) .....(800) 952-5210  
 Barber and Beauty Shop,  
 and College Standards

**Bureau of Household Goods and Services**  
[www.bhgs.dca.ca.gov](http://www.bhgs.dca.ca.gov) .....(916) 999-2041  
 Insulation Testing Standards

**Structural Pest Control Board**  
[www.pestboard.ca.gov](http://www.pestboard.ca.gov) .....(800) 737-8188  
 Structural Standards

**Veterinary Medical Board**  
[www.vmb.ca.gov](http://www.vmb.ca.gov) .....(916) 515-5220  
 Veterinary Hospital Standards

### **Department of Food and Agriculture**

[www.cdfa.ca.gov](http://www.cdfa.ca.gov)  
 Meat & Poultry Packing Plant Standards  
 Rendering & Collection Center Standards.....(916) 900-5004  
 Dairy Standards.....(916) 900-5008

### **Department of Housing and Community Development**

[www.hcd.ca.gov](http://www.hcd.ca.gov) .....(800) 952-8356  
 Residential—Hotels, Motels, Apartments,  
 Single-Family Dwellings; and  
 Permanent Structures in Mobilehome &  
 Special Occupancy Parks  
 (916) 445-3338  
 Factory-Built Housing, Manufactured Housing &  
 Commercial Modular  
 Mobilehome—Permits & Inspections  
 Northern Region—(916) 255-2501  
 Southern Region—(951) 782-4431  
 (800) 952-8356  
 Employee Housing Standards

### **Department of Public Health**

[www.dph.ca.gov](http://www.dph.ca.gov) .....(916) 449-5661  
 Organized Camps Standards  
 Public Swimming Pools Standards

### **Division of the State Architect**

[www.dgs.ca.gov/dsa](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/dsa) .....(916) 445-8100  
**Access Compliance**  
**Fire and Life Safety**  
**Structural Safety**

Public Schools Standards  
 Essential Services Building Standards  
 Community College Standards

### **State Historical Building Safety Board**

Historical Rehabilitation, Preservation,  
 Restoration or Relocation Standards

**Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development**  
**AKA: California Department of Health Care Access and Information (HCAI)**  
[www.hcai.ca.gov](http://www.hcai.ca.gov) .....(916) 440-8300

Hospital Standards  
 Skilled Nursing Facility Standards &  
 Clinic Standards

### **Office of the State Fire Marshal**

[osfm.fire.ca.gov](http://osfm.fire.ca.gov) .....(916) 568-3800  
 Code Development and Analysis  
 Fire Safety Standards

### **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

# **How to Distinguish Between Model Code Language and California Amendments**

*To distinguish between model code language and the incorporated California amendments, including exclusive California standards, California amendments will appear in italics.*

**[BSC]** This is an example of a state agency acronym used to identify an adoption or amendment by the agency. The acronyms will appear at California Amendments and in the Matrix Adoption Tables. Sections 1.2 through 1.14 in Chapter 1, Division 1 of this code, explain the used acronyms, the application of state agency adoptions to building occupancies or building features, the enforcement agency as designated by state law (may be the state adopting agency or local building or fire official), the authority in state law for the state agency to make the adoption and the specific state law being implemented by the agency's adoption. The following acronyms are used in Title 24 to identify the state adopting agency making an adoption.

## **Legend of Acronyms of Adopting State Agencies**

<b>BSC</b>	<i>California Building Standards Commission (see Section 1.2)</i>
<b>BSC-CG</b>	<i>California Building Standards Commission-CALGreen (see Section 1.2.2)</i>
<b>BSCC</b>	<i>Board of State and Community Corrections (see Section 1.3)</i>
<b>SFM</b>	<i>Office of the State Fire Marshal (see Section 1.11)</i>
<b>HCD 1</b>	<i>Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.1)</i>
<b>HCD 2</b>	<i>Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.3)</i>
<b>HCD 1/AC</b>	<i>Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.2)</i>
<b>DSA-AC</b>	<i>Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance (see Section 1.9.1)</i>
<b>DSA-SS</b>	<i>Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (see Section 1.9.2)</i>
<b>DSA-SS/CC</b>	<i>Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (see Section 1.9.2.2)</i>
<b>OSHPD 1</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.1)</i>
<b>OSHPD 1R</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.1)</i>
<b>OSHPD 2</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.2)</i>
<b>OSHPD 3</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.3)</i>
<b>OSHPD 4</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.4)</i>
<b>OSHPD 5</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.5)</i>
<b>DPH</b>	<i>Department of Public Health (see Section 1.7)</i>
<b>AGR</b>	<i>Department of Food and Agriculture (see Section 1.6)</i>
<b>CEC</b>	<i>California Energy Commission (see Section 100 in Part 6, the California Energy Code)</i>
<b>CA</b>	<i>Department of Consumer Affairs (see Section 1.4): Board of Barbering and Cosmetology Board of Examiners in Veterinary Medicine Board of Pharmacy Acupuncture Board Bureau of Household Goods &amp; Services Structural Pest Control Board (SPCB)</i>
<b>SL</b>	<i>State Library (see Section 1.12)</i>
<b>SLC</b>	<i>State Lands Commission (see Section 1.14)</i>
<b>DWR</b>	<i>Department of Water Resources (see Section 1.13 of Chapter 1 of the California Plumbing Code in Part 2 of Title 24)</i>

The state agencies are available to answer questions about their adoptions. Contact information is provided on page iv of this code.

To learn more about the use of this code refer to pages vii and viii. Training materials on the application and use of this code are available at the website of the California Building Standards Commission [www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc).

# California Matrix Adoption Tables

## Format of the California Matrix Adoption Tables

The matrix adoption tables, examples of which follow, are non-regulatory aids intended to show the user which state agencies have adopted and/or amended given sections of the model code. An agency's statutory authority for certain occupancies or building applications determines which chapter or section may be adopted, repealed, amended or added. See Chapter 1, Division I, Sections 1.2 through 1.14 for agency authority, building applications and enforcement responsibilities.

The side headings identify the scope of state agencies' adoption as follows:

### Adopt the entire IBC chapter without state amendments.

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row; this means that particular state agency has adopted the entire model code chapter without any state amendments.

**Example:**

#### CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE-MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

#### CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter			X																			
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below								S	A	M	P	L	E									
Chapter/Section																						

### Adopt the entire IBC chapter as amended, state-amended sections are listed below:

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row, it means that particular state agency has adopted the entire model code chapter; with state amendments.

Each state-amended section that the agency has added to that particular chapter is listed. There will be an "X" in the column, by that particular section, under the agency's acronym, as well as an "X" by each section that the agency has adopted.

**Example:**

#### CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below								S	A	M	P	L	E									
Chapter 1																						
202			X																			

## Adopt only those sections that are listed below:

If there is an “X” under a particular state agency’s acronym on this row, it means that particular state agency is adopting only specific model code or state-amended sections within this chapter. There will be an “X” in the column under the agency’s acronym, as well as an “X” by each section that the agency has adopted.

### Example:

#### CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below				X	X		S	A	M	P	L	E										
Chapter 1																						
202				X	X		S	A	M	P	L	E										
202				X	X			C	O	N	T.											
203				X	X																	
203				X	X																	

## Marginal Markings

Symbols in the margin indicate the status of code changes as follows:

- || This symbol indicates that a change has been made to a California amendment.
- > This symbol indicates deletion of California amendment language.
- | This symbol indicates that a change has been made to International Code Council model language.
- ➔ This symbol indicates deletion of International Code Council model language.

A single asterisk [\*] placed in the margin indicates that text or a table has been relocated within the code. A double asterisk [\*\*] placed in the margin indicates that the text or table immediately following it has been relocated there from elsewhere in the code. The following table indicates such relocations in the 2018 edition of the *International Building Code*.

2021 LOCATION	2018 LOCATION
508.5–508.5.11	419.1–419.9
904.12	904.14
904.13	904.12
904.14	904.13
1010.2	1010.1.9
1010.2.1	1010.1.9.6
1010.2.2	1010.1.9.1
1010.2.3	1010.1.9.2
1010.2.4	1010.1.9.4
1010.2.5	1010.1.9.5
1010.2.6	1010.1.9.6.1
1010.2.7	1010.1.9.12
1010.2.8	1010.1.4.4
1010.2.9	1010.1.10
1010.2.9.3	1010.1.10.1
1010.2.9.4	1010.1.10.2
1010.2.10	1010.1.9.3
1010.2.11	1010.1.9.10
1010.2.12	1010.1.9.9
1010.2.13	1010.1.9.8
1010.2.13.1	1010.1.9.8.1
1010.2.14	1010.1.9.7
1010.2.15	1010.1.9.11
1010.3	1010.1.4
1010.3.1	1010.1.4.1
Table 1010.3.1(1)	Table 1010.1.4.1(1)
Table 1010.3.1(2)	Table 1010.1.4.1(2)
1010.3.1.1	1010.1.4.1.1
1010.3.1.2	1010.1.4.1.2
1010.3.2	1010.1.4.2
1010.3.3	1010.1.4.3
1029.1	1028.4
1029.2	1028.4.2
1029.3	1028.4.2

(continued)

**RELOCATIONS—continued**

<b>2021 LOCATION</b>	<b>2018 LOCATION</b>
1107.3	1109.14
1110.14	1109.12.1
1605.2	605.3.2
1607.14.2.2	1607.13.3
1607.14.4.3	1607.13.5.2.1
2304.12.2.6	2304.12.3
2304.12.2.6.1	2304.12.3.1
2304.12.2.7	2304.12.4
2304.12.2.8	2304.12.5
3301.2.1	1511.2

**Coordination of the International Codes**

The coordination of technical provisions is one of the strengths of the ICC family of model codes. The codes can be used as a complete set of complementary documents, which will provide users with full integration and coordination of technical provisions. Individual codes can also be used in subsets or as stand-alone documents. To make sure that each individual code is as complete as possible, some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in some of the model codes. This allows users maximum flexibility in their application of the I-Codes.

**Maintenance**

The *International Building Code* is kept up to date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The ICC Code Development Process reflects principles of openness, transparency, balance, due process and consensus, the principles embodied in OMB Circular A-119, which governs the federal government's use of private-sector standards. The ICC process is open to anyone; there is no cost to participate, and people can participate without travel cost through the ICC's cloud-based app, cdp-Access®. A broad cross section of interests are represented in the ICC Code Development Process. The codes, which are updated regularly, include safeguards that allow for emergency action when required for health and safety reasons.

In order to ensure that organizations with a direct and material interest in the codes have a voice in the process, the ICC has developed partnerships with key industry segments that support the ICC's important public safety mission. Some code development committee members were nominated by the following industry partners and approved by the ICC Board:

- American Institute of Architects (AIA)
- National Association of Home Builders (NAHB)
- National Association of State Fire Marshals (NASFM)

The code development committees evaluate and make recommendations regarding proposed changes to the codes. Their recommendations are then subject to public comment and council-wide votes. The ICC's governmental members—public safety officials who have no financial or business interest in the outcome—cast the final votes on proposed changes.

The contents of this work are subject to change through the code development cycles and by any governmental entity that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the International Code Council.

While the I-Code development procedure is thorough and comprehensive, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of the codes disclaim any liability resulting from the publication or use of the I-Codes, or from compliance or noncompliance with their provisions. The ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code.

## **Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)**

As mentioned in the preceding material, in each code development cycle, code change proposals to this code are considered at the Committee Action Hearings by 11 different code development committees.

Code change proposals to sections of the code that are preceded by a bracketed letter designation, such as [A], will be considered by a committee other than the building code committee listed for the chapter or appendix on the preceding page. For example, proposed code changes to Section [F] 307.1.1 will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the Committee Action Hearing in the 2021 (Group A) code development cycle.

The bracketed letter designations for committees responsible for portions of this code are as follows:

- [A] = Administrative Code Development Committee
- [BE] = IBC—Egress Code Development Committee
- [BF] = IBC—Fire Safety Code Development Committee
- [BG] = IBC—General Code Development Committee
- [BS] = IBC—Structural Code Development Committee
- [E] = International Commercial Energy Conservation Code Development Committee or International Residential Energy Conservation Code Development Committee
- [EB] = International Existing Building Code Development Committee
- [F] = International Fire Code Development Committee
- [FG] = International Fuel Gas Code Development Committee
- [M] = International Mechanical Code Development Committee
- [P] = International Plumbing Code Development Committee

For the development of the 2024 edition of the I-Codes, there will be two groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years, as shown in the following Code Development Hearings Table.

Code change proposals submitted for code sections that have a letter designation in front of them will be heard by the respective committee responsible for such code sections. Because different committees hold Committee Action Hearings in different years, proposals for the IBC will be heard by committees in both the 2021 (Group A) and the 2022 (Group B) code development cycles.

For instance, every section of Chapter 16 is the responsibility of the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee. As noted in the preceding table, that committee will hold its Committee Action Hearings in 2022 to consider code change proposals for the chapters for which it is responsible. Therefore any proposals received for Chapter 16 of this code will be assigned to the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee and will be considered in 2022, during the Group B code change cycle.

It is very important that anyone submitting code change proposals understands which code development committee is responsible for the section of the code that is the subject of the code change proposal. For further information on the Code Development Committee responsibilities, please visit the ICC website at [www.iccsafe.org/current-code-development-cycle](http://www.iccsafe.org/current-code-development-cycle).

## CODE DEVELOPMENT HEARINGS

<b>Group A Codes (Heard in 2021, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 11, 2021)</b>	<b>Group B Codes (Heard in 2022, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 10, 2022)</b>
<b>International Building Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Egress (Chapters 10, 11, Appendix E)</li> <li>– Fire Safety (Chapters 7, 8, 9, 14, 26)</li> <li>– General (Chapters 2–6, 12, 27–33, Appendices A, B, C, D, K, N)</li> </ul>	Administrative Provisions (Chapter 1 of all codes except IECC, IRC and IgCC; IBC Appendix O; the appendices titled “Board of Appeals” for all codes except IECC, IRC, IgCC, ICCPC and IZC; administrative updates to currently referenced standards; and designated definitions)
<b>International Fire Code</b>	<b>International Building Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Structural (Chapters 15–25, Appendices F, G, H, I, J, L, M)</li> </ul>
<b>International Fuel Gas Code</b>	<b>International Existing Building Code</b>
<b>International Mechanical Code</b>	<b>International Energy Conservation Code—Commercial</b>
<b>International Plumbing Code</b>	<b>International Energy Conservation Code—Residential</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– IECC—Residential</li> <li>– IRC—Energy (Chapter 11)</li> </ul>
<b>International Property Maintenance Code</b>	<b>International Green Construction Code (Chapter 1)</b>
<b>International Private Sewage Disposal Code</b>	<b>International Residential Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– IRC—Building (Chapters 1–10, Appendices AE, AF, AH, AJ, AK, AL, AM, AO, AQ, AR, AS, AT, AU, AV, AW)</li> </ul>
<b>International Residential Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– IRC—Mechanical (Chapters 12–23)</li> <li>– IRC—Plumbing (Chapters 25–33, Appendices AG, AI, AN, AP)</li> </ul>	
<b>International Swimming Pool and Spa Code</b>	
<b>International Wildland-Urban Interface Code</b>	
<b>International Zoning Code</b>	

Note: Proposed changes to the ICCPC will be heard by the code development committee noted in brackets [ ] in the text of the ICCPC.

## Effective Use of the International Building Code

The IBC is a model code that provides minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare of the occupants of new and existing buildings and structures. The IBC is fully compatible with the ICC family of codes, including: the IECC, IEBC, IFC, IFGC, IgCC, IMC, IPC, IPSDC, IPMC, IRC, ISPSC, IWUIC, IZC and ICCPC.

The IBC addresses structural strength, means of egress, sanitation, adequate lighting and ventilation, accessibility, energy conservation and life safety in regard to new and existing buildings, facilities and systems. The codes are promulgated on a 3-year cycle to allow for new construction methods and technologies to be incorporated into the codes. Alternative materials, designs and methods not specifically addressed in the code can be approved by the building official where the proposed materials, designs or methods comply with the intent of the provisions of the code (see Section 104.11).

The IBC applies to all occupancies, including one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses that are not within the scope of the IRC. The IRC is referenced for coverage of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as defined in the exception to Section 101.2 and the definition for "Townhouse" in Chapter 2. The IRC can also be used for the construction of live/work units (as defined in Section 508.5) and small bed and breakfast-style hotels where there are five or fewer guest rooms and the hotel is owner occupied. The IBC applies to all types of buildings and structures unless exempted. Work exempted from permits is listed in Section 105.2.

# ARRANGEMENT AND FORMAT OF THE 2021 IBC

Before applying the requirements of the IBC, it is beneficial to understand its arrangement and format. The IBC, like other codes published by ICC, is arranged and organized to follow sequential steps that generally occur during a plan review or inspection.

The following table shows how the IBC is divided. The three tables following that show IBC requirements that are correlated with other I-Codes. Lastly, the ensuing chapter-by-chapter synopsis details the scope and intent of the provisions of the IBC.

**CHAPTER TOPICS**

Chapters	Subjects
1–2	Administration and definitions
3	Use and occupancy classifications
4, 31	Special requirements for specific occupancies or elements
5–6	Height and area limitations based on type of construction
7–9	Fire resistance and protection requirements
10	Requirements for evacuation
11	Specific requirements to allow use and access to a building for persons with disabilities
12–13, 27–30	Building systems, such as lighting, HVAC, plumbing fixtures, elevators
14–26	Structural components—performance and stability
32	Encroachment outside of property lines
33	Safeguards during construction
35	Referenced standards
Appendices A–O	Appendices

## IFC Correlated Topics

The IBC requirements for hazardous materials, fire-resistance-rated construction, interior finish, fire protection systems, means of egress, emergency and standby power, and temporary structures are directly correlated with the requirements of the IFC. The following table shows chapters/sections of the IBC that are correlated with the IFC:

**IBC/IFC CORRELATED TOPICS**

IBC Chapter/Section	IFC Chapter/Section	Subject
Sections 307, 414, 415	Chapters 50–67	Hazardous materials and Group H requirements
Chapter 7	Chapter 7	Fire-resistance-rated construction (fire and smoke protection features in the IFC)
Chapter 8	Chapter 8	Interior finish, decorative materials and furnishings
Chapter 9	Chapter 9	Fire protection systems
Chapter 10	Chapter 10	Means of egress
Chapter 27	Section 604	Standby and emergency power
Section 3103	Chapter 31	Temporary structures

## IMC Correlated Topics

The IBC requirements for smoke control systems, and smoke and fire dampers are directly correlated to the requirements of the IMC. IBC Chapter 28 is a reference to the IMC and the IFGC for chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues, and all aspects of mechanical systems. The following table shows chapters/sections of the IBC that are correlated with the IMC:

IBC/IMC CORRELATED TOPICS		
IBC Chapter/Section	IMC Chapter/Section	Subject
Section 717	Section 607	Smoke and fire dampers
Section 909	Section 513	Smoke control

## IPC Correlated Topics

The IBC requirements for plumbing fixtures and toilet rooms are directly correlated to the requirements of the IPC. The following table shows chapters/sections of the IBC that are correlated with the IPC:

IBC/IPC CORRELATED TOPICS		
IBC Chapter/Section	IPC Chapter/Section	Subject
Chapter 29	Chapters 3 & 4	Plumbing fixtures and facilities

## Chapter 1 Scope and Administration

Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts, Part 1—Scope and Application (Sections 101-102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections 103-116). Section 101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced (see Section 102.4).

The building code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the building official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

## Chapter 2 Definitions

All terms that are defined in the code are listed alphabetically in Chapter 2. While a defined term may be used in one chapter or another, the meaning provided in Chapter 2 is applicable throughout the code.

Where understanding a term's definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding a particular code provision, the term is shown in italics. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding tense, gender and plurality of defined terms as well as guidance regarding terms not defined in this code is provided.

## Chapter 3 Occupancy Classification and Use

Chapter 3 provides for the classification of buildings, structures and parts thereof based on the purpose or purposes for which they are used. Section 302 identifies the groups into which all buildings, structures and parts thereof must be classified. Sections 303 through 312 identify the occupancy characteristics of each group classification. In some sections, specific group classifications having requirements in common are collectively organized such that one term applies to all. For example, Groups A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4 and A-5 are individual groups for assembly-type buildings. The general term "Group A," however, includes each of these individual groups. Other groups include Business (B), Educational (E), Factory (F-1, F-2), High Hazard (H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4, H-5), Institutional (I-1, I-2, I-3, I-4), Mercantile (M), Residential (R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4), Storage (S-1, S-2) and Utility (U). In some occupancies, the smaller number means a higher hazard, but that is not always the case.

Defining the use of the buildings is very important as it sets the tone for the remaining chapters of the code. Occupancy works with the height, area and construction type requirements in Chapters 5 and 6, as well as the special provisions in Chapter 4, to determine "equivalent risk," or providing a reasonable level of protection or life safety for building occupants. The determination of equivalent risk involves three interdependent considerations: (1) the level of fire hazard associated with the specific occupancy of the facility; (2) the reduction of fire hazard by limiting the floor area and the height of the building based on the fuel load (combustible contents and burnable building components); and (3) the level of overall fire resistance provided by the type of construction used for the building. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type.

Occupancy classification also plays a key part in organizing and prescribing the appropriate protection measures. As such, threshold requirements for fire protection and means of egress systems are based on occupancy classification (see Chapters 9 and 10). Other sections of the code also contain requirements respective to the classification of building groups. For example, Section 706 specifies requirements for fire wall fire-resistance ratings that are tied to the occupancy classification of a building and Section 803.11 contains interior finish requirements that are dependent upon the occupancy classification. The use of the space, rather than the occupancy of the building, is utilized for determining occupant loading (Section 1004) and live loading (Section 1607).

Over the useful life of a building, the activities in the building will evolve and change. Where the provisions of the code address uses differently, moving from one activity to another or from one level of activity to another is, by definition, a change of occupancy. The new occupancy must be in compliance with the applicable provisions.

## Chapter 4 Special Detailed Requirements Based on Occupancy and Use

Chapter 4 contains the requirements for protecting special uses and occupancies, which are supplemental to the remainder of the code. Chapter 4 contains provisions that may alter requirements found elsewhere in the code; however, the general requirements of the code still apply unless modified within the chapter. For example, the height and area limitations established in Chapter 5 apply to all special occupancies unless Chapter 4 contains height and area limitations. In this case, the limitations in Chapter 4 supersede those in other sections. An example of this is the height and area limitations for open parking garages given in Section 406.5.4, which supersede the limitations given in Sections 504 and 506.

In some instances, it may not be necessary to apply the provisions of Chapter 4. For example, if a covered mall building complies with the provisions of the code for Group M, Section 402 does not apply; however, other sections that address a use, process or operation must be applied to that specific occupancy, such as stages and platforms, special amusement buildings and hazardous materials (Sections 410, 411 and 414).

The chapter includes requirements for buildings and conditions that apply to one or more groups, such as high-rise buildings, underground buildings or atriums. Special uses may also imply specific occupancies and operations, such as for Group H, hazardous materials, application of flammable finishes, drying rooms, organic coatings and combustible storage or hydrogen fuel gas rooms, all of which are coordinated with the IFC. Unique consideration is taken for special use areas, such as covered mall buildings, motor-vehicle-related occupancies, special amusement buildings and aircraft-related occupancies. Special facilities within other occupancies are considered, such as stages and platforms, motion picture projection rooms, children's play structures and storm shelters. Finally, in order that the overall package of protection features can be easily understood, unique considerations for specific occupancies are addressed: Groups I-1, I-2, I-3, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4; and ambulatory care facilities and live/work units.

## Chapter 5 General Building Heights and Areas

Chapter 5 contains the provisions that regulate the minimum type of construction for area limits and height limits based on the occupancy of the building. Height and area increases (including allowances for basements, mezzanines and equipment platforms) are permitted based on open frontage for fire department access, separation and the type of sprinkler protection provided (Sections 503-506, 510). These thresholds are reduced for buildings over three stories in height in accordance with Sections 506.2.1 and 506.2.2. Provisions include the protection and/or separation of incidental uses (Table 509.1), accessory occupancies (Section 508.2) and mixed uses in the same building (Sections 506.2.2, 508.3, 508.4 and 510). Unlimited area buildings are permitted in certain occupancies when they meet special provisions (Section 507). Live/work units are provided for in Section 508.5.

Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2 are the keystones in setting thresholds for building size based on the building's use and the materials with which it is constructed. If one then looks at Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2, the relationship among group classification, allowable heights and areas and types of construction becomes apparent. Respective to each group classification, the greater the fire-resistance rating of structural elements, as represented by the type of construction, the greater the floor area and height allowances. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. Starting in the 2015 edition, the table that once contained both height and area has been separated and these three new tables address the topics individually. In addition, the tables list criteria for buildings with and without automatic sprinkler systems.

## Chapter 6 Types of Construction

The interdependence of these fire safety considerations can be seen by first looking at Tables 601 and 705.5, which show the fire-resistance ratings of the principal structural elements comprising a building in relation to the five classifications for types of construction. Type I construction is the classification that generally requires the highest fire-resistance ratings for structural elements, whereas Type V construction, which is designated as a combustible type of construction, generally requires the least amount of fire-resistance-rated structural elements. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. Section 603 includes a list of combustible elements that can be part of a non-combustible building (Types I and II construction).

## Chapter 7 Fire and Smoke Protection Features

The provisions of Chapter 7 present the fundamental concepts of fire performance that all buildings are expected to achieve in some form. This chapter identifies the acceptable materials, techniques and methods by which proposed construction can be designed and evaluated against to determine a building's ability to limit the impact of fire. The fire-resistance-rated construction requirements within Chapter 7 provide passive resistance to the spread and effects of fire. Types of separations addressed include fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, horizontal assemblies, smoke barriers and smoke partitions. A fire produces heat that can weaken structural components and smoke products that cause property damage and place occupants at risk. The requirements of Chapter 7 work in unison with height and area requirements (Chapter 5), active fire detection and suppression systems (Chapter 9) and occupant egress requirements (Chapter 10) to contain a fire should it occur while helping ensure occupants are able to safely exit.

## Chapter 7A Materials and Construction Methods for Exterior Wildfire Exposure

*The purpose of this chapter is to establish minimum standards for the protection of life and property by increasing the ability of a building located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone within State Responsibility Areas or any Wildland-Urban Interface (WUI) Fire Area to resist the intrusion of flames or burning embers projected by a vegetation fire and contributes to a systematic reduction in conflagration losses.*

## Chapter 8 Interior Finishes

This chapter contains the performance requirements for controlling fire growth within buildings by restricting interior finish and decorative materials. Past fire experience has shown that interior fin-

ish and decorative materials are key elements in the development and spread of fire. The provisions of Chapter 8 require materials used as interior finishes and decorations to meet certain flame-spread index or flame-propagation criteria based on the relative fire hazard associated with the occupancy. As smoke is also a hazard associated with fire, this chapter contains limits on the smoke development characteristics of interior finishes. The performance of the material is evaluated based on test standards.

## **Chapter 9 Fire Protection and Life Safety Systems**

Chapter 9 prescribes the minimum requirements for active systems of fire protection equipment to perform the following functions: detect a fire; alert the occupants or fire department of a fire emergency; and control smoke and control or extinguish the fire. Generally, the requirements are based on the occupancy, the height and the area of the building, because these are the factors that most affect fire-fighting capabilities and the relative hazard of a specific building or portion thereof. This chapter parallels and is substantially duplicated in Chapter 9 of the IFC; however, the IFC Chapter 9 also contains periodic testing criteria that are not contained in the IBC. In addition, the special fire protection system requirements based on use and occupancy found in IBC Chapter 4 are duplicated in IFC Chapter 9 as a user convenience.

## **Chapter 10 Means of Egress**

The general criteria set forth in Chapter 10 regulating the design of the means of egress are established as the primary method for protection of people in buildings by allowing timely relocation or evacuation of building occupants. Both prescriptive and performance language is utilized in this chapter to provide for a basic approach in the determination of a safe exiting system for all occupancies. It addresses all portions of the egress system (i.e., exit access, exits and exit discharge) and includes design requirements as well as provisions regulating individual components. The requirements detail the size, arrangement, number and protection of means of egress components. Functional and operational characteristics also are specified for the components that will permit their safe use without special knowledge or effort. The means of egress protection requirements work in coordination with other sections of the code, such as protection of vertical openings (see Chapter 7), interior finish (see Chapter 8), fire suppression and detection systems (see Chapter 9) and numerous others, all having an impact on life safety. Chapter 10 of the IBC is duplicated in Chapter 10 of the IFC; however, the IFC contains one additional section on the means of egress system in existing buildings.

## ***Chapter 11A - Housing Accessibility and/or Chapter 11B - Accessibility to Public Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Public Housing***

*Verify compliance with accessibility provisions. In order to be considered as accessible, buildings and their individual elements must comply with the applicable scoping and technical provisions of Chapter 11A and/or Chapter 11B.*

## **Chapter 12 Interior Environment**

Chapter 12 provides minimum standards for the interior environment of a building. The standards address the minimum sizes of spaces, minimum temperature levels, and minimum light and ventilation levels. The collection of requirements addresses limiting sound transmission through walls, ventilation of attic spaces and under floor spaces (crawl spaces). Finally, the chapter provides minimum standards for toilet and bathroom construction, including privacy shielding and standards for walls, partitions and floors to resist water intrusion and damage.

## **Chapter 13 Energy Efficiency**

*Refer to California Energy Code, Title 24, Part 6.*

## Chapter 14 Exterior Walls

This chapter addresses requirements for exterior walls of buildings. Minimum standards for wall covering materials, installation of wall coverings and the ability of the wall to provide weather protection are provided. This chapter also requires exterior walls that are close to lot lines, or that are bearing walls for certain types of construction, to comply with the minimum fire-resistance ratings specified in Chapters 6 and 7. The installation of each type of wall covering, be it wood, masonry, vinyl, metal composite material or an exterior insulation and finish system, is critical to its long-term performance in protecting the interior of the building from the elements and the spread of fire. Limitations on the use of combustible materials on exterior building elements such as balconies, eaves, decks and architectural trim are also addressed in this chapter.

## Chapter 15 Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures

Chapter 15 provides standards for both roof assemblies and structures that sit on top of the roofs of buildings. The criteria address roof construction and covering, including the weather-protective barrier at the roof and, in most circumstances, a fire-resistant barrier. The chapter is prescriptive in nature and is based on decades of experience with various traditional materials, but it also addresses newer products such as photovoltaic shingles. These prescriptive rules are very important for satisfying performance of one type of roof covering or another. Section 1511 addresses rooftop structures, including penthouses, tanks, towers and spires. Rooftop penthouses larger than prescribed in this chapter must be treated as a story under Chapter 5.

## Chapter 16 Structural Design

Chapter 16 prescribes minimum structural loading requirements for use in the design and construction of buildings and structural components. It includes minimum design loads, assignment of risk categories and permitted design methodologies. Standards are provided for minimum design loads (live, dead, snow, wind, rain, flood, ice and earthquake as well as the required load combinations). The application of these loads and adherence to the serviceability criteria will enhance the protection of life and property. The chapter references and relies on many nationally recognized design standards. A key standard is the American Society of Civil Engineers' *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures* (ASCE 7). Structural design must address the conditions of the site and location. Therefore, maps are provided of rainfall, seismic, snow and wind criteria in different regions.

## Chapter 17 Special Inspections and Tests

Chapter 17 provides a variety of procedures and criteria for testing materials and assemblies, labeling materials and assemblies and special inspection of structural assemblies. This chapter expands on the inspections of Chapter 1 by requiring special inspection where indicated and, in some cases, structural observation. It also spells out additional responsibilities for the owner, contractor, design professionals and special inspectors. Proper assembly of structural components, proper quality of materials used and proper application of materials are essential to ensuring that a building, once constructed, complies with the structural and fire-resistance minimums of the code and the approved design. To determine this compliance often requires continuous or frequent inspection and testing. Chapter 17 establishes standards for special inspection, testing and reporting of the work to the building official.

## Chapter 18 Soils and Foundations

Chapter 18 provides criteria for geotechnical and structural considerations in the selection, design and installation of foundation systems to support the loads from the structure above. This chapter includes requirements for soils investigation and site preparation for receiving a foundation, including the allowed load-bearing values for soils and for protecting the foundation from water intrusion. Section 1808 addresses the basic requirements for all foundation types. Later sections address foundation requirements that are specific to shallow foundations and deep foundations. Due care must be exercised in the planning and design of foundation systems based on obtaining sufficient soils information, the use of accepted engineering procedures, experience and good technical judgment.

## **Chapter 19 Concrete**

This chapter provides minimum accepted practices for the design and construction of buildings and structural components using concrete—both plain and reinforced. Chapter 19 relies primarily on the reference to American Concrete Institute (ACI) 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete*. This chapter also includes references to additional standards. Structural concrete must be designed and constructed to comply with this code and all listed standards. There are specific sections of the chapter addressing concrete slabs, anchorage to concrete and shotcrete. Because of the variable properties of material and numerous design and construction options available in the uses of concrete, due care and control throughout the construction process is necessary.

## **Chapter 20 Aluminum**

Chapter 20 contains standards for the use of aluminum in building construction. Only the structural applications of aluminum are addressed. This chapter does not address the use of aluminum in specialty products such as storefront or window framing or architectural hardware. The use of aluminum in heating, ventilating or air-conditioning systems is addressed in the IMC. This chapter references national standards from the Aluminum Association for use of aluminum in building construction, AA ASM 35, *Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction*, and AA ADM, *Aluminum Design Manual*. By utilizing the standards set forth, a proper application of this material can be obtained.

## **Chapter 21 Masonry**

This chapter provides comprehensive and practical requirements for masonry construction. The provisions of Chapter 21 require minimum accepted practices and the use of standards for the design and construction of masonry structures. The provisions address: material specifications and test methods; types of wall construction; criteria for engineered and empirical designs; and required details of construction, including the execution of construction. Masonry design methodologies including allowable stress design, strength design and empirical design are covered by provisions of this chapter. Also addressed are masonry fireplaces and chimneys, masonry heaters and glass unit masonry. Fire-resistant construction using masonry is also required to comply with Chapter 7. Masonry foundations are also subject to the requirements of Chapter 18.

## **Chapter 22 Steel**

Chapter 22 provides the requirements necessary for the design and construction of structural steel (including composite construction), cold-formed steel, steel joists, steel cable structures and steel storage racks. This chapter specifies appropriate design and construction standards for these types of structures. It also provides a road map of the applicable technical requirements for steel structures. Because steel is a noncombustible building material, it is commonly associated with Types I and II construction; however, it is permitted to be used in all types of construction. Chapter 22 requires that the design and use of steel materials be in accordance with the specifications and standards of the American Institute of Steel Construction, the American Iron and Steel Institute, the Steel Joist Institute and the American Society of Civil Engineers.

## **Chapter 23 Wood**

This chapter provides minimum requirements for the design of buildings and structures that use wood and wood-based products. The chapter is organized around three design methodologies: allowable stress design (ASD), load and resistance factor design (LRFD) and conventional light-frame construction. Included in this chapter are references to design and manufacturing standards for various wood and wood-based products; general construction requirements; design criteria for lateral force-resisting systems and specific requirements for the application of the three design methods. In general, only Type III, IV or V buildings may be constructed of wood.

## **Chapter 24 Glass and Glazing**

This chapter establishes regulations for glass and glazing that, when installed in buildings and structures, are subjected to wind, snow and dead loads. Engineering and design requirements are included in the chapter. Additional structural requirements are found in Chapter 16. Another concern of this chapter is glass and glazing used in areas where it is likely to be impacted by the occupants. Section 2406 identifies hazardous locations where glazing installed must either be safety glazing or blocked to prevent human impact. Safety glazing must meet stringent standards and be appropriately marked or identified. Additional requirements are provided for glass and glazing in guards, handrails, elevator hoistways and elevator cars, as well as in athletic facilities.

## **Chapter 25 Gypsum Board, Gypsum Panel Products and Plaster**

Chapter 25 contains the provisions and referenced standards that regulate the design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products and plaster. It also addresses reinforced gypsum concrete. These represent the most common interior and exterior finish materials in the building industry. This chapter primarily addresses quality-control-related issues with regard to material specifications and installation requirements. Most products are manufactured under the control of industry standards. The building official or inspector primarily needs to verify that the appropriate product is used and properly installed for the intended use and location. While often simply used as wall and ceiling coverings, proper design and application are necessary to provide weather resistance and required fire protection for both structural and nonstructural building components.

## **Chapter 26 Plastic**

The use of plastics in building construction and components is addressed in Chapter 26. This chapter provides standards addressing foam plastic insulation, foam plastics used as interior finish and trim, and other plastic veneers used on the inside or outside of a building. Plastic siding is regulated by Chapter 14. Sections 2606 through 2611 address the use of light-transmitting plastics in various configurations such as walls, roof panels, skylights, signs and as glazing. Requirements for the use of fiber-reinforced polymers, fiberglass-reinforced polymers and reflective plastic core insulation are also contained in this chapter. Additionally, requirements specific to the use of wood-plastic composites and plastic lumber are contained in this chapter. Some plastics exhibit rapid flame spread and heavy smoke density characteristics when exposed to fire. Exposure to the heat generated by a fire can cause some plastics to deform, which can affect their performance. The requirements and limitations of this chapter are necessary to control the use of plastic and foam plastic products such that they do not compromise the safety of building occupants.

## **Chapter 27 Electrical**

Since electrical systems and components are an integral part of almost all structures, it is necessary for the code to address the installation of such systems. For this purpose, Chapter 27 references the National Electrical Code (NEC). In addition, Section 2702 addresses emergency and standby power requirements. Such systems must comply with the IFC and referenced standards. This section also provides references to the various code sections requiring emergency and standby power, such as high-rise buildings and buildings containing hazardous materials.

## **Chapter 28 Mechanical Systems**

Nearly all buildings will include mechanical systems. This chapter provides references to the IMC and the IFGC for the design and installation of mechanical systems. In addition, Chapter 21 of this code is referenced for masonry chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues.

## **Chapter 29 Plumbing Systems**

Chapter 29 regulates the minimum number of plumbing fixtures that must be provided for every type of building. This chapter also regulates the location of the required fixtures in various types of buildings. This section requires separate facilities for males and females except for certain types of small occupancies. The regulations in this chapter come directly from Chapters 3 and 4 of the IPC.

## **Chapter 30 Elevators and Conveying Systems**

Chapter 30 provides standards for the installation of elevators into buildings. Referenced standards provide the requirements for the elevator system and mechanisms. Detailed standards are provided in the chapter for hoistway enclosures, machine rooms and requirements for sizing of elevators. Beginning in the 2015 edition of this code, the elevator lobby requirements were moved from Chapter 7 to Chapter 30 to pull all the elevator-related construction requirements together. New provisions were added in the 2009 edition for fire service access elevators required in high-rise buildings and for the optional choice of occupant evacuation elevators (see Section 403).

## **Chapter 31 Special Construction**

Chapter 31 contains a collection of regulations for a variety of unique structures and architectural features. Pedestrian walkways and tunnels connecting two buildings are addressed in Section 3104. Membrane and air-supported structures are addressed by Section 3102. Safeguards for swimming pool safety are addressed by way of reference to the ISPSC in Section 3109. Standards for temporary structures, including permit requirements, are provided in Section 3103. Structures as varied as awnings, marquees, signs, telecommunication and broadcast towers and automatic vehicular gates are also addressed (see Sections 3105 through 3108 and 3110).

### ***Chapter 31A Systems for Window Cleaning or Exterior Building Maintenance***

### ***Chapter 31B Public Pools***

### ***Chapter 31C Radiation***

### ***Chapter 31D Food Establishments***

### ***Chapter 31E Reserved***

### ***Chapter 31F Marine Oil Terminals***

## **Chapter 32 Encroachments into the Public Right-of-way**

Buildings and structures from time to time are designed to extend over a property line and into the public right-of-way. Local regulations outside of the building code usually set limits to such encroachments, and such regulations take precedence over the provisions of this chapter. Standards are provided for encroachments below grade for structural support, vaults and areaways. Encroachments

above grade are divided into below 8 feet, 8 feet to 15 feet, and above 15 feet, because of headroom and vehicular height issues. This includes steps, columns, awnings, canopies, marquees, signs, windows and balconies. Similar architectural features above grade are also addressed. Pedestrian walkways must also comply with Chapter 31.

## **Chapter 33 Safeguards During Construction**

Chapter 33 provides safety requirements during construction and demolition of buildings and structures. These requirements are intended to protect the public from injury and adjoining property from damage. In addition the chapter provides for the progressive installation and operation of exit stairways and standpipe systems during construction.

## **Chapter 34 Reserved**

During the 2015 code change cycle the membership voted to delete Chapter 34, Existing Structures, from this code and reference the IEBC. The provisions that were in Chapter 34 appear in the IEBC. Former Sections 3402 through 3411 appear as IEBC Chapter 4 and Section 3412 as Chapter 14.

## **Chapter 35 Referenced Standards**

The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 35 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code, including the appendices. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard (see Section 102.4). Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the building official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 35 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based upon the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

## **Appendices**

Appendices are provided in the IBC to offer optional or supplemental criteria to the provisions in the main chapters of the code. Appendices provide additional information for administration of the Department of Building Safety as well as standards not typically administered by all building departments. Appendices have the same force and effect as the first 35 chapters of the IBC only when explicitly adopted by the jurisdiction.

## **Appendix A Employee Qualifications**

Effective administration and enforcement of the family of International Codes depends on the training and expertise of the personnel employed by the jurisdiction and their knowledge of the codes. Section 103 of the code establishes the Department of Building Safety and calls for the appointment of a building official and deputies such as plans examiners and inspectors. Appendix A provides standards for experience, training and certification for the building official and the other staff mentioned in Chapter 1.

## **Appendix B Board of Appeals**

Section 113 requires the establishment of a board of appeals to hear appeals regarding determinations made by the building official. Appendix B provides qualification standards for members of the board as well as operational procedures of such board.

## **Appendix C Group U—Agricultural Buildings**

Appendix C provides a more liberal set of standards for the construction of agricultural buildings, rather than strictly following the utility building provision, reflective of their specific usage and limited occupant load. The provisions of this appendix, when adopted, allow reasonable heights and areas commensurate with the risk of agricultural buildings.

## **Appendix D Fire Districts**

Fire districts have been a tool used to limit conflagration hazards in areas of a city with intense and concentrated development. More frequently used under the model codes that preceded the IBC, this appendix is provided to allow jurisdictions to continue the designation and use of fire districts. Fire district standards restrict certain occupancies within the district, as well as setting higher minimum construction standards.

## **Appendix E Reserved**

## **Appendix F Rodentproofing**

The provisions of this appendix are minimum mechanical methods to prevent the entry of rodents into a building. These standards, when used in conjunction with cleanliness and maintenance programs, can significantly reduce the potential of rodents invading a building.

## **Appendix G Flood-resistant Construction**

Appendix G is intended to fulfill the floodplain management and administrative requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) that are not included in the code. Communities that adopt the IBC and Appendix G will meet the minimum requirements of NFIP as set forth in Title 44 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

## **Appendix H Signs**

Appendix H gathers in one place the various code standards that regulate the construction and protection of outdoor signs. Whenever possible, this appendix provides standards in performance language, thus allowing the widest possible application.

## **Appendix I Patio Covers**

Appendix I provides standards applicable to the construction and use of patio covers. It is limited in application to patio covers accessory to dwelling units. Covers of patios and other outdoor areas associated with restaurants, mercantile buildings, offices, nursing homes or other nondwelling occupancies would be subject to standards in the main code and not this appendix.

## **Appendix J Grading**

Appendix J provides standards for the grading of properties. This appendix also provides standards for administration and enforcement of a grading program including permit and inspection requirements. Appendix J was originally developed in the 1960s and used for many years in jurisdictions throughout the western United States. It is intended to provide consistent and uniform code requirements anywhere grading is considered an issue.

## **Appendix K Group R-3 and Group R-3.1 Occupancies Protected by the Facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan**

*Appendix K provides provisions applicable to new construction, changes of use and to substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage as defined in Section 1612 of Group R-3 and R-3.1 located in areas protected by the facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan.*

## **Appendix L Earthquake Recording Instrumentation**

The purpose of this appendix is to foster the collection of ground motion data, particularly from strong-motion earthquakes. When this ground motion data is synthesized, it may be useful in developing future improvements to the earthquake provisions of the IBC.

## **Appendix M Tsunami-Generated Flood Hazards**

Addressing a tsunami risk for all types of construction in a tsunami hazard zone through building code requirements would typically not be cost effective, making tsunami-resistant construction impractical at an individual building level. However, this appendix does allow the adoption and enforcement of requirements for tsunami hazard zones that regulate the presence of high-risk or high-hazard structures.

## **Appendix N Replicable Buildings**

Many jurisdictions have recognized the need for some form of expedited review process for replicable buildings. By codifying the approach contained in the ICC G1-2010 *Guideline for Replicable Buildings*, this appendix provides jurisdictions with a means of incorporating replicable building requirements into their building code adoption process. The intent is to streamline the plan review process at the local level by removing redundant reviews.

## **Appendix O Performance-based Application**

Appendix O provides an optional design, review and approval framework for use by the building official. It simply extracts the relevant administrative provisions from the ICCPC into a more concise, usable appendix format for a jurisdiction confronted with such a need. Typical uses would include cases of alternate methods in Chapter 1 and select areas of the code that require a rational analysis, such as Section 909.

## **Appendix P Emergency Housing**

*This appendix shall be applicable to emergency housing and emergency housing facilities. Emergency sleeping cabins, emergency transportable housing units, membrane structures and tents constructed and assembled in accordance with this appendix shall be occupied only during declaration of state of emergency, local emergency or shelter crises. Buildings and structures constructed in accordance with the California Building Code, used as emergency housing, shall be permitted to be permanently occupied.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION .. 1-1</b>	109	Fees .....	1-32
<b>DIVISION I CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION .... 1-5</b>	110	Inspections .....	1-33
Section	111	Certificate of Occupancy .....	1-34
1.1 General.....	112	Service Utilities .....	1-34
1.2 Building Standards Commission .....	113	Means of Appeals.....	1-35
1.3 Board of State and Community Corrections ..	114	Violations.....	1-35
1.4 Department of Consumer Affairs .....	115	Stop Work Order .....	1-35
1.5 Reserved.....	116	Unsafe Structures and Equipment .....	1-35
1.6 Department of Food and Agriculture.....			
1.7 California Department of Public Health .....			
1.8 Department of Housing and Community Development .....			
1.8.2 Authority and Abbreviations.....	1-10		
1.8.3 Local Enforcing Agency.....	1-11		
1.8.4 Permits, Fees, Applications and Inspections ..	1-12		
1.8.5 Right of Entry for Enforcement .....	1-13		
1.8.6 Local Modification by Ordinance or Regulation .....	1-13		
1.8.7 Alternate Materials, Designs, Tests and Methods of Construction .....	1-13		
1.8.8 Appeals Board .....	1-14		
1.8.9 Unsafe Buildings or Structures .....	1-14		
1.8.10 Other Building Regulations .....	1-15		
1.9 Division of the State Architect .....	1-15		
1.10 Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development .....	1-17		
1.11 Office of the State Fire Marshal.....	1-19		
1.12 State Librarian .....	1-24		
1.13 Reserved.....	1-24		
1.14 California State Lands Commission.....	1-24		
<b>DIVISION II SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION... 1-25</b>			
PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION .....	1-25		
101 Scope and General Requirements.....	1-25		
102 Applicability.....	1-26		
PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .....	1-26		
103 Code Compliance Agency .....	1-26		
104 Duties and Powers of Building Official .....	1-27		
105 Permits .....	1-28		
106 Floor and Roof Design Loads.....	1-30		
107 Construction Documents .....	1-31		
108 Temporary Structures and Uses .....	1-32		
<b>CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>		
Section			
201 General.....	2-11		
202 Definitions .....	2-11		
<b>CHAPTER 3 OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>		
Section			
301 Scope .....	3-3		
302 Occupancy Classification and Use Designation .....	3-3		
303 Assembly Group A.....	3-3		
304 Business Group B.....	3-4		
305 Educational Group E .....	3-5		
306 Factory Group F.....	3-5		
307 High-hazard Group H.....	3-6		
308 Institutional Group I.....	3-10		
309 Mercantile Group M.....	3-12		
310 Residential Group R.....	3-12		
311 Storage Group S.....	3-14		
312 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .....	3-15		
313 Laboratories Group L [SFM] .....	3-15		
314 Organized Camps Group C [SFM] .....	3-15		
<b>CHAPTER 4 SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>		
Section			
401 Scope .....	4-5		
402 Covered Mall and Open Mall Buildings .....	4-5		
403 High-rise Buildings and Group I-2 Occupancies <i>Having Occupied Floors Located More Than 75 Feet above the Lowest Level of Fire Department Vehicle Access .....</i>	4-9		
404 Atriums.....	4-12		
405 Underground Buildings .....	4-13		

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

406	Motor-vehicle-related Occupancies .....	4-14
407	Group I-2 and Group I-2.1 .....	4-19
408	Group I-3 .....	4-24
409	Motion Picture Projection Rooms .....	4-30
410	Stages, Platforms and Technical Production Areas .....	4-31
411	Special Amusement Areas .....	4-33
412	Aircraft-related Occupancies .....	4-33
413	Combustible Storage .....	4-37
414	Hazardous Materials .....	4-37
415	Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 .....	4-41
416	Spray Application of Flammable Finishes .....	4-50
417	Drying Rooms .....	4-51
418	Organic Coatings .....	4-51
419	Artificial Decorative Vegetation .....	4-51
420	Groups R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 .....	4-51
421	Hydrogen Fuel Gas Rooms .....	4-53
422	Ambulatory Care Facilities .....	4-53
423	Storm Shelters .....	4-54
424	Play Structures .....	4-55
425	Hyperbaric Facilities .....	4-55
426	Combustible Dusts, Grain Processing and Storage .....	4-55
427	Medical Gas Systems .....	4-56
435	<i>Special Provisions for Licensed 24-hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1, R-4 [SFM]</i> .....	4-57
436	<i>Group I-4 [SFM]</i> .....	4-60
437	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-60
438	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-61
439	<i>Road Tunnels, Bridges and Other Limited-access Highways [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
440	<i>Horse Racing Stables [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
441	<i>Pet Kennels and Pet Boarding Facilities [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
442	<i>Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
443	<i>Fixed Guideway Transit and Passenger Rail Systems [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
444	<i>Explosives [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
445	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-62
446	<i>Winery Caves [SFM]</i> .....	4-62
447	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-63
448	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-63
449	<i>Public Libraries [SL AND SFM]</i> .....	4-63
450	<i>Group C [SFM]</i> .....	4-63
451	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-65
452	<i>School Facilities for Kindergarten through 12th Grade and Group E Child Care</i> .....	4-65
453	<i>Group L [SFM]</i> .....	4-67
454	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-69
455	<i>Large Family Day-care Homes [SFM]</i> .....	4-69

## CHAPTER 5 GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS ..... 5-1

### Section

501	General .....	5-3
502	Building Address .....	5-3
503	General Building Height and Area Limitations .....	5-3
504	Building Height and Number of Stories .....	5-5
505	Mezzanines and Equipment Platforms .....	5-5
506	Building Area .....	5-9
507	Unlimited Area Buildings .....	5-10
508	Mixed Use and Occupancy .....	5-16
509	Incidental Uses .....	5-18
510	Special Provisions .....	5-20

## CHAPTER 6 TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION ..... 6-1

### Section

601	General .....	6-3
602	Construction Classification .....	6-3
603	Combustible Material in Types I and II Construction .....	6-7

## CHAPTER 7 FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES ..... 7-1

### Section

701	General .....	7-3
702	Multiple-use Fire Assemblies .....	7-3
703	Fire-resistance Ratings and Fire Tests .....	7-3
704	Fire-resistance Rating of Structural Members .....	7-4
705	Exterior Walls .....	7-6
706	Fire Walls .....	7-11
707	Fire Barriers .....	7-14
708	Fire Partitions .....	7-16
709	Smoke Barriers .....	7-17
710	Smoke Partitions .....	7-18
711	Floor and Roof Assemblies .....	7-19
712	Vertical Openings .....	7-19
713	Shaft Enclosures .....	7-21
714	Penetrations .....	7-22
715	Joints and Voids .....	7-25

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

716	Opening Protectives .....	7-26	908	Emergency Alarm Systems .....	9-42	
717	Ducts and Air Transfer Openings.....	7-34	909	Smoke Control Systems.....	9-43	
718	Concealed Spaces.....	7-40	910	Smoke and Heat Removal .....	9-51	
719	Fire-resistance Requirements for Plaster .....	7-41	911	Fire Command Center .....	9-53	
720	Thermal- and Sound-insulating Materials .....	7-42	912	Fire Department Connections .....	9-54	
721	Prescriptive Fire Resistance .....	7-43	913	Fire Pumps .....	9-55	
722	Calculated Fire Resistance .....	7-44	914	Emergency Responder Safety Features .....	9-55	
<b>CHAPTER 7A [SFM] MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE .....</b>			7A-1	915	Carbon Monoxide Detection .....	9-56
<i>Section</i>			916	Gas Detection Systems.....	9-58	
701A	<i>Scope, Purpose and Application.</i> .....	7A-1	917	Mass Notification Systems.....	9-59	
702A	<i>Definitions</i> .....	7A-2	918	Emergency Responder Communication Coverage .....	9-59	
703A	<i>Standards of Quality.....</i>	7A-3	<b>CHAPTER 10 MEANS OF EGRESS.....</b>			
704A	<i>Ignition-resistant Construction .....</i>	7A-4	<b>10-1</b>			
705A	<i>Roofing.....</i>	7A-4	<i>Section</i>			
706A	<i>Vents.....</i>	7A-5	1001	Administration .....	10-5	
707A	<i>Exterior Covering.....</i>	7A-5	1002	Maintenance and Plans .....	10-5	
708A	<i>Exterior Windows, Skylights and Doors.....</i>	7A-8	1003	General Means of Egress .....	10-5	
709A	<i>Decking.....</i>	7A-9	1004	Occupant Load .....	10-7	
710A	<i>Accessory Buildings and Miscellaneous Structures.....</i>	7A-9	1005	Means of Egress Sizing.....	10-8	
<b>CHAPTER 8 INTERIOR FINISHES.....</b>			1006	Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways .....	10-9	
<i>Section</i>			1007	Exit and Exit Access Doorway Configuration .....	10-13	
801	<i>Scope .....</i>	8-3	1008	Means of Egress Illumination.....	10-13	
802	<i>General .....</i>	8-3	1009	Accessible Means of Egress .....	10-15	
803	<i>Wall and Ceiling Finishes .....</i>	8-3	1010	Doors, Gates and Turnstiles .....	10-18	
804	<i>Interior Floor Finish .....</i>	8-6	1011	Stairways.....	10-28	
805	<i>Combustible Materials in Types I and II Construction.....</i>	8-7	1012	Ramps .....	10-32	
806	<i>Decorative Materials and Trim.....</i>	8-7	1013	Exit Signs .....	10-33	
807	<i>Insulation .....</i>	8-8	1014	Handrails.....	10-35	
808	<i>Acoustical Ceiling Systems .....</i>	8-8	1015	Guards.....	10-36	
<b>CHAPTER 9 FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS.....</b>			1016	Exit Access .....	10-38	
<i>Section</i>			1017	Exit Access Travel Distance.....	10-39	
901	<i>General .....</i>	9-7	1018	Aisles.....	10-40	
902	<i>Fire Pump and Riser Room Size .....</i>	9-8	1019	Exit Access Stairways and Ramps .....	10-40	
903	<i>Automatic Sprinkler Systems.....</i>	9-8	1020	Corridors .....	10-41	
904	<i>Alternative Automatic Fire-extinguishing Systems .....</i>	9-17	1021	Egress Balconies.....	10-43	
905	<i>Standpipe Systems .....</i>	9-20	1022	Exits .....	10-43	
906	<i>Portable Fire Extinguishers .....</i>	9-23	1023	Interior Exit Stairways and Ramps .....	10-43	
907	<i>Fire Alarm and Detection Systems.....</i>	9-25	1024	Exit Passageways .....	10-45	

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1029	Egress Courts.....	10-50
1030	Assembly.....	10-50
1031	Emergency Escape and Rescue.....	10-58
<b>CHAPTER 11 RESERVED .....</b>		<b>11-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11A HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY....</b>		<b>11A-1</b>
<b>DIVISION I – APPLICATION, GENERAL PROVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS .....</b>		
<b>Section</b>		
1101A	Application .....	11A-3
1102A	Building Accessibility.....	11A-3
1103A	Design and Construction .....	11A-4
1104A	Covered Multifamily Dwellings .....	11A-4
1105A	Garages, Carports and Parking Facilities... 1106A Site and Building Characteristics.....	11A-5
1107A	Definitions .....	11A-5
<b>DIVISION II – EXTERIOR FACILITIES .....</b>		
1108A	General Requirements for Accessible Parking and Exterior Routes of Travel .....	11A-6
1109A	Parking Facilities.....	11A-6
1110A	Exterior Accessible Routes.....	11A-8
1111A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes .....	11A-9
1112A	Curb Ramps on Accessible Routes.....	11A-9
1113A	Walks and Sidewalks on Accessible Routes .....	11A-9
1114A	Exterior Ramps and Landings on Accessible Routes .....	11A-10
1115A	Exterior Stairways .....	11A-11
1116A	Hazards on Accessible Routes .....	11A-12
<b>DIVISION III – BUILDING FEATURES.....</b>		
1117A	General Requirements for Accessible Entrances, Exits, Interior Routes of Travel and Facility Accessibility .....	11A-14
1118A	Egress and Areas of Refuge .....	11A-14
1119A	Interior Accessible Routes .....	11A-14
1120A	Reserved.....	11A-15
1121A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes .....	11A-15
1122A	Interior Ramps and Landings on Accessible Routes .....	11A-15
1123A	Interior Stairways.....	11A-16
1124A	Elevators and Platform (Wheelchair) Lifts.....	11A-17
1125A	Hazards on Accessible Routes .....	11A-20
1126A	Doors, Gates and Windows .....	11A-20
1127A	Common Use Facilities .....	11A-22

<b>DIVISION IV – DWELLING</b>		
<b>UNIT FEATURES .....</b>		
<b>11A-31</b>		
1128A	Covered Dwelling Units.....	11A-31
1129A	Reserved.....	11A-31
1130A	Accessible Route within Covered Multifamily Dwelling Units .....	11A-31
1131A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes.....	11A-31
1132A	Doors .....	11A-31
1133A	Kitchens .....	11A-33
1134A	Bathing and Toilet Facilities .....	11A-34
1135A	Laundry Rooms .....	11A-37
1136A	Electrical Receptacle, Switch and Control Heights.....	11A-37
<b>DIVISION V – FEATURES COMMON TO EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR OF BUILDINGS .....</b>		
<b>11A-38</b>		
1137A	Other Features and Facilities .....	11A-38
1138A	Space Allowances and Reach Ranges .....	11A-38
1139A	Accessible Drinking Fountains .....	11A-40
1140A	Accessible Telephones .....	11A-41
1141A	Accessible Swimming Pools.....	11A-41
1142A	Electrical Receptacle, Switch and Control Heights .....	11A-42
1143A	Signage.....	11A-42
1144A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1145A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1146A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1147A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1148A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1149A	Reserved.....	11A-44
<b>DIVISION VI – SITE IMPRACTICALITY TESTS .....</b>		
<b>11A-45</b>		
1150A	Site Impracticality Tests.....	11A-45
<b>DIVISION VII – FIGURES .....</b>		
<b>11A-47</b>		
<b>CHAPTER 11B ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING .....</b>		
<b>11B-1</b>		
<b>DIVISION 1 – APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION .....</b>		
<b>11B-3</b>		
<b>Section</b>		
11B-101	Purpose.....	11B-3
11B-102	Dimensions for Adults and Children .....	11B-3
11B-103	Equivalent Facilitation.....	11B-3
11B-104	Conventions .....	11B-3

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

11B-105	<i>Referenced Standards</i> .....	11B-3
11B-106	<i>Definitions</i> .....	11B-3
11B-107	<i>Special Conditions Appeals Action</i> .....	11B-5
11B-108	<i>Maintenance of Accessible Features</i> .....	11B-5
 <b>DIVISION 2 – SCOPING REQUIREMENTS..... 11B-6</b>		
11B-201	<i>Application</i> .....	11B-6
11B-202	<i>Existing Buildings and Facilities</i> .....	11B-6
11B-203	<i>General Exceptions</i> .....	11B-8
11B-204	<i>Protruding Objects</i> .....	11B-9
11B-205	<i>Operable Parts</i> .....	11B-9
11B-206	<i>Accessible Routes</i> .....	11B-9
11B-207	<i>Accessible Means of Egress</i> .....	11B-14
11B-208	<i>Parking Spaces</i> .....	11B-14
11B-209	<i>Passenger Drop-off and Loading Zones and Bus Stops</i> .....	11B-15
11B-210	<i>Stairways</i> .....	11B-16
11B-211	<i>Drinking Fountains and Bottle-Filling Stations</i> .....	11B-16
11B-212	<i>Kitchens, Kitchenettes, Wet Bars and Sinks</i> .....	11B-16
11B-213	<i>Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities</i> .....	11B-16
11B-214	<i>Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers</i> .....	11B-17
11B-215	<i>Fire Alarm Systems and Carbon Monoxide Alarm Systems</i> .....	11B-17
11B-216	<i>Signs</i> .....	11B-18
11B-217	<i>Telephones</i> .....	11B-19
11B-218	<i>Transportation Facilities</i> .....	11B-20
11B-219	<i>Assistive Listening Systems</i> .....	11B-21
11B-220	<i>Automatic Teller Machines, Fare Machines and Point-of-sale Devices</i> ... 11B-21	
11B-221	<i>Assembly Areas</i> .....	11B-21
11B-222	<i>Dressing, Fitting and Locker Rooms</i> .....	11B-23
11B-223	<i>Medical Care and Long-term Care Facilities</i> .....	11B-23
11B-224	<i>Transient Lodging Guest Rooms, Housing at a Place of Education and Social Service Center Establishments</i> .....	11B-24
11B-225	<i>Storage</i> .....	11B-25
11B-226	<i>Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces</i> .....	11B-26
11B-227	<i>Sales and Service</i> .....	11B-26
11B-228	<i>Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, Mail Boxes, Fuel Dispensers and Electric Vehicle Charging Stations</i> .....	11B-27
11B-229	<i>Windows</i> .....	11B-28
11B-230	<i>Two-way Communication Systems</i> .....	11B-28
11B-231	<i>Judicial Facilities</i> .....	11B-28
11B-232	<i>Detention Facilities and Correctional Facilities</i> .....	11B-28
11B-233	<i>Public Housing Facilities</i> .....	11B-29
11B-234	<i>Amusement Rides</i> .....	11B-32
11B-235	<i>Recreational Boating Facilities</i> .....	11B-32
11B-236	<i>Exercise Machines and Equipment</i> .....	11B-33
11B-237	<i>Fishing Piers and Platforms</i> .....	11B-33
11B-238	<i>Golf Facilities</i> .....	11B-33
11B-239	<i>Miniature Golf Facilities</i> .....	11B-33
11B-240	<i>Play Areas</i> .....	11B-33
11B-241	<i>Saunas and Steam Rooms</i> .....	11B-34
11B-242	<i>Swimming Pools, Wading Pools and Spas</i> .....	11B-34
11B-243	<i>Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions</i> .....	11B-34
11B-244	<i>Religious Facilities</i> .....	11B-35
11B-245	<i>Public Accommodations Located in Private Residences</i> .....	11B-35
11B-246	<i>Outdoor Developed Areas</i> .....	11B-35
11B-247	<i>Detectable Warnings and Detectable Directional Texture</i> .....	11B-35
11B-248	<i>Common Use Areas and Employee Work Areas</i> .....	11B-35
11B-249	<i>Adult Changing Facilities</i> .....	11B-36
11B-250	<i>Circulation Paths</i> .....	11B-36
 <b>DIVISION 3 – BUILDING BLOCKS ..... 11B-37</b>		
11B-301	<i>General</i> .....	11B-37
11B-302	<i>Floor or Ground Surfaces</i> .....	11B-37
11B-303	<i>Changes in Level</i> .....	11B-37
11B-304	<i>Turning Space</i> .....	11B-37
11B-305	<i>Clear Floor or Ground Space</i> .....	11B-38
11B-306	<i>Knee and Toe Clearance</i> .....	11B-39
11B-307	<i>Protruding Objects</i> .....	11B-40
11B-308	<i>Reach ranges</i> .....	11B-41
11B-309	<i>Operable Parts</i> .....	11B-42
 <b>DIVISION 4 – ACCESSIBLE ROUTES ..... 11B-43</b>		
11B-401	<i>General</i> .....	11B-43
11B-402	<i>Accessible Routes</i> .....	11B-43
11B-403	<i>Walking Surfaces</i> .....	11B-43
11B-404	<i>Doors, Doorways and Gates</i> .....	11B-44
11B-405	<i>Ramps</i> .....	11B-51
11B-406	<i>Curb Ramps, Blended Transitions and Islands</i> .....	11B-52
11B-407	<i>Elevators</i> .....	11B-54
11B-408	<i>Limited-use/Limited-application Elevators</i> .....	11B-59
11B-409	<i>Private Residence Elevators</i> .....	11B-60
11B-410	<i>Platform Lifts</i> .....	11B-61
11B-411	<i>Destination-oriented Elevators</i> .....	11B-61

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>DIVISION 5 – GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>11B-67</b>		
11B-501 General .....	11B-67	11B-807 Holding Cells and Housing Cells..... 11B-105	
11B-502 Parking Spaces .....	11B-67	11B-808 Courtrooms..... 11B-106	
11B-503 Passenger Drop-off and Loading Zones .....	11B-70	11B-809 Residential Dwelling Units..... 11B-106	
11B-504 Stairways.....	11B-71	11B-810 Transportation Facilities .....	11B-113
11B-505 Handrails .....	11B-71	11B-811 Storage .....	11B-114
<b>DIVISION 6 – PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES.....</b>	<b>11B-74</b>	11B-812 Electric Vehicle Charging Stations .....	11B-114
11B-601 General .....	11B-74	11B-813 Adult Changing Facilities..... 11B-117	
11B-602 Drinking Fountains and Bottle-Filling Stations.....	11B-74		
11B-603 Toilet and Bathing Rooms.....	11B-74		
11B-604 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments.....	11B-75		
11B-605 Urinals .....	11B-80		
11B-606 Lavatories and Sinks.....	11B-80		
11B-607 Bathtubs .....	11B-81		
11B-608 Shower Compartments .....	11B-83		
11B-609 Grab Bars .....	11B-86		
11B-610 Seats .....	11B-86		
11B-611 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers .....	11B-87		
11B-612 Saunas and Steam Rooms .....	11B-88		
<b>DIVISION 7 – COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS AND FEATURES .....</b>	<b>11B-89</b>		
11B-701 General .....	11B-89		
11B-702 Fire Alarm Systems.....	11B-89		
11B-703 Signs .....	11B-89		
11B-704 Telephones .....	11B-94		
11B-705 Detectable Warnings and Detectable Directional Texture.....	11B-96		
11B-706 Assistive Listening Systems.....	11B-98		
11B-707 Automatic Teller Machines, Fare Machines and Point-of-sale Devices.....	11B-98		
11B-708 Two-way Communication Systems .....	11B-100		
<b>DIVISION 8 – SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES AND ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>11B-101</b>		
11B-801 General .....	11B-101		
11B-802 Wheelchair Spaces, Companion Seats, and Designated Aisle Seats and Semi-ambulant Seats .....	11B-101		
11B-803 Dressing, Fitting and Locker Rooms .....	11B-102		
11B-804 Kitchens, Kitchenettes and Wet Bars .....	11B-102		
11B-805 Medical Care and Long-term Care Facilities.....	11B-104		
11B-806 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms.....	11B-105		
<b>DIVISION 9 – BUILT-IN ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>11B-118</b>		
11B-901 General.....	11B-118		
11B-902 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces....	11B-118		
11B-903 Benches.....	11B-118		
11B-904 Check-out Aisles and Sales and Service Counters .....	11B-118		
<b>DIVISION 10 – RECREATION FACILITIES .....</b>	<b>11B-120</b>		
11B-1001 General.....	11B-120		
11B-1002 Amusement Rides .....	11B-120		
11B-1003 Recreational Boating Facilities .....	11B-121		
11B-1004 Exercise Machines and Equipment .....	11B-123		
11B-1005 Fishing Piers and Platforms.....	11B-124		
11B-1006 Golf Facilities.....	11B-124		
11B-1007 Miniature Golf Facilities .....	11B-125		
11B-1008 Play Areas .....	11B-125		
11B-1009 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools and Spas.....	11B-127		
11B-1010 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions .....	11B-131		
<b>CHAPTER 12 INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT .....</b>	<b>12-1</b>		
Section			
1201 General.....	12-3		
1202 Ventilation .....	12-3		
1203 Temperature Control .....	12-6		
1204 Lighting .....	12-7		
1205 Yards or Courts .....	12-7		
1206 Sound Transmission.....	12-8		
1207 Enhanced Classroom Acoustics.....	12-8		
1208 Interior Space Dimensions.....	12-8		
1209 Access to Unoccupied Spaces .....	12-9		
1210 Toilet and Bathroom Requirements .....	12-9		
1211 [HCD 1 & HCD 2] Garage Door Springs.....	12-10		
1212 [HCD 1] Pollutant Control .....	12-11		
1213 Reserved.....	12-11		
1214 Reserved.....	12-11		
1215 Reserved.....	12-11		
1216 Reserved.....	12-11		

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1217	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
1218	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
1219	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
1220	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
1221	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
1222	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
1223	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-11
> 1224	[OSHPD 1] Hospitals.....	12-11
1225	[OSHPD 2] Skilled Nursing and Intermediate-care Facilities.....	12-63
1226	[OSHPD 3] Clinics.....	12-72
1227	[OSHPD 4] Correctional Treatment Centers.....	12-83
1228	[OSHPD 5] Acute Psychiatric Hospitals....	12-88
1229	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-95
1230	[BSCC] Minimum Standards for Juvenile Facilities.....	12-95
1231	[BSCC] Local Detention .....	12-99
1232	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-105
1233	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-105
1234	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-105
1235	[DPH] Sanitary Control of Shellfish (Plants and Operations).....	12-105
1236	[DPH] Laboratory Animal Quarters .....	12-106
1237	[DPH] Wild Animal Quarantine Facilities .....	12-106
1238	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-106
1239	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-106
1240	[AGR] Meat and Poultry Processing Plants.....	12-106
1241	[AGR] Collection Centers and Facilities... .	12-108
1242	[AGR] Renderers .....	12-108
1243	[AGR] Horsemeat and Pet Food Establishments .....	12-108
1244	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-109
1245	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-109
1246	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-109
1247	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-109
1248	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-109
1249	<i>Reserved</i> .....	12-109
1250	[CA] Pharmacies .....	12-109
1251	[CA] Veterinary Facilities .....	12-110
1252	[CA] Barber Colleges and Shops.....	12-110
1253	[CA] Schools of Cosmetology, Cosmetological Establishments and Satellite Classrooms... .	12-110
1254	[CA] Acupuncture Offices .....	12-111
<b>CHAPTER 13 ENERGY EFFICIENCY .....</b>		<b>13-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 14 EXTERIOR WALLS .....</b>		<b>14-1</b>
Section		
1401	General .....	14-3
1402	Performance Requirements.....	14-3
1403	Materials .....	14-4
1404	Installation of Wall Coverings .....	14-5
1405	Combustible Materials on the Exterior Side of Exterior Walls.....	14-11
1406	Metal Composite Materials (MCM).....	14-12
1407	Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) .....	14-13
1408	High-pressure Decorative Exterior-grade Compact Laminates (HPL).....	14-13
1409	Plastic Composite Decking.....	14-14
1410	[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Additional Requirements for Anchored and Adhered Veneer.....	14-14
<b>CHAPTER 15 ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES.....</b>		<b>15-1</b>
Section		
1501	General .....	15-3
1502	Roof Drainage.....	15-3
1503	Weather Protection .....	15-3
1504	Performance Requirements.....	15-4
1505	Fire Classification.....	15-5
1506	Materials .....	15-7
1507	Requirements for Roof Coverings .....	15-7
1508	Roof Insulation .....	15-18
1509	Roof Coatings .....	15-19
1510	Radiant Barriers Installed above Deck .....	15-19
1511	Rooftop Structures .....	15-19
1512	Reroofing .....	15-21
1513	[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Seismic Anchorage of Slate Shingle, Clay and Concrete Tile Roof Coverings.....	15-22
<b>INDEX.....</b>		<b>INDEX-1</b>
<b>HISTORY NOTE TO VOLUME 1 .....</b>		<b>HIST-1</b>
<b>VOLUME 2</b>		
<b>CHAPTER 16 STRUCTURAL DESIGN .....</b>		<b>16-1</b>
Section		
1601	General .....	16-3
1602	Notations.....	16-3

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1603 Construction Documents .....	16-4	1706 Design Strengths of Materials .....	17-19
1604 General Design Requirements .....	16-5	1707 Alternative Test Procedure .....	17-19
1605 Load Combinations .....	16-8	1708 In-situ Load Tests .....	17-19
1606 Dead Loads .....	16-9	1709 Preconstruction Load Tests .....	17-19
1607 Live Loads .....	16-9		
1608 Snow Loads .....	16-18		
1609 Wind Loads .....	16-18		
1610 Soil Loads and Hydrostatic Pressure .....	16-27		
1611 Rain Loads .....	16-28		
1612 Flood Loads .....	16-34		
1613 Earthquake Loads .....	16-35		
1614 Atmospheric Ice Loads .....	16-37		
1615 Tsunami Loads .....	16-37		
1616 Structural Integrity .....	16-48		
<i>1617 Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC]</i> .....	<i>16-49</i>		
<b>CHAPTER 16A STRUCTURAL DESIGN .....</b> <b>16A-1</b>			
<i>Section</i>			
1601A General .....	16A-3	1801 General .....	18-3
1602A Notations .....	16A-3	1802 Design Basis .....	18-3
1603A Construction Documents .....	16A-3	1803 Geotechnical Investigations .....	18-3
1604A General Design Requirements .....	16A-5	1804 Excavation, Grading and Fill .....	18-7
1605A Load Combinations .....	16A-9	1805 Dampproofing and Waterproofing .....	18-8
1606A Dead Loads .....	16A-10	1806 Presumptive Load-bearing Values of Soils .....	18-9
1607A Live Loads .....	16A-10	1807 Foundation Walls, Retaining Walls and Embedded Posts and Poles .....	18-10
1608A Snow Loads .....	16A-19	1808 Foundations .....	18-16
1609A Wind Loads .....	16A-22	1809 Shallow Foundations .....	18-19
1610A Soil Loads and Hydrostatic Pressure .....	16A-29	1810 Deep Foundations .....	18-21
1611A Rain Loads .....	16A-30	1811 Prestressed Rock and Soil Foundation Anchors [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] .....	18-33
1612A Flood Loads .....	16A-31	1812 Earth Retaining Shoring [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] .....	18-33
1613A Earthquake Loads .....	16A-37	1813 Vibro Stone Columns for Ground Improvement [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] .....	18-37
1614A Atmospheric Ice Loads .....	16A-37		
1615A Tsunami Loads .....	16A-38		
1616A Structural Integrity .....	16A-38		
1617A Modifications to ASCE 7 .....	16A-40		
<b>CHAPTER 17 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS .....</b> <b>17-1</b>			
<i>Section</i>			
1701 General .....	17-3	1801A General .....	18A-3
1702 New Materials .....	17-3	1802A Design Basis .....	18A-3
1703 Approvals .....	17-3	1803A Geotechnical Investigations .....	18A-3
1704 Special Inspections and Tests, Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observation .....	17-4	1804A Excavation, Grading and Fill .....	18A-6
1705 Required Special Inspections and Tests .....	17-6	1805A Dampproofing and Waterproofing .....	18A-7
		1806A Presumptive Load-bearing Values of Soils .....	18A-9

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1807A	<i>Foundation Walls, Retaining Walls and Embedded Posts and Poles</i> .....	18A-9
1808A	<i>Foundations</i> .....	18A-11
1809A	<i>Shallow Foundations</i> .....	18A-14
1810A	<i>Deep Foundations</i> .....	18A-15
1811A	<i>Prestressed Rock and Soil Foundation Anchors</i> .....	18A-26
1812A	<i>Earth Retaining Shoring</i> .....	18A-26
1813A	<i>Vibro Stone Columns for Ground Improvement</i> .....	18A-29
<b>CHAPTER 19 CONCRETE .....</b>		<b>19-1</b>
Section		
1901	<i>General</i> .....	19-3
1902	<i>Coordination of Terminology</i> .....	19-5
1903	<i>Specifications for Tests and Materials</i> .....	19-5
1904	<i>Durability Requirements</i> .....	19-6
1905	<i>Modifications to ACI 318</i> .....	19-6
1906	<i>Footings for Light-frame Construction</i> .....	19-9
1907	<i>Minimum Slab Provisions</i> .....	19-9
1908	<i>Shotcrete</i> .....	19-9
1909	<i>Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC]</i> .....	19-9
1910	<i>Additional Requirements for Skilled Nursing Facilities, Intermediate Care Facilities, Acute Psychiatric and Non-GAC Buildings [OSHPD IR, 2B &amp; 5]</i> .....	19-13
1911	<i>Existing Concrete Structures [OSHPD IR, 2 &amp; 5]</i> .....	19-14
<b>CHAPTER 19A CONCRETE .....</b>		<b>19A-1</b>
Section		
1901A	<i>General</i> .....	19A-3
1902A	<i>Coordination of Terminology</i> .....	19A-4
1903A	<i>Specifications for Tests and Materials</i> .....	19A-4
1904A	<i>Durability Requirements</i> .....	19A-5
1905A	<i>Modifications to ACI 318</i> .....	19A-5
1906A	<i>Footings for Light-frame Construction</i> .....	19A-8
1907A	<i>Minimum Slab Provisions</i> .....	19A-8
1908A	<i>Shotcrete</i> .....	19A-8
1909A	<i>Reserved</i> .....	19A-8
1910A	<i>Concrete, Reinforcement and Anchor Testing</i> .....	19A-8
1911A	<i>Existing Concrete Structures</i> .....	19A-10
<b>CHAPTER 20 ALUMINUM.....</b>		<b>20-1</b>
Section		
2001	<i>General</i> .....	20-3
2002	<i>Materials</i> .....	20-3
2003	<i>Testing and Inspection</i> .....	20-3
<b>CHAPTER 21 MASONRY .....</b>		<b>21-1</b>
Section		
2101	<i>General</i> .....	21-3
2102	<i>Notations</i> .....	21-3
2103	<i>Masonry Construction Materials</i> .....	21-4
2104	<i>Construction</i> .....	21-5
2105	<i>Quality Assurance</i> .....	21-6
2106	<i>Seismic Design</i> .....	21-7
2107	<i>Allowable Stress Design</i> .....	21-8
2108	<i>Strength Design of Masonry</i> .....	21-9
2109	<i>Empirical Design of Adobe Masonry</i> .....	21-9
2110	<i>Glass Unit Masonry</i> .....	21-11
2111	<i>Masonry Fireplaces</i> .....	21-12
2112	<i>Masonry Heaters</i> .....	21-14
2113	<i>Masonry Chimneys</i> .....	21-14
2114	<i>Dry-stack Masonry</i> .....	21-19
2115	<i>Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC]</i> .....	21-19
<b>CHAPTER 21A MASONRY .....</b>		<b>21A-1</b>
Section		
2101A	<i>General</i> .....	21A-3
2102A	<i>Notations</i> .....	21A-3
2103A	<i>Masonry Construction Materials</i> .....	21A-3
2104A	<i>Construction</i> .....	21A-4
2105A	<i>Quality Assurance</i> .....	21A-7
2106A	<i>Seismic Design</i> .....	21A-8
2107A	<i>Allowable Stress Design</i> .....	21A-9
2108A	<i>Strength Design of Masonry</i> .....	21A-10
2109A	<i>Empirical Design of Adobe Masonry</i> .....	21A-10
2110A	<i>Glass Unit Masonry</i> .....	21A-10
2111A	<i>Masonry Fireplaces</i> .....	21A-10
2112A	<i>Masonry Heaters</i> .....	21A-13
2113A	<i>Masonry Chimneys</i> .....	21A-13
2114A	<i>Dry-stack Masonry</i> .....	21A-17

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 22 STEEL .....</b>	<b>22-1</b>
Section	
2201 General .....	22-3
2202 Identification of Steel for Structural Purposes ..	22-3
2203 Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes .....	22-3
2204 Connections.....	22-3
2205 Structural Steel .....	22-4
2206 Composite Structural Steel and Concrete Structures .....	22-6
2207 Steel Joists.....	22-6
2208 Steel Cable Structures .....	22-7
2209 Steel Storage Racks.....	22-7
2210 Cold-formed Steel.....	22-7
2211 Cold-formed Steel Light-frame Construction ..	22-8
2212 Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC] .....	22-9
2213 Testing and Field Verification [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] .....	22-10
<b>CHAPTER 22A STEEL.....</b>	<b>22A-1</b>
Section	
2201A General.....	22A-3
2202A Identification of Steel for Structural Purposes .....	22A-3
2203A Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes .....	22A-3
2204A Connections .....	22A-3
2205A Structural Steel.....	22A-4
2206A Composite Structural Steel and Concrete Structures .....	22A-6
2207A Steel Joists .....	22A-6
2208A Steel Cable Structures .....	22A-7
2209A Steel Storage Racks .....	22A-8
2210A Cold-formed Steel.....	22A-8
2211A Cold-formed Steel Light-frame Construction.....	22A-8
2212A [DSA-SS] Light Modular Steel Moment Frames for Public Elementary and Secondary Schools, and Community Colleges.....	22A-9
2213A Testing and Field Verification .....	22A-10
<b>CHAPTER 23 WOOD .....</b>	<b>23-1</b>
Section	
2301 General .....	23-3
2302 Design Requirements .....	23-4
2303 Minimum Standards and Quality .....	23-4
2304 General Construction Requirements .....	23-13
2305 General Design Requirements for Lateral Force-resisting Systems .....	23-27
2306 Allowable Stress Design.....	23-28
2307 Load and Resistance Factor Design .....	23-35
2308 Conventional Light-frame Construction.....	23-35
2309 Wood Frame Construction Manual.....	23-62
<b>CHAPTER 24 GLASS AND GLAZING .....</b>	<b>24-1</b>
Section	
2401 General .....	24-3
2402 Glazing Replacement .....	24-3
2403 General Requirements for Glass .....	24-3
2404 Wind, Snow, Seismic and Dead Loads on Glass .....	24-4
2405 Sloped Glazing and Skylights.....	24-6
2406 Safety Glazing .....	24-7
2407 Glass in Handrails and Guards .....	24-9
2408 Glazing in Athletic Facilities .....	24-10
2409 Glass in Walkways, Elevator Hoistways and Elevator Cars .....	24-10
2410 [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Structural Sealant Glazing (SSG).....	24-10
2411 [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Thermal Barriers in Aluminum Mullion Systems.....	24-12
<b>CHAPTER 25 GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER .....</b>	<b>25-1</b>
Section	
2501 General .....	25-3
2502 Performance .....	25-3
2503 Inspection .....	25-3
2504 Vertical and Horizontal Assemblies .....	25-4
2505 Shear Wall Construction.....	25-4
2506 Gypsum Board and Gypsum Panel Product Materials .....	25-4
2507 Lathing and Plastering .....	25-4
2508 Gypsum Construction .....	25-5
2509 Showers and Water Closets .....	25-7
2510 Lathing and Furring for Cement Plaster (Stucco).....	25-7
2511 Interior Plaster .....	25-8
2512 Exterior Plaster .....	25-9
2513 Exposed Aggregate Plaster .....	25-9
2514 Reinforced Gypsum Concrete .....	25-10

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 26 PLASTIC .....</b>	<b>26-1</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION.....</b>	<b>31-1</b>
Section		Section	
2601 General .....	26-3	3101 General .....	31-3
2602 Finish and Trim.....	26-3	3102 Membrane Structures .....	31-3
2603 Foam Plastic Insulation.....	26-3	3103 Temporary Structures .....	31-4
2604 Interior Finish and Trim .....	26-9	3104 Pedestrian Walkways and Tunnels .....	31-5
2605 Plastic Veneer .....	26-11	3105 Awnings and Canopies .....	31-6
2606 Light-transmitting Plastics .....	26-11	3106 Marquees.....	31-6
2607 Light-transmitting Plastic Wall Panels .....	26-12	3107 Signs .....	31-7
2608 Light-transmitting Plastic Glazing .....	26-13	3108 Telecommunication and Broadcast Towers .....	31-7
2609 Light-transmitting Plastic Roof Panels .....	26-13	3109 Swimming Pools, Spas and Hot Tubs.....	31-7
2610 Light-transmitting Plastic Skylight Glazing .....	26-14	3110 Automatic Vehicular Gates.....	31-9
2611 Light-transmitting Plastic Interior Signs.....	26-15	3111 Solar Energy Systems.....	31-9
2612 Plastic Composites .....	26-15	3112 Greenhouses .....	31-10
2613 Fiber-reinforced Polymer .....	26-15	3113 Relocatable Buildings.....	31-10
2614 Reflective Plastic Core Insulation.....	26-16	3114 Public Use Restroom Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas .....	31-11
<b>CHAPTER 27 ELECTRICAL .....</b>	<b>27-1</b>	3115 Intermodal Shipping Containers .....	31-11
Section		<b>CHAPTER 31A SYSTEMS FOR WINDOW CLEANING OR EXTERIOR BUILDING MAINTENANCE... 31A-1</b>	
2701 General .....	27-3	<b>CHAPTER 31B PUBLIC POOLS..... 31B-1</b>	
2702 Emergency and Standby Power Systems .....	27-3	<b>DIVISION I – GENERAL .....</b>	
<b>CHAPTER 28 MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>28-1</b>	<b>31B-3</b>	
Section		Section	
2801 General .....	28-3	3101B Scope .....	31B-3
<b>CHAPTER 29 PLUMBING SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>29-1</b>	3102B Definitions .....	31B-3
Section		3103B Plan Review .....	31B-4
2901 General .....	29-1	3104B Construction.....	31B-5
2902 Minimum Plumbing Facilities.....	29-1	3105B Plan Compliance Inspections.....	31B-5
2903 Installation of Fixtures.....	29-6	3106B Special Requirements for Spray Grounds .....	31B-5
<b>CHAPTER 30 ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS .....</b>	<b>30-1</b>	3107B Alternative Equipment, Materials and Methods of Construction .....	31B-6
Section		3108B Pool Construction .....	31B-6
3001 General .....	30-3	3109B Pool Geometry.....	31B-6
3002 Hoistway Enclosures.....	30-3	3110B Permanent Markings .....	31B-6
3003 Emergency Operations .....	30-5	3111B Steps, Recessed Steps, Ladders and Stairs...	31B-7
3004 Conveying Systems.....	30-6	3112B Handholds .....	31B-8
3005 Machine Rooms.....	30-6	3113B Diving Boards and Platforms .....	31B-8
3006 Elevator Lobbies and Hoistway Opening Protection .....	30-7	3114B Pool Decks .....	31B-8
3007 Fire Service Access Elevator.....	30-8	3115B Pool Lighting .....	31B-8
3008 Occupant Evacuation Elevators.....	30-9	3116B Dressing, Shower and Toilet Facilities .....	31B-9
3009 Special Requirements for Elevators in Hospitals.....	30-11	3117B Drinking Fountains .....	31B-9
		3118B Hose Bibbs.....	31B-9

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>3119B</b>	<i>Pool Enclosure</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-9</b>	<b>DIVISION II – PUBLIC SWIMMING POOLS . . . . .</b>	<b>31B-19</b>	
<b>3120B</b>	<i>Required Signs</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-10</b>	<b>3160B</b>	<i>Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>
<b>3121B</b>	<i>Indoor Pool Ventilation</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>	<b>3161B</b>	<i>Wading Pools</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-20</b>
<b>3122B</b>	<i>Pool Equipment Enclosure</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>	<b>3162B</b>	<i>Anti-Entrapment Devices and Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-20</b>
<b>3123B</b>	<i>General Requirements</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>			
<b>3124B</b>	<i>Turnover Time</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>			
<b>3125B</b>	<i>Recirculation Piping System and Components</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>			
<b>3126B</b>	<i>Recirculation Pump Capacity</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31C RADIATION . . . . .</b>	<b>31C-1</b>	
<b>3127B</b>	<i>Water Supply Inlets</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<i>Section</i>		
<b>3128B</b>	<i>Filters (All Types)</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>3101C</b>	<i>Scope</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3129B</b>	<i>Rapid Sand Pressure Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>3102C</b>	<i>Radiation Shielding Barriers</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3130B</b>	<i>Diatomaceous Earth Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>3103C</b>	<i>Medical Radiographic and Photofluorographic Installations</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3131B</b>	<i>High-Rate Sand Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>	<b>3104C</b>	<i>Medical Therapeutic X-Ray Installations</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3132B</b>	<i>Cartridge Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>			
<b>3133B</b>	<i>Chemical Feeders</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>			
<b>3134B</b>	<i>Disinfectant Feeders</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>			
<b>3135B</b>	<i>Gas Chlorination Equipment Room</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-17</b>			
<b>3136B</b>	<i>Pool Skimming Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-17</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31E RESERVED . . . . .</b>	<b>31E-1</b>	
<b>3137B</b>	<i>Pool Fittings</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>			
<b>3138B</b>	<i>Spa Pool Special Requirements</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31F MARINE OIL TERMINALS . . . . .</b>	<b>31F-1</b>	
<b>3139B</b>	<i>Solar Heating Installations</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>	<i>Section</i>		
<b>3140B</b>	<i>Cleaning Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>	<b>3101F</b>	<i>Introduction</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-3</b>
<b>3141B</b>	<i>Wastewater Disposal</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3102F</b>	<i>Audit and Inspection</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-6</b>
<b>3142B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3103F</b>	<i>Structural Loading Criteria</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-20</b>
<b>3143B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3104F</b>	<i>Seismic Analysis and Structural Performance</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-33</b>
<b>3144B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3105F</b>	<i>Mooring and Berthing Analysis and Design</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-44</b>
<b>3145B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3106F</b>	<i>Geotechnical Hazards and Foundations</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-50</b>
<b>3146B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3107F</b>	<i>Structural Analysis and Design of Components</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-55</b>
<b>3147B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3108F</b>	<i>Fire Prevention, Detection and Suppression</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-70</b>
<b>3148B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3109F</b>	<i>Piping and Pipelines</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-74</b>
<b>3149B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3110F</b>	<i>Mechanical and Electrical Equipment</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-77</b>
<b>3150B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3111F</b>	<i>Electrical Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-80</b>
<b>3151B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3112F</b>	<i>Requirements Specific to Marine Terminals That Transfer LNG</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-83</b>
<b>3152B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3153B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3154B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3155B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3156B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3157B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3158B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3159B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 33 SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION .....</b>	<b>33-1</b>		
Section			
3301 General .....	33-3	D102 Building Restrictions .....	APPENDIX D-1
3302 Construction Safeguards .....	33-3	D103 Changes to Buildings .....	APPENDIX D-2
3303 Demolition.....	33-3	D104 Buildings Located Partially in the Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-2
3304 Site Work.....	33-3	D105 Exceptions to Restrictions in Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-3
3305 Sanitary .....	33-4	D106 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX D-3
3306 Protection of Pedestrians.....	33-4		
3307 Protection of Adjoining Property .....	33-5		
3308 Temporary Use of Streets, Alleys and Public Property .....	33-5		
3309 Fire Extinguishers .....	33-6		
3310 Means of Egress .....	33-6		
3311 Standpipes .....	33-6		
3312 Automatic Sprinkler System .....	33-6		
3313 Water Supply for Fire Protection .....	33-6		
3314 Fire Watch During Construction.....	33-7		
<b>CHAPTER 34 RESERVED.....</b>	<b>34-1</b>		
<b>CHAPTER 35 REFERENCED STANDARDS ....</b>	<b>35-1</b>		
<b>APPENDIX A EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS ...</b>	<b>APPENDIX A-1</b>		
Section			
A101 Building Official Qualifications ...	APPENDIX A-1	G101 Administration .....	APPENDIX G-1
A102 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX A-1	G102 Definitions.....	APPENDIX G-2
<b>APPENDIX B BOARD OF APPEALS.....</b>	<b>APPENDIX B-1</b>	G103 Applicability .....	APPENDIX G-2
Section			
B101 General .....	APPENDIX B-1	G104 Powers and Duties.....	APPENDIX G-2
<b>APPENDIX C GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS .....</b>	<b>APPENDIX C-1</b>	G105 Permits .....	APPENDIX G-3
Section			
C101 General .....	APPENDIX C-1	G106 Variances.....	APPENDIX G-4
C102 Allowable Height and Area.....	APPENDIX C-1	G107 Subdivisions .....	APPENDIX G-5
C103 Mixed Occupancies.....	APPENDIX C-2	G108 Site Improvement .....	APPENDIX G-5
C104 Exits.....	APPENDIX C-2	G109 Manufactured Homes .....	APPENDIX G-5
<b>APPENDIX D FIRE DISTRICTS....</b>	<b>APPENDIX D-1</b>	G110 Recreational Vehicles.....	APPENDIX G-6
Section			
D101 General .....	APPENDIX D-1	G111 Tanks.....	APPENDIX G-6
D102 Building Restrictions .....	APPENDIX D-1	G112 Other Building Work .....	APPENDIX G-6
D103 Changes to Buildings .....	APPENDIX D-2	G113 Temporary Structures and Temporary Storage .....	APPENDIX G-6
D104 Buildings Located Partially in the Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-2	G114 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .....	APPENDIX G-6
D105 Exceptions to Restrictions in Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-3	G115 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX G-7
<b>APPENDIX E RESERVED.....</b>	<b>APPENDIX E-1</b>		
<b>APPENDIX F RODENTPROOFING ...</b>	<b>APPENDIX F-1</b>		
Section			
F101 General .....	APPENDIX F-1		
<b>APPENDIX G FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION ....</b>	<b>APPENDIX G-1</b>		
Section			
G101 Administration .....	APPENDIX G-1		
G102 Definitions.....	APPENDIX G-2		
G103 Applicability .....	APPENDIX G-2		
G104 Powers and Duties.....	APPENDIX G-2		
G105 Permits .....	APPENDIX G-3		
G106 Variances.....	APPENDIX G-4		
G107 Subdivisions .....	APPENDIX G-5		
G108 Site Improvement .....	APPENDIX G-5		
G109 Manufactured Homes .....	APPENDIX G-5		
G110 Recreational Vehicles.....	APPENDIX G-6		
G111 Tanks.....	APPENDIX G-6		
G112 Other Building Work .....	APPENDIX G-6		
G113 Temporary Structures and Temporary Storage .....	APPENDIX G-6		
G114 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .....	APPENDIX G-6		
G115 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX G-7		
<b>APPENDIX H SIGNS .....</b>	<b>APPENDIX H-1</b>		
Section			
H101 General .....	APPENDIX H-1		
H102 Definitions.....	APPENDIX H-1		
H103 Location .....	APPENDIX H-2		
H104 Identification.....	APPENDIX H-2		
H105 Design and Construction.....	APPENDIX H-2		
H106 Electrical .....	APPENDIX H-2		
H107 Combustible Materials .....	APPENDIX H-2		
H108 Animated Devices.....	APPENDIX H-3		

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

H109	Ground Signs.....	APPENDIX H-3	K108	<i>Attics That Are Evacuation Locations .....</i>	APPENDIX K-3
H110	Roof Signs.....	APPENDIX H-3	K109	<i>Alternate Means of Protection....</i>	APPENDIX K-3
H111	Wall Signs.....	APPENDIX H-3			
H112	Projecting Signs.....	APPENDIX H-4			
H113	Marquee Signs.....	APPENDIX H-4			
H114	Portable Signs .....	APPENDIX H-4			
H115	Thickness of Signs.....	APPENDIX H-4			
H116	Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX H-5			
<b>APPENDIX I PATIO COVERS .....</b> <b>APPENDIX I-1</b>			<b>APPENDIX L EARTHQUAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION .. APPENDIX L-1</b>		
Section			Section		
I101	General .....	APPENDIX I-1	L101	General .....	APPENDIX L-1
I102	Definition.....	APPENDIX I-1			
I103	Exterior Walls and Openings .....	APPENDIX I-1			
I104	Height .....	APPENDIX I-2			
I105	Structural Provisions .....	APPENDIX I-2			
<b>APPENDIX J GRADING .....</b> <b>APPENDIX J-1</b>			<b>APPENDIX M TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD .... APPENDIX M-1</b>		
Section			Section		
J101	General .....	APPENDIX J-1	M101	Refuge Structures for Vertical Evacuation from Tsunami-generated Flood Hazards.....	APPENDIX M-1
J102	Definitions.....	APPENDIX J-1	M102	Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX M-1
J103	Permits Required.....	APPENDIX J-2			
J104	Permit Application and Submittals.....	APPENDIX J-2			
J105	Inspections.....	APPENDIX J-2			
J106	Excavations .....	APPENDIX J-2			
J107	Fills .....	APPENDIX J-3			
J108	Setbacks.....	APPENDIX J-3			
J109	Drainage and Terracing.....	APPENDIX J-4			
J110	Erosion Control .....	APPENDIX J-5			
J111	Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX J-5			
<b>APPENDIX K GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN .... APPENDIX K-1</b>			<b>APPENDIX N REPLICABLE BUILDINGS .....</b> <b>APPENDIX N-1</b>		
Section			Section		
K101	Scope.....	APPENDIX K-1	N101	Administration .....	APPENDIX N-1
K102	Definitions .....	APPENDIX K-1	N102	Definitions .....	APPENDIX N-1
K103	Structural Stability .....	APPENDIX K-2	N103	Replicable Design Requirements .....	APPENDIX N-1
K104	Evacuation Locations.....	APPENDIX K-2	N104	Replicable Design Submittal Requirements .....	APPENDIX N-2
K105	Space within the Building.....	APPENDIX K-2	N105	Review and Approval of Replicable Design.....	APPENDIX N-2
K106	Decks and Balconies That Are Evacuation Locations.....	APPENDIX K-3	N106	Site-specific Application of Approved Replicable Design .....	APPENDIX N-2
K107	Rooftop Evacuation Locations .....	APPENDIX K-3	N107	Site-specific Review and Approval of Replicable Design.....	APPENDIX N-3
<b>APPENDIX O PERFORMANCE-BASED APPLICATION..... APPENDIX O-1</b>					
Section					
O101	General.....	APPENDIX O-1			
<b>APPENDIX P EMERGENCY HOUSING .....</b> <b>APPENDIX P-1</b>					
Section					
P101	General.....	APPENDIX P-1			
P102	Definitions .....	APPENDIX P-1			
P103	Emergency Housing.....	APPENDIX P-2			
P104	Emergency Sleeping Cabins.....	APPENDIX P-2			
P105	Emergency Transportable Housing Units .....	APPENDIX P-3			
P106	Tents and Membrane Structures .....	APPENDIX P-3			
P107	Accessibility .....	APPENDIX P-3			

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>P108</i>	<i>Lofts in Emergency Housing</i> .....	<i>APPENDIX P-3</i>
<i>P109</i>	<i>Location, Maintenance and Identification</i> .....	<i>APPENDIX P-4</i>
<i>P110</i>	<i>Emergency Housing Facilities</i> .....	<i>APPENDIX P-4</i>

<b>INDEX</b> .....	<b>INDEX-1</b>
--------------------	----------------

<b>HISTORY NOTE TO VOLUME 2</b> .....	<b>HIST-1</b>
---------------------------------------	---------------



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 1 – SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Chapter / Section																							
Division I – California Administration																							
1.1	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
1.2	X			X																			
1.2.3	X							X															
1.3				X														X					
1.4				X																			X
1.5 (Reserved)				X																			
1.6				X																			X
1.7				X																			X
1.8				X	X	X	X																
1.9				X																			
1.9.1 – 1.9.1.8							X																
1.9.2									X	X													
1.9.2.1									X														
1.9.2.2										X													
1.10				X																			
1.10.1										X	X												
1.10.2											X												
1.10.3											X												
1.10.4												X											
1.10.5 – 1.10.5.3													X										
1.11				X																			
1.12				X																			X
1.13 (Reserved)																							X
1.14																							X
Division II – Scope and Administration																							
101.1 – 101.4.5						X				X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
101.4.7										X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
102.1							X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
102.2 – 102.4							X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
102.4.1							X	X															
102.4.3							X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
102.4.4							X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
102.5							X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
102.6 – 104.1										X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
104.2 – 104.4										X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
104.5 – 104.8										X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
104.9								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 1 – SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Chapter / Section																							
Division II – Scope and Administration-cont'd																							
104.10								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
104.11								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
104.11.1 – 104.11.2											X	X	X	X	X								
104.11.3											X	X	X	X	X								
104.11.4											X				X								
105.1											X	X	X	X	X								
105.1.1 – 105.2											X	X	X	X	X								
105.2 Building: 1-13				X	X	X																	
105.2.1 – 105.2.2				X							X	X	X	X	X								
105.2.3											X	X	X	X	X								
105.3 – 105.3.1				X							X	X	X	X	X								
105.3.2											X	X	X	X	X								
105.4				X							X	X	X	X	X								
105.5											X	X	X	X	X								
105.5.1	X																						
105.6 – 105.7				X							X	X	X	X	X								
106.1				X				X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
> 106.1.1											X	X	X	X	X								
106.1.2								X	X														
106.2 – 106.3				X							X	X	X	X	X								
107.1				X	X	X					X	X	X	X	X								
107.2				X							X	X	X	X	X								
107.2.1				X	X	X					X	X	X	X	X								
107.2.3				X	X	X																	
107.2.4				X	X	X																	
107.2.5				X	X	X				X	X												
107.2.6				X	X	X																	
107.2.6.1					X	X																	
107.2.7				X	X	X																	
107.3				X							X	X	X	X	X								
107.3.4.1											X	X	X	X	X								
107.4				X																			
107.5				X							X	X	X	X	X								
108.1 – 108.4				X							X	X	X	X	X								
109											X	X	X	X	X								
110.1 – 110.3				X							X	X	X	X	X								
110.3.1 – 110.3.3					X	X					X	X	X	X	X								
110.3.4 – 110.3.7				X	X	X					X	X	X	X	X								

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 1 – SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC		
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4										
Adopt entire chapter																								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Chapter / Section																								
Division II – Scope and Administration-cont'd																								
110.3.4.1						X																		
110.3.5	X			X	X	X				X	X													
110.3.6						X	X																	
110.3.7						X	X			X	X													
110.3.8						X	X																	
110.3.9 – 110.3.11				X	X	X					X	X	X	X	X	X								
110.3.11.1						X	X																	
110.3.12 – 110.3.12.1						X	X																	
110.3.12.2						X	X																	
110.4 – 110.6				X							X	X	X	X	X	X								
111.1				X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
111.2				X				X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
111.3 – 111.4				X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
112				X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
113											X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
114.1 – 114.2				X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
114.2 – 114.3											X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
115 - 116				X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified by the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.





## CHAPTER 1

# SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

## DIVISION I

## CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION

### **SECTION 1.1 GENERAL**

**1.1.1 Title.** These regulations shall be known as the California Building Code, may be cited as such and will be referred to herein as “this code.” The California Building Code is Part 2 of thirteen parts of the official compilation and publication of the adoption, amendment and repeal of building regulations to the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, also referred to as the California Building Standards Code.

This part incorporates by adoption the 2021 International Building Code of the International Code Council with necessary California amendments.

**1.1.2 Purpose.** The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress facilities, stability, access to persons with disabilities, sanitation, adequate lighting and ventilation and energy conservation; safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment; and to provide safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.

**1.1.3 Scope.** The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, alteration, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal and demolition of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures throughout the State of California.

**1.1.3.1 Nonstate-regulated buildings, structures and applications.** Except as modified by local ordinance pursuant to Section 1.1.8, the following standards in the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Parts 2, 2.5, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11 shall apply to all occupancies and applications not regulated by a state agency.

**1.1.3.2 State-regulated buildings, structures and applications.** The model code, state amendments to the model code and/or state amendments where there are no relevant model code provisions shall apply to the following buildings, structures and applications regulated by state agencies as specified in Sections 1.2 through 1.14, except where modified by local ordinance pursuant to Section 1.1.8. When adopted by a state agency, the provisions of this code shall be enforced by the appropriate enforcing agency, but only to the extent of authority granted to such agency by the state legislature.

**Note:** See “How to Distinguish Between Model Code Language and California Amendments” in the front of the code.

1. State-owned buildings, including buildings constructed by the Trustees of the California State

University, and to the extent permitted by California laws, buildings designed and constructed by the Regents of the University of California, and regulated by the Building Standards Commission. See Section 1.2 for additional scope provisions.

2. Local detention facilities regulated by the Board of State and Community Corrections. See Section 1.3 for additional scope provisions.
3. Barbering, cosmetology or electrolysis establishments, acupuncture offices, pharmacies, veterinary facilities and structural pest control locations regulated by the Department of Consumer Affairs. See Section 1.4 for additional scope provisions.
4. Section 1.5 reserved for the California Energy Commission.
5. Dairies and places of meat inspection regulated by the Department of Food and Agriculture. See Section 1.6 for additional scope provisions.
6. Organized camps, laboratory animal quarters, public swimming pools, radiation protection, commissaries serving mobile food preparation vehicles and wild animal quarantine facilities regulated by the Department of Public Health. See Section 1.7 for additional scope provisions.
7. Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartments, dwellings, dormitories, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, employee housing, factory-built housing and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with or without common toilets or cooking facilities. See Section 1.8.2.1.1 for additional scope provisions.
8. Accommodations for persons with disabilities in buildings containing newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings, new common use areas serving existing covered multifamily dwellings, additions to existing buildings where the addition alone meets the definition of covered multifamily dwellings, and new common-use areas serving new covered multifamily dwellings, which are regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Section 1.8.2.1.2 for additional scope provisions.
9. Permanent buildings and permanent accessory buildings or structures constructed within mobile-home parks and special occupancy parks regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. See Section 1.8.2.1.3 for additional scope provisions.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

10. Accommodations for persons with disabilities regulated by the Division of the State Architect. See Section 1.9.1 for additional scope provisions.
  11. Public elementary and secondary schools, community college buildings and state-owned or state-leased essential service buildings regulated by the Division of the State Architect. See Section 1.9.2 for additional scope provisions.
  12. Qualified historical buildings and structures and their associated sites regulated by the State Historical Building Safety Board with the Division of the State Architect. See Section 1.9.3 for additional scope provisions.
  13. General acute care hospitals, acute psychiatric hospitals, skilled nursing and/or intermediate care facilities, clinics licensed by the Department of Public Health and correctional treatment centers regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development. See Section 1.10 for additional scope provisions.
  14. Applications regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal include, but are not limited to, the following in accordance with Section 1.11:
    - 14.1. Buildings or structures used or intended for use as an:
      1. Asylum, jail, prison
      2. Mental hospital, hospital, home for the elderly, children's nursery, children's home or institution, school or any similar occupancy of any capacity
      3. Theater, dancehall, skating rink, auditorium, assembly hall, meeting hall, nightclub, fair building or similar place of assemblage where 50 or more persons may gather together in a building, room or structure for the purpose of amusement, entertainment, instruction, deliberation, worship, drinking or dining, awaiting transportation, or education
      4. Small family day-care homes, large family day-care homes, residential facilities and residential facilities for the elderly, residential care facilities
      5. State institutions or other state-owned or state-occupied buildings
      6. High rise structures
      7. Motion picture production studios
      8. Organized camps
      9. Residential structures
    - 14.2. Tents, awnings or other fabric enclosures used in connection with any occupancy
    - 14.3. Fire alarm devices, equipment and systems in connection with any occupancy
    - 14.4. Hazardous materials, flammable and combustible liquids
  - 14.5. Public school automatic fire detection, alarm and sprinkler systems
  - 14.6. Wildland-urban interface fire areas
  15. Public libraries constructed and renovated using funds from the California Library Construction and Renovation Bond Act of 1988 and regulated by the State Librarian. See Section 1.12 for additional scope provisions.
  16. Section 1.13 reserved for the Department of Water Resources.
  17. For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance, outdoor environments and uses shall be classified according to accessibility uses described in Chapter 11B.
  18. Marine Oil Terminals regulated by the California State Lands Commission. See Section 1.14 for additional scope provisions.
- 1.1.4 Appendices.** Provisions contained in the appendices of this code shall not apply unless specifically adopted by a state agency or adopted by a local enforcing agency in compliance with Health and Safety Code Section 18901 et. seq. for Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17950 for State Housing Law and Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7 for Fire Protection Districts. See Section 1.1.8 of this code.
- 1.1.5 Referenced codes.** The codes, standards and publications adopted and set forth in this code, including other codes, standards and publications referred to therein are, by title and date of publication, hereby adopted as standard reference documents of this code. When this code does not specifically cover any subject related to building design and construction, recognized architectural or engineering practices shall be employed. The National Fire Codes, standards and the Fire Protection Handbook of the National Fire Protection Association are permitted to be used as authoritative guides in determining recognized fire prevention engineering practices.
- 1.1.6 Nonbuilding standards, orders and regulations.** Requirements contained in the California Building Code, or in any other referenced standard, code or document, which are not building standards as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18909, shall not be construed as part of the provisions of this code. For nonbuilding standards, orders and regulations, see other titles of the California Code of Regulations.
- 1.1.7 Order of precedence and use.**
- 1.1.7.1 Differences.** In the event of any differences between these building standards and the standard reference documents, the text of these building standards shall govern.
- 1.1.7.2 Specific provisions.** Where a specific provision varies from a general provision, the specific provision shall apply.
- 1.1.7.3 Conflicts.** When the requirements of this code conflict with the requirements of any other part of the Califor-

*nia Building Standards Code, Title 24, the most restrictive requirements shall prevail.*

**1.1.7.3.1 Detached one- and two-family dwellings.** *Detached one- and two-family dwellings, lodging houses, live/work units, townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress, and their accessory structures, may be designed and constructed in accordance with this code or the California Residential Code, but not both, unless the proposed structure(s) or element(s) exceed the design limitations established in the California Residential Code, and the code user is specifically directed by the California Residential Code to use this code.*

**1.1.8 City, county, or city and county amendments, additions or deletions.** *The provisions of this code do not limit the authority of city, county, or city and county governments to establish more restrictive and reasonably necessary differences to the provisions contained in this code pursuant to complying with Section 1.1.8.1. The effective date of amendments, additions or deletions to this code by a city, county, or city and county filed pursuant to Section 1.1.8.1 shall be the date filed. However, in no case shall the amendments, additions or deletions to this code be effective any sooner than the effective date of this code.*

*Local modifications shall comply with Health and Safety Code Section 18941.5 for Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17958 for State Housing Law or Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7 for Fire Protection Districts.*

**1.1.8.1 Findings and filings.**

1. The city, county, or city and county shall make express findings for each amendment, addition or deletion based upon climatic, topographical or geological conditions.

**Exception:** *Hazardous building ordinances and programs mitigating unreinforced masonry buildings.*

2. The city, county, or city and county shall file the amendments, additions or deletions expressly marked and identified as to the applicable findings. Cities, counties, cities and counties, and fire departments shall file the amendments, additions or deletions, and the findings with the California Building Standards Commission at 2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130, Sacramento, CA 95833.

3. Findings prepared by fire protection districts shall be ratified by the local city, county or city and county and filed with the California Department of Housing and Community Development, Division of Codes and Standards, P.O. Box 278180, Sacramento, CA 95827-8180 or 9342 Tech Center Drive, Suite 500, Sacramento, CA 95826-2582.

**1.1.8.2 Locally adopted energy standards—California Energy Code, Part 6.**

*In addition to the provisions of Section 1.1.8.1 of this part, the provisions of this section shall apply to a city,*

*county, and cities and counties adopting local energy standards applicable to buildings and structures subject to the California Energy Code, Part 6.*

*Applicable provisions of Public Resources Code Section 25402.1(h)(2) and applicable provisions of Section 10-106, Chapter 10 of the California Administrative Code, Part 1 apply to locally adopted energy standards amending the California Energy Code, Part 6.*

**1.1.9 Effective date of this code.** *Only those standards approved by the California Building Standards Commission that are effective at the time an application for building permit is submitted shall apply to the plans and specifications for, and to the construction performed under, that permit. For the effective dates of the provisions contained in this code, see the History Note page of this code.*

**Exceptions:**

- (1) **[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** *Retroactive permits issued in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17958.12.*

- (2) **[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** *Plans approved by the Department of Housing and Community Development or a Department-approved design approval agency for factory-built housing as defined by Health and Safety Code Section 19971. Approved plans, pursuant to the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, Article 3, Section 3037 remain valid for a period of 36 months from the date of plan approval.*

**1.1.10 Availability of codes.** *At least one complete copy each of Titles 8, 19, 20, 24 and 25 with all revisions shall be maintained in the office of the building official responsible for the administration and enforcement of this code. Each state department concerned and each city, county, or city and county shall have an up-to-date copy of the code available for public inspection. See Health and Safety Code Section 18942(e)(1) and (2).*

**1.1.11 Format.** *This part fundamentally adopts the International Building Code by reference on a chapter-by-chapter basis. When a specific chapter of the International Building Code is not printed in the code and is marked “Reserved”, such chapter of the International Building Code is not adopted as a portion of this code. When a specific chapter of the International Building Code is marked “Not adopted by the State of California” but appears in the code, it may be available for adoption by local ordinance.*

**Note:** *Matrix Adoption Tables at the front of each chapter may aid the code user in determining which chapter or sections within a chapter are applicable to buildings under the authority of a specific state agency, but they are not to be considered regulatory.*

**1.1.12 Validity.** *If any chapter, section, subsection, sentence, clause or phrase of this code is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, contrary to statute, exceeding the authority of the state as stipulated by statutes or otherwise inoperative, such decision shall not affect the validity of the remaining portion of this code.*

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### **SECTION 1.2 BUILDING STANDARDS COMMISSION**

**1.2.1 BSC.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**1. State buildings for all occupancies.**

**Application**—State buildings (all occupancies), including buildings constructed by the Trustees of the California State University (CSU) and the Regents of the University of California (UC) where no state agency has the authority to adopt building standards applicable to such buildings.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 18934.5.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.5, commencing with Section 18901.

**2. University of California, California State Universities and California Community Colleges.**

**Application**—Standards for lighting for parking lots and primary campus walkways at the University of California, California State Universities and California Community Colleges.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Government Code Section 14617.

**Reference**—Government Code Section 14617.

**3. Existing state-owned buildings, including those owned by the University of California and by the California State University.**

**Application**—Building seismic retrofit standards including abating falling hazards of structural and nonstructural components and strengthening of building structures. See also Division of the State Architect.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 16600.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Sections 16600 through 16604.

**4. Unreinforced masonry-bearing wall buildings.**

**Application**—Minimum seismic strengthening standards for buildings specified in Appendix Chapter A1 of the California Existing Building Code, except for buildings subject to building standards adopted pursuant to Health and Safety Code (commencing) with Section 17910.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 18934.7.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.5, commencing with Section 18901.

**1.2.1.1 State building.** For purposes of this code, a “state building” is a structure for which a state agency or state entity has authority to construct, alter, enlarge, replace, repair or demolish.

**1.2.1.2 Enforcement.** [CSU, UC, Judicial Council and California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation] State agencies or state entities authorized to construct state buildings may appoint a building official who is responsible to the agency for enforcement of the provisions of the California Building Standards Code.

**Exception:** State buildings regulated by other sections of this code remain the enforcement responsibility of the designated entities.

**1.2.1.3 Enforcement. Reserved for DGS.**

**1.2.1.4 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym **BSC**.

**1.2.2 BSC-CG.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**1. Green buildings standards for nonresidential occupancies.**

**Application**—All occupancies where no state agency has the authority to adopt green building standards applicable to those occupancies.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 18930.5(a), 18938 and 18940.5.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.5, commencing with Section 18901.

**2. Graywater systems for nonresidential occupancies.**

**Application**—The construction, installation and alteration of graywater systems for indoor and outdoor uses in nonresidential occupancies.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 18941.8.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 18941.8.

**1.2.2.1 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym **BSC-CG**.

**1.2.3 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design or method of

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

*construction shall be approved where the building official finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code, and that the material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, at least the equivalent of that prescribed in this code in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety.*

**1.2.3.1 Research reports.** Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

**1.2.3.2 Tests.** Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the building official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made at no expense to the jurisdiction. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the building official shall approve the testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the building official for the period required for retention of public records.

### **SECTION 1.3 BOARD OF STATE AND COMMUNITY CORRECTIONS**

**1.3.1 Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.**

**Application**—Local detention facilities.

**Enforcing agency**—Board of State and Community Corrections.

**Authority cited**—Penal Code Section 6030; Welfare and Institutions Code Sections 207.1, 210 and 885.

**Reference**—Penal Code Section 6030; Welfare and Institutions Code Sections 207.1, 210 and 885.

**1.3.2 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym BSCC.

### **SECTION 1.4 DEPARTMENT OF CONSUMER AFFAIRS**

**1.4.1 Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.**

#### **1. Board of Barbering and Cosmetology.**

**Application**—Any establishment or mobile unit where barbering, cosmetology or electrolysis is being performed.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Business and Professions Code Section 7312.

**Reference**—Business and Professions Code Sections 7303, 7303.1, 7312 and 7313.

#### **2. Acupuncture Board.**

**Application**—Acupuncture offices.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Business and Professions Code Section 4933.

**Reference**—Business and Professions Code Sections 4928, 4928.1 and 4933.

#### **3. Board of Pharmacy.**

**Application**—Pharmacies.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Business and Professions Code Section 4005.

**Reference**—Business and Professions Code Sections 4005, 4127.7 and 4201.

#### **4. Veterinary Medical Board.**

**Application**—Veterinary facilities.

**Enforcing agency**—State or local agency specified by the applicable provisions of law.

**Authority cited**—Business and Professions Code Section 4808.

**Reference**—Business and Professions Code Sections 4800, 4800.1, 4808 and 4809.5.

#### **5. Structural Pest Control Board.**

**Application**—Structural pest control locations.

**Enforcing agency**—Structural Pest Control Board.

**Authority cited**—Business and Professions Code Section 8525.

**Reference**—Business and Professions Code Sections 8520, 8520.1 and 8525.

**1.4.2 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym CA.

### **SECTION 1.5 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1.6 DEPARTMENT OF FOOD AND AGRICULTURE**

**1.6.1 Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.**

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

**Application**—Dairies and places of meat and poultry inspection.

**Enforcing agency**—Department of Food and Agriculture.

**Authority cited**—Food and Agricultural Code Sections 18735, 18960, 19384, 33481 and 33731.

**Reference**—Food and Agricultural Code Sections 18735, 18960, 19384, 33481 and 33731.

**1.6.2 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym AGR.

## SECTION 1.7 CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC HEALTH

**1.7.1 Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.**

### California Department of Public Health

**Application**—Organized camps, laboratory animal quarters, public swimming pools, radiation protection and producing facilities, commissaries serving mobile food preparation vehicles, wild animal quarantine facilities, shellfish facilities and food establishments.

**Enforcing agency**—The California Department of Public Health and the local health agencies.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 1660, 18897.2, 110065, 112165, 113710, 114304, 115061, 116050, 121795 and 131200.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Sections 1650, 1660, 18897.2, 18897.4, 18897.7, 100150, 110065, 113705, 113710, 114825, 114965, 115061, 116050, 116503, 112165, 121795 and 131200.

**1.7.2 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this section will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym DPH.

## SECTION 1.8 DEPARTMENT OF HOUSING AND COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT

**1.8.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements necessary to protect the health, safety and general welfare of the occupants and the public by governing accessibility, erection, construction, reconstruction, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, moving, removal, demolition, occupancy, use, height, court, area, sanitation, ventilation, maintenance and safety to life and property from fire and other hazards attributed to the built environment.

## SECTION 1.8.2 AUTHORITY AND ABBREVIATIONS

**1.8.2.1 General.** The Department of Housing and Community Development is authorized by law to promulgate and adopt building standards and regulations for several types

of building applications. The applications under the authority of the Department of Housing and Community Development are listed in Sections 1.8.2.1.1 through 1.8.2.1.3.

**Note:** See the California Residential Code for detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.

### 1.8.2.1.1 Housing construction.

**Application**—Hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartments, dwellings, dormitories, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, employee housing, factory-built housing and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with or without common toilet or cooking facilities including accessory buildings, facilities and uses thereto. Sections of this code which pertain to applications listed in this section are identified using the abbreviation “HCD 1.”

**Enforcing agency**—Local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17920.9, 17921, 17921.5, 17921.6, < 17921.10, 17922, 17922.6, 17922.12, 17922.14, 17922.15, 17926, 17927, 17928, 17958.12, | < 18938.3, 18944.11 and 19990; and Government Code Section 12955.1.

**Reference**—Business and Professions Code Division 5; Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17062.5, 17910 through 17995.5, 18200 through 18700, 18860 through 18874, 18938.6, 18941, 19890, 19891, 19892 and 19960 through 19997; Civil Code Sections 832, 1101.4, 1101.5, 1954.201, 1954.202 and 5551; and Government Code Sections 8698.4, 12955.1 and 12955.1.1. California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1605.1, 1605.3 and 1607.

### 1.8.2.1.2 Housing accessibility.

**Application**—Covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2 including, but not limited to, lodging houses, dormitories, timeshares, condominiums, shelters for homeless persons, congregate residences, apartments, dwellings, employee housing, factory-built housing and other types of dwellings containing sleeping accommodations with or without common toilet or cooking facilities.

Sections of this code identified by the abbreviation “HCD 1-AC” require specific accommodations for persons with disabilities as defined in Chapter 2. The application of such provisions shall be in conjunction with other requirements of this code and apply only to newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2. “HCD 1-AC” applications include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. All newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2.
2. New common use areas as defined in Chapter 2, serving existing covered multifamily dwellings.

- 3. Additions to existing buildings, where the addition alone meets the definition of covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2.
- 4. New common use areas serving new covered multifamily dwellings.
- 5. Where any portion of a building's exterior is preserved, but the interior of the building is removed, including all structural portions of floors and ceilings, the building is considered a new building for determining the application of Chapter 11A.

*"HCD 1-AC" building standards generally do not apply to public use areas or public accommodations such as hotels and motels, and public housing. Public use areas, public accommodations and public housing, as defined in Chapter 2, are subject to the Division of the State Architect (DSA-AC) in Chapter 11B, and are referenced in Section 1.9.1.*

*Newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings, which can also be defined as public housing, shall be subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A and Chapter 11B.*

**Enforcing agency**—Local building department or the Department of Housing and Community Development.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17920.9, 17921, 17921.5, 17921.6, 17921.10, 17922, 17922.6, 17922.12, 17922.14, 17926, 17927, 17928, 17958.12, 18552, 18554, 18620, 18630, 18640, 18670, 18690, 18691, 18865, 18871.3, 18871.4, 18873, 18873.1 through 18873.5, 18938.3, 18944.11 and 19990; and Government Code Section 12955.1.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17062.5, 17910 through 17995.5, 18200 through 18700, 18860 through 18874, 18938.6, 18941, 18940, 18981, 18982 and 19960 through 19997; Civil Code Sections 1101.4, 1101.5, 1954.201 and 1954.202; and Government Code Sections 12955.1 and 12955.1.1. California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1605.1, 1605.3 and 1607.

#### 1.8.2.1.3 Permanent buildings in mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks.

**Application**—Permanent buildings, and permanent accessory buildings or structures, constructed within mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks that are under the control and ownership of the park operator. Sections of this code which pertain to applications listed in this section are identified using the abbreviation "HCD 2."

**Enforcing agency**—The Department of Housing and Community Development, local building department or other local agency that has assumed responsibility for the enforcement of Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1 commencing with Section 18200 for mobilehome parks and Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3 commencing with Section 18860 for special occupancy parks.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 17040, 17920.9, 17921, 17921.5, 17921.6, 17921.10, 17922, 17922.6, 17922.12, 17922.14, 17922.15, 17926, 17927, 17928, 17958.12, 18552, 18554, 18620, 18630, 18640, 18670, 18690, 18691, 18865, 18871.3, 18871.4, 18873, 18873.1 through 18873.5, 18938.3, 18944.11 and 19990; and Government Code Section 12955.1.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Sections 17000 through 17062.5, 17910 through 17995.5, 18200 through 18700, 18860 through 18874, 18938.6, 18941, 18940, 18981, 18982 and 19960 through 19997; Civil Code Sections 1101.4, 1101.5 and 1954.201; and Government Code Sections 12955.1 and 12955.1.1. California Code of Regulations, Title 20, Sections 1605.1, 1605.3 and 1607; and Title 25, Sections 1042 and 2042.

### SECTION 1.8.3 LOCAL ENFORCING AGENCY

**1.8.3.1 Duties and powers.** The building department of every city, county, or city and county, shall enforce all the provisions of law, this code and the other rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development pertaining to the installation, erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal, demolition or arrangement of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses and dwellings, including accessory buildings, facilities and uses thereto.

The provisions regulating the erection and construction of dwellings and appurtenant structures shall not apply to existing structures as to which construction is commenced or approved prior to the effective date of these regulations. Requirements relating to use, maintenance and occupancy shall apply to all dwellings and appurtenant structures approved for construction or constructed before or after the effective date of this code.

For additional information regarding the use and occupancy of existing buildings and appurtenant structures, see California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Article 1, Section 1.

For additional requirements regarding additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings and appurtenant structures, see the California Existing Building Code.

**1.8.3.2 Laws, rules and regulations.** Other than the building standards contained in this code, and notwithstanding other provisions of law, the statutory authority and location of the laws, rules and regulations to be enforced by local enforcing agencies are listed by statute in Sections 1.8.3.2.1 through 1.8.3.2.5 below:

**1.8.3.2.1 State Housing Law.** Refer to the State Housing Law, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1, for the erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement,

&gt;

&gt;||

||

||

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

*conversion, alteration, repair, removal, demolition or arrangement of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses and dwellings, including accessory buildings, facilities and uses thereto.*

**1.8.3.2.2 Mobilehome Parks Act.** Refer to the Mobilehome Parks Act, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000 for mobilehome park administrative and enforcement authority, permits, plans, fees, violations, inspections and penalties both within and outside mobilehome parks.

**Exception:** Mobilehome parks where the Department of Housing and Community Development is the enforcing agency.

**1.8.3.2.3 Special Occupancy Parks Act.** Refer to the Special Occupancy Parks Act, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000 for special occupancy park administrative and enforcement authority, permits, fees, violations, inspections and penalties both within and outside of special occupancy parks.

**Exception:** Special occupancy parks where the Department of Housing and Community Development is the enforcing agency.

**1.8.3.2.4 Employee Housing Act.** Refer to the Employee Housing Act, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600 for employee housing administrative and enforcement authority, permits, fees, violations, inspections and penalties.

**1.8.3.2.5 Factory-Built Housing Law.** Refer to the Factory-Built Housing Law, California Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6 commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000 for factory-built housing administrative and enforcement authority, permits, fees, violations, inspections and penalties.

## SECTION 1.8.4 PERMITS, FEES, APPLICATIONS AND INSPECTIONS

**1.8.4.1 Permits.** A written construction permit shall be obtained from the enforcing agency prior to the erection, construction, reconstruction, installation, moving or alteration of any building or structure.

### Exceptions:

1. Work exempt from permits as specified in Chapter 1, Division II, Scope and Administration, Section 105.2.
2. Changes, alterations or repairs of a minor nature not affecting structural features, egress, sanitation, safety or accessibility as determined by the enforcing agency.

### 3. Retroactive permits issued in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17958.12.

Exemptions from permit requirements shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of other provisions of law or this code.

**1.8.4.2 Fees.** Subject to other provisions of law, the governing body of any city, county, or city and county, may prescribe fees to defray the cost of enforcement of rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. The amount of the fees shall not exceed the amount reasonably necessary to administer or process permits, certificates, forms or other documents, or to defray the costs of enforcement. For additional information, see the State Housing Law, Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, Section 17951 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, Article 3, commencing with Section 6.

**1.8.4.3 Plan review and time limitations.** Subject to other provisions of law, provisions related to plan checking, prohibition of excessive delays and contracting with or employment of private parties to perform plan checking are set forth in the State Housing Law, Health and Safety Code Section 17960.1, and for employee housing, in Health and Safety Code Section 17021.

**1.8.4.3.1 Retention of plans.** The building department of every city, county, or city and county shall maintain an official copy, microfilm, electronic or other type of photographic copy of the plans of every building, during the life of the building, for which the department issued a building permit.

### Exceptions:

1. Single or multiple dwellings not more than two stories and basement in height.
2. Garages and other structures appurtenant to buildings listed in Exception 1.
3. Farm or ranch buildings appurtenant to buildings listed in Exception 1.
4. Any one-story building where the span between bearing walls does not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm), except a steel frame or concrete building.

All plans for common interest developments as defined in Section 4100 of the California Civil Code shall be retained. For additional information regarding plan retention and reproduction of plans by an enforcing agency, see Health and Safety Code Sections 19850 through 19852.

**1.8.4.4 Inspections.** Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the building official and such construction or work shall remain accessible and exposed for inspection purposes until approved. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or other regulations of the Department of Housing and Community Development. Required inspections are listed in Chapter 1, Division II, Scope and Administration, Sections 110.3.1, 110.3.2, 110.3.3, 110.3.4, 110.3.4.1, 110.3.5, 110.3.6, 110.3.7, 110.3.9, 110.3.10, 110.3.11, 110.3.11.1 and 110.3.11.2.

## **SECTION 1.8.5 RIGHT OF ENTRY FOR ENFORCEMENT**

**1.8.5.1 General.** Subject to other provisions of law, officers and agents of the enforcing agency may enter and inspect public and private properties to secure compliance with the rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development. For limitations and additional information regarding enforcement, see the following:

1. For applications subject to the State Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.1 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1.
2. For applications subject to the Mobilehome Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.2 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000.
3. For applications subject to the Special Occupancy Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.3 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000.
4. For applications subject to the Employee Housing Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.4 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600.
5. For applications subject to the Factory-Built Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000.

## **SECTION 1.8.6 LOCAL MODIFICATION BY ORDINANCE OR REGULATION**

**1.8.6.1 General.** Subject to other provisions of law, a city, county, or city and county may make changes to the provisions adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development. If any city, county, or city and county does not amend, add or repeal by local ordinances or regulations the provisions published in this code or other regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development, those provisions shall be applicable and shall become effective 180 days after publication by the California Building Standards Commission. Amendments, additions and deletions to this code adopted by a city, county, or city and county pursuant to California Health and Safety Code Sections 17958.5, 17958.7 and 18941.5, together with all applicable portions of this code, shall also become effective 180

days after publication of the California Building Standards Code by the California Building Standards Commission.

**1.8.6.2 Findings, filings and rejections of local modifications.** Prior to making any modifications or establishing more restrictive building standards, the governing body shall make express findings and filings, as required by California Health and Safety Code Section 17958.7, showing that such modifications are reasonably necessary due to local climatic, geological or topographical conditions. No modification shall become effective or operative unless the following requirements are met:

1. The express findings shall be made available as a public record.
2. A copy of the modification and express finding, each document marked to cross-reference the other, shall be filed with the California Building Standards Commission for a city, county, or city and county and with the Department of Housing and Community Development for fire protection districts.
3. The California Building Standards Commission has not rejected the modification or change.

Nothing in this section shall limit the authority of fire protection districts pursuant to California Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7(a).

## **SECTION 1.8.7 ALTERNATE MATERIALS, DESIGNS, TESTS AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION**

**1.8.7.1 General.** The provisions of this code, as adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development, are not intended to prevent the use of any alternate material, appliance, installation, device, arrangement, design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code. Consideration and approval of alternates shall comply with Section 1.8.7.2 for local building departments and Section 1.8.7.3 for the Department of Housing and Community Development.

**1.8.7.2 Local building departments.** The building department of any city, county, or city and county may approve alternates for use in the erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal, demolition or arrangement of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses, dwellings or accessory structures, except for the following:

1. Structures located in mobilehome parks as defined in California Health and Safety Code Section 18214.
2. Structures located in special occupancy parks as defined in California Health and Safety Code Section 18862.43.
3. Factory-built housing as defined in California Health and Safety Code Section 19971.

**1.8.7.2.1 Approval of alternates.** The consideration and approval of alternates by a local building department shall comply with the following procedures and limitations:

1. The approval shall be granted on a case-by-case basis.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

2. Evidence shall be submitted to substantiate claims that the proposed alternate, in performance, safety and protection of life and health, conforms to, or is at least equivalent to, the standards contained in this code and other rules and regulations promulgated by the Department of Housing and Community Development.
3. The local building department may require tests performed by an approved testing agency at the expense of the owner or owner's agent as proof of compliance.
4. If the proposed alternate is related to accessibility in covered multifamily dwellings or in facilities serving covered multifamily dwellings as defined in Chapter 2, the proposed alternate must also meet the threshold set for equivalent facilitation as defined in Chapter 2.

For additional information regarding approval of alternates by a building department pursuant to the State Housing Law, see California Health and Safety Code Section 17951(e) and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1.

**1.8.7.3 Department of Housing and Community Development.** The Department of Housing and Community Development may approve alternates for use in the erection, construction, reconstruction, movement, enlargement, conversion, alteration, repair, removal or demolition of apartments, condominiums, hotels, motels, lodging houses, dwellings or an accessory thereto and permanent buildings in mobilehome parks and special occupancy parks. The consideration and approval of alternates shall comply with the following:

1. The department may require tests at the expense of the owner or owner's agent to substantiate compliance with the California Building Standards Code.
2. The approved alternate shall, for its intended purpose, be at least equivalent in performance and safety to the materials, designs, tests or methods of construction prescribed by this code.

## SECTION 1.8.8 APPEALS BOARD

**1.8.8.1 General.** Every city, county, or city and county shall establish a process to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions and determinations made by the enforcing agency relative to the application and interpretation of this code and other regulations governing construction, use, maintenance and change of occupancy. The governing body of any city, county, or city and county may establish a local appeals board and a housing appeals board to serve this purpose. Members of the appeals board(s) shall not be employees of the enforcing agency and shall be knowledgeable in the applicable building codes, regulations and ordinances as determined by the governing body of the city, county, or city and county.

Where no such appeals boards or agencies have been established, the governing body of the city, county, or city

and county shall serve as the local appeals board or housing appeals board as specified in California Health and Safety Code Sections 17920.5 and 17920.6.

**1.8.8.2 Definitions.** The following terms shall for the purposes of this section have the meaning shown.

**HOUSING APPEALS BOARD.** The board or agency of a city, county, or city and county which is authorized by the governing body of the city, county, or city and county to hear appeals regarding the requirements of the city, county, or city and county relating to the use, maintenance and change of occupancy of buildings and structures, including requirements governing alteration, additions, repair, demolition and moving. In any area in which there is no such board or agency, "Housing appeals board" means the local appeals board having jurisdiction over the area.

**LOCAL APPEALS BOARD.** The board or agency of a city, county, or city and county which is authorized by the governing body of the city, county, or city and county to hear appeals regarding the building requirements of the city, county, or city and county. In any area in which there is no such board or agency, "Local appeals board" means the governing body of the city, county, or city and county having jurisdiction over the area.

**1.8.8.3 Appeals.** Except as otherwise provided in law, any person, firm or corporation adversely affected by a decision, order or determination by a city, county, or city and county relating to the application of building standards published in the California Building Standards Code, or any other applicable rule or regulation adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development, or any lawfully enacted ordinance by a city, county, or city and county, may appeal the issue for resolution to the local appeals board or housing appeals board as appropriate.

The local appeals board shall hear appeals relating to new building construction and the housing appeals board shall hear appeals relating to existing buildings.

## SECTION 1.8.9 UNSAFE BUILDINGS OR STRUCTURES

**1.8.9.1 Authority to enforce.** Subject to other provisions of law, the administration, enforcement, actions, proceedings, abatement, violations and penalties for unsafe buildings and structures are contained in the following statutes and regulations:

1. For applications subject to the State Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.1 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1. For enforcement related to accessory dwelling units, see Section 17980.12 operative until January 1, 2035.
2. For applications subject to the Mobilehome Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.2 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of

*Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000.*

3. For applications subject to the Special Occupancy Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.3 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000.
4. For applications subject to the Employee Housing Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.4 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600.
5. For applications subject to the Factory-Built Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000.

**1.8.9.2 Actions and proceedings.** Subject to other provisions of law, punishments, penalties and fines for violations of building standards are contained in the following statutes and regulations:

1. For applications subject to the State Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.1 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1.5, commencing with Section 17910 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 1.
2. For applications subject to the Mobilehome Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.2 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1, commencing with Section 18200 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2, commencing with Section 1000.
3. For applications subject to the Special Occupancy Parks Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.3 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3, commencing with Section 18860 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2.2, commencing with Section 2000.
4. For applications subject to the Employee Housing Act as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.4 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 1, commencing with Section 17000 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 3, commencing with Section 600.
5. For applications subject to the Factory-Built Housing Law as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5 of this code, refer to Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 6, commencing with Section 19960 and California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 1, commencing with Section 3000.

## **SECTION 1.8.10 OTHER BUILDING REGULATIONS**

**1.8.10.1 Existing structures.** Notwithstanding other provisions of law, the replacement, retention and extension of original materials and the use of original methods of construction for any existing building or accessory structure, or portions thereof, shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of this code and the California Existing Building Code, as adopted by the Department of Housing and Community Development. For additional information, see California Health and Safety Code, Sections 17912, 17920.3, 17922 and 17958.8.

**1.8.10.2 Moved structures.** Subject to the requirements of California Health and Safety Code Sections 17922, 17922.3 and 17958.9, local ordinances or regulations relating to a moved residential building or accessory structure thereto, shall permit the replacement, retention and extension of original materials and the use of original methods of construction so long as the structure does not become or continue to be a substandard building.

## **SECTION 1.9 DIVISION OF THE STATE ARCHITECT**

### **1.9.1 Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance.**

**General.** The purpose of this code is to ensure that barrier-free design is incorporated in all buildings, facilities, site work and other improvements to which this code applies in compliance with state law to ensure that these improvements are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities. Additions, alterations and structural repairs in all buildings and facilities shall comply with these provisions for new buildings, except as otherwise provided and specified herein.

The provisions of these regulations shall apply to any portable buildings leased or owned by a school district, and shall also apply to temporary and emergency buildings and facilities. Temporary buildings and facilities are not of permanent construction but are extensively used or are essential for public use for a period of time. Examples of temporary buildings or facilities covered include, but are not limited to: reviewing stands, temporary classrooms, bleacher areas, exhibit areas, temporary banking facilities, temporary health screening services or temporary safe pedestrian passageways around a construction site.

In addition, to incorporate standards at least as restrictive as those required by the federal government for barrier-free design under (1) Title III (Public Accommodations and Commercial Facilities), Subpart D (New Construction and Alteration) (see 28 C.F.R., Part 36), and (2) Title II (Public Entities), Section 35.151 (New Construction and Alterations) (see 28 C.F.R., Part 35) both from the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990, 2004 Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines, as adopted by the U.S. Department of Justice (see 36 C.F.R. Part 1191, Appendices B and D), and (3) under the Fair Housing Amendments Act of 1988.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

*Some of these regulations may be more stringent than state law in order to meet the federal requirement.*

**1.9.1.1 Application.** See Government Code commencing with Section 4450.

*Publicly funded buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities as follows:*

**1.9.1.1.1** All buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities constructed in the state by the use of state, county or municipal funds, or the funds of any political subdivision of the state. For public housing see Section 1.9.1.3.

**1.9.1.1.2** All buildings, structures and facilities that are leased, rented, contracted, sublet or hired by any municipal, county or state division of government, or by a special district. For public housing see Section 1.9.1.3.

**1.9.1.1.3** All existing publicly funded buildings and facilities when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such buildings or facilities. For detailed requirements on existing buildings, see Chapter 11B, Division 2, Section 11B-202. For public housing see Section 1.9.1.3.

**1.9.1.1.4** With respect to buildings, structures, sidewalks, curbs and related facilities not requiring a building permit, building standards published in the California Building Standards Code relating to access for persons with disabilities and other regulations adopted pursuant to Government Code Section 4450, and in effect at the time construction is commenced, shall be applicable.

**1.9.1.2 Application.** See Health and Safety Code commencing with Section 19952.

All privately funded public accommodations, as defined, and commercial facilities, as defined, shall be accessible to persons with disabilities as follows:

**Exception:** Certain types of privately funded multistory buildings do not require installation of an elevator to provide access above and below the first floor. See Chapter 11B.

**1.9.1.2.1** Any building, structure, facility, complex or improved area, or portions thereof, which are used by the general public.

**1.9.1.2.2** Any sanitary facilities which are made available for the public, clients or employees in such accommodations or facilities.

**1.9.1.2.3** Any curb or sidewalk intended for public use that is constructed in this state with private funds.

**1.9.1.2.4** All existing privately funded public accommodations when alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to such public accommodations as set forth under Chapter 11B.

**1.9.1.3 Application—Public housing.** See Government Code Section 12955.1(c) and the definition for public housing in Chapter 2.

### 1.9.1.4 Enforcing agency.

**1.9.1.4.1** The director of the Department of General Services where state funds are utilized for any project or where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivisions are utilized for the construction of elementary, secondary or community college projects.

**1.9.1.4.2** The governing bodies where funds of counties, municipalities or other political subdivisions are utilized except as otherwise provided above.

**1.9.1.4.3** The building department of every city, county or city and county within the territorial area of its city, county or city and county, where private funds are utilized. “Building department” means the department, bureau or officer charged with the enforcement of laws or ordinances regulating the erection or construction, or both the erection and construction, of buildings.

**1.9.1.5** Special conditions for persons with disabilities requiring appeals action ratification. Whenever reference is made in these regulations to this section, the findings and determinations required to be rendered by the local enforcing agency shall be subject to ratification through an appeals process.

**1.9.1.6 Authority cited**—Government Code Section 4450.

**1.9.1.7 Reference cited**—Government Code Sections 4450 through 4461 and 12955.1(c) and Health and Safety Code Sections 18949.1, 19952 through 19959.

**1.9.1.8 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this Subsection 1.9.1 will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym DSA-AC.

## 1.9.2 Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety.

### 1.9.2.1 DSA-SS Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety.

**Application**—Public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.

**Enforcing agency**—The Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety (DSA-SS) has been delegated the responsibility and authority by the Department of General Services to review and approve the design and observe the construction of public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.

**Authority cited**—Education Code Sections 17310 and 81142 and Health and Safety Code Section 16022.

**Reference**—Education Code Sections 17280 through 17317, and 81130 through 81147 and Health and Safety Code Sections 16000 through 16023.

### 1.9.2.1.1 Applicable administrative standards.

#### 1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations:

- 1.1. Sections 4-301 through 4-355, Group 1, and Sections 4-401 through 4-435, Group 2, Chapter 4 for public elementary and secondary schools and community colleges.

- 1.2. Sections 4-201 through 4-249, Chapter 4, for state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.
2. **Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations:** [applies to public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services building(s):]
  - 2.1. Sections 1.1 and 1.9.2.1 of Chapter 1, Division I.
  - 2.2. Sections 102.1, 102.2, 102.3, 102.4, 102.5, 104.9, 104.10, 104.11, 106.1, 107.2.5 and 110.3.6 of Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.9.2.1.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11 and 12, California Code of Regulations, for school buildings, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential service buildings.

The provisions of Title 24, Part 2, as adopted and amended by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

The Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 20, 21A, 22A, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33 and 35.

**1.9.2.1.3 Amendments.** Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety amendments in this code appear preceded with the acronym [DSA-SS].

**Exception:** Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A—Amendments appearing in these chapters without an acronym have been co-adopted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.

**1.9.2.1.4 Reference to other chapters.** Where reference is made within this code to sections in Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 21 and 22, the respective sections in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A shall apply instead.

#### **1.9.2.2 DSA-SS/CC Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges**

**Application—Community Colleges.** The Division of the State Architect has been delegated the authority by the Department of General Services to promulgate alternate building standards for application to community colleges, which a community college may elect to use in lieu of standards promulgated by DSA-SS in accordance with Section 1.9.2.1.

**Enforcing agency—Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC)**

The Division of the State Architect has been delegated the authority by the Department of General Services to review and approve the design and oversee construction of community colleges electing to use the alternative building standards as provided in this section.

**Authority cited—Education Code Section 81053.**

**Reference—Education Code Sections 81052, 81053 and 81130 through 81147.**

#### **1.9.2.2.1 Applicable administrative standards.**

##### **1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations:**

- 1.1. Sections 4-301 through 4-355, Group 1, and Sections 4-401 through 4-435, Group 2, Chapter 4.

##### **2. Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations:**

- 2.1. Sections 1.1 and 1.9.2 of Chapter 1, Division I.
- 2.2. Sections 102.1, 102.2, 102.3, 102.4, 102.5, 104.9, 104.10, 104.11, 106.1, 107.2.5 and 110.3.6 of Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.9.2.2.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10, 11 and 12, California Code of Regulations.

The Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC] adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17A, 18A, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33 and 35.

**1.9.2.2.3 Amendments.** Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges amendments in this code appear preceded with the acronym [DSA-SS/CC].

**Exception:** Chapters 17A, and 18A—Amendments appearing in these chapters without an acronym have been co-adopted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD.

**1.9.2.2.4 Reference to other chapters.** Where reference is made within this code to sections in Chapters 17 and 18, the respective sections in Chapters 17A and 18A shall apply instead.

## **SECTION 1.10 OFFICE OF STATEWIDE HEALTH PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT**

**1.10.1 OSHPD 1 and OSHPD 1R.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**Application—[OSHPD 1]** General acute care hospital buildings. **[OSHPD 1R]** Nonconforming hospital SPC or freestanding buildings that have been removed from acute-care service.

**Enforcing agency—Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).** The office shall enforce the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above stated facility types.

#### **1.10.1.1 Applicable administrative standards.**

1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapters 6 and 7.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

2. Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as indicated in the adoption matrix for Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.10.1.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.

The provisions of Title 24, Part 2, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

OSHPD 1 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 20, 21A, 22A, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33, 35 and Appendix L.

OSHPD 1R adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 30, 31, 32, 33 and 35.

**1.10.1.3 Identification of amendments.** For applications listed in Section 1.10.1, amendments appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 1], unless the entire chapter is applicable. For nonconforming hospital buildings removed from acute-care service, amendments are preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 1R].

**1.10.1.4 Reference to other chapters.** Where reference is made within this code to sections in Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 21 and 22, the respective sections in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A shall apply instead for hospital buildings under OSHPD 1.

**Authority**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129850.

**References**—Health and Safety Code Sections 19958, 127010, 127015, 129680, 1275 and 129675 through 130070.

**1.10.2 OSHPD 2, 2A and 2B.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**Application**—[OSHPD 2A] Skilled nursing facility and intermediate care facility buildings of single-story, wood-frame or light steel frame construction or buildings of single-story, wood-frame or light steel frame construction where only skilled nursing or intermediate care services are provided if the building is separated from a building housing other patients of the health facility receiving higher levels of care. [OSHPD 2B] Skilled nursing facility and intermediate care facility buildings of all other types. [OSHPD 2] The OSHPD 2 designation applies to both 2A and 2B.

**Enforcing agency**—Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall also enforce the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility type.

### 1.10.2.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.
2. Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as indicated in the adoption matrix for Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.10.2.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.

The provisions of Title 24, Part 2, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

OSHPD 2 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33 and 35.

**1.10.2.3 Identification of amendments.** For applications listed in Section 1.10.2, amendments appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 2].

**Authority**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129850.

**References**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129680.

**1.10.3 OSHPD 3.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**Application**—Licensed clinics and any freestanding building under a hospital license where outpatient clinical services are provided.

**Enforcing agency**—Local building department.

### 1.10.3.1 Applicable administrative standards.

1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.
2. Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as indicated in the adoption matrix for Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.10.3.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.

The provisions of Title 24, Part 2, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.3.

OSHPD 3 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapter 12.

**1.10.3.3 Identification of amendments.** For applications listed in Section 1.10.3, amendments appear in this code without the acronym [OSHPD 3]. Adoptions are shown in the adoption matrix.

**Authority**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015 and 1226.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**References**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 129885 and 1226, Government Code Section 54350 and State Constitution Article 11, Section 7.

**1.10.4 OSHPD 4.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**Application**—Correctional treatment centers.

**Enforcing agency**—Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall also enforce the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility types.

#### **1.10.4.1 Applicable administrative standards.**

1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.
2. Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as indicated in the adoption matrix for Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.10.4.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.

The provisions of Title 24, Part 2, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

OSHPD 4 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 20, 21A, 22A, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30, 31, 32, 33, 35 and Appendix L.

**1.10.4.3 Identification of amendments.** For applications listed in Section 1.10.4, amendments appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 4], unless the entire chapter is applicable.

**1.10.4.4 Reference to other chapters.** Where reference is made within this code to sections in Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 21 and 22, the respective sections in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A shall apply instead.

**Authority**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015 and 129790.

**References**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129675 through 130070.

**1.10.5 OSHPD 5.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**Application**—Acute psychiatric hospital buildings.

**Enforcing agency**—Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). The office shall also enforce the Division of the State Architect – Access Compliance regulations and the regulations of the Office of the State Fire Marshal for the above-stated facility type.

#### **1.10.5.1 Applicable administrative standards.**

1. Title 24, Part 1, California Code of Regulations: Chapter 7.
2. Title 24, Part 2, California Code of Regulations: Sections 1.1 and 1.10, Chapter 1, Division I, and as indicated in the adoption matrix for Chapter 1, Division II.

**1.10.5.2 Applicable building standards.** California Building Standards Code, Title 24, Parts 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10 and 11.

The provision of Title 24, Part 2, as adopted and amended by OSHPD, shall apply to the applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

OSHPD 5 adopts the following building standards in Title 24, Part 2:

Chapters 2 through 10, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 30, 32 and 33.

**1.10.5.3 Identification of amendments.** For applications listed in Section 1.10.5, amendments appear in this code preceded with the acronym [OSHPD 5].

**Authority**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 1275 and 129850.

**References**—Health and Safety Code Sections 127010, 127015, 129680, 1275 and 129675 through 130070.

## **SECTION 1.11 OFFICE OF THE STATE FIRE MARSHAL**

**1.11.1 SFM—Office of the State Fire Marshal.** Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.

**Application:**

**Institutional, educational or any similar occupancy.** Any building or structure used or intended for use as an asylum, jail, prison, mental hospital, hospital, sanitarium, home for the elderly, children's nursery, children's home or institution, school or any similar occupancy of any capacity.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Assembly or similar place of assemblage.** Any theater, dancehall, skating rink, auditorium, assembly hall, meeting hall, nightclub, fair building or similar place of assemblage where 50 or more persons may gather together in a building, room or structure for the purpose of amusement, entertainment, instruction, deliberation, worship, drinking or dining, awaiting transportation, or education.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Small family day-care homes.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 1597.45, 1597.54, 13143 and 17921.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### **Large family day-care homes.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 1597.46, 1597.54 and 17921.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

### **Residential facilities and residential facilities for the elderly.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13133.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

### **Any state institution or other state-owned or specified state-occupied building.**

### **Specified state-occupied buildings.** Any building, structure or area that meets any of the following criteria:

1. A building where the state has contracted into a build-to-suit lease.
2. A courthouse holding facility or trial court with a detention area.
3. A building used by the Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation (CDCR) as a community correctional reentry center.
4. 100 percent state occupied.
5. State-occupied areas in a state-leased building that is a high-rise and is 75 percent of the net area floor space or more occupied by state entities.
6. State-occupied areas in a building that contains 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ) or more space of state-leased Group H or Group L occupancy.
7. A state-leased building with facilities with the primary purpose of housing state records and/or state artifacts of historical significance.
8. Properties leased by California State University (CSU) or University of California (UC).
9. State institutions and their real property.
10. CAL FIRE occupied areas in leased buildings.
11. State-leased facilities where the governing body's fire protection services rely on an all-volunteer fire department.

Except as provided in Items 1 through 11, buildings shall become the responsibility of the local jurisdiction.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 13108, 13145, 13146, 16022.5 and 17921.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Sections 13108, 13143, 13145, 13146, 16022.5 and 17921.

### **High-Rise structures.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13211.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

### **Motion picture production studios.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.1.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

### **Organized camps.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 18897.3.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Residential.** All hotels, motels, lodging houses, apartment houses and dwellings, including congregate residences and buildings and structures accessory thereto.

Multiple-story structures existing on January 1, 1975, let for human habitation, including and limited to, hotels, motels and apartment houses, less than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest floor level having building access, wherein rooms used for sleeping are let above the ground floor.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 13143.2 and 17921.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Residential care facilities.** Certified family care homes, out-of-home placement facilities, halfway houses, drug and/or alcohol rehabilitation facilities and any building or structure used or intended for use as a home or institution for the housing of any person of any age when such person is referred to or placed within such home or institution for protective social care and supervision services by any governmental agency.

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.6.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Tents, awnings or other fabric enclosures used in connection with any occupancy.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13116.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Fire alarm devices, equipment and systems in connection with any occupancy.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13114.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Hazardous materials.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.9.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Flammable and combustible liquids.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.6.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143.

**Public School Automatic Fire Detection, Alarm and Sprinkler Systems.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Section 13143 and California Education Code Article 7.5, Sections 17074.50, 17074.52 and 17074.54.

**Reference**—Government Code Section 11152.5, Health and Safety Code Section 13143 and California Education Code Chapter 12.5, Leroy F. Greene School Facilities Act of 1998, Article 1.

**Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Area.**

**Authority cited**—Health and Safety Code Sections 13143, 13108.5(a) and 18949.2(b) and (c) and Government Code Section 51189.

**Reference**—Health and Safety Code Sections 13143, Government Code Sections 51176, 51177, 51178 and 51179 and Public Resources Code Sections 4201 through 4204.

**1.11.1.1 Adopting agency identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this Sub-section 1.11.1 will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym SFM.

**1.11.2 Duties and powers of the enforcing agency.**

**1.11.2.1 Enforcement.**

**1.11.2.1.1** The responsibility for enforcement of building standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal and published in the California Building Standards Code relating to fire and panic safety and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal shall, except as provided in Section 1.11.2.1.2, be as follows:

1. The city, county or city and county with jurisdiction in the area affected by the standard or regulation shall delegate the enforcement of the building standards relating to fire and panic safety and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal as they relate to Group R-3 occupancies, as described in Section 310.1 of Part 2 of the California Building Standards Code, to either of the following:
  - 1.1. The chief of the fire authority of the city, county or city and county, or an authorized representative.
  - 1.2. The chief building official of the city, county or city and county, or an authorized representative.
2. The chief of any city or county fire department or of any fire protection district, and authorized representatives, shall enforce within the jurisdiction the building standards and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal, except those described in Item 1 or 4.
3. The State Fire Marshal shall have authority to enforce the building standards and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal in areas outside of corporate cities and districts providing fire protection services.
4. The State Fire Marshal shall have authority to enforce the building standards and other regulations of the State Fire Marshal in corporate cities and districts providing fire protection services on request of the chief fire official or the governing body.
5. Any fee charged pursuant to the enforcement authority of this section shall not exceed the estimated reasonable cost of providing the service for which the fee is charged pursuant to Section 66014 of the Government Code.

**1.11.2.1.2** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13108, and except as otherwise provided in this section, building standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal published in the California Building Standards Code relating to fire and panic safety shall be enforced by the State Fire Marshal in all state-owned buildings, state-occupied buildings and state institutions throughout the state. Upon the written request of the chief fire

official of any city, county or fire protection district, the State Fire Marshal may authorize such chief fire official and his or her authorized representatives, in their geographical area of responsibility, to make fire prevention inspections of state-owned or state-occupied buildings, other than state institutions, for the purpose of enforcing the regulations relating to fire and panic safety adopted by the State Fire Marshal pursuant to this section and building standards relating to fire and panic safety published in the California Building Standards Code. Authorization from the State Fire Marshal shall be limited to those fire departments or fire districts which maintain a fire prevention bureau staffed by paid personnel.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13108, any requirement or order made by any chief fire official who is authorized by the State Fire Marshal to make fire prevention inspections of state-owned or state-occupied buildings, other than state institutions, may be appealed to the State Fire Marshal. The State Fire Marshal shall, upon receiving an appeal and subject to the provisions of Chapter 5 (commencing with Section 18945) of Part 2.5 of Division 13 of the Health and Safety Code, determine if the requirement or order made is reasonably consistent with the fire and panic safety regulations adopted by the State Fire Marshal and building standards relating to fire and panic safety published in the California Building Code.

Any person may request a code interpretation from the State Fire Marshal relative to the intent of any regulation or provision adopted by the State Fire Marshal. When the request relates to a specific project, occupancy or building, the State Fire Marshal shall review the issue with the appropriate local enforcing agency prior to rendering such code interpretation.

**1.11.2.1.3** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13112, any person who violates any order, rule or regulation of the State Fire Marshal is guilty of a misdemeanor punishable by a fine of not less than \$100.00 or more than \$500.00, or by imprisonment for not less than six months, or by both. A person is guilty of a separate offense each day during which he or she commits, continues or permits a violation of any provision of, or any order, rule or regulation of, the State Fire Marshal as contained in this code.

Any inspection authority who, in the exercise of his or her authority as a deputy State Fire Marshal, causes any legal complaints to be filed or any arrest to be made shall notify the State Fire Marshal immediately following such action.

**1.11.2.2 Right of entry.** The fire chief of any city, county or fire protection district, or such person's authorized representative, may enter any state institution or any other state-owned or state-occupied building for the purpose of preparing a fire suppression preplanning program or for the purpose of investigating any fire in a state-occupied building.

The State Fire Marshal, his or her deputies or salaried assistants, the chief of any city or county fire department

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

or fire protection district and his or her authorized representatives may enter any building or premises not used for dwelling purposes at any reasonable hour for the purpose of enforcing this chapter. The owner, lessee, manager or operator of any such building or premises shall permit the State Fire Marshal, his or her deputies or salaried assistants and the chief of any city or county fire department or fire protection district and his or her authorized representatives to enter and inspect them at the time and for the purpose stated in this section.

### **1.11.2.3 More restrictive fire and panic safety building standards.**

**1.11.2.3.1** Any fire protection district organized pursuant to Health and Safety Code Part 2.7 (commencing with Section 13800) of Division 12 may adopt building standards relating to fire and panic safety that are more stringent than those building standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal and contained in the California Building Standards Code. For these purposes, the district board shall be deemed a legislative body and the district shall be deemed a local agency. Any changes or modifications that are more stringent than the requirements published in the California Building Standards Code relating to fire and panic safety shall be subject to Section 1.1.8.1.

**1.11.2.3.2** Any fire protection district that proposes to adopt an ordinance pursuant to this section shall, not less than 30 days prior to noticing a proposed ordinance for public hearing, provide a copy of that ordinance, together with the adopted findings made pursuant to Section 1.11.2.3.1, to the city, county, or city and county where the ordinance will apply. The city, county, or city and county may provide the district with written comments, which shall become part of the fire protection district's public hearing record.

**1.11.2.3.3** The fire protection district shall transmit the adopted ordinance to the city, county, or city and county where the ordinance will apply. The legislative body of the city, county, or city and county may ratify, modify or deny an adopted ordinance and transmit its determination to the district within 15 days of the determination. Any modification or denial of an adopted ordinance shall include a written statement describing the reasons for any modifications or denial. No ordinance adopted by the district shall be effective until ratification by the city, county, or city and county where the ordinance will apply. Upon ratification of an adopted ordinance, the city, county or city and county shall file a copy of the findings of the district, and any findings of the city, county, or city and county, together with the adopted ordinance expressly marked and identified to which each finding refers, in accordance with Section 1.1.8.1(3).

**1.11.2.4 Request for alternate means of protection.** Requests for approval to use an alternative material, assembly or materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment or means of protection shall be made in writing to the enforcing agency by the owner or the owner's authorized representative and shall

be accompanied by a full statement of the conditions. Sufficient evidence or proof shall be submitted to substantiate any claim that may be made regarding its conformance. The enforcing agency may require tests and the submission of a test report from an approved testing organization as set forth in Title 19, California Code of Regulation, to substantiate the equivalency of the proposed alternative means of protection.

When a request for alternate means of protection involves hazardous materials, the authority having jurisdiction may consider implementation of the findings and recommendations identified in a Risk Management Plan (RMP) developed in accordance with Title 19, Division 2, Chapter 4.5, Article 3.

Approval of a request for use of an alternative material, assembly of materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment or means of protection made pursuant to these provisions shall be limited to the particular case covered by request and shall not be construed as establishing any precedent for any future request.

**1.11.2.5 Appeals.** When a request for an alternate means of protection has been denied by the enforcing agency, the applicant may file a written appeal to the State Fire Marshal for consideration of the applicant's proposal. In considering such appeal, the State Fire Marshal may seek the advice of the State Board of Fire Services. The State Fire Marshal shall, after considering all of the facts presented, including any recommendations of the State Board of Fire Services, determine if the proposal is for the purposes intended, at least equivalent to that specified in these regulations in quality, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability and safety, and shall transmit such findings and any recommendations to the applicant and to the enforcing agency.

## **1.11.3 Construction documents.**

**1.11.3.1 Public schools.** Plans and specifications for the construction, alteration or addition to any building owned, leased or rented by any public school district shall be submitted to the Division of the State Architect.

**1.11.3.2 Movable walls and partitions.** Plans or diagrams shall be submitted to the enforcing agency for approval before the installation of, or rearrangement of, any movable wall or partition in any occupancy. Approval shall be granted only if there is no increase in the fire hazard.

### **1.11.3.3 New construction high-rise buildings.**

1. Complete plans or specifications, or both, shall be prepared covering all work required to comply with new construction high-rise buildings. Such plans and specifications shall be submitted to the enforcing agency having jurisdiction.

2. All plans and specifications shall be prepared under the responsible charge of an architect or a civil or structural engineer authorized by law to develop construction plans and specifications, or by both such architect and engineer. Plans and specifications shall be prepared by an engineer duly qualified in that branch of engineering necessary to

perform such services. Administration of the work of construction shall be under the charge of the responsible architect or engineer except that where plans and specifications involve alterations or repairs, such work of construction may be administered by an engineer duly qualified to perform such services and holding a valid certificate under Chapter 7 (commencing with Section 65700) of Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code for performance of services in that branch of engineering in which said plans, specifications and estimates and work of construction are applicable.

This section shall not be construed as preventing the design of fire-extinguishing systems by persons holding a C-16 license issued pursuant to Division 3, Chapter 9, Business and Professions Code. In such instances, however, the responsibility charge of this section shall prevail.

#### **1.11.3.4 Existing high-rise buildings.**

1. Complete plans or specifications, or both, shall be prepared covering all work required by California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code for existing high-rise buildings. Such plans or specifications shall be submitted to the enforcing agency having jurisdiction.
2. When new construction is required to conform with the provisions of these regulations, complete plans or specifications, or both, shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of this subsection. As used in this section, "new construction" is not intended to include repairs, replacements or minor alterations which do not disrupt or appreciably add to or affect the structural aspects of the building.

**1.11.3.5 Retention of plans.** Refer to Building Standards Law, Health and Safety Code Sections 19850 and 19851 for permanent retention of plans.

#### **1.11.4 Fees.**

**1.11.4.1 Other fees.** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13146.2, a city, county or district which inspects a hotel, motel, lodging house or apartment house may charge and collect a fee for the inspection from the owner of the structure in an amount, as determined by the city, county or district, sufficient to pay its costs of that inspection.

**1.11.4.2 Large family day-care.** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 1597.46, Large Family Day-Care Homes, the local government shall process any required permit as economically as possible, and fees charged for review shall not exceed the costs of the review and permit process.

**1.11.4.3 High-Rise.** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13217, High-Rise Structure Inspection: Fees and costs, a local agency which inspects a high-rise structure pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13217 may charge and collect a fee for the inspection from the owner of the high-rise structure in an amount, as determined by the local agency, sufficient to pay its costs of that inspection.

**1.11.4.4 Fire clearance preinspection.** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13235, Fire Clearance Preinspection, fee, upon receipt of a request from a prospective licensee of a community care facility, as defined in Section 1502, of a residential care facility for the elderly, as defined in Section 1569.2, or of a child day care facility, as defined in Section 1596.750, the local fire enforcing agency, as defined in Section 13244, or State Fire Marshal, whichever has primary jurisdiction, shall conduct a preinspection of the facility prior to the final fire clearance approval. At the time of the preinspection, the primary fire enforcing agency shall price consultation and interpretation of the fire safety regulations and shall notify the prospective licensee of the facility in writing of the specific fire safety regulations which shall be enforced in order to obtain fire clearance approval. A fee equal to, but not exceeding, the actual cost of the preinspection services may be charged for the preinspection of a facility.

**1.11.4.5 Care facilities.** The primary fire enforcing agency shall complete the final fire clearance inspection for a community care facility, residential care facility for the elderly, or child day care facility within 30 days of receipt of the request for the final inspection, or as of the date the prospective facility requests the final licensure inspection by the State Department of Social Services, whichever is later.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13235, a preinspection fee equal to, but not exceeding, the actual cost of the preinspection services may be charged for the preinspection of a facility.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13131.5, a reasonable final inspection fee, not to exceed the actual cost of inspection services necessary to complete a final inspection may be charged for occupancies classified as residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFE).

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 1569.84, neither the State Fire Marshal nor any local public entity shall charge any fee for enforcing fire inspection regulations pursuant to state law or regulation or local ordinance, with respect to residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFE) which service six or fewer persons.

**1.11.4.6 Requests of the Office of the State Fire Marshal.** Whenever a local authority having jurisdiction requests that the State Fire Marshal perform plan review and/or inspection services related to a building permit, the applicable fees for such shall be payable to the Office of the State Fire Marshal.

**1.11.5 Inspections.** Work performed subject to the provisions of this code shall comply with the inspection requirements of Sections 110.1, 110.3, 110.3.4, 110.3.5, 110.3.6, 110.3.8, 110.3.9, 110.3.10, 110.5 and 110.6 as adopted by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.

**1.11.5.1 Existing Group I-1 or R occupancies.** Licensed 24-hour care in a Group I-1 or R occupancy in existence and originally classified under previously adopted state codes shall be reinspected under the appropriate previous code, provided there is no change in the use or character which would place the facility in a different occupancy group.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

**1.11.6 Certificate of Occupancy.** A Certificate of Occupancy shall be issued as specified in Section 111.

**Exception:** Certificates of occupancy are not required for work exempt from permits in accordance with Section 105.2 of the California Building Code.

**1.11.7 Temporary structures and uses.** See Section 108.

**1.11.8 Service utilities.** See Section 112.

**1.11.9 Stop work order.** See Section 115.

**1.11.10 Unsafe buildings, structures and equipment.** See Section 116.

**1.11.11 Adopting Agency Identification.** The provisions of this code applicable to buildings identified in this Section 1.11 will be identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables under the acronym SFM.

## SECTION 1.12 STATE LIBRARIAN

**1.12.1 Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.**

**Application**—Public library construction and renovation using funds from the California Library Construction and Renovation Bond Act of 1988.

**Enforcing agency**—State librarian.

**Authority cited**—Education Code Sections 19950 through 19981.

**Reference**—Education Code Sections 19950 through 19981.

## SECTION 1.13 DEPARTMENT OF WATER RESOURCES Reserved

## SECTION 1.14 CALIFORNIA STATE LANDS COMMISSION

**1.14.1 Specific scope of application of the agency responsible for enforcement, the enforcement agency and the specific authority to adopt and enforce such provisions of this code, unless otherwise stated.**

**Application**—Marine oil terminals.

**Enforcing agency**—California State Lands Commission.

**Authority cited**—Public Resources Code Section 8755.

**Reference**—Public Resources Code Section 8755.

## DIVISION II

# SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

### User notes:

**About this chapter:** Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts: Part 1—Scope and Application (Sections 101–102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections 103–116). Section 101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced (see Section 102.4).

This code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the code official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner. Chapter 1 is largely concerned with maintaining “due process of law” in enforcing the building performance criteria contained in the body of the code.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

**Note:** Sections adopted or amended by state agencies are specifically indicated by an agency banner.

## PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION

### SECTION 101 SCOPE AND GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**[A] 101.1 Title.** These regulations shall be known as the *Building Code* of [NAME OF JURISDICTION], hereinafter referred to as “this code.”

**[A] 101.2 Scope.** The provisions of this code shall apply to the construction, alteration, relocation, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, maintenance, removal and demolition of every building or structure or any appurtenances connected or attached to such buildings or structures.

**Exception:** Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above grade plane in height with a separate means of egress, and their accessory structures not more than three stories above grade plane in height, shall comply with this code or the *California Residential Code*.

**[A] 101.2.1 Appendices.** Provisions in the appendices shall not apply unless specifically adopted.

**[A] 101.3 Purpose.** The purpose of this code is to establish the minimum requirements to provide a reasonable level of safety, health and general welfare through structural strength, means of egress, stability, sanitation, light and ventilation, energy conservation, and for providing a reasonable level of life safety and property protection from the hazards of fire, explosion or dangerous conditions, and to provide a reasonable level of safety to fire fighters and emergency responders during emergency operations.

**[A] 101.4 Referenced codes.** The other codes specified in Sections 101.4.1 through 101.4.7 and referenced elsewhere in this code shall be considered to be part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference.

**[A] 101.4.1 Gas.** The provisions of the *California Mechanical Code* shall apply to the installation of gas

piping from the point of delivery, gas appliances and related accessories as covered in this code. These requirements apply to gas piping systems extending from the point of delivery to the inlet connections of appliances and the installation and operation of residential and commercial gas appliances and related accessories.

**[A] 101.4.2 Mechanical.** The provisions of the *California Mechanical Code* shall apply to the installation, alterations, repairs and replacement of mechanical systems, including equipment, appliances, fixtures, fittings and appurtenances, including ventilating, heating, cooling, air-conditioning and refrigeration systems, incinerators and other energy-related systems.

**[A] 101.4.3 Plumbing.** The provisions of the *California Plumbing Code* shall apply to the installation, alteration, repair and replacement of plumbing systems, including equipment, appliances, fixtures, fittings and appurtenances, and where connected to a water or sewage system and all aspects of a medical gas system. The provisions of the *California Plumbing Code* shall apply to private sewage disposal systems.

**[A] 101.4.4 Property maintenance.** The provisions of the *California Existing Building Code* shall apply to existing structures and premises; equipment and facilities; light, ventilation, space heating, sanitation, life and fire safety hazards; responsibilities of owners, operators and occupants; and occupancy of existing premises and structures.

**[A] 101.4.5 Fire prevention.** The provisions of the *California Fire Code* shall apply to matters affecting or relating to structures, processes and premises from the hazard of fire and explosion arising from the storage, handling or use of structures, materials or devices; from conditions hazardous to life, property or public welfare in the occupancy of structures or premises; and from the construction, extension, repair, alteration or removal of fire suppression, automatic sprinkler systems and alarm systems or fire hazards in the structure or on the premises from occupancy or operation.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

**[A] 101.4.6 Energy.** The provisions of the *California Energy Code* shall apply to all matters governing the design and construction of buildings for energy efficiency.

**[A] 101.4.7 Existing buildings.** The provisions of the *California Existing Building Code* shall apply to matters governing the repair, alteration, change of occupancy, addition to and relocation of existing buildings.

**[OSHPD 1]** *The provisions of Chapters 2A, 3A, 4A and 5A of the California Existing Building Code shall apply to all matters governing the repairs, alterations, change of occupancy, additions and relocation of existing structures and portions thereof under OSHPD jurisdiction. All references to Chapters 3, 4 and 5 of the California Existing Building Code shall be replaced by equivalent provisions in Chapters 3A, 4A and 5A.*

**[OSHPD 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** *The provisions of the California Existing Building Code, Chapters 2, 3, 4 and 5 shall apply to all matters governing the repairs, alterations, change of occupancy, additions and relocation of existing structures and portions thereof under OSHPD jurisdiction.*

## SECTION 102 APPLICABILITY

**[A] 102.1 General.** Where there is a conflict between a general requirement and a specific requirement, the specific requirement shall be applicable. Where, in any specific case, different sections of this code specify different materials, methods of construction or other requirements, the most restrictive shall govern.

**[A] 102.2 Other laws.** The provisions of this code shall not be deemed to nullify any provisions of local, state or federal law.

**[A] 102.3 Application of references.** References to chapter or section numbers, or to provisions not specifically identified by number, shall be construed to refer to such chapter, section or provision of this code.

**[A] 102.4 Referenced codes and standards.** The codes and standards referenced in this code shall be considered to be part of the requirements of this code to the prescribed extent of each such reference and as further regulated in Sections 102.4.1 through 102.4.4.

**[A] 102.4.1 Conflicts.** Where conflicts occur between provisions of this code and referenced codes and standards, the provisions of this code shall apply.

**[A] 102.4.2 Provisions in referenced codes and standards.** Where the extent of the reference to a referenced code or standard includes subject matter that is within the scope of this code or the *California Codes* specified in Section 101.4, the provisions of this code or the *California Codes* specified in Section 101.4, as applicable, shall take precedence over the provisions in the referenced code or standard.

**102.4.3 Code references.** **[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4, & 5, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]** *All reference to International*

*Codes or other similar codes in referenced standards shall be replaced by equivalent provisions in the California Building Standards Codes.*

**102.4.4 Reference in standards.** **[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4, & 5, DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]** *All references listed in reference standards shall be replaced by referenced standards listed in Chapter 35 of this code, where applicable, and shall include all amendments to the reference standards in this code.*

**[A] 102.5 Partial invalidity.** In the event that any part or provision of this code is held to be illegal or void, this shall not have the effect of making void or illegal any of the other parts or provisions.

**[A] 102.6 Existing structures.** The legal occupancy of any structure existing on the date of adoption of this code shall be permitted to continue without change, except as otherwise specifically provided in this code, the *California Existing Building Code* or the *California Fire Code*.

**[A] 102.6.1 Buildings not previously occupied.** A building or portion of a building that has not been previously occupied or used for its intended purpose in accordance with the laws in existence at the time of its completion shall comply with the provisions of this code or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, for new construction or with any current permit for such occupancy.

**[A] 102.6.2 Buildings previously occupied.** The legal occupancy of any building existing on the date of adoption of this code shall be permitted to continue without change, except as otherwise specifically provided in this code, the *California Fire Code* or *California Existing Building Code*, or as is deemed necessary by the building official for the general safety and welfare of the occupants and the public.

## PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT

## SECTION 103 CODE COMPLIANCE AGENCY

**[A] 103.1 Creation of enforcement agency.** The **[INSERT NAME OF DEPARTMENT]** is hereby created and the official in charge thereof shall be known as the building official. The function of the agency shall be the implementation, administration and enforcement of the provisions of this code.

**[A] 103.2 Appointment.** The building official shall be appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction.

**[A] 103.3 Deputies.** In accordance with the prescribed procedures of this jurisdiction and with the concurrence of the appointing authority, the building official shall have the authority to appoint a deputy building official, other related technical officers, inspectors and other employees. Such employees shall have powers as delegated by the building official.

## SECTION 104

### DUTIES AND POWERS OF BUILDING OFFICIAL

**[A] 104.1 General.** The building official is hereby authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this code. The building official shall have the authority to render interpretations of this code and to adopt policies and procedures in order to clarify the application of its provisions. Such interpretations, policies and procedures shall be in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code. Such policies and procedures shall not have the effect of waiving requirements specifically provided for in this code.

**[A] 104.2 Applications and permits.** The building official shall receive applications, review construction documents and issue permits for the erection, and alteration, demolition and moving of buildings and structures, inspect the premises for which such permits have been issued and enforce compliance with the provisions of this code.

**[A] 104.2.1 Determination of substantially improved or substantially damaged existing buildings and structures in flood hazard areas.** For applications for reconstruction, rehabilitation, repair, alteration, addition or other improvement of existing buildings or structures located in flood hazard areas, the building official shall determine if the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage. Where the building official determines that the proposed work constitutes substantial improvement or repair of substantial damage, and where required by this code, the building official shall require the building to meet the requirements of Section 1612 or Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*, as applicable.

**[A] 104.3 Notices and orders.** The building official shall issue necessary notices or orders to ensure compliance with this code.

**[A] 104.4 Inspections.** The building official shall make the required inspections, or the building official shall have the authority to accept reports of inspection by approved agencies or individuals. Reports of such inspections shall be in writing and be certified by a responsible officer of such approved agency or by the responsible individual. The building official is authorized to engage such expert opinion as deemed necessary to report on unusual technical issues that arise, subject to the approval of the appointing authority.

**[A] 104.5 Identification.** The building official shall carry proper identification when inspecting structures or premises in the performance of duties under this code.

**[A] 104.6 Right of entry.** Where it is necessary to make an inspection to enforce the provisions of this code, or where the building official has reasonable cause to believe that there exists in a structure or on a premises a condition that is contrary to or in violation of this code that makes the structure or premises unsafe, dangerous or hazardous, the building official is authorized to enter the structure or premises at reasonable times to inspect or to perform the duties imposed by this code, provided that if such structure or premises be occupied that credentials be presented to the occupant and entry requested. If such structure or premises is unoccupied, the building official shall first make a reasonable effort to

locate the owner or other person having charge or control of the structure or premises and request entry. If entry is refused, the building official shall have recourse to the remedies provided by law to secure entry.

**[A] 104.7 Department records.** The building official shall keep official records of applications received, permits and certificates issued, fees collected, reports of inspections, and notices and orders issued. Such records shall be retained in the official records for the period required for retention of public records.

**[A] 104.8 Liability.** The building official, member of the board of appeals or employee charged with the enforcement of this code, while acting for the jurisdiction in good faith and without malice in the discharge of the duties required by this code or other pertinent law or ordinance, shall not thereby be civilly or criminally rendered liable personally and is hereby relieved from personal liability for any damage accruing to persons or property as a result of any act or by reason of an act or omission in the discharge of official duties.

**[A] 104.8.1 Legal defense.** Any suit or criminal complaint instituted against an officer or employee because of an act performed by that officer or employee in the lawful discharge of duties and under the provisions of this code shall be defended by legal representatives of the jurisdiction until the final termination of the proceedings. The building official or any subordinate shall not be liable for cost in any action, suit or proceeding that is instituted in pursuance of the provisions of this code.

**[A] 104.9 Approved materials and equipment.** Materials, equipment and devices approved by the building official shall be constructed and installed in accordance with such approval.

**[A] 104.9.1 Used materials and equipment.** Materials that are reused shall comply with the requirements of this code for new materials. Used equipment and devices shall not be reused unless approved by the building official.

**[A] 104.10 Modifications.** Where there are practical difficulties involved in carrying out the provisions of this code, the building official shall have the authority to grant modifications for individual cases, upon application of the owner or the owner's authorized agent, provided that the building official shall first find that special individual reason makes the strict letter of this code impractical, the modification is in compliance with the intent and purpose of this code and that such modification does not lessen health, accessibility, life and fire safety or structural requirements. The details of action granting modifications shall be recorded and entered in the files of the department of building safety.

**[A] 104.10.1 Flood hazard areas.** The building official shall not grant modifications to any provision required in flood hazard areas as established by Section 1612.3 unless a determination has been made that:

1. A showing of good and sufficient cause that the unique characteristics of the size, configuration or topography of the site render the elevation standards of Section 1612 inappropriate.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

2. A determination that failure to grant the variance would result in exceptional hardship by rendering the lot undevelopable.
3. A determination that the granting of a variance will not result in increased flood heights, additional threats to public safety, extraordinary public expense, cause fraud on or victimization of the public, or conflict with existing laws or ordinances.
4. A determination that the variance is the minimum necessary to afford relief, considering the flood hazard.
5. Submission to the applicant of written notice specifying the difference between the design flood elevation and the elevation to which the building is to be built, stating that the cost of flood insurance will be commensurate with the increased risk resulting from the reduced floor elevation, and stating that construction below the design flood elevation increases risks to life and property.

**[A] 104.11 Alternative materials, design and methods of construction and equipment.** The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the installation of any material or to prohibit any design or method of construction not specifically prescribed by this code, provided that any such alternative has been approved. An alternative material, design or method of construction shall be approved where the building official finds that the proposed alternative meets all of the following:

1. The alternative material, design or method of construction is satisfactory and complies with the intent of the provisions of this code,
2. The material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, not less than the equivalent of that prescribed in this code as it pertains to the following:
  - 2.1.Quality.
  - 2.2.Strength.
  - 2.3.Effectiveness.
  - 2.4.Fire resistance.
  - 2.5.Durability.
  - 2.6.Safety.

Where the alternative material, design or method of construction is not approved, the building official shall respond in writing, stating the reasons why the alternative was not approved.

**[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** Alternative system shall satisfy ASCE 7 Section 1.3, unless more restrictive requirements are established by this code for an equivalent system.

**[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** Alternative systems shall also satisfy the California Administrative Code, Section 4-304.

**[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** Alternative systems shall also satisfy the California Administrative Code, Section 7-104.

**[A] 104.11.1 Research reports.** Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of materials or assem-

blies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

**[A] 104.11.2 Tests.** Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this code, or evidence that a material or method does not conform to the requirements of this code, or in order to substantiate claims for alternative materials or methods, the building official shall have the authority to require tests as evidence of compliance to be made without expense to the jurisdiction. Test methods shall be as specified in this code or by other recognized test standards. In the absence of recognized and accepted test methods, the building official shall approve the testing procedures. Tests shall be performed by an approved agency. Reports of such tests shall be retained by the building official for the period required for retention of public records.

**104.11.3 Peer review.** **[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** When peer review is required for new or existing buildings, it shall be performed pursuant to Section 1617A.1.41.

**104.11.4 Earthquake monitoring instruments.** **[OSHPD 1 & 4]** The enforcement agency may require earthquake monitoring instruments for any building that receives approval of an alternative system for the Lateral Force Resisting System (LFRS). There shall be a sufficient number of instruments to characterize the response of the building during an earthquake and shall include at least one tri-axial free field instrument or equivalent. A proposal for instrumentation and equipment specifications shall be forwarded to the enforcement agency for review and approval.

The instruments shall be interconnected for common start and common timing. Each instrument shall be located so that access is maintained at all times and is unobstructed by room contents. A sign stating "MAINTAIN CLEAR ACCESS TO THIS INSTRUMENT" shall be posted in a conspicuous location.

The Owner of the building shall be responsible for the implementation of the instrumentation program. Maintenance and service of the instruments shall be in accordance with Appendix L, Section 1.101.3 of Part 2, Volume 2 of the California Building Code.

## SECTION 105 PERMITS

**[A] 105.1 Required.** Any owner or owner's authorized agent who intends to construct, enlarge, alter, repair, move, demolish or change the occupancy of a building or structure, or to erect, install, enlarge, alter, repair, remove, convert or replace any electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing system, the installation of which is regulated by this code, or to cause any such work to be performed, shall first make application to the building official and obtain the required permit.

**[A] 105.1.1 Annual permit.** Instead of an individual permit for each alteration to an already approved electrical, gas, mechanical or plumbing installation, the building official is authorized to issue an annual permit upon application therefor to any person, firm or corporation regularly

employing one or more qualified tradespersons in the building, structure or on the premises owned or operated by the applicant for the permit.

**[A] 105.1.2 Annual permit records.** The person to whom an annual permit is issued shall keep a detailed record of alterations made under such annual permit. The building official shall have access to such records at all times or such records shall be filed with the building official as designated.

**[A] 105.2 Work exempt from permit.** Exemptions from permit requirements of this code shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction. Permits shall not be required for the following:

#### Building:

1. One-story detached accessory structures used as tool and storage sheds, playhouses and similar uses, provided that the floor area *does not exceed 120 square feet (11.15 m<sup>2</sup>)*. *It is permissible that these structures still be regulated by Section 710A, despite exemption from permit.*
2. Fences not over 7 feet (2134 mm) high.
3. Oil derricks.
4. Retaining walls that are not over 4 feet (1219 mm) in height measured from the bottom of the footing to the top of the wall, unless supporting a surcharge or impounding Class I, II or IIIA liquids.
5. Water tanks supported directly on grade if the capacity is not greater than 5,000 gallons (18 925 L) and the ratio of height to diameter or width is not greater than 2:1.
6. Sidewalks and driveways not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above adjacent grade, and not over any basement or story below and are not part of an accessible route.
7. Painting, papering, tiling, carpeting, cabinets, counter tops and similar finish work.
8. Temporary motion picture, television and theater stage sets and scenery.
9. Prefabricated swimming pools accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy that are less than 24 inches (610 mm) deep, are not greater than 5,000 gallons (18 925 L) and are installed entirely above ground.
10. Shade cloth structures constructed for nursery or agricultural purposes, not including service systems.
11. Swings and other playground equipment accessory to detached one- and two-family dwellings.
12. Window awnings in Group R-3 and U occupancies, supported by an exterior wall that do not project more than 54 inches (1372 mm) from the exterior wall and do not require additional support.

13. Nonfixed and movable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions not over 5 feet 9 inches (1753 mm) in height.

#### Electrical:

1. **Repairs and maintenance:** Minor repair work, including the replacement of lamps or the connection of approved portable electrical equipment to approved permanently installed receptacles.
2. **Radio and television transmitting stations:** The provisions of this code shall not apply to electrical equipment used for radio and television transmissions, but do apply to equipment and wiring for a power supply and the installations of towers and antennas.
3. **Temporary testing systems:** A *permit* shall not be required for the installation of any temporary system required for the testing or servicing of electrical equipment or apparatus.

#### Gas:

1. Portable heating appliance.
2. Replacement of any minor part that does not alter approval of equipment or make such equipment unsafe.

#### Mechanical:

1. Portable heating appliance.
2. Portable ventilation equipment.
3. Portable cooling unit.
4. Steam, hot or chilled water piping within any heating or cooling equipment regulated by this code.
5. Replacement of any part that does not alter its approval or make it unsafe.
6. Portable evaporative cooler.
7. Self-contained refrigeration system containing 10 pounds (4.54 kg) or less of refrigerant and actuated by motors of 1 horsepower (0.75 kW) or less.

#### Plumbing:

1. The stopping of leaks in drains, water, soil, waste or vent pipe, provided, however, that if any concealed trap, drain pipe, water, soil, waste or vent pipe becomes defective and it becomes necessary to remove and replace the same with new material, such work shall be considered as new work and a permit shall be obtained and inspection made as provided in this code.
2. The clearing of stoppages or the repairing of leaks in pipes, valves or fixtures and the removal and re-installation of water closets, provided that such repairs do not involve or require the replacement or rearrangement of valves, pipes or fixtures.

**[A] 105.2.1 Emergency repairs.** Where equipment replacements and repairs must be performed in an emergency situation, the permit application shall be submitted

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

within the next working business day to the building official.

**[A] 105.2.2 Public service agencies.** A permit shall not be required for the installation, alteration or repair of generation, transmission, distribution or metering or other related equipment that is under the ownership and control of public service agencies by established right.

**[A] 105.3 Application for permit.** To obtain a permit, the applicant shall first file an application therefor in writing on a form furnished by the department of building safety for that purpose. Such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the work to be covered by the permit for which application is made.
2. Describe the land on which the proposed work is to be done by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the proposed building or work.
3. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed work is intended.
4. Be accompanied by construction documents and other information as required in Section 107.
5. State the valuation of the proposed work.
6. Be signed by the applicant, or the applicant's authorized agent.
7. Give such other data and information as required by the building official.

**[A] 105.3.1 Action on application.** The building official shall examine or cause to be examined applications for permits and amendments thereto within a reasonable time after filing. If the application or the construction documents do not conform to the requirements of pertinent laws, the building official shall reject such application in writing, stating the reasons therefor. If the building official is satisfied that the proposed work conforms to the requirements of this code and laws and ordinances applicable thereto, the building official shall issue a permit therefor as soon as practicable.

**[A] 105.3.2 Time limitation of application.** An application for a permit for any proposed work shall be deemed to have been abandoned 180 days after the date of filing, unless such application has been pursued in good faith or a permit has been issued; except that the building official is authorized to grant one or more extensions of time for additional periods not exceeding 90 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated. *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Time limitation shall be in accordance with the California Administrative Code, Chapter 7, Section 7-129.*

**[A] 105.4 Validity of permit.** The issuance or granting of a permit shall not be construed to be a permit for, or an approval of, any violation of any of the provisions of this code or of any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. Permits presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. The issuance of a permit based on construction documents and other data shall not prevent the building offi-

cial from requiring the correction of errors in the construction documents and other data. The building official is authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure where in violation of this code or of any other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

**[A] 105.5 Expiration.** Every permit issued shall become invalid unless the work on the site authorized by such permit is commenced within 180 days after its issuance, or if the work authorized on the site by such permit is suspended or abandoned for a period of 180 days after the time the work is commenced. The building official is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time, for periods not more than 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated.

**105.5.1 Expiration.** *[BSC] On or after January 1, 2019, every permit issued shall become invalid unless the work on the site authorized by such permit is commenced within 12 months after its issuance, or if the work authorized on the site by such permit is suspended or abandoned for a period of 12 months after the time the work is commenced. The building official is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time, for periods not more than 180 days each. The extension shall be requested in writing and justifiable cause demonstrated. (See Health and Safety Code Section 18938.5 and 18938.6.)*

**[A] 105.6 Suspension or revocation.** The building official is authorized to suspend or revoke a permit issued under the provisions of this code wherever the permit is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information, or in violation of any ordinance or regulation or any of the provisions of this code.

**[A] 105.7 Placement of permit.** The building permit or copy shall be kept on the site of the work until the completion of the project.

## SECTION 106 FLOOR AND ROOF DESIGN LOADS

**[A] 106.1 Live loads posted.** In commercial, institutional or industrial buildings, for each floor or portion thereof designed for live loads exceeding 50 psf ( $2.40 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), such design live loads shall be conspicuously posted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent in that part of each story in which they apply, using durable signs. It shall be unlawful to remove or deface such notices. *[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] These posting requirements also apply to school and state-owned essential services buildings as regulated by DSA.*

**106.1.1 Snow load posting.** *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Snow loads used in design shall be posted as for live loads.*

**106.1.2 Snow load posting.** *[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] When design snow loads at exterior balconies, decks and other elevated walking surfaces exceed 50 psf, the design snow loads shall be posted as for live loads. When design roof (not ground) snow loads exceed 20 psf, the roof design snow loads for each roof level of the building shall similarly be conspicuously posted with signs stating the maximum design roof snow loads.*

**[A] 106.2 Issuance of certificate of occupancy.** A certificate of occupancy required by Section 111 shall not be issued until the floor load signs, required by Section 106.1, have been installed.

**[A] 106.3 Restrictions on loading.** It shall be unlawful to place, or cause or permit to be placed, on any floor or roof of a building, structure or portion thereof, a load greater than is permitted by this code.

## SECTION 107 CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

**[A] 107.1 General.** Submittal documents consisting of construction documents, statement of special inspections, geotechnical report and other data shall be submitted in two or more sets, or in a digital format where allowed by the building official, with each permit application. The construction documents shall be prepared by a registered design professional where required by the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed. Where special conditions exist, the building official is authorized to require additional construction documents to be prepared by a registered design professional.

**Exception:** The building official is authorized to waive the submission of construction documents and other data not required to be prepared by a registered design professional if it is found that the nature of the work applied for is such that review of construction documents is not necessary to obtain compliance with this code.

**[A] 107.2 Construction documents.** Construction documents shall be in accordance with Sections 107.2.1 through 107.2.8.

**[A] 107.2.1 Information on construction documents.** Construction documents shall be dimensioned and drawn on suitable material. Electronic media documents are permitted to be submitted where approved by the building official. Construction documents shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the building official.

**[A] 107.2.2 Fire protection system shop drawings.** Shop drawings for the fire protection systems shall be submitted to indicate conformance to this code and the construction documents and shall be approved prior to the start of system installation. Shop drawings shall contain all information as required by the referenced installation standards in Chapter 9.

**[A] 107.2.3 Means of egress.** The construction documents shall show in sufficient detail the location, construction, size and character of all portions of the means of egress including the path of the exit discharge to the public way in compliance with the provisions of this code. In other than occupancies in Groups R-2, R-3, and I-1, the construction documents shall designate the number of occupants to be accommodated on every floor, and in all rooms and spaces.

**[A] 107.2.4 Exterior wall envelope.** Construction documents for all buildings shall describe the exterior wall envelope in sufficient detail to determine compliance with this code. The construction documents shall provide details of the exterior wall envelope as required, including flashing, intersections with dissimilar materials, corners, end details, control joints, intersections at roof, eaves or parapets, means of drainage, water-resistive barrier and details around openings.

The construction documents shall include manufacturer's installation instructions that provide supporting documentation that the proposed penetration and opening details described in the construction documents maintain the weather resistance of the exterior wall envelope. The supporting documentation shall fully describe the exterior wall system that was tested, where applicable, as well as the test procedure used.

**[A] 107.2.5 Exterior balconies and elevated walking surfaces.** Where balconies or other elevated walking surfaces have weather-exposed surfaces, and the structural framing is protected by an impervious moisture barrier, the construction documents shall include details for all elements of the impervious moisture barrier system. The construction documents shall include manufacturer's installation instructions.

**[A] 107.2.6 Site plan.** The construction documents submitted with the application for permit shall be accompanied by a site plan showing to scale the size and location of new construction and existing structures on the site, distances from lot lines, the established street grades and the proposed finished grades and, as applicable, flood hazard areas, floodways, and design flood elevations; and it shall be drawn in accordance with an accurate boundary line survey. In the case of demolition, the site plan shall show construction to be demolished and the location and size of existing structures and construction that are to remain on the site or plot. The building official is authorized to waive or modify the requirement for a site plan where the application for permit is for alteration or repair or where otherwise warranted.

**[A] 107.2.6.1 Design flood elevations.** Where design flood elevations are not specified, they shall be established in accordance with Section 1612.3.1.

**[A] 107.2.7 Structural information.** The construction documents shall provide the information specified in Section 1603.

**107.2.8 Relocatable buildings.** Construction documents for relocatable buildings shall comply with Section 3112.

**[A] 107.3 Examination of documents.** The building official shall examine or cause to be examined the accompanying submittal documents and shall ascertain by such examinations whether the construction indicated and described is in accordance with the requirements of this code and other pertinent laws or ordinances.

**[A] 107.3.1 Approval of construction documents.** When the building official issues a permit, the construction documents shall be approved, in writing or by stamp, as

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

“Reviewed for Code Compliance.” One set of construction documents so reviewed shall be retained by the building official. The other set shall be returned to the applicant, shall be kept at the site of work and shall be open to inspection by the building official or a duly authorized representative.

**[A] 107.3.2 Previous approvals.** This code shall not require changes in the construction documents, construction or designated occupancy of a structure for which a lawful permit has been heretofore issued or otherwise lawfully authorized, and the construction of which has been pursued in good faith within 180 days after the effective date of this code and has not been abandoned.

**[A] 107.3.3 Phased approval.** The building official is authorized to issue a permit for the construction of foundations or any other part of a building or structure before the construction documents for the whole building or structure have been submitted, provided that adequate information and detailed statements have been filed complying with pertinent requirements of this code. The holder of such permit for the foundation or other parts of a building or structure shall proceed at the holder’s own risk with the building operation and without assurance that a permit for the entire structure will be granted.

**[A] 107.3.4 Design professional in responsible charge.** Where it is required that documents be prepared by a registered design professional, the building official shall be authorized to require the owner or the owner’s authorized agent to engage and designate on the building permit application a registered design professional who shall act as the registered design professional in responsible charge. If the circumstances require, the owner or the owner’s authorized agent shall designate a substitute registered design professional in responsible charge who shall perform the duties required of the original registered design professional in responsible charge. The building official shall be notified in writing by the owner or the owner’s authorized agent if the registered design professional in responsible charge is changed or is unable to continue to perform the duties.

The registered design professional in responsible charge shall be responsible for reviewing and coordinating submittal documents prepared by others, including phased and deferred submittal items, for compatibility with the design of the building.

**[A] 107.3.4.1 Deferred submittals.** Deferral of any submittal items shall have the prior approval of the building official. The registered design professional in responsible charge shall list the deferred submittals on the construction documents for review by the building official.

Documents for deferred submittal items shall be submitted to the registered design professional in responsible charge who shall review them and forward them to the building official with a notation indicating that the deferred submittal documents have been reviewed and found to be in general conformance to the design of the building. The deferred submittal items

shall not be installed until the deferred submittal documents have been approved by the building official. *[OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5] Deferred submittals shall be in accordance with the California Administrative Code, Chapter 7, Section 7-126.*

**[A] 107.4 Amended construction documents.** Work shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents, and any changes made during construction that are not in compliance with the approved construction documents shall be resubmitted for approval as an amended set of construction documents.

**[A] 107.5 Retention of construction documents.** One set of approved construction documents shall be retained by the building official for a period of not less than 180 days from date of completion of the permitted work, or as required by state or local laws.

## SECTION 108 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND USES

**[A] 108.1 General.** The building official is authorized to issue a permit for temporary structures and temporary uses. Such permits shall be limited as to time of service, but shall not be permitted for more than 180 days. The building official is authorized to grant extensions for demonstrated cause.

**[A] 108.2 Conformance.** Temporary structures and uses shall comply with the requirements in Section 3103.

**[A] 108.3 Temporary power.** The building official is authorized to give permission to temporarily supply and use power in part of an electric installation before such installation has been fully completed and the final certificate of completion has been issued. The part covered by the temporary certificate shall comply with the requirements specified for temporary lighting, heat or power in NFPA 70.

**[A] 108.4 Termination of approval.** The building official is authorized to terminate such permit for a temporary structure or use and to order the temporary structure or use to be discontinued.

## SECTION 109 FEES

**[A] 109.1 Payment of fees.** A permit shall not be valid until the fees prescribed by law have been paid, nor shall an amendment to a permit be released until the additional fee, if any, has been paid.

**[A] 109.2 Schedule of permit fees.** Where a permit is required, a fee for each permit shall be paid as required, in accordance with the schedule as established by the applicable governing authority.

**[A] 109.3 Permit valuations.** The applicant for a permit shall provide an estimated permit value at time of application. Permit valuations shall reflect the total value of work, including materials and labor, for which the permit is being issued, such as electrical, gas, mechanical, plumbing equipment and permanent systems. If, in the opinion of the building official, the valuation is underestimated on the application, the permit

shall be denied, unless the applicant can show detailed estimates to meet the approval of the building official. Final building permit valuation shall be set by the building official.

**[A] 109.4 Work commencing before permit issuance.** Any person who commences any work before obtaining the necessary permits shall be subject to a fee established by the building official that shall be in addition to the required permit fees.

**[A] 109.5 Related fees.** The payment of the fee for the construction, alteration, removal or demolition for work done in connection to or concurrently with the work authorized by a building permit shall not relieve the applicant or holder of the permit from the payment of other fees that are prescribed by law.

**[A] 109.6 Refunds.** The building official is authorized to establish a refund policy.

## SECTION 110 INSPECTIONS

**[A] 110.1 General.** Construction or work for which a permit is required shall be subject to inspection by the building official and such construction or work shall remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes until approved. Approval as a result of an inspection shall not be construed to be an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Inspections presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid. It shall be the duty of the owner or the owner's authorized agent to cause the work to remain visible and able to be accessed for inspection purposes. Neither the building official nor the jurisdiction shall be liable for expense entailed in the removal or replacement of any material required to allow inspection.

**[A] 110.2 Preliminary inspection.** Before issuing a permit, the building official is authorized to examine or cause to be examined buildings, structures and sites for which an application has been filed.

**[A] 110.3 Required inspections.** The building official, upon notification, shall make the inspections set forth in Sections 110.3.1 through 110.3.12.

**[A] 110.3.1 Footing and foundation inspection.** Footing and foundation inspections shall be made after excavations for footings are complete and any required reinforcing steel is in place. For concrete foundations, any required forms shall be in place prior to inspection. Materials for the foundation shall be on the job, except where concrete is ready mixed in accordance with ASTM C94, the concrete need not be on the job.

**[A] 110.3.2 Concrete slab and under-floor inspection.** Concrete slab and under-floor inspections shall be made after in-slab or under-floor reinforcing steel and building service equipment, conduit, piping accessories and other ancillary equipment items are in place, but before any concrete is placed or floor sheathing installed, including the subfloor.

**[A] 110.3.3 Lowest floor elevation.** In flood hazard areas, upon placement of the lowest floor, including the basement, and prior to further vertical construction, the elevation certification required in Section 1612.4 or the *California Residential Code*, as applicable, shall be submitted to the building official.

**[A] 110.3.4 Frame inspection.** Framing inspections shall be made after the roof deck or sheathing, all framing, fire-blocking and bracing are in place and pipes, chimneys and vents to be concealed are complete and the rough electrical, plumbing, heating wires, pipes and ducts are approved.

**110.3.4.1 [HCD 1] Moisture content verification.**  
*Moisture content of framing members shall be verified in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.5.*

**[A] 110.3.5 Types IV-A, IV-B and IV-C connection protection inspection.** In buildings of Types IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction, where connection fire-resistance ratings are provided by wood cover calculated to meet the requirements of Section 2304.10.1, inspection of the wood cover shall be made after the cover is installed, but before any other coverings or finishes are installed.

**[A] 110.3.6 Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel product inspection.** Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel product inspections shall be made after lathing, gypsum board and gypsum panel products, interior and exterior, are in place, but before any plastering is applied or gypsum board and gypsum panel product joints and fasteners are taped and finished.

**Exception:** Gypsum board and gypsum panel products that are not part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly or a shear assembly.

**[A] 110.3.7 Weather-exposed balcony and walking surface waterproofing.** Where balconies or other elevated walking surfaces have weather-exposed surfaces, and the structural framing is protected by an impervious moisture barrier, all elements of the impervious moisture barrier system shall not be concealed until inspected and approved.

**Exception:** Where special inspections are provided in accordance with Section 1705.1.1, Item 3.

**[A] 110.3.8 Fire- and smoke-resistant penetrations.** Protection of joints and penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies, smoke barriers and smoke partitions shall not be concealed from view until inspected and approved.

**[A] 110.3.9 Energy efficiency inspections.** Inspections shall be made to determine compliance with Chapter 13 and shall include, but not be limited to, inspections for: envelope insulation R- and U-values, fenestration U-value, duct system R-value, and HVAC and water-heating equipment efficiency.

**[A] 110.3.10 Other inspections.** In addition to the inspections specified in Sections 110.3.1 through 110.3.9, the building official is authorized to make or require other inspections of any construction work to ascertain compli-

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

ance with the provisions of this code and other laws that are enforced by the department of building safety.

**[A] 110.3.11 Special inspections.** For special inspections, see Chapter 17.

**[A] 110.3.12 Final inspection.** The final inspection shall be made after all work required by the building permit is completed.

**[A] 110.3.12.1 Flood hazard documentation.** If located in a flood hazard area, documentation of the elevation of the lowest floor as required in Section 1612.4 shall be submitted to the building official prior to the final inspection.

**110.3.12.2 [HCD 1] Operation and maintenance manual.** At the time of final inspection, a manual, compact disc, web-based reference or other media acceptable to the enforcing agency shall be placed in the building in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.4.

> **[A] 110.4 Inspection agencies.** The building official is authorized to accept reports of approved inspection agencies, provided that such agencies satisfy the requirements as to qualifications and reliability.

**[A] 110.5 Inspection requests.** It shall be the duty of the holder of the building permit or their duly authorized agent to notify the building official when work is ready for inspection. It shall be the duty of the permit holder to provide access to and means for inspections of such work that are required by this code.

**[A] 110.6 Approval required.** Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the building official. The building official, upon notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed, or notify the permit holder or the permit holder's agent wherein the same fails to comply with this code. Any portions that do not comply shall be corrected and such portion shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the building official.

## SECTION 111 CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY

**[A] 111.1 Change of occupancy.** A building or structure shall not be used or occupied in whole or in part, and a change of occupancy of a building or structure or portion thereof shall not be made, until the building official has issued a certificate of occupancy therefor as provided herein. Issuance of a certificate of occupancy shall not be construed as an approval of a violation of the provisions of this code or of other ordinances of the jurisdiction. Certificates presuming to give authority to violate or cancel the provisions of this code or other ordinances of the jurisdiction shall not be valid.

**Exception:** Certificates of occupancy are not required for work exempt from permits in accordance with Section 105.2.

**[A] 111.2 Certificate issued.** After the building official inspects the building or structure and does not find violations

of the provisions of this code or other laws that are enforced by the department, the building official shall issue a certificate of occupancy that contains the following:

1. The permit number.
2. The address of the structure.
3. The name and address of the owner or the owner's authorized agent.
4. A description of that portion of the structure for which the certificate is issued.
5. A statement that the described portion of the structure has been inspected for compliance with the requirements of this code.
6. The name of the building official.
7. The edition of the code under which the permit was issued.
8. The use and occupancy, in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 3.
9. The type of construction as defined in Chapter 6.
10. The design occupant load.
11. Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided, whether the sprinkler system is required.
12. Any special stipulations and conditions of the building permit.

**[A] 111.3 Temporary occupancy.** The building official is authorized to issue a temporary certificate of occupancy before the completion of the entire work covered by the permit, provided that such portion or portions shall be occupied safely. The building official shall set a time period during which the temporary certificate of occupancy is valid.

**[A] 111.4 Revocation.** The building official is authorized to suspend or revoke a certificate of occupancy or completion issued under the provisions of this code, in writing, wherever the certificate is issued in error, or on the basis of incorrect information supplied, or where it is determined that the building or structure or portion thereof is in violation of the provisions of this code or other ordinance of the jurisdiction.

## SECTION 112 SERVICE UTILITIES

**[A] 112.1 Connection of service utilities.** A person shall not make connections from a utility, a source of energy, fuel, or power, or a water system or sewer system to any building or system that is regulated by this code for which a permit is required, until approved by the building official.

**[A] 112.2 Temporary connection.** The building official shall have the authority to authorize the temporary connection of the building or system to the utility, the source of energy, fuel, or power, or the water system or sewer system for the purpose of testing systems or for use under a temporary approval.

**[A] 112.3 Authority to disconnect service utilities.** The building official shall have the authority to authorize disconnection of utility service to the building, structure or system regulated by this code and the referenced codes and standards

in case of emergency where necessary to eliminate an immediate hazard to life or property or where such utility connection has been made without the approval required by Section 112.1 or 112.2. The building official shall notify the serving utility, and wherever possible the owner or the owner's authorized agent and occupant of the building, structure or service system of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner or the owner's authorized agent or occupant of the building, structure or service system shall be notified in writing, as soon as practical thereafter.

## SECTION 113 MEANS OF APPEALS

**[A] 113.1 General.** In order to hear and decide appeals of orders, decisions or determinations made by the building official relative to the application and interpretation of this code, there shall be and is hereby created a board of appeals. The board of appeals shall be appointed by the applicable governing authority and shall hold office at its pleasure. The board shall adopt rules of procedure for conducting its business and shall render all decisions and findings in writing to the appellant with a duplicate copy to the building official.

**[A] 113.2 Limitations on authority.** An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the true intent of this code or the rules legally adopted thereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equivalent or better form of construction is proposed. The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.

**[A] 113.3 Qualifications.** The board of appeals shall consist of members who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to building construction and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

**[A] 113.4 Administration.** The building official shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

## SECTION 114 VIOLATIONS

**[A] 114.1 Unlawful acts.** It shall be unlawful for any person, firm or corporation to erect, construct, alter, extend, repair, move, remove, demolish or occupy any building, structure or equipment regulated by this code, or cause same to be done, in conflict with or in violation of any of the provisions of this code.

**[A] 114.2 Notice of violation.** The building official is authorized to serve a notice of violation or order on the person responsible for the erection, construction, alteration, extension, repair, moving, removal, demolition or occupancy of a building or structure in violation of the provisions of this code, or in violation of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of this code. Such order shall direct the discontinuance of the illegal action or condition and the abatement of the violation.

**[A] 114.3 Prosecution of violation.** If the notice of violation is not complied with promptly, the building official is authorized to request the legal counsel of the jurisdiction to institute the appropriate proceeding at law or in equity to restrain, correct or abate such violation, or to require the removal or termination of the unlawful occupancy of the building or structure in violation of the provisions of this code or of the order or direction made pursuant thereto.

**[A] 114.4 Violation penalties.** Any person who violates a provision of this code or fails to comply with any of the requirements thereof or who erects, constructs, alters or repairs a building or structure in violation of the approved construction documents or directive of the building official, or of a permit or certificate issued under the provisions of this code, shall be subject to penalties as prescribed by law.

## SECTION 115 STOP WORK ORDER

**[A] 115.1 Authority.** Where the building official finds any work regulated by this code being performed in a manner contrary to the provisions of this code or in a dangerous or unsafe manner, the building official is authorized to issue a stop work order.

**[A] 115.2 Issuance.** The stop work order shall be in writing and shall be given to the owner of the property, the owner's authorized agent or the person performing the work. Upon issuance of a stop work order, the cited work shall immediately cease. The stop work order shall state the reason for the order and the conditions under which the cited work is authorized to resume.

**[A] 115.3 Emergencies.** Where an emergency exists, the building official shall not be required to give a written notice prior to stopping the work.

**[A] 115.4 Failure to comply.** Any person who shall continue any work after having been served with a stop work order, except such work as that person is directed to perform to remove a violation or unsafe condition, shall be subject to fines established by the authority having jurisdiction.

## SECTION 116 UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT

**[A] 116.1 Unsafe conditions.** Structures or existing equipment that are or hereafter become unsafe, insanitary or deficient because of inadequate means of egress facilities, inadequate light and ventilation, or that constitute a fire hazard, or are otherwise dangerous to human life or the public welfare, or that involve illegal or improper occupancy or inadequate maintenance, shall be deemed an unsafe condition. Unsafe structures shall be taken down and removed or made safe, as the building official deems necessary and as provided for in this section. A vacant structure that is not secured against unauthorized entry shall be deemed unsafe.

**[A] 116.2 Record.** The building official shall cause a report to be filed on an unsafe condition. The report shall state the occupancy of the structure and the nature of the unsafe condition.

## SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION

**[A] 116.3 Notice.** If an unsafe condition is found, the building official shall serve on the owner of the structure, or the owner's authorized agent, a written notice that describes the condition deemed unsafe and specifies the required repairs or improvements to be made to abate the unsafe condition, or that requires the unsafe structure to be demolished within a stipulated time. Such notice shall require the person thus notified to declare immediately to the building official acceptance or rejection of the terms of the order.

**[A] 116.4 Method of service.** Such notice shall be deemed properly served where a copy thereof is served in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. A copy is delivered to the owner personally.
2. A copy is sent by certified or registered mail addressed to the owner at the last known address with the return receipt requested.
3. A copy is delivered in any other manner as prescribed by local law.

If the certified or registered letter is returned showing that the letter was not delivered, a copy thereof shall be posted in a conspicuous place in or about the structure affected by such notice. Service of such notice in the foregoing manner on the owner's authorized agent shall constitute service of notice on the owner.

**[A] 116.5 Restoration or abatement.** Where the structure or equipment determined to be unsafe by the building official is restored to a safe condition, the owner, the owner's authorized agent, operator or occupant of a structure, premises or equipment deemed unsafe by the building official shall abate or cause to be abated or corrected such unsafe conditions either by repair, rehabilitation, demolition or other approved corrective action. To the extent that repairs, alterations or additions are made or a change of occupancy occurs during the restoration of the structure, such repairs, alterations, additions and change of occupancy shall comply with the requirements of the *California Existing Building Code*.

# CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

## CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter	X																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X										X	X					
Chapter / Section																							
201.3				X	X	X	X																
201.4				X																			
202				X	X	X	X																
Access Aisle										X													
Accessibility					X	X	X	X															
Accessibility Function Button									X														
Accessible				X	X	X	X																
Accessible Element									X														
Accessible Means of Egress									X														
Accessible Route					X	X	X	X															
Accessible Space					X	X	X	X															
Accessible Unit					†	†	†																
Accessory Dwelling Unit					X	X																	
Active Earthquake Fault									X	X	X					X							
Active Equipment/Component								X	X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
Adaptable									X														
Adaptable Dwelling Unit							X																
Addition (2nd paragraph only)									X														
Adjusted Construction Cost									X														
Administrative Authority									X														
Adult Changing Facility									X														
Aged Home or Institution				X																			
Aisle (2nd paragraph only)									X														
Alteration									X														
Alternative System										X	X	X			X	X							
Amusement Attraction									X														
Amusement Ride									X														
Amusement Ride Seat									X														
ANSI									X														
Approved (with notes)				X	X	X	X																
Approved (2nd paragraph only) (w/o notes)								X															
Approved Agency					X	X				X	X												
Approved Listing Agency					X	X																	
Approved Testing Agency					X	X			X				X	X	X		X	X					
Area of Refuge									X														
Area of Sport Activity									X														
Assembly Area									X														
Assistive Device							X																
Assistive Listening System (ALS)									X														
Automatic Door							X	X	X	X													
Automatic Teller Machine (ATM)									X														
Auxiliary Area																		X					

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X										X	X					
Chapter / Section																							
<i>Backwash</i>																		X					
<i>Base</i>								X	X	X					X								
<i>Bather</i>																		X					
<i>Bathroom</i>							X	X															
<i>Bedridden Person</i>			X																				
<i>Blended Transition</i>								X															
<i>Boarding Pier</i>								X															
<i>Boat Launch Ramp</i>								X															
<i>Boat Slip</i>								X															
<i>Bottle-Filling Station</i>								X															
<i>Building</i>		X																					
<i>Building (with exception)</i>				X	X	X																	
<i>Building (w/o notes)</i>							X																
<i>Building Entrance on an Accessible Route</i>							X																
<i>Building, Existing</i>			X	X																			
<i>Building Official</i>								X															
<i>Care and Supervision</i>		X																					
<i>Care Suite</i>		X																					
<i>Carriage Unit</i>					X																		
<i>Catastrophically Injured</i>		X																					
<i>Catch Pool</i>							X																
<i>CCR</i>							X																
<i>CDF Director</i>		X																					
<i>Cell</i>		X																					
<i>Cell Complex</i>		X																					
<i>Cell Tiers</i>		X																					
<i>Cellular Concrete</i>			X	X																			
<i>Central Control Building</i>		X																					
<i>Characters</i>			X	X	X	X																	
<i>Charter School</i>		X																					
<i>Child Care</i>		X																					
<i>Child-Care Center</i>		X																					
<i>Child or Children</i>		X																					
<i>Children's Use</i>						X																	
<i>Chronically Ill</i>		X																					
<i>Circulation Path</i>							X																
<i>Clean Pool Water</i>																		X					
<i>Clear</i>								X															
<i>Clear Floor Space</i>							X	X															
<i>Clear Pool Water</i>																			X				
<i>Climate Zone</i>																					X		
<i>Clinic, Outpatient</i>		X																					
<i>Closed-Circuit Telephone</i>								X															
<i>Commercial Facilities</i>								X															
<i>Commercial Place of Public Amusement</i>							X																

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter	X																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X										X	X					
Chapter / Section																							
Common Use				†	†	†	X																
Common Use Areas			†			X																	
Community Care Facility			X																				
Community Correctional Reentry Centers			X																				
Comply With							X																
Concrete, Cellular					X	X	X																
Congregate Living Health Facility (CLHF)			X																				
Congregate Residence			X				X																
Control Room			X																				
Correctional Hospitals			X																				
Correctional Medical or Mental Health Housing Suite			X																				
Correctional Mental Health Facilities			X																				
Correctional Nursing Facilities			X																				
Correctional Treatment Centers			X																				
Corrosion Resistant																		X					
Courthouse Holding Facility			X																				
Courtroom Dock			X																				
Covered Multifamily Dwellings							X																
Cross Slope								X	X														
Curb Cut				X	X	X	X																
Curb Ramp				X	X	X	X																
Custody Station			X																				
Day-Care			X																				
Day-Care Home, Family			X																				
Day-Care Home, Large Family			X																				
Day-Care Home, Small Family			X																				
Day Room			X																				
Deck																		X					
Department					X	X																	
Designated Public Transportation									X														
Destination-Oriented Elevator										X													
Detached Single-Family Dwelling					X	X																	
Detectable Warning					X	X	X	X	X														
Detention Elevator				X																			
Detention Program Suite				X																			
Detention Treatment Room				X																			
Detoxification Facilities				X																			
Directional Sign					X	X			X														
Disability									X														
Distance from Active Earthquake Fault										X	X	X				X							

(continued)



**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC		
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4										
Adopt entire chapter	X																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X										
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X											X	X					
Chapter / Section																								
<i>District Agricultural Associations</i>								X																
Dormitory			X					X																
Dormitory			X																					
Drain																		X						
Drive Aisle								X																
Drive-up Electric Vehicle Charging Station								X																
Driveway								X																
Dwelling Unit							X																	
Effective Particle Size																		X						
Efficiency Dwelling Unit			X																					
Electric Vehicle			X																					
Electric Vehicle (EV)								X																
Electric Vehicle (EV) Charger								X																
Electric Vehicle Charging Space (EV Space)								X																
Electric Vehicle Charging Station (EVCS)								X																
Electric Vehicle (EV) Connector								X																
Element								X																
Elevated Play Component								X																
Elevator, Passenger			X	X				X																
Employee Work Area								X																
Enforcement			X	X																				
Enforcement Agent									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X						
Enforcing Agency			X	X	X			X				X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Entrance				X	X	X	X																	
Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Countertop Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Essential Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Fixed Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Interim Equipment										X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Mobile Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Movable Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Other Equipment									X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Temporary Equipment										X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X				
Equipment Area																				X				
Equivalent Facilitation							X	X																
Existing Building or Facility								X																
Exit									X															
Exterior Covering			X																					
Facility									X															
Family					X																			
Fire Appliance			X																					
Fire Hazard Severity Zones			X																					
Fire Protection Plan			X																					
Fire-Retardant Treated Wood			X																					
Fire-Smoke Barrier			X																					
Fireworks			X																					

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X																					
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X X X X				X	X		X X X X X X X												
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X											X X				
Chapter / Section																						
<i>Freestanding Acute Psychiatric Building (APB)</i>																		X				
<i>Freestanding Skilled Nursing Building (SNB)</i>																	X					
<i>Full-Time Care</i>			X																X X			
<i>Functional Area</i>								X														
<i>Gangway</i>									X													
<i>Gas Detection System</i>			X																			
<i>General Acute Care Building (GAC Building)</i>															X							
<i>Golf Car Passage</i>									X													
<i>Grab Bar</i>										X X												
<i>Grade (Adjacent Ground Elevation)</i>										X X												
<i>Grade Break</i>											X											
<i>Ground Floor</i>										X X												
<i>Ground Level Play Component</i>											X											
<i>Group Home</i>			X																			
<i>Guard (or Guardrail)</i>				X X X X																		
<i>Hall Call Console</i>										X												
<i>Handrail</i>											X											
<i>Handwashing Fixture</i>												X										
<i>Hazardous Substance</i>			X																			
<i>Health Care Provider</i>									X													
<i>High-Rise Building</i>			X																			
<i>High-Rise Building Access</i>			X																			
<i>Historic Buildings</i>										X												
<i>Holding Facility</i>			X																			
<i>Hospitals and Psychiatric Hospitals</i>			X																			
<i>Hotel or Motel</i>				X X																		
<i>Housing at a Place of Education</i>					X X																	
<i>Housing Pod</i>			X																			
<i>Housing Unit</i>			X																			
<i>HPM</i>			X																			
<i>If, If... Then</i>							X															
<i>Ignition-Resistant Material</i>			X																			
<i>Infant</i>			X																			
<i>Inflatable Amusement Device</i>			X																			
<i>Inlet</i>																	X					
<i>Intake and Release Areas</i>			X																			
<i>Intended to be occupied as a Residence</i>				†	†	†																
<i>International Symbol of Accessibility</i>							X X															
<i>Irregular Structure</i>										X X X							X					
<i>Key Station</i>									X													
<i>Kick Plate</i>				X X X X																		

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE  
CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X																					
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X									X	X					
Chapter / Section																						
<i>Kitchen or Kitchenette</i>								X														
Labeled				X	X																	
<i>Laboratory</i>			X																			
<i>Laboratory Suite</i>			X																			
<i>Ladder</i>																	X					
<i>Lavatory</i>						X	X															
<i>Level Area</i>						X																
Licensing Agency											X	X	X	X	X							
<i>Lift, Platform (Wheelchair)</i>							X															
<i>Liquid Tight Floor</i>			X																			
Listed			X	X	X																	
<i>Listing Agency</i>			X	X																		
<i>Live/Work Unit</i>			X																			
<i>Lobby</i>			X	X	X																	
<i>Local Agency Very High Fire Hazard Severity Zone</i>			X																			
<i>Lodging House</i>				X		X																
<i>Log Wall Construction</i>			X					X														
<i>Mail Boxes</i>							X															
<i>Major Structural Alterations, Additions or Repairs</i>										X			X									
Marked Crossing			X	X	X	X																
May							X															
Medical Pool																	X					
Mezzanine							X															
<i>Minor Structural Alteration, Additions or Repairs</i>										X			X									
Monolithic											X	X	X	X	X							
<i>Monolithic Ceiling</i>										X	X	X	X	X								
Motel				X	X																	
<i>Motion Picture and Television Production Studio Sound Stage, Approved Production Facilities and Production Locations</i>			X																			
<i>Multi-bedroom Housing Unit</i>							X															
Multilevel Assembly Seating				†	†	†																
<i>Multistory Dwelling Unit</i>							X															
Multistory Unit				†	†	†																
Newly Constructed							X															
<i>Next Generation Attenuation West 2 (NGA W2)</i>								X	X	X			X									
NFPA							X															
<i>Non-General Acute Care Building (Non-GAC Building)</i>											X											
Nonambulatory Persons				X																		
Noncombustible				X																		
<i>Nonpatient-care Suite</i>				X																		

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X																					
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X											X	X			
Chapter / Section																						
Normal					X	X																
Nosing								X														
<i>NPC 1, NPC 2, NPC 3/NPC 3R, NPC 4 and NPC 5</i>													X									
Nursing Homes				X																		
Occupant Load									X													
Occupiable Space										X												
Open Riser					X	X	X	X														
Operable Part					X	X	X	X														
Organized Camps				X																		
Overflow System																		X				
Passage Door						X																
Passenger Elevator					X	X			X													
Passive Solar Energy Collector					X	X																
Path of Travel								X														
Pedestrian								X	X													
Pedestrian Way						X	X	X	X													
Peer Review												X	X	X		X	X					
Periodic Special Inspection										X	X											
Permanent									X													
Permanent Portable Building				X																		
Permit									X													
Persons with Disabilities							X															
Persons with Intellectual Disabilities, Profoundly or Severely					X																	
Photovoltaic (PV) Panel System, Ground Mounted					X																	
Photovoltaic (PV) Support Structure, Elevated					X																	
Pictogram						X	X	X	X													
Place of Public Accommodation						X	X	X	X													
Platform									X													
Platform (Wheelchair) Lift						X	X	X	X													
Play Area										X												
Play Component										X												
Point-of-Sale Device									X													
Pool																		X				
Pool User																		X				
Pool Volume																		X				
Powder Room						X	X	X	X													
Power-Assisted Door										X												
Primary Entry									X													
Primary-Entry Level									X													
Private Building or Facility										X												
Private Pool																		X				
Professional Office of a Health Care Provider									X													

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X											X	X				
Chapter / Section																							
<i>Project Inspector</i>								X	X														
<i>Protective Social Care Facility</i>		X																					
<i>Public Building or Facility</i>								X															
<i>Public Entity</i>							X	X															
<i>Public Entrance</i>								X															
<i>Public Housing</i>							X	X															
<i>Public Pool</i>																		X					
<i>Public Use</i>								X															
<i>Public-Use Areas</i>							X	X															
<i>Public Way</i>								X															
<i>Qualified Historic Building or Facility</i>							X																
<i>Quality Assurance (QA)</i>								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
<i>Quality Control (QC)</i>								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
<i>Raftertail</i>		X																					
<i>Ramp</i>								X															
<i>Reasonable Portion</i>									X														
<i>Recessed Steps</i>																			X				
<i>Recessed Treads</i>																				X			
<i>Recirculation System</i>																				X			
<i>Recommend</i>				X	X		X																
<i>Relocatable Building (Public School)</i>		X						X	X														
<i>Remodeling</i>								X															
<i>Removed from Acute Care Service</i>															X								
<i>Repair</i>									X														
<i>Residential Care Facility for the Chronically Ill (RCF/CI)</i>		X																					
<i>Residential Care Facility for the Elderly (RCFE)</i>		X																					
<i>Residential Dwelling Unit</i>								X															
<i>Residential Facility (RF)</i>		X																					
<i>Restraint</i>		X																					
<i>Restricted Area</i>											X	X	X	X	X								
<i>Restricted Entrance</i>								X															
<i>Retrofit</i>									X	X	X	X						X					
<i>Riser</i>			X	X	X	X																	
<i>Roof Eave</i>		X																					
<i>Roof Eave Soffit</i>		X																					
<i>Rugged Equipment</i>									X	X													
<i>Running Slope</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>Sanitary Facility</i>				X		X																	
<i>Secure Interview Rooms</i>		X																					
<i>Self-Service Storage</i>				†	†	†	X																
<i>Service Entrance</i>								X															
<i>Shall</i>									X														
<i>Shallow Pool</i>																		X					

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X											X	X				
Chapter / Section																							
<i>Shopping Center (or Shopping Mall)</i>							X																
<i>Should</i>				X	X			X															
<i>Sidewalk</i>				X	X	X		X															
<i>Sign</i>						X	X																
<i>Significant Loss of Function</i>								X	X	X				X									
<i>Single-Accommodation Sanitary Facility</i>						X																	
<i>Sink</i>							X	X															
<i>Site</i>									X														
<i>Site Development</i>								X															
<i>Sleeping Accommodations</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>Slip Resistant</i>																		X					
<i>Slope</i>						X																	
<i>Small Management Yard</i>			X																				
<i>Soft Contained Play Structure</i>								X															
<i>Space</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>SPC 1, SPC 2, SPC 3, SPC 4D and SPC 5</i>											X												
<i>SPC Building</i>												X	X										
<i>Special Inspection</i>									X	X													
<i>Special Amusement Area</i>		X																					
<i>Specified Public Transportation</i>								X															
<i>Stage</i>									X														
<i>Stair</i>							X																
<i>Stairs</i>																		X					
<i>Stairway</i>								X															
<i>State-Owned/Leased Building</i>			X																				
<i>State Responsibility Area</i>		X																					
<i>Step</i>																		X					
<i>Steps, Recessed Steps, Ladders and Recessed Treads</i>																			X				
<i>Story (2nd paragraph only)</i>								X															
<i>Structural Frame</i>							X																
<i>Structure</i>								X															
<i>Sub-Component</i>										X	X	X			X	X							
<i>Surface Mounted Component</i>										X	X	X			X	X							
<i>Tactile</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>Tactile Sign</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>Technically Infeasible</i>								X															
<i>Teeing Ground</i>								X															

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter	X																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X										X	X						
<i>Chapter / Section</i>																							
<i>Temporary</i>						X																	
<i>Temporary Holding Cell, Room or Area.</i>			X													X							
<i>Temporary Holding Facility</i>			X																				
<i>Tenable Environment</i>			X																				
<i>Terminally III</i>			X																				
<i>Testing Agency</i>				X	X																		
<i>Text Telephone</i>						X	X																
<i>Toddler</i>			X																				
<i>Torque-Controlled Post-Installed Anchor</i>								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
<i>Transfer Device</i>								X															
<i>Transient Lodging</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>Transit Boarding Platform</i>							X																
<i>Transition Plate</i>							X																
<i>Tread</i>				X	X	X																	
<i>Treatment of Water</i>																	X						
<i>TTY</i>						X	X																
<i>Turnover Time</i>																		X					
<i>Type A Unit</i>				†	†	†																	
<i>Type B Unit</i>				†	†	†																	
<i>Uniformity Coefficient</i>																		X					
<i>Unreasonable Hardship</i>				X	X	X	X																
<i>Use Zone</i>								X															
<i>Valuation Threshold</i>							X																
<i>Variable Message Signs (VMS)</i>							X																
<i>Variable Message Sign (VMS) Characters</i>								X															
<i>Vehicular or Pedestrian Arrival Points</i>							X																
<i>Vehicular Way</i>								X	X														
<i>Waiting Room</i>				X																			
<i>Walk</i>						X	X																
<i>Waterline</i>																		X					
<i>Wet Bar</i>								X															
<i>Wheelchair</i>							X	X															
<i>Wheelchair Space</i>								X															
<i>Wildfire</i>					X																		
<i>Wildfire Exposure</i>					X																		
<i>Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Area</i>					X																		
<i>Winery Caves</i>					X																		
<i>Work Area Equipment</i>						X																	
<i>Workstation (2nd paragraph only)</i>							X																

The state agency does not adopt sections identified by the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

## CHAPTER 2

# DEFINITIONS

### User notes:

**About this chapter:** Codes, by their very nature, are technical documents. Every word, term and punctuation mark can add to or change the meaning of a technical requirement. It is necessary to maintain a consensus on the specific meaning of each term contained in the code. Chapter 2 performs this function by stating clearly what specific terms mean for the purposes of the code.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [A] or [BS] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 201 GENERAL

**201.1 Scope.** Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this code, have the meanings shown in this chapter.

**201.2 Interchangeability.** Words used in the present tense include the future; words stated in the masculine gender include the feminine and neuter; the singular number includes the plural and the plural, the singular.

**201.3 Terms defined in other codes.** Where terms are not defined in this code and are defined in the *California Energy Code*, *California Existing Building Code*, *California Fire Code*, *California Green Building Standards Code*, *California Electrical Code*, *California Mechanical Code* or *California Plumbing Code*, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them as in those codes.

**201.4 Terms not defined.** Where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies.

*For applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, where terms are not defined through the methods authorized by this section, such terms shall have ordinarily accepted meanings such as the context implies. Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language, Unabridged, shall be considered as providing ordinarily accepted meanings.*

### SECTION 202 DEFINITIONS

**[BG] 24-HOUR BASIS.** The actual time that a person is an occupant within a facility for the purpose of receiving care. It shall not include a facility that is open for 24 hours and is capable of providing care to someone visiting the facility during any segment of the 24 hours.

**[BS] AAC MASONRY.** Masonry made of autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) units, manufactured without internal reinforcement and bonded together using thin- or thick-bed mortar.

> **ACCESS AISLE. [DSA-AC]** An accessible space adjacent to or between vehicle spaces that provides clearances in compliance with this code.

**ACCESSIBILITY. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** The combination of various elements in a building, facility, site or area, or portion thereof which allows access, circulation and the full use of the building and facilities by persons with disabilities in compliance with this code.

**ACCESSIBILITY FUNCTION BUTTON. [DSA-AC]** A button on an elevator hall call console in a destination-oriented elevator system that when pressed will activate a series of visual and verbal prompts and announcements providing instruction regarding hall call console operation and direction to an assigned elevator.

**ACCESSIBLE. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** A site, building, facility, or portion thereof that is approachable and usable by persons with disabilities in compliance with this code.

**ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT. [DSA-AC]** An element specified by the regulations adopted by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance.

**[BE] ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS.** A continuous and unobstructed way of egress travel from any accessible point in a building or facility to a public way.

**ACCESSIBLE ROUTE. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** A continuous unobstructed path connecting accessible elements and spaces of an accessible site, building or facility that can be negotiated by a person with a disability using a wheelchair, and that is also safe for and usable by persons with other disabilities. Interior accessible routes may include corridors, hallways, floors, ramps, elevators and lifts. Exterior accessible routes may include parking access aisles, curb ramps, crosswalks at vehicular ways, walks, ramps and lifts.

**ACCESSIBLE SPACE. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** A space that complies with the accessibility provisions of this code.

**[BE] ACCESSIBLE UNIT.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit that complies with this code and the provisions for Accessible units in ICC A117.1.

**ACCESSORY DWELLING UNIT. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** An attached or detached residential dwelling unit that provides complete independent living facilities for one or more persons and is located on a lot with a proposed or existing primary residence. Accessory dwelling units shall include permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation on the same parcel as the single-family or multifamily dwelling is or will be situated. (See Government Code Section 65852.2)

## DEFINITIONS

**[BS] ACCREDITATION BODY.** An approved, third-party organization that is independent of the grading and inspection agencies, and the lumber mills, and that initially accredits and subsequently monitors, on a continuing basis, the competency and performance of a grading or inspection agency related to carrying out specific tasks.

**ACTIVE EARTHQUAKE FAULT.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1 & 4] A fault that has been the source of earthquakes or is recognized as a potential source of earthquakes, including those that have exhibited surface displacement within Holocene time (about 11,000 years) as determined by California Geological Survey (CGS) under the Alquist-Priolo Earthquake Fault Zoning Act, those included as type A or type B faults for the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) National Seismic Hazard Maps, and faults considered to have been active in Holocene time by any authoritative source, federal, state or local governmental agency.

**ACTIVE EQUIPMENT/COMPONENT.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Equipment/Component containing moving or rotating parts, electrical parts such as switches or relays, or other internal components that are sensitive to earthquake forces and critical to the function of the equipment.

**ADAPTABLE.** [DSA-AC] Capable of being readily modified and made accessible.

**ADAPTABLE DWELLING UNIT.** [HCD 1-AC] An accessible dwelling unit within a covered multifamily building as designed with elements and spaces allowing the dwelling unit to be adapted or adjusted to accommodate the user. See Chapter 11A, Division IV.

**[A] ADDITION.** An extension or increase in floor area, number of stories or height of a building or structure. [DSA-AC] An expansion, extension or increase in the gross floor area or height of a building or facility.

**[BS] ADHERED MASONRY VENEER.** Veneer secured and supported through the adhesion of an approved bonding material applied to an approved backing.

**ADJUSTED CONSTRUCTION COST.** [DSA-AC] All costs directly related to the construction of a project, including labor, material, equipment, services, utilities, contractor financing, contractor overhead and profit, and construction management costs. The costs shall not be reduced by the value of components, assemblies, building equipment or construction not directly associated with accessibility or usability. The adjusted construction cost shall not include: project management fees and expenses, architectural and engineering fees, testing and inspection fees, and utility connection or service district fees.

**ADMINISTRATIVE AUTHORITY.** [DSA-AC] A governmental agency that adopts or enforces regulations and guidelines for the design, construction or alteration of buildings and facilities.

**[BS] ADOBE CONSTRUCTION.** Construction in which the exterior load-bearing and nonload-bearing walls and partitions are of unfired clay masonry units, and floors, roofs and

interior framing are wholly or partly of wood or other approved materials.

**Adobe, stabilized.** Unfired clay masonry units to which admixtures, such as emulsified asphalt, are added during the manufacturing process to limit the units' water absorption so as to increase their durability.

**Adobe, unstabilized.** Unfired clay masonry units that do not meet the definition of "Adobe, stabilized."

**ADULT CHANGING FACILITY.** A facility that is for use by persons with disabilities who need assistance with personal hygiene.

**[F] AEROSOL CONTAINER.** A metal can or plastic container up to a maximum size of 33.8 fluid ounces (1000 ml), or a glass bottle up to a maximum size of 4 fluid ounces (118 ml), designed and intended to dispense an aerosol.

**[F] AEROSOL PRODUCT.** A combination of a container, a propellant and a material that is dispensed. Aerosol products shall be classified by means of the calculation of their chemical heats of combustion and shall be designated Level 1, Level 2 or Level 3.

**Level 1 aerosol products.** Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is less than or equal to 8,600 British thermal units per pound (Btu/lb) (20 kJ/g).

**Level 2 aerosol products.** Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 8,600 Btu/lb (20 kJ/g), but less than or equal to 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

**Level 3 aerosol products.** Those with a total chemical heat of combustion that is greater than 13,000 Btu/lb (30 kJ/g).

**AGED HOME OR INSTITUTION.** A facility used for the housing of persons 65 years of age or older in need of care and supervision. (See definition of "care and supervision")

**[BS] AGGREGATE.** In roofing, crushed stone, crushed slag or water-worn gravel used for surfacing for roof coverings.

**[BG] AGRICULTURAL BUILDING.** A structure designed and constructed to house farm implements, hay, grain, poultry, livestock or other horticultural products. This structure shall not be a place of human habitation or a place of employment where agricultural products are processed, treated or packaged, nor shall it be a place used by the public.

**[BF] AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION.** An insulation having an air permeance equal to or less than  $0.02 \text{ l/s} \times \text{m}^2$  at 75 pa pressure differential tested in accordance with ASTM E283 or ASTM E2178.

**[BG] AIR-INFLATED STRUCTURE.** A structure that uses air-pressurized membrane beams, arches or other elements to enclose space. Occupants of such a structure do not occupy the pressurized area used to support the structure.

**[BG] AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURE.** A structure wherein the shape of the structure is attained by air pressure and occupants of the structure are within the elevated pressure area. Air-supported structures are of two basic types:

**Double skin.** Similar to a single skin, but with an attached liner that is separated from the outer skin and provides an

## DEFINITIONS

airspace which serves for insulation, acoustic, aesthetic or similar purposes.

**Single skin.** Where there is only the single outer skin and the air pressure is directly against that skin.

**[BE] AISLE.** An unenclosed exit access component that defines and provides a path of egress travel. *[DSA-AC]* A circulation path between objects such as seats, tables, merchandise, equipment, displays, shelves, desks, etc., that provides clearances in compliance with this code.

**[BE] AISLE ACCESSWAY.** That portion of an exit access that leads to an aisle.

**[F] ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.** A fire alarm system component such as a bell, horn, speaker, light or text display that provides audible, tactile or visible outputs, or any combination thereof.

**[F] ALARM SIGNAL.** A signal indicating an emergency requiring immediate action, such as a signal indicative of fire.

**[F] ALARM VERIFICATION FEATURE.** A feature of automatic fire detection and alarm systems to reduce unwanted alarms wherein smoke detectors report alarm conditions for a minimum period of time, or confirm alarm conditions within a given time period, after being automatically reset, in order to be accepted as a valid alarm-initiation signal.

**[BS] ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN.** A method of proportioning structural members, such that elastically computed stresses produced in the members by nominal loads do not exceed specified allowable stresses (also called "working stress design").

**[A] ALTERATION.** Any construction or renovation to an existing structure other than repair or addition. *[DSA-AC]* A change, addition or modification in construction, change in occupancy or use, or structural repair to an existing building or facility. Alterations include, but are not limited to, remodeling, renovation, rehabilitation, reconstruction, historic restoration, resurfacing of circulation paths or vehicular ways, changes or rearrangement of the structural parts or elements, and changes or rearrangement in the plan configuration of walls and full-height partitions. Normal maintenance, reroofing, painting or wallpapering, or changes to mechanical and electrical systems are not alterations unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.

**[BE] ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICE.** A device that has a series of steps between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad) from horizontal, usually attached to a center support rail in an alternating manner so that the user does not have both feet on the same level at the same time.

**ALTERNATIVE SYSTEM. [OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** Alternative materials, design and methods of construction in accordance with Section 104.11, Section 11.1.4 of ASCE 7 or structural design criteria as approved by the enforcement agency.

**[BG] AMBULATORY CARE FACILITY.** Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical, surgical, psychiatric, nursing or similar care on a less than 24-hour basis to persons

who are rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided or staff has accepted responsibility for care recipients already incapable.

**AMUSEMENT ATTRACTION. [DSA-AC]** Any facility, or portion of a facility, located within an amusement park or theme park which provides amusement without the use of an amusement device. Amusement attractions include, but are not limited to, fun houses, barrels and other attractions without seats.

**AMUSEMENT RIDE. [DSA-AC]** A system that moves persons through a fixed course within a defined area for the purpose of amusement.

**AMUSEMENT RIDE SEAT. [DSA-AC]** A seat that is built-in or mechanically fastened to an amusement ride intended to be occupied by one or more passengers.

**[BG] ANCHOR BUILDING.** An exterior perimeter building of a group other than H having direct access to a covered or open mall building but having required means of egress independent of the mall.

**[BS] ANCHORED MASONRY VENEER.** Veneer secured with approved mechanical fasteners to an approved backing.

**[BF] ANNULAR SPACE.** The opening around the penetrating item.

**[F] ANNUNCIATOR.** A unit containing one or more indicator lamps, alphanumeric displays or other equivalent means in which each indication provides status information about a circuit, condition or location.

**ANSI. [DSA-AC]** The American National Standards Institute.

**[A] APPROVED.** Acceptable to the building official or enforcing agency.

**[HCD 1, HCD 2 & DSA-AC]** "Approved" means meeting the approval of the enforcing agency, except as otherwise provided by law, when used in connection with any system, material, type of construction, fixture or appliance as the result of investigations and tests conducted by the agency, or by reason of accepted principles or tests by national authorities or technical, health or scientific organizations or agencies.

**Notes: [HCD 1 & HCD 2]**

1. See Health and Safety Code Section 17920 for "Approved" as applied to residential construction and buildings or structures accessory thereto, as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.1.
2. See Health and Safety Code Section 17921.1 for "Approved" as applied to the use of hotplates in residential construction referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.1.
3. See Health and Safety Code Section 19966 for "Approved" as applied to factory-built housing as referenced in Section 1.8.3.2.5.
4. See Health and Safety Code Section 18201 for "Approved" as applied to mobilehome parks as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.3.
5. See Health and Safety Code Section 18862.1 for "Approved" as applied to special occupancy parks as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.3.

## DEFINITIONS

**[A] APPROVED AGENCY.** An established and recognized agency that is regularly engaged in conducting tests, furnishing inspection services or furnishing product certification where such agency has been approved by the building official.

**[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** "Approved agency" shall mean "Listing agency" and "Testing agency."

**[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** This term is synonymous with "laboratory of record" as referenced in Section 4-335 of the California Administrative Code.

**[BS] APPROVED FABRICATOR.** An established and qualified person, firm or corporation approved by the building official pursuant to Chapter 17 of this code.

**APPROVED LISTING AGENCY. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** Any agency approved by the enforcing agency, unless otherwise provided by law, which is in the business of listing and labeling and which makes available at least an annual published report of such listings in which specific information is included that the product has been tested to recognized standards and found to comply.

**[A] APPROVED SOURCE.** An independent person, firm or corporation, approved by the building official, who is competent and experienced in the application of engineering principles to materials, methods or systems analyses.

**APPROVED TESTING AGENCY. [HCD 1, HCD 2, DSA-AC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** Any agency, which is determined by the enforcing agency, except as otherwise provided by law, to have adequate personnel and expertise to carry out the testing of systems, materials, types of construction, fixtures or appliances.

### [BS] AREA (for masonry).

**Gross cross-sectional.** The area delineated by the out-to-out specified dimensions of masonry in the plane under consideration.

**Net cross-sectional.** The area of masonry units, grout and mortar crossed by the plane under consideration based on out-to-out specified dimensions.

**[BG] AREA, BUILDING.** The area included within surrounding exterior walls, or exterior walls and fire walls, exclusive of vent shafts and courts. Areas of the building not provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the building area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above.

**[BE] AREA OF REFUGE.** An area where persons unable to use stairways can remain temporarily to await instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation.

**[BE] AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY.** That portion of an indoor or outdoor space where the play or practice of a sport occurs.

**[BG] AREAWAY.** A subsurface space adjacent to a building open at the top or protected at the top by a grating or guard.

**ASSEMBLY AREA. [DSA-AC]** A building or facility, or portion thereof, used for the purpose of entertainment, educational or civic gatherings, or similar purposes. For the purposes of these requirements, assembly areas include, but are not limited to, classrooms, lecture halls, courtrooms, public meeting

rooms, public hearing rooms, legislative chambers, motion picture houses, auditoria, theaters, playhouses, dinner theaters, concert halls, centers for the performing arts, amphitheaters, arenas, stadiums, grandstands or convention centers.

**ASSEMBLY SEATING, MULTILEVEL.** See "Multilevel assembly seating."

**ASSISTIVE DEVICE. [HCD 1-AC]** An aid, tool or instrument used by persons with disabilities to assist in activities of daily living.

**ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM (ALS). [DSA-AC]** An amplification system utilizing transmitters, receivers and coupling devices to bypass the acoustical space between a sound source and a listener by means of induction loop, radio frequency, infrared or direct-wired equipment.

**[BG] ATRIUM.** A vertical space that is closed at the top, connecting two or more stories in Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies or three or more stories in all other occupancies.

**[BG] ATTIC.** The space between the ceiling framing of the top story and the underside of the roof.

**[F] AUDIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.** A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of hearing.

**[F] AUTOMATIC.** As applied to fire protection devices, a device or system providing an emergency function without the necessity for human intervention and activated as a result of a predetermined temperature rise, rate of temperature rise or combustion products.

**AUTOMATIC DOOR.** A door equipped with a power-operated mechanism and controls that open and close the door automatically upon receipt of a momentary actuating signal. The switch that begins the automatic cycle may be a photoelectric device, floor mat or manual switch.

**[F] AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.** An approved system of devices and equipment which automatically detects a fire and discharges an approved fire-extinguishing agent onto or in the area of a fire.

**[F] AUTOMATIC SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEM.** A fire alarm system that has initiation devices that utilize smoke detectors for protection of an area such as a room or space with detectors to provide early warning of fire.

**[F] AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM.** An automatic sprinkler system, for fire protection purposes, is an integrated system of underground and overhead piping designed in accordance with fire protection engineering standards. The system includes a suitable water supply. The portion of the system above the ground is a network of specially sized or hydraulically designed piping installed in a structure or area, generally overhead, and to which automatic sprinklers are connected in a systematic pattern. The system is usually activated by heat from a fire and discharges water over the fire area.

**AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINE (ATM). [DSA-AC]** Any electronic information processing device that accepts or dispenses cash in connection with a credit, deposit or convenience account. The term does not include devices used solely to facilitate check guarantees or check authorizations, or which are used in connection with the acceptance or dispensing of cash on a person-to-person basis, such as by a store cashier.

## DEFINITIONS

**[F] AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM.** A system consisting of a water supply, a pressure source and a distribution piping system with attached nozzles, which, at or above a minimum operating pressure, defined by its listing, discharges water in fine droplets meeting the requirements of NFPA 750 for the purpose of the control, suppression or extinguishment of a fire. Such systems include wet-pipe, dry-pipe and pre-action types. The systems are designed as engineered, pre-engineered, local-application or total flooding systems.

**[F] AUTOMATIC WATER MIST SYSTEM.** A system consisting of a water supply, a pressure source and a distribution piping system with attached nozzles, which, at or above a minimum operating pressure defined by its listing, discharges water in fine droplets meeting the requirements of NFPA 750 for the purpose of the control, suppression or extinguishment of a fire. Such systems include wet-pipe, dry-pipe and preaction types. The systems are designed as engineered, preengineered, local-application or total-flooding systems.

**AUXILIARY AREA.** A public dressing, locker, shower or toilet area or building space intended to be used by bathers.

**[F] AVERAGE AMBIENT SOUND LEVEL.** The root mean square, A-weighted sound pressure level measured over a 24-hour period, or the time any person is present, whichever time period is less.

**[BG] AWNING.** An architectural projection that provides weather protection, identity or decoration and is partially or wholly supported by the building to which it is attached. An awning is composed of a lightweight frame structure over which a covering is attached.

**[BF] BACKING.** The wall or surface to which the veneer is secured.

**BACKWASH.** Is the process of thoroughly cleansing the filter media and/or elements and the contents of the filter vessel.

**[BE] BALANCED DOOR.** A door equipped with double-pivoted hardware so designed as to cause a semicounterbalanced swing action when opening.

**[F] BALED COTTON.** A natural seed fiber wrapped in and secured with industry accepted materials, usually consisting of burlap, woven polypropylene, polyethylene or cotton or sheet polyethylene, and secured with steel, synthetic or wire bands or wire; also includes linters (lint removed from the cottonseed) and motes (residual materials from the ginning process).

**[F] BALED COTTON, DENSELY PACKED.** Cotton made into banded bales with a packing density of not less than 22 pounds per cubic foot ( $360 \text{ kg/m}^3$ ), and dimensions complying with the following: a length of 55 inches (1397 mm), a width of 21 inches (533.4 mm) and a height of 27.6 to 35.4 inches (701 to 899 mm).

**[BS] BALLAST.** In roofing, ballast comes in the form of large stones or paver systems or light-weight interlocking paver systems and is used to provide uplift resistance for roofing systems that are not adhered or mechanically attached to the roof deck.

**[F] BARRICADE.** A structure that consists of a combination of walls, floor and roof, which is designed to withstand the rapid release of energy in an explosion and which is fully confined, partially vented or fully vented; or other effective method of shielding from explosive materials by a natural or artificial barrier.

**Artificial barricade.** An artificial mound or revetment a minimum thickness of 3 feet (914 mm).

**Natural barricade.** Natural features of the ground, such as hills, or timber of sufficient density that the surrounding exposures that require protection cannot be seen from the magazine or building containing explosives when the trees are bare of leaves.

**BASE. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1 & 4]** See ASCE 7.

**[BS] BASE FLOOD.** The flood having a 1-percent chance of being equaled or exceeded in any given year.

**[BS] BASE FLOOD ELEVATION.** The elevation of the base flood, including wave height, relative to the National Geodetic Vertical Datum (NGVD), North American Vertical Datum (NAVD) or other datum specified on the *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM).

**[BG] BASEMENT.** A story that is not a story above grade plane (see "Story above grade plane"). This definition of "Basement" does not apply to the provisions of Section 1612 for flood loads.

**[BS] BASEMENT (for flood loads).** The portion of a building having its floor subgrade (below ground level) on all sides. This definition of "Basement" is limited in application to the provisions of Section 1612.

**BATHER.** A person using a pool and adjoining deck areas for the purpose of water sports such as diving, swimming, wading or related activities.

**BATHROOM.** For the purposes of Chapters 11A and 11B, a room which includes a water closet (toilet), a lavatory and a bathtub and/or a shower. It does not include single-fixture facilities or those with only a water closet and lavatory. It does include a compartmented bathroom. A compartmented bathroom is one in which the fixtures are distributed among interconnected rooms. A compartmented bathroom is considered a single unit and is subject to the requirements of Chapters 11A and 11B.

**[BS] BEARING WALL STRUCTURE.** A building or other structure in which vertical loads from floors and roofs are primarily supported by walls.

**[BS] BED JOINT.** The horizontal layer of mortar on which a masonry unit is laid.

**BEDRIDDEN PERSON.** A person, requiring assistance in turning and repositioning in bed, or being unable to independently transfer to and from bed, except in facilities with appropriate and sufficient care staff, mechanical devices if necessary, and safety precautions as determined in Title 22 regulations, by the Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative. Persons who are unable to inde-

## DEFINITIONS

*pendently transfer to and from bed, but who do not need assistance to turn or reposition in bed, shall be considered nonambulatory.*

*The Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative shall make the determination of the bedridden status of persons with developmental disabilities, in consultation with the Director of Developmental Services or his or her designated representative.*

*The Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative shall make the determination of the bedridden status of all other persons with disabilities who are not developmentally disabled.*

**[BE] BLEACHERS.** Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see "Grandstand").

**BLENDED TRANSITION.** *[DSA-AC]* A raised pedestrian crossing, depressed corner or similar connection that has a grade of 5 percent or less between a circulation path at the level of the sidewalk or walk and the level of a vehicular way.

**[BG] BOARDING HOUSE.** A building arranged or used for lodging for compensation, with or without meals, and not occupied as a single-family unit.

**BOARDING PIER.** *[DSA-AC]* A portion of a pier where a boat is temporarily secured for the purpose of embarking or disembarking.

**BOAT LAUNCH RAMP.** *[DSA-AC]* A sloped surface designed for launching and retrieving trailered boats and other water craft to and from a body of water.

**BOAT SLIP.** *[DSA-AC]* That portion of a pier, main pier, finger pier or float where a boat is moored for the purpose of berthing, embarking or disembarking.

**[F] BOILING POINT.** The temperature at which the vapor pressure of a liquid equals the atmospheric pressure of 14.7 pounds per square inch (psia) (101 kPa) or 760 mm of mercury. Where an accurate boiling point is unavailable for the material in question, or for mixtures which do not have a constant boiling point, for the purposes of this classification, the 20-percent evaporated point of a distillation performed in accordance with ASTM D86 shall be used as the boiling point of the liquid.

**BOTTLE-FILLING STATION.** A fixture that is designed and intended for filling personal use drinking water bottles or containers. Such fixtures can be separate from or integral to a drinking fountain.

**[BS] BRACED WALL LINE.** A straight line through the building plan that represents the location of the lateral resistance provided by the wall bracing.

**[BS] BRACED WALL PANEL.** A full-height section of wall constructed to resist in-plane shear loads through interaction of framing members, sheathing material and anchors. The panel's length meets the requirements of its particular bracing method and contributes toward the total amount of bracing required along its braced wall line.

**[BE] BREAKOUT.** For revolving doors, a process whereby wings or door panels can be pushed open manually for means of egress travel.

### [BS] BRICK.

**Calcium silicate (sand lime brick).** A pressed and subsequently autoclaved unit that consists of sand and lime, with or without the inclusion of other materials.

**Clay or shale.** A solid or hollow masonry unit of clay or shale, usually formed into a rectangular prism, then burned or fired in a kiln; brick is a ceramic product.

**Concrete.** A concrete masonry unit made from Portland cement, water, and suitable aggregates, with or without the inclusion of other materials.

**[A] BUILDING.** Any structure utilized or intended for supporting or sheltering any occupancy.

**Exception:** *[HCD 1, HCD 2 & HCD 1-AC]* For applications listed in Section 1.8.2 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development, "Building" shall not include the following:

1. Any mobilehome as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18008.
2. Any manufactured home as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18007.
3. Any commercial modular as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18001.8 or any special purpose commercial modular as defined in Section 18012.5.
4. Any recreational vehicle as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18010.
5. Any multifamily manufactured home as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18008.7.

For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Section 18908.

**Note:** Building shall have the same meaning as defined in Health and Safety Code Sections 17920 and 18908 for the applications specified in Section 1.11.

**BUILDING AREA.** See "Area, building."

**[BG] BUILDING ELEMENT.** A fundamental component of building construction, specified in TABLE 601, which may or may not be of fire-resistance-rated construction and is constructed of materials based on the building type of construction.

**BUILDING ENTRANCE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE.** *[HCD 1-AC]* An accessible entrance to a building that is connected by an accessible route to public transportation stops, to parking or passenger loading zones, or to public streets or sidewalks, if available.

**BUILDING, EXISTING.** *[HCD 1 & HCD 2]* A building erected prior to the adoption of this code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

**BUILDING HEIGHT.** See "Height, building."

## DEFINITIONS

**[BG] BUILDING LINE.** The line established by law, beyond which a building shall not extend, except as specifically provided by law.

**[A] BUILDING OFFICIAL.** The officer or other designated authority charged with the administration and enforcement of this code, or a duly authorized representative.

**[BS] BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC (BIPV) PRODUCT.** A building product that incorporates photovoltaic modules and functions as a component of the building envelope.

**[BS] BUILDING-INTEGRATED PHOTOVOLTAIC ROOF PANEL (BIPV ROOF PANEL).** A photovoltaic panel that functions as a component of the building envelope.

**[BS] BUILT-UP ROOF COVERING.** Two or more layers of felt cemented together and surfaced with a cap sheet, mineral aggregate, smooth coating or similar surfacing material.

→ **[BG] CANOPY.** A permanent structure or architectural projection of rigid construction over which a covering is attached that provides weather protection, identity or decoration. A canopy is permitted to be structurally independent or supported by attachment to a building on one or more sides.

**[F] CAPACITOR ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM.** A stationary, rechargeable energy storage system consisting of capacitors, chargers, controls and associated electrical equipment designed to provide electrical power to a building or facility. The system is typically used to provide standby or emergency power, an uninterruptable power supply, load shedding, load sharing or similar capabilities.

**[F] CARBON DIOXIDE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS.** A system supplying carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) from a pressurized vessel through fixed pipes and nozzles. The system includes a manual- or automatic-actuating mechanism.

**[F] CARBON MONOXIDE ALARM.** A single- or multiple-station alarm intended to detect carbon monoxide gas and alert occupants by a distinct audible signal. It incorporates a sensor, control components and an alarm notification appliance in a single unit.

**[F] CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR.** A device with an integral sensor to detect carbon monoxide gas and transmit an alarm signal to a connected alarm control unit.

**CARE AND SUPERVISION.** Any one or more of the following activities provided by a person or facility to meet the needs of the clients:

1. Assistance in dressing, grooming, bathing and other personal hygiene.
2. Assistance with taking medication.
3. Central storing and/or distribution of medications.
4. Arrangement of and assistance with medical and dental care.
5. Maintenance of house rules for the protection of clients.
6. Supervision of client schedules and activities.
7. Maintenance and/or supervision of client cash resources or property.

8. Monitoring food intake or special diets.

9. Providing basic services required by applicable law and regulation to be provided by the licensee in order to obtain and maintain a community-care facility license.

**[BG] CARE SUITE.** In Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancies, a group of treatment rooms, care recipient sleeping rooms and the support rooms or spaces and circulation space within the suite where staff are in attendance for supervision of all care recipients within the suite, and the suite is in compliance with the requirements of Section 407.4.4.

**CARRIAGE UNIT.** [HCD 1-AC] A dwelling unit with living space on one or more floors immediately above a Group U, private garage or garages. The footprint of the garage or garages is used as the footprint for the remaining floor or floors of the units above and the garage level contains no habitable space.

**Note:** Dwelling units located over a common garage shall not be considered carriage units.

**[BS] CAST STONE.** A building stone manufactured from Portland cement concrete precast and used as a trim, veneer or facing on or in buildings or structures.

**CATASTROPHICALLY INJURED.** As termed, means a person whose origin of disability was acquired through trauma or nondegenerative neurologic illness, for whom it has been determined by the Department of Health Services Certification and Licensing that active rehabilitation would be beneficial.

**CATCH POOL.** [DSA-AC] A pool or designated section of a pool used as a terminus for water slide flumes.

**CCR.** [DSA-AC] The California Code of Regulations.

**CDCR.** California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation.

**CDF DIRECTOR.** [SFM] (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[F] CEILING LIMIT.** The maximum concentration of an airborne contaminant to which one may be exposed. The ceiling limits utilized are those published in DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000. The ceiling Recommended Exposure Limit (REL-C) concentrations published by the US National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), Threshold Limit Value—Ceiling (TLV-C) concentrations published by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH), Ceiling Workplace Environmental Exposure Level (WEEL-Ceiling) Guides published by the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA), and other approved, consistent measures are allowed as surrogates for hazardous substances not listed in DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000.

**[BF] CEILING RADIATION DAMPER.** A listed device installed in a ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly to limit automatically the radiative heat transfer through an air inlet/outlet opening. Ceiling radiation dampers include air terminal units, ceiling dampers and ceiling air diffusers. Ceiling radiation dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems

## DEFINITIONS

that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic ceiling radiation damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

**CELL (Detention or correctional facility).** [SFM] A sleeping or housing unit in a detention or correctional facility for the confinement of not more than two inmates or prisoners.

**[BG] CELL (Group I-3 occupancy).** A room within a housing unit in a detention or correctional facility used to confine inmates or prisoners.

**[BS] CELL (masonry).** A void space having a gross cross-sectional area greater than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  square inches ( $967 \text{ mm}^2$ ).

**CELL COMPLEX.** A cluster or group of cells or dormitories in a jail, prison or other detention facility, together with rooms used for accessory purposes, all of which open into the cell complex, and are used for functions such as dining, counseling, exercise, classrooms, sick call, visiting, storage, staff offices, control rooms or similar functions, and interconnecting corridors all within the cell complex.

**[BG] CELL TIER.** Levels of cells vertically stacked above one another within a housing unit.

**CELL TIERS.** Cells, dormitories and accessory spaces. Cell tiers are located one level above the other and do not exceed two levels per floor. A cell tier shall not be considered a story or mezzanine. The aggregate area of a tier within a housing pod shall not be greater than one-third of the floor area of that pod when supported by non-rated construction, and shall be no greater than two-thirds of the floor area of the pod when the tier floor and supporting elements meet the fire rating requirements of a floor.

**CELLULAR CONCRETE.** [HCD 1 & HCD 2] A lightweight product consisting of Portland cement and selected gas-forming chemicals or foaming agents which create homogeneous voids in the hardened concrete.

**[BS] CEMENT PLASTER.** A mixture of Portland or blended cement, Portland cement or blended cement and hydrated lime, masonry cement or plastic cement and aggregate and other approved materials as specified in this code.

**CENTRAL CONTROL BUILDING.** A secure building within a prison where the fire and life safety systems, communication systems, security systems and exterior lighting systems are monitored and where security operations necessitate the remote locking of required means of egress or at the door with a key to maintain a high security area

**[BF] CERAMIC FIBER BLANKET.** A high-temperature mineral wool insulation material made of alumina-silica ceramic or calcium magnesium silicate soluble fibers and weighing 4 to 10 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (64 to 160 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**[BS] CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE.** A certificate stating that materials and products meet specified standards or that work was done in compliance with approved construction documents.

**[A] CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY.** Either of the following shall be considered as a change of occupancy where this code requires a greater degree of safety, accessibility, structural

strength, fire protection, means of egress, ventilation or sanitation than is existing in the current building or structure:

1. Any change in the occupancy classification of a building or structure.
2. Any change in the purpose of, or a change in the level of activity within, a building or structure.

**CHARACTERS.** Letters, numbers, punctuation marks and typographic symbols.

**CHARTER SCHOOL.** A public school providing instruction from kindergarten through 12th grade, established pursuant to Education Code, Title 2, Division 4, Part 26.8, Section 47600, et seq.

**CHILD-CARE.** For the purposes of these regulations, means the care of children during any period of a 24-hour day where permanent sleeping accommodations are not provided. The time-period shall not be more than 24 hours.

**Note:** "Child care" shall not be construed to preclude the use of cots or mats for napping purposes, provided all employees, attendants and staff personnel are awake and on duty in the area where napping occurs.

**CHILD-CARE CENTER.** Any facility of any capacity other than a large or small family day-care home as defined in these regulations in which less than 24-hour-per-day nonmedical supervision is provided for children in a group setting.

**CHILD OR CHILDREN.** A person or persons under the age of 18 years.

**CHILDREN'S USE.** [DSA-AC] Describes spaces and elements specifically designed for use primarily by people 12 years old and younger.

**[M] CHIMNEY.** A primarily vertical structure containing one or more flues, for the purpose of carrying gaseous products of combustion and air from a fuel-burning appliance to the outdoor atmosphere.

**Factory-built chimney.** A listed and labeled chimney composed of factory-made components, assembled in the field in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and the conditions of the listing.

**Masonry chimney.** A field-constructed chimney composed of solid masonry units, bricks, stones, or concrete.

**Metal chimney.** A field-constructed chimney of metal.

**[M] CHIMNEY TYPES.**

**High-heat appliance type.** An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, high-heat appliances producing combustion gases in excess of 2,000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 2113.11.3).

**Low-heat appliance type.** An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, low-heat appliances producing combustion gases not in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) under normal operating conditions, but capable of producing combustion gases of 1,400°F (760°C) during intermittent forces firing for peri-

## DEFINITIONS

ods up to 1 hour. Temperatures shall be measured at the appliance flue outlet.

**Masonry type.** A field-constructed chimney of solid masonry units or stones.

**Medium-heat appliance type.** An approved chimney for removing the products of combustion from fuel-burning, medium-heat appliances producing combustion gases not exceeding 2,000°F (1093°C) measured at the appliance flue outlet (see Section 2113.11.2).

**CHRONICALLY ILL.** See "Terminally ill."

**[BE] CIRCULATION PATH.** An exterior or interior way of passage from one place to another for pedestrians. *[DSA-AC]* *An exterior or interior way of passage provided for pedestrian travel, including but not limited to, walks, sidewalks, hallways, courtyards, elevators, platform lifts, ramps, stairways and landings.*

**[F] CLEAN AGENT.** Electrically nonconducting, volatile or gaseous fire extinguishant that does not leave a residue upon vaporization.

**CLEAN POOL WATER.** Is a pool water that is free of dirt, oils, scum, algae, floating materials or other visible organic and inorganic materials that would sully the water.

**CLEAR.** *[DSA-AC]* Unobstructed.

**CLEAR FLOOR SPACE.** *[DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]* The minimum unobstructed floor or ground space required to accommodate a single, stationary wheelchair and occupant.

**CLEAR POOL WATER.** Pool water that is free from cloudiness and is transparent.

**[BF] CLIMATE ZONE.** A geographical region that has been assigned climatic criteria as specified in Chapters 3 [CE] and 3 [RE] of the *International Energy Conservation Code (IECC)* or, for California Energy Code provisions, Figure 100. 1-A of the California Energy Code.

**[BG] CLINIC, OUTPATIENT.** Buildings or portions thereof used to provide medical care on less than a 24-hour basis to persons who are not classified as nonambulatory or bedridden or rendered incapable of self-preservation by the services provided.

**CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE.** *[DSA-AC]* A telephone with a dedicated line such as a house phone, courtesy phone or phone that must be used to gain entry to a facility.

**[F] CLOSED SYSTEM.** The use of a solid or liquid hazardous material involving a closed vessel or system that remains closed during normal operations where vapors emitted by the product are not liberated outside of the vessel or system and the product is not exposed to the atmosphere during normal operations; and all uses of compressed gases. Examples of closed systems for solids and liquids include product conveyed through a piping system into a closed vessel, system or piece of equipment.

**[BS] COASTAL A ZONE.** Area within a special flood hazard area, landward of a V zone or landward of an open coast without mapped coastal high-hazard areas. In a coastal A zone, the principal source of flooding must be astronomical tides, storm surges, seiches or tsunamis, not riverine

flooding. During the base flood conditions, the potential for breaking wave height shall be greater than or equal to 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  feet (457 mm). The inland limit of the *coastal A zone* is (a) the *Limit of Moderate Wave Action* if delineated on a FIRM, or (b) designated by the authority having jurisdiction.

**[BS] COASTAL HIGH-HAZARD AREA.** Area within the special flood hazard area extending from offshore to the inland limit of a primary dune along an open coast and any other area that is subject to high-velocity wave action from storms or seismic sources, and shown on a *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM) or other flood hazard map as velocity Zone V, VO, VE or V1-30.

**[BS] COLLAR JOINT.** Vertical longitudinal space between wythes of masonry or between masonry wythe and backup construction that is permitted to be filled with mortar or grout.

**[BS] COLLECTOR.** A horizontal diaphragm element parallel and in line with the applied force that collects and transfers diaphragm shear forces to the vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system or distributes forces within the diaphragm, or both.

**[BF] COMBINATION FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER.** A listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon the detection of heat and resist the passage of flame and smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

**[BS] COMBINED PILE RAFT.** A geotechnical composite construction that combines the bearing effect of both foundation elements, raft and piles, by taking into account interactions between the foundation elements and the subsoil.

**[F] COMBUSTIBLE DUST.** Finely divided solid material that is 420 microns or less in diameter and which, when dispersed in air in the proper proportions, could be ignited by a flame, spark or other source of ignition. Combustible dust will pass through a US No. 40 standard sieve.

**[F] COMBUSTIBLE FIBERS.** Readily ignitable and free-burning materials in a fibrous or shredded form, such as cocoa fiber, cloth, cotton, excelsior, hay, hemp, henequen, istle, jute, kapok, oakum, rags, sisal, Spanish moss, straw, tow, wastepaper, certain synthetic fibers or other like materials. This definition does not include densely packed baled cotton.

**[F] COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID.** A liquid having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C). Combustible liquids shall be subdivided as follows:

The category of combustible liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids or liquids that do not have a fire point when tested in accordance with ASTM D92.

**Class II.** Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).

**Class IIIA.** Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 140°F (60°C) and below 200°F (93°C).

**Class IIIB.** Liquids having a closed cup flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).

## DEFINITIONS

**COMMERCIAL FACILITIES [DSA-AC].** Facilities whose operations will affect commerce and are intended for non-residential use by a private entity. Commercial facilities shall not include (1) facilities that are covered or expressly exempted from coverage under the Fair Housing Act of 1968, as amended (42 U.S.C. 3601 - 3631); (2) aircraft; or (3) railroad locomotives, railroad freight cars, railroad cabooses, commuter or intercity passenger rail cars (including coaches, dining cars, sleeping cars, lounge cars and food service cars), any other railroad cars described in Section 242 of the Americans With Disabilities Act or covered under Title II of the Americans With Disabilities Act, or railroad rights-of-way. For purposes of this definition, "rail" and "railroad" have the meaning given the term "railroad" in Section 202(e) of the Federal Railroad Safety Act of 1970 (45 U.S.C. 431(e)).

**[F] COMMERCIAL MOTOR VEHICLE.** A motor vehicle used to transport passengers or property where the motor vehicle meets one of the following:

1. Has a gross vehicle weight rating of 10,000 pounds (4540 kg) or more.
2. Is designed to transport 16 or more passengers, including the driver.

**COMMERCIAL PLACE OF PUBLIC AMUSEMENT. [DSA-AC]** An auditorium, convention center, cultural complex, exhibition hall, permanent amusement park, sports arena, theater or movie house for which the maximum occupancy is 2,500 or more for the facility. Cultural complexes include but are not limited to art galleries, symphony, concert halls and museums. A commercial place of public amusement does not include any public or private higher education facility or district agricultural associations.

**[BE] COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL.** That portion of exit access travel distance measured from the most remote point of each room, area or space to that point where the occupants have separate and distinct access to two exits or exit access doorways.

**COMMON USE.** Interior or exterior circulation paths, rooms, spaces or elements that are not for public use and are made available for the shared use of two or more people.

**COMMON USE AREAS. [HCD 1-AC]** Private use areas within multifamily residential facilities where the use of these areas is limited exclusively to owners, residents and their guests. The areas may be defined as rooms or spaces or elements inside or outside of a building.

**COMMUNITY CARE FACILITY.** Any facility, place or building that is maintained and operated to provide nonmedical residential care, day treatment, adult day care or agency services for children, adults, or children and adults, including, but not limited to, the physically handicapped, mentally impaired, incompetent persons, and abused or neglected children, and includes but is not limited to the following as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1502:

1. Residential facility
2. Adult day program
3. Therapeutic day services facility

4. Social rehabilitation facility
5. Community treatment facility
6. Full-service adoption agency
7. Transitional shelter care facility
8. Transitional housing placement facility

**COMMUNITY CORRECTIONAL REENTRY CENTERS—CALIFORNIA DEPARTMENT OF CORRECTIONS AND REHABILITATION [CDCR].** Community-located facilities that provide housing and transitional rehabilitative or community-based programming services for ambulatory inmates. CDCR Program services assist with substance use disorder treatment, employment, education, family reunification and social support. Program participants remain under the jurisdiction of CDCR, are monitored by CDCR staff and supervised by CDCR approved/contracted program providers 24/7. The facilities include residential living, food services, administrative and program functional spaces in a non-licensed 24 hr. facility.

**COMPLY WITH. [DSA-AC]** Comply with means to meet one or more provisions of this code.

**[F] COMPRESSED GAS.** A material or mixture of materials that meets both of the following:

1. Is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure.
2. Has a boiling point of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) which is either liquefied, nonliquefied or in solution, except those gases which have no other health- or physical-hazard properties are not considered to be compressed until the pressure in the packaging exceeds 41 psia (282 kPa) at 68°F (20°C).

The states of a compressed gas are categorized as follows:

1. Nonliquefied compressed gases are gases, other than those in solution, which are in a packaging under the charged pressure and are entirely gaseous at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).
2. Liquefied compressed gases are gases that, in a packaging under the charged pressure, are partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C).
3. Compressed gases in solution are nonliquefied gases that are dissolved in a solvent.
4. Compressed gas mixtures consist of a mixture of two or more compressed gases contained in a packaging, the hazard properties of which are represented by the properties of the mixture as a whole.

**[BS] CONCRETE.**

**Carbonate aggregate.** Concrete made with aggregates consisting mainly of calcium or magnesium carbonate, such as limestone or dolomite, and containing 40 percent or less quartz, chert or flint.

**Cellular. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** See "Cellular Concrete." ||

**Cellular.** A lightweight insulating concrete made by mixing a preformed foam with Portland cement slurry and having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

## DEFINITIONS

**Lightweight aggregate.** Concrete made with aggregates of expanded clay, shale, slag or slate or sintered fly ash or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and weighing 85 to 115 pcf (1360 to 1840 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**Perlite.** A lightweight insulating concrete having a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m<sup>3</sup>) made with perlite concrete aggregate. Perlite aggregate is produced from a volcanic rock which, when heated, expands to form a glass-like material of cellular structure.

**Sand-lightweight.** Concrete made with a combination of expanded clay, shale, slag, slate, sintered fly ash, or any natural lightweight aggregate meeting ASTM C330 and possessing equivalent fire-resistance properties and natural sand. Its unit weight is generally between 105 and 120 pcf (1680 and 1920 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**Siliceous aggregate.** Concrete made with normal-weight aggregates consisting mainly of silica or compounds other than calcium or magnesium carbonate, which contains more than 40-percent quartz, chert or flint.

**Vermiculite.** A light weight insulating concrete made with vermiculite concrete aggregate which is laminated micaceous material produced by expanding the ore at high temperatures. When added to a Portland cement slurry the resulting concrete has a dry unit weight of approximately 30 pcf (480 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

→ **CONGREGATE LIVING HEALTH FACILITY (CLHF).** As defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1250.

(1) A residential home with a capacity, except as provided in paragraph (4), of no more than 18 beds, that provides inpatient care, including the following basic services: medical supervision, 24-hour skilled nursing and supportive care, pharmacy, dietary, social, recreational, and at least one type of service specified in paragraph (2). The primary need of congregate living health facility residents shall be for availability of skilled nursing care on a recurring, intermittent, extended, or continuous basis. This care is generally less intense than that provided in general acute care hospitals but more intense than that provided in skilled nursing facilities.

(2) Congregate living health facilities shall provide one of the following services:

(A) Services for persons who are mentally alert, persons with physical disabilities, who may be ventilator dependent.

(B) Services for persons who have a diagnosis of terminal illness, a diagnosis of a life-threatening illness, or both. Terminal illness means the individual has a life expectancy of six months or less as stated in writing by his or her attending physician and surgeon. A "life-threatening illness" means the individual has an illness that can lead to a possibility of a termination of life

within five years or less as stated in writing by his or her attending physician and surgeon.

(C) Services for persons who are catastrophically and severely disabled. A person who is catastrophically and severely disabled means a person whose origin of disability was acquired through trauma or nondegenerative neurologic illness, for whom it has been determined that active rehabilitation would be beneficial and to whom these services are being provided. Services offered by a congregate living health facility to a person who is catastrophically disabled shall include, but not be limited to, speech, physical, and occupational therapy.

(3) A congregate living health facility license shall specify which of the types of persons described in paragraph (2) to whom a facility is licensed to provide services.

(4)

(A) A facility operated by a city and county for the purposes of delivering services under this section may have a capacity of 59 beds.

(B) A congregate living health facility not operated by a city and county servicing persons who are terminally ill, persons who have been diagnosed with a life-threatening illness, or both, that is located in a county with a population of 500,000 or more persons, or located in a county of the 16th class pursuant to Section 28020 of the Government Code, may have not more than 25 beds for the purpose of serving persons who are terminally ill.

(C) A congregate living health facility not operated by a city and county serving persons who are catastrophically and severely disabled, as defined in subparagraph (C) of paragraph (1) that is located in a county of 500,000 or more persons may have not more than 12 beds for the purpose of serving persons who are catastrophically and severely disabled.

(5) A congregate living health facility shall have a noninstitutional, homelike environment.

**CONGREGATE RESIDENCE.** Any building or portion thereof that contains facilities for living, sleeping and sanitation, as required by this code, and may include facilities for eating and cooking, for occupancy by other than a family. A congregate residence may be a shelter, convent, monastery, dormitory, fraternity or sorority house, but does not include jails, hospitals, nursing homes, hotels or lodging houses.

**[F] CONSTANTLY ATTENDED LOCATION.** A designated location at a facility staffed by trained personnel on a continuous basis where alarm or supervisory signals are monitored and facilities are provided for notification of the fire department or other emergency services.

## DEFINITIONS

**[A] CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS.** Written, graphic and pictorial documents prepared or assembled for describing the design, location and physical characteristics of the elements of a project necessary for obtaining a building permit.

**[BG] CONSTRUCTION TYPES.** See Section 602.

**Type I.** See Section 602.2.

**Type II.** See Section 602.2.

**Type III.** See Section 602.3.

**Type IV.** See Section 602.4.

**Type V.** See Section 602.5.

**[BF] CONTINUOUS INSULATION (ci).** Insulating material that is continuous across all structural members without thermal bridges other than fasteners and service openings. It is installed on the interior or exterior, or is integral to any opaque surface of the building envelope.

**[F] CONTROL AREA.** Spaces within a building where quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area are stored, dispensed, used or handled. See the definition of “*Outdoor control area*” in the *California Fire Code*.

**CONTROL ROOM.** A room that has staff that provides direct supervision of one or more cell tiers, pods, dormitories, housing units, sally ports, central holding areas, individual holding cells within central holding areas, as well as any number of courtroom holding cells and arraignment docks, and may have fire and personal alarm annunciation, ability to open and close doors, communicate with Central Control and monitor activities inside the area of control and the space immediately outside the Control Room’s zone of influence.

**[BS] CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL.** A self-compacted, cementitious material used primarily as a backfill in place of compacted fill.

**[BS] CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION.** Construction whose primary structural elements are formed by a system of repetitive wood-framing members. See Section 2308 for conventional light-frame construction provisions.

**[BG] CORNICE.** A projecting horizontal molded element located at or near the top of an architectural feature.

**CORRECTIONAL HOSPITALS.** Facilities that provide care and treatment for medical, psychiatric, obstetrical or surgical treatment of care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation within a detention facility such as a prison or jail.

**CORRECTIONAL MEDICAL OR MENTAL HEALTH HOUSING SUITE.** Within a state prison, correctional treatment facility, local detention facility or juvenile facility, a correctional medical or mental health housing suite shall be a group of patient rooms or cells and support spaces, including nurse stations, located around shared circulation.

**CORRECTIONAL MENTAL HEALTH FACILITIES.** Facilities that provide care and treatment for psychiatric treatment of care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation within a detention facility such as a prison or jail.

**CORRECTIONAL NURSING FACILITIES.** Facilities that provide care, including both intermediate care facilities and skilled nursing facilities, where any of the persons are incapable of self-preservation or classified as non-ambulatory or bedridden within a detention facility such as a prison or jail.

**CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS.** Facilities that provide emergency and acute care and treatment for medical, psychiatric, obstetrical or surgical treatment of care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation within a detention facility such as a prison or jail.

**[BE] CORRIDOR.** An enclosed exit access component that defines and provides a path of egress travel.

**CORRIDOR, OPEN-ENDED.** See “*Open-ended corridor*.”

**[BF] CORRIDOR DAMPER.** A listed device intended for use where air ducts penetrate or terminate at horizontal openings in the ceilings of fire-resistance-rated corridors, where the corridor ceiling is permitted to be constructed as required for the corridor walls.

**[BS] CORROSION RESISTANCE.** The ability of a material to withstand deterioration of its surface or its properties when exposed to its environment.

**CORROSION RESISTANT.** Capable of maintaining original surface characteristics under the prolonged influence of the use environment.

**[F] CORROSIVE.** A chemical that causes visible destruction of, or irreversible alterations in, living tissue by chemical action at the point of contact. A chemical shall be considered corrosive if, when tested on the intact skin of albino rabbits by the method described in DOTn 49 CFR, Part 173.137, such chemical destroys or changes irreversibly the structure of the tissue at the point of contact following an exposure period of 4 hours. This term does not refer to action on inanimate surfaces.

**[BG] COURT.** An open, uncovered space, unobstructed to the sky, bounded on three or more sides by exterior building walls or other enclosing devices.

**COURTHOUSE HOLDING FACILITY. [SFM]** A room, cell, cell complex or building for the confinement of persons for the purpose of a court appearance for a period not to exceed 12 hours.

**COURTROOM DOCK.** An area within a courtroom where persons may be restrained and are awaiting court proceedings.

**[BG] COVERED MALL BUILDING.** A single building enclosing a number of tenants and occupants, such as retail stores, drinking and dining establishments, entertainment and amusement facilities, passenger transportation terminals, offices and other similar uses wherein two or more tenants have a main entrance into one or more malls. Anchor buildings shall not be considered as a part of the covered mall building. The term “covered mall building” shall include open mall buildings as defined below.

**Mall.** A roofed or covered common pedestrian area within a covered mall building that serves as access for two or more tenants and not to exceed three levels that are open to each other. The term “mall” shall include open malls as defined below.

## DEFINITIONS

**Open mall.** An unroofed common pedestrian way serving a number of tenants not exceeding three levels. Circulation at levels above grade shall be permitted to include open exterior balconies leading to exits discharging at grade.

**Open mall building.** Several structures housing a number of tenants, such as retail stores, drinking and dining establishments, entertainment and amusement facilities, offices, and other similar uses, wherein two or more tenants have a main entrance into one or more open malls. Anchor buildings are not considered as a part of the open mall building.

**COVERED MULTIFAMILY DWELLINGS. [HCD 1-AC]**  
“Covered multifamily dwellings” means either of the following:

1. Buildings that consist of at least four condominium dwelling units or at least three apartment dwelling units if the buildings have at least one elevator.
2. The ground floor dwelling units in buildings that consist of at least four condominium dwelling units or at least three apartment dwelling units if the building does not have an elevator.

Covered multifamily dwellings include dwellings listed in Section 1102A.1. For purposes of this definition, dwelling units within a single structure separated by firewalls do not constitute separate buildings.

**[BS] CRIPPLE WALL.** A framed stud wall extending from the top of the foundation to the underside of floor framing for the lowest occupied floor level.

**[F] CRITICAL CIRCUIT.** A circuit that requires continuous operation to ensure safety of the structure and occupants.

**[BS] CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER.** A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or structural composite lumber where the adjacent layers are cross oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

**CROSS SLOPE.** The slope that is perpendicular to the direction of travel.

**[F] CRYOGENIC FLUID.** A liquid having a boiling point lower than -150°F (-101°C) at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (an absolute pressure of 101 kPa).

**CURB CUT.** An interruption of a curb at a pedestrian way, which separates surfaces that are substantially at the same elevation.

**CURB RAMP.** A sloping prepared surface, intended for pedestrian traffic, which provides access between a walk or sidewalk and a surface located above or below an adjacent curb face.

**[BG] CUSTODIAL CARE.** Assistance with day-to-day living tasks; such as assistance with cooking, taking medication, bathing, using toilet facilities and other tasks of daily living. Custodial care includes persons receiving care who have the ability to respond to emergency situations and evacuate at a slower rate and/or who have mental and psychiatric complications.

**CUSTODY STATION.** A desk or platform staffed by one or more custody officers whose purpose is to supervise those in custody.

**[BS] DALLE GLASS.** A decorative composite glazing material made of individual pieces of glass that are embedded in a cast matrix of concrete or epoxy.

**DAMPER.** See “Ceiling radiation damper,” “Combination fire/smoke damper,” “Corridor damper,” “Fire damper” and “Smoke damper.”

**[BS] DANGEROUS.** Any building, structure or portion thereof that meets any of the conditions described below shall be deemed dangerous:

1. The building or structure has collapsed, has partially collapsed, has moved off its foundation or lacks the necessary support of the ground.
2. There exists a significant risk of collapse, detachment or dislodgment of any portion, member, appurtenance or ornamentation of the building or structure under permanent, routine, or frequent loads; under actual loads already in effect; or under snow, wind, rain, flood, earthquake, or other environmental loads when such loads are imminent.

**[F] DAY BOX.** A portable magazine designed to hold explosive materials constructed in accordance with the requirements for a Type 3 magazine as defined and classified in Chapter 56 of the California Fire Code.

**DAY-CARE.** For the purposes of these regulations, means the care of persons during any period of a 24-hour day where permanent sleeping accommodations are not provided. The time period shall not be more than 24 hours.

**Note:** “Day-care” shall not be construed to preclude the use of cots or mats for napping purposes, provided all employees, attendants and staff personnel are awake and on duty in the area where napping occurs.

**DAY-CARE HOME, FAMILY.** A home that regularly provides care, protection and supervision for 14 or fewer children, in the provider’s own home, for periods of less than 24 hours per day, while the parents or guardians are away, and is either a large family day-care home or a small family day-care home.

**DAY-CARE HOME, LARGE FAMILY.** A provider’s own home which is licensed to provide day care for periods less than 24 hours per day for nine to 14 persons, including children under the age of 10 years who reside at the home.

**DAY-CARE HOME, SMALL FAMILY.** A home which provides family day-care to eight or fewer children, including children under the age of 10 years who reside at the home, in the provider’s own home, for periods of less than 24 hours per day. Small family day-care homes are exempted from state fire and life safety regulations other than those state and local standards applicable to Group R-3 occupancies. (See Health and Safety Code, Section 13143 (b).)

**DAY ROOM.** A room which is adjacent to a cell, or cell tier, or dormitory and which is used as a dining, exercise or other activity room for inmates.

**[BS] DEAD LOAD.** The weight of materials of construction incorporated into the building, including but not limited to walls, floors, roofs, ceilings, stairways, built-in partitions,

## DEFINITIONS

finishes, cladding and other similarly incorporated architectural and structural items, and the weight of fixed service equipment, including cranes and material handling systems.

**DECK.** Is an area surrounding a pool which is specifically constructed or installed for use by bathers.

**[BS] DECORATIVE GLASS.** A carved, leaded or Dalle glass or glazing material whose purpose is decorative or artistic, not functional; whose coloring, texture or other design qualities or components cannot be removed without destroying the glazing material and whose surface, or assembly into which it is incorporated, is divided into segments.

**[F] DECORATIVE MATERIALS.** All materials applied over the building interior finish for decorative, acoustical or other effect including, but not limited to, curtains, draperies, fabrics and streamers; and all other materials utilized for decorative effect including, but not limited to, bulletin boards, artwork, posters, photographs, batting, cloth, cotton, hay, stalks, straw, vines, leaves, trees, moss and similar items, foam plastics and materials containing foam plastics. Decorative materials do not include wall coverings, ceiling coverings, floor coverings, ordinary window shades, interior finish and materials 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) or less in thickness applied directly to and adhering tightly to a substrate.

**[BS] DEEP FOUNDATION.** A deep foundation is a foundation element that does not satisfy the definition of a shallow foundation.

**[BE] DEFEND-IN-PLACE.** A method of emergency response that engages building components and trained staff to provide occupant safety during an emergency. Emergency response involves remaining in place, relocating within the building, or both, without evacuating the building.

**[A] DEFERRED SUBMITTAL.** Those portions of the design that are not submitted at the time of the application and that are to be submitted to the building official within a specified period.

**[F] DEFLAGRATION.** An exothermic reaction, such as the extremely rapid oxidation of a flammable dust or vapor in air, in which the reaction progresses through the unburned material at a rate less than the velocity of sound. A deflagration can have an explosive effect.

**[BF] DELAYED-ACTION CLOSER.** A self-closing device that incorporates a delay prior to the initiation of closing. Delayed-action closers are mechanical devices with an adjustable delay.

**[F] DELUGE SYSTEM.** A sprinkler system employing open sprinklers attached to a piping system connected to a water supply through a valve that is opened by the operation of a detection system installed in the same areas as the sprinklers. When this valve opens, water flows into the piping system and discharges from all sprinklers attached thereto.

**DEPARTMENT. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** The Department of Housing and Community Development.

**[BS] DESIGN EARTHQUAKE GROUND MOTION.** The earthquake ground motion that buildings and structures are specifically proportioned to resist in Section 1613.

**[BS] DESIGN FLOOD.** The flood associated with the greater of the following two areas:

1. Area with a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
2. Area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

**[BS] DESIGN FLOOD ELEVATION.** The elevation of the "design flood," including wave height, relative to the datum specified on the community's legally designated flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO, the design flood elevation shall be the elevation of the highest existing grade of the building's perimeter plus the depth number (in feet) specified on the flood hazard map. In areas designated as Zone AO where a depth number is not specified on the map, the depth number shall be taken as being equal to 2 feet (610 mm).

**DESIGN PROFESSIONAL, REGISTERED.** See "Registered design professional."

**DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE, REGISTERED.** See "Registered design professional in responsible charge."

**[BS] DESIGN STRENGTH.** The product of the nominal strength and a resistance factor (or strength reduction factor).

**DESIGNATED PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION. [DSA-AC]** Transportation provided by a public entity (other than public school transportation) by bus, rail or other conveyance (other than transportation by aircraft or intercity or commuter rail transportation) that provides the general public with general or special service, including charter service, on a regular and continuing basis.

**[BS] DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM.** Those nonstructural components that require design in accordance with Chapter 13 of ASCE 7 and for which the component importance factor,  $I_p$ , is greater than 1 in accordance with Section 13.1.3 of ASCE 7.

**DESTINATION-ORIENTED ELEVATOR. [DSA-AC]** Destination-oriented elevators are operated by the user selecting a destination floor at a hall call console located at or near an elevator landing. The destination-oriented elevator system then assigns an elevator car which transports the user to the selected destination floor. Destination-oriented elevators do not provide floor selection within elevator cars.

**[F] DETACHED BUILDING.** A separate single-story building, without a basement or crawl space, used for the storage or use of hazardous materials and located an approved distance from all structures.

**DETACHED SINGLE-FAMILY DWELLING. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** Any single-family dwelling which is separated (detached) from adjacent buildings.

**[BS] DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** See Section 1905.1.1.

**DETECTABLE WARNING.** A standardized surface feature built in or applied to walking surfaces or other elements to warn persons with visual impairments of hazards on a circulation path.

## DEFINITIONS

**[F] DETECTOR, HEAT.** A fire detector that senses heat—either abnormally high temperature or rate of rise, or both.

**DETENTION ELEVATOR.** [SFM] Detention elevator shall mean an elevator which moves in-custody individuals within a secure and restrained environment.

**DETENTION PROGRAM SUITE.** Within a state prison, correctional treatment facility, local detention facility or juvenile facility, a detention program suite shall be a group of program related spaces, not classified as group F uses, located around shared circulation.

**DETENTION TREATMENT ROOM.** [SFM] Detention treatment room shall mean a lockable room or rooms within Group I-3 occupancies used for recreational therapy, group rooms, interdisciplinary treatment team rooms and interview rooms not classified solely as a Group I-2 occupancy.

**[F] DETONATION.** An exothermic reaction characterized by the presence of a shock wave in the material which establishes and maintains the reaction. The reaction zone progresses through the material at a rate greater than the velocity of sound. The principal heating mechanism is one of shock compression. Detonations have an explosive effect.

**[BG] DETOXIFICATION FACILITIES.** Facilities that provide treatment for substance abuse, serving care recipients who are incapable of self-preservation or classified as non-ambulatory or who are harmful to themselves or others.

**[BS] DIAPHRAGM.** A horizontal or sloped system acting to transmit lateral forces to vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system. When the term “diaphragm” is used, it shall include horizontal bracing systems.

**Diaphragm, blocked.** In light-frame construction, a diaphragm in which all sheathing edges not occurring on a framing member are supported on and fastened to blocking.

**Diaphragm boundary.** In light-frame construction, a location where shear is transferred into or out of the diaphragm sheathing. Transfer is either to a boundary element or to another force-resisting element.

**Diaphragm chord.** A diaphragm boundary element perpendicular to the applied load that is assumed to take axial stresses due to the diaphragm moment.

**Diaphragm, unblocked.** A diaphragm that has edge nailing at supporting members only. Blocking between supporting structural members at panel edges is not included. Diaphragm panels are field nailed to supporting members.

| **[BS] DIMENSIONS.** This definition applies only to Chapter 21.

**Nominal.** The specified dimension plus an allowance for the joints with which the units are to be laid. Nominal dimensions are usually stated in whole numbers. Thickness is given first, followed by height and then length.

**Specified.** Dimensions specified for the manufacture or construction of a unit, joint or element.

**[BE] DIRECT ACCESS.** A path of travel from a space to an immediately adjacent space through an opening in the common wall between the two spaces.

**DIRECTIONAL SIGN.** [DSA-AC, HCD 1 & HCD 2] A publicly displayed notice which indicates by use of words or symbols a recommended direction or route of travel.

**DISABILITY.** [DSA-AC] Disability is (1) a physical or mental impairment that limits one or more of the major life activities of an individual, (2) a record of such an impairment, or (3) being regarded as having such an impairment.

**[F] DISPENSING.** The pouring or transferring of any material from a container, tank or similar vessel, whereby vapors, dusts, fumes, mists or gases are liberated to the atmosphere.

**DISTANCE FROM AN ACTIVE EARTHQUAKE FAULT.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1 & 4] Distance measured from the nearest point of the building to the closest edge of an Alquist-Priolo Earthquake fault zone for an active fault, if such a map exists, or to the closest mapped splay of the fault.

**DISTRICT AGRICULTURAL ASSOCIATIONS.** Those associations regulated by the California Food and Agricultural Code, Division 3, Part 3.

**DOOR, BALANCED.** See “Balanced door.”

**DOOR, LOW-ENERGY POWER-OPERATED.** See “Low-energy power-operated door.”

**DOOR, POWER-ASSISTED.** See “Power-assisted door.”

**DOOR, POWER-OPERATED.** See “Power-operated door.”

**DOORWAY, EXIT ACCESS.** See “Exit access doorway.”

**[BG] DORMITORY.** A space in a building where group sleeping accommodations are provided in one room, or in a series of closely associated rooms, for persons not members of the same family group, under joint occupancy and single management, as in college dormitories or fraternity houses. [SFM] For Group I-3 occupancies “Dormitory” is an area occupied by no less than three inmates.

**[BF] DRAFTSTOP.** A material, device or construction installed to restrict the movement of air within open spaces of concealed areas of building components such as crawl spaces, floor/ceiling assemblies, roof/ceiling assemblies and attics.

**DRAG STRUT.** See “Collector.”

**DRAIN.** A fitting or fixture, usually at or near the bottom of a pool, through which water leaves the pool normally to the recirculation pump.

**[BS] DRILLED SHAFT.** A cast-in-place deep foundation element, also referred to as a caisson, drilled pier or bored pile, constructed by drilling a hole (with or without permanent casing or drilling fluid) into soil or rock and filling it with fluid concrete after the drilling equipment is removed.

**Socketed drilled shaft.** A drilled shaft with a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock.

**DRIVE AISLE.** A vehicular way provided within a parking facility that connects vehicular entrances, parking stalls, electric vehicle charging stations, passenger loading zones and vehicular exits.

**DRIVE-UP ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION.** An electric vehicle charging station in which use is limited to 30 minutes maximum and is provided at a location

## DEFINITIONS

*where the electric vehicle approaches in the forward direction, stops in the vehicle space, charges the vehicle and proceeds forward to depart the vehicle space. The arrangement of a drive-up electric vehicle charger and its associated vehicle space is similar to a gasoline filling station island.*

**DRIVEWAY.** A vehicular way providing access between a public way and a building, parking facility, or other off-street area. A driveway may provide access to drive aisles in a parking facility.

**[BS] DRY FLOODPROOFING.** A combination of design modifications that results in a building or structure, including the attendant utilities and equipment and sanitary facilities, being water tight with walls substantially impermeable to the passage of water and with structural components having the capacity to resist loads as identified in ASCE 7.

**[F] DRY-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING AGENT.** A powder composed of small particles, usually of sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, urea-potassium-based bicarbonate, potassium chloride or monoammonium phosphate, with added particulate material supplemented by special treatment to provide resistance to packing, resistance to moisture absorption (caking) and the proper flow capabilities.

**[A] DWELLING.** A building that contains one or two dwelling units used, intended or designed to be used, rented, leased, let or hired out to be occupied for living purposes.

**[A] DWELLING UNIT.** A single unit providing complete, independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating, cooking and sanitation. *[HCD 1-AC] For the purposes of Chapter 11A, a single unit of residence for a family of one or more persons. Examples of dwelling units covered by Chapter 11A include condominiums, an apartment unit within an apartment building, and other types of dwellings in which sleeping accommodations are provided but toileting or cooking facilities are shared by occupants of more than one room or portion of the dwelling. Examples of the latter include dormitory rooms and sleeping accommodations in shelters intended for occupancy as residences for homeless persons.*

**[BG] DWELLING UNIT, EFFICIENCY.** A dwelling unit where all permanent provisions for living, sleeping, eating and cooking are contained in a single room.

**DWELLING UNIT OR SLEEPING UNIT, MULTISTORY.** See "Multistory."

**EFFECTIVE PARTICLE SIZE.** The theoretical size of a sieve in mm that will pass 10 percent by weight of sand.

**EFFICIENCY DWELLING UNIT. [HCD 1]** A dwelling unit constructed in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 17958.1 or the California Building Code Section 1208.4.

**[BE] EGRESS COURT.** A court or yard which provides access to a public way for one or more exits.

**ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV). [DSA-AC & SFM]** An automotive-type vehicle for on-road use, such as passenger automobiles, buses, trucks, vans, neighborhood electric vehicles, electric motorcycles and the like, primarily powered by an electric motor that draws current from a rechargeable storage battery, fuel cell, photovoltaic array or other source of electric current. Plug-in hybrid electric vehicles (PHEV) are considered electric vehicles. For the purpose of this code, off-road, self-propelled electric vehicles, such as industrial trucks, hoists, lifts, transports, golf carts, airline ground support equipment, tractors, boats and the like, are not included.

*electric vehicles. For the purpose of this code, off-road, self-propelled electric vehicles, such as industrial trucks, hoists, lifts, transports, golf carts, airline ground support equipment, tractors, boats and the like, are not included.*

**ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) CHARGER.** Off-board charging equipment used to charge an electric vehicle.

**ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING SPACE (EV Space).** A space intended for charging electric vehicles.

**ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION (EVCS).** One or more electric vehicle charging spaces served by an electric vehicle charger or other charging equipment. Where a multiport electric vehicle charger can simultaneously charge more than one vehicle, the number of electric vehicle charging stations shall be considered equivalent to the number of electric vehicles that can be simultaneously charged.

**ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) CONNECTOR.** A device that, when electrically coupled (conductive or inductive) to an electric vehicle inlet, establishes an electrical connection to the electric vehicle for the purpose of power transfer and information exchange. This device is part of the electric vehicle coupler.

**[BG] ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION.** One or more vehicle spaces served by an electric vehicle charging system.

**[BF] ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM.** A specific construction of devices, materials, or coatings installed as a fire-resistive barrier system applied to electrical system components, such as cable trays, conduits and other raceways, open run cables and conductors, cables, and conductors.

**ELEMENT. [DSA-AC]** An architectural or mechanical component of a building, facility, space or site.

**ELEVATED PLAY COMPONENT. [DSA-AC]** A play component that is approached above or below grade and that is part of a composite play structure consisting of two or more play components attached or functionally linked to create an integrated unit providing more than one play activity.

**[F] ELEVATOR GROUP.** A grouping of elevators in a building located adjacent or directly across from one another that responds to common hall call buttons.

**ELEVATOR, PASSENGER. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** See "PASSENGER ELEVATOR." *[DSA-AC]* An elevator used primarily to carry passengers.

**[F] EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEM.** A system to provide indication and warning of emergency situations involving hazardous materials.

**[F] EMERGENCY CONTROL STATION.** An approved location on the premises where signals from emergency equipment are received and which is staffed by trained personnel.

**DEFINITIONS**

**[BE] EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING.** An operable exterior window, door or other similar device that provides for a means of escape and access for rescue in the event of an emergency.

**[F] EMERGENCY POWER SYSTEM.** A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required life safety, fire alarm, detection and ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Emergency power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could result in loss of human life or serious injuries.

**[F] EMERGENCY VOICE/ALARM COMMUNICATIONS.** Dedicated manual or automatic facilities for originating and distributing voice instructions, as well as alert and evacuation signals pertaining to a fire emergency, to the occupants of a building.

**[BF] EMITTANCE.** The ratio of radiant heat flux emitted by a specimen to that emitted by a blackbody at the same temperature and under the same conditions.

**[BE] EMPLOYEE WORK AREA.** All or any portion of a space used only by employees and only for work. Corridors, toilet rooms, kitchenettes and break rooms are not employee work areas.

> **ENFORCEMENT. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** The applicable section of the Health and Safety Code is repeated here for clarity and reads as follows:

**Section 17920.** “Enforcement” means diligent effort to secure compliance, including review of plans and permit applications, response to complaints, citation of violations and other legal process. Except as otherwise provided in this part, “enforcement” may, but need not, include inspections of existing buildings on which no complaint or permit application has been filed, and effort to secure compliance as to these existing buildings.

**ENFORCEMENT AGENT. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** That individual within the agency or organization charged with responsibility for agency or organization compliance with the requirements of this Code. Used interchangeably with Building Official and Code Official.

**ENFORCING AGENCY. [DSA-AC, HCD 1 & HCD 2]** The designated department or agency as specified by statute or regulation.

**[BS] ENGINEERED WOOD RIM BOARD.** A full-depth structural composite lumber, wood structural panel, structural glued laminated timber or prefabricated wood I-joist member designed to transfer horizontal (shear) and vertical (compression) loads, provide attachment for diaphragm sheathing, siding and exterior deck ledgers, and provide lateral support at the ends of floor or roof joists or rafters.

**ENTRANCE.** Any access point to a building or portion of a building or facility used for the purpose of entering. An entrance includes the approach walk, the vertical access leading to the entrance platform, the entrance platform itself, vestibule if provided, the entry door or gate, and the hardware of the entry door or gate.

**ENTRANCE, PUBLIC.** See “Public entrance.”

**ENTRANCE, RESTRICTED.** See “Restricted entrance.”

**ENTRANCE, SERVICE.** See “Service entrance.”

**EQUIPMENT. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]**

*Equipment as used in this part and all applicable parts of the California Building Standards Code shall be classified as fixed equipment, mobile, movable, countertop, interim, temporary or other equipment.*

(1) **COUNTERTOP EQUIPMENT [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means equipment that typically remains on countertop, work bench, shelf or support other than the floor during its service life.

(2) **ESSENTIAL EQUIPMENT [OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means equipment whose failure will significantly impair operations during or after a disaster. The facility shall determine which equipment is essential. Essential equipment shall also include equipment that is required to provide the eight basic services of the hospital as defined in Section 1224.3.

**ESSENTIAL EQUIPMENT [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** means equipment whose failure will significantly impair operations during or after a disaster for emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers, and other facilities required for emergency response of state-owned essential services buildings, as defined in the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1, CCR) Section 4-207, and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.

(3) **FIXED EQUIPMENT [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means equipment that is directly attached to the building or directly connected to a service distribution system/utility and that typically remains in one fixed location during its service life or use.

(4) **INTERIM EQUIPMENT [OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means temporary equipment that will be in use greater than 180 days but only for the duration of the construction project that it is related to.

(5) **MOBILE EQUIPMENT [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means equipment, with or without wheels or rollers, that is typically used in a different location than where it is stored and moved from one location in the building to another during ordinary use.

(6) **MOVABLE EQUIPMENT [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means equipment that is directly attached to the building and/or directly connected to a service distribution system/utility, with or without wheels or rollers, that typically remains in one fixed location during its service life or use, but is required to be periodically moved to facilitate cleaning or maintenance.

(7) **OTHER EQUIPMENT [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means equipment that is not directly connected to a building service distribution system, with or without wheels or rollers, and is typically used at a single location during its service life.

## DEFINITIONS

|| (8) **TEMPORARY EQUIPMENT [OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** means fixed, movable, countertop or other equipment that is used during replacement, maintenance or repair for a time of service as defined in Section 108.

**EQUIPMENT AREA.** An area used for pool recirculation and purification equipment and related piping appurtenances.

**[BG] EQUIPMENT PLATFORM.** An unoccupied, elevated platform used exclusively for mechanical systems or industrial process equipment, including the associated elevated walkways, stairways, alternating tread devices and ladders necessary to access the platform (see Section 505.3).

**EQUIVALENT FACILITATION.** The use of designs, products or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed, resulting in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability.

**Note:** In determining equivalent facilitation, consideration shall be given to means that provide for the maximum independence of persons with disabilities while presenting the least risk of harm, injury or other hazard to such persons or others.

**[BS] ESSENTIAL FACILITIES.** Buildings and other structures that are intended to remain operational in the event of extreme environmental loading from flood, wind, snow or earthquakes.

**[F] EXHAUSTED ENCLOSURE.** An appliance or piece of equipment that consists of a top, a back and two sides providing a means of local exhaust for capturing gases, fumes, vapors and mists. Such enclosures include laboratory hoods, exhaust fume hoods and similar appliances and equipment used to locally retain and exhaust the gases, fumes, vapors and mists that could be released. Rooms or areas provided with general ventilation, in themselves, are not exhausted enclosures.

**[A] EXISTING BUILDING.** A building erected prior to the date of adoption of the appropriate code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

**EXISTING BUILDING OR FACILITY. [DSA-AC]** A facility in existence on any given date, without regard to whether the facility may also be considered newly constructed or altered under this code.

**[BS] EXISTING STRUCTURE.** A structure erected prior to the date of adoption of the appropriate code, or one for which a legal building permit has been issued.

**[BE] EXIT.** That portion of a means of egress system between the exit access and the exit discharge or public way. Exit components include exterior exit doors at the level of exit discharge, interior exit stairways and ramps, exit passageways, exterior exit stairways and ramps and horizontal exits.

**EXIT, HORIZONTAL.** See "Horizontal exit."

**[BE] EXIT ACCESS.** That portion of a means of egress system that leads from any occupied portion of a building or structure to an exit.

**[BE] EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY.** A door or access point along the path of egress travel from an occupied room, area or space where the path of egress enters an intervening room, corridor, exit access stairway or ramp.

**[BE] EXIT ACCESS RAMP.** A ramp within the exit access portion of the means of egress system.

**[BE] EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAY.** A stairway within the exit access portion of the means of egress system.

**[BE] EXIT DISCHARGE.** That portion of a means of egress system between the termination of an exit and a public way.

**[BE] EXIT DISCHARGE, LEVEL OF.** The story at the point at which an exit terminates and an exit discharge begins.

**[BE] EXIT PASSAGEWAY.** An exit component that is separated from other interior spaces of a building or structure by fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives, and provides for a protected path of egress travel in a horizontal direction to an exit or to the exit discharge.

**[BF] EXPANDED VINYL WALL COVERING.** Wall covering consisting of a woven textile backing, an expanded vinyl base coat layer and a nonexpanded vinyl skin coat. The expanded base coat layer is a homogeneous vinyl layer that contains a blowing agent. During processing, the blowing agent decomposes, causing this layer to expand by forming closed cells. The total thickness of the wall covering is approximately 0.055 inch to 0.070 inch (1.4 mm to 1.78 mm).

**[F] EXPLOSION.** An effect produced by the sudden violent expansion of gases, which may be accompanied by a shock wave or disruption, or both, of enclosing materials or structures. An explosion could result from any of the following:

1. Chemical changes such as rapid oxidation, deflagration or detonation, decomposition of molecules and runaway polymerization (usually detonations).
2. Physical changes such as pressure tank ruptures.
3. Atomic changes (nuclear fission or fusion).

**[F] EXPLOSIVE.** A chemical compound, mixture or device, the primary or common purpose of which is to function by explosion. The term includes, but is not limited to: dynamite, black powder, pellet powder, initiating explosives, detonators, safety fuses, squibs, detonating cord, igniter cord, and igniters. The term "explosive" includes any material determined to be within the scope of USC Title 18: Chapter 40 and also includes any material classified as an explosive other than consumer fireworks, 1.4G by the hazardous materials regulations of DOTN 49 CFR Parts 100-185.

**High explosive.** Explosive material, such as dynamite, which can be caused to detonate by means of a No. 8 test blasting cap when unconfined.

**Low explosive.** Explosive material that will burn or deflagrate when ignited. It is characterized by a rate of reaction that is less than the speed of sound. Examples of low explosives include, but are not limited to: black powder; safety fuse; igniters; igniter cord; fuse lighters; fireworks; and propellants, 1.3C.

**Mass-detonating explosives.** Division 1.1, 1.2 and 1.5 explosives alone or in combination, or loaded into various types of ammunition or containers, most of which can be expected to explode virtually instantaneously when a small portion is subjected to fire, severe concussion, impact, the impulse of an initiating agent or the effect of a considerable

## DEFINITIONS

discharge of energy from without. Materials that react in this manner represent a mass explosion hazard. Such an explosive will normally cause severe structural damage to adjacent objects. Explosive propagation could occur immediately to other items of ammunition and explosives stored sufficiently close to and not adequately protected from the initially exploding pile with a time interval short enough so that two or more quantities must be considered as one for quantity-distance purposes.

**UN/DOTn Class 1 explosives.** The former classification system used by DOTn included the terms “high” and “low” explosives as defined herein. The following terms further define explosives under the current system applied by DOTn for all explosive materials defined as hazard Class 1 materials. Compatibility group letters are used in concert with the division to specify further limitations on each division noted (i.e., the letter G identifies the material as a pyrotechnic substance or article containing a pyrotechnic substance and similar materials).

**Division 1.1.** Explosives that have a mass explosion hazard. A mass explosion is one which affects almost the entire *load* instantaneously.

**Division 1.2.** Explosives that have a projection hazard but not a mass explosion hazard.

**Division 1.3.** Explosives that have a fire hazard and either a minor blast hazard or a minor projection hazard or both, but not a mass explosion hazard.

**Division 1.4.** Explosives that pose a minor explosion hazard. The explosive effects are largely confined to the package and no projection of fragments of appreciable size or range is to be expected. An external fire must not cause virtually instantaneous explosion of almost the entire contents of the package.

**Division 1.5.** Very insensitive explosives. This division is comprised of substances that have a mass explosion hazard, but that are so insensitive there is very little probability of initiation or of transition from burning to detonation under normal conditions of transport.

**Division 1.6.** Extremely insensitive articles which do not have a mass explosion hazard. This division is comprised of articles that contain only extremely insensitive detonating substances and which demonstrate a negligible probability of accidental initiation or propagation.

**EXTERIOR COVERING. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[BE] EXTERIOR EXIT RAMP.** An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and is open to yards, courts or public ways.

**[BE] EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY.** An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and is open to yards, courts or public ways.

**[BF] EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS).** EIFS are nonstructural, nonload-bearing, exterior wall cladding systems that consist of an insulation

board attached either adhesively or mechanically, or both, to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat and a textured protective finish coat.

**[BF] EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS) WITH DRAINAGE.** An EIFS that incorporates a means of drainage applied over a water-resistive barrier.

**[BF] EXTERIOR SURFACES.** Weather-exposed surfaces.

**[BF] EXTERIOR WALL.** A wall, bearing or nonbearing, that is used as an enclosing wall for a building, other than a fire wall, and that has a slope of 60 degrees (1.05 rad) or greater with the horizontal plane.

**[BF] EXTERIOR WALL COVERING.** A material or assembly of materials applied on the exterior side of exterior walls for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation or for aesthetics, including but not limited to, veneers, siding, exterior insulation and finish systems, architectural trim and embellishments such as cornices, soffits, fascias, gutters and leaders.

**[BF] EXTERIOR WALL ENVELOPE.** A system or assembly of exterior wall components, including exterior wall covering materials, that provides protection of the building | structural members, including framing and sheathing materials, and conditioned interior space, from the detrimental effects of the exterior environment.

**[BF] F RATING.** The time period that the through-penetration firestop system or perimeter fire containment system limits the spread of fire through the penetration or void.

**[BF] FABRIC PARTITION.** A partition consisting of a finished surface made of fabric, without a continuous rigid backing, that is directly attached to a framing system in which the vertical framing members are spaced greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

**[BS] FABRICATED ITEM.** Structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies consisting of materials assembled prior to installation in a building or structure, or subjected to operations such as heat treatment, thermal cutting, cold working or reforming after manufacture and prior to installation in a building or structure. Materials produced in accordance with standards referenced by this code, such as rolled structural steel shapes, steel reinforcing bars, masonry units and wood structural panels, or in accordance with a referenced standard that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, are not “fabricated items.”

**[F] FABRICATION AREA.** An area within a semiconductor fabrication facility and related research and development areas in which there are processes using hazardous production materials. Such areas are allowed to include ancillary rooms or areas such as dressing rooms and offices that are directly related to the fabrication area processes.

**[A] FACILITY.** All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements and pedestrian or vehicular routes located on a site. **[DSA-AC]** All or any portion of buildings, structures, site improvements, elements, and pedestrian routes or vehicular ways located on a site.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BS] FACTORED LOAD.** The product of a nominal load and a load factor.

**FAMILY. [HCD 1]** An individual or two or more persons who are related by blood or marriage; or otherwise live together in a dwelling unit.

**[BS] FENESTRATION.** Products classified as either vertical fenestration or skylights and sloped glazing, installed in such a manner as to preserve the weather-resistant barrier of the wall or roof in which they are installed. Fenestration includes products with glass or other transparent or translucent materials.

**[BS] FENESTRATION, VERTICAL.** Windows that are fixed or movable, opaque doors, glazed doors, glazed block and combination opaque and glazed doors installed in a wall at less than 15 degrees from the vertical.

**[BS] FIBERBOARD.** A fibrous, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers (usually wood or cane) and having a density of less than 31 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (497 kg/m<sup>3</sup>) but more than 10 pcf (160 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**[BS] FIBER-CEMENT (BACKER BOARD, SIDING, SOFFIT, TRIM AND UNDERLAYMENT) PRODUCTS.** Manufactured thin section composites of hydraulic cementitious matrices and discrete nonasbestos fibers.

**[BF] FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER.** A polymeric composite material consisting of reinforcement fibers, such as glass, impregnated with a fiber-binding polymer which is then molded and hardened. Fiber-reinforced polymers are permitted to contain cores laminated between fiber-reinforced polymer facings.

**FIELD NAILING.** See "Nailing, field."

**FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL.** See "Manual fire alarm box."

**[F] FIRE ALARM CONTROL UNIT.** A system component that receives inputs from automatic and manual fire alarm devices and may be capable of supplying power to detection devices and transponders or off-premises transmitters. The control unit may be capable of providing a transfer of power to the notification appliances and transfer of condition to relays or devices.

**[F] FIRE ALARM SIGNAL.** A signal initiated by a fire alarm-initiating device such as a manual fire alarm box, automatic fire detector, waterflow switch or other device whose activation is indicative of the presence of a fire or fire signature.

**[F] FIRE ALARM SYSTEM.** A system or portion of a combination system consisting of components and circuits arranged to monitor and annunciate the status of fire alarm or supervisory signal-initiating devices and to initiate the appropriate response to those signals.

**FIRE APPLIANCE. [SFM]** The apparatus or equipment provided or installed for use in the event of an emergency.

**[BF] FIRE AREA.** The aggregate floor area enclosed and bounded by fire walls, fire barriers, exterior walls or horizontal assemblies of a building. Areas of the building not

provided with surrounding walls shall be included in the fire area if such areas are included within the horizontal projection of the roof or floor next above.

**[BF] FIRE BARRIER.** A fire-resistance-rated wall assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

**[F] FIRE COMMAND CENTER.** The principal attended or unattended location where the status of detection, alarm communications and control systems is displayed, and from which the systems can be manually controlled.

**[BF] FIRE DAMPER.** A listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to close automatically upon detection of heat and resist the passage of flame. Fire dampers are classified for use in either static systems that will automatically shut down in the event of a fire, or in dynamic systems that continue to operate during a fire. A dynamic fire damper is tested and rated for closure under elevated temperature airflow.

**[F] FIRE DETECTOR, AUTOMATIC.** A device designed to detect the presence of a fire signature and to initiate action.

**[BF] FIRE DOOR.** The door component of a fire door assembly.

**[BF] FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY.** Any combination of a fire door, frame, hardware and other accessories that together provide a specific degree of fire protection to the opening.

**FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY, FLOOR.** See "Floor fire door assembly."

**[BF] FIRE EXIT HARDWARE.** Panic hardware that is listed for use on fire door assemblies.

**FIRE HAZARD SEVERITY ZONES. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[F] FIRE LANE.** A road or other passageway developed to allow the passage of fire apparatus. A fire lane is not necessarily intended for vehicular traffic other than fire apparatus.

**[BF] FIRE PARTITION.** A vertical assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which openings are protected.

**FIRE PROTECTION PLAN. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[BF] FIRE PROTECTION RATING.** The period of time that an opening protective will maintain the ability to confine a fire as determined by tests specified in Section 716. Ratings are stated in hours or minutes.

**[F] FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM.** Approved devices, equipment and systems or combinations of systems used to detect a fire, activate an alarm, extinguish or control a fire, control or manage smoke and products of a fire or any combination thereof.

**[BF] FIRE PROTECTIVE CURTAIN ASSEMBLY.** An assembly consisting of a fabric curtain, a bottom bar, guides, a coil, and an operating and closing system.

**[BF] FIRE RESISTANCE.** That property of materials or their assemblies that prevents or retards the passage of excessive heat, hot gases or flames under conditions of use.

**DEFINITIONS**

**[F] FIRE SAFETY FUNCTIONS.** Building and fire control functions that are intended to increase the level of life safety for occupants or to control the spread of harmful effects of fire.

**[BF] FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE.** The distance measured from the building face to one of the following:

1. The closest interior lot line.
2. To the centerline of a street, an alley or public way.
3. To an imaginary line between two buildings on the lot.

The distance shall be measured at right angles from the face of the wall.

**FIRE-SMOKE BARRIER.** *[SFM]* A fire-resistance-rated wall assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained in accordance with Section 707 and that is designed and constructed to restrict the movement of smoke in accordance with Section 710.

**[BF] FIRE WALL.** A fire-resistance-rated wall having protected openings, which restricts the spread of fire and extends continuously from the foundation to or through the roof, with sufficient structural stability under fire conditions to allow collapse of construction on either side without collapse of the wall.

**[BF] FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY.** A window constructed and glazed to give protection against the passage of fire.

**[BF] FIREBLOCKING.** Building materials, or materials approved for use as fireblocking, installed to resist the free passage of flame to other areas of the building through concealed spaces.

**[M] FIREPLACE.** A hearth and fire chamber or similar prepared place in which a fire may be made and which is built in conjunction with a chimney.

**[BS] FIREPLACE THROAT.** The opening between the top of the firebox and the smoke chamber.

**[BF] FIRE-RATED GLAZING.** Glazing with either a fire protection rating or a fire-resistance rating.

**[BF] FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING.** The period of time a building element, component or assembly maintains the ability to confine a fire, continues to perform a given structural function, or both, as determined by the tests, or the methods based on tests, prescribed in Section 703.

**[BF] FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEM.** An assemblage of specific materials or products that are designed, tested and fire-resistance rated in accordance with either ASTM E1966 or UL 2079 to resist for a prescribed period of time the passage of fire through joints made in or between fire-resistance-rated assemblies.

**[BS] FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD.** Wood products that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, exhibit reduced surface-burning characteristics and resist propagation of fire.

**FIRE-RETARDANT TREATED WOOD.** *[SFM]* See Section 2303.2.

**FIRESTOP, MEMBRANE-PENETRATION.** See "Membrane-penetration firestop."

**FIRESTOP, PENETRATION.** See "Penetration firestop."

**FIRESTOP SYSTEM, THROUGH-PENETRATION.** See "Through-penetration firestop system."

**[F] FIREWORKS.** Any composition or device for the purpose of producing a visible or audible effect for entertainment purposes by combustion, deflagration or detonation that meets the definition of 1.4G fireworks or 1.3G fireworks.

**Fireworks, 1.3G.** Large fireworks devices, which are explosive materials, intended for use in fireworks displays and designed to produce audible or visible effects by combustion, deflagration or detonation. Such 1.3G fireworks include, but are not limited to, firecrackers containing more than 130 milligrams (2 grains) of explosive composition, aerial shells containing more than 40 grams of pyrotechnic composition, and other display pieces which exceed the limits for classification as 1.4G fireworks. Such 1.3G fireworks are also described as fireworks, UN0335 by the DOTn.

**Note:** Fireworks shall have the same meaning as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 12511 and 12512 which has been reprinted as follows:

12511. "Fireworks" means any device containing chemical elements and chemical compounds capable of burning independently of the oxygen of the atmosphere and producing audible, visual, mechanical or thermal effects which are useful as pyrotechnic devices or for entertainment.

The term "fireworks" includes, but is not limited to, devices designated by the manufacturer as fireworks, torpedoes, skyrockets, roman candles, rockets, Daygo bombs, sparklers, party poppers, paper caps, chasers, fountains, smoke sparks, aerial bombs and fireworks kits.

12512. "Fireworks kit" means any assembly of materials or explosive substances, which is designed and intended by the seller to be assembled by the person receiving such material or explosive substance and when so assembled would come within the definition of fireworks in Section 12511.

**Fireworks, 1.4G.** Small fireworks devices containing restricted amounts of pyrotechnic composition designed primarily to produce visible or audible effects by combustion or deflagration that complies with the construction, chemical composition and labeling regulations of the DOTn for fireworks, UN0336, and the US Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) as set forth in CPSC 16 CFR: Parts 1500 and 1507.

**[BG] FIXED BASE OPERATOR (FBO).** A commercial business granted the right by the airport sponsor to operate on an airport and provide aeronautical services, such as fueling, hangaring, tie-down and parking, aircraft rental, aircraft maintenance and flight instruction.

**[BE] FIXED SEATING.** Furniture or fixture designed and installed for the use of sitting and secured in place including bench-type seats and seats with or without backs or armrests.

**[BF] FLAME SPREAD.** The propagation of flame over a surface.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BF] FLAME SPREAD INDEX.** A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from visual measurements of the spread of flame versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**[F] FLAMMABLE GAS.** A material that is a gas at 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 pounds per square inch atmosphere (psia) (101 kPa) of pressure [a material that has a boiling point of 68°F (20°C) or less at 14.7 psia (101 kPa)], which also meets one of the following:

1. Is ignitable at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) when in a mixture of 13 percent or less by volume with air.
2. Has a flammable range at 14.7 psia (101 kPa) with air of at least 12 percent, regardless of the lower limit.

The limits specified shall be determined at 14.7 psi (101 kPa) of pressure and a temperature of 68°F (20°C) in accordance with ASTM E681.

**[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUEFIED GAS.** A liquefied compressed gas which, under a charged pressure, is partially liquid at a temperature of 68°F (20°C) and which is flammable.

**[F] FLAMMABLE LIQUID.** A liquid having a closed cup flash point below 100°F (38°C). Flammable liquids are further categorized into a group known as Class I liquids. The Class I category is subdivided as follows:

**Class IA.** Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point below 100°F (38°C).

**Class IB.** Liquids having a flash point below 73°F (23°C) and a boiling point at or above 100°F (38°C).

**Class IC.** Liquids having a flash point at or above 73°F (23°C) and below 100°F (38°C). The category of flammable liquids does not include compressed gases or cryogenic fluids, or liquids that do not have a fire point when tested in accordance with ASTM D92.

**[F] FLAMMABLE MATERIAL.** A material capable of being readily ignited from common sources of heat or at a temperature of 600°F (316°C) or less.

**[F] FLAMMABLE SOLID.** A solid, other than a blasting agent or explosive, that is capable of causing fire through friction, absorption or moisture, spontaneous chemical change, or retained heat from manufacturing or processing, or which has an ignition temperature below 212°F (100°C) or which burns so vigorously and persistently when ignited as to create a serious hazard. A chemical shall be considered a flammable solid as determined in accordance with the test method of CPSC 16 CFR; Part 1500.44, if it ignites and burns with a self-sustained flame at a rate greater than 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) per second along its major axis.

**[F] FLAMMABLE VAPORS OR FUMES.** The concentration of flammable constituents in air that exceeds 25 percent of their lower flammable limit (LFL).

**[F] FLASH POINT.** The minimum temperature in degrees Fahrenheit at which a liquid will give off sufficient vapors to form an ignitable mixture with air near the surface or in the container, but will not sustain combustion. The flash point of

a liquid shall be determined by appropriate test procedure and apparatus as specified in ASTM D56, ASTM D93 or ASTM D3278.

**[BE] FLIGHT.** A continuous run of rectangular treads, winders or combination thereof from one landing to another.

**FLOOD, DESIGN.** See "Design flood."

**[BS] FLOOD DAMAGE-RESISTANT MATERIALS.** Any construction material capable of withstanding direct and prolonged contact with floodwaters without sustaining any damage that requires more than cosmetic repair.

**FLOOD ELEVATION, DESIGN.** See "Design flood elevation."

**[BS] FLOOD HAZARD AREA.** The greater of the following two areas:

1. The area within a flood plain subject to a 1-percent or greater chance of flooding in any year.
2. The area designated as a flood hazard area on a community's flood hazard map, or otherwise legally designated.

**FLOOD HAZARD AREAS, SPECIAL.** See "Special flood hazard area."

**[BS] FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP (FIRM).** An official map of a community on which the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) has delineated both the special flood hazard areas and the risk premium zones applicable to the community.

**[BS] FLOOD INSURANCE STUDY.** The official report provided by the Federal Emergency Management Agency containing the *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM), the Flood Boundary and *Floodway Map* (FBFM), the water surface elevation of the base flood and supporting technical data.

**[BS] FLOOD or FLOODING.** A general and temporary condition of partial or complete inundation of normally dry land from:

1. The overflow of inland or tidal waters.
2. The unusual and rapid accumulation or runoff of surface waters from any source.

**[BS] FLOODWAY.** The channel of the river, creek or other watercourse and the adjacent land areas that must be reserved in order to discharge the base flood without cumulatively increasing the water surface elevation more than a designated height.

**[BE] FLOOR AREA, GROSS.** The floor area within the inside perimeter of the exterior walls of the building under consideration, exclusive of vent shafts and courts, without deduction for corridors, stairways, ramps, closets, the thickness of interior walls, columns or other features. The floor area of a building, or portion thereof, not provided with surrounding exterior walls shall be the usable area under the horizontal projection of the roof or floor above. The gross floor area shall not include shafts with no openings or interior courts.

**[BE] FLOOR AREA, NET.** The actual occupied area not including unoccupied accessory areas such as corridors, stairways, ramps, toilet rooms, mechanical rooms and closets.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BF] FLOOR FIRE DOOR ASSEMBLY.** A combination of a fire door, a frame, hardware and other accessories installed in a horizontal plane, which together provide a specific degree of fire protection to a through-opening in a fire-resistance-rated floor (see Section 712.1.13.1).

**[BF] FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION.** A plastic that is intentionally expanded by the use of a foaming agent to produce a reduced-density plastic containing voids consisting of open or closed cells distributed throughout the plastic for thermal insulating or acoustical purposes and that has a density less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) (320 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**[F] FOAM-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.** A special system discharging a foam made from concentrates, either mechanically or chemically, over the area to be protected.

**[BE] FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING.** Tiered seating having an overall shape and size that is capable of being reduced for purposes of moving or storing and is not a building element.

**[BG] FOOD COURT.** A public seating area located in the mall that serves adjacent food preparation tenant spaces.

**[BG] FOSTER CARE FACILITIES.** Facilities that provide care to more than five children, 2½ years of age or less.

**| [BS] FOUNDATION PIER.** This definition applies only to Chapter 21.

An isolated vertical foundation member whose horizontal dimension measured at right angles to its thickness does not exceed three times its thickness and whose height is equal to or less than four times its thickness.

**[BS] FRAME STRUCTURE.** A building or other structure in which vertical loads from floors and roofs are primarily supported by columns.

**FREESTANDING ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC BUILDING (APB). [OSHPD 5]** A freestanding building, as defined in the California Administrative Code Section 7-111, that provides 24-hour inpatient Acute Psychiatric Services as defined in the Health and Safety Code (H&SC) Section 1250(b) or as special services in accordance with H&SC Section 1255(a)(5) of a general acute care hospital defined in H&SC Section 1250(a) and all structures, equipment and services required for their operation or access/egress.

**FREESTANDING SKILLED NURSING BUILDING (SNB). [OSHPD 2]** A freestanding building, as defined in the California Administrative Code Section 7-111, that provides skilled nursing and/or intermediate care as defined in the Health and Safety Code Section 1250(c) or (d), and all structures, equipment and services required for their operation or access/egress.

**[F] FUEL CELL POWER SYSTEM, STATIONARY.** A stationary energy-generation system that converts the chemical energy of a fuel and oxidant to electric energy (DC or AC electricity) by an electrochemical process.

**Field-fabricated fuel cell power system.** A stationary fuel cell power system that is assembled at the job site and is not a preengineered or prepackaged factory-assembled fuel cell power system.

**Preengineered fuel cell power system.** A stationary fuel cell power system consisting of components and modules that are produced in a factory and shipped to the job site for assembly.

**Prepackaged fuel cell power system.** A stationary fuel cell power system that is factory assembled as a single, complete unit and shipped as a complete unit for installation at the job site.

**FULL-TIME CARE.** Shall mean the establishment and routine care of persons on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly or permanent basis, whether for 24-hours per day or less, and where sleeping accommodations are provided.

**FUNCTIONAL AREA. [DSA-AC]** A room, space or area intended or designated for a group of related activities or processes.

**[BS] GABLE.** The triangular portion of a wall beneath the end of a dual-slope, pitched, or mono-slope roof or portion thereof and above the top plates of the story or level of the ceiling below.

**[BE] GAMING.** To deal, operate, carry on, conduct, maintain or expose for play any game played with cards, dice, equipment or any mechanical, electromechanical or electronic device or machine for money, property, checks, credit or any representative of value except where occurring at private home or operated by a charitable or educational organization.

**[BE] GAMING AREA.** Single or multiple areas of a building or facility where gaming machines or tables are present and gaming occurs, including but not limited to, primary casino gaming areas, VIP gaming areas, high-roller gaming areas, bar tops, lobbies, dedicated rooms or spaces such as in retail or restaurant establishments, sports books and tournament areas.

**[BE] GAMING MACHINE TYPE.** Categorization of gaming machines per type of game played on them, including, but not limited to, slot machines, video poker and video keno.

**[BE] GAMING TABLE TYPE.** Categorization of gaming tables per the type of game played on them, including, but not limited to, baccarat, bingo, blackjack/21, craps, pai gow, poker, roulette.

**GANGWAY. [DSA-AC]** A variable-sloped pedestrian walkway that links a fixed structure or land with a floating structure. Gangways that connect to vessels are not addressed by this code.

**[F] GAS CABINET.** A fully enclosed, ventilated noncombustible enclosure used to provide an isolated environment for compressed gas cylinders in storage or use. Doors and access ports for exchanging cylinders and accessing pressure-regulating controls are allowed to be included.

**[F] GAS DETECTION SYSTEM.** A system or portion of a combination system that utilizes one or more stationary sensors to detect the presence of a specified gas at a specified concentration and initiate one or more responses required by this code, such as notifying a responsible person, activating an alarm signal, or activating or deactivating equipment. A self-contained gas detection and alarm device is not classified as a gas detection system.

## DEFINITIONS

**[F] GAS ROOM.** A separately ventilated, fully enclosed room in which only compressed gases and associated equipment and supplies are stored or used.

**[F] GASEOUS HYDROGEN SYSTEM.** An assembly of piping, devices and apparatus designed to generate, store, contain, distribute or transport a nontoxic, gaseous hydrogen-containing mixture having not less than 95-percent hydrogen gas by volume and not more than 1-percent oxygen by volume. Gaseous hydrogen systems consist of items such as compressed gas containers, reactors and appurtenances, including pressure regulators, pressure relief devices, manifolds, pumps, compressors and interconnecting piping and tubing and controls.

**GENERAL ACUTE CARE BUILDING (GAC Building).** *[OSHPD 1] Hospital buildings as defined in the California Administrative Code Section 7-111 and all structures, equipment and services required for their continuous operation or access/egress.*

**[BF] GLASS FIBERBOARD.** Fibrous glass roof insulation consisting of inorganic glass fibers formed into rigid boards using a binder. The board has a top surface faced with asphalt and kraft reinforced with glass fiber.

**[BS] GLASS MAT GYPSUM PANEL.** A gypsum panel consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum, surfaced with glass mat partially or completely embedded in the core.

**GOLF CAR PASSAGE.** *[DSA-AC] A continuous passage on which a motorized golf car can operate.*

**GRAB BAR.** *[DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] A bar for the purpose of being grasped by the hand for support.*

**GRADE (Adjacent Ground Elevation).** *[DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] The lowest point of elevation of the finished surface of the ground, paving or sidewalk within the area between the building and the property line or, when the property line is more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the building, between the building and a line 5 feet (1524 mm) from the building. See Health and Safety Code Section 19955.3(d).*

**GRADE BREAK.** *[DSA-AC] The line where two surface planes with different slopes meet.*

**[BS] GRADE (LUMBER).** The classification of lumber in regard to strength and utility in accordance with American Softwood Lumber Standard DOC PS 20 and the grading rules of an approved lumber rules-writing agency.

**[BE] GRADE FLOOR EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENING.** An emergency escape and rescue opening located such that the bottom of the clear opening is not more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above or below the finished ground level adjacent to the opening.

**[BG] GRADE PLANE.** A reference plane representing the average of finished ground level adjoining the building at exterior walls. Where the finished ground level slopes away from the exterior walls, the reference plane shall be established by the lowest points within the area between the building and the lot line or, where the lot line is more than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building, between the building and a point 6 feet (1829 mm) from the building.

**GRADE PLANE, STORY ABOVE.** See "Story above grade plane."

**[BE] GRANDSTAND.** Tiered seating supported on a dedicated structural system and two or more rows high and is not a building element (see "Bleachers").

**[BG] GREENHOUSE.** A structure or thermally isolated area of a building that maintains a specialized sunlit environment used for and essential to the cultivation, protection or maintenance of plants.

**[BG] GROSS LEASABLE AREA.** The total floor area designed for tenant occupancy and exclusive use. The area of tenant occupancy is measured from the centerlines of joint partitions to the outside of the tenant walls. All tenant areas, including areas used for storage, shall be included in calculating gross leasable area.

**GROUND FLOOR.** *The floor of a building with a building entrance on an accessible route. A building may have one or more ground floors.*

**GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENT.** *[DSA-AC] A play component that is approached and exited at the ground level.*

**[BG] GROUP HOME.** *Group Home means a facility which provides 24-hour care and supervision to children, provides services specified in this chapter to a specific client group, and maintains a structured environment, with such services provided at least in part by staff employed by the licensee. The care and supervision provided by a group home shall be nonmedical except as permitted by Welfare and Institutions Code Section 17736(b). Since small family and foster family homes, by definition, care for six or fewer children only, any facility providing 24-hour care for seven or more children must be licensed as a group home.*

**[BE] GUARD** *[DSA-AC, HCD 1, HCD 2 & HCD 1-AC] OR GUARDRAIL.* A building component or a system of building components located at or near the open sides of elevated walking surfaces that minimizes the possibility of a fall from the walking surface to a lower level.

**[BG] GUESTROOM.** A room used or intended to be used by one or more guests for living or sleeping purposes.

**[BS] GYPSUM BOARD.** The generic name for a family of sheet products consisting of a noncombustible core primarily of gypsum with paper surfacing.

**[BS] GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT.** The general name for a family of sheet products consisting essentially of gypsum complying with the standards specified in Table 2506.2 and Table 2507.2, and Chapter 35. Gypsum board and glass mat gypsum panels are examples of gypsum panel products.

**[BS] GYPSUM PLASTER.** A mixture of calcined gypsum or calcined gypsum and lime and aggregate and other approved materials as specified in this code.

**[BS] GYPSUM SHEATHING.** Gypsum panel products specifically manufactured with enhanced water resistance for use as a substrate for exterior surface materials.

**[BS] GYPSUM VENEER PLASTER.** Gypsum plaster applied to an approved base in one or more coats normally not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in total thickness.

**DEFINITIONS**

**[BS] GYPSUM WALLBOARD.** A gypsum board used primarily as an interior surfacing for building structures.

**[BG] HABITABLE SPACE.** A space in a building for living, sleeping, eating or cooking. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces and similar areas are not considered habitable spaces.

**HALL CALL CONSOLE. [DSA-AC]** An elevator call user interface exclusive to a destination-oriented elevator system that requires the user to select a destination floor prior to entering the elevator car.

**[F] HALOGENATED EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.** A fire-extinguishing system using one or more atoms of an element from the halogen chemical series: fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

**[F] HANDLING.** The deliberate transport by any means to a point of storage or use.

**[BE] HANDRAIL.** A horizontal or sloping rail intended for grasping by the hand for guidance or support.

**HANDWASHING FIXTURE.** Refer to the California Plumbing Code, Section 210.0.

**HANDWASHING FIXTURE. [OSHPD 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5]** A lavatory provided in patient rooms, nurse stations and other patient care areas intended for staff hygiene and infection control. These special-use lavatories are an element of a handwashing station as defined in Section 1224.3. Refer to the California Plumbing Code Section 210.0 definition for additional requirements associated with handwashing fixtures.

**[BS] HARDBOARD.** A fibrous-felted, homogeneous panel made from lignocellulosic fibers consolidated under heat and pressure in a hot press to a density not less than 31 pcf (497 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

**HARDWARE.** See "Fire exit hardware" and "Panic hardware."

**[F] HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.** Those chemicals or substances that are physical hazards or health hazards as classified in Section 307 and the *California Fire Code*, whether the materials are in usable or waste condition.

**[F] HAZARDOUS PRODUCTION MATERIAL (HPM).** A solid, liquid or gas associated with semiconductor manufacturing that has a degree-of-hazard rating in health, flammability or instability of Class 3 or 4 as ranked by the *California Electrical Code* and which is used directly in research, laboratory or production processes which have as their end product materials that are not hazardous.

**HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCE. [SFM]** Hazardous Substance is a substance which, by reason of being explosive, flammable, toxic, poisonous, corrosive, oxidizing, irritant or otherwise harmful, is likely to cause injury.

**[BS] HEAD JOINT.** Vertical mortar joint placed between masonry units within the wythe at the time the masonry units are laid.

**HEALTH CARE PROVIDER. [DSA-AC]** See "Professional Office of a Health Care Provider"

**[F] HEALTH HAZARD.** A classification of a chemical for which there is statistically significant evidence that acute or chronic health effects are capable of occurring in exposed persons. The term "health hazard" includes chemicals that are toxic or highly toxic, and corrosive.

**HEAT DETECTOR.** See "Detector, heat."

**[BG] HEIGHT, BUILDING.** The vertical distance from grade plane to the average height of the highest roof surface.

**[BS] HELICAL PILE.** Manufactured steel deep foundation element consisting of a central shaft and one or more helical bearing plates. A helical pile is installed by rotating it into the ground. Each helical bearing plate is formed into a screw thread with a uniform defined pitch.

**[F] HELIPAD.** A structural surface that is used for the landing, taking off, taxiing and parking of helicopters.

**[F] HELIPORT.** An area of land or water or a structural surface that is used, or intended for use, for the landing and taking off of helicopters, and any appurtenant areas that are used, or intended for use, for heliport buildings or other heliport facilities.

**[F] HELISTOP.** The same as "heliport," except that no fueling, defueling, maintenance, repairs or storage of helicopters is permitted.

**[F] HIGHLY TOXIC.** A material which produces a lethal dose or lethal concentration that falls within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD<sub>50</sub>) of 50 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.
2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD<sub>50</sub>) of 200 milligrams or less per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.
3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC<sub>50</sub>) in air of 200 parts per million by volume or less of gas or vapor, or 2 milligrams per liter or less of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

Mixtures of these materials with ordinary materials, such as water, might not warrant classification as highly toxic. While this system is basically simple in application, any hazard evaluation that is required for the precise categorization of this type of material shall be performed by experienced, technically competent persons.

**[BF] HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL).** Panels consisting of layers of cellulose fibrous material impregnated with thermosetting resins and bonded together by a high-pressure process to form a homogeneous nonporous core suitable for exterior use.

**DEFINITIONS**

**[BF] HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATE (HPL) SYSTEM.** An exterior wall covering fabricated using HPL in a specific assembly including joints, seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

**[BG] HIGH-RISE BUILDING.** *In other than Group I-2 occupancies “high-rise buildings” as used in this code:*

**Existing high-rise structure.** A high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced or completed prior to July 1, 1974.

**High-rise structure.** Every building of any type of construction or occupancy having floors used for human occupancy located more than 75 feet above the lowest floor level having building access (see Section 403), except buildings used as hospitals as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1250.

**New high-rise building.** A high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced on or after July 1, 1974. For the purpose of this section, construction shall be deemed to have commenced when plans and specifications are more than 50 percent complete and have been presented to the local jurisdiction prior to July 1, 1974. Unless all provisions of this section have been met, the construction of such buildings shall commence on or before January 1, 1976.

**New high-rise structure.** A high-rise structure, the construction of which is commenced on or after July 1, 1974.

**HIGH-RISE BUILDING ACCESS.** An exterior door opening conforming to all of the following:

1. Suitable and available for fire department use.
2. Located not more than 2 feet (610 mm) above the adjacent ground level.
3. Leading to a space, room or area having foot traffic communication capabilities with the remainder of the building.
4. Designed to permit penetration through the use of fire department forcible-entry tools and equipment unless other approved arrangements have been made with the fire authority having jurisdiction.

**[A] HISTORIC BUILDINGS.** Any building or structure that is one or more of the following:

1. Listed or certified as eligible for listing by the State Historic Preservation Officer or the Keeper of the National Register of Historic Places, in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Designated as historic under an applicable state or local law.
3. Certified as a contributing resource within a National Register, state designated or locally designated historic district.

**[DSA-AC]** See “Qualified historical building or property,” C.C.R., Title 24, Part 8.

**HOLDING FACILITY.** A detention or correctional facility or area where inmates, staff and public are not housed but are restrained.

**[BF] HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY.** A fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assembly of materials designed to restrict the spread of fire in which continuity is maintained.

**[BE] HORIZONTAL EXIT.** An exit component consisting of fire-resistance-rated construction and opening protectives intended to compartmentalize portions of a building thereby creating refuge areas that afford safety from the fire and smoke from the area of fire origin.

**[BG] HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS.** Facilities that provide care or treatment for the medical, psychiatric, obstetrical, or surgical treatment of care recipients who are incapable of self-preservation or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden.

**HOTEL OR MOTEL. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** Any building containing six or more guest rooms intended or designed to be used, or which are used, rented or hired out to be occupied, or which are occupied for sleeping purposes by guests.

**HOUSING AT A PLACE OF EDUCATION.** Housing operated by or on behalf of an elementary, secondary, undergraduate or postgraduate school, or other place of education, including dormitories, suites, apartments or other places of residence.

**HOUSING POD.** A section of a housing unit designed to segregate different populations. Housing Pods contain sleeping areas, dayroom space, showers, toilet facilities and support space.

**HOUSING UNIT.** A building or portion of a building intended to lodge inmates on a 24-hour basis where accommodations are provided for sleeping and other inmate support areas. A Housing Unit may contain one or more housing pods.

**HPM.** See “Hazardous Production Material.”

**[F] HPM ROOM.** A room used in conjunction with or serving a Group H-5 occupancy, where HPM is stored or used and which is classified as a Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancy.

**[BS] HURRICANE-PRONE REGIONS.** Areas vulnerable to hurricanes defined as:

1. The US Atlantic Ocean and Gulf of Mexico coasts where the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for Risk Category II buildings is greater than 115 mph (51.4 m/s);
2. Hawaii, Puerto Rico, Guam, Virgin Islands and American Samoa.

**[F] HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOM.** A room or space that is intended exclusively to house a gaseous hydrogen system.

**[BS] ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE.** A structure for which the effect of an atmospheric ice load governs the design of a structure or portion thereof. This includes, but is not limited to, lattice structures, guyed masts, overhead lines, light suspension and cable-stayed bridges, aerial cable systems (e.g., for ski lifts or logging operations), amusement rides, open catwalks and platforms, flagpoles and signs.

**IF, IF . . . THEN. [DSA-AC]** The terms “if” and “if . . . then” denote a specification that applies only when the conditions described are present.

**IGNITION-RESISTANT MATERIAL. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

## DEFINITIONS

**[F] IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH).** The concentration of airborne contaminants which poses a threat of death, immediate or delayed permanent adverse health effects, or effects that could prevent escape from such an environment. This contaminant concentration level is established by the National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) based on both toxicity and flammability. It generally is expressed in parts per million by volume (ppmv/v) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m<sup>3</sup>). If adequate data do not exist for precise establishment of IDLH concentrations, an independent certified industrial hygienist, industrial toxicologist, appropriate regulatory agency or other source approved by the building official shall make such determination.

**[BS] IMPACT LOAD.** The load resulting from moving machinery, elevators, craneways, vehicles and other similar forces and kinetic loads, pressure and possible surcharge from fixed or moving loads.

**[BS] IMPACT PROTECTIVE SYSTEM.** Construction that has been shown by testing to withstand the impact of test missiles and that is applied, attached or locked over exterior glazing.

**[BG] INCAPABLE OF SELF-PRESERVATION.** Persons who, because of age, physical limitations, mental limitations, chemical dependency or medical treatment, cannot respond as an individual to an emergency situation.

**[F] INCOMPATIBLE MATERIALS.** Materials that, when mixed, have the potential to react in a manner that generates heat, fumes, gases or byproducts which are hazardous to life or property.

**[BS] INDIVIDUAL TRUSS MEMBER.** A truss chord or truss web.

**[F] INERT GAS.** A gas that is capable of reacting with other materials only under abnormal conditions such as high temperatures, pressures and similar extrinsic physical forces. Within the context of the code, inert gases do not exhibit either physical or health hazard properties as defined (other than acting as a simple asphyxiant) or hazard properties other than those of a compressed gas. Some of the more common inert gases include argon, helium, krypton, neon, nitrogen and xenon.

**INFANT.** Any child who because of age only, is unable to walk and requires the aid of another person to evacuate the building. In no case shall the term "infant" mean a child 2 years of age or older.

**INFLATABLE AMUSEMENT DEVICE.** A device made of flexible fabric or other combustible materials that is inflated by one or more air-blowers providing internal air pressure to maintain its shape. Such a device is designed for recreational activities that allow occupants to bounce, climb, slide, negotiate an obstacle course or participate in interactive play.

**[F] INITIATING DEVICE.** A system component that originates transmission of a change-of-state condition, such as in a smoke detector, manual fire alarm box or supervisory switch.

**INLET.** A fitting or fixture through which circulation water enters the pool.

**[BF] INSULATING SHEATHING.** A rigid panel or board insulation material having a thermal resistance of not less than R-2 of the core material with properties suitable for use on walls, floors, roofs or foundations.

**INTAKE AND RELEASE AREAS.** A temporary holding suite where detained and/or incarcerated individuals are received and processed into a facility or are released from the facility. The suite may contain holding cells, sobering and safety cells, medical examination space, interview rooms, property storage and staff work areas.

**[BE] INTENDED TO BE OCCUPIED AS A RESIDENCE.** This refers to a dwelling unit or sleeping unit that can or will be used all or part of the time as the occupant's place of abode.

**[BE] INTERIOR EXIT RAMP.** An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and provides for a protected path of egress travel to the exit discharge or public way.

**[BE] INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAY.** An exit component that serves to meet one or more means of egress design requirements, such as required number of exits or exit access travel distance, and provides for a protected path of egress travel to the exit discharge or public way.

**[BF] INTERIOR FINISH.** Interior finish includes interior wall and ceiling finish and interior floor finish.

**[BF] INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH.** The exposed floor surfaces of buildings including coverings applied over a finished floor or stair, including risers.

**[BF] INTERIOR FLOOR-WALL BASE.** Interior floor finish trim used to provide a functional or decorative border at the intersection of walls and floors.

**[BF] INTERIOR SURFACES.** Surfaces other than weather exposed surfaces.

**[BF] INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH.** The exposed interior surfaces of buildings, including but not limited to: fixed or movable walls and partitions; toilet room privacy partitions; columns; ceilings; and interior wainscoting, paneling or other finish applied structurally or for decoration, acoustical correction, surface insulation, structural fire resistance or similar purposes, but not including trim.

**[BS] INTERLAYMENT.** A layer of felt or nonbituminous saturated felt not less than 18 inches (457 mm) wide, shingled between each course of a wood-shake roof covering.

**INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY.** The symbol adopted by Rehabilitation International's 11th World Congress for the purpose of indicating that buildings and facilities are accessible to persons with disabilities.

**[BS] INTERMODAL SHIPPING CONTAINER.** A six-sided steel unit originally constructed as a general cargo container used for the transport of goods and materials.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BF] INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS.** Thin film liquid mixture applied to substrates by brush, roller, spray or trowel which expands into a protective foamed layer to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates when exposed to flame or intense heat.

**IRREGULAR STRUCTURE.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1 & 4] A structure designed as having one or more plan or vertical irregularities per ASCE 7 Section 12.3.

**[BS] JOINT.** The opening in or between adjacent assemblies that is created due to building tolerances, or is designed to allow independent movement of the building in any plane caused by thermal, seismic, wind or any other loading.

**[A] JURISDICTION.** The governmental unit that has adopted this code.

**KEY STATION.** [DSA-AC] Certain rapid and light rail stations, and commuter rail stations, as defined under criteria established by the Department of Transportation in 49 CFR 37.47 and 49 CFR 37.51, respectively.

**KICK PLATE.** An abrasion-resistant plate affixed to the bottom portion of a door to prevent a trap condition and protect its surface.

**KITCHEN OR KITCHENETTE.** [DSA-AC] A room, space or area with equipment for the preparation and cooking of food.

**[BF] L RATING.** The air leakage rating of a through penetration firestop system or a fire-resistant joint system when tested in accordance with UL 1479 or UL 2079, respectively.

**[A] LABEL.** An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer that contains the name of the manufacturer, the function and performance characteristics of the product or material and the name and identification of an approved agency, and that indicates that the representative sample of the product or material has been tested and evaluated by an approved agency (see Section 1703.5, "Manufacturer's designation" and "Mark").

**[A] LABELED.** Equipment, materials or products to which has been affixed a label, seal, symbol or other identifying mark of a nationally recognized testing laboratory, approved agency or other organization concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of the production of the above-labeled items and whose labeling indicates either that the equipment, material or product meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose. *[HCD 1 & HCD 2] "Labeled" means equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol or other identifying mark of an organization, approved by the Department, that maintains a periodic inspection program of production of labeled products, installations, equipment or materials and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.*

**LABORATORY.** [SFM] A room, building or area where the use and storage of hazardous materials are utilized for testing, analysis, instruction, research or developmental activities.

**LABORATORY SUITE.** [SFM] A laboratory suite is a Group L Occupancy space within a building or structure, which may include multiple laboratories, offices, storage, equipment rooms or similar support functions, where the aggregate quantities of hazardous materials stored and used do not exceed the quantities set forth in Table 453.7.2.1 (see Section 453).

**LADDER.** A series of vertically separate treads or rungs either connected by vertical rail members or independently fastened to an adjacent vertical pool wall.

**LAVATORY.** A fixed bowl or basin with running water and drainpipe, as in a toilet or bathing facility, for washing or bathing purposes. (As differentiated from the definition of "Sink".)

**LEVEL AREA.** [HCD 1-AC] A specified surface that does not have a slope in any direction exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in 1 foot (305 mm) from the horizontal (2.083-percent gradient).

**LEVEL OF EXIT DISCHARGE.** See "Exit discharge, level of."

**LICENSING AGENCY.** [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4 & 5] (See Chapter 12, Section 1224.3 for defined term.)

**[F] LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS.** Systems, devices and equipment that enhance or facilitate evacuation, smoke control, compartmentation and isolation.

**LIFT, PLATFORM (WHEELCHAIR).** [HCD 1-AC] See "Platform (Wheelchair) Lift".

**[BF] LIGHT-DIFFUSING SYSTEM.** Construction consisting in whole or in part of lenses, panels, grids or baffles made with light-transmitting plastics positioned below independently mounted electrical light sources, skylights or light-transmitting plastic roof panels. Lenses, panels, grids and baffles that are part of an electrical fixture shall not be considered as a light-diffusing system.

**[BS] LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION.** Construction whose vertical and horizontal structural elements are primarily formed by a system of repetitive wood or cold-formed steel framing members.

**[BF] LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS.** Structural plastic panels other than skylights that are fastened to structural members, or panels or sheathing and that are used as light-transmitting media in the plane of the roof.

**[BF] LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS.** Plastic materials that are fastened to structural members, or to structural panels or sheathing, and that are used as light-transmitting media in exterior walls.

**[BS] LIMIT OF MODERATE WAVE ACTION.** Line shown on FIRM to indicate the inland limit of the  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -foot (457 mm) breaking wave height during the base flood.

**[BS] LIMIT STATE.** A condition beyond which a structure or member becomes unfit for service and is judged to be no longer useful for its intended function (serviceability limit state) or to be unsafe (strength limit state).

## DEFINITIONS

**[F] LIQUID.** A material that has a melting point that is equal to or less than 68°F (20°C) and a boiling point that is greater than 68°F (20°C) at 14.7 pounds per square inch absolute (psia) (101 kPa). When not otherwise identified, the term “liquid” includes both flammable and combustible liquids.

**[F] LIQUID STORAGE ROOM.** A room classified as a Group H-3 occupancy used for the storage of flammable or combustible liquids in a closed condition.

**LIQUIDTIGHT FLOOR. [SFM]** A nonpermeable barrier capable of containing hazardous material liquids without degradation.

**[F] LIQUID USE, DISPENSING AND MIXING ROOM.** A room in which Class I, II and IIIA flammable or combustible liquids are used, dispensed or mixed in open containers.

**[A] LISTED.** Equipment, materials, products or services included in a list published by an organization acceptable to the building official and concerned with evaluation of products or services that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services and whose listing states either that the equipment, material, product or service meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

**[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** “Listed” means all products that appear in a list published by an approved testing or listing agency. For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Section 17920(h).

**[SFM]** For applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, “listed” shall also mean equipment or materials accepted by the state fire marshal as conforming to the provisions of the State Fire Marshal’s regulations and which are included in a list published by the State Fire Marshal.

**LISTING AGENCY. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** An agency approved by the department that is in the business of listing and labeling products, materials, equipment and installations tested by an approved testing agency, and that maintains a periodic inspection program on current production of listed products, equipment and installations, and that, at least annually, makes available a published report of these listings. For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Section 17920(i).

**[BS] LIVE LOAD.** A load produced by the use and occupancy of the building or other structure that does not include construction or environmental loads such as wind load, snow load, rain load, earthquake load, flood load or dead load.

**[BS] LIVE LOAD, ROOF.** A load on a roof produced:

1. During maintenance by workers, equipment and materials; or
2. During the life of the structure by movable objects such as planters or other similar small decorative appurtelements that are not occupancy related.

→ **[BG] LIVE/WORK UNIT.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit in which a significant portion of the space includes a nonresidential use that is operated by the tenant or building owner.

**[BS] LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD).** A method of proportioning structural members and their connections using load and resistance factors such that no applicable limit state is reached when the structure is subjected to appropriate load combinations. The term “LRFD” is used in the design of steel and wood structures.

**[BS] LOAD EFFECTS.** Forces and deformations produced in structural members by the applied loads.

**[BS] LOAD FACTOR.** A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual load from the nominal load, for uncertainties in the analysis that transforms the load into a load effect, and for the probability that more than one extreme load will occur simultaneously.

**[BS] LOADS.** Forces or other actions that result from the weight of building materials, occupants and their possessions, environmental effects, differential movement and restrained dimensional changes. Permanent loads are those loads in which variations over time are rare or of small magnitude, such as dead loads. All other loads are variable loads (see “Nominal loads”).

**LOBBY. [SFM, HCD 1 & HCD 2]** An area not defined as a waiting room at the entrance of a building through which persons must pass.

**LOCAL AGENCY VERY HIGH FIRE HAZARD SEVERITY ZONE. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**LODGING HOUSE. [HCD 1 & HCD 1-AC]** Any building or portion thereof containing not more than five guest rooms where rent is paid in money, goods, labor or otherwise, and that is occupied by the proprietor as the residence of such proprietor.

**LOG WALL CONSTRUCTION. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[A] LOT.** A portion or parcel of land considered as a unit.

**[A] LOT LINE.** A line dividing one lot from another, or from a street or any public place.

**[BE] LOW-ENERGY POWER-OPERATED DOOR.** A swinging, sliding or folding door that opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian such as pressing a push plate or waving a hand in front of a sensor. The door closes automatically, and operates with decreased forces and decreased speeds (see “Power-assisted door” and “Power-operated door”).

**[F] LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT (LFL).** The minimum concentration of vapor in air at which propagation of flame will occur in the presence of an ignition source. The LFL is sometimes referred to as “LEL” or “lower explosive limit.”

**[BS] LOWEST FLOOR.** The lowest floor of the lowest enclosed area, including basement, but excluding any unfinished or flood-resistant enclosure, usable solely for vehicle parking, building access or limited storage provided that such enclosure is not built so as to render the structure in violation of Section 1612.

## DEFINITIONS

**MAIL BOXES.** [DSA-AC] Receptacles for the receipt of documents, packages or other deliverable matter. Mail boxes include, but are not limited to, post office boxes and receptacles provided by commercial mail-receiving agencies, apartment facilities or schools.

**[BS] MAIN WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM.** An assemblage of structural elements assigned to provide support and stability for the overall structure. The system generally receives wind loading from more than one surface.

**MAJOR STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS OR REPAIRS.** [OSHPD 1 & 4] Refer to Chapter 2 of the California Existing Building Code.

**MALL BUILDING, COVERED and MALL BUILDING, OPEN.** See "Covered mall building."

**[F] MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX.** A manually operated device used to initiate an alarm signal.

**[A] MANUFACTURER'S DESIGNATION.** An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating that a product or material complies with a specified standard or set of rules (see "Label" and "Mark").

**[A] MARK.** An identification applied on a product by the manufacturer indicating the name of the manufacturer and the function of a product or material (see "Label" and "Manufacturer's designation").

**MARKED CROSSING.** A crosswalk or other identified path intended for pedestrian use in crossing a vehicular way.

**[BG] MARQUEE.** A canopy that has a top surface which is sloped less than 25 degrees from the horizontal and is located less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from operable openings above or adjacent to the level of the marquee.

**[BS] MASONRY.** A built-up construction or combination of building units or materials of clay, shale, concrete, glass, gypsum, stone or other approved units bonded together with or without mortar or grout or other accepted methods of joining.

**Glass unit masonry.** Masonry composed of glass units bonded by mortar.

**Plain masonry.** Masonry in which the tensile resistance of the masonry is taken into consideration and the effects of stresses in reinforcement are neglected.

**Reinforced masonry.** Masonry construction in which reinforcement acting in conjunction with the masonry is used to resist forces.

**Solid masonry.** Masonry consisting of solid masonry units laid contiguously with the joints between the units filled with mortar.

**Unreinforced (plain) masonry.** Masonry in which the tensile resistance of masonry is taken into consideration and the resistance of the reinforcing steel, if present, is neglected.

**[BS] MASONRY UNIT.** Brick, tile, stone, glass block or concrete block conforming to the requirements specified in Section 2103.

**Hollow.** A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in any plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is less than 75 percent of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

**Solid.** A masonry unit whose net cross-sectional area in every plane parallel to the load-bearing surface is 75 percent or more of its gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

**[BG] MASS TIMBER.** Structural elements of Type IV construction primarily of solid, built-up, panelized or engineered wood products that meet minimum cross-section dimensions of Type IV construction.

**[BF] MASTIC FIRE-RESISTANT COATINGS.** Liquid mixture applied to a substrate by brush, roller, spray or trowel that provides fire-resistant protection of a substrate when exposed to flame or intense heat.

**MAY.** [DSA-AC] May denotes an option or alternative.

**[BE] MEANS OF EGRESS.** A continuous and unobstructed path of vertical and horizontal egress travel from any occupied portion of a building or structure to a public way. A means of egress consists of three separate and distinct parts: the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge.

**[BF] MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT SCREEN.** A rooftop structure, not covered by a roof, used to aesthetically conceal plumbing, electrical or mechanical equipment from view.

**[BG] MECHANICAL-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.** Open parking garages employing parking machines, lifts, elevators or other mechanical devices for vehicles moving from and to street level and in which public occupancy is prohibited above the street level.

**[BG] MEDICAL CARE.** Care involving medical or surgical procedures, nursing or for psychiatric purposes.

**MEDICAL POOL.** A special-purpose pool used by a state-recognized medical institution engaged in the healing arts under the direct supervision of licensed medical personnel for treatment of the infirm.

**[BF] MEMBRANE PENETRATION.** A breach in one side of a floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item installed into or passing through the breach.

**[BG] MEMBRANE-COVERED CABLE STRUCTURE.** A nonpressurized structure in which a mast and cable system provides support and tension to the membrane weather barrier and the membrane imparts stability to the structure.

**[BG] MEMBRANE-COVERED FRAME STRUCTURE.** A nonpressurized building wherein the structure is composed of a rigid framework to support a tensioned membrane which provides the weather barrier.

**[BF] MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP.** A material, device or construction installed to resist for a prescribed time period the passage of flame and heat through openings in a protective membrane in order to accommodate cables, cable trays, conduit, tubing, pipes or similar items.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BF] MEMBRANE-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM.** An assemblage consisting of a fire-resistance-rated floor-ceiling, roof-ceiling or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items installed into or passing through the breach in one side of the assembly and the materials or devices, or both, installed to resist the spread of fire into the assembly for a prescribed period of time.

**[BE] MERCHANDISE PAD.** A merchandise pad is an area for display of merchandise surrounded by aisles, permanent fixtures or walls. Merchandise pads contain elements such as nonfixed and movable fixtures, cases, racks, counters and partitions as indicated in Section 105.2 from which customers browse or shop.

**[BF] METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM).** A factory-manufactured panel consisting of metal skins bonded to both faces of a solid plastic core.

**[BF] METAL COMPOSITE MATERIAL (MCM) SYSTEM.** An exterior wall covering fabricated using MCM in a specific assembly including joints, seams, attachments, substrate, framing and other details as appropriate to a particular design.

**[BS] METAL ROOF PANEL.** An interlocking metal sheet having a minimum installed weather exposure of 3 square feet (0.279 m<sup>2</sup>) per sheet.

**[BS] METAL ROOF SHINGLE.** An interlocking metal sheet having an installed weather exposure less than 3 square feet (0.279 m<sup>2</sup>) per sheet.

**[BG] MEZZANINE.** An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story and in accordance with Section 505. *[DSA-AC] An intermediate level or levels between the floor and ceiling of any story with an aggregate floor area of not more than one-third of the area of the room or space in which the level or levels are located. Mezzanines have sufficient elevation that space for human occupancy can be provided on the floor below.*

**[BS] MICROPILE.** A micropile is a bored, grouted-in-place deep foundation element that develops its load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock.

**[BF] MINERAL BOARD.** A rigid felted thermal insulation board consisting of either felted mineral fiber or cellular beads of expanded aggregate formed into flat rectangular units.

**[BF] MINERAL FIBER.** Insulation composed principally of fibers manufactured from rock, slag or glass, with or without binders.

**[BF] MINERAL WOOL.** Synthetic vitreous fiber insulation made by melting predominately igneous rock or furnace slag, and other inorganic materials, and then physically forming the melt into fibers.

**MINOR STRUCTURAL ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS OR REPAIRS. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** Refer to Chapter 2 of the California Existing Building Code.

**[BS] MODIFIED BITUMEN ROOF COVERING.** One or more layers of polymer-modified asphalt sheets. The sheet materials shall be fully adhered or mechanically attached to the substrate or held in place with an approved ballast layer.

**MONOLITHIC.** *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4 & 5]* (See Chapter 12, Section 1224.3 for defined term.)

**MONOLITHIC CEILING.** *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4 & 5]* (See Chapter 12, Section 1224.3 for defined term.)

**[BS] MORTAR.** A mixture consisting of cementitious materials, fine aggregates, water, with or without admixtures, that is used to construct unit masonry assemblies.

**[BS] MORTAR, SURFACE-BONDING.** A mixture to bond concrete masonry units that contains hydraulic cement, glass fiber reinforcement with or without inorganic fillers or organic modifiers and water.

**MOTEL. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** See "Hotel" or "Motel."

**MOTION PICTURE AND TELEVISION PRODUCTION STUDIO SOUND STAGES, APPROVED PRODUCTION FACILITIES AND PRODUCTION LOCATIONS.** See Chapter 48, California Fire Code.

**MULTI-BEDROOM HOUSING UNIT. [DSA-AC]** A housing unit, intended for use by students at a place of education, with a kitchen and/or toilet and bathing rooms within the unit, such as an apartment or dormitory. Multi-bedroom housing units are separate from one another and from common use spaces within a building.

**[BE] MULTILEVEL ASSEMBLY SEATING.** Seating that is arranged in distinct levels where each level is composed of either multiple rows, or a single row of box seats accessed from a separate level.

**[F] MULTIPLE-STATION ALARM DEVICE.** Two or more single-station alarm devices that can be interconnected such that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate. A multiple-station alarm device can consist of one single-station alarm device having connections to other detectors or to a manual fire alarm box.

**[F] MULTIPLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM.** Two or more single-station alarm devices that are capable of interconnection such that actuation of one causes the appropriate alarm signal to operate in all interconnected alarms.

**MULTISTORY DWELLING UNIT. [HCD 1-AC]** A dwelling unit with finished living space located on one floor and the floor or floors immediately above or below it.

**[BE] MULTISTORY UNIT.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit with habitable space located on more than one story.

**[BF] NAILABLE SUBSTRATE.** A product or material such as framing, sheathing or furring, composed of wood, wood-based materials or other materials providing equivalent fastener withdrawal resistance.

**[BS] NAILING, BOUNDARY.** A special nailing pattern required by design at the boundaries of diaphragms.

**[BS] NAILING, EDGE.** A special nailing pattern required by design at the edges of each panel within the assembly of a diaphragm or shear wall.

**[BS] NAILING, FIELD.** Nailing required between the sheathing panels and framing members at locations other than boundary nailing and edge nailing.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BS] NATURALLY DURABLE WOOD.** The heartwood of the following species except for the occasional piece with corner sapwood, provided 90 percent or more of the width of each side on which it occurs is heartwood.

**Decay resistant.** Redwood, cedar, black locust and black walnut.

**Termite resistant.** Redwood, Alaska yellow cedar, Eastern red cedar and Western red cedar.

**NEWLY CONSTRUCTED. [HCD 1-AC]** A building that has never before been used or occupied for any purpose.

**NEXT GENERATION ATTENUATION WEST 2 (NGA WEST 2). [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1 & 4]** Attenuation relations used for the 2014 United States Geological Survey (USGS) seismic hazards maps (for the Western United States) or their equivalent as determined by the enforcement agency.

**NFPA. [DSA-AC]** The National Fire Protection Association.

**[BS] NOMINAL LOADS.** The magnitudes of the loads specified in Chapter 16 (dead, live, soil, wind, snow, rain, flood and earthquake).

**[BS] NOMINAL SIZE (LUMBER).** The commercial size designation of width and depth, in standard sawn lumber and glued-laminated lumber grades; somewhat larger than the standard net size of dressed lumber, in accordance with DOCPS 20 for sawn lumber and with the ANSI/AWC NDS for glued-laminated lumber.

**NON-GENERAL ACUTE CARE BUILDING (Non-GAC Building). [OSHPD 1R]** A non-freestanding SPC building, which is removed from general acute care services in accordance with the Section 309A of the California Existing Building Code that remains under OSHPD jurisdiction as part of an OSHPD 1 Hospital building.

**NONAMBULATORY PERSONS.** Persons unable to leave a building unassisted under emergency conditions. It includes, but is not limited to, persons who depend on mechanical aids such as crutches, walkers and wheelchairs and any person who is unable to physically and mentally respond to a sensory signal approved by the state fire marshal or an oral instruction relating to fire danger.

The determination of ambulatory or nonambulatory status of persons with developmental disabilities shall be made by the Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative, in consultation with the director of Developmental Services or his or her designated representative. The determination of ambulatory or nonambulatory status of all other disabled persons placed after January 1, 1984, who are not developmentally disabled shall be made by the Director of Social Services or his or her designated representative.

**NONCOMBUSTIBLE. [SFM]** Noncombustible as applied to building construction material means a material which, in the form in which it is used, is either one of the following:

1. Material of which no part will ignite and burn when subjected to fire. Any material passing ASTM E136 shall be considered noncombustible.
2. Material having a structural base of noncombustible material as defined in Item 1 above, with a surfacing

material not over  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) thick which has a flame-spread index of 50 or less.

*"Noncombustible" does not apply to surface finish materials. Material required to be noncombustible for reduced clearances to flues, heating appliances or other sources of high temperature shall refer to material conforming to Item 1. No material shall be classed as noncombustible which is subject to increase in combustibility or flame-spread index, beyond the limits herein established, through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric condition.*

**[BG] NONCOMBUSTIBLE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.** A membrane structure in which the membrane and all component parts of the structure are noncombustible.

**NONPATIENT-CARE SUITE.** In Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancies, a group of rooms or spaces within a suite for use as administrative, business and professional offices.

**[BS] NONSTRUCTURAL CONCRETE.** Any element made of plain or reinforced concrete that is not part of a structural system required to transfer either gravity or lateral loads to the ground.

**NORMAL. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** Conforming to a pattern or standard regarded as usual or typical.

**[F] NORMAL TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE (NTP).** A temperature of 70°F (21°C) and a pressure of 1 atmosphere [14.7 psia (101 kPa)].

**[BE] NOSING.** The leading edge of treads of stairs and of landings at the top of stairway flights.

**NOTIFICATION ZONE.** See "Zone, notification."

**NPC 1, NPC 2, NPC 3/NPC 3R, NPC 4 and NPC 5. [OSHPD 1]** Building nonstructural performance categories for Hospital Buildings defined in Table 11.1 of California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24 CCR), Chapter 6.

**[F] NUISANCE ALARM.** An alarm caused by mechanical failure, malfunction, improper installation or lack of proper maintenance, or an alarm activated by a cause that cannot be determined.

**[BG] NURSING HOMES.** Facilities that provide care, including both intermediate care facilities and skilled nursing facilities where any of the persons are incapable of self-preservation or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden.

**[BE] OCCUPANT LOAD.** The number of persons for which the means of egress of a building or portion thereof is designed.

**[BG] OCCUPIABLE SPACE.** A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy in which individuals congregate for amusement, educational or similar purposes or in which occupants are engaged at labor, and which is equipped with means of egress and light and ventilation facilities meeting the requirements of this code.

**[BG] OPEN PARKING GARAGE.** A structure or portion of a structure with the openings as described in Section 406.5.2 on two or more sides that is used for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles as described in Section 406.5.3.

**OPEN RISER.** The space between two adjacent stair treads not closed by a riser.

**DEFINITIONS**

**[F] OPEN SYSTEM.** The use of a solid or liquid hazardous material involving a vessel or system that is continuously open to the atmosphere during normal operations and where vapors are liberated, or the product is exposed to the atmosphere during normal operations. Examples of open systems for solids and liquids include dispensing from or into open beakers or containers, dip tank and plating tank operations.

**[BE] OPEN-AIR ASSEMBLY SEATING.** Seating served by means of egress that is not subject to smoke accumulation within or under a structure and is open to the atmosphere.

**[BE] OPEN-ENDED CORRIDOR.** An interior corridor that is open on each end and connects to an exterior stairway or ramp at each end with no intervening doors or separation from the corridor.

**[BF] OPENING PROTECTIVE.** A fire door assembly, fire shutter assembly, fire window assembly or glass-block assembly in a fire-resistance-rated wall or partition.

**OPERABLE PART.** *A component of an element used to insert or withdraw objects, or to activate, deactivate or adjust the element.*

**[F] OPERATING BUILDING.** A building occupied in conjunction with the manufacture, transportation or use of explosive materials. Operating buildings are separated from one another with the use of intraplant or intraline distances.

**[BS] ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL.** See Section 1905.1.1.

**[BS] ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** See Section 1905.1.1.

**[BS] ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL.** See Section 1905.1.1.

**[F] ORGANIC PEROXIDE.** An organic compound that contains the bivalent -O-O- structure and which may be considered to be a structural derivative of hydrogen peroxide where one or both of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by an organic radical. Organic peroxides can pose an explosion hazard (detonation or deflagration) or they can be shock sensitive. They can also decompose into various unstable compounds over an extended period of time.

**Class I.** Those formulations that are capable of deflagration but not detonation.

**Class II.** Those formulations that burn very rapidly and that pose a moderate reactivity hazard.

**Class III.** Those formulations that burn rapidly and that pose a moderate reactivity hazard.

**Class IV.** Those formulations that burn in the same manner as ordinary combustibles and that pose a minimal reactivity hazard.

**Class V.** Those formulations that burn with less intensity than ordinary combustibles or do not sustain combustion and that pose no reactivity hazard.

**Unclassified detonable.** Organic peroxides that are capable of detonation. These peroxides pose an extremely high explosion hazard through rapid explosive decomposition.

**ORGANIZED CAMPS.** *See Section 450, Group C Occupancy.*

**[BS] ORTHOGONAL.** To be in two horizontal directions, at 90 degrees (1.57 rad) to each other.

**[BS] OTHER STRUCTURES.** This definition applies only | to Chapters 16 through 23.

Structures, other than buildings, for which loads are specified in Chapter 16.

**OUTPATIENT CLINIC.** See "Clinic, outpatient."

**OVERFLOW SYSTEM.** *The system which includes perimeter-type overflow gutters, surface skimmers, surge or collector tanks, other surface water collective system components and their interconnecting piping.*

**[A] OWNER.** Any person, agent, operator, entity, firm or corporation having any legal or equitable interest in the property; or recorded in the official records of the state, county or municipality as holding an interest or title to the property; or otherwise having possession or control of the property, including the guardian of the estate of any such person, and the executor or administrator of the estate of such person if ordered to take possession of real property by a court.

**[F] OXIDIZER.** A material that readily yields oxygen or other oxidizing gas, or that readily reacts to promote or initiate combustion of combustible materials and, if heated or contaminated, can result in vigorous self-sustained decomposition.

**Class 4.** An oxidizer that can undergo an explosive reaction due to contamination or exposure to thermal or physical shock and that causes a severe increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes into contact. Additionally, the oxidizer causes a severe increase in the burning rate and can cause spontaneous ignition of combustibles.

**Class 3.** An oxidizer that causes a severe increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes in contact.

**Class 2.** An oxidizer that will cause a moderate increase in the burning rate of combustible materials with which it comes in contact.

**Class 1.** An oxidizer that does not moderately increase the burning rate of combustible materials.

**[F] OXIDIZING GAS.** A gas that can support and accelerate combustion of other materials more than air does.

**[BS] PANEL (PART OF A STRUCTURE).** The section of a floor, wall or roof comprised between the supporting frame of two adjacent rows of columns and girders or column bands of floor or roof construction.

**[BE] PANIC HARDWARE.** A door-latching assembly incorporating a device that releases the latch upon the application of a force in the direction of egress travel. See "Fire exit hardware."

**[BS] PARTICLEBOARD.** A generic term for a panel primarily composed of cellulosic materials (usually wood), generally in the form of discrete pieces or particles, as distinguished from fibers. The cellulosic material is combined with

## DEFINITIONS

**synthetic resin or other suitable bonding system by a process in which the interparticle bond is created by the bonding system under heat and pressure.**

**PASSAGE DOOR.** [HCD 1-AC] A door other than an exit door through which persons may traverse.

**PASSENGER ELEVATOR.** [DSA-AC] See "Elevator, Passenger"

**PASSENGER ELEVATOR.** [HCD 1 & HCD 2] An elevator used primarily to carry passengers. For additional information, see California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4.

**PASSIVE SOLAR ENERGY COLLECTOR.** [HCD 1 & HCD 2] Uses architectural components, rather than mechanical components, to provide heating or cooling for a building interior.

**PATH OF TRAVEL.** [DSA-AC] An identifiable accessible route within an existing site, building or facility by means of which a particular area may be approached, entered and exited, and which connects a particular area with an exterior approach (including sidewalks, streets and parking areas), an entrance to the facility, and other parts of the facility. When alterations, structural repairs or additions are made to existing buildings or facilities, the term "path of travel" also includes the toilet and bathing facilities, telephones, drinking fountains and signs serving the area of work.

**PEDESTRIAN.** An individual who moves in walking areas with or without the use of walking assistive devices such as crutches, leg braces, wheelchairs, white cane, service animal, etc.

**PEDESTRIAN WAY.** A route by which a pedestrian may pass.

**PEER REVIEW.** [OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5] Peer review refers to the procedure contained in California Building Code Section 1617A.1.41.

**[BF] PENETRATION FIRESTOP.** A through-penetration firestop or a membrane-penetration firestop.

**[BG] PENTHOUSE.** An enclosed, unoccupied rooftop structure used for sheltering mechanical and electrical equipment, tanks, elevators and related machinery, stairways, and vertical shaft openings.

**[BS] PERFORMANCE CATEGORY.** A designation of wood structural panels as related to the panel performance used in Chapter 23.

**[BF] PERIMETER FIRE CONTAINMENT SYSTEM.** An assemblage of specific materials or products that is designed to resist for a prescribed period of time the passage of fire through voids created at the intersection of exterior curtain wall assemblies and fire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies.

**PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Special inspection by the special inspector who is intermittently present where the work to be inspected has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.

**PERMANENT.** [DSA-AC] Facilities which, are intended to be used for periods longer than those designated in this code under the definition of "Temporary."

**[BS] PERMANENT INDIVIDUAL TRUSS MEMBER DIAGONAL BRACING (PITMDB).** Structural member or assembly intended to permanently stabilize the PITMRs.

**[BS] PERMANENT INDIVIDUAL TRUSS MEMBER RESTRAINT (PITMR).** Restraint that is used to prevent local buckling of an individual truss chord or web member because of the axial forces in the individual truss member.

**PERMANENT PORTABLE BUILDING.** [SFM] A portable building that is used to serve or house students and is certified as a permanent building on a new public school campus by the public school administration shall comply with the requirements of new campus buildings.

**[A] PERMIT.** An official document or certificate issued by the building official that authorizes performance of a specified activity.

**[A] PERSON.** An individual, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns, and also includes a firm, partnership or corporation, its or their successors or assigns, or the agent of any of the aforesaid.

**[BG] PERSONAL CARE SERVICE.** The care of persons who do not require medical care. Personal care involves responsibility for the safety of the persons while inside the building

**PERSONS WITH DISABILITIES.** [HCD 1-AC] For purposes of Chapter 11A, "Persons with disabilities" includes, but is not limited to, any physical or mental disability as defined in Government Code Section 12926.

**PERSONS WITH INTELLECTUAL DISABILITIES, PROFOUNDLY OR SEVERELY.** Shall mean any persons with intellectual disabilities who is unable to evacuate a building unassisted during emergency conditions.

**Note:** The determination as to such incapacity shall be made by the Director of the State Department of Public Health or his or her designated representative pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13131.3.

**[BE] PHOTOLUMINESCENT.** Having the property of emitting light that continues for a length of time after excitation by visible or invisible light has been removed.

**[BS] PHOTOVOLTAIC MODULE.** A complete, environmentally protected unit consisting of solar cells, optics and other components, exclusive of tracker, designed to generate DC power when exposed to sunlight.

**[BS] PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL.** A collection of modules mechanically fastened together, wired and designed to provide a field-installable unit.

**[BS] PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEM.** A system that incorporates discrete photovoltaic panels, that converts solar radiation into electricity, including rack support systems.

**PHOTOVOLTAIC (PV) PANEL SYSTEM, GROUND-MOUNTED.** An independent photovoltaic (PV) panel system without useable space underneath, installed directly on the ground.

**DEFINITIONS**

**PHOTOVOLTAIC (PV) SUPPORT STRUCTURE, ELEVATED.** An independent photovoltaic (PV) panel support structure designed with useable space underneath with minimum clear height of 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm), intended for secondary use such as providing shade or parking of motor vehicles.

**[BS] PHOTOVOLTAIC SHINGLES.** A roof covering resembling shingles that incorporates photovoltaic modules.

**[F] PHYSICAL HAZARD.** A chemical for which there is evidence that it is a combustible liquid, cryogenic fluid, explosive, flammable (solid, liquid or gas), organic peroxide (solid or liquid), oxidizer (solid or liquid), oxidizing gas, pyrophoric (solid, liquid or gas), unstable (reactive) material (solid, liquid or gas) or water-reactive material (solid or liquid).

**[F] PHYSIOLOGICAL WARNING THRESHOLD LEVEL.** A concentration of airborne contaminants, normally expressed in parts per million (ppm) or milligrams per cubic meter (mg/m<sup>3</sup>), that represents the concentration at which persons can sense the presence of the contaminant due to odor, irritation or other quick-acting physiological response. When used in conjunction with the permissible exposure limit (PEL) the physiological warning threshold levels are those consistent with the classification system used to establish the PEL. See the definition of "Permissible exposure limit (PEL)" in the California Fire Code.

**PICTOGRAM.** A pictorial symbol that represents activities, facilities or concepts.

**PLACE OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION.** A facility operated by a private entity whose operations affect commerce and fall within at least one of the following categories:

- (1) Place of lodging, except for an establishment located within a facility that contains not more than five rooms for rent or hire and that actually is occupied by the proprietor of the establishment as the residence of the proprietor. For purposes of this code, a facility is a "place of lodging" if it is
  - (i) An inn, hotel or motel; or
  - (ii) A facility that
    - (A) Provides guest rooms for sleeping for stays that primarily are short-term in nature (generally 30 days or less) where the occupant does not have the right to return to a specific room or unit after the conclusion of his or her stay; and
    - (B) Provides guest rooms under conditions and with amenities similar to a hotel, motel or inn, including the following:
      - (1) On- or off-site management and reservations service;
      - (2) Rooms available on a walk-up or call-in basis;
      - (3) Availability of housekeeping or linen service; and
      - (4) Acceptance of reservations for a guest room type without guaranteeing a

particular unit or room until check-in, and without a prior lease or security deposit.

- (2) A restaurant, bar or other establishment serving food or drink;
- (3) A motion picture house, theater, concert hall, stadium or other place of exhibition or entertainment;
- (4) An auditorium, convention center, lecture hall or other place of public gathering;
- (5) A bakery, grocery store, clothing store, hardware store, shopping center or other sales or rental establishment;
- (6) A laundromat, dry-cleaner, bank, barber shop, beauty shop, travel service, shoe repair service, funeral parlor, gas station, office of an accountant or lawyer, pharmacy, insurance office, professional office of a health care provider, hospital or other service establishment;
- (7) A terminal, depot or other station used for specified public transportation;
- (8) A museum, library, gallery or other place of public display or collection;
- (9) A park, zoo, amusement park or other place of recreation;
- (10) A nursery, elementary, secondary, undergraduate or postgraduate private school, or other place of education;
- (11) A day-care center, senior citizen center, homeless shelter, food bank, adoption agency or other social service center establishment;
- (12) A gymnasium, health spa, bowling alley, golf course or other place of exercise or recreation;
- (13) A religious facility;
- (14) An office building; and
- (15) A public curb or sidewalk.

**PLACE OF RELIGIOUS WORSHIP.** See "Religious worship, place of."

**[BF] PLASTIC COMPOSITE.** A generic designation that refers to wood/plastic composites, plastic lumber and similar materials.

**[BF] PLASTIC GLAZING.** Plastic materials that are glazed or set in a frame or sash or are otherwise supported.

**[BF] PLASTIC LUMBER.** A manufactured product made primarily of plastic materials (filled or unfilled) which is generally rectangular in cross section.

**[BG] PLATFORM.** A raised area within a building used for worship, the presentation of music, plays or other entertainment; the head table for special guests; the raised area for lecturers and speakers; boxing and wrestling rings; theater-in-the-round stages; and similar purposes wherein, other than horizontal sliding curtains, there are no overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound. A temporary platform is one installed for not more than 30 days.

## DEFINITIONS

**PLATFORM (WHEELCHAIR) LIFT.** A hoisting and lowering mechanism equipped with a car or platform or support that serves two landings of a building or structure and is designed to carry a passenger or passengers and/or luggage or other material a vertical distance as may be allowed.

**PLAY AREA.** [DSA-AC] A portion of a site containing play components designed and constructed for children.

**PLAY COMPONENT.** [DSA-AC] An element intended to generate specific opportunities for play, socialization or learning. Play components are manufactured or natural; and are stand-alone or part of a composite play structure.

| **[BG] PLAY STRUCTURE.** A structure composed of one or more components, where the user enters a play environment.

**POINT-OF-SALE DEVICE.** [DSA-AC] A device used for the purchase of a good or service where a personal identification number (PIN), zip code or signature is required.

**[BF] POLYPROPYLENE SIDING.** A shaped material, made principally from polypropylene homopolymer, or copolymer, which in some cases contains fillers or reinforcements, that is used to clad exterior walls of buildings.

**POOL.** A constructed or prefabricated artificial basin, chamber or tank intended to be used primarily by bathers, and not for cleaning of the body or for individual therapeutic use.

**POOL USER.** A person using a pool and ancillary facilities for the purpose of water activities such as diving, swimming or wading.

**POOL VOLUME.** The amount of water expressed in gallons (liters) that a pool holds when filled.

**[BS] PORCELAIN TILE.** Ceramic tile having an absorption of 0.5 percent or less in accordance with Table 10 of ANSI A137.1, or Tables 4 or 5 of ANSI A137.3.

**[BS] POSITIVE ROOF DRAINAGE.** A design that accounts for deflections from all design loads and has sufficient additional slope to ensure that drainage of the roof occurs within 48 hours of precipitation.

**POWDER ROOM.** A room containing a water closet (toilet) and a lavatory, and which is not defined as a bathroom.

**POWER-ASSISTED DOOR.** [DSA-AC] A door used for human passage with a mechanism that helps to open the door, or relieves the opening resistance of a door, upon the activation of a switch or a continued force applied to the door itself.

**[BE] POWER-ASSISTED DOOR.** Swinging door which opens by reduced pushing or pulling force on the door-operating hardware. The door closes automatically after the pushing or pulling force is released and functions with decreased forces. See "Low-energy power-operated door" and "Power-operated door."

**[BE] POWER-OPERATED DOOR.** Swinging, sliding, or folding door which opens automatically when approached by a pedestrian or opens automatically upon an action by a pedestrian. The door closes automatically and includes provisions such as presence sensors to prevent entrapment. See "Low energy power-operated door" and "Power-assisted door."

**[BS] PREFABRICATED WOOD I-JOIST.** Structural member manufactured using sawn or structural composite lumber flanges and wood structural panel webs bonded together with exterior exposure adhesives, which forms an "I" cross-sectional shape.

**[BS] PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD.** Wood products that, when impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, exhibit reduced susceptibility to damage by fungi, insects or marine borers.

**[BS] PRESTRESSED MASONRY.** Masonry in which internal stresses have been introduced to counteract potential tensile stresses in masonry resulting from applied loads.

**PRIMARY ENTRY.** [HCD 1-AC] The principal entrance through which most people enter the building, as designated by the building official.

**PRIMARY ENTRY LEVEL.** [HCD 1-AC] The floor or level of the building on which the primary entry is located.

**[BG] PRIMARY STRUCTURAL FRAME.** The primary structural frame shall include all of the following structural members:

1. The columns.
2. Structural members having direct connections to the columns, including girders, beams, trusses and spandrels.
3. Members of the floor construction and roof construction having direct connections to the columns.
4. Members that are essential to the vertical stability of the primary structural frame under gravity loading.

**PRIVATE BUILDING OR FACILITY.** [DSA-AC] A place of public accommodation or a commercial building or facility subject to Chapter 1, Section 1.9.1.2.

**[BG] PRIVATE GARAGE.** A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the owner or tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

**PRIVATE POOL.** Any constructed pool, permanent or portable, that is intended for noncommercial use as a swimming pool by not more than three owner families and their guests.

**Note:** A single-family residence is a Group R, Division 3 occupancy.

**PROFESSIONAL OFFICE OF A HEALTH CARE PROVIDER.** [DSA-AC] A location where a person or entity, regulated by the State to provide professional services related to the physical or mental health of an individual, makes such services available to the public. The facility housing the professional office of a health care provider only includes floor levels housing at least one health care provider, or any floor level designed or intended for use by at least one health care provider.

**PROJECT INSPECTOR.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] The person approved to provide inspection in accordance with the California Administrative Code, Section 4-333(b). The term "project inspector" is synonymous with "inspector of record."

**DEFINITIONS**

**[BG] PROSCENIUM WALL.** The wall that separates the stage from the auditorium or assembly seating area.

**PROTECTIVE SOCIAL CARE FACILITY. [SFM]** A facility housing persons, who are referred, placed or caused to be placed in the facility, by any governmental agency and for whom the services, or a portion thereof, are paid for by any governmental agency. These occupancies shall include, but are not limited to, those commonly referred to as "assisted living facilities," "social rehabilitation facilities," "certified family care homes," "out-of-home placement facilities," and "halfway houses."

**PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS.** See "Hospitals and psychiatric hospitals."

**PUBLIC BUILDING OR FACILITY. [DSA-AC]** A building or facility or portion of a building or facility designed, constructed, or altered by, on behalf of, or for the use of a public entity subject to Chapter 1, Section 1.9.1.1.

**PUBLIC ENTITY.** Any state or local government; any department, agency, special-purpose district, or other instrumentality of a state or local government.

**[BE] PUBLIC ENTRANCE.** An entrance that is not a service entrance or a restricted entrance.

**PUBLIC HOUSING. [DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** Housing facilities constructed or altered by, for, or on behalf of a public entity, or constructed or altered as part of a public entity's program to provide housing pursuant to United States Code of Federal Regulations, 28 CFR Part 35, Section 35.102(a), including but not limited to the following:

1. One- or two-family dwelling units or congregate residences;
2. Buildings or complexes with three or more residential dwelling units;
3. Homeless shelters, group homes, halfway houses and similar social service establishments;
4. Transient lodging, such as hotels, motels, hostels and other facilities providing accommodations of a short-term nature of not more than 30 days duration;
5. Housing at a place of education, such as housing on or serving a public school, public college or public university.

**Note:** A public entity's program to provide housing may include but is not limited to: the allocation of local, state or federal financial assistance, Community Development Block Grants, Low Income Housing Tax Credits, the California Multifamily Housing Program, loan agreements and housing bonds. Examples that are not considered a public entity's program to provide housing may include but are not limited to: density bonuses, the receipt of public funds for the installation of energy efficiency features, seismic strengthening, water conservation and fire safety features. For additional information see "Guide to Public Housing Regulated in Chapter 11B of the California Building Code" and the "California Access Compliance Advisory Reference Manual" available on the Division of the State Architect's website.

**PUBLIC POOL.** A pool other than a private pool.

**PUBLIC USE. [DSA-AC]** Interior or exterior rooms, spaces or elements that are made available to the public. Public use may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned. Private interior or exterior rooms, spaces or elements associated with a residential dwelling unit provided by a public housing program or in a public housing facility are not public use areas and shall not be required to be made available to the public.

**[A] PUBLIC WAY.** A street, alley or other parcel of land open to the outside air leading to a street, that has been deeded, dedicated or otherwise permanently appropriated to the public for public use and which has a clear width and height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

**[BE] PUBLIC-USE AREAS.** Interior or exterior rooms or spaces of a building or facility that are made available to the general public and do not include common use areas. Public use areas may be provided at a building or facility that is privately or publicly owned.

**[F] PYROPHORIC.** A chemical with an auto-ignition temperature in air, at or below a temperature of 130°F (54.4°C).

**[F] PYROTECHNIC COMPOSITION.** A chemical mixture that produces visible light displays or sounds through a self-propagating, heat-releasing chemical reaction which is initiated by ignition.

**QUALIFIED HISTORIC BUILDING OR FACILITY. [DSA-AC]** A building or facility that is listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, or designated as historic under an appropriate State or local law. See C.C.R. Title 24, Part 8.

**QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA). [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1R, 1, 2, 4 & 5]** Special inspections and testing provided by an approved agency employed by the Owner. Project specific testing required by approved construction documents shall be performed by the approved agency responsible for Quality Assurance (QA), unless approved otherwise by the building official.

**QUALITY CONTROL (QC). [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1R, 1, 2, 4 & 5]** Inspections and materials/functionality testing provided by the fabricator, erector, manufacturer or other responsible contractor as applicable.

**[BF] RADIANT BARRIER.** A material having a low-emittance surface of 0.1 or less installed in building assemblies.

**RAFTERTAIL. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[BE] RAMP.** A walking surface that has a running slope steeper than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

**RAMP, EXIT ACCESS.** See "Exit access ramp."

**RAMP, EXTERIOR EXIT.** See "Exterior exit ramp."

**RAMP, INTERIOR EXIT.** See "Interior exit ramp."

**[BG] RAMP-ACCESS OPEN PARKING GARAGES.** Open parking garages employing a series of continuously rising floors or a series of interconnecting ramps between floors permitting the movement of vehicles under their own power from and to the street level.

## DEFINITIONS

**REASONABLE PORTION.** [DSA-AC] That segment of a building, facility, area, space or condition, which would normally be necessary if the activity therein is to be accessible by persons with disabilities.

**RECESSED STEPS.** A riser/tread or series of risers/treads extending down into the deck with the bottom riser or tread terminating at the pool wall (thus creating a "stairwell").

**RECESSED TREADS.** A series of vertically spaced cavities in the pool wall creating tread areas for step holes.

**RECIRCULATION SYSTEM.** The interconnected system traversed by the recirculated water from the pool until it is returned to the pool, i.e., from the pool through the collector or surge tank, recirculation pump, filters, chemical treatment and heater (if provided), and returned to the pool.

**RECOMMEND.** [DSA-AC, HCD 1 & HCD 2] Does not require mandatory acceptance, but identifies a suggested action that shall be considered for the purpose of providing a greater degree of accessibility to persons with disabilities.

**[A] RECORD DRAWINGS.** Drawings ("as built") that document the location of all devices, appliances, wiring sequences, wiring methods and connections of the components of a fire alarm system as installed.

**[BF] REFLECTIVE PLASTIC CORE INSULATION.** An insulation material packaged in rolls, that is less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) thick, with not less than one exterior low-emittance surface (0.1 or less) and a core material containing voids or cells.

**[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL.** An individual who is registered or licensed to practice their respective design profession as defined by the statutory requirements of the professional registration laws of the state or jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed.

**[A] REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE.** A registered design professional engaged by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to review and coordinate certain aspects of the project, as determined by the building official, for compatibility with the design of the building or structure, including submittal documents prepared by others, deferred submittal documents and phased submittal documents.

**[BG] RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACE OF.** A building or portion thereof intended for the performance of religious services.

**[A] RELOCATABLE BUILDING.** A partially or completely assembled building constructed and designed to be reused multiple times and transported to different building sites.

**RELOCATABLE BUILDING (PUBLIC SCHOOL).** Any building with an integral floor structure which is capable of being readily moved. (See Education Code Section 17350.) Relocatable buildings that are to be placed on substandard foundations not complying with the requirements of Part 2, Title 24, C.C.R., require a statement from the school district stating that the durability requirements for those foundations may be waived and acknowledging the temporary nature of the foundations.

**REMODELING.** [DSA-AC] See "Alteration."

**REMOVED FROM ACUTE CARE SERVICE.** [OSHPD 1R] Buildings that previously provided basic and/or supplemental services, as defined in Section 1224.3 that have been removed from acute care service in compliance with Part 10 California Existing Building Code Chapter 3A through a project approved by OSHPD, and remain under the jurisdiction of OSHPD.

**[A] REPAIR.** The reconstruction, replacement or renewal of any part of an existing building for the purpose of its maintenance or to correct damage.

**[BG] REPAIR GARAGE.** A building, structure or portion thereof used for servicing or repairing motor vehicles.

**[BS] REROOFING.** The process of recovering or replacing an existing roof covering. See "Roof recover" and "Roof replacement."

**[BG] RESIDENTIAL AIRCRAFT HANGAR.** An accessory building less than 2,000 square feet ( $186 \text{ m}^2$ ) and 20 feet (6096 mm) in building height constructed on a one- or two-family property where aircraft are stored. Such use will be considered as a residential accessory use incidental to the dwelling.

**RESIDENTIAL CARE FACILITY FOR THE CHRONICALLY ILL (RCF/CI).** As termed, means a housing arrangement with a maximum capacity of 25 residents that provides a range of services to residents who have chronic, life-threatening illnesses.

**RESIDENTIAL CARE FACILITY FOR THE ELDERLY (RCFE).** As defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1569.2, shall mean a facility with a housing arrangement chosen voluntarily by persons 60 years of age or over, or their authorized representative, where varying levels and intensities of care and supervision, protective supervision or personal care are provided, based on their varying needs, as determined in order to be admitted and to remain in the facility. Persons under 60 years of age with compatible needs, as determined by the Department of Social Services in regulations, may be allowed to be admitted or retained in a residential-care facility for the elderly.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13133, regulations of the state fire marshal pertaining to Group R-2.1, Occupancies classified as residential facilities (RF) and residential-care facilities for the elderly (RCFE) shall apply uniformly throughout the state and no city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county, or fire protection district shall adopt or enforce any ordinance or local rule or regulation relating to fire and panic safety which is in consistent with these regulations. A city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county may pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143.5, or a fire protection district may pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7, adopt standards more stringent than those adopted by the state fire marshal that are reasonably necessary to accommodate local climate, geological or topographical conditions relating to roof coverings for residential-care facilities for the elderly.

## DEFINITIONS

**RESIDENTIAL DWELLING UNIT.** [DSA-AC] A unit intended to be used as a residence that is primarily long-term in nature. Residential dwelling units do not include transient lodging, inpatient medical care, licensed long-term care, and detention or correctional facilities.

**RESIDENTIAL FACILITY (RF).** As defined in Section 1502 of the Health and Safety Code, shall mean any family home, group care facility or similar facility determined by the director of Social Services, for 24-hour nonmedical care of persons in need of personal services, supervision or assistance essential for sustaining the activities of daily living or for the protection of the individual. Such facilities include small family homes and social rehabilitation facilities.

Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13133, regulations of the state fire marshal pertaining to Group R Occupancies classified as residential facilities (RF) and residential-care facilities for the elderly (RCFE) shall apply uniformly throughout the state and no city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county, or fire protection district shall adopt or enforce any ordinance or local rule or regulation relating to fire and panic safety which is in consistent with these regulations. A city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county may pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143.5, or a fire protection district may pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7, adopt standards more stringent than those adopted by the state fire marshal that are reasonably necessary to accommodate local climate, geological or topographical conditions relating to roof coverings for residential-care facilities for the elderly.

**[BS] RESISTANCE FACTOR.** A factor that accounts for deviations of the actual strength from the nominal strength and the manner and consequences of failure (also called "strength reduction factor").

**RESTRAINT.** [SFM] The physical retention of a person within a room, cell or cell block, holding cells, temporary holding cell, rooms or area, holding facility, secure interview rooms, courthouse holding facilities, courtroom docks, or similar buildings or portions thereof by any means, or within the exterior walls of a building by means of locked doors inoperable by the person restrained. Restraint shall also mean the physical binding, strapping or similar restriction of any person in a chair, walker, bed or other contrivance for the purpose of deliberately restricting the free movement of ambulatory persons.

Restraint shall not be construed to include nonambulatory persons nor shall it include the use of bandage material, strip sheeting or other fabrics or materials (soft ties) used to restrain persons in hospital-type beds or wheelchairs to prevent injury, provided an approved method of quick release is maintained.

Facilities employing the use of soft ties, however, shall be classified as a building used to house nonambulatory persons. Restraint shall not be practiced in licensed facilities classified as Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 occupancies unless constructed as a Group I-3 occupancy. For Group I-3 Occupancies see Section 408.1.1.

**RESTRICTED AREA.** [OSHPD 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5] (See Chapter 12, Section 1224.3 for defined term.)

**[BE] RESTRICTED ENTRANCE.** An entrance that is made available for common use on a controlled basis, but not public use, and that is not a service entrance.

**[BG] RETRACTABLE AWNING.** A retractable awning is a cover with a frame that retracts against a building or other structure to which it is entirely supported.

**RETROFIT.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1 & 4] The construction of any new element or system, or the alteration of any existing element or system required to bring an existing building, or portion thereof, conforming to earlier code requirements, into conformance with standards of the currently effective California Building Standards Code.

**RISER.** The upright part between two adjacent stair treads, between either an upper or lower landing and an adjacent stair tread, or between two adjacent landings.

**[BS] RISK CATEGORY.** A categorization of buildings and other structures for determination of flood, wind, snow, ice and earthquake loads based on the risk associated with unacceptable performance.

**[BS] RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE<sub>R</sub>) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS.** The most severe earthquake effects considered by this code, determined for the orientation that results in the largest maximum response to horizontal ground motions and with adjustment for targeted risk.

**[BS] ROOF ASSEMBLY (For application to Chapter 15 only).** A system designed to provide weather protection and resistance to design loads. The system consists of a roof covering and roof deck or a single component serving as both the roof covering and the roof deck. A roof assembly can include an underlayment, a thermal barrier, insulation or a vapor retarder.

**[BS] ROOF COATING.** A fluid-applied, adhered coating used for roof maintenance or roof repair, or as a component of a roof covering system or roof assembly.

**[BS] ROOF COVERING.** The covering applied to the roof deck for weather resistance, fire classification or appearance.

**ROOF COVERING SYSTEM.** See "Roof assembly."

**[BS] ROOF DECK.** The flat or sloped surface constructed on top of the exterior walls of a building or other supports for the purpose of enclosing the story below, or sheltering an area, to protect it from the elements, not including its supporting members or vertical supports.

**ROOF DRAINAGE, POSITIVE.** See "Positive roof drainage."

**ROOF EAVE.** [SFM] (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**ROOF EAVE SOFFIT.** [SFM] (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[BS] ROOF RECOVER.** The process of installing an additional roof covering over a prepared existing roof covering without removing the existing roof covering.

**[BS] ROOF REPAIR.** Reconstruction or renewal of any part of an existing roof for the purposes of correcting damage or restoring pre-damage condition.

**DEFINITIONS**

**[BS] ROOF REPLACEMENT.** The process of removing the existing roof covering, repairing any damaged substrate and installing a new roof covering.

**[BG] ROOF VENTILATION.** The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, attics, cathedral ceilings or other enclosed spaces over which a roof assembly is installed.

**[BG] ROOFTOP STRUCTURE.** A structure erected on top of the roof deck or on top of any part of a building.

**RUGGED EQUIPMENT.** *[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]* Rugged equipment refers to an amplexus of construction that gives such equipment the ability to survive earthquake strong motions without significant loss of function.

**[BS] RUNNING BOND.** The placement of masonry units such that head joints in successive courses are horizontally offset at least one-quarter the unit length.

**RUNNING SLOPE.** The slope that is parallel to the direction of travel. (As differentiated from the definition of "Cross Slope.")

**[BG] SALLYPORT.** A security vestibule with two or more doors or gates where the intended purpose is to prevent continuous and unobstructed passage by allowing the release of only one door or gate at a time.

**SANITARY FACILITY.** *[HCD 1 & HCD 1-AC]* Any single water closet, urinal, lavatory, bathtub or shower, or a combination thereof, together with the room or space in which they are housed.

**[BE] SCISSOR STAIRWAY.** Two interlocking stairways providing two separate paths of egress located within one exit enclosure.

**[BS] SCUPPER.** An opening in a wall or parapet that allows water to drain from a roof.

**[BG] SECONDARY STRUCTURAL MEMBERS.** The following structural members shall be considered secondary members and not part of the primary structural frame:

1. Structural members not having direct connections to the columns.
2. Members of the floor construction and roof construction not having direct connections to the columns.
3. Bracing members that are not designated as part of a primary structural frame or bearing wall.

**SECURE INTERVIEW ROOMS.** A lockable room used to hold and interview detainees for further processing.

**[BS] SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY.** A classification assigned to a structure based on its risk category and the severity of the design earthquake ground motion at the site.

**[BS] SEISMIC FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM.** That part of the structural system that has been considered in the design to provide the required resistance to the prescribed seismic forces.

**[BF] SELF-CLOSING.** As applied to a fire door or other opening protective, means equipped with an device that will ensure closing after having been opened.

**[BE] SELF-LUMINOUS.** Illuminated by a self-contained power source, other than batteries, and operated independently of external power sources.

**SELF-PRESERVATION, INCAPABLE OF.** See "Incapable of self-preservation."

**[BG] SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITY.** Real property designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

**SELF-SERVICE STORAGE.** *[DSA-AC]* Building or facility designed and used for the purpose of renting or leasing individual storage spaces to customers for the purpose of storing and removing personal property on a self-service basis.

**[F] SERVICE CORRIDOR.** A fully enclosed passage used for transporting HPM and purposes other than required means of egress.

**[BE] SERVICE ENTRANCE.** An entrance intended primarily for delivery of goods or services.

**[BF] SHAFT.** An enclosed space extending through one or more stories of a building, connecting vertical openings in successive floors, or floors and roof.

**[BF] SHAFT ENCLOSURE.** The walls or construction forming the boundaries of a shaft.

**SHALL.** *[DSA-AC]* Denotes a mandatory specification or requirement.

**[BS] SHALLOW FOUNDATION.** A shallow foundation is an individual or strip footing, a mat foundation, a slab-on-grade foundation or a similar foundation element.

**SHALLOW POOL.** A pool that has a maximum depth of less than 6 feet (1829 mm).

**[BS] SHEAR WALL.** This definition applies only to Chapter 23.

A wall designed to resist lateral forces parallel to the plane of a wall.

**Shear wall, perforated.** A wood structural panel sheathed wall with openings, that has not been specifically designed and detailed for force transfer around openings.

**Shear wall segment, perforated.** A section of shear wall with full-height sheathing that meets the height-to-width ratio limits of Section 4.3.4 of AWC SDPWS.

**[BS] SHINGLE FASHION.** A method of installing roof or wall coverings, water-resistive barriers, flashing or other building components such that upper layers of material are placed overlapping lower layers of material to provide for drainage via gravity and moisture control.

**SHOPPING CENTER (OR SHOPPING MALL).** *[DSA-AC]* One or more sales or rental establishments or stores. A shopping center may include a series of buildings on a common site, connected by a common pedestrian access route on, above or below the ground floor, that is either under common ownership or common control or developed either as one project or as a series of related projects. For the purposes of this section, "shopping center" or "shopping mall" includes a covered mall building.

## DEFINITIONS

**SHOULD.** [HCD 1 & HCD 2] See “Recommend.”

**SIDEWALK.** A surfaced pedestrian way contiguous to a street used by the public. (As differentiated from the definition of “Walk.”)

**SIGN.** (HCD 1-AC, DSA-AC) An element composed of displayed textual, verbal, symbolic, tactile and/or pictorial information.

**SIGNIFICANT LOSS OF FUNCTION.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1 & 4] Significant loss of function for equipment or components means the equipment or component cannot be restored to its original function by competent technicians after a design earthquake because the equipment or component require parts that are not normally stocked by the owner or not readily available.

**SINGLE-ACCOMMODATION SANITARY FACILITY.** [HCD 1-AC] A room that has not more than one of each type of sanitary fixture, is intended for use by only one person at a time, has no partition around the toilet, and has a door that can be locked on the inside by the room occupant.

**[BS] SINGLE-PLY MEMBRANE.** A roofing membrane that is field applied using one layer of membrane material (either homogeneous or composite) rather than multiple layers.

**[F] SINGLE-STATION SMOKE ALARM.** An assembly incorporating the detector, the control equipment and the alarm-sounding device in one unit, operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation.

**SINK.** A fixed bowl or basin with running water and drainpipe, as in a kitchen or laundry, for washing dishes, clothing, etc. (As differentiated from the definition of “Lavatory.”)

**[BG] SITE.** A parcel of land bounded by a lot line or a designated portion of a public right-of-way.

**[BS] SITE CLASS.** A classification assigned to a site based on the types of soils present and their engineering properties as defined in Section 1613.2.2.

**[BS] SITE COEFFICIENTS.** The values of  $F_a$  and  $F_v$  indicated in Table 1613.2.3(1) and Table 1613.2.3(2), respectively.

**SITE DEVELOPMENT.** [HCD 1-AC] “On-site” and “off-site” work, including, but not limited to, walks, sidewalks, ramps, curbs, curb ramps, parking facilities, stairs, planting areas, pools, promenades, exterior gathering or assembly areas and raised or depressed paved areas.

**[BG] SITE-FABRICATED STRETCH SYSTEM.** A system, fabricated on site and intended for acoustical, tackable or aesthetic purposes, that is composed of three elements:

1. A frame (constructed of plastic, wood, metal or other material) used to hold fabric in place.
2. A core material (infill, with the correct properties for the application).
3. An outside layer, composed of a textile, fabric or vinyl, that is stretched taut and held in place by tension or mechanical fasteners via the frame.

**[BS] SKYLIGHT, UNIT.** A factory-assembled, glazed fenestration unit, containing one panel of glazing material that allows for natural lighting through an opening in the roof assembly while preserving the weather-resistant barrier of the roof.

**[BS] SKYLIGHTS AND SLOPED GLAZING.** Glass or other transparent or translucent glazing material installed at a slope of 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or more from vertical. Unit skylights, tubular daylighting devices, glazing materials, solariums, sunrooms, roofs and sloped walls are included in this definition.

**SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS.** Rooms intended and designed for sleeping.

**[A] SLEEPING UNIT.** A single unit that provides rooms or spaces for one or more persons, includes permanent provisions for sleeping and can include provisions for living, eating and either sanitation or kitchen facilities but not both. Such rooms and spaces that are also part of a dwelling unit are not sleeping units.

**SLIP RESISTANT.** A rough finish that is not abrasive to the bare foot.

**SLOPE.** [HCD 1-AC] The relative steepness of the land between two points and is calculated as follows:

*The horizontal distance and elevation change between the two points (e.g., an entrance and a passenger loading zone). The difference in elevation is divided by the distance and the resulting fraction is multiplied by 100 to obtain the percentage of slope.*

*For example: if a principal entrance is 10 feet (3048 mm) from a passenger loading zone, and the principal entrance is raised 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the passenger loading zone, then the slope is  $\frac{1}{10} \times 100 = 10$  percent.*

**SMALL MANAGEMENT YARD.** An exterior exercise yard within a Group I-3 prison used for inmate exercise for a maximum of 2 hours per day, constructed in accordance with Section 408.15.

**[F] SMOKE ALARM.** A single- or multiple-station alarm responsive to smoke. See “Multiple-station smoke alarm” and “Single-station smoke alarm.”

**[BF] SMOKE BARRIER.** A continuous membrane, either vertical or horizontal, such as a wall, floor or ceiling assembly, that is designed and constructed to restrict the movement of smoke.

**[BG] SMOKE COMPARTMENT.** A space within a building separated from other interior areas of the building by smoke barriers, including interior walls and horizontal assemblies.

**[BF] SMOKE DAMPER.** A listed device installed in ducts and air transfer openings designed to resist the passage of smoke. The device is installed to operate automatically, controlled by a smoke detection system, and where required, is capable of being positioned from a fire command center.

**[F] SMOKE DETECTOR.** A listed device that senses visible or invisible particles of combustion.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BF] SMOKE PARTITION.** A wall assembly that extends from the top of the foundation or floor below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above or to the underside of the ceiling above where the ceiling membrane is constructed to limit the transfer of smoke.

**[BF] SMOKE-DEVELOPED INDEX.** A comparative measure, expressed as a dimensionless number, derived from measurements of smoke obscuration versus time for a material tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

**[BF] SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURE.** An exit stairway or ramp designed and constructed so that the movement of the products of combustion produced by a fire occurring in any part of the building into the enclosure is limited.

**[BE] SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING.** Seating served by means of egress that is not subject to smoke accumulation within or under a structure for a specified design time by means of passive design or by mechanical ventilation.

**[BG] SOFT CONTAINED PLAY EQUIPMENT STRUCTURE.** A play structure containing one or more components where the user enters a play environment that utilizes pliable materials.

**SOFT CONTAINED PLAY STRUCTURE. [DSA-AC]** A play structure made up of one or more play components where the user enters a fully enclosed play environment that utilizes pliable materials, such as plastic, netting or fabric.

**[F] SOLID.** A material that has a melting point, decomposes or sublimes at a temperature greater than 68°F (20°C).

**SPACE.** A definable area, such as a room, toilet room, hall, assembly area, entrance, storage room, alcove, courtyard or lobby.

**SPC 1, SPC 2, SPC 3, SPC 4, SPC 4D and SPC 5. [OSHPD 1]** Building structural performance categories for Hospital Buildings defined in Table 2.5.3 of California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24 CCR), Chapter 6.

**SPC BUILDING. [OSHPD 1 and 1R]** Means a structure with an independent vertical and lateral force-resisting system (LFRS) and a distinct building structural performance category assigned by OSHPD.

> **SPECIAL AMUSEMENT AREA.** A special amusement area is any temporary or permanent building or portion thereof that is occupied for amusement, entertainment or educational purposes and is arranged in a manner that:

1. Makes the means of egress path not readily apparent due to visual or audio distractions, or
2. Intentionally confounds identification of the means of egress path, or
3. Otherwise makes the means of egress path not readily available because of the nature of the attraction or mode of conveyance through the *special amusement area*, building, structure or portion thereof.

**[BG] SPECIAL EVENT STRUCTURE.** Any ground-supported structure, platform, stage, stage scaffolding or rigging, canopy, tower or similar structure supporting entertainment-related equipment or signage.

**[BS] SPECIAL FLOOD HAZARD AREA.** The land area subject to flood hazards and shown on a *Flood Insurance Rate Map* or other flood hazard map as Zone A, AE, A1-30, A99, AR, AO, AH, V, VO, VE or V1-30.

**[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTION.** Inspection of construction requiring the expertise of an approved special inspector in order to ensure compliance with this code and the approved construction documents.

**Continuous special inspection.** Special inspection by the special inspector who is present continuously when and where the work to be inspected is being performed.

**Periodic special inspection. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** Special inspection by the special inspector who is intermittently present where the work has been or is being performed and at the completion of the work.

**[BS] SPECIAL INSPECTOR.** A qualified person employed or retained by an approved agency and approved by the building official as having the competence necessary to inspect a particular type of construction requiring special inspection.

**[BS] SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF MASONRY,  $f'_{m}$ .** Minimum compressive strength, expressed as force per unit of net cross-sectional area, required of the masonry used in construction by the approved construction documents, and upon which the project design is based. Whenever the quantity  $f'_{m}$  is under the radical sign, the square root of numerical value only is intended and the result has units of pounds per square inch (psi) (MPa).

**SPECIFIED PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION. [DSA-AC]** Transportation by bus, rail or any other conveyance (other than aircraft) provided by a private entity to the general public, with general or special service (including charter service) on a regular and continuing basis.

**[BF] SPLICE.** The result of a factory and/or field method of joining or connecting two or more lengths of a fire-resistant joint system into a continuous entity.

**SPORT ACTIVITY, AREA OF.** See “Area of sport activity.”

**[F] SPRAY ROOM.** A room designed to accommodate spraying operations.

**[BF] SPRAY-APPLIED FOAM PLASTIC.** Single- and multiple-component, spray-applied foam plastic insulation used in nonstructural applications that are installed at locations wherein the material is applied in a liquid or frothed state, permitted to free rise and cure in situ.

**[BF] SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS.** Cementitious or fibrous materials that are sprayed to provide fire-resistant protection of the substrates.

**[BG] STAGE.** A space within a building utilized for entertainment or presentations, which includes overhead hanging curtains, drops, scenery or stage effects other than lighting and sound.

**[BE] STAIR.** A change in elevation, consisting of one or more risers.

**STAIRS.** A series of two or more steps.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BE] STAIRWAY.** One or more flights of stairs, either exterior or interior, with the necessary landings and platforms connecting them, to form a continuous and uninterrupted passage from one level to another.

**STAIRWAY, EXIT ACCESS.** See "Exit access stairway."

**STAIRWAY, EXTERIOR EXIT.** See "Exterior exit stairway."

**STAIRWAY, INTERIOR EXIT.** See "Interior exit stairway."

**STAIRWAY, SCISSOR.** See "Scissor stairway."

**[BE] STAIRWAY, SPIRAL.** A stairway having a closed circular form in its plan view with uniform section-shaped treads attached to and radiating from a minimum-diameter supporting column.

**[F] STANDBY POWER SYSTEM.** A source of automatic electric power of a required capacity and duration to operate required building, hazardous materials or ventilation systems in the event of a failure of the primary power. Standby power systems are required for electrical loads where interruption of the primary power could create hazards or hamper rescue or fire-fighting operations.

**[F] STANDPIPE, TYPES OF.** Standpipe types are as follows:

**Automatic dry.** A dry standpipe system, normally filled with pressurized air, that is arranged through the use of a device, such as dry pipe valve, to admit water into the system piping automatically upon the opening of a hose valve. The water supply for an automatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

**Automatic wet.** A wet standpipe system that has a water supply that is capable of supplying the system demand automatically.

**Manual dry.** A dry standpipe system that does not have a permanent water supply attached to the system. Manual dry standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper to be pumped into the system through the fire department connection in order to meet the system demand.

**Manual wet.** A wet standpipe system connected to a water supply for the purpose of maintaining water within the system but does not have a water supply capable of delivering the system demand attached to the system. Manual-wet standpipe systems require water from a fire department pumper (or the like) to be pumped into the system in order to meet the system demand.

**Semiautomatic dry.** A dry standpipe system that is arranged through the use of a device, such as a deluge valve, to admit water into the system piping upon activation of a remote control device located at a hose connection. A remote control activation device shall be provided at each hose connection. The water supply for a semiautomatic dry standpipe system shall be capable of supplying the system demand.

**[F] STANDPIPE SYSTEM, CLASSES OF.** Standpipe classes are as follows:

**Class I system.** A system providing 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

**Class II system.** A system providing 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use primarily by the building occupants or by the fire department during initial response.

**Class III system.** A system providing 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) hose stations to supply water for use by building occupants and 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (64 mm) hose connections to supply a larger volume of water for use by fire departments and those trained in handling heavy fire streams.

**STATE-OWNED/LEASED BUILDING. [SFM]** *State-Owned/Leased Building is a building or portion of a building that is owned, leased or rented by the state. State-leased buildings shall include all required exits to a public way serving such leased area or space. Portions of state- leased buildings that are not leased or rented by the state shall not be included within the scope of this section unless such portions present an exposure hazard to the state-leased area or space.*

**STATE RESPONSIBILITY AREA. [SFM]** *(See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for definition of term.)*

**[BS] STEEL CONSTRUCTION, COLD-FORMED.** That type of construction made up entirely or in part of steel structural members cold formed to shape from sheet or strip steel such as roof deck, floor and wall panels, studs, floor joists, roof joists and other structural elements.

**[BS] STEEL ELEMENT, STRUCTURAL.** Any steel structural member of a building or structure consisting of rolled shapes, pipe, hollow structural sections, plates, bars, sheets, rods or steel castings other than cold-formed steel or steel joist members.

**[BS] STEEL JOIST.** Any steel structural member of a building or structure made of hot-rolled or cold-formed solid or open-web sections, or riveted or welded bars, strip or sheet steel members, or slotted and expanded, or otherwise deformed rolled sections.

**[BF] STEEP SLOPE.** A roof slope 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater.

**STEP.** A riser and tread.

**STEPS, RECESSED STEPS, LADDERS AND RECESSED TREADS.** Those means of entry and exit to and from the pool which may be used in conjunction with each other.

**[BS] STONE MASONRY.** Masonry composed of field, quarried or cast stone units bonded by mortar.

**[F] STORAGE, HAZARDOUS MATERIALS.** The keeping, retention or leaving of hazardous materials in closed containers, tanks, cylinders, or similar vessels; or vessels supplying operations through closed connections to the vessel.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BS] STORAGE RACKS, STEEL.** Cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members which are formed into steel storage racks, including pallet storage racks, movable-shelf racks, rack-supported systems, automated storage and retrieval systems (stacker racks), push-back racks, pallet-flow racks, case-flow racks, pick modules and rack-supported platforms. Other types of racks, such as drive-in or drive-through racks, cantilever racks, portable racks or racks made of materials other than steel, are not considered storage racks for the purpose of this code.

**[BS] STORAGE RACKS, STEEL CANTILEVERED.** A framework or assemblage composed of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members, primarily in the form of vertical columns, extended bases, horizontal arms projecting from the faces of the columns, and longitudinal (down-aisle) bracing between columns. There may be shelf beams between the arms, depending on the products being stored; this definition does not include other types of racks such as pallet storage racks, drive-in racks, drive-through racks, or racks made of materials other than steel.

**[BG] STORM SHELTER.** A building, structure or portions thereof, constructed in accordance with ICC 500 and designated for use during a severe wind storm event, such as a hurricane or tornado.

**Community storm shelter.** A storm shelter not defined as a “Residential storm shelter.”

**Residential storm shelter.** A storm shelter serving occupants of dwelling units and having an occupant load not exceeding 16 persons.

**[BG] STORY.** That portion of a building included between the upper surface of a floor and the upper surface of the floor or roof next above (see “Basement,” “Building height,” “Grade plane” and “Mezzanine”). A story is measured as the vertical distance from top to top of two successive tiers of beams or finished floor surfaces and, for the topmost story, from the top of the floor finish to the top of the ceiling joists or, where there is not a ceiling, to the top of the roof rafters.

*[DSA-AC] That portion of a building or facility designed for human occupancy included between the upper surface of a floor and upper surface of the floor or roof next above. A story containing one or more mezzanines has more than one floor level. If the finished floor level directly above a basement or unused under-floor space is more than six feet (1829 mm) above grade for more than 50 percent of the total perimeter or is more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above grade at any point, the basement or unused under-floor space shall be considered as a story.*

**[BG] STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE.** Any story having its finished floor surface entirely above grade plane, or in which the finished surface of the floor next above is:

1. More than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade plane; or
2. More than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the finished ground level at any point.

**[BS] STRENGTH.** This term is defined two ways, the first for use in Chapter 16 and the second for use in Chapter 21.

### For Chapter 16:

**Nominal strength.** The capacity of a structure or member to resist the effects of loads, as determined by computations using specified material strengths and dimensions and equations derived from accepted principles of structural mechanics or by field tests or laboratory tests of scaled models, allowing for modeling effects and differences between laboratory and field conditions.

**Required strength.** Strength of a member, cross section or connection required to resist factored loads or related internal moments and forces in such combinations as stipulated by these provisions.

**Strength design.** A method of proportioning structural members such that the computed forces produced in the members by factored loads do not exceed the member design strength [also called “load and resistance factor design” (LRFD)]. The term “strength design” is used in the design of concrete and masonry structural elements.

### For Chapter 21:

**Design strength.** Nominal strength multiplied by a strength reduction factor.

**Nominal strength.** Strength of a member or cross section calculated in accordance with these provisions before application of any strength-reduction factors.

**Required strength.** Strength of a member or cross section required to resist factored loads.

**[BS] STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER.** Structural member manufactured using wood elements bonded together with exterior adhesives. Examples of structural composite lumber are:

**Laminated strand lumber (LSL).** A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inch (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 150 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

**Laminated veneer lumber (LVL).** A composite of wood veneer sheet elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the veneer element thicknesses are 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less.

**Oriented strand lumber (OSL).** A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member, where the least dimension of the wood strand elements is 0.10 inches (2.54 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 75 times and less than 150 times the least dimension of the strand elements.

**Parallel strand lumber (PSL).** A composite of wood strand elements with wood fibers primarily oriented along the length of the member where the least dimension of the

## DEFINITIONS

wood strand elements is 0.25 inches (6.4 mm) or less and their average lengths not less than 300 times the least dimension of the wood strand elements.

**STRUCTURAL FRAME.** *[DSA-AC]* The columns and the girders, beams and trusses having direct connections to the columns and all other members that are essential to the stability of the building or facility as a whole.

**[BS] STRUCTURAL GLUED-LAMINATED TIMBER.** An engineered, stress-rated product of a timber laminating plant, composed of assemblies of specially selected and prepared wood laminations in which the grain of all laminations is approximately parallel longitudinally and the laminations are bonded with adhesives.

**[BS] STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION.** The visual observation of the structural system by a registered design professional for general conformance to the approved construction documents.

**[A] STRUCTURE.** That which is built or constructed.

**SUB-COMPONENT.** *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]* A portion of an equipment or component that is uniquely identified by a part number (also known as model number or identification number).

**[BS] SUBSTANTIAL DAMAGE.** Damage of any origin sustained by a structure whereby the cost of restoring the structure to its before-damaged condition would equal or exceed 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the damage occurred.

**[BS] SUBSTANTIAL IMPROVEMENT.** Any repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation, alteration, addition or other improvement of a building or structure, the cost of which equals or exceeds 50 percent of the market value of the structure before the improvement or repair is started. If the structure has sustained substantial damage, any repairs are considered substantial improvement regardless of the actual repair work performed. The term does not, however, include either:

1. Any project for improvement of a building required to correct existing health, sanitary or safety code violations identified by the building official and that are the minimum necessary to assure safe living conditions.
2. Any alteration of a historic structure provided that the alteration will not preclude the structure's continued designation as a historic structure.

**[BG] SUNROOM.** A one-story structure attached to a building with a glazing area in excess of 40 percent of the gross area of the structure's exterior walls and roof.

**[F] SUPERVISING STATION.** A facility that receives signals and at which personnel are in attendance at all times to respond to these signals.

**[F] SUPERVISORY SERVICE.** The service required to monitor performance of guard tours and the operative condition of fixed suppression systems or other systems for the protection of life and property.

**[F] SUPERVISORY SIGNAL.** A signal indicating the need of action in connection with the supervision of guard tours, the fire suppression systems or equipment or the maintenance features of related systems.

**[F] SUPERVISORY SIGNAL-INITIATING DEVICE.** An initiation device, such as a valve supervisory switch, water-level indicator or low-air pressure switch on a dry-pipe sprinkler system, whose change of state signals an off-normal condition and its restoration to normal of a fire protection or life safety system, or a need for action in connection with guard tours, fire suppression systems or equipment or maintenance features of related systems.

**SURFACE MOUNTED COMPONENT.** *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]* As referenced in CBC Section 1705A.13.3.1 Exceptions, a component directly attached to only one continuous flat surface of wall, floor or roof, without supports. Surface mounted components are directly attached to a surface by attachments (without any supports) and are not rigidly connected to anything else (e.g., distribution system, other components).

**[BS] SUSCEPTIBLE BAY.** A roof or portion thereof with either of the following:

1. A slope less than  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch per foot (0.0208 rad).
2. On which water is impounded, in whole or in part, and the secondary drainage system is functional but the primary drainage system is blocked.

A roof surface with a slope of  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch per foot (0.0208 rad) or greater towards points of free drainage is not a susceptible bay.

**[BG] SWIMMING POOL.** Any structure intended for swimming, recreational bathing or wading that contains water over 24 inches (610 mm) deep. This includes in-ground, above-ground and on-ground pools; hot tubs; spas and fixed-in-place wading pools.

**[BF] T RATING.** The time period that the penetration firestop system, including the penetrating item, limits the maximum temperature rise to 325°F (163°C) above its initial temperature through the penetration on the nonfire side when tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

**TACTILE.** An object that can be perceived using the sense of touch.

**TACTILE SIGN.** A sign containing raised characters and/or symbols and accompanying Braille.

**[BG] TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREA.** Open elevated areas or spaces intended for entertainment technicians to walk on and occupy for servicing and operating entertainment technology systems and equipment. Galleries, including fly and lighting galleries, gridirons, catwalks, and similar areas are designed for these purposes.

**TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE.** *[DSA-AC]* An alteration of a building or a facility, that has little likelihood of being accomplished because the existing structural conditions require the removal or alteration of a load-bearing member that is an essential part of the structural frame, or because other existing physical or site constraints prohibit modification.

## DEFINITIONS

*tion or addition of elements, spaces or features that are in full and strict compliance with the minimum requirements for new construction and which are necessary to provide accessibility.*

**TEEING GROUND. [DSA-AC]** In golf, the starting place for the hole to be played.

**TEMPORARY. [DSA-AC]** Buildings and facilities intended for use at one location for not more than one year and seats intended for use at one location for not more than 90 days.

**TEMPORARY HOLDING CELL, ROOM or AREA. [BSCC and SFM]** Temporary Holding cell, room or area shall mean a room for temporary holding of inmates, detainees or incustody individuals for less than 24 hours.

**TEMPORARY HOLDING FACILITY. [SFM]** A building or portion of a building, operated by law enforcement personnel, with one or more temporary holding cells or rooms.

**TENABLE ENVIRONMENT. [SFM]** Tenable environment shall mean an environment in which the products of combustion, toxic gases, smoke and heat are limited or otherwise restricted to maintain the impact on occupants to a level that is not life threatening.

**[BG] TENSILE MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.** A membrane structure having a shape that is determined by tension in the membrane and the geometry of the support structure. Typically, the structure consists of both flexible elements (e.g., membrane and cables), nonflexible elements (e.g., struts, masts, beams and arches) and the anchorage (e.g., supports and foundations). This includes frame-supported tensile membrane structures.

**[F] TENT.** A structure, enclosure, umbrella structure or shelter, with or without sidewalls or drops, constructed of fabric or pliable material supported in any manner except by air or the contents it protects (see "Umbrella structure").

**TERMINALLY ILL.** As termed for an individual, means the individual has a life expectancy of six months or less as stated in writing by his or her attending physician and surgeon.

**[BF] TERMINATED STOPS.** Factory feature of a door frame where the stops of the door frame are terminated not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the bottom of the door frame. Terminated stops are also known as "hospital stops" or "sanitary stops."

**TESTING AGENCY. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** An agency approved by the department as qualified and equipped for testing of products, materials, equipment and installations in accordance with nationally recognized standards. For additional information, see Health and Safety Code Section 17920(n).

**TEXT TELEPHONE.** Machinery or equipment that employs interactive text-based communications through the transmission of coded signals across the standard telephone network. Text telephones can include, for example, devices known as TTYS (teletypewriters) or computers.

**[BG] THERMAL ISOLATION.** A separation of conditioned spaces, between a sunroom and a dwelling unit, consisting of existing or new walls, doors or windows.

**[BF] THERMOPLASTIC MATERIAL.** A plastic material that is capable of being repeatedly softened by increase of temperature and hardened by decrease of temperature.

**[BF] THERMOSETTING MATERIAL.** A plastic material that is capable of being changed into a substantially nonreformable product when cured.

**[BF] THROUGH PENETRATION.** A breach in both sides of a floor, floor-ceiling or wall assembly to accommodate an item passing through the breaches.

**[BF] THROUGH-PENETRATION FIRESTOP SYSTEM.** An assemblage consisting of a fire-resistance-rated floor, floor-ceiling, or wall assembly, one or more penetrating items passing through the breaches in both sides of the assembly and the materials or devices, or both, installed to resist the spread of fire through the assembly for a prescribed period of time.

**[BS] TIE, WALL.** Metal connector that connects wythes of masonry walls together.

**[BS] TIE-DOWN (HOLD-DOWN).** A device used to resist uplift of the chords of shear walls.

**[BS] TILE, STRUCTURAL CLAY.** A hollow masonry unit composed of burned clay, shale, fire clay or mixture thereof, and having parallel cells.

**[F] TIRES, BULK STORAGE OF.** Storage of tires where the area available for storage exceeds 20,000 cubic feet (566 m<sup>3</sup>).

**TODDLER.** Any child between 18 months and 36 months of age.

**TORQUE-CONTROLLED POST-INSTALLED ANCHOR. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** A post-installed anchor that is set by the expansion of one or more sleeves or other elements against the sides of the drilled hole through the application of torque, which pulls the cone(s) into the expansion sleeve(s); after setting, tensile loading can cause additional expansion (follow-up expansion).

**[A] TOWNHOUSE.** A single-family dwelling unit constructed in a group of three or more attached units in which each unit extends from the foundation to roof and with open space on at least two sides.

**[F] TOXIC.** A chemical falling within any of the following categories:

1. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD<sub>50</sub>) of more than 50 milligrams per kilogram, but not more than 500 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered orally to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.
2. A chemical that has a median lethal dose (LD<sub>50</sub>) of more than 200 milligrams per kilogram, but not more than 1,000 milligrams per kilogram of body weight when administered by continuous contact for 24 hours (or less if death occurs within 24 hours) with the bare skin of albino rabbits weighing between 2 and 3 kilograms each.
3. A chemical that has a median lethal concentration (LC<sub>50</sub>) in air of more than 200 parts per million, but not more than 2,000 parts per million by volume of gas or

## DEFINITIONS

vapor, or more than 2 milligrams per liter but not more than 20 milligrams per liter of mist, fume or dust, when administered by continuous inhalation for 1 hour (or less if death occurs within 1 hour) to albino rats weighing between 200 and 300 grams each.

**TRANSFER DEVICE. [DSA-AC]** Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility aid to and from an amusement ride seat.

**[BG] TRANSIENT.** Occupancy of a dwelling unit or sleeping unit for not more than 30 days.

**[BG] TRANSIENT AIRCRAFT.** Aircraft based at another location and that is at the transient location for not more than 90 days.

**TRANSIENT LODGING.** A building or facility containing one or more guest room(s) for sleeping that provides accommodations that are primarily short-term in nature (generally 30 days or less). Transient lodging does not include residential dwelling units intended to be used as a residence, inpatient medical care facilities, licensed long-term care facilities, detention or correctional facilities, or private buildings or facilities that contain no more than five rooms for rent or hire and that are actually occupied by the proprietor as the residence of such proprietor.

**[DSA-AC]** See also the definition of Place of Public Accommodation.

**TRANSIT BOARDING PLATFORM. [DSA-AC]** A horizontal, generally level surface, whether raised above, recessed below or level with a transit rail, from which persons embark/disembark a fixed rail vehicle.

**TRANSITION PLATE. [DSA-AC]** A sloping pedestrian walking surface located at the end(s) of a gangway.

**TREATED WOOD.** See "Fire-retardant-treated wood" and "Preservative-treated wood."

**TREAD.** The horizontal part of a step.

**TREATMENT OF WATER.** The process of conditioning and disinfection of pool water by means of a combination of filtration and the addition of chemicals to the water.

**[BF] TRIM.** Picture molds, chair rails, baseboards, handrails, door and window frames and similar decorative or protective materials used in fixed applications.

**[F] TROUBLE SIGNAL.** A signal initiated by the fire alarm system or device indicative of a fault in a monitored circuit or component.

**TTY.** An abbreviation for teletypewriter. Machinery that employs interactive text-based communication through the transmission of coded signals across the telephone network. TTYS may include, for example, devices known as TDDs (telecommunication display devices or telecommunication devices for deaf persons) or computers with special modems. TTYS are also called text telephones.

**[BS] TSUNAMI DESIGN GEODATABASE.** The ASCE database (version 2016-1.0) of Tsunami Design Zone maps and associated design data for the states of Alaska, California, Hawaii, Oregon and Washington.

**[BS] TSUNAMI DESIGN ZONE.** An area identified on the *Tsunami Design Zone* map between the shoreline and the inundation limit, within which certain structures designated in Chapter 16 are designed for or protected from inundation.

**[BS] TUBULAR DAYLIGHTING DEVICE (TDD).** A non-operable fenestration unit primarily designed to transmit daylight from a roof surface to an interior ceiling via a tubular conduit. The basic unit consists of an exterior glazed weathering surface, a light-transmitting tube with a reflective interior surface, and an interior-sealing device such as a translucent ceiling panel. The unit can be factory assembled, or field-assembled from a manufactured kit.

**TURNOVER TIME.** The period of time, in hours, required to circulate a volume of water equal to the pool capacity.

**[BE] TYPE A UNIT.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with this code and the provisions for Type A units in ICC A117.1.

**[BE] TYPE B UNIT.** A dwelling unit or sleeping unit designed and constructed for accessibility in accordance with this code and the provisions for Type B units in ICC A117.1, consistent with the design and construction requirements of the federal Fair Housing Act.

**[F] UMBRELLA STRUCTURE.** A structure, enclosure or shelter with or without sidewalls or drops, constructed of fabric or pliable material supported by a central pole or poles (see "Tent").

**[BS] UNDERLAYMENT.** One or more layers of a material that is applied to a steep-slope roof covering deck under the roof covering and resists liquid water that penetrates the roof covering.

**UNIFORMITY COEFFICIENT.** The ratio of theoretical size of a sieve that will pass 60 percent of the sand to the theoretical size of sieve that will pass 10 percent.

**[BS] UNDERPINNING.** The alteration of an existing foundation to transfer loads to a lower elevation using new piers, piles or other permanent structural support elements installed below the existing foundation.

**UNIT SKYLIGHT.** See "Skylight, unit."

**UNREASONABLE HARSHIP.** When the enforcing agency finds that compliance with the building standard would make the specific work of the project affected by the building standard infeasible, based on an overall evaluation of the following factors:

1. The cost of providing access.
2. The cost of all construction contemplated.
3. The impact of proposed improvements on financial feasibility of the project.
4. The nature of the accessibility which would be gained or lost.
5. The nature of the use of the facility under construction and its availability to persons with disabilities.

The details of any finding of unreasonable hardship shall be recorded and entered in the files of the enforcing agency.

## DEFINITIONS

**[F] UNSTABLE (REACTIVE) MATERIAL.** A material, other than an explosive, which in the pure state or as commercially produced, will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense or become self-reactive and undergo other violent chemical changes, including explosion, when exposed to heat, friction or shock, or in the absence of an inhibitor, or in the presence of contaminants, or in contact with incompatible materials. Unstable (reactive) materials are subdivided as follows:

**Class 1.** Materials that in themselves are normally stable but which can become unstable at elevated temperatures and pressure.

**Class 2.** Materials that in themselves are normally unstable and readily undergo violent chemical change but do not detonate. This class includes materials that can undergo chemical change with rapid release of energy at normal temperatures and pressures, and that can undergo violent chemical change at elevated temperatures and pressures.

**Class 3.** Materials that in themselves are capable of detonation or of explosive decomposition or explosive reaction but which require a strong initiating source or which must be heated under confinement before initiation. This class includes materials that are sensitive to thermal or mechanical shock at elevated temperatures and pressures.

**Class 4.** Materials that in themselves are readily capable of detonation or explosive decomposition or explosive reaction at normal temperatures and pressures. This class includes materials that are sensitive to mechanical or localized thermal shock at normal temperatures and pressures.

**[F] USE (MATERIAL).** Placing a material into action, including solids, liquids and gases.

**USE ZONE.** *[DSA-AC]* The ground level area beneath and immediately adjacent to a play structure or play equipment that is designated by ASTM F1487 for unrestricted circulation around the play equipment and where it is predicted that a user would land when falling from or exiting the play equipment.

**VALUATION THRESHOLD.** *[DSA-AC]* An annually adjusted, dollar-amount figure used in part to determine the extent of required path of travel upgrades. The baseline valuation threshold of \$50,000 is based on the January 1981, "ENR US20 Cities" Average Construction Cost Index (CCI) of 3372.02 as published in Engineering News Record, McGraw Hill Publishing Company. The current valuation threshold is determined by multiplying the baseline valuation threshold by a ratio of the current year's January CCI to the baseline January 1981 CCI.

**[BG] VAPOR DIFFUSION PORT.** An assembly constructed or installed within a roof assembly at an opening in the roof deck to convey water vapor from an unvented attic to the outside atmosphere.

**[BF] VAPOR PERMEABLE.** The property of having a moisture vapor permeance rating of 5 perms ( $2.9 \times 10^{-10} \text{ kg/Pa} \times \text{s} \times \text{m}^2$ ) or greater, when tested in accordance with Procedure A or Procedure B of ASTM E96. A vapor permeable material permits the passage of moisture vapor.

**[BF] VAPOR RETARDER CLASS.** A measure of a material or assembly's ability to limit the amount of moisture that passes through that material or assembly. Vapor retarder class shall be defined using the desiccant method with Procedure A of ASTM E96 as follows:

**Class I:** 0.1 perm or less.

**Class II:**  $0.1 < \text{perm} \leq 1.0$  perm.

**Class III:**  $1.0 < \text{perm} \leq 10$  perm.

**VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGNS (VMS).** *[DSA-AC]* Electronic signs that have a message with the capacity to change by means of scrolling, streaming or paging across a background.

**VARIABLE MESSAGE SIGN (VMS) CHARACTERS.** *[DSA-AC]* Characters of an electronic sign are composed of pixels in an array. High resolution VMS characters have vertical pixel counts of 16 rows or greater. Low resolution VMS characters have vertical pixel counts of 7 to 15 rows.

**[BS] VEGETATIVE ROOF.** An assembly of interacting components designed to waterproof a building's top surface that includes, by design, vegetation and related landscape elements.

**[BS] VEHICLE BARRIER.** A component or a system of components, near open sides or walls of garage floors or ramps that act as a restraint for vehicles.

**[BG] VEHICULAR GATE.** A gate that is intended for use at a vehicular entrance or exit to a facility, building or portion thereof, and that is not intended for use by pedestrian traffic.

**VEHICULAR OR PEDESTRIAN ARRIVAL POINTS.** *[HCD 1-AC]* Public or resident parking areas, public transportation stops, passenger loading zones, and public streets or sidewalks.

**VEHICULAR WAY.** A route provided for vehicular traffic, such as in a street, driveway or parking facility.

**[BF] VENEER.** A facing attached to a wall for the purpose of providing ornamentation, protection or insulation, but not counted as adding strength to the wall.

**[M] VENTILATION.** The natural or mechanical process of supplying conditioned or unconditioned air to, or removing such air from, any space.

**[BF] VINYL SIDING.** A shaped material, made principally from rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), that is used as an exterior wall covering.

**[F] VISIBLE ALARM NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE.** A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of sight.

**WAITING ROOM.** *[SFM]* Waiting room is a room or area normally provided with seating and used for persons waiting.

**WALK.** *[DSA-AC]* An exterior prepared surface for pedestrian use, including pedestrian areas such as plazas and courts. (As differentiated from the definition of "Sidewalk.") *[HCD 1-AC]* A surfaced pedestrian way not located contiguous to a street used by the public. (See also "Sidewalk.")

**[BG] WALKWAY, PEDESTRIAN.** A walkway used exclusively as a pedestrian trafficway.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BS] WALL.** This definition applies only to Chapter 21.

A vertical element with a horizontal length-to-thickness ratio greater than three, used to enclose space.

**Cavity wall.** A wall built of masonry units or of concrete, or a combination of these materials, arranged to provide an airspace within the wall, and in which the inner and outer parts of the wall are tied together with metal ties.

**Dry-stacked, surface-bonded wall.** A wall built of concrete masonry units where the units are stacked dry, without mortar on the bed or head joints, and where both sides of the wall are coated with a surface-bonding mortar.

**Parapet wall.** The part of any wall entirely above the roof line.

**[BS] WALL, LOAD-BEARING.** Any wall meeting either of the following classifications:

1. Any metal or wood stud wall that supports more than 100 pounds per linear foot (1459 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.
2. Any masonry, concrete or mass timber wall that supports more than 200 pounds per linear foot (2919 N/m) of vertical load in addition to its own weight.

**[BS] WALL, NONLOAD-BEARING.** Any wall that is not a load-bearing wall.

**WATERLINE.** Shall be defined as one of the following:

1. *Skimmer systems.* The waterline shall be the midpoint of the operating range of the skimmers.
2. *Overflow system.* The waterline shall be the top edge of the overflow rim.

**[F] WATER-REACTIVE MATERIAL.** A material that explodes; violently reacts; produces flammable, toxic or other hazardous gases; or evolves enough heat to cause autoignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture. Water-reactive materials are subdivided as follows:

**Class 3.** Materials that react explosively with water without requiring heat or confinement.

**Class 2.** Materials that react violently with water or have the ability to boil water. Materials that produce flammable, toxic or other hazardous gases or evolve enough heat to cause autoignition or ignition of combustibles upon exposure to water or moisture.

**Class 1.** Materials that react with water with some release of energy, but not violently.

**[BF] WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER.** A material behind an exterior wall covering that is intended to resist liquid water that has penetrated behind the exterior covering from further intruding into the exterior wall assembly.

**[BF] WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES.** Surfaces of walls, ceilings, floors, roofs, soffits and similar surfaces exposed to the weather except the following:

1. Ceilings and roof soffits enclosed by walls, fascia, bulkheads or beams that extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below such ceiling or roof soffits.

2. Walls or portions of walls beneath an unenclosed roof area, where located a horizontal distance from an open exterior opening equal to not less than twice the height of the opening.

3. Ceiling and roof soffits located a minimum horizontal distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the outer edges of the ceiling or roof soffits.

**WET BAR. [DSA-AC]** An area or space with a counter equipped with a sink and running water but without cooking facilities.

**[F] WET-CHEMICAL EXTINGUISHING SYSTEM.** A solution of water and potassium-carbonate-based chemical, potassium-acetate-based chemical or a combination thereof, forming an extinguishing agent.

**WHEELCHAIR.** A chair mounted on wheels to be propelled by its occupant manually or with the aid of electric power, of a size and configuration conforming to the recognized standard models of the trade.

**[BE] WHEELCHAIR SPACE.** A space for a single wheelchair and its occupant.

**WILDFIRE. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**WILDFIRE EXPOSURE. [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**WILDLAND-URBAN INTERFACE FIRE AREA (WUI). [SFM]** (See Chapter 7A, Section 702A for defined term.)

**[BS] WIND SPEED, V.** Basic design wind speeds.

**[BS] WIND SPEED,  $V_{asd}$ .** Allowable stress design wind speeds.

**[BS] WINDBORNE DEBRIS REGION.** Areas within hurricane-prone regions located:

1. Within 1 mile (1.61 km) of the mean high-water line where an Exposure D condition exists upwind at the waterline and the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , is 130 mph (58 m/s) or greater; or
2. In areas where the basic design wind speed is 140 mph (63 m/s) or greater.

For Risk Category II buildings and structures and Risk Category III buildings and structures, except health care facilities, the windborne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3.(1). For Risk Category IV buildings and structures and Risk Category III health care facilities, the windborne debris region shall be based on Figure 1609.3(2).

**[BE] WINDER.** A tread with nonparallel edges.

**WINERY CAVES.** See Section 446.

**WINDFORCE-RESISTING SYSTEM, MAIN.** See “Main windforce-resisting system.”

**[BS] WIRE BACKING.** Horizontal strands of tautened wire attached to surfaces of vertical supports which, when covered with the building paper, provide a backing for cement plaster.

**[F] WIRELESS PROTECTION SYSTEM.** A system or a part of a system that can transmit and receive signals without the aid of wire.

## DEFINITIONS

**[BS] WOOD SHEAR PANEL.** A wood floor, roof or wall component sheathed to act as a shear wall or diaphragm.

**[BS] WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL.** A panel manufactured from veneers, wood strands or wafers or a combination of veneer and wood strands or wafers bonded together with waterproof synthetic resins or other suitable bonding systems. Examples of wood structural panels are:

**Composite panels.** A wood structural panel that is comprised of wood veneer and reconstituted wood-based material and bonded together with waterproof adhesive.

**Oriented strand board (OSB).** A mat-formed wood structural panel comprised of thin rectangular wood strands arranged in cross-aligned layers with surface layers normally arranged in the long panel direction and bonded with waterproof adhesive.

**Plywood.** A wood structural panel comprised of plies of wood veneer arranged in cross-aligned layers. The plies are bonded with waterproof adhesive that cures on application of heat and pressure.

**[BS] WOOD/PLASTIC COMPOSITE.** A composite material made primarily from wood or cellulose-based materials and plastic.

**WORK AREA EQUIPMENT.** *[DSA-AC]* Any machine, instrument, engine, motor, pump, conveyor or other apparatus used to perform work. As used in this document, this term shall apply only to equipment that is permanently installed or built-in in employee work areas. Work area equipment does not include passenger elevators and other accessible means of vertical transportation.

**[F] WORKSTATION.** A defined space or an independent principal piece of equipment using HPM within a fabrication area where a specific function, laboratory procedure or research activity occurs. Approved or listed hazardous materials storage cabinets, flammable liquid storage cabinets or gas cabinets serving a workstation are included as part of the workstation. A workstation is allowed to contain ventilation equipment, fire protection devices, detection devices, electrical devices and other processing and scientific equipment.

*[DSA-AC]* An area defined by equipment and/or work surfaces intended for use by employees only, and generally for one or a small number of employees at a time. Examples include ticket booths; the employee side of grocery store check stands; the bartender area behind a bar; the employee side of snack bars, sales counters and public counters; guardhouses; toll booths; kiosk vending stands; lifeguard stations; maintenance equipment closets; counter and equipment areas in restaurant kitchens; file rooms; storage areas; etc.

**[BS] WYTHE.** Each continuous, vertical section of a wall, one masonry unit in thickness.

**[BG] YARD.** An open space, other than a court, unobstructed from the ground to the sky, except where specifically provided by this code, on the lot on which a building is situated.

**[F] ZONE.** A defined area within the protected premises. A zone can define an area from which a signal can be received, an area to which a signal can be sent or an area in which a form of control can be executed.

**[F] ZONE, NOTIFICATION.** An area within a building or facility covered by notification appliances which are activated simultaneously.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 3 – OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X		X	X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																					X		
Chapter / Section																							
302.1				X	X	X																	
302.1.3																						X	
303.1				X																			
303.2				X																			
303.7				X																			
303.8				X																			
304.1				X																			
305.1				X																			
305.2				X																			
305.2.1				X																			
306.2				X																			
Table 307.1(1)				X																			
Table 307.1(2)				X																			
307.1.1				X																			
308.1				X																			
308.3				X	†	†																	
308.3.3				X																			
308.4				X																			
308.4.6				X																			
308.4.7				X																			
308.4.8				X																			
308.4.9				X																			
308.5				X																			
308.5.2				X																			
308.5.3				X																			
308.5.4				X																			
310.1				X																			
310.2				X	X																		
310.3				X	X																		
310.3.1				X																			
310.3.2				X																			
310.4				X	X																		
310.4.1				X																			
310.5				X																			
310.6				X																			
313				X																			
314				X																			

&lt;

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



# CHAPTER 3

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 3 provides the criteria by which buildings and structures are classified into use groups and occupancies. Through the balance of the code, occupancy classification is fundamental in the setting of features of construction; occupant safety requirements, especially building limitations; means of egress; fire protection systems; and interior finishes.

### SECTION 301 SCOPE

**301.1 General.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the classification of all buildings and structures as to occupancy and use. Different classifications of occupancy and use represent varying levels of hazard and risk to building occupants and adjacent properties.

### SECTION 302 OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE DESIGNATION

**302.1 Occupancy classification.** Occupancy classification is the formal designation of the primary purpose of the building, structure or portion thereof. Structures shall be classified into one or more of the occupancy groups specified in this section based on the nature of the hazards and risks to building occupants generally associated with the intended purpose of the building or structure. An area, room or space that is intended to be occupied at different times for different purposes shall comply with all applicable requirements associated with such potential multipurpose. Structures containing multiple occupancy groups shall comply with Section 508. Where a structure is proposed for a purpose that is not specified in this section, such structure shall be classified in the occupancy it most nearly resembles based on the fire safety and relative hazard. Occupied roofs shall be classified in the group that the occupancy most nearly resembles, according to the fire safety and relative hazard, and shall comply with Section 503.1.4.

1. Assembly (see Section 303): Groups A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4 and A-5.
2. Business (see Section 304): Group B.
3. *[SFM] Organized Camps (see Section 450): Group C.*
4. Educational (see Section 305): Group E.
5. Factory and Industrial (see Section 306): Groups F-1 and F-2.
6. High Hazard (see Section 307): Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5.
7. Institutional (see Section 308): Groups I-2, I-2.1, I-3 and I-4.
8. *[SFM] Laboratory (see Section 202): Group B, unless classified as Group L (see Section 453) or Group H (see Section 307).*
9. *[SFM] Laboratory Suites (see Section 453): Group L.*

10. Mercantile (see Section 309): Group M.
11. Residential (see Section 310): Groups R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4.
12. Storage (see Section 311): Groups S-1 and S-2.
13. Utility and Miscellaneous (see Section 312): Group U.
14. *[SFM] Existing buildings housing existing protective social care homes or facilities established prior to 1972 (see California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code).*

#### 302.1.1 Reserved

#### 302.1.2 Reserved

**302.1.3 Pharmacies; veterinary facilities; bartering, cosmetology or electrolysis establishments; and acupuncture offices.** See Chapter 12.

**302.2 Use designation.** Occupancy groups contain subordinate uses having similar hazards and risks to building occupants. Uses include, but are not limited to, those functional designations specified within the occupancy group descriptions in Section 302.1. Certain uses require specific limitations and controls in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 4 and elsewhere in this code.

### SECTION 303 ASSEMBLY GROUP A

**303.1 Assembly Group A.** Assembly Group A occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for the gathering of persons for purposes such as civic, social or religious functions; recreation, food or drink consumption or awaiting transportation; motion picture and television production studio sound stages, approved production facilities and production locations; or for the showing of motion pictures when an admission fee is charged and when such building or structure is open to the public and has a capacity of 10 or more persons.

**303.1.1 Small buildings and tenant spaces.** A building or tenant space used for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 50 persons shall be classified as a Group B occupancy.

**303.1.2 Small assembly spaces.** The following rooms and spaces shall not be classified as Assembly occupancies:

1. A room or space used for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 50 persons and accessory

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.

2. A room or space used for assembly purposes that is less than 750 square feet ( $70\text{ m}^2$ ) in area and accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as a Group B occupancy or as part of that occupancy.

**303.1.3 Associated with Group E occupancies.** A room or space used for assembly purposes that is associated with a Group E occupancy is not considered a separate occupancy.

**303.1.4 Accessory to places of religious worship.** Accessory religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums with occupant loads of less than 100 per room or space are not considered separate occupancies.

**303.1.5 Special amusement areas.** Special amusement areas shall comply with Section 411.

**303.2 Assembly Group A-1.** Group A-1 occupancy includes assembly uses, usually with fixed seating, intended for the production and viewing of the performing arts or motion pictures including, but not limited to:

*Motion picture and television production studio sound stages, approved production facilities and production locations. (with live audiences).*

Motion picture theaters

Symphony and concert halls

Television and radio studios admitting an audience

Theaters

**303.3 Assembly Group A-2.** Group A-2 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for food and/or drink consumption including, but not limited to:

Banquet halls

Casinos (gaming areas)

Nightclubs

Restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities (including associated commercial kitchens)

Taverns and bars

**303.4 Assembly Group A-3.** Group A-3 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for worship, recreation or amusement and other assembly uses not classified elsewhere in Group A including, but not limited to:

Amusement arcades

Art galleries

Bowling alleys

Community halls

Courtrooms

Dance halls (not including food or drink consumption)

Exhibition halls

Funeral parlors

Greenhouses for the conservation and exhibition of plants that provide public access

Gymnasiums (without spectator seating)

Indoor swimming pools (without spectator seating)

Indoor tennis courts (without spectator seating)

Lecture halls

Libraries

Museums

Places of religious worship

Pool and billiard parlors

Waiting areas in transportation terminals

**303.5 Assembly Group A-4.** Group A-4 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for viewing of indoor sporting events and activities with spectator seating including, but not limited to:

Arenas

Skating rinks

Swimming pools

Tennis courts

**303.6 Assembly Group A-5.** Group A-5 occupancy includes assembly uses intended for participation in or viewing outdoor activities including, but not limited to:

Amusement park structures

Bleachers

Grandstands

Stadiums

**303.7 Fixed guideway transit systems. [SFM]** Fixed guideway transit system buildings shall conform to the requirements of this code for their occupancy classification in addition to the provisions set forth in Section 443.

**303.8 Subterranean spaces for winery facilities in natural or manmade caves. [SFM]** For fire and life safety requirements, see Section 446.

## SECTION 304 BUSINESS GROUP B

**304.1 Business Group B.** Business Group B occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for office, professional or service-type transactions, including storage of records and accounts. Business occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Airport traffic control towers

Ambulatory care facilities serving six or fewer patients (see Section 308.3.3, Institutional Group I-2.1 for facilities serving more than five patients)

Animal hospitals, kennels and pounds

Banks

Barber and beauty shops

Car wash

Civic administration

Clinic, outpatient [SFM] (not classified as Group I-2.1)

Dry cleaning and laundries: pick-up and delivery stations and self-service

Educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade <

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

Electronic data processing  
 Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar dining facilities not more than 2,500 square feet ( $232\text{ m}^2$ ) in area  
 Laboratories: testing and research and *[SFM] instruction*  
 Motor vehicle showrooms  
 Post offices  
 Print shops  
 Professional services (architects, attorneys, dentists, physicians, engineers, etc.)  
 Radio and television stations  
 Telephone exchanges  
 Training and skill development not in a school or academic program (this shall include, but not be limited to, tutoring centers, martial arts studios, gymnastics and similar uses regardless of the ages served, and where not classified as a Group A occupancy)

**304.2 Airport traffic control towers.** Airport traffic control towers shall comply with Section 412.2.

**304.3 Ambulatory care facilities.** Ambulatory care facilities shall comply with Section 422.

## SECTION 305 EDUCATIONAL GROUP E

**305.1 Educational Group E.** Educational Group E occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, more than six persons at any one time for educational purposes through the 12th grade.

*Exception: [SFM] A residence used as a home school for the children who normally reside at the residence. Such residences shall remain classified as Group R-2, or Group R-3 occupancies.*

**305.1.1 Accessory to places of religious worship.** Religious educational rooms and religious auditoriums, which are accessory to places of religious worship in accordance with Section 303.1.4 and have occupant loads of less than 100 per room or space, shall be classified as Group A-3 occupancies.

**305.2 Group E, child-care facilities.** This group includes buildings and structures or portions thereof occupied by more than six children 36 months of age and older who receive educational, supervision or personal care services for fewer than 24 hours per day.

*Exception: [SFM] A child-care facility not otherwise classified a Group R-3 occupancy, where occupants are not capable of responding to an emergency situation without physical assistance from the staff shall be classified as Group I-4. A maximum of five infants and toddlers are allowed in a Group E child care.*

**305.2.1 Within places of religious worship.** Rooms and spaces within places of religious worship providing such day care during religious functions shall be classified as

part of the primary occupancy where not licensed for child-care purposes by the Department of Social Services. ||

**305.2.2 Five or fewer children.** A facility having five or fewer children receiving such day care shall be classified as part of the primary occupancy.

**305.2.3 Five or fewer children in a dwelling unit.** A facility such as the above within a dwelling unit and having five or fewer children receiving such day care shall be classified as a Group R-3 occupancy or shall comply with the *California Residential Code*.

**305.3 Storm shelters in Group E occupancies.** Storm shelters shall be provided for Group E occupancies where required by Section 423.5. ||

## SECTION 306 FACTORY GROUP F

**306.1 Factory Industrial Group F.** Factory Industrial Group F occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for assembling, disassembling, fabricating, finishing, manufacturing, packaging, repair or processing operations that are not classified as a Group H hazardous or Group S storage occupancy.

**306.2 Moderate-hazard factory industrial, Group F-1.** Factory industrial uses that are not classified as Factory Industrial F-2 Low Hazard shall be classified as F-1 Moderate Hazard and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Aircraft (manufacturing, not to include repair)
- Appliances
- Athletic equipment
- Automobiles and other motor vehicles
- Bakeries
- Beverages: over 16-percent alcohol content
- Bicycles
- Boats
- Brooms or brushes
- Business machines
- Cameras and photo equipment
- Canvas or similar fabric
- Carpets and rugs (includes cleaning)
- Clothing
- Construction and agricultural machinery
- Disinfectants
- Dry cleaning and dyeing
- Electric generation plants
- Electronics
- Energy storage systems (ESS) in dedicated use buildings
- Engines (including rebuilding)
- Food processing establishments and commercial kitchens not associated with restaurants, cafeterias and similar

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

dining facilities more than 2,500 square feet ( $232\text{ m}^2$ ) in area

- Furniture
- Hemp products
- Jute products
- Laundries
- Leather products
- Machinery
- Metals
- Millwork (sash and door)

**[SFM] Motion picture and television production studio Sound Stages, Approved Production Facilities and production locations (without live audiences)**

- Motion pictures and television filming (without spectators)
- Musical instruments
- Optical goods
- Paper mills or products
- Photographic film
- Plastic products
- Printing or publishing
- Recreational vehicles
- Refuse incineration
- Shoes
- Soaps and detergents
- Textiles
- Tobacco
- Trailers
- Upholstering
- Water/sewer treatment facilities
- Wood; distillation
- Woodworking (cabinet)

**306.2.1 Aircraft manufacturing facilities.** Aircraft manufacturing facilities shall comply with Section 412.6.

**306.3 Low-hazard factory industrial, Group F-2.** Factory industrial uses that involve the fabrication or manufacturing of noncombustible materials that during finishing, packing or processing do not involve a significant fire hazard shall be classified as F-2 occupancies and shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Beverages: up to and including 16-percent alcohol content
- Brick and masonry
- Ceramic products
- Foundries
- Glass products
- Gypsum
- Ice
- Metal products (fabrication and assembly)

## SECTION 307 HIGH-HAZARD GROUP H

**[F] 307.1 High-hazard Group H.** High-hazard Group H occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, that involves the manufacturing, processing, generation or storage of materials that constitute a physical or health hazard in quantities in excess of those allowed in control areas complying with Section 414, based on the maximum allowable quantity limits for control areas set forth in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). Hazardous occupancies are classified in Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and shall be in accordance with this section, the requirements of Section 415 and the *California Fire Code*. Hazardous materials stored, or used on top of roofs or canopies, shall be classified as outdoor storage or use and shall comply with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 307.1.1 Uses other than Group H.** An occupancy that stores, uses or handles hazardous materials as described in one or more of the following items shall not be classified as Group H, but shall be classified as the occupancy that it most nearly resembles.

1. Buildings and structures occupied for the application of flammable finishes, provided that such buildings or areas conform to the requirements of Section 416 and the *California Fire Code*.
2. Wholesale and retail sales and storage of flammable and combustible liquids in mercantile occupancies conforming to the *California Fire Code*.
3. Closed piping system containing flammable or combustible liquids or gases utilized for the operation of machinery or equipment.
4. Cleaning establishments that utilize combustible liquid solvents having a flash point of  $140^\circ\text{F}$  ( $60^\circ\text{C}$ ) or higher in closed systems employing equipment listed by an approved testing agency, provided that this occupancy is separated from all other areas of the building by 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.
5. Cleaning establishments that utilize a liquid solvent having a flash point at or above  $200^\circ\text{F}$  ( $93^\circ\text{C}$ ).
6. Liquor stores and distributors without bulk storage.
7. Refrigeration systems.
8. The storage or utilization of materials for agricultural purposes on the premises.
9. Stationary storage battery systems installed in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.
10. Corrosive personal or household products in their original packaging used in retail display.
11. Commonly used corrosive building materials.
12. Buildings and structures occupied for aerosol product storage, aerosol cooking spray products or plastic aerosol 3 products shall be classified as Group S-

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

- 1, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of the *California Fire Code*.
13. Display and storage of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area in Group M or S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5.
14. The storage of black powder, smokeless propellant and small arms primers in Groups M and R-3 and special industrial explosive devices in Groups B, F, M and S, provided such storage conforms to the quantity limits and requirements prescribed in the *California Fire Code*.
15. Stationary fuel cell power systems installed in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.
16. Capacitor energy storage systems in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.
17. *[SFM] Group L occupancies defined in Section 453.*
18. Distilling or brewing of beverages conforming to the requirements of the *California Fire Code*.
19. The storage of beer, distilled spirits and wines in barrels and casks conforming to the requirements of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 307.2 Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials in any quantity shall conform to the requirements of this code, including Section 414, and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 307.3 High-hazard Group H-1.** Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a detonation hazard shall be classified as Group H-1. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Detonable pyrophoric materials

Explosives:

- Division 1.1
- Division 1.2
- Division 1.3
- Division 1.4
- Division 1.5
- Division 1.6

Organic peroxides, unclassified detonable

Oxidizers, Class 4

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3 detonable and Class 4

**[F] 307.3.1 Occupancies containing explosives not classified as H-1.** The following occupancies containing explosive materials shall be classified as follows:

1. Division 1.3 explosive materials that are used and maintained in a form where either confinement or configuration will not elevate the hazard from a mass fire to mass explosion hazard shall be allowed in H-2 occupancies.
2. Articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as a Division 1.4 explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and

Explosives regulations, or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles shall be allowed in H-3 occupancies.

**[F] 307.4 High-hazard Group H-2.** Buildings and structures containing materials that pose a deflagration hazard or a hazard from accelerated burning shall be classified as Group H-2. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa).

Combustible dusts where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

Cryogenic fluids, flammable.

Flammable gases.

Organic peroxides, Class I.

Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally open containers or systems, or in closed containers or systems pressurized at more than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa).

Pyrophoric liquids, solids and gases, nondetonable.

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 3, nondetonable.

Water-reactive materials, Class 3.

**[F] 307.5 High-hazard Group H-3.** Buildings and structures containing materials that readily support combustion or that pose a physical hazard shall be classified as Group H-3. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Class I, II or IIIA flammable or combustible liquids that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103.4 kPa) or less

Combustible fibers, other than densely packed baled cotton, where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3

Consumer fireworks, 1.4G (Class C, Common)

Cryogenic fluids, oxidizing

Flammable solids

Organic peroxides, Class II and III

Oxidizers, Class 2

Oxidizers, Class 3, that are used or stored in normally closed containers or systems pressurized at 15 pounds per square inch gauge (103 kPa) or less

Oxidizing gases

Unstable (reactive) materials, Class 2

Water-reactive materials, Class 2

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

TABLE 307.1(1)

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A PHYSICAL HAZARD<sup>a, j, m, n, p</sup>

MATERIAL	CLASS	GROUP WHEN THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY IS EXCEEDED	STORAGE <sup>b</sup>			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>	
			Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas (cubic feet at NTP)	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas (cubic feet at NTP)	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)
Combustible dust	NA	H-2	See Note q	NA	NA	See Note q	NA	NA	See Note q	NA
Combustible fiber <sup>d</sup>	Loose	H-3	(100)	NA	NA	(100)	NA	NA	(20)	NA
	Baled <sup>o</sup>		(1,000)			(1,000)			(200)	
Combustible liquid <sup>c,i</sup>	II	H-2 or H-3	NA	120 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA	120 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	30 <sup>d</sup>
	IIIA	H-2 or H-3		330 <sup>d,e</sup>			330 <sup>d</sup>			80 <sup>d</sup>
	IIIB	NA		13,200 <sup>e,f</sup>			13,200 <sup>f</sup>			3,300 <sup>f</sup>
Cryogenic flammable	NA	H-2	NA	45 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	45 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	10 <sup>d</sup>
Cryogenic inert	NA	NA	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA
Cryogenic oxidizing	NA	H-3	NA	45 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	45 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	10 <sup>d</sup>
Explosives	Division 1.1	H-1	1 <sup>e,g</sup>	(1) <sup>e,g</sup>	NA	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>	NA	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>
	Division 1.2	H-1	1 <sup>e,g</sup>	(1) <sup>e,g</sup>		0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>		0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>
	Division 1.3	H-1 or H-2	10 <sup>e,g</sup>	(10) <sup>e,g</sup>		1 <sup>g</sup>	(1) <sup>g</sup>		1 <sup>g</sup>	(1) <sup>g</sup>
	Division 1.4	H-3	50 <sup>e,g</sup>	(50) <sup>e,g</sup>		50 <sup>g</sup>	(50) <sup>g</sup>		NA	NA
	Division 1.4G	H-3	125 <sup>e,l</sup>	NA		NA	NA		NA	NA
	Division 1.5	H-1	1 <sup>e,g</sup>	(1) <sup>e,g</sup>		0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>		0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>
	Division 1.6	H-1	1 <sup>e,g</sup>	NA		NA	NA		NA	NA
Flammable gas	Gaseous	H-2	NA	NA	1,000 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA	1,000 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA
	Liquefied			(150) <sup>d,e</sup>	NA		(150) <sup>d,e</sup>	NA		
Flammable liquid <sup>c</sup>	IA	H-2 or H-3	NA	30 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA	30 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	10 <sup>d</sup>
	IB and IC			120 <sup>d,e</sup>			120 <sup>d</sup>			30 <sup>d</sup>
Flammable liquid, combination (IA, IB, IC)	NA	H-2 or H-3	NA	120 <sup>d,c,h</sup>	NA	NA	120 <sup>d,h</sup>	NA	NA	30 <sup>d,h</sup>
Flammable solid	NA	H-3	125 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA	125 <sup>d</sup>	NA	NA	25 <sup>d</sup>	NA
Inert gas	Gaseous	NA	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA
	Liquefied	NA	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA	NL	NA	NA
Organic peroxide	UD	H-1	1 <sup>e,g</sup>	(1) <sup>e,g</sup>	NA	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>	NA	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>
	I	H-2	5 <sup>d,e</sup>	(5) <sup>d,e</sup>		1 <sup>d</sup>	(1) <sup>d</sup>		1 <sup>d</sup>	(1) <sup>d</sup>
	II	H-3	50 <sup>d,e</sup>	(50) <sup>d,e</sup>		50 <sup>d</sup>	(50) <sup>d</sup>		10 <sup>d</sup>	(10) <sup>d</sup>
	III	H-3	125 <sup>d,e</sup>	(125) <sup>d,e</sup>		125 <sup>d</sup>	(125) <sup>d</sup>		25 <sup>d</sup>	(25) <sup>d</sup>
	IV	NA	NL	NL		NL	NL		NL	NL
	V	NA	NL	NL		NL	NL		NL	NL

(continued)

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

TABLE 307.1(1)—continued

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A PHYSICAL HAZARD<sup>a, j, m, n, p</sup>

MATERIAL	CLASS	GROUP WHEN THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY IS EXCEEDED	STORAGE <sup>b</sup>			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>	
			Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas (cubic feet at NTP)	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)	Gas (cubic feet at NTP)	Solid pounds (cubic feet)	Liquid gallons (pounds)
Oxidizer	4	H-1	1 <sup>g</sup>	(1) <sup>e, g</sup>	NA	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>	NA	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>
	3 <sup>k</sup>	H-2 or H-3	10 <sup>d, e</sup>	(10) <sup>d, e</sup>		2 <sup>d</sup>	(2) <sup>d</sup>		2 <sup>d</sup>	(2) <sup>d</sup>
	2	H-3	250 <sup>d, e</sup>	(250) <sup>d, e</sup>		250 <sup>d</sup>	(250) <sup>d</sup>		50 <sup>d</sup>	(50) <sup>d</sup>
	1	NA	4,000 <sup>e, f</sup>	(4,000) <sup>e, f</sup>		4,000 <sup>f</sup>	(4,000) <sup>f</sup>		1,000 <sup>f</sup>	(1,000) <sup>f</sup>
Oxidizing gas	Gaseous	H-3	NA	NA	1,500 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA	1,500 <sup>d,e</sup>	NA	NA
	Liquefied			(150) <sup>d, e</sup>	NA		(150) <sup>d,e</sup>	NA		
Pyrophoric	NA	H-2	4 <sup>e, g</sup>	(4) <sup>e, g</sup>	50 <sup>e, g</sup>	1 <sup>g</sup>	(1) <sup>g</sup>	10 <sup>e, g</sup>	0	0
Unstable (reactive)	4	H-1	1 <sup>e, g</sup>	(1) <sup>e, g</sup>	10 <sup>e, g</sup>	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>	2 <sup>e, g</sup>	0.25 <sup>g</sup>	(0.25) <sup>g</sup>
	3	H-1 or H-2	5 <sup>d, e</sup>	(5) <sup>d, e</sup>	50 <sup>d, e</sup>	1 <sup>d</sup>	(1) <sup>d</sup>	10 <sup>d, e</sup>	1 <sup>d</sup>	(1) <sup>d</sup>
	2	H-3	50 <sup>d, e</sup>	(50) <sup>d, e</sup>	750 <sup>d, e</sup>	50 <sup>d</sup>	(50) <sup>d</sup>	750 <sup>d, e</sup>	10 <sup>d</sup>	(10) <sup>d</sup>
	1	NA	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL	NL
Water reactive	3	H-2	5 <sup>d, e</sup>	(5) <sup>d, e</sup>	NA	5 <sup>d</sup>	(5) <sup>d</sup>	NA	1 <sup>d</sup>	(1) <sup>d</sup>
	2	H-3	50 <sup>d, e</sup>	(50) <sup>d, e</sup>		50 <sup>d</sup>	(50) <sup>d</sup>		10 <sup>d</sup>	(10) <sup>d</sup>
	1	NA	NL	NL		NL	NL		NL	NL

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m<sup>3</sup>, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

NL = Not Limited; NA = Not Applicable; UD = Unclassified Detonable.

a. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.

b. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity specified for storage.

c. The quantities of alcoholic beverages in retail and wholesale sales occupancies shall not be limited provided the liquids are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.

d. [SFM] *In other than Group L occupancies*, maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.

e. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent when stored in approved storage cabinets, day boxes, gas cabinets, gas rooms or exhausted enclosures or in listed safety cans in accordance with Section 5003.9.10 of the *California Fire Code*. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.

f. Quantities shall not be limited in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

g. Allowed only in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

h. Containing not more than the maximum allowable quantity per control area of Class IA, IB or IC flammable liquids.

i. The maximum allowable quantity shall not apply to fuel oil storage complying with Section 605.4.2 of the *California Fire Code*.

j. Quantities in parentheses indicate quantity units in parentheses at the head of each column.

k. A maximum quantity of 220 pounds of solid or 22 gallons of liquid Class 3 oxidizers is allowed when such materials are necessary for maintenance purposes, operation or sanitation of equipment when the storage containers and the manner of storage are approved.

l. Net weight of the pyrotechnic composition of the fireworks. Where the net weight of the pyrotechnic composition of the fireworks is not known, 25 percent of the gross weight of the fireworks, including packaging, shall be used.

m. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the *California Fire Code*.

n. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).

o. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.

p. The following shall not be included in determining the maximum allowable quantities:

1. Liquid or gaseous fuel in fuel tanks on vehicles.

2. Liquid or gaseous fuel in fuel tanks on motorized equipment operated in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

3. Gaseous fuels in piping systems and fixed appliances regulated by the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

4. Liquid fuels in piping systems and fixed appliances regulated by the *California Mechanical Code*.

5. Alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids in dispensers that are installed in accordance with Sections 5705.5 and 5705.5.1 of the *California Fire Code*. The location of the alcohol-based hand rub (ABHR) dispensers shall be provided in the construction documents.

q. Where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

[F] TABLE 307.1(2)

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS POSING A HEALTH HAZARD<sup>a, c, f, h, i</sup>

MATERIAL	STORAGE <sup>b</sup>			USE-CLOSED SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>			USE-OPEN SYSTEMS <sup>b</sup>	
	Solid pounds <sup>d, e</sup>	Liquid gallons (pounds) <sup>d, e</sup>	Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds) <sup>d</sup>	Solid pounds <sup>d</sup>	Liquid gallons (pounds) <sup>d</sup>	Gas cubic feet at NTP (pounds) <sup>d</sup>	Solid pounds <sup>d</sup>	Liquid gallons (pounds) <sup>d</sup>
Corrosives	5,000	500	Gaseous 810 <sup>e</sup>	5,000	500	Gaseous 810 <sup>e</sup>	1,000	100
			Liquefied (150)			Liquefied (150)		
Highly Toxic	10	(10)	Gaseous 20 <sup>g</sup>	10	(10)	Gaseous 20 <sup>g</sup>	3	(3)
			Liquefied (4) <sup>g</sup>			Liquefied (4) <sup>g</sup>		
Toxic	500	(500)	Gaseous 810 <sup>e</sup>	500	(500)	Gaseous 810 <sup>e</sup>	125	(125)
			Liquefied (150) <sup>e</sup>			Liquefied (150) <sup>e</sup>		

For SI: 1 cubic foot = 0.028 m<sup>3</sup>, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

- a. For use of control areas, see Section 414.2.
- b. The aggregate quantity in use and storage shall not exceed the quantity specified for storage.
- c. In retail and wholesale sales occupancies, the quantities of medicines, foodstuffs or consumer products, and cosmetics containing not more than 50 percent by volume of water-miscible liquids and with the remainder of the solutions not being flammable, shall not be limited, provided that such materials are packaged in individual containers not exceeding 1.3 gallons.
- d. [SFM] In other than Group L occupancies, maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note e also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- e. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent where stored in approved storage cabinets, gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the *California Fire Code*. Where Note d also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- f. For storage and display quantities in Group M and storage quantities in Group S occupancies complying with Section 414.2.5, see Tables 414.2.5(1) and 414.2.5(2).
- g. Allowed only where stored in approved exhausted gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures as specified in the *California Fire Code*.
- h. Quantities in parentheses indicate quantity units in parentheses at the head of each column.
- i. For gallons of liquids, divide the amount in pounds by 10 in accordance with Section 5003.1.2 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 307.6 High-hazard Group H-4.** Buildings and structures containing materials that are health hazards shall be classified as Group H-4. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Corrosives
- Highly toxic materials
- Toxic materials

**[F] 307.7 High-hazard Group H-5.** Semiconductor fabrication facilities and comparable research and development areas in which hazardous production materials (HPM) are used and the aggregate quantity of materials is in excess of those specified in Table 307.1(1) and [F] Table 307.1(2) shall be classified as Group H-5. Such facilities and areas shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 415.11.

**[F] 307.8 Multiple hazards.** Buildings and structures containing a material or materials representing hazards that are classified in one or more of Groups H-1, H-2, H-3 and H-4 shall conform to the code requirements for each of the occupancies so classified.

or correctional purposes or in which the liberty of the occupants is restricted. Institutional occupancies shall be classified as Group I-2, I-2.1, I-3 or I-4. *Restraint shall not be permitted in any building except in Group I-2 occupancies constructed for such use in accordance with Section 407.1.1 and Group I-3 occupancies constructed for such use in accordance with Section 408.1.2.*

*Where occupancies house both ambulatory and nonambulatory persons, the more restrictive requirements shall apply.*

**308.2 Institutional Group I-1.** Not used. (See Group R-2.1 Section 310.1).

**308.3 Institutional Group I-2.** Institutional Group I-2 occupancy shall include buildings and structures used for medical care on a 24-hour basis for more than five persons who are incapable of self-preservation or classified as nonambulatory or bedridden. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Detoxification facilities
- Hospitals
- Nursing homes
- Psychiatric hospitals

**308.3.1 Five or fewer persons receiving medical care.** A facility with five or fewer persons receiving medical care shall be classified as Group R-3.1 or shall comply with the *California Residential Code* provided an automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section R313 of the *California Residential Code*.

## SECTION 308 INSTITUTIONAL GROUP I

**308.1 Institutional Group I.** Institutional Group I occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, in which care or supervision is provided to persons who are or are incapable of self-preservation without physical assistance or in which persons are detained for penal

**308.3.2 Reserved.**

**308.3.3 Institutional Group I-2.1.** A healthcare facility that receives persons for outpatient medical care that may render the patient incapable of unassisted self-preservation and where each tenant space accommodates more than five such patients.

**308.4 Institutional Group I-3.** Institutional Group I-3 occupancy shall include buildings or portions of buildings and

structures that are inhabited by one or more persons who are under restraint or security. A Group I-3 facility is occupied by persons who are generally incapable of self-preservation due to security measures not under the occupants' control which includes persons restrained. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Correctional centers

Correctional hospitals

Correctional nursing facilities

Correctional mental health facilities

Correctional treatment centers

Courthouse holding facility

Detention centers

Detention treatment room

Jails

Juvenile halls

Prerelease centers

Prisons

Reformatories

Secure interview rooms

Temporary holding facility

Buildings of Group I-3 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Sections 308.4.1 through 308.5.8 and shall comply with Section 408.

**308.4.1 Condition 1.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas, and other spaces where access or occupancy is permitted, to the exterior via means of egress without restraint. A Condition 1 facility is permitted to be constructed as Group R.

**308.4.2 Condition 2.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed from sleeping areas and any other occupied smoke compartment to one or more other smoke compartments. Egress to the exterior is impeded by locked exits.

**308.4.3 Condition 3.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is allowed within individual smoke compartments, such as within a residential unit composed of individual sleeping units and group activity spaces, where egress is impeded by remote-controlled release of means of egress from such a smoke compartment to another smoke compartment.

**308.4.4 Condition 4.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Remote-controlled release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

**308.4.5 Condition 5.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings in which free movement is restricted from an occupied space. Staff-controlled manual release is provided to permit movement from sleeping units, activity spaces and other occupied areas within the smoke compartment to other smoke compartments.

**308.4.6 Condition 6.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing only one temporary holding facility with six or fewer persons under restraint or security where the building is protected throughout with a monitored automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and where the temporary holding facility is protected throughout with an automatic fire alarm system with notification appliances. A Condition 6 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy.

**308.4.7 Condition 7.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing only one temporary holding facility with nine or less persons under restraint or security where limited to the first or second story, provided the building complies with Section 408.1.2.6. A Condition 7 building shall be permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy.

**308.4.8 Condition 8.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings containing not more than four secure interview rooms located within the same fire area where not more than six occupants under restraint are located in the same fire area. A Condition 8 building shall be is permitted to be classified as a Group B occupancy, provided the requirements in Section 408.1.2.7 are met.

**308.4.9 Condition 9.** This occupancy condition shall include buildings where the use of the building is for correctional medical care or correctional mental health care.

**308.5 Institutional Group I-4, day care facilities.** Institutional Group I-4 occupancy shall include buildings and structures occupied by more than six clients of any age who receive custodial care for fewer than 24 hours per day by persons other than parents or guardians; relatives by blood, marriage or adoption; and in a place other than the home of the clients cared for. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

Adult day care

Child care (not classified as Group E)

**308.5.1 Reserved.**

**308.5.2 Within a place of religious worship.** Rooms and spaces within places of religious worship providing such care during religious functions shall be licensed by the California State Department Health Services as required by Health and Safety Code Division 2 Chapter 3.5.

**308.5.3 Six or fewer persons receiving care.** A facility having six or fewer persons receiving custodial care shall be licensed pursuant to Health and Safety Code Division 2 Chapter 3.5 or 3.6.

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

**308.5.4 Six or fewer persons receiving care in a dwelling unit.** A facility such as the above within a dwelling unit and having six or fewer persons receiving custodial care shall be classified as a Group R-3 occupancy, where occupants are not capable of responding to an emergency situation without physical assistance from the staff shall be classified as a Group I-4.

### SECTION 309 MERCANTILE GROUP M

**309.1 Mercantile Group M.** Mercantile Group M occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure or a portion thereof for the display and sale of merchandise, and involves stocks of goods, wares or merchandise incidental to such purposes and where the public has access. Mercantile occupancies shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Department stores
- Drug stores
- Markets
- Greenhouses for display and sale of plants that provide public access.
- Motor fuel-dispensing facilities
- Retail or wholesale stores
- Sales rooms

**309.2 Quantity of hazardous materials.** The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials stored or displayed in a single control area of a Group M occupancy shall not exceed the quantities in Table 414.2.5(1).

**309.3 Motor fuel-dispensing facilities.** Motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Section 406.7.

### SECTION 310 RESIDENTIAL GROUP R

**310.1 Residential Group R.** Residential Group R includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for sleeping purposes when not classified as an Institutional Group I or when not regulated by the *California Residential Code*. Group R occupancies not constructed in accordance with the *California Residential Code* as permitted by Sections 310.4.1 and 310.4.2 shall comply with Section 420.

**310.2 Residential Group R-1.** Residential Group R-1 occupancies containing sleeping units where the occupants are primarily transient in nature, including:

- Boarding houses (transient) with more than 10 occupants
  - Congregate residences (transient) with more than 10 occupants
  - Hotels (transient)
  - Motels (transient)
- [HCD 1] Efficiency dwelling units (transient)**

**310.3 Residential Group R-2.** Residential Group R-2 occupancies containing sleeping units or more than two dwelling units where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature, including:

Apartment houses

*Large family child care*  
*Small family child care*

Congregate residences (nontransient) with more than 16 occupants

Boarding houses (nontransient)

Convents

Dormitories

Fraternities and sororities

Monasteries

Hotels (nontransient)

Live/work units

Motels (nontransient)

Vacation timeshare properties

**[HCD 1] Efficiency dwelling units (transient)**

**310.3.1 Residential Group R-2.1.** Residential Group R-2.1 occupancies shall include buildings, structures or parts thereof housing clients, on a 24-hour basis, who because of age, mental disability or other reasons, live in a supervised residential environment that provides personal care services.

*This occupancy may contain more than six nonambulatory and/or bedridden clients. (See Section 435 Special Provisions for Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancy). This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:*

*Assisted living facilities such as:*

*Residential care facilities,*  
*Residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFEs),*  
*Adult residential facilities,*  
*Congregate living health facilities,*  
*Group homes,*  
*Residential care facilities for the chronically ill,*  
*Congregate living health facilities for the terminally ill.*

*Social rehabilitation facilities such as:*

*Halfway houses,*  
*Community correctional centers,*  
*Community treatment programs,*  
*Work furlough programs,*  
*Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery or treatment facilities.*

**310.3.2 Residential Group R-2.2 (CDCR Only).** Residential occupancies operated by CDCR in a community located facility that provides housing and community-based program services for nontransient ambulatory participants in a nonlicensed facility with 24/7 supervision.

**310.4 Residential Group R-3.** Residential Group R-3 occupancies where the occupants are primarily permanent in nature

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

and not classified as Group R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3.1, R-4 or I, including:

Buildings that do not contain more than two dwelling units

Care facilities that provide accommodations for five or fewer persons receiving care

Congregate residences (nontransient) with 16 or fewer occupants

Boarding houses (nontransient)

Convents

Dormitories

Fraternities and sororities

Monasteries

Congregate residences (transient) with 10 or fewer occupants

**[HCD 1] Efficiency dwelling units**

Boarding houses (transient)

*Adult care facilities that provide accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age for less than 24 hours.*

*Licensing categories that may use this classification include Adult Day Programs.*

*Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery homes (ambulatory only)*

*Child-care facilities that provide accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age for less than 24 hours.*

*Licensing categories that may use this classification include, but are not limited to:*

*Day-Care Center for Mildly Ill Children,  
Infant Care Center,  
School Age Child Day-Care Center.*

*Family Day-Care Homes that provide accommodations for 14 or fewer children, in the provider's own home for less than 24-hours.*

*Adult care and child-care facilities that are within a single family home are permitted to comply with the California Residential Code.*

Lodging houses (transient) with five or fewer guest rooms and 10 or fewer occupants

**310.4.1 Residential Group R-3.1.** This occupancy group may include facilities licensed by a governmental agency for a residentially based 24-hour care facility providing accommodations for six or fewer clients of any age. Clients may be classified as ambulatory, nonambulatory or bedridden. A Group R-3.1 occupancy shall meet the requirements for construction as defined for Group R-3, except as otherwise provided for in Section 435 Special Provisions For Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancy. This group may include:

*Adult residential facilities*

*Congregate living health facilities*

*Intermediate care facilities for the developmentally disabled habilitative*

*Intermediate care facilities for the developmentally disabled nursing*

*Nurseries for the full-time care of children under the age of six, but not including "infants" as defined in Chapter 2*

*Residential care facilities for the elderly*

*Small family homes and residential care facilities for the chronically ill*

**Exception:** Group Homes licensed by the Department of Social Services which provide nonmedical board, room and care for six or fewer ambulatory children or children two years of age or younger, and which do not have any nonambulatory clients shall not be subject to regulations found in Section 435.

*Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143 with respect to these exempted facilities, no city, county or public district shall adopt or enforce any requirement for the prevention of fire or for the protection of life and property against fire and panic unless the requirement would be applicable to a structure regardless of the special occupancy. Nothing shall restrict the application of state or local housing standards to such facilities if the standards are applicable to residential occupancies and are not based on the use of the structure as a facility for ambulatory children. For the purpose of this exception, ambulatory children do not include relatives of the licensee or the licensee's spouse.*

**310.4.2 Lodging houses.** Owner-occupied lodging houses with five or fewer guest rooms and 10 or fewer total occupants shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with the California Residential Code, provided that an automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 or Section P2904 of the California Residential Code.

**310.5 Residential Group R-4.** Residential Group R-4 occupancy shall include buildings, structures or portions thereof for more than six ambulatory clients, but not more than 16 persons, excluding staff, who reside on a 24-hour basis in a supervised residential environment and receive custodial care. The persons receiving care are capable of self-preservation. Buildings of Group R-4 shall be classified as one of the occupancy conditions specified in Section 310.5.1 or 310.5.2. This occupancy classification may include a maximum six nonambulatory or bedridden clients (see Section 435, Special Provisions for Licensed 24-Hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4). Group R-4 occupancies shall meet the requirements in Section 420. This group shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

*Assisted living facilities such as:*

*Residential care facilities,*

*Residential care facilities for the elderly (RCFE),*

*Adult residential facilities,*

*Congregate living health facilities,*

*Group homes.*

*Social rehabilitation facilities such as:*

*Halfway houses,*

*Community treatment programs,*

*Work furlough programs,*

*Alcoholism or drug abuse recovery or treatment facilities.*

**310.6 Large family day-care homes.** See Section 455.

## OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE

### SECTION 311 STORAGE GROUP S

**311.1 Storage Group S.** Storage Group S occupancy includes, among others, the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, for storage that is not classified as a hazardous occupancy.

**311.1.1 Accessory storage spaces.** A room or space used for storage purposes that is accessory to another occupancy shall be classified as part of that occupancy.

**311.1.2 Combustible storage.** High-piled stock or rack storage, or attic, under-floor and concealed spaces used for storage of combustible materials, shall be in accordance with Section 413.

**311.2 Moderate-hazard storage, Group S-1.** Storage Group S-1 occupancies are buildings occupied for storage uses that are not classified as Group S-2, including, but not limited to, storage of the following:

- Aerosol products, Levels 2 and 3
- Aircraft hangar (storage and repair)
- Bags: cloth, burlap and paper
- Bamboos and rattan
- Baskets
- Belting: canvas and leather
- Beverages over 16-percent alcohol content
- Books and paper in rolls or packs
- Boots and shoes
- Buttons, including cloth covered, pearl or bone
- Cardboard and cardboard boxes
- Clothing, woolen wearing apparel
- Cordage
- Dry boat storage (indoor)
- Furniture
- Furs
- Glues, mucilage, pastes and size
- Grains
- Horns and combs, other than celluloid
- Leather
- Linoleum
- Lumber
- Motor vehicle repair garages complying with the maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials specified in Table 307.1(1) (see Section 406.8)
- Photo engravings
- Resilient flooring
- Self-service storage facility (mini-storage)
- Silks
- Soaps
- Sugar
- Tires, bulk storage of
- Tobacco, cigars, cigarettes and snuff

Upholstery and mattresses

Wax candles

**311.2.1 Aircraft hangers.** Aircraft hangars used for storage or repair shall comply with Section 412.3.

**311.2.2 Motor vehicle repair garages** Motor vehicle repair garages shall comply with Section 406.8.

**311.3 Low-hazard storage, Group S-2.** Storage Group S-2 occupancies include, among others, buildings used for the storage of noncombustible materials such as products on wood pallets or in paper cartons with or without single thickness divisions; or in paper wrappings. Such products are permitted to have a negligible amount of plastic trim, such as knobs, handles or film wrapping. Group S-2 storage uses shall include, but not be limited to, storage of the following:

- Asbestos
- Beverages up to and including 16-percent alcohol
- Cement in bags
- Chalk and crayons
- Dairy products in nonwaxed coated paper containers
- Dry cell batteries
- Electrical coils
- Electrical motors
- Empty cans
- Food products
- Foods in noncombustible containers
- Fresh fruits and vegetables in nonplastic trays or containers
- Frozen foods
- Glass
- Glass bottles, empty or filled with noncombustible liquids
- Gypsum board
- Inert pigments
- Ivory
- Meats
- Metal cabinets
- Metal desks with plastic tops and *trim*
- Metal parts
- Metals
- Mirrors
- Oil-filled and other types of distribution transformers
- Public parking garages, open or enclosed
- Porcelain and pottery
- Stoves
- Talc and soapstones
- Washers and dryers

**311.3.1 Public parking garages.** Public parking garages shall comply with Section 406.4 and the additional requirements of Section 406.5 for open parking garages or Section 406.6 for enclosed parking garages.

## SECTION 312

### UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

**312.1 General.** Buildings and structures of an accessory character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy shall be constructed, equipped and maintained to conform to the requirements of this code commensurate with the fire and life hazard incidental to their occupancy. Group U shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

- Agricultural buildings
- Aircraft hangars, accessory to a one- or two-family residence (see Section 412.4)
- Barns
- Carports
- Communication equipment structures with a gross floor area of less than 1,500 square feet ( $139\text{ m}^2$ )
- Fences more than 7 feet (2134 mm) in height
- Grain silos, accessory to a residential occupancy
- Livestock shelters
- Private garages
- Retaining walls
- Sheds
- Stables
- Tanks
- Towers

**312.1.1 Greenhouses.** Greenhouses not classified as another occupancy shall be classified as Use Group U.

**312.2 Private garages and carports.** Private garages and carports shall comply with Section 406.3.

**312.3 Residential aircraft hangars.** Aircraft hangars accessory to a one- or two-family residence shall comply with Section 412.4.

## SECTION 313

### LABORATORIES GROUP L [SFM]

**313.1 Group L Laboratories. [SFM]** Group L occupancy includes the use of a building or structure, or a portion thereof, containing one or more laboratory suites as defined in Section 453.

## SECTION 314

### ORGANIZED CAMPS GROUP C [SFM]

**314.1 Organized Camps Group C. [SFM]** An organized camp is a site with programs and facilities established for the primary purpose of providing an outdoor group living experience with social, spiritual, educational or recreational objectives, for five days or more during one or more seasons of the year.



**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE**

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
 See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X																	
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X	X						X									X
Chapter / Section																							
403						X																	
403.1						X																	
403.1.1						X																	
403.2						X																	
403.2.1						X																	
403.2.1.1						X																	
403.3						X																	
403.3.1						X																	
403.3.2						X																	
403.3.2.1						X																	
403.3.3						X																	
403.3.5						X																	
403.4.7						X																	
403.4.7.1						X																	
403.4.8.1						X																	
403.5.3						X																	
403.5.4						X																	
403.6						X																	
403.7						X																	
404.5						X																	
404.6						X																	
404.11						X																	
406.2.1						X	X	X															
406.2.2						X	X																
406.2.3								X	X														
406.2.7							X	X	X														
406.3.1						X																	
406.6.4.1						X																	
406.8.2						X																	
406.9						X																	
406.9.1						X																	
406.9.2						X																	
406.9.3						X																	
407																	X						
407.1							X																
407.1.1							X																
407.2							X																
407.2.1							X																
407.2.2							X																
407.2.3							X																
407.2.5							X																

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE—**  
**continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below					X	X							X									X	
Chapter / Section																							
407.2.6					X																		
407.2.7					X																		
407.3					X																		
407.3.1					X																		
407.3.1.1					X																		
407.3.1.2					X																		
407.3.2					X																		
407.4					X																		
407.4.1					X																		
407.4.1.2					X																		
407.4.2					X																		
407.4.2.1					X																		
407.4.4					X																		
407.4.4.2					X																		
407.4.4.3					X																		
407.4.4.3.1					X																		
407.4.4.3.2					X																		
407.4.4.5					X																		
407.4.4.5.1					X																		
407.4.4.6.1					X																		
407.4.4.6.2					X																		
407.4.5 – 407.4.5.3					X																		
407.5					X																		
407.7 – 407.7.1					X																		
407.9					X																		
407.10					X																		
407.11					X																		
407.12					X																		
407.13 – 407.13.4					X																		
408.1.2					X																		
408.1.2.1					X																		
408.1.2.2					X																		
408.1.2.3					X																		
408.1.2.4					X																		
408.1.2.5					X																		
408.1.2.6					X																		
408.1.2.7					X																		
408.1.3					X																		
408.2					X																		
408.2.1					X																		
408.3.1.1					X																		

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE—**  
**continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1 R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X							X									X
Chapter / Section																							
408.3.6			X																				
408.3.6.1			X																				
408.3.6.2			X																				
408.3.6.3			X																				
408.3.6.4			X																				
408.3.8.1			X																				
408.3.9			X																				
408.3.10			X																				
408.3.11			X																				
408.3.12			X																				
Table 408.3.13			X																				
408.4			X																				
408.4.3			X																				
408.5.1			X																				
408.6			X																				
408.6.1			X																				
408.8.4			X																				
408.9.1			X																				
408.12			X																				
408.13			X																				
408.14			X																				
408.15			X																				
408.15.1			X																				
408.15.2			X																				
408.15.3			X																				
408.15.3.1			X																				
408.15.3.2			X																				
408.15.4			X																				
408.15.5			X																				
410.2.6			X																				
411.1 – 411.2			X																				
411.5			X																				
412.2.6							X																
414.1.1					X																		
414.5				X																			
414.5.1				X																			
414.5.4				X																			
415.12				X																			
415.12.1				X																			
415.12.1.1				X																			

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 4 – SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE—**  
**continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X						X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X X X																				
Adopt only those sections that are listed below					X	X							X									X	
Chapter / Section																							
415.12.1.2				X																			
415.12.1.3				X																			
415.12.1.4				X																			
415.12.1.5				X																			
415.13				X																			
415.13.1				X																			
415.13.2				X																			
415.13.3				X																			
420.1				X X X																			
420.4				X																			
420.5				X																			
420.6				X																			
420.11.1				X X X																			
420.12				X X																			
420.13				X X		X																	
420.14				X X																			
420.15				X																			
422.1														X									
422.6				X																			
422.7				X																			
435				X																			
436				X																			
439				X																			
440				X																			
441				X																			
442				X																			
443				X																			
444				X																			
446				X																			
449				X																			
450				X																			
452				X																			
453				X																			
455				X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

## CHAPTER 4

# SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 4 provides detailed criteria for special uses and occupancies. The unique characteristics of a live/work unit as opposed to a 30-story high-rise building call for specific standards for each. Twenty-seven sections address covered and open mall buildings, atriums, hospitals, stages, buildings where hazardous materials are used and stored, jails and prisons, ambulatory care facilities and storm shelters, among other special occupancy issues.

---



---

## SECTION 401 SCOPE

**401.1 Detailed occupancy and use requirements.** In addition to the occupancy and construction requirements in this code, the provisions of this chapter apply to the occupancies and use described herein.

## SECTION 402 COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS

**402.1 Applicability.** The provisions of this section shall apply to buildings or structures defined herein as covered or open mall buildings not exceeding three floor levels at any point nor more than three stories above grade plane. Except as specifically required by this section, covered and open mall buildings shall meet applicable provisions of this code.

**Exceptions:**

1. Foyers and lobbies of Group B, R-1 and R-2 occupancies are not required to comply with this section.
2. Buildings need not comply with the provisions of this section where they totally comply with other applicable provisions of this code.

**402.1.1 Open mall building perimeter line.** For the purpose of this code, a perimeter line shall be established. The perimeter line shall encircle all buildings and structures that comprise the open mall building and shall encompass any open-air interior walkways, open-air courtyards or similar open-air spaces. The perimeter line shall define the extent of the open mall building. Anchor buildings and parking structures shall be outside of the perimeter line and are not considered as part of the open mall building.

**402.2 Open space.** A covered mall building and attached anchor buildings and parking garages shall be surrounded on all sides by a permanent open space or not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm). An open mall building and anchor buildings and parking garages adjoining the perimeter line shall be surrounded on all sides by a permanent open space of not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm).

**Exception:** The permanent open space of 60 feet (18 288 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 40

feet (12 192 mm), provided that the following requirements are met:

1. The reduced open space shall not be allowed for more than 75 percent of the perimeter of the covered or open mall building and anchor buildings.
2. The exterior wall facing the reduced open space shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours.
3. Openings in the exterior wall facing the reduced open space shall have opening protectives with a fire protection rating of not less than 3 hours.
4. Group E, H, I or R occupancies are not located within the covered or open mall building or anchor buildings.

**402.3 Lease plan.** Each owner of a covered mall building or of an open mall building shall provide both the building and fire departments with a lease plan showing the location of each occupancy and its exits after the certificate of occupancy has been issued. Modifications or changes in occupancy or use from that shown on the lease plan shall not be made without prior approval of the building official.

**402.4 Construction.** The construction of covered and open mall buildings, anchor buildings and parking garages associated with a mall building shall comply with Sections 402.4.1 through 402.4.3.

**402.4.1 Area and types of construction.** The building area and type of construction of covered mall or open mall buildings, anchor buildings and parking garages shall comply with this section.

**402.4.1.1 Covered and open mall buildings.** The building area of any covered mall or open mall building shall not be limited provided that the covered mall or open mall building does not exceed three floor levels at any point nor three stories above grade plane, and is of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

**402.4.1.2 Anchor buildings.** The building area and building height of any anchor building shall be based on the type of construction as required by Section 503 as modified by Sections 504 and 506.

**Exception:** The building area of any anchor building shall not be limited provided that the anchor building

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

is not more than three stories above grade plane, and is of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

**402.4.1.3 Parking garage.** The building area and building height of any parking garage shall be based on the type of construction as required by Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively.

**402.4.2 Fire-resistance-rated separation.** Fire-resistance-rated separation is not required between tenant spaces and the mall. Fire-resistance-rated separation is not required between a food court and adjacent tenant spaces or the mall.

**402.4.2.1 Tenant separations.** Each tenant space shall be separated from other tenant spaces by a fire partition complying with Section 708. A tenant separation wall is not required between any tenant space and the mall.

**402.4.2.2 Anchor building separation.** An anchor building shall be separated from the covered or open mall building by fire walls complying with Section 706.

### Exceptions:

1. Anchor buildings of not more than three stories above grade plane that have an occupancy classification the same as that permitted for tenants of the mall building shall be separated by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire barriers complying with Section 707.
2. The exterior walls of anchor buildings separated from an open mall building by an open mall shall comply with Table 705.5.

**402.4.2.2.1 Openings between anchor building and mall.** Except for the separation between Group R-1 sleeping units and the mall, openings between anchor buildings of Type IA, IB, IIA or IIB construction and the mall need not be protected.

**402.4.2.3 Parking garages.** An attached garage for the storage of passenger vehicles having a capacity of not more than nine persons and open parking garages shall be considered as a separate building where it is separated from the covered or open mall building or anchor building by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

Parking garages, which are separated from covered mall buildings, open mall buildings or anchor buildings, shall comply with the provisions of Table 705.5.

Pedestrian walkways and tunnels that connect garages to mall buildings or anchor buildings shall be constructed in accordance with Section 3104.

**402.4.3 Open mall construction.** Floor assemblies in, and roof assemblies over, the open mall of an open mall building shall be open to the atmosphere for not less than 20 feet (9096 mm), measured perpendicular from the face of the tenant spaces on the lowest level, from edge of balcony to edge of balcony on upper floors and from edge of roof line to edge of roof line. The openings within, or the

unroofed area of, an open mall shall extend from the lowest/grade level of the open mall through the entire roof assembly. Balconies on upper levels of the mall shall not project into the required width of the opening.

**402.4.3.1 Pedestrian walkways.** Pedestrian walkways connecting balconies in an open mall shall be located not less than 20 feet (9096 mm) from any other pedestrian walkway.

[F] **402.5 Automatic sprinkler system.** Covered and open mall buildings and buildings connected shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, which shall comply with all of the following:

1. The automatic sprinkler system shall be complete and operative throughout occupied space in the mall building prior to occupancy of any of the tenant spaces. Unoccupied tenant spaces shall be similarly protected unless provided with approved alternative protection.
2. Sprinkler protection for the mall of a covered mall building shall be independent from that provided for tenant spaces or anchor buildings.
3. Sprinkler protection for the tenant spaces of an open mall building shall be independent from that provided for anchor buildings.
4. Sprinkler protection shall be provided beneath exterior circulation balconies located adjacent to an open mall.
5. Where tenant spaces are supplied by the same system, they shall be independently controlled.

**Exception:** An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of open parking garages separated from the covered or open mall building in accordance with Section 402.4.2.3 and constructed in accordance with Section 406.5.

**402.6 Interior finishes and features.** Interior finishes within the mall and installations within the mall shall comply with Sections 402.6.1 through 402.6.4.

**402.6.1 Interior finish** Interior wall and ceiling finishes within the mall of a covered mall building and within the exits of covered or open mall buildings shall have a minimum flame spread index and smoke-developed index of Class B in accordance with Chapter 8. Interior floor finishes shall meet the requirements of Section 804.

**402.6.2 Kiosks.** Kiosks and similar structures (temporary or permanent) located within the mall of a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building shall meet the following requirements:

1. Combustible kiosks or other structures shall not be located within a covered or open mall unless constructed of any of the following materials:
  - 1.1. Fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.
  - 1.2. Foam plastics having a maximum heat release rate not greater than 100 kW (105 Btu/h) when tested in accordance with the exhibit booth protocol in UL 1975 or when

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE**

- tested in accordance with NFPA 289 using the 20 kW ignition source.
- 1.3. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended.
  2. Kiosks or similar structures located within the mall shall be provided with approved automatic sprinkler system and detection devices.
  3. The horizontal separation between kiosks or groupings thereof and other structures within the mall shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm).
  4. Each kiosk or similar structure or groupings thereof shall have an area not greater than 300 square feet ( $28 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**402.6.3 Play structures.** Play structures located within a mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building shall comply with Section 424. The horizontal separation between play structures, kiosks and similar structures within the mall shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm).

**402.6.4 Plastic signs.** Plastic signs affixed to the storefront of any tenant space facing a mall or open mall shall be limited as specified in Sections 402.6.4.1 through 402.6.4.5.

**402.6.4.1 Area.** Plastic signs shall be not more than 20 percent of the wall area facing the mall.

**402.6.4.2 Height and width.** Plastic signs shall be not greater than 36 inches (914 mm) in height, except that where the sign is vertical, the height shall be not greater than 96 inches (2438 mm) and the width shall be not greater than 36 inches (914 mm).

**402.6.4.3 Location.** Plastic signs shall be located not less than 18 inches (457 mm) from adjacent tenants.

**402.6.4.4 Plastics other than foam plastics.** Plastics other than foam plastics used in signs shall be light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.4 or shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929, and a flame spread index not greater than 75 and smoke-developed index not greater than 450 when tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 or meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286.

**402.6.4.4.1 Encasement.** Edges and backs of plastic signs in the mall shall be fully encased in metal.

**402.6.4.5 Foam plastics.** Foam plastics used in signs shall have flame-retardant characteristics such that the sign has a maximum heat-release rate of 150 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289 using the 20 kW ignition source, and the foam plastics shall have the physical characteristics specified in this section. Foam plastics used in signs installed in accordance with

Section 402.6.4 shall not be required to comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed indices specified in Section 2603.3.

**402.6.4.5.1 Density.** The density of foam plastics used in signs shall be not less than 20 pounds per cubic foot (pcf) ( $320 \text{ kg/m}^3$ ).

**402.6.4.5.2 Thickness.** The thickness of foam plastic signs shall not be greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).

**[F] 402.7 Emergency systems.** Covered and open mall buildings, anchor buildings and associated parking garages shall be provided with emergency systems complying with Sections 402.7.1 through 402.7.5.

**[F] 402.7.1 Standpipe system.** Covered and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.3.

**[F] 402.7.2 Smoke control.** Atriums connecting three or more stories in a covered mall building shall be provided with a smoke control system in accordance with Section 909.

**[F] 402.7.3 Emergency power.** Covered mall buildings greater than 50,000 square feet ( $4645 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and open mall buildings greater than 50,000 square feet ( $4645 \text{ m}^2$ ) within the established perimeter line shall be provided with emergency power that is capable of operating the emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 2702.

**[F] 402.7.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** Where the total floor area is greater than 50,000 square feet ( $4645 \text{ m}^2$ ) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided.

The fire department shall have access to any emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise. The systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

**[F] 402.7.5 Fire department access to equipment.** Rooms or areas containing controls for air-conditioning systems or fire protection systems shall be identified for use by the fire department.

**402.8 Means of egress.** Covered mall buildings, open mall buildings and each tenant space within a mall building shall be provided with means of egress as required by this section and this code. Where there is a conflict between the requirements of this code and the requirements of Sections 402.8.1 through 402.8.8, the requirements of Sections 402.8.1 through 402.8.8 shall apply.

**402.8.1 Mall width.** For the purpose of providing required egress, malls are permitted to be considered as corridors but need not comply with the requirements of Section 1005.1 of this code where the width of the mall is as specified in this section.

**402.8.1.1 Minimum width.** The aggregate clear egress width of the mall in either a covered or open mall building shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm). The mall width shall be sufficient to accommodate the occupant

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

load served. Any portion of the minimum required aggregate egress width shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) measured to a height of 8 feet (2438 mm) between any projection of a tenant space bordering the mall and the nearest kiosk, vending machine, bench, display opening, food court or other obstruction to means of egress travel.

**402.8.2 Determination of occupant load.** The occupant load permitted in any individual tenant space in a covered or open mall building shall be determined as required by this code. Means of egress requirements for individual tenant spaces shall be based on the occupant load thus determined.

**402.8.2.1 Occupant formula.** In determining required means of egress of the mall, the number of occupants for whom means of egress are to be provided shall be based on gross leasable area of the covered or open mall building (excluding anchor buildings) and the occupant load factor as determined by Equation 4-1.

$$OLF = (0.00007)(GLA) + 25 \quad (\text{Equation 4-1})$$

where:

*OLF* = The occupant load factor (square feet per person).

*GLA* = The gross leasable area (square feet).

**Exception:** Tenant spaces attached to a covered or open mall building but with a means of egress system that is totally independent of the open mall of an open mall building or of a covered mall building shall not be considered as gross leasable area for determining the required means of egress for the mall building.

**402.8.2.2 OLF range.** The occupant load factor (OLF) is not required to be less than 30 and shall not exceed 50.

**402.8.2.3 Anchor buildings.** The occupant load of anchor buildings opening into the mall shall not be included in computing the total number of occupants for the mall.

**402.8.2.4 Food courts.** The occupant load of a food court shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004. For the purposes of determining the means of egress requirements for the mall, the food court occupant load shall be added to the occupant load of the covered or open mall building as calculated in Section 402.8.2.1.

**402.8.3 Number of means of egress.** Wherever the distance of travel to the mall from any location within a tenant space used by persons other than employees is greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) or the tenant space has an occupant load of 50 or more, not fewer than two means of egress shall be provided.

**402.8.4 Arrangements of means of egress.** Assembly occupancies with an occupant load of 500 or more located within a covered mall building shall be so located such that their entrance will be immediately adjacent to a principal entrance to the mall and shall have not less than one-half of their required means of egress opening directly to

the exterior of the covered mall building. Assembly occupancies located within the perimeter line of an open mall building shall be permitted to have their main exit open to the open mall.

**402.8.4.1 Anchor building means of egress.** Required means of egress for anchor buildings shall be provided independently from the mall means of egress system. The occupant load of anchor buildings opening into the mall shall not be included in determining means of egress requirements for the mall. The path of egress travel of malls shall not exit through anchor buildings. Malls terminating at an anchor building where other means of egress has not been provided shall be considered as a dead-end mall.

**402.8.5 Distance to exits.** Within each individual tenant space in a covered or open mall building, the distance of travel from any point to an exit or entrance to the mall shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

The distance of travel from any point within a mall of a covered mall building to an exit shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The maximum distance of travel from any point within an open mall to the perimeter line of the open mall building shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

**402.8.6 Access to exits.** Where more than one exit is required, they shall be so arranged that it is possible to travel in either direction from any point in a mall of a covered mall building to separate exits or from any point in an open mall of an open mall building to two separate locations on the perimeter line, provided that neither location is an exterior wall of an anchor building or parking garage. The width of an exit passageway or corridor from a mall shall be not less than 66 inches (1676 mm).

**Exception:** Access to exits is permitted by way of a dead-end mall that does not exceed a length equal to twice the width of the mall measured at the narrowest location within the dead-end portion of the mall.

**402.8.6.1 Exit passageways.** Where exit passageways provide a secondary means of egress from a tenant space, the exit passageways shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1024.

**402.8.7 Service areas fronting on exit passageways.** Mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, building service areas and service elevators are permitted to open directly into exit passageways, provided that the exit passageway is separated from such rooms with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire protection rating of openings in the fire barriers shall be not less than 1 hour.

**402.8.8 Security grilles and doors.** Horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles or doors that are a part of a required means of egress shall conform to the following:

1. Doors and grilles shall remain in the full open position during the period of occupancy by the general public.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

2. Doors or grilles shall not be brought to the closed position when there are 10 or more persons occupying spaces served by a single exit or 50 or more persons occupying spaces served by more than one exit.
3. The doors or grilles shall be openable from within without the use of any special knowledge or effort where the space is occupied.
4. Where two or more exits are required, not more than one-half of the exits shall be permitted to include either a horizontal sliding or vertical rolling grille or door.

### **SECTION 403** **HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS AND GROUP I-2** **OCCUPANCIES HAVING OCCUPIED** **FLOORS LOCATED MORE THAN 75 FEET** **ABOVE THE LOWEST LEVEL OF FIRE** **DEPARTMENT VEHICLE ACCESS**

**403.1 Applicability.** *New high-rise buildings (see Section 202 for definition of a high-rise) and new Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall comply with Sections 403.2 through 403.7.*

**Exceptions:** The provisions of Sections 403.2 through 403.7 shall not apply to the following buildings and structures:

1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Section 412.2.
2. Open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
3. The portion of a building containing a Group A-5 occupancy in accordance with Section 303.6.
4. Special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
5. Buildings containing any one of the following:
  - 5.1. A Group H-1 occupancy.
  - 5.2. A Group H-2 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8, 415.9.2, 415.9.3 or 426.1.
  - 5.3. A Group H-3 occupancy in accordance with Section 415.8.
5. Buildings such as power plants, lookout towers, steeples, grain houses and similar structures with noncontinuous human occupancy, when so determined by the enforcing agency.

*For existing high-rise buildings and for existing Group R occupancies, see California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code.*

*For the purpose of this section, in determining the level from which the highest occupied floor is to be measured, the enforcing agency should exercise reasonable judgment, including consideration of overall accessibility to the building by fire department personnel and vehicular equipment. When a building is located on sloping terrain and there is building access on more than one level, the enforcing agency*

*may select the level that provides the most logical and adequate fire department access.*

**403.2 Construction.** The construction of high-rise buildings shall comply with the provisions of Sections 403.2.1 through 403.2.3.

**403.2.1 Reduction in fire-resistance rating.** The fire-resistance rating reductions specified in Sections 403.2.1.1 and 403.2.1.2 shall be allowed in buildings that have sprinkler control valves equipped with supervisory initiating devices and water-flow initiating devices for each floor.

**Exception:** *Buildings, or portions of buildings, classified as a Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 occupancy.*

**403.2.1.1 Type of construction.** The following reductions in the minimum fire-resistance rating of the building elements in TABLE 601 shall be permitted as follows:

1. For buildings not greater than 420 feet (128 m) in building height, the fire-resistance rating of the building elements in Type IA construction shall be permitted to be reduced to the minimum fire-resistance ratings for the building elements in Type IB.

**Exception:** *The required fire-resistance rating of the primary structural frame columns supporting floors shall not be reduced.*

2. In other than Group F-1, H-2, H-3, H-5, M and S-1 occupancies, the fire-resistance rating of the building elements in Type IB construction shall be permitted to be reduced to the fire-resistance ratings in Type IIA.

**Exception:** *The required fire-resistance rating of the primary structural frame shall not be permitted to be reduced.*

3. The building height and building area limitations of a building containing building elements with reduced fire-resistance ratings shall be permitted to be the same as the building without such reductions.

**403.2.1.2 Shaft enclosures.** For buildings not greater than 420 feet (128 m) in building height, the required fire-resistance rating of the fire barriers enclosing vertical shafts, other than interior exit stairway and elevator hoistway enclosures, is permitted to be reduced to 1 hour where automatic sprinklers are installed within the shafts at the top and at alternate floor levels.

**[BS] 403.2.2 Structural integrity of interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures.** For high-rise buildings of Risk Category III or IV in accordance with Section 1604.5, and for all buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 m) in building height, enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Sections 403.2.2.1 through 403.2.2.4.

**[BS] 403.2.2.1 Wall assembly materials—soft body impact.** The panels making up the enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures

shall meet or exceed Soft Body Impact Classification Level 2 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M when tested from the exterior side of the enclosure.

**[BS] 403.2.2.2 Wall assembly materials—hard body impact.** The panels making up the enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures that are not exposed to the interior of the enclosure shall be in accordance with one of the following:

1. The wall assembly shall incorporate not fewer than two layers of impact-resistant panels, each of which meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 2 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.
2. The wall assembly shall incorporate not fewer than one layer of impact-resistant panels that meet or exceed Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.
3. The wall assembly incorporates multiple layers of any material, tested in tandem, that meets or exceeds Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3 as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M.

**[BS] 403.2.2.3 Concrete and masonry walls.** Concrete or masonry walls shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of Sections 403.2.2.1 and 403.2.2.2.

**[BS] 403.2.2.4 Other wall assemblies.** Any other wall assembly that provides impact resistance equivalent to that required by Sections 403.2.2.1 for Soft Body Impact Classification Level 2 and 403.2.2.2 for Hard Body Impact Classification Level 3, as measured by the test method described in ASTM C1629/C1629M, shall be permitted.

**403.2.3 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM).** The bond strength of the SFRM installed throughout the building shall be in accordance with Table 403.2.3.

TABLE 403.2.3  
MINIMUM BOND STRENGTH

HEIGHT OF BUILDING <sup>a</sup>	SFRM MINIMUM BOND STRENGTH
Up to 420 feet	430 psf
Greater than 420 feet	1,000 psf

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kW/m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

**[F] 403.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** Buildings and structures shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and a secondary water supply where required by Section 403.3.3. A *sprinkler water-flow alarm-initiating device and a control valve with a supervisory signal-initiating device shall be provided at the lateral connection to the riser for each floor.*

**Exception:** An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in spaces or areas of telecommunications equipment buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equip-

ment, batteries and standby engines, provided that those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 403.3.1 Number of sprinkler system risers and system design.** Each sprinkler system *serving a floor* in buildings that are more than 420 feet (128 m) in building height shall be *connected to a minimum of two sprinkler risers or combination standpipe system risers located in separate shafts. Each sprinkler system shall be hydraulically designed so that when one connection is shut down, the other connection shall be capable of supplying the sprinkler system design demand.*

**[F] 403.3.1.1 Riser location.** Sprinkler risers shall be placed in interior exit stairways and ramps that are remotely located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

**[F] 403.3.2 Water supply to required fire pumps.** In all buildings *having an occupied floor that is more than 120 feet (36 576 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access*, required fire pumps shall be supplied by connections to not fewer than two water mains located in different streets. Separate supply piping shall be provided between each connection to the water main and the pumps. Each connection and the supply piping between the connection and the pumps shall be sized to supply the flow and pressure required for the pumps to operate.

**Exception:** Two connections to the same main shall be permitted provided that the main is valved such that an interruption can be isolated so that the water supply will continue without interruption through not fewer than one of the connections.

**403.3.2.1 Fire pumps.** *Redundant fire pump systems shall be required for high-rise buildings having an occupied floor more than 200 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Each fire pump system shall be capable of automatically supplying the required demand for the automatic sprinkler and standpipe systems.*

**[F] 403.3.3 Secondary water supply.** An automatic secondary on-site water supply having a *usable capacity of not less than the hydraulically calculated sprinkler demand, including the hose stream requirement, shall be provided for high-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 ft above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F as determined by Section 1613. An additional fire pump shall not be required for the secondary water supply unless needed to provide the minimum design intake pressure at the suction side of the fire pump supplying the automatic sprinkler system. The secondary water supply shall have a duration of not less than 30 minutes as determined by the occupancy hazard classification in accordance with NFPA 13. The Class I standpipe system demand shall not be required to be included in the secondary on-site water*

*supply calculations. In no case shall the secondary on-site water supply be less than 15,000 gallons.*

**[F] 403.3.4 Fire pump room.** Fire pumps shall be located in rooms protected in accordance with Section 913.2.1.

**403.3.5 Fire pumps.** See Section 913.6.

**[F] 403.4 Emergency systems.** The detection, alarm and emergency systems of high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.4.1 through 403.4.8.

**[F] 403.4.1 Smoke detection.** Smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1.

**[F] 403.4.2 Fire alarm system.** A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.13.

**[F] 403.4.3 Standpipe system.** A high-rise building shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

**[F] 403.4.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** An emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

**[F] 403.4.5 Emergency communication coverage.** In-building, two-way emergency responder communication coverage shall be provided in accordance with Section 510 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 403.4.6 Fire command.** A fire command center complying with Section 911 shall be provided in a location approved by the fire code official.

**403.4.7 Smoke control system.** All portions of high-rise buildings shall be provided with a smoke control system in accordance with Section 909.

**[F] 403.4.8 Standby and emergency power.** A standby power system complying with Section 2702 and Section 3003 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.3. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 403.4.8.4.

**[F] 403.4.8.1 Equipment room.** If the standby or emergency power system includes a generator set inside a building, the system shall be located in a separate room enclosed with 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. System supervision with manual start and transfer features shall be provided at the fire command center.

**Exception:** In Group I-2 manual start and transfer features for the critical branch of the emergency power are not required to be provided at the fire command center.

**[F] 403.4.8.2 Fuel line piping protection.** Fuel lines supplying a generator set inside a building shall be separated from areas of the building other than the room the generator is located in by one of the following methods:

1. A fire-resistant pipe-protection system that has been tested in accordance with UL 1489. The system shall be installed as tested and in accor-

dance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and shall have a rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the required rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.

2. An assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.

3. Other approved methods.

**[F] 403.4.8.3 Standby power loads.** The following are classified as standby power loads:

1. Ventilation and automatic fire detection equipment for smokeproof enclosures.
2. Elevators.
3. Where elevators are provided in a high-rise building for accessible means of egress, fire service access or occupant self-evacuation, the standby power system shall also comply with Sections 1009.4, 3007 or 3008, as applicable.

**[F] 403.4.8.4 Emergency power loads.** The following are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Exit signs and means of egress illumination required by Chapter 10.
2. Elevator car lighting.
3. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems.
4. Automatic fire detection systems.
5. Fire alarm systems.
6. Electrically powered fire pumps.
7. Power and lighting for the fire command center required by Section 403.4.6.

**403.5 Means of egress and evacuation.** The means of egress in high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 403.5.1 through 403.5.5.

**403.5.1 Remoteness of interior exit stairways.** Required interior exit stairways shall be separated by a distance not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the nearest points of the enclosure surrounding the interior exit stairways. In buildings with three or more interior exit stairways, not fewer than two of the interior exit stairways shall comply with this section. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one interior exit stairway.

**403.5.2 Additional interior exit stairway.** For buildings other than Group R-2 and their ancillary spaces that are more than 420 feet (128 m) in building height, one additional interior exit stairway meeting the requirements of Sections 1011 and 1023 shall be provided in addition to

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

the minimum number of exits required by Section 1006.3. The total capacity of any combination of remaining interior exit stairways with one interior exit stairway removed shall be not less than the total capacity required by Section 1005.1. Scissor stairways shall not be considered the additional interior exit stairway required by this section.

### Exceptions:

1. An additional interior exit stairway shall not be required to be installed in buildings having elevators used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.
2. An additional interior exit stairway shall not be required for other portions of the building where the highest occupiable floor level in those areas is less than 420 feet (128 m) in building height.

**403.5.3 Stairway door operation.** Stairway doors other than the exit discharge doors shall be permitted to be locked from the stairway side. Stairway doors that are locked from the stairway side shall be capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the fire command center. *Upon failure of electrical power to the locking mechanism, the door shall unlock.*

**403.5.3.1 Stairway communication system.** A telephone or other two-way communications system connected to an approved constantly attended station shall be provided at not less than every fifth floor in each stairway where the doors to the stairway are locked.

**403.5.4 Smokeproof enclosures.** Every exit enclosure in high-rise buildings shall comply with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11. Every required interior exit stairway in Group I-2 occupancies serving floors more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be a smokeproof enclosure in accordance with Sections 909.20 and 1023.11.

**Exception:** In high-rise buildings, exit enclosures serving three or less adjacent floors where one of the adjacent floors is the level of exit discharge.

**403.5.5 Luminous egress path markings.** Luminous egress path markings shall be provided in accordance with Section 1025.

→ **403.6 Elevators.** Elevator installation and operation in high-rise buildings shall comply with Chapter 30 and Sections 403.6.1 and 403.6.2.

Enclosed elevator lobbies shall be provided in accordance with Section 3006. Exceptions 2, 3, 4 and 5 of 3006.3 shall only be permitted where approved by the Fire Chief in accordance with Section 1.11.2.1.1 or in accordance with Section 1.11.2.1.2 for all state-owned buildings, state-occupied buildings and state institutions throughout the state.

**403.6.1 Fire service access elevator.** In buildings with an occupied floor more than 120 feet (36 576 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, not fewer than two fire service access elevators, or all elevators, whichever is less, shall be provided in accordance with Section 3007. Each fire service access elevator shall have

a capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (1588 kg) and shall comply with Section 3002.4.

**403.6.2 Occupant evacuation elevators.** Where installed in accordance with Section 3008, passenger elevators for general public use shall be permitted to be used for occupant self-evacuation.

**403.7 Existing high-rise buildings.** For existing high-rise buildings, see California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code.

## SECTION 404 atriums

**404.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 404.1 through 404.11 shall apply to buildings containing atriums. Atriums are not permitted in buildings or structures classified as Group H.

**Exception:** Vertical openings that comply with Sections 712.1.1 through 712.1.3, and Sections 712.1.9 through 712.1.14.

**404.2 Use.** The floor of the atrium shall not be used for other than low fire hazard uses and only approved materials and decorations in accordance with the California Fire Code shall be used in the atrium space.

**Exception:** The atrium floor area is permitted to be used for any approved use where the individual space is provided with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

[F] **404.3 Automatic sprinkler protection.** An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire building.

### Exceptions:

1. That area of a building adjacent to or above the atrium need not be sprinklered provided that portion of the building is separated from the atrium portion by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.
2. Where the ceiling of the atrium is more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the floor, sprinkler protection at the ceiling of the atrium is not required.

[F] **404.4 Fire alarm system.** A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.14.

**404.5 Smoke control.** A smoke control system shall be installed in accordance with Section 909.

### Exceptions:

1. In other than Group I-2 and R-2.1 Condition 2, smoke control is not required for atriums that connect only two stories.
2. A smoke control system is not required for atriums connecting more than two stories when all of the following are met:
  - 2.1. Only the two lowest stories shall be permitted to be open to the atrium.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

2.2. All stories above the lowest two stories shall be separated from the atrium in accordance with the provisions for a shaft in Section 713.4.

**404.6 Enclosure of atriums.** Atrium spaces shall be separated from adjacent spaces by a 1-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**Exceptions:**

1. A fire barrier is not required where a glass wall forming a smoke partition is provided. The glass wall shall comply with all of the following:
  - 1.1. Automatic sprinklers are provided along both sides of the separation wall and doors, or on the room side only if there is not a walkway on the atrium side. The sprinklers shall be located between 4 inches and 12 inches (102 mm and 305 mm) away from the glass and at intervals along the glass not greater than 6 feet (1829 mm). The sprinkler system shall be designed so that the entire surface of the glass is wet upon activation of the sprinkler system without obstruction;
  - 1.2. The glass wall shall be installed in a gasketed frame in a manner that the framing system deflects without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates; and
  - 1.3. Where glass doors are provided in the glass wall, they shall be either self-closing or automatic-closing.
2. A fire barrier is not required where a glass-block wall assembly complying with Section 2110 and having a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour fire protection rating is provided.
3. *In other than Group I and R-2.1 occupancies*, a fire barrier is not required between the atrium and the adjoining spaces of up to three floors of the atrium provided that such spaces are accounted for in the design of the smoke control system.
4. *In other than Group I and R-2.1 occupancies*, a fire barrier is not required between the atrium and the adjoining spaces where the atrium is not required to be provided with a smoke control system.
5. A horizontal assembly is not required between the atrium and openings for escalators complying with Section 712.1.3.
6. A horizontal assembly is not required between the atrium and openings for exit access stairways and ramps complying with Item 4 of Section 1019.3.

**[F] 404.7 Standby power.** Equipment required to provide smoke control shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 909.11.

**404.8 Interior finish.** The interior finish of walls and ceilings of the atrium shall be not less than Class B. Sprinkler protection shall not result in a reduction in class.

**404.9 Exit access travel distance.** Exit access travel distance for areas open to an atrium shall comply with the requirements of Section 1017.

**404.10 Exit stairways in an atrium.** Where an atrium contains an interior exit stairway all the following shall be met:

1. The entry to the exit stairway is the edge of the closest riser of the exit stairway.
2. The entry of the exit stairway shall have access from a minimum of two directions.
3. The distance between the entry to an exit stairway in an atrium and the entrance to a minimum of one exit stairway enclosed in accordance with Section 1023.2 shall comply with the separation required by Section 1007.1.1.
4. Exit access travel distance shall be measured to the closest riser of the exit stairway.
5. Not more than 50 percent of the exit stairways shall be located in the same atrium.

**404.11 Interior exit stairway discharge.** Discharge of interior exit stairways through an atrium shall be in accordance with Section 1028.

**404.12 Group I and R-2.1 occupancy means of egress.** Required means of egress from sleeping rooms in Group I and R-2.1 occupancies shall not pass through the atrium.

## SECTION 405 UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS

**405.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 405.2 through 405.9 apply to building spaces having a floor level used for human occupancy more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge.

**Exceptions:** The provisions of Section 405 are not applicable to the following buildings or portions of buildings:

1. One- and two-family dwellings, sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.
2. Parking garages provided with automatic sprinkler systems in compliance with Section 405.3.
3. Fixed guideway transit systems.
4. Grandstands, bleachers, stadiums, arenas and similar facilities.
5. Where the lowest story is the only story that would qualify the building as an underground building and has an area not greater than 1,500 square feet ( $139\text{ m}^2$ ) and has an occupant load less than 10.
6. Pumping stations and other similar mechanical spaces intended only for limited periodic use by service or maintenance personnel.

**405.2 Construction requirements.** The underground portion of the building shall be of Type I construction.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**[F] 405.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** The highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Water-flow switches and control valves shall be supervised in accordance with Section 903.4.

**405.4 Compartmentation.** Compartmentation shall be in accordance with Sections 405.4.1 through 405.4.3.

**405.4.1 Number of compartments.** A building having a floor level more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge shall be divided into not fewer than two compartments of approximately equal size. Such compartmentation shall extend through the highest level of exit discharge serving the underground portions of the building and all levels below.

**Exception:** The lowest story need not be compartmented where the area is not greater than 1,500 square feet ( $139\text{ m}^2$ ) and has an occupant load of less than 10.

**405.4.2 Smoke barrier penetration.** The compartments shall be separated from each other by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. Penetrations between the two compartments shall be limited to plumbing and electrical piping and conduit that are firestopped in accordance with Section 714. Doorways shall be protected by fire door assemblies that comply with Section 716, automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6 and installed in accordance with NFPA 105 and Section 716.2.2.1. Where provided, each compartment shall have an air supply and an exhaust system independent of the other compartments.

**405.4.3 Elevators.** Where elevators are provided, each compartment shall have direct access to an elevator. Where an elevator serves more than one compartment, an enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided and shall be separated from each compartment by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. Doorways in the smoke barrier shall be protected by fire door assemblies that comply with Section 716, shall comply with the smoke and draft control assembly requirements of Section 716.2.2.1 with the UL 1784 test conducted without an artificial bottom seal, and shall be automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6.

**405.5 Smoke control system.** A smoke control system shall be provided in accordance with Sections 405.5.1 and 405.5.2.

**405.5.1 Control system.** A smoke control system is required to control the migration of products of combustion in accordance with Section 909 and the provisions of this section. Smoke control shall restrict movement of smoke to the general area of fire origin and maintain means of egress in a usable condition.

**405.5.2 Compartment smoke control system.** Where compartmentation is required, each compartment shall have an independent smoke control system. The system shall be automatically activated and capable of manual

operation in accordance with Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

**[F] 405.6 Fire alarm systems.** A fire alarm system shall be provided where required by Sections 907.2.18 and 907.2.19.

**405.7 Means of egress.** Means of egress shall be in accordance with Sections 405.7.1 and 405.7.2.

**405.7.1 Number of exits.** Each floor level shall be provided with not fewer than two exits. Where compartmentation is required by Section 405.4, each compartment shall have not fewer than one exit and not fewer than one exit access doorway into the adjoining compartment.

**405.7.2 Smokeproof enclosure.** Every required stairway serving floor levels more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the finished floor of its level of exit discharge shall comply with the requirements for a smokeproof enclosure as provided in Section 1023.12.

**[F] 405.8 Standby and emergency power.** A standby power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the standby power loads specified in Section 405.8.1. An emergency power system complying with Section 2702 shall be provided for the emergency power loads specified in Section 405.8.2.

**[F] 405.8.1 Standby power loads.** The following are classified as standby power loads:

1. Smoke control system.
2. Ventilation and automatic fire detection equipment for smokeproof enclosures.
3. Elevators, as required in Section 3003.

**[F] 405.8.2 Emergency power loads.** The following are classified as emergency power loads:

1. Emergency voice/alarm communications systems.
2. Fire alarm systems.
3. Automatic fire detection systems.
4. Elevator car lighting.
5. Means of egress and exit sign illumination as required by Chapter 10.
6. Fire pumps.

**[F] 405.9 Standpipe system.** The underground building shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system in accordance with Section 905.

## SECTION 406 MOTOR-VEHICLE-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

**406.1 General.** All motor-vehicle-related occupancies shall comply with Section 406.2. Private garages and carports shall also comply with Section 406.3. Open public parking garages shall also comply with Sections 406.4 and 406.5. Enclosed public parking garages shall also comply with Sections 406.4 and 406.6. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall also comply with Section 406.7. Repair garages shall also comply with Section 406.8.

### 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**406.2 Design.** Private garages and carports, open and enclosed public parking garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities and repair garages shall comply with Sections 406.2.1 through 406.2.9.

**406.2.1 Automatic garage door openers and vehicular gates.** Automatic garage door openers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 325. Where provided, automatic vehicular gates shall comply with Section 3110. See *Health and Safety Code Sections 19890, 19891 and 19892 for additional provisions for residential garage door openers.*

**406.2.2 Clear height.** The clear height of each floor level in vehicle and pedestrian traffic areas shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm). Canopies under which fuels are dispensed shall have a clear height in accordance with Section 406.7.2. (*DSA-AC, HCD I-AC*) The clear height of vehicle and pedestrian areas required to be accessible shall comply with Chapter 11A or 11B, as applicable.

**Exception:** A lower clear height is permitted for a parking tier in mechanical-access open parking garages where approved by the building official.

**406.2.3 Accessible parking spaces.** Where parking is provided, accessible parking spaces, access aisles and vehicular routes serving accessible parking shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 11A.

**406.2.4 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces shall be of concrete or similar approved noncombustible and nonabsorbent materials. The area of floor used for the parking of automobiles or other vehicles shall be sloped to facilitate the movement of liquids to a drain or toward the main vehicle entry doorway. The surface of vehicle fueling pads in motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be in accordance with Section 406.7.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Asphalt parking surfaces shall be permitted at ground level for public parking garages and private carports.
2. Slip-resistant, nonabsorbent, interior floor finishes having a critical radiant flux not more than 0.45 W/cm<sup>2</sup>, as determined by ASTM E648 or NFPA 253, shall be permitted in repair garages.

**406.2.5 Sleeping rooms.** Openings between a motor vehicle-related occupancy and a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

**406.2.6 Fuel dispensing.** The dispensing of fuel shall only be permitted in motor fuel-dispensing facilities in accordance with Section 406.7.

**406.2.7 Electric vehicle charging stations and systems.** Where provided, electric vehicle charging systems shall be installed in accordance with the *California Electrical Code* and the *California Green Building Standards Code*. Electric vehicle charging system equipment shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2202. Electric vehicle supply equipment shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2594. Accessibility to electric vehicle charging

stations shall be provided in accordance with *Chapters 11A and/or 11B.*

**406.2.8 Mixed occupancies and uses.** Mixed uses shall be allowed in the same building as public parking garages and repair garages in accordance with Section 508.1. Mixed uses in the same building as an open parking garage are subject to Sections 402.4.2.3, 406.5.11, 508.1, 510.3, 510.4 and 510.7.

**406.2.9 Equipment and appliances.** Equipment and appliances shall be installed in accordance with Sections 406.2.9.1 through 406.2.9.3 and the *California Mechanical Code*, *California Plumbing Code* and *California Electrical Code*.

**406.2.9.1 Elevation of ignition sources.** Equipment and appliances having an ignition source and located in hazardous locations and public garages, private garages, repair garages, automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities and parking garages shall be elevated such that the source of ignition is not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor surface on which the equipment or appliance rests. For the purpose of this section, rooms or spaces that are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit and that communicate directly with a private garage through openings shall be considered to be part of the private garage.

**Exception:** Elevation of the ignition source is not required for appliances that are listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

**406.2.9.1.1 Parking garages.** Connection of a parking garage with any room in which there is a fuel-fired appliance shall be by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation, except that a single door is permitted where the sources of ignition in the appliance are elevated in accordance with Section 406.2.9.

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to appliance installations complying with Section 406.2.9.2 or 406.2.9.3.

**406.2.9.2 Public garages.** Appliances located in public garages, motor fuel-dispensing facilities, repair garages or other areas frequented by motor vehicles shall be installed not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. Where motor vehicles are capable of passing under an appliance, the appliance shall be installed at the clearances required by the appliance manufacturer and not less than 1 foot (305 mm) higher than the tallest vehicle garage door opening.

**Exception:** The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor vehicle impact and installed in accordance with Section 406.2.9.1 and NFPA 30A.

**406.2.9.3 Private garages.** Appliances located in private garages and carports shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor.

**Exception:** The requirements of this section shall not apply where the appliances are protected from motor

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

vehicle impact and are installed in accordance with Section 406.2.9.1.

**406.3 Private garages and carports.** Private garages and carports shall comply with Sections 406.2 and 406.3, or they shall comply with Sections 406.2 and 406.4.

**406.3.1 Classification.** Private garages and carports shall be classified as Group U occupancies. Each private garage shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) in area. Multiple private garages are permitted in a building where each private garage is separated from the other private garages by 1-hour fire barriers in accordance with Section 707, or 1-hour horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**Exception:** *The area of a private garage accessory to Group R-3 one- or two-family dwellings shall not be greater than 3,000 square feet in area.*

**406.3.2 Separation.** For other than private garages adjacent to dwelling units, the separation of private garages from other occupancies shall comply with Section 508. Separation of private garages from dwelling units shall comply with Sections 406.3.2.1 and 406.3.2.2.

**406.3.2.1 Dwelling unit separation.** The private garage shall be separated from the dwelling unit and its attic area by means of gypsum board, not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, applied to the garage side. Garages beneath habitable rooms shall be separated from all habitable rooms above by not less than a  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board or equivalent and  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board applied to structures supporting the separation from habitable rooms above the garage. Door openings between a private garage and the dwelling unit shall be equipped with either solid wood doors or solid or honeycomb core steel doors not less than  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inches (34.9 mm) in thickness, or doors in compliance with Section 716.2.2.1 with a fire protection rating of not less than 20 minutes. Doors shall be self-closing and self-latching.

**406.3.2.2 Ducts.** Ducts in a private garage and ducts penetrating the walls or ceilings separating the dwelling unit from the garage, including its attic area, shall be constructed of sheet steel of not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and shall not have openings into the garage.

**406.3.3 Carports.** Carports shall be open on not fewer than two sides. Carports open on fewer than two sides shall be considered to be a garage and shall comply with the requirements for private garages.

**406.3.3.1 Carport separation.** A separation is not required between a Group R-3 and U carport, provided that the carport is entirely open on two or more sides and there are not enclosed areas above.

**406.4 Public parking garages.** Parking garages, other than private garages, shall be classified as public parking garages and shall comply with the provisions of Sections 406.2 and 406.4 and shall be classified as either an open parking garage or an enclosed parking garage. Open parking garages shall also comply with Section 406.5. Enclosed parking garages

shall also comply with Section 406.6. See Section 510 for special provisions for parking garages.

**406.4.1 Guards.** Guards shall be provided in accordance with Section 1015. Guards serving as vehicle barriers shall comply with Sections 406.4.2 and 1015.

**406.4.2 Vehicle barriers.** Vehicle barriers not less than 2 feet 9 inches (835 mm) in height shall be placed where the vertical distance from the floor of a drive lane or parking space to the ground or surface directly below is greater than 1 foot (305 mm). Vehicle barriers shall comply with the loading requirements of Section 1607.10.

**Exception:** Vehicle barriers are not required in vehicle storage compartments in a mechanical access parking garage.

**406.4.3 Ramps.** Vehicle ramps shall not be considered as required exits unless pedestrian facilities are provided. Vehicle ramps that are utilized for vertical circulation as well as for parking shall not exceed a slope of 1 unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.67-percent slope).

**406.5 Open parking garages.** Open parking garages shall comply with Sections 406.2, 406.4 and 406.5.

**406.5.1 Construction.** Open parking garages shall be of Type I, II or IV construction. Open parking garages shall meet the design requirements of Chapter 16. For vehicle barriers, see Section 406.4.2.

**406.5.2 Openings.** For natural ventilation purposes, the exterior side of the structure shall have uniformly distributed openings on two or more sides. The area of such openings in exterior walls on a tier shall be not less than 20 percent of the total perimeter wall area of each tier. The aggregate length of the openings considered to be providing natural ventilation shall be not less than 40 percent of the perimeter of the tier. Interior walls shall be not less than 20 percent open with uniformly distributed openings.

**Exception:** Openings are not required to be distributed over 40 percent of the building perimeter where the required openings are uniformly distributed over two opposing sides of the building.

**406.5.2.1 Openings below grade.** Where openings below grade provide required natural ventilation, the outside horizontal clear space shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The width of the horizontal clear space shall be maintained from grade down to the bottom of the lowest required opening.

**406.5.3 Mixed occupancies and uses.** Mixed uses shall be allowed in the same building as an open parking garage subject to the provisions of Sections 402.4.2.3, 406.5.11, 508.1, 510.3, 510.4 and 510.7.

**406.5.4 Area and height.** Area and height of open parking garages shall be limited as set forth in Chapter 5 for Group S-2 occupancies and as further provided for in Section 508.1.

**406.5.4.1 Single use.** Where the open parking garage is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, and the building is without other uses, the area and height shall be permitted to comply with

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

Table 406.5.4, along with increases allowed by Section 406.5.5.

**Exception:** The grade-level tier is permitted to contain an office, waiting and toilet rooms having a total combined area of not more than 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ). Such area need not be separated from the open parking garage.

In open parking garages having a spiral or sloping floor, the horizontal projection of the structure at any cross section shall not exceed the allowable area per parking tier. In the case of an open parking garage having a continuous spiral floor, each 9 feet 6 inches (2896 mm) of height, or portion thereof, shall be considered under these provisions to be a tier.

**406.5.5 Area and height increases.** The allowable area and height of open parking garages shall be increased in accordance with the provisions of this section. Garages with sides open on three-fourths of the building's perimeter are permitted to be increased by 25 percent in area and one tier in height. Garages with sides open around the entire building's perimeter are permitted to be increased by 50 percent in area and one tier in height. For a side to be considered open under these provisions, the total area of openings along the side shall be not less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm).

Allowable tier areas in Table 406.5.4 shall be increased for open parking garages constructed to heights less than the table maximum. The gross tier area of the garage shall not exceed that permitted for the higher structure. Not fewer than three sides of each such larger tier shall have continuous horizontal openings not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in clear height extending for not less than 80 percent of the length of the sides. All parts of such larger tier shall be not more than 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such an opening. In addition, each such opening shall face a street or yard with access to a street with a width of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) for the full length of the opening, and standpipes shall be provided in each such tier.

Open parking garages of Type II construction, with all sides open, shall be unlimited in allowable area where the

building height does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm). For a side to be considered open, the total area of openings along the side shall be not less than 50 percent of the interior area of the side at each tier and such openings shall be equally distributed along the length of the tier. For purposes of calculating the interior area of the side, the height shall not exceed 7 feet (2134 mm). All portions of tiers shall be within 200 feet (60 960 mm) horizontally from such openings or other natural ventilation openings as defined in Section 406.5.2. These openings shall be permitted to be provided in courts with a minimum dimension of 20 feet (6096 mm) for the full width of the openings.

**406.5.6 Fire separation distance.** Exterior walls and openings in exterior walls shall comply with Table 601 and Table 705.5. The distance to an adjacent lot line shall be determined in accordance with Section 705 and Table 705.5.

**406.5.7 Means of egress.** Where persons other than parking attendants are permitted, open parking garages shall meet the means of egress requirements of Chapter 10. Where persons other than parking attendants are not permitted, there shall be not fewer than two exit stairways. Each exit stairway shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. Lifts shall be permitted to be installed for use of employees only, provided that they are completely enclosed by noncombustible materials.

**[F] 406.5.8 Standpipe system.** An open parking garage shall be equipped with a standpipe system as required by Section 905.3.

**406.5.9 Enclosure of vertical openings.** Enclosure shall not be required for vertical openings except as specified in Section 406.5.7.

**406.5.10 Ventilation.** Ventilation, other than the percentage of openings specified in Section 406.5.2, shall not be required.

**406.5.11 Prohibitions.** The following uses and alterations are not permitted:

1. Vehicle repair work.
2. Parking of buses, trucks and similar vehicles.
3. Partial or complete closing of required openings in exterior walls by tarpaulins or any other means.
4. Dispensing of fuel.

TABLE 406.5.4  
OPEN PARKING GARAGES AREA AND HEIGHT

TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	AREA PER TIER (square feet)	Ramp access	HEIGHT (in tiers)	
			Mechanical access	
			Automatic sprinkler system	
			No	Yes
IA	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited	Unlimited
IB	Unlimited	12 tiers	12 tiers	18 tiers
IIA	50,000	10 tiers	10 tiers	15 tiers
IIB	50,000	8 tiers	8 tiers	12 tiers
IV	50,000	4 tiers	4 tiers	4 tiers

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**406.6 Enclosed parking garages.** Enclosed parking garages shall comply with Sections 406.2, 406.4 and 406.6.

**406.6.1 Heights and areas.** Enclosed vehicle parking garages and portions thereof that do not meet the definition of open parking garages shall be limited to the allowable heights and areas specified in Sections 504 and 506 as modified by Section 507. Roof parking is permitted.

**406.6.2 Ventilation.** A mechanical ventilation system and exhaust system shall be provided in accordance with Chapters 4 and 5 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**Exception:** Mechanical ventilation shall not be required for enclosed parking garages that are accessory to one- and two-family dwellings.

[F] **406.6.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** An enclosed parking garage shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.10.

**406.6.4 Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages.** Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages shall be in accordance with Sections 406.6.4.1 through 406.6.4.4.

**406.6.4.1 Separation.** Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages shall be separated from other occupancies and accessory uses by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or by not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Refer to Table 508.4 for additional requirements.

**406.6.4.2 Smoke removal.** A mechanical smoke removal system, installed in accordance with Section 910.4, shall be provided for all areas containing a mechanical-access enclosed parking garage.

**406.6.4.3 Fire control equipment room.** Fire control equipment, consisting of the fire alarm control unit, mechanical ventilation controls and an emergency shutdown switch, shall be provided in a room located where the equipment is able to be accessed by the fire service from a secured exterior door of the building. The room shall be not less than 50 square feet ( $4.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and shall be in a location that is approved by the fire code official.

**Exception:** A fire control room shall not be required where there is a fire command center provided in compliance with Section 911 of this code.

**406.6.4.3.1 Emergency shutdown switch.** The mechanical parking system shall be provided with a manually activated emergency shutdown switch for use by emergency personnel. The switch shall be clearly identified and shall be in a location approved by the fire code official.

**406.6.4 Fire department access doors.** Access doors shall be provided in accordance with Section 3206.7 of the *California Fire Code*.

**406.7 Motor fuel-dispensing facilities.** Motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with the *California Fire Code* and Sections 406.2 and 406.7.

**406.7.1 Vehicle fueling pad.** The vehicle shall be fueled on noncoated concrete or other approved paving material having a resistance not exceeding 1 megohm as determined by the methodology in CEN EN 1081.

**406.7.2 Canopies.** Canopies under which fuels are dispensed shall have a clear, unobstructed height of not less than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm) to the lowest projecting element in the vehicle drive-through area. Canopies and their supports over pumps shall be of noncombustible materials, fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Chapter 23, heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11 or construction providing 1-hour fire resistance. Combustible materials used in or on a canopy shall comply with one of the following:

1. Shielded from the pumps by a noncombustible element of the canopy, or heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11.
2. Plastics covered by aluminum facing having a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.30 mm) or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.016 inch (0.41 mm). The plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the form intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater when tested in accordance with ASTM D1929.
3. Panels constructed of light-transmitting plastic materials shall be permitted to be installed in canopies erected over motor vehicle fuel-dispensing station fuel dispensers, provided that the panels are located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from any building on the same lot and face yards or streets not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width on the other sides. The aggregate areas of plastics shall be not greater than 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ). The maximum area of any individual panel shall be not greater than 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**406.7.2.1 Canopies used to support gaseous hydrogen systems.** Canopies that are used to shelter dispensing operations where flammable compressed gases are located on the roof of the canopy shall be in accordance with the following:

1. The canopy shall meet or exceed Type I construction requirements.
2. Operations located under canopies shall be limited to refueling only.
3. The canopy shall be constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of hydrogen gas.

**406.8 Repair garages.** Repair garages shall be constructed in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and Sections 406.2 and 406.8. This occupancy shall not include motor fuel-dispensing facilities, as regulated in Section 406.7.

**406.8.1 Ventilation.** Repair garages shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*. The ventilation system shall be controlled at the entrance to the garage.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**[F] 406.8.2 Gas detection system.** Repair garages used for repair of vehicles fueled by nonodorized gases including but not limited to hydrogen and nonodorized LNG, shall be provided with a gas detection system that complies with Section 916. The gas detection system shall be designed to detect leakage of nonodorized gaseous fuel. Where lubrication or chassis service pits are provided in garages used for repairing nonodorized LNG-fueled vehicles, gas sensors shall be provided in such pits.

**[F] 406.8.2.1 System activation.** Activation of a gas detection alarm shall result in all of the following:

1. Initiation of distinct audible and visual alarm signals in the repair garage, where the ventilation system is interlocked with gas detection.
2. Deactivation of all heating systems located in the repair garage.
3. Activation of the mechanical ventilation system, where the system is interlocked with gas detection.

**[F] 406.8.2.2 Failure of the gas detection system.** Failure of the gas detection system shall automatically deactivate the heating system, activate the mechanical ventilation system where the system is interlocked with the gas detection system, and cause a trouble signal to sound at an approved location.

**[F] 406.8.3 Automatic sprinkler system.** A repair garage shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.9.1.

#### 406.9 Electric vehicle. [SFM]

**406.9.1 Charging.** In any building or interior area used for charging electric vehicles, electrical equipment shall be installed in accordance with the California Electrical Code.

**406.9.2 Ventilation.** Mechanical exhaust ventilation, when required by the California Electrical Code shall be provided at a rate as required by Article 625 or as required by Section 1203 of the California Building Code whichever is greater. The ventilation system shall include both the supply and exhaust equipment and shall be permanently installed and located to intake supply air from the outdoors, and vent the exhaust directly to, the outdoors without conducting the exhaust air through other spaces within the building.

**Exception:** Positive pressure ventilation systems shall only be allowed in buildings or areas that have been designed and approved for that application.

**406.9.3 Electrical interface.** The electrical supply circuit to electrically powered mechanical ventilation equipment shall be interlocked with the recharging equipment used to supply the vehicle(s) being charged, and shall remain energized during the entire charging cycle. Electric vehicle recharging equipment shall be marked or labeled in accordance with the California Electrical Code.

#### Exceptions:

1. Exhaust ventilation shall not be required in areas with an approved engineered ventilation system,

which maintains a hydrogen gas concentration at less than 25 percent of the lower flammability limit.

2. Mechanical exhaust ventilation for hydrogen shall not be required where the charging equipment utilized is installed and listed for indoor charging of electric vehicles without ventilation.

### SECTION 407 GROUP I-2 AND GROUP I-2.1

**407.1 General.** Occupancies in Group I-2 and I-2.1 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 407.1 through 407.13 and other applicable provisions of this code.

**407.1.1 Construction.** Group I-2 occupancies wherein mental health patients are restrained shall be housed in buildings of Type IA or Type IB construction.

**Exception:** Occupancies in Group I-2 wherein mental health patients are restrained are permitted to be housed in one-story buildings of Type IIA, Type IIIA or Type VA construction provided the floor area does not exceed 5,200 square feet ( $483\text{ m}^2$ ) between fire walls of two-hour fire-resistive construction with openings protected by fire assemblies having a  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -hour fire protection rating.

**407.2 Corridors continuity and separation.** Corridors in occupancies in Group I-2 and I-2.1 shall be continuous to the exits and shall be separated from other areas in accordance with Section 407.3 except spaces conforming to Sections 407.2.1 through 407.2.5.

**407.2.1 Waiting and similar areas.** Waiting areas and similar public-use areas or group meeting spaces constructed as required for corridors shall be permitted to be open to a corridor, only where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The spaces are not occupied as care recipient's sleeping rooms, treatment rooms, incidental uses listed in Table 509, in accordance with Section 509, or hazardous uses.
2. The open space is protected by an automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.
3. The corridors onto which the spaces open, in the same smoke compartment, are protected by an automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, and the smoke compartment in which the spaces are located is equipped throughout with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.
4. The space is arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exits.
5. Each space is located to permit direct visual supervision by the facility staff.

**407.2.2 Nurse stations.** Spaces for care providers', supervisory staff, doctors' and nurses' charting, communications and related clerical areas shall be permit-

II

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

ted to be open to, or located within the corridor, provided the required construction along the perimeter of the corridor is maintained. Construction of nurse stations or portions of nurse stations, within the envelope of the corridor is not required to be fire-resistive rated. Nurse stations in new and existing facilities see the California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 1, Subchapter 1, Article 3, Section 3.11(d) for storage and equipment requirements.

In detention or secure mental health facilities, the provisions above applies to enclosed nurse stations within the corridor.

**407.2.3 Psychiatric treatment areas.** Areas wherein psychiatric care recipients who are incapable of self-preservation are housed, or group meeting or multipurpose therapeutic spaces other than incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, under continuous supervision by facility staff, shall be permitted to be open to the corridor, where the following criteria are met:

1. Each area does not exceed 1,500 square feet ( $140 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. The area is located to permit supervision by the facility staff.
3. The area is arranged so as not to obstruct any access to the required exits.
4. The area is equipped with an automatic *smoke* detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.2.
5. Not more than one such space is permitted in any one smoke compartment.
6. The walls and ceilings of the space are constructed as required for corridors.

**407.2.4 Gift shops.** Gift shops and associated storage that are less than 500 square feet ( $455 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area shall be permitted to be open to the corridor where such spaces are constructed as required for corridors.

**407.2.5 Nursing home housing units.** In Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies, in areas where nursing home residents are housed, shared living spaces, group meeting or multipurpose therapeutic spaces shall be permitted to be open to the corridor, where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The walls and ceilings of the space are constructed as required for corridors.
2. The spaces are not occupied as resident sleeping rooms, treatment rooms, incidental uses in accordance with Section 509, or hazardous uses.
3. The open space is protected by an automatic *smoke* detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.
4. The corridors onto which the spaces open, in the same smoke compartment, are protected by an automatic *smoke* detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, and the smoke compartment in which the spaces are located is equipped throughout with quick-response sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.2.

5. The space is arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exits.

6. Each space is located to permit direct visual supervision by the facility staff.

**407.2.6 Nursing home cooking facilities.** In Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies, rooms or spaces that contain a cooking facility with domestic cooking appliances shall be permitted in fully sprinklered buildings where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The number of care recipients housed in the smoke compartment shall not be greater than 30.
2. The number of care recipients served by the cooking facility shall not be greater than 30.
3. Only one cooking facility area shall be permitted in a smoke compartment.
4. The space containing the domestic cooking facility shall be arranged so as not to obstruct access to the required exit.
5. The cooking appliance shall comply with Section 407.2.7.

**407.2.7 Domestic cooking appliances.** In Group I-2 occupancies, installation of cooking appliances used in domestic cooking facilities shall comply with all of the following:

1. The types of cooking appliances permitted shall be limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers and microwaves.
2. Domestic cooking hoods installed and constructed in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* shall be provided over cooktops and ranges.
3. Cooktops and ranges shall be protected in accordance with Section 904.14.
4. A shut-off for the fuel and electrical power supply to the cooking equipment shall be provided in a location to which only staff has access.
5. A timer shall be provided that automatically deactivates the cooking appliances within a period of not more than 120 minutes.
6. A portable fire extinguisher shall be provided. Installation shall be in accordance with Section 906, and the extinguisher shall be located within a 30-foot (9144 mm) distance of travel from each domestic cooking appliance.

### Exceptions:

1. Cooktops and ranges located within smoke compartments with no patient sleeping or patient care areas are not required to comply with Items 3, 4 and 5 of this section.
2. Cooktops and ranges used for care recipient training or nutritional counseling are not required to comply with Item 3 of this section.

**407.3 Corridor wall construction.** Corridor walls shall be constructed as *fire* partitions in accordance with Section 708.

**407.3.1 Corridor doors.** In fully sprinklered buildings, corridor doors, other than those in a wall required to be rated by Section 509.4 or for the enclosure of a vertical opening or an exit, shall not have a required fire protection rating and shall not be required to be equipped with self-closing or automatic-closing devices, but shall provide an effective barrier to limit the transfer of smoke and shall be equipped with positive latching. In Group I-2 Occupancies, self-closing or automatic-closing devices are not required on corridor doors to patient sleeping rooms, treatment rooms and offices located in areas specified in Sections 1224 and 1225, excluding offices specified in Sections 1224.21 and 1225.8. Roller latches are not permitted. Other doors shall conform to Section 716.

**407.3.1.1 Door construction.** Corridor doors not required to have a fire protection rating shall comply with the following:

1. Solid doors shall have close-fitting operational tolerances, head and jamb stops.
2. Dutch-style doors shall have an astragal, rabbet or bevel at the meeting edges of the upper and lower door sections. Both the upper and lower door sections shall have latching hardware. Dutch-style doors shall have hardware that connects the upper and lower sections to function as a single leaf.

**407.3.1.2 Swing of corridor doors.** Corridor doors, other than those equipped with self-closing or automatic-closing devices shall not swing into the required width of corridors.

**Exception:** In detention and/or secure mental health facilities, doors may swing into required width of corridors as long as 44 inches clear is maintained with any one door open 90 degrees and clear corridor widths required in Chapter 12 can be maintained with doors open 180 degrees.

**407.3.2 Glazing.** In fully sprinklered buildings, fixed fully tempered or laminated glass in wood or metal frames may be used in corridor walls, provided the glazed area does not exceed 25 percent of the areas of the corridor wall of the room. The total area of glass in corridor walls is not limited when the glazing is fixed  $\frac{1}{3}$ -hour fire-protection-rated glazing in approved frames and the size of individual glazed panel does not exceed 1,296 square inches ( $0.836 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**407.4 Means of egress.** Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies shall be provided with means of egress complying with Chapter 10 and Sections 407.4.1 through 407.4.4. The fire safety and evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1002.2 shall identify the building components necessary to support a defend-in-place emergency response in accordance with Sections 403 and 404 of the California Fire Code.

**407.4.1 Direct access to a corridor.** Habitable rooms in Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies shall have an exit access door leading directly to a corridor.

**Exceptions:**

1. Rooms with exit doors opening directly to the outside at ground level.

2. Rooms arranged as care suites complying with Section 407.4.4.

**407.4.1.1 Locking devices.** Locking devices that restrict access to a care recipient's room from the corridor and that are operable only by staff from the corridor side shall not restrict the means of egress from the care recipient's room.

**Exceptions:**

1. This section shall not apply to rooms in psychiatric treatment and similar care areas.
2. Locking arrangements in accordance with Section 1010.2.14.

**407.4.1.2 Basement exits.** All rooms below grade shall have not less than one exit access that leads directly to an exterior exit door opening directly to an exit discharge at grade plane or the public way.

**407.4.2 Distance of travel.** The distance of travel between any point in a Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancy sleeping room, not located in a care suite, and an exit access door in that room shall be not greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**407.4.2.1 Two means of egress.** Any sleeping room of more than 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall have no fewer than two exit access doors from the sleeping room located in accordance with Section 1007.1. Any room, other than sleeping rooms, with an area of more than 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall have no fewer than two exit access doors from the room located in accordance with Section 1007.1.

**407.4.3 Reserved.**

**407.4.4 Group I-2 and I-2.1 care suites.** Care suites in Group I-2 and I-2.1 shall comply with Sections 407.4.4.1 through 407.4.4.4 and either Section 407.4.4.5 or 407.4.4.6.

**407.4.4.1 Exit access through care suites.** Exit access from all other portions of a building not classified as a care suite shall not pass through a care suite.

**407.4.4.2 Separation.** Care suites shall be separated from other portions of the building, including other care suites, not less than a one-hour fire barrier complying with Section 707. Each suite of rooms shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a one-hour fire barrier.

**407.4.4.3 Access to corridor.** Movement from habitable rooms shall be in accordance with Sections 407.4.4.3.1, 407.4.4.3.2 and 407.4.4.5.3.

**407.4.4.3.1 One intervening room.** Movement from habitable rooms shall not require passage through more than one intervening room and 100 feet (30 480 mm) distance of travel within the care suite.

**407.4.4.3.2 Two intervening rooms.** Movement from habitable rooms other than sleeping rooms located within a care suite, shall not require passage through more than two intervening rooms and 50 feet (15 240 mm) distance of exit access travel within the care suite.

**Exception:** The distance of travel shall be permitted to be increased to 100 feet (38 100 mm)

*where an automatic fire sprinkler system is provided throughout the Group I-2 fire area and an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the care suite and installed in accordance with NFPA 72.*

**407.4.4.4 Doors within care suites.** Doors in care suites serving habitable rooms shall be permitted to comply with one of the following:

1. Manually operated horizontal sliding doors permitted in accordance with Exception 9 to Section 1010.1.2.
2. Power-operated doors permitted in accordance with Section 1010.1.2, Exception 7.
3. Means of egress doors complying with Section 1010.

**407.4.4.5 Care suites containing sleeping room areas.** Sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be grouped into care suites where one of the following criteria is met:

1. The arrangement of the care suite allows for direct and constant visual supervision into the sleeping rooms by care providers.
2. In fully sprinklered buildings, an automatic smoke detection system is provided in the sleeping rooms and installed in accordance with Section 907.2.6.2.2, Item 1 and NFPA 72.

**407.4.4.5.1 Area.** Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be not greater than 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area.

#### Exceptions:

1. Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 7,500 square feet ( $696 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area where an automatic fire sprinkler system is provided throughout the Group I-2 fire area.
2. Care suites containing sleeping rooms shall be permitted to be not greater than 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area where an automatic fire sprinkler system is provided throughout the Group I-2 fire area and where an automatic smoke detection system is provided throughout the care suite and installed in accordance with Section 907.

**407.4.4.5.2 Exit access.** Any sleeping room, or any care suite that contains sleeping rooms, of more than 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall have not fewer than two exit access doors from the care suite located in accordance with Section 1007.

**407.4.4.5.3 Travel distance.** The travel distance between any point in a care suite containing sleeping rooms and an exit access door from that care suite shall be not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

**407.4.4.6 Care suites not containing sleeping rooms.** Areas not containing sleeping rooms, but only treatment areas and the associated rooms, spaces or

circulation space, shall be permitted to be grouped into care suites and shall conform to the limitations in Sections 407.4.4.6.1 and 407.4.4.6.2.

**407.4.4.6.1 Area.** Care suites of rooms, other than sleeping rooms, shall have an area not greater than 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ). 

**407.4.4.6.2 Exit access.** Any room or care suite, other than sleeping rooms, with an area of more than 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall have not fewer than two exit access doors from the room or care suite located in accordance with Section 1007. 

**407.4.5 Group I-2 and I-2.1 nonpatient-care suites.** The means of egress provisions for nonpatient-care suites shall be in accordance with the primary use and occupancy of the suite.

**407.4.5.1 Separation.** Nonpatient-care suites shall be separated from other portions of the building, including other suites, by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier complying with Section 707. Each suite of rooms shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier.

**407.4.5.2 Area.** Nonpatient-care suites of rooms shall have an area not greater than 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**407.4.5.3 Automatic sprinkler system protection.** Nonpatient-care suites shall be located in fully sprinklered buildings.

**407.5 Smoke barriers.** Smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide every story used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping into not fewer than two smoke compartments. Smoke barriers shall be provided to subdivide other stories with an occupant load of 50 or more persons, regardless of occupancy or use, into not fewer than two smoke compartments. The smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Section 709.

#### Exceptions:

1. This requirement shall not apply to Group I-2.1 less than  $10,000 \text{ ft}^2$  ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. An area in an adjoining occupancy shall be permitted to serve as a smoke compartment for a Group I-2.1 facility if the following criteria are met:
  - 2.1. The separating wall and both compartments meet the requirements of 407.5.
  - 2.2. The Group I-2.1 is less than  $22,500 \text{ ft}^2$  ( $2100 \text{ m}^2$ ).
  - 2.3. Access from the Group I-2.1 to the other occupancy is unrestricted.
3. This requirement shall not apply to the following:
  - 3.1. Any story, not containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, that is located above a story containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy.
  - 3.2. Areas that do not contain a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, where such areas are separated from the Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

by a horizontal exit in accordance with Section 1026.2.

- 3.3. Any story, not containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, that is located more than one story below a story containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy.
- 3.4. Any story housing only mechanical equipment where such story is located below a story containing a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy and is separated from the story above by a horizontal assembly having not less than a 2 hour fire resistance-rating.

**407.5.1 Smoke compartment size.** Stories shall be divided into smoke compartments with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet ( $2092\text{ m}^2$ ) in Group I-2 occupancies.

**407.5.2 Exit access travel distance.** The distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

**407.5.3 Refuge area.** Refuge areas shall be provided within each smoke compartment. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining smoke compartment. Where a smoke compartment is adjoined by two or more smoke compartments, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest occupant load of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 30 net square feet ( $2.8\text{ m}^2$ ) for each care recipient confined to bed or stretcher.
2. Not less than 6 square feet ( $0.56\text{ m}^2$ ) for each ambulatory care recipient not confined to bed or stretcher and for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of refuge area are corridors, sleeping areas, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

**407.5.4 Independent egress.** A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated. Smoke compartments that do not contain an exit shall be provided with direct access to not less than two adjacent smoke compartments.

**407.5.5 Horizontal assemblies.** Horizontal assemblies supporting smoke barriers required by this section shall be designed to resist the movement of smoke. Elevator lobbies shall be in accordance with Section 3006.2.

**407.6 Automatic-closing doors.** Automatic-closing doors with hold-open devices shall comply with Sections 709.5 and 716.2.

**407.6.1 Activation of automatic-closing doors.** Automatic-closing doors on hold-open devices in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6 shall also close upon activation of a fire alarm system, an automatic sprinkler system, or both. The automatic release of the hold-open device on one door

shall release all such doors within the same smoke compartment.

**[F] 407.7 Automatic sprinkler system.** Every facility as specified herein wherein more than six clients or patients are housed or cared for on the premises on a 24-hour per-day-basis shall have installed and maintained in an operable condition in every building or portion thereof where clients or patients are housed, an automatic sprinkler system of a type approved by the state fire marshal. The provisions of this subsection shall apply to every person, firm or corporation establishing, maintaining or operating a hospital, children's home, children's nursery or institution, or a home or institution for the care of aged or persons with dementia or other cognitive impairments, or any institution for persons with mental illness or persons with developmental disabilities and any nursing or convalescent home, and to any state-owned or state-occupied building used for any of the types of facilities specified herein.

#### Exceptions:

1. This section shall not apply to homes or institutions for the 24-hour-per-day care of ambulatory children if all of the following conditions are satisfied:

1.1. The buildings or portions thereof in which children are housed are not more than two stories in height and are constructed and maintained in accordance with regulations adopted by the state fire marshal.

1.2. The buildings or portions thereof housing more than six such children shall have installed and maintained in an operable condition therein, a fire alarm system of a type approved by the state fire marshal. Such system shall be activated by detectors responding to invisible particles of combustion other than heat, except that detectors used in closets, usable under-floor areas, storage rooms, bathrooms, attached garages, attics, plenums, laundry rooms and rooms of similar use, may be heat-responsive devices.

1.3. The building or portions thereof do not house persons with mental illness or children with developmental disabilities.

2. This section shall not apply to any one-story building or structure of an institution or home for the care of the aged providing 24-hour-per-day care if such building or structure is used or intended to be used for the housing of no more than six ambulatory aged persons. Such buildings or institutions shall have installed and maintained in an operable condition herein a fire alarm system of a type approved by the state fire marshal. Such system shall be activated by detectors responding to either visible or invisible particles of combustion other than heat, except that detectors used in closets, usable under-floor areas, storage rooms, bathrooms, attached garages, attics, plenums, laundry rooms and rooms of similar use, may be heat-responsive devices.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

*3. This section shall not apply to occupancies or any alterations thereto conforming to the construction provisions of this exception which were under construction or in existence on March 4, 1972. "Under construction" as used in this exception shall mean that actual work had been performed on the construction site and shall not be construed to mean that the hospital, home, nursery, institution, sanitarium or any portion thereof, was or is in the planning stage. The provisions of this exception shall apply to those buildings or structures having bearing walls and structural flame protected in accordance with the provisions of Column Type 1A of Table 601.*

**4. In detention facilities where inmates are not restrained.**

*The provisions of this section shall not apply to any facility used to house six or less persons on the premises.*

**407.7.1** When a new addition is to be made to an unsprinklered building or structure as permitted by this subsection, such new addition shall be sprinklered as required by this section and shall be separated from the existing building or structures by not less than a two-hour fire-resistant fire barrier.

*When a sprinkler system is added to an existing unsprinklered building or structure, the sprinklered area(s) shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a one-hour fire-resistant fire barrier. The provisions of this section do not apply to any facility used to house six or less persons on the premises.*

**[F] 407.8 Fire alarm system.** A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.

**[F] 407.9 Automatic smoke detection.** Automatic smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.2.2.

**407.10 Secured yards.** Grounds are permitted to be fenced and gates therein are permitted to be equipped with locks, provided that safe dispersal areas having 30 net square feet ( $2.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) for bed and stretcher care recipients and 6 net square feet ( $0.56 \text{ m}^2$ ) for ambulatory care recipients and other occupants are located between the building and the fence. Such provided safe dispersal areas shall be located not less than 50 feet (1524 mm) from the building they serve. Each safe dispersal area shall have a minimum of two exits. The aggregate clear width of exits from a safe dispersal area shall be determined on the basis of not less than one exit unit of 22 inches (559 mm) for each 500 persons to be accommodated, and no exit shall be less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width. Gates shall not be installed across corridors or passageways leading to such dispersal areas unless they comply with egress requirements. Keys to gate locks shall be provided in accordance with the California Fire Code.

**[F] 407.11 Electrical systems.** In Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancies, electrical construction and installation shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 27 and Article 517 of the California Electrical Code.

**407.12 Technology equipment center.** A technology equipment center serving a Group I-2 occupancy shall be separated from other portions of the building by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section

707 and a 1-hour horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711 or both.

**407.13 Special Hazards.**

**407.13.1** Storage and handling of flammable, combustible liquids and hazardous materials shall be in accordance with the California Fire Code.

**407.13.2** All exterior openings in a boiler room or room containing central heating equipment, if located below openings in another story, or if less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from other doors or windows of the same building, shall be protected by a fire assembly having a three-fourths-hour fire protection rating.

**407.13.3 Safety padding.** See Sections 308.1 and 408.14.

**407.13.4 Floor surfaces.** Rooms occupied by patients whose personal liberties are restrained shall have noncombustible floor surfaces see Sections 308.1 and 804.4.3.

## SECTION 408 GROUP I-3

**408.1 General.** Occupancies in Group I-3 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 408.1 through 408.11 and other applicable provisions of this code (see Section 308.5).

**408.1.2 Construction.** Group I-3 Occupancies shall be housed in buildings of Type IA or Type IB.

**Exception:** Such occupancies may be housed in one-story buildings of Type IIA, Type IIIA or Type VA construction provided the floor area does not exceed 5,200 square feet ( $483 \text{ m}^2$ ) between fire walls of two-hour fire-resistant construction with openings protected by fire assemblies having 1- and  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -hour fire-protection rating.

**408.1.2.1 Nonbearing walls and partitions interior.** Nonbearing cell or dormitory walls within cell complexes shall be of noncombustible construction.

**408.1.2.2 Intervening spaces.** Common rooms and spaces within Group I-3 occupancies of Type I construction shall be considered an intervening space in accordance with Section 1016.2 when the area is contained within housing units or suites, and not considered a corridor, when they meet any of the following:

1. Within prisons and local detention facilities of Type I construction, the exit access within a housing unit may be non-rated provided the required exit occupant load from any dayroom does not exceed 64 persons.
2. Within prison, jails and courthouses: Circulation within any temporary holding suite of Type I construction and an occupant load less than 100.
3. Within prisons and local detention facilities, correctional medical or mental health housing suites, of Type I construction and an occupant load less than 100.
4. Within prisons and local detention facilities of Type I construction, detention program housing units or suites having an occupant load less than 100.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**408.1.2.3 Courthouse holding facilities.** Group I-3 courthouse holding facilities shall be considered a separate and distinct building from the remaining courthouse building for the purpose of determining the type of construction where all of the following conditions are met:

1. 2-hour fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 and 2-hour horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711 are provided to separate the courthouse holding facility from all other portions of the courthouse building.
2. Any of the structure used to support courthouse holding facilities meets the requirements for the Group I-3 portion of the building.
3. Each courthouse holding facility located above the first story is less than 1,000 square feet in area, and is designed to hold 10 or less in-custody defendants.
4. Courthouse holding facilities located above the first story containing an internal stairway discharging to the main courthouse holding facility at the first story or basement.
5. Additional exits from the courthouse holding facility located above the first story shall be permitted to exit through the courtrooms.
6. The main courthouse holding facility located on the first story or basement has at least one exit directly to the exterior and additional means of egress shall be permitted to pass through a 1-hour corridor or lobby in the courthouse building.

**408.1.2.4 Horizontal building separation for combined Group I-3/Group B occupancy.** A Group B Administration building one story in height shall be permitted to be located above a Group I-3 (or Group I-3/I-2) housing/treatment building that is one story above grade and shall be classified as a separate and distinct building for the purpose of determining the type of construction, and shall be considered a separate fire area, where all of the following conditions are met:

1. A 3-hour floor-ceiling assembly below the administration building is constructed as a horizontal assembly in accordance with Section 711.
2. Interior shafts for stairs, elevators and mechanical systems complete the 3-hour separation between the Group B and Group I-3 (or Group I-3/I-2).
3. The Group I-3 occupancy (or Group I-3/I-2 occupancies, correctional medical and mental health uses) below is minimum Type I-B construction with 2-hour fire resistive rated exterior walls.
4. No unprotected openings are allowed in lower roofs within 10 feet of unprotected windows in the upper floor.
5. The Group B building above is of noncombustible construction and equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

6. The Group B occupancy building above has all required means of egress capable of discharging directly to the exterior to a safe dispersal area.

**408.1.2.5 Temporary holding area.** In buildings protected with automatic sprinklers, corridor serving temporary holding rooms shall be one hour fire resistance rated when the temporary holding occupant load is greater than 20.

**408.1.2.6 Temporary holding facilities.** Temporary holding facilities with nine or fewer persons under restraint may be classified as Group B when located in a buildings complying with all of the following conditions:

1. The building shall be protected throughout with a monitored automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The building shall be protected with a automatic fire alarm system with notification appliances throughout the holding facility in accordance with Section 907.2.
3. The building shall be constructed of Type I, IIA, IIIA or VA construction.

**408.1.2.7 Secure interview rooms.** Secure Interview Rooms used for law enforcement shall be permitted to locked, and shall not be classified as Group I-3 occupancies where all of the following conditions are met:

1. A monitored automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings and portions thereof including secure interview rooms. The automatic sprinkler system shall comply with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Secure interview rooms shall be located in non-combustible construction.
3. Secure interview rooms have glazed or barred openings with direct, continuous observation from law enforcement personnel who have a means to open the secure interview room.
4. Not more than 6 occupants in secure interview rooms shall be located in the same fire area.
5. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed within secure interview rooms and mechanical and electrical rooms.

**408.1.3 Security door assemblies in corridors, smoke barriers and smoke partitions.** Security door assemblies shall be constructed in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C, and where a smoke rating is required UL 1784, are not required to be tested or labeled.

**408.2 Other occupancies.** Buildings or portions of buildings in Group I-3 occupancies where security operations necessitate the locking of required means of egress shall be permitted to be classified as a different occupancy. Occupancies classified as other than Group I-3 shall meet the applicable requirements of this code for that occupancy where provisions are made for the release of occupants at all times.

Means of egress from detention and correctional occupancies that traverse other use areas shall, as a minimum, con-

form to requirements for detention and correctional occupancies.

**Exceptions:**

1. It is permissible to exit through a horizontal exit into other contiguous occupancies that do not conform to detention and correctional occupancy egress provisions but that do comply with requirements set forth in the appropriate occupancy, as long as the occupancy is not a Group H use.
2. *Regardless of the provisions of Section 508, laundry areas and kitchens including associated dining areas, where commercial/institutional equipment is used shall be separated from the remainder of the building by construction capable of resisting the passage of smoke.*
3. *For the purpose of occupancy separation only courtroom docks that are directly accessory to courtrooms need not be separated from a courtroom.*

**408.2.1 Correctional medical and mental health uses.**

Where a Group I-3 occupancy occurs in building or portions of buildings, the following Subsections of Sections of 407 shall apply: 407.2.1; 407.2.2; 407.2.3; 407.3.1; 407.3.1.1; 407.4; 407.10.

**408.3 Means of egress.** Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the means of egress provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

**408.3.1 Door width.** Doors to resident sleeping units shall have a clear width of not less than 28 inches (711 mm).

**408.3.1.1 Cell doors shall open outwardly or slide laterally.**

**408.3.2 Sliding doors.** Where doors in a means of egress are of the horizontal-sliding type, the force to slide the door to its fully open position shall be not greater than 50 pounds (220 N) with a perpendicular force against the door of 50 pounds (220 N).

**408.3.3 Guard tower doors.** A hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet ( $610 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area through the floor and having dimensions of not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in any direction shall be permitted to be used as a portion of the means of egress from guard towers.

**408.3.4 Spiral stairways.** Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1011.10 are permitted for access to and between staff locations.

**408.3.5 Ship's ladders.** Ship's ladders shall be permitted for egress from control rooms or elevated facility observation rooms in accordance with Section 1011.15.

**408.3.6 Exit discharge.** Exits are permitted to discharge into a fenced or walled courtyard. Enclosed yards or courts shall be of a size to accommodate all occupants, be located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the building and have an area of not less than 7 square feet ( $0.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) per person. A gate shall be provided from the safe dispersal area to allow for the necessary relocation of occupants.

**408.3.6.1 Exterior fenced enclosures and fenced enclosures utilized for recreational or activity purposes, used for exit termination for more than 20 persons, and**

*which do not provide a safe dispersal area, shall have not less than two exits.*

**408.3.6.2 Fenced enclosure utilized for recreational or activity purposes only, for more than 49 people, and which do not provide a safe dispersal area, shall be provided with not less than two exits.**

**408.3.6.3 Fenced enclosures located on roofs of buildings one or more stories in height shall be provided with not less than two exits regardless of occupant load.**

**408.3.6.4 Fenced enclosures utilized for central control buildings not normally occupied and not accessed by inmates or the general public are permitted to have only one exit from the fenced enclosure. These fenced enclosures shall only be occupied during emergency response conditions by not more than 29 prison staff occupants. Access to the fenced area shall be controlled remotely or at the gate with a key.**

**408.3.7 Sallyports.** A sallyport shall be permitted in a means of egress where there are provisions for continuous and unobstructed passage through the sallyport during an emergency egress condition.

**408.3.8 Interior exit stairway and ramp construction.**

One interior exit stairway or ramp in each building shall be permitted to have glazing installed in doors and interior walls at each landing level providing access to the interior exit stairway or ramp, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. The interior exit stairway or ramp shall not serve more than four floor levels.
2. Exit doors shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour fire door assemblies complying with Section 716.
3. The total area of glazing at each floor level shall not exceed 5,000 square inches ( $3.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) and individual panels of glazing shall not exceed 1,296 square inches ( $0.84 \text{ m}^2$ ).
4. The glazing shall be protected on both sides by an automatic sprinkler system. The sprinkler system shall be designed to wet completely the entire surface of any glazing affected by fire when actuated.
5. The glazing shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates.
6. Obstructions, such as curtain rods, drapery traverse rods, curtains, drapes or similar materials shall not be installed between the automatic sprinklers and the glazing.

**408.3.8.1 Where the number and arrangement of exits complies with the requirements of Chapter 10, other stairways which occur within the secure area of the detention facility and are not used for required exiting but are used primarily for the movement of inmates and security staff need not extend to the exterior.**

**408.3.9 Dead-end balconies.** Exit balconies serving cell tiers shall not extend more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) beyond an exit stairway.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**408.3.10 Travel distance.** The travel distance may be increased to 300 feet for portions of Group I-3 occupancies open only to staff or where inmates are escorted at all times by staff.

**408.3.11 Number of exits required.** In temporary holding areas of noncombustible construction, a second means of egress is required when the occupant load is greater than 20.

**408.3.12 Custody station.** Spaces for custody stations, communications and related clerical areas shall be permitted to be open to, or located within the corridor, provided the required construction along the perimeter of the corridor is maintained. Construction of custody stations or portions of custody stations, within the envelope of the corridor, is not required to be fire-resistance rated. These provisions shall also apply to an enclosed custody station within the corridor.

**TABLE 408.3.13  
MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA ALLOWANCES FOR I-3 FACILITIES<sup>c</sup>**

FUNCTION OF SPACE	OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR
<i>Detention facilities<sup>a,b</sup></i>	
<i>Housing pod</i>	<i>Number of beds and staff</i>
<i>Refuge area</i>	<i>6 net</i>
<i>Safe disposal area</i>	<i>7 net</i>
<i>Instructional classroom</i>	<i>20 net</i>
<i>Exercise yard or rooms</i>	<i>50 gross</i>
<i>Dorms sleeping area</i>	<i>50 gross</i>
<i>Holding cell</i>	<i>10 ft<sup>2</sup> per person/40 ft<sup>2</sup> minimum</i>
<i>Bench seating</i>	<i>18 inches per person</i>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Temporary holding cells, rooms or areas shall be calculated based on policies and procedures approved by the authority having jurisdiction. See 408.3.11 for number of exits required.
- b. Program rooms, day rooms and recreational yards which are dedicated to a housing pod or unit are not factored into the total occupant load of the building. Exiting from individual rooms shall meet the egress requirements of Chapter 10.
- c. Refer to Chapter 10, Section 1004 or elsewhere in the code for specific requirements based on type of detention facility.

**408.4 Locks.** Egress doors are permitted to be locked in accordance with the applicable use condition. Doors from a refuge area to the outside are permitted to be locked with a key in lieu of locking methods described in Section 408.4.1. The keys to unlock the exterior doors shall be available at all times and the locks shall be operable from both sides of the door. *Security hardware may be used on any fire-rated door.*

**408.4.1 Remote release.** Remote release of locks on doors in a means of egress shall be provided with reliable means of operation, remote from the resident living areas, to release locks on all required doors. In Occupancy Condition 3 or 4, the arrangement, accessibility and security of the release mechanisms required for egress shall be such that with the minimum available staff at any time, the lock mechanisms are capable of being released within 2 minutes.

**Exception:** Provisions for remote locking and unlocking of occupied rooms in Occupancy Condition 4 are

not required provided that not more than 10 locks are necessary to be unlocked in order to move occupants from one smoke compartment to a refuge area within 3 minutes. The opening of necessary locks shall be accomplished with not more than two separate keys.

**[F] 408.4.2 Power-operated doors and locks.** Power-operated sliding doors or power-operated locks for swinging doors shall be operable by a manual release mechanism at the door. Emergency power shall be provided for the doors and locks in accordance with Section 2702.

**Exceptions:**

1. Emergency power is not required in facilities with 10 or fewer locks complying with the exception to Section 408.4.1.
2. Emergency power is not required where remote mechanical operating releases are provided.

**408.4.3 Redundant operation.** Remote release, mechanically operated sliding doors or remote release, mechanically operated locks shall be provided with a mechanically operated release mechanism at each door, and shall be provided with a redundant remote release control.

**408.4.4 Relock capability.** Doors remotely unlocked under emergency conditions shall not automatically relock when closed unless specific action is taken at the remote location to enable doors to relock.

**408.5 Protection of vertical openings.** Any vertical opening shall be protected by a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713, or shall be in accordance with Section 408.5.1.

**408.5.1 Floor openings.** The open space in front of a cell tier and connected chases, not exceeding two tiers in height, shall not be considered a vertical shaft and need not meet the fire-resistive shaft enclosure requirements of Section 713.

**408.5.2 Shaft openings in communicating floor levels.** Where a floor opening is permitted between communicating floor levels of a housing unit in accordance with Section 408.5.1, plumbing chases serving vertically stacked individual cells contained with the housing unit shall be permitted without a shaft enclosure.

**408.6 Smoke barrier.** Occupancies in Group I-3 shall have smoke barriers complying with Sections 408.6 and 709 to divide every story occupied by residents for sleeping, or any other story having an occupant load of 50 or more persons, into not fewer than two smoke compartments.

**Exception:** Spaces having a direct exit to one of the following, provided that the locking arrangement of the doors involved complies with the requirements for doors at the smoke barrier for the use condition involved:

1. A public way.
2. A building separated from the resident housing area by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated assembly or 50 feet (15 240 mm) of open space.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

3. A secured yard or court having a holding space 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the housing area that provides 6 square feet (0.56 m<sup>2</sup>) or more of refuge area per occupant, including residents, staff and visitors.

### 4. Holding facility.

**408.6.1 Smoke compartments.** The number of residents in any smoke compartment shall be not more than 200. The distance of travel to a door in a smoke barrier from any room door required as exit access shall be not greater than 150 feet (45 720 mm). The distance of travel to a door in a smoke barrier from any point in a room shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

*Exception:* The travel distance may be increased by 50 feet from areas open only to the staff.

**408.6.2 Refuge area.** Not less than 6 net square feet (0.56 m<sup>2</sup>) per occupant shall be provided on each side of each smoke barrier for the total number of occupants in adjoining smoke compartments. This space shall be readily available wherever the occupants are moved across the smoke barrier in a fire emergency.

**408.6.3 Independent egress.** A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originates.

**408.7 Security glazing.** In occupancies in Group I-3, windows and doors in 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707, fire partitions constructed in accordance with Section 708 and smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 709 shall be permitted to have security glazing installed provided that the following conditions are met.

1. Individual panels of glazing shall not exceed 1,296 square inches (0.84 m<sup>2</sup>).
2. The glazing shall be protected on both sides by an automatic sprinkler system. The sprinkler system shall be designed to, when actuated, wet completely the entire surface of any glazing affected by fire.
3. The glazing shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler system operates.
4. Obstructions, such as curtain rods, drapery traverse rods, curtains, drapes or similar materials shall not be installed between the automatic sprinklers and the glazing.

**408.8 Subdivision of resident housing areas.** Sleeping areas and any contiguous day room, group activity space or other common spaces where residents are housed shall be separated from other spaces in accordance with Sections 408.8.1 through 408.8.4.

**408.8.1 Occupancy Conditions 3 and 4.** Each sleeping area in Occupancy Conditions 3 and 4 shall be separated from the adjacent common spaces by a smoke-tight partition where the distance of travel from the sleeping area through the common space to the corridor exceeds 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**408.8.2 Occupancy Condition 5.** Each sleeping area in Occupancy Condition 5 shall be separated from adjacent sleeping areas, corridors and common spaces by a smoke-tight partition. Additionally, common spaces shall be separated from the corridor by a smoke-tight partition.

**408.8.3 Openings in room face.** The aggregate area of openings in a solid sleeping room face in Occupancy Conditions 2, 3, 4 and 5 shall not exceed 120 square inches (0.77 m<sup>2</sup>). The aggregate area shall include all openings including door undercuts, food passes and grilles. Openings shall be not more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor. In Occupancy Condition 5, the openings shall be closeable from the room side.

**408.8.4 Smoke-tight doors.** Doors in openings in partitions required to be smoke tight by Section 408.8 shall be substantial doors, of construction that will resist the passage of smoke. Latches and door closers are not required on cell doors.

**408.9 Windowless buildings.** For the purposes of this section, a windowless building or portion of a building is one with nonopenable windows, windows not readily breakable or without windows. Windowless buildings shall be provided with an engineered smoke control system to provide a tenable environment for exiting from the smoke compartment in the area of fire origin in accordance with Section 909 for each windowless smoke compartment.

**408.9.1 Smoke venting.** The housing portions of windowless buildings containing use conditions 3, 4 or 5 shall be provided with an engineered smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, windows or doors, smoke vents or equivalent means to provide a tenable environment for exiting from the smoke compartment in the area of fire origin. A tenable environment for egress shall be as defined in NFPA 92. If windows, smoke vents or doors are used to meet this section, at least two windows, smoke vents or doors to the exterior must be provided at or above the highest occupied level in each smoke compartment, and the windows or doors must be operable or readily breakable and arranged to manually vent smoke.

### Exceptions:

1. Windowless buildings or portions of a building that meet all of the following requirements:

- 1.1. Are Type IA or IB construction.
- 1.2. Are protected with sprinklers throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
- 1.3. Include a fire alarm system with smoke detection in accordance with NFPA 72 in the dayroom and/or corridor serving as exit access from the cells, reporting to a 24 hour central control at the institution.
- 1.4. Include at least one exit from each housing unit direct to the exterior where smoke will not accumulate or to the exterior through a 1-hour-rated corridor serving only that unit.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

- 1.5. *The building is divided into at least two smoke compartments per Section 408.6.1.*
- 1.6. *As approved by the enforcing agency, an egress analysis shows that inmates can be evacuated within 6 minutes from the smoke compartment of origin 24 hours per day or when inmates are present.*
2. *No venting or smoke control is required when an engineering analysis shows an acceptable safe egress time compared to the onset of untenable conditions within a windowless building or portion of a windowless building and approved by the enforcing agency. (See Section 909.4.)*
3. *Courtroom holding areas and temporary central holding areas in courthouses that they meet all of the following requirements:*
- 3.1. *Holding occurs for a duration less than 12 hours.*
  - 3.2. *The holding areas include no electrical outlets available to the detainees.*
  - 3.3. *The entire building includes sprinklers throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*
  - 3.4. *The building includes a fire alarm system with smoke detection in accordance with NFPA 72 in the common rooms of holding areas and in the cells of central holding. The fire alarm system shall activate an alert signal on the floor of alarm containing the holding areas, to alert staff.*
  - 3.5. *As approved by the enforcing agency, an egress analysis shows that detainees can be evacuated within 5 minutes from the holding area of origin, or the facility is provided with gang or electric locks.*
4. *Courtroom holding areas with less than 20 persons in custody.*
5. *Windowless buildings or portions of a building that meet all of the following requirements:*
- 5.1. *Are Type IA or IB construction.*
  - 5.2. *Are protected with sprinklers throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*
  - 5.3. *Include a fire alarm system with smoke detection in accordance with NFPA 72 in the dayrooms and corridors serving as exit access from the cells, reporting to a 24-hour central control at the institution.*
  - 5.4. *Include at least one direct exit from each housing unit through a smoke partition to another smoke compartment. Each housing unit must be its own smoke compartment and can exit through a maximum of one adjacent compartment before reaching a corridor or the exterior.*
- 5.5. *As approved by the enforcing agency, an egress analysis shows that inmates can be evacuated within 6 minutes from the smoke compartment of origin 24 hours per day or when inmates are present, or the facility is provided with gang or electric locks.*
- 5.6. *Each housing unit includes a pressurization method smoke control system that complies with Section 909.*
- [F] 408.10 Fire alarm system.** A fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.6.3.
- [F] 408.11 Automatic sprinkler system.** Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- 408.12 Emergency and standby power systems.** Special electrical systems, exit illumination, power installations and alternate on-site electrical supplies shall be provided for every building or portion of a building housing 10 or more inmates in a detention or correctional facility in accordance with the provisions of the California Electrical Code. There shall be a source of emergency power in all detention facilities capable of providing minimal lighting in all housing units, activity areas, corridors, stairs and central control points, and to maintain fire and life safety, security, communications and alarm systems.
- 408.13 Windows.** In security areas within cell complexes sprinklered throughout, the area of glazing in one-hour corridor walls and smoke barrier walls shall not be restricted, provided:
1. All openings are protected by fixed glazing listed and labeled for a fire-protection of at least  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour; or
  2. Fixed security glazing set in noncombustible frames. Shall comply with the minimum requirements of one of the following test standards: ASTM F1233-98, Class III glass, or; California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation, CDCR Appendix H, or H.P. White Laboratory, Inc., HPW-TP- 0500.02, Forced Entry Level III.
  3. In lieu of the sizes set forth in CBC, the size and area of glazed assemblies shall conform to the following: Windows required to have a three-fourths-hour fire-resistant rating or windows protected by fixed security glazing, as delineated in Items 1 and 2 above, may have an area not greater than 84 square feet ( $7.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) with neither width nor height exceeding 12 feet (3658 mm).
- 408.14 Safety padding.** Padding material used on walls, floors and ceilings in Group I and R-2.1 occupancies shall be of an approved type tested in accordance with the procedures established by State Fire Marshal Standard 12-8-100, Room Fire Test for Wall and Ceiling Materials, California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 12.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

### **408.15 Small management yards.**

**408.15.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 408.15.1 through 408.15.5 shall apply to small management yards. Small management yards may be used by a maximum of two occupants at any one time for a maximum of 2 hours per day.

**408.15.2 Construction.** Small management yards shall be constructed in accordance with all of the following:

1. Constructed of Type IB noncombustible materials.
2. Fence material shall be noncombustible.
3. Have a maximum area of 150 square feet ( $14 \text{ m}^2$ ).
4. Yard area covering shall not exceed 75 square feet ( $7 \text{ m}^2$ ) or a maximum of 50 percent of the fenced enclosure.
5. Electrical lighting or devices of any type shall not be permitted within the yard.

**Exception:** Low voltage devices dedicated for the operation of toilets.

### **408.15.3 Fire protection system provisions.**

**408.15.3.1 Automatic sprinkler systems.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**Exception:** Small management yards where a distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) is maintained from all buildings or structures and 4 feet (1220 mm) is maintained from containment fencing.

**408.15.3.2 Fire alarm systems.** An approved fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.

**Exception:** Small management yards where a distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) is maintained from all buildings or structures and 4 feet (1220 mm) is maintained from containment fencing.

**408.15.4 Means of egress.** Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the provisions of Section 408.3 and Chapter 10 shall apply. Small management yards shall comply with all of the following:

1. Staff-controlled manual released locks shall be provided.
2. Staff escorting inmates to and from small management yards shall be equipped with radios and personal alarms to notify central control in case of a fire.
3. The safe dispersal area as defined by Section 1027.5 shall not be reduced due to placement of these yards.
4. An exit, remote from the main entrance is required in the containment fencing.

**408.15.5 Special provisions.** Inmate exercise clothing and toilet paper tissue shall be the only combustible materials permitted in small management yards.

## SECTION 409 MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS

**409.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 409.1 through 409.5 shall apply to rooms in which ribbon-type cellulose acetate or other safety film is utilized in conjunction with

electric arc, xenon or other light-source projection equipment that develops hazardous gases, dust or radiation. Where cellulose nitrate film is utilized or stored, such rooms shall comply with NFPA 40.

**409.1.1 Projection room required.** Every motion picture machine projecting film as mentioned within the scope of this section shall be enclosed in a projection room. Appurtenant electrical equipment, such as rheostats, transformers and generators, shall be within the projection room or in an adjacent room of equivalent construction.

**409.2 Construction of projection rooms.** Every projection room shall be of permanent construction consistent with the construction requirements for the type of building in which the projection room is located. Openings are not required to be protected.

The room shall have a floor area of not less than 80 square feet ( $7.44 \text{ m}^2$ ) for a single machine and not less than 40 square feet ( $3.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each additional machine. Each motion picture projector, floodlight, spotlight or similar piece of equipment shall have a clear working space of not less than 30 inches by 30 inches (762 mm by 762 mm) on each side and at the rear thereof, but only one such space shall be required between two adjacent projectors. The projection room and the rooms appurtenant thereto shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm). The aggregate of openings for projection equipment shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of the wall between the projection room and the auditorium. Openings shall be provided with glass or other approved material, so as to close completely the opening.

**409.3 Projection room and equipment ventilation.** Ventilation shall be provided in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**409.3.1 Supply air.** Each projection room shall be provided with adequate air supply inlets so arranged as to provide well-distributed air throughout the room. Air inlet ducts shall provide an amount of air equivalent to the amount of air being exhausted by projection equipment. Air is permitted to be taken from the outside; from adjacent spaces within the building, provided that the volume and infiltration rate are sufficient; or from the building air-conditioning system, provided that it is so arranged as to provide sufficient air when other systems are not in operation.

**409.3.2 Exhaust air.** Projection rooms are permitted to be exhausted through the lamp exhaust system. The lamp exhaust system shall be positively interconnected with the lamp so that the lamp will not operate unless there is the required airflow. Exhaust air ducts shall terminate at the exterior of the building in such a location that the exhaust air cannot be readily recirculated into any air supply system. The projection room ventilation system is permitted to also serve appurtenant rooms, such as the generator and rewind rooms.

**409.3.3 Projection machines.** Each projection machine shall be provided with an exhaust duct that will draw air from each lamp and exhaust it directly to the outside of the building. The lamp exhaust is permitted to serve to

exhaust air from the projection room to provide room air circulation. Such ducts shall be of rigid materials, except for a flexible connector approved for the purpose. The projection lamp or projection room exhaust system, or both, is permitted to be combined but shall not be interconnected with any other exhaust or return system, or both, within the building.

**409.4 Lighting control.** Provisions shall be made for control of the auditorium lighting and the means of egress lighting systems of theaters from inside the projection room and from not less than one other convenient point in the building.

**409.5 Miscellaneous equipment.** Each projection room shall be provided with rewind and film storage facilities.

## SECTION 410 STAGES, PLATFORMS AND TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS

**410.1 Applicability.** The provisions of Sections 410.1 through 410.7 shall apply to all parts of buildings and structures that contain stages or platforms and similar appurtenances as herein defined.

**410.2 Stages.** Stage construction shall comply with Sections 410.2.1 through 410.2.7.

**410.2.1 Stage construction.** Stages shall be constructed of materials as required for floors for the type of construction of the building in which such stages are located.

**Exception:** Stages need not be constructed of the same materials as required for the type of construction provided that the construction complies with one of the following:

1. Stages of Type IIB or IV construction with a nominal 2-inch (51 mm) wood deck, provided that the stage is separated from other areas in accordance with Section 410.2.4.
2. In buildings of Type IIA, IIIA and VA construction, a fire-resistance-rated floor is not required, provided that the space below the stage is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system or fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 903 or 904.
3. In all types of construction, the finished floor shall be constructed of wood or approved non-combustible materials. Openings through stage floors shall be equipped with tight-fitting, solid wood trap doors with approved safety locks.

**410.2.1.1 Stage height and area.** Stage areas shall be measured to include the entire performance area and adjacent backstage and support areas not separated from the performance area by fire-resistance-rated construction. Stage height shall be measured from the lowest point on the stage floor to the highest point of the roof or floor deck above the stage.

**410.2.2 Technical production areas: galleries, gridirons and catwalks.** Beams designed only for the attachment of portable or fixed theater equipment, gridirons, galleries

and catwalks shall be constructed of approved materials consistent with the requirements for the type of construction of the building; and a fire-resistance rating shall not be required. These areas shall not be considered to be floors, stories, mezzanines or levels in applying this code.

**Exception:** Floors of fly galleries and catwalks shall be constructed of any approved material.

**410.2.3 Exterior stage doors.** Where protection of openings is required, exterior exit doors shall be protected with fire door assemblies that comply with Section 716. Exterior openings that are located on the stage for means of egress or loading and unloading purposes, and that are likely to be open during occupancy of the theater, shall be constructed with vestibules to prevent air drafts into the auditorium.

**410.2.4 Proscenium wall.** Where the stage height is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm), all portions of the stage shall be completely separated from the seating area by a proscenium wall with not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating extending continuously from the foundation to the roof.

**410.2.5 Proscenium curtain.** Where a proscenium wall is required to have a fire-resistance rating, the stage opening shall be provided with a fire curtain complying with NFPA 80, horizontal sliding doors complying with Section 716 having a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour, or an approved water curtain complying with Section 903.3.1.1 or, in facilities not utilizing the provisions of smoke-protected assembly seating in accordance with Section 1030.6.2, a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural ventilation designed to maintain the smoke level not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the means of egress.

**410.2.6 Scenery.** Combustible materials used in sets and scenery shall be flame resistant in accordance with the provisions set forth in CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8, in accordance with Section 806 and the California Fire Code. Foam plastics and materials containing foam plastics shall comply with Section 2603 and the California Fire Code.

**410.2.7 Stage ventilation.** Emergency ventilation shall be provided for stages larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) in floor area, or with a stage height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm). Such ventilation shall comply with Section 410.2.7.1 or 410.2.7.2.

**410.2.7.1 Roof vents.** Two or more vents constructed to open automatically by approved heat-activated devices and with an aggregate clear opening area of not less than 5 percent of the area of the stage shall be located near the center and above the highest part of the stage area. Supplemental means shall be provided for manual operation of the ventilator. Curbs shall be provided as required for skylights in Section 2610.2. Vents shall be labeled.

**[F] 410.2.7.2 Smoke control.** Smoke control in accordance with Section 909 shall be provided to maintain the smoke layer interface not less than 6 feet (1829

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

mm) above the highest level of the assembly seating or above the top of the proscenium opening where a proscenium wall is provided in compliance with Section 410.2.4.

**410.3 Platform construction.** Permanent platforms shall be constructed of materials as required for the type of construction of the building in which the permanent platform is located. Permanent platforms are permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood for Types I, II and IV construction where the platforms are not more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the main floor, and not more than one-third of the room floor area and not more than 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) in area. Where the space beneath the permanent platform is used for storage or any purpose other than equipment, wiring or plumbing, the floor assembly shall be not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. Where the space beneath the permanent platform is used only for equipment, wiring or plumbing, the underside of the permanent platform need not be protected.

**410.3.1 Temporary platforms.** Platforms installed for a period of not more than 30 days are permitted to be constructed of any materials permitted by this code. The space between the floor and the platform above shall only be used for plumbing and electrical wiring to platform equipment.

**410.4 Dressing and appurtenant rooms.** Dressing and appurtenant rooms shall comply with Sections 410.4.1 and 410.4.2.

**410.4.1 Separation from stage.** The stage shall be separated from dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, storerooms and compartments appurtenant to the stage and other parts of the building by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 2 hours for stage heights greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) and not less than 1 hour for stage heights of 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less.

**410.4.2 Separation from each other.** Dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, storerooms and compartments appurtenant to the stage shall be separated from each other by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**410.5 Means of egress.** Except as modified or as provided for in this section, the provisions of Chapter 10 shall apply.

**410.5.1 Arrangement.** Where two or more exits or exit access doorways from the stage are required in accordance with Section 1006.2, not fewer than one exit or exit access doorway shall be provided on each side of a stage.

**410.5.2 Stairway and ramp enclosure.** Exit access stairways and ramps serving a stage or platform are not required to be enclosed. Exit access stairways and ramps serving technical production areas are not required to be enclosed.

**410.5.3 Technical production areas.** Technical production areas shall be provided with means of egress and means of escape in accordance with Sections 410.5.3.1 through 410.5.3.5.

**410.5.3.1 Number of means of egress.** Not fewer than one means of egress shall be provided from technical production areas.

**410.5.3.2 Exit access travel distance.** The exit access travel distance shall be not greater than 300 feet (91 440 mm) for buildings without a sprinkler system and 400 feet (122 mm) for buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**410.5.3.3 Two means of egress.** Where two means of egress are required, the common path of travel shall be not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

**Exception:** A means of escape to a roof in place of a second means of egress is permitted.

**410.5.3.4 Path of egress travel.** The following exit access components are permitted where serving technical production areas:

1. Stairways.
2. Ramps.
3. Spiral stairways.
4. Catwalks.
5. Alternating tread devices.
6. Permanent ladders.

**410.5.3.5 Width.** The path of egress travel within and from technical support areas shall be not less than 22 inches (559 mm).

[F] **410.6 Automatic sprinkler system.** Stages shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Sprinklers shall be installed under the roof and gridiron and under all catwalks and galleries over the stage. Sprinklers shall be installed in dressing rooms, performer lounges, shops and storerooms accessory to such stages.

### Exceptions:

1. Sprinklers are not required under stage areas less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in clear height that are utilized exclusively for storage of tables and chairs, provided that the concealed space is separated from the adjacent spaces by Type X gypsum board not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) in thickness.
2. Sprinklers are not required for stages 1,000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) or less in area and 50 feet (15 240 mm) or less in height where curtains, scenery or other combustible hangings are not retractable vertically. Combustible hangings shall be limited to a single main curtain, borders, legs and a single backdrop.
3. Sprinklers are not required within portable orchestra enclosures on stages.

[F] **410.7 Standpipes.** Standpipe systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 905.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## SECTION 411 SPECIAL AMUSEMENT AREAS

**411.1 General.** Special amusement areas having an occupant load of 50 or more shall comply with the requirements for the appropriate Group A occupancy and Sections 411.1 through 411.7. Special amusement areas having an occupant load of less than 50 shall comply with the requirements for a Group B occupancy and Sections 411.1 through 411.7.

**Exception:** Special amusement areas that are without walls or a roof and constructed to prevent the accumulation of smoke need not comply with this section.

→ **[F] 411.2 Automatic sprinkler system.** Buildings containing special amusement areas shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where the special amusement area is temporary, *less than 180 days*, the sprinkler water supply shall be of an approved temporary means *determined by the authority having jurisdiction*.

**Exception:** Automatic sprinklers are not required where the total floor area of a temporary, *less than 180 days*, special amusement area is less than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) and the exit access travel distance from any point in the special amusement area to an exit is less than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

→ **[F] 411.3 Automatic smoke detection.** Buildings containing special amusement areas shall be equipped with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.12.

→ **[F] 411.4 Emergency voice/alarm communications system.** An emergency voice/alarm communications system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.12.

**411.5 Puzzle room exiting.** Puzzle room exiting shall comply with one of the following:

1. Exiting in accordance with Chapter 10.
2. An alternative design approved by the *authority having jurisdiction*.
3. Exits shall be open and readily available upon activation by the automatic fire alarm system, automatic sprinkler system, and a manual control at a constantly attended location.

**411.6 Exit marking.** Exit signs shall be installed at the required exit or exit access doorways serving special amusement areas in accordance with this section and Section 1013. Approved directional exit markings shall be provided. Where mirrors, mazes or other designs are utilized that disguise the path of egress travel such that they are not apparent, approved and listed low-level exit signs that comply with Section 1013.5, and directional path markings listed in accordance with UL 1994, shall be provided and located not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above the walking surface and on or near the path of egress travel. Such markings shall become visible in an emergency. The directional exit marking shall be activated by the automatic smoke detection system and the automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 907.2.12.

**411.6.1 Photoluminescent exit signs.** Where photoluminescent exit signs are installed, activating light source and viewing distance shall be in accordance with the listing and markings of the signs.

**411.7 Interior finish.** The interior finish in special amusement areas shall be Class A in accordance with Section 803.1.

## SECTION 412 AIRCRAFT-RELATED OCCUPANCIES

**412.1 General.** Aircraft-related occupancies shall comply with Sections 412.1 through 412.7 and the *California Fire Code*.

**412.2 Airport traffic control towers.** The provisions of Sections 412.2.1 through 412.2.6 shall apply to airport traffic control towers occupied only for the following uses:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.

**412.2.1 Construction.** The construction of airport traffic control towers shall comply with the provisions of Sections 412.2.1.1 through 412.2.1.3.

**412.2.1.1 Type of construction.** Airport traffic control towers shall be constructed to comply with the height limitations of Table 412.2.1.1.

TABLE 412.2.1.1  
HEIGHT LIMITATIONS FOR  
AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL TOWERS

TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	HEIGHT <sup>a</sup> (feet)
IA	Unlimited
IB	240
IIA	100
IIB	85
IIIA	65

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Height to be measured from grade plane to cab floor.

**[BS] 412.2.1.2 Structural integrity of interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures.** Enclosures for interior exit stairways and elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Section 403.2.2 in airport traffic control towers where the control cab is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

**412.2.1.3 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM).** The bond strength of the SFRM installed in airport traffic control towers shall be in accordance with Section 403.2.3 where the control cab is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

**412.2.2 Means of egress and evacuation.** The means of egress in airport traffic control towers shall comply with Sections 412.2.2.1 through 412.2.2.3.

**412.2.2.1 Stairways.** Stairways in airport traffic control towers shall be in accordance with Section 1011. Exit stairways shall be smokeproof enclosures

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

complying with one of the alternatives provided in Section 909.20.

**Exception:** Stairways in airport traffic control towers are not required to comply with Section 1011.12.

**412.2.2 Exit access.** From observation levels, airport traffic control towers shall be permitted to have a single means of exit access for a distance of travel not greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm). Exit access stairways from the observation level need not be enclosed.

**412.2.2.3 Number of exits.** Not less than one exit stairway shall be permitted for airport traffic control towers of any height provided that the occupant load per floor is not greater than 15 and the area per floor does not exceed 1,500 square feet ( $140 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**412.2.2.3.1 Interior finish.** Where an airport traffic control tower is provided with only one exit stairway, interior wall and ceiling finishes shall be either Class A or Class B.

**412.2.2.3.2 Exit separation.** Where an airport traffic control tower is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and two exits are required, the exit separation distance required by Section 1007 shall be not less than one-fourth of the length of the maximum overall dimension of the area served.

**[F] 412.2.3 Emergency systems.** The detection, alarm and emergency systems of airport traffic control towers shall comply with Sections 412.2.3.1 through 412.2.3.3.

**[F] 412.2.3.1 Automatic smoke detection systems.** Airport traffic control towers shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.2.22.

**[F] 412.2.3.2 Fire command center.** A fire command center shall be provided in airport traffic control towers where the control cab is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. The fire command center shall comply with Section 911.

### Exceptions:

1. The fire command center shall be located in the airport control tower or an adjacent contiguous building where building functions are interdependent.
2. The room shall be not less than 150 square feet ( $14 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area with a minimum dimension of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. The following features shall not be required in an airport traffic control tower fire command center.
  - 3.1. Emergency voice/alarm control unit.
  - 3.2. Public address system.
  - 3.3. Status indicators and controls for the air distributions centers.

3.4. Generator supervision devices, manual start and transfer features.

3.5. Elevator emergency or standby power switches where emergency or standby power is provided.

**[F] 412.2.3.3 Smoke removal.** Smoke removal in airport traffic control towers shall be provided in accordance with Section 403.4.7.

**[F] 412.2.4 Automatic sprinkler system.** Where an occupied floor is located more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, airport traffic control towers shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**[F] 412.2.4.1 Fire pump room.** Fire pumps shall be located in rooms that are separated from all other areas of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**Exception:** Separation is not required for fire pumps physically separated in accordance with NFPA 20.

**[F] 412.2.5 Protection of elevator wiring and cables.** Wiring and cables serving elevators in airport traffic control towers shall be protected in accordance with Section 3007.8.1.

**412.2.5.1 Elevators for occupant evacuation.** Where provided in addition to an exit stairway, occupant evacuation elevators shall be in accordance with Section 3008.

**412.2.6 Accessibility.** *[DSA-AC]* In air traffic control towers, an accessible route shall not be required to serve the cab and the equipment areas on the floor immediately below the cab.

**412.3 Aircraft hangars.** Aircraft hangars shall be in accordance with Sections 412.3.1 through 412.3.6.

**412.3.1 Exterior walls.** Exterior walls located less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from lot lines or a public way shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than 2 hours.

**412.3.2 Basements.** Where hangars have basements, floors over basements shall be of Type IA construction and shall be made tight against seepage of water, oil or vapors. There shall not be openings or communication between basements and the hangar. Access to basements shall be from outside only.

**412.3.3 Floor surface.** Floors shall be graded and drained to prevent water or fuel from remaining on the floor. Floor drains shall discharge through an oil separator to the sewer or to an outside vented sump.

**Exception:** Aircraft hangars with individual lease spaces not exceeding 2,000 square feet ( $186 \text{ m}^2$ ) each in which servicing, repairing or washing is not conducted and fuel is not dispensed shall have floors that are graded toward the door, but shall not require a separator.

**412.3.4 Heating equipment.** Heating equipment shall be placed in another room separated by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Entrance shall be from the outside or by means of a vestibule providing a two-doorway separation.

**Exceptions:**

1. Unit heaters and vented infrared radiant heating equipment suspended not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the upper surface of wings or engine enclosures of the highest aircraft that are permitted to be housed in the hangar need not be located in a separate room provided that they are mounted not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor in shops, offices and other sections of the hangar communicating with storage or service areas.
2. Entrance to the separated room shall be permitted by a single interior door provided that the sources of ignition in the appliances are not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.

**412.3.5 Finishing.** The process of “doping,” involving use of a volatile flammable solvent, or of painting, shall be carried on in a separate detached building equipped with automatic fire-extinguishing equipment in accordance with Section 903.

**[F] 412.3.6 Fire suppression.** Aircraft hangars shall be provided with a fire suppression system designed in accordance with NFPA 409, based on the classification for the hangar given in Table 412.3.6.

**Exception:** Where a fixed base operator has separate repair facilities on site, Group II hangars operated by a fixed base operator used for storage of transient aircraft only shall have a fire suppression system, but the system is exempt from foam requirements.

**[F] 412.3.6.1 Hazardous operations.** Any Group III aircraft hangar according to Table 412.3.6 that contains hazardous operations including, but not limited to, the

following shall be provided with a Group I or II fire suppression system in accordance with NFPA 409 as applicable:

1. Doping.
2. Hot work including, but not limited to, welding, torch cutting and torch soldering.
3. Fuel transfer.
4. Fuel tank repair or maintenance not including defueled tanks in accordance with NFPA 409, inerted tanks or tanks that have never been fueled.
5. Spray finishing operations.
6. Total fuel capacity of all aircraft within the unsprinklered single fire area in excess of 1,600 gallons (6057 L).
7. Total fuel capacity of all aircraft within the maximum single fire area in excess of 7,500 gallons (28 390 L) for a hangar with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**[F] 412.3.6.2 Separation of maximum single fire areas.** Maximum single fire areas established in accordance with hangar classification and construction type in Table 412.3.6 shall be separated by 2-hour fire walls constructed in accordance with Section 706. In determining the maximum single fire area as set forth in Table 412.3.6, ancillary uses that are separated from aircraft servicing areas by a fire barrier of not less than 1 hour, constructed in accordance with Section 707, shall not be included in the area.

**412.4 Residential aircraft hangars.** Residential aircraft hangars shall comply with Sections 412.4.1 through 412.4.5.

**412.4.1 Fire separation.** A hangar shall not be attached to a dwelling unless separated by a fire barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Such separation shall be continuous from the foundation to the underside of the roof and unpierced except for doors leading to the dwelling unit. Doors into the dwelling unit shall be

**[F] TABLE 412.3.6**  
**HANGAR FIRE SUPPRESSION REQUIREMENTS<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

MAXIMUM SINGLE FIRE AREA (square feet)	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION								
	IA	IB	IIA	IIB	IIIA	IIIB	IV	VA	VB
≥ 40,001	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I	Group I
40,000	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II	Group II
30,000	Group III	Group II							
20,000	Group III	Group III	Group II						
15,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group II	Group III	Group II	Group III	Group II	Group II
12,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group II	Group II
8,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group II
5,000	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III	Group III

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Aircraft hangars with a door height greater than 28 feet shall be provided with fire suppression for a Group I hangar regardless of maximum fire area.

b. Groups shall be as classified in accordance with NFPA 409.

c. Membrane structures complying with Section 3102 shall be classified as a Group IV hangar.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

equipped with self-closing devices and conform to the requirements of Section 716 with a noncombustible raised sill not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Openings from a hangar directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted.

**412.4.2 Egress.** A hangar shall provide two means of egress. One of the doors into the dwelling shall be considered as meeting only one of the two means of egress.

**[F] 412.4.3 Smoke alarms.** Smoke alarms shall be provided within the hangar in accordance with Section 907.2.22.

**412.4.4 Independent systems.** Electrical, mechanical and plumbing drain, waste and vent (DWV) systems installed within the hangar shall be independent of the systems installed within the dwelling. Building sewer lines shall be permitted to be connected outside the structures.

**Exception:** Smoke detector wiring and feed for electrical subpanels in the hangar.

**412.4.5 Height and area limits.** Residential aircraft hangars shall be not greater than 2,000 square feet (186 m<sup>2</sup>) in area and 20 feet (6096 mm) in building height.

**[F] 412.5 Aircraft paint hangars.** Aircraft painting operations shall be conducted in an aircraft paint hangar that complies with the provisions of Sections 412.5.1 through 412.5.8. Buildings and structures, or parts thereof, used for the application of flammable finishes shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 416.

**[F] 412.5.1 Occupancy classification.** Aircraft paint hangars shall be classified in accordance with the provisions of Section 307.1. Aircraft paint hangars shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the *California Fire Code* for such occupancy.

**412.5.2 Construction.** Aircraft paint hangars shall be of Type I or II construction.

**[F] 412.5.3 Spray equipment cleaning operations.** Spray equipment cleaning operations shall be conducted in a liquid use, dispensing and mixing room.

**[F] 412.5.4 Operations.** Only those flammable liquids necessary for painting operations shall be permitted in quantities less than the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(1). Spray equipment cleaning operations exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(1) shall be conducted in a liquid use, dispensing and mixing room.

**[F] 412.5.5 Storage.** Storage of flammable or combustible liquids exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(1) shall be in a liquid storage room.

**[F] 412.5.6 Fire suppression.** Aircraft paint hangars shall be provided with fire suppression as required by NFPA 409.

**[F] 412.5.7 Ventilation.** Aircraft paint hangars shall be provided with ventilation as required in the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 412.5.8 Electrical.** Electrical equipment and devices within the aircraft paint hangar shall comply with *California Electrical Code*.

**[F] 412.5.8.1 Class I, Division I hazardous locations.**

The area within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from aircraft surfaces and from the floor to 10 feet (3048 mm) above the aircraft surface shall be classified as a Class I, Division I location.

**[F] 412.5.8.2 Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations.**

The area horizontally from aircraft surfaces between 10 feet (3048 mm) and 30 feet (9144 mm) and from the floor to 30 feet (9144 mm) above the aircraft surface shall be classified as a Class I, Division 2 location.

**412.6 Aircraft manufacturing facilities.** In buildings used for the manufacturing of aircraft, exit access travel distances indicated in Section 1017.1 shall be increased in accordance with the following:

1. The building shall be of Type I or II construction.
2. Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the distances given in Table 412.6.

**412.6.1 Ancillary areas.** Rooms, areas and spaces ancillary to the primary manufacturing area shall be permitted to egress through such area having a minimum height as indicated in Table 412.6. Exit access travel distance within the ancillary room, area or space shall not exceed that indicated in Table 1017.2 based on the occupancy classification of that ancillary area. Total exit access travel distance shall not exceed that indicated in Table 412.6.

**[F] 412.7 Heliports and helistops.** Heliports and helistops shall be permitted to be erected on buildings or other locations where they are constructed in accordance with Sections 412.7.1 through 412.7.5.

TABLE 412.6  
AIRCRAFT MANUFACTURING EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE

HEIGHT (feet) <sup>b</sup>	MANUFACTURING AREA (square feet) <sup>a</sup>					
	≥ 150,000	≥ 200,000	≥ 250,000	≥ 500,000	≥ 750,000	≥ 1,000,000
≥ 25	400	450	500	500	500	500
≥ 50	400	500	600	700	700	700
≥ 75	400	500	700	850	1,000	1,000
≥ 100	400	500	750	1,000	1,250	1,500

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Contiguous floor area of the aircraft manufacturing facility having the indicated height.

b. Minimum height from finished floor to bottom of ceiling or roof slab or deck.

**[F] 412.7.1 Size.** The landing area for helicopters less than 3,500 pounds (1588 kg) shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length and width. The landing area shall be surrounded on all sides by a clear area having an average width at roof level of 15 feet (4572 mm), and all widths shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

**[F] 412.7.2 Design.** Helicopter landing areas and the supports thereof on the roof of a building shall be noncombustible construction. Landing areas shall be designed to confine any flammable liquid spillage to the landing area itself and provisions shall be made to drain such spillage away from any exit or stairway serving the helicopter landing area or from a structure housing such exit or stairway. For structural design requirements, see Section 1607.6.

**412.7.3 Means of egress.** The means of egress from heliports and helistops shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 10. Landing areas located on buildings or structures shall have two or more exits or access to exits. For landing areas less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length or less than 2,000 square feet (186 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, the second means of egress is permitted to be a fire escape, alternating tread device or ladder leading to the floor below.

**[F] 412.7.4 Rooftop heliports and helistops.** Rooftop heliports and helistops shall comply with NFPA 418.

**[F] 412.7.5 Standpipe system.** In buildings equipped with a standpipe system, the standpipe shall extend to the roof level in accordance with Section 905.3.6.

## SECTION 413 COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE

**413.1 General.** High-piled stock or rack storage in any occupancy group shall comply with the *California Fire Code*.

**413.2 Attic, under-floor and concealed spaces.** Attic, under-floor and concealed spaces used for storage of combustible materials shall be protected on the storage side as required for 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. Openings shall be protected by assemblies that are self-closing and are of noncombustible construction or solid wood core not less than 1<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (45 mm) in thickness.

**Exception:** Neither fire-resistance-rated construction nor opening protectives are required in any of the following locations:

1. Areas protected by approved automatic sprinkler systems.
2. Group R-3 and U occupancies.

## SECTION 414 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS

**[F] 414.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 414.1 through 414.6 shall apply to buildings and structures occupied for the manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage of hazardous materials.

**[F] 414.1.1 Other provisions.** Buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H shall comply with this section and the applicable provisions of Section 415 and the *California Fire Code*. See Section 453 for Group L occupancies.

**[F] 414.1.2 Materials.** The safe design of hazardous material occupancies is material dependent. Individual material requirements are found in Sections 307 and 415, the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.1.2.1 Aerosol products, aerosol cooking spray products and plastic aerosol 3 products.** Level 2 and 3 aerosol products, aerosol cooking spray products and plastic aerosol 3 products shall be stored and displayed in accordance with the *California Fire Code*. See Section 311.2 and the *California Fire Code* for occupancy group requirements.

**[F] 414.1.3 Information required.** A report shall be submitted to the building official identifying the maximum expected quantities of hazardous materials to be stored, used in a closed system and used in an open system, and subdivided to separately address hazardous material classification categories based on Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). The methods of protection from such hazards, including but not limited to control areas, fire protection systems and Group H occupancies shall be indicated in the report and on the construction documents. The opinion and report shall be prepared by a qualified person, firm or corporation approved by the building official and provided without charge to the enforcing agency.

For buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H, separate floor plans shall be submitted identifying the locations of anticipated contents and processes so as to reflect the nature of each occupied portion of every building and structure.

**[F] 414.2 Control areas.** Control areas shall comply with Sections 414.2.1 through 414.2.5 and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.2.1 Construction requirements.** Control areas shall be separated from each other by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 414.2.2 Percentage of maximum allowable quantities.** The percentage of maximum allowable quantities of hazardous materials per control area permitted at each floor level within a building shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2.

**[F] 414.2.3 Number.** The maximum number of control areas within a building shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2. For the purposes of determining the number of control areas within a building, each portion of a building separated by one or more fire walls complying with Section 706 shall be considered a separate building.

**[F] 414.2.4 Fire-resistance rating requirements.** The required fire-resistance rating for fire barriers shall be in accordance with Table 414.2.2. The floor assembly of the control area and the construction supporting the floor of

**[F] TABLE 414.2.2  
DESIGN AND NUMBER OF CONTROL AREAS**

STORY		PERCENTAGE OF THE MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA <sup>a</sup>	NUMBER OF CONTROL AREAS PER STORY	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING FOR FIRE BARRIERS IN HOURS <sup>b</sup>
Above grade plane	Higher than 9	5	1	2
	7–9	5	2	2
	6	12.5	2	2
	5	12.5	2	2
	4	12.5	2	2
	3	50	2	1
	2	75	3	1
	1	100	4	1
Below grade plane	1	75	3	1
	2	50	2	1
	Lower than 2	Not Allowed	Not Allowed	Not Allowed

a. Percentages shall be of the maximum allowable quantity per control area shown in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2), with all increases allowed in the notes to those tables.

b. Separation shall include fire barriers and horizontal assemblies as necessary to provide separation from other portions of the building.

the control area shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

**Exception:** The floor assembly of the control area and the construction supporting the floor of the control area are allowed to be 1-hour fire-resistance-rated in buildings of Types IIA, IIIA, IV and VA construction, provided that both of the following conditions exist:

1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The building is three or fewer stories above grade plane.

**[F] 414.2.5 Hazardous material in Group M display and storage areas and in Group S storage areas.** Hazardous materials located in Group M and Group S occupancies shall be in accordance with Sections 414.2.5.1 through 414.2.5.3.

**[F] 414.2.5.1 Nonflammable solids and nonflammable and noncombustible liquids.** The aggregate quantity of nonflammable solid and nonflammable or noncombustible liquid hazardous materials permitted within a single control area of a Group M display and storage area, a Group S storage area or an outdoor control area is permitted to exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area specified in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2) without classifying the building or use as a Group H occupancy, provided that the materials are displayed and stored in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and quantities do not exceed the maximum allowable specified in Table 414.2.5(1).

**[F] 414.2.5.2 Flammable and combustible liquids.** In Group M occupancy wholesale and retail sales uses, indoor storage of flammable and combustible liquids shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area as indicated in Table 414.2.5(2), provided that the materials are displayed and stored in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.2.5.3 Aerosol products, aerosol cooking spray products or plastic aerosol 3 products.** The maximum quantity of aerosol products, aerosol cooking spray products or plastic aerosol 3 products in Group M occupancy retail display areas, storage areas adjacent to retail display areas and retail storage areas shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.3 Ventilation.** Rooms, areas or spaces in which explosive, corrosive, combustible, flammable or highly toxic dusts, mists, fumes, vapors or gases are or have the potential to be emitted due to the processing, use, handling or storage of materials shall be mechanically ventilated where required by this code, the *California Fire Code* or the *California Mechanical Code*.

Emissions generated at workstations shall be confined to the area in which they are generated as specified in the *California Fire Code* and the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 414.4 Hazardous material systems.** Systems involving hazardous materials shall be suitable for the intended application. Controls shall be designed to prevent materials from entering or leaving process or reaction systems at other than the intended time, rate or path. Automatic controls, where provided, shall be designed to be fail safe.

**[F] 414.5 Inside storage, dispensing, handling and use.** The inside storage, dispensing and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 414.5.1 through 414.5.3 of this code and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.5.1 Explosion control.** Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with the *California Fire Code* as required by Table 414.5.1 where quantities of hazardous materials specified in that table exceed the maximum allowable quantities in Table 307.1(1) or where a structure, room or space is occupied for purposes involving explosion hazards as required by Section 415 or the *California Fire Code*.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**[F] TABLE 414.2.5(1)**  
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER INDOOR AND OUTDOOR CONTROL AREA IN**  
**GROUP M AND S OCCUPANCIES OF NONFLAMMABLE SOLIDS AND NONFLAMMABLE AND NONCOMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS<sup>d, e, f</sup>**

CONDITION		MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA	
Material <sup>a</sup>	Class	Solids (pounds)	Liquids (gallons)
<b>A. Health-hazard materials—nonflammable and noncombustible solids and liquids</b>			
1. Corrosives <sup>b, c</sup>	Not Applicable	9,750	975
2. Highly toxics	Not Applicable	20 <sup>b, c</sup>	2 <sup>b, c</sup>
3. Toxics <sup>b, c</sup>	Not Applicable	1,000 <sup>k</sup>	100
<b>B. Physical-hazard materials—nonflammable and noncombustible solids and liquids</b>			
1. Oxidizers <sup>b, c</sup>	4	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
	3	1,350 <sup>g</sup>	115
	2	2,250 <sup>h</sup>	225
	1	18,000 <sup>i, j</sup>	1,800 <sup>i, j</sup>
2. Unstable (reactives) <sup>b, c</sup>	4	Not Allowed	Not Allowed
	3	550	55
	2	1,150	115
	1	Not Limited	Not Limited
3. Water reactives	3 <sup>b, c</sup>	550	55
	2 <sup>b, c</sup>	1,150	115
	1	Not Limited	Not Limited

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

- a. Hazard categories are as specified in the *California Fire Code*.
- b. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent in buildings that are sprinklered in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where Note c also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- c. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent where stored in approved storage cabinets, in accordance with the *California Fire Code*. Where Note b also applies, the increase for both notes shall be applied accumulatively.
- d. See Table 414.2.2 for design and number of control areas.
- e. Allowable quantities for other hazardous material categories shall be in accordance with Section 307.
- f. Maximum quantities shall be increased 100 percent in outdoor control areas.
- g. Maximum amounts shall be increased to 2,250 pounds where individual packages are in the original sealed containers from the manufacturer or packager and do not exceed 10 pounds each.
- h. Maximum amounts shall be increased to 4,500 pounds where individual packages are in the original sealed containers from the manufacturer or packager and do not exceed 10 pounds each.
- i. The permitted quantities shall not be limited in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
- j. Quantities are unlimited in an outdoor control area.
- k. Maximum allowable quantities of consumer products shall be increased to 10,000 pounds where individual packages are in the original, sealed containers from the manufacturer and the toxic classification is exclusively based on the LC threshold and no other hazardous materials classifications apply.

**[F] TABLE 414.2.5(2)**  
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY OF FLAMMABLE AND**  
**COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS IN WHOLESALE AND RETAIL SALES OCCUPANCIES PER CONTROL AREA<sup>a</sup>**

TYPE OF LIQUID	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER CONTROL AREA (gallons)		
	Sprinklered in accordance with Note b densities and arrangements	Sprinklered in accordance with Tables 5704.3.6.3(4) through 5704.3.6.3(8) and 5704.3.7.5.1 of the <i>California Fire Code</i>	Nonsprinklered
Class IA	60	60	30
Class IB, IC, II and IIIA	7,500 <sup>c</sup>	15,000 <sup>c</sup>	1,600
Class IIIB	Unlimited	Unlimited	13,200

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 gallon per minute per square foot = 40.75 L/min/m<sup>2</sup>.

- a. Control areas shall be separated from each other by not less than a 1-hour fire barrier wall.
- b. To be considered as sprinklered, a building shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system with a design providing minimum densities as follows:
  1. For uncartoned commodities on shelves 6 feet or less in height where the ceiling height does not exceed 18 feet, quantities are those permitted with a minimum sprinkler design density of Ordinary Hazard Group 2.
  2. For cartoned, palletized or racked commodities where storage is 4 feet 6 inches or less in height and where the ceiling height does not exceed 18 feet, quantities are those permitted with a minimum sprinkler design density of 0.21 gallon per minute per square foot over the most remote 1,500-square-foot area.
- c. Where wholesale and retail sales or storage areas exceed 50,000 square feet in area, the maximum allowable quantities are allowed to be increased by 2 percent for each 1,000 square feet of area in excess of 50,000 square feet, up to not more than 100 percent of the table amounts. A control area separation is not required. The cumulative amounts, including amounts attained by having an additional control area, shall not exceed 30,000 gallons.

**SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE**

**[F] TABLE 414.5.1  
EXPLOSION CONTROL REQUIREMENTS<sup>a, h</sup>**

<b>MATERIAL</b>	<b>CLASS</b>	<b>EXPLOSION CONTROL METHODS</b>	
		<b>Barricade construction</b>	<b>Explosion (deflagration) venting or explosion (deflagration) prevention systems<sup>b</sup></b>
<b>HAZARD CATEGORY</b>			
Combustible dusts <sup>c</sup>	—	Not Required	Required
Cryogenic flammables	—	Not Required	Required
Explosives	Division 1.1	Required	Not Required
	Division 1.2	Required	Not Required
	Division 1.3	Not Required	Required
	Division 1.4	Not Required	Required
	Division 1.5	Required	Not Required
	Division 1.6	Required	Not Required
Flammable gas	Gaseous	Not Required	Required
	Liquefied	Not Required	Required
Flammable liquid	IA <sup>d</sup>	Not Required	Required
	IB <sup>e</sup>	Not Required	Required
Organic peroxides	U	Required	Not Permitted
	I	Required	Not Permitted
Oxidizer liquids and solids	4	Required	Not Permitted
Pyrophoric gas	—	Not Required	Required
Unstable (reactive)	4	Required	Not Permitted
	3 Detonable	Required	Not Permitted
	3 Nondetonable	Not Required	Required
Water-reactive liquids and solids	3	Not Required	Required
	2 <sup>g</sup>	Not Required	Required
<b>SPECIAL USES</b>			
Acetylene generator rooms	—	Not Required	Required
Electrochemical energy storage system <sup>i</sup>	—	Not Required	Required
Energy storage system <sup>i</sup>	—	Not Required	Required
Grain processing	—	Not Required	Required
Liquefied petroleum gas-distribution facilities	—	Not Required	Required
Where explosion hazards exist <sup>f</sup>	Detonation	Required	Not Permitted
	Deflagration	Not Required	Required

a. See Section 414.1.3.

b. See the *California Fire Code*.

c. Combustible dusts where manufactured, generated or used in such a manner that the concentration and conditions create a fire or explosion hazard based on information prepared in accordance with Section 104.8.2 of the *California Fire Code*. See definition of "Combustible dust" in Chapter 2.

d. Storage or use.

e. In open use or dispensing.

f. Rooms containing dispensing and use of hazardous materials where an explosive environment can occur because of the characteristics or nature of the hazardous materials or as a result of the dispensing or use process.

g. A method of explosion control shall be provided where Class 2 water-reactive materials can form potentially explosive mixtures.

h. Explosion venting is not required for Group H-5 fabrication areas complying with Section 415.11.1 and the *California Fire Code*.

i. Where explosion control is required in Section 1207 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.5.2 Emergency or standby power.** Where required by the *California Fire Code* or this code, mechanical ventilation, treatment systems, temperature control, alarm, detection or other electrically operated systems shall be provided with emergency or standby power in accordance with Section 2702. For storage and use areas for highly toxic or toxic materials, see Sections 6004.2.2.8 and 6004.3.4.2 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.5.2.1 Exempt applications.** Emergency or standby power is not required for the mechanical ventilation systems provided for any of the following:

1. Storage of Class IB and IC flammable and combustible liquids in closed containers not exceeding 6.5 gallons (25 L) capacity.
2. Storage of Class 1 and 2 oxidizers.

3. Storage of Class II, III, IV and V organic peroxides.
4. Storage of asphyxiant, irritant and radioactive gases.

**[F] 414.5.2.2 Fail-safe engineered systems.** Standby power for mechanical ventilation, treatment systems and temperature control systems shall not be required where an approved fail-safe engineered system is installed.

**[F] 414.5.3 Spill control, drainage and containment.** Rooms, buildings or areas occupied for the storage of solid and liquid hazardous materials shall be provided with a means to control spillage and to contain or drain off spillage and fire protection water discharged in the storage area where required in the *California Fire Code*. The methods of spill control shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**414.5.4 Hazardous material handling.** The handling of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with *California Fire Code* Section 5003.

**[F] 414.6 Outdoor storage, dispensing and use.** The outdoor storage, dispensing and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 414.6.1 Weather protection.** Where weather protection is provided for sheltering outdoor hazardous material storage or use areas, such areas shall be considered outdoor storage or use where the weather protection structure complies with Sections 414.6.1.1 through 414.6.1.3.

**[F] 414.6.1.1 Walls.** Walls shall not obstruct more than one side of the structure.

**Exception:** Walls shall be permitted to obstruct portions of multiple sides of the structure, provided that the obstructed area is not greater than 25 percent of the structure's perimeter.

**[F] 414.6.1.2 Separation distance.** The distance from the structure to buildings, lot lines, public ways or means of egress to a public way shall be not less than the distance required for an outside hazardous material storage or use area without weather protection.

**[F] 414.6.1.3 Noncombustible construction.** The overhead structure shall be of approved noncombustible construction with a maximum area of 1,500 square feet ( $140\text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** The maximum area is permitted to be increased as provided by Section 506.

## SECTION 415 GROUPS H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 AND H-5

**[F] 415.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 415.1 through 415.11 shall apply to the storage and use of hazardous materials in excess of the maximum allowable quantities per control area listed in Section 307.1.

**[F] 415.2 Compliance.** Buildings and structures with an occupancy in Group H shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 414 and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.3 Automatic fire detection systems.** Group H occupancies shall be provided with an automatic fire detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.

**[F] 415.4 Automatic sprinkler system.** Group H occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.

**[F] 415.5 Emergency alarms.** Emergency alarms for the detection and notification of an emergency condition in Group H occupancies shall be provided as set forth herein.

**[F] 415.5.1 Storage.** An approved manual emergency alarm system shall be provided in buildings, rooms or areas used for storage of hazardous materials. Emergency alarm-initiating devices shall be installed outside of each interior exit or exit access door of storage buildings, rooms or areas. Activation of an emergency alarm-initiating device shall sound a local alarm to alert occupants of an emergency situation involving hazardous materials.

**[F] 415.5.2 Dispensing, use and handling.** Where hazardous materials having a hazard ranking of 3 or 4 in accordance with NFPA 704 are transported through corridors, interior exit stairways or ramps, or exit passageways, there shall be an emergency telephone system, a local manual alarm station or an approved alarm-initiating device at not more than 150-foot (45.720 mm) intervals and at each exit and exit access doorway throughout the transport route. The signal shall be relayed to an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or constantly attended on-site location and shall initiate a local audible alarm.

**[F] 415.5.3 Supervision.** Emergency alarm systems required by Section 415.5.1 or 415.5.2 shall be electrically supervised and monitored by an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or shall initiate an audible and visual signal at a constantly attended on-site location.

**[F] 415.5.4 Emergency alarm systems.** Emergency alarm systems required by Section 415.5.1 or 415.5.2 shall be provided with emergency or standby power in accordance with Section 2702.2.

**[F] 415.6 Fire separation distance.** Group H occupancies shall be located on property in accordance with the other provisions of this chapter. In Groups H-2 and H-3, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter wall of the occupancy shall be an exterior wall.

**[F] 415.6.1 Rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use, dispensing or mixing in open systems.** Rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use, dispensing or mixing in open systems having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet ( $46.5\text{ m}^2$ ) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

**[F] 415.6.2 Liquid storage rooms and rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use in closed systems.** Liquid storage rooms and rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use in closed systems, having a floor

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

area of not more than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

**[F] 415.6.3 Spray paint booths.** Spray paint booths that comply with the *California Fire Code* need not be located on the outer perimeter.

**[F] 415.6.4 Group H occupancy minimum fire separation distance.** Regardless of any other provisions, buildings containing Group H occupancies shall be set back to the minimum fire separation distance as set forth in Sections 415.6.4.1 through 415.6.4.4. Distances shall be measured from the walls enclosing the occupancy to lot lines, including those on a public way. Distances to assumed lot lines established for the purpose of determining exterior wall and opening protection are not to be used to establish the minimum fire separation distance for buildings on sites where explosives are manufactured or used where separation is provided in accordance with the quantity distance tables specified for explosive materials in the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.6.4.1 Group H-1.** Group H-1 occupancies shall be set back not less than 75 feet (22 860 mm) and not less than required by the *California Fire Code*.

**Exception:** Fireworks manufacturing buildings separated in accordance with NFPA 1124.

**[F] 415.6.4.2 Group H-2.** Group H-2 occupancies shall be set back not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) where the area of the occupancy is greater than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) and it is not required to be located in a detached building.

**[F] 415.6.4.3 Groups H-2 and H-3.** Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be set back not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) where a detached building is required (see Table 415.6.5).

**[F] 415.6.4.4 Explosive materials.** Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing materials with explosive characteristics shall be separated as required by the *California Fire Code*. Where separations are not specified, the distances required shall be determined by a technical report issued in accordance with Section 414.1.3.

**[F] 415.6.5 Detached buildings for Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 occupancy.** The storage or use of hazardous materials in excess of those amounts specified in Table 415.6.5 shall be in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 415.7 and 415.8.

**[F] 415.6.5.1 Wall and opening protection.** Where a detached building is required by Table 415.6.5, wall and opening protection based on fire separation distance is not required.

**[F] 415.7 Special provisions for Group H-1 occupancies.** Group H-1 occupancies shall be in detached buildings not used for other purposes. Roofs shall be of lightweight construction with suitable thermal insulation to prevent sensitive material from reaching its decomposition temperature. Group H-1 occupancies containing materials that are in themselves both physical and health hazards in quantities

exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(2) shall comply with requirements for both Group H-1 and H-4 occupancies.

**[F] 415.7.1 Floors in storage rooms.** Floors in storage areas for organic peroxides, pyrophoric materials and unstable (reactive) materials shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

**[F] 415.8 Special provisions for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.** Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing quantities of hazardous materials in excess of those set forth in Table 415.6.5 shall be in detached buildings used for manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage of hazardous materials. Materials specified for Group H-1 occupancies in Section 307.3 are permitted to be located within Group H-2 or H-3 detached buildings provided that the amount of materials per control area do not exceed the maximum allowed quantity specified in Table 307.1(1).

**[F] 415.8.1 Multiple hazards.** Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies containing materials that are in themselves both physical and health hazards in quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Table 307.1(2) shall comply with requirements for Group H-2, H-3 or H-4 occupancies as applicable.

**[F] 415.8.2 Separation of incompatible materials.** Hazardous materials other than those specified in Table 415.6.5 shall be allowed in manufacturing, processing, dispensing, use or storage areas when separated from incompatible materials in accordance with the provisions of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.8.3 Water reactivities.** Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies containing water-reactive materials shall be resistant to water penetration. Piping for conveying liquids shall not be over or through areas containing water reactivities, unless isolated by approved liquid-tight construction.

**Exception:** Fire protection piping shall be permitted over or through areas containing water reactivities without isolating it with liquid-tight construction.

**[F] 415.8.4 Floors in storage rooms.** Floors in storage areas for organic peroxides, oxidizers, pyrophoric materials, unstable (reactive) materials and water-reactive solids and liquids shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

**[F] 415.8.5 Waterproof room.** Rooms or areas used for the storage of water-reactive solids and liquids shall be constructed in a manner that resists the penetration of water through the use of waterproof materials. Piping carrying water for other than approved automatic sprinkler systems shall not be within such rooms or areas.

**[F] 415.9 Group H-2.** Occupancies in Group H-2 shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 415.9.1 through 415.9.3 and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.9.1 Flammable and combustible liquids.** The storage, handling, processing and transporting of flammable and combustible liquids in Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Sections 415.9.1.1 through 415.9.1.9, the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Fire Code*.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**[F] 415.9.1.1 Mixed occupancies.** Where the storage tank area is located in a building of two or more occupancies and the quantity of liquid exceeds the maximum allowable quantity for one control area, the use shall be completely separated from adjacent occupancies in accordance with the requirements of Section 508.4.

**[F] 415.9.1.1.1 Height exception.** Where storage tanks are located within a building not more than one story above grade plane, the height limitation of Section 504 shall not apply for Group H.

**[F] 415.9.1.2 Tank protection.** Storage tanks shall be noncombustible and protected from physical damage. Fire barriers or horizontal assemblies or both around the storage tanks shall be permitted as the method of protection from physical damage.

**[F] 415.9.1.3 Tanks.** Storage tanks shall be approved tanks conforming to the requirements of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.9.1.4 Leakage containment.** A liquid-tight containment area compatible with the stored liquid shall be provided. The method of spill control, drainage control and secondary containment shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**Exception:** Rooms where only double-wall storage tanks conforming to Section 415.9.1.3 are used to store Class I, II and IIIA flammable and combustible liquids shall not be required to have a leakage containment area.

**[F] 415.9.1.5 Leakage alarm.** An approved automatic alarm shall be provided to indicate a leak in a storage tank and room. The alarm shall sound an audible signal,

**[F] TABLE 415.6.5  
DETACHED BUILDING REQUIRED**

A DETACHED BUILDING IS REQUIRED WHERE THE QUANTITY OF MATERIAL EXCEEDS THAT SPECIFIED HEREIN			
Material	Class	Solids and Liquids (tons) <sup>a, b</sup>	Gases (cubic feet) <sup>a, b</sup>
Explosives	Division 1.1	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Not Applicable
	Division 1.2	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.3	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.4	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.4 <sup>c</sup>	1	
	Division 1.5	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
	Division 1.6	Maximum Allowable Quantity	
Oxidizers	Class 4	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Maximum Allowable Quantity
Unstable (reactives) detonable	Class 3 or 4	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Maximum Allowable Quantity
Oxidizer, liquids and solids	Class 3	1,200	Not Applicable
	Class 2	2,000	Not Applicable
Organic peroxides	Detonable	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Not Applicable
	Class I	Maximum Allowable Quantity	Not Applicable
	Class II	25	Not Applicable
	Class III	50	Not Applicable
Unstable (reactives) nondetonable	Class 3	1	2,000
	Class 2	25	10,000
Water reactives	Class 3	1	Not Applicable
	Class 2	25	Not Applicable
Pyrophoric gases <sup>d</sup>	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	2,000

For SI: 1 ton = 906 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m<sup>3</sup>, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

- a. For materials that are detonable, the distance to other buildings or lot lines shall be in accordance with Section 415.6 of this code or Chapter 56 of the *California Fire Code* based on trinitrotoluene (TNT) equivalence of the material, whichever is greater.
- b. "Maximum Allowable Quantity" means the maximum allowable quantity per control area set forth in Table 307.1(1).
- c. Limited to Division 1.4 materials and articles, including articles packaged for shipment, that are not regulated as an explosive under Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms and Explosives (BATF) regulations or unpackaged articles used in process operations that do not propagate a detonation or deflagration between articles, provided that the net explosive weight of individual articles does not exceed 1 pound.
- d. Detached buildings are not required, for gases in gas rooms that support H-5 fabrication facilities where the gas room is separated from other areas by a fire barrier with a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours and the gas is located in a gas cabinet that is internally sprinklered, equipped with continuous leak detection, automatic shutdown and is not manifolded upstream of pressure controls. Additionally, the gas supply is limited to cylinders that do not exceed 125 pounds (57 kg) water capacity in accordance with 49 CFR 173.192 for Hazard Zone A toxic gases.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

15 dBA above the ambient sound level, at every point of entry into the room in which the leaking storage tank is located. An approved sign shall be posted on every entry door to the tank storage room indicating the potential hazard of the interior room environment, or the sign shall state, "WARNING, WHEN ALARM SOUNDS, THE ENVIRONMENT WITHIN THE ROOM MAY BE HAZARDOUS." The leakage alarm shall be supervised in accordance with Chapter 9 to transmit a trouble signal.

**[F] 415.9.1.6 Tank vent.** Storage tank vents for Class I, II or IIIA liquids shall terminate to the outdoor air in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.9.1.7 Room ventilation.** Storage tank areas storing Class I, II or IIIA liquids shall be provided with mechanical ventilation. The mechanical ventilation system shall be in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.9.1.8 Explosion venting.** Where Class I liquids are being stored, explosion venting shall be provided in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.9.1.9 Tank openings other than vents.** Tank openings other than vents from tanks inside buildings shall be designed to ensure that liquids or vapor concentrations are not released inside the building.

**[F] 415.9.2 Liquefied petroleum gas facilities.** The construction and installation of liquefied petroleum gas facilities shall be in accordance with the requirements of this code, the *California Fire Code*, the *California Plumbing Code*, the *California Mechanical Code* and NFPA 58.

**[F] 415.9.3 Dry cleaning plants.** The construction and installation of dry cleaning plants shall be in accordance with the requirements of this code, the *California Mechanical Code*, the *California Plumbing Code* and NFPA 32. Dry cleaning solvents and systems shall be classified in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.10 Groups H-3 and H-4.** Groups H-3 and H-4 shall be constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this code and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.10.1 Flammable and combustible liquids.** The storage, handling, processing and transporting of flammable and combustible liquids in Group H-3 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 415.9.1.

**[F] 415.10.2 Gas rooms.** Where gas rooms are provided, such rooms shall be separated from other areas by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 415.10.3 Floors in storage rooms.** Floors in storage areas for corrosive liquids and highly toxic or toxic materials shall be of liquid-tight, noncombustible construction.

**[F] 415.10.4 Separation of highly toxic solids and liquids.** Highly toxic solids and liquids not stored in approved hazardous materials storage cabinets shall be isolated from other hazardous materials storage by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with

Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 415.11 Group H-5.** In addition to the requirements set forth elsewhere in this code, Group H-5 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 415.11.1 through 415.11.12 and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.11.1 Fabrication areas.** Fabrication areas shall comply with Sections 415.11.1.1 through 415.11.1.8.

**[F] 415.11.1.1 Hazardous materials.** Hazardous materials and hazardous production materials (HPM) shall comply with Sections 415.11.1.1.1 and 415.11.1.1.2.

**[F] 415.11.1.1.1 Aggregate quantities.** The aggregate quantities of hazardous materials stored and used in a single fabrication area shall not exceed the quantities set forth in Table 415.11.1.1.1.

**Exception:** The quantity limitations for any hazard category in Table 415.11.1.1.1 shall not apply where the fabrication area contains quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area established by Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).

**[F] 415.11.1.1.2 Hazardous production materials.** The maximum quantities of hazardous production materials (HPM) stored in a single fabrication area shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area established by Table 307.1(1) and Table 307.1(2).

**[F] 415.11.1.2 Separation.** Fabrication areas, whose sizes are limited by the quantity of hazardous materials allowed by Table 415.11.1.1.1, shall be separated from each other, from corridors and from other parts of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

### Exceptions:

- Doors within such fire barrier walls, including doors to corridors, shall be only self-closing fire door assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.
- Windows between fabrication areas and corridors are permitted to be fixed glazing listed and labeled for a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour in accordance with Section 716.

**[F] 415.11.1.3 Location of occupied levels.** Occupied levels of fabrication areas shall be located at or above the first story above grade plane.

**[F] 415.11.1.4 Floors.** Except for surfacing, floors within fabrication areas shall be of noncombustible construction.

Openings through floors of fabrication areas are permitted to be unprotected where the interconnected levels are used solely for mechanical equipment directly related to such fabrication areas (see Section 415.11.1.5).

Floors forming a part of an occupancy separation shall be liquid tight.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

[F] TABLE 415.11.1.1.1

QUANTITY LIMITS FOR HAZARDOUS MATERIALS IN A SINGLE FABRICATION AREA IN GROUP H-5<sup>a</sup>

HAZARD CATEGORY		SOLIDS (pounds per square foot)	LIQUIDS (gallons per square foot)	GAS (cubic feet @ NTP/square foot)
<b>PHYSICAL-HAZARD MATERIALS</b>				
Combustible dust		Note b	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
Combustible fiber	Loose	Note b	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
	Baled	Notes b and c		
Combustible liquid	II	Not Applicable	0.01	Not Applicable
	IIIA		0.02	
	IIIB		Not Limited	
Combination Class	I, II and IIIA		0.04	
Cryogenic gas	Flammable	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Note d
	Oxidizing			1.25
Explosives		Note b	Note b	Note b
Flammable gas	Gaseous	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	Note d
	Liquefied			Note d
Flammable liquid	IA	Not Applicable	0.0025	Not Applicable
	IB		0.025	
	IC		0.025	
Combination Class	IA, IB and IC		0.025	
Combination Class	I, II and IIIA		0.04	
Flammable solid		0.001	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
Organic peroxide	Unclassified detonable	Note b	Not Applicable	Not Applicable
	Class I	Note b		
	Class II	0.025		
	Class III	0.1		
	Class IV	Not Limited		
	Class V	Not Limited		
Oxidizing gas	Gaseous	Not Applicable	Not Applicable	1.25
	Liquefied			1.25
Combination of gaseous and liquefied				1.25
Oxidizer	Class 4	Note b	Note b	Not Applicable
	Class 3	0.003	0.03	
	Class 2	0.003	0.03	
	Class 1	0.003	0.03	
Combination Class	1, 2, 3	0.003	0.03	
Pyrophoric materials		0.01	0.00125	Notes d and e
Unstable (reactive)	Class 4	Note b	Note b	Note b
	Class 3	0.025	0.0025	Note b
	Class 2	0.1	0.01	Note b
	Class 1	Not Limited	Not Limited	Not Limited
Water reactive	Class 3	0.01 <sup>f</sup>	0.00125	Not Applicable
	Class 2	0.25	0.025	
	Class 1	Not Limited	Not Limited	
<b>HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS</b>				
Corrosives		Not Limited	Not Limited	Not Limited
Highly toxic		Not Limited	Not Limited	Note d
Toxics		Not Limited	Not Limited	Note d

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 gallon per square foot = 40.7 L/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 cubic foot @ NTP/square foot = 0.305 m<sup>3</sup> @ NTP/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m<sup>3</sup>.

- a. Hazardous materials within piping shall not be included in the calculated quantities.
- b. Quantity of hazardous materials in a single fabrication shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2).
- c. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.
- d. The aggregate quantity of flammable, pyrophoric, toxic and highly toxic gases shall not exceed the greater of 0.2 cubic feet at NTP/square foot or 9,000 cubic feet at NTP.
- e. The aggregate quantity of pyrophoric gases in the building shall not exceed the amounts set forth in Table 415.6.5.
- f. Quantity of Class 3 water-reactive solids in a single tool shall not exceed 1 pound.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**[F] 415.11.1.5 Shafts and openings through floors.** Elevator hoistways, vent shafts and other openings through floors shall be enclosed where required by Sections 712 and 713. Mechanical, duct and piping penetrations within a fabrication area shall not extend through more than two floors. The annular space around penetrations for cables, cable trays, tubing, piping, conduit or ducts shall be sealed at the floor level to restrict the movement of air. The fabrication area, including the areas through which the ductwork and piping extend, shall be considered to be a single conditioned environment.

**[F] 415.11.1.6 Ventilation.** Mechanical exhaust ventilation at the rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot [ $0.0051 \text{ m}^3/(\text{s} \times \text{m}^2)$ ] of floor area shall be provided throughout the portions of the fabrication area where HPM are used or stored. The exhaust air duct system of one fabrication area shall not connect to another duct system outside that fabrication area within the building.

A ventilation system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.

Two or more operations at a workstation shall not be connected to the same exhaust system where either one or the combination of the substances removed could constitute a fire, explosion or hazardous chemical reaction within the exhaust duct system.

Exhaust ducts penetrating fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 shall be contained in a shaft of equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction. Exhaust ducts shall not penetrate fire walls.

Fire dampers shall not be installed in exhaust ducts.

**[F] 415.11.1.7 Transporting hazardous production materials to fabrication areas.** HPM shall be transported to fabrication areas through enclosed piping or tubing systems that comply with Section 415.11.7, through service corridors complying with Section 415.11.3, or in corridors as permitted in the exception to Section 415.11.2. The handling or transporting of HPM within service corridors shall comply with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.11.1.8 Electrical.** Electrical equipment and devices within the fabrication area shall comply with the *California Electrical Code*. The requirements for hazardous locations need not be applied where the average air change is not less than four times that set forth in Section 415.11.1.6 and where the number of air changes at any location is not less than three times that required by Section 415.11.1.6. The use of recirculated air shall be permitted.

**[F] 415.11.1.8.1 Workstations.** Workstations shall not be energized without adequate exhaust ventilation. See Section 415.11.1.6 for workstation exhaust ventilation requirements.

**[F] 415.11.2 Corridors.** Corridors shall comply with Chapter 10 and shall be separated from fabrication areas as specified in Section 415.11.1.2. Corridors shall not contain HPM and shall not be used for transporting such materials except through closed piping systems as provided in Section 415.11.7.4.

**Exception:** Where existing fabrication areas are altered or modified, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing corridors, subject to the following conditions:

1. Nonproduction HPM is allowed to be transported in corridors if utilized for maintenance, lab work and testing.
2. Where existing fabrication areas are altered or modified, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing corridors, subject to the following conditions:
  - 2.1. Corridors. Corridors adjacent to the fabrication area where the alteration work is to be done shall comply with Section 1020 for a length determined as follows:
    - 2.1.1. The length of the common wall of the corridor and the fabrication area; and
    - 2.1.2. For the distance along the corridor to the point of entry of HPM into the corridor serving that fabrication area.
  - 2.2. Emergency alarm system. There shall be an emergency telephone system, a local manual alarm station or other approved alarm-initiating device within corridors at not more than 150-foot (45 720 mm) intervals and at each exit and doorway. The signal shall be relayed to an approved central, proprietary or remote station service or the emergency control station and shall initiate a local audible alarm.
  - 2.3. Pass-throughs. Self-closing doors having a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour shall separate pass-throughs from existing corridors. Pass-throughs shall be constructed as required for the corridors and protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.

**[F] 415.11.3 Service corridors.** Service corridors within a Group H-5 occupancy shall comply with Sections 415.11.3.1 through 415.11.3.4.

**[F] 415.11.3.1 Use conditions.** Service corridors shall be separated from corridors as required by Section 415.11.1.2. Service corridors shall not be used as a required corridor.

**[F] 415.11.3.2 Mechanical ventilation.** Service corridors shall be mechanically ventilated as required by Section 415.11.1.6 or at not less than six air changes per hour.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**[F] 415.11.3.3 Means of egress.** The distance of travel from any point in a service corridor to an exit, exit access corridor or door into a fabrication area shall be not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm). Dead ends shall be not greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length. There shall be not less than two exits, and not more than one-half of the required means of egress shall require travel into a fabrication area. Doors from service corridors shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be self-closing.

**[F] 415.11.3.4 Minimum width.** The clear width of a service corridor shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm), or 33 inches (838 mm) wider than the widest cart or truck used in the service corridor, whichever is greater.

**[F] 415.11.4 Emergency alarm system.** Emergency alarm systems shall be provided in accordance with this section and Sections 415.5.1 and 415.5.2. The maximum allowable quantity per control area provisions shall not apply to emergency alarm systems required for HPM.

**[F] 415.11.4.1 Service corridors.** An emergency alarm system shall be provided in service corridors, with not fewer than one alarm device in each service corridor.

**[F] 415.11.4.2 Corridors and interior exit stairways and ramps.** Emergency alarms for corridors, interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall comply with Section 415.5.2.

**[F] 415.11.4.3 Liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms.** Emergency alarms for liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms shall comply with Section 415.5.1.

**[F] 415.11.4.4 Alarm-initiating devices.** An approved emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations, or other approved alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

**[F] 415.11.4.5 Alarm signals.** Activation of the emergency alarm system shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

**[F] 415.11.5 Storage of hazardous production materials.** Storage of hazardous production materials (HPM) in fabrication areas shall be within approved or listed storage cabinets or gas cabinets or within a workstation. The storage of HPM in quantities greater than those specified in Section 5004.2 of the *California Fire Code* shall be in liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms or gas rooms as appropriate for the materials stored. The storage of other hazardous materials shall be in accordance with other applicable provisions of this code and the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.11.6 HPM rooms, gas rooms, liquid storage room construction.** HPM rooms, gas rooms and liquid shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 415.11.6.1 through 415.11.6.9.

**[F] 415.11.6.1 HPM rooms and gas rooms.** HPM rooms and gas rooms shall be separated from other areas by fire barriers constructed in accordance with

Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is 300 square feet (27.9 m<sup>2</sup>) or more and not less than 1 hour where the area is less than 300 square feet (27.9 m<sup>2</sup>).

**[F] 415.11.6.2 Liquid storage rooms.** Liquid storage rooms shall be constructed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Rooms greater than 500 square feet (46.5 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, shall have not fewer than one exterior door approved for fire department access.
2. Rooms shall be separated from other areas by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than 1 hour for rooms up to 150 square feet (13.9 m<sup>2</sup>) in area and not less than 2 hours where the room is more than 150 square feet (13.9 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.
3. Shelving, racks and wainscoting in such areas shall be of noncombustible construction or wood of not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.
4. Rooms used for the storage of Class I flammable liquids shall not be located in a basement.

**[F] 415.11.6.3 Floors.** Except for surfacing, floors of HPM rooms and liquid storage rooms shall be of noncombustible liquid-tight construction. Raised grating over floors shall be of noncombustible materials.

**[F] 415.11.6.4 Location.** Where HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms are provided, they shall have not fewer than one exterior wall and such wall shall be not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from lot lines, including lot lines adjacent to public ways.

**[F] 415.11.6.5 Explosion control.** Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

**[F] 415.11.6.6 Exits.** Where two exits are required from HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms, one shall be directly to the outside of the building.

**[F] 415.11.6.7 Doors.** Doors in a fire barrier wall, including doors to corridors, shall be self-closing fire door assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.

**[F] 415.11.6.8 Ventilation.** Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided in liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms at the rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (0.044 L/s/m<sup>2</sup>) of floor area or six air changes per hour.

Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding areas and direct the exhaust ventilation to an exhaust system.

**[F] 415.11.6.9 Emergency alarm system.** An approved emergency alarm system shall be provided for HPM rooms, liquid storage rooms and gas rooms.

Emergency alarm-initiating devices shall be installed outside of each interior exit door of such rooms.

Activation of an emergency alarm-initiating device shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

An approved emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations or other approved alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

**[F] 415.11.7 Piping and tubing.** Hazardous production materials piping and tubing shall comply with this section and ASME B31.3.

**[F] 415.11.7.1 HPM having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4.** Systems supplying HPM liquids or gases having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4 shall be welded throughout, except for connections, to the systems that are within a ventilated enclosure if the material is a gas, or an approved method of drainage or containment is provided for the connections if the material is a liquid.

**[F] 415.11.7.2 Location in service corridors.** Hazardous production materials supply piping or tubing in service corridors shall be exposed to view.

**[F] 415.11.7.3 Excess flow control.** Where HPM gases or liquids are carried in pressurized piping above 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (103.4 kPa), excess flow control shall be provided. Where the piping originates from within a liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room, the excess flow control shall be located within the liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room. Where the piping originates from a bulk source, the excess flow control shall be located as close to the bulk source as practical.

**[F] 415.11.7.4 Installations in corridors and above other occupancies.** The installation of HPM piping and tubing within the space defined by the walls of corridors and the floor or roof above, or in concealed spaces above other occupancies, shall be in accordance with Sections 415.11.7.1 through 415.11.7.3 and the following conditions:

1. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed within the space unless the space is less than 6 inches (152 mm) in the least dimension.
2. Ventilation not less than six air changes per hour shall be provided. The space shall not be used to convey air from any other area.
3. Where the piping or tubing is used to transport HPM liquids, a receptor shall be installed below such piping or tubing. The receptor shall be designed to collect any discharge or leakage and drain it to an approved location. The 1-hour enclosure shall not be used as part of the receptor.

4. HPM supply piping and tubing and nonmetallic waste lines shall be separated from the corridor and from occupancies other than Group H-5 by fire barriers or by an approved method or assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Access openings into the enclosure shall be protected by approved fire-protection-rated assemblies.

5. Readily accessible manual or automatic remotely activated fail-safe emergency shutoff valves shall be installed on piping and tubing other than waste lines at the following locations:

- 5.1. At branch connections into the fabrication area.
- 5.2. At entries into corridors.

**Exception:** Transverse crossings of the corridors by supply piping that is enclosed within a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the corridor need not comply with Items 1 through 5.

**[F] 415.11.7.5 Identification.** Piping, tubing and HPM waste lines shall be identified in accordance with ANSI A13.1 to indicate the material being transported.

**[F] 415.11.8 Gas detection systems.** A gas detection system complying with Section 916 shall be provided for HPM gases where the physiological warning threshold level of the gas is at a higher level than the accepted permissible exposure limit (PEL) for the gas and for flammable gases in accordance with Sections 415.11.8.1 through 415.11.8.2.

**[F] 415.11.8.1 Where required.** A gas detection system shall be provided in the areas identified in Sections 415.11.8.1.1 through 415.11.8.1.4.

**[F] 415.11.8.1.1 Fabrication areas.** A gas detection system shall be provided in fabrication areas where HPM gas is used in the fabrication area.

**[F] 415.11.8.1.2 HPM rooms.** A continuous gas detection system shall be provided in HPM rooms where HPM gas is used in the room.

**[F] 415.11.8.1.3 Gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms.** A gas detection system shall be provided in gas cabinets and exhausted enclosures for HPM gas. A gas detection system shall be provided in gas rooms where HPM gases are not located in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures.

**[F] 415.11.8.1.4 Corridors.** Where HPM gases are transported in piping placed within the space defined by the walls of a corridor and the floor or roof above the corridor, a gas detection system shall be provided where piping is located and in the corridor.

**Exception:** A gas detection system is not required for occasional transverse crossings of the corridors by supply piping that is enclosed in a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the corridor.

**[F] 415.11.8.2 Gas detection system operation.** The gas detection system shall be capable of monitoring the room, area or equipment in which the HPM gas is located at or below all the following gas concentrations:

1. Immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH) values where the monitoring point is within an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.
2. Permissible exposure limit (PEL) levels where the monitoring point is in an area outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.
3. For flammable gases, the monitoring detection threshold level shall be vapor concentrations in excess of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL) where the monitoring is within or outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.
4. Except as noted in this section, monitoring for highly toxic and toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.11.8.2.1 Alarms.** The gas detection system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station when a short-term hazard condition is detected. The alarm shall be both visual and audible and shall provide warning both inside and outside the area where the gas is detected. The audible alarm shall be distinct from all other alarms.

**[F] 415.11.8.2.2 Shutoff of gas supply.** The gas detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valve at the source on gas supply piping and tubing related to the system being monitored for which gas is detected when a short-term hazard condition is detected. Automatic closure of shutoff valves shall comply with the following:

1. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valve in the gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.
2. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a room and compressed gas containers are not in gas cabinets or an exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valves on all gas lines for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.
3. Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a piping distribution manifold enclosure, the shutoff valve supplying the manifold for the compressed gas container of the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

**Exception:** Where the gas detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is at the use location or within a gas valve enclosure

of a branch line downstream of a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve for the branch line located in the piping distribution manifold enclosure shall automatically close.

**[F] 415.11.9 Manual fire alarm system.** An approved manual fire alarm system shall be provided throughout buildings containing Group H-5. Activation of the alarm system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station. The fire alarm system shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 907.

**[F] 415.11.10 Emergency control station.** An emergency control station shall be provided in accordance with Sections 415.11.10.1 through 415.11.10.3.

**[F] 415.11.10.1 Location.** The emergency control station shall be located on the premises at an approved location outside the fabrication area.

**[F] 415.11.10.2 Staffing.** Trained personnel shall continuously staff the emergency control station.

**[F] 415.11.10.3 Signals.** The emergency control station shall receive signals from emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems. Such emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems shall include, but not be limited to, the following where such equipment or systems are required to be provided either in this chapter or elsewhere in this code:

1. Automatic sprinkler system alarm and monitoring systems.
2. Manual fire alarm systems.
3. Emergency alarm systems.
4. Gas detection systems.
5. Smoke detection systems.
6. Emergency power system.
7. Automatic detection and alarm systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *California Fire Code*.
8. Exhaust ventilation flow alarm devices for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids cabinet exhaust ventilation systems required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 415.11.11 Emergency power system.** An emergency power system shall be provided in Group H-5 occupancies in accordance with Section 2702. The emergency power system shall supply power automatically to the electrical systems specified in Section 415.11.11.1 when the normal electrical supply system is interrupted.

**[F] 415.11.11.1 Required electrical systems.** Emergency power shall be provided for electrically operated equipment and connected control circuits for the following systems:

1. HPM exhaust ventilation systems.
2. HPM gas cabinet ventilation systems.
3. HPM exhausted enclosure ventilation systems.
4. HPM gas room ventilation systems.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

5. HPM gas detection systems.
6. Emergency alarm systems.
7. Manual and automatic fire alarm systems.
8. Automatic sprinkler system monitoring and alarm systems.
9. Automatic alarm and detection systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *California Fire Code*.
10. Flow alarm switches for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids cabinet exhaust ventilation systems required in Section 2705.2.3.4 of the *California Fire Code*.
11. Electrically operated systems required elsewhere in this code or in the *California Fire Code* applicable to the use, storage or handling of HPM.

**[F] 415.11.11.2 Exhaust ventilation systems.** Exhaust ventilation systems are allowed to be designed to operate at not less than one-half the normal fan speed on the emergency power system where it is demonstrated that the level of exhaust will maintain a safe atmosphere.

**[F] 415.11.12 Automatic sprinkler system protection in exhaust ducts for HPM.** An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in exhaust ducts conveying gases, vapors, fumes, mists or dusts generated from HPM in accordance with Sections 415.11.12.1 through 415.11.12.3 and the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 415.11.12.1 Metallic and noncombustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts.** An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in metallic and noncombustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts where all of the following conditions apply:

1. Where the largest cross-sectional diameter is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).
2. The ducts are within the building.
3. The ducts are conveying flammable gases, vapors or fumes.

**[F] 415.11.12.2 Combustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts.** Automatic sprinkler system protection shall be provided in combustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).

**Exception:** Ducts need not be provided with automatic sprinkler protection as follows:

1. Ducts listed or approved for applications without automatic sprinkler system protection.
2. Ducts not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) in length installed below ceiling level.

**[F] 415.11.12.3 Automatic sprinkler locations.** Sprinkler systems shall be installed at 12-foot (3658 mm) intervals in horizontal ducts and at changes in direction. In vertical ducts, sprinklers shall be installed at the top and at alternate floor levels.

### 415.12 Group H occupancies located on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**415.12.1 Fire – smoke barrier.** Any story containing a Group H occupancy on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above shall be subdivided by a fire-smoke barrier constructed as a fire barrier having a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours and shall also comply with the smoke barrier requirements of Section 710. The 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Sections 415.12.1.1 through 415.12.1.5.

**415.12.1.1** The 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be continuous from exterior wall to exterior wall.

**415.12.1.2** The fire-smoke barrier shall divide the story so that the square footage on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier is not less than 30 percent of the total floor area.

**415.12.1.3** A minimum of one door opening shall be provided in the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier for emergency access.

**415.12.1.4** Each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be designed as a separate smoke zone designed in accordance with Section 909.5.

**415.12.1.5** The area on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be served by a minimum of one exit enclosure in accordance with Section 1022.

### 415.13 Elevators and elevator lobbies on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**Any story containing a Group H occupancy on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above shall be provided with elevators and elevator lobbies in accordance with Sections 415.13.1 through 415.13.3.**

**415.13.1** An elevator that serves every story of the building shall be provided on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier.

**415.13.2** An elevator lobby shall be provided on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier at each floor in accordance with Section 708.4. Exceptions to 708.4 shall not apply.

**415.13.3** The elevator and its associated elevator lobbies and elevator machine rooms shall be pressurized in accordance with Section 909.5.

## SECTION 416

### SPRAY APPLICATION OF FLAMMABLE FINISHES

**[F] 416.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall apply to the construction, installation and use of buildings and structures, or parts thereof, for the spray application of flammable finishes. Operations and equipment shall comply with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 416.2 Spray rooms.** Spray rooms shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Floors shall be waterproofed and drained in an approved manner.

**[F] 416.2.1 Construction.** Walls and ceilings of spray rooms shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

the interior surface shall be completely covered with noncombustible materials. Aluminum shall not be used.

**[F] 416.2.2 Surfaces.** The interior surfaces of spray rooms shall be smooth and shall be so constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior and to facilitate washing and cleaning, and shall be so designed to confine residues within the room.

**[F] 416.2.3 Ventilation.** Mechanical ventilation and interlocks with the spraying operation shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 416.3 Spraying spaces.** Spraying spaces shall be ventilated with an exhaust system to prevent the accumulation of flammable mist or vapors in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*. Where such spaces are not separately enclosed, noncombustible spray curtains shall be provided to restrict the spread of flammable vapors.

**[F] 416.3.1 Surfaces.** The interior surfaces of spraying spaces shall be smooth; shall be so constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior and to facilitate washing and cleaning; and shall be so designed to confine residues within the spraying space. Aluminum shall not be used.

**[F] 416.4 Spray booths.** Spray booths shall be designed, constructed and operated in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 416.5 Fire protection.** An automatic sprinkler system or fire-extinguishing system shall be provided in all spray rooms and spray booths, and shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 9.

## SECTION 417 DRYING ROOMS

**[F] 417.1 General.** A drying room or dry kiln installed within a building shall be constructed entirely of approved noncombustible materials or assemblies of such materials regulated by the approved rules or as required in the general and specific sections of this chapter for special occupancies and where applicable to the general requirements of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 417.2 Piping clearance.** Overhead heating pipes shall have a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from combustible contents in the dryer.

**[F] 417.3 Insulation.** Where the operating temperature of the dryer is 175°F (79°C) or more, metal enclosures shall be insulated from adjacent combustible materials by not less than 12 inches (305 mm) of airspace, or the metal walls shall be lined with  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) insulating mill board or other approved equivalent insulation.

**[F] 417.4 Fire protection.** Drying rooms designed for high-hazard materials and processes, including special occupancies as provided for in Chapter 4, shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with the provisions of Chapter 9.

## SECTION 418 ORGANIC COATINGS

**[F] 418.1 Building features.** Manufacturing of organic coatings shall be done only in buildings that do not have pits or basements.

**[F] 418.2 Location.** Organic coating manufacturing operations and operations incidental to or connected therewith shall not be located in buildings having other occupancies.

**[F] 418.3 Process mills.** Mills operating with close clearances and that process flammable and heat-sensitive materials, such as nitrocellulose, shall be located in a detached building or noncombustible structure.

**[F] 418.4 Tank storage.** Storage areas for flammable and combustible liquid tanks inside of structures shall be located at or above grade and shall be separated from the processing area by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 418.5 Nitrocellulose storage.** Nitrocellulose storage shall be located on a detached pad or in a separate structure or a room enclosed with not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 418.6 Finished products.** Storage rooms for finished products that are flammable or combustible liquids shall be separated from the processing area by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

\*

## SECTION 419 ARTIFICIAL DECORATIVE VEGETATION

**[F] 419.1 Artificial decorative vegetation.** Artificial decorative vegetation exceeding 6 feet (1830 mm) in height and permanently installed outdoors within 5 feet (1524 mm) of a building, or on the roof of a building, shall comply with Section 321.1 of the *California Fire Code*.

**Exception:** Artificial decorative vegetation located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from the exterior wall of a building.

## SECTION 420 GROUPS R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3, R-3.1 AND R-4

**420.1 General.** Occupancies in Groups R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 shall comply with the provisions of Sections 420.1 through 420.11 and other applicable provisions of this code.

**420.2 Separation walls.** Walls separating dwelling units in the same building, walls separating sleeping units in the same building and walls separating dwelling or sleeping units from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as fire partitions in accordance with Section 708.



## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

**420.3 Horizontal separation.** Floor assemblies separating dwelling units in the same buildings, floor assemblies separating sleeping units in the same building and floor assemblies separating dwelling or sleeping units from other occupancies contiguous to them in the same building shall be constructed as horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711.

[F] **420.4 Automatic sprinkler system.** Group R occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8. *Group R-2.2 shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Group R-2.1 occupancies shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6. Quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3.2.*

[F] **420.5 Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms.** Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be provided in Group R-1, R-2 and R-2.1 occupancies in accordance with Sections 907.2.6, 907.2.8 and 907.2.9 and 907.2.10, respectively. Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be provided in Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-3 and R-4 in accordance with Section 907.2.11. *Group R-2.2 shall be equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm systems per 907.2.9.2 and shall have a manual fire alarm pull station at the 24-hour staff watch office.*

**420.6 Smoke barriers in Group R-2.1.** Smoke barriers shall be provided in Group R-2.1 to subdivide every story used by persons receiving care, treatment or sleeping and to provide other stories with an occupant load of 50 or more persons, into not fewer than two smoke compartments. Such stories shall be divided into smoke compartments with an area of not more than 22,500 square feet ( $2092 \text{ m}^2$ ) and the distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Section 709.

**420.6.1 Smoke barrier in Group R-2.2.** Occupancies in Group R-2.2 shall have smoke barriers complying with Sections 709 to divide every story occupied by residents for sleeping, into no fewer than two smoke compartments.

**Exception:** Spaces having a direct exit to a public way.

**420.6.2 Refuge area.** Refuge areas shall be provided within each smoke compartment. The size of the refuge area shall accommodate the occupants and care recipients from the adjoining smoke compartment. Where a smoke compartment is adjoined by two or more smoke compartments, the minimum area of the refuge area shall accommodate the largest occupant load of the adjoining compartments. The size of the refuge area shall provide the following:

1. Not less than 15 net square feet ( $1.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each care recipient.
2. Not less than 6 net square feet ( $0.56 \text{ m}^2$ ) for other occupants.

Areas or spaces permitted to be included in the calculation of the refuge area are corridors, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas.

### 420.7 Reserved.

### 420.8 Reserved.

**420.9 Domestic cooking appliances.** In Group I-1 occupancies, installation of cooking appliance used in domestic cooking facilities shall comply with all of the following:

1. The types of cooking appliances permitted shall be limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers and microwaves.
2. Domestic cooking hoods installed and constructed in accordance with Section 505 of the *California Mechanical Code* shall be provided over cooktops or ranges.
3. Cooktops and ranges shall be protected in accordance with Section 904.14.
4. A shutoff for the fuel and electrical supply to the cooking equipment shall be provided in a location to which only staff has access.
5. A timer shall be provided that automatically deactivates the cooking appliances within a period of not more than 120 minutes.
6. A portable fire extinguisher shall be provided. Installation shall be in accordance with Section 906 and the extinguisher shall be located within a 30-foot (9144 mm) distance of travel from each domestic cooking appliance.

### Exceptions:

1. Cooking facilities provided within care recipients' individual dwelling units are not required to comply with this section.
2. Cooktops and ranges used for care-recipient training or nutritional counseling are not required to comply with Item 3 of this section

**420.10 Group R cooking facilities.** In Group R occupancies, cooking appliances used for domestic cooking operations shall be in accordance with Section 917.2 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**420.11 Group R-2 dormitory cooking facilities.** Domestic cooking appliances for use by residents of Group R-2 college dormitories shall be in accordance with Sections 420.11.1 and 420.11.2.

**420.11.1 Cooking appliances.** Where located in Group R-2 college dormitories, domestic cooking appliances for use by residents shall be in compliance with all of the following:

1. The types of domestic cooking appliances shall be limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers, coffee makers and microwaves.
2. Domestic cooking appliances shall be limited to approved locations.
3. Cooktops and ranges shall be protected in accordance with Section 904.14.
4. Cooktops and ranges shall be provided with a domestic cooking hood installed and constructed in accordance with Section 505 of the *California Mechanical Code*. Kitchen range hoods shall also

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

be rated for sound and meet field verification requirements in the California Energy Code for low-rise and high-rise residential buildings.

**420.11.2 Cooking appliances in sleeping rooms.** Cooktops, ranges and ovens shall not be installed or used in sleeping rooms.

|| **420.12 [HCD 1] Construction waste management.** Recycle and/or salvage for reuse a minimum of 65 percent of the non-hazardous construction and demolition waste in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.4.

|| **420.13 Special provisions for residential hotels. [HCD 1 & HCD 1-AC]**

|| **420.13.1 Locking mail receptacles.** A locking mail receptacle for each residential unit shall be provided in all residential hotels pursuant to the requirements specified in Heath and Safety Code Section 17958.3.

|| **420.14 [HCD 1] Electric vehicle (EV) charging for new construction.** Newly constructed Group R-1, R-2 and R-3 buildings shall meet requirements for electric vehicle charging in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.1.

**420.15 Licensed 24-hour care facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancy.** See Section 435 for Special Provisions for licensed 24-hour care facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancy.

**420.16 Electronic monitoring.** In Group R-2.2 occupancies there shall be continuous electronic supervision via CCTV system camera coverage and monitoring the following areas: corridors, storage rooms over 100 square feet, central kitchen and main entryway of the facility.

## SECTION 421 HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS

**[F] 421.1 General.** Where required by the California Fire Code, hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 421.1 through 421.7.

**[F] 421.2 Location.** Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall not be located below grade.

**[F] 421.3 Design and construction.** Hydrogen fuel gas rooms not classified as Group H shall be separated from other areas of the building in accordance with Section 509.1.

**[F] 421.3.1 Pressure control.** Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with a ventilation system designed to maintain the room at a negative pressure in relation to surrounding rooms and spaces.

**[F] 421.3.2 Windows.** Operable windows in interior walls shall not be permitted. Fixed windows shall be permitted where in accordance with Section 716.

**[F] 421.4 Exhaust ventilation.** Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 502.16.1 of the California Mechanical Code.

**[F] 421.5 Gas detection system.** Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be provided with a gas detection system that complies with Sections 421.5.1, 421.5.2, and 916.

**[F] 421.5.1 System activation.** Activation of a gas detection alarm shall result in both of the following:

1. Initiation of distinct audible and visible alarm signals both inside and outside of the hydrogen fuel gas room.
2. Automatic activation of the mechanical exhaust ventilation system.

**[F] 421.5.2 Failure of the gas detection system.** Failure of the gas detection system shall automatically activate the mechanical exhaust ventilation system, stop hydrogen generation, and cause a trouble signal to sound at an approved location.

**[F] 421.6 Explosion control.** Explosion control shall be provided where required by Section 414.5.1.

**[F] 421.7 Standby power.** Mechanical ventilation and gas detection systems shall be provided with a standby power system in accordance with Section 2702.

## SECTION 422 AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES

**422.1 General.** Occupancies classified as ambulatory care facilities shall comply with the provisions of Sections 422.1 through 422.7 and other applicable provisions of this code. *[For OSHPD 3] For clinics licensed by California Department of Public Health also refer to Section 1226.2.*

**422.2 Separation.** Ambulatory care facilities where the potential for four or more care recipients are to be incapable of self-preservation at any time shall be separated from adjacent spaces, corridors or tenants with a fire partition installed in accordance with Section 708.

**422.3 Smoke compartments.** Where the aggregate area of one or more ambulatory care facilities is greater than 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ) on one story, the story shall be provided with a smoke barrier to subdivide the story into not fewer than two smoke compartments. The area of any one such smoke compartment shall be not greater than 22,500 square feet ( $2092 \text{ m}^2$ ). The distance of travel from any point in a smoke compartment to a smoke barrier door shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm). The smoke barrier shall be installed in accordance with Section 709 with the exception that smoke barriers shall be continuous from outside wall to an outside wall, a floor to a floor, or from a smoke barrier to a smoke barrier or a combination thereof.

**422.3.1 Means of egress.** Where ambulatory care facilities require smoke compartmentation in accordance with Section 422.3, the fire safety evacuation plans provided in accordance with Section 1002.2 shall identify the building components necessary to support a defend-in-place emergency response in accordance with Sections 403 and 404 of the California Fire Code.

**422.3.2 Refuge area.** Not less than 30 net square feet ( $2.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each nonambulatory care recipient shall be

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

provided within the aggregate area of corridors, care recipient rooms, treatment rooms, lounge or dining areas and other low-hazard areas within each smoke compartment. Each occupant of an ambulatory care facility shall be provided with access to a refuge area without passing through or utilizing adjacent tenant spaces.

**422.3.3 Independent egress.** A means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers without having to return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated.

[F] **422.4 Automatic sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided for ambulatory care facilities in accordance with Section 903.2.2.

[F] **422.5 Fire alarm systems.** A fire alarm system shall be provided for ambulatory care facilities in accordance with Section 907.2.2.

[F] **422.6 Electrical systems.** In ambulatory care facilities, the essential electrical system for electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 27 and *California Electrical Code Article 517*.

**422.7 Domestic cooking.** Installation of cooking appliances used in domestic cooking facilities shall comply with all of the following:

1. The types of cooking appliances permitted are limited to ovens, cooktops, ranges, warmers and microwaves.
2. Domestic cooking hoods installed and constructed in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* shall be provided over cooktops or ranges.
3. A shutoff for the fuel and electrical supply to the cooking equipment shall be provided in a location to which only staff has access.
4. A timer shall be provided that automatically deactivates the cooking appliances within a period of not more than 120 minutes.
5. A portable fire extinguisher shall be provided. Installation shall be in accordance with Section 906 and the extinguisher shall be located within a 30-foot (9144 mm) distance of travel from each domestic cooking appliance.

## SECTION 423 STORM SHELTERS

**423.1 General.** This section applies to the construction of storm shelters constructed as separate detached buildings or constructed as rooms or spaces within buildings for the purpose of providing protection from storms that produce high winds, such as tornadoes and hurricanes, during the storm. This section specifies where storm shelters are required and provides requirements for the design and construction of storm shelters. Design of facilities for use as emergency shelters after the storm are outside the scope of ICC 500 and shall comply with Table 1604.5 as a *Risk Category IV Structure*.

**423.2 Construction.** Storm shelters shall be constructed in accordance with this code and ICC 500 and shall be designated as hurricane shelters, tornado shelters, or combined hurricane and tornado shelters. Buildings or structures that are also designated as emergency shelters shall also comply with Table 1604.5 as *Risk Category IV structures*.

Any storm shelter not required by this section shall be permitted to be constructed, provided that such structures meet the requirements of this code and ICC 500.

**423.3 Occupancy classification.** The occupancy classification for a storm shelter shall be determined in accordance with this section.

**423.3.1 Dedicated storm shelters.** A facility designed to be occupied solely as a storm shelter shall be classified as Group A-3 for the determination of requirements other than those covered in ICC 500.

### Exceptions:

1. The occupancy category for dedicated storm shelters with an occupant load of fewer than 50 persons as determined in accordance with ICC 500 shall be in accordance with Section 303.
2. The occupancy category for a dedicated residential storm shelter shall be the Group R occupancy served.

**423.3.2 Storm shelters within host buildings.** Where designated storm shelters are constructed as a room or space within a host building that will normally be occupied for other purposes, the requirements of this code for the occupancy of the building, or the individual rooms or spaces thereof, shall apply unless otherwise required by ICC 500.

**423.4 Critical emergency operations.** In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500 is 250 mph, 911 call stations, emergency operation centers and fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations shall comply with Table 1604.5 as a *Risk Category IV structure* and shall be provided with a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

**423.5 Group E occupancies.** In areas where the shelter design wind speed for tornados is 250 mph in accordance with Figure 304.2(1) of ICC 500, all Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or more shall have a storm shelter constructed in accordance with ICC 500.

### Exceptions:

1. Group E day care facilities.
2. Group E occupancies accessory to places of religious worship.
3. Buildings meeting the requirements for shelter design in ICC 500.

**423.5.1 Required occupant capacity.** The required occupant capacity of the storm shelter shall include all of the buildings on the site and shall be the greater of the following:

1. The total occupant load of the classrooms, vocational rooms and offices in the Group E occupancy.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

2. The occupant load of the largest indoor assembly space that is associated with the Group E occupancy.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where a new building is being added on an existing Group E site, and where the new building is not of sufficient size to accommodate the required occupant capacity of the storm shelter for all of the buildings on the site, the storm shelter shall at a minimum accommodate the required occupant capacity for the new building.
2. Where approved by the building official, the required occupant capacity of the shelter shall be permitted to be reduced by the occupant capacity of any existing storm shelters on the site.

**423.5.2 Location.** Storm shelters shall be located within the buildings they serve or shall be located where the maximum distance of travel from not fewer than one exterior door of each building to a door of the shelter serving that building does not exceed 1,000 feet (305 m).

## SECTION 424 PLAY STRUCTURES

**424.1 General.** Play structures installed inside all occupancies covered by this code that exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in height or 150 square feet ( $14\text{ m}^2$ ) in area shall comply with Sections 424.2 through 424.5.

**424.2 Materials.** Play structures shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of combustible materials that comply with the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.
2. Light-transmitting plastics complying with Section 2606.
3. Foam plastics (including the pipe foam used in soft-contained play equipment structures) having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source.
4. Aluminum composite material (ACM) meeting the requirements of Class A interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8 when tested as an assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use.
5. Textiles and films complying with the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
6. Plastic materials used to construct rigid components of soft-contained play equipment structures (such as tubes, windows, panels, junction boxes, pipes, slides and decks) exhibiting a peak rate of heat release not exceeding 400 kW/m<sup>2</sup> when tested in accordance with ASTM E1354 at an incident heat flux of 50 kW/m<sup>2</sup> in the horizontal orientation at a thickness of 6 mm.

7. Ball pool balls, used in soft-contained play equipment structures, having a maximum heat-release rate not greater than 100 kilowatts when tested in accordance with UL 1975 or when tested in accordance with NFPA 289, using the 20 kW ignition source. The minimum specimen test size shall be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) by an average of 21 inches (533 mm) deep, and the balls shall be held in a box constructed of galvanized steel poultry netting wire mesh.

8. Foam plastics shall be covered by a fabric, coating or film meeting the fire propagation performance criteria contained in Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
9. The floor covering placed under the play structure shall exhibit a Class I interior floor finish classification, as described in Section 804, when tested in accordance with ASTM E648 or NFPA 253.
10. Interior finishes for structures exceeding 600 square feet ( $56\text{ m}^2$ ) in area or 10 feet (3048 mm) in height shall have a flame spread index not greater than that specified in Table 803.13 for the occupancy group and location designated. Interior wall and ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meeting the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1, shall be permitted to be used where a Class A classification in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 is required.

**[F] 424.3 Fire protection.** Play structures shall be provided with the same level of approved fire suppression and detection devices required for other structures in the same occupancy.

**424.4 Separation.** Play structures shall have a horizontal separation from building walls, partitions and from elements of the means of egress of not less than 5 feet (1524 mm). Play structures shall have a horizontal separation from other play structures of not less than 20 feet (6090 mm).

**424.5 Area limits.** Play structures shall be not greater than 600 square feet ( $56\text{ m}^2$ ) in area, unless a special investigation, acceptable to the building official, has demonstrated adequate fire safety.

**424.5.1 Design.** Play structures exceeding 600 square feet ( $56\text{ m}^2$ ) in area or 10 feet (3048 mm) in height shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 16.

## SECTION 425 HYPERBARIC FACILITIES

**425.1 Hyperbaric facilities.** Hyperbaric facilities shall meet the requirements contained in Chapter 14 of NFPA 99.

## SECTION [F] 426 COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS, GRAIN PROCESSING AND STORAGE

**[F] 426.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 426.1.1 through 426.1.7 shall apply to buildings in which materials that produce combustible dusts are stored or handled. Buildings that store or

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

handle combustible dusts shall comply with the applicable provisions of the *California Fire Code*. Where required by the fire code official, NFPA 652 and the applicable provisions of NFPA 61, NFPA 85, NFPA 120, NFPA 484, NFPA 654, NFPA 655 and NFPA 664 shall apply.

**[F] 426.1.1 Type of construction and height exceptions.**

Buildings shall be constructed in compliance with the height, number of stories and area limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506; except that where erected of Type I or II construction, the heights and areas of grain elevators and similar structures shall be unlimited, and where of Type IV construction, the maximum building height shall be 65 feet (19 812 mm) and except further that, in isolated areas, the maximum building height of Type IV structures shall be increased to 85 feet (25 908 mm).

**[F] 426.1.2 Grinding rooms.** Every room or space occupied for grinding or other operations that produce combustible dusts in such a manner that the room or space is classified as a Group H-2 occupancy shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating of the enclosure shall be not less than 2 hours where the area is not more than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ), and not less than 4 hours where the area is greater than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 426.1.3 Conveyors.** Conveyors, chutes, piping and similar equipment passing through the enclosures of rooms or spaces shall be constructed dirt tight and vapor tight, and be of approved noncombustible materials complying with Chapter 30.

**[F] 426.1.4 Explosion control.** Explosion control shall be provided as specified in the *California Fire Code*, or spaces shall be equipped with the equivalent mechanical ventilation complying with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 426.1.5 Grain elevators.** Grain elevators, malt houses and buildings for similar occupancies shall not be located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of interior lot lines or structures on the same lot, except where erected along a railroad right-of-way.

**[F] 426.1.6 Coal pockets.** Coal pockets located less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from interior lot lines or from structures on the same lot shall be constructed of not less than Type IB construction. Where more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from interior lot lines, or where erected along a railroad right-of-way, the minimum type of construction of such structures not more than 65 feet (19 812 mm) in building height shall be Type IV.

**[F] 426.1.7 Tire rebuilding.** Buffing operations shall be located in a room separated from the remainder of the building housing the tire rebuilding or tire recapping operation by a 1-hour fire barrier.

**Exception:** Buffing operations are not required to be separated where all of the following conditions are met:

1. Buffing operations are equipped with an approved continuous automatic water-spray system directed at the point of cutting action.

2. Buffing machines are connected to particle-collecting systems providing a minimum air movement of 1,500 cubic feet per minute (cfm) ( $0.71 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ ) in volume and 4,500 feet per minute (fpm) ( $23 \text{ m/s}$ ) in-line velocity.

3. The collecting system shall discharge the rubber particles to an approved outdoor noncombustible or fire-resistant container, which is emptied at frequent intervals to prevent overflow.

## SECTION 427 MEDICAL GAS SYSTEMS

**[F] 427.1 General.** Medical gases at health care-related facilities intended for patient or veterinary care shall comply with Sections 427.2 through 427.2.3 in addition to requirements of Chapter 53 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 427.2 Interior supply location.** Medical gases shall be located in areas dedicated to the storage of such gases without other storage or uses. Where containers of medical gases in quantities greater than the permitted amount are located inside the buildings, they shall be located in a 1-hour exterior room, 1-hour interior room or a gas cabinet in accordance with Section 427.2.1, 427.2.2 or 427.2.3, respectively. Rooms or areas where medical gases are stored or used in quantities exceeding the maximum allowable quantity per control area as set forth in TABLE 307.1(1) and [F] TABLE 307.1(2) shall be in accordance with Group H occupancies.

**[F] 427.2.1 One-hour exterior room.** A 1-hour exterior room shall be a room or enclosure separated from the remainder of the building by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, with a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings between the room or enclosure and interior spaces shall be provided with self-closing smoke- and draft-control assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour. Rooms shall have not less than one exterior wall that is provided with not less than two vents. Each vent shall have a minimum free air opening of not less than 36 square inches ( $232 \text{ cm}^2$ ) for each 1,000 cubic feet ( $28 \text{ m}^3$ ) at normal temperature and pressure (NTP) of gas stored in the room and shall be not less than 72 square inches ( $465 \text{ cm}^2$ ) in aggregate free opening area. One vent shall be within 6 inches (152 mm) of the floor and one shall be within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ceiling. Rooms shall be provided with not fewer than one automatic fire sprinkler to provide container cooling in case of fire.

**[F] 427.2.2 One-hour interior room.** Where an exterior wall cannot be provided for the room, a 1-hour interior room shall be provided and shall be a room or enclosure separated from the remainder of the building by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, with a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings between the room or enclosure and interior spaces shall be provided with self-closing smoke- and draft-control assemblies having a fire protec-

tion rating of not less than 1 hour. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed within the room. The room shall be exhausted through a duct to the exterior. Supply and exhaust ducts shall be enclosed in a 1-hour rated shaft enclosure from the room to the exterior. Approved mechanical ventilation shall comply with the *California Mechanical Code* and be provided with a minimum rate of 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot ( $0.00508 \text{ m}^3/\text{s/m}^2$ ) of the area of the room.

**[F] 427.2.3 Gas cabinets.** Gas cabinets shall be constructed in accordance with Section 5003.8.6 of the *California Fire Code* and shall comply with the following:

1. Cabinets shall be exhausted to the exterior through a dedicated exhaust duct system installed in accordance with Chapter 5 of the *California Mechanical Code*.
2. Supply and exhaust ducts shall be enclosed in a 1-hour rated shaft enclosure from the cabinet to the exterior. The average velocity of ventilation at the face of access ports or windows shall be not less than 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s) with a minimum of 150 feet per minute (0.76 m/s) at any point of the access port or window.
3. Cabinets shall be provided with an automatic sprinkler system internal to the cabinet.

## SECTION 435 SPECIAL PROVISIONS FOR LICENSED 24-HOUR CARE FACILITIES IN A GROUP R-2.1, R-3.1, R-4 [SFM]

**435.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to 24-hour care facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancy licensed by a governmental agency.

**435.2 General.** The provisions in this section shall apply in addition to general requirements in this code.

**435.2.1 Restraint** shall not be practiced in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 Occupancies.

**Exception:** Occupancies which meet all the requirements for a Group I-3 Occupancy.

**435.2.2 Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13133,** regulations of the state fire marshal pertaining to occupancies classified as Residential Facilities (RF) and Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly (RCFE) shall apply uniformly throughout the state and no city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county, or fire protection district shall adopt or enforce any ordinance or local rule or regulation relating to fire and panic safety which is inconsistent with these regulations. A city, county, city and county, including a charter city or charter county may pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143.5, or a fire protection district may pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13869.7, adopt standards more stringent than those adopted by the state fire marshal that are reasonably necessary to accommodate local climate, geological or topographical conditions relating

to roof coverings for Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly.

**Exception:** Local regulations relating to roof coverings in facilities licensed as a residential care facility for the elderly (RCFE) per Health and Safety Code Section 13133.

### 435.3 Building height and area provisions.

**435.3.1 Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4** shall be constructed in accordance with Table 504.3.

**435.3.2 Limitations six or less clients.** Group R-3.1 occupancies where nonambulatory clients are housed above the first story, having more than two stories in height or having more than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area above the first story shall not be of less than one-hour fire-resistance-rated construction throughout.

In Group R3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client, the client sleeping room shall not be located above or below the first story.

**Exception:** Clients who become bedridden as a result of a temporary illness as defined in Health and Safety Code Sections 1566.45, 1568.0832 and 1569.72. A temporary illness is an illness, which persists for 14 days or less. A bedridden client may be retained in excess of the 14 days upon approval by the Department of Social Services and may continue to be housed on any story in a Group R-3.1 occupancy classified as a licensed residential facility.

Every licensee admitting or retaining a bedridden resident shall, within 48 hours of the resident's admission or retention in the facility, notify the local fire authority with jurisdiction of the estimated length of time the resident will retain his or her bedridden status in the facility.

**435.3.3 Limitations seven or more clients.** Group R-4 occupancies where nonambulatory clients are housed above the first story and there is more than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area above the first story or housing not more than 16 clients above the first story shall be constructed of not less than one-hour fire-resistance-rated construction throughout.

**435.3.4 Nonambulatory elderly clients.** Group R-4 occupancies housing nonambulatory elderly clients shall be of not less than one-hour fire-resistance-rated construction throughout.

### 435.4 Type of construction provisions.

**435.4.1 Group R-2.1,** occupancies are not permitted in nonfire-resistance-rated construction, see Health and Safety Code Section 13131.5.

### 435.5 Fire-resistance-rated construction provisions.

**435.5.1 Smoke barriers required.** Group R-2.1 and R-4 occupancies licensed as a Residential Care Facility (RCF) with individual floor areas over 6,000 square feet ( $557 \text{ m}^2$ ) per floor, shall be provided with smoke barriers, constructed in accordance with Section 709.

*Group R-2.1 occupancies housing bedridden clients shall be provided with smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 709 regardless of the number of clients.*

*When smoke barriers are required, the area within a smoke compartment shall not exceed 22,500 square feet ( $2090 \text{ m}^2$ ) nor shall its travel distance exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). Such smoke barriers shall divide the floor as equally as possible.*

**435.5.2 Smoke partitions.** *Group R-2.1 occupancies where smoke partitions are required, framing shall be covered with noncombustible materials having an approved thermal barrier with an index of not less than 15 in accordance with FM 4880, UL 1040, NFPA 286 or UL 1715.*

**435.5.3 Independent egress.** *At least two means of egress shall be provided from each smoke compartment created by smoke barriers. Means of egress may pass through adjacent compartments provided it does not return through the smoke compartment from which means of egress originated. Smoke compartments that do not contain an exit shall be provided with direct access to not less than two adjacent smoke compartments.*

#### 435.6 Interior finish provisions.

**435.6.1 Interior wall and ceiling finish.** *Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client shall comply with interior wall and ceiling finish requirements specified for Group I-2 occupancies in Table 803.13.*

**435.6.2 Safety padding.** *Padding material used on walls, floors and ceilings in Group I and R-2.1 occupancies shall be of an approved type tested in accordance with the procedures established by State Fire Marshal Standard 12-8-100, Room Fire Test for Wall and Ceiling Materials, California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 12.*

#### 435.7 Fire protection system provisions.

**435.7.1 Automatic sprinkler systems in Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 occupancies.** *An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed where required in Section 903.*

**435.7.2 Fire alarm systems in Group R-2.1 and R-4 occupancies.** *An approved fire alarm system shall be installed where required in Section 907.*

**435.7.3 Smoke alarms in Groups R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 occupancies.** *Smoke alarms shall be installed where required in Section 907.2.11.2.*

**435.7.4 Hearing impaired.** *See Section 907.5.2.3.4.*

#### 435.8 Means of egress provisions.

**435.8.1 General.** *In addition to the general means of egress requirements of Chapter 10, this section shall apply to Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 occupancies.*

#### 435.8.2 Number of exits.

**435.8.2.1 Group R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4 occupancies** shall have a minimum of two exits.

**Exception:** Ancillary use areas or occupancies shall have egress as required by Section 1021.

#### 435.8.3 Egress arrangements.

**435.8.3.1** *Egress through adjoining dwelling units shall not be permitted.*

**435.8.3.2 Group R-3.1 occupancies housing nonambulatory clients.** *In a Group R-3.1 occupancy, bedrooms used by nonambulatory clients shall have access to at least one of the required exits which shall conform to one of the following:*

- 1.** *Egress through a hallway or area into a bedroom in the immediate area which has an exit directly to the exterior and the corridor/hallway is constructed consistent with the dwelling unit interior walls. The hallway shall be separated from common areas by a solid wood door not less than  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inch (35 mm) in thickness, maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 716.5.9.*
  - 2.** *Egress through a hallway which has an exit directly to the exterior. The hallway shall be separated from the rest of the house by a wall constructed consistent with the dwelling unit interior walls and opening protected by a solid wood door not less than  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inch (35 mm) in thickness, maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 716.5.9.*
  - 3.** *Direct exit from the bedroom to the exterior shall be of a size as to permit the installation of a door not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. When installed, doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees and shall be so mounted that the clear width of the exit way is not less than 32 inches (813 mm).*
  - 4.** *Egress through an adjoining bedroom which exits to the exterior.*
- 435.8.3.3 Group R-3.1 occupancies housing only one bedridden client.** *In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client and not provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system, all of the following shall apply:*
- 1.** *In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client, a direct exit to the exterior of the residence shall be provided from the client sleeping room.*
  - 2.** *Doors to a bedridden client's sleeping room shall be of a self-closing, positive latching  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inch solid wood door. Such doors shall be provided with a gasket so installed as to provide a seal where the door meets the jam on both sides and across the top. Doors shall be maintained self-closing or shall be automatic closing by actuation of a smoke alarm in accordance with Section 716.5.9.*
  - 3.** *Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client, shall not have a night latch, dead bolt, security chain or any similar locking device installed on any interior door leading from a bedridden cli-*

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

ent's sleeping room to any interior area such as a corridor, hallway and or general use areas of the residence in accordance with Chapter 10.

4. The exterior exit door to a bedridden client's sleeping room shall be operable from both the interior and exterior of the residence.
5. Every required exit doorway from a bedridden client sleeping room shall be of a size as to permit the installation of a door not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. When installed in exit doorways, exit doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees and shall be so mounted that the clear width of the exit way is not less than 32 inches (813 mm).

**Note:** A sliding glass door can be used as an exterior exit doorway as long as it is operable from the inside and outside and the clear width of the exit way is not less than 32 inches (813 mm).

**435.8.3.4 Intervening rooms.** A means of exit shall not pass through more than one intervening room. A means of egress shall not pass through kitchens, storerooms, closets, garages or spaces used for similar purposes.

**Exception:** Kitchens which do not form separate rooms by construction.

#### 435.8.4 Corridors.

**435.8.4.1** Unless specified by Section 435.8.4, corridors serving Group R-2.1 and Group R-4 occupancies shall comply with Section 1018.1.

In Group R-2.1 occupancies provided with fire sprinklers throughout and which are required to have rated corridors, door closers need not be installed on doors to client sleeping rooms.

**435.8.4.2** The minimum clear width of a corridor shall be as follows:

1. Group R-2.1 occupancies shall have 60 inches (1524 mm) on floors housing nonambulatory clients and 44 inches (1118 mm) on floors housing only ambulatory clients.
2. Group R-4 occupancies shall have 44 inches (1118 mm) on floors housing clients.

#### Exceptions:

1. Corridors serving an occupant load of 10 or less shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.
2. Corridors serving ambulatory persons only and having an occupant load of 49 or less shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

**435.8.4.3** In a Group R-2.1 and Group R-4 occupancies having smoke barriers, cross-corridor doors in corridors 6 feet (1829 mm) or less in width shall have, as a minimum, a door 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

**435.8.5 Changes in level.** In Group R-3.1 occupancies housing nonambulatory clients interior changes in level up to 0.25 inch (6 mm) may be vertical and without edge

treatment. Changes in level between 0.25 inch (6 mm) and 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50 percent slope). Changes in level greater than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp.

#### 435.8.6 Stairways.

**435.8.6.1** Group R-2.1 and Group R-4 occupancies housing more than six nonambulatory clients above the first floor shall be provided with two vertical exit enclosures. Stairway enclosures shall be in compliance with Section 1022. Exceptions to Section 1022 shall not apply in facilities licensed as a 24-hour care facility.

**435.8.6.2** Group R-3.1 occupancies may continue to use existing stairways (except for winding and spiral stairways which are not permitted as a required means of egress) provided the stairs have a maximum rise of 8 inches (203 mm) with a minimum run of 9 inches (229 mm). The minimum stairway width may be 30 inches (762 mm).

**435.8.7 Floor separation.** Group R-3.1 occupancies with non-ambulatory clients housed above the first floor shall be provided with a non-fire resistance constructed floor separation at stairs which will prevent smoke migration between floors. Such floor separation shall have equivalent construction of 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard on one side of wall framing.

#### Exceptions:

1. Occupancies with at least one exterior exit from floors occupied by clients.
2. Occupancies provided with automatic fire sprinkler systems complying with Chapter 9.

**435.8.7.1 Doors within floor separations.** Doors within such floor separations shall be tight fitting solid wood at least  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inches (35 mm) in thickness. Door glazing shall not exceed 1296 square inches (32 918 mm<sup>2</sup>) with no dimension greater than 54 inches (1372 mm). Such doors shall be positive latching, smoke gasketed and shall be automatic-closing by smoke detection

**435.8.8 Fences and gates.** Grounds of a Residential Care Facility for the Elderly serving Alzheimer clients may be fenced and gates therein equipped with locks, provided safe dispersal areas are located not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the buildings. Dispersal areas shall be sized to provide an area of not less than 3 square feet (0.28 m<sup>2</sup>) per occupant. Gates shall not be installed across corridors or passageways leading to such dispersal areas unless they comply with egress requirements.

**435.8.9 Basement exits.** One exit is required to grade level when the basement is accessible to clients.

**435.8.10 Delayed egress locks.** See Section 1010.2.13.

**435.9 Request for alternate means of protection for facilities housing bedridden clients.** Request for alternate means of protection shall apply to Sections 435 through 435.9. Request for approval to use an alternative material, assembly or materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment or means of protection shall be made in writing to the local fire authority having

||

*jurisdiction by the facility, client or the client's authorized representative. Sufficient evidence shall be submitted to substantiate the need for an alternate means of protection.*

*The facility, client or the client's representative or the local fire authority having jurisdiction may request a written opinion from the State Fire Marshal concerning the interpretation of the regulations promulgated by the State Fire Marshal for a particular factual dispute. The State Fire Marshal shall issue the written opinion within 45 days following the request. Approval of a request for use of an alternative material, assembly or materials, equipment, method of construction, method of installation of equipment or means of protection made pursuant to this section shall be limited to Group R-3.1 occupancies housing a bedridden client. Approvals made by the local fire authority having jurisdiction and the written opinion by the State Fire Marshal shall be applicable only to the requesting facility and shall not be construed as establishing any precedent for any future request by that facility or any other facility.*

**435.10 Temporarily bedridden clients.** Clients who become temporarily bedridden as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 1569.72, as enforced by the Department of Social Services, may continue to be housed on any story in Group R-2.1, R-3.1 or R-4 occupancies classified as Residential Care Facilities for the Elderly (RCFE). Every Residential Care Facility for the Elderly (RCFE) admitting or retaining a bedridden resident shall, within 48 hours of the resident's admission or retention in the facility, notify the local fire authority with jurisdiction of the estimated length of time the resident will retain his or her bedridden status in the facility.

**435.11 Group R-2.1, R-3.1, R-4. [SFM]** Buildings housing protective social care need not be of 1-hour fire-resistive construction when not more than two stories in height. In no case shall individual floor areas exceed 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ). The fire-resistive protection of the exterior walls shall not be less than 1 hour where such walls are located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the property line. Openings within such walls are not permitted. Openings in exterior nonrated walls need not be protected.

## SECTION 436 GROUP I-4 [SFM]

**436.1 Group I-4 special provisions.** Rooms classified as Group I-4 shall not be located above or below the first story.

### Exceptions:

- > 1. Basements or stories having floor levels located within 4 feet (1219 mm), measured vertically, from adjacent ground level at the level of exit discharge, provided the basement or story has exterior exit doors at that level.
- > 2. Group I-4 child-care center or adult day care may be located above the first story in buildings of Types II-A, III-A, IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction, subject to the limitation of Section 503 when:

2.1. Group I-4 child-care centers with children under the age of seven or containing more than 12 children per story shall not be located above the fourth floor; and

2.2. The entire story in which the Group I-4 child-care center or adult day care is located is equipped with an approved manual fire alarm and automatic smoke-detection system. (See the California Fire Code.) Actuation of an initiating device shall sound an audible alarm throughout the entire story. When a building fire alarm system is required by other provisions of this code or the Fire Code, the alarm system shall be connected to the building alarm system. An approved alarm signal shall sound at an approved location in the Group I-4 facility to indicate a fire alarm or sprinkler flow condition in other portions of the building; and

2.3. Group I-4 child-care center or adult day care, if more than 1,000 square feet ( $92.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, is divided into at least two compartments of approximately the same size by a smoke barrier with door openings protected by smoke- and draft-control assemblies having a fire-protection rating of not less than 20 minutes. Smoke barriers shall have a fire-resistive rating of not less than one hour. In addition to the requirements of Section 508.3.3, occupancy separations between Group I-4 child-care center or adult day care and other occupancies shall be constructed as smoke barriers. Door openings in the smoke barrier shall be tightfitting, with gaskets installed as required by Section 710, and shall be automatic closing by actuation of the automatic sprinklers, fire alarm or smoke-detection system.

2.4. Each compartment formed by the smoke barrier has not less than two exits or exit access doors, one of which is permitted to pass through the adjoining compartment; and

2.5. Where two or more exits or exit access are required at least one shall not share a common path of travel. The egress system shall comply with the requirements of Section 709 for smoke barriers.

2.6. The building is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout.

**436.1.1 Egress.** Rooms used for Group I-4 child care or adult day care on the first floor shall have one exit door directly to the exterior.

**Exception:** One-hour rated corridors with a minimum width of 60 inches.

## SECTION 437 Reserved

**SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE****SECTION 438  
Reserved****SECTION 439  
ROAD TUNNELS, BRIDGES AND  
OTHER LIMITED-ACCESS HIGHWAYS [SFM]**

**439.1 General.** Road tunnels, bridges and other limited-access highways that are state owned shall comply with NFPA 502.

**SECTION 440  
HORSE RACING STABLES [SFM]**

**440.1** For automatic sprinkler and fire alarm system requirements applying to each building, barn or structure which is used by an association regulated by the California Horse Racing Board for the stabling of horses or human habitation, and the stable area grounds, including any additional location where any excess horses are stabled see Title 4, Division 4, Article 17, Section 1927.

**SECTION 441  
PET KENNELS AND  
PET BOARDING FACILITIES [SFM]**

**441.1** These regulations shall apply to every building or fire area in which a pet boarding facility operates, as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 122380, or a pet dealer, as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 122125, maintains a kennel.

**441.2 Automatic sprinkler system.** An approved automatic sprinkler system complying with California Fire Code Section 903 shall be installed.

**Exception:** Where a fire alarm system that is connected to a central reporting station that alerts the local fire department in case of fire.

**SECTION 442  
COMBUSTION ENGINES  
AND GAS TURBINES [SFM]**

**442.1 General.** The installation of combustion engines and gas turbines shall be in accordance with NFPA-37 and this chapter.

**442.2 Separation.**

**442.2.1 Construction.** Every room in which is installed a combustion engine or gas turbine shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a one-hour fire barrier.

**442.2.2 Exterior openings.** When doors, windows or louvered openings are located below openings in another story or less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from doors, windows or louvered openings of the same building, they shall be protected by a fire assembly having a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour rating. Such fire assemblies shall be fixed, automatic or self-closing.

**442.2.2.1 Interior openings.** In other than buildings housing Group I and R-2.1 occupancies, interior openings shall be allowed in buildings protected by an automatic fire sprinkler system throughout.

**442.2.3 Location.** Combustion engines and gas turbines used for emergency power shall not be located in a room or area used for any other purpose other than equipment and controls related to the generation and distribution of emergency power.

**442.2.4 Special hazards.** The handling and use of flammable or combustible liquids shall comply with the California Fire Code.

**SECTION 443  
FIXED GUIDEWAY TRANSIT AND  
PASSENGER RAIL SYSTEMS [SFM]****443.1 General.**

**443.1.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section and NFPA 130 shall apply to buildings or structures defined as stations for fixed guideway transit and passenger rail systems and shall supersede other similar requirements in other sections of this code.

**Note:** See Chapter 35 for California Amendments to NFPA 130.

**443.2 Special provisions.**

**443.2.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** See Section 903.2.17.1.

**443.2.2 Station guideway deluge system.** See Section 903.2.17.2.

**443.2.3 Standpipe systems.** See Section 905.3.11.

**443.2.4 Fire Alarm and Communication Systems.** See Section 907.2.26.

**443.2.5 Emergency ventilation control.** Emergency ventilation systems shall comply with this section and NFPA 130.

**443.2.5.1** Emergency ventilation systems shall be supervised and/or controlled in all operating modes locally (motor control center and/or fan unit) and remotely at both the Operations Control Center and the station Fire Command Center.

**443.2.5.2** Fan running shall be provided by sensing devices for each fan for operation in both the supply and exhaust directions.

**443.2.5.3** Trouble status signals shall be annunciated in the local control room. A summarized trouble signal shall be annunciated at Operations Control Center and Fire Command Center.

**SECTION 444  
EXPLOSIVES [SFM]**

[Section 444 has been repealed and replaced by the adoption of California Fire Code Chapter 56.]

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

### **SECTION 445** **Reserved**

### **SECTION 446** **WINERY CAVES [SFM]**

**446.1 Scope.** The use of subterranean space for winery facilities in natural or manmade caves shall be in accordance with this section.

#### **446.2 Definitions.**

**446.3 General.** For definitions of ASSEMBLY, FIRE APPLIANCE and NONCOMBUSTIBLE, see Chapter 2.

**446.4 Limited application.** For the purpose of Section 446, certain terms are defined as follows:

**TYPE 1 WINERY CAVES** are natural or manmade caves used solely for storage and/or processing of wine at a winery facility. Type 1 winery caves are not accessible to the public.

**TYPE 2 WINERY CAVES** are natural or manmade caves used for the storage and/or processing of wine at a winery facility. Type 2 winery caves are accessible to the public on guided tours only.

**TYPE 3 WINERY CAVES** are natural or manmade caves used for the storage and/or processing of wine at a winery facility. Type 3 winery caves are accessible to the public on guided tours and contain assembly use areas.

**446.5 Permits.** For permits to operate Type 2 and 3 winery caves, see Section 105.

**446.6 Fire apparatus access roads.** Fire apparatus access roads shall be constructed and maintained in accordance with the California Fire Code, Section 503.

#### **446.7 Construction requirements.**

**446.7.1 Allowable area.** The area of winery caves shall not be limited if constructed entirely of noncombustible materials. Winery caves constructed with combustible materials shall be limited in area so that no point is more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) from an exit.

**446.7.2 Interior construction.** The walls and ceilings of winery caves shall not contain hidden or concealed spaces.

#### **446.8 General requirements.**

**446.8.1 Public tours.** Tours for the public shall be continuously guided by staff knowledgeable in the location of exits and the use of emergency notification devices.

**446.8.2 Standby personnel.** Per the California Fire Code, Section 2404.20, when, in the opinion of the fire chief, it is essential for public safety, the owner, agent or lessee shall employ one or more qualified persons, as required and approved by the chief, to be on duty at such place. Such individuals shall be in uniform or otherwise easily identifiable.

Standby personnel shall be subject to the fire chief's orders at all times when so employed and shall remain on duty during the times such places are open to the public or when such activity is being conducted.

Before the start of any activity requiring standby personnel, such individuals shall:

1. Inspect the required fire appliances to ensure they are in the proper place and in good working order.
2. Inspect all exits to verify accessibility and proper operation.

While on duty, such individuals shall not be required or permitted to perform any duties other than those specified by the fire chief.

**446.8.3 Open-flame devices.** The use of candles and other open-flame devices shall be in accordance with California Fire Code Section 308.1.7.

**446.9 Portable fire extinguishers and other fire appliances.** Portable fire extinguishers shall be located to be readily accessible. Its type, location and spacing throughout the facility shall be in accordance with the provisions of Title 19, Chapter 3 and California Fire Code Section 906.1. Other fire appliances shall be maintained at the site as required by the fire chief.

**446.10 Fire alarm systems.** An approved manual fire alarm system conforming with the provisions of the California Fire Code, Section 907.2.1 shall be provided in all Type 3 winery caves.

#### **446.11 Exits.**

**446.11.1 Distribution.** Exits shall be located remotely from each other and arranged to minimize any possibility that more than one may be blocked off by any one fire or other emergency condition.

**446.11.2 Number.** Winery caves shall be provided with a minimum of two exits.

Assembly areas of Type 3 winery caves shall be provided with exits as required by the California Building Code for Group A Occupancies.

#### **446.12 Exit illumination.**

**446.12.1 General.** Exits shall be illuminated to a minimum intensity of not less than 1 foot-candle (10.76 lx) at floor level whenever the winery cave is occupied. Fixtures providing exit illumination shall be supplied from a dedicated circuit or source of power used only for exit illumination.

**446.12.2 Separate sources of power.** The power supply for exit illumination may be provided by the premises' wiring system. In the event of its failure, illumination shall be automatically provided from an emergency system in Types 2 and 3 winery caves. Emergency systems shall be supplied from storage batteries or an on-site generator set, and the system shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of the California Electrical Code.

**446.13 Exit signs.** Exit signs shall be installed at required exits and where otherwise necessary to clearly indicate the exits from assembly areas in Type 3 winery caves.

**446.14 Maximum occupant load.** Occupant load requirements in the assembly areas of Type 3 winery caves shall be in accordance with Section 1004.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**446.15 Seating arrangements.** Seating arrangements in the assembly areas of Type 3 winery caves shall be in accordance with California Fire Code, Section 1028.9.

#### SECTION 447 Reserved

#### SECTION 448 Reserved

#### SECTION 449 PUBLIC LIBRARIES [SL AND SFM]

Public libraries funded from the California Library Construction and Renovation Act of 1988.

**449.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in:

1. New facilities, including additions;
2. Existing facilities to which a project adds the lesser of 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ) or 10 percent of the size of the existing facility, if the existing facility does not already have an automatic sprinkler system.

**449.2 System monitoring requirement.** All fire protection systems shall be monitored by a fire alarm supervising station in accordance with the NFPA 72.

**449.3 Book return slots.** Any interior book return with a slot piercing the exterior wall shall have a separate sprinkler head and be enclosed in fire-rated construction.

**449.4 Automatic sprinkler and extinguishing systems.** For public libraries constructed with funds awarded under the California Reading and Literacy Improvement and Public Library Construction and Renovation Bond Act of 2000:

1. **Fire sprinkler system requirement.** All libraries funded for new construction, including additions, shall have automatic fire sprinkler systems installed.
2. **Fire sprinkler system requirement for renovations of existing facilities.** If there is no automatic fire sprinkler system in the existing facility, grant recipients shall be required to install a fire sprinkler system throughout the existing facility.
3. **Fire sprinkler system types.** The grant recipient may choose, on approval by the local fire authority, from wet-pipe, dry-pipe or pre-action systems, utilizing listed standard, early suppression fast response (ESFR), or on/off type sprinkler heads.
4. **Book return rooms and slots.** Book return rooms with slots in exterior walls shall have an automatic sprinkler head and be of approved fire-resistive construction. Book return slots and book drops shall have an additional automatic sprinkler head when shielded from the room sprinkler head.
5. **System monitoring requirement.** All fire protection systems shall be monitored by a fire alarm supervising station in accordance with the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 72.

**6. Alternate fire-extinguishing systems for specialized areas.** When approved by the fire authority having jurisdiction, other types of approved automatic fire-extinguishing systems may be utilized as an alternate to sprinklers in the following areas: rare book rooms, central computer rooms and telecommunication rooms.

**7. Automatic sprinkler system plan requirement.** Fire sprinkler system drawings shall use the furniture plan as a background for coordination with furniture and book stack location and height.

#### SECTION 450 GROUP C [SFM]

**450.1 Group C Occupancies defined.**

**450.1.1 Organized camps.** For the purposes of these regulations, Group C Occupancies shall mean "organized camps" as defined in Section 18897, Health and Safety Code.

**450.1.1.1 Description.** An organized camp is a site with programs and facilities established for the primary purpose of providing an outdoor group living experience with social, spiritual, educational or recreational objectives, for five days or more during one or more seasons of the year.

The term "organized camp" does not include a motel, tourist camp, trailer park, resort, hunting camp, auto court, labor camp, penal or correctional camp, child-care institution or home-finding agency nor does it include any charitable or recreational organization which complies with the rules and regulations for recreational trailer parks provided for by Section 18301 (b), Health and Safety Code.

**450.1.2 Tents and tent structures.** For the purpose of this chapter, a tent or tent structure is defined as any shelter of which 25 percent or more of the walls or roof, or both, are constructed of, or covered or protected by, a canvas or any other fabric material.

**450.2 Purpose and intent.** The provisions of this section are established to provide fire and life safety in organized camps, but at the same time preserve the basic concept of outdoor living. It is the intent of this section that organized camps shall be considered as a separate and distinct occupancy.

**450.3 Basic building and structures.**

**450.3.1 Building classification.** Every building or structure shall be classified into the occupancy group they most nearly resemble and be constructed in accordance with appropriate occupancy requirements specified in this part.

##### Exceptions:

1. Tents, tent structures, and buildings and structures that do not exceed 25 feet ( $7620\text{ mm}$ ) in any lateral dimension and where such building or structure is not more than one story.
2. For fire safety, buildings or structures on the premises of an organized camp which are used for sleeping purposes, regardless of their similar-

ity to other occupancy groups, shall conform to the provisions of Sections 450.4, 450.5, 450.6 and 450.7.

3. For fire safety, buildings and structures which are not used for sleeping purposes shall conform to the provisions of Section 450.7, which shall supersede any similar provisions contained in this part.

**450.3.2 Occupant load.** The living shelter whether a building, structure, tent and tent structure, or cabin, shall provide a minimum of 30 square feet ( $2.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) of superficial floor area per person for single-tier bed units, and 20 square feet ( $1.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) of superficial floor area per person for two-tier bed units. More than two tiers per bed unit are prohibited. There shall be at least 3 feet (914 mm) of lateral distance between beds.

**Exception:** Intermittent short-term organized camps are not required to provide shelter facilities but, if provided, they shall comply with this section.

#### 450.4 General.

**450.4.1 Buildings intended for sleeping.** Buildings and structures used or intended for sleeping purposes which do not exceed any one of the limitations set forth below shall conform to the provisions of Sections 450.5 and 450.7.

1. One story in height
2. Twenty-five feet (7620 mm) in any lateral dimension

**Exception:** This provision shall not apply to buildings or structures conforming to construction provisions of this section in effect prior to January 1, 1985.

3. Maximum housing of 12 persons

**450.4.2 Limitations.** Buildings and structures used or intended for sleeping purposes, including those so used in whole or in part by staff personnel, and which exceed any one of the limitations set forth in Section 450.4.1, shall conform to the provisions of Sections 450.5 and 450.7.

**Exception:** Buildings or structures used exclusively for living and sleeping purposes by resident custodial or caretaker personnel only may be constructed in accordance with the provisions of these regulations for a Group R, 3 Occupancy.

#### 450.5 Special buildings, tents and tent structures.

**450.5.1 Special buildings.** In addition to the provisions of Section 450.7, special buildings conforming to the limitations specified in Section 450.4.1 shall conform to the following:

1. The flame-spread end-point rating of all interior finish materials shall not exceed 200.
2. Every room or area housing more than eight persons shall be provided with not less than two approved exits, each of which shall be direct to the exterior and shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width and 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height. Rooms or areas housing eight or less per-

sons shall be provided with at least one such exit direct to the exterior.

3. Every exit door shall be openable from the inside without the use of any key, special knowledge or effort.
4. Exit doors need not be hung to swing in the direction of exit travel. Where exit doors are hung to swing in the direction of exit travel, a landing conforming to the provisions of Section 1010.1.5 shall be provided.
5. When the distance (measured vertically) between the ground level and the floor level exceeds 8 inches (203 mm), a stairway from each exit shall be provided. Steps shall have a rise of not more than 8 inches (203 mm) and a run of not less than 9 inches (229 mm). Such stairway shall be at least as wide as the door it serves.

**Exception:** In lieu of a stairway, a ramp having a slope of not more than 1 foot (305 mm) of rise for each 8 feet (2438 mm) of run may be provided.

6. When the floor level at any door opening of any building or structure is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent ground level, handrails or guardrails shall be provided on the landing, balcony or porch, and on every stairway or ramp to ground level.
7. Buildings and structures or groups of buildings and structures shall be separated from each other by not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to existing buildings and structures of Group C Occupancies.

**450.5.2 Tents and tent structures.** In addition to the provisions of Section 450.7, tents and tent structures, or groups thereof, shall conform to the provisions of Section 450.5, except as follows:

1. Regardless of any other provisions of this section, heating of tents and tent structures shall be prohibited unless written permission is obtained from the fire chief.
2. All canvas or other fabric material shall be treated and maintained in a flame-retardant condition.

#### Exceptions:

1. Tents in existence prior to January 1, 1979, provided the following conditions are met:
  - 1.1. Tents shall not exceed 80 square feet ( $7.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area.
  - 1.2. No electrical devices, except flashlights, are installed or used in the tents.
  - 1.3. Tents are not located closer than 30 feet (9144 mm) to any open fire.
  - 1.4. Smoking is prohibited in the tents.
  - 1.5. All other applicable provisions of this article are met.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

2. Canvas or materials used exclusively to protect windows and similar openings in walls.
3. Canvas or materials used as a windbreak enclosure of not more than three sides and open to the sky.

**Note:** It is not the intent of Section 450.5.2 that strict adherence to the width and height requirements of exit openings be enforced for exits from tents.

**450.6 Building and structures for sleeping.** Buildings and structures, or portions thereof, used or intended for sleeping purposes and which exceed the height, area or capacity limitations specified in Section 450.4.1 shall conform to the provisions of this section.

**450.6.1 Area, height and type of construction.** Buildings and structures, or portions thereof, shall not exceed the limits of area, height and type of construction specified in these regulations for a Group R-2.1 occupancy. Such buildings and structures shall not be of less than one-hour fire-resistive construction throughout.

**450.6.2 Location on property.** The fire-resistive protection of exterior walls and openings, as determined by location on property, shall be in accordance with the provisions of these regulations for a Group R-2.1 occupancy.

**450.6.3 Exits.** Stairs, exits and smoke-proof enclosures shall be provided in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 10.

**450.6.4 Enclosure of vertical openings.** Exits shall be enclosed as specified in Chapter 10. Elevator shafts, vent shafts and other vertical openings shall be enclosed and enclosures shall be as set forth in Chapter 7.

**450.6.5 Fire-extinguishing systems.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, standpipes and basement pipe inlets shall be installed when and as specified in Chapter 9 for buildings, based on the occupancy they most nearly resemble.

**450.6.6 Automatic fire alarm system.** See Section 907.

**450.7 Special requirements.** The provisions of this section shall apply to the premises and to all buildings and structures of all organized camps.

**450.7.1 Electrical.** The installation of all electrical wiring shall conform to the applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code.

**450.7.2 Heating equipment.** Heating equipment, and the installation thereof, shall conform to the provisions of the California Mechanical Code.

**450.7.3 Motion picture booths.** Motion picture machine booths shall conform to the requirements of Section 409.

**450.7.4 Interior finish.** Interior finish shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 8, except as permitted in Section 450.5.1, Item 1.

**450.7.5 Heater room openings.** All exterior openings in rooms containing central heating equipment, low-pressure boilers or water-heating boilers used as part of the heat-

ing system, if located below openings in another story, or if less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from other doors or windows of the same building, shall be protected by a fire assembly having a three-fourths-hour fire-resistive rating. Such fire assemblies shall be fixed, automatic or self-closing.

**Exception:** The requirement for three-fourths-hour fire assembly protection of openings may be deleted if the entire room is protected by an automatic sprinkler system conforming to the provisions of Section 903.

**450.7.6 Heating rooms.** Every room containing central-heating equipment, low-pressure boiler or water-heating boiler used as part of the heating system shall be separated from the rest of the building by a one-hour fire-resistive fire barrier with all openings protected as set forth in Section 707.6.

**Exceptions:**

1. Boilers or central heating plants where the largest piece of fuel equipment does not exceed 400,000 Btu per hour (135 kW) input.
2. When any such opening is protected by a pair of fire doors, the inactive leaf shall be normally secured in the closed position and shall be openable only by use of a tool. An astragal shall be provided and the active leaf shall be self-closing.

**450.7.7 Exits.** For purposes of determining occupant load for exit requirements, see Section 450.3.2.

**450.7.8 Liquefied petroleum gas.** The construction and installation of all tanks, cylinders, equipment and systems used or intended for use in conjunction with any liquefied petroleum gas shall conform to the provisions of the California Mechanical Code and the California Fire Code.

**450.7.9 Air-conditioning and ventilation systems.** Heating units used as an integral part of an air-conditioning and ventilation system shall be installed in accordance with Sections 450.7.2, 450.7.3 and 450.7.6.

**450.8 Camp fire alarm.** Every organized camp shall provide and maintain a device or devices suitable for sounding a fire alarm. Such device or devices may be of any type acceptable to the enforcing agency provided they are distinctive in tone from all other signaling devices or systems and shall be audible throughout the camp premises. When an automatic fire alarm system is provided, as required by Section 450.6.6, all signaling devices required by this section shall be of the same type as that used in the automatic system.

## SECTION 451 Reserved

## SECTION 452 SCHOOL FACILITIES FOR KINDERGARTEN THROUGH 12TH GRADE AND GROUP E CHILD CARE ||

**452.1 General provisions.** School facilities for Kindergarten through 12th grade and Group E child care shall comply with ||

*the provisions of this section and other applicable provisions of this code including requirements for specific occupancies.*

**452.1.1 Location on property.** All buildings housing Group E occupancies shall front directly on a public street or an exit discharge not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width. The exit discharge to the public street shall be a minimum 20-foot-wide (6096 mm) right-of-way, unobstructed and maintained only as access to the public street. At least one required exit shall be located on the public street or on the exit discharge.

**452.1.2 Separate means of egress systems required.** Every room with an occupant load of 300 or more shall have one of its exits or exit-access doorways lead directly into a separate means of egress system that consists of not less than two paths of exit travel which are separated by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709 in such a manner to provide an atmospheric separation that precludes contamination of both paths of exit travel by the same fire. Not more than two required exits or exit-access doorways shall enter into the same means of egress system.

**452.1.3 Fences and gates.** School grounds may be fenced and gates therein may be equipped with locks, provided that safe dispersal areas based on 3 square feet ( $0.28 \text{ m}^2$ ) per occupant are located between the school and the fence. Such required safe dispersal areas shall not be located less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from school buildings.

Every public and private school shall conform with Section 32020 of the Education Code which states:

The governing board of every public school district, and the governing authority of every private school, which maintains any building used for the instruction or housing of school pupils on land entirely enclosed (except for building walls) by fences or walls, shall, through cooperation with the local law enforcement and fire-protection agencies having jurisdiction of the area, make provision for the erection of gates in such fences or walls. The gates shall be of sufficient size to permit the entrance of the ambulances, police equipment and fire-fighting apparatus used by the law enforcement and fire-protection agencies. There shall be no less than one such access gate and there shall be as many such gates as needed to assure access to all major buildings and ground areas. If such gates are to be equipped with locks, the locking devices shall be designed to permit ready entrance by the use of the chain or bolt-cutting devices with which the local law enforcement and fire-protection agencies may be equipped.

**452.1.4 Special provisions.** Rooms used by kindergarten, first- or second-grade pupils, and Group E child care, shall not be located above or below the first story.

#### *Exceptions:*

1. Kindergarten, first- or second-grade pupils, or Group E child care may be located in basements or stories having floor levels located within 4 feet (1219 mm), measured vertically, from the adjacent ground level at the level of exit discharge,

*provided the basement or story has exterior exit doors at that level.*

2. In buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout, rooms used for kindergarten, first- and second-grade children or for Group E child-care purposes may be located on the second story, provided there are at least two exterior exit doors, or other egress systems complying with Section 1020 with two exits, for the exclusive use of such occupants. Egress systems for the exclusive use of such occupants shall be maintained until exit discharge at grade is attained.
3. Group E day-care facilities may be located above the first story in buildings of Type I-A, I-B, II-A, III-A, IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction, subject to the limitation of Section 503 when:
  - 3.1. Facilities with children under the age of seven or containing more than 12 children per story shall not be located above the fourth floor; and
  - 3.2. The entire story in which the day-care facility is located is equipped with an approved manual fire alarm and automatic smoke-detection system. Actuation of an initiating device shall sound an audible alarm throughout the entire story.
 

When a building fire alarm system is required by other provisions of this code, the alarm system shall be interconnected and sound the day-care fire alarm system; and
  - 3.3. The day-care facility, if more than 1,000 square feet ( $92.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, is divided into at least two compartments of approximately the same size by a smoke barrier in accordance with Section 709. In addition to the requirements of Section 508, occupancy separations between day-care and other occupancies shall be constructed as smoke barriers. Door openings in the smoke barrier shall be tight fitting, with gaskets installed as required by Section 716.5.3.1 and shall be automatic closing by actuation of the fire sprinklers, fire alarm or smoke detection system; and
  - 3.4. Each compartment formed by the smoke barrier has not less than two exits or exit-access doors, one of which is permitted to pass through the adjoining compartment, and
  - 3.5. At least one exit or exit-access door from the day-care facility shall be into a separate means of egress with not less than two paths of exit travel, which are separated in such a manner to provide an atmospheric separation. The egress system shall comply with the requirements of Section 709 for smoke barriers.
  - 3.6. The building is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout.

**452.1.5 Special hazards.** School classrooms constructed after January 1, 1990, not equipped with automatic sprinkler systems, which have metal grilles or bars on all their windows and do not have at least two exit doors within 3 feet (914 mm) of each end of the classroom opening to the exterior of the building or to a common hallway used for evacuation purposes, shall have an inside release for the grilles or bars on at least one window farthest from the exit doors. The window or windows with the inside release shall be clearly marked as emergency exits.

**452.1.6 Class I, II or III-A flammable liquids** shall not be placed, stored or used in Group E occupancies, except in approved quantities as necessary in laboratories and classrooms and for operation and maintenance as set forth in the California Fire Code.

## SECTION 453 GROUP L [SFM]

**453.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to buildings or structures, or portions thereof, containing one or more Group L laboratory suites as defined in Section 202.

The provisions of this section are optional and may apply to buildings or structures. See Section 304 for Group B Laboratories.

**453.1.1 Technical report.** The enforcing agency may require a technical opinion and report to identify and develop methods of protection from the hazards presented by the hazardous materials. A qualified person, firm or corporation, approved by the enforcing agency, shall prepare the opinion and report, and shall be provided without charge to the enforcing agency. The opinion and report may include, but is not limited to, the preparation of a hazardous material management plan (HMMP); chemical analysis; recommendations for methods of isolation, separation, containment or protection of hazardous materials or processes, including appropriate engineering controls to be applied; the extent of changes in the hazardous behavior to be anticipated under conditions of exposure to fire or from hazard control procedures; and the limitations or conditions of use necessary to achieve and maintain control of the hazardous materials or operations. The report shall be entered into the files of the code enforcement agencies. Proprietary and trade secret information shall be protected under the laws of the state or jurisdiction having authority.

**453.2 Definitions.** The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

### LABORATORY SUITE.

### [F] LIQUID TIGHT FLOOR.

### 453.3 Laboratory suite requirements.

**453.3.1** The gross floor area of an individual laboratory suite shall not exceed 10,000 square feet ( $929 m^2$ ).

**453.3.2** An individual laboratory suite shall not serve more than a single tenant.

**Exception:** An individual laboratory suite shall have a responsible party or department for all hazardous materials within a suite.

### 453.4 Construction

#### 453.4.1 Separation of laboratory suites.

**453.4.1.1** Laboratory suites shall be separated from other occupancies in accordance with Table 508.4.

**453.4.1.2** Laboratory suites shall be separated from other laboratory suites by a fire barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1-hour.

**453.4.1.3** Laboratory suites shall be separated from control areas by a minimum 2-hour fire-resistance rating in accordance with Sections 707 and 711.

**Exception:** Laboratory suites shall be separated from control areas by a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance rating on floor levels below the 4<sup>th</sup> story.

**453.4.1.4 Horizontal separation.** The floor construction of the laboratory suite and the construction supporting the floor of the laboratory suite shall have a minimum 2-hour fire-resistance rating in accordance with Section 711.

#### Exceptions:

1. The floor construction of the laboratory suite and the construction supporting the floor of the laboratory suite are allowed to be 1-hour fire-resistance rated in buildings of Type IIA, IIIA and VA construction.
2. When an individual laboratory suite occupies more than one story, the intermediate floors contained within the suite shall comply with the requirements of Table 601.

#### 453.4.2 Reserved.

#### 453.4.3 Fire barrier and fire-smoke barrier.

**453.4.3.1 Fire barrier.** A fire barrier having a fire resistance rating of not less than 2-hours shall divide any story containing more than one laboratory suite on the 4<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**453.4.3.1.1** Fire barriers shall be continuous from exterior wall to exterior wall,

**453.4.3.1.2** The fire barrier shall divide the floor so that the square footage on each side of the 2-hour fire barrier is not less than 30 percent of the total floor area, and

**453.4.3.1.3** The number of laboratory suites on each side of the 2-hour fire barrier shall not be less than 25 percent of the total number of laboratory suites on the floor.

**453.4.3.2 Fire-smoke barrier.** Any story containing a Group L occupancy on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above shall be subdivided by a fire-smoke barrier constructed as a fire barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours and shall also comply with the smoke barrier requirements of Section 709.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

*The 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be in accordance with Sections 453.4.3 through 453.4.3.2.3.*

**453.4.3.2.1** A minimum of one door opening shall be provided in the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier for emergency access.

**453.4.3.2.2** Each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be designed as a separate smoke zone designed in accordance with Section 909.6.

**453.4.3.2.3** The area on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be served by a minimum of one exit enclosure in accordance with Section 1022.

**453.4.4 Emergency response equipment area.** When required by the fire code official, an area for emergency response equipment shall be provided on each floor in an approved location. The area shall be a minimum of 50 square feet ( $4.6 \text{ m}^2$ ), for spill mitigation supplies per California Fire Code 5001.3.3.4 in a location approved by the fire code official, and identified with signage.

**Exception:** The area size for spill mitigation supplies may be reduced by the fire code official when adequate supplies are provided.

**453.4.5 Liquid tight floor.** All portions of the laboratory suite where hazardous materials may be stored, dispensed, handled or used shall be provided with a liquid tight floor. The intersections of such floors shall have an integral coved base that extends upward onto the wall not less than 2 inches. Where the floor is designed to provide spill control or secondary containment the floor shall be designed in accordance with California Fire Code Section 5004.2.

**453.4.6 Secondary power systems.** A legally required standby power system shall have an automatic transfer time of not more than 10 seconds.

**453.4.6.1 Required systems.** Standby power shall be provided for all electrically operated equipment, systems and connected control circuits including:

1. Mechanical ventilation systems. See Section 453.4.7.2.
2. Temperature control systems required to prevent unsafe process excursions or chemical reactions.
3. Treatment systems and scrubbers.
4. Emergency Responder Radio Coverage (ERRCS). See Section 510 of the California Fire Code.
5. Electrically operated systems required elsewhere in this code and the California Fire Code.

### 453.4.7 Ventilation.

**453.4.7.1 Compatibility.** Incompatible materials shall not be conveyed in the same duct system. Combined products in mechanical exhaust ducts shall not create a physical hazard or reaction that could degrade the duct material. The building official may require a technical report in accordance with Section 453.7.1.

**453.4.7.2 Fire dampers, smoke dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers.** Fire dampers, smoke dampers or fire/smoke dampers shall not be permitted in mechanical exhaust duct systems used to maintain a safe laboratory environment. When the exhaust duct

penetrates the laboratory suite boundary the exhaust duct shall be located within a horizontal or vertical assembly having a fire resistance rating equal to the fire barrier.

**453.4.7.3 Reserved.**

**453.4.7.4 Laboratory suite exhaust air.**

**453.4.7.4.1** Exhaust air from laboratory suites shall not be recirculated.

**453.4.7.4.2** Laboratory suite exhaust air shall be independently ducted to a point outside the building or an approved roof top structure.

**Exception:** Exhaust ducts serving separate laboratory suites may be connected to a common duct within a fire rated vertical shaft when the subduct extends vertically upward at least 22 inches.

**453.4.7.4.3** Laboratory suite exhaust ducts shall not penetrate the fire barriers required by Section 453.4.1.

**Exception:** Where the exhaust duct is enclosed in a rated shaft in accordance with Section 713.

**453.4.7.5 Ventilation rates.** Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems shall provide a minimum ventilation rate not less than 1 cubic feet per minute per square foot [ $0.00508 \text{ m}^3/(\text{s}\cdot\text{m}^2)$ ] of floor area, or 6 air exchanges per hour, whichever is greater. Systems shall operate continuously at the designed ventilation rate

**Exception:** Refer to California Fire Code Section 5001.3 Performance-based design alternatives, as approved by the Fire Code Official.

**453.4.7.6 Reserved.**

**453.4.7.7 Mechanical ventilation system balancing.** Mechanical ventilation systems shall be designed and balanced such that during normal and emergency conditions the door opening forces comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.1.3 and Chapter 11B as applicable. Emergency conditions shall include: supply fan shutdown or failure, closing of smoke dampers or combination fire/smoke dampers, or emergency power.

### 453.5 Fire protection systems. See Chapter 9.

#### 453.6 Means of egress.

**453.6.1 Access to exits.** Every room of a laboratory suite containing hazardous materials and having a floor area of 500 square feet ( $19 \text{ m}^2$ ) or more shall have access to not less than two separate exits or exit-access doorways in accordance with Section 1006.2.

**453.6.2 Door swing.** All exit and exit-access doors serving areas with hazardous materials shall swing in the direction of exit travel, regardless of the occupant load served.

**453.6.3 Panic hardware.** Exit and exit access doors from areas with hazardous materials shall not be provided with a latch or lock unless it is panic hardware or fire exit hardware.

**453.6.4 Buildings more than four stories.** A minimum of one exit shall be provided to serve the floor on each side of

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

the 2-hour fire barrier and shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 10.

#### 453.6.5 Reserved.

#### 453.7 Hazardous materials.

**453.7.1 Multiple hazards.** When a hazardous material has multiple hazards, all hazards shall be addressed and controlled in accordance with the provisions of this code and the California Fire Code.

**453.7.2 Percentage of maximum allowable quantities.** The percentage of the maximum allowable quantity of hazardous materials per laboratory suite permitted for each story level within a building shall be in accordance with Table 453.7.2.1.

**453.7.3 Handling and transportation.** The handling and transportation of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Section 5003.10 of the California Fire Code.

**453.8 Elevators and elevator lobbies on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.** Any story containing a Group L occupancy on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above shall be provided with elevators and elevator lobbies in accordance with Sections 453.8.1 through 453.8.3.

**453.8.1.** An elevator that serves every story of the building shall be provided on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier.

**453.8.2.** An elevator lobby shall be provided on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier at each floor in accordance with Section 3006.

**453.8.3.** The elevator and its associated elevator lobbies and elevator machine rooms shall be pressurized in accordance with Section 909.6.

**453.9 Existing Group L and Group H-8 occupancies, additions, alterations or repairs.** See California Fire Code Chapter 11, Section 1116 and California Existing Building Code.

#### SECTION 454 Reserved

#### SECTION 455 LARGE FAMILY DAY-CARE HOMES [SFM]

##### 455.1 Large family day-care homes.

**455.2.** For purposes of clarification, Health and Safety Code Sections 1597.45 and 1597.46 are repeated.

1597.45.

- (a) The use of a home as a small or large family day-care home shall be considered a residential use of property and a use by right for the purposes of all local ordinances, including, but not limited to, zoning ordinances.
- (b) A local jurisdiction shall not impose a business license, fee or tax for the privilege of operating a small or large family day-care home.
- (c) Use of a home as a small or large family day-care home shall not constitute a change of occupancy for purposes of Part 1.5 (commencing with Section 17910) of Division 13 (State Housing Law) or for purposes of local building codes.
- (d) A small or large family day-care home shall not be subject to the provisions of Division 13 (commencing with Section 21000) of the Public Resources Code.

**TABLE 453.7.2.1**  
**HAZARDOUS MATERIALS QUANTITY PER LABORATORY SUITE**

STORY		PERCENTAGE OF MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITY PER LABORATORY SUITE <sup>a, b</sup>	NUMBER OF LAB SUITES PER FLOOR BASED ON CONSTRUCTION TYPE				
			Type IA	Type IB	Type IIA, IIIA, IV	Type IIB, IIIB, VA	Type VB
Above grade plane	Above 20	0	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	15 to 20	25	4	NP	NP	NP	NP
	11, 12, 13, 14	50	8	NP	NP	NP	NP
	7, 8, 9, 10	50	16	NP	NP	NP	NP
	6	75	20	20	NP	NP	NP
	4, 5	75	20	20	20	NP	NP
	3	100	UL	UL	UL	UL	NP
	1, 2	100	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
Below grade plane	1	75 <sup>c</sup>	10	10	10	10	10
	2	50 <sup>d</sup>	5	5	5	5	5
	3 and below	0	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP

UL = Unlimited, NP = Not permitted

a. Percentages shall be of the maximum allowable quantity per laboratory suite shown in Tables 307.1(1) and 307.1(2). Allowable hazardous material increases for buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system shall not be applicable to Group L occupancies.

b. When an individual laboratory suite occupies more than one story, the more restrictive percentage of the maximum allowable quantity per laboratory suite shall apply.

c. The total aggregate quantity of flammable liquids on the first story below grade shall be limited to the maximum total aggregate quantity for Group B occupancy control areas.

d. The total aggregate quantity of flammable liquids on the second story level below grade shall be limited to a maximum total aggregate quantity for Group B occupancy control areas.

## SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE

(e) The provisions of this chapter do not preclude a city, county or other local public entity from placing restrictions on building heights, setback or lot dimensions of a family day-care home, as long as those restrictions are identical to those applied to all other residences with the same zoning designation as the family day-care home. This chapter does not preclude a local ordinance that deals with health and safety, building standards, environmental impact standards or any other matter within the jurisdiction of a local public entity, as long as the local ordinance is identical to those applied to all other residences with the same zoning designation as the family day-care home. This chapter also does not prohibit or restrict the abatement of nuisances by a city, county, or city and county. However, the ordinance or nuisance abatement shall not distinguish family day-care homes from other homes with the same zoning designation, except as otherwise provided in this chapter.

(f) For purposes of this chapter, "small family day-care home or large family day-care home" includes a detached single-family dwelling, a townhouse, a dwelling unit within a dwelling or a dwelling unit within a covered multifamily dwelling in which the underlying zoning allows for residential uses. A small family day-care home or large family day-care home is where the family day-care provider resides and includes a dwelling or dwelling unit that is rented, leased or owned.

(Amended by Stats. 2019, Ch. 244, Sec. 9. (SB 234) Effective January 1, 2020.)

1597.46.

(a) A large family day-care home shall abide by all standards, in addition to the requirements of the State Uniform Building Standards Code, that are specifically designed to promote fire and life safety in large family day-care homes. The State Fire Marshal shall adopt separate building standards specifically relating to the subject of fire and life safety in family day-care homes, which shall be published in Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations. These standards shall apply uniformly throughout the state and shall include, but not be limited to, all of the following:

- (1) The requirement that a large family day-care home contain a fire extinguisher or smoke detector device, or both, that meets child-care standards established by the State Fire Marshal.
  - (2) Specification as to the number of required exits from the home.
  - (3) Specification as to the floor or floors on which child care may be provided and the number of required exits on each floor.
- (b) A large family day-care home for children shall have one or more carbon monoxide detectors in the facility that meet the standards established in Chapter 8

(commencing with Section 13260) of Part 2 of Division 12. The department shall account for the presence of these detectors during inspections.

(c) Enforcement of this section shall be in accordance with Sections 13145 and 13146. A city, county, city and county, or district shall not adopt or enforce a building ordinance or local rule or regulation relating to the subject of fire and life safety in large family day-care homes that is inconsistent with those standards adopted by the State Fire Marshal, except to the extent the building ordinance or local rule or regulation applies to all residences with the same zoning designation in which child care is provided.

(Repealed and added by Stats. 2019, Ch. 244, Sec. 12. (SB 234) Effective January 1, 2020.)

**455.3 Smoke alarms.** Large family day-care homes shall be equipped with State Fire Marshal approved and listed single station residential type smoke alarms. The number and placement of smoke alarms shall be determined by the enforcement authority.

**455.4 Fire extinguishers.** Large and small family day-care homes shall be equipped with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum 2A10BC rating.

**455.5 Fire alarm devices.** See Section 907.2.6.4.

**455.6 Compliance.** Every large-family day-care home shall comply with the provisions for Group R-3 occupancies. For the purposes of Section 436.1, the first story shall be designated as the floor used for residential occupancy nearest to the street level which provides primary access to the building.

**455.7 Special hazards.** Every unenclosed gas-fired water heater or furnace which is within the area used for child care in a large family day-care home shall be protected in such a way as to prevent children from making contact with those appliances.

**Exception:** This does not apply to kitchen stoves or ovens.

**455.8 Exiting.** See Section 1006.2.2.7.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

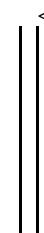
### CHAPTER 5 – GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting Agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
503.1, <i>Exception 1</i>				X	X																	
Figure 5-1					X																	
Table 504.3					X																	
Table 504.4						X																
Table 506.2						X																
506.2.3							X															
506.2.4							X															
508.2.4							X															
508.3.3							X															
Table 508.4							X															
508.5							X	X														
508.5.3 <i>Exception</i>							X	X														
508.5.8 <i>Exception</i>							X	X														
508.5.9									X	X												
508.5.10								X	X													
508.5.11									X													
Table 509.1							X															
509.3							X															

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



&lt;



## CHAPTER 5

# GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 5 establishes the limits to which a building can be built. Building height, number of stories and building area are specified in this chapter. Chapter 5 must be used in conjunction with the occupancies established in Chapter 3 and the types of construction established in Chapter 6. This chapter also specifies the impact that mezzanines, accessory occupancies and mixed occupancies have on the overall size of a building.

---

### SECTION 501 GENERAL

**501.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter control the height and area of structures hereafter erected and additions to existing structures.

### SECTION 502 BUILDING ADDRESS

**[F] 502.1 Address identification.** New and existing buildings shall be provided with approved address identification. The address identification shall be legible and placed in a position that is visible from the street or road fronting the property. Address identification characters shall contrast with their background. Address numbers shall be Arabic numbers or alphabetical letters. Numbers shall not be spelled out. Each character shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) high with a minimum stroke width of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Where required by the fire code official, address identification shall be provided in additional approved locations to facilitate emergency response. Where access is by means of a private road and the building address cannot be viewed from the public way, a monument, pole or other approved sign or means shall be used to identify the structure. Address identification shall be maintained.

### SECTION 503 GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHT AND AREA LIMITATIONS

**503.1 General.** Unless otherwise specifically modified in Chapter 4 and this chapter, building height, number of stories and building area shall not exceed the limits specified in Sections 504 and 506 based on the type of construction as determined by Section 602 and the occupancies as determined by Section 302 except as modified hereafter. Building height, number of stories and building area provisions shall be applied independently. For the purposes of determining area limitations, height limitations and type of construction, each portion of a building separated by one or more fire walls complying with Section 706 shall be considered to be a separate building.

**Exceptions:**

1. **[HCD 1]** Limited-density owner-built rural dwellings may be of any type of construction which will

provide for a sound structural condition. Structural hazards which result in an unsound condition and which may constitute a substandard building are delineated by Section 17920.3 of the Health and Safety Code.

2. Other than structural requirements, solar photovoltaic panels supported by a structure with no use underneath shall not constitute additional story or additional floor area and may exceed the height limit when constructed on a roof top of a building provided the following conditions are met:
  1. For all occupancies, the highest point of the structure/panel shall meet the lower of the two values below:
    1. 3' above the allowable building height per this code.
    2. 3' above the roof of the building immediately below.
  2. For installations on flat roofs in other than Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies, the highest point of the structure/panel shall meet the lower of the two values below:
    1. 10' above the allowable building height per this code.
    2. 10' above the roof of the building immediately below.
3. Other than structural requirements, solar photovoltaic panels supported by a structure over parking stalls shall not constitute additional story or additional floor area and may exceed the height limit as specified in exception 2 (above) when the following conditions are met (see Figure 5-1):
  1. The area within the perimeter of the photovoltaic array has maximum rectangular dimension of 40 feet by 150 feet.
  2. The distance between solar photovoltaic array structures is a minimum of 10 feet clear.
  3. The driveway aisle separating solar photovoltaic array structures has a minimum width of 25 feet clear.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

4. Solar photovoltaic array structure is used only for parking purposes with no storage.
5. Completely open on all sides (other than necessary structural supports) with no interior partitions.

**503.1.1 Special industrial occupancies.** Buildings and structures designed to house special industrial processes that require large areas and unusual building heights to accommodate craneways or special machinery and equipment, including, among others, rolling mills; structural metal fabrication shops and foundries; or the production and distribution of electric, gas or steam power, shall be exempt from the building height, number of stories and building area limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506.

**503.1.2 Buildings on same lot.** Two or more buildings on the same lot shall be regulated as separate buildings or shall be considered as portions of one building where the building height, number of stories of each building and the aggregate building area of the buildings are within the limitations specified in Sections 504 and 506. The provisions of this code applicable to the aggregate building shall be applicable to each building.

**503.1.3 Type I construction.** Buildings of Type I construction permitted to be of unlimited tabular building heights and areas are not subject to the special requirements that allow unlimited area buildings in Section 507 or unlimited building height in Sections 503.1.1 and 504.3 or increased building heights and areas for other types of construction.

**503.1.4 Occupied roofs.** A roof level or portion thereof shall be permitted to be used as an occupied roof provided the occupancy of the roof is an occupancy that is permitted by Table 504.4 for the story immediately below the roof. The area of the occupied roofs shall not be included in the building area as regulated by Section 506. An occupied roof shall not be included in the building height or number of stories as regulated by Section 504, provided that the

penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures comply with Section 1511.

### Exceptions:

1. The occupancy located on an occupied roof shall not be limited to the occupancies allowed on the story immediately below the roof where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and occupant notification in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.1 and 907.5.2.3 is provided in the area of the occupied roof. Emergency voice/alarm communication system notification per Section 907.5.2.2 shall also be provided in the area of the occupied roof where such system is required elsewhere in the building.
2. Assembly occupancies shall be permitted on roofs of open parking spaces of Type I or Type II construction, in accordance with the exception to Section 903.2.1.6.

**503.1.4.1 Enclosures over occupied roof areas.** Elements or structures enclosing the occupied roof areas shall not extend more than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the surface of the occupied roof.

**Exception:** Penthouses constructed in accordance with Section 1511.2 and towers, domes, spires and cupolas constructed in accordance with Section 1511.5.

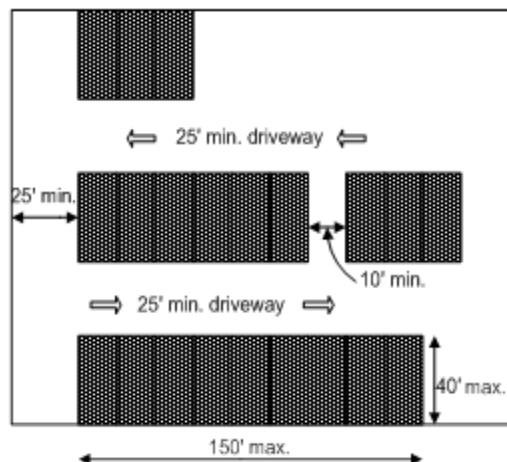


FIGURE 5-1

## SECTION 504

### BUILDING HEIGHT AND NUMBER OF STORIES

**504.1 General.** The height, in feet, and the number of stories of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification and whether there is an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout the building.

**Exception:** The building height of one-story aircraft hangars, aircraft paint hangars and buildings used for the manufacturing of aircraft shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Chapter 9 and is entirely surrounded by public ways or yards not less in width than one and one-half times the building height.

**504.1.1 Unlimited area buildings.** The height of unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

**504.1.2 Special provisions.** The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable heights of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

**504.2 Mixed occupancy.** In a building containing mixed occupancies in accordance with Section 508, no individual occupancy shall exceed the height and number of story limits specified in this section for the applicable occupancies.

**504.3 Height in feet.** The maximum height, in feet, of a building shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 504.3.

**Exception:** Towers, spires, steeples and other rooftop structures shall be constructed of materials consistent with the required type of construction of the building except where other construction is permitted by Section 1511.2.4. Such structures shall not be used for habitation or storage. The structures shall be unlimited in height where of noncombustible materials and shall not extend more than 20 feet (6096 mm) above the allowable building height where of combustible materials (see Chapter 15 for additional requirements).

**504.4 Number of stories.** The maximum number of stories above grade plane of a building shall not exceed the limits specified in Table 504.4.

## SECTION 505

### MEZZANINES AND EQUIPMENT PLATFORMS

**505.1 General.** Mezzanines shall comply with Section 505.2. Equipment platforms shall comply with Section 505.3.

**505.2 Mezzanines.** A mezzanine or mezzanines in compliance with Section 505.2 shall be considered a portion of the story below. Such mezzanines shall not contribute to either the building area or number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of the mezzanine shall be included in deter-

mining the fire area. The clear height above and below the mezzanine floor construction shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**505.2.1 Area limitation.** The aggregate area of a mezzanine or mezzanines within a room shall be not greater than one-third of the floor area of that room or space in which they are located. The enclosed portion of a room shall not be included in a determination of the floor area of the room in which the mezzanine is located. In determining the allowable mezzanine area, the area of the mezzanine shall not be included in the floor area of the room.

#### Exceptions:

1. The aggregate area of mezzanines in buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for special industrial occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1 shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of the room.
2. The aggregate area of mezzanines in buildings and structures of Type I or II construction shall be not greater than one-half of the floor area of the room in buildings and structures equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an approved emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.
3. The aggregate area of a mezzanine within a dwelling unit that is located in a building equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 shall not be greater than one-half of the floor area of the room, provided that:
  - 3.1. Except for enclosed closets and bathrooms, the mezzanine shall be open to the room in which such mezzanine is located;
  - 3.2. The opening to the room shall be unobstructed except for walls not more than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height, columns and posts; and
  - 3.3. Exceptions to Section 505.2.3 shall not be permitted.

**505.2.1.1 Aggregate area of mezzanines and equipment platforms.** Where a room contains both a mezzanine and an equipment platform, the aggregate area of the two raised floor levels shall be not greater than two-thirds of the floor area of that room or space in which they are located. The area of the mezzanine shall not exceed the area determined in accordance with Section 505.2.1.

**505.2.2 Means of egress.** The means of egress for mezzanines shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 10.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**TABLE 504.3**  
**ALLOWABLE BUILDING HEIGHT IN FEET ABOVE GRADE PLANE <sup>a, i</sup>**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	See Footnotes	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION									
		Type I		Type II		Type III		Type IV			
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT
B, F, M, S, U	NS <sup>b</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	65
	S	UL	180	85	75	85	75	270	180	85	85
A, E	NS <sup>b</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	65
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85	75	85	75	270	180	85	85
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55	250	160	65	65
H-1, H-2, H-3, H-5, L	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	120	90	85	65
	S (without area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55				65
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55				50
H-4	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	65
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85	75	85	75	140	100	85	85
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55	250	160	65	65
I-3	NS <sup>d, e</sup>	UL	160	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
I-2, I-2.1	NS <sup>d, e, f</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	NP	NP	NP	65
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85				NP	NP	NP	
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65				NP	NP	NP	
I-4	NS <sup>d, g</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	65
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85	75	85	75	180	120	85	85
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55	160	100	65	65
R-1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	65
	S13D	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	50
	S13R	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	60	60	60
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85	75	85	75	270	180	85	85
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55	250	160	65	65
R-2 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	65
	S13R	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	60	60	50
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85	75	85	75	270	180	85	85
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	55	65	55	250	160	65	65
R-2.1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	NP	NP	50
	S13D	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	NP	NP	50
	S13R	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	NP	NP	50
	S	UL	160	65	55	65	55	270	NP	NP	50
R-2.2 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S (without area increase)	UL	180	85	NP	85	NP	270	180	85	85
	S (with area increase)	UL	160	65	NP	65	NP	250	160	65	65
R-3, R-3.1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	50
	S13D	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	60	50
	S13R	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	60	60	60
	S	UL	160	65	55	65	55	270	180	85	65
R-4 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	160	65	55	65	55	65	65	65	50
	S13D	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	60	60	50
	S13R	60	60	60	55	60	55	60	60	60	50
	S	UL	160	65	55	65	55	270	180	85	65

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

UL = Unlimited; NP = Not Permitted; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13D = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

- a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
- b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
- c. New Group H and all Group L occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the *California Existing Building Code*.
- e. New Group I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
- h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.
- i. In other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, the S increases for height and stories in Tables 504.3 and 504.4 are permitted in addition to the S area increase in accordance with Table 506.2.
- j. For Group R-2 buildings of Type VA construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, S area increase is permitted in addition to the height and story increase provided the height shall not exceed 60 feet and 4 stories.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**TABLE 504.4**  
**ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE<sup>a, b, n</sup>**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	See Footnotes	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION											
		Type I		Type II		Type III		Type IV				Type V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S (without area increase)	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	3	2
	S (with area increase)	UL	5	3	2	3	2	8	5	3	3	2	1
A-2	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S (without area increase)	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
	S (with area increase)	UL	11	3	2	3	2	17	11	5	3	2	1
A-3	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S (without area increase)	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
	S (with area increase)	UL	11	3	2	3	2	17	11	5	3	2	1
A-4	NS	UL	11	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	2	1
	S (without area increase)	UL	12	4	3	4	3	18	12	6	4	3	2
	S (with area increase)	UL	11	3	2	3	2	17	11	5	3	2	1
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	1	1	1	UL	UL	UL
	S	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
B	NS	UL	11	5	3	5	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	6	4	18	12	9	6	4	3
E	NS	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	1	1
	S (without area increase)	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	2	2
	S (with area increase)	UL	5	3	2	3	2	8	7	3	3	1	1
F-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	3	3	3	4	2	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	4	3	10	7	5	5	3	2
F-2	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	12	8	6	6	4	3
H-1	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	1	1	1	1	1	1	NP	NP	NP	1	1	NP
	S							1	1	1			
H-2	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	20	3	2	1	2	1	1	1	1	2	1	1
	S							2	2	2			
H-3	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	20	6	4	2	4	2	3	3	3	4	2	1
	S							4	4	4			
H-4	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	20	7	5	3	5	3	5	5	5	5	3	2
	S (without area increase)	20	8	6	4	6	4	8	7	6	6	4	3
	S (with area increase)	20	7	5	3	5	3	7	6	5	5	3	2
H-5	NS <sup>c, d</sup>	4	4	3	3	3	3	2	2	2	3	3	2
	S							3	3	3			
I-2, I-2.1 <sup>j, i</sup>	NS <sup>d, f</sup>	UL	4	2	1	1	NP	NP	NP	1	1	NP	
	S (without area increase)	UL	5	3				NP	NP				
	S (with area increase)	UL	4	2				NP	NP				
I-3	NS <sup>d, e</sup>	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S (without area increase)	UL	3	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S (with area increase)	UL	2	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
I-4 <sup>p</sup>	NS <sup>d, g</sup>	UL	5	3	2	3	2	3	3	3	3	1	1
	S (without area increase)	UL	6	4	3	4	3	9	6	4	4	2	2
	S (with area increase)	UL	5	3	2	3	2	8	5	3	3	1	1
L	NS	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S	20	6	5	3	5	3	8	6	5	5	3	2
M	NS	UL	11	4	2	4	2	4	4	4	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	3	5	3	12	8	6	5	4	2

(continued)

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**TABLE 504.4—continued**  
**ALLOWABLE NUMBER OF STORIES ABOVE GRADE PLANE<sup>a, b, n</sup>**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	See Footnotes	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION											
		Type I		Type II		Type III		Type IV				Type V	
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT	A	B
R-1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	11	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4									3	2
	S (without area increase)	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	8	5	4	3
	S (with area increase)	UL	11	4	4	4	4	17	11	7	4	3	2
R-2 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	11	4		4	4	4	4	4	4	3	2
	S13R	4	4	4								4	3
	S (without area increase)	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	8	5	4	3
	S (with area increase)	UL	11	4	4	4	4	17	11	7	4	4 <sup>o</sup>	2
R-2.1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	6 <sup>l</sup>	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP	4	NP	NP	NP	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP
	S13R	UL	4 <sup>l</sup>	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP	4	NP	NP	NP	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP
	S	UL	6 <sup>l</sup>	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP	10	NP	NP	NP	3 <sup>k</sup>	NP
R-2.2 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP
	S (without area increase)	UL	12	5	NP	5	NP	18	12	8	5	4	NP
	S (with area increase)	UL	11	4	NP	4	NP	17	11	7	4	4 <sup>o</sup>	NP
R-3, R 3-I <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	11									3	3
	S13D	4	4		4							3	3
	S13R	4	4									4	4
	S	UL	12	5	5	5	5	18	12	5	5	4	4
R-4 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	11 <sup>l</sup>									3 <sup>k</sup>	2 <sup>m</sup>
	S13D	4	4 <sup>l</sup>		4 <sup>k</sup>		4 <sup>m</sup>		4 <sup>m</sup>		4 <sup>m</sup>	3 <sup>k</sup>	2 <sup>m</sup>
	S13R	4	4 <sup>l</sup>									4	3
	S	UL	11 <sup>l</sup>	5	5	5	5	11 <sup>l</sup>	5	5	5	4	3
S-1	NS	UL	11	4	2	3	2	4	4	4	4	3	1
	S	UL	12	5	4	4	4	10	7	5	5	4	2
S-2 <sup>i</sup>	NS	UL	11	5	3	4	3	4	4	4	5	4	2
	S	UL	12	6	4	5	4	12	8	5	6	5	3
U	NS	UL	5	4	2	3	2	4	4	4	4	2	1
	S	UL	6	5	3	4	3	9	6	5	5	3	2

UL = Unlimited; NP = Not Permitted; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13D = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

- a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable height in this chapter.
- b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
- c. New Group H occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building height in accordance with the *California Existing Building Code*.
- e. Group I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- > f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- g. For new Group I-4 occupancies, see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
- h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.
- i. See Sections 407.1.1 and 408.1.2 for specific exceptions to construction type, allowable building areas and allowable heights.
- j. Restraint shall not be permitted in any building except in Group I-3 occupancies constructed for such use (see Section 408.1.2).
- k. Nonambulatory persons shall be limited to the first 2 stories.
- l. Nonambulatory persons shall be limited to the first 5 stories.
- m. Nonambulatory elderly clients are not permitted in buildings of these types of construction. See Sections 435.3.3 and 435.3.4.
- n. In other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, the S increases for height and stories in Tables 504.3 and 504.4 are permitted in addition to the S area increase in accordance with Table 506.2.
- o. For Group R-2 buildings of Type VA construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, S area increase is permitted in addition to the height and story increase provided the height shall not exceed 60 feet and 4 stories.
- p. See Section 436.1 for additional regulations for child-care centers and adult day care.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**505.2.3 Openness.** A mezzanine shall be open and unobstructed to the room in which such mezzanine is located except for walls not more than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height, columns and posts.

**Exceptions:**

1. Mezzanines or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanines are located, provided that the occupant load of the aggregate area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10.
2. A mezzanine having two or more exits or access to exits is not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanine is located.
3. Mezzanines or portions thereof are not required to be open to the room in which the mezzanines are located, provided that the aggregate floor area of the enclosed space is not greater than 10 percent of the mezzanine area.
4. In industrial facilities, mezzanines used for control equipment are permitted to be glazed on all sides.
5. In occupancies other than Groups H and I, which are no more than two stories above grade plane and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a mezzanine having two or more exits or access to exits shall not be required to be open to the room in which the mezzanine is located.

**505.3 Equipment platforms.** Equipment platforms in buildings shall not be considered as a portion of the floor below. Such equipment platforms shall not contribute to either the building area or the number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of the equipment platform shall not be included in determining the fire area in accordance with Section 903. Equipment platforms shall not be a part of any mezzanine and such platforms and the walkways, stairways, alternating tread devices and ladders providing access to an equipment platform shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from the building.

**505.3.1 Area limitation.** The aggregate area of all equipment platforms within a room shall be not greater than two-thirds of the area of the room in which they are located. Where an equipment platform is located in the same room as a mezzanine, the area of the mezzanine shall be determined by Section 505.2.1 and the combined aggregate area of the equipment platforms and mezzanines shall be not greater than two-thirds of the room in which they are located. The area of the mezzanine shall not exceed the area determined in accordance with Section 505.2.1.

**505.3.2 Automatic sprinkler system.** Where located in a building that is required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system, equipment platforms shall be fully protected by sprinklers above and below the platform, where required by the standards referenced in Section 903.3.

**505.3.3 Guards.** Equipment platforms shall have guards where required by Section 1015.2.

## SECTION 506 BUILDING AREA

**506.1 General.** The floor area of a building shall be determined based on the type of construction, occupancy classification, whether there is an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout the building and the amount of building frontage on public way or open space.

**506.1.1 Unlimited area buildings.** Unlimited area buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 507.

**506.1.2 Special provisions.** The special provisions of Section 510 permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable areas of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in Section 510.

**506.1.3 Basements.** Basements need not be included in the total allowable floor area of a building provided the total area of such basements does not exceed the area permitted for a one-story above grade plane building.

**506.2 Allowable area determination.** The allowable area of a building shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 506.2.1, 506.2.2 and 506.3.

**506.2.1 Single-occupancy buildings.** The allowable area of each story of a single-occupancy building shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-1:

$$A_a = A_t + (NS \times I_f) \quad (\text{Equation 5-1})$$

where:

$A_a$  = Allowable area (square feet).

$A_t$  = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S1, S13R or S13D value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

$NS$  = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

$I_f$  = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

The allowable area per story of a single-occupancy building with a maximum of three stories above grade shall be determined by Equation 5-1. The total allowable area of a single-occupancy building more than three stories above grade plane shall be determined in accordance with Equation 5-2:

$$A_a = [A_t + (NS \times I_f)] \times S_a \quad (\text{Equation 5-2})$$

where:

$A_a$  = Allowable area (square feet).

$A_t$  = Tabular allowable area factor (NS, S13R, S13D or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

$NS$  = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building (regardless of whether the building is sprinklered).

$I_f$  = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

$S_a$  = For other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, actual number of stories above grade plane exceeds three. For Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, actual number of building stories above grade plane, not to exceed two.

$S_a$  = 4 where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

The actual area of any individual floor shall not exceed the allowable area per Equation 5-1.

**506.2.2 Mixed-occupancy buildings.** The allowable area of each story of a mixed-occupancy building shall be determined in accordance with the applicable provisions of, Section 508.3.2 for nonseparated occupancies and Section 508.4.2 for separated occupancies.

For buildings with more than three stories above grade plane, the total building area shall be such that the aggregate sum of the ratios of the actual area of each story divided by the allowable area of such stories, determined in accordance with Equation 5-3 based on the applicable provisions of Section 508.1, shall not exceed three, provided the aggregate sum of the ratios for portions of mixed-occupancy, multistory buildings containing A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, including any other associated non-separated occupancies, shall not exceed two.

$$A_a = [A_t + (NS \times I_f)] \quad (\text{Equation 5-3})$$

$A_a$  = Allowable area (square feet).

$A_t$  = Tabular allowable area factor ( $NS$ , S13R, S13D or SM value, as applicable) in accordance with Table 506.2.

$NS$  = Tabular allowable area factor in accordance with Table 506.2 for a nonsprinklered building, regardless of whether the building is sprinklered.

$I_f$  = Area factor increase due to frontage (percent) as calculated in accordance with Section 506.3.

**506.2.2.1 Group H-2 or H-3 mixed occupancies.** For a building containing Group H-2 or H-3 occupancies, the allowable area shall be determined in accordance with Section 508.4.2, with the sprinkler system increase applicable only to the portions of the building not classified as Group H-2 or H-3.

**506.3 Frontage increase.** Every building shall adjoin or have access to a public way to receive an area factor increase based

on frontage. Area factor increase shall be determined in accordance with Sections 506.3.1 through 506.3.3.

**506.3.1 Minimum percentage of perimeter.** To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, a building shall have not less than 25 percent of its perimeter on a public way or open space. Such open space shall be either on the same lot or dedicated for public use and shall be accessed from a street or approved fire lane.

**506.3.2 Minimum frontage distance.** To qualify for an area factor increase based on frontage, the public way or open space adjacent to the building perimeter shall have a minimum distance (W) of 20 feet (6096 mm) measured at right angles from the building face to any of the following:

1. The closest interior lot line.
2. The entire width of a street, alley or public way.
3. The exterior face of an adjacent building on the same property.

The frontage increase shall be based on the smallest public way or open space that is 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater, and the percentage of building perimeter having a minimum 20 feet (6096 mm) public way or open space.

**506.3.3 Amount of increase.** The area factor increase based on frontage shall be determined in accordance with Table 506.3.3.

**506.3.3.1 Section 507 buildings.** Where a building meets the requirements of Section 507, as applicable, except for compliance with the minimum 60-foot (1828 mm) public way or yard requirement, the area factor increase based on frontage shall be determined in accordance with Table 506.3.3.1.

## SECTION 507 UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS

**507.1 General.** The area of buildings of the occupancies and configurations specified in Sections 507.1 through 507.13 shall not be limited. Basements not more than one story below grade plane shall be permitted.

**507.1.1 Accessory occupancies.** Accessory occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings in accordance with the provisions of Section 508.2, otherwise the requirements of Sections 507.3 through 507.13 shall be applied, where applicable.

**507.2 Measurement of open spaces.** Where Sections 507.3 through 507.13 require buildings to be surrounded and adjoined by public ways and yards, those open spaces shall be determined as follows:

1. Yards shall be measured from the building perimeter in all directions to the closest interior lot lines or to the exterior face of an opposing building located on the same lot, as applicable.
2. Where the building fronts on a public way, the entire width of the public way shall be used.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**TABLE 506.2**  
**ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR ( $A_t$  = NS, S1, S13R, S13D or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET<sup>a, b, j</sup>**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION											
		Type I		Type II		Type III		Type IV					
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT	A	B
A-1	NS	UL	UL	15,500	8,500	14,000	8,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	5,500
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	34,000	56,000	34,000	180,000	120,000	75,000	60,000	46,000	22,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	25,500	42,000	25,500	135,000	90,000	56,250	45,000	34,500	16,500
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	8,500	14,000	8,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	5,500
A-2	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	180,000	120,000	75,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	135,000	90,000	56,250	45,000	34,500	18,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	6,000
A-3	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	180,000	120,000	75,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	135,000	90,000	56,250	45,000	34,500	18,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	6,000
A-4	NS	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	6,000
	S1	UL	UL	62,000	38,000	56,000	38,000	180,000	120,000	75,000	60,000	46,000	24,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	46,500	28,500	42,000	28,500	135,000	90,000	56,250	45,000	34,500	18,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,500	9,500	14,000	9,500	45,000	30,000	18,750	15,000	11,500	6,000
A-5	NS	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL
	S1												
	SM												
B	NS	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	108,000	72,000	45,000	36,000	18,000	9,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	76,000	432,000	288,000	180,000	144,000	72,000	36,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	57,000	324,000	216,000	135,000	108,000	54,000	27,000
E	NS	UL	UL	26,500	14,500	23,500	14,500	76,500	51,000	31,875	25,500	18,500	9,500
	S1	UL	UL	106,000	58,000	94,000	58,000	306,000	204,000	127,500	102,000	74,000	38,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	79,500	43,500	70,500	43,500	229,500	153,000	95,625	76,500	55,500	28,500
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	26,500	14,500	23,500	14,500	76,500	51,000	31,875	25,500	18,500	9,500
F-1	NS	UL	UL	25,000	15,500	19,000	12,000	100,500	67,000	41,875	33,500	14,000	8,500
	S1	UL	UL	100,000	62,000	76,000	48,000	402,000	268,000	167,500	134,000	56,000	34,000
	SM	UL	UL	75,000	46,500	57,000	36,000	301,500	201,000	125,625	100,500	42,000	25,500
F-2	NS	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	18,000	151,500	101,000	63,125	50,500	21,000	13,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	72,000	606,000	404,000	252,500	202,000	84,000	52,000
	SM	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	54,000	454,500	303,000	189,375	151,500	63,000	39,000
H-1	NS <sup>c</sup>	21,000	16,500	11,000	7,000	9,500	7,000	10,500	10,500	10,500	10,500	7,500	NP
	S1	21,000	16,500	11,000	7,000	9,500	7,000	10,500	10,500	10,500	10,500	7,500	3,000
H-2	NS <sup>c</sup>												
	S1												
	SM												
H-3	NS <sup>c</sup>	UL	60,000	26,500	14,000	17,500	13,000	25,500	25,500	25,500	25,500	10,000	5,000
	S1												
	SM												
H-4	NS <sup>c,d</sup>	UL	UL	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	72,000	54,000	40,500	36,000	18,000	6,500
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	70,000	114,000	70,000	288,000	216,000	162,000	144,000	72,000	26,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	112,500	52,500	85,500	52,500	216,000	162,000	121,500	108,000	54,000	19,500
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	72,000	54,000	40,500	36,000	18,000	6,500
H-5	NS <sup>c,d</sup>	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	72,000	54,000	40,500	36,000	18,000	9,000
	S1	UL	UL	150,000	92,000	114,000	76,000	288,000	216,000	162,000	144,000	72,000	36,000
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	112,500	69,000	85,500	57,000	216,000	162,000	121,500	108,000	54,000	27,000
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	37,500	23,000	28,500	19,000	72,000	54,000	40,500	36,000	18,000	9,000

(continued)

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**TABLE 506.2—continued**  
**ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR ( $A_t$  = NS, S1, S13R, S13D or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET<sup>a, b, j</sup>**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION										A	B		
		Type I		Type II		Type III		Type IV							
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT				
I-2, I-2.1	NS <sup>d, f</sup>	UL	UL	15,000	11,000	12,000	NP	36,000	24,000	12,000	12,000	9,500	NP		
	S1	UL	UL	60,000	44,000	48,000	NP	144,000	96,000	48,000	48,000	38,000	NP		
	SM (without height increase)	UL	UL	45,000	33,000	36,000	NP	108,000	72,000	36,000	36,000	28,500	NP		
	SM (with height increase)	UL	UL	15,000	11,000	12,000	NP	NP	NP	NP	12,000	9,500	NP		
I-3	NS <sup>d, e</sup>	UL	15,100	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP		
	S1	UL	45,300	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP		
	SM (without height increase)	UL	30,200	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP		
	SM (with height increase)	UL	15,100	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP		
I-4	NS <sup>d, g</sup>	UL	60,500	26,500	13,000	23,500	13,000	76,500	51,000	25,500	25,500	18,500	9,000		
	S1	UL	121,000	106,000	52,000	94,000	52,000	306,000	204,000	102,000	102,000	74,000	36,000		
	SM (without height increase)	UL	181,500	79,500	39,000	70,500	39,000	229,500	153,000	76,500	76,500	55,500	27,000		
	SM (with height increase)	UL	60,500	26,500	13,000	23,500	13,000	76,500	51,000	25,500	25,500	18,500	9,000		
L	NS <sup>c</sup>	UL	60,000	37,500	17,500	28,500	17,500	60,000	37,500	36,000	36,000	18,000	6,500		
	S1														
	SM														
M	NS	UL	UL	21,500	12,500	18,500	12,500	61,500	41,000	26,625	20,500	14,000	9,000		
	S1	UL	UL	86,000	50,000	74,000	50,000	246,000	164,000	102,500	82,000	56,000	36,000		
	SM	UL	UL	64,500	37,500	55,500	37,500	184,500	123,000	76,875	61,500	42,000	27,000		
R-1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	61,500	41,000	25,625	20,500	12,000	7,000			
	S13R														
	S1														
	SM (without height increase)														
	SM (with height increase)														
R-2 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	61,500	41,000	25,625	20,500	12,000	7,000			
	S13R														
	S1														
	SM (without height increase)														
	SM (with height increase)														
R-2 Type VA construction <sup>k</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	12,000	NP		
	S13R														
	S1														
	SM (without height increase)														
	SM (with height increase)														
R-2.1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	55,000	19,000	NP	16,500	NP	54,000	NP	NP	NP	10,500	NP		
	S13R														
	S1														
	SM (without height increase)														
	SM (with height increase)														
R-2.2 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>i</sup>	UL	24,000	NP	24,000	NP	61,500	41,000	25,625	20,500	12,000	NP	NP		
	S1														
	SM (without height increase)														
	SM (with height increase)														
R-3, R-3-1 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL	UL		
	S13D														
	S13R														
	S1														
	SM														

(continued)

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**TABLE 506.2—continued**  
**ALLOWABLE AREA FACTOR ( $A_t$  = NS, S1, S13R, S13D or SM, as applicable) IN SQUARE FEET<sup>a, b, j</sup>**

OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION	SEE FOOTNOTES	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION										Type V	
		Type I		Type II		Type III		Type IV					
		A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT		
R-4 <sup>h</sup>	NS <sup>d</sup>	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	61,500	41,000	25,625	20,500	12,000	7,000
	S13D												
	S13R												
	S1	UL	UL	96,000	64,000	96,000	64,000	246,000	164,000	102,500	82,000	48,000	28,000
	<i>SM (without height increase)</i>	UL	UL	72,000	48,000	72,000	48,000	184,500	123,000	76,875	61,500	36,000	21,000
	<i>SM (with height increase)</i>	UL	UL	24,000	16,000	24,000	16,000	61,500	41,000	25,625	20,500	12,000	7,000
S-1	NS	UL	48,000	26,000	17,500	26,000	17,500	76,500	51,000	31,875	25,500	14,000	9,000
	S1	UL	192,000	104,000	70,000	104,000	70,000	306,000	204,000	127,500	102,000	56,000	36,000
	SM	UL	144,000	78,000	52,500	78,000	52,500	229,500	153,000	95,625	76,500	42,000	27,000
S-2	NS	UL	79,000	39,000	26,000	39,000	26,000	115,500	77,000	48,125	38,500	21,000	13,500
	S1	UL	316,000	156,000	104,000	156,000	104,000	462,000	308,000	192,500	154,000	84,000	54,000
	SM	UL	237,000	117,000	78,000	117,000	78,000	346,500	231,000	144,375	115,500	63,000	40,500
U	NS <sup>i</sup>	UL	35,500	19,000	8,500	14,000	8,500	54,000	36,000	22,500	18,000	9,000	5,500
	S1	UL	142,000	76,000	34,000	56,000	34,000	216,000	144,000	90,000	72,000	36,000	22,000
	SM	UL	106,500	57,000	25,500	42,000	25,500	162,000	108,000	67,500	54,000	27,000	16,500

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

UL = Unlimited; NP = Not Permitted; NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system; S1 = Buildings a maximum of one story above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; SM = Buildings two or more stories above grade plane equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1; S13R = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2; S13D = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

- a. See Chapters 4 and 5 for specific exceptions to the allowable area in this chapter.
- b. See Section 903.2 for the minimum thresholds for protection by an automatic sprinkler system for specific occupancies.
- c. New Group H and all Group L occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
- d. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of existing building area in accordance with the *California Existing Building Code*.
- e. Group I-3 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- f. New and existing Group I-2 occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.6.
- g. New Group I-4 occupancies see Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 903.2.6.
- h. New Group R occupancies are required to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.
- i. The maximum allowable area for a single-story nonsprinklered Group U greenhouse is permitted to be 9,000 square feet, or the allowable area shall be permitted to comply with Table C102.1 of Appendix C.
- j. In other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, the S increases for height and stories in Tables 504.3 and 504.4 are permitted in addition to the S area increase in accordance with Table 506.2.
- k. For Group R-2 buildings of Type VA construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, S area increase is permitted in addition to the height and story increase provided the height shall not exceed 60 feet and 4 stories.
- l. The NS value is only for use in evaluation of single-occupancy, multistory buildings per the formula in Section 506.2.3.

**TABLE 506.3.3**  
**FRONTAGE INCREASE FACTOR<sup>a</sup>**

PERCENTAGE OF BUILDING PERIMETER	OPEN SPACE (feet)			
	0 to less than 20	20 to less than 25	25 to less than 30	30 or greater
0 to less than 25	0	0	0	0
25 to less than 50	0	0.17	0.21	0.25
50 to less than 75	0	0.33	0.42	0.50
75 to 100	0	0.50	0.63	0.75

a. Interpolation is permitted.

**TABLE 506.3.3.1  
SECTION 507 BUILDINGS<sup>a</sup>**

PERCENTAGE OF BUILDING PERIMETER	OPEN SPACE (feet)					
	30 to less than 35	35 to less than 40	40 to less than 45	45 to less than 50	50 to less than 55	55 to less than 60
0 to less than 25	0	0	0	0	0	0
25 to less than 50	0.29	0.33	0.38	0.42	0.46	0.50
50 to less than 75	0.58	0.67	0.75	0.83	0.92	1.00
75 to 100	0.88	1.00	1.13	1.25	1.38	1.50

a. Interpolation is permitted.

**507.2.1 Reduced open space.** The public ways or yards of 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width required in Sections 507.3, 507.4, 507.5, 507.6 and 507.12 shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in width, provided that the following requirements are met:

1. The reduced width shall not be allowed for more than 75 percent of the perimeter of the building.
2. The exterior walls facing the reduced width shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours.
3. Openings in the exterior walls facing the reduced width shall have opening protectives with a fire protection rating of not less than 3 hours.

**507.3 Nonsprinklered, one-story buildings.** The area of a Group F-2 or S-2 building not more than one story in height shall not be limited where the building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**507.4 Sprinklered, one-story buildings.** The area of a Group A-4 building not more than one story above grade plane of other than Type V construction, or the area of a Group B, F, M or S building no more than one story above grade plane of any construction type, shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

#### Exceptions:

1. Buildings and structures of Type I or II construction for rack storage facilities that do not have access by the public shall not be limited in height, provided that such buildings conform to the requirements of Sections 507.4 and 903.3.1.1 and Chapter 32 of the *California Fire Code*.
2. The automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in areas occupied for indoor participant sports, such as tennis, skating, swimming and equestrian activities in occupancies in Group A-4, provided that the following criteria are met:
  - 2.1. Exit doors directly to the outside are provided for occupants of the participant sports areas.
  - 2.2. The building is equipped with a fire alarm system with manual fire alarm boxes installed in accordance with Section 907.

2.3. An automatic sprinkler system is provided in storage rooms, press boxes, concession booths or other spaces ancillary to the sport activity space.

**507.4.1 Mixed occupancy buildings with Groups A-1 and A-2.** Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies of other than Type V construction shall be permitted within mixed occupancy buildings of unlimited area complying with Section 507.4, provided that the following criteria are met:

1. Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies are separated from other occupancies as required for separated occupancies in Section 508.4.4 with no reduction allowed in the fire-resistance rating of the separation based upon the installation of an automatic sprinkler system.
2. Each area of the portions of the building used for Group A-1 or A-2 occupancies shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1.
3. Exit doors from Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

**507.5 Two-story buildings.** The area of a Group B, F, M or S building not more than two stories above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**507.6 Group A-3 buildings of Type II construction.** The area of a Group A-3 building not more than one story above grade plane, used as a place of religious worship, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor swimming pool or tennis court of Type II construction, shall not be limited provided that the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a stage other than a platform.
2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**507.7 Group A-3 buildings of Type III and IV construction.** The area of a Group A-3 building of Type III or IV

construction, with not more than one story above grade plane and used as a place of religious worship, community hall, dance hall, exhibition hall, gymnasium, lecture hall, indoor swimming pool or tennis court, shall not be limited provided that the following criteria are met:

1. The building shall not have a stage other than a platform.
2. The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The assembly floor shall be located at or within 21 inches (533 mm) of street or grade level and all exits are provided with ramps complying with Section 1012 to the street or grade level.
4. The building shall be surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**507.8 Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies.** Group H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies shall be permitted in unlimited area buildings containing Group F or S occupancies in accordance with Sections 507.4 and 507.5 and the provisions of Sections 507.8.1 through 507.8.4.

**507.8.1 Allowable area.** The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies located in an unlimited area building shall not exceed 10 percent of the area of the building *nor* the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506 based on the perimeter of each Group H floor area that fronts on a public way or open space.

**507.8.1.1 Located within the building.** The aggregate floor area of Group H occupancies not located at the perimeter of the building shall not exceed 25 percent of the area limitations for the Group H occupancies as specified in Section 506.

#### **507.8.1.1.1 Rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use, dispensing or mixing in open systems.**

Rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use, dispensing or mixing in open systems having a floor area of not more than 500 square feet ( $46.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) need not be located on the outer perimeter of the building where they are in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

**507.8.1.1.2 Liquid storage rooms and rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use in closed systems.** Liquid storage rooms and rooms for flammable or combustible liquid use in closed systems having a floor area of not more than 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) need not be located on the outer perimeter where they are in accordance with the *California Fire Code* and NFPA 30.

**507.8.1.1.3 Spray paint booths.** Spray paint booths that comply with the *California Fire Code* need not be located on the outer perimeter.

**507.8.2 Located on building perimeter.** Except as provided for in Section 507.8.1.1, Group H occupancies shall be located on the perimeter of the building. In Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies, not less than 25 percent of the perimeter of such occupancies shall be an exterior wall.

**507.8.3 Occupancy separations.** Group H occupancies shall be separated from the remainder of the unlimited area building and from each other in accordance with Table 508.4.

**507.8.4 Height limitations.** For two-story, unlimited area buildings, Group H occupancies shall not be located more than one story above grade plane unless permitted based on the allowable height and number of stories and feet as specified in Section 504 based on the type of construction of the unlimited area building.

**507.9 Unlimited mixed occupancy buildings with Group H-5.** The area of a Group B, F, H-5, M or S building not more than two stories above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width, provided that the following criteria are met:

1. Buildings containing Group H-5 occupancy shall be of Type I or II construction.
2. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall be separated from other occupancies as required in Sections 415.11 and 508.4.
3. Each area used for Group H-5 occupancy shall not exceed the maximum allowable area permitted for such occupancies in Section 503.1 including modifications of Section 506.

**Exception:** Where the Group H-5 occupancy exceeds the maximum allowable area, the Group H-5 shall be subdivided into areas that are separated by 2-hour fire barriers.

**507.10 Aircraft paint hangar.** The area of a Group H-2 aircraft paint hangar not more than one story above grade plane shall not be limited where such aircraft paint hangar complies with the provisions of Section 412.5 and is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less in width than one and one-half times the building height.

**507.11 Group E buildings.** The area of a Group E building not more than one story above grade plane, of Type II, IIIA or IV construction, shall not be limited provided that the following criteria are met:

1. Each classroom shall have not less than two means of egress, with one of the means of egress being a direct exit to the outside of the building complying with Section 1022.
2. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. The building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**507.12 Motion picture theaters.** In buildings of Type II construction, the area of a motion picture theater located on the first story above grade plane shall not be limited where the building is provided with an automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and is

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**507.13 Covered and open mall buildings and anchor buildings.** The area of *covered and open mall buildings* and *anchor buildings* not exceeding three stories in height that comply with Section 402 shall not be limited.

## SECTION 508 MIXED USE AND OCCUPANCY

**508.1 General.** Each portion of a building shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Where a building contains more than one occupancy group, the building or portion thereof shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 508.2, 508.3, 508.4 or 508.5, or a combination of these sections.

### Exceptions:

1. Occupancies separated in accordance with Section 510.
2. Where required by Table 415.6.5, areas of Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies shall be located in a detached building or structure.

**508.2 Accessory occupancies.** Accessory occupancies are those occupancies that are ancillary to the main occupancy of the building or portion thereof. Accessory occupancies shall comply with the provisions of Sections 508.2.1 through 508.2.4.

**508.2.1 Occupancy classification.** Accessory occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space.

**508.2.2 Allowable building height.** The allowable height and number of stories of the building containing accessory occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 504 for the main occupancy of the building.

**508.2.3 Allowable building area.** The allowable area of the building shall be based on the applicable provisions of Section 506 for the main occupancy of the building. Aggregate accessory occupancies shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the floor area of the story in which they are located and shall not exceed the tabular values for nonsprinklered buildings in Table 506.2 for each such accessory occupancy.

**508.2.4 Separation of occupancies.** No separation is required between accessory occupancies and the main occupancy.

### Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 and L occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.
2. Group R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2 and R-3 dwelling units and sleeping units shall be separated from other dwelling or sleeping units and from acces-

sory occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.

3. *Group I-2 and I-2.1 shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.*

**Exception:** No separation is required between Group B, E and R-2 sleeping units accessory to Group I-2 and I-2.1 and covered exterior entrances required by Section 11B-206.4.10 or Section 1224.33.2.1 accessory to Group I-2.

4. *Group I-3 and vehicle sally-ports shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.*

**Exception:** No separation is required between Group B, E, R-2 sleeping units and S-2 occupancies accessory to Group I-3 of Type I construction.

**508.3 Nonseparated occupancies.** Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as nonseparated occupancies.

**508.3.1 Occupancy classification.** Nonseparated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. The requirements of this code shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy classification of that space. In addition, the most restrictive provisions of Chapter 9 that apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply to the total nonseparated occupancy area.

**508.3.1.1 High-rise buildings.** Where nonseparated occupancies occur in a high-rise building, the most restrictive requirements of Section 403 that apply to the nonseparated occupancies shall apply throughout the high-rise building.

**508.3.2 Allowable building area, height and number of stories.** The allowable building area, height and number of stories of the building or portion thereof shall be based on the most restrictive allowances for the occupancy groups under consideration for the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

**508.3.3 Separation.** No separation is required between nonseparated occupancies.

### Exceptions:

1. Group H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5, I-2, I-2.1 and L occupancies shall be separated from all other occupancies in accordance with Section 508.4.
2. Group R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2 and R-3 dwelling units and sleeping units shall be separated from other dwelling or sleeping units and from other occupancies contiguous to them in accordance with the requirements of Section 420.
3. Separation is required between Group I-3 and vehicle sally-ports.
4. Where Group I-3 is not the main occupancy and the area is greater than 10 percent of the floor area, it shall be separated per Table 508.4.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

**508.4 Separated occupancies.** Buildings or portions of buildings that comply with the provisions of this section shall be considered as separated occupancies.

**508.4.1 Occupancy classification.** Separated occupancies shall be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Each separated space shall comply with this code based on the occupancy classification of that portion of the building. The most restrictive provisions of Chapter 9 that apply to the separate occupancies shall apply to the total nonfire-barrier-separated occupancy areas. Occupancy separations that serve to define fire area limits established in Chapter 9 for requiring a fire protection system shall also comply with Section 901.7.

**508.4.2 Allowable building area.** In each story, the building area shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual building area of each separated occupancy divided by the allowable building area of each separated occupancy shall not exceed 1.

**508.4.3 Allowable building height and number of stories.** Each separated occupancy shall comply with the building height limitations and story limitations based on the type of construction of the building in accordance with Section 503.1.

**Exception:** Special provisions of Section 510 shall permit occupancies at building heights and number of stories other than provided in Section 503.1.

**508.4.4 Separation.** Individual occupancies shall be separated from adjacent occupancies in accordance with Table 508.4.

**508.4.4.1 Construction.** Required separations shall be fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, so as to completely separate adjacent occupancies. Mass timber elements serving as fire barriers or horizontal assemblies to separate occu-

TABLE 508.4  
REQUIRED SEPARATION OF OCCUPANCIES (HOURS)<sup>h</sup>

OCCUPANCY	A, E		I-4 <sup>i</sup> , R-2.1		I-2 <sup>j</sup> , I-2.1		I-3		R-1 <sup>a</sup> , R-2 <sup>a</sup> , R-2 <sup>b</sup> , R-3 <sup>a</sup> , R-3.1 <sup>a</sup> , R-4 <sup>a</sup>		F-2, S-2 <sup>b</sup> , U		B <sup>e</sup> , F-1 <sup>g, h</sup> , M, S-1		L		H-1		H-2		H-3, H-4		H-5		
	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S	NS	S
A, E	N	N	2	2	2	NP	2	NP	1	2	N	1	1	2	2	NP	NP	NP	3	4	2	3	2	NP	
I-4 <sup>i</sup> , R-2.1	2	2	I <sup>e</sup>	NP	2	NP	2	NP	1	NP	1	2	1	2	2	NP	NP	NP	4	NP	2	NP	2	NP	
I-2 <sup>j</sup> , I-2.1	2	NP	2	NP	N	NP	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	NP	NP	4	NP	2	NP	2	NP	
I-3	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	N	NP	2	NP	2	2	2	2	2	NP	NP	NP	4	NP					
R-1 <sup>a</sup> , R-2 <sup>a</sup> , R-2 <sup>b</sup> , R-3 <sup>a</sup> , R-3.1 <sup>a</sup> , R-4 <sup>a</sup>	1	2	1	NP	2	NP	2	NP	N	N	1 <sup>c</sup>	2 <sup>c</sup>	1	2	4	NP	NP	NP	3	NP	2	NP	2	NP	
F-2, S-2 <sup>b</sup> , U	N	1	1	2	2	NP	2	2	1 <sup>c</sup>	2 <sup>c</sup>	N	N	1	2	I	NP	NP	NP	3	4	2	3	2	NP	
B <sup>e</sup> , F-1 <sup>g, h</sup> , M, S-1	1	2	1	2	2	NP	2	2	1	2	1	2	N	N	I	NP	NP	NP	2	3	1	2	1	NP	
L	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP	4	NP	I	NP	I	NP	I	NP	NP	NP	2	NP	I	NP	I	NP	
H-1	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	N	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	NP	
H-2	3	4	4	NP	4	NP	4	NP	3	NP	3	4	2	3	2	NP	NP	NP	N	NP	1	NP	1	NP	
H-3, H-4	2	3	2	NP	2	NP			2	NP	2	3	1	2	I	NP	NP	NP	1	NP	1 <sup>d</sup>	NP	1	NP	
H-5	2	NP	2	NP	2	NP			2	NP	2	NP	1	NP	I	NP	NP	NP	1	NP	1	NP	N	NP	

S = Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

NS = Buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

N = No separation requirement.

NP = Not Permitted.

a. See Section 420.

b. The required separation from areas used only for private or pleasure vehicles shall be reduced by 1 hour but not to less than 1 hour.

c. See Sections 406.3.2 and 406.6.4.

d. Separation is not required between occupancies of the same classification.

e. See Section 422.2 for ambulatory care facilities.

f. Occupancy separations that serve to define fire area limits established in Chapter 9 for requiring fire protection systems shall also comply with Section 707.3.10 and Table 707.3.10 in accordance with Section 901.7.

g. [SFM] Group I and F1 occupancies and Group R-2.1 and F-1 occupancies shall have a 3 hour separation.

h. [SFM] Commercial kitchens not associated with cafeterias and similar dining facilities in Group I-2 and Group R-2.1 shall have a 2-hour separation and shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system.

i. [SFM] Group E child-care separation with I-4 child care can be reduced to 1 hour with the installation of automatic fire sprinklers in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

j. When not considered an accessory use in accordance with Section 508.2.4, the required separation between Group I-2 and required covers for accessible entrances and emergency vehicle entrances, when in accordance with Section 406.5.2 and protected by an automatic sprinkler system, shall be reduced by 1 hour but not to less than 1 hour. See Section 903.2.21.

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

pancies in Type IV-B or IV-C construction shall be separated from the interior of the building with an approved thermal barrier consisting of gypsum board that is not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

**508.5 Live/work units** A live/work unit shall comply with Sections 508.5 through 508.5.11.

### Exceptions:

1. Dwelling or sleeping units that include an office that is less than 10 percent of the area of the dwelling unit are permitted to be classified as dwelling units with accessory occupancies in accordance with Section 508.2.
2. *Live/work units complying with the requirements of Section 508.5 shall be permitted to be constructed as one- and two-family dwellings or townhouses in accordance with the California Residential Code, as applicable.*

**508.5.1 Limitations.** The following shall apply to live/work areas:

1. The live/work unit is permitted to be not greater than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area.
2. The nonresidential area is permitted to be not more than 50 percent of the area of each live/work unit.
3. The nonresidential area function shall be limited to the first or main floor only of the live/work unit.
4. Not more than five nonresidential workers or employees are allowed to occupy the nonresidential area at any one time.

**508.5.2 Occupancies.** Live/work units shall be classified as a Group R-2 occupancy. Separation requirements found in Sections 420 and 508 shall not apply within the live/work unit where the live/work unit is in compliance with Section 508.5. Nonresidential uses that would otherwise be classified as either a Group H or S occupancy shall not be permitted in a live/work unit.

**Exception:** Storage shall be permitted in the live/work unit provided that the aggregate area of storage in the nonresidential portion of the live/work unit shall be limited to 10 percent of the space dedicated to nonresidential activities.

**508.5.3 Means of egress.** Except as modified by this section, the means of egress components for a live/work unit shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 10 for the function served.

**Exception:** *Residential areas of live/work units constructed in accordance with the California Residential Code shall not be required to comply with Chapter 10.*

**508.5.4 Egress capacity.** The egress capacity for each element of the live/work unit shall be based on the occupant load for the function served in accordance with Table 1004.5.

**508.5.5 Spiral stairways.** Spiral stairways that conform to the requirements of Section 1011.10 shall be permitted.

**508.5.6 Vertical openings.** Floor openings between floor levels of a live/work unit are permitted without enclosure.

**[F] 508.5.7 Fire protection.** The live/work unit shall be provided with a monitored fire alarm system where required by Section 907.2.9 and an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8.

**508.5.8 Structural.** Floors within a live/work unit shall be designed for the live loads in Table 1607.1, based on the function within the space.

**Exception:** *Residential areas of live/work units constructed in accordance with the California Residential Code shall not be required to comply with Table 1607.1.*

**508.5.9 Accessibility.** Accessibility shall be designed in accordance with *Chapter 11A and/or 11B*, when applicable, for the function served.

**508.5.10 Ventilation.** The applicable ventilation requirements of the *California Mechanical Code* shall apply to each area within the live/work unit for the function within that space.

**508.5.11 Plumbing facilities.** The nonresidential area of the live/work unit shall be provided with minimum plumbing facilities as specified by the *California Plumbing Code*, based on the function of the nonresidential area. Where the nonresidential area of the live/work unit is required to be accessible, the plumbing fixtures specified by the *California Plumbing Code* shall be accessible.

## SECTION 509 INCIDENTAL USES

**509.1 General** Incidental uses located within single occupancy or mixed occupancy buildings shall comply with the provisions of this section. Incidental uses are ancillary functions associated with a given occupancy that generally pose a greater level of risk to that occupancy and are limited to those uses specified in Table 509.1.

**Exception:** Incidental uses within and serving a dwelling unit are not required to comply with this section.

**509.2 Occupancy classification.** Incidental uses shall not be individually classified in accordance with Section 302.1. Incidental uses shall be included in the building occupancies within which they are located.

**509.3 Area limitations.** *The aggregate floor area of incidental uses shall not occupy more than 10 percent of the building area of the story in which they are located.*

**509.4 Separation and protection.** The incidental uses specified in Table 509.1 shall be separated from the remainder of the building or equipped with an automatic sprinkler system, or both, in accordance with the provisions of that table.

**509.4.1 Separation.** Where Table 509.1 specifies a fire-resistance-rated separation, the incidental uses shall be separated from the remainder of the building by a fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Construction supporting 1-hour fire barriers or horizontal assemblies used for incidental use separations in buildings of Type IIB, IIIB and VB construction is not required to be fire-resistance rated unless required by other sections of this code.

**509.4.1.1 Type IV-B and IV-C construction.** Where Table 509.1 specifies a fire-resistance-rated separation, mass timber elements serving as fire barriers or horizontal assemblies in Type IV-B or IV-C construction shall be separated from the interior of the incidental use with an approved thermal barrier consisting of gypsum board that is not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

**509.4.2 Protection.** Where Table 509.1 permits an automatic sprinkler system without a fire barrier, the incidental

uses shall be separated from the remainder of the building by construction capable of resisting the passage of smoke. The walls shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor assembly below to the underside of the ceiling that is a component of a fire-resistance-rated floor assembly or roof assembly above or to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. Doors shall not have air transfer openings and shall not be undercut in excess of the clearance permitted in accordance with NFPA 80. Walls surrounding the incidental use shall not have air transfer openings unless provided with smoke dampers in accordance with Section 710.8.

**509.4.2.1 Protection limitation.** Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided in accordance with Table 509.1, only the space occupied by the incidental use need be equipped with such a system.

[F]TABLE 509.1  
INCIDENTAL USES

ROOM OR AREA	SEPARATION AND/OR PROTECTION
Furnace room where any piece of equipment is over 400,000 Btu per hour input	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Rooms with boilers where the largest piece of equipment is over 15 psi and 10 horsepower	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Refrigerant machinery room	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Hydrogen fuel gas rooms, not classified as Group H	1 hour in Group B, F, M, S and U occupancies; 2 hours in Group A, E, I and R occupancies.
Incinerator rooms	2 hours and provide automatic sprinkler system
Paint shops, not classified as Group H, located in occupancies other than Group F	2 hours; or 1 hour and provide automatic sprinkler system
In Group E occupancies, laboratories and vocational shops not classified as Group H	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
<i>[SFM] Rooms or areas with special hazards such as laboratories, vocational shops and other such areas not classified as Group H, located in Group E occupancies where hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity are used or stored.</i>	<i>1 hour</i>
In Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, laboratories not classified as Group H	1 hour <sup>a</sup>
In ambulatory care facilities, laboratories not classified as Group H	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
Laundry rooms over 100 square feet	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
In Group I-2 and I-2.1 laundry rooms over 100 square feet	1 hour <sup>a</sup>
Group I-3 cells and Group I-2 and I-2.1 patient rooms equipped with padded surfaces	1 hour <sup>a</sup>
In Group I-2 and I-2.1 physical plant maintenance shops	1 hour <sup>a</sup>
In ambulatory care facilities or Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, waste and linen collection rooms with containers that have an aggregate volume of 10 cubic feet or greater	1 hour <sup>a</sup>
In other than ambulatory care facilities and Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, waste and linen collection rooms over 100 square feet	1 hour or provide automatic sprinkler system
In ambulatory care facilities or Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, storage rooms greater than 100 square feet	1 hour <sup>a</sup>
Electrical installations and transformers	See Sections 110.26 through 110.34 and Sections 450.8 through 450.48 of the <i>California Electrical Code</i> for protection and separation requirements.

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per square inch (psi) = 6.9 kPa, 1 British thermal unit (Btu) per hour = 0.293 watts, 1 horsepower = 746 watts, 1 gallon = 3.785 L, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m<sup>3</sup>.

a. *[SFM] Fire barrier protection and automatic sprinkler protection required throughout the fire area in I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies as indicated.*

## GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS

### SECTION 510 SPECIAL PROVISIONS

**510.1 General.** The provisions in Sections 510.2 through 510.9 shall permit the use of special conditions that are exempt from, or modify, the specific requirements of this chapter regarding the allowable building heights and areas of buildings based on the occupancy classification and type of construction, provided the special condition complies with the provisions specified in this section for such condition and other applicable requirements of this code. The provisions of Sections 510.2 through 510.8 are to be considered independent and separate from each other.

**510.2 Horizontal building separation allowance.** A building shall be considered as separate and distinct buildings for the purpose of determining area limitations, continuity of fire walls, limitation of number of stories and type of construction where the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a horizontal assembly having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours. Where vertical offsets are provided as part of a horizontal assembly, the vertical offset and the structure supporting the vertical offset shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours.
2. The building below, including the horizontal assembly, is of Type IA construction.
3. Shaft, stairway, ramp and escalator enclosures through the horizontal assembly shall have not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716.

**Exception:** Where the enclosure walls below the horizontal assembly have not less than a 3-hour fire-resistance rating with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716, the enclosure walls extending above the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, provided that the following conditions are met:

1. The building above the horizontal assembly is not required to be of Type I construction.
2. The enclosure connects fewer than four stories.
3. The enclosure opening protectives above the horizontal assembly have a fire protection rating of not less than 1 hour.
4. Interior exit stairways located within the Type IA building are permitted to be of combustible materials where the following requirements are met:
  - 4.1. The building above the Type IA building is of Type III, IV, or V construction.
  - 4.2. The stairway located in the Type IA building is enclosed by 3-hour fire-resistance-rated construction with opening protectives in accordance with Section 716.
5. The building or buildings above the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to have multiple Group A occu-

pancy uses, each with an occupant load of less 300, or Group B, M, R or S occupancies.

6. The building below the horizontal assembly shall be protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and shall be permitted to be any occupancy allowed by this code except Group H.
7. The maximum building height in feet (mm) shall not exceed the limits set forth in Section 504.3 for the building having the smaller allowable height as measured from the grade plane.

**510.3 Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with Group S-2 open parking garage above.** A Group S-2 enclosed parking garage with not more than one story above grade plane and located below a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be classified as a separate and distinct building for the purpose of determining the type of construction where the following conditions are met:

1. The allowable area of the building shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the actual area divided by the allowable area for each separate occupancy shall not exceed 1.
2. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is of Type I or II construction and is at least equal to the fire-resistance requirements of the Group S-2 open parking garage.
3. The height and the number of tiers of the Group S-2 open parking garage shall be limited as specified in Table 406.5.4.
4. The floor assembly separating the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 open parking garage shall be protected as required for the floor assembly of the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage. Openings between the Group S-2 enclosed parking garage and Group S-2 open parking garage, except exit openings, shall not be required to be protected.
5. The Group S-2 enclosed parking garage is used exclusively for the parking or storage of private motor vehicles, but shall be permitted to contain an office, waiting room and toilet room having a total area of not more than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) and mechanical equipment rooms associated with the operation of the building.

**510.4 Parking beneath Group R.** Where a maximum one story above grade plane Group S-2 parking garage, enclosed or open, or combination thereof, of Type I construction or open of Type IV construction, with grade entrance, is provided under a building of Group R, the number of stories to be used in determining the minimum type of construction shall be measured from the floor above such a parking area. The floor assembly between the parking garage and the Group R above shall comply with the type of construction required for the parking garage and shall also provide a fire-resistance rating not less than the mixed occupancy separation required in Section 508.4.

**510.5 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIIA construction.** For buildings of Type IIIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2, the maximum allowable height in Table

504.3 shall be increased by 10 feet (3048 mm) and the maximum allowable number of stories in Table 504.4 shall be increased by one where the first-floor assembly above the basement has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 3 hours and the floor area is subdivided by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire walls into areas of not more than 3,000 square feet ( $279\text{ m}^2$ ).

**510.6 Group R-1 and R-2 buildings of Type IIA construction.** The height limitation for buildings of Type IIA construction in Groups R-1 and R-2 shall be increased to nine stories and 100 feet (30 480 mm) where the building is separated by not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from any other building on the lot and from lot lines, the exits are segregated in an area enclosed by a 2-hour fire-resistance-rated fire wall and the first floor assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours.

**510.7 Open parking garage beneath Groups A, I, B, M and R.** Open parking garages constructed under Groups A, I, B, M and R shall not exceed the height and area limitations permitted under Section 406.5. The height and area of the portion of the building above the open parking garage shall not exceed the limitations in Section 503 for the upper occupancy. The height, in both feet and stories, of the portion of the building above the open parking garage shall be measured from grade plane and shall include both the open parking garage and the portion of the building above the parking garage.

**510.7.1 Fire separation.** Fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 between the parking occupancy and the upper occupancy shall correspond to the required fire-resistance rating prescribed in Table 508.4 for the uses involved. The type of construction shall apply to each occupancy individually, except that structural members, including main bracing within the open parking structure, which is necessary to support the upper occupancy, shall be protected with the more restrictive fire-resistance-rated assemblies of the groups involved as shown in Table 601. Means of egress for the upper occupancy shall conform to Chapter 10 and shall be separated from the parking occupancy by fire barriers having not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating as required by Section 707 with self-closing doors complying with Section 716 or horizontal assemblies having not less than a 2-hour fire-resistance rating as required by Section 711, with self-closing doors complying with Section 716. Means of egress from the open parking garage shall comply with Section 406.5.

**510.8 Group B or M buildings with Group S-2 open parking garage above.** Group B or M occupancies located below a Group S-2 open parking garage of a lesser type of construction shall be considered as a separate and distinct building from the Group S-2 open parking garage for the purpose of determining the type of construction where the following conditions are met:

1. The buildings are separated with a horizontal assembly having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

2. The occupancies in the building below the horizontal assembly are limited to Groups B and M.
3. The occupancy above the horizontal assembly is limited to a Group S-2 open parking garage.
4. The building below the horizontal assembly is of Type IA construction.

**Exception:** The building below the horizontal assembly shall be permitted to be of Type IB or II construction, but not less than the type of construction required for the Group S-2 open parking garage above, where the building below is not greater than one story in height above grade plane.

5. The height and area of the building below the horizontal assembly does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 503.
6. The height and area of the Group S-2 open parking garage does not exceed the limits set forth in Section 406.5. The height, in both feet and stories, of the Group S-2 open parking garage shall be measured from grade plane and shall include the building below the horizontal assembly.
7. Exits serving the Group S-2 open parking garage discharge at grade with direct and unobstructed access to a street or public way and are separated from the building below the horizontal assembly by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**510.9 Multiple buildings above a horizontal assembly.** Where two or more buildings are provided above the horizontal assembly separating a Group S-2 parking garage or building below from the buildings above in accordance with the special provisions in Section 510.2, 510.3 or 510.8, the buildings above the horizontal assembly shall be regarded as separate and distinct buildings from each other and shall comply with all other provisions of this code as applicable to each separate and distinct building.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 6 – TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

||

&lt;

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
Table 601				X																		
602.1				X																		
Table 602				X																		
603.1.3					X	X																

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



# CHAPTER 6

## TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 6 establishes five types of construction in which each building must be categorized. This chapter looks at the materials used in the building (combustible or noncombustible) and the extent to which building elements such as the building frame, roof, wall and floor can resist fire. Depending on the type of construction and the specific building element, fire resistance of 1 to 3 hours is specified.

### SECTION 601 GENERAL

**601.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall control the classification of buildings as to type of construction.

### SECTION 602 CONSTRUCTION CLASSIFICATION

**602.1 General.** Buildings and structures erected or to be erected, altered or extended in height or area shall be classified in one of the five construction types defined in Sections 602.2 through 602.5. The building elements shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than that specified in Table 601 and

exterior walls shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than that specified in Table 705.5. Where required to have a fire-resistance rating by Table 601, building elements shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 703.2. The protection of openings, ducts and air transfer openings in building elements shall not be required unless required by other provisions of this code.

**Exception:** Noncombustible structural members supporting solar photovoltaic panels are not required to meet the fire resistance rating for the following:

1. Photovoltaic panel supported by a structure and having no use underneath. Signs may be provided,

**TABLE 601**  
**FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS (HOURS)**

BUILDING ELEMENT	TYPE I		TYPE II		TYPE III		TYPE IV				TYPE V	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B	C	HT	A	B
Primary structural frame <sup>f</sup> (see Section 202)	3 <sup>a, b</sup>	2 <sup>a, b, c</sup>	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	0 <sup>c</sup>	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	0	3 <sup>a</sup>	2 <sup>a</sup>	2 <sup>a</sup>	HT	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	0
Bearing walls												
Exterior <sup>e, f</sup>	3	2	1	0	2	2	3	2	2	2	1	0
Interior	3 <sup>a</sup>	2 <sup>a</sup>	1	0	1	0	3	2	2	1/HT <sup>g</sup>	1	0
Nonbearing walls and partitions												
Exterior										See Table 705.5		
Nonbearing walls and partitions												
Interior <sup>d</sup>	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	See Section 2304.11.2	0	0
Floor construction and associated secondary structural members (see Section 202)	2	2	1	0	1	0	2	2	2	HT	1	0
Roof construction and associated secondary structural members (see Section 202)	1 <sup>1/2</sup> <sup>b</sup>	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	0 <sup>c</sup>	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	0	1 <sup>1/2</sup>	1	1	HT	1 <sup>b, c</sup>	0

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Roof supports: Fire-resistance ratings of primary structural frame and bearing walls are permitted to be reduced by 1 hour where supporting a roof only.
- b. 1. Except in Group A, E, F-1, H, I, L, M, R-1, R-2, R-2.1 and S-1 occupancies, *high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal*, fire protection of structural members in roof construction shall not be required, including protection of primary structural frame members, roof framing and decking where every part of the roof construction is 20 feet or more above any floor immediately below. Fire-retardant-treated wood members shall be allowed to be used for such unprotected members.
2. For Group A, E, I, L, R-1, R-2 and R-2.1 occupancies, *high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal*, fire protection of members other than the primary structural frame shall not be required, including protection of roof framing and decking where every part of the roof construction is 20 feet or more above any floor immediately below. Fire-retardant-treated wood members shall be allowed to be used for such unprotected members.
3. One-story portions of Group A and E assembly occupancies the roof-framing system of Type II A or Type III A construction may be of unprotected construction when such roof-framing system is open to the assembly area and does not contain concealed spaces.
- c. In all occupancies, heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11 shall be allowed for roof construction, including primary structural frame members, where a 1-hour or less fire-resistance rating is required.
- d. Not less than the fire-resistance rating required by other sections of this code.
- e. Not less than the fire-resistance rating based on fire separation distance (see Table 705.5).
- f. Not less than the fire-resistance rating as referenced in Section 704.10.
- g. Heavy timber bearing walls supporting more than two floors or more than a floor and a roof shall have a fire resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

## TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

*as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.*

2. *Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by noncombustible framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.*
3. *Solar photovoltaic panels supported by a structure over parking stalls where the panels constitute the roof and all the following conditions are met (see Figure 5-1):*
  - 3.1. *The area within the perimeter of the solar photovoltaic array has maximum rectangular dimension of 40 feet by 150 feet.*
  - 3.2. *The distance between solar photovoltaic array structures is a minimum of 10 feet clear.*
  - 3.3. *The driveway aisle separating solar photovoltaic array structures has a minimum width of 25 feet clear.*
  - 3.4. *Solar photovoltaic array structure is used only for parking purposes with no storage.*
  - 3.5. *Completely open on all sides (other than necessary structural supports) with no interior partitions.*

**602.1.1 Minimum requirements.** A building or portion thereof shall not be required to conform to the details of a type of construction higher than that type which meets the minimum requirements based on occupancy even though certain features of such a building actually conform to a higher type of construction.

**602.2 Types I and II.** Types I and II construction are those types of construction in which the building elements specified in Table 601 are of noncombustible materials, except as permitted in Section 603 and elsewhere in this code.

**602.3 Type III.** Type III construction is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of any material permitted by this code. Fire-retardant-treated wood framing and sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies of a 2-hour rating or less.

**602.4 Type IV.** Type IV construction is that type of construction in which the building elements are mass timber or noncombustible materials and have fire-resistance ratings in accordance with Table 601. Mass timber elements shall meet the fire-resistance-rating requirements of this section based on either the fire-resistance rating of the noncombustible protection, the mass timber, or a combination of both and shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2. The minimum dimensions and permitted materials for building elements shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 2304.11. Mass timber elements of Types IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction shall be protected with noncombustible protection applied directly to the mass timber in accordance with Sections 602.4.1 through 602.4.3. The time assigned to the noncombustible protection shall be deter-

mined in accordance with Section 703.6 and comply with Section 722.7.

Cross-laminated timber shall be labeled as conforming to ANSI/APA PRG 320 as referenced in Section 2303.1.4.

Exterior load-bearing walls and nonload-bearing walls shall be mass timber construction, or shall be of noncombustible construction.

**Exception:** Exterior load-bearing walls and nonload-bearing walls of Type IV-HT Construction in accordance with Section 602.4.4.

The interior building elements, including nonload-bearing walls and partitions, shall be of mass timber construction or of noncombustible construction.

**Exception:** Interior building elements and nonload-bearing walls and partitions of Type IV-HT construction in accordance with Section 602.4.4.

Combustible concealed spaces are not permitted except as otherwise indicated in Sections 602.4.1 through 602.4.4. Combustible stud spaces within light frame walls of Type IV-HT construction shall not be considered concealed spaces, but shall comply with Section 718.

In buildings of Type IV-A, IV-B, and IV-C construction with an occupied floor located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department access, up to and including 12 stories or 180 feet (54 864 mm) above grade plane, mass timber interior exit and elevator hoistway enclosures shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2. In buildings greater than 12 stories or 180 feet (54 864 mm) above grade plane, interior exit and elevator hoistway enclosures shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

**602.4.1 Type IV-A.** Building elements in Type IV-A construction shall be protected in accordance with Sections 602.4.1.1 through 602.4.1.6. The required fire-resistance rating of noncombustible elements and protected mass timber elements shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2.

**602.4.1.1 Exterior protection.** The outside face of exterior walls of mass timber construction shall be protected with noncombustible protection with a minimum assigned time of 40 minutes, as specified in Table 722.7.1(1). Components of the exterior wall covering shall be of noncombustible material except water-resistant barriers having a peak heat release rate of less than  $150\text{ kW/m}^2$ , a total heat release of less than  $20\text{ MJ/m}^2$  and an effective heat of combustion of less than  $18\text{ MJ/kg}$  as determined in accordance with ASTM E1354 and having a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The ASTM E1354 test shall be conducted on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of  $50\text{ kW/m}^2$ .

**602.4.1.2 Interior protection.** Interior faces of all mass timber elements, including the inside faces of exterior mass timber walls and mass timber roofs, shall be protected with materials complying with Section 703.3.

## TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

**602.4.1.2.1 Protection time.** Noncombustible protection shall contribute a time equal to or greater than times assigned in Table 722.7.1(1), but not less than 80 minutes. The use of materials and their respective protection contributions specified in Table 722.7.1(2) shall be permitted to be used for compliance with Section 722.7.1.

**602.4.1.3 Floors.** The floor assembly shall contain a noncombustible material not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in thickness above the mass timber. Floor finishes in accordance with Section 804 shall be permitted on top of the noncombustible material. The underside of floor assemblies shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2.

**602.4.1.4 Roofs.** The interior surfaces of roof assemblies shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2. Roof coverings in accordance with Chapter 15 shall be permitted on the outside surface of the roof assembly.

**602.4.1.5 Concealed spaces.** Concealed spaces shall not contain combustibles other than electrical, mechanical, fire protection, or plumbing materials and equipment permitted in plenums in accordance with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*, and shall comply with all applicable provisions of Section 718. Combustible construction forming concealed spaces shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2.

**602.4.1.6 Shafts.** Shafts shall be permitted in accordance with Sections 713 and 718. Both the shaft side and room side of mass timber elements shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2.

**602.4.2 Type IV-B.** Building elements in Type IV-B construction shall be protected in accordance with Sections 602.4.2.1 through 602.4.2.6. The required fire-resistance rating of noncombustible elements or mass timber elements shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2.

**602.4.2.1 Exterior protection.** The outside face of exterior walls of mass timber construction shall be protected with noncombustible protection with a minimum assigned time of 40 minutes, as specified in Table 722.7.1(1). Components of the exterior wall covering shall be of noncombustible material except water-resistant barriers having a peak heat release rate of less than 150kW/m<sup>2</sup>, a total heat release of less than 20 MJ/m<sup>2</sup> and an effective heat of combustion of less than 18MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E1354, and having a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The ASTM E1354 test shall be conducted on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m<sup>2</sup>.

**602.4.2.2 Interior protection.** Interior faces of all mass timber elements, including the inside face of exterior mass timber walls and mass timber roofs, shall be

protected, as required by this section, with materials complying with Section 707.3.

**602.4.2.2.1 Protection time.** Noncombustible protection shall contribute a time equal to or greater than times assigned in Table 722.7.1(1), but not less than 80 minutes. The use of materials and their respective protection contributions specified in Table 722.7.1(2) shall be permitted to be used for compliance with Section 722.7.1.

**602.4.2.2.2 Protected area.** Interior faces of mass timber elements, including the inside face of exterior mass timber walls and mass timber roofs, shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.2.2.1.

**Exceptions:** Unprotected portions of mass timber ceilings and walls complying with Section 602.4.2.2.4 and the following:

1. Unprotected portions of mass timber ceilings and walls complying with one of the following:
  - 1.1. Unprotected portions of mass timber ceilings, including attached beams, shall be permitted and shall be limited to an area equal to 20 percent of the floor area in any dwelling unit or fire area.
  - 1.2. Unprotected portions of mass timber walls, including attached columns, shall be permitted and shall be limited to an area equal to 40 percent of the floor area in any dwelling unit or fire area.
  - 1.3. Unprotected portions of both walls and ceilings of mass timber, including attached columns and beams, in any dwelling unit or fire area shall be permitted in accordance with Section 602.4.2.2.3.
2. Mass timber columns and beams that are not an integral portion of walls or ceilings, respectively, shall be permitted to be unprotected without restriction of either aggregate area or separation from one another.

**602.4.2.2.3 Mixed unprotected areas.** In each dwelling unit or fire area, where both portions of ceilings and portions of walls are unprotected, the total allowable unprotected area shall be determined in accordance with Equation 6-1.

$$(U_{tc}/U_{ac}) + (U_{tw}/U_{aw}) \leq 1 \quad (\text{Equation 6-1})$$

where:

$U_{tc}$  = Total unprotected mass timber ceiling areas.

$U_{ac}$  = Allowable unprotected mass timber ceiling area conforming to Exception 1.1 of Section 602.4.2.2.2.

## TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

$U_{tw}$  = Total unprotected mass timber wall areas.

$U_{aw}$  = Allowable unprotected mass timber wall area conforming to Exception 1.2 of Section 602.4.2.2.2.

**602.4.2.2.4 Separation distance between unprotected mass timber elements.** In each dwelling unit or fire area, unprotected portions of mass timber walls and ceilings shall be not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) from unprotected portions of other walls and ceilings, measured horizontally along the ceiling and from other unprotected portions of walls measured horizontally along the floor.

**602.4.2.3 Floors.** The floor assembly shall contain a noncombustible material not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in thickness above the mass timber. Floor finishes in accordance with Section 804 shall be permitted on top of the noncombustible material. The underside of floor assemblies shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2.

**602.4.2.4 Roofs.** The interior surfaces of roof assemblies shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.2.2 except, in nonoccupiable spaces, they shall be treated as a concealed space with no portion left unprotected. Roof coverings in accordance with Chapter 15 shall be permitted on the outside surface of the roof assembly.

**602.4.2.5 Concealed spaces.** Concealed spaces shall not contain combustibles other than electrical, mechanical, fire protection, or plumbing materials and equipment permitted in plenums in accordance with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*, and shall comply with all applicable provisions of Section 718. Combustible construction forming concealed spaces shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2.

**602.4.2.6 Shafts.** Shafts shall be permitted in accordance with Sections 713 and 718. Both the shaft side and room side of mass timber elements shall be protected in accordance with Section 602.4.1.2.

**602.4.3 Type IV-C.** Building elements in Type IV-C construction shall be protected in accordance with Sections 602.4.3.1 through 602.4.3.6. The required fire-resistance rating of building elements shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2.

**602.4.3.1 Exterior protection.** The exterior side of walls of combustible construction shall be protected with noncombustible protection with a minimum assigned time of 40 minutes, as determined in Table 722.7.1(1). Components of the exterior wall covering shall be of noncombustible material except water-resistant barriers having a peak heat release rate of less than 150 kW/m<sup>2</sup>, a total heat release of less than 20 MJ/m<sup>2</sup> and an effective heat of combustion of less than 18 MJ/kg as determined in accordance with ASTM E1354 and having a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The ASTM

E1354 test shall be conducted on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m<sup>2</sup>.

**602.4.3.2 Interior protection.** Mass timber elements are permitted to be unprotected.

**602.4.3.3 Floors.** Floor finishes in accordance with Section 804 shall be permitted on top of the floor construction.

**602.4.3.4 Roof coverings.** Roof coverings in accordance with Chapter 15 shall be permitted on the outside surface of the roof assembly.

**602.4.3.5 Concealed spaces.** Concealed spaces shall not contain combustibles other than electrical, mechanical, fire protection, or plumbing materials and equipment permitted in plenums in accordance with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*, and shall comply with all applicable provisions of Section 718. Combustible construction forming concealed spaces shall be protected with noncombustible protection with a minimum assigned time of 40 minutes, as specified in Table 722.7.1(1).

**602.4.3.6 Shafts.** Shafts shall be permitted in accordance with Sections 713 and 718. Shafts and elevator hoistway and interior exit stairway enclosures shall be protected with noncombustible protection with a minimum assigned time of 40 minutes, as specified in Table 722.7.1(1), on both the inside of the shaft and the outside of the shaft.

**602.4.4 Type IV-HT.** Type IV-HT (Heavy Timber) construction is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of solid wood, laminated heavy timber or structural composite lumber (SCL), without concealed spaces or with concealed spaces complying with Section 602.4.4.3. The minimum dimensions for permitted materials including solid timber, glued-laminated timber, SCL and cross-laminated timber (CLT) and the details of Type IV construction shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 2304.11. Exterior walls complying with Section 602.4.4.1 or 602.4.4.2 shall be permitted. Interior walls and partitions not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rated or heavy timber conforming with Section 2304.11.2.2 shall be permitted.

**602.4.4.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood in exterior walls.** Fire-retardant-treated wood framing and sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less.

**602.4.4.2 Cross-laminated timber in exterior walls.** *Cross-laminated timber (CLT)* not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness complying with Section 2303.1.4 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less. Heavy timber structural members appurtenant to the *CLT exterior wall* shall meet the requirements of Table 2304.11 and be fire-resistance rated as required for the exterior wall. The exterior surface of the cross-laminated timber and

## TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

heavy timber elements shall be protected by one the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 and not less than  $\frac{15}{32}$  inch (12 mm) thick.
2. Gypsum board not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) thick.
3. A noncombustible material.

**602.4.4.3 Concealed spaces.** Concealed spaces shall not contain combustible materials other than building elements and electrical, mechanical, fire protection, or plumbing materials and equipment permitted in plenums in accordance with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*. Concealed spaces shall comply with applicable provisions of Section 718. Concealed spaces shall be protected in accordance with one or more of the following:

1. The building shall be sprinklered throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and automatic sprinklers shall also be provided in the concealed space.
2. The concealed space shall be completely filled with noncombustible insulation.
3. Surfaces within the concealed space shall be fully sheathed with not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch Type X gypsum board.

**Exception:** Concealed spaces within interior walls and partitions with a 1-hour or greater fire-resistance rating complying with Section 2304.11.2.2 shall not require additional protection.

**602.4.4.4 Exterior structural members.** Where a horizontal separation of 20 feet (6096 mm) or more is provided, wood columns and arches conforming to heavy timber sizes complying with Section 2304.11 shall be permitted to be used externally.

**602.5 Type V.** Type V construction is that type of construction in which the structural elements, exterior walls and interior walls are of any materials permitted by this code.

### SECTION 603 COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL IN TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION

**603.1 Allowable materials.** Combustible materials shall be permitted in buildings of Type I or II construction in the following applications and in accordance with Sections 603.1.1 through 603.1.3:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted in:
  - 1.1. Nonbearing partitions where the required fire-resistance rating is 2 hours or less except in shaft enclosures within Group I-2 occupancies and ambulatory care facilities.
  - 1.2. Nonbearing exterior walls where fire-resistance-rated construction is not required.

1.3. Roof construction, including girders, trusses, framing and decking.

#### Exceptions:

1. In buildings of Type IA construction exceeding two stories above grade plane, fire-retardant-treated wood is not permitted in roof construction where the vertical distance from the upper floor to the roof is less than 20 feet (6096 mm).
2. Group I-2, roof construction containing fire-retardant-treated wood shall be covered by not less than a Class A roof covering or roof assembly, and the roof assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating where required by the construction type.
3. Balconies, porches, decks and exterior stairways not used as required exits on buildings three stories or less above grade plane.
4. Thermal and acoustical insulation, other than foam plastics, having a flame spread index of not more than 25.

#### Exceptions:

1. Insulation placed between two layers of non-combustible materials without an intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a flame spread index of not more than 100.
2. Insulation installed between a finished floor and solid decking without intervening airspace shall be allowed to have a flame spread index of not more than 200.
3. Foam plastics in accordance with Chapter 26.
4. Roof coverings that have an A, B or C classification.
5. Interior floor finish and floor covering materials installed in accordance with Section 804.
6. Millwork such as doors, door frames, window sashes and frames.
7. Interior wall and ceiling finishes installed in accordance with Section 803.
8. Trim installed in accordance with Section 806.
9. Where not installed greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above grade, show windows, nailing or furring strips and wooden bulkheads below show windows, including their frames, aprons and show cases.
10. Finish flooring installed in accordance with Section 805.
11. Partitions dividing portions of stores, offices or similar places occupied by one tenant only and that do not establish a corridor serving an occupant load of 30 or more shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood, 1-hour fire-resistance-rated con-

## TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION

struction or of wood panels or similar light construction up to 6 feet (1829 mm) in height.

12. Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.2 and 410.3, respectively.
13. Combustible exterior wall coverings, balconies and similar projections and bay or oriel windows in accordance with Chapter 14 and Section 705.2.3.1.
14. Blocking such as for handrails, millwork, cabinets and window and door frames.
15. Light-transmitting plastics as permitted by Chapter 26.
16. Mastics and caulking materials applied to provide flexible seals between components of exterior wall construction.
17. Exterior plastic veneer installed in accordance with Section 2605.2.
18. Nailing or furring strips as permitted by Section 803.15.
19. Heavy timber as permitted by Note c to Table 601 and Sections 602.4.4.4 and 705.2.3.1.
20. Aggregates, component materials and admixtures as permitted by Section 703.2.1.2.
21. Sprayed fire-resistant materials and intumescent and mastic fire-resistant coatings, determined on the basis of fire resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2 and installed in accordance with Sections 1705.15 and 1705.16, respectively.
22. Materials used to protect penetrations in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 714.
23. Materials used to protect joints in fire-resistance-rated assemblies in accordance with Section 715.
24. Materials allowed in the concealed spaces of buildings of Types I and II construction in accordance with Section 718.5.
25. Materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*.
26. Wall construction of freezers and coolers of less than 1,000 square feet ( $92.9\text{ m}^2$ ), in size, lined on both sides with noncombustible materials and the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
- | 27. Wood nailers for parapet flashing and roof cant.

**603.1 Ducts.** The use of nonmetallic ducts shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**603.1.2 Piping.** The use of combustible piping materials shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Plumbing Code*.

**603.1.3 Electrical.** The use of electrical wiring methods with combustible insulation, tubing, raceways and related components shall be permitted where installed in accordance with the limitations of this code and the *California Electrical Code*.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 7 – FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X																
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
704.6.1				X																		
705.2.3.2				X																		
705.5				X																		
705.12				X																		
Table 706.4				X																		
Table 707.3.10				X																		
707.4				X																		
708.1				X																		
708.3				X																		
709.3				X																		
709.5				X																		
709.5.1				X																		
710.2				X																		
710.8				X																		
712.1.9				X																		
716.2.2.1				X																		
716.2.6				X																		
716.2.6.6				X																		
716.2.9.4				X																		
717.5.2				X																		
717.5.4				X																		
717.5.4.1				X																		
717.5.5				X																		
717.6.1				X																		
721.2					X	X																
721.2.1					X	X																

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



## CHAPTER 7

# FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 7 provides detailed requirements for fire-resistance-rated construction, including structural members, walls, partitions and horizontal assemblies. Other portions of the code describe where certain fire-resistance-rated elements are required. This chapter specifies how these elements are constructed, how openings in walls and partitions are protected and how penetrations of such elements are protected.

### **SECTION 701 GENERAL**

**701.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, systems and assemblies used for structural fire resistance and fire-resistance-rated construction separation of adjacent spaces to safeguard against the spread of fire and smoke within a building and the spread of fire to or from buildings.

### **SECTION 702 MULTIPLE-USE FIRE ASSEMBLIES**

**702.1 Multiple-use fire assemblies.** Fire assemblies that serve multiple purposes in a building shall comply with all of the requirements that are applicable for each of the individual fire assemblies.

### **SECTION 703 FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS AND FIRE TESTS**

**703.1 Scope.** Materials prescribed herein for fire resistance shall conform to the requirements of this chapter.

**703.2 Fire resistance.** The fire-resistance rating of building elements, components or assemblies shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2.1 or 703.2.2 without the use of automatic sprinklers or any other fire suppression system being incorporated, or in accordance with Section 703.2.3.

**703.2.1 Tested assemblies.** A fire-resistance rating of building elements, components or assemblies shall be determined by the test procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263. The fire-resistance rating of penetrations and fire-resistant joint systems shall be determined in accordance with Sections 714 and 715, respectively.

**703.2.1.1 Nonsymmetrical wall construction.** Interior walls and partitions of nonsymmetrical construction shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned fire-resistance rating shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests conducted in compliance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Where evidence is furnished to show that the wall was tested with the least fire-resistant side exposed to the furnace, subject to acceptance of the building official, the wall need not be subjected to tests from the opposite side (see Section 705.5 for exterior walls).

**703.2.1.2 Combustible components.** Combustible aggregates are permitted in gypsum and Portland cement concrete mixtures for fire-resistance-rated construction. Any component material or admixture is permitted in assemblies if the resulting tested assembly meets the fire-resistance test requirements of this code.

**703.2.1.3 Restrained classification.** Fire-resistance-rated assemblies tested under ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not be considered to be restrained unless evidence satisfactory to the building official is furnished by the registered design professional showing that the construction qualifies for a restrained classification in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263. Restrained construction shall be identified on the construction documents.

**703.2.1.4 Supplemental features.** Where materials, systems or devices that have not been tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly are incorporated into the building element, component or assembly, sufficient data shall be made available to the building official to show that the required fire-resistance rating is not reduced.

**703.2.1.5 Exterior bearing walls.** In determining the fire-resistance rating of exterior bearing walls, compliance with the ASTM E119 or UL 263 criteria for unexposed surface temperature rise and ignition of cotton waste due to passage of flame or gases is required only for a period of time corresponding to the required fire-resistance rating of an exterior nonbearing wall with the same fire separation distance, and in a building of the same group. Where the fire-resistance rating determined in accordance with this exception exceeds the fire-resistance rating determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, the fire exposure time period, water pressure and application duration criteria for the hose stream test of ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be based on the fire-resistance rating determined in accordance with this section.

**703.2.2 Analytical methods.** The fire resistance of building elements, components or assemblies established by an analytical method shall be by any of the methods listed in this section, based on the fire exposure and acceptance criteria specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263.

1. Fire-resistance designs documented in approved sources.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

2. Prescriptive designs of fire-resistance-rated building elements, components or assemblies as prescribed in Section 721.
3. Calculations in accordance with Section 722.
4. Engineering analysis based on a comparison of building element, component or assemblies designs having fire-resistance ratings as determined by the test procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. Fire-resistance designs certified by an approved agency.

**703.2.3 Approved alternate method.** The fire resistance of building elements, components or assemblies not complying with Section 703.2.1 or 703.2.2 shall be permitted to be established by an alternative protection method in accordance with Section 104.11.

**703.3 Noncombustibility tests.** The tests indicated in Section 703.3.1 shall serve as criteria for acceptance of building materials as set forth in Sections 602.2, 602.3 and 602.4 in Types I, II, III and IV construction. The term “noncombustible” does not apply to the flame spread characteristics of interior finish or trim materials. A material shall not be classified as a noncombustible building construction material if it is subject to an increase in combustibility or flame spread beyond the limitations herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions.

**703.3.1 Noncombustible materials.** Materials required to be noncombustible shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E136. Alternately, materials required to be noncombustible shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E2652 using the acceptance criteria prescribed by ASTM E136.

**Exception:** Materials having a structural base of noncombustible material as determined in accordance with ASTM E136, or with ASTM E2652 using the acceptance criteria prescribed by ASTM E136, with a surfacing of not more than 0.125 inch (3.18 mm) in thickness having a flame spread index not greater than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 shall be acceptable as noncombustible.

**703.4 Fire-resistance-rated glazing.** Fire-resistance-rated glazing, when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and complying with the requirements of Section 707, shall be permitted. Fire-resistance-rated glazing shall bear a label marked in accordance with Table 716.1(1) issued by an agency and shall be permanently identified on the glazing.

**703.5 Marking and identification.** Where there is an accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling or attic space, fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and smoke partitions or any other wall required to have protected openings or penetrations shall be effectively and permanently identified with signs or stenciling in the concealed space. Such identification shall:

1. Be located within 15 feet (4572 mm) of the end of each wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet (9144 mm) measured horizontally along the wall or partition.

2. Include lettering not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height with a minimum  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) stroke in a contrasting color incorporating the suggested wording, “FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER—PROTECT ALL OPENINGS,” or other wording.

**703.6 Determination of noncombustible protection time contribution.** The time, in minutes, contributed to the fire-resistance rating by the noncombustible protection of mass timber building elements, components, or assemblies, shall be established through a comparison of assemblies tested using procedures set forth in ASTM E119 or UL 263. The test assemblies shall be identical in construction, loading and materials, other than the noncombustible protection. The two test assemblies shall be tested to the same criteria of structural failure with the following conditions:

1. Test Assembly 1 shall be without protection.
2. Test Assembly 2 shall include the representative non-combustible protection. The protection shall be fully defined in terms of configuration details, attachment details, joint sealing details, accessories and all other relevant details.

The noncombustible protection time contribution shall be determined by subtracting the fire-resistance time, in minutes, of Test Assembly 1 from the fire-resistance time, in minutes, of Test Assembly 2.

**703.7 Sealing of adjacent mass timber elements.** In buildings of Types IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction, sealant or adhesive shall be provided to resist the passage of air in the following locations:

1. At abutting edges and intersections of mass timber building elements required to be fire-resistance rated.
2. At abutting intersections of mass timber building elements and building elements of other materials where both are required to be fire-resistance rated.

Sealants shall meet the requirements of ASTM C920. Adhesives shall meet the requirements of ASTM D3498.

**Exception:** Sealants or adhesives need not be provided where they are not a required component of a tested fire-resistance-rated assembly.

## SECTION 704 FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

**704.1 Requirements.** The fire-resistance ratings of structural members and assemblies shall comply with this section and the requirements for the type of construction as specified in Table 601. The fire-resistance ratings shall be not less than the ratings required for the fire-resistance-rated assemblies supported by the structural members.

**Exception:** Fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and horizontal assemblies as provided in Sections 707.5, 708.4, 709.4 and 711.2, respectively.

**704.2 Column protection.** Where columns are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating, the entire column shall be provided individual encasement protection

by protecting it on all sides for the full column height, including connections to other structural members, with materials having the required fire-resistance rating. Where the column extends through a ceiling, the encasement protection shall be continuous from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below through the ceiling space to the top of the column.

**Exception:** Columns that meet the limitations of Section 704.4.1.

**704.3 Protection of the primary structural frame other than columns.** Members of the primary structural frame other than columns that are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating and support more than two floors or one floor and roof, or support a load-bearing wall or a nonload-bearing wall more than two stories high, shall be provided individual encasement protection by protecting them on all sides for the full length, including connections to other structural members, with materials having the required fire-resistance rating.

**Exception:** Individual encasement protection on all sides shall be permitted on all exposed sides provided that the extent of protection is in accordance with the required fire-resistance rating, as determined in Section 703.

**704.4 Protection of secondary structural members.** Secondary structural members that are required to have protection to achieve a fire-resistance rating shall be protected by individual encasement protection.

**704.4.1 Light-frame construction.** Studs, columns and boundary elements that are integral elements in walls of light-frame construction and are located entirely between the top and bottom plates or tracks shall be permitted to have required fire-resistance ratings provided by the membrane protection provided for the wall.

**704.4.2 Horizontal assemblies.** Horizontal assemblies are permitted to be protected with a membrane or ceiling where the membrane or ceiling provides the required fire-resistance rating and is installed in accordance with Section 711.

**704.5 Truss protection.** The required thickness and construction of fire-resistance-rated assemblies enclosing trusses shall be based on the results of full-scale tests or combinations of tests on truss components or on approved calculations based on such tests that satisfactorily demonstrate that the assembly has the required fire resistance.

**704.6 Attachments to structural members.** The edges of lugs, brackets, rivets and bolt heads attached to structural members shall be permitted to extend to within 1 inch (25 mm) of the surface of the fire protection.

**704.6.1 Secondary attachments to structural members.** Where primary and secondary structural steel members require fire protection, *any additional structural steel members having direct connection to the primary structural frame or secondary structural members* shall be protected with the same fire-resistive material and thickness as required for the structural member. The protection

shall extend away from the structural member a distance of not less than 12 inches (305 mm), or shall be applied to the entire length where the attachment is less than 12 inches (305 mm) long. Where an attachment is hollow and the ends are open, the fire-resistive material and thickness shall be applied to both exterior and interior of the hollow steel attachment.

**704.7 Reinforcing.** Thickness of protection for concrete or masonry reinforcement shall be measured to the outside of the reinforcement except that stirrups and spiral reinforcement ties are permitted to project not more than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) into the protection.

**704.8 Embedments and enclosures.** Pipes, wires, conduits, ducts or other service facilities shall not be embedded in the required fire protective covering of a structural member that is required to be individually encased.

**704.9 Impact protection.** Where the fire protective covering of a structural member is subject to impact damage from moving vehicles, the handling of merchandise or other activity, the fire protective covering shall be protected by corner guards or by a substantial jacket of metal or other noncombustible material to a height adequate to provide full protection, but not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the finished floor.

**Exception:** Corner protection is not required on concrete columns in parking garages.

**704.10 Exterior structural members.** Load-bearing structural members located within the exterior walls or on the outside of a building or structure shall be provided with the highest fire-resistance rating as determined in accordance with the following:

1. As required by Table 601 for the type of building element based on the type of construction of the building.
2. As required by Table 601 for exterior bearing walls based on the type of construction.
3. As required by Table 705.5 for exterior walls based on the fire separation distance.

**704.11 Bottom flange protection.** Fire protection is not required at the bottom flange of lintels, shelf angles and plates, spanning not more than 6 feet 4 inches (1931 mm) whether part of the primary structural frame or not, and from the bottom flange of lintels, shelf angles and plates not part of the structural frame, regardless of span.

**704.12 Seismic isolation systems.** Fire-resistance ratings for the isolation system shall meet the fire-resistance rating required for the columns, walls or other structural elements in which the isolation system is installed in accordance with Table 601. Isolation systems required to have a fire-resistance rating shall be protected with approved materials or construction assemblies designed to provide the same degree of fire resistance as the structural element in which the system is installed when tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 (see Section 703.2).

Such isolation system protection applied to isolator units shall be capable of retarding the transfer of heat to the isolator

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

unit in such a manner that the required gravity load-carrying capacity of the isolator unit will not be impaired after exposure to the standard time-temperature curve fire test prescribed in ASTM E119 or UL 263 for a duration not less than that required for the fire-resistance rating of the structure element in which the system is installed.

Such isolation system protection applied to isolator units shall be suitably designed and securely installed so as not to dislodge, loosen, sustain damage or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate the seismic movements for which the isolator unit is designed and to maintain its integrity for the purpose of providing the required fire-resistance protection.

**704.13 Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM).** Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM) shall comply with Sections 704.13.1 through 704.13.5.

**704.13.1 Fire-resistance rating.** The application of SFRM shall be consistent with the fire-resistance rating and the listing, including, but not limited to, minimum thickness and dry density of the applied SFRM, method of application, substrate surface conditions and the use of bonding adhesives, sealants, reinforcing or other materials.

**704.13.2 Manufacturer's installation instructions.** The application of SFRM shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The instructions shall include, but are not limited to, substrate temperatures and surface conditions and SFRM handling, storage, mixing, conveyance, method of application, curing and ventilation.

**704.13.3 Substrate condition.** The SFRM shall be applied to a substrate in compliance with Sections 704.13.3.1 and 704.13.3.2.

**704.13.3.1 Surface conditions.** Substrates to receive SFRM shall be free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, loose scale and any other condition that prevents adhesion. The substrates shall be free of primers, paints and encapsulants other than those fire tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing agency. Primed, painted or encapsulated steel shall be allowed, provided that testing has demonstrated that required adhesion is maintained.

**704.13.3.2 Primers, paints and encapsulants.** Where the SFRM is to be applied over primers, paints or encapsulants other than those specified in the listing, the material shall be field tested in accordance with ASTM E736. Where testing of the SFRM with primers, paints or encapsulants demonstrates that required adhesion is maintained, SFRM shall be permitted to be applied to primed, painted or encapsulated wide flange steel shapes in accordance with the following conditions:

1. The beam flange width does not exceed 12 inches (305 mm); or
2. The column flange width does not exceed 16 inches (400 mm); or
3. The beam or column web depth does not exceed 16 inches (400 mm).

4. The average and minimum bond strength values shall be determined based on not fewer than five bond tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E736. Bond tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E736 shall indicate an average bond strength of not less than 80 percent and an individual bond strength of not less than 50 percent, when compared to the bond strength of the SFRM as applied to clean, uncoated  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch-thick (3.2 mm) steel plate.

**704.13.4 Temperature.** A minimum ambient and substrate temperature of 40°F (4.44°C) shall be maintained during and for not fewer than 24 hours after the application of the SFRM, unless the manufacturer's instructions allow otherwise.

**704.13.5 Finished condition.** The finished condition of SFRM applied to structural members or assemblies shall not, upon complete drying or curing, exhibit cracks, voids, spalls, delamination or any exposure of the substrate. Surface irregularities of SFRM shall be deemed acceptable.

## SECTION 705 EXTERIOR WALLS

**705.1 General.** Exterior walls shall comply with this section.

**705.2 Projections.** Cornices, eave overhangs, exterior balconies and similar projections extending beyond the exterior wall shall conform to the requirements of this section and Section 1405. Exterior egress balconies and exterior exit stairways and ramps shall comply with Sections 1021 and 1027, respectively. Projections shall not extend any closer to the line used to determine the fire separation distance than shown in Table 705.2.

**Exception:** Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with this section for projections between the buildings.

TABLE 705.2  
MINIMUM DISTANCE OF PROJECTION

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (FSD) (feet)	MINIMUM DISTANCE FROM LINE USED TO DETERMINE FSD
0 to less than 2	Projections not permitted
2 to less than 3	24 inches
3 to less than 5	Two-thirds of FSD
5 or greater	40 inches

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**705.2.1 Types I and II construction.** Projections from walls of Type I or II construction shall be of noncombustible materials or combustible materials as allowed by Sections 705.2.3.1 and 705.2.4.

**705.2.2 Type III, IV or V construction.** Projections from walls of Type III, IV or V construction shall be of any approved material.

**705.2.3 Projection protection.** Projections extending to within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the line used to determine the fire separation distance shall be one of the following:

1. Noncombustible materials.
2. Combustible materials of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
3. Heavy timber construction complying with Section 2304.11.
4. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
5. As permitted by Section 705.2.3.1.

**Exception:** Type VB construction shall be allowed for combustible projections in Group R-3 and U occupancies with a fire separation distance greater than or equal to 5 feet (1524 mm).

**705.2.3.1 Balconies and similar projections.** Balconies and similar projections of combustible construction other than fire-retardant-treated wood shall be fire-resistance rated where required by Table 601 for floor construction or shall be of heavy timber construction in accordance with Section 2304.11. The aggregate length of the projections shall not exceed 50 percent of the building's perimeter on each floor.

**Exceptions:**

1. On buildings of Types I and II construction, three stories or less above grade plane, fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted for balconies, porches, decks and exterior stairways not used as required exits.
2. Untreated wood and plastic composites that comply with ASTM D7032 and Section 2612 are permitted for pickets, rails and similar guard components that are limited to 42 inches (1067 mm) in height.
3. Balconies and similar projections on buildings of Types III, IV and V construction shall be permitted to be of Type V construction and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where sprinkler protection is extended to these areas.
4. Where sprinkler protection is extended to the balcony areas, the aggregate length of the balcony on each floor shall not be limited.

**705.2.3.2 Vents. [SFM]** Vents required by Section 2304.12.2.5 in fire-rated exterior balconies or elevated walkway surfaces shall be designed where the voids created at the intersection of the exterior curtain wall and the balcony floor are sealed with an approved material or system to retard the interior spread of flame, hot gases and products of combustion. Rated assemblies shall comply with Section 715. Ventilation openings shall comply with the fire sprinkler protection as required by Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the reference standard.

**705.2.4 Bay and oriel windows.** Bay and oriel windows constructed of combustible materials shall conform to the

type of construction required for the building to which they are attached.

**Exception:** Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted on buildings three stories or less above grade plane of Type I, II, III or IV construction.

**705.3 Buildings on the same lot.** For the purposes of determining the required wall and opening protection, projections and roof-covering requirements, buildings on the same lot shall be assumed to have an imaginary line between them.

Where a new building is to be erected on the same lot as an existing building, the location of the assumed imaginary line with relation to the existing building shall be such that the exterior wall and opening protection of the existing building meet the criteria as set forth in Sections 705.5 and 705.8.

**Exceptions:**

1. Two or more buildings on the same lot shall be either regulated as separate buildings or shall be considered as portions of one building if the aggregate area of such buildings is within the limits specified in Chapter 5 for a single building. Where the buildings contain different occupancy groups or are of different types of construction, the area shall be that allowed for the most restrictive occupancy or construction.
2. Where an S-2 parking garage of Construction Type I or IIA is erected on the same lot as a Group R-2 building, and there is no fire separation distance between these buildings, then the adjoining exterior walls between the buildings are permitted to have occupant use openings in accordance with Section 706.8. However, opening protectives in such openings shall only be required in the exterior wall of the S-2 parking garage, not in the exterior wall openings in the R-2 building, and these opening protectives in the exterior wall of the S-2 parking garage shall be not less than 1½-hour fire protection rating.

**705.4 Materials.** Exterior walls shall be of materials permitted by the building's type of construction.

**705.5 Fire-resistance ratings.** For other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 601, based on the type of construction, and Table 705.5, based on the fire separation distance. The required fire-resistance rating of exterior walls with a fire separation distance of greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be rated for exposure to fire from the inside. The required fire-resistance rating of exterior walls with a fire separation distance of less than or equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be rated for exposure to fire from both sides.

For Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Tables 601 and 602 and this section. The required fire-resistance rating of exterior walls shall be rated for exposure to fire from both sides.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**705.6 Structural stability.** Exterior walls shall extend to the height required by Section 705.11. Interior structural elements that brace the exterior wall but that are not located within the plane of the exterior wall shall have the minimum fire-resistance rating required in Table 601 for that structural element. Structural elements that brace the exterior wall but are located outside of the exterior wall or within the plane of the exterior wall shall have the minimum fire-resistance rating required in Table 601 and Table 705.5 for the exterior wall.

**705.7 Unexposed surface temperature.** Where protected openings are not limited by Section 705.8, the limitation on the rise of temperature on the unexposed surface of exterior walls as required by ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply. Where protected openings are limited by Section 705.8, the limitation on the rise of temperature on the unexposed surface of exterior walls as required by ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply provided that a correction is made for radiation from the unexposed exterior wall surface in accordance with the following formula:

$$A_e = A + (A_f \times F_{eo}) \quad (\text{Equation 7-1})$$

where:

$A_e$  = Equivalent area of protected openings.

$A$  = Actual area of protected openings.

$A_f$  = Area of exterior wall surface in the story under consideration exclusive of openings, on which the temperature limitations of ASTM E119 or UL 263 for walls are exceeded.

$F_{eo}$  = An “equivalent opening factor” derived from Figure 705.7 based on the average temperature of the unexposed wall surface and the fire-resistance rating of the wall.

TABLE 705.5  
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTERIOR WALLS BASED ON FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE<sup>a, d, g</sup>

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE = X (feet)	TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION	OCCUPANCY GROUP H <sup>e, f</sup> , L	OCCUPANCY GROUP F-1, M, S-1 <sup>f</sup>	OCCUPANCY GROUP A, B, E, F-2, I, R <sup>i</sup> , S-2, U <sup>b</sup>
X < 5 <sup>b</sup>	All	3	2	1
5 ≤ X < 10	IA, IVA	3	2	1
	Others	2	1	1
10 ≤ X < 30	IA, IB, IVA, IVB	2	1	1 <sup>c</sup>
	IIB, VB	1	0	0
	Others	1	1	1 <sup>c</sup>
X ≥ 30	All	0	0	0

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Load-bearing exterior walls shall also comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements of Table 601.
- b. See Section 706.1.1 for party walls.
- c. Open parking garages complying with Section 406 shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
- d. The fire-resistance rating of an exterior wall is determined based upon the fire separation distance of the exterior wall and the story in which the wall is located.
- e. For special requirements for Group H occupancies, see Section 415.6.
- f. For special requirements for Group S aircraft hangars, see Section 412.3.1.
- g. Where Table 705.8 permits nonbearing exterior walls with unlimited area of unprotected openings, the required fire-resistance rating for the exterior walls is 0 hours.
- h. For a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport, the exterior wall shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1523 mm) or greater or where equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3 the fire-resistance rating shall not be required where the fire separation distance is 3 feet or greater.
- i. For a Group R-3 building of Type II-B or Type V-B construction, the exterior wall shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1523 mm) or greater or where equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3 the fire-resistance rating shall not be required where the fire separation distance is 3 feet or greater.

sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the exterior openings are protected by a water curtain using automatic sprinklers approved for that use.

**705.8.3 Unprotected openings.** Where unprotected openings are permitted, windows and doors shall be constructed of any approved materials. Glazing shall conform to the requirements of Chapters 24 and 26.

**705.8.4 Mixed openings.** Where both unprotected and protected openings are located in the exterior wall in any story of a building, the total area of openings shall be determined in accordance with the following:

$$(A_p/a_p) + (A_u/a_u) \leq 1 \quad (\text{Equation 7-2})$$

$A_p$  = Actual area of protected openings, or the equivalent area of protected openings,  $A_e$  (see Section 705.7).

$a_p$  = Allowable area of protected openings.

$A_u$  = Actual area of unprotected openings.

$a_u$  = allowable area of unprotected openings.

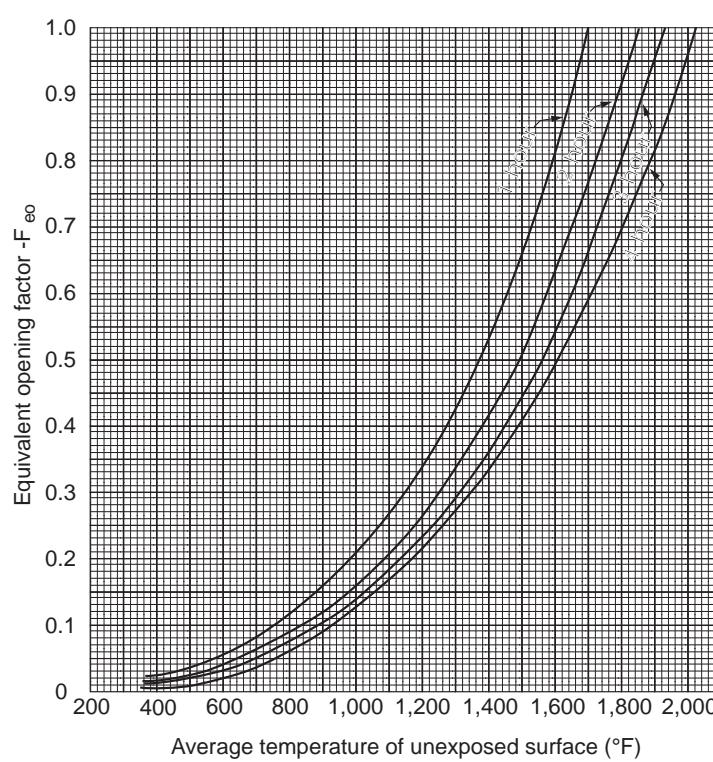
**705.8.5 Vertical separation of openings.** Openings in exterior walls in adjacent stories shall be separated vertically to protect against fire spread on the exterior of the buildings where the openings are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of each other horizontally and the opening in the lower story is not a protected opening with a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour. Such openings shall

be separated vertically not less than 3 feet (914 mm) by spandrel girders, exterior walls or other similar assemblies that have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from both sides, or by flame barriers that extend horizontally not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall. Flame barriers shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. The unexposed surface temperature limitations specified in ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not apply to the flame barriers unless otherwise required by the provisions of this code.

**Exceptions:**

1. This section shall not apply to buildings that are three stories or less above grade plane.
2. This section shall not apply to buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. Open parking garages.

**705.8.6 Vertical exposure.** For buildings on the same lot, opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour shall be provided in every opening that is less than 15 feet (4572 mm) vertically above the roof of an adjacent building or structure based on assuming an imaginary line between them. The opening protectives are required where the fire separation distances from the



For SI:  $C = [(^{\circ}F) - 32] / 1.8$ .

**FIGURE 705.7  
EQUIVALENT OPENING FACTOR**

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

imaginary line to each building or structure are less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

### Exceptions:

1. Opening protectives are not required where the roof assembly of the adjacent building or structure has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the exterior wall facing the imaginary

line and the entire length and span of the supporting elements for the fire-resistance-rated roof assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

2. Buildings on the same lot and considered as portions of one building in accordance with Section 705.3 are not required to comply with Section 705.8.6.

**TABLE 705.8  
MAXIMUM AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL OPENINGS BASED ON  
FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE AND DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	DEGREE OF OPENING PROTECTION	ALLOWABLE AREA <sup>a</sup>
0 to less than 3 <sup>b, c, k</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted <sup>k</sup>
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	Not Permitted <sup>k</sup>
	Protected (P)	Not Permitted <sup>k</sup>
3 to less than 5 <sup>d, e</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	Not Permitted
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	15%
	Protected (P)	15%
5 to less than 10 <sup>e, f, j</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	10% <sup>h</sup>
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	25%
	Protected (P)	25%
10 to less than 15 <sup>e, f, g, j</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	15% <sup>h</sup>
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	45%
	Protected (P)	45%
15 to less than 20 <sup>f, g, j</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	25%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	75%
	Protected (P)	75%
20 to less than 25 <sup>f, g, j</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	45%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
25 to less than 30 <sup>f, g, j</sup>	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	70%
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit
30 or greater	Unprotected, Nonsprinklered (UP, NS)	No Limit
	Unprotected, Sprinklered (UP, S) <sup>i</sup>	No Limit
	Protected (P)	No Limit

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

UP, NS = Unprotected openings in buildings not equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

UP, S = Unprotected openings in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

P = Openings protected with an opening protective assembly in accordance with Section 705.8.2.

- Values indicated are the percentage of the area of the exterior wall, per story.
- For the requirements for fire walls of buildings with differing heights, see Section 706.6.1.
- For openings in a fire wall for buildings on the same lot, see Section 706.8.
- The maximum percentage of unprotected and protected openings shall be 25 percent for Group R-3 occupancies.
- Unprotected openings shall not be permitted for openings with a fire separation distance of less than 15 feet for Group H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
- The area of unprotected and protected openings shall not be limited for Group R-3 occupancies, with a fire separation distance of 5 feet or greater.
- The area of openings in an open parking structure with a fire separation distance of 10 feet or greater shall not be limited.
- Includes buildings accessory to Group R-3.
- Not applicable to Group H-1, H-2 and H-3 occupancies.
- The area of openings in a building containing only a Group U occupancy private garage or carport with a fire separation distance of 5 feet or greater shall not be limited.
- For openings between S-2 parking garage and Group R-2 building, see Section 705.3, Exception 2.

**705.9 Joints.** Joints made in or between exterior walls required by this section to have a fire-resistance rating shall comply with Section 715.

**Exception:** Joints in exterior walls that are permitted to have unprotected openings.

**705.9.1 Voids.** The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

**705.10 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Penetrations by air ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings shall comply with Section 717.

**Exception:** Foundation vents installed in accordance with this code are permitted.

**705.11 Parapets.** Parapets shall be provided on exterior walls of buildings.

**Exceptions:** A parapet need not be provided on an exterior wall where any of the following conditions exist:

1. The wall is not required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 705.5 because of fire separation distance.
2. The building has an area of not more than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) on any floor.
3. Walls that terminate at roofs of not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or where the roof, including the deck or slab and supporting construction, is constructed entirely of noncombustible materials.
4. One-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior walls that terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided that:
  - 4.1. Where the roof/ceiling framing elements are parallel to the walls, such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a width of 4 feet (1220 mm) for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.
  - 4.2. Where roof/ceiling framing elements are not parallel to the wall, the entire span of such framing and elements supporting such framing shall not be of less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
  - 4.3. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior wall for Groups R and U and 10 feet (3048 mm) for other occupancies, measured from the interior side of the wall.
  - 4.4. The entire building shall be provided with not less than a Class B roof covering.
5. In Groups R-2 and R-3 where the entire building is provided with a Class C roof covering, the exterior wall shall be permitted to terminate at the underside

of the roof sheathing or deck in Types III, IV and V construction, provided that one or both of the following criteria is met:

- 5.1. The roof sheathing or deck is constructed of approved noncombustible materials or of fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).
  - 5.2. The roof is protected with 0.625-inch (16 mm) Type X gypsum board directly beneath the underside of the roof sheathing or deck, supported by not less than nominal 2-inch (51 mm) ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members for a minimum distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).
  6. Where the wall is permitted to have not less than 25 percent of the exterior wall areas containing unprotected openings based on fire separation distance as determined in accordance with Section 705.8.
- 705.11.1 Parapet construction.** Parapets shall have the same fire-resistance rating as that required for the supporting wall, and on any side adjacent to a roof surface, shall have noncombustible faces for the uppermost 18 inches (457 mm), including counterflashing and coping materials. The height of the parapet shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the point where the roof surface and the wall intersect. Where the roof slopes toward a parapet at a slope greater than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7-percent slope), the parapet shall extend to the same height as any portion of the roof within a fire separation distance where protection of wall openings is required, but the height shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm).

**705.12 Exterior graphics on exterior walls of high-rise buildings.** Where installed on the exterior walls of high-rise buildings, exterior graphics, both permanent and temporary, greater than 100 square feet in area or greater than 10 feet in either dimension shall comply with the following conditions subject to the review and approval of the fire code official and building official:

1. The materials used for graphics installed at a height greater than 40 feet above the grade plane shall be noncombustible materials or shall have a flame spread index not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
2. The method of attachment and mounting of the graphics to the exterior wall shall be such that the graphics are securely attached.
3. The graphics shall not interfere with the active or passive ventilation required for the building and the required smoke control systems in the building.
4. The graphics shall not impair the functions of any fire or life safety systems in the building.

## SECTION 706 FIRE WALLS

**706.1 General.** Fire walls shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 706.2 through 706.11. The extent and location

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

of such fire walls shall provide a complete separation. Where a fire wall separates occupancies that are required to be separated by a fire barrier wall, the most restrictive requirements of each separation shall apply.

**706.1.1 Party walls.** Any wall located on a lot line between adjacent buildings, which is used or adapted for joint service between the two buildings, shall be constructed as a fire wall in accordance with Section 706. Party walls shall be constructed without openings and shall create separate buildings.

### Exceptions:

1. Openings in a party wall separating an anchor building and a mall shall be in accordance with Section 402.4.2.2.1.
2. Party walls and fire walls are not required on lot lines dividing a building for ownership purposes where the aggregate height and area of the portions of the building located on both sides of the lot line do not exceed the maximum height and area requirements of this code. For the building official's review and approval, the official shall be provided with copies of dedicated access easements and contractual agreements that permit the owners of portions of the building located on either side of the lot line access to the other side for purposes of maintaining fire and life safety systems necessary for the operation of the building.

**706.2 Structural stability.** Fire walls shall be designed and constructed to allow collapse of the structure on either side without collapse of the wall under fire conditions. Fire walls designed and constructed in accordance with NFPA 221 shall be deemed to comply with this section.

**Exception:** In *Seismic Design Categories D through F*, where double fire walls are used in accordance with NFPA 221, floor and roof sheathing not exceeding  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.05 mm) thickness shall be permitted to be continuous through the wall assemblies of light frame construction.

**706.3 Materials.** Fire walls shall be of any approved noncombustible materials.

**Exception:** Buildings of Type V construction.

**706.4 Fire-resistance rating.** Fire walls shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Table 706.4.

**TABLE 706.4  
FIRE WALL FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS**

GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
A, B, E, H-4, I, R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, U, L	3 <sup>a</sup>
F-1, H-3b, H-5, M, S-1	3
H-1, H-2	4 <sup>b</sup>
F-2, S-2, R-3, R-4	2

a. In Type II or V construction, walls shall be permitted to have a 2-hour fire-resistance rating.

b. For Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 buildings, also see Sections 415.7 and 415.8.

**706.5 Horizontal continuity.** Fire walls shall be continuous from exterior wall to exterior wall and shall extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the exterior surface of exterior walls.

### Exceptions:

1. Fire walls shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of combustible exterior sheathing or siding provided that the exterior wall has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour for a horizontal distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.
2. Fire walls shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of noncombustible exterior sheathing, exterior siding or other noncombustible exterior finishes provided that the sheathing, siding or other exterior noncombustible finish extends a horizontal distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the fire wall.
3. Fire walls shall be permitted to terminate at the interior surface of noncombustible exterior sheathing where the building on each side of the fire wall is protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

**706.5.1 Exterior walls.** Where the fire wall intersects exterior walls, the fire-resistance rating and opening protection of the exterior walls shall comply with one of the following:

1. The exterior walls on both sides of the fire wall shall have a 1-hour fire-resistance rating with  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour protection where opening protection is required by Section 705.8. The fire-resistance rating of the exterior wall shall extend not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on each side of the intersection of the fire wall to exterior wall. Exterior wall intersections at fire walls that form an angle equal to or greater than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) do not need exterior wall protection.
2. Buildings or spaces on both sides of the intersecting fire wall shall assume to have an imaginary lot line at the fire wall and extending beyond the exterior of the fire wall. The location of the assumed line in relation to the exterior walls and the fire wall shall be such that the exterior wall and opening protection meet the requirements set forth in Sections 705.5 and 705.8. Such protection is not required for exterior walls terminating at fire walls that form an angle equal to or greater than 180 degrees (3.14 rad).

**706.5.2 Horizontal projecting elements.** Fire walls shall extend to the outer edge of horizontal projecting elements such as balconies, roof overhangs, canopies, marquees and similar projections that are within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall.

### Exceptions:

1. Horizontal projecting elements without concealed spaces, provided that the exterior wall

behind and below the projecting element has not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance not less than the depth of the projecting element on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.

2. Noncombustible horizontal projecting elements with concealed spaces, provided that a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance-rated wall extends through the concealed space. The projecting element shall be separated from the building by not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance on each side of the fire wall equal to the depth of the projecting element. The wall is not required to extend under the projecting element where the building exterior wall is not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rated for a distance on each side of the fire wall equal to the depth of the projecting element. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.
3. For combustible horizontal projecting elements with concealed spaces, the fire wall need only extend through the concealed space to the outer edges of the projecting elements. The exterior wall behind and below the projecting element shall be of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance not less than the depth of the projecting elements on both sides of the fire wall. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.

**706.6 Vertical continuity.** Fire walls shall extend from the foundation to a termination point not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above both adjacent roofs.

**Exceptions:**

1. Stepped buildings in accordance with Section 706.6.1.
2. Two-hour fire-resistance-rated walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab, provided that:
  - 2.1. The lower roof assembly within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the wall has not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating and the entire length and span of supporting elements for the rated roof assembly has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
  - 2.2. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall.
  - 2.3. Each building shall be provided with not less than a Class B roof covering.
3. Walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of noncombustible roof sheathing, deck or slabs where both buildings are provided with not less than

a Class B roof covering. Openings in the roof shall not be located within 4 feet (1220 mm) of the fire wall.

4. In buildings of Types III, IV and V construction, walls shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of combustible roof sheathing or decks, provided that all of the following requirements are met:
  - 4.1. Roof openings are not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) from the fire wall.
  - 4.2. The roof is covered with a minimum Class B roof covering.
  - 4.3. The roof sheathing or deck is constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood for a distance of 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the wall or the roof is protected with  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum board directly beneath the underside of the roof sheathing or deck, supported by not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal ledgers attached to the sides of the roof framing members for a distance of not less than 4 feet (1220 mm) on both sides of the fire wall.

5. In buildings designed in accordance with Section 510.2, fire walls located above the 3-hour horizontal assembly required by Section 510.2, Item 1 shall be permitted to extend from the top of this horizontal assembly.
6. Buildings with sloped roofs in accordance with Section 706.6.2.

**706.6.1 Stepped buildings.** Where a fire wall also serves as an exterior wall for a building and separates buildings having different roof levels, such wall shall terminate at a point not less than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof level. Exterior walls above the fire wall extending more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the lower roof shall be of not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction from both sides with openings protected by fire assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour. Portions of the exterior walls greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the lower roof shall be of nonfire-resistance-rated construction unless otherwise rated construction is required by other provisions of this code.

**Exception:** A fire wall serving as part of an exterior wall that separates buildings having different roof levels shall be permitted to terminate at the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab of the lower roof, provided that Items 1, 2 and 3 are met. The exterior wall above the fire wall is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction unless required by other provisions of this code.

1. The lower roof assembly within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the fire wall has not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. The entire length and span of supporting elements for the rated roof assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

3. Openings in the lower roof shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the fire wall.

**706.6.2 Buildings with sloped roofs.** Where a fire wall serves as an interior wall for a building, and the roof on one side or both sides of the fire wall slopes toward the fire wall at a slope greater than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), the fire wall shall extend to a height equal to the height of the roof located 4 feet (1219 mm) from the fire wall plus 30 inches (762 mm). The extension of the fire wall shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm).

**706.7 Combustible framing in fire walls.** Adjacent combustible members entering into a concrete or masonry fire wall from opposite sides shall not have less than a 4-inch (102 mm) distance between embedded ends. Where combustible members frame into hollow walls or walls of hollow units, hollow spaces shall be solidly filled for the full thickness of the wall and for a distance not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above, below and between the structural members, with noncombustible materials approved for fireblocking.

**706.8 Openings.** Each opening through a fire wall shall be protected in accordance with Section 716 and shall not exceed 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ). The aggregate width of openings at any floor level shall not exceed 25 percent of the length of the wall.

### Exceptions:

1. Openings are not permitted in party walls constructed in accordance with Section 706.1.1.
2. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ) where both buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**706.9 Penetrations.** Penetrations of fire walls shall comply with Section 714.

**706.10 Joints.** Joints made in or between fire walls shall comply with Section 715.

**706.11 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate fire walls.

**Exception:** Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings of fire walls that are not on a lot line shall be allowed provided that the penetrations comply with Section 717. The size and aggregate width of all openings shall not exceed the limitations of Section 706.8.

## SECTION 707 FIRE BARRIERS

**707.1 General.** Fire barriers installed as required elsewhere in this code or the *California Fire Code* shall comply with this section.

**707.2 Materials.** Fire barriers shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

**707.3 Fire-resistance rating.** The fire-resistance rating of fire barriers shall comply with this section.

**707.3.1 Shaft enclosures.** The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from a shaft shall comply with Section 713.4.

**707.3.2 Interior exit stairway and ramp construction.** The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from an interior exit stairway or ramp shall comply with Section 1023.1.

**707.3.3 Enclosures for exit access stairways.** The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from an exit access stairway or ramp shall comply with Section 713.4.

**707.3.4 Exit passageway.** The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating building areas from an exit passageway shall comply with Section 1024.3.

**707.3.5 Horizontal exit.** The fire-resistance rating of the separation between building areas connected by a horizontal exit shall comply with Section 1026.1.

**707.3.6 Atriums.** The fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier separating atriums shall comply with Section 404.6.

**707.3.7 Incidental uses.** The fire barrier separating incidental uses from other spaces in the building shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that indicated in Table 509.1.

**707.3.8 Control areas.** Fire barriers separating control areas shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required in Section 414.2.4.

**707.3.9 Separated occupancies.** Where the provisions of Section 508.4 are applicable, the fire barrier separating mixed occupancies shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that indicated in Table 508.4 based on the occupancies being separated.

**707.3.10 Fire areas.** The fire barriers, fire walls, horizontal assemblies or combinations thereof separating a single occupancy into different fire areas shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that indicated in Table 707.3.10. The fire barriers, fire walls, horizontal assemblies or combinations thereof separating fire areas of mixed occupancies shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than the highest value indicated in Table 707.3.10 for the occupancies under consideration.

**TABLE 707.3.10  
FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATING  
REQUIREMENTS FOR FIRE BARRIERS, FIRE WALLS  
OR HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES BETWEEN FIRE AREAS**

OCCUPANCY GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
H-1, H-2	4
F-1, H-3, S-1	3
A, B, E, F-2, H-4, H-5, I, L, M, R, S-2	2
U	1

**707.4 Exterior walls.** Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required fire-resistance-rated shaft, or separation or enclosure for a stairway, ramp or exit passageway, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior

walls and the fire-resistance-rated enclosure or separation requirements shall not apply.

**Exceptions:**

1. Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps, Section 1024.8 for exit passageways and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramps.
2. Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1207 of the *California Fire Code* for enclosure of energy storage systems.

**707.5 Continuity.** Fire barriers shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above and shall be securely attached thereto. Such fire barriers shall be continuous through concealed space, such as the space above a suspended ceiling. Joints and voids at intersections shall comply with Sections 707.8 and 707.9

**Exceptions:**

1. Shaft enclosures shall be permitted to terminate at a top enclosure complying with Section 713.12.
2. Interior exit stairway and ramp enclosures required by Section 1023 and exit access stairway and ramp enclosures required by Section 1019 shall be permitted to terminate at a top enclosure complying with Section 713.12.
3. An exit passageway enclosure required by Section 1024.3 that does not extend to the underside of the roof sheathing, slab or deck above shall be enclosed at the top with construction of the same fire-resistance rating as required for the exit passageway.

**707.5.1 Supporting construction.** The supporting construction for a *fire barrier* shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the fire barrier supported. Hollow vertical spaces within a fire barrier shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 718.2 at every floor level.

**Exceptions:**

1. The maximum required fire-resistance rating for assemblies supporting fire barriers separating tank storage as provided for in Section 415.9.1.2 shall be 2 hours, but not less than required by Table 601 for the building construction type.
2. Supporting construction for 1-hour fire barriers required by Table 509.1 in buildings of Types IIB, IIIB and VB construction is not required to be fire-resistance rated unless required by other sections of this code.

**707.6 Openings.** Openings in a fire barrier shall be protected in accordance with Section 716. Openings shall be limited to a maximum aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall, and the maximum area of any single opening shall not

exceed 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ). Openings in enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall also comply with Sections 1019, 1023.4 and 1024.5, respectively.

**Exceptions:**

1. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ) where adjoining floor areas are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective is a fire door serving enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, and interior exit stairways and ramps.
3. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective has been tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and has a minimum fire-resistance rating not less than the fire-resistance rating of the wall.
4. Fire window assemblies permitted in atrium separation walls shall not be limited to a maximum aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall.
5. Openings shall not be limited to 156 square feet ( $15 \text{ m}^2$ ) or an aggregate width of 25 percent of the length of the wall where the opening protective is a fire door assembly in a fire barrier separating an enclosure for exit access stairways and ramps, and interior exit stairways and ramps from an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3.1.

**707.7 Penetrations.** Penetrations of fire barriers shall comply with Section 714.

**707.7.1 Prohibited penetrations.** Penetrations into enclosures for exit access stairways and ramps, interior exit stairways and ramps, and exit passageways shall be allowed only where permitted by Sections 1019, 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

**707.8 Joints.** Joints made in or between fire barriers, and joints made at the intersection of fire barriers with underside of a fire-resistance-rated floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above, and the exterior vertical wall intersection shall comply with Section 715.

**707.9 Voids at intersections.** The voids created at the intersection of a fire barrier and a nonfire-resistance-rated roof assembly or a nonfire-resistance-rated exterior wall assembly shall be filled. An approved material or system shall be used to fill the void, and shall be securely installed in or on the intersection for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to retard the passage of fire and hot gases.

**707.10 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Penetrations in a fire barrier by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

### SECTION 708 FIRE PARTITIONS

**708.1 General.** The following wall assemblies shall comply with this section:

1. Separation walls as required by Section 420.2 for Group R occupancies.
2. Walls separating tenant spaces in covered and open mall buildings as required by Section 402.4.2.1.
3. Corridor walls as required by Section 1020.3 *and in Group I-2 and I-2.1 as required by Section 407.3.*
4. Enclosed elevator lobby separation as required by Section 3006.3.
5. Egress balconies as required by Section 1021.2
6. Walls separating ambulatory care facilities from adjacent spaces, corridors or tenant as required by Section 422.2.
7. Walls separating dwelling and sleeping units in Groups R-1 and R-2 in accordance with Sections 907.2.8.1 and 907.2.9.1.
8. Vestibules in accordance with Section 1028.2.
9. *Walls separating enclosed tenant spaces in high-rise buildings and in buildings of Types I, II, IIIA, IV or VA construction of Group A, E, H, I, L and R-2.1 occupancies and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.*

**708.2 Materials.** The walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

**708.3 Fire-resistance rating.** Fire partitions shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

**Exceptions:**

1. Corridor walls permitted to have a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -hour fire-resistance rating by Table 1020.2.
2. Dwelling unit and sleeping unit separations in buildings of Types IIB, IIIB and VB construction shall have fire-resistance ratings of not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  hour in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. *Walls separating enclosed tenant spaces in Group B high-rise buildings of Type I and II construction equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*

**708.4 Continuity.** Fire partitions shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below and be securely attached to one of the following:

1. The underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above.
2. The underside of a floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly having a fire-resistance rating that is not less than the fire-resistance rating of the fire partition.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fire partitions shall not be required to extend into a crawl space below where the floor above the crawl space has a minimum 1-hour fire-resistance rating.

2. Fire partitions serving as a corridor wall shall not be required to extend above the lower membrane of a corridor ceiling provided that the corridor ceiling membrane is equivalent to corridor wall membrane, and either of the following conditions is met:

- 2.1. The room-side membrane of the corridor wall extends to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab of a fire-resistance-rated floor or roof above.
- 2.2. The building is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, including automatic sprinklers installed in the space between the top of the fire partition and underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above.
3. Fire partitions serving as a corridor wall shall be permitted to terminate at the upper membrane of the corridor ceiling assembly where the corridor ceiling is constructed as required for the corridor wall.
4. Fire partitions separating tenant spaces in a covered or open mall building complying with Section 402.4.2.1 shall not be required to extend above the underside of a ceiling. Such ceiling shall not be required to be part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly, and the attic or space above the ceiling at tenant separation walls shall not be required to be subdivided by fire partitions.

**708.4.1 Supporting construction.** The supporting construction for a fire partition shall have a fire-resistance rating that is equal to or greater than the required fire-resistance rating of the supported fire partition.

**Exception:** In buildings of Types IIB, IIIB and VB construction, the supporting construction requirement shall not apply to fire partitions separating tenant spaces in covered and open mall buildings, fire partitions separating dwelling units, fire partitions separating sleeping units, fire partitions serving as corridor walls, fire partitions separating ambulatory care facilities from adjacent spaces or corridors, fire partitions separating dwelling and sleeping units from Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies and fire partitions separating vestibules from the level of exit discharge.

**708.4.2 Fireblocks and draftstops in combustible construction.** In combustible construction where fire partitions do not extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above, the space above and along the line of the fire partition shall be provided with one of the following:

1. Fireblocking up to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above using materials complying with Section 718.2.1.
2. Draftstopping up to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above using materials com-

plying with Section 718.3.1 for floors or Section 718.4.1 for attics.

#### Exceptions:

1. Buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, or in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 provided that protection is provided in the space between the top of the fire partition and underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above as required for systems complying with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Where corridor walls provide a sleeping unit or dwelling unit separation, draftstopping shall only be required above one of the corridor walls.
3. In Group R-2 occupancies with fewer than four dwelling units, fireblocking and draftstopping shall not be required.
4. In Group R-2 occupancies up to and including four stories in height in buildings not exceeding 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane, the attic space shall be subdivided by draftstops into areas not exceeding 3,000 square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) or above every two dwelling units, whichever is smaller.
5. In Group R-3 occupancies with fewer than three dwelling units, fireblocking and draftstopping shall not be required in floor assemblies.

**708.5 Exterior walls.** Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required fire-resistance-rated separation, such walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls, and the fire-resistance-rated separation requirements shall not apply.

**Exception:** Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021.2 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramps.

**708.6 Openings.** Openings in a fire partition shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

**708.7 Penetrations.** Penetrations of fire partitions shall comply with Section 714.

**708.8 Joints.** Joints made in or between fire partitions shall comply with Section 715.

**708.9 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Penetrations in a fire partition by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

## SECTION 709 SMOKE BARRIERS

**709.1 General.** Vertical and horizontal smoke barriers shall comply with this section.

**709.2 Materials.** Smoke barriers shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

**709.3 Fire-resistance rating.** A 1-hour fire-resistance rating is required for smoke barriers.

**709.4 Continuity.** Smoke barriers shall form an effective membrane continuous from the top of the foundation or floor/ceiling assembly below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above, including continuity through concealed spaces, such as those found above suspended ceilings, and interstitial structural and mechanical spaces. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the wall or floor supported in buildings of other than Type IIB, IIIB or VB construction. Smoke-barrier walls used to separate smoke compartments shall comply with Section 709.4.1. Smoke-barrier walls used to enclose areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.4 or to enclose elevator lobbies in accordance with Section 405.4.3, 3007.6.2, or 3008.6.2 shall comply with Section 709.4.2.

**Exception:** Smoke-barrier walls are not required in interstitial spaces where such spaces are designed and constructed with ceilings or exterior walls that provide resistance to the passage of fire and smoke equivalent to that provided by the smoke-barrier walls.

**709.4.1 Smoke-barrier assemblies separating smoke compartments.** Smoke-barrier assemblies used to separate smoke compartments shall form an effective membrane enclosure that is continuous from an outside wall or smoke barrier wall to an outside wall or another smoke barrier wall and to the horizontal assemblies.

**709.4.2 Smoke-barrier walls enclosing areas of refuge or elevator lobbies.** Smoke-barrier walls used to enclose areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.4, or to enclose elevator lobbies in accordance with Section 405.4.3, 3007.6.2, or 3008.6.2, shall form an effective membrane enclosure that terminates at a fire barrier wall having a level of fire protection rating not less than 1 hour, another smoke barrier wall or an outside wall. A smoke and draft control door assembly as specified in Section 716.2.2.1.1 shall not be required at each elevator hoistway door opening or at each exit doorway between an area of refuge and the exit enclosure.

**709.5 Openings.** Openings in a smoke barrier shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

#### Exceptions:

1. In Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1 and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 709.5.1, the doors shall not be required to be protected in accordance with Section 716. The doors shall be close fitting within operational tolerances, and shall not have a center mullion or undercuts in excess of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm), louvers or grilles. The doors shall have head and jamb stops, and astragals or rabbets at meeting edges. Where permitted by the door manufacturer's listing, positive-latching devices are not required. Factory-applied or field-applied protective plates are not required to be labeled. *Doors installed across corridors shall comply with Section 1010.1.1.*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

2. In Group I-2, R-2.1 and *ambulatory care facilities*, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors installed in accordance with Section 1010.3.3 and protected in accordance with Section 716. *Doors installed across corridors shall comply with Section 1010.1.1.*

**709.5.1 Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1 and ambulatory care facilities.** In Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1 and ambulatory care facilities, where doors protecting openings in smoke barriers are installed across a corridor and have hold-open devices, the doors shall be automatic-closing in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. Such doors shall have a vision panel with fire-protection-rated glazing materials in fire-protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested. *In Group I-2, where swinging doors are installed across a corridor, such doors shall be opposite swinging pairs.*

**709.6 Penetrations.** Penetrations of smoke barriers shall comply with Section 714.

**709.7 Joints.** Joints made in or between smoke barriers shall comply with Section 715.

**709.8 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Penetrations in a smoke barrier by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

## SECTION 710 SMOKE PARTITIONS

**710.1 General.** Smoke partitions installed as required elsewhere in the code shall comply with this section.

**710.2 Materials.** The walls shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction. *In Group I-2 and I-2.1, smoke partitions shall have framing covered with noncombustible materials having an approved thermal barrier with an index of not less than 15 in accordance with FM 4880, UL 1040, NFPA 286 or UL 1715.*

**710.3 Fire-resistance rating.** Unless required elsewhere in the code, smoke partitions are not required to have a fire-resistance rating.

**710.4 Continuity.** Smoke partitions shall extend from the top of the foundation or floor below to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, deck or slab above or to the underside of the ceiling above where the ceiling membrane is constructed to limit the transfer of smoke.

**710.5 Openings.** Openings in smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.1 through 710.5.3.

**710.5.1 Windows.** Windows in smoke partitions shall be sealed to resist the free passage of smoke or be automatic-closing upon detection of smoke.

**710.5.2 Doors.** Doors in smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.2.1 through 710.5.2.3.

**710.5.2.1 Louvers.** Doors in smoke partitions shall not include louvers.

**Exception:** Where permitted in accordance with Section 407.3.1.1.

**710.5.2.2 Smoke and draft control doors.** Where required elsewhere in the code, doors in smoke partitions shall meet the requirements for a smoke and draft control door assembly tested in accordance with UL 1784. The air leakage rate of the door assembly shall not exceed 3.0 cubic feet per minute per square foot [ $0.015424 \text{ m}^3/(\text{s} \times \text{m}^2)$ ] of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature test and the elevated temperature exposure test. Installation of smoke doors shall be in accordance with NFPA 105.

**710.5.2.2.1 Smoke and draft control door labeling.**

Smoke and draft control doors complying only with UL 1784 shall be permitted to show the letter "S" on the manufacturer's labeling.

**710.5.2.3 Self- or automatic-closing doors.** Where required elsewhere in the code, doors in smoke partitions shall be self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6.

**710.5.3 Pass-through openings in Group I-2, Condition 2.**

Where pass-through openings are provided in smoke partitions in Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies, such openings shall comply with the following:

1. The smoke compartment in which the pass-through openings occur does not contain a patient care suite or sleeping room.
2. Pass-through openings are installed in a wall, door or vision panel that is not required to have a fire-resistance rating.
3. The top of the pass-through opening is located a maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.
4. The aggregate area of all such pass-through openings within a single room shall not exceed 80 square inches ( $0.05 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**710.6 Penetrations.** The space around penetrating items shall be filled with an approved material to limit the free passage of smoke.

**710.7 Joints.** Joints shall be filled with an approved material to limit the free passage of smoke.

**710.8 Ducts and air transfer openings.** The space around a duct penetrating a smoke partition shall be filled with an approved material to limit the free passage of smoke. Air transfer openings in smoke partitions shall be provided with a smoke damper complying with Section 717.3.2.2. *For Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, duct openings in smoke partitions shall also be provided with a smoke damper complying with Section 717.3.2.2.*

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the installation of a smoke damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, approved alternative protection shall be utilized.
2. *[SFM] Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel*

*not less than 0.019-inch (0.40 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.*

## SECTION 711 FLOOR AND ROOF ASSEMBLIES

**711.1 General.** Horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 711.2. Nonfire-resistance-rated floor and roof assemblies shall comply with Section 711.3.

**711.2 Horizontal assemblies.** Horizontal assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.2.1 through 711.2.6.

**711.2.1 Materials.** Assemblies shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

**711.2.2 Continuity.** Assemblies shall be continuous without vertical openings, except as permitted by this section and Section 712.

**711.2.3 Supporting construction.** The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the horizontal assembly supported.

**Exception:** In buildings of Type IIB, IIIB or VB construction, the construction supporting the horizontal assembly is not required to be fire-resistance rated at the following:

1. Horizontal assemblies at the separations of incidental uses as specified by Table 509.1 provided that the required fire-resistance rating does not exceed 1 hour.
2. Horizontal assemblies at the separations of dwelling units and sleeping units as required by Section 420.3.
3. Horizontal assemblies at smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 709.

**711.2.4 Fire-resistance rating.** The fire-resistance rating of horizontal assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.2.4.1 through 711.2.4.6 but shall be not less than that required by the building type of construction.

**711.2.4.1 Separating mixed occupancies.** Where the horizontal assembly separates mixed occupancies, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Section 508.4 based on the occupancies being separated.

**711.2.4.2 Separating fire areas.** Where the horizontal assembly separates a single occupancy into different fire areas, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Section 707.3.10.

**711.2.4.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units.** Horizontal assemblies serving as dwelling or sleeping unit separations in accordance with Section 420.3 shall be not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

**Exception:** Horizontal assemblies separating dwelling units and sleeping units shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -hour fire-resistance-rated construction in a building of Types IIB, IIIB and VB construction, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic

sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**711.2.4.4 Separating smoke compartments.** Where the horizontal assembly is required to be a smoke barrier, the assembly shall comply with Section 709.

**711.2.4.5 Separating incidental uses.** Where the horizontal assembly separates incidental uses from the remainder of the building, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by Section 509.

**711.2.4.6 Other separations.** Where a horizontal assembly is required by other sections of this code, the assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than that required by that section.

**711.2.5 Ceiling panels.** Where the weight of lay-in ceiling panels, used as part of fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies, is not adequate to resist an upward force of 1 pound per square foot (48 Pa), wire or other approved devices shall be installed above the panels to prevent vertical displacement under such upward force.

**711.2.6 Unusable space.** In 1-hour fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assemblies, the ceiling membrane is not required to be installed over unusable crawl spaces. In 1-hour fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies, the floor membrane is not required to be installed where unusable attic space occurs above.

**711.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor and roof assemblies.** Nonfire-resistance-rated floor, floor/ceiling, roof and roof/ceiling assemblies shall comply with Sections 711.3.1 and 711.3.2.

**711.3.1 Materials.** Assemblies shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

**711.3.2 Continuity.** Assemblies shall be continuous without vertical openings, except as permitted by Section 712.

## SECTION 712 VERTICAL OPENINGS

**712.1 General.** Each vertical opening shall comply in accordance with one of the protection methods in Sections 712.1.1 through 712.1.16.

**712.1.1 Shaft enclosures.** Vertical openings contained entirely within a shaft enclosure complying with Section 713 shall be permitted.

**712.1.2 Individual dwelling unit.** Unconcealed vertical openings totally within an individual residential dwelling unit and connecting four stories or less shall be permitted.

**712.1.3 Escalator openings.** Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, vertical openings for escalators shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 712.1.3.1 or 712.1.3.2.

**712.1.3.1 Opening size.** Protection by a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be permitted where the area of the vertical opening between stories does not exceed twice the hori-

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

zontal projected area of the escalator. In other than Groups B and M, this application is limited to openings that do not connect more than four stories.

**712.1.3.2 Automatic shutters.** Protection of the vertical opening by approved shutters at every penetrated floor shall be permitted in accordance with this section. The shutters shall be of noncombustible construction and have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1.5 hours. The shutter shall be so constructed as to close immediately upon the actuation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 907.3.1 and shall completely shut off the well opening. Escalators shall cease operation when the shutter begins to close. The shutter shall operate at a speed of not more than 30 feet per minute (152.4 mm/s) and shall be equipped with a sensitive leading edge to arrest its progress where in contact with any obstacle, and to continue its progress on release therefrom.

**712.1.4 Penetrations.** Penetrations, concealed and un concealed, shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 714.

**712.1.5 Joints.** Joints shall be permitted where complying with Section 712.1.5.1 or 712.1.5.2, as applicable.

**712.1.5.1 Joints in or between horizontal assemblies.** Joints made in or between horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 715. The void created at the intersection of a floor/ceiling assembly and an exterior curtain wall assembly shall be permitted where protected in accordance with Section 715.4.

**712.1.5.2 Joints in or between nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.** Joints in or between floor assemblies without a required fire-resistance rating shall be permitted where they comply with one of the following:

1. The joint shall be concealed within the cavity of a wall.
2. The joint shall be located above a ceiling.
3. The joint shall be sealed, treated or covered with an approved material or system to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

**Exception:** Joints meeting one of the exceptions specified in Section 715.3.

**712.1.6 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 717. Grease ducts shall be protected in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**712.1.7 Atriums.** Atriums complying with Section 404 that connect two or more stories in Group I-2 or I-3 occupancies or three or more stories in other occupancies shall be permitted.

### Exceptions:

1. Atriums shall not be permitted within Group H occupancies.
2. Balconies or stories within Groups A-1, A-4 and A-5 and mezzanines that comply with Section

505 shall not be considered a story as it applies to this section

**712.1.8 Masonry chimney.** Approved vertical openings for masonry chimneys shall be permitted where the annular space is fireblocked at each floor level in accordance with Section 718.2.5.

**712.1.9 Two-story openings.** In other than Groups I-2, I-2.1 and I-3, a vertical opening that is not used as one of the applications specified in this section shall be permitted if the opening complies with all of the following items:

1. Does not connect more than two stories.
2. Does not penetrate a horizontal assembly that separates fire areas or smoke barriers that separate smoke compartments.
3. Is not concealed within the construction of a wall or a floor/ceiling assembly.
4. Is not open to a corridor in Group I and R occupancies.
5. Is not open to a corridor on nonsprinklered floors.
6. Is separated from floor openings and air transfer openings serving other floors by construction conforming to required shaft enclosures.

**712.1.10 Parking garages.** Vertical openings in parking garages for automobile ramps, elevators and duct systems shall comply with Section 712.1.10.1, 712.1.10.2 or 712.1.10.3, as applicable.

**712.1.10.1 Automobile ramps.** Vertical openings for automobile ramps in parking garages shall be permitted where constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6.

**712.1.10.2 Elevators.** Vertical openings for elevator hoistways in parking garages that serve only the parking garage, and complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall be permitted.

**712.1.10.3 Duct systems.** Vertical openings for mechanical exhaust or supply duct systems in parking garages complying with Sections 406.5 and 406.6, respectively, shall be permitted to be unenclosed where such duct system is contained within and serves only the parking garage.

**712.1.11 Mezzanine.** Vertical openings between a mezzanine complying with Section 505 and the floor below shall be permitted.

**712.1.12 Exit access stairways and ramps.** Vertical openings containing exit access stairways or ramps in accordance with Section 1019 shall be permitted.

**712.1.13 Openings.** Vertical openings for floor fire doors and access doors shall be permitted where protected by Section 712.1.13.1 or 712.1.13.2.

**712.1.13.1 Horizontal fire door assemblies.** Horizontal fire door assemblies used to protect openings in fire-resistance-rated horizontal assemblies shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 288, and shall achieve a fire-resistance rating not less than the assembly being pene-

trated. Horizontal fire door assemblies shall be labeled by an approved agency. The label shall be permanently affixed and shall specify the manufacturer, the test standard and the fire-resistance rating.

**712.1.13.2 Access doors.** Access doors shall be permitted in ceilings of fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies, provided that such doors are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as horizontal assemblies and labeled by an approved agency for such purpose.

**712.1.14 Group I-3.** In Group I-3 occupancies, vertical openings shall be permitted in accordance with Section 408.5.

**712.1.15 Skylights.** Skylights and other penetrations through a fire-resistance-rated roof deck or slab are permitted to be unprotected, provided that the structural integrity of the fire-resistance-rated roof assembly is maintained. Unprotected skylights shall not be permitted in roof assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 705.8.6. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required fire-resistance rating of the horizontal assembly supported.

**712.1.16 Openings otherwise permitted.** Vertical openings shall be permitted where allowed by other sections of this code.

## SECTION 713 SHAFT ENCLOSURES

**713.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall apply to shafts required to protect openings and penetrations through floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 1023.

**713.2 Construction.** Shaft enclosures shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**713.3 Materials.** Shaft enclosures shall be of materials permitted by the building type of construction.

**713.4 Fire-resistance rating.** Shaft enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours where connecting four stories or more, and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four stories. The number of stories connected by the shaft enclosure shall include any basements but not any mezzanines. Shaft enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours. Shaft enclosures shall meet the requirements of Section 703.2.1.1.

**713.5 Continuity.** Shaft enclosures shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, and shall have continuity in accordance with Section 707.5 for fire barriers or Section 711.2.2 for horizontal assemblies, as applicable.

**713.6 Exterior walls.** Where exterior walls serve as a part of a required shaft enclosure, such walls shall comply with the

requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls and the fire-resistance-rated enclosure requirements shall not apply.

**Exception:** Exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1021.2 for exterior egress balconies, Section 1023.7 for interior exit stairways and ramps and Section 1027.6 for exterior exit stairways and ramps.

**713.7 Openings.** Openings in a shaft enclosure shall be protected in accordance with Section 716 as required for fire barriers. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6.

**713.7.1 Prohibited openings.** Openings other than those necessary for the purpose of the shaft shall not be permitted in shaft enclosures.

**713.8 Penetrations.** Penetrations in a shaft enclosure shall be protected in accordance with Section 714 as required for fire barriers. Structural elements, such as beams or joists, where protected in accordance with Section 714 shall be permitted to penetrate a shaft enclosure.

**713.8.1 Prohibited penetrations.** Penetrations other than those necessary for the purpose of the shaft shall not be permitted in shaft enclosures.

**Exception:** Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of shaft enclosures. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2.

**713.9 Joints.** Joints in a shaft enclosure shall comply with Section 715.

**713.10 Duct and air transfer openings.** Penetrations of a shaft enclosure by ducts and air transfer openings shall comply with Section 717.

**713.11 Enclosure at the bottom.** Shafts that do not extend to the bottom of the building or structure shall comply with one of the following:

1. Be enclosed at the lowest level with construction of the same fire-resistance rating as the lowest floor through which the shaft passes, but not less than the rating required for the shaft enclosure.
2. Terminate in a room having a use related to the purpose of the shaft. The room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating and opening protectives shall be not less than the protection required for the shaft enclosure.
3. Be protected by approved fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing at the lowest floor level within the shaft enclosure.

### Exceptions:

1. The fire-resistance-rated room separation is not required, provided that the only openings in or penetrations of the shaft enclosure to the interior of the building occur at the bottom. The bottom of the shaft shall be closed off around the penetrating items with materials permitted by Section 718.3.1 for draftstop-

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

ping, or the room shall be provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

2. A shaft enclosure containing a waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall discharge in a room protected in accordance with Section 713.13.4.
3. The fire-resistance-rated room separation and the protection at the bottom of the shaft are not required provided that there are no combustibles in the shaft and there are no openings or other penetrations through the shaft enclosure to the interior of the building.

**713.12 Enclosure at top.** The top of shaft enclosures shall comply with one of the following:

1. Extend to the underside of the roof sheathing, deck or slab of the building, and the roof assembly shall comply with the requirements for the type of construction as specified in Table 601.
2. Terminate below the roof assembly and be enclosed at the top with construction of the same fire-resistance rating as the topmost floor penetrated by the shaft, but not less than the fire-resistance rating required for the shaft enclosure.
3. Extend past the roof assembly and comply with the requirements of Section 1511.

**713.12.1 Penthouse mechanical rooms.** A fire/smoke damper shall not be required at the penetration of the rooftop structure where shaft enclosures extend up through the roof assembly into a rooftop structure conforming to Section 1511. Ductwork in the shaft shall be connected directly to HVAC equipment.

**713.13 Waste, recycling and linen chutes and incinerator rooms.** Waste, recycling and linen chutes shall comply with the provisions of NFPA 82, Chapter 6 and shall meet the requirements of Sections 712 and 713.13.1 through 713.13.6. Incinerator rooms shall meet the provisions of Sections 713.13.4 and 713.13.5.

**Exception:** Chutes serving and contained within a single dwelling unit.

**713.13.1 Waste, recycling and linen chute enclosures.** A shaft enclosure containing a recycling, waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 713.4. A shaft enclosure shall be permitted to contain recycling and waste chutes. Openings into the shaft, from access rooms and discharge rooms, shall be protected in accordance with this section and Section 716. Openings into chutes shall not be located in corridors. Doors into chutes shall be self-closing. Discharge doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, except that heat-activated closing devices shall be permitted between the shaft and the discharge room.

**713.13.2 Materials.** A shaft enclosure containing a waste, recycling, or linen chute shall be constructed of materials as permitted by the building type of construction.

**713.13.3 Chute access rooms.** Access openings for waste, recycling or linen chutes shall be located in rooms or compartments enclosed by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the access rooms shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. The room or compartment shall be configured to allow the access door to the room or compartment to close and latch with the access panel to the chute in any position.

**713.13.4 Chute discharge room.** Table 509.1Waste, recycling or linen chutes shall discharge into an enclosed room separated by fire barriers with a fire-resistance rating not less than the required fire rating of the shaft enclosure and constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the discharge room from the remainder of the building shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating equal to the protection required for the shaft enclosure. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. Waste chutes shall not terminate in an incinerator room. Waste and linen rooms that are not provided with chutes need only comply with Table 509.1.

**713.13.5 Incinerator room.** Incinerator rooms shall comply with Table 509.1.

**713.13.6 Automatic sprinkler system.** An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.2.11.2.

**713.14 Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistways.** Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 712 and 713, and Chapter 30.

## SECTION 714 PENETRATIONS

**714.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials and methods of construction used to protect through penetrations and membrane penetrations of horizontal assemblies and fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies.

**714.1.1 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls by ducts that are not protected with dampers shall comply with Sections 714.3 through 714.4.3. Penetrations of horizontal assemblies not protected with a shaft as permitted by Section 717.6, and not required to be protected with fire dampers by other sections of this code, shall comply with Sections 714.5 through 714.6.2. Ducts and air transfer openings that are protected with dampers shall comply with Section 717.

**714.2 Installation.** A listed penetration firestop system shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the listing criteria.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**714.3 Installation details.** Where sleeves are used, they shall be securely fastened to the assembly penetrated. The space between the item contained in the sleeve and the sleeve itself and any space between the sleeve and the assembly penetrated shall be protected in accordance with this section. Insulation and coverings on or in the penetrating item shall not penetrate the assembly unless the specific material used has been tested as part of the assembly in accordance with this section.

**714.4 Fire-resistance-rated walls.** Penetrations into or through fire walls, fire barriers, smoke barrier walls and fire partitions shall comply with Sections 714.4.1 through 714.4.3. Penetrations in smoke barrier walls shall also comply with Section 714.5.4.

**714.4.1 Through penetrations.** Through penetrations of fire-resistance-rated walls shall comply with Section 714.4.1.1 or 714.4.1.2.

**Exception:** Where the penetrating items are steel, ferrous or copper pipes, tubes or conduits, the annular space between the penetrating item and the fire-resistance-rated wall is permitted to be protected by either of the following measures:

1. In concrete or masonry walls where the penetrating item is a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter and the area of the opening through the wall does not exceed 144 square inches (0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>), concrete, grout or mortar is permitted where installed the full thickness of the wall or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating.
2. The material used to fill the annular space shall prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

**714.4.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated assemblies.** Through penetrations shall be protected using systems installed as tested in the approved fire-resistance-rated assembly.

**714.4.1.2 Through-penetration firestop system.** Through penetrations shall be protected by an approved penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water and shall have an *F rating* of not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall penetrated.

**714.4.2 Membrane penetrations.** Membrane penetrations shall comply with Section 714.4.1. Where walls or partitions are required to have a fire-resistance rating, recessed fixtures shall be installed such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

**Exceptions:**

1. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel elec-

trical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches (0.0 103 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, provided that the aggregate area of the openings through the membrane does not exceed 100 square inches (0.0645 m<sup>2</sup>) in any 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of wall area. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm). Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall or partition shall be separated by one of the following:

1. By a horizontal distance of not less than 24 inches (610 mm) where the wall or partition is constructed with individual noncommunicating stud cavities.
2. By a horizontal distance of not less than the depth of the wall cavity where the wall cavity is filled with cellulose loose-fill, rockwool or slag mineral wool insulation.
3. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 718.2.1.
4. By protecting both outlet boxes with listed putty pads.
5. By other listed materials and methods.
2. Membrane penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any material, provided that such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The annular space between the wall membrane and the box shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) unless listed otherwise. Such boxes on opposite sides of the wall or partition shall be separated by one of the following:
  1. By the horizontal distance specified in the listing of the electrical boxes.
  2. By solid fireblocking in accordance with Section 718.2.1.
  3. By protecting both boxes with listed putty pads.
  4. By other listed materials and methods.
3. Membrane penetrations by electrical boxes of any size or type, that have been listed as part of a wall opening protective material system for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.
4. Membrane penetrations by boxes other than electrical boxes, provided that such penetrating items and the annular space between the wall membrane and the box, are protected by an approved membrane penetration firestop system installed as tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water, and shall have an *F* and *T* rating of not less than the required

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

- fire-resistance rating of the wall penetrated and be installed in accordance with their listing.
5. The annular space created by the penetration of an automatic sprinkler, provided that it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.
  6. Membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour fire-resistance-rated walls and partitions by steel electrical boxes that exceed 16 square inches ( $0.0\ 103\ m^2$ ) in area, or steel electrical boxes of any size having an aggregate area through the membrane exceeding 100 square inches ( $0.0645\ m^2$ ) in any 100 square feet ( $9.29\ m^2$ ) of wall area, provided that such penetrating items are protected by listed putty pads or other listed materials and methods, and installed in accordance with the listing.

**714.4.3 Dissimilar materials.** Noncombustible penetrating items shall not connect to combustible items beyond the point of firestopping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistance integrity of the wall is maintained.

**714.5 Horizontal assemblies.** Penetrations of a fire-resistance-rated floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly not required to be enclosed in a shaft by Section 712.1 shall be protected in accordance with Sections 714.5.1 through 714.5.4.

**714.5.1 Through penetrations.** Through penetrations of horizontal assemblies shall comply with Section 714.5.1.1 or 714.5.1.2.

### Exceptions:

1. Penetrations by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents or concrete or masonry items through a single fire-resistance-rated floor assembly where the annular space is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste when subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated. Penetrating items with a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter shall not be limited to the penetration of a single fire-resistance-rated floor assembly, provided that the aggregate area of the openings through the assembly does not exceed 144 square inches ( $92\ 900\ mm^2$ ) in any 100 square feet ( $9.3\ m^2$ ) of floor area.
2. Penetrations in a single concrete floor by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents with a maximum 6-inch (152 mm) nominal diameter, provided that the concrete, grout or mortar is installed the full thickness of the floor or the thickness required to maintain the fire-resistance rating. The penetrating items shall not be limited to the penetration of a single concrete floor, provided that the area of the opening through each floor does not exceed 144 square inches ( $92\ 900\ mm^2$ ).

3. Penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any material, provided that such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

**714.5.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated assemblies.** Through penetrations shall be protected using systems installed as tested in the approved fire-resistance-rated assembly.

**714.5.1.2 Through-penetration firestop system.** Through penetrations shall be protected by an approved through-penetration firestop system installed and tested in accordance with ASTM E814 or UL 1479, with a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch of water (2.49 Pa). The system shall have an F rating/T rating of not less than 1 hour but not less than the required rating of the floor penetrated.

### Exceptions:

1. Floor penetrations contained and located within the cavity of a wall above the floor or below the floor do not require a T rating.
2. Floor penetrations by floor drains, tub drains or shower drains contained and located within the concealed space of a horizontal assembly do not require a T rating.
3. Floor penetrations of maximum 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter metal conduit or tubing penetrating directly into metal-enclosed electrical power switchgear do not require a T rating.

**714.5.2 Membrane penetrations.** Penetrations of membranes that are part of a horizontal assembly shall comply with Section 714.5.1.1 or 714.5.1.2. Where floor/ceiling assemblies are required to have a fire-resistance rating, recessed fixtures shall be installed such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

### Exceptions:

1. Membrane penetrations by steel, ferrous or copper conduits, pipes, tubes or vents, or concrete or masonry items where the annular space is protected either in accordance with Section 714.5.1 or to prevent the free passage of flame and the products of combustion. The aggregate area of the openings through the membrane shall not exceed 100 square inches ( $64\ 500\ mm^2$ ) in any 100 square feet ( $9.3\ m^2$ ) of ceiling area in assemblies tested without penetrations.
2. Ceiling membrane penetrations of maximum 2-hour horizontal assemblies by steel electrical boxes that do not exceed 16 square inches ( $10\ 323\ mm^2$ ) in area, provided that the aggregate area of such penetrations does not exceed 100 square inches ( $44\ 500\ mm^2$ ) in any 100 square feet ( $9.29\ m^2$ ) of ceiling area, and the annular space between the ceiling membrane and the box does not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

3. Membrane penetrations by electrical boxes of any size or type, that have been listed as part of an opening protective material system for use in horizontal assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.
4. Membrane penetrations by listed electrical boxes of any material, provided that such boxes have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing. The annular space between the ceiling membrane and the box shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) unless listed otherwise.
5. The annular space created by the penetration of a fire sprinkler, provided that it is covered by a metal escutcheon plate.
6. Noncombustible items that are cast into concrete building elements and that do not penetrate both top and bottom surfaces of the element.
7. The ceiling membrane of a maximum 2-hour fire-resistance-rated horizontal assembly is permitted to be interrupted with the double wood top plate of a wall assembly that is sheathed with Type X gypsum wallboard, provided that all penetrating items through the double top plates are protected in accordance with Section 714.5.1.1 or 714.5.1.2 and the ceiling membrane is tight to the top plates.
8. Ceiling membrane penetrations by listed luminaires (light fixtures) or by luminaires protected with listed materials, which have been tested for use in fire-resistance-rated assemblies and are installed in accordance with the instructions included in the listing.

**714.5.3 Dissimilar materials.** Noncombustible penetrating items shall not connect to combustible materials beyond the point of firestopping unless it can be demonstrated that the fire-resistance integrity of the horizontal assembly is maintained.

**714.5.4 Penetrations in smoke barriers.** Penetrations in smoke barriers shall be protected by an approved through-penetration firestop system installed and tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 1479 for air leakage. The L rating of the system measured at 0.30 inch (7.47 Pa) of water in both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests shall not exceed either of the following:

1. 5.0 cfm per square foot ( $0.025 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} \times \text{m}^2$ ) of penetration opening for each through-penetration firestop system.
2. A total cumulative leakage of 50 cfm ( $0.024 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ ) for any 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) of wall area, or floor area.

**714.6 Nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies.** Penetrations of nonfire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies or the ceiling membrane of a nonfire-resistance-rated roof/ceiling assembly shall meet the requirements of Section 713 or shall comply with Section 714.6.1 or 714.6.2.

**714.6.1 Noncombustible penetrating items.** Noncombustible penetrating items that connect not more than five stories are permitted, provided that the annular space is filled to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion with an approved noncombustible material or with a fill, void or cavity material that is tested and classified for use in through-penetration firestop systems.

**714.6.2 Penetrating items.** Penetrating items that connect not more than two stories are permitted, provided that the annular space is filled with an approved material to resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

## SECTION 715 JOINTS AND VOIDS

**715.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials and methods of construction used to protect joints and voids in or between horizontal and vertical assemblies.

**715.2 Installation.** Systems or materials protecting joints and voids shall be securely installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions in or on the joint or void for its entire length so as not to dislodge, loosen or otherwise impair its ability to accommodate expected building movements and to resist the passage of fire and hot gases. Fire-resistant joint systems or systems used to protect voids at exterior curtain walls and fire-resistance-rated floor intersections shall also be installed in accordance with the listing criteria.

**715.3 Fire-resistance-rated assembly intersections.** Joints installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls, floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies shall be protected by an approved fire-resistant joint system designed to resist the passage of fire for a time period not less than the required fire-resistance rating of the wall, floor or roof in or between which the system is installed.

**Exception:** Fire-resistant joint systems shall not be required for joints in the following locations:

1. Floors within a single dwelling unit.
2. Floors where the joint is protected by a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.
3. Floors within atriums where the space adjacent to the atrium is included in the volume of the atrium for smoke control purposes.
4. Floors within malls.
5. Floors and ramps within parking garages or structures constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6.
6. Mezzanine floors.
7. Walls that are permitted to have unprotected openings.
8. Roofs where openings are permitted.
9. Control joints not exceeding a maximum width of 0.625 inch (15.9 mm) and tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

10. The intersection of exterior curtain wall assemblies and the roof slab or roof deck.

**715.3.1 Fire test criteria.** Fire-resistant joint systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of either ASTM E1966 or UL 2079. Nonsymmetrical wall joint systems shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned fire-resistance rating shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests. Where evidence is furnished to show that the wall was tested with the least fire-resistant side exposed to the furnace, subject to acceptance of the building official, the wall need not be subjected to tests from the opposite side.

**Exception:** For exterior walls with a horizontal fire separation distance greater than 10 feet (3048 mm), the joint system shall be required to be tested for interior fire exposure only.

**715.4 Exterior curtain wall/fire-resistance-rated floor intersections.** Voids created at the intersection of exterior curtain wall assemblies and fire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies shall be protected with an approved perimeter fire containment system to prevent the interior spread of fire. Such systems shall provide an F rating for a time period not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor or floor/ceiling assembly.

**715.4.1 Fire test criteria.** Perimeter fire containment systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E2307.

**Exception:** Voids created at the intersection of the exterior curtain wall assemblies and floor assemblies where the vision glass extends to the finished floor level shall be permitted to be protected with an approved material to prevent the interior spread of fire. Such material shall be securely installed and capable of preventing the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 time-temperature fire conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (0.254 mm) of water column (2.5 Pa) for the time period not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.

**715.5 Exterior curtain wall/nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly intersections.** Voids created at the intersection of exterior curtain wall assemblies and nonfire-resistance-rated floor or floor/ceiling assemblies shall be filled with an approved material or system to retard the interior spread of fire and hot gases between stories.

**715.6 Exterior curtain wall/vertical fire barrier intersections.** Voids created at the intersection of nonfire-resistance-rated exterior curtain wall assemblies and vertical fire barriers shall be filled with an approved material or system to retard the interior spread of fire and hot gases.

**715.7 Curtain wall spandrels.** Height and fire-resistance requirements for curtain wall spandrels shall comply with Section 705.8.5. Where Section 705.8.5 does not require fire-resistance-rated curtain wall spandrels, the requirements of Sections 715.4 and 715.5 shall still apply to the intersection between the curtain wall spandrels and the floor.

**715.8 Joints and voids in smoke barriers.** Fire-resistant joint systems protecting joints in smoke barriers, and perimeter fire containment systems protecting voids at the intersection of a horizontal smoke barrier and an exterior curtain wall, shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 2079 for air leakage. The L rating of the joint system shall not exceed 5 cubic feet per minute per linear foot ( $0.00775 \text{ m}^3/\text{s m}$ ) of joint at 0.30 inch (74.7 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests.

## SECTION 716 OPENING PROTECTIVES

**716.1 General.** Opening protectives required by other sections of this code shall comply with the provisions of this section and shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80.

**716.1.1 Alternative methods for determining fire protection ratings.** The application of any of the alternative methods specified in this section shall be based on the fire exposure and acceptance criteria specified in NFPA 252, NFPA 257, UL 9, UL 10B or UL 10C. The required fire resistance of an opening protective shall be permitted to be established by any of the following methods or procedures:

1. Designs documented in approved sources.
2. Calculations performed in an approved manner.
3. Engineering analysis based on a comparison of opening protective designs having fire protection ratings as determined by the test procedures set forth in NFPA 252, NFPA 257, UL 9, UL 10B or UL 10C.
4. Alternative protection methods as allowed by Section 104.11.

**716.1.2 Glazing.** Glazing used in fire door assemblies and fire window assemblies shall comply with this section in addition to the requirements of Sections 716.2 and 716.3, respectively.

**716.1.2.1 Safety glazing.** Fire-protection-rated glazing and fire-resistance-rated glazing installed in fire door assemblies and fire window assemblies shall comply with the safety glazing requirements of Chapter 24 where applicable.

**716.1.2.2 Marking fire-rated glazing assemblies.** Fire-rated glazing assemblies shall be marked in accordance with Tables 716.1(1), 716.1(2) and 716.1(3).

**716.1.2.2.1 Fire-rated glazing identification.** For fire-rated glazing, the label shall bear the identification required in Tables 716.1(1) and 716.1(2). “D” indicates that the glazing is permitted to be used in fire door assemblies and meets the fire protection requirements of NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C. “H” indicates that the glazing meets the hose stream requirements of NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C. “T” indicates that the glazing meets the temperature requirements of Section 716.2.2.3.1. The placeholder “XXX” represents the fire-rating period, in minutes.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 716.1(1)**  
**MARKING FIRE-RATED GLAZING ASSEMBLIES**

FIRE TEST STANDARD	MARKING	DEFINITION OF MARKING
ASTM E119 or UL 263	W	Meets wall assembly criteria.
ASTM E119 or UL 263	FC	Meets floor/ceiling criteria <sup>a</sup>
NFPA 257 or UL 9	OH	Meets fire window assembly criteria including the hose stream test.
NFPA 252 or UL 10B or UL 10C	D	Meets fire door assembly criteria.
	H	Meets fire door assembly hose stream test.
	T	Meets 450°F temperature rise criteria for 30 minutes
—	XXX	The time in minutes of the fire resistance or fire protection rating of the glazing assembly.

For SI: °C = [(°F) – 32]/1.8.

a. See Section 2409.1

**TABLE 716.1(2)**  
**OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS**

TYPE OF ASSEMBLY	REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	MINIMUM FIRE DOOR AND FIRE SHUTTER ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	DOOR VISION PANEL SIZE <sup>a</sup>	FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING DOOR VISION PANEL <sup>b,c</sup>	MINIMUM SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)		FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM PANEL		
					Fire protection	Fire resistance	Fire protection	Fire resistance	
Fire walls and fire barriers having a required fire-resistance rating greater than 1 hour	4	3	See Note a	D-H-W-240	Not Permitted	4	Not Permitted	W-240	
	3	3 <sup>d</sup>	See Note a	D-H-W-180	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180	
	2	1½	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.=D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	2	Not Permitted	W-120	
	1½	1½	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.=D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	1½	Not Permitted	W-90	
Double fire walls constructed in accordance with NFPA 221	Single-wall assembly rating (hours) <sup>e</sup>	Each wall of the double-wall assembly (hours) <sup>f</sup>	—						
	4	3	3	See Note a	D-H-W-180	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180
	3	2	1½	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.=D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	2	Not Permitted	W-120
	2	1	1	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-60 >100 sq. in. = D-H-W-60	Not Permitted	1	Not Permitted	W-60
Enclosures for shafts, interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps.	2	1½	100 sq. in. <sup>b</sup>	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 >100 sq. in.=D-H-T-W-90	Not Permitted	2	Not Permitted	W-120	

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 716.1(2)—continued**  
**OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS**

TYPE OF ASSEMBLY	REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	MINIMUM FIRE DOOR AND FIRE SHUTTER ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	DOOR VISION PANEL SIZE <sup>a</sup>	FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING DOOR VISION PANEL <sup>b,c</sup>	MINIMUM SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)		FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING SIDELIGHT/TRANSOM PANEL	
					Fire protection	Fire resistance	Fire protection	Fire resistance
Horizontal exits in fire walls <sup>g</sup>	4	3	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-180 > 100 sq. in.=D-H-W-240	Not Permitted	4	Not Permitted	W-240
	3	3 <sup>d</sup>	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-180 > 100 sq. in.=D-H-W-180	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180
Fire barriers having a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour: Enclosures for shafts, exit access stairways, exit access ramps, interior exit stairways and interior exit ramps; and exit passageway walls	1	1	100 sq. in.	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-60 >100 sq. in.=D-H-T-W-60	Not Permitted	1	Not Permitted	W-60
					<b>Fire protection</b>			
Other fire barriers	1	3/4	Maximum size tested	D-H	3/4 <sup>h</sup>		D-H <sup>h</sup>	
Fire partitions: Corridor walls	1	1/3 <sup>a</sup>	Maximum size tested	D-20	3/4 <sup>a</sup>		D-H-OH-45	
	0.5	1/3 <sup>a</sup>	Maximum size tested	D-20	1/3		D-H-OH-20	
Other fire partitions	1	3/4 <sup>i</sup>	Maximum size tested	D-H-45	3/4		D-H-45	
	0.5	1/3	Maximum size tested	D-H-20	1/3		D-H-20	
Exterior walls	3	1 1/2	100 sq. in. <sup>a</sup>	≤100 sq. in. = D-H-90 > 100 sq. in = D-H-W-90	Not Permitted	3	Not Permitted	W-180
	2	1 1/2	Maximum size tested	D-H 90 or D-H-W-90	1 1/2 <sup>h</sup>		D-H-OH-90 <sup>h</sup>	
						<b>Fire protection</b>		
Smoke barriers	1	3/4	Maximum size tested	D-H-45	3/4 <sup>h</sup>		D-H-45 <sup>h</sup>	
	1	1/3	Maximum size tested	D-20	3/4		D-H-OH-45	

(continued)

**TABLE 716.1(2)—continued**  
**OPENING FIRE PROTECTION ASSEMBLIES, RATINGS AND MARKINGS**

For SI: 1 square inch = 645.2 mm.

- a. Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested to ASTM E119 in accordance with Section 716.1.2.3 shall be permitted, in the maximum size tested.
- b. Under the column heading “Fire-rated glazing marking door vision panel,” W refers to the fire-resistance rating of the glazing, not the frame.
- c. See Section 716.1.2.2.1 and Table 716.1(1) for additional permitted markings.
- d. Two doors, each with a fire protection rating of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  hours, installed on opposite sides of the same opening in a fire wall, shall be deemed equivalent in fire protection rating to one 3-hour fire door.
- e. As required in Section 706.4.
- f. As allowed in Section 4.6 of NFPA 221.
- g. See Section 716.2.5.1.2.
- h. Fire-protection-rated glazing is not permitted for fire barriers required by Section 1207 of the *California Fire Code* to enclose energy storage systems. Fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263, as specified in Section 716.1.2.3, shall be permitted.
- i. Two doors, each with a fire rating of 20 minutes, installed on opposite sides of the same opening in a fire partition, shall be deemed equivalent in fire protection rating to one 45-minute fire door.

**TABLE 716.1(3)**  
**FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY FIRE PROTECTION RATINGS**

TYPE OF WALL ASSEMBLY	REQUIRED WALL ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	MINIMUM FIRE WINDOW ASSEMBLY RATING (hours)	FIRE-RATED GLAZING MARKING
Interior walls			
Fire walls	All	NP <sup>a</sup>	W-XXX <sup>b</sup>
Fire barriers	>1	NP <sup>a</sup>	W-XXX <sup>b</sup>
	1	NP <sup>a</sup>	W-XXX <sup>b</sup>
Atrium separations (Section 707.3.6), Incidental use areas (Section 707.3.7), <sup>c</sup> Mixed occupancy separations (Section 707.3.9)	1	$\frac{3}{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
Fire partitions	1	$\frac{3}{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
	0.5	$\frac{1}{3}$	OH-20 or W-30
Smoke barriers	1	$\frac{3}{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
Exterior walls	>1	$1\frac{1}{2}$	OH-90 or W-XXX <sup>b</sup>
	1	$\frac{3}{4}$	OH-45 or W-60
	0.5	$\frac{1}{3}$	OH-20 or W-30
Party wall	All	NP	Not Applicable

NP = Not Permitted.

- a. Not permitted except fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263, as specified in Section 716.1.2.3.
- b. XXX = The fire rating duration period in minutes, which shall be equal to the fire-resistance rating required for the wall assembly.
- c. Fire-protection-rated glazing is not permitted for fire barriers required by Section 1207 of the *California Fire Code* to enclose energy storage systems. Fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263, as specified in Section 716.1.2.3, shall be permitted.

**716.1.2.2.2 Fire-protection-rated glazing identification.** For fire-protection-rated glazing, the label shall bear the following identification required in Tables 716.1(1) and 716.1(3): “OH – XXX.” “OH” indicates that the glazing meets both the fire protection and the hose-stream requirements of NFPA 257 or UL 9 and is permitted to be used in fire window openings. The placeholder “XXX” represents the fire-rating period, in minutes.

**716.1.2.2.3 Fire-resistance-rated glazing identification.** For fire-resistance-rated glazing, the label shall bear the identification required in Section 703.4 and Table 716.1(1).

**716.1.2.2.4 Fire-rated glazing that exceeds the code requirements.** Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked as complying with hose stream requirements (H) shall be permitted in applications that do not require

compliance with hose stream requirements. Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked as complying with temperature rise requirements (T) shall be permitted in applications that do not require compliance with temperature rise requirements. Fire-rated glazing assemblies marked with ratings (XXX) that exceed the ratings required by this code shall be permitted.

**716.1.2.3 Fire-resistance-rated glazing.** Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated wall or floor/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and labeled in accordance with Section 703.4 shall not otherwise be required to comply with this section where used as part of a wall or floor/ceiling assembly.

**716.1.2.3.1 Glazing in fire door and fire window assemblies.** Fire-resistance-rated glazing shall be permitted in fire door and fire window assemblies

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

where tested and installed in accordance with their listings and where in compliance with the requirements of this section.

**716.2 Fire door assemblies.** Fire door assemblies required by other sections of this code shall comply with the provisions of this section. Fire door frames with transom lights, sidelights or both shall be permitted in accordance with Section 716.2.5.4.

**716.2.1 Testing requirements.** Approved fire door and fire shutter assemblies shall be constructed of any material or assembly of component materials that conforms to the test requirements of Sections 716.2.1.1 through 716.2.1.4 and the fire protection rating indicated in Table 716.1(2).

### Exceptions:

1. Labeled protective assemblies that conform to the requirements of this section or UL 10A, UL 14B and UL 14C for tin-clad fire door assemblies.
2. Floor fire door assemblies in accordance with Section 712.1.13.1.

**716.2.1.1 Side-hinged or pivoted swinging doors.** Fire door assemblies with side-hinged and pivoted swinging doors shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C. For tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 252, the fire test shall be conducted using the positive pressure method specified in the standard.

**716.2.1.2 Other types of assemblies.** Fire door assemblies with other types of doors, including swinging elevator doors, horizontal sliding fire doors, rolling steel fire doors, fire shutters, bottom- and side-hinged chute intake doors, and top-hinged chute discharge doors, shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10B. For tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 252, the neutral pressure plane in the furnace shall be maintained as nearly equal to the atmospheric pressure as possible at the top of the door, as specified in the standard.

**716.2.1.3 Glazing in transoms lights and sidelights in corridors and smoke barriers.** Glazing material in any other part of the door assembly, including transom lights and sidelights, shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 257 or UL 9, including the hose stream test, in accordance with Section 716.3.1.1.

**716.2.1.4 Smoke and draft control.** Fire door assemblies that serve as smoke and draft control assemblies shall be tested in accordance with UL 1784.

**716.2.2 Performance requirements.** Fire door assemblies shall be installed in the assemblies specified in Table 716.1(2) and shall comply with the fire protection rating specified.

**716.2.2.1 Door assemblies in corridors and smoke barriers.** Fire door assemblies required to have a minimum fire protection rating of 20 minutes where located in corridor walls or smoke barrier walls having a fire-resistance rating in accordance with Table 716.1(2)

shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252 or UL 10C without the hose stream test.

### Exceptions:

1. Viewports that require a hole not larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter through the door, have not less than a 0.25-inch-thick (6.4 mm) glass disc and the holder is of metal that will not melt out where subject to temperatures of 1,700°F (927°C).
2. Corridor door assemblies in occupancies of Group I-2 and I-2.1 in fully sprinklered buildings shall be in accordance with Section 407.3.1.
3. Unprotected openings shall be permitted for corridors in multitheater complexes where each motion picture auditorium has not fewer than one-half of its required exit or exit access doorways opening directly to the exterior or into an exit passageway.
4. Horizontal sliding doors in smoke barriers that comply with Sections 408.6 and 408.8.1 in occupancies in Group I-3.
5. *Group I-3 occupancy cell or room doors that have any of the following as integral parts of the rated door assembly:*

*Sidelights, Cuff Ports, Speaker Ports and open into a required exit corridor within a cell complex, medical suite, mental health suite, program office, family visiting area or complex control area.*

6. *Safety room doors with a food pass with a lockable shutter, no more than 4 inches (102 mm) high, and located between 26 inches (660 mm) and 32 inches (813 mm) as measured from the bottom of the food pass to the floor.*

**716.2.2.1.1 Smoke and draft control.** The air leakage rate of the door assembly shall not exceed 3.0 cubic feet per minute per square foot ( $0.01524 \text{ m}^3/\text{s} \times \text{m}^2$ ) of door opening at 0.10 inch (24.9 Pa) of water for both the ambient temperature and elevated temperature tests. Louvers shall be prohibited. Terminated stops shall be prohibited on doors required by Section 405.4.3 to comply with Section 716.2.2.1 and prohibited on doors required by Item 3 of Section 3006.3, or Section 3007.6.3 or 3008.6.3 to comply with this section.

**716.2.2.2 Door assemblies in other fire partitions.** Fire door assemblies required to have a minimum fire protection rating of 20 minutes where located in other fire partitions having a fire-resistance rating of 0.5 hour in accordance with Table 716.1(2) shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C with the hose stream test.

**716.2.2.3 Doors in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways.** Fire door assemblies in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall

have a maximum transmitted temperature rise of not more than 450°F (250°C) above ambient at the end of 30 minutes of standard fire test exposure.

**Exception:** The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

**716.2.2.3.1 Glazing in doors.** Fire-protection-rated glazing in excess of 100 square inches ( $0.065\text{ m}^2$ ) is not permitted. Fire-resistance-rated glazing in excess of 100 square inches ( $0.065\text{ m}^2$ ) shall be permitted in fire doors. Listed fire-resistance-rated glazing in a fire door shall have a maximum transmitted temperature rise in accordance with Section 716.2.2.3 when the fire door is tested in accordance with NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C.

**716.2.3 Fire doors.** Fire doors installed within a fire door assembly shall meet the fire rating indicated in Table 716.1(2).

**716.2.4 Fire door frames.** Fire door frames installed as part of a fire door assembly shall meet the fire rating indicated in Table 716.1(2).

**716.2.5 Glazing in fire door assemblies.** Fire-rated glazing conforming to the opening protection requirements in Section 716.2.1 shall be permitted in fire door assemblies.

**716.2.5.1 Size limitations.** Fire-resistance-rated glazing shall comply with the size limitations in Section 716.2.5.1.1. Fire-protection-rated glazing shall comply with the size limitations of NFPA 80, and as provided in Section 716.2.5.1.2.

**716.2.5.1.1 Fire-resistance-rated glazing in door assemblies in fire walls and fire barriers rated greater than 1 hour.** Fire-resistance-rated glazing tested to ASTM E119 or UL 263 and NFPA 252, UL 10B or UL 10C shall be permitted in fire door assemblies located in fire walls and in fire barriers in accordance with Table 716.1(2) to the maximum size tested and in accordance with their listings.

**716.2.5.1.2 Fire-protection-rated glazing in door assemblies in fire walls and fire barriers rated greater than 1 hour.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be prohibited in fire walls and fire barriers except as provided in Sections 716.2.5.1.2.1 and 716.2.5.1.2.2.

**716.2.5.1.2.1 Horizontal exits.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted as vision panels in self-closing swinging fire door assemblies serving as horizontal exits in fire walls where limited to 100 square inches ( $0.065\text{ m}^2$ ).

**716.2.5.1.2.2 Fire barriers.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted in fire doors having a  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -hour fire protection rating intended for installation in fire barriers, where limited to 100 square inches ( $0.065\text{ m}^2$ ).

**716.2.5.2 Elevator, stairway and ramp protectives.** Approved fire-protection-rated glazing used in fire

door assemblies in elevator, stairway and ramp enclosures shall be so located as to furnish clear vision of the passageway or approach to the elevator, stairway or ramp.

**716.2.5.3 Glazing in door assemblies in corridors and smoke barriers.** In a 20-minute fire door assembly, the glazing material in the door itself shall have a minimum fire-protection-rated glazing of 20 minutes and shall be exempt from the hose stream test.

**716.2.5.4 Fire door frames with transom lights and sidelights.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted in door frames with transom lights, sidelights or both, where a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour fire protection rating or less is required and in 2-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior walls in accordance with Table 716.1(2). Fire door frames with transom lights, sidelights or both, installed with fire-resistance-rated glazing tested as an assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be permitted where a fire protection rating exceeding  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour is required in accordance with Table 716.1(2).

#### **716.2.5.4.1 Energy storage system separation.**

Fire-protection-rated glazing shall not be permitted in fire door frames with transom lights and sidelights in fire barriers required by Section 1207 of the *California Fire Code* to enclose energy storage systems.

**716.2.6 Fire door hardware and closers.** Fire door hardware and closers shall be installed on fire door assemblies in accordance with the requirements of this section.

**716.2.6.1 Door closing.** Fire doors shall be latching and self- or automatic-closing in accordance with this section.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Fire doors located in common walls separating sleeping units in Group R-1 shall be permitted without automatic- or self-closing devices.
2. The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I emergency recall operation.

**716.2.6.2 Latch required.** Unless otherwise specifically permitted, single side-hinged swinging fire doors and both leaves of pairs of side-hinged swinging fire doors shall be provided with an active latch bolt that will secure the door when it is closed.

**716.2.6.3 Chute intake door latching.** Chute intake doors shall be positive latching, remaining latched and closed in the event of latch spring failure during a fire emergency.

**716.2.6.4 Automatic-closing fire door assemblies.** Automatic-closing fire door assemblies shall be self-closing in accordance with NFPA 80.

**716.2.6.5 Delayed-action closers.** Doors required to be self-closing and not required to be automatic closing shall be permitted to be equipped with delayed-action closers.

**716.2.6.6 Smoke-activated doors.** Automatic-closing doors installed in the following locations shall be permitted to have hold-open devices. Doors shall automatically close by the actuation of smoke detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 or by loss of power to the smoke detector or hold-open device. Doors that are automatic-closing by smoke detection shall not have more than a 10-second delay before the door starts to close after the smoke detector is actuated. Automatic-closing doors that protect openings installed in the following locations shall comply with this section:

1. In walls that separate incidental uses in accordance with Section 509.4.
2. In fire walls in accordance with Section 706.8.
3. In fire barriers in accordance with Section 707.6.
4. In fire partitions in accordance with Section 708.6.
5. In smoke barriers in accordance with Section 709.5.
6. In smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710.5.2.3.
7. In shaft enclosures in accordance with Section 713.7.
8. In waste and linen chutes, discharge openings and access and discharge rooms in accordance with Section 713.13. Loading doors installed in waste and linen chutes shall meet the requirements of Sections 716.2.6.1 and 716.2.6.3.
9. *[SFM] Doors installed in walls required to be fire rated in accordance with Section 509.4.*
10. *[SFM] Doors installed in walls required to be fire rated in accordance with Section 508.4.*

*In Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies smoke activated doors installed in the above locations shall be automatic closing by actuation of the fire alarm system, or actuation of smoke detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3, or activation of the sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.1.*

**716.2.6.7 Doors in pedestrian ways.** Vertical sliding or vertical rolling steel fire doors in openings through which pedestrians travel shall be heat activated or activated by smoke detectors with alarm verification.

**716.2.7 Swinging fire shutters.** Where fire shutters of the swinging type are installed in exterior openings, not less than one row in every three vertical rows shall be arranged to be readily opened from the outside, and shall be identified by distinguishing marks or letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high.

**716.2.8 Rolling fire shutters.** Where fire shutters of the rolling type are installed, such shutters shall include approved automatic-closing devices.

**716.2.9 Labeled protective assemblies.** Fire door assemblies shall be labeled by an approved agency. The labels

shall comply with NFPA 80, and shall be permanently affixed to the door or frame.

**716.2.9.1 Fire door labeling requirements.** Fire doors shall be labeled showing the name of the manufacturer or other identification readily traceable back to the manufacturer, the name or trademark of the third-party inspection agency, the fire protection rating and, where required for fire doors in interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways by Section 716.2.2.3, the maximum transmitted temperature end point. Smoke and draft control doors complying with UL 1784 shall be labeled as such and shall comply with Section 716.2.9.3. Labels shall be approved and permanently affixed. The label shall be applied at the factory or location where fabrication and assembly are performed.

**716.2.9.1.1 Light kits, louvers and components.** Listed light kits and louvers and their required preparations shall be considered as part of the labeled door where such installations are done under the listing program of the third-party agency. Fire doors and fire door assemblies shall be permitted to consist of components, including glazing, vision light kits and hardware that are listed or classified and labeled for such use by different third-party agencies.

**716.2.9.2 Oversized doors.** Oversized fire doors shall bear an oversized fire door label by an approved agency or shall be provided with a certificate of inspection furnished by an approved testing agency. Where a certificate of inspection is furnished by an approved testing agency, the certificate shall state that the door conforms to the requirements of design, materials and construction, but has not been subjected to the fire test.

**716.2.9.3 Smoke and draft control door labeling requirements.** Smoke and draft control doors complying with UL 1784 shall be labeled in accordance with Section 716.2.9.1 and shall show the letter "S" on the fire-rating label of the door. This marking shall indicate that the door and frame assembly are in compliance where listed or labeled gasketing is installed.

**716.2.9.4 Fire door frame labeling requirements.** Fire door frames shall be labeled showing the names of the manufacturer and the third-party inspection agency.

***Exception:** In Group I-3 doors that are required to be 45 minutes or higher shall be fire-rated assemblies or certified by the manufacturer as being equivalent to the required standard.*

**716.2.9.5 Labeling.** Fire-rated glazing shall bear a label or other identification showing the name of the manufacturer, the test standard and information required in Table 716.1(1) that shall be issued by an approved agency and shall be permanently identified on the glazing.

**716.2.9.6 Fire door operator labeling requirements.** Fire door operators for horizontal sliding doors shall be labeled and listed for use with the assembly.

**716.2.10 Installation of door assemblies in corridors and smoke barriers.** Installation of smoke doors shall be in accordance with NFPA 105.

**716.3 Fire window assemblies.** Fire window assemblies required by other sections of this code shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**716.3.1 Testing requirements.** Fire window assemblies shall be constructed of any material or assembly of component materials that conforms to the test requirements of Sections 716.3.1.1 and 716.3.1.2 and the fire protection rating indicated in Table 716.1(3).

**716.3.1.1 Testing under positive pressure.** NFPA 257 or UL 9 shall evaluate fire-protection-rated glazing under positive pressure. Within the first 10 minutes of a test, the pressure in the furnace shall be adjusted so not less than two-thirds of the test specimen is above the neutral pressure plane, and the neutral pressure plane shall be maintained at that height for the balance of the test.

**716.3.1.2 Nonsymmetrical glazing systems.** Nonsymmetrical fire-protection-rated glazing systems in fire partitions, fire barriers or in exterior walls with a fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less pursuant to Section 705 shall be tested with both faces exposed to the furnace, and the assigned fire protection rating shall be the shortest duration obtained from the two tests conducted in compliance with NFPA 257 or UL 9.

**716.3.2 Performance requirements.** Fire window assemblies shall be installed in the assemblies and comply with the fire protection rating specified in Table 716.1(3).

**716.3.2.1 Interior fire window assemblies.** Fire-protection-rated glazing used in fire window assemblies located in fire partitions and fire barriers shall be limited to use in assemblies with a maximum fire-resistance rating of 1 hour in accordance with this section.

**716.3.2.1.1 Where  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour-fire-protection window assemblies permitted.** Fire-protection-rated glazing requiring 45-minute opening protection in accordance with Table 716.1(3) shall be limited to fire partitions designed in accordance with Section 708 and fire barriers utilized in the applications set forth in Sections 707.3.6, 707.3.7 and 707.3.9 where the fire-resistance rating does not exceed 1 hour. Fire-resistance-rated glazing assemblies tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall not be subject to the limitations of this section.

**716.3.2.1.1.1 Energy storage system separation.** Fire-protection-rated glazing is not permitted for use in fire window assemblies in fire barriers required by Section 1207 of the *California Fire Code* to enclose energy storage systems.

**716.3.2.1.2 Area limitations.** The total area of the glazing in fire-protection-rated window assemblies shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of a common wall with any room.

**716.3.2.1.3 Where  $\frac{1}{3}$ -hour-fire-protection window assemblies permitted.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be permitted in window assemblies tested to NFPA 257 or UL 9 in fire partitions requiring  $\frac{1}{3}$ -hour opening protection in accordance with Table 716.1(3).

**716.3.3 Fire window frames.** Fire window frames installed with a fire window assembly shall meet the fire-protection rating indicated in Table 716.1(3).

**716.3.3.1 Window mullions.** Metal mullions that exceed a nominal height of 12 feet (3658 mm) shall be protected with materials to afford the same fire-resistance rating as required for the wall construction in which the protective is located.

**716.3.4 Fire-protection-rated glazing.** Glazing in fire window assemblies shall be fire protection rated in accordance with this section and Table 716.1(3). Fire-protection-rated glazing in fire window assemblies shall be tested in accordance with and shall meet the acceptance criteria of NFPA 257 or UL 9. Openings in nonfire-resistance-rated exterior wall assemblies that require protection in accordance with Section 705.3, 705.8, 705.8.5 or 705.8.6 shall have a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour. Fire-protection-rated glazing in  $\frac{1}{2}$ -hour fire-resistance-rated partitions is permitted to have a 20-minute fire protection rating.

**716.3.4.1 Glass and glazing.** Glazing in fire window assemblies shall be fire-protection-rated glazing installed in accordance with and complying with the size limitations set forth in NFPA 80.

**716.3.5 Labeled protective assemblies.** Glazing in fire window assemblies shall be labeled by an approved agency. The labels shall comply with NFPA 80 and Section 716.3.5.2.

**716.3.5.1 Fire window frames.** Fire window frames shall be approved for the intended application.

**716.3.5.2 Labeling requirements.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall bear a label or other identification showing the name of the manufacturer, the test standard and information required in Section 716.1.2.2.2 and Table 716.1(3) that shall be issued by an approved agency and permanently identified on the glazing.

**716.3.6 Installation.** Fire window assemblies shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**716.3.6.1 Closure.** Fire-protection-rated glazing shall be in the fixed position or be automatic-closing and shall be installed in labeled frames.

**716.4 Fire protective curtain assembly.** Approved fire protective curtain assemblies shall be constructed of any materials or assembly of component materials tested without hose stream in accordance with UL 10D, and shall comply with the Sections 716.4.1 through 716.4.3

**716.4.1 Label.** Fire protective curtain assemblies used as opening protectives in fire-rated walls and smoke partitions shall be labeled in accordance with Section 716.2.9.

**716.4.2 Smoke and draft control.** Fire protective curtain assemblies used to protect openings where smoke and

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

draft control assemblies are required shall comply with Section 716.2.1.4.

**716.4.3 Installation.** Fire protective curtain assemblies shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80.

## SECTION 717 DUCTS AND AIR TRANSFER OPENINGS

**717.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the protection of duct penetrations and air transfer openings in assemblies required to be protected and duct penetrations in nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.

**717.1.1 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Ducts transitioning horizontally between shafts shall not require a shaft enclosure provided that the duct penetration into each associated shaft is protected with dampers complying with this section.

**717.1.2 Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated assemblies without dampers.** Ducts that penetrate fire-resistance-rated walls and are not required by this section to have fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.3 through 714.4.3. Ducts that penetrate horizontal assemblies not required to be contained within a shaft and not required by this section to have fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of Sections 714.5 through 714.6.2.

**717.1.2.1 Ducts that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated assemblies.** The space around a duct penetrating a nonfire-resistance-rated floor assembly shall comply with Section 717.6.3.

**717.2 Installation.** Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers and ceiling radiation dampers located within air distribution and smoke control systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, the dampers' listing and Sections 717.2.1 through 717.2.3.

**717.2.1 Smoke control system.** Where the installation of a fire damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, approved alternative protection shall be utilized. Where mechanical systems including ducts and dampers utilized for normal building ventilation serve as part of the smoke control system, the expected performance of these systems in smoke control mode shall be addressed in the rational analysis required by Section 909.4.

**717.2.2 Hazardous exhaust ducts.** Fire dampers for hazardous exhaust duct systems shall comply with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**717.2.3 Static dampers.** Fire dampers and ceiling radiation dampers that are listed for use in static systems shall only be installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems that are automatically shut down in the event of a fire.

**717.3 Damper testing, ratings and actuation.** Damper testing, ratings and actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.1 through 717.3.3.

**717.3.1 Damper testing.** Dampers shall be listed and labeled in accordance with the standards in this section.

1. Fire dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555.
2. Smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555S.
3. Combination fire/smoke dampers shall comply with the requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S.
4. Ceiling radiation dampers shall comply with the requirements of UL 555C or shall be tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. Corridor dampers shall comply with requirements of both UL 555 and UL 555S. Corridor dampers shall demonstrate acceptable closure performance when subjected to 150 feet per minute (0.76 mps) velocity across the face of the damper during the UL 555 fire exposure test.

**717.3.2 Damper rating.** Damper ratings shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.2.1 through 717.3.2.4.

**717.3.2.1 Fire damper ratings.** Fire dampers shall have the minimum rating specified in Table 717.3.2.1.

TABLE 717.3.2.1  
FIRE DAMPER RATING

TYPE OF PENETRATION	MINIMUM DAMPER RATING (hours)
Less than 3-hour fire-resistance-rated assemblies	1.5
3-hour or greater fire-resistance-rated assemblies	3

**717.3.2.2 Smoke damper ratings.** Smoke damper leakage ratings shall be Class I or II. Elevated temperature ratings shall be not less than 250°F (121°C).

**717.3.2.3 Combination fire/smoke damper ratings.** Combination fire/smoke dampers shall have the minimum rating specified for fire dampers in Table 717.3.2.1 and shall have the minimum rating specified for smoke dampers in Section 717.3.2.2.

**717.3.2.4 Corridor damper ratings.** Corridor dampers shall have the following minimum ratings:

1. One-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. Class I or II leakage rating as specified in Section 717.3.2.2.

**717.3.3 Damper actuation.** Damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 through 717.3.3.5 as applicable.

**717.3.3.1 Fire damper actuation.** Primary heat responsive devices used to actuate fire dampers shall meet one of the following requirements:

1. The operating temperature shall be approximately 50°F (10°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

2. The operating temperature shall be not more than 350°F (177°C) where located in a smoke control system complying with Section 909.

**717.3.3.2 Smoke damper actuation.** The smoke damper shall close upon actuation of a listed smoke detector or detectors installed in accordance with Section 907.3 and one of the following methods, as applicable:

1. Where a smoke damper is installed within a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes within the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a smoke damper is installed above smoke barrier doors in a smoke barrier, a spot-type detector shall be installed on either side of the smoke barrier door opening. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
3. Where a smoke damper is installed within an air transfer opening in a wall, a spot-type detector shall be installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of the damper. The detector shall be listed for releasing service if used for direct interface with the damper.
4. Where a smoke damper is installed in a corridor wall or ceiling, the damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the corridor.
5. Where a smoke detection system is installed in all areas served by the duct in which the damper will be located, the smoke dampers shall be permitted to be controlled by the smoke detection system.

**717.3.3.3 Combination fire/smoke damper actuation.** Combination fire/smoke damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 and 717.3.3.2. Combination fire/smoke dampers installed in smoke control system shaft penetrations shall not be activated by local area smoke detection unless it is secondary to the smoke management system controls.

**717.3.3.4 Ceiling radiation damper actuation.** The operating temperature of a ceiling radiation damper actuation device shall be 50°F (27.8°C) above the normal temperature within the duct system, but not less than 160°F (71°C).

**717.3.3.5 Corridor damper actuation.** Corridor damper actuation shall be in accordance with Sections 717.3.3.1 and 717.3.3.2.

**717.4 Access and identification.** Access and identification of fire and smoke dampers shall comply with Sections 717.4.1 through 717.4.2.

**717.4.1 Access.** Fire and smoke dampers shall be provided with an approved means of access that is large enough to permit inspection and maintenance of the damper and its operating parts. Dampers equipped with fusible links, internal operators, or both shall be provided with an access door that is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) square or provided with a removable duct section.

**717.4.1.1 Access openings.** The access shall not affect the integrity of fire-resistance-rated assemblies. The access openings shall not reduce the fire-resistance rating of the assembly. Access doors in ducts shall be tight fitting and suitable for the required duct construction.

**717.4.1.2 Restricted access.** Where space constraints or physical barriers restrict access to a damper for periodic inspection and testing, the damper shall be a single- or multi-blade type damper and shall comply with the remote inspection requirements of NFPA 80 or NFPA 105.

**717.4.2 Identification.** Access points shall be permanently identified on the exterior by a label having letters not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in height reading: "FIRE/SMOKE DAMPER," "SMOKE DAMPER" or "FIRE DAMPER."

**717.5 Where required.** Fire dampers, smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers, ceiling radiation dampers and corridor dampers shall be provided at the locations prescribed in Sections 717.5.1 through 717.5.7 and 717.6. Where an assembly is required to have both fire dampers and smoke dampers, combination fire/smoke dampers or a fire damper and a smoke damper shall be provided.

**717.5.1 Fire walls.** Ducts and air transfer openings permitted in fire walls in accordance with Section 706.11 shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

**717.5.1.1 Horizontal exits.** A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a fire wall that serves as a horizontal exit.

**717.5.2 Fire barriers.** In other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal. Ducts and air transfer openings of fire barriers shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways, except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

**Exceptions:** Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where any of the following apply:

1. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

2. Ducts are used as part of an approved smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 and where the use of a fire damper would interfere with the operation of a smoke control system.
3. Such walls are penetrated by fully ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, are in areas of other than Group H and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. For the purposes of this exception, a fully ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than No. 26 gage thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals. Nonmetal flexible air connectors shall be permitted at the following locations *in accordance with Section 603 of the California Mechanical Code:*

- 3.1. At the duct connection to the air handling unit or equipment located within the mechanical room.
- 3.2. From an overhead metal duct to a ceiling diffuser within the same room.

**[SFM]** For Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, ducts and air transfer openings of fire barriers shall be protected with approved fire and smoke dampers installed in accordance with their listing. Ducts and air transfer openings shall not penetrate exit enclosures and exit passageways except as permitted by Sections 1023.5 and 1024.6, respectively.

### Exceptions:

1. Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of fire barriers where penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 as part of the fire-resistance rated assembly.
2. Fire and smoke dampers are not required where ducts are used as part of an approved smoke control system in accordance with Section 909 and where the use of a fire or smoke damper would interfere with the operation of a smoke control system.

**717.5.2.1 Horizontal exits.** A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a fire barrier that serves as a horizontal exit.

**717.5.3 Shaft enclosures.** Shaft enclosures that are permitted to be penetrated by ducts and air transfer open-

ings shall be protected with listed fire and smoke dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

### Exceptions:

1. Fire dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where any of the following criteria are met:
  - 1.1. Steel exhaust subducts having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm) are extended not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically in exhaust shafts, and an exhaust fan is installed at the upper terminus of the shaft that is powered continuously in accordance with Section 909.11, so as to maintain a continuous upward airflow to the outdoors.
  - 1.2. Penetrations are tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 as part of the fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 1.3. Ducts are used as part of an approved smoke control system designed and installed in accordance with Section 909 and where the fire damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
  - 1.4. The penetrations are in parking garage exhaust or supply shafts that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. In Group B and R occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where all of the following criteria are met:
  - 2.1. Kitchen, clothes dryer, bathroom and toilet room exhaust openings are installed with steel exhaust subducts, having a wall thickness of not less than 0.0187 inch (0.4712 mm).
  - 2.2. The subducts extend not less than 22 inches (559 mm) vertically.
  - 2.3. An exhaust fan is installed at the upper terminus of the shaft that is powered continuously in accordance with the provisions of Section 909.11, so as to maintain a continuous upward airflow to the outdoors.
3. Smoke dampers are not required at penetration of exhaust or supply shafts in parking garages that are separated from other building shafts by not less than 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
4. Smoke dampers are not required at penetrations of shafts where ducts are used as part of an approved mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 and where the smoke damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.

5. Fire dampers and combination fire/smoke dampers are not required in kitchen and clothes dryer exhaust *California* where dampers are prohibited by the *California Mechanical Code*.

**717.5.3.1 Continuous upward airflow.** Fire dampers and smoke dampers shall not be installed in shafts that are required to maintain a continuous upward airflow path where closure of the damper would result in the loss of the airflow.

**717.5.4 Fire partitions.** In other than Group A, E, I and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

**Exceptions:** In occupancies other than Group H and L, fire dampers are not required where any of the following apply:

1. Corridor walls in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the duct is protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714.
2. Tenant partitions in covered and open mall buildings where the walls are not required by provisions elsewhere in the code to extend to the underside of the floor or roof sheathing, slab or deck above.
3. The duct system is constructed of approved materials in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:
  - 3.1. The duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.06 m<sup>2</sup>).
  - 3.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel not less than 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.
  - 3.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.
  - 3.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.
  - 3.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance-rated wall.
  - 3.6. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and all four sides of the sleeve with minimum 1½-inch by 1½-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with mineral wool batting on all sides.

4. Such walls are penetrated by ducted HVAC systems, have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less, and are in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. For the purposes of this exception, a ducted HVAC system shall be a duct system for conveying supply, return or exhaust air as part of the structure's HVAC system. Such a duct system shall be constructed of sheet steel not less than No. 26 gage thickness and shall be continuous from the air-handling appliance or equipment to the air outlet and inlet terminals.

For Group A, E, I and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, ducts and air transfer openings that penetrate fire partitions shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fire dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness, protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 713 and there are no openings serving the corridor.
2. Fire dampers are not required where the duct system is constructed of approved materials in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the duct penetrating the wall complies with all of the following requirements:
  - 2.1. For other than corridors in Group I-2 occupancies the duct shall not exceed 100 square inches (0.6 m<sup>2</sup>).
  - 2.2. The duct shall be constructed of steel a minimum of 0.0217 inch (0.55 mm) in thickness.
  - 2.3. The duct shall not have openings that communicate the corridor with adjacent spaces or rooms.
  - 2.4. The duct shall be installed above a ceiling.
  - 2.5. The duct shall not terminate at a wall register in the fire-resistance rated wall.
  - 2.6. The duct shall be protected as a through penetration in accordance with Section 714 or shall comply with the all of the following:
    1. A minimum 12-inch-long (305 mm) by 0.060-inch-thick (1.52 mm) steel sleeve shall be centered in each duct opening.
    2. The sleeve shall be secured to both sides of the wall and for all four sides of the sleeve with minimum 1½-inch by 1½-inch by 0.060-inch (38 mm by 38 mm by 1.52 mm) steel retaining angles.
    3. The retaining angles shall be secured to the sleeve and the wall with No. 10 (M5) screws.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

4. The annular space between the steel sleeve and the wall opening shall be filled with mineral wool battting on all sides.

**717.5.4.1 Corridors.** In other than Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, duct and air transfer openings that penetrate corridors shall be protected with dampers as follows:

1. A corridor damper shall be provided where corridor ceilings, constructed as required for the corridor walls as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 3, are penetrated.
2. A ceiling radiation damper shall be provided where the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor-ceiling or roof-ceiling assembly, constructed as permitted in Section 708.4, Exception 2, is penetrated.
3. A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft control doors in accordance with Section 716.2.2.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Smoke dampers are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an approved smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, and smoke dampers are not necessary for the operation and control of the system.
2. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.

**[SFM]** For Group A, E, H, I, L and R occupancies, high-rise buildings, and other applications listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, a listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall also be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a fire-resistance rated corridor enclosure required to have smoke and draft doors in accordance with Section 716.2.2.1 or doors that provide an effective barrier to limit the transfer of smoke in accordance with Section 407.3.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Smoke dampers are not required where ducts are used as part of an approved mechanical smoke control system designed in accordance with Section 909 and where the smoke damper will interfere with the operation of the smoke control system.
2. Smoke dampers are not required in corridor penetrations where the duct is constructed of steel not less than 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) in

thickness and there are no openings serving the corridor.

**717.5.5 Smoke barriers.** A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point a duct or air transfer opening penetrates a smoke barrier. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 717.3.3.2.

**Exception:** Smoke dampers are not required where the openings in ducts are limited to a single smoke compartment and the ducts are constructed of steel.

**717.5.6 Exterior walls.** Ducts and air transfer openings in fire-resistance-rated exterior walls required to have protected openings in accordance with Section 705.10 shall be protected with listed fire dampers installed in accordance with their listing.

**717.5.7 Smoke partitions.** A listed smoke damper designed to resist the passage of smoke shall be provided at each point that an air transfer opening penetrates a smoke partition. Smoke dampers and smoke damper actuation methods shall comply with Section 717.3.3.2.

**Exception:** Where the installation of a smoke damper will interfere with the operation of a required smoke control system in accordance with Section 909, approved alternative protection shall be utilized.

**717.6 Horizontal assemblies.** Penetrations by ducts and air transfer openings of a floor, floor/ceiling assembly or the ceiling membrane of a roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected by a shaft enclosure that complies with Section 713 or shall comply with Sections 717.6.1 through 717.6.3.

**717.6.1 Through penetrations.** In occupancies other than Groups I-2, I-2.1 and I-3, a duct constructed of approved materials in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* that penetrates a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assembly that connects not more than two stories is permitted without shaft enclosure protection, provided that a listed fire damper is installed at the floor line or the duct is protected in accordance with Section 714.5. For air transfer openings, see Section 712.1.9.

**Exception:** A duct is permitted to penetrate three floors or less without a fire damper at each floor, provided that such duct meets all of the following requirements:

1. The duct shall be contained and located within the cavity of a wall and shall be constructed of steel having a minimum wall thickness of 0.0187 inches (0.4712 mm) (No. 26 gage).
2. The duct shall open into only one dwelling unit or sleeping unit and the duct system shall be continuous from the unit to the exterior of the building.
3. The duct shall not exceed 4-inch (102 mm) nominal diameter and the total area of such ducts shall not exceed 100 square inches ( $0.065 \text{ m}^2$ ) in any 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area.
4. The annular space around the duct is protected with materials that prevent the passage of flame and hot gases sufficient to ignite cotton waste where subjected to ASTM E119 or UL 263 time-

temperature conditions under a minimum positive pressure differential of 0.01 inch (2.49 Pa) of water at the location of the penetration for the time period equivalent to the fire-resistance rating of the construction penetrated.

5. Grille openings located in a ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with a listed ceiling radiation damper installed in accordance with Section 717.6.2.1.

**717.6.2 Membrane penetrations.** Ducts and air transfer openings constructed of approved materials in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* that penetrate the ceiling membrane of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly shall be protected with one of the following:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.
2. A listed ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a duct penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

**Exceptions:**

1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
2. Where exhaust duct or outdoor air duct penetrations protected in accordance with Section 714.5.2 are located within the cavity of a wall and do not pass through another dwelling unit or tenant space.
3. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
3. A listed ceiling radiation damper installed at the ceiling line where a diffuser with no duct attached penetrates the ceiling of a fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assembly.

**Exceptions:**

1. A fire-resistance-rated assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 showing that ceiling radiation dampers are not required in order to maintain the fire-resistance rating of the assembly.
2. Where duct and air transfer openings are protected with a duct outlet penetration system tested as part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

**717.6.2.1 Ceiling radiation dampers testing and installation.** Ceiling radiation dampers shall be tested in accordance with Section 717.3.1. Ceiling radiation

dampers shall be installed in accordance with the details specified in the fire-resistance-rated assembly and the manufacturer's instructions and the listing.

**717.6.2.1.1 Dynamic systems.** Only ceiling radiation dampers labeled for use in dynamic systems shall be installed in heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems designed to operate with fans on during a fire.

**717.6.2.1.2 Static systems.** Static ceiling radiation dampers shall be provided with systems that are not designed to operate during a fire.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where a static ceiling radiation damper is installed at the opening of a duct, a smoke detector shall be installed inside the duct or outside the duct with sampling tubes protruding into the duct. The detector or tubes in the duct shall be within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the damper. Air outlets and inlets shall not be located between the detector or tubes and the damper. The detector shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity anticipated at the point where it is installed. Other than in mechanical smoke control systems, dampers shall be closed upon fan shutdown where local smoke detectors require a minimum velocity to operate.
2. Where a static ceiling radiation damper is installed in a ceiling, the ceiling radiation damper shall be permitted to be controlled by a smoke detection system installed in the same room or area as the ceiling radiation damper.
3. A static ceiling radiation damper shall be permitted to be installed in a room where an occupant sensor is provided within the room that will shut down the system.

**717.6.3 Nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies.** Duct systems constructed of approved materials in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* that penetrate nonfire-resistance-rated floor assemblies shall be protected by any of the following methods:

1. A shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 713.
2. The duct connects not more than two stories, and the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an approved noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.
3. In floor assemblies composed of noncombustible materials, a shaft shall not be required where the duct connects not more than three stories, the annular space around the penetrating duct is protected with an approved noncombustible material that resists the free passage of flame and the products of combustion and a fire damper is installed at each floor line.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**Exception:** Fire dampers are not required in ducts within individual residential dwelling units.

**717.7 Flexible ducts and air connectors.** Flexible ducts and air connectors shall not pass through any fire-resistance-rated assembly. Flexible air connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor or ceiling.

## SECTION 718 CONCEALED SPACES

**718.1 General.** Fireblocking and draftstopping shall be installed in combustible concealed locations in accordance with this section. Fireblocking shall comply with Section 718.2. Draftstopping in floor/ceiling spaces and attic spaces shall comply with Sections 718.3 and 718.4, respectively. The permitted use of combustible materials in concealed spaces of buildings of Type I or II construction shall be limited to the applications indicated in Section 718.5.

**718.2 Fireblocking.** In combustible construction, fireblocking shall be installed to cut off concealed draft openings (both vertical and horizontal) and shall form an effective barrier between floors, between a top story and a roof or attic space. Fireblocking shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 718.2.2 through 718.2.7.

**718.2.1 Fireblocking materials.** Fireblocking shall consist of the following materials:

1. Two-inch (51 mm) nominal lumber.
2. Two thicknesses of 1-inch (25 mm) nominal lumber with broken lap joints.
3. One thickness of 0.719-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels with joints backed by 0.719-inch (18.3 mm) wood structural panels.
4. One thickness of 0.75-inch (19.1 mm) particleboard with joints backed by 0.75-inch (19 mm) particleboard.
5. One-half-inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.
6. One-fourth-inch (6.4 mm) cement-based millboard.
7. Batts or blankets of mineral wool, mineral fiber or other approved materials installed in such a manner as to be securely retained in place.
8. Cellulose insulation tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and to retard the spread of fire and hot gases.
9. Mass timber complying with Section 2304.11.

**718.2.1.1 Batts or blankets of mineral wool or mineral fiber.** Batts or blankets of mineral wool or mineral fiber or other approved nonrigid materials shall be permitted for compliance with the 10-foot (3048 mm) horizontal fireblocking in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

**718.2.1.2 Unfaced fiberglass.** Unfaced fiberglass batt insulation used as fireblocking shall fill the entire cross section of the wall cavity to a minimum height of 16 inches (406 mm) measured vertically. Where piping,

conduit or similar obstructions are encountered, the insulation shall be packed tightly around the obstruction.

**718.2.1.3 Loose-fill insulation material.** Loose-fill insulation material, insulating foam sealants and caulk materials shall not be used as a fireblock unless specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and to retard the spread of fire and hot gases.

**718.2.1.4 Fireblocking integrity.** The integrity of fireblocks shall be maintained.

**718.2.1.5 Double stud walls.** Batts or blankets of mineral or glass fiber or other approved nonrigid materials shall be allowed as fireblocking in walls constructed using parallel rows of studs or staggered studs.

**718.2.2 Concealed wall spaces.** Fireblocking shall be provided in concealed spaces of stud walls and partitions, including furred spaces, and parallel rows of studs or staggered studs, as follows:

1. Vertically at the ceiling and floor levels.
2. Horizontally at intervals not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm).

**718.2.3 Connections between horizontal and vertical spaces.** Fireblocking shall be provided at interconnections between concealed vertical stud wall or partition spaces and concealed horizontal spaces created by an assembly of floor joists or trusses, and between concealed vertical and horizontal spaces such as occur at soffits, drop ceilings, cove ceilings and similar locations.

**718.2.4 Stairways.** Fireblocking shall be provided in concealed spaces between stair stringers at the top and bottom of the run. Enclosed spaces under stairways shall comply with Section 1011.7.3.

**718.2.5 Ceiling and floor openings.** Where required by Section 712.1.8, Exception 1 of Section 714.5.1.2 or Section 714.6, fireblocking of the annular space around vents, pipes, ducts, chimneys and fireplaces at ceilings and floor levels shall be installed with a material specifically tested in the form and manner intended for use to demonstrate its ability to remain in place and resist the free passage of flame and the products of combustion.

**718.2.5.1 Factory-built chimneys and fireplaces.** Factory-built chimneys and fireplaces shall be fireblocked in accordance with UL 103 and UL 127.

**718.2.6 Exterior wall coverings.** Fireblocking shall be installed within concealed spaces of exterior wall coverings and other exterior architectural elements where permitted to be of combustible construction as specified in Section 1405 or where erected with combustible frames. Fireblocking shall be installed at maximum intervals of 20 feet (6096 mm) in either dimension so that there will be no concealed space exceeding 100 square feet (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) between fireblocking. Where wood furring strips are used, they shall be of approved wood of natural decay resistance or preservative-treated wood. If noncon-

tinuous, such elements shall have closed ends, with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of separation between sections.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fireblocking of cornices is not required in single-family dwellings. Fireblocking of cornices of a two-family dwelling is required only at the line of dwelling unit separation.
2. Fireblocking shall not be required where the exterior wall covering is installed on noncombustible framing and the face of the exterior wall covering exposed to the concealed space is covered by one of the following materials:
  - 2.1. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.5 mm).
  - 2.2. Corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.
  - 2.3. Other approved noncombustible materials.
3. Fireblocking shall not be required where the exterior wall covering has been tested in accordance with, and complies with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285. The exterior wall covering shall be installed as tested in accordance with NFPA 285.

**718.2.7 Concealed sleeper spaces.** Where wood sleepers are used for laying wood flooring on masonry or concrete fire-resistance-rated floors, the space between the floor slab and the underside of the wood flooring shall be filled with an approved material to resist the free passage of flame and products of combustion or fireblocked in such a manner that open spaces under the flooring shall not exceed 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and such space shall be filled solidly under permanent partitions so that communication under the flooring between adjoining rooms shall not occur.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fireblocking is not required for slab-on-grade floors in gymnasiums.
2. Fireblocking is required only at the juncture of each alternate lane and at the ends of each lane in a bowling facility.

**718.3 Draftstopping in floors.** Draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide floor/ceiling assemblies where required by Section 708.4.2. In other than Group R occupancies, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide combustible floor/ceiling assemblies so that horizontal floor areas do not exceed 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**718.3.1 Draftstopping materials.** Draftstopping materials shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board,  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel,  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) particleboard, 1-inch (25-mm) nominal lumber, cement fiberboard, batts or blankets of mineral wool or glass fiber, or other approved materials adequately supported. The integrity of draftstops shall be maintained.

inch (9.5 mm) wood structural panel,  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) particleboard, 1-inch (25-mm) nominal lumber, cement fiberboard, batts or blankets of mineral wool or glass fiber, or other approved materials adequately supported. The integrity of draftstops shall be maintained.

**718.4 Draftstopping in attics.** Draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide attic spaces where required by Section 708.4.2. In other than Group R, draftstopping shall be installed to subdivide combustible attic spaces and combustible concealed roof spaces such that any horizontal area does not exceed 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ). Ventilation of concealed roof spaces shall be maintained in accordance with Section 1202.2.1.

**Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**718.4.1 Draftstopping materials.** Materials utilized for draftstopping of attic spaces shall comply with Section 718.3.1.

**718.4.1.1 Openings.** Openings in the partitions shall be protected by self-closing doors with automatic latches constructed as required for the partitions.

**718.5 Combustible materials in concealed spaces in Type I or II construction.** Combustible materials shall not be permitted in concealed spaces of buildings of Type I or II construction.

**Exceptions:**

1. Combustible materials in accordance with Section 603.
2. Combustible materials exposed within plenums complying with Section 602 of the *California Mechanical Code*.
3. Class A interior finish materials classified in accordance with Section 803.
4. Combustible piping within partitions or shaft enclosures installed in accordance with the provisions of this code.
5. Combustible piping within concealed ceiling spaces installed in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Plumbing Code*.
6. Combustible insulation and covering on pipe and tubing, installed in concealed spaces other than plenums, complying with Section 720.7.

## SECTION 719 FIRE-RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR PLASTER

**719.1 Thickness of plaster.** The minimum thickness of gypsum plaster or Portland cement plaster used in a fire-resistance-rated system shall be determined by the prescribed fire tests. The plaster thickness shall be measured from the face of the lath where applied to gypsum lath or metal lath.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**719.2 Plaster equivalents.** For fire-resistance purposes,  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of unsanded gypsum plaster shall be deemed equivalent to  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) of one-to-three gypsum sand plaster or 1 inch (25 mm) of Portland cement sand plaster.

**719.3 Noncombustible furring.** In buildings of Types I and II construction, plaster shall be applied directly on concrete or masonry or on approved noncombustible plastering base and furring.

**719.4 Double reinforcement.** Plaster protection more than 1 inch (25 mm) in thickness shall be reinforced with an additional layer of approved lath embedded not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) from the outer surface and fixed securely in place.

**Exception:** Solid plaster partitions or where otherwise determined by fire tests.

**719.5 Plaster alternatives for concrete.** In reinforced concrete construction, gypsum plaster or Portland cement plaster is permitted to be substituted for  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of the required poured concrete protection, except that a minimum thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) of poured concrete shall be provided in reinforced concrete floors and 1 inch (25 mm) in reinforced concrete columns in addition to the plaster finish. The concrete base shall be prepared in accordance with Section 2510.7.

## SECTION 720 THERMAL- AND SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS

**720.1 General.** Insulating materials shall comply with the requirements of this section. Where a flame spread index or a smoke-developed index is specified in this section, such index shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Any material that is subject to an increase in flame spread index or smoke-developed index beyond the limits herein established through the effects of age, moisture or other atmospheric conditions shall not be permitted. Insulating materials, when tested in accordance with the requirements of this section, shall include facings, when used, such as vapor retarders, vapor permeable membranes and similar coverings, and all layers of single and multilayer reflective foil insulation and similar materials.

### Exceptions:

1. Fiberboard insulation shall comply with Chapter 23.
2. Foam plastic insulation shall comply with Chapter 26.
3. Duct and pipe insulation and duct and pipe coverings and linings in plenums shall comply with the *California Mechanical Code*.
4. All layers of single and multilayer reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with Section 2614.

**720.2 Concealed installation.** Insulating materials, where concealed as installed in buildings of any type of construction, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

**Exception:** Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation complying with the requirements of Section 720.6 shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement but shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

**720.2.1 Facings.** Where such materials are installed in concealed spaces in buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the flame spread and smoke-developed limitations do not apply to facings, coverings, and layers of reflective foil insulation that are installed behind and in substantial contact with the unexposed surface of the ceiling, wall or floor finish.

**Exception:** All layers of single and multilayer reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with Section 2614.

**720.3 Exposed installation.** Insulating materials, where exposed as installed in buildings of any type of construction, shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

**Exception:** Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation complying with the requirements of Section 720.6 shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement but shall be required to meet a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

**720.3.1 Attic floors.** Exposed insulation materials installed on attic floors shall have a critical radiant flux of not less than 0.12 watt per square centimeter when tested in accordance with ASTM E970.

**720.4 Loose-fill insulation.** Loose-fill insulation materials that cannot be mounted in the ASTM E84 or UL 723 apparatus without a screen or artificial supports shall comply with the flame spread and smoke-developed limits of Sections 720.2 and 720.3 when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2.

**Exception:** Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation shall not be required to meet a flame spread index requirement when tested in accordance with CAN/ULC S102.2, provided that such insulation has a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 and complies with the requirements of Section 720.6.

**720.5 Roof insulation.** The use of combustible roof insulation not complying with Sections 720.2 and 720.3 shall be permitted in any type of construction provided that insulation is covered with approved roof coverings directly applied thereto.

**720.6 Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation and self-supported spray-applied cellulosic insulation.** Cellulosic fiber loose-fill insulation and self-supported spray-applied cellulosic insulation shall comply with CPSC 16 CFR Parts 1209 and 1404. Each package of such insulating material shall be clearly labeled in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Parts 1209 and 1404.

**720.7 Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing.** Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing shall have a flame

spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450.

**Exception:** Insulation and covering on pipe and tubing installed in plenums shall comply with the *California Mechanical Code*.

## SECTION 721 PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE

**721.1 General.** The provisions of this section contain prescriptive details of fire-resistance-rated building elements, components or assemblies. The materials of construction specified in Tables 721.1(1), 721.1(2) and 721.1(3) shall be assumed to have the fire-resistance ratings prescribed therein. Where materials that change the capacity for heat dissipation are incorporated into a fire-resistance-rated assembly, fire test results or other substantiating data shall be made available to the building official to show that the required fire-resistance-rating time period is not reduced.

**721.1.1 Thickness of protective coverings.** The thickness of fire-resistant materials required for protection of structural members shall be not less than set forth in Table 721.1(1), except as modified in this section. The figures shown shall be the net thickness of the protecting materials and shall not include any hollow space in back of the protection.

**721.1.2 Unit masonry protection.** Where required, metal ties shall be embedded in bed joints of unit masonry for protection of steel columns. Such ties shall be as set forth in Table 721.1(1) or be equivalent thereto.

**721.1.3 Reinforcement for cast-in-place concrete column protection.** Cast-in-place concrete protection for steel columns shall be reinforced at the edges of such members with wire ties of not less than 0.18 inch (4.6 mm) in diameter wound spirally around the columns on a pitch of not more than 8 inches (203 mm) or by equivalent reinforcement.

**721.1.4 Plaster application.** The finish coat is not required for plaster protective coatings where those coatings comply with the design mix and thickness requirements of Tables 721.1(1), 721.1(2) and 721.1(3).

**721.1.5 Bonded prestressed concrete tendons.** For members having a single tendon or more than one tendon installed with equal concrete cover measured from the nearest surface, the cover shall be not less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1). For members having multiple tendons installed with variable concrete cover, the average tendon cover shall be not less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1), provided that:

1. The clearance from each tendon to the nearest exposed surface is used to determine the average cover.
2. The clear cover for individual tendons shall not be less than one-half of that set forth in Table 721.1(1). A minimum cover of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) for slabs

and 1 inch (25 mm) for beams is required for any aggregate concrete.

3. For the purpose of establishing a fire-resistance rating, tendons having a clear covering less than that set forth in Table 721.1(1) shall not contribute more than 50 percent of the required ultimate moment capacity for members less than 350 square inches ( $0.226 \text{ m}^2$ ) in cross-sectional area and 65 percent for larger members. For structural design purposes, however, tendons having a reduced cover are assumed to be fully effective.

### 721.2 Cellular concrete. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]

**721.2.1 Use and application. [HCD 1 & HCD 2]** Controlled-density cellular concrete, when used or applied, shall be in accordance with the use of materials in Bulletin No. 65 of the Federal Housing Administration, United States Department of Housing and Urban Development.

#### Exceptions:

1. Regardless of the provisions of Subsections 3.2, 3.3, 3.4 and 3.6 in Section 3, Bulletin No. 65 provisions relating to proportioning, mixing and testing, in the following shall apply to this chapter.

1.1. Field-control weighings for control of the wet-unit weight shall be made. The design wet-unit weight for field control of the concrete shall be based on previously established data for the relation between the wet-unit weight and the air-dry-unit weight at 28 days for the mix being placed. Field-control weighings for determining the wet-unit weight shall be made at the mixer discharge and at the point of deposit. There should be one pair of weighings per batch for batch-type mixers unless equipment is provided with scales allowing the operator to adequately weigh materials.

For continuous weight-instrumented batch mixers, there should be one pair of weighings per 10 cubic yards ( $7.65 \text{ m}^3$ ). The gain in unit weight between the mixer discharge and point of deposit shall not exceed 5 percent. The wet-unit weight at the point of deposit of the concrete shall not exceed plus 5 percent of the design wet-unit weight. A variation exceeding plus 5 percent of the design wet-unit weight shall require a modification of the mix proportions, a change of materials or a change in the mixing procedure.

1.2. When tests are required by the enforcing agency, they shall be performed in the following manner:

Two test cylinders, for compressive strength tests, shall be made for each 8,000 square feet ( $743 \text{ m}^2$ ) of surface area placed. A minimum of two test cylinders shall be made each day.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

*Each strength test result shall be the average of two cylinders from the same sample tested at 28 days or at a specified earlier date.*

- 1.3. *The minimum air-dry density shall be 90 pounds per cubic foot (1,440 kg/m<sup>3</sup>). The minimum design compressive strength shall be 1,000 psi (6,890 kPa) when the curing procedure specified herein is applied. The minimum design compressive strength shall be 1,250 psi (8,619 kPa) if the slab is placed in a covered area of a building and a specified curing medium is not applied. The specified design compressive strength shall be increased 20 percent when the specified strength is greater than 1,000 psi (6,890 kPa) and the slab is placed in a covered area of a building and a specified curing medium is not applied.*
- 1.4. *The cellular concrete shall be sampled at the point of deposit in accordance with the applicable procedures of ASTM C172, Sampling Fresh Concrete. Cylinder molds shall be either 3 inches by 6 inches (76 mm by 152 mm) or 6 inches by 12 inches (152 mm by 305 mm). Lightly tap the sides of the mold with a rubber hammer while filling the mold instead of rodding the mix. Moist cure the specimens for seven days at 73.4°F (40.8°C) plus or minus 3°F (1.7°C). At the age of seven days, remove the specimens from the moist condition and store in a temperature of 73.4°F (40.8°C) plus or minus 3°F (1.7°C) and a relative humidity of 50 plus or minus 10 percent for 21 days; remove and air dry until the time of test at 28 days. The compressive strength test shall be in accordance with ASTM C39, Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens. Determine the air-dry-unit weight at 28 days.*
2. *Regardless of the provisions of Subsections 4.1 and 4.2 in Section 4 of Bulletin No. 65, relating to placing, finishing and curing, the following shall apply to these regulations.*
  - 2.1. *The concrete shall be placed, finished and cured to produce a level, smooth surface. The concrete shall be placed in a single layer to a minimum thickness of 1½ inches (38 mm). The deviation from a plan shall not exceed ¼ inch (6 mm) in any 10 feet (3048 mm). The final finish of the concrete shall be suitable for the application of the specified wear-resistant covering. Cracks wider than ⅛ inch (3 mm) shall be repaired.*
  - 2.2. *Install a water-resistant membrane between wood or plywood subfloors and the cellular*

*concrete to prevent leakage of the concrete and wetting of the subfloor. The membrane shall consist of waterproof paper or plastic sheets conforming to ASTM C171, Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete, or Type 15 roofing felt conforming to ASTM D226, D250 or D227, or Federal Specification UUB790, Building Paper Vegetable Fiber: (Kraft, Waterproofed, Water Repellent and Fire-resistant) Type 1, Grade B. The sheets shall be securely fastened to the subfloor.*

3. *Regardless of the provisions of Subsections 6.1 and 6.2 in Section 6, of Bulletin No. 65, relating to applicator qualifications and warranty, these subsections are omitted from this chapter.*

## SECTION 722 CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE

**722.1 General.** The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire resistance of specific materials or combinations of materials is established by calculations. These procedures apply only to the information contained in this section and shall not be otherwise used. The calculated fire resistance of specific materials or combinations of materials shall be established by one of the following:

1. Concrete, concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216.
2. Precast and precast, prestressed concrete assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with PCI 124.
3. Steel assemblies shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 29.
4. Exposed wood members and wood decking shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 16 of ANSI/AWC NDS.

**722.2 Concrete assemblies.** The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of concrete assemblies are established by calculations.

**722.2.1 Concrete walls.** Cast-in-place and precast concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.1. Multiwythe concrete walls shall comply with Section 722.2.1.2. Joints between precast panels shall comply with Section 722.2.1.3. Concrete walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finish shall comply with Section 722.2.1.4.

**722.2.1.1 Cast-in-place or precast walls.** The minimum equivalent thicknesses of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.1.1. For solid walls with flat vertical surfaces, the equivalent thickness is the same as the actual thickness. The values in Table 722.2.1.1 apply to plain, reinforced or prestressed concrete walls.

**TABLE 721.1(1)**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON**  
**TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS<sup>m</sup>**

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1. Steel columns and all of primary trusses (continued)	1-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 6" × 6" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel). <sup>a</sup>	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	2	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	1
	1-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 8" × 8" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel). <sup>a</sup>	2	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	1	1
	1-1.3	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12" × 12" or greater (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel). <sup>a</sup>	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	1	1	1
	1-1.4	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 6" × 6" or greater. <sup>a</sup>	3	2	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	1
	1-1.5	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 8" × 8" or greater. <sup>a</sup>	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	2	1	1
	1-1.6	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 1-1.1, members 12" × 12" or greater. <sup>a</sup>	2	1	1	1
	1-2.1	Clay or shale brick with brick and mortar fill. <sup>a</sup>	3 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	—	—	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
	1-3.1	4" hollow clay tile in two 2" layers; 1/2" mortar between tile and column; 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; tile fill. <sup>a</sup>	4	—	—	—
	1-3.2	2" hollow clay tile; 3/4" mortar between tile and column; 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" wire diameter in horizontal joints; limestone concrete fill <sup>a</sup> ; plastered with 3/4" gypsum plaster.	3	—	—	—
	1-3.3	2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile or 3/8" metal mesh 0.046" diameter wire in horizontal joints; limestone or trap-rock concrete fill <sup>a</sup> extending 1" outside column on all sides.	—	—	3	—
	1-3.4	2" hollow clay tile with outside wire ties 0.08" diameter at each course of tile with or without concrete fill; 3/4" mortar between tile and column.	—	—	—	2
	1-4.1	Cement plaster over metal lath wire tied to 3/4" cold-rolled vertical channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3" to 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> <sup>b</sup>	7/8
	1-5.1	Vermiculite concrete, 1:4 mix by volume over paper-backed wire fabric lath wrapped directly around column with additional 2" × 2" 0.065"/0.065" (No. 16/16 B.W. gage) wire fabric placed 3/4" from outer concrete surface. Wire fabric tied with 0.049" (No. 18B.W. gage) wire spaced 6" on center for inner layer and 2" on center for outer layer.	2	—	—	—
	1-6.1	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath wrapped around column and furred 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " from column flanges. Sheets lapped at ends and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) tie wire. Plaster pushed through to flanges.	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	1	—	—
	1-6.2	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over self-furring metal lath wrapped directly around column, lapped 1" and tied at 6" intervals with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire.	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	1	—
	1-6.3	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath applied to 3/4" cold-rolled channels spaced 24" apart vertically and wrapped flatwise around column.	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	—	—	—
	1-6.4	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over two layers of 1/2" plain full-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath wrapped with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20-gage wire and tied with doubled 0.035" diameter (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23" on center. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> cubic feet of aggregate for the 3-hour system.	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	2	—	—

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(1)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON**  
**TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS<sup>m</sup>**

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1. Steel columns and all of primary trusses (continued)	1-6.5	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster over one layer of $\frac{1}{2}$ " plain full-length gypsum lath applied tight to column flanges. Lath tied with doubled 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 23" on center and scratch coat wrapped with 1" hexagonal mesh 0.035" (No. 20 B.W. gage) wire fabric. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to $2\frac{1}{2}$ cubic feet of aggregate.	—	2	—	—
	1-7.1	Multiple layers of $\frac{1}{2}$ " gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> adhesively <sup>d</sup> secured to column flanges and successive layers. Wallboard applied without horizontal joints. Corner edges of each layer staggered. Wallboard layer below outer layer secured to column with doubled 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel wire ties spaced 15" on center. Exposed corners taped and treated.	—	—	2	1
	1-7.2	Three layers of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard. <sup>c</sup> First and second layer held in place by $\frac{1}{8}$ " diameter by $1\frac{3}{8}$ " long ring shank nails with $\frac{5}{16}$ " diameter heads spaced 24" on center at corners. Middle layer also secured with metal straps at mid-height and 18" from each end, and by metal corner bead at each corner held by the metal straps. Third layer attached to corner bead with 1" long gypsum wallboard screws spaced 12" on center.	—	—	$1\frac{7}{8}$	—
	1-7.3	Three layers of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard, <sup>c</sup> each layer screw attached to $1\frac{5}{8}$ " steel studs 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) at each corner of column. Middle layer also secured with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) double-strand steel wire ties, 24" on center. Screws are No. 6 by 1" spaced 24" on center for inner layer, No. 6 by $1\frac{5}{8}$ " spaced 12" on center for middle layer and No. 8 by $2\frac{1}{4}$ " spaced 12" on center for outer layer.	—	$1\frac{7}{8}$	—	—
	1-8.1	Wood-fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum-to-sand aggregate applied over metal lath. Lath lapped 1" and tied 6" on center at all end, edges and spacers with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel tie wires. Lath applied over $\frac{1}{2}$ " spacers made of $\frac{3}{4}$ " furring channel with 2" legs bent around each corner. Spacers located 1" from top and bottom of member and not greater than 40" on center and wire tied with a single strand of 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) steel tie wires. Corner bead tied to the lath at 6" on center along each corner to provide plaster thickness.	—	—	$1\frac{5}{8}$	—
	1-9.1	Minimum W8x35 wide flange steel column ( $w/d \geq 0.75$ ) with each web cavity filled even with the flange tip with normal weight carbonate or siliceous aggregate concrete (3,000 psi minimum compressive strength with $145 \text{pcf} \pm 3 \text{pcf}$ unit weight). Reinforce the concrete in each web cavity with a minimum No. 4 deformed reinforcing bar installed vertically and centered in the cavity, and secured to the column web with a minimum No. 2 horizontal deformed reinforcing bar welded to the web every 18" on center vertically. As an alternative to the No. 4 rebar, $\frac{3}{4}$ " diameter by 3" long headed studs, spaced at 12" on center vertically, shall be welded on each side of the web mid-way between the column flanges.	—	—	—	See Note n
2. Webs or flanges of steel beams and girders (continued)	2-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete (not including sandstone, granite and siliceous gravel) with 3" or finer metal mesh placed 1" from the finished surface anchored to the top flange and providing not less than 0.025 square inch of steel area per foot in each direction.	2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1	1
	2-1.2	Siliceous aggregate concrete and concrete excluded in Item 2-1.1 with 3" or finer metal mesh placed 1" from the finished surface anchored to the top flange and providing not less than 0.025 square inch of steel area per foot in each direction.	$2\frac{1}{2}$	2	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1
	2-2.1	Cement plaster on metal lath attached to $\frac{3}{4}$ " cold-rolled channels with 0.04" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 3" to 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1: $2\frac{1}{2}$ by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	$2\frac{1}{2}$ <sup>b</sup>	$\frac{7}{8}$

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(1)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON**  
**TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS<sup>m</sup>**

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
2. Webs or flanges of steel beams and girders (continued)	2-3.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on a metal lath cage, wire tied to 0.165" diameter (No. 8 B.W. gage) steel wire hangers wrapped around beam and spaced 16" on center. Metal lath ties spaced approximately 5" on center at cage sides and bottom.	—	7/8	—	—
	2-4.1	Two layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> are attached to U-shaped brackets spaced 24" on center. 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) 1 5/8" deep by 1" galvanized steel runner channels are first installed parallel to and on each side of the top beam flange to provide a 1/2" clearance to the flange. The channel runners are attached to steel deck or concrete floor construction with approved fasteners spaced 12" on center. U-shaped brackets are formed from members identical to the channel runners. At the bent portion of the U-shaped bracket, the flanges of the channel are cut out so that 1 5/8"-deep corner channels can be inserted without attachment parallel to each side of the lower flange.  As an alternative, 0.021" thick (No. 24 carbon sheet steel gage) 1" × 2" runner and corner angles shall be used in lieu of channels, and the web cutouts in the U-shaped brackets shall not be required. Each angle is attached to the bracket with 1/2"-long No. 8 self-drilling screws. The vertical legs of the U-shaped bracket are attached to the runners with one 1/2"-long No. 8 self-drilling screw. The completed steel framing provides a 2 1/8" and 1 1/2" space between the inner layer of wallboard and the sides and bottom of the steel beam, respectively. The inner layer of wallboard is attached to the top runners and bottom corner channels or corner angles with 1 1/4"-long No. 6 self-drilling screws spaced 16" on center. The outer layer of wallboard is applied with 1 3/4"-long No. 6 self-drilling screws spaced 8" on center. The bottom corners are reinforced with metal corner beads.	—	—	1 1/4	—
	2-4.2	Three layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> attached to a steel suspension system as described immediately above utilizing the 0.018" thick (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) 1" × 2" lower corner angles. The framing is located so that a 2 1/8" and 2" space is provided between the inner layer of wallboard and the sides and bottom of the beam, respectively. The first two layers of wallboard are attached as described immediately above. A layer of 0.035" thick (No. 20 B.W. gage) 1" hexagonal galvanized wire mesh is applied under the soffit of the middle layer and up the sides approximately 2". The mesh is held in position with the No. 6 1 5/8"-long screws installed in the vertical leg of the bottom corner angles. The outer layer of wallboard is attached with No. 6 2 1/4"-long screws spaced 8" on center. One screw is installed at the mid-depth of the bracket in each layer. Bottom corners are finished as described above.	—	1 7/8	—	—
3. Bonded pre-tensioned reinforcement in prestressed concrete <sup>e</sup>	3-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous <sup>f</sup> aggregate concrete				
		Beams or girders	4 <sup>g</sup>	3 <sup>g</sup>	2 1/2	1 1/2
		Solid <sup>h</sup>		2	1 1/2	1

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(1)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION OF STRUCTURAL PARTS BASED ON**  
**TIME PERIODS FOR VARIOUS NONCOMBUSTIBLE INSULATING MATERIALS<sup>m</sup>**

STRUCTURAL PARTS TO BE PROTECTED	ITEM NUMBER	INSULATING MATERIAL USED	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF INSULATING MATERIAL FOR THE FOLLOWING FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
4. Bonded or unbonded post-tensioned tendons in prestressed concrete <sup>e,i</sup>	4-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous <sup>f</sup> aggregate concrete Unrestrained members:				
		Solid slabs <sup>h</sup>	—	2	1½	—
		Beams and girders <sup>j</sup>				
		8" wide		4½	2½	1¾
		greater than 12" wide	3	2½	2	1½
	4-1.2	Carbonate, lightweight, sand-lightweight and siliceous aggregate Restrained members: <sup>k</sup>				
		Solid slabs <sup>h</sup>	1¼	1	¾	—
		Beams and girders <sup>j</sup>				
		8" wide	2½	2	1¾	—
		greater than 12" wide	2	1¾	1½	—
5. Reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete columns, beams girders and trusses	5-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete, members 12" or larger, square or round. (Size limit does not apply to beams and girders monolithic with floors.)	1½	1½	1½	1½
		Siliceous aggregate concrete, members 12" or larger, square or round. (Size limit does not apply to beams and girders monolithic with floors.)	2	1½	1½	1½
6. Reinforcing steel in reinforced concrete joists <sup>l</sup>	6-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete	1¼	1¼	1	¾
	6-1.2	Siliceous aggregate concrete	1¾	1½	1	¾
7. Reinforcing and tie rods in floor and roof slabs <sup>l</sup>	7-1.1	Carbonate, lightweight and sand-lightweight aggregate concrete	1	1	¾	¾
	7-1.2	Siliceous aggregate concrete	1¼	1	1	¾

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm<sup>2</sup>, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m<sup>3</sup>, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

- a. Reentrant parts of protected members to be filled solidly.
- b. Two layers of equal thickness with a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch airspace between.
- c. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in Table 721.1(1), gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided that attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard and the joints on the face layer are reinforced, and the entire surface is covered with not less than  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch gypsum veneer plaster.
- d. An approved adhesive qualified under ASTM E119 or UL 263.
- e. Where lightweight or sand-lightweight concrete having an oven-dry weight of 110 pounds per cubic foot or less is used, the tabulated minimum cover shall be permitted to be reduced 25 percent, except that the reduced cover shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch in slabs or 1½ inches in beams or girders.
- f. For solid slabs of siliceous aggregate concrete, increase tendon cover 20 percent.
- g. Adequate provisions against spalling shall be provided by U-shaped or hooped stirrups spaced not to exceed the depth of the member with a clear cover of 1 inch.
- h. Prestressed slabs shall have a thickness not less than that required in Table 721.1(3) for the respective fire-resistance time period.
- i. Fire coverage and end anchorages shall be as follows: Cover to the prestressing steel at the anchor shall be ½ inch greater than that required away from the anchor. Minimum cover to steel-bearing plate shall be 1 inch in beams and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch in slabs.
- j. For beam widths between 8 inches and 12 inches, cover thickness shall be permitted to be determined by interpolation.
- k. Interior spans of continuous slabs, beams and girders shall be permitted to be considered restrained.
- l. For use with concrete slabs having a comparable fire endurance where members are framed into the structure in such a manner as to provide equivalent performance to that of monolithic concrete construction.
- m. Generic fire-resistance ratings (those not designated as PROPRIETARY\* in the listing) in GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein specified.
- n. Additional insulating material is not required on the exposed outside face of the column flange to achieve a 1-hour fire-resistance rating.

**TABLE 721.1(2)**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS** a, o, p

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1. Brick of clay or shale	1-1.1	Solid brick of clay or shale. <sup>c</sup>	6	4.9	3.8	2.7
	1-1.2	Hollow brick, not filled.	5.0	4.3	3.4	2.3
	1-1.3	Hollow brick unit wall, grout or filled with perlite vermiculite or expanded shale aggregate.	6.6	5.5	4.4	3.0
	1-2.1	4" nominal thick units not less than 75 percent solid backed with a hat-shaped metal furring channel $\frac{3}{4}$ " thick formed from 0.021" sheet metal attached to the brick wall on 24" centers with approved fasteners, and $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard attached to the metal furring strips with 1"-long Type S screws spaced 8" on center.	—	—	5 <sup>d</sup>	—
2. Combination of clay brick and load-bearing hollow clay tile	2-1.1	4" solid brick and 4" tile (not less than 40 percent solid).	—	8	—	—
	2-1.2	4" solid brick and 8" tile (not less than 40 percent solid).	12	—	—	—
3. Concrete masonry units	3-1.1 <sup>f,g</sup>	Expanded slag or pumice.	4.7	4.0	3.2	2.1
	3-1.2 <sup>f,g</sup>	Expanded clay, shale or slate.	5.1	4.4	3.6	2.6
	3-1.3 <sup>f</sup>	Limestone, cinders or air-cooled slag.	5.9	5.0	4.0	2.7
	3-1.4 <sup>f,g</sup>	Calcareous or siliceous gravel.	6.2	5.3	4.2	2.8
4. Solid concrete <sup>h,i</sup>	4-1.1	Siliceous aggregate concrete.	7.0	6.2	5.0	3.5
		Carbonate aggregate concrete.	6.6	5.7	4.6	3.2
		Sand-lightweight concrete.	5.4	4.6	3.8	2.7
		Lightweight concrete.	5.1	4.4	3.6	2.5
5. Glazed or unglazed facing tile, non-load-bearing	5-1.1	One 2" unit cored 15 percent maximum and one 4" unit cored 25 percent maximum with $\frac{3}{4}$ " mortar-filled collar joint. Unit positions reversed in alternate courses.	—	6 $\frac{1}{8}$	—	—
	5-1.2	One 2" unit cored 15 percent maximum and one 4" unit cored 40 percent maximum with $\frac{3}{4}$ " mortar-filled collar joint. Unit positions side with $\frac{3}{4}$ " gypsum plaster. Two wythes tied together every fourth course with No. 22 gage corrugated metal ties.	—	6 $\frac{3}{4}$	—	—
	5-1.3	One unit with three cells in wall thickness, cored 29 percent maximum.	—	—	6	—
	5-1.4	One 2" unit cored 22 percent maximum and one 4" unit cored 41 percent maximum with $\frac{1}{4}$ " mortar-filled collar joint. Two wythes tied together every third course with 0.030"(No. 22 galvanized sheet steel gage) corrugated metal ties.	—	—	6	—
	5-1.5	One 4" unit cored 25 percent maximum with $\frac{3}{4}$ " gypsum plaster on one side.	—	—	4 $\frac{3}{4}$	—
	5-1.6	One 4" unit with two cells in wall thickness, cored 22 percent maximum.	—	—	—	4
	5-1.7	One 4" unit cored 30 percent maximum with $\frac{3}{4}$ " vermiculite gypsum plaster on one side.	—	—	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	—
	5-1.8	One 4" unit cored 39 percent maximum with $\frac{3}{4}$ " gypsum plaster on one side.	—	—	—	4 $\frac{1}{2}$

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS** a, o, p

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
6. Solid gypsum plaster	6-1.1	$\frac{3}{4}$ " by 0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) vertical cold-rolled channels, 16" on center with 2.6-pound flat metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6" spacing. Gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	2 <sup>d</sup>
	6-1.2	$\frac{3}{4}$ " by 0.05" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) cold-rolled channels 16" on center with metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6" spacing. Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster each side. For three-coat work, the plaster mix for the second coat shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to $2\frac{1}{2}$ cubic feet of aggregate for the 1-hour system.	—	—	$2\frac{1}{2}$	2 <sup>d</sup>
	6-1.3	$\frac{3}{4}$ " by 0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) vertical cold-rolled channels, 16" on center with $\frac{3}{8}$ " gypsum lath applied to one face and attached with sheet metal clips. Gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	2 <sup>d</sup>
	6-2.1	Studless with $\frac{1}{2}$ " full-length plain gypsum lath and gypsum plaster each side. Plaster mixed 1:1 for scratch coat and 1:2 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	2 <sup>d</sup>
	6-2.2	Studless with $\frac{1}{2}$ " full-length plain gypsum lath and perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster each side.	—	—	$2\frac{1}{2}$	2 <sup>d</sup>
	6-2.3	Studless partition with $\frac{3}{8}$ " rib metal lath installed vertically adjacent edges tied 6" on center with No. 18 gage wire ties, gypsum plaster each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	2 <sup>d</sup>
7. Solid perlite and Portland cement	7-1.1	Perlite mixed in the ratio of 3 cubic feet to 100 pounds of Portland cement and machine applied to stud side of $1\frac{1}{2}$ " mesh by 0.058-inch (No. 17 B.W. gage) paper-backed woven wire fabric lath wire-tied to 4"-deep steel trussed wire studs 16" on center. Wire ties of 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire 6" on center vertically.	—	—	$3\frac{1}{8}$	—
8. Solid neat wood fibered gypsum plaster	8-1.1	$\frac{3}{4}$ " by 0.055-inch (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) cold-rolled channels, 12" on center with 2.5-pound flat metal lath applied to one face and tied with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire at 6" spacing. Neat gypsum plaster applied each side.	—	—	2 <sup>d</sup>	—
9. Solid wallboard partition	9-1.1	One full-length layer $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> laminated to each side of 1" full-length V-edge gypsum coreboard with approved laminating compound. Vertical joints of face layer and coreboard staggered not less than 3".	—	—	2 <sup>d</sup>	—
10. Hollow (studless) gypsum wallboard partition	10-1.1	One full-length layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> attached to both sides of wood or metal top and bottom runners laminated to each side of 1" × 6" full-length gypsum coreboard ribs spaced 2" on center with approved laminating compound. Ribs centered at vertical joints of face plies and joints staggered 24" in opposing faces. Ribs may be recessed 6" from the top and bottom.	—	—	—	$2\frac{1}{4}$
	10-1.2	1" regular gypsum V-edge full-length backing board attached to both sides of wood or metal top and bottom runners with nails or $1\frac{5}{8}$ " drywall screws at 24" on center. Minimum width of runners $1\frac{5}{8}$ ". Face layer of $\frac{1}{2}$ " regular full-length gypsum wallboard laminated to outer faces of backing board with approved laminating compound.	—	—	$4\frac{5}{8}$	—

(continued)

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS** a, o, p

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
11. Noncombustible studs—interior partition with plaster each side	11-1.1	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " × 0.044" (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) steel studs spaced 24" on center. 5 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " gypsum plaster on metal lath each side mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	4 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
	11-1.2	3 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) approved nailable <sup>k</sup> studs spaced 24" on center. 5 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " neat gypsum wood-fibered plaster each side over 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " rib metal lath nailed to studs with 6d common nails, 8" on center. Nails driven 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " and bent over.	—	—	5 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	—
	11-1.3	4" × 0.044" (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped steel studs at 16" on center. On each side approved resilient clips pressed onto stud flange at 16" vertical spacing, 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " pencil rods snapped into or wire tied onto outer loop of clips, metal lath wire-tied to pencil rods at 6" intervals, 1" perlite gypsum plaster, each side.	—	7 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	—	—
	11-1.4	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.044" (No. 18 carbon sheet steel gage) steel studs spaced 16" on center. Wood fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum to sand aggregate applied on 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> -pound metal lath wire tied to studs, each side. 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " plaster applied over each face, including finish coat.	—	—	4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	—
12. Wood studs—interior partition with plaster each side	12-1.1 <sup>l,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with 5 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached by 4d common nails bent over or No. 14 gage by 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " by 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " crown width staples spaced 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
	12-1.2 <sup>l</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with metal lath and 7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " neat wood-fibered gypsum plaster each side. Lath attached by 6d common nails, 7" on center. Nails driven 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " and bent over.	—	—	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	—
	12-1.3 <sup>l</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " perforated or plain gypsum lath and 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " gypsum plaster each side. Lath nailed with 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " by No. 13 gage by 19 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>64</sub> " head plasterboard blued nails, 4" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
	12-1.4 <sup>l</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " Type X gypsum lath and 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " gypsum plaster each side. Lath nailed with 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " by No. 13 gage by 19 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>64</sub> " head plasterboard blued nails, 5" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>
13. Noncombustible studs—interior partition with gypsum wallboard each side	13-1.1	0.018" (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped studs 24" on center with one full-length layer of 5 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> applied vertically attached with 1"-long No. 6 dry wall screws to each stud. Screws are 8" on center around the perimeter and 12" on center on the intermediate stud. Where applied horizontally, the Type X gypsum wallboard shall be attached to 3 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " studs and the horizontal joints shall be staggered with those on the opposite side. Screws for the horizontal application shall be 8" on center at vertical edges and 12" on center at intermediate studs.	—	—	—	2 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
	13-1.2	0.018" (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) channel-shaped studs 25" on center with two full-length layers of 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2" Type X gypsum wallboard<sup>e</sup> applied vertically each side. First layer attached with 1"-long, No. 6 drywall screws, 8" on center around the perimeter and 12" on center on the intermediate stud. Second layer applied with vertical joints offset one stud space from first layer using 1<sup>5</sup>/<sub>8</sub>" long, No. 6 drywall screws spaced 9" on center along vertical joints, 12" on center at intermediate studs and 24" on center along top and bottom runners.</sub>	—	—	3 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	—
	13-1.3	0.055" (No. 16 carbon sheet steel gage) approved nailable metal studs <sup>e</sup> 24" on center with full-length 5 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> applied vertically and nailed 7" on center with 6d cement-coated common nails. Approved metal fastener grips used with nails at vertical butt joints along studs.	—	—	—	4 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS** a, o, p

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
14. Wood studs—interior partition with gypsum wallboard each side	14-1.1 <sup>h,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with two layers of $\frac{3}{8}$ " regular gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> each side, 4d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 8" on center first layer, 5d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 8" on center second layer with laminating compound between layers, joints staggered. First layer applied full length vertically, second layer applied horizontally or vertically.	—	—	—	5
	14-1.2 <sup>l,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with two layers $\frac{1}{2}$ " regular gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> applied vertically or horizontally each side <sup>k</sup> , joints staggered. Nail base layer with 5d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 8" on center face layer with 8d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 8" on center.	—	—	—	5 $\frac{1}{2}$
	14-1.3 <sup>l,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 24" on center with $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> applied vertically or horizontally nailed with 6d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 7" on center with end joints on nailing members. Stagger joints each side.	—	—	—	4 $\frac{3}{4}$
	14-1.4 <sup>l</sup>	2" × 4" fire-retardant-treated wood studs spaced 24" on center with one layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> applied with face paper grain (long dimension) parallel to studs. Wallboard attached with 6d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 7" on center.	—	—	—	4 $\frac{3}{4}$ <sup>d</sup>
	14-1.5 <sup>l,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with two layers $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> each side. Base layers applied vertically and nailed with 6d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 9" on center. Face layer applied vertically or horizontally and nailed with 8d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails at 7" on center. For nail-adhesive application, base layers are nailed 6" on center. Face layers applied with coating of approved wallboard adhesive and nailed 12" on center.	—	—	6	—
	14-1.6 <sup>l</sup>	2" × 3" fire-retardant-treated wood studs spaced 24" on center with one layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> applied with face paper grain (long dimension) at right angles to studs. Wallboard attached with 6d cement-coated box nails spaced 7" on center.	—	—	—	3 $\frac{5}{8}$ <sup>d</sup>
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.1 <sup>l,m</sup>	Exterior surface with $\frac{3}{4}$ " drop siding over $\frac{1}{2}$ " gypsum sheathing on 2" × 4" wood studs at 16" on center, interior surface treatment as required for 1-hour-rated exterior or interior 2" × 4" wood stud partitions. Gypsum sheathing nailed with $1\frac{3}{4}$ " by No.11 gage by $\frac{7}{16}$ " head galvanized nails at 8" on center. Siding nailed with 7d galvanized smooth box nails.	—	—	—	Varies
	15-1.2 <sup>l,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with metal lath and $\frac{3}{4}$ " cement plaster on each side. Lath attached with 6d common nails 7" on center driven to 1" minimum penetration and bent over. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	—	5 $\frac{3}{8}$
	15-1.3 <sup>l,m</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs 16" on center with $\frac{7}{8}$ " cement plaster (measured from the face of studs) on the exterior surface with interior surface treatment as required for interior wood stud partitions in this table. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	—	Varies
	15-1.4	3 $\frac{5}{8}$ " No. 16 gage noncombustible studs 16" on center with $\frac{7}{8}$ " cement plaster (measured from the face of the studs) on the exterior surface with interior surface treatment as required for interior, nonbearing, noncombustible stud partitions in this table. Plaster mix 1:4 for scratch coat and 1:5 for brown coat, by volume, cement to sand.	—	—	—	Varies <sup>d</sup>

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS<sup>a, o, p</sup>**

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.5 <sup>m</sup>	2 <sup>1/4</sup> " × 3 <sup>3/4</sup> " clay face brick with cored holes over 1/2" gypsum sheathing on exterior surface of 2" × 4" wood studs at 16" on center and two layers 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>e</sup> on interior surface. Sheathing placed horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs nailed 6" on center with 1 <sup>3/4</sup> " × No. 11 gage by 7/16" head galvanized nails. Inner layer of wallboard placed horizontally or vertically and nailed 8" on center with 6d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails. Outer layer of wallboard placed horizontally or vertically and nailed 8" on center with 8d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails. Joints staggered with vertical joints over studs. Outer layer joints taped and finished with compound. Nail heads covered with joint compound. 0.035 inch (No. 20 galvanized sheet gage) corrugated galvanized steel wall ties 3/4" by 6 <sup>5/8</sup> " attached to each stud with two 8d cooler <sup>n</sup> or wallboard <sup>n</sup> nails every sixth course of bricks.	—	—	10	—
	15-1.6 <sup>l, m</sup>	2" × 6" fire-retardant-treated wood studs 16" on center. Interior face has two layers of 5/8" Type X gypsum with the base layer placed vertically and attached with 6d box nails 12" on center. The face layer is placed horizontally and attached with 8d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. The exterior face has a base layer of 5/8" Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by self-furred exterior lath attached with 2 <sup>1/2</sup> ", No. 12 gage galvanized roofing nails with a 3/8" diameter head and spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a 1/2" brown coat is then applied. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:3 by weight, cement to sand with 10 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per sack of cement. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, cement to sand with the same amounts of hydrated lime and approved additives or admixtures used in the scratch coat.	—	—	8 <sup>1/4</sup>	—
	15-1.7 <sup>l, m</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs 16" on center. The exterior face has a layer of 5/8" Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by 1" by No. 18 gage self-furred exterior lath attached with 8d by 2 <sup>1/2</sup> "-long galvanized roofing nails spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a 1/2" scratch coat, a bonding agent and a 1/2" brown coat and a finish coat is then applied. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:3 by weight, cement to sand with 10 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per sack of cement. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, cement to sand with the same amounts of hydrated lime and approved additives or admixtures used in the scratch coat. The interior is covered with 3/8" gypsum lath with 1" hexagonal mesh of 0.035 inch (No. 20 B.W. gage) woven wire lath furred out 5/16" and 1" perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster. Lath nailed with 1 <sup>1/8</sup> " by No. 13 gage by 19/64" head plasterboard glued nails spaced 5" on center. Mesh attached by 1 <sup>3/4</sup> " by No. 12 gage by 3/8" head nails with 3/8" furring, spaced 8" on center. The plaster mix shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2 <sup>1/2</sup> cubic feet of aggregate.	—	—	8 <sup>3/8</sup>	—

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS** a, o, p

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.8 <sup>l, m</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs 16" on center. The exterior face has a layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum sheathing placed vertically with 6d box nails 8" on center at joints and 12" on center elsewhere. An approved building paper is next applied, followed by 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " by No. 17 gage self-furred exterior lath attached with 8d by 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ "-long galvanized roofing nails spaced 6" on center along each stud. Cement plaster consisting of a $\frac{1}{2}$ " scratch coat and a $\frac{1}{2}$ " brown coat is then applied. The plaster may be placed by machine. The scratch coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:4 by weight, plastic cement to sand. The brown coat is mixed in the proportion of 1:5 by weight, plastic cement to sand. The interior is covered with $\frac{3}{8}$ " gypsum lath with 1" hexagonal mesh of No. 20-gage woven wire lath furred out $\frac{5}{16}$ " and 1" perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster. Lath nailed with 1 $\frac{1}{8}$ " by No. 13 gage by $\frac{19}{64}$ " head plasterboard glued nails spaced 5" on center. Mesh attached by 1 $\frac{3}{4}$ " by No. 12 gage by $\frac{3}{8}$ " head nails with $\frac{3}{8}$ " furlings, spaced 8" on center. The plaster mix shall not exceed 100 pounds of gypsum to 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ cubic feet of aggregate.	—	—	8 $\frac{3}{8}$	—
	15-1.9	4" No. 18 gage, nonload-bearing metal studs, 16" on center, with 1" Portland cement lime plaster (measured from the back side of the $\frac{3}{4}$ -pound expanded metal lath) on the exterior surface. Interior surface to be covered with 1" of gypsum plaster on $\frac{3}{4}$ -pound expanded metal lath proportioned by weight—1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown, gypsum to sand. Lath on one side of the partition fastened to $\frac{1}{4}$ " diameter pencil rods supported by No. 20 gage metal clips, located 16" on center vertically, on each stud. 3" thick mineral fiber insulating batts friction fitted between the studs.	—	—	6 $\frac{1}{2}$ <sup>d</sup>	—
	15-1.10	Steel studs 0.060" thick, 4" deep or 6" at 16" or 24" centers, with $\frac{1}{2}$ " glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) on the exterior surface. GFRC is attached with flex anchors at 24" on center, with 5" leg welded to studs with two $\frac{1}{2}$ "-long flare-bevel welds, and 4" foot attached to the GFRC skin with $\frac{5}{8}$ "-thick GFRC bonding pads that extend 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ " beyond the flex anchor foot on both sides. Interior surface to have two layers of $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard. <sup>c</sup> The first layer of wallboard to be attached with 1"-long Type S buglehead screws spaced 24" on center and the second layer is attached with 1 $\frac{5}{8}$ "-long Type S screws spaced at 12" on center. Cavity is to be filled with 5" of 4 pcf (nominal) mineral fiber batts. GFRC has 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " returns packed with mineral fiber and caulked on the exterior.	—	—	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	—
	15-1.11	Steel studs 0.060" thick, 4" deep or 6" at 16" or 24" centers, respectively, with $\frac{1}{2}$ " glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) on the exterior surface. GFRC is attached with flex anchors at 24" on center, with 5" leg welded to studs with two $\frac{1}{2}$ "-long flare-bevel welds, and 4" foot attached to the GFRC skin with $\frac{5}{8}$ "-thick GFRC bonding pads that extend 2 $\frac{1}{2}$ " beyond the flex anchor foot on both sides. Interior surface to have one layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> , attached with 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ "-long Type S buglehead screws spaced 12" on center. Cavity is to be filled with 5" of 4 pcf (nominal) mineral fiber batts. GFRC has 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " returns packed with mineral fiber and caulked on the exterior.	—	—	—	6 $\frac{1}{8}$
	15-1.12 <sup>q</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with 2 $\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. Cavity to be filled with 5 $\frac{1}{2}$ " mineral wool insulation.	—	—	—	6 $\frac{3}{4}$

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS<sup>a, o, p</sup>**

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls (continued)	15-1.13 <sup>a</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied vertically with all joints over framing or blocking and fastened with $2\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. R-19 mineral fiber insulation installed in stud cavity.	—	—	—	$6\frac{3}{4}$
	15-1.14 <sup>a</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with $2\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws, spaced 7" on center.	—	—	—	$6\frac{3}{4}$
	15-1.15 <sup>a</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs at 16" with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior sides covered with $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard and sheathing, respectively, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs, and fastened with $2\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center. Cavity to be filled with $3\frac{1}{2}$ " mineral wool insulation.	—	—	—	$4\frac{3}{4}$
	15-1.16 <sup>a</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs at 24" centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior and exterior side covered with two layers of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally with vertical joints over studs. Base layer fastened with $2\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws, spaced 24" on center and face layer fastened with Type S drywall screws, spaced 8" on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fastener heads covered with joint compound. Cavity to be filled with $5\frac{1}{2}$ " mineral wool insulation.	—	—	8	—
	15-2.1 <sup>d</sup>	3 $\frac{5}{8}$ " No. 16 gage steel studs at 24" on center or 2" × 4" wood studs at 24" on center. Metal lath attached to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center and covered with minimum $\frac{3}{4}$ " thick Portland cement plaster. Thin veneer brick units of clay or shale complying with ASTM C1088, Grade TBS or better, installed in running bond in accordance with Section 1404.10. Combined total thickness of the Portland cement plaster, mortar and thin veneer brick units shall be not less than $1\frac{3}{4}$ ". Interior side covered with one layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ "-thick Type X gypsum wallboard attached to studs with 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on center.	—	—	—	6
	15-2.2 <sup>d</sup>	3 $\frac{5}{8}$ " No. 16 gage steel studs at 24" on center or 2" × 4" wood studs at 24" on center. Metal lath attached to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1" long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center and covered with minimum $\frac{3}{4}$ " thick Portland cement plaster. Thin veneer brick units of clay or shale complying with ASTM C1088, Grade TBS or better, installed in running bond in accordance with Section 1404.10. Combined total thickness of the Portland cement plaster, mortar and thin veneer brick units shall be not less than 2". Interior side covered with two layers of $\frac{5}{8}$ "-thick Type X gypsum wallboard. Bottom layer attached to studs with 1"-long No. 6 drywall screws at 24" on center. Top layer attached to studs with $1\frac{5}{8}$ "-long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on center.	—	—	$6\frac{7}{8}$	—
	15-2.3 <sup>d</sup>	3 $\frac{5}{8}$ " No. 16 gage steel studs at 16" on center or 2" × 4" wood studs at 16" on center. Where metal lath is used, attach to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1"-long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center. Brick units of clay or shale not less than $2\frac{5}{8}$ " thick complying with ASTM C216 installed in accordance with Section 1404.6 with a minimum 1" airspace. Interior side covered with one layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ "-thick Type X gypsum wallboard attached to studs with 1"-long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on center.	—	—	—	$7\frac{7}{8}$

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS<sup>a, o, p</sup>**

MATERIAL	ITEM NUMBER	CONSTRUCTION	MINIMUM FINISHED THICKNESS FACE-TO-FACE <sup>b</sup> (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
15. Exterior or interior walls	15-2.4 <sup>d</sup>	3 <sup>5/8</sup> " No. 16 gage steel studs at 16" on center or 2" × 4" wood studs at 16" on center. Where metal lath is used, attach to the exterior side of studs with minimum 1"-long No. 6 drywall screws at 6" on center. Brick units of clay or shale not less than 2 <sup>5/8</sup> " thick complying with ASTM C216 installed in accordance with Section 1404.6 with a minimum 1" airspace. Interior side covered with two layers of 5/8"-thick Type X gypsum wallboard. Bottom layer attached to studs with 1"-long No. 6 drywall screws at 24" on center. Top layer attached to studs with 1 <sup>5/8</sup> "-long No. 6 drywall screws at 12" on center.	—	—	8 <sup>1/2</sup>	—
16. Exterior walls rated for fire resistance from the inside only in accordance with Section 705.5.	16-1.1 <sup>q</sup>	2" × 4" wood studs at 16" centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior side covered with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally unblocked, and fastened with 2 <sup>1/4</sup> " Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fastener heads covered with joint compound. Exterior covered with 3/8" wood structural panels, applied vertically, horizontal joints blocked and fastened with 6d common nails (bright)—12" on center in the field, and 6" on center panel edges. Cavity to be filled with 3 <sup>1/2</sup> " mineral wool insulation. Rating established for exposure from interior side only.	—	—	—	4 <sup>1/2</sup>
	16-1.2 <sup>q</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs at 16" centers with double top plates, single bottom plate; interior side covered with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied horizontally or vertically with vertical joints over studs and fastened with 2 <sup>1/4</sup> " Type S drywall screws, spaced 12" on center, wallboard joints covered with paper tape and joint compound, fastener heads covered with joint compound, exterior side covered with 7/16" wood structural panels fastened with 6d common nails (bright) spaced 12" on center in the field and 6" on center along the panel edges. Cavity to be filled with 5 <sup>1/2</sup> " mineral wool insulation. Rating established from the gypsum-covered side only.	—	—	—	6 <sup>9/16</sup>
	16-1.3 <sup>q</sup>	2" × 6" wood studs at 16" centers with double top plates, single bottom plates; interior side covered with 5/8" Type X gypsum wallboard, 4' wide, applied vertically with all joints over framing or blocking and fastened with 2 <sup>1/4</sup> " Type S drywall screws spaced 7" on center. Joints to be covered with tape and joint compound. Exterior covered with 3/8" wood structural panels, applied vertically with edges over framing or blocking and fastened with 6d common nails (bright) at 12" on center in the field and 6" on center on panel edges. R-19 mineral fiber insulation installed in stud cavity. Rating established from the gypsum-covered side only.	—	—	—	6 <sup>1/2</sup>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm<sup>2</sup>, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m<sup>3</sup>.

- a. Staples with equivalent holding power and penetration shall be permitted to be used as alternate fasteners to nails for attachment to wood framing.
- b. Thickness shown for brick and clay tile is nominal thicknesses unless plastered, in which case thicknesses are net. Thickness shown for concrete masonry and clay masonry is equivalent thickness defined in Section 722.3.1 for concrete masonry and Section 722.4.1.1 for clay masonry. Where all cells are solid grouted or filled with silicone-treated perlite loose-fill insulation; vermiculite loose-fill insulation; or expanded clay, shale or slate lightweight aggregate, the equivalent thickness shall be the thickness of the block or brick using specified dimensions as defined in Chapter 21. Equivalent thickness shall include the thickness of applied plaster and lath or gypsum wallboard, where specified.
- c. For units in which the net cross-sectional area of cored brick in any plane parallel to the surface containing the cores is not less than 75 percent of the gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.
- d. Shall be used for nonbearing purposes only.
- e. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in this table, gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided that attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard, and the joints on the face layer are reinforced and the entire surface is covered with not less than 1/16-inch gypsum veneer plaster.
- f. The fire-resistance time period for concrete masonry units meeting the equivalent thicknesses required for a 2-hour fire-resistance rating in Item 3, and having a thickness of not less than 7<sup>5/8</sup> inches is 4 hours where cores that are not grouted are filled with silicone-treated perlite loose-fill insulation; vermiculite loose-fill insulation; or expanded clay, shale or slate lightweight aggregate, sand or slag having a maximum particle size of 3/8 inch.
- g. The fire-resistance rating of concrete masonry units composed of a combination of aggregate types or where plaster is applied directly to the concrete masonry shall be determined in accordance with ACI 216.1/TMS 0216. Lightweight aggregates shall have a maximum combined density of 65 pounds per cubic foot.
- h. See Note b. The equivalent thickness shall be permitted to include the thickness of cement plaster or 1.5 times the thickness of gypsum plaster applied in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 25.

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(2)—continued**  
**RATED FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS FOR VARIOUS WALLS AND PARTITIONS<sup>a, o, p</sup>**

- i. Concrete walls shall be reinforced with horizontal and vertical temperature reinforcement as required by Chapter 19.
- j. Studs are welded truss wire studs with 0.18 inch (No. 7 B.W. gage) flange wire and 0.18 inch (No. 7 B.W. gage) truss wires.
- k. Nailable metal studs consist of two channel studs spot welded back to back with a crimped web forming a nailing groove.
- l. Wood structural panels shall be permitted to be installed between the fire protection and the wood studs on either the interior or exterior side of the wood frame assemblies in this table, provided that the length of the fasteners used to attach the fire protection is increased by an amount not less than the thickness of the wood structural panel.
- m. For studs with a slenderness ratio,  $l_e/d$ , greater than 33, the design stress shall be reduced to 78 percent of allowable  $F'_c$ . For studs with a slenderness ratio,  $l_e/d$ , not exceeding 33, the design stress shall be reduced to 78 percent of the adjusted stress  $F'_c$  calculated for studs having a slenderness ratio  $l_e/d$  of 33.
- n. For properties of cooler or wallboard nails, see ASTM C514, ASTM C547 or ASTM F1667.
- o. Generic fire-resistance ratings (those not designated as PROPRIETARY\* in the listing) in the GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein specified.
- p. NCMA TEK 5-8A shall be permitted for the design of fire walls.
- q. The design stress of studs shall be equal to not more than 100 percent of the allowable  $F'_c$  calculated in accordance with Section 2306.

**TABLE 721.1(3)**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
1. Siliceous aggregate concrete	1-1.1	Slab (ceiling not required). Minimum cover over nonpre-stressed reinforcement shall be not less than $\frac{3}{4}$ ".	7.0	6.2	5.0	3.5	—	—	—	—
2. Carbonate aggregate concrete	2-1.1		6.6	5.7	4.6	3.2	—	—	—	—
3. Sand-light-weight concrete	3-1.1		5.4	4.6	3.8	2.7	—	—	—	—
4. Lightweight concrete	4-1.1		5.1	4.4	3.6	2.5	—	—	—	—
5. Reinforced concrete	5-1.1	Slab with suspended ceiling of vermiculite gypsum plaster over metal lath attached to $\frac{3}{4}$ " cold-rolled channels spaced 12" on center. Ceiling located 6" minimum below joists.	3	2	—	—	1	$\frac{3}{4}$	—	—
	5-2.1	$\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> attached to 0.018 inch (No.25 carbon sheet steel gage) by $\frac{7}{8}$ " deep by $2\frac{5}{8}$ " hat-shaped galvanized steel channels with 1"-long No. 6 screws. The channels are spaced 24" on center, span 35" and are supported along their length at 35" intervals by 0.033" (No. 21 galvanized sheet gage) galvanized steel flat strap hangers having formed edges that engage the lips of the channel. The strap hangers are attached to the side of the concrete joists with $\frac{5}{32}$ " by $1\frac{1}{4}$ "-long power-driven fasteners. The wallboard is installed with the long dimension perpendicular to the channels. End joints occur on channels and supplementary channels are installed parallel to the main channels, 12" each side, at end joint occurrences. The finished ceiling is located approximately 12" below the soffit of the floor slab.	—	—	$2\frac{1}{2}$	—	—	$\frac{5}{8}$	—	

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, g</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
6. Steel joists constructed with a poured reinforced concrete slab on metal lath forms or steel form units. <sup>d, e</sup>	6-1.1	Gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to the bottom cord with single No. 16 gage or doubled No. 18 gage wire ties spaced 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate for 2-hour system. For 3-hour system plaster is neat.	—	—	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	—	—	3/ <sub>4</sub>	5/ <sub>8</sub>
	6-2.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to the bottom chord with single No. 16 gage or doubled 0.049-inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties 6" on center.	—	2	—	—	—	—	5/ <sub>8</sub>	—
	6-3.1	Cement plaster over metal lath attached to the bottom chord of joists with single No. 16 gage or doubled 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat, 1:3 for brown coat for 1-hour system and 1:1 for scratch coat, 1: <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> for brown coat for 2-hour system, by weight, cement to sand.	—	—	—	2	—	—	—	5/ <sub>8</sub> <sup>f</sup>
	6-4.1	Ceiling of 5/ <sub>8</sub> " Type X wallboard <sup>c</sup> attached to 7/ <sub>8</sub> " deep by 2 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " by 0.021 inch (No. 25 carbon sheet steel gage) hat-shaped furring channels 12" on center with 1"-long No. 6 wallboard screws at 8" on center. Channels wire tied to bottom chord of joists with doubled 0.049 inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire or suspended below joists on wire hangers. <sup>g</sup>	—	—	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	—	—	—	5/ <sub>8</sub>	—
	6-5.1	Wood-fibered gypsum plaster mixed 1:1 by weight gypsum to sand aggregate applied over metal lath. Lath tied 6" on center to 3/ <sub>4</sub> " channels spaced 13 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " on center. Channels secured to joists at each intersection with two strands of 0.049 inch (No. 18 B.W. gage) galvanized wire.	—	—	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	—	—	—	3/ <sub>4</sub>	—
7. Reinforced concrete slabs and joists with hollow clay tile fillers laid end to end in rows 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " or more apart; reinforcement placed between rows and concrete cast around and over tile.	7-1.1	5/ <sub>8</sub> " gypsum plaster on bottom of floor or roof construction.	—	—	8 <sup>h</sup>	—	—	—	5/ <sub>8</sub>	—
	7-1.2	None	—	—	—	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> <sup>i</sup>	—	—	—	—
8. Steel joists constructed with a reinforced concrete slab on top poured on a 1/ <sub>2</sub> "-deep steel deck. <sup>e</sup>	8-1.1	Vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to 3/ <sub>4</sub> " cold-rolled channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center.	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> <sup>j</sup>	—	—	—	3/ <sub>4</sub>	—	—	—

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
9. 3"-deep cellular steel deck with concrete slab on top. Slab thickness measured to top.	9-1.1	Suspended ceiling of vermiculite gypsum plaster base coat and vermiculite acoustical plaster on metal lath attached at 6" intervals to $\frac{3}{4}$ " cold-rolled channels spaced 12" on center and secured to $1\frac{1}{2}$ " cold-rolled channels spaced 36" on center with 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire. $1\frac{1}{2}$ " channels supported by No. 8 gage wire hangers at 36" on center. Beams within envelope and with a $2\frac{1}{2}$ " airspace between beam soffit and lath have a 4-hour rating.	$2\frac{1}{2}$	—	—	—	$1\frac{1}{8}^k$	—	—	—
10. $1\frac{1}{2}$ "-deep steel roof deck on steel framing. Insulation board, 30 pcf density, composed of wood fibers with cement binders of thickness shown bonded to deck with unified asphalt adhesive. Covered with a Class A or B roof covering.	10-1.1	Ceiling of gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached to $\frac{3}{4}$ " furring channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center. $\frac{3}{4}$ " channel saddle tied to 2" channels with doubled 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties. 2" channels spaced 36" on center suspended 2" below steel framing and saddle tied with 0.165" (No. 8 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate.	—	—	$1\frac{7}{8}$	1	—	—	$\frac{3}{4}^1$	$\frac{3}{4}^1$
11. $1\frac{1}{2}$ "-deep steel roof deck on steel-framing wood fiber insulation board, 17.5 pcf density on top applied over a 15-lb asphalt-saturated felt. Class A or B roof covering.	11-1.1	Ceiling of gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath attached to $\frac{3}{4}$ " furring channels with 0.049" (No. 18 B.W. gage) wire ties spaced 6" on center. $\frac{3}{4}$ " channels saddle tied to 2" channels with doubled 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties. 2" channels spaced 36" on center suspended 2" below steel framing and saddle tied with 0.165" (No. 8 B.W. gage) wire. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate for 1-hour system. For 2-hour system, plaster mix is 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate.	—	—	$1\frac{1}{2}$	1	—	—	$\frac{7}{8}^g$	$\frac{3}{4}^1$

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
12. 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " deep steel roof deck on steel-framing insulation of rigid board consisting of expanded perlite and fibers impregnated with integral asphalt waterproofing; density 9 to 12 pcf secured to metal roof deck by 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ "-wide ribbons of waterproof, cold-process liquid adhesive spaced 6" apart. Steel joist or light steel construction with metal roof deck, insulation, and Class A or B built-up roof covering. <sup>e</sup>	12-1.1	Gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath wire tied at 6" intervals to 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ " furring channels spaced 12" on center and wire tied to 2" runner channels spaced 32" on center. Runners wire tied to bottom chord of steel joists.	—	—	1	—	—	—	7 $\frac{1}{8}$	—
13. Double wood floor over wood joists spaced 16" on center. <sup>m, n</sup>	13-1.1	Gypsum plaster over 3 $\frac{1}{8}$ " Type X gypsum lath. Lath initially applied with not less than four 1 $\frac{1}{8}$ " by No. 13 gage by 19/64" head plasterboard blued nails per bearing. Continuous stripping over lath along all joist lines. Stripping consists of 3"-wide strips of metal lath attached by 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " by No. 11 gage by 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " head roofing nails spaced 6" on center. Alternate stripping consists of 3"-wide 0.049" diameter wire stripping weighing 1 pound per square yard and attached by No. 16 gage by 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " by 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ " crown width staples, spaced 4" on center. Where alternate stripping is used, the lath nailing shall consist of two nails at each end and one nail at each intermediate bearing. Plaster mixed 1:2 by weight, gypsum-to-sand aggregate.	—	—	—	—	—	—	7 $\frac{1}{8}$	
	13-1.2	Cement or gypsum plaster on metal lath. Lath fastened with 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " by No. 11 gage by 7/16" head barbed shank roofing nails spaced 5" on center. Plaster mixed 1:2 for scratch coat and 1:3 for brown coat, by weight, cement to sand aggregate.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	5 $\frac{1}{8}$
	13-1.3	Perlite or vermiculite gypsum plaster on metal lath secured to joists with 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " by No. 11 gage by 7/16" head barbed shank roofing nails spaced 5" on center.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	5 $\frac{1}{8}$
	13-1.4	1 $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> nailed to joists with 5d cooler <sup>d</sup> or wallboard <sup>e</sup> nails at 6" on center. End joints of wallboard centered on joists.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1 $\frac{1}{2}$

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, d</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
14. Plywood stressed skin panels consisting of $\frac{5}{8}$ "-thick interior C-D (exterior glue) top stressed skin on 2" × 6" nominal (minimum) stringers. Adjacent panel edges joined with 8d common wire nails spaced 6" on center. Stringers spaced 12" maximum on center.	14-1.1	$\frac{1}{2}$ "-thick wood fiberboard weighing 15 to 18 pounds per cubic foot installed with long dimension parallel to stringers or $\frac{3}{8}$ " C-D (exterior glue) plywood glued and/or nailed to stringers. Nailing to be with 5d cooler <sup>o</sup> or wallboard <sup>o</sup> nails at 12" on center. Second layer of $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard <sup>c</sup> applied with long dimension perpendicular to joists and attached with 8d cooler <sup>o</sup> or wallboard <sup>o</sup> nails at 6" on center at end joints and 8" on center elsewhere. Wallboard joints staggered with respect to <i>fiberboard</i> joints.	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1
15. Vermiculite concrete slab proportioned 1:4 (Portland cement to vermiculite aggregate) on a $1\frac{1}{2}$ "-deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Maximum span of deck 6'-10" where deck is less than 0.019 inch (No. 26 carbon steel sheet gage) or greater. Slab reinforced with 4" × 8" 0.109/0.083" (No. $\frac{12}{14}$ B.W. gage) welded wire mesh.	15-1.1	None	—	—	—	—	3 <sup>j</sup>	—	—	—

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a,q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
16. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on a $1\frac{1}{4}$ "-deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Slab reinforced with 4" × 8" 0.109/0.083" (No. $\frac{12}{14}$ B.W. gage) welded wire mesh.	16-1.1	None	—	—	—	$3\frac{1}{2}^j$	—	—	—	—
17. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on a $\frac{9}{16}$ "-deep steel deck supported by steel joists 4' on center. Class A or B roof covering on top.	17-1.1	Perlite gypsum plaster on metal lath wire tied to $\frac{3}{4}$ " furring channels attached with 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) wire ties to lower chord of joists.	—	2 <sup>p</sup>	2 <sup>p</sup>	—	—	$\frac{7}{8}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	—

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
18. Perlite concrete slab proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) on $1\frac{1}{4}$ "-deep steel deck supported on individually protected steel framing. Maximum span of deck 6'-10" where deck is less than 0.019" (No. 26 carbon sheet steel gage) and 8'-0" where deck is 0.019" (No. 26 carbon sheet steel gage) or greater. Slab reinforced with 0.042" (No. 19 B.W. gage) hexagonal wire mesh. Class A or B roof covering on top.	18-1.1	None	—	$2\frac{1}{4}^p$	$2\frac{1}{4}^p$	—	—	—	—	—
19. Floor and beam construction consisting of 3"-deep cellular steel floor unit mounted on steel members with 1:4 (proportion of Portland cement to perlite aggregate) perlite-concrete floor slab on top.	19-1.1	Suspended envelope ceiling of perlite gypsum plaster on metal lath attached to $\frac{3}{4}$ " cold-rolled channels, secured to $1\frac{1}{2}$ " cold-rolled channels spaced 42" on center supported by 0.203 inch (No. 6 B.W. gage) wire 36" on center. Beams in envelope with 3" minimum airspace between beam soffit and lath have a 4-hour rating.	$2^p$	—	—	—	$1^l$	—	—	—

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, d</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
20. Perlite concrete proportioned 1:6 (Portland cement to perlite aggregate) poured to $\frac{1}{8}$ " thickness above top of corrugations of $1\frac{5}{16}$ "-deep galvanized steel deck maximum span 8'-0" for 0.024" (No. 24 galvanized sheet gage) or 6'-0" for 0.019" (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) with deck supported by individually protected steel framing. Approved polystyrene foam plastic insulation board having a flame spread not exceeding 75 (1" to 4" thickness) with vent holes that approximate 3 percent of the board surface area placed on top of perlite slurry. A 2' by 4' insulation board contains six $2\frac{3}{4}$ " diameter holes. Board covered with $2\frac{1}{4}$ " minimum perlite concrete slab. Slab reinforced with mesh consisting of 0.042" (No. 19 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire twisted together to form 2" hexagons with straight 0.065" (No. 16 B.W. gage) galvanized steel wire woven into mesh and spaced 3". Alternate slab reinforcement shall be permitted to consist of 4" x 8", 0.109/0.238" (No. 12/4 B.W. gage), or 2" x 2", 0.083/0.083" (No. 14/14 B.W. gage) welded wire fabric. Class A or B roof covering on top.	20-1.1	None	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	—	

*(continued)*

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
21. Wood joists, wood I-joists, floor trusses and flat or pitched roof trusses spaced a maximum 24" o.c. with $\frac{1}{2}$ " wood structural panels with exterior glue applied at right angles to top of joist or top chord of trusses with 8 dnails. The wood structural panel thickness shall be not less than nominal $\frac{1}{2}$ " nor less than required by Chapter 23.	21-1.1	Base layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard applied at right angles to joist or truss 24" o.c. with $1\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S or Type W drywall screws 24" o.c. Face layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard or veneer base applied at right angles to joist or truss through base layer with $1\frac{7}{8}$ " Type S or Type W drywall screws 12" o.c. at joints and intermediate joist or truss. Face layer Type G drywall screws placed 2" back on either side of face layer end joints, 12" o.c.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$1\frac{1}{4}$
22. Steel joists, floor trusses and flat or pitched roof trusses spaced a maximum 24" o.c. with $\frac{1}{2}$ " wood structural panels with exterior glue applied at right angles to top of joist or top chord of trusses with No. 8 screws. The wood structural panel thickness shall be not less than nominal $\frac{1}{2}$ " nor less than required by Chapter 23.	22-1.1	Base layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to steel framing 24" on center with 1" Type S dry wall screws spaced 24" on center. Face layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to steel framing attached through base layer with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S dry wall screws 12" on center at end joints and intermediate joints and $1\frac{1}{2}$ " Type G dry wall screws 12 inches on center placed 2" back on either side of face layer end joints. Joints of the face layer are offset 24" from the joints of the base layer.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$1\frac{1}{4}$
23. Wood I-joist (minimum joist depth $9\frac{1}{4}$ " with a minimum flange depth of $1\frac{5}{16}$ " and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches) at 24" o.c. spacing with a minimum $1 \times 4$ ( $\frac{3}{4}$ " x 3.5" actual) ledger strip applied parallel to and covering the bottom of the bottom flange of each member, tacked in place. 2" mineral wool insulation, 3.5 pcf (nominal) installed adjacent to the bottom flange of the I-joist and supported by the $1 \times 4$ ledger strip.	23-1.1	$\frac{1}{2}$ "-deep single-leg resilient channel 16" on center (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the furring strip and joist and attached to each joist by $1\frac{7}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws. $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered not less than 4' and fastened with $1\frac{1}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws spaced 7" on center. Wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$\frac{5}{8}$

(continued)

**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, 4</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
24. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9\frac{1}{4}$ " with a minimum flange depth of $1\frac{1}{2}$ " and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 5.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ ") @ 24" o.c., $1\frac{1}{2}$ " mineral wool insulation (2.5 pcf-nominal) resting on hat-shaped furring channels.	24-1.1	Minimum 0.026" thick hat-shaped channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws. $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered and fastened with $1\frac{1}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. in the field and 8" o.c. at the wallboard ends. Wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$\frac{5}{8}$
25. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9\frac{1}{4}$ " with a minimum flange depth of $1\frac{1}{2}$ " and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 5.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of $\frac{7}{16}$ ") @ 24" o.c., $1\frac{1}{2}$ " mineral wool insulation (2.5 pcf-nominal) resting on resilient channels.	25-1.1	Minimum 0.019"-thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws. $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered and fastened with 1" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. in the field and 8" o.c. at the wallboard ends. Wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$\frac{5}{8}$
26. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9\frac{1}{4}$ " with a minimum flange thickness of $1\frac{1}{2}$ " and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ ") @ 24" o.c.	26-1.1	Two layers of $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the I-joists with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 2" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. in the field and 8" o.c. on the edges. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to also be attached to base layer with $1\frac{1}{2}$ " Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	1

*(continued)*

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a, q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
27. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9\frac{1}{2}$ " with a minimum flange depth of $1\frac{5}{16}$ " and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 1.95 square inches; minimum web thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ ") @ 24" o.c.	27-1.1	Minimum 0.019" thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws. Two layers of $\frac{1}{2}$ " Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the resilient channels with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with $1\frac{1}{4}$ " Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fastened with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joist as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to also be attached to base layer with $1\frac{1}{2}$ " Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	1
28. Wood I-joist (minimum I-joist depth $9\frac{1}{4}$ " with a minimum flange depth of $1\frac{1}{2}$ " and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of $\frac{3}{8}$ ") @ 24" o.c. Unfaced fiberglass insulation or mineral wool insulation is installed between the I-joists supported on the upper surface of the flange by stay wires spaced 12" o.c.	28-1.1	Base layer of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type C gypsum wallboard attached directly to I-joists with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. with ends staggered. Minimum 0.0179"-thick hat-shaped $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch furring channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joist and attached to each joist by $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws after the base layer of gypsum wallboard has been applied. The middle and face layers of $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type C gypsum wallboard applied perpendicular to the channel with end joints staggered. The middle layer is fastened with 1" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. The face layer is applied parallel to the middle layer but with the edge joints offset 24" from those of the middle layer and fastened with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S drywall screws 8" o.c. The joints shall be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	$2\frac{3}{4}$	—
29. Channel-shaped 18 gage steel joists (minimum depth 8") spaced a maximum 24" o.c. supporting tongue-and-groove wood structural panels (nominal minimum $\frac{3}{4}$ "-thick) applied perpendicular to framing members. Structural panels attached with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c.	29-1.1	Base layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum board applied perpendicular to bottom of framing members with $1\frac{1}{8}$ " Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Second layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum board attached perpendicular to framing members with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Second layer joints offset 24" from base layer. Third layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum board attached perpendicular to framing members with $2\frac{3}{8}$ " Type S-12 screws spaced 12" o.c. Third layer joints offset 12" from second layer joints. Hat-shaped $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch rigid furring channels applied at right angles to framing members over third layer with two $2\frac{3}{8}$ " Type S-12 screws at each framing member. Face layer $\frac{5}{8}$ " Type X gypsum board applied at right angles to furring channels with $1\frac{5}{8}$ " Type S screws spaced 12" o.c.	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	$3\frac{3}{8}$	—

*(continued)*

**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**

**TABLE 721.1(3)—continued**  
**MINIMUM PROTECTION FOR FLOOR AND ROOF SYSTEMS<sup>a-q</sup>**

FLOOR OR ROOF CONSTRUCTION	ITEM NUMBER	CEILING CONSTRUCTION	THICKNESS OF FLOOR OR ROOF SLAB (inches)				MINIMUM THICKNESS OF CEILING (inches)			
			4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour	4 hours	3 hours	2 hours	1 hour
30. Wood I-joint (minimum I-joint depth 9½" with a minimum flange depth of 1½" and a minimum flange cross-sectional area of 2.25 square inches; minimum web thickness of ¾") @ 24" o.c. Fiberglass insulation placed between I-joints supported by the resilient channels.	30-1.1	Minimum 0.019"-thick resilient channel 16" o.c. (channels doubled at wallboard end joints), placed perpendicular to the joists and attached to each joist by 1¼" Type S dry wall screws. Two layers of ½" Type X gypsum wallboard applied with the long dimension perpendicular to the resilient channels with end joints staggered. The base layer is fastened with 1¼" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. and the face layer is fastened with 1⅝" Type S drywall screws spaced 12" o.c. Face layer end joints shall not occur on the same I-joint as base layer end joints and edge joints shall be offset 24" from base layer joints. Face layer to be attached to base layer with 1½" Type G drywall screws spaced 8" o.c. placed 6" from face layer end joints. Face layer wallboard joints to be taped and covered with joint compound.	—	—	—	Varies	—	—	—	1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m<sup>3</sup>, 1 pound per square inch = 6.895 kPa, 1 pound per linear foot = 1.4882 kg/m.

- a. Staples with equivalent holding power and penetration shall be permitted to be used as alternate fasteners to nails for attachment to wood framing.
- b. Where the slab is in an unrestrained condition, minimum reinforcement cover shall be not less than 1⅝" inches for 4 hours (siliceous aggregate only); 1¼" inches for 4 and 3 hours; 1 inch for 2 hours (siliceous aggregate only); and ¾" inch for all other restrained and unrestrained conditions.
- c. For all of the construction with gypsum wallboard described in this table, gypsum base for veneer plaster of the same size, thickness and core type shall be permitted to be substituted for gypsum wallboard, provided that attachment is identical to that specified for the wallboard, and the joints on the face layer are reinforced and the entire surface is covered with not less than 1/16-inch gypsum veneer plaster.
- d. Slab thickness over steel joists measured at the joists for metal lath form and at the top of the form for steel form units.
- e. (a) The maximum allowable stress level for H-Series joists shall not exceed 22,000 psi.  
 (b) The allowable stress for K-Series joists shall not exceed 26,000 psi, the nominal depth of such joist shall be not less than 10 inches and the nominal joist weight shall be not less than 5 pounds per linear foot.
- f. Cement plaster with 15 pounds of hydrated lime and 3 pounds of approved additives or admixtures per bag of cement.
- g. Gypsum wallboard ceilings attached to steel framing shall be permitted to be suspended with 1½-inch cold-formed carrying channels spaced 48 inches on center, that are suspended with No. 8 SWG galvanized wire hangers spaced 48 inches on center. Cross-furring channels are tied to the carrying channels with No. 18 SWG galvanized wire hangers spaced 48 inches on center. Cross-furring channels are tied to the carrying channels with No. 18 SWG galvanized wire (double strand) and spaced as required for direct attachment to the framing. This alternative is applicable to those steel framing assemblies recognized under Note q.
- h. Six-inch hollow clay tile with 2-inch concrete slab above.
- i. Four-inch hollow clay tile with 1½-inch concrete slab above.
- j. Thickness measured to bottom of steel form units.
- k. Five-eighths inch of vermiculite gypsum plaster plus ½ inch of approved vermiculite acoustical plastic.
- l. Furring channels spaced 12 inches on center.
- m. Double wood floor shall be permitted to be either of the following:
  - (a)Subfloor of 1-inch nominal boarding, a layer of asbestos paper weighing not less than 14 pounds per 100 square feet and a layer of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove finished flooring.
  - (b)Subfloor of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove boarding or 15/32-inch wood structural panels with exterior glue and a layer of 1-inch nominal tongue-and-groove finished flooring or 19/32-inch wood structural panel finish flooring or a layer of Type I Grade M-1 particleboard not less than 5/8-inch thick.
- n. The ceiling shall be permitted to be omitted over unusable space, and flooring shall be permitted to be omitted where unusable space occurs above.
- o. For properties of cooler or wallboard nails, see ASTM C514, ASTM C547 or ASTM F1667.
- p. Thickness measured on top of steel deck unit.
- q. Generic fire-resistance ratings (those not designated as PROPRIETARY\* in the listing) in the GA 600 shall be accepted as if herein specified.

**TABLE 722.2.1.1**  
**MINIMUM EQUIVALENT THICKNESS OF**  
**CAST-IN-PLACE OR PRECAST CONCRETE WALLS,**  
**LOAD-BEARING OR NONLOAD-BEARING**

CONCRETE TYPE	MINIMUM SLAB THICKNESS (inches) FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF				
	1 hour	1½ hours	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
Siliceous	3.5	4.3	5.0	6.2	7.0
Carbonate	3.2	4.0	4.6	5.7	6.6
Sand-lightweight	2.7	3.3	3.8	4.6	5.4
Lightweight	2.5	3.1	3.6	4.4	5.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**722.2.1.1.1 Hollow-core precast wall panels.** For hollow-core precast concrete wall panels in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, calculation of the equivalent thickness by dividing the net cross-sectional area (the gross cross section minus the area of the cores) of the panel by its width shall be permitted

**722.2.1.1.2 Core spaces filled.** Where all of the core spaces of hollow-core wall panels are filled with loose-fill material, such as expanded shale, clay or slag, or vermiculite or perlite, the fire-resistance rating of the wall is the same as that of a solid wall of the same concrete type and of the same overall thickness.

**722.2.1.1.3 Tapered cross sections.** The thickness of panels with tapered cross sections shall be that determined at a distance  $2t$  or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where  $t$  is the minimum thickness.

**722.2.1.1.4 Ribbed or undulating surfaces.** The equivalent thickness of panels with ribbed or undu-

lating surfaces shall be determined by one of the following expressions:

For  $s \geq 4t$ , the thickness to be used shall be  $t$

For  $s \leq 2t$ , the thickness to be used shall be  $t_e$

For  $4t > s > 2t$ , the thickness to be used shall be

$$t + \left( \frac{4t}{s} - 1 \right) (t_e - t) \quad (\text{Equation 7-3})$$

where:

$s$  = Spacing of ribs or undulations.

$t$  = Minimum thickness.

$t_e$  = Equivalent thickness of the panel calculated as the net cross-sectional area of the panel divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed  $2t$ .

**722.2.1.2 Multiwythe walls.** For walls that consist of two wythes of different types of concrete, the fire-resistance ratings shall be permitted to be determined from Figure 722.2.1.2.

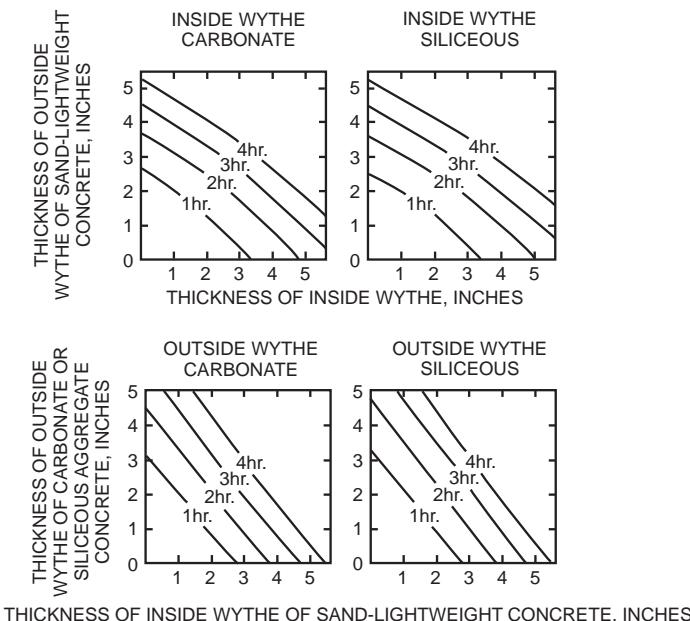
**722.2.1.2.1 Two or more wythes.** The fire-resistance rating for wall panels consisting of two or more wythes shall be permitted to be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \dots + R_n^{0.59})^{1.7} \quad (\text{Equation 7-4})$$

where:

$R$  = The fire endurance of the assembly, minutes.

$R_1, R_2$ , and  $R_n$  = The fire endurances of the individual wythes, minutes. Values of  $R_n^{0.59}$  for use in Equation 7-4 are given in Table 722.2.1.2(1). Calculated fire-resistance ratings are shown in Table 722.2.1.2(2).



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 722.2.1.2**  
**FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS OF TWO-WYTHE CONCRETE WALLS**

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.2.1.2(1)**  
VALUES OF  $R_n^{0.59}$  FOR USE IN EQUATION 7-4

TYPE OF MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (inches)											
	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	3	3 $\frac{1}{2}$	4	4 $\frac{1}{2}$	5	5 $\frac{1}{2}$	6	6 $\frac{1}{2}$	7
Siliceous aggregate concrete	5.3	6.5	8.1	9.5	11.3	13.0	14.9	16.9	18.8	20.7	22.8	25.1
Carbonate aggregate concrete	5.5	7.1	8.9	10.4	12.0	14.0	16.2	18.1	20.3	21.9	24.7	27.2 <sup>c</sup>
Sand-lightweight concrete	6.5	8.2	10.5	12.8	15.5	18.1	20.7	23.3	26.0 <sup>c</sup>	Note c	Note c	Note c
Lightweight concrete	6.6	8.8	11.2	13.7	16.5	19.1	21.9	24.7	27.8 <sup>c</sup>	Note c	Note c	Note c
Insulating concrete <sup>a</sup>	9.3	13.3	16.6	18.3	23.1	26.5 <sup>c</sup>	Note c	Note c	Note c	Note c	Note c	Note c
Airspace <sup>b</sup>	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

a. Dry unit weight of 35pcf or less and consisting of cellular, perlite or vermiculite concrete.

b. The  $R_n^{0.59}$  value for one  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " to  $3\frac{1}{2}$ " airspace is 3.3. The  $R_n^{0.59}$  value for two  $1\frac{1}{2}$ " to  $3\frac{1}{2}$ " airspaces is 6.7.

c. The fire-resistance rating for this thickness exceeds 4 hours.

**TABLE 722.2.1.2(2)**  
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS BASED ON  $R^{0.59}$

R <sup>a</sup> , MINUTES	R <sup>0.59</sup>
60	11.20
120	16.85
180	21.41
240	25.37

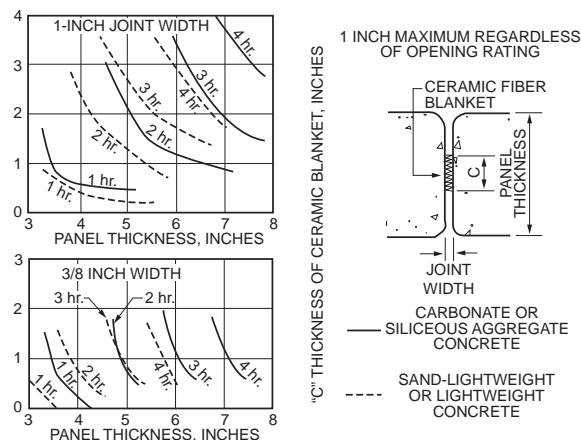
a. Based on Equation 7-4.

**722.2.1.2.2 Foam plastic insulation.** The fire-resistance ratings of precast concrete wall panels consisting of a layer of foam plastic insulation sandwiched between two wythes of concrete shall be permitted to be determined by use of Equation 7-4. Foam plastic insulation with a total thickness of less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be disregarded. The  $R_n$  value for thickness of foam plastic insulation of 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, for use in the calculation, is 5 minutes; therefore  $R_n^{0.59} = 2.5$ .

**722.2.1.3 Joints between precast wall panels.** Joints between precast concrete wall panels that are not insulated as required by this section shall be considered as openings in walls. Uninsulated joints shall be included in determining the percentage of openings permitted by Table 705.8. Where openings are not permitted or are required by this code to be protected, the provisions of this section shall be used to determine the amount of joint insulation required. Insulated joints shall not be considered openings for purposes of determining compliance with the allowable percentage of openings in Table 705.8.

**722.2.1.3.1 Ceramic fiber joint protection.** Figure 722.2.1.3.1 shows thicknesses of ceramic fiber blankets to be used to insulate joints between precast concrete wall panels for various panel thicknesses and for joint widths of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm) for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours. For joint widths between  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm), the thickness of ceramic fiber blanket is allowed to be determined by direct

interpolation. Other tested and labeled materials are acceptable in place of ceramic fiber blankets.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 722.2.1.3.1**  
CERAMIC FIBER JOINT PROTECTION

**722.2.1.4 Walls with gypsum wallboard or plaster finishes.** The fire-resistance rating of cast-in-place or precast concrete walls with finishes of gypsum wallboard or plaster applied to one or both sides shall be permitted to be calculated in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**722.2.1.4.1 Nonfire-exposed side.** Where the finish of gypsum wallboard or plaster is applied to the side of the wall not exposed to fire, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The thickness of the finish shall first be corrected by multiplying the actual thickness of the finish by the applicable factor determined from

Table 722.2.1.4(1) based on the type of aggregate in the concrete. The corrected thickness of finish shall then be added to the actual or equivalent thickness of concrete and fire-resistance rating of the concrete and finish determined from Tables 722.2.1.1 and 722.2.1.2(1) and Figure 722.2.1.2.

**722.2.1.4.2 Fire-exposed side.** Where gypsum wallboard or plaster is applied to the fire-exposed side of the wall, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The time assigned to the finish as established by Table 722.2.1.4(2) shall be added to the fire-resistance rating determined from Tables 722.2.1.1 and 722.2.1.2(1) and Figure 722.2.1.2 for the concrete alone, or to the rating determined in Section 722.2.1.4.1 for the concrete and finish on the nonfire-exposed side.

**722.2.1.4.3 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.** For a wall without finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of Sections 722.2.1.4.1 and 722.2.1.4.2 shall be performed twice, assuming either side of the wall to be the fire-exposed side. The fire-resistance rating of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values.

**Exception:** For an exterior wall with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

**722.2.1.4.4 Minimum concrete fire-resistance rating.** Where finishes applied to one or both sides of a concrete wall contribute to the fire-resistance rating, the concrete alone shall provide not less than one-half of the total required fire-resistance rating. Additionally, the contribution to the fire resistance of the finish on the nonfire-exposed side of a load-bearing wall shall not exceed one-half the contribution of the concrete alone.

**722.2.1.4.5 Concrete finishes.** Finishes on concrete walls that are assumed to contribute to the total fire-resistance rating of the wall shall comply with the installation requirements of Section 722.3.2.5.

**TABLE 722.2.1.4(2)**  
**TIME ASSIGNED TO FINISH MATERIALS**  
**ON FIRE-EXPOSED SIDE OF WALL**

FINISH DESCRIPTION	TIME (minutes)
Gypsum wallboard	
3/8 inch	10
1/2 inch	15
5/8 inch	20
2 layers of 3/8 inch	25
1 layer of 3/8 inch, 1 layer of 1/2 inch	35
2 layers of 1/2 inch	40
Type X gypsum wallboard	
1/2 inch	25
5/8 inch	40
Portland cement-sand plaster applied directly to concrete masonry	See Note a
Portland cement-sand plaster on metal lath	
3/4 inch	20
7/8 inch	25
1 inch	30
Gypsum sand plaster on 3/8-inch gypsum lath	
1/2 inch	35
5/8 inch	40
3/4 inch	50
Gypsum sand plaster on metal lath	
3/4 inch	50
7/8 inch	60
1 inch	80

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The actual thickness of Portland cement-sand plaster, provided that it is 5/8 inch or less in thickness, shall be permitted to be included in determining the equivalent thickness of the masonry for use in Table 722.3.2.

**TABLE 722.2.1.4(1)**  
**MULTIPLYING FACTOR FOR FINISHES ON NONFIRE-EXPOSED SIDE OF WALL**

TYPE OF FINISH APPLIED TO CONCRETE OR CONCRETE MASONRY WALL	TYPE OF AGGREGATE USED IN CONCRETE OR CONCRETE MASONRY			
	Concrete: siliceous or carbonate concrete masonry: siliceous or carbonate; solid clay brick	Concrete: sand-lightweight concrete masonry: clay tile; hollow clay brick; concrete masonry units of expanded shale and < 20% sand	Concrete: lightweight concrete masonry: concrete masonry units of expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slag, or pumice < 20% sand	Concrete masonry: concrete masonry units of expanded slag, expanded clay, or pumice
Portland cement-sand plaster	1.00	0.75 <sup>a</sup>	0.75 <sup>a</sup>	0.50 <sup>a</sup>
Gypsum-sand plaster	1.25	1.00	1.00	1.00
Gypsum-vermiculite or perlite plaster	1.75	1.50	1.25	1.25
Gypsum wallboard	3.00	2.25	2.25	2.25

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For Portland cement-sand plaster 5/8 inch or less in thickness and applied directly to the concrete or concrete masonry on the nonfire-exposed side of the wall, the multiplying factor shall be 1.00.

**722.2.2 Concrete floor and roof slabs.** Reinforced and prestressed floors and roofs shall comply with Section 722.2.2.1. Multicourse floors and roofs shall comply with Sections 722.2.2.2 and 722.2.2.3, respectively.

**722.2.2.1 Reinforced and prestressed floors and roofs.** The minimum thicknesses of reinforced and prestressed concrete floor or roof slabs for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours are shown in Table 722.2.2.1.

**Exception:** Minimum thickness shall not be required for floors and ramps within parking garages constructed in accordance with Sections 406.5 and 406.6.

**TABLE 722.2.2.1  
MINIMUM SLAB THICKNESS (inches)**

CONCRETE TYPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	1½	2	3	4
Siliceous	3.5	4.3	5	6.2	7
Carbonate	3.2	4	4.6	5.7	6.6
Sand-lightweight	2.7	3.3	3.8	4.6	5.4
Lightweight	2.5	3.1	3.6	4.4	5.1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**722.2.2.1.1 Hollow-core prestressed slabs.** For hollow-core prestressed concrete slabs in which the cores are of constant cross section throughout the length, the equivalent thickness shall be permitted to be obtained by dividing the net cross-sectional area of the slab including grout in the joints, by its width.

**722.2.2.1.2 Slabs with sloping soffits.** The thickness of slabs with sloping soffits (see Figure 722.2.2.1.2) shall be determined at a distance  $2t$  or 6 inches (152 mm), whichever is less, from the point of minimum thickness, where  $t$  is the minimum thickness.

**722.2.2.1.3 Slabs with ribbed soffits.** The thickness of slabs with ribbed or undulating soffits (see Figure 722.2.2.1.3) shall be determined by one of the following expressions, whichever is applicable:

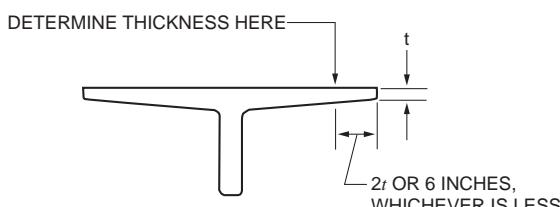
For  $s > 4t$ , the thickness to be used shall be  $t$

For  $s \leq 2t$ , the thickness to be used shall be  $t_e$

For  $4t > s > 2t$ , the thickness to be used shall be

$$t + \left( \frac{4t}{s} - 1 \right) (t_e - t) \quad (\text{Equation 7-5})$$

where:



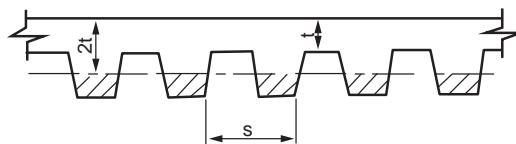
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 722.2.2.1.2  
DETERMINATION OF SLAB  
THICKNESS FOR SLOPING SOFFITS**

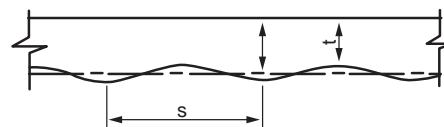
$s$  = Spacing of ribs or undulations.

$t$  = Minimum thickness.

$t_e$  = Equivalent thickness of the slab calculated as the net area of the slab divided by the width, in which the maximum thickness used in the calculation shall not exceed  $2t$ .



NEGLECT SHADED AREA IN CALCULATION OF EQUIVALENT THICKNESS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 722.2.2.1.3  
SLABS WITH RIBBED OR UNDULATING SOFFITS**

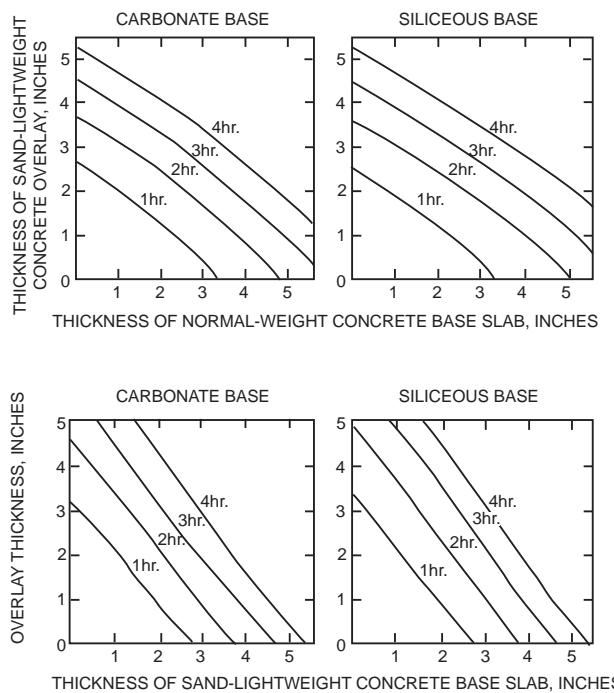
**722.2.2.1.4 Flat plate concrete slabs with uniformly spaced hollow voids.** Table 722.2.2.1 shall be used to determine the 1- and 2-hour fire-resistance ratings for flat plate concrete slabs with uniformly spaced hollow voids. The equivalent thickness of the slab shall be determined by dividing the net concrete volume of the slab by the floor area. The net concrete volume of the slab shall be equal to the volume of concrete of a solid slab minus the average concrete volume displaced by the hollow voids.

**722.2.2.2 Multicourse floors.** The fire-resistance ratings of floors that consist of a base slab of concrete with a topping (overlay) of a different type of concrete shall comply with Figure 722.2.2.2.

**722.2.2.3 Multicourse roofs.** The fire-resistance ratings of roofs that consist of a base slab of concrete with a topping (overlay) of an insulating concrete or with an insulating board and built-up roofing shall comply with Figures 722.2.2.3(1) and 722.2.2.3(2).

**722.2.2.3.1 Heat transfer.** For the transfer of heat, three-ply built-up roofing contributes 10 minutes to the fire-resistance rating. The fire-resistance rating for concrete assemblies such as those shown in Figure 722.2.2.3(1) shall be increased by 10 minutes. This increase is not applicable to those shown in Figure 722.2.2.3(2).

**722.2.2.4 Joints in precast slabs.** Joints between adjacent precast concrete slabs need not be considered in calculating the slab thickness provided that a concrete topping not less than 1 inch (25 mm) thick is used. Where concrete topping is not used, joints must be grouted to a depth of not less than one-third the slab thickness at the joint, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm), or the joints must be made fire resistant by other approved methods.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

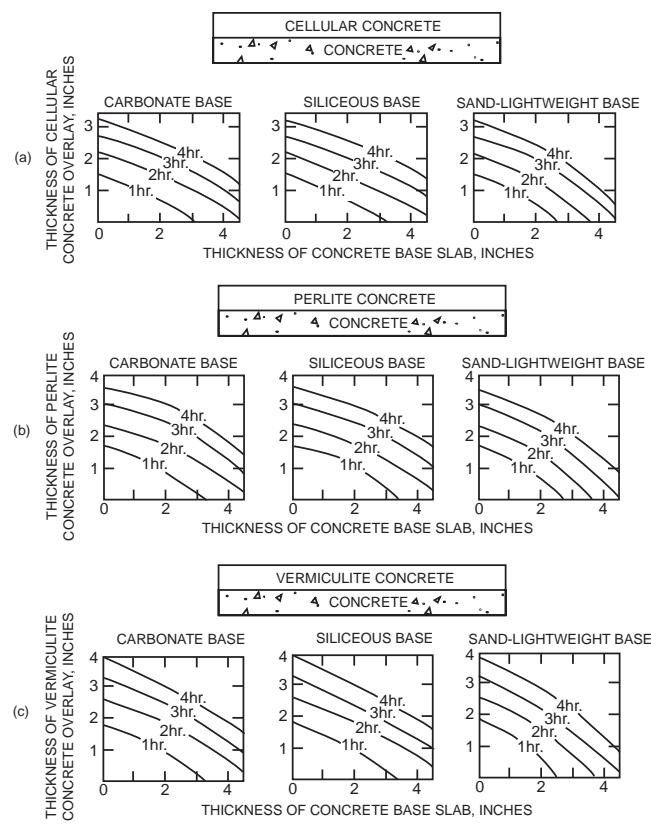
**FIGURE 722.2.2**  
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS FOR  
TWO-COURSE CONCRETE FLOORS

**722.2.3 Concrete cover over reinforcement.** The minimum thickness of concrete cover over reinforcement in concrete slabs, reinforced beams and prestressed beams shall comply with this section.

**722.2.3.1 Slab cover.** The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment reinforcement shall comply with Table 722.2.3(1) for reinforced concrete and Table 722.2.3(2) for prestressed concrete. These tables are applicable for solid or hollow-core one-way or two-way slabs with flat undersurfaces. These tables are applicable to slabs that are either cast in place or precast. For precast prestressed concrete not covered elsewhere, the procedures contained in PCI 124 shall be acceptable.

**722.2.3.2 Reinforced beam cover.** The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment reinforcement (bottom steel) for reinforced concrete beams is shown in Table 722.2.3(3) for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours.

**722.2.3.3 Prestressed beam cover.** The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the positive moment prestressing tendons (bottom steel) for restrained and unrestrained prestressed concrete beams and stemmed units shall comply with the values shown in Tables 722.2.3(4) and 722.2.3(5) for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours. Values in Table 722.2.3(4) apply to beams 8 inches (203 mm) or greater in width. Values



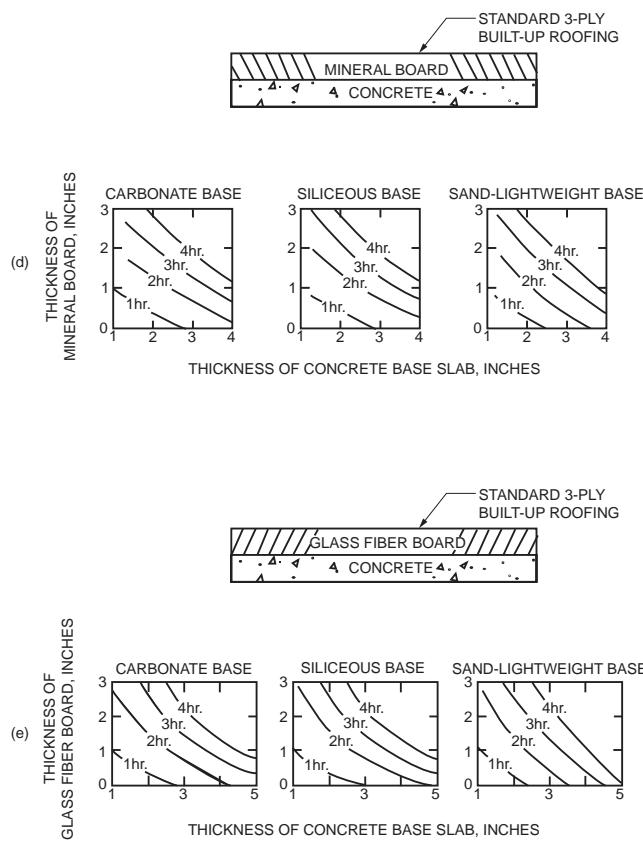
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 722.2.3(1)**  
FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS  
FOR CONCRETE ROOF ASSEMBLIES

in Table 722.2.3(5) apply to beams or stems of any width, provided that the cross-section area is not less than 40 square inches ( $25\ 806\ mm^2$ ). In case of differences between the values determined from Table 722.2.3(4) or 722.2.3(5), it is permitted to use the smaller value. The concrete cover shall be calculated in accordance with Section 722.2.3.3.1. The minimum concrete cover for nonprestressed reinforcement in prestressed concrete beams shall comply with Section 722.2.3.2.

**722.2.3.3.1 Calculating concrete cover.** The concrete cover for an individual tendon is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the tendon and the fire-exposed surface of the beam, except that for ungrouted ducts, the assumed cover thickness is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the duct and the fire-exposed surface of the beam. For beams in which two or more tendons are used, the cover is assumed to be the average of the minimum cover of the individual tendons. For corner tendons (tendons equal distance from the bottom and side), the minimum cover used in the calculation shall be one-half the actual value. For stemmed members with two or more prestressing

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 722.2.2.3(2)**  
**FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS**  
**FOR CONCRETE ROOF ASSEMBLIES**

tendons located along the vertical centerline of the stem, the average cover shall be the distance from the bottom of the member to the centroid of the tendons. The actual cover for any individual tendon shall be not less than one-half the smaller value shown in Tables 722.2.3(4) and 722.2.3(5), or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is greater.

**722.2.4 Concrete columns.** Concrete columns shall comply with this section.

**TABLE 722.2.4**  
**MINIMUM DIMENSION OF CONCRETE COLUMNS (inches)**

TYPES OF CONCRETE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	1½	2 <sup>a</sup>	3 <sup>a</sup>	4 <sup>b</sup>
Siliceous	8	9	10	12	14
Carbonate	8	9	10	11	12
Sand-lightweight	8	8½	9	10½	12

For SI: 1 inch = 25 mm.

- a. The minimum dimension is permitted to be reduced to 8 inches for rectangular columns with two parallel sides not less than 36 inches in length.
- b. The minimum dimension is permitted to be reduced to 10 inches for rectangular columns with two parallel sides not less than 36 inches in length.

**722.2.4.1 Minimum size.** The minimum overall dimensions of reinforced concrete columns for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours for exposure to fire on all sides shall comply with this section.

**TABLE 722.2.3(1)**  
**COVER THICKNESS FOR REINFORCED CONCRETE FLOOR OR ROOF SLABS (inches)**

CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)									
	Restrained					Unrestrained				
	1	1½	2	3	4	1	1½	2	3	4
Siliceous	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 5/8
Carbonate	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	1 1/4	1 1/4
Sand-lightweight or lightweight	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	1 1/4	1 1/4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**TABLE 722.2.3(2)**  
**COVER THICKNESS FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE FLOOR OR ROOF SLABS (inches)**

CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)									
	Restrained					Unrestrained				
	1	1½	2	3	4	1	1½	2	3	4
Siliceous	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	1 1/8	1 1/2	1 3/4	2 3/8	2 3/4
Carbonate	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	1	1 3/8	1 5/8	2 1/8	2 1/4
Sand-lightweight or lightweight	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	3/4	1	1 3/8	1 1/2	2	2 1/4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.2.3(3)**  
**MINIMUM COVER FOR MAIN REINFORCING BARS OF REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS<sup>c</sup>**  
**(APPLICABLE TO ALL TYPES OF STRUCTURAL CONCRETE)**

RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED <sup>a</sup>	BEAM WIDTH <sup>b</sup> (inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
		1	1½	2	3	4
Restrained	5	¾	¾	¾	1 <sup>a</sup>	1½ <sup>a</sup>
	7	¾	¾	¾	¾	¾
	≥10	¾	¾	¾	¾	¾
Unrestrained	5	¾	1	1½	—	—
	7	¾	¾	¾	1¾	3
	≥ 10	¾	¾	¾	1	1¾

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch is adequate for ratings of 4 hours or less.
- b. For beam widths between the tabulated values, the minimum cover thickness can be determined by direct interpolation.
- c. The cover for an individual reinforcing bar is the minimum thickness of concrete between the surface of the bar and the fire-exposed surface of the beam. For beams in which several bars are used, the cover for corner bars used in the calculation shall be reduced to one-half of the actual value. The cover for an individual bar must be not less than one-half of the value given in Table 722.2.3(3) nor less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch.

**TABLE 722.2.3(4)**  
**MINIMUM COVER FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS 8 INCHES OR GREATER IN WIDTH<sup>b</sup>**

RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED <sup>a</sup>	CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	BEAM WIDTH (inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
			1	1½	2	3	4
Restrained	Carbonate or siliceous	8	1½	1½	1½	1¾ <sup>a</sup>	2½ <sup>a</sup>
	Carbonate or siliceous	≥ 12	1½	1½	1½	1½	1¾ <sup>a</sup>
	Sand lightweight	8	1½	1½	1½	1½	2 <sup>a</sup>
	Sand lightweight	≥ 12	1½	1½	1½	1½	1¾ <sup>a</sup>
Unrestrained	Carbonate or siliceous	8	1½	1¾	2½	5 <sup>c</sup>	—
	Carbonate or siliceous	≥ 12	1½	1½	1¾	2½	3
	Sand lightweight	8	1½	1½	2	3½	—
	Sand lightweight	≥ 12	1½	1½	1½	2	2½

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch is adequate for 4-hour ratings or less.
- b. For beam widths between 8 inches and 12 inches, minimum cover thickness can be determined by direct interpolation.
- c. Not practical for 8-inch-wide beam but shown for purposes of interpolation.

**TABLE 722.2.3(5)**  
**MINIMUM COVER FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS OF ALL WIDTHS**

RESTRAINED OR UNRESTRAINED <sup>a</sup>	CONCRETE AGGREGATE TYPE	BEAM AREA <sup>b</sup> A (square inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
			1	1½	2	3	4
Restrained	All	40 ≤ A ≤ 150	1½	1½	2	2½	—
	Carbonate or siliceous	150 < A ≤ 300	1½	1½	1½	1¾	2½
		300 < A	1½	1½	1½	1½	2
	Sand lightweight	150 < A	1½	1½	1½	1½	2
Unrestrained	All	40 ≤ A ≤ 150	2	2½	—	—	—
	Carbonate or siliceous	150 < A ≤ 300	1½	1¾	2½	—	—
		300 < A	1½	1½	2	3 <sup>c</sup>	4 <sup>c</sup>
	Sand lightweight	150 < A	1½	1½	2	3 <sup>c</sup>	4 <sup>c</sup>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square inch = 645.2 mm<sup>2</sup>.

- a. Tabulated values for restrained assemblies apply to beams spaced more than 4 feet on center. For restrained beams spaced 4 feet or less on center, minimum cover of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch is adequate for 4-hour ratings or less.
- b. The cross-sectional area of a stem is permitted to include a portion of the area in the flange, provided that the width of the flange used in the calculation does not exceed three times the average width of the stem.
- c. U-shaped or hooped stirrups spaced not to exceed the depth of the member and having a minimum cover of 1 inch shall be provided.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**722.2.4.1.1 Concrete strength less than or equal to 12,000 psi.** For columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , of less than or equal to 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), the minimum dimension shall comply with Table 722.2.4.

**722.2.4.1.2 Concrete strength greater than 12,000 psi.** For columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , greater than 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), for fire-resistance ratings of 1 hour to 4 hours the minimum dimension shall be 24 inches (610 mm).

**722.2.4.2 Minimum cover for R/C columns.** The minimum thickness of concrete cover to the main longitudinal reinforcement in columns, regardless of the type of aggregate used in the concrete and the specified compressive strength of concrete,  $f'_c$ , shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) times the number of hours of required fire resistance or 2 inches (51 mm), whichever is less.

**722.2.4.3 Tie and spiral reinforcement.** For concrete columns made with concrete having a specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , greater than 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa), tie and spiral reinforcement shall comply with the following:

1. The free ends of rectangular ties shall terminate with a 135-degree (2.4 rad) standard tie hook.
2. The free ends of circular ties shall terminate with a 90-degree (1.6 rad) standard tie hook.
3. The free ends of spirals, including at lap splices, shall terminate with a 90-degree (1.6 rad) standard tie hook.

The hook extension at the free end of ties and spirals shall be the larger of six bar diameters and the extension required by Section 25.3.2 of ACI 318. Hooks shall project into the core of the column.

**722.2.4.4 Columns built into walls.** The minimum dimensions of Table 722.2.4 do not apply to a reinforced concrete column that is built into a concrete or masonry wall provided that all of the following are met:

1. The fire-resistance rating for the wall is equal to or greater than the required rating of the column.
2. The main longitudinal reinforcing in the column has cover not less than that required by Section 722.2.4.2.
3. Openings in the wall are protected in accordance with Section 716.

Where openings in the wall are not protected as required by Section 716, the minimum dimension of columns required to have a fire-resistance rating of 3 hours or less shall be 8 inches (203 mm), and 10 inches (254 mm) for columns required to have a fire-resistance rating of 4 hours, regardless of the type of aggregate used in the concrete.

**722.2.4.5 Precast cover units for steel columns.** See Section 722.5.1.4.

**722.3 Concrete masonry.** The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of concrete masonry are established by calculations.

**722.3.1 Equivalent thickness.** The equivalent thickness of concrete masonry construction shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**722.3.1.1 Concrete masonry unit plus finishes.** The equivalent thickness of concrete masonry assemblies,  $T_{ea}$ , shall be computed as the sum of the equivalent thickness of the concrete masonry unit,  $T_e$ , as determined by Section 722.3.1.2, 722.3.1.3 or 722.3.1.4, plus the equivalent thickness of finishes,  $T_{ef}$ , determined in accordance with Section 722.3.2:

$$T_{ea} = T_e + T_{ef} \quad (\text{Equation 7-6})$$

**722.3.1.2 UngROUTed or partially gROUTed construction.**  $T_e$  shall be the value obtained for the concrete masonry unit determined in accordance with ASTM C140.

**722.3.1.3 Solid grouted construction.** The equivalent thickness,  $T_e$ , of solid grouted concrete masonry units is the actual thickness of the unit.

**722.3.1.4 Airspaces and cells filled with loose-fill material.** The equivalent thickness of completely filled hollow concrete masonry is the actual thickness of the unit where loose-fill materials are: sand, pea gravel, crushed stone, or slag that meet ASTM C33 requirements; pumice, scoria, expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slate, expanded slag, expanded fly ash, or cinders that comply with ASTM C331; or perlite or vermiculite meeting the requirements of ASTM C549 and ASTM C516, respectively.

**722.3.2 Concrete masonry walls.** The fire-resistance rating of walls and partitions constructed of concrete masonry units shall be determined from Table 722.3.2. The rating shall be based on the equivalent thickness of the masonry and type of aggregate used.

**722.3.2.1 Finish on nonfire-exposed side.** Where plaster or gypsum wallboard is applied to the side of the wall not exposed to fire, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The thickness of gypsum wallboard or plaster shall be corrected by multiplying the actual thickness of the finish by applicable factor determined from Table 722.2.1.4(1). This corrected thickness of finish shall be added to the equivalent thickness of masonry and the fire-resistance rating of the masonry and finish determined from Table 722.3.2.

**722.3.2.2 Finish on fire-exposed side.** Where plaster or gypsum wallboard is applied to the fire-exposed side of the wall, the contribution of the finish to the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined as follows: The time assigned to the finish as established by Table 722.2.1.4(2) shall be added to the fire-resistance rating determined in Section 722.3.2 for the masonry alone, or in Section 722.3.2.1 for the masonry and finish on the nonfire-exposed side.

**TABLE 722.3.2  
MINIMUM EQUIVALENT THICKNESS (inches) OF BEARING OR NONBEARING CONCRETE MASONRY WALLS<sup>a, b, c, d</sup>**

TYPE OF AGGREGATE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)														
	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1	$1\frac{1}{4}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	2	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$2\frac{1}{2}$	$2\frac{3}{4}$	3	$3\frac{1}{4}$	$3\frac{1}{2}$	$3\frac{3}{4}$	4
Pumice or expanded slag	1.5	1.9	2.1	2.5	2.7	3.0	3.2	3.4	3.6	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.4	4.5	4.7
Expanded shale, clay or slate	1.8	2.2	2.6	2.9	3.3	3.4	3.6	3.8	4.0	4.2	4.4	4.6	4.8	4.9	5.1
Limestone, cinders or unexpanded slag	1.9	2.3	2.7	3.1	3.4	3.7	4.0	4.3	4.5	4.8	5.0	5.2	5.5	5.7	5.9
Calcareous or siliceous gravel	2.0	2.4	2.8	3.2	3.6	3.9	4.2	4.5	4.8	5.0	5.3	5.5	5.8	6.0	6.2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Values between those shown in the table can be determined by direct interpolation.

b. Where combustible members are framed into the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown in the table.

c. Requirements of ASTM C55, ASTM C73, ASTM C90 or ASTM C744 shall apply.

d. Minimum required equivalent thickness corresponding to the hourly fire-resistance rating for units with a combination of aggregate shall be determined by linear interpolation based on the percent by volume of each aggregate used in manufacture.

**722.3.2.3 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.** For a wall without finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of this section shall be performed twice, assuming either side of the wall to be the fire-exposed side. The fire-resistance rating of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values calculated.

**Exception:** For exterior walls with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

**722.3.2.4 Minimum concrete masonry fire-resistance rating.** Where the finish applied to a concrete masonry wall contributes to its fire-resistance rating, the masonry alone shall provide not less than one-half the total required fire-resistance rating.

**722.3.2.5 Attachment of finishes.** Installation of finishes shall be as follows:

1. Gypsum wallboard and gypsum lath applied to concrete masonry or concrete walls shall be secured to wood or steel furring members spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center (o.c.).
2. Gypsum wallboard shall be installed with the long dimension parallel to the furring members and shall have all joints finished.
3. Other aspects of the installation of finishes shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapters 7 and 25.

**722.3.3 Multiwythe masonry walls.** The fire-resistance rating of wall assemblies constructed of multiple wythes of masonry materials shall be permitted to be based on the fire-resistance rating period of each wythe and the continuous airspace between each wythe in accordance with the following formula:

$$R_A = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \dots + R_n^{0.59} + A_1 + A_2 + \dots + A_n)^{1.7} \quad (\text{Equation 7-7})$$

where:

$R_A$  = Fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).

$R_1, R_2, \dots, R_n$  = Fire-resistance rating of wythes for 1, 2,  $n$  (hours), respectively.

$A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$  = 0.30, factor for each continuous airspace for 1, 2, ...,  $n$ , respectively, having a depth of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) or more between wythes.

**722.3.4 Concrete masonry lintels.** Fire-resistance ratings for concrete masonry lintels shall be determined based on the nominal thickness of the lintel and the minimum thickness of concrete masonry or concrete, or any combination thereof, covering the main reinforcing bars, as determined in accordance with Table 722.3.4, or by approved alternate methods.

**TABLE 722.3.4  
MINIMUM COVER OF LONGITUDINAL  
REINFORCEMENT IN FIRE-RESISTANCE-RATED  
REINFORCED CONCRETE MASONRY LINTELS (inches)**

NOMINAL WIDTH OF LINTEL (inches)	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)			
	1	2	3	4
6	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	—	—
8	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	3
10 or greater	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**722.3.5 Concrete masonry columns.** The fire-resistance rating of concrete masonry columns shall be determined based on the least plan dimension of the column in accordance with Table 722.3.5 or by approved alternate methods.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.3.5  
MINIMUM DIMENSION OF CONCRETE  
MASONRY COLUMNS (inches)**

FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)			
1	2	3	4
8 inches	10 inches	12 inches	14 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**722.4 Clay brick and tile masonry.** The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of clay brick and tile masonry are established by calculations.

**722.4.1 Masonry walls.** The fire-resistance rating of masonry walls shall be based on the equivalent thickness as calculated in accordance with this section. The calculation shall take into account finishes applied to the wall and airspaces between wythes in multiwythe construction.

**722.4.1.1 Equivalent thickness.** The fire-resistance ratings of walls or partitions constructed of solid or hollow clay masonry units shall be determined from Table 722.4.1(1) or Table 722.4.1(2). The equivalent thickness of the clay masonry unit shall be determined by Equation 7-8 where using Table 722.4.1(1). The fire-resistance rating determined from Table 722.4.1(1) shall be permitted to be used in the calculated fire-resistance rating procedure in Section 722.4.2.

$$T_e = V_n/LH \quad (\text{Equation 7-8})$$

where:

$T_e$  = The equivalent thickness of the clay masonry unit (inches).

$V_n$  = The net volume of the clay masonry unit (inches).

$L$  = The specified length of the clay masonry unit (inches).

$H$  = The specified height of the clay masonry unit (inches).

**722.4.1.1.1 Hollow clay units.** The equivalent thickness,  $T_e$ , shall be the value obtained for hollow clay units as determined in accordance with Equation 7-8. The net volume,  $V_n$ , of the units shall be determined using the gross volume and percentage of void area determined in accordance with ASTM C67.

**722.4.1.1.2 Solid grouted clay units.** The equivalent thickness of solid grouted clay masonry units shall be taken as the actual thickness of the units.

**722.4.1.1.3 Units with filled cores.** The equivalent thickness of the hollow clay masonry units is the actual thickness of the unit where completely filled with loose-fill materials of: sand, pea gravel, crushed stone, or slag that meet ASTM C33 requirements; pumice, scoria, expanded shale, expanded clay, expanded slate, expanded slag, expanded fly ash, or cinders in compliance with ASTM C331; or perlite or vermiculite meeting the requirements of ASTM C549 and ASTM C516, respectively.

**TABLE 722.4.1(3)  
VALUES OF  $R_n^{0.59}$**

$R_n^{0.59}$	$R$ (hours)
1	1.0
2	1.50
3	1.91
4	2.27

**TABLE 722.4.1(4)  
COEFFICIENTS FOR PLASTER,  $pI^a$**

THICKNESS OF PLASTER (inch)	ONE SIDE	TWO SIDES
$\frac{1}{2}$	0.3	0.6
$\frac{5}{8}$	0.37	0.75
$\frac{3}{4}$	0.45	0.90

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Values specified in the table are for 1:3 sanded gypsum plaster.

**TABLE 722.4.1(1)  
FIRE-RESISTANCE PERIODS OF CLAY MASONRY WALLS**

MATERIAL TYPE	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE RESISTANCE <sup>a, b, c</sup> (inches)			
	1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
Solid brick or clay or shale <sup>d</sup>	2.7	3.8	4.9	6.0
Hollow brick or tile of clay or shale, unfilled	2.3	3.4	4.3	5.0
Hollow brick or tile of clay or shale, grouted or filled with materials specified in Section 722.4.1.1.3	3.0	4.4	5.5	6.6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Equivalent thickness as determined from Section 722.4.1.1.

b. Calculated fire resistance between the hourly increments specified shall be determined by linear interpolation.

c. Where combustible members are framed in the wall, the thickness of solid material between the end of each member and the opposite face of the wall, or between members set in from opposite sides, shall be not less than 93 percent of the thickness shown.

d. For units in which the net cross-sectional area of cored brick in any plane parallel to the surface containing the cores is not less than 75 percent of the gross cross-sectional area measured in the same plane.

**TABLE 722.4.1(2)**  
**FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS FOR BEARING STEEL FRAME BRICK VENEER WALLS OR PARTITIONS**

WALL OR PARTITION ASSEMBLY	PLASTER SIDE EXPOSED (hours)	BRICK FACED SIDE EXPOSED (hours)
Outside facing of steel studs: $\frac{1}{2}$ " wood fiberboard sheathing next to studs, $\frac{3}{4}$ " airspace formed with $\frac{3}{4} \times 1\frac{5}{8}$ " wood strips placed over the fiberboard and secured to the studs; metal or wire lath nailed to such strips, $3\frac{3}{4}$ " brick veneer held in place by filling $\frac{3}{4}$ " airspace between the brick and lath with mortar. Inside facing of studs: $\frac{3}{4}$ " unsanded gypsum plaster on metal or wire lath attached to $\frac{5}{16}$ " wood strips secured to edges of the studs.	1.5	4
Outside facing of steel studs: 1" insulation board sheathing attached to studs, 1" airspace, and $3\frac{3}{4}$ " brick veneer attached to steel frame with metal ties every 5th course. Inside facing of studs: $\frac{7}{8}$ " sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied on metal or wire lath attached directly to the studs.	1.5	4
Same as previous assembly except use $\frac{7}{8}$ " vermiculite-gypsum plaster or 1" sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied to metal or wire.	2	4
Outside facing of steel studs: $\frac{1}{2}$ " gypsum sheathing board, attached to studs, and $3\frac{3}{4}$ " brick veneer attached to steel frame with metal ties every 5th course. Inside facing of studs: $\frac{1}{2}$ " sanded gypsum plaster (1:2 mix) applied to $\frac{1}{2}$ " perforated gypsum lath securely attached to studs and having strips of metal lath 3 inches wide applied to all horizontal joints of gypsum lath.	2	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**TABLE 722.4.1(5)**  
**REINFORCED MASONRY LINTELS**

NOMINAL LINTEL WIDTH (inches)	MINIMUM LONGITUDINAL REINFORCEMENT COVER FOR FIRE RESISTANCE (inches)			
	1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
6	$1\frac{1}{2}$	2	NP	NP
8	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$	3
10 or more	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{3}{4}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

**TABLE 722.4.1(6)**  
**REINFORCED CLAY MASONRY COLUMNS**

COLUMN SIZE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)			
	1	2	3	4
Minimum column dimension (inches)	8	10	12	14

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**722.4.1.2 Plaster finishes.** Where plaster is applied to the wall, the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_n^{0.59} + pl)^{1.7} \quad (\text{Equation 7-9})$$

where:

$R$  = The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).

$R_n$  = The fire-resistance rating of the individual wall (hours).

$pl$  = Coefficient for thickness of plaster.

Values for  $R_n^{0.59}$  for use in Equation 7-9 are given in Table 722.4.1(3). Coefficients for thickness of plaster shall be selected from Table 722.4.1(4) based on the actual thickness of plaster applied to the wall or parti-

tion and whether one or two sides of the wall are plastered.

**722.4.1.3 Multiwythe walls with airspace.** Where a continuous airspace separates multiple wythes of the wall or partition, the total fire-resistance rating shall be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \dots + R_n^{0.59} + as)^{1.7} \quad (\text{Equation 7-10})$$

where:

$R$  = The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).

$R_1, R_2$  and  $R_n$  = The fire-resistance rating of the individual wythes (hours).

$as$  = Coefficient for continuous airspace.

Values for  $R_n^{0.59}$  for use in Equation 7-10 are given in Table 722.4.1(3). The coefficient for each continuous airspace of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch to  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (12.7 to 89 mm) separating two individual wythes shall be 0.3.

**722.4.1.4 Nonsymmetrical assemblies.** For a wall without finish on one side or having different types or thicknesses of finish on each side, the calculation procedures of this section shall be performed twice, assuming either side to be the fire-exposed side of the wall. The fire resistance of the wall shall not exceed the lower of the two values determined.

**Exception:** For exterior walls with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the fire shall be assumed to occur on the interior side only.

**722.4.2 Multiwythe walls.** The fire-resistance rating for walls or partitions consisting of two or more dissimilar wythes shall be permitted to be determined by the formula:

$$R = (R_1^{0.59} + R_2^{0.59} + \dots + R_n^{0.59})^{1.7} \quad (\text{Equation 7-11})$$

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

where:

- $R$  = The fire-resistance rating of the assembly (hours).  
 $R_1, R_2$  and  $R_n$  = The fire-resistance rating of the individual wythes (hours).

Values for  $R_n^{0.59}$  for use in Equation 7-11 are given in Table 722.4.1(3).

**722.4.2.1 Multiwythe walls of different material.** For walls that consist of two or more wythes of different materials (concrete or concrete masonry units) in combination with clay masonry units, the fire-resistance rating of the different materials shall be permitted to be determined from Table 722.2.1.1 for concrete; Table 722.3.2 for concrete masonry units or Table 722.4.1(1) or Table 722.4.1(2) for clay and tile masonry units.

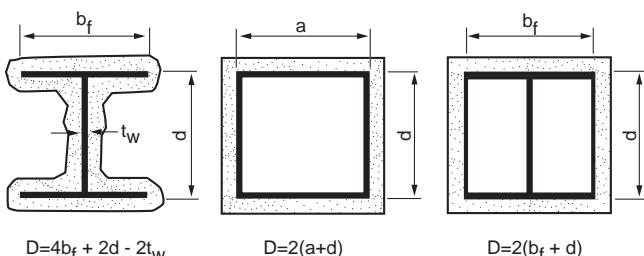
**722.4.3 Reinforced clay masonry lintels.** Fire-resistance ratings for clay masonry lintels shall be determined based on the nominal width of the lintel and the minimum covering for the longitudinal reinforcement in accordance with Table 722.4.1(5).

**722.4.4 Reinforced clay masonry columns.** The fire-resistance ratings shall be determined based on the last plan dimension of the column in accordance with Table 722.4.1(6). The minimum cover for longitudinal reinforcement shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

**722.5 Steel assemblies.** The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of steel assemblies are established by calculations.

**722.5.1 Structural steel columns.** The fire-resistance ratings of structural steel columns shall be based on the size of the element and the type of protection provided in accordance with this section.

**722.5.1.1 General.** These procedures establish a basis for determining the fire resistance of column assemblies as a function of the thickness of fire-resistant material, and the weight,  $W$ , and heated perimeter,  $D$ , of structural steel columns. As used in these sections,  $W$  is the average weight of a structural steel column in pounds per linear foot. The heated perimeter,  $D$ , is the inside perimeter of the fire-resistant material in inches as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(1).



**FIGURE 722.5.1(1)**  
**DETERMINATION OF THE HEATED**  
**PERIMETER OF STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS**

**722.5.1.1 Nonload-bearing protection.** The application of these procedures shall be limited to column assemblies in which the fire-resistant material is not designed to carry any of the load acting on the column.

**722.5.1.1.2 Embedments.** In the absence of substantiating fire-endurance test results, ducts, conduit, piping, and similar mechanical, electrical, and plumbing installations shall not be embedded in any required fire-resistant materials.

**722.5.1.1.3 Weight-to-perimeter ratio.** Table 722.5.1(1) contains weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ) for both contour and box fire-resistant profiles, for the wide flange shapes most often used as columns. For different fire-resistant protection profiles or column cross sections, the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ) shall be determined in accordance with the definitions given in this section.

**722.5.1.2 Gypsum wallboard protection.** The fire resistance of structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ) less than or equal to 3.65 and that are protected with Type X gypsum wallboard shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = 130 \left[ \frac{h(W/D)}{2} \right]^{0.75} \quad (\text{Equation 7-12})$$

where:

$R$  = Fire resistance (minutes).

$h$  = Total thickness of gypsum wallboard (inches).

$D$  = Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).

$W'$  = Total weight of the structural steel column and gypsum wallboard protection (pounds per linear foot).

$$W' = W + 50hD/144.$$

**722.5.1.2.1 Attachment.** The gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be supported as illustrated in either Figure 722.5.1(2) for fire-resistance ratings of 4 hours or less, or Figure 722.5.1(3) for fire-resistance ratings of 3 hours or less.

**722.5.1.2.2 Gypsum wallboard equivalent to concrete.** The determination of the fire resistance of structural steel columns from Figure 722.5.1(4) is permitted for various thicknesses of gypsum wallboard as a function of the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio ( $W/D$ ) of the column. For structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ) greater than 3.65, the thickness of gypsum wallboard required for specified fire-resistance ratings shall be the same as the thickness determined for a W14 × 233 wide flange shape.

**TABLE 722.5.1(1)**  
**W/D RATIOS FOR STEEL COLUMNS**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W14 × 233	2.55	3.65
× 211	2.32	3.35
× 193	2.14	3.09
× 176	1.96	2.85
× 159	1.78	2.60
× 145	1.64	2.39
× 132	1.56	2.25
× 120	1.42	2.06
× 109	1.29	1.88
× 99	1.18	1.72
× 90	1.08	1.58
× 82	1.23	1.68
× 74	1.12	1.53
× 68	1.04	1.41
× 61	0.928	1.28
× 53	0.915	1.21
× 48	0.835	1.10
× 43	0.752	0.99
W12 × 190	2.50	3.51
× 170	2.26	3.20
× 152	2.04	2.90
× 136	1.86	2.63
× 120	1.65	2.36
× 106	1.47	2.11
× 96	1.34	1.93
× 87	1.22	1.76
× 79	1.11	1.61
× 72	1.02	1.48
× 65	0.925	1.35
× 58	0.925	1.31
× 53	0.855	1.20
× 50	0.909	1.23
× 45	0.829	1.12
× 40	0.734	1.00
W10 × 112	1.81	2.57
× 100	1.64	2.33
× 88	1.45	2.08
× 77	1.28	1.85
× 68	1.15	1.66
× 60	1.01	1.48
× 54	0.922	1.34
× 49	0.84	1.23
× 45	0.888	1.24
× 39	0.78	1.09
× 33	0.661	0.93

(continued)

**TABLE 722.5.1(1)—continued**  
**W/D RATIOS FOR STEEL COLUMNS**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W8 × 67	1.37	1.94
× 58	1.20	1.71
× 48	1.00	1.44
× 40	0.849	1.23
× 35	0.749	1.08
× 31	0.665	0.97
× 28	0.688	0.96
× 24	0.591	0.83
× 21	0.577	0.77
× 18	0.499	0.67
W6 × 25	0.696	1.00
× 20	0.563	0.82
× 16	0.584	0.78
× 15	0.431	0.63
× 12	0.448	0.60
× 9	0.338	0.46
W5 × 19	0.644	0.93
× 16	0.55	0.80
W4 × 13	0.556	0.79

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot per inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**
**TABLE 722.5.1(2)  
PROPERTIES OF CONCRETE**

PROPERTY	NORMAL-WEIGHT CONCRETE	STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE
Thermal conductivity ( $k_c$ )	0.95 Btu/hr × ft × °F	0.35 Btu/hr × ft × °F
Specific heat ( $c_c$ )	0.20 Btu/lb °F	0.20 Btu/lb °F
Density ( $P_c$ )	145 lb/ft <sup>3</sup>	110 lb/ft <sup>3</sup>
Equilibrium (free) moisture content (m) by volume	4%	5%

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 lb/ft<sup>3</sup> = 16.0185 kg/m<sup>3</sup>, Btu/hr × ft × °F = 1.731 W/(m × K).

**TABLE 722.5.1(3)  
THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY OF CONCRETE OR CLAY MASONRY UNITS**

DENSITY ( $d_m$ ) OF UNITS (lb/ft <sup>3</sup> )	THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY ( $K$ ) OF UNITS (Btu/hr · ft · °F)
<b>Concrete Masonry Units</b>	
80	0.207
85	0.228
90	0.252
95	0.278
100	0.308
105	0.340
110	0.376
115	0.416
120	0.459
125	0.508
130	0.561
135	0.620
140	0.685
145	0.758
150	0.837
<b>Clay Masonry Units</b>	
120	1.25
130	2.25

For SI: 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.0185 kg/m<sup>3</sup>, Btu/hr × ft × °F = 1.731 W/(m × K)

**TABLE 722.5.1(4)**  
**WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (W/D) FOR**  
**TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W36 × 300	2.50	3.33
× 280	2.35	3.12
× 260	2.18	2.92
× 245	2.08	2.76
× 230	1.95	2.61
× 210	1.96	2.45
× 194	1.81	2.28
× 182	1.72	2.15
× 170	1.60	2.01
× 160	1.51	1.90
× 150	1.43	1.79
× 135	1.29	1.63
W33 × 241	2.13	2.86
× 221	1.97	2.64
× 201	1.79	2.42
× 152	1.53	1.94
× 141	1.43	1.80
× 130	1.32	1.67
× 118	1.21	1.53
W30 × 211	2.01	2.74
× 191	1.85	2.50
× 173	1.66	2.28
× 132	1.47	1.85
× 124	1.39	1.75
× 116	1.30	1.65
× 108	1.21	1.54
× 99	1.12	1.42
W27 × 178	1.87	2.55
× 161	1.70	2.33
× 146	1.55	2.12
× 114	1.39	1.76
× 102	1.24	1.59
× 94	1.15	1.47
× 84	1.03	1.33
W24 × 162	1.88	2.57
× 146	1.70	2.34
× 131	1.54	2.12
× 117	1.38	1.91
× 104	1.24	1.71
× 94	1.28	1.63
× 84	1.15	1.47
× 76	1.05	1.34

(continued)

**TABLE 722.5.1(4)—continued**  
**WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (W/D) FOR**  
**TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W24 × 68	0.942	1.21
× 62	0.934	1.14
× 55	0.828	1.02
W21 × 147	1.87	2.60
× 132	1.68	2.35
× 122	1.57	2.19
× 111	1.43	2.01
× 101	1.30	1.84
× 93	1.40	1.80
× 83	1.26	1.62
× 73	1.11	1.44
× 68	1.04	1.35
W21 × 62	0.952	1.23
× 57	0.952	1.17
× 50	0.838	1.04
× 44	0.746	0.92
W18 × 119	1.72	2.42
× 106	1.55	2.18
× 97	1.42	2.01
× 86	1.27	1.80
× 76	1.13	1.60
× 71	1.22	1.59
× 65	1.13	1.47
× 60	1.04	1.36
× 55	0.963	1.26
× 50	0.88	1.15
× 46	0.878	1.09
× 40	0.768	0.96
× 35	0.672	0.85
W16 × 100	1.59	2.25
× 89	1.43	2.03
× 77	1.25	1.78
× 67	1.09	1.56
× 57	1.09	1.43
× 50	0.962	1.26
× 45	0.870	1.15
× 40	0.780	1.03
× 36	0.702	0.93
× 31	0.661	0.83
× 26	0.558	0.70
W14 × 132	1.89	3.00
× 120	1.71	2.75
× 109	1.57	2.52

(continued)

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.5.1(4)—continued  
WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (W/D) FOR  
TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W14 × 99	1.43	2.31
× 90	1.31	2.11
× 82	1.45	2.12
× 74	1.32	1.93
× 68	1.22	1.78
× 61	1.10	1.61
× 53	1.06	1.48
× 48	0.970	1.35
W14 × 43	0.874	1.22
× 38	0.809	1.09
× 34	0.725	0.98
× 30	0.644	0.87
× 26	0.628	0.79
× 22	0.534	0.68
W12 × 87	1.47	2.34
× 79	1.34	2.14
× 72	1.23	1.97
× 65	1.11	1.79
× 58	1.10	1.69
× 53	1.02	1.55
× 50	1.06	1.54
× 45	0.974	1.40
× 40	0.860	1.25
× 35	0.810	1.11
× 30	0.699	0.96
× 26	0.612	0.84
× 22	0.623	0.77
× 19	0.540	0.67
× 16	0.457	0.57
× 14	0.405	0.50
W10 × 112	2.17	3.38
× 100	1.97	3.07
× 88	1.74	2.75
× 77	1.54	2.45
× 68	1.38	2.20
× 60	1.22	1.97
× 54	1.11	1.79
× 49	1.01	1.64
× 45	1.06	1.59
× 39	0.94	1.40
× 33	0.77	1.20

(continued)

**TABLE 722.5.1(4)—continued  
WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIOS (W/D) FOR  
TYPICAL WIDE FLANGE BEAM AND GIRDER SHAPES**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	CONTOUR PROFILE	BOX PROFILE
W10 × 30	0.806	1.12
× 26	0.708	0.98
× 22	0.606	0.84
× 19	0.607	0.78
× 17	0.543	0.70
× 15	0.484	0.63
× 12	0.392	0.51
W8 × 67	1.65	2.55
× 58	1.44	2.26
× 48	1.21	1.91
× 40	1.03	1.63
× 35	0.907	1.44
× 31	0.803	1.29
× 28	0.819	1.24
× 24	0.704	1.07
× 21	0.675	0.96
× 18	0.583	0.84
× 15	0.551	0.74
× 13	0.483	0.65
× 10	0.375	0.51
W6 × 25	0.839	1.33
× 20	0.678	1.09
× 16	0.684	0.96
× 15	0.521	0.83
× 12	0.526	0.75
× 9	0.398	0.57
W5 × 19	0.776	1.24
× 16	0.664	1.07
W4 × 13	0.670	1.05

For SI: 1 pound per linear foot per inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.5.1(5)**  
**FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE  
MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS**

COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
W14 × 82	80	0.74	1.61	2.36	3.04
	100	0.89	1.85	2.67	3.40
	110	0.96	1.97	2.81	3.57
	120	1.03	2.08	2.95	3.73
W14 × 68	80	0.83	1.70	2.45	3.13
	100	0.99	1.95	2.76	3.49
	110	1.06	2.06	2.91	3.66
	120	1.14	2.18	3.05	3.82
W14 × 53	80	0.91	1.81	2.58	3.27
	100	1.07	2.05	2.88	3.62
	110	1.15	2.17	3.02	3.78
	120	1.22	2.28	3.16	3.94
W14 × 43	80	1.01	1.93	2.71	3.41
	100	1.17	2.17	3.00	3.74
	110	1.25	2.28	3.14	3.90
	120	1.32	2.38	3.27	4.05
W12 × 72	80	0.81	1.66	2.41	3.09
	100	0.91	1.88	2.70	3.43
	110	0.99	1.99	2.84	3.60
	120	1.06	2.10	2.98	3.76
W12 × 58	80	0.88	1.76	2.52	3.21
	100	1.04	2.01	2.83	3.56
	110	1.11	2.12	2.97	3.73
	120	1.19	2.23	3.11	3.89
W12 × 50	80	0.91	1.81	2.58	3.27
	100	1.07	2.05	2.88	3.62
	110	1.15	2.17	3.02	3.78
	120	1.22	2.28	3.16	3.94
W12 × 40	80	1.01	1.94	2.72	3.41
	100	1.17	2.17	3.01	3.75
	110	1.25	2.28	3.14	3.90
	120	1.32	2.39	3.27	4.06
W10 × 68	80	0.72	1.58	2.33	3.01
	100	0.87	1.83	2.65	3.38
	110	0.94	1.95	2.79	3.55
	120	1.01	2.06	2.94	3.72
W10 × 54	80	0.88	1.76	2.53	3.21
	100	1.04	2.01	2.83	3.57
	110	1.11	2.12	2.98	3.73
	120	1.19	2.24	3.12	3.90

(continued)

**TABLE 722.5.1(5)—continued**  
**FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE  
MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS**

COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
W10 × 45	80	0.92	1.83	2.60	3.30
	100	1.08	2.07	2.90	3.64
	110	1.16	2.18	3.04	3.80
	120	1.23	2.29	3.18	3.96
W10 × 33	80	1.06	2.00	2.79	3.49
	100	1.22	2.23	3.07	3.80
	110	1.30	2.34	3.20	3.96
	120	1.37	2.44	3.33	4.12
W8 × 40	80	0.94	1.85	2.63	3.33
	100	1.10	2.10	2.93	3.67
	110	1.18	2.21	3.07	3.83
	120	1.25	2.32	3.20	3.99
W8 × 31	80	1.06	2.00	2.78	3.49
	100	1.22	2.23	3.07	3.81
	110	1.29	2.33	3.20	3.97
	120	1.36	2.44	3.33	4.12
W8 × 24	80	1.14	2.09	2.89	3.59
	100	1.29	2.31	3.16	3.90
	110	1.36	2.42	3.28	4.05
	120	1.43	2.52	3.41	4.20
W8 × 18	80	1.22	2.20	3.01	3.72
	100	1.36	2.40	3.25	4.01
	110	1.42	2.50	3.37	4.14
	120	1.48	2.59	3.49	4.28
8 × 8 × $\frac{1}{2}$ wall thickness	80	0.77	1.66	2.44	3.13
	100	0.92	1.91	2.75	3.49
	110	1.00	2.02	2.89	3.66
	120	1.07	2.14	3.03	3.82
8 × 8 × $\frac{3}{8}$ wall thickness	80	0.91	1.84	2.63	3.33
	100	1.07	2.08	2.92	3.67
	110	1.14	2.19	3.06	3.83
	120	1.21	2.29	3.19	3.98
8 × 8 × $\frac{1}{4}$ wall thickness	80	1.10	2.06	2.86	3.57
	100	1.25	2.28	3.13	3.87
	110	1.32	2.38	3.25	4.02
	120	1.39	2.48	3.38	4.17
6 × 6 × $\frac{1}{2}$ wall thickness	80	0.82	1.75	2.54	3.25
	100	0.98	1.99	2.84	3.59
	110	1.05	2.10	2.98	3.75
	120	1.12	2.21	3.11	3.91

(continued)

**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**

**TABLE 722.5.1(5)—continued  
FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE  
MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS**

COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
6 × 6 × $\frac{3}{8}$ wall thickness	80	0.96	1.91	2.71	3.42
	100	1.12	2.14	3.00	3.75
	110	1.19	2.25	3.13	3.90
	120	1.26	2.35	3.26	4.05
6 × 6 × $\frac{1}{4}$ wall thickness	80	1.14	2.11	2.92	3.63
	100	1.29	2.32	3.18	3.93
	110	1.36	2.43	3.30	4.08
	120	1.42	2.52	3.43	4.22
4 × 4 × $\frac{1}{2}$ wall thickness	80	0.93	1.90	2.71	3.43
	100	1.08	2.13	2.99	3.76
	110	1.16	2.24	3.13	3.91
	120	1.22	2.34	3.26	4.06
4 × 4 × $\frac{3}{8}$ wall thickness	80	1.05	2.03	2.84	3.57
	100	1.20	2.25	3.11	3.88
	110	1.27	2.35	3.24	4.02
	120	1.34	2.45	3.37	4.17
4 × 4 × $\frac{1}{4}$ wall thickness	80	1.21	2.20	3.01	3.73
	100	1.35	2.40	3.26	4.02
	110	1.41	2.50	3.38	4.16
	120	1.48	2.59	3.50	4.30
6 double extra strong 0.864 wall thickness	80	0.59	1.46	2.23	2.92
	100	0.73	1.71	2.54	3.29
	110	0.80	1.82	2.69	3.47
	120	0.86	1.93	2.83	3.63
6 extra strong 0.432 wall thickness	80	0.94	1.90	2.70	3.42
	100	1.10	2.13	2.98	3.74
	110	1.17	2.22	3.11	3.89
	120	1.24	2.34	3.24	4.04
6 standard 0.280 wall thickness	80	1.14	2.12	2.93	3.64
	100	1.29	2.33	3.19	3.94
	110	1.36	2.43	3.31	4.08
	120	1.42	2.53	3.43	4.22
5 double extra strong 0.750 wall thickness	80	0.70	1.61	2.40	3.12
	100	0.85	1.86	2.71	3.47
	110	0.91	1.97	2.85	3.63
	120	0.98	2.02	2.99	3.79
5 extra strong 0.375 wall thickness	80	1.04	2.01	2.83	3.54
	100	1.19	2.23	3.09	3.85
	110	1.26	2.34	3.22	4.00
	20	1.32	2.44	3.34	4.14

(continued)

**TABLE 722.5.1(5)—continued  
FIRE RESISTANCE OF CONCRETE  
MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS**

COLUMN SIZE	CONCRETE MASONRY DENSITY POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CONCRETE MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
5 standard 0.258 wall thickness	80	1.20	2.19	3.00	3.72
	100	1.34	2.39	3.25	4.00
	110	1.41	2.49	3.37	4.14
	120	1.47	2.58	3.49	4.28
4 double extra strong 0.674 wall thickness	80	0.80	1.75	2.56	3.28
	100	0.95	1.99	2.85	3.62
	110	1.02	2.10	2.99	3.78
	120	1.09	2.20	3.12	3.93
4 extra strong 0.337 wall thickness	80	1.12	2.11	2.93	3.65
	100	1.26	2.32	3.19	3.95
	110	1.33	2.42	3.31	4.09
	120	1.40	2.52	3.43	4.23
4 standard 0.237 wall thickness	80	1.26	2.25	3.07	3.79
	100	1.40	2.45	3.31	4.07
	110	1.46	2.55	3.43	4.21
	120	1.53	2.64	3.54	4.34

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic feet = 16.02 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

**Note:** Tabulated values assume 1-inch air gap between masonry and steel section.

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.5.1(6)**  
**FIRE RESISTANCE OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTED STEEL COLUMNS**

COLUMN SIZE	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)				COLUMN SIZE	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours			1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
W14 × 82	120	1.23	2.42	3.41	4.29	W10 × 68	120	1.27	2.46	3.26	4.35
	130	1.40	2.70	3.78	4.74		130	1.44	2.75	3.83	4.80
W14 × 68	120	1.34	2.54	3.54	4.43	W10 × 54	120	1.40	2.61	3.62	4.51
	130	1.51	2.82	3.91	4.87		130	1.58	2.89	3.98	4.95
W14 × 53	120	1.43	2.65	3.65	4.54	W10 × 45	120	1.44	2.66	3.67	4.57
	130	1.61	2.93	4.02	4.98		130	1.62	2.95	4.04	5.01
W14 × 43	120	1.54	2.76	3.77	4.66	W10 × 33	120	1.59	2.82	3.84	4.73
	130	1.72	3.04	4.13	5.09		130	1.77	3.10	4.20	5.13
W12 × 72	120	1.32	2.52	3.51	4.40	W8 × 40	120	1.47	2.70	3.71	4.61
	130	1.50	2.80	3.88	4.84		130	1.65	2.98	4.08	5.04
W12 × 58	120	1.40	2.61	3.61	4.50	W8 × 31	120	1.59	2.82	3.84	4.73
	130	1.57	2.89	3.98	4.94		130	1.77	3.10	4.20	5.17
W12 × 50	120	1.43	2.65	3.66	4.55	W8 × 24	120	1.66	2.90	3.92	4.82
	130	1.61	2.93	4.02	4.99		130	1.84	3.18	4.28	5.25
W12 × 40	120	1.54	2.77	3.78	4.67	W8 × 18	120	1.75	3.00	4.01	4.91
	130	1.72	3.05	4.14	5.10		130	1.93	3.27	4.37	5.34

## STEEL TUBING

NOMINAL TUBE SIZE (inches)	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)				NOMINAL PIPE SIZE (inches)	CLAY MASONRY DENSITY, POUNDS PER CUBIC FOOT	MINIMUM REQUIRED EQUIVALENT THICKNESS FOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF CLAY MASONRY PROTECTION ASSEMBLY, $T_e$ (inches)			
		1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours			1 hour	2 hours	3 hours	4 hours
4 × 4 × $\frac{1}{2}$ wall thickness	120	1.44	2.72	3.76	4.68	4 double extra strong 0.674 wall thickness	120	1.26	2.55	3.60	4.52
	130	1.62	3.00	4.12	5.11		130	1.42	2.82	3.96	4.95
4 × 4 × $\frac{3}{8}$ wall thickness	120	1.56	2.84	3.88	4.78	4 extra strong 0.337 wall thickness	120	1.60	2.89	3.92	4.83
	130	1.74	3.12	4.23	5.21		130	1.77	3.16	4.28	5.25
4 × 4 × $\frac{1}{4}$ wall thickness	120	1.72	2.99	4.02	4.92	4 standard 0.237 wall thickness	120	1.74	3.02	4.05	4.95
	130	1.89	3.26	4.37	5.34		130	1.92	3.29	4.40	5.37
6 × 6 × $\frac{1}{2}$ wall thickness	120	1.33	2.58	3.62	4.52	5 double extra strong 0.750 wall thickness	120	1.17	2.44	3.48	4.40
	130	1.50	2.86	3.98	4.96		130	1.33	2.72	3.84	4.83
6 × 6 × $\frac{3}{8}$ wall thickness	120	1.48	2.74	3.76	4.67	5 extra strong 0.375 wall thickness	120	1.55	2.82	3.85	4.76
	130	1.65	3.01	4.13	5.10		130	1.72	3.09	4.21	5.18
6 × 6 × $\frac{1}{4}$ wall thickness	120	1.66	2.91	3.94	4.84	5 standard 0.258 wall thickness	120	1.71	2.97	4.00	4.90
	130	1.83	3.19	4.30	5.27		130	1.88	3.24	4.35	5.32
8 × 8 × $\frac{1}{2}$ wall thickness	120	1.27	2.50	3.52	4.42	6 double extra strong 0.864 wall thickness	120	1.04	2.28	3.32	4.23
	130	1.44	2.78	3.89	4.86		130	1.19	2.60	3.68	4.67
8 × 8 × $\frac{3}{8}$ wall thickness	120	1.43	2.67	3.69	4.59	6 extra strong 0.432 wall thickness	120	1.45	2.71	3.75	4.65
	130	1.60	2.95	4.05	5.02		130	1.62	2.99	4.10	5.08
8 × 8 × $\frac{1}{4}$ wall thickness	120	1.62	2.87	3.89	4.78	6 standard 0.280 wall thickness	120	1.65	2.91	3.94	4.84
	130	1.79	3.14	4.24	5.21		130	1.82	3.19	4.30	5.27

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16.02 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**

**TABLE 722.5.1(7)**  
**MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS**  
**ENCASED IN NORMAL-WEIGHT CONCRETE<sup>a</sup>**  
**[FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(c)]**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)						
	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4		
W14 × 233	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2		
× 176				2	2 $\frac{1}{2}$		
× 132							
× 90			1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	3		
× 61							
× 48							
× 43			1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$			
W12 × 152	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$					
× 96		2		2 $\frac{1}{2}$			
× 65							
× 50		2 $\frac{1}{2}$		3			
× 40							
W10 × 88	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	3		
× 49	1			2 $\frac{1}{2}$	3 $\frac{1}{2}$		
× 45							
× 39							
× 33	2						
W8 × 67	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1	2 $\frac{1}{2}$	3		
× 58			1 $\frac{1}{2}$	3	3 $\frac{1}{2}$		
× 48							
× 31			2	3	4		
× 21							
× 18							
W6 × 25	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	3 $\frac{1}{2}$		
× 20			2	3	4		
× 16							
× 15							
× 9			1 $\frac{1}{2}$				

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based on the assumed properties of normal-weight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

**TABLE 722.5.1(8)**  
**MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS**  
**ENCASED IN STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT CONCRETE<sup>a</sup>**  
**[FIGURE 722.5.1(6)(c)]**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (HOURS)				
	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	3	4
W14 × 233	1	1	1	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$
× 193				1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2
× 74					
× 61				2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
× 43					
W12 × 65			1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2
× 53				2	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
× 40					
W10 × 112	1	1	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2
× 88				2 $\frac{1}{2}$	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
× 60					
× 33					
W8 × 35	1	1	1 $\frac{1}{2}$	2	2 $\frac{1}{2}$
× 28				2 $\frac{1}{2}$	3
× 24					
× 18			1 $\frac{1}{2}$		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based on the assumed properties of structural lightweight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

**TABLE 722.5.1(9)**  
**MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS**  
**IN NORMAL-WEIGHT PRECAST COVERS<sup>a</sup>**  
**[FIGURE 722.5.1 (6)(a)]**

STRUCTURAL SHAPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	1½	2	3	4
W14 × 233	1½	1½	1½	2½	3
× 211			2	3½	
× 176		2	2½	3	
× 145			3	4	
× 109		2½	3½	4½	
× 99			4		
× 61			4½		
× 43					
W12 × 190	1½	1½	1½	2½	3½
× 152			2	3	4
× 120		2	2½	3½	4½
× 96			3½		
× 87		2½	4		
× 58			4½		
× 40					
W10 × 112	1½	1½	2	3	3½
× 88			3	4	
× 77		2	2½	3½	
× 54			3½	4½	
× 33		2½	4		
W8 × 67	1½	1½	2	3	
× 58			3	4	
× 48		2	2½	3½	
× 28			3½	4½	
× 21		2½	3	4	
× 18			4		
W6 × 25	1½	2	2½	3½	
× 20			3	4½	
× 16		2½	3	4	
× 12			4	5	
× 9		2			

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based on the assumed properties of normal-weight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

**TABLE 722.5.1(10)**  
**MINIMUM COVER (inch) FOR STEEL COLUMNS**  
**IN STRUCTURAL LIGHTWEIGHT PRECAST COVERS<sup>a</sup>**  
**[FIGURE 722.5.1 (6)(a)]**

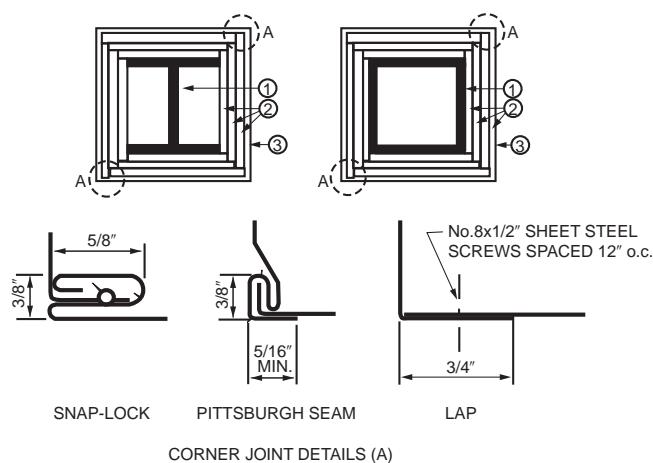
STRUCTURAL SHAPE	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)				
	1	1½	2	3	4
W14 × 233	1½	1½	2	2½	2
× 176			3	3½	
× 145		2	3	4	
× 132			4	5	
× 109		2½	3½	4½	
× 99			4½		
× 68		3	3	3½	
× 43			3½		
W12 × 190	1½	1½	2	2½	2½
× 152			3	3½	
× 136		2	3	2½	
× 106			4	3	
× 96		2½	3½	2½	
× 87			4½	3½	
× 65		3	2	3	
× 40			3		
W10 × 112	1½	1½	2	2½	3
× 88			3	3½	
× 77		2	2½	2½	
× 54			3½	3	
× 33		2½	4	3	
W8 × 67	1½	1½	2	2½	3
× 58			3	3½	
× 48		2	2½	2½	
× 35			3	3½	
× 28		2½	4	4	
× 18			4½		
W6 × 25	1½	2	2	2½	3½
× 20			3	3½	
× 16		2½	3	2½	
× 12			4	3½	
× 9		2	2	3½	4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. The tabulated thicknesses are based on the assumed properties of structural lightweight concrete given in Table 722.5.1(2).

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

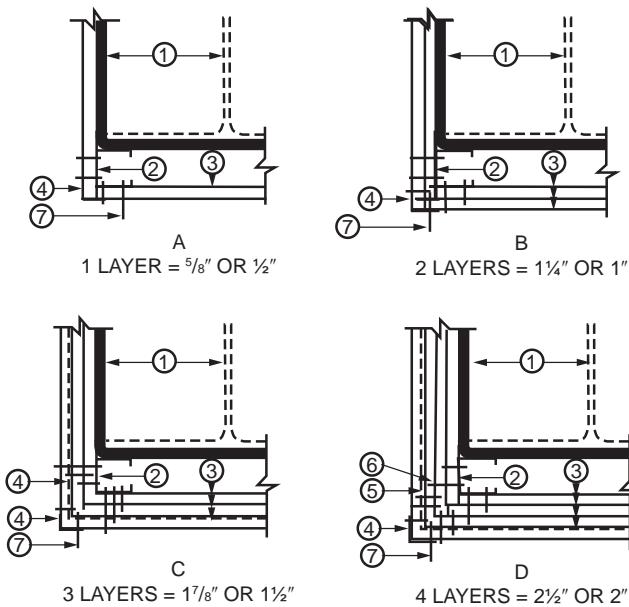
101697556



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm.

1. Structural steel column, either wide flange or tubular shapes.
2. Type X gypsum board or gypsum panel products in accordance with ASTM C1177, C1178, C1278, C1396 or C1658. The total thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products calculated as  $h$  in Section 722.5.1.2 shall be applied vertically to an individual column using one of the following methods:
  1. As a single layer without horizontal joints.
  2. As multiple layers with horizontal joints not permitted in any layer.
  3. As multiple layers with horizontal joints staggered not less than 12 inches vertically between layers and not less than 8 feet vertically in any single layer. The total required thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be determined on the basis of the specified fire-resistance rating and the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (W/D) of the column. For fire-resistance ratings of 2 hours or less, one of the required layers of gypsum board or gypsum panel product may be applied to the exterior of the sheet steel column covers with 1-inch long Type S screws spaced 1 inch from the wallboard edge and 8 inches on center. For such installations, 0.0149-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel corner beads with  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch legs shall be attached to the wallboard with Type S screws spaced 12 inches on center.
3. For fire-resistance ratings of 3 hours or less, the column covers shall be fabricated from 0.0239-inch minimum thickness galvanized or stainless steel. For 4-hour fire-resistance ratings, the column covers shall be fabricated from 0.0239-inch minimum thickness stainless steel. The column covers shall be erected with the Snap Lock or Pittsburgh joint details. For fire-resistance ratings of 2 hours or less, column covers fabricated from 0.0269-inch minimum thickness galvanized or stainless steel shall be permitted to be erected with lap joints. The lap joints shall be permitted to be located anywhere around the perimeter of the column cover. The lap joints shall be secured with  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-long No. 8 sheet metal screws spaced 12 inches on center. The column covers shall be provided with a minimum expansion clearance of  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch per linear foot between the ends of the cover and any restraining construction.

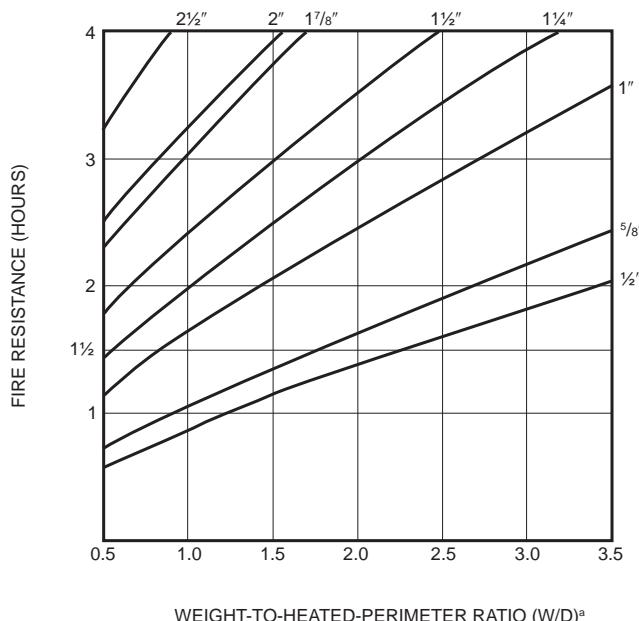
**FIGURE 722.5.1(2)**  
GYPSUM-PROTECTED STRUCTURAL  
STEEL COLUMNS WITH SHEET STEEL COLUMN COVERS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = -305 mm.

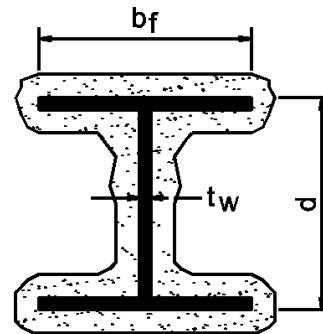
1. Structural steel column, either wide flange or tubular shapes.
2.  $2\frac{1}{8}$ -inch deep studs fabricated from 0.0179-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel with  $1\frac{5}{16}$  or  $1\frac{7}{16}$ -inch legs. The length of the steel studs shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch less than the height of the assembly.
3. Type X gypsum board or gypsum panel products in accordance with ASTM C1177, C1178, C1278, C1396 or C1658. The total thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products calculated as  $h$  in Section 722.5.1.2 shall be applied vertically to an individual column using one of the following methods:
  1. As a single layer without horizontal joints.
  2. As multiple layers with horizontal joints not permitted in any layer.
  3. As multiple layers with horizontal joints staggered not less than 12 inches vertically between layers and not less than 8 feet vertically in any single layer. The total required thickness of gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be determined on the basis of the specified fire-resistance rating and the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio (W/D) of the column.
4. Galvanized 0.0149-inch minimum thickness steel corner beads with  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch legs attached to the gypsum board or gypsum panel products with 1-inch-long Type S screws spaced 12 inches on center.
5. No. 18 SWG steel tie wires spaced 24 inches on center.
6. Sheet metal angles with 2-inch legs fabricated from 0.0221-inch minimum thickness galvanized steel.
7. Type S screws, 1 inch long, shall be used for attaching the first layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs and the third layer to the sheet metal angles at 24 inches on center. Type S screws  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches long shall be used for attaching the second layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs and the fourth layer to the sheet metal angles at 12 inches on center. Type S screws  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches long shall be used for attaching the third layer of gypsum board or gypsum panel product to the steel studs at 12 inches on center.

**FIGURE 722.5.1(3)**  
GYPSUM-PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS  
WITH STEEL STUD/SCREW ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

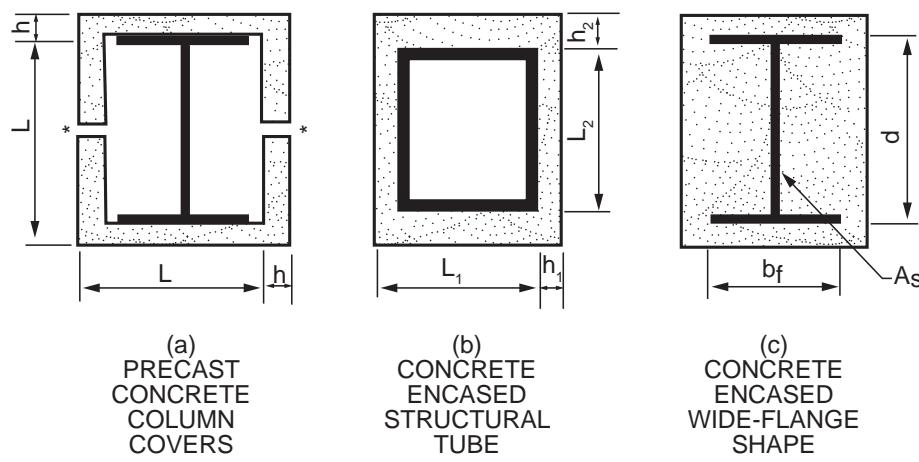
WEIGHT-TO-HEATED-PERIMETER RATIO (W/D)<sup>a</sup>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per linear foot/inch = 0.059 kg/m/mm.  
a. The W/D ratios for typical wide flange columns are listed in Table 722.5.1(1). For other column shapes, the W/D ratios shall be determined in accordance with Section 722.5.1.1.

**FIGURE 722.5.1(4)**  
FIRE RESISTANCE OF STRUCTURAL  
STEEL COLUMNS PROTECTED WITH VARIOUS  
THICKNESSES OF TYPE X GYPSUM WALLBOARD



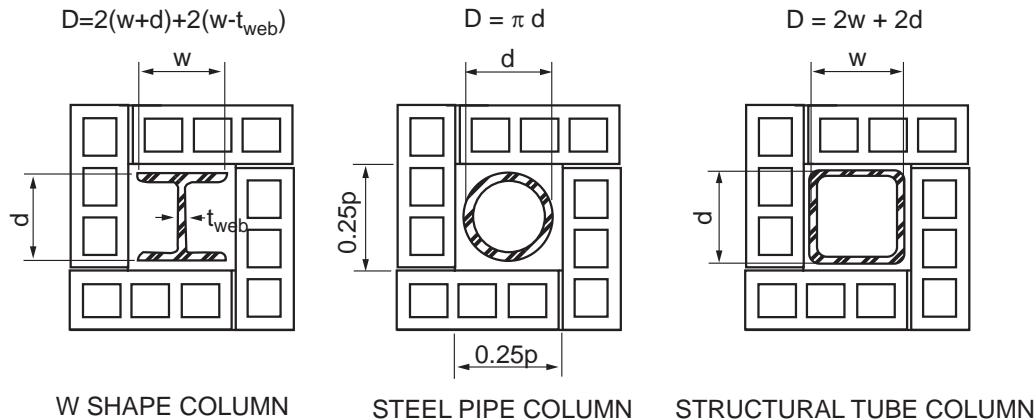
**FIGURE 722.5.1(5)**  
WIDE FLANGE STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS WITH  
SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS



- a. Where the inside perimeter of the concrete protection is not square,  $L$  shall be taken as the average of  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ . Where the thickness of concrete cover is not constant,  $h$  shall be taken of the average of  $h_1$  and  $h_2$ .  
b. Joints shall be protected with not less than a 1-inch thickness of ceramic fiber blanket but in no case less than one-half the thickness of the column cover (see Section 722.2.1.3).

**FIGURE 722.5.1(6)**  
CONCRETE PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS<sup>a,b</sup>

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

$d$  = Depth of a wide flange column, outside diameter of pipe column, or outside dimension of structural tubing column (inches).

$t_{web}$  = Thickness of web of wide flange column (inches).

$w$  = Width of flange of wide-flange column (inches).

**FIGURE 722.5.1(7)**  
**CONCRETE OR CLAY MASONRY PROTECTED STRUCTURAL STEEL COLUMNS**

**722.5.1.3 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.** The fire resistance of wide-flange structural steel columns protected with sprayed fire-resistant materials, as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(5), shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = [C_1(W/D) + C_2]h \quad (\text{Equation 7-13})$$

where:

$R$  = Fire resistance (minutes).

$h$  = Thickness of sprayed fire-resistant material (inches).

$D$  = Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).

$C_1$  and  $C_2$  = Material-dependent constants.

$W$  = Weight of structural steel columns (pounds per linear foot).

The fire resistance of structural steel columns protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

**722.5.1.3.1 Material-dependent constants.** The material-dependent constants,  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ , shall be determined for specific fire-resistant materials on the basis of standard fire endurance tests in accordance with Section 703.2. Unless evidence is submitted to the building official substantiating a broader application, this expression shall be limited to determining the fire resistance of structural steel columns with weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ) between the largest and smallest columns for which standard fire-resistance test results are available.

**722.5.1.3.2 Identification.** Sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be identified by density and thickness required for a given fire-resistance rating.

**722.5.1.4 Concrete-protected columns.** The fire resistance of structural steel columns protected with concrete, as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(6) illustrations (a) and (b), shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = R_o(1 + 0.03m) \quad (\text{Equation 7-14})$$

where:

$$R_o = 10 (W/D)^{0.7} + 17 (h^{1.6}/k_c^{0.2}) \times [1 + 26 \{H/p_c c_e h (L + h)\}^{0.8}]$$

As used in these expressions:

$R$  = Fire endurance at equilibrium moisture conditions (minutes).

$R_o$  = Fire endurance at zero moisture content (minutes).

$m$  = Equilibrium moisture content of the concrete by volume (percent).

$W$  = Average weight of the structural steel column (pounds per linear foot).

$D$  = Heated perimeter of the structural steel column (inches).

$h$  = Thickness of the concrete cover (inches).

$k_c$  = Ambient temperature thermal conductivity of the concrete (Btu/hr ft °F).

$H$  = Ambient temperature thermal capacity of the steel column =  $0.11W$  (Btu/ ft °F).

$p_c$  = Concrete density (pounds per cubic foot).

$c_e$  = Ambient temperature specific heat of concrete (Btu/lb °F).

$L$  = Interior dimension of one side of a square concrete box protection (inches).

**722.5.1.4.1 Reentrant space filled.** For wide-flange structural steel columns completely encased in concrete with all reentrant spaces filled Figure 722.5.1(6), illustration (c), the thermal capacity of the concrete within the reentrant spaces shall be permitted to be added to the thermal capacity of the steel column, as follows:

$$H = 0.11 W + (p_c c_e / 144) (b_d - A_s) \quad (\text{Equation 7-15})$$

where:

$b_f$  = Flange width of the structural steel column (inches).

$d$  = Depth of the structural steel column (inches).

$A_s$  = Cross-sectional area of the steel column (square inches).

**722.5.1.4.2 Concrete properties unknown.** If specific data on the properties of concrete are not available, the values given in Table 722.5.1(2) are permitted.

**722.5.1.4.3 Minimum concrete cover.** For structural steel column encased in concrete with all reentrant spaces filled, Figure 722.5.1(6), illustration (c) and Tables 722.5.1(7) and 722.5.1(8) indicate the thickness of concrete cover required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical wide-flange sections. The thicknesses of concrete indicated in these tables apply to structural steel columns larger than those specified.

**722.5.1.4.4 Minimum precast concrete cover.** For structural steel columns protected with precast concrete column covers as shown in Figure 722.5.1(6), illustration (a), Tables 722.5.1(9) and 722.5.1(10) indicate the thickness of the column covers required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical wide-flange shapes. The thicknesses of concrete given in these tables apply to structural steel columns larger than those specified.

**722.5.1.4.5 Masonry protection.** The fire resistance of structural steel columns protected with concrete masonry units or clay masonry units as illustrated in Figure 722.5.1(7) shall be permitted to be determined from the following expression:

$$R = 0.17 (W/D)^{0.7} + [0.285 (T_e^{1.6}/K^{0.2})] [1.0 + 42.7 \{(A_s/d_m T_e)/(0.25p + T_e)\}^{0.8}] \quad (\text{Equation 7-16})$$

where:

$R$  = Fire-resistance rating of column assembly (hours).

$W$  = Average weight of structural steel column (pounds per foot).

$D$  = Heated perimeter of structural steel column (inches) [see Figure 722.5.1(7)].

$T_e$  = Equivalent thickness of concrete or clay masonry unit (inches) (see Table 722.3.2, Note a or Section 722.4.1).

$K$  = Thermal conductivity of concrete or clay masonry unit (Btu/hr × ft × °F) [see Table 722.5.1(3)].

$A_s$  = Cross-sectional area of structural steel column (square inches).

$d_m$  = Density of the concrete or clay masonry unit (pounds per cubic foot).

$p$  = Inner perimeter of concrete or clay masonry protection (inches) [see Figure 722.5.1(7)].

**722.5.1.4.6 Equivalent concrete masonry thickness.** For structural steel columns protected with concrete masonry, Table 722.5.1(5) gives the equivalent thickness of concrete masonry required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical column shapes. For structural steel columns protected with clay masonry, Table 722.5.1(6) gives the equivalent thickness of concrete masonry required for various fire-resistance ratings for typical column shapes.

**722.5.2 Structural steel beams and girders.** The fire-resistance ratings of structural steel beams and girders shall be based on the size of the element and the type of protection provided in accordance with this section.

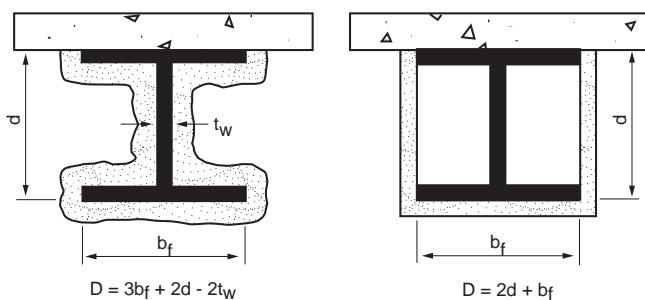
**722.5.2.1 Determination of fire resistance.** These procedures establish a basis for determining resistance of structural steel beams and girders that differ in size from that specified in approved fire-resistance-rated assemblies as a function of the thickness of fire-resistant material and the weight ( $W$ ) and heated perimeter ( $D$ ) of the beam or girder. As used in these sections,  $W$  is the average weight of a structural steel element in pounds per linear foot (plf). The heated perimeter,  $D$ , is the inside perimeter of the fire-resistant material in inches as illustrated in Figure 722.5.2.

**722.5.2.1.1 Weight-to-heated perimeter.** The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ), for both contour and box fire-resistant protection profiles, for the wide flange shapes most often used as beams or girders are given in Table 722.5.1(4). For different shapes, the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratios ( $W/D$ ) shall be determined in accordance with the definitions given in this section.

**722.5.2.1.2 Beam and girder substitutions.** Except as provided for in Section 722.5.2.2, structural steel beams in approved fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall be considered to be the minimum permissible size. Other beam or girder shapes shall be permitted to be substituted provided that the weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio ( $W/D$ ) of the substitute beam is equal to or greater than that of the beam specified in the approved assembly.

**722.5.2.2 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.** The provisions in this section apply to structural steel beams and girders protected with sprayed fire-resistant materials. Larger or smaller beam and girder shapes shall be

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES



**FIGURE 722.5.2**  
DETERMINATION OF THE HEATED PERIMETER OF  
STRUCTURAL STEEL BEAMS AND GIRDERS

permitted to be substituted for beams specified in approved unrestrained or restrained fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provided that the thickness of the fire-resistant material is adjusted in accordance with the following expression:

$$h_2 = h_1 [(W_1/D_1) + 0.60] / [(W_2/D_2) + 0.60] \quad (\text{Equation 7-17})$$

where:

$h$  = Thickness of sprayed fire-resistant material in inches.

$W$  = Weight of the structural steel beam or girder in pounds per linear foot.

$D$  = Heated perimeter of the structural steel beam in inches.

Subscript 1 refers to the beam and fire-resistant material thickness in the approved assembly.

Subscript 2 refers to the substitute beam or girder and the required thickness of fire-resistant material.

The fire resistance of structural steel beams and girders protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire-resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

**722.5.2.2.1 Minimum thickness.** The use of Equation 7-17 is subject to the following conditions:

1. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio for the substitute beam or girder ( $W_2/D_2$ ) shall be not less than 0.37.
2. The thickness of fire protection materials calculated for the substitute beam or girder ( $t_1$ ) shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).
3. The unrestrained or restrained beam rating shall be not less than 1 hour.
4. Where used to adjust the material thickness for a restrained beam, the use of this procedure is limited to structural steel sections classified as compact in accordance with AISC 360.

**722.5.2.3 Structural steel trusses.** The fire resistance of structural steel trusses protected with fire-resistant materials sprayed to each of the individual truss

elements shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with this section. The thickness of the fire-resistant material shall be determined in accordance with Section 722.5.1.3. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio ( $W/D$ ) of truss elements that can be simultaneously exposed to fire on all sides shall be determined on the same basis as columns, as specified in Section 722.5.1.1. The weight-to-heated-perimeter ratio ( $W/D$ ) of truss elements that directly support floor or roof assembly shall be determined on the same basis as beams and girders, as specified in Section 722.5.2.1.

The fire resistance of structural steel trusses protected with intumescent or mastic fire-resistant coatings shall be determined on the basis of fire resistance tests in accordance with Section 703.2.

**722.6 Wood assemblies.** The provisions of this section contain procedures by which the fire-resistance ratings of wood assemblies are established by calculations.

**722.6.1 General.** This section contains procedures for calculating the fire-resistance ratings of walls, floor/ceiling and roof/ceiling assemblies based in part on the standard method of testing referenced in Section 703.2.

**722.6.1.1 Maximum fire-resistance rating.** Fire-resistance ratings calculated for assemblies using the methods in Section 722.6 shall be limited to not more than 1 hour.

**722.6.1.2 Dissimilar membranes.** Where dissimilar membranes are used on a wall assembly that requires consideration of fire exposure from both sides, the calculation shall be made from the least fire-resistant (weaker) side.

**722.6.2 Walls, floors and roofs.** These procedures apply to both load-bearing and nonload-bearing assemblies.

**722.6.2.1 Fire-resistance rating of wood frame assemblies.** The fire-resistance rating of a wood frame assembly is equal to the sum of the time assigned to the membrane on the fire-exposed side, the time assigned to the framing members and the time assigned for additional contribution by other protective measures such as insulation. The membrane on the unexposed side shall not be included in determining the fire resistance of the assembly.

**722.6.2.2 Time assigned to membranes.** Table 722.6.2(1) indicates the time assigned to membranes on the fire-exposed side.

**722.6.2.3 Exterior walls.** For an exterior wall with a fire separation distance greater than 10 feet (3048 mm), the wall is assigned a rating dependent on the interior membrane and the framing as described in Table 722.6.2(1) and Table 722.6.2(2). The membrane on the outside of the nonfire-exposed side of exterior walls with a fire separation distance greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall consist of sheathing, sheathing paper and siding as described in Table 722.6.2(3).

**722.6.2.4 Floors and roofs.** In the case of a floor or roof, the standard test provides only for testing for fire exposure from below. Except as noted in Section 703.2.3, floor or roof assemblies of wood framing shall

have an upper membrane consisting of a subfloor and finished floor conforming to Table 722.6.2(4) or any other membrane that has a contribution to fire resistance of not less than 15 minutes in Table 722.6.2(1).

**722.6.2.5 Additional protection.** Table 722.6.2(5) indicates the time increments to be added to the fire resistance where glass fiber, rockwool, slag mineral wool or cellulose insulation is incorporated in the assembly.

**722.6.2.6 Fastening.** Fastening of wood frame assemblies and the fastening of membranes to the wood framing members shall be done in accordance with Chapter 23.

**722.7 Fire-resistance rating for mass timber.** The required fire resistance of mass timber elements in Section 602.4 shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.2 or Section 703.3. The fire-resistance rating of building elements shall be as required in Tables 601 and 705.5 and as specified elsewhere in this code. The fire-resistance rating of the mass

timber elements shall consist of the fire resistance of the unprotected element added to the protection time of the noncombustible protection.

**722.7.1 Minimum required protection.** Where required by Sections 602.4.1 through 602.4.3, noncombustible protection shall be provided for mass timber building elements in accordance with Table 722.7.1(1). The rating, in minutes, contributed by the noncombustible protection of mass timber building elements, components or assemblies, shall be established in accordance with Section 703.6. The protection contributions indicated in Table 722.7.1(2) shall be deemed to comply with this requirement where installed and fastened in accordance with Section 722.7.2.

**722.7.2 Installation of gypsum board noncombustible protection.** Gypsum board complying with Table 722.7.1(2) shall be installed in accordance with this section.

**TABLE 722.6.2(1)**  
**TIME ASSIGNED TO WALLBOARD MEMBRANES<sup>a, b, c, d</sup>**

DESCRIPTION OF FINISH	TIME <sup>e</sup> (minutes)
$\frac{3}{8}$ -inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue	5
$\frac{15}{32}$ -inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue	10
$\frac{19}{32}$ -inch wood structural panel bonded with exterior glue	15
$\frac{3}{8}$ -inch gypsum wallboard	10
$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch gypsum wallboard	15
$\frac{5}{8}$ -inch gypsum wallboard	30
$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch Type X gypsum wallboard	25
$\frac{5}{8}$ -inch Type X gypsum wallboard	40
Double $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch gypsum wallboard	25
$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch + $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch gypsum wallboard	35
Double $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch gypsum wallboard	40

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. These values apply only where membranes are installed on framing members that are spaced 16 inches o.c. or less.
- b. Gypsum wallboard installed over framing or furring shall be installed so that all edges are supported, except  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch Type X gypsum wallboard shall be permitted to be installed horizontally with the horizontal joints staggered 24 inches each side and unsupported but finished.
- c. On wood frame floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies, gypsum board shall be installed with the long dimension perpendicular to framing members and shall have all joints finished.
- d. The membrane on the unexposed side shall not be included in determining the fire resistance of the assembly. Where dissimilar membranes are used on a wall assembly, the calculation shall be made from the least fire-resistant (weaker) side.
- e. The time assigned is not a finished rating.

**TABLE 722.6.2(2)**  
**TIME ASSIGNED FOR CONTRIBUTION OF WOOD FRAME<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

DESCRIPTION	TIME ASSIGNED TO FRAME (minutes)
Wood studs 16 inches o.c.	20
Wood floor and roof joists 16 inches o.c.	10

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. This table does not apply to studs or joists spaced more than 16 inches o.c.
- b. All studs shall be nominal 2 × 4 and all joists shall have a nominal thickness of not less than 2 inches.
- c. Allowable spans for joists shall be determined in accordance with Sections 2308.4.2.1, 2308.7.1 and 2308.7.2.

**FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES**
**TABLE 722.6.2(3)  
MEMBRANE<sup>a</sup> ON EXTERIOR FACE OF WOOD STUD WALLS**

SHEATHING	PAPER	EXTERIOR FINISH
5/8-inch T & G lumber		Lumber siding Wood shingles and shakes
5/16-inch exterior glue wood structural panel		1/4-inch fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding 1/4-inch wood structural panels-exterior type
1/2-inch gypsum wallboard	Sheathing paper	1/4-inch hardboard Metal siding Stucco on metal lath Masonry veneer Vinyl siding
5/8-inch gypsum wallboard		
1/2-inch fiberboard		
None	—	3/8-inch exterior-grade wood structural panels

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Any combination of sheathing, paper and exterior finish is permitted.

**TABLE 722.6.2(4)  
FLOORING OR ROOFING OVER WOOD FRAMING<sup>a</sup>**

ASSEMBLY	STRUCTURAL MEMBERS	SUBFLOOR OR ROOF DECK	FINISHED FLOORING OR ROOFING
Floor	Wood	15/32-inch wood structural panels or 11/16-inch T & G softwood	Hardwood or softwood flooring on building paper; resilient flooring; parquet floor; felted-synthetic fiber floor coverings, carpeting, or ceramic tile on 1/4-inch-thick fiber-cement underlayment or 3/8-inch-thick panel-type underlayment; ceramic tile on 1 1/4-inch mortar bed.
Roof	Wood	15/32-inch wood structural panels or 11/16-inch T & G softwood	Finished roofing material with or without insulation

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. This table applies only to wood joist construction. It is not applicable to wood truss construction.

**TABLE 722.6.2(5)  
TIME ASSIGNED FOR ADDITIONAL PROTECTION**

DESCRIPTION OF ADDITIONAL PROTECTION	FIRE RESISTANCE (minutes)
Add to the fire-resistance rating of wood stud walls if the spaces between the studs are completely filled with glass fiber mineral wool batts weighing not less than 2 pounds per cubic foot (0.6 pound per square foot of wall surface) or rockwool or slag material wool batts weighing not less than 3.3 pounds per cubic foot (1 pound per square foot of wall surface), or cellulose insulation having a nominal density not less than 2.6 pounds per cubic foot.	15

For SI: 1 pound/cubic foot = 16.0185 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

**722.7.2.1 Interior surfaces.** Layers of Type X gypsum board serving as noncombustible protection for interior surfaces of wall and ceiling assemblies determined in accordance with Table 722.7.1(1) shall be installed in accordance with the following:

1. Each layer shall be attached with Type S drywall screws of sufficient length to penetrate the mass timber at least 1 inch (25 mm) when driven flush with the paper surface of the gypsum board.

**Exception:** The third layer, where determined necessary by Section 722.7, shall be permitted to be attached with 1-inch (25 mm) No. 6 Type S drywall screws to furring channels in accordance with AISI S220.

2. Screws for attaching the base layer shall be 12 inches (305 mm) on center in both directions.
3. Screws for each layer after the base layer shall be 12 inches (305 mm) on center in both directions and offset from the screws of the previous layers by 4 inches (102 mm) in both directions.
4. All panel edges of any layer shall be offset 18 inches (457 mm) from those of the previous layer.
5. All panel edges shall be attached with screws sized and offset as in Items 1 through 4 and placed at least 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 2 inches (51 mm) from the panel edge.
6. All panels installed at wall-to-ceiling intersections shall be installed such that ceiling panels are

## FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES

installed first and the wall panels are installed after the ceiling panel has been installed and is fitted tight to the ceiling panel. Where multiple layers are required, each layer shall repeat this process.

7. All panels installed at a wall-to-wall intersection shall be installed such that the panels covering an exterior wall or a wall with a greater fire-resistance rating shall be installed first and the panels covering the other wall shall be fitted tight to the panel covering the first wall. Where multiple layers are required, each layer shall repeat this process.
8. Panel edges of the face layer shall be taped and finished with joint compound. Fastener heads shall be covered with joint compound.
9. Panel edges protecting mass timber elements adjacent to unprotected mass timber elements in accordance with Section 602.4.2.2 shall be cov-

ered with  $1\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (32 mm) metal corner bead and finished with joint compound.

**722.7.2.2 Exterior surfaces.** Layers of Type X gypsum board serving as noncombustible protection for the outside of the exterior mass timber walls determined in accordance with Table 722.7.1(1) shall be fastened 12 inches (305 mm) on center each way and 6 inches (152 mm) on center at all joints or ends. All panel edges shall be attached with fasteners located at least 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 2 inches (51 mm) from the panel edge. Fasteners shall comply with one of the following:

1. Galvanized nails of minimum 12 gage with a  $\frac{7}{16}$ -inch (11 mm) head of sufficient length to penetrate the mass timber a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm).
2. Screws that comply with ASTM C1002 (Type S, W or G) of sufficient length to penetrate the mass timber a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm).

**TABLE 722.7.1(1)**  
**PROTECTION REQUIRED FROM NONCOMBUSTIBLE COVERING MATERIAL**

REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING OF BUILDING ELEMENT PER TABLE 601 AND TABLE 705.5 (hours)	MINIMUM PROTECTION REQUIRED FROM NONCOMBUSTIBLE PROTECTION (minutes)
1	40
2	80
3 or more	120

**TABLE 722.7.1(2)**  
**PROTECTION PROVIDED BY NONCOMBUSTIBLE COVERING MATERIAL**

NONCOMBUSTIBLE PROTECTION	PROTECTION CONTRIBUTION (minutes)
$\frac{1}{2}$ -inch Type X gypsum board	25
$\frac{5}{8}$ -inch Type X gypsum board	40



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 7A – MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter			X																			
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

### **CHAPTER 7A [SFM]**

## **MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE**

### **SECTION 701A SCOPE, PURPOSE AND APPLICATION**

**701A.1 Scope.** This chapter applies to building materials, systems and/or assemblies used in the exterior design and construction of new buildings located within a Wildland-Urban Interface (WUI) Fire Area as defined in Section 702A.

**701A.2 Purpose.** The purpose of this chapter is to establish minimum standards for the protection of life and property by increasing the ability of a building located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone within State Responsibility Areas or any Wildland-Urban Interface (WUI) Fire Area to resist the intrusion of flames or burning embers projected by a vegetation fire and contributes to a systematic reduction in conflagration losses.

**701A.3 Application.** New buildings located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone or any Wildland-Urban Interface (WUI) Fire Area designated by the enforcing agency constructed after the application date shall comply with the provisions of this chapter. This shall include all new buildings with residential, commercial, educational, institutional or similar occupancy type use, which shall be referred to in this chapter as "applicable building(s)" (see definition in Section 702A), as well as new buildings and structures accessory to those applicable buildings (see Exceptions 1 and 4).

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Group U occupancy accessory buildings of any size located at least 50 feet (15 240 mm) from an applicable building on the same lot.
2. Group U occupancy agricultural buildings, as defined in Section 202 of this code of any size located at least 50 feet (15 240 mm) from an applicable building.

3. Group C occupancy special buildings conforming to the limitations specified in Section 450.4.1.
4. New accessory buildings and miscellaneous structures specified in Section 710A shall comply only with the requirements of that section.
5. Additions to and remodels of buildings originally constructed prior to July 1, 2008.

**701A.3.1 Application date and where required.** New buildings for which an application for a building permit is submitted on or after July 1, 2008 located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone or Wildland Interface Fire Area shall comply with all sections of this chapter, including all of the following areas:

1. All unincorporated lands designated by the State Board of Forestry and Fire Protection as State Responsibility Area (SRA) including:
  - 1.1. Moderate Fire Hazard Severity Zones.
  - 1.2. High Fire Hazard Severity Zones.
  - 1.3. Very-High Fire Hazard Severity Zones.
2. Land designated as Very-High Fire Hazard Severity Zone by cities and other local agencies.
3. Land designated as Wildland Interface Fire Area by cities and other local agencies.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. New buildings located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone within State Responsibility Areas, for which an application for a building permit is submitted on or after January 1, 2008, shall comply with all sections of this chapter.

## MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE

2. New buildings located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone within State Responsibility Areas or any Wildland Interface Fire Area designated by cities and other local agencies for which an application for a building permit is submitted on or after December 1, 2005 but prior to July 1, 2008, shall only comply with the following sections of this chapter:
  - 2.1. Section 705A – Roofing.
  - 2.2. Section 706A – Attic Ventilation.

> **701A.4 Inspection and certification.** Building permit applications and final completion approvals for buildings within the scope and application of this chapter shall comply with the following:

1. Building permit issuance. The local building official shall, prior to construction, provide the owner or applicant a certification that the building as proposed to be built complies with all applicable state and local building standards, including those for materials and construction methods for wildfire exposure as described in this chapter. Issuance of a building permit by the local building official for the proposed building shall be considered as complying with this section.
2. Building permit final. The local building official shall, upon completion of construction, provide the owner or applicant with a copy of the final inspection report that demonstrates the building was constructed in compliance with all applicable state and local building standards, including those for materials and construction methods for wildfire exposure as described in this chapter. Issuance of a certificate of occupancy by the local building official for the proposed building shall be considered as complying with this section.

**701A.5 Vegetation management compliance.** Prior to building permit final approval, the property shall be in compliance with the vegetation management requirements prescribed in California Fire Code Section 4906, including California Public Resources Code 4291 or California Government Code Section 51182. Acceptable methods of compliance inspection and documentation shall be determined by the enforcing agency and shall be permitted to include any of the following:

1. Local, state or federal fire authority or designee authorized to enforce vegetation management requirements.
2. Enforcing agency.
3. Third party inspection and certification authorized to enforce vegetation management requirements.
4. Property owner certification authorized by the enforcing agency.

## SECTION 702A DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this chapter, certain terms are defined below:

**APPLICABLE BUILDING.** A building that has residential, commercial, educational, institutional or similar occupancy type use.

**DIRECTOR.** Director of the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (CAL FIRE).

**EXTERIOR WALL ASSEMBLY.** A system or assembly of exterior wall components, including exterior wall covering materials, that provides protection of the building structural members, including framing and sheathing materials, and conditioned interior space, from the detrimental effects of the exterior environment.

**EXTERIOR WALL COVERING.** A material or assembly of materials applied on the exterior side of exterior walls for the purpose of providing a weather-resisting barrier, insulation or for aesthetics, including but not limited to veneers, siding, exterior insulation and finish systems, architectural trim, and embellishments such as cornices, soffits, fascias, gutters and leaders.

**FIRE HAZARD SEVERITY ZONES.** Geographical areas designated pursuant to California Public Resources Codes Sections 4201 through 4204 and classified as Very High, High or Moderate in State Responsibility Areas or as Local Responsibility Areas in Very High Fire Hazard Severity Zones designated pursuant to California Government Code, Sections 51175 through 51189. See California Fire Code Chapter 49.

The California Code of Regulations, Title 14, Section 1280, entitles the maps of these geographical areas as “Maps of the Fire Hazard Severity Zones in the State Responsibility Area of California.”

**FIRE PROTECTION PLAN.** A document prepared for a specific project or development proposed for a Wildland-Urban Interface (WUI) Fire Area. It describes ways to minimize and mitigate potential for loss from wildfire exposure.

The Fire Protection Plan shall be in accordance with this chapter and the California Fire Code, Chapter 49.

**FIRE-RESISTANT VEGETATION.** Plants, shrubs, trees and other vegetation that exhibit properties, such as high moisture content, little accumulation of dead vegetation, and low sap or resin content, that make them less likely to ignite or contribute heat or spread flame in a fire than native vegetation typically found in the region.

**Note:** The following sources contain examples of types of vegetation that can be considered as fire-resistant vegetation. (Fire-resistant Plants for Home Landscapes, A Pacific Northwest Extension publication; Home Landscaping for Fire, University of California Division of Agriculture and Natural Resources; Sunset Western Garden Book)

**IGNITION-RESISTANT MATERIAL.** A type of building material that complies with the requirements in Section 704A.2.

**LOCAL RESPONSIBILITY AREA (LRA).** Areas of the state in which the financial responsibility of preventing and suppressing fires is the primary responsibility of a city, county, city and county, or district.

**LOG WALL CONSTRUCTION.** A type of construction in which exterior walls are constructed of solid wood members and where the smallest horizontal dimension of each solid wood member is at least 6 inches (152 mm).

**RAFTER TAIL.** The portion of roof rafter framing in a sloping roof assembly that projects beyond and overhangs an exterior wall.

**ROOF EAVE.** The lower portion of a sloping roof assembly that projects beyond and overhangs an exterior wall at the lower end of the rafter tails. Roof eaves may be either "open" or "enclosed." Open roof eaves have exposed rafter tails and an unenclosed space on the underside of the roof deck. Enclosed roof eaves have a boxed-in roof eave soffit with a horizontal underside or sloping rafter tails with an exterior covering applied to the underside of the rafter tails.

**ROOF EAVE SOFFIT.** An enclosed boxed-in soffit under a roof eave with exterior covering material applied to the soffit framing creating a horizontal surface on the exposed underside.

**STATE RESPONSIBILITY AREA (SRA).** Lands that are classified by the Board of Forestry pursuant to Public Resources Code Section 4125 where the financial responsibility of preventing and suppressing forest fires is primarily the responsibility of the state.

**WILDFIRE.** Any uncontrolled fire spreading through vegetative fuels that threatens to destroy life, property or resources as defined in Public Resources Code Sections 4103 and 4104.

**WILDFIRE EXPOSURE.** One or a combination of radiant heat, convective heat, direct flame contact and burning embers being projected by vegetation fire to a structure and its immediate environment.

**WILDLAND-URBAN INTERFACE (WUI).** A geographical area identified by the state as a "Fire Hazard Severity Zone" in accordance with the Public Resources Code Sections 4201 through 4204 and Government Code Sections 51175 through 51189, or other areas designated by the enforcing agency to be at a significant risk from wildfires.

## SECTION 703A STANDARDS OF QUALITY

**703A.1 General.** Building material, systems, assemblies and methods of construction used in this chapter shall be in accordance with Section 703A.

**703A.2 Qualification by testing.** Material and material assemblies tested in accordance with the requirements of Section 703A shall be accepted for use when the results and conditions of those tests are met. Product evaluation testing of material and material assemblies shall be approved or

listed by the State Fire Marshal, or identified in a current report issued by an approved agency.

**703A.3 Approved agency.** Product evaluation testing shall be performed by an approved agency as defined in Section 1702. The scope of accreditation for the approved agency shall include building product compliance with this code.

**703A.4 Labeling.** Material and material assemblies tested in accordance with the requirements of Section 703A shall bear an identification label showing the fire test results. That identification label shall be issued by a testing and/or inspecting agency approved by the State Fire Marshal.

1. Identification mark of the approved testing and/or inspecting agency.
2. Contact and identification information of the manufacturer.
3. Model number or identification of the product or material.
4. Pre-test weathering specified in this chapter.
5. Compliance standard as described under Section 703A.7.

### 703A.5 Weathering and surface treatment protection.

**703A.5.1 General.** Material and material assemblies tested in accordance with the requirements of Section 703A shall maintain their fire test performance under conditions of use, when installed in accordance with the manufacturers instructions.

**703A.5.2 Weathering.** Fire-retardant-treated wood and fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes shall meet the fire test performance requirements of this chapter after being subjected to the weathering conditions contained in the following standards, as applicable to the materials and the conditions of use.

**703A.5.2.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood.** Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D2898 (Method A) and the requirements of Section 2303.2.

**703A.5.2.2 Fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes.** Fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes shall be approved and listed by the State Fire Marshal in accordance with Section 208(c), Title 19 California Code of Regulations.

**703A.5.3 Surface treatment protection.** The use of paints, coatings, stains or other surface treatments are not an approved method of protection as required in this chapter.

**703A.6 Alternates for materials, design, tests and methods of construction.** The enforcing agency is permitted to modify the provisions of this chapter for site-specific conditions in accordance with Section 1.11.2.4. When required by the enforcing agency for the purposes of granting modifications, a fire protection plan shall be submitted in accordance with the California Fire Code, Chapter 49.

**703A.7 Standards of quality.** The State Fire Marshal standards for exterior wildfire exposure protection listed below and as referenced in this chapter are located in the Califor-

*nia Referenced Standards Code, Part 12 and Chapter 35 of this code.*

**SFM Standard 12-7A-1, Exterior Wall Siding and Sheathing.** A fire resistance test standard consisting of a 150 kW intensity direct flame exposure for a 10-minute duration.

**SFM Standard 12-7A-2, Exterior Windows.** A fire resistance test standard consisting of a 150 kW intensity direct flame exposure for an 8-minute duration.

**SFM Standard 12-7A-3, Horizontal Projection Underside.** A fire resistance test standard consisting of a 300 kW intensity direct flame exposure for a 10-minute duration.

**SFM Standard 12-7A-4, Decking.** A two-part test consisting of a heat release rate (Part A) deck assembly combustion test with an under deck exposure of 80 kW intensity direct flame for a 3-minute duration, and a (Part B) sustained deck assembly combustion test consisting of a deck upper surface burning ember exposure with a 12 mph wind for 40 minutes using a 2.2lb (1kg) burning "Class A" size 12" x 12" x 2.25" (300 mm x 300 mm x 57 mm) roof test brand.

**SFM Standard 12-7A-4A, Decking Alternate Method A.** A heat release rate deck assembly combustion test with an under deck exposure of 80 kW intensity direct flame for a 3-minute duration.

**ASTM D2898 Standard Practice for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood for Fire Testing.**

**ASTM D3909/D3909M Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules.**

**ASTM E84 Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.**

**ASTM E119 Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.**

**ASTM E2632/E2632M Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Under-Deck Fire Test Response of Deck Materials.**

**ASTM E2707 Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Penetration of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Direct Flame Impingement Exposure.**

**ASTM E2726/E2726M Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Fire Test Response of Deck Structures to Burning Brands.**

**ASTM E2768 Standard Test Method for Extended Duration Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials (30-minute Tunnel Test).**

**ASTM E2886/E2886M Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Ability of Exterior Vents to Resist the Entry of Embers and Direct Flame Impingement.**

**ASTM E2957 Standard Test Method for Resistance to Wildfire Penetration of Eaves, Soffits and Other Projections.**

**NFPA 257 Standard on Fire Test for Window and Glass Block Assemblies.**

**UL 263 Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials.**

**UL 723 Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.**

## SECTION 704A IGNITION-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

**704A.1 General.** The materials prescribed herein for ignition resistance shall conform to the requirements of this chapter.

**704A.2 Ignition-resistant materials.** Ignition-resistant materials shall comply with one of the following:

1. The requirements in Section 704A.3, or
2. One of the alternative methods in Section 704A.4.

**704A.3 Conditions of acceptance for ignition-resistant materials.** The material shall comply with the conditions of acceptance in Items 1 and 2 below or with the conditions of acceptance of ASTM E2768.

1. The material shall exhibit a listed flame spread index not exceeding 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
2. Additionally, the ASTM E84 or UL 723 test shall be continued for an additional 20-minute period, and the material shall exhibit a flame front that does not progress more than 10½ feet (3200 mm) beyond the centerline of the burner at any time during the test period.

**704A.3.1 Fire testing of wood structural panels.** Wood structural panels shall be tested with a ripped or cut longitudinal gap of ⅛ inch (3.2 mm).

**704A.4 Alternative methods for determining ignition-resistant material.** Any one of the following shall be accepted as meeting the definition of ignition-resistant material:

1. Noncombustible material. Material that complies with the definition for noncombustible materials in Section 202.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood. Fire-retardant-treated wood identified for exterior use that complies with the requirements of Section 2303.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes. Fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes, as defined in Section 1505.6 and listed by State Fire Marshal for use as "Class B" roof covering, shall be accepted as an ignition-resistant wall covering material when installed over solid sheathing.

## SECTION 705A ROOFING

**705A.1 General.** Roofs shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 7A and Chapter 15. Roofs shall have a roofing assembly installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Roof assemblies in the Fire Hazard Severity Zones shall be Class A rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL790.

**705A.2 Roof coverings.** Where the roofing profile has an air-space under the roof covering, installed over a combustible deck, a 72 lb. (32.7 kg) cap sheet complying with ASTM D3909 Standard Specification for "Asphalt Rolled Roofing (Glass

## MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE

*Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules," shall be installed over the roof deck. Bird stops shall be used at the eaves when the profile fits, to prevent debris at the eave. Hip and ridge caps shall be mudded in to prevent intrusion of fire or embers.*

**Exception:** Cap sheet is not required when no less than 1" of mineral wool board or other noncombustible material is located between the roofing material and wood framing or deck.

Alternately, a Class A fire rated roof underlayment, tested in accordance with ASTM E108, shall be permitted to be used. If the sheathing consists of exterior fire-retardant-treated wood, the underlayment shall not be required to comply with a Class A classification. Bird stops shall be used at the eaves when the profile fits, to prevent debris at the eave. Hip and ridge caps shall be mudded in to prevent intrusion of fire or embers.

**705A.3 Roof valleys.** Where valley flashing is installed, the flashing shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) No. 26 gage galvanized sheet corrosion-resistant metal installed over not less than one layer of minimum 72 pound (32.4 kg) mineral-surfaced nonperforated cap sheet complying with ASTM D3909, at least 36-inch-wide (914 mm) running the full length of the valley.

**705A.4 Roof gutters.** Roof gutters shall be provided with the means to prevent the accumulation of leaves and debris in the gutter.

## SECTION 706A VENTS

**706A.1 General.** Where provided, ventilation openings for enclosed attics, gable ends, ridge ends, under eaves and cornices, enclosed eave soffit spaces, enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof rafters, underfloor ventilation, foundations and crawl spaces, or any other opening intended to permit ventilation, either in a horizontal or vertical plane, shall be in accordance with Section 1202 and Sections 706A.1 through 706A.2 to resist building ignition from the intrusion of burning embers and flame through the ventilation openings.

**706A.2 Requirements.** Ventilation openings shall be fully covered with Wildfire Flame and Ember Resistant vents approved and listed by the California State Fire Marshal, or WUI vents tested to ASTM E2886 and listed, by complying with all of the following requirements:

1. There shall be no flaming ignition of the cotton material during the Ember Intrusion Test.
2. There shall be no flaming ignition during the Integrity Test portion of the Flame Intrusion Test.
3. The maximum temperature of the unexposed side of the vent shall not exceed 662°F (350°C).

**706A.2.1 Off ridge and ridge vents.** Vents that are installed on a sloped roof, such as dormer vents, shall comply with all of the following:

1. Vents shall be covered with a mesh where the dimensions of the mesh therein shall be a minimum of  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch (1.6 mm) and shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (3.2 mm) in diameter.

- 2. The mesh material shall be noncombustible.
- 3. The mesh material shall be corrosion resistant.

## SECTION 707A EXTERIOR COVERING

**707A.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials and construction methods used to resist building ignition and/or safeguard against the intrusion of flames resulting from small ember and short-term direct flame contact exposure.

**707A.2 General.** The following exterior covering materials and/or assemblies shall comply with this section:

1. Exterior wall coverings.
2. Exterior wall assemblies.
3. Exterior exposed underside of roof eave overhangs.
4. Exterior exposed underside of roof eave soffits.
5. Exposed underside of exterior porch ceilings.
6. Exterior exposed underside of floor projections.
7. Exterior underfloor areas.

**Exceptions to Section 707A.2:**

1. Exterior wall architectural trim, embellishments, fascias and gutters.
2. Roof or wall top cornice projections and similar assemblies.
3. Deck walking surfaces shall comply with Section 709A.4 only.

**707A.3 Exterior wall coverings.** The exterior wall covering shall comply with one or more of the following requirements, except as permitted for exterior wall assemblies complying with Section 707A.4:

1. Noncombustible material.
2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.

**707A.3.1 Extent of exterior wall covering.** Exterior wall coverings shall extend from the top of the foundation to the roof, and terminate at 2 inch (50.8 mm) nominal solid wood blocking between rafters at all roof overhangs, or in the case of enclosed eaves, terminate at the enclosure.

**707A.4 Exterior wall assemblies.** Exterior wall assemblies of buildings or structures shall be constructed using one or more of the following methods, unless they are covered by an exterior wall covering complying with Section 707A.3:

1. Assembly of sawn lumber or glue-laminated wood with the smallest minimum nominal dimension of 4 inches (102 mm). Sawn or glue-laminated planks splined, tongue-and-groove, or set close together and well spiked.
2. Log wall construction assembly.

3. Assembly that has been tested in accordance with the test procedures for a 10-minute direct flame contact exposure test set forth in ASTM E2707 with the conditions of acceptance shown in Section 707A.4.1.
4. Assembly that meets the performance criteria in accordance with the test procedures for a 10-minute direct flame contact exposure test set forth in SFM Standard 12-7A-1.
5. Assembly suitable for exterior fire exposure with a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, rated from the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
6. Assembly suitable for exterior fire exposure containing one layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind the exterior wall covering or cladding on the exterior side of the framing.
7. Assembly suitable for exterior fire exposure containing any of the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual as complying with a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

**707A.4.1 Conditions of acceptance when tested in accordance with ASTM E2707.** The ASTM E2707 test shall be conducted on a minimum of three test specimens, and the conditions of acceptance in Items 1 and 2 below shall be met. If any one of the three tests do not meet the conditions of acceptance, three additional tests shall be run. All the additional tests shall meet the conditions of acceptance.

1. Absence of flame penetration through the wall assembly at any time.
2. Absence of evidence of glowing combustion on the interior surface of the assembly at the end of the 70-minute test.

**707A.5 Open roof eaves.** The exposed roof deck on the underside of unenclosed roof eaves shall consist of one or more of the following:

1. Noncombustible material.
2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.
4. Materials approved for not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction on the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. One layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind an exterior covering on the underside of the roof deck.
6. The exterior portion of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior assembly, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, applied to the underside of the roof deck designed for exterior fire exposure, including assemblies using the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual.

**Exception to Section 707A.5:** The following materials do not require protection:

Fascia and other architectural trim boards.

**707A.6 Enclosed roof eaves and roof eave soffits.** The exposed underside of enclosed roof eaves having either a boxed-in roof eave soffit with a horizontal underside, or sloping rafter tails with an exterior covering applied to the underside of the rafter tails, shall be protected by one or more of the following:

1. Noncombustible material.
2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.
4. Materials approved for not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction on the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. One layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind the exterior covering or cladding on the underside of the rafter tails or soffit.
6. The exterior portion of a 1-hour fire-resistive exterior assembly applied to the underside of the rafter tails or soffit, including assemblies using the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual.
7. Boxed-in roof eave soffit assemblies with a horizontal underside that meet the performance criteria in Section 707A.11 when tested in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E2957.
8. Boxed-in roof eave soffit assemblies with a horizontal underside that meet the performance criteria in accordance with the test procedures set forth in SFM Standard 12-7A-3.

**Exception to Section 707A.6:** The following materials do not require protection:

Fascia and other architectural trim boards.

**707A.7 Exterior porch ceilings.** The exposed underside of exterior porch ceilings shall be protected by one or more of the following:

1. Noncombustible material.
2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.
4. Materials approved for not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction on the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. One layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind the exterior covering or cladding on the underside of the rafter tails or soffit.

## MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE

6. The exterior portion of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior assembly, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119, applied to the underside of the ceiling assembly, including assemblies using the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual.
7. Porch ceiling assemblies with a horizontal underside that meet the performance criteria in Section 707A.11 when tested in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E2957.
8. Porch ceiling assemblies with a horizontal underside that meet the performance criteria in accordance with the test procedures set forth in SFM Standard 12-7A-3.

**Exception to Section 707A.7:** Architectural trim boards do not require protection.

**707A.8 Floor projections.** The exposed underside of a cantilevered floor projection where a floor assembly extends over an exterior wall shall be protected by one or more of the following:

1. Noncombustible material.
2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.
4. Materials approved for not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction on the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. One layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind the exterior covering on the underside of the ceiling.
6. The exterior portion of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior assembly, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119, applied to the underside of the ceiling assembly, including assemblies using the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual.
7. The underside of a floor projection assembly that meets the performance criteria in Section 707A.10 when tested in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E2957.
8. The underside of a floor projection assembly that meets the performance criteria in accordance with the test procedures set forth in SFM Standard 12-7A-3.

**Exception to Section 707A.8:** Architectural trim boards do not require protection.

**707A.9 Underfloor protection.** The underfloor area of elevated or overhanging buildings shall be enclosed to grade in accordance with the requirements of this chapter or the underside of the exposed underfloor shall be protected by one or more of the following:

1. Noncombustible material.

2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.

3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.
4. Materials approved for not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction on the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.

5. One layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind an exterior covering on the underside of the floor projection.

6. The exterior portion of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior assembly, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, applied to the underside of the floor, including assemblies using the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual.

7. The underside of a floor assembly that meets the performance criteria in Section 707A.11 when tested in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E2957.

8. The underside of a floor assembly that meets the performance criteria in accordance with the test procedures set forth in SFM Standard 12-7A-3.

**Exception to Section 707A.9:** Structural columns and beams do not require protection when constructed with sawn lumber or glue-laminated wood with the smallest minimum nominal dimension of 4 inches (102 mm). Sawn or glue-laminated planks shall be splined, tongue-and-groove, or set close together and well spiked.

**707A.10 Underside of appendages.** When required by the enforcing agency, the underside of overhanging appendages shall be enclosed to grade in accordance with the requirements of this chapter, or the underside of the exposed underfloor shall be protected by one or more of the following:

1. Noncombustible material.
2. Ignition-resistant material. The ignition-resistant material shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 704A.2.
3. Fire-retardant-treated wood. The fire-retardant-treated wood shall be labeled for exterior use and shall meet the requirements of Section 2303.2.
4. Materials approved for not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction on the exterior side, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263.
5. One layer of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X gypsum sheathing applied behind the exterior covering on the underside of the appendage projection.
6. The exterior portion of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated exterior assembly, as tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263, applied to the underside of the appendage, including assemblies using the gypsum panel and sheathing products listed in the Gypsum Association Fire Resistance Design Manual.

7. The underside of an appendage assembly that meets the performance criteria in Section 707A.11 when tested in accordance with the test procedures set forth in ASTM E2957.
8. The underside of an appendage assembly that meets the performance criteria in accordance with the test procedures set forth in SFM Standard 12-7A-3.

**Exception to Section 707A.10:** Structural columns and beams do not require protection when constructed with sawn lumber or glue laminated wood with the smallest minimum nominal dimension of 4 inches (102 mm). Sawn or glue-laminated planks shall be splined, tongue-and-groove, or set close together and well spiked.

**707A.11 Conditions of acceptance when tested in accordance with ASTM E2957.** The test shall be conducted on a minimum of three test specimens and the conditions of acceptance in Items 1 through 3 below shall be met. If any one of the three tests does not meet the conditions of acceptance, three additional tests shall be run. All of the additional tests shall meet the conditions of acceptance.

1. Absence of flame penetration of the eaves or horizontal projection assembly at any time.
2. Absence of structural failure of the eaves or horizontal projection subassembly at any time.
3. Absence of sustained combustion of any kind at the conclusion of the 40-minute test.

## SECTION 708A

### EXTERIOR WINDOWS, SKYLIGHTS AND DOORS

#### 708A.1 General.

**708A.2 Exterior glazing.** The following exterior glazing materials and/or assemblies shall comply with this section:

1. Exterior windows.
2. Exterior glazed doors.
3. Glazed openings within exterior doors.
4. Glazed openings within exterior garage doors.
5. Exterior structural glass veneer.
6. Skylights.
7. Vents.

**708A.2.1 Exterior windows, skylights and exterior glazed door assembly requirements.** Exterior windows, skylights and exterior glazed door assemblies shall comply with one of the following requirements:

1. Be constructed of multipane glazing with a minimum of one tempered pane meeting the requirements of Section 2406 Safety Glazing, or
2. Be constructed of glass block units, or
3. Have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 20 minutes when tested according to NFPA 257, or
4. Be tested to meet the performance requirements of SFM Standard 12-7A-2.

**708A.2.2 Operable skylights.** Operable skylights shall be protected by a non-combustible mesh screen where the dimensions of the openings in the screen shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (3.2 mm).

**708A.2.3 Structural glass veneer.** The wall assembly behind structural glass veneer shall comply with Section 707A.3.

**708A.3 Exterior doors.** Exterior doors shall comply with one of the following:

1. The exterior surface or cladding shall be of noncombustible material.
2. The exterior surface or cladding shall be of ignition-resistant material.
3. The exterior door shall be constructed of solid core wood that complies with the following requirements:
  - 3.1. Stiles and rails shall not be less than  $1\frac{3}{8}$  inches thick.
  - 3.2. Panels shall not be less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches thick, except for the exterior perimeter of the panel that shall be permitted to taper to a tongue not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch thick.
4. The exterior door assembly shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 20 minutes when tested according to NFPA 252.
5. The exterior surface or cladding shall be tested to meet the performance requirements of Section 707A.3.1 when tested in accordance with ASTM E2707.
6. The exterior surface or cladding shall be tested to meet the performance requirements of SFM Standard 12-7A-1.

**708A.3.1 Exterior door glazing.** Glazing in exterior doors shall comply with Section 708A.2.1.

**708A.4 Garage door perimeter gap.** Exterior garage doors shall resist the intrusion of embers from entering by preventing gaps between doors and door openings, at the bottom, sides and tops of doors, from exceeding  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm). Gaps between doors and door openings shall be controlled by one of the following methods:

1. Weather-stripping products made of materials that:
  - (a) have been tested for tensile strength in accordance with ASTM D638 (Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics) after exposure to ASTM G155 (Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Non-Metallic Materials) for a period of 2,000 hours, where the maximum allowable difference in tensile strength values between exposed and non-exposed samples does not exceed 10%; and (b) exhibit a V-2 or better flammability rating when tested to UL 94, Standard for Tests for Flammability of Plastic Materials for Parts in Devices and Appliances.
2. Door overlaps onto jambs and headers.
3. Garage door jambs and headers covered with metal flashing.

## SECTION 709A DECKING

**709A.1 General.** The walking surface material of decks, porches, balconies and stairs shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**709A.1.1 Flashing.** A minimum of a 6-inch (150 mm) metal flashing, applied vertically on the exterior of the wall, shall be installed at all deck-to-wall intersections.

**709A.2 Where required.** The walking surface material of decks, porches, balconies and stairs shall comply with the requirements of this section when any portion of such surface is within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building.

**709A.3 Decking Surfaces.** The walking surface material of decks, porches, balconies and stairs shall be constructed with one of the following materials:

1. Material that complies with the performance requirements of Section 709A.4 when tested in accordance with both ASTM E2632 and ASTM E2726.
2. Ignition-resistant material that complies with the performance requirements of Section 704A.3.
3. Material that complies with the performance requirements of both SFM Standard 12-7A-4 and Section 704A.3.
4. Exterior fire-retardant-treated wood.
5. Noncombustible material.
6. Any material that complies with the performance requirements of SFM Standard 12-7A-4A when attached exterior wall covering is also composed of noncombustible or ignition-resistant material.

**Exception:** Wall material shall be permitted to be of any material that otherwise complies with this chapter when the decking surface material complies with the performance requirements ASTM E84 with a Class B flame spread index.

7. Any material that complies with the performance requirements of Section 709A.5 when tested in accordance with ASTM E2632 and when attached exterior wall covering is also composed of only noncombustible or ignition-resistant materials.

**Exception:** Wall material shall be permitted to be of any material that otherwise complies with this chapter when the decking surface material complies with the performance requirements ASTM E84 with a Class B flame spread index.

> **709A.4 Requirements for type of material in Section 709A.3, Item 1.** The material shall be tested in accordance with both ASTM E2632 and ASTM E2726 and shall comply with the conditions of acceptance in Sections 709A.4.1 and 709A.4.2. The material shall also be tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and comply with the performance requirements of Section 704A.3.

**709A.4.1 Conditions of acceptance for ASTM E2632.** The ASTM E2632 test shall be conducted on a minimum of three test specimens and the conditions of acceptance in Items 1 through 3 below shall be met. If any one of the

three tests does not meet the conditions of acceptance, three additional tests shall be run. All of the additional tests shall meet the conditions of acceptance.

1. Peak heat release rate of less than or equal to 25 kW/ft<sup>2</sup> (269 kW/m<sup>2</sup>).
2. Absence of sustained flaming or glowing combustion of any kind at the conclusion of the 40-min observation period.
3. Absence of falling particles that are still burning when reaching the burner or floor.

**709A.4.2 Conditions of acceptance for ASTM E2726.** The ASTM E2726 test shall be conducted, using a "Class A" size roof test brand, on a minimum of three test specimens and the conditions of acceptance in Items 1 and 2 below shall be met. If any one of the three tests does not meet the conditions of acceptance, three additional tests shall be run. All of the additional tests shall meet the conditions of acceptance.

1. Absence of sustained flaming or glowing combustion of any kind at the conclusion of the 40-min observation period.
2. Absence of falling particles that are still burning when reaching the burner or floor.

**709A.5 Requirements for type of material in Section 709A.3, Item 7.** The material shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E2632 and shall comply with the following condition of acceptance. The ASTM E2632 test shall be conducted on a minimum of three test specimens and the peak heat release rate shall be less than or equal to 25 kW/ft<sup>2</sup> (269 kW/m<sup>2</sup>). If any one of the three tests does not meet the conditions of acceptance, three additional tests shall be run. All the additional tests shall meet the condition of acceptance.

## SECTION 710A ACCESSORY BUILDINGS AND MISCELLANEOUS STRUCTURES

**710A.1 General.** Group U occupancy accessory buildings and miscellaneous structures that have the potential to pose a significant exterior fire exposure hazard during wildfires shall be constructed to conform to the ignition-resistance requirements of this section.

**710A.2 Applicability.** Unless otherwise addressed by the exceptions of Section 701A.3, the provisions of this section shall apply to buildings accessory to an applicable building on the same lot. This section shall also apply to attached and detached miscellaneous structures that require a building permit, including but not limited to trellises, arbors, patio covers, gazebos and similar structures.

### Exceptions:

1. Decks shall comply with the requirements of Section 709A.
2. Awnings and canopies shall comply with the requirements of Section 3105.
3. Exterior wall architectural trim, embellishments and fascia.

## MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE

**710A.3 Where required.** Miscellaneous structures that require a permit, and accessory buildings of any size, when separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of less than 3 feet (914 mm), shall comply with Section 710A.3.1. Accessory buildings that are greater than 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ), when separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) shall comply with Section 710A.3.2.

When required by the enforcing agency, miscellaneous structures that require a permit, and accessory buildings that are 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ) or less, when separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm), shall comply with either Section 710A.3.4 or Section 710A.3.3, respectively.

No requirements shall apply to accessory buildings or miscellaneous structures when located 50 feet (15 240 mm) or more from an applicable building on the same lot.

**710A.3.1 Structures and accessory buildings within 3 feet (914 mm).** Miscellaneous structures that require a permit, and accessory buildings, attached to or separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of less than 3 feet (914 mm), shall be constructed of non-combustible materials or of ignition-resistant materials as described in Section 704A.2.

**710A.3.2 Accessory buildings greater than 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ), located 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm).** Accessory buildings that are greater than 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ) in size and separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of ignition-resistant materials as described in Section 704A.2.

**710A.3.3 Accessory buildings 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ) or less, located 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm).** When required by the enforcing agency, accessory buildings 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ) or less and separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of ignition-resistant materials as described in Section 704A.2.

**710A.3.4 Miscellaneous structures located 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm).** When required by the enforcing agency, miscellaneous structures that require a permit and are separated from an applicable building on the same lot by a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) or more but less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) shall be constructed of noncombustible materials or of ignition-resistant materials as described in Section 704A.2.

**710A.4 Roof construction.** Roofs of accessory buildings required to be constructed entirely of noncombustible materials or of ignition-resistant materials shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 7A and Chapter 15. Roofs shall have

a roofing assembly installed in accordance with its listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Roof assemblies in Fire Hazard Severity Zones shall comply with a Class A rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 8 – INTERIOR FINISHES

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X			X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below		X																				
Chapter / Section																						
801.1		X																				
Table 803.13				X																		
804.1				X																		
804.4				X																		
804.4.1				X																		
804.4.2				X																		
804.4.3				X																		
806.4				X																		
806.7				X																		

The state agency does not adopt sections identified by the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

II

II



# CHAPTER 8

## INTERIOR FINISHES

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 8 contains the performance requirements for controlling fire growth and smoke propagation within buildings by restricting interior finish and decorative materials. The provisions of this chapter require materials used as interior finishes and decorations to meet certain flame spread index or flame propagation criteria and smoke development criteria based on the relative fire hazard associated with the occupancy. The performance of the material is evaluated based on test standards.

### SECTION 801

#### SCOPE

**801.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the use of materials used as interior finishes, trim and decorative materials. **[BSC-CG]** See California Green Building Standards Code, Chapter 5, Division 5.5 for additional finish material pollutant control requirements.

### SECTION 802

#### GENERAL

**802.1 Interior wall and ceiling finish.** The provisions of Section 803 shall limit the allowable fire performance and smoke development of interior wall and ceiling finish materials based on occupancy classification.

**802.2 Interior floor finish.** The provisions of Section 804 shall limit the allowable fire performance of interior floor finish materials based on occupancy classification.

**[F] 802.3 Decorative materials and trim.** Decorative materials and trim shall be restricted by combustibility, fire performance or flame propagation performance criteria in accordance with Section 806.

**802.4 Applicability.** For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, interior finishes, trim and decorative materials below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be flood-damage-resistant materials.

**802.5 Application.** Combustible materials shall be permitted to be used as finish for walls, ceilings, floors and other interior surfaces of buildings.

**802.6 Windows.** Show windows in the exterior walls of the first story above grade plane shall be permitted to be of wood or of unprotected metal framing.

**802.7 Foam plastics.** Foam plastics shall not be used as interior finish except as provided in Section 803.4. Foam plastics shall not be used as interior trim except as provided in Section 806.5 or 2604.2. This section shall apply both to exposed foam plastics and to foam plastics used in conjunction with a textile or vinyl facing or cover.

### SECTION 803

#### WALL AND CEILING FINISHES

**803.1 General.** Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified for fire performance and smoke development in

accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2, except as shown in Sections 803.1.3 through 803.15. Materials tested in accordance with Section 803.1.1 shall not be required to be tested in accordance with Section 803.1.2.

**803.1.1 Interior wall and ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286.** Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified in accordance with NFPA 286 and comply with Section 803.1.1.1. Materials complying with Section 803.1.1 shall be considered to also comply with the requirements of Class A.

**803.1.1.1 Acceptance criteria for NFPA 286.** The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremity of the sample on any wall or ceiling.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 286, shall not occur.
4. The peak heat release rate throughout the test shall not exceed 800 kW.
5. The total smoke released throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m<sup>2</sup>.

**803.1.2 Interior wall and ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.** Interior wall and ceiling finish materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Such interior finish materials shall be grouped in the following classes in accordance with their flame spread and smoke-developed indices.

Class A = *Flame spread index 0–25; smoke-developed index 0–450.*

Class B = *Flame spread index 26–75; smoke developed index 0–450.*

Class C = *Flame spread index 76–200; smoke-developed index 0–450.*

**Exception:** Materials tested in accordance with Section 803.1.1 and as indicated in Sections 803.1.3 through 803.13.

**803.1.3 Interior wall and ceiling finish materials with different requirements.** The materials indicated in Sections 803.2 through 803.13 shall be tested as indicated in the corresponding sections.

## INTERIOR FINISHES

**803.2 Thickness exemption.** Materials having a thickness less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) applied directly to the surface of walls or ceilings shall not be required to be tested.

**803.3 Heavy timber exemption.** Exposed portions of building elements complying with the requirements for buildings of heavy timber construction in Section 602.4 or Section 2304.11 shall not be subject to interior finish requirements except in interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps, and exit passageways.

**803.4 Foam plastics.** Foam plastics shall not be used as interior finish except as provided in Section 2603.9. This section shall apply both to exposed foam plastics and to foam plastics used in conjunction with a textile or vinyl facing or cover.

**803.5 Textile wall coverings.** Where used as interior wall finish materials, textile wall coverings, including materials having woven or nonwoven, napped, tufted, looped or similar surface and carpet and similar textile materials, shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product-mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of one of the following: Section 803.1.1, 803.5.1 or 803.5.2.

**803.5.1 Room corner test for textile wall coverings and expanded vinyl wall coverings.** Textile wall coverings and expanded vinyl wall coverings shall meet the criteria of Section 803.5.1.1 when tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with the Method B protocol of NFPA 265 using the product-mounting system, including adhesive.

**803.5.1.1 Acceptance criteria for NFPA 265.** The interior finish shall comply with the following:

1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
2. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremities of the samples on the 8-foot by 12-foot (203 by 305 mm) walls.
3. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 265, shall not occur.
4. The total smoke release throughout the test shall not exceed 1,000 m<sup>2</sup>.

**803.5.2 Acceptance criteria for textile and expanded vinyl wall or ceiling coverings tested to ASTM E84 or UL 723.** Textile wall and ceiling coverings and expanded vinyl wall and ceiling coverings shall have a Class A flame spread index in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and be protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2404.

**803.6 Textile ceiling coverings.** Where used as interior ceiling finish materials, textile ceiling coverings, including materials having woven or nonwoven, napped, tufted, looped or similar surface and carpet and similar textile materials, shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product-mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.1 or 803.5.2.

**803.7 Expanded vinyl wall coverings.** Where used as interior wall finish materials, expanded vinyl wall coverings shall

be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product-mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of one of the following: Section 803.1.1, 803.5.1 or 803.5.2.

**803.8 Expanded vinyl ceiling coverings.** Where used as interior ceiling finish materials, expanded vinyl ceiling coverings shall be tested in the manner intended for use, using the product mounting system, including adhesive, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.1 or 803.5.2.

**803.9 High-density polyethylene (HDPE) and polypropylene (PP).** Where high-density polyethylene or polypropylene is used as an interior finish, it shall comply with Section 803.1.1.

**803.10 Site-fabricated stretch systems.** Where used as interior wall or interior ceiling finish materials, site-fabricated stretch systems containing all three components described in the definition in Chapter 2 shall be tested in the manner intended for use, and shall comply with the requirements of Section 803.1.1 or with the requirements of Class A in accordance with Section 803.1.2. If the materials are tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2573.

**803.11 Laminated products factory produced with a wood substrate.** Laminated products factory produced with a wood substrate shall comply with one of the following:

1. The laminated product shall meet the criteria of Section 803.1.1.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286 using the product-mounting system, including adhesive, as described in Section 5.8 of NFPA 286.
2. The laminated product shall have a Class A, B, or C flame spread index and smoke-developed index, based on the requirements of Table 803.13, in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2579.

**803.12 Facings or wood veneers intended to be applied on site over a wood substrate.** Facings or veneers intended to be applied on site over a wood substrate shall comply with one of the following:

1. The facing or veneer shall meet the criteria of Section 803.1.1.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286 using the product mounting system, including adhesive, as described in Section 5.9 of NFPA 286.
2. The facing or veneer shall have a Class A, B or C flame spread index and smoke-developed index, based on the requirements of Table 803.13, in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2404.

**803.13 Interior finish requirements based on occupancy.** Interior wall and ceiling finish shall have a flame spread index not greater than that specified in Table 803.13 for the group and location designated. Interior wall and ceiling finish materials tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meeting the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1, shall be permitted to be used where a Class A classification in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 is required.

## INTERIOR FINISHES

**TABLE 803.13  
INTERIOR WALL AND CEILING FINISH REQUIREMENTS BY OCCUPANCY<sup>k</sup>**

GROUP	SPRINKLERED <sup>i</sup>			NONSPRINKLERED		
	Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways <sup>a, b</sup>	Corridors and enclosure for exit access stairways and ramps	Rooms and enclosed spaces <sup>c</sup>	Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways <sup>a, b</sup>	Corridors and enclosure for exit access stairways and ramps	Rooms and enclosed spaces <sup>e</sup>
A-1 & A-2	B	B	C	A	A <sup>d</sup>	B <sup>e</sup>
A-3 <sup>f</sup> , A-4, A-5	B	B	C	A	A <sup>d</sup>	C
B, E, M, R-1	B	C <sup>m</sup>	C	A	B	C
R-4 <sup>n</sup>	B	C	C	A	B	B
F	C	C	C	B	C	C
H, L	B	B	C <sup>g</sup>	NP	NP	NP
I-2 <sup>n</sup> , I-2.1	B	B	B <sup>h, i</sup>	A	A	B
I-3	A	A <sup>j</sup>	B	NP	NP	NP
I-4	B	B	B <sup>h, i</sup>	A	A	B
R-2	C	C	C	B	B	C
R-2.1	B	C	C	A	B	B
R-2.2	C	C	C	B	B	C
R-3 <sup>n</sup> , R-3.1	C	C	C	C	C	C
S	C	C	C	B	B	C
U	<b>No restrictions</b>			<b>No restrictions</b>		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

NP = Not permitted [SFM]

- a. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted for wainscoting or paneling of not more than 1,000 square feet of applied surface area in the grade lobby where applied directly to a noncombustible base or over furring strips applied to a noncombustible base and fireblocked as required by Section 803.15.1.
- b. In other than Group I-3 occupancies in buildings less than three stories above grade plane, Class B interior finish for nonsprinklered buildings and Class C interior finish for sprinklered buildings shall be permitted in interior exit stairways and ramps.
- c. Requirements for rooms and enclosed spaces shall be based on spaces enclosed by partitions. Where a fire-resistance rating is required for structural elements, the enclosing partitions shall extend from the floor to the ceiling. Partitions that do not comply with this shall be considered to be enclosing spaces and the rooms or spaces on both sides shall be considered to be one room or space. In determining the applicable requirements for rooms and enclosed spaces, the specific occupancy thereof shall be the governing factor regardless of the group classification of the building or structure.
- d. Lobby areas in Group A-1, A-2 and A-3 occupancies shall be not less than Class B materials.
- e. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in places of assembly with an occupant load of 300 persons or less.
- f. For places of religious worship, wood used for ornamental purposes, trusses, paneling or chancel furnishing shall be permitted.
- g. Class B material is required where the building exceeds two stories.
- h. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in administrative spaces.
- i. Class C interior finish materials shall be permitted in rooms with a capacity of four persons or less.
- j. Class B materials shall be permitted as wainscoting extending not more than 48 inches above the finished floor in corridors and exit access stairways and ramps.
- k. Finish materials as provided for in other sections of this code.
- l. Applies when protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
- m. Corridors in ambulatory care facilities shall be provided with Class A or B materials.
- n. Where Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies are permitted in Section 903.2.8 to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, the requirements for a non-sprinklered building shall apply.
- o. Where patients are restrained in psychiatric treatment areas of Group I-2, finishes shall comply with the requirements of a Group I-3.

**803.14 Stability.** Interior finish materials regulated by this chapter shall be applied or otherwise fastened in such a manner that such materials will not readily become detached where subjected to room temperatures of 200°F (93°C) for not less than 30 minutes.

**803.15 Application of interior finish materials to fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible building elements.** Where interior finish materials are applied on walls, ceilings or structural elements required to have a fire-resistance rating or to be of noncombustible construction,

these finish materials shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**803.15.1 Direct attachment and furred construction.**

Where walls, ceilings or structural elements are required by any provision in this code to be of fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible construction, the interior finish material shall be applied directly against such construction or to furring strips not exceeding 1<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (44 mm), applied directly against such surfaces.

## INTERIOR FINISHES

**803.15.1.1 Furred construction.** If the interior finish material is applied to furring strips, the intervening spaces between such furring strips shall comply with one of the following:

1. Be filled with material that is inorganic or non-combustible.
2. Be filled with material that meets the requirements of a Class A material in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2.
3. Be fireblocked at not greater than 8 feet (2438 mm) in every direction in accordance with Section 718.

**Exception:** Compliance with Item 1, 2 or 3 is not required where the materials used to create the concealed space are noncombustible.

**803.15.2 Set-out construction.** Where walls and ceilings are required to be of fire-resistance-rated or noncombustible construction and walls are set out or ceilings are dropped distances greater than specified in Section 803.15.1, Class A finish materials, in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2, shall be used.

### Exceptions:

1. Where interior finish materials are protected on both sides by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Where interior finish materials are attached to noncombustible backing or furring strips installed as specified in Section 803.15.1.1.
3. Where the combustible void is filled with a non-combustible material.

**803.15.2.1 Hangers and assembly members.** The hangers and assembly members of such dropped ceilings that are below the horizontal fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assemblies shall be of noncombustible materials. The construction of each set-out wall and horizontal fire-resistance-rated floor or roof assembly shall be of fire-resistance-rated construction as required elsewhere in this code.

**Exception:** In Types III and V construction, fire-retardant-treated wood shall be permitted for use as hangers and assembly members of dropped ceilings.

**803.15.3 Heavy timber construction.** Wall and ceiling finishes of all classes as permitted in this chapter that are installed directly against the wood decking or planking of heavy timber construction in Section 602.4.4.2 or 2304.11 or to wood furring strips applied directly to the wood decking or planking shall be fireblocked as specified in Section 803.15.1.1.

**803.15.4 Materials.** An interior wall or ceiling finish material that is not more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick shall be applied directly onto the wall, ceiling or structural element without the use of furring strips and shall not be

suspended away from the building element to which that finish material is applied.

### Exceptions:

1. Noncombustible interior finish materials.
2. Materials that meet the requirements of Class A materials in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2 where the qualifying tests were made with the material furred out from the noncombustible backing shall be permitted to be used with furring strips.
3. Materials that meet the requirements of Class A materials in accordance with Section 803.1.1 or 803.1.2 where the qualifying tests were made with the material suspended away from the non-combustible backing shall be permitted to be used suspended away from the building element.

## SECTION 804 INTERIOR FLOOR FINISH

**804.1 General.** Interior floor finish and floor covering materials shall comply with Sections 804.2 through 804.4.2.

**Exception:** In areas except Groups I-2 with detention and I-3, floor finishes and coverings of a traditional type, such as wood, vinyl, linoleum or terrazzo, and resilient floor covering materials that are not composed of fibers.

**804.2 Classification.** Interior floor finish and floor covering materials required by Section 804.4.2 to be of Class I or II materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM E648 or NFPA 253. The classification referred to herein corresponds to the classifications determined by ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 as follows: Class I, 0.45 watts/cm<sup>2</sup> or greater; Class II, 0.22 watts/cm<sup>2</sup> or greater.

**804.3 Testing and identification.** Interior floor finish and floor covering materials shall be tested by an agency in accordance with ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 and identified by a hang tag or other suitable method so as to identify the manufacturer or supplier and style, and shall indicate the interior floor finish or floor covering classification in accordance with Section 804.2. Carpet-type floor coverings shall be tested as proposed for use, including underlayment. Test reports confirming the information provided in the manufacturer's product identification shall be furnished to the building official on request.

**804.4 Interior floor finish requirements.** Interior floor covering materials shall comply with Sections 804.4.1 and 804.4.2 and interior floor finish materials shall comply with Section 804.4.3.

**804.4.1 Test requirement.** In all occupancies, interior floor finish and interior floor covering materials shall comply with the requirements of the *ASTM Standard E648*, and having a specific optical density smoke rating not to exceed 450 per *ASTM E662*. For Group I-3 occu-

## INTERIOR FINISHES

ancies and Group I-2 areas where patients are restrained, see Section 804.4.3.

**804.4.2 Minimum critical radiant flux.** In all occupancies, interior floor finish and floor covering materials in enclosures for stairways and ramps, exit passageways, corridors and rooms or spaces not separated from corridors by partitions extending from the floor to the underside of the ceiling shall withstand a minimum critical radiant flux. The minimum critical radiant flux shall be not less than Class I in Groups I-2 and I-3 *areas where restraint is not used and R-2.1* and not less than Class II in Groups A, B, E, H, I-2.1, I-4, M, R-1, R-2, R-2.2 and S. *For Group I-3 areas occupied by inmates or Group I-2 areas where patients are restrained, see Section 804.4.3.*

**Exception:** Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, Class II materials are permitted in any area where Class I materials are required, and materials complying with *ASTM Standard E648, and having a specific optical density smoke rating not to exceed 450 per ASTM E662 are permitted in any area where Class II materials are required.*

**804.4.3 Group I-2 and Group I-3 Occupancy floor surfaces.** Interior floor finish and floor coverings occupied by inmates or patients whose personal liberties are restrained shall be noncombustible.

**Exception:** Carpet or other floor covering materials may be used in areas protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Carpet or other floor coverings shall comply with the requirements of *ASTM Standard E648; the minimum critical radiant flux shall be not less than Class I and the specific optical density smoke rating shall not exceed 450 per ASTM E662. Carpeting and carpet padding shall be tested as a unit in accordance with floor covering radiant panel test meeting class 1 and has a critical radiant flux limit of not less than 0.45 watt per centimeter square. The carpeting and padding shall be identified by a hang-tag or other suitable method as to manufacturer and style and shall indicate the classification of the material based on the limits set forth above.*

## SECTION 805 COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS IN TYPES I AND II CONSTRUCTION

**805.1 Application.** Combustible materials installed on or embedded in floors of buildings of Type I or II construction shall comply with Sections 805.1.1 through 805.1.3.

**Exception:** Stages and platforms constructed in accordance with Sections 410.2 and 410.3, respectively.

**805.1.1 Subfloor construction.** Floor sleepers, bucks and nailing blocks shall not be constructed of combustible materials, unless the space between the fire-resistance-rated floor assembly and the flooring is either solidly filled with noncombustible materials or fireblocked in accordance with Section 718, and provided that such open

spaces shall not extend under or through permanent partitions or walls.

**805.1.2 Wood finish flooring.** Wood finish flooring is permitted to be attached directly to the embedded or fire-blocked wood sleepers and shall be permitted where cemented directly to the top surface of fire-resistance-rated floor assemblies or directly to a wood subfloor attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

**805.1.3 Insulating boards.** Combustible insulating boards not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) thick and covered with finish flooring are permitted where attached directly to a noncombustible floor assembly or to wood subflooring attached to sleepers as provided for in Section 805.1.1.

## SECTION 806 DECORATIVE MATERIALS AND TRIM

**[F] 806.1 General.** The following requirements shall apply to all occupancies:

1. Furnishings or decorative materials of an explosive or highly flammable character shall not be used.
2. Fire-retardant coatings in existing buildings shall be maintained so as to retain the effectiveness of the treatment under service conditions encountered in actual use.
3. Furnishings or other objects shall not be placed to obstruct exits, access thereto, egress therefrom or visibility thereof.
4. The permissible amount of decorative vegetation and noncombustible decorative materials shall not be limited.

**[F] 806.2 Combustible decorative materials.** In Groups A, B, E, I, M and R-1 and in dormitories in Group R-2, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which such materials are attached.

Fixed or movable walls and partitions, paneling, wall pads and crash pads applied structurally or for decoration, acoustical correction, surface insulation or other purposes shall be considered to be interior finish, shall comply with Section 803 and shall not be considered to be decorative materials or furnishings.

### Exceptions:

1. In auditoriums in Group A, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall not exceed 75 percent of the aggregate wall area where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and where the material is installed in accordance with Section 803.15 of this code.
2. In Group R-2 dormitories, within sleeping units and dwelling units, the permissible amount of curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar decorative

## INTERIOR FINISHES

materials suspended from walls or ceiling shall not exceed 50 percent of the aggregate wall areas where the building is equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.

3. In Group B and M occupancies, the amount of combustible fabric partitions suspended from the ceiling and not supported by the floor shall comply with Section 806.4 and shall not be limited.
4. The 10-percent limit shall not apply to curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials used as window coverings.

**806.3 Occupancy-based requirements.** Occupancy-based requirements for combustible decorative materials, other than decorative vegetation, not complying with Section 806.4 shall comply with Sections 807.5.1 through 807.5.6 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 806.4 Acceptance criteria and reports.** Where required to exhibit improved fire performance, curtains, draperies, fabric hangings and similar combustible decorative materials suspended from walls or ceilings shall be tested by an approved agency and *shall be flame resistant in accordance with the provisions set forth in CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8*. Reports of test results shall be prepared in accordance with the test method used and furnished to the building official on request.

**[F] 806.5 Foam plastic.** Foam plastic used as trim in any occupancy shall comply with Section 2604.2.

**[F] 806.6 Pyroxylin plastic.** Imitation leather or other material consisting of or coated with a pyroxylin or similarly hazardous base shall not be used in Group A occupancies.

**[F] 806.7 Interior trim.** Material, other than foam plastic used as interior trim, shall have a minimum *Class B flame spread and 450 smoke-developed index in Group I-3 and for all other occupancies Class C flame spread and smoke-developed index* when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, as described in Section 803.1.2. Combustible trim, excluding handrails and guardrails, shall not exceed 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling area to which it is attached.

**[F] 806.8 Interior floor-wall base.** Interior floor-wall base that is 6 inches (152 mm) or less in height shall be tested in accordance with Section 804.2 and shall be not less than Class II. Where a Class I floor finish is required, the floor-wall base shall be Class I.

**Exception:** Interior trim materials that comply with Section 806.7.

**[F] 806.9 Combustible lockers.** Where lockers constructed of combustible materials are used, the lockers shall be considered to be interior finish and shall comply with Section 803.

**Exception:** Lockers constructed entirely of wood and noncombustible materials shall be permitted to be used wherever interior finish materials are required to meet a Class C classification in accordance with Section 803.1.2.

## SECTION 807 INSULATION

**807.1 Insulation.** Thermal and acoustical insulation shall comply with Section 720.

## SECTION 808 ACOUSTICAL CEILING SYSTEMS

**808.1 Acoustical ceiling systems.** The quality, design, fabrication and erection of metal suspension systems for acoustical tile and lay-in panel ceilings in buildings or structures shall conform to generally accepted engineering practice, the provisions of this chapter and other applicable requirements of this code.

**808.1.1 Materials and installation.** Acoustical materials complying with the interior finish requirements of Section 803 shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and applicable provisions for applying interior finish.

**808.1.1.1 Suspended acoustical ceilings.** Suspended acoustical ceiling systems shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of ASTM C635 and ASTM C636.

**808.1.1.2 Fire-resistance-rated construction.** Acoustical ceiling systems that are part of fire-resistance-rated construction shall be installed in the same manner used in the assembly tested and shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X															X	
Chapter / Section																							
901.5						X																	
Table 901.6						X																	
901.7						X																	
902.1						X																	
903.1.1						X																	
903.2						X																	
903.2.1.2						X																	
903.2.1.3						X																	
903.2.3						X																	
903.2.4.1						X																	
903.2.5.4						X																	
903.2.6						X																	
903.2.6.1						X																	
903.2.6.2						X																	
903.2.7						X																	
903.2.8						X																	
903.2.10						X																	
Table 903.2.11.6						X																	
903.2.14						X																	
903.2.14.1						X																	
903.2.14.2						X																	
903.2.15						X																	
903.2.15.1						X																	
903.2.16						X																	
903.2.16.1						X																	
903.2.17						X																	
903.2.17.1						X																	
903.2.17.2						X																	
903.2.17.2.1						X																	
903.2.17.2.2						X																	
903.2.17.2.3						X																	
903.2.17.2.4						X																	
903.2.17.2.5						X																	
903.2.17.2.6						X																	
903.2.18						X																	
903.2.19						X																	
903.2.19.1						X																	
903.2.19.1.1						X																	
903.2.19.1.2						X																	
903.2.20						X																	
903.2.21						X																	
903.3						X																	

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X																X
Chapter / Section																							
903.3.1.1						X																	
903.3.1.1.1						X																	
903.3.1.1.3						X																	
903.3.1.2						X																	
903.3.1.3						X																	
903.3.2						X																	
903.3.5						X																	
903.3.9						X																	
903.4.2						X																	
903.4.3						X																	
904.3.1							X	X															
904.5							X																
904.6							X																
904.7							X																
904.8							X																
904.9							X																
904.10							X																
904.11.3							X																
904.12							X																
904.13							X																
905.2							X																
905.3							X																
905.3.1							X																
905.3.9							X																
905.3.10							X																
905.3.11							X																
905.3.11.1							X																
905.3.11.2							X																
905.4							X																
905.5							X																
905.7.2							X																
906.1							X																
906.2							X																
Table 906.3(1)							X																
906.3.2							X																
Table 906.3(2)							X																
906.3.4							X																
907.1.2							X																
907.1.3							X																
907.1.4							X																
907.1.5							X																
907.2							X																
907.2.1							X																

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X																X
Chapter / Section																							
907.2.1.1						X																	
907.2.1.3						X																	
907.2.2						X																	
907.2.2.2						X																	
907.2.3						X																	
907.2.3.1						X																	
907.2.3.2						X																	
907.2.3.3						X																	
907.2.3.4						X																	
907.2.3.5						X																	
907.2.3.6						X																	
907.2.3.6.1						X																	
907.2.3.6.2						X																	
907.2.3.7						X																	
907.2.3.8						X																	
907.2.3.9						X																	
907.2.3.9.1						X																	
907.2.3.9.2						X																	
907.2.3.10						X																	
907.2.5.1						X																	
907.2.6						X																	
907.2.6.2						X																	
907.2.6.2.1						X																	
907.2.6.2.2						X																	
907.2.6.3						X																	
907.2.6.3.3						X																	
907.2.6.3.4						X																	
907.2.6.4						X																	
907.2.6.5						X																	
907.2.9						X																	
907.2.9.1						X																	
907.2.9.4						X																	
907.2.9.4.1						X																	
907.2.10						X																	
907.2.10.1						X																	
907.2.10.2						X																	
907.2.11						X																	
907.2.11.1						X																	
907.2.11.2						X																	
907.2.11.2.1 – 907.2.11.2.5						X																	
907.2.11.3						X																	
907.2.11.4						X																	
907.2.11.5						X																	

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																	
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X															X
Chapter / Section																						
907.2.11.6						X																
907.2.11.8						X																
907.2.12.1.2						X																
907.2.13						X																
907.2.24						X																
907.2.24.1						X																
907.2.24.2						X																
907.2.24.3						X																
907.2.24.4						X																
907.2.24.4.1						X																
907.2.24.4.2						X																
907.2.24.4.3						X																
907.2.25						X																
907.2.25.1						X																
907.2.25.2						X																
907.2.26						X																
907.2.26.1						X																
907.2.26.2						X																
907.2.26.3						X																
907.2.26.4						X																
907.2.26.4.1						X																
907.2.26.4.2						X																
907.2.27						X																
907.2.28						X																
907.2.28.1						X																
907.2.29						X																
907.2.29.1						X																
907.3						X																
907.3.2						X																
907.3.2.1						X																
907.3.2.2						X																
907.3.2.3						X																
907.3.2.4						X																
907.3.2.5						X																
907.3.3						X																
907.4.2.1						X																
907.4.2.2						X			X													
907.4.2.7						X																
907.5 – 907.5.1.1						X																
907.5.2.1						X																
907.5.2.1.4						X																
907.5.2.2						X																
907.5.2.2.4						X																
907.5.2.3						X			X													

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X																		
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X																X
Chapter / Section																							
907.5.2.3.1					X			X															
907.5.2.3.2					X			X															
Table 907.5.2.3.2				X				X															
907.5.2.3.3				X	X	X	X	X															
907.5.2.3.4				X				X															
907.5.2.4				X																			
907.5.2.5				X																			
907.6.1					X	X																	
907.6.1.1					X																		
907.6.4					X																		
907.6.4.1				X																			
907.6.4.1.1				X																			
907.6.4.2				X																			
907.6.4.3				X																			
907.6.4.4				X																			
907.6.6				X																			
907.6.6.4				X																			
908.2				X																			
908.4				X																			
909.5.3				X																			
909.5.3.1				X																			
909.12.1				X																			
909.16				X																			
909.16.1				X																			
909.18.9				X																			
909.20				X																			
909.20.1				X																			
909.20.2.2				X																			
909.20.2.3				X																			
909.20.2.4				X																			
909.20.2.5				X																			
909.20.3				X																			
909.20.3.3				X																			
909.20.4				X																			
909.20.4.1				X																			
909.20.4.2				X																			
910.2.1				X																			
910.3.1				X																			
911.1.2				X																			
911.1.6				X																			
911.1.7				X																			
912.4				X																			

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 9 – FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X																	
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X	X															X
Chapter / Section																							
912.6						X																	
913.1						X																	
913.6						X																	
915.1						X	X	X															
915.1.1						X																	
915.2						X	X	X															
915.2.1						X	X	X															
915.2.3						X																	
915.4						X	X	X															
915.4.1, <i>Exceptions 2 and 3</i>						X	X	X															
915.4.2						X	X	X															
915.4.3						X																	
915.4.4						X	X	X															
915.4.5							X	X															
915.5.2						X	X	X															
915.5.3						X	X	X															
915.6						X	X	X															
915.7						X		X															

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

## CHAPTER 9

# FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 9 prescribes the minimum requirements for active fire protection equipment systems to perform the functions of detecting a fire, alerting the occupants or fire department of a fire emergency, mass notification, gas detection, controlling smoke and controlling or extinguishing the fire. Generally, the requirements are based on the occupancy, the height and the area of the building, because these are the factors that most affect fire-fighting capabilities and the relative hazard of a specific building or portion thereof. This chapter parallels and is substantially duplicated in Chapter 9 of the California Fire Code.

### SECTION 901 GENERAL

**901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall specify where fire protection and life safety systems are required and shall apply to the design, installation and operation of fire protection and life safety systems.

**901.2 Fire protection systems.** Fire protection and life safety systems shall be installed, repaired, operated and maintained in accordance with this code and the *California Fire Code*.

| Any fire protection or life safety system for which an exception or reduction to the provisions of this code has been granted shall be considered to be a required system.

| **Exception:** Any fire protection or life safety system or portion thereof not required by this code shall be permitted to be installed for partial or complete protection provided that such system meets the requirements of this code.

**901.3 Modifications.** Persons shall not remove or modify any fire protection system installed or maintained under the provisions of this code or the *California Fire Code* without approval by the building official.

**901.4 Threads.** Threads provided for fire department connections to sprinkler systems, standpipes, yard hydrants or any other fire hose connection shall be compatible with the connections used by the local fire department.

| **901.5 Administration of installation acceptance tests.** Fire protection systems shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of this code and the *California Fire Code*. Where required, the tests shall be conducted in the presence of the building official. Tests required by this code, the *California Fire Code* and the standards listed in this code shall be conducted at the expense of the owner or the owner's authorized agent. It shall be unlawful to occupy portions of a structure until the required fire protection systems within that portion of the structure have been tested and approved.

**901.6 Supervisory service.** Where required, fire protection systems shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.

**901.6.1 Automatic sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be monitored by an approved supervising station.

**Exceptions:**

1. A supervising station is not required for automatic sprinkler systems protecting one- and two-family dwellings.
2. Limited area systems in accordance with Section 903.3.8.

[F] **901.6.2 Integrated testing.** Where two or more fire protection or life safety systems are interconnected, the intended response of subordinate fire protection and life safety systems shall be verified when required testing of the initiating system is conducted. In addition, integrated testing shall be performed in accordance with Sections 901.6.2.1 and 901.6.2.2.

[F] **901.6.2.1 High-rise buildings.** For high-rise buildings, integrated testing shall comply with NFPA 4, with an integrated test performed prior to issuance of the certificate of occupancy and at intervals not exceeding 10 years, unless otherwise specified by an integrated system test plan prepared in accordance with NFPA 4. If an equipment failure is detected during integrated testing, a repeat of the integrated test shall not be required, except as necessary to verify operation of fire protection or life safety functions that are initiated by equipment that was repaired or replaced.

[F] **901.6.2.2 Smoke control systems.** Where a fire alarm system is integrated with a smoke control system as outlined in Section 909, integrated testing shall comply with NFPA 4, with an integrated test performed prior to issuance of the certificate of occupancy and at intervals not exceeding 10 years, unless otherwise specified by an integrated system test plan prepared in accordance with NFPA 4. If an equipment failure is detected during integrated testing, a repeat of the integrated test shall not be required, except as necessary to verify operation of fire protection or life safety functions that are initiated by equipment that was repaired or replaced.

**901.6.3 Fire alarm systems.** Fire alarm systems required by the provisions of Section 907.2 of this code and

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

Sections 907.2 and 907.9 of the *California Fire Code* shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6 of this code.

### Exceptions:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies.
3. Supervisory service is not required for automatic sprinkler systems in one- and two-family dwellings.

**901.6.4 Group H.** Supervision and monitoring of emergency alarm, detection and automatic fire-extinguishing systems in Group H occupancies shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**901.7 Fire areas.** Where buildings, or portions thereof, are divided into fire areas so as not to exceed the limits established for requiring a fire protection system in accordance with this chapter, such fire areas shall be separated by fire walls constructed in accordance with Section 706, fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707, or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or a combination thereof having a fire-resistance rating of not less than that determined in accordance with Section 707.3.10.

## SECTION 902 FIRE PUMP AND RISER ROOM SIZE

**[F] 902.1 Pump and riser room size.** Where provided, fire pump rooms and automatic sprinkler system riser rooms shall be designed with adequate space for all equipment necessary for the installation, as defined by the manufacturer, with sufficient working room around the stationary equipment. Clearances around equipment to elements of permanent construction, including other installed equipment and appliances, shall be sufficient to allow inspection, service, repair or replacement without removing such elements of permanent construction or disabling the function of a required fire-resistance-rated assembly. Fire pump and automatic sprinkler system riser rooms shall be provided with doors and unobstructed passageways large enough to allow removal of the largest piece of equipment.

**[F] 902.1.1 Access.** Automatic sprinkler system risers, fire pumps and controllers shall be provided with ready access. Where located in a fire pump room or automatic sprinkler system riser room, the door shall be permitted to be locked provided that the key is available at all times.

**[F] 902.1.2 Marking on access doors.** Access doors for automatic sprinkler system riser rooms and fire pump rooms shall be labeled with an approved sign. The lettering shall be in contrasting color to the background. Letters shall have a minimum height of 2 inches (51 mm) with a minimum stroke of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm).

**[F] 902.1.3 Environment.** Automatic sprinkler system riser rooms and fire pump rooms shall be maintained at a temperature of not less than 40°F (4°C). Heating units shall be permanently installed.

**[F] 902.1.4 Lighting.** Permanently installed artificial illumination shall be provided in the automatic sprinkler system riser rooms and fire pump rooms.

## SECTION 903 AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

**[F] 903.1 General.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with this section.

**[F] 903.1.1 Alternative protection.** Alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems complying with Section 904 shall be permitted instead of automatic sprinkler system protection where recognized by the applicable standard and approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 903.2 Where required.** Approved automatic sprinkler systems in new buildings and structures shall be provided in the locations described in Sections 903.2.1 through 903.2.12 and Sections 903.2.14 through 903.2.21.

**Exception:** Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, associated electrical power distribution equipment, batteries and standby engines, provided that those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 903.2.1 Group A.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings and portions thereof used as Group A occupancies as provided in this section.

**[F] 903.2.1.1 Group A-1.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout stories containing Group A-1 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-1 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.
4. The fire area contains a multitheater complex.

**[F] 903.2.1.2 Group A-2.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout stories containing Group A-2 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-2 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $464\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 100 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.
4. *The structure exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ), contains more than one fire area containing a Group A-2 occupancy, and is separated into two*

*or more buildings by fire walls of less than four-hour fire-resistance rating without openings.*

**[F] 903.2.1.3 Group A-3.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout stories containing Group A-3 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-3 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.
4. *The structure exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ), contains more than one fire area containing exhibition and display rooms, and is separated into two or more buildings by fire walls of less than four-hour fire-resistance rating without openings.*

**[F] 903.2.1.4 Group A-4.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout stories containing Group A-4 occupancies and throughout all stories from the Group A-4 occupancy to and including the levels of exit discharge serving that occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. The fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
3. The fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.

**[F] 903.2.1.5 Group A-5.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for all enclosed Group A-5 accessory use areas in excess of 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.1.5.1 Spaces under grandstands or bleachers.** Enclosed spaces under grandstands or bleachers shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where either of the following exist:

1. The enclosed area is 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) or less and is not constructed in accordance with Section 1030.1.1.1.
2. The enclosed area exceeds 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.1.6 Assembly occupancies on roofs.** Where an occupied roof has an assembly occupancy with an occupant load exceeding 100 for Group A-2 and 300 for other Group A occupancies, all floors between the occupied roof and the level of exit discharge shall be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

**Exception:** Open parking garages of Type I or Type II construction.

**903.2.1.7 Multiple fire areas.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided where multiple fire areas of Group A-1, A-2, A-3 or A-4 occupancies share exit or

exit access components and the combined occupant load of these fire areas is 300 or more.

**[F] 903.2.2 Ambulatory care facilities.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire floor containing an ambulatory care facility where either of the following conditions exist at any time:

1. Four or more care recipients are incapable of self-preservation.
2. One or more care recipients that are incapable of self-preservation are located at other than the level of exit discharge serving such a facility.

In buildings where ambulatory care is provided on levels other than the level of exit discharge, an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout the entire floor as well as all floors below where such care is provided, and all floors between the level of ambulatory care and the nearest level of exit discharge, the level of exit discharge, and all floors below the level of exit discharge.

**Exception:** Floors classified as an open parking garage are not required to be sprinklered.

**[F] 903.2.3 Group E.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided for Group E occupancies as follows:

1. Throughout all Group E fire areas greater than 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ) in area.
2. The Group E fire area is located on a floor other than a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies.

**Exception:** In buildings where every classroom has not fewer than one exterior exit door at ground level, an automatic sprinkler system is not required in any area below the lowest level of exit discharge serving that area.

3. The Group E fire area has an occupant load of 300 or more.
4. *In rooms or areas with special hazards such as laboratories, vocational shops and other such areas where hazardous materials in quantities not exceeding the maximum allowable quantity are used or stored.*
5. *Throughout any Group E structure greater than 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ) in area, which contains more than one fire area, and which is separated into two or more buildings by fire walls of less than four hour fire resistance rating without openings.*
6. *For public school state funded construction projects see Section 903.2.19.*
7. *For public school campuses: Kindergarten through 12th grade, see Section 903.2.20.*

**[F] 903.2.4 Group F-1.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group F-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group F-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. A Group F-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

3. The combined area of all Group F-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet ( $2230 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.4.1 Woodworking operations.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all Group F-1 occupancy fire areas that contain woodworking operations in excess of 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area that generate finely divided combustible waste or use finely divided combustible materials.

*[SFM] A fire wall of less than four-hour fire-resistance rating without openings, or any fire wall with openings, shall not be used to establish separate fire areas.*

**[F] 903.2.4.2 Group F-1 distilled spirits.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout a Group F-1 fire area used for the manufacture of distilled spirits.

**[F] 903.2.4.3 Group F-1 upholstered furniture or mattresses.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout a Group F-1 fire area that exceeds 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) used for the manufacture of upholstered furniture or mattresses.

**[F] 903.2.5 Group H.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be provided in high-hazard occupancies as required in Sections 903.2.5.1 through 903.2.5.3.

**[F] 903.2.5.1 General.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in Group H occupancies.

**[F] 903.2.5.2 Group H-5 occupancies.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings containing Group H-5 occupancies. The design of the sprinkler system shall be not less than that required by this code for the occupancy hazard classifications in accordance with Table 903.2.5.2.

Where the design area of the sprinkler system consists of a corridor protected by one row of sprinklers, the maximum number of sprinklers required to be calculated is 13.

**[F] TABLE 903.2.5.2  
GROUP H-5 SPRINKLER DESIGN CRITERIA**

LOCATION	OCCUPANCY HAZARD CLASSIFICATION
Fabrication areas	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Service corridors	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Storage rooms without dispensing	Ordinary Hazard Group 2
Storage rooms with dispensing	Extra Hazard Group 2
Corridors	Ordinary Hazard Group 2

**[F] 903.2.5.3 Pyroxylin plastics.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in buildings, or portions thereof, where cellulose nitrate film or pyroxylin plastics are manufactured, stored or handled in quantities exceeding 100 pounds (45 kg).

**[F] 903.2.5.4 Group H occupancies located on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.** The fire sprinkler system shall be designed and zoned to provide separate indication

upon water-flow for each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**[F] 903.2.6 Group I.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings with a Group I fire area.

### Exceptions:

1. Those areas exempted by Section 407.6 of the California Building Code.
2. Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13113(d), Group I-2 occupancies, or any alterations thereto, located in Type IA construction in existence on March 4, 1972.

**[F] 903.2.6.1 Group I-2.** In an existing, unsprinklered Group I-2, nurse station open to fire-resistive exit access corridors shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system located directly above the nurse station. It shall be permitted to connect the automatic sprinkler system to the domestic water service.

**[F] 903.2.6.2 Group I-3.** Every building, or portion thereof, where inmates or persons are in custody or restrained shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system conforming to NFPA 13. The main sprinkler control valve or valves and all other control valves in the system shall be locked in the open position and electrically supervised so that at least an audible and visual alarm will sound at a constantly attended location when valves are closed. The sprinkler branch piping serving cells may be embedded in the concrete construction.

**[F] 903.2.7 Group M.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings containing a Group M occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group M fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. A Group M fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.
3. The combined area of all Group M fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet ( $2230 \text{ m}^2$ ).
4. The structure exceeds 24,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ), contains more than one fire area containing a Group M occupancy, and is separated into two or more buildings by fire walls of less than 4-hour fire resistance rating without openings.

**[F] 903.2.7.1 High-piled storage.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in accordance with the California Fire Code in all buildings of Group M where storage of merchandise is in high-piled or rack storage arrays.

**[F] 903.2.7.2 Group M upholstered furniture or mattresses.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout a Group M fire area where the area used for the display and sale of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $464 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.8 Group R.** An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3 shall be provided throughout all buildings with a Group R fire area.

**Exceptions:**

1. Existing Group R-3 occupancies converted to Group R-3.1 occupancies not housing bedridden clients, not housing nonambulatory clients above the first floor and not housing clients above the second floor.
2. Existing Group R-3 occupancies converted to Group R-3.1 occupancies housing only one bedridden client and complying with Section 435.8.3.3.
3. Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13113 occupancies housing ambulatory children only, none of whom are mentally ill children or children with intellectual disabilities, and the buildings or portions thereof in which such children are housed are not more than two stories in height, and buildings or portions thereof housing such children have an automatic fire alarm system activated by approved smoke detectors.
4. Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143.6 occupancies licensed for protective social care which house ambulatory clients only, none of whom is a child (under the age of 18 years) or who is elderly (65 years of age or over).

When not used for height increases or for area increases, an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be allowed in Group R-2.1 occupancies.

An automatic sprinkler system designed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall not be utilized in Group R-2.1 or R-4 occupancies.

**[F] 903.2.8.1 Group R-3.** An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-3 occupancies.

**[F] 903.2.8.2 Group R-4, Condition 1.** An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in Group R-4, Condition 1 occupancies.

**[F] 903.2.8.3 Group R-4, Condition 2.** An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2 shall be permitted in Group R-4, Condition 2 occupancies.

**[F] 903.2.8.4 Care facilities.** An automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3 shall be permitted in care facilities with five or fewer individuals in a single-family dwelling.

**[F] 903.2.9 Group S-1.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings containing a Group S-1 occupancy where one of the following conditions exists:

1. A Group S-1 fire area exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115 \text{ m}^2$ ).

2. A Group S-1 fire area is located more than three stories above grade plane.

3. The combined area of all Group S-1 fire areas on all floors, including any mezzanines, exceeds 24,000 square feet ( $2230 \text{ m}^2$ ).
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the storage of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $464 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.9.1 Repair garages.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout all buildings used as repair garages in accordance with Section 406, as shown:

1. Buildings having two or more stories above grade plane, including basements, with a fire area containing a repair garage exceeding 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. Buildings not more than one story above grade plane, with a fire area containing a repair garage exceeding 12,000 square feet ( $1115 \text{ m}^2$ ).
3. Buildings with repair garages servicing vehicles parked in basements.
4. A Group S-1 fire area used for the repair of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $464 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.9.2 Bulk storage of tires.** Buildings and structures where the area for the storage of tires exceeds 20,000 cubic feet ( $566 \text{ m}^3$ ) shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**[F] 903.2.9.3 Group S-1 Distilled spirits or wine.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout a Group S-1 fire area used for the bulk storage of distilled spirits or wine.

**[F] 903.2.9.4 Group S-1 upholstered furniture and mattresses.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout a Group S-1 fire area where the area used for the storage of upholstered furniture or mattresses exceeds 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** Self-service storage facilities not greater than one story above grade plane where all storage spaces can be accessed directly from the exterior.

**[F] 903.2.10 Group S-2 parking garages.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings classified as parking garages where any of the following conditions exists:

1. Where the fire area of the enclosed parking garage in accordance with Section 406.6 exceeds 12,000 square feet ( $1115 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. Where the enclosed parking garage in accordance with Section 406.6 is located beneath other groups.

**Exception:** Enclosed parking garages located beneath Group R-3 occupancies.

3. Where the fire area of the open parking garage in accordance with Section 406.5 exceeds 48,000 square feet ( $4460 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.10.1 Commercial parking garages.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings used for storage of commercial motor vehicles where the fire area exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $464 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[F] 903.2.10.2 Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages.** An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout buildings used for the storage of motor vehicles in a mechanical-access enclosed parking garage. The portion of the building that contains the mechanical-access enclosed parking garage shall be protected with a specially engineered automatic sprinkler system.

**[F] 903.2.11 Specific building areas and hazards.** In all occupancies other than Group U, an automatic sprinkler system shall be installed for building design or hazards in the locations set forth in Sections 903.2.11.1 through 903.2.11.6.

**[F] 903.2.11.1 Stories without openings.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout all stories, including basements, of all buildings where the floor area exceeds 1,500 square feet ( $139.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) and where the story does not comply with the following criteria for exterior wall openings:

1. Openings below grade that lead directly to ground level by an exterior stairway complying with Section 1011 or an outside ramp complying with Section 1012. Openings shall be located in each 50 linear feet ( $15240 \text{ mm}$ ), or fraction thereof, of exterior wall in the story on not fewer than one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet ( $15240 \text{ mm}$ ).
2. Openings entirely above the adjoining ground level totaling not less than 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ) in each 50 linear feet ( $15240 \text{ mm}$ ), or fraction thereof, of exterior wall in the story on not fewer than one side. The required openings shall be distributed such that the lineal distance between adjacent openings does not exceed 50 feet ( $15240 \text{ mm}$ ). The height of the bottom of the clear opening shall not exceed 44 inches ( $1118 \text{ mm}$ ) measured from the floor.

**[F] 903.2.11.1 Opening dimensions and access.** Openings shall have a minimum dimension of not less than 30 inches ( $762 \text{ mm}$ ). Access to such openings shall be provided for the fire department from the exterior and shall not be obstructed in a manner such that fire fighting or rescue cannot be accomplished from the exterior.

**[F] 903.2.11.1.2 Openings on one side only.** Where openings in a story are provided on only one side and the opposite wall of such story is more than 75 feet ( $22860 \text{ mm}$ ) from such openings, the story shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, or openings shall be provided on not fewer than two sides of the story.

**[F] 903.2.11.1.3 Basements.** Where any portion of a basement is located more than 75 feet ( $22860 \text{ mm}$ ) from openings required by Section 903.2.11.1, or where walls, partitions or other obstructions are installed that restrict the application of water from hose streams, the basement shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

**[F] 903.2.11.2 Rubbish and linen chutes.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed at the top of rubbish and linen chutes and in their terminal rooms. Chutes shall have additional sprinkler heads installed at alternate floors and at the lowest intake. Where a rubbish chute extends through a building more than one floor below the lowest intake, the extension shall have sprinklers installed that are recessed from the drop area of the chute and protected from freezing in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Such sprinklers shall be installed at alternate floors, beginning with the second level below the last intake and ending with the floor above the discharge. Access to sprinklers in chutes shall be provided for servicing.

**[F] 903.2.11.3 Buildings 55 feet or more in height.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings that have one or more stories with an occupant load of 30 or more located 55 feet ( $16764 \text{ mm}$ ) or more above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, measured to the finished floor.

**Exception:** Occupancies in Group F-2.

**[F] 903.2.11.4 Ducts conveying hazardous exhausts.** Where required by the *California Mechanical Code*, automatic sprinklers shall be provided in ducts conveying hazardous exhaust or flammable or combustible materials.

**Exception:** Ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is less than 10 inches ( $254 \text{ mm}$ ).

**[F] 903.2.11.5 Commercial cooking operations.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct systems where an automatic sprinkler system is used to comply with Section 904.

**[F] 903.2.11.6 Other required fire protection systems.** In addition to the requirements of Section 903.2, the provisions indicated in Table 903.2.11.6 require the installation of a fire protection system for certain buildings and areas.

[F]TABLE 903.2.11.6

## ADDITIONAL REQUIRED PROTECTION SYSTEMS

SECTION	SUBJECT
402.5, 402.6.2	Covered and open mall buildings
403.3	High-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access
404.3	Atriums
405.3	Underground structures
406.6.4	Mechanical-access enclosed parking garages
407.7	Group I-2
410.6	Stages
411.3	Special amusement buildings
412.2.4	Airport traffic control towers
412.3.6, 412.3.6.1, 412.5.6	Aircraft hangars
415.11.11	Group H-5 HPM exhaust ducts
416.5	Flammable finishes
417.4	Drying rooms
424.3	Play structures
428	Buildings containing Group L occupancies
440	Horse racing stables
441	Pet kennels
449	Public libraries
507	Unlimited area buildings
508.5.7	Live/work units
509.4	Incidental uses
1030.6.2.3	Smoke-protected assembly seating
CFC	Sprinkler system requirements as set forth in Section 903.2.11.6 of the California Fire Code
California Fire Code Section 1207	Stationary and mobile energy storage systems

**[F] 903.2.12 During construction.** Automatic sprinkler systems required during construction, alteration and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 33 of the California Fire Code.

### 903.2.13 Reserved.

### 903.2.14 Motion picture and television production studio sound stages, approved production facilities and production locations.

**903.2.14.1 Existing sound stages and approved production facilities.** All existing sound stages and approved production facilities equipped with an automatic fire sprinkler system shall be maintained in accordance with the provisions of California Fire Code Chapter 9.

**903.2.14.2 New sound stages.** All new sound stages shall be equipped with an approved automatic fire sprinkler system. The system shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of the California Fire

Code Chapter 9 and shall meet the minimum design requirements of an Extra Hazard, Group 2 system.

**903.2.15 Automatic sprinkler system—existing high-rise buildings.** See California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code.

**903.2.15.1 Existing Group R-1 and R-2 high-rise buildings fire-extinguishing systems.** See California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code.

**903.2.16 Group L occupancies.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed throughout buildings housing Group L occupancies. Sprinkler systems for Group L occupancy shall be designed for the square footage area of the Group L occupancy based on an area of sprinkler operation of 2,500 square feet ( $232\text{ m}^2$ ) and design density of 0.20 gpm/sf.

In mixed occupancies, portions of floors with Group L occupancies, but not classified as Group L, shall be provided with a sprinkler protection system per NFPA 13.

**903.2.16.1 Group L occupancies located on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.** The automatic sprinkler system shall be designed and zoned to provide separate indication upon water-flow for each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**903.2.17 Fixed guideway and passenger rail transit systems.**

**903.2.17.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in all stations of fixed guideway transit systems.

#### Exceptions:

1. Guideways when the closest sprinkler heads to the guideway are within 3 feet (914 mm) of the edge, over the platform, and spaced 6 feet (1829 mm) on center parallel to the guideway
2. Station agent booths not exceeding 150 square feet ( $13.9\text{ m}^2$ ) in area, when provided with an approved smoke detector connected to the building fire alarm system
3. Power substations
4. Machinery rooms, electrical rooms and train control rooms protected by an approved automatic fixed fire-extinguishing system
5. Open stations
6. Station platform areas open to three or more sides

**903.2.17.2 Station guideway deluge system.** Underground stations and stations in open cuts with walls 5 feet (1524 mm) above the top of the running rail and with a raised platform shall be provided with an under-vehicle guideway manually activated deluge sprinkler system. In open cut stations, such system shall be provided in guideways which are situated between a raised platform edge and a retaining wall.

**903.2.17.2.1 Systems shall be provided along the entire length of track at each station platform.**

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

**903.2.17.2.2** Deluge nozzles with caps shall be located in the approximate center of track with spacing designed to completely wet the undersides of the vehicle at the applied density.

**903.2.17.2.3** System density shall be a minimum of 0.19 gallon per minute (gpm) per square foot (0.72 L/m per m<sup>2</sup>) for the design area. When more than one zone is provided, two adjacent zones are required to be considered operating for calculating purposes.

**903.2.17.2.4** Deluge systems shall be directly connected to a water supply capable of supplying the required flow rate for a minimum 30-minute duration.

**903.2.17.2.5** Controls or manually operable valves shall be in a location acceptable to the Fire Code Official. All deluge systems shall be monitored by the station fire alarm system.

**903.2.17.2.6** Each valve shall be monitored by a separate circuit. The alarm panel shall be located in an area normally occupied by station personnel or signals shall be transmitted to the operations control center (OCC).

**903.2.18 Group U private garages and carports accessory to Group R-3 occupancies.** Carports with habitable space above and attached garages, accessory to Group R-3 occupancies, shall be protected by residential fire sprinklers in accordance with this section. Residential fire sprinklers shall be connected to, and installed in accordance with, an automatic residential fire sprinkler system that complies with Section R313 of the California Residential Code or with NFPA 13D. Fire sprinklers shall be residential sprinklers or quick-response sprinklers, designed to provide a minimum density of 0.05 gpm/ft<sup>2</sup> (2.04 mm/min) over the area of the garage and/or carport, but not to exceed two sprinklers for hydraulic calculation purposes. Garage doors shall not be considered obstructions with respect to sprinkler placement.

**Exception:** An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall not be required when additions or alterations are made to existing carports and/or garages that do not have an automatic residential fire sprinkler system installed in accordance with this section.

**903.2.19 Public school state funded construction projects for kindergarten through 12th grade - automatic sprinkler system requirements.**

**903.2.19.1 New public school campus.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in all occupancies. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project consisting of one or more buildings on a new school campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Greene School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, new campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to DSA on or after July 1, 2002.

An automatic fire sprinkler system is not required in locations identified in Section 903.2.20.

**903.2.19.1.1** Sprinklers shall be installed in spaces where the ceiling creates a "ceiling-plenum" or space above the ceiling is utilized for environmental air.

**903.2.19.1.2 Fire-resistive substitution for new campus.** A new public school campus shall be entitled to include in the design and construction documents all of the applicable fire-resistive construction substitutions as permitted by this code.

**903.2.20 Public school campuses.** An automatic fire sprinkler system is not required to be provided in the following locations on Kindergarten through 12<sup>th</sup> grade.

1. A relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. Also see CCR, Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.
2. Detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include but not be limited to:

Concession Stand  
Press Box  
Restroom Facilities  
Shade Structure  
Snack Bar  
Storage Building  
Ticket Booth

**903.2.21 Required exterior entrance covers.** An automatic sprinkler system shall be provided throughout covered exterior entrances required by California Building Code Section 11B-206.4.10 or Section 1224.33.2.1.

**[F] 903.3 Installation requirements.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 903.3.1 through 903.3.9.

**[F] 903.3.1 Standards.** Sprinkler systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 unless otherwise permitted by Sections 903.3.1.2 and 903.3.1.3 and other chapters of this code, as applicable.

**[F] 903.3.1.1 NFPA 13 sprinkler systems.** Where the provisions of this code require that a building or portion thereof be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with this section, sprinklers shall be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13 as amended in Chapter 35 except as provided in Sections 903.3.1.1.1 through 903.3.1.1.3.

**[F] 903.3.1.1.1 Exempt locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following rooms or areas where such rooms or areas are protected with an approved automatic fire detection system in

accordance with Section 907.2 that will respond to visible or invisible particles of combustion. Sprinklers shall not be omitted from a room merely because it is damp, of fire-resistance-rated construction or contains electrical equipment.

1. A room where the application of water, or flame and water, constitutes a serious life or fire hazard *as determined by the authority having jurisdiction*.
2. A room or space where sprinklers are considered undesirable because of the nature of the contents *as determined by the authority having jurisdiction*.
3. *Machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and hoistways associated with fire service access elevators provided in accordance with Section 3007.*
4. Machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces *and hoistways associated with occupant evacuation elevators designed in accordance with Section 3008.*
5. *Spaces or areas in telecommunications buildings used exclusively for telecommunications equipment, and associated electrical power distribution equipment, provided those spaces or areas are equipped throughout with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2 and are separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or not less than 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 712, or both.*
6. *Elevator hoistways, machine rooms, machinery spaces, control spaces and control rooms in accordance with Section 3005.4.1 of the California Building Code.*

**[F] 903.3.1.1.2 Bathrooms.** In Group R occupancies sprinklers shall not be required in bathrooms that do not exceed 55 square feet ( $5 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and are located within individual dwelling units or sleeping units, provided that walls and ceilings, including the walls and ceilings behind a shower enclosure or tub, are of noncombustible or limited-combustible materials with a 15-minute thermal barrier rating.

**903.3.1.1.3 Solar photovoltaic power systems.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be required in the following areas:

1. *Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath, including storage.*

2. *Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.*

**[F] 903.3.1.2 NFPA 13R sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems in Group R occupancies shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13R *as amended in Chapter 35.*

1. Four stories or fewer above grade plane.
2. The floor level of the highest story is 30 feet (9144 mm) or less above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
3. The floor level of the lowest story is 30 feet (9144 mm) or less below the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

The number of stories of Group R occupancies constructed in accordance with Sections 510.2 and 510.4 shall be measured from grade plane.

**[F] 903.3.1.2.1 Balconies and decks.** Sprinkler protection shall be provided for exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of dwelling units and sleeping units where either of the following conditions exists:

1. The building is of Type V construction, provided that there is a roof or deck above.
2. Exterior balconies, decks and ground floor patios of dwelling units and sleeping units are constructed in accordance with Section 705.2.3.1, Exception 3.

Sidewall sprinklers that are used to protect such areas shall be permitted to be located such that their deflectors are within 1 inch (25 mm) to 6 inches (152 mm) below the structural members and a maximum distance of 14 inches (356 mm) below the deck of the exterior balconies and decks that are constructed of open wood joist construction.

**[F] 903.3.1.2.2 Corridors and balconies in the means of egress.** Sprinkler protection shall be provided in corridors and for balconies in the means of egress where any of the following conditions apply:

1. Corridors with combustible floor or walls.
2. Corridors with an interior change of direction exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad).
3. Corridors that are less than 50 percent open to the outside atmosphere at the ends.
4. Open-ended corridors and associated exterior stairways and ramps as specified in Section 1027.6, Exception 3.
5. Egress balconies not complying with Sections 1021.2 and 1021.3.

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

**[F] 903.3.1.2.3 Attics.** Attic protection shall be provided as follows:

1. Attics that are used or intended for living purposes or storage shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system.
2. Where fuel-fired equipment is installed in an unsprinklered attic, not fewer than one quick-response intermediate temperature sprinkler shall be installed above the equipment.
3. Where located in a building of Type III, Type IV or Type V construction designed in accordance with Section 510.2 or 510.4, attics not required by Item 1 to have sprinklers shall comply with one of the following if the roof assembly is located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access needed to meet the provisions in Section 503.
  - 3.1. Provide automatic sprinkler system protection.
  - 3.2. Construct the attic using noncombustible materials.
  - 3.3. Construct the attic using fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2.
  - 3.4. Fill the attic with noncombustible insulation.

The height of the roof assembly shall be determined by measuring the distance from the lowest required fire vehicle access road surface adjacent to the building to the eave of the highest pitched roof, the intersection of the highest roof to the exterior wall, or the top of the highest parapet, whichever yields the greatest distance. For the purpose of this measurement, required fire vehicle access roads shall include only those roads that are necessary for compliance with Section 503 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 903.3.1.3 NFPA 13D sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems installed in one- and two-family dwellings; Group R-3; Group R-4, Condition 1; and townhouses shall be permitted to be installed throughout in accordance with NFPA 13D *as amended in Chapter 35*.

**[F] 903.3.2 Quick-response and residential sprinklers.** Where automatic sprinkler systems are required by this code, quick-response or residential automatic sprinklers shall be installed in all of the following areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1 and their listings:

1. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing care recipient sleeping units in Group I-2 in accordance with this code.

2. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing gas fireplace appliances and decorative gas appliances in Group I-2.

3. Throughout all spaces within a smoke compartment containing treatment rooms in ambulatory care facilities.

4. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R occupancies.

5. Light-hazard occupancies as defined in NFPA 13.

**[F] 903.3.3 Obstructed locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall be installed with regard to obstructions that will delay activation or obstruct the water distribution pattern and shall be in accordance with the applicable automatic sprinkler system standard that is being used. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed in or under covered kiosks, displays, booths, concession stands, or equipment that exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Not less than a 3-foot (914 mm) clearance shall be maintained between automatic sprinklers and the top of piles of combustible fibers.

**Exception:** Kitchen equipment under exhaust hoods protected with a fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 904.

**[F] 903.3.4 Actuation.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be automatically actuated unless specifically provided for in this code.

**[F] 903.3.5 Water supplies.** Water supplies for automatic sprinkler systems shall comply with this section and the standards referenced in Section 903.3.1. The potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the *Health and Safety Code Section 13114.7*. For connections to public waterworks systems, the water supply test used for design of fire protection systems shall be adjusted to account for seasonal and daily pressure fluctuations based on information from the water supply authority and as approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 903.3.5.1 Domestic services.** Where the domestic service provides the water supply for the automatic sprinkler system, the supply shall be in accordance with this section.

**[F] 903.3.5.2 Residential combination services.** A single combination water supply shall be allowed provided that the domestic demand is added to the sprinkler demand as required by NFPA 13R.

**[F] 903.3.6 Hose threads.** Fire hose threads and fittings used in connection with automatic sprinkler systems shall be as prescribed by the fire code official.

**[F] 903.3.7 Fire department connections.** Fire department connections for automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in accordance with Section 912.

**[F] 903.3.8 Limited area sprinkler systems.** Limited area sprinkler systems shall be in accordance with the standards listed in Section 903.3.1 except as provided in Sections 903.3.8.1 through 903.3.8.5.

**903.3.8.1 Number of sprinklers.** Limited area sprinkler systems shall not exceed six sprinklers in any single fire area.

**903.3.8.2 Occupancy hazard classification.** Only areas classified by NFPA 13 as Light Hazard or Ordinary Hazard Group 1 shall be permitted to be protected by limited area sprinkler systems.

**903.3.8.3 Piping arrangement.** Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building with an automatic wet standpipe system, sprinklers shall be supplied by the standpipe system. Where a limited area sprinkler system is installed in a building without an automatic wet standpipe system, water shall be permitted to be supplied by the plumbing system provided that the plumbing system is capable of simultaneously supplying domestic and sprinkler demands.

**903.3.8.4 Supervision.** Control valves shall not be installed between the water supply and sprinklers unless the valves are of an approved indicating type that are supervised or secured in the open position.

**903.3.8.5 Calculations.** Hydraulic calculations in accordance with NFPA 13 shall be provided to demonstrate that the available water flow and pressure are adequate to supply all sprinklers installed in any single fire area with discharge densities corresponding to the hazard classification.

**[F] 903.3.9 Floor control valves.** *Floor control valves and waterflow detection assemblies shall be installed at each floor where any of the following occur:*

1. *Buildings where the floor level of the highest story is located more than 30 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access*
2. *Buildings that are four or more stories in height*
3. *Buildings that are two or more stories below the highest level of fire department vehicle access*

**Exception:** Group R-3 and R-3.1 occupancies floor control valves and waterflow detection assemblies shall not be required.

**[F] 903.4 Sprinkler system supervision and alarms.** Valves controlling the water supply for automatic sprinkler systems, pumps, tanks, water levels and temperatures, critical air pressures and waterflow switches on all sprinkler systems shall be electrically supervised by a listed fire alarm control unit.

#### Exceptions:

1. Automatic sprinkler systems protecting one- and two-family dwellings.
2. Limited area sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.3.8.
3. Automatic sprinkler systems installed in accordance with NFPA 13R where a common supply main is used to supply both domestic water and the automatic sprinkler system, and a separate shutoff valve for the automatic sprinkler system is not provided.
4. Jockey pump control valves that are sealed or locked in the open position.

5. Control valves to commercial kitchen hoods, paint spray booths or dip tanks that are sealed or locked in the open position.

6. Valves controlling the fuel supply to fire pump engines that are sealed or locked in the open position.

7. Trim valves to pressure switches in dry, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems that are sealed or locked in the open position.

8. Underground key or hub gate valves in roadway boxes.

**[F] 903.4.1 Monitoring.** Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be distinctly different and shall be automatically transmitted to an approved supervising station or, where approved by the fire code official, shall sound an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

**Exception:** Backflow prevention device test valves located in limited area sprinkler system supply piping shall be locked in the open position. In occupancies required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, the backflow preventer valves shall be electrically supervised by a tamper switch installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and separately annunciated.

**[F] 903.4.2 Alarms.** *One exterior approved audible device, located on the exterior of the building in an approved location, shall be connected to each automatic sprinkler system. Such sprinkler waterflow alarm devices shall be activated by water flow equivalent to the flow of a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system. Where a fire alarm system is installed, actuation of the automatic sprinkler system shall actuate the building fire alarm system. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required except when required by Section 907.*

**[F] 903.4.3 Floor control valves.** Approved supervised indicating control valves shall be provided at the point of connection to the riser on each floor in high-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.

**[F] 903.5 Testing and maintenance.** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the California Fire Code.

## SECTION 904 ALTERNATIVE AUTOMATIC FIRE-EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS

**[F] 904.1 General.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, other than automatic sprinkler systems, shall be designed, installed, inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this section and the applicable referenced standards.

**[F] 904.2 Where permitted.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems installed as an alternative to the required automatic sprinkler systems of Section 903 shall be approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 904.2.1 Restriction on using automatic sprinkler system exceptions or reductions.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall not be considered alternatives for the purposes of exceptions or reductions allowed for automatic sprinkler systems or by other requirements of this code.

**[F] 904.2.2 Commercial hood and duct systems.** Each required commercial kitchen exhaust hood and duct system required by Section 606 of the *California Fire Code* or Chapter 5 of the *California Mechanical Code* to have a Type I hood shall be protected with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system installed in accordance with this code.

**[F] 904.3 Installation.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed in accordance with this section.

**[F] 904.3.1 Electrical wiring.** Electrical wiring shall be in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.

**[F] 904.3.2 Actuation.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be automatically actuated and provided with a manual means of actuation in accordance with Section 904.11.1. Where more than one hazard could be simultaneously involved in fire due to their proximity, all hazards shall be protected by a single system designed to protect all hazards that could become involved.

**Exception:** Multiple systems shall be permitted to be installed if they are designed to operate simultaneously.

**[F] 904.3.3 System interlocking.** Automatic equipment interlocks with fuel shutoffs, ventilation controls, door closers, window shutters, conveyor openings, smoke and heat vents and other features necessary for proper operation of the fire-extinguishing system shall be provided as required by the design and installation standard utilized for the hazard.

**[F] 904.3.4 Alarms and warning signs.** Where alarms are required to indicate the operation of automatic fire-extinguishing systems, distinctive audible and visible alarms and warning signs shall be provided to warn of pending agent discharge. Where exposure to automatic-extinguishing agents poses a hazard to persons and a delay is required to ensure the evacuation of occupants before agent discharge, a separate warning signal shall be provided to alert occupants once agent discharge has begun. Audible signals shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.

**[F] 904.3.5 Monitoring.** Where a building fire alarm system is installed, automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be monitored by the building fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

**[F] 904.4 Inspection and testing.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the provisions of this section prior to acceptance.

**[F] 904.4.1 Inspection.** Prior to conducting final acceptance tests, all of the following items shall be inspected:

1. Hazard specification for consistency with design hazard.

2. Type, location and spacing of automatic- and manual-initiating devices.
3. Size, placement and position of nozzles or discharge orifices.
4. Location and identification of audible and visible alarm devices.
5. Identification of devices with proper designations.
6. Operating instructions.

**[F] 904.4.2 Alarm testing.** Notification appliances, connections to fire alarm systems and connections to approved supervising stations shall be tested in accordance with this section and Section 907 to verify proper operation.

**[F] 904.4.2.1 Audible and visible signals.** The audibility and visibility of notification appliances signaling agent discharge or system operation, where required, shall be verified.

**[F] 904.4.3 Monitor testing.** Connections to protected premises and supervising station fire alarm systems shall be tested to verify proper identification and retransmission of alarms from automatic fire-extinguishing systems.

**[F] 904.5 Wet-chemical systems.** Wet-chemical extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5* and NFPA 17A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

**[F] 904.6 Dry-chemical systems.** Dry-chemical extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5* and NFPA 17 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

**[F] 904.7 Foam systems.** Foam-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5*, NFPA 11 and NFPA 16 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

**[F] 904.8 Carbon dioxide systems.** Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5*, NFPA 12 and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

**[F] 904.9 Halon systems.** Halogenated extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5*, NFPA 12A and their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

**[F] 904.10 Clean-agent systems.** Clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5*, NFPA 2001 and

their listing. Records of inspections and testing shall be maintained.

**[F] 904.11 Automatic water mist systems.** Automatic water mist systems shall be permitted in applications that are consistent with the applicable listing or approvals and shall comply with Sections 904.11.1 through 904.11.3.

**[F] 904.11.1 Design and installation requirements.** Automatic water mist systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 904.11.1.1 through 904.11.1.4.

**[F] 904.11.1.1 General.** Automatic water mist systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 750 and the manufacturer's instructions.

**[F] 904.11.1.2 Actuation.** Automatic water mist systems shall be automatically actuated.

**[F] 904.11.1.3 Water supply protection.** Connections to a potable water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with the *California Plumbing Code*.

**[F] 904.11.1.4 Secondary water supply.** Where a secondary water supply is required for an automatic sprinkler system, an automatic water mist system shall be provided with an approved secondary water supply.

**[F] 904.11.2 Water mist system supervision and alarms.** Supervision and alarms shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.

**[F] 904.11.2.1 Monitoring.** Monitoring shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.1.

**[F] 904.11.2.2 Alarms.** Alarms shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.2.

**[F] 904.11.2.3 Floor control valves.** Floor control valves shall be provided as required for automatic sprinkler systems in accordance with Section 903.4.3.

**[F] 904.11.3 Testing and maintenance.** Automatic water mist systems shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5* and *California Fire Code*.

\*\*  
[F] 904.12 Aerosol fire-extinguishing systems. Aerosol fire-extinguishing systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 2010, and their listing.

Such devices and appurtenances shall be listed and installed in compliance with manufacturers' instructions.

\*\*  
**[F] 904.13 Commercial cooking systems.** Commercial cooking equipment that produces grease-laden vapors shall be provided with a Type I Hood, in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*, and an automatic fire extinguishing system that is listed and labeled for its intended use as follows:

1. Wet chemical extinguishing system, complying with UL 300.

## 2. Carbon dioxide extinguishing systems.

## 3. Automatic fire sprinkler systems.

All existing dry chemical and wet chemical extinguishing systems shall comply with UL 300.

**Exception:** Public school kitchens, without deep-fat fryers, shall be upgraded to a UL 300-compliant system during state-funded modernization projects that are under the jurisdiction of the Division of the State Architect.

All systems shall be installed in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*, appropriate adopted standards, their listing and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exception:** Factory-built commercial cooking recirculating systems that are tested in accordance with UL 710B and listed, labeled and installed in accordance with Section 304.1 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 904.13.1 Manual system operation.** A manual actuation device shall be located at or near a means of egress from the cooking area not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from the kitchen exhaust system. The manual actuation device shall be installed not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) or less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the floor and shall clearly identify the hazard protected. The manual actuation shall require a maximum force of 40 pounds (178 N) and a maximum movement of 14 inches (356 mm) to actuate the fire suppression system.

**Exception:** Automatic sprinkler systems shall not be required to be equipped with manual actuation means.

**[F] 904.13.2 System interconnection.** The actuation of the fire suppression system shall automatically shut down the fuel or electrical power supply to the cooking equipment. The fuel and electrical supply reset shall be manual.

**[F] 904.13.3 Carbon dioxide systems.** Where carbon dioxide systems are used, there shall be a nozzle at the top of the ventilating duct. Additional nozzles that are symmetrically arranged to give uniform distribution shall be installed within vertical ducts exceeding 20 feet (6096 mm) and horizontal ducts exceeding 50 feet (15 240 mm). Dampers shall be installed at either the top or the bottom of the duct and shall be arranged to operate automatically upon activation of the fire-extinguishing system. Where the damper is installed at the top of the duct, the top nozzle shall be immediately below the damper. Automatic carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems shall be sufficiently sized to protect against all hazards venting through a common duct simultaneously.

**[F] 904.13.3.1 Ventilation system.** Commercial-type cooking equipment protected by an automatic carbon dioxide-extinguishing system shall be arranged to shut off the ventilation system upon activation.

**[F] 904.13.4 Special provisions for automatic sprinkler systems.** Automatic sprinkler systems protecting commercial-type cooking equipment shall be supplied from a separate, indicating-type control valve that is identified. Access to the control valve shall be provided.

**[F] 904.13.4.1 Listed sprinklers.** Sprinklers used for the protection of fryers shall be tested in accordance with UL 199E, listed for that application and installed in accordance with their listing.

\* | **[F] 904.14 Domestic cooking facilities.** Cooktops and ranges installed in the following occupancies shall be protected in accordance with Section 904.14.1:

1. In Group R-2.1 occupancies where domestic cooking facilities are installed in accordance with Section 420.9.
2. In Group I-2 occupancies where domestic cooking facilities are installed in accordance with Section 407.2.7.
3. In Group R-2 college dormitories where domestic cooking facilities are installed in accordance with Section 420.11.

**[F] 904.14.1 Protection from fire.** Cooktops and ranges shall be protected in accordance with Section 904.14.1.1 or 904.14.1.2.

**[F] 904.14.1.1 Automatic fire-extinguishing system.** The domestic recirculating or exterior vented cooking hood provided over the cooktop or range shall be equipped with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with the following:

1. The automatic fire-extinguishing system shall be of a type recognized for protection of domestic cooking equipment. Preengineered automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 300A and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Manual actuation of the fire-extinguishing system shall be provided in accordance with Section 904.13.1.
3. Interconnection of the fuel and electric power supply shall be in accordance with Section 904.13.2.

**[F] 904.14.1.2 Ignition prevention.** Cooktops and ranges shall include burners that have been tested and listed to prevent ignition of cooking oil with burners turned on to their maximum heat settings and allowed to operate for 30 minutes.

## SECTION 905 STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

**[F] 905.1 General.** Standpipe systems shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 905.2 through 905.11. In buildings used for high-piled combustible storage, fire protection shall be in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 905.2 Installation standard.** Standpipe systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 14 as amended in Chapter 35. Fire department connections for standpipe systems shall be in accordance with Section 912.

**[F] 905.3 Required installations.** Standpipe systems shall be installed where required by Sections 905.3.1 through

905.3.11.1. Standpipe systems are allowed to be combined with automatic sprinkler systems.

**Exception:** Standpipe systems are not required in Group R-3 occupancies.

**[F] 905.3.1 Height.** In other than Group R-3 and R-3.1 occupancies, Class III standpipe systems shall be installed throughout each floor where any of the following occur:

1. Buildings where the floor level of the highest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
2. Buildings that are four or more stories in height.
3. Buildings where the floor level of the lowest story is located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) below the highest level of fire department vehicle access.
4. Buildings that are two or more stories below the highest level of fire department vehicle access.

### Exceptions:

1. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Class I standpipes are allowed in Group B and E occupancies.
3. Class I standpipes are allowed in parking garages.
4. Class I standpipes are allowed in basements equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.
5. Class I standpipes are allowed in buildings where occupant-use hose lines will not be utilized by trained personnel or the fire department.
6. In determining the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, it shall not be required to consider either of the following:
  - 6.1. Recessed loading docks for four vehicles or less.
  - 6.2. Conditions where topography makes access from the fire department vehicle to the building impractical or impossible.

**[F] 905.3.2 Group A.** Class I automatic wet standpipes shall be provided in nonsprinklered Group A buildings having an occupant load exceeding 1,000 persons.

### Exceptions:

1. Open-air-seating spaces without enclosed spaces.
2. Class I automatic dry and semiautomatic dry standpipes or manual wet standpipes are allowed in buildings that are not high-rise buildings.

**[F] 905.3.3 Covered and open mall buildings.** Covered mall and open mall buildings shall be equipped throughout with a standpipe system where required by Section 905.3.1. Mall buildings not required to be equipped with a standpipe system by Section 905.3.1 shall be equipped

with Class I hose connections connected to the automatic sprinkler system sized to deliver water at 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) at the hydraulically most remote hose connection while concurrently supplying the automatic sprinkler system demand. The standpipe system shall be designed to not exceed a 50 pounds per square inch (psi) (345 kPa) residual pressure loss with a flow of 250 gallons per minute (946.4 L/min) from the fire department connection to the hydraulically most remote hose connection. Hose connections shall be provided at each of the following locations:

1. Within the mall at the entrance to each exit passageway or corridor.
2. At each floor-level landing within interior exit stairways opening directly on the mall.
3. At exterior public entrances to the mall of a covered mall building.
4. At public entrances at the perimeter line of an open mall building.
5. At other locations as necessary so that the distance to reach all portions of a tenant space does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) from a hose connection.

**[F] 905.3.4 Stages.** Stages greater than 1,000 square feet in area ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be equipped with a Class III wet standpipe system with  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch and  $2\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm and 64 mm) hose connections on each side of the stage.

**Exception:** Where the building or area is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system, a  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) hose connection shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13 or in accordance with NFPA 14 for Class II or III standpipes.

**[F] 905.3.4.1 Hose and cabinet.** The  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) hose connections shall be equipped with sufficient lengths of  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) hose to provide fire protection for the stage area. Hose connections shall be equipped with an approved adjustable fog nozzle and be mounted in a cabinet or on a rack.

**[F] 905.3.5 Underground buildings.** Underground buildings shall be equipped throughout with a Class I automatic wet or manual wet standpipe system.

**[F] 905.3.6 Heliports and heliports.** Buildings with a rooftop helistop or heliport shall be equipped with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the helistop or heliport is located in accordance with Section 2007.5 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 905.3.7 Marinas and boatyards.** Standpipes in marinas and boatyards shall comply with Chapter 36 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 905.3.8 Landscaped roofs.** Buildings or structures that have landscaped roofs and that are equipped with a standpipe system shall have the standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the landscaped roof is located.

**[F] 905.3.9 Smokeproof enclosures.** For smokeproof enclosures see Section 909.20.

**[F] 905.3.10 Group I-3.** A housing pod within housing units where 50 or more inmates are restrained shall be provided with Class I wet standpipes. In addition, Class I wet standpipes shall be located so that it will not be necessary to extend hose lines through interlocking security doors and any doors in smoke-barrier walls, horizontal fire walls or fire barrier walls. Standpipes located in housing units may be placed in secured pipe chases.

**905.3.11 Fixed-guideway and passenger rail transit systems.** Fixed-guideway and passenger rail transit systems shall be provided with a Class I standpipe system in accordance with this section.

**905.3.11.1 Underground stations.** Underground stations shall be provided with an automatic Class I standpipe system.

**905.3.11.2 All other stations.** All other stations shall be provided with a Class I.

**Exception:** Open at-grade stations with unrestricted fire department access need not be provided with a standpipe system.

**[F] 905.4 Location of Class I standpipe hose connections.** Class I standpipe hose connections shall be provided in all of the following locations:

1. In every required interior exit stairway, a hose connection shall be provided for each story above and below grade plane. Hose connections shall be located at the main floor landing unless otherwise approved by the fire code official. See Section 909.20.2.3 for additional provisions in smokeproof enclosures.

**Exception:** A single hose connection shall be permitted to be installed in the open corridor or open breezeway between open stairs that are not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm) apart.

2. On each side of the wall adjacent to the exit opening of a horizontal exit.

**Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to a horizontal exit are reachable from an interior exit stairway hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose as measured along the path of travel, a hose connection shall not be required at the horizontal exit.

3. In every exit passageway, at the entrance from the exit passageway to other areas of a building.

**Exception:** Where floor areas adjacent to an exit passageway are reachable from an interior exit stairway hose connection by a 30-foot (9144 mm) hose stream from a nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose, a hose connection shall not be required at the entrance from the exit passageway to other areas of the building.

4. In covered mall buildings, adjacent to each exterior public entrance to the mall and adjacent to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall. In open mall buildings, adjacent to each public entrance to the mall at the perimeter line and adjacent

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

to each entrance from an exit passageway or exit corridor to the mall.

- 5. Where the roof has a slope less than 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33.3-percent slope), a hose connection shall be located to serve the roof or at the highest landing of an interior exit stairway with access to the roof provided in accordance with Section 1011.12.
- 6. Where the most remote portion of a floor or story is more than 150 feet (45 720 mm) from a hose connection, the fire code official is authorized to require that additional hose connections be provided in approved locations. *The distances from a hose connection shall be measured along the path of travel.*

**[F] 905.4.1 Protection.** Risers and laterals of Class I standpipe systems not located within an interior exit stairway shall be protected by a degree of fire resistance equal to that required for vertical enclosures in the building in which they are located.

**Exception:** In buildings equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system, laterals that are not located within an interior exit stairway are not required to be enclosed within fire-resistance-rated construction.

**[F] 905.4.2 Interconnection.** In buildings where more than one standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

**[F] 905.5 Location of Class II standpipe hose connections.** Class II standpipe hose connections located so that all portions of the building are within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a listed variable stream fog nozzle attached to 100 feet (30 480 mm) of hose. Class II standpipe hose connections shall be located where they will have ready access.

**[F] 905.5.1 Groups A-1 and A-2.** In Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies having occupant loads exceeding 1,000 persons, hose connections shall be located on each side of any stage, on each side of the rear of the auditorium, on each side of the balcony and on each tier of dressing rooms.

**[F] 905.5.2 Protection.** Fire-resistance-rated protection of risers and laterals of Class II standpipe systems is not required.

**[F] 905.5.3 Class II system 1-inch hose.** A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) hose shall be allowed to be used for hose stations in light-hazard occupancies where investigated and listed for this service and where approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 905.6 Location of Class III standpipe hose connections.** Class III standpipe systems shall have hose connections located as required for Class I standpipes in Section 905.4 and shall have Class II hose connections as required in Section 905.5.

**[F] 905.6.1 Protection.** Risers and laterals of Class III standpipe systems shall be protected as required for Class I systems in accordance with Section 905.4.1.

**[F] 905.6.2 Interconnection.** In buildings where more than one Class III standpipe is provided, the standpipes shall be interconnected in accordance with NFPA 14.

**[F] 905.7 Cabinets.** Cabinets containing fire-fighting equipment such as standpipes, fire hoses, fire extinguishers or fire department valves shall not be blocked from use or obscured from view.

**[F] 905.7.1 Cabinet equipment identification.** Cabinets shall be identified in an approved manner by a permanently attached sign with letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high in a color that contrasts with the background color, indicating the equipment contained therein.

### Exceptions:

1. Doors not large enough to accommodate a written sign shall be marked with a permanently attached pictogram of the equipment contained therein.
2. Doors that have either an approved visual identification clear glass panel or a complete glass door panel are not required to be marked.

**[F] 905.7.2 Locking cabinet doors.** Cabinets shall be unlocked.

### Exceptions:

1. Visual identification panels of glass or other approved transparent frangible material that is easily broken and allows access.
2. Approved locking arrangements.
3. Group I-3 and in mental health areas of Group I-2 occupancies.

**[F] 905.8 Dry standpipes.** Dry standpipes shall not be installed.

**Exception:** Where subject to freezing and in accordance with NFPA 14.

**[F] 905.9 Valve supervision.** Valves controlling water supplies shall be supervised in the open position so that a change in the normal position of the valve will generate a supervisory signal at the supervising station required by Section 903.4. Where a fire alarm system is provided, a signal shall be transmitted to the control unit.

### Exceptions:

1. Valves to underground key or hub valves in roadway boxes do not require supervision.
2. Valves locked in the normal position and inspected as provided in this code in buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system.

**[F] 905.10 During construction.** Standpipe systems required during construction and demolition operations shall be provided in accordance with Section 3311.

**[F] 905.11 Locking standpipe outlet caps.** The fire code official is authorized to require locking caps on the outlets on standpipes where the responding fire department carries key wrenches for the removal that are compatible with locking FDC connection caps.

## SECTION 906 PORTABLE FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

**[F] 906.1 Where required.** Portable fire extinguishers shall be installed in all of the following locations:

1. In Group A, B, E, F, H, I, L, M, R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R.3.1, R-4 and S occupancies.
- **Exception:** In Group R-2 occupancies, portable fire extinguishers shall be required only in locations specified in Items 2 through 6 where each dwelling unit is provided with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum rating of 1-A:10-B:C.
2. Within 30 feet (9144 mm) distance of travel from commercial cooking equipment and from domestic cooking equipment in Group R-2 college dormitory occupancies.
3. In areas where flammable or combustible liquids are stored, used or dispensed.
4. On each floor of structures under construction, except Group R-3 occupancies, in accordance with Section 3315.1 of the *California Fire Code*.
5. Where required by the *California Fire Code* sections indicated in Table 906.1.
6. Special-hazard areas, including but not limited to laboratories, computer rooms and generator rooms, where required by the fire code official.
7. *Large and small family day-care homes shall be equipped with a portable fire extinguisher having a minimum 2A:10B:C rating.*
8. *Where required by California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3.*
9. *Within 30 feet (9144 mm) of domestic cooking equipment located in a Group I-2.*

→ **[F] 906.2 General requirements.** Portable fire extinguishers shall be selected and installed in accordance with this section and *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3*.

**Exceptions:**

1. The distance of travel to reach an extinguisher shall not apply to the spectator seating portions of Group A-5 occupancies.
2. In Group I-3 and in mental health areas of Group I-2, portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be located at staff locations.

**[F] 906.3 Size and distribution.** The size and distribution of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.3.1 through 906.3.4.

**[F] TABLE 906.1  
ADDITIONAL REQUIRED PORTABLE  
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS IN THE CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE**

IFC SECTION	SUBJECT
303.5	Asphalt kettles
307.5	Open burning
308.1.3	Open flames—torches
309.4	Powered industrial trucks
1204.10	Portable Generators
2005.2	Aircraft towing vehicles
2005.3	Aircraft welding apparatus
2005.4	Aircraft fuel-servicing tank vehicles
2005.5	Aircraft hydrant fuel-servicing vehicles
2005.6	Aircraft fuel-dispensing stations
2007.7	Heliports and helistops
2108.4	Dry cleaning plants
2305.5	Motor fuel-dispensing facilities
2310.6.4	Marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities
2311.6	Repair garages
2404.4.1	Spray-finishing operations
2405.4.2	Dip-tank operations
2406.4.2	Powder-coating areas
2804.3	Lumberyards/woodworking facilities
2808.8	Recycling facilities
2809.5	Exterior lumber storage
2903.5	Organic-coating areas
3006.3	Industrial ovens
3107.9	Tents and membrane structures
3206.10	High-piled storage
3315.1	Buildings under construction or demolition
3318.3	Roofing operations
3408.2	Tire rebuilding/storage
3504.2.6	Welding and other hot work
3604.4	Marinas
3703.6	Combustible fibers
5703.2.1	Flammable and combustible liquids, general
5704.3.3.1	Indoor storage of flammable and combustible liquids
5704.3.7.5.2	Liquid storage rooms for flammable and combustible liquids
5705.4.9	Solvent distillation units
5706.2.7	Farms and construction sites—flammable and combustible liquids storage
5706.4.10.1	Bulk plants and terminals for flammable and combustible liquids
5706.5.4.5	Commercial, industrial, governmental or manufacturing establishments—fuel dispensing
5706.6.4	Tank vehicles for flammable and combustible liquids
5906.5.7	Flammable solids
6108.2	LP-gas

**[F] TABLE 906.3(1)**  
**FIRE EXTINGUISHERS FOR CLASS A FIRE HAZARDS**

	LIGHT (Low) HAZARD OCCUPANCY	ORDINARY (Moderate) HAZARD OCCUPANCY	EXTRA (High) HAZARD OCCUPANCY
Minimum-rated single extinguisher	2-A <sup>c</sup>	2-A	4-A <sup>a</sup>
Maximum floor area per unit of A	3,000 square feet	1,500 square feet	1,000 square feet
Maximum floor area for extinguisher <sup>b</sup>	11,250 square feet	11,250 square feet	11,250 square feet
Maximum distance of travel to extinguisher	75 feet	75 feet	75 feet

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929m<sup>2</sup>, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

- a. Two 2½-gallon water-type extinguishers shall be deemed the equivalent of one 4-A rated extinguisher.
- b. *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3* concerning application of the maximum floor area criteria.
- c. Two water-type extinguishers each with a 1-A rating shall be deemed the equivalent of one 2-A rated extinguisher for Light (Low) Hazard Occupancies.

**[F] TABLE 906.3(2)**  
**FIRE EXTINGUISHERS FOR FLAMMABLE OR COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS WITH DEPTHS LESS THAN OR EQUAL TO 0.25 INCH<sup>a</sup>**

TYPE OF HAZARD	BASIC MINIMUM EXTINGUISHER RATING	MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF TRAVEL TO EXTINGUISHERS (feet)
Light (Low)	5-B	30
	10-B	50
Ordinary (Moderate)	10-B	30
	20-B	50
Extra (High)	40-B	30
	80-B	50

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. For requirements on water-soluble flammable liquids and alternative sizing criteria, see Section 5.5 of *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3*.

**[F] 906.3.1 Class A fire hazards.** The minimum sizes and distribution of portable fire extinguishers for occupancies that involve primarily Class A fire hazards shall comply with Table 906.3(1).

**[F] 906.3.2 Class B fire hazards.** Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving flammable or combustible liquids with depths less than or equal to 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) shall be selected and placed in accordance with Table 906.3(2).

Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving flammable or combustible liquids with a depth of greater than 0.25-inch (6.4 mm) shall be selected and placed in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3*.

**[F] 906.3.3 Class C fire hazards.** Portable fire extinguishers for Class C fire hazards shall be selected and placed on the basis of the anticipated Class A or B hazard.

**[F] 906.3.4 Class D fire hazards.** Portable fire extinguishers for occupancies involving combustible metals

shall be selected and placed in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3*.

**[F] 906.4 Cooking equipment fires.** Fire extinguishers provided for the protection of cooking equipment shall be of an approved type compatible with the automatic fire-extinguishing system agent. Cooking equipment involving solid fuels or vegetable or animal oils and fats shall be protected by a Class K-rated portable extinguisher in accordance with Sections 906.1, Item 2, 906.4.1 and 906.4.2 of the *California Fire Code*, as applicable.

**[F] 906.5 Conspicuous location.** Portable fire extinguishers shall be located in conspicuous locations where they will have *ready access* and be immediately available for use. These locations shall be along normal paths of travel, unless the fire code official determines that the hazard posed indicates the need for placement away from normal paths of travel.

**[F] 906.6 Unobstructed and unobscured.** Portable fire extinguishers shall not be obstructed or obscured from view. In rooms or areas in which visual obstruction cannot be completely avoided, means shall be provided to indicate the locations of extinguishers.

**[F] 906.7 Hangers and brackets.** Hand-held portable fire extinguishers, not housed in cabinets, shall be installed on the hangers or brackets supplied. Hangers or brackets shall be securely anchored to the mounting surface in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**[F] 906.8 Cabinets.** Cabinets used to house portable fire extinguishers shall not be locked.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where portable fire extinguishers subject to malicious use or damage are provided with a means of ready access.
2. In Group I-3 occupancies and in mental health areas in Group I-2 occupancies, access to portable fire extinguishers shall be permitted to be locked or to be located in staff locations provided that the staff has keys.

**[F] 906.9 Extinguisher installation.** The installation of portable fire extinguishers shall be in accordance with Sections 906.9.1 through 906.9.3.

**[F] 906.9.1 Extinguishers weighing 40 pounds or less.** Portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight not exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor.

**[F] 906.9.2 Extinguishers weighing more than 40 pounds.** Hand-held portable fire extinguishers having a gross weight exceeding 40 pounds (18 kg) shall be installed so that their tops are not more than 3.5 feet (1067 mm) above the floor.

**[F] 906.9.3 Floor clearance.** The clearance between the floor and the bottom of installed hand-held portable fire extinguishers shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**[F] 906.10 Wheeled units.** Wheeled fire extinguishers shall be conspicuously located in a designated location.

## SECTION 907

### FIRE ALARM AND DETECTION SYSTEMS

**[F] 907.1 General.** This section covers the application, installation, performance and maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components.

**[F] 907.1.1 Construction documents.** Construction documents for fire alarm systems shall be of sufficient clarity to indicate the location, nature and extent of the work proposed and show in detail that it will conform to the provisions of this code, the *California Fire Code*; and relevant laws, ordinances, rules and regulations, as determined by the fire code official.

**[F] 907.1.2 Fire alarm shop drawings.** Shop drawings for fire alarm systems shall be prepared in accordance with NFPA 72 and submitted for review and approval prior to system installation.

**[F] 907.1.3 Equipment.** Systems and components shall be *California State Fire Marshal* listed and approved in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1* for the purpose for which they are installed.

**[F] 907.1.4 Fire-walls and fire barrier walls.** For the purpose of Section 907 fire walls and fire barrier walls shall not define separate buildings.

**[F] 907.1.5 Fire alarm use.** A fire alarm system shall not be used for any purpose other than fire warning or mass notification and where permitted by NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.2 Where required—new buildings and structures.** An approved fire alarm system installed in accordance with the provisions of this code and NFPA 72 shall be provided in new buildings and structures in accordance with Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.29 and provide occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5, unless other requirements are provided by another section of this code.

Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box shall be provided in an approved location to initiate a fire alarm signal for fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices. Where other sections of this code allow elimination of fire alarm boxes due to sprinklers, or automatic fire alarm systems, a single fire alarm box shall be installed at a location approved by the enforcing agency.

**Exceptions:**

1. The manual fire alarm box is not required for fire alarm control units dedicated to elevator recall control, supervisory service and fire sprinkler monitoring.
2. The manual fire alarm box is not required for Group R-2 occupancies unless required by the fire code official to provide a means for fire watch personnel to initiate an alarm during a sprinkler system impairment event. Where provided, the manual fire alarm box shall not be located in an area that is open to the public.
3. The manual fire alarm box is not required to be installed when approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 907.2.1 Group A.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group A occupancies where the occupant load due to the assembly occupancy is 300 or more, or where the Group A occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge. Group A occupancies not separated from one another in accordance with Section 707.3.10 shall be considered as a single occupancy for the purposes of applying this section. Portions of Group E occupancies occupied for assembly purposes with an occupant load of less than 1,000, shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

**Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

*Every Group A building used for educational purposes shall be provided with a manual or automatic fire alarm system. This provision shall apply to, but shall not necessarily be limited to, every community college and university.*

**Exception:** Privately owned trade or vocational schools or any firm or company which provides educational facilities and instructions for its employees.

**[F] 907.2.1.1 System initiation in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000 or more.** Activation of the fire alarm in Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 1,000 or more shall initiate a signal using an emergency voice/alarm communications system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2. *Group A occupancies with an occupant load of 10,000 or more, see Section 907.2.1.3.*

**Exception:** Where approved, the prerecorded announcement is allowed to be manually deactivated for a period of time, not to exceed 3 minutes, for the sole purpose of allowing a live voice announcement from an approved, constantly attended location.

**[F] 907.2.1.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.** Stadiums, arenas and grandstands required to caption audible public announcements shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.4.

**907.2.1.3 Public address system.** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13108.9, for all buildings or structures constructed on or after July 1, 1991, which are intended for public assemblies of 10,000 or more persons a public address system with an emergency backup power system shall be required.

**[F] 907.2.2 Group B.** A manual fire alarm system, which activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5, shall be installed in Group B occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group B occupant load of all floors is 500 or more.

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

2. The Group B occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.
3. The fire area contains an ambulatory care facility.
4. *Group B occupancies containing educational facilities, see Section 907.2.2.2.*

**Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

**[F] 907.2.2.1 Ambulatory care facilities.** Fire areas containing ambulatory care facilities shall be provided with an electronically supervised automatic smoke detection system installed within the ambulatory care facility and in public use areas outside of tenant spaces, including public corridors and elevator lobbies.

**Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, provided that the occupant notification appliances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler waterflow.

**907.2.2.2 Group B Educational facilities.** Every Group B building used for educational purposes shall be provided with a manual or automatic fire alarm system. This provision shall apply to, but shall not necessarily be limited to, every community college and university.

**Exception:** Privately owned trade or vocational schools or any firm or company which provides educational facilities and instructions for its employees.

**[F] 907.2.3 Group E.** A manual and automatic fire alarm system that initiates the occupant notification signal utilizing an emergency voice/alarm communication system meeting the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2 and installed in accordance with Section 907.6 shall be installed in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 50 or more persons or containing more than one classroom or one or more rooms used for Group E or I-4 childcare purposes in accordance with this section. Where automatic sprinkler systems or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system. One additional manual fire alarm box shall be located at the administration office or location approved by the AHJ.

### Exceptions:

1. For public school state funded construction projects see Section 907.2.29.
2. For public schools see Section 907.2.3.7.
3. For private schools see Section 907.2.3.8.

**907.2.3.1 System connection.** Where more than one fire alarm control unit is used at the school campus,

they shall be interconnected and shall operate all notification appliances.

**Exception:** Interconnection of fire alarm control units is not required when all the following are provided:

1. Buildings that are separated a minimum of 20 feet (6096 mm) and in accordance with the California Building Code; and
2. There is a method of two way communication between each classroom and the school administrative office approved by the fire enforcing agency; and
3. A method of manual activation of each fire alarm system is provided.

**907.2.3.2 Assemblies located within a Group E occupancy.** Assembly occupancies with an occupant load of less than 1,000 and located within a Group E occupancy campus or building shall be provided with a fire alarm system as required for the Group E occupancy.

**907.2.3.3 Notification.** The fire alarm system notification shall comply with the requirements of Section 907.5.

**907.2.3.4 Annunciation.** Annunciation of the fire alarm system shall comply with the requirements of Section 907.6.3.1.

**907.2.3.5 Monitoring.** School fire alarm systems shall be monitored in accordance with Section 907.6.6.2.

**907.2.3.6 Automatic fire alarm system.** Automatic detection shall be provided in accordance with this section.

**907.2.3.6.1 Smoke detectors.** Smoke detectors shall be installed at the ceiling of every room and in "ceiling-plenums" utilized for environmental air. Where the ceiling is attached directly to the underside of the roof structure, smoke detectors shall be installed on the ceiling only.

**Exception:** Where the environment or ambient conditions exceed smoke detector installation guidelines; heat detectors or fire sprinklers shall be used.

**907.2.3.6.2 Heat detectors.** Heat detectors shall be installed in combustible spaces where sprinklers or smoke detectors are not installed.

**907.2.3.7 Public school campuses.** An automatic fire alarm system in compliance with Section 907.2.3 shall be provided in new buildings for all occupancies on Kindergarten through 12th grade public school campuses.

### Exceptions:

1. A manual fire alarm system may be provided for a relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary founda-

*tion in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. Also see CCR, Title 24, Part 1, California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.*

2. A fire alarm system is not required for detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include but not be limited to a:

*Concession Stand  
Press Box  
Restroom Facility  
Shade Structure  
Snack Bar  
Storage Building  
Ticket Booth*

**907.2.3.8 Private schools.** An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in new buildings of private schools.

**Exception:** Automatic detection devices are not required where an approved automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate on sprinkler water flow and manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

**907.2.3.9 Day-care, Group E.**

**907.2.3.9.1** An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all buildings used as or containing a Group E day-care.

**Exception:** Automatic detection devices are not required where an approved automatic sprinkler system is installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will activate on sprinkler water flow and manual activation is provided from a normally occupied location.

**907.2.3.9.2** Smoke detectors shall be installed in every room used for sleeping or napping.

**907.2.3.10 Day-care, Group E or Group I-4 located on a public school campus.** An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided in all buildings used as or containing a Group E or Group I-4 day-care.

**[F] 907.2.4 Group F.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group F occupancies where both of the following conditions exist:

1. The Group F occupancy is two or more stories in height.
2. The Group F occupancy has a combined occupant load of 500 or more above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

**Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appli-

ances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

**[F] 907.2.5 Group H.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group H-5 occupancies and in occupancies used for the manufacture of organic coatings. An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed for highly toxic gases, organic peroxides and oxidizers in accordance with Chapters 60, 62 and 63, respectively, of the *California Fire Code*.

**907.2.5.1 Group H occupancies located on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be required on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier and at each exit on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**[F] 907.2.6 Group I.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group I occupancies. An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.2.6.1, 907.2.6.2 and 907.2.6.3.3.

**Exceptions:**

1. Large family day-care.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes in sleeping units of Group I-1 and I-2 occupancies shall not be required at exits if located at all care providers' control stations or other constantly attended staff locations, provided that such manual fire alarm boxes are visible and provided with ready access, and the distances of travel required in Section 907.4.2.1 are not exceeded.
3. Occupant notification systems are not required to be activated where private mode signaling installed in accordance with NFPA 72 is approved by the fire code official and staff evacuation responsibilities are included in the fire safety and evacuation plan required by Section 404 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 907.2.6.1 Reserved.**

**[F] 907.2.6.2 Group I-2 and Group I-2.1.** A manual and automatic fire alarm system shall be installed in Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies. Where automatic fire suppression systems or smoke detectors are installed, such systems or detectors shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

**Exception:** Where an entire facility is used for the housing of persons, none of whom are physically or mentally handicapped or nonambulatory, and are between the ages of 18 and 64, the buildings or structures comprising such facility shall be exempt from the provisions of this subsection relating to the installation of an automatic fire alarm system.

**907.2.6.2.1 Notification.** The fire alarm notification system shall be in accordance with Section 907.5.2.5.

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

**907.2.6.2.2 Automatic fire detection.** Smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with this section.

1. In patient and client sleeping rooms. Actuation of such detectors shall cause a visual display on the corridor side of the room in which the detector is located and shall cause an audible and visual alarm at the respective nurse station. A nurse call system listed for this function is an acceptable means of providing the audible and visual alarm at the respective nurse station and corridor room display. Operation of the smoke detector shall not include any alarm verification feature.

**Exception:** In patient and client rooms equipped with existing automatic door closers having integral smoke detector, the integral detector is allowed to substitute for the room smoke detector, provided it meets all the required alerting functions.

2. Group I-2 nurse stations. A minimum of one (1) smoke detector shall be installed at the nurse station and centrally located.
3. In waiting areas and corridors onto which they open, in the same smoke compartment, in accordance with Section 407.2.1.
4. In areas where patients are restrained, smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces of smoke compartments and in adjacent smoke compartments where occupants of those compartments utilize the same means of egress.

**[F] 907.2.6.3 Group I-3 occupancies.** Group I-3 occupancies shall be equipped with a manual fire alarm system and automatic smoke detection system installed for alerting staff.

**Exception:** An automatic smoke detection system is not required within temporary holding cells.

**[F] 907.2.6.3.1 System initiation.** Actuation of an automatic fire-extinguishing system, automatic sprinkler system, a manual fire alarm box or a fire detector shall initiate an approved fire alarm signal that automatically notifies staff.

**[F] 907.2.6.3.2 Manual fire alarm boxes.** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required to be located in accordance with Section 907.4.2 where the fire alarm boxes are provided at staff-attended locations having direct supervision over areas where manual fire alarm boxes have been omitted.

**[F] 907.2.6.3.2.1 Manual fire alarm boxes in detainee areas.** Manual fire alarm boxes are allowed to be locked in areas occupied by detainees, provided that staff members are present within the subject area and have keys readily available to operate the manual fire alarm boxes.

**[F] 907.2.6.3.3 Automatic smoke detection system.**

An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout resident housing areas, including sleeping units and contiguous day rooms, group activity spaces and other common spaces normally open to inmates.

**Exceptions:**

1. Other approved smoke detection arrangements may be used to prevent damage or tampering or for other purposes provided the function of detecting any fire is fulfilled and the location of the detectors is such that the speed of detection will be equivalent to that provided by the spacing and location required in accordance with NFPA 72 as referenced in Chapter 35. This may include the location of detectors in return air ducts from cells, behind grilles or in other locations. Spot type, combination duct and open area smoke detectors may be used when located not more than 14 inches (356 mm) from the return air grill. For initiation and annunciation purposes, these detectors may be combined in groups of four. The fire code official having jurisdiction, however, must approve the proposed equivalent performance of the design.
2. For detention housing and/or mental health housing area(s), including correctional medical and mental health uses, automatic smoke detection system in sleeping units shall not be required when all of the following conditions are met:
  - 2.1. All rooms, including the inmate cells are provided with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
  - 2.2. Building is continuously staffed by a correctional officer at all times.
  3. Smoke detectors are not required to be installed in inmate cells with two or fewer occupants in detention facilities which do not have a correctional medical and mental health use.
  4. Smoke detectors are not required to be installed in inmate day rooms of detention facilities where 24-hour direct visual supervision is provided by a correctional officer(s) and a manual fire alarm box is located in the control room.

**907.2.6.3.4 System annunciation.** A staff alerting fire alarm shall sound at all staff control stations on the floor of activation and an audible and visual signal shall be indicated on an annunciator at the facility control center upon activation of any automatic extinguishing system, automatic detection system, or any smoke detector or manual actuating

*or initiating device. In addition, where there are staff-control stations on the floor, an audible, visual and manual alarm shall be located in each staff control station.*

*Fire and trouble signals of fire alarm systems and sprinkler water-flow and supervisory signals of extinguishing systems shall be annunciated in an area designated as the facility control center which shall be constantly attended by staff personnel. All such signals shall produce both an audible signal and visual display at the facility control center indicating the building, floor zone or other designated area from which the signal originated in accordance with Section 907.6.4.*

*All local detention facilities within the scope of Section 6031.4 of the Penal Code shall have an automatic smoke detection system. A manual fire alarm-initiating device shall be installed in all guard control stations and shall be capable of alerting personnel in a central control point to the presence of fire or smoke within the facility.*

**907.2.6.4 Group I-4.** An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout the Group I-4, including contiguous day rooms, group activity spaces and other common spaces normally occupied by the clients. Group I-4 facilities located above the first story shall comply with the provisions of Section 436.1.

**907.2.6.5 Large family day-care.** Every large family day-care home shall be provided with at least one manual fire alarm box at a location approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Such device shall activate a fire alarm signal, which shall be audible throughout the facility at a minimum level of 15 dB above ambient noise level. These devices need not be interconnected to any other fire alarm device, have a control unit or be electrically supervised or provided with emergency power. Such device or devices shall be attached to the structure and must be a device that is listed and approved by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.

**[F] 907.2.7 Group M.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group M occupancies where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The combined Group M occupant load of all floors is 500 or more persons.
2. The Group M occupant load is more than 100 persons above or below the lowest level of exit discharge.

**Exceptions:**

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in covered or open mall buildings complying with Section 402.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an auto-

matic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

**[F] 907.2.7.1 Occupant notification.** During times that the building is occupied, the initiation of a signal from a manual fire alarm box or from a waterflow switch shall not be required to activate the alarm notification appliances when an alarm signal is activated at a constantly attended location from which evacuation instructions shall be initiated over an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

**[F] 907.2.8 Group R-1.** Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.8.1 through 907.2.8.3.

**[F] 907.2.8.1 Manual fire alarm system.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-1 occupancies.

**Exceptions:**

1. A manual fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all individual sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces to those units are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour fire partitions and each individual sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required throughout the building where all of the following conditions are met:
  - 2.1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
  - 2.2. The notification appliances will activate upon sprinkler water flow.
  - 2.3. Not fewer than one manual fire alarm box is installed at an approved location.

**[F] 907.2.8.2 Automatic smoke detection system.** An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed throughout all interior corridors serving sleeping units.

**Exception:** An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units and where each sleeping unit has a means of egress door opening directly to an exit or to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit.

**[F] 907.2.8.3 Smoke alarms.** Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

**[F] 907.2.9 Group R-2, R-2.1 and R-2.2.** Fire alarm systems and smoke alarms shall be installed in Group R-2 and R-2.1 occupancies as required in Sections 907.2.9.1 and 907.2.9.4.1. *Group R-2.2 shall be equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm system and shall have a manual fire alarm pull station at the 24-hour staff watch office.*

**[F] 907.2.9.1 Manual fire alarm system.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies where any of the following conditions apply:

1. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located three or more stories above the lowest level of exit discharge.
2. Any dwelling unit or sleeping unit is located more than one story below the highest level of exit discharge of exits serving the dwelling unit or sleeping unit.
3. The building contains more than 16 dwelling units or sleeping units.
4. *Congregate residences with more than 16 occupants.*

**Exceptions:**

1. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings not more than two stories in height where all dwelling units or sleeping units and contiguous attic and crawl spaces are separated from each other and public or common areas by not less than 1-hour fire partitions and each dwelling unit or sleeping unit has an exit directly to a public way, egress court or yard.
2. Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and the occupant notification appliances will automatically activate throughout the notification zones upon a sprinkler water flow.
3. A fire alarm system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving dwelling units and are protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, provided that dwelling units either have a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to the exits or are served by open-ended corridors designed in accordance with Section 1027.6, Exception 3.

**[F] 907.2.9.2 Smoke alarms.** Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

**[F] 907.2.9.3 Group R-2 college and university buildings.** An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing in all of the following locations:

1. Common spaces outside of dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Laundry rooms, mechanical equipment rooms and storage rooms.
3. All interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units.

**Exception:** An automatic smoke detection system is not required in buildings that do not have interior corridors serving sleeping units or dwelling units and where each sleeping unit or dwelling unit either has a means of egress door opening directly to an exterior exit access that leads directly to an exit or a means of egress door opening directly to an exit.

Required smoke alarms in dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 occupancies operated by a college or university for student or staff housing shall be interconnected with the fire alarm system in accordance with NFPA 72.

**907.2.9.4 Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies.** Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies housing more than six nonambulatory, elderly clients shall be provided with an approved manual and automatic fire alarm system.

**Exceptions:** Buildings housing nonambulatory clients on the first story only and which are protected throughout by the following:

1. An approved and supervised automatic sprinkler system, as specified in Sections 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, which upon activation will initiate the fire alarm system to notify all occupants.
2. A manual fire alarm system.
3. Smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.

**907.2.9.4.1 Smoke alarms.** Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.2.11.

**[F] 907.2.10 Group S.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group S public- and self-storage occupancies three stories or greater in height for interior corridors and interior common areas. Visible notification appliances are not required within storage units.

**Exception:** Manual fire alarm boxes are not required where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and the occupant notification appli-

ances will activate throughout the notification zones upon sprinkler water flow.

**[F] 907.2.11 Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms.** Listed single- and multiple-station smoke alarms complying with UL 217 shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.2.11.1 through 907.2.11.7 and NFPA 72.

**Exception:** For Group R occupancies. A fire alarm system with smoke detectors located in accordance with this section may be installed in lieu of smoke alarms. Upon actuation of the detector, only those notification appliances in the dwelling unit or guest room where the detector is actuated shall activate.

**[F] 907.2.11.1 Group R-1.** Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in all of the following locations in Group R-1:

1. In sleeping areas.
2. In every room in the path of the means of egress from the sleeping area to the door leading from the sleeping unit.
3. In each story within the sleeping unit, including basements. For sleeping units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

See Section 907.2.11.8 for specific location requirements.

**[F] 907.2.11.2 Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3, R-3.1, R-4 and R-4.1.** Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed and maintained in Groups R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 regardless of occupant load at all of the following locations:

1. On the ceiling or wall outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of bedrooms.
2. In each room used for sleeping purposes.
3. In each story within a dwelling unit, including basements but not including crawl spaces and uninhabitable attics. In dwellings or dwelling units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.
4. In a Group R-3.1 occupancies, in addition to the above, smoke alarms shall be provided throughout the habitable areas of the dwelling unit except kitchens.

See Section 907.2.11.8 for specific location requirements.

**907.2.11.2.1 Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies.** Licensed Group R-2.1 occupancies housing more than six nonambulatory, elderly clients shall be pro-

vided with an approved manual and automatic fire alarm system.

**Exceptions:** Buildings housing nonambulatory clients on the first story only and which are protected throughout by the following:

1. An approved and supervised automatic sprinkler system, as specified in the California Fire Code Sections 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, which upon activation will initiate the fire alarm system to notify all occupants.
2. A manual fire alarm system.
3. Smoke alarms required by the California Fire Code Section 907.2.10.

**907.2.11.2.1.1 Smoke alarms.** Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed in accordance with California Fire Code Section 907.2.11.

**907.2.11.2.2 Group I-4 occupancies.** Large family day-care homes shall be equipped with State Fire Marshal approved and listed single station residential type smoke alarms.

**907.2.11.2.3 Group R-3.1.** In all facilities housing a bedridden client, smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring when such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms shall be electrically interconnected so as to cause all smoke alarms to sound a distinctive alarm signal upon actuation of any single smoke alarm. Such alarm signal shall be audible throughout the facility at a minimal level of 15 dB above ambient noise level. These devices need not be interconnected to any other fire alarm device, have a control unit, or be electrically supervised or provided with emergency power.

**907.2.11.2.4 Smoke alarms.** Smoke alarms shall be tested and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Smoke alarms that no longer function shall be replaced.

**907.2.11.2.5 Existing Group R occupancies.** See the California Residential Code for existing Group R-3 occupancies or Chapter 11 of the California Fire Code for all other existing Group R occupancies.

**907.2.11.2.6 Group R-4.** A manual fire alarm system that activates the occupant notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be installed in Group R-4 occupancies housing nonambulatory clients.

**[F] 907.2.11.3 Installation near cooking appliances.** See Section 907.2.11.8.

**[F] 907.2.11.4 Installation near bathrooms.** See Section 907.2.11.8.

**[F] 907.2.11.5 Interconnection.** Where more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit in Group R occupancies, the smoke alarms shall be interconnected in such a manner that the activation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit. Physical

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

interconnection of smoke alarms shall not be required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm. The alarm shall be clearly audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed.

**[F] 907.2.11.6 Power source.** In new construction, and in newly classified Group R-3.1 occupancies, required smoke alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source and shall be equipped with a battery backup. Smoke alarms with integral strobes that are not equipped with battery backup shall be connected to an emergency electrical system in accordance with Section 2702. Smoke alarms shall emit a signal when the batteries are low. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than as required for overcurrent protection.

**Exception:** Smoke alarms are not required to be equipped with battery backup where they are connected to an emergency electrical system that complies with Section 2702.

**[F] 907.2.11.7 Smoke detection system.** Smoke detectors listed in accordance with UL 268 and provided as part of the building fire alarm system shall be an acceptable alternative to single- and multiple-station smoke alarms and shall comply with the following:

1. The fire alarm system shall comply with all applicable requirements in Section 907.
2. Activation of a smoke detector in a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall initiate alarm notification in the dwelling unit or sleeping unit in accordance with Section 907.5.2.
3. Activation of a smoke detector in a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall not activate alarm notification appliances outside of the dwelling unit or sleeping unit, provided that a supervisory signal is generated and monitored in accordance with Section 907.6.6.

### 907.2.11.8 Specific location requirements.

Extract from NFPA 72 Section 29.11.3.4 Specific Location Requirements\*.

This extract has been provided by NFPA for the Office of the State Fire Marshal adoption by reference as follows:

**29.11.3.4 Specific location requirements.** The installation of smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall comply with the following requirements:

- (1) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located where ambient conditions, including humidity and temperature, are outside the limits specified by the manufacturer's published instructions.
- (2) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located within unfinished attics or garages or in other spaces where temperatures can fall below 40°F (4°C) or exceed 100°F (38°C).

(3) Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.

(4) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within an area of exclusion determined by a 10-foot (3.0 m) radial distance along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance, unless listed for installation in close proximity to cooking appliances. Smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed between 10 feet (3.0 m) and 20 feet (6.1 m) along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed appliance shall be equipped with an alarm-silencing means or use photoelectric detection.

(5) Smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use photoelectric detection shall be permitted for installation at a radial distance greater than 6 feet (1.8 m) from any stationary or fixed cooking appliance when both of the following conditions are met:

- (a) The kitchen or cooking area and adjacent spaces have no clear partitions or headers.
- (b) The 10-foot (3.0 m) area of exclusion would prohibit the placement of a smoke alarm or smoke detector required by other sections of this code.

(6) Effective January 1, 2022, smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed between 6 feet (1.8 m) and 20 feet (6.1 m) along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance shall be listed for resistance to common nuisance sources from cooking.

(7) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36-inch (910 mm) horizontal path from a door to a bathroom containing a shower or tub unless listed for installation in close proximity to such locations.

(8) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36-inch (910 mm) horizontal path from the supply registers of a forced air heating or cooling system and shall be installed outside of the direct airflow from those registers.

(9) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36-inch (910 mm) horizontal path from the tip of the blade of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan unless the room configuration restricts meeting this requirement.

(10) Where stairs lead to other occupied levels, a smoke alarm or smoke detector shall be located so that smoke rising in the stairway cannot be prevented from reaching the smoke alarm or smoke detector by an intervening door or obstruction.

- > (11) For stairways leading up from a basement, smoke alarms or smoke detectors shall be located on the basement ceiling near the entry to the stairs.
- > (12) For tray-shaped ceilings (coffered ceilings), smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be installed on the highest portion of the ceiling or on the sloped portion of the ceiling within 12 inches (300 mm) vertically down from the highest point.
- (13) Smoke alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.7.3.2.4 of NFPA 72.
- (14) Heat alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.6.3 of NFPA 72.

\*For additional requirements or clarification see NFPA 72.

**907.2.11.9 Existing Group R occupancies.** See the California Residential Code for existing Group R-3 occupancies or Chapter 11 of the California Fire Code for all other existing Group R occupancies.

**[F] 907.2.12 Special amusement areas.** An automatic smoke detection system shall be provided in special amusement areas and throughout the exit access to the point of exit discharge in accordance with Sections 907.2.12.1 through 907.2.12.3.

**[F] 907.2.12.1 Alarm.** Activation of any single smoke detector, the automatic sprinkler system or any other automatic fire detection device shall immediately activate an audible and visible alarm at the building at a constantly attended location from which emergency action can be initiated, including the capability of manual initiation of requirements in Section 907.2.12.2.

**[F] 907.2.12.2 System response.** The activation of two or more smoke detectors, a single smoke detector equipped with an alarm verification feature, the automatic sprinkler system or other approved fire detection device shall automatically do all of the following:

1. Cause illumination of the means of egress with light of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface level.
2. Stop any conflicting or confusing sounds and visual distractions.
3. Activate an approved directional exit marking that will become apparent in an emergency.
4. Activate a prerecorded message, audible throughout the special amusement area and throughout the exit access to the point of exit discharge, instructing patrons to proceed to the nearest exit. Alarm signals used in conjunction with the prerecorded message shall produce a sound that is distinctive from other sounds used during normal operation.

**[F] 907.2.12.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** An emergency voice/alarm communication system, which is allowed to serve as a public address system, shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2 and be audible throughout the entire special amusement area and throughout the exit access to the point of exit discharge.

**[F] 907.2.13 High-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.** High-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.1, a fire department communication system in accordance with Section 907.2.13.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

#### Exceptions:

1. Airport traffic control towers in accordance with Sections 412 and 907.2.22.
2. Open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
3. Buildings with an occupancy in Group A-5 in accordance with Section 303.1.
4. Low-hazard special occupancies in accordance with Section 503.1.1.
5. Buildings with an occupancy in Group H-1, H-2 or H-3 in accordance with Section 415.
6. In Group I-2, I-2.1 and R-2.1 occupancies, the alarm shall sound at a constantly attended location and occupant notification shall be broadcast by the emergency voice/alarm communication system.

**[F] 907.2.13.1 Automatic smoke detection.** Automatic smoke detection in high-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be in accordance with Sections 907.2.13.1.1 and 907.2.13.1.2.

**[F] 907.2.13.1.1 Area smoke detection.** Area smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with this section. Smoke detectors shall be connected to an automatic fire alarm system. The activation of any detector required by this section shall activate the emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2. In addition to smoke detectors required by Sections 907.2.1 through 907.2.9, smoke detectors shall be located as follows:

1. In each mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment or similar room that is not provided with sprinkler protection.
2. In each elevator machine room, machinery space, control room and control space and in elevator lobbies.

**[F] 907.2.13.1.2 Duct smoke detection.** *Smoke detectors listed for use in air duct systems shall be provided in accordance with this section and the California Mechanical Code. The activation of any detector required by this section shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location.* Duct smoke detectors complying with Section 907.3.1 shall be located as follows:

1. In the main return air and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system having a capacity greater than 2,000 cubic feet per minute (cfm) (0.94 m<sup>3</sup>/s). Such detectors shall be located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.
2. At each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more stories from a return air duct or plenum of an air-conditioning system. In Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, a smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cfm (2.4 m<sup>3</sup>/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

**[F] 907.2.13.2 Fire department communication system.** Where a wired communication system is approved in lieu of an in-building two-way emergency responder communication coverage system in accordance with Section 510 of the *California Fire Code*, the wired fire department communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and shall operate between a fire command center complying with Section 911, elevators, elevator lobbies, emergency and standby power rooms, fire pump rooms, areas of refuge and inside interior exit stairways. The fire department communication device shall be provided at each floor level within the interior exit stairway.

**[F] 907.2.13.3 Multiple-channel voice evacuation.** In buildings with an occupied floor more than 120 feet (36 576 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, voice evacuation systems for high-rise buildings shall be multiple-channel systems.

**[F] 907.2.14 Atriums connecting more than two stories.** A fire alarm system shall be installed in occupancies with an atrium that connects more than two stories, with smoke detection installed in locations required by a rational analysis in Section 909.4 and in accordance with the system operation requirements in Section 909.17. The system shall be activated in accordance with Section 907.5. Such occupancies in Group A, E or M shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system complying with the requirements of Section 907.5.2.2.

**[F] 907.2.15 High-piled combustible storage areas.** An automatic smoke detection system shall be installed throughout high-piled combustible storage areas where required by Section 3206.5 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 907.2.16 Aerosol storage uses.** Aerosol product rooms and general-purpose warehouses containing aerosol

products shall be provided with an *approved* manual fire alarm system where required by the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 907.2.17 Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills.** Lumber, wood structural panel and veneer mills shall be provided with a manual fire alarm system.

**[F] 907.2.18 Underground buildings with smoke control systems.** Where a smoke control system is installed in an underground building in accordance with this code, automatic smoke detectors shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.2.18.1.

**[F] 907.2.18.1 Smoke detectors.** Not fewer than one smoke detector listed for the intended purpose shall be installed in all of the following areas:

1. Mechanical equipment, electrical, transformer, telephone equipment, elevator machine or similar rooms.
2. Elevator lobbies.
3. The main return and exhaust air plenum of each air-conditioning system serving more than one story and located in a serviceable area downstream of the last duct inlet.
4. Each connection to a vertical duct or riser serving two or more floors from return air ducts or plenums of heating, ventilating and air-conditioning systems, except that in Group R occupancies, a listed smoke detector is allowed to be used in each return air riser carrying not more than 5,000 cubic feet per minute (2.4 m<sup>3</sup>/s) and serving not more than 10 air-inlet openings.

**[F] 907.2.18.2 Alarm required.** Activation of the smoke control system shall activate an audible alarm at a constantly attended location.

**[F] 907.2.19 Deep underground buildings.** Where the lowest level of a structure is more than 60 feet (18 288 mm) below the finished floor of the lowest level of exit discharge, the structure shall be equipped throughout with a manual fire alarm system, including an emergency voice/alarm communication system installed in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

**[F] 907.2.20 Covered and open mall buildings.** Where the total floor area exceeds 50,000 square feet (4645 m<sup>2</sup>) within either a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, an emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be provided. Access to emergency voice/alarm communication systems serving a mall, required or otherwise, shall be provided for the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

**[F] 907.2.21 Residential aircraft hangars.** Not fewer than one single-station smoke alarm shall be installed within a residential aircraft hangar as defined in Chapter 2 and shall be interconnected into the residential smoke alarm or other sounding device to provide an alarm that will be audible in all sleeping areas of the dwelling.

**[F] 907.2.22 Airport traffic control towers.** An automatic smoke detection system that activates the occupant

notification system in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be provided in airport control towers in accordance with Sections 907.2.22.1 and 907.2.22.2.

**Exception:** Audible appliances shall not be installed within the control tower cab.

**[F] 907.2.22.1 Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and automatic sprinklers.** Airport traffic control towers with multiple exits and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Outside each opening into interior exit stairways.
5. Along the single means of egress permitted from observation levels.
6. Outside each opening into the single means of egress permitted from observation levels.

**[F] 907.2.22.2 Other airport traffic control towers.** Airport traffic control towers with a single exit or where sprinklers are not installed throughout shall be provided with smoke detectors in all of the following locations:

1. Airport traffic control cab.
2. Electrical and mechanical equipment rooms.
3. Airport terminal radar and electronics rooms.
4. Office spaces incidental to the tower operation.
5. Lounges for employees, including sanitary facilities.
6. Means of egress.
7. Utility shafts where access to smoke detectors can be provided.

**[F] 907.2.23 Energy storage systems.** An automatic smoke detection system or radiant-energy detection system shall be installed in rooms, areas and walk-in units containing energy storage systems as required in Section 1207.5.4 of the *California Fire Code*.

#### **907.2.24 Motion picture and television production studio sound stages and approved production facilities.**

**907.2.24.1 Sound stages-solid-ceiling sets and platforms.** Where required by Chapter 48 of the *California Fire Code*, all interior solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet ( $55.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, and platforms (when provided) over 600 square feet ( $55.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be protected by an approved heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. The fire alarm system shall be connected to an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.5 or a local alarm which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

**907.2.24.2 Production locations—solid-ceiling sets and platforms.** Where required by Chapter 48 of the *California Fire Code* in buildings with existing fire protection systems and where production intends to construct solid-ceiling sets over 600 square feet ( $55.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, and platforms over 600 square feet ( $55.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and which exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height shall be protected by an approved heat detector system. Heat detectors shall be spaced 30 feet (9144 mm) on center or as required by the manufacturer's installation instructions. The fire alarm system shall be connected to an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6 or a local alarm which will give an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

**907.2.24.3 Fire alarm control units.** Fire alarm control units shall be California State Fire Marshal listed and shall be utilized in accordance with their listing. Control units are permitted to be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.

#### **907.2.24.4 Heat detectors.**

**907.2.24.4.1** Heat detection required by this section shall be defined as a portable system as it is intended to be reinstalled when platforms or sets are changed.

**907.2.24.4.2** Heat detectors shall be secured to standard outlet boxes and are allowed to be temporarily supported by sets, platforms or pedestals.

**907.2.24.4.3** Heat detectors shall be provided for solid-ceiling sets and platforms where required by Sections 4805.3 and 4811.14.

#### **907.2.25 Group C occupancies (organized camps).**

**907.2.25.1 General.** Every building and structure used or intended for sleeping purposes shall be provided with an automatic smoke detection system.

##### **Exceptions:**

1. Buildings and structures in existence and in operation prior to January 1, 1985.
2. Tents, tent structures and buildings and structures that do not exceed 25 ft (7620 mm) in any lateral dimensions and where such building or structure is not more than one story.

**907.2.25.2 Camp fire alarm.** Every organized camp shall provide and maintain audible appliances, or devices suitable for sounding a fire alarm. Such audible appliances or devices may be of any type acceptable to the enforcing agency provided they are distinctive in tone from all other signaling devices or systems and shall be audible throughout the camp premises. When an automatic fire alarm system is provided, as required by Section 450.6.6 of the *California Building Code*, all audible appliances required by this section shall be of the same type as that used in the automatic system.

#### **907.2.26 Fixed-guideway and passenger rail transit systems fire alarm and communication systems.**

**907.2.26.1 General.** Every fixed-guideway transit station shall be provided with an approved emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with NFPA 72. The emergency voice/alarm communication system, designed and installed so that damage to any one speaker will not render any paging zone of the system inoperative.

**Exception:** Open stations.

**907.2.26.2 System components.** Each station fire alarm system shall consist of:

1. Fire alarm control unit at a location as permitted by the enforcing agency.
2. An alarm annunciator(s). The annunciator(s) shall be located at a point acceptable to the enforcing agency. The annunciator(s) shall indicate the type of device and general location of alarm. All alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be transmitted to the local annunciator(s) and the operations control center.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided throughout passenger platforms and stations.

**Exception:** Two-way emergency communication reporting devices (emergency telephones) are allowed to be used in lieu of manual fire alarm boxes as permitted by the enforcing agency. Such devices shall provide two-way communication between the operations control center and each device. Such devices shall be located as required for manual fire alarm boxes, and shall be distinctly identified by signs, coloring or other means acceptable to the enforcing agency.

4. Automatic smoke detectors in all ancillary spaces.

**Exceptions:**

1. Ancillary spaces protected by an approved fixed automatic extinguishing system; or
2. Ancillary spaces protected by quick-response sprinklers.

5. Automatic control of exiting components.

**907.2.26.3 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** Each station shall be provided with a an emergency voice/alarm communication system capable of transmitting voice, recorded or electronically generated textual messages to all areas of the station. The system(s) shall be configured such that the messages can be initiated from either the Emergency Management Panel (EMP) or the operations control center.

**907.2.26.4 Emergency telephones.** A dedicated two-way emergency communication phone system designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 shall be provided in all underground stations to facilitate direct communications for emergency response between remote locations and the EMP.

**907.2.26.4.1** Remote emergency phones shall be located at ends of station platforms, each hose outlet connection and station valve rooms.

**907.2.26.4.2** Provisions shall be made in the design of this two-way emergency communication phone system for extensions of the system to the next passenger station or guideway portal.

**907.2.27 Winery caves.** An approved manual fire alarm system conforming to the provisions of Section 907.2 shall be provided in all Type 3 winery caves.

**907.2.28 Group L.** A manual fire alarm system shall be installed throughout buildings having Group L occupancies. When Group L occupancies are located in mixed use buildings, at least one manual fire alarm box shall be located within the Group L occupancy.

**907.2.28.1 Group L occupancies located on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be required on each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier and at each exit on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above.

**907.2.29 Public school state funded construction projects for kindergarten through 12<sup>th</sup> grade - automatic fire alarm system requirements.**

**907.2.29.1 Alterations to existing buildings on an existing public school campus.** An automatic fire alarm system shall be provided for all portions within the scope of an alteration project. The provisions of this section shall apply to any public school project on an existing campus and receiving state funds pursuant to Leroy F. Green, School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code Sections 17070.10 through 17079. For purposes of this section, an existing campus refers to a school site, where an application for construction of original buildings was made to DSA prior to July 1, 2002.

**Exceptions:**

1. A manual fire alarm system may be provided for a construction project that has an estimated total cost of less than \$200,000.
2. A manual fire alarm system may be provided for a relocatable building that is sited with the intent that it be at the site for less than three years and is sited upon a temporary foundation in a manner that is designed to permit easy removal. See California Administrative Code, Section 4-314 for definition of relocatable building.
3. A fire alarm system is not required for detached buildings designed and used for non-instructional purposes that meet the applicable requirements for that occupancy. Buildings would include, but not be limited to:

Concession Stand  
Press Box  
Restroom Facilities  
Shade Structure  
Snack Bar  
Storage Building  
Ticket Booth

**[F] 907.3 Fire safety functions.** Automatic fire detectors utilized for the purpose of performing fire safety functions shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit where a fire alarm system is *installed*. Detectors shall, upon actuation, perform the intended function and activate the alarm notification appliances or activate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location. In buildings not equipped with a fire alarm system, the automatic fire detector shall be powered by normal electrical service and, upon actuation, perform the intended function. The detectors shall be located in accordance with NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.3.1 Duct smoke detectors.** Smoke detectors installed in ducts shall be listed for the air velocity, temperature and humidity present in the duct. Duct smoke detectors shall be connected to the building's fire alarm control unit where a fire alarm system is required by Section 907.2. Activation of a duct smoke detector shall initiate a visible and audible supervisory signal at a constantly attended location and shall perform the intended fire safety function in accordance with this code and the *California Mechanical Code*. In facilities that are required to be monitored by a supervising station, duct smoke detectors shall report only as a supervisory signal and not as a fire alarm. They shall not be used as a substitute for required open area detection.

**Exceptions:**

1. The supervisory signal at a constantly attended location is not required where duct smoke detectors activate the building's alarm notification appliances.
2. In occupancies not required to be equipped with a fire alarm system, actuation of a smoke detector shall activate a visible and an audible signal in an approved location. Smoke detector trouble conditions shall activate a visible or audible signal in an approved location and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

**[F] 907.3.2 Special locking systems.** Where special locking systems are installed on means of egress doors in accordance with Sections 1010.2.13 or 1010.2.14, an automatic smoke detection system shall be installed as required by those sections and Sections 907.3.2.1 through 907.3.2.5.

**907.3.2.1 Delayed egress.** *In other than Groups I, R-2.1 and R-4 occupancies for single-story building, smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces. For multiple-story buildings, smoke detectors shall be installed throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces for the story where delayed egress devices are installed. Additional detectors are required on adjacent stories where occupants of those stories utilize the same means of egress.*

**Exception:** Refer to Section 907.3.2.4 for Group A courthouse occupancies.

**907.3.2.2 Delayed egress for Group I and R-2.1 occupancies.** Smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings

*throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces of smoke-compartments where delayed egress devices are installed. Additional detectors are required in adjacent smoke-compartments where occupants of those compartments utilize the same means of egress.*

**907.3.2.3 Delayed egress for Group R-4.** Occupancies licensed as residential care facilities for the elderly, and housing clients with Alzheimer's disease or dementia residential facilities, smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupiable rooms and areas and mechanical/electrical rooms and spaces.

**907.3.2.4 Delayed egress for Group A Courthouse occupancies.** An approved automatic smoke detection system shall be installed at ceilings in all occupied corridors and mechanical/electrical spaces of occupancies where delayed egress devices are installed.

**907.3.2.5 Controlled egress doors for Group I-2 occupancies.** Smoke detectors shall be installed at ceilings throughout all occupied areas and mechanical/electrical spaces of smoke-compartments where controlled egress doors are installed.

**[F] 907.3.3 Elevator emergency operation.** Automatic fire detectors installed for elevator emergency operation shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders* and NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.3.4 Wiring.** The wiring to the auxiliary devices and equipment used to accomplish the fire safety functions shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.4 Initiating devices.** Where a fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, occupant notification in accordance with Section 907.5 shall be initiated by one or more of the following. Initiating devices shall be installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.1 through 907.4.3.1.

- 1. Manual fire alarm boxes.
- 2. Automatic fire detectors.
- 3. Automatic sprinkler system waterflow devices.
- 4. Automatic fire-extinguishing systems.

**[F] 907.4.1 Protection of fire alarm control unit.** In areas that are not continuously occupied, a single smoke detector shall be provided at the location of each fire alarm control unit, notification appliance circuit power extenders, and supervising station transmitting equipment.

**Exception:** Where ambient conditions prohibit installation of a smoke detector, a heat detector shall be permitted.

**[F] 907.4.2 Manual fire alarm boxes.** Where a manual fire alarm system is required by another section of this code, it shall be activated by fire alarm boxes installed in accordance with Sections 907.4.2.1 through 907.4.2.6.

**[F] 907.4.2.1 Location.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

entrance to each exit. In buildings not protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be located so that the distance of travel to the nearest box does not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm).

**Exception:** When individual dwelling units are served by a single exit stairway, additional boxes at other than the ground floor may be omitted.

**[F] 907.4.2.2 Height.** The height of the manual fire alarm boxes shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) measured vertically, from the floor level to the *highest point of the activating handle or lever of the box*. Manual fire alarm boxes shall also comply with Section 11B-309.

**[F] 907.4.2.3 Color.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.

**[F] 907.4.2.4 Signs.** Where fire alarm systems are not monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with Section 907.6.6, an approved permanent sign shall be installed adjacent to each manual fire alarm box that reads: WHEN ALARM SOUNDS CALL FIRE DEPARTMENT.

**Exception:** Where the manufacturer has permanently provided this information on the manual fire alarm box.

**[F] 907.4.2.5 Protective covers.** The fire code official is authorized to require the installation of listed manual fire alarm box protective covers to prevent malicious false alarms or to provide the manual fire alarm box with protection from physical damage. The protective cover shall be transparent or red in color with a transparent face to permit visibility of the manual fire alarm box. Each cover shall include proper operating instructions. A protective cover that emits a local alarm signal shall not be installed unless approved. Protective covers shall not project more than that permitted by Section 1003.3.3.

**[F] 907.4.2.6 Unobstructed and unobscured.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided with ready access, unobstructed, unobscured and visible at all times.

**907.4.2.7 Operation.** Manual fire alarm boxes shall be operable with one hand including boxes with protective covers.

**[F] 907.4.3 Automatic smoke detection.** Where an automatic smoke detection system is required, it shall utilize smoke detectors unless ambient conditions prohibit such an installation. In spaces where smoke detectors cannot be utilized due to ambient conditions, approved automatic heat detectors shall be permitted.

**[F] 907.4.3.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** For conditions other than specific fire safety functions noted in Section 907.3, in areas where ambient conditions prohibit the installation of smoke detectors, an automatic sprinkler system installed in such areas in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and that is connected to the fire alarm system shall be approved as automatic heat detection.

**[F] 907.5 Occupant notification.** Occupant notification by fire alarms shall be in accordance with Sections 907.5.1 through 907.5.2.5. Occupant notification by smoke alarms in Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies shall comply with Section 907.5.2.1.3.2.

**907.5.1 Alarm activation and annunciation.** Upon activation, fire alarm systems shall initiate occupant notification and shall annunciate at the fire alarm control unit, or where allowed elsewhere by Section 907, at a constantly attended location.

**907.5.1.1 Presignal feature.** A presignal feature shall be provided only where approved. The presignal shall be annunciated at an approved, constantly attended location, having the capability to activate the occupant notification system in the event of fire or other emergency.

**Exception:** A presignal feature shall not be permitted to be installed in a Group I-2, I-2.1 or R-2.1 occupancy.

**[F] 907.5.2 Alarm notification appliances.** Alarm notification appliances shall be provided and shall be listed for their purpose.

**[F] 907.5.2.1 Audible alarms.** Audible alarm notification appliances shall be provided and emit a distinctive sound that is not to be used for any purpose other than that of a fire alarm. *In Group I-2 occupancies, audible appliances located in patient areas shall be only chimes or similar sounding appliances for alerting staff. See Section 907.5.2.5.*

### Exceptions:

1. Audible alarm notification appliances are not required in patient areas of Group I-2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.5.2.5.
2. A visible alarm notification appliance installed in a nurses' control station or other continuously attended staff location in a Group I-2 care suite shall be an acceptable alternative to the installation of audible alarm notification appliances throughout a care suite in Group I-2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.5.2.5.
3. Where provided, audible notification appliances located in each enclosed occupant evacuation elevator lobby in accordance with Section 3008.9.1 shall be connected to a separate notification zone for manual paging only.

**[F] 907.5.2.1.1 Average sound pressure.** The audible alarm notification appliances shall provide a sound pressure level of 15 decibels (dBA) above the average ambient sound level or 5 dBA above the maximum sound level having a duration of not less than 60 seconds, whichever is greater, in every occupiable space within the building.

**[F] 907.5.2.1.2 Maximum sound pressure.** The total sound pressure level produced by combining the ambient sound pressure level with all audible notifi-

cation appliances operating shall not exceed 110 dBA at the minimum hearing distance from the audible appliance. Where the average ambient noise is greater than 105 dBA, visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72 and audible alarm notification appliances shall not be required.

**[F] 907.5.2.1.3 Audible signal frequency in Group R-1 and R-2 sleeping rooms.** Audible signal frequency in Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies shall be in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.1.3.1 and 907.5.2.1.3.2.

**[F] 907.5.2.1.3.1 Fire alarm system signal.** In sleeping rooms of Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies, the audible alarm activated by a fire alarm system shall be a 520-Hz low-frequency signal complying with NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.5.2.1.3.2 Smoke alarm signal in sleeping rooms.** In sleeping rooms of Group R-1 and R-2 occupancies that are required by Section 907.2.8 or 907.2.9 to have a fire alarm system, the audible alarm signal activated by single- or multiple-station smoke alarms in the dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall be a 520-Hz signal complying with NFPA 72. Where a sleeping room smoke alarm is unable to produce a 520-Hz signal, the 520-Hz alarm signal shall be provided by a listed notification appliance or a smoke detector with an integral 520-Hz sounder.

**907.5.2.1.4 Audible alarm signal.** The audible signal shall be the standard fire alarm evacuation signal, ANSI S3.41 Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal, "three pulse temporal pattern," as described in NFPA 72.

**Exception:** The use of the existing evacuation signaling scheme shall be permitted where approved by the enforcing agency.

**[F] 907.5.2.2 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.** Emergency voice/alarm communication systems required by this code shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72. The operation of any automatic fire detector, sprinkler waterflow device or manual fire alarm box shall automatically sound an alert tone followed by voice instructions giving approved information and directions for a general or staged evacuation in accordance with the building's fire safety and evacuation plans required by Section 404 of the *California Fire Code*. In high-rise buildings, and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access the system shall operate on at least the alarming floor, the floor above and the floor below. Speakers shall be provided throughout the building by paging zones. At a minimum, paging zones shall be provided as follows:

1. Elevator groups.
2. Interior exit stairways.

3. Each floor.

4. Areas of refuge as defined in Chapter 2.

**Exception:** In Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, where in accordance with Section 907.5.2.5, audible fire alarm notification devices are not provided, upon receipt of an alarm at a constantly attended location, a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the public-address system.

**[F] 907.5.2.2.1 Manual override.** A manual override for emergency voice communication shall be provided on a selective and all-call basis for all paging zones.

**[F] 907.5.2.2.2 Live voice messages.** The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall have the capability to broadcast live voice messages by paging zones on a selective and all-call basis.

**[F] 907.5.2.2.3 Alternative uses.** The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be allowed to be used for other announcements, provided that the manual fire alarm use takes precedence over any other use.

**[F] 907.5.2.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication captions.** Where stadiums, arenas and grandstands have 15,000 fixed seats or more and provide audible public announcements, the emergency/voice alarm communication system shall provide prerecorded or real-time captions. Prerecorded or live emergency captions shall be from an approved location constantly attended by personnel trained to respond to an emergency.

**[F] 907.5.2.2.5 Standby power.** Emergency | voice/alarm communications systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with | Section 2702.

**[F] 907.5.2.3 Visible alarms.** Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in accordance with Sections 907.5.2.3.1 through 907.5.2.3.4.

#### Exceptions:

1. In other than Group I-2 and I-2.1, visible alarm notification appliances are not required in alterations, except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.
2. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in enclosed exit stairways, enclosed exit ramps, exterior exit stairs and exterior exit ramps.
3. Visible alarm notification appliances shall not be required in elevator cars.
4. Visual alarm notification appliances are not required in critical care areas of Group I-2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.5.2.5.
5. A visible alarm notification appliance installed in a nurses' control station or other

continuously attended staff location in a Group I-2 *care* suite shall be an acceptable alternative to the installation of visible alarm notification appliances throughout the *care* suite in Group I-2 occupancies that are in compliance with Section 907.5.2.5.

**[F] 907.5.2.3.1 Public use areas and common use areas.** Visible alarm notification appliances shall be provided in public use areas and common use areas, *including but not limited to:*

1. Band rooms
2. Classrooms
3. Corridors
4. Gymsnasiums
5. Lobbies
6. Meeting rooms
7. Multipurpose rooms
8. Music practice rooms
9. Occupational shops
10. Occupied rooms where ambient noise impairs hearing of the fire alarm
11. Sanitary facilities including restrooms, bathrooms and shower rooms.

**Exception:** Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the notification appliance circuits serving the employee work areas shall be initially designed with not less than 20-percent spare capacity to account for the potential of adding visible notification appliances in the future to accommodate hearing-impaired employee(s).

**[F] 907.5.2.3.2 Groups R-1 and R-2.1.** Habitable spaces in dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-1 and R-2.1 occupancies in accordance with Table 907.5.2.3.2 shall be provided with visible alarm notification. Visible alarms shall be activated by the in-room smoke alarm and the building fire alarm system.

**[F] TABLE 907.5.2.3.2  
VISIBLE ALARMS**

NUMBER OF SLEEPING UNITS	SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS WITH VISIBLE ALARMS
6 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1,000	5% of total
1,001 and over	50 plus 3 for each 100 over 1,000

*[SFM]* Also see Chapter 11B, Section 11B-224.4 and Table 11B-224.4.

**[F] 907.5.2.3.3 Group R-2.** In Group R-2 occupancies required by Section 907 to have a fire alarm system, each story that contains dwelling units and sleeping units shall be provided with the capability to support future visible alarm notification appliances in accordance with NFPA 72. Such capability shall accommodate wired or wireless equipment.

**[F] 907.5.2.3.3.1 Wired equipment.** Where wired equipment is used to comply with the future capability required by Section 907.5.2.3.3, the system shall include one of the following capabilities:

1. The replacement of audible appliances with combination audible/visible appliances or additional visible notification appliances.
2. The future extension of the existing wiring from the unit smoke alarm locations to required locations for visible appliances.
3. For wired equipment, the fire alarm power supply and circuits shall have not less than 5-percent excess capacity to accommodate the future addition of visible alarm notification appliances, and a single access point to such circuits shall be available on every story. Such circuits shall not be required to be extended beyond a single access point on a story. The fire alarm system shop drawings required by Section 907.1.2 shall include the power supply and circuit documentation to accommodate the future addition of visible notification appliances.

**907.5.2.3.4 Groups R-2.1, R-3.1 and R-4.** Protective social care facilities which house persons who are hearing impaired, shall be provided with notification appliances for the hearing impaired installed in accordance with NFPA 72 and which shall activated upon initiation of the fire alarm system or the smoke alarms.

**907.5.2.4 Group E schools.** One audible alarm notification appliance shall be mounted on the exterior of a buildings to alert occupants at each playground area.

**907.5.2.5 Groups I-2 and I-2.1.** Audible notification appliances shall be used in nonpatient areas. Visible appliances are allowed to be used in lieu of audible appliances in patient occupied areas. Audible appliances located in patient areas shall be only chimes or similar sounding appliances for alerting staff.

Where audible fire alarm notification devices are not provided, upon receipt of an alarm at a constantly attended location, a general occupant notification shall be broadcast over the public-address system.

In occupancies housing nonambulatory persons where restraint is practiced, staff and attendants shall be provided and housed or located in such a manner that such supervisory personnel will also be alerted upon activation of the fire alarm system or any detector required by this section.

**[F] 907.6 Installation and monitoring.** A fire alarm system shall be installed and monitored in accordance with Sections 907.6.1 through 907.6.6.3 and NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.6.1 Wiring.** Wiring shall comply with the requirements of the *California Electrical Code* and NFPA 72. Wireless protection systems utilizing radio-frequency transmitting devices shall comply with the special requirements for supervision of low-power wireless systems in NFPA 72.

**907.6.1.1 High-rise buildings.** Wiring for fire alarm network communication circuits between multiple-control units shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Class A or Class X in accordance with NFPA 72.
2. Installed in enclosed continuous metallic raceways or raceways encased in not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete in accordance with the California Electrical Code.

**[F] 907.6.2 Power supply.** The primary and secondary power supply for the fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 72.

**Exception:** Back-up power for single-station and multiple-station smoke alarms as required in Section 907.2.11.6.

**[F] 907.6.3 Initiating device identification.** The fire alarm system shall identify the specific initiating device address, location, device type, floor level where applicable and status including indication of normal, alarm, trouble and supervisory status, as appropriate.

**Exceptions:**

1. Fire alarm systems in single-story buildings less than 22,500 square feet (2090 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.
2. Fire alarm systems that only include manual fire alarm boxes, waterflow initiating devices and not more than 10 additional alarm-initiating devices.
3. Special initiating devices that do not support individual device identification.
4. Fire alarm systems or devices that are replacing existing equipment.

**[F] 907.6.3.1 Annunciation.** The initiating device status shall be annunciated at an approved on-site location.

**[F] 907.6.4 Zones.** Fire alarm systems shall be divided into zones where required by this section. For the purposes of annunciation and notification, zoning shall be in accordance with the following:

1. Where the fire-protective signaling system serves more than one building, each building shall be considered as a separate zone.
2. Each floor of a building shall be considered as a separate zone.
3. Each section of floor of a building that is separated by fire walls or by horizontal exits shall be considered as a separate zone.

4. Each zone shall not exceed 22,500 square feet (2090 m<sup>2</sup>). The length of any zone shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm) in any direction.

**Exception:** Automatic sprinkler system zones shall not exceed the area permitted by NFPA 13.

5. For Group I-3 occupancies each cell complex shall be considered a separate zone.
6. For Group H and L occupancies on the 11<sup>th</sup> story and above, each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be considered a separate zone.
7. Annunciation shall be further divided into zones where deemed necessary by the enforcing agency.

**907.6.4.1 Annunciation.** Alarm, supervisory and trouble signals shall be annunciated in the main control unit by means of an audible signal and a visual display in accordance with NFPA 72. Identification of the type of alarm and supervisory initiating devices, such as manual, automatic, sprinkler waterflow, sprinkler valve supervisory, fire-pump supervisory, etc., shall be separately indicated.

**Exception:** Group R-3 occupancies.

**[F] 907.6.4.1.1 Annunciator panel.** An annunciator panel complying with Section 907.6.4.1 and the associated controls shall be provided in an approved remote location where deemed necessary by the enforcing agency. The visual zone indication shall lock in until the system is reset and shall not be canceled by the operation of an audible-alarm silencing switch.

**[F] 907.6.4.2 High-rise buildings.** In high-rise buildings and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a separate zone by floor shall be provided for each of the following types of alarm-initiating devices where provided:

1. Smoke detectors.
2. Sprinkler waterflow devices.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes.
4. Other approved types of automatic fire protection systems.

**907.6.4.3 High-rise buildings zoning annunciator panel.** In high-rise buildings, a zoning annunciator panel shall be provided in the Fire Command Center. This panel shall not be combined with the Firefighter Smoke Control Panel unless approved. Panel shall be in matrix format or an approved equivalent configuration. All indicators shall be based upon positive confirmation. The panel shall include the following features at a minimum:

1. Fire alarm initiating devices with individual annunciation per floor for manual fire alarm boxes, area smoke detectors, elevator lobby smoke detectors, duct smoke detectors, heat detectors, auxiliary alarms and sprinkler waterflow. (Red LED)

2. Sprinkler and standpipe system control valves per floor—supervisory. (Yellow LED)
3. Common fire alarm system trouble. (Yellow LED)
4. Annunciation Panel Power On. (Green LED)
5. Lamp test. (Push Button)

**907.6.4.4 Notification zoning.** Upon activation of initiating devices where occupant notification is required for evacuation, all notification zones shall operate simultaneously throughout the building.

**Exceptions:**

1. High-rise buildings as permitted in Section 907.2.12.
2. Hospitals and convalescent facilities with staff alerting notification appliances or emergency voice/alarm communication, zoning shall be in accordance with the approved fire plan.
3. Detention facilities.
4. Upon approval by the fire code official in buildings which are sprinklered throughout, specific notification zoning shall be permitted where the notification zones are separated by a minimum of a 2-hour fire barrier and 2-hour fire-resistive floor assembly. The system shall have the capability to activate all other notification zones by automatic and manual means.
5. Upon approval by the fire code official in buildings which are sprinklered throughout, specific notification zoning shall be permitted where the activated initiating device or fire extinguishing system is separated from any nonactive notification zones by a minimum of 300-ft horizontal distance. The system shall have the capability to activate all other notification zones by automatic and manual means.
6. Where a Group H or L occupancy is located above the 10th story, each side of the 2-hour fire-smoke barrier shall be considered a separate zone.

**[F] 907.6.5 Access.** Access shall be provided to each fire alarm device and notification appliance for periodic inspection, maintenance and testing.

**[F] 907.6.6 Monitoring.** Fire alarm systems required by this chapter or by the *California Fire Code* shall be monitored by an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72 and this section.

**Exception:** Monitoring by a supervising station is not required for:

1. Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms required by Section 907.2.11.
2. Smoke detectors in Group I-3 occupancies shall be monitored in accordance with Section 907.2.6.3.
3. Automatic sprinkler systems in one- and two-family dwellings.

**[F] 907.6.6.1 Transmission of alarm signals.** Transmission of alarm signals to a supervising station shall be in accordance with NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.6.6.2 MIY Monitoring.** Direct transmission of alarms associated with monitor it yourself (MIY) transmitters to a public safety answering point (PSAP) shall not be permitted unless approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 907.6.6.3 Termination of monitoring service.** Termination of fire alarm monitoring services shall be in accordance with Section 901.9 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 907.6.6.4 Group E schools.** Automatic fire alarm systems shall be monitored and shall transmit the alarm, supervisory and trouble signals to an approved supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72. The supervising station shall be listed as either UUFX (Central Station) or UUJS (remote & proprietary) by the Underwriters Laboratory Inc. (UL) or other approved listing and testing laboratory or shall comply with the requirements of standard, FM 3011. Termination of monitoring services shall be in accordance with Section 907.6.6.2.

**[F] 907.7 Acceptance tests and completion.** Upon completion of the installation, the fire alarm system and all fire alarm components shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.7.1 Single- and multiple-station alarm devices.** When the installation of the alarm devices is complete, each device and interconnecting wiring for multiple-station alarm devices shall be tested in accordance with the smoke alarm provisions of NFPA 72.

**[F] 907.7.2 Record of completion.** A record of completion in accordance with NFPA 72 verifying that the system has been installed and tested in accordance with the approved plans and specifications shall be provided.

**[F] 907.7.3 Instructions.** Operating, testing and maintenance instructions and record drawings ("as-builts") and equipment specifications shall be provided at an approved location.

**[F] 907.8 Inspection, testing and maintenance.** The maintenance and testing schedules and procedures for fire alarm and fire detection systems shall be in accordance with Section 907.8 of the *California Fire Code*.

## SECTION 908 EMERGENCY ALARM SYSTEMS

**[F] 908.1 Group H occupancies.** Emergency alarms for the detection and notification of an emergency condition in Group H occupancies shall be provided in accordance with Section 415.5.

**[F] 908.2 Group H-5 occupancy.** Emergency alarms for notification of an emergency condition in an HPM facility shall be provided as required in Section 415.11.4.

**[F] 908.3 Fire alarm system interface.** Where an emergency alarm system is interfaced with a building's fire alarm

system, the signal produced at the fire alarm control unit shall be a supervisory signal.

## SECTION 909 SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEMS

**[F] 909.1 Scope and purpose.** This section applies to mechanical or passive smoke control systems where they are required by other provisions of this code. The purpose of this section is to establish minimum requirements for the design, installation and acceptance testing of smoke control systems that are intended to provide a tenable environment for the evacuation or relocation of occupants. These provisions are not intended for the preservation of contents, the timely restoration of operations or for assistance in fire suppression or overhaul activities. Smoke control systems regulated by this section serve a different purpose than the smoke- and heat-removal provisions found in Section 910. Mechanical smoke control systems shall not be considered exhaust systems under Chapter 5 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**[F] 909.2 General design requirements.** Buildings, structures or parts thereof required by this code to have a smoke control system or systems shall have such systems designed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 909 and the generally accepted and well-established principles of engineering relevant to the design. The construction documents shall include sufficient information and detail to adequately describe the elements of the design necessary for the proper implementation of the smoke control systems. These documents shall be accompanied by sufficient information and analysis to demonstrate compliance with these provisions.

**[F] 909.3 Special inspection and test requirements.** In addition to the ordinary inspection and test requirements that buildings, structures and parts thereof are required to undergo, smoke control systems subject to the provisions of Section 909 shall undergo special inspections and tests sufficient to verify the proper commissioning of the smoke control design in its final installed condition. The design submission accompanying the construction documents shall clearly detail procedures and methods to be used and the items subject to such inspections and tests. Such commissioning shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice and, where possible, based on published standards for the particular testing involved. The special inspections and tests required by this section shall be conducted under the same terms in Section 1704.

**[F] 909.4 Analysis.** A rational analysis supporting the types of smoke control systems to be employed, their methods of operation, the systems supporting them and the methods of construction to be utilized shall accompany the submitted construction documents and shall include, but not be limited to, the items indicated in Sections 909.4.1 through 909.4.7.

**[F] 909.4.1 Stack effect.** The system shall be designed such that the maximum probable normal or reverse stack effect will not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities. In determining the maximum probable stack

effect, altitude, elevation, weather history and interior temperatures shall be used.

**[F] 909.4.2 Temperature effect of fire.** Buoyancy and expansion caused by the design fire in accordance with Section 909.9 shall be analyzed. The system shall be designed such that these effects do not adversely interfere with the system's capabilities.

**[F] 909.4.3 Wind effect.** The design shall consider the adverse effects of wind. Such consideration shall be consistent with the wind-loading provisions of Chapter 16.

**[F] 909.4.4 HVAC systems.** The design shall consider the effects of the heating, ventilating and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems on both smoke and fire transport. The analysis shall include all permutations of systems status. The design shall consider the effects of the fire on the HVAC systems.

**[F] 909.4.5 Climate.** The design shall consider the effects of low temperatures on systems, property and occupants. Air inlets and exhausts shall be located so as to prevent snow or ice blockage.

**[F] 909.4.6 Duration of operation.** All portions of active or engineered smoke control systems shall be capable of continued operation after detection of the fire event for a period of not less than either 20 minutes or 1.5 times the calculated egress time, whichever is greater.

**909.4.7 Smoke control system interaction.** The design shall consider the interaction effects of the operation of multiple smoke control systems for all design scenarios.

**[F] 909.5 Smoke barrier construction.** Smoke barriers required for passive smoke control and a smoke control system using the pressurization method shall comply with Section 709. The maximum allowable leakage area shall be the aggregate area calculated using the following leakage area ratios:

1. Walls  $A/A_w = 0.00100$
2. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways:  $A/A_w = 0.00035$
3. Enclosed exit access stairways and ramps and all other shafts:  $A/A_w = 0.00150$
4. Floors and roofs:  $A/A_F = 0.00050$

where:

$A$  = Total leakage area, square feet ( $m^2$ ).

$A_F$  = Unit floor or roof area of barrier, square feet ( $m^2$ ).

$A_w$  = Unit wall area of barrier, square feet ( $m^2$ ).

The leakage area ratios shown do not include openings due to gaps around doors and operable windows. The total leakage area of the smoke barrier shall be determined in accordance with Section 909.5.1 and tested in accordance with Section 909.5.2.

**[F] 909.5.1 Total leakage area.** Total leakage area of the barrier is the product of the smoke barrier gross area multiplied by the allowable leakage area ratio, plus the area of other openings such as gaps around doors and operable windows.

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

**[F] 909.5.2 Testing of leakage area.** Compliance with the maximum total leakage area shall be determined by achieving the minimum air pressure difference across the barrier with the system in the smoke control mode for mechanical smoke control systems utilizing the pressurization method. Compliance with the maximum total leakage area of passive smoke control systems shall be verified through methods such as door fan testing or other methods, as approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 909.5.3 Opening protection.** Openings in smoke barriers shall be protected by automatic-closing devices actuated by the required controls for the mechanical smoke control system. Door openings shall be protected by fire door assemblies complying with Section 716.

### Exceptions:

1. Passive smoke control systems with automatic-closing devices actuated by spot-type smoke detectors listed for releasing service installed in accordance with Section 907.3. *When used in Group I-2 or I-2.1, such detectors shall activate the fire alarm system and shall close all the smoke barrier doors within the effected zone.*
2. Fixed openings between smoke zones that are protected utilizing the airflow method *in other than Group I-2 or I-2.1.*
3. In Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1; and ambulatory care facilities, where a pair of opposite-swinging doors are installed across a corridor in accordance with Section 909.5.3.1, the doors shall be protected in accordance with Section 716. The doors shall not have a center mullion. *Positive-latching devices are required. Doors installed across corridors shall comply with Section 1010.1.1.*
4. In Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1 and ambulatory care facilities, where such doors are special-purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies installed in accordance with Section 1010.3.3 and are automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, *they shall be protected in accordance with Section 716. Doors installed across corridors shall comply with Section 1010.1.1.*
5. Group I-3.
6. Openings between smoke zones with clear ceiling heights of 14 feet (4267 mm) or greater and bank-down capacity of greater than 20 minutes as determined by the design fire size.
7. *In Group I-2 or I-2.1, smoke damper activation may be accomplished by a fire alarm control unit provided that an open area smoke detection system is provided within all areas served by an HVAC system.*

**909.5.3.1 Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1 and ambulatory care facilities.** In Group I-2, I-2.1, R-2.1; and ambulatory care facilities, where doors are installed across a corridor, the doors shall be automatic closing by smoke

detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.5 and shall have a vision panel with fire-protection-rated glazing materials in fire protection-rated frames, the area of which shall not exceed that tested. *Vision panels consisting of fire-rated glazing in approved frames shall be provided in each cross-corridor swinging door and at each cross-corridor horizontal-sliding door in a smoke barrier. In Group I-2, where swinging doors are installed across a corridor, such doors shall be opposite swinging pairs.*

**[F] 909.5.3.2 Ducts and air transfer openings.** Ducts and air transfer openings are required to be protected with a minimum Class II, 250°F (121°C) smoke damper complying with Section 717.

**[F] 909.6 Pressurization method.** The primary mechanical means of controlling smoke shall be by pressure differences across smoke barriers. Maintenance of a tenable environment is not required in the smoke control zone of fire origin.

**[F] 909.6.1 Minimum pressure difference.** The pressure difference across a smoke barrier used to separate smoke zones shall be not less than 0.05-inch water gage (0.0124 kPa) in fully sprinklered buildings.

In buildings permitted to be other than fully sprinklered, the smoke control system shall be designed to achieve pressure differences not less than two times the maximum calculated pressure difference produced by the design fire.

**[F] 909.6.2 Maximum pressure difference.** The maximum air pressure difference across a smoke barrier shall be determined by required door-opening or closing forces. The actual force required to open exit doors when the system is in the smoke control mode shall be in accordance with Section 1010.1.3. Opening and closing forces for other doors shall be determined by standard engineering methods for the resolution of forces and reactions. The calculated force to set a side-hinged, swinging door in motion shall be determined by:

$$F = F_{dc} + K(WA\Delta P)/2(W-d) \quad (\text{Equation 9-1})$$

where:

A = Door area, square feet ( $\text{m}^2$ ).

d = Distance from door handle to latch edge of door, feet (m).

F = Total door opening force, pounds (N).

$F_{dc}$  = Force required to overcome closing device, pounds (N).

K = Coefficient 5.2 (1.0).

W = Door width, feet (m).

$\Delta P$  = Design pressure difference, inches of water (Pa).

**[F] 909.6.3 Pressurized stairways and elevator hoistways.** Where stairways or elevator hoistways are pressurized, such pressurization systems shall comply with Section 909 as smoke control systems, in addition to the requirements of Sections 909.20 of this code and 909.21 of the *California Fire Code*.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**[F] 909.7 Airflow design method.** Where approved by the fire code official, smoke migration through openings fixed in a permanently open position, which are located between smoke control zones by the use of the airflow method, shall be permitted. The design airflow shall be in accordance with this section. Airflow shall be directed to limit smoke migration from the fire zone. The geometry of openings shall be considered to prevent flow reversal from turbulent effects. Smoke control systems using the airflow method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

**[F] 909.7.1 Prohibited conditions.** This method shall not be employed where either the quantity of air or the velocity of the airflow will adversely affect other portions of the smoke control system, unduly intensify the fire, disrupt plume dynamics or interfere with exiting. Airflow toward the fire shall not exceed 200 feet per minute (1.02 m/s). Where the calculated airflow exceeds this limit, the airflow method shall not be used.

**[F] 909.8 Exhaust method.** Where approved by the fire code official, mechanical smoke control for large enclosed volumes, such as in atriums or malls, shall be permitted to utilize the exhaust method. Smoke control systems using the exhaust method shall be designed in accordance with NFPA 92.

**[F] 909.8.1 Smoke layer.** The height of the lowest horizontal surface of the smoke layer interface shall be maintained not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above a walking surface that forms a portion of a required egress system within the smoke zone.

**[F] 909.9 Design fire.** The design fire shall be based on a rational analysis performed by the registered design professional and approved by the fire code official. The design fire shall be based on the analysis in accordance with Section 909.4 and this section.

**[F] 909.9.1 Factors considered.** The engineering analysis shall include the characteristics of the fuel, fuel load, effects included by the fire and whether the fire is likely to be steady or unsteady.

**[F] 909.9.2 Design fire fuel.** Determination of the design fire shall include consideration of the type of fuel, fuel spacing and configuration.

**[F] 909.9.3 Heat-release assumptions.** The analysis shall make use of best available data from approved sources and shall not be based on excessively stringent limitations of combustible material.

**[F] 909.9.4 Sprinkler effectiveness assumptions.** A documented engineering analysis shall be provided for conditions that assume fire growth is halted at the time of sprinkler activation.

**[F] 909.10 Equipment.** Equipment including, but not limited to, fans, ducts, automatic dampers and balance dampers, shall be suitable for its intended use, suitable for the probable exposure temperatures that the rational analysis indicates and as approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 909.10.1 Exhaust fans.** Components of exhaust fans shall be rated and certified by the manufacturer for the

probable temperature rise to which the components will be exposed. This temperature rise shall be computed by:

$$T_s = (Q_c/mc) + (T_a) \quad (\text{Equation 9-2})$$

where:

$c$  = Specific heat of smoke at smoke layer temperature, Btu/lb°F (kJ/kg × K).

$m$  = Exhaust rate, pounds per second (kg/s).

$Q_c$  = Convective heat output of fire, Btu/s (kW).

$T_a$  = Ambient temperature, °F (K).

$T_s$  = Smoke temperature, °F (K).

**Exception:** Reduced  $T_s$  as calculated based on the assurance of adequate dilution air.

**[F] 909.10.2 Ducts.** Duct materials and joints shall be capable of withstanding the probable temperatures and pressures to which they are exposed as determined in accordance with Section 909.10.1. Ducts shall be constructed and supported in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*. Ducts shall be leak tested to 1.5 times the maximum design pressure in accordance with nationally accepted practices. Measured leakage shall not exceed 5 percent of design flow. Results of such testing shall be a part of the documentation procedure. Ducts shall be supported directly from fire-resistance-rated structural elements of the building by substantial, noncombustible supports.

**Exception:** Flexible connections, for the purpose of vibration isolation, complying with the *California Mechanical Code* and that are constructed of approved fire-resistance-rated materials.

**[F] 909.10.3 Equipment, inlets and outlets.** Equipment shall be located so as to not expose uninvolved portions of the building to an additional fire hazard. Outside air inlets shall be located so as to minimize the potential for introducing smoke or flame into the building. Exhaust outlets shall be so located as to minimize reintroduction of smoke into the building and to limit exposure of the building or adjacent buildings to an additional fire hazard.

**[F] 909.10.4 Automatic dampers.** Automatic dampers, regardless of the purpose for which they are installed within the smoke control system, shall be listed and conform to the requirements of approved, recognized standards.

**[F] 909.10.5 Fans.** In addition to other requirements, belt-driven fans shall have 1.5 times the number of belts required for the design duty, with the minimum number of belts being two. Fans shall be selected for stable performance based on normal temperature and, where applicable, elevated temperature. Calculations and manufacturer's fan curves shall be part of the documentation procedures. Fans shall be supported and restrained by noncombustible devices in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 16.

Motors driving fans shall not be operated beyond their nameplate horsepower (kilowatts), as determined from

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

measurement of actual current draw, and shall have a minimum service factor of 1.15.

**[F] 909.11 Standby power.** Smoke control systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

**909.11.1 Equipment room.** The standby power source and its transfer switches shall be in a room separate from the normal power transformers and switch gears and ventilated directly to and from the exterior. The room shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 909.11.2 Power sources and power surges.** Elements of the smoke control system relying on volatile memories or the like shall be supplied with uninterrupted power sources of sufficient duration to span 15-minute primary power interruption. Elements of the smoke control system susceptible to power surges shall be suitably protected by conditioners, suppressors or other approved means.

**[F] 909.12 Detection and control systems.** Fire detection systems providing control input or output signals to mechanical smoke control systems or elements thereof shall comply with the requirements of Section 907. Such systems shall be equipped with a control unit complying with UL 864 and listed as smoke control equipment.

**909.12.1 Verification.** Control systems for mechanical smoke control systems shall include provisions for verification. Verification shall include positive confirmation of actuation, testing, manual override and the presence of power downstream of all disconnects. A preprogrammed weekly test sequence shall report abnormal conditions audibly, visually and by printed report. The preprogrammed weekly test shall operate all devices, equipment and components used for smoke control.

*The status of dampers shall be determined using limit or proximity switches installed at the damper or incorporated into the damper actuator. Where multiple dampers are grouped together in an assembly requiring one or more actuators, each damper shall be independently controlled by a separate actuator and provided with an individual limit or proximity switch, or the dampers shall be linked together by a reliable and durable mechanical or otherwise permanent means into one or more groups, with each group provided with a common limit or proximity switch.*

*The status of fans shall be determined by sensing the air flow downstream of the fans using pressure differential switches or transmitters, or by other means of positive proof of air flow where approved by the enforcing authority.*

**Exception:** Where verification of individual components tested through the preprogrammed weekly testing sequence will interfere with, and produce unwanted effects to, normal building operation, such individual components are permitted to be bypassed from the

preprogrammed weekly testing, where *approved* by the building official and in accordance with both of the following:

1. Where the operation of components is bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test, presence of power downstream of all disconnects shall be verified weekly by a *listed* control unit.
2. Testing of all components bypassed from the preprogrammed weekly test shall be in accordance with Section 909.20.6 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 909.12.2 Wiring.** In addition to meeting requirements of the *California Electrical Code*, all wiring, regardless of voltage, shall be fully enclosed within continuous raceways.

**[F] 909.12.3 Activation.** Smoke control systems shall be activated in accordance with this section.

**[F] 909.12.3.1 Pressurization, airflow or exhaust method.** Mechanical smoke control systems using the pressurization, airflow or exhaust method shall have completely automatic control.

**[F] 909.12.3.2 Passive method.** Passive smoke control systems actuated by approved spot-type detectors listed for releasing service shall be permitted.

**[F] 909.12.4 Automatic control.** Where completely automatic control is required or used, the automatic-control sequences shall be initiated from an appropriately zoned automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.3.1.1, manual controls provided with ready access for the fire department and any smoke detectors required by engineering analysis.

**[F] 909.13 Control air tubing.** Control air tubing shall be of sufficient size to meet the required response times. Tubing shall be flushed clean and dry prior to final connections and shall be adequately supported and protected from damage. Tubing passing through concrete or masonry shall be sleeved and protected from abrasion and electrolytic action.

**[F] 909.13.1 Materials.** Control-air tubing shall be hard-drawn copper, Type L, ACR in accordance with ASTM B42, ASTM B43, ASTM B68/B68M, ASTM B88, ASTM B251 and ASTM B280. Fittings shall be wrought copper or brass, solder type in accordance with ASME B16.18 or ASME B16.22. Changes in direction shall be made with appropriate tool bends. Brass compression-type fittings shall be used at final connection to devices; other joints shall be brazed using a BCuP-5 brazing alloy with solidus above 1,100°F (593°C) and liquids below 1,500°F (816°C). Brazing flux shall be used on copper-to-brass joints only.

**Exception:** Nonmetallic tubing used within control panels and at the final connection to devices provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. Tubing shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

2. Tubing and connected devices shall be completely enclosed within a galvanized or paint-grade steel enclosure having a minimum thickness of 0.0296 inch (0.7534 mm) (No. 22 gage). Entry to the enclosure shall be by copper tubing with a protective grommet of neoprene or Teflon or by suitable brass compression to male barbed adapter.
3. Tubing shall be identified by appropriately documented coding.
4. Tubing shall be neatly tied and supported within the enclosure. Tubing bridging cabinets and doors or moveable devices shall be of sufficient length to avoid tension and excessive stress. Tubing shall be protected against abrasion. Tubing connected to devices on doors shall be fastened along hinges.

**[F] 909.13.2 Isolation from other functions.** Control tubing serving other than smoke control functions shall be isolated by automatic isolation valves or shall be an independent system.

**[F] 909.13.3 Testing.** Control air tubing shall be tested at three times the operating pressure for not less than 30 minutes without any noticeable loss in gauge pressure prior to final connection to devices.

**[F] 909.14 Marking and identification.** The detection and control systems shall be clearly marked at all junctions, accesses and terminations.

**[F] 909.15 Control diagrams.** Identical control diagrams showing all devices in the system and identifying their location and function shall be maintained current and kept on file with the fire code official, the fire department and in the fire command center in a format and manner approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 909.16 Fire fighter's smoke control panel.** A fire fighter's smoke control panel for fire department emergency response purposes only shall be provided and shall include manual control or override of automatic control for mechanical smoke control systems. The panel shall be located in a fire command center complying with Section 911 in high-rise buildings. *Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access* or buildings with smoke-protected assembly seating. In all other buildings, the fire fighter's smoke control panel shall be installed in an approved location adjacent to the fire alarm control panel. The fire fighter's smoke control panel shall comply with Sections 909.16.1 through 909.16.3.

**[F] 909.16.1 Smoke control systems.** Fans within the building shall be shown on the fire fighter's control panel. A clear indication of the direction of airflow and the relationship of components shall be displayed. Status indicators shall be provided for all smoke control equipment, annunciated by fan and zone, and by *approved* pilot-lamp-type indicators as follows:

1. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their normal status—WHITE.

2. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their off or closed status—RED.
3. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in their on or open status—GREEN.
4. Fans, dampers and other operating equipment in a fault status—YELLOW/AMBER.

**[F] 909.16.2 Smoke control panel.** The fire fighter's control panel shall provide control capability over the complete smoke control system equipment within the building as follows:

1. ON-AUTO-OFF control over each individual piece of operating smoke control equipment that can be controlled from other sources within the building. This includes stairway pressurization fans; smoke exhaust fans; supply, return and exhaust fans; elevator shaft fans and other operating equipment used or intended for smoke control purposes.
2. OPEN-AUTO-CLOSE control over individual dampers relating to smoke control and that are controlled from other sources within the building.
3. ON-OFF or OPEN-CLOSE control over smoke control and other critical equipment associated with a fire or smoke emergency and that can only be controlled from the fire fighter's control panel.

#### Exceptions:

1. Complex systems, where approved, where the controls and indicators are combined to control and indicate all elements of a single smoke zone as a unit.
2. Complex systems, where approved, where the control is accomplished by computer interface using approved, plain English commands.

**[F] 909.16.3 Control action and priorities.** The fire-fighter's control panel actions shall be as follows:

1. ON-OFF and OPEN-CLOSE control actions shall have the highest priority of any control point within the building. Once issued from the fire fighter's control panel, automatic or manual control from any other control point within the building shall not contradict the control action. Where automatic means are provided to interrupt normal, nonemergency equipment operation or produce a specific result to safeguard the building or equipment including, but not limited to, duct freezestats, duct smoke detectors, high-temperature cutouts, temperature-actuated linkage and similar devices, such means shall be capable of being overridden by the fire fighter's control panel. The last control action as indicated by each fire fighter's control panel switch position shall prevail. Control actions shall not require the smoke control system to assume more than one configuration at any one time.

**Exception:** Power disconnects required by the California Electrical Code.

2. Only the AUTO position of each three-position fire-fighter's control panel switch shall allow automatic or manual control action from other control points within the building. The AUTO position shall be the NORMAL, nonemergency, building control position. Where a fire fighter's control panel is in the AUTO position, the actual status of the device (on, off, open, closed) shall continue to be indicated by the status indicator described in Section 909.16.1. Where directed by an automatic signal to assume an emergency condition, the NORMAL position shall become the emergency condition for that device or group of devices within the zone. Control actions shall not require the smoke control system to assume more than one configuration at any one time.

**[F] 909.17 System response time.** Smoke-control system activation shall be initiated immediately after receipt of an appropriate automatic or manual activation command. Smoke control systems shall activate individual components (such as dampers and fans) in the sequence necessary to prevent physical damage to the fans, dampers, ducts and other equipment. For purposes of smoke control, the fire fighter's control panel response time shall be the same for automatic or manual smoke control action initiated from any other building control point. The total response time, including that necessary for detection, shutdown of operating equipment and smoke control system startup, shall allow for full operational mode to be achieved before the conditions in the space exceed the design smoke condition. Upon receipt of an alarm condition at the fire alarm control panel, fans, dampers and automatic doors shall have achieved their proper operating state and the final status shall be indicated at the smoke control panel within 90 seconds. The system response time for each component and their sequential relationships shall be detailed in the required rational analysis and verification of their installed condition reported in the required final report.

**[F] 909.18 Acceptance testing.** Devices, equipment, components and sequences shall be individually tested. These tests, in addition to those required by other provisions of this code, shall consist of determination of function, sequence and, where applicable, capacity of their installed condition.

**[F] 909.18.1 Detection devices.** Smoke or fire detectors that are a part of a smoke control system shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 9 in their installed condition. Where applicable, this testing shall include verification of airflow in both minimum and maximum conditions.

**[F] 909.18.2 Ducts.** Ducts that are part of a smoke control system shall be traversed using generally accepted practices to determine actual air quantities.

**[F] 909.18.3 Dampers.** Dampers shall be tested for function in their installed condition.

**[F] 909.18.4 Inlets and outlets.** Inlets and outlets shall be read using generally accepted practices to determine air quantities.

**[F] 909.18.5 Fans.** Fans shall be examined for correct rotation. Measurements of voltage, amperage, revolutions per minute (rpm) and belt tension shall be made.

**[F] 909.18.6 Smoke barriers.** Measurements using inclined manometers or other approved calibrated measuring devices shall be made of the pressure differences across smoke barriers. Such measurements shall be conducted for each possible smoke control condition.

**[F] 909.18.7 Controls.** Each smoke zone equipped with an automatic-initiation device shall be put into operation by the actuation of one such device. Each additional device within the zone shall be verified to cause the same sequence without requiring the operation of fan motors in order to prevent damage. Control sequences shall be verified throughout the system, including verification of override from the fire fighter's control panel and simulation of standby power conditions.

**[F] 909.18.8 Testing for smoke control.** Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector in accordance with Section 1705.19.

**[F] 909.18.8.1 Scope of testing.** Testing shall be conducted in accordance with the following:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.
2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure-difference testing, flow measurements, and detection and control verification.

**[F] 909.18.8.2 Qualifications.** Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

**[F] 909.18.8.3 Reports.** A complete report of testing shall be prepared by the approved agency. The report shall include identification of all devices by manufacturer, nameplate data, design values, measured values and identification tag or mark. The report shall be reviewed by the responsible registered design professional and, when satisfied that the design intent has been achieved, the responsible registered design professional shall sign, seal and date the report.

**[F] 909.18.8.3.1 Report filing.** A copy of the final report shall be filed with the fire code official and an identical copy shall be maintained in an approved location at the building.

**[F] 909.18.9 Identification and documentation.** Charts, drawings and other documents identifying and locating each component of the smoke control system, and describing its proper function and maintenance requirements, shall be maintained on file at the building as an attachment to the report required by Section 909.18.8.3. Devices shall have an approved identifying tag or mark on them consistent with the other required documentation and shall be dated indicating the last time they were successfully tested and by whom.

*An approved operations manual describing the complete operations of the smoke control system and functioning of the firefighters smoke control panel shall be maintained at the fire command center.*

**[F] 909.19 System acceptance.** Buildings, or portions thereof, required by this code to comply with this section shall not be issued a certificate of occupancy until such time that the fire code official determines that the provisions of this section have been fully complied with and that the fire department has received satisfactory instruction on the operation, both automatic and manual, of the system and a written maintenance program complying with the requirements of Section 909.20.1 of the *California Fire Code* has been submitted and approved by the fire code official.

**Exception:** In buildings of phased construction, a temporary certificate of occupancy, as approved by the fire code official, shall be allowed provided that those portions of the building to be occupied meet the requirements of this section and that the remainder does not pose a significant hazard to the safety of the proposed occupants or adjacent buildings.

**909.20 Smokeproof enclosures.** Where required by Section 1023.12, a smokeproof enclosure shall be constructed in accordance with this section. A smokeproof enclosure shall consist of an interior exit stairway or ramp that is enclosed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 1023 and an open exterior balcony, ventilated vestibule or pressurized stair and pressurized entrance vestibule meeting the requirements of this section. Where access to the roof is required by the *California Fire Code*, such access shall be from the smokeproof enclosure where a smokeproof enclosure is required.

**909.20.1 Access.** Access to the stairway or ramp shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony. The minimum dimension of the vestibule shall be not less than the required width of the corridor leading to the vestibule calculated in accordance with Section 1005.1, but shall not have a width of less than 44 inches (1118 mm) and shall not have a length of less than 72 inches (1829 mm) in the direction of egress travel.

**909.20.2 Construction.** The smokeproof enclosure shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings are not permitted other than the required means of egress doors. The vestibule shall be separated from the stairway or ramp by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The open exterior balcony shall be constructed in accordance with the fire-resistance rating requirements for floor assemblies.

**909.20.2.1 Door closers.** Doors in a smokeproof enclosure shall be self- or automatic closing by actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6 and shall be installed at the floor-side entrance to the

smokeproof enclosure. The actuation of the smoke detector on any door shall activate the closing devices on all doors in the smokeproof enclosure at all levels. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

**909.20.2.2 Vestibule doors.** Where access to the stairway is by way of a vestibule, the door assembly from the building into the vestibule shall be a 90-minute fire door assembly complying with Section 716.5.5. The door assembly from the vestibule to the stairway shall have not less than a 20-minute fire protection rating and shall comply with the requirements for a smoke door assembly in accordance with Section 716.5.3. The door shall be installed in accordance with NFPA-105.

**909.20.2.3 Standpipes.** Where access to the stairway is by way of a vestibule, Fire department standpipe connections and valves serving the floor shall be within the vestibule unless otherwise approved by the fire code official. Standpipe connections in vestibules shall be located in such a manner so as not to obstruct egress where hose lines are connected and charged.

**909.20.2.4 Pressure differences.** The minimum pressure differences within the vestibule with the doors closed shall be 0.05-inch water gage (12.44 Pa) positive pressure relative to the fire floor and 0.05-inch water gage (12.44 Pa) negative pressure relative to the exit enclosure. No pressure difference is required relative to a nonfire floor.

**909.20.2.5 Relief vent.** A relief vent capable of discharging a minimum of 2,500 cubic feet per minute (1180 L/s) of air at the design pressure difference shall be located in the upper portion of such pressurized exit enclosures.

**Exception:** When approved by the enforcing agency, other engineered design methods capable of discharging a minimum of 2,500 cubic feet per minute (1180 L/s) of air at the design pressure difference shall be permitted.

**909.20.3 Natural ventilation alternative.** The provisions of Sections 909.20.3.1 through 909.20.3.3 shall apply to ventilation of smokeproof enclosures by natural means.

**909.20.3.1 Balcony doors.** Where access to the stairway or ramp is by way of an open exterior balcony, the door assembly into the enclosure shall be a fire door assembly in accordance with Section 716.

**909.20.3.2 Vestibule ventilation.** Where access to the stairway is by way of a vestibule, each vestibule shall have a minimum net area of 16 square feet ( $1.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) of opening in a wall facing an outer court, yard or public way that is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width.

**909.20.4 Mechanical pressurization alternative.** The provisions of Sections 909.20.4.1 through 909.20.4.4 shall apply to ventilation of pressurization enclosures by mechanical means.

**909.20.4.1 Pressure differences.** The pressurization system shall be designed so that the minimum pressure differences provided within the vestibule with the doors closed shall be 0.05-inch water gage (12.44 Pa) positive pressure relative to the fire floor and 0.05-inch water gage (12.44 Pa) negative pressure relative to the exit enclosure. No pressure difference is required relative to a nonfire floor.

**909.20.4.2 Relief vent.** A relief vent capable of discharging a minimum of 2,500 cubic feet per minute (1180 L/s) of air at the design pressure difference shall be located in the upper portion of such pressurized exit stairway or ramp enclosures.

**Exception:** When approved by the enforcing agency, other engineered design methods capable of discharging a minimum of 2,500 cubic feet per minute (1180 L/s) of air at the design pressure difference shall be permitted.

#### → 909.20.5 Reserved.

#### 909.20.6 Pressurized stair and vestibule alternative.

The provisions of Sections 909.20.6.1 through 909.20.6.3 shall apply to smokeproof enclosures using a pressurized stair and pressurized entrance vestibule.

**909.20.6.1 Vestibule doors.** The door assembly from the building into the vestibule shall be a fire door assembly complying with Section 716.2.2.1. The door assembly from the vestibule to the stairway shall have not less than a 20-minute fire protection rating and meet the requirements for a smoke door assembly in accordance with Section 716.2.2.1. The door shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 105.

**909.20.6.2 Pressure difference.** The stair enclosure shall be pressurized to not less than 0.05 inch of water gage (12.44 Pa) positive pressure relative to the vestibule with all stairway doors closed under the maximum anticipated stack pressures. The vestibule, with doors closed, shall have not less than 0.05 inch of water gage (12.44 Pa) positive pressure relative to the fire floor. The pressure difference across doors shall not exceed 30 pounds (133-N) maximum force to begin opening the door.

**909.20.6.3 Dampered relief opening.** A controlled relief vent having the capacity to discharge not less than 2,500 cubic feet per minute (1180 L/s) of air at the design pressure difference shall be located in the upper portion of the pressurized exit enclosure.

**909.20.7 Pressurization equipment.** The activation of pressurization equipment required by the alternatives in Sections 909.20.4, 909.20.5 and 909.20.6 shall be by smoke detectors installed at each floor level at an approved location at the entrance to the smokeproof enclosure and upon activation of the automatic controls required by Section 909.12.4. When the closing device for the stairway and ramp shaft and vestibule doors is activated by smoke detection or power failure, the mechanical

equipment shall activate and operate at the required performance levels. Smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with Section 907.3.

**909.20.7.1 Pressurization systems.** Smokeproof enclosure pressurization systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems. The equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall comply with one of the following:

1. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and directly connected to the smokeproof enclosure or connected to the smokeproof enclosure by ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.
2. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the smokeproof enclosure with intake or exhaust directly from and to the outside or through ductwork enclosed by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.
3. Equipment, control wiring, power wiring and ductwork shall be located within the building if separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**Exception:**

1. Control wiring and power wiring located outside of a 2-hour fire barrier construction shall be protected using any one of the following methods:
  - 1.1. Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196 and shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
  - 1.2. Where encased with not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.
  - 1.3. Electrical circuit protective systems shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.

**909.20.7.2 Standby power.** Pressurization and stairway and ramp shaft ventilation systems and automatic fire detection systems shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

**909.20.7.3 Acceptance and testing.** Before the mechanical equipment is approved, the system shall be tested in the presence of the building official to confirm that the system is operating in compliance with these requirements.

**909.21 Elevator hoistway pressurization alternative.** Where elevator hoistway pressurization is provided in lieu of required enclosed elevator lobbies, the pressurization system shall comply with Sections 909.21.1 through 909.21.11.

**909.21.1 Pressurization requirements.** Elevator hoistways shall be pressurized to maintain a minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and a maximum positive pressure of 0.25 inch of water (67 Pa) with respect to adjacent occupied space on all floors. This pressure shall be measured at the midpoint of each hoistway door, with all elevator cars at the floor of recall and all hoistway doors on the floor of recall open and all other hoistway doors closed. The pressure differentials shall be measured between the hoistway and the adjacent elevator landing. The opening and closing of hoistway doors at each level must be demonstrated during this test. The supply air intake shall be from an outside, uncontaminated source located a minimum distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) from any air exhaust system or outlet.

**Exceptions:**

1. On floors containing only Group R occupancies, the pressure differential is permitted to be measured between the hoistway and a dwelling unit or sleeping unit.
2. Where an elevator opens into a lobby enclosed in accordance with Section 3007.6 or 3008.6, the pressure differential is permitted to be measured between the hoistway and the space immediately outside the door(s) from the floor to the enclosed lobby.
3. The pressure differential is permitted to be measured relative to the outdoor atmosphere on floors other than the following:
  - 3.1. The fire floor.
  - 3.2. The two floors immediately below the fire floor.
  - 3.3. The floor immediately above the fire floor.
4. The minimum positive pressure of 0.10 inch of water (25 Pa) and a maximum positive pressure of 0.25 inch of water (67 Pa) with respect to occupied floors are not required at the floor of recall with the doors open.

**909.21.1.1 Use of ventilation systems.** Ventilation systems, other than hoistway supply air systems, are permitted to be used to exhaust air from adjacent spaces on the fire floor, two floors immediately below and one floor immediately above the fire floor to the building's exterior where necessary to maintain positive pressure relationships as required in Section 909.21.1 during operation of the elevator shaft pressurization system.

**909.21.2 Rational analysis.** A rational analysis complying with Section 909.4 shall be submitted with the construction documents.

**909.21.3 Ducts for system.** Any duct system that is part of the pressurization system shall be protected with the same fire-resistance rating as required for the elevator shaft enclosure.

**909.21.4 Fan system.** The fan system provided for the pressurization system shall be as required by Sections 909.21.4.1 through 909.21.4.4.

**909.21.4.1 Fire resistance.** Where located within the building, the fan system that provides the pressurization shall be protected with the same fire-resistance rating required for the elevator shaft enclosure.

**909.21.4.2 Smoke detection.** The fan system shall be equipped with a smoke detector that will automatically shut down the fan system when smoke is detected within the system.

**909.21.4.3 Separate systems.** A separate fan system shall be used for each elevator hoistway.

**909.21.4.4 Fan capacity.** The supply fan shall be either adjustable with a capacity of not less than 1,000 cubic feet per minute ( $0.4719 \text{ m}^3/\text{s}$ ) per door, or that specified by a registered design professional to meet the requirements of a designed pressurization system.

**909.21.5 Standby power.** The pressurization system shall be provided with standby power in accordance with Section 2702.

**909.21.6 Activation of pressurization system.** The elevator pressurization system shall be activated upon activation of either the building fire alarm system or the elevator lobby smoke detectors. Where both a building fire alarm system and elevator lobby smoke detectors are present, each shall be independently capable of activating the pressurization system.

**909.21.7 Testing.** Testing for performance shall be required in accordance with Section 909.18.8. System acceptance shall be in accordance with Section 909.19.

**909.21.8 Marking and identification.** Detection and control systems shall be marked in accordance with Section 909.14.

**909.21.9 Control diagrams.** Control diagrams shall be provided in accordance with Section 909.15.

**909.21.10 Control panel.** A control panel complying with Section 909.16 shall be provided.

**909.21.11 System response time.** Hoistway pressurization systems shall comply with the requirements for smoke control system response time in Section 909.17.

## SECTION 910 SMOKE AND HEAT REMOVAL

**[F] 910.1 General.** Where required by this code, smoke and heat vents or mechanical smoke removal systems shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**[F] 910.2 Where required.** Smoke and heat vents or a mechanical smoke removal system shall be installed as required by Sections 910.2.1 and 910.2.2.

**Exceptions:**

1. Frozen food warehouses used solely for storage of Class I and II commodities where protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.
2. Smoke and heat removal shall not be required in areas of buildings equipped with early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers.
3. Smoke and heat removal shall not be required in areas of buildings equipped with control mode special application sprinklers with a response time index of 50 ( $m \times s$ )<sup>1/2</sup> or less that are listed to control a fire in stored commodities with 12 or fewer sprinklers.

**910.2.1 Group F-1 or S-1.** Smoke and heat vents installed in accordance with Section 910.3 or a mechanical smoke removal system installed in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed in buildings and portions thereof used as a Group F-1 or S-1 occupancy having more than 50,000 square feet ( $4645 m^2$ ) of undivided area. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.

**Exception:** Group F-1 aircraft manufacturing buildings and Group S-1 aircraft repair hangars.

**[F] 910.2.2 High-piled combustible storage.** Smoke and heat removal required by Table 3206.2 of the *California Fire Code* for buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible storage shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 in unsprinklered buildings. In buildings and portions thereof containing high-piled combustible storage equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, a smoke and heat removal system shall be installed in accordance with Section 910.3 or 910.4. In occupied portions of a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where the upper surface of the story is not a roof assembly, a mechanical smoke removal system in accordance with Section 910.4 shall be installed.

**[F] 910.3 Smoke and heat vents.** The design and installation of smoke and heat vents shall be in accordance with Sections 910.3.1 through 910.3.3.

**[F] 910.3.1 Listing and labeling.** Smoke and heat vents shall be *listed* and labeled to indicate compliance with UL 793 or FM 4430 or ICC ES AC 331.

**[F] 910.3.2 Smoke and heat vent locations.** Smoke and heat vents shall be located 20 feet (6096 mm) or more from adjacent lot lines and fire walls and 10 feet (3048 mm) or more from fire barriers. Vents shall be uniformly located within the roof in the areas of the building where the vents are required to be installed by Section 910.2 with

consideration given to roof pitch, sprinkler location and structural members.

**910.3.3 Smoke and heat vents area.** The required aggregate area of smoke and heat vents shall be calculated as follows:

For buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1:

$$A_{VR} = V/9000 \quad (\text{Equation 9-3})$$

where:

$A_{VR}$  = The required aggregate vent area ( $ft^2$ ).

$V$  = Volume ( $ft^3$ ) of the area that requires smoke removal.

For unsprinklered buildings:

$$A_{VR} = A_{FA}/50 \quad (\text{Equation 9-4})$$

where:

$A_{VR}$  = The required aggregate vent area ( $ft^2$ ).

$A_{FA}$  = The area of the floor in the area that requires smoke removal.

**[F] 910.3.4 Vent operation.** Smoke and heat vents shall be capable of being operated by approved automatic and manual means.

**[F] 910.3.5 Fusible link temperature rating.** Where vents are installed in areas provided with automatic fire sprinklers and the vents operate by fusible link, the fusible link shall have a temperature rating of 360°F (182°C).

**[F] 910.4 Mechanical smoke removal systems.** Mechanical smoke removal systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 910.4.1 through 910.4.7.

**910.4.1 Automatic sprinklers required.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**910.4.2 Exhaust fan construction.** Exhaust fans that are part of a mechanical smoke removal system shall be rated for operation at 221°F (105°C). Exhaust fan motors shall be located outside of the exhaust fan air stream.

**910.4.3 System design criteria.** The mechanical smoke removal system shall be sized to exhaust the building at a minimum rate of two air changes per hour based on the volume of the building or portion thereof without contents. The capacity of each exhaust fan shall not exceed 30,000 cubic feet per minute (14.2  $m^3/s$ ).

**910.4.3.1 Makeup air.** Makeup air openings shall be provided within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the floor level. Operation of makeup air openings shall be manual or automatic. The minimum gross area of makeup air inlets shall be 8 square feet per 1,000 cubic feet per minute (0.74  $m^2$  per 0.4719  $m^3/s$ ) of smoke exhaust.

**910.4.4 Activation.** The mechanical smoke removal system shall be activated by manual controls only.

**910.4.5 Manual control location.** Manual controls shall be located where they are able to be accessed by the fire service from an exterior door of the building and separated from the remainder of the building by not less than 1-hour

fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 910.4.6 Control wiring.** Wiring for operation and control of mechanical smoke removal systems shall be connected ahead of the main disconnect in accordance with Section 701.12E of the *California Electrical Code* and be protected against interior fire exposure to temperatures in excess of 1,000°F (538°C) for a period of not less than 15 minutes.

**[F] 910.4.7 Controls.** Where building air-handling and mechanical smoke removal systems are combined or where independent building air-handling systems are provided, fans shall automatically shut down in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*. The manual controls provided for the smoke removal system shall have the capability to override the automatic shutdown of fans that are part of the smoke removal system.

**910.5 Maintenance.** Smoke and heat vents and mechanical smoke removal systems shall be maintained in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

## SECTION 911 FIRE COMMAND CENTER

**[F] 911.1 General.** Where required by other sections of this code, in buildings classified as high-rise buildings by this code and in all F-1 and S-1 occupancies with a building footprint of over 500,000 square feet (46 452 m<sup>2</sup>) and Group I-2 occupancies having occupied floors located more than 75 feet above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a fire command center for fire department operations shall be provided and shall comply with Sections 911.1.1 through 911.1.7.

**[F] 911.1.1 Location and access.** The location and access to the fire command center shall be approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 911.1.2 Separation.** The fire command center shall be separated from the remainder of the building by not less than a 2-hour fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

**[F] 911.1.3 Size.** The fire command center shall be not less than 0.015 percent of the total building area of the facility served or 200 square feet (19 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, whichever is greater, with a minimum dimension of 0.7 times the square root of the room area or 10 feet (3048 mm), whichever is greater. Where a fire command is required for Group F-1 and S-1 occupancies with a building footprint greater than 500,000 square feet (46 452 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, the fire command center shall have a minimum size of 96 square feet (9 m<sup>2</sup>) with a minimum dimension of 8 feet (2348 mm) where approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 911.1.4 Layout approval.** A layout of the fire command center and all features required by this section to be contained therein shall be submitted for approval prior to installation.

**[F] 911.1.5 Storage.** Storage unrelated to operation of the fire command center shall be prohibited.

**[F] 911.1.6 Required features.** The fire command center shall comply with NFPA 72 and shall contain all of the following features:

1. The emergency voice/alarm communication system control unit.
2. The fire department communications system.
3. *Fire alarm system zoning annunciator panel required by Section 907.6.4.3.*
4. Annunciator unit visually indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational.
5. Status indicators and controls for air distribution systems.
6. The fire fighter's control panel required by Section 909.16 for smoke control systems installed in the building.
7. Controls for unlocking interior exit stairway doors simultaneously.
8. Sprinkler valve and waterflow detector display panels.
9. Emergency and standby power status indicators.
10. A telephone for fire department use with controlled access to the public telephone system.
11. Fire pump status indicators.
12. Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, fire fighter air replenishment system, fire-fighting equipment and fire department access and the location of fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, smoke barriers and smoke partitions.
13. An approved Building Information Card that contains, but is not limited to, the following information:
  - 13.1. General building information that includes: property name, address, the number of floors in the building above and below grade, use and occupancy classification (for mixed uses, identify the different types of occupancies on each floor), and the estimated building population during the day, night and weekend.
  - 13.2. Building emergency contact information that includes: a list of the building's emergency contacts including but not limited to building manager and building engineer and their respective work phone number, cell phone number, e-mail address.
  - 13.3. Building construction information that includes: the type of building construction including but not limited to floors, walls, columns, and roof assembly.
  - 13.4. Exit access and exit stairway information that includes: number of exit access and

## FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS

exit stairways in the building, each exit access and exit stairway designation and floors served, location where each exit access and exit stairway discharges, interior exit stairways that are pressurized, exit stairways provided with emergency lighting, each exit stairway that allows reentry, exit stairways providing roof access; elevator information that includes: number of elevator banks, elevator bank designation, elevator car numbers and respective floors that they serve; location of elevator machine rooms, control rooms and control spaces; location of sky lobby, location of freight elevator banks.

- 13.5. Building services and system information that includes: location of mechanical rooms, location of building management system, location and capacity of all fuel oil tanks, location of emergency generator, location of natural gas service.
- 13.6. Fire protection system information that includes: location of standpipes, location of fire pump room, location of fire department connections, floors protected by automatic sprinklers, location of different types of automatic sprinkler systems installed including, but not limited to, dry, wet and pre-action.
- 13.7 Hazardous material information that includes: location of hazardous material, quantity of hazardous material.
14. Work table.
15. Generator supervision devices, manual start and transfer features.
16. Public address system, where specifically required by other sections of this code.
17. Elevator fire recall switch in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*.
18. Elevator emergency or standby power selector switch(es), where emergency or standby power is provided.
19. A master switch for unlocking elevator lobby doors permitted by Section 1010.2.12.1.

**[SFM]** *Fire command centers shall not be used for the housing of any boiler, heating unit, generator, combustible storage or similar hazardous equipment or storage.*

**[F] 911.1.7 Fire command center identification.** The fire command center shall be identified by a permanent easily visible sign reading "FIRE COMMAND CENTER" located on the door to the fire command center.

**911.1.8 Ventilation.** *The fire command center shall be provided with an independent ventilation or air-conditioning system.*

## SECTION 912 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

**[F] 912.1 Installation.** Fire department connections shall be installed in accordance with the NFPA standard applicable to the system design and shall comply with Sections 912.2 through 912.6.

**[F] 912.2 Location.** With respect to hydrants, driveways, buildings and landscaping, fire department connections shall be so located that fire apparatus and hose connected to supply the system will not obstruct access to the buildings for other fire apparatus. The location of fire department connections shall be approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 912.2.1 Visible location.** Fire department connections shall be located on the street side of buildings or facing approved fire apparatus access roads, fully visible and recognizable from the street, fire apparatus access road or nearest point of fire department vehicle access or as otherwise approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 912.2.2 Existing buildings.** On existing buildings, wherever the fire department connection is not visible to approaching fire apparatus, the fire department connection shall be indicated by an approved sign mounted on the street front or on the side of the building. Such sign shall have the letters "FDC" not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high and words in letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high or an arrow to indicate the location. Such signs shall be subject to the approval of the fire code official.

**[F] 912.3 Fire hose threads.** Fire hose threads used in connection with standpipe systems shall be approved and shall be compatible with fire department hose threads.

**[F] 912.4 Access.** Immediate access to fire department connections shall be maintained at all times and without obstruction by fences, bushes, trees, walls or any other fixed or moveable object. Access to fire department connections shall be approved by the fire code official.

### Exceptions:

1. Fences, where provided with an access gate equipped with a sign complying with the legend requirements of Section 912.5 and a means of emergency operation. The gate and the means of emergency operation shall be approved by the fire code official and maintained operational at all times.
2. When acceptable to the fire authority having jurisdiction, fire department connections for Group I-3 detention facilities may be located inside all security walls or fences on the property.

**[F] 912.4.1 Locking fire department connection caps.** The fire code official is authorized to require locking caps on fire department connections for water-based fire protection systems where the responding fire department carries appropriate key wrenches for removal.

**[F] 912.4.2 Clear space around connections.** A working space of not less than 36 inches (762 mm) in width, 36 inches (914 mm) in depth and 78 inches (1981 mm) in height shall be provided and maintained in front of and to

the sides of wall-mounted fire department connections and around the circumference of free-standing fire department connections, except as otherwise required or approved by the fire code official.

**[F] 912.4.3 Physical protection.** Where fire department connections are subject to impact by a motor vehicle, vehicle impact protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 312 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 912.5 Signs.** A metal sign with raised letters not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in size shall be mounted on all fire department connections serving automatic sprinklers, standpipes or fire pump connections. Such signs shall read: "AUTOMATIC SPRINKLERS," "STANDPIPES," or "TEST CONNECTION," or a combination thereof as applicable. Where the fire department connection does not serve the entire building, a sign shall be provided indicating the portions of the building served.

**[P] 912.6 Backflow protection.** The potable water supply to automatic sprinkler and standpipe systems shall be protected against backflow as required by the *Health and Safety Code Section 13114.7*.

## SECTION 913 FIRE PUMPS

**[F] 913.1 General.** Where provided, fire pumps for fire protection systems shall be installed in accordance with this section and NFPA 20.

**Exception:** Pumps for automatic sprinkler systems installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, or Section R313 of the *California Residential Code*.

**[F] 913.2 Protection against interruption of service.** The fire pump, driver and controller shall be protected in accordance with NFPA 20 against possible interruption of service through damage caused by explosion, fire, flood, earthquake, rodents, insects, windstorm, freezing, vandalism and other adverse conditions.

**913.2.1 Protection of fire pump rooms.** Fire pumps shall be located in rooms that are separated from all other areas of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

### Exceptions:

1. In other than high-rise buildings, separation by 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or 1-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, shall be permitted in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. Separation is not required for fire pumps physically separated in accordance with NFPA 20.

**[F] 913.2.2 Circuits supplying fire pumps.** Cables used for survivability of circuits supplying fire pumps shall be protected using one of the following methods:

1. Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196 and shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
2. Electrical circuit protective systems shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.
3. Construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
4. The cable or raceway is encased in a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete.

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to cables, or portions of cables, located within a fire pump room or generator room which is separated from the remainder of the occupancy with fire-resistance-rated construction.

**[F] 913.3 Temperature of pump room.** Suitable means shall be provided for maintaining the temperature of a pump room or pump house, where required, above 40°F (5°C).

**[F] 913.3.1 Engine manufacturer's recommendation.** Temperature of the pump room, pump house or area where engines are installed shall never be less than the minimum recommended by the engine manufacturer. The engine manufacturer's recommendations for oil heaters shall be followed.

**[F] 913.4 Valve supervision.** Where provided, the fire pump suction, discharge and bypass valves, and isolation valves on the backflow prevention device or assembly shall be supervised open by one of the following methods:

1. Central-station, proprietary or remote-station signaling service.
2. Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a constantly attended location.
3. Locking valves open.
4. Sealing of valves and approved weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

**[F] 913.4.1 Test outlet valve supervision.** Fire pump test outlet valves shall be supervised in the closed position.

**[F] 913.5 Acceptance test.** Acceptance testing shall be done in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 20.

**913.6 Fire pumps in high-rise buildings.** Engine-driven fire pumps and electric drive fire pumps supplied by generators shall both be provided with an on-premises fuel supply, sufficient for not less than 8-hour full-demand operation at 100 percent of the rated pump capacity in addition to all other required supply demands in accordance with NFPA 20 and this section. <

## SECTION 914 EMERGENCY RESPONDER SAFETY FEATURES

**[F] 914.1 Shaftway markings.** Vertical shafts shall be identified as required by Sections 914.1.1 and 914.1.2.

**[F] 914.1.1 Exterior access to shaftways.** Outside openings accessible to the fire department and that open directly on a hoistway or shaftway communicating between two or more floors in a building shall be plainly marked with the word "SHAFTWAY" in red letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high on a white background. Such warning signs shall be placed so as to be readily discernible from the outside of the building.

**[F] 914.1.2 Interior access to shaftways.** Door or window openings to a hoistway or shaftway from the interior of the building shall be plainly marked with the word "SHAFTWAY" in red letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high on a white background. Such warning signs shall be placed so as to be readily discernible.

**Exception:** Markings shall not be required on shaftway openings that are readily discernible as openings onto a shaftway by the construction or arrangement.

**[F] 914.2 Equipment room identification.** Fire protection equipment shall be identified in an approved manner. Rooms containing controls for air-conditioning systems, sprinkler risers and valves or other fire detection, suppression or control elements shall be identified for the use of the fire department. Approved signs required to identify fire protection equipment and equipment location shall be constructed of durable materials, permanently installed and readily visible.

## SECTION 915 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

**[F] 915.1 General.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 915.1.1 through 915.7. *[Not adopted by HCD]* Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in existing buildings in accordance with Chapter 11 of the *California Fire Code*.

*Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 17926, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in all existing Group R buildings as required in Section 915.*

→ **[F] 915.1.1 Where required.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 915.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6 exist.

**[F] 915.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

**[F] 915.1.3 Fuel burning, forced-air furnaces.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced-air furnace.

**Exception:** Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if a carbon monoxide detector is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the

furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an approved location.

**[F] 915.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in *dwelling units*, sleeping units and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

### Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms without communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in one of the following locations:
  - 2.1. In an approved location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.
  - 2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

**[F] 915.1.5 Private garages.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

### Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms without communicating openings between the private garage and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.
3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.
4. Where a carbon monoxide detector is provided in an approved location between openings to a private garage and dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms.

**[F] 915.1.6 Exempt garages.** For determining compliance with Section 915.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 shall not be considered a private garage.

**[F] 915.2 Locations.** Where required by Section 915.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed *in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions* in the locations specified in Sections 915.2.1 through 915.2.3.

**[F] 915.2.1 Dwelling units.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in dwelling units *in the following locations:*

1. Outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms.
2. *On every occupiable level of a dwelling unit, including basements.*
3. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

**[F] 915.2.2 Sleeping units.** Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in sleeping units.

**Exception:** Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the sleeping unit where the sleeping unit or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

**[F] 915.2.3 Group E occupancies.** Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies *where classrooms include any of the conditions identified in Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6.* Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location *as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.*

**Exception:** Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or less.

**[F] 915.3 Carbon monoxide detection.** Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 915.1 through 915.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 915.4 or carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 915.5.

**[F] 915.4 Carbon monoxide alarms.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 915.4.1 through 915.4.5.

**[F] 915.4.1 Power source.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.
2. *Carbon monoxide alarms in Group R occupancies shall be permitted to receive their primary power from other power sources recognized for use by NFPA 72.*
3. *Carbon monoxide alarms in Group R occupancies shall be permitted to be battery-powered or plug-in with a battery backup in existing build-*

*ings built prior to January 1, 2011, under any of the following conditions:*

- 3.1. No construction is taking place.*
- 3.2. Repairs or alterations do not result in the removal of interior wall and ceiling finishes exposing the structure in areas/spaces where carbon monoxide alarms are required.*
- 3.3. Repairs or alterations are limited to the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck.*
- 3.4. Work is limited to the installation, alteration or repair of plumbing, mechanical or electrical systems, which do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure in areas/spaces where carbon monoxide alarms are required.*

**[F] 915.4.2 Listings.** Residential carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

*No person shall install, market, distribute, offer for sale, or sell any carbon monoxide device in the State of California unless the device and instructions have been approved and listed by the Office of the State Fire Marshal.*

**[F] 915.4.3 Locations.** Carbon monoxide alarms shall only be installed in dwelling units and in sleeping units. They shall not be installed in locations where the code requires carbon monoxide detectors to be used.

**[F] 915.4.4 Combination alarms.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 217 and UL 2034.

*Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall comply with Section 915, and all requirements for listing and approval by the Office of the State Fire Marshal for smoke alarms.*

**915.4.5 Interconnection.** *Where more than one carbon monoxide alarm is required to be installed within a dwelling unit or within a sleeping unit in Group R occupancies, the alarms shall be interconnected in a manner that activation of one alarm shall activate all of the alarms in the individual unit.*

**Exception:** *Interconnection is not required in existing buildings, built prior to January 1, 2011, under any of the following conditions:*

- 1. Physical interconnection is not required where listed wireless alarms are installed and all alarms sound upon activation of one alarm.*
- 2. No construction is taking place.*
- 3. Repairs or alterations do not result in the removal of interior wall and ceiling finishes*

*exposing the structure in areas/spaces where carbon monoxide alarms are required.*

4. *Repairs or alterations are limited to the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck.*
5. *Work is limited to the installation, alteration or repair of plumbing, mechanical or electrical systems, which do not result in the removal of interior wall or ceiling finishes exposing the structure in areas/spaces where carbon monoxide alarms are required.*

**[F] 915.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems.** Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 915.5.1 through 915.5.3.

**[F] 915.5.1 General.** Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075.

**[F] 915.5.2 Locations.** Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 915.2 or NFPA 72.

**[F] 915.5.3 Combination detectors.** Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided that they are listed in accordance with UL 268 and UL 2075.

*Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors shall comply with all requirements for listing and approval by the Office of the State Fire Marshal for smoke alarms.*

**[F] 915.6 Maintenance.** Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 72. *Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.*

**915.7 Visible alarms.** *In buildings containing covered multi-family dwellings as defined in Chapter 2, all required carbon monoxide alarms shall be equipped with the capability to support visible alarm notification in accordance with NFPA 72.*

## SECTION 916 GAS DETECTION SYSTEMS

**[F] 916.1 Gas detection systems.** Gas detection systems required by this code shall comply with Sections 916.2 through 916.11.

**[F] 916.2 Permits.** Permits shall be required as set forth in Section 105.6.10 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 916.2.1 Construction documents.** Documentation of the gas detection system design and equipment to be used that demonstrates compliance with the requirements of this code and the *California Fire Code* shall be provided with the application for permit.

**[F] 916.3 Equipment.** Gas detection system equipment shall be designed for use with the gases being detected and shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

**[F] 916.4 Power connections.** Gas detection systems shall be permanently connected to the building electrical power supply or shall be permitted to be cord connected to an unswitched receptacle using an approved restraining means that secures the plug to the receptacle.

**[F] 916.5 Emergency and standby power.** Standby or emergency power shall be provided or the gas detection system shall initiate a trouble signal at an approved location if the power supply is interrupted.

**[F] 916.6 Sensor locations.** Sensors shall be installed in approved locations where leaking gases are expected to accumulate.

**[F] 916.7 Gas sampling.** Gas sampling shall be performed continuously. Sample analysis shall be processed immediately after sampling, except as follows:

1. For HPM gases, sample analysis shall be performed at intervals not exceeding 30 minutes.
2. For toxic gases that are not HPM, sample analysis shall be performed at intervals not exceeding 5 minutes in accordance with Section 6004.2.2.7 of the *California Fire Code*.
3. Where a less frequent or delayed sampling interval is approved.

**[F] 916.8 System activation.** A gas detection alarm shall be initiated where any sensor detects a concentration of gas exceeding the following thresholds:

1. For flammable gases, a gas concentration exceeding 25 percent of the lower flammability limit (LFL).
2. For nonflammable gases, a gas concentration exceeding one-half of the IDLH, unless a different threshold is specified by the section of this code requiring a gas detection system.

Upon activation of a gas detection alarm, alarm signals or other required responses shall be as specified by the section of this code requiring a gas detection system. Audible and visible alarm signals associated with a gas detection alarm shall be distinct from fire alarm and carbon monoxide alarm signals.

**[F] 916.9 Signage.** Signs shall be provided adjacent to gas detection system alarm signaling devices that advise occupants of the nature of the signals and actions to take in response to the signal.

**[F] 916.10 Fire alarm system connections.** Gas sensors and gas detection systems shall not be connected to fire alarm systems unless approved and connected in accordance with the fire alarm equipment manufacturer's instructions.

**[F] 916.11 Inspection, testing and sensor calibration.** Gas detection systems and sensors shall be inspected, tested and calibrated in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

## SECTION 917 MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEMS

**[F] 917.1 College and university campuses.** Prior to construction of a new building requiring a fire alarm system on a multiple-building college or university campus having a cumulative building occupant load of 1,000 or more, a mass notification risk analysis shall be conducted in accordance with NFPA 72. Where the risk analysis determines a need for mass notification, an approved mass notification system shall be provided in accordance with the findings of the risk analysis.

## SECTION 918 EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATION COVERAGE

**[F] 918.1 General.** In-building two-way emergency responder communication coverage shall be provided in all new buildings in accordance with Section 510 of the *California Fire Code*.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X					X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X	X			X	X	X		X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X																
Chapter / Section																							
1001.1				X																			
1003.1, not SFM exception								X															
1003.1				X			X																
1003.1.1											X												
1003.1.2												X	X			X							
1003.2				X																			
1003.3 Exc.				X																			
1003.3.1				X																			
1003.3.3.1				X																			
1003.3.4					X	X	X																
1003.5				X	X	X	X																
Table 1004.5				X																			
1004.9				X																			
1005.3.1				X																			
1005.3.2				X																			
1005.7.1				X																			
1005.7.2				X																			
1006.2.1				X																			
Table 1006.2.1				X																			
1006.2.2				X																			
1006.2.2.2				X																			
1006.2.2.3				X																			
1006.2.2.4				X																			
1006.2.2.6				X																			
1006.2.2.7				X																			
1006.2.2.8				X																			
1006.3.3				X																			
Table 1006.3.3(1)				X																			
Table 1006.3.3(2)				X																			
1008.2				X																			
1008.3.2				X																			
1009.1				X	X	X	X	X	X														
1009.2							X	X															
1009.2.1								X															
1009.3								X	X														
1009.4					X				X														
1009.4.1					X																		
1009.4.2									X														

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X				X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X	X				X	X	X		X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X																
Chapter / Section																							
1009.5				X	X	X	X	X															
1009.6									X														
1009.6.1									X														
1009.6.2										X													
1009.6.3				X	X	X	X	X															
1009.6.4									X														
1009.6.5									X														
1009.7										X													
1009.7.1										X													
1009.7.2										X													
1009.7.3										X													
1009.7.4										X													
1009.8										X													
1009.8.1										X													
1009.8.1.1										X	X												
1009.8.2				X					X	X													
1009.9										X	X												
1009.10										X													
1009.11										X	X												
1009.12				X				X	X														
1010 (1st paragraph below title only)										X													
1010.1.1				X						X													
1010.1.1.1				X																			
1010.1.2				X																			
1010.1.2.1				X																			
1010.1.4										X	X												
1010.1.6										X	X												
1010.1.7										X	X												
1010.1.14				X																			
1010.2.1				X																			
1010.2.2				X					X	X													
1010.2.9				X																			
1010.2.8.2				X																			
1010.2.12.1				X																			
1010.2.13				X																			
1010.2.13.1				X																			
1010.2.13.1 (Item 4, 6.3 & 6.4 only)									X														
1010.2.14				X																			

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X				X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X				X	X	X		X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X																
Chapter / Section																							
1010.2.5					X																		
1010.2.8.1					X																		
1010.2.13					X																		
1010.3.1						X																	
1011(1st paragraph below title only)								X															
1011.2					X																		
1011.5.2					X																		
1011.5.2 [DSA-AC: exc. 4 only]								X															
1011.6					X																		
1011.11					X																		
1011.11 (2nd paragraph only)								X															
1011.15					X																		
1012 (1st paragraph below title only)								X															
1012.1								X															
1012.6.3								X															
1012.6.4								X															
1012.6.5								X															
1012.10								X															
1013.1					X																		
1013.2					X																		
1013.4					X			X	X														
1013.6.3					X																		
1013.7					X																		
1013.8					X																		
1014 (1st paragraph below title only)								X															
1014.8					X			X															
1015.2					X				X														
1015.3					X	X	X	X	X														
1015.4					X																		
1015.8						X	X	X															
1016.2					X																		
Table 1017.2					X																		
1018.2 (1st paragraph below title only)									X														
1018.3 Exception only									X														
1018.5 Exception only									X														
1019.3					X																		
1019.4					X																		
1020.1					X																		

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 10 – MEANS OF EGRESS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC		
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4										
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X				X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X	X			X	X	X		X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X																	
Chapter / Section																								
Table 1020.1				X																				
Table 1020.2				X																				
1020.3				X																				
1020.4				X																				
1020.5				X							X	X	X											
1020.6				X																				
1022.3				X																				
1023.2				X																				
1023.9				X		X																		
(2nd paragraph only)							X																	
1023.9.1				X																				
1023.11						X																		
1023.11.2				X																				
1024.2				X																				
1026.4.1				X																				
1026.4.2				X																				
1028.5				X																				
1029.1				X																				
1029.2				X																				
1029.3				X																				
1029.3.1				X																				
1029.9.1				X																				
1030.1				X																				
1030.1.1				X																				
1030.6.3.2				X																				
1032.2.1.2				X																				
1032.2.1.3				X																				

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

# CHAPTER 10

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 10 provides the general criteria for designing the means of egress established as the primary method for protection of people in buildings by allowing timely relocation or evacuation of building occupants. Both prescriptive and performance language is utilized in this chapter to provide for a basic approach in the determination of a safe exiting system for all occupancies. It addresses all portions of the egress system (exit access, exits and exit discharge) and includes design requirements as well as provisions regulating individual components. The requirements detail the size, arrangement, number and protection of means of egress components. Functional and operational characteristics that will permit the safe use of components without special knowledge or effort are specified.

The means of egress protection requirements work in coordination with other sections of the code, such as protection of vertical openings (see Chapter 7), interior finish (see Chapter 8), fire suppression and detection systems (see Chapter 9) and numerous others, all having an impact on life safety. Chapter 10 is subdivided into four main sections: general (Sections 1003–1015), exit access (Sections 1016–1021), exit (Sections 1022–1027) and exit discharge (Sections 1028–1029). Special allowances for the unique requirements for assembly spaces (Section 1030) and emergency escape and rescue openings (Section 1031) complete the chapter. Chapter 10 of this code is duplicated in Chapter 10 of the California Fire Code; however, the California Fire Code contains one additional section on maintenance of the means of egress system in existing buildings.

Section 1010 was extensively reorganized for the 2021 edition. For complete information, see the moved sections table in the preface information for the California Building Code.

### SECTION 1001 ADMINISTRATION

**1001.1 General.** Buildings or portions thereof shall be provided with a means of egress system as required by this chapter. The provisions of this chapter shall control the design, construction and arrangement of means of egress components required to provide an approved means of egress from structures and portions thereof.

**1001.2 Minimum requirements.** It shall be unlawful to alter a building or structure in a manner that will reduce the number of exits or the minimum width or required capacity of the means of egress to less than required by this code.

### [F] SECTION 1002 MAINTENANCE AND PLANS

**[F] 1002.1 Maintenance.** Means of egress shall be maintained in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 1002.2 Fire safety and evacuation plans.** Fire safety and evacuation plans shall be provided for all occupancies and buildings where required by the *California Fire Code*. Such fire safety and evacuation plans shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 401.2 and 404 of the *California Fire Code*.

### SECTION 1003 GENERAL MEANS OF EGRESS

**1003.1 Applicability.** The general requirements specified in Sections 1003 through 1015 shall apply to all three elements of the means of egress system, in addition to those specific requirements for the exit access, the exit and the exit discharge detailed elsewhere in this chapter.

**[DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** In addition to the requirement of this chapter, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.8.2.1.2 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development, or Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, as applicable.

**Exception:** Exiting requirements for Fixed Guideway Transit Systems shall be as per Section 443.

**1003.1.1 Means of egress for hospitals. [OSHPD 1]** In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress for hospitals shall comply with Part 10 California Existing Building Code Section 308A.

**1003.1.2 Means of egress for hospital buildings removed from acute care service, skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities and acute psychiatric hospitals. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress for hospital buildings removed from acute care service, skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities and acute psychiatric hospitals shall comply with OSHPD amendments to Part 10 California Existing Building Code Section 308.

**1003.2 Ceiling height.** The means of egress shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm) above the finished floor.

**Exceptions:**

1. Sloped ceilings in accordance with Section 1208.2.
2. Ceilings of dwelling units and sleeping units within residential occupancies in accordance with Section 1208.2.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

3. Allowable projections in accordance with Section 1003.3.
4. Stair headroom in accordance with Section 1011.3.
5. Door height in accordance with Section 1010.1.1.
6. Ramp headroom in accordance with Section 1012.5.2.
7. The clear height of floor levels in vehicular and pedestrian traffic areas of public and private parking garages in accordance with Section 406.2.2.
8. Areas above and below mezzanine floors in accordance with Section 505.2.
9. *In Group I-2, I-2.1 and I-3 occupancies, the means of egress shall have a ceiling height of not less than 8 feet (2439 mm).*

**1003.3 Protruding objects.** Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1003.3.1 through 1003.3.4.

**Exception:** In Group I-2 and Group I-2.1 occupancies, protruding objects shall not extend more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2.

**1003.3.1 Headroom.** Protruding objects are permitted to extend below the minimum ceiling height required by Section 1003.2 where a minimum headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm) is provided over any circulation paths, including walks, corridors, aisles and passageways. *In other than Group I-2 and Group I-2.1 occupancies, Not more than 50 percent of the ceiling area of a means of egress shall be permitted to be reduced in height by protruding objects.*

**Exception:** Door closers and stops shall not reduce headroom to less than 78 inches (1981 mm).

A barrier shall be provided where the vertical clearance above a circulation path is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) high above the finished floor. The leading edge of such a barrier shall be located 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**1003.3.2 Post-mounted objects.** A free-standing object mounted on a post or pylon shall not overhang that post or pylon more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the lowest point of the leading edge is more than 27 inches (686 mm) and less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (686 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finished floor or ground.

**Exception:** These requirements shall not apply to sloping portions of handrails between the top and bottom riser of stairs and above the ramp run.

**1003.3.3 Horizontal projections.** Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the finished floor shall not proj-

ect horizontally more than 4 inches (102 mm) into the circulation path.

**Exception:** Handrails are permitted to protrude  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) from the wall or guard.

**1003.3.3.1 Horizontal projections for Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies.** Structural elements, fixtures or furnishings shall not project horizontally from either side more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) into the required width of an exit access corridor serving any area caring for one or more nonambulatory or bedridden persons.

### Exceptions:

1. Handrails are permitted to protrude  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) from the wall.
2. Alcohol-based hand-rub dispensers are permitted to protrude 4 inches.
3. Manual fire alarm boxes with a protective cover installed are permitted to protrude 4 inches.

**1003.3.4 Clear width.** Protruding objects shall not reduce the minimum clear width of accessible routes as required in Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B.

**1003.4 Slip-resistant surface.** Circulation paths of the means of egress shall have a slip-resistant surface and be securely attached.

**1003.5 Elevation change.** Where changes in elevation of less than 12 inches (305 mm) exist in the means of egress, sloped surfaces shall be used. Where the slope is greater than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), ramps complying with Section 1012 shall be used. Where the difference in elevation is 6 inches (152 mm) or less, the ramp shall be equipped with either handrails or floor finish materials that contrast with adjacent floor finish materials.

### Exceptions:

1. Steps at exterior doors complying with Section 1010.1.4.
2. A stair with a single riser or with two risers and a tread is permitted at locations not required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B where the risers and treads comply with Section 1011.5, the minimum depth of the tread is 13 inches (330 mm) and not less than one handrail complying with Section 1014 is provided within 30 inches (762 mm) of the centerline of the normal path of egress travel on the stair.
3. A step is permitted in aisles serving seating that has a difference in elevation less than 12 inches (305 mm) at locations not required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B, provided that the risers and treads comply with Section 1030.14 and the aisle is provided with a handrail complying with Section 1030.16.

Throughout a story in a Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, any change in elevation in portions of the means of egress that serve nonambulatory persons shall be by means of a ramp or sloped walkway.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1003.6 Means of egress continuity.** The path of egress travel along a means of egress shall not be interrupted by a building element other than a means of egress component as specified in this chapter. Obstructions shall not be placed in the minimum width or required capacity of a means of egress component except projections permitted by this chapter. The minimum width or required capacity of a means of egress system shall not be diminished along the path of egress travel.

**1003.7 Elevators, escalators and moving walks.** Elevators, escalators and moving walks shall not be used as a component of a required means of egress from any other part of the building.

**Exception:** Elevators used as an accessible means of egress in accordance with Section 1009.4.

## SECTION 1004 OCCUPANT LOAD

**1004.1 Design occupant load.** In determining means of egress requirements, the number of occupants for whom means of egress facilities are provided shall be determined in accordance with this section.

**1004.2 Cumulative occupant loads.** Where the path of egress travel includes intervening rooms, areas or spaces, cumulative occupant loads shall be determined in accordance with this section.

**1004.2.1 Intervening spaces or accessory areas.** Where occupants egress from one or more rooms, areas or spaces through others, the design occupant load shall be the combined occupant load of interconnected accessory or intervening spaces. Design of egress path capacity shall be based on the cumulative portion of occupant loads of all rooms, areas or spaces to that point along the path of egress travel.

**1004.2.2 Adjacent levels for mezzanines.** That portion of the occupant load of a mezzanine with required egress through a room, area or space on an adjacent level shall be added to the occupant load of that room, area or space.

**1004.2.3 Adjacent stories.** Other than for the egress components designed for convergence in accordance with Section 1005.6, the occupant load from separate stories shall not be added.

**1004.3 Multiple function occupant load.** Where an area under consideration contains multiple functions having different occupant load factors, the design occupant load for such area shall be based on the floor area of each function calculated independently.

**1004.4 Multiple occupancies.** Where a building contains two or more occupancies, the means of egress requirements shall apply to each portion of the building based on the occupancy of that space. Where two or more occupancies utilize portions of the same means of egress system, those egress components shall meet the more stringent requirements of all occupancies that are served.

**1004.5 Areas without fixed seating.** The number of occupants shall be computed at the rate of one occupant per unit of area as prescribed in Table 1004.5. For areas without fixed

**TABLE 1004.5  
MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA ALLOWANCES PER OCCUPANT**

FUNCTION OF SPACE	OCCUPANT LOAD FACTOR <sup>a</sup>
Accessory storage areas, mechanical equipment room	300 gross
Agricultural building	300 gross
Aircraft hangars	500 gross
Airport terminal	
Baggage claim	20 gross
Baggage handling	300 gross
Concourse	100 gross
Waiting areas	15 gross
Assembly	
Gaming floors (keno, slots, etc.)	11 gross
Exhibit gallery and museum	30 net
Assembly with fixed seats	See Section 1004.6
Assembly without fixed seats	
Concentrated (chairs only—not fixed)	7 net
Standing space	5 net
Unconcentrated (tables and chairs)	15 net
Bowling centers, allow 5 persons for each lane including 15 feet of runway, and for additional areas	7 net
Business areas	150 gross
Concentrated business use areas	See Section 1004.8
Courtrooms—other than fixed seating areas	40 net
Day care	35 net
Dormitories	50 gross
Educational	
Classroom area	20 net
Shops and other vocational room areas	50 net
Exercise rooms	50 gross
Group H-5 fabrication and manufacturing areas	200 gross
Industrial areas	100 gross
Institutional areas	
Inpatient treatment areas	240 gross
Outpatient areas	100 gross
Sleeping areas	120 gross
Kitchens, commercial	200 gross
Laboratory	
Educational (K–12 <sup>th</sup> grade)	50 net
Laboratories, non-educational	100 net
Laboratory suite <sup>b</sup>	200 gross
Library	
Reading rooms	50 net
Stack area	100 gross
Locker rooms	50 gross
Mall buildings—covered and open	See Section 402.8.2
Mercantile	60 gross
Storage, stock, shipping areas	300 gross
Parking garages	200 gross
Residential	200 gross
Skating rinks, swimming pools	
Rink and pool	50 gross
Decks	15 gross
Stages and platforms	15 net
Warehouses	500 gross

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Floor area in square feet per occupant.

b. See Section 453.2.

c. See Table 408.3.13 for I-3 facilities.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

seating, the occupant load shall be not less than that number determined by dividing the floor area under consideration by the occupant load factor assigned to the function of the space as set forth in Table 1004.5. Where an intended function is not listed in Table 1004.5, the building official shall establish a function based on a listed function that most nearly resembles the intended function.

**Exception:** Where approved by the building official, the actual number of occupants for whom each occupied space, floor or building is designed, although less than those determined by calculation, shall be permitted to be used in the determination of the design occupant load.

**1004.5.1 Increased occupant load.** The occupant load permitted in any building, or portion thereof, is permitted to be increased from that number established for the occupancies in Table 1004.5, provided that all other requirements of the code are met based on such modified number and the occupant load does not exceed one occupant per 7 square feet ( $0.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) of occupiable floor space. Where required by the building official, an approved aisle, seating or fixed equipment diagram substantiating any increase in occupant load shall be submitted. Where required by the building official, such diagram shall be posted.

**1004.6 Fixed seating.** For areas having fixed seats and aisles, the occupant load shall be determined by the number of fixed seats installed therein. The occupant load for areas in which fixed seating is not installed, such as waiting spaces, shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004.5 and added to the number of fixed seats.

The occupant load of wheelchair spaces and the associated companion seat shall be based on one occupant for each wheelchair space and one occupant for the associated companion seat provided in accordance with Section 1109.2.3.

For areas having fixed seating without dividing arms, the occupant load shall be not less than the number of seats based on one person for each 18 inches (457 mm) of seating length.

The occupant load of seating booths shall be based on one person for each 24 inches (610 mm) of booth seat length measured at the backrest of the seating booth.

**1004.7 Outdoor areas.** Yards, patios, occupied roofs, courts and similar outdoor areas accessible to and usable by the building occupants shall be provided with means of egress as required by this chapter. The occupant load of such outdoor areas shall be assigned by the building official in accordance with the anticipated use. Where outdoor areas are to be used by persons in addition to the occupants of the building, and the path of egress travel from the outdoor areas passes through the building, means of egress requirements for the building shall be based on the sum of the occupant loads of the building plus the outdoor areas.

### Exceptions:

1. Outdoor areas used exclusively for service of the building need only have one means of egress.
2. Both outdoor areas associated with Group R-3 and individual dwelling units of Group R-2.

**1004.8 Concentrated business use areas.** The occupant load factor for concentrated business use shall be applied to telephone call centers, trading floors, electronic data processing centers and similar business use areas with a higher density of occupants than would normally be expected in a typical business occupancy environment. Where approved by the building official, the occupant load for concentrated business use areas shall be the actual occupant load, but not less than one occupant per 50 square feet ( $4.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) of gross occupiable floor space.

**1004.9 Posting of occupant load.** Every room or space which is used for assembly, classroom, dining, drinking or similar purposes having an occupant load of 50 or more shall have the occupant load of the room or space posted in a conspicuous place, near the main exit or exit access doorway from the room or space, for the intended configurations. Posted signs shall be of an approved legible permanent design and shall be maintained by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

## SECTION 1005 MEANS OF EGRESS SIZING

**1005.1 General.** All portions of the means of egress system shall be sized in accordance with this section.

**Exception:** Aisles and aisle accessways in rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes complying with Section 1030.

**1005.2 Minimum width based on component.** The minimum width, in inches (mm), of any means of egress components shall be not less than that specified for such component, elsewhere in this code.

**1005.3 Required capacity based on occupant load.** The required capacity, in inches (mm), of the means of egress for any room, area, space or story shall be not less than that determined in accordance with Sections 1005.3.1 and 1005.3.2.

**1005.3.1 Stairways.** The capacity, in inches, of means of egress stairways shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load served by such stairways by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) per occupant. Where stairways serve more than one story, only the occupant load of each story considered individually shall be used in calculating the required capacity of the stairways serving that story.

### Exceptions:

1. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches, of means of egress stairways shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load served by such stairways by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

2. Facilities with smoke-protected assembly seating shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1030.6.2 indicated for stepped aisles for exit access or exit stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit discharge is provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909.
3. Facilities with open-air assembly seating shall be permitted to the capacity factors in Section 1030.6.3 indicated for stepped aisles for exit access or exit stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit discharge is open to the outdoors.
4. *For Group H-1, H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies the total width of means of egress in inches (mm) shall not be less than the total occupant load served by the means of egress multiplied by 0.7 inches (7.62 mm) per occupant.*

**1005.3.2 Other egress components.** The capacity, in inches, of means of egress components other than stairways shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load served by such component by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant.

**Exceptions:**

1. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches, of means of egress components other than stairways shall be calculated by multiplying the occupant load served by such component by a means of egress capacity factor of 0.15 inch (3.8 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.
2. Facilities with smoke-protected assembly seating shall be permitted to use the capacity factors in Table 1030.6.2 indicated for level or ramped aisles for means of egress components other than stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit discharge is provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909.
3. Facilities with open-air assembly seating shall be permitted to the capacity factors in Section 1030.6.3 indicated for level or ramped aisles for means of egress components other than stairways where the entire path for means of egress from the seating to the exit discharge is open to the outdoors.
4. *For Group H-1, H-2, H-3 and H-4 occupancies the total width of means of egress in inches (mm) shall not be less than the total occupant load served by the means of egress multiplied by 0.4 inches (5.08 mm) per occupant.*

**1005.4 Continuity.** The minimum width or required capacity of the means of egress required from any story of a building

shall not be reduced along the path of egress travel until arrival at the public way.

**1005.5 Distribution of minimum width and required capacity.** Where more than one exit, or access to more than one exit, is required, the means of egress shall be configured such that the loss of any one exit, or access to one exit, shall not reduce the available capacity or width to less than 50 percent of the required capacity or width.

**1005.6 Egress convergence.** Where the means of egress from stories above and below converge at an intermediate level, the capacity of the means of egress from the point of convergence shall be not less than the largest minimum width or the sum of the required capacities for the stairways or ramps serving the two adjacent stories, whichever is larger.

**1005.7 Encroachment.** Encroachments into the required means of egress width shall be in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**1005.7.1 Doors.** Doors, when fully opened, shall not reduce the required width by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Doors in any position shall not reduce the required width by more than one-half.

**Exceptions:**

1. *In other than Group I-2 occupancies, surface-mounted latch release hardware shall be exempt from inclusion in the 7-inch maximum (178 mm) encroachment where both of the following conditions exist:*

- 1.1. The hardware is mounted to the side of the door facing away from the adjacent wall where the door is in the open position.
- 1.2. The hardware is mounted not less than 34 inches (865 mm) nor more than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the finished floor.
2. The restrictions on door swing shall not apply to doors within individual dwelling units and sleeping units of Group R-2 occupancies and dwelling units of Group R-3 occupancies.

**1005.7.2 Other projections.** Handrail projections shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 1014.8. Other nonstructural projections such as trim and similar decorative features shall be permitted to project into the required width not more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) on each side.

**1005.7.3 Protruding objects.** Protruding objects shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1003.3.

## SECTION 1006 NUMBER OF EXITS AND EXIT ACCESS DOORWAYS

**1006.1 General.** The number of exits or exit access doorways required within the means of egress system shall comply with the provisions of Section 1006.2 for spaces, including mezzanines, and Section 1006.3 for stories or occupied roofs.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1006.2 Egress from spaces.** Rooms, areas or spaces, including mezzanines, within a story or basement shall be provided with the number of exits or access to exits in accordance with this section.

**1006.2.1 Egress based on occupant load and common path of egress travel distance.** Two exits or exit access doorways from any space shall be provided where the design occupant load or the common path of egress travel distance exceeds the values listed in Table 1006.2.1. The cumulative occupant load from adjacent rooms, areas or spaces shall be determined in accordance with Section 1004.2.

### Exceptions:

1. The number of exits from foyers, lobbies, vestibules or similar spaces need not be based on cumulative occupant loads for areas discharging

through such spaces, but the capacity of the exits from such spaces shall be based on applicable cumulative occupant loads.

2. *Rooms and care suites in Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies complying with Section 407.4.*
3. Unoccupied mechanical rooms and penthouses are not required to comply with the common path of egress travel distance measurement.
4. *In detention and correctional facilities and holding cells, such as are found in courthouse buildings, when the occupant load is more than 20 see Section 408.3.11.*

**1006.2.1.1 Three or more exits or exit access doorways.** Three exits or exit access doorways shall be provided from any space with an occupant load of 501

TABLE 1006.2.1  
SPACES WITH ONE EXIT OR EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY

OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD OF SPACE	MAXIMUM COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)			With Sprinkler System (feet)	
		Without Sprinkler System (feet)		Occupant Load		
		OL ≤ 30	OL > 30			
		75	75	75 <sup>a</sup>		
A <sup>c</sup> , E, M	49	75	75	75 <sup>a</sup>		
B	49	100	75	100 <sup>a</sup>		
F	49	75	75	100 <sup>a</sup>		
H-1, H-2, H-3	3	NP	NP	25 <sup>b</sup>		
H-4, H-5	10	NP	NP	75 <sup>b</sup>		
I-2 <sup>d</sup> , I-2.1, I-4	10	NP <sup>i</sup>	NP <sup>i</sup>	75 <sup>a</sup>		
I-3	10	NP	NP	100 <sup>a</sup>		
R-1	10	NP	NP	75 <sup>a</sup>		
R-2	20	NP	NP	125 <sup>a</sup>		
R-2.1	10	NP	NP	75 <sup>a</sup>		
R-2.2	20	NP	NP	125 <sup>a</sup>		
R-3 <sup>e</sup> , R-3.1 <sup>e</sup>	20	NP	NP	125 <sup>a, g</sup>		
R-4 <sup>e</sup>	20	NP	NP	125 <sup>a, g</sup>		
S <sup>f</sup>	29	100	75	100 <sup>a</sup>		
U	49	100	75	75 <sup>a</sup>		
L	See Section 453.6.1		NP	NP		

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

- a. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.
  - b. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.
  - c. For a room or space used for assembly purposes having fixed seating, see Section 1030.8.
  - d. For the travel distance limitations and number of exit and exit access requirements for rooms and spaces in Group I-2 or I-2.1, see Section 407.4.
  - e. The common path of egress travel distance shall only apply in a Group R-3 occupancy located in a mixed occupancy building.
  - f. The length of common path of egress travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
  - g. For the travel distance limitations in Groups R-3 and R-4 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, see Section 1006.2.2.6.
  - h. For holding cells, see Section 408.3.11.
- i. In accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 13113(d), there is no requirement for automatic sprinkler protection in an existing Group I-2 located in Type IA construction.

to 1,000. Four exits or exit access doorways shall be provided from any space with an occupant load greater than 1,000.

**1006.2.2 Egress based on use.** The numbers, configuration and types of components of exits or access to exits shall be provided in the uses described in Sections 1006.2.2.1 through 1006.2.2.7.

**1006.2.2.1 Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms.** Two exit access doorways are required in boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms where the area is over 500 square feet ( $46\text{ m}^2$ ) and any fuel-fired equipment exceeds 400,000 British thermal units (Btu) (422 000 KJ) input capacity. Where two exit access doorways are required, one is permitted to be a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the room.

**1006.2.2.2 Refrigeration machinery rooms.** Machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) shall have not less than two exits or exit access doorways. Where two exit access doorways are required, one such doorway is permitted to be served by a fixed ladder or an alternating tread device. Exit access doorways shall be separated by a horizontal distance equal to one-half the maximum horizontal dimension of the room.

All portions of machinery rooms shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway.

Exit and exit access doorways shall swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with panic hardware, regardless of the occupant load served. Exit and exit access doorways shall be tight fitting and self-closing.

**1006.2.2.3 Refrigerated rooms or spaces.** Rooms or spaces having a floor area larger than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ), containing a refrigerant evaporator and maintained at a temperature below 68°F (20°C), shall have access to not less than two exits or exit access doorways.

Exit access travel distance shall be determined as specified in Section 1017.1. All portions of a refrigerated room or space shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of an exit or exit access doorway leading to a nonrefrigerated area where such rooms are not protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.

**Exception:** Where using refrigerants in quantities limited to the amounts based on the volume set forth in the *California Mechanical Code*. Egress is allowed through adjoining refrigerated rooms or spaces.

**1006.2.2.4 Electrical rooms.** The location and number of exit or exit access doorways shall be provided for electrical rooms in accordance with Section 110.26 of NFPA 70 for electrical equipment rated 1,000 volts or less, and Section 110.33 of NFPA 70 for electrical equipment rated over 1,000 volts. Panic hardware shall be provided where required in accordance with Section 1010.2.9.2.

**1006.2.2.5 Vehicular ramps.** Vehicular ramps shall not be considered as an exit access ramp unless pedestrian facilities are provided.

**1006.2.2.6 Groups R-3 and R-4.** Where Group R-3 occupancies are permitted by Section 903.2.8 to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, the exit access travel distance for Group R-3 shall be not more than 125 feet (38 100 mm). Where Group R-4 occupancies are permitted by Section 903.2.8 to be protected by an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, the exit access travel distance for Group R-4 shall be not more than 75 feet (22 860 mm).

**1006.2.2.7 Large family day-care home.** Every story or basement of a large family day-care home shall be provided with two exits which are remotely located from each other. Every required exit shall be of a size to permit the installation of a door not less than 32 inches (813 mm) in clear width and not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2,032 mm) in height. A manually operated horizontal sliding door may be used as one of the two required exits.

Where basements are used for day-care purposes, one of the two required exits shall provide access directly to the exterior without entering the first story. The second exit from the basement may either pass through the story above or exit directly to the exterior.

Rooms used for day-care purposes shall not be located above the first story.

**Exception:** Buildings equipped with an automatic sprinkler system throughout and which have at least one of the required exits providing access directly to the exterior. NFPA 13R may be used in large family day-care homes. The sprinkler omissions of NFPA 13R shall not apply unless approved by the enforcing agency.

Exit doors, including manually operated horizontal sliding doors, shall be openable from the inside without use of a key or any special knowledge or effort.

Tables 1006.3.3(1) and 1006.3.3(2) are not applicable to this occupancy classification.

**1006.2.2.8 Group I-4 means of egress.** Group I-4 facilities, rooms or spaces where care is provided for more than 10 children that are 36 months of age or less shall have access to not less than two exits or exit access doorways.

**1006.3 Egress from stories or occupied roofs.** The means of egress system serving any story or occupied roof shall be provided with the number of separate and distinct exits or access to exits based on the aggregate occupant load served in accordance with this section.

**1006.3.1 Occupant load.** Where stairways serve more than one story, or more than one story and an occupied roof, only the occupant load of each story or occupied roof, considered individually, shall be used when calculating the required number of exits or access to exits serving that story.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1006.3.2 Path of egress travel.** The path of egress travel to an exit shall not pass through more than one adjacent story.

**Exception:** The path of egress travel to an exit shall be permitted to pass through more than one adjacent story in any of the following:

1. In Group R-1, R-2 or R-3 occupancies, exit access stairways and ramps connecting four stories or less serving and contained within an individual dwelling unit, sleeping unit or live/work unit.
2. Exit access stairways serving and contained within a Group R-3 congregate residence or a Group R-4 facility.
3. Exit access stairways and ramps within an atrium complying with Section 404.
4. Exit access stairways and ramps in open parking garages that serve only the parking garage.
5. Exit access stairways and ramps serving open-air assembly seating complying with the exit access travel distance requirements of Section 1030.7.
6. Exit access stairways and ramps between the balcony, gallery or press box and the main assembly floor in occupancies such as theaters, places of religious worship, auditoriums and sports facilities.
7. Exterior exit access stairways and ramps between occupied roofs.

**1006.3.3 Egress based on occupant load.** Each story and occupied roof shall have the minimum number of separate and distinct exits, or access to exits, as specified in Table 1006.3.3. A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted in accordance with Section 1006.3.4. The required number of exits, or exit access stairways or ramps providing access to exits, from any story or occupied roof shall be maintained until arrival at the exit discharge or a public way.

**TABLE 1006.3.3  
MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS PER STORY**

OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF EXITS OR ACCESS TO EXITS FROM STORY
1-500	2
501-1,000	3
More than 1,000	4

**1006.3.4 Single exits.** A single exit or access to a single exit shall be permitted from any story or occupied roof where one of the following conditions exists:

1. The occupant load, number of dwelling units and exit access travel distance do not exceed the values in Table 1006.3.4(1) or 1006.3.4(2).
2. Rooms, areas and spaces complying with Section 1006.2.1 with exits that discharge directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge, are permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.
3. Parking garages where vehicles are mechanically parked shall be permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.
4. Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall be permitted to have one exit or access to a single exit.
5. Individual single-story or multistory dwelling units shall be permitted to have a single exit or access to a single exit from the dwelling unit provided that both of the following criteria are met:
  - 5.1. The dwelling unit complies with Section 1006.2.1 as a space with one means of egress.
  - 5.2. Either the exit from the dwelling unit discharges directly to the exterior at the level of exit discharge, or the exit access outside the dwelling unit's entrance door provides access to not less than two approved independent exits.

**1006.3.4.1 Mixed occupancies.** Where one exit, or exit access stairway or ramp providing access to exits at other stories, is permitted to serve individual stories, mixed occupancies shall be permitted to be served by single exits provided that each individual occupancy complies with the applicable requirements of Table 1006.3.4(1) or 1006.3.4(2) for that occupancy. Where applicable, cumulative occupant loads from adjacent occupancies shall be considered to be in accordance with the provisions of Section 1004.1. In each story of a mixed occupancy building, the maximum number of occupants served by a single exit shall be such that the sum of the ratios of the calculated number of occupants of the space divided by the allowable number of occu-

**TABLE 1006.3.4(1)  
STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR R-2 AND R-3 OCCUPANCIES**

STORY	OCCUPANCY	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF DWELLING UNITS	MAXIMUM EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE
Basement, first, second or third story above grade plane	R-2 <sup>a,b</sup> R-3 <sup>a</sup>	4 dwelling units NA	125 feet NA
Fourth story above grade plane and higher	R-3 <sup>a</sup>	NA	125 feet

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

NA = Not Applicable.

a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1031.

b. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units. For R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units, use Table 1006.3.4(2).

pants indicated in Table 1006.3.4(2) for each occupancy does not exceed one. Where dwelling units are located on a story with other occupancies, the actual number of dwelling units divided by four plus the ratio from the other occupancy does not exceed one.

## SECTION 1007 EXIT AND EXIT ACCESS DOORWAY CONFIGURATION

**1007.1 General.** Exits, exit access doorways, and exit access stairways and ramps serving spaces, including individual building stories, shall be separated in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**1007.1.1 Two exits or exit access doorways.** Where two exits, exit access doorways, exit access stairways or ramps, or any combination thereof, are required from any portion of the exit access, they shall be placed a distance apart equal to not less than one-half of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building or area to be served measured in a straight line between them. Interlocking or scissor stairways shall be counted as one exit stairway.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where interior exit stairways or ramps are interconnected by a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated corridor conforming to the requirements of Section 1020, the required exit separation shall be measured along the shortest direct line of travel within the corridor.
2. Where a building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the separation distance shall be not less than one-third of the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the area served.

**TABLE 1006.3.4(2)**  
**STORIES WITH ONE EXIT OR ACCESS TO ONE EXIT FOR OTHER OCCUPANCIES**

STORY	OCCUPANCY <sup>e</sup>	MAXIMUM OCCUPANT LOAD PER STORY	MAXIMUM EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE (feet)
First story above or below grade plane	A, B <sup>b</sup> , E, F <sup>b</sup> , M, U	49	75
	H-2, H-3	3	25
	H-4, H-5, I, R-1, R-2 <sup>a,c</sup> , R-2.2	10	75
	I-2, I-2.1	7	50
	S <sup>b,d</sup>	29	75
Second story above grade plane	B, F, M, S <sup>d</sup>	29	75
Third story above grade plane and higher	NP	NA	NA

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

NA = Not Applicable.

- a. Buildings classified as Group R-2 equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and provided with emergency escape and rescue openings in accordance with Section 1031.
- b. Group B, F and S occupancies in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall have a maximum exit access travel distance of 100 feet.
- c. This table is used for R-2 occupancies consisting of sleeping units. For R-2 occupancies consisting of dwelling units, use Table 1006.3.4(1).
- d. The length of exit access travel distance in a Group S-2 open parking garage shall be not more than 100 feet.
- e. For Group L Occupancies see Section 453.6.1.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1008.2 Illumination required.** The means of egress serving a room or space shall be illuminated at all times that the room or space is occupied.

### Exceptions:

1. Occupancies in Group U.
2. Aisle accessways in Group A.
3. Dwelling units and sleeping units in Groups R-1, R-2 and R-3.
4. Sleeping units of Group I, *R-2.1 and R-4* occupancies.

**1008.2.1 Illumination level under normal power.** The means of egress illumination level shall be not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface. Along exit access stairways, exit stairways and at their required landings, the illumination level shall not be less than 10 footcandles (108 lux) at the walking surface when the stairway is in use.

**Exception:** For auditoriums, theaters, concert or opera halls and similar assembly occupancies, the illumination at the walking surface is permitted to be reduced during performances by one of the following methods provided that the required illumination is automatically restored upon activation of a premises' fire alarm system:

1. Externally illuminated walking surfaces shall be permitted to be illuminated to not less than 0.2 footcandle (2.15 lux).
2. Steps, landings and the sides of ramps shall be permitted to be marked with self-luminous materials in accordance with Sections 1025.2.1, 1025.2.2 and 1025.2.4 by systems listed in accordance with UL 1994.

**1008.2.2 Group I-2.** In Group I-2 occupancies where two or more exits are required, on the exterior landings required by Section 1010.1.5, means of egress illumination levels for the exit discharge shall be provided such that failure of a single lamp in a luminaire shall not reduce the illumination level on that landing to less than 1 footcandle (11 lux).

**1008.2.3 Exit discharge.** Illumination shall be provided along the path of travel for the exit discharge from each exit to the public way.

**Exception:** Illumination shall not be required where the path of the exit discharge meets both of the following requirements:

1. The path of exit discharge is illuminated from the exit to a safe dispersal area complying with Section 1028.5.
2. A dispersal area shall be illuminated to a level not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) at the walking surface.

**1008.3 Emergency power for illumination.** The power supply for means of egress illumination shall normally be provided by the premises' electrical supply.

**1008.3.1 General.** In the event of power supply failure in rooms and spaces that require two or more exits or access to exits, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Aisles.
2. Corridors.
3. Exit access stairways and ramps.

**1008.3.2 Buildings.** In the event of power supply failure in buildings that require two or more exits or access to exits, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Interior exit access stairways and ramps.
2. Interior and exterior exit stairways and ramps.
3. Exit passageways.
4. Vestibules and areas on the level of discharge used for exit discharge in accordance with Section 1028.2.
5. Exterior landings as required by Section 1010.1.5 for exit doorways that lead directly to the exit discharge.
6. *Group I-2 and I-2.1 exit discharge stairways, ramps, aisles, walkways and escalators leading to a public way or to a safe dispersal area in accordance with Section 1028.5.*

**1008.3.3 Rooms and spaces.** In the event of power supply failure, an emergency electrical system shall automatically illuminate all of the following areas:

1. Electrical equipment rooms.
2. Fire command centers.
3. Fire pump rooms.
4. Generator rooms.
5. Public restrooms with an area greater than 300 square feet (27.87 m<sup>2</sup>).

**1008.3.4 Duration.** The emergency power system shall provide power for a duration of not less than 90 minutes and shall consist of storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Section 2702.

**1008.3.5 Illumination level under emergency power.** Emergency lighting facilities shall be arranged to provide initial illumination that is not less than an average of 1 footcandle (11 lux) and a minimum at any point of 0.1 footcandle (1 lux) measured along the path of egress at floor level. Illumination levels shall be permitted to decline to 0.6 footcandle (6 lux) average and a minimum at any point of 0.06 footcandle (0.6 lux) at the end of the emergency lighting time duration. A maximum-to-minimum illumination uniformity ratio of 40 to 1 shall not be exceeded. In Group I-2 occupancies, failure of a single lamp in a luminaire shall not reduce the illumination level to less than 0.2 footcandle (2.2 lux).

## SECTION 1009 ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS

**1009.1 Accessible means of egress required.** Accessible means of egress shall comply with this section. Accessible spaces shall be provided with not less than one accessible means of egress. Where more than one means of egress is required by Section 1006.2 or 1006.3 from any accessible space, each accessible portion of the space shall be served by accessible means of egress *in at least the same number as required by Sections 1006.2 or 1006.3. In addition to the requirements of this chapter, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings for persons with disabilities, shall also comply with the requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B as applicable.*

**Exceptions:**

1. One accessible means of egress is required from an accessible mezzanine level in accordance with Section 1009.3, 1009.4 or 1009.5, and Chapter 11A or 11B, as applicable.
2. In assembly areas with ramped aisles or stepped aisles, one accessible means of egress is permitted where the common path of egress travel is accessible and meets the requirements in Section 1030.8 and Chapter 11A or 11B, as applicable.

**1009.2 Continuity and components.** Each required accessible means of egress shall be continuous to a public way and shall consist of one or more of the following components:

1. Accessible routes complying with Chapter 11A, Sections 1110A.1 and 1120A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-206 and 11B-402, as applicable.
2. Interior exit stairways complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1023, and Chapter 11A, Section 1123A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-210 and 11B-504, as applicable.
3. Exit access stairways complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1019.3 or 1019.4, Chapter 11A, Section 1123A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-210 and 11B-504, as applicable.
4. Exterior exit stairways complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1027, and Chapter 11A, Section 1115A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-210 and 11B-504, as applicable, and serving levels other than the level of exit discharge.
5. Elevators complying with Section 1009.4, and Chapter 11A, Section 1124A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-206.6 and 11B-407, as applicable.
6. Platform lifts complying with Section 1009.5, and Chapter 11A, Section 1124A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-206.7, 11B-207.2 and 11B-410 as applicable.
7. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1026.
8. Ramps complying with Section 1012, and Chapter 11A, Sections 1114A and 1122A, or Chapter 11B, 11B-405, as applicable.
9. Areas of refuge complying with Section 1009.6.

10. Exterior areas for assisted rescue complying with Section 1009.7 serving exits at the level of exit discharge.

**1009.2.1 Elevators required.** In buildings where a required accessible floor or occupied roof is four or more stories above or below a level of exit discharge, not less than one required accessible means of egress shall be an elevator complying with Section 1009.4.

**Exceptions:**

1. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a horizontal exit and located at or above the levels of exit discharge.
2. In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2, the elevator shall not be required on floors provided with a ramp conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.

**1009.3 Stairways.** In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, a stairway between stories shall comply with Sections 1009.3.1 through 1009.3.3. **[DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC]** *In addition, exit stairways shall comply with Chapter 11A, Sections 1115A and 1123A, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-210 and 11B-504, as applicable.*

**1009.3.1 Exit access stairways.** Exit access stairways that connect levels in the same story are not permitted as part of an accessible means of egress.

**Exception:** Exit access stairways providing means of egress from mezzanines are permitted as part of an accessible means of egress.

**1009.3.2 Stairway width.** Stairways shall have a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum between handrails.

**Exceptions:**

1. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
2. The clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required for stairways accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a horizontal exit.

**1009.3.3 Area of refuge.** Stairways shall either incorporate an area of refuge within an enlarged floor-level landing or shall be accessed from an area of refuge complying with Section 1009.6.

**Exceptions:**

1. Areas of refuge are not required at exit access stairways where two-way communication is provided at the elevator landing in accordance with Section 1009.8.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

2. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways serving open parking garages.
4. Areas of refuge are not required for smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating areas complying with Sections 1030.6.2 and 1030.6.3.
5. Areas of refuge are not required at stairways in Group R-2 occupancies.
6. Areas of refuge are not required for stairways accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a horizontal exit.

**1009.4 Elevators.** In order to be considered part of an accessible means of egress, an elevator shall comply with Sections 1009.4.1 and 1009.4.2.

**1009.4.1 Standby power.** The elevator shall meet the emergency operation and signaling device requirements of *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*. Standby power shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 27 and Section 3003.

**1009.4.2 Area of refuge.** The elevator shall be accessed from an area of refuge complying with Section 1009.6.

### Exceptions:

1. Areas of refuge are not required at the elevator in open parking garages.
2. Areas of refuge are not required in buildings and facilities equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
3. Areas of refuge are not required at elevators not required to be located in a shaft in accordance with Section 712.
4. Areas of refuge are not required at elevators serving smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating areas complying with Sections 1030.6.2 and 1030.6.3.
5. Areas of refuge are not required for elevators accessed from a refuge area in conjunction with a horizontal exit.

**1009.5 Platform lifts.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to serve as part of an accessible means of egress where allowed as part of a required accessible route in *Chapter 11A, Sections 1121A and 1124A.11, or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-206.7.1 through 11B-206.7.10, as applicable*. Standby power for the platform lift shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 27.

**[DSA-AC]** See Chapter 11B, Section 11B-207.2 for additional accessible means of egress requirements at platform lifts.

**1009.6 Areas of refuge.** Every required area of refuge shall be accessible from the space it serves by an accessible means of egress.

**[DSA-AC]** Areas of refuge shall comply with the requirements of this code and shall adjoin an accessible route complying with Sections 11B-206 and 11B-402,

**1009.6.1 Travel distance.** The maximum travel distance from any accessible space to an area of refuge shall not exceed the exit access travel distance permitted for the occupancy in accordance with Section 1017.1.

**1009.6.2 Stairway or elevator access.** Every required area of refuge shall have direct access to a stairway complying with Sections 1009.3 and 1023 or an elevator complying with Section 1009.4.

**Exception:** An interior area of refuge at the level of exit discharge that provides direct access to an exterior exit door.

**1009.6.3 Size.** Each area of refuge shall be sized to accommodate two wheelchair spaces that are not less than 30 inches by 52 inches (762 mm by 1320 mm). The total number of such 30-inch by 52-inch (762 mm by 1320 mm) spaces per story shall be not less than one for every 200 persons of calculated occupant load served by the area of refuge. Such wheelchair spaces shall not reduce the means of egress minimum width or required capacity. Access to any of the required wheelchair spaces in an area of refuge shall not be obstructed by more than one adjoining wheelchair space.

**Exception:** The enforcing agency may reduce the size of each required area of refuge to accommodate one wheelchair space that is not less than 30 inches by 52 inches (762 mm by 1320 mm) on floors where the occupant load is less than 200.

**1009.6.4 Separation.** Each area of refuge shall be separated from the remainder of the story by a smoke barrier complying with Section 709 or a horizontal exit complying with Section 1026. Each area of refuge shall be designed to minimize the intrusion of smoke.

### Exceptions:

1. Areas of refuge located within an enclosure for interior exit stairways complying with Section 1023.
2. Areas of refuge in outdoor facilities where exit access is essentially open to the outside.

**1009.6.5 Two-way communication.** Areas of refuge shall be provided with a two-way communication system complying with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2.

**1009.7 Exterior areas for assisted rescue.** Exterior areas for assisted rescue shall be accessed by an accessible route from the area served.

Where the exit discharge does not include an accessible route from an exit located on the level of exit discharge to a public way, an exterior area of assisted rescue shall be provided on the exterior landing in accordance with Sections 1009.7.1 through 1009.7.4.

**1009.7.1 Size.** Each exterior area for assisted rescue shall be sized to accommodate wheelchair spaces in accordance with Section 1009.6.3.

**1009.7.2 Separation.** Exterior walls separating the exterior area of assisted rescue from the interior of the building shall have a minimum fire-resistance rating of 1 hour, rated for exposure to fire from the inside. The fire-resistance-rated exterior wall construction shall extend horizontally not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) beyond the landing on either side of the landing or equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction is permitted to extend out perpendicular to the exterior wall not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) on the side of the landing. The fire-resistance-rated construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor level of the area for assisted rescue or to the roof line, whichever is lower. Openings within such fire-resistance-rated exterior walls shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

**Exception:** The fire-resistance rating and opening protectives are not required in the exterior wall where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

**1009.7.3 Openness.** The exterior area for assisted rescue shall be open to the outside air. The sides other than the separation walls shall be not less than 50 percent open, and the open area shall be distributed so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

**1009.7.4 Stairways.** Stairways that are part of the means of egress for the exterior area for assisted rescue shall provide a minimum clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails.

**Exception:** The minimum clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) between handrails is not required at stairways serving buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.

**1009.8 Two-way communication.** A two-way communication system complying with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2 shall be provided at the landing serving each elevator or bank of elevators on each accessible floor that is one or more stories above or below the level of exit discharge.

#### Exceptions:

1. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving each elevator or bank of elevators where the two-way communication system is provided within areas of refuge in accordance with Section 1009.6.5.
2. Two-way communication systems are not required on floors provided with ramps conforming to the provisions of Section 1012.
3. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only service elevators that are not designated as part of the accessible means of egress or serve as part of the required accessible route into a facility.

4. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landings serving only freight elevators.

5. Two-way communication systems are not required at the landing serving a private residence elevator.

6. Two-way communication systems are not required in Group I-2 or I-3 facilities.

**1009.8.1 System requirements.** Two-way communication systems shall provide communication between each required location and the fire command center or a central control point location approved by the fire department. Where the central control point is not a constantly attended location, the two-way communication system shall have timed, automatic telephone dial-out capability that provides two-way communication with an approved supervising station or 9-1-1. The two-way communication system shall include both audible and visible signals.

**1009.8.1.1 Visible communication method. [DSA-AC and HCD 1-AC]** A button complying with Section 1138A.4 or Sections 11B-205 and 11B-309 in the area of refuge shall activate both a light in the area of refuge indicating that rescue has been requested and a light at the central control point indicating that rescue is being requested. A button at the central control point shall activate both a light at the central control point and a light in the area of refuge indicating that the request has been received.

**1009.8.2 Directions.** Directions for the use of the two-way communication system, instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communication system and written identification of the location shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communication system. Signage shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Section 11B-703.5 requirements for visual characters.

**1009.9 Signage.** Signage indicating special accessibility provisions shall be provided as shown:

1. Each door providing access to an area of refuge from an adjacent floor area shall be identified by a sign stating, "AREA OF REFUGE."
2. Each door providing access to an exterior area for assisted rescue shall be identified by a sign stating, "EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE."

Signage shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A and Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5 as applicable, requirements for visual characters and include the International Symbol of Accessibility. Where exit sign illumination is required by Section 1013.3, the signs shall be illuminated. Additionally, visual characters, raised character and braille signage complying with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5 shall be located at each door to an area of refuge and exterior area for assisted rescue in accordance with Section 1013.4. The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.7.2.1.

**1009.10 Directional signage.** Directional signage complying with Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5 indicating the location

## MEANS OF EGRESS

of all other means of egress and which of those are accessible means of egress shall be provided at the following:

1. At exits serving a required accessible space but not providing an approved accessible means of egress.
2. At elevator landings.
3. Within areas of refuge.

**1009.11 Instructions.** In areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue, instructions on the use of the area under emergency conditions shall be posted. Signage shall comply with *Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-703.5* requirements for visual characters. The instructions shall include all of the following:

1. Persons able to use the exit stairway do so as soon as possible, unless they are assisting others.
2. Information on planned availability of assistance in the use of stairs or supervised operation of elevators and how to summon such assistance.
3. Directions for use of the two-way communication system where provided.

**1009.12 Alarms/emergency warning systems/two-way communication systems.** Required emergency warning systems shall activate a means of warning the hearing impaired. Emergency warning systems provided as part of the fire-alarm system and two-way communication systems required by Chapter 10 shall be designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 72 as amended in Chapter 35.

## SECTION 1010 DOORS, GATES AND TURNSTILES

**[DSA-AC]** In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-206.5 and 11B-404, as applicable.

**1010.1 General.** Doors in the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.1.1 through 1010.3.4. Exterior exit doors shall also comply with the requirements of Section 1022.2. Gates in the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.4 and 1010.4.1. Turnstiles in the means of egress shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.5 through 1010.5.4.

Doors, gates and turnstiles provided for egress purposes in numbers greater than required by this code shall comply with the requirements of this section.

Doors in the means of egress shall be readily distinguishable from the adjacent construction and finishes such that the doors are easily recognizable as doors. Mirrors or similar reflecting materials shall not be used on means of egress doors. Means of egress doors shall not be concealed by curtains, drapes, decorations or similar materials.

**1010.1.1 Size of doors.** The required capacity of each door opening shall be sufficient for the occupant load thereof and shall provide a minimum clear opening width

of 32 inches (813 mm). The clear opening width of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). Where this section requires a minimum clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a minimum clear opening width of 32 inches (813 mm). In Group I-2 or I-2.1, doors serving as means of egress doors where used for the movement of beds and stretcher patients shall provide a minimum clear opening width of 44 inches (1118 mm). Where this section requires a minimum clear opening width of 44 inches (1118 mm) and a door opening includes two door leaves without a mullion, one leaf shall provide a minimum clear opening width of 44 inches (1118 mm). The minimum clear opening height of doors shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

### Exceptions:

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A* the minimum width shall not apply to door openings that are not part of the required means of egress.
2. In Group I-3, door openings to resident sleeping units that are not required to be *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A* shall have a minimum clear opening width of 28 inches (711 mm).
3. Door openings to storage closets less than 10 square feet ( $0.93\text{ m}^2$ ) in area shall not be limited by the minimum clear opening width.
4. The maximum width of door leaves in revolving doors that comply with Section 1010.3.1 shall not be limited.
5. The maximum width of door leaves in power-operated doors that comply with Section 1010.3.2 shall not be limited.
6. Door openings within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit shall have a minimum clear opening height of 78 inches (1981 mm).
7. In dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A*, exterior door openings other than the required exit door shall have a minimum clear opening height of 76 inches (1930 mm).
8. In Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4, in dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be *adaptable or accessible as specified in Chapter 11A*, the minimum clear opening widths shall not apply to interior egress doors.
9. Doors to walk-in freezers and coolers less than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) in area shall have a maximum width of 60 inches (1524 mm) nominal.
10. The minimum clear opening width shall not apply to doors for *nonadaptable or nonaccessible*

shower or sauna compartments, as specified in Chapter 11A.

10. Doors serving *nonadaptable* or nonaccessible single-user shower or sauna compartments, toilet stalls or dressing, fitting or changing rooms shall have a minimum clear opening width of 20 inches (508 mm).

**1010.1.1 Projections into clear opening.** There shall not be projections into the required clear opening width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. Door closers, overhead door stops, power door operators, and electromagnetic door locks shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.
2. In a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy, there shall be no projections into the clear width of doors used for the movement of beds and stretcher patients in the means of egress.

**1010.1.2 Egress door types.** Egress doors shall be of the side-hinged swinging door, pivoted door, or balanced door types.

**Exceptions:**

1. Private garages, office areas, factory and storage areas with an occupant load of 10 or less.
2. Group I-3 occupancies used as a place of detention.
3. Critical or intensive care patient rooms within suites of health care facilities.
4. Doors within or serving a single dwelling unit in Groups R-2 and R-3.
5. In other than Group H occupancies, revolving doors complying with Section 1010.3.1.
6. In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies complying with Section 1010.3.3.
7. Power-operated doors in accordance with Section 1010.3.2.
8. Doors serving a bathroom within an individual sleeping unit in Group R-1.
9. In other than Group H occupancies, manually operated horizontal sliding doors are permitted in a means of egress from spaces with an occupant load of 10 or less.
10. In I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, exit doors serving an occupant load of 50 or more, shall not be of the pivoted or balanced type.

**1010.1.2.1 Direction of swing.** Side-hinged swinging doors, pivoted doors and balanced doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel where serving a room or

area containing an occupant load of 50 or more persons or a Group H occupancy. For Group L occupancies, see Section 453.6.2.

In a Group I-2 occupancy, all required exterior egress doors shall open in the direction of egress regardless of the occupant load served.

**1010.1.3 Forces to unlatch and open doors.** The forces to unlatch doors shall comply with the following:

1. Where door hardware operates by push or pull, the operational force to unlatch the door shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N).
2. Where door hardware operates by rotation, the operational force to unlatch the door shall not exceed 28 inch-pounds (315 N·cm).

The force to open doors shall comply with the following:

1. For interior swinging egress doors that are manually operated, other than doors required to be fire rated, the force for pushing or pulling open the door shall not exceed 5 pounds (22 N).
2. For other swinging doors, sliding doors or folding doors, and doors required to be fire rated, the door shall require not more than a 30-pound (133 N) force to be set in motion and shall move to a full-open position when subjected to not more than a 15-pound (67 N) force.

**1010.1.3.1 Location of applied forces.** Forces shall be applied to the latch side of the door.

**1010.1.3.2 Manual horizontal sliding doors.** Where a manual horizontal sliding door is required to latch, the latch or other mechanism shall prevent the door from rebounding into a partially open position when the door is closed.

**1010.1.4 Floor elevation.** There shall be a floor or landing on each side of a door. Such floor or landing shall be at the same elevation on each side of the door. Landings shall be level except for exterior landings, which are permitted to have a slope not to exceed 0.25 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**Exceptions:**

1. At doors serving individual dwelling units or sleeping units in Groups R-2 and R-3 : a door is permitted to open at the top step of an interior flight of stairs, provided that the door does not swing over the top step.
2. At exterior doors serving Groups F, H, R-2 and S and where such doors are not part of an *adaptable* or accessible route or, not required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B of the California Building Code, the landing at an exterior door shall not be more than 7 inches (178 mm) below the landing on the egress side of the door, provided that the door, other than an exterior storm or screen door, does not swing over the landing.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

- 3. At exterior doors serving Group U and individual dwelling units and sleeping units in Groups R-2 and R-3, and where such units are not required to be *adaptable or accessible*, the landing at an exterior doorway shall be not more than  $7\frac{3}{4}$  inches (197 mm) below the landing on the egress side of the door. Such doors, including storm or screen doors, shall be permitted to swing over either landing.
- 4. Variations in elevation due to differences in finish materials, but not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
- 5. Exterior decks, patios or balconies that are part of *adaptable or accessible* dwelling units, have impervious surfaces and that are not more than 4 inches (102 mm) below the finished floor level of the adjacent interior space of the dwelling unit. *See also Chapter 11A, Section 1132A.4.*
- 6. Doors serving equipment spaces not required to be *adaptable or accessible* and serving an occupant load of five or less shall be permitted to have a landing on one side to be not more than 7 inches (178 mm) above or below the landing on the egress side of the door.

**1010.1.5 Landings at doors.** Landings shall have a width not less than the width of the stairway or the door, whichever is greater. Doors in the fully open position shall not reduce a required dimension by more than 7 inches (178 mm). Where a landing serves an occupant load of 50 or more, doors in any position shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half its required width. Landings shall have a length measured in the direction of travel of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm).

**Exception:** Landing length in the direction of travel in Groups R-3 and U and within individual units of Group R-2 need not exceed 36 inches (914 mm).

**1010.1.6 Thresholds.** Thresholds at doorways shall not exceed  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) in height above the finished floor or landing for sliding doors serving dwelling units or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) above the finished floor or landing for other doors. Raised thresholds and floor level changes greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) at doorways shall be beveled with a slope not greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope).

### Exceptions:

- 1. In occupancy Group R-2 or R-3, threshold heights for sliding and side-hinged exterior doors shall be permitted to be up to  $7\frac{3}{4}$  inches (197 mm) in height if all of the following apply:
  - 1.1. The door is not part of the required means of egress.
  - 1.2. The door is not part of an accessible route as required by Chapter 11A or 11B.
  - 1.3. The door is not part of an *adaptable or accessible dwelling unit*.

- 2. In *adaptable or accessible dwelling units*, where Exception 5 to Section 1010.1.4 permits a 4-inch (102 mm) elevation change at the door, the threshold height on the exterior side of the door shall not exceed  $4\frac{3}{4}$  inches (120 mm) in height above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for sliding doors or  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) above the exterior deck, patio or balcony for other doors.

**1010.1.7 Door arrangement.** Space between two doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum plus the width of a door swinging into the space. Doors in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors.

### Exceptions:

- 1. The minimum distance between horizontal sliding power-operated doors in a series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm).
- 2. Storm and screen doors serving individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 need not be spaced 48 inches (1219 mm) from the other door.
- 3. Doors within individual dwelling units in Groups R-2 and R-3 other than *adaptable or accessible* dwelling units.

**1010.2 Door operations.** Except as specifically permitted by this section, egress doors shall be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

**1010.2.1 Unlatching.** The unlatching of any door or leaf for egress shall require not more than one motion in a single linear or rotational direction to release all latching and all locking devices.

### Exceptions:

- 1. Places of detention or restraint.
- 2. Where manually operated bolt locks are permitted by Section 1010.2.5.
- 3. Doors with automatic flush bolts as permitted by Section 1010.2.4, Item 4.
- 4. Doors from individual dwelling units and sleeping units of Group R occupancies as permitted by Section 1010.2.4, Item 5.

**1010.2.2 Hardware.** Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices on doors required to be accessible by Chapter 11A or 11B shall not require tight grasping, tight pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate.

*These design requirements for door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices, intended for use on required means of egress doors in other than Group R and M occupancies with an occupant load of 10 or less, shall comply with SFM Standard 12-10-2, Section 12-10-202 contained in the CCR, Title 24, Part 12, California Referenced Standards Code.*

**1010.2.3 Hardware height.** Door handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operating devices shall be installed 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finished floor. Locks used only for

security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.

**Exception:** Access doors or gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the latch release on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the finished floor or ground, provided that the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

**1010.2.4 Locks and latches.** Locks and latches shall be permitted to prevent operation of doors where any of the following exist:

1. Places of detention or restraint.
2. In Group I-1, Condition 2 and Group I-2 occupancies where the clinical needs of persons receiving care require containment or where persons receiving care pose a security threat, provided that all clinical staff can readily unlock doors at all times, and all such locks are keyed to keys carried by all clinical staff at all times or all clinical staff have the codes or other means necessary to operate the locks at all times.
3. In buildings in occupancy Group A having an occupant load of 300 or less, Groups B, F, M and S, and in places of religious worship, the main door or doors are permitted to be equipped with key-operated locking devices from the egress side provided:
  - 3.1. The locking device is readily distinguishable as locked.
  - 3.2. A readily visible durable sign is posted on the egress side on or adjacent to the door stating: THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THIS SPACE IS OCCUPIED. The sign shall be in letters 1 inch (25 mm) high on a contrasting background.
  - 3.3. The use of the key-operated locking device is revocable by the building official for due cause.
4. Where egress doors are used in pairs, approved automatic flush bolts shall be permitted to be used, provided that the door leaf having the automatic flush bolts does not have a doorknob or surface-mounted hardware.
5. Doors from individual dwelling or sleeping units of Group R occupancies having an occupant load of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool.
6. Fire doors after the minimum elevated temperature has disabled the unlatching mechanism in accordance with listed fire door test procedures.
7. Doors serving roofs not intended to be occupied shall be permitted to be locked preventing entry to the building from the roof.
8. Other than egress courts, where occupants must egress from an exterior space through the building for means of egress, exit access doors shall be permitted to be equipped with an approved locking device where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:
  - 8.1. The maximum occupant load shall be posted where required by Section 1004.9. Such signage shall be permanently affixed inside the building and shall be posted in a conspicuous space near all the exit access doorways.
  - 8.2. A weatherproof telephone or two-way communication system installed in accordance with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2 shall be located adjacent to not less than one required exit access door on the exterior side.
  - 8.3. The egress door locking device is readily distinguishable as locked and shall be a key-operated locking device.
  - 8.4. A clear window or glazed door opening, not less than 5 square feet ( $0.46 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, shall be provided at each exit access door to determine if there are occupants using the outdoor area.
  - 8.5. A readily visible, durable sign shall be posted on the interior side on or adjacent to each locked required exit access door serving the exterior area stating, "THIS DOOR TO REMAIN UNLOCKED WHEN THE OUTDOOR AREA IS OCCUPIED." The letters on the sign shall be not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) high on a contrasting background.
  - 8.6. The occupant load of the occupied exterior area shall not exceed 300 occupants in accordance with Section 1004.
9. Locking devices are permitted on doors to balconies, decks or other exterior spaces serving individual dwelling or sleeping units.
10. Locking devices are permitted on doors to balconies, decks or other exterior spaces of 250 square feet ( $23.23 \text{ m}^2$ ) or less serving a private office space.

**1010.2.5 Bolt locks.** Manually operated flush bolts or surface bolts are not permitted.

#### Exceptions:

1. On doors not required for egress in individual dwelling units or sleeping units.
2. Where a pair of doors serves a storage or equipment room, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf.
3. Where a pair of doors serves an occupant load of less than 50 persons in a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-

## MEANS OF EGRESS

mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

4. Where a pair of doors serves a Group B, F or S occupancy, manually operated edge- or surface-mounted bolts are permitted on the inactive leaf provided that such inactive leaf is not needed to meet egress capacity requirements and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.
5. *Manually operated edge- and surface-mounted bolts shall be permitted on the inactive leaf of pairs of doors that serve patient care rooms in Group I-2 occupancies, provided that the bolts are self-latching and the inactive leaf is not needed to meet the minimum clear opening width required by Section 1010.1.1 of the California Building Code.* The inactive leaf shall not contain doorknobs, panic bars or similar operating hardware.

**1010.2.6 Closet doors.** Closet doors that latch in the closed position shall be openable from inside the closet.

**1010.2.7 Stairway doors.** Interior stairway means of egress doors shall be openable from both sides without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

### Exceptions:

1. Stairway discharge doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side.
2. This section shall not apply to doors arranged in accordance with Section 403.5.3.
3. Stairway exit doors are permitted to be locked from the side opposite the egress side, provided that they are openable from the egress side and capable of being unlocked simultaneously without unlatching upon a signal from the fire command center, if present, or a signal by emergency personnel from a single location inside the main entrance to the building.
4. Stairway exit doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side in Group B, F, M and S occupancies where the only interior access to the tenant space is from a single exit stairway where permitted in Section 1006.3.4.
5. Stairway exit doors shall be openable from the egress side and shall only be locked from the opposite side in Group R-2 occupancies where the only interior access to the dwelling unit is from a single exit stairway where permitted in Section 1006.3.4.

**1010.2.8 Locking arrangements in educational occupancies.** In Group E occupancies, Group B educational occupancies and Group I-4 occupancies, egress doors from classrooms, offices and other occupied rooms with locking arrangements designed to keep intruders from entering the room shall comply with all of the following conditions:

1. The door shall be capable of being unlocked from outside the room with a key or other approved means.
2. The door shall be openable from within the room in accordance with Section 1010.2.
3. Modifications shall not be made to listed panic hardware, fire door hardware or door closers.
4. Modifications to fire door assemblies shall be in accordance with NFPA 80.

Remote locking or unlocking of doors from an approved location shall be permitted in addition to the unlocking operation in Item 1.

**1010.2.8.1 Special provisions—school classrooms.** School classrooms constructed after January 1, 1990, not equipped with automatic sprinkler systems, which have metal grilles or bars on all their windows and do not have at least two exit doors within 3 feet (914 mm) of each end of the classroom opening to the exterior of the building or to a common hallway used for evacuation purposes, shall have an inside release for the grilles or bars on at least one window farthest from the exit doors. The window or windows with the inside release shall be clearly marked as emergency exits.

**1010.2.8.2 Group E lockable doors from the inside.** New buildings that are included in public schools (kindergarten through 12th grade) state funded projects and receiving state funding pursuant to Leroy F. Green, School Facilities Act of 1998, California Education Code Sections 17070.10 through 17079, and that are submitted to the Division of the State Architect for plan review after July 1, 2011 in accordance with Education Code 17075.50, shall include locks that allow doors to classrooms and any room with an occupancy of five or more persons to be locked from the inside. The locks shall conform to the specification and requirements found in Section 1010.2.

### Exceptions:

1. Doors that are locked from the outside at all times such as, but not limited to, janitor's closet, electrical room, storage room, boiler room, elevator equipment room and pupil restroom.
2. Reconstruction projects that utilize original plans in accordance with California Administrative Code, Section 4-314.
3. Existing relocatable buildings that are relocated within same site in accordance with California Administrative Code, Section 4-314.

**1010.2.9 Panic and fire exit hardware.** Swinging doors serving a Group H occupancy and swinging doors serving rooms or spaces with an occupant load of 50 or more in a Group A or E occupancy *assembly area not classified as an assembly occupancy E, I-2 or I-2.1 occupancies* shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than panic hardware or fire exit hardware. *For Group L occupancies see Section 453.6.3.*

**Exceptions:**

1. A main exit of a Group A occupancy shall be permitted to have locking devices in accordance with Section 1010.2.4, Item 3.
2. Doors provided with panic hardware or fire exit hardware and serving a Group A or E occupancy shall be permitted to be electrically locked in accordance with Section 1010.2.11 or 1010.2.12.
3. Exit access doors serving occupied exterior areas shall be permitted to be locked in accordance with Section 1010.2.4, Item 8.
4. Courtrooms shall be permitted to be locked in accordance with Section 1010.2.13, Item 3.

**1010.2.9.1 Refrigeration machinery room.** Refrigeration machinery rooms larger than 1,000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) shall have not less than two exit or exit access doorways that swing in the direction of egress travel and shall be equipped with panic hardware or fire exit hardware.

**1010.2.9.2 Rooms with electrical equipment.** Exit or exit access doors serving transformer vaults, rooms designated for batteries or energy storage systems, or modular data centers shall be equipped with panic hardware or fire exit hardware. Rooms containing electrical equipment rated 800 amperes or more that contain overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices and where the exit or exit access door is less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from the equipment working space as required by NFPA 70, such doors shall not be provided with a latch or lock other than panic hardware or fire exit hardware. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel.

**1010.2.9.3 Installation.** Where panic or fire exit hardware is installed, it shall comply with the following:

1. Panic hardware shall be listed in accordance with UL 305.
2. Fire exit hardware shall be listed in accordance with UL 10C and UL 305.
3. The actuating portion of the releasing device shall extend not less than one-half of the door leaf width.
4. The maximum unlatching force shall not exceed 15 pounds (67 N).

**1010.2.9.4 Balanced doors.** If balanced doors are used and panic hardware is required, the panic hardware shall be the push-pad type and the pad shall not extend

more than one-half the width of the door measured from the latch side.

**1010.2.10 Monitored or recorded egress.** Where electrical systems that monitor or record egress activity are incorporated, the locking system shall comply with Section 1010.2.11, 1010.2.12, 1010.2.13, 1010.2.14 or 1010.2.15 or shall be readily openable from the egress side without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

**1010.2.11 Door hardware release of electrically locked egress doors.** Door hardware release of electric locking systems shall be permitted on doors in the means of egress in any occupancy except Group H where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The door hardware that is affixed to the door leaf has an obvious method of operation that is readily operated under all lighting conditions.
2. The door hardware is capable of being operated with one hand and shall comply with Section 1010.2.1.
3. Operation of the door hardware directly interrupts the power to the electric lock and unlocks the door immediately.
4. Loss of power to the electric locking system automatically unlocks the door.
5. Where panic or fire exit hardware is required by Section 1010.2.9, operation of the panic or fire exit hardware also releases the electric lock.
6. The locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

**1010.2.12 Sensor release of electrically locked egress doors.** Sensor release of electric locking systems shall be permitted on doors located in the means of egress in any occupancy except Group H where installed and operated in accordance with all of the following criteria:

1. The sensor shall be installed on the egress side, arranged to detect an occupant approaching the doors, and shall cause the electric locking system to unlock.
2. The electric locks shall be arranged to unlock by a signal from or loss of power to the sensor.
3. Loss of power to the lock or locking system shall automatically unlock the electric locks.
4. The doors shall be arranged to unlock from a manual unlocking device located 40 inches to 48 inches (1016 mm to 1219 mm) vertically above the floor and within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the secured doors. Ready access shall be provided to the manual unlocking device and the device shall be clearly identified by a sign that reads "PUSH TO EXIT." When operated, the manual unlocking device shall result in direct interruption of power to the electric lock—*independent of other electronics*—and the electric lock shall remain unlocked for not less than 30 seconds.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

5. Activation of the building fire alarm system, where provided, shall automatically unlock the electric lock, and the electric lock shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.
6. Activation of the building automatic sprinkler system or fire detection system, where provided, shall automatically unlock the electric lock. The electric lock shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm system has been reset.
7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.
8. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

**1010.2.12.1 Access-controlled elevator lobby doors in high-rise office buildings.** For elevator lobbies in high-rise office buildings where the occupants of the floor are not required to travel through the elevator lobby to reach an exit, when approved by the fire chief, the doors separating the elevator lobby from the adjacent occupied tenant space that also serve as the entrance doors to the tenant space shall be permitted to be equipped with an approved entrance and egress access control system provided all of the following requirements are met:

1. The building is provided throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. A smoke detector is installed on the ceiling on the tenant side of the elevator lobby doors along the center line of the door opening, not less than 1 foot and not more than 5 feet from the door opening, and is connected to the fire alarm system.
3. A remote master switch capable of unlocking the elevator lobby doors shall be provided in the fire command center for use by the fire department.
4. Locks for the elevator lobby shall be U.L. and California State Fire Marshal listed fail-safe type locking mechanisms. The locking device shall automatically release on activation of any fire alarm device on the floor of alarm (waterflow, smoke detector, manual pull stations, etc.). All locking devices shall unlock, but not unlatch, upon activation.
5. A two-way voice communication system, utilizing dedicated lines, shall be provided from each locked elevator lobby to the 24-hour staffed location on site, annunciated as to location. Operating instructions shall be posted above each two-way communication device.

**Exception:** When approved by the fire chief, two-way voice communication system to an off-site facility may be permitted where means to remotely unlock the access controlled doors from the off-site facility are provided.

6. An approved momentary mushroom-shaped palm button connected to the doors and installed adjacent to each locked elevator lobby door shall be provided to release the door locks when operated by an individual in the elevator lobby. The locks shall be reset manually at the door. Mount palm button so that the center line is 48 inches above the finished floor.

Provide a sign stating:

**"IN CASE OF EMERGENCY,  
PUSH PALM BUTTON,  
DOOR WILL UNLOCK  
AND SECURITY ALARM  
WILL SOUND."**

The sign lettering shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch high letters by  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch width stroke on a contrasting background.

7. Loss of power to that part of the access control system which locks the doors shall automatically unlock the doors.

**1010.2.13 Delayed egress.** Delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be installed on doors serving the following occupancies in buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an approved automatic smoke or heat detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.

1. Group B, F, I, M, R, S and U occupancies.
2. Group E classrooms with an occupant load of less than 50.
3. In courtrooms in Group A-3 and B occupancies, delayed egress locking systems shall be permitted to be installed on exit or exit access doors, other than the main exit or exit access door, in buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an approved automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907.

**1010.2.13.1 Delayed egress locking system.** The delayed egress locking system shall be installed and operated in accordance with all of the following:

1. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic fire detection system, allowing immediate free egress.
2. The delay electronics of the delayed egress locking system shall deactivate upon loss of electrical power controlling the lock or lock mechanism, allowing immediate free egress, to any one of the following:
  - 2.1. The egress-control device itself.
  - 2.2. The smoke detection system.
  - 2.3. Means of egress illumination as required by Section 1008.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

3. The delayed egress locking system shall have the capability of being deactivated at the fire command center and other approved locations.
4. An attempt to egress shall initiate an irreversible process that shall allow such egress in not more than 15 seconds when a physical effort to exit is applied to the egress side door hardware for not more than 3 seconds. Initiation of the irreversible process shall activate an audible signal in the vicinity of the door. Once the delay electronics have been deactivated, rearming the delay electronics shall be by manual means only. *The time delay established for each egress-control device shall not be field adjustable. For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B, 11B-404.2.9.*

**Exception:** In facilities housing Alzheimer's or dementia clients, a delay of not more than 30 seconds is permitted on a delayed egress door.

5. The egress path from any point shall not pass through more than one delayed egress locking system.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Group R-2.1, Group I-2 or I-3 occupancies, the egress path from any point in the building shall pass through not more than two delayed egress locking systems provided that the combined delay does not exceed 30 seconds.
  - 5.1. A tactile sign shall also be provided in Braille and raised characters, which complies with Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5.
2. In Group R-2.1 or Group I-4 occupancies, the egress path from any point in the building shall pass through not more than two delayed egress locking systems provided the combined delay does not exceed 30 seconds and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
6. A sign shall be provided on the door and shall be located above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the door exit hardware:

**Exception:** Where approved, in Group I occupancies, the installation of a sign is not required where care recipients who because of clinical needs require restraint or containment as part of the function of the treatment area.

- 6.1. For doors that swing in the direction of egress, the sign shall read, "PUSH UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS."

- 6.2. For doors that swing in the opposite direction of egress, the sign shall read, "PULL UNTIL ALARM SOUNDS. DOOR CAN BE OPENED IN 15 [30] SECONDS."

- 6.3. The sign shall comply with the visual character requirements in Section 11B-703.5. *Sign lettering shall be at least 1 inch (25 mm) in height and shall have a stroke of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).*

- 6.4. A tactile sign shall also be provided in Braille and raised characters, which complies with Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5.

7. Emergency lighting shall be provided on the egress side of the door.

8. The delayed egress locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

9. *Actuation of the panic bar or other door-latching hardware shall activate an audible signal at the door.*

10. *The unlatching shall not require more than one operation.*

11. *Regardless of the means of deactivation, relocking of the egress-control device shall be by manual means only at the door.*

**1010.2.14 Controlled egress doors in Group I-2.** Electric locking systems, including electro-mechanical locking systems and electromagnetic locking systems, shall be permitted to be locked in the means of egress in Group I-2 occupancies where the clinical needs of persons receiving psychiatric or mental health treatment require their restraint or containment. Controlled egress doors shall be permitted in such occupancies where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and an approved automatic smoke detection system installed in accordance with Section 907, provided that the doors are installed and operate in accordance with all of the following:

1. The door locks shall unlock on actuation of the automatic sprinkler system or automatic smoke detection system.
2. The door locks shall unlock on loss of power controlling the lock or lock mechanism.
3. The door locking system shall be installed to have the capability of being unlocked by a switch located at the fire command center, a nursing station or other approved location. The switch shall directly break power to the lock.
4. A building occupant shall not be required to pass through more than one door equipped with a controlled egress locking system before entering an exit.
5. All staff shall have the keys, codes or other means necessary to operate the locking systems.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

6. Emergency lighting shall be provided at the door.
7. The door locking system units shall be listed in accordance with UL 294.

**Exception:** Items 1 through 4 shall not apply to doors to areas occupied by persons who, because of clinical needs, require restraint or containment as part of the function of a psychiatric or *mental health* treatment area.

### 1010.2.15 Reserved.

**1010.3 Special doors.** Special doors and security grilles shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1010.3.1 through 1010.3.4.

**1010.3.1 Revolving doors.** Revolving doors shall comply with the following:

1. Revolving doors shall comply with BHMA A156.27 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
2. Each revolving door shall be capable of breakout in accordance with BHMA A156.27 and shall provide an aggregate width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).
3. A revolving door shall not be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the foot or top of stairways or escalators. A dispersal area shall be provided between the stairways or escalators and the revolving doors.
4. The revolutions per minute (rpm) for a revolving door shall not exceed the maximum rpm as specified in BHMA A156.27. Manual revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.3.1(1). Automatic or power-operated revolving doors shall comply with Table 1010.3.1(2).
5. An emergency stop switch shall be provided near each entry point of power or automatic operated revolving doors within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the door and between 34 inches (864 mm) and 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor. The activation area of the emergency stop switch button shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter and shall be red.
6. Each revolving door shall have a side-hinged swinging door that complies with Section 1010.1 in the same wall and within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the revolving door.
7. Revolving doors shall not be part of an accessible route required by Section 1009 and Chapter 11A or 11B.

**TABLE 1010.3.1(2)**  
**MAXIMUM DOOR SPEED AUTOMATIC OR POWER-OPERATED REVOLVING DOORS**

REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)
8-0	7.2
9-0	6.4
10-0	5.7
11-0	5.2
12-0	4.8
12-6	4.6
14-0	4.1
16-0	3.6
17-0	3.4
18-0	3.2
20-0	2.9
24-0	2.4

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**1010.3.1.1 Egress component.** A revolving door used as a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1010.3.1 and the following three conditions:

1. Revolving doors shall not be given credit for more than 50 percent of the minimum width or required capacity.
2. Each revolving door shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person occupant load.
3. Each revolving door shall provide for egress in accordance with BHMA A156.27 with a breakout force of not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

**1010.3.1.2 Other than egress component.** A revolving door used as other than a component of a means of egress shall comply with Section 1010.3.1. The breakout force of a revolving door not used as a component of a means of egress shall not be more than 180 pounds (801 N).

**Exception:** A breakout force in excess of 180 pounds (801 N) is permitted if the breakout force is reduced to not more than 130 pounds (578 N) when not less than one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. There is a power failure or power is removed to the device holding the door wings in position.
2. There is an actuation of the automatic sprinkler system where such system is provided.
3. There is an actuation of a smoke detection system that is installed in accordance with Section 907 to provide coverage in areas within the building that are within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the revolving doors.

**TABLE 1010.3.1(1)**  
**MAXIMUM DOOR SPEED MANUAL REVOLVING DOORS**

REVOLVING DOOR MAXIMUM NOMINAL DIAMETER (FT-IN)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE REVOLVING DOOR SPEED (RPM)
6-0	12
7-0	11
8-0	10
9-0	9
10-0	8

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**MEANS OF EGRESS**

4. There is an actuation of a manual control switch, in an approved location and clearly identified, that reduces the breakout force to not more than 130 pounds (578 N).

**1010.3.2 Power-operated doors.** Where means of egress doors are operated or assisted by power, the design shall be such that in the event of power failure, the door is capable of being opened manually to permit means of egress travel or closed where necessary to safeguard means of egress. The forces required to open these doors manually shall not exceed those specified in Section 1010.1.3, except that the force to set the door in motion shall not exceed 50 pounds (220 N). The door shall be capable of opening from any position to the full width of the opening in which such door is installed when a force is applied to the door on the side from which egress is made. Power-operated swinging doors, power-operated sliding doors and power-operated folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.10. Power-assisted swinging doors and low-energy power-operated swinging doors shall comply with BHMA A156.19. Low-energy power-operated sliding doors and low-energy power-operated folding doors shall comply with BHMA A156.38.

**Exceptions:**

1. Occupancies in Group I-3.
2. Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors complying with Section 1010.3.3.
3. For a biparting door in the emergency breakout mode, a door leaf located within a multiple-leaf opening shall be exempt from the minimum 32-inch (813 mm) single-leaf requirement of Section 1010.1.1, provided that a minimum 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening is provided when the two biparting leaves meeting in the center are broken out.

**1010.3.3 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors.** In other than Group H occupancies, special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding door assemblies permitted to be a component of a means of egress in accordance with Exception 6 to Section 1010.1.2 shall comply with all of the following criteria:

1. The doors shall be power operated and shall be capable of being operated manually in the event of power failure.
2. The doors shall be openable by a simple method without special knowledge or effort from the egress side or sides.
3. The force required to operate the door shall not exceed 30 pounds (133 N) to set the door in motion and 15 pounds (67 N) to close the door or open it to the minimum required width.
4. The door shall be openable with a force not to exceed 15 pounds (67 N) when a force of 250 pounds (1100 N) is applied perpendicular to the door adjacent to the operating device.

5. The door assembly shall comply with the applicable fire protection rating and, where rated, shall be self-closing or automatic closing by smoke detection in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80 and shall comply with Section 716.

6. The door assembly shall have an integrated standby power supply.
7. The door assembly power supply shall be electrically supervised.
8. The door shall open to the minimum required width within 10 seconds after activation of the operating device.

**1010.3.4 Security grilles.** In Groups B, F, M and S, horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles are permitted at the main exit and shall be openable from the inside without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort during periods that the space is occupied. The grilles shall remain secured in the full-open position during the period of occupancy by the general public. Where two or more exits or access to exits are required, not more than one-half of the exits or exit access doorways shall be equipped with horizontal sliding or vertical security grilles.

**1010.4 Gates.** Gates serving the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Gates used as a component in a means of egress shall conform to the applicable requirements for doors.

**Exception:** Horizontal sliding or swinging gates exceeding the 4-foot (1219 mm) maximum leaf width limitation are permitted in fences and walls surrounding a stadium.

**1010.4.1 Stadiums.** Panic hardware is not required on gates surrounding stadiums where such gates are under constant immediate supervision while the public is present, and where safe dispersal areas based on 3 square feet (0.28 m<sup>2</sup>) per occupant are located between the fence and enclosed space. Such required safe dispersal areas shall not be located less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the enclosed space. See Section 1028.5 for means of egress from safe dispersal areas.

**1010.5 Turnstiles and similar devices.** Turnstiles or similar devices that restrict travel to one direction shall not be placed so as to obstruct any required means of egress, except where permitted in accordance with Sections 1010.5.1, 1010.5.2 and 1010.5.3.

**1010.5.1 Capacity.** Each turnstile or similar device shall be credited with a capacity based on not more than a 50-person occupant load where all of the following provisions are met:

1. Each device shall turn free in the direction of egress travel when primary power is lost and on the manual release by an employee in the area.
2. Such devices are not given credit for more than 50 percent of the required egress capacity or width.
3. Each device is not more than 39 inches (991 mm) high.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

4. Each device has not less than 16<sup>1/2</sup> inches (419 mm) clear width at and below a height of 39 inches (991 mm) and not less than 22 inches (559 mm) clear width at heights above 39 inches (991 mm).

**1010.5.1.1 Clear width.** Where located as part of an accessible route, turnstiles shall have not less than 36 inches (914 mm) clear width at and below a height of 34 inches (864 mm), not less than 32 inches (813 mm) clear width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) and shall consist of a mechanism other than a revolving device.

**1010.5.2 Security access turnstiles.** Security access turnstiles that inhibit travel in the direction of egress utilizing a physical barrier shall be permitted to be considered as a component of the means of egress, provided that all of the following criteria are met:

1. The building is protected throughout by an approved, supervised automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Each security access turnstile lane configuration has a minimum clear passage width of 22 inches (559 mm).
3. Any security access turnstile lane configuration providing a clear passage width of less than 32 inches (810 mm) shall be credited with a maximum egress capacity of 50 persons.
4. Any security access turnstile lane configuration providing a clear passage width of 32 inches (810 mm) or more shall be credited with a maximum egress capacity as calculated in accordance with Section 1005.
5. Each secured physical barrier shall automatically retract or swing to an unobstructed open position in the direction of egress, under each of the following conditions:
  - 5.1. Upon loss of power to the turnstile or any part of the access control system that secures the physical barrier.
  - 5.2. Upon actuation of a clearly identified manual release device with ready access that results in direct interruption of power to each secured physical barrier, after which such barriers remain in the open position for not less than 30 seconds. The manual release device shall be positioned at one of the following locations:
    - 5.2.1. On the egress side of each security access turnstile lane.
    - 5.2.2. At an approved location where it can be actuated by an employee assigned to the area at all times that the building is occupied.
  - 5.3. Upon actuation of the building fire alarm system, if provided, after which the physical

barrier remains in the open position until the fire alarm system is manually reset.

**Exception:** Actuation of a manual fire alarm box.

- 5.4. Upon actuation of the building automatic sprinkler system or fire detection system, after which the physical barrier remains in the open position until the fire alarm system is manually reset.

**1010.5.3 High turnstile.** Turnstiles more than 39 inches (991 mm) high shall meet the requirements for revolving doors or the requirements of Section 1010.5.2 for security access turnstiles.

**1010.5.4 Additional door.** Where serving an occupant load greater than 300, each turnstile that is not portable shall have a side-hinged swinging door that conforms to Section 1010.1 within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**Exception:** A side-hinged swinging door is not required at security access turnstiles that comply with Section 1010.5.2.

## SECTION 1011 STAIRWAYS

*[DSA-AC] In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-210 and 11B-504, as applicable.*

**1011.1 General.** Stairways serving occupied portions of a building shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1011.2 through 1011.13. Alternating tread devices shall comply with Section 1011.14. Ship's ladders shall comply with Section 1011.15. Ladders shall comply with Section 1011.16.

**Exception:** Within rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes, stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1030.

**1011.2 Width and capacity.** The required capacity of stairways shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm). See Section 1009.3 for accessible means of egress stairways.

### Exceptions:

1. Stairways serving an occupant load of less than 50 shall have a width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm).
2. Spiral stairways as provided for in Section 1011.10.
3. Where an incline platform lift or stairway chairlift is installed on stairways serving occupancies in Group R-3, or within dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, a clear passage width not less than 20

inches (508 mm) shall be provided. Where the seat and platform can be folded when not in use, the distance shall be measured from the folded position.

*Means of egress stairs in a Group I-2 or I-2.1 occupancy used for the movement of beds and stretcher patients shall provide a clear width not less than 44 inches (1118 mm).*

**1011.3 Headroom.** Stairways shall have a headroom clearance of not less than 80 inches (2032 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the edge of the nosings. Such headroom shall be continuous above the stairway to the point where the line intersects the landing below, one tread depth beyond the bottom riser. The minimum clearance shall be maintained the full width of the stairway and landing.

#### Exceptions:

1. Spiral stairways complying with Section 1011.10 are permitted a 78-inch (1981 mm) headroom clearance.
2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; where the nosings of treads at the side of a flight extend under the edge of a floor opening through which the stair passes, the floor opening shall be allowed to project horizontally into the required headroom not more than  $4\frac{3}{4}$  inches (121 mm).

**1011.4 Walkline.** The walkline across winder treads shall be concentric to the direction of travel through the turn and located 12 inches (305 mm) from the side where the winders are narrower. The 12-inch (305 mm) dimension shall be measured from the widest point of the clear stair width at the walking surface of the winder. Where winders are adjacent within the flight, the point of the widest clear stair width of the adjacent winders shall be used.

**1011.5 Stair treads and risers.** Stair treads and risers shall comply with Sections 1011.5.1 through 1011.5.5.3.

**1011.5.1 Dimension reference surfaces.** For the purpose of this section, all dimensions are exclusive of carpets, rugs or runners.

**1011.5.2 Riser height and tread depth.** Stair riser heights shall be 7 inches (178 mm) maximum and 4 inches (102 mm) minimum. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the nosings of adjacent treads or between the stairway landing and the adjacent tread. Rectangular tread depths shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads and at a right angle to the tread's nosing. Winder treads shall have a minimum tread depth of 11 inches (279 mm) between the vertical planes of the foremost projection of adjacent treads at the intersections with the walkline and a minimum tread depth of 10 inches (254 mm) within the clear width of the stair.

#### Exceptions:

1. Spiral stairways in accordance with Section 1011.10.

2. Stairways connecting stepped aisles to cross aisles or concourses shall be permitted to use the riser/tread dimension in Section 1030.14.2.

3. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; the maximum riser height shall be  $7\frac{3}{4}$  inches (197 mm); the minimum tread depth shall be 10 inches (254 mm); the minimum winder tread depth at the walkline shall be 10 inches (254 mm); and the minimum winder tread depth shall be 6 inches (152 mm). A nosing projection not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) but not more than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) shall be provided on stairways with solid risers where the tread depth is less than 11 inches (279 mm).

4. See *California Fire Code Chapter 11 and California Existing Building Code* for the replacement of existing stairways. [DSA-AC] For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B, Section 11B-202.

5. In Group I-3 facilities, stairways providing access to guard towers, observation stations and control rooms, not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) in area, shall be permitted to have a maximum riser height of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum tread depth of 9 inches (229 mm).

6. [SFMJ] Stairways providing access to lifeguard towers not open to the public, not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) in area, shall be permitted to have a maximum riser height of 8 inches (203 mm) and a minimum tread depth of 9 inches (229 mm).

**1011.5.3 Winder treads.** Winder treads are not permitted in means of egress stairways except within a dwelling unit.

#### Exceptions:

1. Curved stairways in accordance with Section 1011.9.
2. Spiral stairways in accordance with Section 1011.10.

**1011.5.4 Dimensional uniformity.** Stair treads and risers shall be of uniform size and shape. The tolerance between the largest and smallest riser height or between the largest and smallest tread depth shall not exceed  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) in any flight of stairs. The greatest winder tread depth at the walkline within any flight of stairs shall not exceed the smallest by more than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

#### Exceptions:

1. Stairways connecting stepped aisles to cross aisles or concourses shall be permitted to comply with the dimensional nonuniformity in Section 1030.14.2.
2. Consistently shaped winders, complying with Section 1011.5, differing from rectangular treads in the same flight of stairs.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

3. Nonuniform riser dimension complying with Section 1011.5.4.1.

**1011.5.4.1 Nonuniform height risers.** Where the bottom or top riser adjoins a sloping public way, walkway or driveway having an established grade and serving as a landing, the bottom or top riser is permitted to be reduced along the slope to less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height, with the variation in height of the bottom or top riser not to exceed one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope) of stair width. The nosings or leading edges of treads at such nonuniform height risers shall have a distinctive marking stripe, different from any other nosing marking provided on the stair flight. The distinctive marking stripe shall be visible in descent of the stair and shall have a slip-resistant surface. Marking stripes shall have a width of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 2 inches (51 mm).

**1011.5.5 Nosing and riser profile.** Nosings shall have a curvature or bevel of not less than  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) but not more than  $\frac{9}{16}$  inch (14.3 mm) from the foremost projection of the tread. Risers shall be solid and vertical or sloped under the tread above from the underside of the nosing above at an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

**1011.5.5.1 Nosing projection size.** The leading edge (nosings) of treads shall project not more than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) beyond the tread below.

**1011.5.5.2 Nosing projection uniformity.** Nosing projections of the leading edges shall be of uniform size, including the projections of the nosing's leading edge of the floor at the top of a flight.

**1011.5.5.3 Solid risers.** Risers shall be solid.

### Exceptions:

1. Solid risers are not required for stairways that are not required to comply with Section 1009.3, provided that the opening between treads does not permit the passage of a sphere with a diameter of 4 inches (102 mm).
2. Solid risers are not required for occupancies in Group I-3 or in Group F, H and S occupancies other than areas accessible to the public. The size of the opening in the riser is not restricted.
3. Solid risers are not required for spiral stairways constructed in accordance with Section 1011.10.

**1011.6 Stairway landings.** There shall be a floor or landing at the top and bottom of each stairway. The width of landings, measured perpendicularly to the direction of travel, shall be not less than the width of stairways served. Every landing shall have a minimum depth, measured parallel to the direction of travel, equal to the width of the stairway or 48 inches (1219 mm), whichever is less. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the landing to less than one-half the required width. When fully open, the door shall not project more than 7 inches (178 mm) into the required width

of a landing. Where wheelchair spaces are required on the stairway landing in accordance with Section 1009.6.3, the wheelchair space shall not be located in the required width of the landing and doors shall not swing over the wheelchair spaces.

### Exceptions:

1. Where stairways connect stepped aisles to cross aisles or concourses, stairway landings are not required at the transition between stairways and stepped aisles constructed in accordance with Section 1030.
2. Where curved stairways of constant radius have intermediate landings, the landing depth shall be measured horizontally between the intersection of the walkline of the lower flight at the landing nosing and the intersection of the walkline of the upper flight at the nosing of the lowest tread of the upper flight.
3. Where a landing turns 90 degrees (1.57 rad) or more, the minimum landing depth in accordance with this section shall not be required where the landing provided is not less than that described by an arc with a radius equal to the width of the flight served.
4. In Group R-3 occupancies a floor or landing is not required at the top of an interior flight of stairs, including stairs in an enclosed garage, provided a door does not swing over the stairs.

**1011.7 Stairway construction.** Stairways shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building.

### Exceptions:

1. Wood handrails shall be permitted in all types of construction.
2. Interior exit stairways in accordance with Section 510.2.

**1011.7.1 Stairway walking surface.** The walking surface of treads and landings of a stairway shall not be sloped steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Stairway treads and landings shall have a solid surface. Finish floor surfaces shall be securely attached.

### Exceptions:

1. Openings in stair walking surfaces shall be a size that does not permit the passage of  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-diameter (12.7 mm) sphere. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the direction of travel.
2. In Group F, H and S occupancies, other than areas of parking structures accessible to the public, openings in treads and landings shall not be prohibited provided that a sphere with a diameter of  $1\frac{1}{8}$  inches (29 mm) cannot pass through the opening.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1011.7.2 Outdoor conditions.** Outdoor stairways and outdoor approaches to stairways shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

**1011.7.3 Enclosures under interior stairways.** The walls and soffits within enclosed usable spaces under enclosed and unenclosed stairways shall be protected by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction or the fire-resistance rating of the stairway enclosure, whichever is greater. Access to the enclosed space shall not be directly from within the stairway enclosure.

**Exception:** Spaces under stairways serving and contained within a single residential dwelling unit in Group R-2 or R-3 shall be permitted to be protected on the enclosed side with  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board.

**1011.7.4 Enclosures under exterior stairways.** There shall not be enclosed usable space under exterior exit stairways unless the space is completely enclosed in 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction. The open space under exterior stairways shall not be used for any purpose.

**1011.8 Vertical rise.** A flight of stairs shall not have a vertical rise greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) between floor levels or landings.

**Exception:** Spiral stairways used as a means of egress from technical production areas.

**1011.9 Curved stairways.** Curved stairways with winder treads shall have treads and risers in accordance with Section 1011.5 and the smallest radius shall be not less than twice the minimum width or required capacity of the stairway.

**Exception:** The radius restriction shall not apply to curved stairways in Group R-3 and within individual dwelling units in Group R-2.

**1011.10 Spiral stairways.** Spiral stairways are permitted to be used as a component in the means of egress only within dwelling units or from a space not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) in area and serving not more than five occupants, or from technical production areas in accordance with Section 410.5.

A spiral stairway shall have a  $6\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (171 mm) minimum clear tread depth at a point 12 inches (305 mm) from the narrow edge. The risers shall be sufficient to provide a headroom of 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum, but riser height shall not be more than  $9\frac{1}{2}$  inches (241 mm). The minimum stairway clear width at and below the handrail shall be 26 inches (660 mm).

**1011.11 Handrails.** Flights of stairways shall have handrails on each side and shall comply with Section 1014. Where glass is used to provide the handrail, the handrail shall comply with Section 2407.

**[DSA-AC]** For applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, see Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-504.6 and 11B-505.

**Exceptions:**

1. Flights of stairways within dwelling units and flights of spiral stairways are permitted to have a handrail on one side only.

2. Decks, patios and walkways that have a single change in elevation where the landing depth on each side of the change of elevation is greater than what is required for a landing do not require handrails.

3. **[SFM]** In Group R-3 occupancies, a continuous run of treads or flight of stairs with less than four risers does not require handrails.

4. Changes in room elevations of three or fewer risers within dwelling units and sleeping units in Groups R-2 and R-3 do not require handrails.

5. Where a platform lift is in a stationary position and the floor of the platform lift serves as the upper landing of a stairway, handrails shall not be required on the stairway, provided that all of the following criteria are met:

5.1. The stairway contains not more than two risers.

5.2. A handhold, positioned horizontally or vertically, is located on one side of the stairway adjacent to the top landing.

5.3. The handhold is located not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the bottom landing of the stairway.

5.4. The handhold gripping surface complies with Section 1014.3, and is not less than 4.5 inches (114 mm) in length.

**1011.12 Stairway to roof.** In buildings four or more stories above grade plane, one stairway shall extend to the roof surface unless the roof has a slope steeper than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope).

**Exception:** Other than where required by Section 1011.12.1, in buildings without an occupied roof access to the roof from the top story shall be permitted to be by an alternating tread device, a ships ladder or a permanent ladder.

**1011.12.1 Stairway to elevator equipment.** Roofs and penthouses containing elevator equipment that must be accessed for maintenance are required to be accessed by a stairway.

**1011.12.2 Roof access.** Where a stairway is provided to a roof, access to the roof shall be provided through a penthouse complying with Section 1511.2.

**Exception:** In buildings without an occupied roof, access to the roof shall be permitted to be a roof hatch or trap door not less than 16 square feet ( $1.5\text{ m}^2$ ) in area and having a minimum dimension of 2 feet (610 mm).

**1011.13 Guards.** Guards shall be provided along stairways and landings where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015. Where the roof hatch opening providing the required access is located within 10 feet (3049 mm) of the roof edge, such roof access or roof edge shall be protected by guards installed in accordance with Section 1015.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1011.14 Alternating tread devices.** Alternating tread devices are limited to an element of a means of egress in buildings of Groups F, H and S from a mezzanine not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) in area and that serves not more than five occupants; in buildings of Group I-3 from a guard tower, observation station or control room not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) in area and for access to unoccupied roofs. Alternating tread devices used as a means of egress shall not have a rise greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) between floor levels or landings.

**1011.14.1 Handrails of alternating tread devices.** Handrails shall be provided on both sides of alternating tread devices and shall comply with Section 1014.

**1011.14.2 Treads of alternating tread devices.** Alternating tread devices shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm), a minimum projected tread depth of  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches (216 mm), a minimum tread width of 7 inches (178 mm) and a maximum riser height of  $9\frac{1}{2}$  inches (241 mm). The tread depth shall be measured horizontally between the vertical planes of the foremost projections of adjacent treads. The riser height shall be measured vertically between the leading edges of adjacent treads. The riser height and tread depth provided shall result in an angle of ascent from the horizontal of between 50 and 70 degrees (0.87 and 1.22 rad). The initial tread of the device shall begin at the same elevation as the platform, landing or floor surface.

**Exception:** Alternating tread devices used as an element of a means of egress in buildings from a mezzanine area not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) in area that serves not more than five occupants shall have a minimum tread depth of 3 inches (76 mm) with a minimum projected tread depth of  $10\frac{1}{2}$  inches (267 mm). The rise to the next alternating tread surface shall not exceed 8 inches (203 mm).

**1011.15 Ship's ladders.** Ship's ladders are permitted to be used in *lifeguard towers not open to the public* and Group I-3 as a component of a means of egress to and from control rooms or elevated facility observation stations not more than 250 square feet ( $23\text{ m}^2$ ) with not more than three occupants and for access to unoccupied roofs. The minimum clear width at and below the handrails shall be 20 inches (508 mm). Ship's ladders shall be designed for the live loads indicated in Section 1607.17.

**1011.15.1 Handrails of ship's ladders.** Handrails shall be provided on both sides of ship's ladders.

**1011.15.2 Treads of ship's ladders.** Ship's ladders shall have a minimum tread depth of 5 inches (127 mm). The tread shall be projected such that the total of the tread depth plus the nosing projection is not less than  $8\frac{1}{2}$  inches (216 mm). The maximum riser height shall be  $9\frac{1}{2}$  inches (241 mm).

**1011.16 Ladders.** Permanent ladders shall not serve as a part of the means of egress from occupied spaces within a building. Permanent ladders shall be constructed in accordance with Section 306.5 of the *California Mechanical Code* and designed for the live loads indicated in Section 1607.17.

Permanent ladders shall be permitted to provide access to the following areas:

1. Spaces frequented only by personnel for maintenance, repair or monitoring of equipment.
2. Nonoccupiable spaces accessed only by catwalks, crawl spaces, freight elevators or very narrow passageways.
3. Raised areas used primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety including, but not limited to, observation galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or lifeguard stands.
4. Elevated levels in Group U not open to the general public.
5. Nonoccupied roofs that are not required to have stairway access in accordance with Section 1011.12.1.
6. Where permitted to access equipment and appliances in accordance with Section 306.5 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

## SECTION 1012 RAMPS

*[DSA-AC] In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-405, as applicable.*

**1012.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to ramps used as a component of a means of egress.

**Exceptions:**

1. Ramped aisles within assembly rooms or spaces shall comply with the provisions in Section 1030.
2. Curb ramps shall comply with Chapter 11A or 11B, 11B-406, as applicable.
3. Vehicle ramps in parking garages for pedestrian exit access shall not be required to comply with Sections 1012.3 through 1012.10 where they are not an accessible route serving accessible parking spaces, other required accessible elements or part of an accessible means of egress.

**1012.2 Slope.** Ramps used as part of a means of egress shall have a running slope not steeper than 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.3-percent slope). The slope of other pedestrian ramps shall not be steeper than 1 unit vertical in 8 units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

**1012.3 Cross slope.** The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramp shall not be steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**1012.4 Vertical rise.** The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

**1012.5 Minimum dimensions.** The minimum dimensions of means of egress ramps shall comply with Sections 1012.5.1 through 1012.5.3.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1012.5.1 Width and capacity.** The minimum width and required capacity of a means of egress ramp shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.3. The clear width of a ramp between handrails, if provided, or other permissible projections shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

**1012.5.2 Headroom.** The minimum headroom in all parts of the means of egress ramp shall be not less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor of the ramp run and any intermediate landings. The minimum clearance shall be maintained for the full width of the ramp and landing.

**1012.5.3 Restrictions.** Means of egress ramps shall not reduce in width in the direction of egress travel. Projections into the required ramp and landing width are prohibited. Doors opening onto a landing shall not reduce the clear width to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).

**1012.6 Landings.** Ramps shall have landings at the bottom and top of each ramp, points of turning, entrance, exits and at doors. Landings shall comply with Sections 1012.6.1 through 1012.6.5.

**1012.6.1 Slope.** Landings shall have a slope not steeper than one unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in any direction. Changes in level are not permitted.

**1012.6.2 Width.** The landing width shall be not less than the width of the widest ramp run adjoining the landing.

**1012.6.3 Length.** The landing length shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling and sleeping units that are not required to be *accessible* in accordance with *Chapter 11A*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.
2. Where the ramp is not a part of an accessible route, the length of the landing shall not be required to be more than 48 inches (1219 mm) in the direction of travel.

**1012.6.4 Change in direction.** Where changes in direction of travel occur at landings provided between ramp runs, the landing shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** In Group R-2 and R-3 individual dwelling or sleeping units that are not required to be *accessible* in accordance with *Chapter 11A*, landings are permitted to be 36 inches by 36 inches (914 mm by 914 mm) minimum.

**1012.6.5 Doorways.** Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required *for accessibility* are permitted to overlap the required landing area as specified in *Chapter 11A or 11B, as applicable*.

**1012.7 Ramp construction.** Ramps shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building, except that wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

**1012.7.1 Ramp surface.** The surface of ramps shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached.

**1012.7.2 Outdoor conditions.** Outdoor ramps and outdoor approaches to ramps shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on walking surfaces.

**1012.8 Handrails.** Ramps with a rise greater than 6 inches (152 mm) shall have handrails on both sides. Handrails shall comply with Section 1014.

**1012.9 Guards.** Guards shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015.

**1012.10 Edge protection.** Edge protection complying with Section 1012.10.1 or 1012.10.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Edge protection is not required on ramps that are not required to have handrails, provided they have flared sides that comply with *Chapter 11A or 11B*.
2. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.
3. Edge protection is not required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical dropoff of not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the required landing area.

**1012.10.1 Curb, rail, wall or barrier.** A curb, rail, wall or barrier shall be provided to serve as edge protection. A curb shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the floor or ground surface.

**1012.10.2 Extended floor or ground surface.** The floor or ground surface of the ramp run or landing shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a handrail complying with Section 1014.

## SECTION 1013 EXIT SIGNS

**1013.1 Where required.** Exits and exit access doors shall be marked by an approved exit sign readily visible from any direction of egress travel. The path of egress travel to exits and within exits shall be marked by readily visible exit signs to clearly indicate the direction of egress travel in cases where the exit or the path of egress travel is not immediately visible to the occupants. Intervening means of egress doors within exits shall be marked by exit signs. Exit sign placement shall be such that any point in an exit access corridor or exit passageway is within 100 feet (30 480 mm) or the listed viewing distance of the sign, whichever is less, from the nearest visible exit sign.

**Exceptions:**

1. Exit signs are not required in rooms or areas that require only one exit or exit access.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

2. Main exterior exit doors or gates that are obviously and clearly identifiable as exits need not have exit signs where approved by the building official.
3. Exit signs are not required in occupancies in Group U and individual sleeping units or dwelling units in Group R-1, R-2 or R-3 or R-3.1.
4. Exit signs are not required where inmates are housed or held in dayrooms, sleeping rooms or dormitories in occupancies in Group I-3.
5. In occupancies in Groups A-4 and A-5, exit signs are not required on the seating side of vomitories or openings into seating areas where exit signs are provided in the concourse that are readily apparent from the vomitories. Egress lighting is provided to identify each vomitory or opening within the seating area in an emergency.

**1013.2 Low-level exit signs in Group R-1.** See Section 1013.7.

**1013.3 Illumination.** Exit signs shall be internally or externally illuminated.

**Exception:** Tactile signs required by Section 1013.4 need not be provided with illumination.

**1013.4 Raised character and braille exit signs.** Where exit signs are provided at an area of refuge with direct access to a stairway, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an exit stairway or ramp, an exit passageway, a horizontal exit and the exit discharge, a sign stating "EXIT" in visual characters, raised characters and braille and complying with ICC A117.1 shall be provided.

*Tactile exit signs shall be required at the following locations:*

1. Each grade-level exterior exit door that is required to comply with Section 1013.1, shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the word, "EXIT".
2. Each exit door that is required to comply with Section 1013.1, and that leads directly to a grade-level exterior exit by means of a stairway or ramp shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the following words as appropriate:
  - 2.1. "EXIT STAIR DOWN"
  - 2.2. "EXIT RAMP DOWN"
  - 2.3. "EXIT STAIR UP"
  - 2.4. "EXIT RAMP UP"
3. Each exit door that is required to comply with Section 1013.1, and that leads directly to a grade-level exterior exit by means of an exit enclosure or an exit passageway shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words, "EXIT ROUTE."
4. Each exit access door from an interior room or area to a corridor or hallway that is required to comply with Section 1013.1, shall be identified by a tactile exit sign with the words "EXIT ROUTE."
5. Each exit door through a horizontal exit that is required to comply with Section 1013.1, shall be identified by a sign with the words, "TO EXIT."

*Raised character and Braille exit signs shall comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5.*

**1013.5 Internally illuminated exit signs.** Electrically powered, self-luminous and photoluminescent exit signs shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 924 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and Chapter 27. Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times.

**1013.6 Externally illuminated exit signs.** Externally illuminated exit signs shall comply with Sections 1013.6.1 through 1013.6.3.

**1013.6.1 Graphics.** Every exit sign and directional exit sign shall have plainly legible letters not less than 6 inches (152 mm) high with the principal strokes of the letters not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) wide. The word "EXIT" shall have letters having a width not less than 2 inches (51 mm) wide, except the letter "I," and the minimum spacing between letters shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm). Signs larger than the minimum established in this section shall have letter widths, strokes and spacing in proportion to their height.

The word "EXIT" shall be in high contrast with the background and shall be clearly discernible when the means of exit sign illumination is or is not energized. If a chevron directional indicator is provided as part of the exit sign, the construction shall be such that the direction of the chevron directional indicator cannot be readily changed.

**1013.6.2 Exit sign illumination.** The face of an exit sign illuminated from an external source shall have an intensity of not less than 5 footcandles (54 lux).

**1013.6.3 Power source.** Exit signs shall be illuminated at all times. To ensure continued illumination for a duration of not less than 90 minutes in case of primary power loss, the sign illumination means shall be connected to an emergency power system provided from storage batteries, unit equipment or an on-site generator. The installation of the emergency power system shall be in accordance with Chapter 27. Group I-2 exit sign illumination shall not be provided by unit equipment batteries only.

**Exception:** Approved exit sign illumination types that provide continuous illumination independent of external power sources for a duration of not less than 90 minutes, in case of primary power loss, are not required to be connected to an emergency electrical system.

**1013.7 Floor-level exit signs.** Where exit signs are required by Chapter 10, additional approved low-level exit signs which are internally or externally illuminated photoluminescent or self-luminous, shall be provided in all interior corridors of Group A, E, I and R-2.1 occupancies and in all areas serving guest rooms of hotels in Group R, Division 1 occupancies.

**Exceptions:**

1. Group A occupancies that are protected throughout by an approved supervised fire sprinkler system.
2. Group E Occupancies where direct exits have been provided from each classroom.

3. Group I and R-2.1 occupancies which are provided with smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 407.5.
4. Group I-3 occupancies.

*The bottom of the sign shall not be less than 6 inches (152 mm) or more than 8 inches (203 mm) above the floor level and shall indicate the path of exit travel. For exit and exit-access doors, the sign shall be on the door or adjacent to the door with the closest edge of the sign or marker within 4 inches (102 mm) of the door frame.*

**Note:** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143, this California amendment applies to all newly constructed buildings or structures subject to this section for which a building permit is issued (or construction commenced, where no building permit is issued) on or after January 1, 1989.

**1013.8 Path marking.** When exit signs are required by Chapter 10, in addition to approved floor-level exit signs, approved path marking shall be installed at floor level or no higher than 8 inches (203 mm) above the floor level in all interior rated exit corridors of unsprinklered Group A, R-1 and R-2 occupancies.

*Such marking shall be continuous except as interrupted by door-ways, corridors or other such architectural features in order to provide a visible delineation along the path of travel.*

**Note:** Pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 13143, the California amendments of this section shall apply to all newly constructed buildings or structures subject to this section for which a building permit is issued (or construction commenced, where no building permit is issued) on or after January 1, 1989.

## SECTION 1014 HANDRAILS

**[DSA-AC]** In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-505, as applicable.

**1014.1 Where required.** Handrails serving flights of stairways, ramps, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.9. Handrails required for flights of stairways by Section 1011.11 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.9. Handrails required for ramps by Section 1012.8 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.8. Handrails for stepped aisles and ramped aisles required by Section 1030.16 shall comply with Sections 1014.2 through 1014.8.

**1014.2 Height.** Handrail height, measured above stair tread nosings, or finish surface of ramp slope, shall be uniform, not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm). Handrail height of alternating tread devices and ships ladders, measured above tread nosings, shall be

uniform, not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm).

### Exceptions:

1. Where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.
2. In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are associated with a Group R-3 occupancy or associated with individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; where handrail fittings or bendings are used to provide continuous transition between flights, transition at winder treads, transition from handrail to guard, or where used at the start of a flight, the handrail height at the fittings or bendings shall be permitted to exceed the maximum height.
3. Handrails on top of a guard where permitted along stepped aisles and ramped aisles in accordance with Section 1030.16.

**1014.3 Handrail graspability.** Required handrails shall comply with Section 1014.3.1 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

**Exception:** In Group R-3 occupancies; within dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; and in Group U occupancies that are accessory to a Group R-3 occupancy or accessory to individual dwelling units in Group R-2 occupancies; handrails shall be Type I in accordance with Section 1014.3.1, Type II in accordance with Section 1014.3.2 or shall provide equivalent graspability.

**1014.3.1 Type I.** Handrails with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of not less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm). Where the handrail is not circular, it shall have a perimeter dimension of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (160 mm) with a maximum cross-sectional dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) and minimum cross-sectional dimension of 1 inch (25 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

**1014.3.2 Type II.** Handrails with a perimeter greater than  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (160 mm) shall provide a graspable finger recess area on both sides of the profile. The finger recess shall begin within a distance of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm) measured vertically from the tallest portion of the profile and achieve a depth of not less than  $\frac{5}{16}$  inch (8 mm) within  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch (22 mm) below the widest portion of the profile. This required depth shall continue for not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) to a level that is not less than  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (45 mm) below the tallest portion of the profile. The width of the handrail above the recess shall be not less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) to not greater than  $2\frac{3}{4}$  inches (70 mm). Edges shall have a minimum radius of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm).

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1014.4 Continuity.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous, without interruption by newel posts or other obstructions.

### Exceptions:

1. Handrails within dwelling units are permitted to be interrupted by a newel post at a turn or landing.
2. Within a dwelling unit, the use of a volute, turnout, starting easing or starting newel is allowed over the lowest tread.
3. Handrail brackets or balusters attached to the bottom surface of the handrail that do not project horizontally beyond the sides of the handrail within  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) of the bottom of the handrail shall not be considered obstructions. For each  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension above 4 inches (102 mm), the vertical clearance dimension of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) shall be permitted to be reduced by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).
4. Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of the handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.
5. Handrails serving stepped aisles or ramped aisles are permitted to be discontinuous in accordance with Section 1030.16.1.

**1014.5 Fittings.** Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

**1014.6 Handrail extensions.** Handrails shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent flight of stairs or ramp run. Where handrails are not continuous between flights, the handrails shall extend horizontally not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the top riser and continue to slope for the depth of one tread beyond the bottom riser. At ramps where handrails are not continuous between runs, the handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. The extensions of handrails shall be in the same direction of the flights of stairs at stairways and the ramp runs at ramps.

### Exceptions:

1. Handrails within a dwelling unit that is not required to be accessible need extend only from the top riser to the bottom riser.
2. Handrails serving aisles in rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes are permitted to comply with the handrail extensions in accordance with Section 1030.16.
3. Handrails for alternating tread devices and ships ladders are permitted to terminate at a location vertically above the top and bottom risers. Handrails for alternating tread devices are not required to be continuous between flights or to extend beyond the top or bottom risers.

**1014.7 Clearance.** Clear space between a handrail and a wall or other surface shall be not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm). A handrail and a wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements.

**1014.8 Projections.** On ramps and on ramped aisles that are part of an accessible route, the clear width between handrails shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum. Projections into the required width of aisles, stairways and ramps at each side shall not exceed  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) at or below the handrail height. Projections into the required width shall not be limited above the minimum headroom height required in Section 1011.3. Projections due to intermediate handrails shall not constitute a reduction in the egress width. Where a pair of intermediate handrails are provided within the stairway width without a walking surface between the pair of intermediate handrails and the distance between the pair of intermediate handrails is greater than 6 inches (152 mm), the available egress width shall be reduced by the distance between the closest edges of each such intermediate pair of handrails that is greater than 6 inches (152 mm).

*In Group I-2 occupancy ramps required for exit access shall not be less than 8 ft in width and handrails are permitted to protrude  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches from the wall on both sides. Ramps used as exits and stairways used for the movement of bed and litter patients, the clear width between handrails shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum.*

*[HCD 1-AC] In addition, projections shall comply with Chapter 11A, when applicable.*

**1014.9 Intermediate handrails.** Stairways shall have intermediate handrails located in such a manner that all portions of the stairway minimum width or required capacity are within 30 inches (762 mm) of a handrail. On monumental stairs, handrails shall be located along the most direct path of egress travel.

## SECTION 1015 GUARDS

**1015.1 General.** Guards shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1015.2 through 1015.7. Operable windows with sills located more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above finished grade or other surface below shall comply with Section 1015.8.

**1015.2 Where required.** Guards shall be located along open-sided walking surfaces, including mezzanines, equipment platforms, aisles, stairs, ramps and landings that are located more than 30 inches (762 mm) measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side. Guards shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.9.

**Exceptions:** Guards are not required for the following locations:

1. On the loading side of loading docks or piers.
2. On the audience side of stages and raised platforms, including stairs leading up to the stage and raised platforms.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

3. On raised stage and platform floor areas, such as runways, ramps and side stages used for entertainment or presentations.
4. At vertical openings in the performance area of stages and platforms.
5. At elevated walking surfaces appurtenant to stages and platforms for access to and utilization of special lighting or equipment.
6. Along vehicle service pits not accessible to the public.
7. In assembly seating areas at cross aisles in accordance with Section 1030.17.2.
8. On the loading side of station platforms on fixed guideway transit or passenger rail systems.
9. *Elevated facility observation station access hatches at detention facilities.*

**1015.2.1 Glazing.** Where glass is used to provide a guard or as a portion of the guard system, the guard shall comply with Section 2407. Where the glazing provided does not meet the strength and attachment requirements of Section 1607.9, complying guards shall be located along glazed sides of open-sided walking surfaces.

**1015.3 Height.** Required guards shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) high, measured vertically as follows:

1. From the adjacent walking surfaces.
2. On stairways and stepped aisles, from the line connecting the leading edges of the tread nosings.
3. On ramps and ramped aisles, from the ramp surface at the guard.

#### Exceptions:

1. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, guards on the open sides of stairs shall have a height not less than 34 inches (864 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
2. For occupancies in Group R-3, and within individual dwelling units in occupancies in Group R-2, where the top of the guard serves as a handrail on the open sides of stairs, the top of the guard shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.
3. The guard height in assembly seating areas shall comply with Section 1030.17 as applicable.
4. Along alternating tread devices and ships ladders, guards where the top rail serves as a handrail shall have height not less than 30 inches (762 mm) and not more than 34 inches (864 mm), measured vertically from the leading edge of the device tread nosing.

5. In Group F occupancies where exit access stairways serve fewer than three stories and such stairways are not open to the public, and where the top of the guard also serves as a handrail, the top of the guard shall be not less than 34 inches (864 mm) and not more than 38 inches (965 mm) measured vertically from a line connecting the leading edges of the treads.

**1015.4 Opening limitations.** Required guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter from the walking surface to the required guard height.

#### Exceptions:

1. From a height of 36 inches (914 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm), guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere  $4\frac{3}{8}$  inches (111 mm) in diameter.
2. The triangular openings at the open sides of a stair, formed by the riser, tread and bottom rail shall not allow passage of a sphere 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter.
3. At elevated walking surfaces for access to and use of electrical, mechanical or plumbing systems or equipment, guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.
4. In areas that are not open to the public within occupancies in Group I-3, F, H or S, and for alternating tread devices and ships ladders, guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.
5. In assembly seating areas, guards required at the end of aisles in accordance with Section 1030.17.4 shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter up to a height of 26 inches (660 mm). From a height of 26 inches (660 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent walking surfaces, guards shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.
6. Within individual dwelling units and sleeping units in Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies, guards on the open sides of stairs shall not have openings that allow passage of a sphere  $4\frac{3}{8}$  (111 mm) inches in diameter.
7. *In lifeguard towers not open to the public, guards shall not have openings which allow passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.*

**1015.5 Screen porches.** Porches and decks that are enclosed with insect screening shall be provided with guards where the walking surface is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below.

**1015.6 Mechanical equipment, systems and devices.** Guards shall be provided where various components that

## MEANS OF EGRESS

require service are located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of such components. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

**Exception:** Guards are not required where personal fall arrest anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are installed.

**1015.7 Roof access.** Guards shall be provided where the roof hatch opening is located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of a roof edge or open side of a walking surface and such edge or open side is located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor, roof or grade below. The guard shall extend not less than 30 inches (762 mm) beyond each end of the hatch parallel to the roof edge. The guard shall be constructed so as to prevent the passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.

**Exception:** Guards are not required where personal fall arrest anchorage connector devices that comply with ANSI/ASSE Z 359.1 are installed.

**1015.8 Window openings.** Windows in Group R-1, R-2 and R-3 buildings including dwelling units, where the bottom of the clear opening of an operable window is located less than 36 inches (914 mm) above the finished floor and more than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below on the exterior of the building, shall comply with one of the following:

1. Operable windows where the top of the sill of the opening is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the finished grade or other surface below and that are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2006.
2. Operable windows where the openings will not allow a 4-inch-diameter (102 mm) sphere to pass through the opening when the window is in its largest opened position.
3. Operable windows where the openings are provided with window fall prevention devices that comply with ASTM F2090.
4. Operable windows that are provided with window opening control devices that comply with Section 1015.8.1.

**1015.8.1 Window opening control devices.** Window opening control devices shall comply with ASTM F2090. The window opening control device, after operation to release the control device allowing the window to fully open, shall not reduce the minimum net clear opening area of the window unit to less than the area required by Section 1031.3.1.

## SECTION 1016 EXIT ACCESS

**1016.1 General.** The exit access shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 1003 through 1015. Exit access arrangement shall comply with Sections 1016 through 1021.

**1016.2 Egress through intervening spaces.** Egress through intervening spaces shall comply with this section.

1. Exit access through an enclosed elevator lobby is permitted *in other than a Group I-2 and I-2.1*. Where access to two or more exits or exit access doorways is required in Section 1006.2.1, access to not less than one of the required exits shall be provided without travel through the enclosed elevator lobbies required by Section 3006. Where the path of exit access travel passes through an enclosed elevator lobby, the level of protection required for the enclosed elevator lobby is not required to be extended to the exit unless direct access to an exit is required by other sections of this code.
2. Egress from a room or space shall not pass through adjoining or intervening rooms or areas, except where such adjoining rooms or areas and the area served are accessory to one or the other, are not a Group H occupancy and provide a discernible path of egress travel to an exit.
3. An exit access shall not pass through a room that can be locked to prevent egress.
4. Means of egress from dwelling units or sleeping areas shall not lead through other sleeping areas, toilet rooms or bathrooms.
5. Egress shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, closets or spaces used for similar purposes.

### Exceptions:

1. Means of egress are not prohibited through a kitchen area serving adjoining rooms constituting part of the same dwelling unit or sleeping unit.
2. Means of egress are not prohibited through stockrooms in Group M occupancies where all of the following are met:
  - 2.1. The stock is of the same hazard classification as that found in the main retail area.
  - 2.2. Not more than 50 percent of the exit access is through the stockroom.
  - 2.3. The stockroom is not subject to locking from the egress side.
  - 2.4. There is a demarcated, minimum 44-inch-wide (1118 mm) aisle defined by full- or partial-height fixed walls or similar construction that will maintain the required width and lead directly from the retail area to the exit without obstructions.
6. *The means of egress shall not pass through any room subject to locking except in Group I-3 occupancies*

*classified as detention facilities and psychiatric treatment areas in Group I-2 occupancies.*

**1016.2.1 Multiple tenants.** Where more than one tenant occupies any one floor of a building or structure, each tenant space, dwelling unit and sleeping unit shall be provided with access to the required exits without passing through adjacent tenant spaces, dwelling units and sleeping units.

**Exception:** The means of egress from a smaller tenant space shall not be prohibited from passing through a larger adjoining tenant space where such rooms or spaces of the smaller tenant occupy less than 10 percent of the area of the larger tenant space through which they pass; are the same or similar occupancy group; a discernible path of egress travel to an exit is provided; and the means of egress into the adjoining space is not subject to locking from the egress side. A required means of egress serving the larger tenant space shall not pass through the smaller tenant space or spaces.

**1016.2.2 Basement exits in Group I-2 occupancies.** For additional requirements for occupancies in Group I-2 or I-2.1, see Section 407.

## SECTION 1017 EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE

**1017.1 General.** Travel distance within the exit access portion of the means of egress system shall be in accordance with this section.

**1017.2 Limitations.** Exit access travel distance shall not exceed the values given in Table 1017.2.

TABLE 1017.2  
EXIT ACCESS TRAVEL DISTANCE<sup>a</sup>

OCCUPANCY	WITHOUT SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)	WITH SPRINKLER SYSTEM (feet)
A, E, F-1, M, R, S-1	200 <sup>c</sup>	250 <sup>b</sup>
R-2.1	Not Permitted	250 <sup>b</sup>
B	200	300 <sup>c</sup>
F-2, S-2, U	300	400 <sup>c</sup>
H-1	Not Permitted	75 <sup>d</sup>
H-2	Not Permitted	100 <sup>d</sup>
H-3	Not Permitted	150 <sup>d</sup>
H-4	Not Permitted	175 <sup>d</sup>
H-5	Not Permitted	200 <sup>c</sup>
I-2, I-2.1, I-3 <sup>f</sup>	Not Permitted	200 <sup>c</sup>
I-4	150	200 <sup>c</sup>
L	Not Permitted	200 <sup>c</sup>

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. See the following sections for modifications to exit access travel distance requirements:

Section 402.8: For the distance limitation in malls.

Section 407.4: For the distance limitation in Group I-2 or I-2.1.

Section 408.3.10: For increased limitation in Group I-3.

Sections 408.6.1 and 408.8.1: For the distance limitations in Group I-3.

Section 411.2: For the distance limitation in special amusement areas.

Section 412.6: For the distance limitations in aircraft manufacturing facilities.

Section 1006.2.2.2: For the distance limitation in refrigeration machinery rooms.

Section 1006.2.2.3: For the distance limitation in refrigerated rooms and spaces.

Section 1006.3.4: For buildings with one exit.

Section 1017.2.2: For increased distance limitation in Groups F-1 and S-1.

Section 1030.7: For increased limitation in assembly seating.

Section 3103.4: For temporary structures.

Section 3104.9: For pedestrian walkways.

b. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. See Section 903 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.2.

c. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

d. Group H occupancies equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.5.1.

e. Group R-3 and R-4 buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3. See Section 903.2.8 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

f. Not permitted in nonsprinklered Group I-3 occupancies.

**1017.2.1 Exterior egress balcony increase.** Exit access travel distances specified in Table 1017.2 shall be increased up to an additional 100 feet (30 480 mm) provided that the last portion of the exit access leading to the exit occurs on an exterior egress balcony constructed in accordance with Section 1021. The length of such balcony shall be not less than the amount of the increase taken.

**1017.2.2 Groups F-1 and S-1 increase.** The maximum exit access travel distance shall be 400 feet (122 m) in Group F-1 or S-1 occupancies where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The portion of the building classified as Group F-1 or S-1 is limited to one story in height.
2. The minimum height from the finished floor to the bottom of the ceiling or roof slab or deck is 24 feet (7315 mm).
3. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**1017.3 Measurement.** Exit access travel distance shall be measured from the most remote point of each room, area or space along the natural and unobstructed path of horizontal and vertical egress travel to the entrance to an exit. Where more than one exit is required, exit access travel distance shall be measured to the nearest exit.

### Exceptions:

1. In open parking garages, exit access travel distance is permitted to be measured to the closest riser of an exit access stairway or the closest slope of an exit access ramp.
2. In smoke protected seating and open air assembly seating, exit access travel distance shall be measured in accordance with Section 1030.7.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1017.3.1 Exit access stairways and ramps.** Travel distance on exit access stairways or ramps shall be included in the exit access travel distance measurement. The measurement along stairways shall be made on a plane parallel and tangent to the stair tread nosings in the center of the stair and landings. The measurement along ramps shall be made on the walking surface in the center of the ramp and landings.

**1017.3.2 Atriums.** Exit access travel distance for areas open to an atrium shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1017.3.2.1 through 1017.3.2.3.

**1017.3.2.1 Egress not through the atrium.** Where required access to the exits is not through the atrium, exit access travel distance shall comply with Section 1017.2.

**1017.3.2.2 Exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge.** Where the path of egress travel is through an atrium space, exit access travel distance at the level of exit discharge shall be determined in accordance with Section 1017.2.

**1017.3.2.3 Exit access travel distance at other than the level of exit discharge.** Where the path of egress travel is not at the level of exit discharge from the atrium, that portion of the total permitted exit access travel distance that occurs within the atrium shall be not greater than 200 feet (60 960 mm).

## SECTION 1018 AISLES

**[DSA-AC]** In addition to the requirements of this section, means of egress, which provide access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance, shall also comply with Chapter 11A or Chapter 11B, Section 11B-403, as applicable.

**1018.1 General.** Aisles and aisle accessways serving as a portion of the exit access in the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Aisles or aisle accessways shall be provided from all occupied portions of the exit access that contain seats, tables, furnishings, displays and similar fixtures or equipment. The minimum width or required capacity of aisles shall be unobstructed.

**Exception:** Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

**1018.2 Aisles in assembly spaces.** Aisles and aisle accessways serving a room or space used for assembly purposes shall comply with Section 1030.

**1018.3 Aisles in Groups B and M.** In Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear aisle width shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the occupant load served, but shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.3.

**Exception:** Nonpublic aisles serving less than 50 people and not required to be accessible by Chapter 11B, (see Section 11B-403) need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

**1018.4 Aisle accessways in Group M.** An aisle accessway shall be provided on not less than one side of each element within the merchandise pad. The minimum clear width for an aisle accessway not required to be accessible shall be 30 inches (762 mm). The required clear width of the aisle accessway shall be measured perpendicular to the elements and merchandise within the merchandise pad. The 30-inch (762 mm) minimum clear width shall be maintained to provide a path to an adjacent aisle or aisle accessway. The common path of egress travel shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any point in the merchandise pad.

**Exception:** For areas serving not more than 50 occupants, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

**1018.5 Aisles in other than assembly spaces and Groups B and M.** In other than rooms or spaces used for assembly purposes and Group B and M occupancies, the minimum clear aisle capacity shall be determined by Section 1005.1 for the occupant load served, but the width shall be not less than that required for corridors by Section 1020.3.

**Exception:** Nonpublic aisles serving less than 50 people and not required to be accessible by Chapter 11B, (see Section 11B-403) need not exceed 28 inches (711 mm) in width.

## SECTION 1019 EXIT ACCESS STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

**1019.1 General.** Exit access stairways and ramps serving as an exit access component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. The number of stories connected by exit access stairways and ramps shall include basements, but not mezzanines.

**1019.2 All occupancies.** Exit access stairways and ramps that serve floor levels within a single story are not required to be enclosed.

**1019.3 Occupancies other than Groups I-2, I-2.1, I-3 and R-2.1.** In other than Group I-2, I-2.1, I-3 and R-2.1 occupancies, floor openings containing exit access stairways or ramps shall be enclosed with a shaft enclosure constructed in accordance with Section 713.

### Exceptions:

1. Exit access stairways and ramps that serve or atmospherically communicate between only two adjacent stories. Such interconnected stories shall not be open to other stories.
2. In Group R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-3 or R-3.1 occupancies, exit access stairways and ramps connecting four stories or less serving and contained within an individual dwelling unit or sleeping unit or live/work unit.
3. Exit access stairways serving and contained within a Group R-3 congregate residence or a Group R-4 facility are not required to be enclosed.
4. Exit access stairways and ramps in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, where

the area of the vertical opening between stories does not exceed twice the horizontal projected area of the stairway or ramp and the opening is protected by a draft curtain and closely spaced sprinklers in accordance with NFPA 13. In other than Group B and M occupancies, this provision is limited to openings that do not connect more than four stories.

5. Exit access stairways and ramps within an atrium complying with the provisions of Section 404.
6. Exit access stairways and ramps in open parking garages that serve only the parking garage.
7. Exit access stairways and ramps serving smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating complying with the exit access travel distance requirements of Section 1030.7.
8. Exit access stairways and ramps between the balcony, gallery or press box and the main assembly floor in occupancies such as theaters, places of religious worship, auditoriums and sports facilities.
9. Exterior exit access stairways or ramps between occupied roofs.
10. *Fixed-guideway transit stations, constructed in accordance with Section 443.*

**1019.4 Group I-2, I-2.1, I-3 and R-2.1 occupancies.** In Group I-2, I-2.1, I-3 and R-2.1 occupancies, floor openings between stories containing exit access stairways or ramps are required to be enclosed with a shaft enclosure constructed in accordance with Section 713.

**Exception:** In Group I-3 occupancies, exit access stairways or ramps constructed in accordance with Section 408 are not required to be enclosed.

## SECTION 1020 CORRIDORS

**1020.1 General.** Corridors serving as an exit access component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1020.2 through 1020.7.

**1020.2 Construction.** Corridors shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1020.2. The corridor walls required to be fire-resistance rated shall comply with Section 708 for fire partitions.

### Exceptions:

1. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group E where each room that is used for instruction has not less than one door opening directly to the exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have not less than one-half of the required means of egress doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this exception are required to be at ground level.
2. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors contained within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit in an occupancy in Group R.

3. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in open parking garages.
4. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group B that is a space requiring only a single means of egress complying with Section 1006.2.
5. Corridors adjacent to the exterior walls of buildings shall be permitted to have unprotected openings on unrated exterior walls where unrated walls are permitted by Table 705.5 and unprotected openings are permitted by Table 705.8.
6. *A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors within suites in a Group I-2 or I-2.1 constructed in accordance with Section 407.4.4 or 407.4.5.*
7. *A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors within Group I-3 occupancies that comply with intervening spaces, see Section 408.1.2.2.*

TABLE 1020.2  
CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING

OCCUPANCY	OCCUPANT LOAD SERVED BY CORRIDOR	REQUIRED FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)	
		Without sprinkler system	With sprinkler system
H-1, H-2, H-3	All	Not Permitted	1 <sup>c</sup>
H-4, H-5, L	Greater than 30	Not Permitted	1 <sup>c</sup>
A, B, E, F, M, S, U	Greater than 30	1	0
R-1, R-2, R-3, R-3.1, R-4	Greater than 10	Not Permitted	1
I-2 <sup>a</sup> , I-2.1	<i>Greater than 6</i>	1	1
I-3, R-2.1	<i>Greater than 6</i>	Not Permitted	1 <sup>b, c</sup>
I-4	All	1	0
E	<i>Greater than 10</i>	1	0

- a. For requirements for occupancies in Group I-2 and I-2.1, see Sections 407.2 and 407.3.
  - b. For a reduction in the fire-resistance rating for occupancies in Group I-3, see Section 408.8.
  - c. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 where allowed.
- d. Group R-3 and R-4 buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3. See Section 903.2.8 for occupancies where automatic sprinkler systems are permitted in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3.

e. *[ISFM] See Section 1029.*

**1020.2.1 Hoistway opening protection.** Elevator hoistway openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 3006.2.1.

**1020.3 Width and capacity.** The required capacity of corridors shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than that specified in Table 1020.3.

**Exception:** In Group I-2 occupancies, corridors are not required to have a clear width of 96 inches (2438 mm) in areas where there will not be stretcher or bed movement for access to care or as part of the defend-in-place strategy.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**TABLE 1020.3  
MINIMUM CORRIDOR WIDTH**

OCCUPANCY	MINIMUM WIDTH (inches)
Any facility not listed in this table	44
Access to and utilization of mechanical, plumbing or electrical systems or equipment	24
With an occupant load of less than 50	36
Within a dwelling unit	36
In Group E with a corridor having an occupant load of 100 or more	72
In corridors and areas serving stretcher traffic in ambulatory care facilities	72
Group I-2 and I-3 in areas where required for bed movement	96
<i>Corridors in Group I-2 and I-3 occupancies serving any area caring for one or more nonambulatory persons.<sup>a</sup></i>	72

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

*a. See Section 1224.4.7.1 for Group I-2.*

**1020.4 Obstruction.** The minimum width or required capacity of corridors shall be unobstructed.

**Exception:** Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

**1020.5 Dead ends.** Where more than one exit or exit access doorway is required, the exit access shall be arranged such that dead-end corridors do not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Group I-3, Condition 2, 3 or 4, occupancies, the dead end in a corridor shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).
2. In occupancies in Groups B, E, F, M, R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, S and U, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the length of the dead-end corridors shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).
3. A dead-end corridor shall not be limited in length where the length of the dead-end corridor is less than 2.5 times the least width of the dead-end corridor.
4. In Group I-2 and I-2.1 occupancies, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the length of dead-end corridors that do not serve patient rooms or patient treatment spaces shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm).

**1020.6 Air movement in corridors.** Corridors shall not serve as supply, return, exhaust, relief or ventilation air ducts.

**Exceptions:**

1. Use of a corridor as a source of makeup air for exhaust systems in rooms that open directly onto such corridors, including toilet rooms, bathrooms, dressing rooms, smoking lounges and janitor closets, shall be permitted, provided that each such corridor is directly supplied with outdoor air at a rate greater than the rate of makeup air taken from the corridor.

2. Where located within a dwelling unit, the use of corridors for conveying return air shall not be prohibited.

3. Where located within tenant spaces of 1,000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) or less in area, utilization of corridors for conveying return air is permitted.

4. Transfer air movement required to maintain the pressurization difference within health care facilities and *Group L* occupancies in accordance with ASHRAE 170.

5. *For health care facilities under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), see the California Mechanical Code.*

**1020.6.1 Corridor ceiling.** Use of the space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above as a return air plenum is permitted for one or more of the following conditions:

1. The corridor is not required to be of fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. The corridor is separated from the plenum by fire-resistance-rated construction.
3. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon activation of the air-handling unit smoke detectors required by the *California Mechanical Code*.
4. The air-handling system serving the corridor is shut down upon detection of sprinkler water flow where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system.
5. The space between the corridor ceiling and the floor or roof structure above the corridor is used as a component of an approved engineered smoke control system.

**1020.7 Corridor continuity.** Fire-resistance-rated corridors shall be continuous from the point of entry to an exit, and shall not be interrupted by intervening rooms. Where the path of egress travel within a fire-resistance-rated corridor to the exit includes travel along unenclosed exit access stairways or ramps, the fire-resistance rating shall be continuous for the length of the stairway or ramp and for the length of the connecting corridor on the adjacent floor leading to the exit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Foyers, lobbies or reception rooms constructed as required for corridors shall not be construed as intervening rooms.
2. Enclosed elevator lobbies as permitted by Item 1 of Section 1016.2 shall not be construed as intervening rooms.
3. *[SFM] In fully sprinklered office buildings, corridors may lead through enclosed elevator lobbies if all areas of the building have access to at least one required exit without passing through the elevator lobby.*

## SECTION 1021 EGRESS BALCONIES

**1021.1 General.** Balconies used for egress purposes shall conform to the same requirements as corridors for minimum width, required capacity, headroom, dead ends and projections.

**1021.2 Wall separation.** Exterior egress balconies shall be separated from the interior of the building by walls and opening protectives as required for corridors.

**Exception:** Separation is not required where the exterior egress balcony is served by not less than two stairways and a dead-end travel condition does not require travel past an unprotected opening to reach a stairway.

**1021.3 Openness.** The long side of an egress balcony shall be not less than 50 percent open, and the open area above the guards shall be so distributed as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

**1021.4 Location.** Exterior egress balconies shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured at right angles from the exterior edge of the egress balcony to the following:

1. Adjacent lot lines.
2. Other portions of the building.
3. Other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building exterior walls and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 based on fire separation distance.

For the purposes of this section, other portions of the building shall be treated as separate buildings.

## SECTION 1022 EXITS

**1022.1 General.** Exits shall comply with Sections 1022 through 1027 and the applicable requirements of Sections 1003 through 1015. An exit shall not be used for any purpose that interferes with its function as a means of egress. Once a given level of exit protection is achieved, such level of protection shall not be reduced until arrival at the exit discharge. Exits shall be continuous from the point of entry into the exit to the exit discharge.

**1022.2 Exterior exit doors.** Buildings or structures used for human occupancy shall have not less than one exterior door that meets the requirements of Section 1010.1.1.

**1022.2.1 Detailed requirements.** Exterior exit doors shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1010.1.

**1022.2.2 Arrangement.** Exterior exit doors shall lead directly to the exit discharge or the public way.

**| 1022.3 Basement exits in Group I-2 occupancies.** For additional requirements for occupancies in Group I-2 or I-2-1, see Section 407.4.1.2.

## SECTION 1023 INTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

**1023.1 General.** Interior exit stairways and ramps serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. Interior exit stairways and ramps shall be enclosed and lead directly to the exterior of the building or shall be extended to the exterior of the building with an exit passageway conforming to the requirements of Section 1024, except as permitted in Section 1028.2. An interior exit stairway or ramp shall not be used for any purpose other than as a means of egress and a circulation path.

**1023.2 Construction.** Enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramps shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Interior exit stairway and ramp enclosures shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours where connecting four stories or more and not less than 1 hour where connecting less than four stories. The number of stories connected by the interior exit stairways or ramps shall include any basements, but not any mezzanines. Enclosures for interior exit stairways and ramp *enclosures* shall have a fire-resistance rating not less than the floor assembly penetrated, but need not exceed 2 hours.

### Exceptions:

1. Interior exit stairways and ramps in Group I-3 occupancies in accordance with the provisions of Section 408.3.8 of the *California Building Code*.
2. Interior exit stairways within an atrium enclosed in accordance with Section 404.6 of the *California Building Code*.
3. Interior exit stairways in accordance with Section 510.2.
4. *Fixed guideway transit stations, constructed in accordance with Section 443.*

**1023.3 Termination.** Interior exit stairways and ramps shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way.

**Exception:** A combination of interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways, constructed in accordance with Sections 1023.2, 1023.3.1 and 1024, respectively, and forming a continuous protected enclosure, shall be permitted to extend an interior exit stairway or ramp to the exit discharge or a public way.

**1023.3.1 Extension.** Where interior exit stairways and ramps are extended to an exit discharge or a public way by an exit passageway, the interior exit stairway and ramp shall be separated from the exit passageway by a fire barrier constructed in accordance with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than that required for the interior exit stairway and ramp. A fire door assembly complying with Section 716 shall be installed in the fire barrier to provide a means of egress from the interior exit stairway and ramp to the exit passageway. Openings in the fire barrier other

## MEANS OF EGRESS

than the fire door assembly are prohibited. Penetrations of the fire barrier are prohibited.

### Exceptions:

1. Penetrations of the fire barrier in accordance with Section 1023.5 shall be permitted.
2. Separation between an interior exit stairway or ramp and the exit passageway extension shall not be required where there are no openings into the exit passageway extension.
3. Separation between an interior exit stairway or ramp and the exit passageway extension shall not be required where the interior exit stairway and the exit passageway extension are pressurized in accordance with Section 909.20.5.

**1023.4 Openings.** Interior exit stairway and ramp opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716.

Openings in interior exit stairways and ramps other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those required for exit access to the enclosure from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the enclosure.

Elevators shall not open into interior exit stairways and ramps.

**1023.5 Penetrations.** Penetrations into or through interior exit stairways and ramps are prohibited except for the following:

1. Equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization.
2. Fire protection systems.
3. Security systems.
4. Two-way communication systems.
5. Electrical raceway for fire department communication systems.
6. Electrical raceway serving the interior exit stairway and ramp and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches ( $0.010 \text{ m}^2$ ).
7. Structural elements supporting the interior exit stairway or ramp or enclosure, such as beams or joists.

Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be penetrations or communication openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent interior exit stairways and ramps.

**Exception:** Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the interior exit stairway and ramp. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2.

**1023.6 Ventilation.** Equipment and ductwork for interior exit stairway and ramp ventilation as permitted by Section 1023.5 shall comply with one of the following items:

1. Such equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the interior exit stairway and ramp by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.

2. Where such equipment and ductwork is located within the interior exit stairway and ramp, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or such air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, such equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 for shaft enclosures.

The interior exit stairway and ramp ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

**1023.7 Interior exit stairway and ramp exterior walls.** Exterior walls of the interior exit stairway or ramp shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for exterior walls. Where nonrated walls or unprotected openings enclose the exterior of the stairway or ramps and the walls or openings are exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the topmost landing of the stairway or ramp, or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

**1023.8 Barrier at level of exit discharge.** An interior exit stairway and ramp shall not continue below its level of exit discharge unless an approved barrier is provided at the level of exit discharge to prevent persons from unintentionally continuing into levels below. Directional exit signs shall be provided as specified in Section 1013.

**1023.9 Stairway identification signs.** A sign shall be provided at each floor landing in an interior exit stairway and ramp connecting more than three stories designating the floor level, the terminus of the top and bottom of the interior exit stairway and ramp and the identification of the stairway or ramp. The signage shall state the story of and direction to the exit discharge, and the availability of roof access from the interior exit stairway and ramp for the fire department. The bottom of the sign shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the floor landing in a position that is readily visible when the doors are in the open and closed positions.

*In addition to the stairway identification sign, raised characters and braille floor identification signs that comply with Chapter 11A, Section 1143A or Chapter 11B shall be located at the landing of each floor level, placed adjacent to the door on the latch side, in all enclosed stairways in buildings two or more stories in height to identify the floor level. At the exit discharge level, the sign shall include a raised five pointed star located to the left of the identifying floor level. The outside diameter of the star shall be the same as the height of the raised characters.*

**1023.9.1 Signage requirements.** Stairway identification signs shall comply with all of the following requirements:

1. The signs shall be a minimum size of 18 inches (457 mm) by 12 inches (305 mm).
2. The letters designating the identification of the interior exit stairway and ramp such as *STAIR NO. 1 or WEST STAIR, shall be placed at the top of the sign and shall be not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) in height block lettering with ¼-inch (6 mm) strokes.*
3. The number designating the floor level shall be not less than 5 inches (127 mm) in height with  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19 mm) strokes and located in the center of the sign. *The mezzanine levels shall have the letter "M" preceding the floor level. Basement levels shall have the letter "B" preceding the floor number.*
4. Other lettering and numbers shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in height.
5. *The stairway's upper terminus, such as ROOF ACCESS or NO ROOF ACCESS, shall be placed under the stairway identification in 1-inch-high (25 mm) block lettering with ¼-inch (6 mm) strokes.*
6. *The lower and upper terminus of the stairway shall be placed at the bottom of the sign in 1-inch-high (25 mm) block lettering with ¼-inch (6 mm) strokes.*
7. Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.
8. Where signs required by Section 1023.9 are installed in the interior exit stairways and ramps of buildings subject to Section 1025, the signs shall be made of the same materials as required by Section 1025.4.

**1023.10 Elevator lobby identification signs.** At landings in interior exit stairways where two or more doors lead to the floor level, any door with direct access to an enclosed elevator lobby shall be identified by signage located on the door or directly adjacent to the door stating "Elevator Lobby." Signage shall be in accordance with Section 1023.9.1, Items 4, 5 and 6.

**1023.11 Tactile floor-level signs.** Where floor level signs are provided in interior exit stairways and ramps, a floor-level sign identifying the floor level in visual characters, raised characters and braille complying with *Chapter 11A, Section 1143A* shall be located at each floor-level landing adjacent to the door leading from the interior exit stairway and ramp into the corridor.

**1023.12 Smokeproof enclosures.** Where required by Section 403.5.4, 405.7.2 or 412.2.2.1, interior exit stairways and ramps shall be smokeproof enclosures in accordance with Section 909.20.

**1023.12.1 Termination and extension.** A smokeproof enclosure shall terminate at an exit discharge or a public way. The smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to be extended by an exit passageway in accordance with Section 1023.3. The exit passageway shall be without

openings other than the fire door assembly required by Section 1023.3.1 and those necessary for egress from the exit passageway. The exit passageway shall be separated from the remainder of the building by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

#### Exceptions:

1. Openings in the exit passageway serving a smokeproof enclosure are permitted where the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure, and openings are protected as required for access from other floors.
2. The fire barrier separating the smokeproof enclosure from the exit passageway is not required, provided that the exit passageway is protected and pressurized in the same manner as the smokeproof enclosure.
3. A smokeproof enclosure shall be permitted to egress through areas on the level of exit discharge or vestibules as permitted by Section 1028.

**1023.12.2 Enclosure access.** Access to the stairway or ramp within a smokeproof enclosure shall be by way of a vestibule or an open exterior balcony.

**1023.13 Standpipes.** Standpipes and standpipe hose connections shall be provided where required by Sections 905.3 and 905.4.

## SECTION 1024 EXIT PASSAGEWAYS

**1024.1 General.** Exit passageways serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. An exit passageway shall not be used for any purpose other than as a means of egress and a circulation path.

**1024.2 Width and capacity.** The required capacity of exit passageways shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1 but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except that exit passageways serving an occupant load of less than 50 shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The minimum width or required capacity of exit passageways shall be unobstructed.

**Exception:** Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

*The clear width of exit passageways in a Group I-2 occupancy used for the movement of beds and litters shall be 44-inch (1118) minimum.*

**1024.3 Construction.** Exit passageway enclosures shall have walls, floors and ceilings of not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating, and not less than that required for any connecting interior exit stairway or ramp. Exit passageways shall be constructed as fire barriers in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1024.4 Termination.** Exit passageways on the level of exit discharge shall terminate at an exit discharge. Exit passageways on other levels shall terminate at an exit.

**1024.5 Openings.** Exit passageway opening protectives shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 716.

Except as permitted in Section 402.8.7, openings in exit passageways other than unprotected exterior openings shall be limited to those necessary for exit access to the exit passageway from normally occupied spaces and for egress from the exit passageway.

Where an interior exit stairway or ramp is extended to an exit discharge or a public way by an exit passageway, the exit passageway shall comply with Section 1023.3.1.

Elevators shall not open into an exit passageway.

**1024.6 Penetrations.** Penetrations into or through an exit passageway are prohibited except for the following:

1. Equipment and ductwork necessary for independent ventilation or pressurization.
2. Fire protection systems.
3. Security systems.
4. Two-way communication systems.
5. Electrical raceway for fire department communication.
6. Electrical raceway serving the exit passageway and terminating at a steel box not exceeding 16 square inches ( $0.010 \text{ m}^2$ ).

Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714. There shall not be penetrations or communicating openings, whether protected or not, between adjacent exit passageways.

**Exception:** Membrane penetrations shall be permitted on the outside of the exit passageway. Such penetrations shall be protected in accordance with Section 714.4.2.

**1024.7 Ventilation.** Equipment and ductwork for exit passageway ventilation as permitted by Section 1024.6 shall comply with one of the following:

1. The equipment and ductwork shall be located exterior to the building and shall be directly connected to the exit passageway by ductwork enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
2. Where the equipment and ductwork is located within the exit passageway, the intake air shall be taken directly from the outdoors and the exhaust air shall be discharged directly to the outdoors, or the air shall be conveyed through ducts enclosed in construction as required for shafts.
3. Where located within the building, the equipment and ductwork shall be separated from the remainder of the building, including other mechanical equipment, with construction as required for shafts.

In each case, openings into the fire-resistance-rated construction shall be limited to those needed for maintenance and operation and shall be protected by opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 for shaft enclosures.

Exit passageway ventilation systems shall be independent of other building ventilation systems.

**1024.8 Exit passageway exterior walls.** Exterior walls of the exit passageway shall comply with Section 705. Where nonrated walls or unprotected openings enclose the exterior of the exit passageway and the walls or openings are exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the building exterior walls within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such exterior walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor of the exit passageway, or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

**1024.9 Standpipes.** Standpipes and standpipe hose connections shall be provided where required by Sections 905.3 and 905.4.

## SECTION 1025 LUMINOUS EGRESS PATH MARKINGS

**1025.1 General.** Approved luminous egress path markings delineating the exit path shall be provided in high-rise buildings of Group A, B, E, M or R-1 occupancies in accordance with this section.

**Exception:** Luminous egress path markings shall not be required on the level of exit discharge in lobbies that serve as part of the exit path in accordance with Section 1028.2, Exception 1.

**1025.2 Markings within exit components.** Egress path markings shall be provided in interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways, in accordance with Sections 1025.2.1 through 1025.2.6.3.

**1025.2.1 Steps.** A solid and continuous stripe shall be applied to the horizontal leading edge of each step and shall extend for the full length of the step. Outlining stripes shall have a minimum horizontal width of 1 inch (25 mm) and a maximum width of 2 inches (51 mm). The leading edge of the stripe shall be placed not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) from the leading edge of the step and the stripe shall not overlap the leading edge of the step by not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) down the vertical face of the step.

**Exception:** The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

**1025.2.2 Landings.** The leading edge of landings shall be marked with a stripe consistent with the dimensional requirements for steps.

**1025.2.3 Handrails.** Handrails and handrail extensions shall be marked with a solid and continuous stripe having a minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm). The stripe shall be placed on the top surface of the handrail for the entire length of the handrail, including extensions and newel post caps. Where handrails or handrail extensions bend or turn

corners, the stripe shall not have a gap of more than 4 inches (102 mm).

**Exception:** The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

**1025.2.4 Perimeter demarcation lines.** Stair landings and other floor areas within interior exit stairways, interior exit ramps and exit passageways, with the exception of the sides of steps, shall be provided with solid and continuous demarcation lines on the floor or on the walls or a combination of both. The stripes shall be 1 to 2 inches (25 mm to 51 mm) wide with interruptions not exceeding 4 inches (102 mm).

**Exception:** The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to outlining stripes listed in accordance with UL 1994.

**1025.2.4.1 Floor-mounted demarcation lines.** Perimeter demarcation lines shall be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the wall and shall extend to within 2 inches (51 mm) of the markings on the leading edge of landings. The demarcation lines shall continue across the floor in front of all doors.

**Exception:** Demarcation lines shall not extend in front of exit discharge doors that lead out of an exit and through which occupants must travel to complete the exit path.

**1025.2.4.2 Wall-mounted demarcation lines.** Perimeter demarcation lines shall be placed on the wall with the bottom edge of the stripe not more than 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished floor. At the top or bottom of the stairs, demarcation lines shall drop vertically to the floor within 2 inches (51 mm) of the step or landing edge. Demarcation lines on walls shall transition vertically to the floor and then extend across the floor where a line on the floor is the only practical method of outlining the path. Where the wall line is broken by a door, demarcation lines on walls shall continue across the face of the door or transition to the floor and extend across the floor in front of such door.

**Exception:** Demarcation lines shall not extend in front of exit discharge doors that lead out of an exit and through which occupants must travel to complete the exit path.

**1025.2.4.3 Transition.** Where a wall-mounted demarcation line transitions to a floor-mounted demarcation line, or vice versa, the wall-mounted demarcation line shall drop vertically to the floor to meet a complementary extension of the floor-mounted demarcation line, thus forming a continuous marking.

**1025.2.5 Obstacles.** Obstacles at or below 6 feet 6 inches (1981 mm) in height and projecting more than 4 inches (102 mm) into the egress path shall be outlined with markings not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in width comprised of a pattern of alternating equal bands, of luminous material and black, with the alternating bands not more than 2 inches (51 mm) thick and angled at 45 degrees (0.79 rad).

Obstacles shall include, but are not limited to, standpipes, hose cabinets, wall projections and restricted height areas. However, such markings shall not conceal any required information or indicators including but not limited to instructions to occupants for the use of standpipes.

**Exception:** The minimum width of 1 inch (25 mm) shall not apply to markings listed in accordance with UL 1994.

**1025.2.6 Doors within the exit path.** Doors through which occupants must pass in order to complete the exit path shall be provided with markings complying with Sections 1025.2.6.1 through 1025.2.6.3.

**1025.2.6.1 Emergency exit symbol.** The doors shall be identified by a low-location luminous emergency exit symbol complying with NFPA 170. The exit symbol shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height and shall be mounted on the door, centered horizontally, with the top of the symbol not higher than 18 inches (457 mm) above the finished floor.

**1025.2.6.2 Door hardware markings.** Door hardware shall be marked with not less than 16 square inches (10323 mm<sup>2</sup>) of luminous material. This marking shall be located behind, immediately adjacent to, or on the door handle or escutcheon. Where a panic bar is installed, such material shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) wide for the entire length of the actuating bar or touchpad.

**1025.2.6.3 Door frame markings.** The top and sides of the door frame shall be marked with a solid and continuous 1-inch- to 2-inch-wide (25 mm to 51 mm) stripe. Where the door molding does not provide sufficient flat surface on which to locate the stripe, the stripe shall be permitted to be located on the wall surrounding the frame.

**1025.3 Uniformity.** Placement and dimensions of markings shall be consistent and uniform throughout the same enclosure.

**1025.4 Self-luminous and photoluminescent.** Luminous egress path markings shall be permitted to be made of any material, including paint, provided that an electrical charge is not required to maintain the required luminance. Such materials shall include, but not be limited to, self-luminous materials and photoluminescent materials. Materials shall comply with either of the following standards:

1. UL 1994.
2. ASTM E2072, except that the charging source shall be 1 footcandle (11 lux) of fluorescent illumination for 60 minutes, and the minimum luminance shall be 30 milicandelas per square meter at 10 minutes and 5 milicandelas per square meter after 90 minutes.

**1025.5 Illumination.** Where photoluminescent exit path markings are installed, they shall be provided with not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) of illumination for not less than 60 minutes prior to periods when the building is occupied and continuously during occupancy.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

### SECTION 1026 HORIZONTAL EXITS

**1026.1 General.** Horizontal exits serving as an exit in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section. A horizontal exit shall not serve as the only exit from a portion of a building, and where two or more exits are required, not more than one-half of the total number of exits or total exit minimum width or required capacity shall be horizontal exits.

#### Exceptions:

1. Horizontal exits are permitted to comprise two-thirds of the required exits from any building or floor area for occupancies in Group I-2.
2. Horizontal exits are permitted to comprise 100 percent of the exits required for occupancies in Group I-3. Not less than 6 square feet ( $0.6\text{ m}^2$ ) of accessible space per occupant shall be provided on each side of the horizontal exit for the total number of people in adjoining compartments.

**1026.2 Separation.** The separation between buildings or refuge areas connected by a horizontal exit shall be provided by a fire wall complying with Section 706; or by a fire barrier complying with Section 707 or a horizontal assembly complying with Section 711, or both. The minimum fire-resistance rating of the separation shall be 2 hours. Opening protectives in horizontal exits shall also comply with Section 716. Duct and air transfer openings in a fire wall or fire barrier that serves as a horizontal exit shall also comply with Section 717. The horizontal exit separation shall extend vertically through all levels of the building unless floor assemblies have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours and do not have unprotected openings.

**Exception:** A fire-resistance rating is not required at horizontal exits between a building area and an above-grade pedestrian walkway constructed in accordance with Section 3104, provided that the distance between connected buildings is more than 20 feet (6096 mm).

Horizontal exits constructed as fire barriers shall be continuous from exterior wall to exterior wall so as to divide completely the floor served by the horizontal exit.

**1026.3 Opening protectives.** Fire doors in horizontal exits shall be self-closing or automatic-closing when activated by a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. Doors, where located in a cross-corridor condition, shall be automatic-closing by activation of a smoke detector installed in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6.

**1026.4 Refuge area.** The refuge area of a horizontal exit shall be a space occupied by the same tenant or a public area and each such refuge area shall be adequate to accommodate the original occupant load of the refuge area plus the occupant load anticipated from the adjoining compartment. The anticipated occupant load from the adjoining compartment shall be based on the capacity of the horizontal exit

doors entering the refuge area or the total occupant load of the adjoining compartment, whichever is less.

**1026.4.1 Capacity.** The capacity of the refuge area shall be computed based on a net floor area allowance of 3 square feet ( $0.2787\text{ m}^2$ ) for each occupant to be accommodated therein. Where the horizontal exit also forms a smoke compartment, the capacity of the refuge area for Group I-2, I-2.1, I-3 and R-2.1 occupancies shall comply with Sections 407.5.3, 408.6.2 and 420.6.2 as applicable.

**1026.4.2 Number of exits.** The refuge area into which a horizontal exit leads shall be provided with exits adequate to meet the occupant requirements of this chapter, but not including the added occupant load imposed by persons entering the refuge area through horizontal exits from other areas. *In other than I-3 occupancies*, not less than one refuge area exit shall lead directly to the exterior or to an interior exit stairway or ramp.

**Exception:** The adjoining compartment shall not be required to have a stairway or door leading directly outside, provided that the refuge area into which a horizontal exit leads has stairways or doors leading directly outside and are so arranged that egress shall not require the occupants to return through the compartment from which egress originates.

**1026.5 Standpipes.** Standpipes and standpipe hose connections shall be provided where required by Sections 905.3 and 905.4.

### SECTION 1027 EXTERIOR EXIT STAIRWAYS AND RAMPS

**1027.1 General.** Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving as an exit component in a means of egress system shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1027.2 Use in a means of egress.** Exterior exit stairways shall not be used as an element of a required means of egress for Group I-2 occupancies. For occupancies in other than Group I-2, exterior exit stairways and ramps shall be permitted as an element of a required means of egress for buildings not exceeding six stories above grade plane or that are not high-rise buildings.

**1027.3 Open side.** Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving as an element of a required means of egress shall be open on not less than one side, except for required structural columns, beams, handrails and guards. An open side shall have not less than 35 square feet ( $3.3\text{ m}^2$ ) of aggregate open area adjacent to each floor level and the level of each intermediate landing. The required open area shall be located not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) above the adjacent floor or landing level.

**1027.4 Side yards.** The open areas adjoining exterior exit stairways or ramps shall be either yards, courts or public ways; the remaining sides are permitted to be enclosed by the exterior walls of the building.

**1027.5 Location.** Exterior exit stairways and ramps shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured at right angles from the exterior edge of the stairway or ramps, including landings, to:

1. Adjacent lot lines.
2. Other portions of the building.
3. Other buildings on the same lot unless the adjacent building exterior walls and openings are protected in accordance with Section 705 based on fire separation distance.

For the purposes of this section, other portions of the building shall be treated as separate buildings.

**Exception:** Exterior exit stairways and ramps serving individual dwelling units of Group R-3 shall have a minimum fire separation distance of 5 feet (1525 mm).

**1027.6 Exterior exit stairway and ramp protection.** Exterior exit stairways and ramps shall be separated from the interior of the building as required in Section 1023.2. Openings shall be limited to those necessary for egress from normally occupied spaces. Where a vertical plane projecting from the edge of an exterior exit stairway or ramp and landings is exposed by other parts of the building at an angle of less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad), the exterior wall shall be rated in accordance with Section 1023.7.

**Exceptions:**

1. Separation from the interior of the building is not required for occupancies, other than those in Group R-1 or R-2, in buildings that are not more than two stories above grade plane where a level of exit discharge serving such occupancies is the first story above grade plane.
2. Separation from the interior of the building is not required where the exterior exit stairway or ramp is served by an exterior exit ramp or balcony that connects two remote exterior exit stairways or other approved exits with a perimeter that is not less than 50 percent open. To be considered open, the opening shall be not less than 50 percent of the height of the enclosing wall, with the top of the openings not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the top of the balcony.
3. Separation from the open-ended corridor of the building is not required for exterior exit stairways or ramps, provided that Items 3.1 through 3.5 are met:
  - 3.1. The building, including open-ended corridors, and stairways and ramps, shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.
  - 3.2. The open-ended corridors comply with Section 1020.
  - 3.3. The open-ended corridors are connected on each end to an exterior exit stairway or ramp complying with Section 1027.

3.4. The exterior walls and openings adjacent to the exterior exit stairway or ramp comply with Section 1023.7.

3.5. At any location in an open-ended corridor where a change of direction exceeding 45 degrees (0.79 rad) occurs, a clear opening of not less than 35 square feet ( $3.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) or an exterior stairway or ramp shall be provided. Where clear openings are provided, they shall be located so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke or toxic gases.

4. In Group R-3 occupancies not more than four stories in height, exterior exit stairways and ramps serving individual dwelling units are not required to be separated from the interior of the building where the exterior exit stairway or ramp discharges directly to grade.

## SECTION 1028 EXIT DISCHARGE

**1028.1 General.** The exit discharge shall comply with Sections 1028 and 1029 and the applicable requirements of Sections 1003 through 1015.

**1028.2 Exit discharge.** Exits shall discharge directly to the exterior of the building. The exit discharge shall be at grade or shall provide a direct path of egress travel to grade. The exit discharge shall not reenter a building. The combined use of Exceptions 1 and 2 shall not exceed 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of the required exits.

**Exceptions:**

1. Not more than 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of interior exit stairways and ramps is permitted to egress through areas, including atriums, on the level of discharge provided that all of the following conditions are met:

- 1.1. Discharge of interior exit stairways and ramps shall be provided with a free and unobstructed path of travel to an exterior exit door and such exit is readily visible and identifiable from the point of termination of the enclosure.
- 1.2. The entire area of the level of exit discharge is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the fire-resistance rating for the enclosure.
- 1.3. The egress path from the interior exit stairway and ramp on the level of exit discharge is protected throughout by an approved automatic sprinkler system. Portions of the level of exit discharge with access to the egress path shall be either equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or

## MEANS OF EGRESS

- 903.3.1.2, or separated from the egress path in accordance with the requirements for the enclosure of interior exit stairways or ramps.
- 1.4. Where a required interior exit stairway or ramp and an exit access stairway or ramp serve the same floor level and terminate at the same level of exit discharge, the termination of the exit access stairway or ramp and the exit discharge door of the interior exit stairway or ramp shall be separated by a distance of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm) or not less than one-fourth the length of the maximum overall diagonal dimension of the building, whichever is less. The distance shall be measured in a straight line between the exit discharge door from the interior exit stairway or ramp and the last tread of the exit access stairway or termination of slope of the exit access ramp.
  2. Not more than 50 percent of the number and minimum width or required capacity of the interior exit stairways and ramps is permitted to egress through a vestibule provided that all of the following conditions are met:
    - 2.1. The entire area of the vestibule is separated from areas below by construction conforming to the fire-resistance rating of the interior exit stairway or ramp enclosure.
    - 2.2. The depth from the exterior of the building is not greater than 10 feet (3048 mm) and the length is not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).
    - 2.3. The area is separated from the remainder of the level of exit discharge by a fire partition constructed in accordance with Section 708.
- Exception:** The maximum transmitted temperature rise is not required.
- 2.4. The area is used only for means of egress and exits directly to the outside.
  3. Horizontal exits complying with Section 1026 shall not be required to discharge directly to the exterior of the building.

**1028.3 Exit discharge width or capacity.** The minimum width or required capacity of the exit discharge shall be not less than the minimum width or required capacity of the exits being served.

**1028.4 Exit discharge components.** Exit discharge components shall be sufficiently open to the exterior so as to minimize the accumulation of smoke and toxic gases.

**1028.5 Access to a public way.** The exit discharge shall provide a direct and unobstructed access to a public way.

**Exception:** Where access to a public way cannot be provided, a safe dispersal area shall be provided where all of the following are met:

1. The area shall be of a size to accommodate not less than 5 square feet ( $0.46 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each person.

2. For other than Group E buildings, the area shall be located on the same lot not less than 50 feet (15 240 mm) away from the building requiring egress. For Group E buildings, the area shall be located on the same lot at least 50 feet (15 240 mm) away from any building.
  3. The area shall be permanently maintained and identified as a safe dispersal area.
  4. The area shall be provided with a safe and unobstructed path of travel from the building.
5. In correctional facilities, the area shall be of a size to accommodate not less than 7 square feet ( $0.6503 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each person. Accessible path of egress travel to the safe dispersal area and clear ground space for 5 percent of the occupants meeting Section 11B-305.3 shall be provided.

\*\*

## SECTION 1029 EGRESS COURTS

**1029.1 General.** Egress courts serving as an exit discharge component in the means of egress system shall comply with the requirements in this section.

**1029.2 Width or capacity.** The required capacity of egress courts shall be determined as specified in Section 1005.1, but the minimum width shall be not less than 44 inches (1118 mm), except as specified herein. Egress courts serving Group R-3 and U occupancies shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width. The required capacity and width of egress courts shall be unobstructed to a height of 7 feet (2134 mm). The width of the egress court shall be not less than the required capacity.

**Exception:** Encroachments complying with Section 1005.7.

**1029.3 Construction and openings.** Where an egress court serving a building or portion thereof is less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width, the egress court walls shall have not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction for a distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor of the egress court. Openings within such walls shall be protected by opening protectives having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour.

### Exceptions:

1. Egress courts serving an occupant load of less than 10.
2. Egress courts serving Group R-3.

## SECTION 1030 ASSEMBLY

**1030.1 General.** A room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, equipment or other material shall comply with this section.

**Exception:** Group A occupancies within Group I-3 facilities are exempt from egress requirements of Section 1029.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1030.1.1 Bleachers.** Bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating, that are not building elements, shall comply with ICC 300.

**1030.1.1.1 Spaces under grandstands and bleachers.**

Spaces under grandstands or bleachers shall be separated by fire barriers complying with Section 707 and horizontal assemblies complying with Section 711 with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

**Exceptions:**

1. Ticket booths less than 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.
2. Toilet rooms.
3. Other accessory use areas 1,000 square feet (92.9 m<sup>2</sup>) or less in area and equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**1030.2 Assembly main exit.** A building, room or space used for assembly purposes that has an occupant load of greater than 300 and is provided with a main exit, that main exit shall be of sufficient capacity to accommodate not less than one-half of the occupant load, but such capacity shall be not less than the total required capacity of all means of egress leading to the exit. Where the building is classified as a Group A occupancy, the main exit shall front on not less than one street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in width that adjoins a street or public way. In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where there is not a well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building provided that the total capacity of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required capacity and not less than one exit shall discharge on a street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in capacity that adjoins a street or publicway. Smoke-protected seating shall comply with Section 1029.6.2.

**1030.3 Assembly other exits.** In addition to having access to a main exit, each level in a building used for assembly purposes having an occupant load greater than 300 and provided with a main exit, shall be provided with additional means of egress that shall provide an egress capacity for not less than one-half of the total occupant load served by that level and shall comply with Section 1007.1. Not less than one-half of the additional means of egress required by this section shall be directly to an exit, or through a lobby, that is not used to access the main exit, to an exit or to a 1-hour-rated corridor to an exit. In a building used for assembly purposes where there is not a well-defined main exit or where multiple main exits are provided, exits for each level shall be permitted to be distributed around the perimeter of the building, provided that the total width of egress is not less than 100 percent of the required width and not less than one exit shall discharge on a street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in capacity that adjoins a street or publicway. Smoke-protected seating shall comply with Section 1029.6.2.

**1030.3.1 Occupant loads between 100 and 300, Group A ||| occupancies or assembly occupancies accessory to Group E occupancies that have an occupant load of 100 to 300 not less than one of the required means of egress shall exit through one of the following:**

1. Directly to an exit
2. Egress through a lobby that is not used to access the other required exit
3. To a one-hour rated corridor to an exit
4. Continuous through a one-hour rated lobby to an exit.

*Not less than one exit shall discharge on a street or an unoccupied space of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) in capacity that adjoins a street or public way.*

**1030.4 Foyers and lobbies.** In Group A-1 occupancies, where persons are admitted to the building at times when seats are not available, such persons shall be allowed to wait in a lobby or similar space, provided that such lobby or similar space shall not encroach on the minimum width or required capacity of the means of egress. Such foyer, if not directly connected to a public street by all the main entrances or exits, shall have a straight and unobstructed corridor or path of travel to every such main entrance or exit.

**1030.5 Interior balcony and gallery means of egress.** For balconies, galleries or press boxes having a seating capacity of 50 or more located in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, not less than two means of egress shall be provided, with one from each side of every balcony, gallery or press box.

**1030.6 Capacity of aisle for assembly.** The required capacity of aisles shall be not less than that determined in accordance with Section 1030.6.1 where smoke-protected assembly seating is not provided, Section 1030.6.2 where smoke-protected assembly seating is provided and Section 1030.6.3 where open-air assembly seating is provided.

**1030.6.1 Without smoke protection.** The required capacity in inches (mm) of the aisles for assembly seating without smoke protection shall be not less than the occupant load served by the egress element in accordance with all of the following, as applicable:

1. Not less than 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) of aisle capacity for each occupant served shall be provided on stepped aisles having riser heights 7 inches (178 mm) or less and tread depths 11 inches (279 mm) or greater, measured horizontally between tread nosings.
2. Not less than 0.005 inch (0.127 mm) of additional aisle capacity for each occupant shall be provided for each 0.10 inch (2.5 mm) of riser height above 7 inches (178 mm).
3. Where egress requires stepped aisle descent, not less than 0.075 inch (1.9 mm) of additional aisle capacity for each occupant shall be provided on those portions of aisle capacity that do not have a handrail within a horizontal distance of 30 inches (762 mm).

## MEANS OF EGRESS

4. Ramped aisles, where slopes are steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have not less than 0.22 inch (5.6 mm) of clear aisle capacity for each occupant served. Level or ramped aisles, where slopes are not steeper than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope), shall have not less than 0.20 inch (5.1 mm) of clear aisle capacity for each occupant served.

**1030.6.2 Smoke-protected assembly seating.** The required capacity in inches (mm) of the aisle for smoke-protected assembly seating shall be not less than the occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by the appropriate factor in Table 1030.6.2. The total number of seats specified shall be those within the space exposed to the same smoke-protected environment. Interpolation is permitted between the specific values shown. A life safety evaluation, complying with NFPA 101, shall be done for a facility utilizing the reduced width requirements of Table 1030.6.2 for smoke-protected assembly seating.

**1030.6.2.1 Smoke control.** Aisles and aisle accessways serving a smoke-protected assembly seating area shall be provided with a smoke control system complying with Section 909 or natural ventilation designed to maintain the smoke level not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor of the means of egress.

**1030.6.2.2 Roof height.** A smoke-protected assembly seating area with a roof shall have the lowest portion of the roof deck not less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway.

**Exception:** A roof canopy in an outdoor stadium shall be permitted to be less than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway provided that there are no objects less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the highest aisle or aisle accessway.

**1030.6.2.3 Automatic sprinklers.** Enclosed areas with walls and ceilings in buildings or structures containing smoke-protected assembly seating shall be protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

### Exceptions:

1. The floor area used for contests, performances or entertainment provided that the roof construction is more than 50 feet (15 240 mm)

above the floor level and the use is restricted to low fire hazard uses.

2. Press boxes and storage facilities less than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) in area.

**1030.6.3 Open-air assembly seating.** In open-air assembly seating, the required capacity in inches (mm) of aisles shall be not less than the total occupant load served by the egress element multiplied by 0.08 (2.0 mm) where egress is by stepped aisle and multiplied by 0.06 (1.52 mm) where egress is by level aisles and ramped aisles.

**Exception:** The required capacity in inches (mm) of aisles shall be permitted to comply with Section 1030.6.2 for the number of seats in the open-air assembly seating where Section 1030.6.2 permits less capacity.

**1030.6.3.1 Automatic sprinklers.** Enclosed areas with walls and ceilings in buildings or structures containing open-air assembly seating shall be protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

### Exceptions:

1. The floor area used for contests, performances or entertainment, provided that the roof construction is more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the floor level and the use is restricted to low fire hazard uses.
2. Press boxes and storage facilities less than 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ) in area.
3. Open-air assembly seating facilities where seating and the means of egress in the seating area are essentially open to the outside.

**1030.6.3.2 Public address system.** See Section 907.2.1.1.

**1030.7 Travel distance.** The exit access travel distance shall comply with Section 1017. Where aisles are provided for seating, the distance shall be measured along the aisles and aisle accessways without travel over or on the seats.

### Exceptions:

1. In facilities with smoke-protected assembly seating, the total exit access travel distance shall be not greater than 400 feet (122 m). That portion of the total permitted exit access travel distance from each

**TABLE 1030.6.2  
CAPACITY FOR AISLES FOR SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY**

TOTAL NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED ASSEMBLY SEATING	INCHES OF CAPACITY PER SEAT SERVED			
	Stepped aisles with handrails within 30 inches	Stepped aisles without handrails within 30 inches	Level aisles or ramped aisles not steeper than 1 in 10 in slope	Ramped aisles steeper than 1 in 10 in slope
Equal to or less than 5,000	0.200	0.250	0.150	0.165
10,000	0.130	0.163	0.100	0.110
15,000	0.096	0.120	0.070	0.077
20,000	0.076	0.095	0.056	0.062
Equal to or greater than 25,000	0.060	0.075	0.044	0.048

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

seat to the nearest entrance to a vomitory or concourse shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm). The portion of the total permitted exit access travel distance from the entrance to the vomitory or concourse to one of the following shall not exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm):

- 1.1. The closest riser of an exit access stairway.
- 1.2. The closest slope of an exit access ramp.
- 1.3. An exit.
2. In facilities with open-air assembly seating of Type III, IV or V construction, the total exit access travel distance to one of the following shall not exceed 400 feet (122 m):
  - 2.1. The closest riser of an exit access stairway.
  - 2.2. The closest slope of an exit access ramp.
  - 2.3. An exit.
3. In facilities with open-air assembly seating of Type I or II construction, the total exit access travel distance shall not be limited.

**1030.8 Common path of egress travel.** The common path of egress travel shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to a point where an occupant has a choice of two paths of egress travel to two exits.

**Exceptions:**

1. For areas serving less than 50 occupants, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).
2. For smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating, the common path of egress travel shall not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**1030.8.1 Path through adjacent row.** Where one of the two paths of travel is across the aisle through a row of seats to another aisle, there shall be not more than 24 seats between the two aisles, and the minimum clear width between rows for the row between the two aisles shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row between aisles.

**Exception:** For smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating there shall be not more than 40 seats between the two aisles and the minimum clear width shall be 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat.

**1030.9 Assembly aisles are required.** Every occupied portion of any building, room or space used for assembly purposes that contains seats, tables, displays, similar fixtures or equipment shall be provided with aisles leading to exits or exit access doorways in accordance with this section.

**1030.9.1 Minimum aisle width.** The minimum clear width for aisles shall comply with one of the following:

1. Forty-eight inches (1219 mm) for stepped aisles having seating on both sides.

**Exception:** Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the stepped aisles serve less than 50 seats.

2. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for stepped aisles having seating on only one side.

**Exception:** Twenty-three inches (584 mm) between a stepped aisle handrail and seating where a stepped aisle does not serve more than five rows on one side.

3. Twenty-three inches (584 mm) between a stepped aisle handrail or guard and seating where the stepped aisle is subdivided by a mid-aisle handrail.
4. Forty-two inches (1067 mm) for level or ramped aisles having seating on both sides.

**Exceptions:**

1. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) where the aisle serves less than 50 seats.
2. Thirty inches (762 mm) where the aisle serves less than 15 seats and does not serve as part of an accessible route.
5. Thirty-six inches (914 mm) for level or ramped aisles having seating on only one side.

**Exception:** Thirty inches (762 mm) where the aisle serves fewer than 15 seats and does not serve as part of an accessible route.

6. *Libraries with open book stacks shall have main aisles not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width, and side, range and end aisles not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.*

**1030.9.2 Aisle catchment area.** The aisle shall provide sufficient capacity for the number of persons accommodated by the catchment area served by the aisle. The catchment area served by an aisle is that portion of the total space served by that section of the aisle. In establishing catchment areas, the assumption shall be made that there is a balanced use of all means of egress, with the number of persons in proportion to egress capacity.

**1030.9.3 Converging aisles.** Where aisles converge to form a single path of egress travel, the required capacity of that path shall be not less than the combined required capacity of the converging aisles.

**1030.9.4 Uniform width and capacity.** Those portions of aisles, where egress is possible in either of two directions, shall be uniform in minimum width or required capacity.

**1030.9.5 Dead-end aisles.** Each end of an aisle shall be continuous to a cross aisle, foyer, doorway, vomitory, concourse or stairway in accordance with Section 1030.9.7 having access to an exit.

**Exceptions:**

1. Dead-end aisles shall be not greater than 20 feet (6096 mm) in length.
2. Dead-end aisles longer than 16 rows are permitted where seats beyond the 16th row dead-end aisle are not more than 24 seats from another aisle, measured along a row of seats having a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for each additional seat above

## MEANS OF EGRESS

seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

3. For smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating, the dead-end aisle length of vertical aisles shall not exceed a distance of 21 rows.
4. For smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating, a longer dead-end aisle is permitted where seats beyond the 21-row dead-end aisle are not more than 40 seats from another aisle, measured along a row of seats having an aisle accessway with a minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) plus 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for each additional seat above seven in the row where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests in the row.

**1030.9.6 Aisle measurement.** The clear width for aisles shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges except for permitted projections.

**Exception:** The clear width of aisles adjacent to seating at tables shall be permitted to be measured in accordance with Section 1030.13.1.

**1030.9.6.1 Assembly aisle obstructions.** There shall not be obstructions in the minimum width or required capacity of aisles.

**Exception:** Handrails are permitted to project into the required width of stepped aisles and ramped aisles in accordance with Section 1014.8.

**1030.9.7 Stairways connecting to stepped aisles.** A stairway that connects a stepped aisle to a cross aisle or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly aisle walking surface requirements of Section 1030.14. Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1030.10.

**1030.9.8 Stairways connecting to vomitories.** A stairway that connects a vomitory to a cross aisle or concourse shall be permitted to comply with the assembly aisle walking surface requirements of Section 1030.14. Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1030.10.

**1030.10 Transitions.** Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles shall comply with either Section 1030.10.1 or 1030.10.2.

**1030.10.1 Transitions to stairways that maintain stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions.** Stepped aisles, transitions and stairways that maintain the stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions shall comply with Section 1030.14 as one exit access component.

**1030.10.2 Transitions to stairways that do not maintain stepped aisle riser and tread dimensions.** Transitions between stairways and stepped aisles having different riser and tread dimensions shall comply with Sections 1030.10.2.1 through 1030.10.3.

**1030.10.2.1 Stairways and stepped aisles in a straight run.** Where stairways and stepped aisles are in a straight run, transitions shall have one of the following:

1. A depth of not less than 22 inches (559 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have greater depth.
2. A depth of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) where the treads on the descending side of the transition have lesser depth.

**1030.10.2.2 Stairways that change direction from stepped aisles.** Transitions where the stairway changes direction from the stepped aisle shall have a minimum depth of 11 inches (280 mm) or the stepped aisle tread depth, whichever is greater, between the stepped aisle and stairway.

**1030.10.3 Transition marking.** A distinctive marking stripe shall be provided at each nosing or leading edge adjacent to the transition. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinctively different from the stepped aisle contrasting marking stripe.

**1030.11 Stepped aisles at vomitories.** Stepped aisles that change direction at vomitories shall comply with Section 1030.11.1. Transitions between a stepped aisle above a vomitory and a stepped aisle to the side of a vomitory shall comply with Section 1030.11.2.

**1030.11.1 Stepped aisles that change direction at vomitories.** Stepped aisle treads where the stepped aisle changes direction at a vomitory shall have a depth of not less than 11 inches (280 mm) or the stepped aisle tread depth, whichever is greater. The height of a stepped aisle tread above a transition at a vomitory shall comply with Section 1030.14.2.2.

**1030.11.2 Stepped aisle transitions at the top of vomitories.** Transitions between the stepped aisle above a vomitory and stepped aisles to the side of a vomitory shall have a depth of not less than 11 inches (280 mm) or the stepped aisle tread depth, whichever is greater.

**1030.12 Construction.** Aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be built of materials consistent with the types permitted for the type of construction of the building.

**Exception:** Wood handrails shall be permitted for all types of construction.

**1030.12.1 Walking surface.** The surface of aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be of slip-resistant materials that are securely attached. The surface for stepped aisles shall comply with Section 1011.7.1.

**1030.12.2 Outdoor conditions.** Outdoor aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles and outdoor approaches to aisles, stepped aisles and ramped aisles shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surface.

**1030.13 Aisle accessways.** Aisle accessways for seating at tables shall comply with Section 1030.13.1. Aisle accessways for seating in rows shall comply with Section 1030.13.2.

**1030.13.1 Seating at tables.** Where seating is located at a table or counter and is adjacent to an aisle or aisle accessway, the measurement of required clear width of the aisle or aisle accessway shall be made to a line 19 inches (483 mm) away from and parallel to the edge of the table or counter. The 19-inch (483 mm) distance shall be measured perpendicular to the side of the table or counter. In the case of other side boundaries for aisles or aisle accessways, the clear width shall be measured to walls, edges of seating and tread edges.

**Exception:** Where tables or counters are served by fixed seats, the width of the aisle or aisle accessway shall be measured from the back of the seat.

**1030.13.1.1 Aisle accessway capacity and width for seating at tables.** Aisle accessways serving arrangements of seating at tables or counters shall comply with the capacity requirements of Section 1005.1 but shall not have less than 12 inches (305 mm) of width plus  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of width for each additional 1 foot (305 mm), or fraction thereof, beyond 12 feet (3658 mm) of aisle accessway length measured from the center of the seat farthest from an aisle.

**Exception:** Portions of an aisle accessway having a length not exceeding 6 feet (1829 mm) and used by a total of not more than four persons.

**1030.13.1.2 Seating at table aisle accessway length.** The length of travel along the aisle accessway shall not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) from any seat to the point where a person has a choice of two or more paths of egress travel to separate exits.

**1030.13.2 Clear width of aisle accessways serving seating in rows.** Where seating rows have 14 or fewer seats, the minimum clear aisle accessway width shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) measured as the clear horizontal distance from the back of the row ahead and the nearest projection of the row behind. Where chairs have automatic or self-rising seats, the measurement shall be made with seats in the raised position. Where any chair in the row

does not have an automatic or self-rising seat, the measurements shall be made with the seat in the down position. For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing shall be determined with the tablet arm in the used position.

**Exception:** For seats with folding tablet arms, row spacing is permitted to be determined with the tablet arm in the stored position where the tablet arm when raised manually to vertical position in one motion automatically returns to the stored position by force of gravity.

**1030.13.2.1 Dual access.** For rows of seating served by aisles or doorways at both ends, there shall be not more than 100 seats per row. The minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) for every additional seat beyond 14 seats where seats have backrests or beyond 21 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

**Exception:** For smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) aisle accessway, beyond which the aisle accessway minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1030.13.2.1.

**1030.13.2.2 Single access.** For rows of seating served by an aisle or doorway at only one end of the row, the minimum clear width of 12 inches (305 mm) between rows shall be increased by 0.6 inch (15.2 mm) for every additional seat beyond seven seats where seats have backrests or beyond 10 where seats are without backrests. The minimum clear width is not required to exceed 22 inches (559 mm).

**Exception:** For smoke-protected or open-air assembly seating, the row length limits for a 12-inch-wide (305 mm) aisle accessway, beyond which the aisle accessway minimum clear width shall be increased, are in Table 1030.13.2.1.

TABLE 1030.13.2.1  
SMOKE-PROTECTED OR OPEN-AIR ASSEMBLY AISLE ACCESSWAYS

NUMBER OF SEATS IN THE SMOKE-PROTECTED OR OPEN-AIR ASSEMBLY SEATING	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF SEATS PER ROW PERMITTED TO HAVE A MINIMUM 12-INCH CLEAR WIDTH AISLE ACCESSWAY			
	Aisle or doorway at both ends of row		Aisle or doorway at one end of row only	
	Seats with backrests	Seats without backrests	Seats with backrests	Seats without backrests
Less than 4,000	14	21	7	10
4,000 to 6,999	15	22	7	10
7,000 to 9,999	16	23	8	11
10,000 to 12,999	17	24	8	11
13,000 to 15,999	18	25	9	12
16,000 to 18,999	19	26	9	12
19,000 to 21,999	20	27	10	13
22,000 and greater	21	28	11	14

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## MEANS OF EGRESS

**1030.14 Assembly aisle walking surfaces.** Ramped aisles shall comply with Sections 1030.14.1 through 1030.14.1.3. Stepped aisles shall comply with Sections 1030.14.2 through 1030.14.2.4.

**1030.14.1 Ramped aisles.** Aisles that are sloped more than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) shall be considered to be a ramped aisle. Ramped aisles that serve as part of an accessible route in accordance with Sections 1009 and 1109.2 shall have a maximum slope of 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope). The slope of other ramped aisles shall not exceed 1 unit vertical in 8 units horizontal (12.5-percent slope).

**1030.14.1.1 Cross slope.** The slope measured perpendicular to the direction of travel of a ramped aisle shall not be steeper than 1 unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**1030.14.1.2 Landings.** Ramped aisles shall have landings in accordance with Sections 1012.6 through 1012.6.5. Landings for ramped aisles shall be permitted to overlap required aisles or cross aisles.

**1030.14.1.3 Edge protection.** Ramped aisles shall have edge protection in accordance with Sections 1012.10 and 1012.10.1.

**Exception:** In assembly spaces with fixed seating, edge protection is not required on the sides of ramped aisles where the ramped aisles provide access to the adjacent seating and aisle accessways.

**1030.14.2 Stepped aisles.** Aisles with a slope exceeding one unit vertical in eight units horizontal (12.5-percent slope) shall consist of a series of risers and treads that extends across the full width of aisles and complies with Sections 1030.14.2.1 through 1030.14.2.4.

**1030.14.2.1 Treads.** Tread depths shall be not less than 11 inches (279 mm) and shall have dimensional uniformity.

**Exception:** The tolerance between adjacent treads shall not exceed  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm).

**1030.14.2.2 Risers.** Where the gradient of stepped aisles is to be the same as the gradient of adjoining seating areas, the riser height shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nor more than 8 inches (203 mm) and shall be uniform within each flight.

### Exceptions:

- Riser height nonuniformity shall be limited to the extent necessitated by changes in the gradient of the adjoining seating area to maintain adequate sightlines. Where nonuniformities exceed  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) between adjacent risers, the exact location of such nonuniformities shall be indicated with a distinctive marking stripe on each tread at the nosing or leading edge adjacent to the nonuniform risers. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and not more than 2 inches (51 mm), wide. The edge marking stripe shall be distinc-

tively different from the contrasting marking stripe.

- Riser heights not exceeding 9 inches (229 mm) shall be permitted where they are necessitated by the slope of the adjacent seating areas to maintain sightlines.

**1030.14.2.2.1 Construction tolerances.** The tolerance between adjacent risers on a stepped aisle that were designed to be equal height shall not exceed  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm). Where the stepped aisle is designed in accordance with Exception 1 of Section 1030.14.2.2, the stepped aisle shall be constructed so that each riser of unequal height, determined in the direction of descent, is not more than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped aisle treads are less than 22 inches (560 mm) in depth and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) in height different from adjacent risers where stepped aisle treads are 22 inches (560 mm) or greater in depth.

**1030.14.2.3 Tread contrasting marking stripe.** A contrasting marking stripe shall be provided on each tread at the nosing or leading edge such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent. Such stripe shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) and not more than 2 inches (51 mm) wide.

**Exception:** The contrasting marking stripe is permitted to be omitted where tread surfaces are such that the location of each tread is readily apparent when viewed in descent.

**1030.14.2.4 Nosing and profile.** Nosing and riser profile shall comply with Sections 1011.5.5 through 1011.5.5.3.

**1030.15 Seat stability.** In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes, the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.

### Exceptions:

- In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with 200 or fewer seats, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
- In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof with seating at tables and without ramped or tiered floors for seating, the seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
- In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes or portions thereof without ramped or tiered floors for seating and with greater than 200 seats, the seats shall be fastened together in groups of not less than three or the seats shall be securely fastened to the floor.
- In a building, room or space used for assembly purposes where flexibility of the seating arrangement is an integral part of the design and function of the space and seating is on tiered levels, not more than 200 seats shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

floor. Plans showing seating, tiers and aisles shall be submitted for approval.

5. Groups of seats within a building, room or space used for assembly purposes separated from other seating by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers with level floors and having not more than 14 seats per group shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.
6. Seats intended for musicians or other performers and separated by railings, guards, partial height walls or similar barriers shall not be required to be fastened to the floor.

**1030.16 Handrails.** Ramped aisles having a slope exceeding one unit vertical in 15 units horizontal (6.7-percent slope) and stepped aisles shall be provided with handrails in compliance with Section 1014 located either at one or both sides of the aisle or within the aisle width. Where stepped aisles have seating on one side and the aisle width is 74 inches (1880 mm) or greater, two handrails are required. Where two handrails are required, one of the handrails shall be within 30 inches (762 mm) horizontally of the stepped aisle.

**Exceptions:**

1. Handrails are not required for ramped aisles with seating on both sides.
2. Handrails are not required where, at the side of the aisle, there is a guard with a top surface that complies with the graspability requirements of handrails in accordance with Section 1014.3.
3. Handrail extensions are not required at the top and bottom of stepped aisles and ramped aisles to permit crossovers within the aisles.

**1030.16.1 Discontinuous mid-aisle handrails.** Where there is seating on both sides of the aisle, the mid-aisle handrails shall be discontinuous. Where a stepped aisle is required to have two handrails, the mid-aisle handrails shall be discontinuous. Gaps or breaks shall be provided at intervals not exceeding five rows to facilitate access to seating and to permit crossing from one side of the aisle to the other. These gaps or breaks shall have a clear width of not less than 22 inches (559 mm) and not greater than 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally, and the mid-aisle handrail shall have rounded terminations or bends.

**1030.16.2 Handrail termination.** Handrails located on the side of stepped aisles shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stepped aisle flight.

**1030.16.3 Mid-aisle termination.** Mid-aisle handrails shall not extend beyond the lowest riser and shall terminate within 18 inches (381 mm), measured horizontally, from the lowest riser. Handrail extensions are not required.

**Exception:** Mid-aisle handrails shall be permitted to extend beyond the lowest riser where the handrail extensions do not obstruct the width of the cross aisle.

**1030.16.4 Rails.** Where mid-aisle handrails are provided in stepped aisles, there shall be an additional rail located approximately 12 inches (305 mm) below the handrail.

The rail shall be adequate in strength and attachment in accordance with Section 1607.9.1.2.

**1030.17 Assembly guards.** Guards adjacent to seating in a building, room or space used for assembly purposes shall be provided where required by Section 1015 and shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1015 except where provided in accordance with Sections 1030.17.1 through 1030.17.4. At bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating, guards must be provided where required by ICC 300 and Section 1030.17.1.

**1030.17.1 Perimeter guards.** Perimeter guards shall be provided where the footboards or walking surface of seating facilities are more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. Where the seatboards are adjacent to the perimeter, guard height shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) high minimum, measured from the seatboard. Where the seats are self-rising, guard height shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) high minimum, measured from the floor surface. Where there is an aisle between the seating and the perimeter, the guard height shall be measured in accordance with Section 1015.3.

**Exceptions:**

1. Guards that impact sightlines shall be permitted to comply with Section 1030.17.3.
2. Bleachers, grandstands and folding and telescopic seating shall not be required to have perimeter guards where the seating is located adjacent to a wall and the space between the wall and the seating is less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**1030.17.2 Cross aisles.** Cross aisles located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below shall have guards in accordance with Section 1015.

Where an elevation change of 30 inches (762 mm) or less occurs between a cross aisle and the adjacent floor or grade below, guards not less than 26 inches (660 mm) above the aisle floor shall be provided.

**Exception:** Where the backs of seats on the front of the cross aisle project 24 inches (610 mm) or more above the adjacent floor of the aisle, a guard need not be provided.

**1030.17.3 Sightline-constrained guard heights.** Unless subject to the requirements of Section 1030.17.4, a fascia or railing system in accordance with the guard requirements of Section 1015 and having a minimum height of 26 inches (660 mm) shall be provided where the floor or footboard elevation is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below and the fascia or railing would otherwise interfere with the sightlines of immediately adjacent seating.

**1030.17.4 Guards at the end of aisles.** A fascia or railing system complying with the guard requirements of Section 1015 shall be provided for the full width of the aisle where the foot of the aisle is more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor or grade below. The fascia or railing shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) high and shall provide not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) measured diagonally between the top of the rail and the nosing of the nearest tread.

**MEANS OF EGRESS**

## **SECTION 1031 EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE**

**1031.1 General.** Emergency escape and rescue openings shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1031.2 Where required.** In addition to the means of egress required by this chapter, emergency escape and rescue openings shall be provided in *Group R* occupancies.

Basements and sleeping rooms below the fourth story above grade plane shall have not fewer than one emergency escape and rescue opening in accordance with this section. Where basements contain one or more sleeping rooms, an emergency escape and rescue opening shall be required in each sleeping room, but shall not be required in adjoining areas of the basement. Such openings shall open directly into a public way or to a yard or court that opens to a public way.

**Exceptions:**

1. *In Groups R-1 and R-2 occupancies constructed of Type I, Type IIA, Type IIIA or Type IV construction equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.*
2. *Group R-2.1 occupancies meeting the requirements for delayed egress in accordance with Section 1010.2.13 may have operable windows that are breakable in sleeping rooms permanently restricted to a maximum of 4-inch open position.*
3. Basements with a ceiling height of less than 80 inches (2032 mm) shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings.
4. Emergency escape and rescue openings are not required from basements or sleeping rooms that have an exit door or exit access door that opens directly into a public way or to a yard, court or exterior egress balcony that opens to a public way.
5. Basements without habitable spaces and having not more than 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) in floor area shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings.
6. Storm shelters are not required to comply with this section where the shelter is constructed in accordance with ICC 500.
7. Within individual dwelling and sleeping units in Groups R-2 and R-3, where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, 903.3.1.2 or 903.3.1.3, sleeping rooms in basements shall not be required to have emergency escape and rescue openings provided that the basement has one of the following:
  - 7.1. One means of egress and one emergency escape and rescue opening.
  - 7.2. Two means of egress.
8. *In Group R-2.2 occupancies a certified fire escape is acceptable as a secondary means of egress for existing buildings for this section of the code.*

**1031.2.1 Operational constraints and opening control devices.** Emergency escape and rescue openings and any exit doors shall be maintained free of any obstructions other than those allowed by this section and shall be operational from inside the room without the use of keys or tools. Window-opening control devices complying with ASTM F2090 shall be permitted for use on windows serving as a required emergency escape and rescue opening. The release mechanism shall be maintained operable at all times.

*Such bars, grills, grates or any similar devices shall be equipped with an approved exterior release device for use by the fire department only when required by the authority having jurisdiction.*

*Where security bars (burglar bars) are installed on emergency egress and rescue windows or doors, on or after July 1, 2000, such devices shall comply with California Building Standards Code, Part 12, Chapter 12-3 and other applicable provisions of Part 2.*

**Exception:** *Group R-1 occupancies provided with a monitored fire sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.2.8 and designed in accordance with NFPA 13 may have openable windows permanently restricted to a maximum 4-inch (102 mm) open position.*

**1031.2.2 Maintenance.** Fire escape stairways and balconies shall be kept clear and unobstructed at all times and shall be maintained in good working order.

**1031.2.3 Examination.** Fire escape stairways and balconies shall be examined for structural adequacy and safety by a registered design professional or other person acceptable to the fire code official every 5 years. The examination shall determine whether the fire escape stairways and balconies can support the dead load plus a live load of not less than 100 pounds per square foot (4.78 kN/m). An inspection report shall be submitted to the fire code official after such examination.

**1031.3 Emergency escape and rescue openings.** Emergency escape and rescue openings shall comply with Sections 1031.3.1 through 1031.3.3.

**1031.3.1 Minimum size.** Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5.7 square feet ( $0.53 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** The minimum net clear opening for grade-floor emergency escape and rescue openings shall be 5 square feet ( $0.46 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1031.3.2 Minimum dimensions.** The minimum net clear opening height dimension shall be 24 inches (610 mm). The minimum net clear opening width dimension shall be 20 inches (508 mm). The net clear opening dimensions shall be the result of normal operation of the opening.

**1031.3.3 Maximum height from floor.** Emergency escape and rescue openings shall have the bottom of the clear opening not greater than 44 inches (1118 mm) measured from the floor.

## **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

**1031.4 Emergency escape and rescue doors.** Where a door is provided as the required emergency escape and rescue opening, it shall be a swinging door or a sliding door.

**1031.5 Area wells.** An emergency escape and rescue opening with the bottom of the clear opening below the adjacent grade shall be provided with an area well in accordance with Sections 1031.5.1 through 1031.5.3.

**1031.5.1 Minimum size.** The minimum horizontal area of the area well shall be 9 square feet ( $0.84 \text{ m}^2$ ), with a horizontal projection and width of not less than 36 inches (914 mm). The area well shall allow the emergency escape and rescue opening to be fully opened.

**Exception:** The ladder or steps required by Section 1031.5.2 shall be permitted to encroach not more than 6 inches (152 mm) into the required dimensions of the area well.

**1031.5.2 Ladders or steps.** Area wells with a vertical depth of more than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be equipped with an approved permanently affixed ladder or steps. The ladder or steps shall not be obstructed by the emergency escape and rescue opening when the window or door is in the open position. Ladders or steps required by this section shall not be required to comply with Section 1011.

**1031.5.2.1 Ladders.** Ladders or rungs shall have an inside width of at least 12 inches (305 mm), shall project at least 3 inches (76 mm) from the wall and shall be spaced not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center (o.c.) vertically for the full height of the area well.

**1031.5.2.2 Steps.** Steps shall have an inside width of not less than 12 inches (305 mm), shall have treads greater than 5 inches (127 mm) in depth and a riser height not greater than 18 inches (457 mm) for the full height of the area well.

**1031.5.3 Drainage.** Area wells shall be designed for proper drainage by connecting to the building's foundation drainage system required by Section 1805.

**Exception:** A drainage system for area wells is not required where the foundation is on well-drained soil or sand-gravel mixture soils in accordance with the United Soil Classification System, Group I Soils, in accordance with Section 1803.5.1.

**1031.6 Bars, grilles, covers and screens.** Where bars, grilles, covers, screens or similar devices are placed over emergency escape and rescue openings or area wells that serve such openings, the minimum net clear opening size shall comply with Sections 1031.3 and 1031.5. Such devices shall be releasable or removable from the inside without the use of a key, tool or force greater than that which is required for normal operation of the emergency escape and rescue opening.



## CHAPTER 11

# *RESERVED*



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 11A – HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter						X																
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X															
Chapter / Section																						
1150A.1							X															

&lt;



# CHAPTER 11A

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**NOTE 1:** Covered multifamily dwellings may be subject to the requirements of more than one jurisdiction or law, which would require compliance with each law. Where federal, state or local laws differ, the more stringent requirements apply. For additional information, see the Joint Statement of the Department of Housing and Urban Development and the Department of Justice issued April 30, 2013 ([www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov)).

**NOTE 2:** Dwelling units constructed as senior citizen housing may also be subject to the Unruh Civil Rights Act. Refer to Division I, Part 2 of the California Civil Code. For additional information regarding application, interpretation and enforcement, contact the California Department of Fair Employment and Housing.

### Division I – APPLICATION, GENERAL PROVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS

#### Division I Table of Contents

- Section 1101A Application
- Section 1102A Building Accessibility
- Section 1103A Design and Construction
- Section 1104A Covered Multifamily Dwellings
- Section 1105A Garages, Carports and Parking Facilities
- Section 1106A Site and Building Characteristics
- Section 1107A Definitions

### SECTION 1101A APPLICATION

**1101A.1 Scope.** The application and authority of this chapter are identified and referenced in Sections 1.8.2.1.2 and 1102A for the Department of Housing and Community Development. Applicable sections are identified in the Matrix Adoption Tables of this code under the abbreviation HCD 1-AC. The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the following:

1. All newly-constructed covered multifamily dwellings.
2. New common use areas serving existing covered multifamily dwellings.
3. Additions to existing buildings, where the addition alone meets the definition of a covered multifamily dwelling.
4. New common-use areas serving new covered multifamily dwellings.
5. Where any portion of a building's exterior is preserved, but the interior of the building is removed, including all structural portions of floors and ceilings, the building is considered a new building for determining the application of this chapter.

Chapter 11A generally does not apply to public accommodations such as hotels and motels and public housing. Public use areas, public accommodations and public housing as defined in Chapter 2 of this code are subject to provisions of the Division of the State Architect (DSA-AC) in Chapter 11B, and are referenced in Section 1.9.1.

Newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings, which can also be defined as public housing, shall be subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A and Chapter 11B.

### SECTION 1102A BUILDING ACCESSIBILITY

**1102A.1 Where required.** Buildings or portions of buildings and facilities within the scope of this chapter shall be accessible to persons with disabilities. Each building on a building site shall be considered separately when determining the requirements contained in this chapter, except when calculating the number of units which must comply with Section 1102A.3.1. Dwelling units within a single structure separated by firewalls do not constitute separate buildings.

Newly-constructed covered multifamily dwellings as defined in this chapter, include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Apartment buildings with 3 or more dwelling units including timeshare apartments not considered a place of public accommodation or transient lodging as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 19955 (a), and Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.
2. Condominiums with 4 or more dwelling units including timeshare condominiums not considered a place of public accommodation or transient lodging as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 19955 (a), and Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.
3. Lodging houses, as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, used as a residence with more than 3 but not more than 5 guest rooms.
4. Congregate residences, as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code, with 3 or more sleeping units.
5. Dwellings with 3 or more efficiency units, as defined in Chapter 2 of this code, or Section 17958.1 of the California Health and Safety Code.
6. Shelters for homeless persons, not otherwise subject to the disabled access provisions of the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance (DSA-AC).
7. Dormitories, as defined in Chapter 2 of this code, with 3 or more guest rooms as defined in Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.
8. Timeshare dwellings with 3 or more units, not considered a place of public accommodations or transient lodging as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 19955 (a), and Chapter 2 of the California Building Code.
9. Other Group R occupancies in covered multifamily dwellings which are regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal. See Section 1.11.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**10. Public housing as defined in Chapter 2 of this code is subject to provisions of the Division of the State Architect (DSA-AC) in Chapter 11B. Newly constructed covered multifamily dwellings, which can also be defined as public housing, shall be subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A and Chapter 11B.**

**1102A.2 Existing buildings.** The building standards contained in this chapter do not apply to the alteration, repair, rehabilitation or maintenance of multifamily dwellings constructed for first occupancy on or before March 13, 1991.

Covered multifamily dwellings shall be maintained in compliance with the accessibility standards in effect at the time of construction. Apartments constructed prior to March 13, 1991 shall be maintained in compliance with the accessibility standards in effect at the time of construction.

Additions shall be subject to the requirements of this chapter, provided the addition, when considered alone, meets the definition of a covered multifamily dwelling, as defined in Chapter 2. New common use spaces serving existing covered multifamily dwellings shall be subject to the requirements of this chapter.

**Note:** For all existing public use areas, public accommodations and public housing, see Chapter 11B for provisions of the Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance (DSA-AC).

### 1102A.3 Multistory dwellings.

**1102A.3.1 Multistory apartment or condominium dwellings in buildings with no elevator.** This section shall apply to multistory dwelling units on the ground floor of buildings without elevators for which an application for a construction permit is submitted on or after July 1, 2005.

**Exception:** Carriage units as defined in Chapter 2 and regulated only by the Department of Housing and Community Development as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.2.

At least 10 percent but not less than one of the multistory dwellings in apartment buildings with 3 or more dwelling units and/or condominiums with 4 or more dwelling units shall comply with the following:

1. The primary entry to the dwelling unit shall be on an accessible route unless exempted by site impracticality tests in Section 1150A.
2. At least one powder room or bathroom shall be located on the primary entry level, served by an accessible route and shall comply with the provisions in Division IV.
3. All rooms or spaces located on the primary entry level shall be served by an accessible route and shall comply with the provisions in Division IV. Rooms and spaces located on the primary entry level and subject to this chapter may include but are not limited to kitchens, powder rooms, bathrooms, living rooms, bedrooms or hallways.
4. Common use areas covered by this section shall be accessible as required by this chapter. Public use areas as defined in Chapter 2 of this code are sub-

ject to provisions of the Division of the State Architect (DSA-AC) and are referenced in Section 1.9.1.1.

The minimum number of multifamily dwelling units which must comply with this section shall be calculated using the total number of all multistory dwelling units in buildings on a site which are subject to this section. Any fraction thereof shall be rounded to the next highest whole number.

**1102A.3.2 Multistory dwelling units in buildings with one or more elevators.** Multistory dwelling units contained in buildings with elevators shall comply with this section. For multistory dwelling units in buildings with elevators, the story of the unit that is served by the building elevator is considered a ground floor and the primary entry floor to the unit and shall comply with the following:

1. At least 1 powder room or bathroom shall be located on the primary entry level.
2. At least 1 kitchen shall be located on the primary entry level.
3. All rooms or spaces located on the primary entry level shall be served by an accessible route and shall comply with Division IV.

**1102A.4 Temporary restrictions.** During periods of partial or restricted use of a building or facility, the entrances used for primary access shall be accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.

## SECTION 1103A DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

**1103A.1 General.** When buildings are required to be accessible, they shall be designed and constructed as provided in this chapter.

## SECTION 1104A COVERED MULTIFAMILY DWELLINGS

**1104A.1 General.** All ground-floor dwelling units in nonelevator buildings shall be adaptable and on an accessible route, unless an accessible route is not required as determined by site impracticality provisions in Section 1150A. For buildings with elevators, see Section 1106A.

Multistory dwelling units shall comply with Section 1102A.3.

**1104A.2 Ground floors above grade.** Where the first floor containing dwelling units in a building is above grade, all units on that floor shall be served by an accessible route. This floor will be considered a ground floor and all dwelling units are considered covered multifamily dwelling units.

**Exception:** Carriage units as defined in Chapter 2 and regulated only by the Department of Housing and Community Development as referenced in Section 1.8.2.1.2.

Multistory dwelling units shall comply with Section 1102A.3.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**SECTION 1105A****GARAGES, CARPORTS AND PARKING FACILITIES**

**1105A.1 General.** Garages, carports and other parking facilities, which are accessory to covered multifamily dwelling units, shall be accessible as required in Section 1109A.

**SECTION 1106A****SITE AND BUILDING CHARACTERISTICS**

**1106A.1 General.** Covered multifamily dwellings with elevators shall be designed and constructed to provide at least one accessible entrance on an accessible route, regardless of terrain or unusual characteristics of the site. Covered multifamily dwellings without elevators shall be designed and constructed to provide at least one accessible entrance on an accessible route unless terrain or unusual characteristics of the site prevent an accessible route based on the conditions listed below:

1. **Accessible entrance.** Regardless of site considerations described in Section 1150A, an accessible entrance on an accessible route is required when there is an elevator connecting the parking area with the dwelling units on a ground floor. (In this case, those dwelling units on the ground floor served by an elevator and at least one of each type of public- and common-use areas, would be subject to these requirements.)
2. **Elevator building.** When a building elevator or elevators are provided as a means of access to dwelling units other than dwelling units on a ground floor (see Section 1104A.2), the building is an elevator building. All dwelling units become covered multifamily dwellings in

that building. The elevator in that building must provide accessibility to all dwelling units in the building, regardless of the slope of the natural terrain. For multistory dwelling units in buildings with one or more elevators, see Section 1102A.3.2.

**Note:** Where a building elevator is provided only as means of creating an accessible route to covered multifamily dwelling units on a ground floor, the building is not considered to be an elevator building, only dwelling units located on the ground floor shall be required to comply with this chapter.

3. **Elevated walkway.** When an elevated walkway is planned between a building entrance and a vehicular or pedestrian arrival point and the planned walkway has a slope no greater than 10 percent (1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal), the floor being served by the elevated walkway becomes a ground floor and accessibility to all dwellings on that ground floor is required.

**Note:** Since the planned walkway meets the 10 percent slope criterion, it is required to provide an accessible route to the entrance and the slope of the walkway must be reduced to 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33 percent slope) maximum.

**1106A.2 Site impracticality.** For tests to determine site impracticality due to terrain considerations in nonelevator buildings, see Section 1150A.

**SECTION 1107A**  
**DEFINITIONS**

All definitions are located in Chapter 2.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

### **Division II – EXTERIOR FACILITIES**

#### **Division II Table of Contents**

- Section 1108A General Requirements for Accessible Parking and Exterior Routes of Travel
- Section 1109A Parking Facilities
- Section 1110A Exterior Accessible Routes
- Section 1111A Changes in Level on Accessible Routes
- Section 1112A Curb Ramps on Accessible Routes
- Section 1113A Walks and Sidewalks on Accessible Routes
- Section 1114A Exterior Ramps and Landings on Accessible Routes
- Section 1115A Exterior Stairways
- Section 1116A Hazards on Accessible Routes

#### **SECTION 1108A**

#### **GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESSIBLE PARKING AND EXTERIOR ROUTES OF TRAVEL**

**Note:** In addition to provisions of this division, exterior routes of travel that provide access to, or egress from, buildings for persons with disabilities shall also comply with Chapter 10.

#### **SECTION 1109A**

#### **PARKING FACILITIES**

**1109A.1 Accessible parking required.** Each parking facility provided for covered multifamily dwellings and facilities (e.g., swimming pools, club houses, recreation areas and laundry rooms) that serve covered multifamily dwellings shall provide accessible parking as required by this section.

**1109A.2 Parking facilities.** Parking facilities shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Garages
2. Private garages
3. Carports
4. Off-street parking (parking lots/spaces)

**1109A.2.1 Private garages.** Private garages accessory to covered multifamily dwelling units, shall be accessible as required in Section 1109A. Private garages include individual garages and multiple individual garages grouped together.

**Exception:** A private garage attached to and directly serving a single covered multifamily dwelling unit providing at least one of the following options:

1. A door leading directly from the covered dwelling unit, which immediately enters the garage. The door shall comply on both sides with Sections 1132A.3 through 1132A.9.
2. An accessible route of travel from the covered dwelling unit to an exterior door entering the garage. See Section 1132A.1 for requirements at both exit doors.
3. An accessible route of travel from the dwelling unit's primary entry door to the vehicular

entrance at the garage. See Section 1132A.1 for requirements at the primary entry door.

**1109A.3 Required accessible parking spaces.** Accessible parking spaces shall be provided at a minimum rate of 2 percent of the covered multifamily dwelling units. At least one space of each type of parking facility shall be made accessible even if the total number exceeds 2 percent.

**1109A.4 Assigned accessible parking spaces.** When assigned parking spaces are provided for a resident or a group of residents, at least 2 percent of the assigned parking spaces serving covered multifamily dwelling units shall be accessible in each type of parking facility. At least one space of each type of parking facility shall be made accessible even if the total number exceeds 2 percent. When assigned parking is provided, signage as required by Section 1109A.8.8 shall not be required.

**1109A.5 Unassigned and visitor parking spaces.** When parking is provided for covered multifamily dwellings and is not assigned to a resident or a group of residents at least 5 percent of the parking spaces shall be accessible and provide access to grade-level entrances of covered multifamily dwellings and facilities (e.g., swimming pools, club houses, recreation areas and laundry rooms) that serve covered multifamily dwellings. Accessible parking spaces shall be provided with signage as required by Section 1109A.8.8. Such signage shall not be blocked from view by a vehicle parked in the space.

**1109A.6 Requests for accessible parking spaces.** When assigned parking is provided, designated accessible parking for the dwelling unit shall be provided on request of residents with disabilities on the same terms and with the full range of choices (e.g., off-street parking, carport or garage) that are available for other residents.

**1109A.7 Location of accessible parking spaces.** The location of accessible parking spaces shall comply with the following:

1. Accessible parking spaces shall be located on the shortest possible accessible route to an accessible building, or covered multifamily dwelling unit entrance. All van accessible spaces may be grouped on one level of a multilevel parking facility.
2. When parking facilities are located adjacent to a building with multiple accessible entrances, accessible parking spaces shall be dispersed and located near the accessible building entrances.
3. When practical, the accessible route shall not cross lanes for vehicular traffic. When crossing vehicle traffic lanes is necessary, the accessible route shall be designated and marked as a crosswalk.
4. Parking facilities that do not serve a particular building shall have accessible parking spaces located on the shortest possible accessible route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility.
5. Accessible parking spaces shall be located so that persons with disabilities are not compelled to wheel or walk behind parked cars other than their own.

**Exception:** When the enforcement agency determines that compliance with this section or providing equivalent facilitation would create an unreasonable hardship, parking spaces may be provided

#### **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

which would require a person with physical disabilities to wheel or walk behind other than accessible parking spaces.

**1109A.8 Design and construction.** Accessible parking required by this section shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1109A.

**1109A.8.1 Vertical clearances.** All entrances, exits and vehicular passageways to and from required accessible parking spaces within parking facilities, shall have a minimum vertical clearance of 8 feet 2 inches (2489 mm) from the floor to the lowest projection of the ceiling. Reflective warning signs complying with Section 1143A for character height shall be installed at transitions from the 8 feet 2 inch ceiling to lower ceiling heights in vehicular passageways in the same parking level.

**1109A.8.2 Arrangement of parking spaces.** Parking spaces shall be arranged to comply with the following:

1. In each parking area, a bumper or curb shall be provided and located to prevent encroachment of cars over the required width of walkways.
2. Ramps, including curb ramps, shall not encroach into any accessible parking space or the adjacent loading and unloading access aisle.

**1109A.8.3 Slope of accessible parking spaces and access aisles.** Surface slopes of accessible parking spaces and access aisles shall be the minimum possible and shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) per foot (2.083-percent gradient) in any direction.

**1109A.8.4 Accessible parking space size.** Accessible parking spaces shall comply with Sections 1109A.8.5 and 1109A.8.6.

**1109A.8.5 Accessible single parking space.** Where accessible single spaces are provided, they shall be constructed in accordance with the following:

1. Single spaces shall be 14 feet (4267 mm) wide minimum, and shall provide a 9-foot (2743 mm) wide parking area and a 5-foot (1524 mm) wide loading and unloading access aisle. Access aisles shall be permitted to be located on either side of the vehicle, and shall extend the full required length of the parking spaces they serve.
2. When more than one space is provided, two 9-foot (2743 mm) wide parking spaces may be lined on each side of a 5-foot (1524 mm) wide loading and unloading access aisle.
3. The minimum length of each parking space shall be 18 feet (5486 mm).
4. The loading and unloading access aisle shall be marked by a border painted blue. Within the blue border, hatched lines a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) on center shall be painted a color contrasting with the parking surface, preferably blue or white. The words "NO PARKING" shall be painted on the ground within each 5-foot (1524 mm) wide loading and unloading access aisle. This notice shall be painted in white letters no less than 12 inches (305 mm) high and located so that it is visible from the adjacent vehicular way.

mm) high and located so that it is visible from the adjacent vehicular way.

**Note:** See Figures 11A-2A, 11A-2B and 11A-2C.

**1109A.8.6 Van accessible parking space.** One in every eight accessible spaces, but not less than one, shall be van accessible and shall be constructed in accordance with the following:

1. Each van-accessible parking space shall be 17 feet (5181 mm) wide minimum, and shall provide either of the following:
  - 1.1. A 12-foot (3658 mm) wide minimum parking area and a 5-foot (1524 mm) wide minimum loading and unloading access aisle.
  - 1.2. A 9-foot (2743 mm) wide minimum parking area and an 8-foot (2438 mm) wide minimum loading and unloading access aisle.

Access aisles shall be located on the passenger side of the vehicle with the vehicle parked in the forward position, and shall extend the full required length of the parking spaces they serve.

2. The minimum length of each space shall be 18 feet (5486 mm).
3. Each space shall be designated "van accessible" as required by Section 1109A.8.8.
4. All van accessible spaces may be grouped on one level of a multilevel parking facility.
5. The loading and unloading access aisle shall be marked by a border painted blue. Within the blue border, hatched lines a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) on center shall be painted a color contrasting with the parking surface, preferably blue or white. The words "NO PARKING" shall be painted on the ground within each loading and unloading access aisle. This notice shall be painted in white letters no less than 12 inches (305 mm) high and located so that it is visible from the adjacent vehicular way.

**Note:** See Figures 11A-2A, 11A-2B and 11A-2C.

**1109A.8.7 Adjacent parking.** Parking spaces adjacent to accessible parking spaces shall not be considered as loading and unloading access aisles.

**1109A.8.8 Identification.** Each accessible parking space shall be identified with signage and surface marking in accordance with Sections 1109A.8.8.1 and 1109A.8.8.2.

**1109A.8.8.1 Parking signage.** Each accessible parking space reserved for persons with disabilities shall be identified by a reflective sign consisting of the "International Symbol of Accessibility" complying with Section 1143A.8. The sign shall not be smaller than 70 square inches (4516 mm<sup>2</sup>) in area, and shall be posted 60 inches minimum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured to the bottom of the sign. Signs located on accessible routes shall be posted at a minimum height of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finish floor or ground surface of the accessible route, measured to the bottom of the sign.

*Signs identifying accessible parking spaces shall be visible from each parking space they serve, and shall be permanently posted immediately adjacent to the parking space or within the projected parking space width at the head end of the parking space. Signs may also be permanently posted on a wall at the interior end of the parking space.*

*Van accessible spaces shall comply with Section 1109A.8.6 and shall have an additional sign or additional language stating "Van Accessible" below the symbol of accessibility.*

*An additional sign shall also be posted in a conspicuous place at each entrance to off-street parking facilities or immediately adjacent to and visible from each accessible stall or space. The sign shall not be less than 17 inches (432 mm) by 22 inches (559 mm) in size with lettering not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in height, and shall clearly and conspicuously state the following:*

*"Unauthorized vehicles parked in designated accessible spaces not displaying distinguishing placards or special license plates issued for persons with disabilities will be towed away at the owner's expense. Towed vehicles may be reclaimed at \_\_\_\_\_ or by telephoning \_\_\_\_\_."*

*Blank spaces are to be filled in with appropriate information as a permanent part of the sign.*

**1109A.8.8.2 Parking space marking.** In addition to the signage requirements, each accessible parking space shall have a surface identification complying with either of the following:

1. *The parking space shall be outlined or painted blue, and shall be marked with the "International Symbol of Accessibility" in white or a suitable contrasting color. The "International Symbol of Accessibility" shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) high minimum, with the centerline 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from the centerline of the parking space, its sides parallel to the length of the parking space, and its lower side aligned with the end of the parking space.*
2. *The parking space shall be marked with the "International Symbol of Accessibility", in white on a blue background, 36 inches (914 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) high minimum in size. The centerline of the "International Symbol of Accessibility" shall be 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from the centerline of the parking space, its sides shall be parallel to the length of the parking space, and its lower side shall be aligned with the end of the parking space length.*

**Note:** See Figures 11A-2A, 11A-2B and 11A-2C.

## **SECTION 1110A EXTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTES**

**1110A.1 General.** When a building or portion of a building is required to be accessible or adaptable, an accessible route

*shall be provided to all portions of the building, accessible building entrances and between the building and the public way. The accessible route shall be the most practical direct route and to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public and building residents.*

*Exterior accessible routes shall be provided as follows:*

1. *At least one accessible route within the boundary of the site shall be provided from public transportation stops, accessible parking and accessible passenger loading and unloading zones, and public streets or sidewalks to the accessible building entrance they serve. Where more than one route of travel is provided, all routes shall be accessible.*
2. *At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, facilities, elements and spaces that are on the same site. Accessible routes shall be provided between accessible buildings and accessible site facilities when more than one building or facility is located on a site.*
3. *At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces, elements and covered multifamily dwelling units.*
4. *An accessible route shall connect at least one accessible entrance of each covered multifamily dwelling unit with exterior spaces and facilities that serve the dwelling unit.*
5. *Where elevators are provided for vertical access, all elevators shall be accessible. See Section 1124A.*

**Note:** If the slope of the finished grade between covered multifamily dwellings and site arrival points, public use or common use facilities (including parking) exceeds 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope), or where other physical barriers (natural or artificial) or legal restrictions, all of which are outside the control of the owner, prevent the installation of an accessible route, an acceptable alternative is to provide access by a vehicular route, provided:

1. *There is accessible parking on an accessible route for at least 2 percent of the covered multifamily dwelling units, and*
2. *Necessary site provisions such as parking spaces and curb ramps are provided at the public use or common use facility.*

**1110A.2 Signs.** At every primary public entrance and at every major junction where the accessible route diverges from the circulation path along or leading to an accessible route, entrance or facility, there shall be a sign displaying the "International Symbol of Accessibility." Signs shall indicate the direction to accessible building entrances and facilities and shall comply with the requirements found in Section 1143A.

**1110A.3 Floor and ground surfaces.** Floor and ground surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant. If carpet or carpet tile is used in a common-use area or public-use area on a ground or floor surface, it shall have firm backing or no backing. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile or level cut/uncut pile texture. The maximum pile height shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Exposed

edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with Section 1111A requirements for changes in level.

**1110A.3.1 Recessed doormats.** Recessed doormats shall be adequately anchored to prevent interference with wheelchair traffic.

**1110A.4 Exterior accessible routes over 200 feet.** Exterior accessible routes that exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) in length shall comply with Section 1138A.1.2. (See Figure 11A-1L)

## SECTION 1111A CHANGES IN LEVEL ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1111A.1 Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.** Abrupt changes in level along any accessible route shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). When changes in level do occur, they shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope). Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) may be vertical.

**1111A.2 Changes greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.** Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be made by means of a sloped surface not greater than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), or a curb ramp, ramp, elevator or platform (wheelchair) lift. Stairs shall not be part of an accessible route. When stairs are located along or adjacent to an accessible route they shall comply with Section 1115A for exterior stairways.

## SECTION 1112A CURB RAMPS ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1112A.1 General.** Curb ramps within the boundary of the site shall be constructed at each corner of street intersections and where a pedestrian way crosses a curb. The preferred and recommended location for curb ramps is in the center of the crosswalk of each street corner. Where it is necessary to locate a curb ramp in the center of the curb return, the street surfaces shall be marked to identify pedestrian crosswalks, and the lower end of the curb ramp shall terminate within such crosswalk areas. Curb ramps do not require handrails.

**1112A.2 Obstructions.** Curb ramps shall be located or protected to prevent obstruction by parked cars. Built-up curb ramps shall be located so that they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes, parking spaces or the adjacent loading and unloading access aisle.

**1112A.3 Width of curb ramps.** Curb ramps shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width.

**1112A.4 Diagonal curb ramps.** If diagonal (or corner-type) curb ramps have returned curbs or other well-defined edges, such edges shall be parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have a 48-inch (1219 mm) minimum clear space as shown in Figures 11A-3A through 11A-3L. If diagonal curb ramps are provided at marked crossings, the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear space shall be within the markings (see Figures 11A-3A through 11A-3L). If diagonal curb ramps have flared sides, they shall also have at least a 24-inch-long (610 mm) segment of straight

curb located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing. See Figures 11A-3A through 11A-3L.

**1112A.5 Slope of curb ramps.** The slope of curb ramps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope) and shall lie, generally, in a single sloped plane. Transitions from ramps to walks, gutters or streets shall be flush and free of abrupt changes. Maximum slopes of adjoining gutters, road surface immediately adjacent to the curb ramp, or accessible route shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the top and bottom of the curb ramp.

If a curb ramp is located where pedestrians must walk across the ramp, then it shall have flared sides; the maximum slope of the flare shall be 1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Curb ramps with returned curbs may be used where pedestrians would not normally walk across the ramp. See Figures 11A-3A through 11A-3L.

**1112A.6 Level landing.** A level landing 48 inches (1219 mm) deep shall be provided at the upper end of each curb ramp over its full width to permit safe egress from the ramp surface, or the slope of the fanned or flared sides of the curb ramp, shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope).

**1112A.7 Finish.** The surface of each curb ramp and its flared sides shall be stable, firm and slip-resistant and shall be of contrasting finish from that of the adjacent sidewalk.

**1112A.8 Border.** All curb ramps shall have a grooved border 12 inches (305 mm) wide at the level surface of the sidewalk along the top and each side approximately  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm) on center. All curb ramps constructed between the face of the curb and the street shall have a grooved border at the level surface of the sidewalk. See Figures 11A-3A through 11A-3K.

**1112A.9 Detectable warnings.** See Chapter 11B.

## SECTION 1113A WALKS AND SIDEWALKS ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1113A.1 Width and continuous surface.** Walks and sidewalks subject to this chapter shall have a continuous common surface, not interrupted by steps or by abrupt changes in level exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). (See Section 1111A).

Walking surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 1110A.3.

**1113A.1.1 Width.** Walks and sidewalks shall be a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) in width, except that walks serving an individual dwelling unit in covered multifamily buildings may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width except at doors.

**1113A.1.2 Surface cross slopes.** Surface cross slopes shall not exceed 1 unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2.083-percent slope).

**1113A.2 Walks with continuous gradients.** All walks on an accessible route with continuous gradients shall have level areas at least 60 inches (1524 mm) in length at intervals of at least every 400 feet (122 m).

**1113A.3 Five percent gradient.** When the slope in the direction of travel of any walk on an accessible route exceeds 1

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), it shall comply with the ramp provisions of Section 1114A.

**1113A.4 Level areas.** Walks on an accessible route shall be provided with a level area at each side of a door or gate. Level areas shall comply with the applicable requirements for maneuvering clearances in Section 1126A.3.

**1113A.5 Gratings.** Walks, sidewalks and pedestrian ways on an accessible route shall be free of gratings whenever possible. Gratings located in the surface of any of these areas, grid openings in gratings shall be limited to  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in the direction of traffic. Elongated openings in gratings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of traffic.

### Exceptions:

1. Where the enforcement agency determines that compliance with this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception may be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided.
2. This section shall not apply in those conditions where, due to legal or physical constraints, all or portions of the site of the project will not allow compliance with these building standards or equivalent facilitation on all or portions of one site without creating an unreasonable hardship.

**1113A.6 Handrails.** Handrails provided along walking surfaces with running slopes not steeper than one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) shall comply with Section 1114A.6.

## SECTION 1114A EXTERIOR RAMPS AND LANDINGS ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1114A.1 Width.** The clear width of ramps shall be consistent with the requirements in Chapter 10 of this code, but in no case shall be less than 48 inches (1219 mm).

Handrails may project into the required clear width of the ramp at each side  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) maximum at the handrail height. Curbs, wheel guides and/or appurtenances shall not project into the required clear width of ramps.

**Exception:** The clear width of ramps serving accessible entrances to covered multifamily dwellings with an occupant load of 10 or less may be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum between handrails.

**Note:** See Section 1114A.6.2.4 for handrail projections.

**1114A.2 Slope.** The maximum slope of ramps on an accessible route shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope). Transitions from ramps to walks, gutters or streets shall be flush and free of abrupt changes.

**Exception:** Ramps serving decks, patios or balconies as specified in Section 1132A.4.

**1114A.2.1 Cross slope.** The cross slope of ramp surfaces shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2.083-percent slope).

**1114A.3 Outdoor ramps.** Outdoor ramps, ramp landings and their approaches shall be designed so that water will not accumulate on the walking surface.

**1114A.4 Landings.** Ramp landings shall be level and comply with this section.

**1114A.4.1 Location of landings.** Landings shall be provided at the top and bottom of each ramp. Intermediate landings shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) of vertical rise and at each change of direction. Landings are not considered in determining the maximum horizontal distance of each ramp.

**Note:** Examples of ramp dimensions are:

SLOPE (Grading %)	MAXIMUM RISE (Inches)	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL PROJECTION (Feet)
	(x 25.4 for mm)	(x 304.8 for mm)
1:12 (8.33%)	30	30
1:15 (6.67%)	30	37.5
1:16 (6.25%)	30	40
1:20 (5.00%)	30	50

**1114A.4.2 Size of top landings.** Top landings shall not be less than 60 inches (1524 mm) wide. Top landings shall have a minimum length of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of the ramp run. See Section 1126A.3 for maneuvering clearances at doors.

**1114A.4.3 Size of bottom and intermediate landings.** The minimum width of bottom and intermediate landings shall not be less than the width of the ramp.

Intermediate landings shall have a length in the direction of ramp run of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm). Bottom landings shall have a length in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm).

**1114A.4.4 Encroachment of doors.** Doors in any position shall not reduce the minimum dimension of the landing to less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and shall not reduce the required width by more than 3 inches (76.2 mm) when fully open. (See Figure 11A-6D.)

**1114A.4.5 Strike edge extension.** The width of the landing shall comply with Section 1126A.3 for strike edge extension and maneuvering clearance at doors.

Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearance required by Section 1126A.3 shall be permitted to overlap the required landing area.

**1114A.4.6 Change of direction.** Intermediate landings at a change of direction shall be sized to provide 60 inches turning space complying with Section 1138A.1.3. Intermediate landings at a change of direction in excess of 30 degrees shall have a length in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm). (See Figures 11A-6C and 11A-6D.)

**1114A.5 Ramp height.** Ramps more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent floor or ground and open on one or both sides shall be provided with guardrails as required by Section 1013. Guardrails shall be continuous from the top of the ramp to the bottom of the ramp.

**1114A.6 Ramp handrails.**

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**1114A.6.1 Where required.** Handrails shall be provided at each side of ramps when the slope exceeds 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

**Exceptions:**

1. Curb ramps.
2. Ramps that serve an individual dwelling unit may have one handrail, except that ramps open on one or both sides shall have handrails provided on the open side or sides.
3. Ramps at exterior door landings with less than 6 inches (152 mm) rise or less than 72 inches (1829 mm) in length.

**1114A.6.2 Handrail configuration.**

**1114A.6.2.1 Handrail heights.** The top of handrails shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the ramp surface.

**1114A.6.2.2 Handrail continuity.** Handrails on all ramps shall be continuous within the full length of each ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg ramps shall be continuous between ramp runs.

**1114A.6.2.3 Handrail extensions.** Handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally above landings, beyond the top and bottom of the ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run. Handrail extensions shall be in the same direction as the ramp runs. (See Figure 11A-5A.)

**1114A.6.2.4 Handrail projections.** Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38.1 mm) minimum between the wall and the handrail.

Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76.2 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. (See Figure 11A-6B.)

**1114A.6.2.5 Handrail gripping surfaces.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length, and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. When provided, horizontal projections shall occur  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface. The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (102 mm).

Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements, and shall have rounded edges.

**Exception:** Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal, the bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.

**1114A.6.2.6 Cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall comply with this section, or the shape shall provide equivalent gripping surface.

1. **Circular cross section.** The handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall not be less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.75 mm) nor more than 2 inches (50.8 mm) in cross-sectional dimension.
2. **Noncircular cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a noncircular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (159 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) maximum.

**1114A.6.2.7 Fittings.** Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

**1114A.7 Edge protection.** Ramps and ramp landings shall be provided with a continuous and uninterrupted barrier on each side along the entire length in compliance with ramp provisions located in Chapter 10. (See Figure 11A-5A.)

**Note:** Extended floors or ground surfaces, as permitted in Chapter 10, are not allowed for ramps and ramp landings part of an accessible route.

## SECTION 1115A EXTERIOR STAIRWAYS

**1115A.1 General.** Exterior stairways serving buildings on a site containing covered multifamily dwelling units shall comply with this section.

**1115A.2 Open risers.** Open risers are not permitted on exterior stairways.

**Exceptions:**

1. An opening of not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) may be permitted between the base of the riser and the tread.
2. Risers constructed of grating containing openings of not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) may be permitted.

**1115A.3 Treads.** All tread surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 1110A.3. Treads shall have smooth, rounded or chamfered exposed edges, and no abrupt edges at the nosing (lower front edge).

**1115A.4 Nosing.** Nosing shall not project more than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.8 mm) past the face of the riser below. Risers shall be sloped or the underside of the nosing shall have an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical. (See Figure 11A-6A).

**1115A.5 Striping for the visually impaired.** Exterior stairs serving buildings on a site containing multifamily dwelling units shall have the upper approach and all treads marked by a stripe providing clear visual contrast.

The stripe shall be a minimum of 2 inches (50.8 mm) wide to a maximum of 4 inches (101.6 mm) wide placed parallel to, and not more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) from, the nose of the step or upper approach. The stripe shall extend the full width of the step or upper approach and shall be of material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair. A

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

painted stripe shall be acceptable. Grooves shall not be used to satisfy this requirement.

### 1115A.6 Exterior stairway handrails.

**1115A.6.1 Where required.** Stairways shall have handrails on each side. Intermediate handrails shall be located equidistant from the sides of the stairway and comply with Section 1012.9.

**Exception:** Stairways serving an individual dwelling unit may have one handrail, except that stairways open on one or both sides shall have handrails on the open side or sides.

### 1115A.6.2 Handrail configuration.

**1115A.6.2.1 Handrail heights.** The top of handrails shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the nosing of the treads.

**1115A.6.2.2 Handrail continuity.** Handrails on all stairways shall be continuous within the full length of each stair flight. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs shall be continuous between stair flights.

**1115A.6.2.3 Handrail extensions.** At the top of stair flights, handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally above landings, beginning directly above the first riser nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

At the bottom of stair flights, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a distance equal to one tread depth beyond the last riser nosing. Such extension shall continue with 12 inches (305 mm) minimum horizontal extension, shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight, or shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface. Handrail horizontal extensions shall be in the same direction as the stair flights. (See Figures 11A-6A and 11A-6E.)

**1115A.6.2.4 Handrail projections.** Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38.1 mm) minimum between the wall and the handrail.

Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76.2 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. (See Figure 11A-6B.)

**1115A.6.2.5 Handrail gripping surfaces.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length, and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. When provided, horizontal projections shall occur  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38.1 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface. The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of addi-

tional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (102 mm).

Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements, and shall have rounded edges.

**1115A.6.2.6 Cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall comply with this section, or the shape shall provide equivalent gripping surface.

**1. Circular cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall not be less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.75 mm) nor more than 2 inches (50.8 mm) in cross-sectional dimension.

**2. Noncircular cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a noncircular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (159 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) maximum.

**1115A.6.2.7 Fittings.** Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

## SECTION 1116A HAZARDS ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1116A.1 Warning curbs.** Abrupt changes in level exceeding 4 inches (101.6 mm) in vertical dimension, such as changes in level at planters or fountains located in or adjacent to walks, sidewalks or other pedestrian ways shall be identified by curbs or other approved barriers projecting at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) in height above the walk or sidewalk surface to warn the blind of a potential drop-off.

### Exceptions:

1. Between a walk or sidewalk and an adjacent street or driveway.
2. When a guardrail or handrail is provided with edge protection in accordance with Section 1010.10.1.

**1116A.2 Headroom clearance.** Walks, pedestrian ways, and other circulation spaces, which are part of the required egress system, shall have a minimum clear headroom as required in Section 1003.2. Other walks, pedestrian ways and circulation spaces shall have a minimum clear headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm). If the vertical clearance of an area adjoining an accessible route is reduced to less than 80 inches (2032 mm), a guardrail or other barrier having its leading edge at or below 27 inches (686 mm) above the finished floor shall be provided.

**Exception:** Doorways and archways less than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth may have a minimum clear headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm). (See Section 1126A for door requirements.)

**1116A.3 Overhanging obstructions.** Any obstruction that overhangs a pedestrian way shall be a minimum of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface as measured from the bottom of the obstruction. (See Figure 11A-1B.) Where a guy support is used parallel to a path of travel,

**HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY**

*including, but not limited to, sidewalks, a guy brace, sidewalk guy or similar device shall be used to prevent an overhanging obstruction. (See Section 1116A.2 for required headroom clearance.)*

**Exception:** *Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.*

**1116A.4 Free-standing signs.** *Wherever signs mounted on posts or pylons protrude from the post or pylons and the bottom edge of the sign is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor or ground level, the edges of such signs shall be rounded or eased and the corners shall have a minimum radius of 0.125 inches (see Section 1116A.2 for required headroom clearance).*

**1116A.5 Detectable warnings at vehicular areas.** *When a walk crosses or adjoins a vehicular way, the walking surface shall be separated from the vehicular area by curbs, railings or other elements, or the boundary between the pedestrian areas and the vehicular areas shall be defined by a continuous detectable warning 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum, complying with Chapter 11B, Section 11B-705.*

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

### Division III – BUILDING FEATURES

#### Division III Table of Contents

Section 1117A	General Requirements for Accessible Entrances, Exits, Interior Routes of Travel and Facility Accessibility
Section 1118A	Egress and Areas of Refuge
Section 1119A	Interior Accessible Routes
Section 1120A	Reserved
Section 1121A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes
Section 1122A	Interior Ramps and Landings on Accessible Routes
Section 1123A	Interior Stairways
Section 1124A	Elevators and Platform (Wheelchair) Lifts
Section 1125A	Hazards on Accessible Routes
Section 1126A	Doors, Gates and Windows
Section 1127A	Common Use Facilities

### **SECTION 1117A GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESSIBLE ENTRANCES, EXITS, INTERIOR ROUTES OF TRAVEL AND FACILITY ACCESSIBILITY**

**Note:** In addition to provisions of this division, interior routes of travel that provide access to, or egress from, buildings for persons with disabilities shall also comply with Chapter 10.

**1117A.1 General.** When buildings are required to be accessible, building facilities shall be accessible as provided in this division. Where specific floors of a building are required to be accessible, the requirements of this division shall apply only to the facilities located on accessible floors.

**1117A.2 Primary entrances and exterior exit doors.** All primary entrances and exterior ground floor exit doors to buildings and facilities on accessible routes shall be accessible to persons with disabilities.

**1117A.3 Separate dwelling unit entrances.** When a ground-floor dwelling unit of a building has a separate entrance, each such ground-floor dwelling unit shall be served by an accessible route, except where the terrain or unusual characteristics of the site prohibit an accessible route (see Section 1150A for site impracticality tests).

**1117A.4 Multiple entrances.** Only one entrance to covered multifamily buildings is required to be accessible to any one ground floor of a building, except in cases where an individual dwelling unit has a separate exterior entrance. Where the building contains clusters of dwelling units with each cluster sharing a different exterior entrance, more than one entrance may be required to be accessible, as determined by analysis of the site. In every case, the accessible entrance shall be on an accessible route to the covered dwelling units it serves.

**1117A.5 Entrances from parking structures, tunnels or elevated walkways.** Where direct access for pedestrians is provided from a parking structure to a building or facility, each direct access to the building or facility entrance shall be accessible.

Where direct access for pedestrians is provided from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facil-

ity, all entrances to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall be accessible.

### **SECTION 1118A EGRESS AND AREAS OF REFUGE**

**1118A.1 General.** Including but not limited to the requirements contained in this chapter for accessible routes, signage and emergency warning systems in buildings or portions of buildings required to be accessible shall be provided with accessible means of egress as required by Chapter 10. (See Section 1007.)

### **SECTION 1119A INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTES**

**1119A.1 General.** When a building or portion of a building is required to be accessible or adaptable, an accessible route shall be provided to all portions of the building, accessible building entrances and to covered multifamily dwelling units. The accessible route shall, to the maximum extent feasible, coincide with the route for the general public and other building residents. Accessible routes shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or other spaces used for similar purposes except within an individual dwelling unit.

Interior accessible routes shall be provided as follows:

1. Where more than one route of travel is provided, all routes shall be accessible.
2. At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces, elements and covered multifamily dwelling units.
3. An accessible route shall connect at least one accessible primary entrance of each covered multifamily dwelling unit with interior and exterior spaces and facilities that serve the unit.
4. Where elevators are provided for vertical access, all elevators shall be accessible.

**1119A.2 Floor and ground surfaces.** Floor and ground surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant. If carpet or carpet tile is used in a common use area or public use area on a ground or floor surface, it shall have firm backing or no backing. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile or level cut/uncut pile texture. The maximum pile height shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and have trim along the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with Section 1121A requirements for changes in level.

**1119A.2.1 Recessed doormats.** Recessed doormats shall be adequately anchored to prevent interference with wheelchair traffic.

**1119A.3 Widths.** Interior accessible routes serving an occupant load of 10 or more shall not be less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in width. Interior accessible routes serving an occupant load of less than 10 shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

If a person in a wheelchair must make a turn around a corner or an obstruction, the minimum clear width of the accessible route shall be as specified in Section 1138A.1.5.

### 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**1119A.4 Interior accessible routes over 200 feet.** Interior accessible routes that exceed 200 feet (60 960 mm) in length shall comply with Section 1138A.1.2. (See Figure 11A-1L.)

**1119A.5 Changes in elevation.** Interior accessible routes which have changes in elevation shall be transitioned and comply with Sections 1121A or 1122A.

**Exception:** Doors and thresholds as provided in Section 1126A.

### SECTION 1120A Reserved

### SECTION 1121A CHANGES IN LEVEL ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1121A.1 Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.** Abrupt changes in level along any accessible route shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). When changes in level do occur, they shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope). Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) may be vertical.

**1121A.2 Changes greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.** Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be made by means of a sloped surface not greater than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope), or a curb ramp, ramp, elevator or platform (wheelchair) lift. Stairs shall not be part of an accessible route. When stairs are located along or adjacent to an accessible route they shall comply with Section 1123A for interior stairways.

### SECTION 1122A INTERIOR RAMPS AND LANDINGS ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1122A.1 Width.** The clear width of ramps shall be consistent with the requirements in Chapter 10 of this code, but in no case shall be less than 48 inches (1219 mm).

Handrails may project into the required clear width of the ramp at each side  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) maximum at the handrail height. Curbs, wheel guides and/or appurtenances shall not project into the required clear width of ramps.

**Exception:** The clear width of ramps serving accessible entrances to covered multifamily dwellings with an occupant load of 10 or less may be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum between handrails.

**Note:** See Section 1122A.5.2.4 for handrail projections.

**1122A.2 Slope.** The maximum slope of ramps on an accessible route shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33-percent slope).

**1122A.2.1 Cross slope.** The cross slope of ramp surfaces shall be no greater than 1 unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2.083-percent slope).

**1122A.3 Landings.** Ramp landings shall be level and comply with this section. (See Figure 11A-6C.)

**1122A.3.1 Location of landings.** Landings shall be provided at the top and bottom of each ramp. Intermediate landings shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) of vertical rise and at each change of

direction. Landings are not considered in determining the maximum horizontal distance of each ramp.

**Note:** Examples of ramp dimensions are:

SLOPE (Grading %)	MAXIMUM RISE (Inches)	MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL PROJECTION (Feet)
	(x 25.4 for mm)	(x 304.8 for mm)
1:12 (8.33%)	30	30
1:15 (6.67%)	30	37.5
1:16 (6.25%)	30	40
1:20 (5.00%)	30	50

**1122A.3.2 Size of top landings.** Top landings shall not be less than 60 inches (1524 mm) wide. Top landings shall have a minimum length of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in the direction of the ramp run. See Section 1126A.3 for maneuvering clearances at doors. (See Figure 11A-6C.)

**1122A.3.3 Size of bottom and intermediate landings.** The minimum width of bottom and intermediate landings shall not be less than the width of the ramp.

Intermediate landings shall have a length in the direction of ramp run of not less than 60 inches (1524 mm).

Bottom landings shall have a length in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm).

**1122A.3.4 Encroachment of doors.** Doors in any position shall not reduce the minimum dimension of the landing to less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and shall not reduce the required width by more than 3 inches (76.2 mm) when fully open. (See Figure 11A-6D.)

**1122A.3.5 Strike edge extension.** The width of the landing shall comply with Section 1126A.3 for maneuvering clearance at doors.

Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearance required by Section 1126A.3 shall be permitted to overlap the required landing area.

**1122A.3.6 Change of direction.** Intermediate landings at a change of direction shall be sized to provide 60 inches turning space complying with Section 1138A.1.3. Intermediate landings at a change of direction in excess of 30 degrees shall have a length in the direction of ramp run of not less than 72 inches (1829 mm). (See Figures 11A-6C and 11A-6D.)

**1122A.4 Ramp height.** Ramps more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent floor or ground and open on one or both sides shall be provided with a guard as required by Section 1013. Guardrails shall be continuous from the top of the ramp to the bottom of the ramp.

#### 1122A.5 Ramp handrails.

**1122A.5.1 Where required.** Handrails shall be provided at each side of ramps when the slope exceeds 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope).

#### Exceptions:

1. Curb ramps.
2. Ramps that serve an individual dwelling unit may have one handrail, except that ramps open on one or both sides shall have handrails provided on the open side or sides.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

### **1122A.5.2 Handrail configuration.**

**1122A.5.2.1 Handrail heights.** The top of handrails shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the ramp surface.

**1122A.5.2.2 Handrail continuity.** Handrails on all ramps shall be continuous within the full length of each ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg ramps shall be continuous between ramp runs.

**1122A.5.2.3 Handrail extensions.** Handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally above landings, beyond the top and bottom of the ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run. Handrail extensions shall be in the same direction as the ramp runs. (See Figure 11A-5A.)

**1122A.5.2.4 Handrail projections.** Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38.1 mm) minimum between the wall and the handrail.

Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76.2 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. (See Figure 11A-6B.)

**1122A.5.2.5 Handrail gripping surfaces.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length, and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. When provided, horizontal projections shall occur  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface. The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (102 mm).

Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements, and shall have rounded edges.

**Exception:** Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal, the bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.

**1122A.5.2.6 Cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall comply with this section, or the shape shall provide equivalent gripping surface.

**1. Circular cross section.** The handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall not be less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.75 mm) nor more than 2 inches (50.8 mm) in cross-sectional dimension.

**2. Noncircular cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a noncircular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (159 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) maximum.

**1122A.5.2.7 Fittings.** Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

**1122A.6 Edge protection.** Ramps and ramp landings shall be provided with a continuous and uninterrupted barrier on each side along the entire length in compliance with Sections 1010.10 and 1010.10.1. (See Figure 11A-5A.)

**Note:** Extended floors or ground surfaces, as permitted in Section 1010.10.2, are not allowed for ramps and ramp landings providing access to, or egress from, buildings or facilities where accessibility is required.

## **SECTION 1123A INTERIOR STAIRWAYS**

**1123A.1 General.** Interior stairways serving buildings containing covered multifamily dwelling units shall comply with this section.

**1123A.2 Open risers.** Open risers shall not be permitted on interior stairways.

**Exception:** Stairways within an individual dwelling unit.

**1123A.3 Treads.** All tread surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 1119A.2. Treads shall have smooth, rounded or chamfered exposed edges and no abrupt edges at the nosing (lower front edge).

**1123A.4 Nosing.** Nosing shall not project more than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.8 mm) past the face of the riser below. Risers shall be sloped or the underside of the nosing shall have an angle not more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical. (See Figure 11A-6A.)

**1123A.5 Striping for the visually impaired.** Interior stairs shall have the upper approach and lower tread marked by a stripe providing clear visual contrast.

The stripe shall be a minimum of 2 inches (50.8 mm) wide to a maximum of 4 inches (101.6 mm) wide placed parallel to, and not more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) from, the nose of the step or upper approach. The stripe shall extend the full width of the step or upper approach and shall be of material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair. A painted stripe shall be acceptable. Grooves shall not be used to satisfy this requirement.

**Exception:** Striping is not required for stairways within individual dwelling units.

**1123A.6 Interior stairway handrails.**

**1123A.6.1 Where required.** Stairways shall have handrails on each side. Intermediate handrails shall be located equidistant from the sides of the stairway and comply with Section 1012.9.

**Exception:** Stairways serving an individual dwelling unit may have one handrail, except that stairways open on one or both sides shall have handrails on the open side or sides.

**1123A.6.2 Handrail configuration.**

**1123A.6.2.1 Handrail heights.** The top of handrails shall be 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the nosing of the treads.

**1123A.6.2.2 Handrail continuity.** Handrails on all stairways shall be continuous within the full length of

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

*each stair flight. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs shall be continuous between stair flights.*

**1123A.6.2.3 Handrail extensions.** At the top of stair flights, handrails shall extend a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally above landings, beginning directly above the first riser nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

*At the bottom of stair flights, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a distance equal to one tread depth beyond the last riser nosing. Such extension shall continue with 12 inches (305 mm) minimum horizontal extension, shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight, or shall return to a wall, guard or the walking surface. Handrail horizontal extensions shall be in the same direction as the stair flights. (See Figures 11A-6A and 11A-6E.)*

**Exception:** Stairways within an individual dwelling unit.

**1123A.6.2.4 Handrail projections.** Handrails projecting from a wall shall have a space of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38.1 mm) minimum between the wall and the handrail.

*Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is a maximum of 3 inches (76.2 mm) deep and extends at least 18 inches (457 mm) above the top of the rail. Any wall or other surface adjacent to the handrail shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. (See Figure 11A-6B.)*

**1123A.6.2.5 Handrail gripping surfaces.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length, and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. When provided, horizontal projections shall occur  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface. The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (102 mm).

*Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements, and shall have rounded edges.*

**1123A.6.2.6 Cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall comply with this section, or the shape shall provide equivalent gripping surface.

**1. Circular cross section.** The handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall not be less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.75 mm) nor more than 2 inches (50.8 mm) in cross-sectional dimension.

**2. Noncircular cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a noncircular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (159 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) maximum.

**1123A.6.2.7 Fittings.** Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

## SECTION 1124A ELEVATORS AND PLATFORM (WHEELCHAIR) LIFTS

**1124A.1 General.** Elevators provided in covered multifamily buildings shall be accessible. Elevators required to be accessible shall comply with this chapter, ASME A17.1 (Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators), Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations, under "Elevator Safety Orders," and any other applicable safety regulations of other administrative authorities having jurisdiction.

**Exception:** Private elevators serving only one dwelling unit.

**1124A.2 Location.** Passenger elevators shall be located on a major accessible route and provisions shall be made to ensure that they remain accessible and usable at all times that the building is occupied.

### 1124A.3 Size of cab and control locations.

**1124A.3.1 General.** Elevators serving covered multifamily buildings shall be sized to accommodate a wheelchair in accordance with this section.

**Exception:** When the enforcing agency determines that compliance with any requirement of this section would create an unreasonable hardship, an exception to the requirement shall be granted when equivalent facilitation is provided, and where it can be demonstrated that a person using a wheelchair can enter and operate the elevator.

**1124A.3.2 Car inside.** The elevator car shall be designed to comply with one of the following:

**1. Door centered on the wall.** When the door is centered on the car wall, it shall provide a clear width of 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum, and the clear distance between car side walls shall be 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum. The clear distance between the back wall and the return panel shall be 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum. The clear distance between the back wall and the inside face of the door shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum.

**2. Door not centered on the wall.** When the door is not centered on the car wall, it shall provide a clear width of 36 inches (914 mm) minimum, and the clear distance between car side walls shall be 68 inches (1727 mm) minimum. The clear distance between the back wall and the return panel shall be 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum. The clear distance between the back wall and the inside face of the door shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum.

**3. Door at any location.** An elevator door with 36 inches (914 mm) minimum clear width may be installed at any location if one of the following is met:

**3.1.** The car inside, with the door closed, shall provide a turning clear space at least 60 inches (1524 mm) in diameter to allow for the turning of a wheelchair.

**3.2.** The clear distance between car side walls shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum. The clear distance between the back wall and the return panel shall be 80 inches (2032 mm)

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

minimum. The clear distance between the back wall and the inside face of the door shall be 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum.

**Note:** See Table 1124A.3.2 and Figure 11A-7A.

### 1124A.3.3 Car controls.

**1124A.3.3.1 Car control location.** Elevator floor buttons shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Except for photoelectric tube bypass switches, emergency controls, including the emergency stop and alarm, shall be grouped in or adjacent to the bottom of the panel and shall be no lower than 35 inches (889 mm) from the floor. For multiple controls, only one set must comply with these height requirements. Floor buttons shall be provided with visual indicators to show when each call is registered. The visual indicators shall be extinguished when each call is answered.

**1124A.3.3.2 Car control buttons.** Passenger elevator car controls shall have a minimum dimension of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) and shall be raised  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface.

Control buttons shall be illuminated, shall have square shoulders and shall be activated by a mechanical motion that is detectable.

All control buttons shall be designated by a  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch-minimum (15.9 mm) raised characters and standard raised symbols that comply with Sections 1143A.6 and 1143A.7 immediately to the left of the control button. Contracted Grade 2 Braille that conforms to Section 1143A.7 shall be located immediately below the numeral, character or symbol. A minimum clear space of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) or other suitable means of separation shall be provided between rows of control buttons. (See Figure 11A-7B.)

The raised characters and symbols shall be white on a black background. Controls and emergency equipment identified by raised symbols shall include, but not be limited to, "door open," "door close," "alarm bell," "emergency stop" and "telephone." The call

button for the main entry floor shall be designated by a raised star at the left of the floor designation.

**1124A.3.4 Emergency telephone.** When an emergency telephone system is installed, the emergency telephone handset shall be positioned no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor, and the handset cord shall be a minimum of 29 inches (737 mm) in length. If the telephone system is located in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall conform to the provisions of Section 1138A.4.4. Emergency intercommunication shall not require voice communication.

**1124A.4 Hall call buttons.** Call operation buttons and keypads shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part. Buttons shall have square shoulders, shall be a minimum of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) in size, and shall be raised  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface. The button designating the "Up" direction shall be on top. A clear floor or ground space complying with Section 1138A.1.4 shall be provided at call controls.

Visual indication shall be provided to show each call registered and extinguished when answered. Objects adjacent to, and below, hall call buttons shall not project more than 4 inches (101.6 mm) from the wall. Hall call buttons shall be internally illuminated with a white light over the entire surface of the button.

**1124A.5 Minimum illumination.** The minimum illumination at the car controls threshold and the landing when the car and landing doors are open shall not be less than 5 foot-candles (54 lx).

**1124A.6 Hall lantern.** A visual and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance indicating to the prospective passenger the car answering the call and its direction of travel as follows:

1. The visual signal for each direction shall be a minimum of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (63.5 mm) high by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (63.5 mm) wide, and visible from the proximity of the hall call button.

**TABLE 1124A.3.2  
ELEVATOR CAR DIMENSIONS**

DOOR LOCATION	DOOR CLEAR WIDTH	INSIDE CAR, SIDE TO SIDE	MINIMUM DIMENSIONS	
			INSIDE CAR, BACK WALL TO FRONT RETURN	INSIDE CAR, BACK WALL TO INSIDE FACE OF DOOR
<i>Centered</i>	42 inches (1067 mm)	80 inches (2032 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1372 mm)
<i>Side (off-centered)</i>	36 inches (914 mm) <sup>1</sup>	68 inches (1727 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1372 mm)
<i>Any</i>	36 inches (914 mm) <sup>1</sup>	54 inches (1372 mm)	80 inches (2032 mm)	80 inches (2032 mm)
<i>Any</i>	36 inches (914 mm) <sup>2</sup>	60 inches (1524 mm) <sup>2</sup>	60 inches (1524 mm) <sup>2</sup>	60 inches (1524 mm) <sup>2</sup>

1. A tolerance of minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) is permitted.

2. Other car configurations that provide a turning space complying with Section 1138A.1.3 with the door closed shall be permitted.

2. The audible signal shall sound once for the "up" direction and twice for the "down" direction or of a configuration which distinguishes between up and down elevator travel. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3000 Hz maximum. The audible signal and verbal annunciator shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the hall call button.
3. The center line of the fixture shall be located a minimum of 6 feet (1829 mm) in height above the finish floor.
4. The use of in-car lanterns, located in or on the car doorjambs, visible from the proximity of the hall call buttons and conforming to the above requirements of this section, shall be acceptable.

**Note:** The use of arrow shapes are preferred for visible signals.

#### 1124A.7 Door delay.

**1124A.7.1 Hall call.** The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call (lantern and audible signal) until the doors of the car start to close shall be calculated by the following equations, but shall be no less than 5 seconds:

$$T = D / (1.5 \text{ ft/s}) \text{ or } T = D / (445 \text{ mm/s})$$

Where  $T$  is the total time in seconds and  $D$  is the distance from a point in the lobby or landing area 60 inches (1524 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door (see Figure 11A-7D). For cars with in-car lanterns,  $T$  begins when the lantern is visible from the vicinity of hall call buttons and an audible signal is sounded.

**1124A.7.2 Door delay for car calls.** The minimum acceptable time for the door to remain fully open after receiving a call shall not be less than 5 seconds.

**1124A.8 Doorjamb marking.** The floor level at all elevator hoistway entrances shall be designated by raised characters provided on both jambs. Characters shall be 2 inches (50.8 mm) in height located 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum above the finish floor, measured from the baseline of the lowest Braille cells, and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum above the finish floor, measured from the baseline of the highest line of raised characters.

On the main entry level, a raised five-pointed star shall be placed to the left of the raised character. The outside diameter of the star shall be 2 inches (50.8 mm) and all points shall be of equal length. The raised characters and the star shall be white on a black background. Contracted Grade 2 Braille, conforming to Section 1143A.7, shall be placed below the corresponding raised characters and the star. The Braille translation for the star shall state "MAIN". The raised characters shall comply with Section 1143A.6. (See Figure 11A-7C.)

**1124A.9 Door protective and reopening devices.** Doors closed by automatic means shall be provided with a door-reopening device that will function to stop and reopen a car

door and adjacent hoistway door in case the car door is obstructed while closing.

This reopening device shall also be capable of sensing an object or person in the path of a closing door without requiring contact for activation at a nominal 5 inches and 29 inches (127 mm and 737 mm) above the floor.

Door-reopening devices shall remain effective for a period of not less than 20 seconds. After such an interval, the doors may close in accordance with the requirements of ASME A17.1.

**1124A.10 Operation and leveling.** The elevator shall be automatic and be provided with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring the car to the floor landings within a tolerance of plus or minus  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions. This self-leveling shall, within its zone, be entirely automatic and independent of the operating device and shall correct the overtravel or undertravel. The car shall also be maintained approximately level with the landing, irrespective of load.

The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of the hoistway landing shall be no greater than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (31.75 mm).

#### 1124A.11 Platform (wheelchair) lifts.

**1124A.11.1 General.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts may be provided between levels, in lieu of passenger elevators, when the vertical distance between landings, as well as the structural design and safeguards are as allowed by ASME A18.1 (Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chair Lifts), California Code of Regulations, Title 8 (Elevator Safety Orders), and any applicable safety regulations of other administrative authorities having jurisdiction.

If lifts are provided, they shall be designed and constructed to facilitate unassisted entry, operation and exit from the lift, and shall comply with restrictions and enhancements of this section in conjunction with Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations.

**1124A.11.2 Size and clear floor space.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be of sufficient size to accommodate a wheelchair in accordance with Section 1138A.1.4.

**1124A.11.3 Lift access.** There shall be a level and clear floor area or landing at each floor or level served by platform (wheelchair) lifts. Clear floor areas or landings shall meet the applicable "accessible route" requirements.

**1124A.11.4 Standby power.** To ensure continued operation in case of primary power loss, platform (wheelchair) lifts shall be provided with standby power or with self-rechargeable battery power that provides sufficient power to operate all platform lift functions for a minimum of five upward and downward trips.

**1124A.11.5 Openness.** Platform (wheelchair) lifts on an accessible means of egress shall not be installed in a fully enclosed hoistway.

**1124A.11.6 Doors and gates.** Lifts shall have low energy power-operated doors or gates, which shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum. End doors shall have 32 inches

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

(813 mm) minimum clear opening width. Side doors clear opening width shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** Lifts having doors or gates on opposite sides shall be permitted to have self-closing manual doors or gates.

**1124A.11.7 Restriction sign.** A sign complying with Section 1143A shall be securely fastened in a conspicuous place at each landing and on the platform. The sign shall state "No Freight" in letters not less than 5/8 inch (16 mm) high and include the "International Symbol of Accessibility."

## SECTION 1125A HAZARDS ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

**1125A.1 Warning curbs.** Abrupt changes in level exceeding 4 inches (101.6 mm) in vertical dimension, such as changes in level at planters or fountains located in or adjacent to walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles, pedestrian ways and other circulation spaces shall be identified by curbs projecting at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) in height above the walk or sidewalk surface to warn the blind of a potential drop-off.

**Exception:** When a guardrail or handrail is provided with edge protection in accordance with Section 1010.10.1.

**1125A.2 Headroom clearance.** Walks, halls, corridors, passageways, aisles, pedestrian ways and other circulation spaces which are part of the required egress system shall have a minimum clear headroom as required in Section 1003.2. Other walks, pedestrian ways and circulation spaces shall have a minimum clear headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm). If the vertical clearance of an area adjoining an accessible route is reduced to less than 80 inches (2032 mm), a guardrail or other barrier having its leading edge at or below 27 inches (686 mm) above the finished floor shall be provided.

**Exception:** Doorways and archways less than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth may have a minimum clear headroom of 80 inches (2032 mm). (See Section 1126A for door requirements.)

**1125A.3 Overhanging obstructions.** Any obstruction that overhangs a pedestrian way shall be a minimum of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the walking surface as measured from the bottom of the obstruction. (See Figure 11A-1B.) Where a guy support is used parallel to a path of travel, including, but not limited to, sidewalks, a guy brace, sidewalk guy or similar device shall be used to prevent an overhanging obstruction (see Section 1125A.2 for required headroom clearance).

**Exception:** Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

**1125A.4 Free-standing signs.** Wherever signs mounted on posts or pylons protrude from the posts or pylons and the bottom edge of the sign is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finished floor or ground level, the edges of such signs shall be rounded or eased and the corners shall have a minimum radius of 0.125 inches. (See Section 1125A.2 for required headroom clearance).

## SECTION 1126A DOORS, GATES AND WINDOWS

**1126A.1 Width and height of doors and gates.** Doorways which provide access to common use areas or covered multi-family dwellings shall comply with the following:

1. Permit the installation of a door or gate not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width, not less than 80 inches (2032 mm) in height, and provide a clear opening of not less than 32 inches (813 mm), measured with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.
2. Doors or gates shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees.
3. A pair of doors or gates, manual or automatic, shall have at least one leaf which provides a clear width of not less than 32 inches (813 mm), measured with the door or gate positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.
4. The width of any component in the egress system shall not be less than the minimum width required by Section 1005.
5. Revolving doors or gates shall not be used as required entrances for persons with disabilities, and shall not be part of an accessible route.

**1126A.2 Level floor or landing.** The floor or landing on each side of an exit door or gate shall be level. (See Chapter 10.)

**1126A.2.1 Thresholds and changes in elevation.** The floor or landing shall not be more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) lower than the top of the threshold of the doorway. (See Figure 11A-8I.)

Changes in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope). Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp. (See Section 1122A.)

### 1126A.3 Maneuvering clearances.

**1126A.3.1 General.** The minimum maneuvering clearance at doors or gates shall comply with Sections 1126A.3.2, 1126A.3.3 and 1126A.3.4. The floor or landing area within the required maneuvering clearance shall be level and clear. The required length shall be measured at right angles to the plane of the door or gate in its closed position. Maneuvering clearances shall extend the full width of the doorway and the required latch side or hinge side clearances (strike edge maneuvering clearances).

### 1126A.3.2 Swinging doors and gates.

**1126A.3.2.1 Front approach.** The following provisions shall apply to swinging doors or gates with front approach:

1. **Pull side approach.** The level floor or landing shall extend in the direction of the door or gate swing at least 60 inches (1524 mm). (See Figure 11A-8A(a).)
2. **Push side approach.** The level floor or landing shall extend in the direction of the door or gate swing at least 48 inches (1219 mm). (See Figure 11A-8A(a).)

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**3. Doors and gates with push side approach having both a closer and a latch.** Doors or gates with push side approach having both a closer and a latch shall be provided with a clear and level area extending a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) past the strike edge on the approach side of the door or gate. (See Figure 11A-8A(a).)

**4. Strike edge maneuvering space.** The width of the level area on the side to which the door or gate swings shall extend at least 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge for exterior doors or gates and at least 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for interior doors or gates. (See Figure 11A-8A(a).)

**Note:** See Section 1132A.5 for maneuvering clearances at primary entry doors and all required exit doors to covered multifamily dwellings.

**1126A.3.2.2 Hinge side approach.** The following provisions shall apply to swinging doors or gates with hinge side approach:

**1. Pull side approach.** Doors or gates with pull side approach shall be provided with a level floor or landing not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in depth. A clear and level area shall extend a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) past the strike edge on the approach side of the door or gate. (See Figure 11A-8A(b).)

**2. Push side approach.** Doors or gates with push side approach shall have a level floor or landing not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in depth, and shall be provided with a clear and level area extending a minimum of 54 inches (1372 mm) from the strike edge of the door or gate jamb past the hinge side of the door or gate. Doors or gates with a latch and closer shall have a level floor or landing not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) depth at the push side of the door or gate. (See Figure 11A-8A(b).)

**1126A.3.2.3 Latch side approach.** The following provisions shall apply to swinging doors or gates with latch side approach:

**1. Pull side approach.** Doors or gates with pull side approach shall have a level floor or landing not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in depth, and shall be provided with a clear and level area extending a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge on the approach side of the door or gate. (See Figure 11A-8A(c).)

**2. Push side approach.** Doors or gates with push side approach shall have a level floor or landing not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) in depth, and shall be provided with a clear and level area extending a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) past the strike edge on the approach side of the door or gate. Doors or gates with a closer shall have a level floor or landing not less than 48 inches

(1219 mm) depth at the push side of the door or gate. (See Figure 11A-8A(c).)

**1126A.3.3 Space between consecutive doors or gates.** The minimum space between two hinged or pivoted doors or gates in series, serving other than a required exit stairway, shall provide a minimum of 48 inches (1219 mm) plus the width of the door or gate swinging into the space. Doors or gates in a series shall swing either in the same direction or away from the space between the doors or gates. (See Figures 11A-8G and 11A-8H.)

Where the door or gate opens into a stair or smokeproof enclosure, the landing need not have a minimum length of 60 inches (1524 mm). (See Figure 11A-8H.)

**1126A.3.4 Doorways without doors or gates, sliding doors and folding doors.** Doorways less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide without doors or gates, sliding doors or folding doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with this section.

**1126A.3.4.1 Front approach.** The level floor or landing shall extend at least 48 inches (1219 mm) on each side, perpendicular to the doorway. Strike edge maneuvering clearance for front approach is not required. (See Figure 11A-8B(a).)

**1126A.3.4.2 Side approach.** Doorways without doors or gates, and side approach, shall be provided with level floor or landing extending 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum on each side, perpendicular to the doorway. Strike edge maneuvering clearance is not required. (See Figure 11A-8B(d).)

**1126A.3.4.3 Pocket/ hinge side approach.** Doors with pocket or hinge approach shall be provided with a level floor or landing not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in depth. The level floor or landing shall extend a minimum of 22 inches (559 mm) beyond the pocket/hinge side. (See Figure 11A-8B(b).)

**1126A.3.4.4 Stop/latch side approach.** Doors with stop or latch approach shall have a level floor or landing not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in depth. The level floor or landing shall extend a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the stop/latch side. (See Figure 11A-8B(c).)

**1126A.3.4.5 Recessed doors or gates.** Maneuvering clearances for forward approach shall be provided when any obstruction within 18 inches (457 mm) of the latch side of an interior doorway, or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the latch side of an exterior doorway, projects more than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond the face of the door or gate, measured perpendicular to the face of the door or gate. (See Figure 11A-8C.)

**1126A.4 Closer-effort to operate doors or gates.** Maximum effort to operate doors or gates shall not exceed 8½ pounds (38 N) for exterior doors or gates and 5 pounds (22 N) for interior doors or gates, such pull or push effort being applied at right angles to hinged doors or gates and at the center plane of sliding or folding doors. Compensating devices or automatic door or gate operators may be utilized to meet these standards. When fire doors are required, the maximum

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

effort to operate the door may be increased to the minimum allowable by the appropriate enforcement agency, not to exceed 15 pounds (66.7 N).

**1126A.4.1 Door or gate closer.** If a door or gate has a closer, the sweep period of the closer shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the door or gate will take 5 seconds minimum to move to a position of 12 degrees from the latch.

**1126A.4.2 Spring hinges.** Spring hinges shall be adjusted so that from the open position of 70 degrees, the door or gate shall move to the closed position in 1.5 seconds minimum.

**1126A.5 Type of latch and lock.** The type of latch and lock required for all doors or gates shall be in accordance with Section 1126A.6 and Chapter 10, Section 1008.

**1126A.6 Hand-activated door or gate hardware.** Hand-activated door or gate latching, locking and opening hardware shall be centered between 30 inches (762 mm) and 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. Latching and locking doors or gates that are hand-activated and on an accessible route shall be operable with a single effort by lever type hardware, panic bars, push-pull activating bars or other hardware designed to provide passage without requiring the ability to grasp the opening hardware. Locked exit doors or gates shall operate consistent with Section 1126A.4, in the direction of egress. When sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.

**Exception:** Access gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

**1126A.6.1 Lever type hardware.** The lever or lever of actuated latches or locks shall be curved with a return to within  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of the door or gate to prevent catching on the clothing of persons during egress.

**Exception:** Group R and U occupancies with an occupant load of 10 or less.

**1126A.7 Smooth surface.** Swinging door or gate surfaces within 10 inches (254 mm) of the finish floor or ground measured vertically shall have a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door or gate. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in these surfaces shall be within  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other and be free of sharp or abrasive edges. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.

### Exceptions:

1. Automatic doors or gates.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at 60 degrees minimum from the horizontal.
3. Doors or gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (254 mm) of the finish floor or ground.

**1126A.8 Windows.** Where glazed openings are provided in accessible rooms or spaces for operation by occupants, at least one opening shall comply with Section 1138A.4.

Each glazed opening required by the enforcing agency to be operable shall comply with Section 1138A.4.

## SECTION 1127A COMMON USE FACILITIES

**Note:** For public use facilities, see Chapter 11B of this code.

**1127A.1 General.** When provided, common use areas and facilities in covered multifamily housing developments shall be accessible to persons with disabilities. Common use facilities include, but are not limited to, lobbies, toilet and bathing facilities, laundry facilities, community rooms, clubhouses, health and fitness facilities, game rooms and portions of common use tenant storage. All entrances, doors, fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. Facilities and fixtures required to be accessible shall comply with the following provisions:

1. **Doors.** Doors to accessible bathrooms shall comply with Section 1126A. Doors shall not swing into the floor space required for any fixture.
2. **Clear floor space.** All fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. Clear floor spaces at fixtures and controls, the accessible route and the turning space may overlap. This clear space shall comply with Sections 1138A.1.4 and 1138A.3.
3. **Water closets.** Where a toilet stall is provided, it shall comply with Section 1127A.2.1 or 1127A.2.2, and its water closet shall comply with Section 1127A.2.3.
4. **Lavatory and mirrors.** Where a lavatory and/or mirror is provided, it shall comply with Sections 1127A.3 and/or 1127A.8.3.
5. **Controls and dispensers.** Where controls, dispensers, receptacles or other types of equipment are provided, at least one of each shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with Sections 1127A.8 and 1138A.3.
6. **Bathing and shower facilities.** Where bathtubs or showers are provided, at least one fixture of each type provided shall be accessible per room. For bathtubs, see Section 1127A.5.2. For shower compartments, see Section 1127A.5.3.
7. **Toilet facilities.** Toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1127A.2.
8. **Laundry facilities.** Laundry facilities shall comply with Section 1127A.10.
9. **Storage facilities.** Storage facilities shall comply with Section 1127A.11.
10. **Fixed or built-in seating, tables and counters.** Fixed or built-in seating, tables and counters shall comply with Section 1127A.12.

**1127A.2 Toilet facilities.** When common use toilet facilities are provided for residents or guests, at least one percent of the total number of fixtures but not less than one of each type shall comply with this section.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1127A.2.1 Multiple-accommodation toilet facilities.** Multiple-accommodation toilet facilities shall have the following:

**Note:** (See Figures 11A-9A and 11A-9B.)

1. **Wheelchair turning space.** Turning space of sufficient size to inscribe a circle with a diameter not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) or a T-shaped space shall be provided within the toilet facility. The wheelchair turning space shall comply with Section 1138A.1.3. Other than the door to the accessible water closet compartment, a door, in any position, may encroach into this space by not more than 12 inches (305 mm).
2. **Clear space at fixtures.** Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required for any fixture. Required clear floor space, clearance at fixtures, and turning space shall be permitted to overlap.
3. **Accessible water closet compartment.** Accessible water closet compartments shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, 56 inches (1422 mm) deep minimum for wall hung water closets and 59 inches (1499 mm) deep minimum for floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall. (See Figure 11A-9A(c).)

Water closet fixtures located in accessible water closet compartments shall be positioned with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum to 18 inches (457 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition.

In ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Item 6 of this section, the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. (See Figure 11A-9A (d).)

Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches (1422 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, dispensers, sanitary napkin disposal units, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space and clearances required at other fixtures, and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.

A minimum 48 inches (1219 mm) deep and 60 inches (1524 mm) wide clear maneuvering space shall be provided in front of the water closet if the compartment has an end-opening door (facing the water closet). A minimum 60 inches (1524 mm) deep and 60 inches (1524 mm) wide clear maneuvering space shall be provided in a compartment with the door located at the side. (See Figure 11A-9A.)

4. **Grab bars.** Grab bars shall be provided on the side wall closest to the water closet and on the rear wall.

Grab bars shall comply with this section and Section 1127A.4.

The side wall grab bar shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) long minimum, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extend 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum from the rear wall. The front end of the side grab bar shall be positioned 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in front of the water closet.

The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches (914 mm) long minimum and extend from the centerline of the water closet 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on one side and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the other side.

**Exceptions:**

1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum, centered on the water closet, when wall space does not permit a length of 36 inches (914 mm) minimum due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.
2. When the enforcing agency requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then the rear grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.
5. **Compartment doors.** Compartment doors shall comply with Section 1126A and the following:
  - 5.1. The water closet compartment shall be equipped with a door that has an automatic-closing device, and shall have a clear, unobstructed opening width of 32 inches (813 mm) when located at the end and 34 inches (864 mm) when located at the side with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.
  - 5.2. When standard compartment doors are used, with a minimum 9-inch (228.6 mm) clearance for footrests underneath and a self-closing device, clearance at the strike edge as specified in Section 1126A.3.2 is not required.
  - 5.3. The inside and outside of the compartment door shall be equipped with a loop or U-shaped handle immediately below the latch. The latch shall be flip-over style, sliding or other hardware not requiring the user to grasp or twist.
  - 5.4. Except for door-opening widths and door swings, a clear, unobstructed access of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be provided to water closet compartments designed for use by persons with disabilities, and the space immediately in front of a water closet compartment shall not be less than 48 inches (1219 mm) as measured at right angles to compartment door in its closed position.
  - 5.5. Doors shall be located in the front or in the side wall or partition farthest from the water

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

*closet. Where located in the front partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. Where located in the side wall or partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm) maximum from the front wall or partition.*

6. **Ambulatory accessible compartments.** When six or more toilet compartments are provided within a multiple-accommodation toilet room, or when the combination of urinals and water closets totals six or more fixtures, at least one compartment shall comply with Section 1127A.2.1, Items 2 and 3. At least one additional ambulatory compartment shall have a depth of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, and a width of 35 inches (890 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum.

*The ambulatory accessible compartment shall have a self-closing door, which shall not swing into the minimum required compartment area. Grab bars, complying with Sections 1127A.4.2, 1127A.4.3, 1127A.4.4 and 1127A.4.5, shall be installed on each compartment side wall. (See Figure 11A-9A (d).)*

### 1127A.2.2 Single-accommodation toilet facilities.

*Single-accommodation toilet facilities shall comply with the following:*

**Note:** See Figures 11A-9A and 11A-9B.

1. **Wheelchair clearance.** There shall be sufficient space in the toilet room for a wheelchair measuring 30 inches (762 mm) wide by 48 inches (1219 mm) long to enter the room and permit the door to close. There shall be in the room a clear turning space of at least 60 inches (1524 mm) in diameter or a T-shaped space complying with Section 1138A.1.3.

*Required clear floor space, clearance at fixtures and turning space shall be permitted to overlap.*

2. **Encroachment of doors.** Doors shall not encroach into the turning space specified in Item 1 of this section by more than 12 inches (305 mm).

3. **Accessible water closet.** A water closet fixture located in a single-accommodation toilet facility shall be positioned with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum to 18 inches (457 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition.

*Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches (1422 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, dispensers, sanitary napkin disposal units, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space and clearances required at other fixtures, and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.*

*A minimum 48 inches (1219 mm) deep and 60 inches (1524 mm) wide clear maneuvering space shall be provided in front of the water closet.*

4. **Grab bars.** Grab bars shall be provided on the side wall closest to the water closet and on the rear wall. Grab bars shall comply with this section and Section 1127A.4.

*The side wall grab bar shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) long minimum, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extend 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum from the rear wall. The front end of the side grab bar shall be positioned 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in front of the water closet.*

*The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches (914 mm) long minimum and extend from the centerline of the water closet 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on one side and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the other side.*

#### Exceptions:

1. *The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum, centered on the water closet, when wall space does not permit a length of 36 inches (914 mm) minimum due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.*
2. *When the enforcing agency requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then the rear grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.*
5. **Accessible route.** All doors, fixtures and controls shall be on an accessible route. The minimum clear width of an accessible route shall be 36 inches (914 mm) except at doors (See Section 1126A). If a person in a wheelchair must make a turn around an obstruction, the minimum clear width of the accessible route shall be as specified in Section 1138A.1.5.

### 1127A.2.3 Water closets.

*Water closets required to be accessible shall comply with the following:*

**Note:** See Figure 11A-9B.

1. **Height.** The height of accessible water closets shall be a minimum of 17 inches (432 mm) to a maximum of 19 inches (483 mm) measured to the top of a maximum 2-inch-high (50.8 mm) toilet seat.
2. **Controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting. Controls for the flush valves shall be mounted on the open side of the water closet no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).
3. **Toilet seats.** Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1127A.2.4 Accessible urinals.** When urinals are provided, at least one shall comply with the following:

1. **Height and wall projection.** Urinals shall be floor mounted (stall type) or wall hung. The rim of the wall hung urinals shall be 17 inches (432 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Urinals (floor mounted and wall hung) shall be  $13\frac{1}{2}$  inches (343 mm) deep minimum measured from the outer face of the rim to the back of the fixture.
2. **Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated controls shall be operable with one hand, shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist and shall be mounted no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N). Electronic automatic flushing controls are preferable.
3. **Clear floor space.** A clear floor space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided in front of the urinal to allow forward approach. The clear floor space shall comply with Section 1138A.1.4.

**1127A.3 Accessible lavatories.** When common use lavatories are provided for residents or guests, at least one, and not less than 1 percent of all lavatories, shall comply with the following:

1. **Location.** Lavatories shall be installed with the centerline of the fixture a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) horizontally from an adjoining wall, partition or fixture. The top of the fixture rim shall be a maximum of 34 inches (864 mm) above the finished floor.
2. **Floor space.** A clear floor space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided in front of accessible lavatories to allow forward approach. Such clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or another clear floor space.
3. **Knee and toe space.** A clear and obstructed knee and toe space, complying with Section 1138A.2, shall be provided underneath the lavatory. The knee and toe space shall be centered on the fixture. The clear floor space required by Item 2 shall not extend into the knee and toe space more than 19 inches (483 mm). (See Figure 11A-9D.)
4. **Finished floor.** The finished floor beneath the lavatory shall be extended to the wall.
5. **Plumbing protection.** Water supply and drain pipes under lavatories shall be insulated or otherwise covered to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories.
6. **Lavatory faucet controls.** Faucet controls and operation mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2N). Lever operated, push type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Hand operated metering faucets are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.

**1127A.4 Grab bars, tub and shower seats, fasteners and mounting devices.**

**1127A.4.1 General.** Grab bars, tub and shower seats, fasteners and mounting devices required by this chapter shall comply with this section.

**1127A.4.2 Location.** Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (838 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface.

**Exception:** The height of the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 1127A.5.2.

**1127A.4.3 Diameter or width.** The diameter or width of the gripping surfaces of a grab bar shall comply with the following:

**Note:** See Figure 11A-9C.

1. **Circular cross section.** Grab bars with circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.
2. **Noncircular cross section.** Grab bars with noncircular cross section shall have a cross-section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum. The perimeter dimension of grab bars with non-circular cross section shall be 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (122 mm) maximum.
3. **Alternate configuration.** L-shaped or U-shaped grab bars shall be permitted.

**1127A.4.4 Structural strength.** The structural strength of grab bars, tub and shower seats, fasteners and mounting devices shall meet the following specifications:

1. Bending stress in a grab bar or seat induced by the maximum bending moment from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable stress for the material of the grab bar or seat.
2. Shear stress induced in a grab bar or seat by the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable shear stress for the material of the grab bar or seat, and if its mounting bracket or other support is considered to be fully restrained, then direct and torsional shear stresses shall not exceed the allowable shear stress.
3. Shear force induced in a fastener or mounting device from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load shall be less than the allowable lateral load of either the fastener or mounting device or the supporting structure, whichever is the smaller allowable load.
4. Tensile force induced in a fastener by a direct tension force of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load, plus the maximum moment from the application of a 250-pound (1112 N) point load, shall be less than the allowable withdrawal load between the fastener and supporting structure.
5. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**1127A.4.5 Surface.** A grab bar and any wall or other surface adjacent to it shall be free of any sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.

**1127A.4.6 Spacing.** When grab bars are mounted adjacent to a wall, the space between the wall and the grab bars shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm). (See Figure 11A-9C.) The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

### Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings and other grab bars above shall be permitted to be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. For L-shaped or U-shaped grab bars the space between the walls and the grab bar shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum for a distance of 6 inches (152 mm) on either side of the inside corner between two adjacent wall surfaces.

## 1127A.5 Bathing facilities.

**1127A.5.1 General.** When common use bathing facilities are provided for residents or guests, including showers, bathtubs or lockers, at least one of each type of fixture in each facility, and not less than 1 percent of all fixtures, shall comply with this section.

**1127A.5.2 Bathtubs.** Bathtubs required to be accessible shall comply with the following:

**1127A.5.2.1 Floor space.** Clearance in front of bathtubs shall extend the length of the bathtub and shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) wide minimum for forward approach and 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum for parallel approach. A lavatory complying with Section 1127A.3 shall be permitted at the control end of the clearance. When a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub. (See Figure 11A-9E.)

**1127A.5.2.2 Seat.** A removable in-tub seat or a permanent seat at the head end of the tub shall be provided. The structural strength of seats and their attachments shall comply with Section 1127A.4.4. Seats shall be mounted securely and shall not slip during use.

The top of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. The depth of a removable in-tub seat shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum. Permanent seats at the head end of the bathtub shall be 15 inches (381 mm) deep minimum and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. (See Figure 11A-9E.)

**1127A.5.2.3 Grab bars.** Grab bars complying with Section 1127A.4 shall be provided in accordance with this section. (See Figure 11A-9F.) When separate grab bars are required on adjacent walls at a common mounting height, an L-shaped or U-shaped grab bar meeting the

dimensional requirements of this section shall be permitted.

**1. Bathtubs with permanent seats.** Two horizontal grab bars shall be installed on the back wall. One shall be located 33 inches (838 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface, and the other shall be located 8 inches (203 mm) minimum and 10 inches (254 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum, and shall be installed 15 inches (381 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

**2. Bathtubs with removable seats.** Two horizontal grab bars shall be installed on the back wall. One shall be located 33 inches (838 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface, and the other shall be located 8 inches (203 mm) minimum and 10 inches (254 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum and shall be installed 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub. A grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

**1127A.5.2.4 Controls.** Faucets and controls (other than drain stoppers) shall be located on an end wall between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. (See Figure 11A-9F.)

Controls shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).

**1127A.5.2.5 Shower spray unit.** A shower spray unit with a hose at least 59 inches (1524 mm) long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided.

The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of the grab bars.

**1127A.5.2.6 Bathtub enclosures.** When provided, enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units, or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the open face of the bathtub.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1127A.5.3 Shower compartments.** Shower compartments required to be accessible shall comply with this section. (See Figures 11A-9H, 11A-9I, 11A-9J and 11A-9K.)

**1127A.5.3.1 Size and clearance.**

1. **Standard roll-in shower compartments.** Standard roll-in shower compartments shall meet one of the following:

1.1 30 inches (762 mm) minimum in depth and 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in width between wall surfaces measured at center points of opposing sides, with a full opening width on the long side.

A clear floor space 30 inches (914 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the shower compartment.

1.2. 42 inches (1067 mm) in width between wall surfaces, and 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum in depth with an entrance opening of 42 inches (1067 mm).

2. **Alternate roll-in shower compartments.** Alternate roll-in shower compartments shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum in depth and 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in width between wall surfaces measured at center points of opposing sides. A 36-inch (914 mm) wide minimum entry shall be provided at one end of the long side of the compartment.

**1127A.5.3.2 Thresholds.** Thresholds in roll-in shower compartments shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) maximum in height and shall be beveled with a slope no greater than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). (See Figure 11A-1F.)

**Exception:** Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) shall be permitted to be vertical.

**1127A.5.3.3 Enclosures.** Enclosures, when provided for shower compartments, shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower spray units and transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.

**1127A.5.3.4 Floor.** Shower compartment floor surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant. The maximum slope of the floor shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) per foot (2.083 percent slope) in any direction. When drains are provided, grate openings shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) maximum and located flush with the floor surface.

**1127A.5.3.5 Controls.** Controls, faucets and shower spray units in shower compartments shall be operable with one hand, and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum. All controls and faucets shall be of a single-lever design.

**1127A.5.3.5.1 Standard roll-in shower compartments.** In standard roll-in shower compartments, operable parts of controls and faucets shall be installed on the back wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat wall, 19 inches (483 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum from the seat wall.

Operable parts of controls and faucets shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the shower floor, with their centerline at 39 inches (991 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1041 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

Operable parts of the shower spray unit, including the handle, shall be installed on the back wall adjacent to the seat wall, 19 inches (483 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum from the seat wall.

Operable parts of the shower spray unit, including the handle, shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the shower floor (measured to the top of the mounting bracket).

**1127A.5.3.5.2 Alternate roll-in shower compartments.** In alternate roll-in shower compartments, operable parts of controls and faucets shall be installed on the side wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat wall, 19 inches (483 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum from the seat wall.

Operable parts of controls and faucets shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the shower floor, with their centerline at 39 inches (991 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1041 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

Operable parts of the shower spray unit, including the handle, shall be installed on the following locations:

1. On the side wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat wall, 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum from the seat wall; or

2. On the back wall opposite the seat, 15 inches (381 mm) maximum, left or right, of the centerline of the seat.

Operable parts of the shower spray unit, including the handle, shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the shower floor.

**1127A.5.3.6 Hand-held shower sprayer unit.** A flexible hand-held shower spray unit with a hose at least 59 inches (1524 mm) long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided.

The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars.

**1127A.5.3.6.1 Sprayer unit alternative.** When accessible shower facilities are provided in areas subject to excessive vandalism, in lieu of providing the fixed flexible hose, two wall-mounted shower heads shall be installed. Each shower head shall be installed so that it can be operated independently of the other and shall have swivel angle adjustments, both vertically and horizontally. One shower head shall be located at a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the floor.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**1127A.5.3.7 Shower compartment seats.** A seat in a standard roll-in shower compartment shall be a folding type, installed on the side wall adjacent to the controls. The seat shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (76 mm) of the compartment entry. A seat in an alternate roll-in type shower compartment shall be a folding type, installed on the front wall opposite the back wall, and shall extend from the adjacent side wall to a point within 3 inches (76 mm) of the compartment entry.

Shower compartment seats shall comply with Section 1127A.4.4 and shall be located within 27 inches (686 mm) of the shower controls. The top of the seat shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. When folded, the seat shall not extend more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the mounting wall.

**1127A.5.3.7.1 Rectangular seats.** The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The front edge of a rectangular seat shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.

**1127A.5.3.7.2 L-shaped seats.** The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The front edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall. The front edge shall be 14 inches (356 mm) minimum and 15 inches (381 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (559 mm) minimum and 23 inches (584 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.

**1127A.5.3.8 Grab bars.** Accessible shower compartments shall be provided with grab bars, installed in accordance with Section 1127A.5.3.8.1 or Section 1127A.5.3.8.2. Grab bars shall also comply with Section 1127A.4.

When multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the finish floor. When separate grab bars are required on adjacent walls at a common mounting height, L-shaped or U-shaped grab bars meeting the dimensional requirements of Section 1127A.5.3.8.1 or Section 1127A.5.3.8.2 shall be permitted. (See Figure 11A-9H or Figure 11A-9I.)

**1127A.5.3.8.1 Standard roll-in shower compartments.** Grab bars shall be installed on the back wall and on the side wall opposite the seat. Grab bars above the seat are not permitted. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.

**1127A.5.3.8.2 Alternate roll-in shower compartments.** Grab bars shall be installed on the back wall and the side wall farthest from the compartment entry. Grab bars above the seat are not permitted. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.

**1127A.5.3.9 Soap dish.** When a soap dish is provided, it shall be located on the control wall at a maximum height of 40 inches (1016 mm) above the shower floor, and within the reach limits from the seat.

**1127A.5.3.10 Open showers.** When no separate shower compartments are provided, the shower for persons with disabilities shall be located in a corner with L-shaped grab bars extending along two adjacent walls with a folding seat adjacent to the shower controls. (See Figure 11A-9J.)

**1127A.5.3.11 Multiple showers.** When two or more accessible showers are provided within the same functional area, there shall be at least one shower constructed opposite hand from the other or others (i.e., one left-hand control versus right-hand controls).

## 1127A.6 Lockers.

**1127A.6.1 General.** Where lockers are provided for residents or guests, at least one locker and not less than 1 percent of all lockers shall be accessible to persons with disabilities. An accessible route not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width shall be provided to these lockers. See Section 1138A for required clear space, allowable reach ranges and requirements for control and operating mechanisms.

## 1127A.7 Signs.

**1127A.7.1 General.** All accessible toilet and bathing facilities shall be identified by the "International Symbol of Accessibility." Signs need not be provided for facilities within a dwelling unit or guestroom.

**1127A.7.2 Identification symbols.** Doorways leading to sanitary facilities (toilet or bathing rooms) shall be identified by a geometric symbol in compliance with this section. Geometric symbols shall be centered horizontally on the door at a height of 58 inches (1473 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the center of the symbol. When a door is provided, the symbol shall be mounted within 1 inch (25 mm) of the vertical centerline of the door. Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest accessible toilet or bathing rooms shall be provided. Such directional signs shall comply with Section 1143.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility.

Edges of accessibility signage shall be rounded, chamfered or eased. Corners shall have a minimum radius of  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm). See Section 1143A for additional signage requirements applicable to sanitary facilities.

**1127A.7.2.1 Men's sanitary facilities.** Men's sanitary facilities shall be identified by an equilateral triangle, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick with edges 12 inches (305 mm) long and a vertex pointing upward. The triangle symbol shall contrast with the door, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.

**1127A.7.2.2 Women's sanitary facilities.** Women's sanitary facilities shall be identified by a circle,  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick and 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter. The circle symbol shall contrast with the door, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1127A.7.2.3 Unisex sanitary facilities.** Unisex sanitary facilities shall be identified by a circle,  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick and 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter with a  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick triangle superimposed on the circle and within the 12-inch (305 mm) diameter. The triangle symbol shall contrast with the circle symbol, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background. The circle symbol shall contrast with the door, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.

#### 1127A.8 Toilet room fixtures and accessories.

**1127A.8.1 Towel, sanitary napkins, waste receptacles.** Where towel, sanitary napkins, waste receptacles and other similar dispensing and disposal fixtures are provided, at least one of each type shall be located with all operable parts, including coin slots, within 40 inches (1016 mm) from the finished floor. Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with Section 1138A.4.

**1127A.8.2 Toilet tissue dispensers.** Toilet tissue dispensers shall be located on the wall or partition closest to the water closet, 7 inches (180 mm) minimum and 9 inches (230 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be below the grab bar, 19 inches (483 mm) minimum above the finish floor. The outlet of the dispenser shall not be located behind grab bars. Dispensers shall not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow. (See Figure 11A-9B.)

**1127A.8.3 Mirrors.** Where mirrors are provided, at least one shall be accessible. Mirrors located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1016 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Mirrors not located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (889 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

#### 1127A.9 Space allowances and reach ranges in common use areas.

Space allowances and reach ranges in common use areas shall comply with Section 1138A.

#### 1127A.10 Common accessible laundry rooms.

**1127A.10.1 General.** Where common use laundry rooms are provided, at least one of each type of appliance provided in each laundry area shall be accessible, shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with this section. Such appliances include clothes washing machines, dryers, soap dispensers and any related features such as wash sinks, tables and storage areas.

Where laundry rooms are provided on floors of an elevator building, each laundry room shall be accessible. Where there is one laundry room on a ground floor in each building, each laundry room shall be accessible. Where there is a laundry room on the ground floor of a building and another located in the basement, it is acceptable to have only the ground floor laundry room accessible.

**1127A.10.2 Clear floor space.** There shall be a minimum clear space 30 inches perpendicular by 48 inches parallel (762 mm by 1219 mm) in front of clothes washers and dryers required to be accessible. There shall be a minimum clear space 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) provided for at least one of each type of fixture or appliance provided in the laundry room (e.g., soap dispensers, wash sinks, tables, storage areas).

**1127A.10.3 Controls and operating mechanisms.** Clothes washers and dryers including stacked clothes washers and dryers required to be accessible shall have controls and operating mechanisms (including doors, coin slots, lint screens, detergent and bleach compartments) within the reach range of a seated user. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be located no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm), and no lower than 15 inches (381 mm), above the finished floor measured to the center of the grip. If the reach is over an obstruction (for example, washer or dryer), operating mechanisms shall be located within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Controls and operating mechanisms that do not satisfy these specifications are acceptable, provided that comparable mechanisms, controls or outlets that perform the same functions are provided within the same area and are accessible.

Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls and operating mechanisms shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).

**1127A.10.4 Washing machines and clothes dryers.** Washing machines and clothes dryers in accessible common use laundry rooms shall be front loading.

The bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment shall be located 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

#### 1127A.11 Storage.

**1127A.11.1 General.** If fixed storage facilities such as cabinets, shelves, closets or drawers are provided where access is required by Sections 1.8.2.1.2 and 1102A, at least one of each type of facility provided shall comply with this section. Additional storage may be provided outside of the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3.

**1127A.11.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) complying with Section 1138A.1.4 that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at accessible storage facilities.

**1127A.11.3 Height.** Accessible storage spaces and clothes rods shall be within at least one of the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. (See Figure 11A-1J and Figure 11A-II.)

**1127A.11.4 Hardware.** Hardware for accessible storage facilities shall comply with Section 1138A.4. Touch latches and U-shaped pulls are acceptable.

#### 1127A.12 Fixed or built-in seating, tables and counters.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**1127A.12.1 Minimum seating.** Where fixed or built-in seating, tables or counters are provided for residents or guests, 5 percent, but not less than one, shall be accessible as provided in this section.

**1127A.12.2 Clear floor space.** When seating spaces for persons in wheelchairs are provided at fixed tables or counters, clear floor space complying with Section 1138A.1.4 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. Such clear floor space shall not overlap the required knee and toe space by more than 19 inches (483 mm). (See Figure 11A-1K.)

**1127A.12.3 Knee and toe space.** When seating for persons in wheelchairs is provided at fixed tables or counters, knee and toe space complying with Section 1138A.2 shall be provided. (See Figure 11A-1K.)

**1127A.12.4 Height of work surfaces.** The tops of tables and counters shall be 28 inches to 34 inches (711 mm to 864 mm) from the finish floor.

**Exception:** When food or drink is served for consumption at a counter exceeding 34 inches (864 mm) in height, only a portion of the main counter, 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in length, shall be provided in compliance with this section.

**1127A.13 Electric vehicle charging stations. (Reserved)**

**Division IV – DWELLING UNIT FEATURES****Division IV Table of Contents**

Section 1128A	Covered Dwelling Units
Section 1129A	Reserved
Section 1130A	Accessible Route within Covered Multi-family Dwelling Units
Section 1131A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes
Section 1132A	Doors
Section 1133A	Kitchens
Section 1134A	Bathing and Toilet Facilities
Section 1135A	Laundry Rooms
Section 1136A	Electrical Receptacle, Switch and Control Heights

**SECTION 1128A  
COVERED DWELLING UNITS**

**1128A.1 General.** Covered multifamily dwelling units shall be adaptable and accessible into and throughout the dwelling unit as provided in this division.

**Note:** See Sections 1101A “Application” and 1102A “Building Accessibility” for dwelling units required to comply with this division.

**SECTION 1129A  
Reserved****SECTION 1130A  
ACCESSIBLE ROUTE WITHIN COVERED  
MULTIFAMILY DWELLING UNITS**

**1130A.1 General.** An accessible route shall be provided through all rooms and spaces of the dwelling unit. The accessible route shall pass through the primary entry door, and shall connect with all additional exterior doors, required clear floor spaces at kitchen appliances and bathroom fixtures. For the purpose of this section, “accessible routes” may include hallways, corridors and ramps.

**Exception:** An accessible route is not required from the interior of the unit into a basement or garage, except as provided in Section 1105A.1.

**1130A.2 Width.** The accessible route into and throughout covered multifamily dwelling units shall be at least 36 inches (914 mm) wide.

**SECTION 1131A  
CHANGES IN LEVEL ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES**

**1131A.1 Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.** Abrupt changes in level along any accessible route shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). When changes in level do occur, they shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope). Changes in level not exceeding  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) may be vertical.

**1131A.2 Changes greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.** Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be made by means of a sloped surface not greater than 1 unit vertical in 20 units hor-

izontal (5-percent slope), or a ramp, elevator or platform (wheelchair) lift. See Section 1122A for ramps and Section 1124A.11 for platform (wheelchair) lifts.

**SECTION 1132A  
DOORS**

**1132A.1 Primary entry doors and required exit doors.** The width and height of primary entry doors and all required exit doors shall comply with Section 1126A.1. The requirements of Sections 1126A.3 shall apply to maneuvering clearances at the side of the door exposed to common or public use spaces (e.g., entry or exit doors which open from the covered multifamily dwelling unit into a corridor, hallway or lobby, or directly to the outside).

**1132A.2 Interior doors and secondary exterior doors.** Except as allowed by Section 1109A.2, interior doors intended for user passage and secondary exterior doors shall comply with this section. The provisions of this section shall apply to the dwelling unit side of doors leading from the interior of the dwelling unit to an unfinished basement or an attached garage.

**1132A.3 Width and height of interior doors and secondary exterior doors.** Doors shall comply with the following:

1. Doors shall not be less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) in height.
2. Swinging doors shall provide a net clear opening width of not less than 32 inches (813 mm), measured with the door or doors positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from the closed position.
3. Swinging doors shall be capable of opening at least 90 degrees.
4. A nominal 32-inch (813 mm) clear opening provided by a standard 6-foot wide (1829 mm) sliding patio door assembly is acceptable.
5. A pair of doors, manual or automatic, must have at least one leaf which provides a clear width of not less than 32 inches (813 mm), measured with the door positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.
6. The width of any component in the means of egress system shall not be less than the minimum width required by Section 1005.

**1132A.4 Level floor or landing.** See also Chapter 10. The floor or landing on each side of a door shall be level. Primary entry doors, required exit doors or secondary exterior doors with changes in height between the interior surface or floor level and the exterior surface or floor level shall comply with the following:

1. Exterior landings of impervious construction (e.g., concrete, brick, flagstone) serving primary entry doors and required exit doors are limited to not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of change in height between floor surfaces. Changes in level shall comply with Section 1131A.
2. Exterior landings of pervious construction (e.g., wood decking with spaces) shall be the same level as the interior landing, except that secondary exterior doors may

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

have no more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of change in height between floor surfaces. Changes in level shall comply with Section 1131A.

3. Secondary exterior doors onto decks, patios or balcony surfaces constructed of impervious materials (e.g., concrete, brick, flagstone) may have a maximum change in height from the interior landing of 4 inches (101.6 mm). Changes in height greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp complying with Section 1114A or by means of a platform constructed to the level of the floor as illustrated in Figure 11A-8J.
4. Secondary exterior doors onto decks, patios or balcony surfaces constructed of impervious materials (e.g., concrete, brick, flagstone) may have a maximum change in height from the interior landing of 1 inch (25.4 mm), provided a ramp with a maximum slope of 1:8 is permanently installed. (See Figure 11A-8K.)
5. In buildings containing covered multifamily dwelling units, the floor or landing immediately outside the entry may be sloped up to  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) per foot (12 inches) (305 mm), in a direction away from the primary entrance of the dwelling unit for drainage.

**1132A.4.1 Thresholds.** Thresholds at the primary entry and required exit doors shall be no higher than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Thresholds at secondary exterior doors, including sliding door tracks, shall be no higher than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.05 mm). Changes in height at interior door thresholds (e.g., floor material changes at door thresholds) shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm). Thresholds shall comply with the following:

1. Thresholds with a change in height of not more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) may be vertical.
2. Thresholds with a change in height between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.05 mm) shall be beveled with a slope no greater than 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope).

### 1132A.5 Maneuvering clearances at doors.

**1132A.5.1 General.** The floor or landing on the dwelling unit side of the primary entry door and any required exit door shall have a minimum length of not less than 44 inches (1118 mm). Section 1126A.3 shall apply to maneuvering clearances at the side of the door exposed to common or public use spaces.

Maneuvering clearances at interior doors shall provide a minimum length on both sides of the door of at least 42 inches (1067 mm) measured at a right angle to the plane of the door in its closed position.

**Exception:** A 39-inch (991 mm) length is acceptable at interior doors when a minimum clear opening width of 34 inches (864 mm) is provided.

**1132A.5.2 Strike edge maneuvering space at doors.** The width of the level area on the side to which the door swings shall extend 18 inches (457 mm) past the strike edge for all doors. The width of the level area at the exte-

rior side of the primary entry door and any required exit doors shall comply with Section 1126A.

#### Notes:

1. See Section 1134A for bathrooms that are required to be accessible.
2. Twenty-four inches (610 mm) is preferred for strike edge clearance.

**1132A.6 Closer-effort to operate doors.** Maximum effort to operate doors shall not exceed  $8\frac{1}{2}$  pounds (38 N) for exterior doors and 5 pounds (22 N) for interior doors, such pull or push effort being applied at right angles to hinged doors and at the center plane of sliding or folding doors. Compensating devices or automatic door operators may be utilized to meet these standards. When fire doors are required, the maximum effort to operate the door may be increased to the minimum allowable by the appropriate enforcement agency, not to exceed 15 pounds (66.7 N).

**1132A.7 Type of lock or latch.** The type of latch and lock required for all doors shall be in accordance with Section 1132A.8 and Chapter 10, Section 1010.

**1132A.8 Hand-activated door hardware.** Hand-activated door latching, locking and opening hardware shall be centered between 30 inches (762 mm) and 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. Latching and locking doors that are hand-activated and on an accessible route shall be operable with a single effort by lever-type hardware, panic bars, push-pull activating bars or other hardware designed to provide passage without requiring the ability to grasp the opening hardware. Locked exit doors shall operate consistent with Section 1132A.6, in the direction of egress.

**1132A.8.1 Lever-type hardware.** The lever or lever of actuated latches or locks shall be curved with a return to within  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of the door to prevent catching on the clothing of persons during egress in Group R and U occupancies with an occupant load greater than 10.

**1132A.9 Smooth surface.** Swinging door or gate surfaces within 10 inches (254 mm) of the finish floor or ground measured vertically shall have a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door or gate. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in these surfaces shall be within  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other and be free of sharp or abrasive edges. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.

#### Exceptions:

1. Automatic doors.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at 60 degrees minimum from the horizontal.
3. Doors or gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (254 mm) of the finish floor.

**1132A.10 Door signal devices.** Every primary entrance to a covered multifamily dwelling unit shall be provided with a door buzzer, bell, chime or equivalent. The activating mechanism shall be mounted a maximum of 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor and connected to permanent wiring.

## SECTION 1133A KITCHENS

**1133A.1 General.** Kitchens shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with this section. (See Figure 11A-10A.)

**1133A.2 Clear floor space.** Clear floor space at kitchens shall comply with the following:

1. A clear floor space at least 30 inches (762 mm) by 48 inches (1219 mm) that allows a parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair shall be provided at the range or cooktop.
2. A clear floor space at least 30 inches (762 mm) by 48 inches (1219 mm) that allows either a parallel or forward approach shall be provided at the kitchen sink and all other fixtures or appliances including the oven, dishwasher, refrigerator/freezer and trash compactor.
3. A clear floor space at least 30 inches (762 mm) by 48 inches (1219 mm) that allows either a parallel or a forward approach shall be provided at the work surface required by Section 1133A.4.
4. The centerline of the 30-inch (762 mm) by 48-inch (1219 mm) clear floor space provided for parallel or forward approach shall be aligned with the centerline of the work surface, appliance or fixture.

**1133A.2.1 Clear width.** Kitchens shall have a minimum clear width measured between any cabinet, countertop or the face of any appliance (excluding handles and controls) that projects into the kitchen and the opposing cabinet, countertop, appliance or wall as follows:

1. U-shaped kitchens, designed with parallel approach at a range or cooktop located at the base of the U, shall have a minimum clear width of at least 60 inches (1524 mm). (See Figure 11A-10A.)
2. U-shaped kitchens, designed with a cooktop or sink located at the base of the U, which provides a knee and toe space in accordance with Section 1133A.7 to allow for a forward approach, shall have a clear width of at least 48 inches (1219 mm). (See Figure 11A-10A.)
3. All other kitchen designs shall provide a minimum clear width of at least 48 inches (1219 mm). (See Figure 11A-10A.)

**1133A.3 Removable base cabinets.** Sinks and work surfaces required by Section 1133A.4 (see Item 1 and Item 2) shall be provided with knee and toe space complying with Section 1133A.7. Base cabinets (including toeboard and shelving) directly under kitchen sinks and work surfaces shall be removable without the use of specialized tools or specialized knowledge in order to provide knee and toe space. The finish floor beneath kitchen sinks and work surfaces shall be extended to the wall.

**1133A.4 Countertops.** Kitchen countertops shall comply with this section and shall be provided with the following:

1. A minimum linear length of 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop shall be provided for the kitchen sink installation.

2. A minimum linear length of 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop shall be provided for a work surface.

3. Sinks and work surfaces may be a single integral unit a minimum of 60 inches (1524 mm) in length, or be separate components.

**Exception:** Two 15-inch (381 mm) wide minimum breadboards may be provided in lieu of the required 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop work surface.

**1133A.4.1 Repositionable countertops.** Repositionable countertops shall be provided in a minimum of 5 percent of the covered multifamily dwelling units. Repositionable countertops shall comply with the following:

1. Sinks and work surfaces required by Section 1133A.4 shall be designed to enable repositioning to a minimum height of 28 inches (711 mm).
2. Base cabinets directly under sinks and work surfaces shall be removable as required in Section 1133A.3.
3. The sides of adjacent cabinets and the back wall, which may become exposed to moisture or food handling when a countertop is lowered, shall be constructed of durable, nonabsorbent materials appropriate for such uses.
4. Finished flooring shall be extended to the wall beneath the sink and work surface.

**Exceptions:**

1. Stone, cultured stone and tiled countertops may be used without meeting the repositioning requirements.
2. Two 15-inch (381 mm) wide minimum breadboards may be provided in lieu of the required 30 inches (762 mm) of countertop work surface, and used without meeting the repositioning requirements.

**1133A.5 Lower shelving.** Lower shelving and/or drawer space shall be provided in the kitchen at a height of no more than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.

**1133A.6 Kitchen sink faucet controls.** Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.

The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N). Lever-operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.

**1133A.7 Knee and toe space.** Knee and toe space, when required by Section 1133A, shall comply with Section 1138A.2 and the following:

1. The knee and toe space shall be clear and unobstructed, or removable base cabinets in compliance with Section 1133A.3 shall be provided.
2. The knee and toe space shall be 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum, centered on the sink, countertop or appliance.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

3. A clear floor space shall not extend into the knee and toe space more than 19 inches (483 mm).

**1133A.7.1 Plumbing protection.** Water supply and drain pipes under kitchen sinks shall be insulated or otherwise covered to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under kitchen sinks.

## SECTION 1134A BATHING AND TOILET FACILITIES

**1134A.1 General.** All bathrooms, bathing and toilet facilities within covered multifamily dwelling units shall comply with this section.

**1134A.2 Number of complying bathrooms.** Bathrooms shall be designed to comply with one of the following options:

**Option 1.** All bathrooms within the dwelling unit shall be designed to comply with the following:

1. Toilet, bathing and shower facilities shall comply with Section 1134A.4.
2. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 1134A.5.
3. Showers shall comply with Section 1134A.6.
4. Water closets shall comply with Section 1134A.7.
5. Lavatories, vanities, mirrors and towel fixtures shall comply with Section 1134A.8.
6. Bathrooms shall be provided with an accessible route into and through the bathroom.
7. If a door is provided, it shall comply with the requirements of Section 1132A.5.
8. A minimum 18-inch (457 mm) clear maneuvering space shall be provided on the swing side of the door at the strike edge of the door.
9. Switches, outlets and controls shall comply with Section 1142A.
10. Reinforced walls to allow for the future installation of grab bars around the toilet, tub and shower shall comply with Sections 1134A.5 for bathtubs, 1134A.6 for showers and 1134A.7 for water closets.

&gt;

**Option 2.** Only one bathroom within the dwelling unit shall be designed to comply with the following:

1. Toilet, bathing and shower facilities shall comply with Section 1134A.4.
2. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 1134A.5.
3. Showers shall comply with Section 1134A.6.
4. Water closets shall comply with Section 1134A.7.
5. Lavatories, vanities, mirrors and towel fixtures shall comply with Section 1134A.8.
6. Where both a tub and shower are provided in the bathroom, at least one shall be made accessible. Additional requirements apply to dwelling units containing two or more bathrooms when a bathtub is provided as the accessible bathing fixture.

Where two or more bathrooms are provided within the same dwelling unit and a bathtub is

installed to comply with Option 2, Item 6 in one bathroom and a shower stall is provided in a subsequent bathroom, both the bathtub selected to comply with Option 2, Item 6 and at least one shower stall within the dwelling unit shall meet all the applicable accessibility requirements provided in Section 1134A. (See Section 1134A.5 for bathtubs, or Section 1134A.6 for showers.)

7. When two or more lavatories are provided, at least one shall be made accessible and comply with Section 1134A.8.
8. Bathrooms shall be provided with an accessible route into and through the bathroom.
9. If a door is provided, it shall comply with the requirements of Section 1132A.5.
10. A minimum 18-inch (457 mm) clear maneuvering space shall be provided on the swing side of the door at the strike edge of the door.
11. Switches, outlets and controls shall comply with Section 1142A.
12. Reinforced walls to allow for the future installation of grab bars around the toilet, tub and shower shall comply with Sections 1134A.5 for bathtubs, 1134A.6 for showers and 1134A.7 for water closets.

&lt;

When Option 2 is used, all additional bathrooms must comply with Items 8 through 12 above.

**1134A.3 Powder rooms.** All powder rooms shall be designed to comply with Section 1134A.2, Option 2, Items 8 through 12. When the powder room is the only toilet facility located on an accessible level, it shall comply with the Option 2 items listed above, plus all additional requirements located in Sections 1134A.4, 1134A.7 and 1134A.8.

**1134A.4 Sufficient maneuvering space.** Bathing and toilet facilities required to be adaptable shall provide sufficient maneuvering space for a person using a wheelchair or other mobility aid to enter and close the door, use the fixtures, reopen the door and exit.

Where the door swings into the bathroom or powder room, there shall be a clear maneuvering space outside the swing of the door of at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) within the room. The clear maneuvering space shall allow the user to position a wheelchair or other mobility aid clear of the path of the door as it is closed and to permit use of fixtures.

Doors may swing into the required clear space at any fixture when a clear maneuvering space is provided outside the swing arc of the door so it can be closed.

Maneuvering spaces may include any knee space or toe space available below bathroom fixtures.

**1134A.5 Bathtubs.** Bathtubs required to be accessible shall comply with this section.

1. **Floor space.** There shall be a minimum clear floor space 48 inches parallel by 30 inches perpendicular (1219 mm by 762 mm) to the side of a bathtub or bath-

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

*tub-shower combination to provide for the maneuvering of a wheelchair and transfer to and from the bathing facilities. The controls shall be on the wall at the foot of the bathtub. The edge of the clear floor space shall be flush with the control wall surface. The area under a lavatory, located at the control end of the tub, may be included in the clear floor space provided the lavatory is 19 inches (483 mm) maximum deep, and the knee and toe space comply with Section 1134A.8. Cabinets under lavatories and toilets shall not encroach into the clear floor space.*

2. **Reinforced walls for grab bars.** A bathtub installed without surrounding walls shall provide reinforced areas for the installation of floor-mounted grab bars.

*Where a bathtub is installed with surrounding walls, grab bar reinforcement shall be located on each end of the bathtub, 32 inches to 38 inches (813 mm to 965 mm) above the floor, extending a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) from the front edge of the bathtub toward the back wall of the bathtub. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) nominal in height. (See Figure 11A-9G.)*

*Grab bar reinforcement shall be installed on the back wall of the bathtub a maximum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) above the bathtub rim extending upward to at least 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor. Grab bar backing shall be installed horizontally to permit the installation of a 48-inch (1219 mm) grab bar with each end a maximum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) from the end walls of the bathtub. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) nominal in height.*

3. **Bathtub controls.** Faucet controls and operation mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.

*The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N). Lever operated, push type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs.*

4. **Shower unit.** A shower spray unit is not required in bathtubs.

5. **Bathtub enclosures.** Doors and panels of bathtub enclosures shall be substantially constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged doors shall open outward. Glazing used in doors and panels of bathtub enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall have minimum thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.17 mm) when fully tempered, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) when laminated, and shall pass the test requirements of this part, Chapter 24, Glass and Glazing. Plastics used in doors and panels of bathtub enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.

**1134A.6 Showers.** Showers required to be accessible shall comply with this section.

1. **Size.** When one or more shower stalls are provided within the same dwelling units, at least one shower stall comply with one of the following requirements.

1.1. *The shower stall shall measure at least 42 inches wide by 48 inches deep (1067 mm by 1219 mm) with an entrance opening of at least 36 inches (914 mm); or*

1.2. *The shower stall shall measure at least 30 inches deep by 60 inches wide (762 mm by 1524 mm) with an entrance opening of at least 60 inches (1524 mm). A water closet may project a maximum of 12 inches (305 mm) into the opening, provided that a minimum of 36 inches (914 mm) clear space is maintained between the water closet and the shower wall as illustrated in Figure 11A-9L; or*

1.3. *Other shower stall configurations shall measure at least 36 inches deep by 60 inches wide (914 mm by 1524 mm) with an entrance opening of at least 36 inches (914 mm) when a wall is installed on the opening side.*

2. **Slope.** The maximum slope of the shower floor shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) per foot in any direction and shall slope to a drain. The floor surfaces shall be of Carborundum or grit-faced tile or of material providing equivalent slip resistance.

3. **Floor space.** A clear maneuvering space at least 30 inches in width by 48 inches in length (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be located outside the shower, flush and parallel to the control wall.

4. **Reinforced walls for grab bars.** Grab bar reinforcement shall be installed continuous in the walls of showers 32 inches to 38 inches (813 mm to 965 mm) above the floor. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) nominal in height.

*Glass-walled shower stalls shall provide reinforcement for installation of floor-mounted or ceiling-mounted grab bars.*

5. **Thresholds.** When a threshold is used, it shall be a maximum of 2 inches (50.8 mm) in height and have a beveled or sloped angle not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (26.6 degrees from the horizontal). Thresholds  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) or less in height may have a beveled or sloped angle not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (45 degrees from the horizontal).

6. **Shower controls.** Faucet controls and operation mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N). Lever operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs.

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**7. Shower enclosures.** Doors and panels of shower enclosures shall be substantially constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged shower doors shall open outward. Glazing used in doors and panels of shower enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall have minimum thickness of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.17 mm) when fully tempered, or  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.35 mm) when laminated, and shall pass the test requirements of this part, Chapter 24, Glass and Glazing. Plastics used in doors and panels of shower enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.

**1134A.7 Water closets.** Water closets in bathrooms or powder rooms required to be accessible shall comply with this section.

**1. Floor space and location.** The minimum floor space provided at a water closet shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) in clear width. The clear floor space shall extend past the front edge of the water closet at least 36 inches (914 mm). See Figure 11A-9M.

**Exception:** The 48-inch (1219 mm) minimum clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm) for lavatories, cabinets, wing walls or privacy walls located immediately adjacent to a water closet which extend no more than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth.

Water closets shall be located within bathrooms in a manner that permits a grab bar to be installed on at least one side of the fixture. The centerline of the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum to 18 inches (457 mm) maximum from a grab bar wall or partition. In locations where water closets are adjacent to non-grab bar walls, vanities, lavatories or bathtubs, the centerline of the fixture shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) from the obstacle.

**2. Reinforced walls for grab bars.** Where the water closet is not placed adjacent to a side wall capable of accommodating a grab bar, the bathroom shall have provisions for installation of floor-mounted, foldaway or similar alternative grab bars.

Where the water closet is placed adjacent to a side wall, reinforcement shall be installed on both sides or one side and the back. If reinforcement is installed at the back, it shall be installed between 32 inches (813 mm) and 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) nominal in height. The backing shall be a minimum of 40 inches (1016 mm) in length.

Reinforcement installed at the side of the water closet shall be installed 32 inches to 38 inches (813 mm to 965 mm) above the floor. The reinforcement shall be installed a maximum of 12 inches (305 mm) from the rear wall and shall extend a minimum of 26 inches (660 mm) in front of the water closet. The grab bar reinforcement shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152.4 mm) nominal in height.

**3. Seat height.** The minimum height of water closet seats shall be 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.

**4. Water closet controls.** Water closet controls shall be mounted no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).

**1134A.8 Lavatories, vanities, mirrors and towel fixtures.** Bathrooms or powder rooms required to be accessible shall have at least one accessible lavatory. Where mirrors and towel fixtures are provided, at least one of each shall be accessible.

**1. Location.** Vanities and lavatories shall be installed with the centerline of the fixture a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) horizontally from an adjoining wall or fixture to allow for forward approach. When parallel approach is provided, lavatories shall be installed with the centerline of the fixture a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) horizontally from an adjoining wall or fixture. The top of the fixture rim shall be a maximum of 34 inches (864 mm) above the finished floor.

**2. Floor space.** A clear maneuvering space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) shall be provided at lavatories and shall be centered on the lavatory.

**3. Cabinets.** Cabinets under lavatories are acceptable provided the bathroom has space to allow a parallel approach by a person in a wheelchair and the lavatory cabinets are designed with adaptable knee and toe space.

**4. Knee and toe space.** Knee and toe space shall be provided by one of the following:

- 4.1. The space beneath the lavatory shall be left clear and unobstructed;
- 4.2. Any cabinet beneath the lavatory shall be removable without the use of specialized knowledge or specialized tools; or
- 4.3. Doors to the cabinet beneath the lavatory shall be removable or openable to provide the required unobstructed knee and toe space.

The knee and toe space shall be centered on the fixture, and shall comply with Section 1138A.2. The clear floor space required by Item 2 shall not extend into the knee and toe space more than 19 inches (483 mm). (See Figure 11A-9D.)

**5. Finished floor.** The finished floor beneath the lavatory shall be extended to the wall.

**6. Plumbing protection.** Water supply and drain pipes under lavatories shall be insulated or otherwise covered to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories.

**7. Lavatory faucet controls.** Faucet controls and operation mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.

The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N). Lever operated, push-type and electronically controlled mechanisms are examples of acceptable designs. Self-closing valves are

*allowed if the faucet remains open for at least 10 seconds.*

8. **Mirrors and towel fixtures.** Where mirrors or towel fixtures are provided they shall be mounted with the bottom edge no higher than 40 inches (1016 mm) from the floor.

## SECTION 1135A LAUNDRY ROOMS

**1135A.1 General.** If clothes washing machines and clothes dryers are provided in covered multifamily dwelling units, one of each type of appliance shall be provided. Where front-loading clothes washers are not provided, management shall provide assistive devices, on request of the occupant, to permit the use of top-loading clothes washers.

*from the bottom of the outlet box to the level of the finished floor or working platform. If the reach is over a physical barrier or an obstruction (for example, a kitchen base cabinet) switches and controls shall be located within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Physical barriers or obstructions shall not extend more than 25 inches (635 mm) from the wall beneath a control or switch. Countertops shall be allowed to extend 25½ inches (647.7 mm) from the wall beneath a control or switch.*

*Switches and controls that do not satisfy these specifications are acceptable provided that comparable controls or outlets, that perform the same functions, are provided within the same area and are accessible.*

**Exception:** Appliances (e.g., kitchen stoves, dishwashers, range hoods, microwave ovens and similar appliances) which have controls located on the appliance.

## SECTION 1136A ELECTRICAL RECEPTACLE, SWITCH AND CONTROL HEIGHTS

**1136A.1 Receptacle heights.** Electrical receptacle outlets on branch circuits of 30 amperes or less and communication system receptacles shall be located no more than 48 inches (1219 mm) measured from the top of the receptacle outlet box nor less than 15 inches (381 mm) measured from the bottom of the receptacle outlet box to the level of the finished floor or working platform. If the reach is over a physical barrier or an obstruction (for example, a kitchen base cabinet), receptacles shall be located within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Physical barriers and obstructions shall not extend more than 25 inches (635 mm) from the wall beneath the receptacle. Countertops shall be allowed to extend 25½ inches (647.7 mm) from the wall beneath the receptacle.

*Receptacle outlets that do not satisfy these specifications are acceptable provided that comparable receptacle outlets, that perform the same functions, are provided within the same area and are accessible.*

**Exceptions:**

1. Receptacle outlets installed as part of permanently installed baseboard heaters are exempt.
2. Required receptacle outlets shall be permitted in floors when adjacent to sliding panels or walls.
3. Baseboard electrical outlets used in relocatable partitions, window walls or other electrical convenience floor outlets are not subject to the minimum height requirements.
4. This section shall not apply to existing buildings when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these standards would create an unreasonable hardship.

**1136A.2 Switch and control heights.** Controls or switches intended to be used by the occupant of the room or area to control lighting and receptacle outlets, appliances, alarms or cooling, heating and ventilating equipment shall be located no more than 48 inches (1219 mm) measured from the top of the outlet box nor less than 15 inches (381 mm) measured

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

### Division V – FEATURES COMMON TO EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR OF BUILDINGS

#### Division V Table of Contents

- Section 1137A Other Features and Facilities
- Section 1138A Space Allowances and Reach Ranges
- Section 1139A Accessible Drinking Fountains
- Section 1140A Accessible Telephones
- Section 1141A Accessible Swimming Pools
- Section 1142A Electrical Receptacle, Switch and Control Heights
- Section 1143A Signage
- Section 1144A through 1149A Reserved

### SECTION 1137A OTHER FEATURES AND FACILITIES

**1137A.1 General.** This division shall apply to features and facilities of common use areas on accessible floors or sites.

**Note:** The provisions in this division are not applicable to dwelling units, unless otherwise specified.

### SECTION 1138A SPACE ALLOWANCES AND REACH RANGES

#### 1138A.1 Space allowances.

**1138A.1.1 Single wheelchair passage width.** The minimum clear width for single wheelchair passage shall be 36 inches (914 mm) continuously. (See Figure 11A-1E.)

See Section 1113A for minimum clear width of sidewalks, and Section 1120A for minimum clear width of interior accessible routes.

**Exception:** 32 inches (813 mm) in width is acceptable at a point not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) in length. The segments with reduced width shall be separated by segments that are 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum.

**1138A.1.2 Width for two wheelchairs passing.** The minimum width for two wheelchairs to pass is 60 inches (1524 mm) (See Figure 11A-1E).

An accessible route (exterior and interior) with a clear width less than 60 inches (1524 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (60 960 mm) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either: a space 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum; or, an intersection of two walking surfaces providing a T-shaped space complying with Section 1138A.1.3.1, where the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum beyond the intersection. (See Figure 11A-1L.)

**1138A.1.3 Wheelchair turning space.** The space required for a wheelchair to make a 180-degree turn shall be a circular clear space of 60 inches (1524 mm) diameter minimum (See Figure 11A-1D(a)); or a T-shaped space complying with Section 1138A.1.3.1. The circular turning

space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 1138A.2.

If a person in a wheelchair must make a turn around an obstruction, the minimum clear width of the accessible route shall be as required in Section 1138A.1.5.

**1138A.1.3.1 T-shaped turning space.** A T-shaped turning space shall be within a 60 inch (1524 mm) square minimum with arms and base 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction, and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 1138A.2 only at the end of either the base or one arm. (See Figure 11A-1D (b).)

**1138A.1.3.2 Surfaces of turning spaces.** Turning spaces for wheelchairs shall be stable, firm, slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 1110A.3 or Section 1119A.2. Changes in level are not permitted. Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

#### 1138A.1.4 Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs.

**1138A.1.4.1 Size and approach.** The minimum clear floor or ground space shall be 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm). The minimum clear floor or ground space may be positioned for forward or parallel approach to an object (See Figure 11A-1G). Clear floor or ground space may be part of the knee and toe space required under some objects unless otherwise specified.

**1138A.1.4.2 Relationship of maneuvering clearances to wheelchair spaces.** One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin an accessible route or adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space.

If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or a part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided in accordance with the following: (See Figure 11A-1H).

**1. Forward approach.** Alcoves shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum when the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).

**2. Parallel approach.** Alcoves shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum when the depth exceeds 15 inches (381 mm).

**1138A.1.4.3 Surfaces of wheelchair spaces.** Clear floor or ground spaces for wheelchairs shall be stable, firm, slip resistant, and shall comply with Section 1110A.3 or Section 1119A.2. Changes in level are not permitted. Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

**1138A.1.4.3.1 Gratings.** Gratings located in ground and floor surfaces along accessible routes shall be limited to spaces no greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) wide in one direction. If gratings have elongated openings, they shall be placed so that the long

dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of traffic.

**1138A.1.5 Turn around obstruction.** When the accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an element which is less than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, clear width shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum at the turn and 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum leaving the turn. When the clear width at the turn is 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, the clear width when approaching and when leaving the turn shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum. (See Figure 11A-1C (b).)

When the accessible route makes a 90 degree turn around an element which is more than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, clear width shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum approaching the turn, at the turn and leaving the turn. (See Figure 11A-1C (a).)

**1138A.2 Knee and toe space.** When space beneath an accessible element is included as part of a clear floor space, or turning space, the space shall comply with this section. Additional space shall not be prohibited beneath an element but shall not be considered as part of the clear floor space or turning space. (See Figure 11A-9D.)

**1138A.2.1 Knee space.** Space under an element between 9 inches (229 mm) and 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor shall be considered knee space. The knee space shall be clear and unobstructed.

**Exceptions:**

1. For lavatories required to be accessible, the knee space shall be at least 29 inches (737 mm) high at the front face and reducing to not less than 27 inches (686 mm) at a point 8 inches (203.2 mm) back from the front edge.
2. For lavatories and sinks required to be accessible, the dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.

**1138A.2.1.1 Minimum width.** Knee space shall be 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum.

**1138A.2.1.2 Maximum depth.** Knee space shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor.

**1138A.2.1.3 Minimum depth.** When knee space is required under an element as part of a clear floor space, the knee space shall be 11 inches (279 mm) deep minimum at 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor, and 8 inches (203 mm) deep minimum at 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor, measured from the front edge of the element.

**Exceptions:**

1. Combined knee and toe space shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) minimum under sinks required to be accessible.
2. Combined knee and toe space shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) minimum under built-in dining and work surfaces required to be accessible.

**1138A.2.1.4 Clearance reduction.** Between 9 inches (229 mm) and 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor, the knee space shall be permitted to be reduced at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for each 6 inches (152 mm) in height.

**1138A.2.2 Toe space.** Space under an element between the finish floor and 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor shall be considered toe space.

**1138A.2.2.1 Minimum width.** Toe space shall be 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum.

**1138A.2.2.2 Maximum depth.** Toe space shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.

**1138A.2.2.3 Minimum depth.** When toe space is required under an element as part of a clear floor space, the toe space shall extend 17 inches (432 mm) minimum under the element, measured from the front edge of the element.

**Exceptions:**

1. Combined knee and toe space shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) minimum under sinks required to be accessible.
2. Combined knee and toe space shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) minimum under built-in dining and work surfaces required to be accessible.

**1138A.2.2.4 Additional clearance.** Space extending greater than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the available knee space at 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor shall not be considered toe space.

**1138A.3 Reach ranges.**

**1138A.3.1 Forward reach.**

**1. Unobstructed.** When the clear floor space allows only forward approach to an object, the maximum high forward reach allowed shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) and the minimum low forward reach shall be no less than 15 inches (381 mm) above the finish floor. (See Figure 11A-1I(a).)

**2. Obstructed high reach.** When the high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space shall extend beneath the element for a distance not less than the reach depth over the obstruction.

The high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum when the reach depth is 20 inches (508 mm) maximum. When the reach depth exceeds 20 inches (508 mm), but is not more than 25 inches (635 mm), the high forward reach shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum. (See Figure 11A-1I(b).)

**1138A.3.2 Side reach.**

**1. Unobstructed.** When a clear floor space allows a parallel approach to an element, and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum, and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

above the finish floor. (See Figures 11A-1J(a) and 11A-1J(b).)

### Exceptions:

1. An obstruction shall be permitted between the clear floor space and the element when the depth of the obstruction is 10 inches (254 mm) maximum.
2. Bookshelves shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Bookshelves may be greater than 54 inches (1372 mm) above the finish floor when an attendant is available to assist persons with disabilities.
2. **Obstructed high reach.** When a clear floor space allows a parallel approach to an element and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction shall be 34 inches (864 mm) maximum and the depth of the obstruction shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.

The high side reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 10 inches (254 mm) maximum. When the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (254 mm), but no more than 24 inches (610 mm), the high side reach shall be 46 inches (1168 mm) maximum. (See Figure 11A-1J(c).)

**Exception:** Kitchen countertops in dwelling units, and the top of washing machines and clothes dryers shall be permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

### 1138A.4 Controls and operating mechanisms.

**Note:** See also Section 1142A for receptacle, switch and control installation.

**1138A.4.1 General.** Controls and operating mechanisms in accessible spaces, along accessible routes or as part of accessible elements shall comply with this section.

**1138A.4.2 Clear floor space.** Clear floor space complying with Section 1138A.1.4 that allows a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at all controls and operating mechanisms.

**1138A.4.3 Height.** Controls and operating mechanisms shall be located no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm), and no lower than 15 inches (381 mm), above the finished floor measured to the center of the grip. If the reach is over an obstruction (for example, washer or dryer), controls and operating mechanisms shall be located within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Controls and operating mechanisms that do not satisfy these specifications are acceptable, provided that comparable mechanisms, controls or outlets, that perform the same functions, are provided within the same area and are accessible.

**1138A.4.4 Operation.** Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.

The force required to activate controls and operating mechanisms shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).

## SECTION 1139A ACCESSIBLE DRINKING FOUNTAINS

**1139A.1 General.** Drinking fountains and water coolers in common use areas and/or sites shall comply with this section. A side approach drinking fountain is not acceptable. (See Figure 11A-11A.)

**1139A.2 Accessible route.** Drinking fountains and water coolers shall be on an accessible route.

**1139A.3 Depth.** Drinking fountains shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) and a maximum of 19 inches (483 mm) in depth.

**1139A.4 Clear floor space.** Drinking fountains shall be provided with 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) clear floor space, centered on the unit. The clear floor space shall be positioned for a forward approach.

**1139A.4.1 Knee and toe space.** Drinking fountains shall be provided with a clear and unobstructed knee and toe space. Knee and toe space shall comply with Section 1138A.2.

**1139A.5 Spout location.** The spout shall be located 15 inches (381 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (127 mm) maximum from the front edge of the drinking fountain, including bumpers. Spout outlets shall be 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**1139A.6 Water flow.** The spout shall provide a flow of water at least 4 inches (101.6 mm) high to allow the insertion of a cup or glass under the flow of water. The angle of the water stream shall be measured horizontally relative to the front face of the unit. When spouts are located less than 3 inches (76 mm) from the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 30 degrees maximum. When spouts are located between 3 inches (76 mm) and 5 inches (127 mm) maximum from the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 15 degrees maximum.

**1139A.7 Controls and operating mechanisms.** The flow of water shall be activated by manually or electronically operated controls. The manually operated controls shall be front mounted or side mounted, located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the front edge of the fountain. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22.2 N).

**1139A.8 Location.** Drinking fountains shall be located completely within alcoves, between wing walls or otherwise positioned so as not to encroach into pedestrian ways. The alcove or otherwise protected area in which the drinking fountain is located shall not be less than 32 inches (813 mm) in width and 18 inches (457 mm) in depth. When the depth of the protected area where the drinking fountain is located exceeds 24 inches (610 mm), additional maneuvering clearance shall be provided in accordance with Section 1138A.1.4.2 and Figure 11A-1H.

*When provided, wing walls shall project out from the supporting wall at least as far as the drinking fountain to within 6 inches (152.4 mm) vertically from the finish floor.*

*Protruding objects located in alcoves or otherwise positioned so as to limit encroachment into pedestrian ways are permitted to project 4 inches (101.6 mm) into walks, halls, corridors, passageways or aisles. (See Figure 11A-11A.)*

## **SECTION 1140A ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES**

**1140A.1 General.** When public telephones are provided, they shall comply with this section. On floors where public telephones are provided, at least one telephone shall be accessible. On any floor where two or more banks of multiple telephones are provided, at least one telephone in each bank shall be accessible.

**1140A.2 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space at least 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) that allows either a forward or parallel approach by a person using a wheelchair shall be provided at telephones. The clear floor or ground space shall comply with Section 1138A.1.4. Bases, enclosures and fixed seats shall not impede approaches to telephones by people who use wheelchairs. (See Figure 11A-11B.)

*Clear floor or ground space for wheelchairs may be part of the knee space required under some objects.*

**1140A.3 Relationship of maneuvering clearances to wheelchair spaces.** One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space for a wheelchair shall adjoin another wheelchair clear floor space. If a clear floor space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearances shall be provided. (See Section 1138A.1.4.)

**1140A.4 Mounting height.** The highest operable part of the telephone shall be within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3 (See Figure 11A-11B.)

**1140A.5 Enclosures.** If telephone enclosures are provided, they shall comply with Sections 1140A.5.1 and 1140A.5.2. (See Figure 11A-11B.)

**1140A.5.1 Parallel approach.** Where a parallel approach is provided, the distance from the edge of the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone unit shall be 10 inches (254 mm) maximum.

**1140A.5.2 Forward approach.** Where a forward approach is provided, the counter may extend beyond the face of the telephone 20 inches (508 mm) maximum into the required clear floor or ground space and the enclosure may extend beyond the face of the telephone 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. If an additional 6 inches (152 mm) in width of clear floor space is provided, creating a clear floor space of 36 inches by 48 inches (914 mm by 1219 mm), the enclosure may extend more than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the face of the telephone.

**1140A.6 Equipment for hearing impaired people.** Telephones shall be equipped with a receiver that generates a

magnetic field in the area of the receiver cap. A reasonable number of the public telephones provided, but always at least one on each floor or in each bank, whichever is more, in a building or facility, shall be equipped with a volume control. Such telephones shall be capable of providing a gain adjustable up to 20 dB minimum. For incremental volume control, at least one intermediate step of 12 dB of gain minimum shall be provided. An automatic reset shall also be provided. Public telephones with volume control shall be hearing aid compatible and shall be identified by a sign containing a depiction of a telephone handset with radiating sound waves. (See Figure 11A-11D.)

**1140A.7 Text telephones (TTY).** If a total of four or more public pay telephones are provided at the interior and exterior of a site, and if at least one of the total number provided is located in an interior location, at least one interior public text telephone shall be provided. TTYS provided at a public pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. Where an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the TTY and the telephone receiver.

**1140A.7.1 Signage.** Text telephones shall be identified by the International TTY symbol (see Figure 11A-11C). If a facility has a public text telephone, directional signage indicating the location of the nearest such telephone shall be placed adjacent to all banks of telephones that do not contain a text telephone. Such directional signage shall include the International TTY symbol. If a facility has no banks of telephones, the directional signage shall be provided at the entrance or in a building directory.

**1140A.7.2 Height.** When in use, the touch surface of TTY keypads shall be 34 inches (864 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

**1140A.8 Controls.** Telephones shall have push-button controls where service for such equipment is available. Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with Section 1138A.4.

**1140A.9 Cord length.** The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be at least 29 inches (737 mm) long.

**1140A.10 Telephone books.** If telephone books are provided, they shall be located in a position that complies with the reach ranges in Section 1138A.3.

**1140A.11 Shelf.** Public pay telephones required to accommodate a portable TTY shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommodating a TTY and shall have 6 inches (152 mm) minimum vertical clearance above the area where the TTY is to be placed.

## **SECTION 1141A ACCESSIBLE SWIMMING POOLS**

**1141A.1 General.** Swimming pools in common use areas shall comply with the provisions of this section and Chapter 31B.

**1141A.2 Swimming pool deck areas.** Swimming pool deck areas must be accessible, and a mechanism to assist persons with disabilities gain entry into the pool and exit from the

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

pool shall be provided. Such a mechanism may consist of a swimming pool lift device as long as the device meets all of the following criteria:

1. Has a seat that meets all of the following:
  - 1.1. The seat must be rigid;
  - 1.2. The seat must be not less than 17 inches (432 mm) and not more than 19 inches (483 mm), inclusive of any cushioned surface that might be provided, above the pool deck;
  - 1.3. The seat must have two armrests. The armrest on the side of the seat by which access is gained shall be either removable or fold clear of the seat;
  - 1.4. The seat must have a back support that is at least 12 inches (305 mm) tall; and
  - 1.5. The seat must have an occupant restraint for use by the occupant of the seat and the restraint must meet the standards for operable controls in compliance with Section 1138A.4.4.
2. Be capable of unassisted operation from both the deck and water levels.
3. Be stable and not permit unintended movement when a person is getting into or out of the seat.
4. Be designed to have a live-load capacity of not less than 300 pounds.
5. Be positioned so that, if the pool has water of different depths, it will place the operator into water that is at least 3 feet (914 mm) deep.
6. Be capable of lowering the operator at least 18 inches (457 mm) below the surface of the water.

### SECTION 1142A ELECTRICAL RECEPTACLE, SWITCH AND CONTROL HEIGHTS

**1142A.1 Receptacle heights.** Electrical receptacle outlets on branch circuits of 30 amperes or less and communication system receptacles shall be located no more than 48 inches (1219 mm) measured from the top of the receptacle outlet box nor less than 15 inches (381 mm) measured from the bottom of the receptacle outlet box to the level of the finished floor or working platform. If the reach is over a physical barrier or an obstruction (for example, a kitchen base cabinet), receptacles shall be located within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Physical barriers and obstructions shall not extend more than 25 inches (635 mm) from the wall beneath the receptacle.

Receptacle outlets that do not satisfy these specifications are acceptable provided that comparable receptacle outlets, that perform the same functions, are provided within the same area and are accessible.

#### Exceptions:

1. Receptacle outlets installed as part of permanently installed baseboard heaters are exempt.
2. Required receptacle outlets shall be permitted in floors when adjacent to sliding panels or walls.

3. Baseboard electrical outlets used in relocatable partitions, window walls or other electrical convenience floor outlets are not subject to the minimum height requirements.
4. This section shall not apply to existing buildings when the enforcing agency determines that compliance with these standards would create an unreasonable hardship.

**1142A.2 Switch and control heights.** Controls or switches intended to be used by the occupant of the room or area to control lighting and receptacle outlets, appliances, alarms or cooling, heating and ventilating equipment shall be located no more than 48 inches (1219 mm) measured from the top of the outlet box nor less than 15 inches (381 mm) measured from the bottom of the outlet box to the level of the finished floor or working platform. If the reach is over a physical barrier or an obstruction (for example, a kitchen base cabinet), switches and controls shall be located within the reach ranges specified in Section 1138A.3. Physical barriers or obstructions shall not extend more than 25 inches (635 mm) from the wall beneath a switch or control.

Switches and controls that do not satisfy these specifications are acceptable provided that comparable controls or outlets, that perform the same functions, are provided within the same area and are accessible.

### SECTION 1143A SIGNAGE

**1143A.1 General.** When signs and/or identification devices are provided they shall comply with this section.

When both visual and tactile characters are required, either one sign with both visual and tactile characters, or two separate signs—one with visual and one with tactile characters—shall be provided.

**Exception:** Signs need not be provided within dwelling units.

**Note:** See Section 1127A.7 for additional signage requirements applicable to sanitary facilities, and Section 1124A for additional signage requirements applicable to elevators.

**1143A.2 Identification signs.** When signs identify permanent rooms and spaces of a building or site, they shall comply with Sections 1143A.1, 1143A.5, 1143A.6 and 1143A.7.

**Exception:** Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve shall not be required to comply with Section 1143A.6.

**1143A.3 Directional and informational signs.** When signs direct to or give information about permanent rooms and spaces of a building or site, they shall comply with Sections 1143A.5.

**1143A.4 Accessibility signs.** When signs identify, direct or give information about accessible elements and features of a building or site, they shall include the appropriate symbol of accessibility and shall comply with Section 1143A.5.

### 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**TABLE 1143A.5**  
**VISUAL CHARACTER HEIGHT**

HEIGHT TO FINISH FLOOR FROM BASELINE OF CHARACTER	HORIZONTAL VIEWING DISTANCE	MINIMUM CHARACTER HEIGHT
40 inches (1016 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1778 mm)	Less than 72 inches (1829 mm)	$\frac{5}{8}$ inch (15.9 mm)
	72 inches (1829 mm) and greater	$\frac{5}{8}$ inch (15.9 mm), plus $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 72 inches (1829 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1778 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3048 mm)	Less than 180 inches (4572 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	180 inches (4572 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 180 inches (4572 mm)
Greater than 120 inches (3048 mm)	Less than 21 feet (6401 mm)	3 inches (76 mm)
	21 feet (6401 mm) and greater	3 inches (76 mm), plus $\frac{1}{8}$ inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6401 mm)

**1143A.5 Visual characters.** Signs with visual characters shall comply with this section.

- Finish and contrast.** Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.
- Character type.** Characters shall be uppercase, lowercase or a combination of both. Characters shall be conventional in form, and shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative or of other unusual forms.
- Proportions.** Characters on signs shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 60 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".
- Character height.** Visual characters shall be sized in accordance with Table 1143A.5. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign. Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I".
- Height from finish floor.** Visual characters shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

**Exceptions:**

- Visual characters indicating elevator car controls.
- Floor-level exit signs complying with Chapter 10, Section 1011.6.
- Stroke thickness.** Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 10 percent minimum and 20 percent maximum of the height of the character.
- Character spacing.** Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of character height.
- Line spacing.** Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.
- Character format.** Text shall be in a horizontal format.

**1143A.6 Raised characters and pictorial symbol signs.** When raised characters are required or when pictorial symbols (pictograms) are used on such signs, they shall comply with this section. Raised characters and pictorial symbols shall be duplicated in Braille complying with Section 1143A.7.

- Character type.** Raised characters on signs shall be  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) minimum above their background. Characters shall be sans serif uppercase, and shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative or of other unusual forms.
- Character height.** Character height measured vertically from the baseline of the character shall be  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum based on the height of the uppercase letter "I".
- Character format.** Characters and Braille shall be in a horizontal format.
- Proportions.** Raised characters on signs shall be selected from fonts when the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 60 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".
- Stroke thickness.** Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 15 percent maximum of the height of the character.
- Character spacing.** Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent raised characters within a message, excluding word spaces. When characters have rectangular cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum. When characters have other cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the base of the cross sections, and  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the top of the cross sections. Characters shall be separated from raised borders and decorative elements  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum.
- Line spacing.** Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of raised characters within a message shall

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the raised character height.

8. **Location.** When a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door at the latch side. When a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign shall be located on the inactive leaf. When a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leaves, the sign shall be located to the right of the right hand door. When there is no wall space at the latch side of a single door or at the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 18 inches (457 mm) minimum by 18 inches (457 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position. When permanent identification signage is provided for rooms and spaces they shall be located on the approach side of the door as one enters the room or space. Signs that identify exits shall be located on the approach side of the door as one exits the room or space.
9. **Height.** Signs with raised characters shall be located 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum above the finish floor, measured from the baseline of the lowest Braille cells and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum above the finish floor, measured from the baseline of the highest line of raised characters.

**Exception:** Tactile characters for elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with this section.

10. **Pictorial symbol signs (pictograms).** Pictorial symbol signs (pictograms) shall be accompanied by a text description located directly below the pictogram field. The text description shall comply with Sections 1143A.6 and 1143A.7. The outside dimension of the pictogram field shall be a minimum of 6 inches (152 mm) in height. Characters and Braille shall not be located in the pictogram field.

**1143A.7 Braille.** Contracted Grade 2 Braille shall be used wherever Braille is required in other portions of these standards.

**1143A.7.1 Dimensions and capitalization.** Braille dots shall have a domed or rounded shape and shall comply with Table 1143A.7.1. The indication of an uppercase letter or letters shall only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials and acronyms.

**1143A.7.2 Position.** Braille shall be positioned below the corresponding text in a horizontal format, flush left or centered. If text is multilined, braille shall be placed below the entire text. Braille shall be separated  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) maximum from any other tactile characters and  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements.

**Exception:** Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) minimum and

shall be located directly below the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

**TABLE 1143A.7.1 BRAILLE DIMENSIONS**

MEASUREMENT RANGE	MINIMUM IN INCHES MAXIMUM IN INCHES
Dot base diameter	0.059 (1.5 mm) to 0.063 (1.6 mm)
Distance between two dots in the same cell <sup>1</sup>	0.100 (2.5 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells <sup>1</sup>	0.300 (7.6 mm)
Dot height	0.025 (0.6 mm) to 0.037 (0.9 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots from one cell directly below <sup>1</sup>	0.395 (10 mm) to 0.400 (10.2 mm)

1. Measured center to center.

**1143A.8 Symbols of accessibility.** Symbols of accessibility and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Symbols of accessibility shall contrast with their background with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background. Symbols of accessibility shall comply with the following:

1. **International Symbol of Accessibility.** The "International Symbol of Accessibility" shall consist of a white figure on a blue background. The color blue shall approximate FS 15090 in Federal Standard 595C. (See Figure 11A-1A.)
2. **International Symbol of TTY.** (See Figure 11A-11C.)
3. **Volume Control Telephones.** (See Figure 11A-11D.)
4. **Assistive Listening Systems.** (See Figure 11A-11E.)
5. **Cleaner Air Symbol.** (See Chapter 11B.)
6. **Toilet and Bathing Facilities Geometric Symbols.** (See Section 1127A.7.)

### SECTION 1144A Reserved

### SECTION 1145A Reserved

### SECTION 1146A Reserved

### SECTION 1147A Reserved

### SECTION 1148A Reserved

### SECTION 1149A Reserved

**Division VI – SITE IMPRACTICALITY TESTS****Division VI Table of Contents****Section 1150A Site Impracticality Tests****Test No. 1—Individual Building Test****Test No. 2—Site Analysis Test****Test No. 3—Unusual Characteristics Test**

**SECTION 1150A  
SITE IMPRACTICALITY TESTS**

**1150A.1 General.** Covered multifamily dwellings in buildings without an elevator, located on sites with difficult terrain conditions or unusual characteristics, may employ the site impracticality tests in this division for determining the accessibility and adaptability provisions required by this chapter.

Except as provided for in Section 1102A.3.1, the provisions of this section do not apply to multistory dwelling units in nonelevator buildings.

**SINGLE BUILDING WITH  
ONE COMMON (LOBBY) ENTRANCE**

The following may only be used for determining required access to covered multifamily dwelling units, in a single building with one common (lobby) entrance, located on a site with difficult terrain conditions or unusual characteristics:

All ground floor units in nonelevator buildings shall be adaptable and on an accessible route unless an accessible route to the common (lobby) entrance is not required as determined by Test No. 1, Individual Building Test, or Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test, as described in this section.

Sites where either Test No. 1 or Test No. 3 is used and it is determined that an accessible route to the common (lobby) entrance is not required, at least 20 percent of the ground floor dwelling units shall comply with Division IV, and all remaining ground floor dwelling units shall comply with the features listed in Section 1150A.2 unless exempted by Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test.

Test No. 1—Individual Building Test may only be used if the site has terrain over 15 percent slope.

Test No. 3—Unusual Characteristics Test may be used if applicable.

**Provisions to Test Nos. 1 and 2.** Where a building elevator is provided only as means of creating an accessible route to covered multifamily dwelling units on a ground floor, the building is not considered to be an elevator building for purposes of this code; hence, only the ground floor dwelling units would be covered.

**TEST NO. 1—INDIVIDUAL BUILDING TEST**

*It is not required by this code to provide an accessible route when the terrain of the site is such that both of the following apply:*

1. *The slopes of the undisturbed site measured between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance exceed 15 percent; and*
2. *The slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance also exceed 15 percent.*

*If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, the slope for the purposes of Test No. 1 will be measured to the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point.*

*For purposes of these requirements, vehicular or pedestrian arrival points include public or resident parking areas, public transportation stops, passenger loading zones and public streets or sidewalks. To determine site impracticality, the slope would be measured at ground level from the point of the planned entrance on a straight line to (1) each vehicular or pedestrian arrival point that is within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, or (2) if there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within the specified area, the vehicular or pedestrian arrival point closest to the planned entrance. In the case of sidewalks, the closest point to the entrance will be where a public sidewalk entering the site intersects with the walk to the entrance. In the case of resident parking areas, the closest point to the planned entrance will be measured from the entry point to the parking area that is located closest to the planned entrance.*

**TEST NO. 2—SITE ANALYSIS TEST**

*For a site having multiple buildings, or a site with a single building with multiple entrances, it is not required to provide an accessible route to all ground floor units under the following conditions:*

1. *Calculate the percentage of the total buildable area of the undisturbed site with a natural grade less than 10-percent slope. The analysis of the existing slope (before grading) shall be done on a topographic survey with 2-foot (610 mm) contour intervals with slope determination made between each successive interval. The accuracy of the slope analysis shall be certified by a licensed engineer, landscape architect, architect or surveyor.*
2. *Determine the requirement of providing an accessible route to planned multifamily dwellings based on the topography of the existing natural terrain. The minimum percentage of ground floor units required on an accessible route shall equal the percentage of the total buildable area (not restricted-use areas) of*

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

*the undisturbed site with an existing natural grade of less than 10-percent slope. In no case shall less than 20 percent of the ground floor dwelling units be on an accessible route and comply with the provisions of Division IV.*

3. *In addition to the percentage established in paragraph (2), all additional ground floor units in a building or ground floor units served by a particular entrance, that fall within an 8.33-percent slope between their planned entrances and an arrival point shall be on an accessible route and comply with the provisions of Division IV.*
4. *All additional ground floor units in a building, or ground floor units served by a particular entrance, not on an accessible route shall comply with the features listed in Section 1150A.2.*

### TEST NO. 3—UNUSUAL CHARACTERISTICS TEST

*Unusual characteristics include sites located in a state or federally designated floodplain or coastal high-hazard areas and sites subject to other similar requirements of law or code that require the lowest floor or the lowest structural member of the lowest floor to be designed to a specified level at or above the base flood elevation. An accessible route to a building entrance is impractical due to unusual characteristics of the site when:*

1. *The original site characteristics result in a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and 10 percent measured between an entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance; or*
2. *If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, the unusual characteristics result in a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and 10 percent measured between an entrance and the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point.*

### 1150A.2 Additional requirements for Section 1150A.

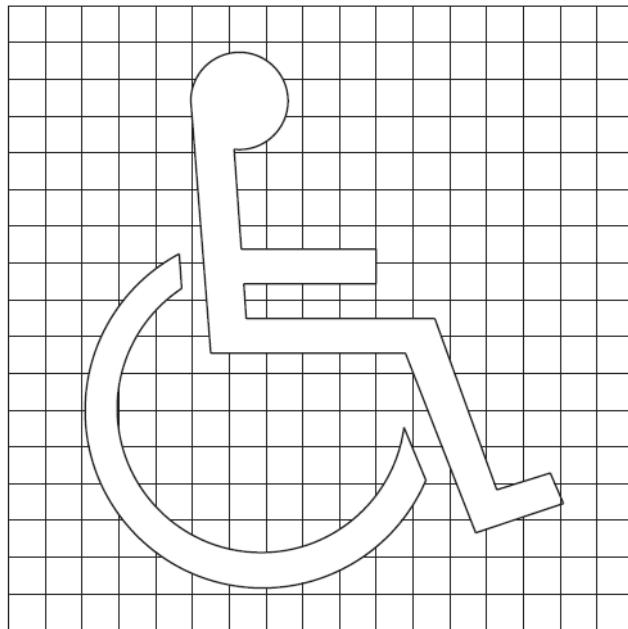
*All other ground floor dwelling units in nonelevator buildings shall be made to comply with the following requirements:*

1. *Grab bar reinforcement: see Section 1134A.*
2. *Thirty-two inch (813 mm) clear door interior opening width: see Section 1132A.3.*
3. *Lever hardware: see Section 1132A.8.*
4. *Door signal devices: see Section 1132A.10.*
5. *Clear space by doors: see Chapters 10 and 11A.*
6. *Minimum 15-inch (381 mm) water closet seat height: see Section 1134A.7, Item 3.*
7. *Electrical receptacle outlet height: see Section 1136A.*
8. *Lighting and environmental control height: see Section 1136A.*
9. *Faucet controls: see Section 1134A.8, Item 7.*

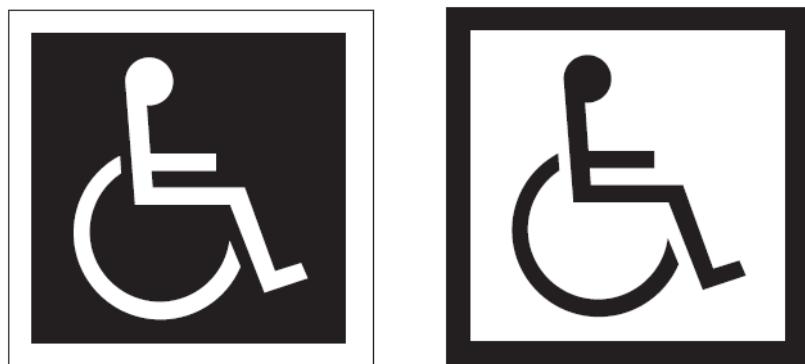
10. *Water closet, bathtub and lavatory minimum space requirements: see Section 1134A.*
11. *Removable cabinets under the kitchen sink counter area: see Section 1133A.3.*

**Division VII – FIGURES**

Diagrams illustrate the specific requirements of these regulations and are intended only as an aid for building design and construction. Diagrams are not to scale.

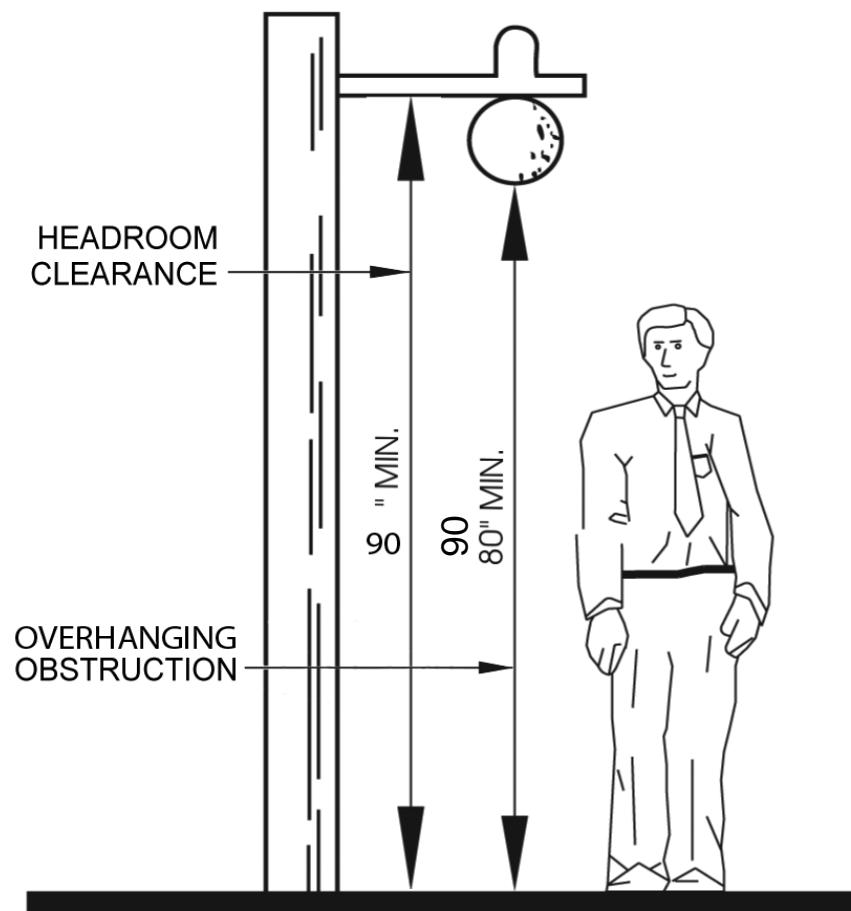


(a) SYMBOL PROPORTIONS



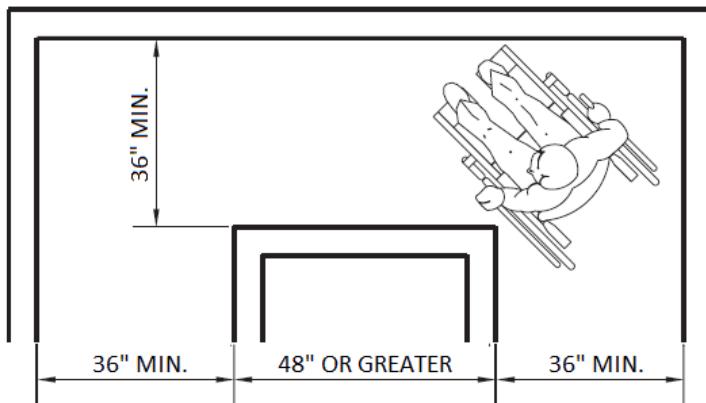
(b) DISPLAY CONDITIONS

**FIGURE 11A-1A**  
**INTERNATIONAL ACCESSIBILITY SYMBOL**

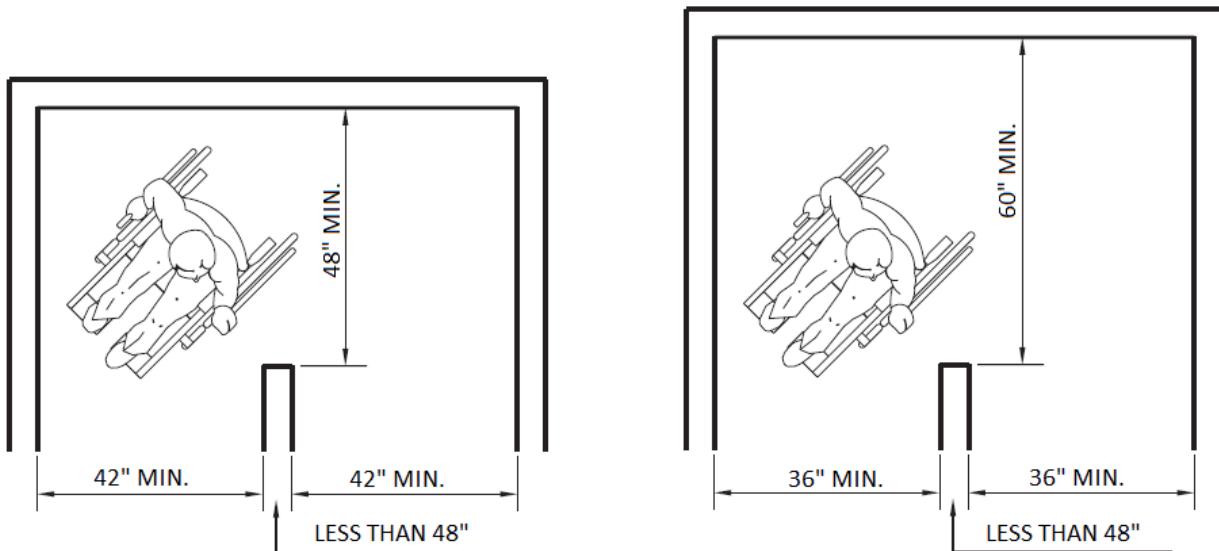


**FIGURE 11A-1B**  
**HEADROOM CLEARANCE AND OVERHANGING OBSTRUCTION**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



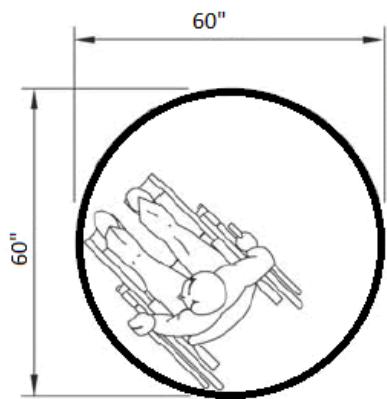
(a) 90° TURN AROUND OBSTRUCTION



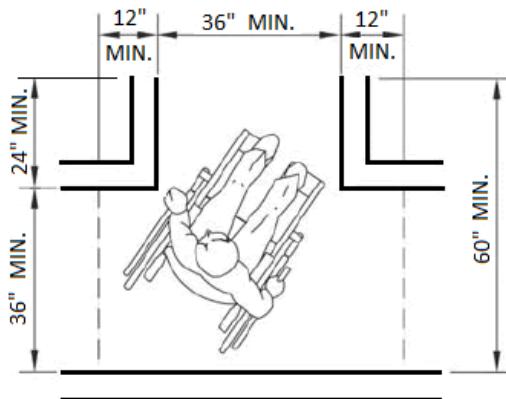
(b) 180° TURN AROUND OBSTRUCTION

**FIGURE 11A-1C**  
WIDTH OF ACCESSIBLE ROUTE AT TURNS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

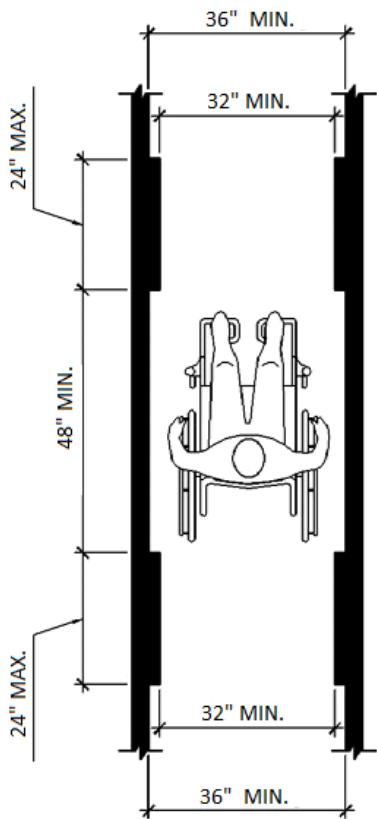


(a) 60 INCHES DIAMETER SPACE

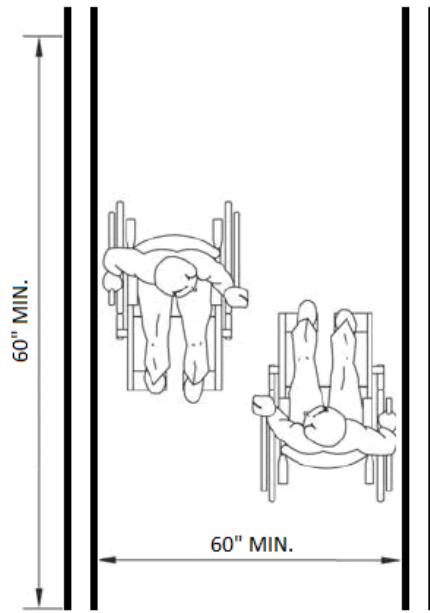


(b) T-SHAPED SPACE FOR 180 ° TURN

FIGURE 11A-1D  
WHEELCHAIR TURNING SPACE



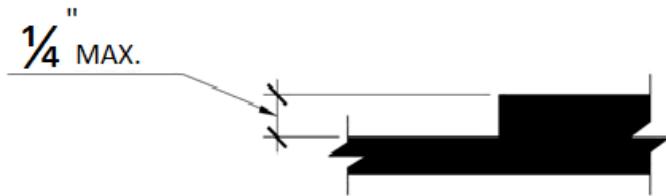
MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH FOR SINGLE WHEELCHAIR



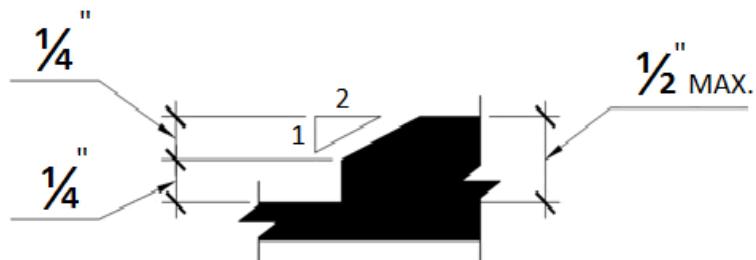
MINIMUM CLEAR WIDTH FOR TWO WHEELCHAIRS

FIGURE 11A-1E  
WHEELCHAIR PASSAGE WIDTH

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



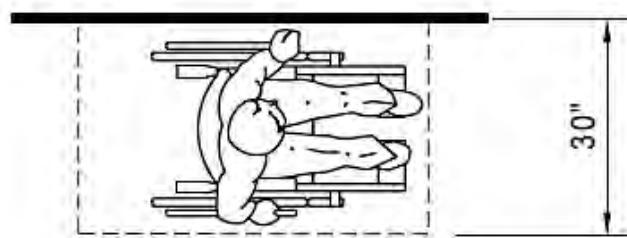
(a) VERTICAL CHANGE IN LEVEL



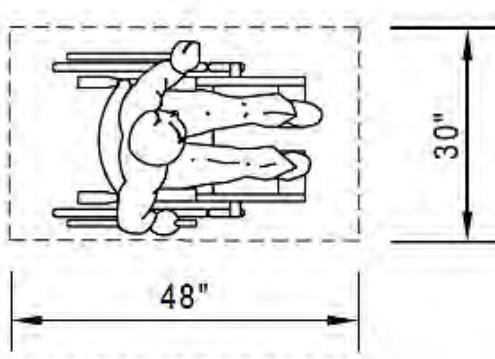
(b) BEVELED CHANGE IN LEVEL

FIGURE 11A-1F  
CHANGE IN LEVEL

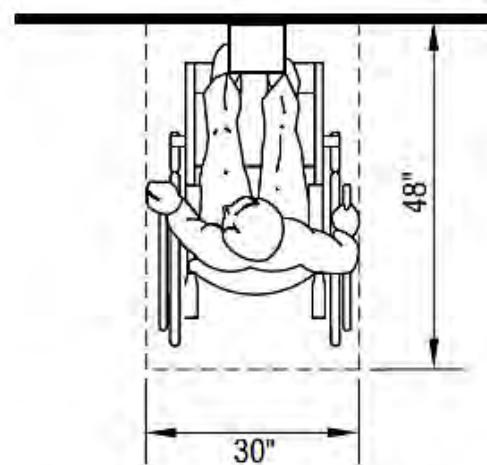
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) PARALLEL APPROACH



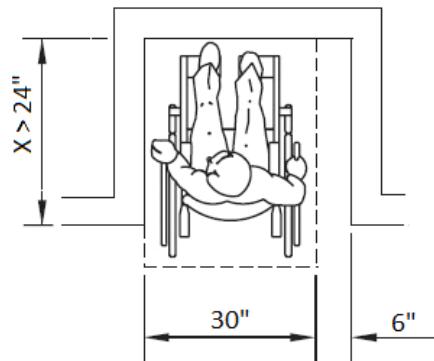
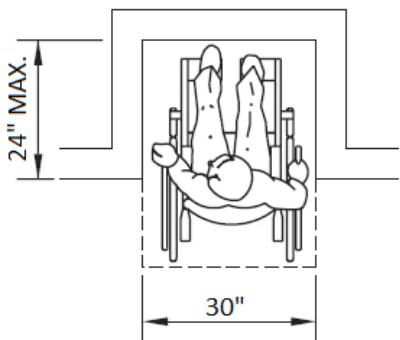
(b) CLEAR FLOOR SPACE



(c) FORWARD APPROACH

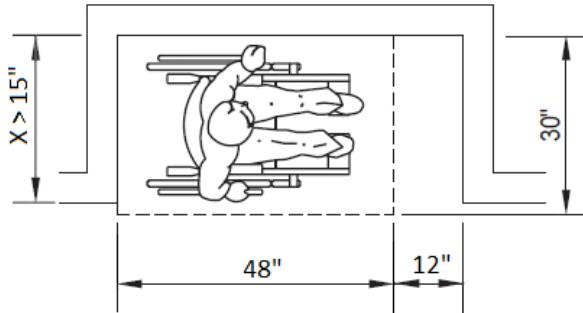
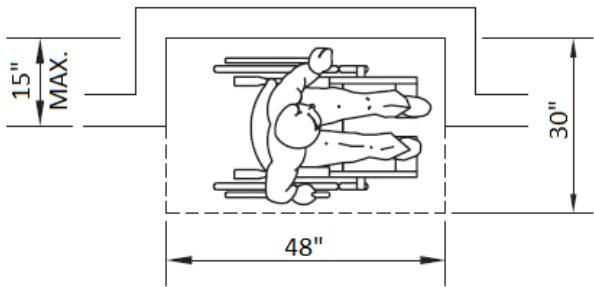
**FIGURE 11A-1G**  
MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR SPACE FOR WHEELCHAIRS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



IF  $X > 24"$ , ADDITIONAL MANEUVERING CLEARANCE OF 6" SHALL BE PROVIDED.

**(a) FORWARD APPROACH**

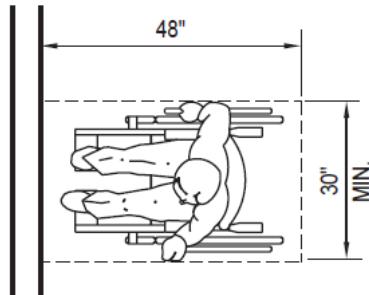
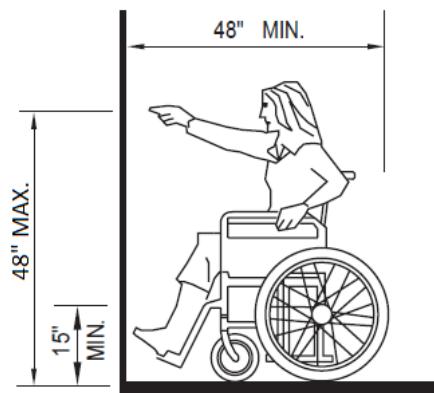


IF  $X > 15"$ , ADDITIONAL MANEUVERING CLEARANCE OF 12" SHALL BE PROVIDED.

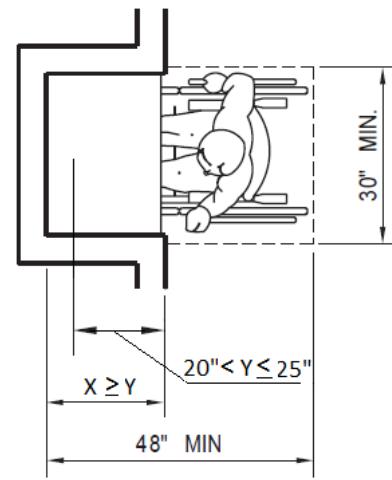
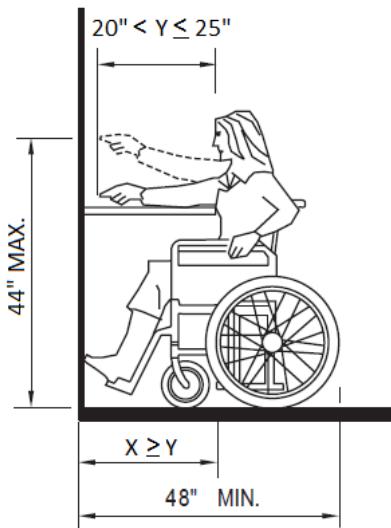
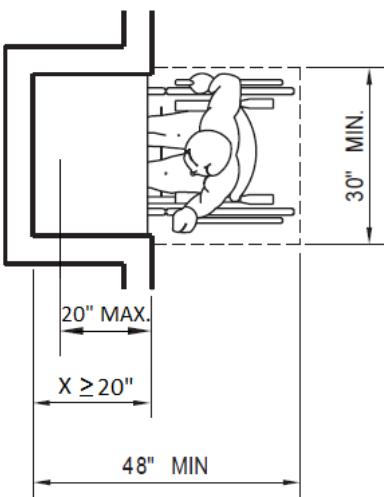
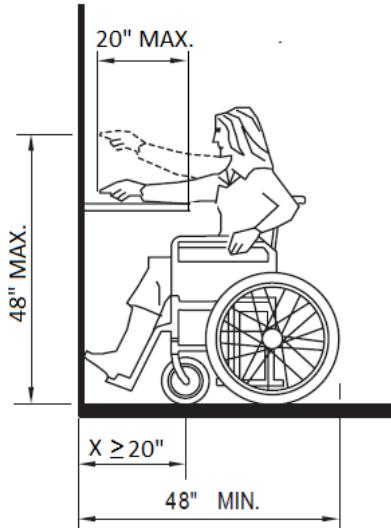
**(b) PARALLEL APPROACH**

**FIGURE 11A-1H  
MINIMUM CLEAR FLOOR SPACE IN ALCOVES**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



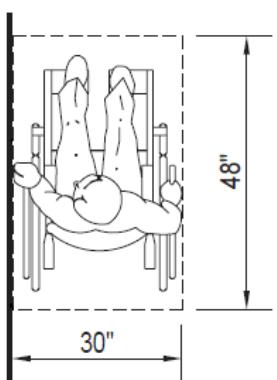
(a) UNOBSTRUCTED FORWARD REACH



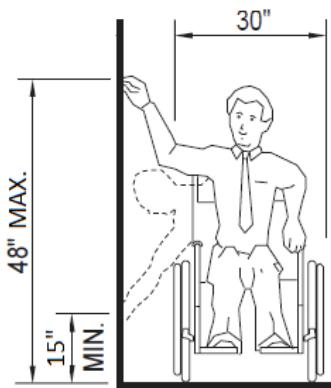
(b) FORWARD REACH OVER OBSTRUCTION

**FIGURE 11A-11  
FORWARD REACH**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

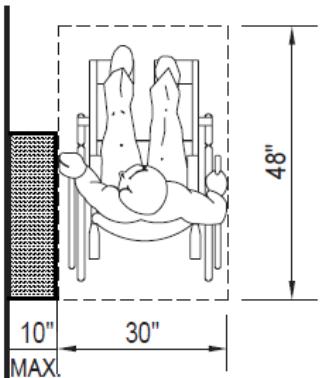


CLEAR FLOOR SPACE FOR PARALLEL APPROACH

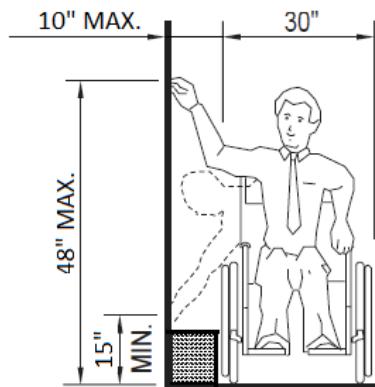


HIGH AND LOW SIDE REACH LIMITS

## (a) UNOBSTRUCTED SIDE REACH

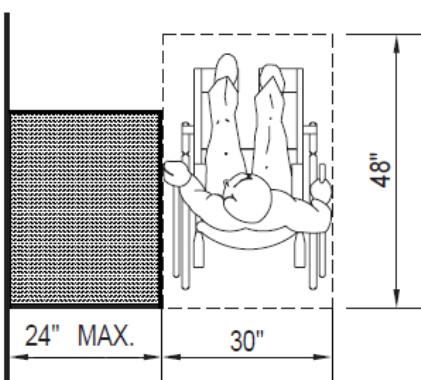


CLEAR FLOOR SPACE FOR PARALLEL APPROACH

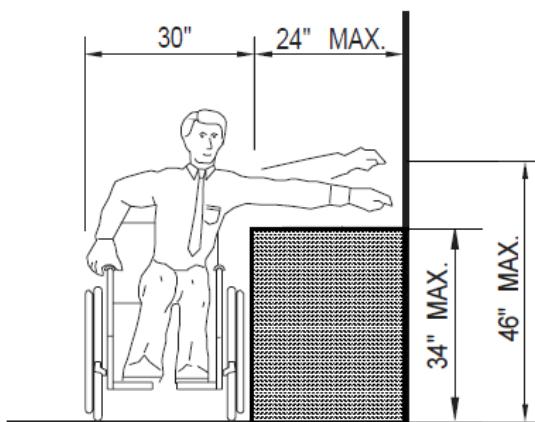


HIGH AND LOW SIDE REACH LIMITS

## (b) SIDE REACH OVER OBSTRUCTION 10" MAXIMUM



CLEAR FLOOR SPACE FOR PARALLEL APPROACH

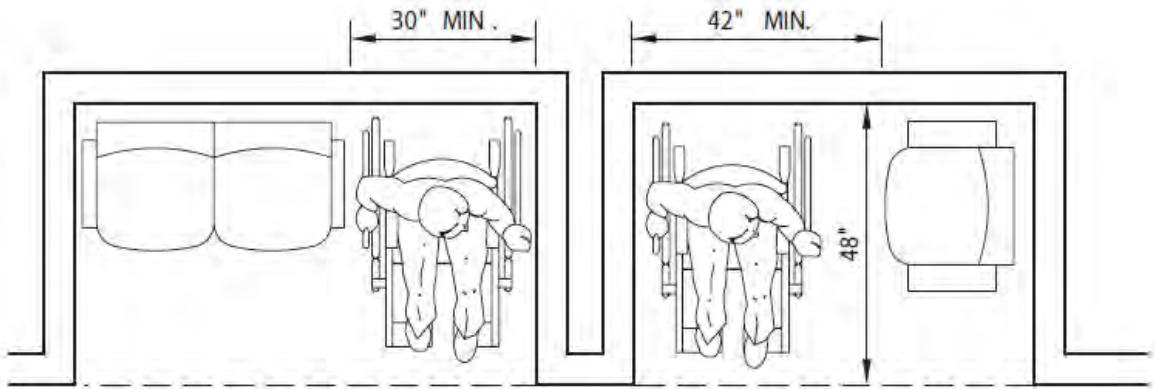


MAXIMUM SIDE REACH OVER OBSTRUCTION

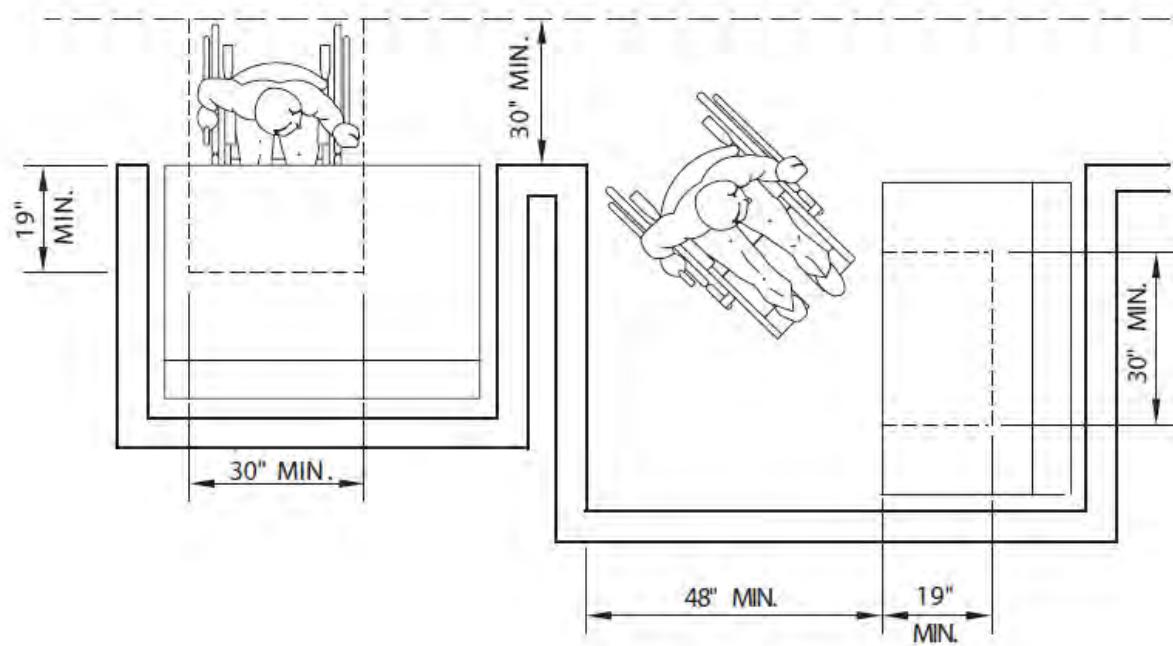
## (c) SIDE REACH OVER OBSTRUCTION &gt; 10" AND 24" MAXIMUM

FIGURE 11A-1J  
SIDE REACH

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

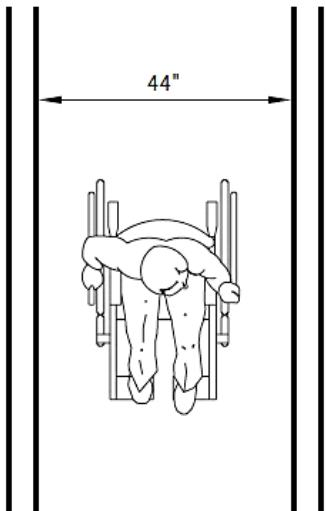


ACCESSIBLE PATH OF TRAVEL

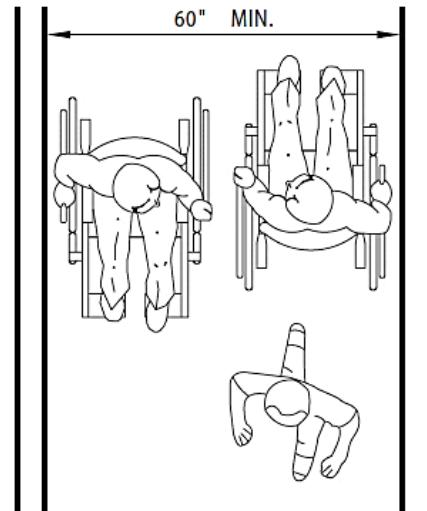


**FIGURE 11A-1K  
MINIMUM CLEARANCES FOR SEATING AND TABLE**

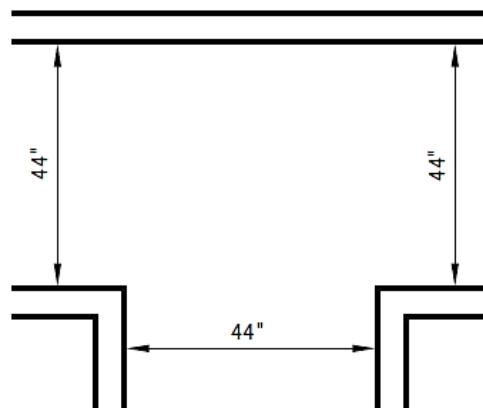
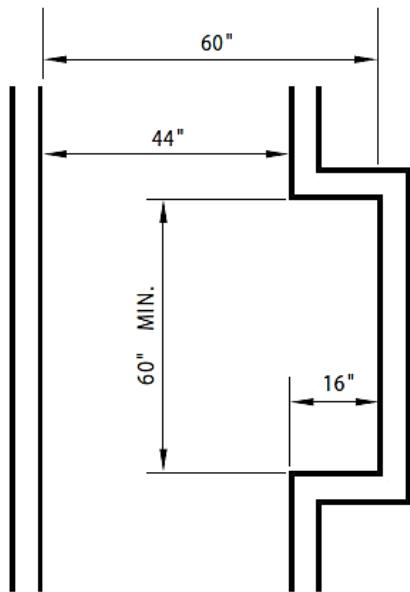
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) MINIMUM WIDTH FOR CORRIDORS



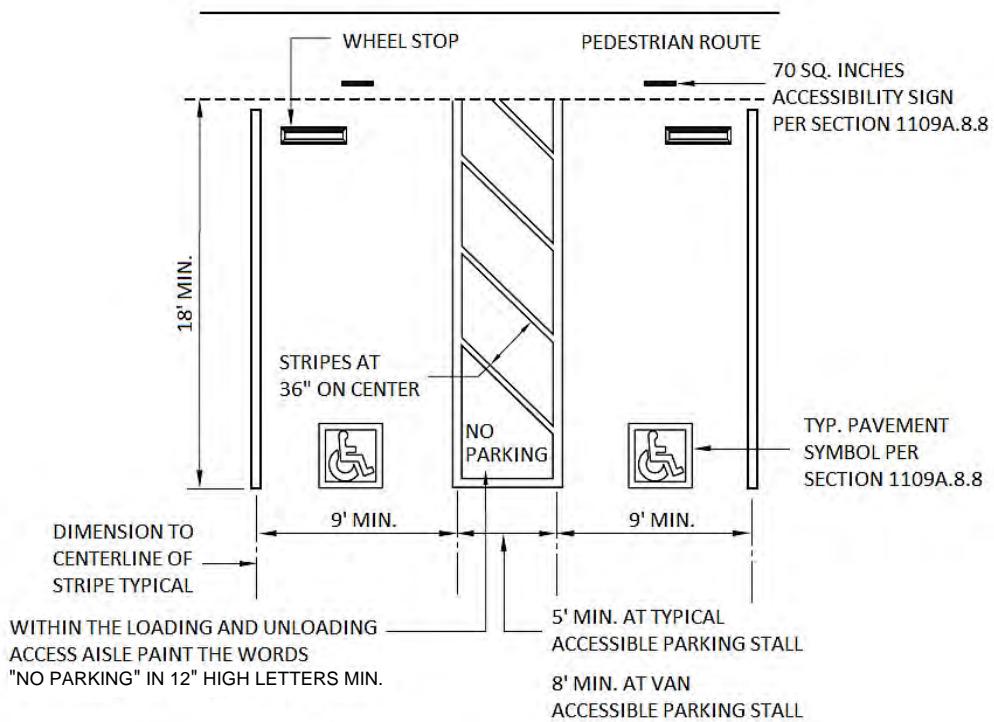
(b) MINIMUM WIDTH FOR CORRIDORS OVER 200 FEET



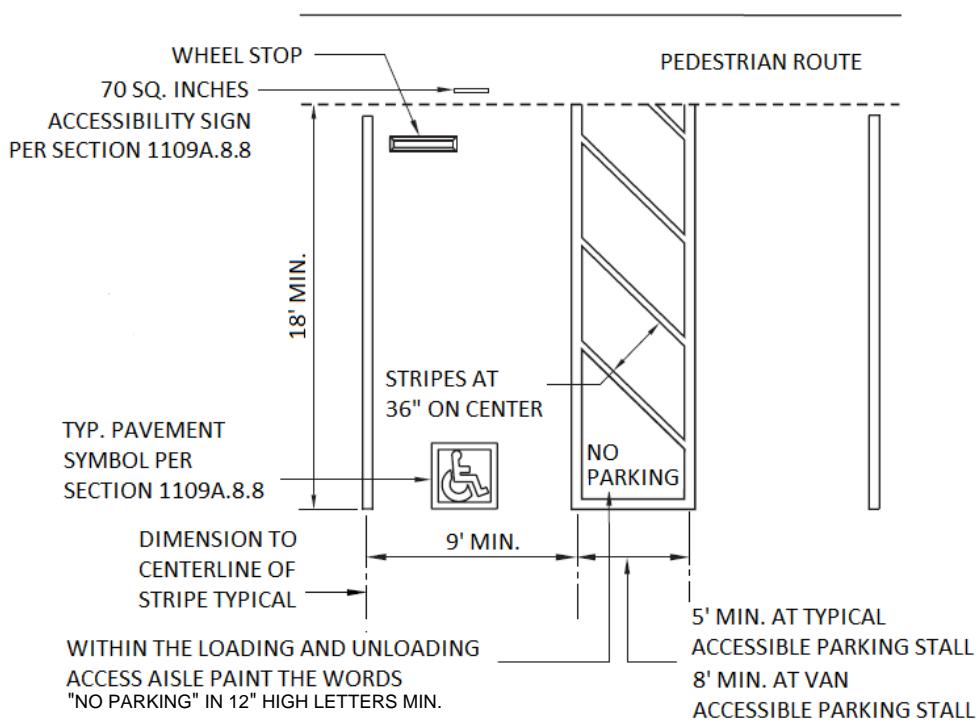
(c) PASSING METHODS FOR CORRIDORS WITH LENGTH OVER 200 FEET AND WIDTH LESS THAN 60"

**FIGURE 11A-1L**  
INTERIOR ACCESSIBLE ROUTE (CORRIDOR) OVER 200 FEET; OCCUPANT LOAD 10 OR MORE

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

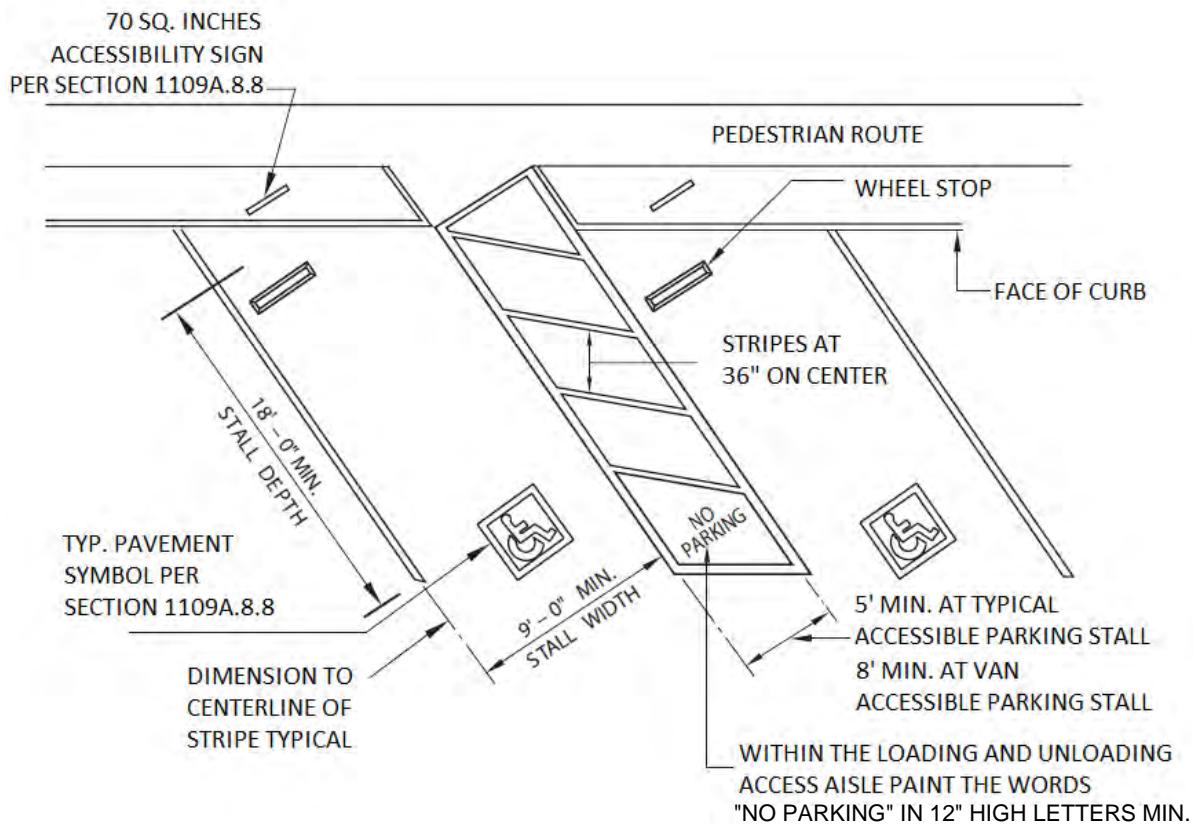


**FIGURE 11A-2A  
DOUBLE PARKING STALLS**



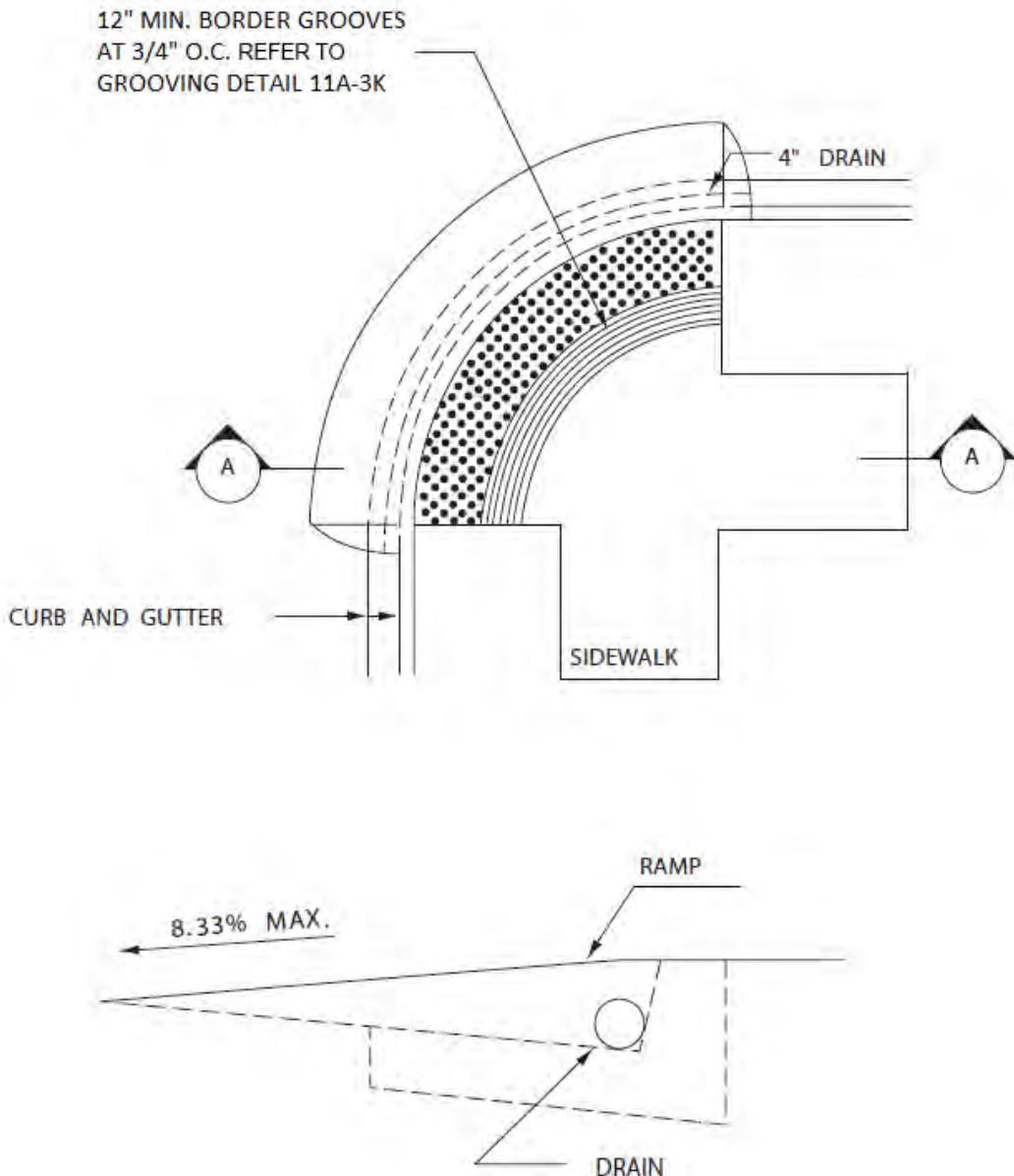
**FIGURE 11A-2B  
SINGLE AND VAN ACCESSIBLE PARKING STALLS**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



**FIGURE 11A-2C  
DIAGONAL PARKING STALLS**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



SECTION A-A

FIGURE 11A-3A  
CURB DETAILS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

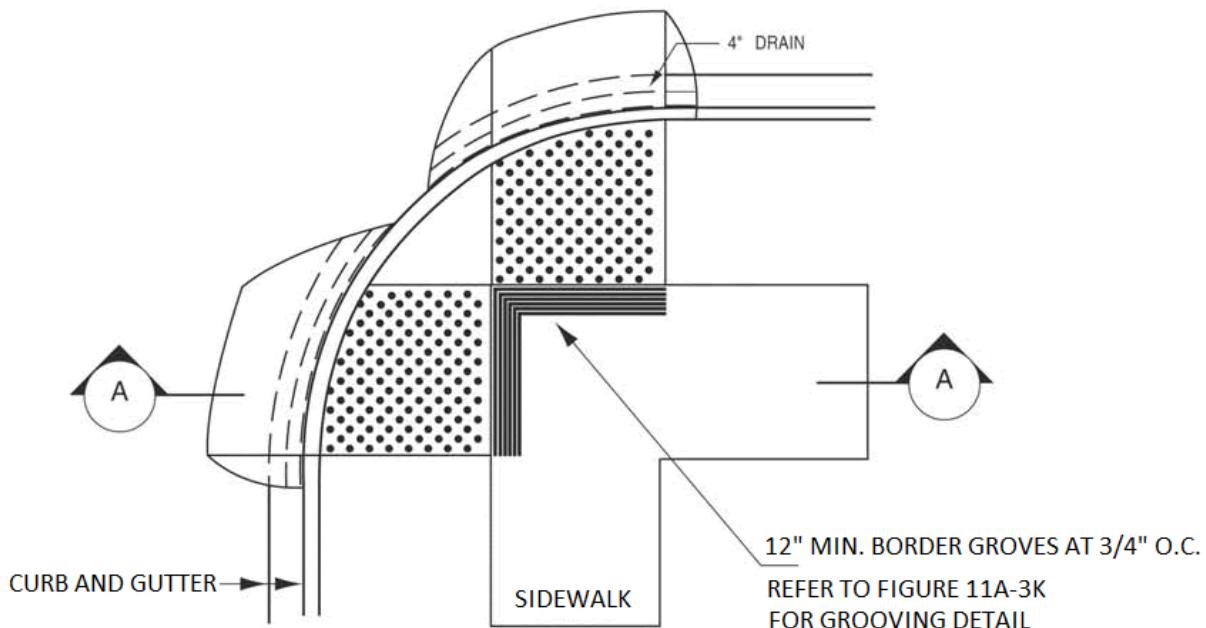
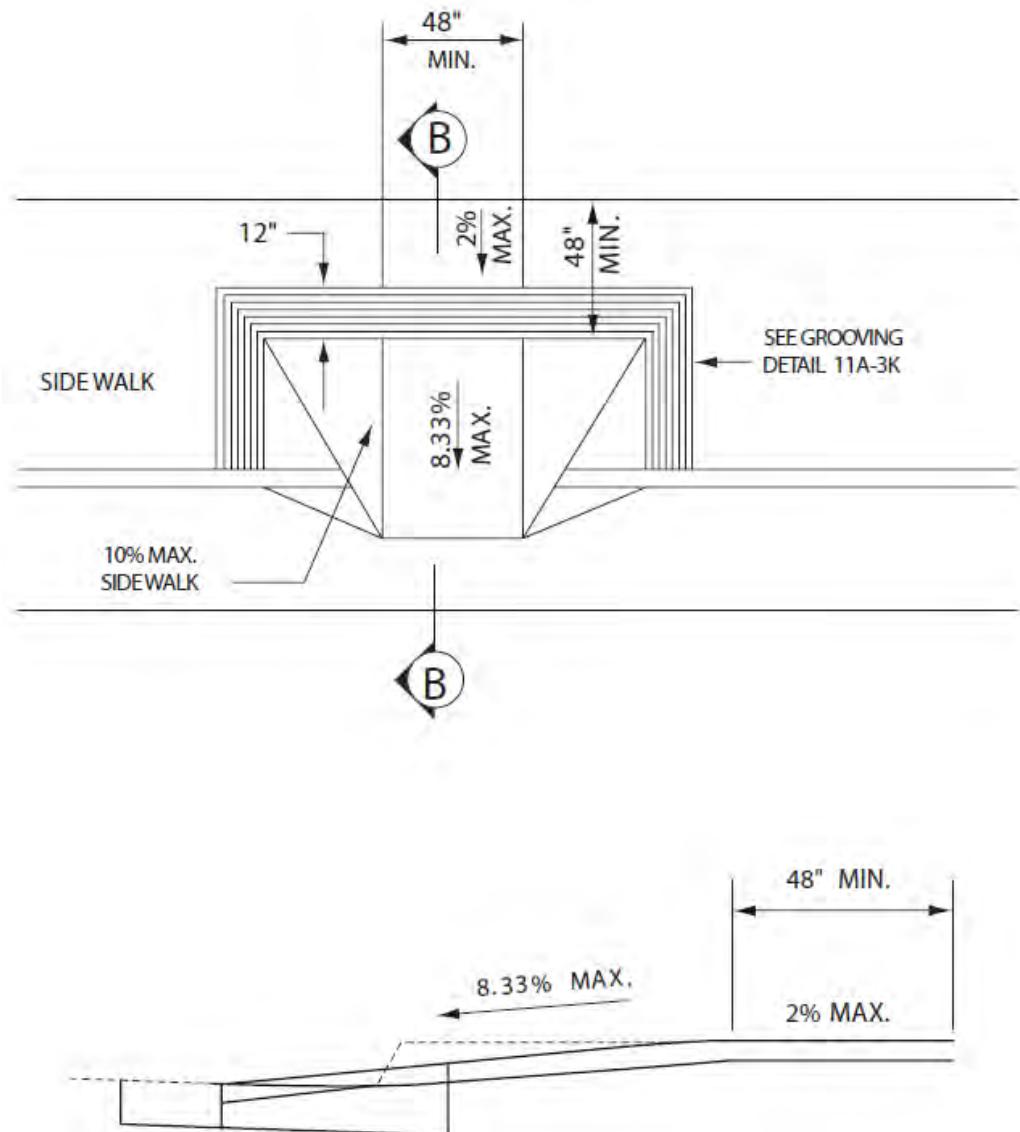


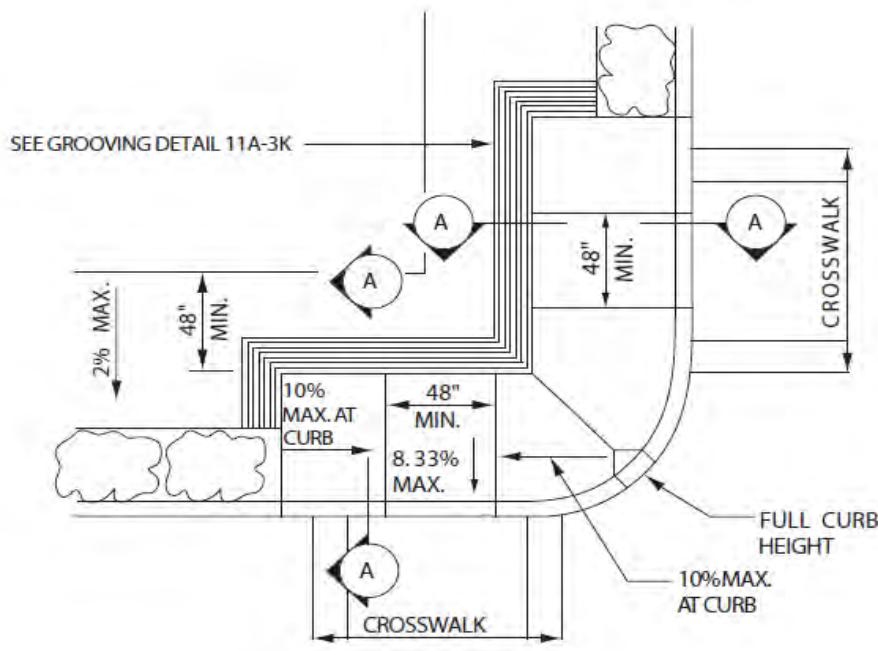
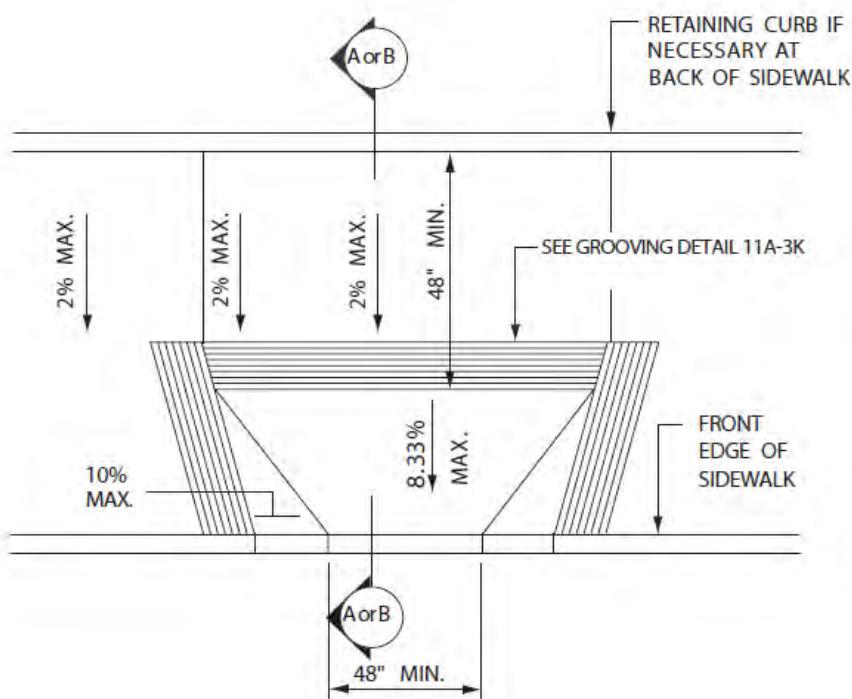
FIGURE 11A-3B  
CURB DETAIL

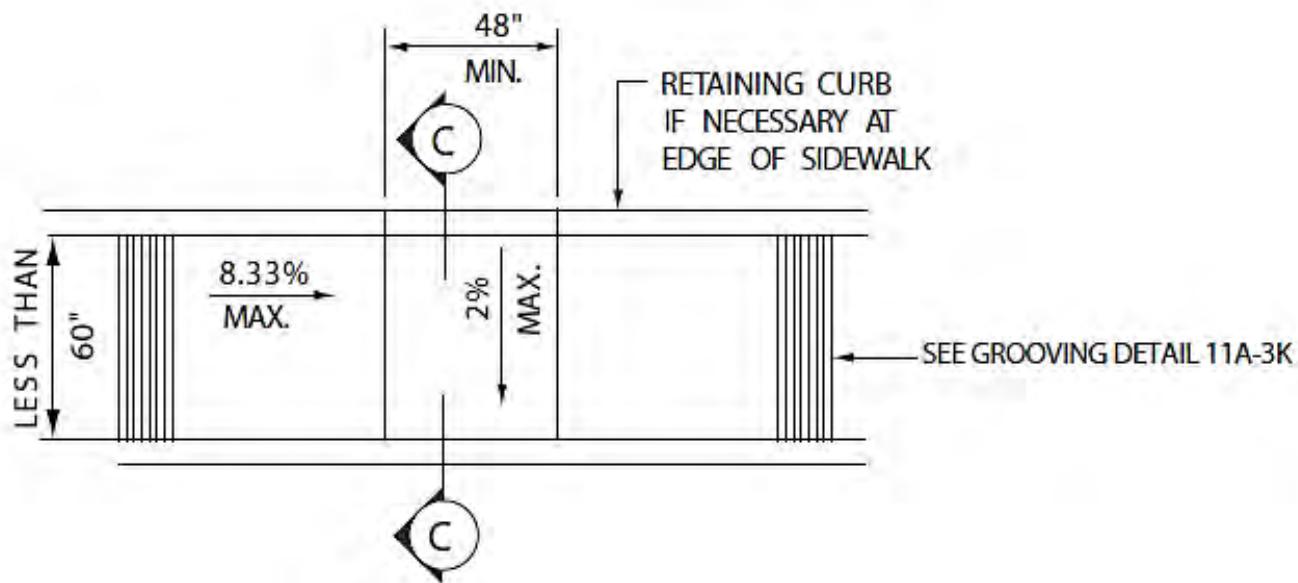
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



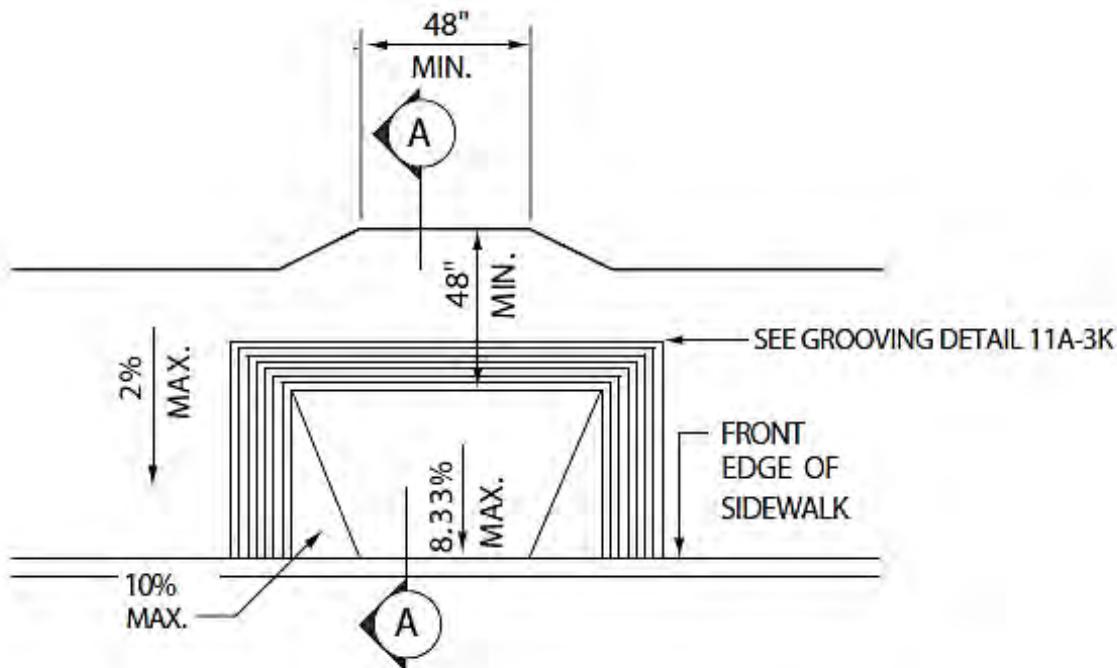
**FIGURE 11A-3C  
CURB DETAIL**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

FIGURE 11A-3D  
CURB DETAILFIGURE 11A-3E  
CURB DETAIL

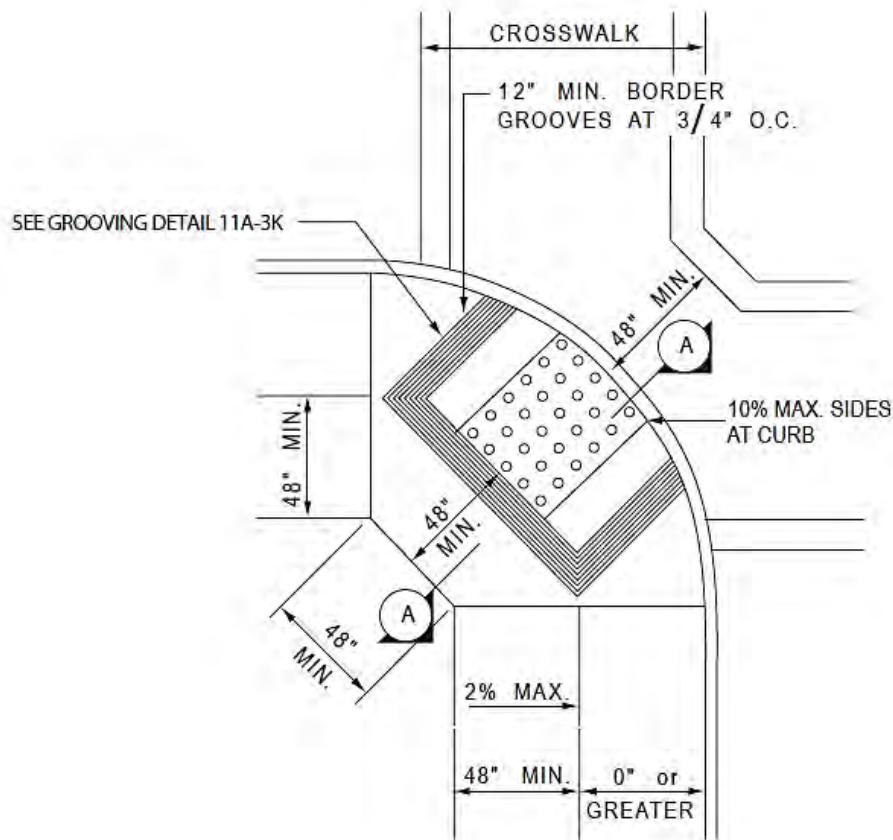
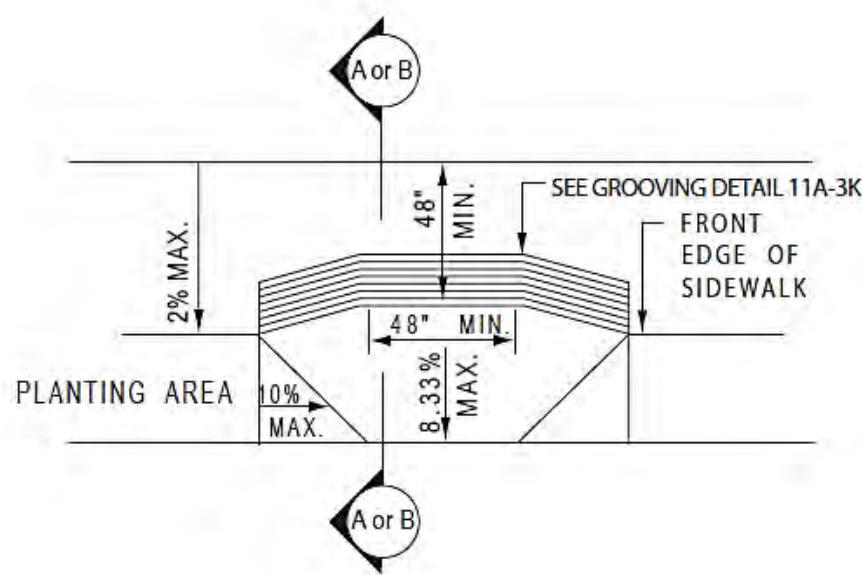


**FIGURE 11A-3F**  
CURB DETAIL - SIDEWALK LESS THAN 60" WIDE

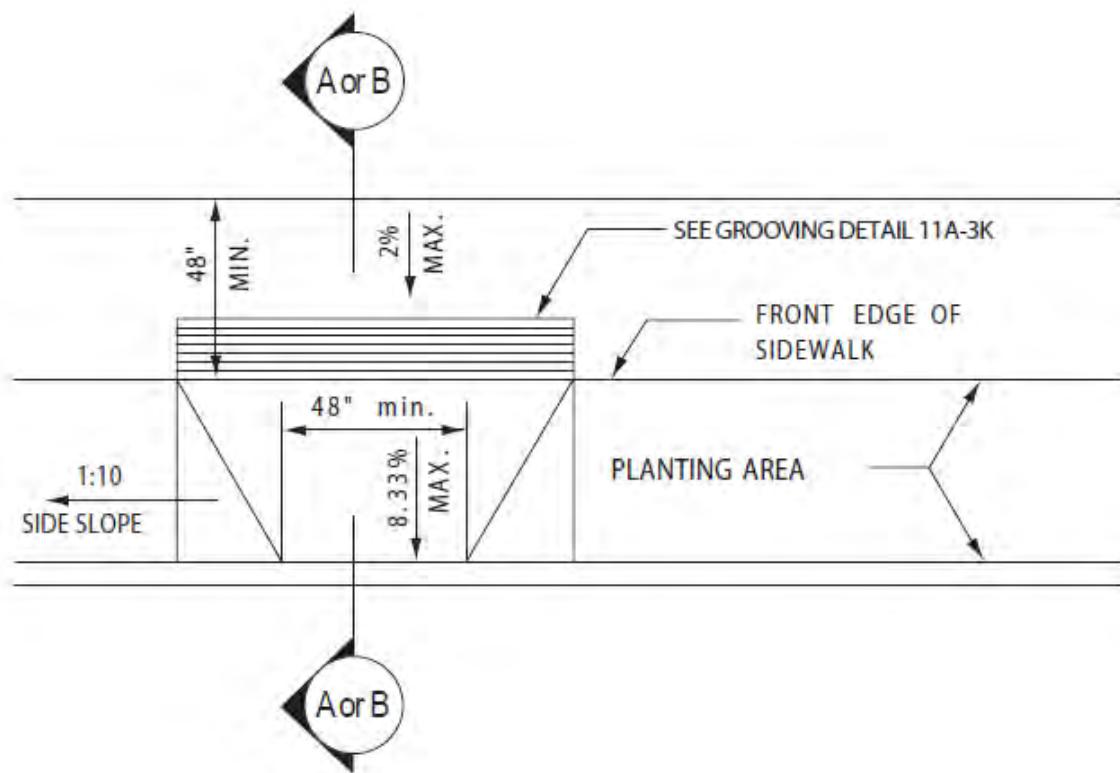


**FIGURE 11A-3G**  
CURB DETAIL

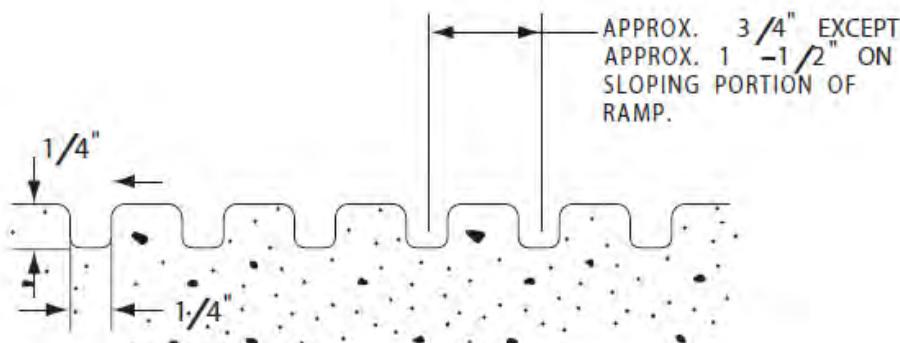
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

FIGURE 11A-3H  
CURB DETAILFIGURE 11A-3I  
CURB DETAIL

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



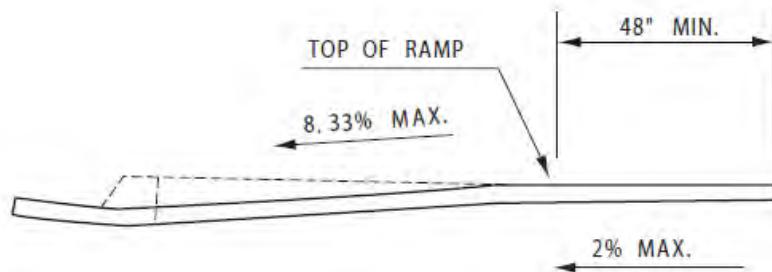
**FIGURE 11A-3J**  
**CURB DETAIL**



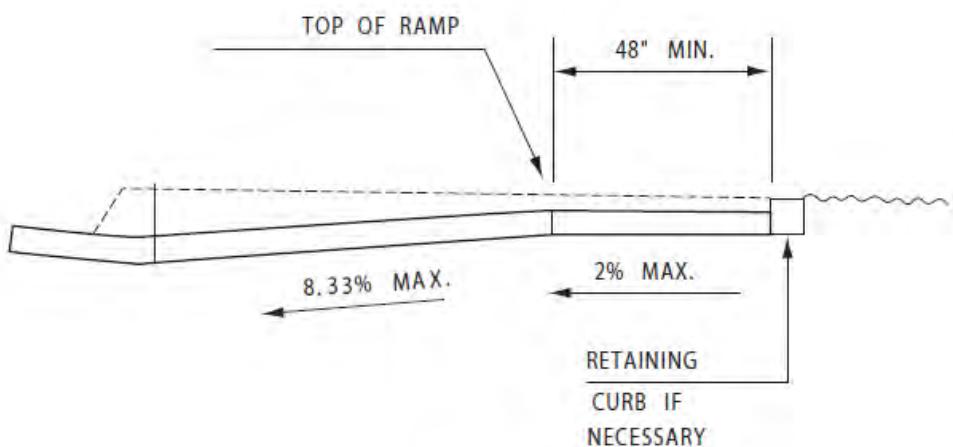
**GROOVING DETAIL**

**FIGURE 11A-3K**  
**CURB DETAIL**

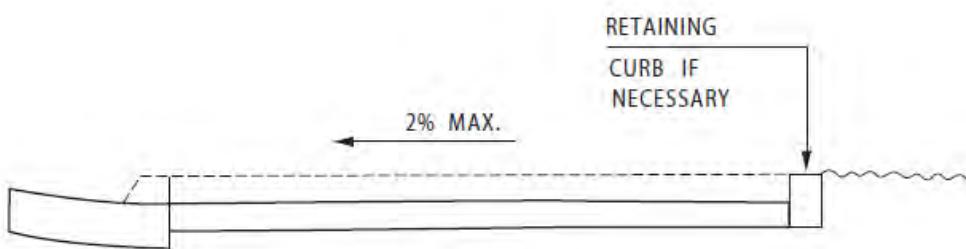
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



SECTION A-A



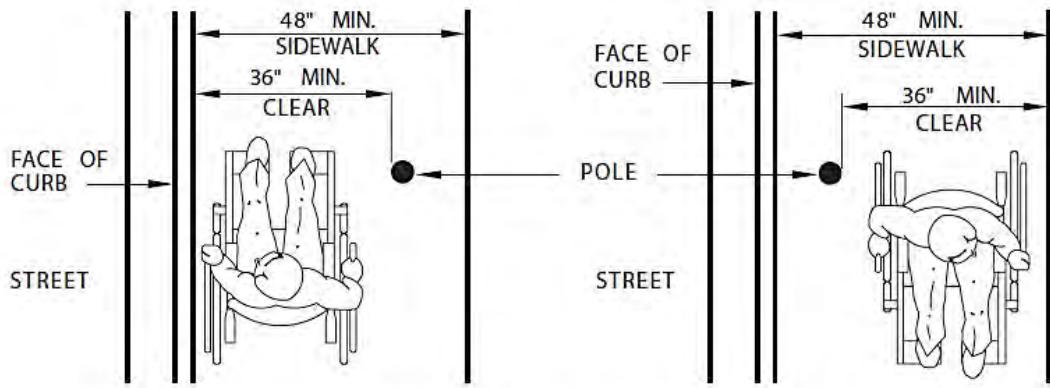
**SECTION B-B**  
**DEPRESS ENTIRE SIDEWALK AS REQUIRED**



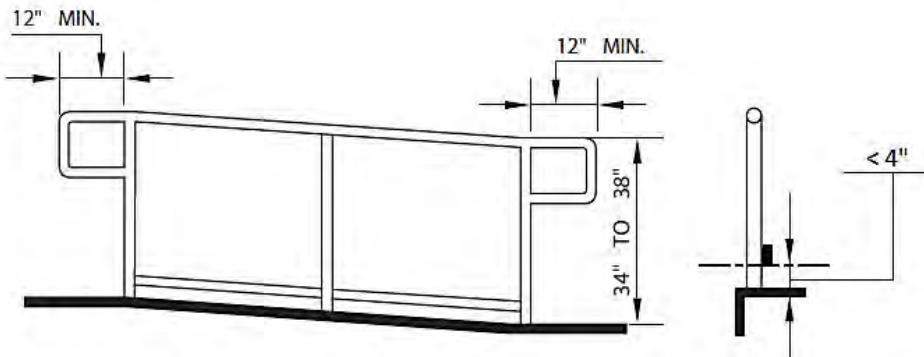
SECTION C-C

**FIGURE 11A-3L**  
**CURB SECTIONS**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

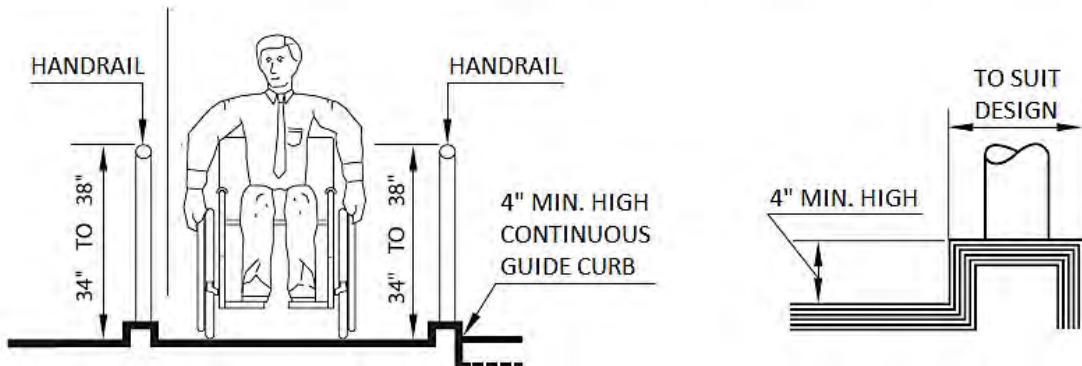


(a) SIDEWALK OBSTRUCTIONS



(b) HANDRAIL AND GUIDERAIL

GUIDE RAIL DETAIL

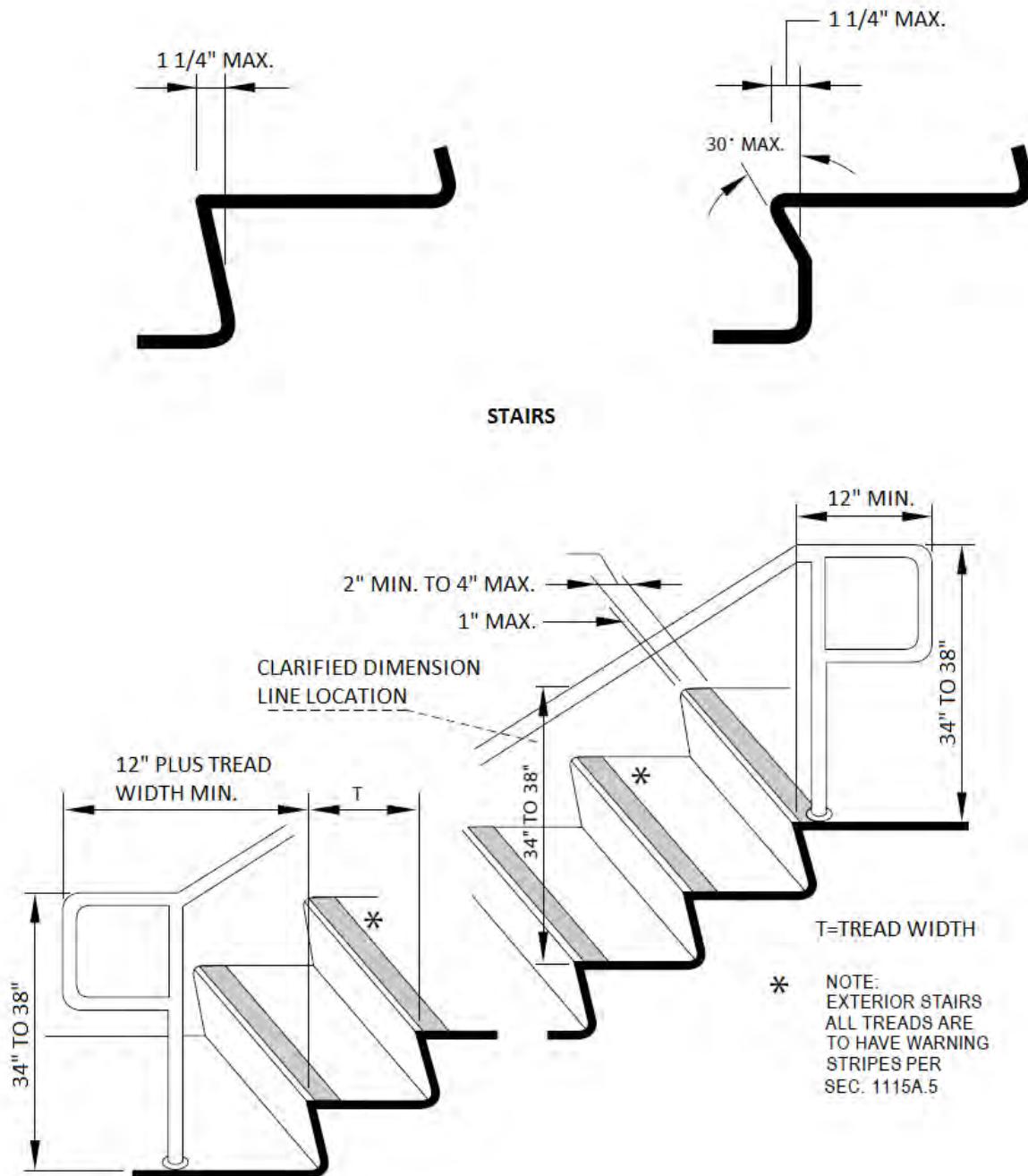


(c) GUIDE CURB

GUIDE CURB DETAIL

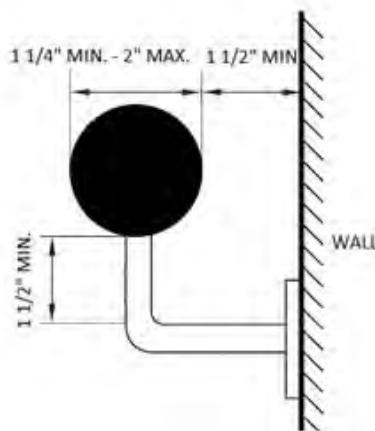
FIGURE 11A-5A  
RAMPS AND SIDEWALKS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

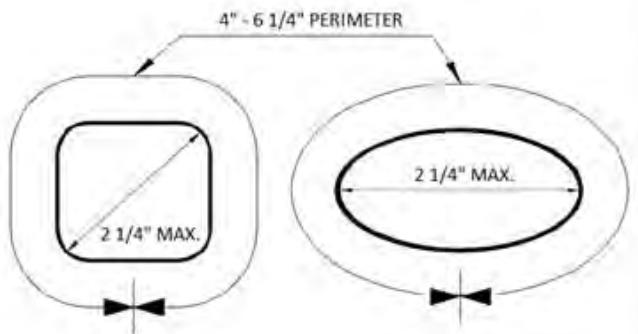


**FIGURE 11A-6A**  
**WARNING STRIPING AND HANDRAIL EXTENSIONS**

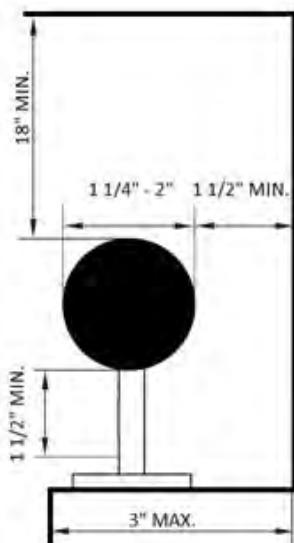
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



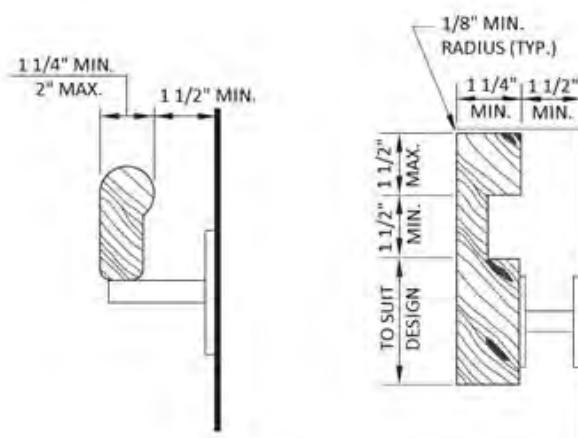
(a) HANDRAILS WITH CIRCULAR CROSS SECTION



(b) HANDRAILS WITH NON-CIRCULAR CROSS SECTION



(c) HANDRAILS LOCATED IN A RECESS



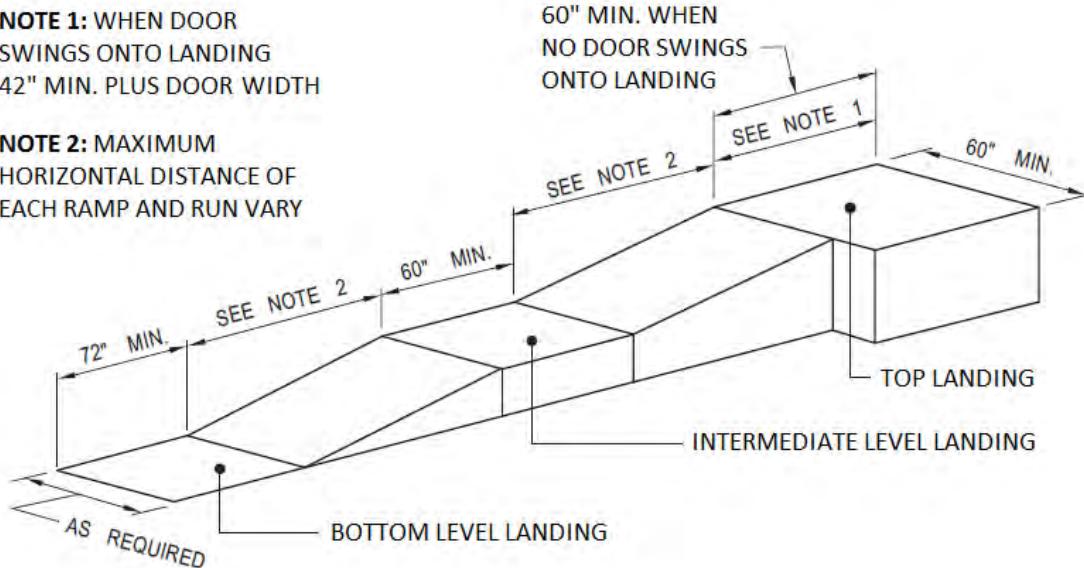
(d) HANDRAILS WITH EQUIVALENT GRIPPING SURFACES

FIGURE 11A-6B  
HANDRAILS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**NOTE 1:** WHEN DOOR SWINGS ONTO LANDING  
42" MIN. PLUS DOOR WIDTH

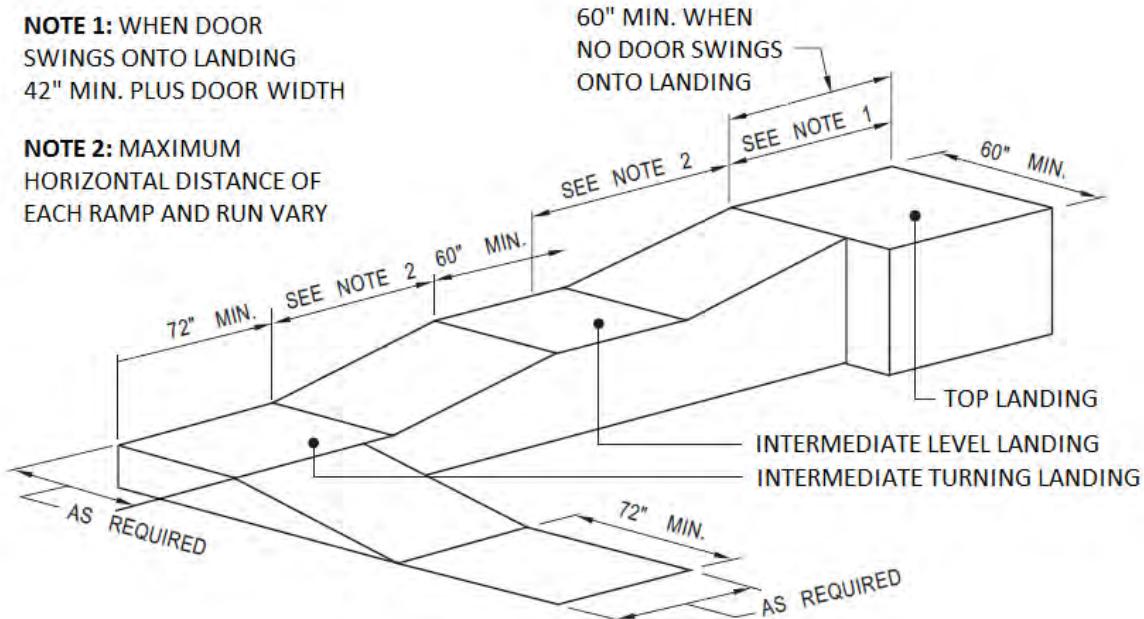
**NOTE 2:** MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE OF EACH RAMP AND RUN VARY



(a) STRAIGHT RAMP RUN

**NOTE 1:** WHEN DOOR SWINGS ONTO LANDING  
42" MIN. PLUS DOOR WIDTH

**NOTE 2:** MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE OF EACH RAMP AND RUN VARY



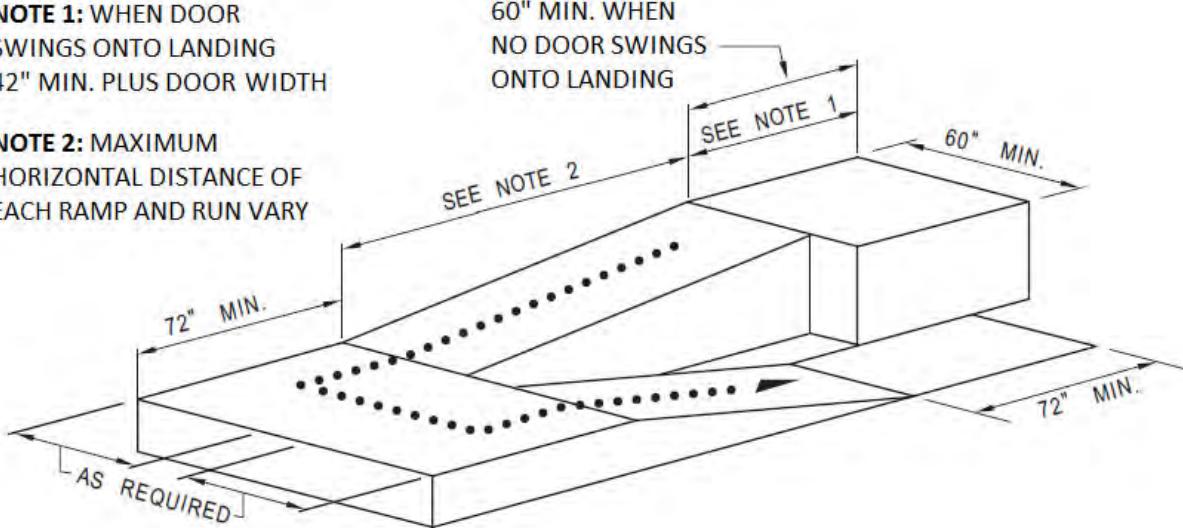
(b) RAMP WITH TURNING LANDING

FIGURE 11A-6C  
RAMP DIMENSIONS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

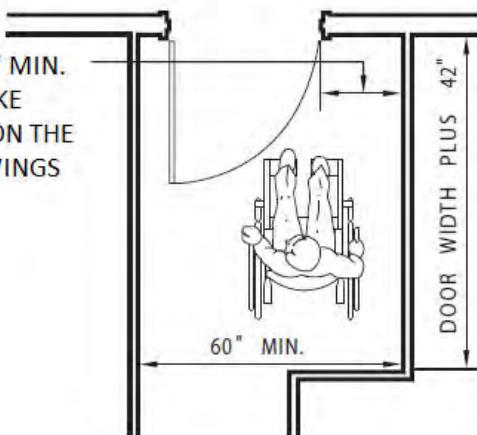
**NOTE 1:** WHEN DOOR SWINGS ONTO LANDING  
42" MIN. PLUS DOOR WIDTH

**NOTE 2:** MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL DISTANCE OF EACH RAMP AND RUN VARY



(a) RAMP WITH INTERMEDIATE SWITCH BACK LANDING

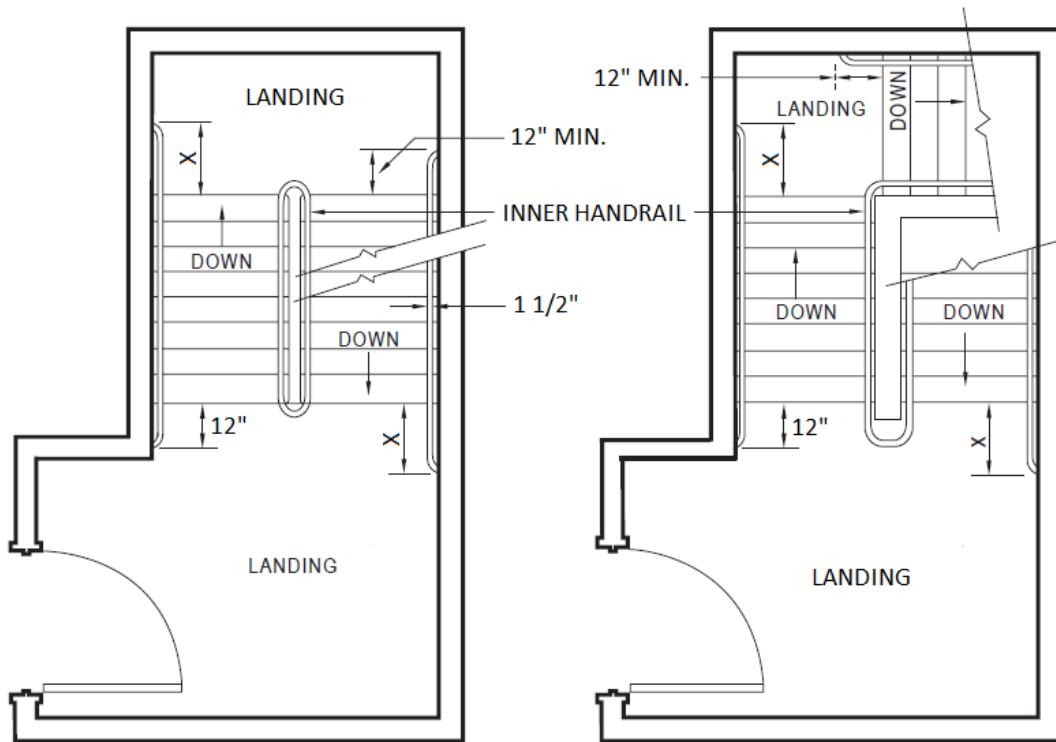
24" MIN. EXTERIOR AND 18" MIN. INTERIOR BEYOND THE STRIKE EDGE OF A GATE OR DOOR ON THE SIDE TOWARD WHICH IT SWINGS



(b) RAMP LANDING AT DOORWAY

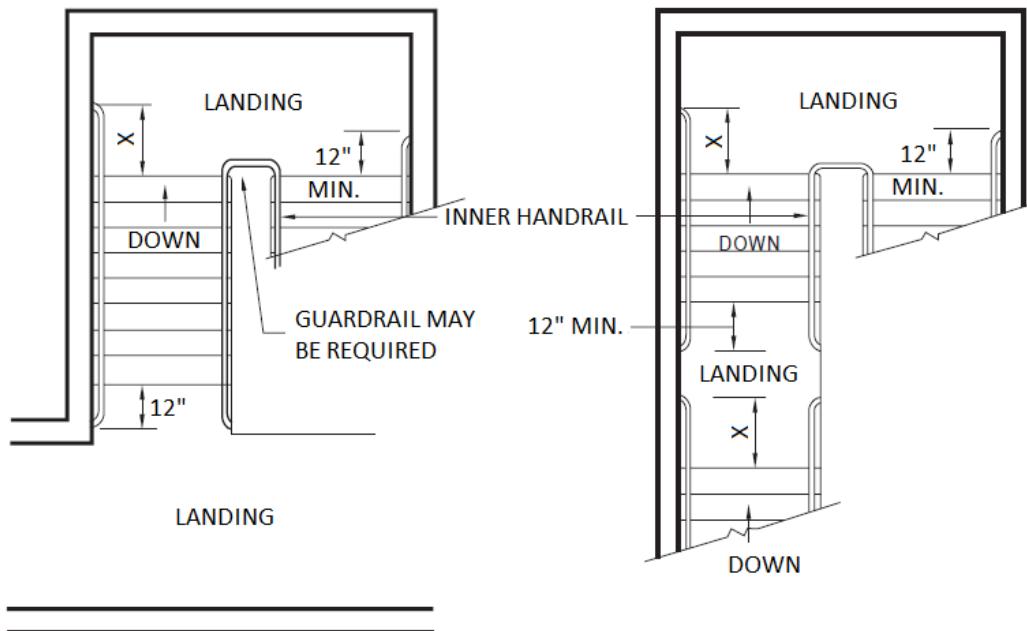
**FIGURE 11A-6D**  
**RAMP LANDING AND DOORWAY**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



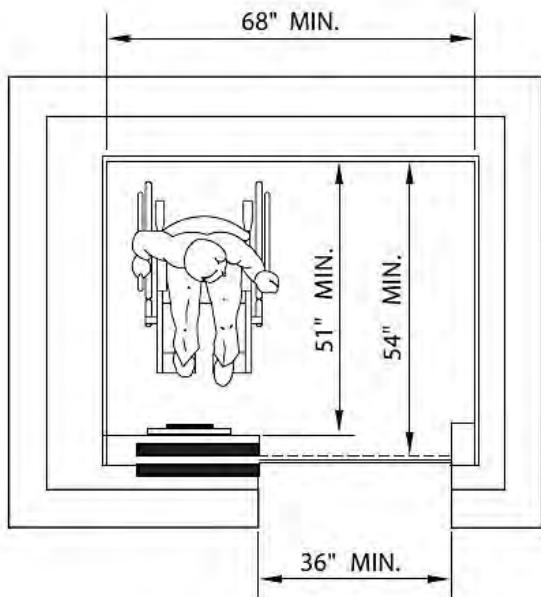
**NOTE:** INNER HANDRAIL AT LANDINGS OF STAIRS THAT DOUBLE BACK OR IMMEDIATELY TURN SHALL BE CONTINUOUS AND SHALL NOT EXTEND INTO LANDING OR PATH OF TRAVEL.

**X:** EXTENSION OF HANDRAIL SHALL BE EQUAL TO THE TREAD WIDTH PLUS 12".

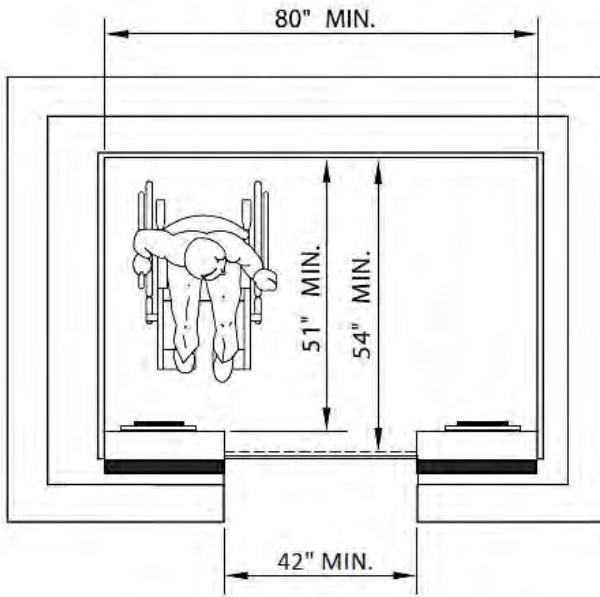


**FIGURE 11A-6E  
STAIR HANDRAILS**

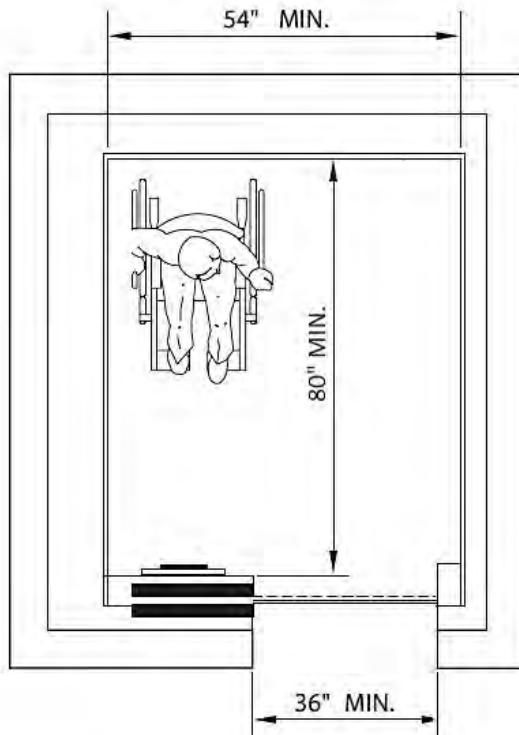
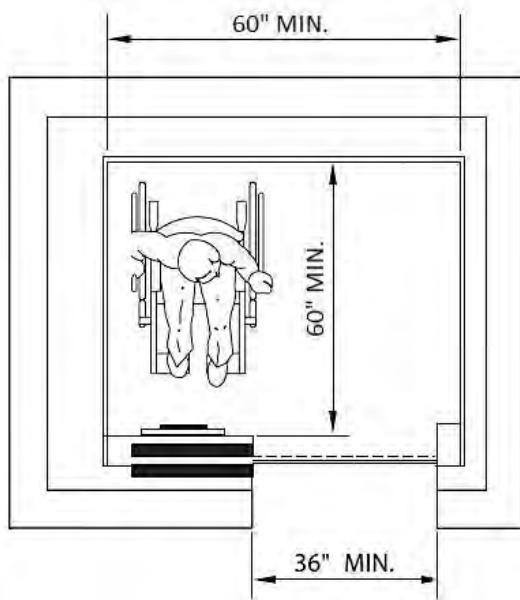
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) SIDE OPENING DOOR



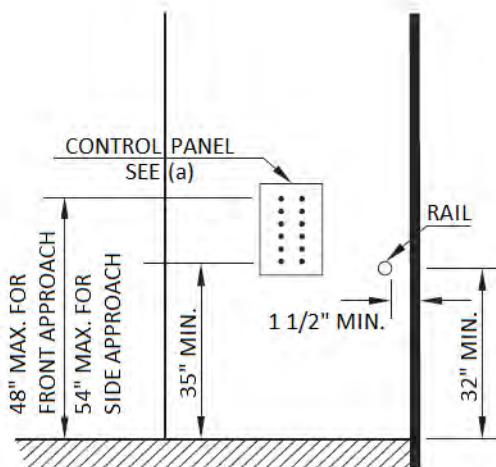
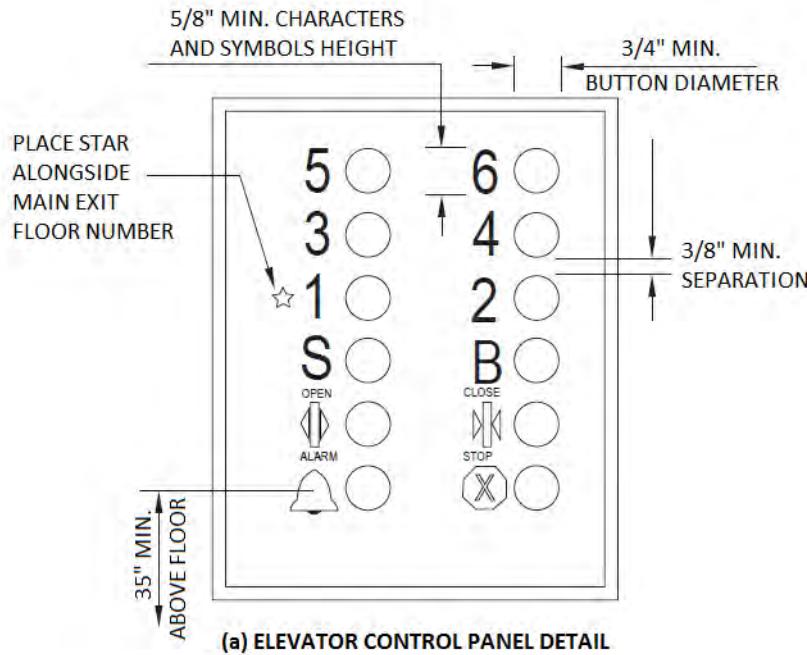
(b) CENTER OPENING DOOR



(c) DOOR AT ANY LOCATION

**FIGURE 11A-7A**  
**MINIMUM DIMENSIONS OF ELEVATOR CARS**

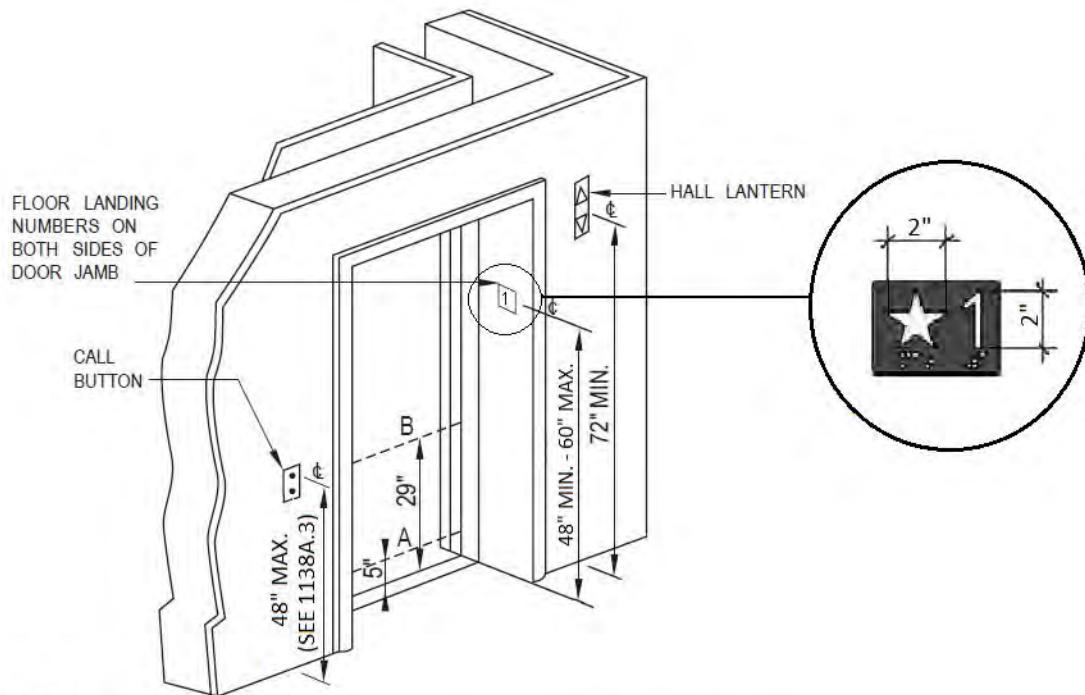
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(b) MAXIMUM INSTALLATION HEIGHTS ABOVE CAB FLOOR

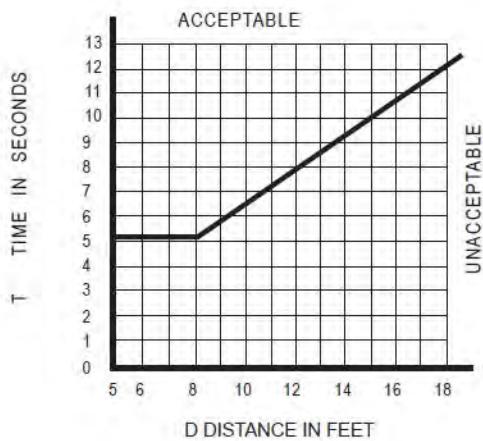
FIGURE 11A-7B  
ELEVATOR CONTROL PANEL

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**NOTE:**

THE AUTOMATIC DOOR REOPENING DEVICE IS ACTIVATED IF AN OBJECT PASSES THROUGH EITHER LINE A OR LINE B. LINE A AND LINE B REPRESENT THE VERTICAL LOCATION OF THE DOOR REOPENING DEVICE NOT REQUIRING CONTACT.

**FIGURE 11A-7C**  
**HOISTWAY AND ELEVATOR ENTRANCES**



**FIGURE 11A-7D**  
**GRAPH OF TIMING EQUATION**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

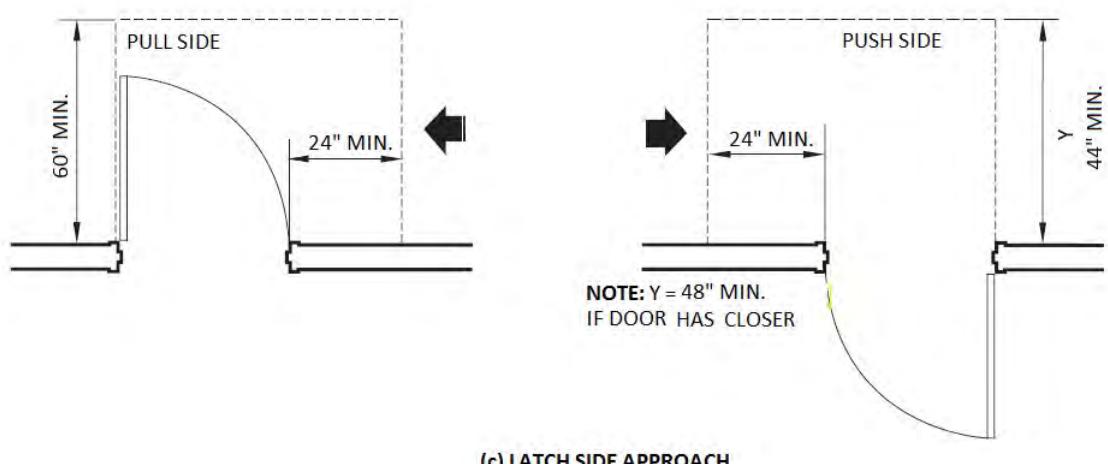
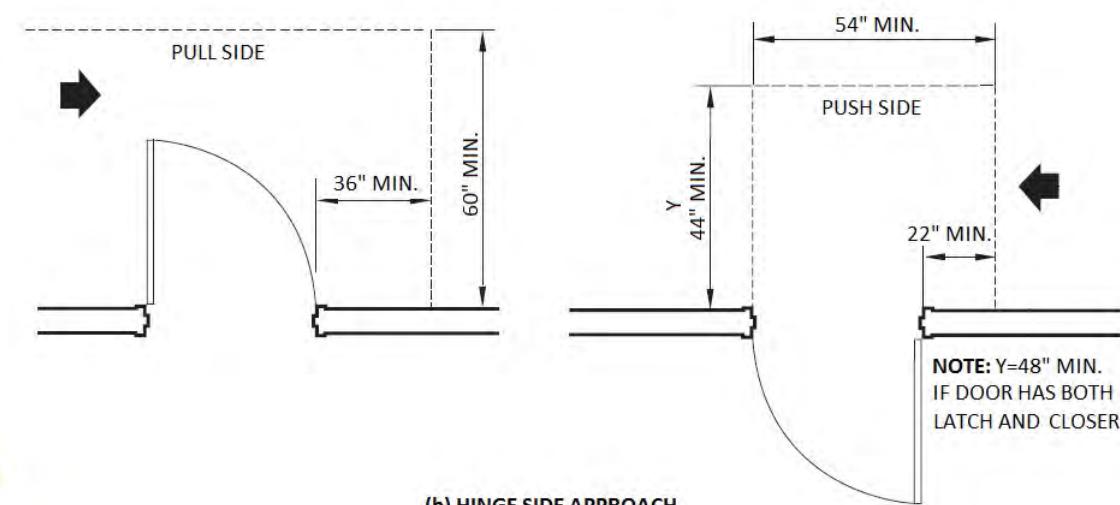
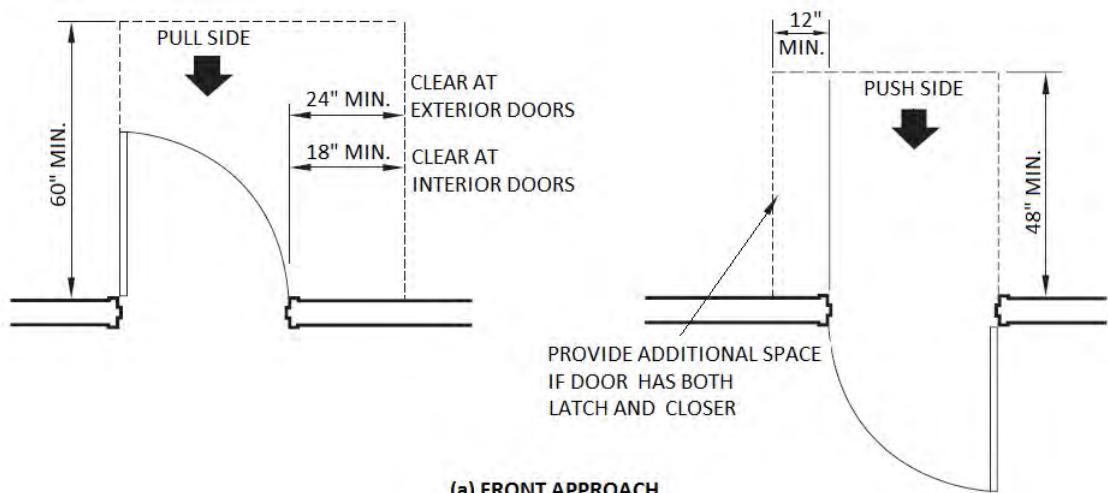
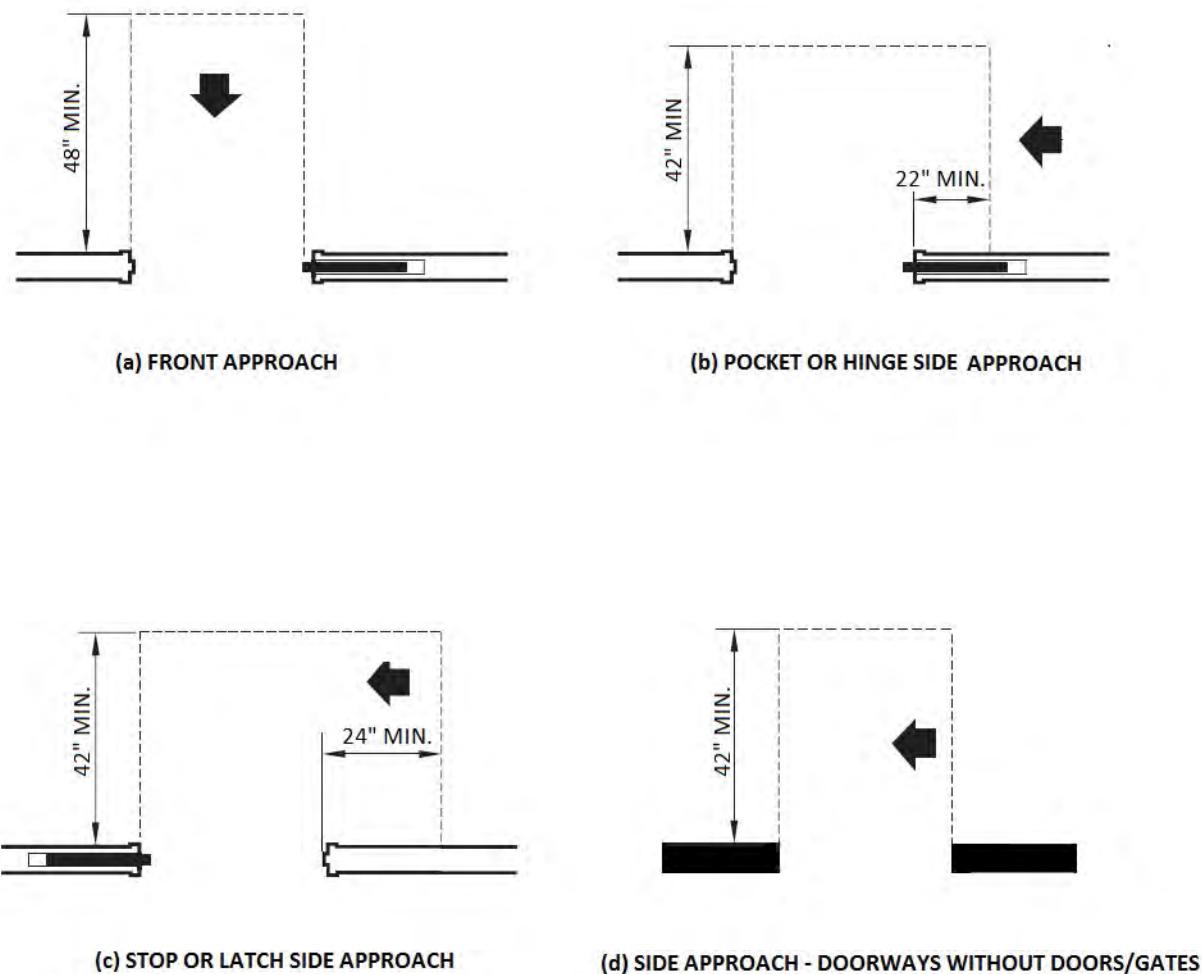


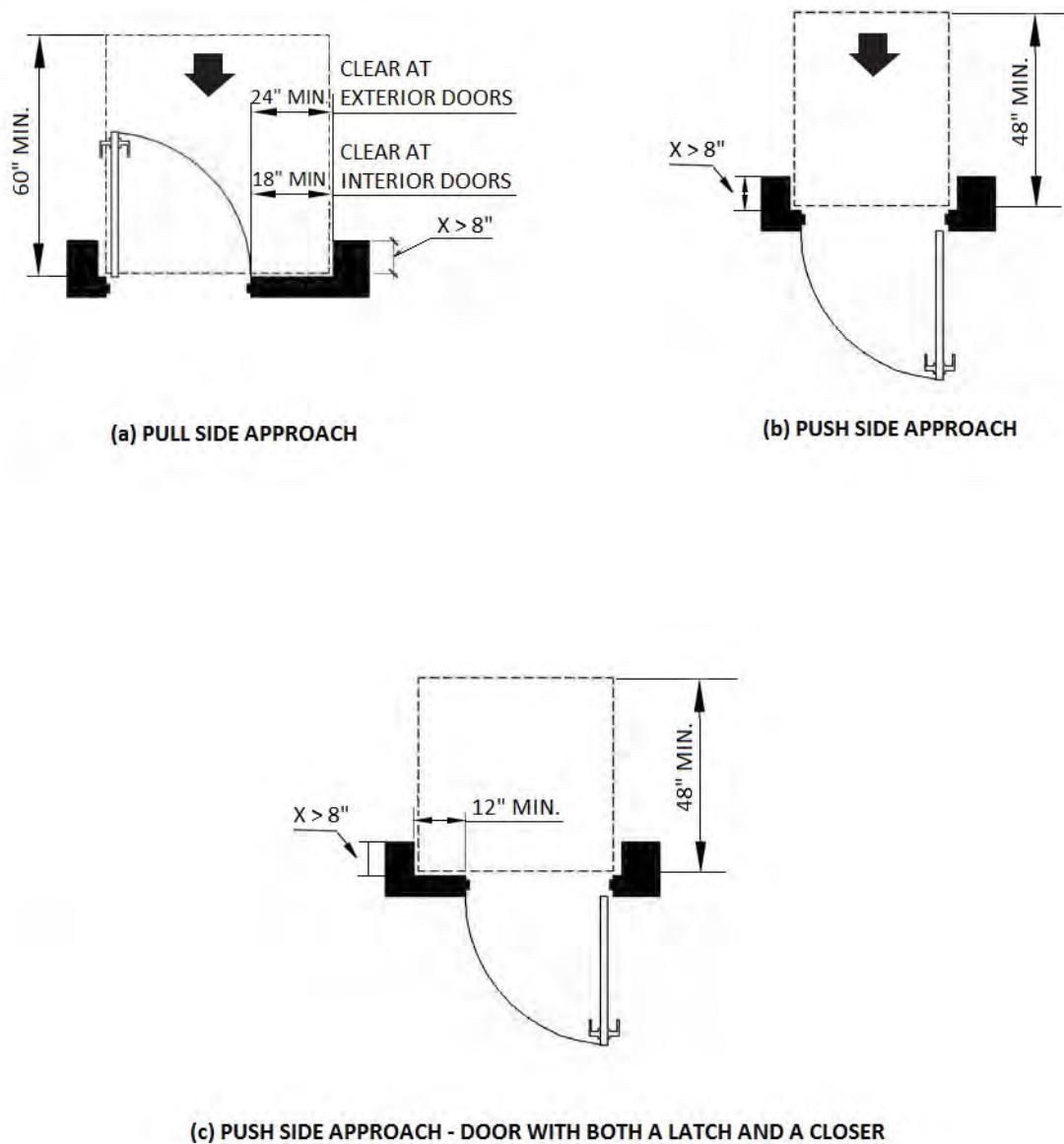
FIGURE 11A-8A  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCE AT SWINGING DOORS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

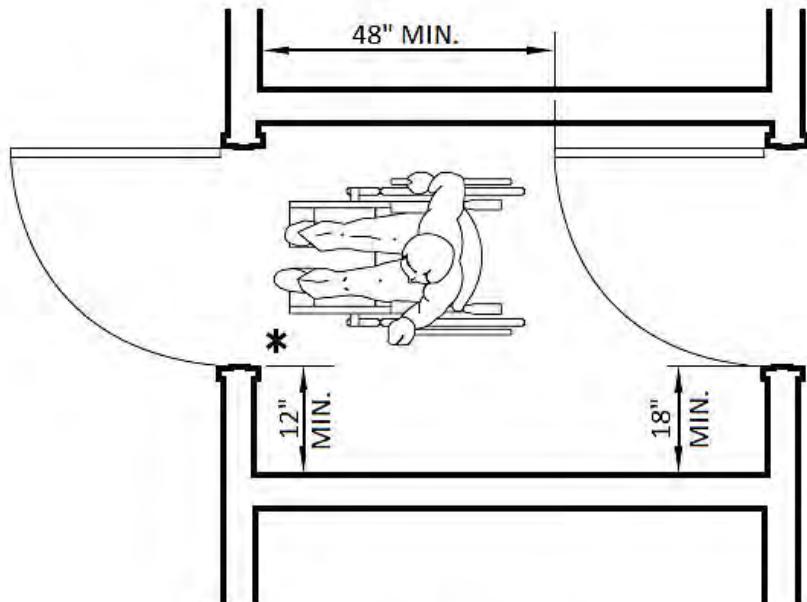


**FIGURE 11A-8B**  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCE AT DOORWAYS, SLIDING DOORS AND FOLDING DOORS

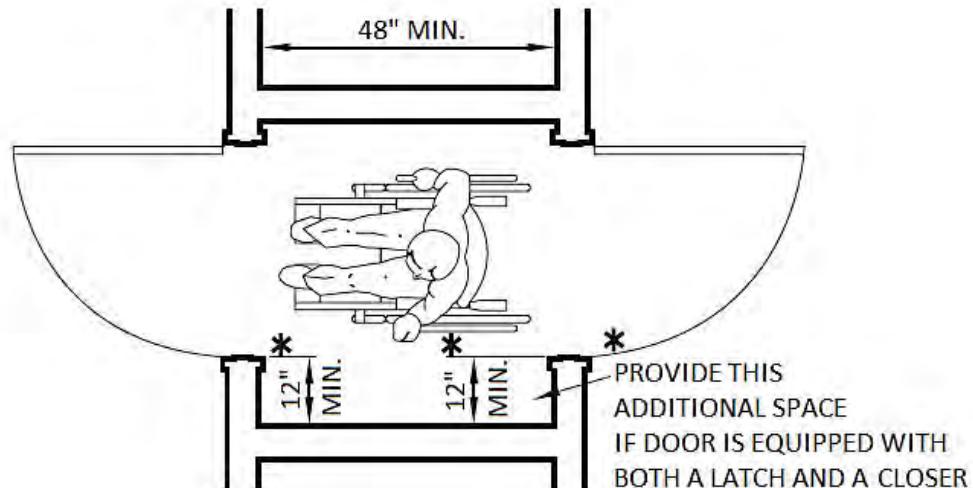
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



**FIGURE 11A-8C**  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT RECESSED DOORS



(a) DOORS IN SERIES

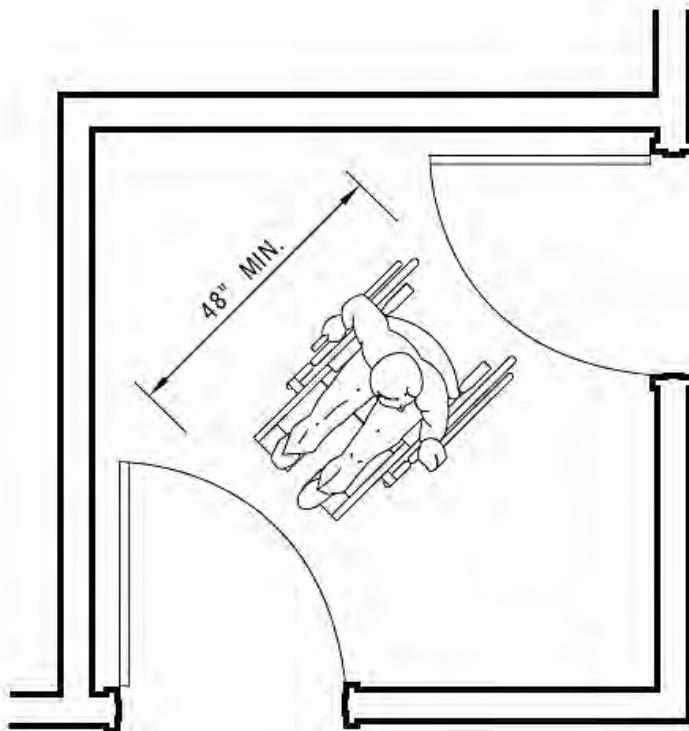


(b) BOTH DOORS OPEN OUT

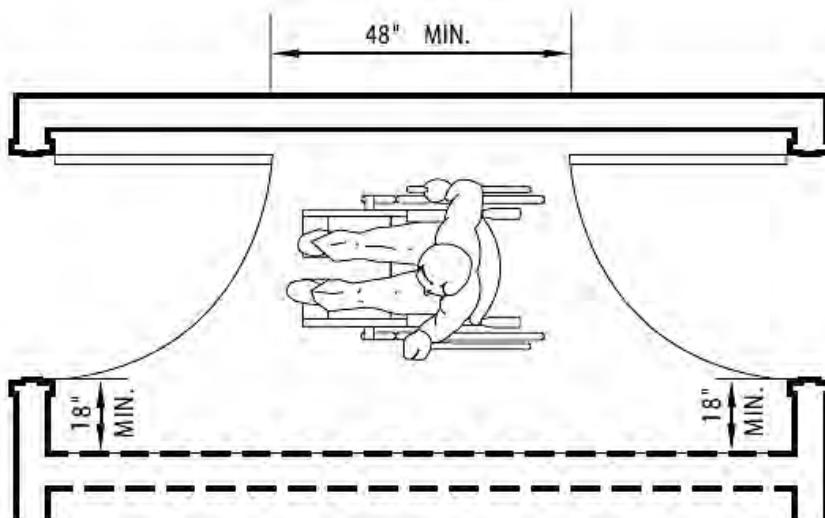
(SERVING OTHER THAN A REQUIRED EXIT STAIRWAY)

FIGURE 11A-8G  
VESTIBULE

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) DOORS AT ADJACENT WALLS

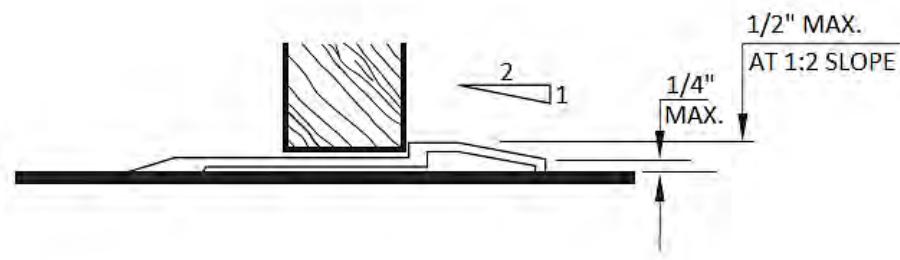


(b) DOORS AT OPPOSITE WALLS

FIGURE 11A-8H  
VESTIBULE

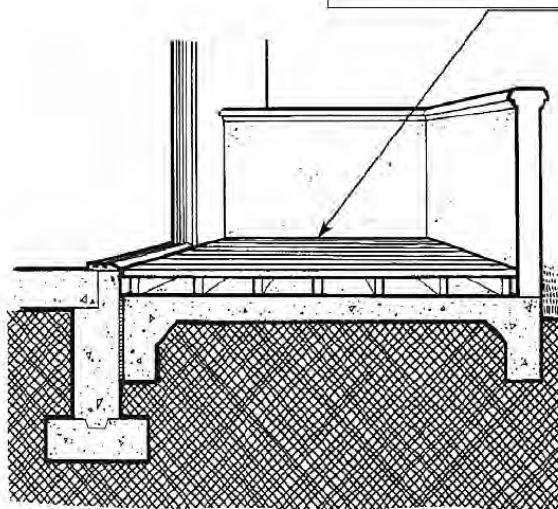
(SERVING OTHER THAN A REQUIRED EXIT STAIRWAY)

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

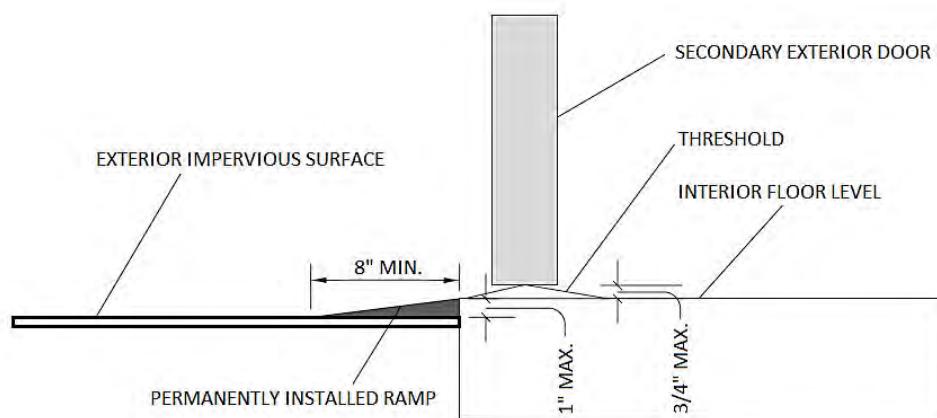


**FIGURE 11A-8I  
THRESHOLDS**

*Platform of approved materials to raise floor level of balcony.  
(Platform required for final inspection)*

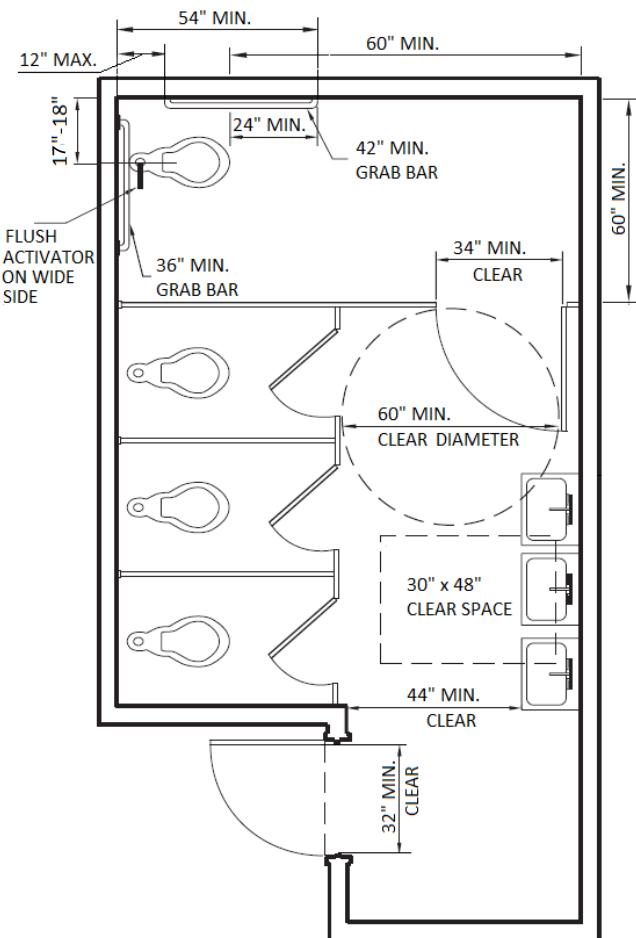


**FIGURE 11A-8J  
PLATFORM AT SECONDARY EXTERIOR DOOR**

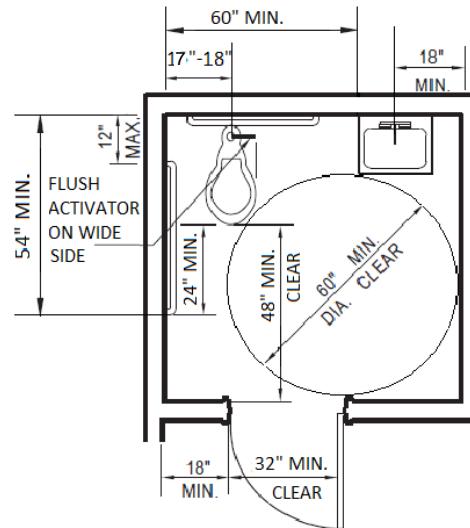


**FIGURE 11A-8K  
RAMP AT SECONDARY EXTERIOR DOOR**

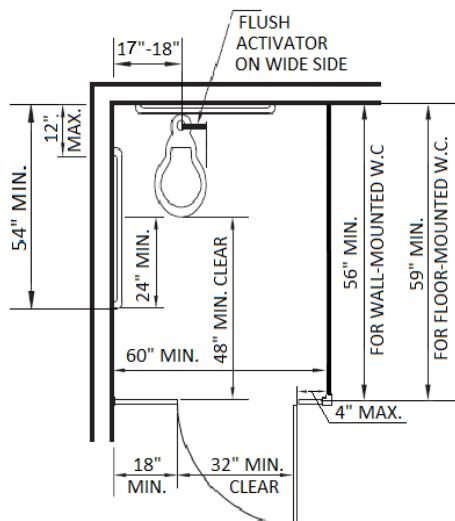
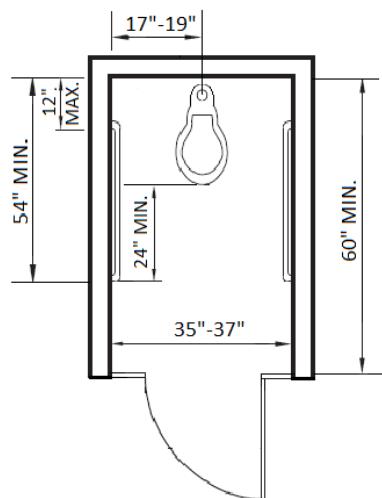
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) MULTIPLE-ACCOMMODATION TOILET FACILITY



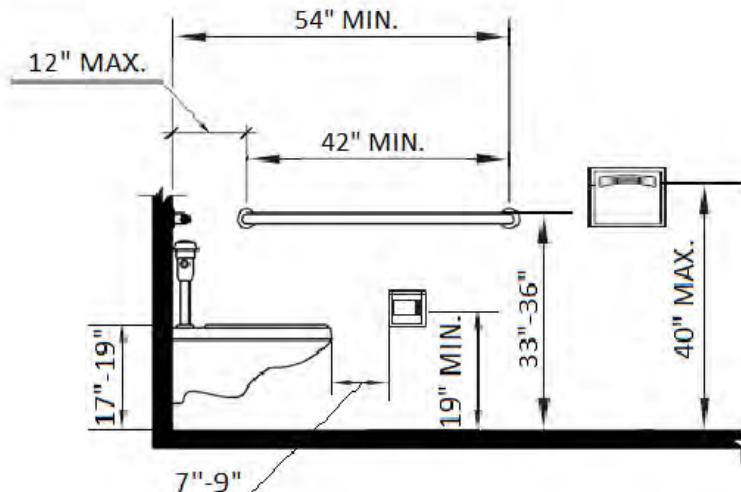
(b) SINGLE-ACCOMMODATION TOILET FACILITY

(c) ACCESSIBLE WATER CLOSET COMPARTMENT  
WITHIN MULTIPLE-ACCOMMODATION TOILET FACILITY

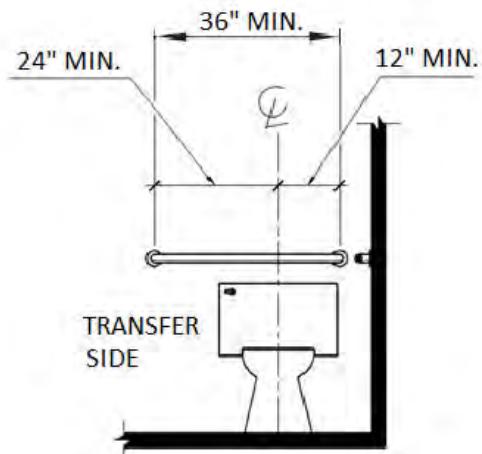
(d) AMBULATORY ACCESSIBLE COMPARTMENT

FIGURE 11A-9A  
TOILET FACILITIES

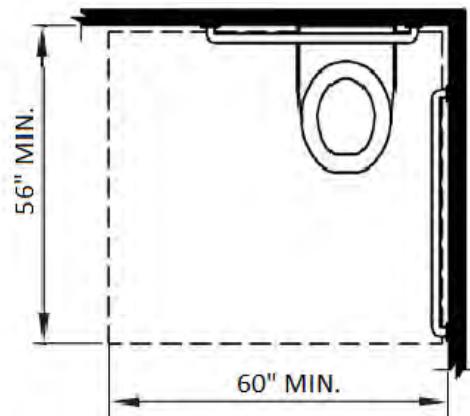
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) SIDE VIEW



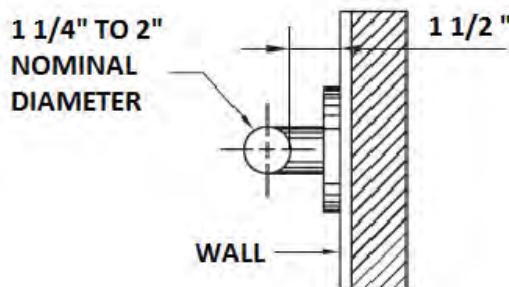
(b) FRONT VIEW



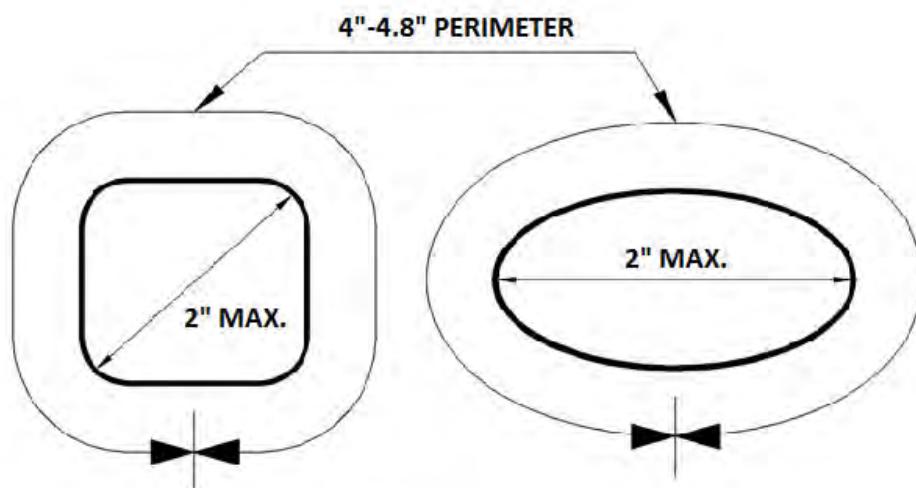
(c) CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT WATER CLOSETS

FIGURE 11A-9B  
WATER CLOSETS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



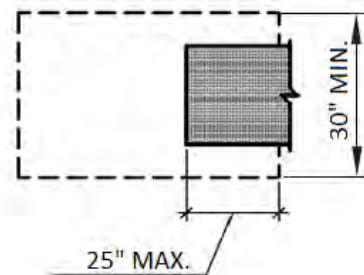
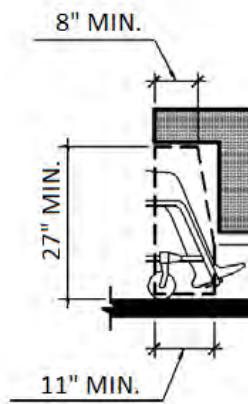
(a) SECTION THROUGH TYPICAL CIRCULAR GRAB BAR



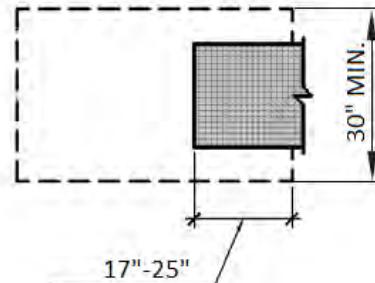
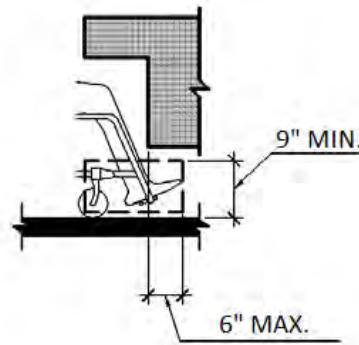
(b) NON-CIRCULAR CROSS SECTIONS

FIGURE 11A-9C  
GRAB BARS

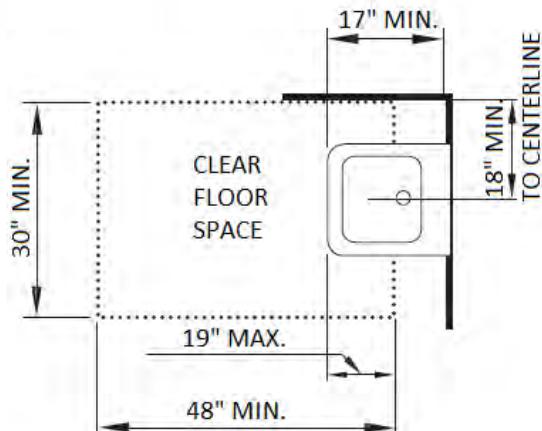
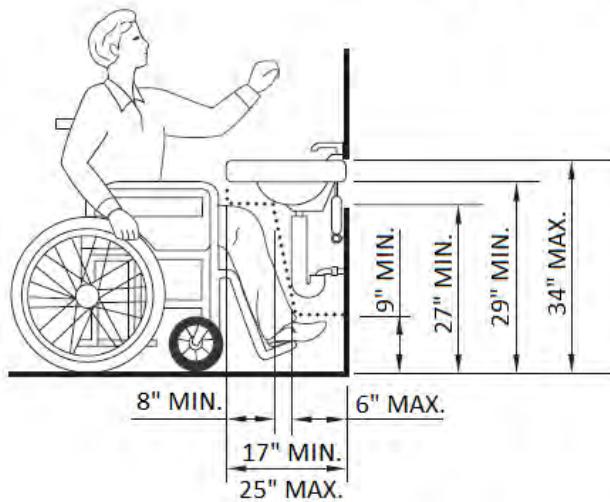
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) KNEE SPACE - GENERAL REQUIREMENT



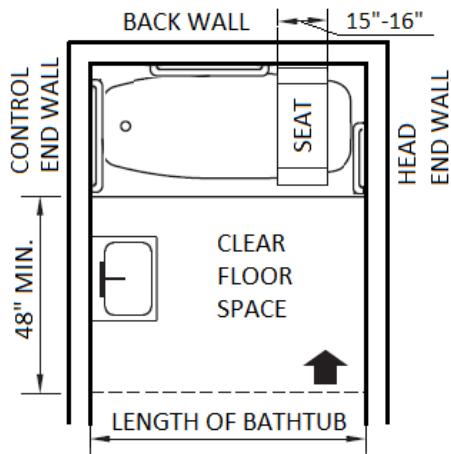
(b) TOE SPACE - GENERAL REQUIREMENT



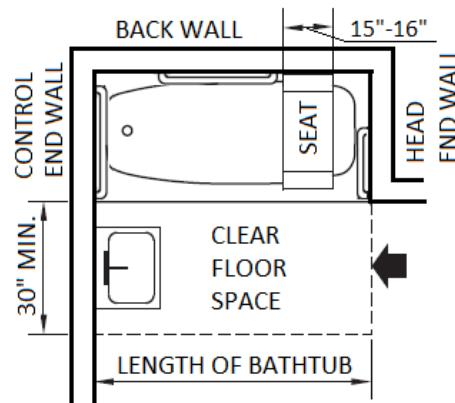
(c) KNEE AND TOE SPACE FOR LAVATORIES

FIGURE 11A-9D  
KNEE AND TOE SPACE

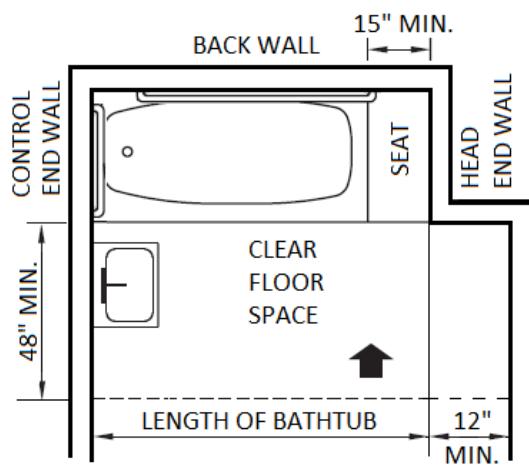
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



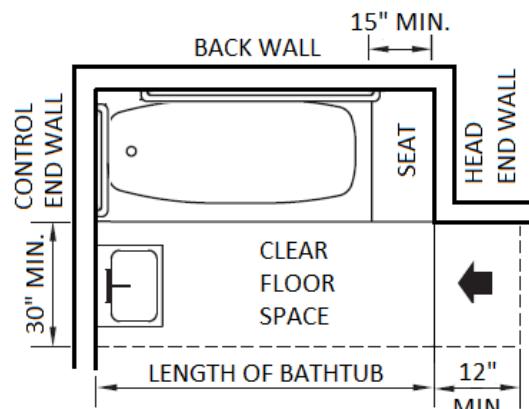
(a) REMOVABLE SEAT IN TUB - FRONT APPROACH



(b) REMOVABLE SEAT IN TUB - SIDE APPROACH



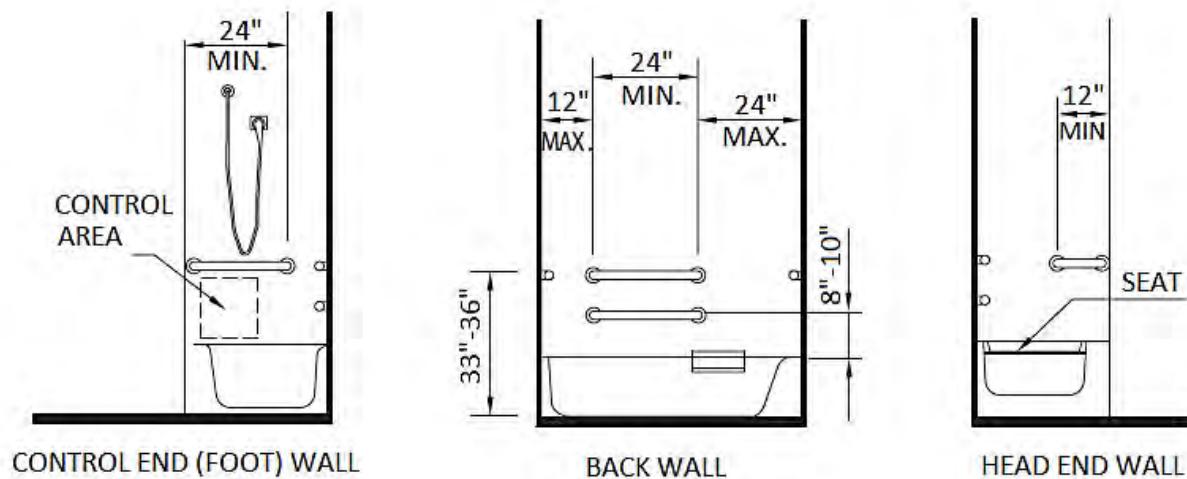
(c) PERMANENT SEAT IN TUB - FRONT APPROACH



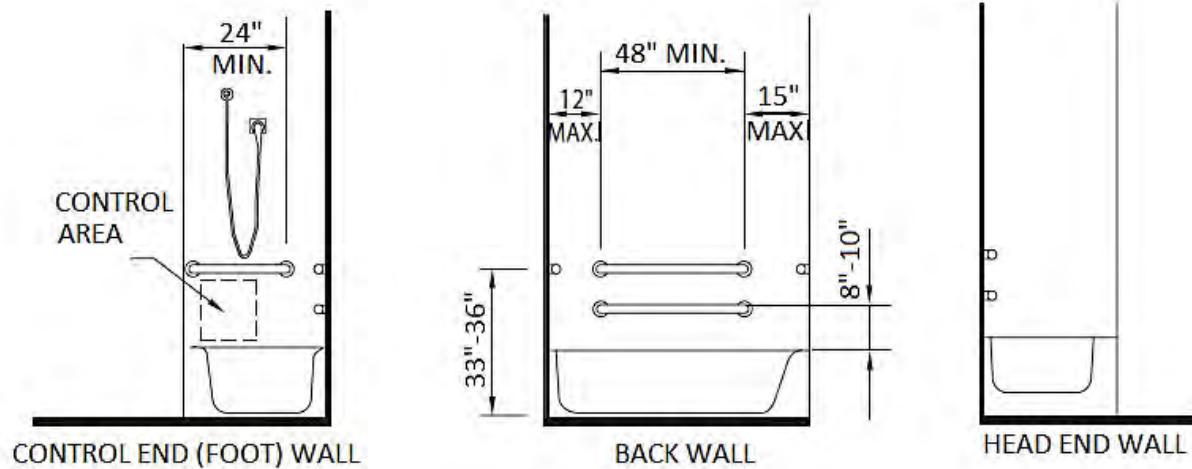
(d) PERMANENT SEAT IN TUB - SIDE APPROACH

**NOTE:** SEE FIGURE 11A-9F FOR SIZE OF GRAB BARS

**FIGURE 11A-9E**  
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE AT BATHTUBS



(a) WITH REMOVABLE SEAT IN TUB



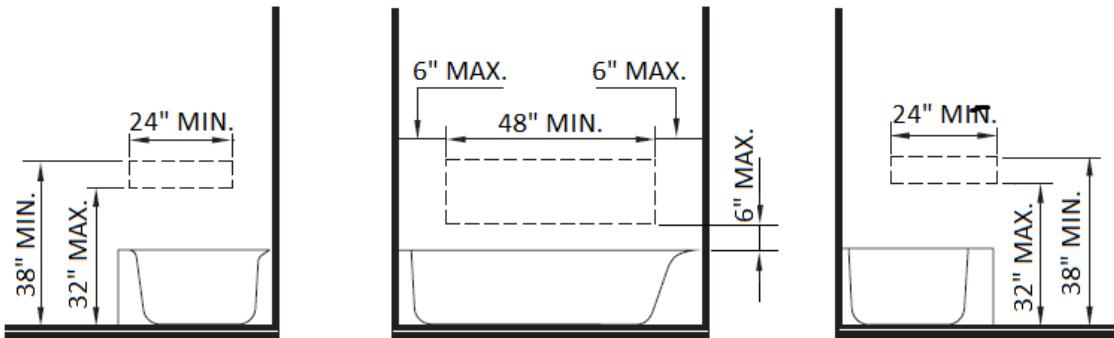
(b) WITH PERMANENT SEAT AT HEAD OF TUB

FIGURE 11A-9F  
GRAB BARS AT BATHTUBS

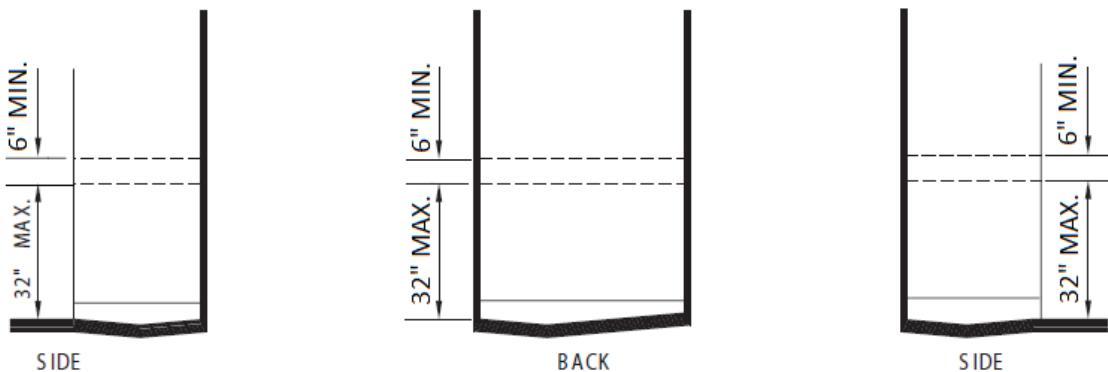
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) GRAB BAR REINFORCEMENT FOR ADAPTABLE WATER CLOSETS



(b) GRAB BAR REINFORCEMENT FOR ADAPTABLE BATHTUBS

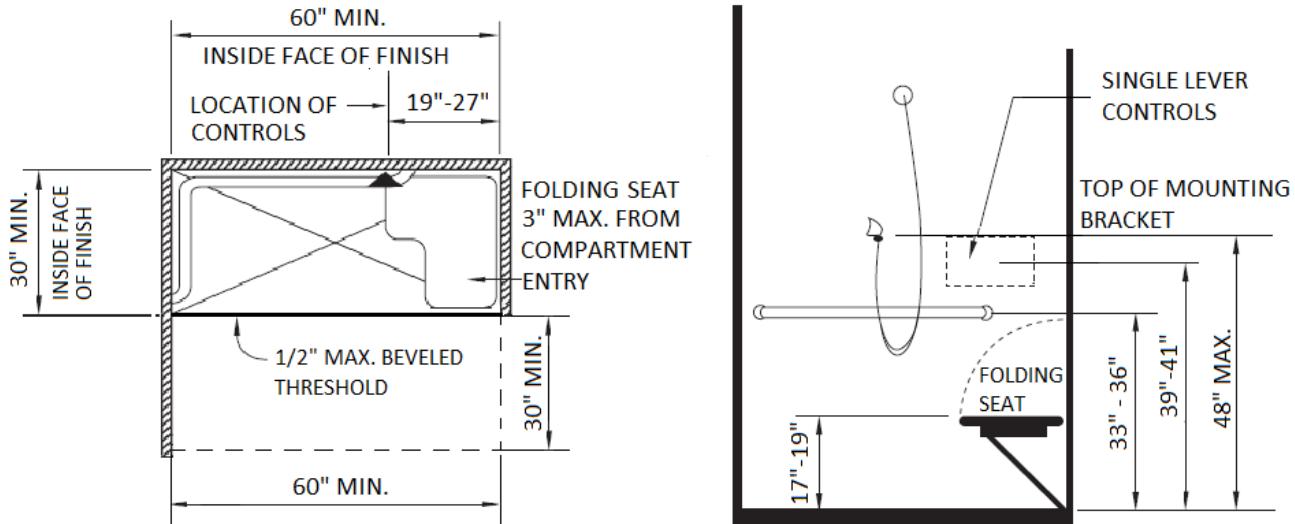


(c) GRAB BAR REINFORCEMENT FOR ADAPTABLE SHOWERS

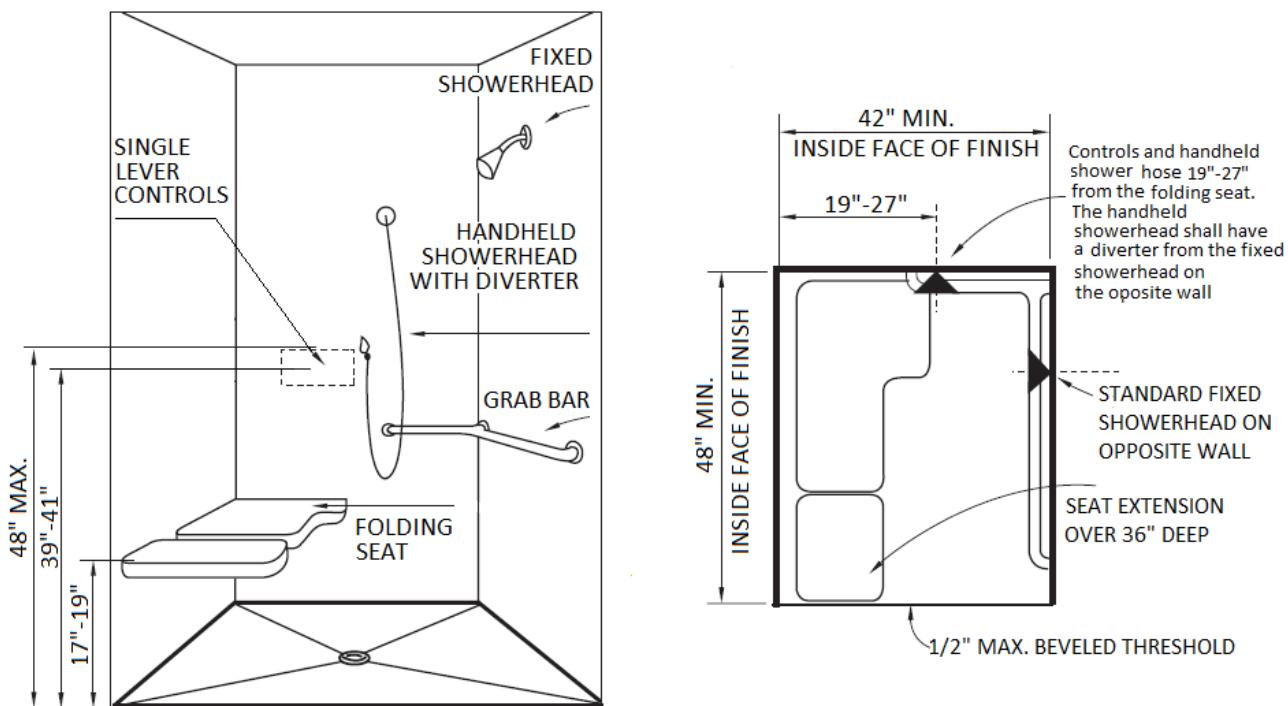
AREAS OUTLINED IN DASHED LINES REPRESENT LOCATION FOR FUTURE INSTALLATION OF GRAB BARS

**FIGURE 11A-9G**  
REINFORCEMENT FOR GRAB BARS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

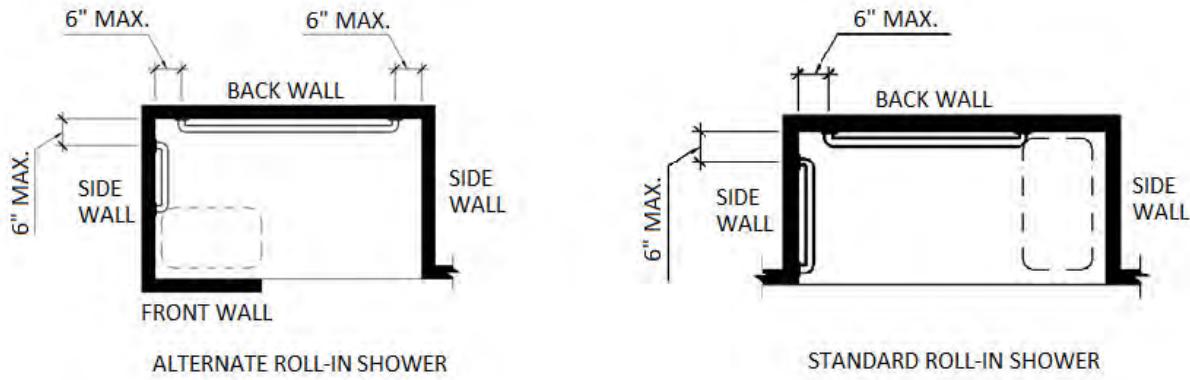


(a) 60" x 30" ROLL-IN SHOWER

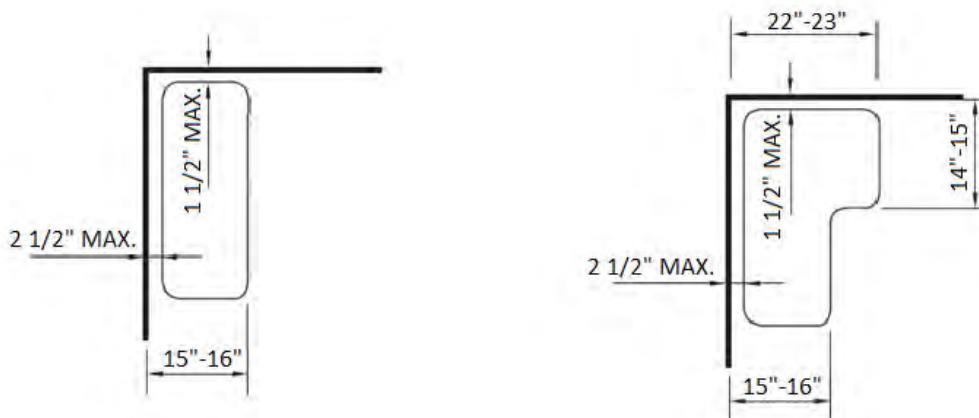


(b) 42" x 48" ROLL-IN SHOWER

FIGURE 11A-9H  
STANDARD ROLL-IN SHOWER



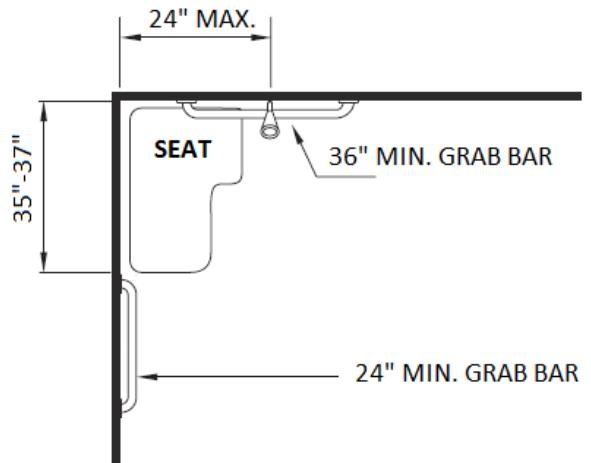
(a) GRAB BARS



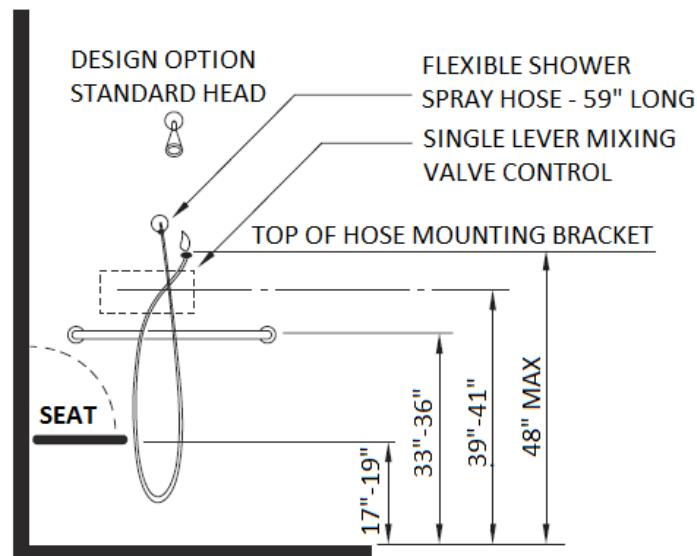
(b) SHOWER SEATS

**FIGURE 1A-9I**  
**SHOWER SEATS AND GRAB BARS**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



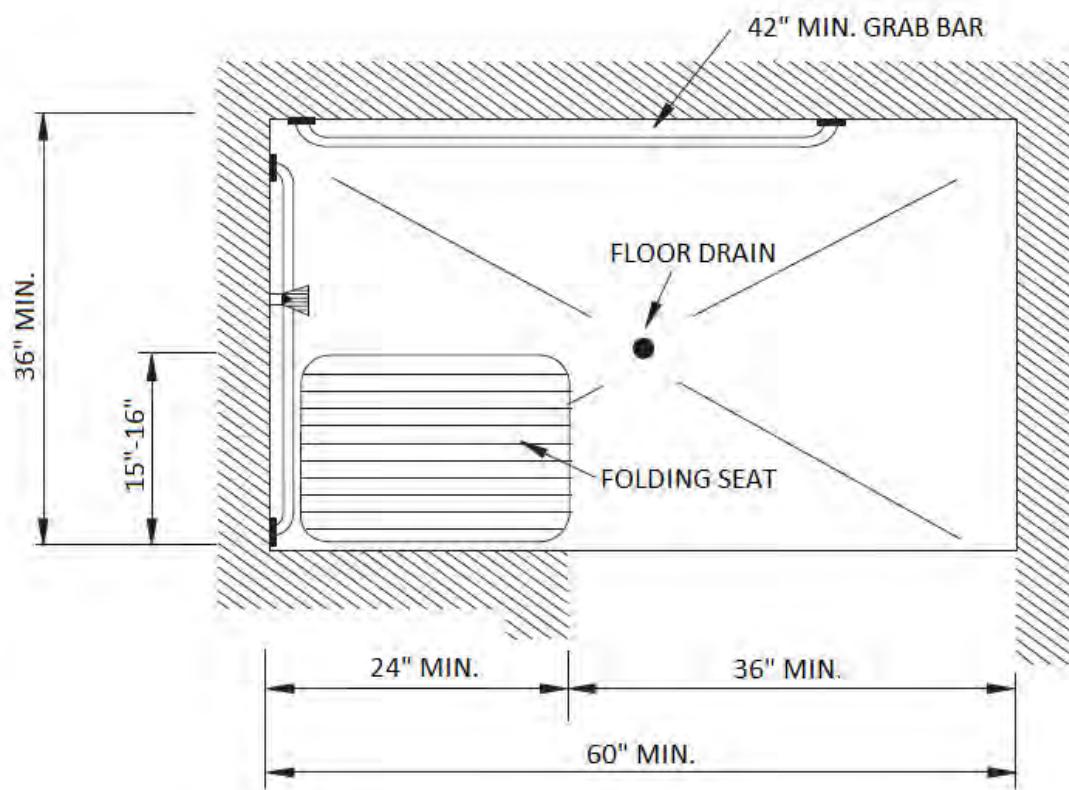
(a) PLAN VIEW



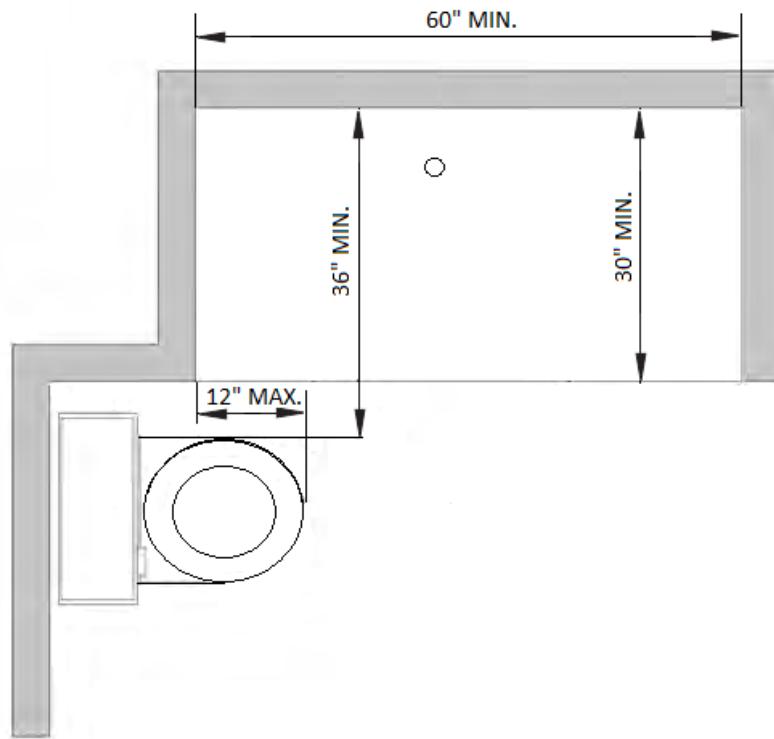
(b) ELEVATION

FIGURE 11A-9J  
OPEN SHOWER

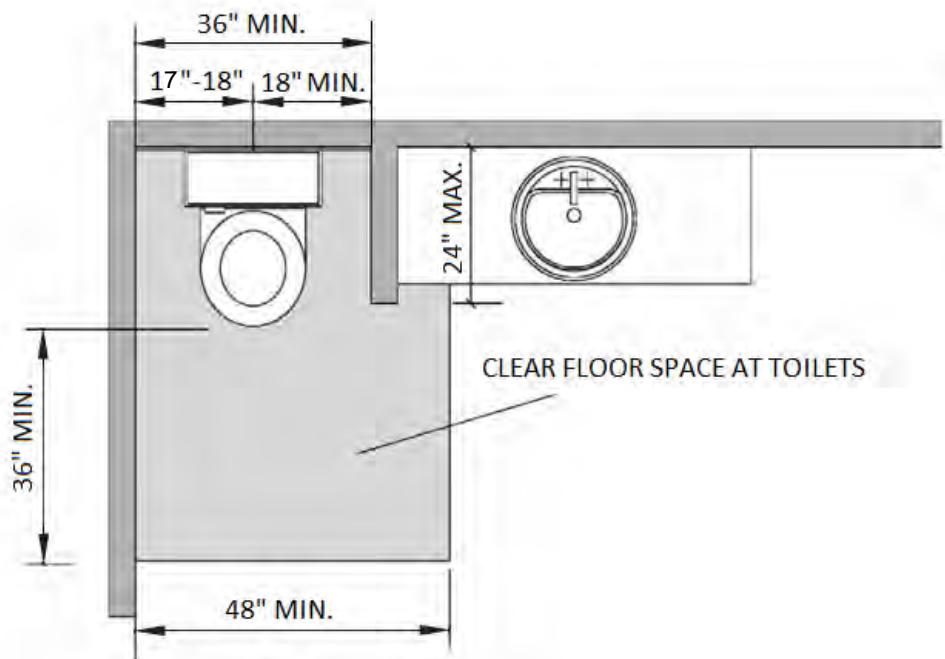
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



**FIGURE 11A-9K  
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN SHOWER**

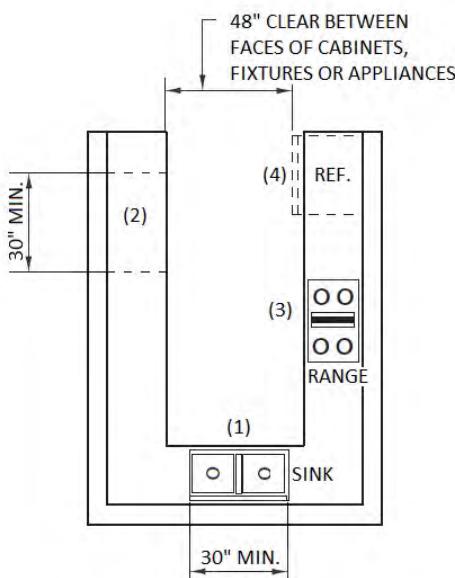
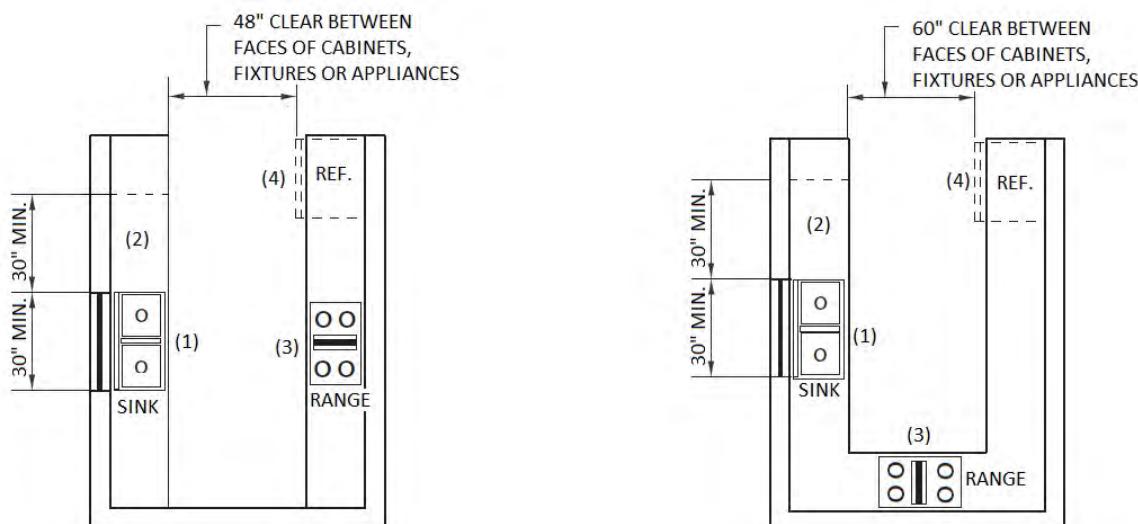


**FIGURE 11A-9L**  
**SHOWER WITH WATER CLOSET**



**FIGURE 11A-9M**  
**WING WALL OR CABINET AT WATER CLOSET**

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

**(c) "U" SHAPED KITCHEN WITH SINK AT THE BASE**

(1) 30" minimum countertop space for sink installation with removable base cabinet and finish flooring beneath the sink; 30" x 48" minimum clear floor space to allow parallel or forward approach.

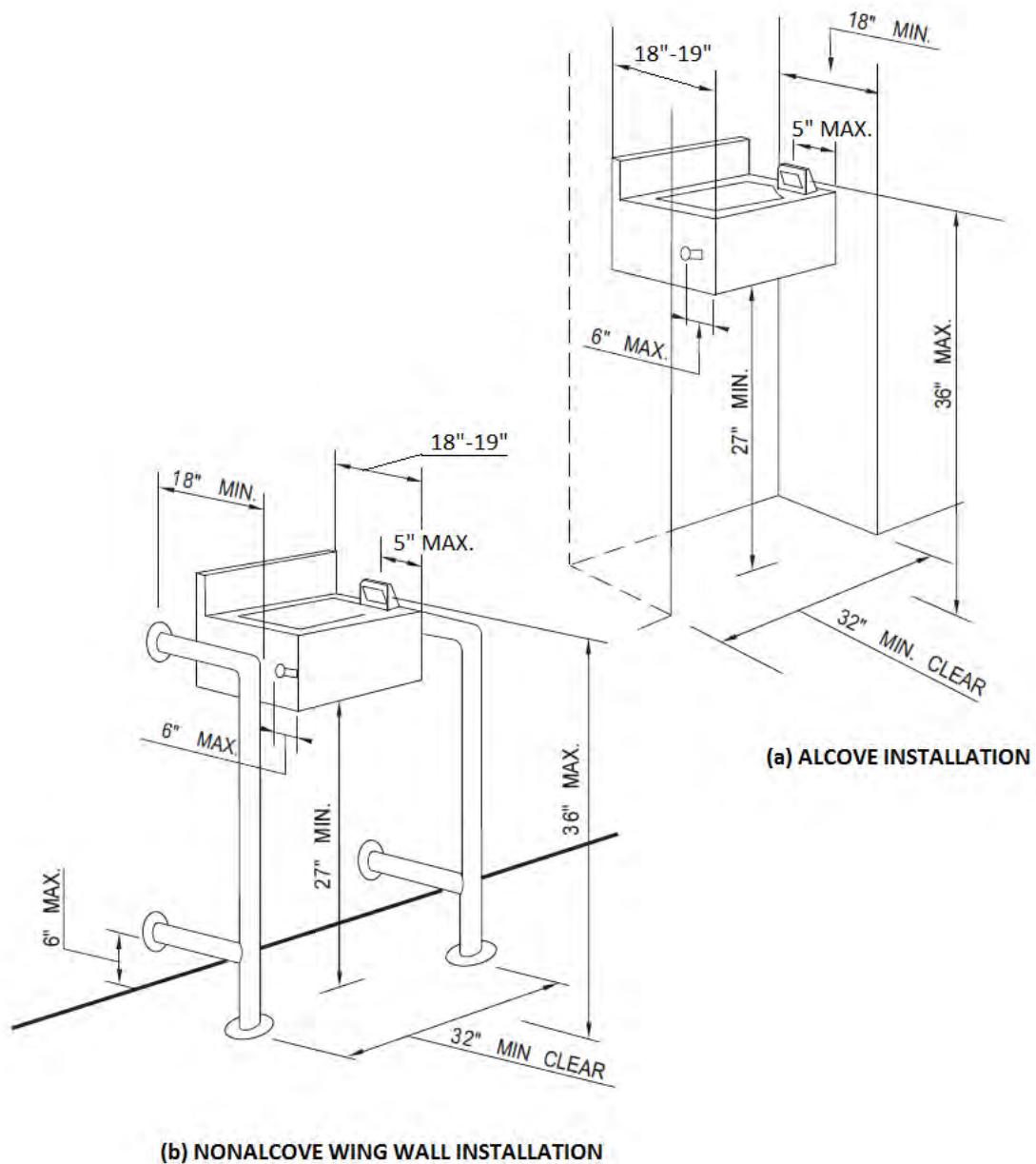
(2) 30" minimum countertop for work surface with removable base cabinet and finish flooring beneath; 30" x 48" minimum clear floor space to allow parallel or forward approach.

(3) 30" x 48" minimum clear floor space adjacent to range to allow parallel approach.

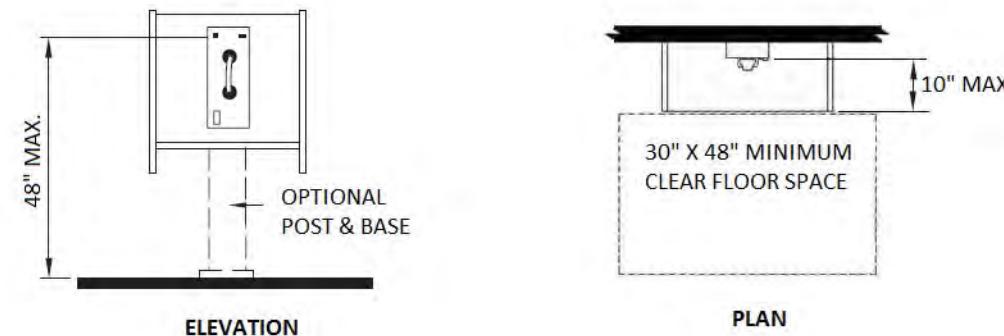
(4) 30" x 48" clear floor space at refrigerator, dishwasher, trash compactor or other appliances to allow parallel or forward approach.

**FIGURE 11A-10A  
KITCHEN SPECIFICATIONS**

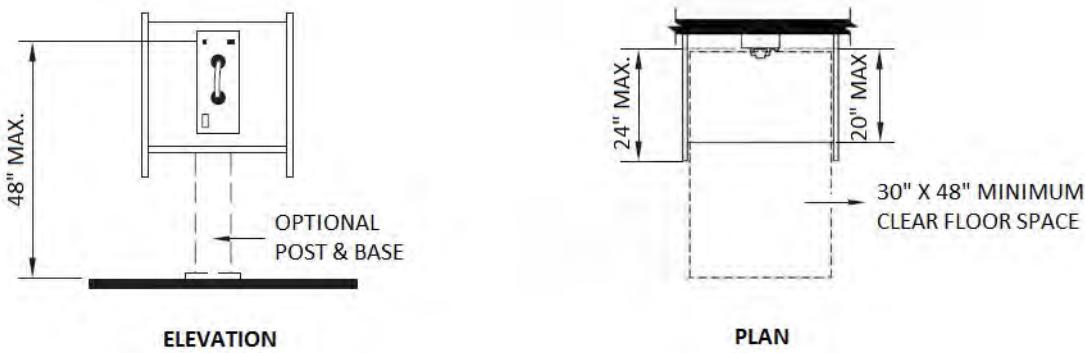
## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY

FIGURE 11A-11A  
DRINKING FOUNTAINS

## HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY



(a) PARALLEL APPROACH



(b) FORWARD APPROACH

FIGURE 11A-11B  
TELEPHONES

**HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY**

**FIGURE 11A-11C**  
**INTERNATIONAL TTY SYMBOL**



**FIGURE 11A-11D**  
**VOLUME CONTROL TELEPHONES**



**FIGURE 11A-11E**  
**INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESS FOR HEARING LOSS**

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 11B – ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS,**  
**COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
 See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter						X																	
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							



## CHAPTER 11B

# **ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

## **DIVISION 1: APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION**

### **11B-101 Purpose**

**11B-101.1 General.** This *chapter* contains scoping and technical requirements for accessibility to sites, facilities, buildings and elements by individuals with disabilities. The requirements are to be applied during the design, construction, additions to, and alteration of sites, facilities, buildings and elements to the extent required by *Chapter 1, Section 1.9*.

### **11B-101.2 Reserved.**

**11B-102 Dimensions for adults and children.** The technical requirements are based on adult dimensions and anthropometrics. In addition, this *chapter* includes technical requirements based on children's dimensions and anthropometrics for drinking fountains, water closets, toilet compartments, lavatories and sinks, dining surfaces and work surfaces.

**11B-103 Equivalent facilitation.** Nothing in these requirements prevents the use of designs, products or technologies as alternatives to those prescribed, provided they result in substantially equivalent or greater accessibility and usability.

### **11B-104 Conventions**

**11B-104.1 Dimensions.** Dimensions that are not stated as "maximum" or "minimum" are absolute.

**11B-104.1.1 Construction and manufacturing tolerances.** All dimensions are subject to conventional industry tolerances except where the requirement is stated as a range with specific minimum and maximum end points.

**11B-104.2 Calculation of percentages.** Where the required number of elements or facilities to be provided is determined by calculations of ratios or percentages and remainders or fractions result, the next greater whole number of such elements or facilities shall be provided. Where the determination of the required size or dimension of an element or facility involves ratios or percentages, rounding down for values less than one half shall be permitted.

**11B-104.3 Figures.** Unless specifically stated otherwise, figures are provided for informational purposes only.

### **11B-105 Referenced standards.**

**11B-105.1 General.** See *Chapter 35*.

### **11B-106 Definitions**

**11B-106.1 General.** For the purpose of this *chapter*, the terms *listed* in *Section 11B-106.5 and defined in Chapter 2* have the indicated meaning.

**11B-106.2 Terms defined in referenced standards.** Terms not *listed* in *Section 11B-106.5 and not defined in Chapter 2*,

*Section 202*, but specifically defined in a referenced standard, shall have the specified meaning from the referenced standard unless otherwise stated.

**11B-106.3 Undefined terms.** The meaning of terms not specifically *listed* in *Section 11B-106.5, and not defined in Chapter 2, Section 202*, or in referenced standards shall be as defined by collegiate dictionaries in the sense that the context implies.

**11B-106.4 Interchangeability.** See *Chapter 2, Section 201.2*.

Convention	Description
36 914	dimension showing English units (in inches unless otherwise specified) above the line and SI units (in millimeters unless otherwise specified) below the line
6 152	dimension for small measurements
33-36 838-914	dimension showing a range with minimum - maximum
min	minimum
max	maximum
>	greater than
≥	greater than or equal to
<	less than
≤	less than or equal to
— — — —	boundary of clear floor space or maneuvering clearance
— — — — C	centerline
— — — —	a permitted element or its extension
→	direction of travel or approach
— — — —	a wall, floor, ceiling or other element cut in section or plan
██████████	a highlighted element in elevation or plan
▨▨▨▨	location zone of element, control or feature

**FIGURE 11B-104  
GRAPHIC CONVENTION FOR FIGURES**

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

**IIB-106.5 Defined terms.** *The following terms are defined in Chapter 2, Section 202.*

<b>ACCESS AISLE</b>	<b>CURB RAMP</b>
<b>ACCESSIBILITY</b>	<b>DETECTABLE WARNING</b>
<b>ACCESSIBLE</b>	<b>DIRECTIONAL SIGN</b>
<b>ACCESSIBLE ELEMENT</b>	<b>DISABILITY</b>
<b>ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS</b>	<b>DORMITORY</b>
<b>ACCESSIBLE ROUTE</b>	<b>DRIVE-UP ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION</b>
<b>ACCESSIBLE SPACE</b>	<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)</b>
<b>ADAPTABLE</b>	<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) CHARGER</b>
<b>ADDITION</b>	<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING SPACE (EV SPACE)</b>
<b>ADJUSTED CONSTRUCTION COST</b>	<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION (EVCS)</b>
<b>ADMINISTRATIVE AUTHORITY</b>	<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) CONNECTOR</b>
<b> AISLE</b>	<b>ELEMENT</b>
<b>ALTERATION</b>	<b>ELEVATED PLAY COMPONENT</b>
<b>AMUSEMENT ATTRACTION</b>	<b>ELEVATOR, PASSENGER</b>
<b>AMUSEMENT RIDE</b>	<b>EMPLOYEE WORK AREA</b>
<b>AMUSEMENT RIDE SEAT</b>	<b>ENFORCING AGENCY</b>
<b>ANSI</b>	<b>ENTRANCE</b>
<b>APPROVED</b>	<b>EQUIVALENT FACILITATION</b>
<b>APPROVED TESTING AGENCY</b>	<b>EXISTING BUILDING OR FACILITY</b>
<b>AREA OF REFUGE</b>	<b>EXIT</b>
<b>AREA OF SPORT ACTIVITY</b>	<b>FACILITY</b>
<b>ASSEMBLY AREA</b>	<b>FUNCTIONAL AREA</b>
<b>ASSISTIVE LISTENING SYSTEM (ALS)</b>	<b>GANGWAY</b>
<b>AUTOMATIC DOOR</b>	<b>GOLF CAR PASSAGE</b>
<b>AUTOMATIC TELLER MACHINE (ATM)</b>	<b>GRAB BAR</b>
<b>BATHROOM</b>	<b>GRADE (ADJACENT GROUND ELEVATION)</b>
<b>BLENDDED TRANSITION</b>	<b>GRADE BREAK</b>
<b>BOARDING PIER</b>	<b>GROUND FLOOR</b>
<b>BOAT LAUNCH RAMP</b>	<b>GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENT</b>
<b>BOAT SLIP</b>	<b>GUARD</b>
<b>BUILDING</b>	<b>HANDRAIL</b>
<b>BUILDING OFFICIAL</b>	<b>HEALTH CARE PROVIDER</b>
<b>CATCH POOL</b>	<b>HISTORICAL BUILDINGS</b>
<b>CCR</b>	<b>HOUSING AT A PLACE OF EDUCATION</b>
<b>CHARACTERS</b>	<b>IF, IF . . . THEN</b>
<b>CHILDREN'S USE</b>	<b>INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY</b>
<b>CIRCULATION PATH</b>	<b>KEY STATION</b>
<b>CLEAR</b>	<b>KICK PLATE</b>
<b>CLEAR FLOOR SPACE</b>	<b>KITCHEN OR KITCHENETTE</b>
<b>CLOSED-CIRCUIT TELEPHONE</b>	<b>LAVATORY</b>
<b>COMMERCIAL FACILITIES</b>	<b>MAIL BOXES</b>
<b>COMMON USE</b>	<b>MARKED CROSSING</b>
<b>COMPLY WITH</b>	<b>MAY</b>
<b>CROSS SLOPE</b>	<b>MEZZANINE</b>
<b>CURB CUT</b>	<b>MULTIBEDROOM HOUSING UNIT</b>
	<b>NFPA</b>
	<b>NOSING</b>

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

OCCUPANT LOAD	SHOULD
OCCUPIABLE SPACE	SIDEWALK
OPEN RISER	SIGN
OPERABLE PART	SINK
PASSENGER ELEVATOR	SITE
PATH OF TRAVEL	SLEEPING ACCOMMODATIONS
PEDESTRIAN	SOFT CONTAINED PLAY STRUCTURE
PEDESTRIAN WAY	SPACE
PERMANENT	SPECIFIED PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION
PERMIT	STAGE
PICTOGRAM	STAIR
PLACE OF PUBLIC ACCOMMODATION	STAIRWAY
PLATFORM	STORY
PLATFORM (WHEELCHAIR) LIFT	STRUCTURAL FRAME
PLAY AREA	STRUCTURE
PLAY COMPONENT	TACTILE
POINT-OF-SALE DEVICE	TACTILE SIGN
POWDER ROOM	TECHNICALLY INFEASIBLE
POWER-ASSISTED DOOR	TEEING GROUND
PRIVATE BUILDING OR FACILITY	TEMPORARY
PROFESSIONAL OFFICE OF A HEALTH CARE PROVIDER	TEXT TELEPHONE
PUBLIC BUILDING OR FACILITY	TRANSFER DEVICE
PUBLIC ENTITY	TRANSIENT LODGING
PUBLIC ENTRANCE	TRANSIT BOARDING PLATFORM
PUBLIC HOUSING	TRANSITION PLATE
PUBLIC USE	TTY
PUBLIC-USE AREAS	UNREASONABLE HARDSHIP
PUBLIC WAY	USE ZONE
QUALIFIED HISTORIC BUILDING OR FACILITY	VALUATION THRESHOLD
RAMP	VEHICULAR WAY
REASONABLE PORTION	WALK
RECOMMEND	WET BAR
REMODELING	WHEELCHAIR
REPAIR	WHEELCHAIR SPACE
RESIDENTIAL DWELLING UNIT	WORKSTATION
RESTRICTED ENTRANCE	WORK AREA EQUIPMENT
RISER	<i>11B-107 Special conditions appeals action. See Chapter 1, Section 1.9.1.5.</i>
RUNNING SLOPE	<i>11B-108 Maintenance of accessible features. Features, facilities and equipment required by Chapter 11B to be accessible to and useable by persons with disabilities shall be maintained in operable working condition. Isolated or temporary interruptions in service or accessibility due to maintenance or repairs shall be permitted.</i>
SELF-SERVICE STORAGE	
SERVICE ENTRANCE	
SHALL	
SHOPPING CENTER (OR SHOPPING MALL)	

## DIVISION 2: SCOPING REQUIREMENTS

### **11B-201 Application**

**11B-201.1 Scope.** All areas of newly designed and newly constructed buildings and facilities and altered portions of existing buildings and facilities shall comply with these requirements.

**11B-201.2 Application based on building or facility use.** Where a site, building, facility, room or space contains more than one use, each portion shall comply with the applicable requirements for that use.

**11B-201.3 Temporary and permanent structures.** These requirements shall apply to temporary and permanent buildings and facilities.

**11B-201.4 Construction support facilities.** *These requirements shall apply to temporary or permanent construction support facilities for uses and activities not directly associated with the actual processes of construction, including but not limited to offices, meeting rooms, plan rooms, other administrative or support functions. When provided, toilet and bathing facilities serving construction support facilities shall comply with Section 11B-213. When toilet and bathing facilities serving construction support facilities are provided by portable units, at least one of each type shall be accessible and connected to the construction support facilities it serves by an accessible route.*

**Exception:** During construction an accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points or the boundary of the area of construction and the entrance to the construction support facilities if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.

### **11B-202 Existing buildings and facilities**

**11B-202.1 General.** Additions and alterations to existing buildings or facilities shall comply with Section 11B-202.

**11B-202.2 Additions.** Each addition to an existing building or facility shall comply with the requirements for new construction and shall comply with Section 11B-202.4.

**11B-202.3 Alterations.** Where existing elements or spaces are altered, each altered element or space shall comply with the applicable requirements of Division 2, including Section 11B-202.4.

#### **Exceptions:**

##### **1. Reserved.**

**2. Technically infeasible.** In alterations, where the enforcing authority determines compliance with applicable requirements is technically infeasible, the alteration shall provide equivalent facilitation or comply with the requirements to the maximum extent feasible. The details of the finding that full compliance with the requirements is technically infeasible shall be recorded and entered into the files of the enforcing agency.

3. Residential dwelling units not required to be accessible in compliance with *this code* shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.3.

**11B-202.3.1 Prohibited reduction in access.** An alteration that decreases or has the effect of decreasing the accessibility of a building or facility below the requirements for new construction at the time of the alteration is prohibited.

**11B-202.3.2 Extent of application.** An alteration of an existing element, space or area of a building or facility shall not impose a requirement for accessibility greater than required for new construction.

**11B-202.3.3 Alteration of single elements.** *If alterations of single elements, when considered together, amount to an alteration of a room or space in a building or facility, the entire room or space shall be made accessible.*

**11B-202.4 Path of travel requirements in alterations, additions and structural repairs.** When alterations or additions are made to existing buildings or facilities, an accessible path of travel to the specific area of alteration or addition shall be provided. The primary accessible path of travel shall include:

1. A primary entrance to the building or facility,
2. Toilet and bathing facilities serving the area,
3. Drinking fountains serving the area,
4. Public telephones serving the area, and
5. Signs.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Residential dwelling units shall comply with Section 11B-233.3.4.2.

2. If the following elements of a path of travel have been constructed or altered in compliance with the accessibility requirements of the immediately preceding edition of the California Building Code, it shall not be required to retrofit such elements to reflect the incremental changes in this code solely because of an alteration to an area served by those elements of the path of travel:

1. A primary entrance to the building or facility,
2. Toilet and bathing facilities serving the area,
3. Drinking fountains serving the area,
4. Public telephones serving the area, and
5. Signs.

**Note:** The language in this exception, which refers to the "immediately preceding edition of the California Building Code," shall permit a reference back to one CBC edition only and is not accumulative to prior editions.

3. Additions or alterations to meet accessibility requirements consisting of one or more of the following items shall be limited to the actual scope of

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

*work of the project and shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.4:*

1. Altering one building entrance.
2. Altering one existing toilet facility.
3. Altering existing elevators.
4. Altering existing steps.
5. Altering existing handrails.
4. Alterations solely for the purpose of barrier removal undertaken pursuant to the requirements of the Americans with Disabilities Act (Public Law 101-336, 28 C.F.R., Section 36.304) or the accessibility requirements of this code as those requirements or regulations now exist or are hereafter amended including, but not limited to, one or more of the following items shall be limited to the actual scope of work of the project and shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.4:
  1. Installing ramps.
  2. Making curb cuts in sidewalks and entrance.
  3. Repositioning shelves.
  4. Rearranging tables, chairs, vending machines, display racks and other furniture.
  5. Repositioning telephones.
  6. Adding raised markings on elevator control buttons.
  7. Installing flashing alarm lights.
  8. Widening doors.
  9. Installing offset hinges to widen doorways.
  10. Eliminating a turnstile or providing an alternative accessible route.
  11. Installing accessible door hardware.
  12. Installing grab bars in toilet stalls.
  13. Rearranging toilet partitions to increase maneuvering space.
  14. Insulating lavatory pipes under sinks to prevent burns.
  15. Installing a raised toilet seat.
  16. Installing a full-length bathroom mirror.
  17. Repositioning the paper towel dispenser in a bathroom.
  18. Creating designated accessible parking spaces.
  19. Removing high-pile, low-density carpeting.
5. Alterations of existing parking lots by resurfacing and/or restriping shall be limited to the actual scope of work of the project and shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.4.
6. The addition or replacement of signs and/or identification devices shall be limited to the actual scope of work of the project and shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.4.
7. Projects consisting only of heating, ventilation, air conditioning, reroofing, electrical work not involving placement of switches and receptacles, cosmetic work that does not affect items regulated by this code, such as painting, equipment not considered to be a part of the architecture of the building or area, such as com-

*puter terminals and office equipment shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.4 unless they affect the usability of the building or facility.*

8. When the adjusted construction cost, as defined, is less than or equal to the current valuation threshold, as defined, the cost of compliance with Section 11B-202.4 shall be limited to 20 percent of the adjusted construction cost of alterations, structural repairs or additions. When the cost of full compliance with Section 11B-202.4 would exceed 20 percent, compliance shall be provided to the greatest extent possible without exceeding 20 percent.

*When the adjusted construction cost, as defined, exceeds the current valuation threshold, as defined, and the enforcing agency determines the cost of compliance with Section 11B-202.4 is an unreasonable hardship, as defined, full compliance with Section 11B-202.4 shall not be required. Compliance shall be provided by equivalent facilitation or to the greatest extent possible without creating an unreasonable hardship; but in no case shall the cost of compliance be less than 20 percent of the adjusted construction cost of alterations, structural repairs or additions. The details of the finding of unreasonable hardship shall be recorded and entered into the files of the enforcing agency and shall be subject to Chapter 1, Section 1.9.1.5, Special Conditions for Persons with Disabilities Requiring Appeals Action Ratification.*

*For the purposes of this exception, the adjusted construction cost of alterations, structural repairs or additions shall not include the cost of alterations to path of travel elements required to comply with Section 11B-202.4.*

*In choosing which accessible elements to provide, priority should be given to those elements that will provide the greatest access in the following order:*

1. An accessible entrance;
2. An accessible route to the altered area;
3. At least one accessible restroom for each sex or one accessible unisex (single-user or family) restroom;
4. Accessible telephones;
5. Accessible drinking fountains; and
6. When possible, additional accessible elements such as parking, signs, storage and alarms.

*If an area has been altered without providing an accessible path of travel to that area, and subsequent alterations of that area or a different area on the same path of travel are undertaken within three years of the original alteration, the total cost of alterations to the areas on that path of travel during the preceding three-year period shall be considered in determining whether the cost of making that path of travel accessible is disproportionate.*

9. Certain types of privately funded, multistory buildings and facilities were formerly exempt from accessibility requirements above and below the first floor under this code, but as of April 1, 1994 are no longer exempt due to more restrictive provisions in the

*federal Americans with Disabilities Act. In alteration projects involving buildings and facilities previously approved and built without elevators, areas above and below the ground floor are subject to the 20-percent disproportionality provisions described in Exception 8, above, even if the value of the project exceeds the valuation threshold in Exception 8. The types of buildings and facilities are:*

1. *Office buildings and passenger vehicle service stations of three stories or more and 3,000 or more square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per floor.*
2. *Offices of physicians and surgeons.*
3. *Shopping centers.*
4. *Other buildings and facilities three stories or more and 3,000 or more square feet (279 m<sup>2</sup>) per floor if a reasonable portion of services sought and used by the public is available on the accessible level.*

*For the general privately funded multistory building exception applicable to new construction and alterations, see Section 11B-206.2.3, Exception 1.*

*The elevator exception set forth in this section does not obviate or limit in any way the obligation to comply with the other accessibility requirements in this code. For example, floors above or below the accessible ground floor must meet the requirements of this section except for elevator service. If toilet or bathing facilities are provided on a level not served by an elevator, then toilet or bathing facilities must be provided on the accessible ground floor.*

10. *Alterations solely for the purpose of installing electric vehicle charging stations (EVCS) at facilities where vehicle fueling, recharging, parking or storage is a primary function shall comply with Section 11B-202.4 to the maximum extent feasible without exceeding 20 percent of the cost of the work directly associated with the installation of EVCS. A "primary function" is a major activity for which the facility is intended.*

*Alterations solely for the purpose of installing EVCS at facilities where vehicle fueling, recharging, parking or storage is not a primary function shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-202.4*

**11B-202.5 Alterations to qualified historic buildings and facilities.** Alterations to a qualified historic building or facility shall comply with the State Historical Building Code, Part 8, Title 24, of the California Code of Regulations.

#### **Exception: Reserved.**

#### **11B-203 General exceptions**

**11B-203.1 General.** Sites, buildings, facilities and elements are exempt from these requirements to the extent specified by 11B-203.

**11B-203.2 Construction sites.** Structures and sites directly associated with the actual processes of construction, including but not limited to, scaffolding, bridging, materials hoists, materials storage and construction trailers shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Portable toilet units provided for use exclu-

sively by construction personnel on a construction site shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-213 or to be on an accessible route.

**11B-203.3 Raised areas.** Areas raised primarily for purposes of security, life safety or fire safety, including but not limited to observation or lookout galleries, prison guard towers, fire towers or life guard stands, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**11B-203.4 Limited access spaces.** Spaces *not customarily occupied and accessed only by ladders, catwalks, crawl spaces or very narrow passageways shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.*

**11B-203.5 Machinery spaces.** Spaces frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair or occasional monitoring of equipment shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. Machinery spaces include, but are not limited to, elevator pits or elevator penthouses; mechanical, electrical or communications equipment rooms; piping or equipment catwalks; water or sewage treatment pump rooms and stations; electric substations and transformer vaults; and highway and tunnel utility facilities.

**11B-203.6 Single occupant structures.** Single occupant structures accessed only by passageways below grade or elevated above standard curb height, including but not limited to, toll booths that are accessed only by underground tunnels, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**11B-203.7 Detention and correctional facilities.** In detention and correctional facilities, common use areas that are used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel and that do not serve holding cells or housing cells required to comply with Section 11B-232, shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**11B-203.8 Residential facilities.** In residential facilities, common use areas that do not serve residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4 or adaptable features complying with Sections 11B-809.6 through 11B-809.12 shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route.

**11B-203.9 Employee workstations.** Employee workstations shall be on an accessible route complying with Division 4. Spaces and elements within employee workstations shall only be required to comply with Sections 11B-207.1, 11B-215.3, 11B-302, 11B-303, 11B-308.1.1, 11B-308.1.2 and 11B-404.2.3 unless exempted by other parts of this code. Common use circulation paths within employee workstations shall comply with Section 11B-206.2.8.

**Exception:** Receptacles, controls and switches that are an integral part of workstation furnishings, fixtures and equipment shall not be required to comply with Sections 11B-308.1.1 and 11B-308.1.2.

**11B-203.10 Raised refereeing, judging and scoring areas.** Raised structures used solely for refereeing, judging or scoring a sport shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. An accessible route complying with Division 4 shall be provided to the ground- or floor-level entry points, where provided, of stairs, ladders or other means of reaching the raised elements or areas.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-203.11 Water slides.** Water slides shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. *An accessible route complying with Division 4 shall be provided to the ground- or floor-level entry points, where provided, of stairs, ladders or other means of reaching the raised elements or areas.*

**11B-203.12 Animal containment areas.** Animal containment areas that are not for public use shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. *Animal containment areas for public use shall be on an accessible route.*

**11B-203.13 Raised boxing or wrestling rings.** Raised boxing or wrestling rings shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. *An accessible route complying with Division 4 shall be provided to the ground- or floor-level entry points, where provided, of stairs, ladders or other means of reaching the raised elements or areas.*

**11B-203.14 Raised diving boards and diving platforms.** Raised diving boards and diving platforms shall not be required to comply with these requirements or to be on an accessible route. *An accessible route complying with Division 4 shall be provided to the ground- or floor-level entry points, where provided, of stairs, ladders or other means of reaching the raised elements or areas.*

### 11B-204 Protruding objects

**11B-204.1 General.** Protruding objects on circulation paths shall comply with Section 11B-307.

#### Exceptions:

1. Within areas of sport activity, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-307.
2. Within play areas, protruding objects on circulation paths shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-307 provided that ground level accessible routes provide vertical clearance in compliance with Section 11B-1008.2.

### 11B-205 Operable parts

**11B-205.1 General.** Operable parts on accessible elements, accessible routes, and in accessible rooms and spaces shall comply with Section 11B-309.

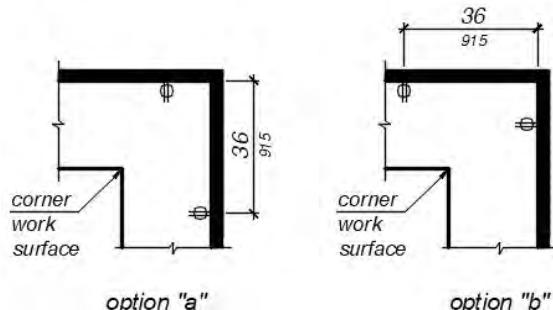
#### Exceptions:

1. Operable parts that are intended for use only by service or maintenance personnel shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.
2. Electrical or communication receptacles serving a dedicated use shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.
3. **Reserved.**
4. Floor electrical receptacles shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.
5. HVAC diffusers shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.
6. Except for light switches, where redundant controls are provided for a single element, one control in each space shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.

7. Cleats and other boat securement devices shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.3.

8. Exercise machines and exercise equipment shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-309.

9. *In residential dwelling units with mobility features where receptacles are provided in a kitchen at a corner work surface, one receptacle shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) from either wall at the inside corner.*



**FIGURE 11B-205.1 Ex. 9  
ELECTRICAL RECEPTACLES AT CORNER WORKSURFACES**

### 11B-206 Accessible routes

**11B-206.1 General.** Accessible routes shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-206 and shall comply with Division 4.

**11B-206.2 Where required.** Accessible routes shall be provided where required by Section 11B-206.2.

**11B-206.2.1 Site arrival points.** At least one accessible route shall be provided within the site from accessible parking spaces and accessible passenger drop-off and loading zones; public streets and sidewalks; and public transportation stops to the accessible building or facility entrance they serve. *Where more than one route is provided, all routes must be accessible.*

#### Exceptions:

1. **Reserved.**
2. An accessible route shall not be required between site arrival points and the building or facility entrance if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.
3. *General circulation paths shall be permitted when located in close proximity to an accessible route.*

**11B-206.2.2 Within a site.** At least one accessible route shall connect accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces that are on the same site.

**Exception:** An accessible route shall not be required between accessible buildings, accessible facilities, accessible elements and accessible spaces if the only means of access between them is a vehicular way not providing pedestrian access.

**11B-206.2.3 Multistory buildings and facilities.** At least one accessible route shall connect each story and mezzanine in multistory buildings and facilities.

#### Exceptions:

1. *The following types of privately funded multi-story buildings do not require a ramp or elevator above and below the first floor:*

- 1.1. *Multistoried office buildings (other than the professional office of a health care provider) and passenger vehicle service stations less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ) per story.*
- 1.2. *Any other privately funded multistoried building that is not a shopping center, shopping mall or the professional office of a health care provider or a terminal, depot or other station used for specified public transportation or an airport passenger terminal and that is less than three stories high or less than 3,000 square feet ( $279 \text{ m}^2$ ) per story if a reasonable portion of all facilities and accommodations normally sought and used by the public in such a building are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities.*

## **2. Reserved.**

3. In detention and correctional facilities, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where cells with mobility features required to comply with *Section 11B-807.2*, all common use areas serving cells with mobility features required to comply with *Section 11B-807.2*, and all public use areas are on an accessible route.
4. In residential facilities, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories where residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with *Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4, residential dwelling units with adaptable features complying with Sections 11B-809.6 through 11B-809.12*, all common use areas serving residential dwelling units with mobility features required to comply with *Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4, all common use areas serving residential dwelling units with adaptable features complying with Sections 11B-809.6 through 11B-809.12*, and public use areas serving residential dwelling units are on an accessible route.
5. Within multistory transient lodging guest rooms with mobility features required to comply with *Section 11B-806.2*, an accessible route shall not be required to connect stories provided that spaces complying with *Section 11B-806.2* are on an accessible route and sleeping accommodations for two persons minimum are provided on a story served by an accessible route.
6. In air traffic control towers, an accessible route shall not be required to serve the cab and the *equipment areas* on the floor immediately below the cab.

## **7. Reserved.**

**11B-206.2.3.1 Stairs and escalators in existing buildings.** In alterations and additions, where an elevator or stair is provided where none existed previously and major structural modifications are necessary for the installation, an accessible route shall be provided between the levels served by the elevator or stair

unless exempted by *Section 11B-206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7*.

**11B-206.2.3.2 Distance to elevators.** In new construction of buildings where elevators are required by *Section 11B-206.2.3*, and which exceed 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ) on any floor, an accessible means of vertical access via ramp, elevator or lift shall be provided within 200 feet (60,960 mm) of travel of each stair and each escalator. In existing buildings that exceed 10,000 square feet ( $929 \text{ m}^2$ ) on any floor and in which elevators are required by *Section 11B-206.2.3*, whenever a newly constructed means of vertical access is provided via stairs or an escalator, an accessible means of vertical access via ramp, elevator or lift shall be provided within 200 feet (60,960 mm) of travel of each new stair or escalator.

**Exception:** Stairs used solely for emergency egress.

**11B-206.2.4 Spaces and elements.** At least one accessible route shall connect accessible building or facility entrances with all accessible spaces and elements within the building or facility, *including mezzanines*, which are otherwise connected by a circulation path unless exempted by *Section 11B-206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7*.

## **Exceptions:**

1. **Reserved.**
2. In assembly areas with fixed seating required to comply with *Section 11B-221*, an accessible route shall not be required to serve fixed seating where wheelchair spaces required to be on an accessible route are not provided.

## **3. Reserved.**

**11B-206.2.5 Restaurants, cafeterias, banquet facilities and bars.** In restaurants, cafeterias, banquet facilities, bars and similar facilities, an accessible route shall be provided to all functional areas, including raised or sunken areas, and outdoor areas.

## **Exceptions:**

1. In *alterations of buildings or facilities not required to provide an accessible route between stories*, an accessible route shall not be required to a mezzanine dining area where the mezzanine contains less than 25 percent of the total combined area for seating and dining and where the same decor and services are provided in the accessible area.
2. **Reserved.**
3. In sports facilities, tiered dining areas providing seating required to comply with *Section 11B-221* shall be required to have accessible routes serving at least 25 percent of the dining area provided that accessible routes serve seating complying with *Section 11B-221* and each tier is provided with the same services.

**11B-206.2.6 Performance areas.** Where a circulation path directly connects a performance area to an assembly seating area, an accessible route shall directly connect the assembly seating area with the performance area. An accessible route shall be provided from performance areas

to ancillary areas or facilities used by performers unless exempted by *Section 11B-206.2.3 Exceptions 1 through 7.*

**11B-206.2.7 Press boxes.** Press boxes in assembly areas shall be on an accessible route.

**Exceptions:**

1. An accessible route shall not be required to press boxes in bleachers that have points of entry at only one level provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet ( $46\text{ m}^2$ ) maximum.
2. An accessible route shall not be required to free-standing press boxes that are elevated above grade 12 feet (3660 mm) minimum provided that the aggregate area of all press boxes is 500 square feet ( $46\text{ m}^2$ ) maximum.

**11B-206.2.8 Employee work areas.** Common use circulation paths within employee work areas shall comply with *Section 11B-402.*

**Exceptions:**

1. **Reserved.**
2. Common use circulation paths located within employee work areas that are an integral component of work area equipment shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-402.*
3. Common use circulation paths located within exterior employee work areas that are fully exposed to the weather shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-402.*

**11B-206.2.9 Amusement rides.** Amusement rides required to comply with *Section 11B-234* shall provide accessible routes in accordance with *Section 11B-206.2.9.* Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with *Division 4* except as modified by *Section 11B-1002.2.*

**11B-206.2.9.1 Load and unload areas.** Load and unload areas shall be on an accessible route. Where load and unload areas have more than one loading or unloading position, at least one loading and unloading position shall be on an accessible route.

**11B-206.2.9.2 Wheelchair spaces, ride seats designed for transfer, and transfer devices.** When amusement rides are in the load and unload position, wheelchair spaces complying with *Section 11B-1002.4*, amusement ride seats designed for transfer complying with *Section 11B-1002.5*, and transfer devices complying with *Section 11B-1002.6* shall be on an accessible route.

**11B-206.2.10 Recreational boating facilities.** Boat slips required to comply with *Section 11B-235.2* and boarding piers at boat launch ramps required to comply with *Section 11B-235.3* shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities shall comply with *Division 4*, except as modified by *Section 11B-1003.2.*

**11B-206.2.11 Bowling lanes.** Where bowling lanes are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type of bowling lane, shall be on an accessible route.

**11B-206.2.12 Court sports.** In court sports, at least one accessible route shall directly connect both sides of the court.

**11B-206.2.13 Exercise machines and equipment.** Exercise machines and equipment required to comply with *11B-236* shall be on an accessible route.

**11B-206.2.14 Fishing piers and platforms.** Fishing piers and platforms shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms shall comply with *Division 4* except as modified by *Section 11B-1005.1.*

**11B-206.2.15 Golf facilities.** At least one accessible route shall connect accessible elements and spaces within the boundary of the golf course. In addition, accessible routes serving golf car rental areas; bag drop areas; course weather shelters complying with *Section 11B-238.2.3*; course toilet rooms; and practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds and teeing stations at driving ranges complying with *Section 11B-238.3* shall comply with *Division 4* except as modified by *Section 11B-1006.2.*

**Exception:** Golf car passages complying with *Section 11B-1006.3* shall be permitted to be used for all or part of accessible routes required by *Section 11B-206.2.15.*

**11B-206.2.16 Miniature golf facilities.** Holes required to comply with *Section 11B-239.2*, including the start of play, shall be on an accessible route. Accessible routes serving miniature golf facilities shall comply with *Division 4* except as modified by *Section 11B-1007.2.*

**11B-206.2.17 Play areas.** Play areas shall provide accessible routes in accordance with *Section 11B-206.2.17.* Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with *Division 4* except as modified by *Section 11B-1008.2.*

**11B-206.2.17.1 Ground level and elevated play components.** At least one accessible route shall be provided within the play area. The accessible route shall connect ground level play components required to comply with *Section 11B-240.2.1* and elevated play components required to comply with *Section 11B-240.2.2*, including entry and exit points of the play components.

**11B-206.2.17.2 Soft contained play structures.** Where three or fewer entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least one entry point shall be on an accessible route. Where four or more entry points are provided for soft contained play structures, at least two entry points shall be on an accessible route.

**11B-206.2.18 Area of sport activity.** An accessible route shall be provided to the boundary of each area of sport activity.

**11B-206.2.19 Pedestrian street crossings.** Where walks or sidewalks are provided, a curb ramp, blended transition or a combination of curb ramps and blended transitions

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

*complying with Section 11B-406 shall connect the walks or sidewalks at each pedestrian street crossing. The curb ramp (excluding any flared sides) or blended transition shall be contained wholly within the width of the pedestrian street crossing served.*

**Exception:** Compliance with Section 11B-206.2.19 shall not be required where pedestrian crossing is prohibited by the appropriate administrative authority.

**11B-206.3 Location.** Accessible routes shall coincide with or be located in the same area as general circulation paths. Where circulation paths are interior, required accessible routes shall also be interior. An accessible route shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms, restrooms, closets or other spaces used for similar purposes, except as permitted by Chapter 10.

**11B-206.4 Entrances.** Entrances shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-206.4. Entrance doors, doorways and gates shall comply with Section 11B-404 and shall be on an accessible route complying with Section 11B-402.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Reserved.*
2. *Reserved.*

> **11B-206.4.1 Entrances.** All entrances shall comply with Section 11B-404.

> **11B-206.4.2 Parking structure entrances.** Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a parking structure to a building or facility entrance, each direct access to the building or facility entrance shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.4.3 Entrances from tunnels or elevated walkways.** Where direct access is provided for pedestrians from a pedestrian tunnel or elevated walkway to a building or facility, all entrances to the building or facility from each tunnel or walkway shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.4.4 Transportation facilities.** In addition to the requirements of Sections 11B-206.4.2, 11B-206.4.3 and 11B-206.4.5 through 11B-206.4.9, transportation facilities shall provide entrances in accordance with Section 11B-206.4.4.

**11B-206.4.4.1 Location.** In transportation facilities, where different entrances serve different transportation fixed routes or groups of fixed routes, entrances serving each fixed route or group of fixed routes shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**Exception:** Entrances to key stations and existing intercity rail stations retrofitted in accordance with 49 CFR 37.49 or 49 CFR 37.51 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-206.4.4.1.

**11B-206.4.4.2 Direct connections.** Direct connections to other facilities shall provide an accessible route complying with Section 11B-404 from the point of connection to boarding platforms and all transportation system elements required to be accessible. Any elements provided to facilitate future direct connections shall be on an accessible route connecting boarding platforms and

all transportation system elements required to be accessible.

**Exception:** In key stations and existing intercity rail stations, existing direct connections shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.4.4.3 Key stations and intercity rail stations.** Key stations and existing intercity rail stations required by Subpart C of 49 CFR part 37 to be altered, shall have entrances complying with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.4.5 Tenant spaces.** All entrances to each tenancy in a facility shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**Exception:** Self-service storage facilities not required to comply with Section 11B-225.3 shall not be required to be on an accessible route.

**11B-206.4.6 Residential dwelling unit primary entrance.** In residential dwelling units, at least one primary entrance shall comply with Section 11B-404. The primary entrance to a residential dwelling unit shall not be to a bedroom.

**11B-206.4.7 Restricted entrances.** Where restricted entrances are provided to a building or facility, all restricted entrances to the building or facility shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.4.8 Service entrances.** If a service entrance is the only entrance to a building or to a tenancy in a facility, that entrance shall comply with Section 11B-404. In existing buildings and facilities, a service entrance shall not be the sole accessible entrance unless it is the only entrance to a building or facility.

**11B-206.4.9 Entrances for inmates or detainees.** Where entrances used only by inmates or detainees and security personnel are provided at judicial facilities, detention facilities or correctional facilities, at least one such entrance shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.4.10 Medical care and long-term care facilities.** Weather protection by a canopy or roof overhang shall be provided at a minimum of one accessible entrance to licensed medical care and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay may exceed twenty-four hours. The area of weather protection shall include the passenger drop-off and loading zone complying with Section 11B-209.3 and the accessible route from the passenger loading zone to the accessible entrance it serves.

**11B-206.5 Doors, doorways and gates.** Doors, doorways and gates providing user passage shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-206.5.

**11B-206.5.1 Entrances.** Each entrance to a building or facility required to comply with Section 11B-206.4 shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.5.2 Rooms and spaces.** Within a building or facility, every door, doorway or gate serving rooms and spaces complying with this chapter shall comply with Section 11B-404.

**11B-206.5.3 Transient lodging facilities.** In transient lodging facilities, entrances, doors and doorways provid-

ing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with *Section 11B-806.2* shall comply with *Section 11B-404.2.3*.

**Exception:** Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with *Section 11B-806.2* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-404.2.3*.

**11B-206.5.4 Residential dwelling units.** In residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2* through *11B-809.4*, all doors and doorways providing user passage shall comply with *Section 11B-404*.

**11B-206.6 Elevators.** Elevators provided for passengers shall comply with *Section 11B-407*. Where multiple elevators are provided, each elevator shall comply with *Section 11B-407*.

#### Exceptions:

1. In a building or facility permitted to use the exceptions to *Section 11B-206.2.3* or permitted by *Section 11B-206.7* to use a platform lift, elevators complying with *Section 11B-408* shall be permitted.
2. Elevators complying with *Section 11B-408* or *11B-409* shall be permitted in multistory residential dwelling units. *Elevators provided as a means of access within a private residence shall be installed so that they are not accessible to the general public or to other occupants of the building.*
3. *Destination-oriented elevators complying with Section 11B-411 shall be permitted.*

**11B-206.6.1 Existing elevators.** Where elements of existing elevators are altered, the same element shall also be altered in all elevators that are programmed to respond to the same hall call control as the altered elevator and shall comply with the requirements of *Section 11B-407* for the altered element.

**Exception:** *Where a group of existing elevators are altered into a destination-oriented elevator system, or where elements of existing destination-oriented elevators are altered, the same elements shall also be altered in all elevators that are programmed to respond to the same call console or group of call consoles and shall comply with the requirements of Section 11B-411 for the altered elements.*

**11B-206.7 Platform lifts.** Platform lifts shall comply with *Section 11B-410*. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in new construction in accordance with *Section 11B-206.7*. Platform lifts shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in an existing building or facility.

**11B-206.7.1 Performance areas and speakers' platforms.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to performance areas and speakers' platforms.

**11B-206.7.2 Wheelchair spaces.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to comply with the wheelchair space dispersion and line-of-sight requirements of *Sections 11B-221* and *11B-802*.

**11B-206.7.3 Incidental spaces.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to incidental spaces which are not public use spaces and which are occupied by five persons maximum.

**11B-206.7.4 Judicial spaces.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide an accessible route to: jury boxes and witness stands; raised courtroom stations, including judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations and court reporters' stations; and to depressed areas such as the well of a court.

**11B-206.7.5 Existing site constraints.** Platform lifts shall be permitted where existing exterior site constraints make use of a ramp or elevator infeasible.

**11B-206.7.6 Guest rooms and residential dwelling units.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to connect levels within transient lodging guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with *Section 11B-806.2* or residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2* through *11B-809.4* or adaptable features complying with *Sections 11B-809.6* through *11B-809.12*.

**11B-206.7.7 Amusement rides.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to load and unload areas serving amusement rides.

**11B-206.7.8 Play areas.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to play components or soft contained play structures.

**11B-206.7.9 Team or player seating.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to provide accessible routes to team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

**11B-206.7.10 Recreational boating facilities and fishing piers and platforms.** Platform lifts shall be permitted to be used instead of gangways that are part of accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities and fishing piers and platforms.

**11B-206.8 Security barriers.** Security barriers, including but not limited to security bollards and security check points, shall not obstruct a required accessible route or accessible means of egress.

**Exception:** Where security barriers incorporate elements that cannot comply with these requirements such as certain metal detectors, fluoroscopes or other similar devices, the accessible route shall be permitted to be located adjacent to security screening devices. The accessible route shall permit persons with disabilities passing around security barriers to maintain visual contact with their personal items to the same extent provided others passing through the security barrier.

**11B-207 Accessible means of egress**

**11B-207.1 General.** Means of egress shall comply with Chapter 10, Section 1009 and Section 11B-207.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where means of egress are permitted by local building or life safety codes to share a common path of egress travel, accessible means of egress shall be permitted to share a common path of egress travel.
2. Areas of refuge shall not be required in detention and correctional facilities.
3. *Accessible means of egress are not required to be provided in existing buildings.*
4. *Doors that provide access only to interior or exterior stairways shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404.*
5. *Exits in excess of those required by Chapter 10, and which are more than 24 inches (610 mm) above grade shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404 or be on an accessible route. Directional signs shall be provided in compliance with Chapter 10, Section 1009.10.*

**11B-207.2 Platform lifts.** Standby power shall be provided for platform lifts permitted by Chapter 10, Section 1009.5 to serve as a part of an accessible means of egress. *To ensure continued operation in case of primary power loss, platform lifts shall be provided with standby power or with self-rechargeable battery power that provides sufficient power to operate all platform lift functions for a minimum of five upward and downward trips.*

**11B-208 Parking spaces**

**11B-208.1 General.** Where parking spaces are provided, parking spaces shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-208. *For the purposes of this section, electric vehicle charging stations are not parking spaces; see Section 11B-228.*

**Exceptions:**

1. Parking spaces used exclusively for buses, trucks, other delivery vehicles or vehicular impound shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-208 provided that lots accessed by the public are provided with a passenger drop-off and loading zone complying with Section 11B-503.
2. *In public housing facilities, electric vehicle chargers are permitted to be installed at an accessible parking space assigned to the resident.*

**11B-208.2 Minimum number.** Parking spaces complying with Section 11B-502 shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-208.2 except as required by Sections 11B-208.2.1, 11B-208.2.2 and 11B-208.2.3. Where more than one parking facility is provided on a site, the number of accessible spaces provided on the site shall be calculated according to the number of spaces required for each parking facility.

**11B-208.2.1 Hospital outpatient facilities.** Ten percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve hospital outpatient facilities, *and free-standing buildings providing outpatient clinical services of a hospital,* shall comply with Section 11B-502.

**11B-208.2.2 Rehabilitation facilities and outpatient physical therapy facilities.** Twenty percent of patient and visitor parking spaces provided to serve rehabilitation facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility and outpatient physical therapy facilities shall comply with Section 11B-502.

**11B-208.2.3 Residential facilities.** Parking spaces provided to serve residential facilities shall comply with Section 11B-208.2.3.

**11B-208.2.3.1 Parking for residents.** Where at least one parking space is provided for each residential dwelling unit, at least one parking space complying with Section 11B-502 shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility fea-

**TABLE 11B-208.2  
PARKING SPACES**

TOTAL NUMBER OF PARKING SPACES PROVIDED IN PARKING FACILITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE PARKING SPACES
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 75	3
76 to 100	4
101 to 150	5
151 to 200	6
201 to 300	7
301 to 400	8
401 to 500	9
501 to 1000	2 percent of total
1001 and over	20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000

tures complying with *Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4. Where fewer than one parking space is provided for each residential dwelling unit, parking spaces complying with Section 11B-502 shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-208.2.*

**11B-208.2.3.2 Additional parking spaces for residents.** Where the total number of parking spaces provided for each residential dwelling unit exceeds one parking space per residential dwelling unit, 2 percent, but no fewer than one space, of all the parking spaces not covered by *Section 11B-208.2.3.1* shall comply with *Section 11B-502.*

**11B-208.2.3.3 Parking for guests, employees and other non-residents.** Where parking spaces are provided for persons other than residents, parking shall be provided in accordance with *Table 11B-208.2.*

**11B-208.2.4 Van parking spaces.** For every six or fraction of six parking spaces required by *Section 11B-208.2* to comply with *Section 11B-502*, at least one shall be a van parking space complying with *Section 11B-502.*

**11B-208.3 Location.** Parking facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-208.3.*

**11B-208.3.1 General.** Parking spaces complying with *Section 11B-502* that serve a particular building or facility shall be located on the shortest accessible route from parking to an entrance complying with *Section 11B-206.4.* Where parking serves more than one accessible entrance, parking spaces complying with *Section 11B-502* shall be dispersed and located on the shortest accessible route to the accessible entrances. In parking facilities that do not serve a particular building or facility, parking spaces complying with *Section 11B-502* shall be located on the shortest accessible route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the parking facility.

#### Exceptions:

1. All van parking spaces shall be permitted to be grouped on one level within a multistory parking facility.
2. Parking spaces shall be permitted to be located in different parking facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, parking fee and user convenience.

**11B-208.3.2 Residential facilities.** In residential facilities containing residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4, and adaptable features complying with Sections 11B-809.6 through 11B-809.12*, parking spaces provided in accordance with *Section 11B-208.2.3.1* shall be located on the shortest accessible route to the residential dwelling unit entrance they serve. Spaces provided in accordance with *Section 11B-208.2.3.2* shall be dispersed throughout all types of parking provided for the residential dwelling units.

**Exception:** Parking spaces provided in accordance with *Section 11B-208.2.3.2* shall not be required to be dispersed throughout all types of parking if substan-

tially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance, parking fee and user convenience.

**11B-208.3.3 Private garages accessory to residential dwelling units.** Private garages accessory to residential dwelling units shall comply with *Section 11B-208.3.* Private garages include individual garages and multiple individual garages grouped together.

**11B-208.3.3.1 Detached private garages accessory to residential dwelling units shall be accessible as required by Section 11B-208.3.**

**11B-208.3.3.2 Attached private garages directly serving a single residential dwelling unit shall provide at least one of the following options:**

1. A door leading directly from the residential dwelling unit which immediately enters the garage.
2. An accessible route from the residential dwelling unit to an exterior door entering the garage.
3. An accessible route from the residential dwelling unit's primary entry door to the vehicular entrance at the garage.

**11B-209 Passenger drop-off and loading zones and bus stops**

**11B-209.1 General.** Passenger drop-off and loading zones shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-209.*

**11B-209.2 Type.** Where provided, passenger drop-off and loading zones shall comply with *Section 11B-209.2.*

**11B-209.2.1 Passenger drop-off and loading zones.** Passenger drop-off and loading zones, except those required to comply with *Sections 11B-209.2.2 and 11B-209.2.3*, shall provide at least one passenger drop-off and loading zone complying with *Section 11B-503* in every continuous 100 linear feet (30480 mm) of drop-off and loading zone space, or fraction thereof.

**11B-209.2.2 Bus loading zones.** In bus loading zones restricted to use by designated or specified public transportation vehicles, each bus bay, bus stop or other area designated for lift or ramp deployment shall comply with *Section 11B-810.2.*

**11B-209.2.3 On-street bus stops.** On-street bus stops shall comply with *Section 11B-810.2* to the maximum extent practicable.

**11B-209.3 Medical care and long-term care facilities.** At least one passenger drop-off and loading zone complying with *Section 11B-503* shall be provided at an accessible entrance to licensed medical care and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay may exceed twenty-four hours.

**11B-209.4 Valet parking.** Parking facilities that provide valet parking services shall provide at least one passenger drop-off and loading zone complying with *Section 11B-503.* The parking requirements of *Section 11B-208.1* apply to facilities with valet parking.

**11B-209.5 Mechanical access parking garages.** Mechanical access parking garages shall provide at least one passenger

*drop-off and loading zone complying with Section 11B-503 at vehicle drop-off and vehicle pick-up areas.*

#### **11B-210 Stairways**

**11B-210.1 General.** Interior and exterior stairs shall comply with Section 11B-504.

##### **Exceptions:**

1. In detention and correctional facilities, stairs that are not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-504.
2. In alterations, stairs between levels that are connected by an accessible route shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-504, except that *striping complying with Section 11B-504.4.1 and handrails complying with Section 11B-505 shall be provided when the stairs are altered.*
3. In assembly areas, aisle stairs shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-504 *except that striping complying with Section 11B-504.4.1 shall be provided.*
4. Stairs that connect play components shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-504 *except that striping complying with Section 11B-504.4.1 shall be provided.*

#### **11B-211 Drinking fountains and bottle-filling stations**

**11B-211.1 General.** Where drinking fountains are provided on an exterior site, on a floor, or within a secured area they shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-211.

**Exception:** In detention or correctional facilities, drinking fountains only serving holding or housing cells not required to comply with Section 11B-232 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-211.

**11B-211.2 Minimum number.** No fewer than two drinking fountains shall be provided. *When provided, one drinking fountain shall comply with Sections 11B-602.1 through 11B-602.6, 11B-602.8 and 11B-602.9 and one drinking fountain shall comply with Sections 11B-602.7 and 11B-602.9.*

**Exception:** Where a single drinking fountain complies with Sections 11B-602.1 through 11B-602.9, it shall be permitted to be substituted for two separate drinking fountains.

**11B-211.3 More than minimum number.** Where more than the minimum number of drinking fountains specified in Section 11B-211.2 are provided, 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with Sections 11B-602.1 through 11B-602.6, 11B-602.8 and 11B-602.9, and 50 percent of the total number of drinking fountains provided shall comply with Sections 11B-602.7 and 11B-602.9.

**Exception:** Where 50 percent of the drinking fountains yields a fraction, 50 percent shall be permitted to be rounded up or down provided that the total number of drinking fountains complying with Section 11B-211 equals 100 percent of drinking fountains.

**11B-211.4 Bottle-filling stations.** Where bottle-filling stations are provided they shall comply with Section 11B-602.10.

**Exception:** In detention or correctional facilities, bottle-filling stations only serving holding or housing cells not required to comply with Section 11B-232 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-211.4.

#### **11B-212 Kitchens, kitchenettes, wet bars and sinks**

**11B-212.1 General.** Where provided, kitchens, kitchenettes, wet bars and sinks shall comply with Section 11B-212.

**11B-212.2 Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars.** Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars shall comply with Section 11B-804.

**11B-212.3 Sinks.** Where sinks are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided in each accessible room or space shall comply with Section 11B-606.

##### **Exceptions:**

1. Mop, service or scullery sinks shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-212.3.
2. Scrub sinks, as defined in California Plumbing Code Section 221.0, shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-606.

#### **11B-213 Toilet facilities and bathing facilities**

**11B-213.1 General.** Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided, they shall comply with Section 11B-213. Where toilet facilities and bathing facilities are provided in facilities permitted by Section 11B-206.2.3 *Exception 1* not to connect stories by an accessible route, toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall be provided on a story connected by an accessible route to an accessible entrance.

**11B-213.1.1 Toilet facilities for designated user groups.** *Where separate toilet facilities are provided for the exclusive use of separate user groups, the toilet facilities serving each user group shall comply with Section 11B-213.*

**11B-213.2 Toilet rooms and bathing rooms.** Where toilet rooms are provided, each toilet room shall comply with Section 11B-603. Where bathing rooms are provided, each bathing room shall comply with Section 11B-603.

##### **Exceptions:**

1. In alterations where it is technically infeasible to comply with Section 11B-603, altering existing toilet or bathing rooms shall not be required where a single unisex (single-user or family) toilet room or bathing room complying with Section 11B-213.2.1 is provided and located in the same area and on the same floor as existing inaccessible toilet or bathing rooms.
2. **Reserved.**
3. Where multiple single user portable toilet or bathing units are clustered at a single location 5 percent, *but no fewer than one*, of the toilet units and bathing units at each cluster shall comply with Section 11B-

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

603. Portable toilet units and bathing units complying with *Section 11B-603* shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*.
4. Where multiple single user toilet rooms are clustered at a single location, 50 percent, *but no fewer than one*, of the single user toilet rooms for each use at each cluster shall comply with *Section 11B-603*.
  5. *Where toilet and bathing rooms are provided in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2, toilet and bathing fixtures shall only be required to comply with Section 11B-603.6.*

**11B-213.2.1 Unisex (single-user or family) toilet and unisex (single-user or family) bathing rooms.** Unisex (*single-user or family*) toilet rooms shall contain not more than one lavatory, and *not more than* two water closets without urinals or one water closet and one urinal. Unisex (*single-user or family*) bathing rooms shall contain one shower or one shower and one bathtub, one lavatory, and one water closet. Doors to unisex (*single-user or family*) toilet rooms and unisex (*single-user or family*) bathing rooms shall have privacy latches.

**11B-213.2.2 Unisex (Patient) toilet rooms in medical care and long-term care facilities.** Common-use unisex toilet rooms for exclusive patient use not located within patient bedrooms shall contain a lavatory and one water closet.

**11B-213.2.3 Unisex (Patient) bathing rooms in medical care and long-term care facilities.** Common-use unisex bathing rooms for exclusive patient use not located within patient bedrooms shall contain one shower or one bathtub, one lavatory, and one water closet.

**11B-213.3 Plumbing fixtures and accessories.** Plumbing fixtures and accessories provided in a toilet room or bathing room required to comply with *Section 11B-213.2* shall comply with *Section 11B-213.3*.

**11B-213.3.1 Toilet compartments.** Where toilet compartments are provided, at least *five percent of the toilet compartments, or five percent of the combination of toilet compartments and urinals, but no fewer than* one toilet compartment shall comply with *Section 11B-604.8.1*. In addition to the compartments required to comply with *Section 11B-604.8.1*, where six or more toilet compartments are provided, or where the combination of urinals and water closets totals six or more fixtures, *toilet compartments complying with Section 11B-604.8.2 shall be provided in the same quantity as the toilet compartments required to comply with Section 11B-604.8.1*.

**11B-213.3.2 Water closets.** Where water closets are provided, at least *5 percent but no fewer than* one shall comply with *Section 11B-604*.

**11B-213.3.3 Urinals.** Where *one or more urinals are provided, at least 10 percent but no fewer than* one shall comply with *Section 11B-605*.

**11B-213.3.4 Lavatories.** Where lavatories are provided, at least *10 percent but no fewer than* one shall comply

with *Section 11B-606* and shall not be located in a toilet compartment.

**11B-213.3.5 Mirrors.** Where mirrors are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-603.3*.

**11B-213.3.6 Bathing facilities.** Where bathtubs or showers are provided, at least one bathtub complying with *Section 11B-607* or at least one shower complying with *Section 11B-608* shall be provided. *Where two or more accessible showers are provided within the same functional area, at least one shower shall be opposite hand from the other or others (that is, one left-hand controls versus right-hand controls). Transfer-type shower compartments shall be permitted in transient lodging guest rooms, multibedroom housing units in undergraduate student housing and residential dwelling units; and shall not be permitted at other locations to meet the requirements of Section 11B-213.3.6.*

**11B-213.3.7 Coat hooks and shelves.** Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet rooms without toilet compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with *Section 11B-603.4*. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in toilet compartments, at least one of each type complying with *Section 11B-604.8.3* shall be provided in toilet compartments required to comply with *Section 11B-213.1*. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in bathing facilities, at least one of each type complying with *Section 11B-603.4* shall serve fixtures required to comply with *Section 11B-213.3.6*.

### **11B-214 Washing machines and clothes dryers**

**11B-214.1 General.** Where provided, washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with *Section 11B-214*.

**11B-214.2 Washing machines.** Where three or fewer washing machines are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-611*. Where more than three washing machines are provided, at least two shall comply with *Section 11B-611*.

**11B-214.3 Clothes dryers.** Where three or fewer clothes dryers are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-611*. Where more than three clothes dryers are provided, at least two shall comply with *Section 11B-611*.

### **11B-215 Fire alarm systems and carbon monoxide alarm systems**

**11B-215.1 General.** Where fire alarm systems and carbon monoxide alarm systems provide audible alarm coverage, alarms shall comply with *Section 11B-215*.

**Exception:** In existing facilities, visible alarms for fire alarm systems shall not be required except where an existing fire alarm system is upgraded or replaced, or a new fire alarm system is installed.

**11B-215.2 Public and common use areas.** Alarms in public use areas and common use areas shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.1*.

**11B-215.3 Employee work areas.** Where employee work areas have audible alarm coverage, the wiring system shall be designed so that visible alarms complying with *Chapter 9*,

*Section 907.5.2.3.1 Exception can be integrated into the alarm system.*

**11B-215.4 Transient lodging.** Guest rooms required to comply with *Section 11B-224.4* shall provide fire alarms complying with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.2, and carbon monoxide alarms, where provided, complying with Chapter 9, Section 915.*

**11B-215.5 Residential facilities.** Where provided in residential dwelling units required to comply with *Section 11B-809.5, fire alarms shall comply with Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.3 and carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Chapter 9, Section 915.*

#### **11B-216 Signs**

**11B-216.1 General.** *New or altered signs shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-216 and shall comply with Section 11B-703. The addition of or replacement of signs shall not trigger any additional path of travel requirements.*

##### **Exceptions:**

1. Building directories, menus, seat and row designations in assembly areas, occupant names, building addresses, and company names and logos shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-216*.
2. *Reserved.*
3. Temporary, 7 days or less, signs shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-216*.
4. In detention and correctional facilities, signs not located in public use areas shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-216*.

**11B-216.2 Designations.** Interior and exterior signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5*. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with *Section 11B-703.6* and shall have text descriptors complying with *Sections 11B-703.2 and 11B-703.5*.

**Exception:** Exterior signs that are not located at the door to the space they serve shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-703.2*.

**11B-216.3 Directional and informational signs.** Signs that provide direction to or information about interior and exterior spaces and facilities of the site shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*.

**11B-216.4 Means of egress.** Signs for means of egress shall comply with *Section 11B-216.4*.

**11B-216.4.1 Exit doors.** *Signs required by Chapter 10, Section 1013.4 at doors to exit passageways, exit discharge and exit stairways shall comply with Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5.*

**11B-216.4.2 Areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue.** *Signs required by Chapter 10, Section 1009.11 to provide instructions in areas of refuge shall comply with Section 11B-703.5. Signs required by Chapter 10, Section 1009.9 at doors to areas of refuge and exterior areas for assisted rescue shall comply with Sections*

*11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5 and include an International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1.*

**11B-216.4.3 Directional signs.** Signs required by *Chapter 10, Section 1009.10* to provide directions to accessible means of egress shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*.

**11B-216.4.4 Delayed egress locks.** *Signs required by Chapter 10, Section 1010.2.13.1, Item 6.4 at doors with delayed egress locks shall comply with Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5.*

**11B-216.5 Parking.** *Signs identifying parking spaces and signs within parking facilities shall comply with Section 11B-216.5.*

**11B-216.5.1 Parking spaces.** *Parking spaces complying with Section 11B-502 shall be identified by signs complying with Sections 11B-502.6 and 11B-502.8.*

##### **Exceptions:**

1. *Reserved.*
2. In residential facilities, where parking spaces are assigned to specific residential dwelling units, identification of accessible parking spaces shall not be required.

**11B-216.5.2 Parking facilities.** *Signs within parking facilities shall comply with Section 11B-216.5.2.*

**11B-216.5.2.1 Signs intended for use by pedestrians.** *Signs intended for use by pedestrians within parking facilities, including directional or informational signs indicating parking sections or levels, shall comply with the requirements of Section 11B-216.*

**11B-216.5.2.2 Additional signs.** *Signs within parking facilities containing parking spaces complying with Section 11B-502 shall comply with Section 11B-502.8.*

**11B-216.6 Entrances.** *In existing buildings and facilities where not all entrances comply with Section 11B-404, entrances complying with Section 11B-404 shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1. Directional signs complying with Section 11B-703.5 that indicate the location of the nearest entrance complying with Section 11B-404 shall be provided at entrances that do not comply with Section 11B-404. Directional signs complying with Section 11B-703.5, including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1, indicating the accessible route to the nearest accessible entrance shall be provided at junctions when the accessible route diverges from the regular circulation path.*

**11B-216.7 Elevators.** *Where existing elevators do not comply with Section 11B-407, elevators complying with Section 11B-407 shall be clearly identified with the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1. Existing buildings that have been remodeled to provide specific elevators for public use that comply with these building standards shall have the location of and the directions to these elevators posted in the building lobby on a*

*sign complying with Section 11B-703.5, including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1.*

**11B-216.8 Toilet rooms and bathing rooms.** Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with *Section 11B-603*, directional signs indicating the location of the nearest toilet room or bathing room complying with *Section 11B-603* within the facility shall be provided. Signs shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5* and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Where existing toilet rooms or bathing rooms do not comply with *Section 11B-603*, the toilet rooms or bathing rooms complying with *Section 11B-603* shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Where clustered single user toilet rooms or bathing facilities are permitted to use exceptions to *Section 11B-213.2*, toilet rooms or bathing facilities complying with *Section 11B-603* shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1* unless all toilet rooms and bathing facilities comply with *Section 11B-603*. Existing buildings that have been remodeled to provide specific toilet rooms or bathing rooms for public use that comply with these building standards shall have the location of and the directions to these rooms posted in or near the building lobby or entrance on a sign complying with *Section 11B-703.5*, including the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*.

**11B-216.8.1 Geometric symbols.** Geometric symbols complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.6* shall be provided at entrances to toilet and bathing rooms.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Geometric symbols shall not be required at entrances to toilet and bathing rooms located within private or semi-private rooms or spaces. Such spaces include but are not limited to: patient sleeping rooms, transient lodging guest rooms and residential dwelling units.*
2. *Geometric symbols shall not be required at entrances to inmate toilet rooms and bathing rooms in detention and correctional facilities where only one gender is housed.*

**11B-216.9 TTYS.** Identification and directional signs for public TTYS shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-216.9*.

**11B-216.9.1 Identification signs.** Public TTYS shall be identified by the International Symbol of TTY complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.2*.

**11B-216.9.2 Directional signs.** Directional signs indicating the location of the nearest public TTY shall be provided at all banks of public pay telephones not containing a public TTY. In addition, where signs provide direction to public pay telephones, they shall also provide direction to public TTYS. If a facility has no banks of telephones, the directional signs shall be provided at the entrance or in a building directory. Directional signs shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5* and shall include the International Symbol of TTY complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.2*.

**11B-216.10 Assistive listening systems.** Each assembly area required by *Section 11B-219* to provide assistive listening systems shall provide signs informing patrons of the availability of the assistive listening system. *The sign shall include wording that states "Assistive-Listening System Available" and shall be posted in a prominent place at or near the assembly area entrance.* Assistive listening signs shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5* and shall include the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.4*.

**Exception:** Where ticket offices or windows are provided, signs shall not be required at each assembly area provided that signs are displayed at each ticket office or window informing patrons of the availability of assistive listening systems.

**11B-216.11 Check-out aisles.** Where more than one check-out aisle is provided, check-out aisles complying with *Section 11B-904.3* shall be identified by *a sign complying with Section 11B-904.3.4*. Where check-out aisles are identified by numbers, letters or functions, signs identifying check-out aisles complying with *Section 11B-904.3* shall be located in the same location as the check-out aisle identification.

**Exception:** Where all check-out aisles comply with *Section 11B-904.3*, signs complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1* shall not be required.

**11B-216.12 Amusement rides.** Signs identifying the type of access provided on amusement rides shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. In addition, where accessible unload areas also serve as accessible load areas, signs indicating the location of the accessible load and unload areas shall be provided at entries to queues and waiting lines. *Signs shall comply with Section 11B-703.5 and shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1.*

**11B-216.13 Variable message signs.** Where provided in transportation facilities, variable message signs conveying transportation-related information shall comply with *Section 11B-703.8*. Where provided in buildings that are designed as emergency shelters, variable message signs conveying emergency-related information shall comply with *Section 11B-703.8*.

## 11B-217 Telephones

**11B-217.1 General.** Where coin-operated public pay telephones, coinless public pay telephones, public closed-circuit telephones, public courtesy phones, or other types of public telephones are provided, public telephones shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-217* for each type of public telephone provided. For purposes of this section, a bank of telephones shall be considered to be two or more adjacent telephones.

**11B-217.2 Wheelchair accessible telephones.** Where public telephones are provided, wheelchair accessible telephones complying with *Section 11B-704.2* shall be provided in accordance with *Table 11B-217.2*.

**Exception:** Drive-up only public telephones shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-217.2*.

**11B-217.3 Volume controls.** All public telephones shall have volume controls complying with *Section 11B-704.3*.

**11B-217.4 TTYS.** TTYS complying with *Section 11B-704.4* shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-217.4*.

**11B-217.4.1 Bank requirement.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided at a bank of telephones, at least one public TTY complying with *Section 11B-704.4* shall be provided at that bank.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-217.4.2 Floor requirement.** TTYS in public buildings shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-217.4.2.1*. TTYS in private buildings shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-217.4.2.2*.

**11B-217.4.2.1 Public buildings.** Where at least one public pay telephone is provided on a floor of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

**11B-217.4.2.2 Private buildings.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on a floor of a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided on that floor.

**11B-217.4.3 Building requirement.** TTYS in public buildings shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-217.4.3.1*. TTYS in private buildings shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-217.4.3.2*.

**11B-217.4.3.1 Public buildings.** Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building. Where at least one public pay telephone is provided in a public use area of a public building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the public building in a public use area.

**11B-217.4.3.2 Private buildings.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided in a private building, at least one public TTY shall be provided in the building.

**Exception:** In a stadium or arena, in a convention center, in a hotel with a convention center or in a covered mall, if an interior public pay telephone is provided at least one interior public TTY shall be provided in the facility.

**11B-217.4.4 Exterior site requirement.** Where four or more public pay telephones are provided on an exterior site, at least one public TTY shall be provided on the site.

**11B-217.4.5 Rest stops, emergency roadside stops and service plazas.** Where at least one public pay telephone is provided at a public rest stop, emergency roadside stop

or service plaza, at least one public TTY shall be provided.

**11B-217.4.6 Hospitals.** Where at least one public pay telephone is provided serving a hospital emergency room, hospital recovery room or hospital waiting room, at least one public TTY shall be provided at each location.

**11B-217.4.7 Transportation facilities.** In transportation facilities, in addition to the requirements of *Sections 11B-217.4.1 through 11B-217.4.4*, where at least one public pay telephone serves a particular entrance to a bus or rail facility, at least one public TTY shall be provided to serve that entrance. In airports, in addition to the requirements of *Sections 11B-217.4.1 through 11B-217.4.4*, where four or more public pay telephones are located in a terminal outside the security areas, a concourse within the security areas or a baggage claim area in a terminal, at least one public TTY shall be provided in each location.

**11B-217.4.8 Detention and correctional facilities.** In detention and correctional facilities, where at least one pay telephone is provided in a secured area used only by detainees or inmates and security personnel, at least one TTY shall be provided in at least one secured area.

**11B-217.5 Shelves for portable TTYS.** Where a bank of telephones in the interior of a building consists of three or more public pay telephones, at least one public pay telephone at the bank shall be provided with a shelf and an electrical outlet in accordance with *Section 11B-704.5*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Secured areas of detention and correctional facilities where shelves and outlets are prohibited for purposes of security or safety shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-217.5*.

2. The shelf and electrical outlet shall not be required at a bank of telephones with a TTY.

**11B-218 Transportation facilities.**

**11B-218.1 General.** Transportation facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-218*.

**11B-218.2 New and altered fixed guideway stations.** New and altered stations in rapid rail, light rail, commuter rail, intercity rail, high speed rail and other fixed guideway systems shall comply with *Sections 11B-810.5 through 11B-810.10*.

**11B-218.3 Key stations and existing intercity rail stations.** Key stations and existing intercity rail stations shall comply with *Sections 11B-810.5 through 11B-810.10*.

**TABLE 11B-217.2  
WHEELCHAIR ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES**

NUMBER OF TELEPHONES PROVIDED ON A FLOOR, LEVEL OR EXTERIOR SITE	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED WHEELCHAIR ACCESSIBLE TELEPHONES
1 or more single units	<i>At least 50 percent of telephone units, but not less than 1 per floor, level and exterior site</i>
1 bank	<i>At least 50 percent of telephone units per bank, but not less than 1 per floor, level and exterior site</i>
2 or more banks	<i>At least 50 percent of telephone units per bank, but not less than 1 per bank</i> <i>At least 1 telephone per floor shall meet the requirements for a forward reach telephone.</i>

**11B-218.4 Bus shelters.** Where provided, bus shelters shall comply with Section 11B-810.3.

**11B-218.5 Other transportation facilities.** In other transportation facilities, public address systems shall comply with Section 11B-810.7 and clocks shall comply with Section 11B-810.8.

#### **11B-219 Assistive listening systems**

**11B-219.1 General.** Assistive listening systems shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-219 and shall comply with Section 11B-706.

**11B-219.2 Required systems.** An assistive listening system shall be provided in assembly areas, including conference and meeting rooms.

**Exception:** This section does not apply to systems used exclusively for paging, background music, or a combination of these two uses.

**11B-219.3 Receivers.** The minimum number of receivers to be provided shall be equal to 4 percent of the total number of seats, but in no case less than two. Twenty-five percent minimum of receivers provided, but no fewer than two, shall be hearing-aid compatible in accordance with Section 11B-706.3.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Where a building contains more than one assembly area and the assembly areas required to provide assistive listening systems are under one management, the total number of required receivers shall be permitted to be calculated according to the total number of seats in the assembly areas in the building provided that all receivers are usable with all systems.
2. Where all seats in an assembly area are served by an induction loop assistive listening system, the minimum number of receivers required by Section 11B-219.3 to be hearing-aid compatible shall not be required to be provided.

**11B-219.4 Location.** If the assistive-listening system provided is limited to specific areas or seats, then such areas or seats shall be within a 50-foot (15240 mm) viewing distance of the stage or playing area and shall have a complete view of the stage or playing area.

**11B-219.5 Permanent and portable systems.** Permanently installed assistive-listening systems are required in areas if (1) they accommodate at least 50 persons or if they have audio-amplification systems, and (2) they have fixed seating. If portable assistive-listening systems are used for conference or meeting rooms, the system may serve more than one room. An adequate number of electrical outlets or other supplementary wiring necessary to support a portable assistive-listening system shall be provided.

#### **11B-220 Automatic teller machines, fare machines and point-of-sale devices.**

**11B-220.1 Automatic teller machines and fare machines.** Where automatic teller machines or self-service fare vending, collection, or adjustment machines are provided they shall

comply with Section 11B-220.1. Where bins are provided for envelopes, waste paper, or other purposes, at least one of each type shall comply with Section 11B-811.

**11B-220.1.1 One automatic teller machine or fare machine.** Where one automatic teller machine or fare machine is provided at a location, it shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2 through 11B-707.8.

**11B-220.1.2 Two automatic teller machines or fare machines.** Where two automatic teller machines or fare machines are provided at a location, one shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2 through 11B-707.8 and one shall comply with Sections 11B-707.3, 11B-707.4, 11B-707.5, 11B-707.6, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.8.

**11B-220.1.3 Three or more automatic teller machines or fare machines.** Where three or more automatic teller machines or fare machines are provided at a location, at least 50 percent shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2 through 11B-707.8 and the rest shall comply with Sections 11B-707.3, 11B-707.4, 11B-707.5, 11B-707.6, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.8.

**11B-220.2 Point-of-sale devices.** Where point-of-sale devices are provided, all devices at each location shall comply with Sections 11B-707.3, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.9. Where point-of-sale devices are provided at check stands and sales and service counters required to comply with Sections 11B-227.2 and 11B-227.3, they shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2, 11B-707.3, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.9.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Where a single point-of-sale device is installed for use with any type of motor fuel, it shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2, 11B-707.3, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.9. Where more than one point-of-sale device is installed for use with a specific type of motor fuel, a minimum of two for that type shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2, 11B-707.3, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.9. Types of motor fuel include, but are not limited to, gasoline, diesel, compressed natural gas, methanol or ethanol.
2. Point-of-sale devices at electric vehicle charging stations required to comply with Section 11B-812 shall comply with Section 11B-812.10.3.

#### **11B-221 Assembly areas.**

**11B-221.1 General.** Assembly areas shall provide wheelchair spaces, companion seats, designated aisle seats and semi-ambulant seats complying with Sections 11B-221 and 11B-802. In addition, lawn seating shall comply with Section 11B-221.5.

**11B-221.2 Wheelchair spaces.** Wheelchair spaces complying with Section 11B-221.2 shall be provided in assembly areas with fixed seating.

**Note:** When required wheelchair spaces are not occupied by persons eligible for those spaces, individual, removable seats may be placed in those spaces.

**11B-221.2.1 Number and location.** Wheelchair spaces shall be provided complying with Section 11B-221.2.1.

**11B-221.2.1.1 General seating.** Wheelchair spaces complying with Section 11B-802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-221.2.1.1.

**11B-221.2.1.2 Luxury boxes, club boxes and suites in arenas, stadiums and grandstands.** In each luxury box, club box and suite within arenas, stadiums and grandstands, wheelchair spaces complying with Section 11B-802.1 shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-221.2.1.1.

**11B-221.2.1.3 Other boxes.** In boxes other than those required to comply with Section 11B-221.2.1.2, the total number of wheelchair spaces required shall be determined in accordance with Table 11B-221.2.1.1. Wheelchair spaces shall be located in not less than 20 percent of all boxes provided. Wheelchair spaces shall comply with Section 11B-802.1.

**11B-221.2.1.4 Team or player seating.** At least one wheelchair space complying with Section 11B-802.1 shall be provided in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity.

**Exception:** Wheelchair spaces shall not be required in team or player seating areas serving bowling lanes not required to comply with Section 11B-206.2.11.

**11B-221.2.1.5 Stadium-style movie theaters.** In stadium-style movie theaters, the total number of wheelchair spaces required shall be determined in accordance with Table 11B-221.2.1.1. The required wheelchair spaces shall be located on risers or cross-aisles in the stadium section that satisfy at least one of the following criteria:

1. Located within the rear 60 percent of the seats provided in the theater; or
2. Located within the area of the theater in which the vertical viewing angles (as measured to the top of the screen) are from the 40<sup>th</sup> to the 100<sup>th</sup> percentile of vertical viewing angles for all seats as ranked from the seats in the first row (1<sup>st</sup> percentile) to seats in the back row (100<sup>th</sup> percentile).

**11B-221.2.1.6 Specialty seating areas.** In assembly areas, wheelchair spaces shall be provided in each specialty seating area that provides spectators with dis-

tinct services or amenities that generally are not available to other spectators. The number of wheelchair spaces provided in specialty seating areas shall be included in, rather than be in addition to, the total number of wheelchair spaces required by Table 11B-221.2.1.1.

**Exception:** In existing buildings and facilities, if it is not readily achievable for wheelchair spaces to be placed in each specialty seating area, those services or amenities shall be provided to individuals with disabilities, and their companions, at other designated accessible locations at no additional cost.

**11B-221.2.2 Integration.** Wheelchair spaces shall be an integral part of the seating plan.

**11B-221.2.3 Lines of sight and dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall provide lines of sight complying with Section 11B-802.2 and shall comply with Section 11B-221.2.3. In providing lines of sight, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed. Wheelchair spaces shall provide spectators with choices of seating locations and viewing angles that are substantially equivalent to, or better than, the choices of seating locations and viewing angles available to all other spectators. When the number of wheelchair spaces required by Section 11B-221.2.1 has been met, further dispersion shall not be required. In stadiums, arenas and grandstands, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed to all levels that include seating served by an accessible route.

**Exception:** Wheelchair spaces in team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-221.2.3.

**11B-221.2.3.1 Horizontal dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed horizontally. In assembly areas that have seating encircling, in whole or in part, a field of play or performance, wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed horizontally around the field of play or performance area.

#### Exceptions:

1. Horizontal dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the companion seats required by Section 11B-221.3 and wheelchair spaces are located within the 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> quartile of the total row length. Intermediate aisles shall be included in

**TABLE 11B-221.2.1.1  
NUMBER OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES IN ASSEMBLY AREAS**

NUMBER OF SEATS	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED WHEELCHAIR SPACES
4 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 150	4
151 to 300	5
301 to 500	6
501 to 5000	6, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, between 501 through 5000
5001 and over	46, plus 1 for each 200, or fraction thereof, over 5000

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

determining the total row length. If the row length in the 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> quartile of a row is insufficient to accommodate the required number of companion seats and wheelchair spaces, the additional companion seats and wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 4<sup>th</sup> quartile of the row.

2. In row seating, two wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be located side-by-side.

**11B-221.2.3.2 Vertical dispersion.** Wheelchair spaces shall be dispersed vertically at varying distances from the screen, performance area or playing field. In addition, wheelchair spaces shall be located in each balcony or mezzanine that is located on an accessible route.

**Exceptions:**

1. Vertical dispersion shall not be required in assembly areas with 300 or fewer seats if the wheelchair spaces provide viewing angles that are equivalent to, or better than, the average viewing angle provided in the facility.
2. In bleachers, wheelchair spaces shall not be required to be provided in rows other than rows at points of entry to bleacher seating.

**11B-221.2.4 Temporary structures.** Wheelchair spaces shall not be located on, or be obstructed by, temporary platforms or other movable structures.

**Exception:** When an entire seating section is placed on temporary platforms or other movable structures in an area where fixed seating is not provided, in order to increase seating for an event, wheelchair spaces may be placed in that section.

**11B-221.3 Companion seats.** At least one companion seat complying with Section 11B-802.3 shall be provided immediately adjacent to each wheelchair space required by Section 11B-221.2.1.

**11B-221.4 Designated aisle seats.** At least 5 percent of the total number of aisle seats provided shall comply with Section 11B-802.4 and shall be the aisle seats located closest to accessible routes.

**Exception:** Team or player seating areas serving areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-221.4.

**11B-221.5 Lawn seating.** Lawn seating areas and exterior overflow seating areas, where fixed seats are not provided, shall connect to an accessible route.

**11B-221.6 Semi-ambulant seats.** At least 1 percent of the total number of seats, and no fewer than two, shall be semi-ambulant seats complying with Section 11B-802.5.

**11B-222 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms**

**11B-222.1 General.** Where dressing rooms, fitting rooms or locker rooms are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of use in each cluster provided shall comply with Section 11B-803.

**Exception:** In alterations, where it is technically infeasible to provide rooms in accordance with Section 11B-222.1,

one room for each sex on each level shall comply with Section 11B-803. Where only unisex rooms are provided, unisex rooms shall be permitted.

**11B-222.2 Coat hooks and shelves.** Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in dressing, fitting or locker rooms without individual compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with Section 11B-803.5. Where coat hooks or shelves are provided in individual compartments at least one of each type complying with Section 11B-803.5 shall be provided in individual compartments in dressing, fitting or locker rooms required to comply with Section 11B-222.1.

**11B-222.3 Mirrors.** Where mirrors are provided in dressing, fitting or locker rooms without individual compartments, at least one of each type shall comply with Section 11B-803.6. Where mirrors are provided in individual compartments at least one of each type complying with Section 11B-803.6 shall be provided in individual compartments in dressing, fitting or locker rooms required to comply with Section 11B-222.1.

**11B-223 Medical care and long-term care facilities**

**11B-223.1 General.** In licensed medical care facilities and licensed long-term care facilities where the period of stay exceeds twenty-four hours, patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms shall be provided in accordance with Sections 11B-223 and 11B-805.

**Exception:** Toilet rooms that are part of critical or intensive care patient sleeping rooms shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-603.

**11B-223.1.1 Alterations.** Where patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms are altered or added, the requirements of Section 11B-223 shall apply only to the patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms being altered or added until the number of patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

**11B-223.1.1.1 Area alterations.** Patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms added or altered as part of a planned renovation of an entire wing, a department or other discrete area of an existing medical facility shall comply with Section 11B-805.2 until the number of patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms provided within the area of renovation complies with the minimum number required for new construction by Section 11B-223.2 or 11B-223.3.

**11B-223.1.1.2 Individual alterations.** Patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms added or altered individually, and not as part of an alteration of an entire area, shall comply with Section 11B-805.2, until either: a) the number of patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms provided in the department or area containing the individually altered or added patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms complies with the minimum number required if the percentage requirements of Section 11B-223.2 or 11B-223.3 were applied to that department or area; or b) the overall number of patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms in the facility complies with the minimum number required

for new construction by Section 11B-223.2 or 11B-223.3.

**11B-223.1.1.3 Toilet and bathing facilities.** Toilet/bathing rooms which are part of patient bedrooms added or altered and required to be accessible shall comply with Section 11B-805.2.4.

**11B-223.2 Hospitals, rehabilitation facilities, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities.** Hospitals, rehabilitation facilities, psychiatric facilities and detoxification facilities shall comply with Section 11B-223.2. All public use and common use areas shall be accessible in compliance with this chapter.

**11B-223.2.1 Facilities not specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility.** In facilities not specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, *including hospitals, psychiatric and detoxification facilities*, at least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms shall provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-805. Accessible patient bedrooms or resident sleeping rooms shall be dispersed in a manner that is proportionate by type of medical specialty.

**11B-223.2.2 Facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility.** In facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, 100 percent of the patient bedrooms shall provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-805.

**11B-223.2.3 On-call rooms.** Where physician or staff on-call sleeping rooms are provided, at least 10 percent, but no fewer than one, of the on-call rooms shall provide mobility features complying with Sections 11B-806.2.3, 11B-806.2.4 and 11B-806.2.6.

**11B-223.3 Long-term care facilities.** In licensed long-term care facilities, *including skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities and nursing homes*, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of patient bedroom or resident sleeping room shall provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-805.

**11B-223.4 Professional offices of health care providers.** Professional offices of health care providers shall comply with Section 11B-805.

**11B-224 Transient lodging guest rooms, housing at a place of education and social service center establishments**

**11B-224.1 General.** Hotels, motels, inns, dormitories, resorts and similar transient lodging facilities shall provide guest rooms in accordance with Sections 11B-224.1 through 11B-224.6.

**11B-224.1.1 Alterations.** Where guest rooms are altered or added, the requirements of Section 11B-224 shall apply only to the guest rooms being altered or added until the number of guest rooms complies with the minimum number required for new construction.

**11B-224.1.2 Guest room doors and doorways.** Entrances, doors and doorways providing user passage into and within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2

shall comply with Section 11B-404.2.3. Bathrooms doors shall be either sliding or hung to swing in the direction of egress from the bathroom.

**Exception:** Shower and sauna doors in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404.2.3.

**11B-224.1.3 Range of accommodations.** Accessible guest rooms or suites shall be dispersed among the various classes of sleeping accommodations to provide a range of options applicable to room sizes, costs and amenities provided.

**11B-224.1.4 Guest room toilet and bathing rooms.** Where toilet and bathing rooms are provided in guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2, toilet and bathing fixtures shall only be required to comply with Section 11B-603.6.

**11B-224.2 Guest rooms with mobility features.** In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2 shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-224.2, as follows.

**11B-224.2.1 Fifty or less guest room facilities.** Facilities that are subject to the same permit application on a common site that each have fifty or fewer guest rooms may be combined for the purposes of determining the required number of accessible rooms and type of accessible bathing facility.

**11B-224.2.2 More than fifty guest room facilities.** Facilities with more than fifty guest rooms shall be treated separately for the purposes of determining the required number of accessible rooms and type of accessible bathing facility.

**11B-224.3 Beds.** In guest rooms having more than 25 beds, 5 percent minimum of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with Section 11B-806.2.3.

**11B-224.4 Guest rooms with communication features.** In transient lodging facilities, guest rooms with communication features complying with Section 11B-806.3 shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-224.4.

**11B-224.5 Dispersion.** Guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2 and guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with Section 11B-806.3 shall be dispersed among the various classes of guest rooms, and shall provide choices of types of guest rooms, number of beds and other amenities comparable to the choices provided to other guests. Where the minimum number of guest rooms required to comply with Section 11B-806 is not sufficient to allow for complete dispersion, guest rooms shall be dispersed in the following priority: guest room type, number of beds and amenities. At least one guest room required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2 shall also provide communication features complying with Section 11B-806.3. Not more than 10 percent of guest rooms required to provide mobility features complying with Section 11B-806.2 shall be used to satisfy the minimum number of guest rooms required to provide communication features complying with Section 11B-806.3.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**TABLE 11B-224.2**  
**GUEST ROOMS WITH MOBILITY FEATURES**

TOTAL NUMBER OF GUEST ROOMS PROVIDED	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ROOMS WITHOUT ROLL-IN SHOWERS <sup>1</sup>	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ROOMS WITH ROLL-IN SHOWERS <sup>2</sup>	TOTAL NUMBER OF REQUIRED ROOMS
1	1	0	1
2 to 25	1	1	2
26 to 50	2	1	3
51 to 75	3	1	4
76 to 100	4	1	5
101 to 150	5	2	7
151 to 200	6	2	8
201 to 300	7	3	10
301 to 400	8	4	12
401 to 500	9	4	13
501 to 1000	2 percent of total	1 percent of total	3 percent of total
1001 and over	20, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	10, plus 1 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000	30, plus 2 for each 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000

1. Provide either a bathtub complying with Section 11B-607 or a transfer type shower complying with Section 11B-608.2.1.

2. Provide either a standard roll-in type shower complying with Section 11B-608.2.2 or an alternate type roll-in shower complying with Section 11B-608.2.3.

**TABLE 11B-224.4**  
**GUEST ROOMS WITH COMMUNICATION FEATURES**

TOTAL NUMBER OF GUEST ROOMS PROVIDED	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED GUEST ROOMS WITH COMMUNICATION FEATURES
1	1
2 to 25	2
26 to 50	4
51 to 75	7
76 to 100	9
101 to 150	12
151 to 200	14
201 to 300	17
301 to 400	20
401 to 500	22
501 to 1000	5 percent of total
1001 and over	50, plus 3 for each 100 over 1000

**11B-224.6 Storage.** Fixed or built-in storage facilities within guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-225.

**11B-224.7 Housing at a place of education.** Housing at a place of education subject to this section shall comply with Sections 11B-224.1 through 11B-224.6 and 11B-806 for transient lodging guest rooms. For the purposes of the application of this section, the term "sleeping room" is interchangeable with "guest room" as used in the transient lodging standards.

**Exception:** Housing facilities that are provided by or on behalf of a place of education, with residential dwelling units leased on a year-round basis exclusively to graduate students or faculty, and that do not contain any public use or common use areas available for educational programming, are not subject to Section 11B-224 and shall comply with Section 11B-233.

**11B-224.7.1 Multibedroom housing units with mobility features.** Multibedroom housing units containing accessible sleeping rooms with mobility features shall have an accessible route throughout the unit in compliance with Section 11B-809.2. Kitchens, when provided, within housing units containing accessible sleeping rooms with mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-804.

**11B-224.7.2 Accessible dwelling units with adaptable features.** Accessible dwelling units with adaptable features shall be provided as required by Section 11B-233.3.1.2. The number of required accessible dwelling units with adaptable features shall be reduced by the number of units with mobility features required by Section 11B-224.2.

**11B-224.8 Social service center establishments.** Group homes, halfway houses, shelters or similar social service center establishments that provide either temporary sleeping accommodations or residential dwelling units subject to this section shall comply with Section 11B-233.3.

**11B-224.8.1 More than 25-bed sleeping rooms.** In sleeping rooms with more than 25 beds, a minimum of 5 percent of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with Section 11B-806.2.3.

**11B-224.8.2 More than 50-bed facilities.** Facilities with more than 50 beds that provide common use bathing facilities shall provide at least one roll-in shower with a seat that complies with Section 11B-608. When separate shower facilities are provided for men and women, at least one roll-in shower shall be provided for each group.

### 11B-225 Storage

**11B-225.1 General.** Storage facilities shall comply with Section 11B-225.

**11B-225.2 Storage.** Where storage is provided in accessible spaces, at least one of each type shall comply with Section 11B-811.

**11B-225.2.1 Lockers.** Where lockers are provided, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one of each type, shall comply with *Section 11B-811*.

**11B-225.2.2 Self-service shelving.** Self-service shelves shall be located on an accessible route complying with *Section 11B-402*. Self-service shelving shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-308*.

**11B-225.2.3 Library book stacks.** Book stacks available for public use shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**Exceptions:**

1. Book stacks available for public use may be higher than 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor when an attendant is available to assist persons with disabilities.
2. Book stacks restricted to employee use are not required to comply with these requirements.

**11B-225.3 Self-service storage facilities.** Self-service storage facilities shall provide individual self-service storage spaces complying with these requirements in accordance with Table 11B-225.3.

**TABLE 11B-225.3  
SELF-SERVICE STORAGE FACILITIES**

TOTAL SPACES IN FACILITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF SPACES REQUIRED TO BE ACCESSIBLE
1 to 200	5 percent, but no fewer than 1
201 and over	10, plus 2 percent of total number of units over 200

**11B-225.3.1 Dispersion.** Individual self-service storage spaces shall be dispersed throughout the various classes of spaces provided. Where more classes of spaces are provided than the number required to be accessible, the number of spaces shall not be required to exceed that required by Table 11B-225.3. Self-service storage spaces complying with Table 11B-225.3 shall not be required to be dispersed among buildings in a multibuilding facility.

**11B-226 Dining surfaces and work surfaces**

**11B-226.1 General.** Where dining surfaces are provided for the consumption of food or drink, at least 5 percent of the seating spaces and standing spaces at the dining surfaces shall comply with *Section 11B-902*. In addition, where work surfaces are provided for use by other than employees, at least 5 percent shall comply with *Section 11B-902*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Sales counters and service counters shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-902*. See *Section 11B-227*.
2. Check writing surfaces provided at check-out aisles not required to comply with *Section 11B-904.3* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-902*.

**11B-226.2 Dispersion.** Dining surfaces required to comply with *Section 11B-902* shall be dispersed throughout the space or facility containing dining surfaces for each type of seating in a functional area. Work surfaces required to comply with

*Section 11B-902 shall be dispersed throughout the space or facility containing work surfaces.*

**11B-226.3 Dining surfaces exceeding 34 inches in height.** Where food or drink is served for consumption at a counter exceeding 34 inches (864 mm) in height, a portion of the main counter 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length shall be provided in compliance with *Section 11B-902.3*.

**11B-226.4 Baby diaper changing station.** Baby diaper changing stations shall comply with Sections 11B-309 and 11B-902. Baby diaper changing stations when deployed shall not obstruct the required width of an accessible route except as allowed by *Section 11B-307.2*. Baby diaper changing stations shall not be located in toilet compartments complying with *Section 11B-604.8* within a multiple accommodation toilet facility.

**11B-227 Sales and service**

**11B-227.1 General.** Where provided, check-out aisles, sales counters, service counters, food service lines, queues and waiting lines shall comply with Sections 11B-227 and 11B-904.

**11B-227.2 Check-out aisles.** Where check-out aisles are provided, check-out aisles complying with *Section 11B-904.3* shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-227.2. Where check-out aisles serve different functions, check-out aisles complying with *Section 11B-904.3* shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-227.2 for each function. Where check-out aisles are dispersed throughout the building or facility, check-out aisles complying with *Section 11B-904.3* shall be dispersed. When not all check-out aisles are accessible, accessible check-out aisles shall be identified by a sign complying with *Section 11B-904.3.4*.

**Note:** Operational procedures are often necessary to ensure the Americans with Disabilities Act accessibility requirements are met. When check-out aisles are open for customer use, the business should ensure that a minimum of one accessible check-out aisle is always available for use by persons with disabilities. As check-out aisles are opened and closed based on fluctuating customer levels, the business should ensure that the number of accessible check-out aisles available complies with Table 11B-227.2.

**Exception:** In existing buildings, where the selling space is under 5000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) no more than one check-out aisle complying with *Section 11B-904.3* shall be required.

**TABLE 11B-227.2  
CHECK-OUT AISLES**

NUMBER OF CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION	MINIMUM NUMBER OF CHECK-OUT AISLES OF EACH FUNCTION REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH 11B-904.3
1 to 4	1
5 to 8	2
9 to 15	3
16 and over	3, plus 20 percent of additional aisles

**11B-227.2.1 Altered check-out aisles.** Where check-out aisles are altered, at least one of each check-out aisle serving each function shall comply with *Section 11B-904.3* until the number of check-out aisles complies with *Section 11B-227.2*.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-227.3 Counters.** Where provided, at least one of each type of sales counter and service counter shall comply with *Section 11B-904.4*. Where counters are dispersed throughout the building or facility, counters complying with *Section 11B-904.4* also shall be dispersed.

**11B-227.4 Food service lines.** Food service lines shall comply with *Section 11B-904.5*. Where self-service shelves are provided, at least 50 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type provided shall comply with *Section 11B-308*.

**11B-227.5 Queues and waiting lines.** Queues and waiting lines servicing counters or check-out aisles required to comply with *Sections 11B-904.3* or *11B-904.4* shall comply with *Section 11B-403*.

**11B-228 Depositories, vending machines, change machines, mail boxes, fuel dispensers and electric vehicle charging stations.**

**11B-228.1 General.** Where provided, at least one of each type of depository, vending machine, change machine and fuel dispenser shall comply with *Section 11B-309*. *Electric vehicle charging stations shall comply with Section 11B-228.3*.

**Exception:** Drive-up only depositories shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-228.2 Mail boxes.** Where mail boxes are provided in an interior location, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type shall comply with *Section 11B-309*. In residential facilities, where mail boxes are provided for each residential dwelling unit, mail boxes complying with *Section 11B-309* shall be provided for each residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2* through *11B-809.4* and adaptable features complying with *Sections 11B-809.6* through *11B-809.12*.

**11B-228.3 Electric vehicle charging stations**

**11B-228.3.1 General.** Where electric vehicle charging stations (EVCS) are provided, EVCS shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-228.3*.

**11B-228.3.1.1 Existing facilities.** Where new EVCS are added to a facility with existing EVCS, the requirements of *Section 11B-812* shall apply only to the new EVCS installed. Alterations to existing EVCS shall comply with *Section 11B-228.3*.

**11B-228.3.1.2 Operable parts.** Where EV chargers are provided, operable parts on all EV chargers shall comply with *Section 11B-309.4*.

**11B-228.3.2 Minimum number.** EVCS complying with *Section 11B-812* shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-228.3.2* for each combination of charging level and EV connector type integral to the EV charger. Each combination of charging level (such as: AC Level 1, AC Level 2, DC Fast Charge) and EV connector type shall be considered as a facility. Where EVCS are provided in more than one facility on a site, the number of EVCS complying with *Section 11B-228.3.2* provided on the site shall be calculated according to the number required for each facility. In public housing facilities, EVCS provided for common use of residents shall comply with *Section 11B-228.3.2*. Where an EV charger can simultaneously charge more than one vehicle, the number of EV chargers provided shall be considered equivalent to the number of electric vehicles that can be simultaneously charged.

**Exceptions:**

1. EVCS not available to the general public and intended for use by a designated vehicle or driver shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-228.3.2*. Examples include, but are not limited to, EVCS serving public or private fleet vehicles and EVCS assigned to an employee.
2. In public housing facilities, EVCS intended for use by an EV owner or operator at their residence shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-228.3.2*.

**Note:** Electric vehicle charging provided in newly constructed facilities are also subject to the California Green Building Standards Code.

**11B-228.3.2.1 Public use or common use EVCS.** Where EVCS are provided for public use or common use, EVCS complying with *Section 11B-812* shall be provided in accordance with *Table 11B-228.3.2.1*. Where new EVCS are installed in facilities with existing EVCS, the “Total Number of EVCS at a Facility” in *Table 11B-228.3.2.1* shall include both existing and new EVCS.

**Exception:** All drive-up EVCS shall comply with *Section 11B-812*.

**TABLE 11B-228.3.2.1**  
**ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATIONS FOR PUBLIC USE AND COMMON USE**

<b>TOTAL NUMBER OF EVCS AT A FACILITY<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>MINIMUM NUMBER (by type) OF EVCS REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH SECTION 11B-812<sup>1</sup></b>		
	<b>Van Accessible</b>	<b>Standard Accessible</b>	<b>Ambulatory</b>
1 to 4	1	0	0
5 to 25	1	1	0
26 to 50	1	1	1
51 to 75	1	2	2
76 to 100	1	3	3
101 and over	1, plus 1 for each 300, or fraction thereof, over 100	3, plus 1 for each 60, or fraction thereof, over 100	3, plus 1 for each 50, or fraction thereof, over 100

<sup>1</sup>. Where an EV charger can simultaneously charge more than one vehicle, the number of EVCS provided shall be considered equivalent to the number of electric vehicles that can be simultaneously charged.

**11B-229 Windows**

**11B-229.1 General.** Where glazed openings are provided in accessible rooms or spaces for operation by occupants, at least one opening shall comply with *Section 11B-309*. Each glazed opening required by an administrative authority to be operable shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**Exception:**

1. Glazed openings in residential dwelling units required to comply with *Section 11B-809* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-229*.
2. Glazed openings in guest rooms required to provide communication features and in guest rooms required to comply with *Section 11B-206.5.3* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-229*.

**11B-230 Two-way communication systems**

**11B-230.1 General.** Where a two-way communication system is provided to gain admittance to a building or facility or to restricted areas within a building or facility, the system shall comply with *Section 11B-708*.

**11B-231 Judicial facilities**

**11B-231.1 General.** Judicial facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-231*.

**11B-231.2 Courtrooms.** Each courtroom shall comply with *Section 11B-808*.

**11B-231.3 Holding cells.** Where provided, central holding cells and court-floor holding cells shall comply with *Section 11B-231.3*.

**11B-231.3.1 Central holding cells.** Where separate central holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female or juvenile female, one of each type shall comply with *Section 11B-807.2*. Where central holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, at least one cell complying with *Section 11B-807.2* shall be provided.

**11B-231.3.2 Court-floor holding cells.** Where separate court-floor holding cells are provided for adult male, juvenile male, adult female or juvenile female, each courtroom shall be served by one cell of each type complying with *Section 11B-807.2*. Where court-floor holding cells are provided and are not separated by age or sex, courtrooms shall be served by at least one cell complying with *Section 11B-807.2*. Cells may serve more than one courtroom.

**11B-231.4 Visiting areas.** Visiting areas shall comply with *Section 11B-231.4*.

**11B-231.4.1 Cubicles and counters.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with *Section 11B-902* on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-904.4.2* on both the visitor and detainee sides.

**Exception:** The detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells required to comply with *Section 11B-231* shall not be required to comply with *Sections 11B-902* or *11B-904.4.2*.

**11B-231.4.2 Partitions.** Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with *Section 11B-904.6*.

**11B-232 Detention facilities and correctional facilities**

**11B-232.1 General.** Buildings, facilities, or portions thereof, in which people are detained for penal or correction purposes, or in which the liberty of the inmates is restricted for security reasons shall comply with *Section 11B-232*.

**11B-232.2 General holding cells and general housing cells.** General holding cells and general housing cells shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-232.2*.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-232.2.1 Cells with mobility features.** At least 3 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of cells in a facility shall provide mobility features complying with *Section 11B-807.2*.

**11B-232.2.1.1 Beds.** In cells having more than 25 beds, at least 5 percent of the beds shall have clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-807.2.3*.

**11B-232.2.1.2 Dispersion.** Cells with mobility features shall be provided in each classification level.

**11B-232.2.1.3 Substitute cells.** When alterations are made to specific cells, detention and correctional facility operators may satisfy their obligation to provide the required number of cells with mobility features by providing the required mobility features in substitute cells (cells other than those where alterations are originally planned), provided that each substitute cell meets the following conditions:

1. Located within the same prison site.
2. Integrated with the other cells to the maximum extent feasible.
3. Has equal physical access as the altered cells to areas used by inmates or detainees for visitation, dining, recreation, educational programs, medical services, work programs, religious services and participation in other programs that the facility offers to inmates or detainees.

**11B-232.2.1.4 Technically infeasible.** Where it is technically infeasible to locate a substitute cell within the same prison site in compliance with *Section 11B-232.2.1.3*, a substitute cell shall be provided at another prison site within the correctional system.

**11B-232.2 Cells with communication features.** At least 2 percent, but no fewer than one, of the total number of general holding cells and general housing cells equipped with audible emergency alarm systems and permanently installed telephones within the cell shall provide communication features complying with *Section 11B-807.3*.

**11B-232.3 Special holding cells and special housing cells.** Where special holding cells or special housing cells are provided, at least one cell serving each purpose shall provide mobility features complying with *Section 11B-807.2*. Cells

subject to this requirement include, but are not limited to, those used for purposes of orientation, protective custody, administrative or disciplinary detention or segregation, detoxification and medical isolation.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-232.4 Medical care facilities.** Patient bedrooms or cells required to comply with *Section 11B-223* shall be provided in addition to any medical isolation cells required to comply with *Section 11B-232.3*.

**11B-232.5 Visiting areas.** Visiting areas shall comply with *Section 11B-232.5*.

**11B-232.5.1 Cubicles and counters.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of cubicles shall comply with *Section 11B-902* on both the visitor and detainee sides. Where counters are provided, at least one shall comply with *Section 11B-904.4.2* on both the visitor and detainee or inmate sides.

**Exception:** The inmate or detainee side of cubicles or counters at non-contact visiting areas not serving holding cells or housing cells required to comply with *Section 11B-232* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-902* or *11B-904.4.2*.

**11B-232.5.2 Partitions.** Where solid partitions or security glazing separate visitors from detainees or inmates at least one of each type of cubicle or counter partition shall comply with *Section 11B-904.6*.

**11B-233 Public housing facilities**

**11B-233.1 General.** *Public housing facilities* with residential dwelling units shall comply with *Section 11B-233*. See Chapter 2, Section 202 of this code for the definition of *Public Housing*.

**11B-233.2 Reserved.**

**11B-233.3 Public housing facilities.** *Public housing facilities* with residential dwelling units shall comply with *Section 11B-233.3*.

**Note:** Senior citizen housing may also be subject to Civil Code, Division 1, Part 2, Sections 51.2, 51.3 and 51.4.

**11B-233.3.1 Minimum number: new construction.** Newly constructed facilities with residential dwelling units shall comply with *Section 11B-233.3.1*.

**Exception:** Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of *Sections 11B-233.3.1.1* and *11B-233.3.1.3* shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are constructed under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

**11B-233.3.1.1 Residential dwelling units with mobility features.** In facilities with residential dwelling units, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one unit, of the total number of residential dwelling units shall provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2* through *11B-809.4* and shall be on an accessible route as required by *Section 11B-206*.

**11B-233.3.1.2 Residential dwelling units with adaptable features.** In facilities with residential dwelling units, adaptable residential dwelling units complying

with *Sections 11B-809.6* through *11B-809.12* shall be provided as required by *Sections 11B-233.3.1.2.1* through *11B-233.3.1.2.6*. Adaptable residential dwelling units shall be on an accessible route as required by *Section 11B-206*.

**Exception:** The number of required adaptable residential dwelling units shall be reduced by the number of units required by *Section 11B-233.3.1.1*.

**11B-233.3.1.2.1 Elevator buildings.** Residential dwelling units on floors served by an elevator shall be adaptable.

**11B-233.3.1.2.2 Non-elevator buildings.** Ground floor residential dwelling units in non-elevator buildings shall be adaptable.

**11B-233.3.1.2.3 Ground floors above grade.** Where the first floor in a building containing residential dwelling units is a floor above grade, all units on that floor shall be adaptable.

**11B-233.3.1.2.4 Multistory residential dwelling units in buildings with one or more elevators.** In elevator buildings, facilities with multistory residential dwelling units shall comply with the following:

1. The primary entry of the multistory residential dwelling unit shall be on an accessible route on the floor served by the elevator.
2. At least one powder room or bathroom and kitchen shall be located on the primary entry level.
3. Rooms or spaces located on the primary entry level shall be served by an accessible route and comply with *Sections 11B-809.6* through *11B-809.12*.

**11B-233.3.1.2.5 Multistory residential dwelling units in buildings with no elevator.** In non-elevator buildings, a minimum of 10 percent but not less than one of the ground floor multistory residential dwelling units shall be calculated using the total number of multistory residential dwelling units in buildings on a site and shall comply with the following:

1. The primary entry of the multistory residential dwelling unit shall be on an accessible route.
2. At least one powder room or bathroom shall be located on the primary entry level.
3. Rooms or spaces located on the primary entry level shall be served by an accessible route and comply with *Sections 11B-809.6* through *11B-809.12*.

**11B-233.3.1.2.6 Public housing facility site impracticality.** The site impracticality tests in this section may be used to determine the number of required residential dwelling units with adaptable features in buildings without an elevator, located on sites with difficult terrain conditions or unusual characteristics.

Except as provided for in *Section 11B-233.3.1.2.5*, the provisions of this section do not apply to multi-story dwelling units in non-elevator buildings.

**11B-233.3.1.2.6.1 Single building with one common (lobby) entrance.** The following may only be used for determining required access to multi-family dwelling units, in a single building with one common (lobby) entrance, located on a site with difficult terrain conditions or unusual characteristics:

All ground floor units in non-elevator buildings shall be adaptable and on an accessible route unless an accessible route to the common (lobby) entrance is not required as determined by Test No. 1, Individual Building Test, or Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test, as described in this section.

Sites where either Test No. 1 or Test No. 3 is used and it is determined that an accessible route to the common (lobby) entrance is not required, a minimum of 20 percent of the ground floor dwelling units shall comply with Section 11B-809.6, and all remaining ground floor dwelling units shall comply with the features listed in Section 11B-233.3.1.2.6.2 unless exempted by Test No. 3, Unusual Characteristics Test.

Test No. 1—Individual Building Test may only be used if the site has terrain over 15 percent slope.

Test No. 3—Unusual Characteristics Test may be used if applicable.

**Provisions to Test Nos. 1 and 2.** Where a building elevator is provided only as means of creating an accessible route to dwelling units on a ground floor, the building is not considered to be an elevator building for purposes of this code; hence, only the ground floor dwelling units would be covered.

#### **11B-233.3.1.2.6.2 Test number one, individual building test**

It is not required by this code to provide an accessible route when the terrain of the site is such that both of the following apply:

1. The slopes of the undisturbed site measured in a straight line between the planned entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance exceed 15 percent; and
2. The slopes of the planned finished grade measured between the entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance also exceed 15 percent.

If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, the slope for the purposes of Test No. 1 will be measured to the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point.

For purposes of these requirements, vehicular or pedestrian site arrival points include public or resident parking areas, public transportation

stops, passenger loading zones and public streets or sidewalks. To determine site impracticality, the slope would be measured at ground level from the point of the planned entrance on a straight line to:

1. Each vehicular or pedestrian arrival point that is within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, or
2. If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within the specified area, the vehicular or pedestrian arrival point closest to the planned entrance.

In the case of sidewalks, the closest point to the entrance will be where a public sidewalk entering the site intersects with the walk to the entrance. In the case of resident parking areas, the closest point to the planned entrance will be measured from the entry point to the parking area that is located closest to the planned entrance.

#### **11B-233.3.1.2.6.3 Test number two, site analysis test**

For a site having multiple buildings, or a site with a single building with multiple entrances, it is not required to provide a building entrance on an accessible route to all ground floor units under the following conditions:

1. Calculate the percentage of the total buildable area of the undisturbed site with a natural grade less than 10 percent slope. The analysis of the existing slope (before grading) shall be done on a topographic survey with 2 foot (610 mm) contour intervals with slope determination made between each successive interval. The accuracy of the slope analysis shall be certified by a licensed engineer, landscape architect, architect or surveyor.
2. Determine the requirement of providing an accessible route to planned multifamily dwellings based on the topography of the existing natural terrain. The minimum percentage of ground floor units required on an accessible route shall equal the percentage of the total buildable area (not restricted-use areas, flood plains or wetlands) of the undisturbed site with an existing natural grade of less than 10 percent slope.
3. In addition to the percentage established in paragraph (2), all ground floor units in a building, or ground floor units served by a particular entrance on an accessible route defined by a calculation of the straight line slope not exceeding 8.33 percent, between their planned entrances and an arrival point, shall be on an accessible route and comply with the provisions of Section 11B-809.6.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

4. All additional ground floor units in a building, or ground floor units served by a particular entrance, not on an accessible route shall comply with the features listed in Section 11B-233.3.1.2.6.5.
5. In no case shall less than 20 percent of the ground floor dwelling units be on an accessible route and comply with the provisions of Sections 11B-809.6 through 11B-809.12.

### **11B-233.3.1.2.6.4 Test number three, unusual characteristics test**

Unusual characteristics include sites located in a state or federally designated floodplain or coastal high-hazard areas and sites subject to other similar requirements of law or code that require the lowest floor or the lowest structural member of the lowest floor be designed to a specified level at or above the base flood elevation. An accessible route to a building entrance is impractical due to unusual characteristics of the site when:

1. The original site characteristics result in a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and 10 percent measured between an entrance and all vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance; or
2. If there are no vehicular or pedestrian arrival points within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the planned entrance, the unusual characteristics result in a difference in finished grade elevation exceeding 30 inches (762 mm) and 10 percent measured between an entrance and the closest vehicular or pedestrian arrival point.

### **11B-233.3.1.2.6.5 Additional requirements.**

1. Grab bar reinforcement complying with Section 11B-809.10.5.2, 11B-809.10.6.4 or 11B-809.10.7.3.
2. Interior door opening width complying with Section 11B-404.3.1.
3. Door and gate hardware complying with Section 11B-404.2.7.
4. Door signal devices complying with Section 11B-809.8.1.
5. Door maneuvering clearance complying with Section 11B-809.8.
6. Water closet seat height complying with Section 11B-809.10.7.4.
7. Electrical receptacles, switches and controls complying with Section 11B-809.12.
8. Faucets complying with Section 11B-809.10.8.6.

9. Water closet, bathtub and lavatory maneuvering clearances complying with Section 11B-809.10.

10. Removable base cabinets complying with Section 11B-809.9.3.

**11B-233.3.1.3 Residential dwelling units with communication features.** In public housing facilities with residential dwelling units, at least 2 percent, but no fewer than one unit, of the total number of residential dwelling units shall provide communication features complying with Section 11B-809.5.

**11B-233.3.2 Residential dwelling units for sale.** Residential dwelling units designed and constructed or altered by public entities that will be offered for sale to individuals shall provide accessible features to the extent required by this chapter.

**11B-233.3.2.1 Buyer identified residential dwelling units for sale.** The requirements of Section 11B-233.3.2 also apply to housing programs that are operated by public entities where design and construction of particular residential dwelling units take place only after a specific buyer has been identified. In such programs, the covered entity must provide the units that comply with the requirements for accessible features to those pre-identified buyers with disabilities who have requested such a unit.

**11B-233.3.3 Additions.** Where an addition to an existing building results in an increase in the number of residential dwelling units, the requirements of Section 11B-233.3.1 shall apply only to the residential dwelling units that are added until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by Section 11B-233.3.1. Residential dwelling units required to comply with Sections 11B-233.3.1.1 and 11B-233.3.1.2 shall be on an accessible route as required by Section 11B-206.

**11B-233.3.4 Alterations.** Alterations shall comply with Section 11B-233.3.4.

**Exception:** Where compliance with Section 11B-809.2, 11B-809.3 or 11B-809.4 is technically infeasible, or where it is technically infeasible to provide an accessible route to a residential dwelling unit, the entity shall be permitted to alter or construct a comparable residential dwelling unit to comply with Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4 provided that the minimum number of residential dwelling units required by Sections 11B-233.3.1.1 and 11B-233.3.1.3, as applicable, is satisfied.

**11B-233.3.4.1 Alterations to vacated buildings.** Where a building is vacated for the purposes of alteration, and the altered building contains more than 15 residential dwelling units, at least 5 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4 and shall be on an accessible route as required by Section 11B-206. In addition, at least 2 percent of the residential dwelling units shall comply with Section 11B-809.5.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-233.3.4.2 Alterations to individual residential dwelling units.** In individual residential dwelling units, where a bathroom or a kitchen is substantially altered, and at least one other room is altered, the requirements of *Section 11B-233.3.1* shall apply to the altered residential dwelling units until the total number of residential dwelling units complies with the minimum number required by *Sections 11B-233.3.1.1 and 11B-233.3.1.3*. Residential dwelling units required to comply with *Section 11B-233.3.1.1* shall be on an accessible route as required by *Section 11B-206*.

**Exception:** Where facilities contain 15 or fewer residential dwelling units, the requirements of *Sections 11B-233.3.1.1 and 11B-233.3.1.3* shall apply to the total number of residential dwelling units that are altered under a single contract, or are developed as a whole, whether or not located on a common site.

**11B-233.3.4.3 Alterations to residential dwelling units with adaptable features.** The building standards for residential dwelling units with adaptable features do not apply to the alteration, repair, rehabilitation or maintenance of residential dwelling units constructed for first occupancy on or prior to March 13, 1991. Multifamily dwelling units with adaptable features constructed for first occupancy after March 13, 1991 shall be maintained in compliance with the accessibility standards in effect at the time of construction.

**Exception:** Where any portion of a building's exterior is preserved, but the interior of the building is removed, including all structural portions of floors and ceilings and a new building is constructed behind the existing exterior, the building is considered a new building for determining the application of this chapter.

**11B-233.3.5 Dispersion.** Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4* and residential dwelling units required to provide communication features complying with *Section 11B-809.5* shall be dispersed among the various types of residential dwelling units in the facility and shall provide choices of residential dwelling units comparable to, and integrated with, those available to other residents.

**Exception:** Where multistory residential dwelling units are one of the types of residential dwelling units provided, one-story residential dwelling units shall be permitted as a substitute for multistory residential dwelling units where equivalent spaces and amenities are provided in the one-story residential dwelling unit.

**11B-233.3.6 Graduate student and faculty housing at a place of education.** Housing facilities that are provided by or on behalf of a place of education, with residential dwelling units leased on a year-round basis exclusively to graduate students or faculty, and that do not contain any public use or common use areas available for educational programming, are not subject to *Section 11B-224* and shall comply with *Section 11B-233*.

### **11B-234 Amusement rides**

**11B-234.1 General.** Amusement rides shall comply with *Section 11B-234*.

**Exception:** Mobile or portable amusement rides shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-234*.

**11B-234.2 Load and unload areas.** Load and unload areas serving amusement rides shall comply with *Section 11B-1002.3*.

**11B-234.3 Minimum number.** Amusement rides shall provide at least one wheelchair space complying with *Section 11B-1002.4*, or at least one amusement ride seat designed for transfer complying with *Section 11B-1002.5*, or at least one transfer device complying with *Section 11B-1002.6*.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Amusement rides that are controlled or operated by the rider shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-234.3*.
2. Amusement rides designed primarily for children, where children are assisted on and off the ride by an adult, shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-234.3*.
3. Amusement rides that do not provide amusement ride seats shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-234.3*.

**11B-234.4 Existing amusement rides.** Where existing amusement rides are altered, the alteration shall comply with *Section 11B-234.4*.

**11B-234.4.1 Load and unload areas.** Where load and unload areas serving existing amusement rides are newly designed and constructed, the load and unload areas shall comply with *Section 11B-1002.3*.

**11B-234.4.2 Minimum number.** Where the structural or operational characteristics of an amusement ride are altered to the extent that the amusement ride's performance differs from that specified by the manufacturer or the original design, the amusement ride shall comply with *Section 11B-234.3*.

### **11B-235 Recreational boating facilities**

**11B-235.1 General.** Recreational boating facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-235*.

**11B-235.2 Boat slips.** Boat slips complying with *Section 11B-1003.3.1* shall be provided in accordance with *Table 11B-235.2*. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, each 40 feet (12192 mm) of boat slip edge provided along the perimeter of the pier shall be counted as one boat slip for the purpose of this section.

**11B-235.2.1 Dispersion.** Boat slips complying with *Section 11B-1003.3.1* shall be dispersed throughout the various types of boat slips provided. Where the minimum number of boat slips required to comply with *Section 11B-1003.3.1* has been met, no further dispersion shall be required.

**11B-235.3 Boarding piers at boat launch ramps.** Where boarding piers are provided at boat launch ramps, at least 5

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

percent, but no fewer than one, of the boarding piers shall comply with *Section 11B-1003.3.2*.

### **11B-236 Exercise machines and equipment**

**11B-236.1 General.** At least one of each type of exercise machine and equipment shall comply with *Section 11B-1004*.

### **11B-237 Fishing piers and platforms**

**11B-237.1 General.** Fishing piers and platforms shall comply with *Section 11B-1005*.

**TABLE 11B-235.2  
BOAT SLIPS**

TOTAL NUMBER OF BOAT SLIPS PROVIDED IN FACILITY	MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED ACCESSIBLE BOAT SLIPS
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 100	3
101 to 150	4
151 to 300	5
301 to 400	6
401 to 500	7
501 to 600	8
601 to 700	9
701 to 800	10
801 to 900	11
901 to 1000	12
1001 and over	12, plus 1 for every 100, or fraction thereof, over 1000

### **11B-238 Golf facilities**

**11B-238.1 General.** Golf facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-238*.

**11B-238.2 Golf courses.** Golf courses shall comply with *Section 11B-238.2*.

**11B-238.2.1 Teeing grounds.** Where one teeing ground is provided for a hole, the teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where two teeing grounds are provided for a hole, the forward teeing ground shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground. Where three or more teeing grounds are provided for a hole, at least two teeing grounds, including the forward teeing ground, shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit each teeing ground.

**Exception:** In existing golf courses, the forward teeing ground shall not be required to be one of the teeing grounds on a hole designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the teeing ground where compliance is not feasible due to terrain.

**11B-238.2.2 Putting greens.** Putting greens shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the putting green.

**11B-238.2.3 Weather shelters.** Where provided, weather shelters shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the weather shelter and shall comply with *Section 11B-1006.4*.

**11B-238.3 Practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds and teeing stations at driving ranges.** At least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds and teeing stations at driving ranges shall be designed and constructed so that a golf car can enter and exit the practice putting greens, practice teeing grounds and teeing stations at driving ranges.

### **11B-239 Miniature golf facilities**

**11B-239.1 General.** Miniature golf facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-239*.

**11B-239.2 Minimum number.** At least 50 percent of holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with *Section 11B-1007.3*.

**11B-239.3 Miniature golf course configuration.** Miniature golf courses shall be configured so that the holes complying with *Section 11B-1007.3* are consecutive. Miniature golf courses shall provide an accessible route from the last hole complying with *Section 11B-1007.3* to the course entrance or exit without requiring travel through any other holes on the course.

**Exception:** One break in the sequence of consecutive holes shall be permitted provided that the last hole on the miniature golf course is the last hole in the sequence.

### **11B-240 Play areas**

**11B-240.1 General.** Play areas for children ages 2 and over shall comply with *Section 11B-240*. Where separate play areas are provided within a site for specific age groups, each play area shall comply with *Section 11B-240*.

#### **Exceptions:**

- Play areas located in family child-care facilities where the proprietor actually resides shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-240*.
- In existing play areas, where play components are relocated for the purposes of creating safe use zones and the ground surface is not altered or extended for more than one use zone, the play area shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-240*.
- Amusement attractions shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-240*.
- Where play components are altered and the ground surface is not altered, the ground surface shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-1008.2.6* unless required by *Section 11B-202.4*.

**11B-240.1.1 Additions.** Where play areas are designed and constructed in phases, the requirements of *Section 11B-240* shall apply to each successive addition so that when the addition is completed, the entire play area complies with all the applicable requirements of *Section 11B-240*.

**11B-240.2 Play components.** Where provided, play components shall comply with *Section 11B-240.2*.

**11B-240.2.1 Ground level play components.** Ground level play components shall be provided in the number and types required by *Section 11B-240.2.1*. Ground level play components that are provided to comply with *Section 11B-240.2.1.1* shall be permitted to satisfy the additional number required by *Section 11B-240.2.1.2* if the minimum required types of play components are satisfied. Where

two or more required ground level play components are provided, they shall be dispersed throughout the play area and integrated with other play components.

**11B-240.2.1.1 Minimum number and types.** Where ground level play components are provided, at least one of each type shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.4*.

**11B-240.2.1.2 Additional number and types.** Where elevated play components are provided, ground level play components shall be provided in accordance with Table 11B-240.2.1.2 and shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.4*.

**Exception:** If at least 50 percent of the elevated play components are connected by a ramp and at least 3 of the elevated play components connected by the ramp are different types of play components, the play area shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-240.2.1.2*.

**11B-240.2.2 Elevated play components.** Where elevated play components are provided, at least 50 percent shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.4*.

#### 11B-241 Saunas and steam rooms

**11B-241.1 General.** Where provided, saunas and steam rooms shall comply with *Section 11B-612*.

**Exception:** Where saunas or steam rooms are clustered at a single location, no more than 5 percent of the saunas and steam rooms, but no fewer than one, of each type in each cluster shall be required to comply with *Section 11B-612*.

#### 11B-242 Swimming pools, wading pools and spas

**11B-242.1 General.** Swimming pools, wading pools and spas shall comply with *Section 11B-242*.

**11B-242.2 Swimming pools.** At least two accessible means of entry shall be provided for swimming pools. Accessible means of entry shall be swimming pool lifts complying with *Section 11B-1009.2*; sloped entries complying with *Section 11B-1009.3*; transfer walls complying with *Section 11B-1009.4*; transfer systems complying with *Section 11B-1009.5*;

and pool stairs complying with *Section 11B-1009.6*. At least one accessible means of entry provided shall comply with *Sections 11B-1009.2* or *11B-1009.3*.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where a swimming pool has less than 300 linear feet (91 m) of swimming pool wall, no more than one accessible means of entry shall be required provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with *Section 11B-1009.2* or a sloped entry complying with *Section 11B-1009.3*.
2. Wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools and other pools where user access is limited to one area shall not be required to provide more than one accessible means of entry provided that the accessible means of entry is a swimming pool lift complying with *Section 11B-1009.2*, a sloped entry complying with *Section 11B-1009.3*, or a transfer system complying with *Section 11B-1009.5*.
3. Catch pools shall not be required to provide an accessible means of entry provided that the catch pool edge is on an accessible route.

**11B-242.3 Wading pools.** At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for wading pools. Accessible means of entry shall comply with sloped entries complying with *Section 11B-1009.3*.

**11B-242.4 Spas.** At least one accessible means of entry shall be provided for spas. Accessible means of entry shall comply with swimming pool lifts complying with *Section 11B-1009.2*; transfer walls complying with *Section 11B-1009.4*; or transfer systems complying with *Section 11B-1009.5*.

**Exception:** Where spas are provided in a cluster, no more than 5 percent, but no fewer than one, spa in each cluster shall be required to comply with *Section 11B-242.4*.

#### 11B-243 Shooting facilities with firing positions

**11B-243.1 General.** Where shooting facilities with firing positions are designed and constructed at a site, at least 5 percent, but no fewer than one, of each type of firing position shall comply with *Section 11B-1010*.

**TABLE 11B-240.2.1.2  
NUMBER AND TYPES OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON ACCESSIBLE ROUTES**

NUMBER OF ELEVATED PLAY COMPONENTS PROVIDED	MINIMUM NUMBER OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE	MINIMUM NUMBER OF DIFFERENT TYPES OF GROUND LEVEL PLAY COMPONENTS REQUIRED TO BE ON AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE
1	Not applicable	Not applicable
2 to 4	1	1
5 to 7	2	2
8 to 10	3	3
11 to 13	4	3
14 to 16	5	3
17 to 19	6	3
20 to 22	7	4
23 to 25	8	4
26 and over	8, plus 1 for each additional 3, or fraction thereof, over 25	5

**11B-244 Religious facilities**

**11B-244.1 General.** Religious facilities shall be accessible in accordance with the provisions of this code. Where specific areas within religious facilities contain more than one use, each portion shall comply with the applicable requirements for that use.

**11B-245 Public accommodations located in private residences**

**11B-245.1 General.** Public accommodations located in private residences shall comply with Section 11B-245.

**11B-245.2 Application.** When a public accommodation is located in a private residence, that portion used exclusively in the operation of the public accommodation or that portion used both for the public accommodation and for residential purposes is covered by the new construction and alterations requirements of this chapter.

**Exception:** The portion of the residence used exclusively as a residence is not required to be accessible in accordance with this chapter.

**11B-245.3 Accessible elements required.** The accessible portion of the residence extends to those elements used to enter the public accommodation, including the front sidewalk, if any, the door or entryway, and hallways; and those portions of the residence, interior or exterior, available to or used by employees or visitors of the public accommodation, including restrooms.

**11B-246 Outdoor developed areas**

**11B-246.1 General.** Outdoor developed areas shall comply with Section 11B-246.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the enforcing agency finds that, in specific areas, the natural environment would be materially damaged by compliance with these regulations, such areas shall be subject to these regulations only to the extent that such material damage would not occur.
2. Automobile access or accessible routes are not required when the enforcing agency determines compliance with this chapter would create an unreasonable hardship as defined in Chapter 2, Section 202.

**11B-246.2 Camping facilities.** In camping facilities where campsites are provided, at least two campsites and one additional campsite for each 100 campsites or fraction thereof, shall be accessed by and connected to sanitary facilities by travel routes with a maximum slope of 1:12. Permanent toilet and bathing facilities serving campsites shall comply with Section 11B-603.

**11B-246.3 Beaches.** Beaches shall be accessible.

**11B-246.4 Day use areas and vista points.** Day use areas, vista points and similar areas shall be accessible.

**11B-246.5 Picnic areas.** Where picnic tables are provided, at least one picnic table, and one additional table for each 20 tables or fraction thereof, shall be accessible and comply with Section 11B-902.

**11B-246.6 Parking lots.** Parking lots shall comply with Sections 11B-208 and 11B-502 and shall be provided with curb cuts leading to adjacent walks, paths or trails.

**11B-246.7 Trails and paths.** Trails, paths and nature walk areas, or portions of them, shall be constructed with gradients permitting at least partial use by wheelchair occupants. Buildings and other functional areas shall be served by paths or walks with firm and stable surfaces.

**11B-246.8 Nature trails.** Nature trails and similar educational and informational areas shall be accessible to individuals with vision impairments by the provision of rope guidelines, raised Arabic numerals and symbols, or other similar guide and assistance devices.

**11B-247 Detectable warnings and detectable directional texture****11B-247.1 Detectable warnings.**

**11B-247.1.1 General.** Detectable warnings shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-247.1 and shall comply with Section 11B-705.1.

**11B-247.1.2 Where required.** Detectable warnings shall be provided where required by Section 11B-247.1.2.

**11B-247.1.2.1 Platform edges.** Platform boarding edges shall have detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.1.

**11B-247.1.2.2 Curb ramps.** Curb ramps shall have detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.2.

**11B-247.1.2.3 Islands or cut-through medians.** Islands or cut-through medians shall have detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.3.

**11B-247.1.2.4 Bus stops.** Where detectable warnings are provided at bus stop boarding and alighting areas in compliance with Section 11B-810.2.3, detectable warnings shall comply with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.4.

**11B-247.1.2.5 Blended transitions.** Blended transitions shall have detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.5.

**11B-247.1.2.6 Reflecting pools.** The edges of reflecting pools shall be protected by railings, walls, warning curbs or detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.6.

**11B-247.1.2.7 Track crossings.** Where it is necessary to cross tracks to reach transit boarding platforms, detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.7 shall be provided.

**11B-247.2 Detectable directional texture.** At transit boarding platforms, the pedestrian access shall be identified with a detectable directional texture complying with Section 11B-705.2.

**11B-248 Common use areas and employee work areas.**

**11B-248.1 Common use areas.** Common use areas shall comply with this chapter.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-248.2 Employee work areas.** Employee work areas shall comply with this chapter.

### **11B-249 Adult changing facilities**

**11B-249.1 General.** Adult changing facilities shall comply with Section 11B-249.

**11B-249.1.1** Where adult changing facilities are provided, each adult changing facility shall comply with Section 11B-813.

**11B-249.1.2** Newly constructed commercial places of public amusement shall provide no fewer than one adult changing facility in compliance with Section 11B-813.

### **11B-250 Circulation paths**

**11B-250.1 General.** Circulation paths contiguous to vehicular traffic shall be physically separated from vehicular traffic. Vehicular traffic includes travel through parking facilities, into and out of parking spaces, into and out of electric vehicle charging spaces, and along roadways, driveways and drive aisles. Physical separation shall be provided with circulation paths raised 4 inches (102 mm) minimum above the area where vehicular traffic occurs.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Curb ramps and blended transitions with detectable warnings complying with Section 11B-247 may be used to connect raised circulation paths and pedestrian crossings within areas of vehicular traffic. Blended transitions and cut-through medians with detectable warnings complying with Section 11B-247 may be used to connect circulation paths and pedestrian crossings at similar elevations within areas of vehicular traffic.
2. At locations where sidewalks and walks in the public right-of-way cross driveways without yield or stop traffic control, compliance with this section shall not be required.
3. At locations where circulation paths cross driveways or drive aisles, circulation paths shall not be required to comply with this section and detectable warnings shall not be permitted. Beyond the crossing where continuation of the circulation path within a parking facility leads immediately to and does not continue beyond only parking spaces complying with Section 11B-502, passenger drop-off and loading zones complying with Section 11B-503 and electric vehicle charging stations complying with Section 11B-812, the circulation path shall not be required to be raised.
4. In alterations to existing parking facilities, including alterations required by Section 11B-202.4, physical separation may be provided with detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-247 and 11B-705.1 in lieu of raised circulation paths.

5. Access aisles serving any electric vehicle charging station vehicle spaces complying with Section 11B-812, parking spaces complying with Section 11B-502, or passenger drop-off and loading zones complying with Section 11B-503 shall not be required to comply with this section.

6. At each electric vehicle charging station complying with Section 11B-812 where the charger and its controls are oriented toward the vehicle space it serves and the charger's clear floor spaces for operable parts and point-of-sale devices are at the same elevation as the vehicle space, the accessible route complying with Section 11B-812.5.2 shall not be required to comply with this section.

## DIVISION 3: BUILDING BLOCKS

### **11B-301 General**

**11B-301.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 3* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this *chapter*.

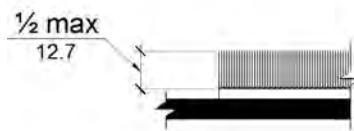
### **11B-302 Floor or ground surfaces**

**11B-302.1 General.** Floor and ground surfaces shall be stable, firm and slip resistant and shall comply with *Section 11B-302*.

#### **Exceptions:**

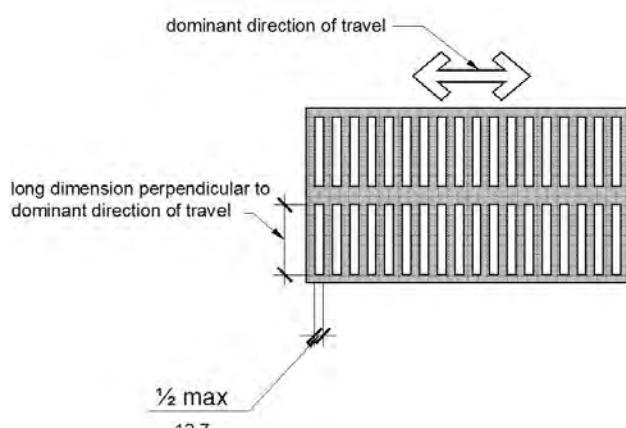
1. Within animal containment areas, floor and ground surfaces shall not be required to be stable, firm and slip resistant.
2. Areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-303*.

**11B-302.2 Carpet.** Carpet or carpet tile shall be securely attached and shall have a firm cushion, pad, or backing or no cushion or pad. Carpet or carpet tile shall have a level loop, textured loop, level cut pile, level cut/uncut pile texture. Pile height shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) maximum. Exposed edges of carpet shall be fastened to floor surfaces and shall have trim on the entire length of the exposed edge. Carpet edge trim shall comply with *Section 11B-303*.



**FIGURE 11B-302.2  
CARPET PILE HEIGHT**

**11B-302.3 Openings.** Openings in floor or ground surfaces shall not allow passage of a sphere more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) diameter except as allowed in *Sections 11B-407.4.3, 11B-409.4.3, 11B-410.4, 11B-810.5.3 and 11B-810.10*. Elongated openings shall be placed so that the long dimension is perpendicular to the dominant direction of travel.



**FIGURE 11B-302.3  
ELONGATED OPENINGS IN FLOOR OR GROUND SURFACES**

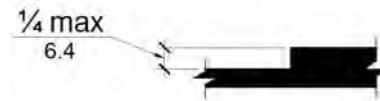
### **11B-303 Changes in level**

**11B-303.1 General.** Where changes in level are permitted in floor or ground surfaces, they shall comply with *Section 11B-303*.

#### **Exceptions:**

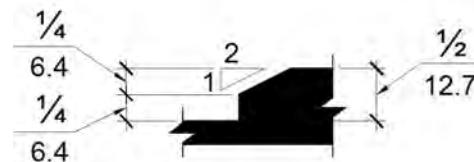
1. Animal containment areas shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-303*.
2. Areas of sport activity shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-303*.

**11B-303.2 Vertical.** Changes in level of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) high maximum shall be permitted to be vertical *and without edge treatment*.



**FIGURE 11B-303.2  
VERTICAL CHANGE IN LEVEL**

**11B-303.3 Beveled.** Changes in level between  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) high minimum and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high maximum shall be beveled with a slope not steeper than 1:2.



**FIGURE 11B-303.3  
BEVELED CHANGE IN LEVEL**

**11B-303.4 Ramps.** Changes in level greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high shall be ramped, and shall comply with *Section 11B-405* or *11B-406*.

**11B-303.5 Warning curbs.** Abrupt changes in level exceeding 4 inches (102 mm) in a vertical dimension between walks, sidewalks or other pedestrian ways and adjacent surfaces or features shall be identified by warning curbs at least 6 inches (152 mm) in height above the walk or sidewalk surface.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. A warning curb is not required between a walk or sidewalk and an adjacent street or driveway.
2. A warning curb is not required when a guard or handrail is provided with a guide rail centered 2 inches (51 mm) minimum and 4 inches (102 mm) maximum above the surface of the walk or sidewalk.

### **11B-304 Turning space**

**11B-304.1 General.** Turning space shall comply with *Section 11B-304*.

**11B-304.2 Floor or ground surfaces.** Floor or ground surfaces of a turning space shall comply with *Section 11B-302*. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-304.3 Size.** Turning space shall comply with *Section 11B-304.3.1* or *11B-304.3.2*.

**11B-304.3.1 Circular space.** The turning space shall be a space of 60 inches (1524 mm) diameter minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306*.

**11B-304.3.2 T-Shaped space.** The turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60 inch (1524 mm) square minimum with arms and base 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum. The space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306* only at the end of either the base or one arm.

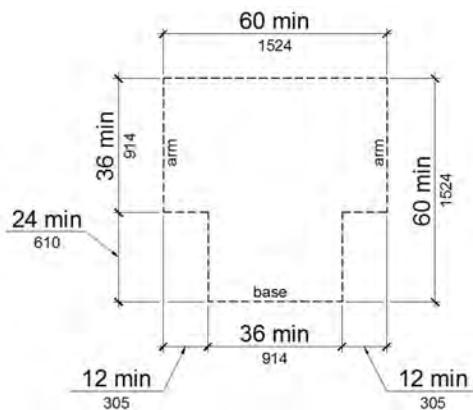


FIGURE 11B-304.3.2  
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE

**11B-304.4 Door swing.** Doors shall be permitted to swing into turning spaces.

#### 11B-305 Clear floor or ground space

**11B-305.1 General.** Clear floor or ground space shall comply with *Section 11B-305*.

**11B-305.2 Floor or ground surfaces.** Floor or ground surfaces of a clear floor or ground space shall comply with *Section 11B-302*. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-305.3 Size.** The clear floor or ground space shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum.

**11B-305.4 Knee and toe clearance.** Unless otherwise specified, clear floor or ground space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306*.

**11B-305.5 Position.** Unless otherwise specified, clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for either forward or parallel approach to an element.

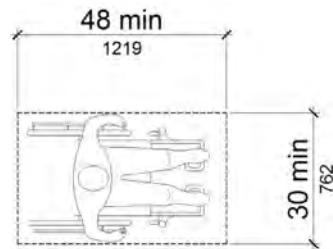


FIGURE 11B-305.3  
CLEAR FLOOR OR GROUND SPACE

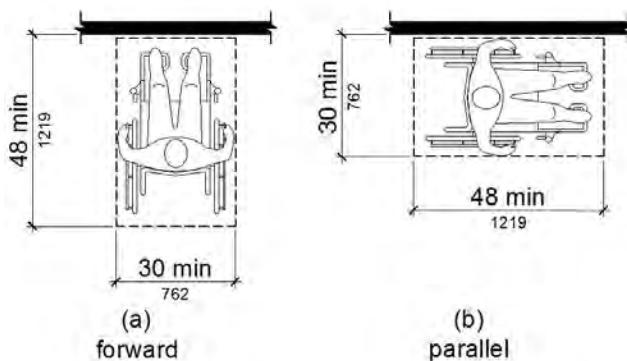


FIGURE 11B-305.5  
POSITION OF CLEAR FLOOR OR GROUND SPACE

**11B-305.6 Approach.** One full unobstructed side of the clear floor or ground space shall adjoin an accessible route or adjoin another clear floor or ground space. *Clear floor or ground space may overlap an accessible route, unless specifically prohibited elsewhere in this chapter.*

**11B-305.7 Maneuvering clearance.** Where a clear floor or ground space is located in an alcove or otherwise confined on all or part of three sides, additional maneuvering clearance shall be provided in accordance with *Sections 11B-305.7.1* and *11B-305.7.2*.

**11B-305.7.1 Forward approach.** Alcoves shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum where the depth exceeds 24 inches (610 mm).

**11B-305.7.2 Parallel approach.** Alcoves shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum where the depth exceeds 15 inches (381 mm).

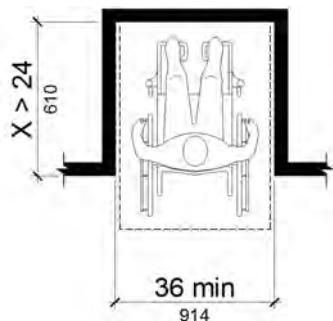
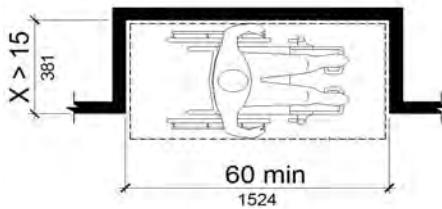
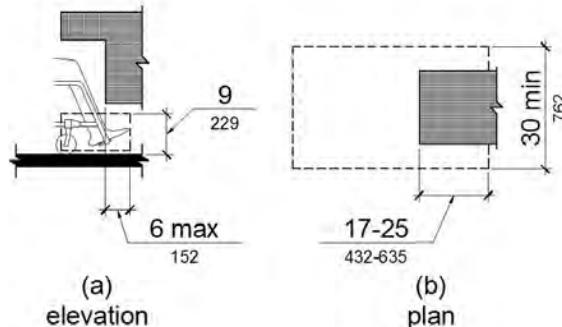


FIGURE 11B-305.7.1  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCE IN AN  
ALCOVE, FORWARD APPROACH



**FIGURE 11B-305.7.2  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCE IN  
AN ALCOVE, PARALLEL APPROACH**



**FIGURE 11B-306.2  
TOE CLEARANCE**

### 11B-306 Knee and toe clearance

**11B-306.1 General.** Where space beneath an element is included as part of clear floor or ground space or turning space, the space shall comply with *Section 11B-306*. Additional space shall not be prohibited beneath an element but shall not be considered as part of the clear floor or ground space or turning space.

### 11B-306.2 Toe clearance

**11B-306.2.1 General.** Space under an element between the finish floor or ground and 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall be considered toe clearance and shall comply with *Section 11B-306.2*.

**11B-306.2.2 Maximum depth.** Toe clearance shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element.

*Exception:* Toe clearance shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) maximum under lavatories required to be accessible by *Section 11B-213.3.4*.

**11B-306.2.3 Minimum required depth.** Where toe clearance is required at an element as part of a clear floor space, the toe clearance shall extend 17 inches (432 mm) minimum under the element.

#### Exceptions:

1. The toe clearance shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) minimum under sinks required to be accessible by *Section 11B-212.3*.
2. The toe clearance shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) minimum under built-in dining and work surfaces required to be accessible.

**11B-306.2.4 Additional clearance.** Space extending greater than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the available knee

clearance at 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall not be considered toe clearance.

**11B-306.2.5 Width.** Toe clearance shall be 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum.

### 11B-306.3 Knee clearance.

**11B-306.3.1 General.** Space under an element between 9 inches (229 mm) and 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall be considered knee clearance and shall comply with *Section 11B-306.3*.

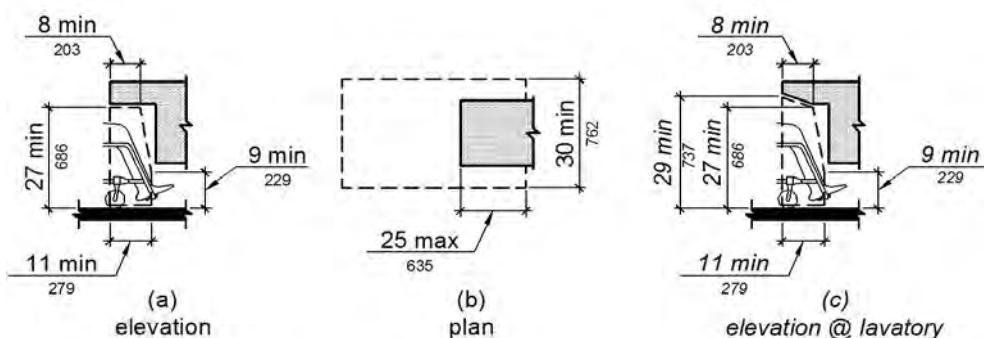
*Exception:* At lavatories required to be accessible by *Section 11B-213.3.4*, space between 9 inches (229 mm) and 29 inches (737 mm) above the finish floor or ground, shall be considered knee clearance.

**11B-306.3.2 Maximum depth.** Knee clearance shall extend 25 inches (635 mm) maximum under an element at 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-306.3.3 Minimum required depth.** Where knee clearance is required under an element as part of a clear floor space, the knee clearance shall be 11 inches (279 mm) deep minimum at 9 inches (229 mm) above the finish floor or ground, and 8 inches (203 mm) deep minimum at 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor or ground.

#### Exceptions:

1. At lavatories required to be accessible by *Section 11B-213.3.4*, the knee clearance shall be 27 inches (686 mm) high minimum above the finish floor or ground at a depth of 8 inches (203 mm) minimum increasing to 29 inches (737 mm) high minimum above the finish floor or ground at the front edge



**FIGURE 11B-306.3  
KNEE CLEARANCE**

of a counter with a built-in lavatory or at the front edge of a wall-mounted lavatory fixture.

2. At dining and work surfaces required to be accessible, knee clearance shall extend 19 inches (483 mm) deep minimum at 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-306.3.4 Clearance reduction.** Between 9 inches (229 mm) and 27 inches (686 mm) above the finish floor or ground, the knee clearance shall be permitted to reduce at a rate of 1 inch (25 mm) in depth for each 6 inches (152 mm) in height.

**Exception:** The knee clearance shall not be reduced at built-in dining and work surfaces required to be accessible by Section 11B-226.1.

**11B-306.3.5 Width.** Knee clearance shall be 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum.

#### 11B-307 Protruding objects

**11B-307.1 General.** Protruding objects shall comply with Section 11B-307.

**11B-307.2 Protrusion limits.** Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (686 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall protrude 4 inches (102 mm) maximum horizontally into the circulation path.

**Exception:** Handrails shall be permitted to protrude 4½ inches (114 mm) maximum.

**11B-307.3 Post-mounted objects.** Free-standing objects mounted on posts or pylons shall overhang circulation paths 12 inches (305 mm) maximum when located 27 inches (686 mm) minimum and 80 inches (2032 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Where a sign or other obstruction is mounted between posts or pylons and the clear distance between the posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), the lowest edge of such sign or obstruction shall be 27 inches (686 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

**Exception:** The sloping portions of handrails serving stairs and ramps shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-307.3.

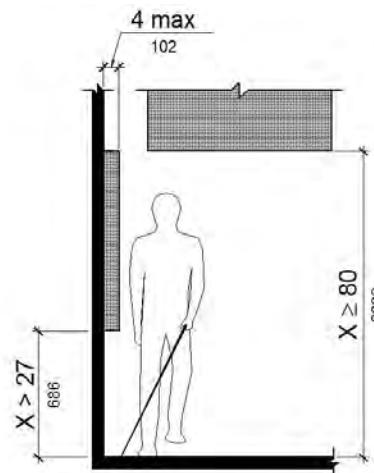


FIGURE 11B-307.2  
LIMITS OF PROTRUDING OBJECTS

**11B-307.3.1 Edges and corners.** Where signs or other objects are mounted on posts or pylons, and their bottom edges are less than 80 inches (2032 mm) above the floor or ground surface, the edges of such signs and objects shall be rounded or eased and the corners shall have a minimum radius of  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).

**11B-307.4 Vertical clearance.** Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2032 mm) high minimum. Guardrails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2032 mm) high. The leading edge of such guardrail or barrier shall be located 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

**Exception:** Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-307.4.1 Guy braces.** Where a guy support is used within either the width of a circulation path or 24 inches (610 mm) maximum outside of a circulation path, a vertical guy brace, sidewalk guy or similar device shall be used to prevent a hazard or an overhead obstruction.

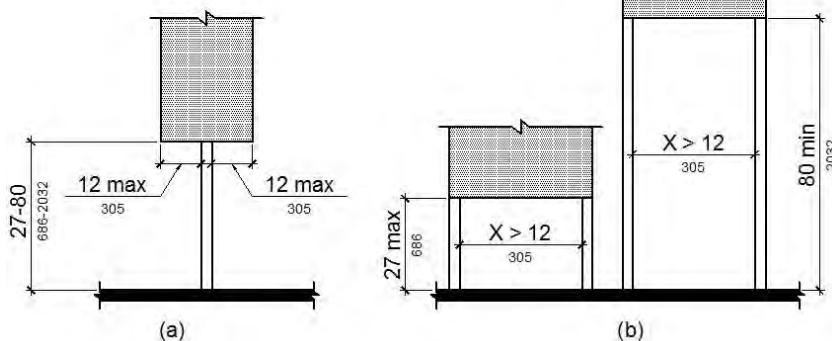
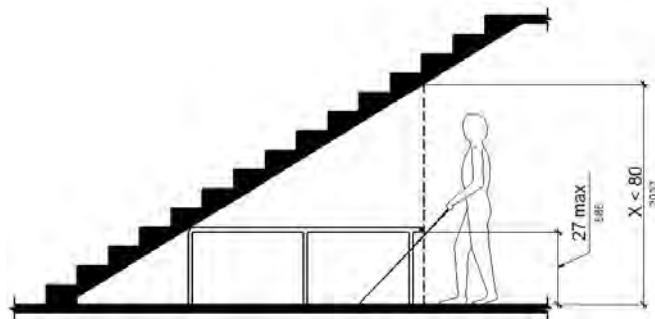
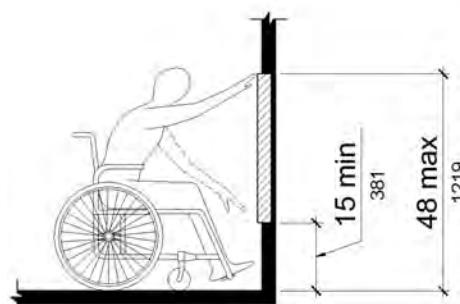


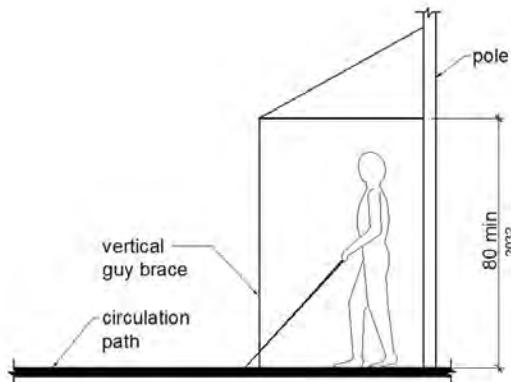
FIGURE 11B-307.3  
POST-MOUNTED PROTRUDING OBJECTS



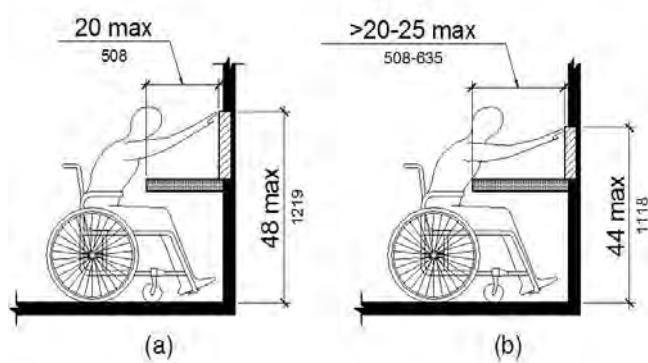
**FIGURE 11B-307.4  
VERTICAL CLEARANCE**



**FIGURE 11B-308.2.1  
UNOBSTRUCTED FORWARD REACH**



**FIGURE 11B-307.4.1  
GUY BRACES**



**FIGURE 11B-308.2.2  
OBSTRUCTED HIGH FORWARD REACH**

**11B-307.5 Required clear width.** Protruding objects shall not reduce the clear width required for accessible routes.

### 11B-308 Reach ranges

**11B-308.1 General.** Reach ranges shall comply with *Section 11B-308*.

**11B-308.1.1 Electrical switches.** Controls and switches intended to be used by the occupant of a room or area to control lighting and receptacle outlets, appliances or cooling, heating and ventilating equipment, shall comply with *Section 11B-308* except the low reach shall be measured to the bottom of the outlet box and the high reach shall be measured to the top of the outlet box.

**11B-308.1.2 Electrical receptacle outlets.** Electrical receptacle outlets on branch circuits of 30 amperes or less and communication system receptacles shall comply with *Section 11B-308* except the low reach shall be measured to the bottom of the outlet box and the high reach shall be measured to the top of the outlet box.

### 11B-308.2 Forward reach.

**11B-308.2.1 Unobstructed.** Where a forward reach is unobstructed, the high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum and the low forward reach shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-308.2.2 Obstructed high reach.** Where a high forward reach is over an obstruction, the clear floor space shall extend beneath the element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction. The high forward reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum where the reach depth is 20 inches (508 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 20 inches (508 mm), the high forward reach shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum and the reach depth shall be 25 inches (635 mm) maximum.

### 11B-308.3 Side reach.

**11B-308.3.1 Unobstructed.** Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the side reach is unobstructed, the high side reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum and the low side reach shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

#### Exceptions:

1. An obstruction shall be permitted between the clear floor or ground space and the element where the depth of the obstruction is 10 inches (254 mm) maximum.
2. Operable parts of fuel dispensers shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the vehicular way where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs.

**11B-308.3.2 Obstructed high reach.** Where a clear floor or ground space allows a parallel approach to an element and the high side reach is over an obstruction, the height of the obstruction shall be 34 inches (864 mm) maximum and the depth of the obstruction shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. The high side reach shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 10 inches (254 mm) maximum. Where the reach depth exceeds 10 inches (254 mm), the high side reach shall be 46 inches (1168 mm) maximum for a reach depth of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum.

**Exceptions:**

1. The top of washing machines and clothes dryers shall be permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor.
2. Operable parts of fuel dispensers shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum mea-

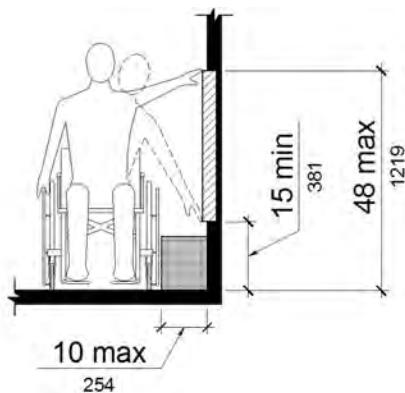


FIGURE 11B-308.3.1  
UNOBSTRUCTED SIDE REACH

sured from the surface of the vehicular way where fuel dispensers are installed on existing curbs.

**11B-308.4 Suggested reach ranges for children.** Where building elements such as coat hooks, lockers or operable parts are designed for use primarily by children, the suggested dimensions of Table 11B-308.4 shall be permitted. These dimensions apply to either forward or side reaches.

TABLE 11B-308.4  
SUGGESTED DIMENSIONS FOR CHILDREN'S USE

SUGGESTED REACH RANGES FOR CHILDREN AGES 3 THROUGH 12			
Forward or Side Reach	Ages 3 and 4	Ages 5 through 8	Ages 9 through 12
High (maximum)	36 inches (914 mm)	40 inches (1016 mm)	44 inches (1118 mm)
Low (minimum)	20 inches (508 mm)	18 inches (457 mm)	16 inches (406 mm)

**11B-309 Operable parts**

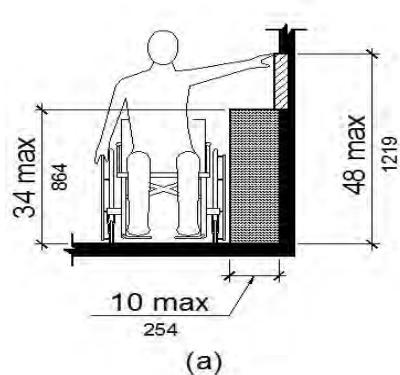
**11B-309.1 General.** Operable parts shall comply with Section 11B-309.

**11B-309.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided.

**11B-309.3 Height.** Operable parts shall be placed within one or more of the reach ranges specified in Section 11B-308.

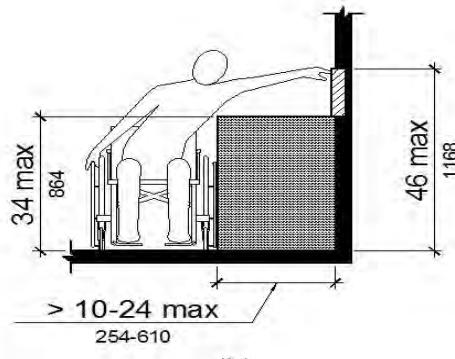
**11B-309.4 Operation.** Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

**Exception:** Gas pump nozzles and electric vehicle connectors shall not be required to provide operable parts that have an activating force of 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.



(a)

FIGURE 11B-308.3.2  
OBSTRUCTED HIGH SIDE REACH



(b)

## DIVISION 4: ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

### **11B-401 General**

**11B-401.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 4* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this chapter.

### **11B-402 Accessible routes**

**11B-402.1 General.** Accessible routes shall comply with 11B-402.

**11B-402.2 Components.** Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, doorways, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, elevators and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable requirements of *Division 4*.

### **11B-403 Walking surfaces**

**11B-403.1 General.** Walking surfaces that are a part of an accessible route shall comply with *Section 11B-403*.

**11B-403.2 Floor or ground surface.** Floor or ground surfaces shall comply with *Section 11B-302*.

**11B-403.3 Slope.** The running slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:20. The cross slope of walking surfaces shall not be steeper than 1:48.

**Exception:** The running slope of sidewalks shall not exceed the general grade established for the adjacent street or highway.

**11B-403.4 Changes in level.** Changes in level shall comply with *Section 11B-303*.

**11B-403.5 Clearances.** Walking surfaces shall provide clearances complying with *Section 11B-403.5*.

**Exception:** Within employee work areas, clearances on common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.

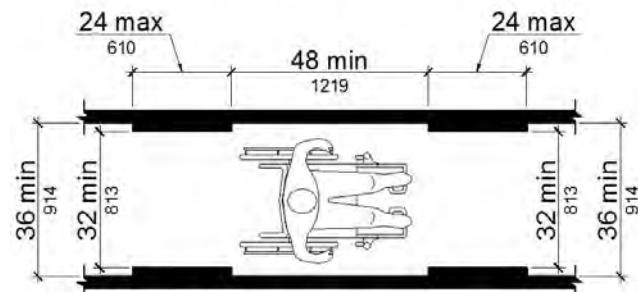
**11B-403.5.1 Clear width.** Except as provided in *Sections 11B-403.5.2* and *11B-403.5.3*, the clear width of walking surfaces shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (813 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum.
2. The clear width for walking surfaces in corridors serving an occupant load of 10 or more shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum.
3. The clear width for sidewalks and walks shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum. When, because of right-of-way restrictions, natural barriers or other existing conditions, the enforcing agency

determines that compliance with the 48-inch (1219 mm) clear sidewalk width would create an unreasonable hardship, the clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm).

4. The clear width for aisles shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum if serving elements on only one side, and 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum if serving elements on both sides.
5. The clear width for accessible routes to accessible toilet compartments shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) except for door-opening widths and door swings.



**FIGURE 11B-403.5.1  
CLEAR WIDTH OF AN ACCESSIBLE ROUTE**

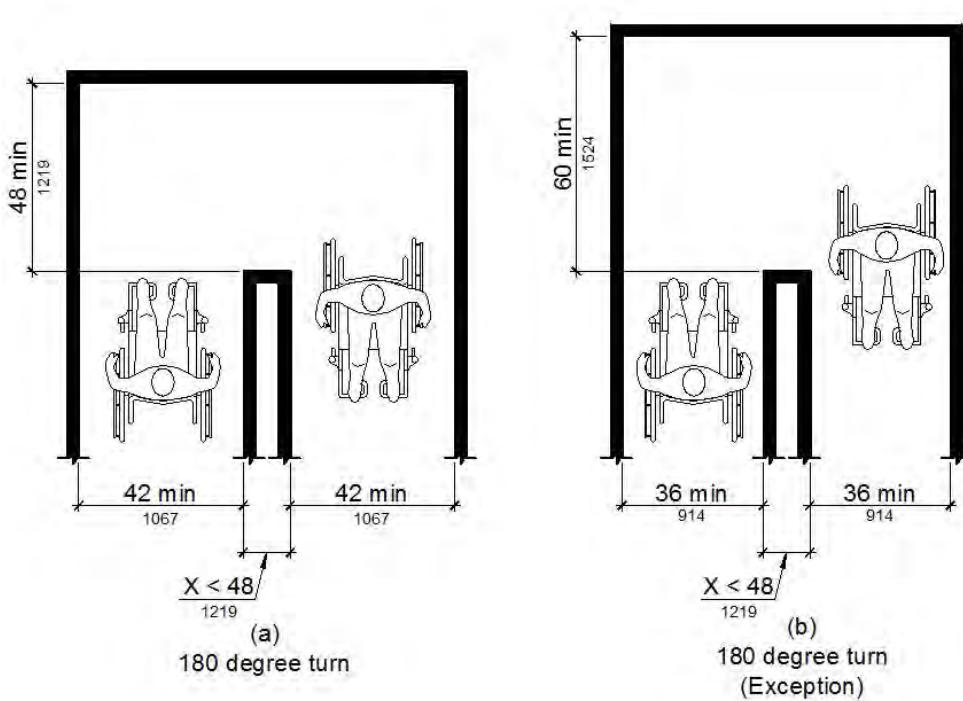
**11B-403.5.2 Clear width at turn.** Where the accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an element which is less than 48 inches (1219 mm) wide, clear width shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum at the turn and 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum leaving the turn.

**Exception:** Where the clear width at the turn is 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum compliance with *Section 11B-403.5.2* shall not be required.

**11B-403.5.3 Passing spaces.** An accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1524 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (60,960 mm) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either: a space 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum; or, an intersection of two walking surfaces providing a T-shaped space complying with *Section 11B-304.3.2* where the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.

**11B-403.6 Handrails.** Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with running slopes not steeper than 1:20 they shall comply with *Section 11B-505*.

**11B-403.7 Continuous gradient.** All walks with continuous gradients shall have resting areas, 60 inches (1524 mm) in length, at intervals of 400 feet (121,920 mm) maximum. The resting area shall be at least as wide as the walk. The slope of the resting area in all directions shall be 1:48 maximum.



**FIGURE 11B-403.5.2**  
**CLEAR WIDTH AT TURN**

## **11B-404 Doors, doorways and gates**

**11B-404.1 General.** Doors, doorways and gates that are part of an accessible route shall comply with *Section 11B-404*.

### *Exceptions:*

1. Doors, doorways and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with Sections 11B-404.2.7, 11B-404.2.8, 11B-404.2.9, 11B-404.3.2 and 11B-404.3.4 through 11B-404.3.7. A sign visible from the approach side complying with Section 11B-703.5 shall be posted stating "Entry restricted and controlled by security personnel".
  2. At detention and correctional facilities, doors, doorways and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with Sections 11B-404.2.7, 11B-404.2.8, 11B-404.2.9, 11B-404.3.2 and 11B-404.3.4 through 11B-404.3.7.

**11B-404.2 Manual doors, doorways and manual gates.** Manual doors and doorways and manual gates intended for user passage shall comply with *Section 11B-404.2*.

**11B-404.2.1 Revolving doors, gates and turnstiles.** Revolving doors, revolving gates and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.

**11B-404.2.2 Double-leaf doors and gates.** At least one of the active leaves of doorways with two leaves shall comply with Sections 11B-404.2.3 and 11B-404.2.4.

**11B-404.2.3 Clear width.** Door openings shall provide a clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) minimum. Clear openings of doorways with swinging doors shall be measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees. Openings more than 24 inches (610 mm) deep shall provide a clear opening of 36 inches (914 mm) minimum. There shall be no projections into the required clear opening width lower than 34 inches (864 mm) above the finish floor or ground. Projections into the clear opening width between 34 inches (864 mm) and 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finish floor or ground shall not exceed 4 inches (102 mm).

## Exceptions:

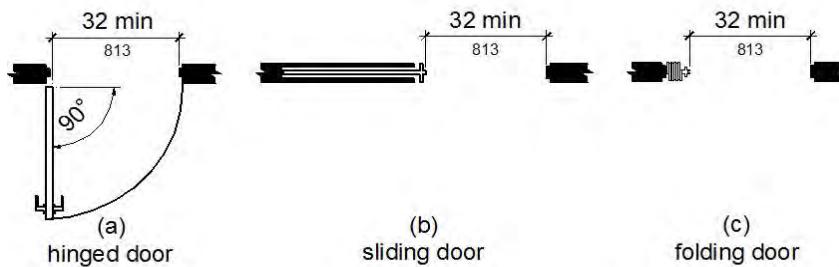
1. In alterations, a projection of  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) maximum into the required clear width shall be permitted for the latch side stop.
  2. Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-404.2.4 Maneuvering clearances.** Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors and gates shall comply with Section 11B-404.2.4. Maneuvering clearances shall extend the full width of the doorway and the required latch side or hinge side clearance.

### **Exception: *Reserved*.**

**11B-404.2.4.1 Swinging doors and gates.** Swinging doors and gates shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 11B-404.2.4.1.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

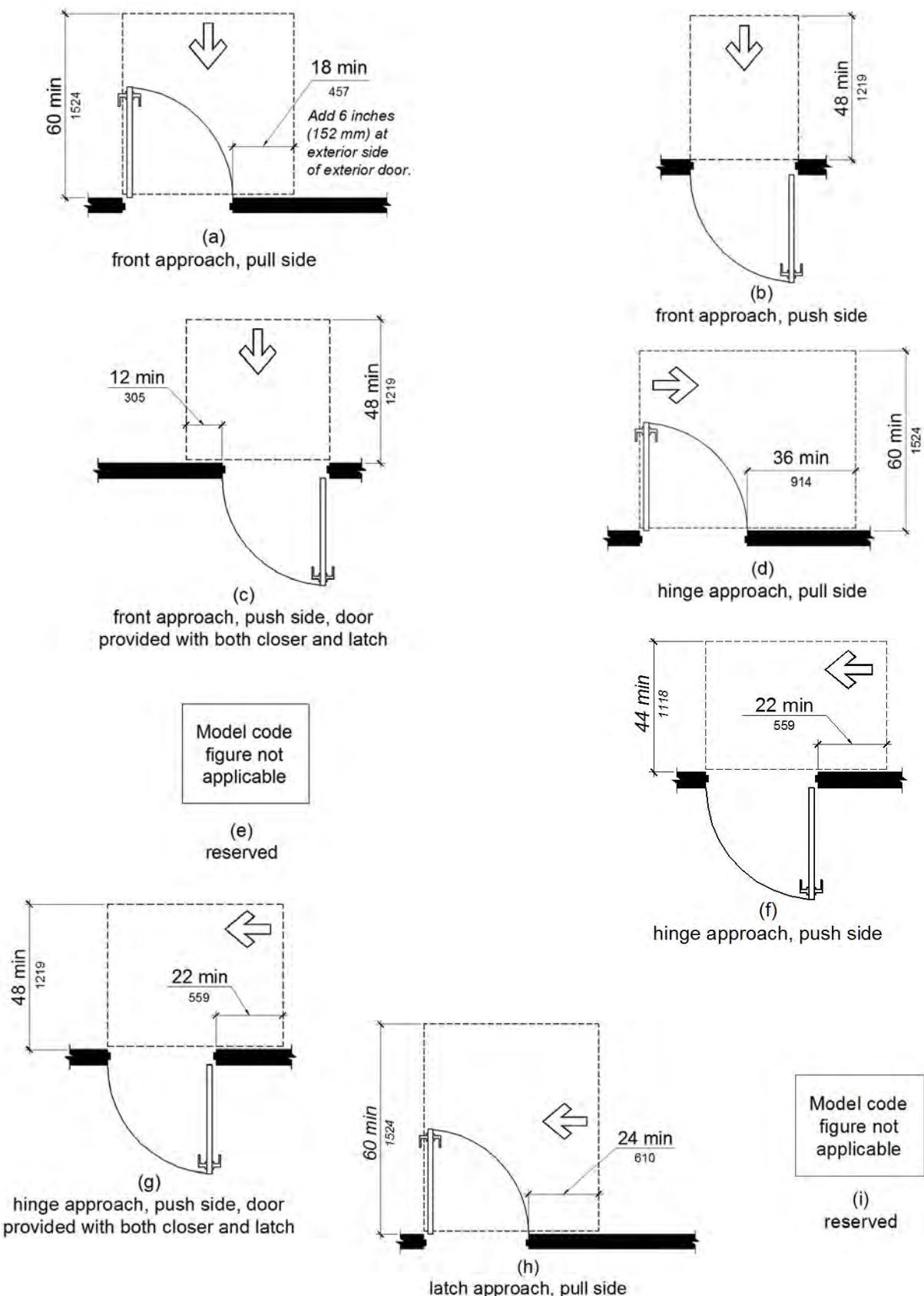


**FIGURE 11B-404.2.3  
CLEAR WIDTH OF DOORWAYS**

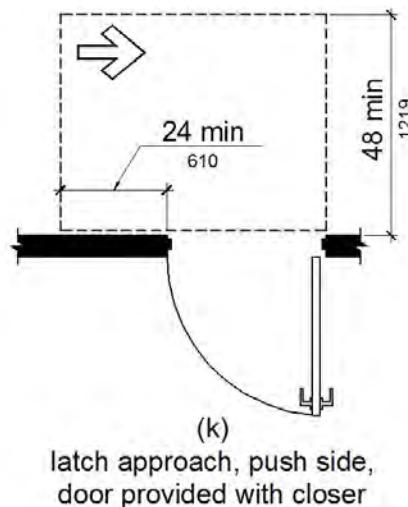
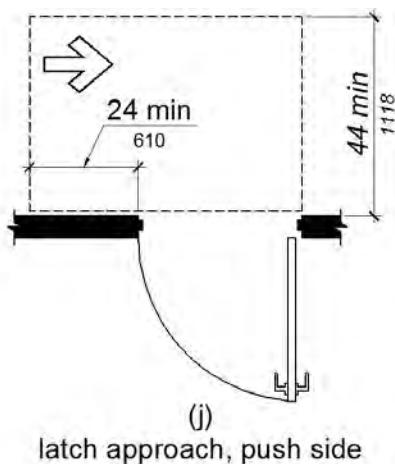
**TABLE 11B-404.2.4.1  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT MANUAL SWINGING DOORS AND GATES**

TYPE OF USE		MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCE	
Approach direction	Door or gate side	Perpendicular to doorway	Parallel to doorway (beyond latch side unless noted)
From front	Pull	60 inches (1524 mm)	18 inches (457 mm) <sup>5</sup>
From front	Push	48 inches (1219 mm)	0 inches (0 mm) <sup>1</sup>
From hinge side	Pull	60 inches (1524 mm)	36 inches (914 mm)
From hinge side	Push	44 inches (1118 mm) <sup>2</sup>	22 inches (559 mm) <sup>3</sup>
From latch side	Pull	60 inches (1524 mm)	24 inches (610 mm)
From latch side	Push	44 inches (1118 mm) <sup>4</sup>	24 inches (610 mm)

1. Add 12 inches (305 mm) if closer and latch are provided.
2. Add 4 inches (102 mm) if closer and latch are provided.
3. Beyond hinge side.
4. Add 4 inches (102 mm) if closer is provided.
5. Add 6 inches (152 mm) at exterior side of exterior doors.



**FIGURE 11B-404.2.4.1**  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT MANUAL SWINGING DOORS AND GATES



**FIGURE 11B-404.2.4.1—continued  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT MANUAL SWINGING DOORS AND GATES**

**11B-404.2.4.2 Doorways without doors or gates, sliding doors and folding doors.** Doorways less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide without doors or gates, sliding doors or folding doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 11B-404.2.4.2.

**11B-404.2.4.3 Recessed doors and gates.** Maneuvering clearances for forward approach shall be provided when any obstruction within 18 inches (457 mm) of the latch side at *an interior doorway, or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the latch side of an exterior doorway*, projects more than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond the face of the door, measured perpendicular to the face of the door or gate.

**11B-404.2.4.4 Floor or ground surface.** Floor or ground surface within required maneuvering clearances shall comply with Section 11B-302. Changes in level, *slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.*

**Exceptions:**

1. Reserved.
2. Changes in level at thresholds complying with Section 11B-404.2.5 shall be permitted.

**11B-404.2.5 Thresholds.** Thresholds, if provided at doorways, shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high maximum. Raised thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with Sections 11B-302 and 11B-303.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-404.2.6 Doors in series and gates in series.** The distance between two hinged or pivoted doors in series and gates in series shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum plus the width of doors or gates swinging into the space.

**11B-404.2.7 Door and gate hardware.** Handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operable parts on doors and gates shall comply with Section 11B-309.4. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.

**Exceptions:**

1. Existing locks shall be permitted in any location at existing glazed doors without stiles, existing overhead rolling doors or grilles and similar existing doors or grilles that are designed with locks that are activated only at the top or bottom rail.
2. Access gates in barrier walls and fences protecting pools, spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to have operable parts of the release of latch on self-latching devices at 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground provided the self-latching devices are not also self-locking devices and operated by means of a key, electronic opener or integral combination lock.

**11B-404.2.8 Closing speed.** Door and gate closing speed shall comply with Section 11B-404.2.8.

**11B-404.2.8.1 Door closers and gate closers.** Door closers and gate closers shall be adjusted so that from an open position of 90 degrees, the time required to move the door to a position of 12 degrees from the latch is 5 seconds minimum.

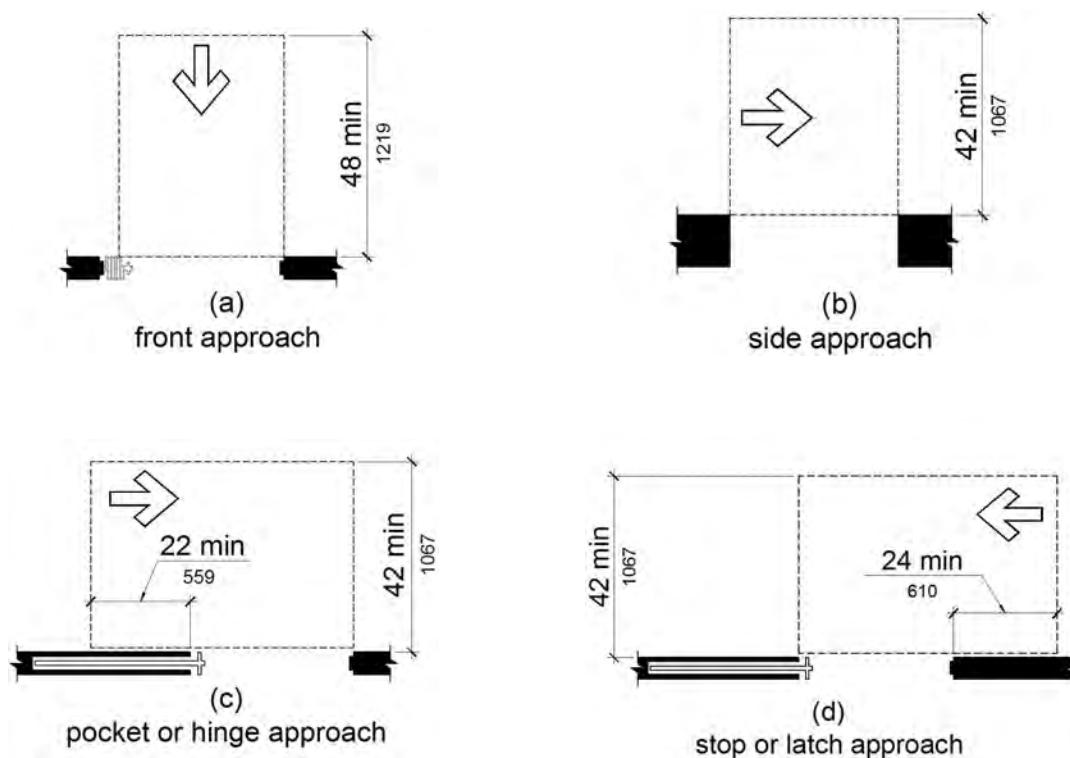
**11B-404.2.8.2 Spring hinges.** Door and gate spring hinges shall be adjusted so that from the open position of 70 degrees, the door or gate shall move to the closed position in 1.5 seconds minimum.

**TABLE 11B-404.2.4.2**  
**MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT DOORWAYS WITHOUT DOORS OR**  
**GATES, MANUAL SLIDING DOORS and MANUAL FOLDING DOORS**

Approach direction	MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCE	
	Perpendicular to doorway	Parallel to doorway (beyond stop/latch side unless noted)
From front	48 inches (1219 mm)	0 inches (0 mm)
From side <sup>1</sup>	42 inches (1067 mm)	0 inches (0 mm)
From pocket/hinge side	42 inches (1067 mm)	22 inches (559 mm) <sup>2</sup>
From stop/latch side	42 inches (1067 mm)	24 inches (610 mm)

1. Doorway with no door only.

2. Beyond pocket/hinge side.



**FIGURE 11B-404.2.4.2**  
**MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT DOORWAYS WITHOUT DOORS, SLIDING DOORS, GATES and FOLDING DOORS**

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

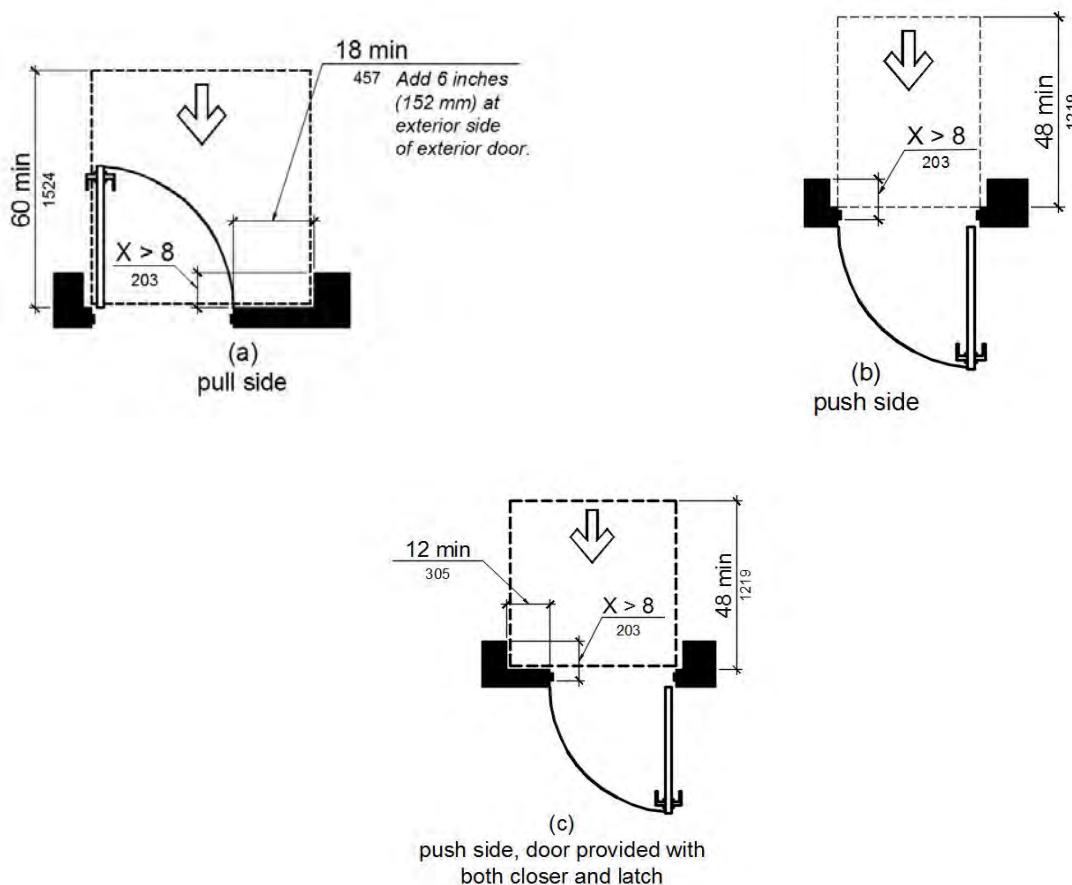


FIGURE 11B-404.2.4.3  
MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT RECESSED DOORS AND GATES

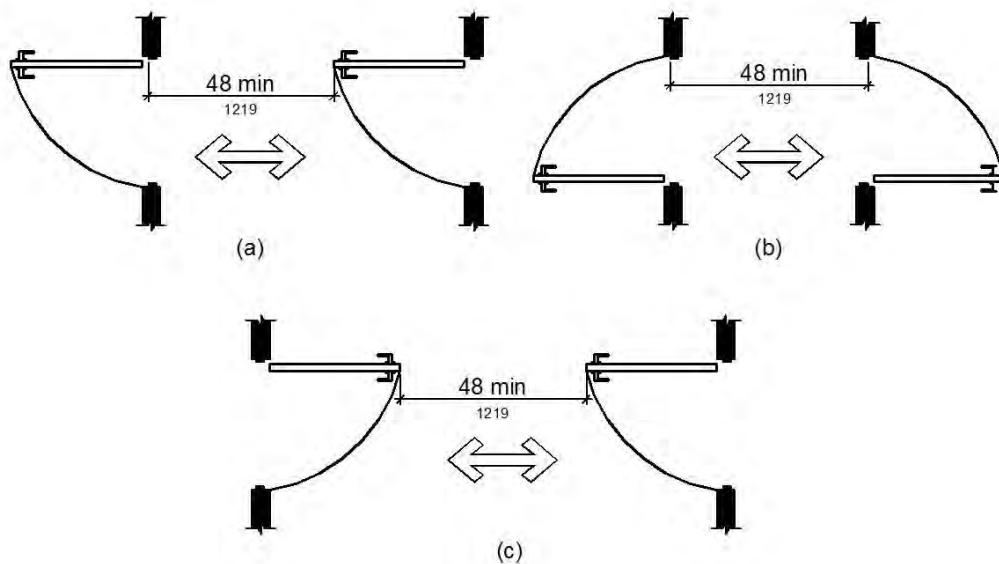


FIGURE 11B-404.2.6  
DOORS IN SERIES AND GATES IN SERIES

**11B-404.2.9 Door and gate opening force.** The force for pushing or pulling open a door or gate shall be as follows:

1. Interior hinged doors and gates: 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.
2. Sliding or folding doors: 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.
3. *Required fire doors: the minimum opening force allowable by the appropriate administrative authority, not to exceed 15 pounds (66.7 N).*
4. *Exterior hinged doors: 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.*

These forces do not apply to the force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door or gate in a closed position.

**Exception:** When, at a single location, one of every eight exterior door leafs, or fraction of eight, is a powered door, other exterior doors at the same location, serving the same interior space, may have a maximum opening force of 8.5 pounds (37.8 N). The powered leaf(s) shall be located closest to the accessible route.

- a. Powered doors shall comply with Section 11B-404.3. Powered doors shall be fully automatic doors complying with Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association (BHMA) A156.10 or low energy operated doors complying with BHMA A156.19.
- b. Powered doors serving a building or facility with an occupancy of 150 or more shall be provided with a back-up battery or back-up generator. The back-up power source shall be able to cycle the door a minimum of 100 cycles.
- c. Powered doors shall be controlled on both the interior and exterior sides of the doors by sensing devices, push plates, vertical actuation bars or other similar operating devices complying with Section 11B-309.

*At each location where push plates are provided there shall be two push plates; the centerline of one push plate shall be 7 inches (178 mm) minimum and 8 inches (203 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface and the centerline of the second push plate shall be 30 inches (762 mm) minimum and 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface. Each push plate shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) diameter or a minimum of 4 inches by 4 inches (102 mm by 102 mm) square and shall display the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.*

*At each location where vertical actuation bars are provided the operable portion shall be located so the bottom is 5 inches (127 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface and the top is 35 inches (889 mm) minimum above the floor or ground surface. The operable portion of each vertical actuation bar shall be a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) wide and shall display the*

*International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.*

*Where push plates, vertical actuation bars or other similar operating devices are provided, they shall be placed in a conspicuous location. A level and clear floor or ground space for forward or parallel approach complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided, centered on the operating device. Doors shall not swing into the required clear floor or ground space.*

- d. Signs identifying the accessible entrance required by Section 11B-216.6 shall be placed on, or immediately adjacent to, each powered door. Signs shall be provided in compliance with BHMA A156.10 or BHMA A156.19, as applicable.
- e. In addition to the requirements of Item d, where a powered door is provided in buildings or facilities containing assembly occupancies of 300 or more, a sign displaying the International Symbol of Accessibility measuring 6 inches by 6 inches (152 mm by 152 mm), complying with Section 11B-703.7, shall be provided above the door on both the interior and exterior sides of each powered door.

**11B-404.2.10 Door and gate surfaces.** Swinging door and gate surfaces within 10 inches (254 mm) of the finish floor or ground measured vertically shall have a smooth surface on the push side extending the full width of the door or gate. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in these surfaces shall be within  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other and be free of sharp or abrasive edges. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.

#### Exceptions:

1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404.2.10.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at 60 degrees minimum from the horizontal shall not be required to meet the 10 inch (254 mm) bottom smooth surface height requirement.
3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (254 mm) of the finish floor or ground shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404.2.10.

#### 4. Reserved.

**11B-404.2.11 Vision lights.** Doors, gates and side lights adjacent to doors or gates, containing one or more glazing panels that permit viewing through the panels shall have the bottom of at least one glazed panel located 43 inches (1092 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**Exception:** Glazing panels with the lowest part more than 66 inches (1676 mm) from the finish floor or ground shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-404.2.11.

**11B-404.3 Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates.** Automatic doors and automatic gates shall comply with Sec-

*tion 11B-404.3.* Full-powered automatic doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.10. Low-energy and power-assisted doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

**11B-404.3.1 Clear width.** Doorways shall provide a clear opening of 32 inches (813 mm) minimum in power-on and power-off mode. The minimum clear width for automatic door systems in a doorway *shall provide a clear, unobstructed opening of 32 inches (813 mm) with one leaf positioned at an angle of 90 degrees from its closed position.*

**11B-404.3.2 Maneuvering clearance.** Clearances at power-assisted doors and gates shall comply with *Section 11B-404.2.4.* Clearances at automatic doors and gates without standby power and serving an accessible means of egress shall comply with *Section 11B-404.2.4.*

**Exception:** Where automatic doors and gates remain open in the power-off condition, compliance with *Section 11B-404.2.4* shall not be required.

**11B-404.3.3 Thresholds.** Thresholds and changes in level at doorways shall comply with *Section 11B-404.2.5.*

**11B-404.3.4 Doors in series and gates in series.** Doors in series and gates in series shall comply with *Section 11B-404.2.6.*

**11B-404.3.5 Controls.** Manually operated controls shall comply with *Section 11B-309.* The clear floor space adjacent to the control shall be located beyond the arc of the door swing.

**11B-404.3.6 Break out opening.** Where doors and gates without standby power are a part of a means of egress, the clear break out opening at swinging or sliding doors and gates shall be 32 inches (813 mm) minimum when operated in emergency mode.

**Exception:** Where manual swinging doors and gates comply with *Section 11B-404.2* and serve the same means of egress compliance with *Section 11B-404.3.6* shall not be required.

**11B-404.3.7 Revolving doors, revolving gates and turnstiles.** Revolving doors, revolving gates and turnstiles shall not be part of an accessible route.

## 11B-405 Ramps

**11B-405.1 General.** Ramps on accessible routes shall comply with *Section 11B-405.*

**Exception:** In assembly areas, aisle ramps adjacent to seating and not serving elements required to be on an accessible route shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-405.*

**11B-405.2 Slope.** Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-405.3 Cross slope.** Cross slope of ramp runs shall not be steeper than 1:48.

**11B-405.4 Floor or ground surfaces.** Floor or ground surfaces of ramp runs shall comply with *Section 11B-302.* Changes in level other than the running slope and cross slope are not permitted on ramp runs.

**11B-405.5 Clear width.** The clear width of a ramp run *shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum.*

### Exceptions:

1. Within employee work areas, the required clear width of ramps that are a part of common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.
2. Handrails may project into the required clear width of the ramp at each side  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) maximum at the handrail height.
3. The clear width of ramps in residential uses serving an occupant load of fifty or less shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum between handrails.

**11B-405.6 Rise.** The rise for any ramp run shall be 30 inches (762 mm) maximum.

**11B-405.7 Landings.** Ramps shall have landings at the top and the bottom of each ramp run. Landings shall comply with *Section 11B-405.7.*

**11B-405.7.1 Slope.** Landings shall comply with *Section 11B-302.* Changes in level, *slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.*

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-405.7.2 Width.** The landing clear width shall be at least as wide as the widest ramp run leading to the landing.

**11B-405.7.2.1: Top landings shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum.**

**11B-405.7.3 Length.** The landing clear length shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) long minimum.

**11B-405.7.3.1: Bottom landings shall extend 72 inches (1829 mm) minimum in the direction of ramp run.**

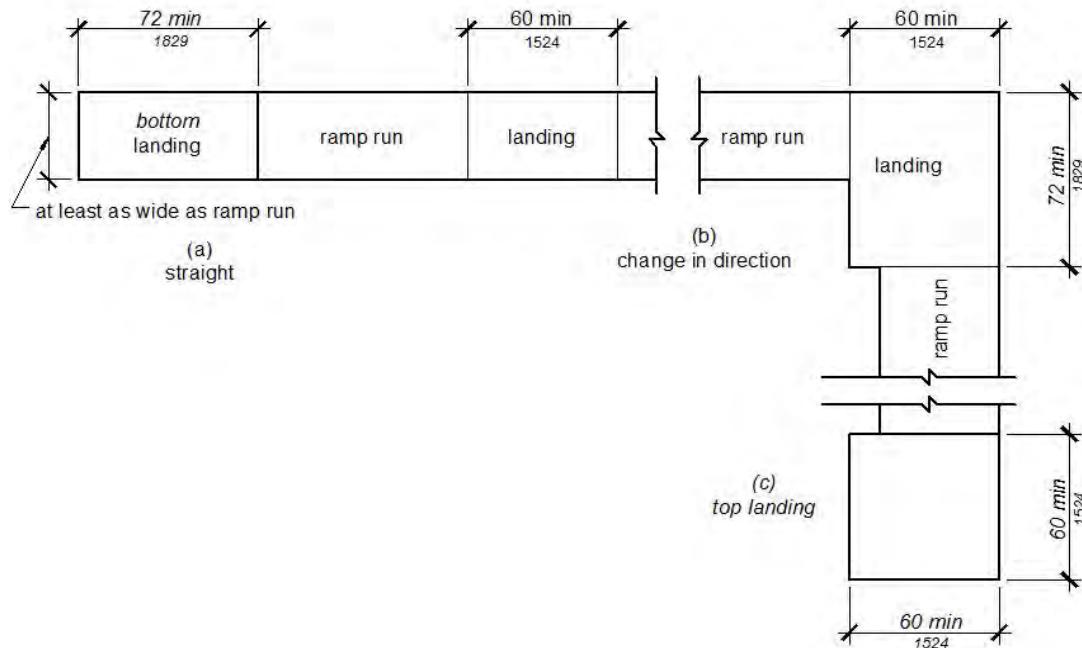
**11B-405.7.4 Change in direction.** Ramps that change direction between runs at landings shall have a clear landing 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum by 72 inches (1829 mm) minimum in the direction of downward travel from the upper ramp run.

**11B-405.7.5 Doorways.** Where doorways are located adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by *Sections 11B-404.2.4 and 11B-404.3.2* shall be permitted to overlap the required landing area. *Doors, when fully open, shall not reduce the required ramp landing width by more than 3 inches (76 mm). Doors, in any position, shall not reduce the minimum dimension of the ramp landing to less than 42 inches (1067 mm).*

**11B-405.8 Handrails.** Ramp runs shall have handrails complying with *Section 11B-505.*

### Exceptions:

1. **Reserved.**
2. **Reserved.**
3. **Curb ramps do not require handrails.**
4. **At door landings, handrails are not required on ramp runs less than 6 inches (152 mm) in rise or 72 inches (1829 mm) in length.**



**FIGURE 11B-405.7  
RAMPS LANDINGS**

**11B-405.9 Edge protection.** Edge protection complying with Section 11B-405.9.2 shall be provided on each side of ramp runs and at each side of ramp landings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Edge protection shall not be required on ramps that are not required to have handrails and have sides complying with Section 11B-406.2.2.
2. Edge protection shall not be required on the sides of ramp landings serving an adjoining ramp run or stairway.
3. Edge protection shall not be required on the sides of ramp landings having a vertical drop-off of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) maximum within 10 inches (254 mm) horizontally of the minimum landing area specified in Section 11B-405.7.

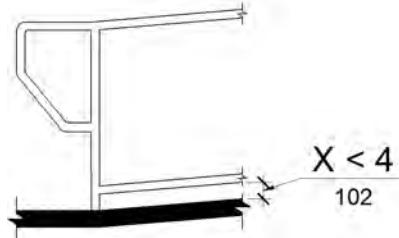
**11B-405.9.1 Reserved.**

**11B-405.9.2 Curb or barrier.** A curb or barrier shall be provided that prevents the passage of a 4-inch (102 mm) diameter sphere, where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (102 mm) of the finish floor or ground surface. To prevent wheel entrapment, the curb or barrier shall provide a continuous and uninterrupted barrier along the length of the ramp.

**11B-405.10 Wet conditions.** Landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.

**11B-406 Curb ramps, blended transitions and islands**

**11B-406.1 General.** Curb ramps, blended transitions and islands on accessible routes shall comply with Section 11B-406. Curb ramps may be perpendicular, parallel, or a combination of perpendicular and parallel.



**FIGURE 11B-405.9.2  
CURB OR BARRIER EDGE PROTECTION**

**11B-406.1.1 Perpendicular curb ramps.** Perpendicular curb ramps shall comply with Section 11B-406.2.

**11B-406.1.2 Parallel curb ramps.** Parallel curb ramps shall comply with Section 11B-406.3.

**11B-406.1.3 Blended transitions.** Blended transitions shall comply with Section 11B-406.4.

**11B-406.1.4 Islands.** Islands shall comply with Section 11B-406.6.

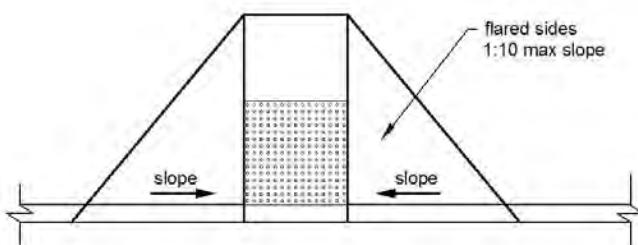
**11B-406.2 Perpendicular curb ramps.** Perpendicular curb ramps shall comply with Sections 11B-406.2 and 11B-406.5.

**11B-406.2.1 Slope.** Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.

**11B-406.2.2 Sides of curb ramps.** Where provided, curb ramp flares shall not be steeper than 1:10.

**11B-406.3 Parallel curb ramps.** Parallel curb ramps shall comply with Sections 11B-406.3 and 11B-406.5. A parallel curb ramp may be provided with one sloping segment or two opposing sloping segments.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

FIGURE 11B-406.2.2  
SIDES OF CURB RAMPS

**11B-406.3.1 Slope.** The running slope of the curb ramp segments shall be in-line with the direction of sidewalk travel. Ramp runs shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:12.

**11B-406.3.2 Turning space.** A turning space 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum shall be provided at the bottom of the curb ramp. The slope of the turning space in all directions shall be 1:48 maximum.

**11B-406.4 Blended transitions.** Blended transitions shall comply with Sections 11B-406.4 and 11B-406.5.

**11B-406.4.1 Slope.** Blended transitions shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:20.

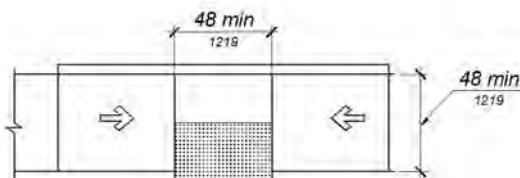
**11B-406.5 Common requirements.** Curb ramps and blended transitions shall comply with Section 11B-406.5.

**11B-406.5.1 Location.** Curb ramps and the flared sides of curb ramps shall be located so that they do not project into vehicular traffic lanes, parking spaces or parking access aisles. Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the markings, excluding any flared sides.

**Exception:** Diagonal curb ramps shall comply with Section 11B-406.5.9.

**11B-406.5.2 Width.** The clear width of curb ramp runs (excluding any flared sides), blended transitions, and turning spaces shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum.

**11B-406.5.3 Landings.** Landings shall be provided at the tops of curb ramps and blended transitions. The landing clear length shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum. The landing clear width shall be at least as wide as the curb ramp, excluding any flared sides, or the blended transition leading to the landing. The slope of the landing in all directions shall be 1:48 maximum.

FIGURE 11B-406.3.2  
PARALLEL CURB RAMPS

**Exception:** Parallel curb ramps shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-406.5.3.

**11B-406.5.4 Floor or ground surfaces.** Floor or ground surfaces of curb ramps and blended transitions shall comply with Section 11B-405.4.

**11B-406.5.5 Wet conditions.** Curb ramps and blended transitions shall comply with Section 11B-405.10.

**11B-406.5.6 Grade breaks.** Grade breaks at the top and bottom of curb ramp runs shall be perpendicular to the direction of the ramp run. Grade breaks shall not be permitted on the surface of ramp runs and turning spaces. Surface slopes that meet at grade breaks shall be flush.

**11B-406.5.7 Cross slope.** The cross slope of curb ramps and blended transitions shall be 1:48 maximum.

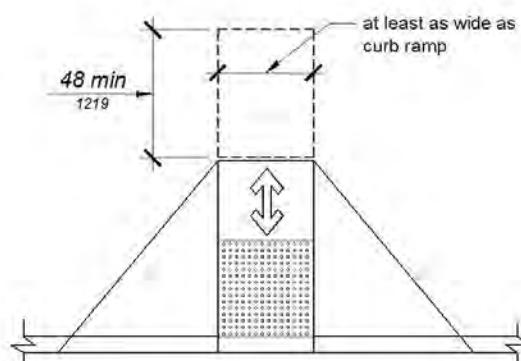
**11B-406.5.8 Counter slope.** Counter slopes of adjoining gutters and road surfaces immediately adjacent to and within 24 inches (610 mm) of the curb ramp shall not be steeper than 1:20. The adjacent surfaces at transitions at curb ramps to walks, gutters and streets shall be at the same level.

**11B-406.5.9 Clear space at diagonal curb ramps.** The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have a clear space 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum outside active traffic lanes of the roadway. Diagonal curb ramps provided at marked crossings shall provide the 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum clear space within the markings.

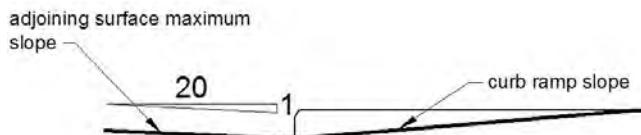
**11B-406.5.10 Diagonal curb ramps.** Diagonal or corner type curb ramps are perpendicular or parallel curb ramps that are oriented diagonally at an intersection. Diagonal or corner type curb ramps with returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall have the edges parallel to the direction of pedestrian flow. Diagonal curb ramps with flared sides shall have a segment of curb 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum located on each side of the curb ramp and within the marked crossing.

**11B-406.5.11 Reserved.**

**11B-406.5.12 Detectable warnings.** Curb ramps and blended transitions shall have detectable warnings complying with Section 11B-705.

FIGURE 11B-406.5.3  
LANDINGS AT THE TOP OF CURB RAMPS

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING



**FIGURE 11B-406.5.8  
COUNTER SLOPE OF SURFACES ADJACENT TO CURB RAMPS**

**11B-406.6 Islands.** Raised islands in crossings shall be cut through level with the street or have curb ramps at both sides. The clear width of the accessible route at islands shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum. Where curb ramps are provided, they shall comply with Section 11B-406. Landings complying with Section 11B-406.5.3 and the accessible route shall be permitted to overlap. Islands shall have detectable warnings complying with Section 11B-705.

### 11B-407 Elevators

**11B-407.1 General.** Elevators shall comply with Section 11B-407 and with ASME A17.1. They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

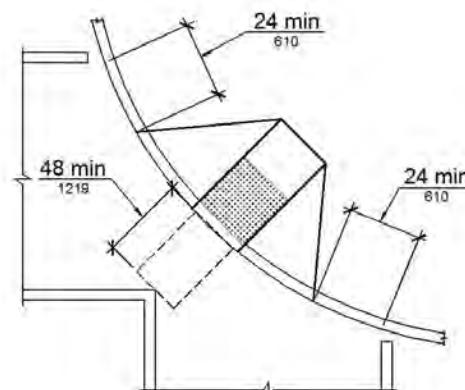
#### 11B-407.1.1 Combined passenger and freight elevators.

When the only elevators provided for use by the public and employees are combination passenger and freight elevators, they shall comply with Section 11B-407 and with ASME A17.1.

**11B-407.2 Elevator landing requirements.** Elevator landings shall comply with Section 11B-407.2.

**11B-407.2.1 Call controls.** Where elevator call buttons or keypads are provided, they shall comply with Sections 11B-407.2.1 and 11B-309.4.

**Exception:** Reserved.



**FIGURE 11B-406.5.10  
DIAGONAL OR CORNER TYPE CURB RAMPS**

**11B-407.2.1.1 Height.** Call buttons and keypads shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 11B-308, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.

**Exception:** Reserved.

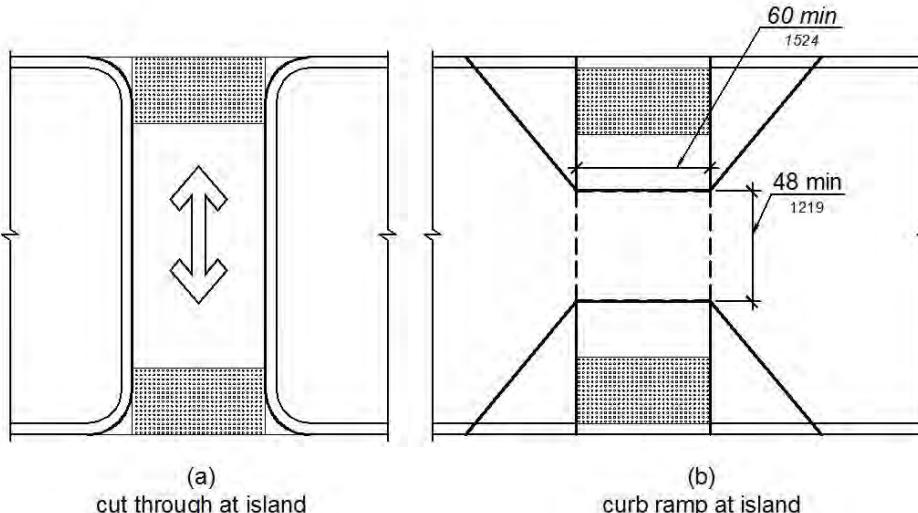
**11B-407.2.1.2 Size and shape.** Call buttons shall have square shoulders, be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension and shall be raised  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface. The buttons shall be activated by a mechanical motion that is detectable.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-407.2.1.3 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided at call controls.

**11B-407.2.1.4 Location.** The call button that designates the up direction shall be located above the call button that designates the down direction.

**Exception:** Reserved.



**FIGURE 11B-406.6  
ISLANDS IN CROSSINGS**

**11B-407.2.1.5 Signals.** Call buttons shall have visible signals that will activate when each call is registered and will extinguish when each call is answered. Call buttons shall be internally illuminated with a white light over the entire surface of the button.

**Exceptions:**

1. Reserved.
2. Reserved.

**11B-407.2.1.6 Keypads.** Where keypads are provided, keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.7.2.

**11B-407.2.2 Hall signals.** Hall signals, including in-car signals, shall comply with Section 11B-407.2.2.

**11B-407.2.2.1 Visible and audible signals.** A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and the car's direction of travel. Where in-car signals are provided, they shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call buttons.

**Exceptions:**

1. Reserved.
2. Reserved.

**11B-407.2.2.2 Visible signals.** Visible signal fixtures shall be centered at 72 inches (1829 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground. The visible signal elements shall be a minimum  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) high by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) wide. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call button.

**Exceptions:**

1. Reserved.
2. Reserved.

**11B-407.2.2.3 Audible signals.** Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction, or shall have verbal annunciators that indicate the direction of elevator car travel. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3000 Hz maximum. The audible signal and verbal annunciator shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the hall call button.

**Exceptions:**

1. Reserved.
2. Reserved.

**11B-407.2.2.4 Reserved**

**11B-407.2.3 Hoistway signs.** Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section 11B-407.2.3.

**11B-407.2.3.1 Floor designation.** Floor designations complying with Sections 11B-703.2 and 11B-703.4.1 shall be provided on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. Floor designations shall be provided in both

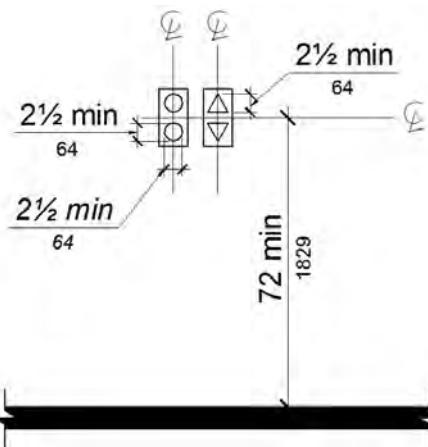


FIGURE 11B-407.2.2.2  
VISIBLE HALL SIGNALS

raised characters and Braille. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high. A raised star, placed to the left of the floor designation, shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level. The outside diameter of the star shall be 2 inches (51 mm) and all points shall be of equal length. Raised characters, including the star, shall be white on a black background. Braille complying with Section 11B-703.3 shall be placed below the corresponding raised characters and the star. The Braille translation for the star shall be "MAIN". Applied plates are acceptable if they are permanently fixed to the jamb.

**11B-407.2.3.2 Reserved**

**11B-407.3 Elevator door requirements.** Hoistway and car doors shall comply with Section 11B-407.3.

**11B-407.3.1 Type.** Elevator doors shall be the horizontal sliding type. Car gates shall be prohibited.

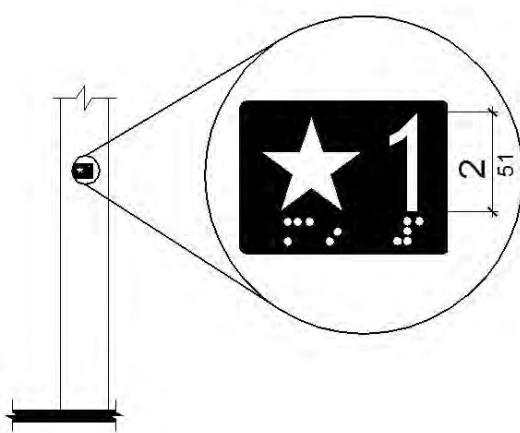
**11B-407.3.2 Operation.** Elevator hoistway and car doors shall open and close automatically.

**Exception:** Existing manually operated hoistway swing doors shall be permitted provided that they comply with Sections 11B-404.2.3 and 11B-404.2.9. Car door closing shall not be initiated until the hoistway door is closed.

**11B-407.3.3 Reopening device.** Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device complying with Section 11B-407.3.3 that shall stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person.

**Exception:** Existing elevators with manually operated doors shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-407.3.3.

**11B-407.3.3.1 Height.** The device shall be activated by sensing an obstruction passing through the opening at 5 inches (127 mm) nominal and 29 inches (737 mm) nominal above the finish floor.

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**


**FIGURE 11B-407.2.3.1  
FLOOR DESIGNATIONS ON JAMBS  
OF ELEVATOR HOISTWAY ENTRANCES**

**11B-407.3.3.2 Contact.** The device shall not require physical contact to be activated, although contact is permitted to occur before the door reverses.

**11B-407.3.3.3 Duration.** Door reopening devices shall remain effective for 20 seconds minimum.

**11B-407.3.4 Door and signal timing.** The minimum acceptable time from notification that a car is answering a call until the doors of that car start to close shall be calculated from the following equation:

$T = D/(1.5 \text{ ft/s})$  or  $T = D/(457 \text{ mm/s}) = 5 \text{ seconds}$  minimum where  $T$  equals the total time in seconds and  $D$  equals the distance (in feet or millimeters) from the point in the lobby or corridor 60 inches (1524 mm) directly in front of the farthest call button controlling that car to the centerline of its hoistway door.

**Exceptions:**

1. For cars with in-car lanterns,  $T$  shall be permitted to begin when the signal is visible from the point 60 inches (1524 mm) directly in front of the farthest hall call button and the audible signal is sounded.

**2. Reserved.**

**11B-407.3.5 Door delay.** Elevator doors shall remain fully open in response to a car call for 5 seconds minimum.

**11B-407.3.6 Width.** The width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 11B-407.4.1.

**Exception:** In existing elevators, a power-operated car door complying with Section 11B-404.2.3 shall be permitted.

**11B-407.4 Elevator car requirements.** Elevator cars shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.

**11B-407.4.1 Car dimensions.** Inside dimensions of elevator cars and clear width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 11B-407.4.1.

**Exception:** In existing buildings, where existing shaft configuration prohibits strict compliance with Section 11B-407.4.1, existing elevator car configurations that provide a clear floor area of 18 square feet ( $1.67 \text{ m}^2$ ) minimum and also provide an inside clear depth 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum and a clear width 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum shall be permitted.

**11B-407.4.2 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with Sections 11B-302 and 11B-303.

**11B-407.4.3 Platform to hoistway clearance.** The clearance between the car platform sill and the edge of any hoistway landing shall be  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch (32 mm) maximum.

**11B-407.4.4 Leveling.** Each car shall be equipped with a self-leveling feature that will automatically bring and maintain the car at floor landings within a tolerance of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

**11B-407.4.5 Illumination.** The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, car threshold and car landing sill shall be 5 foot candles (54 lux) minimum.

**11B-407.4.6 Elevator car controls.** Where provided, elevator car controls shall comply with Sections 11B-407.4.6 and 11B-309.4.

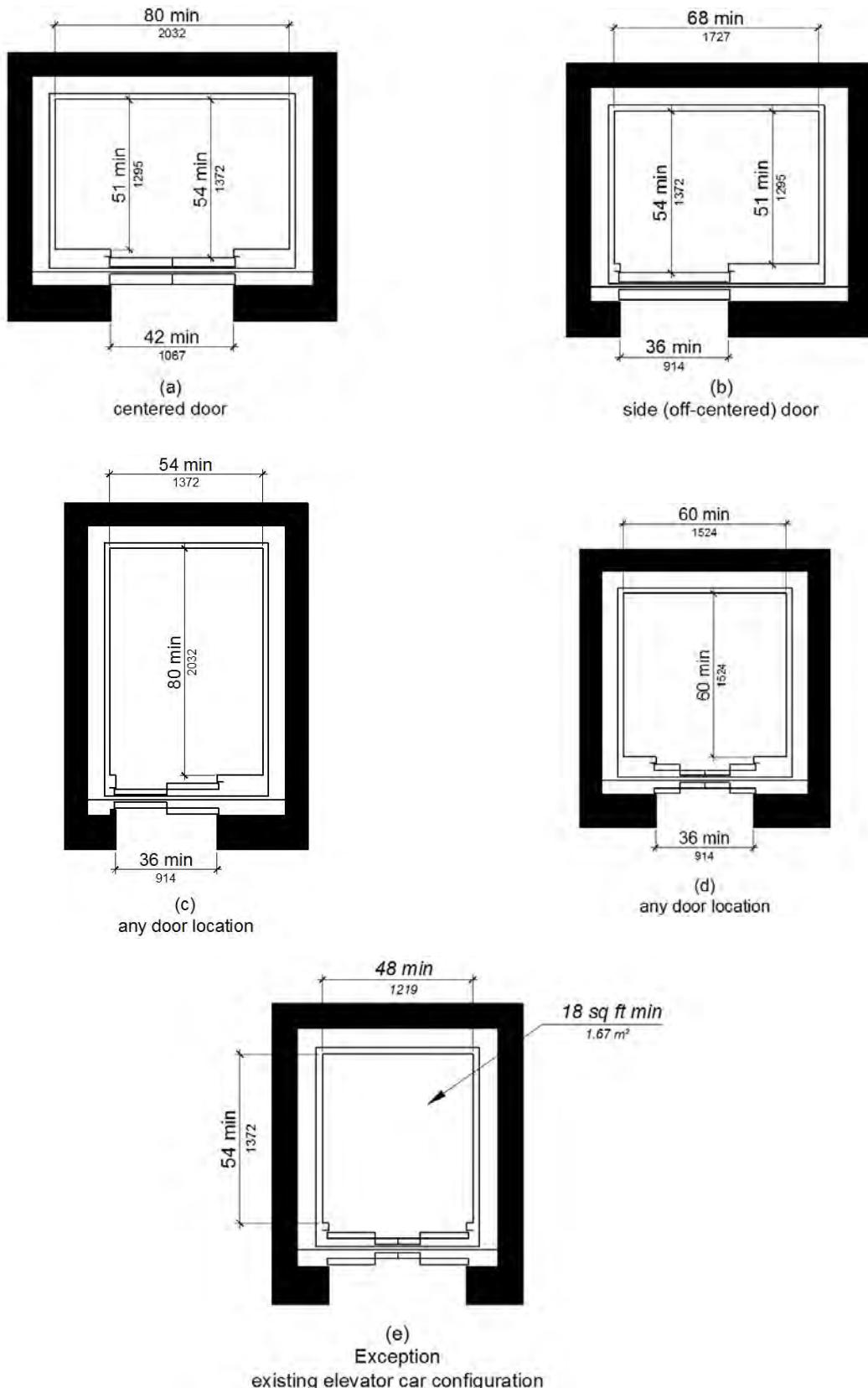
**Exception:** In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with Section 11B-407.4.6 is provided, existing car operating panels *may remain operational and* shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-407.4.6.

**TABLE 11B-407.4.1  
ELEVATOR CAR DIMENSIONS**

Door location	MINIMUM DIMENSIONS			
	Door clear width	Inside car, side to side	Inside car, back wall to front return	Inside car, back wall to inside face of door
Centered	42 inches (1067 mm)	80 inches (2032 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1372 mm)
Side (off-centered)	36 inches (914 mm) <sup>1</sup>	68 inches (1727 mm)	51 inches (1295 mm)	54 inches (1372 mm)
Any	36 inches (914 mm) <sup>1</sup>	54 inches (1372 mm)	80 inches (2032 mm)	80 inches (2032 mm)
Any	36 inches (914 mm) <sup>2</sup>	60 inches (1524 mm) <sup>2</sup>	60 inches (1524 mm) <sup>2</sup>	60 inches (1524 mm) <sup>2</sup>

1. A tolerance of minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) is permitted.

2. Other car configurations that provide a turning space complying with Section 11B-304 with the door closed shall be permitted.



**FIGURE 11B-407.4.1  
ELEVATOR CAR DIMENSIONS**

**11B-407.4.6.1 Location.** Controls shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in *Section 11B-308*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where the elevator panel serves more than 16 openings and a parallel approach is provided, buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor.
2. In existing elevators, car control buttons with floor designations shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor where a parallel approach is provided.

**11B-407.4.6.2 Buttons.** Car control buttons with floor designations shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.6.2*.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-407.4.6.2.1 Size and shape.** Buttons shall have square shoulders, be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension and be raised  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface.

**11B-407.4.6.2.2 Arrangement.** Buttons shall be arranged with numbers in ascending order. When two or more columns of buttons are provided they shall read from left to right.

**11B-407.4.6.2.3 Illumination.** Car control buttons shall be illuminated.

**11B-407.4.6.2.4 Operation.** Car control buttons shall be activated by a mechanical motion that is detectable.

**11B-407.4.6.3 Keypads.** Car control keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement and shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.7.2*.

**11B-407.4.6.4 Emergency controls.** Emergency controls shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.6.4*.

**11B-407.4.6.4.1 Height.** Emergency control buttons shall have their centerlines 35 inches (889 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

**11B-407.4.6.4.2 Location.** Emergency controls, including the emergency alarm, shall be grouped at the bottom of the panel.

**11B-407.4.7 Designations and indicators of car controls.** Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.7*.

**Exception:** In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with *Section 11B-407.4.7* is provided, existing car operating panels *may remain operational and shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-407.4.7*.

**11B-407.4.7.1 Buttons.** Car control buttons shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.7.1*.

**11B-407.4.7.1.1 Type.** Control buttons shall be identified by *raised characters or symbols, white on a black background, complying with Section 11B-703.2 and Braille complying with Section 11B-703.3*.

**11B-407.4.7.1.2 Location.** Raised characters or symbols and Braille designations shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designations apply.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-407.4.7.1.3 Symbols.** The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close, main entry floor and phone, shall be identified with *raised symbols and Braille* as shown in Table 11B-407.4.7.1.3.

**11B-407.4.7.1.4 Visible indicators.** Buttons with floor designations shall be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.

TABLE 11B-407.4.7.1.3  
ELEVATOR CONTROL BUTTON IDENTIFICATION

Control Button	Raised Symbol	Braille Message
Emergency Stop		"ST"OP Three Cells
Alarm		AL"AR"M Four Cells
Door Open		OP"EN" Three Cells
Door Close		CLOSE Five Cells
Main Entry Floor		MA"IN" Three Cells
Phone		PH"ONE" Four Cells

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-407.4.7.1.5 Button spacing.** A minimum clear space of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) or other suitable means of separation shall be provided between rows of control buttons.

**11B-407.4.7.2 Keypads.** Keypads shall be identified by characters complying with *Section 11B-703.5* and shall be centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall be 0.118 inch (3 mm) to 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) base diameter and in other aspects comply with *Table 11B-703.3.1*.

**11B-407.4.8 Car position indicators.** Audible and visible car position indicators shall be provided in elevator cars.

**11B-407.4.8.1 Visible indicators.** Visible indicators shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.8.1*.

**11B-407.4.8.1.1 Size.** Characters shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high minimum.

**11B-407.4.8.1.2 Location.** Indicators shall be located above the car control panel or above the door.

**11B-407.4.8.1.3 Floor arrival.** As the car passes a floor and when a car stops at a floor served by the elevator, the corresponding character shall illuminate.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-407.4.8.1.4 Reserved.**

**11B-407.4.8.2 Audible indicators.** Audible indicators shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.8.2*.

**11B-407.4.8.2.1 Signal type.** The signal shall be an automatic verbal annunciation which announces the floor at which the car is about to stop.

**Exception:** For elevators that have a rated speed of 200 feet per minute (1 m/s) or less, a non-verbal audible signal with a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum which sounds as the car passes or is about to stop at a floor served by the elevator shall be permitted.

**11B-407.4.8.2.2 Signal level.** The verbal annunciation shall be 10 dB minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured at the annunciation.

**11B-407.4.8.2.3 Frequency.** The verbal annunciation shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum to 3000 Hz maximum.

**11B-407.4.9 Emergency communication.** Emergency two-way communication systems shall comply with *Section 11B-308*. Raised symbols or characters, white on a black background and Braille shall be provided adjacent to the device and shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.2 and 11B-703.3*. Emergency two-way communication systems between the elevator and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with ASME A17.1.

**11B-407.4.10 Support rail.** Support rails shall be provided on at least one wall of the car.

**11B-407.4.10.1 Location.** Clearance between support rails and adjacent surfaces shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum. Top of support rails shall be 31 inches (787 mm) minimum to 33 inches (838 mm) maximum above

the floor of the car. The ends of the support rail shall be 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.

**11B-407.4.10.2 Surfaces.** Support rails shall be smooth and any surface adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements.

**11B-407.4.10.3 Structural strength.** Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the support rail, fastener, mounting device or supporting structure.

### 11B-408 Limited-use/limited-application elevators

**11B-408.1 General.** Limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with *Section 11B-408* and with ASME A17.1. They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

**11B-408.2 Elevator landings.** Landings serving limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with *Section 11B-408.2*.

**11B-408.2.1 Call buttons.** Elevator call buttons and keypads shall comply with *Section 11B-407.2.1*.

**11B-408.2.2 Hall signals.** Hall signals shall comply with *Section 11B-407.2.2*.

**11B-408.2.3 Hoistway signs.** Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with *Section 11B-407.2.3.1*.

**11B-408.3 Elevator doors.** Elevator hoistway doors shall comply with *Section 11B-408.3*.

**11B-408.3.1 Sliding doors.** Sliding hoistway and car doors shall comply with *Sections 11B-407.3.1 through 11B-407.3.3 and 11B-408.4.1*.

**11B-408.3.2 Swinging doors.** Swinging hoistway doors shall open and close automatically and shall comply with *Sections 11B-404, 11B-407.3.2 and 11B-408.3.2*.

**11B-408.3.2.1 Power operation.** Swinging doors shall be power-operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

**11B-408.3.2.2 Duration.** Power-operated swinging doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.

**11B-408.4 Elevator cars.** Elevator cars shall comply with *Section 11B-408.4*.

**11B-408.4.1 Car dimensions and doors.** Elevator cars shall provide a clear width 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum and a clear depth 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum. Car doors shall be positioned at the narrow ends of cars and shall provide 32 inches (813 mm) minimum clear width.

**Exceptions:**

1. Cars that provide a clear width 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum shall be permitted to provide a clear depth 51 inches (1295 mm) minimum provided that car doors provide a clear opening 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum.

2. Reserved.

**11B-408.4.2 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with *Sections 11B-302* and *11B-303*.

**11B-408.4.3 Platform to hoistway clearance.** The platform to hoistway clearance shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.3*.

**11B-408.4.4 Leveling.** Elevator car leveling shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.4*.

**11B-408.4.5 Illumination.** Elevator car illumination shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.5*.

**11B-408.4.6 Car controls.** Elevator car controls shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.6*. Control panels shall be centered on a side wall.

**11B-408.4.7 Designations and indicators of car controls.** Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.7*.

**11B-408.4.8 Emergency communications.** Car emergency signaling devices complying with *Section 11B-407.4.9* shall be provided.

#### 11B-409 Private residence elevators

**11B-409.1 General.** Private residence elevators that are provided within a residential dwelling unit required to provide mobility features complying with *Sections 11B-809.2* through *11B-809.4* shall comply with *Section 11B-409* and with ASME A17.1. They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

**11B-409.2 Call buttons.** Call buttons shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension and shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-409.3 Elevator doors.** Hoistway doors, car doors and car gates shall comply with *Sections 11B-409.3* and *11B-404*.

**Exception:** Doors shall not be required to comply with the maneuvering clearance requirements in *Section 11B-404.2.4.1* for approaches to the push side of swinging doors.

**11B-409.3.1 Power operation.** Elevator car and hoistway doors and gates shall be power operated and shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19. Power operated doors and gates shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum when activated.

**Exception:** In elevator cars with more than one opening, hoistway doors and gates shall be permitted to be of the manual-open, self-close type.

**11B-409.3.2 Location.** Elevator car doors or gates shall be positioned at the narrow end of the clear floor spaces required by *Section 11B-409.4.1*.

**11B-409.4 Elevator cars.** Private residence elevator cars shall comply with *Section 11B-409.4*.

**11B-409.4.1 Inside dimensions of elevator cars.** Elevator cars shall provide a clear floor space of 36 inches (914 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum and shall comply with *Section 11B-305*.

**11B-409.4.2 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with *Sections 11B-302* and *11B-303*.

**11B-409.4.3 Platform to hoistway clearance.** The clearance between the car platform and the edge of any landing sill shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch (38 mm) maximum.

**11B-409.4.4 Leveling.** Each car shall automatically stop at a floor landing within a tolerance of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) under rated loading to zero loading conditions.

**11B-409.4.5 Illumination levels.** Elevator car illumination shall comply with *Section 11B-407.4.5*.

**11B-409.4.6 Car controls.** Elevator car control buttons shall comply with *Sections 11B-409.4.6*, *11B-309.3*, *11B-309.4* and shall be raised or flush.

**11B-409.4.6.1 Size.** Control buttons shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) minimum in their smallest dimension.

**11B-409.4.6.2 Location.** Control panels shall be on a side wall, 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from any adjacent wall.

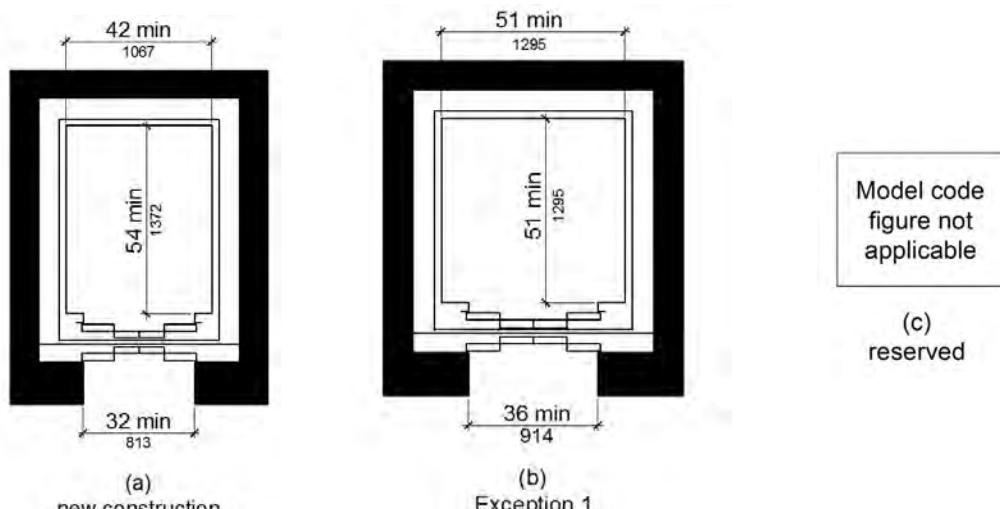


FIGURE 11B-408.4.1  
LIMITED-USE/LIMITED-APPLICATION (LULA) ELEVATOR CAR DIMENSIONS

**11B-409.4.7 Emergency communications.** Emergency two-way communication systems shall comply with *Section 11B-409.4.7*.

**11B-409.4.7.1 Type.** A telephone and emergency signal device shall be provided in the car.

**11B-409.4.7.2 Operable parts.** The telephone and emergency signaling device shall comply with *Sections 11B-309.3* and *11B-309.4*.

**11B-409.4.7.3 Compartment.** If the telephone or device is in a closed compartment, the compartment door hardware shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-409.4.7.4 Cord.** The telephone cord shall be 29 inches (737 mm) long minimum.

#### 11B-410 Platform lifts

**11B-410.1 General.** Platform lifts shall comply with ASME A18.1. Platform lifts shall not be attendant-operated and shall provide unassisted entry and exit from the lift.

**11B-410.2 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces in platform lifts shall comply with *Sections 11B-302* and *11B-303*.

**11B-410.3 Clear floor space.** Clear floor space in platform lifts shall comply with *Section 11B-305*.

**11B-410.4 Platform to runway clearance.** The clearance between the platform sill and the edge of any runway landing shall be  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch (32 mm) maximum.

**11B-410.5 Operable parts.** Controls for platform lifts shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-410.6 Doors and gates.** Platform lifts shall have low-energy power-operated doors or gates complying with *Section 11B-404.3*. Doors shall remain open for 20 seconds minimum. End doors and gates shall provide a clear width 32 inches (813 mm) minimum. Side doors and gates shall provide a clear width 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** Platform lifts serving two landings maximum and having doors or gates on opposite sides shall be permitted to have self-closing manual doors or gates.

**11B-410.7 Landing size.** The minimum size of landings at platform lifts shall be 60 inches by 60 inches (1524 mm by 1524 mm).

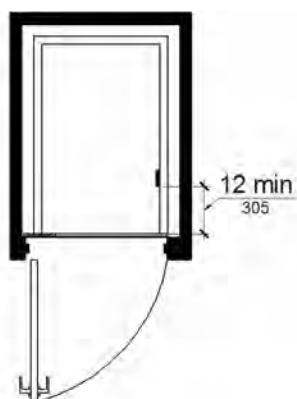


FIGURE 11B-409.4.6.2  
LOCATION OF PRIVATE RESIDENCE  
ELEVATOR CONTROL PANEL

**11B-410.8 Restriction sign.** A sign complying with *Section 11B-703.5* shall be posted in a conspicuous place at each landing and within the platform enclosure stating "No Freight" and include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*.

#### 11B-411 Destination-oriented elevators.

**11B-411.1 General.** Destination-oriented elevators shall comply with *Section 11B-411* and with ASME A17.1. They shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

**11B-411.1.1 Floor designations.** In facilities served by destination-oriented elevator systems, floor designations shall be numeric characters only. Floor designations shall be "one" (1) or "zero" (0) at the main entry level and shall increase by one for each successive higher story or level. The initial floor below the main entry level shall be designated "minus one" (-1) and the designation for each successive lower story or level shall decrease by one. Stories or levels shall not be designated by alphabetic characters.

##### Exceptions:

1. In existing facilities where new elevators are installed or existing elevators are altered into a destination-oriented elevator system, levels within stories, such as mezzanines located above or below the main entry level shall be permitted to be designated with an alphanumeric character such as "M2", indicating "mezzanine" and the "story number", respectively, in which it is located, provided there is no duplication with alpha-numeric designations of elevator cars in the facility.
2. Non-successive floor numbering shall be permitted where a specific floor number is omitted or where a floor is frequented only by service personnel for maintenance, repair or occasional monitoring of equipment.

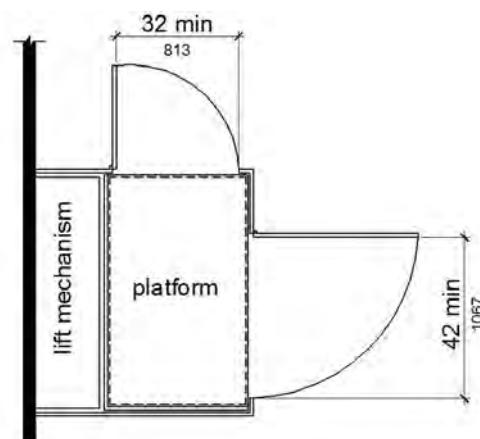


FIGURE 11B-410.6  
PLATFORM LIFT DOORS AND GATES

**11B-411.1.2 Car designations.** Elevator cars shall be designated with a single alphabetic character. For elevators programmed to the same hall call console or group of hall call consoles, each elevator car shall be designated with a different single alphabetic character.

**Exception:** Elevator systems with more than 26 elevators shall be permitted to use alpha-numeric designations such as "A1".

**11B-411.2 Elevator landing requirements.** Elevator landings shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.

**11B-411.2.1 Hall call consoles.** Hall call consoles shall comply with Sections 11B-411.2.1 and 11B-309.

**11B-411.2.1.1 Location.** Hall call consoles shall be wall-mounted. On floors with a building entry, including parking and transfer levels, each hoistway entrance shall be adjacent to a hall call console. On other floors, a minimum of one hoistway entrance shall be adjacent to a hall call console.

**Exception:** Hall call consoles beyond those required by Section 11B-411.2.1.1 shall be permitted to be provided outside the elevator landing and to be wall-mounted, pedestal-mounted or mounted on a kiosk or security turnstile.

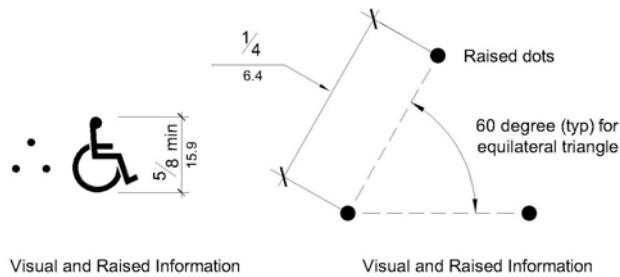
**11B-411.2.1.2 Required features.** Hall call consoles shall include a touch screen or keypad with display screen, an accessibility function button and audio output loudspeaker.

**11B-411.2.1.2.1 Keypads.** Keypads shall be in a 12-key ascending telephone keypad layout. Characters and symbols shall be centered on the corresponding button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall have a base diameter of 0.118 inch (3 mm) minimum and 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) maximum and a height of 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) minimum and 0.037 inch (0.9 mm) maximum. Keypads shall have a star ( $\star$ ) on the lower left button and a minus sign (-) on the lower right button. From any level above and below the main egress level, when the star button is pressed an elevator shall be dispatched to the main egress level.

**11B-411.2.1.2.2 Touch screen.** Touch screen display shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.1.2.4.

**11B-411.2.1.2.3 Accessibility function button.** The accessibility function button shall be identified by the International Symbol of Accessibility and a raised indication. The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Section 11B-703.7.2.1, and shall be  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) minimum in height. The indication shall be three raised dots. Each dot shall have a base diameter of 0.059 inch (1.5 mm) minimum and 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) maximum and a height of 0.025 inch (0.6 mm) minimum and 0.037 inch (0.9 mm) maximum. The dots shall be spaced  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm), measured center to center, in the form of an equilateral triangle with a vertex pointing up. The

accessibility function button shall not be provided with a key repeat function.



**FIGURE 11B-411.2.1.2.3  
DESTINATION-ORIENTED ELEVATOR  
ACCESSIBILITY FUNCTION BUTTON INDICATION**

**11B-411.2.1.2.4 Display screen.** Upon activation of the accessibility function button, the display screen shall display information including but not limited to, operating instructions, user input confirmation, elevator assignment characters, direction to the assigned elevator and error messages. The display screen shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.1.2.4.

**11B-411.2.1.2.4.1 Contrast.** Display screens shall provide contrast with light characters and symbols on a dark background or dark characters and symbols on a light background. The background shall be solid and static.

**11B-411.2.1.2.4.2 Size.** Elevator assignment characters shall be 1 inch high (25 mm) minimum.

**11B-411.2.1.2.4.3 Duration.** Elevator assignment characters shall be displayed for a minimum of 5 seconds.

**11B-411.2.1.2.5 Audio output.** Upon activation of the accessibility function button, the audio output shall provide verbal announcements, including but not limited to, operating instructions, user input confirmation, announcement of the elevator assignment characters, direction to the assigned elevator and error messages. Audio output shall be recorded or digitized human speech, and shall be delivered through a loudspeaker. Auditory volume shall be at least 10 dB above ambient sound level, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured 36 inches (914 mm) in front of the console. At hall call console locations where the ambient sound level varies, auditory volume shall be maintained at the required volume by an automatic gain control or shall be set at not less than 75 dB.

**11B-411.2.1.3 Arrangement.** Hall call console arrangement of required features shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.1.3.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-411.2.1.3.1 Keypad call console arrangement.** Where keypad call consoles are provided, the display screen shall be located directly above the keypad. The accessibility function button shall be located directly below the keypad at a height of 36 inches (914 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the finish floor.

**11B-411.2.1.3.2 Touch screen call console arrangement.** Where touch screen call consoles are provided, the touch screen shall be located directly above the accessibility function button. The accessibility function button shall be located at a height of 36 inches (914 mm) to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the finish floor.

**11B-411.2.1.3.3 Proximity of required elements.** Required features shall be provided on a hall call console assembly or as individual elements grouped in close proximity.

**11B-411.2.1.3.4 Position.** Display screens and touch screens shall be positioned so glare is reduced on the screen. Keypads or buttons shall slope away from the user at 15 to 25 degrees from the vertical plane. Touch screens shall be sloped away from the user at 7 to 25 degrees from the vertical plane.

**11B-411.2.1.4 Additional features.** Hall call console additional features, if provided, shall comply with Sections 11B-309 and 11B-411.2.1.4.

**11B-411.2.1.4.1 Hall call console additional buttons.** Hall call console buttons provided in addition to the accessibility function button and keypad buttons shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.1.4.1. Buttons in addition to the accessibility function button are not permitted on hall call consoles using a touch screen.

**11B-411.2.1.4.1.1 Arrangement.** Buttons shall be arranged in columns to the right of the keypad with a minimum horizontal spacing of 1.5 times the horizontal spacing between the numeric keys and with the same vertical spacing as the numeric keys.

**11B-411.2.1.4.1.2 Identification.** Buttons shall be identified by raised characters and symbols, white on a black background, complying with Section 11B-703.2 and Braille complying with Section 11B-703.3. Identification shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designation applies.

**11B-411.2.1.4.2 Security or access controls.** Security or access control system card readers associated with elevator operation shall be in close proximity to each hall call console in a consistent manner throughout the facility.

**11B-411.2.1.5 Button requirements.** Keypad buttons, the accessibility function button and additional

hall call console buttons shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.1.5.

**11B-411.2.1.5.1 Size.** Buttons shall have square shoulders, be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension and shall be raised  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) plus or minus  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) above the surrounding surface. The buttons shall be activated by a mechanical motion that is detectable.

**11B-411.2.1.5.2 Color.** Characters and symbols on buttons, where provided, shall be white on a black background.

**11B-411.2.1.6 Identification of floors served.** In buildings with two or more elevator banks, each serving a different group of specific floors, hall call consoles located on floors with a building entry, including parking and transfer levels, shall be provided with signs complying with Sections 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5 on the surface of or above the hall call console stating "FLOORS n1 – n2," where n1 – n2 represents the range of floors served. Characters shall be white on a black background. When the accessibility function button is pressed, the audio output shall provide a verbal announcement of the floors served by the elevator group.

**11B-411.2.1.7 Elevator car assignment.** When the accessibility function button is pressed, elevator car assignment shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.1.7.

**11B-411.2.1.7.1 Assignment by keypad hall call console.** The audio output shall provide verbal instruction for the user to enter a destination floor. The selected destination floor shall be confirmed by verbal announcement and on the display screen. Verbal and visible indication of an invalid input shall be provided. The display screen shall indicate the elevator assignment characters and a verbal announcement shall be made of the assigned elevator responding to the call. Visual and verbal direction to the assigned elevator shall be provided.

**11B-411.2.1.7.2 Assignment by touch screen hall call console.** The audio output shall provide verbal instruction for the user to press the accessibility function button as a response to verbal direction in order to select the destination floor. The selected destination floor shall be confirmed by verbal announcement and on the display screen. Verbal and visible indication of an invalid input shall be provided. The display screen shall indicate the elevator assignment characters and a verbal announcement shall be made of the assigned elevator responding to the call. Visual and verbal direction to the assigned elevator shall be provided.

**Exception:** In addition to assignment by Section 11B-411.2.1.7.2, a verbal announcement providing the user with an option to select an alternative mode of operation shall be permit-

*ted. Alternative operation shall be by one of the following options:*

1. *Virtual keypad. The size of the keypad shall be a nominal 4 inches (102 mm) wide by 5 inches (127 mm) high in a 12-key ascending telephone keypad layout centered in the console. Characters and symbols shall be centered on the corresponding button. Keypads shall have a star (☆) on the lower left button and a minus sign (-) on the lower right button. Operation shall be by contact with the touch screen with a press on the key. The audio output shall provide user input confirmation after each key is pressed. Keys shall not be provided with a key repeat function. From any level above and below the main egress level, when the star button is pressed an elevator shall be dispatched to the main egress level.*
2. *Gesture-based mode of operation. Operation shall be by contact with the touch screen, without specific contact with an icon, and using established non-proprietary gestures for selection and input, including but not limited to tapping, sliding and tap-hold contact-release to select. The audio output shall provide verbal direction on use of the touch screen, and indication of floor selection options, until assignment to the elevator is given.*

**11B-411.2.1.7.3 Assignment by security credential.** If a security system or other form of access control system is provided, the audio output shall provide a verbal announcement and direction to the location of the access control activation sensor, such as "present security credential at the sensor immediately to the left". Upon presentation of security credential, the destination floor shall be confirmed by verbal announcement and on the display screen. The display screen shall indicate the elevator assignment characters and a verbal announcement shall be made of the assigned elevator responding to the call. Visual and verbal direction to the assigned elevator shall be provided.

**11B-411.2.1.7.4 Adjacency assignment.** The system shall assign an elevator car immediately to the left or right of the hall call console.

**Exception:** The most adjacent elevator serving the selected floor shall be assigned by hall call consoles located outside the elevator landing.

**11B-411.2.2 Elevator car identification at elevator landings.** Elevator car identification shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.2.

**11B-411.2.2.1 Visible identification.** Above or adjacent to each elevator car entrance there shall be a visible identification fixture with a car designation character. The identification fixture shall be 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground to the bottom of the fixture. The characters on the fixture shall be upper case with a height of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum complying with Sections 11B-703.5.1, 11B-703.5.3, 11B-703.5.4, 11B-703.5.7 and 11B-703.5.8.

**Exception:** Existing buildings shall be permitted to have a visible identification fixture with a car designation character adjacent to each elevator car entrance centered at 72 inches (1829 mm) above the finish floor or ground. The character on the fixture shall be upper case with a height of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) minimum complying with Sections 11B-703.5.1, 11B-703.5.3, 11B-703.5.4, 11B-703.5.7 and 11B-703.5.8.

**11B-411.2.2.2 Verbal identification.** When the accessibility function button is pressed, verbal announcement of the car designation shall be provided at the elevator car entrance upon arrival. Audio output shall be recorded or digitized human speech, and shall be delivered through a loudspeaker. The verbal annunciator shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3000 Hz maximum. Auditory volume shall be at least 10 dB above ambient sound level, but shall not exceed 80 dB, measured 36 inches (914 mm) in front of the elevator entrance and at 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor. At elevator entrances where the ambient sound level varies, auditory volume shall be maintained at the required volume by an automatic gain control or shall be set at not less than 75 dB.

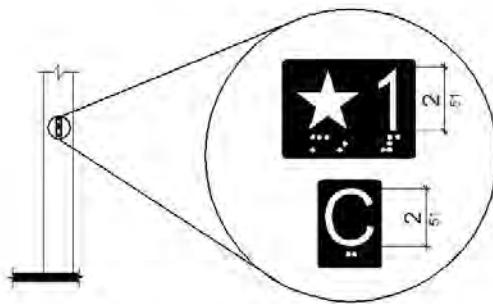
**11B-411.2.3 Signs on jambs of elevator hoistway entrances.** Signs on jambs of elevator hoistway entrances shall comply with Section 11B-411.2.3.

**11B-411.2.3.1 Floor designation signs.** Floor designation signs complying with Sections 11B-703.2 and 11B-703.4.1 shall be provided on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. Signs shall be provided in both raised characters and Braille. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high. A raised star placed to the left of the floor designation, shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level. The outside diameter of the star shall be 2 inches (51 mm) and all points shall be of equal length. Raised characters, including the star, shall be white on a black background. Braille complying with Section 11B-703.3 shall be placed below the corresponding raised characters and the star. The Braille translation for the star shall be "MAIN". Applied plates are acceptable if they are permanently fixed to the jamb.

**11B-411.2.3.2 Car designation signs.** Car designation signs complying with Sections 11B-703.2 and 11B-703.4.1 shall be provided on both jambs of the hoistway immediately below the floor design-

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

nation. Signs shall be provided in both raised characters and Braille. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high. Raised characters shall be white on a black background. Braille complying with Section 11B-703.3 shall be placed below the corresponding raised characters. Applied plates are acceptable if they are permanently fixed to the jamb.



**FIGURE 11B-411.2.3  
FLOOR DESIGNATION AND CAR DESIGNATION SIGNS ON JAMBS OF DESTINATION-ORIENTED ELEVATOR HOISTWAY ENTRANCES**

**11B-411.3 Elevator door requirements.** Hoistway and car doors shall comply with Section 11B-411.3.

**11B-411.3.1 Type.** Elevator door type shall comply with Section 11B-407.3.1.

**11B-411.3.2 Operation.** Elevator hoistway and car doors shall open and close automatically.

**11B-411.3.3 Reopening device.** Elevator doors shall be provided with a reopening device complying with Section 11B-411.3.3 that shall stop and reopen a car door and hoistway door automatically if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person.

**11B-411.3.3.1 Height.** The height of the reopening device shall comply with Section 11B-407.3.3.1.

**11B-411.3.3.2 Contact.** The device contact shall comply with Section 11B-407.3.3.2.

**11B-411.3.3.3 Duration.** The door reopening device duration shall comply with Section 11B-407.3.3.3.

**11B-411.3.4 Door delay.** Door delay shall comply with Section 11B-407.3.5.

**11B-411.3.5 Width.** The width of elevator doors shall comply with Table 11B-407.4.1.

**11B-411.4 Elevator car requirements.** Elevator cars shall comply with Section 11B-411.4.

**11B-411.4.1 Car dimensions.** Inside dimensions of elevator cars and clear width of elevator doors shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.1.

**11B-411.4.2 Floor surfaces.** Floor surfaces in elevator cars shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.2.

**11B-411.4.3 Platform to hoistway clearance.** Platform to hoistway clearance shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.3.

**11B-411.4.4 Leveling.** Elevator car leveling shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.4.

**11B-411.4.5 Illumination.** The level of illumination at the car controls shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.5.

**11B-411.4.6 Elevator car controls.** Where provided, elevator car controls shall comply with Sections 11B-411.4.6 and 11B-309.4.

**11B-411.4.6.1 Location.** Controls shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 11B-308.

**11B-411.4.6.2 Buttons.** Car control buttons shall comply with Sections 11B-407.4.6.2.1 and 11B-407.4.6.2.4. The car shall not have non-functional, exposed floor buttons.

**11B-411.4.6.3 Emergency controls.** Emergency controls shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.6.4.

**11B-411.4.7 Designations and indicators of car control buttons.** Designations and indicators of car control buttons shall comply with Section 11B-411.4.7.

**11B-411.4.7.1 Type.** Control button type shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.7.1.1.

**11B-411.4.7.2 Location.** Raised characters or symbols and Braille designations shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.7.1.2.

**11B-411.4.7.3 Symbols.** The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close and phone shall be identified with raised symbols and Braille as shown in Table 11B-407.4.7.1.3.

**11B-411.4.7.4 Button spacing.** Button spacing shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.7.1.5.

**11B-411.4.8 Car position indicators.** Audible and visible car position indicators shall be provided in elevator cars.

**11B-411.4.8.1 Visible indicators.** Visible indicators shall comply with Section 11B-411.4.8.1.

**11B-411.4.8.1.1 Size.** Characters shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.8.1.1.

**11B-411.4.8.1.2 Location.** Location of indicators shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.8.1.2.

**11B-411.4.8.2 Audible indicators.** Audible indicators shall comply with Section 11B-411.4.8.2.

**11B-411.4.8.2.1 Signal type.** The signal shall be an automatic verbal annunciator which announces the floor at which the car is about to stop.

**11B-411.4.8.2.2 Signal level.** The verbal annunciator signal level shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.8.2.2.

**11B-411.4.8.2.3 Frequency.** The verbal annunciator frequency shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.8.2.3.

**11B-411.4.9 Emergency communication.** Emergency communication shall comply with Section 11B-407.4.9.

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

**11B-411.4.10 Support rail.** Support rails complying with Section 11B-407.4.10 shall be provided on at least one wall of the car.

**11B-411.4.11 Floor destination indicators.** There shall be on each elevator car door jamb a visual display indicating floor destinations.

**11B-411.4.11.1 Height.** Floor destination characters shall be 1 inch (25 mm) high minimum complying with Section 11B-703.5.3.

**11B-411.4.11.2 Contrast.** Visual display shall provide contrast with light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background. The background shall be solid and static.

**11B-411.4.11.3 Duration.** Floor destination characters shall be displayed upon elevator car arrival at the input floor and shall not extinguish until the elevator car arrives at the destination floor.

## DIVISION 5:

### GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS

#### **11B-501 General**

**11B-501.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 5* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this chapter.

#### **11B-502 Parking spaces**

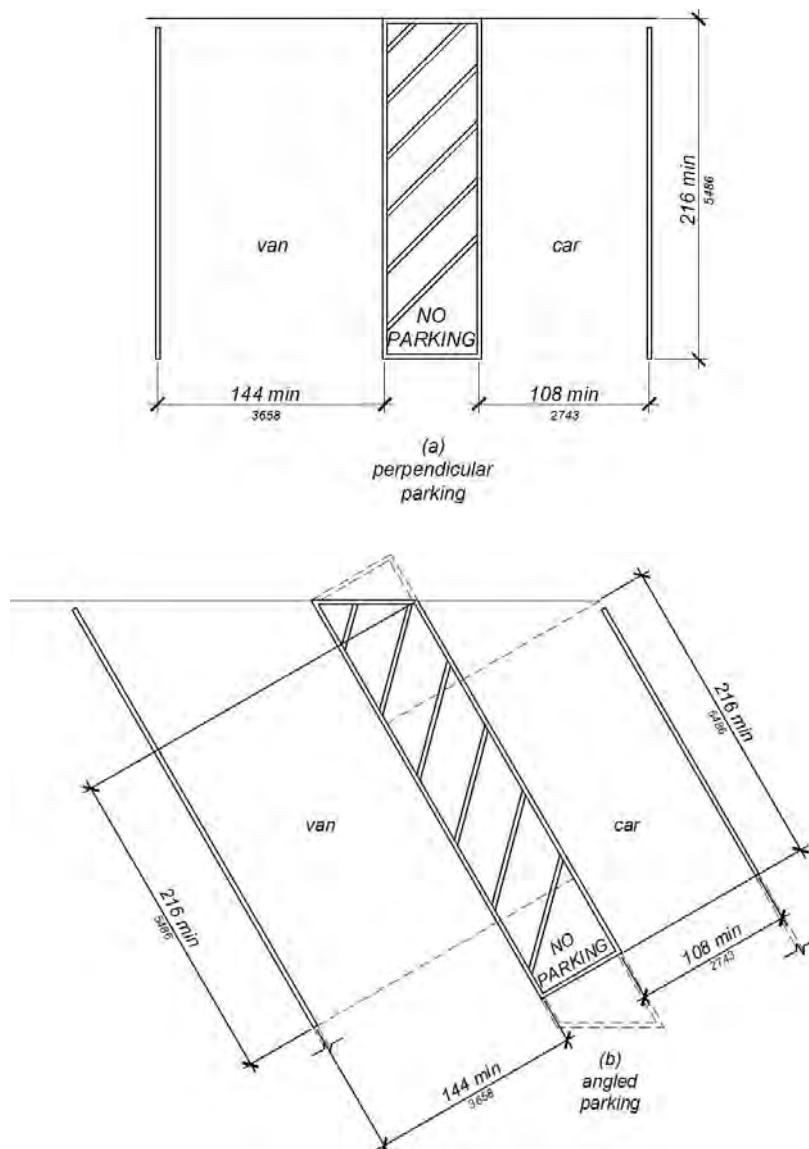
**11B-502.1 General.** Car and van parking spaces shall comply with *Section 11B-502*. Where parking spaces are marked with lines, width measurements of parking spaces and access aisles shall be made from the centerline of the markings.

**Exception:** Where parking spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another parking space or access aisle, measure-

ments shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the parking space or access aisle.

**11B-502.2 Vehicle spaces.** *Car and van parking spaces shall be 216 inches (5486 mm) long minimum.* Car parking spaces shall be 108 inches (2743 mm) wide minimum and van parking spaces shall be 144 inches (3658 mm) wide minimum, shall be marked to define the width, and shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with *Section 11B-502.3*.

**Exception:** Van parking spaces shall be permitted to be 108 inches (2743 mm) wide minimum where the access aisle is 96 inches (2438 mm) wide minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-502.2**  
**VEHICLE PARKING SPACES**

**11B-502.3 Access aisle.** Access aisles serving parking spaces shall comply with Section 11B-502.3. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two parking spaces or one parking space and one electric vehicle charging space shall be permitted to share a common access aisle.

**11B-502.3.1 Width.** Access aisles serving car and van parking spaces shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum.

**11B-502.3.2 Length.** Access aisles shall extend the full required length of the parking spaces they serve.

**11B-502.3.3 Marking.** Access aisles shall be marked with a blue painted borderline around their perimeter. The area within the blue borderlines shall be marked with

hatched lines a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) on center in a color contrasting with that of the aisle surface, preferably blue or white. The words "NO PARKING" shall be painted on the surface within each access aisle in white letters a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) in height and located to be visible from the adjacent vehicular way. Access aisle markings may extend beyond the minimum required length.

**11B-502.3.4 Location.** Access aisles shall not overlap the vehicular way. Access aisles shall be permitted to be placed on either side of the parking space except for van parking spaces which shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking spaces.

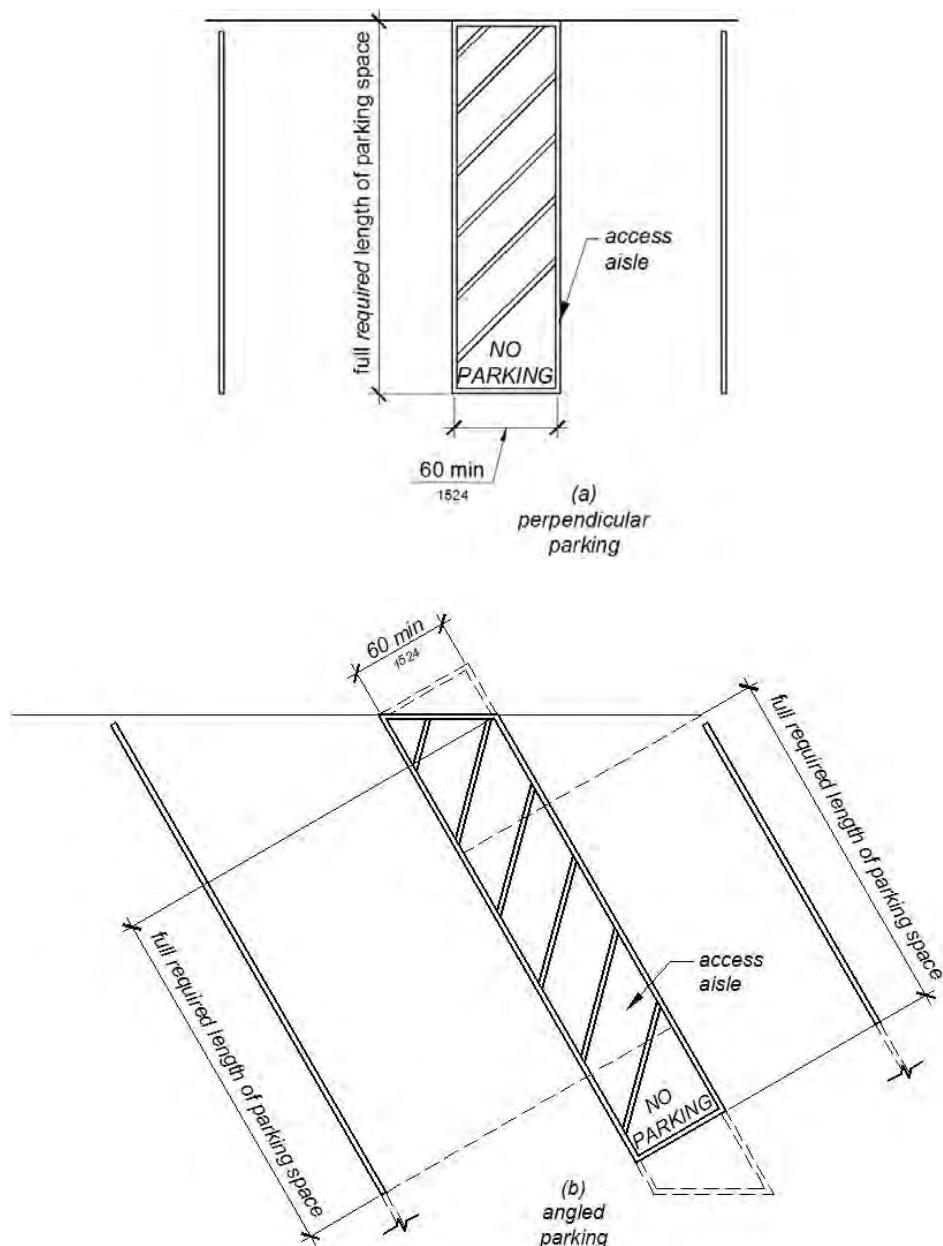
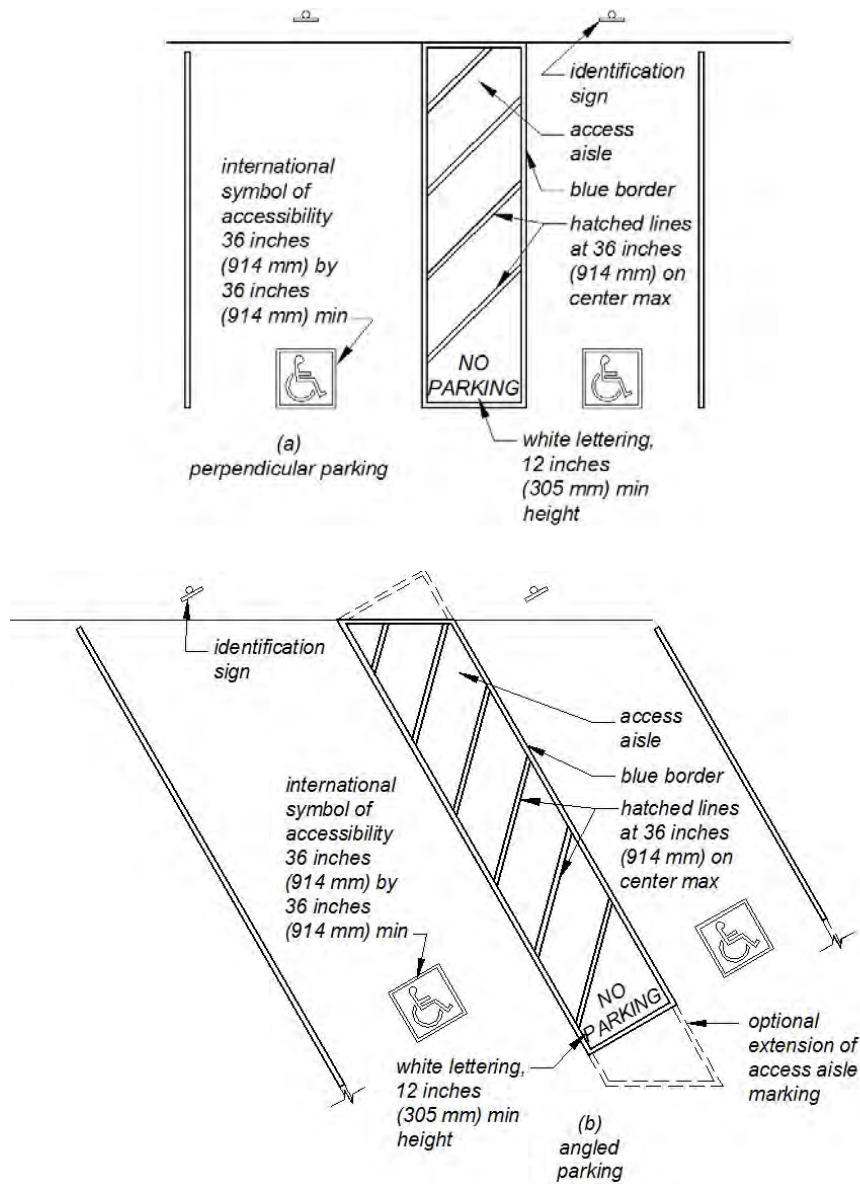


FIGURE 11B-502.3  
PARKING SPACE ACCESS AISLE

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING



**FIGURE 11B-502.3.3  
ANGLED AND PERPENDICULAR PARKING IDENTIFICATION**

**11B-502.4 Floor or ground surfaces.** Parking spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with *Section 11B-302*. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the parking spaces they serve. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-502.5 Vertical clearance.** Parking spaces, access aisles and vehicular routes serving them shall provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches (2489 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** In existing multistory parking facilities, car parking spaces, access aisles and vehicular routes serving them shall provide a vertical clearance of 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum. Existing vertical clearance in excess of 80 inches (2032 mm) and less than 98 inches (2489 mm) shall

be maintained. This exception shall not apply to van parking spaces, access aisles or vehicular routes serving them.

**11B-502.6 Identification.** Parking space identification signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1* in white on a blue background. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain additional language or an additional sign with the designation "van accessible". Signs shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface measured to the bottom of the sign.

**Exception:** Signs located within a circulation path shall be a minimum of 80 inches (2032 mm) above the finish floor or ground surface measured to the bottom of the sign.

**11B-502.6.1 Finish and size.** Parking identification signs shall be reflectorized with a minimum area of 70 square inches (45,161 mm<sup>2</sup>).

**11B-502.6.2 Minimum fine.** Additional language or an additional sign below the International Symbol of Accessibility shall state "Minimum Fine \$250".

**11B-502.6.3 Location.** A parking space identification sign shall be visible from each parking space. Signs shall be permanently posted either immediately adjacent to the parking space or within the projected parking space width at the head end of the parking space. Signs may also be permanently posted on a wall at the interior end of the parking space.

**11B-502.6.4 Marking.** Each accessible car and van space shall have surface identification complying with either Section 11B-502.6.4.1 or 11B-502.6.4.2.

**11B-502.6.4.1** The parking space shall be marked with an International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1 in white on a blue background a minimum 36 inches wide by 36 inches high (914 mm by 914 mm). The centerline of the International Symbol of Accessibility shall be a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) from the centerline of the parking space, its sides parallel to the length of the parking space and its lower corner at, or lower side aligned with, the end of the parking space length.

**11B-502.6.4.2** The parking space shall be outlined in blue or painted blue and shall be marked with an International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1 a minimum 36 inches wide by 36 inches high (914 mm by 914 mm) in white or a suitable contrasting color. The centerline of the International Symbol of Accessibility shall be a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) from the centerline of the parking space, its sides parallel to the length of the parking space and its lower corner at, or lower side aligned with, the end of the parking space.

**11B-502.7 Relationship to accessible routes.** Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that cars and vans, when parked, cannot obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.

**11B-502.7.1 Arrangement.** Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that persons using them are not required to travel behind parking spaces other than to pass behind the parking space in which they parked.

**11B-502.7.2 Wheel stops.** A curb or wheel stop shall be provided if required to prevent encroachment of vehicles over the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.

**11B-502.8 Additional signs.** An additional sign shall be posted either; 1) in a conspicuous place at each entrance to an off-street parking facility or 2) immediately adjacent to on-site accessible parking and visible from each parking space.

**11B-502.8.1 Size.** The additional sign shall not be less than 17 inches (432 mm) wide by 22 inches (559 mm) high.

**11B-502.8.2 Lettering.** The additional sign shall clearly state in letters with a minimum height of 1 inch (25 mm) the following:

"Unauthorized vehicles parked in designated accessible spaces not displaying distinguishing placards or special license plates issued for persons with disabilities will be towed away at the owner's expense. Towed vehicles may be reclaimed at: \_\_\_\_\_ or by telephoning \_\_\_\_\_."

Blank spaces shall be filled in with appropriate information as a permanent part of the sign.

### 11B-503 Passenger drop-off and loading zones

**11B-503.1 General.** Passenger drop-off and loading zones shall comply with Section 11B-503.

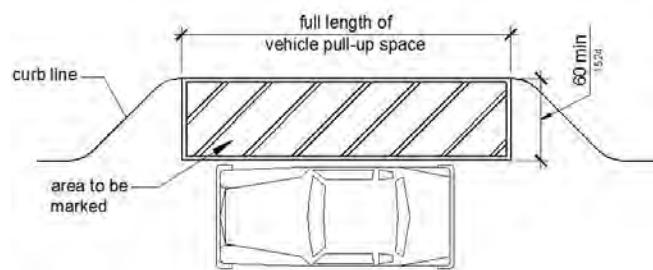
**11B-503.2 Vehicle pull-up space.** Passenger drop-off and loading zones shall provide a vehicular pull-up space 96 inches (2438 mm) wide minimum and 20 feet (6096 mm) long minimum.

**11B-503.3 Access aisle.** Passenger drop-off and loading zones shall provide access aisles complying with Section 11B-503 adjacent and parallel to the vehicle pull-up space. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route and shall not overlap the vehicular way.

**11B-503.3.1 Width.** Access aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum.

**11B-503.3.2 Length.** Access aisles shall extend the full length of the vehicle pull-up spaces they serve.

**11B-503.3.3 Marking.** Access aisles shall be marked with a painted borderline around their perimeter. The area within the borderlines shall be marked with hatched lines a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) on center in a color contrasting with that of the aisle surface.



**FIGURE 11B-503.3  
PASSENGER DROP-OFF AND LOADING ZONE ACCESS AISLE**

**11B-503.4 Floor and ground surfaces.** Vehicle pull-up spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with Section 11B-302. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the vehicle pull-up space they serve. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-503.5 Vertical clearance.** Vehicle pull-up spaces, access aisles serving them and a vehicular route from an entrance to the passenger *drop-off and loading zone* and from the passenger *drop-off and loading zone* to a vehicular exit shall provide a vertical clearance of 114 inches (2896 mm) minimum.

#### 11B-504 Stairways

**11B-504.1 General.** Stairs shall comply with Section 11B-504.

**11B-504.2 Treads and risers.** All steps on a flight of stairs shall have uniform riser heights and uniform tread depths. Risers shall be 4 inches (102 mm) high minimum and 7 inches (178 mm) high maximum. Treads shall be 11 inches (279 mm) deep minimum.

**Exception:** Curved stairways with winder treads are permitted at stairs which are not part of a required means of egress.

**11B-504.3 Open risers.** Open risers are not permitted.

##### Exceptions:

1. On exterior stairways, an opening of not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) may be permitted between the base of the riser and the tread.
2. On exterior stairways, risers constructed of grating containing openings of not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) may be permitted.

**11B-504.4 Tread surface.** Stair treads shall comply with Section 11B-302. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-504.4.1 Contrasting stripe.** Interior stairs shall have the upper approach and lower tread marked by a stripe providing clear visual contrast. Exterior stairs shall have the upper approach and all treads marked by a stripe providing clear visual contrast.

The stripe shall be a minimum of 2 inches (51 mm) wide to a maximum of 4 inches (102 mm) wide placed parallel to, and not more than 1 inch (25 mm) from, the nose of the step or upper approach. The stripe shall extend the full width of the step or upper approach and shall be of material that is at least as slip resistant as the other treads of the stair. A painted stripe shall be acceptable. Grooves shall not be used to satisfy this requirement.

**11B-504.5 Nosings.** The radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) maximum. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled. Risers shall be permitted to slope under the tread at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical. The permitted projection of the nosing shall extend  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) maximum over the tread below.

**Exception:** In existing buildings there is no requirement to retroactively alter existing nosing projections of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) which were constructed in compliance with the building code in effect at the time of original construction.

**11B-504.6 Handrails.** Stairs shall have handrails complying with Section 11B-505.

**11B-504.7 Wet conditions.** Stair treads and landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.

**11B-504.8 Floor identification.** Floor identification signs required by Chapter 10, Section 1023.9 complying with Sections 11B-703.1, 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.5 shall be located at the landing of each floor level, placed adjacent to the door on the latch side, in all enclosed stairways in buildings two or more stories in height to identify the floor level. At the exit discharge level, the sign shall include a raised five pointed star located to the left of the identifying floor level. The outside diameter of the star shall be the same as the height of the raised characters.

#### 11B-505 Handrails

**11B-505.1 General.** Handrails provided along walking surfaces complying with Section 11B-403, required at ramps complying with Section 11B-405, and required at stairs complying with Section 11B-504 shall comply with Section 11B-505.

**11B-505.2 Where required.** Handrails shall be provided on both sides of stairs and ramps.

##### Exceptions:

1. In assembly areas, handrails shall not be required on both sides of aisle ramps where a handrail is provided at either side or within the aisle width.
2. Curb ramps do not require handrails.
3. At door landings, handrails are not required when the ramp run is less than 6 inches (152 mm) in rise or 72 inches (1829 mm) in length.

**11B-505.2.1 Orientation.** The orientation of at least one handrail shall be in the direction of the stair run, perpendicular to the direction of the stair nosing, and shall not reduce the minimum required width of the stair.

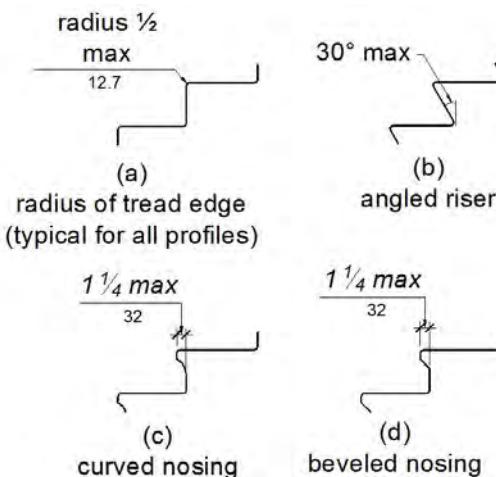


FIGURE 11B-504.5  
STAIR NOSINGS

**11B-505.3 Continuity.** Handrails shall be continuous within the full length of each stair flight or ramp run. Inside handrails on switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps shall be continuous between flights or runs.

**Exception:** In assembly areas, *ramp handrails adjacent to seating or within the aisle width* shall not be required to be continuous in aisles serving seating.

**11B-505.4 Height.** Top of gripping surfaces of handrails shall be 34 inches (864 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum vertically above walking surfaces, stair nosings and ramp surfaces. Handrails shall be at a consistent height above walking surfaces, stair nosings and ramp surfaces.

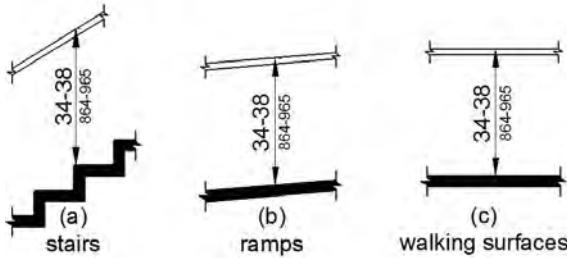


FIGURE 11B-505.4  
HANDBRAIL HEIGHT

**11B-505.5 Clearance.** Clearance between handrail gripping surfaces and adjacent surfaces shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum. *Handrails may be located in a recess if the recess is 3 inches (76 mm) maximum deep and 18 inches (457 mm) minimum clear above the top of the handrail.*

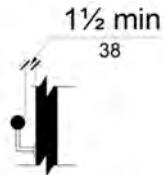


FIGURE 11B-505.5  
HANDBRAIL CLEARANCE

**11B-505.6 Gripping surface.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall be continuous along their length and shall not be obstructed along their tops or sides. The bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall not be obstructed for more than 20 percent of their length. Where provided, horizontal projections shall occur  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum below the bottom of the handrail gripping surface.

#### Exceptions:

- Where handrails are provided along walking surfaces with slopes not steeper than 1:20, the bottoms of handrail gripping surfaces shall be permitted to be obstructed along their entire length where they are integral to crash rails or bumper guards.
- The distance between horizontal projections and the bottom of the gripping surface shall be permitted to be reduced by  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch

(12.7 mm) of additional handrail perimeter dimension that exceeds 4 inches (102 mm).



FIGURE 11B-505.6  
HORIZONTAL PROJECTIONS BELOW GRIPPING SURFACE

**11B-505.7 Cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall have a cross section complying with *Section 11B-505.7.1 or 11B-505.7.2*.

**11B-505.7.1 Circular cross section.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

**11B-505.7.2 Non-circular cross sections.** Handrail gripping surfaces with a non-circular cross section shall have a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and  $6\frac{1}{4}$  inches (159 mm) maximum, and a cross-section dimension of  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches (57 mm) maximum.

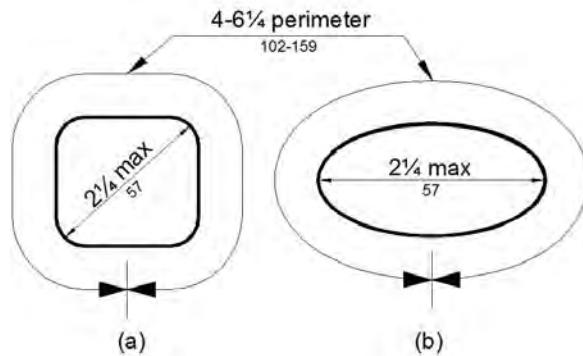


FIGURE 11B-505.7.2  
HANDBRAIL NON-CIRCULAR CROSS SECTION

**11B-505.8 Surfaces.** Handrail gripping surfaces and any surfaces adjacent to them shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.

**11B-505.9 Fittings.** Handrails shall not rotate within their fittings.

**11B-505.10 Handrail extensions.** Handrail gripping surfaces shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with *Section 11B-505.10*.

#### Exceptions:

- Extensions shall not be required for continuous handrails at the inside turn of switchback or dogleg stairs and ramps.
- In assembly areas, extensions shall not be required for ramp handrails in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within aisles.
- In alterations, *where the extension of the handrail in the direction of stair flight or ramp run would create a*

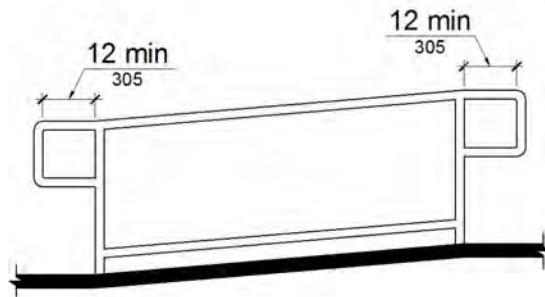
## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

*hazard, the extension of the handrail may be turned 90 degrees from the direction of stair flight or ramp run.*

**11B-505.10.1 Top and bottom extension at ramps.**

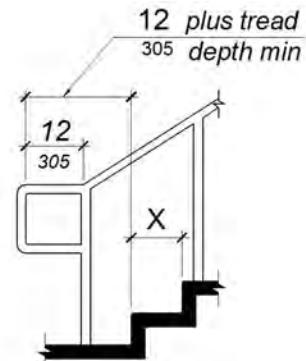
Ramp handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run.

**11B-505.10.2 Top extension at stairs.** At the top of a stair flight, handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beginning directly above the first riser nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

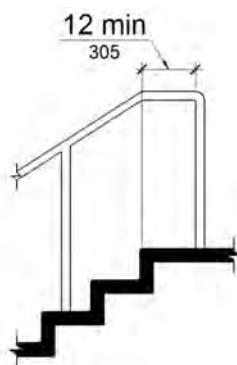


**FIGURE 11B-505.10.1  
TOP AND BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT RAMPS**

*the handrail as measured above the stair nosings. Extension shall return to a wall, guard or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.*



**FIGURE 11B-505.10.3  
BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT STAIRS**



**FIGURE 11B-505.10.2  
TOP HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT STAIRS**

**11B-505.10.3 Bottom extension at stairs.** At the bottom of a stair flight, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a horizontal distance equal to one tread depth beyond the last riser nosing. *The horizontal extension of a handrail shall be 12 inches (305 mm) long minimum and a height equal to that of the sloping portion of*

## DIVISION 6:

# PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES

### **11B-601 General**

**11B-601.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 6* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this chapter.

### **11B-602 Drinking fountains and bottle-filling stations**

**11B-602.1 General.** Drinking fountains shall comply with Sections 11B-307 and 11B-602.

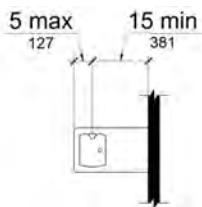
**11B-602.2 Clear floor space.** Units shall have a clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 positioned for a forward approach and centered on the unit. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 11B-306 shall be provided.

**Exception:** A parallel approach complying with Section 11B-305 shall be permitted at units for children's use where the spout is 30 inches (762 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground and is 3½ inches (89 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.

**11B-602.3 Operable parts.** Operable parts shall comply with Section 11B-309. *The flow of water shall be activated by a manually operated system that is front mounted or side mounted and located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the front edge of the fountain or an automatic electronically controlled device.*

**11B-602.4 Spout height.** Spout outlets shall be 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-602.5 Spout location.** The spout shall be located 15 inches (381 mm) minimum from the vertical support and 5 inches (127 mm) maximum from the front edge of the unit, including bumpers.



**FIGURE 11B-602.5**  
**DRINKING FOUNTAIN SPOUT LOCATION**

**11B-602.6 Water flow.** The spout shall provide a flow of water 4 inches (102 mm) high minimum and shall be located 5 inches (127 mm) maximum from the front of the unit. The angle of the water stream shall be measured horizontally relative to the front face of the unit. Where spouts are located less than 3 inches (76 mm) of the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 30 degrees maximum. Where spouts are located between 3 inches (76 mm) and 5 inches (127 mm) maximum from the front of the unit, the angle of the water stream shall be 15 degrees maximum.

**11B-602.7 Drinking fountains for standing persons.** Spout outlets of drinking fountains for standing persons shall be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 43 inches (1092 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-602.8 Depth.** Wall- and post-mounted cantilevered drinking fountains shall be 18 inches (457 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum in depth.

**11B-602.9 Pedestrian protection.** All drinking fountains shall either be located completely within alcoves, positioned completely between wing walls, or otherwise positioned so as not to encroach into pedestrian ways. The protected area within which a drinking fountain is located shall be 32 inches (813 mm) wide minimum and 18 inches (457 mm) deep minimum, and shall comply with Section 11B-305.7. When used, wing walls or barriers shall project horizontally at least as far as the drinking fountain and to within 6 inches (152 mm) vertically from the floor or ground surface.

**11B-602.10 Bottle-filling stations.** Bottle-filling stations shall comply with Sections 11B-307 and 11B-309.

**Exception:** Where bottle-filling stations are provided at a drinking fountain for standing persons, the bottle-filling station is not required to comply with this section provided a bottle-filling station is located at the drinking fountain complying with Sections 11B-602.2 through 11B-602.6.

### **11B-603 Toilet and bathing rooms**

**11B-603.1 General.** Toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Section 11B-603.

**11B-603.2 Clearances.** Clearances shall comply with Section 11B-603.2.

**11B-603.2.1 Turning space.** Turning space complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided within the room.

**11B-603.2.2 Overlap.** Required clear floor spaces, clearance at fixtures and turning space shall be permitted to overlap.

**11B-603.2.3 Door swing.** Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture. *Doors to accessible water closet compartments shall be permitted to encroach into the turning space without limitation. Other than doors to accessible water closet compartments, a door, in any position, shall be permitted to encroach into the turning space by 12 inches (305 mm) maximum.*

#### **Exceptions:**

1. **Reserved.**
2. Where the toilet room or bathing room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, doors shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture.
3. *In residential dwelling units complying with Section 11B-233.3.1.1, doors shall be permitted to swing over the turning space without limitation.*

**11B-603.3 Mirrors.** Mirrors located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1016 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Mirrors not located above lavatories or countertops shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (889 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-603.4 Coat hooks, shelves and medicine cabinets.** Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in *Section 11B-308*. Shelves shall be located 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finish floor. *Medicine cabinets shall be located with a usable shelf no higher than 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum above the finish floor.*

**11B-603.5 Accessories.** Where towel or sanitary napkin dispensers, waste receptacles or other accessories are provided in toilet facilities, at least one of each type shall be located on an accessible route. All operable parts, including coin slots, shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**Exception:** Baby diaper changing stations are not required to comply with *Section 11B-603.5*.

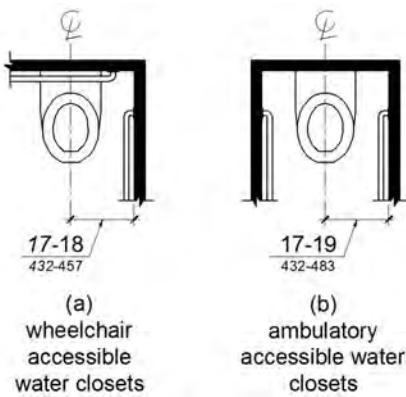
**11B-603.6 Guest room toilet and bathing rooms.** Toilet and bathing rooms within guest rooms that are not required to provide mobility features complying with *Section 11B-806.2* shall provide all toilet and bathing fixtures in a location that allows a person using a wheelchair measuring 30 inches by 48 inches (762 mm by 1219 mm) to touch the wheelchair to any lavatory, urinal, water closet, tub, sauna, shower stall and any other similar sanitary installation, if provided.

### 11B-604 Water closets and toilet compartments

**11B-604.1 General.** Water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with *Sections 11B-604.2* through *11B-604.8*.

**Exception:** Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall be permitted to comply with *Section 11B-604.9*.

**11B-604.2 Location.** The water closet shall be positioned with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum to 18 inches (457 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in *Section 11B-604.8.2*. Water closets shall be arranged for a left-hand or right-hand approach.



**FIGURE 11B-604.2  
WATER CLOSET LOCATION**

**11B-604.3 Clearance.** Clearances around water closets and in toilet compartments shall comply with *Section 11B-604.3*.

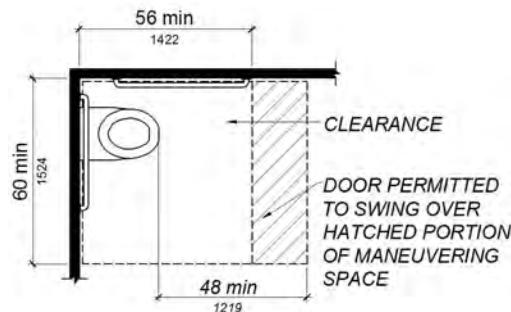
**11B-604.3.1 Size.** Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum measured perpendicular

from the side wall and 56 inches (1422 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall. A minimum 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 48 inches (1219 mm) deep maneuvering space shall be provided in front of the water closet.

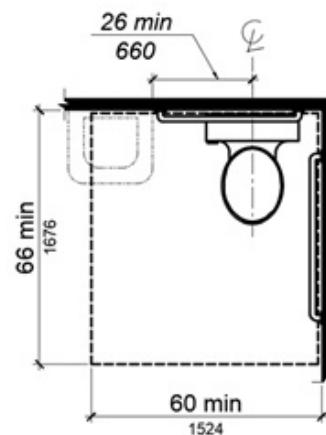
**Exception:** In residential dwelling units complying with *Section 11B-233.3.1.1*, maneuvering space in front of the water closet shall be a minimum 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 36 inches (914 mm) deep.

**11B-604.3.2 Overlap.** The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, dispensers, sanitary napkin disposal units, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space and clearances required at other fixtures and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.

**Exception:** In residential dwelling units, a lavatory complying with *Section 11B-606* shall be permitted on the rear wall 26 inches (660 mm) minimum from the water closet centerline to allow for the installation of a grab bar where the clearance at the water closet is 66 inches (1676 mm) minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall.



**FIGURE 11B-604.3.1  
SIZE OF CLEARANCE AT WATER CLOSETS**



**FIGURE 11B-604.3.2 (EXCEPTION)  
OVERLAP OF WATER CLOSET  
CLEARANCE IN RESIDENTIAL DWELLING UNITS**

**11B-604.4 Seats.** The seat height of a water closet above the finish floor shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat.

Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position. Seats shall be 2 inches (51 mm) high maximum.

**Exceptions:**

1. **Reserved.**
2. In residential dwelling units, the height of water closets shall be permitted to be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the seat.
3. A 3-inch (76 mm) high seat shall be permitted only in alterations where the existing fixture is less than 15 inches (381 mm) high.

**11B-604.5 Grab bars.** Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 11B-609. Grab bars shall be provided on the side wall closest to the water closet and on the rear wall. Where separate grab bars are required on adjacent walls at a common mounting height, an L-shaped grab bar meeting the dimensional requirements of Sections 11B-604.5.1 and 11B-604.5.2 shall be permitted.

**Exceptions:**

1. **Reserved.**
2. In residential dwelling units, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in toilet or bathrooms provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 11B-604.5.
3. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

**11B-604.5.1 Side wall.** The side wall grab bar shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) long minimum, located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extending 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum from the rear wall with the front end positioned 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in front of the water closet.

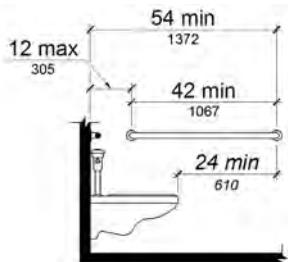


FIGURE 11B-604.5.1  
SIDE WALL GRAB BAR AT WATER CLOSETS

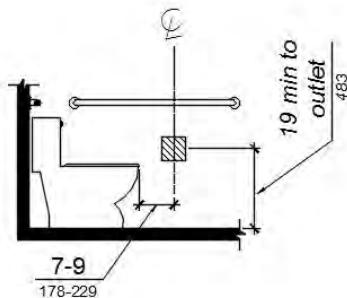


FIGURE 11B-604.7.1  
DISPENSER OUTLET LOCATION

**11B-604.5.2 Rear wall.** The rear wall grab bar shall be 36 inches (914 mm) long minimum and extend from the centerline of the water closet 12 inches (305 mm) minimum on one side and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on the other side.

**Exceptions:**

1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a length of 36 inches (914 mm) minimum due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.
2. Where an administrative authority requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, then the rear grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.

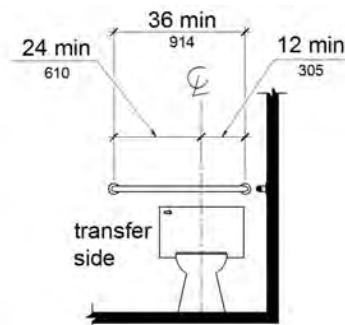


FIGURE 11B-604.5.2  
REAR WALL GRAB BAR AT WATER CLOSETS

**11B-604.6 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 11B-309 except they shall be located 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum above the floor. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with Section 11B-604.8.2.

**11B-604.7 Dispensers and disposal units.** Toilet paper dispensers and sanitary napkin disposal units shall comply with Section 11B-604.7. Combination accessory units are not permitted to encroach into the space required by Section 11B-609.3.

**11B-604.7.1 Dispensers.** Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Section 11B-309.4 and shall be 7 inches (178 mm) minimum and 9 inches (229 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be below the grab bar, 19 inches (483 mm) minimum above the finish floor and shall not be located behind grab bars. Dispensers shall

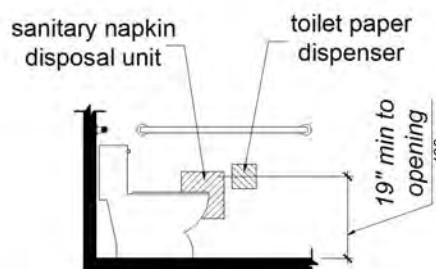


FIGURE 11B-604.7.2  
DISPOSAL UNIT LOCATION

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow.

**11B-604.7.2 Disposal units.** Sanitary napkin disposal units, if provided, shall comply with Section 11B-309.4 and shall be wall mounted and located on the sidewall between the rear wall of the toilet and the toilet paper dispenser, adjacent to the toilet paper dispenser. The disposal unit shall be located below the grab bar with the opening of the disposal unit 19 inches minimum (483 mm) above the finish floor.

**11B-604.8 Toilet compartments.** Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall meet the requirements of Sections 11B-604.8.1 and 11B-604.8.3. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with Section 11B-603. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Sections 11B-604.8.2 and 11B-604.8.3.

**11B-604.8.1 Wheelchair accessible compartments.** Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section 11B-604.8.1.

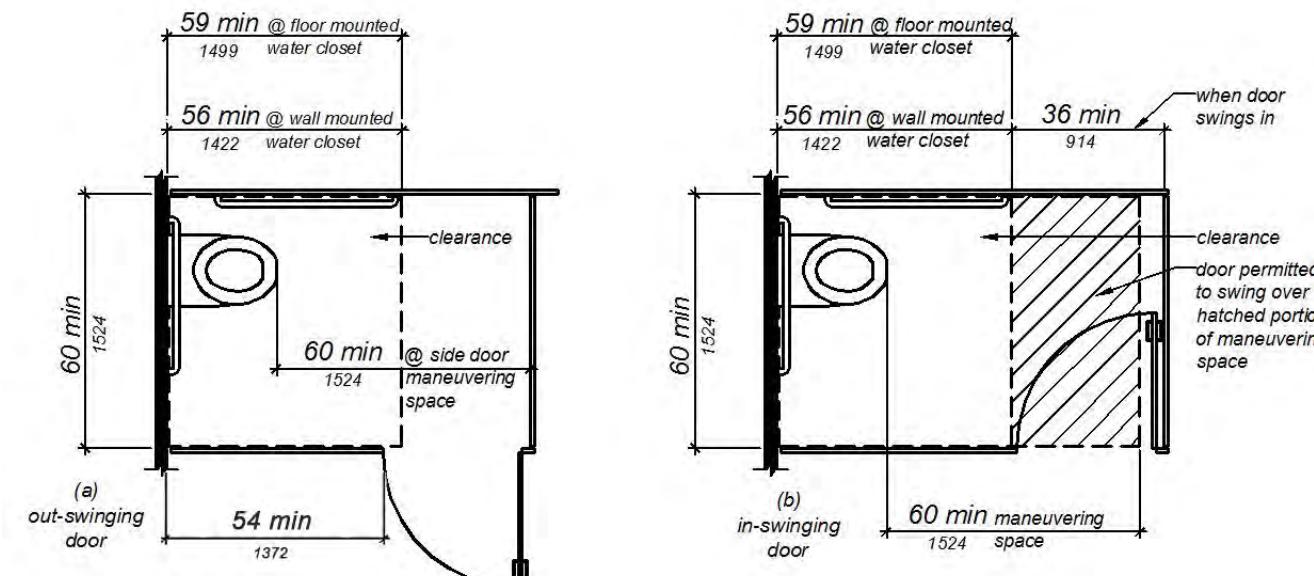
**11B-604.8.1.1 Size.** Wheelchair accessible compartments shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 56 inches (1422 mm) deep minimum for wall hung water closets and 59 inches (1499 mm) deep minimum for floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall. *Wheelchair accessible compartments shall additionally provide maneuvering space complying with Section 11B-604.8.1.1.1, 11B-604.8.1.1.2 or 11B-604.8.1.1.3, as applicable.* Wheelchair accessible compartments for children's use shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 59 inches (1499 mm) deep minimum for wall hung and floor mounted water closets measured perpendicular to the rear wall.

**11B-604.8.1.1.1 Maneuvering space with in-swinging door.** In a wheelchair accessible compartment with an in-swinging door, a minimum 60 inches (1524 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) deep maneuvering space shall be provided in front of the clearance required in Section 11B-604.8.1.1. See Figures 11B-604.8.1.1.2 (b) and 11B-604.8.1.1.3 (b).

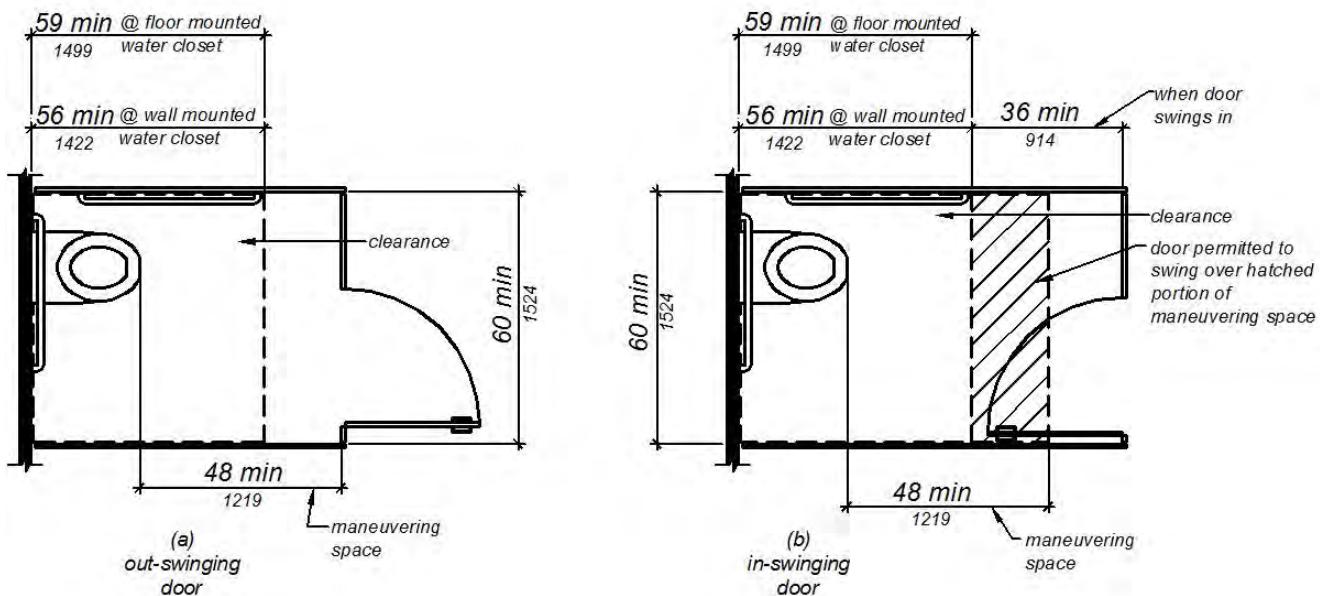
**11B-604.8.1.1.2 Maneuvering space with side-opening door.** In a wheelchair accessible compartment with a door located in the side wall or partition, either in-swinging or out-swinging, a minimum 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 60 inches (1524 mm) deep maneuvering space shall be provided in front of the water closet. See Figure 11B-604.8.1.1.2.

**11B-604.8.1.1.3 Maneuvering space with end-opening door.** In a wheelchair accessible compartment with a door located in the front wall or partition (facing the water closet), either in-swinging or out-swinging, a minimum 60 inches (1524 mm) wide and 48 inches (1219 mm) deep maneuvering space shall be provided in front of the water closet. See Figure 11B-604.8.1.1.3.

**11B-604.8.1.2 Doors.** Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 11B-404 except that if the approach is from the push side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum measured perpendicular to the compartment door in its closed position. Doors shall be located in the front partition or in the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the front partition, the door opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition farthest from the water closet. Where located in the side wall or partition, the door opening



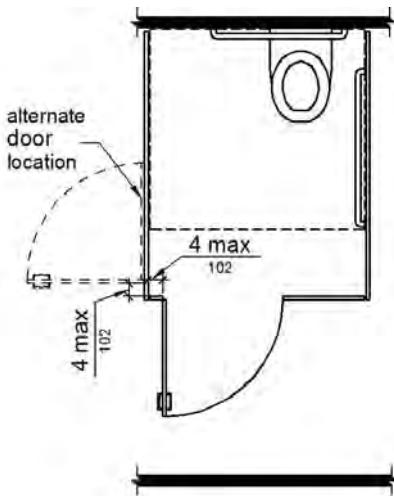
**FIGURE 11B-604.8.1.1.2  
MANEUVERING SPACE WITH SIDE-OPENING DOOR**



**FIGURE 11B-604.8.1.1.3  
MANEUVERING SPACE WITH END-OPENING DOOR**

shall be farthest from the water closet and shall be 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum from the rear wall. The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 11B-404.2.7 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. *Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance required for any fixture. Doors may swing into that portion of maneuvering space which does not overlap the clearance required at a water closet.*

**Exception:** When located at the side of a toilet compartment, the toilet compartment door opening shall provide a clear width of 34 inches (864 mm) minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-604.8.1.2  
WHEELCHAIR ACCESSIBLE TOILET COMPARTMENT DOORS**

**11B-604.8.1.3 Approach.** Compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.

**11B-604.8.1.4 Toe clearance.** At least one side partition shall provide a toe clearance of 9 inches (229 mm) minimum above the finish floor and 6 inches (152 mm) deep minimum beyond the compartment-side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members. *Partition components at toe clearances shall be smooth without sharp edges or abrasive surfaces.* Compartments for children's use shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

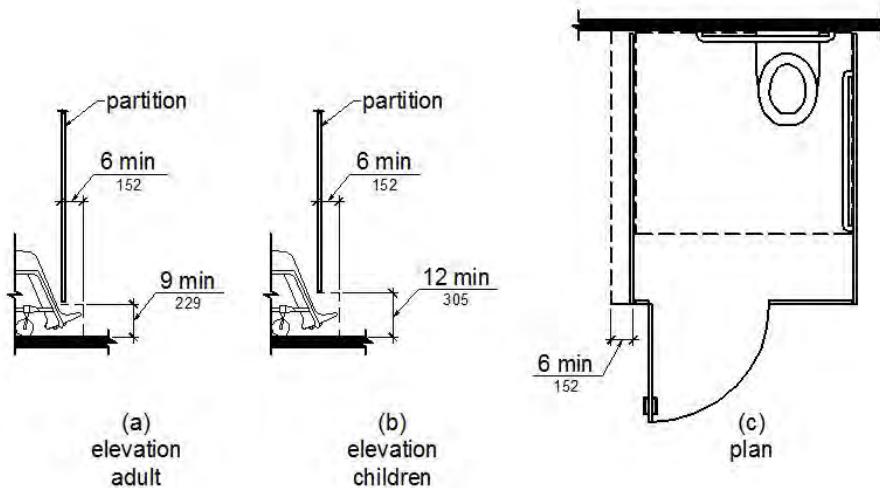
**Exception:** Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a compartment greater than 66 inches (1676 mm) wide.

**11B-604.8.1.5 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with Section 11B-609. A side-wall grab bar complying with Section 11B-604.5.1 shall be provided and shall be located on the wall closest to the water closet. In addition, a rear-wall grab bar complying with Section 11B-604.5.2 shall be provided. *Where separate grab bars are required on adjacent walls at a common mounting height, an L-shaped grab bar meeting the dimensional requirements of Sections 11B-604.5.1 and 11B-604.5.2 shall be permitted.*

**11B-604.8.2 Ambulatory accessible compartments.** Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Section 11B-604.8.2.

**11B-604.8.2.1 Size.** Ambulatory accessible compartments shall have a depth of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum and a width of 35 inches (889 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum.

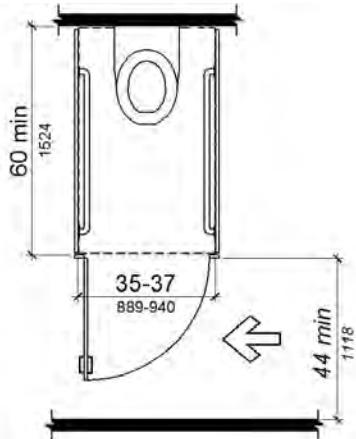
**11B-604.8.2.2 Doors.** Toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 11B-404, except that if the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum. The door shall be self-



**FIGURE 11B-604.8.1.4  
WHEELCHAIR ACCESSIBLE TOILET COMPARTMENT TOE CLEARANCE**

closing. A door pull complying with *Section 11B-404.2.7* shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the minimum required compartment area.

**11B-604.8.2.3 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with *Section 11B-609*. A side-wall grab bar complying with *Section 11B-604.5.1* shall be provided on both sides of the compartment.



**11B-604.8.2  
AMBULATORY ACCESSIBLE TOILET COMPARTMENT**

**11B-604.8.3 Coat hooks and shelves.** Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in *Section 11B-308*. Shelves shall be located 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**11B-604.9 Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use.** Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use shall comply with *Section 11B-604.9*. When the exception in *Section 11B-604.1* is used, the suggested dimensions of Table 11B-604.9 for a single age group shall be applied consistently to the installation of a water closet and all associated components.

**11B-604.9.1 Location.** The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 18 inches (457 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition, except that the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment specified in *Section 11B-604.8.2*. Compartments shall be arranged for left-hand or right-hand approach to the water closet.

**11B-604.9.2 Clearance.** Clearance around a water closet shall comply with *Section 11B-604.3*.

**11B-604.9.3 Height.** The height of water closets shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum and 17 inches (432 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

**11B-604.9.4 Grab bars.** Grab bars for water closets shall comply with *Section 11B-604.5*.

**11B-604.9.5 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with *Sections 11B-309.2* and *11B-309.4* and shall be installed 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet except in ambulatory accessible compartments complying with *Section 11B-604.8.2*.

**11B-604.9.6 Dispensers.** Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with *Section 11B-309.4* and shall be 7 inches (178 mm) minimum and 9 inches (229 mm) maximum in front of the water closet measured to the centerline of the dispenser. The outlet of the dispenser shall be 14 inches (356 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the finish floor. There shall be a clearance of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum below the grab bar. Dispensers shall not be of a type that controls delivery or that does not allow continuous paper flow.

**11B-604.9.7 Toilet compartments.** Toilet compartments shall comply with *Section 11B-604.8*.

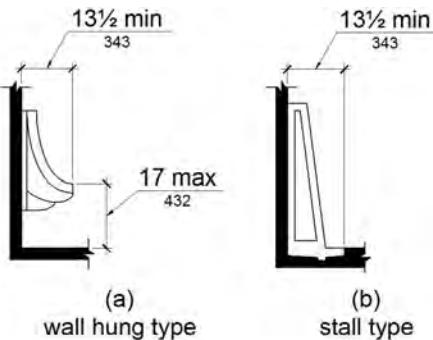
**TABLE 11B-604.9**  
**SUGGESTED DIMENSIONS FOR CHILDREN'S USE**

<b>SUGGESTED DIMENSIONS FOR WATER CLOSETS SERVING CHILDREN AGES 3 THROUGH 12</b>			
	<b>Ages 3 and 4</b>	<b>Ages 5 through 8</b>	<b>Ages 9 through 12</b>
<b>Water Closet Centerline</b>	12 inches (305 mm)	12 to 15 inches (305 to 381 mm)	15 to 18 inches (381 to 457 mm)
<b>Toilet Seat Height</b>	11 to 12 inches (279 to 305 mm)	12 to 15 inches (305 to 381 mm)	15 to 17 inches (381 to 432 mm)
<b>Grab Bar Height</b>	18 to 20 inches (457 to 508 mm)	20 to 25 inches (508 to 635 mm)	25 to 27 inches (635 to 686 mm)
<b>Dispenser Height</b>	14 inches (356 mm)	14 to 17 inches (356 to 432 mm)	17 to 19 inches (432 to 483 mm)

## 11B-605 Urinals

**11B-605.1 General.** Urinals shall comply with *Section 11B-605*.

**11B-605.2 Height and depth.** Urinals shall be the stall-type or the wall-hung type with the rim 17 inches (432 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Urinals shall be 13½ inches (343 mm) deep minimum measured from the outer face of the urinal rim to the back of the fixture.



**FIGURE 11B-605.2**  
**HEIGHT AND DEPTH OF URINALS**

**11B-605.3 Clear floor space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* positioned for forward approach shall be provided.

**11B-605.4 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with *Section 11B-309* except that the flush control shall be mounted at a maximum height of 44 inches (1118 mm) above the finish floor.

## 11B-606 Lavatories and sinks

**11B-606.1 General.** Lavatories and sinks shall comply with *Section 11B-606*.

**11B-606.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-305*, positioned for a forward approach, and knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306* shall be provided.

## Exceptions:

1. A parallel approach complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be permitted to a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided and to wet bars.
2. *Reserved.*
3. In residential dwelling units, cabinetry shall be permitted under lavatories and kitchen sinks provided that all of the following conditions are met:
  - (a) the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the fixture;
  - (b) the finish floor extends under the cabinetry; and
  - (c) the walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.
4. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children 6 through 12 years where the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (787 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.
5. A parallel approach complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be permitted to lavatories and sinks used primarily by children 5 years and younger.
6. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.
7. No more than one bowl of a multibowl sink shall be required to provide knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306*.

**11B-606.3 Height.** Lavatories and sinks shall be installed with the front of the higher of the rim or counter surface 34 inches (864 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

## Exceptions:

1. *Reserved.*
2. In residential dwelling unit kitchens, sinks that are adjustable to variable heights, 29 inches (737 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum, shall be permitted where rough-in plumbing permits connections of supply and drain pipes for sinks mounted at the height of 29 inches (737 mm).

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

**11B-606.4 Faucets.** Controls for faucets shall comply with Section 11B-309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

**11B-606.5 Exposed pipes and surfaces.** Water supply and drain pipes under lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under lavatories and sinks.

**11B-606.6 Adjacent side wall or partition.** Lavatories, when located adjacent to a side wall or partition, shall be a minimum of 18 inches (457 mm) to the centerline of the fixture.

**11B-606.7 Sink depth.** Where a forward approach is required at a sink, knee and toe clearance shall be provided in compliance with Section 11B-306.

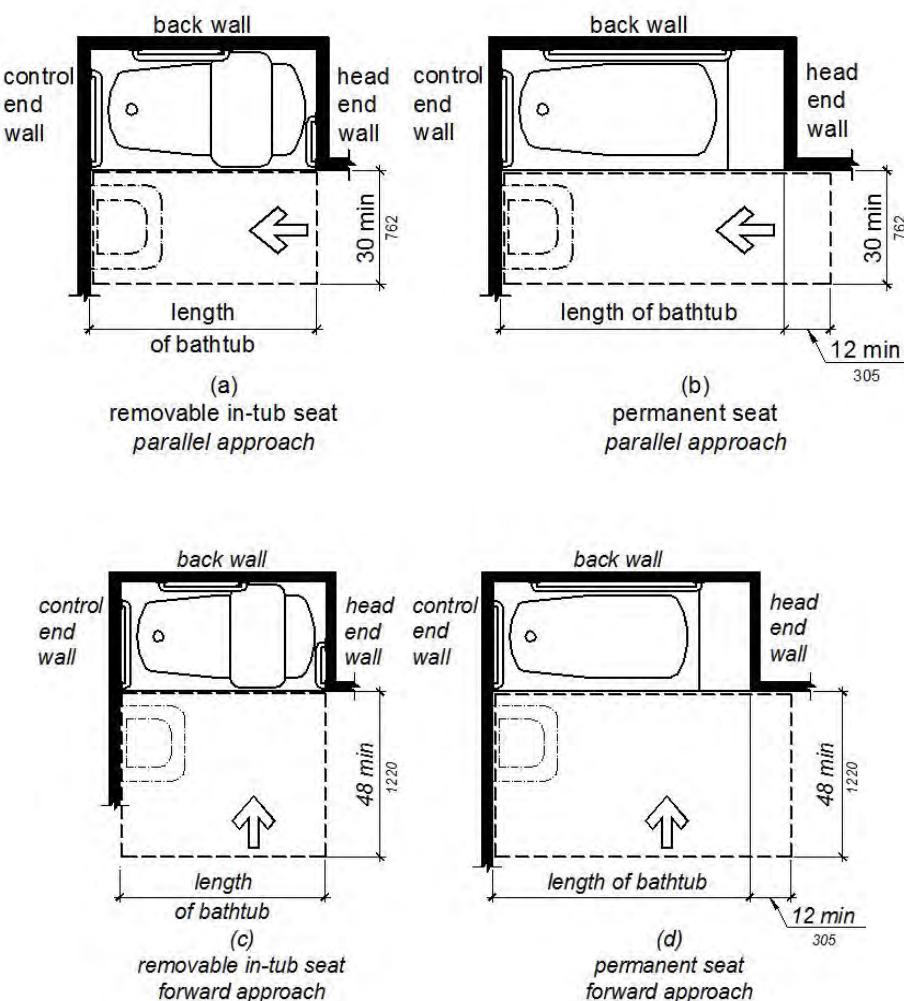
**11B-607 Bathtubs**

**11B-607.1 General.** Bathtubs shall comply with Section 11B-607.

**11B-607.2 Clearance.** Clearance in front of bathtubs shall extend the length of the bathtub and shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) wide minimum for forward approach and 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum for parallel approach. A lavatory complying with Section 11B-606 shall be permitted at the control end of the clearance. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

**11B-607.3 Seat.** A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with Section 11B-610.

**11B-607.4 Grab bars.** Grab bars for bathtubs shall comply with Section 11B-609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 11B-607.4.1 or 11B-607.4.2. Where separate grab bars are required on adjacent walls at a common mounting height, an L-shaped or U-shaped grab bar meeting



**FIGURE 11B-607.2  
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS**

*the dimensional requirements of Section 11B-607.4.1 or 11B-607.4.2 shall be permitted.*

**Exceptions:**

1. **Reserved.**
2. In residential dwelling units, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in bathtubs located in bathing facilities provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with *Section 11B-607.4*.

**11B-607.4.1 Bathtubs with permanent seats.** For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-607.4.1*.

**11B-607.4.1.1 Back wall.** Two grab bars shall be installed on the back wall, one located in accordance with *Section 11B-609.4* and the other located 8 inches (203 mm) minimum and 10 inches (254 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be installed 15 inches (381 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

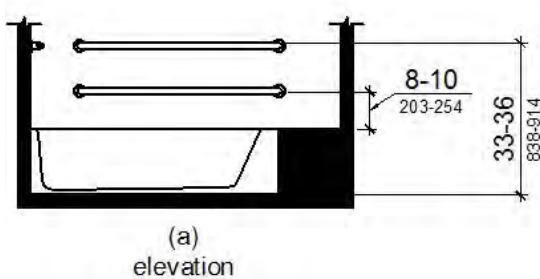
**11B-607.4.1.2 Control end wall.** A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

**11B-607.4.2 Bathtubs without permanent seats.** For bathtubs without permanent seats, grab bars shall comply with *Section 11B-607.4.2*.

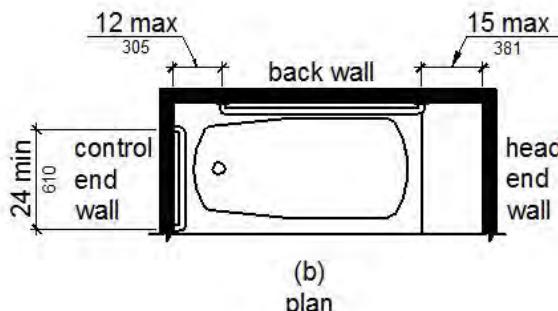
**11B-607.4.2.1 Back wall.** Two grab bars shall be installed on the back wall, one located in accordance with *Section 11B-609.4* and the other located 8 inches (203 mm) minimum and 10 inches (254 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum and shall be installed 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

**11B-607.4.2.2 Control end wall.** A grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the control end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

**11B-607.4.2.3 Head end wall.** A grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) long minimum shall be installed on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

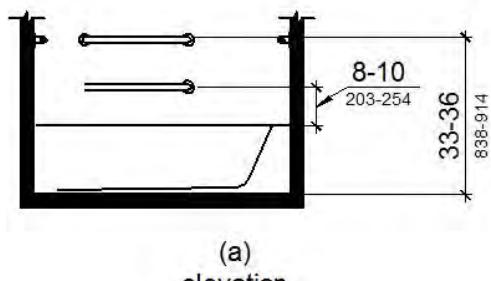


(a)  
elevation

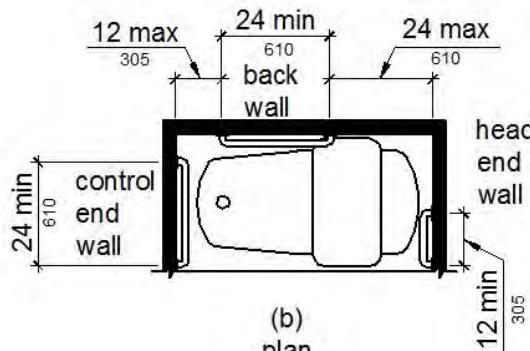


(b)  
plan

**FIGURE 11B-607.4.1**  
**GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH PERMANENT SEATS**



(a)  
elevation

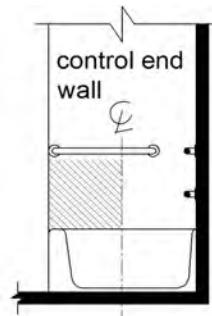


(b)  
plan

**FIGURE 11B-607.4.2**  
**GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS**

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-607.5 Controls.** Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be located on an end wall. Controls shall be between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with *Section 11B-309.4*.



**FIGURE 11B-607.5  
BATHTUB CONTROL LOCATION**

**11B-607.6 Shower spray unit and water.** A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1499 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a handheld shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. Bathtub shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

**11B-607.7 Bathtub enclosures.** Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the open face of the bathtub.

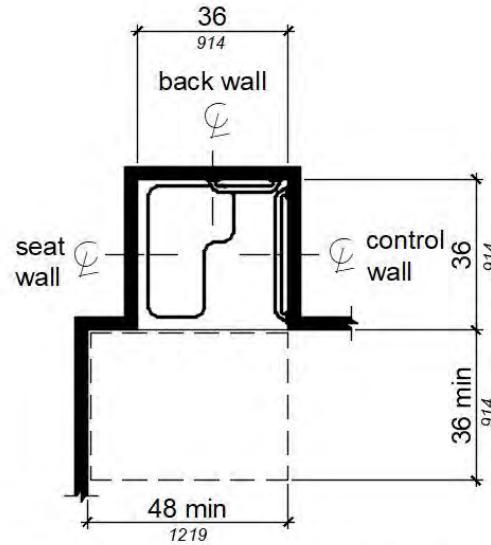
### 11B-608 Shower compartments

**11B-608.1 General.** Shower compartments shall comply with *Section 11B-608*.

**11B-608.2 Size and clearances for shower compartments.** Shower compartments shall have sizes and clearances complying with *Section 11B-608.2*.

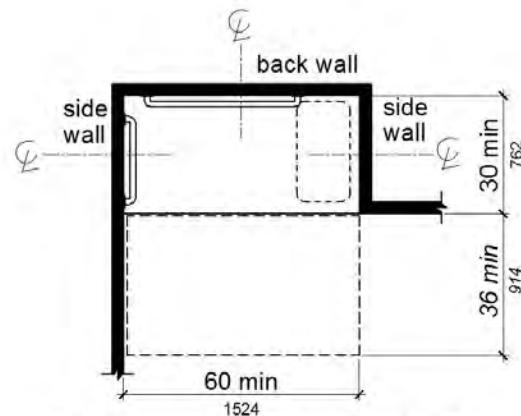
**11B-608.2.1 Transfer type shower compartments.** Transfer type shower compartments shall be 36 inches (914 mm) by 36 inches (914 mm) clear inside dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides and shall have a 36-inch (914 mm) wide minimum entry on the face of the shower compartment. Clearance of 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum measured from the control wall shall be provided. *Transfer type shower compartments shall be permitted in transient lodging guest rooms, multibedroom housing units in undergraduate student housing and residential dwelling units; and shall not be permitted at other locations to meet the requirements of Section 11B-213.3.6.*

**11B-608.2.2 Standard roll-in type shower compartments.** Standard roll-in type shower compartments shall be 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) deep minimum clear inside dimensions measured at center points of opposing sides *with a full opening width on the long side.*



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

**FIGURE 11B-608.2.1  
TRANSFER TYPE SHOWER  
COMPARTMENT SIZE AND CLEARANCE**



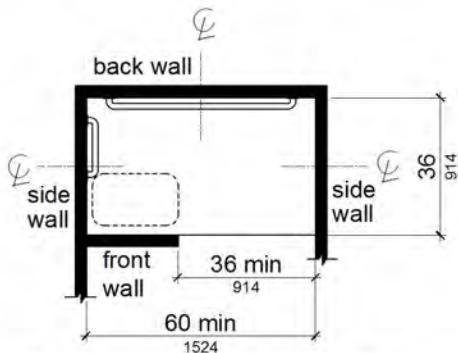
Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

**FIGURE 11B-608.2.2  
STANDARD ROLL-IN TYPE  
SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE AND CLEARANCE**

**11B-608.2.2.1 Clearance.** A 36 inch (914 mm) wide minimum by 60 inch (1524 mm) long minimum clearance shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the shower compartment.

**Exception: Reserved.**

**11B-608.2.3 Alternate roll-in type shower compartments.** Alternate roll-in type shower compartments shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide and 60 inches (1524 mm) deep minimum clear inside dimensions measured at center points of opposing sides. A 36 inch (914 mm) wide minimum entry shall be provided at one end of the long side of the compartment.



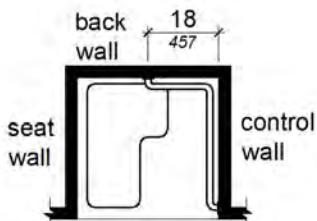
**FIGURE 11B-608.2.3  
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN TYPE  
SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE AND CLEARANCE**

**11B-608.3 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall comply with *Section 11B-609* and shall be provided in accordance with *Section 11B-608.3*. Where multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the finish floor. Where separate grab bars are required on adjacent walls at a common mounting height, an L-shaped or U-shaped grab bar meeting the dimensional requirements of *Section 11B-608.3.2* or *11B-608.3.3* shall be permitted.

**Exceptions:**

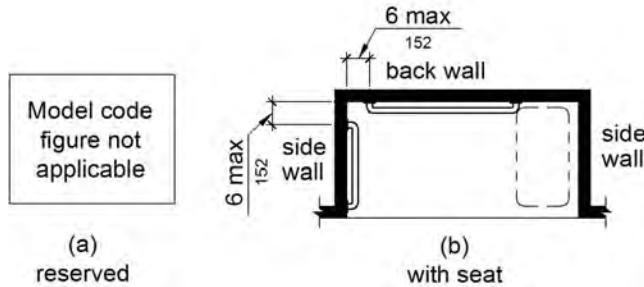
1. **Reserved.**
2. In residential dwelling units, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in showers located in bathing facilities provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with *Section 11B-608.3*.

**11B-608.3.1 Transfer type shower compartments.** In transfer type compartments, grab bars shall be provided across the control wall and back wall to a point 18 inches (457 mm) from the control wall.



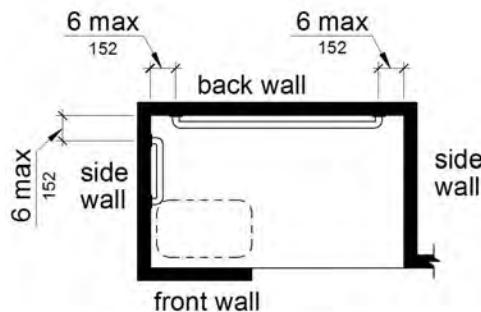
**FIGURE 11B-608.3.1  
GRAB BARS FOR TRANSFER TYPE SHOWERS**

**11B-608.3.2 Standard roll-in type shower compartments.** Grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall opposite the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.



**FIGURE 11B-608.3.2  
GRAB BARS FOR STANDARD ROLL-IN TYPE SHOWER**

**11B-608.3.3 Alternate roll-in type shower compartments.** In alternate roll-in type shower compartments, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall farthest from the compartment entry. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be installed 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.



**FIGURE 11B-608.3.3  
GRAB BARS FOR ALTERNATE ROLL-IN TYPE SHOWERS**

**11B-608.4 Seats.** A folding seat shall be provided in roll-in type showers and transfer type shower compartments. Seats shall comply with *Section 11B-610*.

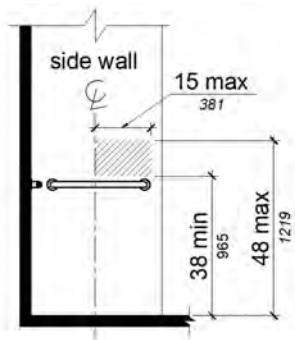
**Exception:** In residential dwelling units, seats shall not be required in shower compartments provided that reinforcement has been installed in walls so as to permit the installation of seats complying with *Section 11B-608.4*.

**11B-608.5 Controls.** Controls, faucets and shower spray units shall comply with *Section 11B-309.4*. Controls and faucets shall allow the user to close and open the water supply.

**11B-608.5.1 Transfer type shower compartments.** In transfer type shower compartments, the controls, faucets and shower spray unit shall be installed on the side wall opposite the seat 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the shower floor and shall be located on the control wall 15 inches (380 mm)

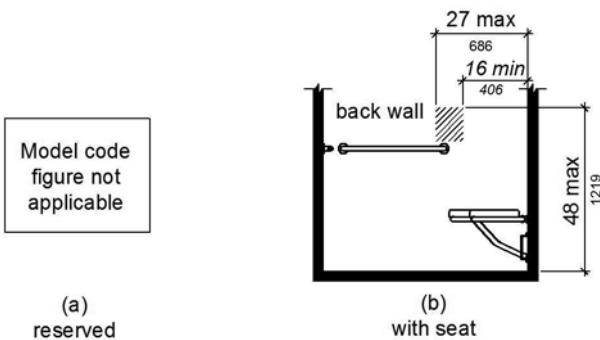
## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the shower opening.



**FIGURE 11B-608.5.1  
TRANSFER TYPE SHOWER  
COMPARTMENT CONTROL LOCATION**

**11B-608.5.2 Standard roll-in type shower compartments.** In standard roll-in type shower compartments, the controls, faucets and the shower spray unit shall be located on the back wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat wall 16 inches (406 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum from the seat wall; and shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the shower floor.

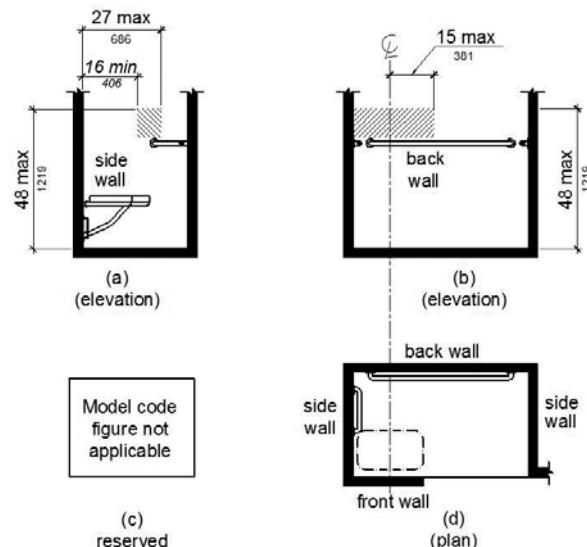


**FIGURE 11B-608.5.2  
STANDARD ROLL-IN TYPE  
SHOWER COMPARTMENT CONTROL LOCATION**

**11B-608.5.3 Alternate roll-in type shower compartments.** In alternate roll-in type shower compartments, the controls, faucets and shower spray unit shall be located on the side wall of the compartment adjacent to the seat wall 16 inches (406 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum from the seat wall or shall be located on the back wall opposite the seat 15 inches (381 mm) maximum, left or right of the centerline of the seat. The controls, faucets and shower spray units shall be located above the grab bar, but no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the shower floor.

**11B-608.6 Shower spray unit and water.** A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1499 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. Shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

**Exception:** Where subject to excessive vandalism, two fixed shower heads shall be permitted instead of a hand-held spray unit in facilities that are not medical care facilities, long-term care facilities, transient lodging guest rooms or residential dwelling units. Each shower head shall be installed so it can be operated independently of the other and shall have swivel angle adjustments, both vertically and horizontally. One shower head shall be located at a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor.



**FIGURE 11B-608.5.3  
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN TYPE  
SHOWER COMPARTMENT CONTROL LOCATION**

**11B-608.7 Thresholds.** Thresholds in roll-in type shower compartments shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high maximum in accordance with Section 11B-303. In transfer type shower compartments, thresholds  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high maximum shall be beveled, rounded or vertical.

**Exception:** A threshold 2 inches (51 mm) high maximum shall be permitted in transfer type shower compartments in existing facilities where provision of a  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high threshold would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab.

**11B-608.8 Shower enclosures.** Enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls, faucets and shower

spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats.

**11B-608.9 Shower floor or ground surface.** Floor or ground surfaces of showers shall comply with Section 11B-302.1 and shall be sloped 1:48 maximum in any direction. Where drains are provided, grate openings shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) maximum and flush with the floor surface.

**11B-608.10 Soap dish.** Where a soap dish is provided, it shall be located on the control wall at 40 inches (1016 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and within the reach limits from the seat.

#### 11B-609 Grab bars

**11B-609.1 General.** Grab bars in toilet facilities and bathing facilities shall comply with Section 11B-609.

**11B-609.2 Cross section.** Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 11B-609.2.1 or 11B-609.2.2.

**11B-609.2.1 Circular cross section.** Grab bars with circular cross sections shall have an outside diameter of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

**11B-609.2.2 Non-circular cross section.** Grab bars with non-circular cross sections shall have a cross-section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (122 mm) maximum.

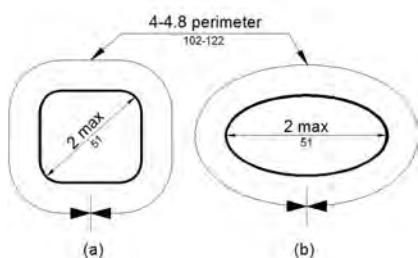


FIGURE 11B-609.2.2  
GRAB BAR NON-CIRCULAR CROSS SECTION

**11B-609.3 Spacing.** The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

#### Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above shall be permitted to be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. For L-shaped or U-shaped grab bars complying with Section 11B-609.9 the space between the walls and the grab bar shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) mini-

mum for a distance of 6 inches on either side of the inside corner between two adjacent wall surfaces.

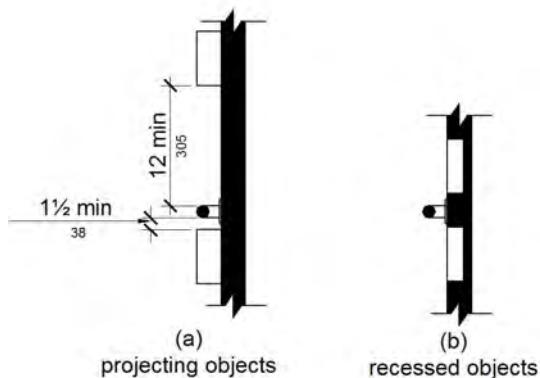


FIGURE 11B-609.3  
SPACING OF GRAB BARS

**11B-609.4 Position of grab bars.** Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (838 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface, except that at water closets for children's use complying with Section 11B-604.9, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (457 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the finish floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. The height of the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 11B-607.4.1.1 or 11B-607.4.2.1.

**11B-609.5 Surface hazards.** Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements and shall have rounded edges.

**11B-609.6 Fittings.** Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

**11B-609.7 Installation.** Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the specified locations and that does not obstruct the required clear floor space.

**11B-609.8 Structural strength.** Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener, mounting device or supporting structure.

**11B-609.9 Alternate configuration.** L-shaped or U-shaped grab bars shall be permitted.

#### 11B-610 Seats

**11B-610.1 General.** Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 11B-610.

**11B-610.2 Bathtub seats.** The top of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. The depth of a removable in-tub seat shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum. The seat shall be capable of secure placement. Permanent seats at the head end of the

bath tub shall be 15 inches (381 mm) deep minimum and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bath tub.

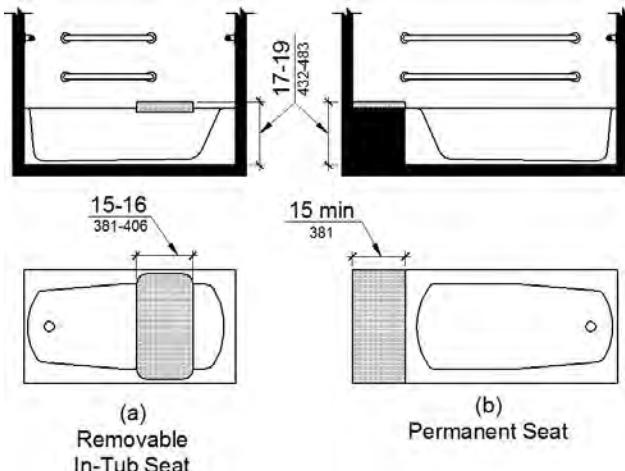


FIGURE 11B-610.2  
BATHTUB SEATS

**11B-610.3 Shower compartment seats.** A seat in a standard roll-in shower compartment shall be a folding type, shall be installed on the side wall adjacent to the controls, and shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (76 mm) of the compartment entry. A seat in an alternate roll-in type shower compartment shall be a folding type, shall be installed on the front wall opposite the back wall, and shall extend from the adjacent side wall to a point within 3 inches (76 mm) of the compartment entry. In transfer type showers, the seat shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (76 mm) of the compartment entry. The top of the seat shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the bathroom finish floor. When folded, the seat shall extend 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from the mounting wall. Seats shall comply with Section 11B-610.3.1 or 11B-610.3.2.

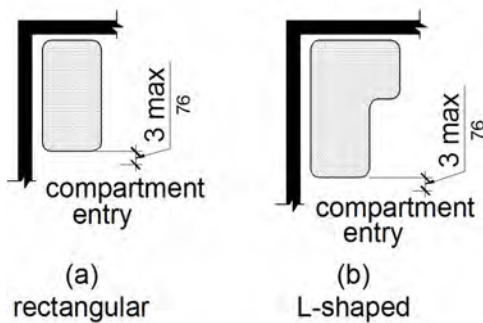


FIGURE 11B-610.3  
EXTENT OF SEAT

**11B-610.3.1 Rectangular seats.** The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side

edge of the seat shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.

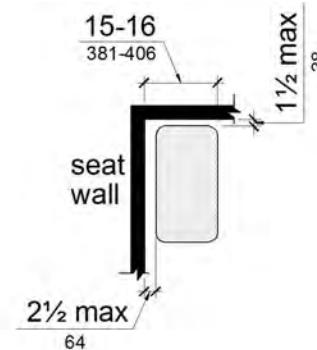


FIGURE 11B-610.3.1  
RECTANGULAR SHOWER SEAT

**11B-610.3.2 L-shaped seats.** The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (356 mm) minimum and 15 inches (381 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (559 mm) minimum and 23 inches (584 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.

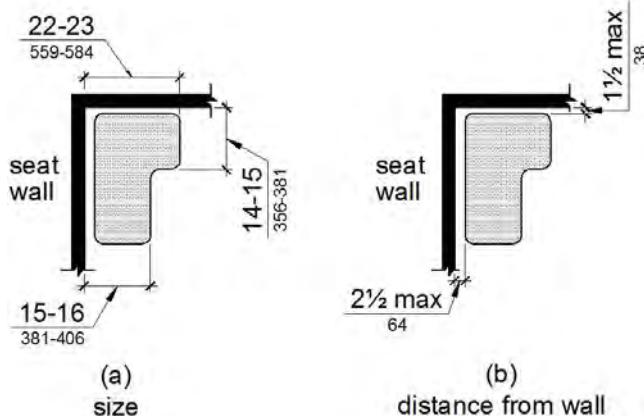


FIGURE 11B-610.3.2  
L-SHAPED SHOWER SEAT

**11B-610.4 Structural strength.** Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device or supporting structure.

### 11B-611 Washing machines and clothes dryers

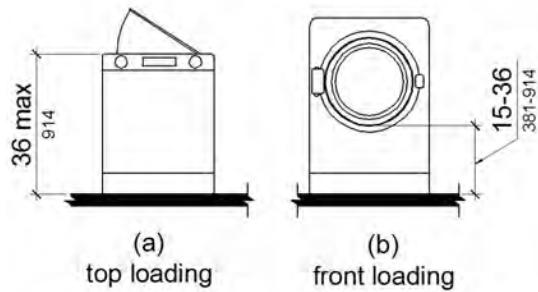
**11B-611.1 General.** Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 11B-611.

**11B-611.2 Clear floor space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall be centered on the appliance.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-611.3 Operable parts.** Operable parts, including doors, lint screens and detergent and bleach compartments shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-611.4 Height.** Top loading machines shall have the door to the laundry compartment located 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment located 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor.



**FIGURE 11B-611.4  
HEIGHT OF LAUNDRY COMPARTMENT OPENING**

## 11B-612 Saunas and steam rooms

**11B-612.1 General.** Saunas and steam rooms shall comply with *Section 11B-612*.

**11B-612.2 Bench.** Where seating is provided in saunas and steam rooms, at least one bench shall comply with *Section 11B-612.3*. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space required by *Section 11B-903.2*.

**Exception:** A readily removable bench shall be permitted to obstruct the turning space required by *Section 11B-612.3* and the clear floor or ground space required by *Section 11B-903.2*.

**11B-612.3 Turning space.** A turning space complying with *Section 11B-304* shall be provided within saunas and steam rooms.

## DIVISION 7:

# COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS AND FEATURES

### **11B-701 General**

**11B-701.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 7* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this *chapter*.

### **11B-702 Fire alarm systems**

**11B-702.1 General.** Fire alarm systems shall have permanently installed audible and visible alarms complying with NFPA 72 and *Chapter 9, Sections 907.5.2.1 and 907.5.2.3*.

**Exception: Reserved.**

### **11B-703 Signs**

**11B-703.1 General.** Signs shall comply with *Section 11B-703*. Where both visual and tactile characters are required, either one sign with both visual and tactile characters or two separate signs, one with visual, and one with tactile characters, shall be provided.

**11B-703.1.1 Plan review and inspection.** Signs as specified in *Section 11B-703*, or in other sections of this code, when included in the construction of new buildings or facilities, or when included, altered or replaced due to additions, alterations or renovations to existing buildings or facilities, and when a permit is required, shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.1.1 and 11B-703.1.2*.

**11B-703.1.1.1 Plan review.** Plans, specifications or other information indicating compliance with these regulations shall be submitted to the enforcing agency for review and approval.

**11B-703.1.1.2 Inspection.** Signs and identification devices shall be field inspected after installation and approved by the enforcing agency prior to the issuance of a final certificate of occupancy per *Chapter 1, Division II, Section 111*, or final approval where no certificate of occupancy is issued. The inspection shall include, but not be limited to, verification that Braille dots and cells are properly spaced and the size, proportion and type of raised characters are in compliance with these regulations.

**11B-703.2 Raised characters.** Raised characters shall comply with *Section 11B-703.2* and shall be duplicated in Braille complying with *Section 11B-703.3*. Raised characters shall be installed in accordance with *Section 11B-703.4*.

**11B-703.2.1 Depth.** Raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{32}$  inch (0.8 mm) minimum above their background.

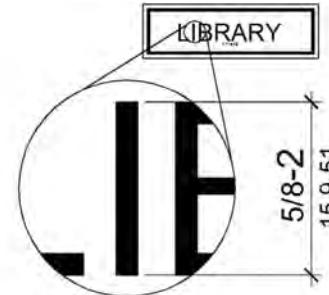
**11B-703.2.2 Case.** Characters shall be uppercase.

**11B-703.2.3 Style.** Characters shall be sans serif. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative or of other unusual forms.

**11B-703.2.4 Character proportions.** Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 60 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".

**11B-703.2.5 Character height.** Character height measured vertically from the baseline of the character shall be  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum based on the height of the uppercase letter "I".

**Exception: Reserved.**



**FIGURE 11B-703.2.5  
HEIGHT OF RAISED CHARACTERS**

**11B-703.2.6 Stroke thickness.** Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 15 percent maximum of the height of the character.

**11B-703.2.7 Character spacing.** Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent raised characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Where characters have rectangular cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum. Where characters have other cross sections, spacing between individual raised characters shall be  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the base of the cross sections, and  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and 4 times the raised character stroke width maximum at the top of the cross sections. Characters shall be separated from raised borders and decorative elements  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum.

**11B-703.2.8 Line spacing.** Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of raised characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the raised character height.

**11B-703.2.9 Format.** Text shall be in a horizontal format.

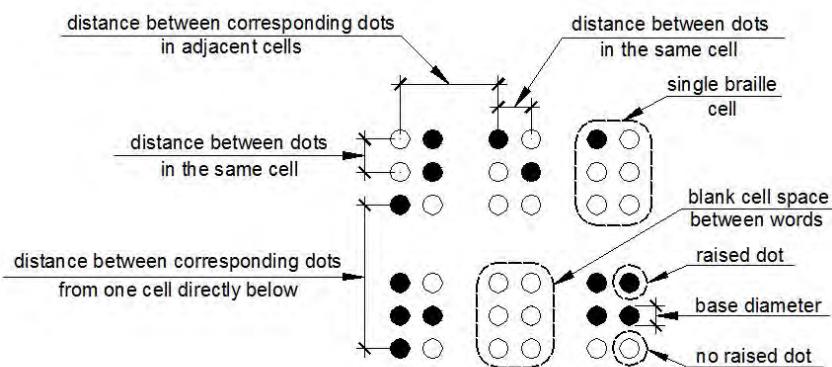
**11B-703.3 Braille.** Braille shall be contracted (Grade 2) and shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.4*.

**11B-703.3.1 Dimensions and capitalization.** Braille dots shall have a domed or rounded shape and shall comply with *Table 11B-703.3.1*. The indication of an uppercase letter or letters shall only be used before the first word of sentences, proper nouns and names, individual letters of the alphabet, initials and acronyms.

**TABLE 11B-703.3.1  
BRAILLE DIMENSIONS**

MEASUREMENT RANGE	MINIMUM IN INCHES MAXIMUM IN INCHES
Dot base diameter	0.059 (1.5 mm) to 0.063 (1.6 mm)
Distance between two dots in the same cell <sup>1</sup>	0.100 (2.5 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots in adjacent cells <sup>1</sup>	0.300 (7.6 mm)
Dot height	0.025 (0.6 mm) to 0.037 (0.9 mm)
Distance between corresponding dots from one cell directly below <sup>1</sup>	0.395 (10 mm) to 0.400 (10.2 mm)

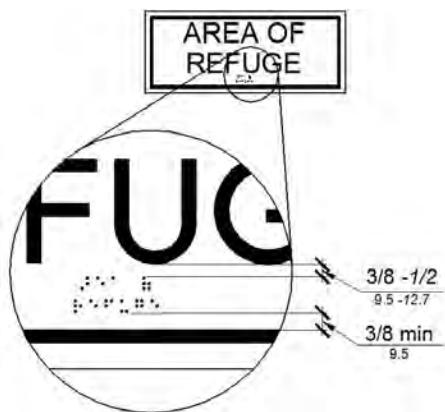
1. Measured center to center.



**FIGURE 11B-703.3.1  
BRAILLE MEASUREMENT**

**11B-703.3.2 Position.** Braille shall be positioned below the corresponding text *in a horizontal format, flush left or centered*. If text is multilined, Braille shall be placed below the entire text. Braille shall be separated  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) maximum from any other tactile characters and  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements.

**Exception:** Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) minimum and shall be located directly below the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

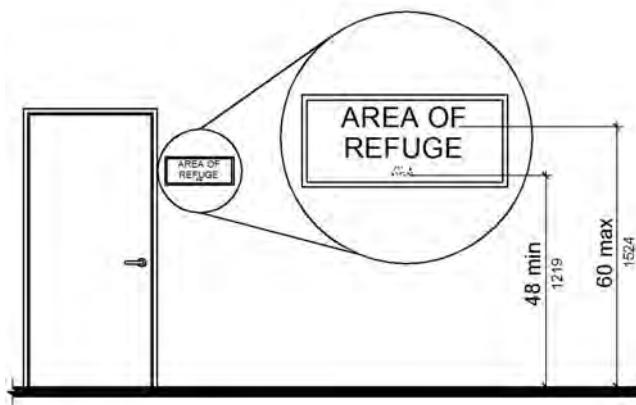


**FIGURE 11B-703.3.2  
POSITION OF BRAILLE**

**11B-703.4 Installation height and location.** Signs with tactile characters shall comply with Section 11B-703.4.

**11B-703.4.1 Height above finish floor or ground.** Tactile characters on signs shall be located 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the lowest *Braille cells* and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground surface, measured from the baseline of the highest *line of raised characters*.

**Exception:** Tactile characters for elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-703.4.1.



**FIGURE 11B-703.4.1  
HEIGHT OF TACTILE CHARACTERS  
ABOVE FINISH FLOOR OR GROUND**

**11B-703.4.2 Location.** Where a tactile sign is provided at a door, the sign shall be located alongside the door at the latch side. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with one active leaf, the sign shall be located on the inactive leaf. Where a tactile sign is provided at double doors with two active leaves, the sign shall be located to the right of the right hand door. Where there is no wall space at the latch side of a single door or at the right side of double doors, signs shall be located on the nearest adjacent wall. Signs containing tactile characters shall be located so that a clear floor space of 18 inches (457 mm) minimum by 18 inches (457 mm) minimum, centered on the tactile characters, is provided beyond the arc of any door swing between the closed position and 45 degree open position. *Where provided, signs identifying permanent rooms and spaces shall be located at the entrance to, and outside of the room or space. Where provided, signs identifying exits shall be located at the exit door when approached in the direction of egress travel.*

**Exception:** In alterations where sign installation locations identified in Section 11B-703.4.2 are obstructed or otherwise unavailable for sign installation, signs with tactile characters shall be permitted on the push side of doors with closers and without hold-open devices.

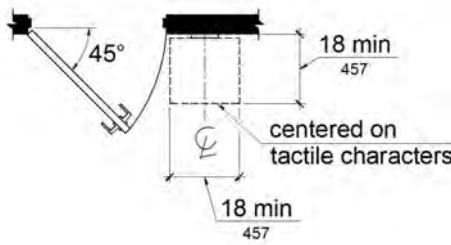


FIGURE 11B-703.4.2  
LOCATION OF TACTILE SIGNS AT DOORS

**11B-703.5 Visual characters.** Visual characters shall comply with Section 11B-703.5.

**Exception:** Where visual characters comply with Section 11B-703.2 and are accompanied by Braille complying with Section 11B-703.3, they shall not be required to comply with Sections 11B-703.5.2 through 11B-703.5.6, 11B-703.5.8 and 11B-703.5.9.

**11B-703.5.1 Finish and contrast.** Characters and their background shall have a non-glare finish. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

**11B-703.5.2 Case.** Characters shall be uppercase or lowercase or a combination of both.

**11B-703.5.3 Style.** Characters shall be conventional in form. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative or of other unusual forms.

**11B-703.5.4 Character proportions.** Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 60 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".

**11B-703.5.5 Character height.** Minimum character height shall comply with Table 11B-703.5.5. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign. Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I".

**Exception:** Where provided, floor plans providing emergency procedures information in accordance with Title 19 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-703.5.5.

**11B-703.5.6 Height from finish floor or ground.** Visual characters shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground.

**Exceptions:**

1. Visual characters indicating elevator car controls shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-703.5.6.

TABLE 11B-703.5.5  
VISUAL CHARACTER HEIGHT

HEIGHT TO FINISH FLOOR OR GROUND FROM BASELINE OF CHARACTER	HORIZONTAL VIEWING DISTANCE	MINIMUM CHARACTER HEIGHT
40 inches (1016 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1778 mm)	less than 72 inches (1829 mm)	5/8 inch (15.9 mm)
	72 inches (1829 mm) and greater	5/8 inch (15.9 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 72 inches (1829 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1778 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3048 mm)	less than 180 inches (4572 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	180 inches (4572 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 180 inches (4572 mm)
greater than 120 inches (3048 mm)	less than 21 feet (6401 mm)	3 inches (76 mm)
	21 feet (6401 mm) and greater	3 inches (76 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6401 mm)

2. Floor-level exit signs complying with Chapter 10, Section 1013.7 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-703.5.6.
3. Where provided, floor plans providing emergency procedures information in accordance with Title 19 shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-703.5.6.

**11B-703.5.7 Stroke thickness.** Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be 10 percent minimum and 20 percent maximum of the height of the character.

**11B-703.5.8 Character spacing.** Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be 10 percent minimum and 35 percent maximum of character height.

**11B-703.5.9 Line spacing.** Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.

**11B-703.5.10 Format.** Text shall be in a horizontal format.

**11B-703.6 Pictograms.** Pictograms shall comply with Section 11B-703.6.

**11B-703.6.1 Pictogram field.** Pictograms shall have a field height of 6 inches (152 mm) minimum. Characters and Braille shall not be located in the pictogram field.

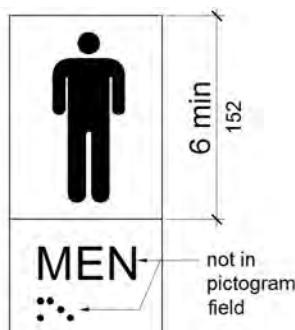


FIGURE 11B-703.6.1  
PICTOGRAM FIELD

**11B-703.6.2 Finish and contrast.** Pictograms and their field shall have a non-glare finish. Pictograms shall contrast with their field with either a light pictogram on a dark field or a dark pictogram on a light field.

**11B-703.6.3 Text descriptors.** Pictograms shall have text descriptors located directly below the pictogram field. Text descriptors shall comply with Sections 11B-703.2, 11B-703.3 and 11B-703.4.

**11B-703.7 Symbols of accessibility.** Symbols of accessibility shall comply with Section 11B-703.7.

**11B-703.7.1 Finish and contrast.** Symbols of accessibility and their background shall have a non-glare finish.

Symbols of accessibility shall contrast with their background with either a light symbol on a dark background or a dark symbol on a light background.

### 11B-703.7.2 Symbols

#### 11B-703.7.2.1 International Symbol of Accessibility.

The International Symbol of Accessibility shall comply with Figure 11B-703.7.2.1. The symbol shall consist of a white figure on a blue background. The color blue shall approximate FS 15090 in Federal Standard 595C. A border may be provided inside or outside of the minimum required International Symbol of Accessibility dimension.

#### Exceptions:

1. The appropriate enforcement agency may approve other colors provided the symbol contrast is light on dark or dark on light.
2. On the accessibility function button on hall call consoles in a destination-oriented elevator system the International Symbol of Accessibility shall be a white symbol on a black background.

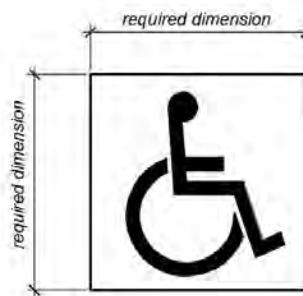


FIGURE 11B-703.7.2.1  
INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESSIBILITY

**11B-703.7.2.2 International Symbol of TTY.** The International Symbol of TTY shall comply with Figure 11B-703.7.2.2.



FIGURE 11B-703.7.2.2  
INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF TTY

**11B-703.7.2.3 Volume control telephones.** Telephones with a volume control shall be identified by a pictogram of a telephone handset with radiating sound

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

waves on a square field such as shown in Figure 11B-703.7.2.3.



**FIGURE 11B-703.7.2.3  
VOLUME CONTROL TELEPHONE**

**11B-703.7.2.4 Assistive listening systems.** Assistive listening systems shall be identified by the International Symbol of Access for Hearing Loss complying with Figure 11B-703.7.2.4.



**FIGURE 11B-703.7.2.4  
INTERNATIONAL SYMBOL OF ACCESS FOR HEARING LOSS**

**11B-703.7.2.5 Reserved.**

**11B-703.7.2.6 Toilet and bathing facilities geometric symbols.** Geometric symbols at entrances to toilet and bathing rooms shall be mounted at 58 inches (1473 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground surface measured from the centerline of the symbol. Where a door is provided the symbol shall be mounted within 1 inch (25 mm) of the vertical centerline of the door.

**11B-703.7.2.6.1 Men's toilet and bathing facilities.** A triangle symbol shall be located at entrances to men's toilet and bathing facilities. The triangle symbol shall be an equilateral triangle  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick with edges 12 inches (305 mm) long and a vertex pointing upward. The color of the triangle symbol shall contrast with the color of the door or surface on which the triangle symbol is mounted, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.

**Exception:** Within secure perimeter of detention and correctional facilities, geometric symbols shall not be required to be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick.

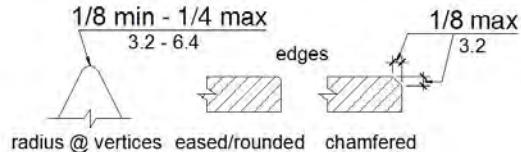
**11B-703.7.2.6.2 Women's toilet and bathing facilities.** A circle symbol shall be located at entrances to women's toilet and bathing facilities. The circle symbol shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick and 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter. The color of the circle symbol shall contrast with the color of the door or surface on which the circle symbol is mounted, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.

**Exception:** Within secure perimeter of detention and correctional facilities, geometric symbols shall not be required to be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick.

**11B-703.7.2.6.3 Unisex toilet and bathing facilities.** A combined circle and triangle symbol shall be located at entrances to unisex toilet and bathing facilities. The combined circle and triangle symbol shall consist of a circle symbol  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick and 12 inches (305 mm) in diameter with a  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick equilateral triangle symbol superimposed on and geometrically inscribed within the 12-inch (305 mm) diameter of the circle symbol. The vertices of the triangle symbol shall be located  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) maximum from the edge of the circle symbol with a vertex pointing upward. The color of the triangle symbol shall contrast with the color of the circle symbol, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background. The color of the circle symbol shall contrast with the color of the door or surface on which the combined circle and triangle symbol is mounted, either light on a dark background or dark on a light background.

**Exception:** Within secure perimeter of detention and correctional facilities, geometric symbols shall not be required to be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick.

**11B-703.7.2.6.4 Edges and vertices on geometric symbols.** Edges shall be eased or rounded at  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.59 mm) minimum, or chamfered at  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) maximum. Vertices shall be radiused between  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) minimum and  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) maximum.



**FIGURE 11B-703.7.2.6.4  
EDGES AND VERTICES ON GEOMETRIC SYMBOLS**

**11B-703.7.2.7 Pedestrian traffic-control buttons.** Pole-supported pedestrian traffic-control buttons shall be identified with color coding consisting of a textured horizontal yellow band 2 inches (51 mm) in width encircling the pole, and a 1-inch-wide (25 mm) dark border band above and below this yellow band. Color coding shall be placed immediately above the control button. Control buttons shall be located no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the ground surface adjacent to the pole.

**11B-703.8 Variable message signs.**

**11B-703.8.1 General.** High resolution variable message sign (VMS) characters shall comply with Sections 11B-703.5 and 11B-703.8.12 through 11B-703.8.14. Low resolution variable message sign (VMS) characters shall comply with Section 11B-703.8.

**11B-703.8.2 Case.** Low resolution VMS characters shall be uppercase.

**11B-703.8.3 Style.** Low resolution VMS characters shall be conventional in form, shall be sans serif, and shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative or of other unusual forms.

**11B-703.8.4 Character height.** The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all low resolution VMS characters of a font. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall have a minimum height complying with Table 11B-703.8.4.

**Exception:** In assembly seating where the maximum viewing distance is 100 feet (30.5 m) or greater, the height of the uppercase "I" of low resolution VMS fonts shall be permitted to be 1 inch (25 mm) for every 30 feet (9144 mm) of viewing distance, provided the character height is 8 inches (203 mm) minimum. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and where someone is expected to view the sign.

**11B-703.8.5 Character width.** The uppercase letter "O" shall be used to determine the allowable width of all low resolution VMS characters of a font. Low resolution VMS characters shall comply with the pixel count for character width in Table 11B-703.8.5.

**11B-703.8.6 Stroke width.** The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable stroke width of all low resolution VMS characters of a font. Low resolution VMS characters shall comply with the pixel count for stroke width in Table 11B-703.8.5.

**11B-703.8.7 Character spacing.** Spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent low resolution VMS characters within a message, excluding word spaces. Low resolution VMS character spacing shall comply with the pixel count for character spacing in Table 11B-703.8.5.

**11B-703.8.8 Line spacing.** Low resolution VMS characters shall comply with Section 11B-703.5.9.

**11B-703.8.9 Height above floor.** Low resolution VMS characters shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum above the floor of the viewing position, measured to the baseline of the character. Heights of low resolution variable mes-

sage sign characters shall comply with Table 11B-703.8.4, based on the size of the characters on the sign.

**11B-703.8.10 Finish.** The background of low resolution VMS characters shall have a nonglare finish.

**11B-703.8.11 Contrast.** Low resolution VMS characters shall be light characters on a dark background.

**11B-703.8.12 Protective covering.** Where a protective layer is placed over VMS characters through which the VMS characters must be viewed, the protective covering shall have a nonglare finish.

**11B-703.8.13 Brightness.** The brightness of variable message signs in exterior locations shall automatically adjust in response to change in ambient light levels.

**11B-703.8.14 Rate of change.** Where a VMS message can be displayed in its entirety on a single screen, it shall be displayed on a single screen and shall remain motionless on the screen for a minimum 3 seconds or 1 second minimum for every seven characters of the message including spaces, whichever is longer.

**TABLE 11B-703.8.5  
PIXEL COUNT FOR LOW RESOLUTION VMS**

CHARACTER HEIGHT	CHARACTER WIDTH RANGE	STROKE WIDTH RANGE	CHARACTER SPACING RANGE
7	5-6	1	2
8	6-7	1-2	2-3
9	6-8	1-2	2-3
10	7-9	2	2-4
11	8-10	2	2-4
12	8-11	2	3-4
13	9-12	2-3	3-5
14	10-13	2-3	3-5
15	11-14	2-3	3-5

#### 11B-704 Telephones

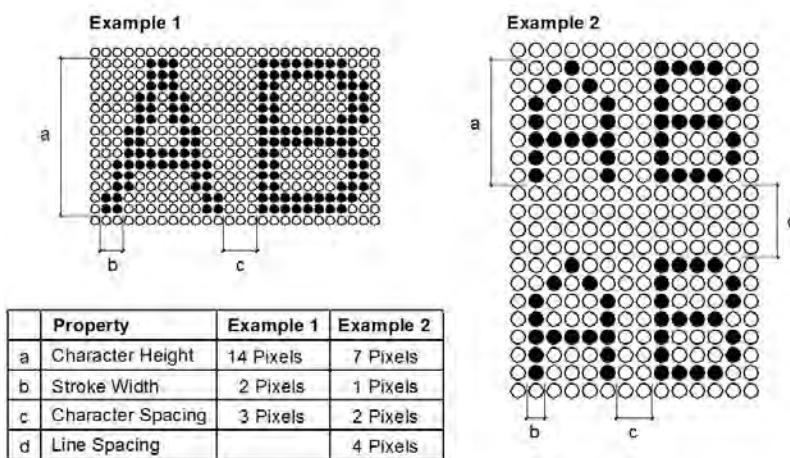
**11B-704.1 General.** Public telephones shall comply with Section 11B-704.

**11B-704.2 Wheelchair accessible telephones.** Wheelchair accessible telephones shall comply with Section 11B-704.2.

**TABLE 11B-703.8.4  
LOW RESOLUTION VMS CHARACTER HEIGHT**

HEIGHT ABOVE FLOOR TO BASELINE OF CHARACTER	HORIZONTAL VIEWING DISTANCE	MINIMUM CHARACTER HEIGHT
40 inches (1016 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1778 mm)	Less than 10 feet (3048 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	10 feet (3048 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus $\frac{1}{5}$ inch (5.1 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 10 feet (3048 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1778 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3048 mm)	Less than 15 feet (4572 mm)	3 inches (76 mm)
	15 feet (4572 mm) and greater	3 inches (76 mm), plus $\frac{1}{5}$ inch (5.1 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 15 feet (4572 mm)
Greater than 120 inches (3048 mm)	Less than 20 feet (6096 mm)	4 inches (102 mm)
	20 feet (6096 mm) and greater	4 inches (102 mm), plus $\frac{1}{5}$ inch (5.1 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 20 feet (6096 mm)

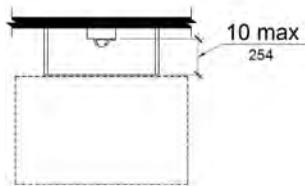
## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING



**FIGURE 11B-703.8.5  
LOW RESOLUTION VMS CHARACTERS**

**11B-704.2.1 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall not be obstructed by bases, enclosures or seats.

**11B-704.2.1.1 Parallel approach.** Where a parallel approach is provided, the distance from the edge of the telephone enclosure to the face of the telephone unit shall be 10 inches (254 mm) maximum.



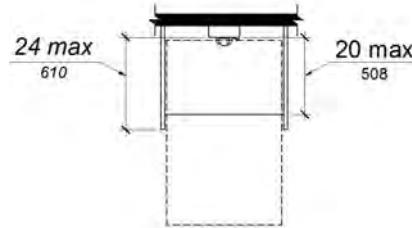
**FIGURE 11B-704.2.1.1  
PARALLEL APPROACH TO TELEPHONE**

**11B-704.2.1.2 Forward approach.** Where a forward approach is provided at a telephone within an enclosure, the counter may extend beyond the face of the telephone 20 inches (508 mm) into the required clear floor or ground space and the enclosure may extend beyond the face of the telephone 24 inches (610 mm). If an additional 6 inches (152 mm) in width of clear floor space is provided, creating a clear floor space of 36 inches by 48 inches (914 mm by 1219 mm), the enclosure may extend more than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the face of the telephone.

**11B-704.2.2 Operable parts.** Operable parts shall comply with *Section 11B-309*. Telephones shall have push-button controls where such service is available.

**11B-704.2.3 Telephone directories.** Telephone directories, where provided, shall be located in accordance with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-704.2.4 Cord length.** The cord from the telephone to the handset shall be 29 inches (737 mm) long minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-704.2.1.2  
FORWARD APPROACH TO TELEPHONE**

**11B-704.3 Volume control telephones.** Public telephones required to have volume controls shall be equipped with a receive volume control that provides a gain adjustable up to 20 dB minimum. For incremental volume control, provide at least one intermediate step of 12 dB of gain minimum. An automatic reset shall be provided. *Volume control telephones shall be equipped with a receiver that generates a magnetic field in the area of the receiver cap. Public telephones with volume control shall be hearing aid compatible.*

**11B-704.4 TTYS.** TTYS provided at a public pay telephone shall be permanently affixed within, or adjacent to, the telephone enclosure. Where an acoustic coupler is used, the telephone cord shall be sufficiently long to allow connection of the TTY and the telephone receiver.

**11B-704.4.1 Height.** When in use, the touch surface of TTY keypads shall be 34 inches (864 mm) minimum above the finish floor.

**Exception:** Where seats are provided, TTYS shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-704.4.1*.

**11B-704.5 TTY shelf.** Public pay telephones required to accommodate portable TTYS shall be equipped with a shelf and an electrical outlet within or adjacent to the telephone enclosure. The telephone handset shall be capable of being placed flush on the surface of the shelf. The shelf shall be capable of accommo-

dating a TTY and shall have 6 inches (152 mm) minimum vertical clearance above the area where the TTY is to be placed.

### **11B-705 Detectable warnings and detectable directional texture**

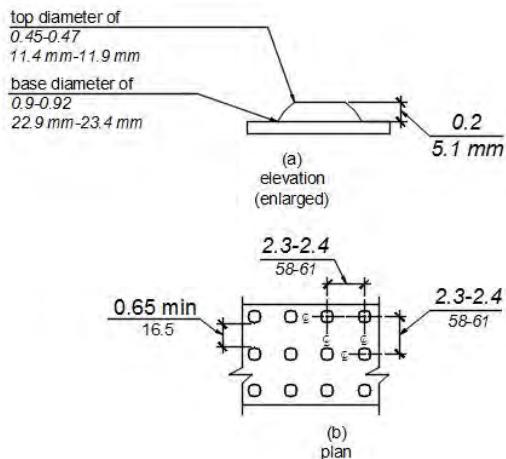
#### **11B-705.1 Detectable warnings**

**11B-705.1.1 General.** Detectable warnings shall consist of a surface of truncated domes and shall comply with Section 11B-705.

**11B-705.1.1.1 Dome size.** Truncated domes in a detectable warning surface shall have a base diameter of 0.9 inch (22.9 mm) minimum and 0.92 inch (23.4 mm) maximum, a top diameter of 0.45 inch (11.4 mm) minimum and 0.47 inch (11.9 mm) maximum, and a height of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm).

**11B-705.1.1.2 Dome spacing.** Truncated domes in a detectable warning surface shall have a center-to-center spacing of 2.3 inches (58 mm) minimum and 2.4 inches (61 mm) maximum, and a base-to-base spacing of 0.65 inch (16.5 mm) minimum, measured between the most adjacent domes on a square grid.

**Exception:** Where installed in a radial pattern, truncated domes shall have a center-to-center spacing of 1.6 inches (41 mm) minimum to 2.4 inches (61 mm) maximum.



**FIGURE 11B-705.1  
SIZE AND SPACING OF TRUNCATED DOMES**

**11B-705.1.1.3 Color and contrast.** Detectable warning surfaces shall comply with Section 11B-705.1.1.3.1. The material used to comply with this section shall be an integral part of the detectable warning surface.

**Exceptions:**

1. Replacement of less than 20 percent of existing detectable warnings at a single contiguous location shall be permitted to be in-kind at existing curb ramps, islands or cut-through medians with detectable warnings in compliance with the code requirements in effect at the time of installation.
2. Existing installed detectable warnings at curb ramps, islands or cut-through medians may

comply with Section 11B-705.1.1.3.2 in lieu of Section 11B-705.1.1.3.1.

**11B-705.1.1.3.1 Detectable warning surfaces shall be yellow and approximate 33538 of SAE AMS-STD-595A.**

**11B-705.1.1.3.2 Detectable warning surfaces shall provide a 70 percent minimum visual contrast with adjacent walking surfaces. Contrast in percent shall be determined by:**

$$\text{Contrast percent} = [(B1-B2)/B1] \times 100 \text{ where}$$

$B1 = \text{light reflectance value (LRV) of the lighter area and}$

$B2 = \text{light reflectance value (LRV) of the darker area.}$

**Exception:** Where the detectable warning surface does not provide a 70 percent minimum contrast with adjacent walking surfaces, a 1-inch (25 mm) wide minimum visually contrasting surface shall separate the detectable warning from adjacent walking surfaces. The visually contrasting surface shall contrast with both the detectable warning and adjacent walking surfaces, either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

**11B-705.1.1.4 Resiliency.** Detectable warning surfaces shall differ from adjoining surfaces in resiliency or sound-on-cane contact.

**Exception:** Detectable warning surfaces at curb ramps, islands or cut-through medians shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-705.1.1.4.

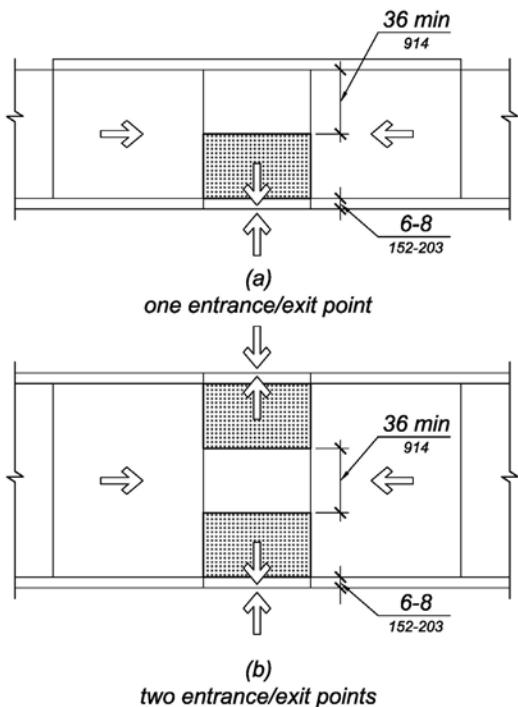
**11B-705.1.2 Locations.** Detectable warnings at the following locations shall comply with Section 11B-705.1.

**11B-705.1.2.1 Platform edges.** Detectable warning surfaces at platform boarding edges shall be 24 inches (610 mm) wide and shall extend the full length of the public use areas of the platform.

**11B-705.1.2.2 Curb ramps.** Detectable warnings at curb ramps shall comply with Section 11B-705.1.2.2.

**11B-705.1.2.2.1 Perpendicular curb ramps.** Detectable warnings at curb ramps shall extend 36 inches (914 mm) in the direction of travel. Detectable warnings shall extend the full width of the ramp run less 2 inches (51 mm) maximum on each side, excluding any flared sides. Detectable warnings shall be located so the edge nearest the curb is 6 inches (152 mm) minimum and 8 inches (203 mm) maximum from the demarcation line at the face of the curb between the curb and the gutter, street or highway.

**11B-705.1.2.2.2 Parallel curb ramps.** Detectable warnings at parallel curb ramps shall be located so the edge nearest the curb is 6 inches (152 mm) minimum and 8 inches (203 mm) maximum from the demarcation line at the face of the curb between the curb and the gutter, street or highway. Detectable warnings shall extend the full width of the turning space at the demarcation between the street and the sidewalk less 2 inches (51 mm) maximum on each side.



**FIGURE 11B-705.1.2.2.2  
PARALLEL CURB RAMPS**

**11B-705.1.2.2.2.1 One entrance/exit point.** Where the turning space has one entrance/exit point other than the sloped ramp segments, detectable warnings shall be 36 inches (914 mm) deep, as measured perpendicular to the curb, and the turning space shall provide a minimum 36 inches (914 mm) wide portion without detectable warnings to allow pedestrian travel in the direction of the sidewalk without travelling over the detectable warnings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where it is technically infeasible to provide a minimum 72 inches (1828 mm) wide turning space, as measured perpendicular to the curb, the depth of detectable warnings may be reduced to 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.
2. Existing parallel curb ramps with detectable warnings in compliance with the code requirements in effect at the time of installation shall not be required to provide a minimum 36 inches (914 mm) wide portion of the turning space without detectable warnings.

**11B-705.1.2.2.2.2 Two entrance/exit points.** Where the turning space has two entrance/exit points other than the sloped ramp segments, detectable warnings shall be 36 inches (914 mm) deep at both entrance/exit points, as measured perpendicular to the curb, and the turning space shall provide a minimum 36 inches (914 mm) wide

portion without detectable warnings to allow pedestrian travel in the direction of the sidewalk without travelling over the detectable warnings.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where it is technically infeasible to provide a minimum 108 inches (2743 mm) wide turning space, as measured perpendicular to the curb, the depth of detectable warnings may be reduced to 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.
2. Existing parallel curb ramps with detectable warnings in compliance with the code requirements in effect at the time of installation shall not be required to provide a minimum 36 inches (914 mm) wide portion of the turning space without detectable warnings.

**11B-705.1.2.3 Islands or cut-through medians.** Detectable warnings at pedestrian islands or cut-through medians shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum in depth extending the full width of the pedestrian path or cut-through less 2 inches (51 mm) maximum on each side, placed at the edges of the pedestrian island or cut-through median, and shall be separated by 24 inches (610 mm) minimum of walking surface without detectable warnings.

**Exception:** Detectable warnings shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in depth at pedestrian islands or cut-through medians that are less than 96 inches (2438 mm) in length in the direction of pedestrian travel.

**11B-705.1.2.4 Bus stops.** When detectable warnings are provided at bus stop boarding and alighting areas, the detectable warnings shall extend the full width of the boarding/alighting area and shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum in depth.

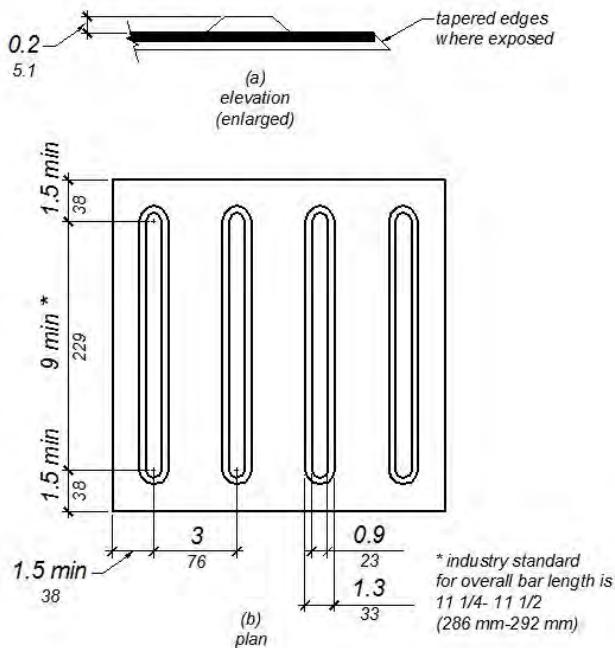
**11B-705.1.2.5 Blended transitions.** Detectable warnings at blended transitions shall be 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

**11B-705.1.2.6 Reflecting pools.** When detectable warnings are provided at reflecting pools, it shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum in width.

**11B-705.1.2.7 Track crossings.** Detectable warnings at track crossings shall be 36 inches (914 mm) in the direction of pedestrian travel and extend the full width of the circulation path.

**11B-705.2 Detectable directional texture.** Detectable directional texture at transit boarding platforms shall comply with Figure 11B-705.2 and shall be 0.1 inch (2.5 mm) in height that tapers off to 0.04 inch (1.0 mm), with bars raised 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) from the surface. The raised bars shall be 1.3 inches (33 mm) wide and 3 inches (76 mm) from center-to-center of each bar. This surface shall differ from adjoining walking surfaces in resiliency or sound-on-cane contact. The color shall be yellow and approximate FS 33538 of Federal Standard 595C. This surface will be placed directly behind the yellow detectable warning texture specified in Section 11B-705.1.2.1, aligning with all doors of the transit vehicles

where passengers will embark. The width of the directional texture shall be equal to the width of the transit vehicle's door opening. The depth of the texture shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm).



**FIGURE 11B-705.2  
DETECTABLE DIRECTIONAL TEXTURE**

**11B-705.3 Product approval.** Only approved DSA-AC detectable warning products and directional surfaces shall be installed as provided in the California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 1, Chapter 5, Articles 2, 3 and 4. Refer to CCR Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 11B, Section 12-11B.205 for building and facility access specifications for product approval for detectable warning products and directional surfaces.

#### 11B-706 Assistive listening systems

**11B-706.1 General.** Assistive listening systems required in assembly areas, conference and meeting rooms shall comply with Section 11B-706.

**11B-706.2 Receiver jacks.** Receivers required for use with an assistive listening system shall include a  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) standard mono jack.

**11B-706.3 Receiver hearing-aid compatibility.** Receivers required to be hearing-aid compatible shall interface with telecoils in hearing aids through the provision of neckloops.

**11B-706.4 Sound pressure level.** Assistive listening systems shall be capable of providing a sound pressure level of 110 dB minimum and 118 dB maximum with a dynamic range on the volume control of 50 dB.

**11B-706.5 Signal-to-noise ratio.** The signal-to-noise ratio for internally generated noise in assistive listening systems shall be 18 dB minimum.

**11B-706.6 Peak clipping level.** Peak clipping shall not exceed 18 dB of clipping relative to the peaks of speech.

#### 11B-707 Automatic teller machines, fare machines and point-of-sale devices

**11B-707.1 General.** Automatic teller machines, fare machines and point-of-sale devices shall comply with Section 11B-707.

**11B-707.2 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided.

**Exception:** Clear floor or ground space shall not be required at drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines.

**11B-707.3 Operable parts.** Operable parts shall comply with Section 11B-309. Unless a clear or correct key is provided, each operable part shall be able to be differentiated by sound or touch, without activation.

##### Exceptions:

1. Drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with Sections 11B-309.2 and 11B-309.3.
2. Where automatic teller machines and fare machines do not require compliance with Section 11B-707.2, compliance with Sections 11B-309.2 and 11B-309.3 shall not be required.
3. Where point-of-sale devices do not require compliance with Section 11B-707.2, compliance with Sections 11B-309.2 and 11B-309.3 shall not be required.

**11B-707.4 Privacy.** Automatic teller machines shall provide the opportunity for the same degree of privacy of input and output available to all individuals.

**11B-707.5 Speech output.** Machines shall be speech enabled. Operating instructions and orientation, visible transaction prompts, user input verification, error messages, and all displayed information for full use shall be accessible to and independently usable by individuals with vision impairments. Speech shall be delivered through a mechanism that is readily available to all users, including but not limited to, an industry standard connector or a telephone handset. Speech shall be recorded or digitized human, or synthesized.

##### Exceptions:

1. Audible tones shall be permitted instead of speech for visible output that is not displayed for security purposes, including but not limited to, asterisks representing personal identification numbers.
2. Advertisements and other similar information shall not be required to be audible unless they convey information that can be used in the transaction being conducted.
3. Where speech synthesis cannot be supported, dynamic alphabetic output shall not be required to be audible.

**11B-707.5.1 User control.** Speech shall be capable of being repeated or interrupted. Volume control shall be provided for the speech function.

**Exception:** Speech output for any single function shall be permitted to be automatically interrupted when a transaction is selected.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-707.5.2 Receipts.** Where receipts are provided, speech output devices shall provide audible balance inquiry information, error messages and all other information on the printed receipt necessary to complete or verify the transaction.

**Exceptions:**

1. Machine location, date and time of transaction, customer account number, and the machine identifier shall not be required to be audible.
2. Information on printed receipts that duplicates information available on-screen shall not be required to be presented in the form of an audible receipt.
3. Printed copies of bank statements and checks shall not be required to be audible.

**11B-707.6 Input.** Input devices shall comply with *Section 11B-707.6*.

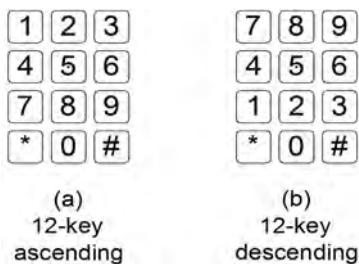
**11B-707.6.1 Input controls.** At least one tactiley discernible input control shall be provided for each function. Where provided, key surfaces not on active areas of display screens, shall be raised above surrounding surfaces. Where membrane keys are the only method of input, each shall be tactiley discernible from surrounding surfaces and adjacent keys.

**11B-707.6.2 Numeric keys.** Numeric keys shall be arranged in a 12-key ascending or descending telephone keypad layout. The number five key shall be tactiley distinct from the other keys.

**11B-707.6.3 Function keys.** Function keys shall comply with *Section 11B-707.6.3*.

**11B-707.6.3.1 Contrast.** Function keys shall contrast visually from background surfaces. Characters and symbols on key surfaces shall contrast visually from key surfaces. Visual contrast shall be either light-on-dark or dark-on-light.

**Exception:** Tactile symbols required by *Section 11B-707.6.3.2* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-707.6.3.1*.



**FIGURE 11B-707.6.2  
NUMERIC KEY LAYOUT**

**11B-707.6.3.2 Tactile symbols.** Function key surfaces shall have tactile symbols as follows: Enter or Proceed key: raised circle; Clear or Correct key: raised left arrow;

Cancel key: raised letter ex; Add Value key: raised plus sign; Decrease Value key: raised minus sign.

**11B-707.7 Display screen.** The display screen shall comply with *Section 11B-707.7*.

**Exception:** Drive-up only automatic teller machines and fare machines shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-707.7.1*.

**11B-707.7.1 Visibility.** The display screen shall be visible from a point located 40 inches (1016 mm) above the center of the clear floor space in front of the machine.

**11B-707.7.1.1 Vertically mounted display screen.** Where display screens are mounted vertically or tipped away from the viewer less than 30 degrees, the center line of the display screen and other display devices shall be no more than 52 inches (1321 mm) above the floor or ground surface.

**11B-707.7.1.2 Angle-mounted display screen.** Where display screens are mounted tipped away from the viewer 30 degrees to less than 60 degrees from vertical, the center line of the display screen and other display devices shall be no more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor or ground surface.

**11B-707.7.1.3 Horizontally mounted display screen.** Where display screens are mounted tipped away from the viewer 60 degrees to 90 degrees (horizontal) from vertical, the center line of the display screen and other display devices shall be no more than 34 inches (864 mm) above the floor or ground surface.

**11B-707.7.2 Characters.** Characters displayed on the screen shall be in a sans serif font. Characters shall be  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) high minimum based on the uppercase letter "I". Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background or dark characters on a light background.

**11B-707.8 Braille instructions.** Braille instructions for initiating the speech mode shall be provided. Braille shall comply with *Section 11B-703.3*.

**11B-707.9 Point-of-sale devices.** Point-of-sale devices shall comply with *Section 11B-707.9*.

**11B-707.9.1 General.** Point-of-sale systems that include a video touch screen or any other non-tactile keypad shall be equipped with either of the following:

**11B-707.9.1.1 Tactiley discernible numerical keypad.** A tactiley discernible numerical keypad similar to a telephone keypad containing a raised dot with a dot base diameter between 1.5 mm and 1.6 mm and a height between 0.6 mm and 0.9 mm on the number 5 key that enables a visually impaired person to enter his or her own personal identification number or any other personal information necessary to process the transaction in a manner that provides the opportunity for the same degree of privacy input and output available to all individuals.

**11B-707.9.1.2 Other technology.** Other technology, such as a radio frequency identification device, finger-print biometrics or some other mechanism that enables

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

*a visually impaired person to access the video touch screen device with his or her personal identifier and to process his or her transaction in a manner that provides the opportunity for the same degree of privacy input and output available to all individuals. Where a video screen overlay is provided it shall be equipped with a tactilely discernible numerical keypad complying with Section 11B-707.9.1.1.*

**11B-708 Two-way communication systems**

**11B-708.1 General.** Two-way communication systems shall comply with *Section 11B-708*.

**11B-708.2 Audible and visual indicators.** The system shall provide both audible and visual signals.

**11B-708.3 Handsets.** Handset cords, if provided, shall be 29 inches (737 mm) long minimum.

**11B-708.4 Residential dwelling unit communication systems.** Communications systems between a residential dwelling unit and a site, building or floor entrance shall comply with *Section 11B-708.4*.

**11B-708.4.1 Common use or public use system interface.** The common use or public use system interface shall include the capability of supporting voice and TTY communication with the residential dwelling unit interface.

**11B-708.4.2 Residential dwelling unit interface.** The residential dwelling unit system interface shall include a telephone jack capable of supporting voice and TTY communication with the common use or public use system interface.

## DIVISION 8:

### SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES AND ELEMENTS

#### **11B-801 General**

**11B-801.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 8* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this *chapter*.

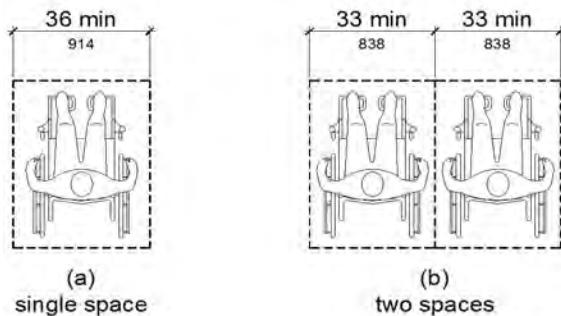
#### **11B-802 Wheelchair spaces, companion seats and designated aisle seats and semi-ambulant seats**

**11B-802.1 Wheelchair spaces.** Wheelchair spaces shall comply with *Section 11B-802.1*.

**11B-802.1.1 Floor or ground surface.** The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall comply with *Section 11B-302*. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.

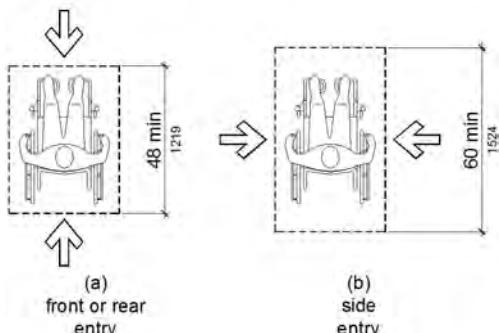
**Exception:** Reserved.

**11B-802.1.2 Width.** A single wheelchair space shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum. Where two adjacent wheelchair spaces are provided, each wheelchair space shall be 33 inches (838 mm) wide minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-802.1.2  
WIDTH OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES**

**11B-802.1.3 Depth.** Where a wheelchair space can be entered from the front or rear, the wheelchair space shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) deep minimum. Where a wheelchair space can be entered only from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) deep minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-802.1.3  
DEPTH OF WHEELCHAIR SPACES**

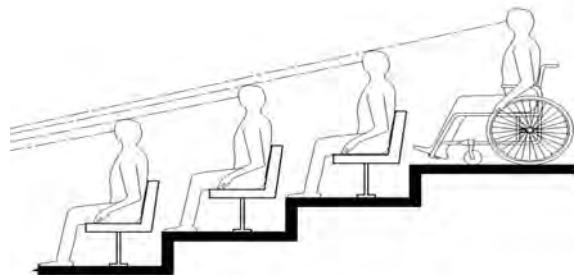
**11B-802.1.4 Approach.** Wheelchair spaces shall adjoin accessible routes. Accessible routes shall not overlap wheelchair spaces.

**11B-802.1.5 Overlap.** Wheelchair spaces shall not overlap circulation paths.

**11B-802.2 Lines of sight.** Lines of sight to the screen, performance area or playing field for spectators in wheelchair spaces shall comply with *Section 11B-802.2*.

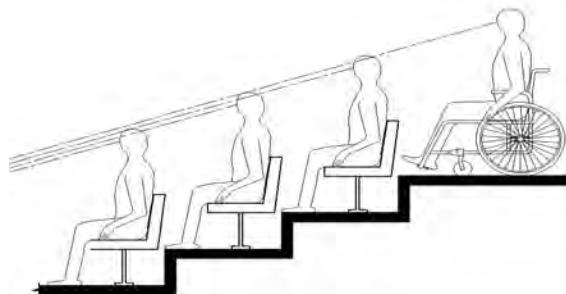
**11B-802.2.1 Lines of sight over seated spectators.** Where spectators are expected to remain seated during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with *Section 11B-802.2.1*.

**11B-802.2.1.1 Lines of sight over heads.** Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of spectators seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of seated spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.



**FIGURE 11B-802.2.1.1  
LINES OF SIGHT OVER THE  
HEADS OF SEATED SPECTATORS**

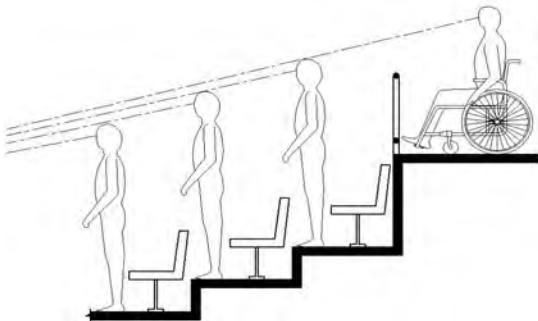
**11B-802.2.1.2 Lines of sight between heads.** Where spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of spectators seated in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of seated spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.



**FIGURE 11B-802.2.1.2  
LINES OF SIGHT BETWEEN THE  
HEADS OF SEATED SPECTATORS**

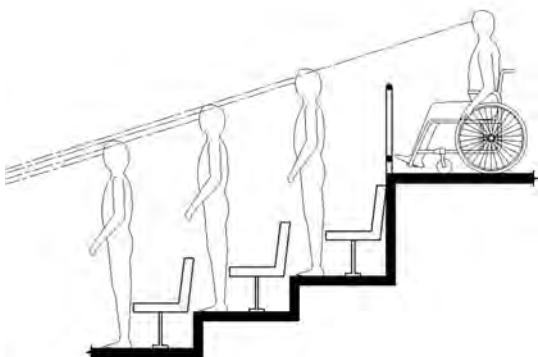
**11B-802.2.2 Lines of sight over standing spectators.** Where spectators are expected to stand during events, spectators in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight complying with *Section 11B-802.2.2*.

**11B-802.2.2.1 Lines of sight over heads.** Where standing spectators are provided lines of sight over the heads of spectators standing in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the heads of standing spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.



**FIGURE 11B-802.2.2.1  
LINES OF SIGHT OVER THE  
HEADS OF STANDING SPECTATORS**

**11B-802.2.2.2 Lines of sight between heads.** Where standing spectators are provided lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of spectators standing in the first row in front of their seats, spectators seated in wheelchair spaces shall be afforded lines of sight over the shoulders and between the heads of standing spectators in the first row in front of wheelchair spaces.



**FIGURE 11B-802.2.2.2  
LINES OF SIGHT BETWEEN THE  
HEADS OF STANDING SPECTATORS**

**11B-802.3 Companion seats.** Companion seats shall comply with *Section 11B-802.3*.

**11B-802.3.1 Alignment.** In row seating, companion seats shall be located to provide shoulder alignment with adjacent wheelchair spaces. The shoulder alignment point of the wheelchair space shall be measured 36 inches (914 mm) from the front of the wheelchair space. The floor surface of the companion seat shall be at the same elevation as the floor surface of the wheelchair space.

**11B-802.3.2 Type.** Companion seats shall be equivalent in size, quality, comfort and amenities to the seating in the immediate area. Companion seats shall be permitted to be movable.

**11B-802.4 Designated aisle seats.** Designated aisle seats shall comply with *Section 11B-802.4*.

**11B-802.4.1 Armrests.** Where armrests are provided on the seating in the immediate area, folding or retractable armrests shall be provided on the aisle side of the seat.

**11B-802.4.2 Identification.** Each designated aisle seat shall be identified by a sign or marker with the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. Signs complying with *Section 11B-703.5*, notifying patrons of the availability of such seats shall be posted at the ticket office.

**11B-802.5 Semi-ambulant seats.** Semi-ambulant seats shall provide at least 24 inches (610 mm) clear leg space between the front of the seat to the nearest obstruction or to the back of the seat immediately in front.

#### **11B-803 Dressing, fitting and locker rooms**

**11B-803.1 General.** Dressing, fitting and locker rooms shall comply with *Section 11B-803*.

**11B-803.2 Turning space.** Turning space complying with *Section 11B-304* shall be provided within the room.

**11B-803.3 Door swing.** Doors shall not swing into the room unless a turning space complying with *Section 11B-304.3* is provided beyond the arc of the door swing.

**11B-803.4 Benches.** A bench complying with *Section 11B-903* shall be provided within the room.

**11B-803.5 Coat hooks and shelves.** Coat hooks provided within the room shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in *Section 11B-308*. Shelves shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Coat hooks shall not be located above the bench or other seating in the room.

**11B-803.6 Mirrors.** Mirrors shall be installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 20 inches (508 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. Mirrors shall be full length with a reflective surface 18 inches (457 mm) wide minimum by 54 inches (1372 mm) high minimum and shall be mounted in a position affording a view to a person on the bench as well as to a person in a standing position.

#### **11B-804 Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars.**

**11B-804.1 General.** Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars shall comply with *Section 11B-804*.

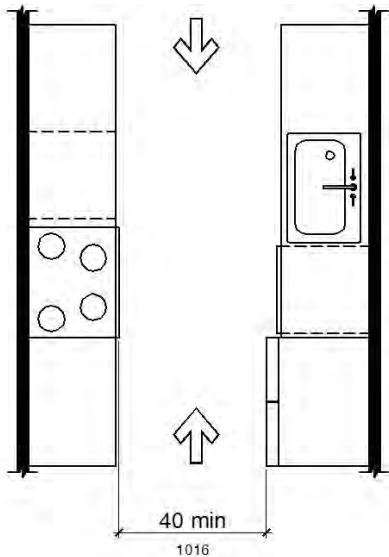
**11B-804.2 Clearance.** Where a pass through kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with *Section 11B-804.2.1*. Where a U-shaped kitchen is provided, clearances shall comply with *Section 11B-804.2.2*.

**Exception:** Spaces that do not provide a cooktop or conventional range shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-804.2*.

**11B-804.2.1 Pass through kitchen.** In pass through kitchens where counters, appliances or cabinets are on two opposing sides, or where counters, appliances or cabinets are opposite a parallel wall, clearance between all oppos-

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

ing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum. Pass through kitchens shall have two entries.



**FIGURE 11B-804.2.1  
PASS THROUGH KITCHENS**

**11B-804.2.2 U-shaped.** In U-shaped kitchens enclosed on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, counter tops, appliances or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum.

**11B-804.2.3 Turning space.** In kitchens within multi-bedroom housing units and on floors containing accessible sleeping rooms with adaptable features in undergraduate student housing, turning spaces complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided.

**11B-804.3 Kitchen work surface.** In residential dwelling units required to comply with Section 11B-809, at least one 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum section of counter shall provide a kitchen work surface that complies with Section 11B-804.3. In kitchens within multi-bedroom housing units and on floors con-

taining accessible sleeping rooms with adaptable features in undergraduate student housing, at least one 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum section of counter shall provide a kitchen work surface that complies with Section 11B-804.3.

**11B-804.3.1 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305 positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. The clear floor or ground space shall be centered on the kitchen work surface and shall provide knee and toe clearance complying with Section 11B-306.

**Exception:** Cabinetry shall be permitted under the kitchen work surface provided that all of the following conditions are met:

- the cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the kitchen work surface;
- the finish floor extends under the cabinetry; and
- the walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

**11B-804.3.2 Height.** The kitchen work surface shall be 34 inches (864 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

**Exception:** A counter that is adjustable to provide a kitchen work surface at variable heights, 29 inches (737 mm) minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) maximum, shall be permitted.

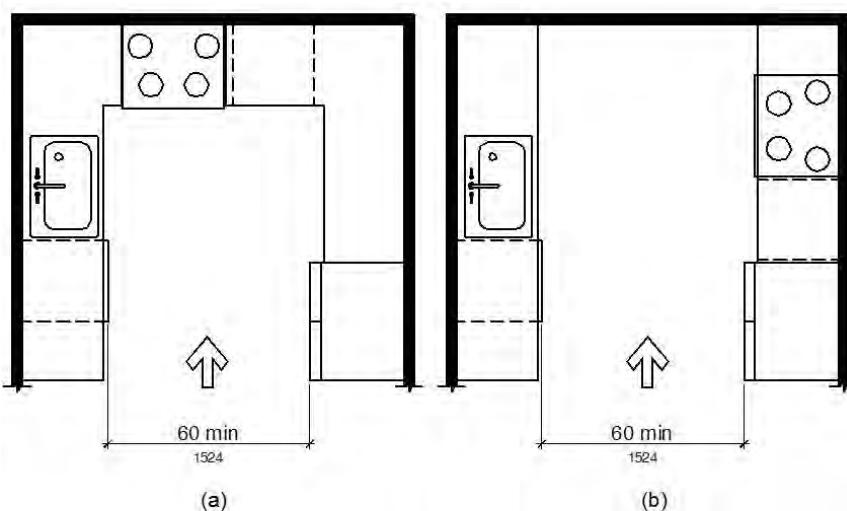
**11B-804.3.3 Exposed surfaces.** There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under the work surface counters.

**11B-804.4 Sinks.** Sinks shall comply with Section 11B-606.

**11B-804.5 Storage.** At least 50 percent of shelf space in storage facilities shall comply with Section 11B-811.

**11B-804.6 Appliances.** Where provided, kitchen appliances shall comply with Section 11B-804.6.

**11B-804.6.1 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided at each kitchen appliance. Clear floor or ground spaces shall be permitted to overlap.



**FIGURE 11B-804.2.2  
U-SHAPED KITCHENS**

**11B-804.6.2 Operable parts.** All appliance controls shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Appliance doors and door latching devices shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-309.4*.
2. Bottom-hinged appliance doors, when in the open position, shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-309.3*.

**11B-804.6.3 Dishwasher.** Clear floor or ground space shall be positioned adjacent to the dishwasher door. The dishwasher door, in the open position, shall not obstruct the clear floor or ground space for the dishwasher or the sink.

**11B-804.6.4 Range or cooktop.** Where a forward approach is provided, the clear floor or ground space shall provide knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306*. Where knee and toe space is provided, the underside of the range or cooktop shall be insulated or otherwise configured to prevent burns, abrasions or electrical shock. The location of controls shall not require reaching across burners.

**11B-804.6.5 Oven.** Ovens shall comply with *Section 11B-804.6.5*.

**11B-804.6.5.1 Side-hinged door ovens.** Side-hinged door ovens shall have the work surface required by *Section 11B-804.3* positioned adjacent to the latch side of the oven door.

**11B-804.6.5.2 Bottom-hinged door ovens.** Bottom-hinged door ovens shall have the work surface required by *Section 11B-804.3* positioned adjacent to one side of the door.

**11B-804.6.5.3 Controls.** Ovens shall have controls on front panels.

**11B-804.6.6 Refrigerator/freezer.** Combination refrigerators and freezers shall have at least 50 percent of the freezer space 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. The clear floor or ground space shall be positioned for a parallel approach to the space dedicated to a refrigerator/freezer with the centerline of the clear floor or ground space offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the dedicated space.

## 11B-805 Medical care and long-term care facilities

**11B-805.1 General.** Medical care facilities and long-term care facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-805*. All common use spaces and public use spaces in medical care facilities and long-term care facilities shall comply with this chapter.

**11B-805.2 Patient bedrooms and resident sleeping rooms.** Patient bedrooms and resident sleeping rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with *Section 11B-805.2*.

**11B-805.2.1 Hand washing fixtures.** Hand washing fixtures shall comply with *Section 11B-606*.

**11B-805.2.2 Beds.** A 36 inch (914 mm) minimum wide clear space shall be provided along the full length of each side of the beds.

**11B-805.2.3 Turning space.** Turning space complying with *Section 11B-304* shall be provided within the room.

**11B-805.2.4 Toilet and bathing rooms.** Toilet and bathing rooms that are provided as part of patient bedrooms and resident sleeping rooms complying with *Section 11B-223.2* or *11B-223.3* shall comply with *Section 11B-603*. Where provided, one water closet, one lavatory and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of *Sections 11B-603* through *11B-610*.

**11B-805.3 Waiting rooms.** Waiting rooms shall comply with *Section 11B-805.3*.

**11B-805.3.1 Wheelchair spaces.** Where seating is provided in waiting rooms, at least 5 percent of the seating shall be wheelchair spaces complying with *Section 11B-802.1*.

**Exception:** In waiting rooms serving facilities specializing in treating conditions that affect mobility, 10 percent of the seating shall be wheelchair spaces complying with *Section 11B-802.1*.

**11B-805.4 Examination, diagnostic and treatment rooms.** Examination, diagnostic and treatment rooms shall comply with *Section 11B-805.4*.

**11B-805.4.1 Beds, exam tables, procedure tables, gurneys and lounge chairs.** A 36-inch (914 mm) minimum wide clear space shall be provided along the full length of each side of beds, exam tables, procedure tables, gurneys and lounge chairs.

**Exception:** General exam rooms in non-emergency settings may provide clear space on only one side of beds, gurneys and exam tables.

**11B-805.4.2 Equipment.** Clear space complying with *Section 11B-305.2* shall be provided as required for specific equipment.

**11B-805.4.3 Turning space.** Turning space complying with *Section 11B-304* shall be provided within the room.

**11B-805.5 Patient change areas.** Areas where patients change or are prepared for a procedure shall comply with *Section 11B-222*.

**11B-805.6 Hand washing fixtures, lavatories and sinks.** All hand washing fixtures, lavatories and sinks shall comply with *Section 11B-606*.

**Exception:** Scrub sinks, as defined in California Plumbing Code Section 221.0, shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-606*.

**11B-805.7 Built-in cabinets and work surfaces.** Built-in cabinets, counters and work surfaces shall be accessible, including: patient wardrobes, nurse stations, administrative

*centers, reception desks, medicine preparation areas, laboratory work stations, equipment consoles, clean and soiled utility cabinets and storage areas; and shall comply with Sections 11B-225 and 11B-902.*

**Exceptions:**

1. *Built-in wardrobes in patient bedrooms and resident sleeping rooms not required to be accessible are not required to comply with the provisions of this chapter.*
2. *Clinical laboratory work stations provided in a laboratory area that are in addition to the minimum number required to be accessible (5 percent of the work stations provided, but no fewer than one), are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 11B-902.*

**11B-806 Transient lodging guest rooms**

**11B-806.1 General.** Transient lodging guest rooms shall comply with Section 11B-806. Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-806.2. Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with Section 11B-806.3.

**11B-806.2 Guest rooms with mobility features.** Guest rooms required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-806.2.

**11B-806.2.1 Living and dining areas.** Living and dining areas shall be accessible.

**11B-806.2.2 Exterior spaces.** Exterior spaces, including patios, terraces and balconies, that serve the guest room shall be accessible.

**11B-806.2.3 Sleeping areas.** At least one sleeping area shall provide a 36 inch (914 mm) by 48 inch (1219 mm) minimum clear space on both sides of a bed. The clear space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

**Exception:** Where a single clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305 positioned for parallel approach is provided between two beds, a clear floor or ground space shall not be required on both sides of a bed.

**11B-806.2.3.1 Personal lift device floor space.** *There shall be a clear space under the bed for the use of a personal lift device. The clear space shall extend under the bed parallel to the long side and be adjacent to an accessible route. The clear space shall extend to points horizontally 30 inches (762 mm), vertically 7 inches (178 mm) and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the head and foot end of the bed.*

**11B-806.2.4 Toilet and bathing facilities.** At least one bathroom that is provided as part of a guest room shall comply with Section 11B-603. No fewer than one water closet, one lavatory and one bathtub or shower shall comply with applicable requirements of Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610. In addition, required roll-in shower compartments shall comply with Section 11B-608.2.2 or 11B-608.2.3. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610 shall be permitted to be located in more than one toilet or bathing

area, provided that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the guest room.

**11B-806.2.4.1 Vanity counter top space.** If vanity counter top space is provided in non-accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms, comparable vanity counter top space, in terms of size and proximity to the lavatory, shall also be provided in accessible guest toilet or bathing rooms.

**11B-806.2.5 Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars.** Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars shall comply with Section 11B-804.

**11B-806.2.6 Turning space.** Turning space complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided within the guest room.

**11B-806.3 Guest rooms with communication features.** Guest rooms required to provide communication features shall comply with Section 11B-806.3.

**11B-806.3.1 Alarms.** Where emergency warning systems are provided, fire alarms shall comply with Section 11B-702 and carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Chapter 9, Section 915.

**11B-806.3.2 Notification devices.** Visible notification devices shall be provided to alert room occupants of incoming telephone calls and a door knock or bell. Notification devices shall not be connected to visible alarm signal appliances. Telephones shall have volume controls compatible with the telephone system and shall comply with Section 11B-704.3. Telephones shall be served by an electrical outlet complying with Section 11B-309 located within 48 inches (1219 mm) of the telephone to facilitate the use of a TTY.

**11B-807 Holding cells and housing cells**

**11B-807.1 General.** Holding cells and housing cells shall comply with Section 11B-807.

**11B-807.2 Cells with mobility features.** Cells required to provide mobility features shall comply with Section 11B-807.2.

**11B-807.2.1 Turning space.** Turning space complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided within the cell.

**11B-807.2.2 Benches.** Where benches are provided, at least one bench shall comply with Section 11B-903.

**11B-807.2.3 Beds.** Where beds are provided, clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305 shall be provided on at least one side of the bed. The clear floor space shall be positioned for parallel approach to the side of the bed.

**11B-807.2.4 Toilet and bathing facilities.** Toilet facilities or bathing facilities that are provided as part of a cell shall comply with Section 11B-603. Where provided, no fewer than one water closet, one lavatory and one bathtub or shower shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610.

**11B-807.3 Cells with communication features.** Cells required to provide communication features shall comply with Section 11B-807.3.

**11B-807.3.1 Alarms.** Where audible emergency alarm systems are provided to serve the occupants of cells, visible alarms complying with *Section 11B-702* shall be provided.

**Exception:** Visible alarms shall not be required where inmates or detainees are not allowed independent means of egress.

**11B-807.3.2 Telephones.** Telephones, where provided within cells, shall have volume controls complying with *Section 11B-704.3*.

#### 11B-808 Courtrooms

**11B-808.1 General.** Courtrooms shall comply with *Section 11B-808*.

**11B-808.2 Turning space.** Where provided, areas that are raised or depressed and accessed by ramps or platform lifts with entry ramps shall provide unobstructed turning space complying with *Section 11B-304*.

**11B-808.3 Clear floor space.** Each jury box and witness stand shall have, within its defined area, clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-305*.

**Exception:** In alterations, wheelchair spaces are not required to be located within the defined area of raised jury boxes or witness stands and shall be permitted to be located outside these spaces where ramp or platform lift access poses a hazard by restricting or projecting into a means of egress required by the appropriate administrative authority.

**11B-808.4 Judges' benches and courtroom stations.** Judges' benches, clerks' stations, bailiffs' stations, deputy clerks' stations, court reporters' stations and litigants' and counsel stations shall comply with *Section 11B-902*.

#### 11B-809 Residential dwelling units

**11B-809.1 General.** When located within public housing facilities, residential dwelling units shall comply with *Section 11B-809*. Residential dwelling units required to provide mobility features shall comply with *Sections 11B-809.2 through 11B-809.4*. Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with *Section 11B-809.5*.

**11B-809.2 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes complying with *Division 4* shall be provided within residential dwelling units in accordance with *Section 11B-809.2*.

**Exception:** Accessible routes shall not be required to or within unfinished attics or unfinished basements.

**11B-809.2.1 Location.** At least one accessible route shall connect all spaces and elements which are a part of the residential dwelling unit. Where only one accessible route is provided, it shall not pass through bathrooms, closets or similar spaces.

**11B-809.2.2 Turning space.** All rooms served by an accessible route shall provide a turning space complying with *Section 11B-304*.

**Exception:** Turning space shall not be required in exterior spaces 30 inches (762 mm) maximum in depth or width.

**11B-809.3 Kitchen.** Where a kitchen is provided, it shall comply with *Section 11B-804*.

**11B-809.4 Toilet facilities and bathing facilities.** At least one bathroom shall comply with *Section 11B-603*. No fewer than one of each type of fixture provided within the bathroom shall comply with applicable requirements of *Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610*. Toilet and bathing fixtures required to comply with *Sections 11B-603 through 11B-610* shall be located in the same bathroom or toilet and bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel between other parts of the residential dwelling unit.

**11B-809.4.1 Subsequent bathrooms.** In residential dwelling units with more than one bathroom, when a bathtub is installed in the first bathroom in compliance with *Section 11B-809.4* and a shower compartment is provided in a subsequent bathroom, at least one shower compartment shall comply with *Section 11B-608*.

**11B-809.5 Residential dwelling units with communication features.** Residential dwelling units required to provide communication features shall comply with *Section 11B-809.5*.

**11B-809.5.1 Building fire alarm system.** Where a building fire alarm system is provided, the system wiring shall be extended to a point within the residential dwelling unit in the vicinity of the residential dwelling unit smoke detection system.

**11B-809.5.1.1 Alarm appliances.** Where alarm appliances are provided within a residential dwelling unit as part of the building fire alarm system, they shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.5.2.3.3*.

**11B-809.5.1.2 Activation.** All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for building fire alarm notification shall be activated upon activation of the building fire alarm in the portion of the building containing the residential dwelling unit.

**11B-809.5.2 Residential dwelling unit smoke detection system and carbon monoxide detection system.** Residential dwelling unit smoke detection systems shall comply with *Chapter 9, Section 907.2.11*. Residential dwelling unit carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with *Chapter 4*.

**11B-809.5.2.1 Activation.** All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for smoke detection notification shall be activated upon smoke detection. All visible alarm appliances provided within the residential dwelling unit for carbon monoxide detection notification shall be activated upon carbon monoxide detection.

**11B-809.5.3 Interconnection.** The same visible alarm appliances shall be permitted to provide notification of residential dwelling unit smoke detection, building fire alarm activation and carbon monoxide detection.

**11B-809.5.4 Prohibited use.** Visible alarm appliances used to indicate residential dwelling unit smoke detection, carbon monoxide detection or building fire alarm activation shall not be used for any other purpose within the residential dwelling unit.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-809.5.5 Residential dwelling unit primary entrance.** Communication features shall be provided at the residential dwelling unit primary entrance complying with Section 11B-809.5.5.

**11B-809.5.5.1 Notification.** A hard-wired electric doorbell shall be provided. A button or switch shall be provided outside the residential dwelling unit primary entrance. Activation of the button or switch shall initiate an audible tone and visible signal within the residential dwelling unit. Where visible doorbell signals are located in sleeping areas, they shall have controls to deactivate the signal.

**11B-809.5.5.2 Identification.** A means for visually identifying a visitor without opening the residential dwelling unit entry door shall be provided and shall allow for a minimum 180 degree range of view.

**11B-809.5.6 Site, building or floor entrance.** Where a system, including a closed-circuit system, permitting voice communication between a visitor and the occupant of the residential dwelling unit is provided, the system shall comply with Section 11B-708.4.

**11B-809.6 Residential dwelling units with adaptable features.** Multi-family residential dwelling units with adaptable features shall comply with Sections 11B-809.7 through 11B-809.12.

**11B-809.7 Accessible routes.** An accessible route shall be provided complying with Section 11B-809.7. The accessible route shall pass through the primary entry door, through all rooms within the dwelling unit and exterior decks and balconies. The accessible route shall adjoin or overlap clear floor spaces and connect all exterior doors.

**Exceptions:**

1. An accessible route shall not be required from the interior of the unit into a basement.
2. An accessible route to a garage shall comply with Section 11B-208.3.3.
3. An accessible route shall not be required to rooms or spaces not located on the primary entry level of a multistory dwelling unit.

**11B-809.7.1 Width.** The clear width for the accessible route shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (813 mm) minimum at doors.

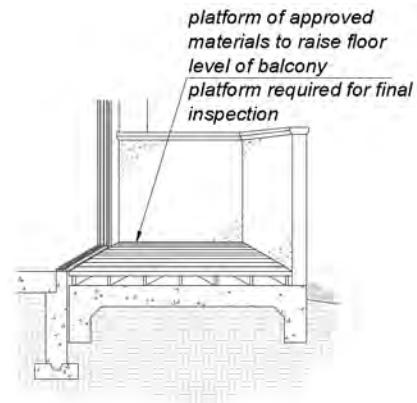
**11B-809.7.2 Changes in level.** Changes in level shall comply with Sections 11B-303.2 and 11B-303.3. Ramps complying with Section 11B-405, elevators complying with Section 11B-407 or platform lifts complying with Section 11B-410 shall be provided where changes in level exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high.

**11B-809.8 Doors.** Primary entry doors, required exit doors, secondary exterior doors and interior doors intended for user passage shall comply with this section and Section 11B-404.2. Doors to small mechanical closets specifically dedi-

cated to furnaces or hot water heaters shall not be required to comply with this section.

**Exceptions:** At primary entry doors, required exit doors, secondary exit doors and interior doors the following exceptions apply:

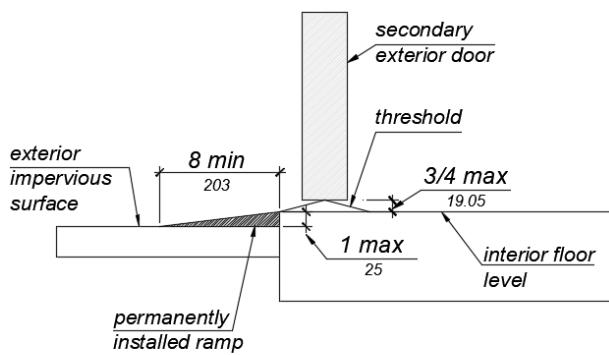
1. The floor or landing at primary entry doors, required exit doors, and secondary exit doors where a change in elevation occurs between the interior and the exterior surface of the floor or landing, shall comply with the following:
  - a. Exterior landings of impervious construction (e.g., concrete, brick, flagstone) serving primary entry doors and required exit doors are limited to not more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of change in height between floor surfaces. Changes in level shall comply with Section 11B-809.7.2.
  - b. Exterior landings of pervious construction (e.g., wood decking with spaces) shall be the same level as the interior landing, except that secondary exterior doors may have no more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of change in height between floor surfaces. Changes in level shall comply with Section 11B-809.7.2.
  - c. Secondary exterior doors onto decks, patios or balcony surfaces constructed of impervious materials (e.g., concrete, brick, flagstone) may have a maximum change in height from the interior landing of 4 inches (102 mm). Changes in height greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) shall be accomplished by means of a ramp complying with Section 11B-405 or by means of a platform constructed to the level of the floor as illustrated in Figure 11B-809.8(c).



**FIGURE 11B-809.8 Ex. 1(c)  
PLATFORM AT SECONDARY EXTERIOR DOOR**

- d. Secondary exterior doors onto decks, patios or balcony surfaces constructed of impervious materials (e.g., concrete, brick, flagstone) may have a maximum change in height from the interior landing of 1 inch (25 mm), provided a ramp with

a maximum slope of 1:8 is permanently installed as illustrated in Figure 11B-809.8(d).



**FIGURE 11B-809.8 Ex. 1(d)  
RAMP AT SECONDARY EXTERIOR DOOR**

**11B-809.8.1 Door thresholds.** Secondary exterior door thresholds, including sliding door tracks, shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) high maximum with a 1:2 maximum slope.

**11B-809.8.2 Door opening force.** The opening force for primary entry exterior doors and secondary exterior doors shall be 8.5 pounds (38 N) maximum.

#### 11B-809.8.3 Door maneuvering clearance.

1. At the dwelling unit side of the primary entry doors, secondary exterior doors, and required exit doors maneuvering clearances shall be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular to the face of the door in the closed position. The width of the maneuvering clearance shall extend 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the strike edge at the pull side of the door.
2. At interior doors maneuvering clearances shall be 42 inches (1067 mm) minimum in length on both sides of the door measured perpendicular to the face of the door in the closed position. A 39-inch (991 mm) minimum length is allowed at interior doors when a clear opening width of 34 inches (864 mm) minimum is provided. The width of the maneuvering clearance shall extend 18 inches (457 mm) beyond the strike edge at the pull side of the door.

**11B-809.8.4 Door signal devices.** Every primary entrance to a residential dwelling unit with adaptable features shall be provided with a door buzzer, bell, chime or equivalent. The activating mechanism shall be mounted 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the floor and connected to permanent wiring.

**11B-809.9 Kitchens.** Kitchens shall be on an accessible route and shall comply with this section.

**11B-809.9.1 Clear floor space.** Clear floor spaces 30 inches (762 mm) by 48 inches (1219 mm), with centerlines aligned with the centerline of the work surface, appliance, sink or fixture, shall be provided in the following locations:

1. For a parallel approach at the range.

2. For parallel or forward approach at a cooktop.
3. For a parallel or forward approach to the sink and to the work surface required by Sections 11B-809.9.3 and 11B-809.9.4.
4. For a parallel or forward approach to all other fixtures or appliances.

**11B-809.9.2 Clear width.** Kitchens shall have a minimum clear width measured between any cabinet, work surface or the face of any appliance (excluding handles and controls) and the opposing cabinet, work surface, appliance or wall as follows:

- a. U-shaped kitchens, designed with parallel approach at a sink, range, cooktop or other fixtures and appliances located at the base of the U without knee and toe clearance, shall provide a clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum.
- b. U-shaped kitchens, with a cooktop, sink or work surface located at the base of the U, that provides knee and toe space complying Sections 11B-809.9.3 and 11B-809.9.4 to allow for a forward approach, shall provide a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum.
- c. All other kitchen designs shall provide a clear width of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum.

**11B-809.9.3 Removable base cabinets.** Knee and toe space complying with Section 11B-306 shall be provided at sinks and work surfaces required to comply with Section 11B-809.9.4.

**Exception:** Removable base cabinets shall be permitted under sinks and work surfaces provided that all of the following conditions are met:

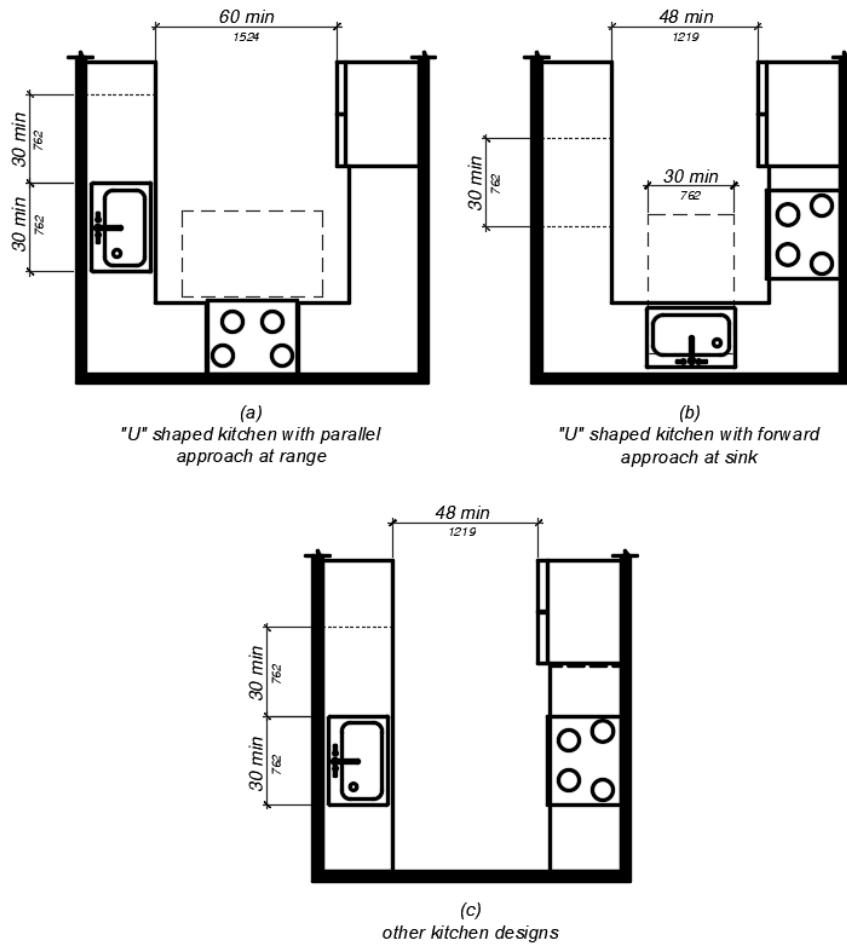
- a) base cabinets can be removed without the use of specialized tools or knowledge;
- b) the finish floor extends under the base cabinet; and
- c) the walls behind and surrounding the base cabinets are finished.

**11B-809.9.4 Work surfaces.** Work surfaces shall be 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor with minimum lengths at the following locations as required by this section:

1. Linear length of 30 inches (762 mm) minimum for installation of a sink.
2. Linear length of 30 inches (762 mm) minimum for work surfaces.
3. A sink and work surface in a single integral unit 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum in length, is permitted.

**11B-809.9.5 Lower shelving.** Lower shelving and/or drawer space shall be provided at a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**11B-809.9.6 Controls.** Controls for faucets shall comply with Section 11B-309.1. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-809.9.2  
CLEAR WIDTH AT KITCHENS**

**11B-809.9.7 Exposed pipes and surfaces.** Exposed water supply and drain pipes under sinks and lavatories shall comply with Section 11B-606.5.

#### 11B-809.10 Toilet and bathing rooms.

**11B-809.10.1 General.** All toilet and bathing rooms on an accessible route within residential dwelling units with adaptable features shall comply with Sections 11B-809.7, 11B-809.8, 11B-809.10.6.4, 11B-809.10.7.3 and 11B-809.12.

**11B-809.10.2 Number of complying bathing rooms and fixtures.** One bathing room and one fixture of each type within the dwelling unit shall be designed to comply with the following:

1. Maneuvering space in toilet, bathing and shower rooms shall comply with Section 11B-809.10.4.
2. Bathtubs complying with Section 11B-809.10.5.
3. Showers complying with Section 11B-809.10.6.
4. Water closets complying with Section 11B-809.10.7.
5. Lavatories, vanities, mirrors and towel bars complying with Section 11B-809.10.8. When two or more

lavatories are provided, at least one shall comply with Section 11B-809.10.8.

6. Where both a tub and shower are provided in the bathroom, at least one shall be made accessible. Where two or more bathrooms are provided, when a bathtub is installed in the first bathroom in compliance with Section 11B-809.10.5 and a shower compartment is provided in a subsequent bathroom, at least one shower compartment shall comply with Section 11B-809.10.6.

**11B-809.10.3 Powder rooms.** Powder rooms shall be designed to comply with Sections 11B-809.7, 11B-809.8, 11B-809.10.5.2, 11B-809.10.6.4, 11B-809.10.7.3 and 11B-809.12. When the powder room is the only toilet facility located on an accessible level it shall, in addition, comply with Sections 11B-809.10.4, 11B-809.10.7 and 11B-809.10.8.

**11B-809.10.4 Sufficient maneuvering space.** Where doors swing into the toilet and bathing or powder rooms required to comply with Section 11B-809.10, a clear maneuvering space of 30 inches (762 mm) by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum shall be provided outside the arc of

the door swing. The clear maneuvering space shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance under bathroom fixtures. Doors shall be permitted to encroach into the clear floor space or clearance for fixtures where clear maneuvering space is provided outside the arc of the door swing. A turning space is not required within the room.

**11B-809.10.5 Bathtubs.** Bathtubs required by Section 11B-809.10 shall comply with this section.

**11B-809.10.5.1 Clear floor space.** A clear floor space 30 inches (762 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum shall be located with the long edge of the clear floor space parallel to the side of the bathtub or bathtub-shower combination. Controls shall be located on the wall at the foot of the bathtub. The edge of the clear floor space shall be flush with the control wall surface. The area under a lavatory, located at the control end of the tub, shall be permitted to encroach on the clear floor space provided the lavatory is 19 inches (483 mm) maximum in depth, and knee and toe clearance complying with Section 11B-306 is provided. Cabinets under lavatories and toilets shall not encroach on the clear floor space.

**11B-809.10.5.2 Reinforcement for grab bars.** Reinforcement for grab bars shall comply with the following:

1. Where bathtubs are installed without surrounding walls reinforcement shall be provided for floor-mounted grab bars.
2. Where bathtubs are installed with surrounding walls, grab bar reinforcement shall be installed as follows:
  - a. At the control end wall and head end wall, between 30 inches (762 mm) maximum to 38 inches (965 mm) minimum above the finish floor, extending 28 inches (711 mm) minimum from the front edge of the bathtub to the back wall of the bathtub. The grab bar reinforcement shall be 8 inches (203 mm) minimum in height.
  - b. At the back wall, from 5 inches (127 mm) maximum above the bathtub rim to 38 inches (965

mm) minimum above the finish floor. Grab bar backing shall be installed horizontally to permit the installation of a 48-inch (1219 mm) grab bar with each end 6 inches (152 mm) maximum from the end walls of the bathtub.

**11B-809.10.5.3 Controls.** Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with Section 11B-309.4.

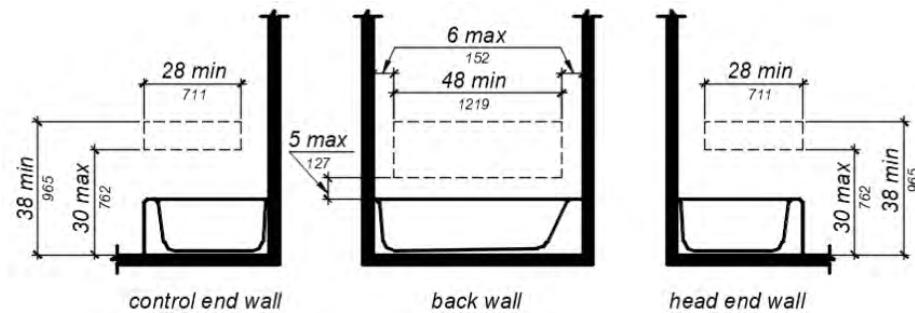
**Exception:** Shower spray units are not required in bathtubs.

**11B-809.10.5.4 Bathtub enclosures.** Doors and panels of bathtub enclosures shall be constructed from approved, shatter-resistant materials. Hinged doors shall open outward. Glazing used in doors and panels of bathtub enclosures shall be fully tempered, laminated safety glass or approved plastic. When glass is used, it shall be  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (3.2 mm) thick minimum when fully tempered, or  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) thick minimum when laminated, and shall pass the test requirements of this part, Chapter 24 Glass and Glazing. Plastics used in doors and panels of bathtub enclosures shall be of a shatter-resistant type.

**11B-809.10.6 Showers.** Showers required by Section 11B-809.10 shall comply with this section.

**11B-809.10.6.1 Size.** When one or more shower stalls are provided within the same dwelling unit, as least one shower stall shall comply with one of the following:

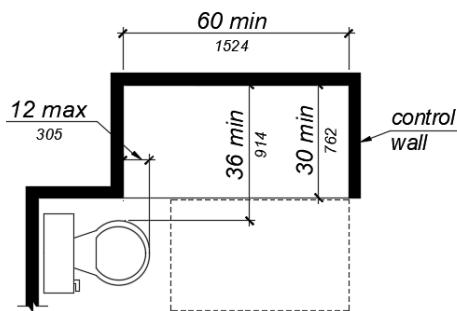
1. A transfer type shower compartment 36 inches (914 mm) wide by 36 inches (914 mm) deep with an entrance opening 36 inches (914 mm) complying with Section 11B-608.1; or
2. A shower stall 30 inches (762 mm) deep minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum with an entrance opening 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum. A water closet shall be permitted to project 12 inches (305 mm) maximum into the opening provided that 36 inches (914 mm) minimum clear space is maintained between the water closet and the shower wall as illustrated in Figure 11B-809.10.6.1; or
3. A shower stall 36 inches (914 mm) deep by 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum with an



**FIGURE 11B-809.10.5.2  
REINFORCEMENT FOR GRAB BARS**

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

entrance 36 inches (914 mm) minimum when a wall is installed on the opening side.



**FIGURE 11B-809.10.6.1 SHOWERS**

**11B-809.10.6.2 Slope.** The slope of the shower floor shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) per foot maximum in any direction and shall slope to a drain. The floor surfaces shall be of Carborundum, grit-faced tile or of material providing equivalent slip resistance.

**11B-809.10.6.3 Floor space.** A clear maneuvering space 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum in length shall be located outside the shower, with the width flush with the control wall and the length parallel to the length of the shower.

**11B-809.10.6.4 Reinforcement for grab bars.** Reinforcement for grab bars shall comply with the following: Continuous reinforcement shall be installed in the walls of showers 30 inches (762 mm) maximum to 38 inches (965 mm) minimum above the finish floor. The grab bar reinforcement shall be 8 inches (203 mm) minimum in height. Glass-walled shower stalls shall provide reinforcement for installation of floor-mounted or ceiling-mounted grab bars.

**11B-809.10.6.5 Thresholds.** Where provided thresholds shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum in height and have a beveled or sloped angle not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 2 units horizontal (26.6 degrees from the horizontal). Thresholds  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) or less in height shall have a beveled or sloped angle not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (45 degrees from the horizontal).

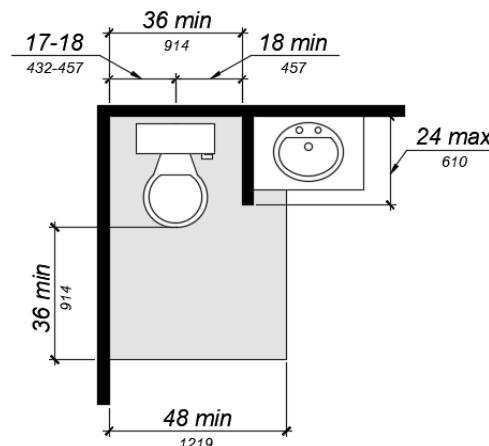
**11B-809.10.6.6 Controls.** Controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with Section 11B-309.4.

**11B-809.10.6.7 Shower enclosures.** Doors and panels of shower enclosures shall comply with Section 11B-809.10.5.4.

**11B-809.10.7 Water closets.** Water closets required by Section 11B-809.10 shall comply with this section.

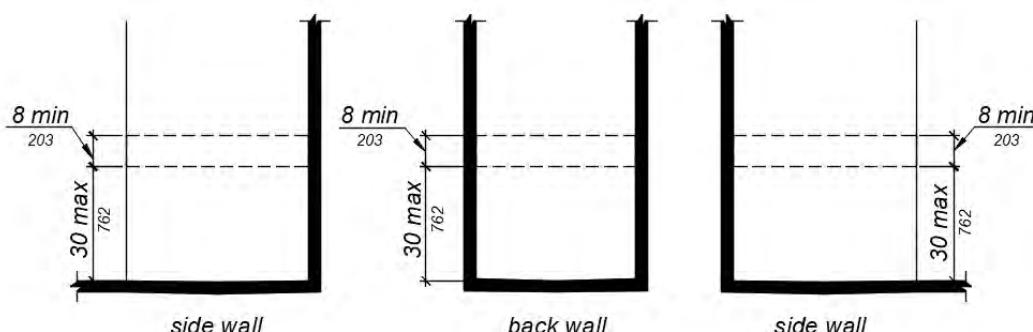
**11B-809.10.7.1 Floor space.** The floor space at water closets shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) wide minimum measured perpendicular to the side wall. A floor space 48 inches (1219 mm) wide minimum by 36 inches (914 mm) deep minimum shall be provided in front of the water closet.

**Exception:** The 48-inch (1219 mm) minimum clear width may be reduced to 36 inches (914 mm) minimum for lavatories, cabinets, wing walls or privacy walls located immediately adjacent to a water closet which extend 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth.



**FIGURE 11B-809.10.7.1 FLOOR SPACE**

**11B-809.10.7.2 Location.** Water closets shall be located within bathrooms in a manner that permits a grab bar to be installed on at least one side of the fixture. The centerline of the water closet shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum to 18 inches (457 mm) maximum from a wall or partition that is 54 inches (1372 mm) minimum in length. In locations where water clos-

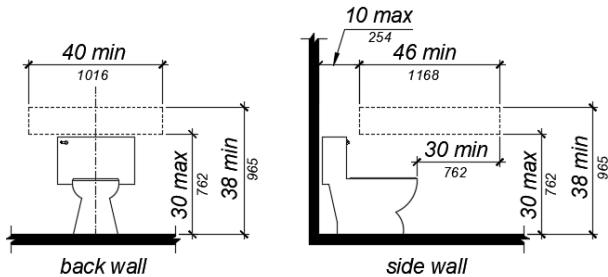


**FIGURE 11B-809.10.6.4 REINFORCEMENT FOR GRAB BARS**

ets are adjacent to other walls, vanities, lavatories or bathtubs, the centerline of the fixture shall be 18 inches (457 mm) minimum from the obstacle.

**11B-809.10.7.3 Reinforcement for grab bars.** Reinforcement for grab bars shall comply with the following:

1. Where water closets are not placed adjacent to a side wall capable of accommodating a grab bar, the bathroom shall have provisions for installation of floor-mounted, foldaway or similar alternative grab bars.
2. Where water closets are placed adjacent to a side wall, reinforcement shall be installed on both sides or one side and the back. Where reinforcement is installed at the back, it shall be installed between 30 inches (762 mm) maximum and 38 inches (965 mm) minimum above the finish floor. The grab bar reinforcement shall be 8 inches (203 mm) minimum in height. The backing shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum in length.
3. Where the water closet is located adjacent to lavatories, cabinets, wing walls or privacy walls, the grab bar reinforcement shall be 36 inches (914 mm) in length. Reinforcement installed at the side wall of the water closet shall be between 30 inches (762 mm) minimum to 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the finish floor. The reinforcement shall be 10 inches (254 mm) maximum from the rear wall and shall extend 30 inches (762 mm) minimum in front of the water closet. The grab bar reinforcement shall be 8 inches (203 mm) minimum in height.



**FIGURE 11B-809.10.7.3  
REINFORCEMENT FOR GRAB BARS**

**11B-809.10.7.4 Seat height.** Water closet seats shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum measured to the top of the seat above the finish floor.

**11B-809.10.7.5 Controls.** Controls shall be mounted 44 inches (1118 mm) maximum above the finish floor. The force required to activate controls shall be 5 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

**11B-809.10.8 Lavatories, vanities, mirrors and towel bars.** Bathing rooms or powder rooms required to comply with Section 11B-809.10 shall provide lavatories complying with this section. Where mirrors or towel bars are provided, no less than one of each shall comply with this section.

**11B-809.10.8.1 Location.** Lavatories without base cabinets shall be installed with the centerline 18 inches (457

mm) minimum from an adjoining wall or fixture to allow for forward approach. Lavatories with base cabinets shall be installed with the centerline 24 inches (610 mm) minimum from an adjoining wall or fixture to allow for a parallel approach. The top of the lavatory rim shall be 34 inches (864 mm) maximum above the finished floor.

**11B-809.10.8.2 Floor space.** A floor space 30 inches (762 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum shall be provided centered on the lavatory.

**11B-809.10.8.3 Cabinets.** Cabinets shall be removable without the use of specialized knowledge and/or tools. The finished floor shall extend to the wall under the lavatory.

**11B-809.10.8.4 Knee and toe clearance.** Knee and toe clearance shall be provided and comply with Section 11B-306.

**11B-809.10.8.5 Plumbing protection.** Plumbing protection shall comply with Section 11B-809.9.7.

**11B-809.10.8.6 Controls.** Faucet controls and operating mechanisms shall comply with Section 11B-309.4.

**11B-809.10.8.7 Mirrors and towel bars.** Where mirrors are provided the bottom edge of the reflective surface shall be 40 inches (1016 mm) maximum above the finish floor. Where towel bars are provided, they shall be installed 40 inches (1016 mm) maximum above the finish floor to the top of the bar.

**11B-809.11 Washing machines and clothes dryers.** Where washing machines and clothes dryers are provided in residential dwelling units with adaptable features, one of each type shall be provided.

**11B-809.12 Electrical receptacles, controls and switches.** Electrical receptacles on branch circuits of 30 amperes or less, communication system receptacles, controls and switches shall be located as follows:

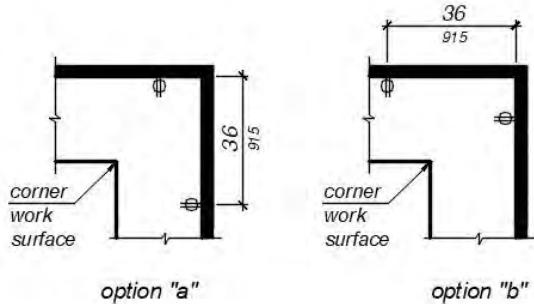
1. Where there is no obstruction, 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum measured from the top of the receptacle box and 15 inches (381 mm) minimum measured from the bottom of the receptacle box to the finish floor.
2. Where the reach is over an obstruction, electrical receptacles, controls and switches shall comply with Sections 11B-308.3 and 11B-309.2.
3. When the reach is over a kitchen work surface and base cabinet, the work surface shall be 36 inches (914 mm) maximum above the finish floor and 25½ inches (650 mm) maximum in depth. The base cabinet shall be 24 inches (610 mm) maximum in depth.
4. Where receptacles are provided in a kitchen at a corner work surface, one receptacle shall be located 36 inches (915 mm) from either wall at the inside corner.

**Exceptions:**

- a. Electrical receptacles installed as part of permanently installed baseboard heaters.
- b. Electrical receptacles in floors adjacent to sliding panels or walls.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

- c. Baseboard electrical receptacles in relocatable partitions, window walls or other electrical convenience floor outlets.
- d. Appliances (e.g., stoves, dishwashers, range hoods, microwave ovens and similar appliances) which have controls located on the appliance.
- e. Electrical receptacles dedicated to specific appliances.
- f. Circuit breakers.



**FIGURE 11B-809.12**

**ELECTRICAL RECEPTACLES AT CORNER WORKSURFACES**

### **11B-810 Transportation facilities**

**11B-810.1 General.** Transportation facilities shall comply with Section 11B-810.

**11B-810.1.1 Vehicle boarding.** Stations shall not be designed or constructed so as to require persons with disabilities to board or alight from a vehicle at a location other than one used by the general public.

**11B-810.1.2 Baggage systems.** Baggage check-in and retrieval systems shall be on an accessible route complying with Section 11B-402 and shall have space immediately adjacent complying with Section 11B-302.

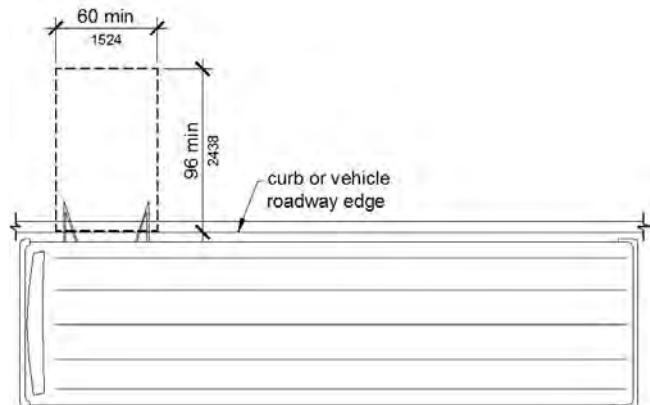
**11B-810.2 Bus boarding and alighting areas.** Bus boarding and alighting areas shall comply with Section 11B-810.2.

**11B-810.2.1 Surface.** Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a firm, stable surface.

**11B-810.2.2 Dimensions.** Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall provide a clear length of 96 inches (2438 mm)

minimum, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a clear width of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.

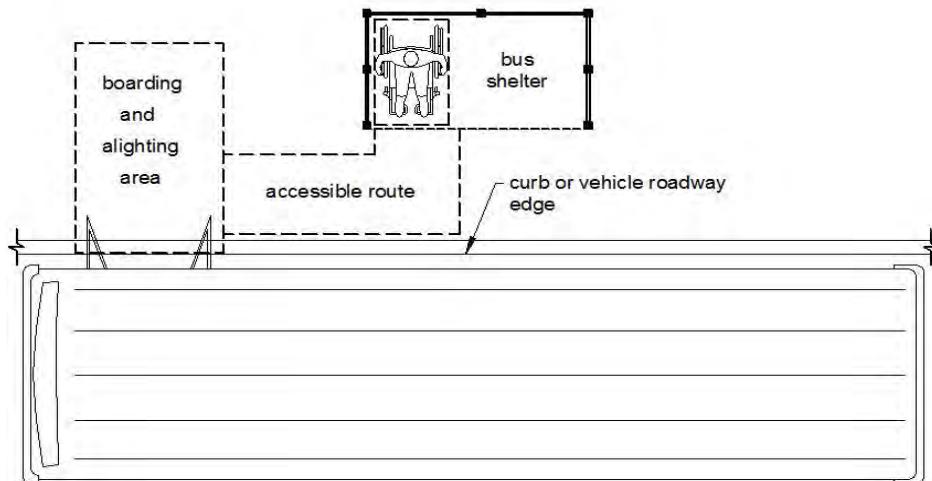
**11B-810.2.3 Connection.** Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall be connected to streets, sidewalks or pedestrian paths by an accessible route complying with Section 11B-402. Newly constructed bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall provide a detectable transition between the boarding/alighting area and the roadway; the detectable transition shall consist of a curb with the face sloped at 35 degrees maximum from vertical or detectable warnings complying with Sections 11B-705.1.1 and 11B-705.1.2.4.



**FIGURE 11B-810.2.2**  
**DIMENSIONS OF BUS BOARDING AND ALIGHTING AREAS**

**11B-810.2.4 Slope.** Parallel to the roadway, the slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area shall be the same as the roadway, to the maximum extent practicable. Perpendicular to the roadway, the slope of the bus stop boarding and alighting area shall not be steeper than 1:48.

**11B-810.3 Bus shelters.** Bus shelters shall provide a minimum clear floor or ground space complying with Section 11B-305 entirely within the shelter. Bus shelters shall be connected by an accessible route complying with Section 11B-402 to a boarding and alighting area complying with Section 11B-810.2.



**FIGURE 11B-810.3**  
**BUS SHELTERS**

**11B-810.4 Bus signs.** Bus route identification signs shall comply with *Sections 11B-703.5.1 through 11B-703.5.4* and *Sections 11B-703.5.7 and 11B-703.5.8*. In addition, to the maximum extent practicable, bus route identification signs shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5.5*.

**Exception:** Bus schedules, timetables and maps that are posted at the bus stop or bus bay shall not be required to comply.

**11B-810.5 Rail platforms.** Rail platforms shall comply with *Section 11B-810.5*.

**11B-810.5.1 Slope.** Rail platforms shall not exceed a slope of 1:48 in all directions.

**Exception:** Where platforms serve vehicles operating on existing track or track laid in existing roadway, the slope of the platform parallel to the track shall be permitted to be equal to the slope (grade) of the roadway or existing track.

**11B-810.5.2 Detectable warnings.** Platform boarding edges not protected by platform screens or guards shall have detectable warnings complying with *Section 11B-705* along the full length of the public use area of the platform.

**11B-810.5.3 Platform and vehicle floor coordination.** Station platforms shall be positioned to coordinate with vehicles in accordance with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR Part 1192. Low-level platforms shall be 8 inches (203 mm) minimum above top of rail.

**Exception:** Where vehicles are boarded from sidewalks or street-level, low-level platforms shall be permitted to be less than 8 inches (203 mm).

**11B-810.6 Rail station signs.** Rail station signs shall comply with *Section 11B-810.6*.

**Exception:** Signs shall not be required to comply with *Sections 11B-810.6.1 and 11B-810.6.2* where audible signs are remotely transmitted to hand-held receivers or are user- or proximity-actuated.

**11B-810.6.1 Entrances.** Where signs identify a station or its entrance, at least one sign at each entrance shall comply with *Section 11B-703.2* and shall be placed in uniform locations to the maximum extent practicable. Where signs identify a station that has no defined entrance, at least one sign shall comply with *Section 11B-703.2* and shall be placed in a central location.

**11B-810.6.2 Routes and destinations.** Lists of stations, routes and destinations served by the station which are located on boarding areas, platforms or mezzanines shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*. At least one tactile sign identifying the specific station and complying with *Section 11B-703.2* shall be provided on each platform or boarding area. Signs covered by this requirement shall, to the maximum extent practicable, be placed in uniform locations within the system.

**Exception:** Where sign space is limited, characters shall not be required to exceed 3 inches (76 mm).

**11B-810.6.3 Station names.** Stations covered by this section shall have identification signs complying with *Section 11B-703.5*. Signs shall be clearly visible and within the sight lines

of standing and sitting passengers from within the vehicle on both sides when not obstructed by another vehicle.

**11B-810.7 Public address systems.** Where public address systems convey audible information to the public, the same or equivalent information shall be provided in a visual format.

**11B-810.8 Clocks.** Where clocks are provided for use by the public, the clock face shall be uncluttered so that its elements are clearly visible. Hands, numerals and digits shall contrast with the background either light-on-dark or dark-on-light. Where clocks are installed overhead, numerals and digits shall comply with *Section 11B-703.5*.

**11B-810.9 Escalators.** Where provided, escalators shall comply with Sections 6.1.3.5.6 and 6.1.3.6.5 of ASME A17.1 and shall have a clear width of 32 inches (813 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** Existing escalators in key stations shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-810.9*.

**11B-810.10 Track crossings.** Where a circulation path serving boarding platforms crosses tracks, it shall comply with *Section 11B-402*.

**Exception:** Openings for wheel flanges shall be permitted to be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) maximum.



FIGURE 11B-810.10 (EXCEPTION)  
TRACK CROSSINGS

## 11B-811 Storage

**11B-811.1 General.** Storage shall comply with *Section 11B-811*.

**11B-811.2 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided.

**11B-811.3 Height.** Storage elements shall comply with at least one of the reach ranges specified in *Section 11B-308*.

**11B-811.4 Operable parts.** Operable parts shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

## 11B-812 Electric vehicle charging stations

**11B-812.1 General.** Electric vehicle charging stations (EVCS) shall comply with *Section 11B-812* as required by *Section 11B-228.3*. Where vehicle spaces and access aisles are marked with lines, measurements shall be made from the centerline of the markings.

**Exception:** Where vehicle spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another vehicle space, access aisle or parking space, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the vehicle space or access aisle.

**11B-812.2 Operable parts.** Operable parts shall comply with *Section 11B-309*.

**11B-812.3 Floor or ground surfaces.** Vehicle spaces and access aisles serving them shall comply with *Section 11B-302*.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

*Access aisles shall be at the same level as the vehicle space they serve. Changes in level, slopes exceeding 1:48, and detectable warnings shall not be permitted.*

**11B-812.4 Vertical clearance.** Vehicle spaces, access aisles serving them, and vehicular routes serving them shall provide a vertical clearance of 98 inches (2489 mm) minimum. Where provided, overhead cable management systems shall not obstruct required vertical clearance.

### **11B-812.5 Accessible routes**

**11B-812.5.1 Accessible route to building or facility.** EVCS complying with Section 11B-812 that serve a particular building or facility shall be located on an accessible route to an entrance complying with Section 11B-206.4. Where EVCS do not serve a particular building or facility, EVCS complying with Section 11B-812 shall be located on an accessible route to an accessible pedestrian entrance of the EV charging facility.

**Exception:** EVCS complying with Section 11B-812 shall be permitted to be located in different EV charging facilities if substantially equivalent or greater accessibility is provided in terms of distance from an accessible entrance or entrances, charging fee, and user convenience.

**11B-812.5.2 Accessible route to EV charger.** An accessible route complying with Section 11B-402 shall connect the vehicle space and the EV charger which serves it.

**11B-812.5.3 Relationship to accessible routes.** Vehicle spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that when the vehicle space is occupied the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes is not obstructed. A curb, wheel stop, bollards or other barrier shall be provided if required to prevent encroachment of vehicles over the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.

**11B-812.5.4 Arrangement.** Vehicle spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that persons using them are not required to travel behind vehicle spaces or parking spaces other than the vehicle space in which their vehicle has been left to charge.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Ambulatory EVCS shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-812.5.4.
2. Vehicle spaces installed in existing facilities shall comply with Section 11B-812.5.4 to the maximum extent feasible.

**11B-812.5.5 Obstructions.** EVCS shall be designed so accessible routes are not obstructed by cables or other elements.

**11B-812.6 Vehicle spaces.** Vehicle spaces serving van accessible, standard accessible, ambulatory and drive-up EVCS shall be 216 inches (5486 mm) long minimum and shall comply with Sections 11B-812.6.1 through 11B-812.6.4 as applicable. All vehicle spaces shall be marked to define their width.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Where the long dimension of vehicle spaces is parallel to the traffic flow in the adjacent vehicular way,

*the length of vehicle spaces shall be 240 inches (6096 mm) minimum.*

2. Vehicle spaces at drive-up EVCS shall be 240 inches (6096 mm) long minimum and shall not be required to be marked to define their width.

**11B-812.6.1 Van accessible.** Vehicle spaces serving van accessible EVCS shall be 144 inches (3658 mm) wide minimum and shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 11B-812.7.

**11B-812.6.2 Standard accessible.** Vehicle spaces serving standard accessible EVCS shall be 108 inches (2743 mm) wide minimum and shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 11B-812.7.

**11B-812.6.3 Ambulatory.** Vehicle spaces serving ambulatory EVCS shall be 120 inches (3048 mm) wide minimum and shall not be required to have an adjacent access aisle.

**11B-812.6.4 Drive-up.** Vehicle spaces serving drive-up EVCS shall be 204 inches (5182 mm) wide minimum and shall not be required to have an adjacent access aisle.

**11B-812.7 Access aisle.** Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two vehicle spaces or one parking space and one electric vehicle charging space shall be permitted to share a common access aisle. Access aisles shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum and shall extend the full required length of the vehicle spaces they serve.

**11B-812.7.1 Location.** Access aisles at vehicle spaces shall not overlap the vehicular way and may be placed on either side of the vehicle space they serve except for van accessible spaces which shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the vehicle spaces.

**Exception:** Where four or fewer total EVCS are provided within a facility, the access aisle for non-angled van accessible spaces may be located on either the driver or passenger side of the vehicle space.

**11B-812.7.2 Marking.** Access aisles at vehicle spaces shall be marked with a painted borderline around their perimeter. The area within the borderlines shall be marked with hatched lines a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) on center. The color of the borderlines, hatched lines and letters shall contrast with that of the surface of the access aisle. The blue color required for identification of access aisles for accessible parking shall not be used. Access aisle markings may extend beyond the minimum required length.

**Exception:** Where one parking space and one electric vehicle charging space share an access aisle, access aisle marking shall comply with Section 11B-502.3.3 and shall not be required to comply with Section 11B-812.7.2.

**11B-812.7.3 Lettering.** The words "NO PARKING" shall be painted on the surface within each access aisle in letters a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) in height and located to be visible from the adjacent vehicular way.

**11B-812.8 Identification signs.** EVCS identification signs shall be provided in compliance with Section 11B-812.8.

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-812.8.1 Four or fewer.** Where four or fewer total EVCS are provided, identification with an International Symbol of Accessibility (ISA) and signs identifying van accessible spaces shall not be required.

**11B-812.8.2 Five to twenty-five.** Where five to twenty-five total EVCS are provided, one van accessible EVCS shall be identified by an ISA complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1. The required standard accessible EVCS shall not be required to be identified with an ISA.

**11B-812.8.3 Twenty-six or more.** Where twenty-six or more total EVCS are provided, all required van accessible and all required standard accessible EVCS shall be identified by an ISA complying with Section 11B-703.7.2.1.

**11B-812.8.4 Ambulatory.** Ambulatory EVCS shall not be required to be identified by an ISA.

**11B-812.8.5 Drive-up.** Drive-up EVCS shall not be required to be identified by an ISA.

**11B-812.8.6 Finish and size.** Identification signs shall be reflectorized with a minimum area of 70 square inches (45 161 mm<sup>2</sup>).

**11B-812.8.7 Location.** Required identification signs shall be visible from the EVCS it serves. Signs shall be permanently posted either immediately adjacent to the vehicle space or within the projected vehicle space width at the head end of the vehicle space. Signs identifying van accessible vehicle spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface measured to the bottom of the sign. Signs located within a circulation path shall be 80 inches (2032 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground surface measured to the bottom of the sign. Signs may also be permanently posted on a wall at the interior end of the vehicle space.

**11B-812.9 Surface marking.** EVCS vehicle spaces shall provide surface marking stating "EV CHARGING ONLY" in letters 12 inches (305 mm) high minimum. The centerline of the text shall be a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) from the centerline of the vehicle space and its lower corner at, or lower side aligned with, the end of the vehicle space length.

### 11B-812.10 Electric vehicle chargers

**11B-812.10.1 General.** EV chargers shall comply with Section 11B-812.10.

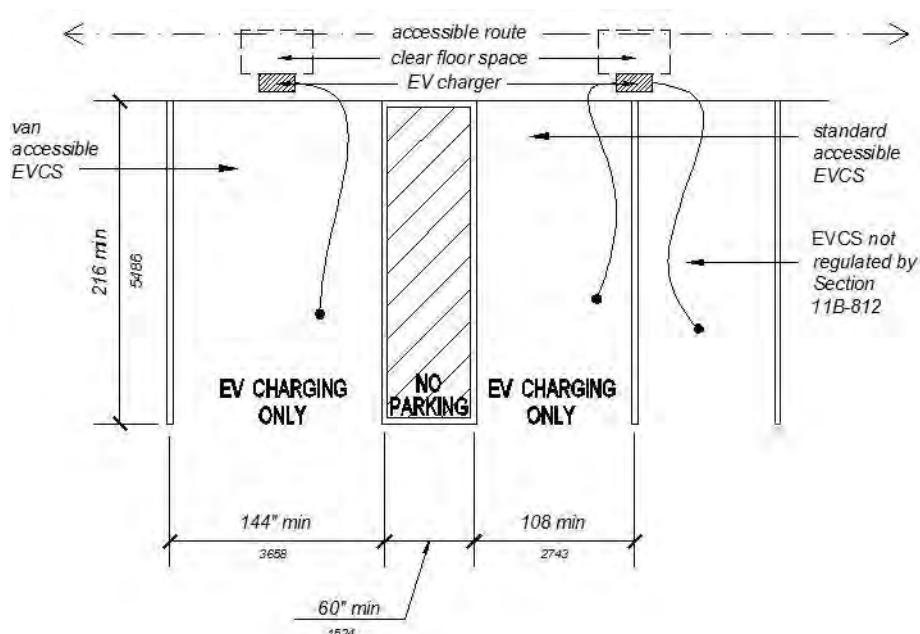
**11B-812.10.2 Operable parts.** Operable parts and charging cord storage shall comply with Section 11B-309.

**11B-812.10.3 Point-of-sale devices.** Where provided, point-of-sale devices shall comply with Sections 11B-707.2, 11B-707.3, 11B-707.7.2 and 11B-707.9.

**11B-812.10.4 Location.** EV chargers shall be adjacent to, and within the projected width of, the vehicle space being served.

#### Exceptions:

1. EV chargers serving more than one EVCS shall be adjacent to, and within the combined projected width of, the vehicle spaces being served.
2. For alterations at existing facilities where an accessible route or general circulation path is not provided adjacent to the head end of the vehicle space or access aisle, the EV charger may be located within the projected width of the access aisle 36 inches (914 mm) maximum from the head end of the space.
3. Where the long dimension of a vehicle space is parallel to the vehicular way, the EV charger shall be adjacent to, and 48 inches (1219 mm)



**FIGURE 11B-812.9  
SURFACE MARKING**

maximum from the head end or foot end of the vehicle space or access aisle being served.

**11B-813 Adult changing facilities.** Adult changing facilities shall comply with Section 11B-813.

**11B-813.1 Location.** Adult changing facilities shall be provided within a unisex (single-user or family) toilet room or other similar private room.

**11B-813.2 Features.** Adult changing facilities shall provide features in compliance with Section 11B-813.2.

**11B-813.2.1 Adult changing table.** Adult changing tables shall be fixed to the floor or a wall and shall comply with Section 11B-813.2.1.

**11B-813.2.1.1 Size.** Adult changing tables shall have a changing surface of 70 inches (1778 mm) minimum length and 30 inches (762 mm) minimum width.

**11B-813.2.1.2 Clearance.** A 36 inches (914 mm) minimum width side clearance shall be provided along the entire length of one side of adult changing tables. At both ends of adult changing tables, clearance shall be provided measuring 36 inches (914 mm) minimum wide and a minimum length as long as the table width plus the width of the side clearance. End and side clearances shall be measured from the outermost extent of the table. Floor or ground surfaces of clearances shall comply with Section 11B-302. Changes in level are not permitted.

**11B-813.2.1.3 Height and operation.** Adult changing table height shall be adjustable from 17 inches (432 mm) above the floor or ground to 38 inches (965 mm) above the floor or ground, as measured to the top of the changing surface. Height adjustability shall be powered. Operable parts shall comply with Section 11B-309.

**11B-813.2.1.4 Capacity.** Adult changing tables shall provide a minimum weight capacity of 300 pounds (136 kg).

**11B-813.2.1.5 Obstructions.** When deployed, changing tables shall not obstruct the required width of an accessible route except as allowed by Section 11B-307.2.

**11B-813.2.2 Water closet.** No fewer than one water closet in compliance with Section 11B-604.

**11B-813.2.3 Lavatory.** One lavatory in compliance with Section 11B-606.

**11B-813.2.4 Waste receptacle.** No fewer than one waste receptacle in compliance with Section 11B-603.5.

**11B-813.2.5 Coat hook.** No fewer than one coat hook shall be provided in close proximity to the changing table and within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 11B-308.

**11B-813.2.6 Shelf.** No fewer than one shelf shall be provided in close proximity to the changing table at 40 inches (1016 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum above the finish floor.

**11B-813.2.7 Accessories.** Where provided, no fewer than one of each accessory shall comply with Section 11B-603.5.

**11B-813.2.8 Turning space.** Turning space complying with Section 11B-304 shall be provided within adult changing facilities.

**11B-813.2.9 Overlap.** Required clear floor spaces, clearance at fixtures and turning space shall be permitted to overlap.

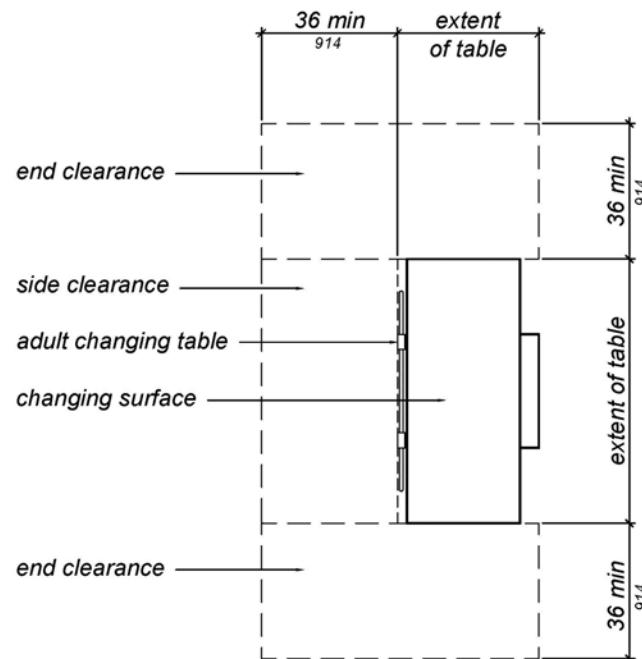
**11B-813.2.10 Door swing.** A door, in any position, shall be permitted to encroach into the turning space by 12 inches (305 mm) maximum. Where a clear floor space complying with Section 11B-305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, doors shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space, clearance required for any fixture and clearance required for adult changing tables.

**11B-813.2.11 Privacy latch.** Each door to adult changing facilities shall have a privacy latch.

**11B-813.2.12 Signs.** A room identification sign complying with Section 11B-216 shall be provided at entrances to adult changing facilities. The text of the room identification sign shall be "ADULT CHANGING ROOM".

An informational sign complying with Section 11B-216 shall be provided within adult changing facilities and in close proximity to the changing table. The informational sign shall indicate the maximum weight capacity of the adult changing table, as determined by the table manufacturer.

Where the commercial place of public amusement has a central directory, the central directory shall indicate the location of adult changing facilities. Where other directories indicate the location of toilet facilities, the other directories shall also indicate the location of adult changing facilities.



**FIGURE 11B-813.2.1.2  
CLEARANCE AROUND ADULT CHANGING TABLE**

## DIVISION 9: BUILT-IN ELEMENTS

### **11B-901 General**

**11B-901.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 9* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this *chapter*.

### **11B-902 Dining surfaces and work surfaces**

**11B-902.1 General.** Dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with *Sections 11B-902.2* and *11B-902.3*.

**Exception:** Dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use shall be permitted to comply with *Section 11B-902.4*.

**11B-902.2 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-305* positioned for a forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306* shall be provided.

**11B-902.3 Height.** The tops of dining surfaces and work surfaces shall be 28 inches (711 mm) minimum and 34 inches (864 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-902.4 Dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use.** Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces for children's use shall comply with *Section 11B-902.4*.

**Exception:** Dining surfaces and work surfaces that are used primarily by children 5 years and younger shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-902.4* where a clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* positioned for a parallel approach is provided.

**11B-902.4.1 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-305* positioned for forward approach shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with *Section 11B-306* shall be provided, except that knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the finish floor or ground shall be permitted.

**11B-902.4.2 Height.** The tops of tables and counters shall be 26 inches (660 mm) minimum and 30 inches (762 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

### **11B-903 Benches**

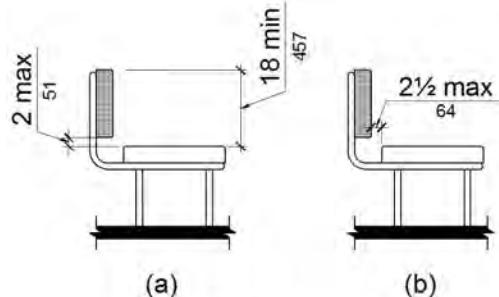
**11B-903.1 General.** Benches shall comply with *Section 11B-903*.

**11B-903.2 Clear floor or ground space.** Clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided and shall be positioned at the end of the bench seat and parallel to the short axis of the bench.

**11B-903.3 Size.** Benches shall have seats that are 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum and 20 inches (508 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) deep maximum.

**11B-903.4 Back support.** The bench shall provide for back support or shall be affixed to a wall *along its long dimension*. Back support shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum and shall extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (457 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Back support shall be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) maximum from the rear edge of the seat measured horizontally.

**11B-903.5 Height.** The top of the bench seat surface shall be 17 inches (432 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.



**FIGURE 11B-903.4  
BENCH BACK SUPPORT**

**11B-903.6 Structural strength.** Benches shall be affixed to the wall or floor. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used when a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener, mounting device or supporting structure.

**11B-903.7 Wet locations.** Where installed in wet locations, the surface of the seat shall be slip resistant and shall not accumulate water.

### **11B-904 Check-out aisles and sales and service counters**

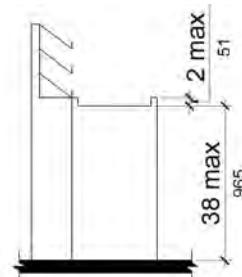
**11B-904.1 General.** Check-out aisles and sales and service counters shall comply with the applicable requirements of *Section 11B-904*.

**11B-904.2 Approach.** All portions of counters required to comply with *Section 11B-904* shall be located adjacent to a walking surface complying with *Section 11B-403*.

**11B-904.3 Check-out aisles.** Check-out aisles shall comply with *Section 11B-904.3*.

**11B-904.3.1 Aisle.** Aisles shall comply with *Section 11B-403*.

**11B-904.3.2 Counter.** The counter surface height shall be 38 inches (965 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground. The top of the counter edge protection shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the top of the counter surface on the aisle side of the check-out counter.



**FIGURE 11B-904.3.2  
CHECK-OUT AISLE COUNTERS**

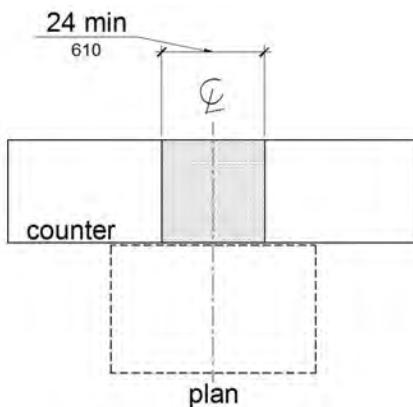
## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

**11B-904.3.3 Check writing surfaces.** Where provided, check writing surfaces shall comply with *Section 11B-902.3*.

**11B-904.3.4 Identification sign.** When not all check-out aisles are accessible, accessible check-out aisles shall be identified by a sign clearly visible to a person in a wheelchair displaying the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with *Section 11B-703.7.2.1*. The sign shall be a minimum of 4 inches by 4 inches (102 mm by 102 mm).

**11B-904.4 Sales and service counters.** Sales counters and service counters shall comply with *Section 11B-904.4.1* or *11B-904.4.2*. The accessible portion of the counter top shall extend the same depth as the sales or service counter top.

**Exception:** In alterations, when the provision of a counter complying with *Section 11B-904.4* would result in a reduction of the number of existing counters at work stations or a reduction of the number of existing mail boxes, the counter shall be permitted to have a portion which is 24 inches (610 mm) long minimum complying with *Section 11B-904.4.1* provided that the required clear floor or ground space is centered on the accessible length of the counter.



**FIGURE 11B-904.4 (EXCEPTION)  
ALTERATION OF SALES AND SERVICE COUNTERS**

**11B-904.4.1 Parallel approach.** A portion of the counter surface that is 36 inches (914 mm) long minimum and 34 inches (864 mm) high maximum above the finish floor shall be provided. A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be positioned for a parallel approach adjacent to the 36 inch (914 mm) minimum length of counter.

**Exception:** Where the provided counter surface is less than 36 inches (914 mm) long, the entire counter surface shall be 34 inches (864 mm) high maximum above the finish floor.

**11B-904.4.2 Forward approach.** A portion of the counter surface that is 36 inches (914 mm) long minimum and 34 inches (864 mm) high maximum shall be provided. Knee and toe space complying with *Section 11B-306* shall be provided under the counter. A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be positioned for a forward approach to the counter.

**11B-904.5 Food service lines.** Counters in food service lines shall comply with *Section 11B-904.5*.

**11B-904.5.1 Self-service shelves and dispensing devices.** Self-service shelves and dispensing devices for tableware, dishware, condiments, food and beverages shall comply with *Section 11B-308*.

**11B-904.5.2 Tray slides.** The tops of tray slides shall be 28 inches (711 mm) minimum and 34 inches (864 mm) maximum above the finish floor or ground.

**11B-904.6 Security glazing.** Where counters or teller windows have security glazing to separate personnel from the public, a method to facilitate voice communication shall be provided. Telephone handset devices, if provided, shall comply with *Section 11B-704.3*.

## DIVISION 10:

### RECREATION FACILITIES

#### **IIB-1001 General**

**IIB-1001.1 Scope.** The provisions of *Division 10* shall apply where required by *Division 2* or where referenced by a requirement in this chapter.

#### **IIB-1002 Amusement rides**

**IIB-1002.1 General.** Amusement rides shall comply with *Section 11B-1002*.

**IIB-1002.2 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes serving amusement rides shall comply with *Division 4*.

##### **Exceptions:**

1. In load or unload areas and on amusement rides, where compliance with *Section 11B-405.2* is not structurally or operationally feasible, ramp slope shall be permitted to be 1:8 maximum.
2. In load or unload areas and on amusement rides, handrails provided along walking surfaces complying with *Section 11B-403* and required on ramps complying with *Section 11B-405* shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-505* where compliance is not structurally or operationally feasible.

**IIB-1002.3 Load and unload areas.** A turning space complying with *Sections 11B-304.2* and *11B-304.3* shall be provided in load and unload areas.

**IIB-1002.4 Wheelchair spaces in amusement rides.** Wheelchair spaces in amusement rides shall comply with *Section 11B-1002.4*.

**IIB-1002.4.1 Floor or ground surface.** The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall be stable and firm.

**IIB-1002.4.2 Slope.** The floor or ground surface of wheelchair spaces shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48 when in the load and unload position.

**IIB-1002.4.3 Gaps.** Floors of amusement rides with wheelchair spaces and floors of load and unload areas shall be coordinated so that, when amusement rides are at rest in the load and unload position, the vertical difference between the floors shall be within plus or minus  $\frac{5}{8}$  inches (15.9 mm) and the horizontal gap shall be 3 inches (76 mm) maximum under normal passenger load conditions.

**Exception:** Where compliance is not operationally or structurally feasible, ramps, bridge plates or similar devices complying with the applicable requirements of 36 CFR 1192.83(c) shall be provided.

**IIB-1002.4.4 Clearances.** Clearances for wheelchair spaces shall comply with *Section 11B-1002.4.4*.

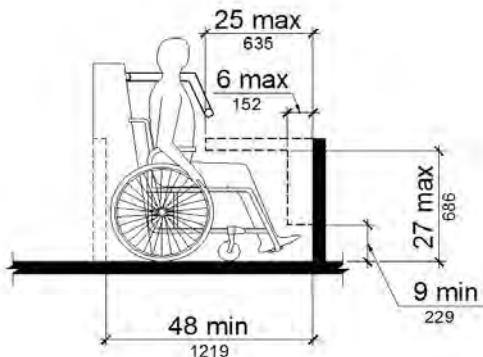
##### **Exceptions:**

1. Where provided, securement devices shall be permitted to overlap required clearances.
2. Wheelchair spaces shall be permitted to be mechanically or manually repositioned.
3. Wheelchair spaces shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-307.4*.

**IIB-1002.4.4.1 Width and length.** Wheelchair spaces shall provide a clear width of 30 inches (762 mm) minimum and a clear length of 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum measured to 9 inches (229 mm) minimum above the floor surface.

**IIB-1002.4.4.2 Side entry.** Where wheelchair spaces are entered only from the side, amusement rides shall be designed to permit sufficient maneuvering clearance for individuals using a wheelchair or mobility aid to enter and exit the ride.

**IIB-1002.4.4.3 Permitted protrusions in wheelchair spaces.** Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 6 inches (152 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located 9 inches (229 mm) minimum and 27 inches (686 mm) maximum above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space. Objects are permitted to protrude a distance of 25 inches (635 mm) maximum along the front of the wheelchair space, where located more than 27 inches (686 mm) above the floor or ground surface of the wheelchair space.



**FIGURE 11B-1002.4.4.3  
PROTRUSIONS IN WHEELCHAIR  
SPACES IN AMUSEMENT RIDES**

**IIB-1002.4.5 Ride entry.** Openings providing entry to wheelchair spaces on amusement rides shall be 32 inches (813 mm) minimum clear.

**IIB-1002.4.6 Approach.** One side of the wheelchair space shall adjoin an accessible route when in the load and unload position.

**IIB-1002.4.7 Companion seats.** Where the interior width of the amusement ride is greater than 53 inches (1346 mm), seating is provided for more than one rider, and the wheelchair is not required to be centered within the amusement ride, a companion seat shall be provided for each wheelchair space.

**IIB-1002.4.7.1 Shoulder-to-shoulder seating.** Where an amusement ride provides shoulder-to-shoulder seating, companion seats shall be shoulder-to-shoulder with the adjacent wheelchair space.

**Exception:** Where shoulder-to-shoulder companion seating is not operationally or structurally feasible,

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

compliance with this requirement shall be required to the maximum extent practicable.

**11B-1002.5 Amusement ride seats designed for transfer.** Amusement ride seats designed for transfer shall comply with *Section 11B-1002.5* when positioned for loading and unloading.

**11B-1002.5.1 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the amusement ride seats designed for transfer.

**11B-1002.5.2 Transfer height.** The height of amusement ride seats designed for transfer shall be 14 inches (356 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured from the surface of the load and unload area.

**11B-1002.5.3 Transfer entry.** Where openings are provided for transfer to amusement ride seats, the openings shall provide clearance for transfer from a wheelchair or mobility aid to the amusement ride seat.

**11B-1002.5.4 Wheelchair storage space.** Wheelchair storage spaces complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required amusement ride seat designed for transfer and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.

**11B-1002.6 Transfer devices for use with amusement rides.** Transfer devices for use with amusement rides shall comply with *Section 11B-1002.6* when positioned for loading and unloading.

**11B-1002.6.1 Clear floor or ground space.** A clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided in the load and unload area adjacent to the transfer device.

**11B-1002.6.2 Transfer height.** The height of transfer device seats shall be 14 inches (356 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum measured from the load and unload surface.

**11B-1002.6.3 Wheelchair storage space.** Wheelchair storage spaces complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided in or adjacent to unload areas for each required transfer device and shall not overlap any required means of egress or accessible route.

### **11B-1003 Recreational boating facilities**

**11B-1003.1 General.** Recreational boating facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-1003*.

**11B-1003.2 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes serving recreational boating facilities, including gangways and floating piers, shall comply with *Division 4* except as modified by the exceptions in *Section 11B-1003.2*.

**11B-1003.2.1 Boat slips.** Accessible routes serving boat slips shall be permitted to use the exceptions in *Section 11B-1003.2.1*.

#### **Exceptions:**

- Where an existing gangway or series of gangways is replaced or altered, an increase in the length of the gangway shall not be required to

comply with *Section 11B-1003.2* unless required by *Section 11B-202.4*.

- Gangways shall not be required to comply with the maximum rise specified in *Section 11B-405.6*.
- Where the total length of a gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 80 feet (24384 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-405.2*.
- Where facilities contain fewer than 25 boat slips and the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9144 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-405.2*.
- Where gangways connect to transition plates, landings specified by *Section 11B-405.7* shall not be required.
- Where gangways and transition plates connect and are required to have handrails, handrail extensions shall not be required. Where handrail extensions are provided on gangways or transition plates, the handrail extensions shall not be required to be parallel with the ground or floor surface.
- The cross slope specified in *Sections 11B-403.3* and *11B-405.3* for gangways, transition plates and floating piers that are part of accessible routes shall be measured in the static position.
- Changes in level complying with *Sections 11B-303.3* and *11B-303.4* shall be permitted on the surfaces of gangways and boat launch ramps.

**11B-1003.2.2 Boarding piers at boat launch ramps.** Accessible routes serving boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall be permitted to use the exceptions in *Section 11B-1003.2.2*.

#### **Exceptions:**

- Accessible routes serving floating boarding piers shall be permitted to use Exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 in *Section 11B-1003.2.1*.
- Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9144 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-405.2*.
- Where the accessible route serving a floating boarding pier or skid pier is located within a boat launch ramp, the portion of the accessible route located within the boat launch ramp shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-405*.

**11B-1003.3 Clearances.** Clearances at boat slips and on boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall comply with *Section 11B-1003.3*.

**11B-1003.3.1 Boat slip clearance.** Boat slips shall provide clear pier space 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum and at least as long as the boat slips. Each 10 feet (3048 mm) maximum of linear pier edge serving boat slips shall contain at

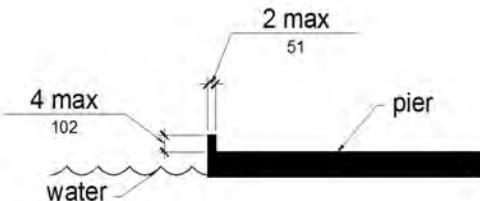
## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum.

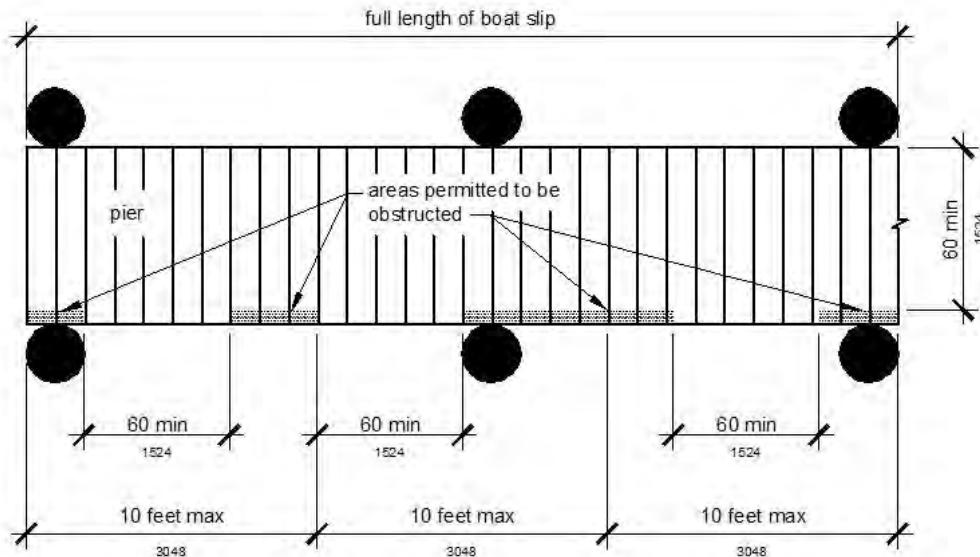
### **Exceptions:**

1. Clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, provided that multiple 36 inch (914 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) long minimum.
2. Edge protection shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings, provided that it is 4 inches (102 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) wide maximum.
3. In existing piers, clear pier space shall be permitted to be located perpendicular to the boat slip and shall extend the width of the boat slip, where

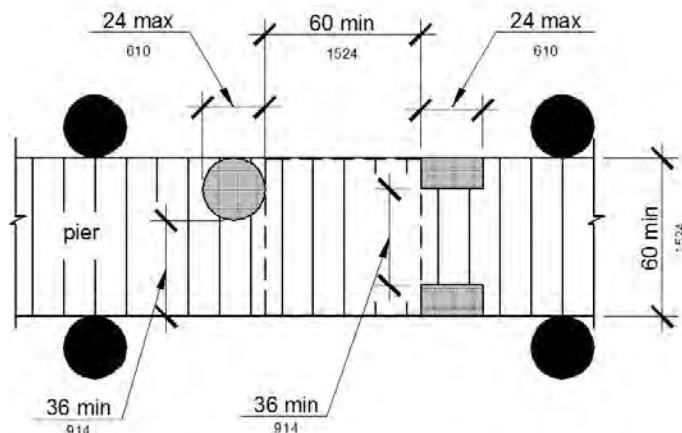
the facility has at least one boat slip complying with *Section 11B-1003.3*, and further compliance with *Section 11B-1003.3* would result in a reduction in the number of boat slips available or result in a reduction of the widths of existing slips.



**FIGURE 11B-1003.3.1 (EXCEPTION 2)  
EDGE PROTECTION AT BOAT SLIPS**



**FIGURE 11B-1003.3.1  
BOAT SLIP CLEARANCE**



**FIGURE 11B-1003.3.1 (EXCEPTION 1)  
CLEAR PIER SPACE REDUCTION AT BOAT SLIPS**

## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

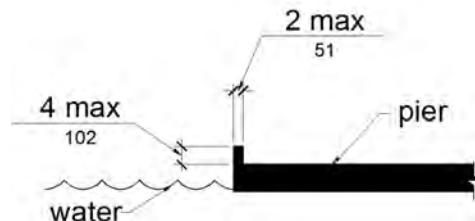
**11B-1003.3.2 Boarding pier clearances.** Boarding piers at boat launch ramps shall provide clear pier space 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum and shall extend the full length of the boarding pier. Every 10 feet (3048 mm) maximum of linear pier edge shall contain at least one continuous clear opening 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum.

**Exceptions:**

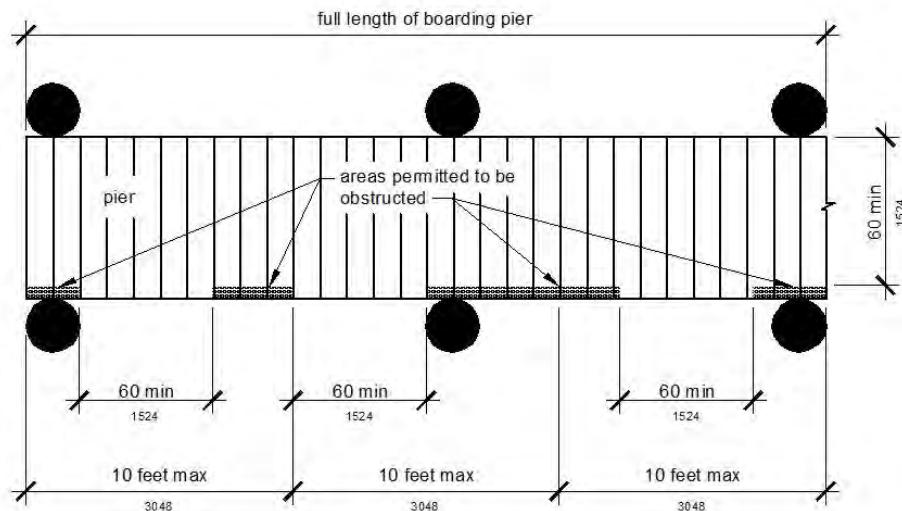
1. The clear pier space shall be permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that multiple 36 inch (914 mm) wide segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) long minimum.
2. Edge protection shall be permitted at the continuous clear openings provided that it is 4 inches (102 mm) high maximum and 2 inches (51 mm) wide maximum.

**11B-1004 Exercise machines and equipment**

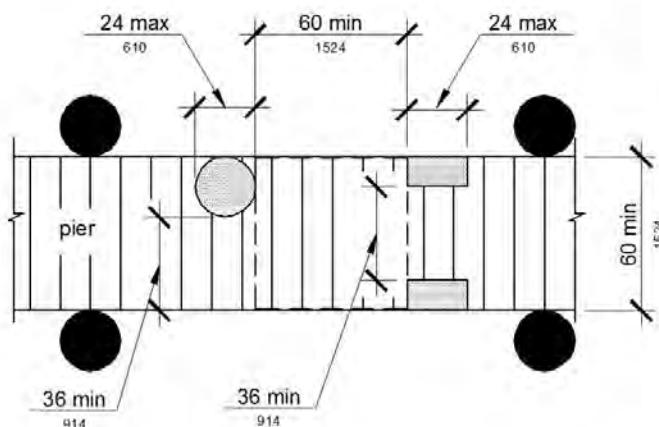
**11B-1004.1 Clear floor space.** Exercise machines and equipment shall have a clear floor space complying with *Section 11B-305* positioned for transfer or for use by an individual seated in a wheelchair. Clear floor or ground spaces required at exercise machines and equipment shall be permitted to overlap.



**FIGURE 11B-1003.3.2 (EXCEPTION 2)  
EDGE PROTECTION AT BOARDING PIERS**



**FIGURE 11B-1003.2  
BOARDING PIER CLEARANCE**



**FIGURE 11B-1003.2 (EXCEPTION 1)  
CLEAR PIER SPACE REDUCTION AT BOARDING PIERS**

**11B-1005 Fishing piers and platforms**

**11B-1005.1 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes serving fishing piers and platforms, including gangways and floating piers, shall comply with *Division 4*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Accessible routes serving floating fishing piers and platforms shall be permitted to use Exceptions 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 8 in *Section 11B-1003.2.1*.
2. Where the total length of the gangway or series of gangways serving as part of a required accessible route is 30 feet (9144 mm) minimum, gangways shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-405.2*.

**11B-1005.2 Railings.** Where provided, railings, guards or handrails shall comply with *Section 11B-1005.2*.

**11B-1005.2.1 Height.** At least 25 percent of the railings, guards or handrails shall be 34 inches (864 mm) maximum above the ground or deck surface.

**Exception:** Where a guard complying with *Chapter 10, Sections 1015.2 through 1015.4* is provided, the guard shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-1005.2.1*.

**11B-1005.2.1.1 Dispersion.** Railings, guards or handrails required to comply with *Section 11B-1005.2.1* shall be dispersed throughout the fishing pier or platform.

**11B-1005.3 Edge protection.** Where railings, guards or handrails complying with *Section 11B-1005.2* are provided, edge protection complying with *Section 11B-1005.3.1* or *11B-1005.3.2* shall be provided.

**11B-1005.3.1 Curb or barrier.** Curbs or barriers shall extend 2 inches (51 mm) minimum above the surface of the fishing pier or platform.

**11B-1005.3.2 Extended ground or deck surface.** The ground or deck surface shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of the railing. Toe clearance shall be provided and shall be 30 inches (762 mm)

wide minimum and 9 inches (229 mm) minimum above the ground or deck surface beyond the railing.

**11B-1005.4 Clear floor or ground space.** At each location where there are railings, guards or handrails complying with *Section 11B-1005.2.1*, a clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided. Where there are no railings, guards or handrails, at least one clear floor or ground space complying with *Section 11B-305* shall be provided on the fishing pier or platform.

**11B-1005.5 Turning space.** At least one turning space complying with *Section 11B-304.3* shall be provided on fishing piers and platforms.

**11B-1006 Golf facilities**

**11B-1006.1 General.** Golf facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-1006*.

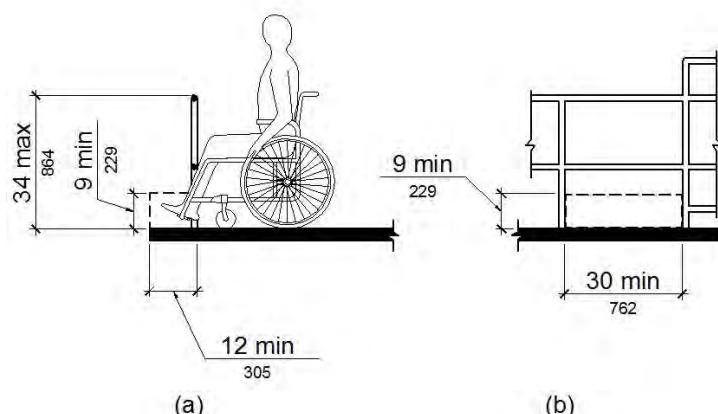
**11B-1006.2 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes serving teeing grounds, practice teeing grounds, putting greens, practice putting greens, teeing stations at driving ranges, course weather shelters, golf car rental areas, bag drop areas and course toilet rooms shall comply with *Division 4* and shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) wide minimum. Where handrails are provided, accessible routes shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum.

**Exception:** Handrails shall not be required on golf courses. Where handrails are provided on golf courses, the handrails shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-505*.

**11B-1006.3 Golf car passages.** Golf car passages shall comply with *Section 11B-1006.3*.

**11B-1006.3.1 Clear width.** The clear width of golf car passages shall be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum.

**11B-1006.3.2 Barriers.** Where curbs or other constructed barriers prevent golf cars from entering a fairway, openings 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum shall be provided at intervals not to exceed 75 yards (69 m).



**FIGURE 11B-1005.3.2  
EXTENDED GROUND OR DECK SURFACE AT FISHING PIERS AND PLATFORMS**

**11B-1006.4 Weather shelters.** A clear floor or ground space 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum by 96 inches (2438 mm) minimum shall be provided within weather shelters.

### 11B-1007 Miniature golf facilities

**11B-1007.1 General.** Miniature golf facilities shall comply with *Section 11B-1007*.

**11B-1007.2 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes serving holes on miniature golf courses shall comply with *Division 4*. Accessible routes located on playing surfaces of miniature golf holes shall be permitted to use the exceptions in *Section 11B-1007.2*.

#### Exceptions:

1. Playing surfaces shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-302.2*.
2. Where accessible routes intersect playing surfaces of holes, a 1 inch (25 mm) maximum curb shall be permitted for a width of 32 inches (813 mm) minimum.
3. A slope not steeper than 1:4 for a 4 inch (102 mm) maximum rise shall be permitted.
4. Ramp landing slopes specified by *Section 11B-405.7.1* shall be permitted to be 1:20 maximum.
5. Ramp landing length specified by *Section 11B-405.7.3* shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum.
6. Ramp landing size specified by *Section 11B-405.7.4* shall be permitted to be 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum.
7. Handrails shall not be required on holes. Where handrails are provided on holes, the handrails shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-505*.

**11B-1007.3 Miniature golf holes.** Miniature golf holes shall comply with *Section 11B-1007.3*.

**11B-1007.3.1 Start of play.** A clear floor or ground space 48 inches (1219 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum with slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the start of play.

**11B-1007.3.2 Golf club reach range area.** All areas within holes where golf balls rest shall be within 36 inches (914 mm) maximum of a clear floor or ground space 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum having a running slope not steeper than 1:20. The clear floor or ground space shall be served by an accessible route.

### 11B-1008 Play areas

**11B-1008.1 General.** Play areas shall comply with *Section 11B-1008*.

**11B-1008.2 Accessible routes.** Accessible routes serving play areas shall comply with *Division 4* and *Section 11B-1008.2* and shall be permitted to use the exceptions in *Sections 11B-1008.2.1* through *11B-1008.2.3*. Where accessible routes serve ground level play components, the vertical clearance shall be 80 inches high (2032 mm) minimum.

**11B-1008.2.1 Ground level and elevated play components.** Accessible routes serving ground level play components and elevated play components shall be permitted to use the exceptions in *Section 11B-1008.2.1*.

#### Exceptions:

1. Transfer systems complying with *Section 11B-1008.3* shall be permitted to connect elevated play components except where 20 or more elevated play components are provided no more than 25 percent of the elevated play components shall be permitted to be connected by transfer systems.
2. Where transfer systems are provided, an elevated play component shall be permitted to connect to another elevated play component as part of an accessible route.

**11B-1008.2.2 Soft contained play structures.** Accessible routes serving soft contained play structures shall be permitted to use the exception in *Section 11B-1008.2.2*.

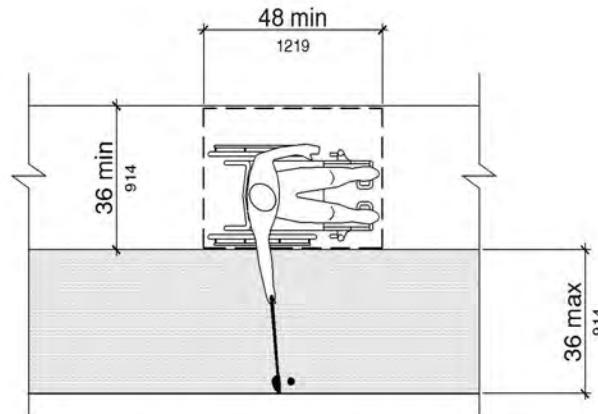
**Exception:** Transfer systems complying with *Section 11B-1008.3* shall be permitted to be used as part of an accessible route.

**11B-1008.2.3 Water play components.** Accessible routes serving water play components shall be permitted to use the exceptions in *Section 11B-1008.2.3*.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where the surface of the accessible route, clear floor or ground spaces or turning spaces serving water play components is submerged, compliance with *Sections 11B-302, 11B-403.3, 11B-405.2, 11B-405.3* and *11B-1008.2.6* shall not be required.
2. Transfer systems complying with *Section 11B-1008.3* shall be permitted to connect elevated play components in water.

**11B-1008.2.4 Clear width.** Accessible routes connecting play components shall provide a clear width complying with *Section 11B-1008.2.4*.



Note: Running Slope of Clear Floor or Ground Space Not Steeper Than 1:20

**FIGURE 11B-1007.3.2  
GOLF CLUB REACH RANGE AREA**

**11B-1008.2.4.1 Ground level.** At ground level, the clear width of accessible routes shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum.

**Exceptions:**

1. In play areas less than 1000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ), the clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 44 inches (1118 mm) minimum, if at least one turning space complying with *Section 11B-304.3* is provided where the restricted accessible route exceeds 30 feet (9144 mm) in length.
2. The clear width of accessible routes shall be permitted to be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum for a distance of 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum provided that multiple reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 60 inches (1524 mm) wide minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) long minimum.

**11B-1008.2.4.2 Elevated.** The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be 36 inches (914 mm) minimum.

**Exceptions:**

1. The clear width of accessible routes connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (813 mm) minimum for a distance of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided that reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1219 mm) long minimum and 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum.
2. The clear width of transfer systems connecting elevated play components shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.

**11B-1008.2.5 Ramps.** Within play areas, ramps connecting ground level play components and ramps connecting elevated play components shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.2.5*.

**11B-1008.2.5.1 Ground level.** Ramp runs connecting ground level play components shall have a running slope not steeper than 1:16.

**11B-1008.2.5.2 Elevated.** The rise for any ramp run connecting elevated play components shall be 12 inches (305 mm) maximum.

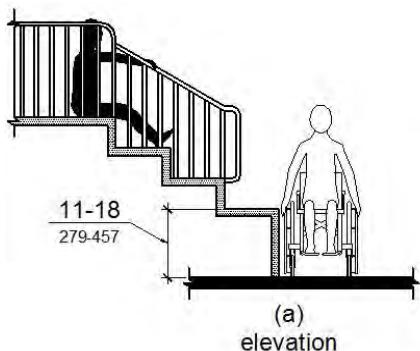


FIGURE 11B-1008.3.1  
TRANSFER PLATFORMS

**11B-1008.2.5.3 Handrails.** Where required on ramps serving play components, the handrails shall comply with *Section 11B-505* except as modified by *Section 11B-1008.2.5.3*.

**Exceptions:**

1. Handrails shall not be required on ramps located within ground level use zones.
2. Handrail extensions shall not be required.

**11B-1008.2.5.3.1 Handrail gripping surfaces.**

Handrail gripping surfaces with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 0.95 inch (24 mm) minimum and 1.55 inches (39 mm) maximum. Where the shape of the gripping surface is non-circular, the handrail shall provide an equivalent gripping surface.

**11B-1008.2.5.3.2 Handrail height.** The top of handrail gripping surfaces shall be 20 inches (508 mm) minimum and 28 inches (711 mm) maximum above the ramp surface.

**11B-1008.2.6 Ground surfaces.** Ground surfaces on accessible routes, clear floor or ground spaces, and turning spaces shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.2.6*.

**11B-1008.2.6.1 Accessibility.** Ground surfaces shall comply with ASTM F1951. Ground surfaces shall be inspected and maintained regularly and frequently to ensure continued compliance with ASTM F1951.

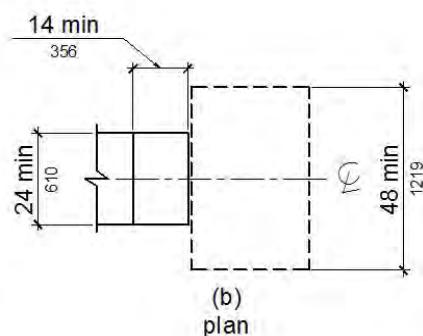
**11B-1008.2.6.2 Use zones.** Ground surfaces located within use zones shall comply with ASTM F1292 (*1999 edition or 2004 edition*).

**11B-1008.3 Transfer systems.** Where transfer systems are provided to connect to elevated play components, transfer systems shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.3*.

**11B-1008.3.1 Transfer platforms.** Transfer platforms shall be provided where transfer is intended from wheelchairs or other mobility aids. Transfer platforms shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.3.1*.

**11B-1008.3.1.1 Size.** Transfer platforms shall have level surfaces 14 inches (356 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide minimum.

**11B-1008.3.1.2 Height.** The height of transfer platforms shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum and 18



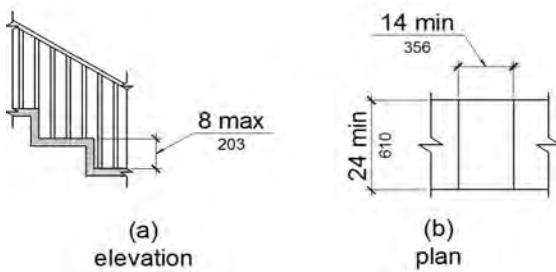
## ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING

inches (457 mm) maximum measured to the top of the surface from the ground or floor surface.

**11B-1008.3.1.3 Transfer space.** A transfer space complying with *Sections 11B-305.2 and 11B-305.3* shall be provided adjacent to the transfer platform. The 48 inch (1219 mm) long minimum dimension of the transfer space shall be centered on and parallel to the 24 inch (610 mm) long minimum side of the transfer platform. The side of the transfer platform serving the transfer space shall be unobstructed.

**11B-1008.3.1.4 Transfer supports.** At least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.

**11B-1008.3.2 Transfer steps.** Transfer steps shall be provided where movement is intended from transfer platforms to levels with elevated play components required to be on accessible routes. Transfer steps shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.3.2*.



**FIGURE 11B-1008.3.2  
TRANSFER STEPS**

**11B-1008.3.2.1 Size.** Transfer steps shall have level surfaces 14 inches (356 mm) deep minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) wide minimum.

**11B-1008.3.2.2 Height.** Each transfer step shall be 8 inches (203 mm) high maximum.

**11B-1008.3.2.3 Transfer supports.** At least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.

**11B-1008.3.2.4 Contrasting stripe.** Striping complying with *Section 11B-504.4.1* shall be provided at each transfer step.

**11B-1008.4 Play components.** Ground level play components on accessible routes and elevated play components connected by ramps shall comply with *Section 11B-1008.4*.

**11B-1008.4.1 Turning space.** At least one turning space complying with *Section 11B-304* shall be provided on the same level as play components. Where swings are provided, the turning space shall be located immediately adjacent to the swing.

**11B-1008.4.2 Clear floor or ground space.** Clear floor or ground space complying with *Sections 11B-305.2 and 11B-305.3* shall be provided at play components.

**11B-1008.4.3 Play tables.** Where play tables are provided, knee clearance 24 inches (610 mm) high minimum, 17 inches deep (432 mm) minimum, and 30 inches (762 mm) wide minimum shall be provided. The tops of rims,

curbs or other obstructions shall be 31 inches (787 mm) high maximum.

**Exception:** Play tables designed and constructed primarily for children 5 years and younger shall not be required to provide knee clearance where the clear floor or ground space required by *Section 11B-1008.4.2* is arranged for a parallel approach.

**11B-1008.4.4 Entry points and seats.** Where play components require transfer to entry points or seats, the entry points or seats shall be 11 inches (279 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the clear floor or ground space.

**Exception:** Entry points of slides shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-1008.4.4*.

**11B-1008.4.5 Transfer supports.** Where play components require transfer to entry points or seats, at least one means of support for transferring shall be provided.

### **11B-1009 Swimming pools, wading pools and spas**

**11B-1009.1 General.** Where provided, pool lifts, sloped entries, transfer walls, transfer systems and pool stairs shall comply with *Section 11B-1009*.

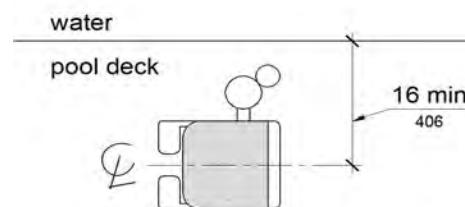
**11B-1009.2 Pool lifts.** Pool lifts shall comply with *Section 11B-1009.2*.

**11B-1009.2.1 Pool lift location.** Pool lifts shall be located where the water level is 36 inches (914 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum.

#### **Exceptions:**

- Where the entire pool depth is less than 36 inches (914 mm) or greater than 48 inches (1219 mm), compliance with *Section 11B-1009.2.1* shall not be required.
- Where multiple pool lift locations are provided, no more than one pool lift shall be required to be located in an area where the water level is 48 inches (1219 mm) maximum.

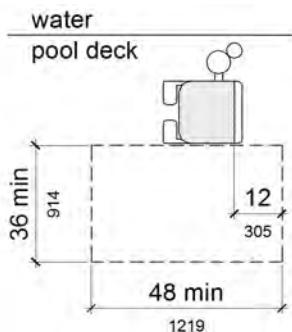
**11B-1009.2.2 Seat location.** In the raised position, the centerline of the seat shall be located over the deck and 16 inches (406 mm) minimum from the edge of the pool. The deck surface between the centerline of the seat and the pool edge shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.2.2  
POOL LIFT SEAT LOCATION**

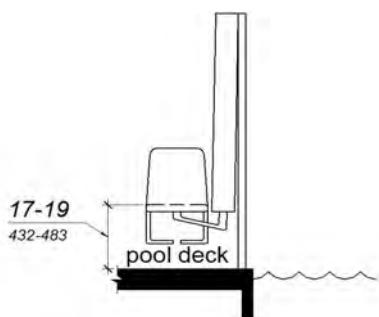
**11B-1009.2.3 Clear deck space.** On the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space shall be provided parallel with the seat. The space shall be 36 inches (914 mm) wide minimum and shall extend forward 48 inches

(1219 mm) minimum from a line located 12 inches (305 mm) behind the rear edge of the seat. The clear deck space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.2.3  
CLEAR DECK SPACE AT POOL LIFTS**

**11B-1009.2.4 Seat.** The seat shall be rigid and shall have a back support that is at least 12 inches (305 mm) tall. The height of the lift seat shall be designed to allow a stop at 17 inches (432 mm) minimum to 19 inches (483 mm) maximum measured from the deck to the top of the seat surface when in the raised (load) position. The seat shall have a restraint for the use of the occupant with operable parts complying with Section 11B-309.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.2.4  
POOL LIFT SEAT HEIGHT**

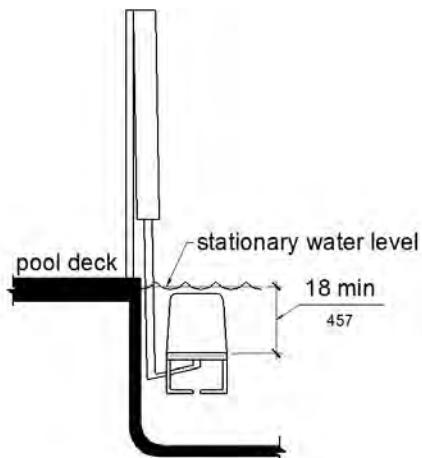
**11B-1009.2.5 Seat width.** The seat shall be 16 inches (406 mm) wide minimum.

**11B-1009.2.6 Footrests and armrests.** Footrests shall be provided and shall move with the seat. The seat shall have two armrests. The armrest positioned opposite the water shall be removable or shall fold clear of the seat when the seat is in the raised (load) position.

**Exception:** Footrests shall not be required on pool lifts provided in spas.

**11B-1009.2.7 Operation.** The lift shall be capable of unassisted operation from both the deck and water levels. Controls and operating mechanisms shall be unobstructed when the lift is in use and shall comply with Section 11B-309.4. *The lift shall be stable and not permit unintended movement when a person is getting into or out of the seat.*

**11B-1009.2.8 Submerged depth.** The lift shall be designed so that the seat will submerge to a water depth of 18 inches (457 mm) minimum below the stationary water level.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.2.8  
POOL LIFT SUBMERGED DEPTH**

**11B-1009.2.9 Lifting capacity.** Single person pool lifts shall have a weight capacity of 300 pounds (136 kg) minimum and be capable of sustaining a static load of at least one and a half times the rated load.

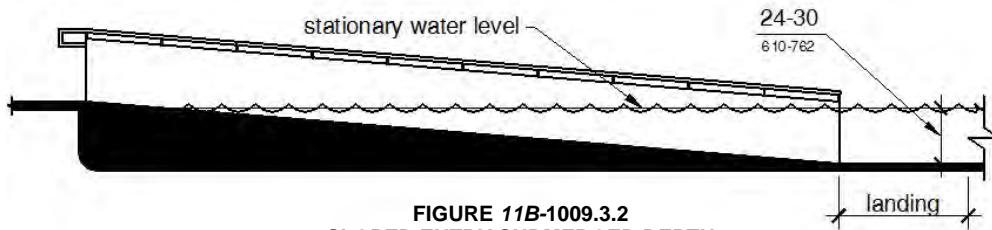
**11B-1009.3 Sloped entries.** Sloped entries shall comply with Section 11B-1009.3.

**11B-1009.3.1 Sloped entries.** Sloped entries shall comply with Division 4 except as modified in Sections 11B-1009.3.1 through 11B-1009.3.3.

**Exception:** Where sloped entries are provided, the surfaces shall not be required to be slip resistant.

**11B-1009.3.2 Submerged depth.** Sloped entries shall extend to a depth of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 30 inches (762 mm) maximum below the stationary water level. Where landings are required by Section 11B-405.7, at least one landing shall be located 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 30 inches (762 mm) maximum below the stationary water level.

**Exception:** In wading pools, the sloped entry and landings, if provided, shall extend to the deepest part of the wading pool.



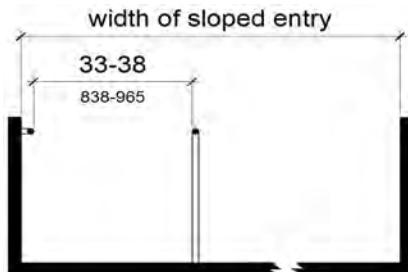
**FIGURE 11B-1009.3.2  
SLOPED ENTRY SUBMERGED DEPTH**

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

**11B-1009.3.3 Handrails.** At least two handrails complying with *Section 11B-505* shall be provided on the sloped entry. The clear width between required handrails shall be 33 inches (838 mm) minimum and 38 inches (965 mm) maximum.

**Exceptions:**

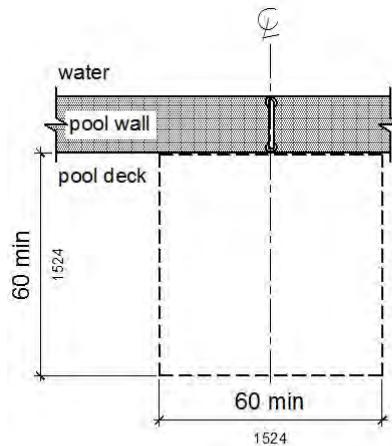
1. Handrail extensions specified by *Section 11B-505.10.1* shall not be required at the bottom landing serving a sloped entry.
2. Where a sloped entry is provided for wave action pools, leisure rivers, sand bottom pools and other pools where user access is limited to one area, the handrails shall not be required to comply with the clear width requirements of *Section 11B-1009.3.3*.
3. Sloped entries in wading pools shall not be required to provide handrails complying with *Section 11B-1009.3.3*. If provided, handrails on sloped entries in wading pools shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-505*.



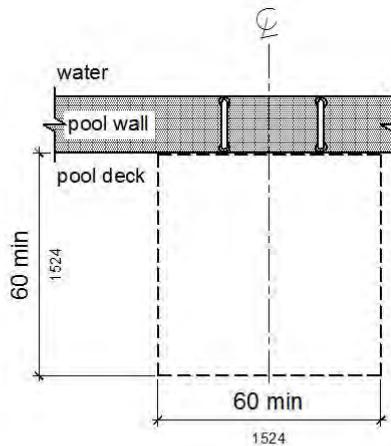
**FIGURE 11B-1009.3.3  
HANDRAILS FOR SLOPED ENTRY**

**11B-1009.4 Transfer walls.** Transfer walls shall comply with *Section 11B-1009.4*.

**11B-1009.4.1 Clear deck space.** A clear deck space of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided



(a)



(b)

**FIGURE 11B-1009.4.1  
CLEAR DECK SPACE AT TRANSFER WALLS**

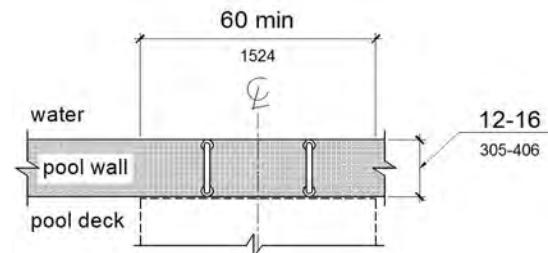
at the base of the transfer wall. Where one grab bar is provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, the clear deck space shall be centered on the clearance between the grab bars.

**11B-1009.4.2 Height.** The height of the transfer wall shall be 16 inches (406 mm) minimum and 19 inches (483 mm) maximum measured from the deck.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.4.2  
TRANSFER WALL HEIGHT**

**11B-1009.4.3 Wall depth and length.** The depth of the transfer wall shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 16 inches (406 mm) maximum. The length of the transfer wall shall be 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum and shall be centered on the clear deck space.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.4.3  
DEPTH AND LENGTH OF TRANSFER WALLS**

**11B-1009.4.4 Surface.** Surfaces of transfer walls shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.

**11B-1009.4.5 Grab bars.** At least one grab bar complying with *Section 11B-609* shall be provided on the transfer wall. Grab bars shall be perpendicular to the pool wall and shall extend the full depth of the transfer wall. The top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 6 inches (152 mm) maximum above transfer walls. Where one grab bar is provided, clearance shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum on both sides of the grab bar. Where two grab bars are provided, clearance between grab bars shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.

**Exception:** Grab bars on transfer walls shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-609.4*.

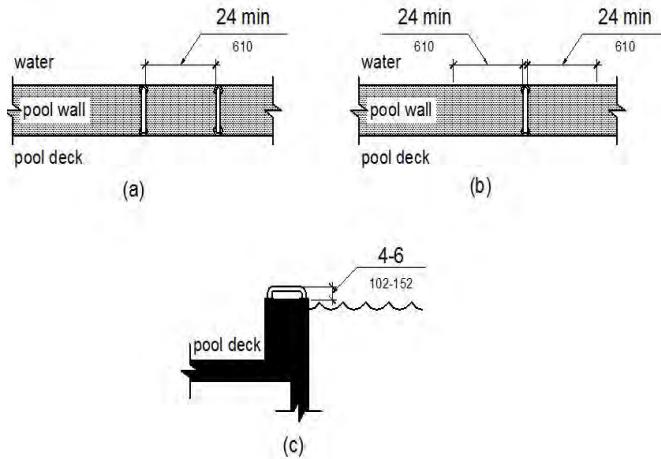


FIGURE 11B-1009.4.5  
GRAB BARS FOR TRANSFER WALLS

**11B-1009.5 Transfer systems.** Transfer systems shall comply with *Section 11B-1009.5*.

**11B-1009.5.1 Transfer platform.** A transfer platform shall be provided at the head of each transfer system. Transfer platforms shall provide 19 inches (483 mm) minimum clear depth and 24 inches (610 mm) minimum clear width.

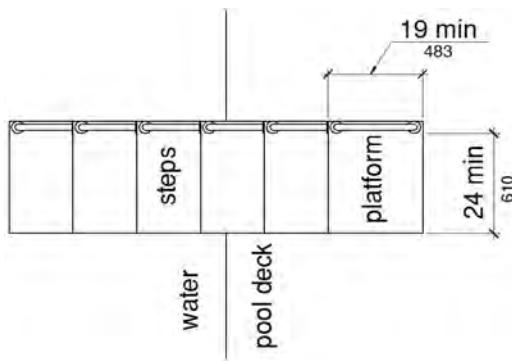


FIGURE 11B-1009.5.1  
SIZE OF TRANSFER PLATFORM

**11B-1009.5.2 Transfer space.** A transfer space of 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum with a slope not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at the base of the transfer platform surface and shall be centered along a 24 inch (610 mm) minimum side of the transfer platform. The side of the transfer platform serving the transfer space shall be unobstructed.

**11B-1009.5.3 Height.** The height of the transfer platform shall comply with *Section 11B-1009.4.2*.

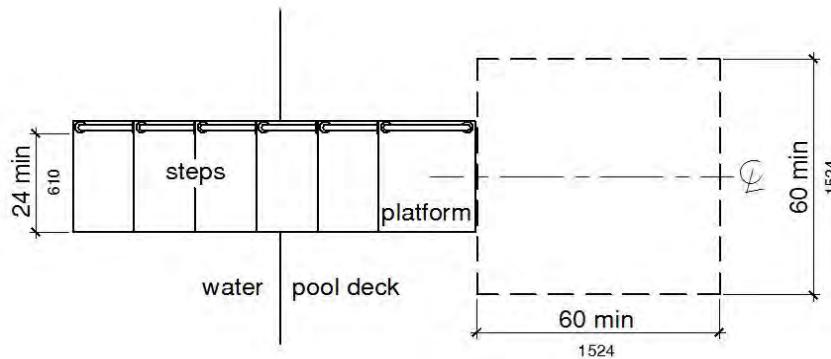
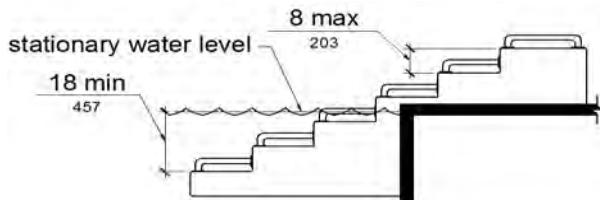


FIGURE 11B-1009.5.2  
CLEAR DECK SPACE AT TRANSFER PLATFORM

**ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING**

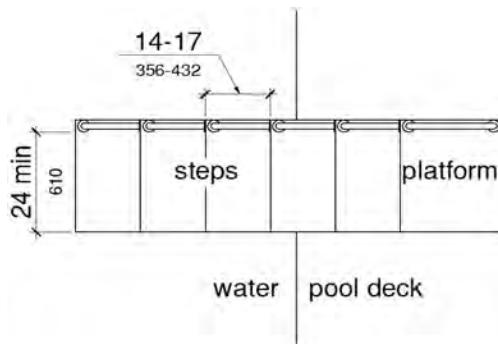
**11B-1009.5.4 Transfer steps.** Transfer step height shall be 8 inches (203 mm) maximum. The surface of the bottom tread shall extend to a water depth of 18 inches (457 mm) minimum below the stationary water level.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.5.4  
TRANSFER STEPS**

**11B-1009.5.5 Surface.** The surface of the transfer system shall not be sharp and shall have rounded edges.

**11B-1009.5.6 Size.** Each transfer step shall have a tread clear depth of 14 inches (356 mm) minimum and 17 inches (432 mm) maximum and shall have a tread clear width of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.5.6  
SIZE OF TRANSFER STEPS**

**11B-1009.5.7 Grab bars.** At least one grab bar on each transfer step and the transfer platform or a continuous grab bar serving each transfer step and the transfer platform shall be provided. Where a grab bar is provided on each step, the tops of gripping surfaces shall be 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 6 inches (152 mm) maximum above each step and transfer platform. Where a continuous grab bar is provided, the top of the gripping surface shall be 4 inches (102 mm) minimum and 6 inches (152 mm) maximum above the step nosing and transfer platform. Grab bars shall comply with *Section 11B-609* and be located on at least one side of the transfer system. The grab bar located at the transfer platform shall not obstruct transfer.

**Exception:** Grab bars on transfer systems shall not be required to comply with *Section 11B-609.4*.

**11B-1009.6 Pool stairs.** Pool stairs shall comply with *Section 11B-1009.6*.

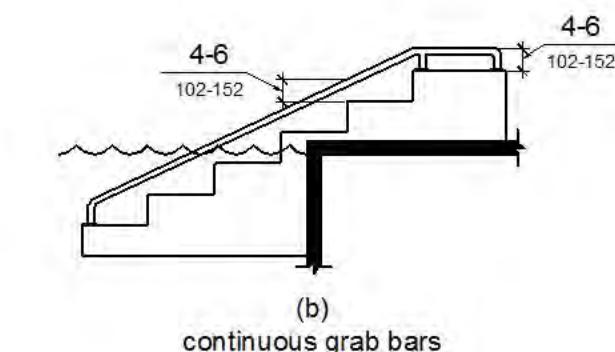
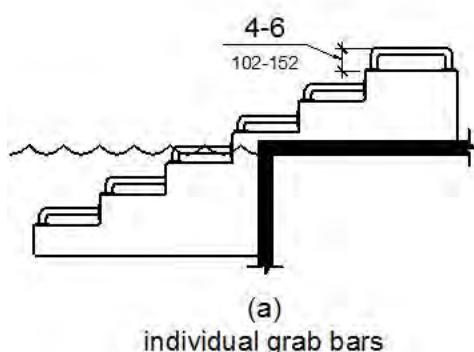
**11B-1009.6.1 Pool stairs.** Pool stairs shall comply with *Section 11B-504*.

**Exception:** Pool step riser heights shall not be required to be 4 inches (102 mm) high minimum and 7 inches (178 mm) high maximum provided that riser heights are uniform.

**11B-1009.6.2 Handrails.** The width between handrails shall be 20 inches (508 mm) minimum and 24 inches (610 mm) maximum. Handrail extensions required by *Section 11B-505.10.3* shall not be required on pool stairs.

**11B-1010 Shooting facilities with firing positions**

**11B-1010.1 Turning space.** A circular turning space 60 inches (1524 mm) diameter minimum with slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be provided at shooting facilities with firing positions.



**FIGURE 11B-1009.5.7  
GRAB BARS**



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 12 – INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC		
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5									
Adopt entire chapter							X	X																
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X					X	X	X	X	X	X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below		X	X													X	X	X			X			
Chapter / Section																								
1202.1					X	X																		
1202.2.1						X	X																	
1202.3						X	X																	
1202.4.1.3																								X
1202.5							X	X																
1202.5.2.1							X	X																
1202.6						X																		
1203.1, <i>Exceptions 2 &amp; 4</i>							X	X																
1203.1, <i>Exception 3</i>																X	X	X	X	X	X			
Table 1203.3.1																								X
1203.4.1.1																								X
1203.4.2																								X
1204.1							X	X																
1204.4.1							X	X																
1204.6						X																		
1204.7	X																							
1204.7.1	X																							
1205							X																	
1206.3, <i>Exception</i>								X	X															
1206.4								X	X															
1206.5						X																		
1208.1							X																	
1208.2																X	X	X	X	X	X			
1208.2, <i>Exception 5</i>																X	X	X	X	X	X			
1208.2, <i>Exception 6</i>																								X
1208.4							X																	
1209							X																	
1209.1.1																								X
1210.2																X		X	X	X	X			
1211 – 1211.6							X	X																
1212							X																	
Table 1224.4.6.5																X	X	X	X	X	X			
1224																X								
1225																								
1226																								
1227																								
1228																								
1230																								
1231																								
1235																								X
1236																								X
1237																								X

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 12 – INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter							X	X															
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X					X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below		X	X													X	X	X			X		
Chapter / Section																							
1240																			X				
1241																			X				
1242																			X				
1243																			X				
1250																				X			
1251																				X			
1252																				X			
1253																				X			
1254																				X			

*The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.*

# CHAPTER 12

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 12 provides minimum provisions for the interior of buildings—the occupied environment. Ventilation, lighting, and space heating are directly regulated in this chapter and in conjunction with the California Mechanical Code and the California Energy Code. Minimum room size, maximum room-to-room sound transmission and classroom acoustics are set for educational occupancies.

### SECTION 1201 GENERAL

**1201.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern ventilation, temperature control, lighting, yards and courts, sound transmission, room dimensions, surrounding materials and rodentproofing associated with the interior spaces of buildings.

### SECTION 1202 VENTILATION

**1202.1 General.** Buildings shall be provided with natural ventilation in accordance with Section 1202.5, or mechanical ventilation in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**1202.2 Roof ventilation.** Roof assemblies shall be ventilated in accordance with this section or shall comply with Section 1202.3.

**1202.2.1 Ventilated attics and rafter spaces.** Enclosed attics and enclosed rafter spaces formed where ceilings are applied directly to the underside of roof framing members shall have cross ventilation for each separate space by ventilation openings protected against the entrance of rain and snow. Blocking and bridging shall be arranged so as not to interfere with the movement of air. An airspace of not less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be provided between the insulation and the roof sheathing. The net free ventilating area shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{150}$  of the area of the space ventilated. Ventilators shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

**Exception:** The net free cross-ventilation area shall be permitted to be reduced to  $\frac{1}{300}$  provided both of the following conditions are met:

- > 1. In Climate Zones 6, 7 and 8, a Class I or II vapor retarder is installed on the warm-in-winter side of the ceiling.
2. At least 40 percent and not more than 50 percent of the required venting area is provided by ventilators located in the upper portion of the attic or rafter space. Upper ventilators shall be located not more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space, measured vertically, with the balance of the ventilation provided by eave or cornice vents. Where the location of wall or roof framing members conflicts with the

installation of upper ventilators, installation more than 3 feet (914 mm) below the ridge or highest point of the space shall be permitted.

**1202.2.2 Openings into attic.** Exterior openings into the attic space of any building intended for human occupancy shall be protected to prevent the entry of birds, squirrels, rodents, snakes and other similar creatures. Openings for ventilation having a least dimension of not less than  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) and not more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) shall be permitted. Openings for ventilation having a least dimension larger than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) shall be provided with corrosion-resistant wire cloth screening, hardware cloth, perforated vinyl or similar material with openings having a least dimension of not less than  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) and not more than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm). Where combustion air is obtained from an attic area, it shall be in accordance with Chapter 7 of the *California Mechanical Code*.

**1202.3 Unvented attic and unvented enclosed rafter assemblies.** Unvented attics and unvented enclosed roof framing assemblies created by ceilings applied directly to the underside of the roof framing members/rafters and the structural roof sheathing at the top of the roof framing members shall be permitted where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The unvented attic space is completely within the building thermal envelope.
  2. No interior Class I vapor retarders are installed on the ceiling side (attic floor) of the unvented attic assembly or on the ceiling side of the unvented enclosed roof framing assembly.
  3. Where wood shingles or shakes are used, not less than a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) vented airspace separates the shingles or shakes and the roofing underlayment above the structural sheathing.
  4. In Climate Zones 5, 6, 7 and 8, any air-impermeable insulation shall be a Class II vapor retarder or shall have a Class II vapor retarder coating or covering in direct contact with the underside of the insulation.
- <
- 4.1. *[HCD 1 & HCD 2] In California Climate Zones 14 and 16, a Class I or Class II vapor retarder shall be installed on the indirectly conditioned space side of all insulation in an unvented attic with air-permeable insulation, for condensation control.*
- ||

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

5. Insulation shall comply with either Item 5.1 or 5.2, and additionally Item 5.3.

5.1. Item 5.1.1, 5.1.2, 5.1.3 or 5.1.4 shall be met, depending on the air permeability of the insulation directly under the structural roof sheathing.

**[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** *No insulation shall be required when roof tiles, wood shingles or wood shakes, or any other roofing system using battens and no continuous underlayment is installed. A continuous underlayment shall be considered to exist if sheathing, roofing paper or any continuous layer having a perm rate of no more than one perm under the dry cup method is present.*

5.1.1. Where only air-impermeable insulation is provided, it shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing.

5.1.2. Where air-permeable insulation is provided inside the building thermal envelope, it shall be installed in accordance with Item 5.1.1. In addition to the air-permeable insulation installed directly below the structural sheathing, rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing in accordance with the *R*-values in Table 1202.3 for condensation control.

5.1.3. Where both air-impermeable and air-permeable insulation are provided, the air-impermeable insulation shall be applied in direct contact with the underside of the structural roof sheathing and shall be in accordance with the *R*-values in Table 1202.3 for condensation control. The air-permeable insulation shall be installed directly under the air-impermeable insulation.

5.1.4. Alternatively, sufficient rigid board or sheet insulation shall be installed directly above the structural roof sheathing to maintain the monthly average temperature of the underside of the structural roof sheathing above 45°F (7°C). For calculation purposes, an interior air temperature of 68°F (20°C) is assumed and the exterior air temperature is assumed to be the monthly average outside air temperature of the three coldest months.

5.2. In Climate Zones 1, 2 and 3, air-permeable insulation installed in unvented attics shall meet the following requirements:

5.2.1. A vapor diffusion port shall be installed not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the highest point of the

roof, measured vertically from the highest point of the roof to the lower edge of the port.

5.2.2. The port area shall be greater than or equal to  $\frac{1}{600}$  of the ceiling area. Where there are multiple ports in the attic, the sum of the port areas shall be greater than or equal to the area requirement.

5.2.3. The vapor permeable membrane in the vapor diffusion port shall have a vapor permeance rating of greater than or equal to 20 perms when tested in accordance with Procedure A of ASTM E96.

5.2.4. The vapor diffusion port shall serve as an air barrier between the attic and the exterior of the building.

5.2.5. The vapor diffusion port shall protect the attic against the entrance of rain and snow.

5.2.6. Framing members and blocking shall not block the free flow of water vapor to the port. Not less than a 2-inch (50 mm) space shall be provided between any blocking and the roof sheathing. Air-permeable insulation shall be permitted within that space.

5.2.7. The roof slope shall be greater than or equal to 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (3:12).

5.2.8. Where only air-permeable insulation is used, it shall be installed directly below the structural roof sheathing, on top the attic floor, or on top of the ceiling.

5.2.9. Where only air-permeable insulation is used and is installed directly below the structural roof sheathing, air shall be supplied at a flow rate greater than or equal to 50 cubic feet per minute (23.6 L/s) per 1,000 square feet (93 m<sup>2</sup>) of ceiling.

5.3. The air shall be supplied from ductwork providing supply air to the occupiable space when the conditioning system is operating. Alternatively, the air shall be supplied by a supply fan when the conditioning system is operating. Where preformed insulation board is used as the air-impermeable insulation layer, it shall be sealed at the perimeter of each individual sheet interior surface to form a continuous layer.

### Exceptions:

1. Section 1202.3 does not apply to special use structures or enclosures such as swimming pool enclosures, data processing centers, hospitals or art galleries.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

- > 2. Section 1202.3 does not apply to enclosures in Climate Zones 5 through 8 that are humidified beyond 35 percent during the three coldest months.

**TABLE 1202.3  
INSULATION FOR CONDENSATION CONTROL**

CLIMATE ZONE	MINIMUM R-VALUE OF AIR-IMPERMEABLE INSULATION <sup>a</sup>
2B and 3B tile roof only	0 (none required)
1, 2A, 2B, 3A, 3B, 3C	R-5
4C	R-10
4A, 4B	R-15
5	R-20
6	R-25
7	R-30
8	R-35

- a. Contributes to, but does not supersede, thermal resistance requirements for attic and roof assemblies in the *California Energy Code*.

**1202.3.1 California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones.** The IECC climate zones used by this section differ from those used by the California Energy Code to determine applicability of energy efficiency measures. Comparison of IECC and California Energy Code climate zones is shown in Table 1202.3.1.

**TABLE 1202.3.1  
IECC VERSUS CALIFORNIA ENERGY CODE  
CLIMATE ZONE COMPARISON**

IECC <sup>b</sup>	CALIFORNIA ENERGY CODE	DESCRIPTION <sup>b</sup>
6	16	Includes Alpine, Mono Counties
5	11, 12, 16	Includes Siskiyou, Modoc, Lassen, Plumas, Sierra, Nevada Counties
4 (marine)	1, 2, 16	Includes Del Norte and Humboldt Counties
4	2, 12, 13, 16	Includes Inyo, Trinity, Lake, El Dorado, Amador, Calaveras, Tuolumne, Mariposa Counties
3	8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16	Includes Shasta, Tehama, Butte, Glenn, Colusa, Yuba, Contra Costa, Sutter, Yolo, Sacramento, Placer, San Joaquin, Solano, Stanislaus, Merced, Madera, Fresno, Kings, Tulare, Kern, Ventura, Los Angeles, Orange, San Bernardino, Riverside Counties
3 (marine)	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 12, 16	Includes Mendocino, Sonoma, Marin, San Francisco, San Mateo, Alameda, Santa Cruz, Monterey, San Benito, San Luis Obispo, Santa Barbara, Ventura, San Diego Counties
2	14, 16	Includes Imperial County

- a. IECC Climate Zones 1, 7 and 8 do not occur in California, nor do any IECC moist climate zones.  
 b. IECC boundaries are defined by county political boundary lines. California Energy Code boundaries are based on a metes and bounds specifications aligned with climate-affecting geographic features, which often do not coincide with county lines.

**1202.4 Under-floor ventilation.** The space between the bottom of the floor joists and the earth under any building except spaces occupied by basements or cellars shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1202.4.1, 1202.4.2 or 1202.4.3.

**1202.4.1 Ventilation openings.** Ventilation openings through foundation walls shall be provided. The openings shall be placed so as to provide cross ventilation of the under-floor space. The net area of ventilation openings shall be in accordance with Section 1202.4.1.1 or 1202.4.1.2. Ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with any of the following materials, provided that the least dimension of the covering shall be not greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm):

1. Perforated sheet metal plates not less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick.
2. Expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick.
3. Cast-iron grilles or gratings.
4. Extruded load-bearing vents.
5. Hardware cloth of 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.
6. Corrosion-resistant wire mesh, with the least dimension not greater than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).
7. Operable louvres, where ventilation is provided in accordance with Section 1202.4.1.2.

**1202.4.1.1 Ventilation area for crawl spaces with open earth floors.** The net area of ventilation openings for crawl spaces with uncovered earth floors shall be not less than 1 square foot for each 150 square feet ( $0.67 \text{ m}^2$  for each  $100 \text{ m}^2$ ) of crawl space area.

**1202.4.1.2 Ventilation area for crawl spaces with covered floors.** The net area of ventilation openings for crawl spaces with the ground surface covered with a Class I vapor retarder shall be not less than 1 square foot for each 1,500 square feet ( $0.67 \text{ m}^2$  for each  $1000 \text{ m}^2$ ) of crawl space area.

**1202.4.1.3 [SPCB]** Openings for under-floor ventilation shall be not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  square feet ( $0.135 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each 25 linear feet (7620 linear mm) of exterior wall. They shall be covered with corrosion-resistant wire mesh with mesh openings not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) nor more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in any dimension.

**1202.4.2 Ventilation in cold climates.** In extremely cold climates, where a ventilation opening will cause a detrimental loss of energy, ventilation openings to the interior of the structure shall be provided.

**1202.4.3 Mechanical ventilation.** Mechanical ventilation shall be provided to crawl spaces where the ground surface is covered with a Class I vapor retarder. Ventilation shall be in accordance with Section 1202.4.3.1 or 1202.4.3.2.

**1202.4.3.1 Continuous mechanical ventilation.** Continuously operated mechanical ventilation shall be

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

provided at a rate of 1.0 cubic foot per minute (cfm) for each 50 square feet (1.02 L/s for each 10 m<sup>2</sup>) of crawl space ground surface area and the ground surface shall be covered with a Class I vapor retarder.

**1202.4.3.2 Conditioned space.** The crawl space shall be conditioned in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the walls of the crawl space shall be insulated in accordance with the *California Energy Code*.

**1202.4.4 Flood hazard areas.** For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the openings for under-floor ventilation shall be deemed as meeting the flood opening requirements of ASCE 24 provided that the ventilation openings are designed and installed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**1202.5 Natural ventilation.** Natural ventilation of an occupied space shall be through windows, doors, louvers or other openings to the outdoors. The operating mechanism for such openings shall be provided with ready access so that the openings are readily controllable by the building occupants.

**[HCD 1]** *In employee housing, all openable windows in rooms used for living, dining, cooking or sleeping purposes, and toilet and bath buildings, shall be provided and maintained with insect screening.*

**[HCD 1]** *Door openings of rooms used for dining, cooking, toilet and bathing facilities in employee housing shall be provided and maintained with insect screening or with solid doors equipped with self-closing devices in lieu thereof, when approved by the enforcement agency.*

**[HCD 1]** *The windows, doors, louvers or other approved closeable openings not required by Section 1030 may open into a passive solar energy collector for ventilation required by this section. The area of ventilation openings to the outside of the passive solar energy collector shall be increased to compensate for the openings required by the interior space.*

**1202.5.1 Ventilation area required.** The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be not less than 4 percent of the floor area being ventilated.

**1202.5.1.1 Adjoining spaces.** Where rooms and spaces without openings to the outdoors are ventilated through an adjoining room, the opening to the adjoining room shall be unobstructed and shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 25 square feet (2.3 m<sup>2</sup>). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

**Exception:** Exterior openings required for ventilation shall be allowed to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover provided that the openable area between the sunroom addition or patio cover and the interior room shall have an area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the interior room or space, but not less than 20 square feet (1.86 m<sup>2</sup>). The openable area of the openings to the outdoors shall be based on the total floor area being ventilated.

**1202.5.1.2 Openings below grade.** Where openings below grade provide required natural ventilation, the outside horizontal clear space measured perpendicular to the opening shall be one and one-half times the depth of the opening. The depth of the opening shall be measured from the average adjoining ground level to the bottom of the opening.

**1202.5.2 Contaminants exhausted.** Contaminant sources in naturally ventilated spaces shall be removed in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code* and the *California Fire Code*.

**1202.5.2.1 Bathrooms.** Rooms containing bathtubs, showers, spas and similar bathing fixtures shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

*The minimum exhaust rate shall not be less than that established by Table 403.7 "Minimum Exhaust Rates." See California Mechanical Code, Chapter 5, for additional provisions related to environmental air ducts.*

**[HCD 1]** *In addition to the requirements in this section and in the California Mechanical Code, bathrooms in Group R occupancies shall be mechanically ventilated in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.5.*

**1202.5.3 Openings on yards or courts.** Where natural ventilation is to be provided by openings onto yards or courts, such yards or courts shall comply with Section 1205.

**1202.6 Other ventilation and exhaust systems.** Ventilation and exhaust systems for occupancies and operations involving flammable or combustible hazards or other contaminant sources as covered in the *California Mechanical Code* or the *California Fire Code* shall be provided as required by both codes.

## SECTION 1203 TEMPERATURE CONTROL

**1203.1 Equipment and systems.** Interior spaces intended for human occupancy shall be provided with active or passive space heating systems capable of maintaining an indoor temperature of not less than 68°F (20°C) at a point 3 feet (914 mm) above the floor on the design heating day.

### Exceptions:

1. Space heating systems are not required for:

1.1. Interior spaces where the primary purpose of the space is not associated with human comfort.

1.2. Group F, H, S or U occupancies.

2. **[HCD 1]** *For limited-density owner-built rural dwellings, a heating facility or appliance shall be installed in each dwelling subject to the provisions of Subchapter 1, Chapter 1, Title 25, California Code of Regulations, commencing with Section 74; however, there shall be no specified requirement for heating capacity or temperature maintenance. The use of solid-fuel or*

*solar-heating devices shall be deemed as complying with the requirements of this section. If nonrenewable fuel is used in these dwellings, rooms so heated shall meet current installation standards.*

3. *[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 3, 4 & 5] Space heating systems shall comply with the requirements of the California Mechanical Code.*
4. *[HCD 1] When a passive solar energy collector is designed as a conditioned area it shall comply with the California Energy Code. Nonconditioned passive solar energy collectors are exempt from compliance with the California Energy Code.*

## SECTION 1204 LIGHTING

**1204.1 General.** Every space intended for human occupancy shall be provided with natural light by means of exterior glazed openings in accordance with Section 1204.2 or shall be provided with artificial light in accordance with Section 1204.3. Exterior glazed openings shall open directly onto a public way or onto a yard or court in accordance with Section 1205.

*[HCD 1] Glazed openings may open into a passive solar energy collector provided the area of exterior glazed openings in the passive solar energy collector is increased to compensate for the area required by the interior space.*

**1204.2 Natural light.** The minimum net glazed area shall be not less than 8 percent of the floor area of the room served.

**1204.2.1 Adjoining spaces.** For the purpose of natural lighting, any room is permitted to be considered as a portion of an adjoining room where one-half of the area of the common wall is open and unobstructed and provides an opening of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 25 square feet ( $2.32 \text{ m}^2$ ), whichever is greater.

**Exception:** Openings required for natural light shall be permitted to open into a sunroom with thermal isolation or a patio cover where the common wall provides a glazed area of not less than one-tenth of the floor area of the interior room or 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ), whichever is greater.

**1204.2.2 Exterior openings.** Exterior openings required by Section 1204.2 for natural light shall open directly onto a public way, yard or court, as set forth in Section 1205.

### Exceptions:

1. Required exterior openings are permitted to open into a roofed porch where the porch meets all of the following criteria:
  - 1.1. Abuts a public way, yard or court.
  - 1.2. Has a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).
  - 1.3. Has a longer side at least 65 percent open and unobstructed.

2. Skylights are not required to open directly onto a public way, yard or court.

**1204.3 Artificial light.** Artificial light shall be provided that is adequate to provide an average illumination of 10 footcandles (107 lux) over the area of the room at a height of 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor level.

**1204.4 Stairway illumination.** Stairways within dwelling units and exterior stairways serving a dwelling unit shall have an illumination level on tread runs of not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux). Stairways in other occupancies shall be governed by Chapter 10.

**1204.4.1 Controls.** The control for activation of the required stairway lighting shall be in accordance with the *California Electrical Code*.

**1204.5 Emergency egress lighting.** The means of egress shall be illuminated in accordance with Section 1008.1.

**1204.6 Light pollution reduction.** *[BSC-CG] See California Green Building Standards Code, Chapter 5, Division 5.1 for additional light pollution reduction requirements.*

**1204.7 Campus lighting for parking facilities and primary walkways at California state universities, colleges and community colleges.** *[BSC] Artificial light shall be provided for parking facilities and primary walkways at California State Universities, colleges and community colleges in accordance with provisions of this subsection. This subsection shall not apply to the University of California unless the Regents of the University of California, by resolution, make it applicable.*

**1204.7.1 Lighting requirements.** *Based on the recommendations of the most current edition of the Illumination Engineering Society lighting handbook, the following lighting standards shall be used for all new construction of open parking facilities, covered parking facilities and primary walkways:*

1. *Open and covered parking facilities.*
  - 1.1. *Medium-level activity usage when medium usage is present.*
  - 1.2. *High-level activity usage when high usage is present.*
2. *Primary campus walkways.*
  - 2.1. *Medium-level activity usage when medium usage is present.*
  - 2.2. *High-level activity usage when high usage is present.*

## SECTION 1205 YARDS OR COURTS

**1205.1 General.** This section shall apply to yards and courts adjacent to exterior openings that provide natural light or ventilation. Such yards and courts shall be on the same lot as the building.

**1205.2 Yards.** Yards shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width for buildings two stories or less above grade plane. For buildings more than two stories above grade plane, the minimum width of the yard shall be increased at the rate of 1 foot

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

(305 mm) for each additional story. For buildings exceeding 14 stories above grade plane, the required width of the yard shall be computed on the basis of 14 stories above grade plane.

**1205.3 Courts.** Courts shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in width. Courts having windows opening on opposite sides shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in width. Courts shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length unless bounded on one end by a public way or yard. For buildings more than two stories above grade plane, the court shall be increased 1 foot (305 mm) in width and 2 feet (610 mm) in length for each additional story. For buildings exceeding 14 stories above grade plane, the required dimensions shall be computed on the basis of 14 stories above grade plane.

**1205.3.1 Court access.** Access shall be provided to the bottom of courts for cleaning purposes.

**1205.3.2 Air intake.** Courts more than two stories in height shall be provided with a horizontal air intake at the bottom not less than 10 square feet ( $0.93 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and leading to the exterior of the building unless abutting a yard or public way.

**1205.3.3 Court drainage.** The bottom of every court shall be properly graded and drained to a public sewer or other approved disposal system complying with the *California Plumbing Code*.

## SECTION 1206 SOUND TRANSMISSION

**1206.1 Scope.** This section shall apply to common interior walls, partitions and floor/ceiling assemblies between adjacent dwelling units and sleeping units or between dwelling units and sleeping units and adjacent public areas.

**1206.2 Airborne sound.** Walls, partitions and floor-ceiling assemblies separating dwelling units and sleeping units from each other or from public or service areas shall have a sound transmission class of not less than 50 where tested in accordance with ASTM E90, or have a Normalized Noise Isolation Class (NNIC) rating of not less than 45 if field tested, in accordance with ASTM E336 for airborne noise. Alternatively, the sound transmission class of walls, partitions and floor-ceiling assemblies shall be established by engineering analysis based on a comparison of walls, partitions and floor-ceiling assemblies having sound transmission class ratings as determined by the test procedures set forth in ASTM E90. Penetrations or openings in construction assemblies for piping; electrical devices; recessed cabinets; bathtubs; soffits; or heating, ventilating or exhaust ducts shall be sealed, lined, insulated or otherwise treated to maintain the required ratings. This requirement shall not apply to entrance doors; however, such doors shall be tight fitting to the frame and sill.

**1206.2.1 Masonry.** The sound transmission class of concrete masonry and clay masonry assemblies shall be calculated in accordance with TMS 302 or determined through testing in accordance with ASTM E90.

**1206.3 Structure-borne sound.** Floor-ceiling assemblies between dwelling units and sleeping units or between a

dwelling unit or sleeping unit and a public or service area within the structure shall have an impact insulation class rating of not less than 50 where tested in accordance with ASTM E492, or have a Normalized Impact Sound Rating (NISR) of not less than 45 if field tested in accordance with ASTM E1007. Alternatively, the impact insulation class of floor-ceiling assemblies shall be established by engineering analysis based on a comparison of floor-ceiling assemblies having impact insulation class ratings as determined by the test procedures in ASTM E492.

**Exception:** Impact sound insulation is not required for floor-ceiling assemblies over nonhabitable rooms or spaces not designed to be occupied, such as garages, mechanical rooms or storage areas.

**1206.4 Allowable interior noise levels.** Interior noise levels attributable to exterior sources shall not exceed 45 dB in any habitable room. The noise metric shall be either the day-night average sound level (Ldn) or the community noise equivalent level (CNEL), consistent with the noise element of the local general plan.

**1206.5 Acoustical control. [BSC-CG]** See California Green Building Standards Code, Chapter 5, Division 5.5 for additional sound transmission requirements.

## SECTION 1207 ENHANCED CLASSROOM ACOUSTICS

**1207.1 General.** Enhanced classroom acoustics, where required by this section, shall comply with Section 808 of ICC A117.1.

**1207.2 Where required.** In Group E occupancies, enhanced classroom acoustics shall be provided in all classrooms with a volume of 20,000 cubic feet ( $566 \text{ m}^3$ ) or less.

## SECTION 1208 INTERIOR SPACE DIMENSIONS

**1208.1 Minimum room widths.** Habitable spaces, other than a kitchen, shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) in any plan dimension. Kitchens shall have a clear passageway of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) between counter fronts and appliances or counter fronts and walls.

**[HCD 1]** For limited-density owner-built rural dwellings, there shall be no requirements for room dimensions, provided there is adequate light and ventilation and adequate means of egress.

**1208.2 Minimum ceiling heights.** Occupiable spaces, habitable spaces and corridors shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm) above the finished floor. Bathrooms, toilet rooms, kitchens, storage rooms and laundry rooms shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the finished floor.

### Exceptions:

1. In one- and two-family dwellings, beams or girders spaced not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center shall be permitted to project not more than 6 inches (152 mm) below the required ceiling height.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

2. If any room in a building has a sloped ceiling, the prescribed ceiling height for the room is required in one-half the area thereof. Any portion of the room measuring less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the finished floor to the ceiling shall not be included in any computation of the minimum area thereof.
3. The height of mezzanines and spaces below mezzanines shall be in accordance with Section 505.2.
4. Corridors contained within a dwelling unit or sleeping unit in a Group R occupancy shall have a ceiling height of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the finished floor.
5. *[OSHPD 1, 2, 3 & 5] Minimum ceiling heights shall comply with Section 1224.4.10.*
6. *[OSHPD 4] Minimum ceiling heights shall comply with Section 1227.8.*

**1208.2.1 Furred ceiling.** Any room with a furred ceiling shall be required to have the minimum ceiling height in two-thirds of the area thereof, but in no case shall the height of the furred ceiling be less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**1208.3 Room area.** Every dwelling unit shall have not less than one room that shall have not less than 120 square feet ( $11.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) of net floor area. Other habitable rooms shall have a net floor area of not less than 70 square feet ( $6.5 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** Kitchens are not required to be of a minimum floor area.

**1208.4 Efficiency dwelling units.** *[HCD 1] Unless modified by local ordinance pursuant to Health and Safety Code Section 17958.1, efficiency dwelling units shall comply with the following:*

1. The unit shall have a living room of not less than 190 square feet ( $17.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area.
2. The unit shall be provided with a separate closet.
3. For other than Accessible, *adaptable* dwelling units, the unit shall be provided with a kitchen sink, cooking appliance and refrigerator, each having a clear working space of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in front. Light and ventilation conforming to this code shall be provided.
4. The unit shall be provided with a separate bathroom containing a water closet, lavatory and bathtub or shower.

## SECTION 1209 ACCESS TO UNOCCUPIED SPACES

**1209.1 Crawl spaces.** Crawl spaces shall be provided with not less than one access opening that shall be not less than 18 inches by 24 inches (457 mm by 610 mm).

**1208.1.1 [SPCB]** Accessible under-floor areas shall be provided with an 18-inch by 24-inch (457 mm by 610 mm) access crawl hole. Pipes, ducts and other nonstructural construction shall not interfere with the accessibility to or within under-floor areas.

**1209.2 Attic spaces.** An opening not less than 20 inches by 30 inches (559 mm by 762 mm) shall be provided to any attic area having a clear height of over 30 inches (762 mm). Clear headroom of not less than 30 inches (762 mm) shall be provided in the attic space at or above the access opening.

**1209.3 Mechanical appliances.** Access to mechanical appliances installed in under-floor areas, in attic spaces and on roofs or elevated structures shall be in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

## SECTION 1210 TOILET AND BATHROOM REQUIREMENTS

**[P] 1210.1 Required fixtures.** The number and type of plumbing fixtures provided in any occupancy shall comply with the *California Plumbing Code*.

**[P] 1210.2 Finish materials.** Walls, floors and partitions in toilet and bathrooms shall comply with Sections 1210.2.1 through 1210.2.4.

*[OSHPD 1, 2, 3 & 5] Facilities subject to OSHPD 1, 2, 3 & 5 shall also comply with Section 1224.4.11.*

*[OSHPD 4] Facilities subject to OSHPD 4 shall also comply with Section 1227.9.*

**[P] 1210.2.1 Floors and wall bases.** In other than dwelling units, toilet, bathing and shower room floor finish materials shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface. The intersections of such floors with walls shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent vertical base that extends upward onto the walls not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**[P] 1210.2.2 Walls and partitions.** Walls and partitions within 2 feet (610 mm) of service sinks, urinals and water closets shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface, to a height of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the floor, and except for structural elements, the materials used in such walls shall be of a type that is not adversely affected by moisture.

**Exception:** This section does not apply to the following buildings and spaces:

1. Dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Toilet rooms that are not accessible to the public and that have not more than one water closet.

Accessories such as grab bars, towel bars, paper dispensers and soap dishes, provided on or within walls, shall be installed and sealed to protect structural elements from moisture.

**[P] 1210.2.3 Showers.** Shower compartments and walls above bathtubs with installed shower heads shall be finished with a smooth, nonabsorbent surface to a height not less than 72 inches (1829 mm) above the drain inlet.

**[P] 1210.2.4 Waterproof joints.** Built-in tubs with showers shall have waterproof joints between the tub and adjacent wall.

**[P] 1210.3 Privacy.** Public restrooms shall be visually screened from outside entry or exit doorways to ensure user privacy within the restroom. This provision shall also apply

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

where mirrors would compromise personal privacy. Privacy at water closets and urinals shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1210.3.1 and 1210.3.2.

**Exception:** Visual screening shall not be required for single-occupant toilet rooms with a lockable door.

**[P] 1210.3.1 Water closet compartment.** Each water closet utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate compartment with walls or partitions and a door enclosing the fixtures to ensure privacy.

### Exceptions:

1. Water closet compartments shall not be required in a single-occupant toilet room with a lockable door.
2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more water closets shall be permitted to have one water closet without an enclosing compartment.
3. This provision is not applicable to toilet areas located within Group I-3 occupancy housing areas.

**[P] 1210.3.2 Urinal partitions.** Each urinal utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate area with walls or partitions to provide privacy. The walls or partitions shall begin at a height not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from and extend not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor surface. The walls or partitions shall extend from the wall surface at each side of the urinal not less than 18 inches (457 mm) or to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the outermost front lip of the urinal measured from the finished backwall surface, whichever is greater.

### Exceptions:

1. Urinal partitions shall not be required in a single-occupant or family or assisted-use toilet room with a lockable door.
2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more urinals shall be permitted to have one urinal without partitions.

## SECTION 1211 [HCD 1 & HCD 2] GARAGE DOOR SPRINGS

**1211.1 General.** This section shall apply to applications listed in Sections 1.8.2.1.1 and 1.8.2.1.3 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development.

**1211.1.1 Garage door extension springs.** Every garage door extension spring sold or offered for sale, whether new or as a replacement, or installed in any garage or carport which is accessory to an apartment house, hotel, motel or dwelling shall conform to the following requirements:

Hard-drawn spring wire shall conform to ASTM A227/A227M-17 or a more current version, and shall be

made by the steel processes described therein, conforming to the chemical composition requirements listed and meeting the standards of steel heat as set forth by the ladle analysis. Wire tensile strength and dimension variations shall meet the prescribed properties of established standards.

*Oil-tempered wire shall conform to ASTM A229/A229M-17 or a more current version, and shall be made by the steel processes described therein, conforming to the chemical composition requirements listed and meeting the standards of steel heat as set forth by the ladle analysis. Wire tensile strength and dimension variations shall meet the prescribed properties of established standards.*

*Extension springs shall be fabricated from either hard-drawn spring wire or oil-tempered wire as specified above.*

**1211.2 Design standards.** Minimum design standard shall be 9,000 cycles. (One cycle is an action on the door from the fully closed position, to the fully open position, and returned to the fully closed position.)

**1211.3 Certification.** Mill certification of wire physical tests and chemical properties shall be kept on file by the spring manufacturer.

*Physical cycling tests shall be performed for each extension spring design and shall be certified by an approved testing agency acceptable to the department and reports kept on file by the spring manufacturer.*

**1211.4 Restraining devices.** Each extension spring shall be equipped with an approved device capable of restraining the spring or any part thereof in the event it breaks. Restraining devices shall be physically tested for each extension spring family of products in accordance with ANSI/DASMA 103-2017 or an equivalent standard. Tests shall be certified by an approved testing agency acceptable to the department. Test reports shall be kept on file by the manufacturer responsible for the restraining device.

**1211.5 Identification.** Extension springs, or door systems with extension springs and restraining devices shall be permanently identified as to manufacturer and shall indicate maximum recommended stretch. Both extension springs and restraining devices shall bear information stating that they have been manufactured in accordance with requirements of the California Department of Housing and Community Development.

**1211.6 Installation.** Installation of extension springs, restraining devices and hardware shall be in accordance with the door manufacturer's installation instructions. Instructions shall be provided by the door manufacturer and shall specify the approved method of restraint and maximum recommended stretch. Unless otherwise permitted by the door manufacturer's installation instructions, the hardware and extension springs shall be mounted to nominal 2 by 6 framing members, conforming to the applicable provisions of Section 2303.

## **SECTION 1212 [HCD 1] POLLUTANT CONTROL**

**1212.1 Finish material pollutant control.** Finish materials, including adhesives, sealants, caulk, paints and coatings, aerosol paints and coatings, carpet systems, carpet cushion, carpet adhesive, resilient flooring systems and composite wood products shall meet the volatile organic compound (VOC) emission limits in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.5.

### **SECTION 1213 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1214 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1215 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1216 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1217 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1218 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1219 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1220 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1221 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1222 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1223 Reserved**

## **SECTION 1224 [OSHPD 1] HOSPITALS**

**1224.1 Scope. [OSHPD 1]** The provisions of this section shall apply to general acute-care hospitals and general acute-care hospitals providing only acute medical rehabilitation center services. The provisions of Section 1225 shall apply to distinct part skilled nursing and intermediate-care services on a general acute-care hospital license provided in a separate unit.

**[OSHPD 1R]** This section shall apply to buildings removed from acute care service, in compliance with Part 10, California Existing Building Code, Chapter 3A, and remain under OSHPD jurisdiction.

**1224.2 Application.** New buildings and additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings subject to licensure shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electri-

cal Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code, California Energy Code, California Fire Code, California Existing Building Code (Parts 3, 4, 5, 6, 9 and 10 of Title 24) and this section.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Facilities licensed and in operation prior to the effective date of this section shall not be required to institute corrective alterations or construction to comply with any new requirements imposed thereby or subsequently, except where specifically required or where the enforcing agency determines that a definite hazard to health and safety exists. Facilities for which preliminary drawings have been submitted to the enforcing agency prior to the effective date of this change shall not be required to comply with such new requirements, provided working drawings are submitted within one year of the effective date of such new requirements.
2. A change in function shall require compliance with all the functional requirements for new construction in this code, including requirements in Sections 1224, 1225, 1226, 1227 and 1228.
3. The provisions of this section do not prohibit the use of alternate space utilization, new concepts of design, treatment techniques, equipment and alternate finish materials provided the intent of this section is accommodated and written approval for such alternative is granted by the enforcing agency. Written substantiating evidence in support of the alternate and a written request for consideration shall be submitted to the enforcing agency.
4. Nothing in this section shall prohibit the provisions of required services from a centralized service facility serving two or more licensed facilities when approved in writing by the licensing agency. Buildings and required spaces for services provided in a separate centralized services facility shall comply with all applicable provisions of these regulations and applicable local codes and ordinances for the services so provided.
5. Acute psychiatric hospitals and general acute-care hospitals providing only acute medical rehabilitation center services may provide for surgical and anesthesia services to be provided by an outside licensed facility when approved by the licensing agency.
6. When the Corrections Standards Authority, the Department of Corrections or the Department of Youth Authority determines that a particular requirement for hospitals located in a correctional facility may compromise the safety, security or protection of staff, inmates or property, the enforcement agency shall consider an alternate design.

**1224.2.1 Removed from acute care service [OSHPD 1R].** Hospital buildings removed from acute care service in accordance with Part 10, California Existing Building Code, Section 309A may provide outpatient services and

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*other uses. Required Basic or Supplemental Services on the hospital's license may not be provided.*

### **Exceptions:**

1. Duplicative hospital services when permitted by California Department of Public Health.
2. Skilled Nursing Services may be provided in conformance with Section 1225.
3. Acute Psychiatric Services may be provided in conformance with Section 1228.

**1224.3 Definitions.** Specific terms and definitions are provided to facilitate consistency in the interpretation and application of these requirements. Some of these terms may have a broader definition in other contexts, but the definitions provided here reflect the use of the terms for OSHPD requirements.

**AIR CONDITIONING.** The process or system by which simultaneously the temperature, humidity, air motion and quality are maintained within required limits.

**AIRBORNE INFECTION ISOLATION ROOM.** A single-occupancy patient room where environmental factors are controlled in an effort to minimize the transmission of those infectious agents usually spread from person to person by droplet nuclei associated with coughing and inhalation.

**AMBULATORY CARE.** A defined health care encounter(s) of less than 24 hours in duration that requires direct professional health care support within a specific facility.

**AMBULATORY SURGICAL FACILITY.** Any surgical facility organized for the purpose of providing procedural, invasive surgical care to patients with the expectation that they will be recovered sufficiently to be discharged in less than a 24-hour period.

**ANGIOGRAPHY.** The radiographic visualization of blood vessels following introduction of contrast material for purposes of diagnosis.

**BASIC SERVICES.** Those essential services required for licensure as a hospital, including medical, nursing, surgical, anesthesia, laboratory, radiology, pharmacy, dietary services and support services. See "SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICES."

**BIOTERRORISM.** The use or threat of use, of biological agents to intimidate a political entity or population group.

**CENTRAL AIR-HANDLING SYSTEMS.** Any units requiring ductwork on the supply or inlet side and serving more than one room.

**CHANGE IN FUNCTION.** A change in function is a change in activity, service or licensed service provided, within the project limits, that does not necessarily change the use, specific use and/or occupancy. Conversion of a space that results in a change in activity such that the space will be required to satisfy the functional requirements under a different code sub-section than that of the prior use is considered a change in function.

**CLEAR DIMENSION.** An unobstructed room dimension exclusive of built-in casework and equipment and available for functional use.

**COURT.** An open exterior space bounded on three or more sides by the walls of a structure.

**ENVIRONMENT OF CARE.** Those features in a built health care entity that are created, structured and maintained to support quality health care.

**EXAM ROOM.** A room with a bed, stretcher or examination table and capability for periodic monitoring (e.g., measurement of blood pressure or pulse oximetry) in which procedures that do not require a specialized suite can be performed (e.g., pelvic examination, blood transfusion).

**FLOOR AREA, CLEAR.** The actual occupied area exclusive of fixed or wall-mounted cabinets, fixed beds and furnishings, built-in shelves, toilet rooms, closets, lockers, wardrobes, alcoves, anterooms or vestibules.

**GENERAL ACUTE-CARE HOSPITAL.** A hospital, licensed by the California Department of Public Health, having a duly constituted governing body with overall administrative and professional responsibility and an organized medical staff which provides 24-hour inpatient care, including the basic services.

**HANDWASHING STATION.** A clinical staff-use area that provides a handwashing fixture, cleansing agents and means for drying hands. Handwashing stations shall be immediately accessible to the patient care area they serve without requiring passage through a doorway, unless hands-free door operation of the door is provided. Refer to the California Plumbing Code, Section 210.0 for the definition of handwashing fixture.

**HOSPITAL.** A general acute-care hospital, including those providing only acute medical rehabilitation center services and acute psychiatric hospitals.

**HOUSEKEEPING.** Services anywhere within a health care facility that include general cleaning and tidying and the provision and positioning of identified materials, e.g., soaps, towels, etc. (While routine disinfection protocols can be included in such a definition, the definition is not intended to include complex, nonroutine disinfection procedures nor the nonroutine disposition of hazardous materials such as potentially toxic drugs or other chemicals and radioactive wastes.)

**INVASIVE PROCEDURE.** A procedure that is performed in an aseptic surgical field and penetrates the protective surfaces of a patient's body (e.g., subcutaneous tissue, mucous membranes, cornea). An invasive procedure may fall into one or more of the following categories:

1. Requires entry into or opening of a sterile body cavity (i.e., cranium, chest, abdomen, pelvis, joint spaces).
2. Involves insertion of an indwelling foreign body.
3. Includes excision and grafting of burns that cover more than 20 percent of total body area.
4. Does not begin as an open procedure but has a recognized measurable risk of requiring conversion to an open procedure.

**LDR.** Labor, Delivery, Recovery (an unlicensed patient bed)

**LDRP.** Labor, Delivery, Recovery, Postpartum (a licensed patient bed)

**LICENSING AGENCY.** *The Department of Public Health, Licensing and Certification.*

**LOCATION TERMINOLOGY** (*terms for relationship to an area or room*)

**ADJACENT.** Located next to but not necessarily connected to the identified area or room.

**DIRECTLY ACCESSIBLE.** Connected to the identified area or room through a doorway or other opening without going through an intervening room or public space.

**IMMEDIATELY ACCESSIBLE.** Available either in the identified area or room, or directly accessible from a room or area located within the same department or service space.

**IN.** Located within the identified area or room.

**READILY ACCESSIBLE.** Located within the same department or service space as the identified area or room, located in and shared with an adjacent unit, or within 200 feet (60.96 m) of the department or service space in an accessible corridor.

**MONOLITHIC.** A surface free of fissures, cracks, perforations and crevices.

**MONOLITHIC CEILING.** A ceiling constructed with a surface free of fissures, cracks and crevices. Any penetrations such as lights, diffusers and access panels shall be sealed or gasketed. Lay-in ceilings are not considered "monolithic."

**NURSING UNIT.** A designated patient care area of the hospital which is planned organized, operated and maintained to function as a unit. It includes patient rooms with adequate support facilities, services and personnel providing nursing care and necessary management of patients.

**OPERATING ROOM.** A room specifically designed for the performance of surgical procedures. (In common understanding, this means most types of surgical procedures, especially those involving the administration of anesthesia, multiple personnel, recovery room access and a fully controlled environment.)

**HYBRID OPERATING ROOM.** A room that meets the definition of an operating room and is also equipped to enable diagnostic imaging before, during and after surgical procedures. Imaging equipment is permanently installed in the room and may include MRI, fixed single-plane and bi-plane tomographic imaging systems and computed tomographic equipment.

**Note:** Use of portable imaging technology does not make an operating room a hybrid operating room.

**OUTPATIENT SERVICE.** An organizational unit of the hospital, which provides nonemergency healthcare services to patients.

**PATIENT CARE LOCATIONS.** Multi-patient treatment rooms, where allowed, may provide patient care stations in bays or cubicles as follows:

**BAY (patient).** A space for human occupancy with one hard wall at the headwall and up to one hard wall at either side, with two to three soft walls (e.g., cubicle curtains or portable privacy screen). The required area for the specific

patient care space shall be provided within the cubicle curtain and not overlap with access circulation aisle.

**CUBICLE.** A space intended for human occupancy that has at least one opening and no door and is enclosed on three sides with full-height or partial-height partitions.

**PATIENT CARE STATION.** A designated space for a specific patient care function. This term does not imply any structural requirement (e.g., a Post-anesthesia Care Unit (PACU) can have 10 patient care stations of which three are rooms, three are cubicles and four are bays).

**PATIENT ROOM.** Licensed patient bed rooms. Also referred to as a patient bedroom.

**PERIOPERATIVE.** Patient care and other related supportive activities before, during or after the operative event.

**PROCEDURE ROOM.** A room designated for the performance of patient care that requires high-level disinfection or sterile instruments and some environmental controls but is not required to be performed with the environmental controls of an operating room.

**PROTECTIVE ENVIRONMENT.** A bedded unit or patient room where severely immunosuppressed patients are cared for.

**RESTRICTED AREA.** Applies to a designated space contained within the semi-restricted area and accessible only through a semi-restricted area. The restricted area includes operating and other rooms in which operative or other invasive procedures are performed. Such space has one or more of the following attributes: specific signage, physical barriers, security controls and protocols that delineate requirements for monitoring, maintenance, attire and use.

**ROOM.** A space enclosed by hard walls and having a door. Where the word "room" or "office" is used, a separate, enclosed space for the one named function is intended. Otherwise, the described area may be a specific space in another room or common area.

**SCRUB SINK.** A sink used to wash and scrub the hands and arms during the aseptic preparation for surgery and equipped with a supply spout and controls as required for a handwashing fixture. Refer to the California Plumbing Code Sections 210.0 and 221.0.

**SEMI-RESTRICTED AREA.** Applies to peripheral areas that support surgical services or intermediate level procedures or imaging. These areas may include storage for equipment and clean and sterile supplies; work area for processing instruments; sterile processing facilities; hand scrub stations; corridors leading from the unrestricted area to the restricted area of the surgical suite; entrances to staff changing areas; pre- and postoperative patient care areas; and sterile processing facilities. The semi-restricted area of the surgical suite is entered directly from the unrestricted area past a nurse station or from other areas. Public access is controlled.

**SERVICE SINK.** A sink located in a housekeeping room and designed for the purpose of cleaning mops and the disposal of waste water.

**SERVICE SPACE.** Service Space refers to the distinct area of a health facility where a licensed Basic Service or Supple-

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

mental Service is provided. The Service Space shall include all the functional area requirements required to deliver the specific Service. Basic Service Spaces are identified in Sections 1224.14 through 1224.27. Supplemental Service Spaces are identified in Sections 1224.28 through 1224.41. Similar distinctions are made between Basic and Supplemental or Optional Services in Section 1225 through Section 1228. Required functional areas may be a portion of a larger space, one or more Patient Care Locations, support areas or separate Rooms as defined in Section 1224.3. See departmental boundary requirements under Section 1224.4.7.6.

**SUB-ACUTE CARE.** A segment within a continuum of levels of care determined by patient acuity, clinical stability and resource needs.

**SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICE.** An inpatient or outpatient service which is not required to be provided by law or regulation for licensure. A supplemental service, when provided, must accommodate the provisions of this section.

**Note:** See "BASIC SERVICES."

**SURGICAL SERVICE SPACE.** A space that includes the operating room(s) and service areas.

**UNRESTRICTED AREA.** Applies to any area of the surgery or medical department that is not defined as semi-restricted or restricted. These areas may include a central control point for designated personnel to monitor the entrance of patients, personnel and materials into the semi-restricted areas; staff changing areas; a staff lounge; offices; waiting rooms or area; pre- and postoperative patient care areas; or access to procedure rooms. Public access may be limited.

## 1224.4 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION.

### 1224.4.1 Jurisdiction.

#### 1224.4.1.1 Services/systems and utilities.

[OSHPD 1] Services/systems and utilities shall comply with California Existing Building Code Section 307A.

[OSHPD 1R] Services/systems and utilities shall only originate in, or pass through or under structures which are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

#### 1224.4.1.2 Means of egress.

[OSHPD 1] Means of egress shall comply with Part 10, California Existing Building Code, Section 308A.

[OSHPD 1R] Means of egress shall only pass through structures that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

**1224.4.2 Environmental engineering and support service spaces.** Spaces for dietary, laundry, morgue, ambulance entrance, receiving areas, power plants, mechanical equipment, incinerator, garbage can cleaning, automobile parking and storage areas for garbage, trash and medical gases shall be located and constructed to minimize noise, steam, odors, hazards and unsightliness in patient-care areas and bedrooms.

**1224.4.3 Treatment spaces.** Radiology, laboratory, pharmacy, physical therapy and service spaces serving only outpatients and similar outpatient service departments shall not be located in nursing units, surgical units, perinatal units, nursery areas, central sterilization rooms, food-service' areas, power plants, mechanical equipment rooms, maintenance shops, general storage, laundry, employees' dressing or housekeeping facilities.

**Exception:** Physical and occupational therapy spaces of a rehabilitation service may serve both outpatients and inpatients.

**1224.4.4 Support areas for patient care.** Identifiable spaces shall be provided for each function indicated in all Basic and applicable Supplemental Service Space sections with requirements for support areas. The following rooms and spaces are common to most types of health care facilities and the requirements associated with each, as listed below, shall be used unless modified under a specific Service Space section.

#### 1224.4.4.1 Examination, treatment and procedure rooms.

**1224.4.4.1.1 Examination room.** Unless specified elsewhere, if an exam room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.4 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be 8 feet (2438 mm). The room shall contain a handwashing fixture and accommodations for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

**1224.4.4.1.2 Treatment room.** Unless specified elsewhere, if a treatment room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be 10 feet (3048 mm). A minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) is required between the sides and foot of the bed/gurney/table and any wall or other fixed obstruction. The room shall contain an examination light, a work counter for medical equipment, a handwashing fixture, cabinets, medication storage and counter space for writing or electronic documentation. If used for exercise stress testing, include space for a crash cart and patient resuscitation and omit the exam light. Multi-bed treatment rooms shall have separate patient cubicles with a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) per cubicle. Each cubicle shall contain an examination light, counter and storage facilities. In multi-bed treatment rooms, a handwashing fixture shall be provided in the room for each three or fewer cubicles.

**1224.4.4.1.3 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** When provided, the airborne infection isolation room shall be an exam/treatment room, shall be labeled with the words "Airborne Infection Room", and provide the following:

1. Capacity. Each airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room shall contain only one examination table or recliner.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

2. **Handwashing station.** A handwashing station shall be located in each airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.
3. **Gowning and storage area.** An area for gowning and storage of clean and soiled materials shall be located directly outside or inside the entry door to the airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.
4. **Doors.** Room doors shall be self-closing and include latching devices.
5. **Sealed-tight room.** Room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetration shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.
6. **Ventilation.** The ventilation shall be provided as required by the California Mechanical Code for airborne infection isolation room.

**1224.4.4.1.3.1 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment anteroom.** An airborne infection isolation anteroom is not required; however, when an anteroom is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

1. The anteroom shall provide space for persons to don personal protective equipment before entering the patient room.
2. All doors to the anteroom shall have self-closing devices.
3. The anteroom shall provide storage of personal protective equipment (e.g., respirators, gowns, gloves) and clean equipment.
4. Ventilation shall be provided in the anteroom as required by the California Mechanical Code for airborne infection isolation anteroom.

**1224.4.4.1.4 Procedure room.** Unless specified elsewhere, if a procedure room is provided, it shall meet the requirements in this section.

#### **1224.4.4.1.4.1 General.**

- (1) **Application.** The governing body shall perform a clinical assessment of the procedures to be performed to determine the appropriate room type and location for these procedures and document this in the Functional Program in compliance with the California Administrative Code, Section 7-119. Where a procedure room is used for multiple procedure types, the room shall meet the most stringent requirements for the space.
- (2) **Location.** The procedure room shall meet the requirements of a semi-restricted area. The procedure room shall be permitted to be accessed from a semi-restricted corridor or from an unrestricted corridor.

#### **1224.4.4.1.4.2 Space requirements.**

- (1) **Area.** Procedure rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 130 square feet

(12.08 m<sup>2</sup>). Procedure rooms where anesthesia will be administered using an anesthesia machine and supply carts shall have a minimum clear floor area of 160 square feet (14.86 m<sup>2</sup>). Procedure rooms where procedures will be performed that require additional personnel and/or large equipment shall be sized to accommodate the personnel and equipment planned to be in the room during procedures, including additional personnel and equipment that will be needed for emergency rescue.

- (2) **Clearances.** Procedure rooms shall have the following minimum clearances around the table, gurney or procedure chair:

- (a) 3 feet 6 inches (1070 mm) on each side.
- (b) 3 feet (914.4 mm) at the head and foot. Where an anesthesia machine and associated supply cart is used, the clearance at the head shall be a minimum of 6 feet (1830 mm).

- (3) **Fixed encroachments into the minimum clear floor area.** Fixed encroachments shall be permitted to be included when determining the minimum clear floor area for a procedure room as long as:

- (a) The encroachments do not extend more than 12 inches (305 mm) into the minimum clear floor area.
- (b) Where a sterile field is provided, the encroachment shall not extend into the sterile field.
- (c) The encroachment width along each wall does not exceed 10 percent of the length of that wall.

#### **1224.4.4.1.4.3 Documentation area.**

- (1) Accommodations for written and/or electronic documentation shall be provided in the procedure room.
- (2) Where a built-in feature is provided for documentation, it shall allow for direct observation of the patient.

**1224.4.4.1.4.4 Patient privacy.** Provisions shall be made for patient visual and speech privacy.

**1224.4.4.1.4.5 Handwashing station.** A handwashing station shall be provided in the procedure room. Where a hand scrub station is directly accessible to the procedure room, omission of the handwashing station is permitted.

**1224.4.4.1.5 Seclusion room.** Where provided, seclusion rooms shall comply with the following requirements:

#### **1224.4.4.1.5.1 General.**

1. **Capacity.** Each room shall accommodate only one patient.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

2. Layout and access. Seclusion rooms shall be accessed through an anteroom or vestibule that also provides access to a toilet room. The door openings to the anteroom and the toilet room shall have a minimum clear width of 3 feet 8 inches (1118 mm).
3. The room(s) shall be located to permit observation from the nurse station.
4. Seclusion rooms shall be permitted to be grouped together and may share a common vestibule/anteroom.

**1224.4.4.1.5.2 Space requirements.** Seclusion rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet ( $5.57 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2134 mm) and a maximum wall length of 11 feet (3353 mm).

**Exception:** Where a room for restraining patients is authorized by the California Department of Public Health, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2134 mm) and a maximum wall length of 11 feet (3353 mm).

**1224.4.4.1.5.3 Special design elements.** Seclusion rooms shall be designed and constructed in compliance with the following requirements:

1. The walls, ceiling and floor of the seclusion room shall be designed to withstand direct and forceful impact. If padded materials are used inside the room, they shall meet the interior finish requirements in Chapter 8, Interior Finishes, of this code.
2. Minimum ceiling height shall be 9 feet (2743 mm).
3. Doors.
  - 3.1. Door hardware shall be ligature resistant.
  - 3.2. The entrance door to the seclusion room shall swing outward.
  - 3.3. Doors shall permit staff observation of the patient through a view panel while also maintaining provisions for patient privacy. The maximum sill height shall be 36 inches (914 mm) above the finish floor. The view panel shall be fixed glazing with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing.
4. Seclusion rooms shall not contain outside corners or edges.
5. All items in the room (e.g., lighting fixtures, sprinkler heads, HVAC grilles and surveillance cameras, etc.) shall be tamper resistant.

6. Electrical switches and receptacles are prohibited in the seclusion room.

**1224.4.4.2 Nurse station(s).** This area shall have space for counters and storage and at least one hand-washing station shall be located in or directly accessible to the nurse station. It may be combined with or include centers for reception, charting and communication.

**1224.4.4.3 Specimen and blood collection facilities.**

**1224.4.4.3.1 Specimen collection facilities.** When provided, specimen collection facilities shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Urine collection rooms shall be equipped with a water closet and handwashing station.

**Exception:** The handwashing station may be located immediately outside the collection room when the specimen is used for drug testing.

2. Use of the toilet room provided within the examination and treatment room shall be permitted for specimen collection.

**1224.4.4.3.2 Blood collection facilities.** When provided, blood collection facilities shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Space for a chair and work counter shall be provided.

2. A handwashing station shall be provided.

**1224.4.4.4 Medication station.** Provision shall be made for distribution of medications. This shall be done from a medication preparation room or from a self-contained dispensing unit.

**1224.4.4.4.1 Medication preparation room.** If provided, this room shall be lockable. When a medicine preparation room is to be used to store one or more self-contained medicine dispensing units, the room shall be designed with adequate space to prepare medicines with the self-contained medicine dispensing unit(s) present. Medicine preparation rooms shall include:

1. Work counter.
2. Handwashing station.
3. Refrigerator.
4. Locked storage for controlled drugs.

**1224.4.4.4.2 Self-contained medication dispensing unit.** If provided, a self-contained medicine dispensing unit shall be located at the nurse station, in the clean utility room, or in an area where access to the self-contained medication dispensing unit is under the monitoring and control of nursing staff. Self-contained medication dispensing units shall be provided with essential power and lighting.

**TABLE 1224.4.6.1**  
**STATION OUTLETS FOR OXYGEN, VACUUM (SUCTION) AND MEDICAL AIR SYSTEMS<sup>1, 6</sup>**

	LOCATIONS	OXYGEN	VACUUM	MEDICAL AIR	WAGD <sup>3</sup>
1	Patient rooms (medical/surgical unit)	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
2	Examination or treatment (medical/surgical unit and postpartum care)	1/room	1/room	—	—
3	Airborne infection isolation or protective environment rooms (medical/surgical unit)	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
4	Seclusion room (medical/surgical unit and postpartum care)	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
5	Intensive care (general)	3/bed	3/bed	1/bed	—
6	Airborne infection isolation (intensive care)	3/bed	3/bed	1/bed	—
7	Coronary-care service space	3/bed	2/bed	1/bed	—
8	Pediatric intensive care	3/bed	3/bed	1/bed	—
9	Newborn intensive care	3/bassinet	3/bassinet	3/bassinet	—
10	Newborn nursery (full term)	1/4 bassinets <sup>2</sup>	1/4 bassinets <sup>2</sup>	1/4 bassinets <sup>2</sup>	—
11	Pediatric and adolescent	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed	—
12	Pediatric nursery	1/bassinet	1/bassinet	1/bassinet	—
13	Psychiatric patient room	—	—	—	—
14	Seclusion treatment room (psychiatric unit)	—	—	—	—
15	General operating room	2/room	5/room	1/room	1/room
16	Cardio and special procedures	2/room	5/room	1/room	1/room
17	Orthopedic surgery	2/room	5/room	1/room	1/room
18	Surgical cystoscopic and other endo-urologic procedures	1/room	3/room	—	—
19	Post-anesthesia care unit	2/bed	3/bed	1/bed	—
20	Anesthesia workroom	1/workstation	—	1/workstation	—
21	Endoscopy procedure room	1/room	3/room	—	—
22	Postpartum bedroom	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
23	Cesarean operating/delivery room	2/room	4/room	1/room	1/room
24	Recovery space for cesarean delivery	1/bed	3/bed	1/bed	—
25	Infant resuscitation space <sup>4</sup>	3/bassinet	3/bassinet	3/bassinet	—
26	Labor room	1/room	1/room	—	—
27	OB recovery room	1/bed	3/bed	—	—
28	Labor/delivery/recovery (LDR) <sup>5</sup>	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
29	Labor/delivery/recovery/postpartum (LDRP) <sup>5</sup>	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
30	Initial emergency management	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed	—
31	Triage area (definitive emergency care)	1/station	1/station	—	—
32	Definitive emergency care examination or treatment rooms	1/bed	1/bed	1/bed	—
33	Observation unit <sup>8</sup>	1/bed	1/bed	—	—
34	Trauma/cardiac room(s)	2/bed	3/bed	1/bed	—
35	Orthopedic and cast room	1/room	1/room	—	—
36	Cardiac catheterization lab	2/bed	2/bed	2/bed	—
37	Autopsy room	—	1/workstation	—	—
38	MRI	1/room	1/room	1/room	—
39	Interventional imaging procedure room	2/room	2/room	1/room	—
40	Hyperbaric suite pre-procedure/patient holding area	2/station	2/station	—	—
41	Electroconvulsive therapy procedure room	1/room <sup>7</sup>	1/room <sup>7</sup>	—	—

1. For any area or room not described above, the facility clinical staff shall determine outlet requirements after consultation with the enforcing agency.

2. Four bassinets may share one outlet that is accessible to each bassinet.

3. WAGD stands for "waste anesthesia gas disposal" system.

4. When infant resuscitation takes place in a room such as cesarean section/delivery or LDRP, then the infant resuscitation services shall be provided in that room in addition to the minimum service required for the mother.

5. One outlet for mother and one for each bassinet.

6. Renovation projects of existing spaces where the existing function is not changed, are not required to comply with the requirements of this table.

7. Use of portable equipment shall be permitted.

8. Use of portable equipment is permitted in outpatient observation units provided under Section 1224.39.6.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**TABLE 1224.4.6.5**  
**[OSHPD 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5] LOCATION OF NURSE CALL DEVICES**  
• = Required

AREA DESIGNATION	STATION TYPE	1224	1225	1226	1227	1228
<b>Nursing Units</b>						
Patient toilet room	B	•	•		•	
Patient bathing	B	•	•		•	
Special bathing	E	•				
Patient bed (nursing service)	P,E,C	•			•	
Patient bed (intensive care)	P,E,C	•			•	
Patient bed (LDR/LDRP)	P,E,C	•			•	
Patient bed (Dementia Unit)	P	•	•		•	
Patient bed (SNF/ICF)	P	•	•		•	
NICU	E,C	•			•	
Nursery	E,C	•			•	
<b>Support Areas</b>						
Nurse/control station	M	•	•	•	•	•
Medication preparation room	D	•			•	
Soiled workroom/utility/holding	D	•			•	
Clean workroom/utility/holding	D	•			•	
<b>Diagnostic and Treatment Areas</b>						
Seclusion room or vestibule	E	•				•
Emergency exam, treatment, triage rooms	P,E	•			•	
Operating room/Cesarean	E,C	•		•	•	
Delivery room/Birthing room	E,C	•		•	•	
Observation unit bed/gurney	P,E,C	•			•	
Pre-op patient care	P,E,C	•		•	•	
Post-op patient care/PACU	P,E,C	•		•	•	
Imaging exam/procedure room	E,C	•		•	•	
Procedure Room, including Endoscopy	E,C	•		•	•	
Patient toilet room	B	•		• <sup>1</sup>	•	
Electroconvulsive therapy	E,C	•			•	•

**Station Types**

P = Patient Station, B = Bath Station, E = Staff Emergency, C = Code Call, M = Master, D = Duty

1. Not required for Primary Care, Chronic Dialysis, Rehabilitation or Psychology Clinics.

**1224.4.4.5 Nourishment area or room.** Nourishment areas or rooms required in patient care areas shall include the following:

1. Sink
2. Work counter
3. Refrigerator
4. Storage cabinets
5. Equipment for hot and cold nourishment between scheduled meals.
6. The nourishment shall include space for trays and dishes used for nonscheduled meal service.
7. Provisions and space shall be included for separate temporary storage of unused and soiled dietary trays not picked up at mealtime.

8. Handwashing stations separate from the nourishment sink shall be in the nourishment area or immediately accessible without passing through a door.

**1224.4.4.6 Clean utility/workroom.** The clean workroom or clean supply room shall be separate from and have no connection with the soiled workroom or soiled holding room. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain the following:

1. Work counter
2. Handwashing station
3. Storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies

**1224.4.4.6.1 Clean supply room.** If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter or a handwashing station may be omitted.

**1224.4.4.7 Soiled utility/workroom.** The soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be separate from and have no connection with either clean workrooms or clean supply rooms. The soiled utility/workroom shall contain:

1. Clinical sink (or equivalent flushing-rim fixture).
2. Handwashing station
3. Work counter
4. Space for separate covered containers for soiled linen and/or waste

**1224.4.4.7.1 Soiled holding room.** Rooms used only for temporary holding soiled material may omit the clinical sink and work counter. If the flushing-rim clinical sink is eliminated, facilities for cleaning bedpans shall be provided elsewhere.

**1224.4.4.8 Toilet rooms.** Separate toilet rooms shall be provided for the use of patients, staff and public.

**1224.4.4.8.1 Staff toilets.** The number of staff toilets provided in a health facility shall comply with the requirements of the California Plumbing Code, Tables 4-2 and 4-3. When staff toilet rooms are required to be dedicated to a specific Service Space, the number of staff toilet rooms provided under the California Plumbing Code shall be based on the number of staff within the specific Service Space served. Satellite service spaces do not require dedicated toilet rooms.

**1224.4.4.8.2 Signage.** When provided, single-user toilets shall include a door-mounted geometric symbol, as identified in Section 11B-703.7.2.6.3, Unisex toilet and bathing facilities and wall signage designating use for patients, staff or public. When existing toilet rooms are not compliant with Section 11B-603, Toilet and bathing rooms, directional signage in compliance with Section 11B-216.8, Toilet rooms and bathing rooms, shall also be provided.

**Exception:** Patient toilet rooms accessed directly from patient bedrooms are not required to include signage.

**1224.4.5 Outpatient waiting rooms.** Waiting rooms for outpatients shall provide a seating area and space for wheelchairs and have public corridor access. Public toilets, drinking fountains and telephones shall be readily accessible.

**Note:** One waiting area may serve more than one department or service.

**1224.4.5.1 Outpatient access.** Outpatient access to services shall not traverse a nursing unit.

#### 1224.4.6 Miscellaneous requirements.

**1224.4.6.1 Station outlets.** Station outlets for oxygen, vacuum and medical air shall comply with Table 1224.4.6.1.

**1224.4.6.2 Gas and vacuum systems.** The design, installation and testing of medical gas and vacuum systems shall conform to Table 1224.4.6.1 and NFPA 99.

**1224.4.6.3 Hyperbaric facilities.** The design and construction of hyperbaric facilities shall conform to NFPA 99; Health Care Facilities and Section 1224.39.5.

**1224.4.6.4 Laboratories.** The design and construction of hospital laboratories shall conform to NFPA 99.

**1224.4.6.5 Nurse call systems.** The location of nurse call devices shall comply with Table 1224.4.6.5. The design of call systems shall comply with the California Electrical Code, Part 3 of Title 24.

#### 1224.4.7 Corridors.

**1224.4.7.1 Width.** The minimum width of corridors and hallways shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**Exception:** Patient-care corridors and hallways in hospitals for psychiatric care of patients who are not bedridden shall have a minimum clear and unobstructed width of 6 feet (1829 mm). For the purposes of this section, bedridden patients shall be defined as patients confined to beds who would be transported or evacuated in beds or litters.

**1224.4.7.2 Light traffic.** Service corridors and hallways with anticipated light traffic volume for nonpatient use may be reduced to a width of 5 feet (1524 mm) if approved by the enforcing agency.

**Exception:** Corridors and hallways in administrative and business areas may be reduced to a width of 44 inches (1118 mm).

**1224.4.7.3 Outpatient services.** Outpatient clinics or outpatient departments which contain facilities for outpatient use only, such as laboratory, x-ray, physical therapy or occupational therapy, shall have a minimum corridor or hallway width of 5 feet (1524 mm). Corridors serving gurney or stretcher traffic shall comply with minimum width requirements of Section 1020.2. Outpatient clinics and outpatient departments consisting only of waiting rooms, business offices, doctor's offices and examining rooms, where there is no traffic through such area to other services or to exits from the building, shall have a minimum corridor or hallway width of 44 inches (1118 mm).

**1224.4.7.4 Handrails.** Corridors for patient traffic in areas providing skilled nursing, intermediate care or rehabilitation services shall be furnished with a handrail on both sides at a height not less than 30 inches (762 mm) or greater than 36 inches (914 mm).

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1224.4.7.5 Connections.** Corridor systems shall connect all patient rooms and basic services.

**Exception:** Covered pedestrian walkways connecting separate buildings are permitted for ambulatory, psychiatric or chemical dependency patients.

**1224.4.7.6 Departmental boundaries.** Department/service space areas shall be contiguous and include internal circulation to access each of the rooms/spaces associated with it, as identified under the specific Service Space requirements. Identifiable spaces are required for each of the indicated functions for all service areas, including their support spaces. Where the words "room" or "offices" are used, a separate, enclosed space for the one named function is intended; otherwise, the described area may be specific space in another room or common area.

**Exceptions:**

1. Satellite radiology, laboratory, pharmacy and physical and occupational therapy space serving inpatients may be located in nursing units and inpatient treatment areas.
2. Rooms and functional areas specifically noted under the Service Space requirements that may be shared with other units and departments.

### 1224.4.8 Doors and door openings.

**1224.4.8.1 Toilet room doors.** Doors to toilet rooms shall have an opening of not less than 32 inches (813 mm) clear in width and shall be equipped with hardware which will permit the door to swing outward or in a manner to negate the need to push against a patient who may have collapsed within the toilet room.

**1224.4.8.2 Pocket doors.** Pocket sliding doors are not permitted.

**Exception:** Administration and business areas.

### 1224.4.9 Windows and screens.

**1224.4.9.1 Windows.** Rooms approved for the housing of patients shall be provided with natural light by means of exterior glazed openings excluding clerestory windows, obscure glass and skylights, with an area not less than one tenth of the total floor area.

**1224.4.9.2 Operation and sills.** Patient room windows shall have sills not more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor. If operable windows are provided that require the use of tools or keys for operation, the tools or keys shall be located at the nurse station.

**Exception:** Window sills in intensive-care units may be 60 inches (1524 mm) above the floor.

**1224.4.9.2.1 Airborne infection isolation or protective environment rooms.** If operable windows are provided in airborne infection isolation or protective environment rooms, they shall only be operable by the use of tools or keys which shall be located at the nurse station.

**1224.4.9.3 Psychiatric unit windows.** Safety glass or plastic glazing materials shall be used in windows in psychiatric patient areas.

**1224.4.9.4 Screens.** Windows which may be frequently left in an open position shall be provided with insect screens of 16 meshes to the inch.

**1224.4.9.5 Light and ventilation.** All portions of a building used by patients, personnel or other persons shall be provided with artificial light and a mechanically operated ventilating system as specified in the California Electrical Code and the California Mechanical Code.

### 1224.4.10 Ceiling heights.

**1224.4.10.1 Minimum height.** The minimum height of ceilings shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**Exception:** Closet, toilet room and bathroom minimum ceiling heights and soffits over fixed cabinets and work surfaces, shall not be less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**1224.4.10.2 Minimum height with fixed ceiling equipment.** Operating rooms, emergency rooms, delivery rooms, radiographic rooms and other rooms containing ceiling-mounted, major fixed equipment or ceiling-mounted surgical light fixtures shall have ceiling heights to accommodate the equipment or fixtures and their normal movement. Suspended tracks, rails and pipes located in the traffic path for patients in beds and/or on stretchers, including those in inpatient service areas, shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the floor.

**Exception:** Mobile suspended tracks such as transverse rails for overhead patient lifts that may be moved out of the traffic path shall provide a clearance of not less than 6 feet, 8 inches (2032 mm) above the floor when in use.

**1224.4.11 Interior finishes.** For imaging, examination/treatment, procedure and operating rooms, also see Table 1224.4.11.4a.

**1224.4.11.1 Floor finishes.** Floor finishes shall be smooth, waterproof and durable. Flooring surfaces shall provide smooth transitions between different floor materials. Slip-resistant flooring products shall be used for flooring surfaces in wet areas (e.g., kitchens, shower and bath areas), ramps, stairways, entries from exterior to interior space and other areas as determined by the functional program. Joints for floor openings for pipes, ducts and conduits shall be tightly sealed. Joints of structural elements shall be similarly sealed.

**Exception:** Upon written appropriate documented requests, the licensing agency may grant approval of the installation of carpets. See Table 1224.4.11.

**1224.4.11.1.1 Coved base.** Resilient flooring, if used in toilet and bathing rooms, shall be continuous and extend upward onto the wall at least 5 inches (127 mm) to minimize moisture infiltration. Wood bases are prohibited except in waiting areas and administration departments.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**TABLE 1224.4.11  
ACCEPTABLE CEILING AND CARPET LOCATIONS**

AREAS/ROOMS <sup>3,4</sup>	GENERAL ACUTE CARE HOSPITAL CEILING/CARPET	ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITAL CEILING/CARPET	SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES CEILING/CARPET	CLINIC CEILING/CARPET
Patient bedrooms	3	*	3	*
Patient corridors/hallways	3	*	3	*
Airborne infection isolation rooms	2	N	2	N
Protective environment rooms	1	N	1	N
Nurse or administration station	3	Y	3	Y
Utility rooms	2	N	2	N
Surgical units <sup>2</sup>	2	N	—	2
Operation rooms	1	N	—	1
Surgical corridors/hallways	2	N	—	2
Recovery	3	N	—	3
Radiological unit <sup>2</sup>	3	*	3	3
X-ray rooms <sup>1</sup>	3	N	N	3
Treatment rooms <sup>2</sup>	2	N	3	2
Examination rooms	3	*	3	*
Administration	4	Y	4	Y
Central sterile supply	2	N	2	N
Clinical laboratories	3	N	3	N
Pharmacy	3	*	3	*
Morgue and autopsy	3	N	—	—
General storage rooms	3	N	3	N
Housekeeping rooms	2	N	2	N
Laundry	1 <sup>5</sup>	N	1 <sup>5</sup>	N
Soiled linen	2	N	3	N
Clean linen	3	N	3	N
Kitchens	1 <sup>5</sup>	N	1 <sup>5</sup>	N
Dining rooms	3	*	3	*
Dishwasher rooms	2	N	2	N
Dietary day storage	2	N	2	N
Catheterization laboratory	1	N	—	—
Chronic dialysis	3	*	—	3
Coronary care	3	*	—	—
Dental	3	*	—	3
Hydrotherapy	2	N	2	N
Intensive-care nursery	3	*	—	—
Intensive care	3	*	—	—
Occupational therapy	3	*	3	*
Obstetrical unit <sup>2</sup>	3	*	—	—
Delivery rooms	1	N	—	—
Labor rooms, LDRP and LDR	3	N	—	—
Nurseries	3	N	—	—
Physical therapy	3	*	3	*
Radiation therapy	3	*	—	3
Speech pathology and audiology	3	Y	3	Y

**Ceilings:**

1 – Continuous monolithic surface equal in smoothness to enamel plaster.

2 – Smooth and easily cleanable without perforations or fissures.

3 – Pin perforated, fine fissured or lightly textured.

4 – Any finish meeting code requirements.

**Carpets:**

Yes = Y

No = N

\* Upon approval by the licensing agency with adequate maintenance procedure. However, should the carpet not be maintained adequately, the licensing agency has the right to have it removed and replaced with another acceptable material.

**Footnotes:**

1. Carpet permitted in mammography.

2. Except those rooms specified otherwise.

3. For rooms not listed, contact the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

4. Table applies to new construction, additions, remodels and conversions. The patching and replacement of existing materials will be permitted.

5. Lay-in ceiling meeting the requirements of Section 1224.4.11.4.1.7 may be substituted in laundry and kitchens.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**TABLE 1224.4.11.4a  
EXAMINATION/TREATMENT, IMAGING, PROCEDURE AND OPERATING ROOM CLASSIFICATION<sup>1,2</sup>**

ROOM	USE	ROOM TYPE	LOCATION	SURFACES
Exam or treatment room	Patient care that may require high-level disinfected or sterile instruments but does not require the environmental controls of a procedure room	Unrestricted area	Accessed from an unrestricted area	Flooring: cleanable and wear-resistant for the location; stable, firm and slip-resistant Wall finishes: washable Ceiling: cleanable with routine housekeeping equipment; lay-in ceiling permitted
Class 1 imaging room	Diagnostic radiology, fluoroscopy, mammography, computed tomography (CT), ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and other imaging modalities. Services that use natural orifice entry and do not pierce or penetrate natural protective membranes			
Procedure room	Patient care that requires high-level disinfection of the room, sterile instruments and some environmental controls but does not require the environmental controls of an operating room. Endoscopic procedures	Semi-restricted area	Accessed from an unrestricted or a semi-restricted area	Flooring: cleanable and wear-resistant for the location; stable, firm and slip-resistant Floor and wall base assemblies: monolithic floor with integral coved wall base carried up the wall a minimum of 6 inches Wall finishes: washable; free of fissures, open joints or crevices Ceiling: smooth and without crevices, scrubbable, non-absorptive, non-perforated; capable of withstanding cleaning chemicals; lay-in ceiling permitted if gasketed or each ceiling tile weighs at least 1 pound per square foot and no perforated, regular, serrated or highly textured tiles
Class 2 imaging room	Diagnostic and therapeutic procedures such as coronary, neurological or peripheral angiography. Electrophysiology procedures			
Operating room	Invasive procedures <sup>3</sup> or any procedure during which the patient will require physiological monitoring and is anticipated to require active life support	Restricted area	Accessed from a semi-restricted area	Flooring: cleanable and wear-resistant for the location, stable, firm and slip-resistant Floor and wall assemblies: monolithic floor with integral coved wall base carried up the wall a minimum of 6 inches Wall finishes: washable; free of fissures, open joints or crevices Ceiling: monolithic, scrubbable, capable of withstanding cleaning and/or disinfecting chemical, gasketed access openings
Class 3 imaging room	Invasive procedures <sup>3</sup> or any Class 2 procedure during which the patient will require physiological monitoring and is anticipated to require active life support			

1. This table includes a brief description of the services performed in these room types and a summary of some applicable requirements that appear elsewhere in the California Building Code.

2. Other requirements that apply to these room types include, but are not limited to, ventilation, lighting and sound transmission requirements. See California Mechanical Code Table 4-A and ASHRAE 170 for ventilation requirements. See California Electrical Code, Article 517 for lighting and power requirements. See California Building Code Table 1224.4.19 for noise transmission requirements.

3. "Invasive procedure" is defined in Section 1224.3 definitions.

**1224.4.11.1.2 Food preparation areas.** Floors in areas used for food preparation and assembly shall be water-resistant. Floor surfaces, including tile joints, shall be resistant to food acids. Floor construction in dietary and food preparation areas shall be free of spaces that can harbor pests.

**1224.4.11.1.3 Wet cleaning.** In all areas subject to frequent wet-cleaning methods, flooring materials shall not be physically affected by germicidal or other types of cleaning solutions.

**1224.4.11.1.4 Airborne infection isolation, airborne infection isolation exam/treatment and protective environment rooms.** These rooms and anterooms shall have seamless flooring with integral coved base.

#### 1224.4.11.2 Wall bases.

**1224.4.11.2.1 Material.** The material and textures of bases and the installation thereof shall be such as to minimize dust-catching surfaces, moisture, infiltration and the harboring of vermin.

**Exception:** In locations where carpet is permitted as a floor finish material, the use of carpeted base (coved or strip base) up to a maximum height of 5 inches (127 mm) is also permissible.

**1224.4.11.2.2 Wet cleaning.** Floor and wall base assemblies in the following rooms shall be monolithic and have an integral coved wall base that is carried up the wall a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) and is tightly sealed to the wall:

1. Operating rooms
2. Interventional imaging rooms, including cardiac catheterization labs
3. Cesarean delivery rooms
4. Cystoscopy, urology and minor surgical procedure rooms
5. Endoscopy procedure rooms
6. Endoscopy instrument processing rooms
7. IV and chemotherapy preparation rooms
8. Airborne infection isolation (AII) rooms
9. Protective environment (PE) rooms
10. Anterooms to AII and PE rooms, where provided
11. Cast rooms

The floors and wall bases of kitchens, soiled and clean utility rooms, housekeeping rooms with mop sinks, patient, public and staff sanitary facilities and other areas subject to frequent wet cleaning, shall also be homogeneous, nonabsorbent, smooth, easily cleaned and not physically affected by germicidal cleaning solutions, but may have tightly sealed joints and shall be constructed without voids at the intersection of floor and wall surfaces.

**1224.4.11.3 Wall finishes.** Wall finishes shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Wall finishes shall be washable. In the vicinity of plumbing fixtures, wall finishes shall be smooth, scrubbable and water-resistant.
2. Wall finishes in areas such as operating rooms, delivery rooms and trauma rooms shall be monolithic, scrubbable and able to withstand cleaning with chemicals.
3. Wall finishes in operating rooms, cesarean delivery rooms, isolation rooms and sterile processing rooms shall be free of fissures, open joints or crevices that may retain or permit passage of dirt particles.
4. Wall finishes in areas such as clean corridors, central sterile supply spaces, specialized radiographic rooms and minor surgical procedure rooms shall be washable, smooth and able to withstand cleaning with chemicals.
5. Wall areas penetrated by pipes, ducts and conduits shall be tightly sealed to minimize entry of rodents and insects. Joints of structural elements shall be similarly sealed.
6. Wall finish requirements of Section 1224.4.11.3 do not apply to boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, administration departments, other offices, enclosed stairways, maintenance shops and similar spaces.

**1224.4.11.3.1 Dietary and food preparation areas.** Dietary and food preparation areas shall comply with the following requirements:

1. In dietary and food preparation areas, wall construction, finish and trim, including the joints between the walls and the floors, shall be free of spaces that can harbor insects and rodents.
2. Wall surfaces in wet areas (e.g., kitchens, environmental services closets) shall be monolithic and all seams shall be covered and/or sealed.

**1224.4.11.4 Ceilings.** Ceilings in areas occupied by patients and the public shall be cleanable with the use of routine housekeeping equipment. Acoustic and lay-in ceiling, where used, shall not create ledges or crevices.

**1224.4.11.4.1 Ceiling finishes.** Ceiling finishes shall comply with Table 1224.4.11, Table 1224.4.11.4.1a and the following requirements:

Semirestricted areas:

1. Ceiling finishes in semirestricted areas such as airborne infection isolation exam/treatment rooms, surgical corridors, central sterile supply spaces and minor surgical procedure rooms, shall be nonabsorptive, nonperforated, capable of withstanding cleaning with chemicals, and without crev-

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*ices that can harbor mold and bacterial growth.*

2. If a lay-in ceiling is provided in semi-restricted areas, it shall be gasketed or each ceiling tile shall weigh at least one pound per square foot to prevent the passage of particles from the cavity above the ceiling plane into the semirestricted environment. Perforated, regular, serrated cut or highly textured tiles are not acceptable.

### Restricted areas:

3. Ceilings in restricted areas shall be monolithic with no cracks or perforations.
4. Ceilings in restricted areas shall be scrubable and able to withstand cleaning and/or disinfecting chemicals.
5. All access openings in restricted area ceilings shall be gasketed.

### Dietary and laundry areas:

6. Provide either a sealed monolithic and scrubable gypsum board ceiling or a lay-in ceiling.
7. If a lay-in ceiling is provided, it shall include the following:
  - a) A rust-free grid.
  - b) Ceiling tiles that weigh at least one pound per square foot and are smooth, scrubbable, nonabsorptive, nonperforated and able to withstand cleaning with chemicals.
8. Ceiling finish requirements of Section 1224.4.11.4.1 do not apply to boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, administration departments, other offices, enclosed stairways, maintenance shops and similar spaces.

**1224.4.12 Courts.** Where one or more walls of a court contain a door or window of one or more patients' bedrooms, the least dimension of the court shall be 20 feet (6096 mm) between facing structures.

### 1224.4.13 Elevators.

**1224.4.13.1 Patient.** Patient elevators shall have minimum inside platform dimensions of 5 feet by 8 feet (1524 mm by 2438 mm), and a minimum clear door opening of 4 feet 0 inches (1219 mm).

**1224.4.13.2 Passenger.** Passenger elevators shall have minimum inside platform dimensions of 4 feet 8 inches by 7 feet 4 inches (1422 mm by 2236 mm).

**1224.4.13.3 Patient services.** Buildings over one story in height with accommodations or services for patients on floors without grade-level entrance shall provide at least one patient elevator.

**1224.4.13.4 Low patient capacity.** If bed patients are accommodated on one or more floors, other than the

main entrance floor or where operating rooms or delivery rooms are above or below the main entrance floor, at least one patient elevator shall be provided.

**1224.4.13.5 Medium patient capacity.** At least one patient elevator and one service elevator shall be provided in hospitals with a capacity of from 60 to 149 beds on floors other than the main entrance floor.

**1224.4.13.6 High patient capacity.** At least one patient elevator, one passenger elevator and one service elevator shall be provided in hospitals with a capacity of 150 or more beds on floors other than the main entrance floor.

**1224.4.14 Garbage, solid waste and trash storage.** Rooms or screening enclosures shall be provided for the washing and cleaning of garbage containers and for the storage of garbage, trash and other solid wastes. Such rooms or screening enclosures shall include the following:

1. A concrete floor with a curb and with a drain connected to the sewer.
2. Steam or hot-water and cold-water supply.
3. A minimum floor area of  $\frac{1}{2}$  square foot ( $0.046 m^2$ ) per bed, but not less than 25 square feet ( $2.3 m^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).
4. A method of limiting access to the material except by authorized persons.

**1224.4.15 Housekeeping room.** This room shall be a minimum floor area of 15 square feet ( $1.4 m^2$ ). It shall contain a service sink or floor receptor and provisions for storage of supplies and housekeeping equipment.

**1224.4.16 Laundry and trash chutes.** Gravity-type laundry and trash chutes shall have a minimum diameter of 2 feet (610 mm) and shall be designed to prevent distribution of airborne contaminating elements to all floors served.

**1224.4.17 Telephone.** Each floor accommodating patients shall have a telephone installed for patient use. Such telephones shall be readily accessible to patients who are limited to wheel chairs and stretchers. This may not be required in separate buildings having six or fewer beds which are restricted to occupancy by ambulatory patients.

**1224.4.18 Grab bars.** Each toilet, bathtub and shower serving patients in rooms not required to provide mobility features, shall have conveniently placed grab bars that shall comply with Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-609.2, 11B-609.3, 11B-609.5, 11B-609.6 and 11B-609.8.

**Exception:** Excluding facilities designed for use by persons with disabilities, grab bars may be deleted from those facilities serving chemical dependency recovery and psychiatric patients.

### 1224.4.19 Noise control.

**1224.19.1 Impact noises.** Recreation rooms, exercise rooms, equipment rooms and similar spaces where impact noises may be generated, shall not be located directly over patient bed areas or delivery and operat-

ing suites, unless special provisions are made to minimize such noise.

**1224.19.2 Noise reduction.** The noise reduction criteria shown in Table 1224.4.19 shall apply to partitions, floors and ceiling construction in patient areas.

**TABLE 1224.4.19  
SOUND TRANSMISSION LIMITATIONS IN HOSPITALS**

NEW CONSTRUCTION	AIRBORNE SOUND TRANSMISSION CLASS (STC) <sup>1</sup>	
	Partitions	Floors
Patient room to patient room	45	50
Public space to patient room <sup>3</sup>	50	40
Service areas to patient room <sup>4</sup>	60	45
Patient room access corridor <sup>5</sup>	35	45
Exam room to corridor	35	
Exam room to exam room	50 <sup>2</sup>	
Exam room to public space <sup>3</sup>	50	
Treatment room to room	50	
Treatment room to corridor	35	
Toilet room to public space <sup>3</sup>	45	
Consultation rooms/conference rooms to public space	50	
Consultation rooms/conference rooms to patient rooms	50	
Consultation room to corridor	35	
Patient room to MRI room	60	
Exam room to MRI room	60	
Public space to MRI room	50	
Staff lounges to patient rooms	45	

1. Sound Transmission Class (STC) shall be determined by tests in accordance with methods set forth in ASTM 90 and ASTM 413. Where partitions do not extend to the structure above, sound transmission through ceilings and composite STC performance shall be considered.
2. Treatment rooms shall be treated the same as patient rooms. STC rating may be reduced to 40 dBA for rooms with electronic masking. Electronic masking shall provide a maximum background level of 48 dBA.
3. Public space includes corridors (except patient room access corridors), lobbies, dining rooms, recreation rooms and similar space.
4. Service areas for the purposes of this table include kitchens, elevators, elevator machine rooms, laundries, garages, maintenance rooms, boiler and mechanical equipment rooms and similar spaces of high noise. Mechanical equipment located on the same floor or above patient rooms, offices, nurse stations and similar occupied space shall be effectively isolated from the floor.
5. Patient room access corridors contain composite walls with doors/windows and have direct access to patient rooms.
6. Renovation projects of existing spaces where the existing function is not changed, are not required to comply with the requirements of Table 1224.4.19.

**1224.5 Communications Systems.** Technology and medical communication rooms shall comply with the California Electrical Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code and the requirements of this section.

**1224.5.1 Telecommunications service entrance room.** The telecommunications service entrance room houses

the point at which outside carrier data and voice circuits and services enter the facility and outdoor cabling interfaces with the building's internal cabling infrastructure. Each hospital facility shall have at least one telecommunications service entrance room, and each room that is provided shall be dedicated to the telecommunications function with related support facilities and meet the requirements of this section.

#### **1224.5.2 Technology equipment center.**

**1224.5.2.1 Number.** Each hospital shall have at least one technology equipment center space that is not used for any purpose other than electronic data storage, processing and networking.

**1224.5.2.2 Size.** The technology equipment center shall be sized to provide space to meet the service requirements for the required equipment.

**1224.5.2.3 Location.** The technology equipment center shall be located to minimize the risk of water damage, both from internal and external sources. The technology equipment center shall be located above any floodways or flood hazard areas as described in the National Flood Insurance Program.

#### **1224.5.3 Technology distribution room.**

**1224.5.3.1 Number.** There shall be a minimum of one technology distribution room on each floor of the facility.

**Exception:** For existing facilities not undergoing major renovation, a technology distribution room may serve adjacent floors.

#### **1224.5.3.2 Size.**

1. Technology distribution rooms shall be sized based on the area of the floor being served, with minimum clear dimensions as follows:

Area Served in Square Feet (m <sup>2</sup> )	Minimum Technology Distribution Room Size
≤ 8,000 square feet (740 m <sup>2</sup> )	10 feet by 10 feet (3.05 m by 3.05 m)
8,001 – 15,000 square feet (1400 m <sup>2</sup> )	10 feet by 12 feet (3.05 m by 3.66 m)
15,001 – 25,000 square feet (2325 m <sup>2</sup> )	10 feet by 14 feet (3.05 m by 4.27 m)
> 25,000 square feet (2325 m <sup>2</sup> )	12 feet by 14 feet (3.66 m by 4.27 m)

2. Where ceilings are provided, the minimum clear height shall be 9 feet (2.75 m).

**Exception:** Existing buildings shall be permitted to have a minimum clear height of 8 feet (2.44 m).

**1224.5.3.3 Location.** Technology distribution rooms shall be provided throughout the facility as necessary to meet the maximum cable distance requirement for the cabling system specified.

**1224.5.4 SPC/NPC compliance.** The location of spaces required by this section shall meet the requirements of

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**|| California Existing Building Code, Section 310A, Compliance Alternatives for Services/Systems and Utilities.**

**1224.5.5 Access.** Access to the spaces required by this section shall be controlled and not require passage through patient-care or sterile space.

**1224.5.6 Combining spaces.** The combining of the telecommunications service entrance room, technology equipment center and technology distribution room shall be permitted, provided that the requirements for each of the individual spaces are met.

### BASIC SERVICES

**1224.6 Reserved**

**1224.7 Reserved**

**1224.8 Reserved**

**1224.9 Reserved**

**1224.10 Reserved**

**1224.11 Reserved**

**1224.12 Reserved**

**1224.13 Reserved**

### 1224.14 NURSING SERVICE SPACE.

#### 1224.14.1 Patient rooms.

**1224.14.1.1 Capacity.** No patient room shall be designed to accommodate more than four beds.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing individual patient rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2013, or prior, California Building Code, maximum room capacity shall be no more than the present capacity, to a maximum of eight patients per patient room. Placement of beds shall not be more than three deep from the exterior window.

**1224.14.1.2 Space requirements.** In new construction, patient rooms shall have a minimum of 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per bed in multiple-bed rooms and 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area for single-bed rooms. The dimensions and arrangement of rooms shall be such that there is a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) between the sides and foot of the bed and any wall or any other fixed obstruction. In multiple-bed rooms, a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between beds and a clearance of 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be available at the foot of each bed to permit the passage of equipment and beds.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing patient rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, patient rooms shall have no less than 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per bed in multiple-bed rooms and 110 square feet. ( $10.22 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area in single-bed rooms.

**1224.14.1.3 Windows.** Each patient room shall have a window in accordance with Section 1224.4.9.

**1224.14.1.4 Arrangement.** Patient rooms shall not be designed to permit the placement of beds more than three deep from the exterior window, but shall be of such shape and dimensions to allow for the performance of routine functions, including the easy transfer of patients to and from bed to wheelchair or wheeled gurney.

**1224.14.1.5 Outside exposure.** All patient bedrooms shall have an outside exposure and shall not be below ground level.

**1224.14.1.6 Handwashing stations.** A handwashing station shall be provided in the patient room. This handwashing station shall be located at or adjacent to the entrance to the patient room with unobstructed access for use by health care personnel and others entering and leaving the room. Water spouts used shall have clearances adequate to avoid contaminating utensils and the contents of carafes, etc. In multiple-bed rooms the handwashing station shall be located outside of the patient's cubicle curtain so that it is immediately accessible to staff. Where renovation of patient rooms is undertaken a handwashing station shall be located in the patient toilet room or patient room.

**1224.14.1.7 Toilet room.** Each patient shall have access to a toilet room without having to enter the general corridor area. One toilet room shall serve no more than four beds and no more than two patient rooms. The toilet room shall contain a water closet and a lavatory and the door shall swing outward or be double acting. Unless located in a toilet room, bedpan-washing fixtures shall be installed in dedicated rooms, separate from patient care areas.

**1224.14.1.8 Patient storage.** Each patient shall have within his or her room a separate wardrobe, locker or closet suitable for hanging full-length garments and for storing personal effects.

**1224.14.1.9 Privacy.** A method of assuring visual privacy for each patient shall be maintained in patient rooms and in tub, shower and toilet rooms. Windows or doors within a normal sightline that would permit observation into the room shall be arranged or curtained as necessary for patient privacy. In multiple-bed rooms, visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors shall be provided for each patient. The design for privacy shall not restrict patient access to the entrance, lavatory or toilet room.

**1224.14.1.10 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall be installed in accordance with Section 1224.4.18.

**1224.14.1.11 Room identification.** Each patient room shall be labeled with an identification number, letter or combination of the two.

**1224.14.2 Support areas.** The size and location of each support area will depend upon the numbers and types of beds served. If it has direct access to the unit, some support areas may be arranged and located to serve more than one nursing unit as indicated below, but, unless noted

otherwise, at least one such support area shall be provided on each nursing floor.

**1224.14.2.1 Nurse station(s).** Nurse station(s) shall be provided in each nursing unit and shall comply with Section 1224.4.4.2.

**1224.14.2.2 Nurse or supervisor office.** A nurse or supervisor office shall be provided and may be shared between adjacent nursing units on the same floor.

**1224.14.2.3 Toilet room(s) for staff use.** Staff toilet rooms may be shared between adjacent nursing units on the same floor.

**1224.14.2.4 Multipurpose room(s).** Multipurpose rooms shall be provided for staff, patients, patients' families for patient conferences, reports, education, training sessions and consultation. These rooms must be readily accessible to each nursing unit. One such room may serve several nursing units and/or departments.

**1224.14.2.5 Examination or treatment room(s).** Examination or treatment rooms are optional. If provided, provision shall be made to preserve patient privacy from observation from outside the exam room through an open door.

**1224.14.2.6 Clean utility/workroom.** Clean utility/workroom shall be provided and shall comply with Section 1224.4.4.6.

**1224.14.2.7 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room.** A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided and shall comply with Section 1224.4.4.7.

**1224.14.2.8 Medication station.** A medication station shall be provided in each nursing unit and shall comply with Section 1224.4.4.4.

**1224.14.2.9 Clean linen storage.** Each nursing unit shall contain a designated area for clean linen storage. This may be within the clean utility room or a separate closet.

**1224.14.2.10 Nourishment area.** A nourishment area or room shall be provided for each nursing unit and shall comply with Section 1224.4.4.5.

**1224.14.2.11 Ice machine.** Each nursing unit shall have equipment to provide ice for treatments and nourishment. Ice making equipment may be in the clean utility room/holding room or at the nourishment station. Ice intended for human consumption shall be from self-dispensing icemakers.

**1224.14.2.12 Equipment storage room.** Appropriate room(s) shall be provided for storage of equipment necessary for patient care with not less than 10 square feet ( $0.93 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient bed.

**1224.14.2.13 Gurneys and wheelchairs.** Provide a storage room or alcove for gurneys and wheelchairs which shall be a minimum of 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1224.14.2.14 Centralized bathing facilities.** When individual bathing facilities are not provided in patient rooms, there shall be at least one shower and/or bath-

tub for each 12 beds without such facilities. Each bathtub or shower shall be in an individual room or enclosure that provides privacy for bathing, drying and dressing. Each centralized bathing facility shall have direct access to a patient toilet and handwashing fixture.

**1224.14.2.15 Special bathing facilities.** If provided, special bathing facilities for patients on gurneys, carts and wheelchairs shall include space for an attendant.

**1224.14.2.16 Patient toilet room(s).** Common patient toilet room(s), in addition to those serving bed areas, shall be located adjacent to multipurpose room(s) and within, or directly accessible to each central bathing facility.

**1224.14.2.17 Emergency equipment storage.** Space shall be provided for emergency equipment that is under direct control of the nursing staff, such as a cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) cart. This space shall be directly accessible from the nursing station, but out of normal traffic.

**1224.14.2.18 Housekeeping room.** Housekeeping rooms may be shared between adjacent compatible nursing units.

**1224.14.2.19 Grab bars.** Grab bars shall be installed in accordance with Section 1224.4.18.

### 1224.14.3 Airborne infection isolation rooms.

**1224.14.3.1 General.** Single rooms shall be provided for the isolation of patients with airborne communicable disease at a ratio of one room for each 35 licensed beds, and for each major fraction thereof. At least one airborne infection isolation room shall be provided. Airborne infection isolation rooms shall be labeled with the words "Airborne Infection Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom.

#### Exceptions:

1. Acute psychiatric hospitals shall provide airborne infection isolation rooms at the ratio of one room for each 50 beds, or major fraction thereof.
2. Airborne infection isolation rooms are not required for chemical dependency recovery services.

**1224.14.3.2 Anteroom doors.** Airborne infection isolation room(s) shall have self-closing and latching devices on all anteroom doors.

**1224.14.3.3 Anteroom.** A separate anteroom shall be provided between the airborne infection isolation room and the corridor, which shall constitute the primary entrance to the airborne infection isolation room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing station, work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cabinets and space to gown and to store clean and soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the isolation room and means to allow for airflow from the anteroom into the airborne infection isolation room. Doors shall be aligned to allow large equipment to be

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

wheeled into the airborne infection isolation room unless a secondary door complying with Section 1224.14.3.2 is provided. One anteroom may serve no more than two airborne infection isolation rooms.

**1224.14.3.4 Secondary entry.** When a secondary entry is provided, the secondary doors shall be provided with locking devices which are readily operable from the room side and which are readily operable by the facility staff on the other side. When key locks are used on isolation rooms, keys shall be located at the nurse station in a prominent readily accessible location.

**1224.14.3.5 Sealed-tight room.** Airborne infection isolation room perimeter walls, ceilings, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.

**1224.14.3.6 Adjoining toilet room.** Each isolation room shall have its own directly accessible toilet room with an emergency nurse call system, a lavatory, a shower providing a seat or a space for a shower chair and a toilet equipped with a bedpan flushing attachment with a vacuum breaker.

### 1224.14.4 Protective environment room(s).

**1224.14.4.1 General.** Protective environment rooms for the protection of certain immunosuppressed patients may be provided by the facility. Protective environment rooms shall be labeled "Protective Environment Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom. Protective environment rooms shall contain only one bed.

**1224.14.4.2 Anteroom doors.** Protective environment room(s) shall have self-closing and latching devices on all anteroom doors.

**1224.14.4.3 Anteroom.** A separate anteroom shall be provided between the protective environment room and the corridor, hallway or adjoining space which shall constitute the only entrance to the protective environment room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing station, work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cabinets and space to gown and to store clean and soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the protective environment room. There shall be means to allow for airflow from the protective environment room into the anteroom. Anteroom doors shall be aligned so that large equipment can be wheeled into the protective environment room. One anteroom may serve no more than one protective environment room.

**Exception:** Alternate designs for protective environment rooms, without individual anterooms, may be approved by the enforcement agency when it can be demonstrated that the alternate design meets the requirements of the California Mechanical Code and does not compromise or alter any health or fire protection component, assembly or system.

**1224.14.4.4 Adjoining toilet room.** Room shall meet the requirements of Section 1224.14.3.6.

**1224.14.4.5 Sealed-tight room.** Protective environment room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.

**1224.14.5 Seclusion room(s).** If provided, the hospital shall provide one or more single bedrooms for patients needing close supervision for medical and/or psychiatric care. This may be part of the psychiatric unit described in Section 1224.31. If the single bedroom(s) is part of the acute-care nursing unit, the provisions of Section 1224.14.1 shall apply, with the following exceptions: each room shall be for single occupancy; each shall be located to permit staff observation of the entrance, preferably adjacent to the nurse station; and each shall be designed to minimize the potential for escape, hiding, injury or suicide. If vision panels are used for observation of patients, the arrangement shall insure patient privacy and prevent casual observation by visitors and other patients.

## 1224.15 SURGICAL SERVICE SPACE

**1224.15.1 General.** The surgical service space shall be divided into two designated areas: 1) semi-restricted areas (e.g., storage areas for clean and sterile supplies, sterile processing rooms, scrub stations and corridors leading to restricted areas of the surgical suite, etc.); and 2) restricted areas (e.g., operating rooms, hybrid operating rooms, sterile procedure rooms, cardiac catheterization labs, sterile cores, etc.) that can be reached only through a semi-restricted area. The surgical service space shall be located and arranged to provide direct support from the anesthesia/recovery service space with a common door to prevent nonrelated traffic through the surgical service space.

An operating room suite design with a sterile core shall provide for no cross traffic of staff and supplies from the decontaminated/soiled areas to the sterile/clean areas. The use of facilities outside the operating room for soiled/decontaminated processing and clean assembly and sterile processing shall be designed to move the flow of goods and personnel from dirty to clean/sterile without compromising universal precautions or aseptic techniques in either department.

The number of operating rooms and recovery beds, and the sizes of the support areas, shall be based on the expected surgical workload. Hospitals shall maintain at least the number of operating rooms in ratio to licensed bed capacity as follows:

Licensed Bed Capacity	Number of Operating Rooms
Less than 25	One
25 to 99	Two
100 or more	Three

For each additional 100 beds, and for each major fraction thereof, at least one additional operating room shall be maintained, unless approved to the contrary by the Department of Public Health. Required operating rooms are in addition to special operating rooms, cys-

*toscopy rooms and fracture rooms which are provided by the hospital. Beds in a distinct-part skilled nursing service, intermediate care service or psychiatric unit shall be excluded from calculating the number of operating rooms required.*

**Exception:** Surgical service space is not required in a rural general acute care hospital, if the hospital maintains written transfer agreements with one or more general acute care hospitals that provide surgical and anesthesia services. Written transfer agreements shall be approved by the Department of Public Health, Licensing and Certification.

#### **1224.15.2 Surgery.**

**1224.15.2.1 General operating room(s).** Each room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 400 square feet ( $37.16 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum of 20 feet (6096 mm) clear dimension between fixed cabinets and built-in shelves; and a system for emergency communication with the surgical service space control station. X-ray or imaging viewing capabilities shall be provided.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing operating rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, each operating room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 324 square feet ( $30.10 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum of 18 feet (5486 mm) clear dimension between fixed cabinets and built-in shelves.

**1224.15.2.2 Procedure room(s).** Where a procedure room is provided, it shall comply with Section 1224.4.4.1.4 unless specified elsewhere.

**1224.15.2.2.1 Surgical cystoscopic and other endourologic procedures.** Each room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 250 square feet ( $23.23 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum of 15 feet (4572 mm) clear dimension between fixed cabinets and built-in shelves. X-ray viewing and/or other imaging modality capabilities shall be provided

**Exception:** Where renovation of operating rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code rooms for surgical cystoscopy shall have a minimum clear floor area of 180 square feet ( $16.72 \text{ m}^2$ ). Cast rooms for open reductions, if provided, shall have a minimum clear floor area of 180 square feet ( $16.72 \text{ m}^2$ ), no dimension of which shall be less than 11 feet (3353 mm).

**1224.15.3 Service areas.** Services, except for the enclosed soiled workroom referenced in Section 1224.15.3.7 and the housekeeping room referenced in Section 1224.15.3.12, may be shared with the obstetrical facilities. Service areas, when shared with delivery rooms, shall be designed to avoid the passing of patients or staff between the operating room and the delivery room areas. The following shall be provided in support of the surgical service space:

**1224.15.3.1 Control station.** Control stations shall be located to permit visual observation of all traffic into the surgical service space.

#### **1224.15.3.2 Supervisor's office or station.**

**1224.15.3.3 Sub-sterile areas.** If provided within the surgery suite, a sub-sterile area(s) shall be equipped with a flash sterilizer, warming cabinet, countertop and handwashing station. If a sterilizing facility(ies) with high-speed sterilizer(s) or other sterilizing equipment for immediate or emergency use are provided, they shall be directly accessible from the operating room(s) it serves or shall be located inside the clean core if the clean core is directly accessible from the operating room(s). This room shall be accessible without traveling through any operating room. Other facilities for processing and sterilizing reusable instruments, etc., may be located in another hospital department such as central sterile supply.

**1224.15.3.4 Medication station.** A medication station shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.4.

**1224.15.3.5 Scrub facilities.** Scrub sinks shall be located outside of sterile areas. A minimum of two scrub sinks shall be provided in a surgical unit containing one operating room. Four scrub sinks shall be provided in surgical units containing two operating rooms. One additional scrub sink shall be provided for each additional operating room. Scrub sinks shall have water supply controls not requiring direct contact of the hands for operation.

**1224.15.3.6 Clock.** A direct-wired or battery-operated clock or other equivalent timing device shall be visible from the scrub-up sinks.

**1224.15.3.7 Soiled workroom.** An enclosed soiled workroom (or soiled holding room that is part of a system for the collection and disposal of soiled material) for the exclusive use of the surgical service space shall be provided. The soiled workroom shall contain a flushing-rim clinical sink or equivalent flushing-rim fixture, a handwashing station, a work counter and space for waste receptacles and soiled linen receptacles. Rooms used only for temporary holding of soiled material may omit the flushing-rim clinical sink and work counters. However, if the flushing-rim clinical sink is omitted, other provisions for disposal of liquid waste shall be provided. The room shall not have direct connection with operating rooms. Soiled and clean utility room or holding rooms shall be separated. The soiled workroom shall provide 24 square feet ( $2.23 \text{ m}^2$ ) per operating room up to eight operating rooms and shall have a minimum area of 48 square feet ( $4.46 \text{ m}^2$ ), with no dimension less than 6 feet (1829 mm).

**1224.15.3.8 Clean utility room.** This room shall not be used for food preparation.

A clean utility room is required when clean materials are assembled within the surgical service space prior to use or following the decontamination cycle. It shall contain a work counter, a handwashing station, storage facilities for clean supplies and a space to package reusable items. The storage for sterile supplies must be separated from this space. If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

of clean supply materials, the work counter and hand-washing station may be omitted. Soiled and clean utility rooms or holding rooms shall be separated.

**1224.15.3.9 Anesthesia workroom.** Provide an anesthesia workroom for cleaning, testing and storing anesthesia equipment. This room shall contain work counter(s) and sink(s) and racks for cylinders.

**1224.15.3.10 Equipment storage room(s) for equipment and supplies used in surgical service space.** Each surgical service space shall provide sufficient storage area to keep its required corridor width free of equipment and supplies, but not less than 150 square feet ( $13.94 \text{ m}^2$ ) or 50 square feet ( $4.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) per operating room, whichever is greater.

**1224.15.3.11 Staff clothing change areas.** Appropriate areas shall be provided for male and female staff working within the surgical service space. The areas shall contain lockers, showers, toilets, handwashing stations and space for donning surgical attire. These areas shall be arranged to ensure a traffic pattern so that personnel entering from unrestricted area outside the surgical service space enter, change their clothing and move directly into the surgical service space semi-restricted corridor.

**1224.15.3.12 Housekeeping room.** Shall be provided for the exclusive use of the surgical service space. It shall be directly accessible from the service space.

## 1224.16 ANESTHESIA/RECOVERY SERVICE SPACE.

**1224.16.1 General.** The anesthesia/recovery service space shall provide perioperative support services to the surgical service space as required under this section. Perioperative services shall include preoperative patient care and post-operative recovery with a Post-Anesthesia Care Unit (PACU). The anesthesia/recovery service space shall be located adjacent to the surgical service space with direct access to the surgical suite's semi-restricted corridor.

**Exception:** In a rural general acute care hospital, when the surgical service space is not provided, the anesthesia service space is not required. The hospital must maintain written transfer agreements with one or more general acute care hospitals that provide surgical and anesthesia services. Written transfer agreements shall be approved by the Department of Public Health, Licensing and Certification.

**1224.16.2 Preoperative patient holding area(s).** In facilities with two or more operating rooms, area(s) with patient care stations shall be provided to accommodate gurney patients or sitting space for ambulatory patients not requiring gurneys. The preoperative area is an unrestricted area and shall be under the direct visual control of the nursing staff and may be part of the recovery space. If the preoperative patient care area will serve other purposes, such as overflow PACU or holding area, applicable requirements in Section 1224.16.3 PACU shall be met.

**1224.16.2.1 Space requirements.** Each station shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) and a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between the sides and foot of patient

lounge chairs/gurneys and adjacent walls, partitions or fixed elements.

**1224.16.2.2 Patient privacy.** Provisions for patient privacy such as cubicle curtains shall be made.

**1224.16.2.3 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing station(s) shall be provided in the preoperative service area at a ratio of one for each 4 stations, and for each major fraction thereof, in open bay areas. A handwashing station shall be provided in each single care station room.

**1224.16.3 Recovery and Post-Anesthesia Care Unit (PACU).** The recovery area and Post-Anesthesia Care Unit is an unrestricted area and located such that at least one door to the recovery room shall provide access directly from the surgical service space without crossing unrestricted corridors. A minimum of 1.5, or major fraction thereof, post-anesthesia care stations per operating room shall be provided. If pediatric surgery is provided, pediatric recovery stations shall be provided. They shall be separate from adult stations, and shall include space for family or visitors and be visible from the nurse station.

**1224.16.3.1 Space requirements.** A minimum of 4 feet (1218 mm) clearance shall be provided between the sides and the foot of patient gurneys or beds and adjacent walls or other fixed elements. A minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be provided for each station in an open-bay plan. A minimum clearance of 5 feet (1524 mm) shall be provided between sides of gurneys or beds, and a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) clearance shall be provided between the foot of the gurney or bed, to a closed cubicle curtain. A minimum width of 6 feet (1829 mm) of access/circulation outside the curtain shall be provided. See Patient Bay under Patient Care Locations in Section 1224.3.

**1224.16.3.2 Patient privacy.** Provisions for patient privacy such as cubicle curtains shall be made.

**1224.16.3.3 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be provided in the post-anesthesia care unit with at least one for every four patient positions, and for each major fraction thereof, uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station. A handwashing station shall be provided in each single care station room.

## 1224.16.4 Reserved.

## 1224.16.5 Support areas for patient care.

**1224.16.5.1 Nurse station.** A nurse station shall be provided in postoperative patient care areas, and shall allow direct observation of the patients and charting facilities. The nurse station shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.2.

**1224.16.5.2 Clinical sink.** A clinical sink shall be provided in postoperative patient care areas with provisions for bedpan cleaning.

**1224.16.5.3 Medication station.** Each Post-Anesthesia Care Unit shall contain a medication station. The med-

ication station shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.4.

**1224.16.5.4 Ice-making.** Ice-making equipment shall be provided in the perioperative service space. Ice-making equipment is permitted to be located in preoperative or postoperative patient care areas, however, it shall not be located in semi-restricted areas.

**1224.16.5.5 Storage.** Storage shall be provided for gurneys, supplies and equipment.

**1224.16.6 Support areas for staff.** Staff toilet rooms shall be immediately accessible to the postoperative patient care area(s) to maintain staff availability to patients.

**1224.16.7 Support areas for patients, families and visitors.**

**1224.16.7.1 Waiting area.** A waiting area, in compliance with Section 1224.4.5, shall be provided.

**1224.16.7.2 Patient change area.** A changing area shall be provided for outpatient use in perioperative areas in support of surgical suites that provide outpatient procedures. The changing area shall include space for changing or gowning, provisions for storing patients' belongings during the procedure, and access to patient toilet(s).

## 1224.17 CLINICAL LABORATORY SERVICE SPACE.

**1224.17.1 General requirements.** All hospitals shall provide space and equipment to perform urinalysis, complete blood counts, hemoglobin blood typing and cross matching. If laboratory facilities for bacteriological, serological, pathological and additional hematological procedures are not available in the community, then space, equipment and supplies for such procedures shall be provided.

**1224.17.2 Laboratory work areas.** The following laboratory work areas shall be provided:

**1224.17.2.1 Laboratory workstation(s).** Space shall be provided to accommodate equipment used and, at minimum, shall include a laboratory work counter and a sink. All work counter(s) in areas used for specimen handling, preparation of specimens or reagents, and laboratory testing shall be constructed of nonporous materials. Access to the following shall be provided as required:

1. Tele/data service.
2. Electrical service.
3. Computer/printer.

### 1224.17.2.2 Handwashing station(s).

**1224.17.2.2.1.** If there is one work station, a handwashing station shall be provided at the workstation.

**1224.17.2.2.2.** If more than one work station is provided, a handwashing station shall be provided within 25 feet (762 mm) of all testing and specimen-handling areas.

**1224.17.2.2.3.** A handwashing station shall be provided in each enclosed room where bio-hazardous specimens and/or hazardous chemicals are handled.

**1224.17.2.3 Refrigerated storage facilities.** Refrigerated blood storage facilities for transfusions shall be provided. Blood storage refrigerators shall be equipped with temperature-monitoring and alarm signals that are monitored continuously.

### 1224.17.2.4 Storage facilities.

1. Storage for reagents, specimens, flammable materials, acids, bases and other supplies shall be provided as necessary.
2. Separate facilities shall be provided for such incompatible materials as acids and bases.
3. Vented storage shall be provided for volatile solvents.

**1224.17.2.5 Terminal sterilization.** Facilities and equipment may be provided for terminal sterilization of bio-hazardous waste before transport (autoclave or electric oven).

### Notes:

1. Terminal sterilization is not required for waste that is incinerated on-site.
2. Terminal sterilization is subject to other state and federal regulatory requirements.

**Exception:** Terminal sterilization facilities are not required when it can be demonstrated to the licensing agency that transport and terminal sterilization can be effectively contracted to an independent medical waste treatment facility.

**1224.17.2.6 Radioactive material handling.** If radioactive materials are employed, facilities for long-term storage and disposal of these materials shall be provided.

## 1224.17.3 Specimen collection facilities.

**1224.17.3.1 General.** Space shall be provided for specimen collection. Facilities for this function shall be located outside the laboratory work area.

**1224.17.3.2 Facility requirements.** At a minimum, specimen collection facilities shall have the following:

1. A blood collection area with a work counter, space for patient seating, handwashing station(s) and supply storage.
2. A urine and feces collection facility equipped with a toilet and a handwashing station.
3. Storage spaces for specimen collection supplies.
4. Work counters for labeling and computerized data entry.
5. Storage for specimens awaiting pickup.

**1224.17.4 Administrative areas.** Office(s) and space for clerical work, filing and record maintenance and storage shall be provided.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1224.18 RADIOLOGICAL/DIAGNOSTIC IMAGING SERVICE SPACE.** Space and equipment shall be provided to accommodate all required elements, and any additional imaging modalities included in the service space, as required in this section. To differentiate the design and construction requirements needed to achieve the environmental controls and other requirements that support the amount of intervention to be provided, imaging rooms shall be classified as described in Table 1224.4.11.4a (Examination/Treatment, Imaging, Procedure and Operating Room Classification). Where an imaging room will be used for Class 1 and Class 2 procedures, the more stringent requirements for the higher class room shall apply. Where imaging procedures meeting Class 3 criteria are performed, rooms that meet the requirements for the applicable imaging suite and for an operating room per Section 1224.15.2.1 or hybrid operating room per Section 1224.28.5 shall be provided. If Class 3 interventional or image-guided procedures are performed in the imaging services area, additional provisions shall be as described in Section 1224.28 Supplemental Surgery and other Special Procedure Services. If nuclear medicine is provided in the imaging services area, spaces shall also comply with the requirements described in Section 1224.34 Nuclear Medicine.

**1224.18.1 Minimum requirements.** Hospital shall provide a minimum of:

1. One fluoroscopy room or CT room on approval of Licensing Agency, which can also provide x-ray examination services.
2. Space for processing or viewing images.
3. A toilet room shall adjoin and be directly accessible to each fluoroscopy room. In addition to the fluoroscopy toilet rooms, common patient toilet room facilities shall be located in the radiological/diagnostic imaging service space.
4. An office or other suitable area for viewing and reporting radiographic examination.
5. Storage spaces for all image equipment, supplies and copies of reports.
6. Handwashing stations located within the unit.
  - a) Handwashing station(s) shall be provided within the unit to serve imaging spaces not served by a dedicated handwashing station within the imaging room or scrub facility located directly outside the imaging/procedure room.
  - b) A handwashing station shall be provided in Class 1 imaging rooms, unless specified otherwise for a specific imaging modality.
  - c) A handwashing station or hand scrub facility shall be provided for Class 2 imaging rooms. If a handwashing station is provided, it shall be directly accessible to the imaging room. If a hand scrub facility is provided, it shall be directly outside the entrance to the imaging room.
  - d) Hand scrub facilities shall be provided directly outside the entrance to a Class 3 imaging room.
7. Dressing room facilities.

**1224.18.1.1 Radiation protection.** A certified physicist or other qualified expert shall specify the type, location and amount of radiation protection to be installed in accordance with the final approved department layout and equipment selections. Where protected alcoves with view windows are required, a minimum of 1'-6" (0.45 meter) between the view window and the outside partition edge shall be provided. Radiation protection requirements shall be incorporated into the construction documents and comply with Chapter 31C and the requirements of California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5 and Subchapter 4.

1. The control alcove or room shall be, at minimum, sized and configured in compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service and maintenance.
2. A control alcove or room shall be permitted to serve more than one imaging room, provided the manufacturer's recommendations for installation, service and maintenance are accommodated for all rooms served.
3. The control alcove or room shall include a shielded view window, as specified in the physicist's report, designed to provide a full view of the examination/procedure table and the patient at all times, including a full view of the patient during imaging activities (e.g., when the table is tilted or the chest x-ray is in use).
4. The control room shall be physically separated from a Class 2 or Class 3 imaging room with walls and a door.
5. Where an imaging room requires positive (or negative) pressure, a door shall be provided between the control room and the imaging room.

**1224.18.1.2 Multiple-modality devices.** Where two or more individual imaging or therapy modalities are integrated into one imaging device (e.g., PET/CT, SPECT/CT or PET/MRI), the minimum requirements for that room shall include the criteria for each individual contributing modality. Refer to Section 1224.34 for modalities not included under Section 1224.18.

**1224.18.2 Angiography.** If provided, diagnostic angiography space shall accommodate the following:

1. A control room with a view window to permit full view of the patient.
2. A scrub sink located outside the staff entry to the procedure room.
3. Patient holding area shall accommodate at least one patient gurney with a minimum of 3-foot (914 mm) clearance on the long side.
4. Storage for portable equipment and catheters shall be provided.

**1224.18.2.1 Interventional angiography procedures.** If interventional angiography procedures are to be performed in the angiography room, the suite shall comply

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

with interventional imaging requirements in Section 1224.28.4. If cardiac catheterization procedures are performed refer to Section 1224.28.2.

**1224.18.3 Computerized tomography (CT) scanning.** If provided, CT space shall accommodate the following:

**1224.18.3.1 Spaces required.** If provided, CT scan spaces shall accommodate the equipment with a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) on all sides of the equipment, together with the following:

1. A control room or alcove shall be provided that is designed to accommodate the computer and other controls for the equipment. A view window shall be provided to permit view of the patient.
2. A patient toilet room readily accessible to the procedure room.

**1224.18.3.2 Intraoperative computerized tomography.** If provided, intraoperative CT scanning spaces shall comply with Section 1224.28.5.

**1224.18.4 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).** If provided, the MRI room shall accommodate the equipment with a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) on all sides of the equipment, together with the following:

1. A control room shall be provided with full view of the patient in the MRI scanner. The control console shall be positioned so the operator has a full view of the approach and entrance to the MRI scanner room.
2. An anteroom or area visible from the control room shall be located outside the MRI scanner room so that patients, health care personnel and other employees must pass through it before entering the scanning area and control room. The room or area shall be outside the restricted areas of the MRI's magnetic field.
3. Safety Zones One through Four shall be identified.
  - a) Zone One consists of all areas freely accessible to the general public. This zone includes the entrance to the MR facility.
  - b) Zone Two acts as a buffer between Zone One and the more restrictive Zone Three. Patients are under the general supervision of MR personnel. Zone Two may include the reception area, dressing room and interview room.
  - c) Zone Three should be restricted by a physical barrier. The MR control room and/or computer room are located within Zone Three.
  - d) Zone Four is strictly the area within the walls of the MR scanner room. Access into the MR scanner room should only be available by passing through Zone Three.
4. An imaging equipment room shall be provided if needed for the operation of the MRI.

**1224.18.4.1 Handwashing station.** Handwashing station(s) shall be immediately accessible to the MRI scanner room.

**1224.18.4.2 Wall, floor and ceiling assemblies.** Wall, floor and ceiling assemblies shall accommodate the installation of required radio frequency (RF)-shielded assemblies. All doors, windows and penetrations into the RF-shielded enclosure shall be RF-shielded. As well as RF shielding, individual sites may also require magnetic shielding on some or all surfaces to contain portions of the magnetic field not contained by the RF shield.

**1224.18.4.3 Lighted sign.** MRI rooms shall be clearly marked with a red light and lighted sign stating, "The Magnet Is On". This light and sign are to be lighted at all times and have a backup energy source to remain illuminated for at least 24 hours in the event of a loss of power.

**1224.18.4.4 Magnetic field strength identification.** Facilities shall use finishes or markings to identify the critical values of the magnetic field surrounding the MRI scanner, including the 5-gauss exclusion zone or other magnetic field strength values that may impair the operation of equipment.

**1224.18.4.5 Special ventilation requirements.** Where superconducting MRI scanners are installed, an insulated cryogen quench exhaust pipe as well as room exhaust and pressure equalization shall be provided to protect occupants in the event of a cryogen breach.

**1224.18.4.6 Intraoperative magnetic resonance imaging.** If provided, the intraoperative magnetic resonance imaging (iMRI) suite shall comply with Section 1224.28.5.

**1224.18.5 Ultrasound.** When provided, the ultrasound room shall comply with the following:

**1224.18.5.1 Space requirements.**

1. **Area.** Rooms used for ultrasound examination/treatment shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. **Clearances.** A minimum clear dimension of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided on three sides of the table/stretcher.

**1224.18.5.2 Handwashing station.** A handwashing station shall be provided within the exam room.

**1224.18.5.3 Patient toilet(s).** A patient toilet shall be directly accessible to the ultrasound exam room. The patient toilet may be permitted to serve more than one ultrasound exam room. If exams performed are limited to cardiology, vascular, breast ultrasound or used only for image guided procedures, then the toilet is not required to have direct access.

**1224.18.5.4 Processing room.** If provided, a processing room shall contain distinct areas for cleaning and decontaminating instruments. The cleaning area shall

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*provide for flow of instruments from the contaminated area to the clean area and then to storage.*

**1224.18.5.4.1** *The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:*

1. One freestanding handwashing station.
2. Work counter space(s).
3. Separate storage room or cabinets for HLD probes.

**1224.18.6 Mammography.** *When provided, the mammography room shall comply with the following:*

**1224.18.6.1 Space requirements.**

1. *Area.* Mammography rooms shall be a minimum of 100 square feet (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>).
2. *Shielded alcove.* Each x-ray room shall include a shielded control alcove. For mammography machines with built-in shielding for the operator, omission of the alcove shall be permitted when approved by the certified physicist.

**1224.18.6.2 Handwashing station.** *A handwashing station shall be provided within the procedure room.*

**1224.18.7 Support spaces.** *The following spaces are common to the imaging service area and are minimum requirements unless stated otherwise:*

**1224.18.7.1 Patient's toilet room(s).** *In service spaces with procedure rooms that do not have dedicated patient toilets, provide a minimum of one patient toilet room within the service space.*

**1224.18.7.2 Patient dressing areas.** *Dressing areas shall be provided adjacent to the imaging rooms.*

**1224.18.7.3 Staff facilities.** *In service space of three or more procedure rooms, staff toilet room(s) internal to the service space shall be provided.*

**1224.18.7.4 Film storage (active).** *If film systems are used, provide the following:*

1. A room with cabinet or shelves for filing patient film for immediate retrieval shall be provided.
2. Storage facilities for unexposed film which shall include protection of film against exposure or damage.

**1224.18.7.5 Locked storage.** *Provision shall be made for locked storage of medications and drugs.*

## 1224.19 PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICE SPACE

**1224.19.1 General.** *Facilities shall be provided to accommodate services and equipment associated with the drug distribution system used, the number of patients to be served, and the extent of shared or purchased services as licensed by the California Board of Pharmacy. Hospital pharmacies shall comply with the requirements of Section 1250 and include the functional spaces under Sections 1224.19.2 through 1224.19.7. Exempt hospitals shall provide a drug room and the supporting spaces, in compliance with Section 1224.19.1.2.*

**1224.19.1.1 Licensed pharmacy.** *All hospitals having a licensed capacity of 100 or more beds shall have a pharmacy on the premises licensed by the California Board of Pharmacy.*

**Note:** See General Acute Care Hospitals §70263(a), Article 3, Chapter 1, Division 5, Title 22, California Code of Regulations, for requirements concerning hospitals with fewer than 100 beds. The pharmacy room or service space shall conform to the requirements of § 1751, Article 7, Division 17, Title 16, California Code of Regulations as enforced by the California Board of Pharmacy.

**1224.19.1.2 Less than 100-bed exemption.** *Hospitals under a Hospital Pharmacy Permit Exemption issued by the Board of Pharmacy, associated with Business and Professions Code Section 4056, shall provide all basic pharmaceutical services in compliance with Section 1224.19.1.2.*

**1224.19.1.2.1 Drug room.** *Licensed pharmaceutical space with drug distribution shall be under the supervision of a physician and be monitored by a pharmacist consultant. The drug room shall include the following:*

**1224.19.1.2.1.1.** *A room or area for receiving, breakout and inventory control of drugs used in the hospital.*

**1224.19.1.2.1.2.** *Cleanable work counters and space for automated and/or manual dispensing activities.*

**1224.19.1.2.1.3. Reserved.**

**1224.19.1.2.1.4.** *An area for reviewing and recording.*

**1224.19.1.2.1.5.** *An area for storage, exchange and restocking of carts.*

**1224.19.1.2.1.6.** *Security provisions for drugs and personnel in the dispensing counter area.*

**1224.19.1.2.2 Handwashing station.** *A hand-washing station shall be provided in the area where medication(s) are handled or be immediately accessible, without going through a door unless the door is equipped with hands-free operation.*

**1224.19.1.2.3 Storage.** *Cabinets, shelves and/or separate rooms or closets shall be provided for the following:*

**1224.19.1.2.3.1. Bulk storage.**

**1224.19.1.2.3.2. Active storage.**

**1224.19.1.2.3.3. Refrigerated storage.**

**1224.19.1.2.3.4.** *Storage for volatile fluids and alcohol in accordance with applicable fire safety codes for the substances involved.*

**1224.19.1.2.3.5.** *Secured lockable storage for controlled drugs.*

**1224.19.1.2.3.6.** *Equipment and supply storage for general supplies and equipment not in use.*

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1224.19.2 Pharmacy areas.**

**1224.19.2.1 Dispensing facilities.** Hospital pharmacies shall provide the following areas for patient-specific compounding and dose repackaging of non-sterile preparations.

**1224.19.2.1.1 Receiving.** A room or area for receiving, breakout and inventory control of materials used in the pharmacy.

**1224.19.2.1.1.1 Size.** A minimum of 120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ) shall be provided.

**1224.19.2.1.2 Dispensing.** Work counters and space for automated and/or manual dispensing activities shall be provided to serve the volume of doses per day for in-patient and out-patient needs.

**1224.19.2.1.3 Non-sterile compounding areas.** An extemporaneous compounding/dose repackaging area shall be located next to bulk storage and include the following:

**1224.19.2.1.3.1 Size.** Work stations shall have sufficient counter space for drug preparation, with a minimum area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ) per station.

**1224.19.2.1.3.2 Handwashing station.** Hand-washing station(s) shall be in or immediately accessible to all areas where pharmaceuticals are handled without going through a door unless the door is equipped with hands-free operation.

**1224.19.2.1.3.3 Utility sink.** A utility sink shall be provided.

**1224.19.2.1.3.4.** If carousel or analogous robotic technologies are used, the area shall respond to the special system requirements.

**1224.19.2.1.4 Recording.** An area for reviewing and recording shall be provided. The area shall include counter space and electronic workstation(s).

**1224.19.2.1.5 Temporary storage.** An area for temporary storage, exchange and restocking of carts.

**1224.19.2.1.6 Security.** Security provisions shall be provided for drugs and personnel in the dispensing counter area.

**1224.19.2.3 Storage.** The following storage facilities shall be provided in the pharmaceutical service area.

**1224.19.2.3.1 Bulk storage.** A separate bulk storage area, or room, may be provided.

**1224.19.2.3.2 Active storage.** Active storage in support of repackaging and dispensing activities shall be provided.

**1224.19.2.3.3 Refrigerated storage.** Refrigeration/freezer area shall be provided.

**1224.19.2.3.4 Hazardous materials.** Storage for volatile fluids and alcohol shall comply with Section 307.

**1224.19.2.3.5 Secured storage.** Secured lockable storage shall be provided for narcotics and controlled drugs.

**1224.19.2.3.6 Equipment and supplies.** Equipment and supply storage for general supplies and equipment not in use.

**1224.19.3 Sterile compounding areas.**

**1224.19.3.1 General.** If sterile compounding areas are provided, the requirements in this section shall be met. Buffer rooms (also known as clean rooms) and their anterooms, and Segregated Compounding Areas (SCA) are classified as semi-restricted areas. The pharmacy shall be laid out to preclude unrelated traffic to hazardous and nonhazardous preparation rooms. The buffer room, anteroom and SCA must be separated from areas not directly related to compounding and must be appropriately controlled to achieve and maintain required air quality classifications. A monitoring system shall be used in a cleanroom suite to continuously monitor the pressure differential between the anteroom(s) and buffer room(s) and between the ante-room and the general pharmacy area. Sterile compounding areas in hospitals shall comply with Sections 1735 and 1751 in Article 4.5 of Division 17 of Title 16 of the California Code of Regulations and US Pharmacopeia (USP) Chapters 797 and 800, and the requirements in this section.

**Note:** Where robotic systems are used in the preparation of IV solutions in either the positive pressure nonhazardous preparation room or the negative pressure hazardous prep room, the robotics shall be separate systems and not pass through from one area to the other.

**1224.19.3.2 Nonhazardous sterile preparation area.** If IV solutions are prepared in the pharmacy, a sterile compounding work area with a laminar airflow workstation designed for product protection shall be provided in accordance with Title 16, Section 1735, and USP Chapter 797 and include the following.

**1224.19.3.2.1 Workstation.** The Primary Engineering Control (PEC) shall be a laminar airflow work bench or isolator (CAI) as required. The workstation shall have a visible pressure gauge for detection of filter leaks or defects. All exposed sides of the workstation shall be accessible for cleaning and allow for reach behind the unit if not built against a wall. If built against a wall, the space behind the unit shall be sealed to prevent intrusion of moisture, contaminants and bacteria growth.

**1224.19.3.2.2 Buffer room.** Workstations shall be located in a Secondary Engineering Control (SEC) room. The SEC shall be a buffer/clean room, with the following requirements:

**1224.19.3.2.2.1 Size.** The minimum size for a non-hazardous buffer room is 120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ) for a single workstation, and 75 square feet ( $6.97 m^2$ ) for each additional workstation.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1224.19.3.2.2.2 Air quality.** Nonhazardous buffer rooms shall be sealed tight, and be under positive pressure relative to the anteroom. Air supply shall be laminar airflow with a low-level return. Refer to California Mechanical Code Table 4A, Title 16 Section 1735 and USP Chapter 797 for additional requirements.

**1224.19.3.2.2.3 Finishes.** The buffer room is considered a semi-restricted area with non-porous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings, walls and floors subject to wet cleaning. The surfaces of ceilings, walls, floors, fixtures, shelving, counters and cabinets shall be smooth, seamless, impervious, free from cracks and crevices and be non-shedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Junctures of ceilings to walls shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems shall be recessed, covered, easily cleanable and of a type suitable for a cleanroom environment. Wall finishes shall be 2-coat epoxy-covered gypsum board, seamless vinyl or other impervious covering. Work surfaces, shelving and cabinets shall be constructed of smooth, impervious materials, such as stainless steel or molded plastic, so that they are easily cleaned and disinfected. Plastic laminate finish over a pervious substrate is not permitted.

**1224.19.3.2.2.4 Eyewash station.** If provided in the buffer room, the eyewash station shall be located just inside the door from the anteroom, and must be dry, unless in use. Drains are not permitted in the buffer room.

**1224.19.3.2.2.5 Sealed tight room.** Room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other rooms. Buffer room doors shall be glass, metal or other phenolic material, self-closing and with hands-free door operation. Normal operation may include automatic door controls sequencing such that only the buffer room door or the anteroom door is open at one time. Egress provisions shall not be impeded.

**1224.19.3.2.2.6.** If a pass-through is used, both doors shall not be capable of being open at the same time, and the doors should be interlocking.

**1224.19.3.2.3 Anteroom.** Nonhazardous buffer rooms shall be accessed through an anteroom with the following requirements:

**1224.19.3.2.3.1 Size.** The anteroom shall be of adequate size to accommodate a demarked area for donning and doffing, and anticipated staging of carts and supplies. The minimum size for the anteroom is 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Note:** A common anteroom may be shared between hazardous and nonhazardous buffer rooms. The anteroom must comply with both 1224.19.3.2.3 and 1224.19.3.3.3, provide a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) between the buffer room doors, and provide automatic door controls sequencing such that only one of the buffer room doors may be open at one time. Egress provisions shall not be impeded.

**1224.19.3.2.3.2 Air quality.** Nonhazardous anterooms shall be under negative pressure relative to the buffer room and positive pressure relative to nonrestricted areas. Refer to California Mechanical Code Table 4A, Title 16 Section 1735 and USP Chapter 797 for additional requirements.

**1224.19.3.2.3.3 Handwashing station.** A handwashing station, with hands-free controls and nonrefillable closed soap dispensing system, providing support for scrubbing up to the elbows, shall be located in the anteroom.

**1224.19.3.2.3.4 Eyewash station.** An eyewash station shall be provided in the anteroom if one is not provided in the buffer room.

**1224.19.3.2.3.5 Housekeeping.** Dedicated environmental services, materials and supplies for the buffer room and the anteroom shall be located in the anteroom.

**1224.19.3.2.3.6 Finishes.** The anteroom room is considered a semi-restricted area with non-porous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings, walls and floors subject to wet cleaning. The surfaces of ceilings, walls, floors, fixtures, shelving, counters and cabinets shall be smooth, seamless, impervious, free from cracks and crevices and be non-shedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Junctures of ceilings to walls shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems shall be recessed, covered, easily cleanable and of a type suitable for a cleanroom environment. Wall finishes shall be 2-coat epoxy-covered gypsum board, seamless vinyl or other impervious covering. Work surfaces, shelving and cabinets shall be constructed of smooth, impervious materials, such as stainless steel or molded plastic so that they are easily cleaned and disinfected. Plastic laminate finish over a pervious substrate is not permitted.

**1224.19.3.2.3.7 Sealed tight room.** Room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other rooms. Buffer room doors shall be glass, metal or other phenolic material, self-closing and with hands-free door operation.

**1224.19.3.2.4 Segregated Compounding Area (SCA).** When provided in lieu of a buffer/clean room and anteroom, a segregated compounding area, with a limitation on permitted compounded sterile preparations and allowable time of use, shall comply with the requirements of Title 16, Section 1735 and USP Chapter 797. The SCA shall include the PEC and extend to a line of demarcation between the PEC and other surrounding areas with a minimum clearance of 3.281 feet (1 meter) between the PEC and the line of demarcation.

**1224.19.3.2.4.1 Air quality.** Nonhazardous Segregated Compounding Areas shall provide airflow from clean to less clean areas. Refer to California Mechanical Code Table 4A, Title 16 Section 1735 and USP Chapter 797 for additional requirements.

**1224.19.3.2.4.2 Handwashing station.** A hand-washing station, with hands-free controls and nonrefillable closed soap dispensing system, providing support for scrubbing up to the elbows, shall be located in the SCA with a minimum clearance of 3.281 feet (1 meter) between the rim of the sink and the PEC.

**1224.19.3.2.4.3 Finishes.** The segregated compounding area is considered a semi-restricted area with nonporous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings, walls and floors subject to wet cleaning. The surfaces of ceilings, walls, floors, fixtures, shelving, counters and cabinets shall be smooth, seamless, impervious, free from cracks and crevices and be non-shedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Junctures of ceilings to walls shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems shall be recessed, covered and easily cleanable. Wall finishes shall be 2-coat epoxy-covered gypsum board, seamless vinyl or other impervious covering. Work surfaces, shelving and cabinets shall be constructed of smooth, impervious materials, such as stainless steel or molded plastic so that they are easily cleaned and disinfected. Plastic laminate finish over a pervious substrate is not permitted.

**1224.19.3.3 Hazardous sterile preparation room.** If hazardous drugs are used in compounding activities, a separate room shall be provided for preparation of hazardous admixtures in accordance with Title 16, Sections 1735 and 1751 and USP Chapters 797 and 800.

**1224.19.3.3.1 Workstation.** The Primary Engineering Control (PEC) shall be a negative pressure biological safety cabinet or isolator (CACI) as required. The workstation shall have an exhaust to the outside with a visible pressure gauge for detection of filter leaks or defects. All exposed sides of the workstation shall be accessible for cleaning and

allow for reach behind the unit if not built against a wall. If built against a wall, the space behind the unit shall be sealed to prevent intrusion of moisture, contaminants and bacteria growth.

**1224.19.3.3.2 Buffer room.** Workstations shall be located in a Secondary Engineering Control (SEC) room. The SEC shall be a buffer/clean room, with the following requirements:

**1224.19.3.3.2.1 Size.** The minimum size for a non-hazardous buffer room is 130 square feet (12.08 m<sup>2</sup>) for a single workstation, and a minimum of 75 square feet (6.97 m<sup>2</sup>) for each additional workstation.

**1224.19.3.3.2.2 Air quality.** Hazardous buffer rooms shall be sealed tight and be under negative pressure relative to the anteroom. Air supply shall be laminar airflow with a low-level return. Refer to California Mechanical Code Table 4A, Title 16 Section 1751 and USP Chapter 800 for additional requirements.

**1224.19.3.3.2.3 Finishes.** The buffer room is considered a semirestricted area with nonporous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings, walls and floors subject to wet cleaning. The surfaces of ceilings, walls, floors, fixtures, shelving, counters and cabinets shall be smooth, seamless and impervious, free from cracks and crevices and be non-shedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Juncture of ceilings to wall shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems shall be recessed, covered, easily cleanable and of a type suitable for a cleanroom environment. Wall finishes shall be 2-coat epoxy covered gypsum board, seamless vinyl or other impervious covering. Work surfaces, shelving and cabinets shall be constructed of smooth, impervious materials, such as stainless steel or molded plastic so that they are easily cleaned and disinfected. Plastic laminate finish over a pervious substrate is not permitted.

**1224.19.3.3.2.4 Eyewash station.** If provided in the buffer room, the eyewash station shall be located just inside the door from the anteroom, a minimum clearance of 3.281 feet (1 meter) from the PEC, and must be dry, unless in use. Drains are not permitted in the buffer room.

**1224.19.3.3.2.5 Refrigerator.** Refrigerated storage may be provided in the negative pressure buffer room. Clearance around the refrigerator shall be accessible for cleaning.

**1224.19.3.3.2.6 Doffing area.** An area for doffing with a hamper shall be demarcated inside the buffer/clean room at the door to the anteroom.

**1224.19.3.3.2.7 Sealed tight room.** Room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other rooms. Buffer room doors shall be glass, metal or other phenolic material, self-closing and with hands-free door operation. Normal operation may include automatic door controls sequencing such that only the buffer room door or the anteroom door is open at one time. Egress provisions shall not be impeded.

**1224.19.3.3.2.8 Pass-throughs.** If a pass-through is used between the buffer and anteroom, both doors should not be capable of being open at the same time, and the doors should be interlocking. A pass-through is not permitted between the hazardous drug buffer room and any unclassified area.

**1224.19.3.3.2.9 Housekeeping.** Dedicated environmental services, materials and supplies shall be located in the buffer room.

**1224.19.3.3.3 Anteroom.** Hazardous buffer rooms shall be accessed through an anteroom with the following requirements:

**1224.19.3.3.3.1 Size.** The anteroom shall be of adequate size to accommodate a demarcated area for donning and doffing, and anticipated staging of carts and supplies. The minimum size for the anteroom is 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Note:** A common anteroom may be shared between hazardous and nonhazardous buffer rooms. Refer to note under Section 1224.19.3.2.3.1.

**1224.19.3.3.3.2 Air quality.** Hazardous anterooms shall be under positive pressure relative to the buffer room and positive pressure relative to nonrestricted areas. Refer to California Mechanical Code Table 4A, Title 16 Section 1751 and USP Chapter 800 for additional requirements.

**1224.19.3.3.3.3 Handwashing station.** A handwashing station with hands-free controls and nonrefillable closed soap dispensing system, providing support for scrubbing up to the elbows, shall be located in the anteroom, with a minimum clearance of 3.281 feet (1 meter) between the rim of the sink and the door opening to the buffer room.

**1224.19.3.3.3.4 Eyewash station.** An eyewash station shall be provided in the anteroom if one is not provided in the buffer room.

**1224.19.3.3.3.5 Housekeeping.** Dedicated environmental services, materials and supplies shall be located in the anteroom.

**1224.19.3.3.3.6 Finishes.** The anteroom is considered a semi-restricted area with nonporous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings, walls and floors subject to wet cleaning. The surfaces of ceilings, walls, floors, fixtures, shelving, counters and cabinets shall be smooth, seamless and impervious, free from cracks and crevices and be nonshedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Juncture of ceilings to wall shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems

ous, free from cracks and crevices and be nonshedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Juncture of ceilings to wall shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems shall be recessed, covered, easily cleanable and of a type suitable for a cleanroom environment. Wall finishes shall be 2-coat epoxy-covered gypsum board, seamless vinyl or other impervious covering. Work surfaces, shelving and cabinets shall be constructed of smooth, impervious materials, such as stainless steel or molded plastic so that they are easily cleaned and disinfected. Plastic laminate finish over a pervious substrate is not permitted.

**1224.19.3.3.3.7 Sealed tight room.** Room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other rooms. Buffer room doors shall be glass, metal or other phenolic material, self-closing and with hands-free door operation.

**1224.19.3.3.4 Segregated Compounding Area (SCA).** When provided in lieu of a buffer/clean room and anteroom, a segregated compounding area, with a limitation on permitted compounded sterile preparations and allowable time of use, shall comply with the requirements of Title 16 Section 1751 and USP Chapter 800. The SCA shall include the PEC and be located in a negative pressure room dedicated to this use.

**1224.19.3.3.4.1 Air quality.** Hazardous Segregated Compounding Areas shall be under negative pressure and provide airflow from clean to less clean areas. Refer to California Mechanical Code Table 4A, Title 16 Section 1735 and USP Chapter 797 for additional requirements.

**1224.19.3.3.4.2 Handwashing station.** A handwashing station, with hands-free controls and nonrefillable closed soap dispensing system, providing support for scrubbing up to the elbows, shall be located in the SCA with a minimum clearance of 3.281 feet (1 meter) between the rim of the sink and the PEC.

**1224.19.3.3.4.3 Finishes.** The segregated compounding area is considered a semi-restricted area with nonporous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings, walls and floors subject to wet cleaning. The surfaces of ceilings, walls, floors, fixtures, shelving, counters and cabinets shall be smooth, seamless, impervious, free from cracks and crevices and be nonshedding. Ceilings shall be monolithic or utilize cleanroom style scrubbable and gasketed panels, able to withstand cleaning with chemicals. Juncture of ceilings to wall shall be coved or caulked to avoid cracks and crevices where dirt can accumulate. Sprinkler systems

shall be recessed, covered and easily cleanable. Wall finishes shall be 2-coat epoxy-covered gypsum board, seamless vinyl or other impervious covering. Work surfaces shall be constructed of smooth, impervious materials, such as stainless steel or molded plastic so that they are easily cleaned and disinfected. Plastic laminate finish over a pervious substrate is not permitted.

#### **1224.19.4 – 1224.19.5. Reserved.**

#### **1224.19.6 Support areas for the pharmacy.**

##### **1224.19.6.1 Access to information.**

**1224.19.6.1.1 Patient information.** Provisions shall be made for cross-checking medication and drug profiles of individual patients.

**1224.19.6.1.2 Pharmacological information.** Provisions shall be made for access to poison control, reaction data and drug information.

**1224.19.6.2 Office.** A separate room shall be provided for the Chief Pharmacist's office.

**1224.19.6.3 Education and training.** A multipurpose room shared with other departments shall be permitted to serve this purpose.

**1224.19.6.4 Outpatient medication consultation.** If medication is dispensed to outpatients from the hospital pharmacy, an area for consultation and patient education shall be provided.

**1224.19.6.5 Additional equipment and supply storage.** If a dose procedure is used, additional space and equipment shall be provided to accommodate supplies, packaging, labeling and storage, including space for carts.

#### **1224.19.7 Support areas for staff.**

**1224.19.7.1 Lounge, locker and toilet facilities.** Provide pharmacy staff lounge, toilet rooms and lockers that are readily accessible.

### **1224.20 DIETETIC SERVICE SPACE**

**1224.20.1 General.** Food and nutrition facilities shall be provided to support food services provided for staff, visitors and patients. Adequate space for the preparation and serving of food shall be provided. Equipment shall be placed so as to provide aisles of sufficient width to permit easy movement of personnel, mobile equipment and supplies. Food service facilities and equipment shall conform to these standards, the standards of the National Sanitation Foundation and the requirements of the local public health agency.

**1224.20.2 Functional elements.** On-site conventional food service preparation shall be provided as follows in the size and number appropriate for the type of food service selected:

**1224.20.2.1 Location.** Patient food preparation areas shall be directly accessible to the entry for food supply

deliveries and for the removal of kitchen wastes, interior transportation, storage, etc., without traversing patient or public circulation. Food preparation, service and storage shall be inaccessible to nondietetic service staff.

**1224.20.2.2 Receiving/control stations.** Provide an area for the receiving and control of incoming dietary supplies. Space shall be provided for the delivery and transport equipment used, such as receiving carts/jacks, transport carts and returnables. The exterior door into the receiving area shall have a minimum clear width of 4 feet (1.22 m) and a minimum clear height of 7 feet (2.14 m).

##### **1224.20.2.3 Storage.**

- Food storage space shall be readily accessible to the receiving area and shall be located to exclude traffic through the food preparation area to reach them. Storage spaces for bulk, refrigerated and frozen foods shall be provided. At least one week's (7 days) supply of staple foods and at least two (2) days' supply of frozen and two (2) days' supply of perishable foods shall be maintained on the premises. Food storage components shall be grouped for convenient access from receiving and to the food preparation areas. All food shall be stored clear of the floor. Lowest shelf shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor or shall be closed in and sealed tight for ease of cleaning.

As a minimum, dietary storage space shall be provided in accordance with the following schedule:

Licensed Bed Capacity	Storage Space
1 to 99 beds	2 square feet (0.19 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed
100 to 199 beds	200 square feet (18.58 m <sup>2</sup> ) plus 1 square foot 0.0929 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed in excess of 100 beds
200 beds and over	300 square feet (27.99 m <sup>2</sup> ), plus 1/2 square foot (0.0465 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed in excess of 200 beds

Space to allow refrigeration for the storage of frozen and chilled foods shall be provided at a minimum of 2 cubic feet (0.057 m<sup>3</sup>) of usable space per bed.

- Additional storage space for dietetic service supplies, such as paper products, equipment, tray delivery carts, etc., shall be provided.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

3. Storage areas and sanitizing facilities for cans, carts and mobile-tray conveyors shall be provided.
4. Waste storage and recycling facilities (per local requirements) shall be located in a separate room immediately accessible to the outside for direct pickup or disposal.

**1224.20.2.4 Cleaning supplies storage.** Provide a separate storage room for the storage of nonfood items such as cleaning supplies that might contaminate edibles.

**1224.20.2.5 Food preparation workspaces.** Provide workspaces for food preparation, cooking and baking. These areas shall be as close as possible to the user (i.e., tray assembly and dining). Provide additional spaces for thawing and portioning.

**1224.20.2.6 Assembly and distribution.** The patient tray assembly area shall be immediately accessible to the food preparation and distribution areas.

**1224.20.2.7 Food service carts.** A cart distribution system shall be provided with spaces for storage, loading, distribution, receiving and sanitizing of the food service carts. The cart traffic shall be designed to eliminate any danger of cross-circulation between outgoing food carts and incoming soiled carts and the cleaning and sanitizing process. Cart circulation shall not be through food preparation areas.

**1224.20.2.8 Dining area.** Provide dining space(s) for patients, staff and visitors. These spaces shall be separate from the food preparation and distribution areas.

1. **Employee dining.** Where separate employee dining space is provided, a minimum of 15 square feet ( $1.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per person served, including serving area, shall be maintained.

**1224.20.2.9 Vending services.** If vending devices are used for unscheduled meals, provide a separate room that can be accessed without having to enter the main dining area.

**1224.20.2.10 Ware-washing facilities.** Ware-washing space shall be provided in a room separate from food preparation and serving areas. It shall be designed to prevent contamination of clean wares with soiled wares through cross-traffic. The clean wares shall be transferred for storage or use in the dining room area without having to pass through food preparation areas.

1. Commercial-type ware-washing equipment shall be provided.
2. Space shall be provided for receiving, scraping, sorting and stacking soiled tableware separate from food preparation areas.
3. Handwashing stations shall be provided in the ware-washing space.

**1224.20.2.11 Pot washing facilities.** Pot washing shall include multi-compartment sinks.

**1224.20.2.12 Waste storage room.** A food waste storage room shall be readily accessible to the food preparation and ware washing areas but not within the food preparation area. It shall have direct access to the hospital's waste collection and disposal facilities.

**1224.20.2.13 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be provided within 20 feet (6096 mm) of each food preparation or serving area.

**1224.20.2.14 Office and administrative space.** An office shall be provided for the dietitian or dietetic service supervisor. Dietetic service administrative staff shall have offices or other suitable space necessary to conduct business related to the dietetic service. Such office and administrative space shall:

1. Provide privacy and accommodate the preparation and maintenance of menus, reports and records.
2. Be located to provide an unobstructed view of the food preparation area.

**Note:** This location requirement applies to all new dietetic service space.

**1224.20.2.15 Toilet room(s) and locker spaces.** Toilet rooms shall be provided for the exclusive use of the dietary staff. They shall not open directly into the food preparation areas, but shall be readily accessible to them. An enclosed, separate locker area shall be provided for dietetic service employee's clothing and personal belongings.

**1224.20.2.16 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room, meeting the requirements of Section 1224.4.15, shall be provided within the dietary department for the exclusive use of the dietary department.

**1224.20.3 Outside service.** On approval of the Licensing Agency, when food is provided by an outside food service, all applicable licensing and certification requirements shall be met. The facility shall maintain adequate space, equipment and food supplies to accommodate required functional elements listed in Section 1224.20.2, as required to provide patient food service in the event that outside food service is interrupted. A temporary mobile kitchen approved by the licensing agency can be used to meet the requirements of Section 1224.20.2 during construction.

## SUPPORT SERVICES

### 1224.21 ADMINISTRATIVE SPACE.

**1224.21.1 Administration.** An administration area shall be provided which shall provide for the following functions:

1. A lobby with reception and information counter or desk, waiting space, men's and women's public toilet room facilities, telephones and drinking fountain.
2. Offices for administrator and admitting.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1224.21.2 Records.** Hospitals shall provide a health record service which shall accommodate the following functions:

1. Work area for sorting and recording records for either paper or electronic media.
2. Storage area for records for either paper or electronic media.

#### 1224.22 CENTRAL STERILE SUPPLY.

**1224.22.1 Minimum requirements.** A central supply and sterilizing area shall be provided. Rooms and distinct spaces shall accommodate the following services and equipment:

1. **Soiled work area.** A receiving and gross cleaning area which shall contain work space and equipment for cleaning medical and surgical equipment and for disposal of or processing of soiled material.
2. **Clean work area.** A clean work area which shall contain work space and equipment for sterilizing medical and surgical equipment and supplies.
3. **Sterilizing space.**
4. **Storage.** Provide storage space for sterile supplies and unsterile supplies.

**Exception:** Section 1224.22.1 does not apply to hospitals which serve psychiatric or alcoholism patients exclusively.

**1224.22.2** All sterilizers and autoclaves which emit steam exhaust shall be vented to the outside of the building. Such vents shall be independent from the plumbing vent system.

**Exception:** Small instrument sterilizers.

#### 1224.23 STORAGE.

**1224.23.1 General storage.** Hospitals shall provide general storage space of at least 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed in addition to specialized storage spaces. All storage spaces shall be located within a conforming hospital building and readily accessible to the connecting corridor required under Section 1224.4.7.5. Required storage, including but not limited to patient, dietary, etc., shall accommodate at least 72 hours of storage capacity in a conforming building. Storage beyond this requirement may be in a non-hospital or nonconforming building.

**1224.23.2 Specialized storage.** Specialized storage spaces shall include the following:

**1224.23.2.1 Linen.** Provide separate and enclosed facilities for clean and soiled linen in each nursing unit. The clean linen storage space shall have a minimum area of 10 square feet ( $0.93 \text{ m}^2$ ) and may be within the clean utility room. The soiled linen collection space shall have an area of no less than 10 square feet ( $0.93 \text{ m}^2$ ), except where linen chutes are provided, and may be within the soiled utility room.

**1224.23.2.2 Supply.** One supply storage space having a minimum area of 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be provided in each nursing unit. Supply storage may be

within the clean utility room used only as part of a system for distributing clean and sterile supplies.

**1224.23.2.3 Wheelchairs.** A room or space shall be provided in each nursing unit for wheelchairs and gurneys. The wheelchair and gurney space shall have a minimum area of 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1224.23.2.4 Sterile and unsterile supplies.** Sterile and unsterile supplies shall be stored separately.

**1224.23.2.5 Food storage.** Food storage shall be as described in Section 1224.20.

#### 1224.24 MORGUE AND AUTOPSY FACILITIES.

**1224.24.1 General acute-care hospitals with a licensed bed capacity of 50 or more beds shall provide a morgue with autopsy facilities.**

**Exception:** This may not be required if it can be demonstrated to the licensing agency that morgue and autopsy facilities are available locally.

**1224.24.2 Minimum requirements.** The morgue and autopsy space shall have a minimum of 250 square feet ( $23.23 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area, no dimension of which shall be less than 10 feet (3048 mm), and provide for:

1. Handwashing station.
2. Space for refrigerated compartments if human remains are held unembalmed. Refrigerated rooms and prefabricated body refrigerator temperatures shall not be higher than 45°F (25°C).

#### 1224.25 EMPLOYEE DRESSING ROOMS AND LOCKERS.

**1224.25.1 Minimum facilities.** Hospitals shall provide the following:

1. Separate dressing rooms for male and female personnel with lockers and a toilet room.
2. Additional dressing rooms for the surgical service and as required within any of the supplemental services.

**1224.26 HOUSEKEEPING ROOMS.** Shall be provided to serve each department and nursing unit, and may be shared by compatible departments, except when specifically required by other sections.

#### 1224.27 LAUNDRY.

**1224.27.1** If a laundry is to be provided, the following is required in addition to the laundry room:

1. A separate soiled linen receiving, holding and sorting room with handwashing fixture.
2. A separate clean linen storage, issuing and holding room.
3. Storage for laundry supplies.

**1224.27.2 Outside service.** If linen is processed off site, the following shall be provided within the hospital:

1. Soiled linen holding room.
2. Clean linen receiving room.
3. Clean linen storage room.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

### SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICES

**1224.28 SUPPLEMENTAL SURGERY AND SPECIAL PROCEDURE SERVICES.** When provided, the following supplemental surgery and special procedure services shall meet the requirements below:

**1224.28.1 Cardiovascular and other special procedures.**

When provided, the cardiovascular room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 650 square feet ( $60.39\text{ m}^2$ ), with a minimum of 20 feet (6096 mm) clear dimension. Orthopedic surgical and other special procedure rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 600 square feet ( $55.74\text{ m}^2$ ), with a minimum of 20 feet (6096 mm) clear dimension. When open-heart surgery is performed, an additional room in the restricted area of the surgical service space, that is directly accessible to this operating room, shall be designated as a pump room where extra corporeal pump(s), supplies and accessories are stored and serviced. Appropriate plumbing and electrical connections shall be provided in the cardiovascular, pump and storage rooms.

**1224.28.1.1 Service areas.** Shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.15.3.

**Exception:** Where renovation work is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, existing rooms for cardiovascular, and other special procedures may have a minimum clear floor area of 500 square feet ( $46.45\text{ m}^2$ ). Orthopedic surgical rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 360 square feet ( $33.44\text{ m}^2$ ) and a minimum dimension of 18 feet (5486 mm).

**1224.28.2 Cardiac catheterization.**

**1224.28.2.1 Procedure room.** A procedure room with a minimum clear floor area of 400 square feet ( $37.16\text{ m}^2$ ) for the procedure room in addition to spaces for control, monitoring and recording equipment and imaging equipment power and controls and a minimum of one scrub sink for each catheterization laboratory. This space does not include the control room.

**1224.28.2.1.1 Emergency response space.** Where electrophysiology studies are performed, dedicated space and equipment for emergency resuscitation and stabilization shall be immediately accessible to the procedure room.

**1224.28.2.2 Control room.** A control room or area shall be provided. A view window permitting full view of the patient from the control console shall be provided.

**1224.28.2.3 Equipment space.** An equipment space or enclosure large enough to contain imaging equipment transformers, power modules and associated electronics and electrical gear shall be provided.

**1224.28.2.4 Scrub facilities.** Scrub facilities with hands-free operable controls shall be provided adjacent to the entrance of procedure rooms.

**1224.28.2.5 Staff clothing change areas.** Appropriate areas shall be provided for male and female staff work-

ing within the surgical service space. The areas shall contain lockers, showers, toilets, handwashing stations and space for donning surgical attire. These areas shall be arranged to ensure a traffic pattern so that personnel entering from outside the service space can enter, change their clothing and move directly into the cardiac catheterization service space. The staff change area may be combined with the surgical staff change area.

**1224.28.2.6 Patient holding.** A patient preparation, holding, and recovery area or room shall be provided and arranged to provide visual observation before and after the procedure. This may occur in a unit outside of the catheterization service space.

**1224.28.2.7 Clean utility room.** A clean utility room shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter and handwashing station. If the room is used only for storage and holding of clean and sterile supply materials, the work counter and handwashing station shall be permitted to be omitted. The clean utility room may be shared with an adjacent surgical unit.

**1224.28.2.8 Soiled utility room.** A soiled utility room shall be provided which shall contain a handwashing station and a clinical sink (or equivalent flushing rim fixtures). When the room is used for temporary holding or soiled materials, the clinical sink and handwashing station shall be permitted to be omitted. The soiled utility may be shared with an adjacent surgical unit.

**1224.28.2.9 Housekeeping room.** Shall be a minimum floor area of 15 square feet ( $1.4\text{ m}^2$ ). It shall contain a service sink or floor receptor and provisions for storage of supplies and housekeeping equipment. This may be shared with an adjacent surgical unit.

**1224.28.3 Freestanding cardiac catheterization laboratory service space.** A general acute care hospital referenced in Health and Safety Code Section 1255 (d)(3)(E) may provide cardiac catheterization laboratory service in a freestanding nonhospital building in conformance with this section and Section 1226.2.2. In addition, the service space shall comply with Section 1224.28.2 and applicable requirements in Section 1224.15.3 that are not covered by this section.

**1224.28.3.1 Outpatient support areas.** Outpatient support areas shall include outpatient waiting rooms in compliance with Section 1224.4.5. A separate space shall be provided where outpatients change from street clothing and are prepared for a procedure. This space shall include provisions for clothing storage, toilet room(s), sink and an area for clothing change and gowning.

**1224.28.3.2 Connection to hospital.** The freestanding cardiac catheterization laboratory service space shall be located in the nonhospital building such that the service space has a direct connection to the general acute care hospital providing cardiac surgery by a patient corridor link in compliance with Section 1224.4.7. The corridor link shall have a minimum width of 8 feet

(2438 mm) as required under Section 1224.4.7.1. The corridor link shall connect to the hospital corridor system with access to all basic services as required under Section 1224.4.7.5.

**1224.28.3.3 Control station.** Control station(s) shall be located to permit visual observation of all traffic into the semi-restricted service space from unrestricted corridors and/or passageways.

**1224.28.3.4 Essential electrical system.** Cardiac catheterization laboratories shall meet the provisions for ambulatory surgical clinics required in the California Electrical Code including the requirements of Article 517.45 for an essential electrical system.

**1224.28.3.5 Services/systems and utilities.** Services/systems and utilities that support the catheterization laboratory space include, but are not limited to: normal power; emergency power; nurse call; communication and data systems; space heating systems; cooling systems; domestic hot and cold water systems; building drain and sewer systems; and medical gas systems. When these systems serve other portions of the building, any alteration to the system shall be subject to review by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development.

**1224.28.4 Interventional imaging.** Image-guided interventional procedures shall be performed in procedure rooms in compliance with this section. Cardiac catheterization operating rooms shall be in compliance with Section 1224.28.2, and hybrid operating rooms shall be in compliance with Section 1224.28.5.

**1224.28.4.1 Space requirements.** The procedure room shall meet the space, clearance and storage requirements for the imaging equipment contained in the room and the following:

1. A minimum clear dimension of 18 feet (5486 mm).
2. The procedure room shall also be sized to allow a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1219 mm) on all sides of the procedure table.

**1224.28.4.2 Pre-procedure and recovery.** Pre-procedure and recovery areas shall be immediately accessible to procedure rooms and separate from corridors. The pre-procedure and recovery areas shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.16 Anesthesia/recovery Service Space.

**1224.28.4.3 Interventional MRI facilities.** Interventional and intraoperative magnetic resonance imaging (I-MRI) procedure rooms shall comply with Section 1224.28.5 Hybrid Operating Rooms.

**1224.28.4.4 Control room or area.** A control room or area shall be provided.

1. The control room or area shall be sized to accommodate the image-recording and viewing equipment.
2. A shielded view window permitting direct observation of the patient from the control console shall be provided.

3. The shielded control room shall be configured to prevent radiation exposure into occupied areas of the control room when ionizing radiation modalities are used.

4. Where the procedure room requires positive (or negative) pressure, a door shall be provided between the control room and the procedure room or between the combined control room/procedure room and other adjacent space.

5. Where control functions for ionizing radiation exposures take place in the procedure room, storage for personal radiation protection devices shall be provided.

**1224.28.4.5 Scrub facilities.** Scrub sinks shall be located outside of sterile areas. A minimum of one scrub sink station shall be provided for each interventional imaging procedure room. Scrub sinks shall have water supply controls not requiring direct contact of the hands for operation.

**1224.28.4.6 Medication station.** A medication station shall be provided in compliance with the requirements in Section 1224.4.4.

**1224.28.4.7 Reading room.** A reading room for reviewing images shall be available for use by the interventional imaging suite.

**1224.28.4.8 Imaging equipment room.** Imaging equipment room or enclosures large enough to contain x-ray transformers, power modules and associated electronics and electrical gear shall be provided. Sharing of imaging equipment rooms by multiple procedure rooms is permitted.

**1224.28.4.9 Clean utility room.** A clean utility room shall be provided in accordance with the requirements in Section 1224.4.6.

**1224.28.4.10 Soiled workroom.** A soiled workroom shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.7.

**1224.28.4.11 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of Section 1224.4.15.

**1224.28.4.12 Staff changing areas.** Male and female staff changing areas shall be provided and arranged to ensure a traffic pattern so that personnel can enter from an unrestricted area, change their clothing and move directly into the interventional imaging suite.

**1224.28.5 Hybrid operating room(s).** Hybrid operating rooms shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.15 and comply with the requirements in this section.

**1224.28.5.1 Space requirements.** Each hybrid operating room shall meet the space, clearance and storage requirements for the imaging equipment contained in the room and the following:

1. A minimum clear floor area of 650 square feet ( $60.39\text{ m}^2$ ) is required for a hybrid operating room unless the imaging equipment requires a larger area.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

2. The minimum clear dimension shall be 24 feet (7315 mm) unless the requirements for the specific imaging equipment require a greater distance.
3. If mobile storage units are used in lieu of fixed cabinets, the minimum clear dimension shall be available between such units when they are parked against a permanent partition.

**1224.28.5.2 Control room.** If required, a control room shall be provided that accommodates the imaging system control equipment and the following requirements:

1. The control room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ), which may include fixed work surfaces.
2. The room shall be physically separated from the hybrid operating rooms with walls and a door.
3. The room shall have viewing windows that provide for a full view of the patient and the surgical team. Cameras shall be permitted to provide for full view of patient while positioned inside bore.
4. If the control room is adjacent to a restricted area, it must be physically separated from the restricted area with walls and a door.

**1224.28.5.3 Imaging equipment room.** An imaging equipment room shall be provided for each hybrid operating room.

**1224.28.5.4 Radiation protection.** If the imaging equipment emits ionizing radiation, protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.18.1.1.

**1224.28.5.5 Requirements for specific types of hybrid operating rooms.**

**1224.28.5.5.1 CT.** Hybrid operating rooms with intraoperative computerized tomography (CT) systems shall have control rooms that comply with Section 1224.18.3.1.

**1224.28.5.5.2 iMRI.** Hybrid operating rooms with intraoperative magnetic resonance imaging (iMRI) systems shall comply with the following:

1. Space and configuration requirements in Section 1224.18.4, except the clearances shall meet the requirements of 1224.28.5.1.
2. The control room shall comply with Section 1224.18.4, Item 1.
3. The anteroom shall comply with Section 1224.18.4, Item 2.
4. Entry doors to iMRI hybrid rooms shall swing outward from inside the room.

**1224.28.5.5.3 Vascular imaging.** Hybrid operating rooms with vascular imaging systems shall comply with Section 1224.28.4.

**1224.28.5.6 Pre-procedure and recovery.** Pre-procedure and recovery areas shall be immediately accessible to procedure rooms and separate from corridors. The pre-procedure and recovery areas shall comply

with the requirements of Section 1224.16 (Anesthesia/recovery Service Space).

**1224.28.6 Electroconvulsive Therapy.** If electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) is provided, the requirements of this section shall be met. Where a psychiatric unit is part of a general acute care hospital (Section 1224.31 Psychiatric Nursing Unit), all the requirements in this section shall be permitted to be accommodated in a procedure suite that complies with the requirements in this section or in an operating room in a surgical suite that meets the requirements in Section 1224.15.

**1224.28.6.1 General.** The ECT procedure area may be a single procedure room or a suite of procedure rooms.

**1224.28.6.2 ECT procedure room.**

1. **Space requirements.** Each ECT procedure room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum clear dimension of 14 feet (4267 mm).
2. **Handwashing station.** A handwashing station shall be provided.
3. **Documentation area.** Accommodation for written or electronic documentation shall be provided.

**1224.28.6.3 Pre-procedure and recovery area.** When ECT services have a low-volume of procedures, the ECT procedure room may be used for pre-procedure patient care and recovery. If a pre-procedure and recovery areas are provided they shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.16.

**1224.28.6.4 Emergency equipment storage.** Space shall be provided in the procedure room(s) for storage of emergency equipment such as a CPR cart. A separate emergency equipment storage is permitted to serve more than one ECT procedure room.

**1224.28.6.5 Patient support areas.** A waiting area and changing area shall be provided for outpatient use in perioperative areas in support ECT suites that provide outpatient procedures. The waiting room shall comply with Section 1224.4.5. The changing area shall include space for changing or gowning, provisions for storing patients' belongings during the procedure and access to patient toilet(s).

## 1224.29 INTENSIVE CARE UNITS.

**1224.29.1 General.** The following shall apply to all types of intensive care service spaces, acute respiratory-care service spaces, burn center spaces, critical-care units, coronary-care service spaces, pediatric intensive-care service spaces unless otherwise noted. Each unit shall comply with the following provisions:

**1224.29.1.1 Service space.** Each intensive-care unit shall contain not less than four or more than 12 beds.

**Exception:** When approved by the licensing agency a small or rural hospital intensive care unit may consist of less than four but not less than two patient beds.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1224.29.1.2 Patient space.** In new construction, each patient space (whether separate rooms, cubicles or multiple bed space) shall have a minimum of 200 square feet ( $18.58 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area with a minimum headwall width of 13 feet (3962 mm) per bed. There shall be a minimum clear dimension of 1 foot (305 mm) clear space from the head of the bed to the wall, a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) clear space from the foot of the bed to the wall, a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) clear space on one side of each bed for patient transfer, a minimum of 4 feet (1218 mm) clear width on the non-transfer side and a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) clear space between beds.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing intensive care units is undertaken, in facilities approved under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, existing patient space (whether separate rooms, cubicles or multiple bed space) may be renovated or replaced in kind one for one in the renovated space. Such patient space shall have no less than 132 square feet ( $12.26 \text{ m}^2$ ) with no dimension less than 11 feet (3353 mm), and with 4 feet (1219 mm) of clearance at each side and the foot of the bed, and with a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) between beds. The space shall be designed so that all beds shall be placed in relation to the nurse station or work area to permit, enable or allow maximum observance of patients.

**1224.29.1.3 Private rooms.** When private rooms or cubicles are provided, view panels to the corridor shall be required with a means to provide visual privacy. Where only one door is provided to a bed space, it shall be arranged to minimize interference with movement of beds and large equipment. Sliding doors shall not have floor tracks. Where sliding doors are used for access to cubicles within a service space, a 3-foot-wide (914 mm) swinging door may also be provided for personnel communication.

**1224.29.1.4 Modular toilet.** Modular toilet/sink combination units located within a privacy curtain may be used within each patient space or private room. The toilet fixture shall be completely contained within cabinetry when not in use. This fixture shall not be equipped with a bedpan washing attachment. Exhaust ventilation requirements shall comply with the California Mechanical Code.

**1224.29.1.5 Visitors and visual privacy.** Each patient bed area shall have space at each bedside for visitors, and provisions for visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors. For both adult and pediatric units, there shall be a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) between beds.

**1224.29.1.6 Outside environment.** Each patient bed shall have visual access, other than clerestory windows and skylights, to the outside environment with not less than one outside window in each patient bed area.

**1224.29.1.6.1 Distance.** The distance from the patient bed to the outside window shall not exceed

50 feet (15 240 mm). When partitioned cubicles are used, patients' view to outside windows may be through no more than two separate clear vision panels.

**1224.29.1.7 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to nurse stations and patient bed areas. There shall be at least one handwashing station for every three beds in open plan areas, and one in each patient room. The handwashing station shall be located near the entrance to the patient cubicle or room.

**1224.29.1.8 Nurse station.** This area shall have space for counters and storage. It may be combined with or include centers for reception and communication.

**1224.29.1.9 Nurses' work area.** There shall be direct visual observation between either a centralized or distributed nurse station or work station and the heads of all patient beds in the intensive care unit.

**1224.29.1.10 Monitoring.** Each unit shall contain equipment for continuous monitoring. Monitors shall be located to permit easy viewing but not interfere with access to the patient.

**1224.29.1.11 Emergency equipment storage.** Space that is easily accessible to the staff shall be provided for emergency equipment such as a CPR cart.

**1224.29.1.12 Medication station.** A medication station shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4. Refrigerated storage is required.

**1224.29.1.13 Airborne infection isolation room.** At least one airborne infection isolation room shall be provided per unit. The room shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.14.3; however, the adjoining toilet room is not required. Modular toilet units located within a privacy curtain may be used within the airborne infection isolation room. The modular toilet fixture shall comply with Section 1224.29.1.4.

**Exception:** When approved by the licensing agency an airborne infection isolation room is not required for small or rural hospitals or protected environment units.

**1224.29.1.14 Additional service spaces.** The following additional service spaces shall be immediately accessible within each intensive care service space. These may be shared by more than one intensive care unit provided that direct access is available from each.

**1224.29.1.14.1 Clean utility/workroom.** Clean utility/workroom shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.6.

**1224.29.1.14.2 Clean linen storage.** There shall be a designated area for clean linen storage. This may be within the clean utility room or a separate closet.

**1224.29.1.14.3 Soiled utility/workroom.** Soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.7.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1224.29.1.14.4 Nourishment area.** A nourishment area or room shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.5.

**1224.29.1.14.5 Ice machine.** Each unit shall have equipment to provide ice for treatments and nourishment. Ice-making equipment may be in the clean utility room or at the nourishment station. Ice intended for human consumption shall be from self-dispensing icemakers.

**1224.29.1.14.6 Equipment storage room.** Appropriate room(s) shall be provided for storage of large items of equipment necessary for patient care. Each intensive care unit shall provide not less than 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient bed.

**1224.29.1.15 Support.** The following shall be provided and shall be located immediately accessible to the unit:

1. **Visitors' waiting room.**
2. **Office space.**
3. **Staff lounge(s) and toilet room(s).**
4. **Multipurpose room(s).** Provide for staff, patients and patients' families for patient conferences, reports, education, training sessions and consultation.
5. **Housekeeping room.** Provide within or immediately adjacent to the intensive care unit. It shall not be shared with other nursing units or departments.
6. **Gurney and wheelchair storage.** Provide a minimum 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ mm}$ ) per each nursing unit.

**1224.29.2 Newborn intensive care units (NICU).** The NICU shall comply with all the requirements of Section 1224.29.1 except as supplemented, amended or modified below.

**1224.29.2.1 Entrance.** The NICU shall have a clearly identified entrance and reception area for families. The area shall permit visual observation and contact with all traffic entering the unit.

**1224.29.2.2 Handwashing station(s).** Provide one handwashing station for each four infants and for each major fraction thereof. In a multiple-bed room, every bed position shall be within 20 feet ( $6096 \text{ mm}$ ) of a handwashing station. Where an individual room concept is used, a handwashing station shall be provided within each infant care room.

**1224.29.2.3 Doors.** At least one door to each patient room shall be a minimum of 44 inches ( $1118 \text{ mm}$ ) wide.

**1224.29.2.4 View windows.** When viewing windows are provided, provision shall be made to control casual viewing of infants. Controls shall be provided to enable lighting to be adjusted over individual patient care spaces. Darkening sufficient for transillumination shall be available when necessary.

**1224.29.2.5 Control station.** A central area shall serve as a control station, and shall have space for counters

and storage, and direct access to a handwashing station. It may be combined with or include centers for reception, communication and patient monitoring.

**1224.29.2.6 Area.** Each patient care space shall contain a minimum of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per bassinet excluding handwashing fixtures and aisles with a minimum width of 11 feet ( $3353 \text{ mm}$ ) at headwall. There shall be an aisle for circulation adjacent to each patient care space with a minimum width of 4 feet ( $1219 \text{ mm}$ ). Where multi-patient rooms are used, a separate treatment area of 120 square feet ( $15.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be provided in compliance with Section 1224.4.4.1.2.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing NICUs is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, patient care areas shall have no less than 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per bassinet exclusive of space for nurse control, scrubbing and gowning and reception area.

**1224.29.2.6.1 Treatment area/room.** A treatment area/room, with temperature control, shall be provided immediately accessible to the general patient care space.

**1224.29.2.7 Ceilings.** Ceilings shall have a noise reduction coefficient (NRC) of at least 0.90.

**1224.29.2.8 Airborne infection isolation room.** Shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.29.1.13 except for separate toilet, bathtubs or shower. The room shall be enclosed and separated from the nursery unit with provisions for observation of the infant from adjacent nurseries or control area(s).

**1224.29.2.9 Lactation.** Space shall be provided for lactation support and consultation in or immediately adjacent to the NICU.

**1224.29.2.10 Infant formula facilities.** Nourishment area required under Section 1224.29.1.14.4 not required. Newborn intensive care units shall include infant formula facilities complying with the following requirements:

### 1224.29.2.10.1 Location.

1. Where infant formula is prepared on site, direct access from the formula preparation room to any infant care room is prohibited.
2. The formula preparation room shall be located in or adjacent to the NICU. The formula preparation room may be located at another location as approved by the Licensing Agency.

**1224.29.2.10.2 Formula preparation room.** The formula preparation room shall be securable, facilitate workflow that supports aseptic technique, and include the following:

1. A separate cleanup area for washing and sanitizing. This area shall include a handwashing station, a work counter and work space and

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

*equipment for washing, rinsing and sanitizing bottles, other feeding utensils and equipment.*

2. A separate area for preparing infant formula. This area shall contain a refrigerator, a freezer, a work counter, a formula sterilizer, storage facilities and a handwashing station.

**1224.29.2.10.3 Refrigerated storage and warming facilities for infant formula.** Shall be accessible for use by NICU personnel at all times.

**1224.29.2.10.4 Commercial infant formula.** Where only commercially prepared infant formula is used, omission of the formula preparation room may be permitted. Storage and handling may occur in the NICU workroom or in a formula preparation area adjacent to the nursing unit. The preparation area shall not have direct access to any infant care room and shall include the following:

1. A work counter
2. A hand-washing station
3. Storage facilities

**1224.29.2.10.5 Cleaning equipment and supplies storage.** Separate provisions for dedicated cleaning equipment and supplies shall be readily available to the formula preparation room and the formula preparation area.

**1224.29.2.11 Emergency equipment storage.** Space shall be provided for emergency equipment that is under direct control of the nursing staff, such as a CPR cart.

**1224.29.2.12 Housekeeping room.** Shall be directly accessible from the unit and be dedicated for the exclusive use of the neonatal intensive care unit.

**1224.29.2.13 Daylight.** In addition to meeting the requirements in Section 1224.4.9, at least one source of daylight shall be visible from newborn care areas.

1. External windows in infant care rooms shall be glazed with insulating glass to minimize heat gain or loss.
2. External windows in infant care rooms shall be situated at least 2 feet (610 mm) away from any part of a baby's bed to minimize radiant heat loss from the baby.
3. All external windows shall be equipped with easily cleaned shading devices that are neutral color or opaque to minimize color distortion from transmitted light.

**1224.30 PEDIATRIC AND ADOLESCENT UNIT.** A pediatric nursing unit shall be provided if the hospital has eight or more licensed pediatric beds. The unit shall meet the following standards:

**1224.30.1 Patient rooms.** Patient rooms shall have direct visual observation between either a centralized or distributed nurse station or workstation or by other means if

approved by licensing agency. Each patient room shall ||| meet the following standards:

**1224.30.1.1 Beds.** The space requirements for pediatric patient beds shall be the same as required by Section 1224.14.1.2.

**1224.30.1.2 Windows.** Each patient room shall have a window in accordance with Section 1224.4.9.

**1224.30.2 Examination room and treatment rooms.** An exam room and treatment room shall be provided in or adjacent to the pediatric unit for pediatric and adolescent patients. A separate area for infant examination and treatment may be provided within the pediatric nursery workroom.

**1224.30.3 Service areas.** The service areas in the pediatric and adolescent nursing units shall conform to Section 1224.14.2 and shall also provide the following:

**1224.30.3.1 Playroom.** A playroom shall be provided and have direct visual observation between either a centralized or distributed nurse station or workstation or by other means if approved by licensing agency.

**1224.30.3.2 Infant formula.** Space for preparation and storage of infant formula shall be provided immediately accessible to the unit.

**1224.30.3.3 Toilet rooms.** Patient toilet room(s) with a lavatory in each room, in addition to those serving bed areas, shall be located adjacent to play area(s) and in or directly accessible to each central bathing facility.

**1224.30.3.4 Storage.** Closets or cabinets for toys, educational and recreational equipment shall be provided.

**1224.30.3.5 Airborne infection isolation room.** At least one airborne infection isolation room shall be provided within each pediatric unit; minimum of one per 15 beds. Airborne infection isolation room(s) shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.14.3.

**1224.30.3.6 Clean and soiled workrooms.** Separate clean and soiled workrooms or holding rooms shall be provided as described in Sections 1224.14.2.6 and 1224.14.2.7.

## 1224.31 PSYCHIATRIC NURSING UNIT.

**1224.31.1 Psychiatric unit space.** A psychiatric unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall provide the following:

**1224.31.1.1 General.** A psychiatric nursing unit shall meet the requirements of Section 1224.14 for a unit that provides acute medical care or 1228.14 for a non-medical unit, in addition to the requirements of Section 1228.4, based on the functional program. Specific application shall respond to the patient injury and suicide prevention component of the Patient Safety Risk Assessment prepared under California Administrative Code (Part 1 of Title 24) Section 7-119. If a unit provides acute medical care, the unit shall be located in a building that is compliant with California Administrative Code Chapter 6 for OSHPD-1.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1224.31.1.2 Windows.** Windows modified to prevent patients from leaving the unit.

**1224.31.1.3 Access control.** Entrances and exits which may be locked if necessary.

**1224.31.1.4 Seclusion room(s).** Seclusion rooms shall be provided and comply with Section 1224.4.4.1.4.

**1224.31.1.5 Consultation room(s).** Used for interviewing patients.

**1224.31.1.6 Dining and recreation.** Provide spaces for dining and recreation. The total area for these purposes shall be not less than 30 square feet ( $2.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient.

**1224.31.1.7 Storage.** Storage closets or cabinets for recreational and occupation therapy equipment.

**1224.31.1.8 Exam or treatment room.** A room for physical examinations and medical treatment.

**1224.31.1.9 Activity spaces.** Indoor and outdoor space for therapeutic activities.

**1224.31.1.10 Occupational therapy.** Facilities for occupational therapy shall comply with Section 1224.35.3, Items 1, 2 and 3.

**1224.31.1.11 Recreation.** A recreation room with a minimum of 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) in each building, and on each floor of a building accommodating six or more psychiatric patients.

**1224.31.1.12 Nurse call.** Refer to Section 1224.4.6.5.

**1224.31.1.13 Privacy.** Visual privacy in multibed rooms (e.g., cubicle curtains) is not required.

**1224.31.1.14 Tamper resistant.** The ceiling and the air distribution devices, lighting fixtures, sprinkler heads and other appurtenances shall be of a tamper-resistant type.

**1224.31.1.15 Toilet rooms.** Each patient room shall be provided with a private toilet room that meets the following requirements:

1. The door shall not be lockable from within.
2. The door shall be capable of swinging outward.
3. The ceiling shall be of tamper-resistant construction and the air distribution devices, lighting fixtures, sprinkler heads and other appurtenances shall be of the tamper-resistant type.

**1224.31.1.16 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations located in patient rooms and patient toilet rooms may include anti-ligature features that do not compromise compliance with the hot and cold water supply controls, laminar flow and sink requirements of Section 210.0 and Table 4-2 of the California Plumbing Code. Handwashing stations within patient rooms and patient toilet rooms in psychiatric nursing units are not required to be equipped with gooseneck spouts and the discharge point may be less than 5 inches (127 mm) above the fixture rim.

**1224.31.1.17 Administrative center(s) or nurse station(s).** The distance between the nurse station's

entrance and the center of the doorway of the most remote patient bedroom shall not exceed 90 linear feet (27 432 mm). Refer to Section 1224.4.4.2.

**1224.31.2 Education.** If a unit treats children of school age over a period of one month or more, it shall provide physical facilities for an educational program, such as classrooms and an office for the teacher.

**1224.31.3 Service areas.** The standards noted in Section 1224.14.2 shall apply to service areas for psychiatric nursing units.

## 1224.32 OBSTETRICAL FACILITIES (PERINATAL UNIT SPACE)

**1224.32.1 General.** The obstetrical facility, including cesarean operating room(s) and delivery room(s), shall be located and designed to prohibit nonrelated traffic through the unit.

### 1224.32.2 Antepartum and postpartum unit

**1224.32.2.1 Patient bedrooms.** Antepartum and postpartum bedrooms shall comply with Section 1224.14.1.

**1224.32.2.2 Service areas.** Shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.14.2 with the following additions:

1. Staff lounge.
2. Staff storage. Lockable closets or cabinets for personal articles of staff.
3. Consultation/conference room(s).

**1224.32.3 Cesarean delivery and delivery service space.** When cesarean operating rooms are located in the obstetrical suite, access and service arrangements shall be such that neither staff nor patients are required to travel through the cesarean delivery area to access other services.

**1224.32.3.1 Cesarean delivery suite.** A minimum of one cesarean operating room shall be provided in the obstetrical unit, unless a surgical operating room is designated specifically for cesarean delivery procedures. The cesarean delivery suite shall include the following:

**1224.32.3.1.1 Cesarean operating room(s).** Provide a minimum clear floor area of 360 square feet ( $33.45 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum dimension of 16 feet (4877 mm). There shall be a minimum of one such room.

**1224.32.3.1.2 Scrub facilities.** Scrub sinks shall be located outside of sterile areas and meet the requirements of Section 1224.32.3.8.2.4.

**1224.32.3.1.3 Control/nurse station.** A control station shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.15.3.1 and shall be located to restrict unauthorized traffic into the suite.

**1224.32.3.1.4 Soiled workroom.** A soiled workroom shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.15.3.7.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1224.32.3.1.5 Housekeeping.** A housekeeping room shall be provided for the use of the cesarean delivery suite.

**1224.32.3.1.6 Perioperative support services.** Pre-operative patient holding and post-anesthesia recovery shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.16. Post-anesthesia care shall provide direct access to the cesarean surgical service space without crossing unrestricted corridors.

**1224.32.3.2 Delivery room(s).** At least one delivery room shall be provided in the obstetrical unit. Delivery rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 300 square feet ( $27.87 \text{ m}^2$ ). An emergency communication system shall be connected with the obstetrical facilities control station.

**1224.32.3.2.1 Postpartum bed ratio.** Delivery rooms, which are used for no other purpose, shall be provided at the ratio of one per 12 postpartum beds and for each major fraction thereof.

**Exceptions:**

1. If LDR or LDRP beds are provided, each LDR or LDRP may be counted as a delivery room in the postpartum bed ratio. This does not exempt the delivery room required per Section 1224.32.3.2.
2. When approved by the licensing agency, the operating room of small or rural hospitals with a licensed bed capacity of 50 or less may serve as the delivery room.

**1224.32.3.3 Clocks.** Shall be provided as follows:

1. A direct-wired or battery-operated clock with sweep second hand and lapsed time indicators in each cesarean operating and delivery room.
2. A direct-wired or battery-operated clock or other equivalent timing device, visible from the scrub-up sinks.

**1224.32.3.4 Surgical lights.** Provide a surgical light in each cesarean operating or delivery room.

**1224.32.3.5 Infant resuscitation.** Provide within cesarean operating rooms and delivery rooms a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) in addition to the required area of each room or may be provided in a separate but immediately accessible room with a clear floor area of 150 square feet ( $13.94 \text{ m}^2$ ). Six single or three duplex electrical outlets shall be provided for the infant in addition to the facilities required for the mother.

**1224.32.3.6 Labor room(s) (LDR or LDRP rooms may be substituted).** Where LDRs or LDRPs are not provided, a minimum of two labor beds shall be provided for each cesarean operating room. Each room shall be designed for either one or two beds with a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed. Each labor room shall contain a handwashing station and have access to a toilet room. One toilet room may serve two labor rooms. Labor rooms shall have con-

trolled access with doors that are arranged for observation from a nursing station. At least one shower (which may be separate from the labor room if under staff control) for use of patients in labor shall be provided. Windows in labor rooms, if provided, shall be located, draped or otherwise arranged, to preserve patient privacy from casual observation from outside the labor room.

**Exception:** Where renovation of labor rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, existing labor rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed.

**1224.32.3.7 Recovery room(s) (LDR or LDRP rooms may be substituted).** Each recovery room shall contain at least two patient care stations and have a nurse station, with charting facilities, located to permit visual observation of all beds. Each room shall include a handwashing station and a medication station. A clinical sink with bedpan flushing device shall be directly accessible, as shall storage for supplies and equipment. Provide visual privacy of the new family.

**1224.32.3.8 Service areas.** Individual rooms shall be provided as indicated in the following standards; otherwise, alcoves or other open spaces that do not interfere with traffic may be used.

**1224.32.3.8.1 Services.** The following services shall be provided:

1. Control/nurse station. This shall be located to restrict unauthorized traffic into the service space.
2. Soiled workroom or soiled holding room. See Section 1224.4.4.7.
3. Fluid waste disposal.

**1224.32.3.8.2 Shared services.** The following services shall be provided and may be shared with the surgical facilities. Where shared, areas shall be arranged to avoid direct traffic between the delivery and operating rooms.

**1224.32.3.8.2.1 Supervisor's office or station.** Office or station shall be a minimum of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) and have a desk.

**1224.32.3.8.2.2 Waiting room.** This room shall have toilet rooms, telephone(s) and drinking fountains that are immediately accessible. The toilet rooms shall contain a lavatory.

**1224.32.3.8.2.3 Drug distribution station.** The drug distribution station shall have a handwashing station and provisions for controlled storage, preparation and distribution of medication.

**1224.32.3.8.2.4 Scrub facilities for cesarean operating or delivery rooms(s).** Two positions shall be provided adjacent to entrance to the first cesarean operating room. Provide one additional scrub sink per cesarean or delivery operating room. Scrub facilities shall be arranged to mini-

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*mize any splatter on nearby personnel or supply carts. In new construction, provide view windows at scrub stations to permit the observation of room interiors.*

**1224.32.3.8.2.5 Clean utility room.** A clean utility room shall be provided if clean materials are assembled within the obstetrical service space prior to use. If a clean utility room is provided see Section 1224.4.4.6.

**1224.32.3.8.2.6 Storage.**

1. Clean sterile storage area readily accessible to the delivery room.
2. Equipment storage room(s) for equipment and supplies used in the obstetrical service space.

**1224.32.3.8.2.7 Workroom.** An anesthesia workroom for cleaning, testing and storing anesthesia equipment. It shall contain a work counter, sink and provisions for separation of clean and soiled items.

**1224.32.3.8.2.8 Male and female staff clothing change areas.** The clothing change area shall be designed to ensure a traffic pattern so that personnel entering from unrestricted area outside the delivery service space enter, change their clothing and move directly into the delivery service semi-restricted area, and eliminate cross-traffic between clean and contaminated personnel. The area shall contain lockers, showers, toilets, handwashing stations and space for donning and disposing scrub suits and booties.

**1224.32.3.8.2.9 Staff lounge.** Lounge and toilet room facilities for obstetrical staff shall be readily accessible to cesarean operating rooms(s), delivery room(s), labor rooms(s) and recovery room(s). Each toilet room shall contain a handwashing station.

**1224.32.3.8.2.10 On-call room.** An on-call room(s) for physician and/or staff shall be provided, but may be located elsewhere in the facility.

**1224.32.3.8.2.11 Housekeeping room.**

**1224.32.4 LDR and LDRP facilities.**

**1224.32.4.1 Location.** LDR room(s) may be located in a separate LDR service space or as part of the cesarean/delivery service space. The postpartum unit may contain LDRP rooms.

**1224.32.4.2 Space requirements.** These rooms shall have a minimum of 250 square feet ( $23.23 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area with a minimum dimension of 13 feet (3962 mm). There shall be space for crib and sleeping space for support person. An area within the room but distinct from the mother's area shall be provided for infant stabilization and resuscitation. The medical gas outlets shall be located in the room so that they are accessible to the mother's delivery area and infant resuscitation area.

**1224.32.4.3 Occupancy.** Each LDR or LDRP room shall be for single occupancy.

**1224.32.4.4 Shower or tub.** Each LDR or LDRP room shall have direct access to a private toilet room with shower or tub.

**1224.32.4.5 Handwashing stations.** Each LDR or LDRP room shall be equipped with handwashing stations.

**1224.32.5 Newborn/well baby nurseries**

**1224.32.5.1 General.** Infants shall be housed in nurseries that comply with the standards below. All nurseries shall be immediately accessible to the postpartum unit and obstetrical facilities. The nurseries shall be located and arranged to preclude the need for unrelated pedestrian traffic. No nursery shall open directly onto another nursery. Each nursery shall contain the following:

**1224.32.5.1.1 Handwashing stations.** At least one handwashing station shall be provided for each six infant bassinets.

**1224.32.5.1.2 Storage.** Storage for linens and infant supplies at each nursery room.

**1224.32.5.1.3 Lactation.** A consultation/demonstration/breast feeding or pump room shall be provided in a location that is readily accessible to the nursery. Provisions shall be made, either within the room or immediately accessible to the room, for a sink, counter, refrigeration and freezing, storage for pump and attachments and educational materials. This area may be shared between units.

**1224.32.5.1.4 Workroom(s).** Each nursery shall be served by a connecting workroom. The workroom shall contain gowning facilities at the entrance for staff and housekeeping personnel, work counter, refrigerator, storage for supplies and a handwashing station. One workroom may serve more than one nursery room provided that required services are convenient to each. Adequate provision shall be made for storage of emergency cart(s) and equipment out of traffic and for the sanitary storage and disposal of soiled waste.

**1224.32.5.1.5 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room shall be provided for the exclusive use of the nursery unit. It shall be directly accessible from the unit.

**1224.32.5.1.6 Charting space.** Charting facilities shall have linear surface space to ensure that staff and physicians may chart and have simultaneous access to information and communication systems.

**1224.32.5.2 Space requirements.** Each newborn nursery room shall contain no more than 16 infant stations. Nurseries shall provide a minimum of 25 square feet ( $2.32 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per bassinet, with at least 3 feet (914 mm) between bassinets and at least 6 inches (152 mm) from a wall.

**1224.33 EMERGENCY SERVICE.**

**1224.33.1 Definition.** Levels of emergency care range from initial emergency management as Standby Emergency Medical Service, with a Physician on call; to definitive emergency care as Basic Emergency Medical Service, with a Physician on duty; to a Comprehensive Emergency Medical Service as an Emergency Department.

**1224.33.2 Standby Emergency Medical Service.** If provided, initial emergency management shall be provided in a specifically designated area of the hospital which shall include the following elements:

**1224.33.2.1 Exterior entrance.** A well-marked, illuminated and covered entrance, at grade level. The emergency vehicle entry cover shall provide shelter for both the patient and the emergency medical crew during transfer from an emergency vehicle into the building. This exterior entrance shall not be substituted for the required accessible entrance to the hospital, protected from the weather by canopy or roof overhang assigned for passengers loading zone. Ambulance entrances shall provide a minimum of 6 feet (183 mm) in clear width to accommodate bariatric stretchers, mobile patient lift devices and accompanying attendants. Reception shall be located to permit staff observation and control of access to treatment area, pedestrian and ambulance entrances and public waiting area.

**1224.33.2.2 Treatment room.** Standby emergency service shall include at least one treatment room with the following elements:

1. The area shall not be less than 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area, exclusive of toilet room(s), waiting area and storage.
2. Each treatment room shall contain an examination light, work counter and handwashing station.
3. Medical equipment, cabinets, medication storage and counter space for writing.
4. The dimensions and arrangement of treatment rooms shall be such that there is a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) between the sides and foot of the bed/gurney and any wall or any other fixed obstruction. The treatment room may have additional space and provisions for several patients with cubicle curtains for privacy.
5. Multiple-station treatment rooms shall provide a minimum of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient gurney, with a minimum 8 foot width (2,438 mm) and 3 feet (914 mm) at the foot of the bed/gurney, with a minimum of 3 feet to any wall or fixed obstruction, and a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) between patient gurneys. Patient gurneys shall be separated from adjoining patient care stations by curtains. A minimum width of 6 feet (1829 mm) of access/circulation outside the curtain shall be provided. Handwashing stations shall be provided for each four treatment stations and for each major fraction

thereof in multiple-station areas. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing treatment rooms is undertaken in facilities approved under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, existing treatment rooms may be renovated, or replaced in kind one for one in the renovated space. Such treatment rooms shall have no less than 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area, the least dimension of which shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**1224.33.2.3 Storage.** Equipment and supply storage shall be provided and be sized for general medical/surgical emergency supplies, medications and equipment such as ventilator, defibrillator, splints, etc. This storage shall be located in an alcove or room, out of corridor or hallway traffic and under staff control.

**1224.33.2.4 Lobby.** Provisions for reception, control and public waiting, including a public toilet room(s) with handwashing fixture(s) and public telephone.

**1224.33.2.5 Toilet room(s).** Patient toilet room(s) with handwashing station(s) shall be immediately accessible to the treatment room(s).

**1224.33.2.6 Communication.** Communication connections to the Poison Control Center and local EMS system shall be provided.

**1224.33.2.7 Observation area.** A patient station with a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be provided under the visual control of an emergency service staff work area. The patient station shall have space at bedside for visitors and shall have provision for visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors. The dimensions and arrangement of rooms with multiple beds/gurneys shall be such that there is a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) between the sides and any wall or any other fixed obstruction. A minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between beds, and a clearance of 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be available at the foot of each bed to permit the passage of equipment and beds. A handwashing station shall be located in each room, and at least one handwashing station shall be provided for every four patient stations, and for each major fraction thereof, in open-bay areas. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station.

**Exception:** For small and rural hospitals, the observation area need not be dedicated solely for that purpose.

**1224.33.2.8 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** If provided, the airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

**1224.33.3 Basic Emergency Medical Service.** When 24-hour basic emergency service is to be provided, at a minimum, all the provisions of Standby Emergency Service

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*under Section 1224.33.2 and the following shall be provided:*

**1224.33.3.1 Exterior entrance.** In addition to the requirements of Section 1224.33.2.1 the emergency entrance shall have direct access from public roads for ambulance and vehicle traffic conforming with the requirements of the local authorities having jurisdiction. Entrance and driveway shall be clearly marked. If a raised platform is used for ambulance discharge, provide a ramp for pedestrian and wheelchair access.

**1224.33.3.2 Patient access.** Paved emergency access shall be provided to permit discharge of patients from automobiles and ambulances, and temporary parking convenient to the entrance.

**1224.33.3.3 Reception, triage and control station(s).** This area shall be located to permit staff observation and control of access to treatment areas, pedestrian and ambulance entrances and public waiting area.

**1224.33.3.4 Wheelchair and gurney storage.** Storage for wheelchairs and gurneys for arriving patients shall be located out of circulation paths with access to emergency entrances.

**1224.33.3.5 Public waiting area.** A public waiting area shall be provided in compliance with Section 1224.4.5 and include provision of public toilet room(s), drinking fountains and telephone adjacent to the waiting area, dedicated to, and within, the Emergency Service Space.

**1224.33.3.6. Examination and treatment room(s).** Examination and treatment rooms shall meet the requirements under Section 1224.33.2.2.

**1224.33.3.7 Trauma/cardiac rooms.** These rooms are for emergency procedures, including emergency surgery, and shall have at least 250 square feet ( $23.23 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor space. A minimum clearance of 5 feet (152 mm) shall be provided around all sides of the procedure table or gurney. Each room shall have cabinets and emergency supply shelves, image viewing capability, examination lights and counter space for writing. Additional space with cubicle curtains for privacy may be provided to accommodate more than one patient at a time in the trauma room with a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet ( $18.58 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each patient bay defined by the privacy curtains. There shall be storage provided for immediate access to attire used for universal precautions. Doors leading from the ambulance entrance to the cardiac trauma room shall have an opening with a minimum width of 5 feet (1524 mm). At least one scrub sink shall be located outside the entrance to each trauma room. One scrub station consisting of two scrub positions is permitted to serve two trauma rooms if located adjacent to the entrance of each procedure room. The placement of scrub sinks shall not restrict the minimum required corridor width. If a handwashing station is provided within the trauma room, it does not satisfy the requirement for a scrub sink. The handwashing station shall have a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) clearance from the procedure table

and not located between any curtained procedure area and the entrance to a multi-bay trauma room.

**1224.33.3.8 Orthopedic and cast work.** At least one orthopedic or cast room shall be provided within the emergency service space. Provisions shall include storage for splints and other orthopedic supplies, traction hooks, image viewing capability and examination lights. If a sink is used for the disposal of plaster of paris, a plaster trap shall be provided. The clear floor space for this area shall be a minimum of 180 square feet ( $16.7 \text{ m}^2$ )

**1224.33.3.9 Poison Control Center and EMS communications center.** Communication connections shall be provided as required under Section 1224.33.2.6. The communications center may be a part of the staff work and charting area.

**1224.33.3.10 Emergency equipment storage space.** Equipment and supply storage shall be provided as required under Section 1224.33.2.3.

**1224.33.3.11 Patients' toilet room.** A patient toilet room with a lavatory shall be immediately accessible to the treatment room(s). Where there are more than eight treatment stations, a minimum of two toilet rooms, with a lavatory in each toilet room, shall be required.

**1224.33.3.12 Storage.** Provide rooms for clean, soiled or used supplies.

**1224.33.3.12.1 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room.** See Section 1224.4.4.7. This room is for the exclusive use of the emergency service space.

**1224.33.3.12.2 Clean utility room.** See Section 1224.4.4.6.

**1224.33.3.13 Administrative center or nurse station for staff work and charting.** These areas shall have space for counters, cabinets and shall be provided with handwashing stations. They may be combined with or include centers for reception and communication.

**1224.33.3.14 Medication preparation room.** A minimum of one medication preparation room shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.4.4.4.1. Self-contained medication dispensing units may be provided in addition.

**1224.33.3.15 Staff lounge.** A staff lounge shall be located within the Emergency Department and include staff clothing change areas with lockers, showers, toilets and handwashing stations for male and female staff.

**1224.33.3.16 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room, compliant with Section 1224.4.15, shall be located within the unit and dedicated to the emergency service space.

**1224.33.3.17 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** If provided shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

**1224.33.3.18 Secured holding room.** When a secure holding room is provided, it shall meet the following requirements. The location of the secure holding

room(s) shall facilitate staff observation and monitoring of patients in these areas. The secure holding room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet (5.57 square meters) with a minimum wall length of 7 feet (2.13 meters) and a maximum wall length of 11 feet (3.35 meters). This room shall be designed to prevent injury to patients:

1. All finishes, light fixtures, vents, diffusers and fire protection/alarm components shall be tamper resistant and ligature resistant.
2. There shall not be any electrical outlets, medical gas outlets or similar devices.
3. There shall be no sharp corners, edges or protrusions, and the walls shall be free of objects or accessories of any kind.
4. Patient room doors shall swing out and shall have hardware on the exterior side of the door only. The minimum width shall be 44 inches (1120 mm).
5. A small impact-resistant view panel or window shall be provided in the door for discreet staff observation of the patient.

**1224.33.4 Comprehensive Emergency Medical Service.** When 24-hour comprehensive emergency service is to be provided, an Emergency Department shall be provided. At a minimum, all the provisions of Stand-by Emergency Service under Section 1224.33.2, the provisions of Basic Emergency Service under Section 1224.33.3, and all of the following shall be provided:

**1224.33.4.1 Triage stations.** In addition to the requirements of Section 1224.33.3.3, the triage area shall include triage station(s) with the following minimum requirements:

1. 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) minimum clear floor area for each private triage room and 80 square feet (7.4 m<sup>2</sup>) minimum clear floor area for each station in open-bay triage areas.
2. Provisions for patient privacy.
3. Handwashing station in each triage room. In open-bay triage areas, one handwashing station shall be provided for every four triage stations.
4. Immediate access to emergency call and code call stations.
5. Medical gas outlets for triage areas in compliance with Table 1224.4.6.1.

**1224.33.4.2 Fast-track area.** A fast-track area may be used for treating patients presenting simple and less serious conditions. If a fast-track area is provided, it shall meet the following requirements:

1. Space requirements – each fast-track station shall have a minimum 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) of clear floor area.
2. Each station shall include a handwashing station, work/documentation counter, examination table light.

### 3. Storage areas for supplies and medication.

4. A separate procedure room may be provided. It shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet (11.15 m<sup>2</sup>).

**1224.33.4.3 Pre-screening stations.** A pre-screening area may be used prior to admission to the Emergency Department. If pre-screening is provided, each station must have a minimum of 80 square feet (7.4 m<sup>2</sup>) of clear floor area, a handwashing station, documentation counter and a storage cabinet. In open bay pre-screening areas, one handwashing station shall be provided for every four patient stations. Pre-screening stations, whether private rooms or open bays, are considered a part of the waiting area and must meet the same ventilation requirements.

**1224.33.4.4 Diagnostic service areas.** Radiological/Imaging services shall be readily accessible. The Emergency Department shall be supported by Clinical Laboratory services. A STAT lab may be provided within the emergency medical service space in addition to more comprehensive support provided by the Clinical Lab.

**1224.33.4.5 On-call room(s).** Provisions shall be made to accommodate on-call sleeping room(s) for physicians and/or medical staff within the Emergency Department.

**1224.33.4.6 Police and press room.** Provisions shall be made to accommodate police briefing/debriefing and press releases. This may be located outside the Emergency Department.

### 1224.33.5 Other space considerations.

**1224.33.5.1 Observation units.** Observation rooms for the monitoring of patients up to 24 hours may be provided as a distinct unit within the emergency department. If provided the unit shall have the following:

1. Handwashing stations shall be provided in each patient room and for each four treatment stations, and for each major fraction thereof. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station. Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to nurse stations and patient care areas.
2. Each patient station shall provide space at each bedside for visitors and provision for visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors. Single station rooms shall have a minimum of 120 square feet (11.15 m<sup>2</sup>) of clear floor area. Multiple-station rooms shall provide a minimum of 80 square feet (7.43 m<sup>2</sup>) per patient station with a minimum 8-foot width (2438 mm). A minimum distance of 3 feet (914 mm) between the sides and any wall or any other fixed obstruction shall be provided. A minimum distance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between beds and 4 feet (1219 mm) at the foot of each bed to permit the passage of equipment and beds.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

- Patient gurneys shall be separated from adjoining patient stations by curtains.
3. One toilet room shall be provided for each six treatment stations and for each major fraction thereof.
  4. An administrative center/nurse station, in compliance with Section 1224.4.4.2, positioned to allow staff to observe each patient care station or room.
  5. A nourishment area in compliance with Section 1224.4.4.5.

### **1224.34 NUCLEAR MEDICINE**

**1224.34.1 General.** If nuclear medicine is provided, the following shall be provided:

**1224.34.1.1 Radiation protection.** A certified physicist shall specify the type, location and amount of radiation protection to be installed in accordance with final approved department layout and equipment selection. A physicist report shall also address dosing areas and circulation paths of dosed patients, including within multi-bay scanner rooms. Radiation protection requirements shall be incorporated into the construction documents and comply with Chapter 31C and the requirements of California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, and Subchapter 4.

**1224.34.1.2 Nuclear medicine room.** Shall be sized to accommodate the equipment and a gurney.

When provided, the following facilities shall meet the requirements below:

**1224.34.1.2.1 Scintigraphy (Gamma Camera) Facilities.** Shall include the following:

1. Scanner room. The scanner room shall provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1218 mm) at each side and the foot of the table.
2. Handwashing stations shall be provided throughout the gamma camera suite at locations of patient contact and at locations where radiopharmaceutical materials are handled, prepared or disposed of.

**1224.34.1.2.2 Positron Emission Tomography (PET).** Shall include the following:

1. Scanner room shall provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1218 mm) at each side and the foot of the table. Additional space shall be provided when PET is combined with CT, and include compliance with Section 1224.18.3 and shielding requirements in Section 1224.34.1.1.
2. Cyclotron room. Where radiopharmaceuticals are prepared on-site, a cyclotron shall be provided. Cyclotron facilities shall be located in access-restricted areas. Shielding require-

ments for cyclotron facilities shall comply with Section 1224.34.1.1.

3. Control room. A control room shall be provided with a full direct view of the patient in the PET scanner.
4. Patient uptake/cool-down room. A shielded room with access to a dedicated patient toilet, to accommodate radioactive waste, and lavatory shall be provided.
5. Handwashing stations shall be provided throughout the PET suite at locations of patient contact and at locations where radiopharmaceutical materials are handled, prepared or disposed of.
6. Pre-procedure patient care and recovery area shall be provided to accommodate at least two stretchers. This area shall comply with Section 1224.34.2.6.
7. Imaging equipment room shall be provided in support of the equipment provided.
8. Contaminated (hot) soiled holding shall be provided and operationally integrated to minimize incidental exposure to ionizing radiation.

**1224.34.1.2.3 Single-Photon Emission Computed Tomography (SPECT) Facilities.** When provided shall include the following:

1. Scanner room shall provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1218 mm) at each side and the foot of the table. Additional space shall be provided when SPECT is combined with CT, and include compliance with Section 1224.18.3 and shielding requirements in Section 1224.34.1.1.
2. A control room shall be provided with a full view of the patient in the SPECT scanner.
3. Imaging equipment room shall be provided in support of the equipment provided.
4. Handwashing stations shall be provided throughout the SPECT suite at locations of patient contact and at locations where radiopharmaceutical materials are handled, prepared or disposed of.

**1224.34.1.3 Radiopharmacy.** If radiopharmaceutical preparation is performed, an area adequate to house a radiopharmacy shall be provided with appropriate shielding. This area shall include adequate space for storage of radionuclides, chemicals for preparation, dose calibrators and record keeping. If preprepared materials are used, storage and calculation area may be considerably smaller than that for on-site preparation. Space shall provide adequately for dose calibration, quality assurance and record keeping. The area may still require shielding from other portions of the facilities.

**1224.34.2 Support areas for nuclear medicine services.** The nuclear medicine area shall provide the following support areas. If nuclear medicine is provided within the imaging department, compatible areas may be shared with other imaging modalities:

**1224.34.2.1 Entrance.** Space shall be adequate to permit entry of gurneys, beds, and able to accommodate imaging equipment, electronic consoles, and if present, computer terminals.

**1224.34.2.2 Cleanup.** Provisions for cleanup shall be located within the service space and be readily accessible. They shall include a service sink or floor receptacle as well as storage space for equipment and supplies.

**1224.34.2.3 Consultation.** A consultation area may be provided.

**1224.34.2.4 Waiting.** Waiting areas shall be provided out of traffic, under staff control. If the department is routinely used for outpatients and inpatients at the same time, separate waiting areas shall be provided with screening or visual privacy between the waiting areas.

**1224.34.2.5 Dose administration area.** Provide a dose administration area that is immediately accessible to the preparation area. Since as much as several hours may elapse for the dose to take effect, the area shall provide for visual privacy from other areas.

**1224.34.2.6 Pre-procedure/holding area.** A pre-procedure/holding area for patients on gurneys or beds shall be provided out of traffic and under control of staff and may be combined with the dose administration area with visual privacy between the areas.

**1224.34.2.7 Patient dressing rooms.** Patient dressing rooms shall be immediately accessible to the waiting area and procedure rooms. Each dressing room shall include a seat or bench, a mirror, and provisions for hanging patients' clothing and for securing valuables.

**1224.34.2.8 Patient toilet room(s).** Patient toilet rooms shall be reserved for nuclear medicine patients and shall be immediately accessible to waiting and procedure rooms.

**1224.34.2.9 Staff toilet rooms.** Staff toilet rooms shall be readily accessible to the nuclear medicine laboratory.

**1224.34.2.10 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be located within each procedure room.

**1224.34.2.11 Control desk and reception.**

**1224.34.2.12 Storage area for clean linen.**

**1224.34.2.13 Soiled and contaminated material.** Provisions with handwashing stations shall be made for holding soiled material. Separate provisions shall be made for holding contaminated material.

**1224.34.2.14 Hot lab for scintigraphy (gamma camera), PET and SPECT facilities.** A securable area or

room shall be provided in which radiopharmaceuticals can be safely stored and doses can be calculated and prepared.

1. A single hot lab shall be permitted to serve multiple scanners and nuclear medicine modalities.
2. The hot lab shall be shielded in compliance with Section 1224.34.1.1.
3. A source storage area, a dose area and a storage area for syringe shields shall be provided.

#### **1224.34.3 Radiotherapy service space.**

**1224.34.3.1 Radiation therapy space.** If radiation therapy is provided, the following shall be accommodated:

1. Patient reception and waiting areas.
2. Space for medical and physics staff functions.
3. Space for equipment and supplies.
4. Housekeeping room.
5. Direct access to space provided for radiation measurement and calibration equipment, including a calibration constancy instrument and access to a secondary standard dose meter.
- 5.1. A megavoltage treatment unit capable of delivering x-rays or gamma rays of effective energy 500 KeV or more and conforming to the requirements of Chapter 31C and the California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, Subchapter 4.
- 5.2. Access to a medium voltage or superficial treatment unit delivering 500 KeV or less, but otherwise having the same functional characteristics as the above mega-voltage units and conforming to the requirements of Chapter 31C and the California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, Subchapter 4.
- 5.3. Direct access to space provided for brachytherapy equipment which shall meet the requirements of Chapter 31C and the California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, Subchapter 4.
- 5.4. Shielding of the rooms shall meet the requirements of Chapter 31C and the California Radiation Control Regulations. California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5, Subchapter 4.

**1224.34.3.2 Radiation protection.** Cobalt, linear accelerators, hot lab and high dose rate brachytherapy rooms and simulation rooms require radiation protection. All rooms that provide radiation treatment shall be appropriately shielded. A certified physicist shall specify the type, location and amount of protection to be installed in accordance with final approved department layout and equipment selection. Radiation protec-

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

tion requirements shall be incorporated into the construction documents and comply with Chapter 31C and the requirements of California Radiation Control Regulations, California Code of Regulations, Title 17, Division 1, Chapter 5 and Subchapter 4.

**1224.34.3.3 Room sizes.** Rooms shall be sized as follows:

1. Cobalt rooms and linear accelerators shall be sized in accordance with equipment requirements and shall accommodate a gurney for litter borne patients. Layouts shall provide for preventing the escape of radioactive particles. Openings into the room, including doors, ductwork, vents and electrical raceways and conduits, shall be baffled to prevent direct exposure to other areas of the facility.
2. Simulator, accelerator and cobalt rooms shall be sized to accommodate the equipment with patient access on a gurney, medical staff access to the equipment and patient, and service access.
3. Where a table is used, the room shall be sized to provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1218 mm) on three sides of the table to facilitate bed transfer and provide access to the patient. The door swing shall not encroach on the equipment space, patient circulation space or transfer space.
4. Minimum room size shall be 260 square feet ( $24.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) for the simulator room; 680 square feet ( $63.17 \text{ m}^2$ ), including the maze, for accelerator rooms; 200 square feet ( $18.58 \text{ m}^2$ ) for brachytherapy rooms; and 450 square feet ( $41.81 \text{ m}^2$ ) for cobalt rooms.

**1224.34.3.4 General support area.** The following areas shall be provided:

1. A gurney hold area adjacent to the treatment rooms, screened for privacy and combined with a seating area for outpatients.
2. Exam or treatment room shall be provided with a minimum of 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ) with a minimum dimension of 8 feet (2438 mm). Each exam room shall be equipped with a handwashing station.

### Exceptions:

1. Where renovation of existing treatment rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2001 or prior California Building Code, treatment rooms shall have no less than 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area.
2. Darkroom is optional. If provided, shall be readily accessible to the treatment room(s).
3. Patient gowning area with provision for safe storage of valuables and clothing and with direct access to toilet room(s). At least

one space shall be large enough for staff-assisted dressing.

4. Film files area is optional. If provided shall have storage for unprocessed film.

**1224.34.4 Additional support areas for linear accelerator.**

**1224.34.4.1 Mold room with exhaust hood and hand-washing fixture.**

**1224.34.4.2 Block room with storage.** The block room may be combined with the mold room.

**1224.34.5 Additional support areas for cobalt room.**

**1224.34.5.1 Hot lab.** A hot lab shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.34.2.14.

**1224.34.6 Radiosurgery suite.** If radiosurgery (gamma knife/cyber knife) is provided, the following shall be provided:

**1224.34.6.1 General.** The radiosurgery suite shall be located near the imaging services suite to facilitate image acquisition prior to radiosurgery treatment. Location of gamma knife or cyber knife treatment rooms in a radiation therapy suite shall be permitted.

**1224.34.6.2 Radiosurgery treatment rooms.** Radiosurgery (gamma knife/cyber knife) treatment rooms shall provide a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1218 mm) shall be provided on all sides of the treatment table/chair. The door shall not encroach on the equipment or on patient circulation or transfer space. A handwashing station shall be provided in each radiosurgery treatment room.

**1224.34.6.3 Pre-procedure/recovery accommodations.** If provided, pre-procedure/recovery patient care stations shall meet the following requirements:

1. Pre-procedure and recovery area(s) shall be immediately accessible to procedure rooms and separate from corridors. The pre-procedure and recovery patient area or room shall be arranged to permit visual observation of the patient by staff before and after the procedure. Bays, cubicles or single-bed rooms shall be permitted to serve as patient care stations.
2. Area. Where open bays are used, each patient care station shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ).
3. Clearances. Each bay or cubicle shall have a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) between walls or partitions and the sides and foot of gurneys or patient beds. Each bay shall have a minimum clearance of 4 feet (1218 mm) between sides of gurneys or patient beds. A minimum width of 6 feet (1829 mm) of access/circulation outside the curtain shall be provided.
4. Patient privacy. Provisions such as cubicle curtains shall be provided for patient privacy.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

5. Handwashing station. A handwashing station shall be provided within the pre-procedure/recovery area.

**1224.34.6.4 Support areas for radiosurgery treatment rooms.** The following shall be provided:

1. Space for sterilization of head-frames.
2. Area for target planning.
3. Medication station.
4. Nourishment area.
5. Head-frame storage.
6. Toilet room(s) for patients, staff and the public.
7. Area for sedation of pediatric patients.

**1224.35 REHABILITATION THERAPY DEPARTMENT.**

Where two or more rehabilitation services are provided, facilities and equipment between services may be shared. Rehabilitation therapy services may be provided as part of a dedicated inpatient nursing unit in a rehabilitation center or as outpatient services, or both.

**1224.35.1 Rehabilitation center space.** If provided, a rehabilitation center space shall be designed to meet the requirements of Section 1224.14, except as follows:

1. Patient bedrooms shall contain a minimum of 110 square feet ( $10.22 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per bed, exclusive of toilet room(s), closets, lockers, wardrobes, alcoves or vestibules, with greater space provided for special needs such as circ-o-electric beds.
2. Space for group dining shall be provided at the minimum rate of 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed.
3. Space for group recreation or patient's lounge shall be provided at the minimum rate of 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed.
4. Space for staff conferences, patient evaluation and progress reports.
5. A classroom space.
6. If outpatient rehabilitation services are provided, an examination and treatment room, adjacent or directly accessible to an office for the physician in charge of the outpatient service.
7. If outpatient rehabilitation services are provided, a patient waiting area with access to telephone, drinking fountain and men's and women's toilet room facilities in or adjacent to the rehabilitation outpatient service area. Outpatients shall not traverse an inpatient nursing unit.
8. Access to an outside area to be used for therapeutic procedures for patients.
9. At least one training toilet room in each patient unit with minimum dimensions of 5 feet by 6 feet ( $1524 \text{ mm} \times 1829 \text{ mm}$ ).
10. Patient bathtubs, where provided, of standard height and located to provide access to both sides and one end of the tub.

11. Patient showers, where provided in centralized bathing facilities, shall comply with Section 11B-608.2.2, no dimension of which shall be less than 4 feet (1219 mm), be equipped with handrails, privacy curtains, and designed for ease of accessibility. The floor shall be sloped to provide drainage.

**1224.35.2 Physical therapy service space.** If physical therapy is part of the service, the following shall be included:

1. The minimum floor area for a physical therapy space shall be 300 square feet ( $27.87 \text{ m}^2$ ) with no dimensions less than 12 feet (3658 mm). Each individual patient care station shall have a minimum clear floor area of 60 square feet ( $5.57 \text{ m}^2$ ), except individual patient care stations formed with permanent partitions shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ). Each individual patient care station shall have privacy screens or curtains.
2. Handwashing stations for staff shall be provided in each treatment room. At least one handwashing station shall be provided for every four patient care stations, and for every major fraction thereof, in an open treatment area. One handwashing station may serve several treatment stations.
3. Exercise area and facilities.
4. Clean linen and towel storage.
5. Storage for equipment and supplies.
6. Separate storage for soiled linen, towels and supplies.

**Exception:** When approved by the licensing agency small or rural hospitals are exempt from Sections 1224.35.2.1 through 1224.35.2.6.

**1224.35.3 Occupational therapy service space.** If this service is provided, the following shall be included:

1. Work areas and counters suitable for wheelchair access.
2. Handwashing stations.
3. Storage for supplies and equipment.
4. An area for teaching daily living activities shall be provided. It shall contain an area for a bed, kitchen counter with appliances and sink, bathroom and a table/chair.

**1224.35.4 Speech pathology and/or audiology service space.** If a speech pathology service is provided, space shall be provided for:

1. Tables and chairs to conduct interviews, consultations and treatment, and to accommodate patients in wheelchairs and stretchers.
2. A waiting area with access to public toilet room(s) if outpatients are being served.
3. Handwashing stations.
4. Testing unit. If an audiology service is provided, there shall be, in addition to Items 1, 2 and 3 above,

a minimum of one two-room testing unit that meets the American National Standards Institute, ANSI/ASA S-3.1, 1999, (2008) Maximum Permissible Ambient Noise Levels for Audiometric Test Rooms.

#### **1224.36 RENAL DIALYSIS SERVICE SPACE (ACUTE AND CHRONIC)**

**1224.36.1 General.** If provided, renal dialysis service shall comply with the following:

##### **1224.36.2 Treatment area.**

**1224.36.2.1 Location.** The treatment area may be an open area and shall be separate from administrative and waiting areas.

**1224.36.2.2 Nurse station(s).** Shall be located within the dialysis treatment area and designed to provide visual observation of all patient stations.

**1224.36.2.3 Individual patient treatment areas.** Shall contain at least 80 square feet ( $7.44 \text{ m}^2$ ). There shall be at least a 4-foot (1219 mm) space around and between beds and/or lounge chairs.

**1224.36.2.4 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to the nurse station and to patient treatment areas. Handwashing stations shall be provided for each four treatment stations, and for each major fraction thereof. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station.

**1224.36.2.5 Privacy.** The open unit shall be designed to provide privacy for each patient.

**1224.36.2.6 Bloodborne infection isolation room.** A minimum of one bloodborne infection isolation room of at least 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor space shall be provided for patients. This room shall contain a counter and handwashing station.

**1224.36.2.7 Medication station.** There shall be a medication station for the dialysis center. The medication station shall comply with the provisions of Section 1224.4.4.4.

**1224.36.2.8 Home training.** If provided in the unit, a private treatment area of at least 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be provided for patients who are being trained to use dialysis equipment at home. This room shall contain a counter, a handwashing station and a separate drain for fluid disposal.

**1224.36.2.9 Examination room.** An examination room with a handwashing station shall be provided with at least 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1224.36.2.10 Clean utility room.** A clean utility room shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter, a handwashing station and storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies. If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter and handwashing fixture may be omitted. Soiled and clean utility

rooms or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

**1224.36.2.11 Soiled utility room.** A soiled workroom shall be provided and contain a sink, handwashing station, work counter, storage cabinets, waste receptacles and a soiled linen receptacle.

**1224.36.2.12 Reprocessing room.** If dialyzers are reused, a reprocessing room is required and sized to perform the functions required and include one-way flow of materials from soiled to clean with provisions for a refrigerator (temporary storage or dialyzer), decontamination/cleaning areas, sinks, processors, computer processors and label printers, packaging area and dialyzer storage and disinfectants cabinets.

**1224.36.2.13 Nourishment station.** If a nourishment station for the dialysis service is provided, the nourishment station shall contain a sink, a work counter, a refrigerator, storage cabinets and equipment for serving nourishments as required.

**1224.36.2.14 Housekeeping room.** Provide a housekeeping room that is immediately accessible to, and for the exclusive use of the unit.

**1224.36.2.15 Repair room.** If required, an equipment repair and breakdown room shall be equipped with a handwashing fixture, deep service sink, work counter and storage cabinet. Needs water supply and drain connection for testing machines.

**1224.36.2.16 Supplies.** Supply areas or supply carts shall be provided.

**1224.36.2.17 Storage.** Storage space shall be available for wheelchairs and gurneys, if gurneys are provided, out of direct line of traffic.

**1224.36.2.18 Clean linen storage.** A clean linen storage area shall be provided. This may be within the clean utility room, a separate closet or an approved distribution system. If a closed cart system is used, storage may be in an alcove. It must be out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.

**1224.36.2.19 Mixing room.** Each facility using a central batch delivery system shall provide, either on the premises or through written arrangements, individual delivery systems for the treatment of any patient requiring special dialysis solutions. The mixing room shall also include a sink, storage space and holding tanks.

**1224.36.2.20 Water treatment room.** The water treatment equipment shall be located in an enclosed room.

**1224.36.2.21 Patient toilet.** A patient toilet room with a lavatory shall be provided.

#### **1224.36.3 Ancillary facilities.**

**1224.36.3.1 Staff lounge, lockers and toilet(s).** Space shall be available for male and female personnel for staff clothing change area and lounge. The areas shall contain lockers, shower, toilet(s) and handwashing stations.

**1224.36.3.2 Patient storage.** Storage for patients' belongings shall be provided.

**1224.36.3.3 Waiting room.** A waiting room, toilet room(s) with handwashing stations, drinking fountain, public telephone and seating accommodations for waiting periods shall be available or accessible to the dialysis unit.

**1224.36.3.4 Administrative services.** Provide office and clinical work space.

**1224.37 RESPIRATORY THERAPY SERVICE SPACE.** If respiratory service is provided, the following elements shall be included:

1. **Storage for equipment and supplies.**
2. **Space and utilities for cleaning and disinfecting equipment.** Provide physical separation of the space for receiving and cleaning soiled materials from the space for storage of clean equipment and supplies. Appropriate local exhaust ventilation shall be provided if gluteraldehyde or other noxious disinfectants are used in the cleaning process. This space may be co-located with other reprocessing functions within the hospital.
3. **Additional facilities.** If respiratory services such as testing and demonstration for outpatients are part of the program, additional facilities and equipment shall be provided including but not limited to:
  - 3.1. Patient waiting.
  - 3.2. A reception and control station.

**1224.38 INTERMEDIATE-CARE SERVICE SPACE.** An intermediate-care service unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1224.

#### 1224.39 OUTPATIENT SERVICE SPACE.

**1224.39.1 Waiting area(s).** Provide with access to public toilet room facilities, a public telephone and a drinking fountain. These facilities may be shared with other services.

**1224.39.2 Outpatient surgery.** If outpatient surgery is performed in the out patient service space, the following shall be provided:

**1224.39.2.1 Operating rooms.** An operating room(s) with a minimum clear floor area of 270 square feet ( $25.08 \text{ m}^2$ ), no dimension of which shall be less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

**1224.39.2.2 Perioperative services.** Preoperative patient holding and postanesthesia recovery area(s) shall be provided which meet the requirements of Section 1224.16.

**1224.39.2.3 Service areas.** Each surgical unit shall provide the service areas required under Section 1224.15.3 as modified by the following:

**1224.39.2.3.1 Soiled workroom.** A separate soiled workroom separated from any surgical sterilizing facilities. The soiled workroom shall provide 24

square feet ( $2.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) per operating room up to eight operating rooms and shall have the minimum area of 48 square feet ( $4.5 \text{ m}^2$ ), with no dimension less than 6 feet (1829 mm).

**1224.39.2.3.2 Housekeeping.** A housekeeping room shall be provided for the exclusive use of outpatient surgery. It shall be directly accessible from the service area.

**1224.39.3 Gastrointestinal endoscopy.** If gastrointestinal endoscopy is performed in the outpatient service area, the endoscopy suite shall be divided into a minimum of three major functional areas: the procedure room(s), instrument processing room(s) and patient holding/preparation and recovery room or area and the following shall be provided:

#### 1224.39.3.1 Procedure room(s).

**1224.39.3.1.1 Space requirements.** Procedure room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ). Room arrangement shall permit a minimum clearance of 3 feet, 6 inches (1067 mm) at each side, head and foot of the gurney/table.

**1224.39.3.1.2 Handwashing stations.** A separate dedicated handwashing station with hands-free controls shall be provided in the procedure room.

#### 1224.39.3.2 Processing room.

**1224.39.3.2.1 Dedicated processing room(s).** Dedicated processing room(s) shall provide distinct areas for cleaning and decontaminating instruments. The cleaning area shall allow for flow of instruments from the contaminated area to the clean assembly area and then to storage.

**1224.39.3.2.2 The decontamination area.** The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

1. Utility sink(s) shall be provided as appropriate to the method of decontamination used.
2. One freestanding handwashing station.
3. Work counter space(s).
4. Eyewash station.

**1224.39.3.3 Preoperative patient holding.** A preoperative patient holding area shall be provided in accordance with Section 1224.16.2.

**1224.39.3.4 Post-anesthesia recovery area.** A post-anesthesia recovery area shall meet the requirements of Section 1224.16.

**1224.39.3.5 Communication system.** A system for emergency communication shall be provided.

**1224.39.3.6 Service areas.** Each gastrointestinal endoscopy unit shall provide the support areas required under Section 1226.5.11.6 if not shared within the department.

#### 1224.39.4 CANCER TREATMENT/INFUSION THERAPY SERVICE SPACE.

**1224.39.4.1 General.** If provided, cancer treatment/infusion therapy service shall comply with the following:

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

### **1224.39.4.2 Treatment area.**

**1224.39.4.2.1 Location.** The treatment area may be an open area and shall be separated from administrative and waiting areas.

**1224.39.4.2.2 Nurse station(s).** Shall be located within the cancer treatment/infusion therapy area and designed to provide visual observation of all patient stations.

**1224.39.4.2.3 Individual patient treatment areas.** Shall contain at least 80 square feet ( $7.4\text{ m}^2$ ).

There shall be at least a 4-foot (1219 mm) space around and between beds and/or lounge chairs used for chemotherapy treatment/infusion.

**1224.39.4.2.4 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to the nurse station and patient treatment areas. Handwashing stations shall be provided for each four patient stations, and for each major fraction thereof. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station.

**1224.39.4.2.5 Privacy.** The open unit shall be designed to provide privacy for each patient.

**1224.39.4.2.6 Medication dispensing.** If provided, there shall be a medication dispensing station for the cancer treatment/infusion therapy area. A work counter and handwashing station shall be included in the area. Provisions shall be made for the controlled storage, preparation, distribution and refrigeration of medications.

**1224.39.4.2.7 Examination room.** An examination room with a handwashing station shall be provided with at least 100 square feet ( $9.29\text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area.

**1224.39.4.2.8 Clean utility room.** A clean utility room shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter, a handwashing station and storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies. If the room is used for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter and handwashing station may be omitted. Soiled and clean utility rooms or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

**1224.39.4.2.9 Soiled utility room.** A soiled workroom shall be provided and contain a sink, handwashing station, work counter, storage cabinets, waste receptacles and a soiled linen receptacle.

**1224.39.4.2.10 Nourishment station.** If nourishment station for the cancer treatment/infusion therapy service is provided, the nourishment station shall contain a sink, a work counter, a refrigerator, storage cabinets and equipment for serving nourishment as required.

**1224.39.4.2.11 Housekeeping room.** Provide a housekeeping room that is immediately accessible to and for the exclusive use of the unit.

**1224.39.4.2.12 Supplies.** Supply areas or supply carts shall be provided.

**1224.39.4.2.13 Storage.** Storage space shall be available for wheelchairs and gurneys. If gurneys are provided, they shall be out of the direct line of traffic.

**1224.39.4.2.14 Clean linen storage.** A clean linen storage area shall be provided. This may be within the clean utility room, a separate closet or an approved distribution system. If a closed cart system is used, storage may be in an alcove. It must be out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.

**1224.39.4.2.15 Patient toilet.** A patient toilet room with a lavatory shall be provided.

### **1224.39.4.3 Ancillary facilities.**

**1224.39.4.3.1 Staff lounge, lockers and toilets.** Space shall be available for male and female personnel for staff clothing change area and lounge. The areas shall contain lockers, toilets and handwashing stations.

**1224.39.4.3.2 Patient storage.** Storage for patients' belongings shall be provided.

**1224.39.4.3.3 Administrative services.** Office and clinical work space shall be provided.

**1224.39.4.3.4 Special design elements.** Decorative water features and fish tanks shall not be located inside cancer treatment/infusion therapy unit.

## **1224.39.5 HYPERBARIC THERAPY SERVICE SPACE.**

**1224.39.5.1 General.** If provided, clinical hyperbaric oxygen therapy service space shall meet the requirements of the "Hyperbaric Facilities" chapter in NFPA 99: Health Care Facilities Code and shall comply with the following:

### **1224.39.5.2 Hyperbaric chambers.**

**1224.39.5.2.1 Class A chamber (multi-place facilities).**

- Clearances.** There shall be a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) around the chamber. The area in front of the chamber entry designed for gurney or bed access shall have a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2438 mm) for gurney or bed approach. The area in front of the chamber entry designed for ambulatory or wheelchair access only shall have a minimum clearance of 5 feet (1524 mm) for wheelchair approach.

- Entries.** Chamber entries shall be provided with access ramps that are flush with the chamber entry doorway. Chamber entries not designed for gurney/bed access shall be a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm).

**1224.39.5.2.2 Class B chamber (mono-place facilities).**

1. **Clearances.** There shall be a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) around the chamber. A minimum clearance of 44 inches (1118 mm) shall be provided between the control sides of two chambers. The area in front of the chamber entry shall be designed for gurney or bed access with a minimum clearance of 8 feet (2438 mm) for gurney or bed approach.
2. **Oxygen.** An oxygen service valve shall be provided for each chamber.

**1224.39.5.3 Pre-procedure patient holding area(s).** In facilities with a Class A hyperbaric chamber or with three or more Class B chambers, a pre-procedure/patient holding area shall be provided to accommodate patients on gurneys or beds and sitting space for ambulatory patients. The area shall permit visual observation of the patient by nursing staff and be located out of traffic flow. Each gurney station shall be a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) and shall have a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) on the sides of the gurneys and the foot of the gurney. There shall be provisions for privacy such as cubicle curtains.

**1224.39.5.4 Medical gas station outlets.** Refer to Table 1224.4.6.1 Station Outlets for Oxygen, Vacuum (Suction) and Medical Air.

**1224.39.5.5 Support areas for the hyperbaric suite.**

**1224.39.5.5.1 Reception/control desk.** An administrative center/nurse station shall be provided within the hyperbaric suite.

**1224.39.5.5.2 Examination/treatment room(s).** Room(s) for individual consultation and treatment shall be provided and meet the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.

**1224.39.5.5.3 Clean linen storage.** A clean linen storage area shall be provided. This may be within the clean utility room, a separate closet or an approved distribution system. If a closed cart system is used, storage may be in an alcove. It must be out of the path of normal traffic and under staff control.

**1224.39.5.5.4 Clean supply room.** A clean supply room shall be provided and meet the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.6.1. This room may be omitted if the suite is served by a cart system.

**1224.39.5.5.5 Gas cylinder room.** The gas cylinder room shall provide space to house eight (H) cylinders and two gas manifolds, consisting of at least two (H) cylinders on each manifold.

**1224.39.5.5.6 Gurney and wheelchair storage.** Space for gurney and wheelchair storage shall be provided.

**1224.39.5.5.7 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room shall be provided and shall be immediately accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

**1224.39.5.5.8 Compressor room.** A compressor room shall be provided to house the chamber compressors, accumulator tanks and fire suppression system.

**1224.39.5.6 Support areas for staff.** Toilet rooms with a handwashing stations shall be immediately accessible to the hyperbaric suite for staff use.

**1224.39.5.7 Support areas for patients.**

**1224.39.5.7.1 Patient waiting area.** The patient waiting area shall be provided and meet the requirements of Section 1224.39.1.

**1224.39.5.7.2 Patient changing areas.** Changing area(s) for outpatients shall be provided for patient clothing and for securing valuables.

**1224.39.5.7.3 Patient toilet room.** A patient toilet room with a handwashing station shall be directly accessible to the hyperbaric suite.

**1224.39.6 OUTPATIENT OBSERVATION UNITS.**

**1224.39.6.1 General.** If provided, outpatient observation unit(s) shall comply with the following:

**1224.39.6.2 Location.** The unit shall be located outside of any inpatient unit and not part of the Emergency Department. Location shall be in compliance with Section 1224.4.3. Corridor systems shall connect the unit to all Basic and applicable Supplemental Services.

**1224.39.6.3 Signage.** The unit shall be marked with a sign identifying the unit as an outpatient unit. The signage shall use the term "outpatient" in the title of the designated area.

**1224.39.6.4 Patient care stations.** Each patient station shall provide minimum clear floor area that includes space at each bedside for visitors. Provisions for visual privacy from casual observation by other patients and visitors shall be provided. Patient care stations shall meet the following:

**1224.39.6.4.1 Space requirements:**

1. Single-station rooms: 110 square feet ( $10.2 \text{ m}^2$ ). A minimum distance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between the sides and foot of bed and any wall or other fixed obstructions.
2. Multi-station rooms or areas: 80 square feet ( $7.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient station. A minimum distance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between beds and 4 feet (1219 mm) between the foot of beds, walls or other fixed obstructions for access/circulation.

**1224.39.6.4.2 Negative-pressure isolation room with anteroom.** Negative pressure isolation is optional. If provided, signage shall be labeled with the words "Negative-Pressure Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom. A separate anteroom shall be provided between the negative-pressure isolation room and the corridor, which shall

||

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

constitute the primary entrance to the negative-pressure isolation room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing station, a work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cabinets and space to gown and to store clean and soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the isolation room and means to allow for airflow from the anteroom into the negative pressure isolation room. Doors shall be aligned to allow large equipment to be wheeled into the negative-pressure isolation room unless a second entry is provided. An adjoining patient toilet room shall be provided which has an emergency nurse call system, a lavatory and a toilet equipped with a bedpan flushing attachment with a vacuum breaker.

**1224.39.6.4.3 Handwashing station(s).** A handwashing station shall be provided at each nurse station.

**1224.39.6.4.4 Patient toilet room(s).** A minimum of one toilet room shall be provided for the use of patients. Patient toilet room(s) shall be equipped with a handwashing station and shall be immediately accessible to the observation unit(s) from the corridor.

**1224.39.6.5 Service areas.** Unless otherwise indicated, provisions for the services listed below shall be in or immediately accessible to each outpatient observation unit.

**1224.39.6.5.1 Nurse station.** A minimum of one nurse station shall be provided, in compliance with Section 1224.4.4.2. The distance between the nurse station entrance and the most remote patient station or room shall not exceed 90 linear feet (27,432 linear mm).

**1224.39.6.5.2 Nurse or supervisor office.**

**1224.39.6.5.3 Staff toilet room(s).** Readily accessible toilet room(s) provided for staff use.

**1224.39.6.5.4 Multipurpose room(s).** A minimum of one multipurpose room shall be provided for staff, patients and/or patients' families for uses such as patient conferences, reports, education, training sessions and consultation. Room(s) must be readily accessible to each outpatient observation unit. One such room may be shared and serve several units and/or departments.

**1224.39.6.5.5 Examination or treatment room(s).** Examination or treatment rooms are optional. If provided, examination and/or treatment rooms must be readily accessible, but may be shared with other units or compatible departments. Provisions shall be made to preserve patient privacy from observation from outside the exam room through an open door. The room shall have a minimum area of 80 square feet ( $7.4 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which 8 feet (2438 mm).

**1224.39.6.5.6 Medication station(s).** Medication station(s) shall be provided, and in conformance with Section 1224.4.4.4.

**1224.39.6.5.7 Nourishment area.** A nourishment area, in compliance with Section 1224.4.4.5, shall be provided within the unit.

**1224.39.6.5.8 Clean utility room.** A clean utility/workroom shall be provided, and in conformance with Section 1224.4.4.6.

**1224.39.6.5.9 Soiled workroom.** A soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided, and in conformance with Section 1224.4.4.7.

**1224.39.6.5.10 Clean linen storage.** Clean linen storage shall be provided. It may be within the clean utility room or a separate closet.

**1224.39.6.5.11 Ice machine.** An ice machine shall be provided for treatment and nourishment. Ice-making equipment may be in the clean utility room/holding room or at the nourishment station. Ice intended for human consumption shall be from self-dispensing icemakers.

**1224.39.6.5.12 Equipment storage.** Appropriate room(s) shall be provided for storage of equipment necessary for patient care. Equipment storage must be readily accessible but may be shared with other units and/or departments.

**1224.39.6.5.13 Gurneys and wheelchairs.** A storage room or alcove for gurneys and wheelchairs shall be provided and shall be a minimum of 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1224.39.6.5.14 Emergency equipment storage.** Space shall be provided for emergency equipment that is under direct control of the nursing staff, such as a cardiopulmonary resuscitation crash cart. This space shall be directly accessible from the nursing station, but out of normal traffic.

**1224.39.6.5.15 Portable oxygen storage.** Space shall be provided for portable oxygen storage, and shall meet the requirements of Section 307 for allowable quantities and hazard group for fire separations. Portable oxygen storage may be omitted if station outlets per Table 1224.4.6.1 "observation unit" footnote 8 are provided.

**1224.39.6.5.16 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room must be readily accessible but may be shared with other units and/or departments.

**1224.40 SKILLED NURSING SERVICE SPACE.** If provided a skilled nursing service unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1225.

**1224.41 SOCIAL SERVICE SPACE.** If provided, the social service space shall include office or other space for privacy in interviewing, telephoning and conducting conferences.

## **SECTION 1225 [OSHPD 2] SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES**

**1225.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities, including distinct part skilled nursing and intermediate-care services of a general acute-care or acute psychiatric hospital license, provided either is in a separate unit or a freestanding building. Skilled nursing facilities and intermediate-care facilities shall provide all common elements and support services. The required services for skilled nursing and intermediate-care facility licensure: physician, skilled nursing, dietary, pharmaceutical services and activity program shall be provided. At the option of the provider, the medical model or the household model may be used.

**1225.1.1 Small house skilled nursing facilities.** Skilled nursing facilities participating in the Small House Nursing Facilities Pilot Program established by and in conformance with Section 1323.5 of the California Health and Safety Code, shall meet all the provisions of Section 1225.4 Common Elements and Section 1225.5.2 Household Model applicable to small house skilled nursing facilities.

**1225.1.2 Subacute care.** Patient rooms providing subacute care shall comply with Section 1225.5.1.2. Equipment and components supporting subacute bed(s) shall have special seismic certification per Section 1705. Electrical requirements shall comply with California Electrical Code Article 517.

**Note:** Construction documents for OSHPD 2 buildings without subacute beds shall explicitly state that the skilled nursing facility or intermediate care facility does not admit patients needing sustained electrical life support equipment

**1225.2 Application.** New buildings and additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings subject to licensure shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code, California Fire Code (Parts 3, 4, 5 and 9 of Title 24), and this section.

**Exception:** See Section 1224.2.

**1225.2.1 Services/systems and utilities.** Services/systems and utilities shall only originate in, pass through or under structures which are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

**1225.2.2 Means of egress.** Means of egress shall only pass through structures that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

**1225.3 Definitions.** Refer to Section 1224.3.

### **1225.4 COMMON ELEMENTS.**

#### **1225.4.1 NURSING SERVICE SPACE.**

**1225.4.1.1 Nurse station.** A nurse station in free-standing skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities shall be provided within each nursing unit. Nurse

stations shall be designed to serve no more than 60 beds.

**1225.4.1.1.1 Components.** Nurse stations shall be provided with a cabinet, a desk, space for records, a bulletin board, a telephone, a specifically designated, lockable and illuminated medicine storage compartment and a handwashing station. If a separate medicine room is provided, it shall have a lockable door and a sink. This sink cannot replace the required nurse station handwashing fixture.

**1225.4.1.1.2 Size.** Nurse stations serving 25 or less beds shall have a minimum floor area of 100 square feet ( $9.29\text{ m}^2$ ). Nurse stations servicing more than 25 beds shall have a minimum floor area of 125 square feet ( $11.6\text{ m}^2$ ). The minimum dimension of any nurse station shall not be less than 8 feet (2438 mm).

**1225.4.1.1.3 Distance.** In free-standing skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities, the distance between the nurse station entrance and the center of the doorway of the most remote patient bedroom shall not exceed 150 linear feet (45,720 mm).

**Exception:** The 150-foot (45,720 mm) limit does not apply to distinct part skilled nursing and intermediate-care services provided as a separate unit in a general acute-care hospital or acute psychiatric hospital.

**1225.4.1.2 Room identification.** Each patient room shall be labeled with an identification number, letter or combination of the two.

**Exception:** Small house skilled nursing facilities.

**1225.4.1.3 Utility rooms.** Utility rooms shall be provided in each nursing unit. Soiled and clean utility or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

**1225.4.1.3.1 Clean utility room.** If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter, a handwashing station and storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies. If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials, the work counter and handwashing station may be omitted.

**1225.4.1.3.2 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room.** This room shall be separate from the clean utility room. The soiled workroom/utility room shall contain a clinical sink (or equivalent flushing-rim fixture). The room shall contain a handwashing station. The above fixtures shall both have a hot and cold mixing faucet. The room shall have a work counter and space for separate covered containers for soiled linen and waste. Rooms used only for temporary holding of soiled material may omit the clinical sink and work counter. If the flushing-rim clinical sink is eliminated, facilities for cleaning bedpans shall be provided elsewhere.

**1225.4.1.4 Visual privacy.** A method of assuring visual privacy for each patient shall be provided in patient rooms and in tub, shower and toilet rooms.

**1225.4.1.5 Treatment or exam room.** If provided, the treatment or exam room shall comply with all of the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.

**1225.4.1.6 Toilet room and bath facilities.** Separate toilet room facilities shall be provided for the use of patients, staff and the public. Fixtures serving individual patient rooms shall not be considered as meeting the required ratios for bedrooms not served by individual adjoining toilet room or bathrooms.

**1225.4.1.6.1 Grab bars.** Each toilet, bathtub and shower serving patients shall be provided with conveniently located grab bars.

**1225.4.1.6.2 Toilet rooms.** One patient toilet room shall serve no more than two patients. The toilet room shall contain a toilet, a handwashing station, a mirror and individual storage for the personal effects of each patient.

**Exception.** Where renovation of existing patient rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2013, or prior, California Building Code, each toilet room may continue to serve up to the number of beds previously served, but not more than two patient rooms or eight beds.

**1225.4.1.6.3 Bathroom facilities.** Bathrooms or showers shall be provided at a ratio of 1:20 patients, and for each major fraction thereof, with a minimum of one bathtub per floor. A separate private toilet shall be provided that is directly accessible to each multi-bathing fixture central bathing area without requiring entry into the general corridor.

**1225.4.1.7 Patient/nurse call system.** A patient/nurse call system complying with Section 517.123, California Electrical Code, shall be provided.

**1225.4.1.7.1** In small house skilled nursing facilities, visitor toilet room(s) shall be equipped with a nurse call station.

**1225.4.1.8 Special-purpose rooms.** Special-purpose rooms for the purpose of single-patient occupancy shall be provided at a ratio of one room for every 35 patients or fraction thereof. Airborne infection isolation rooms may be included in determining the number of special-purpose rooms required for the facilities.

**Exception:** The special-purpose room may be omitted if all patient rooms are single-resident rooms.

**1225.4.1.9 Airborne infection isolation rooms.** If provided, the airborne infection isolation room shall comply with all of the requirements of Section 1224.14.3.

**1225.4.1.10 Protective environment room(s).** If provided, the protective environment room shall comply with all of the requirements of Section 1224.14.4.

**1225.4.1.11 Quiet room.** If a quiet room is provided, the quiet room shall comply with the following requirements.

**1225.4.1.11.1 Space requirements.** Refer to Section 1225.5.1.2, Nursing service space.

**1225.4.1.11.2 Toilet room.** Provide a patient toilet room adjacent to the quiet room. The patient toilet room shall not be shared with another patient room. If the quiet room is located in a common area, the patient toilet room may be shared with compatible services or activities.

**1225.4.1.11.3 Noise control.** The quiet room shall comply with the acoustic requirements of Section 1224.4.19, Noise control.

## 1225.4.2 DIETETIC SERVICE SPACE.

**1225.4.2.1 General.** Food service facilities and equipment shall conform with these standards, the standards of the National Sanitation Foundation and the requirements of the local public health agency.

**1225.4.2.1.1 Distribution.** Provision(s) shall be made for transport of hot and cold foods as required, appropriate for the type of food service selected.

**1225.4.2.1.2 Dining space.** Separate dining spaces shall be provided for patients and staff. These spaces shall be separate from the food preparation and distribution areas.

**Exception:** Shared dining shall be provided for patients and staff in small house skilled nursing facilities.

**1225.4.2.1.3 Location.** The design and location of dining facilities shall encourage patient use.

**1225.4.2.1.4 Food service.** Facilities shall be furnished to provide nourishment and snacks between scheduled meal service.

**1225.4.2.2 Functional elements.** The following facilities, in the size and number appropriate for the type of food service selected, shall be provided:

**1225.4.2.2.1 Location.** Food-service areas shall be directly accessible to the entry for food supply deliveries and for the removal of kitchen wastes.

**1225.4.2.2.2 Receiving/control stations.** A control station shall be provided for the receiving and control of incoming dietary supplies.

**1225.4.2.2.3 Food preparation facilities.** Food preparation facilities shall be provided to accommodate the method of food preparation required.

1. Conventional food preparation systems require space and equipment for preparing, cooking and baking.

2. Convenience food service systems using frozen prepared meals, bulk packaged entrees, individual packaged portions or those using contractual commissary services require space and equipment for thawing, portioning, cooking and baking.

**1225.4.2.2.4 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be located in the food preparation area.

**1225.4.2.2.5 Ice-making facilities.** Ice-making facilities may be located in the food preparation area or in a separate room. They shall be easily cleanable and immediately accessible to the dietary function.

**1225.4.2.2.6 Assembly and distribution.** A patient tray assembly area shall be provided and shall be immediately accessible to the food preparation and distribution areas.

1. If food service carts are utilized, a cart distribution system shall accommodate spaces for storage, loading, distribution, receiving and sanitizing of the food service carts. Cart circulation shall not be through food preparation areas.

**1225.4.2.2.7 Ware-washing facilities.** Ware-washing space shall be provided in a room separate from the food preparation and serving area. It shall be designed to prevent contamination of clean wares with soiled wares through cross-traffic. The clean wares shall be transferred for storage or use in the dining area without having to pass through food preparation areas.

1. Commercial-type ware-washing equipment shall be provided.
2. Space shall be provided for receiving, scraping, sorting and stacking soiled tableware and for transferring clean tableware to the using areas.
3. Handwashing stations shall be provided in the ware-washing space.

**1225.4.2.2.8 Pot-washing facilities.** Pot-washing facilities shall include multi-compartmented sinks.

**1225.4.2.2.9 Office space.** Office or other space shall be provided for the dietitian or dietetic service supervisor.

#### **1225.4.2.2.10 Storage.**

1. Food storage space, including cold storage, shall be provided for a supply of food of at least a 7 day staple, 2 day frozen, 2 day perishable, and an emergency food and water supply. All food shall be stored clear of the floor. The lowest shelf shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the floor or shall be closed in and sealed tight, for ease of cleaning.

As a minimum, dietary storage space shall be provided in accordance with the following schedule:

Licensed Bed Capacity	Storage Space
1 to 99 beds	2 square feet (0.19 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed
100 to 199 beds	200 square feet (18.58 m <sup>2</sup> ) plus 1 square foot 0.0929 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed in excess of 100 beds
200 beds and over	300 square feet (27.99 m <sup>2</sup> ), plus 1/2 square foot (0.0465 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed in excess of 200 beds

Space to allow refrigeration for the storage of frozen and chilled foods shall be provided at a minimum of 2 cubic feet (0.057 m<sup>3</sup>) of usable space per bed.

2. Additional storage space for dietetic service supplies, such as paper products, equipment, tray delivery carts, etc. shall be provided.
3. Storage areas and sanitizing facilities for cans, carts and mobile-tray conveyors shall be provided.
4. Waste, storage and recycling facilities (per local requirements) shall be located in a separate room easily accessible to the outside for direct pickup or disposal.

**1225.4.2.2.11 Toilet rooms.** Toilet rooms shall be provided for the exclusive use of the dietary staff. They shall not open directly into the food preparation areas, but shall be readily accessible.

**Exception:** Small house skilled nursing facilities utilizing staff trained for dietary and care-giving responsibilities may provide toilet room(s) serving both the dietary and nursing service areas.

**1225.4.2.2.12 Lockers.** An enclosed, separate area shall be provided for dietetic service employees' clothing and personal belongings.

**Exception:** Small house skilled nursing facilities utilizing staff trained for dietary and care-giving responsibilities may provide common locker room(s) serving both the dietary and nursing service areas.

**1225.4.2.2.13 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room meeting the requirements of Section 1224.4.15 shall be located within the dietary department for the exclusive use of the dietary department.

**1225.4.2.3 Outside service.** On approval of the Licensing Agency, when food is provided by an outside food service, the facility shall maintain adequate space, equipment and food supplies to accommodate required functional elements listed in Section 1225.4.2.2, as

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*required to provide patient food service in the event that the outside food service is interrupted.*

### SUPPORT SERVICES

#### 1225.4.3 ADMINISTRATION SPACE.

**1225.4.3.1 Administration and public spaces.** An administration area shall be provided which shall include space for business, administration, admitting, public toilet room(s), lobby and public telephone.

**1225.4.3.2 Medical record storage.** Space shall be provided for the storage of medical records.

**1225.4.3.3 Office.** An office for the director of nurses shall be provided.

**1225.4.3.4 Small house skilled nursing facilities.** Small house skilled nursing facility units may provide the administration and public spaces, medical record storage and the nursing director's office in a separate centralized support area attached to the unit(s) or detached in a separate building in close proximity to the unit(s), as a part of the small house skilled nursing facility. This building shall be under OSHPD jurisdiction.

#### 1225.4.4 STERILE SUPPLIES.

**1225.4.4.1 Storage.** Each facility shall provide space for the storage of disposable sterile supplies or provide space for sterilization and disinfection equipment.

**Exception:** Facilities with contractual arrangements for outside autoclaving and sterilizing services.

**1225.4.4.2 Central sterile supply.** If provided, shall accommodate the following:

**1225.4.4.2.1 Minimum requirements.** A central supply and sterilizing area shall be provided. Rooms and spaces shall accommodate the following services and equipment:

1. Soiled work area. A receiving and gross cleaning area which shall contain work space and equipment for cleaning medical and surgical equipment and for disposal of or processing of soiled material.
2. Clean work area. A clean work area which shall contain work space and equipment for sterilizing medical and surgical equipment and supplies.
3. Sterilizing space.
4. Storage. Space for sterile supplies and unsterile supplies.

**1225.4.4.2.2 Sterilizers.** All sterilizers and autoclaves which emit steam exhaust shall be vented to the outside of the building. Such vents shall be independent from the plumbing vent system.

**Exception:** Small instrument sterilizers.

#### 1225.4.5 STORAGE.

**1225.4.5.1 Required areas.** Facilities shall provide combined general and specialized storage in accordance with the following schedule:

Licensed Bed Capacity	Storage Area
1 to 10 beds	120 square feet (11.15 m <sup>2</sup> ) minimum
11 to 100 beds	12 square feet (1.11 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed
Over 100 beds	1,200 square feet (111.48 m <sup>2</sup> ) plus 5 square feet (0.46 m <sup>2</sup> ) per bed for each bed over 100

**1225.4.5.2 Specialized storage.** Shall include those spaces identified in the dietetic food storage of Section 1225.4.2.2.10 and as follows:

**1225.4.5.2.1 Linen.** Separate and enclosed facilities for clean and soiled linen in each nursing unit. The clean linen storage space shall have a minimum area of 10 square feet (0.93 m<sup>2</sup>) and may be within the clean utility room. The soiled linen collection space shall have an area of no less than 10 square feet (0.93 m<sup>2</sup>), except where linen chutes are provided, and may be within the soiled utility room.

**1225.4.5.2.2 Supply.** One supply storage space having a minimum area of 15 square feet (1.39 m<sup>2</sup>) shall be provided in each nursing unit. Supply storage may be within the clean utility room used only as part of a system for distributing clean and sterile supplies.

**1225.4.5.2.3 Wheelchairs.** A room or space shall be provided in each nursing unit for wheelchairs and stretchers. The wheelchair and stretcher space shall have a minimum area of 15 square feet (1.39 m<sup>2</sup>).

**1225.4.5.2.4 Separate supplies.** Sterile and unsterile supplies shall be stored separately.

**1225.4.5.2.5 Location.** All storage spaces shall be readily accessible in the licensed facility.

**1225.4.6 HOUSEKEEPING ROOMS.** Housekeeping rooms shall be provided to serve each department and nursing unit, and may be shared by compatible departments, except when specifically required by other sections.

**1225.4.7 LAUNDRY.** If a laundry is to be provided, the following is required in addition to the laundry room:

1. A separate soiled linen receiving, holding and sorting room with handwashing station.
2. A separate clean linen storage, issuing and holding room.
3. Storage for laundry supplies.

**1225.4.7.1 Outside service.** If linen is processed off site, the following shall be provided within the facility:

1. A soiled linen holding room.
2. A separate clean linen receiving and storage room.

**1225.4.8 EMPLOYEE DRESSING ROOMS AND LOCKERS.** Separate dressing rooms with toilet(s), lavatories and lockers for male and female personnel shall be provided.

**Exception:** Small house skilled nursing facilities, with a peak shift of less than five staff, may provide a single toilet room serving both male and female personnel in compliance with the California Plumbing Code Table 4-3, footnote 7.

**1225.5 SKILLED NURSING UNIT MODELS.** The requirements of the Medical Model or the Household Model shall apply to the Nursing Unit(s) in its entirety.

#### 1225.5.1 MEDICAL MODEL.

**1225.5.1.1 General construction.** Skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities shall comply with Sections 1224.4 through 1224.13 whenever applicable.

#### 1225.5.1.2 NURSING SERVICE SPACE.

**1225.5.1.2.1 Patient bedrooms.** Patients shall be accommodated only in rooms with the following minimum floor area, exclusive of toilet rooms, wardrobes, entrance vestibules and fixed furnishings or equipment.

1. Single-patient rooms: 110 square feet (10.21 m<sup>2</sup>).
2. Multi-patient rooms: 80 square feet (7.43 m<sup>2</sup>) per bed.

**1225.5.1.2.2 Bed clearance.** The dimensions and arrangement shall be such that there is a minimum distance of 3 feet (914 mm) between the sides and foot of the beds and any wall or any other fixed obstruction. In multiple-bed rooms, in addition to the above, a minimum clearance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between beds and a clearance of 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be available at the foot of each bed to permit the passage of equipment and beds.

**1225.5.1.2.3 Patient room beds.** Patient rooms shall be of such shape and dimensions to allow for the performance of routine functions, including the easy transfer of patients to and from bed to wheelchair or wheeled stretcher. Patient rooms shall provide direct access to a toilet room without entering or passing through a patient bed area. Maximum occupancy shall be two patients per patient room.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing individual patient rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2013, or prior, California Building Code, maximum room capacity shall be no more than the present capacity, to a maximum of four patients per patient room. Placement of beds

shall not be more than three deep from the exterior window. This exception is not permitted for patient rooms providing subacute care.

**1225.5.1.2.4 Outside exposure.** Each patient bed area shall have an outside exposure and shall not be below ground level. The window or glazed opening shall provide an unobstructed view from the head of each patient bed to the outdoors and shall be accessible to approach using a wheelchair or other patient-operated mobility device.

**1225.5.1.2.5 Patient storage.** Each patient room shall be provided with wardrobe or locker spaces for clothing, toilet articles or other personal belongings for each patient.

**Exception:** Pediatric and psychiatric patient rooms.

**1225.5.1.2.6 Patient toilet room.** Each patient room shall have its own patient toilet room. Each patient shall have direct access to a toilet room without entering a general corridor or patient bed area in a shared patient room.

#### 1225.5.1.3 PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICE SPACE.

**1225.5.1.3.1 Drug space and storage.** Adequate space shall be provided at each nursing station for the storage of drugs and preparation of medication doses.

**1225.5.1.3.2 Drug access.** All spaces and areas used for the storage of drugs shall be lockable and accessible to authorized personnel only.

**1225.5.1.3.3 Narcotics.** Specific space shall be designed for safe storage of narcotics and other dangerous drugs.

**1225.5.1.3.4 Drug refrigeration.** Facilities shall provide for storage of drugs requiring refrigeration.

**1225.5.1.3.5 Pharmacy.** The pharmacy shall not serve the general public unless a separate public entrance or a separate public serving window is utilized.

**1225.5.1.4 ACTIVITY PROGRAMMING SPACE.** Designated activity areas appropriate to independent and group needs of patients shall be provided as follows:

##### 1225.5.1.4.1 Skilled nursing facilities.

1. **Recreation room.** Each floor of each building accommodating six or more patients shall be provided with a recreation room with a minimum of 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>).

2. **Recreation and dining.** A minimum of 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) plus 12 square feet (1.11 m<sup>2</sup>) per bed shall be provided for recreation and dining activities.

##### 1225.5.1.4.2 Intermediate-care facilities.

1. **Recreation room.** Each floor of each building accommodating five or more patients shall be

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*provided with a recreation room with a minimum of 150 square feet ( $13.94\text{ m}^2$ ).*

2. *Recreation and dining.* A minimum of 30 square feet ( $2.79\text{ m}^2$ ) per bed for recreation and dining activities.

3. *Outdoor space for activities and recreation.*

**1225.5.1.4.3 Equipment and supplies.** Recreation and dining spaces shall be provided with space to store equipment and supplies.

### 1225.5.2 HOUSEHOLD MODEL.

**1225.5.2.1 General construction.** Skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities and small house skilled nursing facilities shall comply with Sections 1224.4 through 1224.13 whenever applicable, and the following sections:

**1225.5.2.1.1 Door thresholds.** Door thresholds, except where required at exterior doors and expansion joint covers, shall be designed to facilitate use of wheelchairs and carts and to prevent tripping, and shall provide a smooth and level transition from surface-to-surface.

**1225.5.2.1.2 Seating area.** A seating area(s) located out of the required egress width shall be provided along the access corridor that is used by patients.

**1225.5.2.1.3 Towel bars.** Towel bars shall be provided at each bathing facility.

**1225.5.2.1.4 Hardware.** All patient use plumbing fixtures and door operating hardware shall be equipped with lever type hardware for easy gripping and turning.

**1225.5.2.1.5 Drinking fountain.** A minimum of one drinking fountain shall be provided per resident floor, unless drinking water is available from the resident dietary area.

### 1225.5.2.2 Cluster/household unit and resident unit.

**1225.5.2.2.1 Design.** Each resident unit shall consist of the resident rooms, resident support areas and resident living areas. The unit shall be designed as a cluster/household resident unit or as a resident unit with double or single loaded access corridors. If the cluster/household unit design is utilized, it shall be designed around resident support and living areas with a maximum of 20 patients per cluster/household unit. If the double or single loaded corridor resident unit design is utilized, the access corridor shall be designed so that travel distance from the entrance of the resident unit to the furthest resident room door is no more than 60 feet ( $18.29\text{ m}$ ) without a change of corridor direction or a node for a resident sitting area.

**Exception:** Small house skilled nursing facilities are limited to household units with a maximum of 12 patients per unit. Small house household units

*may also be developed as individual, free-standing facilities.*

**1225.5.2.2.2 Arrangement.** Each resident unit shall be arranged to avoid unnecessary and unrelated travel through the unit.

**1225.5.2.2.3 Distinct parts or neighborhoods.** Both the cluster/household unit and resident unit designs may be grouped into distinct parts or neighborhoods to a maximum of 60 patients. These distinct parts or neighborhoods composed of the resident unit(s) as described in Section 1225.5.2.2.1 may share the functional requirements of the resident support areas as described in Sections 1225.5.2.4 and 1225.5.2.5 of this code.

### 1225.5.2.3 Resident room.

**1225.5.2.3.1 Capacity.** In new construction and additions, the maximum room capacity shall be two patients. Resident sleeping areas in all double resident room designs shall be visually separated from each other by a full height wall or a permanently installed sliding or folding door or partition, and shall provide each patient direct use of and direct access to an exterior window at all times. Walls, doors or partitions used to separate resident beds shall provide visual and acoustical separation. A door leading to each resident bed area in addition to the corridor door is not required. Other resident room arrangements where a permanent partition or door is not used to separate the resident sleeping areas may be utilized if adequate visual separation such as a cubicle curtain(s) and an exterior window for each individual resident sleeping area is provided. In this case individual thermostats for the resident bed areas shall not be required.

**Exception:** In small house skilled nursing facilities, resident sleeping areas in all double-resident room designs shall be visually separated from each other by a full-height wall or a permanently installed sliding or folding door or partition, and shall provide each patient direct use of and direct access to an exterior window at all times. Walls, doors or partitions used to separate resident beds shall provide visual and acoustical separation.

**1225.5.2.3.2 Renovation.** Where renovation work is undertaken of the resident room that alters the physical configuration of the resident room and the present capacity is more than two patients, the maximum room capacity shall be no more than two patients at the conclusion of the renovation.

**1225.5.2.3.3 Space requirements.** Rooms shall have a minimum of 100 square feet ( $9.29\text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per bed in double resident rooms and 120 square feet ( $11.15\text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area in single resident rooms, exclusive of the space consumed by toilet rooms, closets, lockers, wardrobes, lavatories, alcoves and door swings into the room or entrance vestibules, whichever is greater. For the purpose of

*minimum clear floor area, the entrance vestibule is defined as that floor area located between the room entrance door and the room floor area containing the resident bed(s).*

**1225.5.2.3.4 Arrangement.** Dimensions and arrangement of resident rooms shall be designed to accommodate at least two bed positions to provide patient choice of bed placement. All such bed positions shall be designed so that the bed will not obstruct access to the supporting utilities serving the bed, such as the nurse call station, and the required electrical outlets that provide service for that bed. Only one bed position design shall be required for a bed that is equipped with a piped medical gas headwall unit, unless special requirements such as providing care for bariatric patients does permit the design of two bed positions in the room.

**1225.5.2.3.5 Clearance.** A 3 feet (0.91 m) wide clear access to each bed shall be provided along at least 75 percent of the length of one side of the bed and shall be designed to allow access for the use of a wheelchair and other portable equipment. For beds equipped with a piped-in medical gas headwall unit, there shall be a minimum of 3 feet (0.91 m) between the sides and foot of the bed and any wall or any other fixed obstruction. For planning purposes, a full-size bed is assumed to be 3 feet 6 inches (1.07 m) wide by 8 feet (2.43 m) long.

**1225.5.2.3.6 Renovations.** For renovations that alter the physical configuration of the resident room but have existing structural limitations that require two resident beds to be located in a shared resident sleeping area, there shall be a minimum of 3 feet (0.91 m) between the sides and foot of the bed and the adjacent bed. If one bed must be located to the side of the other bed, there shall be a clearance of 4 feet (1.22 m) to any fixed obstruction available at the foot of this bed to permit the passage of equipment and bed without moving the resident's bed located nearest to the room door.

**Exception:** In small house skilled nursing facilities, two beds shall not be permitted in a shared resident sleeping area.

**1225.5.2.3.7 Resident toilet or bath room.** Each patient shall have access to a toilet room without having to enter the general corridor area or the resident bed area in a shared resident room. One toilet room shall serve no more than two patients and no more than two resident rooms. The door to the toilet room shall be side hinged and either swing out from the toilet room or be equipped with emergency release hardware. Sliding doors equipped with sliding door hardware located on the resident room side of the wall and not equipped with a bottom door track shall be permitted. If a sliding door is used in a resident toilet or bath room, a D-shaped handle at least 4 inches (10.16 cm) long shall be provided to open the door. The

*sliding door shall permit access, and negate the need to push against a patient who may have collapsed within the toilet room. Unless otherwise required by this code, this door shall be at least 36 inches (914.4 mm) wide. A lavatory shall be provided in each resident toilet room.*

**1225.5.2.3.8 Wardrobe closet.** Each resident room shall be provided with a wardrobe or closet for each patient. Each wardrobe or closet shall have minimum inside dimensions of 2 feet (0.61 m) in depth by 1 foot 8 inches (0.51 m) in width. Each shall be accessible to the patient at all times and shall have adjustable shelf(s) and an adjustable clothes rod that is adjustable in at most 4 inches (10.16 cm) increments from 4 feet (1.22 m) to 5 feet 8 inches (1.73 m) above finished floor or higher as closet size permits. When the wardrobe or closet is designed to meet the requirements for accessibility per Chapter 11B of this code, it shall include additional accessible storage area(s) for full-length garments. The shelf may be omitted if the clothing unit provides at least two drawers. Locked storage for personal items shall be provided within the resident sleeping room or area.

#### 1225.5.2.4 Resident support area.

**1225.5.2.4.1 Features and arrangement.** Size and features of each resident support area will depend upon the number and type of patients served. The resident support area may be arranged and located to serve more than one resident unit, but at least one such support area shall be provided on each resident floor. The following resident support areas shall be located in or be readily accessible to each resident unit.

**1225.5.2.4.2 Staff work area.** A centralized staff work area shall be provided. It shall have space for supervisory administrative work activities, charting and storage. In each resident unit, the functions of administrative work, charting and storage may be located among several separate direct care staff work areas. In this case, a centralized staff work area is not required.

**1225.5.2.4.3 Clean utility.** A clean utility or clean holding room for storage and distribution of clean supply materials shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain a work counter, a handwashing station and storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies. If the room is used only for storage and holding as a part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile supply materials, the work counter and handwashing station requirements may be omitted. The minimum size of the room shall be 15 square feet (1.39 m<sup>2</sup>) with 1 square foot (0.092 m<sup>2</sup>) of additional space provided per patient for over 15 patients and may be allocated among several clean utility or clean holding rooms or closets.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1225.5.2.4.4 Soiled utility.** A soiled utility or soiled holding room(s) shall be provided. The soiled utility function shall be comprised of a flushing rim clinical service sink or other appropriate flushing fixture, with bedpan rinsing device, soiled linen receptacles, waste receptacles, handwashing station and a work counter with a usable minimum work surface area of 6 square feet ( $0.56\text{ m}^2$ ). The total minimum size of the room shall be 20 square feet ( $1.86\text{ m}^2$ ) with 1.5 square feet ( $0.140\text{ m}^2$ ) of additional space provided per patient for over 15 patients and may be allocated among several soiled utility or soiled holding rooms. Rooms used only for the holding of soiled materials need contain only a handwashing station.

**1225.5.2.4.5 Medicine preparation.** A medicine preparation room or a self-contained medicine dispensing unit shall be provided for the provision of medication distribution. The self-contained medicine dispensing unit shall be under the visual control of the staff. If a medicine preparation room is utilized, it shall be equipped with a lockable door, have a minimum area of 50 square feet ( $4.65\text{ m}^2$ ) and shall contain a refrigerator, locked storage for controlled drugs, a handwashing station and a work counter with a minimum of 6 square feet ( $0.56\text{ m}^2$ ) of work surface. If a self-contained medicine dispensing unit is utilized, it may be located at the nurse station, in the clean utility room, in an alcove, or in other spaces convenient for staff control provided the area occupied by the unit does not encroach upon required minimum areas. The dispensing unit may be used in a medicine preparation room as locked storage for controlled drugs within the minimum area of 50 square feet ( $4.65\text{ m}^2$ ), however, the standard "cup sinks" provided in many self-contained units shall not be a substitute for the required handwashing station. If there is no linen storage in the clean utility room, medicine preparation may be part of the clean utility room in which case an additional 20 square feet ( $1.8\text{ m}^2$ ) dedicated for this purpose shall be required. A refrigerator shall also be required if medicine preparation is included in this room. Non-controlled prescription drugs may be stored inside the resident's sleeping room or toilet room if they are secured inside of an automatic closing and automatic locking dispensing unit that is secured in place.

**1225.5.2.4.5.1.** In small house skilled nursing facilities, if self-contained medicine dispensing units are provided, they shall be located in either a medication preparation room or a clean utility room.

**1225.5.2.4.6 Equipment storage.** An equipment storage room(s) shall be provided for storage of resident unit equipment. The minimum area required shall be equal to 2 square feet ( $0.19\text{ m}^2$ ) for each patient with no room being less than 20 square feet ( $1.86\text{ m}^2$ ) in area.

**1225.5.2.4.7 Housekeeping room.** A housekeeping room(s) shall be provided for storage and use of housekeeping supplies and equipment.

**1225.5.2.4.8 Clean linen room.** A clean linen storage room, closet or area shall be provided. This area may be located within the clean utility or clean holding room and shall be large enough to accommodate the storage of linen carts.

**1225.5.2.4.9 Nourishment room.** A nourishment room or area for serving nourishments between meals shall be provided and shall contain a work counter, refrigerator, storage cabinets and sink. Ice for patients' consumption shall be provided by an icemaker unit that may serve more than one nourishment station if the nourishment stations are in close proximity to each other. Where the icemaker unit is accessible to patients or the public, it shall be a self-dispensing type. The nourishment room shall include space for trays and dishes used for non-scheduled meal service. A handwashing station shall be in or immediately accessible from the nourishment room.

**1225.5.2.4.9.1** In small house skilled nursing facilities, the nourishment area may be provided as part of the resident dietary area required under Section 1225.5.2.5.4.

**1225.5.2.4.10 Storage alcove.** A storage alcove space for a wheelchair(s) shall be provided in an area located out of the required means of exit access.

**1225.5.2.4.11 Resident bathing facilities.** Resident bathing facilities shall be provided with a minimum of one bathtub or one hydro tub per resident unit, or one shower for every 20 patients and for each major fraction thereof not otherwise served by bathing facilities in resident rooms. When centralized bathing is provided, patients shall have access to at least one bathing room per floor or unit sized to permit assisted bathing in a tub or shower in that resident unit. The bathtub in this room shall be accessible to patients in wheelchairs and the shower shall accommodate a shower chair. Other tubs or showers shall be in individual rooms or curtained enclosures with space for private use of the bathing fixture, for drying and dressing, and access to a grooming location containing a sink, mirror and counter or shelf. A separate private toilet shall be provided that is directly accessible to each multi-bathing fixture central bathing area without requiring entry into the general corridor. This toilet may also serve as a toilet training facility. This centralized bathing area shall comply with Chapter 11B of this code.

**1225.5.2.4.12 Private bathing.** All showers located in bathrooms connected directly to the resident room shall be designed so that a shower chair can be easily rolled over the threshold. Resident rooms and associated toilet rooms, required to be accessible, shall comply with Chapter 11B of this code.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1225.5.2.5 Resident living area.**

**1225.5.2.5.1 Dining.** Dining, lounges, and recreation and social areas for patients shall be provided in each resident unit. The total area of these spaces shall be a minimum of 35 square feet ( $3.25 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient with a minimum total area of 225 square feet ( $20.90 \text{ m}^2$ ). At least 20 square feet ( $1.86 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient shall be available for dining. Storage for supplies and equipment shall be provided in the recreation area.

**1225.5.2.5.2 Outdoor area.** Outdoor area(s) shall be provided for the use of all patients and shall include walking paths of durable materials, benches, shaded areas and visual focusing element(s) such as landscaping, sculpture(s) or fountain(s). Security fencing if used shall be of a residential design and provide some visual connection to the exterior of the secured area. If an exterior visual connection is not possible or desirable, then the interior of the outside area shall be landscaped to be visually interesting.

**1225.5.2.5.3 Storage.** Storage for supplies, patient needs and recreation shall be provided. The minimum required area shall be 5 square feet ( $0.46 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed up to 600 square feet ( $55.74 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1225.5.2.5.4 Dietary area.** A resident dietary area shall be provided in the resident unit for the use of staff, patients and family. The resident dietary area may include cooking equipment, counter tops, kitchen sink and storage areas. This dietary area is in addition to the dietetic service space requirements in Section 1225.4.2.

**1225.5.2.5.4.1** Food preparation spaces in the resident dietary area in a small house skilled nursing facility shall be designed to accommodate the method of food preparation required. The California Department of Public Health, Licensing and Certification shall review proposed food services spaces at a preliminary stage of plan review.

**1225.5.2.5.4.2** The resident dietary area in a small house skilled nursing facility shall provide a handwashing station. This handwashing station shall be in addition to the kitchen sink and shall be located in or immediately accessible to the resident kitchen facilities.

**1225.5.2.5.4.3** When provided, the resident dietary area in a small house skilled nursing facility shall have a commercial ware-washing space meeting the requirements for the care model used. This space shall be designed to prevent cross contamination by providing area for receiving, scraping, sorting and stacking soiled tableware and for transferring clean tableware to point-of-use areas.

**1225.5.2.5.4.4** The resident dietary area in a small house skilled nursing facility shall provide

access to self-dispensing drinking water and self-dispensing ice.

- (a) Ice-making equipment shall be accessible to residents and visitors
- (b) Ice-making equipment shall be located, designed and installed to minimize noise.
- (c) Ice-making equipment shall be permitted to serve more than one food area within resident kitchen facilities.

**1225.5.2.5.5 Therapy unit.** If provided, physical, speech and occupational therapy units shall comply with Sections 1225.6.2 through 1225.6.4.

**1225.5.2.5.6 Barber/beauty room.** If provided, the barber/beauty room shall be a minimum of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) with the least dimension of 10 feet (3.05 m).

**1225.5.2.5.7 Resident laundry facilities.** If provided, resident laundry facilities including washing and drying equipment may be provided for staff, family or individual patient use for the laundering of patient's personal items. If provided they shall be readily accessible from each resident unit without requiring the user to enter another resident unit or floor, and may be shared between two resident units. These resident laundry facilities may utilize residential laundry equipment. Each resident laundry area shall contain a handwashing fixture.

**1225.5.2.6 STAFF SUPPORT AREA.**

**1225.5.2.6.1 Staff lounge.** Staff lounge area(s) shall be provided. It may be shared by multiple resident units if the lounge is located so it is accessible without requiring the user to enter into or through any other resident unit.

**1225.5.2.6.2 Storage.** Lockable closets, drawers or compartments shall be provided on the resident unit for staff and may be located in the lounge for safe-keeping of staff's personal effects.

**1225.5.2.6.3 Staff toilet rooms.** Staff toilet rooms shall be readily accessible to each resident unit.

**1225.5.2.6.4 Multipurpose room.** At least one multipurpose room per skilled nursing facility shall be provided for conferences, meetings and health education purposes, and shall accommodate the use of visual aids. This room shall have a minimum area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**1225.5.2.6.5 Conference room.** Conference or consultation room for patient and family use shall be provided and may be shared by more than two resident units if it is centrally located to each.

**1225.6 OPTIONAL SERVICES.**

**1225.6.1 General.** Waiting areas and access to optional services for outpatients shall accommodate the following:

**1225.6.1.1 Outpatient waiting rooms.** Waiting rooms for outpatients shall provide a seating area and space for wheelchairs, and have public corridor access to or

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*provisions for, public toilet room(s), drinking fountain and telephone.*

**Note:** One waiting area may serve more than one department or service.

**1225.6.1.2 Circulation.** If x-ray examinations are to be performed on outpatients, outpatient access to the radiological spaces shall not traverse a nursing unit.

**Exception:** Satellite radiology, laboratory, pharmacy, and physical and occupational therapy space serving inpatients may be located in nursing units and inpatient treatment areas.

**1225.6.2 PHYSICAL THERAPY SERVICE.** Refer to Section 1224.35.2.

**1225.6.3 OCCUPATIONAL THERAPY SERVICE.** Refer to Section 1224.35.3.

**1225.6.4 SPEECH PATHOLOGY AND/OR AUDIOLOGY SERVICE.** At least one space free of ambient noise shall be provided. A handwashing station shall be provided.

**1225.6.5 SOCIAL WORK SERVICE.** Office space for privacy in interviewing, telephoning and conferences shall be provided.

**1225.6.6 SPECIAL TREATMENT PROGRAM SERVICE.** Refer to California Administrative Code (Part 1 of Title 24), Section 7-119, Functional Program, for requirements. Projects associated with Special Treatment Program Services in skilled nursing and intermediate-care facilities shall include a Patient Safety Risk Assessment.

**1225.6.6.1 Location.** A special treatment program service providing therapeutic services to an identified mentally disordered population group shall be located in a distinct separate unit of the facility.

**1225.6.6.2 Nursing service.** The nursing service space shall comply with Section 1225.4.1.

**1225.6.6.3 Activity program.** The activity program space shall provide a minimum of 25 square feet (2.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of dining and recreation space per bed.

**1225.6.6.4 Indoor and outdoor space.** Shall be designated for the special treatment program.

## SECTION 1226 [OSHPD 3] CLINICS

**1226.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to primary care clinics, specialty clinics and psychology clinics, licensed by the California Department of Public Health. Primary care clinics include free clinics, community clinics, employee clinics and optometric clinics. Specialty clinics include surgical clinics, chronic dialysis clinics, rehabilitation clinics and alternative birth centers (ABC). This section shall also apply to outpatient clinical services of a hospital when provided in a freestanding building.

**1226.2 Application.** All new buildings and additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings and conversion of space to a clinic use within existing buildings, subject to

licensure by Licensing and Certification, California Department of Public Health, shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code, California Fire Code, (Parts 3, 4, 5 and 9 of Title 24) and this section. OSHPD requirements apply to all facilities described above and are not dependent upon Occupancy Group designations.

**Exception:** See Section 1224.2.

**1226.2.1 Outpatient clinical services.** Hospitals providing outpatient clinical services and clinics licensed under Health and Safety Code Section 1200 providing services that are not covered by this section shall meet the applicable requirements in Section 1224.

**1226.2.2 Special services.** A general acute care hospital referenced in Health and Safety Code Section 1255 (d) (3) (E), that provides special services in conformance with Health and Safety Code Section 1255, shall meet all the provisions of Section 1224.28.3 in addition to Section 1226.2. The Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD) shall review any proposed construction or alteration for OSHPD compliance.

**1226.3 Definitions.** Refer to Section 1224.3.

**1226.4 General construction.** Clinics and outpatient clinical services under a hospital license shall comply with the provisions under Section 1224.4, General Construction, where applicable, except as supplemented, amended or modified below.

**1226.4.1 Examination and treatment areas.**

**1226.4.1.1 Service spaces.** Refer to Section 1224.4.2.

**1226.4.1.2 Treatment spaces.** Refer to Section 1224.4.3.

**1226.4.1.3 Examination or treatment room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.

**1226.4.1.4 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

**1226.4.2 Miscellaneous requirements.**

**1226.4.2.1 Station outlets.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.6.1.

**1226.4.2.2 Gas and vacuum systems.** When provided refer to Section 1224.4.6.2.

**1226.4.2.3 Hyperbaric facilities.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.6.3.

**1226.4.2.4 Laboratories.** Refer to Section 1224.4.6.4.

**1226.4.2.5 Nurse call systems.** Refer to Section 1224.4.6.5.

**1226.4.2.6 Noise reduction.** The noise reduction criteria shown in Table 1224.4.19 shall apply to partitions, floors and ceiling construction in patient treatment areas.

**1226.4.3 Corridors.**

**1226.4.3.1 Outpatient services.** Refer to Section 1224.4.7.3

**1226.4.3.2 Corridor width.** For clinics with bed/gurney patient(s) refer to Section 1224.4.7.1.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1226.4.3.3 Light traffic.** Refer Section 1224.4.7.2.

**1226.4.3.4 Handrails.** For rehabilitation services space, refer to Section 1224.4.7.4.

**1226.4.3.5 Contiguous functions.** Basic services of a single licensed clinic may be located in separate suites. Each clinic suite shall be contiguous and include internal circulation to access each of the required functions identified for that specific basic service.

**Exceptions:**

1. Various functions including but not limited to reception, waiting, staff support areas such as toilets, storage and lounge may be located outside of the clinic suite with approval from the California Department of Public Health.
2. If toilets and drinking fountain(s) serving the public are provided as part of the overall building features, they need not be provided within the clinic suite.
3. Shared services. Space for general storage, laundry, housekeeping and waste management may be shared with other tenants.

**1226.4.4 Doors and door openings.**

**1226.4.4.1 Toilet room doors.** Refer to Section 1224.4.8.1.

**1226.4.4.2 Pocket doors.** Refer to Section 1224.4.8.2.

**1226.4.5 Windows.**

**1226.4.5.1 Window screens.** Refer to Section 1224.4.9.4.

**1226.4.5.2 Light and ventilation.** Refer to Section 1224.4.9.5.

**1226.4.6 Ceiling heights.**

**1226.4.6.1 Minimum height.** For minimum ceiling height requirements, refer to Section 1224.4.10.1.

**1226.4.6.2 Minimum height with fixed ceiling equipment.** Refer to Section 1224.4.10.2.

**1226.4.7 Interior finishes.**

**1226.4.7.1 Floor finishes.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.1 and Table 1224.4.11.

**1226.4.7.1.1 Coved base.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.1.1.

**1226.4.7.1.2 Wet cleaning.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.1.3.

**1226.4.7.1.3 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** Refer to Section 1224.11.1.4.

**1226.4.7.2 Wall bases.**

**1226.4.7.2.1 Material.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.2.1.

**1226.4.7.2.2 Wet cleaning.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.2.2.

**1226.4.7.3 Wall finishes.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.3.

**1226.4.7.4 Ceilings.** Ceiling finishes shall comply with Section 1224.4.11.4 and Table 1224.4.11.

**1226.4.8 Elevators.**

**1226.4.8.1 Elevator cab requirements.** Buildings over one story in height with accommodations or services for patients on floors without grade-level entrance shall provide at least one elevator in compliance with Section 3002.4.

**1226.4.8.2 Dimensions.** Elevators used for the routine transport of wheeled stretchers shall have minimum inside platform dimensions of 5 feet by 8 feet (1524 mm by 2438 mm) and a minimum clear door opening of 3 feet 8 inches (1118 mm).

**1226.4.9 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage.** These facilities shall comply with the appropriate local health and environmental authorities' requirements, California Department of Public Health requirements for medical waste management, and comply with the following minimum requirements:

**1226.4.9.1 Location.** A location shall be provided for waste collection and storage with sufficient space based upon the volume of projected waste and length of anticipated storage. The location of compactors, balers, sharps containers and recycling container staging at docks or other waste removal areas shall comply with Section 1224.4.2.

**1226.4.9.2 Enclosure.** A lockable room or screened enclosure of at least 25 square feet ( $2.32 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be provided for the washing and cleaning of garbage containers and for the storage of garbage, trash and other solid wastes.

**Exception:** This amount of space may not be required by the enforcing agency if there is a proposed method of handling and storage which requires a lesser amount of space. Additional space may be required by the enforcing agency when special operations or collection and disposal methods result in greater than usual accumulation of solid wastes.

The room or screened enclosure shall include the following:

1. **Floor and curb.** A concrete floor with a curb and with a drain connected to the sewer.
2. **Water.** Steam or hot water and cold water supplies in accordance with the California Plumbing Code.
3. **Size.** A minimum floor area of not less than 25 square feet ( $2.32 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). This amount of space may not be required by the enforcing agency if there is proposed a method of handling, storage or cleaning of containers which requires a lesser amount of space. Additional space may be required by the enforcing agency when special operations or collection and disposal methods result in greater than usual accumulation of solid wastes.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1226.4.9.3 Waste holding room.** As an alternative to the requirements in Section 1226.4.9.2, a holding room for medical waste and garbage may be provided.

**Exception:** This amount of space may not be required by the enforcing agency if there is a proposed method of handling and storage which requires a lesser amount of space. Additional space may be required by the enforcing agency when special operations or collection and disposal methods result in greater than usual accumulation of solid wastes.

The waste holding room shall comply with the following:

1. The waste holding room shall be a minimum of 25 square feet, with the least dimension of which is 4 feet.
2. The waste holding room shall have 100 percent exhaust ventilation.
3. All finishes in the waste holding room shall comply with the requirements in Section 1224.4.11.
4. The waste holding room shall be immediately accessible to an exterior door.

**1226.4.10 Compactors.** Trash compactor systems shall meet the drainage and wash-down requirements under Section 1226.4.9.2, Items 1 and 2.

**Exception:** If a dumpster system is proposed, operational procedures for handling and storage must be specifically approved by the local health officials.

**1226.4.11 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

**1226.4.12 Laundry and trash chutes.** Gravity-type laundry and trash chutes shall comply with Section 1224.4.16.

**1226.4.13 Support areas for examination and treatment rooms.**

**1226.4.13.1 Nurse station(s).** If required, this area shall have space for counters and storage and shall have direct access to a handwashing stations (refer to Section 1224.3 for definition of handwashing station). It may be combined with or include centers for reception, charting and communication.

**1226.4.13.2 Medication station.** Provision shall be made for distribution of medications. This shall be done from a medicine preparation room or a self-contained medicine dispensing unit.

**1226.4.13.2.1 Medicine preparation room or area.**

When provided, the entry of the medicine preparation room or area shall be under the visual control of the staff. This may be a part of the administrative center or nurse station and shall include all of the following:

1. Work counter
2. Sink
3. Lockable refrigerator
4. Immediate access to handwashing station

### 5. Locked storage for biologicals and drugs

When a medicine preparation room or area is to be used to store self-contained medicine dispensing units, the room shall be designed with adequate space to prepare medicines with the self-contained medicine-dispensing units present.

**1226.4.13.2.2 Self-contained medicine-dispensing unit.** When provided, the location of a self-contained medicine-dispensing unit shall be permitted in the clean workroom or at the administrative center or nurse station, provided there is adequate security for medications and adequate lighting to easily identify drugs. Immediate access to a hand-washing station shall be provided.

**1226.4.13.3 Clean utility room.** A clean utility room shall be provided. If the room is used for preparing patient care items, it shall contain:

1. Work counter
2. Handwashing station
3. Storage facilities for clean and sterile supplies

If the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile materials from a central sterile supply, the work counter and handwashing station may be omitted. Soiled and clean utility rooms or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

**1226.4.13.4 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room.** Soiled workroom or soiled holding room shall be provided and contain:

1. Clinic sink
2. Handwashing station
3. Work counter
4. Storage cabinets
5. A designated area for waste receptacle(s)
6. A designated area for soiled linen receptacle(s)

If the clinic includes a central sterile supply that complies with Section 1224.22 and the soiled holding room is used only for temporary holding of soiled materials, the clinic sink and work counter may be omitted. Where rooms are used for temporary holding of materials, provisions shall be made for separate collection, storage and disposal of soiled materials. Soiled and clean utility rooms or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

**1226.4.13.5 Sterile and pharmaceutical supply storage.** Separate storage for sterile supplies and pharmaceutical supplies shall be provided.

**1226.4.13.6 Sterilization facilities.** When provided, a sterilization facility shall meet the following applicable requirements:

**1226.4.13.6.1 Storage.** Each facility shall provide space for the storage of disposable sterile supplies or provide space for sterilization and disinfection equipment.

**Exception:** Facilities with contractual arrangements for outside autoclaving and sterilizing services.

**1226.4.13.6.2 Central sterile supply and sterilizing area.** When provided, rooms and spaces of the central supply and sterilizing area shall comply with the following:

1. **Soiled work area.** A receiving and gross cleaning area which shall contain work space and equipment for cleaning medical and surgical equipment and for disposal of or processing of soiled materials.
2. **Clean work area.** A clean work area which shall contain work space and equipment for sterilizing medical and surgical equipment and supplies.
3. **Sterilizing and equipment disinfection space.**
4. **Storage.** Space for sterile supplies and unsterile supplies.

**1226.4.13.6.3 Sterilizers.** When provided, all sterilizers and autoclaves which emit system steam exhaust shall be vented to the outside of the building. Such vents shall be independent from the plumbing vent system.

**Exception:** Small instrument sterilizers.

**1226.4.13.7 Nourishment room.** When provided, the nourishment room or area shall have all of the following:

1. Sink
2. Work counter
3. Refrigerator
4. Storage cabinets
5. Equipment for serving nourishment
6. A handwashing station, as defined in Section 1224.3, shall be located in the nourishment room or be immediately accessible without going through a door.

#### 1226.4.14 Support areas for patients.

**1226.4.14.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Toilet room(s) with a lavatory shall be provided separate from public use toilet(s) and shall be located to permit access from patient care areas without passing through publicly accessible areas.

**Exception:** For primary care clinics where the facility contains no more than three examination and/or

treatment rooms, the patient toilet room shall be permitted to serve outpatient waiting room(s).

**1226.4.14.2 Specimen and/or blood collection facilities.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.2. Use of patient toilet room(s) shall be permitted for specimen collection.

#### 1226.4.15 General support services and facilities.

**1226.4.15.1 Areas for off-site laundry services.** If linen is to be processed off site, the following shall be provided:

1. Soiled linen holding area or designated and dedicated area for soiled laundry cart.
2. Clean linen storage area that protects linen from soil or damage.

#### 1226.4.16 Public and administrative areas.

##### 1226.4.16.1 Public.

**1226.4.16.1.1 Reception.** A reception and information counter or desk shall be provided.

**1226.4.16.1.2 Outpatient waiting rooms.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

##### 1226.4.16.2 Administrative services.

**1226.4.16.2.1 Medical records storage.** Outpatient clinics shall provide a health record service which shall comply with the following:

1. Work area for sorting and recording records for either paper or electronic media.
2. Storage area for records for either paper or electronic media.

**1226.4.16.2.2 Equipment and supply storage.** General storage facilities for office supplies and equipment shall be provided.

#### 1226.4.17 Support areas for staff.

**1226.4.17.1 Staff toilet(s).** Provide staff toilet(s) in addition to and separate from, public and patient facilities. The areas shall contain toilet(s) and handwashing stations pursuant to the California Plumbing Code, Table 4-2.

**1226.4.17.2 Storage for employees.** Provide storage for staff personal effects with locking drawers or cabinets (may be individual desks or cabinets). Such storage shall be readily accessible to individual workstations and shall be staff controlled.

**1226.4.17.3 Staff lounge.** When provided, the lounge shall have adequate space to accommodate staff.

### OUTPATIENT CLINICAL SERVICES OF A HOSPITAL

**1226.5 OUTPATIENT CLINICAL SERVICES OF A HOSPITAL.** A licensed hospital may elect to locate certain outpatient services in a freestanding building. To be considered a freestanding building, refer to the California Administrative Code Section 7-111. See Section 309A.5.1 of the California Existing Building Code for eligibility for jurisdiction of the local enforcement agency over freestanding buildings adjacent to hospital buildings.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*Outpatient clinical services of a hospital provided in a freestanding building are regulated under the banner [OSHPD 3] instead of [OSHPD 1]. These services shall comply with Sections 1226.4.2 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section. Outpatient clinical services of a hospital that are not addressed in the provisions of Section 1226 shall comply with applicable provisions of Section 1224 and/or Section 1228 as if those provisions were repeated in Section 1226.5.*

### **GENERAL SUPPORT AREAS FOR OUTPATIENT CLINICAL SERVICES - Requirements for all service types.**

#### **1226.5.1 Support areas for patients.**

**1226.5.1.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

**1226.5.1.2 Specimen and/or blood collection facilities.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.2.

#### **1226.5.2 General support services and facilities.**

**1226.5.2.1 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

**1226.5.2.2 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

#### **1226.5.3 Public and administrative areas.**

##### **1226.5.3.1 Public area.**

**1226.5.3.1.1 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.5.3.1.2 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.5.3.1.3 Public toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.5.3.1.4 Public telephone access.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.5.3.1.5 Drinking fountain(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

##### **1226.5.3.2 Administrative services.**

**1226.5.3.2.1 Medical records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

**1226.5.3.2.2 Equipment and supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.2.

#### **1226.5.4 Support areas for staff.**

**1226.5.4.1 Staff toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

**1226.5.4.2 Storage for employees.** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.2.

## **RADIOLOGICAL/IMAGING SERVICE SPACE**

**1226.5.5 Radiological/imaging service space.** When x-ray examination services, computerized tomography scanning, magnetic resonance imaging, ultrasound and/or mammography services are provided, the radiological/imaging services space shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1226.5.5.1 Support spaces for radiological/imaging services.** The following spaces are common to the imaging service area and are minimum requirements:

**1226.5.5.1.1 Patient toilet room(s).** In service spaces with procedure rooms that do not require dedicated patient toilets, provide a minimum of one patient toilet room within the service space, refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

**1226.5.5.1.2 Outpatient change area.** A separate space shall be provided where outpatients change from street clothing. This shall include provisions for clothing storage, space for clothing change and gowning area. Dressing rooms shall be readily accessible to the imaging rooms.

**1226.5.5.1.3 Staff facilities.** In service space of three or more procedure rooms, staff toilet room(s) internal to the service space.

**1226.5.5.1.4 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be located within the unit.

**1226.5.5.1.5 Imaging storage (active).** If imaging storage systems are used, provide a means of sorting and filing patient film or electronic media for immediate retrieval shall be provided.

**1226.5.5.1.6 Medication station.** Provision shall be made for locked storage of medications and drugs. Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

**1226.5.5.1.7 Areas for off-site laundry services.** Refer to Section 1226.4.15.1.

**1226.5.5.2 Radiation protection.** Radiation protection requirements for equipment refer to Section 1224.18.1.1.

**1226.5.6 X-ray examination services.** When provided, x-ray examination services space shall comply with the following:

1. X-ray room.
2. When shielded control alcove with protective view windows is provided, refer to Section 1224.18.1.1.
3. Fluoroscopy room, when provided, shall have a toilet room directly accessible to the fluoroscopy room. This toilet room is in addition to common patient toilet room facilities located in the radiological/imaging service space.
4. Space for processing images.
5. An office or other suitable area for viewing and reporting radiographic examination.

**1226.5.7 Computerized tomography (CT) scanning.** When provided, CT services space shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.18.3.

**1226.5.8 Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).** When provided, MRI services space shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.18.4.

**1226.5.9 Ultrasound.** When ultrasound is provided, refer to Section 1224.18.5.

**1226.5.10 Mammography.** When mammography is provided, refer to Section 1224.18.6.

**GASTROINTESTINAL ENDOSCOPY**

**1226.5.11 Gastrointestinal endoscopy.** When provided, gastrointestinal endoscopy services space shall comply with Section 1224.39.3 and the provisions of this section:

**1226.5.11.1 Procedure Room(s).**

**1226.5.11.1.1 Space requirements.** Refer to Section 1224.39.3.1.1.

**1226.5.11.1.2 Handwashing station.** Refer to Section 1224.39.3.1.2.

**1226.5.11.2 Processing room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.3.2.

**1226.5.11.3 Preoperative patient holding.** Refer to Section 1224.16.2.

**1226.5.11.4 Post-anesthesia recovery area.** Refer to Section 1224.16.

**1226.5.11.5 Communication system.** Refer to Section 1224.39.3.5.

**1226.5.11.6 Support areas for outpatient gastrointestinal endoscopy.**

**1226.5.11.6.1 Control station.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.1.

**1226.5.11.6.2 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

**1226.5.11.6.3 Soiled workroom.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.7.

**1226.5.11.6.4 Clean utility room.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.8.

**1226.5.11.6.5 Anesthesia workroom.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.9.

**1226.5.11.6.6 Storage room(s) for equipment and supplies used in gastrointestinal endoscopy service space.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.10.

**1226.5.11.6.7 Staff clothing change areas.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.11.

**1226.5.11.6.8 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.2.3.2.

**1226.5.11.6.9 Sterile and pharmaceutical supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.5.

**1226.5.11.7 Additional support areas for patients.**

**1226.5.11.7.1 Outpatient change area.** A separate space shall be provided where patients change out of their street clothing and are prepared for the procedure. This space shall include provisions for clothing storage, toilet room(s), sink, space for clothing change and gowning area.

**NUCLEAR MEDICINE**

**1226.5.12 Nuclear medicine.** When provided, nuclear medicine services space shall comply with Section 1224.34 and the provisions of this section:

**1226.5.12.1 Radiation protection.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.34.1.1.

**1226.5.12.2 Nuclear medicine room.** Refer to Section 1224.34.1.2.

**1226.5.12.3 Radiopharmacy.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.34.1.3.

**1226.5.12.4 Support areas for nuclear medicine services.**

**1226.5.12.4.1 Cleanup.** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.2.

**1226.5.12.4.2 Dose administration area.** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.5.

**1226.5.12.4.3 Holding.** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.6.

**1226.5.12.4.4 Patient dressing rooms.** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.7.

**1226.5.12.4.5 Patient toilet room(s).** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.8.

**1226.5.12.4.6 Staff toilet room(s).** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.9.

**1226.5.12.4.7 Handwashing stations.** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.10.

**1226.5.12.4.8 Control desk and reception.** Refer to Section 1226.5.3.

**1226.5.12.4.9 Clean linen storage.** A storage area for clean linen shall be provided.

**1226.5.12.4.10 Soiled and contaminated material.** Refer to Section 1224.34.2.13.

**1226.5.12.5 Radiotherapy service space.** When provided, radiotherapy service space shall comply with the following provisions of this section:

**1226.5.12.5.1 Radiation protection.** Refer to Section 1224.34.3.2.

**1226.5.12.5.2 Room sizes.** Refer to Section 1224.34.3.3.

**1226.5.12.5.3 General support area.** Refer to Section 1224.34.3.4.

**1226.5.12.6 Additional support areas for linear accelerator.**

**1226.5.12.6.1 Mold room.** Refer to Section 1224.34.4.1.

**1226.5.12.6.2 Block room.** Refer to Section 1224.34.4.2.

**1226.5.12.7 Additional support areas for cobalt room.**

**1226.5.12.7.1 Hot lab.**

**1226.5.12.8 High dose rate brachytherapy room.**

**CANCER TREATMENT/INFUSION THERAPY**

**1226.5.13 Cancer treatment/infusion therapy service space.** When provided, cancer treatment/infusion therapy service space shall comply with the provisions of this section:

**1226.5.13.1 Treatment area.**

**1226.5.13.1.1 Location.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.1.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1226.5.13.1.2 Nurse station(s).** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.2.

**1226.5.13.1.3 Individual patient treatment areas.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.3.

**1226.5.13.1.4 Handwashing stations.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.4.

**1226.5.13.1.5 Privacy.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.5.

**1226.5.13.1.6 Medication dispensing.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.6.

**1226.5.13.1.7 Examination room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.7.

**1226.5.13.1.8 Clean utility room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.8.

**1226.5.13.1.9 Soiled utility room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.9.

**1226.5.13.1.10 Nourishment station.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.10.

**1226.5.13.1.11 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.11.

**1226.5.13.1.12 Supplies.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.12.

**1226.5.13.1.13 Storage.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.13.

**1226.5.13.1.14 Clean linen storage.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.2.14.

**1226.5.13.1.15 Patient storage.** Refer to Section 1224.39.4.3.2.

## HYPERBARIC THERAPY

**1226.5.14 Hyperbaric therapy service space.** When provided, hyperbaric therapy service space shall comply with Section 1224.39.5 and the provisions of this section:

**1226.5.14.1 General.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.1.

**1226.5.14.2 Hyperbaric chambers.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.2.

**1226.5.14.3 Pre-procedure patient holding area(s).** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.3.

**1226.5.14.4 Medical gas station outlets.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.4.

**1226.5.14.5 Support areas for the hyperbaric suite.**

**1226.5.14.5.1 Reception/control desk.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.1.

**1226.5.14.5.2 Examination/treatment room(s).** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.2.

**1226.5.14.5.3 Clean linen storage.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.3.

**1226.5.14.5.4 Clean supply room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.4.

**1226.5.14.5.5 Gas cylinder room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.5

**1226.5.14.5.6 Gurney and wheelchair storage.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.6.

**1226.5.14.5.7 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.7.

**1226.5.14.5.8 Compressor room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.5.8.

**1226.5.14.6 Support areas for staff.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.6.

**1226.5.14.7 Support areas for patients.**

**1226.5.14.7.1 Patient waiting area.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.7.1.

**1226.5.14.7.2 Patient changing area.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.7.2.

**1226.5.14.7.3 Patient toilet room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.5.7.3.

## PRIMARY CARE CLINICS

**1226.6 PRIMARY CARE CLINICS.** Primary care clinics and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a primary care clinic shall comply with Sections 1226.4.3 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

**1226.6.1 Examination and treatment areas.**

**1226.6.1.1 Examination room(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.

**1226.6.1.2 Treatment room(s).** Treatment room(s) for minor procedures (e.g., minor surgical procedures, casting), if provided, shall have a minimum area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm), excluding such spaces as vestibules and work counters, and shall meet the requirements in Section 1224.4.4.1.

**1226.6.1.3 Dental examination and treatment areas.** When provided, the examination and treatment space shall be permitted to be a room or a patient care station in an open treatment area.

**1226.6.1.3.1 Area.** The treatment space shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.4 \text{ m}^2$ ). This space is required for each station in an open operatory or treatment area. A minimum of 3 feet (915 mm) clearance shall be provided along the full length of one side of the chair, the head of the chair, and between the cuspidor and the head of the chair on the other side for assisting dental staff.

**1226.6.1.3.2 Pediatric patients.** At least one private consultation/treatment room shall be provided when pediatric patients are treated in a facility.

**1226.6.1.3.3 Handwashing.** Each treatment room shall include a handwashing station. If treatment is provided at stations in an open operatory, a handwashing station may be permitted to serve two treatment stations.

**1226.6.1.3.4 Imaging.** If provided, space for a dental panoramic x-ray system and printer shall also comply with shielding requirements in Section

1226.5.5.2 and alcove requirements in Section 1224.18.1.1.

**1226.6.1.4 Oral surgery.** When provided, treatment areas for procedures for which general anesthesia is used on more than five patients at a time shall comply with the requirements in Section 1226.8.

#### **1226.6.2 Support areas for examination rooms.**

**1226.6.2.1 Nurse station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.1.

**1226.6.2.2 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

**1226.6.2.3 Clean utility room.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.3.

**1226.6.2.4 Soiled workroom or soiled linen holding.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.4.

**1226.6.2.5 Consultation room.** Dental facilities must provide a consultation room for private conferences with patients.

**1226.6.2.6 Sterilization facilities.** If sterile processing and/or high level disinfection is provided, the sterile processing room shall consist of a decontamination area and a clean work area. The sterile processing/high level disinfection room shall be designed to provide one-way flow of contaminated materials/instruments to the sterilizer/high level disinfection equipment. Sterile/high level disinfected instruments should be distributed from the area in such a manner that processed items do not pass through the decontamination area.

**1226.6.2.6.1 Decontamination area.** The decontamination area shall be equipped with the following:

1. Countertop, separated from clean countertop by 4 feet minimum distance.
2. Handwashing station separate from the instrument washing sink.
3. Sink for washing instruments. To avoid splash, the decontamination sink shall be separated from the clean work area by either a 4-foot distance from the edge of the sink or a separating wall or screen. If a screen is used, it shall extend a minimum of 4 feet (1220 mm) above the sink rim.
4. Storage for supplies.

**1226.6.2.6.2 Clean work area.** The clean work area shall be equipped with the following:

1. Countertop, separated from decontamination countertop by 4 feet minimum distance.
2. Sterilizer/high level disinfection equipment, as required for the services provided.
3. Handwashing station, may share with decontamination area handwashing station.
4. Built-in storage for supplies.

**1226.6.2.7 Laboratory.** Facilities for laboratory services shall be provided in dental facilities or through a contract arrangement with a laboratory service.

#### **1226.6.3 Support areas for patients.**

**1226.6.3.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

**1226.6.3.2 Specimen collection and/or blood collection facilities.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.2.

#### **1226.6.4 General support services and facilities.**

**1226.6.4.1 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

**1226.6.4.2 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

#### **1226.6.5 Public and administrative areas.**

##### **1226.6.5.1 Public area.**

**1226.6.5.1.1 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.6.5.1.2 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.6.5.1.3 Public toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.6.5.1.4 Public telephone access.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.6.5.1.5 Drinking fountain(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

##### **1226.6.5.2 Administrative services**

**1226.6.5.2.1 Medical records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

**1226.6.5.2.2 Equipment and supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.2.

#### **1226.6 Support areas for staff.**

**1226.6.6.1 Staff toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

**1226.6.6.2 Storage for employees.** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.2.

#### **1226.7 Reserved.**

**1226.8 SURGICAL CLINICS.** Outpatient surgical clinics, and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a surgical clinic, shall comply with Sections 1226.4.2 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

#### **1226.8.1 Outpatient surgical service space.**

**1226.8.1.1 Operating room(s).** Refer to Section 1224.39.2, Item 1.

**1226.8.1.2 Perioperative services.** Provide preoperative patient holding and post-anesthesia recovery area. Refer to Section 1224.16.

#### **1226.8.2 Support areas for outpatient surgery.**

**1226.8.2.1 Control station.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.1.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1226.8.2.2 Supervisor's office or station.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.2.

**1226.8.2.3 Substerile areas.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.15.3.3.

**1226.8.2.4 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

**1226.8.2.5 Scrub facilities.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.5.

**1226.8.2.6 Clock.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.6.

**1226.8.2.7 Soiled workroom.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.7.

**1226.8.2.8 Clean utility room.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.8.

**1226.8.2.9 Anesthesia workroom.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.9.

**1226.8.2.10 Equipment storage room(s)for equipment and supplies used in outpatient surgery.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.10.

**1226.8.2.11 Staff clothing change areas.** Refer to Section 1224.15.3.11.

**1226.8.2.12 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.39.2, Item 7.

**1226.8.2.13 Sterile and pharmaceutical supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.5.

**1226.8.2.14 Sterilization facilities.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.6.

### 1226.8.3 Support areas for patients.

**1226.8.3.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

**1226.8.3.2 Outpatient change area.** A separate space shall be provided where patients change out of their street clothing and are prepared for the procedure. This space shall include provisions for clothing storage, toilet room(s), sink, space for clothing change and gowning area.

### 1226.8.4 General support services and facilities.

**1226.8.4.1 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

**1226.8.4.2 Areas for off-site laundry services.** Refer to Section 1226.4.15.1.

### 1226.8.5 Public and administrative areas.

#### 1226.8.5.1 Public area.

**1226.8.5.1.1 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.8.5.1.2 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.8.5.1.3 Public toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.8.5.1.4 Public telephone access.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.8.5.1.5 Drinking fountain(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

#### 1226.8.5.2 Administrative services

**1226.8.5.2.1 Medical records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

#### 1226.8.6 Support areas for staff.

**1226.8.6.1 Staff toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

**1226.8.6.2 Storage for employees.** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.2.

## CHRONIC DIALYSIS CLINICS

**1226.9 CHRONIC DIALYSIS CLINICS.** Chronic dialysis clinics and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a chronic dialysis clinic shall comply with Sections 1226.4.3 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

#### 1226.9.1 Examination and treatment rooms.

**1226.9.1.1 Examination room(s).** An examination room with a handwashing fixture shall be provided with a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet ( $9.29 m^2$ ).

**1226.9.1.2 Treatment room(s).** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.

**1226.9.1.3 Individual patient treatment areas.** Individual patient treatment areas shall contain at least 80 square feet ( $7.44 m^2$ ). There shall be at least a 4-foot (1219 mm) space around and between beds and/or lounge chairs. In addition, the following shall be provided:

1. **Location.** The treatment area may be an open area and shall be separate from administrative area and outpatient waiting room.
2. **Privacy.** An open unit shall be designed to provide visual privacy for each patient.

**1226.9.1.4 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.9.1.5 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.9.1.6 Bloodborne infection isolation room.** A minimum of one bloodborne infection isolation room of at least 120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ) of clear floor space shall be provided for patients. This room shall contain a counter and handwashing station.

**1226.9.1.7 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

**1226.9.1.8 Home training.** When provided in the unit, a private treatment area of at least 120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ) shall be provided for patients who are being trained to use dialysis equipment at home. This room shall contain a counter, a handwashing station and a separate drain for fluid disposal.

**1226.9.2 Support areas for examination and treatment rooms.**

**1226.9.2.1 Administrative center or nurse station.** Administrative center or nurse station shall be located within the dialysis treatment area and designed to provide visual observation of all patient stations. In addition, refer to Section 1226.4.13.1 for nurse station(s) requirements.

**1226.9.2.1.1 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall be directly accessible to the administrative center or nurse station and to patient treatment areas. Handwashing stations shall be provided for each four patient stations and for each major fraction thereof. These shall be uniformly distributed to provide equal access from each patient station. Refer to Section 1224.3 for the definition of a handwashing station.

**1226.9.2.2 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

**1226.9.2.3 Clean utility room.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.3.

**1226.9.2.4 Soiled workroom or soiled linen holding.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.4.

**1226.9.2.5 Housekeeping room.** Provide a housekeeping room that is immediately accessible to, and for the exclusive use of, the unit. This room shall have a minimum floor area of 15 square feet ( $1.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) and shall include the following:

1. Service sink or floor receptor
2. Supply storage
3. Housekeeping equipment storage

**1226.9.2.6 Nourishment room.** When provided, refer to Section 1226.4.13.7.

**1226.9.2.7 Sterilization facilities.** When provided, refer to Section 1226.4.13.6.

**1226.9.3 Administrative services.** Provide office and clinical work space including the following:

**1226.9.3.1. Medical records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

**1226.9.3.2 Equipment and supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.2.

#### **1226.9.4 Support areas for patients.**

**1226.9.4.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Provide patient toilet room(s) directly accessible from treatment area. The toilet shall be equipped with bedpan flushing attachment(s). Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

**1226.9.4.2 Patient storage.** Provide space for storage of patient clothing and personal items.

**1226.9.4.3 Specimen collection facilities.** When provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.2.

#### **1226.9.5 General support services and facilities.**

**1226.9.5.1 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

**1226.9.5.2 Areas for off-site laundry services.** Refer to Section 1226.4.15.1.

**1226.9.5.3 Reprocessing room.** When dialyzers are reused, a reprocessing room is required and sized to perform the functions required and include one-way flow of materials from soiled to clean with provisions for a refrigerator for temporary storage of dialyzer, decontamination/cleaning areas, sinks, processors, computer processors and label printers, packaging area, dialyzer storage and disinfectants storage.

**1226.9.5.4 Repair room.** When required, an equipment repair and breakdown room shall be equipped with a handwashing fixture, deep service sink, work counter and storage cabinet. Provide water supply and drain connection for testing machines.

**1226.9.5.5 Mixing room.** Each facility using a central batch delivery system shall provide, either on the premises or through written arrangements, individual delivery systems for the treatment of any patient requiring special dialysis solutions. The mixing room shall also include a sink, storage space and holding tanks.

**1226.9.5.6 Water treatment room.** The water treatment equipment shall be located in an enclosed room.

#### **1226.9.6 Support areas for staff.**

**1226.9.6.1 Staff toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

**1226.9.6.2 Storage for employees.** Refer to 1226.4.17.2.

### **REHABILITATION CLINICS**

**1226.10 REHABILITATION CLINICS.** Rehabilitation clinics and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a rehabilitation clinic shall comply with Sections 1226.4.3 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

### **SUPPORT AREAS FOR THERAPY SERVICES.**

#### **1226.10.1 Support area for patients.**

**1226.10.1.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.14.1.

#### **1226.10.2 General support.**

**1226.10.2.1 Garbage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

**1226.10.2.2 Housekeeping.** Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

**1226.10.2.3 Areas for off-site laundry services.** Refer to Section 1226.4.15.1.

#### **1226.10.3 Public and administrative.**

##### **1226.10.3.1 Public area.**

**1226.10.3.1.1 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.10.3.1.2 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.10.3.1.3 Toilets.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.10.3.1.4 Drinking fountain.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.10.3.1.5 Telephone.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.10.3.2 Administrative services.** Provide office and clinical work space including the following:

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1226.10.3.2.1 Medical records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

**1226.10.3.2.2 Equipment and supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.2.

### 1226.10.4. Support areas for staff.

**1226.10.4.1 Staff toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

**1226.10.4.2 Storage for employees.** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.2.

## REHABILITATION THERAPY SERVICE SPACES.

**1226.10.5 Physical therapy service space.** A physical therapy service space shall be provided. The service space shall comply with the following provisions:

1. **Individual treatment area(s).** Refer to Section 1224.35.2, Item 1.
2. **Handwashing station(s).** Refer to Section 1224.35.2, Item 2.
3. **Exercise area.** Refer to Section 1224.35.2, Item 3.
4. **Clean linen and towel storage.** Refer to Section 1224.35.2, Item 4.
5. **Storage for equipment and supplies.** Refer to Section 1224.35.2, Item 5
6. **Separate storage for soiled linen, towels and supplies.** Refer to Section 1224.35.2, Item 6.

**1226.10.6 Occupational therapy service space.** When an occupational therapy service is provided, the service space shall comply with following provisions:

1. **Work areas and counters.** Refer to Section 1224.35.3, Item 1.
2. **Handwashing station(s).** Refer to Section 1224.35.3, Item 2.
3. **Storage for supplies and equipment.** Refer to Section 1224.35.3, Item 3.
4. **Area for teaching daily living activities.** Refer to Section 1224.35.3, Item 4.

**1226.10.7 Speech pathology and/or audiology service space.** When speech pathology and/or audiology service(s) is provided, the service space shall comply with the following provisions:

1. **Interview, consultation and treatment space.** Refer to Section 1224.35.4, Item 1.
2. **Waiting area.** Refer to Section 1224.35.4, Item 2.
3. **Handwashing station(s).** Refer to Section 1224.35.4, Item 3.
4. **Testing unit.** If an audiology service is provided. Refer to Section 1224.35.4, Item 4.

## ALTERNATIVE BIRTHING CLINICS

**1226.11 ALTERNATIVE BIRTHING CLINICS.** Alternative birthing clinics and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to alternative birthing clinics shall comply with Sections 1226.4.3 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section:

### 1226.11.1 Birthing service space.

**1226.11.1.1 Birthing room.** A birthing room shall have a minimum clear floor area of 200 square feet (18.58 square meters), including the newborn care area. A birthing room shall have a minimum clear dimension of 12 feet (3658 mm). The maximum number of beds per room shall be one.

**1226.11.1.2 Location.** Birthing rooms shall be located out of the path of unrelated traffic and under direct supervision of the facility staff.

**1226.11.1.3 Nurse call system.** A nurse call system shall be located in the birthing room which will alert the nearest continually staffed administrative center or nurse station. Refer to Section 1224.4.6.5 for requirements.

**1226.11.1.4 Hand-washing stations.** A handwashing fixture, as defined in Section 1224.3, shall be located within or directly outside the room. If the fixture is located within the room, the fixture may be screened or within openable casework.

**1226.11.1.5 Lighting.** Lighting capable of 1076 lux (100 footcandles) at working surfaces shall be provided. Dimmer switches may be used.

**1226.11.1.6 Window.** Each birthing room shall have an outside window. Refer to Sections 1224.4.9.4 and 1224.4.9.5.

**1226.11.1.7 Privacy.** Windows or doors within a normal sightline that would permit observation into the room shall be arranged or draped, as necessary, for mother and newborn privacy.

**1226.11.1.8 Newborn care area.** When provided, a separate newborn care area shall be provided that is in addition to the birthing room.

**1226.11.1.9 Examination room.** When provided, the examination room shall meet the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.

### 1226.11.2 Support areas for birthing services.

**1226.11.2.1 Nurse station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.1.

**1226.11.2.2 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.2.

**1226.11.2.3 Clean utility room.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.3.

**1226.11.2.4 Soiled utility or soiled holding room.** Refer to Section 1226.4.13.4.

**1226.11.2.5 Crash cart space.** Space for storing crash cart shall be provided.

**1226.11.2.6 Clean-up room.** Each birthing room shall have immediate access to a clean-up room with a hand-washing station and work space which is separate from any sterilizing facilities. The clean-up room shall provide 24 square feet (2.23 m<sup>2</sup>) per birthing room up to eight rooms, with no dimensions less than 6 feet (1829 mm).

**1226.11.2.7 Ice-making equipment.** Each facility shall have equipment to provide ice for treatments and nourishment. Ice-making equipment shall be permitted in the clean utility or the nourishment room/area. Ice intended for human consumption shall be provided in the nourishment station and shall be served from self-dispensing ice-makers.

**1226.11.2.8 Nourishment room or area.** When provided, refer to Section 1226.4.13.7.

**1226.11.2.9 Medical gas outlets.** When provided, oxygen and suction capabilities may be portable or piped.

#### **1226.11.3 Support areas for mother and newborn.**

**1226.11.3.1 Patient toilet room(s).** Each birthing room shall have direct access to a private toilet room with lavatory, shower or tub and nurse call system. Facilities for cleaning bedpans shall be provided in the toilet room.

#### **1226.11.4 General support services and facilities.**

**1226.11.4.1 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

**1226.11.4.2 Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.9.

**1226.11.4.3 Areas for off-site laundry services.** Refer to Section 1226.4.15.1.

#### **1226.11.5 Public and administrative areas.**

##### **1226.11.5.1 Public area.**

**1226.11.5.1.1 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.11.5.1.2 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.11.5.1.3 Public toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.11.5.1.4 Public telephone.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.11.5.1.5 Drinking fountain.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

##### **1226.11.5.2 Administrative services.**

**1226.11.5.2.1 Medical records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

**1226.11.5.2.2 Equipment and supply storage.** Refer to 1226.4.16.2.2.

#### **1226.11.6 Support areas for staff.**

**1226.11.6.1 Staff toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.1.

**1226.11.6.2 Storage for employees.** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.2.

**1226.11.6.3 Staff lounge.** Refer to Section 1226.4.17.3.

**1226.11.6.4 Staff clothing change area.** When provided, a changing room with shower shall be provided for staff to change into work attire.

#### **PSYCHOLOGY CLINICS**

**1226.12 PSYCHOLOGY CLINICS.** Psychology clinics and outpatient clinical services of a hospital providing services equivalent to a psychology clinic shall comply with Sections 1226.4.3 through 1226.4.8 and the provisions of this section.

Psychology clinics shall provide at least an interview room, consulting room and group therapy room.

##### **1226.12.1 Public and administrative area.**

**1226.12.1.1 Public area.** **1226.12.1.1.1 Reception.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.1.1.

**1226.12.1.1.2 Outpatient waiting room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.12.1.1.3 Public toilet(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.12.1.1.4 Drinking fountain.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1226.12.1.1.5 Public telephone.** Refer to Section 1224.4.5.

##### **1226.12.1.2 Administrative Area.**

**1226.12.1.2.1 Medical Records storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.1.

**1226.12.1.2.2 Equipment and supply storage.** Refer to Section 1226.4.16.2.2.

#### **SECTION 1227 [OSHPD 4] CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS**

**1227.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to correctional treatment centers.

**1227.2 Application.** New buildings and additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings subject to licensure shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code and California Fire Code (Parts 3, 4, 5 and 9 of Title 24) and this section.

**Note:** Refer to Section 1224.2, Exception 6.

##### **1227.3 Definitions.**

**BASIC SERVICES** for correctional treatment centers are those services required for licensure as a correctional treatment center, including medical, surgical, psychiatrist, psychologist, nursing, pharmacy and dietary. See "Optional services."

**HANDWASHING STATION.** An area that provides a handwashing fixture, cleaning agents and means for drying hands. Refer to the California Plumbing Code, Section 210.0 for the definition of handwashing fixture as amended in this section. The water supply spout discharge point may be less than 5 inches (127 mm) above the fixture rim. Fixtures shall be equipped with hot and cold supply controls not requiring direct contact of the hands for operation. The fixture cannot be equipped with an aerator or wrist or elbow blade handles.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**LICENSING AGENCY** is the California Department of Public Health.

**OPTIONAL SERVICES** are inpatient or outpatient services which are not required to be provided by law or regulation for licensure. An optional service, when provided, must accommodate the provisions of this section. See "Basic services."

**OUTPATIENT SERVICE** is an organizational unit of the correctional treatment center which provides nonemergency health care services to patients.

### 1227.4 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION.

**1227.4.1 Services/systems and utilities.** Correctional treatment centers shall comply with this section.

**1227.4.1.1 Oxygen, vacuum and medical air.** Correctional treatment centers shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.6 wherever applicable.

**1227.4.2 Service spaces.** Spaces for dietary, laundry, morgue, ambulance entrance, receiving areas, power plants, mechanical equipment, incinerator, garbage can cleaning, automobile parking and storage areas for garbage, trash and medical gases shall be located and constructed to minimize noise, steam, odors and hazards in patient care areas and bedrooms.

**1227.4.3 Treatment spaces.** Radiology, laboratory, pharmacy and physical therapy spaces shall not be located in nursing units, surgical units, perinatal units, nursery areas, central sterilization rooms, food service areas, power plants, mechanical equipment rooms, maintenance shops, general storage, laundry, employees' dressing or housekeeping facilities.

**1227.4.4 Exam room.** Unless specified elsewhere, if an exam room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be 8 feet (2438 mm) and contain a handwashing station.

**1227.4.5 Treatment room.** Unless specified elsewhere, if a treatment room is provided, it shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ), the least dimension of which shall be 10 feet (3048 mm). A minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) is required between the sides and foot of the bed/gurney/table and any wall or other fixed obstruction. The room shall contain an examination light, a work counter for medical equipment, a handwashing station, cabinets, medication storage and counter for writing or electronic documentation.

### 1227.5 CORRIDORS.

**1227.5.1 Width.** The minimum width of corridors shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**Exception:** Patient-care corridors in correctional treatment centers for psychiatric care of patients who are not bedridden shall have a minimum clear and unobstructed width of 6 feet (1829 mm). For the purpose of this section, bedridden patients shall be defined as patients confined to beds who would be transported or evacuated in beds or litters.

**1227.5.2 Service corridors width.** Service corridors with anticipated light traffic volume for nonpatient use may be reduced to a width of 5 feet (1524 mm) if approved by the enforcing agency.

**Exception:** Corridors in administrative and business areas may be reduced to a width of 44 inches (1118 mm).

**1227.5.3 Handrails.** Corridors for patient traffic in areas providing skilled nursing, intermediate, care or rehabilitation services shall be furnished with a handrail on both sides at a height not less than 30 inches (762 mm) or greater than 36 inches (914 mm).

**1227.5.4 Connections.** Corridor systems shall connect all patient rooms and essential services.

### 1227.6 DOORS AND DOOR OPENINGS.

**1227.6.1 Toilet room doors.** Doors to toilet rooms shall have an opening of not less than 32 inches (813 mm) clear in width and shall be equipped with hardware which will permit the door to swing outward or in a manner to negate the need to push against a patient who may have collapsed within the toilet room.

**1227.6.2 Pocket doors.** Pocket sliding doors are not permitted.

**Exception:** Doors not serving as exit doors from administration areas.

**1227.6.3 Door view windows.** Doors to patient bedrooms shall be provided with a view window with a minimum area of 288 square inches (0.186 square meters). Window sill height shall not be higher than 42 inches (1067 mm) from the floor.

### 1227.7 WINDOWS AND SCREENS.

**1227.7.1 Natural light.** Rooms approved for the housing of patients shall be provided with natural light by means of glazed openings.

**1227.7.2 Screens.** When windows are operable, they shall be provided with insect screens of 16 meshes to the inch.

**1227.7.3 Light and ventilation.** All portions of a building used by patients, personnel or other persons shall be provided with artificial light and a mechanically operated ventilating system as specified in the California Electrical Code and the California Mechanical Code.

**1227.7.4 Patient viewing windows.** Each patient bedroom shall be provided with viewing windows from the corridor to allow full and unobstructed visual observation of the patient.

### 1227.8 CEILING HEIGHTS.

**1227.8.1 Minimum height.** The minimum height of ceilings shall be 8 feet (2438 mm).

**Exception:** Closet, toilet rooms and bathroom minimum ceiling heights shall not be less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**1227.8.2 Minimum height with fixed ceiling equipment.** Rooms containing ceiling-mounted, major fixed equipment or ceiling-mounted surgical light fixtures shall have ceil-

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

ing heights to accommodate the equipment or fixtures and their normal movement.

### **1227.9 INTERIOR FINISHES.**

#### **1227.9.1 Floor finishes.**

**1227.9.1.1 Floor finishes.** Shall be smooth, waterproof and durable.

**Exception:** Upon written appropriate documented request, the enforcing agency may grant approval of the installation of carpet. See Table 1224.4.11.

**1227.9.1.2 Resilient flooring.** If used in toilet and bathing rooms, shall be continuous and extend upward onto the walls at least 5 inches (127 mm).

#### **1227.9.2 Wall bases.**

**1227.9.2.1 Materials and installation.** The material and textures of bases and the installation thereof shall be such as to minimize dust-catching surfaces, moisture, infiltration and the harboring of vermin.

**Exception:** In locations where carpet is permitted as a floor finish material, the use of carpeted base (coved or strip base) up to a maximum height of 5 inches (127 mm) is also permissible.

**1227.9.2.2 Wood bases.** Wood bases are prohibited except in administration departments and other offices described in Section 1227.16.

**Exceptions:** Wall bases in kitchens, operating rooms, delivery rooms, emergency operating rooms, cast rooms, special procedure rooms and other areas which are subject to wet cleaning methods shall be made integral and coved with the floor, and constructed without voids at the intersection of floor and wall surfaces.

**1227.9.3 Walls.** Interior wall finishes shall be smooth, washable and durable.

**1227.9.4 Ceilings.** Ceiling finishes shall be in compliance with Table 1224.4.11.

**Exceptions:** Walls and ceiling finish requirements do not apply to boiler rooms, mechanical equipment rooms, administration departments, other offices, enclosed stairways, maintenance shops and similar spaces.

### **1227.10 ELEVATORS.**

**1227.10.1** Patient elevators shall have minimum inside platform dimensions of 5 feet by 8 feet (1524 mm by 2438 mm) and a minimum clear door opening of 4 feet, 0 inches (1118 mm).

**1227.10.2** Passenger elevators shall have minimum inside platform dimensions of 4 feet, 8 inches by 7 feet, 4 inches (1422 mm by 2236 mm).

**1227.10.3** Buildings over one story in height with accommodations or services for patients on floors without grade level entrance shall provide at least one passenger or patient elevator.

**1227.10.4** If bed patients are accommodated on one or more floors, other than the main entrance floor or where

operating rooms or delivery rooms are above or below the main entrance floor, at least one patient elevator shall be provided.

**1227.10.5** At least one patient elevator and one service elevator shall be provided in correctional treatment centers with a capacity of 60 to 149 beds on floors other than the main entrance floor.

**1227.10.6** At least one patient elevator, one passenger elevator and one service elevator shall be provided in hospitals with a capacity of 150 or more beds on floors other than the main entrance floor.

**1227.10.7** If elevators in the correctional institution meet the above size requirements and are easily accessible, the elevators need not be duplicated in the correctional treatment centers.

**1227.11 GARBAGE-SOLID WASTE AND TRASH STORAGE.** Rooms or screening enclosures shall be provided for the washing and cleaning of garbage containers and for the storage of garbage, trash and other solid wastes. Such rooms or screening enclosures shall include the following:

1. A concrete floor with a curb and with a drain connected to the sewer.
2. Steam or hot-water and cold-water supply.
3. A minimum floor area of .5 square feet (0.046 m<sup>2</sup>) per bed, but not less than 25 square feet (2.32 m<sup>2</sup>), the least dimension of which shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).
4. A method of limiting access to the material except by authorized persons.

### **BASIC SERVICES**

#### **1227.12 NURSING SERVICE SPACE.**

**1227.12.1 Patient bedrooms.** Patients shall be accommodated only in rooms with the following minimum floor area, exclusive of toilet rooms, wardrobes, entrance vestibules, and fixed furnishings or equipment.

1. Single-patient rooms: 110 square feet (10.22 m<sup>2</sup>).
2. Multi-patient rooms: 80 square feet (7.43 m<sup>2</sup>) per bed.

**1227.12.2 Distance.** A minimum distance of 3 feet (914 mm) shall be provided between beds and 4 feet (1219 mm) between the foot of beds and walls or fixed objects in multipatient rooms, and 3 feet (914 mm) in single-patient rooms.

**1227.12.3 Airborne infection isolation rooms.** Single rooms shall be provided for the isolation of patients with airborne communicable disease at a ratio of one room for each 35 beds, and for each major fraction thereof. At least one airborne infection isolation room shall be provided. Airborne infection isolation rooms shall be labeled with the words "Airborne Infection Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom.

**1227.12.3.1 Alternates.** Alternate designs for modifications to isolation rooms in operation prior to the effective date of this section may be utilized when it can be

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

demonstrated that the alternate design meets performance requirements, without compromising any health or life-safety requirement.

**1227.12.3.2 Anteroom doors.** Airborne infection isolation room(s) shall have self-closing and latching devices on all anteroom doors.

**1227.12.3.3 Anteroom.** A separate anteroom shall be provided between the airborne infection isolation room and the corridor, which shall constitute the primary entrance to the negative pressure isolation room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing station, work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cabinets and space to gown and to store clean and soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the isolation room and means to allow for airflow from the anteroom into the negative pressure isolation room. Doors shall be aligned to allow large equipment to be wheeled into the airborne infection isolation room unless a secondary door complying with Section 1227.12.3.4 is provided. One anteroom may serve no more than two airborne infection isolation rooms.

**1227.12.3.4 Secondary entry.** When a secondary entry is provided directly from the corridor to the negative-pressure isolation room, secondary doors shall be provided with locking devices which are readily openable from the room side and which are readily openable by the facility staff on the other side. When key locks are used on isolation rooms, keys shall be located at the nurse station in a prominent readily accessible location.

**1227.12.3.5 Adjoining toilet facilities.** Each isolation room shall have its own toilet room facilities with an emergency nurse call system, a lavatory, a shower providing a seat or a space for a shower chair and a toilet equipped with a bedpan flushing attachment with a vacuum breaker.

**1227.12.3.6 Sealed-tight room.** Airborne infection isolation room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.

**1227.12.4 Protective environment rooms.** Protective environment rooms for the protection of certain immunosuppressed patients may be provided by the facility. Protective environment rooms shall be labeled "Protective Environment Room" on or adjacent to the anteroom side of the door between the isolation room and the anteroom.

**1227.12.4.1 Anteroom doors.** Airborne infection isolation room(s) shall have self-closing and latching devices on all anteroom doors.

**1227.12.4.2 Anteroom.** A separate anteroom shall be provided between the protective environment room and the corridor or adjoining space which shall constitute the only entrance to the protective environment isolation room. This anteroom shall have a handwashing station, work counter at least 3 feet (914 mm) long, cabinets and space to gown and to store clean and

soiled materials. There shall be a view window from the anteroom to the positive-pressure isolation room. There shall be means to allow for airflow from the protective environment room into the anteroom. Anteroom doors shall be aligned so that large equipment can be wheeled into the isolation room. One anteroom may serve no more than one protective environment room.

**Exception:** Alternate designs for protective environment rooms, without individual anterooms, may be approved by the enforcement agency when it can be demonstrated that the alternate design meets the requirements of the California Mechanical Code and does not compromise or alter any health or fire-protection component, assembly or system.

**1227.12.4.3 Toilet room(s).** Adjoining toilet room facilities shall meet the requirements of Section 1227.12.3.5.

**1227.12.4.4 Sealed-tight room.** Protective environment room perimeter walls, ceiling, floors, doors and penetrations shall be sealed tightly to minimize air infiltration from the outside or from other spaces.

**1227.12.5 Identification.** Each patient room shall be labeled with an identification number, letter or combination of the two.

**1227.12.6 Seclusion rooms.** Seclusion rooms shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1 and the following:

**1227.12.6.1 Seclusion rooms.** Provide for disturbed/special patients at a ratio of one room for each 30 beds and for each major fraction thereof. At least one seclusion room shall be provided in each nursing service unit.

**1227.12.6.2 Viewing windows.** Seclusion rooms shall be provided with viewing windows to allow full and unobstructed visual observation of the patient. They shall be located near the nurse station and toilet room facilities.

**1227.12.6.3 Appendages and equipment.** Rooms shall be free of appendages and equipment which could facilitate suicide or self-mutilation.

**1227.12.7 Nurse station.** A nurse station shall be provided within each nursing unit.

**1227.12.7.1 Components.** Nurse stations shall be provided with a cabinet, a desk, space for records, a bulletin board, a telephone, and a specifically designated and lockable and illuminated medicine storage compartment and a handwashing fixture. If a separate medicine room is provided, it shall have a lockable door and a medicine sink. This sink cannot replace the required nurse station handwashing station.

**1227.12.7.2 Size.** Nurse stations serving 25 or less beds shall have a minimum floor area of 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>). Nurse stations servicing more than 25 beds shall have a minimum floor area of 125 square feet (11.6 m<sup>2</sup>). The minimum dimension of any nurse station shall not be less than 8 feet (2438 mm).

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1227.12.7.3 Distance.** The distance between the nurse station entrance and the center of the doorway of the most remote patient bedroom shall not exceed 90 linear feet (27432 mm).

**Exception:** This section does not preclude designs based on primary nursing concepts incorporating more than one single nursing station of less than 100 square feet (9.29 m<sup>2</sup>) each and an additional work space or station for unit clerk/receptionist junctions.

**1227.12.7.4 Correctional officer.** A separate space for the correctional officer may adjoin the nurse station but shall not be included in the minimum square footage requirement for a nurse station.

**1227.12.8 Utility rooms.** Utility rooms shall be provided in each nursing unit. Soiled and clean utility or holding rooms shall be separated and have no direct connection.

**1227.12.8.1 Clean utility room.** Clean utility rooms shall contain a work counter, handwashing station and storage facilities unless the room is used only for storage and holding as part of a system for distribution of clean and sterile supplies, in which case the work counter and handwashing fixture may be omitted.

**1227.12.8.2 Soiled workroom or soiled holding room.** Soiled utility rooms shall contain a flushing-rim clinical sink or equivalent flushing-rim device, handwashing station, work counter, waste receptacles and linen hampers unless the room is used only for the temporary holding of soiled materials, in which case the flushing-rim clinical sink, handwashing station and work counter may be omitted. However, if the flushing-rim clinical sink is omitted, other provisions for disposal of liquid waste shall be provided.

**1227.12.9 Treatment and exam rooms.** If treatment rooms or exam rooms are provided, they shall comply with Sections 1227.4.4 and 1227.4.5.

**1227.12.10 Toilet and bath facilities.** Separate toilet room facilities shall be provided for the use of patients and personnel.

**1227.12.10.1 Bathroom facilities.** Provide for patients in the nursing unit in at least the following ratios:

Bathtubs or showers                    1:12 patients

Lavatories                                1:8 patients

(Fixtures shall be equipped without aerators and may have conventional controls. Gooseneck spouts shall not be used)

Toilets                                    1:6 patients

Fixtures serving individual patient rooms shall not be considered as meeting the required ratios for bedrooms not served by individual adjoining toilet rooms or bathrooms.

Changes in these ratios for wards or units in which bed patients only are to be cared for may be permitted by the enforcing agency.

**1227.12.11 Patient/nurse call system.** A patient/nurse call system shall be provided in compliance with Table 1224.4.6.5 and the provisions of Section 517.123 of the California Electrical Code.

## 1227.13 PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICE SPACE.

**1227.13.1 Licensed pharmacy.** A licensed pharmacy shall be provided and shall comply with the provisions of Section 1250.

**1227.13.1.1 Entrance and waiting.** If the pharmacy dispenses directly to inmates from the correctional institution, an entrance and a waiting area separate from the inpatient areas shall be provided.

## 1227.14 DIETETIC SERVICE SPACE.

**1227.14.1 Dietetic service space.** The dietetic service space shall accommodate the provisions of Section 1225.4.2.

**Exceptions:**

1. Unless the dietetic service in the correctional institution is found acceptable to the licensing agency.
2. A contractual arrangement for dietetic services with another health facility is acceptable to the licensing agency.

**1227.15 OFFICES.** Office spaces shall be provided for the provisions of nursing, physician, psychiatric and psychological services.

**1227.15.1 Consultation/interviews.** Consultation/interview rooms shall be provided.

**1227.15.2 Conference/group activities.** Separate rooms or spaces shall be provided for conferences and group activities.

**Exception:** If conference room or space is available to the correctional treatment facility staff in the correctional institution, this room or space need not be duplicated.

## 1227.16 ADMINISTRATION SPACE.

**1227.16.1 Administration.** An administration area shall be provided which shall provide for the following functions:

1. Waiting area.
2. Offices for the administrator and clerical personnel.

**1227.16.2 Records.** Spaces shall be provided which accommodate the following functions:

1. Work area for sorting and recording records, for either paper or electronic media.
2. Secure storage area for medical records, for either paper or electronic media.

## 1227.17 CENTRAL STERILE SUPPLY.

**1227.17.1 Minimum requirements.** A central supply and sterilizing area shall be provided. Rooms and spaces shall accommodate the following services and equipment:

1. Soiled work area. A receiving and gross cleaning area which shall contain workspace and equipment

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

for cleaning medical and surgical equipment and for disposal of or processing of soiled material.

2. Clean work area. A clean work area which shall contain work space and equipment for sterilizing medical and surgical equipment and supplies.
3. Sterilizing space.

**Exception:** Items 1 through 3 do not apply to facilities with contractual arrangements for outside autoclaving and sterilizing services.

4. Storage. Space for sterile supplies and unsterile supplies.

**1227.17.2 Sterilizers and autoclaves.** All sterilizers and autoclaves which emit steam exhaust shall be vented to the outside of the building. Such vents shall be independent from the plumbing vent system.

**Exception:** Small instrument sterilizers.

### 1227.18 STORAGE.

**1227.18.1 General storage.** Correctional treatment centers shall provide combined general and specialized storage space in accordance with the following:

1–10 beds	120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ) minimum
11–100 beds	12 square feet ( $1.11 m^2$ ) per bed
over 100 beds	1,200 square feet ( $111.48 m^2$ ) plus 5 square feet ( $0.46 m^2$ ) per bed for each bed over 100

**1227.18.2 Specialized storage.** Specialized storage spaces shall include the following:

1. Linen. Separate and enclosed facilities for clean and soiled linen in each nursing unit. The clean linen storage space shall have a minimum area of 10 square feet ( $0.93 m^2$ ) and may be within the clean utility room. The soiled linen collection space shall have an area of no less than 10 square feet ( $0.93 m^2$ ), and may be within the soiled utility room.
2. Supply. One supply storage space having a minimum area of 15 square feet ( $1.39 m^2$ ) shall be provided in each nursing unit. Supply storage may be within the clean utility room used only as part of a system for distributing clean and sterile supplies.
3. Wheelchairs. A room or space shall be provided in each nursing unit for wheelchairs and stretchers. The wheelchair and stretcher space shall have a minimum area of 15 square feet ( $1.39 m^2$ ).
4. Storage. Sterile and unsterile supplies shall be stored separately.

### 1227.19 EMPLOYEE DRESSING ROOMS AND LOCKERS.

**1227.19.1 Minimum facilities.** Correctional treatment centers shall provide the following:

1. Dressing rooms. Separate dressing rooms for male and female personnel with lockers, lavatory and toilet(s).

**Exception:** If provided for the correctional treatment center staff in adjacent correctional institutions, dressing rooms and lockers need not be duplicated.

### 1227.20 HOUSEKEEPING ROOM.

**1227.20.1** A securely lockable housekeeping room with service sink and supply storage spaces shall be provided in each nursing unit.

### OPTIONAL SERVICES

**1227.21 SERVICE SPACES.** Service spaces, such as laboratory, radiology and any other services approved by the licensing agency, shall comply with the applicable space requirements of Sections 1224 and 1225. Service spaces shall also comply with applicable provisions of the California Building Standards Administrative Code (Part 1).

**1227.22 OUTPATIENT SERVICES.** The following shall be provided or made available to an outpatient service space.

**1227.22.1 Waiting.** Waiting area(s) shall be provided with access to toilet room facilities and a drinking fountain both meeting the requirements of Sections 1231.3.1, 1231.3.2 and 1231.3.3.

**1227.22.1.1 Holding cell.** If a temporary holding cell or room is used for this purpose, it shall comply with Section 1231.2.2.

**Exception:** The minimum floor area shall be 80 square feet ( $7.43 m^2$ ).

### 1227.23 24-HOUR MENTAL HEALTH CARE SERVICES.

**1227.23.1 Program/dining space.** Provide within the Correctional Treatment Center for use by mental health treatment program patients, as is consistent with security requirements. Program/dining space shall be provided with a minimum floor area of 30 square feet ( $2.79 m^2$ ) per patient served at a given time.

**1227.23.2 Mental health treatment.** Correctional treatment centers providing a mental health treatment program shall include one seclusion room providing direct observation of every portion of the room for every 15 mental health beds and for each major fraction thereof. At least one seclusion room shall be provided.

## SECTION 1228 [OSHPD 5] ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS

**1228.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section shall apply to acute psychiatric hospitals.

**1228.2 Application.** New buildings and additions, alterations or repairs to existing buildings subject to licensure shall comply with applicable provisions of the California Electrical Code, California Mechanical Code, California Plumbing Code, California Energy Code, California Fire Code (Parts 3, 4, 5, 6 and 9 of Title 24) and this section.

**Note:** Refer to the applicable exceptions under Section 1224.2.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1228.2.1 Functional program.** Refer to California Administrative Code (Part 1 of Title 24), Section 7-119, Functional Program, for requirements. Projects associated with acute psychiatric hospitals and with psychiatric nursing units in general acute-care hospitals shall include a Patient Safety Risk Assessment.

**1228.3 Definitions.** The definitions provided under Section 1224.3 apply to this section except as modified below:

**ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITAL.** Acute psychiatric hospital means a hospital having a duly constituted governing body with overall administrative and professional responsibility and an organized medical staff which provides 24-hour inpatient care for mentally disordered, incompetent or other patients referred to in Division 5 (commencing with Section 5000) or Division 6 (commencing with Section 6000) of the Welfare and Institutions Code, including the following basic services: medical, nursing, rehabilitative, pharmacy and dietary services.

**BASIC SERVICES.** Basic services mean those essential services required by law for licensure as an acute psychiatric hospital including medical, nursing, rehabilitative, pharmaceutical, dietary and support services.

**HOSPITAL.** Hospital, where used in this section, means an acute psychiatric hospital.

**SALLY PORT.** A compartment provided with two or more doors where the intended purpose is to prevent continuous and unobstructed passage by allowing the release of only one door at a time.

**1228.4 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION.** Acute psychiatric hospitals shall comply with the provisions under Section 1224.4, General Construction, where applicable, except as supplemented, amended or modified below. Specific application shall respond to the patient injury and suicide prevention component of the Patient Safety Risk Assessment prepared under California Administrative Code (Part 1 of Title 24), Section 7-119.

#### 1228.4.1 Jurisdiction.

**1228.4.1.1 Services/systems and utilities.** Services/systems and utilities shall only originate in, pass through or under structures which are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

**1228.4.1.2 Means of egress.** Means of egress shall only pass through structures that are under the jurisdiction of the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

#### 1228.4.2 Reserved.

#### 1228.4.3 Reserved.

#### 1228.4.4 Support areas for patients.

##### 1228.4.4.1 Examination and treatment rooms.

**1228.4.4.1.1 Examination room.** Examination rooms in acute psychiatric hospitals shall meet the

requirements of Section 1224.4.4.1.1 as amended below:

**1228.4.4.1.1.1 Location.** Examination rooms shall be permitted to serve several nursing units and shall be permitted to be on a different floor, unless prohibited by specific sections of this code or by the Patient Safety Risk Assessment.

**1228.4.4.1.1.2 Space requirements.** Examination rooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 120 square feet ( $11.15 m^2$ ).

**1228.4.4.1.2 Treatment room.** Where provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.2.

**1228.4.4.1.3 Airborne infection isolation exam/treatment room.** Where provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.3.

**1228.4.4.1.4 Seclusion room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.1.4.

**1228.4.4.1.5 Quiet room.** Where provided, a quiet room for a single patient who requires a period of solitude but does not require a seclusion room, shall have a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 m^2$ ).

#### 1228.4.4.2 Reserved.

**1228.4.4.3 Specimen and blood collection facilities.** Where provided, refer to Section 1224.4.4.3.

**1228.4.4.4 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.4.

**1228.4.4.5 Nourishment area or room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.5.

**1228.4.4.6 Clean utility/work room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.6.

**1228.4.4.7 Soiled utility/work room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.7.

**1228.4.5 Outpatient waiting rooms.** Where provided, refer to Section 1224.4.5.

**1228.4.6 Miscellaneous requirements.** Refer to Section 1224.4.6 for requirements regarding station outlets, gas and vacuum systems, hyperbaric facilities, laboratories and nurse call systems.

**1228.4.7 Corridors.** Refer to Section 1224.4.7.

**1228.4.8 Doors and door openings.** Refer to Section 1224.4.8 with the following modifications and amendments:

1. Where indicated by the Patient Safety Risk Assessment, toilet room doors shall be equipped with keyed locks that allow staff to control access to the toilet room.
2. Use of door closers is to be avoided unless required by other sections of this code.
3. Door hinges shall be designed to minimize accessible anchor points (e.g., cut hinge type, piano hinge, concealed hinge, etc.).

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

- 4. Except for specifically designed ligature-resistant hardware, door lever handles shall point downward when in the latched and in the unlatched position.
- 5. All hardware shall have tamper-resistant fasteners.
- 6. Soft doors may be used for patient room toilets where indicated in the Patient Safety Risk Assessment.

### **1228.4.9 Windows and screens.**

- 1. Windows located in patient care areas or areas used by patients, shall limit the opportunities for patients to inflict harm to themselves or others.
  - 1.1. All glazing (interior and exterior) shall be fabricated with polycarbonate or laminate on the inside of the glazing or with any glazing that meets or exceeds the requirements for Class 1.4 per ASTM F1233-08 (2013), Standard Test Method for Security Glazing Material and Systems.

**Exception:** Use of tempered glass for interior borrowed lights shall be permitted where allowed by the Patient Safety Risk Assessment.
- 1.2. Where window treatments are provided, they shall be designed without accessible anchor points.
- 1.3. Where operable windows are provided in patient rooms or suites, openings shall be limited to prevent the passage of a 4-inch (102 mm) sphere.
- 2. Anchorage for windows and window assemblies (including frames, hinges and locking devices) shall be designed to resist impact loads applied from the inside and shall be tested in accordance with ANSI Z97.1, Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings.
- 3. A minimum net glazed area of not less than 8 percent of the floor area of each indoor activity space and dining space shall be provided.

### **1228.4.10 Ceiling heights.** Refer to Section 1224.4.10 unless noted otherwise.

**1228.4.11 Interior finishes.** Interior finishes shall comply with Section 1224.4.11 as amended in this section. Special design consideration shall be given to injury and suicide prevention in the context of the Patient Safety Risk Assessment.

#### **1228.4.11.1 Reserved.**

#### **1228.4.11.2 Reserved.**

#### **1228.4.11.3 Reserved.**

### **1228.4.11.4 Ceilings.** Refer to Section 1224.4.11.4 with the following modifications and amendments:

Ceilings shall be monolithic in seclusion rooms, exam/treatment rooms, patient bedrooms, patient toilet rooms or patient bathing facilities.

1. In these rooms, the ceiling shall be secured from patient access.

- 2. Mechanical, electrical and plumbing systems, other than terminal elements serving the room (e.g., diffusers, registers, luminaires, etc.), shall be concealed above the ceiling.

### **1228.4.12 Courts.** Refer to Section 1224.4.12.

### **1228.4.13 Elevators.** Refer to Section 1224.4.13.

### **1228.4.14 Garbage, solid waste and trash storage.** Refer to Section 1224.4.14.

### **1228.4.15 Housekeeping room.** Refer to Section 1224.4.15.

### **1228.4.16 Laundry and trash chutes.** Refer to Section 1224.4.16.

### **1228.4.17 Telephones.** Refer to Section 1224.4.17.

### **1228.4.18 Grab bars.** Refer to Section 1224.4.18 with the following modifications and amendments:

1. Grab bars, including those that are part of fixtures such as soap dishes, shall be sufficiently anchored to sustain a concentrated load of 250 pounds (113.4 kg).
2. Grab bars shall be graspable and shall be ligature resistant.

### **1228.4.19 Noise control.** Refer to Section 1224.4.19.

### **1228.4.20 Built-in furnishings.** Built-in furnishings in areas accessible to patients shall comply with the following requirements:

1. Built-in furnishings with doors or drawers shall not be provided.
2. Open shelves shall be fixed with tamper-resistant hardware.
3. When provided, clothing rods or hooks shall be ligature resistant.
4. The following are not permitted:
  - 4.1. Towel bars.
  - 4.2. Shower curtain rods.
  - 4.3. Lever handles, except where a specifically designed ligature-resistant lever handle is used.

### **1228.4.21 Building systems.**

#### **1228.4.21.1 Lighting.** Lighting in areas identified in the Patient Safety Risk Assessment as high- and medium-risk areas shall be tamper resistant. Refer to California Electrical Code.

#### **1228.4.21.2 Receptacles.** When electrical receptacles are provided in a patient bedroom, the receptacles shall be in compliance with California Electrical Code.

#### **1228.4.22 Handwashing stations.** All handwashing fixtures that are accessible to patients, including those located in patient rooms and patient toilet rooms, shall include ligature-resistant features that do not compromise compliance with the hot and cold water supply controls, laminar flow and sink requirements of the California Plumbing Code. Handwashing fixtures within patient rooms and patient toilet rooms in psychiatric nursing units

are not required to be equipped with gooseneck spouts and the discharge point may be less than 5 inches (127 mm) above the fixture rim.

**1228.5 Communication system.** Refer to Section 1224.5.

**BASIC SERVICES**

**1228.6 Reserved.**

**1228.7 Reserved.**

**1228.8 Reserved.**

**1228.9 Reserved.**

**1228.10 Reserved.**

**1228.11 Reserved.**

**1228.12 Reserved.**

**1228.13 PSYCHIATRIC REHABILITATION ACTIVITIES SERVICE SPACE.** The psychiatric rehabilitation activities service space may be centralized for common use or may be located in each nursing unit in response to the Patient Safety Risk Assessment. The following areas are required in the psychiatric rehabilitation activities service space:

**1228.13.1 Patient care areas.**

**1228.13.1.1 Indoor activity rooms.**

1. At least two separate activity rooms, one appropriate for group recreation and one for quiet activities to serve as a patient lounge, shall be provided.
2. Space requirements. The combined area of these rooms shall have a minimum of 25 square feet ( $2.32 \text{ m}^2$ ) per patient bed, with at least 120 square feet ( $11.15 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area for each of the two spaces.

**1228.13.1.2 Outdoor activity area.** An outdoor activity area shall be provided. Outdoor areas shall meet the following requirements:

1. Fences and walls shall be designed to:
  1. Be installed with tamper-resistant hardware.
  2. Have a minimum height of 10 feet (3048 mm) above the outdoor area elevation.
  3. Be anchored and constructed to withstand the body force of a 350-pound (158-kg) person.
2. If provided, gates or doors in the fence or wall shall:
  - 2.1. Swing away from the outdoor activity area.
  - 2.2. Have the hinge installed on the outside of the outdoor activity area.
- 2.3. Be provided with a locking mechanism that has been coordinated with egress requirements of Section 1004.5, Outdoor areas.
3. Lights shall not be accessible to patients. Lighting in the outdoor activity area shall not be pole mounted.

4. If provided, security cameras shall not be accessible to patients and cameras shall view the entire outdoor activity area.

5. If provided, furniture shall be secured from movement. Furniture shall not be placed in locations where it can be used to climb the fence or wall.

**1228.13.1.3 General support areas.**

1. Space for staff conferences, patient evaluation and progress reports.
  - 1.1. Staff conference room. A conference and treatment planning room shall be provided.
  - 1.2. Office space separate from the activities area.
2. Where outpatients are treated, there shall be a waiting area compliant with the requirements of Section 1228.4.5.

**1228.13.2 Physical therapy service space.** The physical | | < therapy service space shall comply with Section 1224.35.2.

**1228.13.3 Occupational therapy service space.** The occupational therapy service space shall comply with Section 1224.35.3, Items 1, 2 and 3. | | <

**1228.13.4 Speech pathology and/or audiology service space.** The speech pathology service space shall comply | | < with Section 1224.35.4.

**1228.14 PSYCHIATRIC NURSING SERVICE SPACE.** Psychiatric nursing units shall comply with the requirements of this section. If the nursing unit is a locked unit, the primary access point to the unit shall be through a sally port. For "secure treatment facilities," alternate designs for locked unit access without individual sally ports may be approved by the enforcement agency when it can be demonstrated that the alternate design meets performance requirements without compromising any health or life-safety requirement.

**1228.14.1 Patient rooms.** Each patient bedroom shall meet the following standards:

**1228.14.1.1 Capacity.** Maximum room capacity shall be two patients.

**Exception:** Where renovation of existing individual acute psychiatric hospital patient rooms is undertaken in facilities built under the 2013, or prior, California Building Code, maximum room capacity shall be no more than the present capacity, to a maximum of eight patients per patient room. Placement of beds shall not be more than three deep from the exterior window.

**1228.14.1.2 Space requirements.** Patient bedrooms shall have a minimum clear floor area of 110 square feet ( $10.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) for single-bed rooms and 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed for multiple-bed rooms. | |

**1228.14.1.3 Windows.** Each patient bedroom shall have a window in accordance with Section 1228.4.9.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1228.14.1.4 Reserved.**

**1228.14.1.5 Outside exposure.** Refer to Section 1224.14.1.5.

**1228.14.1.6 Handwashing stations.** Handwashing stations shall comply with Section 1228.4.22. Handwashing stations are required in patient toilet rooms. Handwashing stations are not required in patient bedrooms.

**1228.14.1.7 Patient toilet room.**

1. Each patient shall have access to a toilet room without having to enter a corridor.

**Exception:** Corridor access to the patient toilet room shall be permitted at pediatric or adolescent patient bedrooms and in specific patient bedrooms where the use of corridor access is part of the hospital's written Patient Safety Risk Assessment and management program.

2. One toilet room shall serve no more than two patient bedrooms and no more than four patients.
3. The toilet room shall contain a toilet and a hand-washing station.

**1228.14.1.8 Patient storage.** Each patient shall have in their room a separate wardrobe, locker or closet for storing personal effects. Shelves for folded garments shall be used instead of arrangements for hanging garments.

**1228.14.1.9 Privacy.** Visual privacy in multibed rooms (e.g., cubicle curtains) is not required in psychiatric nursing units.

**1228.14.1.10 Grab bars.** Grab bars provided in accessible patient toilet rooms shall comply with Section 1228.4.18.

**1228.14.1.11 Room identification.** Each patient room shall be labeled with an identification number, letter or combination of the two.

**1228.14.2 Service areas.** Provision for the services listed below shall be in or immediately accessible to each psychiatric nursing unit. The size and location of each service area will depend upon the numbers and types of beds served. Identifiable spaces are required for each of the indicated functions. If a service area is specifically permitted to serve more than one nursing unit, there shall be at least one such service area located on each nursing unit floor.

**1228.14.2.1 Administrative center(s) or nurse station(s).** Refer to Section 1224.4.4.2.

**1228.14.2.1.1 Documentation area.** A separate charting area with provisions for acoustic and patient file privacy shall be provided.

**1228.14.2.1.2 Handwashing station(s).** Refer to Section 1228.4.22 for the definition of handwashing station. Handwashing stations in high- or medium-patient-risk areas shall be ligature resistant.

**1228.14.2.2 Office(s) for staff.** Office(s) for staff shall be provided.

**1228.14.2.3 Support areas for staff.**

1. Staff lounge facilities. Staff lounge facilities may be combined between units.
2. Staff toilet rooms.
3. Staff storage locations. Securable closets or cabinet compartments for the personal effects of nursing personnel shall be immediately accessible to the administrative center or nurse station.

**1228.14.2.4 Multipurpose room(s).** Multipurpose rooms shall be provided for staff, patients, patients' families for patient visits, conferences, reports, education, training sessions and consultation. These rooms shall be readily accessible to each nursing unit. One such room may serve several psychiatric nursing units.

**1228.14.2.5 Examination and treatment room.** Refer to Section 1228.4.4.1.1.

**1228.14.2.6 Clean utility/workroom.** Refer to Section 1228.4.4.6.

**1228.14.2.7 Soiled utility/workroom.** Refer to Section 1228.4.4.7.

**1228.14.2.8 Medication station.** Refer to Section 1228.4.4.4.

**1228.14.2.9 Clean linen storage.** Each psychiatric nursing unit shall contain a designated area for clean linen storage. This may be within the clean utility room or a separate closet.

**1228.14.2.10 Nourishment area.** Refer to Section 1228.4.4.5.

**1228.14.2.11 Ice-making equipment.** Each nursing unit shall have equipment to provide ice for treatments and nourishment. Ice-making equipment may be in the clean utility/workroom or at the nourishment station. Ice intended for human consumption shall be from self-dispensing icemakers.

**1228.14.2.12 Equipment and supply storage.** Appropriate room(s) shall be provided for storage of equipment necessary for patient care. Each unit shall provide not less than 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ m}^2$ ). Location of the storage areas shall not present a risk to the patient population as indicated in the functional program.

**1228.14.2.13 Reserved.**

**1228.14.2.14 Patient bathing facilities.** A bathtub or shower shall be provided for each six patient beds not otherwise served by bathing facilities at patient bed-rooms.

**1228.14.2.15 Common patient toilet room(s).** In addition to the toilet rooms serving bed areas, common patient toilet rooms shall be located adjacent to multipurpose room(s) and within or directly accessible to each common patient bathing facility.

**1228.14.2.16 Emergency equipment storage.** Emergency equipment storage shall be provided at each nursing unit that is under visual observation of staff.

**1228.14.2.17 Housekeeping room.** One housekeeping room shall be permitted to serve more than one nursing unit on a floor. Refer to Section 1228.4.15.

**1228.14.2.18 Grab bars.** Grab bars in common patient toilets and bathing facilities shall be installed in accordance with Section 1228.4.18.

## SPECIAL PATIENT CARE ROOMS

**1228.14.3 Airborne Infection Isolation (AII) room(s).** There shall be at least one airborne infection isolation (AII) room provided for each 50 beds, and for each major fraction thereof. Airborne infection isolation rooms for pediatric/adolescent and forensic supplemental service nursing units shall be calculated independently from, and shall not be shared with each other or any other psychiatric nursing unit. Refer to Section 1224.14.3 and the general construction requirements of Section 1228.4. A bedpan flushing attachment is not required.

**1228.14.4 Protective environment room(s).** If provided, refer to Section 1224.14.4 and the general construction requirements of Section 1228.4.

**1228.14.5 Seclusion room(s).** There shall be at least one seclusion room provided for each 24 licensed beds, and for each major fraction thereof. At least one seclusion room shall be provided. A seclusion room may be shared by psychiatric nursing units. Seclusion rooms for pediatric/adolescent and forensic supplemental service nursing units shall be calculated independently from, and shall not be shared with each other or any other psychiatric nursing unit. Refer to the general construction requirements of Section 1228.4.

**1228.14.6 Quiet room.** A quiet room shall be provided in each psychiatric nursing unit for a patient who needs to be alone for a short period of time but does not require a seclusion room. Refer to Section 1228.4.4.1.5.

**1228.14.7 Visitor/consultation room(s).** Visitor/consultation rooms shall be provided at a room-to-bed ratio of one consultation room for each 12 psychiatric beds, or major fraction thereof with a minimum of one, in each psychiatric nursing unit. Additionally, the following requirements shall be met:

1. Visitor/consultation room(s) shall have a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet ( $9.29 m^2$ ).
2. The room(s) shall be designed for acoustical and visual privacy. Refer to Table 1224.4.19, Sound Transmission Limitations in Hospitals.

**1228.14.8 Conference room.** A conference and treatment planning room shall be provided for use by the psychiatric nursing unit.

**1228.14.9 Space for group therapy.** An enclosed private space with a minimum clear floor area of at least 225 square feet ( $20.90 m^2$ ) shall be available for group therapy activities.

**1228.15 Reserved.**

**1228.16 Reserved.**

**1228.17 Reserved.**

**1228.18 Reserved.**

**1228.19 PHARMACEUTICAL SERVICE SPACE.** Pharmaceutical service space shall comply with the provisions of Section 1224.19.

**1228.20 DIETETIC SERVICE SPACE.** Refer to Section 1224.20, Dietetic Service Space for requirements, as modified below:

**1228.20.1 Dining area.** Provide dining space(s) for ambulatory patients, staff and visitors. Provide patient dining room(s) of 20 square feet ( $1.86 m^2$ ) per patient bed separate from staff dining. These spaces shall be separate from the food preparation and distribution areas.

## SUPPORT SERVICES

**1228.21 ADMINISTRATIVE SPACE.** Refer to Section 1224.21.

**1228.22 CENTRAL STERILE SUPPLY.** Refer to Section 1224.22.

## 1228.23 STORAGE

**1228.23.1 General storage.** Psychiatric hospitals shall provide general storage space of at least 10 square feet ( $0.93 m^2$ ) per bed in addition to specialized storage spaces. All storage spaces shall be located within the hospital building and shall be readily accessible to the connecting corridor required under Section 1224.4.7.5.

**1228.23.2 Specialized storage.** Specialized storage spaces shall include the following:

**1228.23.2.1 Linen.** Provide separate and enclosed facilities for clean and soiled linen in each nursing unit. The clean linen storage space shall have a minimum area of 10 square feet ( $0.93 m^2$ ) and may be within the clean utility room. The soiled linen collection space shall have an area of no less than 10 square feet ( $0.93 m^2$ ), except where linen chutes are provided, and may be within the soiled utility room.

**1228.23.2.2 Supply.** One supply storage space having a minimum area of 15 square feet ( $1.39 m^2$ ) shall be provided in each nursing unit. Supply storage may be within the clean utility room used only as part of a system for distributing clean and sterile supplies.

**1228.23.2.3 Wheelchairs.** A room or space shall be provided in each nursing unit for wheelchairs. Wheelchair storage areas may be located within the nursing unit or outside but readily accessible to the unit. The wheelchair space shall have a minimum area of 15 square feet ( $1.39 m^2$ ).

**1228.23.2.4 Sterile and unsterile supplies** shall be stored separately.

**1228.23.2.5 Food storage** shall be as described in Section 1224.20.

**1228.23.3 Patient storage facilities.** A staff-controlled secured storage area shall be provided for patient's effects

*that are determined to be potentially harmful (e.g., razors, nail files, cigarette lighters).*

#### **1228.24 MORGUE.**

**1228.24.1** Acute-care Psychiatric Hospitals with a licensed bed capacity of 50, or more, shall provide a morgue with autopsy facilities.

**Exception:** This may not be required if it can be demonstrated to the licensing agency that morgue and autopsy facilities are available locally.

**1228.24.2 Minimum requirements.** Refer to Section 1224.24.2.

#### **1228.25 EMPLOYEE DRESSING ROOMS AND LOCKERS.** Refer to Section 1224.25.

#### **1228.26 HOUSEKEEPING ROOMS.** Refer to Section 1224.26.

#### **1228.27 LAUNDRY.** Refer to Section 1224.27.

#### **SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICES**

**1228.28 ELECTROCONVULSIVE THERAPY SERVICE SPACE.** If electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) is provided in the facility, the requirements in Section 1224.28.6 shall be met.

#### **1228.29 Reserved.**

**1228.30 PEDIATRIC AND ADOLESCENT PSYCHIATRIC SERVICE SPACE.** Pediatric and adolescent psychiatric service space patient areas shall be separate and distinct from adult psychiatric service space patient areas. The requirements of Section 1228.14, Psychiatric Nursing Service Space shall apply to pediatric and adolescent units as amended below:

##### **1228.30.1 Patient bedroom.**

**1228.30.1.1 Capacity.** Maximum bedroom capacity shall be four patients.

**1228.30.1.2 Space requirements.** Patient bedroom areas (with beds or cribs) shall meet the following requirements:

1. For single-bed rooms, a minimum clear floor area of 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ).
2. For multiple-bed rooms, a minimum clear floor area of 80 square feet ( $7.43 \text{ m}^2$ ) per bed and 60 square feet ( $5.57 \text{ m}^2$ ) minimum clear floor area per crib.

##### **1228.30.2 Patient toilet room.**

1. Each patient shall have access to a toilet room, either from the patient room or from the corridor outside the patient room.

2. Where access is provided via a corridor, the following requirements shall be met:

- 2.1. The toilet room shall be located in the nursing unit.
- 2.2. The toilet room shall be located no more than 150 feet (45.72 m) from the bedroom.

**1228.30.3 Activity areas.** The pediatric and adolescent activities space may be centralized for common use by

*multiple pediatric and adolescent psychiatric units or may be located in each individual unit, in response to the Patient Safety Risk Assessment. Centralized activity areas shall be readily accessible without traversing adult patient areas.*

##### **1228.30.3.1 Space requirements.**

1. The combined area for activity space shall have 35 square feet ( $3.25 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per patient bed.
2. A separate dining space shall be provided and shall have a minimum of 15 square feet ( $1.39 \text{ m}^2$ ) of clear floor area per patient bed.

**1228.30.3.2 Outdoor areas.** Pediatric and adolescent outdoor areas shall be separate from adult outdoor areas. Refer to Section 1228.13.1.2.

**1228.30.4 Support areas for the pediatric and adolescent psychiatric unit.** Storage space shall be provided for toys, equipment, extra cribs and beds and cots or recliners for parents who may stay overnight.

**1228.30.5 Education.** If a unit treats children of school age over a period of one month or more, it shall provide physical facilities for an educational program, such as classrooms and an office for the teacher.

**1228.31 FORENSIC PSYCHIATRIC UNIT.** Where provided, a forensic psychiatric unit shall be separate and distinct from other patient areas. The requirements of Section 1228.14, Psychiatric Nursing Service Space shall apply to forensic units as amended below:

**1228.31.1 Sally port.** Forensic units shall have security vestibules or sally ports at the unit entrance. For "secure treatment facilities," alternate designs for locked unit access without individual sally ports, may be approved by the enforcement agency when it can be demonstrated that the alternate design meets performance requirements, without compromising any health or life-safety requirement.

**1228.31.2 Pediatrics and adolescents.** Forensic unit areas for pediatrics and adolescents shall be separated from adult areas. Refer to Section 1228.30.

**1228.31.3 Space requirements.** Specialized program requirements may result in additional treatment areas, police and courtroom space, and security considerations. When a forensic unit is provided, the needs of the patient population and special requirements shall be specifically addressed in the Patient Safety Risk Assessment.

##### **1228.32 Reserved.**

##### **1228.33 Reserved.**

##### **1228.34 Reserved.**

##### **1228.35 Reserved.**

##### **1228.36 Reserved.**

##### **1228.37 Reserved.**

**1228.38 INTERMEDIATE-CARE SERVICE SPACE.** Where provided, an intermediate-care service unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall com-

ply with the applicable requirements of Section 1225 and the general construction provisions of Section 1228.4.

**1228.39 OUTPATIENT SERVICE SPACE.** Where provided, outpatient service space shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1224.39 and the general construction provisions of Section 1228.4.

**1228.40 SKILLED NURSING SERVICE SPACE.** Where provided, the skilled nursing service unit shall be housed in a separate and distinct nursing unit and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1225 and the general construction provisions of Section 1228.4.

#### 1228.41 Reserved.

**1228.42 CLINICAL LABORATORY SERVICE SPACE.** Where provided, clinical laboratory service space shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.17, Clinical Laboratory Service Space.

**1228.43 RADIOLOGICAL SERVICE SPACE.** Where provided, Radiology/Imaging Service Space shall comply with the requirements of Section 1224.18, Radiological/Imaging Service Space and the general construction provisions of Section 1228.4.

### SECTION 1229 Reserved

## SECTION 1230 [BSCC] MINIMUM STANDARDS FOR JUVENILE FACILITIES

#### 1230.1 Design criteria for required spaces.

**1230.1.1 Reception/intake admission.** In each juvenile hall, space used for the reception of youth pending admission to juvenile hall shall have the following space and equipment:

1. Weapons lockers as specified in Section 1230.2.9;
2. A secure room for the confinement of youth pending admission to juvenile hall as specified in Section 1230.1.2;

In each juvenile hall, camp and ranch, space used for the reception of youth pending admission to these facilities shall have the following space and equipment:

3. Access to a shower;
4. A secure vault or storage space for youth, valuables;
5. Telephones accessible to youth; and
6. Access to hot and cold running water for staff use.

**1230.1.2 Locked holding room.** A locked holding room shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 15 square feet ( $1.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per youth;
2. Provide no less than 45 square feet ( $4.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space and have a clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more;

3. Contain seating to accommodate all youth as specified in Section 1230.2.8;

4. Be equipped with a toilet, wash basin, mirror and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1230.2, unless a procedure is in effect to give the youth access to a toilet, wash basin, mirror and drinking fountain;

5. Maximize visual supervision of youth by staff; and
6. Have an outward swinging or lateral sliding door.

**1230.1.3 Natural light.** Outer-facing exterior windows where youth's privacy is not at risk shall be provided in locked sleeping rooms, single occupancy sleeping rooms, double occupancy sleeping rooms, dormitories and day rooms. Natural light may be provided by, but is not limited to, skylights or windows in dayrooms, windows in adjacent exterior exercise areas, and in sleeping rooms and/or dormitories.

**1230.1.4 Corridors.** Corridors in living units shall be at least 8 feet (2438 mm) wide.

**1230.1.5 Living unit.** A living unit shall be a self-contained unit containing locked sleeping rooms, single and double occupancy sleeping rooms or dormitories, dayroom space, toilet, wash basins, drinking fountains and showers commensurate to the number of youth housed. A living unit shall not be divided in a way that hinders direct access, supervision, immediate intervention or other action if needed. In juvenile halls, the number of youth housed in a living unit shall not exceed 30.

**1230.1.6 Locked sleeping rooms.** Locked sleeping rooms shall be equipped with an individual or combination toilet, wash basin, mirror and drinking fountain. Doors to locked sleeping rooms shall swing outward or slide laterally.

**1230.1.7 Single occupancy sleeping rooms.** Single occupancy sleeping rooms shall provide the following:

1. A minimum of 70 square feet ( $1.78 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area;
2. A minimum clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm); and
3. The door into this room shall swing outward or slide laterally and be provided with a view panel, a minimum of 144 square inches ( $92,903 \text{ mm}^2$ ), constructed of security glazing.

4. Contain a bed as specified in 1230.2.5.

**1230.1.8 Double occupancy sleeping rooms.** Double occupancy sleeping rooms shall provide the following:

1. A minimum of 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area;
2. A minimum clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) and a minimum width of 7 feet (2134 mm); and
3. The door into this room shall swing outward or slide laterally and be provided with a view panel, a minimum of 144 square inches ( $92,903 \text{ mm}^2$ ), constructed of security glazing.

4. Contain beds as specified in 1230.2.5.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**TABLE 1230A**  
**REQUIRED SPACES AND EQUIPMENT IN JUVENILE FACILITIES**

SECTION NUMBERS	REGULATION	HALLS	CAMPS	SPJH
I230.1.1	<i>Reception/intake admission</i>	X		
I230.1.2	<i>Locked holding rooms</i>	X	X <sup>l</sup>	
I230.1.3	<i>Natural light</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.4	<i>Corridors</i>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>
I230.1.5	<i>Living units</i>	X		
I230.1.6	<i>Locked sleeping rooms</i>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>
I230.1.7	<i>Single occupancy sleeping rooms</i>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>
I230.1.8	<i>Double occupancy sleeping rooms</i>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>
I230.1.9	<i>Dormitories</i>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>
I230.1.10	<i>Day rooms</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.11	<i>Physical activity and recreation areas</i>	X	X	
I230.1.12	<i>Academic classrooms</i>	X	X	
I230.1.13	<i>Safety rooms</i>	X <sup>l</sup>		
I230.1.14	<i>Medical examination rooms</i>	X	X	
I230.1.15	<i>Pharmaceutical storage</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.16	<i>Dining areas</i>	X	X	
I230.1.17	<i>Visiting space</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.18	<i>Institutional storage</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.19	<i>Personal storage</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.20	<i>Safety equipment storage</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.21	<i>Janitorial closet</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.22	<i>Audio monitoring system</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.23	<i>Emergency power</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.24	<i>Confidential interview rooms</i>	X	X	X
I230.1.25	<i>Special-purpose juvenile halls</i>	X		
I230.1.26	<i>Court holding rooms for youth*</i>	X <sup>l</sup>		
I230.2.1	<i>Toilets/urinals</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.2	<i>Wash basins</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.3	<i>Drinking fountains</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.4	<i>Showers</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.5	<i>Beds</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.6	<i>Lighting</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.7	<i>Padding</i>	X <sup>l</sup>		
I230.2.8	<i>Seating</i>	X	X	X
I230.2.9	<i>Weapons lockers</i>	X	X <sup>l</sup>	X
I230.2.10	<i>Security glazing</i>	X	X <sup>l</sup>	X <sup>l</sup>
I230.2.11	<i>Mirrors</i>	X	X	X

Key:

Halls = Juvenile halls.

Camps = Camps, ranches, forestry camps or boot camps.

SPJH = Special-purpose juvenile halls.

\* = For youth in jail, youth in temporary custody in a law enforcement facility and youth in court holding facilities, see Sections 1520, 1540 and 1560 of Title 15, respectively.

X = Regulation is applicable for all juvenile facilities.

X<sup>l</sup> = Regulation is applicable for halls, camps and special-purpose juvenile halls dependent on operational characteristics of the facility.

**1230.1.9 Dormitories.** Dormitories shall provide the following:

1. A minimum of 50 square feet ( $4.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per youth with the minimum size of a dormitory being 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area and a minimum 8-foot (2438 mm) clear ceiling height;
2. Designed for no fewer than four youth;
3. Dormitories in juvenile halls shall be designed for no more than 30 youth;
4. Camps shall conform to Items 1 and 2.

**1230.1.10 Dayrooms.** Dayrooms shall contain 35 square feet ( $3.3 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per youth, and contain tables and seating to accommodate the maximum numbers of youth allowed access at a given time. Access must be provided to toilets, wash basins, drinking fountains and showers as specified in Section 1230.2.

**1230.1.11 Physical activity and recreation areas.** Indoor/outdoor physical activity and recreation areas shall be designed as follows:

<b>1. Facility capacity</b>	<b>Minimum indoor outdoor recreation space</b>
40 or less	9,000 square feet ( $836 \text{ m}^2$ )
41 to 274	225 square feet ( $21 \text{ m}^2$ ) per youth up to 61,650 square feet ( $5727 \text{ m}^2$ )
275 or more	61,650 square feet ( $5727 \text{ m}^2$ ), plus 145 square feet ( $13.47 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each youth beyond 274 [up to a maximum of 87,120 square feet ( $8093 \text{ m}^2$ )]

- 1.1. At least one quarter of the dedicated indoor/outdoor space shall be a paved or like surface.
- 1.2. The required recreation area shall contain no single dimension less than 40 feet (12.2 m).
2. A portion of the dedicated space for physical activity and recreation shall be out-of-doors and be of sufficient size and equipped in such a manner to allow compliance with Title 15, Section 1371, which requires at least one hour per day of outdoor activity for each detained youth.
3. Lighting of outdoor recreation areas shall be provided to allow for evening activities and to provide security.
4. Access must be provided to a toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1230.2.

**1230.1.12 Academic classrooms.** There shall be dedicated classroom space for every juvenile in every facility. The primary purpose for the academic classroom shall be for education. Each academic classroom shall contain a minimum of 160 square feet ( $14.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space for the teachers' desk and work area and a minimum of 28 square feet ( $2.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space per minor. A communication system shall be provided in each classroom to allow for

immediate response to emergencies. The classroom shall be designed for a maximum of 20 minors. There shall be space available in every juvenile facility that may be used for specialized, one-on-one or small group educational purposes.

**1230.1.13 Safety room.** A safety room shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 48 square feet ( $4.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area and a minimum clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm);
2. Be limited to one youth;
3. Be padded as specified in Section 1230.2.7;
4. Provide one or more vertical view panels constructed of security glazing. These view panels shall be no more than 4 inches (102 mm) wide nor less than 24 inches (610 mm) long, which shall provide a view of the entire room;
5. Provide an audio monitoring system as specified in Section 1230.1.22;
6. Contain a flushing ring toilet, capable of accepting solid waste, mounted flush with the floor, the controls for which must be located outside of the room;
7. Be equipped with a variable intensity, security-type lighting fixture with controls located outside the room;
8. Any wall or ceiling-mounted devices must be designed to prohibit access to the youth occupant; and
9. Provide a food pass with lockable shutter, no more than 4 inches (102 mm) high, and located between 26 inches (660 mm) and 32 inches (813 mm) as measured from the bottom of the food pass to the floor.

**1230.1.14 Medical examination room.** There must be a minimum of one suitably equipped medical examination room in every juvenile facility. Medical examination rooms shall provide the following:

1. Space for carrying out routine medical examinations and emergency care and used for no other purpose;
2. Privacy for youth;
3. Lockable storage space for medical supplies;
4. Not less than 144 square feet ( $13.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space with no single dimension less than 7 feet (2134 mm);
5. Hot and cold running water;
6. Smooth, nonporous, washable surfaces;
7. A medical exam table; and
8. Adequate lighting.

**1230.1.15 Pharmaceutical storage.** Provide lockable storage space for medical supplies and pharmaceutical preparations as specified by Title 15, Section 1438.

**1230.1.16 Dining areas.** Dining areas in juvenile facilities shall contain a minimum of 15 square feet ( $1.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space and sufficient tables and seating for each person being fed. Persons being fed include youth, staff

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

and visitors. Dining areas shall not contain toilets or showers in the same room without appropriate visual barrier.

**1230.1.17 Visiting space.** Space shall be provided in all juvenile facilities for in-person visiting which shall be unobstructed by barriers such as, but not limited to, security glazing or mesh.

**1230.1.18 Institutional storage.** One or more storage rooms shall be provided to accommodate a minimum of 80 cubic feet ( $2.3 \text{ m}^3$ ) of storage space per minor. Items to be stored shall be institutional clothing, bedding, supplies and activity equipment.

**1230.1.19 Personal storage.** Each youth in a juvenile facility shall be provided with a minimum of 9 cubic feet ( $0.25 \text{ m}^3$ ) of secure storage space for personal clothing and belongings.

**1230.1.20 Safety equipment storage.** In all juvenile facilities, a secure area shall be provided for the storage of safety equipment, such as fire extinguishers, self-contained breathing apparatus, wire and bar cutters, emergency lights, etc.

**1230.1.21 Janitorial closet.** In all juvenile facilities, at least one securely lockable janitorial closet, containing a mop sink and sufficient area for the storage of cleaning implements, must be provided within the security area of the facility.

**1230.1.22 Audio monitoring system.** In safety rooms, locked holding rooms, locked sleeping rooms, single and double occupancy rooms and dormitories, there must be an audio monitoring system capable of actuation by the minor that alerts personnel.

**1230.1.23 Emergency power.** There shall be a source of emergency power in all juvenile facilities capable of providing minimal lighting in all living units, activities areas, corridors, stairs and central control points, and to maintain fire and life safety, security, communications and alarm systems (Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 27). Such an emergency power source shall conform to the requirements specified in Title, 24, Part 3, Article 700, California Electrical Code, California Code of Regulations.

**1230.1.24 Confidential interview room.** Confidential interview rooms shall contain a minimum of 60 square feet ( $5.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area. In juvenile halls there shall be a minimum of one suitably furnished interview room for each 30 youth. In camps there shall be a minimum of one suitably furnished interview room for each facility. This interview room shall provide for confidential consultations with youth.

**1230.1.25 Special-purpose juvenile halls.** Special-purpose juvenile halls shall conform to all minimum standards for juvenile facilities contained in this section with the following exceptions:

1. Physical activity and recreation areas as specified in Section 1230.1.11;
2. Academic classrooms as specified in Section 1230.1.12;

3. Medical examination room as specified in Section 1230.1.14; and

4. Dining areas as specified in Section 1230.1.16.

**1230.1.26 Court holding room for youth.** A court holding room shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 10 square feet ( $0.93 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per youth;
2. Be limited to no more than 16 youth;
3. Provide no less than 40 square feet ( $3.7 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area and have clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more;
4. Contain seating to accommodate all youth as specified in Section 1230.2.8;
5. Contain a toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1230.2;
6. Maximize visual supervision of youth by staff; and
7. A mirror of a material appropriate to the level of security shall be provided as specified in Section 1230.2.11.

**1230.1.27 Program and activity areas.** All juvenile facilities shall include adequate space for specific programs in addition to recreation and exercise areas.

### 1230.2 Design criteria for furnishings and equipment.

**1230.2.1 Toilet/urinals.** All toilet areas shall provide privacy for the youth and help reduce the risk of voyeurism without mitigating staff's ability to supervise. Toilets must be available in a ratio to youth as follows:

1. Juvenile halls	1:6;
2. Camps	1:10; and
3. Locked holding rooms	1:8:

One toilet and one urinal may be substituted for every 15 males.

**1230.2.2 Wash basins.** In living units, wash basins must be available in a ratio to youth as follows:

1. Juvenile halls	1:6;
2. Camps	1:10; and
3. Locked holding rooms	1:8:

Wash basins must be provided with hot and cold or tempered water.

**1230.2.3 Drinking fountains.** In living areas and indoor and outdoor recreation areas, drinking fountains must be accessible to youth and to staff.

1. The drinking fountain bubbler shall be on an angle which prevents waste water from flowing over the drinking bubbler; and
2. The water flow shall be actuated by a mechanical means.

**1230.2.4 Showers.** Shower areas shall provide privacy for the youth and help reduce the risk of voyeurism without mitigating staff's ability to supervise. Showers shall be available to all youth on a ratio of at least one shower or

bathtub to every six youth. Showers shall be provided with tempered water.

**1230.2.5 Beds.** Beds shall be at least 30 inches (762 mm) wide and 76 inches (1930 mm) long and be of the solid bottom type. Beds shall be at least 12 inches (305 mm) off the floor and spaced no less than 36 inches (914 mm) apart. Bunk beds must have no less than 33 inches vertically between the solid bottoms. In secure facilities, the bunks shall be securely anchored and flushed against the floor and/or wall.

**1230.2.6 Lighting.** Lighting in locked sleeping rooms, single occupancy rooms, double occupancy rooms, dormitories, day rooms and activity areas shall provide not less than 20 footcandles (216 lux) of illumination at desk level. Night lighting is required in these areas to provide good visibility for supervision and be conducive to sleep.

**1230.2.7 Padding.** In safety rooms, padding shall cover the entire floor, door, walls and everything on the walls to a clear height of 8 feet (2438 mm). Benches or platforms are not to be placed on the floor of this room.

All padded rooms must be equipped with a tamper-resistant fire sprinkler as approved by the State Fire Marshal. All padding must be:

1. Approved for use by the State Fire Marshal;
2. Nonporous to facilitate cleaning;
3. At least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) thick;
4. Of a unitary or laminated construction to prevent its destruction by teeth, hand tearing or small metal objects;
5. Firmly bonded to all padded surfaces to prevent tearing or ripping; and
6. Without any exposed seams susceptible to tearing or ripping.

**1230.2.8 Seating.** Seating shall be designed to the level of security. When bench seating is used, 18 inches (457 mm) of bench is seating for one person.

**1230.2.9 Weapons lockers.** Weapons lockers are required in all secure juvenile facilities and shall be located outside the secure area of the facility. Weapons lockers shall be equipped with individual compartments, each with an individual locking device.

**1230.2.10 Security glazing.** Security glazing shall comply with the minimum requirements of one of the following test standards: American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM F1233-98, Class III glass, or; California Department of Corrections and Rehabilitation, CDCR 860-94d, Appendix H, Class C glass or; H.P. White Laboratory, Inc., HPW-TP-0500.02, Forced Entry Level III.

**1230.2.11 Mirrors.** A mirror of a material appropriate to the level of security must be provided near each wash basin specified in these regulations.

## SECTION 1231 [BSCC] LOCAL DETENTION

### 1231.1 Definitions.

**BOARD OF STATE & COMMUNITY CORRECTIONS** means the Board of State & Community Corrections, which acts by and through its executive officer, deputy directors and field representatives.

**LIVING AREAS** means those areas of a facility utilized for the day-to-day housing and activities of inmates. These areas do not include special-use cells such as sobering, safety and holding or staging cells normally located in receiving areas.

**LOCAL DETENTION FACILITY** is any city, county, city and county or regional jail, camp, court holding facility or other correctional facility, whether publicly or privately operated, and court holding facility used for the confinement of adults or of both adults and minors, but does not include that portion of a facility for the confinement of both adults and minors which is devoted only to the confinement of minors. The types of local detention facilities are as follows:

**Court holding facility** means a local detention facility constructed within a court building after January 1, 1978, used for the confinement of persons solely for the purpose of a court appearance for a period not to exceed 12 hours.

**Temporary holding facility** means a local detention facility constructed after January 1, 1978, used for the confinement of persons for 24 hours or less pending release, transfer to another facility or appearance in court.

**Type I facility** means a local detention facility used for the detention of persons usually pending arraignment for not more than 96 hours, excluding holidays, after booking. Such a Type I facility may also detain persons on court order either for their own safe-keeping or sentenced to a city jail as an inmate worker, and may house inmate workers sentenced to the county jail provided such placement in the facility is made on a voluntary basis on the part of the inmate. As used in this section, an inmate worker is defined as a person assigned to perform designated tasks outside of his or her cell or dormitory, pursuant to the written policy of the facility, for a minimum of four hours each day on a five-day scheduled work week.

**TYPE II FACILITY** means a local detention facility used for the detention of persons pending arraignment, after arraignment, during trial and upon a sentence of commitment.

**TYPE III FACILITY** means a local detention facility used only for the detention of convicted and sentenced persons.

**TYPE IV FACILITY** means a local detention facility or portion thereof designated for the housing of inmates eligible, under Penal Code Section 1208, for work/education furlough and/or other programs involving inmate access into the community.

**RATED CAPACITY** means the number of inmate occupants for which a facility's single-and double-occupancy cells or dormitories, except those dedicated for medical or disci-

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

plinary isolation housing, were planned and designed in conformity to the standards and requirements contained herein and in Title 15, C.C.R.

### 1231.2 Design criteria for required spaces.

**1231.2.1 Reception and booking.** Facilities where booking and housing occur shall have the following space and equipment:

1. Weapons locker as specified in Section 1231.3.12.
2. A cell or room for the confinement of inmates pending their booking, complying with Section 1231.2.2.
3. A sobering cell as described in Section 1231.2.4 if intoxicated, inmates who may pose a danger to themselves or others are held. For those facilities

that accept male and female intoxicated inmates two sobering cells shall be provided.

4. Access to a shower within the secure portion of the facility.
5. Provide access to a secure vault or storage space for inmate valuables.
6. A safety cell or cells as described in Section 1231.2.5 if the program statement identifies the need for such a cell.
7. Telephones which are accessible to the inmates.
8. Unobstructed access to hot and cold running water for staff use.

**TABLE 1231A  
REQUIRED SPACES AND EQUIPMENT IN JUVENILE FACILITIES**

	TYPE I	TYPE II	TYPE III	TYPE IV	COURT HOLDING	TEMPORARY HOLDING
Reception/booking	x	x	*	*		*
Temporary holding cells or room	x	x	*	*	x	x
Detoxification cell	*	x				
Safety cell	*	*				
Single-occupancy cell	x	x	*			
Dormitories	*	x	x	x		
Day room	*	x	x			
Exercise area		x	x	x <sup>1</sup>		
Shower area/delousing room	x	x				*
Program/multipurpose space		x	x	x		
Medical exam room <sup>2</sup>		x	x			
Pharmaceutical storage space	x	x	x	x		*
Medical care housing		*	*			
Hair care space		x	x			
Commissary <sup>3</sup>			x	x <sup>3</sup>		
Dining facility <sup>4</sup>	*	x	x	*		
Visiting space	x	x	x	x		
Attorney interview rooms	x	x	x		x	x
Confidential interview rooms		x	*			
Safety equipment storage	x	x <sup>2</sup>	x	x	x	x
Janitor closet	x	x	x	x	x	x
Storage rooms	x	x <sup>5</sup>	x	x	x	x
Audio/video-monitoring systems	x	x	x <sup>6</sup>	*	x	x
Laundry facility		x		x <sup>7</sup>		
Fire-detection alarm system	x	x	x	x	x	x
Emergency	x	x	x	x	x	x

x - Required.

\* - Required when program statement identifies need.

1. Not required if community recreation facilities are available.
2. Not required if the inmate population is less than 25.
3. Not required if community access is available.
4. Not required if meals are served in day room.
5. Must be securely lockable and located within the security area.
6. Required in areas housing prisoners of higher than minimum security.
7. Not required if community access is permitted.

**1231.2.2 Temporary holding cell or room.** A temporary holding cell or room shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 10 square feet ( $0.93\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per inmate;
2. Be limited to no more than 16 inmates;
3. Be no smaller than 40 square feet ( $3.7\text{ m}^2$ ) and have a clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more;
4. Contain seating to accommodate all inmates as required in Section 1231.3;
5. Contain a toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1231.3;
6. Maximize visual supervision of inmates by staff; and
7. When located in a temporary holding facility, the cell or room shall be equipped with a bunk if inmates are to be held longer than 12 hours.

**1231.2.3 Temporary staging cell or room.** A temporary staging cell or room shall:

1. Be constructed for the purpose of holding inmates who have been classified and segregated in accordance with Sections 1050 and 1053 of Title 15, Division 1, California Code of Regulations.
2. Be limited to holding inmates up to four hours.
3. Be limited to no more than 80 inmates.
4. Contain a minimum of 10 square feet ( $0.93\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per inmate and a clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more.
5. Be no smaller than 160 square feet ( $14.9\text{ m}^2$ ).
6. Contain seating to accommodate all inmates as required in Section 1231.3.
7. Contain toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1231.3.
8. Maximize visual supervision of inmates by staff.

**1231.2.4 Sobering cell.** A sobering cell shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 20 square feet ( $1.9\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per inmate;
2. Be limited to eight inmates;
3. Be no smaller than 60 square feet ( $5.6\text{ m}^2$ ) and have a clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more;
4. Contain a toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1231.3;
5. Have padded partitions located next to toilet fixture in such a manner that they provide support to the user;
6. Maximize visual supervision of inmates by staff;
7. Be padded on the floor as specified in Section 1231.3; and
8. Have accessible a shower in the secure portion of the facility.

**1231.2.5 Safety cell.** A safety cell shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 48 square feet ( $4.5\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area with no one floor dimension being less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and a clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more;

2. Be limited to one inmate;
3. Contain a flushing ring toilet, capable of accepting solid waste, mounted flush with the floor, the controls for which must be located outside of the cell;
4. Be padded as specified in Section 1231.3;
5. Be equipped with a variable intensity, security-type lighting fixture which is inaccessible to the inmate occupant, control of which is located outside of the cell;
6. Provide one or more vertical view panels not more than 4 inches (102 mm) wide nor less than 24 inches (610 mm) long which shall provide a view of the entire room;
7. Provide a food pass with lockable shutter, no more than 4 inches (102 mm) high, and located between 26 inches (660 mm) and 32 inches (813 mm) as measured from the bottom of the food pass to the floor; and
8. Any wall or ceiling mounted devices must be inaccessible to the inmate occupant.

**1231.2.6 Single-occupancy cells.** Single-occupancy cells shall:

1. Have a maximum capacity of one inmate;
2. Contain a minimum of 60 square feet ( $5.6\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area in Type I facilities and 70 square feet ( $6.5\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area in Type II and Type III facilities;
3. Have a minimum clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) and a minimum width of 6 feet (1829 mm);
4. Contain a toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1231.3; and
5. Contain a bunk, desk and seat as specified in Section 1231.3.

**Exception:** A Type I facility does not require a desk and seat.

**1231.2.7 Double-occupancy cells.** Double-occupancy cells shall:

1. Have a maximum capacity of two inmates;
2. Contain a minimum of 60 square feet ( $5.6\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area in Type I facilities and 70 square feet ( $6.5\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area in Type II and Type III facilities;
3. Have a minimum clear ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm) and a minimum width of 6 feet (1829 mm);
4. Contain a toilet, wash basin and drinking fountain as specified in Section 1231.3; and
5. Contain two bunks, and at least one desk and seat as specified in Section 1231.3.

**Exception:** A Type I facility does not require a desk and seat.

**1231.2.8 Dormitories.** Dormitories shall:

1. Contain a minimum of 50 square feet ( $4.7\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area per inmate for a single-bed unit; a minimum of 70 square feet ( $7\text{ m}^2$ ) for a double-bed unit; and a minimum of 90 square feet ( $9.3\text{ m}^2$ ) for triple-

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

- bed unit and have a minimum ceiling height of 8 feet (2438 mm);*
2. *Be designed for no more than 64 inmates and no fewer than four inmates;*
  3. *Provide access to water closets separate from the wash basin and drinking fountains as specified in Section 1231.3; and*
  4. *In other than Type I facilities, provide storage space for personal items and clothing for each occupant.*

### 1231.2.9 Dayrooms.

*Dayrooms or dayroom space shall:*

1. *Contain 35 square feet (3.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of floor area per inmate in width in front of cells/rooms;*
2. *Contain tables and seating to accommodate the maximum number of inmates;*
3. *Provide access to water closets, wash basins and drinking fountains as specified in Section 1231.3;*
4. *Provide access to a shower or showers as specified in Section 1231.3; and*
5. *Be provided to all inmates in Type II and Type III facilities (except those housed in special-use cells) and to inmate workers in Type I facilities.*

*Dayroom space as described in this section may be a part of a single occupancy cell used for administrative segregation or a dormitory, in which case the floor area of the cell or a dormitory must be increased by the square footage required for the dayroom.*

**1231.2.10 Exercise area.** An outdoor exercise area or areas must be provided in every Type II and Type III facility. The minimum clear height must be 15 feet (4572 mm) and the minimum number of square feet of surface area will be computed by multiplying 80 percent of maximum rated population by 50 square feet (4.7 m<sup>2</sup>) and dividing the result by the number of one-hour exercise periods per day.

*The exercise area must contain or provide free access to a toilet, wash basin, and drinking fountain as provided in Section 1231.3.*

*There must be at least one exercise area of not less than 600 square feet (55.7 m<sup>2</sup>). The design shall facilitate security and supervision appropriate to the level of custody.*

*Type IV facilities shall have an outdoor recreation area or access to community recreation facilities.*

**1231.2.11 Correctional program/multipurpose space.** An area for correctional programming must be provided in every Type II and Type III facility. The program area and furnishings shall be designed to meet the needs specified by the facility's program statement.

*Type IV facilities shall have multipurpose space for games and activities, dining, visiting, TV meetings and quiet space for study and reading, such that activities do not conflict with each other.*

**1231.2.12 Medical examination room.** There must be a minimum of one suitably equipped medical examination

*room in every facility which provides on-site health care. The examination room shall be designed in consultation with the responsible physician/health authority. Such a medical examination room shall:*

1. *Be located within the security area and provide for privacy of the inmates;*
2. *Provide not less than 100 square feet (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) of floor space with no single dimension less than 7 feet (2134 mm);*
3. *Provide hot and cold running water;*
4. *Provide lockable storage for medical supplies;*
5. *Provide an examination table;*
6. *Provide adequate lighting; and*
7. *Any room where medical procedures are provided must be equipped with hot and cold running water*

**1231.2.13 Pharmaceutical storage space.** Provide lockable storage space for medical supplies and pharmaceutical preparations as referenced by Title 15, California Code of Regulations, Section 1216.

**1231.2.14 Medical care housing.** There shall be some means to provide medical care and housing of ill and/or infirm inmates. When the program statement for a Type II or Type III facility indicates that medical care housing is needed, such housing must provide lockable storage space for medical instruments and must be located within the security area of the facility accessible to both female and male inmates, but not in the living area of either. The medical care housing unit shall be designed in consultation with the health authority. Medical/mental health areas may contain other than single occupancy cells.

*If negative pressure isolation rooms are being planned, they shall be designed to recognized industry standards.*

### 1231.2.15 Reserved.

**1231.2.16 Commissary.** In all Type II, III and IV facilities, except where community access is available, there shall be provisions made for inmates to purchase items (such as candy, toilet articles, stationery supplies, books, newspapers and magazines, etc.). An area shall be provided for the secure storage of the stock for such inmate canteen items.

**1231.2.17 Dining facilities.** In all Type II, III and IV facilities which serve meals, dining areas shall be provided which will allow groups of inmates to dine together. Such dining areas shall not contain toilets, wash basins or showers in the same room without appropriate visual barrier. Wherever the facility contains a central dining room or rooms, it shall contain a minimum of 15 square feet (1.4 m<sup>2</sup>) of floor space and sufficient tables and seating for each inmate being fed.

**1231.2.18 Visiting space.** Space shall be provided in all Types I, II, III and IV facilities for in-person visiting.

**1231.2.19 Safety equipment storage.** A secure area shall be provided for the storage of safety equipment such as fire extinguishers, self-contained breathing apparatus, wire and barcutters, emergency lights, etc.

**1231.2.20 Janitors' closet.** In Type II facilities, at least one securely lockable janitors' closet with sufficient area for the storage of cleaning implements and supplies must be provided within the security areas of the facility. A mop sink shall also be available within the security area of the facility. In court holding, temporary holding, Types I, III and IV facilities, the closet need not be in the security area.

**1231.2.21 Storage rooms.** One or more storage rooms shall be provided to accommodate a minimum of 80 cubic feet ( $2.3 \text{ m}^3$ ) of storage area per inmate for inmate clothing and personal property, institutional clothing, bedding and supplies. Court holding, temporary holding and Type I facilities may be excluded from the storage space requirement for personal and institutional clothing unless clothing is issued.

**1231.2.22 Audio monitoring system.** In court holding, temporary holding, Type I, Type II and Type III facilities there shall be an inmate- or sound-actuated audio monitoring system in temporary holding cells or rooms, temporary staging cells or rooms, sobering cells, safety cells, single and double occupancy cells, dormitories, day-rooms, exercise areas and correctional program/multipurpose space, which is capable of alerting personnel who can respond immediately.

**1231.2.23 Laundry facilities.** In Type IV facilities, provision shall be made for washing and drying personal clothing by machines, either in the facility or in the community, if access is permitted for same.

**1231.2.24 Emergency power.** There shall be a source of emergency power in all detention facilities capable of providing minimal lighting in all housing units, activities areas, corridors, stairs and central control points, and to maintain fire and life safety, security, communications and alarm systems. Such an emergency power source shall conform to the requirements specified in Title 24, Part 3, Article 700, California Electrical Code, California Code of Regulations.

**1231.2.25 Confidential interview rooms.** There must be a minimum of one suitably furnished interview room for confidential interviews in every facility which provides on-site health care. The interview room shall be designed in consultation with responsible custodial staff and health care staff. Such an interview room shall:

1. Be located within the security area accessible to both female and male inmates; and
2. Provide not less than 70 square feet ( $6.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space with no single dimension less than 6 feet (1829 mm).

**1231.2.26 Attorney interview space.** All facilities except Type IV facilities shall include attorney interview areas which provide for confidential consultation with inmates.

**Exception:** The design of court holding and temporary holding facilities shall include the following required spaces from Sections 1231.2.2, 1231.2.19, 1231.2.20, 1231.2.21, 1231.2.22, 1231.2.24 and 1231.2.26.

**1231.3 Design criteria for furnishings and equipment.** Furnishings and equipment shall be as follows:

#### 1231.3.1 Toilets/urinals.

1. Toilets/urinals must be provided in single-occupancy cells and double-occupancy cells.
2. In dormitories, toilets/urinals must be provided in a ratio to inmates of 1:10.
3. Toilets/urinals must be accessible to the occupants of day-rooms and exercise areas.
4. In temporary holding cells and temporary staging cells toilets/urinals must be provided in a ratio to inmates of 1:16.
5. In sobering cells toilets/urinals must be provided in a ratio to inmates of 1:8.
6. One urinal or 2 feet (610 mm) of urinal trough may be substituted for each toilet up to one third of the total number of toilets required, except in those facilities or portions thereof used for females.
7. Toilet areas shall provide modesty for inmates with staff being able to visually supervise.

#### 1231.3.2 Wash basins.

1. Wash basins must be provided in single occupancy cells and double occupancy cells.
2. In dormitories, wash basins must be provided in a ratio to inmates of 1:10.
3. Wash basins must be accessible to the occupants of day-rooms and exercise areas.
4. In temporary holding cells and temporary staging cells, wash basins must be provided in a ratio to inmates of 1:16.
5. In sobering cells, wash basins must be provided in a ratio to inmates of 1:8.
6. Wash basins must be provided with hot and cold or tempered water.
7. Two feet (610 mm) of wash basin trough may be substituted for each basin required.

**1231.3.3 Drinking fountains.** There must be a minimum of one drinking fountain in every single-occupancy cell, double-occupancy cell, dormitory, temporary holding cell, temporary staging cell, sobering cell, and be accessible to the occupants of day rooms and exercise areas. Additional drinking fountains shall be located in other areas of the facility so that drinking water will be available to inmates and staff. Such drinking fountains must meet the following minimum health requirements:

1. The drinking fountain bubbler shall be on an angle which prevents waste water from flowing over the drinking fountain bubbler.
2. Water flow shall be actuated by mechanical means.

**1231.3.4 Showers.** Showers must be available to all inmates on a ratio of at least one shower to every 20 inmates or fraction thereof and must provide hot and cold water or tempered water. Shower stalls/shower areas must be designed and

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

*constructed of materials which are impervious to water and soap so they may be easily cleaned. Shower areas shall provide modesty for inmates with staff being able to visually supervise.*

**1231.3.5 Beds** must be elevated off the floor, have a solid bottom, and a sleeping surface of at least 30 inches (762 mm) wide and 76 inches (1930 mm) long. Multiple beds must have a minimum of 21 inches (533 mm) between bed pans. Except in minimum security areas, beds must be securely fastened to the floor or the wall.

**1231.3.6 Lighting.** Lighting in housing units, dayrooms and activity areas must be sufficient to permit easy reading by a person with normal vision, and shall not be less than 20 footcandles (215.2 lux) at desk level and in the grooming area. Lighting shall be centrally controlled and/or occupant controlled in housing cells or rooms. Night lighting in these areas shall be sufficient to give good visibility for purposes of supervision. In minimum-security areas, lighting may be supplied by ordinary lighting fixtures, and in areas of higher security, light fixtures must be of secure design.

**1231.3.7 Windows.** In housing areas of higher than minimum security, exterior windows which are constantly accessible to inmates for escape must be designed and constructed so that if broken out, the net area accessible for escape is no greater than 5 inches (127 mm) in one dimension.

**1231.3.8 Cell padding.** In sobering cells, the floor and partition shall be padded. In safety cells, padding must cover the entire floor, doors and walls and everything on them to a clear height of 8 feet (2438 mm).

All such padded cells must be equipped with a tamper-resistant fire sprinkler as approved by the State Fire Marshal. All padding must be:

1. Approved for use by the State Fire Marshal;
2. Nonporous to facilitate cleaning;
3. At least  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) thick;
4. Of a unitary or laminated construction to prevent its destruction by teeth, hand tearing or small metal objects;
5. Firmly bonded to all padded surfaces to prevent tearing or ripping; and
6. Without any exposed seams susceptible to tearing or ripping.

**1231.3.9 Mirrors.** A mirror of a material appropriate to the level of security must be provided near each wash basin specified in these regulations.

**1231.3.10 Seating.** In temporary holding and temporary staging cells, seating must be securely fixed to the floor and/or wall. When bench seating is used, 18 inches (457 mm) of bench is seating for one person.

**1231.3.11 Table/seat.** In single- and double-occupancy cells, a table and seat for the purpose of writing and dining shall be provided.

**Exception:** A Type I facility does not require a table and a seat.

**1231.3.12 Weapons locker.** A secure weapons locker shall be located outside the security perimeter of the facility. Such weapons lockers shall be equipped with individual compartments, each with an individual locking device. Weapons lockers are required in temporary and court holding facilities and in all facilities of higher than minimum security.

**Exception:** The design of court holding and temporary holding facilities shall include the design criteria for furnishings and equipment from Sections 1231.3.1, 1231.3.2, 1231.3.3, 1231.3.6, 1231.3.10 and 1231.3.12.

**1231.4 Enclosure of vertical openings.** Elevator shafts, vent shafts and other vertical openings shall be enclosed, and the enclosure shall be as set forth in Chapter 7.

**1231.5 Fire-extinguishing systems.** Automatic fire-extinguishing systems, standpipes and basement pipe inlets shall be installed when and as required by Chapter 9.

**1231.6 Existing Group I occupancies.** Existing buildings housing existing protective social-care homes or facilities established prior to the effective date of these regulations may have their use continued if they conform, or are made to conform, to the following provisions.

**1231.6.1 Use of floors.** The use of floor levels in buildings of Type III, IV or V nonfire-rated construction may be as follows:

Nonambulatory—first floor only;

Ambulatory—not higher than the third-floor level, provided walls and partitions are constructed of materials equal in fire- resistive quality to that of wood lath and plaster in good repair and all walls are firestopped at each floor level.

**1231.6.2 Enclosure of exits and vertical openings.** Except for two-story structures housing ambulatory guests, all interior stairs shall be enclosed in accordance with Chapter 10. In lieu of stairway enclosures, floor separations or smoke barriers may be provided in such a manner that fire and smoke will not spread rapidly to floors above or otherwise impair exit facilities. In these instances, floor separations or smoke barriers shall have a fire resistance equal to not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wall board on each side of wood studs with openings protected by not less than a  $1\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (44 mm) solid bonded wood-core door of the self-closing type. All other vertical openings shall be enclosed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 7.

**1231.6.3 Exit access.** Each floor or portion thereof of buildings used for the housing of existing protective social-care homes or facilities shall have access to not less than two exits in such a manner as to furnish egress from the building or structure in the event of an emergency substantially equivalent to the provisions of Chapter 10.

**1231.6.4 Corridor openings.** Openings from rooms to interior corridors shall be protected by not less than  $1\frac{3}{4}$ -

inch (44 mm) solid-bonded wood-core doors. Transoms and other similar openings shall be sealed with materials equivalent to existing corridor wall construction.

**1231.6.5** Interior wall and ceiling finishes shall conform to the requirements for a Group R, Division I occupancy as specified in Chapter 8.

**1231.6.6** Automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in existing protective social-care occupancies in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9.

**1231.6.7** Fire alarm systems. Automatic fire alarm systems shall be installed in existing protective social-care homes or facilities in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9.

**Exception:** When an approved automatic sprinkler system conforming to Chapter 9 is installed, a separate fire alarm system as specified in this subsection need not be provided.

#### **SECTION 1232 Reserved**

#### **SECTION 1233 Reserved**

#### **SECTION 1234 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1235 [DPH] SANITARY CONTROL OF SHELLFISH (PLANTS AND OPERATIONS)**

**1235.1 Culling plants.** Culling plants shall be located in areas free from unsanitary conditions and faulty sewage disposal. They shall be provided with an ample supply of water under adequate pressure from a source approved by the Department of Health Services for the purpose of hosing down floor and benches and cleaning the shellfish. Floors and premises shall be kept in a clean and sanitary condition.

**1235.2 Plant arrangement.** Unless shellfish are shucked directly into packing containers with no further processing, the shucking and packing processes shall be done in separate rooms. There shall be installed in the partition between the two rooms a delivery window through which the shucked stock is passed to the packing room. Provision shall be made for storing the employees' outer garments, aprons, gloves, etc., in a separate room.

**Note:** In special instances where shucking is done on a small scale for local retail sales, shucking and packing may be permitted in a single room if approved by the Department of Health Services. This single room and all operations shall conform to all requirements of these regulations except that of separate shucking and packing rooms. "Limited" certificates shall be issued in these instances and all containers of shucked shellfish shall be

clearly labeled or marked with words "Limited Certificate" and the appropriate certificate number.

**1235.3 Floors.** The floors of all rooms in which shellfish are stored, shucked, washed, packed or otherwise processed shall be constructed of concrete or other equally impervious material, graded to drain quickly, free from cracks or uneven surfaces that might interfere with proper cleaning or drainage, and maintained in clean and satisfactory condition.

**1235.4 Walls and ceilings.** Walls and ceilings shall be maintained in a smooth, clean, washable, light-colored conditions. They shall be impervious to moisture and shall be kept in good repair. Walls contiguous to benches shall, to a height of 2 feet (610 mm) above the bench top, be of smooth concrete, metal or equally nonabsorbent material.

**1235.5 Screening.** The plant shall have all openings effectively screened, unless other effective means are provided to prevent the entrance of flies and other insects.

**1235.6 Light.** Ample light to work by shall be provided in all working rooms. A light intensity of not less than 10 footcandles (108 lux) shall be maintained on all working surfaces when workers are at their working positions.

**1235.7 Ventilation.** Adequate ventilation shall be provided to prevent condensation on ceilings or other surfaces.

**1235.8 Toilet facilities.** Every shellfish culling, shucking, packing or repacking plant shall be provided with clean and adequate toilet facilities conveniently located. No toilet room shall be used for the storage of garments, food products, containers or equipment. Construction and maintenance of toilets shall comply with all local and state regulations.

**1235.9 Handwashing facilities.** An adequate number of lavatories shall be provided at locations convenient to toilet rooms and shellfish handling operations, including running hot and cold water, soap and individual disposal towels. The use of a common towel is prohibited. All employees shall wash their hands thoroughly with running water and soap on beginning work and after each visit to the toilet. Signs to this effect shall be posted in conspicuous places in the plant and in the toilet rooms.

**1235.10 Sewers and drains.** Sewage and other liquid wastes shall be discharged into public sewers wherever possible. Where private sewage or waste disposal systems must be utilized, they shall be constructed in accordance with state and local regulations pertaining thereto. Plant waste systems shall be properly trapped and vented. Waste liquids shall be disposed of in a manner that will not adversely affect the quality of the water in which shellfish are grown or stored. Waste lines from washing machines shall have suitable protection against the possibility of sewage or wastes entering these machines.

**1235.11 Water supply.** Shucking, packing or repacking plants shall be provided with an ample supply of water under adequate pressure from a source approved by the Department of Health Services. The supply shall be accessible to all parts of the plant, adequate in quantity, and of a safe sanitary quality. No cross connections with unapproved supplies or other possible sources of contamination shall be permitted.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

### **SECTION 1236 [DPH] LABORATORY ANIMAL QUARTERS**

Laboratory animal quarters shall meet the requirements of Part 12 California Referenced Standards Code, Chapter 12-4A, Section 12-4A-101.

See the 2010 Edition, Title 24, Part 12, Chapter 12-4A.

### **SECTION 1237 [DPH] WILD ANIMAL QUARANTINE FACILITIES**

**1237.1 Scope.** The provisions of this section are intended to provide standards for the quarantine of wild animals.

**1237.2 Definitions.** For the purpose of this chapter, the following terms shall have the meaning indicated:

**ESCAPEPROOF** is a condition that will prohibit unintended release of wild animals from their quarantine enclosure.

**HOUSING FACILITY** is a room, building or area used to contain a primary enclosure or enclosures for animal quarantine.

**PRIMARY ENCLOSURE** is a structure used to immediately restrict an animal or animals to a limited amount of space, such as a room, pen, run, cage or compartment within the quarantine facility.

**QUARANTINE FACILITY** is a facility for the quarantine confinement of imported wild animals.

**SPACE CONDITIONING** is the regulation of ambient temperature.

#### **1237.3 Construction.**

**1237.3.1 General.** Housing facilities used for quarantine shall be constructed in accordance with these provisions and Group B occupancy requirements.

**1237.3.2 Entry.** Quarantine housing facilities shall restrict the entry of other animals and unauthorized persons by locking or bolting devices or other equipment methods.

Rooms containing primary enclosures shall be entered through double doors that maintain a minimum distance of 4 feet (1219 mm) between doors permitting closure of one door before the second is opened.

All animals must be visible through a viewpoint from the entry area.

Windows to the outside shall be escapeproof.

One handwashing sink shall be provided in each room in which animals are quarantined.

**1237.3.3 Special provision.** The interior building surfaces of housing facilities shall be smooth and impervious to moisture.

**1237.4 Light and ventilation.** All portions of the wild animal quarantine facility shall be space conditioned to maintain the health of the wild animals. Ventilation shall be provided in housing facilities so as not to cre-

ate a health hazard by one or more of the following methods.

1. Openable windows
2. Doors
3. Vents
4. Air conditioning
5. Fans

Uniformly distributed illumination of not less than 50 footcandles (538 lux) at least the level of the cage racks shall be provided.

**1237.5 Primary enclosure.** Primary enclosures shall be capable of containing quarantined animals and excluding access by other animals. Enclosures shall provide space to allow each animal to make normal postural adjustments with freedom of movement and maintain social activity. Primates shall be provided with a minimum floor space equal to an area of at least three times the area occupied by such primates when standing on four feet.

### **SECTION 1238 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1239 Reserved**

### **SECTION 1240 [AGR] MEAT AND POULTRY PROCESSING PLANTS**

**1240.1 General construction.** The buildings shall be of sound construction and kept in good repair.

**1240.1.1** The doors, windows, skylights and other outside openings of the plant, shall be protected by fitted screens or other devices, such as air screens, against the entrance of flies and other insects.

**1240.1.2** Outside doors shall be hung so as to be close fitting when closed.

**1240.1.3** Rooms or compartments used for edible products shall be separated and distinct from inedible products departments and from rooms where live poultry are held or slaughtered. Separate rooms shall be provided when required for conducting processing operations in a sanitary manner; and all rooms shall be able to accommodate equipment for processing operations.

**Note:** In the event of specific conflict, in federally inspected plants, between the provisions of Title 24 and federal regulations, the federal regulations shall take precedence.

**1240.1.4** The rooms and compartments in which any product is prepared or handled shall be free from objectionable odors.

**1240.1.5** The outer premises of every official establishment, including docks and areas where cars and vehicles

are loaded, and the driveways, approaches, yards, pens and alleys shall be paved.

**1240.2 Refuse rooms.** A separate refuse room shall be required in official establishments where accumulations of refuse occur. Refuse rooms shall be entirely separate from other rooms in the establishment, and shall provide for the following:

1. Tight fitting doors.
2. Ventilation.
3. Drainage.
4. Cleanup facilities.
5. Floors and walls to a height of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the floor shall be impervious to moisture.
6. Wall above 6 feet (1829 mm), and ceilings shall be moisture resistant.

**1240.3 Rooms for holding carcasses for further inspection.** Room or other acceptable facilities in which carcasses or parts thereof are held for further inspection shall be in such numbers and such locations as needs of the inspection in the establishment may require. These rooms or facilities shall be equipped with hasps for locking.

**1240.4 Coolers and freezers.** Coolers and freezers shall be of adequate size and capacity and have cooling capability to fully enable compliance with the regulations governing the inspection of meat and poultry and meat and poultry products.

**1240.5 Boiler room.** The boiler room shall be a separate room where necessary to prevent dirt and objectionable odors entering from it into any room where dressed poultry or poultry products are prepared, handled or stored.

**1240.6 Inspector's office.** Office space for the use of government personnel shall be provided. The room or space must meet the approval of the inspection service and provide for the following:

1. Light
2. Heat
3. Ventilation
4. Desk space
5. File cabinets

**1240.7 Facilities for program employees.** Establishments shall have facilities for program employees.

**1240.8 Lunch rooms.** Lunch rooms or lunch areas separate from the processing, packing or supply rooms shall be provided in establishments where employees eat their lunches.

**1240.9 Floors.** All floors in rooms where exposed products are prepared or handled shall be constructed of, or finished with, materials impervious to moisture. The floors in killing, ice cooling, ice packing, eviscerating, cooking, boning and cannery rooms shall be graded for complete runoff with no standing water.

**1240.10 Walls, posts, partitions and doors.** All walls, posts, partitions and doors in rooms where exposed products are

prepared or handled shall be smooth and constructed of materials impervious to moisture to a height of at least 8 feet (2438 mm) above the floor. All surfaces above this height must be smooth and finished with moisture-resistant material.

**1240.11 Ceilings.** Ceilings must be moisture resistant in rooms where exposed products are prepared or handled, finished and sealed.

**1240.12 Rails.** Rails should be located and passageway space provided so that exposed product does not come in contact with posts, walls and other fixed parts of the building or with barrels, boxes or other containers trafficked through holding and operation areas.

**1240.13 Lighting.** There shall be either natural or artificial light or both for all rooms and compartments.

**1240.13.1** All rooms in which poultry or livestock are killed, eviscerated or otherwise processed shall have at least 30 foot-candles (323 lux) of light intensity on all working surfaces.

**Exceptions:**

1. At the inspection stations such light intensity shall be at least 50 footcandles (538 lux).
2. In all other rooms in which poultry or livestock are not killed, eviscerated or otherwise processed, there shall be provided at least 5 footcandles (54 lux) of light intensity when measured at a distance of 30 inches (762 mm) from the floor.

**1240.14 Ventilation.** There shall be either natural or artificial ventilation, adequate to control odors, vapors and condensation to the extent necessary to prevent adulteration of product and the creation of insanitary conditions, in all rooms and compartments.

**1240.14.1** Freezing rooms, other than those for plate freezers or liquid freezing, shall have forced-air circulation, and freezers and coolers shall be equipped with floor racks or pallets unless other means are used which will assure that products will be maintained in a wholesome condition.

**1240.14.2** Toilet rooms shall be ventilated to the outside of the building.

**1240.15 Lavatories, toilets and other sanitary facilities.**

**1240.15.1** Lavatory and toilet accommodations, including but not limited to, running hot and cold water, shall be provided as follows in Table 1240.15.1.

**TABLE 1240.15.1**

PERSONS OF SAME SEX	TOILET BOWLS REQUIRED
1 to 15, inclusive	1
1 to 15, inclusive	2
1 to 15, inclusive	3*
1 to 15, inclusive	4*
For each additional 30 persons in excess of 80	1*

\* Urinals may be substituted for toilet bowls, but only to the extent of one-third of the total number of bowls stated.

## INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT

**1240.15.2** Lavatories shall be in or adjacent to toilet and locker rooms and at other places in the plant to provide for the cleanliness of all personnel handling products.

**1240.15.3** Toilet rooms opening directly into rooms where products are exposed shall have self-closing doors.

**1240.15.4** Dressing rooms and toilet rooms shall be provided in each establishment and shall be ample in size and readily accessible. They shall be separated from the rooms and compartments in which products are prepared, stored or handled. Where both sexes are employed, separate facilities shall be provided.

**1240.15.5** Lockers or other facilities shall be provided for employees' wearing apparel and for the storing and changing of clothing. Lockers shall not be located in rooms where processing operations are conducted.

**1240.15.6** Handwashing facilities serving areas where dressed livestock and poultry carcasses and parts and meat and poultry products are prepared shall be operated by other than hand-operated controls, or shall be continuous flow type that provides flow of water for washing hands.

**1240.15.7 Catch basins.** All catch basins on the premises shall accommodate the provisions of Section 1243.5.

## SECTION 1241 [AGR] COLLECTION CENTERS AND FACILITIES

### 1241.1 General construction.

**1241.1.1** Collection centers shall have facilities for the storage of carcasses and parts of dead animals and the cleaning and sanitizing of vehicles.

**1241.1.2** Buildings used for the temporary storage of animal carcasses, packinghouse wastes and other products before transportation to a licensed rendering plant shall be of sound construction and shall be of such construction as to prevent the entrance or harboring of vermin.

**1241.1.3** The floors, walls, ceilings, partitions and doors shall be of such material, construction and finish as to make them readily cleanable.

**1241.1.4** The area for the cleaning and sanitizing of vehicles shall be provided with adequate live steam or hot water, producing a temperature of at least 180°F (82°C), or other method for sanitizing vehicles.

**1241.1.5** Facilities shall be provided for the holding and disposal of solid waste resulting from the cleaning operation. Such facilities shall be accessible and easily cleaned and so constructed as to prevent the entrance or harborage of vermin, flies and other insects.

**1241.1.6** The cleaning and sanitizing of vehicles shall be done on a slab of concrete or other material approved by the Department, which is sloped to drains so as to permit the rapid runoff of water.

**1241.1.7** Carcasses and packinghouse waste. The unloading slab shall be of sufficient size to hold all animal carcasses and packinghouse waste material, be constructed

of concrete or other material approved by the Department and sloped to drains so as to permit the rapid runoff of water.

**1241.2 Floors.** Floors of rooms in which carcasses and packinghouse wastes are received or stored shall be graded to permit runoff of water with no standing water. In new construction and in renovated buildings where floors are to be resurfaced, the pitch shall not be less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch per foot (2 percent) to drains.

**1241.3 Lavatories and toilets.** Modern lavatory accommodations, including running hot and cold water, shall be provided except where the Department determines that they are not necessary.

## SECTION 1242 [AGR] RENDERERS

### 1242.1 General construction.

**1242.1.1 Separation from other businesses.** Every licensed rendering establishment shall be separate and distinct from any establishments in which any meat, meat byproducts, poultry or poultry byproducts are handled and from any other business at the discretion of the Department.

**1242.1.2** The cleaning and sanitizing of vehicles shall be done on a slab of concrete or other material approved by the Department; which is sloped to drains so as to permit the rapid runoff of water.

## SECTION 1243 [AGR] HORSEMEAT AND PET FOOD ESTABLISHMENTS

**1243.1 Scope.** In the event of specific conflict between the provisions of Title 24 and federal regulations, the federal regulations shall take precedence in establishments under federal inspection.

### 1243.2 General.

**1243.2.1 Facilities for program employees.** Office space, including light and heat shall be provided by official establishments for the inspector and other program employees. The office space shall be conveniently located and adequately ventilated, heated, cooled and provided with adequate desk and file space.

### 1243.2.2 Final inspection places.

**1243.2.2.1** Final inspection places shall, by size, rail arrangement and other equipment, prevent contamination of edible carcasses or parts by inedible carcasses or parts.

**1243.2.2.2 Floors.** The floors shall be of such construction as to facilitate the maintenance of sanitary conditions and shall have drainage connections. When the final inspection place is part of a larger floor, it shall be separated from the rest of the floor by a curb, railing or otherwise.

**1243.2.3 Docks and receiving rooms.** Docks and receiving rooms shall be provided.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1243.2.4** The floors, walls, ceilings, partitions, posts, doors and other parts of all structures shall be of such material, construction and finish as will make them readily and thoroughly cleanable. The floors shall be kept watertight.

**1243.2.5 Rails.** Rails shall be located and passageway space provided, so that exposed product does not come in contact with post, walls and other fixed parts of the building or with barrels, boxes and other containers trafficked through holding and operation areas.

**1243.2.6** The rooms and compartments used for edible products shall be separated and distinct from those used for inedible products.

**1243.2.7** The rooms and compartments in which any product is prepared or handled shall be free from objectionable odor.

**1243.2.8** Precaution shall be taken to exclude flies, rats, mice and other vermin from official establishments.

**1243.2.9** The outer premises of horsemeat and pet food establishments shall meet the requirements of Section 1240.1.5.

**1243.3 Lighting.** There shall be light and ventilation for all rooms and compartments.

**1243.4 Sanitary facilities and accommodations.** Sanitary facilities and accommodations shall be furnished by every official establishment.

**1243.4.1** Dressing rooms and toilet rooms shall be provided in each establishment and shall be ample in size and readily accessible. They shall be separated from the rooms and compartments in which products are prepared, stored or handled. Where both sexes are employed, separate facilities shall be provided.

**1243.4.2** Lavatories, including running hot and cold water, shall be placed in or adjacent to toilet and urinal rooms and at other places in the establishment to assure cleanliness of all persons handling any product.

**1243.4.3** Facilities shall be provided for cleansing and disinfecting utensils.

**1243.5 Catch basins.** All catch basins on the premises shall be of such construction and location to ensure they are kept clean and odorless. Catch basins shall not be located in department where any product is prepared, handled or stored.

**1243.6 Final inspection space.** Such spaces shall be equipped with hot water and a lavatory.

#### **SECTION 1244** Reserved

#### **SECTION 1245** Reserved

#### **SECTION 1246** Reserved

#### **SECTION 1247** Reserved

#### **SECTION 1248** Reserved

#### **SECTION 1249** Reserved

#### **SECTION 1250 [CA]** **PHARMACIES**

**1250.1 Application.** This section applies to pharmacies listed in Section 1.4.1 regulated by the Department of Consumer Affairs.

**1250.2 Restrooms.** A pharmacy shall maintain a readily accessible restroom. The restroom shall contain a toilet and washbasin supplied with running water.

**1250.3 Sink.** All pharmacies shall be equipped with a sink within the pharmacy for pharmaceutical purposes. The sink shall be supplied with hot and cold running water.

**1250.4 Compounding area for parenteral solutions.** The pharmacy shall have a designated area for the preparation of sterile products for dispensing which shall:

1. In accordance with Federal Standard 209 (b), Clean Room and Work Station Requirements, Controlled Environment as approved by the Commission, Federal Supply Service, General Service Administration meet standards for Class 100 HEPA (high efficiency particulate air) filtered air such as laminar airflow hood or clean room.
2. Have nonporous and cleanable surfaces, ceilings and ceiling tiles, walls, floors and floor coverings.
3. The pharmacy shall be arranged in such a manner that the laminar-flow hood is located in an area which is exposed to minimal traffic flow, and is separate from any area used for bulk storage of items not related to the compounding of parenteral solutions.

There shall be sufficient space, well separated from the laminar-flow hood area for the storage of bulk materials, equipment and waste materials.

4. A sink with hot and cold running water must be within the parenteral solution compounding area or adjacent to it.
5. Any pharmacy that compounds sterile injectable products from one or more nonsterile ingredients must compound the medication in one of the following environments:
  - 5.1. An ISO class 5 laminar airflow hood within an ISO class 7 cleanroom. The cleanroom must have a positive air pressure differential relative adjacent areas.
  - 5.2. An ISO class 5 cleanroom.
  - 5.3. A barrier isolator that provides an ISO class 5 environment for compounding.

**Note:** For additional pharmacy mechanical standard requirements, see Chapter 5, California Mechanical Code.

## **SECTION 1251 [CA] VETERINARY FACILITIES**

**1251.1** All premises where veterinary medicine, veterinary dentistry or veterinary surgery is being practiced, and all instruments, apparatus and apparel used in connection with those practices, shall be kept clean and sanitary at all times and shall conform to the standards of this section.

**1251.2** Indoor lighting for halls, wards, reception areas and examining and surgical rooms shall be adequate for their intended purpose. All surgical rooms shall be provided with emergency lighting.

**1251.3** A veterinary facility where animals are housed shall contain the following:

1. A reception room and office, or a combination of the two.
2. An examination room separate from other areas of the facility and of sufficient size to accommodate the doctor, assistant, patient and client.
3. A surgery room separate and distinct from all other rooms.
4. Housing. In those veterinary hospitals where animals are retained for treatment or hospitalization, the following shall be provided:
  - 4.1. Separate compartments, one for each animal, maintained in a sanitary manner so as to assure comfort.
  - 4.2. Facilities allowing for the effective separation of contagious and noncontagious cases.
  - 4.3. Exercise runs which provide and allow effective separation of animals and their waste products.

**Note:** Where animals are kept in clinics for 24 hours or more, walking the animal meets this requirement.

### **1251.4 Practice management.**

**1251.4.1** Veterinary facilities shall maintain a sanitary environment to avoid sources and transmission of infection. This is to include the proper routine of disposal of waste materials and proper sterilization or sanitation of all equipment used in diagnosis or treatment.

**1251.4.2** Fire precautions shall meet the requirements of local and state fire prevention codes.

**1251.4.3** The temperature and ventilation of the facility shall be maintained so as to assure the comfort of all patients.

**1251.4.4** The veterinary facility must have the capacity to render adequate diagnostic radiological services, either in the hospital or through other commercial facilities. Radiological procedures shall be in accordance with state public health standards.

**1251.4.5** Sanitary methods for the disposal of deceased animals shall be provided and maintained. Where the owner of a deceased animal has not given the veterinarian authorization to dispose of the animal, the veterinarian shall be required to retain the carcass in a freezer for at least 14 days.

## **SECTION 1252 [CA] BARBER COLLEGES AND SHOPS**

**1252.1 Barber college floors.** Floors of barber colleges shall be covered with hardwood, linoleum, asphalt tile or some other washable and nonporous material other than paint.

**1252.2 Barber shop floors.** Floors of barber shops shall be covered with hardwood, linoleum, asphalt tile, carpeting or some other washable material other than paint.

**1252.3 Barber shop washbasin(s) and lavatory(ies).** A barber shop owner shall provide washbasin(s) or lavatory(ies) within the working area of the barber shop.

**1252.4 Minimum barber shop size.** A barber shop shall be a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) wide, 8 feet (2438 mm) long, with an 8-foot (2438 mm) ceiling.

**1252.5 Barber college premises.** In a college of barbing, the room for practical work and demonstrations shall be at least 14 feet (4267 mm) wide for one row of barber chairs and shall be at least 20 feet (6096 mm) wide for two rows of chairs.

## **SECTION 1253 [CA] SCHOOLS OF COSMETOLOGY, COSMETOLOGICAL ESTABLISHMENTS AND SATELLITE CLASSROOMS**

### **1253.1 Floor space.**

**1253.1.1 Schools of cosmetology.** The minimum floor space in any school of cosmetology premises shall be 3,000 square feet ( $279\text{ m}^2$ ), not less than 2,000 square feet ( $185.8\text{ m}^2$ ) of which shall be provided for the working, practice and classroom areas.

**Exception:** When the average daily attendance for either day or night school in a school of cosmetology exceeds 50 students for a period of three months, an additional 30 square feet ( $2.8\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space shall be required for each additional student after the first 50, which shall be provided for the working, practice and classroom areas.

**1253.1.2 Schools of electrology.** The minimum floor space in any school of electrology premises shall be 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ), not less than 600 square feet ( $55.7\text{ m}^2$ ) of which shall be provided for the working, practice and classroom areas.

**Exception:** When the average daily attendance for either day or night school of electrology exceeds 15 students, an additional 30 square feet ( $2.8\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space shall be required for each additional student after the first 15, which shall be provided for working, practice and classroom areas.

**1253.1.3 Satellite classrooms.** The minimum floor space in any satellite classroom of a school of cosmetology or electrology shall be 1,000 square feet ( $93\text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** For each additional student after the first 50, an additional 20 square feet ( $1.9\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor space shall be required.

**1253.2 Floor finish.** The floors in the toilet area of each school and establishment shall be of nonabsorbent material.

**1253.3 Ceiling height.** The minimum ceiling height of the practice and classroom areas of school premises shall be at least 9 feet (2743 mm) in height.

#### **SECTION 1254 [CA] ACUPUNCTURE OFFICES**

**1254.1 Acupuncture offices.** Every acupuncture office shall have a readily accessible bathroom facility which shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition at all times. In addition, there shall be a sink with hot and cold running water in or near each treatment room.



# CHAPTER 13

# ENERGY EFFICIENCY

*Refer to California Energy Code, Title 24, Part 6.*



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 14 – EXTERIOR WALLS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X														X							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below		X	X																			
Chapter / Section																						
1401					X																	
1402					X																	
1402.2.1				X																		
1403				X																		
1404				X																		
1404.1.1								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							
1404.3.1						X	X															
1404.3.2						X	X															
Table 1404.3.3						†	†															
1405				X																		
1406				X																		
1407				X																		
1408				X																		
1410								X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



# CHAPTER 14

## EXTERIOR WALLS

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 14 addresses requirements for exterior walls of buildings. Minimum standards for wall covering materials, such as material performance and fire resistance, installation of wall coverings and the ability of the wall to provide weather protection are provided. This chapter also contains limitations on the areas and heights of combustible wall coverings based on fire separation distances, radiant heat exposure and surface burning characteristics.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BS] will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 1401 GENERAL

**1401.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall establish the minimum requirements for exterior walls; exterior wall coverings; exterior wall openings; exterior windows and doors; and architectural trim.

### SECTION 1402 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

**1402.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall apply to exterior walls, wall coverings and components thereof.

**1402.2 Weather protection.** Exterior walls shall provide the building with a weather-resistant exterior wall envelope. The exterior wall envelope shall include flashing, as described in Section 1404.4. The exterior wall envelope shall be designed and constructed in such a manner as to prevent the accumulation of water within the wall assembly by providing a water-resistive barrier behind the exterior veneer, as described in Section 1403.2, and a means for draining water that enters the assembly to the exterior. Protection against condensation in the exterior wall assembly shall be provided in accordance with Section 1404.3.

**Exceptions:**

1. A weather-resistant exterior wall envelope shall not be required over concrete or masonry walls designed in accordance with Chapters 19 and 21, respectively.
2. Compliance with the requirements for a means of drainage, and the requirements of Sections 1403.2 and 1404.4, shall not be required for an exterior wall envelope that has been demonstrated through testing to resist wind-driven rain, including joints, penetrations and intersections with dissimilar materials, in accordance with ASTM E331 under the following conditions:

The exterior wall envelope design shall be considered to resist wind-driven rain where the results of testing indicate that water did not penetrate control joints in the exterior wall

envelope, joints at the perimeter of openings or intersections of terminations with dissimilar materials.

- 2.1. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall include not fewer than one opening, one control joint, one wall/eave interface and one wall sill. Tested openings and penetrations shall be representative of the intended end-use configuration.
- 2.2. Exterior wall envelope test assemblies shall be not less than 4 feet by 8 feet (1219 mm by 2438 mm) in size.
- 2.3. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be tested at a minimum differential pressure of 6.24 pounds per square foot ( $0.297 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ).
- 2.4. Exterior wall envelope assemblies shall be subjected to a minimum test exposure duration of 2 hours.
3. Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) complying with Section 1407.4.1.

**1402.2.1 [BSC-CG]** See California Green Building Standards Code, Chapter 5, Division 5.4 for additional weather protection requirements.

**[BS] 1402.3 Structural.** Exterior walls, and the associated openings, shall be designed and constructed to resist safely the superimposed loads required by Chapter 16.

**1402.4 Fire resistance.** Exterior walls shall be fire-resistance rated as required by other sections of this code with opening protection as required by Chapter 7.

**1402.5 Water-resistive barriers.** Exterior walls on buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction that are greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane and contain a combustible water-resistive barrier shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. Combustibility shall be determined in accordance with Section 703.3. For the purposes of this section, fenestration products, flashing of fenestration products and water-resistive-barrier flashing and accessories at other locations,

## EXTERIOR WALLS

including through wall flashings, shall not be considered part of the water-resistive barrier.

### Exceptions:

1. Walls in which the water-resistive barrier is the only combustible component and the exterior wall has a wall covering of brick, concrete, stone, terra cotta, stucco or steel with minimum thicknesses in accordance with Table 1404.2.
2. Walls in which the water-resistive barrier is the only combustible component and the water-resistive barrier complies with the following:
  - 2.1. A peak heat release rate of less than 150 kW/m<sup>2</sup>, a total heat release of less than 20 MJ/m<sup>2</sup> and an effective heat of combustion of less than 18 MJ/kg when tested on specimens at the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM E1354, in the horizontal orientation and at an incident radiant heat flux of 50 kW/m<sup>2</sup>.
  - 2.2. A flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, with test specimen preparation and mounting in accordance with ASTM E2404.

**[BS] 1402.6 Flood resistance.** For buildings in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, exterior walls extending below the elevation required by Section 1612 shall be constructed with flood-damage-resistant materials.

**[BS] 1402.7 Flood resistance for coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.** For buildings in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones as established in Section 1612.3, electrical, mechanical and plumbing system components shall not be mounted on or penetrate through exterior walls that are designed to break away under flood loads.

## SECTION 1403 MATERIALS

**1403.1 General.** Materials used for the construction of *exterior walls* shall comply with the provisions of this section. Materials not prescribed herein shall be permitted, provided that any such alternative has been approved.

**1403.2 Water-resistive barrier.** Not fewer than one layer of water-resistive barrier material shall be attached to the studs or sheathing, with flashing as described in Section 1404.4, in such a manner as to provide a continuous water-resistive barrier behind the exterior wall veneer.

Water-resistive barriers shall comply with one of the following:

1. No. 15 felt complying with ASTM D226, Type 1.
2. ASTM E2556, Type I or II.
3. ASTM E331 in accordance with Section 1402.2.
4. Other approved materials installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**[BS] 1403.3 Wood.** Exterior walls of wood construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 23.

**[BS] 1403.3.1 Basic hardboard.** Basic hardboard shall conform to the requirements of ANSI A135.4.

**[BS] 1403.3.2 Hardboard siding.** Hardboard siding shall conform to the requirements of ANSI A135.6 and, where used structurally, shall be so identified by the label of an approved agency.

**[BS] 1403.4 Masonry.** Exterior walls of masonry construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with this section and Chapter 21. Masonry units, mortar and metal accessories used in anchored and adhered veneer shall meet the physical requirements of Chapter 21. The backing of anchored and adhered veneer shall be of concrete, masonry, steel framing or wood framing. Continuous insulation meeting the applicable requirements of this code shall be permitted between the backing and the masonry veneer.

**[BS] 1403.5 Metal.** Exterior walls constructed of cold-formed or structural steel shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 22. Exterior walls constructed of aluminum shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 20.

**[BS] 1403.5.1 Aluminum siding.** Aluminum siding shall conform to the requirements of AAMA 1402.

**[BS] 1403.5.2 Cold-rolled copper.** Copper shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B370.

**[BS] 1403.5.3 Lead-coated copper.** Lead-coated copper shall conform to the requirements of ASTM B101.

**[BS] 1403.6 Concrete.** Exterior walls of concrete construction shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 19.

**[BS] 1403.7 Glass-unit masonry** Exterior walls of glass-unit masonry shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 21.

**1403.8 Plastics.** Plastic panel, apron or spandrel walls as defined in this code shall not be limited in thickness, provided that such plastics and their assemblies conform to the requirements of Chapter 26 and are constructed of approved weather-resistant materials of adequate strength to resist the wind loads for cladding specified in Chapter 16.

**1403.9 Vinyl siding.** Vinyl siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D3679 by an approved quality control agency.

**1403.10 Fiber-cement siding.** Fiber-cement siding shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A (or ISO 8336, Category A), and shall be so identified on labeling listing an approved quality control agency.

**1403.11 Exterior insulation and finish systems.** Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) and exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) with drainage shall comply with Section 1407.

**1403.12 Polypropylene siding.** Polypropylene siding shall be certified and labeled as conforming to the requirements of ASTM D7254 and those of Section 1403.12.1 or 1403.12.2 by an approved quality control agency. Polypropylene siding shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of

## EXTERIOR WALLS

Section 1404.18 and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Polypropylene siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

**1403.12.1 Flame spread index.** The certification of the flame spread index shall be accompanied by a test report stating that all portions of the test specimen ahead of the flame front remained in position during the test in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**1403.12.2 Fire separation distance.** The fire separation distance between a building with polypropylene siding and the adjacent building shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

**1403.13 Foam plastic insulation.** Foam plastic insulation used in exterior wall covering assemblies shall comply with Chapter 26.

**1403.14 Attachments through insulation.** Exterior wall coverings attached to the building structure through foam plastic insulating sheathing shall comply with the attachment requirements of Section 2603.11, 2603.12, or 2603.13.

## SECTION 1404 INSTALLATION OF WALL COVERINGS

**1404.1 General.** *Exterior wall coverings* shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section.

**1404.1.1 Additional requirements.** *[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] In addition to the requirements of Sections 1404.6, 1404.7, 1404.8, 1404.9 and 1404.10, the installation of anchored or adhered veneer shall comply with applicable provisions of Section 1410.*

**1404.2 Weather protection.** Exterior walls shall provide weather protection for the building. The materials of the minimum nominal thickness specified in Table 1404.2 shall be acceptable as approved weather coverings.

**1404.3 Vapor retarders.** Vapor retarder materials shall be classified in accordance with Table 1404.3(1). A vapor retarder shall be provided on the interior side of frame walls in accordance with Tables 1404.3(2) and 1404.3(3), or an approved design using accepted engineering practice for hygrothermal analysis. The appropriate climate zone shall be selected in accordance with Chapter 3 of the *California Energy Code*. Where a Class II vapor retarder is used in combination with foam plastic insulating sheathing installed as continuous insulation on the exterior side of frame walls, the continuous insulation shall comply with Table 1404.3(4) and the Class II vapor retarder shall have a vapor permeance greater than 1 perm when measured by ASTM E96 water method (Procedure B). Use of a Class I interior vapor retarder in frame walls with a Class I vapor retarder on the exterior side shall require an approved design.

**[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** *Class I or II vapor retarders shall be provided on the interior side of frame walls of low-rise residential buildings in California Climate*

**TABLE 1404.2  
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF WEATHER COVERINGS**

COVERING TYPE	MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
Adhered masonry veneer	0.25
Aluminum siding	0.019
Anchored masonry veneer	
Stone (natural)	2.0
Architectural cast stone	2.5
Other	2.0
Asbestos-cement boards	0.125
Asbestos shingles	0.156
Cold-rolled copper <sup>d</sup>	0.0216 nominal
Copper shingles <sup>d</sup>	0.0162 nominal
Exterior plywood (with sheathing)	0.313
Exterior plywood (without sheathing)	See Section 2304.6
Fiber cement lap siding	0.25 <sup>c</sup>
Fiber cement panel siding	0.25 <sup>c</sup>
Fiberboard siding	0.5
Glass-fiber reinforced concrete panels	0.375
Hardboard siding <sup>c</sup>	0.25
High-yield copper <sup>d</sup>	0.0162 nominal
Lead-coated copper <sup>d</sup>	0.0216 nominal
Lead-coated high-yield copper	0.0162 nominal
Marble slabs	1
Particleboard (with sheathing)	See Section 2304.6
Particleboard (without sheathing)	See Section 2304.6
Porcelain tile	0.125 nominal
Steel (approved corrosion resistant)	0.0149
Structural glass	0.344
Stucco or exterior cement plaster	
Three-coat work over:	
Metal plaster base	0.875 <sup>b</sup>
Unit masonry	0.625 <sup>b</sup>
Cast-in-place or precast concrete	0.625 <sup>b</sup>
Two-coat work over:	
Unit masonry	0.5 <sup>b</sup>
Cast-in-place or precast concrete	0.375 <sup>b</sup>
Terra cotta (anchored)	1
Terra cotta (adhered)	0.25
Vinyl siding	0.035
Wood shingles	0.375
Wood siding (without sheathing) <sup>a</sup>	0.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 square foot = 0.093 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Wood siding of thicknesses less than 0.5 inch shall be placed over sheathing that conforms to Section 2304.6.

b. Exclusive of texture.

c. As measured at the bottom of decorative grooves.

d. 16 ounces per square foot for cold-rolled copper and lead-coated copper, 12 ounces per square foot for copper shingles, high-yield copper and lead-coated high-yield copper.

## EXTERIOR WALLS

*Zones 14 and 16, as required in the California Energy Code (see definition of "Low-rise residential building").*

### Exceptions:

1. Basement walls.
2. Below-grade portion of any wall.
3. Construction where accumulation, condensation or freezing of moisture will not damage the materials.
4. Class I and II vapor retarders with vapor permeance greater than 1 perm when measured by ASTM E96 water method (Procedure B) shall be allowed on the interior side of any frame wall in all climate zones.

**1404.3.2 Class III vapor retarders.** Only Class III vapor retarders shall be used on the interior side of frame walls where foam plastic insulating sheathing with a perm rating of less than 1 is applied in accordance with Table 1404.3(3) on the exterior side of the frame wall.

**[HCD 1 & HCD 2]** *Class III vapor retarders shall be permitted where any one of the conditions in Items 1, 2 or 3 below are met. This section shall apply to "Low-rise residential buildings" as defined in the California Energy Code.*

1. Vented cladding over fiberboard
2. Vented cladding over gypsum
3. Insulated sheathing with  $R\text{-value} \geq R4$

*Spray foam with a minimum density of 2 lbs/ft<sup>3</sup> applied to the interior cavity side of OSB, plywood, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to meet the insulating sheathing requirement where the spray foam  $R\text{-value}$  meets or exceeds the specified insulating sheathing  $R\text{-value}$ .*

**TABLE 1404.3(1)**  
VAPOR RETARDER MATERIALS AND CLASSES

VAPOR RETARDER CLASS	ACCEPTABLE MATERIALS
I	Sheet polyethylene, nonperforated aluminum foil, or other approved materials with a perm rating of less than or equal to 0.1
II	Kraft-faced fiberglass batts or vapor retarder paint or other approved materials, applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for a perm rating greater than 0.1 and less than or equal to 1.0
III	Latex paint, enamel paint, or other approved materials, applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for a perm rating of greater than 1.0 and less than or equal to 10

**TABLE 1404.3(2)**  
VAPOR RETARDER OPTIONS

CLIMATE ZONE	VAPOR RETARDER CLASS		
	I	II	III <sup>a</sup>
1, 2	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	Permitted
3	Not Permitted	Permitted	Permitted
4 (except Marine 4)	Not Permitted	Permitted	See Table 1404.3(3)
Marine 4, 5, 6, 7, 8	Permitted	Permitted	See Table 1404.3(3)

a. See also Sections 1404.3.1 and 1404.3.2.

**TABLE 1404.3(3)**  
CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS

ZONE	CLASS III VAPOR RETARDERS PERMITTED FOR <sup>a, b</sup>
4	Vented cladding over wood structural panels
	Vented cladding over fiberboard
	Vented cladding over gypsum
	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-2.5$ over $2 \times 4$ wall
	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-3.75$ over $2 \times 6$ wall
5	Vented cladding over wood structural panels
	Vented cladding over fiberboard
	Vented cladding over gypsum
	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-5$ over $2 \times 4$ wall
	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-7.5$ over $2 \times 6$ wall
6	Vented cladding over fiberboard
	Vented cladding over gypsum
	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-7.5$ over $2 \times 4$ wall
	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-11.25$ over $2 \times 6$ wall
7	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-10$ over $2 \times 4$ wall
7	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-15$ over $2 \times 6$ wall
8	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-12.5$ over $2 \times 4$ wall
8	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-20$ over $2 \times 6$ wall

a. Vented cladding shall include vinyl lap siding, polypropylene, or horizontal aluminum siding, brick veneer with airspace as specified in this code, and other approved vented claddings.

b. The requirements in this table apply only to insulation used to control moisture in order to permit the use of Class III vapor retarders. The insulation materials used to satisfy this option also contribute to but do not supersede the thermal envelope requirements of the *California Energy Code*.

**TABLE 1404.3(4)**  
CONTINUOUS INSULATION WITH CLASS II VAPOR RETARDER

CLIMATE ZONE	PERMITTED CONDITIONS <sup>a</sup>
3	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-2$
4, 5, 6	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-3$ over $2 \times 4$ wall Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-5$ over $2 \times 6$ wall
7	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-5$ over $2 \times 4$ wall Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-7.5$ over $2 \times 6$ wall
8	Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-7.5$ over $2 \times 4$ wall Continuous insulation with $R\text{-value} \geq R-10$ over $2 \times 6$ wall

a. In addition to the vapor retarder, spray foam with a maximum permeance of 1.5 perms at the installed thickness, applied to the interior cavity side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum is deemed to comply with the continuous insulation requirement only for the moisture control purposes of this table where the spray foam  $R\text{-value}$  plus any continuous insulation  $R\text{-value}$  provided equals or exceeds the specified continuous insulation  $R\text{-value}$ .

## EXTERIOR WALLS

**1404.3.2.1 Spray foam plastic insulation for moisture control with Class III vapor retarders.** For purposes of compliance with Table 1404.3(3), spray foam with a maximum permeance of 1.5 perms at the installed thickness applied to the interior cavity side of wood structural panels, fiberboard, insulating sheathing or gypsum shall be deemed to meet the continuous insulation moisture control requirement where the spray foam *R*-value meets or exceeds the specified continuous insulation *R*-value.

**1404.3.2.1.1 Hybrid insulation for moisture control with Class III vapor retarders.** For the purposes of compliance with Table 1404.3(3), the combined *R*-values of spray foam plastic insulation and continuous insulation shall be permitted to be counted toward the continuous *R*-value requirement.

**1404.3.3 California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones.** The IECC climate zones used by this section differ from those used by the California Energy Code to determine applicability of energy efficiency measures. Comparison of IECC and California Energy Code climate zones is shown in Chapter 12, Table 1202.3.1.

**1404.4 Flashing.** Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent moisture from entering the wall or to redirect that moisture to the surface of the exterior wall finish or to a water-resistive barrier complying with Section 1403.2 and that is part of a means of drainage complying with Section 1402.2. Flashing shall be installed at the perimeters of exterior door and window assemblies, penetrations and terminations of exterior wall assemblies, exterior wall intersections with roofs, chimneys, porches, decks, balconies and similar projections and at built-in gutters and similar locations where moisture could enter the wall. Flashing with projecting flanges shall be installed on both sides and the ends of copings, under sills and continuously above projecting trim. Where self-adhered membranes are used as flashings of fenestration in wall assemblies, those self-adhered flashings shall comply with AAMA 711. Where fluid applied membranes are used as flashing for exterior wall openings, those fluid applied membrane flashings shall comply with AAMA 714.

**1404.4.1 Exterior wall pockets.** In exterior walls of buildings or structures, wall pockets or crevices in which moisture can accumulate shall be avoided or protected with caps or drips, or other approved means shall be provided to prevent water damage.

**1404.4.2 Masonry.** Flashing and weep holes in anchored veneer designed in accordance with Section 1404.6 shall be located not more than 10 inches (245 mm) above finished ground level above the foundation wall or slab. At other points of support including structural floors, shelf angles and lintels, flashing and weep holes shall be located in the first course of masonry above the support.

**1404.5 Wood veneers.** Wood veneers on exterior walls of buildings of Types I, II, III and IV construction shall be not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, 0.438-inch (11.1 mm) exterior hardboard siding or 0.375-inch (9.5 mm) exte-

rior-type wood structural panels or particleboard and shall conform to the following:

1. The veneer shall not exceed 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade. Where fire-retardant-treated wood is used, the height shall not exceed 60 feet (18 290 mm) in height above grade.
2. The veneer is attached to or furred from a noncombustible backing that is fire-resistance rated as required by other provisions of this code.
3. Where open or spaced wood veneers (without concealed spaces) are used, they shall not project more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the building wall.

**[BS] 1404.6 Anchored masonry veneer.** Anchored masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1404.6 through 1404.9 and Sections 12.1 and 12.2 of TMS 402.

**[BS] 1404.6.1 Tolerances.** Anchored masonry veneers in accordance with Chapter 14 are not required to meet the tolerances in Article 3.3 F1 of TMS 602.

**[BS] 1404.6.2 Seismic requirements.** Anchored masonry veneer located in Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall conform to the requirements of Section 12.2.2.11 of TMS 402.

**[BS] 1404.7 Stone veneer.** Anchored stone veneer units not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or to stud construction by one of the following methods:

1. With concrete or masonry backing, anchor ties shall be not less than 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, formed beyond the base of the backing. The legs of the loops shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length bent at right angles and laid in the mortar joint, and spaced so that the eyes or loops are 12 inches (305 mm) maximum on center in both directions. There shall be provided not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire tie, or approved equal, threaded through the exposed loops for every 2 square feet (0.2 m<sup>2</sup>) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length bent so that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.
2. With wood stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1403.2 shall be applied directly to wood studs spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. On studs, the mesh shall be attached with 2-inch-long (51 mm) corrosion-resistant steel wire furring nails at 4 inches (102 mm) on center providing a minimum 1.125-inch (29 mm) penetration into each stud and with 8d annular threaded nails at 8 inches (203 mm) on center, into top and bottom plates or with equivalent wire ties. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic

## EXTERIOR WALLS

coated wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than an 8d (0.120 in. diameter) annular threaded nail for every 2 square feet ( $0.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. One-inch (25 mm) minimum thickness of cement grout shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer.

3. With cold-formed steel stud backing, a 2-inch by 2-inch (51 by 51 mm) 0.0625-inch (1.59 mm) zinc-coated or nonmetallic coated wire mesh with two layers of water-resistive barrier in accordance with Section 1403.2 shall be applied directly to steel studs spaced a not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center. The mesh shall be attached with corrosion-resistant #8 self-drilling, tapping screws at 4 inches (102 mm) on center, and at 8 inches (203 mm) on center into top and bottom tracks or with equivalent wire ties. Screws shall extend through the steel connection not fewer than three exposed threads. There shall be not less than a 0.1055-inch (2.68 mm) corrosion-resistant wire, or approved equal, attached to the stud with not smaller than a #8 self-drilling, tapping screw extending through the steel framing not fewer than three exposed threads for every 2 square feet ( $0.2 \text{ m}^2$ ) of stone veneer. This tie shall be a loop having legs not less than 15 inches (381 mm) in length, so bent that the tie will lie in the stone veneer mortar joint. The last 2 inches (51 mm) of each wire leg shall have a right-angle bend. Cement grout not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in thickness shall be placed between the backing and the stone veneer. The cold-formed steel framing members shall have a minimum bare steel thickness of 0.0428 inches (1.087 mm).

**[BS] 1404.8 Slab-type veneer.** Anchored slab-type veneer units not exceeding 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or light-frame construction. For veneer units of marble, travertine, granite or other stone units of slab form, ties of corrosion-resistant dowels in drilled holes shall be located in the middle third of the edge of the units, spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) apart around the periphery of each unit with not less than four ties per veneer unit. Units shall not exceed 20 square feet ( $1.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area. If the dowels are not tight fitting, the holes shall be drilled not more than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) larger in diameter than the dowel, with the hole countersunk to a diameter and depth equal to twice the diameter of the dowel in order to provide a tight-fitting key of cement mortar at the dowel locations where the mortar in the joint has set. Veneer ties shall be corrosion-resistant metal capable of resisting, in tension or compression, a force equal to two times the weight of the attached veneer. If made of sheet metal, veneer ties shall be not smaller in area than 0.0336 by 1 inch (0.853 by 25 mm) or, if made of wire, not smaller in diameter than 0.1483-inch (3.76 mm) wire.

**[BS] 1404.9 Terra cotta.** Anchored terra cotta or ceramic units not less than  $1\frac{5}{8}$  inches (41 mm) thick shall be anchored directly to masonry, concrete or stud construction. Tied terra cotta or ceramic veneer units shall be not less than  $1\frac{5}{8}$  inches (41 mm) thick with projecting dovetail webs on the back surface spaced approximately 8 inches (203 mm) on center. The facing shall be tied to the backing wall with corrosion-resistant metal anchors of not less than No. 8 gage wire installed at the top of each piece in horizontal bed joints not less than 12 inches (305 mm) nor more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center; these anchors shall be secured to  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) corrosion-resistant pencil rods that pass through the vertical aligned loop anchors in the backing wall. The veneer ties shall have sufficient strength to support the full weight of the veneer in tension. The facing shall be set with not less than a 2-inch (51 mm) space from the backing wall and the space shall be filled solidly with Portland cement grout and pea gravel. Immediately prior to setting, the backing wall and the facing shall be drenched with clean water and shall be distinctly damp when the grout is poured.

**[BS] 1404.10 Adhered masonry veneer.** Adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the applicable requirements in this section and Sections 12.1 and 12.3 of TMS 402.

**[BS] 1404.10.1 Exterior adhered masonry veneer.** Exterior adhered masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with Section 1404.10 and the manufacturer's instructions.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.1 Water-resistive barriers.** Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 2510.6.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.2 Flashing.** Flashing shall comply with the applicable requirements of Sections 1404.4 and 1404.10.1.2.1.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.2.1 Flashing at foundation.** A corrosion-resistant screed or flashing of a minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) or 26 gage galvanized or plastic with a minimum vertical attachment flange of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) shall be installed to extend not less than 1 inch (25 mm) below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with Section 1404.4. The water-resistive barrier shall lap over the exterior of the attachment flange of the screed or flashing.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.3 Clearances.** On exterior stud walls, adhered masonry veneer shall be installed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth, or not less than 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas, or not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) above exterior walking surfaces that are supported by the same foundation that supports the exterior wall.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.4 Adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar.** Exterior adhered masonry veneer installed with lath and mortar shall comply with the following.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.4.1 Lathing.** Lathing shall comply with the requirements of Section 2510.

## EXTERIOR WALLS

**[BS] 1404.10.1.4.2 Scratch coat.** A nominal  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (12.7 mm) layer of mortar complying with the material requirements of Sections 2103 and 2512.2 shall be applied, encapsulating the lathing. The surface of this mortar shall be scored horizontally, resulting in a scratch coat.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.4.3 Adhering veneer.** The masonry veneer units shall be adhered to the mortar scratch coat with a nominal  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (12.7 mm) setting bed of mortar complying with Sections 2103 and 2512.2 applied to create a full setting bed for the back of the masonry veneer units. The masonry veneer units shall be worked into the setting bed resulting in a nominal  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) setting bed after the masonry veneer units are applied.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.5 Adhered masonry veneer applied directly to masonry and concrete.** Adhered masonry veneer applied directly to masonry or concrete shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 1404.10 and with the requirements of Section 1404.10.1.4 or 2510.7.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.6 Cold weather construction.** Cold weather construction of adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104 and 2512.4.

**[BS] 1404.10.1.7 Hot weather construction.** Hot weather construction of adhered masonry veneer shall comply with the requirements of Section 2104.

**[BS] 1404.10.2 Exterior adhered masonry veneers—porcelain tile.** Adhered units weighing more than 3.5 pounds per square foot ( $0.17 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) shall not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm) in any face dimension nor more than 9 square feet ( $0.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) in total face area and shall not weigh more than 6 pounds per square foot ( $0.29 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ). Adhered units weighing less than or equal to 3.5 pounds per square foot ( $0.17 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) shall not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) in any face dimension nor more than 17.5 square feet ( $1.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) in total face area. Porcelain tile shall be adhered to an approved backing system.

**[BS] 1404.10.3 Interior adhered masonry veneers.** Interior adhered masonry veneers shall have a maximum weight of 20 psf ( $0.958 \text{ kg/m}^2$ ) and shall be installed in accordance with Section 1404.10. Where the interior adhered masonry veneer is supported by wood construction, the supporting members shall be designed to limit deflection to  $\frac{1}{600}$  of the span of the supporting members.

**[BS] 1404.11 Metal veneers.** Veneers of metal shall be fabricated from approved corrosion-resistant materials or shall be protected front and back with porcelain enamel, or otherwise be treated to render the metal resistant to corrosion. Such veneers shall be not less than 0.0149-inch (0.378 mm) nominal thickness sheet steel mounted on wood or metal furring strips or approved sheathing on light-frame construction.

**[BS] 1404.11.1 Attachment.** Exterior metal veneer shall be securely attached to the supporting masonry or framing members with corrosion-resistant fastenings, metal ties or by other approved devices or methods. The spacing of the

fastenings or ties shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) either vertically or horizontally, but where units exceed 4 square feet ( $0.4 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area there shall be not less than four attachments per unit. The metal attachments shall have a cross-sectional area not less than provided by W 1.7 wire. Such attachments and their supports shall be designed and constructed to resist the wind loads as specified in Section 1609 for components and cladding.

**1404.11.2 Weather protection.** Metal supports for exterior metal veneer shall be protected by painting, galvanizing or by other equivalent coating or treatment. Wood studs, furring strips or other wood supports for exterior metal veneer shall be approved pressure-treated wood or protected as required in Section 1402.2. Joints and edges exposed to the weather shall be caulked with approved durable waterproofing material or by other approved means to prevent penetration of moisture.

**1404.11.3 Backup.** Masonry backup shall not be required for metal veneer unless required by the fire-resistance requirements of this code.

**1404.11.4 Grounding.** Grounding of metal veneers on buildings shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 27 of this code.

**[BS] 1404.12 Glass veneer.** The area of a single section of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall not exceed 10 square feet ( $0.93 \text{ m}^2$ ) where that section is not more than 15 feet (4572 mm) above the level of the sidewalk or grade level directly below, and shall not exceed 6 square feet ( $0.56 \text{ m}^2$ ) where it is more than 15 feet (4572 mm) above that level.

**[BS] 1404.12.1 Length and height.** The length or height of any section of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall not exceed 48 inches (1219 mm).

**[BS] 1404.12.2 Thickness.** The thickness of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be not less than 0.344 inch (8.7 mm).

**[BS] 1404.12.3 Application.** Thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be set only after backing is thoroughly dry and after application of an approved bond coat uniformly over the entire surface of the backing so as to effectively seal the surface. Glass shall be set in place with an approved mastic cement in sufficient quantity so that not less than 50 percent of the area of each glass unit is directly bonded to the backing by mastic not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) thick and not more than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) thick. The bond coat and mastic shall be evaluated for compatibility and shall bond firmly together.

**[BS] 1404.12.4 Installation at sidewalk level.** Where glass extends to a sidewalk surface, each section shall rest in an approved metal molding, and be set not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) above the highest point of the sidewalk. The space between the molding and the sidewalk shall be thoroughly caulked and made watertight.

**[BS] 1404.12.4.1 Installation above sidewalk level.** Where thin exterior structural glass veneer is installed above the level of the top of a bulkhead facing, or at a level more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the sidewalk level, the mastic cement binding shall be supplemented

## EXTERIOR WALLS

with approved nonferrous metal shelf angles located in the horizontal joints in every course. Such shelf angles shall be not less than 0.0478-inch (1.2 mm) thick and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) long and shall be spaced at approved intervals, with not less than two angles for each glass unit. Shelf angles shall be secured to the wall or backing with expansion bolts, toggle bolts or by other approved methods.

**[BS] 1404.12.5 Joints.** Unless otherwise specifically approved by the building official, abutting edges of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be ground square. Mitered joints shall not be used except where specifically approved for wide angles. Joints shall be uniformly buttered with an approved jointing compound and horizontal joints shall be held to not less than 0.063 inch (1.6 mm) by an approved nonrigid substance or device. Where thin exterior structural glass veneer abuts nonresilient material at sides or top, expansion joints not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) wide shall be provided.

**[BS] 1404.12.6 Mechanical fastenings.** Thin exterior structural glass veneer installed above the level of the heads of show windows and veneer installed more than 12 feet (3658 mm) above sidewalk level shall, in addition to the mastic cement and shelf angles, be held in place by the use of fastenings at each vertical or horizontal edge, or at the four corners of each glass unit. Fastenings shall be secured to the wall or backing with expansion bolts, toggle bolts or by other methods. Fastenings shall be so designed as to hold the glass veneer in a vertical plane independent of the mastic cement. Shelf angles providing both support and fastenings shall be permitted.

**[BS] 1404.12.7 Flashing.** Exposed edges of thin exterior structural glass veneer shall be flashed with overlapping corrosion-resistant metal flashing and caulked with a waterproof compound in a manner to effectively prevent the entrance of moisture between the glass veneer and the backing.

**1404.13 Exterior windows and doors.** Windows and doors installed in exterior walls shall conform to the testing and performance requirements of Section 1709.5.

**1404.13.1 Installation.** Windows and doors shall be installed in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions. Fastener size and spacing shall be provided in such instructions and shall be calculated based on maximum loads and spacing used in the tests.

**[BS] 1404.14 Vinyl siding.** Vinyl siding conforming to the requirements of this section and complying with ASTM D3679 shall be permitted on exterior walls where the design wind pressure determined in accordance with Section 1609 does not exceed 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kN/m<sup>2</sup>). Where the design wind pressure exceeds 30 pounds per square foot (1.44 kN/m<sup>2</sup>), tests or calculations indicating compliance with Chapter 16 shall be submitted. Vinyl siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

**[BS] 1404.14.1 Application.** The siding shall be applied over sheathing or materials listed in Section 2304.6. Siding shall be applied to conform to the water-resistive

barrier requirements in Section 1402. Siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with the approved manufacturer's instructions.

**1404.14.1.1 Fasteners and fastener penetration for wood construction.** Unless otherwise specified in the approved manufacturer's instructions, nails used to fasten the siding and accessories shall be corrosion resistant and have not less than a 0.313-inch (7.9 mm) head diameter and  $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (3.18 mm) shank diameter. The penetration into nailable substrate shall be not less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm).

**1404.14.1.2 Fasteners and fastener penetration for cold-formed steel light-frame construction.** For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, corrosion-resistant fasteners shall be used. Screw fasteners shall penetrate through the steel with not fewer than three exposed threads. Other fasteners shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents and manufacturer's instructions.

**1404.14.1.3 Fastener spacing.** Unless specified otherwise by the approved manufacturer's instructions, fasteners shall be installed in the middle third of the slots of the nail hem and spacing between fasteners shall be not greater than 16 inches (406 mm) for horizontal siding and 12 inches (305 mm) for vertical siding.

**[BS] 1404.15 Cement plaster.** Cement plaster applied to exterior walls shall conform to the requirements specified in Chapter 25.

**[BS] 1404.16 Fiber-cement siding.** Fiber-cement siding complying with Section 1403.10 shall be permitted on exterior walls of Types I, II, III, IV and V construction for wind pressure resistance or wind speed exposures as indicated by the manufacturer's listing and label and approved installation instructions. Where specified, the siding shall be installed over sheathing or materials listed in Section 2304.6 and shall be installed to conform to the water-resistive barrier requirements in Section 1402. Siding and accessories shall be installed in accordance with approved manufacturer's instructions. Unless otherwise specified in the approved manufacturer's instructions, nails used to fasten the siding to wood studs shall be corrosion-resistant round head smooth shank and shall be long enough to penetrate the studs not less than 1 inch (25 mm). For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, corrosion-resistant fasteners shall be used. Screw fasteners shall penetrate the cold-formed steel framing not fewer than three exposed full threads. Other fasteners shall be installed in accordance with the approved construction documents and manufacturer's instructions.

**[BS] 1404.16.1 Panel siding.** Fiber-cement panels shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II (or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2). Panels shall be installed with the long dimension either parallel or perpendicular to framing. Vertical and horizontal joints shall occur over framing members and shall be protected with caulking, with battens or flashing, or be vertical or horizontal shiplap or otherwise designed to comply with Section 1402.2. Panel siding shall be

**EXTERIOR WALLS**

installed with fasteners in accordance with the approved manufacturer's instructions.

**[BS] 1404.16.2 Lap siding.** Fiber-cement lap siding having a maximum width of 12 inches (305 mm) shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C1186, Type A, minimum Grade II (or ISO 8336, Category A, minimum Class 2). Lap siding shall be lapped not less than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) and lap siding not having tongue-and-groove end joints shall have the ends protected with caulking, covered with an H-section joint cover, located over a strip of flashing or shall be otherwise designed to comply with Section 1402.2. Lap siding courses shall be installed with the fastener heads exposed or concealed in accordance with the approved manufacturer's instructions.

**[BS] 1404.17 Fastening.** Weather boarding and wall coverings shall be securely fastened with aluminum, copper, zinc, zinc-coated or other approved corrosion-resistant fasteners in accordance with the nailing schedule in Table 2304.10.2 or the approved manufacturer's instructions. Shingles and other weather coverings shall be attached with appropriate standard-shingle nails to furring strips securely nailed to studs, or with approved mechanically bonding nails, except where sheathing is of wood not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness or of wood structural panels as specified in Table 2308.6.3(3).

**[BS] 1404.18 Polypropylene siding.** Polypropylene siding conforming to the requirements of this section and complying with Section 1403.12 shall be limited to exterior walls located in areas where the wind speed specified in Chapter 16 does not exceed 100 miles per hour (45 m/s) and the building height is less than or equal to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in Exposure C. Where construction is located in areas where the basic wind speed exceeds 100 miles per hour (45 m/s), or building heights are in excess of 40 feet (12 192 mm), tests or calculations indicating compliance with Chapter 16 shall be submitted. Polypropylene siding shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Polypropylene siding shall be secured to the building so as to provide weather protection for the exterior walls of the building.

## **SECTION 1405 COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS ON THE EXTERIOR SIDE OF EXTERIOR WALLS**

**1405.1 Combustible exterior wall coverings.** Combustible exterior wall coverings shall comply with this section.

**Exception:** Plastics complying with Chapter 26.

**1405.1.1 Types I, II, III and IV construction.** On buildings of Types I, II, III and IV construction, exterior wall coverings shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials, complying with the following limitations:

1. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall not exceed 10 percent of an exterior wall surface area where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less.

2. Combustible exterior wall coverings shall be limited to 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above grade plane.
3. Combustible exterior wall coverings constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation shall not be limited in wall surface area where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less and shall be permitted up to 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above grade plane regardless of the fire separation distance.

4. Wood veneers shall comply with Section 1404.5.

**1405.1.1.1 Ignition resistance.** Where permitted by Section 1405.1.1, combustible exterior wall coverings shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 268.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Wood or wood-based products.
2. Other combustible materials covered with an exterior weather covering, other than vinyl sidings, included in and complying with the thickness requirements of Table 1404.2.
3. Aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.48 mm).

**1405.1.1.1.1 Fire separation 5 feet or less.** Where installed on exterior walls having a fire separation distance of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, combustible exterior wall coverings shall not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.

**1405.1.1.1.2 Fire separation greater than 5 feet.** For fire separation distances greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), any exterior wall covering shall be permitted that has been exposed to a reduced level of incident radiant heat flux in accordance with the NFPA 268 test method without exhibiting sustained flaming. The minimum fire separation distance required for the exterior wall covering shall be determined from Table 1405.1.1.1.2 based on the maximum tolerable level of incident radiant heat flux that does not cause sustained flaming of the exterior wall covering.

**1405.1.2 Location.** Combustible exterior wall coverings located along the top of exterior walls shall be completely backed up by the exterior wall and shall not extend over or above the top of the exterior wall.

**1405.1.3 Fireblocking.** Where the combustible exterior wall covering is furred out from the exterior wall and forms a solid surface, the distance between the back of the exterior wall covering and the exterior wall shall not exceed  $1\frac{1}{8}$  inches (41 mm). The concealed space thereby created shall be fireblocked in accordance with Section 718.

**Exception:** The distance between the back of the exterior wall covering and the exterior wall shall be permitted to exceed  $1\frac{1}{8}$  inches (41 mm) where the concealed space is not required to be fireblocked by Section 718.

## EXTERIOR WALLS

**TABLE 1405.1.1.2  
MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION FOR  
COMBUSTIBLE EXTERIOR WALL COVERINGS**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	TOLERABLE LEVEL INCIDENT RADIANT HEAT ENERGY (kW/m <sup>2</sup> )
5	12.5
6	11.8
7	11.0
8	10.3
9	9.6
10	8.9
11	8.3
12	7.7
13	7.2
14	6.7
15	6.3
16	5.9
17	5.5
18	5.2
19	4.9
20	4.6
21	4.4
22	4.1
23	3.9
24	3.7
25	3.5

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 Btu/H<sup>2</sup> × °F = 0.0057 kW/m<sup>2</sup> × K.

## SECTION 1406 METAL COMPOSITE MATERIALS (MCM)

**1406.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of metal composite materials (MCM) for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 14 and 16.

**1406.2 Exterior wall covering.** MCM used as exterior wall covering or as elements of balconies and similar projections and bay and oriel windows to provide cladding or weather resistance shall comply with Sections 1406.4 through 1406.13.

**1406.3 Architectural trim and embellishments.** MCM used as architectural trim or embellishments shall comply with Sections 1406.7 through 1406.13.

**1406.4 Structural design.** MCM systems shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as required by Chapter 16 for components and cladding.

**1406.5 Approval.** Results of approved tests or an engineering analysis shall be submitted to the building official to verify compliance with the requirements of Chapter 16 for wind loads.

**1406.6 Weather resistance.** MCM systems shall comply with Section 1402 and shall be designed and constructed to

resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1406.7 Durability.** MCM systems shall be constructed of approved materials that maintain the performance characteristics required in Section 1406 for the duration of use.

**1406.8 Fire-resistance rating.** Where MCM systems are used on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating in accordance with Section 705, evidence shall be submitted to the building official that the required fire-resistance rating is maintained.

**Exception:** MCM systems that are part of an exterior wall envelope not containing foam plastic insulation and are installed on the outer surface of a fire-resistance-rated exterior wall in a manner such that the attachments do not penetrate through the entire exterior wall assembly, shall not be required to comply with this section.

**1406.9 Surface-burning characteristics.** Unless otherwise specified, MCM shall have a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**1406.10 Types I, II, III and IV construction.** Where installed on buildings of Types I, II, III and IV construction, metal composite material (MCM) shall comply with Sections 1406.10.1 and 1406.10.2 for installations up to 40 feet (12 192 mm) above grade plane. Where installed on buildings of Types I, II, III and IV construction, MCMs and MCM systems shall comply with Sections 1406.10.1 through 1406.10.3, for installations greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm) above grade plane.

**1406.10.1 Surface-burning characteristics.** MCM shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**1406.10.2 Thermal barriers.** MCM shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier consisting of  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

### Exceptions:

1. The MCM system is specifically approved based on tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 286 and with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1, UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be performed with the MCM in the maximum thickness intended for use. The MCM system shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

2. The MCM is used as elements of balconies and similar projections, architectural trim or embellishments.

**1406.10.3 Full-scale tests.** The MCM system shall be tested in accordance with, and comply with, the accep-

tance criteria of NFPA 285. Such testing shall be performed on the MCM system with the MCM in the maximum thickness intended for use.

**1406.11 Type V construction.** MCM shall be permitted to be installed on buildings of Type V construction.

**1406.12 Foam plastic insulation.** Where MCM systems are included in an exterior wall envelope containing foam plastic insulation, the exterior wall envelope shall also comply with the requirements of Section 2603.

**1406.13 Labeling.** MCM shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1703.5.

## SECTION 1407 EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS)

**1407.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS) for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 7, 14, 16, 17 and 26.

**1407.2 Performance characteristics.** EIFS shall be constructed such that it meets the performance characteristics required in ASTM E2568.

**[BS] 1407.3 Structural design.** The underlying structural framing and substrate shall be designed and constructed to resist loads as required by Chapter 16.

**1407.4 Weather resistance.** EIFS shall comply with Section 1402 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's application instructions.

**1407.4.1 EIFS with drainage.** EIFS with drainage shall have an average minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent when tested in accordance the requirements of ASTM E2273 and is required on framed walls of Type V construction, Group R1, R2, R3 and R4 occupancies.

**1407.4.1.1 Water-resistive barrier.** For EIFS with drainage, the water-resistive barrier shall comply with Section 1403.2 or ASTM E2570.

**1407.5 Installation.** Installation of the EIFS and EIFS with drainage shall be in accordance with the EIFS manufacturer's instructions.

**1407.6 Special inspections.** EIFS installations shall comply with the provisions of Sections 1704.2 and 1705.17.

## SECTION 1408 HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATES (HPL)

**1408.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the materials, construction and quality of High-Pressure Decorative *Exterior-Grade Compact Laminates (HPL)* for use as exterior wall coverings in addition to other applicable requirements of Chapters 14 and 16.

**1408.2 Exterior wall covering.** HPL used as exterior wall covering or as elements of balconies and similar projections and bay and oriel windows to provide cladding or weather resistance shall comply with Sections 1408.4 through 1408.14.

**1408.3 Architectural trim and embellishments.** HPL used as architectural trim or embellishments shall comply with Sections 1408.7 through 1408.14.

**[BS] 1408.4 Structural design.** HPL systems shall be designed and constructed to resist wind loads as required by Chapter 16 for components and cladding.

**1408.5 Approval.** Results of approved tests or an engineering analysis shall be submitted to the building official to verify compliance with the requirements of Chapter 16 for wind loads.

**1408.6 Weather resistance.** HPL systems shall comply with Section 1402 and shall be designed and constructed to resist wind and rain in accordance with this section and the manufacturer's instructions.

**1408.7 Durability.** HPL systems shall be constructed of approved materials that maintain the performance characteristics required in Section 1408 for the duration of use.

**1408.8 Fire-resistance rating.** Where HPL systems are used on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating in accordance with Section 705, evidence shall be submitted to the building official that the required fire-resistance rating is maintained.

**Exception:** HPL systems not containing foam plastic insulation, which are installed on the outer surface of a fire-resistance-rated exterior wall in a manner such that the attachments do not penetrate through the entire exterior wall assembly, shall not be required to comply with this section.

**1408.9 Surface-burning characteristics.** Unless otherwise specified, HPL shall have a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**1408.10 Types I, II, III and IV construction.** Where installed on buildings of Types I, II, III and IV construction, HPL systems shall comply with Sections 1408.10.1 through 1408.10.4, or Section 1408.11.

**1408.10.1 Surface-burning characteristics.** HPL shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**1408.10.2 Thermal barriers.** HPL shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier consisting of  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275.

**1408.10.3 Thermal barrier not required.** The thermal barrier specified for HPL in Section 1408.10.2 is not required where:

## EXTERIOR WALLS

1. The HPL system is specifically approved based on tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 286, and with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1, or with UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be performed with the HPL in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use. The HPL system shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.
2. The HPL is used as elements of balconies and similar projections, architectural trim or embellishments.

**1408.10.4 Full-scale tests.** The HPL system shall be tested in accordance with, and comply with, the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285. Such testing shall be performed on the HPL system with the HPL in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use.

**1408.11 Alternate conditions.** HPL and HPL systems shall not be required to comply with Sections 1408.10.1 through 1408.10.4 provided that such systems comply with Section 1408.11.1.

**1408.11.1 Installations up to 40 feet in height.** HPL shall be permitted to be installed up to 40 feet (12 190 mm) in height above grade plane where installed in accordance with Section 1408.11.1.1 or 1408.11.1.2.

**1408.11.1.1 Fire separation distance of 5 feet or less.** Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of HPL shall not exceed 10 percent of the exterior wall surface.

**1408.11.1.2 Fire separation distance greater than 5 feet.** Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the area of exterior wall surface coverage using HPL shall not be limited.

**1408.12 Type V construction.** HPL shall be permitted to be installed on buildings of Type V construction.

**1408.13 Foam plastic insulation.** HPL systems containing foam plastic insulation shall comply with the requirements of Section 2603.

**1408.14 Labeling.** HPL shall be labeled in accordance with Section 1703.5.

## SECTION 1410

### [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ANCHORED AND ADHERED VENEER

**1410.1 General.** In no case shall veneer be considered as part of the backing in computing strength or deflection nor shall it be considered a part of the required thickness of the backing.

Veneer shall be anchored in a manner which will not allow relative movement between the veneer and the wall.

Anchored or adhered veneer shall not be used on overhead horizontal surfaces.

**1410.2 Adhered veneer.** Units of tile, masonry, stone or terra cotta which exceed  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm) in thickness shall be applied as for anchored veneer where used over exit ways or more than 20 feet (6096 mm) in height above adjacent ground elevation.

**1410.2.1 Bond strength and tests.** Veneer shall develop a bond to the backing in accordance with TMS 402, Section 12.3.2.4.

Not less than two shear tests shall be performed for the adhered veneer between the units and the supporting element. At least one shear test shall be performed at each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area or fraction thereof.

## SECTION 1409 PLASTIC COMPOSITE DECKING

**1409.1 Plastic composite decking.** Exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards constructed of plastic composites, including plastic lumber, shall comply with Section 2612.

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 15 – ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES**

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
 See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter													X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X			X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X													X	X	X			X	
Chapter / Section																						
1501			X																			
1502.1				X	X																	
1502.2				X	X																	
1505			X																			
1506			X																			
1507			X																			
1507.3.10								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
1507.7.8								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
1509			X																			
1511.9	X			X	X			X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
1512			X																			
1513								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



## CHAPTER 15

# ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 15 provides minimum requirements for the design and construction of roof assemblies and rooftop structures. The criteria address the weather-protective barrier at the roof and, in most circumstances, a fire-resistant barrier. The chapter is largely prescriptive in nature and is based on decades of experience with various traditional materials, but it also recognizes newer products. Section 1511 addresses rooftop structures, which include penthouses, tanks, towers and spires. Rooftop penthouses larger than prescribed in this chapter must be treated as a story under Chapter 5.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BF], [BG] or [P] will be considered by one of the code development committees meeting during the 2021 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. All other code change proposals will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 1501 GENERAL

**1501.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the design, materials, construction and quality of roof assemblies, and rooftop structures.

### SECTION 1502 ROOF DRAINAGE

**[P] 1502.1 General.** Design and installation of roof drainage systems shall comply with this section, Section 1611 of this code and Chapter 11 of the *California Plumbing Code*.

**[P] 1502.2 Secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers.** Where roof drains are required, secondary (emergency overflow) roof drains or scuppers shall be provided where the roof perimeter construction extends above the roof in such a manner that water will be entrapped if the primary drains allow buildup for any reason. The installation and sizing of secondary emergency overflow drains, leaders and conductors shall comply with Section 1611 of this code and Chapter 11 of the *California Plumbing Code*.

**1502.3 Scuppers.** Where scuppers are used for secondary (emergency overflow) roof drainage, the quantity, size, location and inlet elevation of the scuppers shall be sized to prevent the depth of ponding water from exceeding that for which the roof was designed as determined by Section 1611.1. Scuppers shall not have an opening dimension of less than 4 inches (102 mm). The flow through the primary system shall not be considered when locating and sizing scuppers.

**1502.4 Gutters.** Gutters and leaders placed on the outside of buildings, other than Group R-3, private garages and buildings of Type V construction, shall be of noncombustible material or not less than Schedule 40 plastic pipe.

### SECTION 1503 WEATHER PROTECTION

**1503.1 General.** Roof decks shall be covered with approved roof coverings secured to the building or structure in accordance with the provisions of this chapter. Roof coverings shall be designed in accordance with this code, and installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's approved instructions.

**1503.2 Flashing.** Flashing shall be installed in such a manner so as to prevent water from entering the wall and roof through joints in copings, through moisture-permeable materials and at intersections with parapet walls and other penetrations through the roof plane.

**1503.2.1 Locations.** Flashing shall be installed at wall and roof intersections, at gutters, wherever there is a change in roof slope or direction and around roof openings. Where flashing is of metal, the metal shall be corrosion resistant with a thickness of not less than 0.019 inch (0.483 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet).

**1503.3 Parapet walls.** Parapet walls shall be coped or covered in accordance with Sections 1503.3.1 and 1503.3.2. The top surface of the parapet wall shall provide positive drainage.

**1503.3.1 Fire-resistance-rated parapet walls.** Parapet walls required by Section 705.11 shall be coped or covered with weatherproof materials of a width not less than the thickness of the parapet wall such that the fire-resistance rating of the wall is not decreased.

**1503.3.2 Other parapet walls.** Parapet walls meeting one of the exceptions in Section 705.11 shall be coped or covered with weatherproof materials of a width not less than the thickness of the parapet wall.

**1503.4 Attic and rafter ventilation.** Intake and exhaust vents shall be provided in accordance with Section 1202.2 and the vent product manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1503.5 Crickets and saddles.** A cricket or saddle shall be installed on the ridge side of any chimney or penetration greater than 30 inches (762 mm) wide as measured perpen-

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

dicular to the slope. Cricket or saddle coverings shall be sheet metal or of the same material as the roof covering.

**Exception:** Unit skylights installed in accordance with Section 2405.5 and flashed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions shall be permitted to be installed without a cricket or saddle.

### SECTION 1504 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

**1504.1 Wind resistance of roofs.** Roof decks and roof coverings shall be designed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and Sections 1504.2, 1504.3, 1504.4 and 1504.5

**1504.2 Wind resistance of asphalt shingles.** Asphalt shingles shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D7158. Asphalt shingles shall meet the classification requirements of Table 1504.2 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D7158 and the required classification in Table 1504.2.

**Exception:** Asphalt shingles not included in the scope of ASTM D7158 shall be tested and labeled in accordance with ASTM D3161. Asphalt shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 1504.2.

**1504.3 Wind resistance of clay and concrete tile.** Wind loads on clay and concrete tile roof coverings shall be in accordance with Section 1609.5.

**1504.3.1 Testing.** Testing of concrete and clay roof tiles shall be in accordance with Sections 1504.3.1.1, 1504.3.1.2 and 1504.3.1.3.

**1504.3.1.1 Overturning resistance.** Concrete and clay roof tiles shall be tested to determine their resistance to overturning due to wind in accordance with Chapter 15 and either SBCCI SSTD 11 or ASTM C1568.

**1504.3.1.2 Wind tunnel testing.** Where concrete and clay roof tiles do not satisfy the limitations in Chapter 16 for rigid tile, a wind tunnel test shall be used to

determine the wind characteristics of the concrete or clay tile roof covering in accordance with Chapter 15 and either SBCCI SSTD 11 or ASTM C1569.

**1504.3.1.3 Air permeability testing.** The lift coefficient for concrete and clay tile shall be 0.2 or shall be determined in accordance with SBCCI SSTD 11 or ASTM C1570.

**1504.4 Wind resistance of nonballasted roofs.** Roof coverings installed on roofs in accordance with Section 1507 that are mechanically attached or adhered to the roof deck shall be designed to resist the design wind load pressures for components and cladding in accordance with Section 1609.5.2. The wind load on the roof covering shall be permitted to be determined using allowable stress design.

**1504.4.1 Other roof systems.** Built-up, modified bitumen, fully adhered or mechanically attached single-ply roof systems, metal panel roof systems applied to a solid or closely fitted deck and other types of membrane roof coverings shall be tested in accordance with FM 4474, UL 580 or UL 1897.

**1504.4.2 Structural metal panel roof systems.** Where the metal roof panel functions as the roof deck and roof covering and it provides both weather protection and support for loads, the structural metal panel roof system shall comply with this section. Structural standing-seam metal panel roof systems shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E1592 or FM 4474. Structural through-fastened metal panel roof systems shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E1592, FM 4474 or UL 580.

#### Exceptions:

1. Metal roofs constructed of cold-formed steel shall be permitted to be designed and tested in accordance with the applicable referenced structural design standard in Section 2210.1.
2. Metal roofs constructed of aluminum shall be permitted to be designed and tested in accordance with the applicable referenced structural design standard in Section 2002.1.

**TABLE 1504.2  
CLASSIFICATION OF STEEP SLOPE ROOF SHINGLES TESTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D3161OR D7158**

MAXIMUM BASIC WIND SPEED, $V$ , FROM FIGURES 1609.3(1)–(8) OR ASCE 7(mph)	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V_{asop}$ FROM Table 1609.3.1 (mph)	ASTM D7158 <sup>a</sup> CLASSIFICATION	ASTM D3161 or UL 7103 CLASSIFICATION
110	85	D, G or H	A, D or F
116	90	D, G or H	A, D or F
129	100	G or H	A, D or F
142	110	G or H	F
155	120	G or H	F
168	130	H	F
181	140	H	F
194	150	H	F

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mph = 0.447 m/s.

a. The standard calculations contained in ASTM D7158 assume Exposure Category B or C and building height of 60 feet or less. Additional calculations are required for conditions outside of these assumptions.

**1504.4.3 Metal roof shingles.** Metal roof shingles applied to a solid or closely fitted deck shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D3161, FM 4474, UL 580 or UL 1897. Metal roof shingles tested in accordance with ASTM D3161 shall meet the classification requirements of Table 1504.2 for the appropriate maximum basic wind speed and the metal shingle packaging shall bear a label to indicate compliance with ASTM D3161 and the required classification in Table 1504.2.

**1504.5 Ballasted low-slope single-ply roof systems.** Ballasted low-slope (roof slope < 2:12) single-ply roof system coverings installed in accordance with Section 1507.12 shall be designed in accordance with ANSI/SPRI RP-4.

**1504.6 Edge systems for low-slope roofs.** Metal edge systems, except gutters and counterflashing, installed on built-up, modified bitumen and single-ply roof systems having a slope less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) shall be designed and installed for wind loads in accordance with Chapter 16 and tested for resistance in accordance with Test Methods RE-1, RE-2 and RE-3 of ANSI/SPRI ES-1, except basic design wind speed, V, shall be determined from Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12) as applicable.

**1504.6.1 Gutter securement for low-slope roofs.** Gutters that are used to secure the perimeter edge of the roof membrane on low-slope (less than 2:12 slope) built-up, modified bitumen, and single-ply roofs, shall be designed, constructed and installed to resist wind loads in accordance with Section 1609 and shall be tested in accordance with Test Methods G-1 and G-2 of SPRI GT-1.

**1504.7 Physical properties.** Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) in accordance with

Section 1507 shall demonstrate physical integrity over the working life of the roof based on 2,000 hours of exposure to accelerated weathering tests conducted in accordance with ASTM G152, ASTM G154 or ASTM G155. Those roof coverings that are subject to cyclical flexural response due to wind loads shall not demonstrate any significant loss of tensile strength for unreinforced membranes or breaking strength for reinforced membranes when tested as herein required.

**1504.8 Impact resistance.** Roof coverings installed on low-slope roofs (roof slope < 2:12) in accordance with Section 1507 shall resist impact damage based on the results of tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272 or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM 4470.

**1504.9 Wind resistance of aggregate-surfaced roofs.** Parapets shall be provided for aggregate surfaced roofs and shall comply with Table 1504.9.

## SECTION 1505 FIRE CLASSIFICATION

**[BF] 1505.1 General.** Roof assemblies shall be divided into the classes defined in this section. Class A, B and C roof assemblies and roof coverings required to be listed by this section shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790. In addition, fire-retardant-treated wood roof coverings shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D2898. The minimum roof coverings installed on buildings shall comply with Table 1505.1 based on the type of construction of the building.

**Exception:** Skylights and sloped glazing that comply with Chapter 24 or Section 2610.

TABLE 1504.9  
MINIMUM REQUIRED PARAPET HEIGHT (INCHES) FOR AGGREGATE SURFACED ROOFS<sup>a, b, c</sup>

AGGREGATE SIZE	MEAN ROOF HEIGHT (ft)	WIND EXPOSURE AND BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED (MPH)																	
		Exposure B									Exposure C <sup>d</sup>								
		≤ 95	100	105	110	115	120	130	140	150	≤ 95	100	105	110	115	120	130	140	150
ASTM D1863 (No. 7 or No. 67)	15	2	2	2	2	12	12	16	20	24	2	13	15	18	20	23	27	32	37
	20	2	2	2	2	12	14	18	22	26	12	15	17	19	22	24	29	34	39
	30	2	2	2	13	15	17	21	25	30	14	17	19	22	24	27	32	37	42
	50	12	12	14	16	18	21	25	30	35	17	19	22	25	28	30	36	41	47
	100	14	16	19	21	24	27	32	37	42	21	24	26	29	32	35	41	47	53
	150	17	19	22	25	27	30	36	41	46	23	26	29	32	35	38	44	50	56
ASTM D1863 (No. 6)	15	2	2	2	2	12	12	12	15	18	2	2	2	13	15	17	22	26	30
	20	2	2	2	2	12	12	13	17	21	2	2	12	15	17	19	23	28	32
	30	2	2	2	2	12	12	16	20	24	2	12	14	17	19	21	26	31	35
	50	12	12	12	12	14	16	20	24	28	12	15	17	19	22	24	29	34	39
	100	12	12	14	16	19	21	26	30	35	16	18	21	24	26	29	34	39	45
	150	12	14	17	19	22	24	29	34	39	18	21	23	26	29	32	37	43	48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. Interpolation shall be permitted for mean roof height and parapet height.

b. Basic design wind speed, V, and wind exposure shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.

c. Where the minimum required parapet height is indicated to be 2 inches (51 mm), a gravel stop shall be permitted and shall extend not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the roof surface and not less than the height of the aggregate.

d. For Exposure D, add 8 inches (203 mm) to the parapet height required for Exposure C and the parapet height shall not be less than 12 inches (305 mm).

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

**TABLE 1505.1  
MINIMUM ROOF COVERING  
CLASSIFICATION FOR TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION<sup>a</sup>**

IA	IB	IIA	IIB	III A	III B	IV	V A	VB
B	B	B	C	B	C	B	B	C

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Unless otherwise required in accordance with *Chapter 7A* or due to the location of the building within a fire district in accordance with Appendix D.

**1505.1.1 Roof coverings within fire hazard severity zones.** The entire roof covering of every existing structure where more than 50 percent of the total roof area is replaced within any one-year period, the entire roof covering of every new structure, and any roof covering applied in the alteration, repair or replacement of the roof of every existing structure, shall be a fire-retardant roof covering that is at least Class A.

**Exception:** The requirements shall not apply in any jurisdiction that adopts the model ordinance approved by the State Fire Marshal pursuant to Section 51189 of the Government Code or an ordinance that substantially conforms to the model ordinance and transmits a copy to the State Fire Marshal.

**1505.1.2 Roof coverings within all other areas.** The entire roof covering of every existing structure where more than 50 percent of the total roof area is replaced within any one-year period, the entire roof covering of every new structure, and any roof covering applied in the alteration, repair or replacement of the roof of every existing structure, shall be a fire-retardant roof covering that is at least Class C.

**1505.1.3 Roofing requirements in a Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Area.** Roofing requirements for structures located in a Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Area shall also comply with Section 705A.

**[BF] 1505.2 Class A roof assemblies.** Class A roof assemblies are those that are effective against severe fire test exposure. Class A roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be listed and identified as Class A by an approved testing agency. Class A roof assemblies shall be permitted for use in buildings or structures of all types of construction.

### Exceptions:

1. Class A roof assemblies include those with coverings of brick, masonry or an exposed concrete roof deck.
2. Class A roof assemblies also include ferrous or copper shingles or sheets, metal sheets and shingles, clay or concrete roof tile or slate installed on non-combustible decks or ferrous, copper or metal sheets installed without a roof deck on noncombustible framing.
3. Class A roof assemblies include minimum 16 ounce per square foot (0.0416 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) copper sheets installed over combustible decks.
4. Class A roof assemblies include slate installed over ASTM D226, Type II underlayment over combustible decks.

**[BF] 1505.3 Class B roof assemblies.** Class B roof assemblies are those that are effective against moderate fire-test exposure. Class B roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be listed and identified as Class B by an approved testing agency.

**[BF] 1505.4 Class C roof assemblies.** Class C roof assemblies are those that are effective against light fire-test exposure. Class C roof assemblies and roof coverings shall be listed and identified as Class C by an approved testing agency.

**[BF] 1505.5 Nonclassified roofing.** Nonclassified roofing is approved material that is not listed as a Class A, B or C roof covering.

**[BF] 1505.6 Fire-retardant-treated wood shingles and shakes.** Fire-retardant-treated wood shakes and shingles are wood shakes and shingles complying with UBC Standard 15-3 or 15-4 which are impregnated by the full-cell vacuum-pressure process with fire-retardant chemicals, and which have been qualified by UBC Standard 15-2 for use on Class A, B or C roofs.

Fire-retardant-treated wood shakes and shingles shall comply with ICC-ES EG107 and with the weathering requirements contained in Health and Safety Code Section 13132.7(j). Each bundle shall bear labels from an ICC accredited quality control agency identifying their roof-covering classification and indicating their compliance with ICC-ES EG107 and with the weathering requirements contained in Health and Safety Code Section 13132.7(j).

Health and Safety Code Section 13132.7(j). No wood roof covering materials shall be sold or applied in this state unless both of the following conditions are met:

- (1) The materials have been approved and listed by the State Fire Marshal as complying with the requirements of this section.
- (2) The materials have passed at least five years of the 10-year natural weathering test. The 10-year natural weathering test required by this subdivision shall be conducted in accordance with standard 15-2 of the 1994 edition of the Uniform Building Code at a testing facility recognized by the State Fire Marshal.

**[BF] 1505.7 Special purpose roofs.** Special purpose wood shingle or wood shake roofing shall conform to the grading and application requirements of Section 1507.8 or 1507.9. In addition, an underlayment of  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) Type X water-resistant gypsum backing board or gypsum sheathing shall be placed under minimum nominal  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (12.7 mm) wood structural panel solid sheathing or 1-inch (25 mm) nominal spaced sheathing.

**[BF] 1505.8 Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) products.** BIPV products installed as the roof covering shall be tested, listed and labeled for fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.1.

**[BF] 1505.9 Rooftop mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems.** Rooftop mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems shall be tested, listed and identified with a fire classification in accordance with UL 2703. Listed systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and their listing. The fire classification shall comply with Table 1505.1 based on the type of construction of the building.

**[BF] 1505.10 Landscaped roofs.** Landscaped roofs shall comply with Sections 1505.1 and 1507.15 and shall be installed in accordance with ANSI/SPRI VF-1.

## SECTION 1506 MATERIALS

**1506.1 Scope.** The requirements set forth in this section shall apply to the application of roof-covering materials specified herein. Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with this chapter and the roof covering listing as required by Section 1505. Installation of roof coverings shall comply with the applicable provisions of Section 1507.

**1506.2 Material specifications and physical characteristics.** Roof-covering materials shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter.

**1506.3 Product identification.** Roof-covering materials shall be delivered in packages bearing the manufacturer's identifying marks and approved testing agency labels required in accordance with Section 1505. Bulk shipments of materials shall be accompanied with the same information issued in the form of a certificate or on a bill of lading by the manufacturer.

## SECTION 1507 REQUIREMENTS FOR ROOF COVERINGS

**1507.1 Scope.** Roof coverings shall be applied in accordance with the applicable provisions of this section and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1507.1.1 Underlayment.** Underlayment for asphalt shingles, clay and concrete tile, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shingles, wood shakes, metal roof panels and photovoltaic shingles shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this chapter. Underlayment materials required to comply with ASTM D226, D1970, D4869 and D6757 shall bear a label indicating compliance with the standard designation and, if applicable, type classification indicated in Table 1507.1.1(1). Underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Table 1507.1.1(2). Underlayment shall be attached in accordance with Table 1507.1.1(3).

### Exceptions:

- As an alternative, a minimum 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of self-adhering polymer modified bitumen membrane complying with ASTM D1970 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for the deck material shall be applied over all joints in the roof decking. An approved underlayment for the applicable roof covering for design wind speeds less than 120 mph (54 m/s) shall be applied over the 4-inch-wide (102 mm) membrane strips.
- As an alternative, two layers of underlayment complying with ASTM D226 Type II or ASTM D4869 Type IV shall be permitted to be installed as follows: Apply a 19-inch (483 mm) strip of underlayment parallel with the eave. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide (914 mm) strips of

TABLE 1507.1.1(1)  
UNDERLAYMENT TYPES

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED, V < 140 MPH	MAXIMUM BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED, V ≥ 140 MPH
Asphalt shingles	1507.2	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV ASTM D6757	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV ASTM D6757
Clay and concrete tiles	1507.3	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D2626 Type I ASTM D6380 Class M mineral surfaced roll roofing	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D2626 Type I ASTM D6380 Class M mineral surfaced roll roofing
Metal roof panels	1507.4	Manufacturer's instructions	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV
Metal roof shingles	1507.5	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	1507.6	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV
Slate shingles	1507.7	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV
Wood shingles	1507.8	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV
Wood shakes	1507.9	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV
Photovoltaic shingles	1507.16	ASTM D226 Type I or II ASTM D4869 Type I, II, III or IV ASTM D6757	ASTM D226 Type II ASTM D4869 Type IV ASTM D6757

*continued*

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

**TABLE 1507.1.1(2)**  
**UNDERLAYMENT APPLICATION**

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V < 140 \text{ MPH}$	MAXIMUM BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V \geq 140 \text{ MPH}$
Asphalt shingles	1507.2	<p>For roof slopes from 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied as follows: Apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal.</p> <p>For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied as follows: Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.</p>	Same as Maximum Basic Design Wind Speed, $V < 140 \text{ mph}$ except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches
Clay and concrete tile	1507.3	<p>For roof slopes from <math>2\frac{1}{2}</math> units vertical in 12 units horizontal (<math>2\frac{1}{2}:12</math>), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be not fewer than two layers applied as follows: Starting at the eave, a 19-inch strip of underlayment shall be applied parallel with the eave. Starting at the eave, a 36-inch-wide strip of underlayment felt shall be applied, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.</p> <p>For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied as follows: Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.</p>	Same as Maximum Basic Design Wind Speed, $V < 140 \text{ mph}$ except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches
Metal roof panels	1507.4	Apply in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions	For roof slopes from 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied as follows: Apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.
Metal roof shingles	1507.5		For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied as follows: Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 4 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	1507.6		
Slate shingles	1507.7		
Wood shingles	1507.8		
Wood shakes	1507.9		
Photovoltaic shingles	1507.16	<p>For roof slopes from 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (3:12), up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12), underlayment shall be two layers applied as follows: Apply a 19-inch strip of underlayment felt parallel to and starting at the eaves. Starting at the eave, apply 36-inch-wide sheets of underlayment, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal.</p> <p>For roof slopes of 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater, underlayment shall be one layer applied as follows: Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave and lapped 2 inches. Distortions in the underlayment shall not interfere with the ability of the shingles to seal. End laps shall be 4 inches and shall be offset by 6 feet.</p>	Same as Maximum Basic Design Wind Speed, $V < 140 \text{ mph}$ except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

**TABLE 1507.1.1(3)**  
**UNDERLAYMENT ATTACHMENT**

ROOF COVERING	SECTION	MAXIMUM BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V < 140$ MPH	MAXIMUM BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V \geq 140$ MPH
Asphalt shingles	1507.2		The underlayment shall be attached with corrosion-resistant fasteners in a grid pattern of 12 inches between side laps with a 6-inch spacing at side and end laps. Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails or cap staples with a nominal cap diameter of not less than 1 inch. Metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 32-gage (0.0134 inch) sheet metal. Power-driven metal caps shall have a minimum thickness of 0.010 inch. Minimum thickness of the outside edge of plastic caps shall be 0.035 inch. The cap nail shank shall be not less than 0.083 inch for ring shank cap nails and 0.091 inch for smooth shank cap nails. Staples shall be not less than 21 gage (0.032 inch). The cap nail shank and cap staple legs shall have a length sufficient to penetrate through the roof sheathing or not less than $\frac{3}{4}$ inch into the roof sheathing.
Clay and concrete tile	1507.3		
Photovoltaic shingles	1507.16	Fastened sufficiently to hold in place	
Metal roof panels	1507.4		
Metal roof shingles	1507.5		
Mineral-surfaced roll roofing	1507.6		
Slate shingles	1507.7		
Wood shingles	1507.8		
Wood shakes	1507.9		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm; 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

underlayment felt, overlapping successive sheets 19 inches (483 mm). The underlayment shall be attached with corrosion-resistant fasteners in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at side and end laps. End laps shall be 4 inches (102 mm) and shall be offset by 6 feet (1829 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using metal or plastic cap nails with a nominal cap diameter of not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm). Metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 32-gage sheet metal. Power-driven metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.254 mm). Thickness of the outside edge of plastic caps shall be not less than 0.035 inch (0.89 mm). The cap nail shank shall be not less than 0.083 inch (2.1 mm) for ring shank cap nails and 0.091 inch (2.3 mm) for smooth shank cap nails. The cap nail shank shall have a length sufficient to penetrate through the roof sheathing or not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

3. Structural metal panels that do not require a substrate or underlayment.

**1507.1.2 Ice barriers.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, an ice barrier shall be installed for asphalt shingles, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, slate and slate-type shingles, wood shingles, and wood shakes. The ice barrier shall consist of not less than two layers of

underlayment cemented together, or a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used in place of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached accessory structures that do not contain conditioned floor area.

**1507.2 Asphalt shingles.** The installation of asphalt shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.2.1 Deck requirements.** Asphalt shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed decks.

**1507.2.2 Slope.** Asphalt shingles shall only be used on roof slopes of 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (17-percent slope) up to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.2.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.2.4 Asphalt shingles.** Asphalt shingles shall comply with ASTM D3462.

**1507.2.5 Fasteners.** Fasteners for asphalt shingles shall be galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] shank with a minimum  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head, of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

the roof sheathing is less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) thick, the nails shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667.

**1507.2.6 Attachment.** Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12), shingles shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

**1507.2.7 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.2.8 Flashings.** Flashing for asphalt shingles shall comply with this section. Flashing shall be applied in accordance with this section and the asphalt shingle manufacturer's printed instructions.

**1507.2.8.1 Base and cap flashing.** Base and cap flashing shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Base flashing shall be of either corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.483 mm) thickness or mineral-surfaced roll roofing weighing not less than 77 pounds per 100 square feet ( $3.76 \text{ kg/m}^2$ ). Cap flashing shall be corrosion-resistant metal of minimum nominal 0.019-inch (0.483 mm) thickness.

**1507.2.8.2 Valleys.** Valley linings shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions before applying shingles. Valley linings of the following types shall be permitted:

1. For open valleys (valley lining exposed) lined with metal, the valley lining shall be not less than 24 inches (610 mm) wide and of any of the corrosion-resistant metals in Table 1507.2.8.2.
2. For open valleys, valley lining of two plies of mineral-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380 shall be permitted. The bottom layer shall be 18 inches (457 mm) and the top layer not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide.

3. For closed valleys (valleys covered with shingles), valley lining of one ply of smooth roll roofing complying with ASTM D6380, and not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide or types as described in Item 1 or 2 above shall be permitted. Self-adhering polymer modified bitumen underlayment bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted in lieu of the lining material.

**1507.2.8.3 Drip edge.** A drip edge shall be provided at eaves and rake edges of shingle roofs. Adjacent segments of the drip edge shall be lapped not less than 2 inches (51 mm). The vertical leg of drip edges shall be not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) in width and shall extend not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) below sheathing. The drip edge shall extend back on the roof not less than 2 inches (51 mm). Underlayment shall be installed over drip edges along eaves. Drip edges shall be installed over underlayment along rake edges. Drip edges shall be mechanically fastened at intervals not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) on center.

**1507.3 Clay and concrete tile.** The installation of clay and concrete tile shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.3.1 Deck requirements.** Concrete and clay tile shall be installed only over solid sheathing.

**Exception:** Spaced lumber sheathing shall be permitted in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.

**1507.3.2 Deck slope.** Clay and concrete roof tile shall be installed on roof slopes of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope) or greater. For roof slopes from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21-percent slope) to 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope), double underlayment application is required in accordance with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.3.3 Underlayment.** Unless otherwise noted, required underlayment shall conform to: ASTM D226, Type II; ASTM D2626 or ASTM D6380, Class M mineral-surfaced roll roofing.

TABLE 1507.2.8.2  
VALLEY LINING MATERIAL

MATERIAL	MINIMUM THICKNESS	GAGE	WEIGHT
Aluminum	0.024 in.	—	—
Cold-rolled copper	0.0216 in.	—	ASTM B370, 16 oz. per square ft.
Copper	—	—	16 oz
Galvanized steel	0.0179 in.	26 (zinc-coated G90)	—
High-yield copper	0.0162 in.	—	ASTM B370, 12 oz. per square ft.
Lead	—	—	2.5 pounds
Lead-coated copper	0.0216 in.	—	ASTM B101, 16 oz. per square ft.
Lead-coated high-yield copper	0.0162 in.	—	ASTM B101, 12 oz. per square ft.
Painted terne	—	—	20 pounds
Stainless steel	—	28	—
Zinc alloy	0.027 in.	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 ounce = 28.35 g, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

**1507.3.4 Clay tile.** Clay roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1167.

**1507.3.5 Concrete tile.** Concrete roof tile shall comply with ASTM C1492.

**1507.3.6 Fasteners.** Tile fasteners shall be corrosion resistant and not less than 11-gage, [0.120 inch (3 mm)],  $\frac{5}{16}$ -inch (8.0 mm) head, and of sufficient length to penetrate the deck not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) or through the thickness of the deck, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay or concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch (2.1 mm). Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches (914 mm) from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.

**1507.3.7 Attachment.** Clay and concrete roof tiles shall be fastened in accordance with Table 1507.3.7.

**1507.3.8 Application.** Tile shall be applied according to the manufacturer's installation instructions, based on the following:

1. Climatic conditions.
2. Roof slope.
3. Underlayment system.
4. Type of tile being installed.

**1507.3.9 Flashing.** At the juncture of the roof vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend not less than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley, or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solid cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

**1507.3.10 Additional requirements.** [*DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5*] In addition to the requirements of 1507.3.6 and 1507.3.7, the installation of clay and concrete tile roof coverings shall comply with seismic anchorage provisions of Section 1513.

**1507.4 Metal roof panels.** The installation of metal roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.4.1 Deck requirements.** Metal roof panel roof coverings shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced supports.

**1507.4.2 Deck slope.** Minimum slopes for metal roof panels shall comply with the following:

1. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered seam metal roof panels without applied lap sealant shall be three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).
2. The minimum slope for lapped, nonsoldered seam metal roof panels with applied lap sealant shall be one-half unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (4-percent slope). Lap sealants shall be applied in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. The minimum slope for standing-seam metal roof panel systems shall be one-quarter unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**1507.4.3 Material standards.** Metal-sheet roof covering systems that incorporate supporting structural members shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 22. Metal-sheet roof coverings installed over structural decking shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The materials used for metal-sheet roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses shown in Table 1507.4.3(2).

**1507.4.4 Attachment.** Metal roof panels shall be secured to the supports in accordance with the approved manufacturer's fasteners. In the absence of manufacturer recommendations, the following fasteners shall be used:

1. Galvanized fasteners shall be used for steel roofs.
2. Copper, brass, bronze, copper alloy or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners shall be used for copper roofs.
3. Stainless-steel fasteners are acceptable for all types of metal roofs.
4. Aluminum fasteners are acceptable for aluminum roofs attached to aluminum supports.

**1507.4.5 Underlayment and high wind.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.5 Metal roof shingles.** The installation of metal roof shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.5.1 Deck requirements.** Metal roof shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied to spaced sheathing.

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

**TABLE 1507.3.7**  
**CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ATTACHMENT<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

GENERAL—CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE				
Maximum Allowable Stress Design Wind Speed, $V_{asd}$ <sup>f</sup> (mph)	Mean roof height (feet)	Roof slope < 3:12	Roof slope 3:12 and over	
85	0-60	One fastener per tile. Flat tile without vertical laps, two fasteners per tile.	Two fasteners per tile. Only one fastener on slopes of 7:12 and less for tiles with installed weight exceeding 7.5 lbs./sq. ft. having a width not more than 16 inches.	
100	0-40			
100	> 40-60	The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. Rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer's mastic.		
110	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
120	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
130	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
All	> 60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
<b>INTERLOCKING CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE WITH PROJECTING ANCHOR LUGS<sup>d, e</sup></b> <b>(Installations on spaced/solid sheathing with battens or spaced sheathing)</b>				
Maximum Allowable Stress Design Wind Speed, $V_{asd}$ <sup>f</sup> (mph)	Mean roof height (feet)	Roof slope < 5:12	Roof slope 5:12 < 12:12	Roof slope 12:12 and over
85	0-60	Fasteners are not required.	One fastener per tile every other row. Perimeter tiles require one fastener.	One fastener required for every tile. Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require not fewer than one fastener per tile.
100	0-40	Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require not fewer than one fastener per tile.	Tiles with installed weight less than 9 lbs./sq. ft. require not fewer than one fastener per tile.	
100	> 40-60	The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. Rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer's mastic.		
110	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
120	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
130	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
All	> 60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
<b>INTERLOCKING CLAY OR CONCRETE ROOF TILE WITH PROJECTING ANCHOR LUGS (Installations on solid sheathing without battens)</b>				
Maximum Allowable Stress Wind Speed, $V_{asd}$ <sup>f</sup> (mph)	Mean roof height (feet)	All roof slopes		
85	0-60	One fastener per tile.		
100	0-40	One fastener per tile.		
100	> 40-60	The head of all tiles shall be nailed. The nose of all eave tiles shall be fastened with approved clips. Rake tiles shall be nailed with two nails. The nose of all ridge, hip and rake tiles shall be set in a bead of roofer's mastic.		
110	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
120	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
130	0-60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		
All	> 60	The fastening system shall resist the wind forces in Section 1609.5.3.		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s, 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m<sup>2</sup>.

- a. Minimum fastener size. Corrosion-resistant nails not less than No. 11 gage with  $\frac{5}{16}$ -inch head. Fasteners shall be long enough to penetrate into the sheathing  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch or through the thickness of the sheathing, whichever is less. Attaching wire for clay and concrete tile shall not be smaller than 0.083 inch.
- b. Snow areas. Not fewer than two fasteners per tile are required or battens and one fastener.
- c. Roof slopes greater than 24:12. The nose of all tiles shall be securely fastened.
- d. Horizontal battens. Battens shall be not less than 1 inch by 2 inches nominal. Provisions shall be made for drainage by a riser of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch at each nail or by 4-foot-long battens with not less than a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch separation between battens. Horizontal battens are required for slopes over 7:12.
- e. Perimeter fastening areas include three tile courses but not less than 36 inches from either side of hips or ridges and edges of eaves and gable rakes.
- f.  $V_{asd}$  shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

**TABLE 1507.4.3(1)**  
**METAL ROOF COVERINGS**

ROOF COVERING TYPE	STANDARD APPLICATION RATE/THICKNESS
Aluminum	ASTM B209, 0.024 inch minimum thickness for roll-formed panels and 0.019 inch minimum thickness for press-formed shingles.
Aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel	ASTM A792 AZ 50
Cold-rolled copper	ASTM B370 minimum 16 oz./sq. ft. and 12 oz./sq. ft. high yield copper for metal-sheet roof covering systems; 12 oz./sq. ft. for preformed metal shingle systems.
Copper	16 oz./sq. ft. for metal-sheet roof-covering systems; 12 oz./sq. ft. for preformed metal shingle systems.
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G90 zinc-coated <sup>a</sup> .
Hard lead	2 lbs./sq. ft.
Lead-coated copper	ASTM B101
Prepainted steel	ASTM A755
Soft lead	3 lbs./sq. ft.
Stainless steel	ASTM A240, 300 Series Alloys
Steel	ASTM A924
Terne and terne-coated stainless	Terne coating of 40 lbs. per double base box, field painted where applicable in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.
Zinc	0.027 inch minimum thickness; 99.995% electrolytic high-grade zinc with alloy additives of copper (0.08% - 0.20%), titanium (0.07% - 0.12%) and aluminum (0.015%).

For SI: 1 ounce per square foot = 0.305 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

a. For Group U buildings, the minimum coating thickness for ASTM A653 galvanized steel roofing shall be G60.

**TABLE 1507.4.3(2)**  
**MINIMUM CORROSION RESISTANCE**

55% Aluminum-zinc alloy coated steel	ASTM A792 AZ 50
5% Aluminum alloy-coated steel	ASTM A875 GF60
Aluminum-coated steel	ASTM A463 T2 65
Galvanized steel	ASTM A653 G90
Prepainted steel	ASTM A755 <sup>a</sup>

a. Paint systems in accordance with ASTM A755 shall be applied over steel products with corrosion-resistant coatings complying with ASTM A463, ASTM A653, ASTM A792 or ASTM A875.

**1507.5.2 Deck slope.** Metal roof shingles shall not be installed on roof slopes below three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

**1507.5.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.5.4 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.5.5 Material standards.** Metal roof shingle roof coverings shall comply with Table 1507.4.3(1). The mate-

rials used for metal-roof shingle roof coverings shall be naturally corrosion resistant or provided with corrosion resistance in accordance with the standards and minimum thicknesses specified in the standards listed in Table 1507.4.3(2).

**1507.5.6 Attachment.** Metal roof shingles shall be secured to the roof in accordance with the approved manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1507.5.7 Flashing.** Roof valley flashing shall be of corrosion-resistant metal of the same material as the roof covering or shall comply with the standards in Table 1507.4.3(1). The valley flashing shall extend not less than 8 inches (203 mm) from the centerline each way and shall have a splash diverter rib not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment directly under it consisting of either one layer of underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970, in addition to underlayment required for metal roof shingles. The metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for roof slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

**1507.6 Mineral-surfaced roll roofing.** The installation of mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall comply with this section.

**1507.6.1 Deck requirements.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

**1507.6.2 Deck slope.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall not be applied on roof slopes below one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8-percent slope).

**1507.6.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.6.4 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.6.5 Material standards.** Mineral-surfaced roll roofing shall conform to ASTM D3909 or ASTM D6380.

**1507.7 Slate shingles.** The installation of slate shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.7.1 Deck requirements.** Slate shingles shall be fastened to solidly sheathed roofs.

**1507.7.2 Deck slope.** Slate shingles shall only be used on slopes of four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12) or greater.

**1507.7.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.7.4 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.7.5 Material standards.** Slate shingles shall comply with ASTM C406.

**1507.7.6 Application.** Minimum headlap for slate shingles shall be in accordance with Table 1507.7.6. Slate shingles shall be secured to the roof with two fasteners per slate.

TABLE 1507.7.6  
SLATE SHINGLE HEADLAP

SLOPE	HEADLAP (inches)
4:12 < slope < 8:12	4
8:12 < slope < 20:12	3
slope ≥ 20:12	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**1507.7.7 Flashing.** Flashing and counterflashing shall be made with sheet metal. Valley flashing shall be not less than 15 inches (381 mm) wide. Valley and flashing metal shall be a minimum uncoated thickness of 0.0179-inch (0.455 mm) zinc-coated G90. Chimneys, stucco or brick walls shall have not fewer than two plies of felt for a cap flashing consisting of a 4-inch-wide (102 mm) strip of felt set in plastic cement and extending 1 inch (25 mm) above the first felt and a top coating of plastic cement. The felt shall extend over the base flashing 2 inches (51 mm).

**1507.7.8 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** In addition to the requirements of Section 1507.7.5, the installation of slate shingle roof coverings shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1507.3.6 and 1507.3.7, and the seismic anchorage provisions of Section 1513.

**1507.8 Wood shingles.** The installation of wood shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section and Table 1507.8.

**1507.8.1 Deck requirements.** Wood shingles shall be installed on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.

**1507.8.1.1 Solid sheathing required.** Solid sheathing is required in areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.

**1507.8.2 Deck slope.** Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope).

**1507.8.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.8.4 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.8.5 Material standards.** Wood shingles shall be of naturally durable wood and comply with the requirements of Table 1507.8.5.

**1507.8.6 Attachment.** Fasteners for wood shingles shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than

$\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Each shingle shall be attached with not fewer than two fasteners.

TABLE 1507.8.5  
WOOD SHINGLE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS

MATERIAL	APPLICABLE MINIMUM GRADES	GRADING RULES
Wood shingles of naturally durable wood	1, 2 or 3	CSSB

CSSB = Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau

**1507.8.7 Application.** Wood shingles shall be laid with a side lap not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses, and not be in direct alignment in alternate courses. Spacing between shingles shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm). Weather exposure for wood shingles shall not exceed that set in Table 1507.8.7.

TABLE 1507.8.7  
WOOD SHINGLE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches)	
			3:12 pitch to < 4:12	4:12 pitch or steeper
Shingles of naturally durable wood	16	No. 1	3.75	5
		No. 2	3.5	4
		No. 3	3	3.5
	18	No. 1	4.25	5.5
		No. 2	4	4.5
		No. 3	3.5	4
	24	No. 1	5.75	7.5
		No. 2	5.5	6.5
		No. 3	5	5.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**1507.8.8 Flashing.** At the juncture of the roof and vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend not less than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

**TABLE 1507.8  
WOOD SHINGLE AND SHAKE INSTALLATION**

ROOF ITEM	WOOD SHINGLES	WOOD SHAKES
1. Roof slope	Wood shingles shall be installed on slopes of not less than 3 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (3:12).	Wood shakes shall be installed on slopes of not less than 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12).
2. Deck requirement		
Temperate climate	Shingles shall be applied to roofs with solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1" × 4" nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners.	Shakes shall be applied to roofs with solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1" × 4" nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1" × 4" spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches, boards must be installed between the sheathing boards.
In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.	Solid sheathing is required.	Solid sheathing is required.
3. Interlayment	No requirements.	Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type 1.
4. Underlayment		
Temperate climate	Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.	Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.
5. Application		
Attachment	Fasteners for wood shingles shall be hot-dipped galvanized or Type 304 (Type 316 for coastal areas) stainless steel with a minimum penetration of 0.75 inch into the sheathing. For sheathing less than 0.5 inch thick, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing.	Fasteners for wood shakes shall be hot-dipped galvanized or Type 304 (Type 316 for coastal areas) with a minimum penetration of 0.75 inch into the sheathing. For sheathing less than 0.5 inch thick, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing.
No. of fasteners	Two per shingle.	Two per shake.
Exposure	Weather exposures shall not exceed those set forth in Table 1507.8.7.	Weather exposures shall not exceed those set forth in Table 1507.9.8.
Method	Shingles shall be laid with a side lap of not less than 1.5 inches between joints in courses, and no two joints in any three adjacent courses shall be in direct alignment. Spacing between shingles shall be 0.25 to 0.375 inch.	Shakes shall be laid with a side lap of not less than 1.5 inches between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes shall not be less than 0.375 inch or more than 0.625 inch for shakes and taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood and shall be 0.25 to 0.375 inch for preservative-treated taper sawn shakes.
Flashing	In accordance with Section 1507.8.8.	In accordance with Section 1507.9.9.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

**1507.8.9 Label required.** Each bundle of shingles shall be identified by a label of an approved grading or inspection bureau or agency.

**1507.9 Wood shakes.** The installation of wood shakes shall comply with the provisions of this section and Table 1507.8.

**1507.9.1 Deck requirements.** Wood shakes shall only be used on solid or spaced sheathing. Where spaced sheathing is used, sheathing boards shall be not less than 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) nominal dimensions and shall be spaced on centers equal to the weather exposure to coincide with the placement of fasteners. Where 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) spaced sheathing is installed at 10 inches (254 mm) on center, additional 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) boards shall be installed between the sheathing boards.

**1507.9.1.1 Solid sheathing required.** Solid sheathing is required in areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water.

**1507.9.2 Deck slope.** Wood shakes shall only be used on slopes of not less than 4 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (33-percent slope).

**1507.9.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.9.4 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.9.5 Interlayment.** Interlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, Type I.

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

**1507.9.6 Material standards.** Wood shakes shall comply with the requirements of Table 1507.9.6.

**TABLE 1507.9.6  
WOOD SHAKE MATERIAL REQUIREMENTS**

MATERIAL	MINIMUM GRADES	APPLICABLE GRADING RULES
Wood shakes of naturally durable wood	1	CSSB
Taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood	1 or 2	CSSB
Preservative-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	CSSB
Fire-retardant-treated shakes and shingles of naturally durable wood	1	CSSB
Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern pine treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Special Requirement 4.6)	1 or 2	TFS

CSSB = Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau.

TFS = Forest Products Laboratory of the Texas Forest Services.

**1507.9.7 Attachment.** Fasteners for wood shakes shall be corrosion resistant with a minimum penetration of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) into the sheathing. For sheathing less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness, the fasteners shall extend through the sheathing. Each shake shall be attached with not fewer than two fasteners.

**1507.9.8 Application.** Wood shakes shall be laid with a side lap not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) between joints in adjacent courses. Spacing between shakes in the same course shall be  $\frac{3}{8}$  to  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (9.5 to 15.9 mm) for shakes and taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood and shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  to  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm) for preservative taper sawn shakes. Weather exposure for wood shakes shall not exceed those set in Table 1507.9.8.

**TABLE 1507.9.8  
WOOD SHAKE WEATHER EXPOSURE AND ROOF SLOPE**

ROOFING MATERIAL	LENGTH (inches)	GRADE	EXPOSURE (inches) 4:12 PITCH OR STEEPER
Shakes of naturally durable wood	18 24	No. 1 No. 1	7.5 10 <sup>a</sup>
Preservative-treated taper sawn shakes of Southern yellow pine	18	No. 1	7.5
	24	No. 1	10
	18	No. 2	5.5
	24	No. 2	7.5
Taper sawn shakes of naturally durable wood	18	No. 1	7.5
	24	No. 1	10
	18	No. 2	5.5
	24	No. 2	7.5

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. For 24-inch by 0.375-inch handsplit shakes, the maximum exposure is 7.5 inches.

**1507.9.9 Flashing.** At the juncture of the roof and vertical surfaces, flashing and counterflashing shall be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and where of metal, shall be not less than 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage) corrosion-resistant metal. The valley flashing shall extend not less than 11 inches (279 mm) from the centerline each way and have a splash diverter rib not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high at the flow line formed as part of the flashing. Sections of flashing shall have an end lap of not less than 4 inches (102 mm). For roof slopes of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) and over, the valley flashing shall have a 36-inch-wide (914 mm) underlayment of either one layer of Type I underlayment running the full length of the valley or a self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet bearing a label indicating compliance with ASTM D1970, in addition to other required underlayment. In areas where the average daily temperature in January is 25°F (-4°C) or less or where there is a possibility of ice forming along the eaves causing a backup of water, the metal valley flashing underlayment shall be solidly cemented to the roofing underlayment for slopes under seven units vertical in 12 units horizontal (58-percent slope) or self-adhering polymer-modified bitumen sheet shall be installed.

**1507.9.10 Label required.** Each bundle of shakes shall be identified by a label of an approved grading or inspection bureau or agency.

**1507.10 Built-up roofs.** The installation of built-up roofs shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.10.1 Slope.** Built-up roofs shall have a design slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage, except for coal-tar built-up roofs that shall have a design slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (1-percent slope).

**1507.10.2 Material standards.** Built-up roof covering materials shall comply with the standards in Table 1507.10.2 or UL 55A.

**1507.11 Modified bitumen roofing.** The installation of modified bitumen roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.11.1 Slope.** Modified bitumen roofing shall have a design slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

**1507.11.2 Material standards.** Modified bitumen roofing materials shall comply with ASTM D6162, ASTM D6163, ASTM D6164, ASTM D6222, ASTM D6223, ASTM D6298 or ASTM D6509.

**1507.11.2.1 Base sheet.** A base sheet that complies with the requirements of Section 1507.11.2, ASTM D1970 or ASTM D4601 shall be permitted to be used with a modified bitumen cap sheet.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**TABLE 1507.10.2  
BUILT-UP ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS**

MATERIAL STANDARD	STANDARD
Acrylic coatings used in roofing	ASTM D6083
Aggregate surfacing	ASTM D1863
Asphalt adhesive used in roofing	ASTM D3747
Asphalt cements used in roofing	ASTM D2822; D3019; D4586
Asphalt-coated glass fiber base sheet	ASTM D4601
Asphalt coatings used in roofing	ASTM D1227; D2823; D2824; D4479
Asphalt glass felt	ASTM D2178
Asphalt primer used in roofing	ASTM D41
Asphalt-saturated and asphalt-coated organic felt base sheet	ASTM D2626
Asphalt-saturated organic felt (perforated)	ASTM D226
Asphalt used in roofing	ASTM D312
Coal-tar cements used in roofing	ASTM D4022; D5643
Coal-tar saturated organic felt	ASTM D227
Coal-tar pitch used in roofing	ASTM D450; Type I or II
Coal-tar primer used in roofing, damp-proofing and waterproofing	ASTM D43
Glass mat, coal tar	ASTM D4990
Glass mat, venting type	ASTM D4897
Mineral-surfaced inorganic cap sheet	ASTM D3909
Thermoplastic fabrics used in roofing	ASTM D5665, D5726

**1507.12 Single-ply roofing.** The installation of single-ply roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.12.1 Slope.** Single-ply membrane roofs shall have a design slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

**1507.12.2 Material standards.** Single-ply roof coverings shall comply with the material standards in Table 1507.12.2.

**TABLE 1507.12.2  
SINGLE-PLY ROOFING MATERIAL STANDARDS**

MATERIAL	MATERIAL STANDARD
Chlorosulfonated polyethylene (CSPE) or polyisobutylene (PIB)	ASTM D5019
Ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM)	ASTM D4637
Ketone Ethylene Ester (KEE)	ASTM D6754
Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) or (PVC/KEE)	ASTM D4434
Thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO)	ASTM D6878

**1507.12.3 Ballasted low-slope roofs.** Ballasted low-slope roofs (roof slope  $< 2:12$ ) shall be installed in accordance with this section and Section 1504.5. Stone used as ballast shall comply with ASTM D448 or ASTM D7655.

**1507.13 Sprayed polyurethane foam roofing.** The installation of sprayed polyurethane foam roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.13.1 Slope.** Sprayed polyurethane foam roofs shall have a design slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) for drainage.

**1507.13.2 Material standards.** Spray-applied polyurethane foam insulation shall comply with ASTM C1029 Type III or IV or ASTM D7425.

**1507.13.3 Application.** Foamed-in-place roof insulation shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. A liquid-applied protective coating that complies with Table 1507.13.3 shall be applied not less than 2 hours nor more than 72 hours following the application of the foam.

**TABLE 1507.13.3  
PROTECTIVE COATING MATERIAL STANDARDS**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Silicone coating	ASTM D6694
Moisture-cured polyurethane coating	ASTM D6947

**1507.13.4 Foam plastics.** Foam plastic materials and installation shall comply with Chapter 26.

**1507.14 Liquid-applied roofing.** The installation of liquid-applied roofing shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.14.1 Slope.** Liquid-applied roofing shall have a design slope of not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

**1507.14.2 Material standards.** Liquid-applied roofing shall comply with ASTM C836, ASTM C957 or ASTM D3468.

**1507.15 Vegetative roofs and landscaped roofs.** Vegetative roofs and landscaped roofs shall comply with the requirements of this chapter, Section 1607.14.2.2 and the *California Fire Code*.

**[BF] 1507.15.1 Structural fire resistance.** The structural frame and roof construction supporting the load imposed on the roof by the vegetative roof or landscaped roofs shall comply with the requirements of Table 601.

**1507.16 Photovoltaic shingles.** The installation of photovoltaic shingles shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.16.1 Deck requirements.** Photovoltaic shingles shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the shingles are specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

**1507.16.2 Deck slope.** Photovoltaic shingles shall be installed on roof slopes of not less than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12).

**1507.16.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with Section 1507.1.1.

**1507.16.4 Ice barrier.** Where required, ice barriers shall comply with Section 1507.1.2.

**1507.16.5 Fasteners.** Fasteners for photovoltaic shingles shall be galvanized, stainless steel, aluminum or copper roofing nails, minimum 12-gage [0.105 inch (2.67 mm)] shank with a minimum  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-diameter (9.5 mm) head,

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

of a length to penetrate through the roofing materials and not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing. Where the roof sheathing is less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) thick, the nails shall penetrate through the sheathing. Fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667.

**1507.16.6 Material standards.** Photovoltaic shingles shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 7103 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2.

**1507.16.7 Attachment.** Photovoltaic shingles shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1507.16.8 Wind resistance.** Photovoltaic shingles shall comply with the classification requirements of Table 1504.2 for the appropriate maximum nominal design wind speed.

**1507.17 Building-integrated photovoltaic roof panels.** The installation of building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) roof panels shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**1507.17.1 Deck requirements.** BIPV roof panels shall be applied to a solid or closely fitted deck, except where the roof covering is specifically designed to be applied over spaced sheathing.

**1507.17.2 Deck slope.** BIPV roof panels shall be used only on roof slopes of 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or greater.

**1507.17.3 Underlayment.** Underlayment shall comply with ASTM D226, ASTM D4869 or ASTM D6757.

**1507.17.4 Underlayment application.** Underlayment shall be applied shingle fashion, parallel to and starting from the eave, lapped 2 inches (51 mm) and fastened sufficiently to hold in place.

**1507.17.4.1 High-wind attachment.** Underlayment applied in areas subject to high winds [ $V_{asd}$  greater than 110 mph (49 m/s) as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1] shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fasteners shall be applied along the overlap at not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center. Underlayment installed where  $V_{asd}$  is not less than 120 mph (54 m/s) shall comply with ASTM D226, Type III, ASTM D4869, Type IV or ASTM D6757. The underlayment shall be attached in a grid pattern of 12 inches (305 mm) between side laps with a 6-inch (152 mm) spacing at the side laps. The underlayment shall be applied in accordance with Section 1507.1.1 except all laps shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm). Underlayment shall be attached using cap nails or cap staples. Caps shall be metal or plastic with a nominal head diameter of not less than 1 inch (25.4 mm). Metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.25 mm). Power-driven metal caps shall have a thickness of not less than 0.010 inch (0.25 mm). Thickness of the outside edge of plastic caps shall be not less than 0.035 inch (0.89 mm). The cap nail shank shall be not less than 0.083 inch (2.11 mm) for ring shank cap nails and 0.091 inch (2.31 mm) for smooth shank cap nails. Staple gage shall be not less than 21 gage [0.0.2 inch (0.81 mm)]. Cap nail shank

and cap staple legs shall have a length sufficient to penetrate through-the-roof sheathing or not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm) into the roof sheathing.

**Exception:** As an alternative, adhered underlayment complying with ASTM D1970 shall be permitted.

**1507.17.4.2 Ice barrier.** In areas where there has been a history of ice forming along the eaves causing a back-up of water, an ice barrier consisting of not fewer than two layers of underlayment cemented together or of a self-adhering polymer modified bitumen sheet shall be used instead of normal underlayment and extend from the lowest edges of all roof surfaces to a point not less than 24 inches (610 mm) inside the exterior wall line of the building.

**Exception:** Detached accessory structures that do not contain conditioned floor area.

**1507.17.5 Material standards.** BIPV roof panels shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 7103 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2.

**1507.17.6 Attachment.** BIPV roof panels shall be attached in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

## SECTION 1508 ROOF INSULATION

**[BF] 1508.1 General.** The use of above-deck thermal insulation shall be permitted provided that such insulation is covered with an approved roof covering and passes the tests of NFPA 276 or UL 1256 when tested as an assembly.

### Exceptions:

1. Foam plastic roof insulation shall conform to the material and installation requirements of Chapter 26.
2. Where a concrete or composite metal and concrete roof deck is used and the above-deck thermal insulation is covered with an approved roof covering.

**[BF] 1508.2 Material standards.** Above-deck thermal insulation board shall comply with the standards in Table 1508.2.

**[BF] TABLE 1508.2**  
**MATERIAL STANDARDS FOR ROOF INSULATION**

Cellular glass board	ASTM C552
Composite boards	ASTM C1289, Type III, IV, V or VII
Expanded polystyrene	ASTM C578
Extruded polystyrene	ASTM C578
Fiber-reinforced gypsum board	ASTM C1278
Glass-faced gypsum board	ASTM C1177
High-density polyisocyanurate board	ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 4
Mineral fiber insulation board	ASTM C726
Perlite board	ASTM C728
Polyisocyanurate board	ASTM C1289, Type I or II
Wood fiberboard	ASTM C208, Type II

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

## SECTION 1509 ROOF COATINGS

**1509.1 General.** The installation of a roof coating on a roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Section 1505 and this section.

**1509.2 Material standards.** Roof coating materials shall comply with the standards in Table 1509.2.

TABLE 1509.2  
ROOF COATING MATERIAL STANDARDS

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Acrylic coating	ASTM D6083
Asphaltic emulsion coating	ASTM D1227
Asphalt coating	ASTM D2823
Asphalt roof coating	ASTM D4479
Aluminum-pigmented asphalt coating	ASTM D2824
Silicone coating	ASTM D6694
Moisture-cured polyurethane coating	ASTM D6947

## SECTION 1510 RADIANT BARRIERS INSTALLED ABOVE DECK

**[BF] 1510.1 General.** A radiant barrier installed above a deck shall comply with Sections 1510.2 through 1510.4.

**[BF] 1510.2 Fire testing.** Radiant barriers shall be permitted for use above decks where the radiant barrier is covered with an approved roof covering and the system consisting of the radiant barrier and the roof covering complies with the requirements of either FM 4450 or UL 1256.

**[BF] 1510.3 Installation.** The low emittance surface of the radiant barrier shall face the continuous airspace between the radiant barrier and the roof covering.

**[BF] 1510.4 Material standards.** A radiant barrier installed above a deck shall comply with ASTM C1313/1313M.

## SECTION 1511 ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

**[BG] 1511.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the construction of rooftop structures.

**1511.1.1 Area limitation.** The aggregate area of penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures shall not exceed one-third the area of the supporting roof deck. Such penthouses and other enclosed rooftop structures shall not be required to be included in determining the building area or number of stories as regulated by Section 503.1. The area of such penthouses shall not be included in determining the fire area specified in Section 901.7.

**[BG] 1511.2 Penthouses.** Penthouses in compliance with Sections 1511.2.1 through 1511.2.4 shall be considered as a portion of the story directly below the roof deck on which such penthouses are located. Other penthouses shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

**[BG] 1511.2.1 Height above roof deck.** Penthouses constructed on buildings of other than Type I construction shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) in height above the roof deck as measured to the average height of the roof of the penthouse. Penthouses located on the roof of buildings of Type I construction shall not be limited in height.

**Exception:** Where used to enclose tanks or elevators that travel to the roof level, penthouses shall be permitted to have a maximum height of 28 feet (8534 mm) above the roof deck.

**[BG] 1511.2.2 Use limitations.** Penthouses shall not be used for purposes other than the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment, tanks, elevators and related machinery, stairways or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly, including ancillary spaces used to access elevators and stairways.

**[BG] 1511.2.3 Weather protection.** Provisions such as louvers, louver blades or flashing shall be made to protect the mechanical and electrical equipment and the building interior from the elements.

**[BG] 1511.2.4 Type of construction.** Penthouses shall be constructed of building elements as required for the type of construction of the building on which such penthouses are built.

### Exceptions:

- On buildings of Type I construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.
- On buildings of Type I construction two stories or less in height above grade plane or of Type II construction, the exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 705.5 and be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood. The exterior walls and roofs of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating. Interior framing and walls shall be permitted to be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood.
- On buildings of Type III, IV or V construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation distance greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) and less than 20 feet (6096 mm) shall be permitted to have not less than a 1-hour fire-resistance rating or a lesser fire-resistance rating as required by Table 705.5. On buildings of Type III, IV or V

## ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES

construction, the exterior walls of penthouses with a fire separation distance of 20 feet (6096 mm) or greater shall be permitted to be of heavy timber construction complying with Sections 602.4 and 2304.11 or noncombustible construction or fire-retardant-treated wood and shall not be required to have a fire-resistance rating.

**[BG] 1511.3 Tanks.** Tanks having a capacity of more than 500 gallons (1893 L) located on the roof deck of a building shall be supported on masonry, reinforced concrete, steel or heavy timber construction complying with Section 2304.11 provided that, where such supports are located in the building above the lowest story, the support shall be fire-resistance rated as required for Type IA construction.

**[BG] 1511.3.1 Valve and drain.** In the bottom or on the side near the bottom of the tank, a pipe or outlet, fitted with a suitable quick-opening valve for discharging the contents into a drain in an emergency shall be provided.

**[BG] 1511.3.2 Location.** Tanks shall not be placed over or near a stairway or an elevator shaft, unless there is a solid roof or floor underneath the tank.

**[BG] 1511.3.3 Tank cover.** Unenclosed roof tanks shall have covers sloping toward the perimeter of the tanks.

**[BG] 1511.4 Cooling towers.** Cooling towers located on the roof deck of a building and greater than 250 square feet (23.2 m<sup>2</sup>) in base area or greater than 15 feet (4572 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the cooling tower, where the roof is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in height above grade plane shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. The base area of cooling towers shall not exceed one-third the area of the supporting roof deck.

**Exception:** Drip boards and the enclosing construction shall be permitted to be of wood not less than 1 inch (25 mm) nominal thickness, provided that the wood is covered on the exterior of the tower with noncombustible material.

**[BG] 1511.5 Towers, spires, domes and cupolas.** Towers, spires, domes and cupolas shall be of a type of construction having fire-resistance ratings not less than required for the building on top of which such tower, spire, dome or cupola is built. Towers, spires, domes and cupolas greater than 85 feet (25 908 mm) in height above grade plane as measured to the highest point on such structures, and either greater than 200 square feet (18.6 m<sup>2</sup>) in horizontal area or used for any purpose other than a belfry or an architectural embellishment, shall be constructed of and supported on Type I or II construction.

**[BG] 1511.5.1 Noncombustible construction required.** Towers, spires, domes and cupolas greater than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height above the highest point at which such structure contacts the roof as measured to the highest point on such structure, or that exceeds 200 square feet (18.6 m<sup>2</sup>) in area at any horizontal section, or which is intended to be used for any purpose other than a belfry or architectural embellishment, or is located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (1524 mm) in building height shall be constructed of and supported by noncombustible materials

and shall be separated from the building below by construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1.5 hours with openings protected in accordance with Section 711. Such structures located on the top of a building greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) in building height shall be supported by noncombustible construction.

**[BG] 1511.5.2 Towers and spires.** Enclosed towers and spires shall have exterior walls constructed as required for the building on top of which such towers and spires are built. The roof covering of spires shall be not less than the same class of roof covering required for the building on top of which the spire is located.

**[BG] 1511.6 Mechanical equipment screens.** Mechanical equipment screens shall be constructed of the materials specified for the exterior walls in accordance with the type of construction of the building. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), mechanical equipment screens shall not be required to comply with the fire-resistance rating requirements.

**[BG] 1511.6.1 Height limitations.** Mechanical equipment screens shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm) in height above the roof deck, as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.

**Exception:** Where located on buildings of Type IA construction, the height of mechanical equipment screens shall not be limited.

**[BG] 1511.6.2 Type I, II, III or IV construction.** Regardless of the requirements in Section 1511.6, mechanical equipment screens that are located on the roof decks of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials in accordance with any one of the following limitations:

1. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the height of the mechanical equipment screen above the roof deck shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) as measured to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen.
2. The fire separation distance shall be not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) and the mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation.
3. Where exterior wall covering panels are used, the panels shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use, with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The panels shall be tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use in accordance with, and shall comply with the acceptance criteria of, NFPA 285 and shall be installed as tested. Where the panels are tested as part of an exterior wall assembly in accordance with NFPA 285, the panels shall be installed on the face of the mechanical equipment screen supporting structure in

the same manner as they were installed on the tested exterior wall assembly.

**[BG] 1511.6.3 Type V construction.** The height of mechanical equipment screens located on the roof decks of buildings of Type V construction, as measured from grade plane to the highest point on the mechanical equipment screen, shall be permitted to exceed the maximum building height allowed for the building by other provisions of this code where complying with any one of the following limitations, provided that the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm):

1. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the height above grade plane of the mechanical equipment screen shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) more than the maximum building height allowed.
2. The mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.
3. The mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of fire-retardant-treated wood complying with Section 2303.2 for exterior installation.
4. Where the fire separation distance is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), the mechanical equipment screen shall be constructed of materials having a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested in the minimum and maximum thicknesses intended for use with each face tested independently in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**[BG] 1511.7 Other rooftop structures.** Rooftop structures not regulated by Sections 1511.2 through 1511.6 shall comply with Sections 1511.7.1 through 1511.7.5, as applicable.

**[BG] 1511.7.1 Aerial supports.** Aerial supports shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

**Exception:** Aerial supports not greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) in height as measured from the roof deck to the highest point on the aerial supports shall be permitted to be constructed of combustible materials.

**[BG] 1511.7.2 Bulkheads.** Bulkheads used for the shelter of mechanical or electrical equipment or vertical shaft openings in the roof assembly shall comply with Section 1511.2 as penthouses. Bulkheads used for any other purpose shall be considered as an additional story of the building.

**[BG] 1511.7.3 Dormers.** Dormers shall be of the same type of construction as required for the roof in which such dormers are located or the exterior walls of the building.

**[BG] 1511.7.4 Fences.** Fences and similar structures shall comply with Section 1511.6 as mechanical equipment screens.

**[BG] 1511.7.5 Flagpoles.** Flagpoles and similar structures shall not be required to be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall not be limited in height or number.

**[BG] 1511.8 Structural fire resistance.** The structural frame and roof construction supporting loads imposed upon the roof

by any rooftop structure shall comply with the requirements of Table 601. The fire-resistance reduction permitted by Table 601, Note a, shall not apply to roofs containing rooftop structures.

**1511.9 Photovoltaic (PV) panel systems. [BSC, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, HCD 1 & HCD 2, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** *Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panels and modules shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2 and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.*

**1511.9.1 Installation. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, HCD 1 & HCD 2, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** *Supports and attachments of photovoltaic panels to the roof structure, the panels, modules and components shall be designed for applied loads per this code, and shall comply with industry standards determined applicable by the enforcement agency. Seismic design requirements shall be determined from ASCE 7 Section 13.6.12. Wind design pressures shall be determined from ASCE 7 Section 29.4.3 or 29.4.4 using effective wind area per ASCE 7 Section 26.2. Calculations and drawings of the supports and attachments shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for review.*

## SECTION 1512 REROOFING

**1512.1 General.** Materials and methods of application used for recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 15.

### Exceptions:

1. Roof replacement or roof recover of existing low-slope roof coverings shall not be required to meet the minimum design slope requirement of  $\frac{1}{4}$  unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (2-percent slope) in Section 1507 for roofs that provide positive roof drainage.
2. Recovering or replacing an existing roof covering shall not be required to meet the requirement for secondary (emergency overflow) drains or scuppers in Section 1502.2 for roofs that provide for positive roof drainage. For the purposes of this exception, existing secondary drainage or scupper systems required in accordance with this code shall not be removed unless they are replaced by secondary drains or scuppers designed and installed in accordance with Section 1502.2.

**1512.2 Roof replacement.** Roof replacement shall include the removal of all existing layers of roof assembly materials down to the roof deck.

**Exception:** Where the existing roof assembly includes an ice barrier membrane that is adhered to the roof deck, the existing ice barrier membrane shall be permitted to remain in place and covered with an additional layer of ice barrier membrane in accordance with Section 1507.

**1512.2.1 Roof recover.** The installation of a new roof covering over an existing roof covering shall be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the new roof covering is installed in accordance with the roof covering manufacturer's approved instructions.
2. Complete and separate roofing systems, such as standing-seam metal roof panel systems, that are designed to transmit the roof loads directly to the building's structural system and that do not rely on existing roofs and roof coverings for support, shall not require the removal of existing roof coverings.
3. Metal panel, metal shingle and concrete and clay tile roof coverings shall be permitted to be installed over existing wood shake roofs when applied in accordance with Section 1512.3.
4. The application of a new protective roof coating over an existing protective roof coating, metal roof panel, built-up roof, spray polyurethane foam roofing system, metal roof shingles, mineral-surfaced roll roofing, modified bitumen roofing or thermoset and thermoplastic single-ply roofing shall be permitted without tear off of existing roof coverings.

**1512.2.1.1 Exceptions.** A roof recover shall not be permitted where any of the following conditions occur:

1. Where the existing roof or roof covering is water soaked or has deteriorated to the point that the existing roof or roof covering is not adequate as a base for additional roofing.
2. Where the existing roof covering is slate, clay, cement or asbestos-cement tile.
3. Where the existing roof has two or more applications of any type of roof covering.

**1512.3 Roof recovering.** Where the application of a new roof covering over wood shingle or shake roofs creates a combustible concealed space, the entire existing surface shall be covered with gypsum board, mineral fiber, glass fiber or other approved materials securely fastened in place.

**1512.4 Reinstallation of materials.** Existing slate, clay or cement tile shall be permitted for reinstallation, except that damaged, cracked or broken slate or tile shall not be reinstalled. Existing vent flashing, metal edgings, drain outlets, collars and metal counterflashings shall not be reinstalled where rusted, damaged or deteriorated. Existing ballast that is damaged, cracked or broken shall not be reinstalled. Existing aggregate surfacing materials from built-up roofs shall not be reinstalled.

**1512.5 Flashings.** Flashings shall be reconstructed in accordance with approved manufacturer's installation instructions. Metal flashing to which bituminous materials are to be adhered shall be primed prior to installation.

## SECTION 1513

### [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5] SEISMIC ANCHORAGE OF SLATE SHINGLE, CLAY AND CONCRETE TILE ROOF COVERINGS

**1513.1 Fasteners.** Nails shall be long enough to penetrate into the sheathing  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm). Where sheathing is less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm) in thickness, nails shall be driven into supports, unless nails with ring shanks are used.

All fasteners shall be corrosion resistant and fabricated of copper, stainless steel or brass, or shall have a hot dipped galvanized coating not less than 1.0 ounce of zinc per square foot (305 gm/m<sup>2</sup>).

Nails for slate shingles and clay or concrete tile shall be copper, brass or stainless steel with gage and length per common ferrous nails.

**1513.2 Wire.** Wire for attaching slate shingles and clay or concrete tile shall be copper, brass or stainless steel capable of supporting four times the weight of tile.

Wire supporting a single tile or shingle shall not be smaller than  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch (1.6 mm) in diameter. Continuous wire ties supporting more than one tile shall not be smaller than 0.084 inch (2 mm) in diameter.

**1513.3 Metal strips.** Metal strips for attaching slate shingles and clay or concrete tile shall be copper, brass or stainless steel capable of supporting four times the weight of tile.

**1513.4 Clay or concrete tiles.** Clay or concrete tile shall be installed in accordance with Table 1507.3.7 and as described herein.

1. On wood roofs or roofs of other material to which wood strips are secured, every cover or top tile when fastened with nails shall be nailed directly into  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) sound grain soft wood strips of sufficient height to support the tile.

Pan or bottom tiles shall be nailed directly to the roof sheathing or to wood strips. Wood strips shall be secured to the roof by nails spaced not over 12 inches (305 mm) apart.

2. On concrete roofs, wires shall be secured in place by wire loops embedded into the concrete not less than 2 inches (51 mm). The wire loops shall be spaced not more than 36 inches (914 mm) on center parallel to the eaves, and spaced vertically to allow for the minimum 3 inches (76 mm) lapping of the tile.
3. Where continuous ties of twisted wire, interlocking wires or metal strips extending from the ridge to eave are used to attach tile, the ties shall be attached to the roof construction at the ridge, eave and at intervals not exceeding 10 feet 0 inch (3048 mm) on center. The ties within 2 feet 0 inch (610 mm) of the rake shall be attached at intervals of 5 feet 0 inch (1524 mm).

Attachment for continuous ties shall be nails, screws staples or approved clips of the same material as the ties, and shall not be subjected to withdrawal forces. Attachments for continuous ties shall have an allowable working stress shear resistance of not less

*than twice the dead weight of the tile tributary to the attachment, but not less than 300 pounds (136 kg).*

4. *Tile with projecting anchor lugs at the bottom of the tiles shall be held in position by means of 1- inch by 2-inch (25mm by 51mm) wood striping nailed to the roof sheathing over the underlay.*
5. *Clay or concrete tile on roofs with slopes exceeding 24 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (200 percent slope) shall be attached as required for veneer in Chapter 14. The nose of all tiles shall be securely fastened.*
6. *Clay or concrete tile shall have a minimum of two fasteners per tile. Tiles that are 8 inches (203 mm) in width or less are permitted to be fastened at the center of the head with one fastener per tile.*
7. *Interlocking clay or concrete tile shall have a minimum of one nail near center of head or two wire ties per tile.*

**1513.5 Slate shingles.** *Slate shingles on roofs with slopes exceeding 24 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (200 percent slope) shall be attached as required for veneer per Chapter 14.*



# INDEX

## A

### **ACCESS OPENINGS**

- Attic . . . . . 1209.2
- Crawl space . . . . . 1209.1
- Doors . . . . . 712.1.13.2
- Fire damper . . . . . 717.4
- Fire department . . . . . 402.7.5
- Mechanical appliances . . . . . 1209.3
- Refuse/laundry chutes . . . . . 713.13.3

### **ACCESSIBILITY** . . . . . 1009, Chapter 11A, 11B

- Accessible means of egress* . . . . . 1009, 11B-207
- Accessible routes* . . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B-206, Chapter 11B Division 4, 11B-402
  - Airport control towers . . . . . 412.2.6
  - Amusement rides . . . . . 11B-234, 11B-1002
  - Application . . . . . 1.9.1, Chapter 11B Division 1
- Assembly . . . . . 1009.1
- Assembly areas . . . . . 11B-221, 11B-802
- Assistive listening systems . . . . . 11B-219, 11B-706
- Automatic teller machines, fare machines  
and point-of-sale machines . . . . . 11B-220, 11B-707
- Bathroom . . . . . 202, 1127A, 1134A
- Benches . . . . . 11B-903
- Bus stops . . . . . 11B-209
- Controls . . . . . Chapter 11A  
*Changes in level* . . . . . 1111A, 1121A, 1131A, 11B-303
- Clear floor or ground space . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B-305
- Controls . . . . . Chapter 11A  
Covered multifamily dwellings . . . . 202, Chapter 11A
- Curb ramps, blended transitions  
and islands . . . . . 202, 1112A, 11B-406
- Destination-oriented elevators . . . . . 11B-206.6, 11B-411
- Detectable warnings . . . . . 202, 1112A.9, 1116A.5  
11B-247, 11B-705
- Detention facilities and  
correctional facilities . . . . . 11B-232, 11B-807
- Dimensions for adults and children . . . . . 11B-102
- Dining surfaces  
and work surfaces . . . . . 11B-226, 11B-902
- Doors, doorways and gates . . . . . 1126A, 1132A,  
11B-404
- Dressing, fitting and locker rooms . . . . . 11B-222,  
11B-803
- Drinking fountains and bottle-filling stations . . . . . 1139A,  
11B-211, 11B-602, 11B-602.10
- Dwelling units . . . . . Chapter 11A

### Egress

(see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS) . . . . . 1009

- Electric vehicle charging stations* . . . . . 11B-228, 11B-812
- Elevators . . . . . 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.7.3, 1124A,  
11B-206.6, 11B-407, 3001.2, 3001.4
- Emergency housing* . . . . . Appendix P
- Entrances . . . . . 1105, Chapter 11A, 11B-206.4
- Equivalent facilitation* . . . . . 202, Chapter 11A
- Exercise machines and equipment* . . . . . 11B-236,  
11B-1004
- Existing buildings . . . . . 1102A, 11B-202, 1009.1
- Fire alarm systems* . . . . . 11B-215, 11B-702
- Fishing piers and platforms* . . . . . 11B-237, 11B-1005
- Floor or ground surfaces* . . . . . 11B-302
- General exceptions* . . . . . 11B-203
- Golf facilities . . . . . 11B-238, 11B-1006
- Grab bar . . . . . 202, 1127A, 1134A
- Ground floor . . . . . 202, Chapter 11A
- Guard (or guardrail)* . . . . . 1114A, 1116A,  
1122A, 1125A
- Handrails . . . . . 1114A, 1115A,  
1122A, 1123A, 11B-505
- Hazard . . . . . 1116A, 1125A
- International symbol of accessibility* . . . . . 202,  
Chapter 11A, 11B-703.7.2.1
- Judicial facilities . . . . . 11B-231, 11B-808
- Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars . . . . . 1133A
- Knee and toe clearance . . . . . 11B-306
- Knee and toe space . . . . . 1127A, 1133A,  
1134A, 1138A
- Laundry . . . . . 1127A, 1135A
- Lifts . . . . . 1009.5
- Limited-use/limited-application elevators* . . . . . 11B-206.6, 11B-408
- Live/work unit . . . . . 508.5.9
- Mail boxes . . . . . 11B-228
- Maintenance of accessible features . . . . . 11B-108
- Mechanical access parking garages . . . . . 11B-209.5
- Medical care and long term care facilities . . . . . 11B-223,  
11B-805
- Miniature golf facilities . . . . . 11B-239, 11B-1007
- Multistory dwelling unit . . . . . 202, 1102A
- Operable parts . . . . . 11B-205, 11B-309
- Outdoor developed areas . . . . . 11B-246
- Parking spaces . . . . . 11B-208, 11B-502
- Passenger loading zones and bus stops* . . . . . 11B-209, 11B-503



Finishing . . . . .	412.3.5
Fire suppression . . . . .	412.2.4, 412.3.6, 412.5.5
Separation . . . . .	412.3.6.2, 412.4.1
<b>AIR-INFLATED OR AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURES . . . . .</b>	<b>202,</b> <b>2702.2.14, 3102</b>
<b>AISLE . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 1018, 1030.9, 1030.14</b>
Aisle accessways . . . . .	202, 1018.4, 1030.13
Assembly seating . . . . .	1018.2, 1030.6
Bleachers . . . . .	1030.1.1
Business . . . . .	1018.3
Construction . . . . .	1030.12
Converging . . . . .	1030.9.3
Egress . . . . .	1018, 1030
Folding and telescopic seating . . . . .	1030.1.1
Grandstands . . . . .	1030.1.1
Mercantile . . . . .	1018.3, 1018.4
Obstructions . . . . .	1030.9.6.1
Tables . . . . .	1030.13.1
Temporary structures . . . . .	3103.4
Transitions . . . . .	1030.10
Width . . . . .	1030.9.1
<b>ALARM SYSTEMS, EMERGENCY . . . . .</b>	<b>908</b>
<b>ALARMS, FIRE (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)</b>	
<b>ALARMS, VISIBLE . . . . .</b>	<b>907.5.2.3</b>
Common areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1
Employee work areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1
Group I-1 . . . . .	907.5.2.3.2
Group R-1 . . . . .	907.5.2.3.2
Group R-2 . . . . .	907.5.2.3.3
Public areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1
<b>ALARMS, VOICE . . . . .</b>	<b>907.5.2.2</b>
Amusement areas, special . . . . .	411.4, 907.2.13.3
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.7.4, 907.2.21
Emergency power . . . . .	2702.2
High-rise buildings . . . . .	403.4.4, 907.2.14
Occupant evacuation elevators . . . . .	3008.9
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.8.2, 907.2.20
<b>ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
Load combinations . . . . .	1605, 1605.2
Masonry design . . . . .	2107
Wood design . . . . .	2102.1, 2306
<b>ALTERATIONS . . . . .</b>	<b>101.4.7, 202, D103.1</b>
Means of egress . . . . .	3302.1, 3310.2
<b>ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 1011.14</b>
Construction . . . . .	1011.14.2
Equipment platform . . . . .	505.3
Heliports . . . . .	412.7.3
Technical production areas . . . . .	410.5.3.4
<b>ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS . . . . .</b>	<b>104.11, Appendix O</b>
<b>ALUMINUM . . . . .</b>	<b>Chapter 20, 1403.5.1, 1604.3.5</b>
<b>AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 304.1, 422, Table 509.1, 709.5, Table 1020.3</b>
Emergency and standby power . . . . .	2702.2
Fire protection and detection . . . . .	903.2.2, 903.3.2, 907.2.2.1
Incapable of self-preservation . . . . .	202
Medical gas systems . . . . .	427
Smoke compartment . . . . .	422.2, 422.3, 909.5.3, 1026.4.1
<b>AMUSEMENT AREA, SPECIAL . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 411</b>
Alarm and detection . . . . .	411.2, 411.4, 907.2.13
Classification . . . . .	411.1
Emergency voice/alarm communications system . . . . .	411.4, 907.2.13.3
Exit marking . . . . .	411.6, 411.6.1
Interior finish . . . . .	411.7
Puzzle room . . . . .	411.5
Sprinklers protection . . . . .	411.2
<b>AMUSEMENT PARK STRUCTURES . . . . .</b>	<b>303</b>
Accessibility . . . . .	1111.4.8
<b>ANCHOR BUILDING (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDING) . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 402</b>
Construction type . . . . .	402.4.1.2, 507.13
Means of egress . . . . .	402.8.4.1
Occupant load . . . . .	402.8.2.3
Separation . . . . .	402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	402.5
<b>ANCHORAGE . . . . .</b>	<b>1604.8</b>
Braced wall line sills . . . . .	2308.3.1.1, 2308.3.1.2, 2308.6.7, 2308.6.7.3
Concrete . . . . .	1901.3
Conventional light-frame construction . . . . .	2308.3.1, 2308.4.10
Decks . . . . .	1604.8.3
Seismic anchorage for masonry chimneys . . . .	2113.4
Seismic anchorage for masonry fireplaces . . . .	2111.5
Walls . . . . .	1604.8.2
Wood sill plates . . . . .	2308.3.1
<b>APARTMENT HOUSES . . . . .</b>	<b>310.3</b>
<b>APPEALS . . . . .</b>	<b>113, 1.8.8, Appendix B, G106</b>
<b>APPROVED (definition) . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>APPROVED AGENCY . . . . .</b>	<b>104.4, 202, 1703.1</b>
<b>APPROVED LISTING AGENCY (definition) . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>APPROVED TESTING AGENCY (definition) . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>

**INDEX**

<b>ARCHITECT (see definitions for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL and REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE)</b>	
→ <b>ARCHITECTURAL TRIM</b> . . . . .	603.1, 1408.3
<b>AREA, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	Chapter 5, 202, 506, Table 506.2
Accessory uses . . . . .	508.2.3
Aircraft hangars, residential . . . . .	412.4.5
Allowable area determination . . . . .	506.2, 506.3
Basements . . . . .	506.1.3
Buildings on same lot . . . . .	503.1.2
Covered and open mall building . .	402.4.1, 402.4.1.1
Enclosed parking garage . . . . .	406.6.1, 510.3
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3.1
Frontage bonus . . . . .	506.3
Incidental uses . . . . .	509.3
Limitations . . . . .	503, 506
Membrane structures . . . . .	3102.4
Mezzanines . . . . .	505.2.1
Mixed construction types . . . . .	3102.6
Mixed occupancy . . . . .	508.2.3, 508.3.2, 508.4.2
Modifications . . . . .	506, 510
Occupied roof . . . . .	503.1.4
Open mall building . . . . .	402.4.1
Open parking garage . . . . .	406.5.4, 406.5.4.1, 406.5.5, 510.2, 510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Private garages and carports . . . . .	406.3.1
Special provisions . . . . .	510
Unlimited area . . . . .	503.1.1, 503.1.3, 506.1.1, 506.2, 507
<b>AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE, EXTERIOR (see EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)</b>	
<b>AREA OF REFUGE (see also ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS)</b> . . . . .	202
Requirements . . . . .	709.4.2, 1009.6
Signage . . . . .	1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11, 1013.4, 1143A, 11B-216, 11B-703
Two-way communication . . . . .	1009.6.5, 1009.8
Where required . . . . .	1009.2, 1009.3.3, 1009.4.2
<b>ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A)</b> . . . . .	303, 1030
→ Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.1
Area . . . . .	503, 506, 507, 508
Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)	
Folding and telescopic seating (see BLEACHERS)	
General . . . . .	303.1
Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)	
Group-specific provisions	
A-1 . . . . .	303.2
A-2 . . . . .	303.3
A-3 . . . . .	303.4
A-4 . . . . .	303.5
A-5 . . . . .	303.6
Motion picture theater . . . . .	409, 507.12
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.2, 1030.9, 1030.10, 1030.11
Assembly spaces . . . . .	1030
Exit signs . . . . .	1013.1
Guards . . . . .	1015.2, 1030.17
Main exit . . . . .	1030.3
Open air . . . . .	1005.3.1, 1005.3.2, 1006.3, 1009.6.4, 1019.3, 1027, 1030.6.2
Panic hardware . . . . .	1010.2.9, 1010.4.1
Smoke-protected . . . . .	1005.3.1, 1005.3.2, 1006.3, 1009.6.4, 1019.3, 1027, 1030.6.2
Travel distance . . . . .	1017.2, 1006.3, 1030.7, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	508.2
Education . . . . .	303.1.3
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Mall buildings . . . . .	402
Other occupancies . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3
Parking below/above . . . . .	510.7, 510.9
Religious facilities . . . . .	303.1.4
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Motion picture theaters . . . . .	409, 507.12
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3, 303.1.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5
Seating, fixed (see SEATING, FIXED)	
Seating, open-air assembly seating . . . . .	1030.6.3
Seating, smoke-protected . . . . .	1030.6.2
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	410, 504.3, 506.2, 507.4 507.6, 507.7, 507.12, 903.2.1
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410, 905.3.4
Standpipes . . . . .	905.3.2, 905.3.4, 905.5.1
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.4, 507.4.1, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12
<b>ASSISTED LIVING (see GROUP I-1 and GROUP R-4)</b> . . . . .	308.2, 310.5, 420
<b>ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS</b> . . . . .	1614



**INDEX**

<b>BOLTS</b> . . . . .	2204.2
Anchor rods . . . . .	1901.3, 1905, 2204.3
<b>BONDING, MASONRY</b> . . . . .	1805.2.2, 2103.2.2, 2113.3.1, 2510.7
<b>BOTTLE-FILLING STATIONS</b> . . . . .	202
<b>BRACED WALL LINE</b> . . . . .	202
Bracing . . . . .	2308.6
Seismic requirements . . . . .	2308.6.6.2, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10.2
Sill anchorage . . . . .	2308.6.7.3
Spacing . . . . .	2308.6.1
Support . . . . .	2308.6.8
<b>BRACED WALL PANEL</b> . . . . .	202
Alternative bracing . . . . .	2308.6.5.1, 2308.6.5.2
Connections . . . . .	2308.6.7
Length . . . . .	2308.6.4
Location . . . . .	2308.6.2
Method . . . . .	2308.6.3
<b>BRICK (see MASONRY)</b>	
<b>BUILDING</b>	
Area (see AREA, BUILDING) . . . . .	202, 502.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508, 510
Demolition . . . . .	3303
Existing . . . . .	101.4.7
Fire walls . . . . .	706.1
Height (see HEIGHT, BUILDING) . . . . .	502.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Occupancy classification . . . . .	Chapter 3
Party walls . . . . .	706.1.1
Replicable . . . . .	Appendix N
<b>BUILDING DEPARTMENT</b> . . . . .	103
<b>BUILDING OFFICIAL</b> . . . . .	202
Duties and powers . . . . .	103, 104
Qualifications . . . . .	Appendix A
Records . . . . .	104.7
Termination . . . . .	A101.4
<b>BUILT-UP ROOFS</b> . . . . .	202, 1507.10
<b>BUSINESS OCCUPANCY (GROUP B)</b> . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 304
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.2
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	304, 422
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Higher education laboratories . . . . .	428, 2702.2
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.3
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019

Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3, 1017.2, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.2, 508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	303.1.2, 508.2
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422
Assembly . . . . .	303.1.2
Educational . . . . .	303.1, 304.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Mall buildings . . . . .	402
Parking below/above . . . . .	510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.2
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.4, 507.5, 507.13

**C**

<b>CABLES, STEEL STRUCTURAL</b> . . . . .	2208
<b>CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE (see FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED)</b>	
<b>CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION</b> . . . . .	Chapter 1, Division I
<b>CANOPIES</b> . . . . .	202, 706.5.2, 3105
Design and construction . . . . .	3105.2
Drainage, water . . . . .	3201.4
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.3.1
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.8
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 1607.14.2.1
Materials . . . . .	3105.3
Motor vehicle related . . . . .	406.2.2, 406.7.2
Permanent . . . . .	3105, D102.2.8
Plastic . . . . .	2606.10
<b>CAPILLARY BREAK</b> . . . . .	1805.4.1, 1907.1.1
<b>CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS AND DETECTION</b> . . . . .	202, 915
<b>CARE FACILITIES (see HEALTH CARE)</b>	
<b>CARE PROVIDER STATIONS</b> . . . . .	407.2.2
<b>CARE SUITES</b> . . . . .	202, 407.4.4
<b>CARPET</b> . . . . .	105.2
Floor covering . . . . .	804.2, 804.3
Textile ceiling finish . . . . .	803.6
Textile wall coverings . . . . .	803.5
<b>CATWALKS (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</b>	
Construction . . . . .	410.2.2
Live Load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress . . . . .	410.5, 1011.16
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	410.6
<b>CEILING</b>	
Acoustical . . . . .	808

Height . . . . .	406.2.2, 409.2, 909.20.4.3, 1003.2, 1011.3, 1012.5.2, 1204.2.2, 1208.2
Interior finish . . . . .	803
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	713.4, 716.1.2.3, 716.3.4
Suspended acoustical . . . . .	808.1.1, 2506.2.1
<b>CELLULOSE NITRATE FILM</b> . . . . .	409.1, 903.2.5.3
<b>CERAMIC TILE</b>	
Mortar . . . . .	2103.2.3
<b>CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY</b> . . . . .	106.2, 111
<b>CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY</b> . . . . .	101.4.7, 111.1, 116.5, 202, 3113.1.1, D103.2
<b>CHILD CARE</b> . . . . .	305.2, 310.3, 308.5, 452
<b>CHIMNEYS</b> . . . . .	202
Factory-built . . . . .	718.2.5
Flashing . . . . .	1503.5, 1507.7.7
Masonry . . . . .	2111, 2112, 2113
Protection from adjacent construction . . . . .	3307.1
<b>CHURCHES</b> (see <b>RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF</b> )	
<b>CLAY ROOF TILE</b> . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Testing . . . . .	1504.3
<b>CLIMATE ZONE</b> . . . . .	1202.3.1, Table 1202.3.1, 1404.3.3
<b>CLINIC</b>	
Hospital [see <b>INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-2)</b> ] . . . . .	308.2
Outpatient (see <b>AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES</b> ) . . . . .	202, 304.1, 422
<b>CLINICS [OSHPD 3]</b> . . . . .	1226
Application . . . . .	1226.2
Definitions . . . . .	1226.3
Scope . . . . .	1226.1
<b>CLINICS—GENERAL CONSTRUCTION</b> . . . . .	1226.4
Ceiling heights . . . . .	1226.4.6
Compactors . . . . .	1226.4.10
Corridors . . . . .	1226.4.3
Doors and door openings . . . . .	1226.4.4
Elevators . . . . .	1226.4.8
Examination and treatment areas . . . . .	1226.4.1
General support services and facilities . . . . .	1226.4.15
Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage . . . . .	1226.4.9
Housekeeping room . . . . .	1226.4.11
Interior finishes . . . . .	1226.4.7
Laundry and trash chutes . . . . .	1226.4.12
Miscellaneous requirements . . . . .	1226.4.2
Public and administrative areas . . . . .	1226.4.16
Support areas for examination and treatment rooms . . . . .	1226.4.13
Support areas for patients . . . . .	1226.4.14
Support areas for staff . . . . .	1226.4.17
Windows . . . . .	1226.4.5
<b>CLINICS—OUTPATIENT CLINICAL SERVICES OF A HOSPITAL</b>	
Cancer treatment/infusion therapy . . . . .	1226.5.13
Gastrointestinal endoscopy . . . . .	1226.5.11
General support areas for outpatient clinical services . . . . .	1226.5
Hyperbaric therapy service space . . . . .	1226.5.14
Nuclear medicine . . . . .	1226.5.12
Radiological/imaging service space . . . . .	1226.5.5
<b>CLINICS—PRIMARY CARE AND SPECIALTY CLINICS</b>	
Alternative birthing clinics . . . . .	1226.11
Chronic dialysis clinics . . . . .	1226.9
Primary care clinics . . . . .	1226.6
Rehabilitation clinics . . . . .	1226.10
Surgical clinics . . . . .	1226.8
Psychology clinics . . . . .	1226.12
<b>COAL POCKETS</b> . . . . .	426.1.6
<b>CODES</b> . . . . .	Chapter 35, 101.2, 101.4, 102.2, 102.4, 102.6
<b>COLD-FORMED STEEL</b> . . . . .	202, 2210
Light-frame construction . . . . .	2211
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.2.2, 1705.2.4, 1705.12.2, 1705.13.3
<b>COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS</b> . . . . .	202, 307.4, 414.5.1, 426.1
<b>COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS</b> . . . . .	202, 307.1, 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2, 415.10.1, 418.6
<b>COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL</b>	
Concealed spaces . . . . .	413.2, 718.5
Exterior side of exterior wall . . . . .	1405
High-pile stock or rack storage . . . . .	413.1, 910.2.2
Type I and Type II . . . . .	603, 805
<b>COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS</b> . . . . .	705.2, 705.2.3.1
<b>COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE</b> . . . . .	413, 910.2.2
<b>COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL</b> . . . . .	1006.2.1
<b>COMPARTMENTATION</b>	
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.2, 422.3
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.5, 407.6
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.6
Laboratory suites . . . . .	428.3
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.4, 405.5.2
<b>COMPRESSED GAS</b> . . . . .	307.2, 415.11.8
<b>CONCEALED SPACES</b> . . . . .	413.2, 718
<b>CONCRETE</b> . . . . .	Chapter 19, Chapter 19A
ACI . . . . .	1901.2, 1903.1, 1905
Anchorage . . . . .	1901.3
Calculated fire resistance . . . . .	722.2
Cellular . . . . .	202, 721.2
Construction documents . . . . .	1901.5

**INDEX**

Durability . . . . .	1904
Footings . . . . .	1809
Foundation walls . . . . .	1807.1.5, 1808.8
Materials . . . . .	1705.3.2, 1903
Plain, structural . . . . .	1906
Reinforced gypsum concrete . . . . .	2514
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
Roof tile . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Shotcrete . . . . .	1908
Slab, minimum . . . . .	1907
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.3, Table 1705.3
Specifications . . . . .	1903
Strength testing . . . . .	1705.3.2
Wood support . . . . .	2304.13
<b>CONCRETE MASONRY</b>	
Calculated fire resistance . . . . .	722.3
Construction . . . . .	2104
Design . . . . .	2101.2, 2108, 2109
Materials . . . . .	2103.1
Surface bonding . . . . .	2103.2.2, 2109.2
Wood support . . . . .	2304.13
<b>CONCRETE ROOF TILE</b> . . . . .	
Wind resistance . . . . .	1504.3, 1609.5.3
<b>CONDOMINIUM (see APARTMENT HOUSES)</b>	
<b>CONDUIT,</b> <b>PENETRATION PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	
713.3, 1023.5	
<b>CONFLICTS IN CODE</b> . . . . .	
102, 104.10.1	
<b>CONGREGATE</b>	
<b>LIVING FACILITIES</b> . . . . .	202, 310.2, 310.3, 310.4
<b>CONSTRUCTION (see SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION)</b>	
<b>CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS</b> . . . . .	
107, 202, 1603	
1616.1	
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.1.1
Balconies . . . . .	107.2.5
Concrete construction . . . . .	1901.5
Design load-bearing capacity . . . . .	1803.6
Exterior walls . . . . .	107.2.4
Fire protection . . . . .	107.2.2
Fire-resistant joint systems . . . . .	715
Flood . . . . .	107.2.6.1, 1603.1.7
Floor live load . . . . .	1603.1.1
Geotechnical . . . . .	1603.1.6
Means of egress . . . . .	107.2.3
Penetrations . . . . .	714
Permit application . . . . .	105.1
Relocation . . . . .	107.2.8
Retention . . . . .	107.5
Review . . . . .	107.3
Roof assemblies . . . . .	1503
Roof live load . . . . .	1603.1.2

Roof rain load data . . . . .	1603.1.9
Roof snow load . . . . .	1603.1.3
Seismic . . . . .	1603.1.5, 1705.14.2, 1705.14.3
Site plan . . . . .	107.2.6
Special loads . . . . .	1603.1.8
Temporary structures . . . . .	3103.2
Wind data . . . . .	1603.1.4

**CONSTRUCTION JOINTS**

Shotcrete . . . . .	1908
<b>CONSTRUCTION TYPES</b> . . . . .	
Aircraft-related occupancies . . . . .	Chapter 6, 202
Classification . . . . .	412.2.1, Table 412.3.6, 412.5.2

Combustible material in	
Type I and Type II construction . . . . .	603, 805
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.4.1
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.3
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601, Table 705.5
High-rise . . . . .	403.2
Type I . . . . .	Table 601, 602.2, 603
Type II . . . . .	Table 601, 602.2, 603
Type III . . . . .	Table 601, 602.3
Type IV . . . . .	Table 601, 602.4
Type V . . . . .	Table 601, 602.5
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.2

<b>CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES</b> . . . . .	
901.5, 1704.4	

<b>CONTROL AREA</b> . . . . .	
414.2, 707.3.8	
Construction . . . . .	414.2.1
Fire-resistance rating . . . . .	414.2.4
Maximum allowed quantities . . . . .	414.2.2
Number . . . . .	414.2.3

<b>CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION</b> . . . . .	
202, 2302.1, 2308	
Additional seismic requirements . . . . .	2308
Braced wall lines . . . . .	2308.6
Connections and fasteners . . . . .	2308.1.2
Design of elements . . . . .	2308.8
Floor joists . . . . .	2308.4.2
Foundation plates or sills . . . . .	2308.3
Girders . . . . .	2308.4.1
Limitations . . . . .	2308.2
Roof and ceiling framing . . . . .	2308.7
Wall framing . . . . .	2308.5

<b>CONVEYING SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	
3004	

**CORNICES**

Definition . . . . .	202
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.2.6
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Masonry . . . . .	2104.1.2
Projection . . . . .	705.2, 705.2.3.1

Public right-of-way encroachments .....	3202.3.2, 3202.3.3
<b>CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS [OSHPD 4]</b> .....	
Application .....	1227.2
Ceiling heights .....	1227.8
Corridors .....	1227.5
Definitions .....	1227.3
Doors and door openings .....	1227.6
Elevators .....	1227.10
Garbage-soiled waste and trash storage .....	1227.11
General construction .....	1227.4
Interior finishes .....	1227.9
Scope .....	1227.1
Windows and screens .....	1227.7
Interior finishes .....	1227.9
<b>CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS—BASIC SERVICES</b> .....	
Administration space .....	1227.16
Central sterile supply .....	1227.17
Dietetic service space .....	1227.14
Employee dressing rooms and lockers .....	1227.19
Housekeeping room .....	1227.20
Nursing service space .....	1227.12
Offices .....	1227.15
Pharmaceutical service space .....	1227.13
Storage .....	1227.18
<b>CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS—OPTIONAL SERVICES</b> .....	
24-hour mental health care services .....	1227.23
Outpatient services .....	1227.22
Service spaces .....	1227.21
<b>CORRIDOR (see CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS, FIRE PARTITIONS and SERVICE CORRIDORS)</b> .....	
Air movement .....	1020.5
Continuity .....	1020.6
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402.8.1, 402.8.6
Dead end .....	1020.4
Elevation change .....	1003.5
Encroachment .....	1020.3
Group H-5 .....	415.11.2
Group I-1 .....	420.7, 420.8
Group I-2 .....	407.2, 407.3, 407.4.1, 407.4.3
Headroom .....	1003.2, 1003.3
HPM service .....	903.2.5.2
Live load .....	Table 1607.1
Walls .....	708.1, 1020.1
Width/capacity .....	1003.3.3, 1003.6, 1005.3.2, 1005.7, 1020.3, 1020.4
<b>CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS</b> .....	
Construction, fire protection .....	708.1, Table 1020.2, 1020.7
Doors .....	716.2.2.1
Elevator hoistway opening .....	3006.2.1
Glazing .....	716.2.5.3
Group I-1 .....	420.7, 420.8
Group I-2 .....	407.3
Interior finish .....	Table 803.13, 804.4
Opening protection .....	716
Ventilation .....	1020.6, 1020.6.1
<b>CORROSIVES</b> .....	
202, 307.2, 307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3, 415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1	
<b>COURTS (see YARDS OR COURTS)</b> .....	
<b>COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS</b> .....	
Alarms and detection .....	402.7.4, 907.2.21, 2702.2
Anchor buildings .....	402.4.1.2, 402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3, 402.5, 402.8.2.3, 402.8.4.1
Construction type .....	402.4
Fire department .....	402.3, 402.7.5
Interior finish .....	402.6.1
Kiosk .....	402.6.2
Means of egress .....	402.8
Occupant load .....	402.8.2
Open mall construction .....	402.4.3
Open space .....	402.2
Parking structures .....	402.4.1.3, 402.4.2.3
Perimeter line .....	402.1.1
Play structures .....	402.6.3, 424
Separation .....	402.4.2
Signs .....	402.6.4
Smoke control .....	402.7.2
Sprinkler protection .....	402.5
Standby power .....	402.7.3
Standpipe system .....	402.7.1, 905.3.3
Travel distance .....	402.8.5, 1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1017.2, 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3, 2902.5
<b>COVERED WALKWAY (see PEDESTRIAN WALKWAY)</b> .....	
<b>CRAWL SPACE</b> .....	
Access .....	1209.1
Drainage .....	1805.1.2
Unusable space fire protection .....	711.2.6
Ventilation .....	1202.4
<b>CRIPPLE WALL</b> .....	
202, 2308.5.6, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8.3	

**INDEX**

<b>CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER</b> . . . . .	602.4, 602.4.4.2, 2303.1.4
Floors. . . . .	2304.11.3.1
Roofs . . . . .	2304.11.4.1
<b>CRYOGENIC</b> . . . . .	202, Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5, Table 414.5.1, Table 415.11.1.1.1
 <b>D</b>	
<b>DAMPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING</b> . . .	1805
Required . . . . .	1805.2, 1805.3
Subsoil drainage system . . . . .	1805.4
<b>DAY CARE</b> . . . . .	305.2, 308.5, 310.4.1
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Adult care. . . . .	308.5
Child care. . . . .	308.5, 310.4.1
Egress . . . . .	308.5, Table 1004.5, 1006.2.2.4
<b>DEAD END</b> . . . . .	415.11.3.3, 1020.5, 1021.1
<b>DEAD LOAD</b> . . . . .	202, 1606
Foundation design load . . . . .	1808.3
<b>DECK</b>	
Anchorage . . . . .	1604.8.3
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1
<b>DEFLECTIONS</b> . . . . .	1604.3.1
Framing supporting glass . . . . .	2403.3
Preconstruction load tests . . . . .	1709.3.1
Wood diaphragms . . . . .	2305
Wood shear walls . . . . .	2305
<b>DEMOLITION</b> . . . . .	3303
<b>DESIGN STRENGTH</b> . . . . .	202
Conformance to standards . . . . .	1706.1
New materials . . . . .	1706.2
<b>DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM</b> . . . . .	202, 1704.3.2, 1704.4, 1704.5
Seismic certification . . . . .	1705.14.3
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.13.4
<b>DETACHED SINGLE-FAMILY DWELLING</b> . . . . .	202
<b>DIAPHRAGMS</b> . . . . .	202
Analysis . . . . .	1604.4
Ceilings . . . . .	2508.6
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.5.1, 1705.12.1, 1705.13.2
Wood . . . . .	2305, 2306.2
<b>DOORS</b> . . . . .	1010
Atrium enclosures . . . . .	404.6
Configuration . . . . .	1007
Delayed egress . . . . .	1010.2.13
Dwelling unit separations . . . . .	406.3.2, 412.4.1
Education . . . . .	1010.2.8
Emergency escape . . . . .	1031.2
Fabrication (HPM) areas . . . . .	415.11.1.2

<b>Fire</b>	
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) . . . . .	716.2, 1023.4
<b>Glazing</b> . . . . .	715.7, 716.2.5, 716.3, 1404.13
<b>Hardware</b> (see LOCKS AND LATCHES) . . . . .	1005.7.1, 1010.2, 1010.2.9
<b>Hazardous storage</b> . . . . .	415.11.6.7
<b>Horizontal sliding</b> . . . . .	1010.3.3
<b>I-1 occupancies</b> . . . . .	1010.2.14
<b>I-2 occupancies</b> . . . . .	407.3.1, 1010.2.14
<b>I-3 occupancies</b> . . . . .	408.3, 408.4, 408.8.4, 1010.2.15
<b>Landings</b> . . . . .	1010.1.4, 1010.1.5
<b>Locks for toilet facilities</b> . . . . .	2902.4
<b>Operation</b> . . . . .	1010.1.3, 1010.2, 1010.2.9
<b>Panic and fire exit hardware</b> . . . . .	1010.2.9, 1010.4.1
<b>Power-operated</b> . . . . .	1010.3.2
<b>Revolving</b> . . . . .	1010.3.1
<b>Security</b> . . . . .	402.8.8, 1010.2.10, 1010.3.4
<b>Sensor release</b> . . . . .	1010.2.12
<b>Side swinging</b> . . . . .	1010.1.2
<b>Smoke</b> . . . . .	710.5
<b>Stairways</b> . . . . .	1010.2.7
<b>Stairways, high-rise</b> . . . . .	403.5.3
<b>Structural testing, exterior</b> . . . . .	1709.5
<b>Thresholds</b> . . . . .	1003.5, 1010.1.4, 1010.1.6
<b>Vestibule</b> . . . . .	1010.1.7
<b>Width</b> . . . . .	1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1
<b>DORMITORIES</b> . . . . .	202, 310.3, 310.4, 420.11.1
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Cooking . . . . .	420.11, 904.14
Fire alarms and smoke alarms . . . . .	420.5
Separations . . . . .	420.2, 420.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	420.4
<b>DRAFTSTOPPING</b> . . . . .	202
Attics . . . . .	718.4
Floor-ceiling assemblies . . . . .	718.3
<b>DRINKING FOUNTAINS</b> . . . . .	1110.5, 2902.5, 2902.6
Accessibility . . . . .	1110.5.1, 1110.5.2, 1110.6, 1112.3
<b>DRY CLEANING PLANTS</b> . . . . .	415.9.3
<b>DRYING ROOMS</b> . . . . .	417
<b>DUMBWAITERS</b> . . . . .	713.14
<b>DWELLING UNITS</b> . . . . .	202, 310.3, 310.4
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Alarms and detection . . . . .	420.5, 907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.12
Area . . . . .	1208.3, 1208.4
Efficiency dwelling unit . . . . .	202, 1208.4
Group R . . . . .	310
Live/work units (see LIVE/WORK UNITS)	
Plumbing fixtures required . . . . .	Table 2902.1
Scoping . . . . .	101.2
Separation . . . . .	420.2, 420.3

Sound transmission . . . . .	1206	Conveying systems . . . . .	3004
Sprinkler protection. . . . .	420.4, 903.2.8	Emergency communication. . . . .	3001.2
<b>E</b>			
<b>EARTHQUAKE LOADS (see SEISMIC)</b> . . . . .	1613	Emergency operations . . . . .	3002.3, 3002.5, 3003, 3007.1, 3008.1.4
<b>EARTHQUAKE RECORDING EQUIPMENT</b> . . . . .	Appendix L	Fire service access . . . . .	403.6.1, 3007
<b>EAVES (see COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS AND CORNICES)</b>		Glass. . . . .	2409, 3002.8
<b>EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E)</b> . . . . .	305	High-rise . . . . .	403.2.2, 403.4.8, 403.6
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	Hoistway enclosures. . . . .	403.2.2, 713, 1023.4, 1024.3, 3002, 3007.5, 3008.5
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.3	Hoistway lighting . . . . .	3007.5.2
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508	Hoistway pressurization . . . . .	909.21
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508	Hoistway rated corridor opening . . . . .	3006.2.1
Incidental uses . . . . .	509	Keys . . . . .	3003.3
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804	Lobby . . . . .	1009.4, 1009.8, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1	Machine rooms . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 3005
Locking . . . . .	1010.2.8	Means of egress . . . . .	403.6, 1003.7, 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3008
Means of egress . . . . .		Number of elevator cars in hoistway . . . . .	3002.2
Aisles . . . . .	1018.2, 1018.5	Occupant evacuation elevators . . . . .	403.6.2, 3008
Corridors . . . . .	1020.2, 1020.3	Personnel and material hoists . . . . .	3004.4
Panic hardware . . . . .	1010.2.9	Pit access door . . . . .	3002.11
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	Roof access . . . . .	1011.12.2
Travel distance . . . . .	1017.2, 1006.3.3, 1006.2.1	Shaft enclosure . . . . .	712, 3006
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4	Signs . . . . .	914, 1009.10, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
Accessory . . . . .	303.1.3, 508.2	Stairway to elevator equipment . . . . .	1011.12.1
Assembly . . . . .	303.1.3	Standards . . . . .	3001.3
Child care . . . . .	305.2, 308.4, 310.4.1	Standby power . . . . .	2702.2, 3007.8, 3008.8
Education for students . . . . .		System monitoring . . . . .	3007.7, 3008.7
above the 12th grade . . . . .	304, 307.1, 427	Underground . . . . .	405.4.3
Gyms (see GYMNASIUMS) . . . . .	303.1.3	<b>EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS</b>	
Libraries (see LIBRARIES) . . . . .	303.4	Accessible means of egress . . . . .	1009.8
Religious facilities . . . . .	305.2	Alarms (see FIRE ALARMS) . . . . .	
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410	Elevator . . . . .	3001.2
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902	Elevators, occupant evacuation . . . . .	3008.6.6
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5	Fire command center . . . . .	403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
Sprinkler protection. . . . .	903.2.3	Radio coverage . . . . .	403.4.5, 916
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.11	<b>EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS</b> . . . . .	
<b>EFFICIENCY DWELLING UNIT</b> . . . . .	1208.4	202, 1031	
<b>EGRESS (see MEANS OF EGRESS)</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 10</i>	Required . . . . .	Table 1006.3.4(1), Table 1006.3.4(2), 1031.2
<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING</b> . . . . .	420.14	Window wells . . . . .	1031.5, 1031.6
<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION</b> . . . . .	202, 406.2.7, 1107	<b>EMERGENCY HOUSING</b> . . . . .	
<b>ELECTRICAL</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 27</i> , 105.2, 112,	Appendix P	
Table 509.1, Appendix K			
<b>ELEVATOR</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 30</i>	<b>EMERGENCY LIGHTING</b> . . . . .	
Accessibility . . . . .	1009.2.1, 1009.4,	1008.3, 1204.5	
1009.8, <i>Chapter 11A</i> , 11B, 3001.4		<b>EMERGENCY POWER</b> . . . . .	
Car size . . . . .	403.6.1, 3001.4, 3002.4	2702	
Construction . . . . .	713.14, 1607.11.1	Exit signs . . . . .	1013.6.3, 2702.2

**INDEX**

Semiconductor fabrication . . . . .	415.11.11, 2702.2
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.8, 2702.2
<b>EMERGENCY RESPONDERS</b>	
Additional exit stairway . . . . .	403.5.2
Elevators . . . . .	403.6, 1009.2.1, 3002.4, 3003, 3007, 3008
Fire command center. . . . .	403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
Mall access . . . . .	402.7.5
Radio coverage . . . . .	403.4.5, 918
Roof access. . . . .	1011.12
Safety features. . . . .	914
<b>EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY</b>	
Adobe construction . . . . .	2109
Dry-stack masonry. . . . .	2114
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.4
<b>EMPLOYEE</b>	
Accessibility for work areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1, <i>Chapter 11B</i>
Deputies to building official . . . . .	103.3
Liability. . . . .	104.8
Qualifications . . . . .	A101
Termination of employment. . . . .	A101.4
Toilet facilities . . . . .	2902.3
<b>ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 32</i>
<b>END-JOINTED LUMBER</b> . . . . .	2303.1.1.2
Relocated structures . . . . .	101.4.7, D103.3
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
<b>ENERGY EFFICIENCY</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 13</i> , 101.4.6, 110.3.9
<b>ENFORCING AGENCY</b> . . . . .	202
<i>Housing and Community Development</i> . . . . .	1.8
<b>ENGINEER (see definition for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL)</b>	
<b>EQUIPMENT</b>	
<i>Countertop Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Essential Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Fixed Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Interim Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Mobile Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Movable Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Other Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Temporary Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<b>EQUIPMENT PLATFORM</b> . . . . .	505.3
Area limitation . . . . .	505.2.1, 505.2.1.1, 505.3.1
Automatic sprinkler system . . . . .	505.3.2
<b>EQUIVALENT OPENING FACTOR</b> . . . . .	Figure 705.7
<b>ESCALATORS</b> . . . . .	3004
Floor opening protection . . . . .	712.1.3
Means of egress . . . . .	1003.7

<b>ESSENTIAL FACILITIES</b>	
(see RISK CATEGORY) . . . . .	202, Table 1604.5
<b>EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL</b> . . . . .	1804, 3304
<b>EXISTING BUILDING</b> . . . . .	101.4.7, 102.6, 202, 705.3, 912.2.2, 915.1
Additions . . . . .	D103.1
Alteration . . . . .	D103.1
Change of occupancy . . . . .	D103.2
Flood-resistant . . . . .	104.2.1, Appendix G
Historic. . . . .	101.4.7
Relocated structures . . . . .	D103.3
Repairs. . . . .	101.4.7, 116.5
Rodentproofing. . . . .	Appendix F
<b>EXIT (see MEANS OF EGRESS)</b> . . . . .	1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1027
Atrium. . . . .	404.10, 1023.2
Boiler room. . . . .	1006.2.1.1
Configuration . . . . .	1007
Construction. . . . .	713.2, 1019, 1023.2
Doorways. . . . .	1007
Dwellings . . . . .	1006.2.2.6, 1006.3.4.1
Electrical rooms. . . . .	1006.2.2.4
Enclosure. . . . .	707.3.2, 1023.2
Fire resistance . . . . .	707.3, 1019, 1023.2
Furnace rooms. . . . .	1006.2.2.1
Group H-5 . . . . .	415.11.6.6
High rise. . . . .	403.5, 403.6, 1025
Horizontal. . . . .	707.3.5, 1026
Incinerator rooms. . . . .	1006.2.2.1
Interior finish. . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Luminous . . . . .	403.5.5, 411.6.1, 1008.2.1, 1013.5, 1025
Mall buildings . . . . .	402.8
Number, minimum . . . . .	402.8.3, 403.5, 1006
Occupant load . . . . .	402.8.2, 1004.2, 1006.3.2
Passageway. . . . .	707.3.4, 1024
Ramps, exterior . . . . .	1027
Ramps, interior. . . . .	1023
Refrigerated room . . . . .	1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3
Refuge area . . . . .	407.5.3, 408.6.2, 420.6.1, 422.3.2
Stairways, exterior . . . . .	1027
Stairways, interior. . . . .	1023
Stories . . . . .	1004.2.3, 1006.3, 1017.3.1
Travel distance. . . . .	404.9, 407.5.2, 410.5.3.2, 412.6
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.7
<b>EXIT ACCESS</b>	
(see MEANS OF EGRESS) . . . . .	1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021
Aircraft related . . . . .	412.2.2, 412.4.2, 412.7.3
Aisles . . . . .	1018

Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.3	Where required . . . . .	1009.2
Atrium . . . . .	404.9, 404.10, 404.11,		
	1006.3.2, 1017.3.2, 1019.3		
Balconies . . . . .	1017.2.1, 1021		
Common path . . . . .	1006.2.1		
Corridors . . . . .	1020		
Doors . . . . .	1005.7, 1006.2, 1007, 1010, 1022.2		
Group H . . . . .	415.11.3.3		
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.4, 407.5.4		
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.2, 408.3, 408.6.3		
High rise . . . . .	403.5		
Higher education laboratories . . . . .	428.3.5		
Intervening space . . . . .	1016.2		
Malls . . . . .	402.8		
Motor-vehicle-related occupancies . . . . .	406.5.7		
Path of egress travel, common . . . . .	1006.2.1		
Play structures . . . . .	424.4		
Ramps . . . . .	1019		
Seating at tables . . . . .	1030.13.1		
Single exit . . . . .	1006.2, 1006.3.3		
Stages, Platforms and			
Technical Production Areas . . . . .	410.5		
Stairways, exit access . . . . .	1019		
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.7		
<b>EXIT DISCHARGE</b>			
( <b>see MEANS OF EGRESS</b> ) . . . . .	1023.3, 1023.12.1,		
	1024.4, 1028, 1029		
Atrium . . . . .	404.11		
Barriers . . . . .	1023.8		
Courts . . . . .	1029		
Exit passageway . . . . .	1024.4		
Horizontal exit . . . . .	1028.2		
Lobbies . . . . .	1028.2		
Marquees . . . . .	3106.4		
Public way . . . . .	1028.5		
Termination . . . . .	1023.3		
Vestibules . . . . .	1028.2		
<b>EXIT SIGNS</b> . . . . .	1013		
Accessibility . . . . .	1013.4		
Floor level exit signs . . . . .	1013.2		
Group R-1 . . . . .	1013.2		
Illumination . . . . .	1013.3, 1013.5, 1013.6		
Required . . . . .	1013.1		
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.6		
<b>EXPLOSIVES</b> . . . . .	202, Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.5		
Detached building . . . . .	415.6.5, 415.8		
Explosion control . . . . .	414.5.1		
<b>EXPOSURE CATEGORY</b> ( <b>see WIND LOAD</b> ) . . . . .	1609.4		
<b>EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE</b>			
Requirements . . . . .	1009.7		
Signage . . . . .	1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11		
<b>EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS)</b> . . . . .	1407		
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.17		
<b>EXTERIOR WALL</b>			
( <b>see WALLS, EXTERIOR</b> ) . . . . .	107.2.4, 202		
	Table 601, 602, 705,		
	Chapter 7A, Chapter 14		
<b>F</b>			
<b>FACTORY OCCUPANCY (GROUP F)</b> . . . . .	306		
Alarm and detection . . . . .	907.2.4		
Area . . . . .	503, 503.1.1, 505, 506, 507, 508		
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3		
Groups			
Low-hazard occupancy . . . . .	306.3		
Moderate-hazard occupancy . . . . .	306.2		
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508		
Incidental uses . . . . .	509		
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804		
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1		
Means of Egress			
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5		
Dead end corridor . . . . .	1020.5		
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019		
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.2, 1006.3, 1017.2,		
	1017.2.2, 1006.2.1		
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.2, 508.3, 508.4		
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902		
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5		
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.4		
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.3, 507.4, 507.5		
<b>FARM BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	Table 1604.3, Appendix C		
<b>FEES, PERMIT</b> . . . . .	109		
Refunds . . . . .	109.6		
Related fees . . . . .	109.5		
Work commencing before issuance . . . . .	109.4		
<b>FENCES</b> . . . . .	105.2, 312.1		
<b>FIBERBOARD</b> . . . . .	202, 2303.1.6		
Shear wall . . . . .	Table 2306.3(2)		
<b>FILL MATERIAL</b> . . . . .	1804, 3304		
<b>FINGER-JOINTED LUMBER</b>			
( <b>see END-JOINTED LUMBER</b> )			
<b>FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS</b>			
Aerosol storage . . . . .	907.2.17		
Aircraft hangars, residential . . . . .	412.4.3, 907.2.22		
Airport traffic control towers . . . . .	412.2.3.1, 907.2.23		
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.5, 907.2.2.1		
Assembly . . . . .	907.2.1		
Atriums . . . . .	404.4, 907.2.15		
Audible alarm . . . . .	907.5.2.1		

**INDEX**

- Battery room . . . . . 907.2.23  
 Construction documents . . . . . 907.1.1  
 Covered and open mall buildings . . . . . 402.7, 907.2.21  
 Education . . . . . 907.2.3  
 Emergency alarm system . . . . . 908  
 Factory . . . . . 907.2.4  
 Group H . . . . . 907.2.5  
 Group I . . . . . 907.2.6, 907.5.2.3.2  
 Group M . . . . . 907.2.7  
 Group R . . . . . 420.5, 907.2.8, 907.2.9,  
     907.2.11, 907.2.12,  
     907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3  
 High-rise . . . . . 403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.14  
 Live/work . . . . . 508.5.7  
 Lumber mills . . . . . 907.2.18  
 Occupancy requirements . . . . . 907.2  
 Play structure . . . . . 424.3  
 Special amusement areas . . . . . 411.3,  
     411.4, 907.2.11  
 Special amusement buildings . . . . . 411.2, 411.4,  
     907.2.13  
 Underground buildings . . . . . 405.6, 907.2.19, 907.2.20  
 Visible alarm . . . . . 907.5.2.3, 1009.12
- FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL** . . . . . 907.4.2  
**FIRE AREA** . . . . . 202, 901.7  
 Ambulatory care facilities . . . . . 903.2.2, 907.2.2  
 Assembly . . . . . 903.2.1  
 Education . . . . . 903.2.3  
 Enclosed parking garages . . . . . 903.2.10  
 Factory . . . . . 903.2.4  
 Institutional . . . . . 903.2.6  
 Mercantile . . . . . 903.2.7  
 Residential . . . . . 903.2.8  
 Storage . . . . . 903.2.9, 903.2.10
- FIRE BARRIERS** . . . . . 202, 707  
 Continuity . . . . . 707.5, 713.5  
 Exterior walls . . . . . Table 705.5, 707.4, 713.6  
 Fire-resistance rating of walls . . . . . 603.1, 703,  
     707.3, 713.4  
 Glazing, rated . . . . . 716.3.4  
 Incidental . . . . . 509.4.1  
 Inspection . . . . . 110.3.8  
 Joints . . . . . 707.8, 713.9, 715, 2508.5  
 Marking . . . . . 703.5  
 Materials . . . . . 707.2, 713.3  
 Opening protection . . . . . 707.6, 707.10, 713.7,  
     713.10, 714.4, 716, 717.5.2  
 Penetrations . . . . . 707.7, 713.8  
 Shaft enclosure . . . . . 713.1  
 Special provisions  
     Aircraft hangars . . . . . 412.3.4, 412.4.1  
     Atriums . . . . . 404.3, 404.6  
     Covered and open mall buildings . . . . . 402.4.2  
     Fire pumps . . . . . 403.3.4, 913.2.1  
     Flammable finishes . . . . . 416.2  
     Group H-2 . . . . . 415.9.1.2, 426.1.2  
     Group H-3 and H-4 . . . . . 415.10  
     Group H-5 . . . . . 415.11.1.2, 415.11.1.5,  
         415.11.6.1, 415.11.7.4  
     Group I-3 . . . . . 408.5, 408.7  
     Hazardous materials . . . . . 414.2.1  
     Higher education laboratories . . . . . 428.3  
     High-rise . . . . . 403.2.1.2, 403.2.2, 403.3, 403.4.8.1  
     Organic coating . . . . . 418.4, 418.5, 418.6  
     Stages and platforms . . . . . 410.5.1, 410.5.2
- FIRE COMMAND CENTER** . . . . . 403.4.6, 412.2.3.2,  
     911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
- FIRE DAMPERS** . . . . . 202, 717.2, 717.3, 717.4, 717.5
- FIRE DEPARTMENT**  
 (see **EMERGENCY RESPONDERS**)
- FIRE DETECTION SYSTEM** (see **FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS**)
- FIRE DISTRICT** . . . . . Appendix D
- FIRE DOOR**  
 (see **OPENING PROTECTIVES**) . . . . . 716, 1023.4
- FIRE ESCAPE** . . . . . 412.7.3
- FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, PORTABLE** . . . . . 906, 3309
- FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS** . . . . . 416.5, 417.4,  
     903, 904
- FIRE PARTITION** . . . . . 202, 708  
 Continuity . . . . . 708.4  
 Elevator lobby . . . . . 3006.3  
 Exterior walls . . . . . Table 705.5, 708.5  
 Fireblocks and draftstops . . . . . 708.4.2  
 Fire-resistance rating . . . . . 603.1, 703, 708.3  
 Glazing, rated . . . . . 716.3.4  
 Inspection . . . . . 110.3.8  
 Joint treatment gypsum . . . . . 2508.5  
 Joints . . . . . 708.8, 715  
 Marking . . . . . 703.5  
 Materials . . . . . 708.2  
 Opening protection . . . . . 708.5, 714.4, 716, 717.5.4  
 Penetrations . . . . . 708.7, 708.9, 714, 717  
 Special provisions  
     Covered and open mall buildings . . . . . 402.4.2.1  
     Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4 . . . . . 420.2  
     Group I-3 . . . . . 408.7  
     Supporting construction . . . . . 708.4.1
- FIRE PREVENTION** . . . . . 101.4.5
- FIRE PROTECTION**  
 Explosion control . . . . . 414.5.1, 415.6, 421.6, 426.1.4  
 Fire extinguishers, portable . . . . . 906

**INDEX**

Glazing, rated.....	716.1.2.3
Smoke and heat removal .....	910
Smoke control systems .....	909
Sprinkler systems, automatic .....	903
<b>FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS</b> .. Chapter 9, 107.2.2	
<b>FIRE PROTECTIVE CURTAIN ASSEMBLY</b> .....	202, 716.4
<b>FIRE PUMPS</b> .....	403.3.2, 902.1, 913, 914.2
<b>FIRE RESISTANCE</b>	
Calculated.....	722
Conditions of restraint.....	703.2.1.3
Ducts and air transfer openings .....	717
Exterior walls .....	705.5, Table 705.5, 708.5
Fire district .....	D102.2.5
High-rise .....	403.2
Joint systems .....	715
Multiple use fire assemblies .....	702.1
Prescriptive.....	721
Ratings .....	Chapter 6, 703, 705.5, 707.3.10
Roof assemblies.....	1505
Structural members .....	704
Tests.....	703
Thermal and sound insulating materials.....	720.1
<b>FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED</b> .....	722
Clay brick and tile masonry .....	722.4
Concrete assemblies .....	722.2
Concrete masonry .....	722.3
Steel assemblies .....	722.5
Wood assemblies .....	722.6
<b>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE</b> .. 202, Table 705.5	
Exterior walls .....	1405.1.1.1.1, 1405.1.1.1.2
Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems .....	3111.3.5
<b>FIRE SERVICE</b>	
<b>ACCESS ELEVATORS</b> .....	403.6.1, 3007
<b>FIRE WALLS</b> .....	202, 706
Aircraft hangar .....	412.3.6.2
Combustible framing.....	706.7
Continuity .....	706.5, 706.6
Exterior walls .....	Table 705.5, 706.5.1
Fire-resistance rating .....	703, 706.4
Glazing, rated.....	716.3.4
Inspection .....	110.3.8
Joints .....	706.10, 715
Materials.....	706.3
Opening protection .....	706.8, 706.11, 714.4, 716, 717.5.1
Penetration .....	706.9, 714.4
Special provisions	
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402.4.2.2
Group H-5 .....	415.11.1.6
Structural stability .....	706.2
<b>FIRE WINDOWS (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)</b>	
<b>FIREBLOCKING</b> .....	718.2
Chimneys .....	718.2.5.1, 2113.20
Fireplaces .....	2111.13
Wood construction .....	718.2.1, 718.2.7, 1405.1.3
Wood stairways.....	718.2.4
<b>FIREPLACES, FACTORY-BUILT</b> .....	2111.14.1
<b>FIREPLACES, MASONRY</b> .....	202
Clearance to combustibles .....	2111.12
Drawings.....	2111.2
General provisions .....	2111
Hearth extension.....	2111.10, 2111.11
Steel units .....	2111.6.1
<b>FIRE-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	701.1
<b>FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD</b> .. 202, 2303.2	
Awnings .....	3105.2
Balconies .....	705.2.3.1
Canopies.....	3105.3
Concealed spaces .....	718.5
Fastening .....	2304.10.6
Fire wall vertical continuity .....	706.6
Partitions .....	603.1
Platforms .....	410.3
Projections .....	705.2.3
Roof construction .....	Table 601, 705.11, 706.6, 1505
Shakes and shingles.....	1505.6
Type I and II construction .....	603.1
Type III construction .....	602.3
Type IV construction .....	602.4
Veneer .....	1404.5
<b>FIREWORKS</b> .....	202, 307.2, 307.3, 307.5
<b>FLAMESPREAD</b> .....	202, 803.1.2, Table 803.13
<b>FLAMMABLE FINISHES</b> .....	307.1, 416
<b>FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS</b> .....	307.4, 307.5, 406.8.2, 412, 414, 415
<b>FLAMMABLE SOLIDS</b> .....	307.5, 415
<b>FLASHING</b>	
Roof .....	1503.2, 1507.2.8, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9, 1512.5
Wall, veneer .....	1404.4, 1404.12.7, 1404.10.1.2
<b>FLOOD HAZARD AREAS</b> .....	202, 1612.3, 3114, Appendix G
Coastal A zone .....	202, 1402.7, 1603.1.7, 1612.2, 1612.4
Coastal high hazard area .....	202, 1402.7, 1603.1.7, 1612.2, 1612.4
Flood insurance rate map .....	202, 1603.1.7, 1612.3
<b>FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION</b> .. Appendix G	
Administration .....	107.2.6.1, G101, G106
Elevation certification .....	110.3.3

**INDEX**

Existing . . . . .	101.4.7
Flood elevation . . . . .	107.2.6.1, 1612
Flood loads . . . . .	1603.1, 1603.1.7, 1612, 3001.2
Flood resistance . . . . .	1402.6, 1402.7
Grading and fill. . . . .	1804.5, 1805.1.2.1
Historic buildings . . . . .	G106.3
Interior finishes . . . . .	802.4
Manufactured homes . . . . .	G109
Modifications . . . . .	104.10.1
Public restrooms . . . . .	3114
Recreation vehicles . . . . .	G110
Site improvements . . . . .	G108
Site plan . . . . .	107.2.6
Subdivisions . . . . .	G107
Tank . . . . .	G111
Temporary . . . . .	G113
Utility . . . . .	G114
<b>FLOOR CONSTRUCTION</b>	
(see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)	
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.3
Finishes . . . . .	804, 805, 1003.4, 1209.1
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601, 711
Loads (see FLOOR LOADS)	
Materials . . . . .	Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	711, 714.5, 717.2, 717.6
<b>FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD</b>	
Beams and girders . . . . .	2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1
Bridging/blocking . . . . .	2308.4.6, 2308.7.8
Diaphragms . . . . .	2305.1
Fastening schedule . . . . .	2304.10.2
Framing . . . . .	2304.4, 2304.11.1.2, 2304.11.3, Table 2304.11, 2308.4
Joists . . . . .	2308.4.2
Sheathing . . . . .	2304.8
<b>FLOOR LEVEL</b> . . . . .	
1003.5, 1010.1.4	
<b>FLOOR LOADS</b>	
Construction documents . . . . .	107.2
Live . . . . .	1603.1.1, 1607
Posting . . . . .	106.1
<b>FLOOR OPENING PROTECTION</b>	
(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)	
<b>FLOOR/CEILING</b>	
(see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION)	
<b>FOAM PLASTICS</b>	
Attics . . . . .	720.1, 2603.4.1.6
Cladding attachment . . . . .	2603.11, 2603.12, 2603.13
Cold storage . . . . .	2603.3, 2603.4.1.2, 2603.5
Concealed . . . . .	603
Covered mall and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.6.2, 402.6.4.5

Crawl space . . . . .	2603.4.1.6
Doors . . . . .	2603.4.1.7, 2603.4.1.9
Exterior wall covering . . . . .	Chapter 14, 806.5
Exterior walls of multistory buildings . . . . .	1403.13, 2603.5
Interior finish . . . . .	2603.9, 2604
Label/identification . . . . .	2603.2
Metal composite materials (MCM) . . . . .	1406.12
Plenums . . . . .	2603.7, 2604.1.1
Roofing . . . . .	2603.4.1.5
Siding backer board . . . . .	2603.4.1.10
Stages and platform scenery . . . . .	410.2.6
Surface burning characteristics . . . . .	2603.3
Termites, protection from . . . . .	2603.8
Thermal barrier requirements . . . . .	2603.5.2
Trim . . . . .	806.5, 2604.2
Type I and II construction . . . . .	603.1
Walk-in coolers . . . . .	2603.4.1.3
Wind resistance . . . . .	2603.10
<b>FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING</b>	
(see BLEACHERS) . . . . .	202, 1030.1.1
<b>FOOD COURT</b> . . . . .	
Occupant load . . . . .	402.8.2.4
Separation . . . . .	402.4.2
<b>FOUNDATION</b> (see FOUNDATION, DEEP and FOUNDATION, SHALLOW) . . . . .	
Basement . . . . .	1610, 1805.1.1, 1806.3, 1807
Concrete . . . . .	1808.8, 1809.8, 1810.3.2.1
Dampproofing . . . . .	1805.2
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.1
Formwork . . . . .	3304.1
Geotechnical investigation (see SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS) . . . . .	1803
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.1
Load-bearing value . . . . .	1806, 1808, 1810
Masonry . . . . .	1808.9
Pedestrian protection . . . . .	3306.9
Pier (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)	
Pile (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)	
Plates or sills . . . . .	2308.3.1
Protection from adjacent construction . . . . .	3303.5, 3307.1
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.3, 1705.4.2, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Steel . . . . .	1809.11, 1810.3.2.2, 1810.3.5.3
Timber . . . . .	1809.12, 1810.3.2.4
Waterproofing . . . . .	1805.3

<b>FOUNDATION, DEEP</b>	202, 1810
Drilled shaft	202
Existing	1810.1.2
Geotechnical investigation	1803.5.5
Grade beams	1810.3.12
Helical pile	202, 1810.3.1.5, Table 1810.3.2.6, 1810.3.3.1.9, 1810.3.5.3, 1810.4.11, 1810.4.12
Micropile	202, Table 1808.8.1, Table 1810.3.2.6, 1810.3.5.2.3, 1810.3.10, 1810.4.10
Piles	Table 1808.8.1, 1810
<b>FOUNDATION, SHALLOW</b>	202, 1809
Pier and curtain wall	1809.10
Slab-on-ground	1808.6.2
Strip footing	1808.8, 1809
<b>FOYERS</b>	
Assembly occupancy	1030.4, 1030.9.5
Corridors	1020.7
Covered and open mall building	402.1
<b>FRAME INSPECTION</b>	110.3.4
<b>FRATERNITIES</b>	310.4
<b>FROST PROTECTION</b>	1809.5
<b>FURNACE ROOMS</b>	1006.2.2.1
 <b>G</b>	
<b>GALLERIES (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</b>	
<b>GAMING</b>	202, 303.3, Table 1004.5, 1110.16, Table 2902.1, E105.3
<b>GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING (see PARKING GARAGES)</b>	
<b>GARAGE, REPAIR</b>	406.8
Floor surface	406.2.4
Gas detection system	406.8.2, 916
Sprinkler protection	406.8.3, 903.2.9.1
Ventilation	406.8.1
<b>GARAGES, TRUCK AND BUS</b>	
Live load	1607.8
Sprinkler protection	903.2.10.1
<b>GARAGES AND CARPORTS, PRIVATE</b>	
Area limitations	406.3.1
Classification	406.3.1
Door openers	406.2.1
Door springs	1211
Parking surfaces	406.2.4
Separation	406.2.5, 406.3.2
<b>GAS</b>	101.4.1, 105.2, 112
Gas detection system	406.8.2, 415.11.8, 421.5, 916
Hydrogen cutoff room	421.6
Motor fuel-dispensing	406.7
<b>GATES</b>	1010.4
Vehicular	406.2.1, 3110
<b>GIFT SHOPS</b>	407.2.4
<b>GIRDERS</b>	
Fire resistance	Table 601
Materials	Chapter 6
Wood construction	2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1
<b>GLASS (see GLAZING)</b>	
<b>GLASS BLOCK (see GLASS UNIT MASONRY)</b>	
<b>GLASS UNIT MASONRY</b>	202, 2110
Atrium enclosure	404.6
Fire resistance	2110.1.1
Hazardous locations	2406.1.3
<b>GLAZING</b>	
Athletic facilities	2408
Atrium enclosure	404.6
Doors	705.8, 709.5, 710.5, 716.2.5.3, 1404.13, 1709.1
Elevator hoistway and car	2409.2, 2409.3, 2409.4
Fire doors	716.2.2.3.1, 716.2.5
Fire windows	703.3, 716.2.1
Group I-3	408.7
Guards	1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407
Handrail	1011.11, 2407
Identification	2403.1, 2406.3
Impact loads	2406.1, 2408.2.1, 2408.3
Impact resistant	1609.2
Jalousies	2403.5
Label/identification	716.1.2.2.1, 716.1.2.2.2, 716.2.9.1, 716.2.9.5, 716.3.5.2
Loads	2404
Louvered windows	2403.5
Opening protection	716.1.2.3
Replacement	2402
Safety	716.1.2.1, 2406
Security	408.7
Skylights	2405
Sloped	2404.2, 2405
Supports	2403.2
Swimming pools	2406.4.5
Testing	1709.5, 2406.1.1, 2408.2.1
Veneer	1404.12
Vertical	2404.1
Walkways	2409.1
<b>GRADE (ADJACENT GROUND ELEVATION)</b>	202
<b>GRADING</b>	Appendix J
<b>GRAIN ELEVATORS</b>	426.1.5
<b>GRANDSTANDS (see BLEACHERS)</b>	202, 1030.1.1
<b>GREENHOUSES</b>	303.4, 309.1, 312.1.1, 3112
Accessibility	3112.2

**INDEX**

Area . . . . .	503, 506, Table 506.2, 508
Definition . . . . .	202
Deflections . . . . .	Table 1604.3
Glazing, glass and lighting . . . . .	2405, 3112.4
Live load . . . . .	1607.14.2.1
Membrane structure . . . . .	3102, 3112.6
Plastic . . . . .	2606.11, 3112.5
Wind load . . . . .	1609.2
<b>GRIDIRON (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</b>	
<b>GRINDING ROOMS</b> . . . . .	426.1.2
<b>GROSS LEASABLE AREA</b> (see COVERED and OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)	
<b>GROUP HOME [see RESIDENTIAL (GROUP R-4)]</b>	
<b>GROUT</b> . . . . .	714.4.1.1, 714.5.1
<b>GUARDS</b> . . . . .	1015
Assembly seating . . . . .	1030.1.1, 1030.17
Equipment platform . . . . .	505.3.3
Exceptions . . . . .	1015.2
Glazing . . . . .	1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407
Height . . . . .	1015.3
Loads . . . . .	1607.9
Mechanical equipment . . . . .	1015.6
Opening limitations . . . . .	1015.4
Parking garage . . . . .	406.4.1
Ramps . . . . .	1012.9
Residential . . . . .	1015.3
Roof access . . . . .	1015.7
Screen porches . . . . .	1015.5
Stairs . . . . .	1015.2
Vehicle barrier . . . . .	406.4.2, 1607.10
Windows . . . . .	1015.8
<b>GUTTERS</b> . . . . .	1502.4
<b>GYMNASIUMS</b> . . . . .	303.4
Group E . . . . .	303.1.3
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Occupant load . . . . .	1004.5
<b>GYPSUM</b> . . . . .	Chapter 25
Board . . . . .	Chapter 25, 202
Ceiling diaphragms . . . . .	2508.6
Concrete, reinforced gypsum . . . . .	2514
Construction . . . . .	2508
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.3.1
Exterior soffit . . . . .	Table 2506.2
Fastening . . . . .	Table 2306.3(3), 2508.1
Fire resistance . . . . .	719, 722.2.1.4, 722.6.2
Fire-resistant joint treatment . . . . .	2508.5
Inspection . . . . .	2503
Lath . . . . .	2507, 2510
Lathing and furring for cement plaster . . . . .	719, 2510

Lathing and plastering . . . . .	2507
Materials . . . . .	2506
Panel products . . . . .	Chapter 25, 202
Performance . . . . .	2502
Plaster, exposed aggregate . . . . .	2513
Plaster, exterior . . . . .	2512
Plaster, interior . . . . .	2511
Shear wall construction . . . . .	2211.1.1, Table 2306.3(3), 2308.6.3, 2505
Sheathing . . . . .	Table 2308.5.11
Showers and water closets . . . . .	2509
Stucco . . . . .	2510
Veneer base . . . . .	2507.2
Veneer plaster . . . . .	2507.2
Vertical and horizontal assemblies . . . . .	2504
Wallboard . . . . .	Table 2506.2
Water-resistant backing board . . . . .	2506.2, 2509.2

**H**

<b>HANDRAILS</b> . . . . .	1014
Alternating tread devices . . . . .	1011.14
Assembly aisles . . . . .	1030.16
Construction . . . . .	1014.4, 1014.5, 1014.6
Extensions . . . . .	1014.6
Glazing . . . . .	2407
Graspability . . . . .	1014.3
Guards . . . . .	1015.3
Height . . . . .	1014.2
Loads . . . . .	1607.9
Location . . . . .	1014.1, 1014.7, 1014.8, 1014.9
Ramps . . . . .	1012.8
Stairs . . . . .	1011.11
<b>HARDBOARD</b> . . . . .	202, 1403.3.2, 2303.1.7
<b>HARDWARE</b> (see DOORS and LOCKS AND LATCHING)	
<b>HARDWOOD</b>	
Fastening . . . . .	2304.10
Quality . . . . .	2303.3
Veneer . . . . .	1403.3.2
<b>HAZARDOUS MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	307, 414, 415
Compliance with International Fire Code . . . . .	307.2
Control areas . . . . .	414.2
Explosion control . . . . .	414.5.1, Table 414.5.1, 415.11.6.5, 426.1.4
Mercantile occupancies . . . . .	309.2
Reporting . . . . .	414.1.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 415.4, 415.11.12, 903.2.5

Ventilation.....	414.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2, 415.11.6.8, 415.11.7.4, 415.11.8, 415.11.11, 1202.6
Weather protection.....	414.6.1
<b>HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY (GROUP H), (see HAZARDOUS MATERIALS)</b>	307, 414, 415
Alarms and detection .....	415.3, 415.5, 415.11.2, 415.11.4, 415.11.6.9, 415.11.8, 901.6.3, 907.2.5, 908.1, 908.2
Area .....	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Dispersing.....	414.5, 414.6, 415.6
Gas detection systems.....	415.11.7
Group provisions	
H-1 (detonation) .....	307.3, 415.6.2, 415.7, 415.6.4.1, 415.7.1
H-2 (deflagration) .....	307.4, 415.8, 415.9
H-3 (physical hazard) .....	415.10, 307.5, 415.8
H-4 (health hazard).....	307.6, 415.10
H-5 (semiconductor).....	307.7, 415.11
Height.....	415.7, 415.8.1, 415.9.1.1, 426.1.1, 503, 504, 505, 506
Incidental uses .....	509
Interior finishes.....	416.2.1, 416.3.1, Table 803.13, 804
Live load.....	Table 1607.1
Location on property.....	414.6.1.2, 415.6
Low hazard.....	306.3, 311.3
Means of egress	
Corridors .....	415.11.2
One means of egress .....	Table 1006.3.4(1), Table 1006.3.4(2)
Panic hardware.....	1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3, 1006.2.2.4, 1010.2.9
Stairway, exit access .....	1019
Travel distance .....	1006.3, 1006.2.1, Table 1017.2
Mixed occupancies.....	508.3, 508.4
Accessory .....	508.2
Moderate hazard .....	306.2, 311.2
Multiple hazards .....	306.2, 311.2
Occupancy exceptions .....	307.1
Plumbing fixtures .....	Chapter 29
Risk category .....	Table 1604.5
Separation from other occupancies .....	415.6.1, 508.1, 508.2.4, 508.3.3, 508.4
Smoke and heat removal .....	910.2
Special provisions based on materials	
Combustible liquids.....	Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2
Corrosives .....	307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3, 415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Explosives .....	202, 307.3, 307.3.1, Table 415.6.5
Flammable liquids .....	307.4, 307.5, 415.9.1,
Flammable solids .....	307.5, 415.11.1.1.1
Health-hazard materials .....	202, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.6, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 415.11.6.1, 415.11.7.2
Irritants .....	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 415.11.1.1.1
Liquid, highly toxic and toxic .....	307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.8.3, 415.9.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 418
Oxidizers, liquid and solid .....	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.5.1, 415.8.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Pyrophoric materials .....	Table 307.1(1), 307.4, Table 414.5.1, 415.7.1, 415.8.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Sensitizers.....	Table 415.11.1.1.1
Solids, highly toxic and toxic .....	307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.10.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 908.3
Unstable materials.....	307.3, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.5.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1, Table 414.5.1
Water-reactive materials .....	Table 414.5.1, 415.8.3, 415.8.4, 415.8.5, 415.11, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Special provisions—General	
Detached buildings .....	202, 415.6.2, 415.8
Dry cleaning (see DRY CLEANING PLANTS)	
Equipment platforms .....	505.3
Fire district	
Fire separation distance .....	415.6
Grain elevators .....	426.1, 426.1.5
Grinding rooms .....	426.1.2
Higher education laboratories .....	426
Sprinkle protection .....	415.4, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.9, 415.11.10.1, 415.11.11, 705.8.1, 903.2.5
Standby, emergency power .....	2702.2
Storage .....	413, 414.1, 414.2.5, 414.5, 414.6, 415.6, Table 415.6.5, 415.7.1, 415.9.1, 426.1
Unlimited area.....	507.8, 507.9, 507.10
<b>HEADROOM</b> .....	406.2.2, 505.2, 1003.2, 1003.3, 1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1, 1011.3, 1012.5.2, 1208.2
<b>HEALTH CARE</b>	
(see INSTITUTIONAL I-1 and INSTITUTIONAL I-2)	
Ambulatory care facilities .....	202, 422

**INDEX**

Clinic, outpatient . . . . .	304.1
Hospitals . . . . .	308.3
<b>HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	307.2
Table 414.2.5(1), 415.2,	
415.11.1.1.1	
<b>HEAT VENTS</b> . . . . .	910
<b>HEATING (see MECHANICAL)</b> . . . . .	101.4.2
Aircraft hangars . . . . .	412.3.4
Fire pump rooms . . . . .	913.3
Fireplace . . . . .	2111
Masonry heaters . . . . .	2112
Parking garages . . . . .	406.2.9
Repair garages . . . . .	406.2.9
<b>HEIGHT, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Limitations . . . . .	503
Mixed construction types . . . . .	510
Modifications . . . . .	504
Roof structures . . . . .	504.3, 1511
<b>HELIPORT</b>	
Definition . . . . .	202
Live loads . . . . .	1607.6
<b>HIGHER EDUCATION LABORATORIES</b> . . . . .	202, 428
<b>HIGH-PILED COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE</b> . . . . .	413, 907.2.16, 910.2.2
<b>HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATES</b> . . . . .	1408
<b>HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	403
Alarms and detection . . . . .	403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.14
Application . . . . .	403.1
Construction . . . . .	403.2
Elevators . . . . .	403.6, 1009.2.1, 3007, 3008
Emergency power . . . . .	403.4.8, 2702.2
Emergency systems . . . . .	403.4
Fire command station . . . . .	403.4.6
Fire department communication . . . . .	403.4.4, 403.4.5
Fire service elevators . . . . .	403.6.1, 3007
Occupant evacuation elevators . . . . .	403.6.2, 3008
Smoke removal . . . . .	403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosure . . . . .	403.5.4, 1023.12
Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM) . . . . .	403.2.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	403.3, 903.2.11.3
Stairways . . . . .	403.5, 1023, 1025
Standby power . . . . .	403.4.8, 2702.2
Structural integrity . . . . .	403.2.2, 1616
Super high-rise (over 420 feet) . . . . .	403.2.1, 403.2.2, 403.2.3, 403.3.1, 403.5.2
Voice alarm . . . . .	403.4.4, 907.2.14
Zones . . . . .	907.6.3, 907.6.4
<b>HISTORIC BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	101.4.7
Flood provisions . . . . .	G106.3
<b>HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY</b> . . . . .	711
Continuity . . . . .	509.4.1, 711.2.2, 711.2.3, 713.11, 713.12
Fire-resistance rating . . . . .	603.1, 703, 704.4.2, 707.3.10, 711.2.4
Glazing, rated . . . . .	716.3.4
Group I-1 . . . . .	420.3
Group R . . . . .	420.3
Incidental . . . . .	509.4
Insulation . . . . .	720, 807, 808
Joints . . . . .	715, 2508.4
Nonfire-resistance rating . . . . .	711.3
Opening protection . . . . .	712.1.13.1, 714.5, 716, 717.6
Shaft enclosure . . . . .	713.1
Special provisions	
Atrium . . . . .	404.3, 404.6
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.4.2.3, 402.8.7
Fire pumps . . . . .	913.2.1
Flammable finishes . . . . .	416.2
Group H-2 . . . . .	415.9.1.1, 415.9.1.2
Group H-5 . . . . .	415.11.1.2, 415.11.6.1
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.5
Groups H-3 and H-4 . . . . .	415.10.2
Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 . . . . .	420.3
Hazardous materials . . . . .	414.2
High-rise . . . . .	403.2.1, 403.3
Organic coating . . . . .	418.4, 418.5, 418.6
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410.3, 410.4.1
<b>HORIZONTAL EXIT</b> . . . . .	1026
Accessible means of egress . . . . .	1009.2, 1009.2.1, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1009.6, 1009.6.2
Doors . . . . .	1026.3
Exit discharge . . . . .	1028.2
Fire resistance . . . . .	1026.2
Institutional I-2 occupancy . . . . .	407.4, 1026.1
Institutional I-3 occupancy . . . . .	408.2, 1026.1
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREAS)	
<b>HORIZONTAL FIRE SEPARATION (see HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES)</b>	
<b>HOSE CONNECTIONS (see STANDPIPE REQUIRED)</b>	
<b>HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS (see INSTITUTIONAL, GROUP I-2)</b> . . . . .	308.3, 407
<b>HOSPITALS [OSHPD 1]</b> . . . . .	1224
Application . . . . .	1224.2
Communications systems . . . . .	1224.5
Definitions . . . . .	1224.3
General construction . . . . .	1224.4
Reserved . . . . .	1224.6–1224.13
Scope . . . . .	1224.1

**INDEX**

<b>HOSPITALS—BASIC SERVICES</b>	
Anesthesia/recovery service space . . . . .	1224.16
Clinical laboratory service space . . . . .	1224.17
Dietetic service space . . . . .	1224.20
Nursing service space . . . . .	1224.14
Pharmaceutical service space . . . . .	1224.19
Radiological/diagnostic imaging service space . . . . .	1224.18
Surgical service space . . . . .	1224.15
<b>HOSPITALS—SUPPORT SERVICES</b>	
Administrative space . . . . .	1224.21
Central sterile supply . . . . .	1224.22
Employee dressing rooms and lockers. . . . .	1224.25
Housekeeping rooms . . . . .	1224.26
Laundry. . . . .	1224.27
Morgue and autopsy facilities. . . . .	1224.24
Storage. . . . .	1224.23
<b>HOSPITALS—SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICES</b>	
Emergency service. . . . .	1224.33
Intensive care units. . . . .	1224.29
Intermediate-care service space . . . . .	1224.38
Nuclear medicine . . . . .	1224.34
Obstetrical facilities (perinatal unit space) . .	1224.32
Outpatient service space . . . . .	1224.39
Pediatric and adolescent unit . . . . .	1224.30
Psychiatric nursing unit. . . . .	1224.31
Rehabilitation therapy department . . . . .	1224.35
Renal dialysis service space (acute and chronic). . . . .	1224.36
Respiratory therapy service space. . . . .	1224.37
Skilled nursing service space . . . . .	1224.40
Social service space. . . . .	1224.41
Supplemental surgery and special procedure services . . . . .	1224.28
<b>HOTEL (or MOTEL) (definition)</b> . . . . .	202
<b>HPM ROOM</b> . . . . .	415.11.5
<b>HURRICANE SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)</b>	
<b>HURRICANE SHUTTERS</b> . . . . .	1609.2
<b>HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS</b> . .	421, Table 509.1
<b>HYPERBARIC FACILITIES</b> . . . . .	425
I	
<b>ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE</b> . . . . .	202
Atmospheric ice loads . . . . .	1614.1
<b>IDENTIFICATION, REQUIREMENTS FOR</b>	
Fire barriers . . . . .	703.4
Fire partitions . . . . .	703.4
Fire wall . . . . .	703.4
Glazing . . . . .	2403.1, 2406.3
Inspection certificate. . . . .	202
<b>Labeling</b> . . . . .	1703.5
<b>Preservative-treated wood</b> . . . . .	2303.1.9.1
<b>Smoke barrier</b> . . . . .	703.4
<b>Smoke partition</b> . . . . .	703.4
<b>Steel</b> . . . . .	2202.1
<b>IMPACT LOAD</b> . . . . .	202, 1603.1.1, 1607.11, 2406.1
<b>INCIDENTAL USES</b>	
Area . . . . .	509.3
Occupancy classification. . . . .	509.2
Separation and protection. . . . .	509.4
<b>INCINERATOR ROOMS</b> . . . . .	Table 509.1, 713.13, 1006.2.2.1
<b>INDUSTRIAL</b>	
[see FACTORY OCCUPANCY (see GROUP F)]	
<b>INFLATABLE AMUSEMENT DEVICE</b>	
Definition. . . . .	202
<b>INSPECTIONS</b> . . . . .	110, 1704, 1705
Alternative methods and materials . . . . .	1705.1.1
Approval required . . . . .	110.6
Concrete construction. . . . .	110.3.1, 110.3.2, 110.3.11, 1705.3
Concrete slab . . . . .	110.3.2
EIFS . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.17
Energy efficiency. . . . .	110.3.9
Fabricators . . . . .	1704.2.5
Fees . . . . .	109
Final . . . . .	110.3.12
Fire-extinguishing systems . . . . .	904.4
Fire-resistant materials . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.15, 1705.16
Fire-resistant penetrations . . . . .	110.3.8, 1705.18
Flood hazard. . . . .	110.3.3, 110.3.12.1
Footing or foundation . . . . .	110.3.1, 110.3.11, 1705.3, 1705.4, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Frame . . . . .	110.3.4
Lath gypsum board and gypsum panel products . . . . .	110.3.6, 2503
Liability . . . . .	104.8
Mass timber construction . . . . .	1705.5.7, Table 1705.5.7, 1705A.5.7, Table 1705A.5.7
Masonry . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.4
Preliminary . . . . .	110.2
Required . . . . .	110.3
Right of entry. . . . .	104.6
Sealing of mass timber . . . . .	1705.20
Seismic . . . . .	1705.13
Smoke control. . . . .	909.18.8, 1705.19
Soils . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.6
Special (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS) . . . . .	110.3.11, 1704, 1705
Sprayed fire-resistant materials . . . . .	1705.15

**INDEX**

Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.5		Sprinkler protection . . . . .	407.7, 903.2.6, 903.3.2
Steel. . . . .	110.3.4, 110.3.11, 1705.2		Technology equipment center . . . . .	407.12
Third party . . . . .	110.4		Yards . . . . .	407.10
Type IV-A, IV-B and IV-C connection protection inspection. . . . .	110.3.12	<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-3 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (see GROUP I)]</b>	. . . . .	308.4, 408
Welding . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.2, 2204.1	Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	
Wind. . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.12	Alarm and detection . . . . .	408.10, 907.2.6.3	
Wood. . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.5	Combustible decorations . . . . .	806.1	
<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-1 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (see GROUP I) and RESIDENTIAL (see GROUP R-4)]</b>		Maximum floor area allowances for I-3 facilities. . . . .	Table 408.3.13	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	Means of egress . . . . .	408.2, 408.3, 408.4	
Alarm and detection. . . . .	420.5, 907.2.6.1, 907.2.10, 907.2.11.2, 907.5.2.3.2	Occupancy condition . . . . .	308.4	
Combustible decorations . . . . .	806.1	Security glazing . . . . .	408.7	
Cooking . . . . .	420.8, 420.9	Separation . . . . .	408.5, 408.6	
Means of egress		Smoke barrier . . . . .	408.6	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5	Smoke compartment . . . . .	408.4.1, 408.6, 408.9	
Corridors . . . . .	1020.2	Sprinkler protection . . . . .	408.11, 903.2.6	
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	Standby/emergency power . . . . .	2702.2	
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3, 1017.2	<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-4 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]</b>	. . . . .	308.5
Occupancy conditions . . . . .	308.2.1, 308.2.2	Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	
Occupancy exceptions. . . . .	308.2.3, 308.2.4	Adult care . . . . .	308.5	
Separation . . . . .	420.2, 420.3, 420.6	Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.6	
Spaces open to corridors . . . . .	420.7, 420.8	Child care . . . . .	308.5	
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	420.5, 903.2.6, 903.3.2	Educational . . . . .	308.5.1	
<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-2 and GROUP I-2.1 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (see GROUP I)]</b>	. . . . .	Egress . . . . .	1006.2.2.4	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	Means of egress . . . . .	Table 1006.2.1, Table 1017.2	
Alarms and detection . . . . .	407.8, 407.9	Corridor . . . . .	1020.2	
Care suites. . . . .	407.4.4	Hardware . . . . .	1010.2.8, 1010.2.13.1	
Combustible decorations . . . . .	806.1	Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.6	
Cooking . . . . .	407.2.6, 407.2.7	<b>INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)</b>	. . . . .	308
Electrical systems . . . . .	407.11, 2702.2	Accessory . . . . .	508.2	
Hyperbaric facilities . . . . .	425	Adult care . . . . .	308.5	
Means of egress . . . . .	407.4	Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5	Child care . . . . .	303.1.3, 308.5, 310.4	
Corridors . . . . .	407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1020.3, 407.4.3	Group specific provisions		
Doors . . . . .	407.3.1, 407.2.6, 1010.2.14, 1010.2.12, 407.4.4.3, 407.4.4.4, 407.6	Group I-1 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-1) . . . . .	308.2	
Hardware . . . . .	1010.2.10, 1010.2.14, 407.4.1.1	Group I-2 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2) . . . . .	407, 308.3	
Lighting . . . . .	1008.2, 1008.3	Group I-3 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3) . . . . .	408, 308.4	
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019.4	Group I-4 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-4) . . . . .	308.1, 308.5	
Stairways, exterior exit . . . . .	1027.2	Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508	
Travel distance . . . . .	407.4.2	Incidental uses . . . . .	509	
Medical gas systems . . . . .	427	Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804	
Occupancy condition . . . . .	308.3.1	Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1	
Occupancy exceptions. . . . .	308.3.2	Means of egress		
Smoke barriers . . . . .	407.5	Corridors . . . . .	1020.3	
Smoke compartment . . . . .	407.2.1, 407.2.3, 407.5	Day care . . . . .	436.1.1, Table 1004.5, 1006.2.2.8	
Smoke partitions . . . . .	407.3	Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	

## INDEX

Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 308.2.3, 308.2.4, 308.3.2, 308.5.1, 308.5.4, 310.4.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5
Standby, emergency power . . . . .	2702.2
<b>INSULATION</b>	
Concealed . . . . .	720.2
Duct insulation . . . . .	720.1
Exposed . . . . .	720.3
Fiberboard . . . . .	720.1, Table 1508.2, 2303.1.6.2, 2303.1.6.3
Foam plastic (see FOAM PLASTICS) . . . . .	720.1
Loose fill . . . . .	720.4, 720.6
Pipe insulation . . . . .	720.1, 720.7
Reflective plastic core. . . . .	2614
Roof . . . . .	720.5, 1508
Sound . . . . .	720, 807, 1206
Thermal . . . . .	720, 807, 1508
<b>INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT</b>	
Lighting . . . . .	1204
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
Sound transmission . . . . .	1206
Space dimensions . . . . .	1208
Temperature control . . . . .	1203
Ventilation . . . . .	409.3, 414.3, 415.9.1.7, 1202.5
Yards or courts . . . . .	1205.2, 1205.3
<b>INTERIOR FINISHES</b> . . . . . Chapter 8	
Acoustical ceiling systems . . . . .	807, 808
Application . . . . .	803.13, 804.4
Atriums . . . . .	404.8
Children's play structures . . . . .	424
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.6
Decorative materials . . . . .	419, 802.3, 806
Floor finish . . . . .	804, 805
Foam plastic insulation . . . . .	2603.3, 2603.4
Foam plastic trim . . . . .	806.5, 2604.2
Insulation . . . . .	807
Light-transmitting plastics . . . . .	2606
Signs . . . . .	402.6.4, 2611
Trim . . . . .	806.7, 806.8
Wall and ceiling finishes . . . . .	803
Wet location . . . . .	1210
<b>INTERMODAL SHIPPING CONTAINER</b> . . . . . 202, 3115	
<b>INTERPRETATION, CODE</b> . . . . . 104.1	
<b>J</b>	
<b>JAILS</b>	
[see INSTITUTIONAL (see GROUP I-3)]	
308.5, 408	
<b>JOINT</b>	
Gypsum board . . . . .	2508.5
<b>K</b>	
Lumber sheathing . . . . .	2308.7.11
Waterproofing . . . . .	1805.3.3
<b>JOINTS, FIRE-RESISTANT SYSTEMS</b> . . . . . 715	
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.18
<b>KIOSKS</b> . . . . . 402.6.2	
<b>KITCHENS</b> . . . . . 303.3, 306.2	
Accessibility . . . . .	1133A
Dimensions . . . . .	1209
Means of egress . . . . .	1016.2
Occupant load . . . . .	Table 1004.5
Sinks . . . . .	Table 2902.1
<b>L</b>	
<b>LABORATORIES</b>	
Classification of . . . . .	304.1, 307.1.1
Hazardous materials . . . . .	414, 415
Higher education laboratories . . . . .	304.4, 428
Incidental uses . . . . .	Table 509.1
<b>LADDERS</b>	
Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms . . . . .	1006.2.2.1
Construction . . . . .	1011.15, 1011.16, 1014.2, 1014.6, 1015.3, 1015.4
Emergency escape window wells . . . . .	1031.5.2
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.3.5, 1011.15, 1011.16
Heliport . . . . .	412.7.3
Refrigeration machinery room . . . . .	1006.2.2.2
Ships ladders . . . . .	408.3.5, 1011.15
Stage . . . . .	410.5.3.4
<b>LAMINATED TIMBER, STRUCTURAL GLUED</b> . . . . . 602.4, 2303.1, 2303.1.3, 2304.12.2.4, 2306.1, 2308.4.3, 2308.7.9	
<b>LANDINGS</b>	
Doors . . . . .	1010.1.5
Ramp . . . . .	1012.6
Stair . . . . .	1011.6
<b>LATH, METAL OR WIRE</b> . . . . . Table 2507.2	
<b>LAUNDRIES</b> . . . . . 304.1, 306.2, Table 509.1	
<b>LAUNDRY CHUTE</b> . . . . . 713.13, 903.2.11.2	
<b>LEGAL</b>	
Federal and state authority . . . . .	102.2
Liability . . . . .	104.8
Notice of violation . . . . .	114.2, 116.3
Registered design professional . . . . .	107.1, 107.3.4
Right of entry . . . . .	104.6
Unsafe buildings or systems . . . . .	116
Violation penalties . . . . .	114.4

**INDEX****LIBRARIES**

- Classification, other than school . . . . . 303.1.3, 303.4
- Classification, school . . . . . 303.1.3, 305.1
- Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1

**LIGHT, REQUIRED** . . . . . 1204

- Artificial . . . . . 1204.3
- Emergency (see EMERGENCY LIGHTING)
- Means of egress . . . . . 1008.2
- Natural . . . . . 1204.2
- Stairways . . . . . 1204.4
- Yards and courts . . . . . 1205

**LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION**

- Cold-formed steel . . . . . 2211
- Conventional (wood) . . . . . 2308
- Definition . . . . . 202

**LIGHTS, PLASTIC CEILING DIFFUSERS** . . . . . 2606.7**LINEN CHUTE** . . . . . 713.13, 903.2.11.2**LINTEL**

- Adobe . . . . . 2109.2.4.9
- Fire resistance . . . . . 704.11
- Masonry, wood support . . . . . 2304.13

**LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS** . . . . . Table 414.5.1, 415.9.2**LISTED (definition)** . . . . . 202**LISTING AGENCY (definition)** . . . . . 202**LIVE LOADS** . . . . . 202, 1607

- Construction documents . . . . . 107.2, 1603.1.1
- Posting of . . . . . 106.1

**LIVE/WORK UNITS** . . . . . 202, 310.3, 508.5

- || Accessibility . . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B
- Separation . . . . . 508.1

**LOAD AND RESISTANCE****FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD)** . . . . . 1602.1

- Factored load . . . . . 202, 1604.2

- Limit state . . . . . 202, 1604.2

- Load combinations . . . . . 1605

- Load factor . . . . . 202

- Resistance factor . . . . . 202

- Wood design . . . . . 2302.1, 2307

**LOAD COMBINATIONS** . . . . . 1605

- Allowable stress design . . . . . 1605, 1605.2

- Alternative allowable stress load combinations . . . . . 1605.2

- Load and resistance factor design . . . . . 1605

- Strength design . . . . . 1605

**LOADS** . . . . . 106, 202

- Atmospheric ice . . . . . 1614

- Combinations . . . . . 1605

- Dead . . . . . 202, 1606

- Factored load . . . . . 202, 1604.2

- Flood . . . . . 1603.1.7, 1612
- Impact . . . . . 202, 1607.11
- Live . . . . . 508.5.8, 1603.1.1, 1607
- Load effects . . . . . 202
- Nominal load . . . . . 202, 1604.2
- Rain . . . . . 1603.1.9, 1611
- Seismic . . . . . 1603.1.5, 1613
- Snow . . . . . 1603.1.3, 1608
- Soil lateral . . . . . 1610
- Tsunami . . . . . 1615
- Wind . . . . . 1603.1.4, 1609

**LOBBIES**

- Assembly occupancy . . . . . 1030.4
- Elevator . . . . . 405.4.3, 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6

- Exit discharge . . . . . 1028.2

- Underground buildings . . . . . 405.4.3

**LOCAL ENFORCING AGENCY** . . . . . 1.8.3**LOCKS AND LATCHES** . . . . . 1010.2, 1010.2.9

- Delayed egress locks . . . . . 1010.2.13
- Electromagnetically locked . . . . . 1010.2.11
- Group I-2 . . . . . 407.4.1.1, 1010.2.14
- Group I-3 . . . . . 408.4, 1010.2.15
- High-rise . . . . . 403.5.3
- Sensor release . . . . . 1010.2.12
- Toilet rooms . . . . . 2902.3.5

**LODGING HOUSES** . . . . . 202, 310.4, 310.4.2**LUMBER**

- General provisions . . . . . Chapter 23
- Quality standards . . . . . 2303

**M****MAIL RECEPTACLES, LOCKING** . . . . . 420.13.1 ||**MAINTENANCE**

- Means of egress . . . . . 1002.1, 3310.2
- Property . . . . . 101.4.4

**MALL (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)****MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX** . . . . . 907.4.2**MANUFACTURED HOMES**

- Flood resistant . . . . . G109

**MARQUEES** . . . . . 202, 3106, H113

- Construction . . . . . 3106.5

- Drainage, water . . . . . 3201.4

- Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.13

- Prohibited location . . . . . 3106.4

- Roof construction . . . . . 3106.3

**MASONRY** . . . . . Chapter 21, Chapter 21A

- Adhered veneer . . . . . 1404.10

Adobe .....	2109
Anchorage .....	1604.8.2
Anchored veneer .....	1404.6
Architectural cast stone .....	2103.1
Calculated fire resistance .....	722.4
Chimneys .....	2113
Construction .....	2104
Damproofing.....	1805.2.2
Design, methods.....	2101.2, 2107, 2108, 2109
Fire resistance, calculated .....	722.3.2, 722.3.4
Fireplaces.....	2111
Floor anchorage .....	1604.8.2
Foundation walls.....	1807.1.5
Foundations, adobe .....	2109.2.4.5
Glass unit .....	2110
Grouted.....	202
Heaters.....	2112
Inspection, special .....	1705.4
Joint reinforcement.....	2103.4
Materials.....	2103
Penetrations .....	714
Quality assurance.....	2105
Rodentproofing.....	Appendix F
Roof anchorage .....	1604.8.1
Seismic provisions .....	2106
Serviceability .....	1604.3.4
Supported by wood.....	2304.13
Surface bonding .....	2103.2.2
Veneer .....	1404.6, 1404.10, 2101.2.1, 2308.6.10
Wall, composite .....	202
Wall, hollow .....	202
Wall anchorage.....	1604.8.2
Waterproofing.....	1805.3.2
Wythe .....	202
<b>MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEMS</b> .....	917
<b>MASS TIMBER</b> .....	202, 508, 509, 602, 703, 718, 722
<b>MATERIALS</b>	
Alternates .....	104.11
Aluminum .....	Chapter 20
Concrete .....	Chapter 19, Chapter 19A
Glass and glazing.....	Chapter 24
Gypsum .....	Chapter 25
Masonry .....	Chapter 21, Chapter 21A
Noncombustible .....	703.4
Plastic.....	Chapter 26
Steel .....	Chapter 22, Chapter 22A
Testing (see TESTING) .....	1707
Wood .....	Chapter 23
<b>MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE</b> .....	Chapter 7A
<b>MEANS OF APPEALS</b> .....	113, Appendix B
<b>MEANS OF EGRESS</b> .....	Chapter 10, 202
Accessible.....	1009, 2702.2
Aircraft related.....	412.2.2, 412.2.5.1, 412.4.2, 412.6.1, 412.7.3
Alternating tread device .....	412.7.3, 1006.2.2.1, 1006.2.2.2, 1011.14
Ambulatory care facilities .....	422.3.1, 422.3.3
Assembly .....	1009.1, 1030
Atrium .....	404.9, 404.11, 707.3.6
Capacity .....	1005.3
Ceiling height .....	1003.2
Child care facilities (see DAY CARE)	
Configuration.....	1007
Construction drawings .....	107.2.3
Convergence.....	1005.6
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402.8
Day care facilities .....	308.5, 310.4.1, 1006.2.2.4
Distribution .....	1005.5
Doors .....	1005.7, 1006.2, 1010, 1022.2, 2702.2
During construction.....	3303.3, 3310
Elevation change .....	1003.5
Elevators.....	403.5.2, 403.6.2, 1003.7, 1009, 3008
Emergency escape and rescue .....	1031
Encroachment.....	1005.7
Equipment platform.....	505.3
Escalators .....	1003.7
Evacuation plans.....	1002.2
Existing buildings .....	3310
Exit (see EXIT) .....	1022, 1027
Exit access (see EXIT ACCESS) .....	1016, 1021
Exit discharge (see EXIT DISCHARGE).....	1028
Exit enclosures .....	1023.2
Exit passageway (see EXIT PASSAGWAY).....	1024
Exit signs .....	1013, 2702.2
Fire escapes .....	412.7.3
Fire safety plans .....	1002.2
Floor surface .....	804, 1003.4
Gates .....	1010.4
Group I-2.....	407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1019.4
Group I-3.....	408.2, 408.3, 408.4, 408.6, 408.8, 1019.4
Guards .....	1015
Handrails .....	1014
Hazardous materials .....	414.6.1.2, 415.11.2, 415.11.6.6
Headroom .....	1003.2, 1003.3
Heliports, Helistops .....	412.7.3
High-hazard Group H .....	415.11.2
High-rise .....	403.5, 403.6
Illumination .....	1008, 2702.2
Interior finish .....	803.13, 804

**INDEX**

Ladders (see LADDERS)	
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5.3
Mezzanines . . . . .	505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1004.2.2, 1009.1
Moving walk . . . . .	1003.7
Number . . . . .	1001.2, 1006
Occupant load . . . . .	1004
Parking . . . . .	406.5.7
Protruding objects . . . . .	1003.3, 1005.7
Ramps . . . . .	1012, 1019, 1027
Scoping . . . . .	101.3, 108.2, 1001.1
Seating, fixed . . . . .	1009.1, 1030
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.6
Stages . . . . .	410.2.3, 410.5
Stairways . . . . .	403.5, 404.6, 1005.3.1, 1011, 1019, 1023, 1027
Temporary structures . . . . .	3103.4
Travel distance (see TRAVEL DISTANCE) . . . . .	1006.2.1, 1017
Turnstile . . . . .	1010.5
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.5.1, 405.7
Width . . . . .	1005.1, 1005.2, 1005.4, 1011.2, 1012.5.1, 1020.3, 1030.6, 1030.8
<b>MECHANICAL (see AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING, REFRIGERATION AND VENTILATION)</b> . . . . .	101.4.2
Access . . . . .	1011.12, 1208.3
Air transfer openings . . . . .	705.10, 706.11, 707.10, 708.9, 709.8, 712.1.6, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
Chimneys (see CHIMNEYS)	
Code . . . . .	Chapter 28
Disconnected . . . . .	3303.6
Ducts . . . . .	704.8, 705.10, 706.11, 707.10, 708.9, 709.8, 710.8, 712.1.6, 712.1.10.3, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.3.2
Equipment on roof . . . . .	1510, 1511.2
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3
Fireplaces . . . . .	2111
Incidental use room . . . . .	Table 509.1
Motion picture projection room . . . . .	409.3
Permit required . . . . .	105.1, 105.2
Roof access . . . . .	1011.12
Seismic inspection and testing .	1704.3.2, 1705.13.7
Smoke control system . . . . .	909
Systems . . . . .	Chapter 28, 202
<b>MECHANICALLY LAMINATED DECKING</b> . . . . .	2304.9.3
<b>MEDICAL GAS SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	427
<b>MEMBRANE ROOF COVERINGS</b> . . . . .	1507.11, 1507.12, 1507.13
<b>MEMBRANE STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	2702.2, 3102
<b>MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY (GROUP M)</b> . . . . .	309
Accessible . . . . .	1110.13
Alarm and detection . . . . .	907.2.7
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402
Hazardous material display and storage . . . . .	414.2.5
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.3, 1018.4
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019
Travel distance . . . . .	402.8, 1006.3, 1017.2, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	508.2
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Mall buildings . . . . .	402
Parking below/above .	510.2, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	307.1.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.7
Standpipes . . . . .	905.3.3
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.4, 507.5, 507.13
<b>METAL</b>	
Aluminum . . . . .	Chapter 20
Roof coverings . . . . .	1504.4.2, 1507.4, 1507.5
Steel . . . . .	Chapter 22
Veneer . . . . .	1403.5, 1404.11
<b>METAL COMPOSITE MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	1406
<b>MEZZANINES</b> . . . . .	505
Accessibility . . . . .	Chapter 11A, 11B
Area limitations . . . . .	505.2.1, 505.2.1.1, 505.3.1
Egress . . . . .	505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1009.1
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3
Guards . . . . .	505.3.3, 1015.1
Height . . . . .	505.2
Occupant load . . . . .	1004.2.2
Stairways . . . . .	712.1.11, 1011.14, 1019, 1023.2
<b>MIRRORS</b> . . . . .	1010.1, 2406.1
<b>MIXED OCCUPANCY</b> (see OCCUPANCY SEPARATION)	
<b>MODIFICATIONS</b> . . . . .	104.4, 104.10
<b>MOISTURE PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	1210, 1402.2, 1503
<b>MONASTERIES</b> . . . . .	310.3
<b>MORTAR</b> . . . . .	202
Ceramic tile . . . . .	2103.2.3
Damproofing . . . . .	1805.2.2
Fire resistance . . . . .	714.4.1, 715.5

Glass unit masonry.....	2110.1.1
Masonry .....	2103.2
Rodentproofing.....	Appendix f
<b>MOTELS .....</b>	<b>310.2, 310.3</b>
<b>MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS.....</b>	<b>409</b>
Construction .....	409.2
Exhaust air .....	409.3.2, 409.3.3
Lighting control.....	409.4
Projection room .....	409.3
Supply air .....	409.3.1
Ventilation.....	409.3
<b>MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING SYSTEM .....</b>	<b>406.7</b>
Accessibility .....	1107.3
<b>MOTOR VEHICLE FACILITIES .....</b>	<b>304, 311, 406</b>
<b>MOVING, BUILDINGS.....</b>	<b>101.4.7, D103.3</b>
<b>MOVING WALKS .....</b>	<b>3004.2</b>
Means of egress.....	1003.7
<b>N</b>	
<b>NAILING .....</b>	<b>202, 2303.6, 2304, 2304.10</b>
<b>NONCOMBUSTIBLE BUILDING MATERIAL...</b>	<b>703.4</b>
<b>NONCOMBUSTIBLE PROTECTION     (FOR MASS TIMBER).....</b>	<b>202, 602.4, 722.7</b>
<b>NURSE STATIONS     (see CARE PROVIDER STATIONS)</b>	
<b>NURSING HOMES     [see INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-2)].....</b>	<b>308.3, 407</b>
<b>O</b>	
<b>OCCUPANCY</b>	
Accessory.....	507.1.1, 508.2
Certificates (see CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY)	
Change (see CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY)	
Floor loads .....	Table 1607.1
Height in mixed occupancy buildings .....	504.2
Roofs	
Special .....	Chapter 4
<b>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION.....</b>	<b>Chapter 3</b>
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402
Detailed requirements .....	Chapter 4
Exceptions .....	303.1.1, 303.1.4, 305.1.1,
	305.2.1, 305.2.3, 307.1.1, 308.2.3,
	308.2.4, 308.3.2, 308.5.1,
	308.5.4, 310.4.1, 311.1.1
HPM .....	415.11
Mixed .....	508, 510
Occupied roofs .....	302.1, 503.1.4
<b>OCCUPANCY SEPARATION</b>	
Accessory.....	508.2
Aircraft related .....	412.4.1
Nonseparated use method.....	508.3
Separated use method .....	508.4
Special provisions.....	510
Unlimited area buildings .....	507.1.1, 507.4.1, 507.8
<b>OCCUPANT EVACUATION</b>	
<b>ELEVATORS .....</b>	<b>403.5.2, 403.6.2, 3008</b>
<b>OCCUPANT LOAD</b>	
Business .....	Table 1004.5, 1004.8
Calculated.....	1004.5
Certificate of occupancy .....	111
Covered and open mall building .....	402.8.2
Cumulative .....	1004.2
Increased .....	1004.5.1
Multiple function .....	1004.3
Multiple occupancies.....	1004.4
Outdoors .....	1004.7
Seating, fixed .....	1004.6
Signs.....	1004.9
<b>OCCUPIED ROOFS .....</b>	<b>503.1.4</b>
<b>OFFICE BUILDINGS (see GROUP B OCCUPANCIES)</b>	
Classification.....	304
Live loads .....	Table 1607.1, 1607.5
<b>OPEN MALL BUILDINGS     (see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)</b>	
<b>OPENING PROTECTION,     EXTERIOR WALLS .....</b>	<b>705.8</b>
<b>OPENING PROTECTION, FLOORS     (see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)</b>	
<b>OPENING PROTECTIVES .....</b>	<b>705.8, 706.8, 707.6,</b>
	<b>708.6, 709.5, 712.1.13.1, 713.7, 716</b>
Automatic-closing devices .....	909.5.3
Fire door and shutter assemblies ..	705.8.2, 712.1.13.1, 716.2.1
Fire windows.....	716.3.4
Glass unit masonry (see GLASS UNIT MASONRY).....	2110.1.1
Glazing .....	716.1.2
<b>ORGANIC COATINGS .....</b>	<b>418</b>
<b>ORGANIC PEROXIDES .....</b>	<b>307.4, 307.5</b>
<b>OXIDIZERS, LIQUID     AND SOLID .....</b>	<b>307.3, 307.4, 307.5</b>
<b>P</b>	
<b>PANIC HARDWARE .....</b>	<b>202, 1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.4,</b>
	<b>1010.2.8, 1010.2.9, 1010.4.1</b>
<b>PARAPET, EXTERIOR WALL .....</b>	<b>705.11, 2109.2.4.3</b>
Construction .....	705.11.1
Fire wall .....	706.6
Height .....	705.11.1
<b>PARKING, ACCESSIBLE .....</b>	<b>Chapter 11A, 11B</b>
<b>PARKING GARAGES .....</b>	<b>406.4, 406.5, 406.6</b>
Accessibility .....	<b>Chapter 11A, 11B</b>
Barriers, vehicle .....	<b>202, 406.4.2, 1607.10</b>

**INDEX**

Classification . . . . .	311, 312, 406.3, 406.4
Construction type . . . . .	406.5.1, Table 601
<i>Door openers</i> . . . . .	406.2.1
<i>Door springs</i> . . . . .	1211
Enclosed (see PARKING GARAGE, ENCLOSED) . . . . .	406.6
Gates . . . . .	406.2.1, 3110
Guards . . . . .	406.4.1, 2407.1.3
Height, clear . . . . .	406.2.2
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 1607.12.1.3
Means of egress . . . . .	1006.2.2.5, 1006.3, 1019
<i>Mechanical-access enclosed     parking garages</i> . . . . .	406.6.4
Occupancy separation . . . . .	508, 510
Open (see PARKING GARAGE, OPEN) . . . . .	406.5
Special provisions . . . . .	510
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.10
Underground . . . . .	405
Vertical openings . . . . .	712.1.10
<b>PARKING GARAGES, ENCLOSED</b> . . . . .	406.6
Area and height [see STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] . . . . .	406.6.1
Means of egress . . . . .	1006.2.2.5, 1006.3, 1012.1
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	406.6.3
Ventilation . . . . .	406.6.2
<b>PARKING GARAGES, OPEN</b> . . . . .	202, 406.5
Area and height [see STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] . . . . .	406.5, 406.5.1, Table 406.5.4
Construction type . . . . .	406.5.1
Means of egress . . . . .	406.5.7, Table 1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1012.1, 1017.3, 1019, 1020.2, 1028.2
Mixed occupancy . . . . .	406.5.3
Standpipes . . . . .	406.5.8
Ventilation . . . . .	406.5.10
<b>PARTICLEBOARD</b> . . . . .	202
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.3.1
Moisture protection . . . . .	1402.2, 1404.2
Quality . . . . .	2303.1.8
Veneer . . . . .	1404.5
Wall bracing . . . . .	2308.6.3
<b>PARTITIONS</b>	
Fabric partition . . . . .	202, 1607.16.1
Fire (see FIRE PARTITION)	
Live loads . . . . .	1607.5, 1607.16
Materials . . . . .	602.4, 603.1
Occupancy, specific . . . . .	708.1
Smoke (see SMOKE PARTITION)	
Toilets . . . . .	1210

<b>PARTY WALLS</b>	
(see FIRE WALLS) . . . . .	706.1.1, Table 716.1(3)
<b>PASSAGEWAY, EXIT (see EXIT)</b> . . . . .	1024
<b>PASSENGER STATIONS</b> . . . . .	303.4
<b>PATIO COVERS</b> . . . . .	2606.10, Appendix I
<b>PEDESTRIAN</b>	
Protection at construction site . . . . .	3303.2, 3306
Walkways and tunnels . . . . .	3104, 3202.3.4
<b>PENALTIES</b> . . . . .	114.4
<b>PENETRATION-FIRESTOP SYSTEM</b>	
Fire-rated horizontal assemblies . . . . .	714.5.2
Fire-rated walls . . . . .	714.4.2
<b>PENETRATIONS</b> . . . . .	714, 717
Fire-resistant assemblies	
Exterior wall . . . . .	705.10
Fire barrier . . . . .	707.7, 707.10
Fire partition . . . . .	708.7, 708.9
Fire wall . . . . .	706.9, 706.11
Horizontal assemblies . . . . .	714.5
Installation . . . . .	714.2
Shaft enclosures . . . . .	712.1, 713.1, 713.8, 713.10
Smoke barriers . . . . .	709.6, 709.8, 714.5.4
Smoke partitions . . . . .	710.6, 710.7
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.18
Walls . . . . .	714.4
Nonfire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	714.6
<b>PERFORMANCE CATEGORY</b>	
Definition . . . . .	202
Wood structural panels . . . . .	2303.1.5
<b>PERFORMANCE-BASED</b>	Appendix O
<b>PERLITE</b> . . . . .	Table 721.1(1), Table 2507.2
<b>PERMITS</b> . . . . .	105
Application for . . . . .	104.2, 105.1, 105.3
Drawings and specifications . . . . .	107.2.1
Expiration . . . . .	105.5
Fees . . . . .	109
Liability for issuing . . . . .	104.8
Placement of permit . . . . .	105.7
Plan review . . . . .	104.2, 107.3
Suspension or revocation . . . . .	105.6
Time limitations . . . . .	105.3.2, 105.5
<b>PHOTOVOLTAIC (PV) SUPPORT STRUCTURE, ELEVATED</b> . . . . .	202
<b>PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	202
Ballasted, seismic design . . . . .	1613.3
<i>Ground mounted</i> . . . . .	202
Fire classification . . . . .	1505.8, 1505.9
Panels/modules . . . . .	1512
Photovoltaic module . . . . .	202
Photovoltaic panel . . . . .	202
Power systems . . . . .	903.3.1.1.3

Roof live loads . . . . .	1607.14.4	
Rooftop mounted . . . . .	1511.7, 1511.9, 1511.9.1	
<b>PIER FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)</b>		
<b>PILE FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)</b>		
<b>PIPES</b>		
Embedded in fire protection . . . . .	704.8	
Insulation covering . . . . .	720.1, 720.7	
Penetration protection . . . . .	714, 1023.5	
Under platform . . . . .	410.3	
<b>PLAN REVIEW</b> . . . . .	107.3	
<b>PLASTER</b>		
Fire-resistance requirements . . . . .	719	
Gypsum . . . . .	719.1, 719.2	
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.6	
Portland cement . . . . .	719.5, Table 2507.2, Table 2511.1.1	
<b>PLASTIC</b> . . . . .	Chapter 26	
Approval for use . . . . .	2606.2	
Composites . . . . .	2612	
Core insulation, reflective plastic . . . . .	2614	
Decking . . . . .	1409, 2612	
Fiber-reinforced polymer . . . . .	2613	
Finish and trim, exterior . . . . .	2602.1	
Finish and trim, interior . . . . .	2602, 2604	
Light-transmitting panels . . . . .	2401.1, 2607	
Roof panels . . . . .	2609	
Signs . . . . .	402.6.4, 2611, D102.2.10, H107.1.1	
Thermal barrier . . . . .	2603.4	
Veneer . . . . .	1403.8, 2605, D102.2.11	
Walls, exterior . . . . .	2603.4.1.4, 2603.5	
<b>PLASTIC, FOAM</b>		
Insulation (see FOAM PLASTICS) . . . . .	2603	
Interior finish . . . . .	803.4, 2603.9	
Malls . . . . .	402.6.2, 402.6.4.5	
Play structures . . . . .	424.2	
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410.2.6	
<b>PLASTIC, LIGHT-TRANSMITTING</b>		
Awnings and patio covers . . . . .	2606.10	
Bathroom accessories . . . . .	2606.9	
Exterior wall panels . . . . .	2607	
Fiberglass-reinforced polymer . . . . .	2613.4	
Fiber-reinforced polymer . . . . .	2613.4	
Glazing . . . . .	2608	
Greenhouses . . . . .	2609	
Light-diffusing systems . . . . .	2606.7	
Roof panels . . . . .	2609	
Signs, interior . . . . .	2611	
Skylight . . . . .	2610	
Solar collectors . . . . .	2606.12	
Structural requirements . . . . .	2606.5	
Unprotected openings . . . . .	2608.1, 2608.2	
<b>Veneer, exterior . . . . .</b>	603.1, 2605	
<b>Wall panels . . . . .</b>	2607	
<b>PLATFORM (see STAGES AND PLATFORMS)</b> . . . . .	410	
Construction . . . . .	410.3	
Temporary . . . . .	410.3.1	
<b>PLATFORM, EQUIPMENT (see EQUIPMENT PLATFORM)</b>		
<b>PLATFORM LIFTS, WHEELCHAIR</b>		
Accessibility . . . . .	Chapter 11A, 11B	
Accessible means of egress . . . . .	1009.2, 1009.5, Chapter 11A, 11B, 2702.2	
<b>PLAY STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	424	
Covered and open mall building . . . . .	402.6.3	←
<b>POLLUTANT CONTROL</b> . . . . .	1212	
<b>PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE</b> . . . . .	721	
<b>PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD</b> . . . . .	202	
Fastenings . . . . .	2304.10.6	
Quality . . . . .	2303.1.9	
Required . . . . .	2304.12	
Shakes, roof covering . . . . .	1507.9.6, 1507.9.8	
<b>PRIVATE GARAGE</b> . . . . .	202, 406.3, 1010.1.2, 1502.4	
Accessibility . . . . .	Chapter 11A, 11B	
<b>PROJECTION ROOMS</b>		
Motion picture . . . . .	409	
<b>PROJECTIONS, COMBUSTIBLE</b> . . . . .	705.2.3, 705.2.3.1	
<b>PROPERTY LINE</b> (see FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE) . . . . .	705.3	
<b>PROPERTY MAINTENANCE</b> . . . . .	101.4.4	
<b>PROSCENIUM</b>		
Opening protection . . . . .	410.2.5	
Wall . . . . .	410.2.4	
<b>PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS</b> (see INSTITUTIONAL (see GROUP I-2)) . . . . .	308.4	
<b>PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM</b> (see EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS)		
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.7, 907.2.20, 2702.2	
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.4	
<b>PUBLIC PROPERTY</b> . . . . .	Chapter 32, Chapter 33	
<b>PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY</b>		
Encroachments . . . . .	Chapter 32	
<b>PUZZLE ROOM</b> . . . . .	202, 411.5	
<b>PYROPHORIC MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	Table 307.1(1), 307.4	
<b>R</b>		
<b>RAILING (see GUARDS and HANDRAILS)</b>		
<b>RAMPS</b> . . . . .	1012	
Assembly occupancy . . . . .	1030.14	
Construction . . . . .	1012.2, 1012.5.3, 1012.7, 1012.10	
Exit . . . . .	1023	

**INDEX**

Exit access . . . . .	1019
Exterior . . . . .	1027
Guards . . . . .	1012.9, 1015, 1607.9
Handrails . . . . .	1012.8, 1014, 1607.9
Interior . . . . .	1012.2
Landings . . . . .	1012.6
Parking garage . . . . .	406.4.3
Slope . . . . .	1012.2
<b>RECREATIONAL FACILITIES</b>	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Amusement rides . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Play structure . . . . .	402.6.3, 424
Special amusement areas (see AMUSEMENT AREAS, SPECIAL)	
<b>REFERENCED STANDARDS</b> . . . . .	
Applicability . . . . .	102.3, 102.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	703.2
List . . . . .	<i>Chapter 35</i>
Organizations . . . . .	<i>Chapter 35</i>
<b>REFORMATORIES</b>	
[see INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-3)] . . . . .	308.4
<b>REFRIGERATION</b> (see MECHANICAL) . . . . .	
Machinery room . . . . .	1006.2.2.2
<b>REFUGE AREAS</b> (see HORIZONTAL EXIT, SMOKE COMPARTMENTS, STORM SHELTERS) . . . . .	
407.5.3, 408.6.2, 420.6.1, 422.3.2, 423, 423.3, 423.4, 1026.4	
<b>REFUSE CHUTE</b> . . . . .	
713.13	
<b>REINFORCEMENT</b>	
Masonry . . . . .	2103.4
Shotcrete . . . . .	1908
<b>RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF</b>	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.1
Balcony . . . . .	1030.5, 1109.2.4
Classification . . . . .	303.1.4, 303.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1, 308.5.2
Door operations . . . . .	1010.2.10
Egress . . . . .	1030
Interior finishes . . . . .	<i>Table 803.13, 804</i>
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.6, 507.7
<b>RELOCATING, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	
101.4.7, 107.2.8, 3113	
Compliance . . . . .	3113.1.1
Inspection agencies . . . . .	3113.4
Manufacturer's data plate . . . . .	3113.3
Supplemental information . . . . .	3113.2
<b>REPAIRS, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	
101.4.7, 202	
Flood . . . . .	1612.1
Minor . . . . .	105.2.2
Permit required . . . . .	105.1

<b>RESIDENTIAL HOTELS (mail receptacles)</b> . . . . .	
420.8	
<b>RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP R)</b> . . . . .	
310	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>     ←
Alarm and detection . . . . .	907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.11, 907.2.12, 907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 508, 510
Carbon monoxide alarms . . . . .	915
Cooking . . . . .	420.10, 420.11
Draftstopping . . . . .	708.4.2, 718.4
Group provisions	
Group R-1 (transient) . . . . .	310.2
Group R-2 (apartment) . . . . .	310.3
Group R-3 (two dwellings per building) . . . . .	310.4
Group R-4 (group homes) . . . . .	310.5
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	<i>Table 803.13, 804</i>
Live load . . . . .	<i>Table 1607.1</i>
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5
Corridors . . . . .	1020.2, 1020.3
Doors . . . . .	1010.1.1
Emergency escape and rescue . . . . .	1031.2
Exit signs . . . . .	1013.1, 1013.2
Single exits . . . . .	1006.3
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3.3, 1017.2, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	508.2, G112.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Parking, private . . . . .	406.2.8, 406.3
Parking below/above . . . . .	510.4, 510.7, 510.9
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	<i>Table 1604.5</i>
Special provisions . . . . .	510.2, 510.5, 510.6
Separation . . . . .	419, 420, 508.2.4, 508.3.3
Swimming pools . . . . .	3109.1
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.8, 903.3.2
<b>RETAINING WALLS</b> . . . . .	
1807.2, 2304.12.2.8	
Flood provisions . . . . .	G112.4
Seismic . . . . .	1803.5.12
<b>REVIEWING STANDS</b>	
(see BLEACHERS AND GRANDSTANDS)	
<b>RISERS, STAIR</b> (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)	
Alternating tread devices . . . . .	1011.14
Assembly . . . . .	1011.5.2, 1030.10, 1030.14
Closed . . . . .	1011.5.5.3
General . . . . .	1011.5

## INDEX

Spiral . . . . .	1011.10
Uniformity . . . . .	1011.5.4
<b>RISK CATEGORY (Structural Design)</b> . . . . .	202, 1604.5
Multiple occupancies . . . . .	1604.5.1
<b>RODENTPROOFING</b> . . . . .	2304.3.1.1, 1201.1, Appendix F
<b>ROLL ROOFING</b> . . . . .	1507.6
<b>ROOF, OCCUPIED</b> . . . . .	503.1.4
<b>ROOF ACCESS</b> . . . . .	1011.12
<b>ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	202
Cooling towers . . . . .	1511.4
Drainage . . . . .	1504, 3201.4
Fire classification . . . . .	1505
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.9
Height modifications . . . . .	504.3
Impact resistance . . . . .	1504.8
Insulation . . . . .	1508
Materials . . . . .	1506
Mechanical equipment screen . . . . .	1511.6
Parapet walls . . . . .	1503.2, 1503.3
Penthouses . . . . .	1511.2
Photovoltaic panels and modules . . . . .	202, 1511.9, 1511.9.1
Radiant barrier . . . . .	202, 1510
Roof ventilation . . . . .	202
Tanks . . . . .	1511.3
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas . . . . .	1511.5
Weather protection . . . . .	1503
Wind resistance . . . . .	1504.1, 1504.3, 1504.4, 1609.5
<b>ROOF CONSTRUCTION</b>	
Construction walkways . . . . .	3306.7
Coverings (see ROOF COVERINGS) . . . . .	1609.5.2
Deck . . . . .	1609.5.1
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601
Fireblocking . . . . .	718.2
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 1607.13, 3111.1.2
Materials . . . . .	Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	714
Protection from adjacent construction . . . . .	3307.1
Rain loads . . . . .	1611
Roof structures . . . . .	504.3, 1510, D102.2.9
Signs, roof mounted . . . . .	H110
Slope, minimum . . . . .	Chapter 15
Snow load . . . . .	1608
Solar systems, rooftop-mounted . . . . .	3111.1, 3111.3.2
Trusses . . . . .	2211.1.3, 2303.4, 2308.7.13
Ventilation . . . . .	1202.2
Wood (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)	
<b>ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD</b> . . . . .	602.4, 602.5
Anchorage to walls . . . . .	1604.8.2
Attic access . . . . .	1209.2
Ceiling joists . . . . .	2308.7.1
Diaphragms . . . . .	2305.1, 2306.2
Fastening requirements . . . . .	2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated . . . . .	Table 601, 603.1
Framing . . . . .	2304.11.4, 2308.7
Rafters . . . . .	2306.1.1, 2308.7.2
Sheathing . . . . .	2304.8.2, 2308.7.10
Trusses . . . . .	2303.4, 2308.7.13
Ventilation, attic . . . . .	1202.2
Wind uplift . . . . .	2308.7.5
<b>ROOF COVERINGS</b> . . . . .	1507
Asphalt shingles . . . . .	1507.2
Built up . . . . .	1507.10
Clay tile . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Concrete tile . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	603.1, 1505
Flashing . . . . .	1503.2, 1503.5, 1507.2.8, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9
Impact resistance . . . . .	1504.8
Insulation . . . . .	1508
Liquid-applied coating . . . . .	1507.14
Membrane . . . . .	3102
Metal roof panels . . . . .	1507.4
Metal roof shingles . . . . .	1507.5
Modified bitumen . . . . .	1507.11
Photovoltaic roof panels, building-integrated . . . . .	1507.17
Photovoltaic shingles . . . . .	1507.16
Plastics, light-transmitting panels . . . . .	2609
Reroofing . . . . .	202, 1512
Roll . . . . .	1507.6
Roof recover . . . . .	202, 1512.2.1
Roof replacement . . . . .	202, 1512.2
Single-ply membrane . . . . .	202, 1507.12
Slate shingles . . . . .	1507.7, 1513
Sprayed polyurethane foam . . . . .	1507.13
Thermoplastic single-ply . . . . .	1507.13
Wind loads . . . . .	1504.1, 1609.5
Wood shakes . . . . .	1507.9
Wood shingles . . . . .	1507.8
<b>ROOF DRAINAGE</b> . . . . .	1502
Scuppers . . . . .	202, 1502.3
<b>ROOF REPLACEMENT/RECOVERING</b> . . . . .	1512.2

**INDEX**

**ROOF STRUCTURE (see ROOF ASSEMBLIES and ROOFTOP STRUCTURES)**

**ROOM DIMENSIONS** . . . . . 1209

**ROOMING HOUSE (see BOARDING HOUSE)** . . . 310

**S**

**SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION** . . . . . Chapter 33

Accessibility . . . . . *Chapter 11A, 11B*

Adjoining property protection . . . . . 3307

Construction . . . . . 3302

Demolition . . . . . 3303

Excavations . . . . . 1804.1

Fire extinguishers . . . . . 3309

Fire watch . . . . . 3314

Means of egress . . . . . 3310

Protection of pedestrians . . . . . 3306

Sanitary facilities . . . . . 3305

Site work . . . . . 3304

Sprinkler protection . . . . . 3312

Standpipes . . . . . 3308.1.1, 3311

Temporary use of streets, alleys and public property . . . . . 3308

**SAFETY GLAZING** . . . . . 716.1.2.1, 2406

**SCHOOLS**

[see EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E)]

**SEATING**

Accessibility . . . . . *Chapter 11B*

Tables . . . . . 1030.9, 1030.13.1

**SEATING, FIXED** . . . . . 1030

Accessibility . . . . . *Chapter 11B*

Aisles . . . . . 1030.9, 1030.13

Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)

Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)

Guards . . . . . 1030.17

Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1

Occupant load . . . . . 1004.6

Stability . . . . . 1030.15

Temporary . . . . . 108

**SECURITY GLAZING** . . . . . 408.7

**SECURITY GRILLES** . . . . . 402.8.8, 1010.3.4

**SEISMIC** . . . . . 1613

Cold-formed steel . . . . . 2210.2, 2211.1.1

Construction documents . . . . . 107, 1603.1.5  
1616.1.2

Earthquake recording equipment . . . . . Appendix I

Fire resistance . . . . . 704.12

Geotechnical investigation . . . . . 1803.5.11, 1803.5.12

Glazing . . . . . 2404

Loads . . . . . 1613

Mapped acceleration parameters . . . . . 1613.2.1  
Figures 1613.2.1(1) through 1613.2.1(6) ||

Masonry . . . . . 2106

Membrane structure . . . . . 3102.7

Seismic design category . . . . . 202, 1613.2.5

Seismic detailing . . . . . 1604

Site class . . . . . 202, 1613.2.2

Site coefficients . . . . . 202, 1613.2.4

Special inspection . . . . . 1705.13

Statement of special inspections . . . . . 1704.3.2

Steel . . . . . 2205.2, 2206.2

Structural observations . . . . . 1704.6.1

Structural testing . . . . . 1705.14

Wood . . . . . 2305, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10

**SERVICE SINKS** . . . . . Table 2902.1 ←

**SERVICE STATION**

(see MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES)

**SHAFT ENCLOSURE**

(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION) . . . . . 713

Continuity . . . . . 713.5, 713.11, 713.12

Elevators . . . . . 713.14

Exceptions . . . . . 712.1, 1019, 1023

Exterior walls . . . . . 713.6

Fire-resistance rating . . . . . 707.3.1, 713.4

Group I-3 . . . . . 408.5

High-rise buildings . . . . . 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3,  
403.3.1.1, 403.5.1

Joints . . . . . 713.9, 715

Materials . . . . . 713.3

Opening protection . . . . . 713.8, 713.10, 714, 717.5.3

Penetration . . . . . 713.8

Refuse and laundry chutes . . . . . 713.13

Required . . . . . 712.1

**SHEAR WALL**

Gypsum board and plaster . . . . . 2505

Masonry . . . . . 202

Wood . . . . . 202, 2305.1, 2306.3

**SHEATHING**

Clearance from earth . . . . . 2304.12.1.2

Fastening . . . . . 2304.10

Fiberboard . . . . . Table 2306.3(2)

Floor . . . . . 2304.8, 2308.4.7

Gypsum . . . . . Table 2506.2, 2508

Moisture protection . . . . . 2304.12.1.2

Roof . . . . . 2304.8

Roof sheathing . . . . . 2308.7.10

Wall . . . . . 2304.6, 2308.5.11

Wood structural panels . . . . . 2303.1.5

**SHIPPING CONTAINERS**

(see INTERMODAL SHIPPING CONTAINERS)

<b>SHOPPING CENTERS</b>	
(see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)	
<b>SHOTCRETE</b>	1908
<b>SHUTTERS, FIRE</b>	
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES)	716.2.1
<b>SIDEWALKS</b>	105.2, G112.4
Live loads	Table 1607.1
<b>SIGNS</b>	3107, Appendix H
→     Accessibility	1013.4, Chapter 11B
Accessible means of egress	1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11
Animated devices	.H108
Construction	H105, H107
Covered and open mall building	402.6.4
Doors	1010.2.4, 1010.2.12, 1010.2.13
Electrical	.H106
Elevators	1124A, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
Encroachment, public right-of-way	3202.3.1
Exit	1013, 2702.2
Floor loads	106.1
Ground	.H109
Height limitation	H109.1, H112.4
Illumination	H106.1
Luminous	403.5.5, 1013.5, 1025
Marquee	.H113
Obstruction	1003.3.2, 1003.3.3, H103
Occupant load, assembly	1004.9
Plastic	.2611, D102.2.10
Portable	.H114
Projecting	.H112
Protruding objects	1003.3
Roof	.H110
Stairway identification	1023.8, 1023.9
Standpipe control valve	905.7.1
Toilet room	2902.4, 2902.4.1
Walls	703.4, H111
<b>SITE DRAWINGS</b>	107.2.6
<b>SITE WORK</b>	3304
<b>SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES [OSHPD 2] 1225</b>	
Application	1225.2
Definitions	1225.3
Scope	1225.1
<b>COMMON ELEMENTS</b>	1225.4
Administration space	1225.4.3
Dietetic service space	1225.4.2
Employee dressing rooms and lockers	1225.4.8
Housekeeping rooms	1225.4.6
Laundry	1225.4.7
Nursing service space	1225.4.1
Sterile supplies	1225.4.4
Storage	1225.4.5
<b>OPTIONAL SERVICES</b>	1225.6
General	1225.6.1
Occupational therapy service	1225.6.3
Physical therapy service	1225.6.2
Social work space	1225.6.5
Special treatment program service	1225.6.6
Speech pathology and/or audiology service	1225.6.4
<b>SKILLED NURSING UNIT MODELS</b>	1225.5
<b>HOUSEHOLD MODEL</b>	1225.5.2
Cluster/household unit and resident unit	1225.5.2.2
General construction	1225.5.2.1
Resident living area	1225.5.2.5
Resident room	1225.5.2.3
Resident support area	1225.5.2.4
Staff support area	1225.5.2.6
<b>MEDICAL MODEL</b>	1225.5.1
Activity programming space	1225.5.1.4
General construction	1225.5.1.1
Nursing service space	1225.5.1.2
Pharmaceutical service space	1225.5.1.3
<b>SKYLIGHTS</b>	2405, 3106.3
Light, required	1204.2
Loads	2404
Plastic	.2610
Protection from adjacent construction	3307.1
Vertical opening protective	712.1.15
<b>SLAB ON GROUND, CONCRETE</b>	1907, 2304.12.1.4
<b>SLATE SHINGLES</b>	1507.7, 1513
<b>SLEEPING UNITS</b>	202
Accessibility	Chapter 11A, 11B
Cooking appliances	420.11, 420.11.2
Group I	308
Group R	310
Scoping	101.2
Separation	420.2, 420.3
<b>SMOKE ALARMS</b>	202
Bathrooms	907.2.11.4
Cooking appliances	907.2.11.3
Live/work unit	508.5.7, 907.2.11.2
Multiple-station	907.2.11
Residential aircraft hangars	412.4.3, 412.4.4, 907.2.22
Residential occupancies	420.6, 907.2.11
Single-station	907.2.11
<b>SMOKE BARRIERS</b>	202
Construction	407.5, 709.4, 909.5
Doors	709.5, 716.2.2.1, 909.5.3
Fire-resistance rating	703, 709.3

**INDEX**

Glazing, rated . . . . .	716.3.4
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.8
Joints . . . . .	709.7, 715
Marking . . . . .	703.4, 703.5
Materials . . . . .	709.2
Opening protection . . . . .	709.5, 714.4, 714.5.4, 716, 717.5.5, 909.5.3
Penetrations. . . . .	709.6, 714
Smoke control . . . . .	909.5
Special provisions	
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.2, 422.3, 709.5.1
Group I-1 . . . . .	420.6, 709.5.1
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.5
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.6, 408.7
Underground . . . . .	405.4.2, 405.4.3
<b>SMOKE COMPARTMENT</b> . . . . .	202, 407, 408, 422
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)	
<b>SMOKE CONTROL</b> . . . . .	909
Amusement areas, special . . . . .	411.1
Atrium buildings . . . . .	404.5
Covered and open mall building . . . . .	402.7.2
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.9
High-rise (smoke removal). . . . .	403.4.7, 1023.12
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.19
Stages . . . . .	410.2.7.2
Standby power systems. . . . .	909.11, 909.20.7.2, 2702.2
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.5
<b>SMOKE DAMPERS</b> . . . . .	202, 717.2, 717.3, 717.4, 717.5
<b>SMOKE DETECTORS</b> . . . . .	202
Covered and open mall building .	402.8.6.1, 907.2.21
High-rise buildings . . . . .	403.4.1, 907.2.14
HPM . . . . .	415.11.10.3
Institutional I-2 . . . . .	407.8
Smoke-activated doors . . . . .	716.2.6.6
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.3
Underground buildings. . . . .	907.2.19
<b>SMOKE DEVELOPMENT</b> . . . . .	202, 803.1.2, Table 803.13
<b>SMOKE EXHAUST SYSTEMS</b>	
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.5, 907.2.19, 909.2
<b>SMOKE PARTITIONS</b> . . . . .	202, 710
Continuity . . . . .	710.4
Doors . . . . .	710.5
Ducts and air transfer openings. . . . .	710.8
Fire-resistance rating . . . . .	710.3
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.8
Joints . . . . .	710.7
Marking . . . . .	703.4, 703.5
Materials . . . . .	710.2
Opening protection . . . . .	710.5, 717.5.7
Penetrations. . . . .	710.6
Special provisions	
Atriums . . . . .	404.6
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.3
<b>SMOKE REMOVAL (High rise)</b> . . . . .	403.4.7
<b>SMOKE VENTS</b> . . . . .	410.2.7.1, 910
<b>SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURES</b> . . . . .	202, 403.5.4, 1023.12
Design . . . . .	909.20
<b>SNOW LOAD</b> . . . . .	1608
Glazing . . . . .	2404
<b>SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS</b>	
(see FOUNDATION) . . . . .	Chapter 18, <i>Chapter 18A</i>
Depth of footings . . . . .	1809.4
Evacuation, grading and fill . . . . .	1804, 3304, J106, J107
Expansive. . . . .	1803.5.3, 1808.6
Flood hazard . . . . .	1804.5
Footing and foundations. . . . .	1808
Footing on or adjacent to slopes . . . . .	1808.7, 3304.1.3
Foundation walls . . . . .	1807.1.5, 3304.1.4
Geotechnical investigations . . . . .	1803
Grading . . . . .	1804.4, Appendix j
Load-bearing values. . . . .	1806
Soil boring and sampling . . . . .	1803.4
Soil lateral load. . . . .	1610
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.6
<b>SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	3111
Photovoltaic systems . . . . .	3111.3
Roof live load . . . . .	3111.1.2
Solar thermal systems . . . . .	3111.2
Wind resistance . . . . .	3111.1.1
<b>SORORITIES</b> . . . . .	310.3
<b>SOUND TRANSMISSION</b> . . . . .	1206
<b>SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS</b>	
(see INSULATON) . . . . .	720
<b>SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION</b> . . . . .	Chapter 31
Automatic vehicular gates . . . . .	3110
Awnings and canopies (see AWNINGS and CANOPIES) . . . . .	3105
Marquees (see MARQUEES) . . . . .	3106
Membrane structures (see MEMBRANE STRUCTURES) . . . . .	3102
New materials . . . . .	1702
Pedestrian walkways and tunnels (see WALKWAYS and TUNNELED WALKWAYS) . . . . .	3104
Signs (see SIGNS) . . . . .	3107
Solar energy systems. . . . .	3111
Swimming pool enclosures and safety devices (see SWIMMING POOL) . . . . .	3109
Telecommunication and broadcast towers (see TOWERS) . . . . .	3108

Temporary structures . . . . .	3103	413
(see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES) . . . . .		
<b>SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS</b>		
(see INSPECTIONS) . . . . .	Chapter 17,	
	110.3.10	
Alternative test procedure . . . . .	1707	
Approvals . . . . .	1703	
Continuous special inspection . . . . .	202	
Contractor responsibilities . . . . .	1704.4	
Design strengths of materials . . . . .	1706	
General . . . . .	1701	
In-situ load tests . . . . .	1708	
Periodic special inspection . . . . .	202	
<i>Mass timber construction</i> . . . . .	1705.5.7, 1705A.5.7	
<i>Periodic special inspection</i> . . . . .	202	
Preconstruction load tests . . . . .	1709	
<i>Special inspections</i> . . . . .	1705	
Special inspections . . . . .	1705	
Statement of special inspections . . . . .	1704.3	
Structural observations . . . . .	1704.6	
Testing seismic resistance . . . . .	1705.13	
<b>SPECIAL INSPECTOR</b> . . . . .	202	
Qualifications . . . . .	1704.2.1	
<b>SPIRAL STAIRWAYS</b> . . . . .	1011.10	
Construction . . . . .	1011.2, 1011.3, 1011.10	
Exceptions . . . . .	1011.5.2, 1011.5.3, 1011.5.5.3, 1011.10	
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.3.4	
Live/work . . . . .	508.5.5	
Stages . . . . .	410.5.3.4	
<b>SPORTS ACTIVITY, AREA OF</b>		
(see RECREATIONAL FACILITIES) . . . . .	202	
<b>SPRAY APPLICATION OF FLAMMABLE FINISHES</b> . . . . .	416	
<b>SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	202	
Application . . . . .	704.13	
Inspection . . . . .	1705.15, 1705.16	
Steel column calculated fire resistance . . .	722.5.2.2	
<b>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, AUTOMATIC</b> . . . . .	903, 3312	
Exempt locations . . . . .	903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2	
Fire department location . . . . .	912	
Limited area sprinkler systems . . . . .	903.3.8	
Signs . . . . .	914.2	
<b>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, REQUIRED</b> . . . . .	903	
Aircraft related . . . . .	412.2.4, 412.3.6, 412.4.5	
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.4, 903.2.2	
Amusement areas, special . . . . .	411.2	
Assembly . . . . .	903.2.1, 1030.6.2.3	
Atrium . . . . .	404.3	
Basements . . . . .	903.2.11.1	
Building area . . . . .	506.2	
Combustible storage . . . . .	413	
Commercial kitchen . . . . .	903.2.11.5	
Construction . . . . .	903.2.12	
Covered and open mall building . . . . .	402.5	
Drying rooms . . . . .	417.4	
Education . . . . .	903.2.3	
Exempt locations . . . . .	903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2	
Factory . . . . .	903.2.4	
Fire areas . . . . .	707.3.10	
Hazardous materials . . . . .	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 903.2.11.4	
Hazardous occupancies . . . . .	415.4, 415.11.7.4, 415.11.12, 705.8.1, 903.2.5	
Height increase . . . . .	Table 504.3	
High-rise buildings . . . . .	403.3, 903.2.11.3	
Incidental uses . . . . .	Table 509.1	
Institutional . . . . .	407.7, 408.11, 420.5, 903.2.6, 903.3.2	
Laundry chutes, refuse chutes, termination rooms and incinerator rooms . . . . .	713.13, 903.2.11.2	
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5.7, 903.2.8	
Mercantile . . . . .	903.2.7	
Mezzanines . . . . .	505.2.1, 505.2.3, 505.3.2	
Multistory buildings . . . . .	903.2.11.3	
Occupied roofs . . . . .	503.1.4	
Parking garages . . . . .	406.6.3, 903.2.9.1, 903.2.10.1	
Play structures . . . . .	424.3	
Residential . . . . .	420.4, 903.2.8, 903.3.2	
Solar photovoltaic power systems . . . . .	903.3.1.1.3	
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.2	
Spray finishing booth . . . . .	416.5	
Stages . . . . .	410.6	
Storage . . . . .	903.2.9, 903.2.10	
Supervision (see SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION) . . . . .	903.4	
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.3, 903.2.11.1	
Unlimited area . . . . .	507	
<b>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION</b> . . . . .	903.4	
Service . . . . .	901.6	
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.3	
<b>STAGES AND PLATFORMS</b> . . . . .	202, 303, 410	
Dressing rooms . . . . .	410.4	
Fire barrier wall . . . . .	410.4.1, 410.4.2	
Floor finish and floor covering . . . . .	410.2, 410.3, 804.4, 805.1	
Horizontal assembly . . . . .	410.4.1, 410.4.2	
Means of egress . . . . .	410.5	
Platform, temporary . . . . .	410.3.1	
Platform construction . . . . .	410.3, 603.1	
Proscenium curtain . . . . .	410.2.5	

## INDEX

Proscenium wall.....	410.2.4
Roof vents .....	410.2.7.1
Scenery .....	410.2.6
Smoke control .....	410.2.7.2
Sprinkler protection .....	410.6
Stage construction.....	410.2, 603.1
Standpipes.....	410.7, 905.3.4
Technical production areas ..	202, 410.2.2, 410.5.3
Ventilation .....	410.2.7
<b>STAIRWAY (see ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES, SPIRAL STAIRWAYS, STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION and STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE)</b>	
<b>STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
Alternating tread .....	1011.14
Circular (see Curved)	
Construction.....	1011.7
Curved.....	1011.4, 1011.9
Discharge barrier.....	1023.8
During construction .....	3310.1
Elevators .....	1011.12.1, 1023.4, 1023.10, 3002.7
Enclosure under.....	1011.7.3, 1011.7.4
Exit access.....	1019
Exterior exit .....	1027, 1028.2
Fireblocking .....	718.2.4
Guards.....	1015.2, 1015.3, 1607.8, 1607.9
Handrails .....	1011.11, 1014, 1607.8, 1607.9
Headroom .....	1011.3
Illumination.....	1008.2, 1204.4, 1204.5
Interior exit.....	1023
Ladders .....	408.3.5, 410.5.3.4, 1011.15, 1011.16
Landings .....	1011.6, 1011.8
Live load .....	Table 1607.1, 1607.9
Locking .....	1010.2.7
Luminous.....	403.5.5, 411.6.1, 1025
Roof access.....	1011.12
Seismic anchorage .....	2308.4.10
Spiral (see SPIRAL STAIRWAYS)....	408.3.4, 410.5.3.4, 508.5.5, 1011.10
Stepped aisles .....	1030.14.2
Transitions .....	1030.9.7, 1030.9.8, 1030.10
Travel distance .....	1017.3.1
Treads and risers.....	1011.4, 1011.5
Width/capacity .....	1005.3.1, 1011.2
Winders .....	1011.4, 1011.5, 1011.10
<b>STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE</b> .....	713.1, 1019, 1023
Accessibility .....	1009.3
Construction.....	1019, 1023.2
Discharge.....	1023.3.1, 1028.2
Doors .....	716.2.6.1, 1010.2.7
Elevators within .....	1023.4, 3002.7
Exit access .....	1019
Exterior walls .....	705.2, 707.4, 708.5, 713.6, 1023.2, 1027.6
Fire-resistant construction .....	1019.2, 1023.2
Group I-2 .....	1019.4
Group I-3 .....	408.3.8, 1019.4
High-rise.....	403.5
Penetrations.....	1023.5
Pressurization .....	909.6, 909.20.5, 1023.12
Smokeproof .....	403.5.4, 405.7.2, 909.20, 1023.12
Space below, use .....	1011.7.3, 1011.7.4
Ventilation .....	1023.6
<b>STANDARDS (see REFERENCED STANDARDS)</b>	
<b>STANDBY POWER</b> .....	2702.1, 2702.2, 2702.4
Atriums .....	404.7, 2702.2
Covered and open mall buildings..	402.7.3, 2702.2
Elevators .....	1009.4, 2702.2, 3003.1, 3007.8, 3008.8
Fuel line piping protection .....	2702.1.2
Hazardous occupancy .....	414.5.2, 415.11.11, 421.7, 2702.2
High-rise.....	403.4.8, 2702.2
Horizontal sliding doors .....	1010.3.3, 2702.2
Membrane structures .....	2702.2
Platform lifts .....	1009.5, 2702.2
Smoke control .....	909.11, 2702.2
Smokeproof enclosure .....	909.20.7.2, 2702.2
Special inspection .....	1705.13.6
Underground buildings.....	405.8, 2702.2
<b>STANDPIPE AND HOSE SYSTEMS</b>	
(see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED) .....	905, 3106.4, 3308.1.1, 3311
Cabinet locks .....	905.7.2
Dry .....	905.8
Hose connection location.....	905.1, 905.4, 905.5, 905.6, 912
<b>STANDPIPES, REQUIRED</b>	
Assembly .....	905.3.1, 905.3.2, 905.3.4
Covered and open mall buildings..	402.7.1, 905.3.3
During construction .....	905.10, 3311
Elevators, fire service access.....	3007.9
Helistops .....	905.3.6
Marinas .....	905.3.7
Parking garages.....	406.5.8
Roof gardens and landscaped roofs .....	905.3.8
Stages .....	410.7, 905.3.4
Underground buildings.....	405.9, 905.3.5
<b>STATE LAW</b> .....	102.2
<b>STEEL</b> .....	Chapter 22, Chapter 22A
Bolting .....	2204.2
Cable structures .....	2208
Calculated fire resistance .....	722.5

## INDEX

Cold-formed . . . . .	202, 2210, 2211	423
Composite structural steel and concrete . . . . .	2206	
Conditions of restraint . . . . .	703.2.1.3	
Decks . . . . .	2210.1.1	
Identification . . . . .	2202	
Joists . . . . .	202, 2207	
Open-web joist . . . . .	2207	
Parapet walls . . . . .	1503.3, 1503.5	
Protection . . . . .	2203	
Seismic provisions . . . . .	2205.2, 2206.2, 2207.1.1, 2210.2, 2211.1.1	
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.3	
Storage racks . . . . .	2209	
Structural steel . . . . .	2205	
Welding . . . . .	2204.1	
<b>STONE VENEER</b> . . . . .	1404.7	
Slab-type . . . . .	1404.8	
<b>STOP WORK ORDERS</b> . . . . .	115	
<b>STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)</b> . . . . .	311	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	
Accessory . . . . .	311.1.1	
Area . . . . .	406.5.4, 406.5.5, 406.6.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508	
Equipment platforms. . . . .	505.2	
Group provisions		
Hazard storage, low, Group S-2 . . . . .	311.3	
Hazard storage, moderate, Group S-1 . . . . .	311.2	
Hazardous material display and storage . . . . .	414.2.5	
Height . . . . .	406.5.4, 406.6.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510	
Incidental uses . . . . .	509	
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804	
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1	
Means of egress		
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5	
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.2.1	
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4	
Accessory . . . . .	311.1.1, 508.2	
Parking above/below . . . . .	510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9	
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2	
Occupancy exception . . . . .	311.1.1	
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902	
Special provisions		
Aircraft related occupancies . . . . .	412	
High-piled combustible . . . . .	413	
Parking garages . . . . .	406, 510	
Sprinkler protection. . . . .	903.2.10	
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.3, 507.4, 507.5	
<b>STORM SHELTER</b> . . . . .	423	
Education . . . . .	423.5	
Emergency operation facilities . . . . .	423.4	
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)		
Risk category . . . . .	1604.5.1	
<b>STRENGTH</b>		
Design requirements . . . . .	1604.2	
Masonry . . . . .	202	
Nominal . . . . .	202	
Required . . . . .	202	
<b>STRENGTH DESIGN</b> . . . . .	202, 1604.1	
Factored load . . . . .	202	
Limit state . . . . .	202	
Load combinations . . . . .	1605	
Load factor . . . . .	202	
Masonry . . . . .	2108	
<b>STRUCTURAL DESIGN</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 16, 107.2.7</i> <i>Chapter 16A</i>	
Aluminum . . . . .	<i>Chapter 20</i>	
Concrete . . . . .	<i>Chapter 19, Chapter 19A</i>	
Foundations . . . . .	<i>Chapter 18, Chapter 18A</i>	
Masonry . . . . .	<i>Chapter 21, Chapter 21A</i>	
Steel . . . . .	<i>Chapter 22, Chapter 22A</i>	
Wood. . . . .	<i>Chapter 23</i>	
<b>STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION</b> . . . . .	202, 1704.6	
<b>STUCCO</b> . . . . .	2512	
<b>SUSCEPTIBLE BAY</b> . . . . .	202	
Ponding instability . . . . .	1611.2	
<b>SWIMMING POOL</b> . . . . .	3109	
Flood provisions . . . . .	<i>G112.5</i>	
Glass. . . . .	2406.4	
Toilet facilities for public pools . . . . .	2902.1.1, Table 2902.1	
<b>T</b>		
<b>TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS</b> . . . . .	410.2.2, 410.5.3	
<b>TELEPHONE EXCHANGES</b> . . . . .	304	
<b>TELESCOPIC SEATING</b> (see FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING)		
<b>TEMPORARY STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	3103	
Certificate of occupancy . . . . .	108.3, 111.3	
Conformance . . . . .	108.2, 3103.1.1	
Construction documents . . . . .	3103.2	
Encroachment, public rights-of-way . . . . .	3202.3	
Flood provisions . . . . .	<i>G113</i>	
Means of egress . . . . .	3103.4	
Permit . . . . .	108.1, 3103.1.2	
Power, temporary . . . . .	108.3, 112.2	
Termination of approval . . . . .	108.4	

**INDEX****TENANT SEPARATION**

Covered and open mall building . . . 402.4.2.1, 708.1

**TENTS (see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES)****TERMITES, PROTECTION FROM** . . . . . 2304.12**TERRA COTTA** . . . . . 1404.9, 1411**TESTING**

Automatic fire-extinguishing systems . . . . . 904.4

Automatic water mist systems . . . . . 904.11.3

Building official required. . . . . 104.11.1

Carbon dioxide systems . . . . . 904.8

Clean agent system. . . . . 904.10

Dry chemical systems . . . . . 904.6

Emergency and standby power . . . . . 2702.4

Fire alarm systems . . . . . 907.7, 907.8

Fire pumps. . . . . 913.5

Fire-resistant materials . . . . . 703.2

Foam systems . . . . . 904.7

Glazing. . . . . 2406, 2408.2.1

Halon systems . . . . . 904.9

Personnel and material hoists . . . . . 3004.4

Roof tile . . . . . 1504.3.1

Seismic . . . . . 1704.2

Smoke control . . . . . 909.3, 909.5.2, 909.10.2,

909.12.1, 909.13.3, 909.18,

909.20.7.3, 909.21.7, 1705.19

Soils. . . . . 1803

Sound transmission. . . . . 1208

Sprinkler protection . . . . . 903.5

Structural (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS)

Wet chemical systems . . . . . 904.5

**TESTING AGENCY (definition)** . . . . . 202**THEATERS [see ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A), PROJECTION ROOMS and STAGES AND PLATFORMS]****THERMAL BARRIER,  
FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION** . . . . . 2603.4, 2603.5.2**THERMAL-INSULATING MATERIALS  
(see INSULATION)** . . . . . 712**TILE** . . . . . 202

Ceramic (see CERAMIC TILE)

Fire resistance, clay or shale . . . . . 721.1

**TODDLER** . . . . . 202**TOILETS and TOILET ROOMS** . . . Chapter 29, 3305

Accessible . . . . . 1127A, 1134A, 1607.9.2

Construction/finish materials . . . . . 1210

Door locking . . . . . 2902.3.5

Family or assisted-use. . . . . 2902.1.3, 2902.2.1

Fixture count . . . . . Table 2902.1

Grab bar live loads. . . . . 1607.9.2

Lavatory distribution. . . . . 2902.1.4

Location . . . . . 2902.3.1, 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3, 2903.3.6

Partitions . . . . . 1210.3

Privacy . . . . . 1210.3

Public facilities . . . . . 2902.3, 3114

Signs . . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B, 1143A, 2902.4, 2902.4.1

Single user . . . . . 2902.1.3

Ventilation . . . . . 1202.5.2.1

**TORNADO SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)****TOWERS**

Airport traffic control . . . . . 412.2

Cooling . . . . . 1511.4

Location and access . . . . . 3108.2

Radio . . . . . 3108

Television . . . . . 3108

**TOXIC MATERIALS****(see HIGH-HAZARD OCCUPANCY (GROUP H))**

Classification . . . . . 307.6, 414, 415

Gas detection system. . . . . 415.11.7, 421.5, 908.3

**TRANSIENT LODGING (definition)** . . . . . 202**TRAVEL DISTANCE**

Area of refuge . . . . . 1009.6.1

Assembly seating. . . . . 1030.7

Atrium. . . . . 404.9

Balcony, exterior . . . . . 1017.2.1

Care suites (Group I-2) . . . . . 407.4.2, 407.4.4

Common path of travel. . . . . 1006.2.1

Drinking fountains . . . . . 2902.5

Exit access. . . . . 1017.2

Mall. . . . . 402.8.5, 402.8.6

Measurement. . . . . 1017.3

Refrigeration machinery/  
refrigerated rooms . . . . . 1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3Smoke compartments  
(Group I-2 and I-3) . . . . . 407.5, 408.6, 408.9

Special amusement areas . . . . . 411.2

Stories with one exit. . . . . 1006.3.4

Toilet facilities. . . . . 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3

**TREADS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)**

Concentrated live load. . . . . Table 1607.1

**TREATED WOOD** . . . . . 202

Fire-retardant-treated wood . . . . . 2303.2

Pressure-treated wood. . . . . 2303.1.9

Stress adjustments. . . . . 2306.1.3

**TRUSSES**

Cold-formed steel . . . . . 2211.1.3

Fire resistance. . . . . 704.5

Materials . . . . . Chapter 6

Metal-plate-connected wood . . . . . 2303.4.6

Wood . . . . . 2303.4

**TSUNAMI** . . . . . 202

Flood hazard . . . . . Appendix M

Loads . . . . . 1615

**TUNNELED WALKWAY** . . . . . 3104, 3202.1

**INDEX**

<b>TURNSTILES</b> .....	1010.5
<b>U</b>	
<b>UMBRELLA STRUCTURE</b> .....	202, 3103
<b>UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS</b> .....	405
Alarms and detection .....	405.6
Compartmentation .....	405.4
Construction type .....	405.2
Elevators .....	405.4.3
Emergency power loads .....	405.8, 2702.2
Means of egress .....	405.7
Smoke barrier .....	405.4.2, 405.4.3
Smoke exhaust/control .....	405.5
Smokeproof enclosure .....	405.7.2, 1023.12
Sprinkler protection .....	405.3
Standby power .....	405.8, 2702.2
Standpipe system .....	405.9, 905.3.5
<b>UNDERLAYMENT</b> .....	202, 1507.1.1, 1507.2.3, 1507.3.3, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3, 1507.6.3, 1507.7.3, 1507.8.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.9.3, 1507.16.3, 1507.17.3
Application .....	1507.1.1, 1507.3.3, 1507.17.4
Ice barrier .....	1507.1.2, 1507.2.7, 1507.5.4, 1507.6.4, 1507.7.4, 1507.8.4, 1507.9.4, 1507.16.4
<b>UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS</b> .....	507
<b>UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT</b> <i>(see STRUCTURES, UNSAFE)</i> .....	116
Appeals .....	113, Appendix B
Revocation of permit .....	105.6
Stop work orders .....	115
Utilities disconnection .....	112.3
<b>UNSTABLE MATERIALS</b> .....	307.3, Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.5, 415.7.1, 415.9
<b>UNUSABLE SPACE</b> .....	711.2.6
<b>USE AND OCCUPANCY</b> .....	Chapter 3
Accessory .....	508.2
Classification .....	302.1
Detailed requirements based on occupancy and use .....	Chapter 4
Incidental uses .....	509, Table 509.1
Mixed .....	508.3, 508.4
Use designation .....	302.2
<b>UTILITIES</b> .....	112
Service connection .....	112.1
Service disconnection .....	112.3
Temporary connection .....	112.2

<b>UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS</b>	
<b>OCCUPANCY (GROUP U)</b> .....	312
Accessibility .....	Chapter 11A, 11B
Agricultural buildings .....	Appendix C
Area .....	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Flood provisions .....	Appendix G
Height .....	503, 504, 508
Incidental uses .....	509
Live loads .....	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Exit signs .....	1013.1
Stairway, exit access .....	1019
Mixed occupancies .....	508.3, 508.4
Special provisions	
Private garages and carports .....	406.3
Residential aircraft hangars .....	412.4
Sprinkler protection .....	903.2.11
Travel distance .....	1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1017.1
<b>V</b>	
<b>VALUATION OR VALUE (see FEES, PERMIT)</b> .....	109.3
<b>VEGETATIVE</b>	
Artificial decorative .....	419, 419.1
Vegetative roofs .....	202, 1507.15
<b>VAPOR RETARDERS</b> .....	1405
<b>VEHICLE BARRIER SYSTEMS</b> .....	202, 406.4.2, 1607.10
<b>VEHICLE SHOW ROOMS</b> .....	304
<b>VEHICULAR FUELING</b> .....	406.7
<b>VEHICULAR GATES</b> .....	202, 3110
<b>VEHICULAR REPAIR</b> .....	406.8
<b>VENEER</b>	
Cement plaster .....	1404.15, 1411
Fastening .....	1404.17
Fiber-cement siding .....	1404.16, 1411
Glazing .....	1404.12, 1411
Masonry, adhered .....	1404.10, 2101.2.1, 2103.2.4
Masonry, anchored .....	1404.6, 1411, 2101.2.1
Metal .....	1404.11
Plastic .....	1411, 2605
Slab-type .....	1404.8, 1411
Stone .....	1404.7, 1411
Terra cotta .....	1404.9, 1411
Vinyl .....	1404.14, 1411
Wood .....	1404.5
<b>VENTILATION (see MECHANICAL)</b> .....	101.4.2
Aircraft paint hangars .....	412.5.6
Attic .....	1202.2, 1503.4
Bathrooms .....	1202.5.2.1

**INDEX**

<b>California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones</b> . . . . .	1202.3.1, Table 1202.3.1
Crawl space . . . . .	1202.4
Exhaust, hazardous . . . . .	1202.6
Exhaust, HPM . . . . .	415.11.1.6
Hazardous . . . . .	414.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.6.8, 415.11.7.4, 415.11.11.1, 415.11.11.2
High-rise stairways . . . . .	1023.11
HPM service corridors . . . . .	415.11.3.2
Live/work unit . . . . .	508.5.10
Mechanical . . . . .	1202.1
Natural . . . . .	1202.5
Parking . . . . .	406.5.2, 406.5.5, 406.5.10, 406.6.2
Projection rooms . . . . .	409.3
Repair garages . . . . .	406.8.1
Roof . . . . .	1202.2
Smoke exhaust . . . . .	910
Smoke removal, high-rise buildings . . . . .	403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosure . . . . .	909.20.3, 909.20.4, 909.20.6, 1023.12
Spray rooms and spaces . . . . .	416.2.2, 416.3
Stages . . . . .	410.2.5, 410.2.7
Under-floor ventilation . . . . .	1202.4
<b>VENTS, PENETRATION PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	714
<b>VERMICULITE, FIRE RESISTANT</b> . . . . .	721
<b>VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION</b>	
Atriums . . . . .	404.6
Duct penetrations . . . . .	717.1
Elevators . . . . .	713.14, 3007.6.1, 3008.6.1
Exceptions . . . . .	1019, 1023.2
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.5
High-rise . . . . .	403.2.1.2, 403.2.2, 403.5.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5.6
Open parking garages . . . . .	406.5.9
Permitted vertical openings . . . . .	712
Shaft enclosure . . . . .	713, 1019, 1023.2
<b>VESTIBULES, EXIT DISCHARGE</b> . . . . .	1028.2
<b>VINYL</b>	
Expanded . . . . .	202, 803.7, 803.8
Rigid . . . . .	1404.14
<b>VIOLATIONS</b> . . . . .	114
<b>VOICE ALARM (see ALARMS, VOICE)</b>	
<b>W</b>	
<b>WALKWAY</b> . . . . .	3104
During construction . . . . .	3306
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.3.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601
<b>LIVE LOAD</b> . . . . .	Table 1607.1
<b>MATERIALS PER CONSTRUCTION TYPE</b> . . . . .	Chapter 6
<b>OPENING PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	716, 717
<b>WALL, EXTERIOR</b> . . . . .	705, 1401
Bearing . . . . .	Chapter 6
<i>California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones</i> . . . . .	1404.3.3
Combustible wall covering . . . . .	1405
Coverings . . . . .	1404
Drawings . . . . .	107.2.4
Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) . . . . .	1407
Exterior structural members . . . . .	704.10
Fire district . . . . .	D102.1, D102.2.6
Fire-resistance ratings . . . . .	703, 705.5, Table 705.5, 706.5.1, 707.4, 1402.4
Flashing, veneered walls . . . . .	1404.4, 1404.10.1, 1405.10.1.2
Foam plastic insulation . . . . .	2603.4.1.4, 2603.5
Glazing, rated . . . . .	715.7
Joints . . . . .	705.9, 714
Light-transmitting plastic panels . . . . .	2607
Materials . . . . .	705.4, 1403.1, 1405
Metal Composite Materials (MCM) . . . . .	1406
Nonbearing . . . . .	Chapter 6
Opening protection . . . . .	705.8, 705.10, 716.2.5.4
Parapets . . . . .	705.11
Performance requirements . . . . .	1402
Projections . . . . .	705.2
Structural stability . . . . .	705.6
Vapor retarders . . . . .	1404.3
Veneer (see VENEER)	
Weather resistance . . . . .	1402.2, 1404.2, 1406.6, 1407.4
Weather-resistant barriers . . . . .	1404.2, 1409.6
<b>WALL, FIRE (see FIRE WALLS)</b>	
<b>WALL, FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATIONS)</b>	
<b>WALL, INTERIOR</b>	
Finishes . . . . .	803, 1210.2
Opening protection . . . . .	716, 717
<b>WALL, INTERIOR NONBEARING (see PARTITIONS)</b>	
<b>WALL, MASONRY</b> . . . . .	202
Wood contact . . . . .	2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.2.1
<b>WALL, PARAPET</b> . . . . .	705.11, 1503.3, 2109.2.4.3
<b>WALL, PARTY (see FIRE WALLS)</b>	
<b>WALL, PENETRATIONS</b> . . . . .	714.4
<b>WALL, RETAINING (see RETAINING WALL)</b>	
<b>WALL, VENEERED (see VENEER)</b> . . . . .	Chapter 14
<b>WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION</b>	
Bracing . . . . .	2308.6

Cutting, notching, boring.....	2308.5.9
Exterior framing .....	2308.5
Fastening schedule .....	Table 2304.10.2
Framing .....	2304.3, 2308.5
Interior bearing partition .....	2308.5.4
Interior nonbearing partition .....	2308.5.1
Openings .....	2308.5.5
Shear walls.....	2305.1, 2306.3
Sheathing (see SHEATHING)	
Studs .....	2308.5.1
Top plates.....	2308.5.3.2
<b>WASTE, CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	420.12
<b>WATER-REACTIVE MATERIALS</b> .....	Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5. 415.8.4
<b>WEATHER PROTECTION</b>	
Exterior walls .....	1404.2
Roofs .....	1503
<b>WEATHER-EXPOSED SURFACES</b>	
<b>WELDING</b> .....	2204.1
Materials, verification of steel reinforcement .....	1705.3.2
Special inspections.....	1705.2, 1705.3.1, 1705.13.3
Splices of reinforcement in masonry..	2107.3, 2108.3
<b>WIND LOAD</b> .....	1609
Basic design wind speed .....	1609.3
Construction documents .....	107, 1603.1.4
Exposure category .....	1609.4
Glazing .....	1609.2, 2404
Hurricane-prone regions .....	202
Masonry, empirical design .....	2109.1.1
Nominal design wind speed .....	1609.3.1
Roofs .....	1504.1, 1609.5, 2308.7.5
Seismic detailing required .....	1604.10
Special inspection .....	1705.12
Statement of special inspections .....	1704.3
Structural observation .....	1704.6.2
Wind tunnel testing .....	1504.3.1.2, 1609.1.1
Windborne debris region .....	202
<b>WINDERS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)</b>	
<b>WINDOW</b>	
Accessibility	
Emergency egress .....	1031
Exterior, structural testing.....	1709.5
Fire (see OPENING PROTECTIVES) ..	716.2, 716.2.8
Glass (see GLAZING) .....	1404.13
Guards .....	1015.8
Required light.....	1204.1, 1204.2
Wells.....	1031.6
<b>WIRES, PENETRATION PROTECTION</b> .....	714
<b>WOOD</b> .....	Chapter 23
Allowable stress design .....	2306
Bracing, walls .....	2308.6
Calculated fire resistance .....	722.6
Ceiling framing .....	2308.7
Connectors and fasteners.....	2304.10
Contacting concrete, masonry or earth.....	2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.1.4, 2304.12.2.1, 2304.12.2.2, 2304.12.2.6
Decay, protection against .....	2304.12
Diaphragms.....	2305.1, 2305.2, 2306.2
Draftstopping.....	718.3, 718.4
End-jointed lumber .....	2303.1.1.2
Fiberboard.....	2303.1.5, Table 2306.3(2)
Fireblocking.....	718.2
Fire-retardant treated .....	2303.2
Floor and roof framing (see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD).....	2304.4
Floor sheathing .....	2304.8
Foundation .....	1807.1.4, 2308.6.7.4
Grade, lumber.....	2303.1.1
Hardboard.....	2303.1.7
Heavy timber construction .....	602.4, 2304.11
Hurricane shutters.....	1609.2
I-joist .....	2303.1.2
Inspection, special ..	1705.5, 1705.12.1, 1705.13.2
Lateral force-resisting systems .....	2305
Light-frame construction, conventional.....	2308
Load and resistance factor design .....	2307
Moisture content .....	2303.1.9.2, 2303.2.6
Nails and staples.....	2303.6
Plywood, hardwood.....	2303.3
Preservative treated .....	1402.5, 1402.6, 2303.1.9
Roof framing (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD) ..	2304.4
Roof sheathing .....	2304.8
Seismic provisions .....	2305, 2306, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10
Shear walls .....	2305, 2306.3
Standards and quality, minimum.....	2303
Structural panels .....	202, 2303.1.5
Supporting concrete or masonry.....	2304.13
Termite, protection against .....	2304.12
Trusses .....	2303.4
Veneer .....	Chapter 14
Wall framing (see WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION) ..	2304.3
Wall sheathing, exterior .....	2304.6
Wood Frame Construction Manual .....	2309
<b>WOOD SHINGLES AND SHAKES</b> .....	1507.8, 1507.9

**INDEX****WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS**

(see WOOD) .....	202, 2303.1.5
Bracing .....	2308.6
Decorative .....	2303.3
Diaphragms .....	2305.2, 2306.2
Fastening .....	2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated .....	2303.2
Performance category .....	202
Quality .....	2303.1.5
Roof sheathing .....	2304.8, 2308.7.10
Seismic shear panels .....	2305.1, 2308.6.6.2
Shear walls .....	2306.3
Sheathing .....	2304.6.1
Standards .....	2306.1
Subfloors .....	805.1.1
Veneer .....	1404.5

**Y**

<b>YARDS OR COURTS</b> .....	202, 1201.1, 1205
Exit discharge .....	1027.4, 1029.1
Group I-2 .....	407.10
Group I-3 .....	408.3.6, 408.6.2
Light, natural .....	1204
Occupant load .....	1004.7
Parking garage, open .....	406.5.5
Unlimited area building .....	507.2, 507.2.1

# HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX

## 2022 California Building Code California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2 Volume 1

||

### HISTORY:

For prior code history, see the History Note Appendix to the *California Building Code* 2019 Triennial Edition, effective January 1, 2020.

1. BSC 05/21, CEC 03/21, HCD 05/21, DSA/AC 01/21, DSA-SS/CC 05/21, SFM 04/21, OSHPD 04/21, 06/21—Adoption by reference of the 2021 *International Building Code* with necessary amendments to become the 2022 *California Building Code*, and repeal of the 2018 edition of the *International Building Code*; effective on January 1, 2023.





INTERNATIONAL  
CODE  
COUNCIL®

Building Confidence, Building Community.

# Code Resources from ICC

Tools to help you learn, interpret and apply the 2022 California Codes

## Significant Changes to the 2022 California Codes

*Practical resources that offer a comprehensive analysis of the critical changes since the previous edition*

Authored by code experts, these useful tools are “must-have” guides to the many important changes in the 2022 California Codes. Key changes are identified then followed by in-depth, expert discussion of how the change affects real world application. A full-color photo, table or illustration is included for each change to further clarify application.



<b>Significant Changes to the California Building Code, 2022 Edition</b>	Search #5521S22
<b>Significant Changes to the California Residential Code, 2022 Edition</b>	Search #5526S22
<b>Significant Changes to the California Fire Code, 2022 Edition</b>	Search #5592S22
<b>Significant Changes to the California Energy Code, 2022 Edition</b>	Search #5523S22

## 2021 Code and Commentary

*The complete I-Code followed by corresponding commentary after each section*

Each title includes the complete code text, including tables and figures, followed by in-depth insight after each code section. Gain a better understanding of the intent of the code and learn to apply or enforce it effectively.



<b>2021 IBC Code and Commentary</b>	Search #3010S21
<b>2021 IRC Code and Commentary</b>	Search #3110S21
<b>2021 IFC Code and Commentary</b>	Search #3410S21
<b>2021 IEBC Code and Commentary</b>	Search #3560S21

## 2021 I-Code Essentials

*A straightforward, focused approach to code fundamentals using non-code language*



A user-friendly, concise approach that facilitates understanding of the essential code provisions. These invaluable companion guides contain detailed full-color illustrations to enhance comprehension, references to corresponding code sections, and a glossary of code and construction terms that clarify their meaning in the context of the code.

<b>Building Code Essentials: Based on the 2021 IBC</b>	Search #4031S21
<b>Residential Code Essentials: Based on the 2021 IRC</b>	Search #4131S21
<b>Fire Code Essentials: Based on the 2021 IFC</b>	Search #4431S21
<b>Existing Building Code Essentials: Based on the 2021 IEBC</b>	Search #4552S21

## 2021 I-Code Study Companions

*The ideal learning tool for exam prep or everyday application*



These comprehensive study guides provide practical learning assignments helpful for independent study or instructor-led programs in the workplace, college courses, or vocational training programs. Each book is organized into study sessions with clear learning objectives, key points for review, code text and commentary applicable to the specific topic, and hundreds of illustrations. A helpful practice quiz at the end of each session allows you to measure your progress along the way.

<b>2021 International Building Code Study Companion</b>	Search #4017S21
<b>2021 International Residential Code Study Companion</b>	Search #4117S21
<b>2021 International Fire Code Study Companion</b>	Search #4407S21
<b>2021 Permit Technician Study Companion</b>	Search #4027S21
<b>2021 Special Inspection Study Companion</b>	Search #4032S21

Browse the latest code tools at [shop.iccsafe.org](http://shop.iccsafe.org)

22-21299



DIGITAL CODES  
P R E M I U M



## Get Digitally Empowered and Enhance Your Code Experience with Premium Complete

- ✓ Search 700+ of the latest codes and standards
- ✓ Classify notes, files and videos into relevant code sections
- ✓ Share your access and content simultaneously
- ✓ View past committee code interpretations
- ✓ View full change history and public comments
- ✓ View real time code change proposals
- ✓ View updates and significant codes changes to I-Codes

**Download our New Premium Mobile App (Beta)**



**Enterprise pricing available.  
Please inquire via [panthony@iccsafe.org](mailto:panthony@iccsafe.org)**



**Sign up for a Free 14-Day Premium Complete trial at [codes.iccsafe.org/trial](https://codes.iccsafe.org/trial)**

22-21293

# 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS | TITLE 24, PART 2, VOLUME 2 OF 2

Based on the 2021 International Building Code®  
California Building Standards Commission



**IMPORTANT NOTICE**

Act now to keep your code up-to-date. The purchase of this code includes a free subscription for all State-issued supplements and errata. To receive these important updates through 2025, you **MUST** register online [www.iccsafe.org/CAL22](http://www.iccsafe.org/CAL22)

# 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS TITLE 24, PART 2, VOLUME 2 OF 2

Based on the 2021 International Building Code®

California Building Standards Commission



**Effective January 1, 2023**

For Errata and Supplement effective dates see the History Note Appendix

2022 California Building Code  
California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Volume 2 of Part 2

First Printing: July 2022

ISBN: 978-1-957212-88-3 (loose-leaf edition)  
ISBN: 978-1-957212-89-0 (PDF download)

COPYRIGHT © 2022  
by  
INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL, INC.

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.** This 2022 *California Building Code*, Volume 2 contains substantial copyrighted material from the 2021 *International Building Code*®, first printing, which is a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council, Inc. (“ICC”). Without separate written permission from the copyright owner, no part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying or recording by or in an information storage and/or retrieval system). For information on use rights and permissions, please contact: ICC Publications, 4051 Flossmoor Road, Country Club Hills, Illinois 60478. Phone: 1-888-ICC-SAFE (422-7233).

Trademarks: “International Code Council,” the “International Code Council” logo, “ICC,” the “ICC” logo, “International Building Code,” “IBC” and other names and trademarks appearing in this publication are registered trademarks of the International Code Council, Inc., and/or its licensors (as applicable), and may not be used without permission.

PRINTED IN THE USA

T027504

## PREFACE

This document is Part 2 of thirteen parts of the official triennial compilation and publication of the adoptions, amendments and repeal of administrative regulations to *California Code of Regulations, Title 24*, also referred to as the *California Building Standards Code*. This part is known as the *California Building Code*.

The *California Building Standards Code* is published in its entirety every three years by order of the California legislature, with supplements published in intervening years. The California legislature delegated authority to various state agencies, boards, commissions and departments to create building regulations to implement the State's statutes. These building regulations, or standards, have the same force of law, and take effect 180 days after their publication unless otherwise stipulated. The *California Building Standards Code* applies to occupancies in the State of California as annotated.

A city, county, or city and county may establish more restrictive building standards reasonably necessary because of local climatic, geological or topographical conditions. Findings of the local condition(s) and the adopted local building standard(s) must generally be filed with the California Building Standards Commission (or other filing if indicated) to become effective, and may not be effective sooner than the effective date of this edition of the *California Building Standards Code*. Local building standards that were adopted and applicable to previous editions of the *California Building Standards Code* do not apply to this edition without appropriate adoption and the required filing.

Should you find publication (e.g., typographical) errors or inconsistencies in this code or wish to offer comments toward improving its format, please address your comments to:

California Building Standards Commission  
2525 Natomas Park Drive, Suite 130  
Sacramento, CA 95833-2936  
  
Phone: (916) 263-0916  
Email: [cbsc@dgs.ca.gov](mailto:cbsc@dgs.ca.gov)  
  
Web page: [www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc)

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The 2022 *California Building Standards Code* (Code) was developed through the outstanding collaborative efforts of the Department of Housing and Community Development, Division of State Architect, Office of the State Fire Marshal, Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development, California Energy Commission, California Department of Public Health, California State Lands Commission, Board of State and Community Corrections and the California Building Standards Commission (Commission).

This collaborative effort included the assistance of the Commission's Code Advisory Committees and many other volunteers who worked tirelessly to assist the Commission in the production of this Code.

*Governor Gavin Newsom*  
*Members of the California Building Standards Commission*  
*Secretary Yolanda Richardson – Chair*  
*Rajesh Patel – Vice-Chair*  
*Erick Mikiten*                   *Elley Klausbruckner*  
*Aaron Stockwell*               *Juvilyn Alegre*  
*Peter Santillan*               *Kent Sasaki*  
*Laura Rambin*  
*Mia Marvelli – Executive Director*  
*Michael L. Nearman – Deputy Executive Director*

For questions on California state agency amendments, please refer to the contact list on page iv.

# CALIFORNIA CODE OF REGULATIONS, TITLE 24

## ***California Agency Information Contact List***

The following state agencies may propose building standards for publication in Title 24. Request notice of such activity with each agency of interest. See Sections 1.2 through 1.14 of the California Building Code (Part 2 of Title 24) for more detailed information on the regulatory jurisdiction of each state agency.

### **Board of State and Community Corrections**

[www.bscc.ca.gov](http://www.bscc.ca.gov).....(916) 445-5073  
 Local Adult and Juvenile  
 Detention Facility Standards

### **California Building Standards Commission**

[www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc) .....(916) 263-0916  
 State Buildings including UC and  
 CSU Buildings, Parking Lot and Walkway Lighting,  
 Green Building Standards for Non-residential Buildings

### **California Energy Commission**

[www.energy.ca.gov](http://www.energy.ca.gov) .....**Energy Hotline** (800) 772-3300  
 Building Efficiency Standards  
 Appliance Efficiency Standards  
 Compliance Manual/Forms

### **California State Lands Commission**

[www.slc.ca.gov](http://www.slc.ca.gov).....(562) 499-6312  
 Marine Oil Terminal Standards

### **California State Library**

[www.library.ca.gov](http://www.library.ca.gov) .....(916) 323-9843

### **Department of Consumer Affairs:**

**Acupuncture Board**  
[www.acupuncture.ca.gov](http://www.acupuncture.ca.gov) .....(916) 515-5200  
 Office Standards

**Board of Pharmacy**  
[www.pharmacy.ca.gov](http://www.pharmacy.ca.gov) .....(916) 518-3100  
 Pharmacy Standards

**Bureau of Barbering and Cosmetology**  
[www.barbercosmo.ca.gov](http://www.barbercosmo.ca.gov) .....(800) 952-5210  
 Barber and Beauty Shop,  
 and College Standards

**Bureau of Household Goods and Services**  
[www.bhgs.dca.ca.gov](http://www.bhgs.dca.ca.gov) .....(916) 999-2041  
 Insulation Testing Standards

**Structural Pest Control Board**  
[www.pestboard.ca.gov](http://www.pestboard.ca.gov) .....(800) 737-8188  
 Structural Standards

**Veterinary Medical Board**  
[www.vmb.ca.gov](http://www.vmb.ca.gov) .....(916) 515-5220  
 Veterinary Hospital Standards

### **Department of Food and Agriculture**

[www.cdfa.ca.gov](http://www.cdfa.ca.gov)  
 Meat & Poultry Packing Plant Standards  
 Rendering & Collection Center Standards.....(916) 900-5004  
 Dairy Standards.....(916) 900-5008

### **Department of Housing and Community Development**

[www.hcd.ca.gov](http://www.hcd.ca.gov) .....(800) 952-8356  
 Residential—Hotels, Motels, Apartments,  
 Single-Family Dwellings; and  
 Permanent Structures in Mobilehome &  
 Special Occupancy Parks  
 (916) 445-3338  
 Factory-Built Housing, Manufactured Housing &  
 Commercial Modular  
 Mobilehome—Permits & Inspections  
 Northern Region—(916) 255-2501  
 Southern Region—(951) 782-4431  
 (800) 952-8356  
 Employee Housing Standards

### **Department of Public Health**

[www.dph.ca.gov](http://www.dph.ca.gov) .....(916) 449-5661  
 Organized Camps Standards  
 Public Swimming Pools Standards

### **Division of the State Architect**

[www.dgs.ca.gov/dsa](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/dsa) .....(916) 445-8100  
**Access Compliance**  
**Fire and Life Safety**  
**Structural Safety**

Public Schools Standards  
 Essential Services Building Standards  
 Community College Standards

### **State Historical Building Safety Board**

Historical Rehabilitation, Preservation,  
 Restoration or Relocation Standards

**Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development**  
**AKA: California Department of Health Care Access and Information (HCAI)**  
[www.hcai.ca.gov](http://www.hcai.ca.gov) .....(916) 440-8300

Hospital Standards  
 Skilled Nursing Facility Standards &  
 Clinic Standards

### **Office of the State Fire Marshal**

[osfm.fire.ca.gov](http://osfm.fire.ca.gov) .....(916) 568-3800  
 Code Development and Analysis  
 Fire Safety Standards

### **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

# **How to Distinguish Between Model Code Language and California Amendments**

*To distinguish between model code language and the incorporated California amendments, including exclusive California standards, California amendments will appear in italics.*

**[BSC]** This is an example of a state agency acronym used to identify an adoption or amendment by the agency. The acronyms will appear at California Amendments and in the Matrix Adoption Tables. Sections 1.2 through 1.14 in Chapter 1, Division 1 of this code, explain the used acronyms, the application of state agency adoptions to building occupancies or building features, the enforcement agency as designated by state law (may be the state adopting agency or local building or fire official), the authority in state law for the state agency to make the adoption and the specific state law being implemented by the agency's adoption. The following acronyms are used in Title 24 to identify the state adopting agency making an adoption.

## **Legend of Acronyms of Adopting State Agencies**

<b>BSC</b>	<i>California Building Standards Commission (see Section 1.2)</i>
<b>BSC-CG</b>	<i>California Building Standards Commission-CALGreen (see Section 1.2.2)</i>
<b>BSCC</b>	<i>Board of State and Community Corrections (see Section 1.3)</i>
<b>SFM</b>	<i>Office of the State Fire Marshal (see Section 1.11)</i>
<b>HCD 1</b>	<i>Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.1)</i>
<b>HCD 2</b>	<i>Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.3)</i>
<b>HCD 1/AC</b>	<i>Department of Housing and Community Development (see Section 1.8.2.1.2)</i>
<b>DSA-AC</b>	<i>Division of the State Architect-Access Compliance (see Section 1.9.1)</i>
<b>DSA-SS</b>	<i>Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (see Section 1.9.2)</i>
<b>DSA-SS/CC</b>	<i>Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (see Section 1.9.2.2)</i>
<b>OSHPD 1</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.1)</i>
<b>OSHPD 1R</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.1)</i>
<b>OSHPD 2</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.2)</i>
<b>OSHPD 3</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.3)</i>
<b>OSHPD 4</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.4)</i>
<b>OSHPD 5</b>	<i>Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (see Section 1.10.5)</i>
<b>DPH</b>	<i>Department of Public Health (see Section 1.7)</i>
<b>AGR</b>	<i>Department of Food and Agriculture (see Section 1.6)</i>
<b>CEC</b>	<i>California Energy Commission (see Section 100 in Part 6, the California Energy Code)</i>
<b>CA</b>	<i>Department of Consumer Affairs (see Section 1.4): Board of Barbering and Cosmetology Board of Examiners in Veterinary Medicine Board of Pharmacy Acupuncture Board Bureau of Household Goods &amp; Services Structural Pest Control Board (SPCB)</i>
<b>SL</b>	<i>State Library (see Section 1.12)</i>
<b>SLC</b>	<i>State Lands Commission (see Section 1.14)</i>
<b>DWR</b>	<i>Department of Water Resources (see Section 1.13 of Chapter 1 of the California Plumbing Code in Part 2 of Title 24)</i>

The state agencies are available to answer questions about their adoptions. Contact information is provided on page iv of this code.

To learn more about the use of this code refer to pages vii and viii. Training materials on the application and use of this code are available at the website of the California Building Standards Commission [www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc](http://www.dgs.ca.gov/bsc).

# California Matrix Adoption Tables

## Format of the California Matrix Adoption Tables

The matrix adoption tables, examples of which follow, are non-regulatory aids intended to show the user which state agencies have adopted and/or amended given sections of the model code. An agency's statutory authority for certain occupancies or building applications determines which chapter or section may be adopted, repealed, amended or added. See Chapter 1, Division I, Sections 1.2 through 1.14 for agency authority, building applications and enforcement responsibilities.

The side headings identify the scope of state agencies' adoption as follows:

### Adopt the entire IBC chapter without state amendments.

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row; this means that particular state agency has adopted the entire model code chapter without any state amendments.

**Example:**

#### CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE-MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

(Matrix Adoption Tables are non-regulatory, intended only as an aid to the user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

#### CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter			X																			
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below								S	A	M	P	L	E									
Chapter/Section																						

### Adopt the entire IBC chapter as amended, state-amended sections are listed below:

If there is an "X" under a particular state agency's acronym on this row, it means that particular state agency has adopted the entire model code chapter; with state amendments.

Each state-amended section that the agency has added to that particular chapter is listed. There will be an "X" in the column, by that particular section, under the agency's acronym, as well as an "X" by each section that the agency has adopted.

**Example:**

#### CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below								S	A	M	P	L	E									
Chapter 1																						
202			X																			

## Adopt only those sections that are listed below:

If there is an “X” under a particular state agency’s acronym on this row, it means that particular state agency is adopting only specific model code or state-amended sections within this chapter. There will be an “X” in the column under the agency’s acronym, as well as an “X” by each section that the agency has adopted.

### Example:

#### CHAPTER 2 – DEFINITIONS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1-AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below				X	X		S	A	M	P	L	E										
Chapter 1																						
202				X	X		S	A	M	P	L	E										
202				X	X			C	O	N	T.											
203				X	X																	
203				X	X																	

## Marginal Markings

Symbols in the margin indicate the status of code changes as follows:

- || This symbol indicates that a change has been made to a California amendment.
- > This symbol indicates deletion of California amendment language.
- | This symbol indicates that a change has been made to International Code Council model language.
- ➔ This symbol indicates deletion of International Code Council model language.

A single asterisk [\*] placed in the margin indicates that text or a table has been relocated within the code. A double asterisk [\*\*] placed in the margin indicates that the text or table immediately following it has been relocated there from elsewhere in the code. The following table indicates such relocations in the 2018 edition of the *International Building Code*.

2021 LOCATION	2018 LOCATION
508.5–508.5.11	419.1–419.9
904.12	904.14
904.13	904.12
904.14	904.13
1010.2	1010.1.9
1010.2.1	1010.1.9.6
1010.2.2	1010.1.9.1
1010.2.3	1010.1.9.2
1010.2.4	1010.1.9.4
1010.2.5	1010.1.9.5
1010.2.6	1010.1.9.6.1
1010.2.7	1010.1.9.12
1010.2.8	1010.1.4.4
1010.2.9	1010.1.10
1010.2.9.3	1010.1.10.1
1010.2.9.4	1010.1.10.2
1010.2.10	1010.1.9.3
1010.2.11	1010.1.9.10
1010.2.12	1010.1.9.9
1010.2.13	1010.1.9.8
1010.2.13.1	1010.1.9.8.1
1010.2.14	1010.1.9.7
1010.2.15	1010.1.9.11
1010.3	1010.1.4
1010.3.1	1010.1.4.1
Table 1010.3.1(1)	Table 1010.1.4.1(1)
Table 1010.3.1(2)	Table 1010.1.4.1(2)
1010.3.1.1	1010.1.4.1.1
1010.3.1.2	1010.1.4.1.2
1010.3.2	1010.1.4.2
1010.3.3	1010.1.4.3
1029.1	1028.4
1029.2	1028.4.2
1029.3	1028.4.2

(continued)

**RELOCATIONS—continued**

<b>2021 LOCATION</b>	<b>2018 LOCATION</b>
1107.3	1109.14
1110.14	1109.12.1
1605.2	605.3.2
1607.14.2.2	1607.13.3
1607.14.4.3	1607.13.5.2.1
2304.12.2.6	2304.12.3
2304.12.2.6.1	2304.12.3.1
2304.12.2.7	2304.12.4
2304.12.2.8	2304.12.5
3301.2.1	1511.2

**Coordination of the International Codes**

The coordination of technical provisions is one of the strengths of the ICC family of model codes. The codes can be used as a complete set of complementary documents, which will provide users with full integration and coordination of technical provisions. Individual codes can also be used in subsets or as stand-alone documents. To make sure that each individual code is as complete as possible, some technical provisions that are relevant to more than one subject area are duplicated in some of the model codes. This allows users maximum flexibility in their application of the I-Codes.

**Maintenance**

The *International Building Code* is kept up to date through the review of proposed changes submitted by code enforcement officials, industry representatives, design professionals and other interested parties. Proposed changes are carefully considered through an open code development process in which all interested and affected parties may participate.

The ICC Code Development Process reflects principles of openness, transparency, balance, due process and consensus, the principles embodied in OMB Circular A-119, which governs the federal government's use of private-sector standards. The ICC process is open to anyone; there is no cost to participate, and people can participate without travel cost through the ICC's cloud-based app, cdp-Access®. A broad cross section of interests are represented in the ICC Code Development Process. The codes, which are updated regularly, include safeguards that allow for emergency action when required for health and safety reasons.

In order to ensure that organizations with a direct and material interest in the codes have a voice in the process, the ICC has developed partnerships with key industry segments that support the ICC's important public safety mission. Some code development committee members were nominated by the following industry partners and approved by the ICC Board:

- American Institute of Architects (AIA)
- National Association of Home Builders (NAHB)
- National Association of State Fire Marshals (NASFM)

The code development committees evaluate and make recommendations regarding proposed changes to the codes. Their recommendations are then subject to public comment and council-wide votes. The ICC's governmental members—public safety officials who have no financial or business interest in the outcome—cast the final votes on proposed changes.

The contents of this work are subject to change through the code development cycles and by any governmental entity that enacts the code into law. For more information regarding the code development process, contact the Codes and Standards Development Department of the International Code Council.

While the I-Code development procedure is thorough and comprehensive, the ICC, its members and those participating in the development of the codes disclaim any liability resulting from the publication or use of the I-Codes, or from compliance or noncompliance with their provisions. The ICC does not have the power or authority to police or enforce compliance with the contents of this code.

## **Code Development Committee Responsibilities (Letter Designations in Front of Section Numbers)**

As mentioned in the preceding material, in each code development cycle, code change proposals to this code are considered at the Committee Action Hearings by 11 different code development committees.

Code change proposals to sections of the code that are preceded by a bracketed letter designation, such as [A], will be considered by a committee other than the building code committee listed for the chapter or appendix on the preceding page. For example, proposed code changes to Section [F] 307.1.1 will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the Committee Action Hearing in the 2021 (Group A) code development cycle.

The bracketed letter designations for committees responsible for portions of this code are as follows:

- [A] = Administrative Code Development Committee
- [BE] = IBC—Egress Code Development Committee
- [BF] = IBC—Fire Safety Code Development Committee
- [BG] = IBC—General Code Development Committee
- [BS] = IBC—Structural Code Development Committee
- [E] = International Commercial Energy Conservation Code Development Committee or International Residential Energy Conservation Code Development Committee
- [EB] = International Existing Building Code Development Committee
- [F] = International Fire Code Development Committee
- [FG] = International Fuel Gas Code Development Committee
- [M] = International Mechanical Code Development Committee
- [P] = International Plumbing Code Development Committee

For the development of the 2024 edition of the I-Codes, there will be two groups of code development committees and they will meet in separate years, as shown in the following Code Development Hearings Table.

Code change proposals submitted for code sections that have a letter designation in front of them will be heard by the respective committee responsible for such code sections. Because different committees hold Committee Action Hearings in different years, proposals for the IBC will be heard by committees in both the 2021 (Group A) and the 2022 (Group B) code development cycles.

For instance, every section of Chapter 16 is the responsibility of the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee. As noted in the preceding table, that committee will hold its Committee Action Hearings in 2022 to consider code change proposals for the chapters for which it is responsible. Therefore any proposals received for Chapter 16 of this code will be assigned to the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee and will be considered in 2022, during the Group B code change cycle.

It is very important that anyone submitting code change proposals understands which code development committee is responsible for the section of the code that is the subject of the code change proposal. For further information on the Code Development Committee responsibilities, please visit the ICC website at [www.iccsafe.org/current-code-development-cycle](http://www.iccsafe.org/current-code-development-cycle).

### CODE DEVELOPMENT HEARINGS

<b>Group A Codes (Heard in 2021, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 11, 2021)</b>	<b>Group B Codes (Heard in 2022, Code Change Proposals Deadline: January 10, 2022)</b>
<b>International Building Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Egress (Chapters 10, 11, Appendix E)</li> <li>– Fire Safety (Chapters 7, 8, 9, 14, 26)</li> <li>– General (Chapters 2–6, 12, 27–33, Appendices A, B, C, D, K, N)</li> </ul>	Administrative Provisions (Chapter 1 of all codes except IECC, IRC and IgCC; IBC Appendix O; the appendices titled “Board of Appeals” for all codes except IECC, IRC, IgCC, ICCPC and IZC; administrative updates to currently referenced standards; and designated definitions)
<b>International Fire Code</b>	<b>International Building Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Structural (Chapters 15–25, Appendices F, G, H, I, J, L, M)</li> </ul>
<b>International Fuel Gas Code</b>	<b>International Existing Building Code</b>
<b>International Mechanical Code</b>	<b>International Energy Conservation Code—Commercial</b>
<b>International Plumbing Code</b>	<b>International Energy Conservation Code—Residential</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– IECC—Residential</li> <li>– IRC—Energy (Chapter 11)</li> </ul>
<b>International Property Maintenance Code</b>	<b>International Green Construction Code (Chapter 1)</b>
<b>International Private Sewage Disposal Code</b>	<b>International Residential Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– IRC—Building (Chapters 1–10, Appendices AE, AF, AH, AJ, AK, AL, AM, AO, AQ, AR, AS, AT, AU, AV, AW)</li> </ul>
<b>International Residential Code</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– IRC—Mechanical (Chapters 12–23)</li> <li>– IRC—Plumbing (Chapters 25–33, Appendices AG, AI, AN, AP)</li> </ul>	
<b>International Swimming Pool and Spa Code</b>	
<b>International Wildland-Urban Interface Code</b>	
<b>International Zoning Code</b>	

Note: Proposed changes to the ICCPC will be heard by the code development committee noted in brackets [ ] in the text of the ICCPC.

## Effective Use of the International Building Code

The IBC is a model code that provides minimum requirements to safeguard the public health, safety and general welfare of the occupants of new and existing buildings and structures. The IBC is fully compatible with the ICC family of codes, including: the IECC, IEBC, IFC, IFGC, IgCC, IMC, IPC, IPSDC, IPMC, IRC, ISPSC, IWUIC, IZC and ICCPC.

The IBC addresses structural strength, means of egress, sanitation, adequate lighting and ventilation, accessibility, energy conservation and life safety in regard to new and existing buildings, facilities and systems. The codes are promulgated on a 3-year cycle to allow for new construction methods and technologies to be incorporated into the codes. Alternative materials, designs and methods not specifically addressed in the code can be approved by the building official where the proposed materials, designs or methods comply with the intent of the provisions of the code (see Section 104.11).

The IBC applies to all occupancies, including one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses that are not within the scope of the IRC. The IRC is referenced for coverage of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses as defined in the exception to Section 101.2 and the definition for "Townhouse" in Chapter 2. The IRC can also be used for the construction of live/work units (as defined in Section 508.5) and small bed and breakfast-style hotels where there are five or fewer guest rooms and the hotel is owner occupied. The IBC applies to all types of buildings and structures unless exempted. Work exempted from permits is listed in Section 105.2.

# ARRANGEMENT AND FORMAT OF THE 2021 IBC

Before applying the requirements of the IBC, it is beneficial to understand its arrangement and format. The IBC, like other codes published by ICC, is arranged and organized to follow sequential steps that generally occur during a plan review or inspection.

The following table shows how the IBC is divided. The three tables following that show IBC requirements that are correlated with other I-Codes. Lastly, the ensuing chapter-by-chapter synopsis details the scope and intent of the provisions of the IBC.

**CHAPTER TOPICS**

Chapters	Subjects
1–2	Administration and definitions
3	Use and occupancy classifications
4, 31	Special requirements for specific occupancies or elements
5–6	Height and area limitations based on type of construction
7–9	Fire resistance and protection requirements
10	Requirements for evacuation
11	Specific requirements to allow use and access to a building for persons with disabilities
12–13, 27–30	Building systems, such as lighting, HVAC, plumbing fixtures, elevators
14–26	Structural components—performance and stability
32	Encroachment outside of property lines
33	Safeguards during construction
35	Referenced standards
Appendices A–O	Appendices

## IFC Correlated Topics

The IBC requirements for hazardous materials, fire-resistance-rated construction, interior finish, fire protection systems, means of egress, emergency and standby power, and temporary structures are directly correlated with the requirements of the IFC. The following table shows chapters/sections of the IBC that are correlated with the IFC:

**IBC/IFC CORRELATED TOPICS**

IBC Chapter/Section	IFC Chapter/Section	Subject
Sections 307, 414, 415	Chapters 50–67	Hazardous materials and Group H requirements
Chapter 7	Chapter 7	Fire-resistance-rated construction (fire and smoke protection features in the IFC)
Chapter 8	Chapter 8	Interior finish, decorative materials and furnishings
Chapter 9	Chapter 9	Fire protection systems
Chapter 10	Chapter 10	Means of egress
Chapter 27	Section 604	Standby and emergency power
Section 3103	Chapter 31	Temporary structures

## IMC Correlated Topics

The IBC requirements for smoke control systems, and smoke and fire dampers are directly correlated to the requirements of the IMC. IBC Chapter 28 is a reference to the IMC and the IFGC for chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues, and all aspects of mechanical systems. The following table shows chapters/sections of the IBC that are correlated with the IMC:

**IBC/IMC CORRELATED TOPICS**

<b>IBC Chapter/Section</b>	<b>IMC Chapter/Section</b>	<b>Subject</b>
Section 717	Section 607	Smoke and fire dampers
Section 909	Section 513	Smoke control

## IPC Correlated Topics

The IBC requirements for plumbing fixtures and toilet rooms are directly correlated to the requirements of the IPC. The following table shows chapters/sections of the IBC that are correlated with the IPC:

**IBC/IPC CORRELATED TOPICS**

<b>IBC Chapter/Section</b>	<b>IPC Chapter/Section</b>	<b>Subject</b>
Chapter 29	Chapters 3 & 4	Plumbing fixtures and facilities

## Chapter 1 Scope and Administration

Chapter 1 establishes the limits of applicability of the code and describes how the code is to be applied and enforced. Chapter 1 is in two parts, Part 1—Scope and Application (Sections 101-102) and Part 2—Administration and Enforcement (Sections 103-116). Section 101 identifies which buildings and structures come under its purview and references other I-Codes as applicable. Standards and codes are scoped to the extent referenced (see Section 102.4).

The building code is intended to be adopted as a legally enforceable document and it cannot be effective without adequate provisions for its administration and enforcement. The provisions of Chapter 1 establish the authority and duties of the building official appointed by the authority having jurisdiction and also establish the rights and privileges of the design professional, contractor and property owner.

## Chapter 2 Definitions

All terms that are defined in the code are listed alphabetically in Chapter 2. While a defined term may be used in one chapter or another, the meaning provided in Chapter 2 is applicable throughout the code.

Where understanding a term's definition is especially key to or necessary for understanding a particular code provision, the term is shown in italics. This is true only for those terms that have a meaning that is unique to the code. In other words, the generally understood meaning of a term or phrase might not be sufficient or consistent with the meaning prescribed by the code; therefore, it is essential that the code-defined meaning be known.

Guidance regarding tense, gender and plurality of defined terms as well as guidance regarding terms not defined in this code is provided.

## Chapter 3 Occupancy Classification and Use

Chapter 3 provides for the classification of buildings, structures and parts thereof based on the purpose or purposes for which they are used. Section 302 identifies the groups into which all buildings, structures and parts thereof must be classified. Sections 303 through 312 identify the occupancy characteristics of each group classification. In some sections, specific group classifications having requirements in common are collectively organized such that one term applies to all. For example, Groups A-1, A-2, A-3, A-4 and A-5 are individual groups for assembly-type buildings. The general term "Group A," however, includes each of these individual groups. Other groups include Business (B), Educational (E), Factory (F-1, F-2), High Hazard (H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4, H-5), Institutional (I-1, I-2, I-3, I-4), Mercantile (M), Residential (R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4), Storage (S-1, S-2) and Utility (U). In some occupancies, the smaller number means a higher hazard, but that is not always the case.

Defining the use of the buildings is very important as it sets the tone for the remaining chapters of the code. Occupancy works with the height, area and construction type requirements in Chapters 5 and 6, as well as the special provisions in Chapter 4, to determine "equivalent risk," or providing a reasonable level of protection or life safety for building occupants. The determination of equivalent risk involves three interdependent considerations: (1) the level of fire hazard associated with the specific occupancy of the facility; (2) the reduction of fire hazard by limiting the floor area and the height of the building based on the fuel load (combustible contents and burnable building components); and (3) the level of overall fire resistance provided by the type of construction used for the building. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type.

Occupancy classification also plays a key part in organizing and prescribing the appropriate protection measures. As such, threshold requirements for fire protection and means of egress systems are based on occupancy classification (see Chapters 9 and 10). Other sections of the code also contain requirements respective to the classification of building groups. For example, Section 706 specifies requirements for fire wall fire-resistance ratings that are tied to the occupancy classification of a building and Section 803.11 contains interior finish requirements that are dependent upon the occupancy classification. The use of the space, rather than the occupancy of the building, is utilized for determining occupant loading (Section 1004) and live loading (Section 1607).

Over the useful life of a building, the activities in the building will evolve and change. Where the provisions of the code address uses differently, moving from one activity to another or from one level of activity to another is, by definition, a change of occupancy. The new occupancy must be in compliance with the applicable provisions.

## Chapter 4 Special Detailed Requirements Based on Occupancy and Use

Chapter 4 contains the requirements for protecting special uses and occupancies, which are supplemental to the remainder of the code. Chapter 4 contains provisions that may alter requirements found elsewhere in the code; however, the general requirements of the code still apply unless modified within the chapter. For example, the height and area limitations established in Chapter 5 apply to all special occupancies unless Chapter 4 contains height and area limitations. In this case, the limitations in Chapter 4 supersede those in other sections. An example of this is the height and area limitations for open parking garages given in Section 406.5.4, which supersede the limitations given in Sections 504 and 506.

In some instances, it may not be necessary to apply the provisions of Chapter 4. For example, if a covered mall building complies with the provisions of the code for Group M, Section 402 does not apply; however, other sections that address a use, process or operation must be applied to that specific occupancy, such as stages and platforms, special amusement buildings and hazardous materials (Sections 410, 411 and 414).

The chapter includes requirements for buildings and conditions that apply to one or more groups, such as high-rise buildings, underground buildings or atriums. Special uses may also imply specific occupancies and operations, such as for Group H, hazardous materials, application of flammable finishes, drying rooms, organic coatings and combustible storage or hydrogen fuel gas rooms, all of which are coordinated with the IFC. Unique consideration is taken for special use areas, such as covered mall buildings, motor-vehicle-related occupancies, special amusement buildings and aircraft-related occupancies. Special facilities within other occupancies are considered, such as stages and platforms, motion picture projection rooms, children's play structures and storm shelters. Finally, in order that the overall package of protection features can be easily understood, unique considerations for specific occupancies are addressed: Groups I-1, I-2, I-3, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4; and ambulatory care facilities and live/work units.

## Chapter 5 General Building Heights and Areas

Chapter 5 contains the provisions that regulate the minimum type of construction for area limits and height limits based on the occupancy of the building. Height and area increases (including allowances for basements, mezzanines and equipment platforms) are permitted based on open frontage for fire department access, separation and the type of sprinkler protection provided (Sections 503-506, 510). These thresholds are reduced for buildings over three stories in height in accordance with Sections 506.2.1 and 506.2.2. Provisions include the protection and/or separation of incidental uses (Table 509.1), accessory occupancies (Section 508.2) and mixed uses in the same building (Sections 506.2.2, 508.3, 508.4 and 510). Unlimited area buildings are permitted in certain occupancies when they meet special provisions (Section 507). Live/work units are provided for in Section 508.5.

Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2 are the keystones in setting thresholds for building size based on the building's use and the materials with which it is constructed. If one then looks at Tables 504.3, 504.4 and 506.2, the relationship among group classification, allowable heights and areas and types of construction becomes apparent. Respective to each group classification, the greater the fire-resistance rating of structural elements, as represented by the type of construction, the greater the floor area and height allowances. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. Starting in the 2015 edition, the table that once contained both height and area has been separated and these three new tables address the topics individually. In addition, the tables list criteria for buildings with and without automatic sprinkler systems.

## Chapter 6 Types of Construction

The interdependence of these fire safety considerations can be seen by first looking at Tables 601 and 705.5, which show the fire-resistance ratings of the principal structural elements comprising a building in relation to the five classifications for types of construction. Type I construction is the classification that generally requires the highest fire-resistance ratings for structural elements, whereas Type V construction, which is designated as a combustible type of construction, generally requires the least amount of fire-resistance-rated structural elements. The greater the potential fire hazards indicated as a function of the group, the lesser the height and area allowances for a particular construction type. Section 603 includes a list of combustible elements that can be part of a non-combustible building (Types I and II construction).

## Chapter 7 Fire and Smoke Protection Features

The provisions of Chapter 7 present the fundamental concepts of fire performance that all buildings are expected to achieve in some form. This chapter identifies the acceptable materials, techniques and methods by which proposed construction can be designed and evaluated against to determine a building's ability to limit the impact of fire. The fire-resistance-rated construction requirements within Chapter 7 provide passive resistance to the spread and effects of fire. Types of separations addressed include fire walls, fire barriers, fire partitions, horizontal assemblies, smoke barriers and smoke partitions. A fire produces heat that can weaken structural components and smoke products that cause property damage and place occupants at risk. The requirements of Chapter 7 work in unison with height and area requirements (Chapter 5), active fire detection and suppression systems (Chapter 9) and occupant egress requirements (Chapter 10) to contain a fire should it occur while helping ensure occupants are able to safely exit.

## Chapter 7A Materials and Construction Methods for Exterior Wildfire Exposure

*The purpose of this chapter is to establish minimum standards for the protection of life and property by increasing the ability of a building located in any Fire Hazard Severity Zone within State Responsibility Areas or any Wildland-Urban Interface (WUI) Fire Area to resist the intrusion of flames or burning embers projected by a vegetation fire and contributes to a systematic reduction in conflagration losses.*

## Chapter 8 Interior Finishes

This chapter contains the performance requirements for controlling fire growth within buildings by restricting interior finish and decorative materials. Past fire experience has shown that interior fin-

ish and decorative materials are key elements in the development and spread of fire. The provisions of Chapter 8 require materials used as interior finishes and decorations to meet certain flame-spread index or flame-propagation criteria based on the relative fire hazard associated with the occupancy. As smoke is also a hazard associated with fire, this chapter contains limits on the smoke development characteristics of interior finishes. The performance of the material is evaluated based on test standards.

## **Chapter 9 Fire Protection and Life Safety Systems**

Chapter 9 prescribes the minimum requirements for active systems of fire protection equipment to perform the following functions: detect a fire; alert the occupants or fire department of a fire emergency; and control smoke and control or extinguish the fire. Generally, the requirements are based on the occupancy, the height and the area of the building, because these are the factors that most affect fire-fighting capabilities and the relative hazard of a specific building or portion thereof. This chapter parallels and is substantially duplicated in Chapter 9 of the IFC; however, the IFC Chapter 9 also contains periodic testing criteria that are not contained in the IBC. In addition, the special fire protection system requirements based on use and occupancy found in IBC Chapter 4 are duplicated in IFC Chapter 9 as a user convenience.

## **Chapter 10 Means of Egress**

The general criteria set forth in Chapter 10 regulating the design of the means of egress are established as the primary method for protection of people in buildings by allowing timely relocation or evacuation of building occupants. Both prescriptive and performance language is utilized in this chapter to provide for a basic approach in the determination of a safe exiting system for all occupancies. It addresses all portions of the egress system (i.e., exit access, exits and exit discharge) and includes design requirements as well as provisions regulating individual components. The requirements detail the size, arrangement, number and protection of means of egress components. Functional and operational characteristics also are specified for the components that will permit their safe use without special knowledge or effort. The means of egress protection requirements work in coordination with other sections of the code, such as protection of vertical openings (see Chapter 7), interior finish (see Chapter 8), fire suppression and detection systems (see Chapter 9) and numerous others, all having an impact on life safety. Chapter 10 of the IBC is duplicated in Chapter 10 of the IFC; however, the IFC contains one additional section on the means of egress system in existing buildings.

## ***Chapter 11A - Housing Accessibility and/or Chapter 11B - Accessibility to Public Buildings, Public Accommodations, Commercial Buildings and Public Housing***

*Verify compliance with accessibility provisions. In order to be considered as accessible, buildings and their individual elements must comply with the applicable scoping and technical provisions of Chapter 11A and/or Chapter 11B.*

## **Chapter 12 Interior Environment**

Chapter 12 provides minimum standards for the interior environment of a building. The standards address the minimum sizes of spaces, minimum temperature levels, and minimum light and ventilation levels. The collection of requirements addresses limiting sound transmission through walls, ventilation of attic spaces and under floor spaces (crawl spaces). Finally, the chapter provides minimum standards for toilet and bathroom construction, including privacy shielding and standards for walls, partitions and floors to resist water intrusion and damage.

## **Chapter 13 Energy Efficiency**

*Refer to California Energy Code, Title 24, Part 6.*

## Chapter 14 Exterior Walls

This chapter addresses requirements for exterior walls of buildings. Minimum standards for wall covering materials, installation of wall coverings and the ability of the wall to provide weather protection are provided. This chapter also requires exterior walls that are close to lot lines, or that are bearing walls for certain types of construction, to comply with the minimum fire-resistance ratings specified in Chapters 6 and 7. The installation of each type of wall covering, be it wood, masonry, vinyl, metal composite material or an exterior insulation and finish system, is critical to its long-term performance in protecting the interior of the building from the elements and the spread of fire. Limitations on the use of combustible materials on exterior building elements such as balconies, eaves, decks and architectural trim are also addressed in this chapter.

## Chapter 15 Roof Assemblies and Rooftop Structures

Chapter 15 provides standards for both roof assemblies and structures that sit on top of the roofs of buildings. The criteria address roof construction and covering, including the weather-protective barrier at the roof and, in most circumstances, a fire-resistant barrier. The chapter is prescriptive in nature and is based on decades of experience with various traditional materials, but it also addresses newer products such as photovoltaic shingles. These prescriptive rules are very important for satisfying performance of one type of roof covering or another. Section 1511 addresses rooftop structures, including penthouses, tanks, towers and spires. Rooftop penthouses larger than prescribed in this chapter must be treated as a story under Chapter 5.

## Chapter 16 Structural Design

Chapter 16 prescribes minimum structural loading requirements for use in the design and construction of buildings and structural components. It includes minimum design loads, assignment of risk categories and permitted design methodologies. Standards are provided for minimum design loads (live, dead, snow, wind, rain, flood, ice and earthquake as well as the required load combinations). The application of these loads and adherence to the serviceability criteria will enhance the protection of life and property. The chapter references and relies on many nationally recognized design standards. A key standard is the American Society of Civil Engineers' *Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures* (ASCE 7). Structural design must address the conditions of the site and location. Therefore, maps are provided of rainfall, seismic, snow and wind criteria in different regions.

## Chapter 17 Special Inspections and Tests

Chapter 17 provides a variety of procedures and criteria for testing materials and assemblies, labeling materials and assemblies and special inspection of structural assemblies. This chapter expands on the inspections of Chapter 1 by requiring special inspection where indicated and, in some cases, structural observation. It also spells out additional responsibilities for the owner, contractor, design professionals and special inspectors. Proper assembly of structural components, proper quality of materials used and proper application of materials are essential to ensuring that a building, once constructed, complies with the structural and fire-resistance minimums of the code and the approved design. To determine this compliance often requires continuous or frequent inspection and testing. Chapter 17 establishes standards for special inspection, testing and reporting of the work to the building official.

## Chapter 18 Soils and Foundations

Chapter 18 provides criteria for geotechnical and structural considerations in the selection, design and installation of foundation systems to support the loads from the structure above. This chapter includes requirements for soils investigation and site preparation for receiving a foundation, including the allowed load-bearing values for soils and for protecting the foundation from water intrusion. Section 1808 addresses the basic requirements for all foundation types. Later sections address foundation requirements that are specific to shallow foundations and deep foundations. Due care must be exercised in the planning and design of foundation systems based on obtaining sufficient soils information, the use of accepted engineering procedures, experience and good technical judgment.

## **Chapter 19 Concrete**

This chapter provides minimum accepted practices for the design and construction of buildings and structural components using concrete—both plain and reinforced. Chapter 19 relies primarily on the reference to American Concrete Institute (ACI) 318, *Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete*. This chapter also includes references to additional standards. Structural concrete must be designed and constructed to comply with this code and all listed standards. There are specific sections of the chapter addressing concrete slabs, anchorage to concrete and shotcrete. Because of the variable properties of material and numerous design and construction options available in the uses of concrete, due care and control throughout the construction process is necessary.

## **Chapter 20 Aluminum**

Chapter 20 contains standards for the use of aluminum in building construction. Only the structural applications of aluminum are addressed. This chapter does not address the use of aluminum in specialty products such as storefront or window framing or architectural hardware. The use of aluminum in heating, ventilating or air-conditioning systems is addressed in the IMC. This chapter references national standards from the Aluminum Association for use of aluminum in building construction, AA ASM 35, *Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction*, and AA ADM, *Aluminum Design Manual*. By utilizing the standards set forth, a proper application of this material can be obtained.

## **Chapter 21 Masonry**

This chapter provides comprehensive and practical requirements for masonry construction. The provisions of Chapter 21 require minimum accepted practices and the use of standards for the design and construction of masonry structures. The provisions address: material specifications and test methods; types of wall construction; criteria for engineered and empirical designs; and required details of construction, including the execution of construction. Masonry design methodologies including allowable stress design, strength design and empirical design are covered by provisions of this chapter. Also addressed are masonry fireplaces and chimneys, masonry heaters and glass unit masonry. Fire-resistant construction using masonry is also required to comply with Chapter 7. Masonry foundations are also subject to the requirements of Chapter 18.

## **Chapter 22 Steel**

Chapter 22 provides the requirements necessary for the design and construction of structural steel (including composite construction), cold-formed steel, steel joists, steel cable structures and steel storage racks. This chapter specifies appropriate design and construction standards for these types of structures. It also provides a road map of the applicable technical requirements for steel structures. Because steel is a noncombustible building material, it is commonly associated with Types I and II construction; however, it is permitted to be used in all types of construction. Chapter 22 requires that the design and use of steel materials be in accordance with the specifications and standards of the American Institute of Steel Construction, the American Iron and Steel Institute, the Steel Joist Institute and the American Society of Civil Engineers.

## **Chapter 23 Wood**

This chapter provides minimum requirements for the design of buildings and structures that use wood and wood-based products. The chapter is organized around three design methodologies: allowable stress design (ASD), load and resistance factor design (LRFD) and conventional light-frame construction. Included in this chapter are references to design and manufacturing standards for various wood and wood-based products; general construction requirements; design criteria for lateral force-resisting systems and specific requirements for the application of the three design methods. In general, only Type III, IV or V buildings may be constructed of wood.

## Chapter 24 Glass and Glazing

This chapter establishes regulations for glass and glazing that, when installed in buildings and structures, are subjected to wind, snow and dead loads. Engineering and design requirements are included in the chapter. Additional structural requirements are found in Chapter 16. Another concern of this chapter is glass and glazing used in areas where it is likely to be impacted by the occupants. Section 2406 identifies hazardous locations where glazing installed must either be safety glazing or blocked to prevent human impact. Safety glazing must meet stringent standards and be appropriately marked or identified. Additional requirements are provided for glass and glazing in guards, handrails, elevator hoistways and elevator cars, as well as in athletic facilities.

## Chapter 25 Gypsum Board, Gypsum Panel Products and Plaster

Chapter 25 contains the provisions and referenced standards that regulate the design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products and plaster. It also addresses reinforced gypsum concrete. These represent the most common interior and exterior finish materials in the building industry. This chapter primarily addresses quality-control-related issues with regard to material specifications and installation requirements. Most products are manufactured under the control of industry standards. The building official or inspector primarily needs to verify that the appropriate product is used and properly installed for the intended use and location. While often simply used as wall and ceiling coverings, proper design and application are necessary to provide weather resistance and required fire protection for both structural and nonstructural building components.

## Chapter 26 Plastic

The use of plastics in building construction and components is addressed in Chapter 26. This chapter provides standards addressing foam plastic insulation, foam plastics used as interior finish and trim, and other plastic veneers used on the inside or outside of a building. Plastic siding is regulated by Chapter 14. Sections 2606 through 2611 address the use of light-transmitting plastics in various configurations such as walls, roof panels, skylights, signs and as glazing. Requirements for the use of fiber-reinforced polymers, fiberglass-reinforced polymers and reflective plastic core insulation are also contained in this chapter. Additionally, requirements specific to the use of wood-plastic composites and plastic lumber are contained in this chapter. Some plastics exhibit rapid flame spread and heavy smoke density characteristics when exposed to fire. Exposure to the heat generated by a fire can cause some plastics to deform, which can affect their performance. The requirements and limitations of this chapter are necessary to control the use of plastic and foam plastic products such that they do not compromise the safety of building occupants.

## Chapter 27 Electrical

Since electrical systems and components are an integral part of almost all structures, it is necessary for the code to address the installation of such systems. For this purpose, Chapter 27 references the National Electrical Code (NEC). In addition, Section 2702 addresses emergency and standby power requirements. Such systems must comply with the IFC and referenced standards. This section also provides references to the various code sections requiring emergency and standby power, such as high-rise buildings and buildings containing hazardous materials.

## Chapter 28 Mechanical Systems

Nearly all buildings will include mechanical systems. This chapter provides references to the IMC and the IFGC for the design and installation of mechanical systems. In addition, Chapter 21 of this code is referenced for masonry chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues.

## **Chapter 29 Plumbing Systems**

Chapter 29 regulates the minimum number of plumbing fixtures that must be provided for every type of building. This chapter also regulates the location of the required fixtures in various types of buildings. This section requires separate facilities for males and females except for certain types of small occupancies. The regulations in this chapter come directly from Chapters 3 and 4 of the IPC.

## **Chapter 30 Elevators and Conveying Systems**

Chapter 30 provides standards for the installation of elevators into buildings. Referenced standards provide the requirements for the elevator system and mechanisms. Detailed standards are provided in the chapter for hoistway enclosures, machine rooms and requirements for sizing of elevators. Beginning in the 2015 edition of this code, the elevator lobby requirements were moved from Chapter 7 to Chapter 30 to pull all the elevator-related construction requirements together. New provisions were added in the 2009 edition for fire service access elevators required in high-rise buildings and for the optional choice of occupant evacuation elevators (see Section 403).

## **Chapter 31 Special Construction**

Chapter 31 contains a collection of regulations for a variety of unique structures and architectural features. Pedestrian walkways and tunnels connecting two buildings are addressed in Section 3104. Membrane and air-supported structures are addressed by Section 3102. Safeguards for swimming pool safety are addressed by way of reference to the ISPSC in Section 3109. Standards for temporary structures, including permit requirements, are provided in Section 3103. Structures as varied as awnings, marquees, signs, telecommunication and broadcast towers and automatic vehicular gates are also addressed (see Sections 3105 through 3108 and 3110).

### ***Chapter 31A Systems for Window Cleaning or Exterior Building Maintenance***

### ***Chapter 31B Public Pools***

### ***Chapter 31C Radiation***

### ***Chapter 31D Food Establishments***

### ***Chapter 31E Reserved***

### ***Chapter 31F Marine Oil Terminals***

## **Chapter 32 Encroachments into the Public Right-of-way**

Buildings and structures from time to time are designed to extend over a property line and into the public right-of-way. Local regulations outside of the building code usually set limits to such encroachments, and such regulations take precedence over the provisions of this chapter. Standards are provided for encroachments below grade for structural support, vaults and areaways. Encroachments

above grade are divided into below 8 feet, 8 feet to 15 feet, and above 15 feet, because of headroom and vehicular height issues. This includes steps, columns, awnings, canopies, marquees, signs, windows and balconies. Similar architectural features above grade are also addressed. Pedestrian walkways must also comply with Chapter 31.

## **Chapter 33 Safeguards During Construction**

Chapter 33 provides safety requirements during construction and demolition of buildings and structures. These requirements are intended to protect the public from injury and adjoining property from damage. In addition the chapter provides for the progressive installation and operation of exit stairways and standpipe systems during construction.

## **Chapter 34 Reserved**

During the 2015 code change cycle the membership voted to delete Chapter 34, Existing Structures, from this code and reference the IEBC. The provisions that were in Chapter 34 appear in the IEBC. Former Sections 3402 through 3411 appear as IEBC Chapter 4 and Section 3412 as Chapter 14.

## **Chapter 35 Referenced Standards**

The code contains numerous references to standards that are used to regulate materials and methods of construction. Chapter 35 contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in the code, including the appendices. The standards are part of the code to the extent of the reference to the standard (see Section 102.4). Compliance with the referenced standard is necessary for compliance with this code. By providing specifically adopted standards, the construction and installation requirements necessary for compliance with the code can be readily determined. The basis for code compliance is, therefore, established and available on an equal basis to the building official, contractor, designer and owner.

Chapter 35 is organized in a manner that makes it easy to locate specific standards. It lists all of the referenced standards, alphabetically, by acronym of the promulgating agency of the standard. Each agency's standards are then listed in either alphabetical or numeric order based upon the standard identification. The list also contains the title of the standard; the edition (date) of the standard referenced; any addenda included as part of the ICC adoption; and the section or sections of this code that reference the standard.

## **Appendices**

Appendices are provided in the IBC to offer optional or supplemental criteria to the provisions in the main chapters of the code. Appendices provide additional information for administration of the Department of Building Safety as well as standards not typically administered by all building departments. Appendices have the same force and effect as the first 35 chapters of the IBC only when explicitly adopted by the jurisdiction.

## **Appendix A Employee Qualifications**

Effective administration and enforcement of the family of International Codes depends on the training and expertise of the personnel employed by the jurisdiction and their knowledge of the codes. Section 103 of the code establishes the Department of Building Safety and calls for the appointment of a building official and deputies such as plans examiners and inspectors. Appendix A provides standards for experience, training and certification for the building official and the other staff mentioned in Chapter 1.

## **Appendix B Board of Appeals**

Section 113 requires the establishment of a board of appeals to hear appeals regarding determinations made by the building official. Appendix B provides qualification standards for members of the board as well as operational procedures of such board.

## **Appendix C Group U—Agricultural Buildings**

Appendix C provides a more liberal set of standards for the construction of agricultural buildings, rather than strictly following the utility building provision, reflective of their specific usage and limited occupant load. The provisions of this appendix, when adopted, allow reasonable heights and areas commensurate with the risk of agricultural buildings.

## **Appendix D Fire Districts**

Fire districts have been a tool used to limit conflagration hazards in areas of a city with intense and concentrated development. More frequently used under the model codes that preceded the IBC, this appendix is provided to allow jurisdictions to continue the designation and use of fire districts. Fire district standards restrict certain occupancies within the district, as well as setting higher minimum construction standards.

## **Appendix E Reserved**

## **Appendix F Rodentproofing**

The provisions of this appendix are minimum mechanical methods to prevent the entry of rodents into a building. These standards, when used in conjunction with cleanliness and maintenance programs, can significantly reduce the potential of rodents invading a building.

## **Appendix G Flood-resistant Construction**

Appendix G is intended to fulfill the floodplain management and administrative requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) that are not included in the code. Communities that adopt the IBC and Appendix G will meet the minimum requirements of NFIP as set forth in Title 44 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

## **Appendix H Signs**

Appendix H gathers in one place the various code standards that regulate the construction and protection of outdoor signs. Whenever possible, this appendix provides standards in performance language, thus allowing the widest possible application.

## **Appendix I Patio Covers**

Appendix I provides standards applicable to the construction and use of patio covers. It is limited in application to patio covers accessory to dwelling units. Covers of patios and other outdoor areas associated with restaurants, mercantile buildings, offices, nursing homes or other nondwelling occupancies would be subject to standards in the main code and not this appendix.

## **Appendix J Grading**

Appendix J provides standards for the grading of properties. This appendix also provides standards for administration and enforcement of a grading program including permit and inspection requirements. Appendix J was originally developed in the 1960s and used for many years in jurisdictions throughout the western United States. It is intended to provide consistent and uniform code requirements anywhere grading is considered an issue.

## **Appendix K Group R-3 and Group R-3.1 Occupancies Protected by the Facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan**

*Appendix K provides provisions applicable to new construction, changes of use and to substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage as defined in Section 1612 of Group R-3 and R-3.1 located in areas protected by the facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan.*

## **Appendix L Earthquake Recording Instrumentation**

The purpose of this appendix is to foster the collection of ground motion data, particularly from strong-motion earthquakes. When this ground motion data is synthesized, it may be useful in developing future improvements to the earthquake provisions of the IBC.

## **Appendix M Tsunami-Generated Flood Hazards**

Addressing a tsunami risk for all types of construction in a tsunami hazard zone through building code requirements would typically not be cost effective, making tsunami-resistant construction impractical at an individual building level. However, this appendix does allow the adoption and enforcement of requirements for tsunami hazard zones that regulate the presence of high-risk or high-hazard structures.

## **Appendix N Replicable Buildings**

Many jurisdictions have recognized the need for some form of expedited review process for replicable buildings. By codifying the approach contained in the ICC G1-2010 *Guideline for Replicable Buildings*, this appendix provides jurisdictions with a means of incorporating replicable building requirements into their building code adoption process. The intent is to streamline the plan review process at the local level by removing redundant reviews.

## **Appendix O Performance-based Application**

Appendix O provides an optional design, review and approval framework for use by the building official. It simply extracts the relevant administrative provisions from the ICCPC into a more concise, usable appendix format for a jurisdiction confronted with such a need. Typical uses would include cases of alternate methods in Chapter 1 and select areas of the code that require a rational analysis, such as Section 909.

## **Appendix P Emergency Housing**

*This appendix shall be applicable to emergency housing and emergency housing facilities. Emergency sleeping cabins, emergency transportable housing units, membrane structures and tents constructed and assembled in accordance with this appendix shall be occupied only during declaration of state of emergency, local emergency or shelter crises. Buildings and structures constructed in accordance with the California Building Code, used as emergency housing, shall be permitted to be permanently occupied.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 1 SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION .. 1-1</b>	109	Fees .....	1-32
<b>DIVISION I CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION .... 1-5</b>	110	Inspections .....	1-33
Section	111	Certificate of Occupancy .....	1-34
1.1 General.....	112	Service Utilities .....	1-34
1.2 Building Standards Commission .....	113	Means of Appeals.....	1-35
1.3 Board of State and Community Corrections ..	114	Violations.....	1-35
1.4 Department of Consumer Affairs .....	115	Stop Work Order .....	1-35
1.5 Reserved.....	116	Unsafe Structures and Equipment .....	1-35
1.6 Department of Food and Agriculture.....			
1.7 California Department of Public Health .....			
1.8 Department of Housing and Community Development .....			
1.8.2 Authority and Abbreviations.....	1-10		
1.8.3 Local Enforcing Agency.....	1-11		
1.8.4 Permits, Fees, Applications and Inspections ..	1-12		
1.8.5 Right of Entry for Enforcement .....	1-13		
1.8.6 Local Modification by Ordinance or Regulation .....	1-13		
1.8.7 Alternate Materials, Designs, Tests and Methods of Construction .....	1-13		
1.8.8 Appeals Board .....	1-14		
1.8.9 Unsafe Buildings or Structures .....	1-14		
1.8.10 Other Building Regulations .....	1-15		
1.9 Division of the State Architect .....	1-15		
1.10 Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development .....	1-17		
1.11 Office of the State Fire Marshal.....	1-19		
1.12 State Librarian .....	1-24		
1.13 Reserved.....	1-24		
1.14 California State Lands Commission.....	1-24		
<b>DIVISION II SCOPE AND ADMINISTRATION... 1-25</b>			
PART 1—SCOPE AND APPLICATION .....	1-25		
101 Scope and General Requirements.....	1-25		
102 Applicability.....	1-26		
PART 2—ADMINISTRATION AND ENFORCEMENT .....	1-26		
103 Code Compliance Agency .....	1-26		
104 Duties and Powers of Building Official .....	1-27		
105 Permits .....	1-28		
106 Floor and Roof Design Loads.....	1-30		
107 Construction Documents .....	1-31		
108 Temporary Structures and Uses .....	1-32		
<b>CHAPTER 2 DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>		
Section			
201 General.....	2-11		
202 Definitions .....	2-11		
<b>CHAPTER 3 OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION AND USE.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>		
Section			
301 Scope .....	3-3		
302 Occupancy Classification and Use Designation .....	3-3		
303 Assembly Group A.....	3-3		
304 Business Group B.....	3-4		
305 Educational Group E .....	3-5		
306 Factory Group F.....	3-5		
307 High-hazard Group H.....	3-6		
308 Institutional Group I.....	3-10		
309 Mercantile Group M.....	3-12		
310 Residential Group R.....	3-12		
311 Storage Group S.....	3-14		
312 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .....	3-15		
313 Laboratories Group L [SFM] .....	3-15		
314 Organized Camps Group C [SFM] .....	3-15		
<b>CHAPTER 4 SPECIAL DETAILED REQUIREMENTS BASED ON OCCUPANCY AND USE.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>		
Section			
401 Scope .....	4-5		
402 Covered Mall and Open Mall Buildings .....	4-5		
403 High-rise Buildings and Group I-2 Occupancies <i>Having Occupied Floors Located More Than 75 Feet above the Lowest Level of Fire Department Vehicle Access .....</i>	4-9		
404 Atriums.....	4-12		
405 Underground Buildings .....	4-13		

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

406	Motor-vehicle-related Occupancies .....	4-14
407	Group I-2 and Group I-2.1 .....	4-19
408	Group I-3 .....	4-24
409	Motion Picture Projection Rooms .....	4-30
410	Stages, Platforms and Technical Production Areas .....	4-31
411	Special Amusement Areas .....	4-33
412	Aircraft-related Occupancies .....	4-33
413	Combustible Storage .....	4-37
414	Hazardous Materials .....	4-37
415	Groups H-1, H-2, H-3, H-4 and H-5 .....	4-41
416	Spray Application of Flammable Finishes .....	4-50
417	Drying Rooms .....	4-51
418	Organic Coatings .....	4-51
419	Artificial Decorative Vegetation .....	4-51
420	Groups R-1, R-2, R-2.1, R-2.2, R-3, R-3.1 and R-4 .....	4-51
421	Hydrogen Fuel Gas Rooms .....	4-53
422	Ambulatory Care Facilities .....	4-53
423	Storm Shelters .....	4-54
424	Play Structures .....	4-55
425	Hyperbaric Facilities .....	4-55
426	Combustible Dusts, Grain Processing and Storage .....	4-55
427	Medical Gas Systems .....	4-56
435	<i>Special Provisions for Licensed 24-hour Care Facilities in a Group R-2.1, R-3.1, R-4 [SFM]</i> .....	4-57
436	<i>Group I-4 [SFM]</i> .....	4-60
437	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-60
438	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-61
439	<i>Road Tunnels, Bridges and Other Limited-access Highways [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
440	<i>Horse Racing Stables [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
441	<i>Pet Kennels and Pet Boarding Facilities [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
442	<i>Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
443	<i>Fixed Guideway Transit and Passenger Rail Systems [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
444	<i>Explosives [SFM]</i> .....	4-61
445	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-62
446	<i>Winery Caves [SFM]</i> .....	4-62
447	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-63
448	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-63
449	<i>Public Libraries [SL AND SFM]</i> .....	4-63
450	<i>Group C [SFM]</i> .....	4-63
451	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-65
452	<i>School Facilities for Kindergarten through 12th Grade and Group E Child Care</i> .....	4-65
453	<i>Group L [SFM]</i> .....	4-67
454	<i>Reserved</i> .....	4-69
455	<i>Large Family Day-care Homes [SFM]</i> .....	4-69

## CHAPTER 5 GENERAL BUILDING HEIGHTS AND AREAS ..... 5-1

### Section

501	General .....	5-3
502	Building Address .....	5-3
503	General Building Height and Area Limitations .....	5-3
504	Building Height and Number of Stories .....	5-5
505	Mezzanines and Equipment Platforms .....	5-5
506	Building Area .....	5-9
507	Unlimited Area Buildings .....	5-10
508	Mixed Use and Occupancy .....	5-16
509	Incidental Uses .....	5-18
510	Special Provisions .....	5-20

## CHAPTER 6 TYPES OF CONSTRUCTION ..... 6-1

### Section

601	General .....	6-3
602	Construction Classification .....	6-3
603	Combustible Material in Types I and II Construction .....	6-7

## CHAPTER 7 FIRE AND SMOKE PROTECTION FEATURES ..... 7-1

### Section

701	General .....	7-3
702	Multiple-use Fire Assemblies .....	7-3
703	Fire-resistance Ratings and Fire Tests .....	7-3
704	Fire-resistance Rating of Structural Members .....	7-4
705	Exterior Walls .....	7-6
706	Fire Walls .....	7-11
707	Fire Barriers .....	7-14
708	Fire Partitions .....	7-16
709	Smoke Barriers .....	7-17
710	Smoke Partitions .....	7-18
711	Floor and Roof Assemblies .....	7-19
712	Vertical Openings .....	7-19
713	Shaft Enclosures .....	7-21
714	Penetrations .....	7-22
715	Joints and Voids .....	7-25

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

716	Opening Protectives .....	7-26	908	Emergency Alarm Systems .....	9-42	
717	Ducts and Air Transfer Openings.....	7-34	909	Smoke Control Systems.....	9-43	
718	Concealed Spaces.....	7-40	910	Smoke and Heat Removal .....	9-51	
719	Fire-resistance Requirements for Plaster .....	7-41	911	Fire Command Center .....	9-53	
720	Thermal- and Sound-insulating Materials .....	7-42	912	Fire Department Connections .....	9-54	
721	Prescriptive Fire Resistance .....	7-43	913	Fire Pumps .....	9-55	
722	Calculated Fire Resistance .....	7-44	914	Emergency Responder Safety Features .....	9-55	
<b>CHAPTER 7A [SFM] MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE .....</b>			7A-1	915	Carbon Monoxide Detection .....	9-56
<i>Section</i>			916	Gas Detection Systems.....	9-58	
701A	<i>Scope, Purpose and Application.</i> .....	7A-1	917	Mass Notification Systems.....	9-59	
702A	<i>Definitions</i> .....	7A-2	918	Emergency Responder Communication Coverage .....	9-59	
703A	<i>Standards of Quality.....</i>	7A-3	<b>CHAPTER 10 MEANS OF EGRESS.....</b>			
704A	<i>Ignition-resistant Construction .....</i>	7A-4	<b>10-1</b>			
705A	<i>Roofing.....</i>	7A-4	<i>Section</i>			
706A	<i>Vents.....</i>	7A-5	1001	Administration .....	10-5	
707A	<i>Exterior Covering.....</i>	7A-5	1002	Maintenance and Plans .....	10-5	
708A	<i>Exterior Windows, Skylights and Doors.....</i>	7A-8	1003	General Means of Egress .....	10-5	
709A	<i>Decking.....</i>	7A-9	1004	Occupant Load .....	10-7	
710A	<i>Accessory Buildings and Miscellaneous Structures.....</i>	7A-9	1005	Means of Egress Sizing.....	10-8	
<b>CHAPTER 8 INTERIOR FINISHES.....</b>			1006	Number of Exits and Exit Access Doorways .....	10-9	
<i>Section</i>			1007	Exit and Exit Access Doorway Configuration .....	10-13	
801	<i>Scope .....</i>	8-3	1008	Means of Egress Illumination.....	10-13	
802	<i>General .....</i>	8-3	1009	Accessible Means of Egress .....	10-15	
803	<i>Wall and Ceiling Finishes .....</i>	8-3	1010	Doors, Gates and Turnstiles .....	10-18	
804	<i>Interior Floor Finish .....</i>	8-6	1011	Stairways.....	10-28	
805	<i>Combustible Materials in Types I and II Construction.....</i>	8-7	1012	Ramps .....	10-32	
806	<i>Decorative Materials and Trim.....</i>	8-7	1013	Exit Signs .....	10-33	
807	<i>Insulation .....</i>	8-8	1014	Handrails.....	10-35	
808	<i>Acoustical Ceiling Systems .....</i>	8-8	1015	Guards.....	10-36	
<b>CHAPTER 9 FIRE PROTECTION AND LIFE SAFETY SYSTEMS.....</b>			1016	Exit Access .....	10-38	
<i>Section</i>			1017	Exit Access Travel Distance.....	10-39	
901	<i>General .....</i>	9-7	1018	Aisles.....	10-40	
902	<i>Fire Pump and Riser Room Size .....</i>	9-8	1019	Exit Access Stairways and Ramps .....	10-40	
903	<i>Automatic Sprinkler Systems.....</i>	9-8	1020	Corridors .....	10-41	
904	<i>Alternative Automatic Fire-extinguishing Systems .....</i>	9-17	1021	Egress Balconies.....	10-43	
905	<i>Standpipe Systems .....</i>	9-20	1022	Exits .....	10-43	
906	<i>Portable Fire Extinguishers .....</i>	9-23	1023	Interior Exit Stairways and Ramps .....	10-43	
907	<i>Fire Alarm and Detection Systems.....</i>	9-25	1024	Exit Passageways .....	10-45	

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1029	Egress Courts.....	10-50
1030	Assembly.....	10-50
1031	Emergency Escape and Rescue.....	10-58
<b>CHAPTER 11 RESERVED .....</b>		<b>11-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11A HOUSING ACCESSIBILITY....</b>		<b>11A-1</b>
<b>DIVISION I – APPLICATION, GENERAL PROVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS .....</b>		
<b>Section</b>		
1101A	Application .....	11A-3
1102A	Building Accessibility.....	11A-3
1103A	Design and Construction .....	11A-4
1104A	Covered Multifamily Dwellings .....	11A-4
1105A	Garages, Carports and Parking Facilities... 1106A Site and Building Characteristics.....	11A-5
1107A	Definitions .....	11A-5
<b>DIVISION II – EXTERIOR FACILITIES .....</b>		
1108A	General Requirements for Accessible Parking and Exterior Routes of Travel .....	11A-6
1109A	Parking Facilities.....	11A-6
1110A	Exterior Accessible Routes.....	11A-8
1111A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes .....	11A-9
1112A	Curb Ramps on Accessible Routes.....	11A-9
1113A	Walks and Sidewalks on Accessible Routes .....	11A-9
1114A	Exterior Ramps and Landings on Accessible Routes .....	11A-10
1115A	Exterior Stairways .....	11A-11
1116A	Hazards on Accessible Routes .....	11A-12
<b>DIVISION III – BUILDING FEATURES.....</b>		
1117A	General Requirements for Accessible Entrances, Exits, Interior Routes of Travel and Facility Accessibility .....	11A-14
1118A	Egress and Areas of Refuge .....	11A-14
1119A	Interior Accessible Routes .....	11A-14
1120A	Reserved.....	11A-15
1121A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes .....	11A-15
1122A	Interior Ramps and Landings on Accessible Routes .....	11A-15
1123A	Interior Stairways.....	11A-16
1124A	Elevators and Platform (Wheelchair) Lifts.....	11A-17
1125A	Hazards on Accessible Routes .....	11A-20
1126A	Doors, Gates and Windows .....	11A-20
1127A	Common Use Facilities .....	11A-22

## **DIVISION IV – DWELLING UNIT FEATURES .....**

<b>11A-31</b>		
1128A	Covered Dwelling Units.....	11A-31
1129A	Reserved.....	11A-31
1130A	Accessible Route within Covered Multifamily Dwelling Units .....	11A-31
1131A	Changes in Level on Accessible Routes.....	11A-31
1132A	Doors .....	11A-31
1133A	Kitchens .....	11A-33
1134A	Bathing and Toilet Facilities .....	11A-34
1135A	Laundry Rooms .....	11A-37
1136A	Electrical Receptacle, Switch and Control Heights.....	11A-37

## **DIVISION V – FEATURES COMMON TO EXTERIOR AND INTERIOR OF BUILDINGS .....**

<b>11A-38</b>		
1137A	Other Features and Facilities .....	11A-38
1138A	Space Allowances and Reach Ranges .....	11A-38
1139A	Accessible Drinking Fountains .....	11A-40
1140A	Accessible Telephones .....	11A-41
1141A	Accessible Swimming Pools.....	11A-41
1142A	Electrical Receptacle, Switch and Control Heights .....	11A-42
1143A	Signage.....	11A-42
1144A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1145A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1146A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1147A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1148A	Reserved.....	11A-44
1149A	Reserved.....	11A-44

## **DIVISION VI – SITE IMPRACTICALITY TESTS .....**

<b>11A-45</b>		
1150A	Site Impracticality Tests.....	11A-45

## **DIVISION VII – FIGURES .....**

## **CHAPTER 11B ACCESSIBILITY TO PUBLIC BUILDINGS, PUBLIC ACCOMMODATIONS, COMMERCIAL BUILDINGS AND PUBLIC HOUSING .....**

<b>11B-1</b>		
<b>DIVISION 1 – APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION .....</b>		
<b>Section</b>		
11B-101	Purpose.....	11B-3
11B-102	Dimensions for Adults and Children .....	11B-3
11B-103	Equivalent Facilitation.....	11B-3
11B-104	Conventions .....	11B-3

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<i>11B-105</i>	<i>Referenced Standards . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-3</i>	<i>11B-233</i>	<i>Public Housing Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-29</i>
<i>11B-106</i>	<i>Definitions . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-3</i>	<i>11B-234</i>	<i>Amusement Rides . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-32</i>
<i>11B-107</i>	<i>Special Conditions Appeals Action . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-5</i>	<i>11B-235</i>	<i>Recreational Boating Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-32</i>
<i>11B-108</i>	<i>Maintenance of Accessible Features . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-5</i>	<i>11B-236</i>	<i>Exercise Machines and Equipment . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-33</i>
<b>DIVISION 2 – SCOPING REQUIREMENTS . . . . .</b>			<i>11B-237</i>	<i>Fishing Piers and Platforms . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-33</i>
<i>11B-201</i>	<i>Application . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-6</i>	<i>11B-238</i>	<i>Golf Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-33</i>
<i>11B-202</i>	<i>Existing Buildings and Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-6</i>	<i>11B-239</i>	<i>Miniature Golf Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-33</i>
<i>11B-203</i>	<i>General Exceptions . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-8</i>	<i>11B-240</i>	<i>Play Areas . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-33</i>
<i>11B-204</i>	<i>Protruding Objects . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-9</i>	<i>11B-241</i>	<i>Saunas and Steam Rooms . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-34</i>
<i>11B-205</i>	<i>Operable Parts . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-9</i>	<i>11B-242</i>	<i>Swimming Pools, Wading Pools and Spas . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-34</i>
<i>11B-206</i>	<i>Accessible Routes . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-9</i>	<i>11B-243</i>	<i>Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-34</i>
<i>11B-207</i>	<i>Accessible Means of Egress . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-14</i>	<i>11B-244</i>	<i>Religious Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-35</i>
<i>11B-208</i>	<i>Parking Spaces . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-14</i>	<i>11B-245</i>	<i>Public Accommodations Located in Private Residences . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-35</i>
<i>11B-209</i>	<i>Passenger Drop-off and Loading Zones and Bus Stops . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-15</i>	<i>11B-246</i>	<i>Outdoor Developed Areas . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-35</i>
<i>11B-210</i>	<i>Stairways . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-16</i>	<i>11B-247</i>	<i>Detectable Warnings and Detectable Directional Texture . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-35</i>
<i>11B-211</i>	<i>Drinking Fountains and Bottle-Filling Stations . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-16</i>	<i>11B-248</i>	<i>Common Use Areas and Employee Work Areas . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-35</i>
<i>11B-212</i>	<i>Kitchens, Kitchenettes, Wet Bars and Sinks . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-16</i>	<i>11B-249</i>	<i>Adult Changing Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-36</i>
<i>11B-213</i>	<i>Toilet Facilities and Bathing Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-16</i>	<i>11B-250</i>	<i>Circulation Paths . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-36</i>
<i>11B-214</i>	<i>Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-17</i>	<b>DIVISION 3 – BUILDING BLOCKS . . . . .</b>		
<i>11B-215</i>	<i>Fire Alarm Systems and Carbon Monoxide Alarm Systems . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-17</i>	<i>11B-301</i>	<i>General . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-37</i>
<i>11B-216</i>	<i>Signs . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-18</i>	<i>11B-302</i>	<i>Floor or Ground Surfaces . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-37</i>
<i>11B-217</i>	<i>Telephones . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-19</i>	<i>11B-303</i>	<i>Changes in Level . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-37</i>
<i>11B-218</i>	<i>Transportation Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-20</i>	<i>11B-304</i>	<i>Turning Space . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-37</i>
<i>11B-219</i>	<i>Assistive Listening Systems . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-21</i>	<i>11B-305</i>	<i>Clear Floor or Ground Space . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-38</i>
<i>11B-220</i>	<i>Automatic Teller Machines, Fare Machines and Point-of-sale Devices . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-21</i>	<i>11B-306</i>	<i>Knee and Toe Clearance . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-39</i>
<i>11B-221</i>	<i>Assembly Areas . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-21</i>	<i>11B-307</i>	<i>Protruding Objects . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-40</i>
<i>11B-222</i>	<i>Dressing, Fitting and Locker Rooms . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-23</i>	<i>11B-308</i>	<i>Reach ranges . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-41</i>
<i>11B-223</i>	<i>Medical Care and Long-term Care Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-23</i>	<i>11B-309</i>	<i>Operable Parts . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-42</i>
<i>11B-224</i>	<i>Transient Lodging Guest Rooms, Housing at a Place of Education and Social Service Center Establishments . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-24</i>	<b>DIVISION 4 – ACCESSIBLE ROUTES . . . . .</b>		
<i>11B-225</i>	<i>Storage . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-25</i>	<i>11B-401</i>	<i>General . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-43</i>
<i>11B-226</i>	<i>Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-26</i>	<i>11B-402</i>	<i>Accessible Routes . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-43</i>
<i>11B-227</i>	<i>Sales and Service . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-26</i>	<i>11B-403</i>	<i>Walking Surfaces . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-43</i>
<i>11B-228</i>	<i>Depositories, Vending Machines, Change Machines, Mail Boxes, Fuel Dispensers and Electric Vehicle Charging Stations . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-27</i>	<i>11B-404</i>	<i>Doors, Doorways and Gates . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-44</i>
<i>11B-229</i>	<i>Windows . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-28</i>	<i>11B-405</i>	<i>Ramps . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-51</i>
<i>11B-230</i>	<i>Two-way Communication Systems . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-28</i>	<i>11B-406</i>	<i>Curb Ramps, Blended Transitions and Islands . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-52</i>
<i>11B-231</i>	<i>Judicial Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-28</i>	<i>11B-407</i>	<i>Elevators . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-54</i>
<i>11B-232</i>	<i>Detention Facilities and Correctional Facilities . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-28</i>	<i>11B-408</i>	<i>Limited-use/Limited-application Elevators . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-59</i>
			<i>11B-409</i>	<i>Private Residence Elevators . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-60</i>
			<i>11B-410</i>	<i>Platform Lifts . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-61</i>
			<i>11B-411</i>	<i>Destination-oriented Elevators . . . . .</i>	<i>11B-61</i>

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>DIVISION 5 – GENERAL SITE AND BUILDING ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>11B-67</b>		
11B-501 General .....	11B-67	11B-807 Holding Cells and Housing Cells..... 11B-105	
11B-502 Parking Spaces .....	11B-67	11B-808 Courtrooms..... 11B-106	
11B-503 Passenger Drop-off and Loading Zones .....	11B-70	11B-809 Residential Dwelling Units..... 11B-106	
11B-504 Stairways.....	11B-71	11B-810 Transportation Facilities .....	11B-113
11B-505 Handrails .....	11B-71	11B-811 Storage .....	11B-114
<b>DIVISION 6 – PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES.....</b>	<b>11B-74</b>	11B-812 Electric Vehicle Charging Stations .....	11B-114
11B-601 General .....	11B-74	11B-813 Adult Changing Facilities..... 11B-117	
11B-602 Drinking Fountains and Bottle-Filling Stations.....	11B-74		
11B-603 Toilet and Bathing Rooms.....	11B-74		
11B-604 Water Closets and Toilet Compartments.....	11B-75		
11B-605 Urinals .....	11B-80		
11B-606 Lavatories and Sinks.....	11B-80		
11B-607 Bathtubs .....	11B-81		
11B-608 Shower Compartments .....	11B-83		
11B-609 Grab Bars .....	11B-86		
11B-610 Seats .....	11B-86		
11B-611 Washing Machines and Clothes Dryers .....	11B-87		
11B-612 Saunas and Steam Rooms .....	11B-88		
<b>DIVISION 7 – COMMUNICATION ELEMENTS AND FEATURES .....</b>	<b>11B-89</b>		
11B-701 General .....	11B-89		
11B-702 Fire Alarm Systems.....	11B-89		
11B-703 Signs .....	11B-89		
11B-704 Telephones .....	11B-94		
11B-705 Detectable Warnings and Detectable Directional Texture.....	11B-96		
11B-706 Assistive Listening Systems.....	11B-98		
11B-707 Automatic Teller Machines, Fare Machines and Point-of-sale Devices.....	11B-98		
11B-708 Two-way Communication Systems .....	11B-100		
<b>DIVISION 8 – SPECIAL ROOMS, SPACES AND ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>11B-101</b>		
11B-801 General .....	11B-101		
11B-802 Wheelchair Spaces, Companion Seats, and Designated Aisle Seats and Semi-ambulant Seats .....	11B-101		
11B-803 Dressing, Fitting and Locker Rooms .....	11B-102		
11B-804 Kitchens, Kitchenettes and Wet Bars .....	11B-102		
11B-805 Medical Care and Long-term Care Facilities.....	11B-104		
11B-806 Transient Lodging Guest Rooms.....	11B-105		
<b>DIVISION 9 – BUILT-IN ELEMENTS .....</b>	<b>11B-118</b>		
11B-901 General.....	11B-118		
11B-902 Dining Surfaces and Work Surfaces....	11B-118		
11B-903 Benches.....	11B-118		
11B-904 Check-out Aisles and Sales and Service Counters .....	11B-118		
<b>DIVISION 10 – RECREATION FACILITIES .....</b>	<b>11B-120</b>		
11B-1001 General.....	11B-120		
11B-1002 Amusement Rides .....	11B-120		
11B-1003 Recreational Boating Facilities .....	11B-121		
11B-1004 Exercise Machines and Equipment .....	11B-123		
11B-1005 Fishing Piers and Platforms.....	11B-124		
11B-1006 Golf Facilities.....	11B-124		
11B-1007 Miniature Golf Facilities .....	11B-125		
11B-1008 Play Areas .....	11B-125		
11B-1009 Swimming Pools, Wading Pools and Spas.....	11B-127		
11B-1010 Shooting Facilities with Firing Positions .....	11B-131		
<b>CHAPTER 12 INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT .....</b>	<b>12-1</b>		
Section			
1201 General.....	12-3		
1202 Ventilation .....	12-3		
1203 Temperature Control .....	12-6		
1204 Lighting .....	12-7		
1205 Yards or Courts .....	12-7		
1206 Sound Transmission.....	12-8		
1207 Enhanced Classroom Acoustics.....	12-8		
1208 Interior Space Dimensions.....	12-8		
1209 Access to Unoccupied Spaces .....	12-9		
1210 Toilet and Bathroom Requirements .....	12-9		
1211 [HCD 1 & HCD 2] Garage Door Springs.....	12-10		
1212 [HCD 1] Pollutant Control .....	12-11		
1213 Reserved.....	12-11		
1214 Reserved.....	12-11		
1215 Reserved.....	12-11		
1216 Reserved.....	12-11		

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<b>1217</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1218</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1219</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1220</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1221</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1222</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1223</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-11</b>
> <b>1224</b>	[OSHPD 1] Hospitals.....	<b>12-11</b>
<b>1225</b>	[OSHPD 2] Skilled Nursing and Intermediate-care Facilities.....	<b>12-63</b>
<b>1226</b>	[OSHPD 3] Clinics.....	<b>12-72</b>
<b>1227</b>	[OSHPD 4] Correctional Treatment Centers.....	<b>12-83</b>
<b>1228</b>	[OSHPD 5] Acute Psychiatric Hospitals....	<b>12-88</b>
<b>1229</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-95</b>
<b>1230</b>	[BSCC] Minimum Standards for Juvenile Facilities.....	<b>12-95</b>
<b>1231</b>	[BSCC] Local Detention .....	<b>12-99</b>
<b>1232</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-105</b>
<b>1233</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-105</b>
<b>1234</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-105</b>
<b>1235</b>	[DPH] Sanitary Control of Shellfish (Plants and Operations).....	<b>12-105</b>
<b>1236</b>	[DPH] Laboratory Animal Quarters .....	<b>12-106</b>
<b>1237</b>	[DPH] Wild Animal Quarantine Facilities .....	<b>12-106</b>
<b>1238</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-106</b>
<b>1239</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-106</b>
<b>1240</b>	[AGR] Meat and Poultry Processing Plants.....	<b>12-106</b>
<b>1241</b>	[AGR] Collection Centers and Facilities... .	<b>12-108</b>
<b>1242</b>	[AGR] Renderers .....	<b>12-108</b>
<b>1243</b>	[AGR] Horsemeat and Pet Food Establishments .....	<b>12-108</b>
<b>1244</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1245</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1246</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1247</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1248</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1249</b>	<i>Reserved</i> .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1250</b>	[CA] Pharmacies .....	<b>12-109</b>
<b>1251</b>	[CA] Veterinary Facilities .....	<b>12-110</b>
<b>1252</b>	[CA] Barber Colleges and Shops.....	<b>12-110</b>
<b>1253</b>	[CA] Schools of Cosmetology, Cosmetological Establishments and Satellite Classrooms... .	<b>12-110</b>
<b>1254</b>	[CA] Acupuncture Offices .....	<b>12-111</b>
<b>CHAPTER 13 ENERGY EFFICIENCY .....</b>		<b>13-1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 14 EXTERIOR WALLS .....</b>		<b>14-1</b>
Section		
1401	General .....	<b>14-3</b>
1402	Performance Requirements.....	<b>14-3</b>
1403	Materials .....	<b>14-4</b>
1404	Installation of Wall Coverings .....	<b>14-5</b>
1405	Combustible Materials on the Exterior Side of Exterior Walls.....	<b>14-11</b>
1406	Metal Composite Materials (MCM).....	<b>14-12</b>
1407	Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) .....	<b>14-13</b>
1408	High-pressure Decorative Exterior-grade Compact Laminates (HPL).....	<b>14-13</b>
1409	Plastic Composite Decking.....	<b>14-14</b>
1410	[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Additional Requirements for Anchored and Adhered Veneer.....	<b>14-14</b>
<b>CHAPTER 15 ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES .....</b>		<b>15-1</b>
Section		
1501	General .....	<b>15-3</b>
1502	Roof Drainage.....	<b>15-3</b>
1503	Weather Protection .....	<b>15-3</b>
1504	Performance Requirements.....	<b>15-4</b>
1505	Fire Classification.....	<b>15-5</b>
1506	Materials .....	<b>15-7</b>
1507	Requirements for Roof Coverings .....	<b>15-7</b>
1508	Roof Insulation .....	<b>15-18</b>
1509	Roof Coatings .....	<b>15-19</b>
1510	Radiant Barriers Installed above Deck .....	<b>15-19</b>
1511	Rooftop Structures .....	<b>15-19</b>
1512	Reroofing .....	<b>15-21</b>
1513	[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Seismic Anchorage of Slate Shingle, Clay and Concrete Tile Roof Coverings.....	<b>15-22</b>
<b>INDEX.....</b>		<b>INDEX-1</b>
<b>HISTORY NOTE TO VOLUME 1 .....</b>		<b>HIST-1</b>
<b>VOLUME 2</b>		
<b>CHAPTER 16 STRUCTURAL DESIGN .....</b>		<b>16-1</b>
Section		
1601	General .....	<b>16-3</b>
1602	Notations.....	<b>16-3</b>

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1603 Construction Documents .....	16-4	1706 Design Strengths of Materials .....	17-19
1604 General Design Requirements .....	16-5	1707 Alternative Test Procedure .....	17-19
1605 Load Combinations .....	16-8	1708 In-situ Load Tests .....	17-19
1606 Dead Loads .....	16-9	1709 Preconstruction Load Tests .....	17-19
1607 Live Loads .....	16-9		
1608 Snow Loads .....	16-18		
1609 Wind Loads .....	16-18		
1610 Soil Loads and Hydrostatic Pressure .....	16-27		
1611 Rain Loads .....	16-28		
1612 Flood Loads .....	16-34		
1613 Earthquake Loads .....	16-35		
1614 Atmospheric Ice Loads .....	16-37		
1615 Tsunami Loads .....	16-37		
1616 Structural Integrity .....	16-48		
<i>1617 Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC]</i> .....	<i>16-49</i>		
<b>CHAPTER 16A STRUCTURAL DESIGN .....</b> <b>16A-1</b>			
<i>Section</i>			
1601A General .....	16A-3	1801 General .....	18-3
1602A Notations .....	16A-3	1802 Design Basis .....	18-3
1603A Construction Documents .....	16A-3	1803 Geotechnical Investigations .....	18-3
1604A General Design Requirements .....	16A-5	1804 Excavation, Grading and Fill .....	18-7
1605A Load Combinations .....	16A-9	1805 Dampproofing and Waterproofing .....	18-8
1606A Dead Loads .....	16A-10	1806 Presumptive Load-bearing Values of Soils .....	18-9
1607A Live Loads .....	16A-10	1807 Foundation Walls, Retaining Walls and Embedded Posts and Poles .....	18-10
1608A Snow Loads .....	16A-19	1808 Foundations .....	18-16
1609A Wind Loads .....	16A-22	1809 Shallow Foundations .....	18-19
1610A Soil Loads and Hydrostatic Pressure .....	16A-29	1810 Deep Foundations .....	18-21
1611A Rain Loads .....	16A-30	1811 Prestressed Rock and Soil Foundation Anchors [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] .....	18-33
1612A Flood Loads .....	16A-31	1812 Earth Retaining Shoring [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] .....	18-33
1613A Earthquake Loads .....	16A-37	1813 Vibro Stone Columns for Ground Improvement [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] .....	18-37
1614A Atmospheric Ice Loads .....	16A-37		
1615A Tsunami Loads .....	16A-38		
1616A Structural Integrity .....	16A-38		
1617A Modifications to ASCE 7 .....	16A-40		
<b>CHAPTER 17 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS .....</b> <b>17-1</b>			
<i>Section</i>			
1701 General .....	17-3	1801A General .....	18A-3
1702 New Materials .....	17-3	1802A Design Basis .....	18A-3
1703 Approvals .....	17-3	1803A Geotechnical Investigations .....	18A-3
1704 Special Inspections and Tests, Contractor Responsibility and Structural Observation .....	17-4	1804A Excavation, Grading and Fill .....	18A-6
1705 Required Special Inspections and Tests .....	17-6	1805A Dampproofing and Waterproofing .....	18A-7
		1806A Presumptive Load-bearing Values of Soils .....	18A-9

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

1807A	<i>Foundation Walls, Retaining Walls and Embedded Posts and Poles</i> .....	18A-9
1808A	<i>Foundations</i> .....	18A-11
1809A	<i>Shallow Foundations</i> .....	18A-14
1810A	<i>Deep Foundations</i> .....	18A-15
1811A	<i>Prestressed Rock and Soil Foundation Anchors</i> .....	18A-26
1812A	<i>Earth Retaining Shoring</i> .....	18A-26
1813A	<i>Vibro Stone Columns for Ground Improvement</i> .....	18A-29
<b>CHAPTER 19 CONCRETE .....</b>		<b>19-1</b>
Section		
1901	<i>General</i> .....	19-3
1902	<i>Coordination of Terminology</i> .....	19-5
1903	<i>Specifications for Tests and Materials</i> .....	19-5
1904	<i>Durability Requirements</i> .....	19-6
1905	<i>Modifications to ACI 318</i> .....	19-6
1906	<i>Footings for Light-frame Construction</i> .....	19-9
1907	<i>Minimum Slab Provisions</i> .....	19-9
1908	<i>Shotcrete</i> .....	19-9
1909	<i>Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC]</i> .....	19-9
1910	<i>Additional Requirements for Skilled Nursing Facilities, Intermediate Care Facilities, Acute Psychiatric and Non-GAC Buildings [OSHPD IR, 2B &amp; 5]</i> .....	19-13
1911	<i>Existing Concrete Structures [OSHPD IR, 2 &amp; 5]</i> .....	19-14
<b>CHAPTER 19A CONCRETE .....</b>		<b>19A-1</b>
Section		
1901A	<i>General</i> .....	19A-3
1902A	<i>Coordination of Terminology</i> .....	19A-4
1903A	<i>Specifications for Tests and Materials</i> .....	19A-4
1904A	<i>Durability Requirements</i> .....	19A-5
1905A	<i>Modifications to ACI 318</i> .....	19A-5
1906A	<i>Footings for Light-frame Construction</i> .....	19A-8
1907A	<i>Minimum Slab Provisions</i> .....	19A-8
1908A	<i>Shotcrete</i> .....	19A-8
1909A	<i>Reserved</i> .....	19A-8
1910A	<i>Concrete, Reinforcement and Anchor Testing</i> .....	19A-8
1911A	<i>Existing Concrete Structures</i> .....	19A-10
<b>CHAPTER 20 ALUMINUM.....</b>		<b>20-1</b>
Section		
2001	<i>General</i> .....	20-3
2002	<i>Materials</i> .....	20-3
2003	<i>Testing and Inspection</i> .....	20-3
<b>CHAPTER 21 MASONRY .....</b>		<b>21-1</b>
Section		
2101	<i>General</i> .....	21-3
2102	<i>Notations</i> .....	21-3
2103	<i>Masonry Construction Materials</i> .....	21-4
2104	<i>Construction</i> .....	21-5
2105	<i>Quality Assurance</i> .....	21-6
2106	<i>Seismic Design</i> .....	21-7
2107	<i>Allowable Stress Design</i> .....	21-8
2108	<i>Strength Design of Masonry</i> .....	21-9
2109	<i>Empirical Design of Adobe Masonry</i> .....	21-9
2110	<i>Glass Unit Masonry</i> .....	21-11
2111	<i>Masonry Fireplaces</i> .....	21-12
2112	<i>Masonry Heaters</i> .....	21-14
2113	<i>Masonry Chimneys</i> .....	21-14
2114	<i>Dry-stack Masonry</i> .....	21-19
2115	<i>Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC]</i> .....	21-19
<b>CHAPTER 21A MASONRY .....</b>		<b>21A-1</b>
Section		
2101A	<i>General</i> .....	21A-3
2102A	<i>Notations</i> .....	21A-3
2103A	<i>Masonry Construction Materials</i> .....	21A-3
2104A	<i>Construction</i> .....	21A-4
2105A	<i>Quality Assurance</i> .....	21A-7
2106A	<i>Seismic Design</i> .....	21A-8
2107A	<i>Allowable Stress Design</i> .....	21A-9
2108A	<i>Strength Design of Masonry</i> .....	21A-10
2109A	<i>Empirical Design of Adobe Masonry</i> .....	21A-10
2110A	<i>Glass Unit Masonry</i> .....	21A-10
2111A	<i>Masonry Fireplaces</i> .....	21A-10
2112A	<i>Masonry Heaters</i> .....	21A-13
2113A	<i>Masonry Chimneys</i> .....	21A-13
2114A	<i>Dry-stack Masonry</i> .....	21A-17

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 22 STEEL .....</b>	<b>22-1</b>
Section	
2201 General .....	22-3
2202 Identification of Steel for Structural Purposes ..	22-3
2203 Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes .....	22-3
2204 Connections.....	22-3
2205 Structural Steel .....	22-4
2206 Composite Structural Steel and Concrete Structures .....	22-6
2207 Steel Joists.....	22-6
2208 Steel Cable Structures .....	22-7
2209 Steel Storage Racks.....	22-7
2210 Cold-formed Steel.....	22-7
2211 Cold-formed Steel Light-frame Construction ..	22-8
2212 Additional Requirements for Community Colleges [DSA-SS/CC] .....	22-9
2213 Testing and Field Verification [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] .....	22-10
<b>CHAPTER 22A STEEL.....</b>	<b>22A-1</b>
Section	
2201A General.....	22A-3
2202A Identification of Steel for Structural Purposes .....	22A-3
2203A Protection of Steel for Structural Purposes .....	22A-3
2204A Connections .....	22A-3
2205A Structural Steel.....	22A-4
2206A Composite Structural Steel and Concrete Structures .....	22A-6
2207A Steel Joists .....	22A-6
2208A Steel Cable Structures .....	22A-7
2209A Steel Storage Racks .....	22A-8
2210A Cold-formed Steel.....	22A-8
2211A Cold-formed Steel Light-frame Construction.....	22A-8
2212A [DSA-SS] Light Modular Steel Moment Frames for Public Elementary and Secondary Schools, and Community Colleges.....	22A-9
2213A Testing and Field Verification .....	22A-10
<b>CHAPTER 23 WOOD .....</b>	<b>23-1</b>
Section	
2301 General .....	23-3
2302 Design Requirements .....	23-4
2303 Minimum Standards and Quality .....	23-4
2304 General Construction Requirements .....	23-13
2305 General Design Requirements for Lateral Force-resisting Systems .....	23-27
2306 Allowable Stress Design.....	23-28
2307 Load and Resistance Factor Design .....	23-35
2308 Conventional Light-frame Construction.....	23-35
2309 Wood Frame Construction Manual.....	23-62
<b>CHAPTER 24 GLASS AND GLAZING .....</b>	<b>24-1</b>
Section	
2401 General .....	24-3
2402 Glazing Replacement .....	24-3
2403 General Requirements for Glass .....	24-3
2404 Wind, Snow, Seismic and Dead Loads on Glass .....	24-4
2405 Sloped Glazing and Skylights.....	24-6
2406 Safety Glazing .....	24-7
2407 Glass in Handrails and Guards .....	24-9
2408 Glazing in Athletic Facilities .....	24-10
2409 Glass in Walkways, Elevator Hoistways and Elevator Cars .....	24-10
2410 [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Structural Sealant Glazing (SSG).....	24-10
2411 [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Thermal Barriers in Aluminum Mullion Systems.....	24-12
<b>CHAPTER 25 GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER .....</b>	<b>25-1</b>
Section	
2501 General .....	25-3
2502 Performance .....	25-3
2503 Inspection .....	25-3
2504 Vertical and Horizontal Assemblies .....	25-4
2505 Shear Wall Construction.....	25-4
2506 Gypsum Board and Gypsum Panel Product Materials .....	25-4
2507 Lathing and Plastering .....	25-4
2508 Gypsum Construction .....	25-5
2509 Showers and Water Closets .....	25-7
2510 Lathing and Furring for Cement Plaster (Stucco).....	25-7
2511 Interior Plaster .....	25-8
2512 Exterior Plaster .....	25-9
2513 Exposed Aggregate Plaster .....	25-9
2514 Reinforced Gypsum Concrete .....	25-10

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 26 PLASTIC .....</b>	<b>26-1</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31 SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION.....</b>	<b>31-1</b>
Section		Section	
2601 General .....	26-3	3101 General .....	31-3
2602 Finish and Trim.....	26-3	3102 Membrane Structures .....	31-3
2603 Foam Plastic Insulation.....	26-3	3103 Temporary Structures .....	31-4
2604 Interior Finish and Trim .....	26-9	3104 Pedestrian Walkways and Tunnels .....	31-5
2605 Plastic Veneer .....	26-11	3105 Awnings and Canopies .....	31-6
2606 Light-transmitting Plastics .....	26-11	3106 Marquees.....	31-6
2607 Light-transmitting Plastic Wall Panels .....	26-12	3107 Signs .....	31-7
2608 Light-transmitting Plastic Glazing .....	26-13	3108 Telecommunication and Broadcast Towers .....	31-7
2609 Light-transmitting Plastic Roof Panels .....	26-13	3109 Swimming Pools, Spas and Hot Tubs.....	31-7
2610 Light-transmitting Plastic Skylight Glazing .....	26-14	3110 Automatic Vehicular Gates.....	31-9
2611 Light-transmitting Plastic Interior Signs.....	26-15	3111 Solar Energy Systems.....	31-9
2612 Plastic Composites .....	26-15	3112 Greenhouses .....	31-10
2613 Fiber-reinforced Polymer .....	26-15	3113 Relocatable Buildings.....	31-10
2614 Reflective Plastic Core Insulation.....	26-16	3114 Public Use Restroom Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas .....	31-11
<b>CHAPTER 27 ELECTRICAL .....</b>	<b>27-1</b>	3115 Intermodal Shipping Containers .....	31-11
Section		<b>CHAPTER 31A SYSTEMS FOR WINDOW CLEANING OR EXTERIOR BUILDING MAINTENANCE... 31A-1</b>	
2701 General .....	27-3	<b>CHAPTER 31B PUBLIC POOLS..... 31B-1</b>	
2702 Emergency and Standby Power Systems .....	27-3	<b>DIVISION I – GENERAL .....</b>	
<b>CHAPTER 28 MECHANICAL SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>28-1</b>	<b>31B-3</b>	
Section		Section	
2801 General .....	28-3	3101B Scope .....	31B-3
<b>CHAPTER 29 PLUMBING SYSTEMS.....</b>	<b>29-1</b>	3102B Definitions .....	31B-3
Section		3103B Plan Review .....	31B-4
2901 General .....	29-1	3104B Construction.....	31B-5
2902 Minimum Plumbing Facilities.....	29-1	3105B Plan Compliance Inspections.....	31B-5
2903 Installation of Fixtures.....	29-6	3106B Special Requirements for Spray Grounds .....	31B-5
<b>CHAPTER 30 ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS .....</b>	<b>30-1</b>	3107B Alternative Equipment, Materials and Methods of Construction .....	31B-6
Section		3108B Pool Construction .....	31B-6
3001 General .....	30-3	3109B Pool Geometry.....	31B-6
3002 Hoistway Enclosures.....	30-3	3110B Permanent Markings .....	31B-6
3003 Emergency Operations .....	30-5	3111B Steps, Recessed Steps, Ladders and Stairs...	31B-7
3004 Conveying Systems.....	30-6	3112B Handholds .....	31B-8
3005 Machine Rooms.....	30-6	3113B Diving Boards and Platforms .....	31B-8
3006 Elevator Lobbies and Hoistway Opening Protection .....	30-7	3114B Pool Decks .....	31B-8
3007 Fire Service Access Elevator.....	30-8	3115B Pool Lighting .....	31B-8
3008 Occupant Evacuation Elevators.....	30-9	3116B Dressing, Shower and Toilet Facilities .....	31B-9
3009 Special Requirements for Elevators in Hospitals.....	30-11	3117B Drinking Fountains .....	31B-9
		3118B Hose Bibbs.....	31B-9

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>3119B</b>	<i>Pool Enclosure</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-9</b>	<b>DIVISION II – PUBLIC SWIMMING POOLS . . . . .</b>	<b>31B-19</b>	
<b>3120B</b>	<i>Required Signs</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-10</b>	<b>3160B</b>	<i>Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>
<b>3121B</b>	<i>Indoor Pool Ventilation</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>	<b>3161B</b>	<i>Wading Pools</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-20</b>
<b>3122B</b>	<i>Pool Equipment Enclosure</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>	<b>3162B</b>	<i>Anti-Entrapment Devices and Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-20</b>
<b>3123B</b>	<i>General Requirements</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>			
<b>3124B</b>	<i>Turnover Time</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-11</b>			
<b>3125B</b>	<i>Recirculation Piping System and Components</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>			
<b>3126B</b>	<i>Recirculation Pump Capacity</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31C RADIATION . . . . .</b>	<b>31C-1</b>	
<b>3127B</b>	<i>Water Supply Inlets</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<i>Section</i>		
<b>3128B</b>	<i>Filters (All Types)</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>3101C</b>	<i>Scope</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3129B</b>	<i>Rapid Sand Pressure Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>3102C</b>	<i>Radiation Shielding Barriers</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3130B</b>	<i>Diatomaceous Earth Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-12</b>	<b>3103C</b>	<i>Medical Radiographic and Photofluorographic Installations</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3131B</b>	<i>High-Rate Sand Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>	<b>3104C</b>	<i>Medical Therapeutic X-Ray Installations</i> . . . . .	<b>31C-3</b>
<b>3132B</b>	<i>Cartridge Filters</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>			
<b>3133B</b>	<i>Chemical Feeders</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>			
<b>3134B</b>	<i>Disinfectant Feeders</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-13</b>			
<b>3135B</b>	<i>Gas Chlorination Equipment Room</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-17</b>			
<b>3136B</b>	<i>Pool Skimming Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-17</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31E RESERVED . . . . .</b>	<b>31E-1</b>	
<b>3137B</b>	<i>Pool Fittings</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>			
<b>3138B</b>	<i>Spa Pool Special Requirements</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>	<b>CHAPTER 31F MARINE OIL TERMINALS . . . . .</b>	<b>31F-1</b>	
<b>3139B</b>	<i>Solar Heating Installations</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>	<i>Section</i>		
<b>3140B</b>	<i>Cleaning Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-18</b>	<b>3101F</b>	<i>Introduction</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-3</b>
<b>3141B</b>	<i>Wastewater Disposal</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3102F</b>	<i>Audit and Inspection</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-6</b>
<b>3142B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3103F</b>	<i>Structural Loading Criteria</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-20</b>
<b>3143B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3104F</b>	<i>Seismic Analysis and Structural Performance</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-33</b>
<b>3144B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3105F</b>	<i>Mooring and Berthing Analysis and Design</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-44</b>
<b>3145B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3106F</b>	<i>Geotechnical Hazards and Foundations</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-50</b>
<b>3146B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3107F</b>	<i>Structural Analysis and Design of Components</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-55</b>
<b>3147B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3108F</b>	<i>Fire Prevention, Detection and Suppression</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-70</b>
<b>3148B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3109F</b>	<i>Piping and Pipelines</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-74</b>
<b>3149B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3110F</b>	<i>Mechanical and Electrical Equipment</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-77</b>
<b>3150B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3111F</b>	<i>Electrical Systems</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-80</b>
<b>3151B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>	<b>3112F</b>	<i>Requirements Specific to Marine Terminals That Transfer LNG</i> . . . . .	<b>31F-83</b>
<b>3152B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3153B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3154B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3155B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3156B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3157B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3158B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			
<b>3159B</b>	<i>Reserved</i> . . . . .	<b>31B-19</b>			

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>CHAPTER 33 SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION .....</b>	<b>33-1</b>		
Section			
3301 General .....	33-3	D102 Building Restrictions .....	APPENDIX D-1
3302 Construction Safeguards .....	33-3	D103 Changes to Buildings .....	APPENDIX D-2
3303 Demolition.....	33-3	D104 Buildings Located Partially in the Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-2
3304 Site Work.....	33-3	D105 Exceptions to Restrictions in Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-3
3305 Sanitary .....	33-4	D106 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX D-3
3306 Protection of Pedestrians.....	33-4		
3307 Protection of Adjoining Property .....	33-5		
3308 Temporary Use of Streets, Alleys and Public Property .....	33-5		
3309 Fire Extinguishers .....	33-6		
3310 Means of Egress .....	33-6		
3311 Standpipes .....	33-6		
3312 Automatic Sprinkler System .....	33-6		
3313 Water Supply for Fire Protection .....	33-6		
3314 Fire Watch During Construction.....	33-7		
<b>CHAPTER 34 RESERVED.....</b>	<b>34-1</b>		
<b>CHAPTER 35 REFERENCED STANDARDS ....</b>	<b>35-1</b>		
<b>APPENDIX A EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS ...</b>	<b>APPENDIX A-1</b>		
Section			
A101 Building Official Qualifications ...	APPENDIX A-1	G101 Administration .....	APPENDIX G-1
A102 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX A-1	G102 Definitions.....	APPENDIX G-2
<b>APPENDIX B BOARD OF APPEALS.....</b>	<b>APPENDIX B-1</b>	G103 Applicability .....	APPENDIX G-2
Section			
B101 General .....	APPENDIX B-1	G104 Powers and Duties.....	APPENDIX G-2
<b>APPENDIX C GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS .....</b>	<b>APPENDIX C-1</b>	G105 Permits .....	APPENDIX G-3
Section			
C101 General .....	APPENDIX C-1	G106 Variances.....	APPENDIX G-4
C102 Allowable Height and Area.....	APPENDIX C-1	G107 Subdivisions .....	APPENDIX G-5
C103 Mixed Occupancies.....	APPENDIX C-2	G108 Site Improvement .....	APPENDIX G-5
C104 Exits.....	APPENDIX C-2	G109 Manufactured Homes .....	APPENDIX G-5
<b>APPENDIX D FIRE DISTRICTS....</b>	<b>APPENDIX D-1</b>	G110 Recreational Vehicles.....	APPENDIX G-6
Section			
D101 General .....	APPENDIX D-1	G111 Tanks.....	APPENDIX G-6
D102 Building Restrictions .....	APPENDIX D-1	G112 Other Building Work .....	APPENDIX G-6
D103 Changes to Buildings .....	APPENDIX D-2	G113 Temporary Structures and Temporary Storage .....	APPENDIX G-6
D104 Buildings Located Partially in the Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-2	G114 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .....	APPENDIX G-6
D105 Exceptions to Restrictions in Fire District.....	APPENDIX D-3	G115 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX G-7
<b>APPENDIX E RESERVED.....</b>	<b>APPENDIX E-1</b>		
<b>APPENDIX F RODENTPROOFING ...</b>	<b>APPENDIX F-1</b>		
Section			
F101 General .....	APPENDIX F-1		
<b>APPENDIX G FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION ....</b>	<b>APPENDIX G-1</b>		
Section			
G101 Administration .....	APPENDIX G-1		
G102 Definitions.....	APPENDIX G-2		
G103 Applicability .....	APPENDIX G-2		
G104 Powers and Duties.....	APPENDIX G-2		
G105 Permits .....	APPENDIX G-3		
G106 Variances.....	APPENDIX G-4		
G107 Subdivisions .....	APPENDIX G-5		
G108 Site Improvement .....	APPENDIX G-5		
G109 Manufactured Homes .....	APPENDIX G-5		
G110 Recreational Vehicles.....	APPENDIX G-6		
G111 Tanks.....	APPENDIX G-6		
G112 Other Building Work .....	APPENDIX G-6		
G113 Temporary Structures and Temporary Storage .....	APPENDIX G-6		
G114 Utility and Miscellaneous Group U .....	APPENDIX G-6		
G115 Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX G-7		
<b>APPENDIX H SIGNS .....</b>	<b>APPENDIX H-1</b>		
Section			
H101 General .....	APPENDIX H-1		
H102 Definitions.....	APPENDIX H-1		
H103 Location .....	APPENDIX H-2		
H104 Identification.....	APPENDIX H-2		
H105 Design and Construction.....	APPENDIX H-2		
H106 Electrical .....	APPENDIX H-2		
H107 Combustible Materials .....	APPENDIX H-2		
H108 Animated Devices.....	APPENDIX H-3		

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

H109	Ground Signs.....	APPENDIX H-3	K108	<i>Attics That Are Evacuation Locations .....</i>	APPENDIX K-3
H110	Roof Signs.....	APPENDIX H-3	K109	<i>Alternate Means of Protection....</i>	APPENDIX K-3
H111	Wall Signs.....	APPENDIX H-3			
H112	Projecting Signs.....	APPENDIX H-4			
H113	Marquee Signs.....	APPENDIX H-4			
H114	Portable Signs .....	APPENDIX H-4			
H115	Thickness of Signs.....	APPENDIX H-4			
H116	Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX H-5			
<b>APPENDIX I PATIO COVERS .....</b> <b>APPENDIX I-1</b>			<b>APPENDIX L EARTHQUAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION .. APPENDIX L-1</b>		
Section			Section		
I101	General .....	APPENDIX I-1	L101	General .....	APPENDIX L-1
I102	Definition.....	APPENDIX I-1			
I103	Exterior Walls and Openings .....	APPENDIX I-1			
I104	Height .....	APPENDIX I-2			
I105	Structural Provisions .....	APPENDIX I-2			
<b>APPENDIX J GRADING .....</b> <b>APPENDIX J-1</b>			<b>APPENDIX M TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD .... APPENDIX M-1</b>		
Section			Section		
J101	General .....	APPENDIX J-1	M101	Refuge Structures for Vertical Evacuation from Tsunami-generated Flood Hazards.....	APPENDIX M-1
J102	Definitions.....	APPENDIX J-1	M102	Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX M-1
J103	Permits Required.....	APPENDIX J-2			
J104	Permit Application and Submittals.....	APPENDIX J-2			
J105	Inspections.....	APPENDIX J-2			
J106	Excavations .....	APPENDIX J-2			
J107	Fills .....	APPENDIX J-3			
J108	Setbacks.....	APPENDIX J-3			
J109	Drainage and Terracing.....	APPENDIX J-4			
J110	Erosion Control.....	APPENDIX J-5			
J111	Referenced Standards .....	APPENDIX J-5			
<b>APPENDIX K GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN .... APPENDIX K-1</b>			<b>APPENDIX N REPLICABLE BUILDINGS .....</b> <b>APPENDIX N-1</b>		
Section			Section		
K101	Scope.....	APPENDIX K-1	N101	Administration .....	APPENDIX N-1
K102	Definitions .....	APPENDIX K-1	N102	Definitions .....	APPENDIX N-1
K103	Structural Stability .....	APPENDIX K-2	N103	Replicable Design Requirements .....	APPENDIX N-1
K104	Evacuation Locations.....	APPENDIX K-2	N104	Replicable Design Submittal Requirements .....	APPENDIX N-2
K105	Space within the Building.....	APPENDIX K-2	N105	Review and Approval of Replicable Design.....	APPENDIX N-2
K106	Decks and Balconies That Are Evacuation Locations.....	APPENDIX K-3	N106	Site-specific Application of Approved Replicable Design .....	APPENDIX N-2
K107	Rooftop Evacuation Locations .....	APPENDIX K-3	N107	Site-specific Review and Approval of Replicable Design.....	APPENDIX N-3
<b>APPENDIX O PERFORMANCE-BASED APPLICATION..... APPENDIX O-1</b>					
Section					
O101	General.....	APPENDIX O-1			
<b>APPENDIX P EMERGENCY HOUSING .....</b> <b>APPENDIX P-1</b>					
Section					
P101	General.....	APPENDIX P-1			
P102	Definitions .....	APPENDIX P-1			
P103	Emergency Housing.....	APPENDIX P-2			
P104	Emergency Sleeping Cabins.....	APPENDIX P-2			
P105	Emergency Transportable Housing Units .....	APPENDIX P-3			
P106	Tents and Membrane Structures .....	APPENDIX P-3			
P107	Accessibility .....	APPENDIX P-3			

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>P108</i>	<i>Lofts in Emergency Housing</i> .....	<i>APPENDIX P-3</i>
<i>P109</i>	<i>Location, Maintenance and Identification</i> .....	<i>APPENDIX P-4</i>
<i>P110</i>	<i>Emergency Housing Facilities</i> .....	<i>APPENDIX P-4</i>

<b>INDEX</b> .....	<b>INDEX-1</b>
--------------------	----------------

<b>HISTORY NOTE TO VOLUME 2</b> .....	<b>HIST-1</b>
---------------------------------------	---------------



## CALIFORNIA FIRE CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 16 – STRUCTURAL DESIGN

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter												X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X					X		X	X			X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below					X	X																	X
Chapter / Section																							
1601.1.1										X		X	X			X							
1601.1.2										X		X	X			X							
1601.1.3										X													
1601.1.4										X		X	X			X							
1601.2										X		X	X			X							
1603.1											X	X				X							
Table 1604.5												X				X							
1605.2												X	B			X							
Table 1607.1												X	X			X							
1607.9						X																	
1607.9.2						X	X																
1612.3, <i>Exception</i>												X	X			X							
1613.1												X	X			X							
1613.1.1																							X
1613.1.2	X																						
1613.1.3	X																						
1613.2.1, <i>Exception</i>												X	X			X							
Table 1613.2.3(1)												X	X			X							
Table 1613.2.3(2)												X	X			X							
1613.2.5, <i>Exception</i>												X	X			X							
1613.2.5.1												X	X			X							
1613.2.5.2												X	X			X							
1613.3												X	X			X							
1613.4												X	X			X							
1617							X																

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11. (A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.



# CHAPTER 16

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 16 establishes minimum design requirements so that the structural components of buildings are proportioned to resist the loads that are likely to be encountered. In addition, this chapter assigns buildings and structures to risk categories that are indicative of their intended use. The loads specified herein along with the required load combinations have been established through research and service performance of buildings and structures. The application of these loads and adherence to the serviceability criteria enhance the protection of life and property.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 1601 GENERAL

**1601.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the structural design of buildings, structures and portions thereof regulated by this code.

**1601.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** The scope of application of Chapter 16 is as follows:

1. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.
2. Hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings and acute psychiatric hospital buildings regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD) as listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2 and 1.10.5.

**1601.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety/Community Colleges:

**[DSA-SS/CC]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

2. OSHPD amendments **[OSHPD]** appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:

**[OSHPD 1R]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 5]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

**1601.1.3 Reference to other chapters. [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 17 and 18, the provisions in Chapters 17A and 18A respectively shall apply instead.

### 1601.1.4 Amendments. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]

1. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** In addition to the amendments in this chapter, these buildings shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1617A.1.1, 1617A.1.4, 1617A.1.18 – 1617A.1.20, 1617A.1.27, 1617A.1.39 and 1617A.1.41.
2. **[DSA-SS/CC]** See Section 1617 for additional requirements.

**1601.2 Enforcement agency approval. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** In addition to requirements of the California Administrative Code and the California Building Code, any aspect of project design, construction, quality assurance or quality control programs for which this code requires approval by the Registered Design Professional (RDP), are also subject to approval by the enforcement agency.

### SECTION 1602 NOTATIONS

**1602.1 Notations.** The following notations are used in this chapter:

*D* = Dead load.

*D<sub>i</sub>* = Weight of ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

*E* = Combined effect of horizontal and vertical earthquake induced forces as defined in Section 12.4 of ASCE 7.

*F* = Load due to fluids with well-defined pressures and maximum heights.

*F<sub>a</sub>* = Flood load in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7.

*H* = Load due to lateral earth pressures, ground water pressure or pressure of bulk materials.

*L* = Live load.

*L<sub>r</sub>* = Roof live load.

*R* = Rain load.

*S* = Snow load.

*T* = Cumulative effects of self-straining load forces and effects.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

$V_{asd}$  = Allowable stress design wind speed, miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) where applicable.

$V$  = Basic design wind speeds, miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) determined from Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12) or ASCE 7.

$W$  = Load due to wind pressure.

$W_i$  = Wind-on-ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

## SECTION 1603 CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

**1603.1 General.** Construction documents shall show the size, section and relative locations of structural members with floor levels, column centers and offsets dimensioned. The design loads and other information pertinent to the structural design required by Sections 1603.1.1 through 1603.1.9 shall be indicated on the construction documents.

**Exception:** Construction documents for buildings constructed in accordance with the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308 shall indicate the following structural design information:

1. Floor and roof dead and live loads.
2. Ground snow load,  $p_g$ .
3. Basic design wind speed,  $V$ , miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) and allowable stress design wind speed,  $V_{asd}$ , as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 and wind exposure.
4. Seismic design category and site class.
5. Flood design data, if located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3.
6. Design load-bearing values of soils.
7. Rain load data.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5J]** Additional requirements are included in Sections 7-115 and 7-125 of the California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24, C.C.R.).

**1603.1.1 Floor live load.** The uniformly distributed, concentrated and impact floor live load used in the design shall be indicated for floor areas. Use of live load reduction in accordance with Section 1607.12 shall be indicated for each type of live load used in the design.

**1603.1.2 Roof live load.** The roof live load used in the design shall be indicated for roof areas (Section 1607.14).

**1603.1.3 Roof snow load data.** The ground snow load,  $p_g$ , shall be indicated. In areas where the ground snow load,  $p_g$ , exceeds 10 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>), the following additional information shall also be provided, regardless of whether snow loads govern the design of the roof:

1. Flat-roof snow load,  $p_f$ .
2. Snow exposure factor,  $C_e$ .
3. Snow load importance factor,  $I_s$ .
4. Thermal factor,  $C_t$ .
5. Slope factor(s),  $C_s$ .

6. Drift surcharge load(s),  $p_d$ , where the sum of  $p_d$  and  $p_f$  exceeds 20 psf (0.96 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

7. Width of snow drift(s),  $w$ .

**1603.1.4 Wind design data.** The following information related to wind loads shall be shown, regardless of whether wind loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:

1. Basic design wind speed,  $V$ , miles per hour and allowable stress design wind speed,  $V_{asd}$ , as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.
2. Risk category.
3. Wind exposure. Applicable wind direction if more than one wind exposure is utilized.
4. Applicable internal pressure coefficient.
5. Design wind pressures and their applicable zones with dimensions to be used for exterior component and cladding materials not specifically designed by the registered design professional responsible for the design of the structure, pounds per square foot (kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1603.1.5 Earthquake design data.** The following information related to seismic loads shall be shown, regardless of whether seismic loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:

1. Risk category.
2. Seismic importance factor,  $I_e$ .
3. Mapped spectral response acceleration parameters,  $S_S$  and  $S_1$ .
4. Site class.
5. Design spectral response acceleration parameters,  $S_{DS}$  and  $S_{D1}$ .
6. Seismic design category.
7. Basic seismic force-resisting system(s).
8. Design base shear(s).
9. Seismic response coefficient(s),  $CS$ .
10. Response modification coefficient(s),  $R$ .
11. Analysis procedure used.

**1603.1.6 Geotechnical information.** The design load-bearing values of soils shall be shown on the construction documents.

**1603.1.7 Flood design data.** For buildings located in whole or in part in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the documentation pertaining to design, if required in Section 1612.4, shall be included and the following information, referenced to the datum on the community's *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM), shall be shown, regardless of whether flood loads govern the design of the building:

1. Flood design class assigned according to ASCE 24.
2. In flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones, the elevation of the proposed lowest floor, including the basement.

3. In flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones, the elevation to which any nonresidential building will be dry floodproofed.
4. In coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones, the proposed elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member of the lowest floor, including the basement.

**1603.1.8 Special loads.** Special loads that are applicable to the design of the building, structure or portions thereof, including but not limited to the loads of machinery or equipment, and that are greater than specified floor and roof loads shall be specified by their descriptions and locations.

**1603.1.8.1 Photovoltaic panel systems.** The dead load of rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems, including rack support systems, shall be indicated on the construction documents.

**1603.1.9 Roof rain load data.** Rain intensity,  $i$  (in/hr) (cm/hr), shall be shown regardless of whether rain loads govern the design.

## SECTION 1604 GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

**1604.1 General.** Building, structures and parts thereof shall be designed and constructed in accordance with strength design, load and resistance factor design, allowable stress design, empirical design or conventional construction methods, as permitted by the applicable material chapters and referenced standards.

**1604.2 Strength.** Buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the factored loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate strength limit states for the materials of construction. Alternatively, buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the nominal loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate specified allowable stresses for the materials of construction.

Loads and forces for occupancies or uses not covered in this chapter shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

**1604.3 Serviceability.** Structural systems and members thereof shall be designed to have adequate stiffness to limit deflections as indicated in Table 1604.3.

**1604.3.1 Deflections.** The deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of Sections 1604.3.2 through 1604.3.5 or that permitted by Table 1604.3.

**1604.3.2 Reinforced concrete.** The deflection of reinforced concrete structural members shall not exceed that permitted by ACI 318.

**1604.3.3 Steel.** The deflection of steel structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AISC 360, AISI S100, ASCE 8, SJI 100 or SJI 200, as applicable.

**1604.3.4 Masonry.** The deflection of masonry structural members shall not exceed that permitted by TMS 402.

**1604.3.5 Aluminum.** The deflection of aluminum structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AA ADM.

**1604.3.6 Limits.** The deflection limits of Section 1604.3.1 shall be used unless more restrictive deflection limits are required by a referenced standard for the element or finish material.

**1604.3.7 Framing supporting glass.** The deflection of framing members supporting glass subjected to 0.6 times the “component and cladding” wind loads shall not exceed either of the following:

1.  $\frac{1}{175}$  of the length of span of the framing member, for framing members having a length not more than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm).
2.  $\frac{1}{240}$  of the length of span of the framing member +  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm), for framing members having a length greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm).

**1604.4 Analysis.** Load effects on structural members and their connections shall be determined by methods of structural analysis that take into account equilibrium, general stability, geometric compatibility and both short- and long-term material properties.

Members that tend to accumulate residual deformations under repeated service loads shall have included in their analysis the effects of added deformations expected to occur during their service life.

Any system or method of construction to be used shall be based on a rational analysis in accordance with well-established principles of mechanics. Such analysis shall result in a system that provides a complete load path capable of transferring loads from their point of origin to the load-resisting elements.

The total lateral force shall be distributed to the various vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system in proportion to their rigidities, considering the rigidity of the horizontal bracing system or diaphragm. Rigid elements assumed not to be a part of the lateral force-resisting system are permitted to be incorporated into buildings provided that their effect on the action of the system is considered and provided for in the design. A diaphragm is rigid for the purpose of distribution of story shear and torsional moment when the lateral deformation of the diaphragm is less than or equal to two times the average story drift. Where required by ASCE 7, provisions shall be made for the increased forces induced on resisting elements of the structural system resulting from torsion due to eccentricity between the center of application of the lateral forces and the center of rigidity of the lateral force-resisting system.

Every structure shall be designed to resist the effects caused by the forces specified in this chapter, including overturning, uplift and sliding. Where sliding is used to isolate the elements, the effects of friction between sliding elements shall be included as a force.

**TABLE 1604.3**  
**DEFLECTION LIMITS<sup>a, b, c, h, i</sup>**

CONSTRUCTION	L or L <sub>r</sub>	S or W <sup>f</sup>	D + L <sup>d, g</sup>
Roof members: <sup>e</sup>			
Supporting plaster or stucco ceiling	l/360	l/360	l/240
Supporting nonplaster ceiling	l/240	l/240	l/180
Not supporting ceiling	l/180	l/180	l/120
Floor members	l/360	—	l/240
Exterior walls:			
With plaster or stucco finishes	—	l/360	—
With other brittle finishes	—	l/240	—
With flexible finishes	—	l/120	—
Interior partitions: <sup>b</sup>			
With plaster or stucco finishes	l/360	—	—
With other brittle finishes	l/240	—	—
With flexible finishes	l/120	—	—
Farm buildings	—	—	l/180
Greenhouses	—	—	l/120

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. For structural roofing and siding made of formed metal sheets, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/60. For secondary roof structural members supporting formed metal roofing, the live load deflection shall not exceed l/150. For secondary wall members supporting formed metal siding, the design wind load deflection shall not exceed l/90. For roofs, this exception only applies when the metal sheets have no roof covering.
- b. Flexible, folding and portable partitions are not governed by the provisions of this section. The deflection criterion for interior partitions is based on the horizontal load defined in Section 1607.16.
- c. See Section 2403 for glass supports.
- d. The deflection limit for the D + (L + L<sub>r</sub>) load combination only applies to the deflection due to the creep component of long-term dead load deflection plus the short-term live load deflection. For lumber, structural glued laminated timber, prefabricated wood I-joists and structural composite lumber members that are dry at time of installation and used under dry conditions in accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS, the creep component of the long-term deflection shall be permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from 0.5D. For lumber and glued laminated timber members installed or used at all other moisture conditions or cross laminated timber and wood structural panels that are dry at time of installation and used under dry conditions in accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS, the creep component of the long-term deflection is permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from D. The value of 0.5D shall not be used in combination with ANSI/AWC NDS provisions for long-term loading.
- e. The preceding deflections do not ensure against ponding. Roofs that do not have sufficient slope or camber to ensure adequate drainage shall be investigated for ponding. See Chapter 8 of ASCE 7.
- f. The wind load shall be permitted to be taken as 0.42 times the “component and cladding” loads or directly calculated using the 10-year mean return interval wind speed for the purpose of determining deflection limits in Table 1604.3. Where framing members support glass, the deflection limit therein shall not exceed that specified in Section 1604.3.7
- g. For steel structural members, the deflection due to creep component of long-term dead load shall be permitted to be taken as zero.
- h. For aluminum structural members or aluminum panels used in skylights and sloped glazing framing, roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers not supporting edge of glass or aluminum sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/60. For continuous aluminum structural members supporting edge of glass, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/175 for each glass lite or l/60 for the entire length of the member, whichever is more stringent. For aluminum sandwich panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/120.
- i. l = Length of the member between supports. For cantilever members, l shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.

**1604.5 Risk category.** Each building and structure shall be assigned a risk category in accordance with Table 1604.5. Where a referenced standard specifies an occupancy category, the risk category shall not be taken as lower than the occupancy category specified therein. Where a referenced standard specifies that the assignment of a risk category be in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1, Table 1604.5 shall be used in lieu of ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1.

**Exception:** The assignment of buildings and structures to *Tsunami Risk Categories III and IV* is permitted to be in accordance with Section 6.4 of ASCE 7.

**1604.5.1 Multiple occupancies.** Where a building or structure is occupied by two or more occupancies not included in the same risk category, it shall be assigned the classification of the highest risk category corresponding to

the various occupancies. Where buildings or structures have two or more portions that are structurally separated, each portion shall be separately classified. Where a separated portion of a building or structure provides required access to, required egress from or shares life safety components with another portion having a higher risk category, both portions shall be assigned to the higher risk category.

**Exception:** Where a storm shelter designed and constructed in accordance with ICC 500 is provided in a building, structure or portion thereof normally occupied for other purposes, the risk category for the normal occupancy of the building shall apply unless the storm shelter is a designated emergency shelter in accordance with Table 1604.5.

**TABLE 1604.5**  
**RISK CATEGORY OF BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

RISK CATEGORY	NATURE OF OCCUPANCY
I	Buildings and other structures that represent a low hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Agricultural facilities.</li> <li>• Certain temporary facilities.</li> <li>• Minor storage facilities.</li> </ul>
II	Buildings and other structures except those listed in Risk Categories I, III and IV.
III	Buildings and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Buildings and other structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing one or more public assembly spaces, each having an occupant load greater than 300 and a cumulative occupant load of these public assembly spaces of greater than 2,500.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing Group E or Group I-4 occupancies or combination thereof, with an occupant load greater than 250.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade with an occupant load greater than 500.</li> <li>• Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies with 50 or more care recipients.</li> <li>• Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies not having emergency surgery or emergency treatment facilities.</li> <li>• <i>[OSHPD 2] Skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities, Group I-2 occupancy with 50 or more care recipients.</i></li> <li>• <i>[OSHPD 5] Acute psychiatric hospitals, Group I-2 occupancy with 50 or more care recipients.</i></li> <li>• Group I-3 occupancies.</li> <li>• Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000.<sup>a</sup></li> <li>• Power-generating stations, water treatment facilities for potable water, wastewater treatment facilities and other public utility facilities not included in Risk Category IV.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures not included in Risk Category IV containing quantities of toxic or explosive materials that:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(1) or 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the <i>California Fire Code</i>; and</li> <li>• Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.<sup>b</sup></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
IV	Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies having emergency surgery or emergency treatment facilities.</li> <li>• Ambulatory care facilities having emergency surgery or emergency treatment facilities.</li> <li>• Fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations and emergency vehicle garages</li> <li>• Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters.</li> <li>• Designated emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response.</li> <li>• Power-generating stations and other public utility facilities required as emergency backup facilities for Risk Category IV structures.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing quantities of highly toxic materials that:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the <i>California Fire Code</i>; and</li> <li>• Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.<sup>b</sup></li> </ul> </li> <li>• Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions.</li> <li>• Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression.</li> </ul>

a. For purposes of occupant load calculation, occupancies required by Table 1004.5 to use gross floor area calculations shall be permitted to use net floor areas to determine the total occupant load.

b. Where approved by the building official, the classification of buildings and other structures as Risk Category III or IV based on their quantities of toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is permitted to be reduced to Risk Category II, provided that it can be demonstrated by a hazard assessment in accordance with Section 1.5.3 of ASCE 7 that a release of the toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is not sufficient to pose a threat to the public.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1604.6 In-situ load tests.** The building official is authorized to require an engineering analysis or a load test, or both, of any construction whenever there is reason to question the safety of the construction for the intended occupancy. Engineering analysis and load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.

**1604.7 Preconstruction load tests.** Materials and methods of construction that are not capable of being designed by *approved* engineering analysis or that do not comply with the applicable referenced standards, or alternative test procedures in accordance with Section 1707, shall be load tested in accordance with Section 1709.

**1604.8 Anchorage.** Buildings and other structures, and portions thereof, shall be provided with anchorage in accordance with Sections 1604.8.1 through 1604.8.3, as applicable.

**1604.8.1 General.** Anchorage of the roof to walls and columns, and of walls and columns to foundations, shall be provided to resist the uplift and sliding forces that result from the application of the prescribed loads.

**1604.8.2 Structural walls.** Walls that provide vertical load-bearing resistance or lateral shear resistance for a portion of the structure shall be anchored to the roof and to all floors and members that provide lateral support for the wall or that are supported by the wall. The connections shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces specified in Section 1.4.4 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category A* and to Section 12.11 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to all other seismic design categories. Required anchors in masonry walls of hollow units or cavity walls shall be embedded in a reinforced grouted structural element of the wall. See Sections 1609 for wind design requirements and 1613 for earthquake design requirements.

**1604.8.3 Decks.** Where supported by attachment to an exterior wall, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads as applicable. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting. Connections of decks with cantilevered framing members to exterior walls or other framing members shall be designed for both of the following:

1. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608, in accordance with Section 1605, acting on all portions of the deck.
2. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608, in accordance with Section 1605, acting on the cantilevered portion of the deck, and no live load or snow load on the remaining portion of the deck.

**1604.9 Wind and seismic detailing.** Lateral force-resisting systems shall meet seismic detailing requirements and limitations prescribed in this code and ASCE 7 Chapters 11, 12, 13, 15, 17 and 18 as applicable, even where wind load effects are greater than seismic load effects.

**Exception:** References within ASCE 7 to Chapter 14 shall not apply, except as specifically required herein.

**1604.10 Loads on storm shelters.** Loads and load combinations on storm shelters shall be determined in accordance with ICC 500.

## SECTION 1605 LOAD COMBINATIONS

**1605.1 General.** Buildings and other structures and portions thereof shall be designed to resist the strength load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3, the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4, or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2.

### Exceptions:

1. The modifications to load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3, ASCE 7, Section 2.4, and Section 1605.2 specified in ASCE 7 Chapters 18 and 19 shall apply.
2. Where the allowable stress design load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.4 are used, flat roof snow loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) and roof live loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or less need not be combined with seismic load. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.
3. Where the allowable stress design load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.4 are used, crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live loads or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind loads.

**1605.1.1 Stability.** Regardless of which load combinations are used to design for strength, where overall structure stability (such as stability against overturning, sliding, or buoyancy) is being verified, use of the load combinations specified in Section 2.3 or 2.4 of ASCE 7, and in Section 1605.2 shall be permitted. Where the load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3 are used, strength reduction factors applicable to soil resistance shall be provided by a registered design professional. The stability of retaining walls shall be verified in accordance with Section 1807.2.3.

**1605.2 Alternative allowable stress design load combinations.** In lieu of the load combinations in ASCE 7, Section 2.4, structures and portions thereof shall be permitted to be designed for the most critical effects resulting from the

following combinations. Where using these alternative allowable stress load combinations that include wind or seismic loads, allowable stresses are permitted to be increased or load combinations reduced where permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards. For load combinations that include the counteracting effects of dead and wind loads, only two-thirds of the minimum dead load likely to be in place during a design wind event shall be used. Where using these alternative load combinations to evaluate sliding, overturning and soil bearing at the soil-structure interface, the reduction of foundation overturning from Section 12.13.4 in ASCE 7 shall not be used. Where using these alternative basic load combinations for proportioning foundations for loadings, which include seismic loads, the vertical seismic load effect,  $E_v$ , in Equation 12.4-4 of ASCE 7 is permitted to be taken equal to zero. Where required by ASCE 7, Chapters 12, 13 and 15, the load combinations including overstrength of ASCE 7, Section 2.3.6 shall be used. *[OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5J Each load combination shall be investigated with one or more of the variable loads set to zero.*

$$D + L + (L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \quad (\text{Equation 16-1})$$

$$D + L + 0.6W \quad (\text{Equation 16-2})$$

$$D + L + 0.6W + S/2 \quad (\text{Equation 16-3})$$

$$D + L + S + 0.6W/2 \quad (\text{Equation 16-4})$$

$$D + L + S + E/1.4 \quad (\text{Equation 16-5})$$

$$0.9D + E/1.4 \quad (\text{Equation 16-6})$$

#### Exceptions:

1. Crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live loads or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind load.
2. Flat roof snow loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or less and roof live loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or less need not be combined with seismic loads. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.

## SECTION 1606 DEAD LOADS

**1606.1 General.** Dead loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code. Dead loads shall be considered to be permanent loads.

**1606.2 Weights of materials of construction.** For purposes of design, the actual weights of materials of construction shall be used. In the absence of definite information, values used shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

**1606.3 Weight of fixed service equipment.** In determining dead loads for purposes of design, the weight of fixed service equipment, including the maximum weight of the contents of fixed service equipment, shall be included. The components of fixed service equipment that are variable, such as liquid

contents and movable trays, shall not be used to counteract forces causing overturning, sliding, and uplift conditions in accordance with Section 1.3.6 of ASCE 7.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where force effects are the result of the presence of the variable components, the components are permitted to be used to counter those load effects. In such cases, the structure shall be designed for force effects with the variable components present and with them absent.
2. For the calculation of seismic force effects, the components of fixed service equipment that are variable, such as liquid contents and movable trays, need not exceed those expected during normal operation.

**1606.4 Photovoltaic panel systems.** The weight of photovoltaic panel systems, their support system, and ballast shall be considered as dead load.

**1606.5 Vegetative and landscaped roofs.** The weight of all landscaping and hardscaping materials for vegetative and landscaped roofs shall be considered as dead load. The weight shall be computed considering both fully saturated soil and drainage layer materials and fully dry soil and drainage layer materials to determine the most severe load effects on the structure.

## SECTION 1607 LIVE LOADS

**1607.1 General.** Live loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code.

**1607.2 Loads not specified.** For occupancies or uses not designated in Section 1607, the live load shall be determined in accordance with a method approved by the building official.

**1607.3 Uniform live loads.** The live loads used in the design of buildings and other structures shall be the maximum loads expected by the intended use or occupancy but shall not be less than the minimum uniformly distributed live loads given in Table 1607.1.

**1607.4 Concentrated live loads.** Floors, roofs and other similar surfaces shall be designed to support the uniformly distributed live loads prescribed in Section 1607.3 or the concentrated live loads, given in Table 1607.1, whichever produces the greater load effects. Unless otherwise specified, the indicated concentration shall be assumed to be uniformly distributed over an area of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet (762 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located so as to produce the maximum load effects in the structural members.

**1607.5 Partition loads.** In office buildings and in other buildings where partition locations are subject to change, provisions for partition weight shall be made, whether or not partitions are shown on the construction documents, unless the specified live load is 80 psf ( $3.83 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or greater. The partition load shall be not less than a uniformly distributed live load of 15 psf ( $0.72 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ).

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1607.1  
MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS,  $L_o$ , AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS**

OCCUPANCY OR USE		UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)	ALSO SEE SECTION
1.	Apartments (see residential)	—	—	—
2.	Access floor systems	50	2,000	—
		100	2,000	—
3.	Armories and drill rooms	150 <sup>b</sup>	—	—
4.	Assembly areas	Fixed seats (fastened to floor)	60 <sup>a</sup>	—
		Follow spot, projections and control rooms	50	
		Lobbies	100 <sup>a</sup>	
		Movable seats	100 <sup>a</sup>	
		Stage floors	150 <sup>b</sup>	
		Platforms (assembly)	100 <sup>a</sup>	
		Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands	100 <sup>a</sup> (See Section 1607.19)	
		Stadiums and arenas with fixed seats (fastened to the floor)	60 <sup>a</sup> (See Section 1607.19)	
		Other assembly areas	100 <sup>a</sup>	
5.	Balconies and decks	1.5 times the live load for the area served, not required to exceed 100	—	—
6.	Catwalks for maintenance and service access	40	300	—
7.	Cornices	60	—	—
8.	Corridors	First floor	100	—
		Other floors	Same as occupancy served except as indicated	
9.	Dining rooms and restaurants	100 <sup>a</sup>	—	—
10.	Dwellings (see residential)	—	—	—
11.	Elevator machine room and control room grating (on area of 2 inches by 2 inches)	—	300	—
12.	Finish light floor plate construction (on area of 1 inch by 1 inch)	—	200	—
13.	Fire escapes	100	—	—
		On single-family dwellings only	40	
14.	Fixed ladders	See Section 1607.17		—
15.	Garages	Passenger vehicles only	40 <sup>c</sup>	See Section 1607.7
		Trucks and buses	See Section 1607.8	
16.	Handrails, guards and grab bars	See Section 1607.9		—
17.	Helipads	See Section 1607.6		—
18.	Hospitals	Corridors above first floor	80	—
		Operating rooms, laboratories	60	
		Patient rooms	40	
19.	Hotels (see residential)	—	—	—
20.	Libraries	Corridors above first floor	80	1,000
		Reading rooms	60	
		Stack rooms	150 <sup>b</sup>	

(continued)

**TABLE 1607.1—continued**  
**MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS,  $L_o$ , AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS**

OCCUPANCY OR USE			UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)	ALSO SEE SECTION
21. Manufacturing	Heavy	250 <sup>b</sup>	3,000	—	—
		125 <sup>b</sup>	2,000		
22.	Marquees, except one- and two-family dwellings		75	—	—
23. Office buildings	Corridors above first floor	80	2,000	—	—
	File and computer rooms shall be designed for heavier loads based on anticipated occupancy	—	—		
	Lobbies and first-floor corridors	100	2,000		
	Offices	50	2,000		
24. Penal institutions	Cell blocks	40	—	—	—
	Corridors	100	—		
25. Recreational uses	Bowling alleys, poolrooms and similar uses	75 <sup>a</sup>	—	—	—
	Dance halls and ballrooms	100 <sup>a</sup>	—		
	Gymnasiums	100 <sup>a</sup>	—		
	Ice skating rinks	250 <sup>b</sup>	—		
	Roller skating rinks	100 <sup>a</sup>	—		
26. Residential	One- and two-family dwellings:	—	—	—	Section 1607.22
	Uninhabitable attics without storage	10	—		
	Uninhabitable attics with storage	20	—		
	Habitable attics and sleeping areas	30	—		
	Canopies, including marquees	20	—		
	All other areas	40	—		
	Hotels and multifamily dwellings:	—	—		
	Private rooms and corridors serving them	40	—		
	Public rooms <sup>a</sup> and corridors serving them	100	—		
27. Roofs	Ordinary flat, pitched, and curved roofs (that are not occupiable)	20	—	—	Section 1607.14.2
	Roof areas used for assembly purposes	100 <sup>a</sup>	—		
	Roof areas used for occupancies other than assembly	Same as occupancy served	—		
	Vegetative and landscaped roofs:	—	—		
	Roof areas not intended for occupancy	20	—		
	Roof areas used for assembly purposes	100 <sup>a</sup>	—		
	Roof areas used for other occupancies	Same as occupancy served	—		
	Awnings and canopies:	—	—		
	Fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure	5 <sup>a</sup>	—		
	All other construction, except one- and two-family dwellings	20	—		
	Primary roof members exposed to a work floor:	—	—	2,000	Section 1607.15.2
	Single panel point of lower chord of roof trusses or any point along primary structural members supporting roofs over manufacturing, storage warehouses, and repair garages	—	2,000		
	All other primary roof members	—	300		
	All roof surfaces subject to maintenance workers	—	300		

(continued)

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1607.1—continued**  
**MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS,  $L_o$ , AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS**

OCCUPANCY OR USE			UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)	ALSO SEE SECTION
28.	Schools	Classrooms	40	1,000	—
		Corridors above first floor	80	1,000	
		First-floor corridors	100	1,000	
29.	Scuttles, skylight ribs and accessible ceilings		—	200	—
30.	Sidewalks, vehicular driveways and yards, subject to trucking		250 <sup>b</sup>	8,000	Section 1607.20
31.	Stairs and exits	One- and two-family dwellings	40	300	Section 1607.21
		All other	100	300	Section 1607.21
32.	Storage areas above ceilings		20	—	—
33.	Storage warehouses (shall be designed for heavier loads if required for anticipated storage)	Heavy	250 <sup>b</sup>	—	—
		Light	125 <sup>b</sup>		
34.	Stores	Retail:			—
		First floor	100	1,000	
		Upper floors	75	1,000	
		Wholesale, all floors	125 <sup>b</sup>	1,000	
35.	Vehicle barriers		See Section 1607.10		—
36.	Walkways and elevated platforms (other than exitways)		60	—	—
37.	Yards and terraces, pedestrian		100 <sup>a</sup>	—	—
38.	[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Storage racks and wall-hung cabinets.		Total loads <sup>d</sup>	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN, 1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

- a. Live load reduction is not permitted.
- b. Live load reduction is only permitted in accordance with Section 1607.12.1.2 or Item 1 of Section 1607.12.2.
- c. Live load reduction is only permitted in accordance with Section 1607.12.1.3 or Item 2 of Section 1607.12.2.
- d. [OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] The minimum vertical design live load shall be as follows:

*Paper media:*

12-inch-deep (305 mm) shelf 33 pounds per lineal foot (482 N/m)  
 15-inch-deep (381 mm) shelf 41 pounds per lineal foot (598 N/m), or  
 33 pounds per cubic foot (5183 N/m<sup>3</sup>) per total volume of the rack or cabinet, whichever is less.

*Film media:*

18-inch-deep (457 mm) shelf 100 pounds per lineal foot (1459 N/m), or  
 50 pounds per cubic foot (7853 N/m<sup>3</sup>) per total volume of the rack or cabinet, whichever is less.

*Other media:*

20 pounds per cubic foot (311 N/m<sup>3</sup>) or 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa), whichever is less, but not less than actual loads.

**1607.6 Helipads.** Helipads shall be designed for the following live loads:

1. A uniform live load,  $L$ , as specified in Items 1.1 and 1.2. This load shall not be reduced.
  - 1.1. 40 psf ( $1.92 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight of 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) or less.
  - 1.2. 60 psf ( $2.87 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight greater than 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ).
2. A single concentrated live load,  $L$ , of 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) applied over an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches (114 mm by 114 mm) and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated load is not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.
3. Two single concentrated live loads,  $L$ , 8 feet (2438 mm) apart applied on the landing pad (representing the helicopter's two main landing gear, whether skid type or wheeled type), each having a magnitude of 0.75 times the maximum take-off weight of the helicopter, and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated loads shall be applied over an area of 8 inches by 8 inches (203 mm by 203 mm) and are not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.

Landing areas designed for a design basis helicopter with maximum take-off weight of 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) shall be identified with a 3,000-pound ( $13.34 \text{ kN}$ ) weight limitation. The landing area weight limitation shall be indicated by the numeral "3" (kips) located in the bottom right corner of the landing area as viewed from the primary approach path. The indication for the landing area weight limitation shall be a minimum 5 feet (1524 mm) in height.

**1607.7 Passenger vehicle garages.** Floors in garages or portions of a building used for the storage of motor vehicles shall be designed for the uniformly distributed live loads indicated in Table 1607.1 or the following concentrated load:

1. For garages restricted to passenger vehicles accommodating not more than nine passengers, 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) acting on an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches (114 mm by 114 mm).
2. For mechanical parking structures without slab or deck that are used for storing passenger vehicles only, 2,250 pounds ( $10 \text{ kN}$ ) per wheel.

**1607.8 Heavy vehicle loads.** Floors and other surfaces that are intended to support vehicle loads greater than a 10,000-pound ( $4536 \text{ kg}$ ) gross vehicle weight rating shall comply with Sections 1607.8.1 through 1607.8.5.

**1607.8.1 Loads.** Where any structure does not restrict access for vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound ( $4536 \text{ kg}$ ) gross vehicle weight rating, those portions of the structure subject to such loads shall be designed using the vehicular live loads, including consideration of impact and fatigue, in accordance with the codes and specifications required

by the jurisdiction having authority for the design and construction of the roadways and bridges in the same location of the structure.

**1607.8.2 Fire truck and emergency vehicles.** Where a structure or portions of a structure are accessed and loaded by fire department access vehicles and other similar emergency vehicles, the structure shall be designed for the greater of the following loads:

1. The actual operational loads, including outrigger reactions and contact areas of the vehicles as stipulated and approved by the building official.
2. The live loading specified in Section 1607.8.1.

**1607.8.3 Heavy vehicle garages.** Garages designed to accommodate vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound ( $4536 \text{ kg}$ ) gross vehicle weight rating, shall be designed using the live loading specified by Section 1607.8.1. For garages the design for impact and fatigue is not required.

**Exception:** The vehicular live loads and load placement are allowed to be determined using the actual vehicle weights for the vehicles allowed onto the garage floors, provided that such loads and placement are based on rational engineering principles and are approved by the building official, but shall be not less than 50 psf ( $2.9 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ). This live load shall not be reduced.

**1607.8.4 Forklifts and movable equipment.** Where a structure is intended to have forklifts or other movable equipment present, the structure shall be designed for the total vehicle or equipment load and the individual wheel loads for the anticipated vehicles as specified by the owner of the facility. These loads shall be posted in accordance with Section 1607.8.5.

**1607.8.4.1 Impact and fatigue.** Impact loads and fatigue loading shall be considered in the design of the supporting structure. For the purposes of design, the vehicle and wheel loads shall be increased by 30 percent to account for impact.

**1607.8.5 Posting.** The maximum weight of vehicles allowed into or on a garage or other structure shall be posted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent in accordance with Section 106.1.

**1607.9 Loads on handrails, guards, grab bars, shower seats, dressing room bench and seats.** Handrails and guards shall be designed and constructed for the structural loading conditions set forth in Section 1607.9.1. Grab bars, shower seats and accessible benches shall be designed and constructed for the structural loading conditions set forth in Section 1607.9.2.

**1607.9.1 Handrails and guards.** Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a linear load of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) ( $0.73 \text{ kN/m}$ ) in accordance with Section 4.5.1.1 of ASCE 7. Glass handrail assemblies and guards shall comply with Section 2407.

**Exceptions:**

1. For one- and two-family dwellings, only the single concentrated load required by Section 1607.9.1.1 shall be applied.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

2. In Group I-3, F, H and S occupancies, for areas that are not accessible to the general public and that have an occupant load less than 50, the minimum load shall be 20 pounds per foot (0.29 kN/m).

**1607.9.1.1 Concentrated load.** Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 200 pounds (0.89 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7.

**1607.9.1.2 Guard component loads.** Balusters, panel fillers and guard infill components, including all rails except the handrail and the top rail, shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 50 pounds (0.22 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1.2 of ASCE 7.

**1607.9.2 Grab bars, shower seats and accessible benches.** Grab bars, shower seats and accessible benches shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 250 pounds (1.11 kN) applied in any direction at any point on the grab bar, shower seat, or seat of the accessible bench so as to produce the maximum load effects. *[DSA-AC & HCD 1-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1127A.4 and Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-609.8, 11B-610.4 and 11B-903.6 for grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats, as applicable.*

**1607.10 Vehicle barriers.** Vehicle barriers for passenger vehicles shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 6,000 pounds (26.70 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.3 of ASCE 7. Garages accommodating trucks and buses shall be designed in accordance with an approved method that contains provisions for traffic railings.

**1607.11 Impact loads.** The live loads specified in Sections 1607.3 through 1607.10 shall be assumed to include adequate allowance for ordinary impact conditions. Provisions shall be made in the structural design for uses and loads that involve unusual vibration and impact forces.

**1607.11.1 Elevators.** Members, elements and components subject to dynamic loads from elevators shall be designed for impact loads and deflection limits prescribed by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

**1607.11.2 Machinery.** For the purpose of design, the weight of machinery and moving loads shall be increased as follows to allow for impact:

1. Light machinery, shaft- or motor-driven, 20 percent.
2. Reciprocating machinery or power-driven units, 50 percent.

Percentages shall be increased where specified by the manufacturer.

**1607.11.3 Elements supporting hoists for façade access and building maintenance equipment.** In addition to any other applicable live loads, structural elements that support hoists for façade access and building maintenance equipment shall be designed for a live load of 2.5 times the rated load of the hoist or the stall load of the hoist, whichever is larger.

**1607.11.4 Fall arrest, lifeline, and rope descent system anchorages.** In addition to any other applicable live loads, fall arrest, lifeline, and rope descent system anchorages

and structural elements that support these anchorages shall be designed for a live load of not less than 3,100 pounds (13.8 kN) for each attached line, in any direction that the load can be applied.

Anchorages of horizontal lifelines and the structural elements that support these anchorages shall be designed for the maximum tension that develops in the horizontal lifeline from these live loads.

**1607.12 Reduction in uniform live loads.** Except for uniform live loads at roofs, all other minimum uniformly distributed live loads,  $L_o$ , in Table 1607.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.1 or 1607.12.2. Uniform live loads at roofs are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.14.2.

**1607.12.1 Basic uniform live load reduction.** Subject to the limitations of Sections 1607.12.1.1 through 1607.12.1.3 and Table 1607.1, members for which a value of  $K_{LL}A_T$  is 400 square feet ( $37.16 \text{ m}^2$ ) or more are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed live load,  $L$ , in accordance with the following equation:

$$L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right) \quad (\text{Equation 16-7})$$

$$\text{For SI: } L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{4.57}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right)$$

where:

$L$  = Reduced design live load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported by the member.

$L_o$  = Unreduced design live load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported by the member (see Table 1607.1).

$K_{LL}$  = Live load element factor (see Table 1607.12.1).

$A_T$  = Tributary area, in square feet ( $\text{m}^2$ ).

$L$  shall be not less than  $0.50L_o$  for members supporting one floor and  $L$  shall be not less than  $0.40L_o$  for members supporting two or more floors.

TABLE 1607.12.1  
LIVE LOAD ELEMENT FACTOR,  $K_{LL}$

ELEMENT	$K_{LL}$
Interior columns	4
Exterior columns without cantilever slabs	4
Edge columns with cantilever slabs	3
Corner columns with cantilever slabs	2
Edge beams without cantilever slabs	2
Interior beams	2
Members not previously identified including:	
Edge beams with cantilever slabs	
Cantilever beams	
One-way slabs	
Two-way slabs	
Members without provisions for continuous shear transfer normal to their span	1

**1607.12.1.1 One-way slabs.** The tributary area,  $A_T$ , for use in Equation 16-7 for one-way slabs shall not exceed an area defined by the slab span times a width normal to the span of 1.5 times the slab span.

**1607.12.1.2 Heavy live loads.** Live loads that exceed 100 psf ( $4.79 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) shall not be reduced.

**Exceptions:**

1. The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent, but the live load shall be not less than  $L$  as calculated in Section 1607.12.1.
2. For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design professional that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

**1607.12.1.3 Passenger vehicle garages.** The live loads shall not be reduced in passenger vehicle garages.

**Exception:** The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent, but the live load shall be not less than  $L$  as calculated in Section 1607.12.1.

**1607.12.2 Alternative uniform live load reduction.** As an alternative to Section 1607.12.1 and subject to the limitations of Table 1607.1, uniformly distributed live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following provisions. Such reductions shall apply to slab systems, beams, girders, columns, piers, walls and foundations.

1. A reduction shall not be permitted where the live load exceeds 100 psf ( $4.79 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) except that the design live load for members supporting two or more floors is permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent.

**Exception:** For uses other than storage, where *approved*, additional *live load* reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design professional that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

2. A reduction shall not be permitted in passenger vehicle parking garages except that the live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent.
3. For live loads not exceeding 100 psf ( $4.79 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), the design live load for any structural member supporting 150 square feet ( $13.94 \text{ m}^2$ ) or more is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Equation 16-8
4. For one-way slabs, the area,  $A$ , for use in Equation 16-8 shall not exceed the product of the slab span and a width normal to the span of 0.5 times the slab span.

$$R = 0.08(A - 150) \quad (\text{Equation 16-8})$$

For SI:  $R = 0.861(A - 13.94)$

Such reduction shall not exceed the smallest of:

1. 40 percent for members supporting one floor.
2. 60 percent for members supporting two or more floors.
3.  $R$  as determined by the following equation:

$$R = 23.1(1 + D/L_o) \quad (\text{Equation 16-9})$$

where:

$A$  = Area of floor supported by the member, square feet ( $\text{m}^2$ ).

$D$  = Dead load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported.

$L_o$  = Unreduced live load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported.

$R$  = Reduction in percent.

**1607.13 Distribution of floor loads.** Where uniform floor live loads are involved in the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the minimum applied loads shall be the full dead loads on all spans in combination with the floor live loads on spans selected to produce the greatest load effect at each location under consideration. Floor live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.

**1607.14 Roof loads.** The structural supports of roofs and marquees shall be designed to resist wind and, where applicable, snow and earthquake loads, in addition to the dead load of construction and the appropriate live loads as prescribed in this section, or as set forth in Table 1607.1. The live loads acting on a sloping surface shall be assumed to act vertically on the horizontal projection of that surface.

**1607.14.1 Distribution of roof loads.** Where uniform roof live loads are reduced to less than 20 psf ( $0.96 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) in accordance with Section 1607.14.2.1 and are applied to the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the reduced roof live load shall be applied to adjacent spans or to alternate spans, whichever produces the most unfavorable load effect. See Section 1607.14.2 for reductions in minimum roof live loads and Section 7.5 of ASCE 7 for partial snow loading.

**1607.14.2 Reduction in uniform roof live loads.** The minimum uniformly distributed live loads of roofs and marquees,  $L_o$ , in Table 1607.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.14.2.1.

**1607.14.2.1 Ordinary roofs, awnings and canopies.** Ordinary flat, pitched and curved roofs, and awnings and canopies other than of fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure, are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed roof live load,  $L_r$ , as specified in the following equations or other controlling combinations of *loads* as specified in Section 1605, whichever produces the greater load effect.

In structures such as greenhouses, where special scaffolding is used as a work surface for workers and materials during maintenance and repair operations, a

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

lower roof load than specified in the following equations shall not be used unless approved by the building official. Such structures shall be designed for a minimum roof live load of 12 psf (0.58 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

$$L_r = L_o R_1 R_2 \quad (\text{Equation 16-10})$$

where:  $12 \leq L_r \leq 20$

For SI:  $L_r = L_o R_1 R_2$

where:  $0.58 \leq L_r \leq 0.96$

$L_o$  = Unreduced roof live load per square foot (m<sup>2</sup>) of horizontal projection supported by the member (see Table 1607.1).

$L_r$  = Reduced roof live load per square foot (m<sup>2</sup>) of horizontal projection supported by the member.

The reduction factors  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  shall be determined as follows:

$$R_1 = 1 \text{ for } A_t \leq 200 \text{ square feet (18.58 m}^2\text{)} \quad (\text{Equation 16-11})$$

$$\begin{aligned} R_1 &= 1.2 - 0.001A_t \text{ for} \\ &200 \text{ square feet} < A_t < 600 \text{ square feet} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{Equation 16-12})$$

For SI:  $1.2 - 0.011A_t$  for 18.58 square meters  $< A_t < 55.74$  square meters

$$\begin{aligned} R_1 &= 0.6 \text{ for} \\ A_t &\geq 600 \text{ square feet (55.74 m}^2\text{)} \end{aligned} \quad (\text{Equation 16-13})$$

where:

$A_t$  = Tributary area (span length multiplied by effective width) in square feet (m<sup>2</sup>) supported by the member, and

$$R_2 = 1 \text{ for } F \leq 4 \quad (\text{Equation 16-14})$$

$$R_2 = 1.2 - 0.05F \text{ for } 4 < F < 12 \quad (\text{Equation 16-15})$$

$$R_2 = 0.6 \text{ for } F \geq 12 \quad (\text{Equation 16-16})$$

where:

$F$  = For a sloped roof, the number of inches of rise per foot (for SI:  $F = 0.12 \times$  slope, with slope expressed as a percentage), or for an arch or dome, the rise-to-span ratio multiplied by 32.

**1607.14.2.2 Occupiable roofs.** Areas of roofs that are occupiable, such as vegetative roofs, landscaped roofs or for assembly or other similar purposes, and marquees are permitted to have their uniformly distributed live loads reduced in accordance with Section 1607.12.

**1607.14.3 Awnings and canopies.** Awnings and canopies shall be designed for uniform live loads as required in Table 1607.1 as well as for snow loads and wind loads as specified in Sections 1608 and 1609.

**1607.14.4 Photovoltaic panel systems.** Roof structures that provide support for photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1607.14.4.1 through 1607.14.4.5, as applicable.

**1607.14.4.1 Roof live load.** Roof structures that support photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed to resist each of the following conditions:

- Applicable uniform and concentrated roof loads with the photovoltaic panel system dead loads.

**Exception:** Roof live loads need not be applied to the area covered by photovoltaic panels where the clear space between the panels and the roof surface is 24 inches (610 mm) or less.

- Applicable uniform and concentrated roof loads without the photovoltaic panel system present.

**1607.14.4.2 Photovoltaic panels or modules.** The structure of a roof that supports solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be designed to accommodate the full solar photovoltaic panels or modules and ballast dead load, including concentrated loads from support frames in combination with the loads from Section 1607.14.4.1 and other applicable loads. Where applicable, snow drift loads created by the photovoltaic panels or modules shall be included.

**1607.14.4.3 Photovoltaic panels installed on open grid roof structures.** Structures with open grid framing and without a roof deck or sheathing supporting photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed to support the uniform and concentrated roof live loads specified in Section 1607.14.4.1, except that the uniform roof live load shall be permitted to be reduced to 12 psf (0.57 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1607.14.4.4 Ground-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems.** Ground-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems that are independent structures and do not have accessible/occupied space underneath are not required to accommodate a roof photovoltaic live load. Other loads and combinations in accordance with Section 1605 shall be accommodated.

**1607.14.4.5 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.** Roof structures that provide support for ballasted photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed, or analyzed, in accordance with Section 1604.4; checked in accordance with Section 1604.3.6 for deflections; and checked in accordance with Section 1611 for ponding.

**1607.15 Crane loads.** The crane live load shall be the rated capacity of the crane. Design loads for the runway beams, including connections and support brackets, of moving bridge cranes and monorail cranes shall include the maximum wheel loads of the crane and the vertical impact, lateral and longitudinal forces induced by the moving crane.

**1607.15.1 Maximum wheel load.** The maximum wheel loads shall be the wheel loads produced by the weight of the bridge, as applicable, plus the sum of the rated capacity and the weight of the trolley with the trolley positioned on its runway at the location where the resulting load effect is maximum.

**1607.15.2 Vertical impact force.** The maximum wheel loads of the crane shall be increased by the following

percentages to account for the effects of vertical impact or vibration:

Monorail cranes (powered)	25 percent
Cab-operated or remotely operated bridge cranes (powered)	25 percent
Pendant-operated bridge cranes (powered)	10 percent
Bridge cranes or monorail cranes with hand-gearied bridge, trolley and hoist	0 percent

**1607.15.3 Lateral force.** The lateral force on crane runway beams with electrically powered trolleys shall be calculated as 20 percent of the sum of the rated capacity of the crane and the weight of the hoist and trolley. The lateral force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction perpendicular to the beam, and shall be distributed with due regard to the lateral stiffness of the runway beam and supporting structure.

**1607.15.4 Longitudinal force.** The longitudinal force on crane runway beams, except for bridge cranes with hand-gearied bridges, shall be calculated as 10 percent of the maximum wheel loads of the crane. The longitudinal force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction parallel to the beam.

**1607.16 Interior walls and partitions.** Interior walls and partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the loads to which they are subjected but not less than a horizontal load of 5 psf (0.240 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1607.16.1 Fabric partitions.** Fabric partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the following load conditions:

1. The horizontal distributed load need only be applied to the partition framing. The total area used to determine the distributed load shall be the area of the fabric face between the framing members to which the fabric is attached. The total distributed load shall be uniformly applied to such framing members in proportion to the length of each member.
2. A concentrated load of 40 pounds (0.176 kN) applied to an 8-inch-diameter (203 mm) area [50.3 square inches (32 452 mm<sup>2</sup>)] of the fabric face at a height of 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.

**1607.16.2 Fire walls.** In order to meet the structural stability requirements of Section 706.2 where the structure on either side of the wall has collapsed, fire walls and their supports shall be designed to withstand a minimum horizontal allowable stress load of 5 psf (0.240 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1607.17 Fixed ladders.** Fixed ladders with rungs shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 300 pounds (1.33 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.4 of ASCE 7. Where rails of fixed ladders extend above a floor or platform at the top of the ladder, each side rail extension shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 100 pounds (0.445 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.4 of ASCE 7.

Ship's ladders shall be designed to resist the stair loads given in Table 1607.1.

**1607.18 Library stack rooms.** The live loading indicated in Table 1607.1 for library stack rooms applies to stack room floors that support nonmobile, double-faced library book stacks, subject to the following limitations:

1. The nominal book stack unit height shall not exceed 90 inches (2290 mm).
2. The nominal shelf depth shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) for each face.
3. Parallel rows of double-faced book stacks shall be separated by aisles not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

**1607.19 Seating for assembly uses.** Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall be designed for the loads specified in ICC 300. Stadiums and arenas with fixed seats shall be designed for the horizontal sway loads in Section 1607.19.1.

**1607.19.1 Horizontal sway loads.** The design of stadiums and arenas with fixed seats shall include horizontal swaying forces applied to each row of seats as follows:

1. 24 pounds per linear foot (0.35 kN/m) of seat applied in a direction parallel to each row of seats.
2. 10 pounds per linear foot (0.15 kN/m) of seat applied in a direction perpendicular to each row of seats.

The parallel and perpendicular horizontal swaying forces are not required to be applied simultaneously.

**1607.20 Sidewalks, vehicular driveways, and yards subject to trucking.** The live loading indicated in Table 1607.1 for sidewalks, vehicular driveways, and yards subject to trucking shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1607.20.1 Uniform loads.** In addition to the loads indicated in Table 1607.1, other uniform loads in accordance with an approved method that contains provisions for truck loading shall be considered where appropriate.

**1607.20.2 Concentrated loads.** The concentrated wheel load indicated in Table 1607.1 shall be applied on an area of 4 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches by 4 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm by 114 mm).

**1607.21 Stair treads.** The concentrated load indicated in Table 1607.1 for stair treads shall be applied on an area of 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm). This load need not be assumed to act concurrently with the uniform load.

**1607.22 Residential attics.** The live loads indicated in Table 1607.1 for attics in residential occupancies shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1607.22.1 Uninhabitable attics without storage.** In residential occupancies, uninhabitable attic areas without storage are those where the maximum clear height between the joists and rafters is less than 42 inches (1067 mm), or where there are not two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches (1067 mm) in height by 24 inches (610 mm) in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses. The live load in Table 1607.1 need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirement.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1607.22.2 Uninhabitable attics with storage.** In residential occupancies, uninhabitable attic areas with storage are those where the maximum clear height between the joist and rafter is 42 inches (1067 mm) or greater, or where there are two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches (1067 mm) in height by 24 inches (610 mm) in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses. The live load in Table 1607.1 need only be applied to those portions of the joists or truss bottom chords where both of the following conditions are met:

1. The attic area is accessed from an opening not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in width by 30 inches (762 mm) in length that is located where the clear height in the attic is not less than 30 inches (762 mm).
2. The slope of the joists or truss bottom chords is not greater than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

The remaining portions of the joists or truss bottom chords shall be designed for a uniformly distributed concurrent live load of not less than 10 pounds per square foot ( $0.48 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ).

**1607.22.3 Attics served by stairs.** Attic spaces served by stairways other than the pull-down type shall be designed to support the minimum live load specified for habitable attics and sleeping rooms.

## SECTION 1608 SNOW LOADS

**1608.1 General.** Design snow loads shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 7 of ASCE 7, but the design roof load shall be not less than that determined by Section 1607.

**1608.2 Ground snow loads.** The ground snow loads to be used in determining the design snow loads for roofs shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 or Figures 1608.2(1) and 1608.2(2) for the contiguous United States and Table 1608.2 for Alaska. Site-specific case studies shall be made in areas designated "CS" in Figures 1608.2(1) and 1608.2(2). Ground snow loads for sites at elevations above the limits indicated in Figures 1608.2(1) and 1608.2(2) and for all sites within the CS areas shall be approved. Ground snow load determination for such sites shall be based on an extreme value statistical analysis of data available in the vicinity of the site using a value with a 2-percent annual probability of being exceeded (50-year mean recurrence interval). Snow loads are zero for Hawaii, except in mountainous regions as approved by the building official.

**1608.3 Pounding instability.** Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Chapters 7 and 8 of ASCE 7.

## SECTION 1609 WIND LOADS

**1609.1 Applications.** Buildings, structures and parts thereof shall be designed to withstand the minimum wind loads prescribed herein. Decreases in wind loads shall not be made for the effect of shielding by other structures.

**TABLE 1608.2  
GROUND SNOW LOADS,  $p_g$ , FOR ALASKAN LOCATIONS**

LOCATION	POUNDS PER SQUARE FOOT
Adak	30
Anchorage	50
Angoon	70
Barrow	25
Barter Island	35
Bethel	40
Big Delta	50
Cold Bay	25
Cordova	100
Fairbanks	60
Fort Yukon	60
Galena	60
Gulkana	70
Homer	40
Juneau	60
Kenai	70
Kodiak	30
Kotzebue	60
McGrath	70
Nenana	80
Nome	70
Palmer	50
Petersburg	150
St. Paul Islands	40
Seward	50
Shemya	25
Sitka	50
Talkeetna	120
Unalakleet	50
Valdez	160
Whittier	300
Wrangell	60
Yakutat	150

For SI: 1 pound per square foot =  $0.0479 \text{ kN/m}^2$ .

**1609.1.1 Determination of wind loads.** Wind loads on every building or structure shall be determined in accordance with Chapters 26 to 30 of ASCE 7. The type of opening protection required, the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , and the exposure category for a site is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1609 or ASCE 7. Wind shall be assumed to come from any horizontal direction and wind pressures shall be assumed to act normal to the surface considered.

### Exceptions:

1. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, the provisions of ICC 600 shall be permitted for applicable Group R-2 and R-3 buildings.
2. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AWC WFCM.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

3. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AISI S230.
4. Designs using NAAMM FP 1001.
5. Designs using TIA-222 for antenna-supporting structures and antennas, provided that the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2 escarpments in Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA-222 shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.
6. Wind tunnel tests in accordance with ASCE 49 and Sections 31.4 and 31.5 of ASCE 7.

The wind speeds in Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12) are basic design wind speeds,  $V$ , and shall be converted in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 to allowable stress design wind speeds,  $V_{asd}$ , when the provisions of the standards referenced in Exceptions 4 and 5 are used.

**1609.1.1.1 Applicability.** The provisions of ICC 600 are applicable only to buildings located within Exposure B or C as defined in Section 1609.4. The provisions of ICC 600, AWC WFCM and AISI S230 shall not apply to buildings sited on the upper half of an isolated hill, ridge or escarpment meeting all of the following conditions:

1. The hill, ridge or escarpment is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or higher if located in Exposure B or 30 feet (9144 mm) or higher if located in Exposure C.
2. The maximum average slope of the hill exceeds 10 percent.
3. The hill, ridge or escarpment is unobstructed upwind by other such topographic features for a distance from the high point of 50 times the height of the hill or 2 miles (3.22 km), whichever is greater.

**1609.2 Protection of openings.** In windborne debris regions, glazing in buildings shall be impact resistant or protected with an impact-resistant covering meeting the requirements of an approved impact-resistant standard or ASTM E1996 referenced herein as follows:

1. Glazed openings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of the large missile test of ASTM E1996.

2. Glazed openings located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade shall meet the provisions of the small missile test of ASTM E1996.

#### Exceptions:

1. Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of  $\frac{7}{16}$  inch (11.1 mm) and maximum panel span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less that are classified as a Group R-3 or R-4 occupancy. Panels shall be precut so that they shall be attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method and shall be secured with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the components and cladding loads determined in accordance with the provisions of ASCE 7, with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building. Attachment in accordance with Table 1609.2 with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 45 feet (13 716 mm) or less where  $V_{asd}$  determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 does not exceed 140 mph (63 m/s).
2. Glazing in *Risk Category I* buildings, including greenhouses that are occupied for growing plants on a production or research basis, without public access shall be permitted to be unprotected.
3. Glazing in *Risk Category II, III or IV* buildings located over 60 feet (18 288 mm) above the ground and over 30 feet (9144 mm) above aggregate surface roofs located within 1,500 feet (458 m) of the building shall be permitted to be unprotected.

**1609.2.1 Louvers.** Louvers protecting intake and exhaust ventilation ducts not assumed to be open that are located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of AMCA 540.

**TABLE 1609.2  
WINDBORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING SCHEDULE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS<sup>a, b, c, d</sup>**

FASTENER TYPE	FASTENER SPACING (inches)		
	Panel Span ≤ 4 feet	4 feet < Panel Span ≤ 6 feet	6 feet < Panel Span ≤ 8 feet
No. 8 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	10	8
No. 10 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	12	9
$\frac{1}{4}$ -inch diameter lag-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	16	16

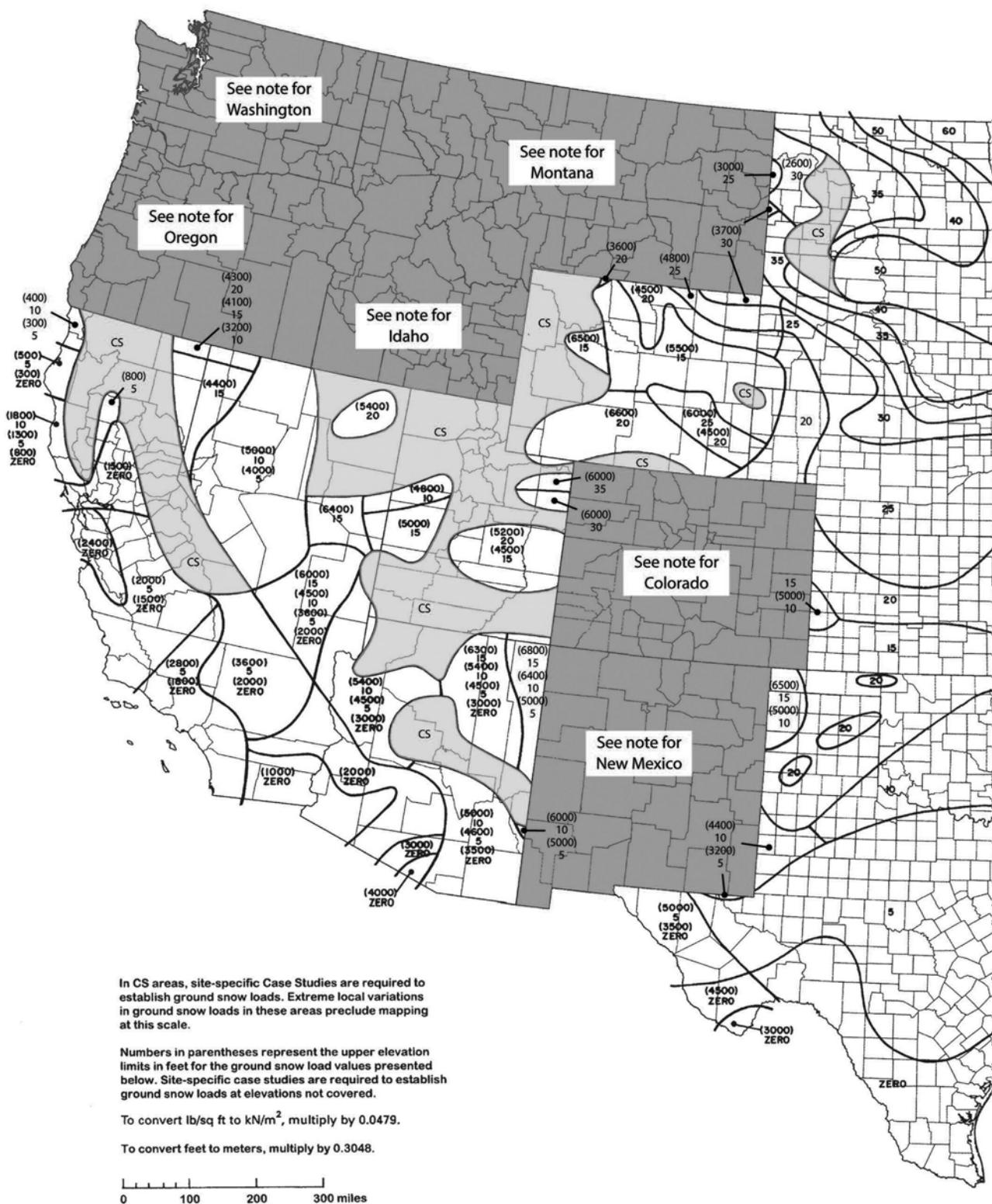
For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is based on 140 mph wind speeds and a 45-foot mean roof height.

b. Fasteners shall be installed at opposing ends of the wood structural panel. Fasteners shall be located not less than 1 inch from the edge of the panel.

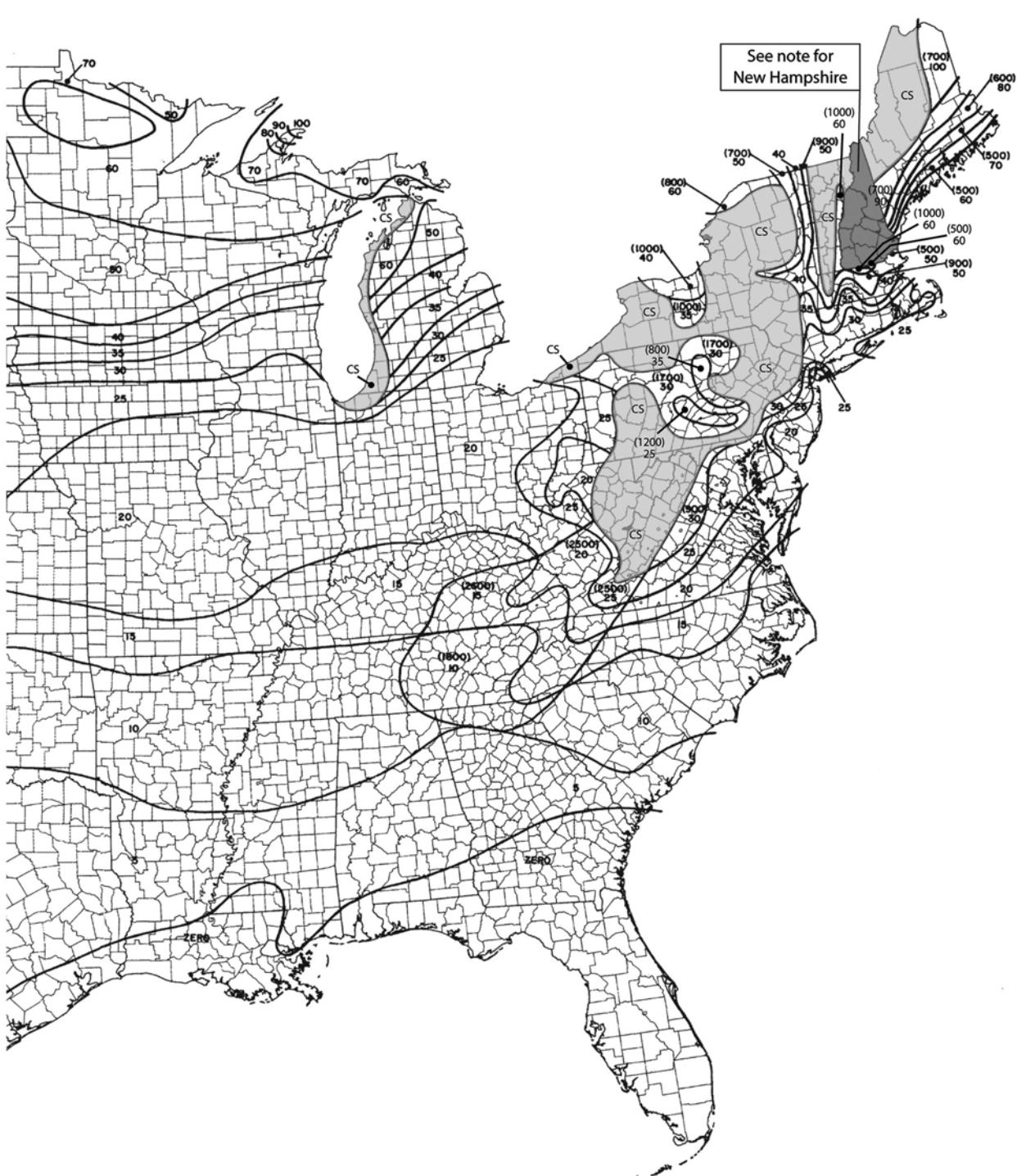
c. Anchors shall penetrate through the exterior wall covering with an embedment length of 2 inches minimum into the building frame. Fasteners shall be located not less than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches from the edge of concrete block or concrete.

d. Where panels are attached to masonry or masonry/stucco, they shall be attached using vibration-resistant anchors having a minimum ultimate withdrawal capacity of 1,500 pounds.



**NOTE:** See ASCE 7 Table 7.2-2 for Colorado, Table 7.2-3 for Idaho, Table 7.2-4 for Montana, Table 7.2-5 for Washington, Table 7.2-6 for New Mexico and Table 7.2-7 for Oregon.

**FIGURE 1608.2(1)**  
**GROUND SNOW LOADS,  $p_g$ , FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)**



NOTE: See ASCE 7 Table 7.2-8 for New Hampshire.

**FIGURE 1608.2(2)**  
**GROUND SNOW LOADS,  $p_g$ , FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1609.2.2 Application of ASTM E1996.** The text of Section 6.2.2 of ASTM E1996 shall be substituted as follows:

6.2.2 Unless otherwise specified, select the wind zone based on the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , as follows:

6.2.2.1 *Wind Zone 1*— $130 \text{ mph} \leq \text{basic design wind speed}, V < 140 \text{ mph}$ .

6.2.2.2 *Wind Zone 2*— $140 \text{ mph} \leq \text{basic design wind speed}, V < 150 \text{ mph}$  at greater than one mile (1.6 km) from the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.3 *Wind Zone 3*— $150 \text{ mph} (67 \text{ m/s}) \leq \text{basic design wind speed}, V \leq 160 \text{ mph} (72 \text{ m/s})$ , or  $140 \text{ mph} (63 \text{ m/s}) \leq \text{basic design wind speed}, V \leq 160 \text{ mph} (72 \text{ m/s})$  and within one mile (1.6 km) of the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.4 *Wind Zone 4*— basic design wind speed,  $V > 160 \text{ mph} (72 \text{ m/s})$ .

**1609.2.3 Garage doors.** Garage door glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of an approved impact-resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

**1609.3 Basic design wind speed.** The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , in mph, for the determination of the wind loads shall be determined by Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of *Risk Category II* buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609.3(1), 1609.3(5) and 1609.3(6). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of *Risk Category III* buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609.3(2), 1609.3(7) and 1609.3(8). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of *Risk Category IV* buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609.3(3), 1609.3(9) and 1609.3(10). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of *Risk Category I* buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609.3(4), 1609.3(11) and 1609.3(12). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for the special wind regions indicated near mountainous terrain and near gorges shall be in accordance with local jurisdiction requirements. The basic design wind speeds,  $V$ , determined by the local jurisdiction shall be in accordance with Chapter 26 of ASCE 7.

In nonhurricane-prone regions, when the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , is estimated from regional climatic data, the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 26 of ASCE 7.

**1609.3.1 Wind speed conversion.** Where required, the basic design wind speeds of Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12) shall be converted to allowable stress design wind speeds,  $V_{asd}$ , using Table 1609.3.1 or Equation 16-17.

$$V_{asd} = V \sqrt{0.6} \quad (\text{Equation 16-17})$$

where:

$V_{asd}$  = Allowable stress design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 4 and 5 of Section 1609.1.1.

$V$  = Basic design wind speeds determined from Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12).

**1609.4 Exposure category.** For each wind direction considered, an exposure category that adequately reflects the characteristics of ground surface irregularities shall be determined for the site at which the building or structure is to be constructed. Account shall be taken of variations in ground surface roughness that arise from natural topography and vegetation as well as from constructed features.

**1609.4.1 Wind directions and sectors.** For each selected wind direction at which the wind loads are to be evaluated, the exposure of the building or structure shall be determined for the two upwind sectors extending 45 degrees (0.79 rad) either side of the selected wind direction. The exposures in these two sectors shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1609.4.2 and 1609.4.3 and the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads shall be used to represent winds from that direction.

**1609.4.2 Surface roughness categories.** A ground surface roughness within each 45-degree (0.79 rad) sector shall be determined for a distance upwind of the site as defined in Section 1609.4.3 from the following categories, for the purpose of assigning an exposure category as defined in Section 1609.4.3.

**Surface Roughness B.** Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger.

**Surface Roughness C.** Open terrain with scattered obstructions having heights generally less than 30 feet (9144 mm). This category includes flat open country, and grasslands.

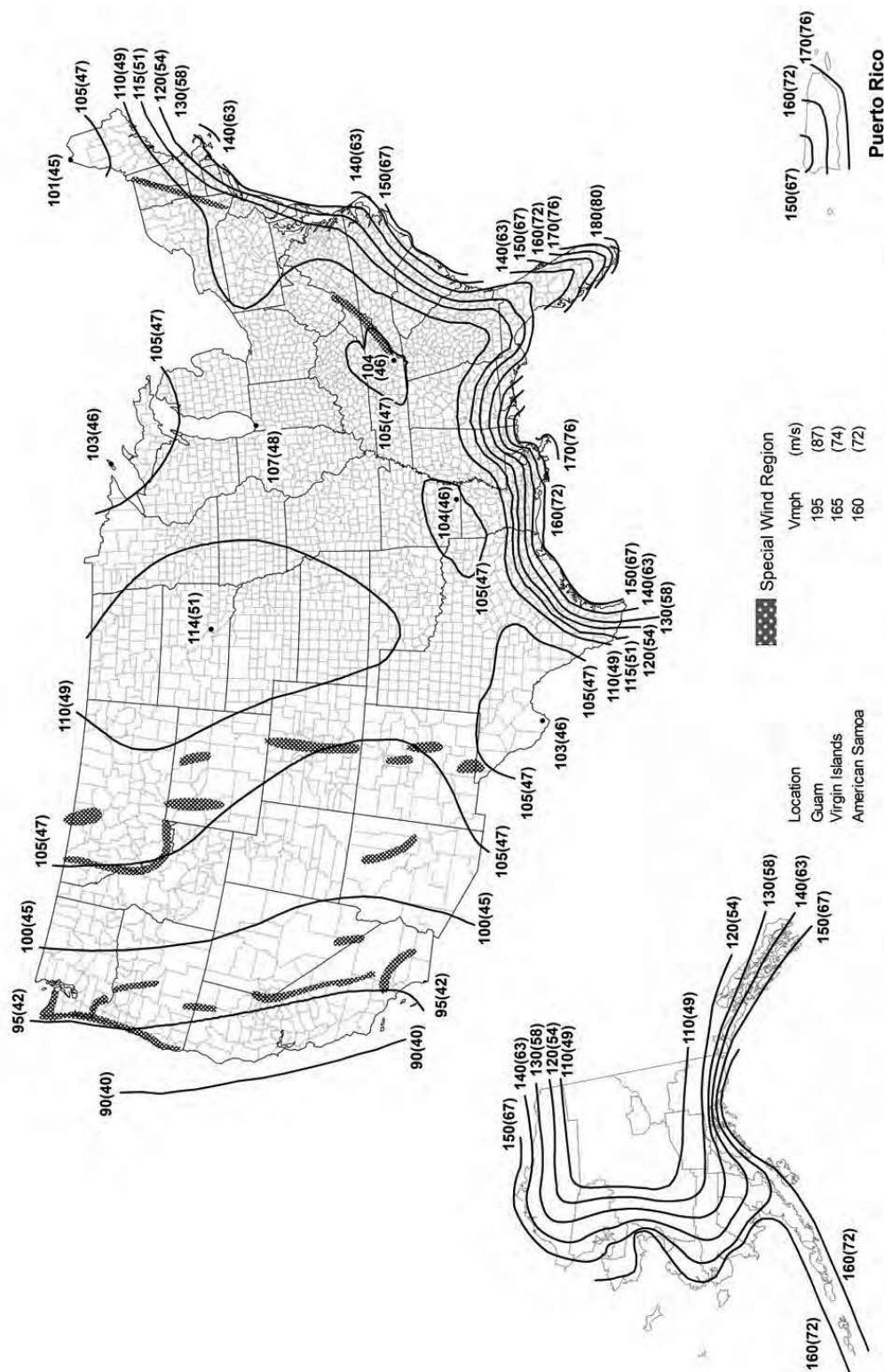
**Surface Roughness D.** Flat, unobstructed areas and water surfaces. This category includes smooth mud flats, salt flats and unbroken ice.

**1609.4.3 Exposure categories.** An exposure category shall be determined in accordance with the following:

**Exposure B.** For buildings with a mean roof height of less than or equal to 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness B, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of not less than 1,500 feet (457 m). For buildings with a mean roof height greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where Surface Roughness B prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of not less than 2,600 feet (792 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater.

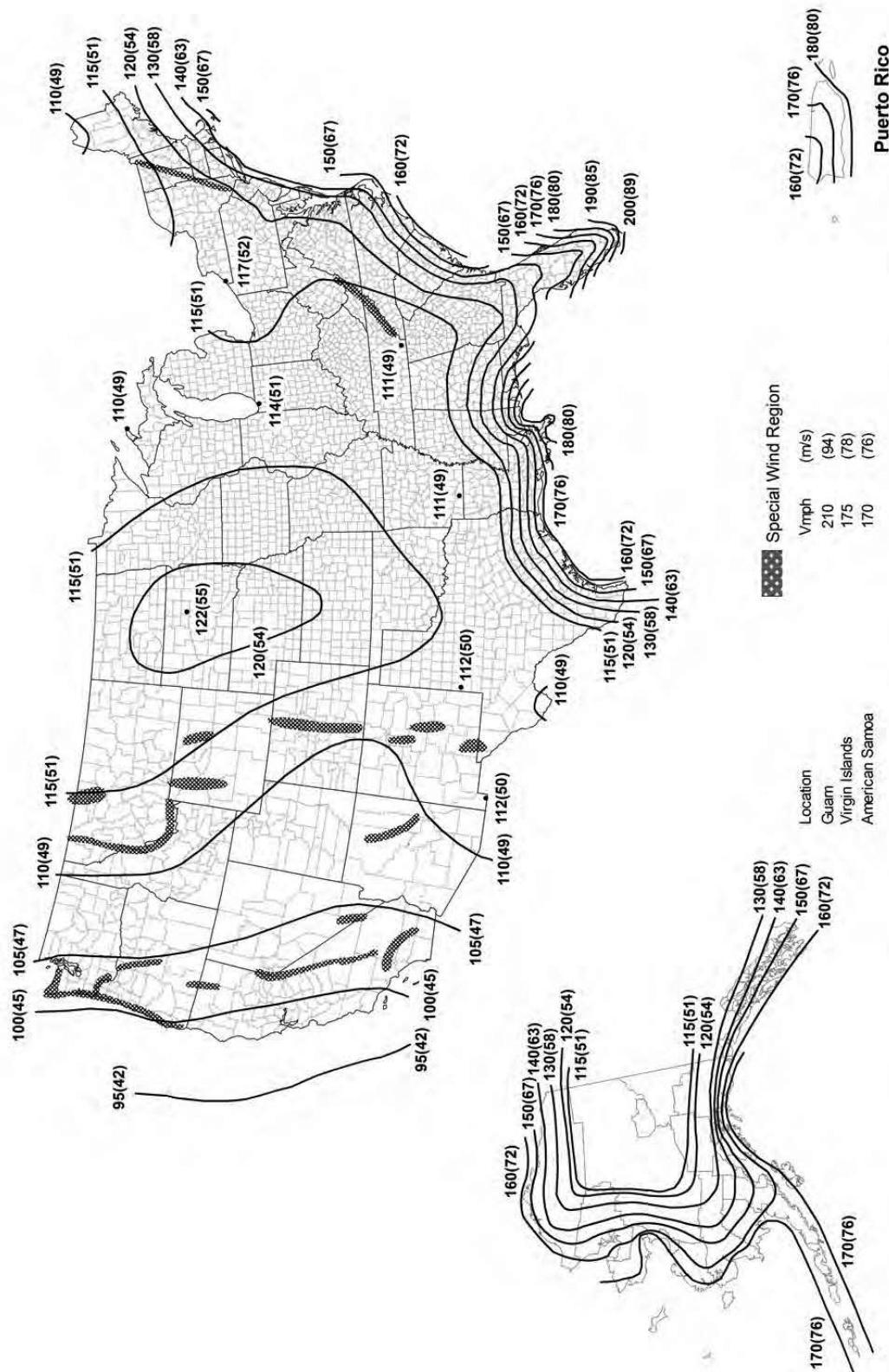
**Exposure C.** Exposure C shall apply for all cases where Exposure B or D does not apply.

**Exposure D.** Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness D, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of not less than 5,000 feet (1524 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater. Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness immediately upwind of the site is B or C, and the site is within a distance of 600 feet (183 m) or 20 times the building height, whichever is greater, from an Exposure D condition as defined in the previous sentence.

**Notes:**

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 7% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).
6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed)

**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS,  $V$ , FOR RISK CATEGORY II BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**  
**FIGURE 1609.3(I)**

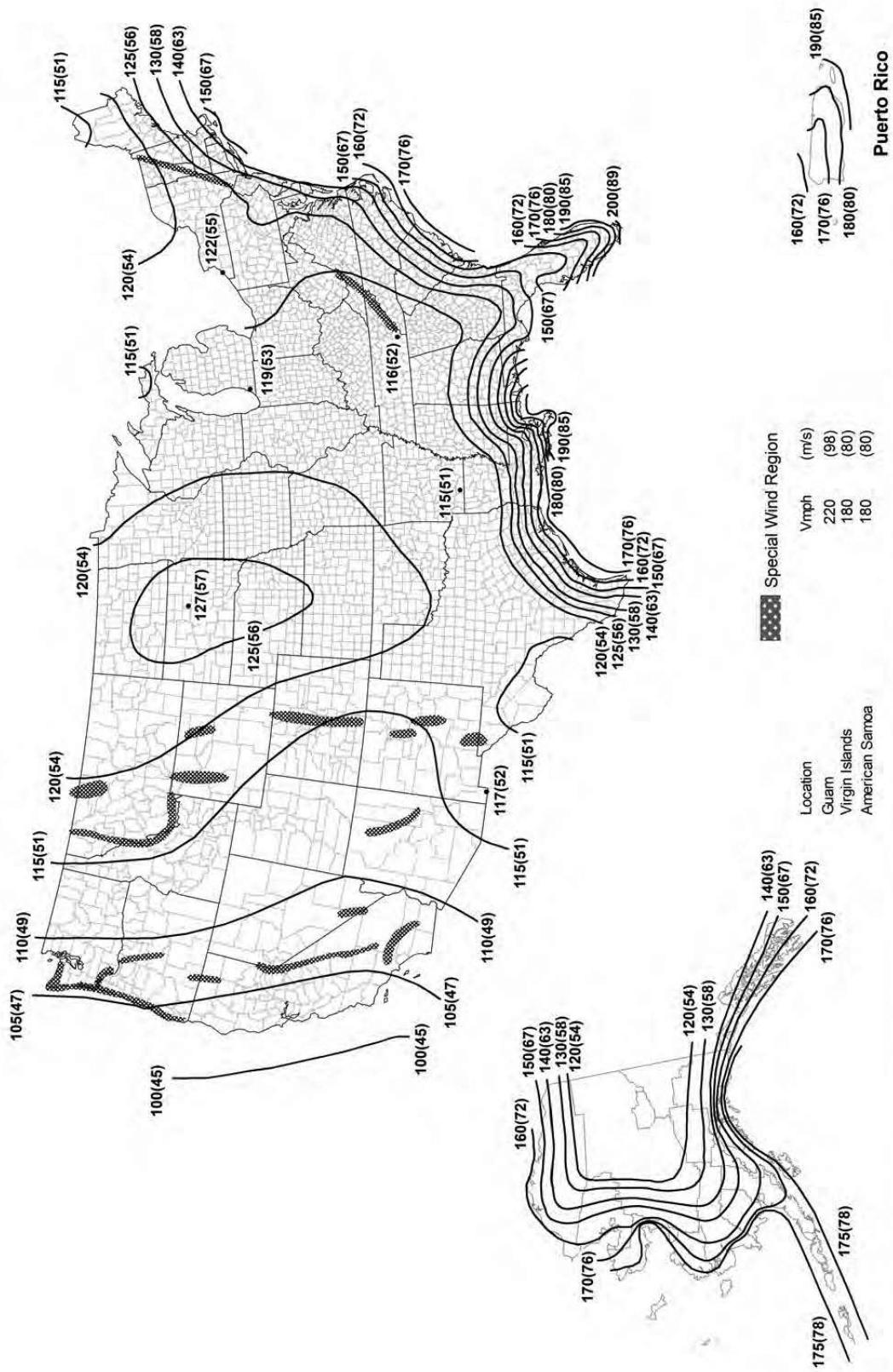


## Notes

- Notes.**

  - Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
  - Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
  - Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
  - Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
  - Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 3% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).
  - Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed)

**FIGURE 1609.3(2)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS,  $V_r$ , FOR RISK CATEGORY III BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**



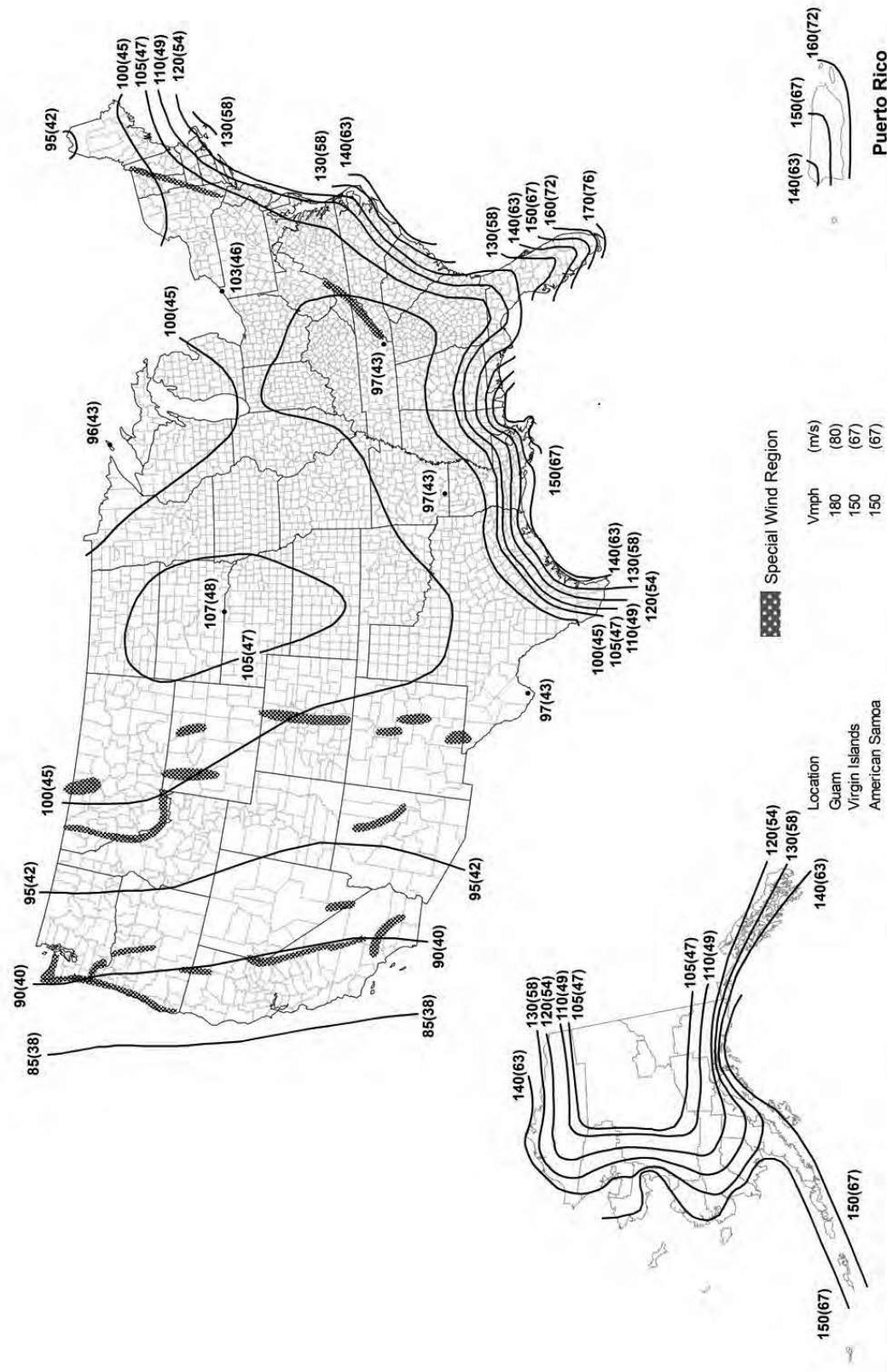
**FIGURE 1609.3(3)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS,  $V$ , FOR RISK CATEGORY IV BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

**FIGURE 1609.3(3)**

B4

### Notes:

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
  2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
  3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
  4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
  5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 1.6% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00033, MRI = 3000 Years).
  6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atccouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atccouncil.org/windspeed)



- Notes:**
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
  2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
  3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last wind speed contour.
  4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
  5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 1.5% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.003333, MRI = 300 Years).
  6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed).

**FIGURE 1609.3(4)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, V, FOR RISK CATEGORY I BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

→ **1609.5 Roof systems.** Roof systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1609.5.1 through 1609.5.3, as applicable.

**1609.5.1 Roof deck.** The roof deck shall be designed to withstand the wind pressures determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

**1609.5.2 Roof coverings.** Roof coverings shall comply with Section 1609.5.1.

**Exception:** Rigid tile roof coverings that are air permeable and installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609.5.1 are permitted to be designed in accordance with Section 1609.5.3.

Asphalt shingles installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609.5.1 shall comply with the wind-resistance requirements of Section 1504.2.

**1609.5.3 Rigid tile.** Wind loads on rigid tile roof coverings shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$M_a = q_h C_L b L L_a [1.0 - GC_p] \quad (\text{Equation 16-18})$$

For SI:

$$M_a = \frac{q_h C_L b L L_a [1.0 - GC_p]}{1,000}$$

where:

$b$  = Exposed width, feet (mm) of the roof tile.

$C_L$  = Lift coefficient. The lift coefficient for concrete and clay tile shall be 0.2 or shall be determined by test in accordance with Section 1504.3.1.

$GC_p$  = Roof pressure coefficient for each applicable roof zone determined from Chapter 30 of ASCE 7. Roof coefficients shall not be adjusted for internal pressure.

$L$  = Length, feet (mm) of the roof tile.

$L_a$  = Moment arm, feet (mm) from the axis of rotation to the point of uplift on the roof tile. The point of uplift shall be taken at 0.76L from the head of the tile and the middle of the exposed width. For roof tiles with nails or screws (with or without a tail clip), the axis of rotation shall be taken as the head of the tile for direct deck application or as the top edge of the batten for battened applications. For roof tiles fastened only by a nail or screw along the side of the tile, the axis of rotation shall be determined by testing. For roof tiles installed with battens and

fastened only by a clip near the tail of the tile, the moment arm shall be determined about the top edge of the batten with consideration given for the point of rotation of the tiles based on straight bond or broken bond and the tile profile.

$M_a$  = Aerodynamic uplift moment, feet-pounds (N-mm) acting to raise the tail of the tile.

$q_h$  = Wind velocity pressure, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) determined from Section 26.10.2 of ASCE 7.

Concrete and clay roof tiles complying with the following limitations shall be designed to withstand the aerodynamic uplift moment as determined by this section.

1. The roof tiles shall be either loose laid on battens, mechanically fastened, mortar set or adhesive set.
2. The roof tiles shall be installed on solid sheathing that has been designed as components and cladding.
3. An underlayment shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 15.
4. The tile shall be single lapped interlocking with a minimum head lap of not less than 2 inches (51 mm).
5. The length of the tile shall be between 1.0 and 1.75 feet (305 mm and 533 mm).
6. The exposed width of the tile shall be between 0.67 and 1.25 feet (204 mm and 381 mm).
7. The maximum thickness of the tail of the tile shall not exceed 1.3 inches (33 mm).
8. Roof tiles using mortar set or adhesive set systems shall have not less than two-thirds of the tile's area free of mortar or adhesive contact.

## SECTION 1610 SOIL LOADS AND HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE

**1610.1 Lateral pressures.** Foundation walls and retaining walls shall be designed to resist lateral soil loads from adjacent soil. Soil loads specified in Table 1610.1 shall be used as the minimum design lateral soil loads unless determined otherwise by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803. Foundation walls and other walls in which horizontal movement is restricted at the top shall be designed for at-rest pressure. Retaining walls free to move and rotate at the top shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure. Lateral pressure from surcharge loads shall be added to the lateral soil load. Lateral pressure shall be increased if expan-

TABLE 1609.3.1  
WIND SPEED CONVERSIONS<sup>a, b, c</sup>

V	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190	200
$V_{asd}$	78	85	93	101	108	116	124	132	139	147	155

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.44 m/s.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

b.  $V_{asd}$  = allowable stress design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 1 through 5 of Section 1609.1.1.

c. V = basic design wind speeds determined from Figures 1609.3(1) through 1609.3(12).

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

sive soils are present at the site. Foundation walls shall be designed to support the weight of the full hydrostatic pressure of undrained backfill unless a drainage system is installed in accordance with Sections 1805.4.2 and 1805.4.3.

**Exception:** Foundation walls extending not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade and laterally supported at the top by flexible diaphragms shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure.

**1610.2 Uplift loads on floor and foundations.** Basement floors, slabs on ground, foundations, and similar approximately horizontal elements below grade shall be designed to resist uplift loads where applicable. The upward pressure of water shall be taken as the full hydrostatic pressure applied over the entire area. The hydrostatic load shall be measured from the underside of the element being evaluated. The design for upward loads caused by expansive soils shall comply with Section 1808.6.

## SECTION 1611 RAIN LOADS

**1611.1 Design rain loads.** Each portion of a roof shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater as per the requirements of Chapter 8 of ASCE 7. The design rainfall shall be based on the 100-year 15-minute duration event, or on other rainfall rates determined from approved local weather data. Alternatively, a design rainfall of twice the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figures 1611.1(1) through 1611.1(5) shall be permitted.

$$R = 5.2(d_s + d_h)$$

(Equation 16-19)

For SI:  $R = 0.0098(d_s + d_h)$

where:

$d_h$  = Additional depth of water on the undeflected roof above the inlet of secondary drainage system at its design flow (in other words, the hydraulic head), in inches (mm).

$d_s$  = Depth of water on the undeflected roof up to the inlet of secondary drainage system when the primary drainage system is blocked (in other words, the static head), in inches (mm).

$R$  = Rain load on the undeflected roof, in psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ). Where the phrase “undeflected roof” is used, deflections from loads (including dead loads) shall not be considered when determining the amount of rain on the roof.

**1611.2 Ponding instability.** Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Chapters 7 and 8 of ASCE 7.

**1611.3 Controlled drainage.** Roofs equipped with hardware to control the rate of drainage shall be equipped with a secondary drainage system at a higher elevation that limits accumulation of water on the roof above that elevation. Such roofs shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater that will accumulate on them to the elevation of the secondary drainage system plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow determined from Section 1611.1. Such roofs shall be checked for ponding instability in accordance with Section 1611.2.

TABLE 1610.1  
LATERAL SOIL LOAD

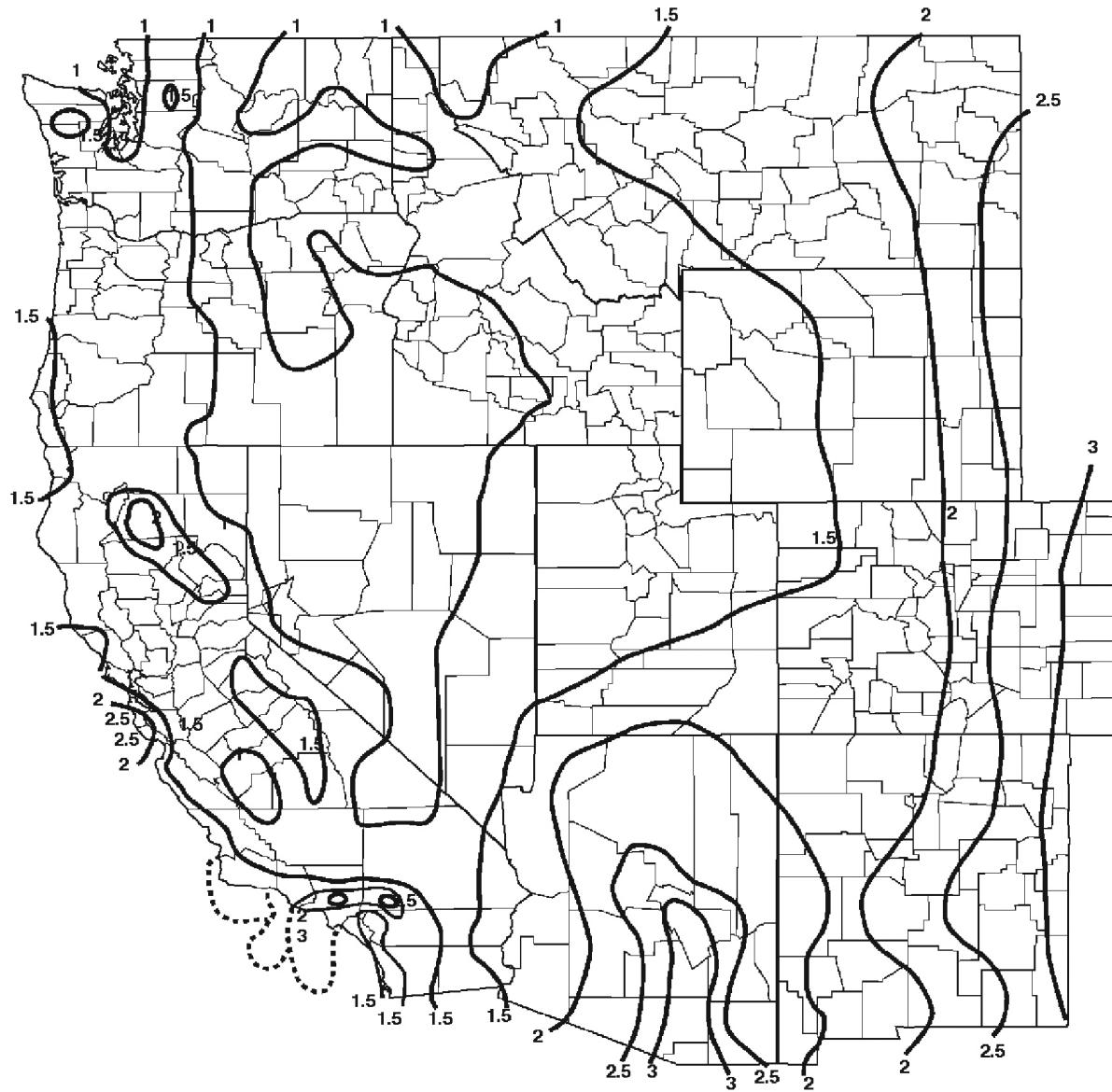
DESCRIPTION OF BACKFILL MATERIAL <sup>c</sup>	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION	DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD <sup>a</sup> (pound per square foot per foot of depth)	
		Active pressure	At-rest pressure
Well-graded, clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GW	30	60
Poorly graded clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GP	30	60
Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand mixes	GM	40	60
Clayey gravels, poorly graded gravel-and-clay mixes	GC	45	60
Well-graded, clean sands; gravelly sand mixes	SW	30	60
Poorly graded clean sands; sand-gravel mixes	SP	30	60
Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixes	SM	45	60
Sand-silt clay mix with plastic fines	SM-SC	45	100
Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixes	SC	60	100
Inorganic silts and clayey silts	ML	45	100
Mixture of inorganic silt and clay	ML-CL	60	100
Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity	CL	60	100
Organic silts and silt clays, low plasticity	OL	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clayey silts, elastic silts	MH	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clays of high plasticity	CH	Note b	Note b
Organic clays and silty clays	OH	Note b	Note b

For SI: 1 pound per square foot per foot of depth = 0.157 kPa/m, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. Design lateral soil loads are given for moist conditions for the specified soils at their optimum densities. Actual field conditions shall govern. Submerged or saturated soil pressures shall include the weight of the buoyant soil plus the hydrostatic loads.

b. Unsuitable as backfill material.

c. The definition and classification of soil materials shall be in accordance with ASTM D2487.

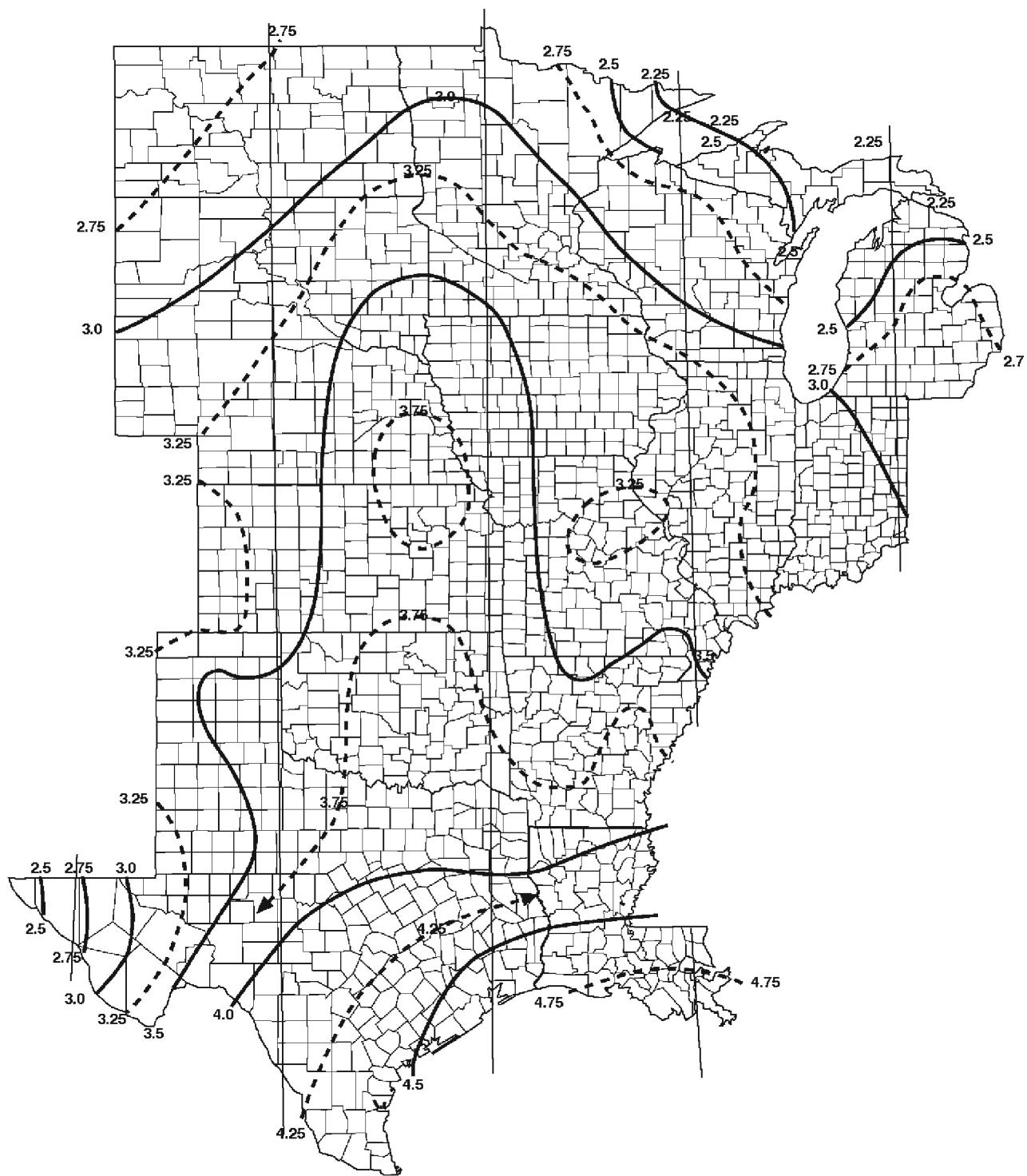


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

**FIGURE 1611.1(1)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) WESTERN UNITED STATES**

## **STRUCTURAL DESIGN**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

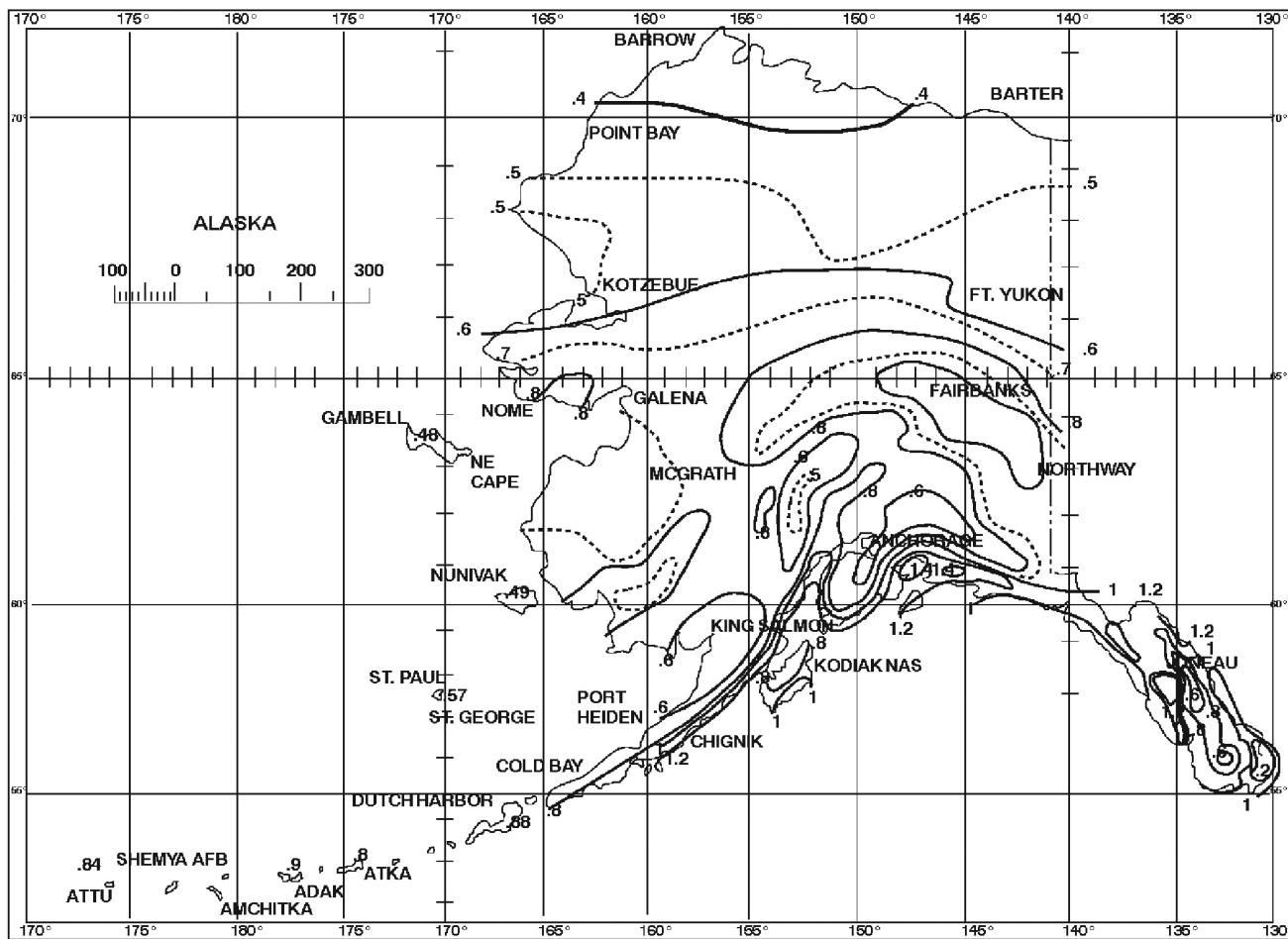
**FIGURE 1611.1(2)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) CENTRAL UNITED STATES**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

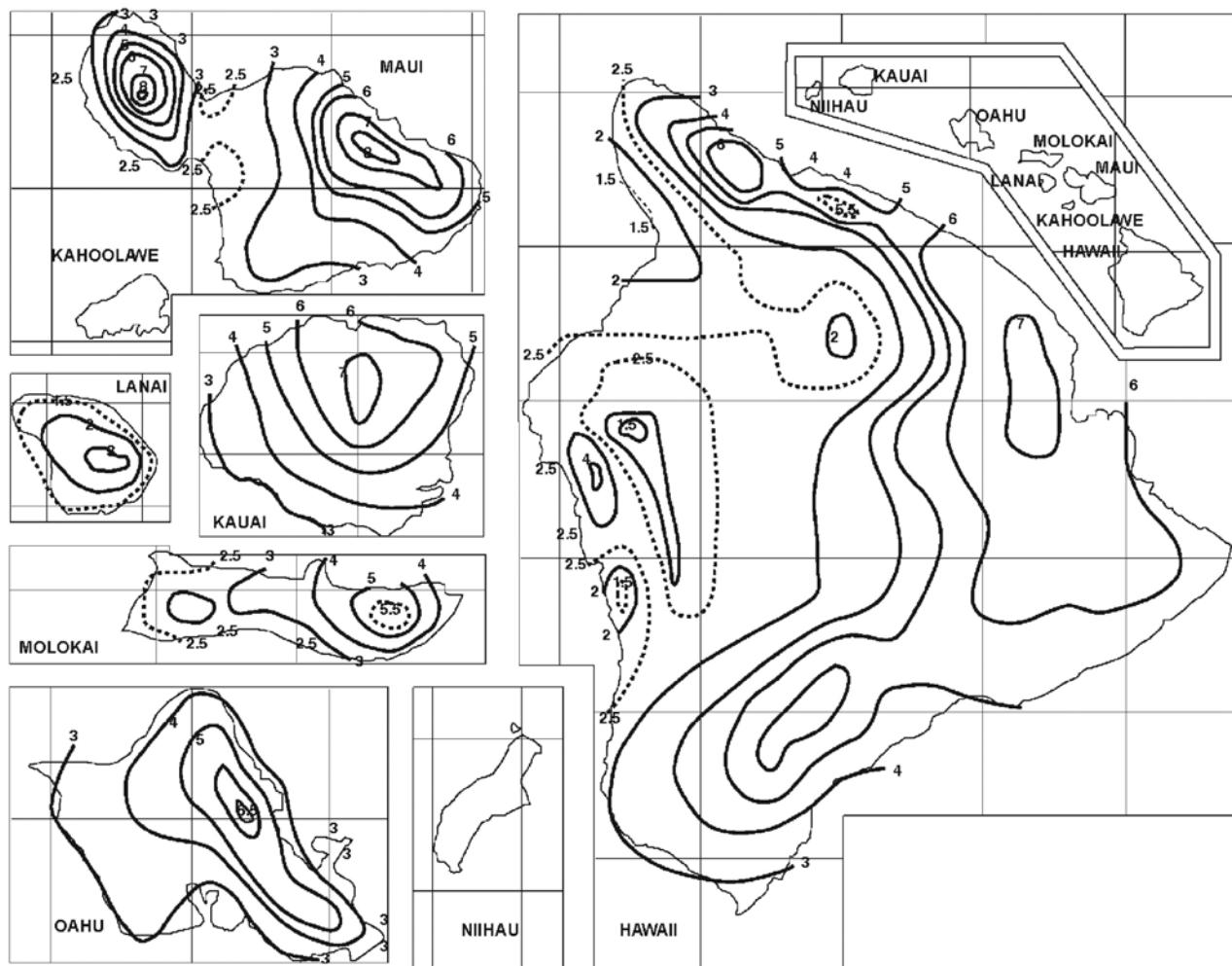
**FIGURE 1611.1(3)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) EASTERN UNITED STATES**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

**FIGURE 1611.1(4)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) ALASKA**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

**FIGURE 1611.1(5)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) HAWAII**

## SECTION 1612 FLOOD LOADS

**1612.1 General.** Within flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, all new construction of buildings, structures and portions of buildings and structures, including substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage to buildings and structures, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads. For buildings that are located in more than one flood hazard area, the provisions associated with the most restrictive flood hazard area shall apply.

**1612.2 Design and construction.** The design and construction of buildings and structures located in flood hazard areas, including coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones, shall be in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7 and ASCE 24.

**1612.3 Establishment of flood hazard areas.** To establish flood hazard areas, the applicable governing authority shall adopt a flood hazard map and supporting data. The flood hazard map shall include, at a minimum, areas of special flood hazard as identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency in an engineering report entitled “The Flood Insurance Study for [INSERT NAME OF JURISDICTION],” dated [INSERT DATE OF ISSUANCE], as amended or revised with the accompanying Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) and Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM) and related supporting data along with any revisions thereto. The adopted flood hazard map and supporting data are hereby adopted by reference and declared to be part of this section.

**Exception:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] *The flood hazard map shall include, at a minimum, areas of special flood hazard as identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency’s Flood Insurance Study (FIS) adopted by the local authority having jurisdiction where the project is located.*

**1612.3.1 Design flood elevations.** Where design flood elevations are not included in the flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3, or where floodways are not designated, the building official is authorized to require the applicant to do one of the following:

1. Obtain and reasonably utilize any design flood elevation and floodway data available from a federal, state or other source.
2. Determine the design flood elevation or floodway in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering practices used to define special flood hazard areas. Determinations shall be undertaken by a registered design professional who shall document that the technical methods used reflect currently accepted engineering practice.

**1612.3.2 Determination of impacts.** In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall provide a floodway analysis that demonstrates that the proposed work will not increase the design flood

elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the jurisdiction of the applicable governing authority.

**1612.4 Flood hazard documentation.** The following documentation shall be prepared and sealed by a registered design professional and submitted to the building official:

1. For construction in flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones:
  - 1.1. The elevation of the lowest floor, including the basement, as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.12.1.
  - 1.2. For fully enclosed areas below the design flood elevation where provisions to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters do not meet the minimum requirements in Section 2.7.2.1 of ASCE 24, construction documents shall include a statement that the design will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces in accordance with Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.
  - 1.3. For dry floodproofed nonresidential buildings, construction documents shall include a statement that the dry floodproofing is designed in accordance with ASCE 24 and shall include the flood emergency plan specified in Chapter 6 of ASCE 24.
2. For construction in *coastal high hazard areas* and *coastal A zones*:
  - 2.1. The elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.12.1.
  - 2.2. Construction documents shall include a statement that the building is designed in accordance with ASCE 24, including that the pile or column foundation and building or structure to be attached thereto is designed to be anchored to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement due to the effects of wind and flood loads acting simultaneously on all building components, and other load requirements of Chapter 16.
  - 2.3. For breakaway walls designed to have a resistance of more than 20 psf ( $0.96 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) determined using allowable stress design, construction documents shall include a statement that the breakaway wall is designed in accordance with ASCE 24.
  - 2.4. For breakaway walls where provisions to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters do not meet the minimum requirements in Section 2.7.2.1 of ASCE 24, construction documents shall include a statement that the design will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces in accordance with Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.

## SECTION 1613 EARTHQUAKE LOADS

**1613.1 Scope.** Every structure, and portion thereof, including nonstructural components that are permanently attached to structures and their supports and attachments, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of earthquake motions in accordance with Chapters 11, 12, 13, 15, 17 and 18 of ASCE 7, as applicable. The seismic design category for a structure is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1613 or ASCE 7.

**Exceptions:**

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings, assigned to *Seismic Design Category A, B or C*, or located where the mapped short-period spectral response acceleration,  $S_S$ , is less than 0.4 g.
2. The seismic force-resisting system of wood-frame buildings that conform to the provisions of Section 2308 are not required to be analyzed as specified in this section. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD, see Section 2308.*
3. Agricultural storage structures intended only for incidental human occupancy.
4. Structures that require special consideration of their response characteristics and environment that are not addressed by this code or ASCE 7 and for which other regulations provide seismic criteria, such as vehicular bridges, electrical transmission towers, hydraulic structures, buried utility lines and their appurtenances and nuclear reactors.
5. References within ASCE 7 to Chapter 14 shall not apply, except as specifically required herein.
6. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Seismic Design Category shall be in accordance with exception to Section 1613.2.5.*

**1613.1.1 Scope.** *[SL] For applications listed in Section 1.12 regulated by the State Librarian, only the provisions of ASCE 7 Tables 13.5-1 and 1607.1, as amended, of this code shall apply.*

**1613.1.2 State-owned buildings.** *[BSC] State-owned buildings, including those of the University of California, CSU and Judicial Council, shall not be constructed where any portion of the foundation would be within a mapped area of earthquake-induced liquefaction or landsliding or within 50 feet of a mapped fault rupture hazard as established by Section 1803.7.*

**1613.1.3 Existing state buildings.** *[BSC] Additions, alterations, repairs or change of occupancy category of existing buildings shall be in accordance with the California Existing Building Code, Part 10.*

**1613.2 Seismic ground motion values.** Seismic ground motion values shall be determined in accordance with this section.

**1613.2.1 Mapped acceleration parameters.** The parameters  $S_S$  and  $S_1$  shall be determined from the 0.2 and 1-second spectral response accelerations shown on Figures

1613.2.1(1) through 1613.2.1(10). Where  $S_1$  is less than or equal to 0.04 and  $S_S$  is less than or equal to 0.15, the structure is permitted to be assigned *Seismic Design Category A*.

**Exception:** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Seismic Design Category shall be in accordance with exception to Section 1613.2.5.*

**1613.2.2 Site class definitions.** Based on the site soil properties, the site shall be classified as *Site Class A, B, C, D, E or F* in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7.

Where the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the site class, *Site Class D*, subjected to the requirements of Section 1613.2.3, shall be used unless the building official or geotechnical data determines that *Site Class E or F* soils are present at the site.

Where site investigations that are performed in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7 reveal rock conditions consistent with *Site Class B*, but site-specific velocity measurements are not made, the site coefficients  $F_a$  and  $F_v$  shall be taken at unity (1.0).

**1613.2.3 Site coefficients and adjusted maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration parameters.** The maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration for short periods,  $S_{MS}$ , and at 1-second period,  $S_{MI}$ , adjusted for site class effects shall be determined by Equations 16-20 and 16-21, respectively:

$$S_{MS} = F_a S_S \quad (\text{Equation 16-20})$$

$$S_{MI} = F_v S_1 \quad (\text{Equation 16-21})$$

but  $S_{MS}$  shall not be taken less than  $S_{MI}$  except when determining the seismic design category in accordance with Section 1613.2.5.

where:

$F_a$  = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613.2.3(1).

$F_v$  = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613.2.3(2).

$S_S$  = The mapped spectral accelerations for short periods as determined in Section 1613.2.1.

$S_1$  = The mapped spectral accelerations for a 1-second period as determined in Section 1613.2.1.

Where *Site Class D* is selected as the default site class per Section 1613.2.2, the value of  $F_a$  shall be not less than 1.2. Where the simplified design procedure of ASCE 7, Section 12.14 is used, the value of  $F_a$  shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.14.8.1, and the values of  $F_v$ ,  $S_{MS}$  and  $S_{MI}$  need not be determined.

**1613.2.4 Design spectral response acceleration parameters.** Five-percent damped design spectral response acceleration at short periods,  $S_{DS}$ , and at 1-second period,  $S_{DI}$ , shall be determined from Equations 16-22 and Equation 16-23, respectively:

$$S_{DS} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MS} \quad (\text{Equation 16-22})$$

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

$$S_{DI} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MI} \quad (\text{Equation 16-23})$$

where:

$S_{MS}$  = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for short period as determined in Section 1613.2.3.

$S_{MI}$  = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for 1-second period as determined in Section 1613.2.3.

### 1613.2.5 Determination of seismic design category.

Structures classified as *Risk Category I, II or III* that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period,  $S_1$ , is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to *Seismic Design Category E*. Structures classified as *Risk Category IV* that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period,  $S_1$ , is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to *Seismic Design Category F*. Other structures shall be assigned to a seismic design category based on their risk category and the design spectral response acceleration parameters,  $S_{DS}$  and  $S_{DI}$ , determined in accordance with Section 1613.2.4 or the

site-specific procedures of ASCE 7. Each building and structure shall be assigned to the more severe seismic design category in accordance with Table 1613.2.5(1) or 1613.2.5(2), irrespective of the fundamental period of vibration of the structure,  $T_s$ .

**Exception:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Structures not assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F above shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category D.

**1613.2.5.1 Alternative seismic design category determination.** Where  $S_1$  is less than 0.75, the seismic design category is permitted to be determined from Table 1613.2.5(1) alone where all of the following apply:

1. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the approximate fundamental period of the structure,  $T_{a^*}$ , in each of the two orthogonal directions determined in accordance with Section 12.8.2.1 of ASCE 7, is less than 0.8  $T_s$  determined in accordance with Section 11.8.6 of ASCE 7.
2. In each of the two orthogonal directions, the fundamental period of the structure used to calculate the story drift is less than  $T_s$ .

TABLE 1613.2.3(1) [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]  
VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT  $F_a^a$

SITE CLASS	MAPPED RISK TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE <sub>R</sub> ) SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETER AT SHORT PERIOD					
	$S_s \leq 0.25$	$S_s = 0.50$	$S_s = 0.75$	$S_s = 1.00$	$S_s = 1.25$	$S_s \geq 1.5$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9
C	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2
D	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.1	1.0	1.0
E	2.4	1.7	1.3	1.2 <sup>c</sup>	1.2 <sup>c</sup>	1.2 <sup>c</sup>
F	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at short period,  $S_s$ .

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7.

c. See requirements for site-specific ground motions in Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7. These values of  $F_a$  shall only be used for calculation of  $T_s$ , determination of Seismic Design Category, linear interpolation for intermediate values of  $S_s$ , and when taking the exception under Item 2 within Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7.

TABLE 1613.2.3(2)  
VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT  $F_v^a$

SITE CLASS	MAPPED RISK TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE <sub>R</sub> ) SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETER AT 1-SECOND PERIOD					
	$S_1 \leq 0.1$	$S_1 = 0.2$	$S_1 = 0.3$	$S_1 = 0.4$	$S_1 = 0.5$	$S_1 \geq 0.6$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
C	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4
D	2.4	2.2 <sup>c</sup>	2.0 <sup>c</sup>	1.9 <sup>c</sup>	1.8 <sup>c</sup>	1.7 <sup>c</sup>
E	4.2	3.3 <sup>c</sup>	2.8 <sup>c</sup>	2.4 <sup>c</sup>	2.2 <sup>c</sup>	2.0 <sup>c</sup>
F	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at 1-second period,  $S_1$ .

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7.

c. See requirements for site-specific ground motions in Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] These values of  $F_v$  shall only be used for calculation of  $T_s$ , determination of Seismic Design Category, linear interpolation for intermediate values of  $S_1$ , and when taking the exceptions under Items 1 and 2 of Section 11.4.8 for the calculation of  $S_{DR}$ .

3. Equation 12.8-2 of ASCE 7 is used to determine the seismic response coefficient,  $C_s$ .
4. The diaphragms are rigid or are permitted to be idealized as rigid in accordance with Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7 or, for diaphragms permitted to be idealized as flexible in accordance with Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7, the distances between vertical elements of the seismic force-resisting system do not exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm).

**Exception:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Seismic design category shall be determined in accordance with exception to Section 1613.2.5.

**1613.2.5.2 Simplified design procedure.** Where the alternate simplified design procedure of ASCE 7 is used, the seismic design category shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

**Exception:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Seismic design category shall be determined in accordance with exception to Section 1613.2.5.

**1613.3 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.** Ballasted, roof-mounted photovoltaic panel systems need not be rigidly attached to the roof or supporting structure. Ballasted non-penetrating systems shall be designed and installed only on roofs with slopes not more than one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal. Ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed to resist sliding and uplift resulting from lateral and vertical forces as required by Section 1605, using a coefficient of friction determined by acceptable engineering principles. In structures assigned to *Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F*, ballasted nonpenetrating systems shall be designed to accommodate seismic displacement determined by nonlinear response-hazard story or other approved analysis or

shake-table testing, using input motions consistent with ASCE 7 lateral and vertical seismic forces for nonstructural components on roofs. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems shall be considered as an alternative system.

**1613.4 Component Importance Factors.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Nonstructural components designated below shall have a component importance factor,  $I_p$ , equal to 1.5:

1. For components that are required for life-safety purposes after an earthquake, including emergency and standby power systems, mechanical smoke removal systems, fire protection sprinkler systems and fire alarm control panels.
2. For medical equipment required for patient life support.

## SECTION 1614 ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS

**1614.1 General.** Ice-sensitive structures shall be designed for atmospheric ice loads in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

## SECTION 1615 TSUNAMI LOADS

**1615.1 General.** The design and construction of *Risk Category III and IV buildings and structures located in the Tsunami Design Zones* defined in the *Tsunami Design Geodatabase* shall be in accordance with Chapter 6 of ASCE 7, except as modified by this code.

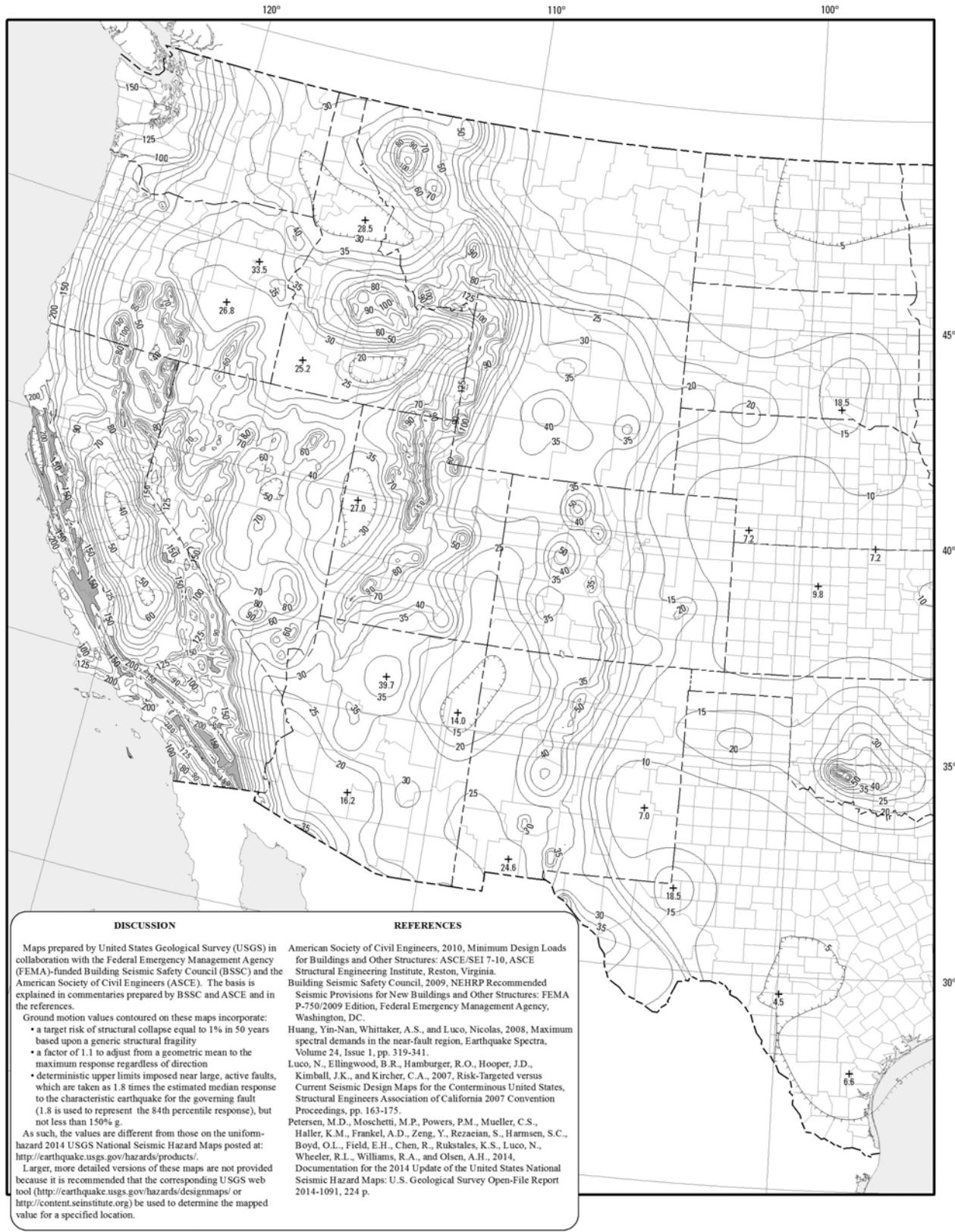
TABLE 1613.2.5(1)  
SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY BASED ON SHORT-PERIOD (0.2 second) RESPONSE ACCELERATION

VALUE OF $S_{DS}$	RISK CATEGORY		
	I or II	III	IV
$S_{DS} < 0.167g$	A	A	A
$0.167g \leq S_{DS} < 0.33g$	B	B	C
$0.33g \leq S_{DS} < 0.50g$	C	C	D
$0.50g \leq S_{DS}$	D	D	D

TABLE 1613.2.5(2)  
SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY BASED ON 1-SECOND PERIOD RESPONSE ACCELERATION

VALUE OF $S_{DI}$	RISK CATEGORY		
	I or II	III	IV
$S_{DI} < 0.067g$	A	A	A
$0.067g \leq S_{DI} < 0.133g$	B	B	C
$0.133g \leq S_{DI} < 0.20g$	C	C	D
$0.20g \leq S_{DI}$	D	D	D

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

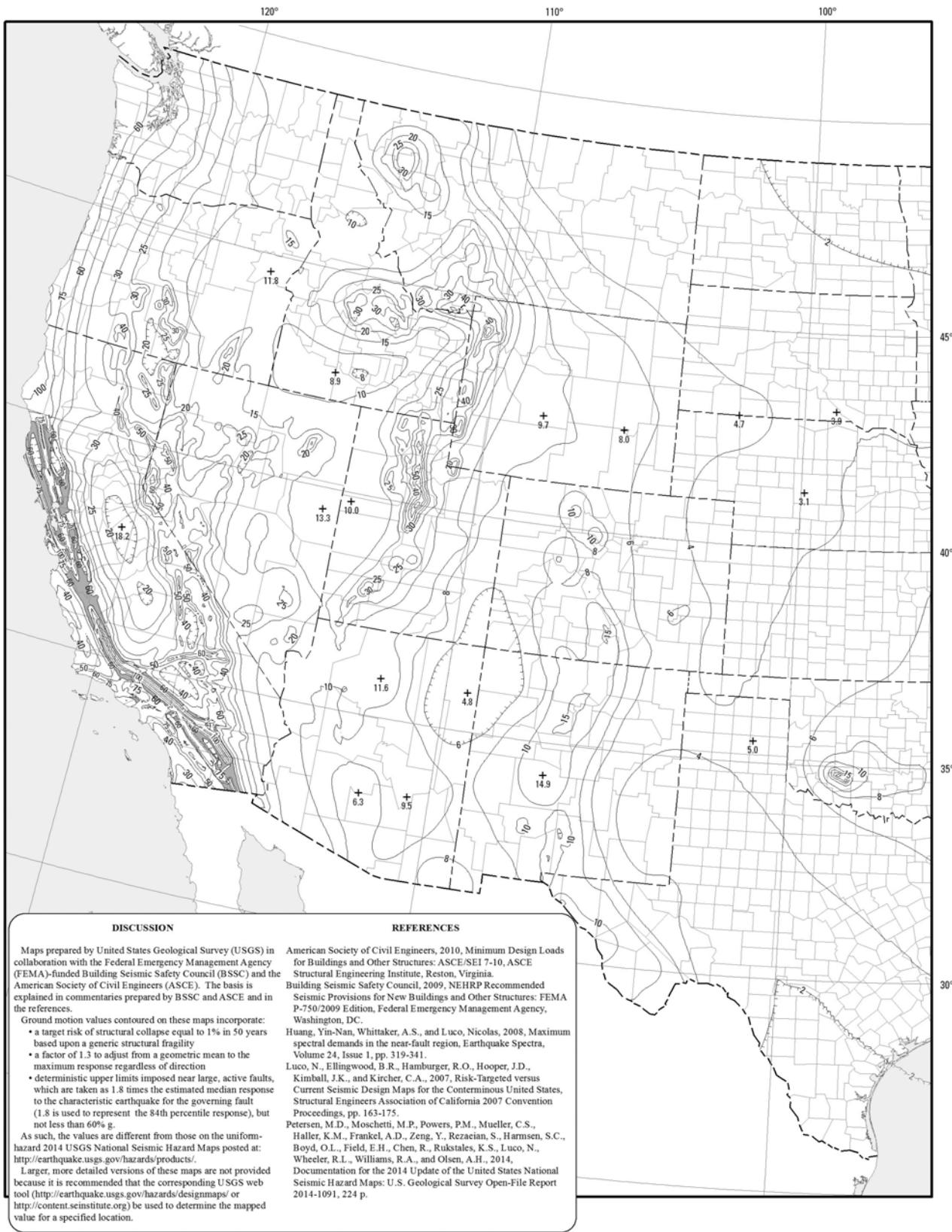


**FIGURE 1613.2.1(1)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE ( $MCE_R$ ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**



**FIGURE 1613.2.1(2)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE ( $MCE_R$ ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR THE CONTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

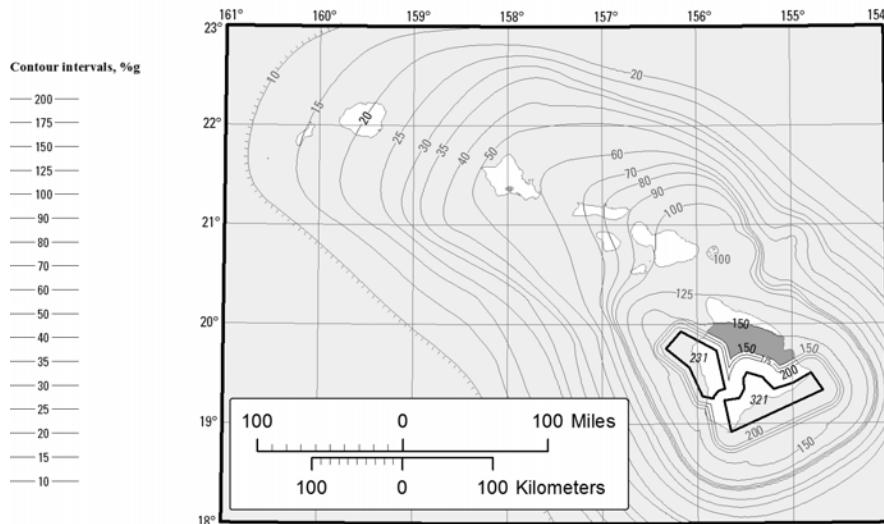
## STRUCTURAL DESIGN



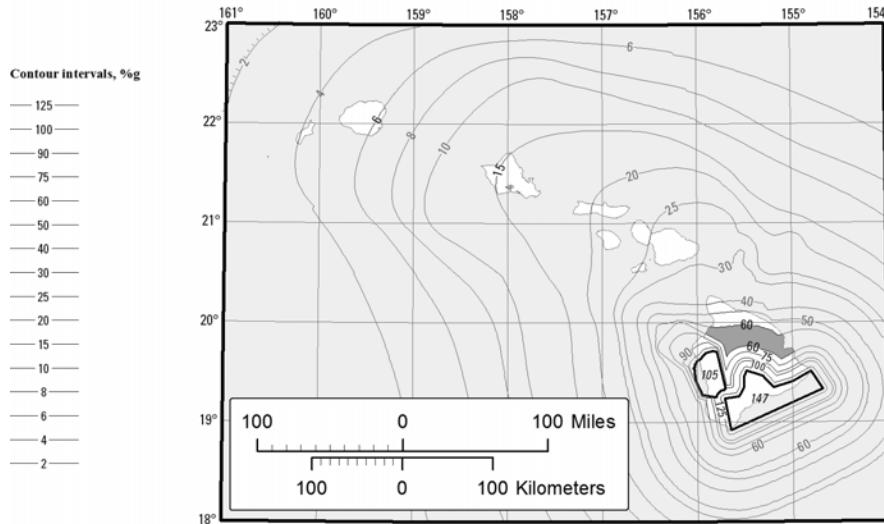


**FIGURE 1613.2.1(4)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE ( $MCE_r$ ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR THE COTERMINOUS UNITED STATES OF 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN



#### **0.2 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)**



#### **1.0 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)**

## DISCUSSION

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC) and the American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE). The basis is explained in commentaries prepared by BSSC and ASCE and in the references.

- Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:
  - a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
  - deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.8 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.8 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 1998 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for Hawaii

posted at <http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps>. Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (<http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps> or <http://content.seisinstute.org>) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

## REFERENCES

- Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

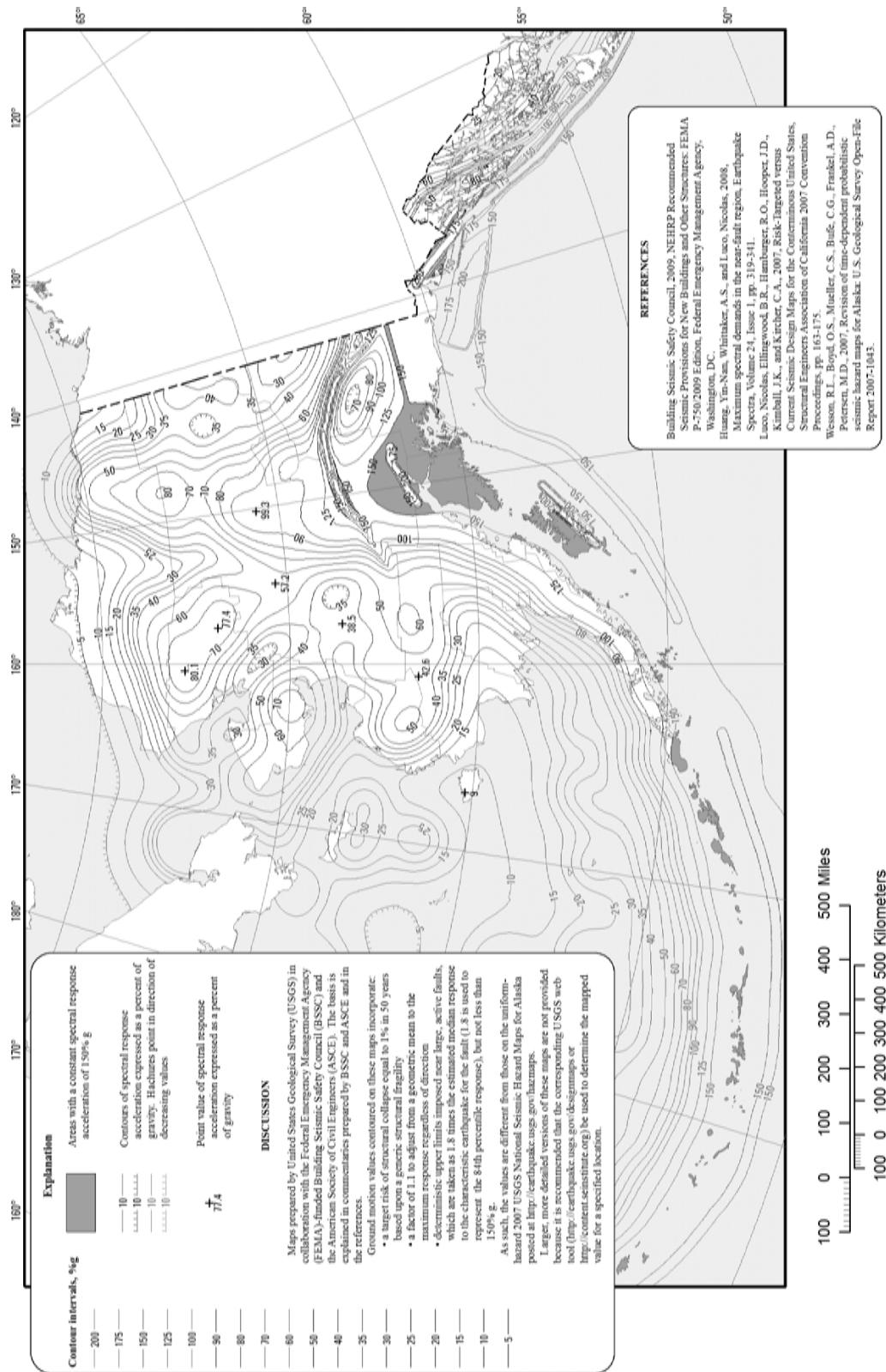
Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, *Earthquake Spectra*, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

Klein, F., Frankel, A.D., Mueller, C.S., Wesson, R.L., and Okubo, P., 2001, Seismic hazard in Hawaii: high rate of large earthquakes and probabilistic ground-motion maps, *Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America*, Volume 91, pp. 479-498.

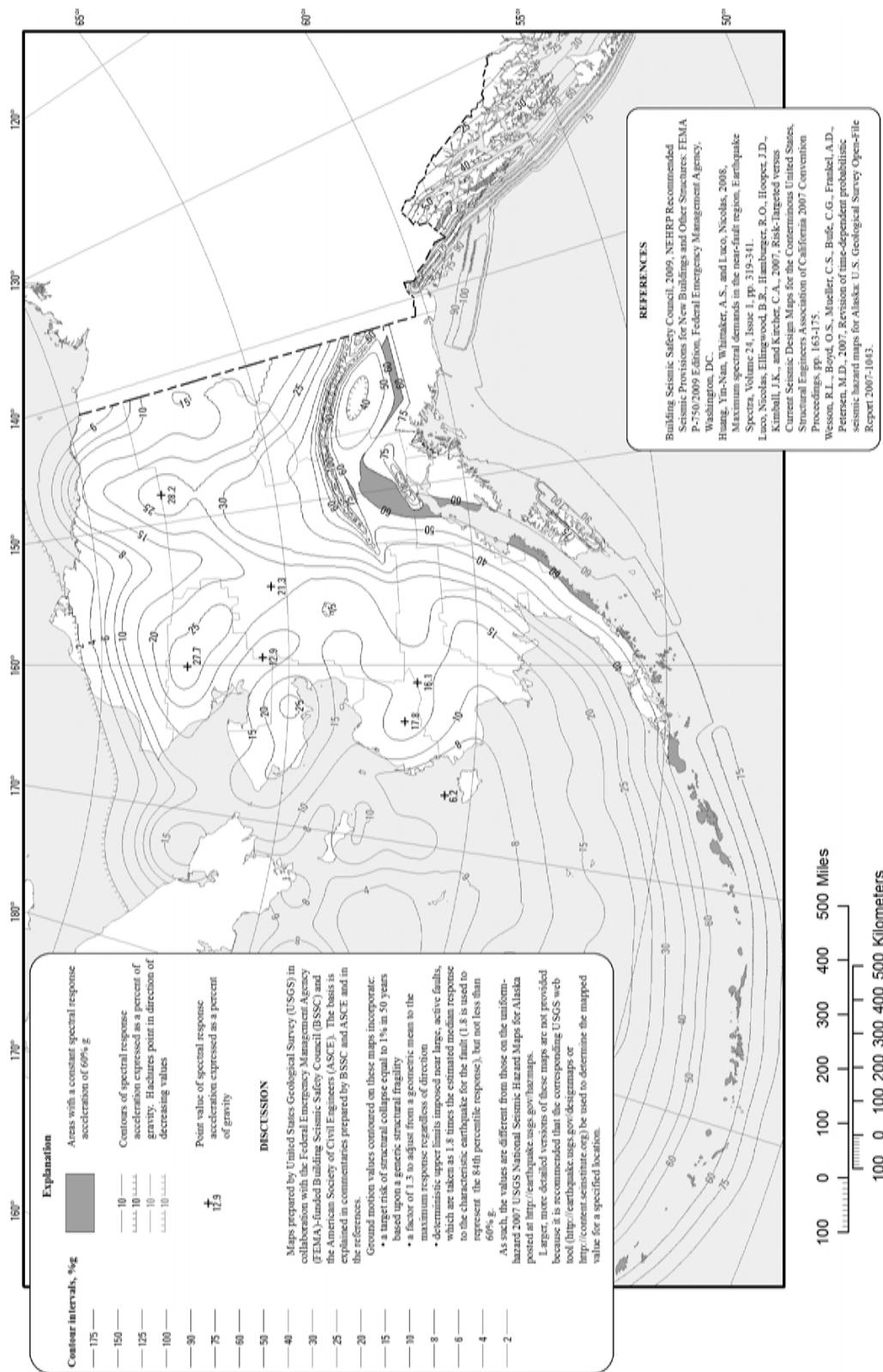
Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Contiguous United States, *Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings*, pp. 163-175.

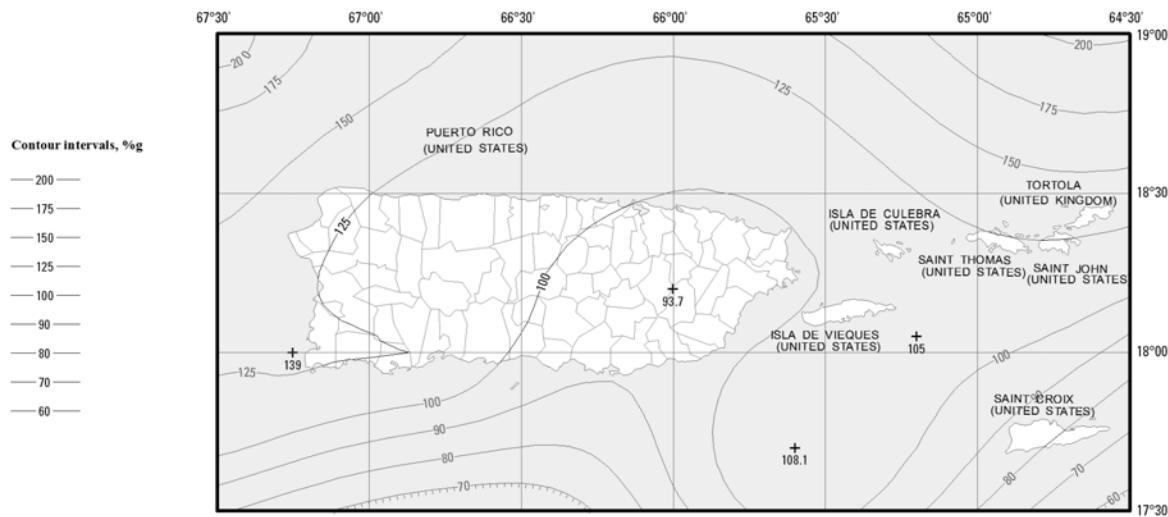
**FIGURE 1613.2.1(5)**

**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE ( $MCE_R$ ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR HAWAII OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

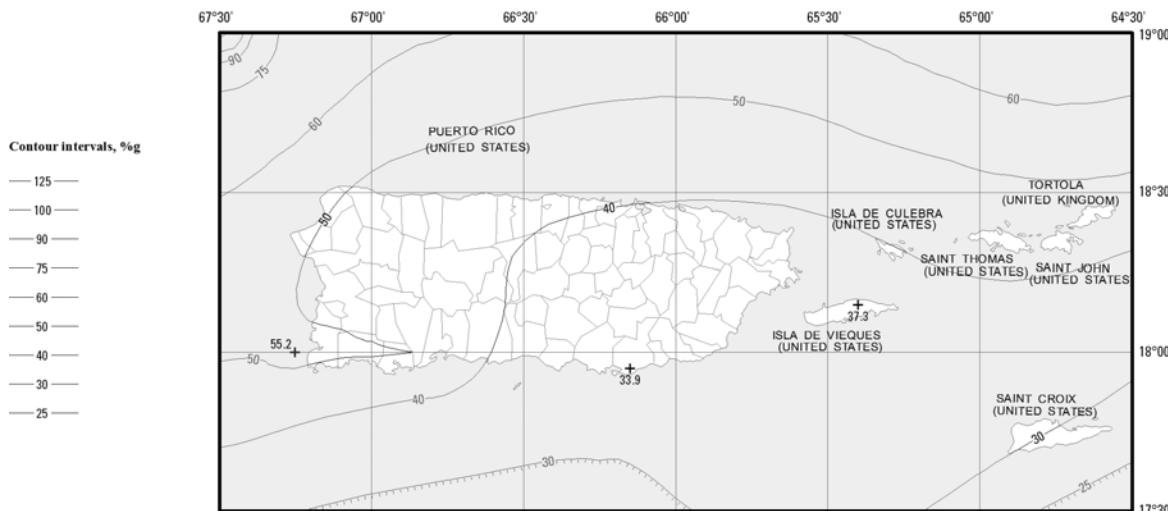


**FIGURE 1613.2.1(6)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE ( $MCE_r$ ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS  
 FOR ALASKA OF 0.2-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

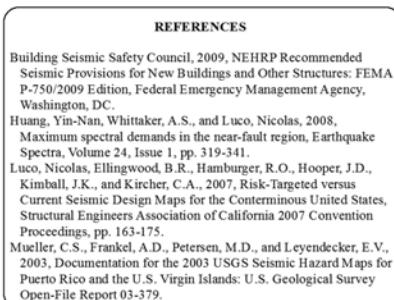
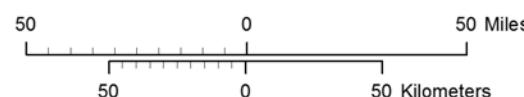
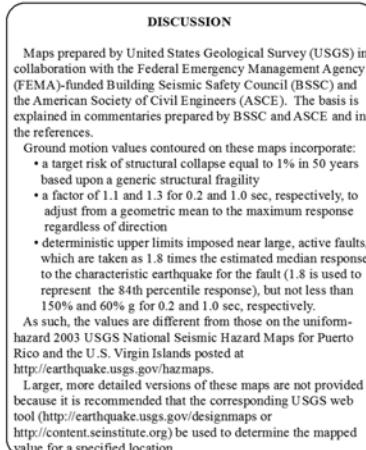
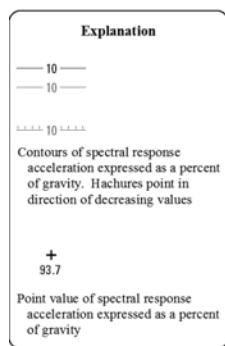




0.2 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)

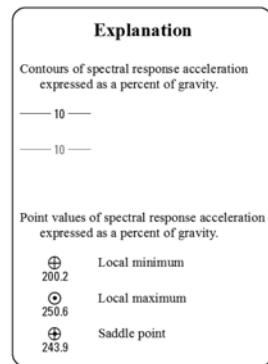
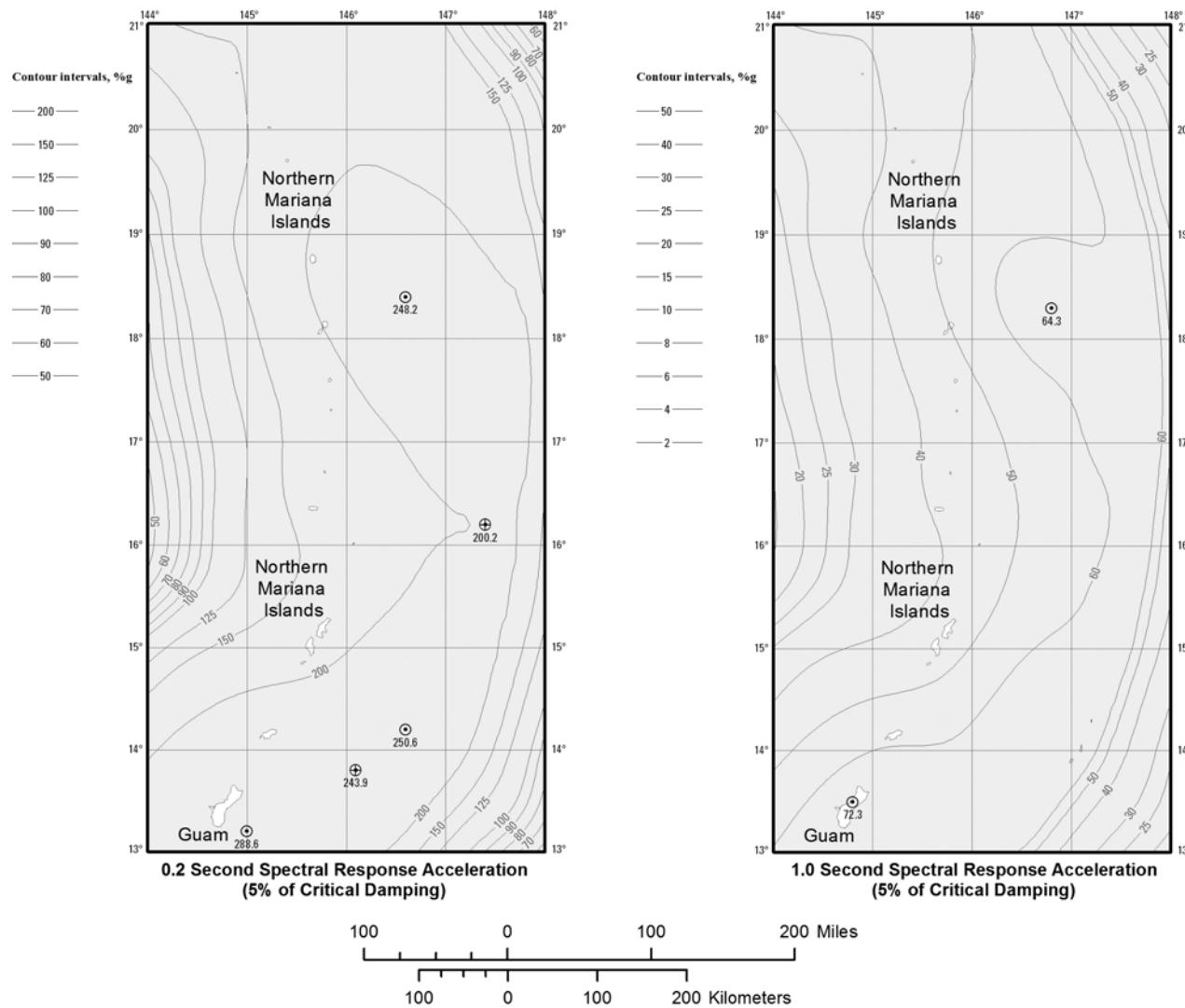


1.0 Second Spectral Response Acceleration (5% of Critical Damping)



**FIGURE 1613.2.1(8)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE<sub>R</sub>) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR PUERTO RICO AND THE UNITED STATES VIRGIN ISLANDS OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN



**DISCUSSION**

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC). The basis is explained in commentary prepared by BSSC and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 and 1.3 for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively, to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.8 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake for the fault (1.8 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% and 60% g for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2012 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands posted at <http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps>.

Larger, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (<http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps>) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

**REFERENCES**

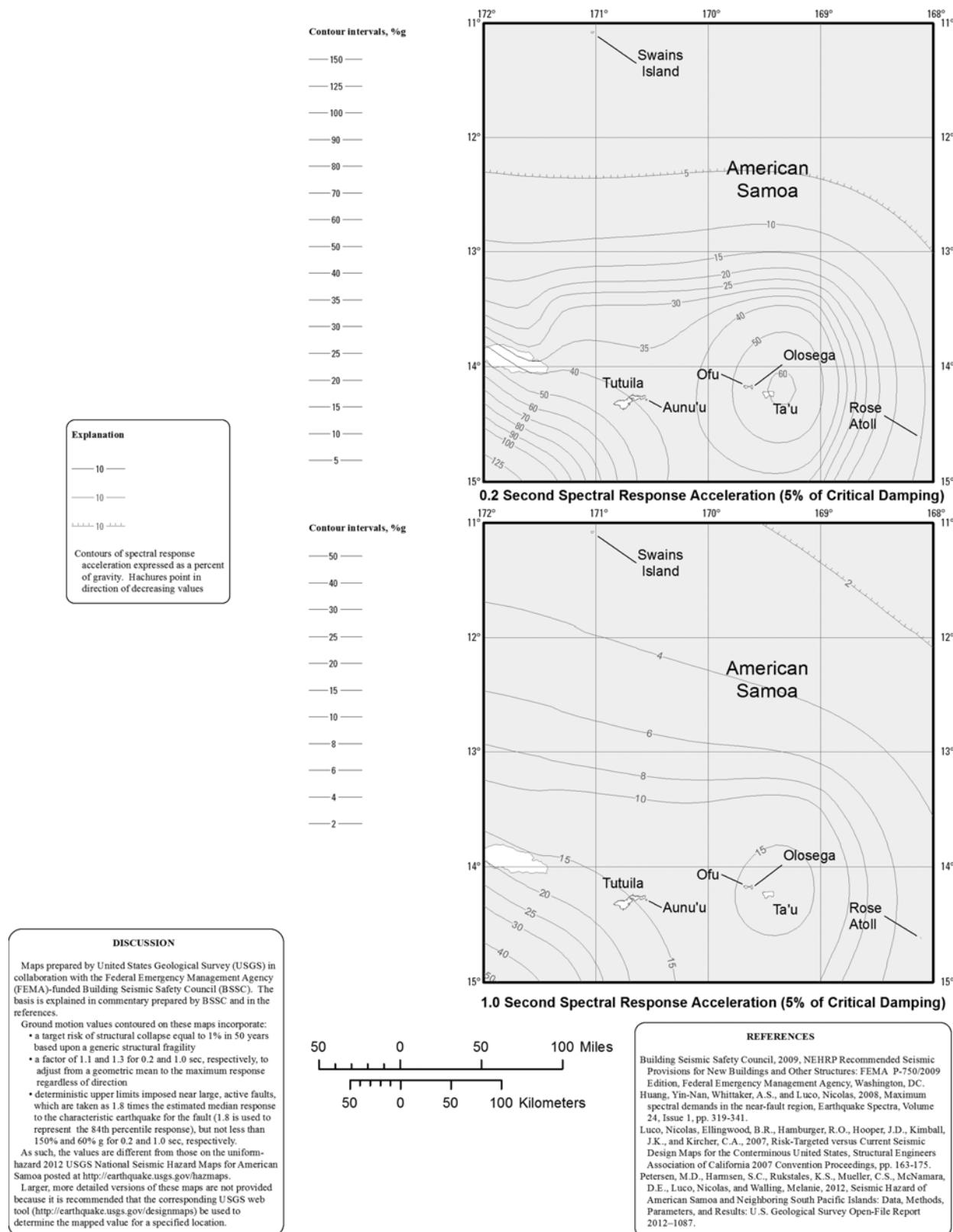
Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-695/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.

Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in the near-fault region, *Earthquake Spectra*, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.

Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Contiguous United States, *Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings*, pp. 163-175.

Mueller, C.S., Haller, K.M., Luco, Nicolas, Petersen, M.D., and Frankel, A.D., 2012, Seismic Hazard Assessment for Guam and the Northern Mariana Islands: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2012-1015.

**FIGURE 1613.2.1(9)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE<sub>R</sub>) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR GUAM AND THE NORTHERN MARIANA ISLANDS OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

**DISCUSSION**

Maps prepared by United States Geological Survey (USGS) in collaboration with the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)-funded Building Seismic Safety Council (BSSC). The basis is explained in commentary prepared by BSSC and in the references.

Ground motion values contoured on these maps incorporate:

- a target risk of structural collapse equal to 1% in 50 years based upon a generic structural fragility
- a factor of 1.1 and 1.3 for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively, to adjust from a geometric mean to the maximum response regardless of direction
- deterministic upper limits imposed near large, active faults, which are taken as 1.8 times the estimated median response to the characteristic earthquake (1.8 is used to represent the 84th percentile response), but not less than 150% and 60% g for 0.2 and 1.0 sec, respectively.

As such, the values are different from those on the uniform-hazard 2012 USGS National Seismic Hazard Maps for American Samoa posted at <http://earthquake.usgs.gov/hazmaps>.

Large, more detailed versions of these maps are not provided because it is recommended that the corresponding USGS web tool (<http://earthquake.usgs.gov/designmaps>) be used to determine the mapped value for a specified location.

- REFERENCES**
- Building Seismic Safety Council, 2009, NEHRP Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Buildings and Other Structures: FEMA P-750/2009 Edition, Federal Emergency Management Agency, Washington, DC.
  - Huang, Yin-Nan, Whittaker, A.S., and Luco, Nicolas, 2008, Maximum spectral demands in a near-fault region, *Earthquake Spectra*, Volume 24, Issue 1, pp. 319-341.
  - Luco, Nicolas, Ellingwood, B.R., Hamburger, R.O., Hooper, J.D., Kimball, J.K., and Kircher, C.A., 2007, Risk-Targeted versus Current Seismic Design Maps for the Conterminous United States, *Structural Engineers Association of California 2007 Convention Proceedings*, pp. 163-175.
  - Petersen, M.D., Hammen, S.C., Rukstales, K.S., Mueller, C.S., McNamara, D.E., Luco, Nicolas, and Walling, Melanie, 2012, Seismic Hazard of American Samoa and Neighboring South Pacific Islands: Data, Methods, Parameters, and Results: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 2012-1087.

**FIGURE 1613.2.1(10)**  
**RISK-TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE ( $MCE_R$ ) GROUND MOTION RESPONSE ACCELERATIONS FOR AMERICAN SAMOA OF 0.2- AND 1-SECOND SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION (5% OF CRITICAL DAMPING)**

## SECTION 1616 STRUCTURAL INTEGRITY

**1616.1 General.** High-rise buildings that are assigned to *Risk Category III or IV* shall comply with the requirements of Section 1616.2 if they are frame structures, or Section 1616.3 if they are bearing wall structures.

**1616.2 Frame structures.** Frame structures shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1616.2.1 Concrete frame structures.** Frame structures constructed primarily of reinforced or prestressed concrete, either cast-in-place or precast, or a combination of these, shall conform to the requirements of Section 4.10 of ACI 318. Where ACI 318 requires that nonprestressed reinforcing or prestressing steel pass through the region bounded by the longitudinal column reinforcement, that reinforcing or prestressing steel shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength equal to two-thirds of the required one-way vertical strength of the connection of the floor or roof system to the column in each direction of beam or slab reinforcement passing through the column.

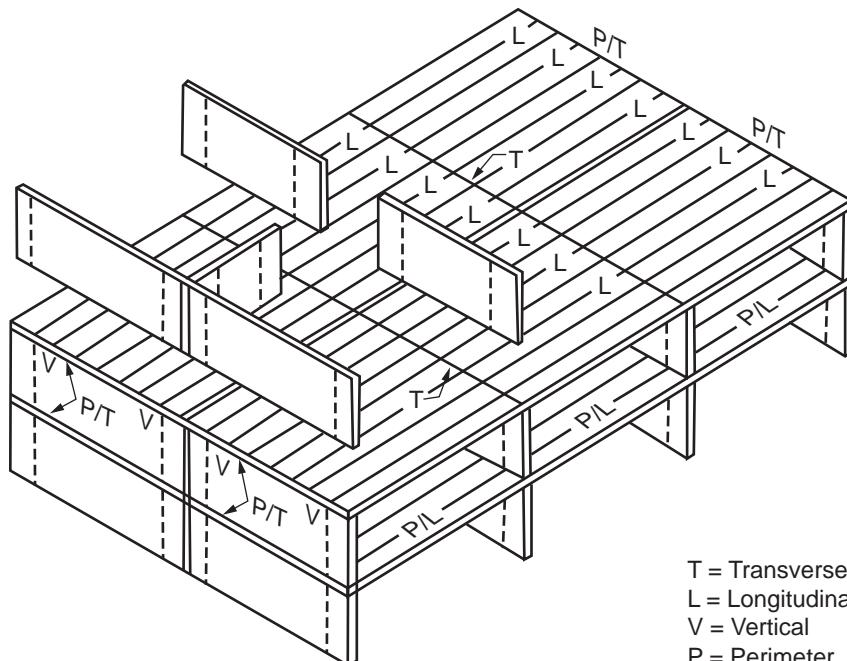
**Exception:** Where concrete slabs with continuous reinforcement having an area not less than 0.0015 times the concrete area in each of two orthogonal directions are present and are either monolithic with or equivalently bonded to beams, girders or columns, the longitudinal reinforcing or prestressing steel passing through the column reinforcement shall have a nominal tensile strength of one-third of the required one-way vertical strength of the connection of the floor or roof system to the column in each direction of beam or slab reinforcement passing through the column.

**1616.2.2 Structural steel, open web steel joist or joist girder, or composite steel and concrete frame structures.** Frame structures constructed with a structural steel frame or a frame composed of open web steel joists, joist girders with or without other structural steel elements or a frame composed of composite steel or composite steel joists and reinforced concrete elements shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**1616.2.2.1 Columns.** Each column splice shall have the minimum design strength in tension to transfer the design dead and live load tributary to the column between the splice and the splice or base immediately below.

**1616.2.2.2 Beams.** End connections of all beams and girders shall have a minimum nominal axial tensile strength equal to the required vertical shear strength for allowable stress design (ASD) or two-thirds of the required shear strength for load and resistance factor design (LRFD) but not less than 10 kips (45 kN). For the purpose of this section, the shear force and the axial tensile force need not be considered to act simultaneously.

**Exception:** Where beams, girders, open web joist and joist girders support a concrete slab or concrete slab on metal deck that is attached to the beam or girder with not less than 3/8-inch-diameter (9.5 mm) headed shear studs, at a spacing of not more than 12 inches (305 mm) on center, averaged over the length of the member, or other attachment having equivalent shear strength, and the slab contains continuous distributed reinforcement in each of two *orthogonal* directions with an area not less than 0.0015 times the



**FIGURE 1616.3  
LONGITUDINAL, PERIMETER, TRANSVERSE AND VERTICAL TIES**

concrete area, the nominal axial tension strength of the end connection shall be permitted to be taken as as half the required vertical shear strength for ASD or one-third of the required shear strength for LRFD, but not less than 10 kips (45 kN).

**1616.3 Bearing wall structures.** Bearing wall structures shall have vertical ties in all load-bearing walls and longitudinal ties, transverse ties and perimeter ties at each floor level in accordance with this section and as shown in Figure 1616.3.

**1616.3.1 Concrete wall structures.** Precast bearing wall structures constructed solely of reinforced or prestressed concrete, or combinations of these shall conform to the requirements of Sections 16.2.4 and 16.2.5 of ACI 318.

**1616.3.2 Other bearing wall structures.** Ties in bearing wall structures other than those covered in Section 1616.3.1 shall conform to this section.

**1616.3.2.1 Longitudinal ties.** Longitudinal ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Longitudinal ties shall extend across interior load-bearing walls and shall connect to exterior load-bearing walls and shall be spaced at not greater than 10 feet (3038 mm) on center. Ties shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength,  $T_p$ , given by Equation 16-24. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_p = w LS \leq \alpha_T S \quad (\text{Equation 16-24})$$

where:

$L$  = The span of the horizontal element in the direction of the tie, between bearing walls, feet (m).

$w$  = The weight per unit area of the floor or roof in the span being tied to or across the wall, psf ( $N/m^2$ ).

$S$  = The spacing between ties, feet (m).

$\alpha_T$  = A coefficient with a value of 1,500 pounds per foot (2.25 kN/m) for masonry bearing wall structures and a value of 375 pounds per foot (0.6 kN/m) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

**1616.3.2.2 Transverse ties.** Transverse ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Transverse ties shall be placed not farther apart than the spacing of load-bearing walls. Transverse ties shall have minimum nominal tensile strength  $T_p$ , given by Equation 16-24. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

**1616.3.2.3 Perimeter ties.** Perimeter ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or

spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Ties around the perimeter of each floor and roof shall be located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the edge and shall provide a nominal strength in tension not less than  $T_p$ , given by Equation 16-25. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_p = 200w \leq \beta_T \quad (\text{Equation 16-25})$$

$$\text{For SI: } T_p = 90.7w \leq \beta_T$$

where:

$w$  = As defined in Section 1616.3.2.1.

$\beta_T$  = A coefficient with a value of 16,000 pounds (7200 kN) for structures with masonry bearing walls and a value of 4,000 pounds (1300 kN) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

**1616.3.2.4 Vertical ties.** Vertical ties shall consist of continuous or spliced reinforcing, continuous or spliced members, wall sheathing or other engineered systems. Vertical tension ties shall be provided in bearing walls and shall be continuous over the height of the building. The minimum nominal tensile strength for vertical ties within a bearing wall shall be equal to the weight of the wall within that story plus the weight of the diaphragm tributary to the wall in the story below. Not fewer than two ties shall be provided for each wall. The strength of each tie need not exceed 3,000 pounds per foot (450 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of masonry construction or 750 pounds per foot (140 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

## SECTION 1617 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNITY COLLEGES [DSA-SS/CC]

### 1617.1 Construction documents.

**1617.1.1** Additional requirements for construction documents are included in Sections 4-210 and 4-317 of the California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24, C.C.R.).

**1617.1.2 Connections.** Connections that resist design seismic forces shall be designed and detailed on the design drawings.

**1617.1.3 Construction procedures.** Where unusual erection or construction procedures are considered essential by the project structural engineer or architect in order to accomplish the intent of the design or influence the construction, such procedure shall be indicated on the plans or in the specifications.

### 1617.2 General design requirements.

#### 1617.2.1 Lateral load deflections.

**1617.2.1.1 Horizontal diaphragms.** The maximum span-depth ratio for any roof or floor diaphragm con-

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

sisting of steel and composite steel slab decking or concrete shall be based on test data and design calculations acceptable to the enforcement agency.

**1617.2.1.2 Veneers.** The deflection shall not exceed 1/600 for veneered walls, anchored veneers and adhered veneers over 1 inch (25 mm) thick, including the mortar backing.

**1617.2.1.3 Risk Category of buildings and other structures.** Risk Category IV includes structures as defined in the California Administrative Code, Section 4-207 and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.

**1617.2.1.4 Analysis.** Structural analysis shall explicitly include consideration of stiffness of diaphragm in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.3.1. A diaphragm is rigid for the purpose of distribution of story shear and torsional moment where so indicated in Section 12.3.1 of ASCE 7.

**1617.2.2 Structural walls.** For anchorage of concrete or masonry walls to roof and floor diaphragms, the out-of-plane strength design force shall not be less than 280 lb/linear ft (4.09 kN/m) of wall.

### 1617.3 Load combinations.

**1617.3.1 Stability.** When checking stability under the provisions of Section 1605.1.1 using allowable stress design, the factor of safety for soil bearing values shall not be less than the overstrength factor of the structures supported. Strength design for foundation geotechnical capacity shall be in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.13.5 for all strength design load combinations, except that Resistance Factor ( $\phi$ ) shall be permitted to be 1.0 for load combinations with overstrength factor. Allowable stress design for foundation geotechnical capacity shall be in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.13.6 for all allowable stress design load combinations, and shall be established to be consistent with strength design requirements in ASCE 7, Section 12.13.5.

**1617.3.2 Alternative allowable stress design load combinations.** Where the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2 are used, each load combination shall be investigated with one or more of the variable loads set to zero.

**1617.3.3 Modifications to load combinations in ICC 300.** Modify the text of ICC 300 as follows:

**1617.3.3.1 ICC 300, Section 303.5.2.** Modify Section 303.5.2 by adding Equation 3-5a as follows:

$$D + 0.4L + Z \quad (\text{Equation 3-5a})$$

**1617.3.3.2 ICC 300, Section 303.5.3.** Modify Section 303.5.3 as follows:

The uniform live load, L, used in Equation 3-2 and 3-4 may be taken as zero when evaluating elements supporting the handrail/guardrail provided those elements do not also support L.

**1617.4 Roof dead loads.** The design dead load shall provide for the weight of at least one additional roof covering in addition to other applicable loadings if the new roof covering is

permitted to be applied over the original roofing without its removal, in accordance with Section 1512.

### 1617.5 Live loads.

#### 1617.5.1 Modifications to Table 1607.1.

**1617.5.1.1 Item 4. Assembly areas.** The following minimum loads for stage accessories apply:

1. Gridirons and fly galleries: 75 pounds per square foot uniform live load.
2. Loft block wells: 250 pounds per lineal foot vertical load and lateral load.
3. Head block wells and sheave beams: 250 pounds per lineal foot vertical load and lateral load. Head block wells and sheave beams shall be designed for all tributary loft block well loads. Sheave blocks shall be designed with a safety factor of five.
4. Scenery beams where there is no gridiron: 300 pounds per lineal foot vertical load and lateral load.
5. Ceiling framing over stages shall be designed for a uniform live load of 20 pounds per square foot. For members supporting a tributary area of 200 square feet or more, this additional load may be reduced to 15 pounds per square foot (0.72 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

#### 1617.5.1.2 Reserved.

**1617.5.1.3 Item 4. Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands.** The minimum uniform live load for a press box floor or accessible roof with railing is 100 psf.

**1617.5.1.4 Item 37. Yards and terraces, pedestrians.** Item 37 applies to pedestrian bridges and walkways that are not subjected to uncontrolled vehicle access.

**1617.5.1.5 Item 38. Storage racks and wall-hung cabinets.** The minimum vertical design live load shall be as follows:

Paper media:

12-inch-deep (305 mm) shelf - 33 pounds per lineal foot (482 N/m)

15-inch-deep (381 mm) shelf - 41 pounds per lineal foot (598 N/m), or 33 pounds per cubic foot (5183 N/m<sup>3</sup>) per total volume of the rack or cabinet, whichever is less.

Film media:

18-inch-deep (457 mm) shelf - 100 pounds per lineal foot (1459 N/m), or

50 pounds per cubic foot (7853 N/m<sup>3</sup>) per total volume of the rack or cabinet, whichever is less.

Other media:

20 pounds per cubic foot (311 N/m<sup>3</sup>) or 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa), whichever is less, but not less than actual loads.

**1617.5.2 Uncovered open-frame roof structures.** Uncovered open-frame roof structures shall be designed for a

vertical live load of not less than 10 pounds per square foot ( $0.48 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) of the total area encompassed by the framework.

**1617.5.3 Seating for assembly uses.** Replace Section 1607.19 with the following:

Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall be designed for the loads specified in ICC 300 as modified by Section 1617.3.3 load combinations. Stadiums and arenas with fixed seats shall be designed for the horizontal sway loads in Section 1607.19.1.

**1617.6 Determination of snow loads.** The ground snow load or the design snow load for roofs shall conform with the adopted ordinance of the city, county, or city and county in which the project site is located, and shall be approved by DSA. See Section 106.1.2 for snow load posting requirements.

**1617.7 Wind loads.**

**1617.7.1 Story drift for wind loads.** The calculated story drift due to wind pressures with ultimate design wind speed,  $V_{ult}$ , shall not exceed 0.008 times the story height for buildings less than 65 feet (19 812 mm) in height or 0.007 times the story height for buildings 65 feet (19 812 mm) or greater in height.

**Exception:** This story drift limit need not be applied for single-story open structures in Risk Categories I and II.

**1617.8 Establishment of flood hazard areas.** Flood hazard maps shall include, at a minimum, areas of special flood hazard as identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency's Flood Insurance Study (FIS) adopted by the local authority having jurisdiction where the project is located, as amended or revised with the accompanying Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM) and Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM) and related supporting data along with any revisions thereto.

**1617.9 Earthquake loads.**

**1617.9.1 Modifications to Table 1613.2.3(1).** Replace Table 1613.2.3(1) with Table 1613A.2.3(1).

**1617.9.2 Modifications to Table 1613.2.3(2).** Replace Table 1613.2.3(2) with Table 1613A.2.3(2).

**1617.9.3 Seismic design category.** The seismic design category for a structure shall be determined in accordance with Section 1613.

**1617.9.4 Mapped acceleration parameters.** Seismic Design Category shall be determined in accordance with Section 1613.2.5.

**1617.9.5 Determination of seismic design category.** Structures not assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, in accordance with Section 1613.2, shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category D.

**1617.9.5.1 Alternative seismic design category determination.** The alternative Seismic Design Category

determination procedure of Section 1613.2.5.1 is not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**1617.9.5.2 Simplified design procedure.** The simplified design procedure of Section 1613.2.5.2 is not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**1617.9.6 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.** Ballasted, roof-mounted photovoltaic panel systems shall comply with ASCE 7, Section 13.6.12.

**1617.10 Tsunami loads.** The design and construction of Risk Category III or IV buildings and structures located in the ASCE Tsunami Design Zones defined in the ASCE Tsunami Design Geodatabase, or other data determined applicable by the enforcement agency, shall be in accordance with Section 1615.1 except as modified by this code. Tsunami Risk Category for community college buildings and structures shall be identified and submitted for acceptance by DSA. Determination of Tsunami Risk Category shall be proposed by the design professional in general responsible charge in coordination with the owner and local community based upon the relative importance of that facility to provide vital services, provide important functions and protect special populations. The determination of relative importance shall include consideration of a tsunami warning and evacuation plan and procedure when adopted by the local community.

**1617.11 Modifications to ASCE 7.** The text of ASCE 7 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1617.11.1 through 1617.11.24.

**1617.11.1 ASCE 7, Section 1.3.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 1.3 by adding Section 1.3.8 as follows:

**1.3.8 Structural design criteria.** Where design is based on ASCE 7, Chapters 16, 17, 18 or 31, the ground motion, wind tunnel design recommendations, analysis and design methods, material assumptions, testing requirements and acceptance criteria proposed by the engineer shall be submitted to the enforcement agency in the form of structural design criteria for approval.

Peer review requirements in Section 322 of the California Existing Buildings Code shall apply to design reviews required by ASCE 7 Chapters 17 and 18.

**1617.11.2 ASCE 7, Section 11.4.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 11.4 to include the following:

Seismic ground motion values shall include updated subsections in Supplement 3.

**1617.11.3 ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1.** Modify ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1 as follows:

**A. BEARING WALL SYSTEMS**

17. Light-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials—Not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**B. BUILDING FRAME SYSTEMS**

24. Light-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials—Not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

### C. MOMENT RESISTING FRAME SYSTEMS

12. Cold-formed steel — special bolted moment frame—*Not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.*

#### *Exceptions:*

1. Systems listed in this section can be used as an alternative system when pre-approved by the enforcement agency.
2. Rooftop or other supported structures not exceeding two stories in height and 10 percent of the total structure weight can use the systems in this section when designed as components per ASCE 7, Chapter 13.
3. Systems listed in this section can be used for seismically isolated buildings when permitted by ASCE 7, Section 17.2.5.4.

#### **1617.11.4 ASCE 7, Sections 12.2.3, 12.2.3.1 and 12.2.3.2.**

Modify ASCE 7, Sections 12.2.3, 12.2.3.1 and 12.2.3.2 as follows:

#### **1617.11.4.1 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3 with the following:

Where different seismic force-resisting systems are used in combinations to resist seismic forces in the same direction, other than those combinations considered as dual systems, the design shall comply with the requirements of this section. The most stringent applicable structural system limitations contained in Table 12.2-1 shall apply, except as otherwise permitted by this section.

#### **1617.11.4.2 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.1.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.1, Items 1 and 2 by the following:

The value of the response modification coefficient,  $R$ , used for design at any story shall not exceed the lowest value of  $R$  that is used in the same direction at any story above that story. Likewise, the deflection amplification factor,  $C_d$ , and the system over strength factor,  $\Omega_o$  used for the design at any story shall not be less than the largest value of these factors that are used in the same direction at any story above that story.

#### **1617.11.4.3 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.2 by modifying Item a and adding Items f, g and h, as follows:

- a. The stiffness of the lower portion shall be at least 10 times the stiffness of the upper portion. For purposes of determining this ratio, the base shear shall be computed and distributed vertically according to Section 12.8. Using these forces, the stiffness for each portion shall be computed as the ratio of the base shear for that portion to the elastic displacement,  $\delta_{xe}$  computed at the top of that portion, considering the portion fixed at its base. For the lower portion, the applied forces shall include the reactions from the upper portion, modified as required in Item d.

f. The structural height of the upper portion shall not exceed the height limits of Table 12.2-1 for the seismic force-resisting system used, where the height is measured from the base of the upper portion.

g. Where Horizontal Irregularity Type 4 or Vertical Irregularity Type 4 exists at the transition from the upper to the lower portion, the reactions from the upper portion shall be amplified in accordance with Sections 12.3.3.3, 12.10.1.1 and 12.10.3.3 as applicable, in addition to amplification required by Item d.

h. Where design of vertical elements of the upper portion is governed by special seismic load combinations, the special loads shall be considered in the design of the lower portions.

#### **1617.11.5 Reserved.**

**1617.11.6 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.5.6.1.** The exception in Item a is not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**1617.11.7 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.5.7.1.** The exception in Item a is not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**1617.11.8 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.5.7.2.** The exception in Item a is not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**1617.11.9 ASCE 7, Section 12.3.3.1.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.3.3.1 as follows:

#### **12.3.3.1 Prohibited horizontal and vertical irregularities for Seismic Design Categories D through F.**

Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F having horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b of Table 12.3-1 or vertical structural irregularities Type 1b, 5a or 5b of Table 12.3-2 shall not be permitted. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D having vertical irregularity Type 1b or 5b of Table 12.3-2 shall not be permitted.

#### *Exceptions:*

1. Structures with reinforced concrete or reinforced masonry shear wall systems and rigid or semi-rigid diaphragms, consisting of concrete slabs or concrete-filled metal deck having a span-to-depth ratio of 3 or less, having a horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b of Table 12.3-1 are permitted, provided that the maximum story drift in the direction of the irregularity, computed including the torsional amplification factor from Section 12.8.4.3, is less than 10 percent of the allowable story drift in ASCE 7, Table 12.12-1.
2. Structures having a horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b of Table 12.3-1 are permitted, provided a redundancy factor,  $\rho$ , of 1.3 as defined in ASCE 7, Section 12.3.4 is assigned to the seismic force-resisting system in both orthogonal directions and the structure is designed for one of the orthogonal procedures as defined in ASCE 7, Section 12.5.3.1.

**1617.11.10 ASCE 7, Section 12.7.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.7.2 by adding Item 6 to read as follows:

6. Where buildings provide lateral support for walls retaining earth, and the exterior grades on opposite sides of the building differ by more than 6 feet (1829 mm), the load combination of the seismic increment of earth pressure due to earthquake acting on the higher side, as determined by a Geotechnical engineer qualified in soils engineering, plus the difference in earth pressures shall be added to the lateral forces provided in this section.

**1617.11.11 Reserved.**

**1617.11.12 Reserved.**

**1617.11.13 ASCE 7, Section 12.13.1.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.13.1 by adding Section 12.13.1.1 as follows:

**12.13.1.1 Foundations and superstructure-to-foundation connections.** The foundation shall be capable of transmitting the design base shear and the overturning forces from the structure into the supporting soil. Stability against overturning and sliding shall be in accordance with Section 1605.1.1.

In addition, the foundation and the connection of the superstructure elements to the foundation shall have the strength to resist, in addition to gravity loads, the lesser of the following seismic loads:

1. The strength of the superstructure elements.
2. The maximum forces that can be delivered to the foundation in a fully yielded structural system.
3. Forces from the Load Combinations with overstrength factor in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.4.3.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where referenced standards specify the use of higher design loads.
2. When it can be demonstrated that inelastic deformation of the foundation and superstructure-to-foundation connection will not result in a weak story or cause collapse of the structure.
3. Where seismic force-resisting system consists of light-framed walls with shear panels, unless the reference standard specifies the use of higher design loads.

Where the computation of the seismic overturning moment is by the equivalent lateral-force method or the modal analysis method, reduction in overturning moment permitted by Section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7 may be used.

Where moment resistance is assumed at the base of the superstructure elements, the rotation and flexural deformation of the foundation as well as deformation of the superstructure-to-foundation connection shall be considered in the drift and deformation compatibility analyses.

**1617.11.14 ASCE 7, Section 12.13.9.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.13.9.2 by the following sentence added to the end of Item b as follows:

Seismic load effects determined in accordance with Section 12.4 need not be considered in this check.

**1617.11.15 ASCE 7, Section 13.1.4.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.1.4 by the following:

**13.1.4** The following nonstructural components and equipment shall be anchored in accordance with this section. Design and detailing shall be in accordance with Chapter 13 except as modified by this section.

1. **Fixed Equipment:** Equipment shall be anchored if it is directly attached to the building utility services such as electricity, gas or water. For the purposes of this requirement, "directly attached" shall include all electrical connections except plugs for 110/220-volt receptacles having a flexible cable/cord. Equipment that is connected to the building plumbing system with a shut-off valve in proximity to the equipment shall not be considered as directly attached provided the inside diameter of the pipe/tubing is less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
2. **Movable Equipment:** Equipment is subject to the same requirement as fixed equipment, but is permitted to be anchored by re-attachable anchors or restraints in a manner approved by the enforcement agency. Utilities and services at the equipment shall have flexible connections to allow for necessary movement.
3. **Mobile Equipment:** Equipment heavier than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) or that has a center of mass located 4 feet (1219 mm) or more above the adjacent floor or roof level that directly supports the equipment shall be restrained in a manner approved by the enforcement agency. Mobile equipment shall be restrained when not in use and is stored, unless the equipment is stored in a storage room that does not house hazardous materials or any facility systems or fixed equipment that can be affected by mobile equipment lacking restraint.
4. **Countertop Equipment:** Countertop equipment shall be subject to the same anchorage or restraint requirements for fixed or movable equipment, as applicable. Countertop equipment shall also be subject to the same requirements as mobile or other equipment if weight of equipment is greater than 100 pounds (45 kg) and has a center of mass located 4 feet (1219 mm) or more above the adjacent floor level or if equipment could fall and block a required means of egress.
5. **Other Equipment:** Equipment shall be anchored where any of the following apply:
  - a. Weight of equipment is greater than 100 pounds (45 kg) and essential to operations for emergency preparedness, communica-

tions and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response of state-owned essential services buildings as defined in the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1, CCR) Section 4-207 and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.

- b. Could fall and block a required means of egress.
- c. Weight of equipment is greater than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) or center of mass is located greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the finished floor or roof level that directly supports the component.
6. Equipment with hazardous contents.
7. Other architectural, mechanical and electrical components stated in Chapter 13.
8. Wall-, Roof- or Floor-Hung Equipment: Seismic design and seismic details shall be provided for wall-, roof- or floor-hung nonstructural components and equipment when the component weighs more than 20 pounds (9 kg).

**Exemptions:** The following nonstructural components are exempt from the requirements of ASCE 7, Chapter 13:

1. Furniture except storage cabinets as noted in Table 13.5-1.
2. Discrete architectural, mechanical and electrical components and fixed equipment that are positively attached to the structure, provided that none of the conditions in this section apply, and flexible connections are provided between the component and associated ductwork, piping and conduit where required.

**1617.11.16 ASCE 7, Section 13.5.6.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.5.6.2 by the following exception added to the end of Section 13.5.6.2.2 and by adding Section 13.5.6.2.3 as follows:

Exception to Section 13.5.8.1 shall not be used in accordance with ASTM E580 Section 5.5.

**13.5.6.2.3 Modification to ASTM E580.** Modify ASTM E580 by the following:

1. **Exitways.** Lay-in ceiling assemblies in exitways of hospitals and essential services buildings shall be installed with a main runner or cross runner surrounding all sides of each piece of tile, board or panel and each light fixture or grille. A cross runner that supports another cross runner shall be considered as a main runner for the purpose of structural classification. Splices or intersections of such runners shall be attached with through connectors such as pop rivets, screws, pins, plates with end tabs or other approved connectors. Lateral force diagonal bracing may be omitted in the short or transverse direction of exitways, not exceeding 8 feet wide, when perimeter support in

accordance with ASTM E580 Sections 5.2.2 and 5.2.3 is provided and the perimeter wall laterally supporting the ceiling in the short or transverse direction is designed to carry the ceiling lateral forces. The connections between the ceiling grid, wall angle and the wall shall be designed to resist the ceiling lateral forces.

2. **Corridors and lobbies.** Expansion joints shall be provided in the ceiling at intersections of corridors and at junctions of corridors and lobbies or other similar areas.
3. **Lay-in panels.** Metal panels and panels weighing more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  pounds per square foot ( $24 \text{ N/m}^2$ ) other than acoustical tiles shall be positively attached to the ceiling suspension runners.
4. **Lateral force bracing.** Lateral force bracing is required for all ceiling areas except that they shall be permitted to be omitted in rooms with floor areas up to 144 square feet when perimeter support in accordance with ASTM E580 Sections 5.2.2 and 5.2.3 are provided and perimeter walls are designed to carry the ceiling lateral forces. The connections between the ceiling grid, wall angle and the wall shall be designed to resist the ceiling lateral forces. Horizontal restraint point spacing shall be justified by analysis or test and shall not exceed a spacing of 12 feet by 12 feet. Bracing wires shall be secured with four tight twists in  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches, or an approved alternate connection.
5. Ceiling support and bracing wires shall be spaced a minimum of 6 inches from all pipes, ducts, conduits and equipment that are not braced for horizontal forces, unless approved otherwise by the building official.

**1617.11.17 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.5.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.5 as follows:

**13.6.5 Distribution systems: Conduit, cable tray and raceways.** Cable trays and raceways shall be designed for seismic forces and seismic relative displacements as required in Section 13.3. Conduit equal to or greater than 2.5 inches (64 mm) trade size and attached to panels, cabinets or other equipment subject to seismic relative displacement,  $D_{pp}$ , shall be provided with flexible connections or designed for seismic forces and seismic relative displacements as required in Section 13.3.

#### Exceptions:

1. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required for raceways where flexible connections or other assemblies are provided between the cable tray or raceway and associated components to accommodate the relative displacement, where the cable tray or raceway is positively attached to the structure, and where one of the following apply:
  - a. Trapeze assemblies with  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter rod

*hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the conduit, cable tray, or raceway support point to the connection at the supporting structure are used to support the cable tray or raceway, and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is 100 pounds (445 N) or less; or*

*b. The conduit, cable tray or raceway is supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, and each hanger in the raceway run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the conduit, cable tray or raceway support point connection to the supporting structure, and the total weight supported by any single rod is 50 pounds (220 N) or less.*

*2. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required for conduit, regardless of the value of  $I_p$ , where the conduit is less than 2.5 inches (64 mm) trade size.*

*Design for the displacements across seismic joints shall be required for conduit, cable trays and raceways with  $I_p = 1.5$  without consideration of conduit size.*

**1617.11.18 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.6.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.6 with the following:

**13.6.6 Distribution Systems: Duct Systems.** HVACR and other duct systems shall be designed for seismic forces and seismic relative displacements as required in Section 13.3.

**Exceptions:** The following exceptions pertain to ductwork not designed to carry toxic, highly toxic or flammable gases or not used for smoke control:

*1. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required for duct systems where flexible connections or other assemblies are provided to accommodate the relative displacement between the duct system and associated components, the duct system is positively attached to the structure, and where one of the following apply:*

*a. Trapeze assemblies with  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the duct support point to the connection at the supporting structure are used to support duct, and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is less than 10 lb/ft (146 N/m) and 100 pounds or less; or*

*b. The duct is supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, and each hanger in the duct run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the duct support point to the connection at the supporting structure,*

*and the total weight supported by any single rod is 50 pounds (220 N) or less.*

*2. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required where provisions are made to avoid impact with other ducts or mechanical components or to protect the ducts in the event of such impact, the distribution system is positively attached to the structure; and HVACR ducts have a cross-sectional area of less than 6 square feet ( $0.557 \text{ m}^2$ ) and weigh 20 lb/ft (292 N/m) or less.*

*Components that are installed in line with the duct system and have an operating weight greater than 75 pounds (334 N), such as fans, terminal units, heat exchangers and humidifiers, shall be supported and laterally braced independent of the duct system, and such braces shall meet the force requirements of Section 13.3.1. Components that are installed in line with the duct system, have an operating weight of 75 pounds (334 N) or less, such as small terminal units, dampers, louvers and diffusers, and are otherwise not independently braced shall be positively attached with mechanical fasteners to the rigid duct on both sides. Piping and conduit attached to in-line equipment shall be provided with adequate flexibility to accommodate the seismic relative displacements of Section 13.3.2.*

**1617.11.19 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.7.3.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.7.3 with the following:

**13.6.7.3 Additional provisions for piping and tubing systems.**

*A) Design for the seismic forces of Section 13.3 shall not be required for piping systems where flexible connections, expansion loops or other assemblies are provided to accommodate the relative displacement between component and piping, where the piping system is positively attached to the structure, and where any of the following conditions apply:*

*1. Trapeze assemblies are supported by  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13-mm) diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the pipe support point to the connection at the supporting structure, and no single pipe exceeds the diameter limits set forth in item 2b or 2 inches (50 mm) where  $I_p$  is greater than 1.0 and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is 100 pounds (445 N) or less; or*

*2. Piping that has an  $R_p$  in Table 13.6-1 of 4.5 or greater is either supported by rod hangers and provisions are made to avoid impact with other structural or nonstructural components or to protect the piping in the event of such impact, or pipes with  $I_p = 1.0$  are supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in*

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

diameter, where each hanger in the pipe run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the pipe support point to the connection at the supporting structure; and the total weight supported by any single hanger is 50 pounds (220 N) or less. In addition, the following limitations on the size of piping shall be observed:

- a. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F where  $I_p$  is greater than 1.0, the nominal pipe size shall be 1 inch (25 mm) or less.
  - b. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F where  $I_p = 1.0$ , the nominal pipe size shall be 3 inches (80 mm) or less.
  3. Pneumatic tube systems supported with trapeze assemblies using  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (10 mm) diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the tube support point to the connection at the supporting structure and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is 100 pounds (445 N) or less.
  4. Pneumatic tube systems supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, and each hanger in the run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the tube support point to the connection at the supporting structure, and the total weight supported by any single rod is 50 pounds (220 N) or less.
- B) Flexible connections in piping required in Section 13.6.7.3 are not required where pipe is rigidly attached to the same floor or wall that provides vertical and lateral support for the equipment, or to a fixture.
- C) Flexible connections in piping are required at seismic separation joints and shall be detailed to accommodate the seismic relative displacements at connections.

**1617.11.20 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1 by adding Section 13.6.11.1.1, as follows:

**13.6.11.1.1 Elevators guide rail support.** The design of guide rail support bracket fastenings and the supporting structural framing shall use the weight of the counterweight or maximum weight of the car plus not more than 40 percent of its rated load. The seismic forces shall be assumed to be distributed one-third to the top guiding members and two-thirds to the bottom guiding members of cars and counterweights, unless other substantiating data are provided. In addition to the requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1, the minimum seismic forces shall be 0.5g allowable stress design load acting in any horizontal direction.

**1617.11.21 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.4.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.4, as follows:

**13.6.11.4 Retainer plates.** Retainer plates are required at the top and bottom of the car and counterweight, except where safety devices acceptable to the enforcement agency are provided which meet all requirements of the retainer plates, including full engagement of the machined portion of the rail. The design of the car, cab stabilizers, counterweight guide rails and counterweight frames for seismic forces shall be based on the following requirements:

1. The seismic force shall be computed per the requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1. The minimum horizontal acceleration shall be 0.5g allowable stress design load for all buildings.
2.  $W_p$  shall equal the weight of the counterweight or the maximum weight of the car plus not less than 40 percent of its rated load.
3. With the car or counterweight located in the most adverse position, the stress in the rail shall not exceed the limitations specified in these regulations, nor shall the deflection of the rail relative to its supports exceed the deflection listed below.

||

&lt;

RAIL SIZE (weight per foot of length, pounds)	WIDTH OF MACHINED SURFACE (inches)	ALLOWABLE RAIL DEFLECTION (inches)
8	$1\frac{1}{4}$	0.20
11	$1\frac{1}{2}$	0.30
12	$1\frac{3}{4}$	0.40
15	$1\frac{31}{32}$	0.50
$18\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{31}{32}$	0.50
$22\frac{1}{2}$	2	0.50
30	$2\frac{1}{4}$	0.50

For SI: 1 inch = 25 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

Note: Deflection limitations are given to maintain a consistent factor of safety against disengagement of retainer plates from the guide rails during an earthquake.

4. Where guide rails are continuous over supports and rail joints are within 2 feet (610 mm) of their supporting brackets, a simple span may be assumed.
5. The use of spreader brackets is allowed.
6. Cab stabilizers and counterweight frames shall be designed to withstand computed lateral load with a minimum horizontal acceleration of 0.5g allowable stress design load.

| L

**1617.11.22 Reserved.**

**1617.11.23 Reserved.**

**1617.11.24 ASCE 7, Section 17.2.4.7.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 17.2.4.7 by adding the following to the end of the section:

The effects of uplift shall be explicitly accounted for in the analysis and in the testing of the isolator units.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 16A – STRUCTURAL DESIGN

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter							X			X				X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X					X		X								
Chapter / Section																						
1607A.9.2							X															
1617A.1.18												X		X								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

|||



# CHAPTER 16A

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

### SECTION 1601A GENERAL

**1601A.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the structural design of buildings, structures and portions thereof regulated by this code.

**1601A.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 16A is as follows:*

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (DSA-SS), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1. These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*
2. *Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 and 1.10.4, regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals and correctional treatment centers.*

**1601A.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. *Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety:  
[DSA-SS] – For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.*
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:  
[OSHPD 1] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.  
[OSHPD 4] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.*

**1601A.2 Enforcement agency approval.** In addition to the requirements of the California Administrative Code and the California Building Code, any aspect of project design, construction, quality assurance or quality control programs for which this code requires approval by the Registered Design Professional (RDP), are also subject to approval by the enforcement agency.

### SECTION 1602A NOTATIONS

**1602A.1 Notations.** The following notations are used in this chapter:

$D$  = Dead load.

$D_i$  = Weight of ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

$E$  = Combined effect of horizontal and vertical earthquake induced forces as defined in Section 12.4 of ASCE 7.

$F$  = Load due to fluids with well-defined pressures and maximum heights.

$F_a$  = Flood load in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7.

$H$  = Load due to lateral earth pressures, ground water pressure or pressure of bulk materials.

$L$  = Live load.

$L_r$  = Roof live load.

$R$  = Rain load.

$S$  = Snow load.

$T$  = Cumulative effects of self-straining load forces and effects.

$V_{asd}$  = Allowable stress design wind speed, miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) where applicable.

$V$  = Basic design wind speeds, miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) determined from Figures 1609A.3(1) through 1609A.3(12) or ASCE 7.

$W$  = Load due to wind pressure.

$W_i$  = Wind-on-ice in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

### SECTION 1603A CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS

**1603A.1 General.** Construction documents shall show the size, section and relative locations of structural members with floor levels, column centers and offsets dimensioned. The design loads and other information pertinent to the structural design required by Sections 1603A.1.1 through 1603A.1.10 shall be indicated on the construction documents.

**Exception:** Construction documents for buildings constructed in accordance with the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308 shall indicate the following structural design information:

1. Floor and roof dead and live loads.
2. Ground snow load,  $p_g$ .
3. Basic design wind speed,  $V$ , miles per hour (mph) (km/hr) and allowable stress design wind speed,  $V_{asd}$ , as determined in accordance with Section 1609A.3.1 and wind exposure.
4. Seismic design category and site class.
5. Flood design data, if located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612A.3.
6. Design load-bearing values of soils.
7. Rain load data.

**[DSA-SS]** Additional requirements are included in Section 4-210 and 4-317 of the California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24, C.C.R.).

**[OSHPD 1]** Additional requirements are included in Section 7-115 and 7-125 of the California Administrative Code.

**1603A.1.1 Floor live load.** The uniformly distributed, concentrated and impact floor live load used in the design shall be indicated for floor areas. Use of live load reduction in accordance with Section 1607A.12 shall be indicated for each type of live load used in the design.

**1603A.1.2 Roof live load.** The roof live load used in the design shall be indicated for roof areas (Section 1607A.14).

**1603A.1.3 Roof snow load data.** The ground snow load,  $p_g$ , shall be indicated. In areas where the ground snow load,  $p_g$ , exceeds 10 pounds per square foot (psf) (0.479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>), the following additional information shall also be provided, regardless of whether snow loads govern the design of the roof:

1. Flat-roof snow load,  $p_f$
2. Snow exposure factor,  $C_e$
3. Snow load importance factor,  $I_s$ .
4. Thermal factor,  $C_r$
5. Slope factor(s),  $C_s$ .
6. Drift surcharge load(s),  $p_d$ , where the sum of  $p_d$  and  $p_f$  exceeds 20 psf (0.96 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).
7. Width of snow drift(s),  $w$ .

**1603A.1.4 Wind design data.** The following information related to wind loads shall be shown, regardless of whether wind loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:

1. Basic design wind speed,  $V$ , miles per hour and allowable stress design wind speed,  $V_{asa}$ , as determined in accordance with Section 1609A.3.1.
2. Risk category.
3. Wind exposure. Applicable wind direction if more than one wind exposure is utilized.
4. Applicable internal pressure coefficient.
5. Design wind pressures and their applicable zones with dimensions to be used for exterior component and cladding materials not specifically designed by the registered design professional responsible for the design of the structure, pounds per square foot (kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1603A.1.5 Earthquake design data.** The following information related to seismic loads shall be shown, regardless of whether seismic loads govern the design of the lateral force-resisting system of the structure:

1. Risk category.
2. Seismic importance factor,  $I_e$ .
3. Mapped spectral response acceleration parameters,  $S_s$  and  $S_1$ .
4. Site class.
5. Design spectral response acceleration parameters,  $S_{Ds}$  and  $S_{D1}$ .
6. Seismic design category.
7. Basic seismic force-resisting system(s).

8. Design base shear(s).
9. Seismic response coefficient(s),  $CS$ .
10. Response modification coefficient(s),  $R$ .
11. Analysis procedure used.
12. Applicable horizontal structural irregularities.
13. Applicable vertical structural irregularities.
14. Location of base as defined in ASCE 7, Section 11.2.

**1603A.1.5.1 Connections.** Connections that resist design seismic forces shall be designed and detailed on the design drawings.

**1603A.1.6 Geotechnical information.** The design load-bearing values of soils shall be shown on the construction documents.

**1603A.1.7 Flood design data.** For buildings located in whole or in part in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612A.3, the documentation pertaining to design, if required in Section 1612A.4, shall be included and the following information, referenced to the datum on the community's Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM), shall be shown, regardless of whether flood loads govern the design of the building:

1. Flood design class assigned according to ASCE 24.
2. In flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones, the elevation of the proposed lowest floor, including the basement.
3. In flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones, the elevation to which any nonresidential building will be dry floodproofed.
4. In coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones, the proposed elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member of the lowest floor, including the basement.

**1603A.1.8 Special loads.** Special loads that are applicable to the design of the building, structure or portions thereof, including but not limited to the loads of machinery or equipment, and that are greater than specified floor and roof loads shall be specified by their descriptions and locations.

**1603A.1.8.1 Photovoltaic panel systems.** The dead load of rooftop-mounted photovoltaic panel systems, including rack support systems, shall be indicated on the construction documents.

**1603A.1.9 Roof rain load data.** Rain intensity,  $i$  (in/hr) (cm/hr), shall be shown regardless of whether rain loads govern the design.

**1603A.1.10 Construction procedures.** Where unusual erection or construction procedures are considered essential by the Registered Design Professional (RDP) in order to accomplish the intent of the design or influence the construction, such procedure shall be indicated on the construction documents.

**1603A.2 Site data reports.** Geotechnical and geohazard reports for review by the enforcement agency shall be accompanied by a description of the project prepared by the regis-

tered design professional (RDP) in responsible charge, which shall include the following:

1. Type of service such as general acute care facility, central utility plants, K-12 school, community college, essential services, etc.
2. Construction materials used for the project such as steel, concrete, masonry, wood, etc.
3. Type of construction project such as new, addition, alteration, repair, etc.
4. For existing buildings, extent of construction such as incidental, minor, major and/or voluntary seismic improvements as defined in Section 318, Part 10, Title 24, CCR [DSA-SS] Section 202 and California Existing Building Code Section 202A [OSHPD 1].
5. Seismic force resisting system used for each structure in the project.
6. Foundation system that will be used for each structure in the project such as spread footing, drilled piers, etc.
7. Analysis procedure used and basis of design such as ASCE 7 Equivalent Lateral Force Procedure, ASCE 41 Nonlinear Dynamic Procedure, etc.
8. Building characteristics such as number of stories above and below grade, foot print area at grade, grade slope on site, etc.
9. Special features such as requirement for shoring, underpinning, retaining walls, etc.

**1603A.3 Structural design basis and calculations.** The application for the approval of construction documents that involves structural elements or components shall be accompanied by complete and accurate structural design computations, which shall comply with requirements prescribed by the enforcement agency:

1. The computations shall be preceded by a detailed index.
2. The computations including each major subsection shall be prefaced by a statement clearly and concisely outlining the basis for the structural design and indicating the manner in which the structure will resist the vertical loads and lateral forces.
3. The computations shall be sufficiently complete to the extent that calculations for the individual structural members and connections can be readily interpreted.

## SECTION 1604A GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

**1604A.1 General.** Building, structures and parts thereof shall be designed and constructed in accordance with strength design, load and resistance factor design, allowable stress design, empirical design or conventional construction methods, as permitted by the applicable material chapters and referenced standards.

**1604A.2 Strength.** Buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the

factored loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate strength limit states for the materials of construction. Alternatively, buildings and other structures, and parts thereof, shall be designed and constructed to support safely the nominal loads in load combinations defined in this code without exceeding the appropriate specified allowable stresses for the materials of construction.

Loads and forces for occupancies or uses not covered in this chapter shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

**1604A.3 Serviceability.** Structural systems and members thereof shall be designed to have adequate stiffness to limit deflections as indicated in Table 1604A.3.

**1604A.3.1 Deflections.** The deflections of structural members shall not exceed the more restrictive of the limitations of Sections 1604A.3.2 through 1604A.3.9 or that permitted by Table 1604A.3.

**1604A.3.2 Reinforced concrete.** The deflection of reinforced concrete structural members shall not exceed that permitted by ACI 318.

**1604A.3.3 Steel.** The deflection of steel structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AISC 360, AISI S100, ASCE 8, SJI 100 or SJI 200, as applicable.

**1604A.3.4 Masonry.** The deflection of masonry structural members shall not exceed that permitted by TMS 402.

**1604A.3.5 Aluminum.** The deflection of aluminum structural members shall not exceed that permitted by AA ADM.

**1604A.3.6 Limits.** The deflection limits of Section 1604A.3.1 shall be used unless more restrictive deflection limits are required by a referenced standard for the element or finish material.

**1604A.3.7 Framing supporting glass.** The deflection of framing members supporting glass subjected to 0.6 times the “component and cladding” wind loads shall not exceed either of the following:

1.  $\frac{1}{175}$  of the length of span of the framing member, for framing members having a length not more than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm).
2.  $\frac{1}{240}$  of the length of span of the framing member +  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm), for framing members having a length greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm).

**1604A.3.8 Horizontal diaphragms.** The maximum span-depth ratio for any roof or floor diaphragm consisting of steel and composite steel slab decking shall not exceed those given in Table 1604A.4, unless test data and design calculations acceptable to the enforcement agency are submitted and approved for the use of other span-depth ratios. Concrete diaphragms shall not exceed the span depth ratios for the equivalent composite steel-slab diaphragm in Table 1604A.4.

**1604A.3.9 Deflections.** Deflection criteria for materials not specified shall be developed by the project architect or structural engineer in a manner consistent with the provisions of this section and approved by the enforcement agency.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1604A.3**  
**DEFLECTION LIMITS<sup>a, b, c, h, i</sup>**

CONSTRUCTION	L or L <sub>r</sub>	E, S or W <sup>f</sup>	D + (L or L <sub>r</sub> ) <sup>d, g</sup>
Roof members: <sup>e</sup>			
Supporting plaster or stucco ceiling	l/360	l/360	l/240
Supporting nonplaster ceiling	l/240	l/240	l/180
Not supporting ceiling	l/180	l/180	l/120
Floor members	l/360	—	l/240
Exterior walls:			
With plaster or stucco finishes	—	l/360	—
With other brittle finishes	—	l/240	—
With flexible finishes	—	l/120	—
Veneered walls, anchored veneers and adhered veneers over 1 inch (25 mm) thick, including the mortar backing	—	l/600	—
Interior partitions: <sup>b</sup>			
With plaster or stucco finishes	l/360	—	—
With other brittle finishes	l/240	—	—
With flexible finishes	l/120	—	—
Farm buildings	—	—	l/180
Greenhouses	—	—	l/120

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. For structural roofing and siding made of formed metal sheets, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/60. For secondary roof structural members supporting formed metal roofing, the live load deflection shall not exceed l/150. For secondary wall members supporting formed metal siding, the design wind load deflection shall not exceed l/90. For roofs, this exception only applies when the metal sheets have no roof covering.
- b. Flexible, folding and portable partitions are not governed by the provisions of this section. The deflection criterion for interior partitions is based on the horizontal load defined in Section 1607A.16.
- c. See Section 2403 for glass supports.
- d. The deflection limit for the D + (L + L<sub>r</sub>) load combination only applies to the deflection due to the creep component of long-term dead load deflection plus the short-term live load deflection. For lumber, structural glued laminated timber, prefabricated wood I-joists and structural composite lumber members that are dry at time of installation and used under dry conditions in accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS, the creep component of the long-term deflection shall be permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from 0.5D. For lumber and glued laminated timber members installed or used at all other moisture conditions or cross laminated timber and wood structural panels that are dry at time of installation and used under dry conditions in accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS, the creep component of the long-term deflection is permitted to be estimated as the immediate dead load deflection resulting from D. The value of 0.5D shall not be used in combination with ANSI/AWC NDS provisions for long-term loading.
- e. The preceding deflections do not ensure against ponding. Roofs that do not have sufficient slope or camber to ensure adequate drainage shall be investigated for ponding. See Chapter 8 of ASCE 7.
- f. The wind load shall be permitted to be taken as 0.42 times the “component and cladding” loads or directly calculated using the 10-year mean return interval wind speed for the purpose of determining deflection limits in Table 1604A.3. Where framing members support glass, the deflection limit therein shall not exceed that specified in Section 1604A.3.7.
- g. For steel structural members, the deflection due to creep component of long-term dead load shall be permitted to be taken as zero.
- h. For aluminum structural members or aluminum panels used in skylights and sloped glazing framing, roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers not supporting edge of glass or aluminum sandwich panels, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/60. For continuous aluminum structural members supporting edge of glass, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/175 for each glass lite or l/60 for the entire length of the member, whichever is more stringent. For aluminum sandwich panels used in roofs or walls of sunroom additions or patio covers, the total load deflection shall not exceed l/120.
- i. l = Length of the member between supports. For cantilever members, l shall be taken as twice the length of the cantilever.

**1604A.4 Analysis.** Load effects on structural members and their connections shall be determined by methods of structural analysis that take into account equilibrium, general stability, geometric compatibility and both short- and long-term material properties.

Members that tend to accumulate residual deformations under repeated service loads shall have included in their analysis the effects of added deformations expected to occur during their service life.

Any system or method of construction to be used shall be based on a rational analysis in accordance with well-established principles of mechanics. Such analysis shall result in a system that provides a complete load path capable of transferring loads from their point of origin to the load-resisting elements.

The total lateral force shall be distributed to the various vertical elements of the lateral force-resisting system in proportion to their rigidities, considering the rigidity of the horizontal bracing system or diaphragm. Rigid elements assumed not to be a part of the lateral force-resisting system are permitted to be incorporated into buildings provided that their effect on the action of the system is considered and provided for in the design. *Structural analysis shall explicitly include consideration of stiffness of diaphragms in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.3.1.* A diaphragm is rigid for the purpose of distribution of story shear and torsional moment when the lateral deformation of the diaphragm is less than or equal to two times the average story drift. Where required by ASCE 7, provisions shall be made for the increased forces induced on

resisting elements of the structural system resulting from torsion due to eccentricity between the center of application of the lateral forces and the center of rigidity of the lateral force-resisting system.

Every structure shall be designed to resist the effects caused by the forces specified in this chapter, including overturning, uplift and sliding. Where sliding is used to isolate the elements, the effects of friction between sliding elements shall be included as a force.

**1604A.5 Risk category.** Each building and structure shall be assigned a risk category in accordance with Table 1604A.5. Where a referenced standard specifies an occupancy category, the risk category shall not be taken as lower than the occupancy category specified therein. Where a referenced standard specifies that the assignment of a risk category be in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1, Table 1604A.5 shall be used in lieu of ASCE 7, Table 1.5-1.

**Exception:** The assignment of buildings and structures to Tsunami Risk Categories III and IV is permitted to be in accordance with Section 6.4 of ASCE 7.

**1604A.5.1 Multiple occupancies.** Where a building or structure is occupied by two or more occupancies not included in the same risk category, it shall be assigned the classification of the highest risk category corresponding to the various occupancies. Where buildings or structures have two or more portions that are structurally separated, each portion shall be separately classified. Where a separated portion of a building or structure provides required access to, required egress from or shares life safety components with another portion having a higher risk

category, both portions shall be assigned to the higher risk category.

**Exception:** Where a storm shelter designed and constructed in accordance with ICC 500 is provided in a building, structure or portion thereof normally occupied for other purposes, the risk category for the normal occupancy of the building shall apply unless the storm shelter is a designated emergency shelter in accordance with Table 1604A.5.

**1604A.6 In-situ load tests.** The building official is authorized to require an engineering analysis or a load test, or both, of any construction whenever there is reason to question the safety of the construction for the intended occupancy. Engineering analysis and load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708A.

**1604A.7 Preconstruction load tests.** Materials and methods of construction that are not capable of being designed by approved engineering analysis or that do not comply with the applicable referenced standards, or alternative test procedures in accordance with Section 1707A, shall be load tested in accordance with Section 1709A.

**1604A.8 Anchorage.** Buildings and other structures, and portions thereof, shall be provided with anchorage in accordance with Sections 1604A.8.1 through 1604A.8.3, as applicable.

**1604A.8.1 General.** Anchorage of the roof to walls and columns, and of walls and columns to foundations, shall be provided to resist the uplift and sliding forces that result from the application of the prescribed loads.

**TABLE 1604A.4  
MAXIMUM HORIZONTAL DIAPHRAGM SPAN AND SPAN-DEPTH RATIOS<sup>1, 3, 4</sup>**

FLEXIBILITY FACTOR(F) <sup>2</sup>	MAXIMUM DIAPHRAGM SPAN FOR MASONRY OR CONCRETE WALLS (feet)	DIAPHRAGM SPAN-DEPTH LIMITATION			
		Rotation (torsion) Not Considered in Diaphragm		Rotation (torsion) Considered in Diaphragm	
		Masonry or Concrete Walls	Flexible Walls	Masonry or Concrete Walls	Flexible Walls
More than 150	Not to be used	Not to be used	2:1	Not to be used	1½:1
70–150	200	2:1 or as required for deflection	3:1	Not to be used	2:1
10–70	400	2½:1 or as required for deflection	4:1	As required for deflection	2½:1
1–10	No limitation	3:1 or as required for deflection	5:1	As required for deflection	3:1
Less than 1	No limitation	As required for deflection	No limitation	As required for deflection	3½:1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 plf = 14.594 N/m, 1 psi = 6894 Pa

1. Diaphragms shall satisfy span-depth limitations based on flexibility.

2. Flexibility factor (F) is the average deflection in micro inches ( $10^6$ ) or  $\mu\text{m}$  of the diaphragm web per foot (m) of span stressed with a shear of 1 pound per foot (N/m).

3. The total deflection  $\Delta$  of the diaphragm may be computed from the equation:  $\Delta = \Delta_f + \Delta_w$ .  
Where:

$\Delta_f$  = Flexural deflection of the diaphragm determined in the same manner as the deflection of beams. The flexural stiffness of the web of diaphragms consisting of bare steel decking shall be neglected.

$\Delta_w$  = Web deflection of the diaphragm may be determined solving the following equation:

$$F = \frac{\Delta_w x 10^6}{q_{ave} L}$$

Where:

$L$  = Distance in feet (m) between the vertical resisting element (such as a shear wall) and the point to which the deflection is to be determined.

$q_{ave}$  = Average shear in the diaphragm in pounds per foot (N/m) over length  $L$ .

4. When applying these limitations to cantilevered diaphragms, the allowable span-depth ratio will be half of that shown.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1604A.5**  
**RISK CATEGORY OF BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

RISK CATEGORY	NATURE OF OCCUPANCY
I	Buildings and other structures that represent a low hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Agricultural facilities.</li> <li>• Certain temporary facilities.</li> <li>• Minor storage facilities.</li> </ul>
II	Buildings and other structures except those listed in Risk Categories I, III and IV.
III	Buildings and other structures that represent a substantial hazard to human life in the event of failure, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Buildings and other structures whose primary occupancy is public assembly with an occupant load greater than 300.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing one or more public assembly spaces, each having an occupant load greater than 300 and a cumulative occupant load of these public assembly spaces of greater than 2,500.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing Group E or Group I-4 occupancies or combination therof, with an occupant load greater than 250.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing educational occupancies for students above the 12th grade with an occupant load greater than 500.</li> <li>• Group I-2, Condition 1 occupancies with 50 or more care recipients.</li> <li>• Group I-2, Condition 2 occupancies not having emergency surgery or emergency treatment facilities.</li> <li>• Group I-3 occupancies.</li> <li>• Any other occupancy with an occupant load greater than 5,000.<sup>a</sup></li> <li>• Power-generating stations, water treatment facilities for potable water, wastewater treatment facilities and other public utility facilities not included in Risk Category IV.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures not included in Risk Category IV containing quantities of toxic or explosive materials that:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(1) or 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the <i>California Fire Code</i>; and</li> <li>• Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.<sup>b</sup></li> </ul> </li> </ul>
IV	Buildings and other structures designated as essential facilities, including but not limited to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>[OSHPD 1 &amp; 4] General Acute-care Hospital Buildings, General Acute-care Hospital Buildings providing only acute medical rehabilitation center services, and Correctional Treatment Center Buildings and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.</i></li> <li>• Ambulatory care facilities having emergency surgery or emergency treatment facilities.</li> <li>• Fire, rescue, ambulance and police stations and emergency vehicle garages</li> <li>• Designated earthquake, hurricane or other emergency shelters.</li> <li>• Designated emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers and other facilities required for emergency response. <i>[DSA-SS]</i> as defined in the <i>California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1, CCR)</i> Section 4-207 and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.</li> <li>• Power-generating stations and other public utility facilities required as emergency backup facilities for Risk Category IV structures.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures containing quantities of highly toxic materials that:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exceed maximum allowable quantities per control area as given in Table 307.1(2) or per outdoor control area in accordance with the <i>California Fire Code</i>; and</li> <li>• Are sufficient to pose a threat to the public if released.<sup>b</sup></li> </ul> </li> <li>• Aviation control towers, air traffic control centers and emergency aircraft hangars.</li> <li>• Buildings and other structures having critical national defense functions.</li> <li>• Water storage facilities and pump structures required to maintain water pressure for fire suppression.</li> </ul>

a. For purposes of occupant load calculation, occupancies required by Table 1004.5 to use gross floor area calculations shall be permitted to use net floor areas to determine the total occupant load.

b. Where approved by the building official, the classification of buildings and other structures as Risk Category III or IV based on their quantities of toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is permitted to be reduced to Risk Category II, provided that it can be demonstrated by a hazard assessment in accordance with Section 1.5.3 of ASCE 7 that a release of the toxic, highly toxic or explosive materials is not sufficient to pose a threat to the public.

**1604A.8.2 Structural walls.** Walls that provide vertical load-bearing resistance or lateral shear resistance for a portion of the structure shall be anchored to the roof and to all floors and members that provide lateral support for the wall or that are supported by the wall. The connections shall be capable of resisting the horizontal forces specified in Section 1.4.4 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A and to Section 12.11 of ASCE 7 for walls of structures assigned to all other seismic design categories. *For anchorage of concrete or masonry walls to roof and floor diaphragms, the out-of-plane strength design force shall not be less than 280 lb/linear ft (4.09 kN/m) of wall.* Required anchors in masonry walls of hollow units or cavity walls shall be embedded in a reinforced grouted structural element of the wall. See Sections 1609 for wind design requirements and 1613A for earthquake design requirements.

**1604A.8.3 Decks.** Where supported by attachment to an exterior wall, decks shall be positively anchored to the primary structure and designed for both vertical and lateral loads as applicable. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by the use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal. Where positive connection to the primary building structure cannot be verified during inspection, decks shall be self-supporting. Connections of decks with cantilevered framing members to exterior walls or other framing members shall be designed for both of the following:

1. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607A.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608A, in accordance with Section 1605A, acting on all portions of the deck.
2. The reactions resulting from the dead load and live load specified in Table 1607A.1, or the snow load specified in Section 1608A, in accordance with Section 1605A, acting on the cantilevered portion of the deck, and no live load or snow load on the remaining portion of the deck.

**1604A.9 Wind and seismic detailing.** Lateral force-resisting systems shall meet seismic detailing requirements and limitations prescribed in this code and ASCE 7, Chapters 11, 12, 13, 15, 17 and 18 as applicable, even where wind load effects are greater than seismic load effects.

**Exception:** References within ASCE 7 to Chapter 14 shall not apply, except as specifically required herein.

**1604A.10 Loads on storm shelters.** Loads and load combinations on storm shelters shall be determined in accordance with ICC 500.

## SECTION 1605A LOAD COMBINATIONS

**1605A.1 General.** Buildings and other structures and portions thereof shall be designed to resist the strength load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3, the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section

2.4, or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605A.2.

### Exceptions:

1. The modifications to load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3, ASCE 7, Section 2.4, and Section 1605A.2 specified in ASCE 7, Chapters 18 and 19 shall apply.
2. Where the allowable stress design load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.4 are used, flat roof snow loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) and roof live loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or less need not be combined with seismic load. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.
3. Where the allowable stress design load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.4 are used, crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live loads or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind loads.

**1605A.1.1 Stability.** Regardless of which load combinations are used to design for strength, where overall structure stability (such as stability against overturning, sliding, or buoyancy) is being verified, use of the load combinations specified in Section 2.3 or 2.4 of ASCE 7, and in Section 1605A.2 shall be permitted. Where the load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3 are used, strength reduction factors applicable to soil resistance shall be provided by a registered design professional. The stability of retaining walls shall be verified in accordance with Section 1807A.2.3. *When using allowable stress design, factor of safety for soil bearing values shall not be less than the overstrength factor of the structures supported. Strength design for foundation geotechnical capacity shall be in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.13.5 for all strength design load combinations, except that Resistance Factor ( $\phi$ ) shall be permitted to be 1.0 for load combinations with overstrength factor. Allowable stress design for foundation geotechnical capacity shall be in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.13.6 for all allowable stress design load combinations, and shall be established to be consistent with strength design requirements in ASCE 7, Section 12.13.5.*

**1605A.2 Alternative allowable stress design load combinations.** In lieu of the load combinations in ASCE 7, Section 2.4, structures and portions thereof shall be permitted to be designed for the most critical effects resulting from the following combinations. Where using these alternative allowable stress load combinations that include wind or seismic loads, allowable stresses are permitted to be increased or load combinations reduced where permitted by the material chapter of this code or the referenced standards. For load combinations that include the counteracting effects of dead and wind loads, only two-thirds of the minimum dead load likely to be in place during a design wind event shall be used. Where using these alternative load combinations to evaluate sliding, overturning and soil bearing at the soil-structure interface, the reduction of

foundation overturning from Section 12.13.4 in ASCE 7 shall not be used. Where using these alternative basic load combinations for proportioning foundations for loadings, which include seismic loads, the vertical seismic load effect,  $E_v$ , in Equation 12.4-4 of ASCE 7 is permitted to be taken equal to zero. Where required by ASCE 7, Chapters 12, 13 and 15, the load combinations including overstrength of ASCE 7, Section 2.3.6 shall be used. *Each load combination shall be investigated with one or more of the variable loads set to zero.*

$$D + L + (L_v \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) \quad (\text{Equation 16A-1})$$

$$D + L + 0.6W \quad (\text{Equation 16A-2})$$

$$D + L + 0.6W + S/2 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-3})$$

$$D + L + S + 0.6W/2 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-4})$$

$$D + L + S + E/1.4 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-5})$$

$$0.9D + E/1.4 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-6})$$

#### Exceptions:

1. Crane hook loads need not be combined with roof live loads or with more than three-fourths of the snow load or one-half of the wind load.
2. Flat roof snow loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or less and roof live loads of 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or less need not be combined with seismic loads. Where flat roof snow loads exceed 30 pounds per square foot ( $1.44 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), 20 percent shall be combined with seismic loads.

#### **1605A.3 Modifications to load combinations in ICC 300.** Modify the text of ICC 300 as follows:

**1605A.3.1 ICC 300, Section 303.5.2.** Modify Section 303.5.2 by adding Equation 3-5a as follows:

$$D + 0.4L + Z \quad (\text{Equation 3-5a})$$

**1605A.3.2 ICC 300, Section 303.5.3.** Modify Section 303.5.3 as follows:

The uniform live load  $L$  used in Equation 3-2 and 3-4 may be taken as zero when evaluating elements supporting the handrail/guard provided those elements do not also support  $L$ .

## SECTION 1606A DEAD LOADS

**1606A.1 General.** Dead loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 of this code. Dead loads shall be considered to be permanent loads.

**1606A.2 Weights of materials of construction.** For purposes of design, the actual weights of materials of construction shall be used. In the absence of definite information, values used shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

**1606A.3 Weight of fixed service equipment.** In determining dead loads for purposes of design, the weight of fixed service equipment, including the maximum weight of the contents of

fixed service equipment, shall be included. The components of fixed service equipment that are variable, such as liquid contents and movable trays, shall not be used to counteract forces causing overturning, sliding, and uplift conditions in accordance with Section 1.3.6 of ASCE 7.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where force effects are the result of the presence of the variable components, the components are permitted to be used to counter those load effects. In such cases, the structure shall be designed for force effects with the variable components present and with them absent.
2. For the calculation of seismic force effects, the components of fixed service equipment that are variable, such as liquid contents and movable trays, need not exceed those expected during normal operation.

**1606A.4 Photovoltaic panel systems.** The weight of photovoltaic panel systems, their support system, and ballast shall be considered as dead load.

**1606A.5 Vegetative and landscaped roofs.** The weight of all landscaping and hardscaping materials for vegetative and landscaped roofs shall be considered as dead load. The weight shall be computed considering both fully saturated soil and drainage layer materials and fully dry soil and drainage layer materials to determine the most severe load effects on the structure.

**1606A.6 Roof dead loads.** The design dead load shall provide for the weight of at least one additional roof covering in addition to other applicable loadings if the new roof covering is permitted to be applied over the original roofing without its removal, in accordance with Section 1512.

## SECTION 1607A LIVE LOADS

**1607A.1 General.** Live loads are those loads defined in Chapter 2 and Section 1602A.1 of this code.

**1607A.2 Loads not specified.** For occupancies or uses not designated in Section 1607A, the live load shall be determined in accordance with a method approved by the building official.

**1607A.3 Uniform live loads.** The live loads used in the design of buildings and other structures shall be the maximum loads expected by the intended use or occupancy but shall not be less than the minimum uniformly distributed live loads given in Table 1607A.1.

**1607A.4 Concentrated live loads.** Floors, roofs and other similar surfaces shall be designed to support the uniformly distributed live loads prescribed in Section 1607A.3 or the concentrated live loads, given in Table 1607A.1, whichever produces the greater load effects. Unless otherwise specified, the indicated concentration shall be assumed to be uniformly distributed over an area of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet by  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet (762 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located so as to produce the maximum load effects in the structural members.

**TABLE 1607A.1**  
**MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS,  $L_o$ , AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS**

OCCUPANCY OR USE		UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)	ALSO SEE SECTION			
1.	Apartments (see residential)	—	—	—			
2.	Access floor systems	Office use	50	2,000			
		Computer use	100	2,000			
3.	Armories and drill rooms	150 <sup>b</sup>	—	—			
4.	Assembly areas <sup>c, e</sup>	Fixed seats (fastened to floor)	60 <sup>a</sup>	—			
		Follow spot, projections and control rooms	50				
		Lobbies	100 <sup>a</sup>				
		Movable seats	100 <sup>a</sup>				
		Stage floors	150 <sup>b</sup>				
		Platforms (assembly)	100 <sup>a</sup>				
		Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands <sup>g</sup>	100 <sup>a</sup> (See Section 1607A.19)				
		Stadiums and arenas with fixed seats (fastened to the floor)	60 <sup>a</sup> (See Section 1607A.19)				
		Other assembly areas	100 <sup>a</sup>				
5.	Balconies and decks	1.5 times the live load for the area served, not required to exceed 100	—	—			
6.	Catwalks for maintenance and service access	40	300	—			
7.	Cornices	60	—	—			
8.	Corridors	First floor	100	—			
		Other floors	Same as occupancy served except as indicated				
9.	Dining rooms and restaurants	100 <sup>a</sup>	—	—			
10.	Dwellings (see residential)	—	—	—			
11.	Elevator machine room and control room grating (on area of 2 inches by 2 inches)	—	300	—			
12.	Finish light floor plate construction (on area of 1 inch by 1 inch)	—	200	—			
13.	Fire escapes	100	—	—			
	On single-family dwellings only	40					
14.	Fixed ladders	See Section 1607A.17					
15.	Garages	Passenger vehicles only	40 <sup>c</sup>	See Section 1607A.7			
		Trucks and buses	See Section 1607A.8				
16.	Handrails, guards and grab bars	See Section 1607A.9					
17.	Helipads	See Section 1607A.6					
18.	Hospitals <i>[OSHPD 1 &amp; 4]</i>	Corridors above first floor	80	1,000			
		Operating rooms, laboratories	60 <sup>a</sup>				
		Patient rooms	40				
19.	Hotels (see residential)	—	—	—			

*(continued)*

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1607A.1—continued**  
**MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS,  $L_o$ , AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS**

OCCUPANCY OR USE			UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)	ALSO SEE SECTION
20.	Libraries	Corridors above first floor	80	1,000	—
		Reading rooms	60	1,000	—
		Stack rooms	150 <sup>b</sup>	1,000	Section 1607A.18
21.	Manufacturing	Heavy	250 <sup>b</sup>	3,000	—
		Light	125 <sup>b</sup>	2,000	
22.	Marquees, except one- and two-family dwellings		75	—	—
23.	Office buildings <sup>b</sup>	Corridors above first floor	80	2,000	—
		File and computer rooms shall be designed for heavier loads based on anticipated occupancy	—	—	
		Lobbies and first-floor corridors	100	2,000	
		Offices	50	2,000	
24.	Penal institutions	Cell blocks	40	—	—
		Corridors	100		
25.	Recreational uses	Bowling alleys, poolrooms and similar uses	75 <sup>a</sup>	—	—
		Dance halls and ballrooms	100 <sup>a</sup>		
		Gymnasiums	100 <sup>a</sup>		
		Ice skating rinks	250 <sup>b</sup>		
		Roller skating rinks	100 <sup>a</sup>		
26.	Residential	One- and two-family dwellings:		—	Section 1607A.22
		Uninhabitable attics without storage	10		
		Uninhabitable attics with storage	20		
		Habitable attics and sleeping areas	30		
		Canopies, including marquees	20		
		All other areas	40		
		Hotels and multifamily dwellings:			
		Private rooms and corridors serving them	40		
		Public rooms <sup>a</sup> and corridors serving them	100		
		Ordinary flat, pitched, and curved roofs (that are not occupiable)	20	—	Section 1607A.14.2
27.	Roofs	Roof areas used for assembly purposes	100 <sup>a</sup>	—	
		Roof areas used for occupancies other than assembly	Same as occupancy served	—	
		Vegetative and landscaped roofs:		—	
		Roof areas not intended for occupancy	20	—	
		Roof areas used for assembly purposes	100 <sup>a</sup>	—	
		Roof areas used for other occupancies	Same as occupancy served	—	
		Awnings and canopies:		—	
		Fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure	5 <sup>a</sup>	—	
		All other construction, except one- and two-family dwellings	20	—	
		Primary roof members exposed to a work floor:			Section 1607A.15.2
		Single panel point of lower chord of roof trusses or any point along primary structural members supporting roofs over manufacturing, storage warehouses, and repair garages	—	2,000	
		All other primary roof members	—	300	
		All roof surfaces subject to maintenance workers	—	300	

(continued)

**TABLE 1607A.1—continued**  
**MINIMUM UNIFORMLY DISTRIBUTED LIVE LOADS,  $L_o$ , AND MINIMUM CONCENTRATED LIVE LOADS**

OCCUPANCY OR USE			UNIFORM (psf)	CONCENTRATED (pounds)	ALSO SEE SECTION
28.	Schools <sup>d</sup>	Classrooms	40 <i>[DSA-SS]</i> 50 <sup>f</sup>	1,000	—
		Corridors above first floor	80	1,000	
		First-floor corridors	100	1,000	
29.	Scuttles, skylight ribs and accessible ceilings		—	200	—
30.	Sidewalks, vehicular driveways and yards, subject to trucking		250 <sup>b</sup>	8,000	Section 1607A.20
31.	Stairs and exits	One- and two-family dwellings	40	300	Section 1607A.21
		All other	100	300	Section 1607A.21
32.	Storage areas above ceilings		20	—	—
33.	Storage warehouses (shall be designed for heavier loads if required for anticipated storage)	Heavy	250 <sup>b</sup>	—	—
		Light	125 <sup>b</sup>		
34.	Stores	Retail:			—
		First floor	100	1,000	
		Upper floors	75	1,000	
		Wholesale, all floors	125 <sup>b</sup>	1,000	
35.	Vehicle barriers		See Section 1607A.10		—
36.	Walkways and elevated platforms (other than exitways)		60	—	—
37.	Yards and terraces, pedestrian <sup>h</sup>		100 <sup>a</sup>	—	—
38.	Storage racks and wall-hung cabinets		Total loads <sup>d</sup>	—	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound = 0.004448 kN,  
1 pound per cubic foot = 16 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

a. Live load reduction is not permitted.

b. Live load reduction is only permitted in accordance with Section 1607A.12.1.2 or Item 1 of Section 1607A.12.2.

c. Live load reduction is only permitted in accordance with Section 1607A.12.1.3 or Item 2 of Section 1607A.12.2.

d. *The minimum vertical design live load shall be as follows:*

*Paper media:*

12-inch-deep shelf     33 pounds per lineal foot  
15-inch-deep shelf     41 pounds per lineal foot, or  
33 pounds per cubic foot per total volume of the rack or cabinet,  
whichever is less.

*Film media:*

18-inch-deep shelf     100 pounds per lineal foot, or  
50 pounds per cubic foot per total volume of the rack or cabinet,  
whichever is less.

*Other media:*

20 pounds per cubic foot or 20 pounds per square foot, whichever is  
less, but not less than actual loads.

e. *[DSA-SS] The following minimum loads for stage accessories apply:*

1. *Gridirons and fly galleries:* 75 pounds per square foot uniform live load.
2. *Loft block wells:* 250 pounds per lineal foot vertical load and lateral load.
3. *Head block wells and sheave beams:* 250 pounds per lineal foot vertical load and lateral load. *Head block wells and sheave beams shall be designed for all tributary loft block well loads. Sheave blocks shall be designed with a safety factor of five.*
4. *Scenery beams where there is no gridiron:* 300 pounds per lineal foot vertical load and lateral load.
5. *Ceiling framing over stages shall be designed for a uniform live load of 20 pounds per square foot. For members supporting a tributary area of 200 square feet or more, this additional load may be reduced to 15 pounds per square foot.*

f. *[DSA-SS] Live load reduction is not permitted for classrooms classified as Group A occupancies.*

g. *[DSA-SS] The minimum uniform live load for a press box floor or accessible roof with railing is 100 psf.*

h. *[DSA-SS] Item 37 applies to pedestrian bridges and walkways that are not subjected to uncontrolled vehicle access.*

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1607A.5 Partition loads.** In office buildings and in other buildings where partition locations are subject to change, provisions for partition weight shall be made, whether or not partitions are shown on the construction documents, unless the specified live load is 80 psf ( $3.83 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or greater. The partition load shall be not less than a uniformly distributed live load of 15 psf ( $0.72 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ).

**1607A.6 Helipads.** Helipads shall be designed for the following live loads:

1. A uniform live load,  $L$ , as specified in Items 1.1 and 1.2. This load shall not be reduced.
  - 1.1. 40 psf ( $1.92 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight of 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) or less.
  - 1.2. 60 psf ( $2.87 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) where the design basis helicopter has a maximum take-off weight greater than 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ).
2. A single concentrated live load,  $L$ , of 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) applied over an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches (114 mm by 114 mm) and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated load is not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.
3. Two single concentrated live loads,  $L$ , 8 feet (2438 mm) apart applied on the landing pad (representing the helicopter's two main landing gear, whether skid type or wheeled type), each having a magnitude of 0.75 times the maximum take-off weight of the helicopter, and located so as to produce the maximum load effects on the structural elements under consideration. The concentrated loads shall be applied over an area of 8 inches by 8 inches (203 mm by 203 mm) and are not required to act concurrently with other uniform or concentrated live loads.

Landing areas designed for a design basis helicopter with maximum take-off weight of 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) shall be identified with a 3,000-pound ( $13.34 \text{ kN}$ ) weight limitation. The landing area weight limitation shall be indicated by the numeral "3" (kips) located in the bottom right corner of the landing area as viewed from the primary approach path. The indication for the landing area weight limitation shall be a minimum 5 feet (1524 mm) in height.

**1607A.7 Passenger vehicle garages.** Floors in garages or portions of a building used for the storage of motor vehicles shall be designed for the uniformly distributed live loads indicated in Table 1607A.1 or the following concentrated load:

1. For garages restricted to passenger vehicles accommodating not more than nine passengers, 3,000 pounds ( $13.35 \text{ kN}$ ) acting on an area of 4.5 inches by 4.5 inches (114 mm by 114 mm).
2. For mechanical parking structures without slab or deck that are used for storing passenger vehicles only, 2,250 pounds ( $10 \text{ kN}$ ) per wheel.

**1607A.8 Heavy vehicle loads.** Floors and other surfaces that are intended to support vehicle loads greater than a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating shall comply with Sections 1607A.8.1 through 1607A.8.5.

**1607A.8.1 Loads.** Where any structure does not restrict access for vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating, those portions of the structure subject to such loads shall be designed using the vehicular live loads, including consideration of impact and fatigue, in accordance with the codes and specifications required by the jurisdiction having authority for the design and construction of the roadways and bridges in the same location of the structure.

**1607A.8.2 Fire truck and emergency vehicles.** Where a structure or portions of a structure are accessed and loaded by fire department access vehicles and other similar emergency vehicles, the structure shall be designed for the greater of the following loads:

1. The actual operational loads, including outrigger reactions and contact areas of the vehicles as stipulated and approved by the building official.
2. The live loading specified in Section 1607A.8.1.

**1607A.8.3 Heavy vehicle garages.** Garages designed to accommodate vehicles that exceed a 10,000-pound (4536 kg) gross vehicle weight rating, shall be designed using the live loading specified by Section 1607A.8.1. For garages the design for impact and fatigue is not required.

**Exception:** The vehicular live loads and load placement are allowed to be determined using the actual vehicle weights for the vehicles allowed onto the garage floors, provided that such loads and placement are based on rational engineering principles and are approved by the building official, but shall be not less than 50 psf ( $2.9 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ). This live load shall not be reduced.

**1607A.8.4 Forklifts and movable equipment.** Where a structure is intended to have forklifts or other movable equipment present, the structure shall be designed for the total vehicle or equipment load and the individual wheel loads for the anticipated vehicles as specified by the owner of the facility. These loads shall be posted in accordance with Section 1607A.8.5.

**1607A.8.4.1 Impact and fatigue.** Impact loads and fatigue loading shall be considered in the design of the supporting structure. For the purposes of design, the vehicle and wheel loads shall be increased by 30 percent to account for impact.

**1607A.8.5 Posting.** The maximum weight of vehicles allowed into or on a garage or other structure shall be posted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent in accordance with Section 106.1.

**1607A.9 Loads on handrails, guards, grab bars and seats.** Handrails and guards shall be designed and constructed for the structural loading conditions set forth in Section 1607A.9.1. Grab bars, shower seats and accessible benches shall be designed and constructed for the structural loading conditions set forth in Section 1607A.9.2.

**1607A.9.1 Handrails and guards.** Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a linear load of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) (0.73 kN/m) in accordance with Section 4.5.1.1 of ASCE 7. Glass handrail assemblies and guards shall comply with Section 2407.

**Exceptions:**

1. For one- and two-family dwellings, only the single concentrated load required by Section 1607A.9.1.1 shall be applied.
2. In Group I-3, F, H and S occupancies, for areas that are not accessible to the general public and that have an occupant load less than 50, the minimum load shall be 20 pounds per foot (0.29 kN/m).

**1607A.9.1.1 Concentrated load.** Handrails and guards shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 200 pounds (0.89 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1 of ASCE 7.

**1607A.9.1.2 Guard component loads.** Balusters, panel fillers and guard infill components, including all rails except the handrail and the top rail, shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 50 pounds (0.22 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.1.2 of ASCE 7.

**1607A.9.2 Grab bars, shower seats and accessible benches.** Grab bars, shower seats and accessible benches shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 250 pounds (1.11 kN) applied in any direction at any point on the grab bar, shower seat, or seat of the accessible bench so as to produce the maximum load effects. *[DSA-AC] See Chapter 11A, Section 1127A.4 and Chapter 11B, Sections 11B-609.8, 11B-610.4 and 11B-903.6 for grab bars, shower seats and dressing room bench seats, as applicable.*

**1607A.10 Vehicle barriers.** Vehicle barriers for passenger vehicles shall be designed to resist a concentrated load of 6,000 pounds (26.70 kN) in accordance with Section 4.5.3 of ASCE 7. Garages accommodating trucks and buses shall be designed in accordance with an approved method that contains provisions for traffic railings.

**1607A.11 Impact loads.** The live loads specified in Sections 1607A.3 through 1607A.10 shall be assumed to include adequate allowance for ordinary impact conditions. Provisions shall be made in the structural design for uses and loads that involve unusual vibration and impact forces.

**1607A.11.1 Elevators.** Members, elements and components subject to dynamic loads from elevators shall be designed for impact loads and deflection limits prescribed by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

**1607A.11.2 Machinery.** For the purpose of design, the weight of machinery and moving loads shall be increased as follows to allow for impact:

1. Light machinery, shaft- or motor-driven, 20 percent.
2. Reciprocating machinery or power-driven units, 50 percent.

Percentages shall be increased where specified by the manufacturer.

**1607A.11.3 Elements supporting hoists for façade access and building maintenance equipment.** In addition to any other applicable live loads, structural elements that support hoists for façade access and building maintenance equipment shall be designed for a live load of 2.5 times the rated load of the hoist or the stall load of the hoist, whichever is larger.

**1607A.11.4 Fall arrest, lifeline, and rope descent system anchorages.** In addition to any other applicable live loads, fall arrest, lifeline, and rope descent system anchorages and structural elements that support these anchorages shall be designed for a live load of not less than 3,100 pounds (13.8 kN) for each attached line, in any direction that the load can be applied.

Anchorage of horizontal lifelines and the structural elements that support these anchorages shall be designed for the maximum tension that develops in the horizontal lifeline from these live loads.

**1607A.12 Reduction in uniform live loads.** Except for uniform live loads at roofs, all other minimum uniformly distributed live loads,  $L_o$ , in Table 1607A.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607A.12.1 or 1607A.12.2. Uniform live loads at roofs are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607.14.2.

**1607A.12.1 Basic uniform live load reduction.** Subject to the limitations of Sections 1607A.12.1.1 through 1607A.12.1.3 and Table 1607A.1, members for which a value of  $K_{LL}A_T$  is 400 square feet ( $37.16 \text{ m}^2$ ) or more are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed live load,  $L$ , in accordance with the following equation:

$$L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right) \quad (\text{Equation 16A-7})$$

$$\text{For SI: } L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{4.57}{\sqrt{K_{LL}A_T}} \right)$$

where:

$L$  = Reduced design live load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported by the member.

$L_o$  = Unreduced design live load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported by the member (see Table 1607A.1).

$K_{LL}$  = Live load element factor (see Table 1607A.12.1).

$A_T$  = Tributary area, in square feet ( $\text{m}^2$ ).

$L$  shall be not less than  $0.50L_o$  for members supporting one floor and  $L$  shall be not less than  $0.40L_o$  for members supporting two or more floors.

**1607A.12.1.1 One-way slabs.** The tributary area,  $A_T$ , for use in Equation 16-7 for one-way slabs shall not exceed an area defined by the slab span times a width normal to the span of 1.5 times the slab span.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1607A.12.1**  
**LIVE LOAD ELEMENT FACTOR,  $K_{LL}$**

ELEMENT	$K_{LL}$
Interior columns	4
Exterior columns without cantilever slabs	4
Edge columns with cantilever slabs	3
Corner columns with cantilever slabs	2
Edge beams without cantilever slabs	2
Interior beams	2
Members not previously identified including:	
Edge beams with cantilever slabs	1
Cantilever beams	
One-way slabs	
Two-way slabs	
Members without provisions for continuous shear transfer normal to their span	

**1607A.12.1.2 Heavy live loads.** Live loads that exceed 100 psf ( $4.79 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) shall not be reduced.

### Exceptions:

1. The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent, but the live load shall be not less than  $L$  as calculated in Section 1607A.12.1.
2. For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design professional that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

**1607A.12.1.3 Passenger vehicle garages.** The live loads shall not be reduced in passenger vehicle garages.

**Exception:** The live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent, but the live load shall be not less than  $L$  as calculated in Section 1607A.12.1.

**1607A.12.2 Alternative uniform live load reduction.** As an alternative to Section 1607A.12.1 and subject to the limitations of Table 1607A.1, uniformly distributed live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following provisions. Such reductions shall apply to slab systems, beams, girders, columns, piers, walls and foundations.

1. A reduction shall not be permitted where the live load exceeds 100 psf ( $4.79 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) except that the design live load for members supporting two or more floors is permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent.

**Exception:** For uses other than storage, where approved, additional live load reductions shall be permitted where shown by the registered design professional that a rational approach has been used and that such reductions are warranted.

2. A reduction shall not be permitted in passenger vehicle parking garages except that the live loads for members supporting two or more floors are permitted to be reduced by not greater than 20 percent.

3. For live loads not exceeding 100 psf ( $4.79 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ), the design live load for any structural member supporting 150 square feet ( $13.94 \text{ m}^2$ ) or more is permitted to be reduced in accordance with Equation 16-8

4. For one-way slabs, the area,  $A$ , for use in Equation 16-8 shall not exceed the product of the slab span and a width normal to the span of 0.5 times the slab span.

$$R = 0.08(A - 150) \quad (\textbf{Equation 16A-8})$$

$$\text{For SI: } R = 0.861(A - 13.94)$$

Such reduction shall not exceed the smallest of:

1. 40 percent for members supporting one floor.
2. 60 percent for members supporting two or more floors.
3.  $R$  as determined by the following equation:

$$R = 23.1(1 + D/L_o) \quad (\textbf{Equation 16A-9})$$

where:

$A$  = Area of floor supported by the member, square feet ( $\text{m}^2$ ).

$D$  = Dead load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported.

$L_o$  = Unreduced live load per square foot ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of area supported.

$R$  = Reduction in percent.

**1607A.13 Distribution of floor loads.** Where uniform floor live loads are involved in the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the minimum applied loads shall be the full dead loads on all spans in combination with the floor live loads on spans selected to produce the greatest load effect at each location under consideration. Floor live loads are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607A.12.

**1607A.14 Roof loads.** The structural supports of roofs and marquees shall be designed to resist wind and, where applicable, snow and earthquake loads, in addition to the dead load of construction and the appropriate live loads as prescribed in this section, or as set forth in Table 1607A.1. The live loads acting on a sloping surface shall be assumed to act vertically on the horizontal projection of that surface.

**1607A.14.1 Distribution of roof loads.** Where uniform roof live loads are reduced to less than 20 psf ( $0.96 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) in accordance with Section 1607A.14.2.1 and are applied to the design of structural members arranged so as to create continuity, the reduced roof live load shall be applied to adjacent spans or to alternate spans, whichever produces the most unfavorable load effect. See Section 1607A.14.2 for reductions in minimum roof live loads and Section 7.5 of ASCE 7 for partial snow loading.

**1607A.14.2 Reduction in uniform roof live loads.** The minimum uniformly distributed live loads of roofs and

marquees,  $L_o$ , in Table 1607A.1 are permitted to be reduced in accordance with Section 1607A.14.2.1.

#### **1607A.14.2.1 Ordinary roofs, awnings and canopies.**

Ordinary flat, pitched and curved roofs, and awnings and canopies other than of fabric construction supported by a skeleton structure, are permitted to be designed for a reduced uniformly distributed roof live load,  $L_r$ , as specified in the following equations or other controlling combinations of loads as specified in Section 1605A, whichever produces the greater load effect.

In structures such as greenhouses, where special scaffolding is used as a work surface for workers and materials during maintenance and repair operations, a lower roof load than specified in the following equations shall not be used unless approved by the building official. Such structures shall be designed for a minimum roof live load of 12 psf (0.58 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

$$L_r = L_o R_1 R_2 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-10})$$

where:  $12 \leq L_r \leq 20$

$$\text{For SI: } L_r = L_o R_1 R_2$$

where:  $0.58 \leq L_r \leq 0.96$

$L_o$  = Unreduced roof live load per square foot (m<sup>2</sup>) of horizontal projection supported by the member (see Table 1607A.1).

$L_r$  = Reduced roof live load per square foot (m<sup>2</sup>) of horizontal projection supported by the member.

The reduction factors  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  shall be determined as follows:

$$R_1 = 1 \text{ for } A_t \leq 200 \text{ square feet (18.58 m}^2\text{)} \quad (\text{Equation 16A-11})$$

$$R_1 = 1.2 - 0.001A_t \text{ for } 200 \text{ square feet} < A_t < 600 \text{ square feet} \quad (\text{Equation 16A-12})$$

For SI:  $1.2 - 0.011A_t$  for 18.58 square meters  $< A_t < 55.74$  square meters

$$R_1 = 0.6 \text{ for } A_t \geq 600 \text{ square feet (55.74 m}^2\text{)} \quad (\text{Equation 16A-13})$$

where:

$A_t$  = Tributary area (span length multiplied by effective width) in square feet (m<sup>2</sup>) supported by the member, and

$$R_2 = 1 \text{ for } F \leq 4 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-14})$$

$$R_2 = 1.2 - 0.05F \text{ for } 4 < F < 12 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-15})$$

$$R_2 = 0.6 \text{ for } F \geq 12 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-16})$$

where:

$F$  = For a sloped roof, the number of inches of rise per foot (for SI:  $F = 0.12 \times \text{slope}$ , with slope expressed as a percentage), or for an arch or dome, the rise-to-span ratio multiplied by 32.

**1607A.14.2.2 Occupiable roofs.** Areas of roofs that are occupiable, such as vegetative roofs, landscaped roofs or for assembly or other similar purposes, and marquees are permitted to have their uniformly distributed live loads reduced in accordance with Section 1607A.12.

**1607A.14.3 Awnings and canopies.** Awnings and canopies shall be designed for uniform live loads as required in Table 1607A.1 as well as for snow loads and wind loads as specified in Sections 1608A and 1609A.

**1607A.14.4 Photovoltaic panel systems.** Roof structures that provide support for photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1607A.14.4.1 through 1607A.14.4.5, as applicable.

**1607A.14.4.1 Roof live load.** Roof structures that support photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed to resist each of the following conditions:

- Applicable uniform and concentrated roof loads with the photovoltaic panel system dead loads.

**Exception:** Roof live loads need not be applied to the area covered by photovoltaic panels where the clear space between the panels and the roof surface is 24 inches (610 mm) or less.

- Applicable uniform and concentrated roof loads without the photovoltaic panel system present.

**1607A.14.4.2 Photovoltaic panels or modules.** The structure of a roof that supports solar photovoltaic panels or modules shall be designed to accommodate the full solar photovoltaic panels or modules and ballast dead load, including concentrated loads from support frames in combination with the loads from Section 1607A.14.4.1 and other applicable loads. Where applicable, snow drift loads created by the photovoltaic panels or modules shall be included.

**1607A.14.4.3 Photovoltaic panels installed on open grid roof structures.** Structures with open grid framing and without a roof deck or sheathing supporting photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed to support the uniform and concentrated roof live loads specified in Section 1607A.14.4.1, except that the uniform roof live load shall be permitted to be reduced to 12 psf (0.57 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1607A.14.4.4 Ground-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems.** Ground-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems that are independent structures and do not have accessible/occupied space underneath are not required to accommodate a roof photovoltaic live load. Other loads and combinations in accordance with Section 1605A shall be accommodated.

**1607A.14.4.5 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.** Roof structures that provide support for ballasted photovoltaic panel systems shall be designed, or analyzed, in accordance with Section 1604A.4; checked in accordance with Section 1604A.3.6 for deflections; and checked in accordance with Section 1611A for ponding.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1607A.14.5 Uncovered open-frame roof structures.** Uncovered open-frame roof structures shall be designed for a vertical live load of not less than 10 pounds per square foot ( $0.48 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) of the total area encompassed by the framework.

**1607A.15 Crane loads.** The crane live load shall be the rated capacity of the crane. Design loads for the runway beams, including connections and support brackets, of moving bridge cranes and monorail cranes shall include the maximum wheel loads of the crane and the vertical impact, lateral and longitudinal forces induced by the moving crane.

**1607A.15.1 Maximum wheel load.** The maximum wheel loads shall be the wheel loads produced by the weight of the bridge, as applicable, plus the sum of the rated capacity and the weight of the trolley with the trolley positioned on its runway at the location where the resulting load effect is maximum.

**1607A.15.2 Vertical impact force.** The maximum wheel loads of the crane shall be increased by the following percentages to account for the effects of vertical impact or vibration:

Monorail cranes (powered)	25 percent
Cab-operated or remotely operated bridge cranes (powered)	25 percent
Pendant-operated bridge cranes (powered)	10 percent
Bridge cranes or monorail cranes with hand-gearied bridge, trolley and hoist	0 percent

**1607A.15.3 Lateral force.** The lateral force on crane runway beams with electrically powered trolleys shall be calculated as 20 percent of the sum of the rated capacity of the crane and the weight of the hoist and trolley. The lateral force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction perpendicular to the beam, and shall be distributed with due regard to the lateral stiffness of the runway beam and supporting structure.

**1607A.15.4 Longitudinal force.** The longitudinal force on crane runway beams, except for bridge cranes with hand-gearied bridges, shall be calculated as 10 percent of the maximum wheel loads of the crane. The longitudinal force shall be assumed to act horizontally at the traction surface of a runway beam, in either direction parallel to the beam.

**1607A.16 Interior walls and partitions.** Interior walls and partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the loads to which they are subjected but not less than a horizontal load of 5 psf ( $0.240 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ). The 5 psf ( $0.24 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) allowable stress design load need not be applied simultaneously with wind or seismic loads. The deflection of such walls under a load of 5 psf ( $0.24 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) shall not exceed the limits in Table 1604A.3.

**1607A.16.1 Fabric partitions.** Fabric partitions that exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) in height, including their finish materials, shall have adequate strength and stiffness to resist the following load conditions:

1. The horizontal distributed load need only be applied to the partition framing. The total area used to determine the distributed load shall be the area of the fabric face between the framing members to which the fabric is attached. The total distributed load shall be uniformly applied to such framing members in proportion to the length of each member.
2. A concentrated load of 40 pounds ( $0.176 \text{ kN}$ ) applied to an 8-inch-diameter (203 mm) area [ $50.3 \text{ square inches (32.452 mm}^2\text{)}$ ] of the fabric face at a height of 54 inches (1372 mm) above the floor.

**1607A.16.2 Fire walls.** In order to meet the structural stability requirements of Section 706.2 where the structure on either side of the wall has collapsed, fire walls and their supports shall be designed to withstand a minimum horizontal allowable stress load of 5 psf ( $0.240 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ).

**1607A.17 Fixed ladders.** Fixed ladders with rungs shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 300 pounds ( $1.33 \text{ kN}$ ) in accordance with Section 4.5.4 of ASCE 7. Where rails of fixed ladders extend above a floor or platform at the top of the ladder, each side rail extension shall be designed to resist a single concentrated load of 100 pounds ( $0.445 \text{ kN}$ ) in accordance with Section 4.5.4 of ASCE 7. Ship's ladders shall be designed to resist the stair loads given in Table 1607A.1.

**1607A.18 Library stack rooms.** The live loading indicated in Table 1607A.1 for library stack rooms applies to stack room floors that support nonmobile, double-faced library book stacks, subject to the following limitations:

1. The nominal book stack unit height shall not exceed 90 inches (2290 mm).
2. The nominal shelf depth shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) for each face.
3. Parallel rows of double-faced book stacks shall be separated by aisles not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in width.

**1607A.19 Seating for assembly uses.** Bleachers, folding and telescopic seating and grandstands shall be designed for the loads specified in ICC 300 as modified by Section 1605A.3 load combinations. Stadiums and arenas with fixed seats shall be designed for the horizontal sway loads in Section 1607A.19.1.

**1607A.19.1 Horizontal sway loads.** The design of stadiums and arenas with fixed seats shall include horizontal swaying forces applied to each row of seats as follows:

1. 24 pounds per linear foot ( $0.35 \text{ kN/m}$ ) of seat applied in a direction parallel to each row of seats.

2. 10 pounds per linear foot (0.15 kN/m) of seat applied in a direction perpendicular to each row of seats.

The parallel and perpendicular horizontal swaying forces are not required to be applied simultaneously.

**1607A.20 Sidewalks, vehicular driveways, and yards subject to trucking.** The live loading indicated in Table 1607A.1 for sidewalks, vehicular driveways, and yards subject to trucking shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1607A.20.1 Uniform loads.** In addition to the loads indicated in Table 1607A.1, other uniform loads in accordance with an approved method that contains provisions for truck loading shall be considered where appropriate.

**1607A.20.2 Concentrated loads.** The concentrated wheel load indicated in Table 1607A.1 shall be applied on an area of  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches by  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm by 114 mm).

**1607A.21 Stair treads.** The concentrated load indicated in Table 1607A.1 for stair treads shall be applied on an area of 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm). This load need not be assumed to act concurrently with the uniform load.

**1607A.22 Residential attics.** The live loads indicated in Table 1607A.1 for attics in residential occupancies shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1607A.22.1 Uninhabitable attics without storage.** In residential occupancies, uninhabitable attic areas without storage are those where the maximum clear height between the joists and rafters is less than 42 inches (1067 mm), or where there are not two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches (1067 mm) in height by 24 inches (610 mm) in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses. The live load in Table 1607A.1 need not be assumed to act concurrently with any other live load requirement.

**1607A.22.2 Uninhabitable attics with storage.** In residential occupancies, uninhabitable attic areas with storage are those where the maximum clear height between the joist and rafter is 42 inches (1067 mm) or greater, or where there are two or more adjacent trusses with web configurations capable of accommodating an assumed rectangle 42 inches (1067 mm) in height by 24 inches (610 mm) in width, or greater, within the plane of the trusses. The live load in Table 1607A.1 need only be applied to those portions of the joists or truss bottom chords where both of the following conditions are met:

1. The attic area is accessed from an opening not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in width by 30 inches (762 mm) in length that is located where the clear height in the attic is not less than 30 inches (762 mm).
2. The slope of the joists or truss bottom chords is not greater than 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal.

The remaining portions of the joists or truss bottom chords shall be designed for a uniformly distributed concurrent live load of not less than 10 pounds per square foot (0.48 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**1607A.22.3 Attics served by stairs.** Attic spaces served by stairways other than the pull-down type shall be designed to support the minimum live load specified for habitable attics and sleeping rooms.

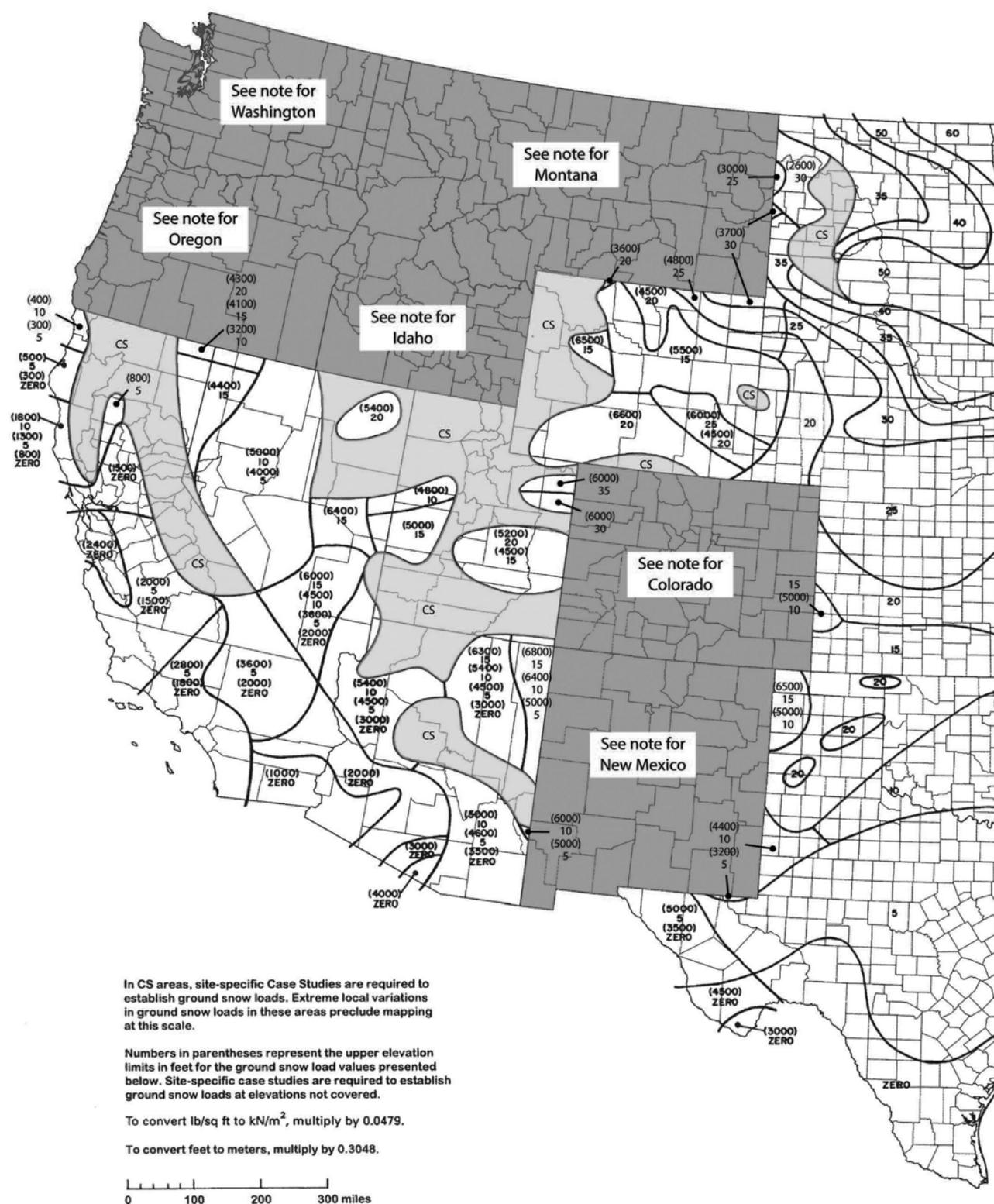
## SECTION 1608A SNOW LOADS

**1608A.1 General.** Design snow loads shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 7 of ASCE 7, but the design roof load shall be not less than that determined by Section 1607A.

**1608A.2 Ground snow loads.** The ground snow loads to be used in determining the design snow loads for roofs shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7 or Figures 1608A.2(1) and 1608A.2(2) for the contiguous United States. Site-specific case studies shall be made in areas designated "CS" in Figures 1608A.2(1) and 1608A.2(2). Ground snow loads for sites at elevations above the limits indicated in Figures 1608A.2(1) and 1608A.2(2) and for all sites within the CS areas shall be approved. Ground snow load determination for such sites shall be based on an extreme value statistical analysis of data available in the vicinity of the site using a value with a 2-percent annual probability of being exceeded (50-year mean recurrence interval).

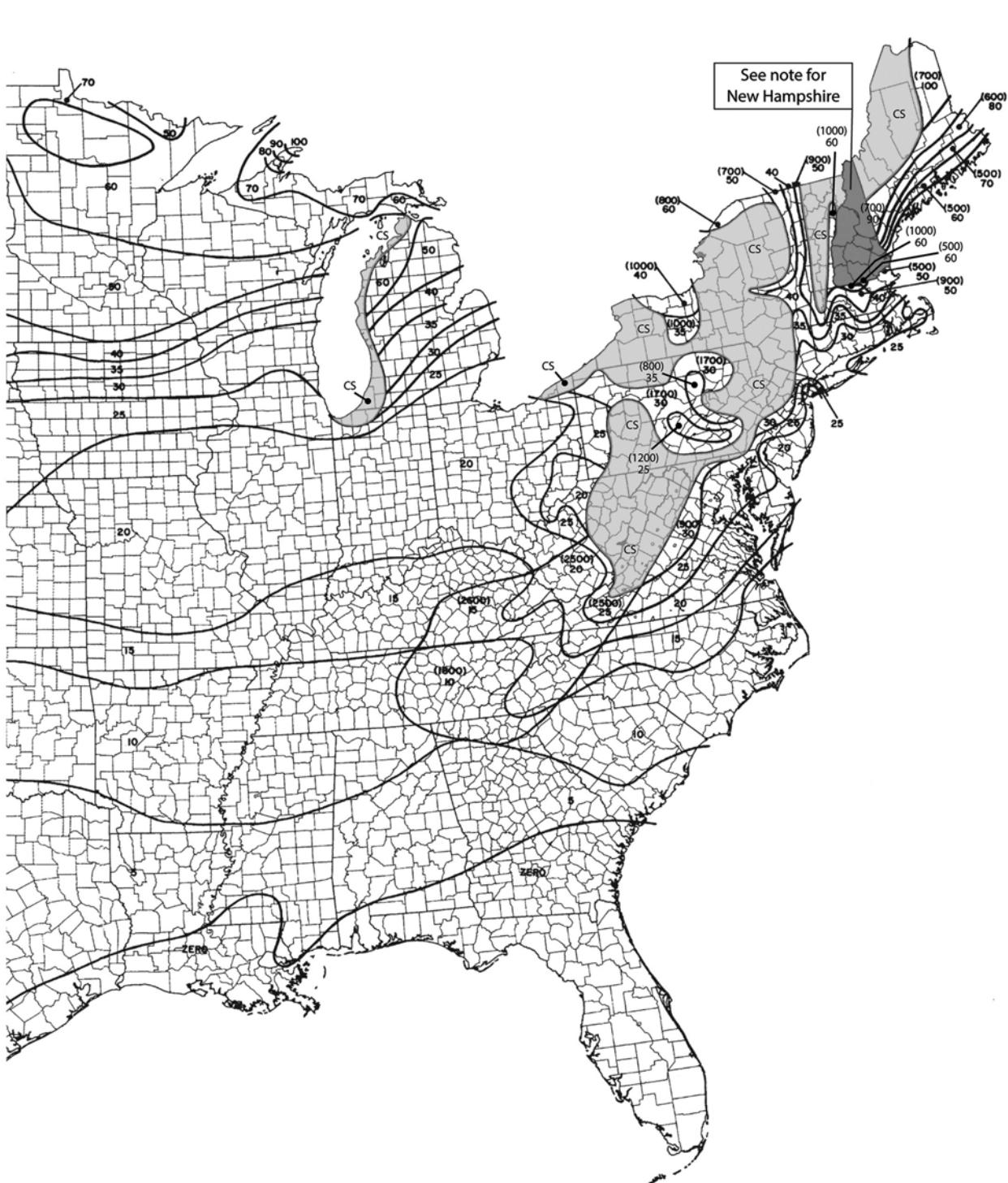
**1608A.3 Ponding instability.** Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Chapters 7 and 8 of ASCE 7.

**1608A.4 Determination of snow loads.** [DSA-SS] The ground snow load or the design snow load for roofs shall conform with the adopted ordinance of the city, county, or city and county in which the project site is located, and shall be approved by DSA. See Section 106.1.2 for snow load posting requirements.



**NOTE:** See ASCE 7 Table 7.2-2 for Colorado, Table 7.2-3 for Idaho, Table 7.2-4 for Montana, Table 7.2-5 for Washington, Table 7.2-6 for New Mexico and Table 7.2-7 for Oregon.

**FIGURE 1608.1.2(1)**  
**GROUND SNOW LOADS,  $p_g$ , FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)**



NOTE: See ASCE 7 Table 7.2-8 for New Hampshire.

**FIGURE 1608A.2(2)**  
**GROUND SNOW LOADS,  $p_g$ , FOR THE UNITED STATES (psf)**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

### SECTION 1609A WIND LOADS

**1609A.1 Applications.** Buildings, structures and parts thereof shall be designed to withstand the minimum wind loads prescribed herein. Decreases in wind loads shall not be made for the effect of shielding by other structures.

**1609A.1.1 Determination of wind loads.** Wind loads on every building or structure shall be determined in accordance with Chapters 26 to 30 of ASCE 7. The type of opening protection required, the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , and the exposure category for a site is permitted to be determined in accordance with Section 1609A or ASCE 7. Wind shall be assumed to come from any horizontal direction and wind pressures shall be assumed to act normal to the surface considered.

#### Exceptions:

1. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609A.1.1.1, the provisions of ICC 600 shall be permitted for applicable Group R-2 and R-3 buildings.
2. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609A.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AWC WFCM.
3. Subject to the limitations of Section 1609A.1.1.1, residential structures using the provisions of AISI S230.
4. Designs using NAAMM FP 1001.
5. Designs using TIA-222 for antenna-supporting structures and antennas, provided that the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2 escarpments in Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA-222 shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.
6. Wind tunnel tests in accordance with ASCE 49 and Sections 31.4 and 31.5 of ASCE 7.

The wind speeds in Figures 1609A.3(1) through 1609A.3(12) are basic design wind speeds,  $V$ , and shall be converted in accordance with Section 1609A.3.1 to allowable stress design wind speeds,  $V_{asd}$ , when the pro-

visions of the standards referenced in Exceptions 4 and 5 are used.

**1609A.1.1.1 Applicability.** The provisions of ICC 600 are applicable only to buildings located within Exposure B or C as defined in Section 1609A.4. The provisions of ICC 600, AWC WFCM and AISI S230 shall not apply to buildings sited on the upper half of an isolated hill, ridge or escarpment meeting all of the following conditions:

1. The hill, ridge or escarpment is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or higher if located in Exposure B or 30 feet (9144 mm) or higher if located in Exposure C.
2. The maximum average slope of the hill exceeds 10 percent.
3. The hill, ridge or escarpment is unobstructed upwind by other such topographic features for a distance from the high point of 50 times the height of the hill or 2 miles (3.22 km), whichever is greater.

**1609A.1.2 Story drift for wind loads.** The calculated story drift due to wind pressures with ultimate design wind speed,  $V_{ult}$ , shall not exceed 0.008 times the story height for buildings less than 65 feet (19812 mm) in height or 0.007 times the story height for buildings 65 feet (19812 mm) or greater in height.

**Exception: [DSA-SS]** This story drift limit need not be applied for single-story open structures in Risk Categories I and II.

**Exception: [OSHPD 1 & 4]** This story drift limit need not be applied for single-story open structures.

**1609A.2 Protection of openings.** In windborne debris regions, glazing in buildings shall be impact resistant or protected with an impact-resistant covering meeting the requirements of an approved impact-resistant standard or ASTM E1996 referenced herein as follows:

1. Glazed openings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of the large missile test of ASTM E1996.

**TABLE 1609A.2**  
**WINDBORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING SCHEDULE FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS<sup>a, b, c, d</sup>**

FASTENER TYPE	FASTENER SPACING (inches)		
	Panel Span ≤ 4 feet	4 feet < Panel Span ≤ 6 feet	6 feet < Panel Span ≤ 8 feet
No. 8 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	10	8
No. 10 wood-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	12	9
1/4-inch diameter lag-screw-based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	16	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

- a. This table is based on 140 mph wind speeds and a 45-foot mean roof height.
- b. Fasteners shall be installed at opposing ends of the wood structural panel. Fasteners shall be located not less than 1 inch from the edge of the panel.
- c. Anchors shall penetrate through the exterior wall covering with an embedment length of 2 inches minimum into the building frame. Fasteners shall be located not less than 2 1/2 inches from the edge of concrete block or concrete.
- d. Where panels are attached to masonry or masonry/stucco, they shall be attached using vibration-resistant anchors having a minimum ultimate withdrawal capacity of 1,500 pounds.

2. Glazed openings located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade shall meet the provisions of the small missile test of ASTM E1996.

**Exceptions:**

1. Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of  $\frac{7}{16}$  inch (11.1 mm) and maximum panel span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less that are classified as a Group R-3 or R-4 occupancy. Panels shall be precut so that they shall be attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method and shall be secured with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the components and cladding loads determined in accordance with the provisions of ASCE 7, with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building. Attachment in accordance with Table 1609A.2 with corrosion-resistant attachment hardware provided and anchors permanently installed on the building is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 45 feet (13 716 mm) or less where  $V_{asd}$  determined in accordance with Section 1609A.3.1 does not exceed 140 mph (63 m/s).
2. Glazing in Risk Category I buildings, including greenhouses that are occupied for growing plants on a production or research basis, without public access shall be permitted to be unprotected.
3. Glazing in Risk Category II, III or IV buildings located over 60 feet (18 288 mm) above the ground and over 30 feet (9144 mm) above aggregate surface roofs located within 1,500 feet (458 m) of the building shall be permitted to be unprotected.

**1609A.2.1 Louvers.** Louvers protecting intake and exhaust ventilation ducts not assumed to be open that are located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of grade shall meet the requirements of AMCA 540.

**1609A.2.2 Application of ASTM E1996.** The text of Section 6.2.2 of ASTM E1996 shall be substituted as follows:

6.2.2 Unless otherwise specified, select the wind zone based on the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , as follows:

6.2.2.1 Wind Zone 1— $130 \text{ mph} \leq \text{basic design wind speed, } V < 140 \text{ mph}$ .

6.2.2.2 Wind Zone 2— $140 \text{ mph} \leq \text{basic design wind speed, } V < 150 \text{ mph}$  at greater than one mile (1.6 km) from the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.3 Wind Zone 3— $150 \text{ mph} (67 \text{ m/s}) \leq \text{basic design wind speed, } V \leq 160 \text{ mph} (72 \text{ m/s})$ , or  $140 \text{ mph} (63 \text{ m/s}) \leq \text{basic design wind speed, } V \leq 160 \text{ mph} (72 \text{ m/s})$

and within one mile (1.6 km) of the coastline. The coastline shall be measured from the mean high water mark.

6.2.2.4 Wind Zone 4—basic design wind speed,  $V > 160 \text{ mph} (72 \text{ m/s})$ .

**1609A.2.3 Garage doors.** Garage door glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of an approved impact-resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

**1609A.3 Basic design wind speed.** The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , in mph, for the determination of the wind loads shall be determined by Figures 1609A.3(1) through 1609A.3(12). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of Risk Category II buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609A.3(1), 1609A.3(5) and 1609A.3(6). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of Risk Category III buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609A.3(2), 1609A.3(7) and 1609A.3(8). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of Risk Category IV buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609A.3(3), 1609A.3(9) and 1609A.3(10). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for use in the design of Risk Category I buildings and structures shall be obtained from Figures 1609A.3(4), 1609A.3(11) and 1609A.3(12). The basic design wind speed,  $V$ , for the special wind regions indicated near mountainous terrain and near gorges shall be in accordance with local jurisdiction requirements. The basic design wind speeds,  $V$ , determined by the local jurisdiction shall be in accordance with Chapter 26 of ASCE 7.

In nonhurricane-prone regions, when the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , is estimated from regional climatic data, the basic design wind speed,  $V$ , shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 26 of ASCE 7.

**1609A.3.1 Wind speed conversion.** Where required, the basic design wind speeds of Figures 1609A.3(1) through 1609A.3(12) shall be converted to allowable stress design wind speeds,  $V_{asd}$ , using Table 1609A.3.1 or Equation 16-17.

$$V_{asd} = V\sqrt{0.6} \quad (\text{Equation 16A-17})$$

where:

$V_{asd}$  = Allowable stress design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 4 and 5 of Section 1609A.1.1.

$V$  = Basic design wind speeds determined from Figures 1609A.3(1) through 1609A.3(12).

**1609A.4 Exposure category.** For each wind direction considered, an exposure category that adequately reflects the characteristics of ground surface irregularities shall be determined for the site at which the building or structure is to be constructed. Account shall be taken of variations in ground surface roughness that arise from natural topography and vegetation as well as from constructed features.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1609A.4.1 Wind directions and sectors.** For each selected wind direction at which the wind loads are to be evaluated, the exposure of the building or structure shall be determined for the two upwind sectors extending 45 degrees (0.79 rad) either side of the selected wind direction. The exposures in these two sectors shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1609A.4.2 and 1609A.4.3 and the exposure resulting in the highest wind loads shall be used to represent winds from that direction.

**1609A.4.2 Surface roughness categories.** A ground surface roughness within each 45-degree (0.79 rad) sector shall be determined for a distance upwind of the site as defined in Section 1609A.4.3 from the following categories, for the purpose of assigning an exposure category as defined in Section 1609A.4.3.

**Surface Roughness B.** Urban and suburban areas, wooded areas or other terrain with numerous closely spaced obstructions having the size of single-family dwellings or larger.

**Surface Roughness C.** Open terrain with scattered obstructions having heights generally less than 30 feet (9144 mm). This category includes flat open country, and grasslands.

**Surface Roughness D.** Flat, unobstructed areas and water surfaces. This category includes smooth mud flats, salt flats and unbroken ice.

**1609A.4.3 Exposure categories.** An exposure category shall be determined in accordance with the following:

**Exposure B.** For buildings with a mean roof height of less than or equal to 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness B, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of not less than 1,500 feet (457 m). For buildings with a mean roof height

greater than 30 feet (9144 mm), Exposure B shall apply where Surface Roughness B prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of not less than 2,600 feet (792 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater.

**Exposure C.** Exposure C shall apply for all cases where Exposure B or D does not apply.

**Exposure D.** Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness, as defined by Surface Roughness D, prevails in the upwind direction for a distance of not less than 5,000 feet (1524 m) or 20 times the height of the building, whichever is greater. Exposure D shall apply where the ground surface roughness immediately upwind of the site is B or C, and the site is within a distance of 600 feet (183 m) or 20 times the building height, whichever is greater, from an Exposure D condition as defined in the previous sentence.

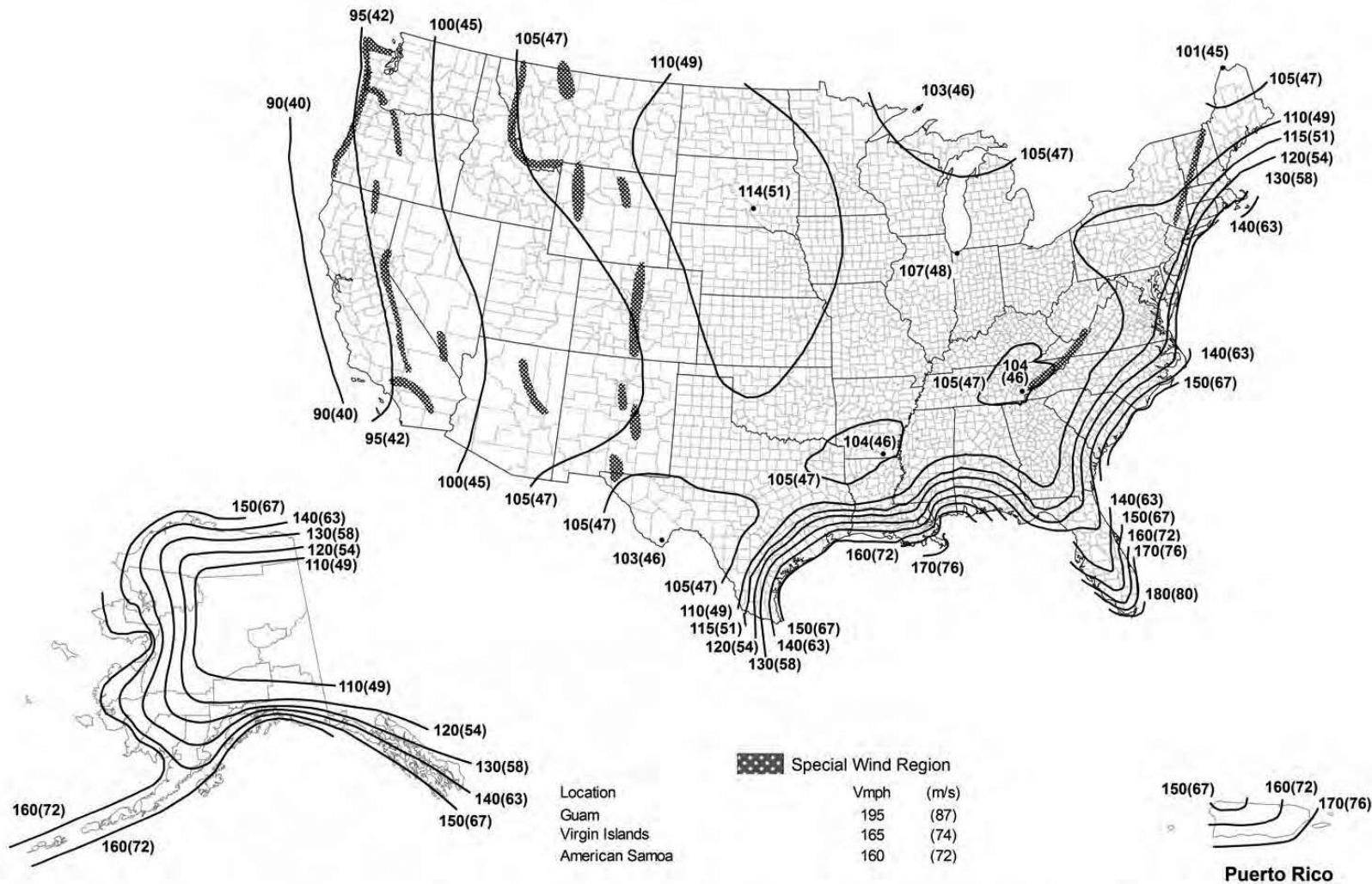
**1609A.5 Roof systems.** Roof systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1609A.5.1 through 1609A.5.3, as applicable.

**1609A.5.1 Roof deck.** The roof deck shall be designed to withstand the wind pressures determined in accordance with ASCE 7.

**1609A.5.2 Roof coverings.** Roof coverings shall comply with Section 1609A.5.1.

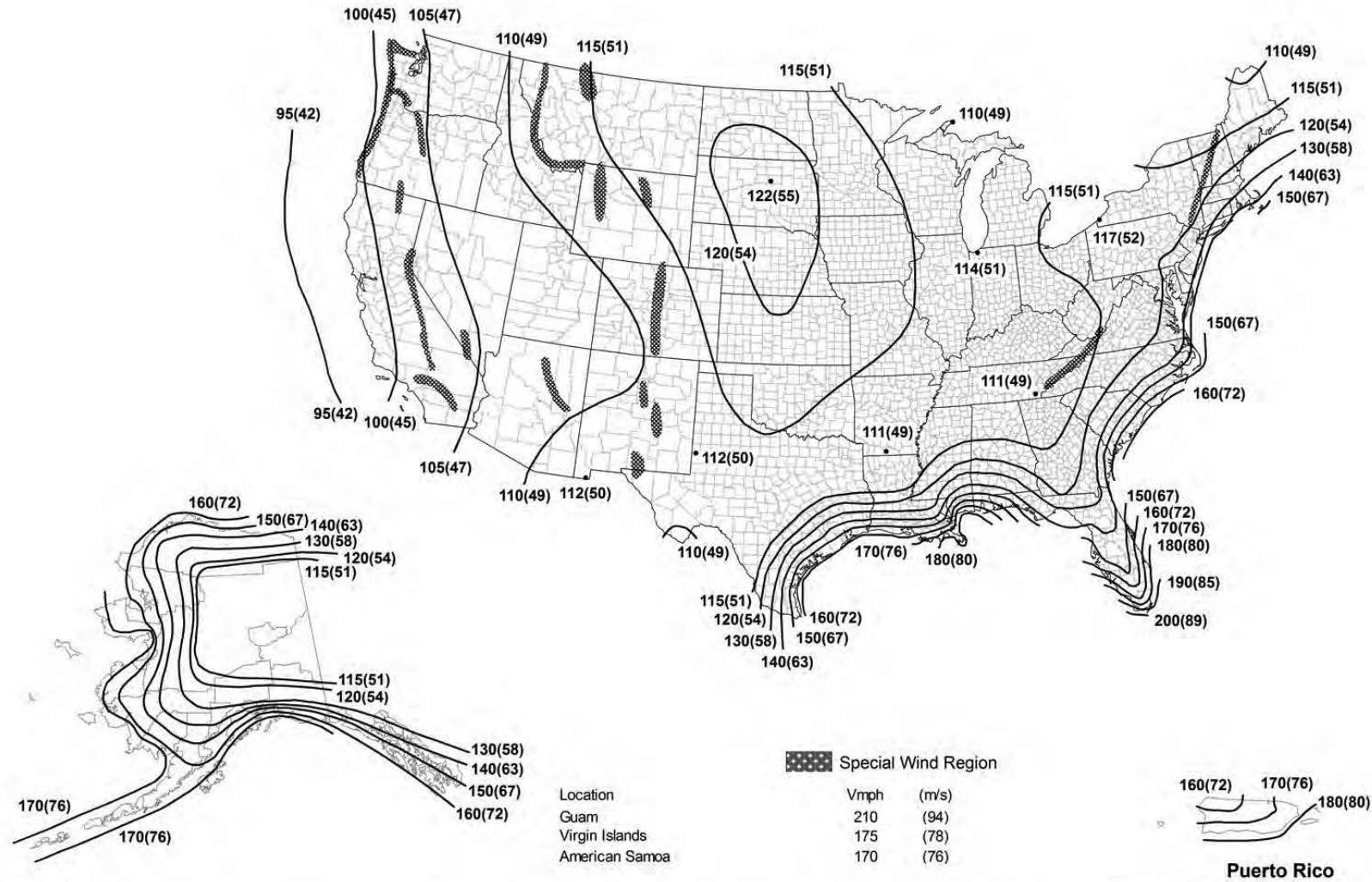
**Exception:** Rigid tile roof coverings that are air permeable and installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609A.5.1 are permitted to be designed in accordance with Section 1609A.5.3.

Asphalt shingles installed over a roof deck complying with Section 1609A.5.1 shall comply with the wind-resistance requirements of Section 1504.2.

**Notes:**

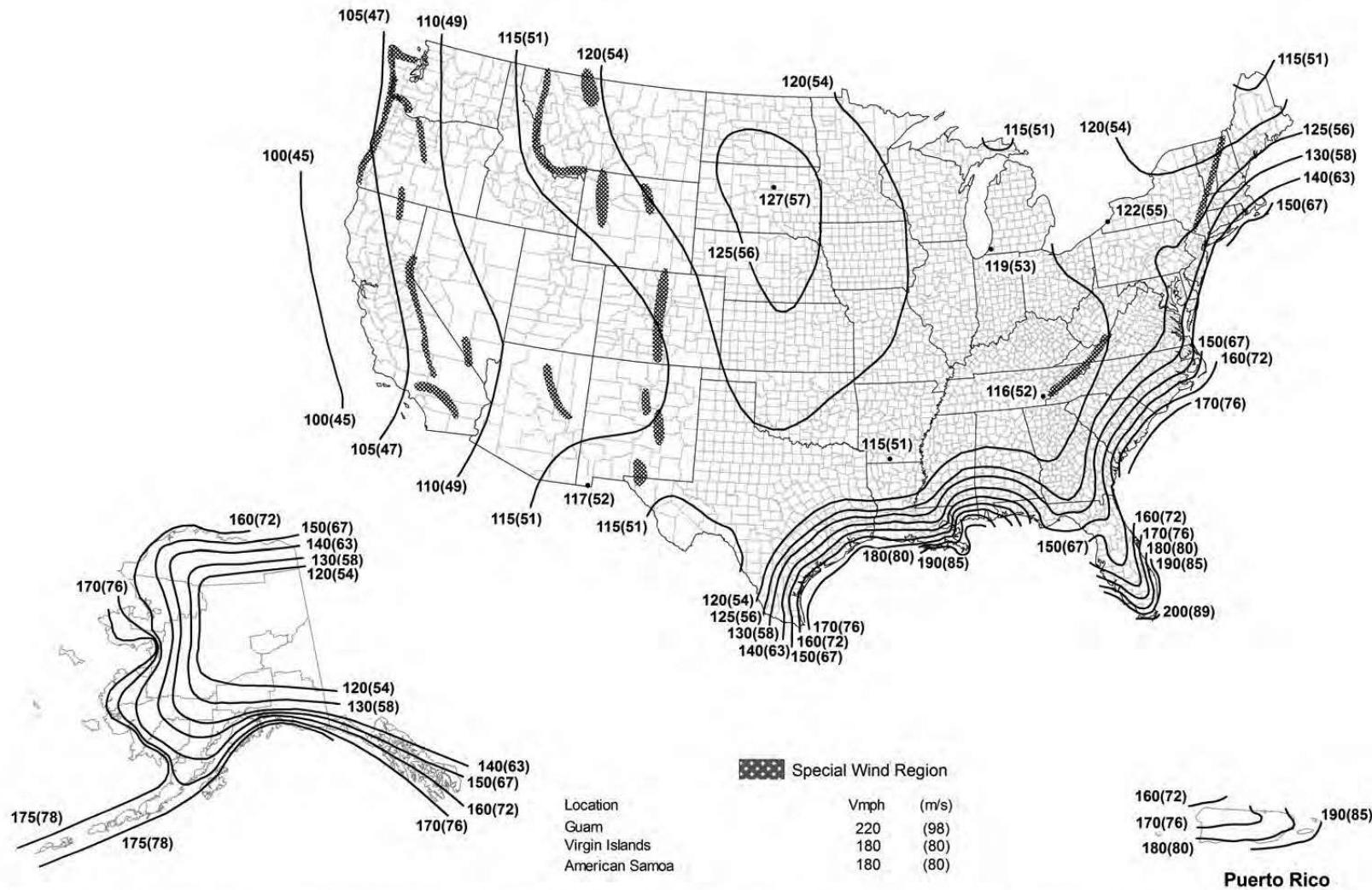
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 7% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).
6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed)

**FIGURE 1609A.3(1)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, V, FOR RISK CATEGORY II BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

**Notes:**

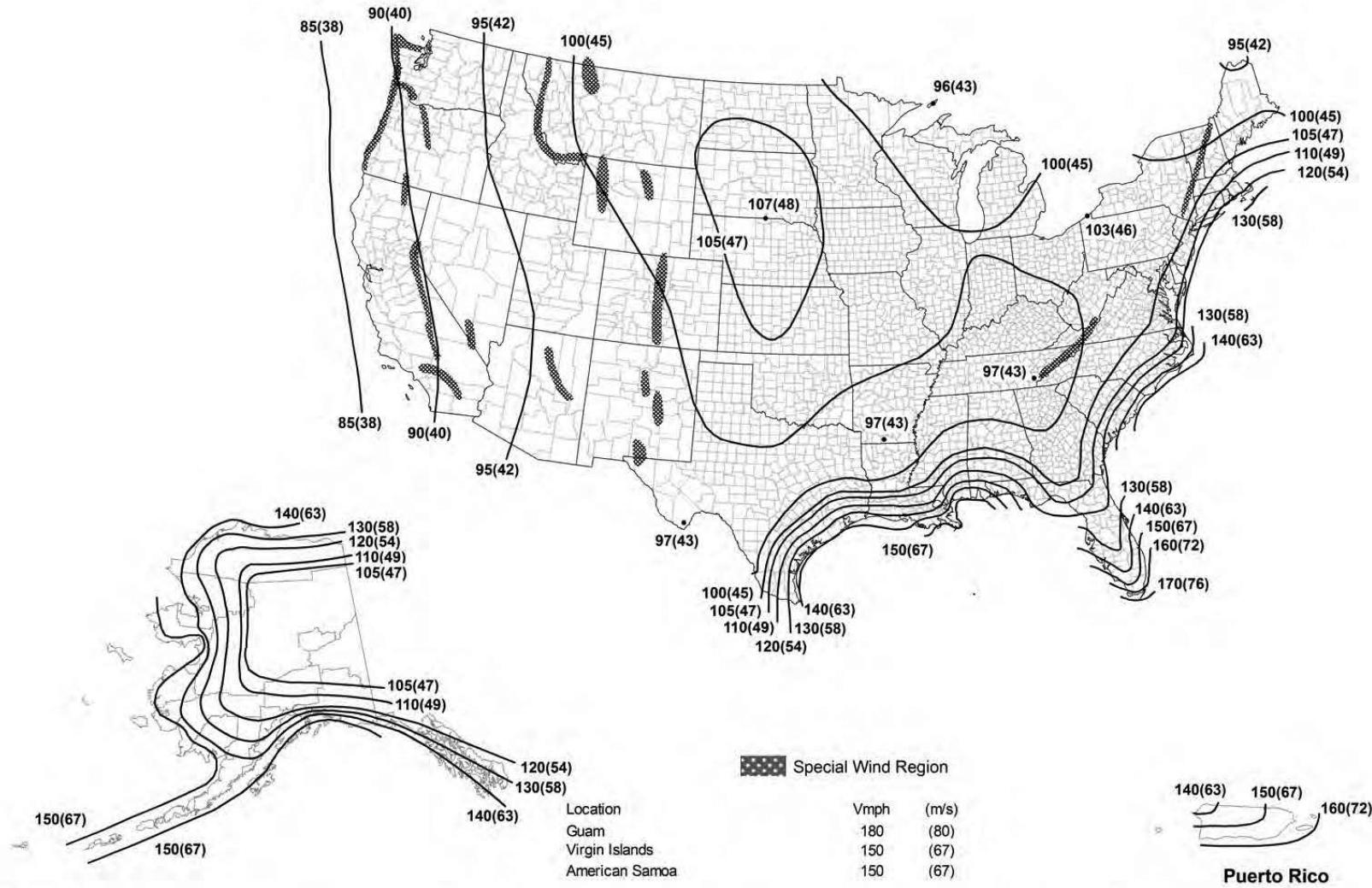
1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 3% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00143, MRI = 700 Years).
6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed)

**FIGURE 1609A.3(2)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, V, FOR RISK CATEGORY III BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

**Notes:**

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 1.6% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00033, MRI = 3000 Years).
6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed)

**FIGURE 1609A.3(3)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, V, FOR RISK CATEGORY IV BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

**Notes:**

1. Values are nominal design 3-second gust wind speeds in miles per hour (m/s) at 33 feet (10 m) above ground for Exposure C Category.
2. Linear interpolation between contours. Point values are provided to aid with interpolation.
3. Islands, coastal areas, and land boundaries outside the last contour shall use the last wind speed contour.
4. Mountainous terrain, gorges, ocean promontories, and special wind regions shall be examined for unusual wind conditions.
5. Wind speeds correspond to approximately a 15% probability of exceedance in 50 years (Annual Exceedance Probability = 0.00333, MRI = 300 Years).
6. Location-specific basic wind speeds shall be permitted to be determined using [www.atcouncil.org/windspeed](http://www.atcouncil.org/windspeed).

**FIGURE 1609A.3(4)**  
**BASIC DESIGN WIND SPEEDS, V, FOR RISK CATEGORY I BUILDINGS AND OTHER STRUCTURES**

**TABLE 1609A.3.1  
WIND SPEED CONVERSIONS<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

V	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190	200
<i>V<sub>asd</sub></i>	78	85	93	101	108	116	124	132	139	147	155

For SI: 1 mile per hour = 0.44 m/s.

a. Linear interpolation is permitted.

b. *V<sub>asd</sub>* = allowable stress design wind speed applicable to methods specified in Exceptions 1 through 5 of Section 1609A.1.1.

c. *V* = basic design wind speeds determined from Figures 1609A.3(1) through 1609A.3(12).

**1609A.5.3 Rigid tile.** Wind loads on rigid tile roof coverings shall be determined in accordance with the following equation:

$$M_a = q_h C_L b L L_a [1.0 - GC_p] \quad (\text{Equation 16A-18})$$

For SI:

$$M_a = \frac{q_h C_L b L L_a [1.0 - GC_p]}{1,000}$$

where:

*b* = Exposed width, feet (mm) of the roof tile.

*C<sub>L</sub>* = Lift coefficient. The lift coefficient for concrete and clay tile shall be 0.2 or shall be determined by test in accordance with Section 1504.3.1.

*GC<sub>p</sub>* = Roof pressure coefficient for each applicable roof zone determined from Chapter 30 of ASCE 7. Roof coefficients shall not be adjusted for internal pressure.

*L* = Length, feet (mm) of the roof tile.

*L<sub>a</sub>* = Moment arm, feet (mm) from the axis of rotation to the point of uplift on the roof tile. The point of uplift shall be taken at 0.76*L* from the head of the tile and the middle of the exposed width. For roof tiles with nails or screws (with or without a tail clip), the axis of rotation shall be taken as the head of the tile for direct deck application or as the top edge of the batten for battened applications. For roof tiles fastened only by a nail or screw along the side of the tile, the axis of rotation shall be determined by testing. For roof tiles installed with battens and fastened only by a clip near the tail of the tile, the moment arm shall be determined about the top edge of the batten with consideration given for the point of rotation of the tiles based on straight bond or broken bond and the tile profile.

*M<sub>a</sub>* = Aerodynamic uplift moment, feet-pounds (N-mm) acting to raise the tail of the tile.

*q<sub>h</sub>* = Wind velocity pressure, psf ( $\text{kN/m}^2$ ) determined from Section 26.10.2 of ASCE 7.

Concrete and clay roof tiles complying with the following limitations shall be designed to withstand the aerodynamic uplift moment as determined by this section.

1. The roof tiles shall be either loose laid on battens, mechanically fastened, mortar set or adhesive set.
2. The roof tiles shall be installed on solid sheathing that has been designed as components and cladding.

3. An underlayment shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 15.

4. The tile shall be single lapped interlocking with a minimum head lap of not less than 2 inches (51 mm).

5. The length of the tile shall be between 1.0 and 1.75 feet (305 mm and 533 mm).

6. The exposed width of the tile shall be between 0.67 and 1.25 feet (204 mm and 381 mm).

7. The maximum thickness of the tail of the tile shall not exceed 1.3 inches (33 mm).

8. Roof tiles using mortar set or adhesive set systems shall have not less than two-thirds of the tile's area free of mortar or adhesive contact.

## SECTION 1610A SOIL LOADS AND HYDROSTATIC PRESSURE

**1610A.1 Lateral pressures.** Foundation walls and retaining walls shall be designed to resist lateral soil loads from adjacent soil. Soil loads specified in Table 1610A.1 shall be used as the minimum design lateral soil loads unless determined otherwise by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803A. Foundation walls and other walls in which horizontal movement is restricted at the top shall be designed for at-rest pressure. Retaining walls free to move and rotate at the top shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure. Lateral pressure from surcharge loads shall be added to the lateral soil load. Lateral pressure shall be increased if expansive soils are present at the site. Foundation walls shall be designed to support the weight of the full hydrostatic pressure of undrained backfill unless a drainage system is installed in accordance with Sections 1805A.4.2 and 1805A.4.3.

**Exception:** Foundation walls extending not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade and laterally supported at the top by flexible diaphragms shall be permitted to be designed for active pressure.

**1610A.2 Uplift loads on floor and foundations.** Basement floors, slabs on ground, foundations, and similar approximately horizontal elements below grade shall be designed to resist uplift loads where applicable. The upward pressure of water shall be taken as the full hydrostatic pressure applied over the entire area. The hydrostatic load shall be measured from the underside of the element being evaluated. The design for upward loads caused by expansive soils shall comply with Section 1808A.6.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**TABLE 1610A.1  
LATERAL SOIL LOAD**

DESCRIPTION OF BACKFILL MATERIAL <sup>c</sup>	UNIFIED SOIL CLASSIFICATION	DESIGN LATERAL SOIL LOAD <sup>a</sup> (pound per square foot per foot of depth)	
		Active pressure	At-rest pressure
Well-graded, clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GW	30	60
Poorly graded clean gravels; gravel-sand mixes	GP	30	60
Silty gravels, poorly graded gravel-sand mixes	GM	40	60
Clayey gravels, poorly graded gravel-and-clay mixes	GC	45	60
Well-graded, clean sands; gravelly sand mixes	SW	30	60
Poorly graded clean sands; sand-gravel mixes	SP	30	60
Silty sands, poorly graded sand-silt mixes	SM	45	60
Sand-silt clay mix with plastic fines	SM-SC	45	100
Clayey sands, poorly graded sand-clay mixes	SC	60	100
Inorganic silts and clayey silts	ML	45	100
Mixture of inorganic silt and clay	ML-CL	60	100
Inorganic clays of low to medium plasticity	CL	60	100
Organic silts and silt clays, low plasticity	OL	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clayey silts, elastic silts	MH	Note b	Note b
Inorganic clays of high plasticity	CH	Note b	Note b
Organic clays and silty clays	OH	Note b	Note b

For SI: 1 pound per square foot per foot of depth = 0.157 kPa/m, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Design lateral soil loads are given for moist conditions for the specified soils at their optimum densities. Actual field conditions shall govern. Submerged or saturated soil pressures shall include the weight of the buoyant soil plus the hydrostatic loads.
- b. Unsuitable as backfill material.
- c. The definition and classification of soil materials shall be in accordance with ASTM D2487.

## SECTION 1611A RAIN LOADS

**1611A.1 Design rain loads.** Each portion of a roof shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater as per the requirements of Chapter 8 of ASCE 7. The design rainfall shall be based on the 100-year 15-minute duration event, or on other rainfall rates determined from approved local weather data. Alternatively, a design rainfall of twice the 100-year hourly rainfall rate indicated in Figures 1611A.1(1) through 1611A.1(5) shall be permitted.

$$R = 5.2(d_s + d_h) \quad (\text{Equation 16A-19})$$

For SI:  $R = 0.0098(d_s + d_h)$

where:

$d_h$  = Additional depth of water on the undeflected roof above the inlet of secondary drainage system at its design flow (in other words, the hydraulic head), in inches (mm).

$d_s$  = Depth of water on the undeflected roof up to the inlet of secondary drainage system when the primary

drainage system is blocked (in other words, the static head), in inches (mm).

$R$  = Rain load on the undeflected roof, in psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ). Where the phrase “undeflected roof” is used, deflections from loads (including dead loads) shall not be considered when determining the amount of rain on the roof.

**1611A.2 Ponding instability.** Susceptible bays of roofs shall be evaluated for ponding instability in accordance with Chapters 7 and 8 of ASCE 7.

**1611A.3 Controlled drainage.** Roofs equipped with hardware to control the rate of drainage shall be equipped with a secondary drainage system at a higher elevation that limits accumulation of water on the roof above that elevation. Such roofs shall be designed to sustain the load of rainwater that will accumulate on them to the elevation of the secondary drainage system plus the uniform load caused by water that rises above the inlet of the secondary drainage system at its design flow determined from Section 1611A.1. Such roofs shall be checked for ponding instability in accordance with Section 1611A.2.

## SECTION 1612A FLOOD LOADS

**1612A.1 General.** Within flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612A.3, all new construction of buildings, structures and portions of buildings and structures, including substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage to buildings and structures, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads. For buildings that are located in more than one flood hazard area, the provisions associated with the most restrictive flood hazard area shall apply.

**1612A.2 Design and construction.** The design and construction of buildings and structures located in flood hazard areas, including coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones, shall be in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7 and ASCE 24.

**1612A.3 Establishment of flood hazard areas.** To establish flood hazard areas, the applicable governing authority shall adopt a flood hazard map and supporting data. The flood hazard map shall include, at a minimum, areas of special flood hazard as identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency's *Flood Insurance Study (FIS)* adopted by the local authority having jurisdiction where the project is located, as amended or revised with the accompanying *Flood Insurance Rate Map (FIRM)* and Flood Boundary and Floodway Map (FBFM) and related supporting data along with any revisions thereto. The adopted flood hazard map and supporting data are hereby adopted by reference and declared to be part of this section.

**1612A.3.1 Design flood elevations.** Where design flood elevations are not included in the flood hazard areas established in Section 1612A.3, or where floodways are not designated, the building official is authorized to require the applicant to do one of the following:

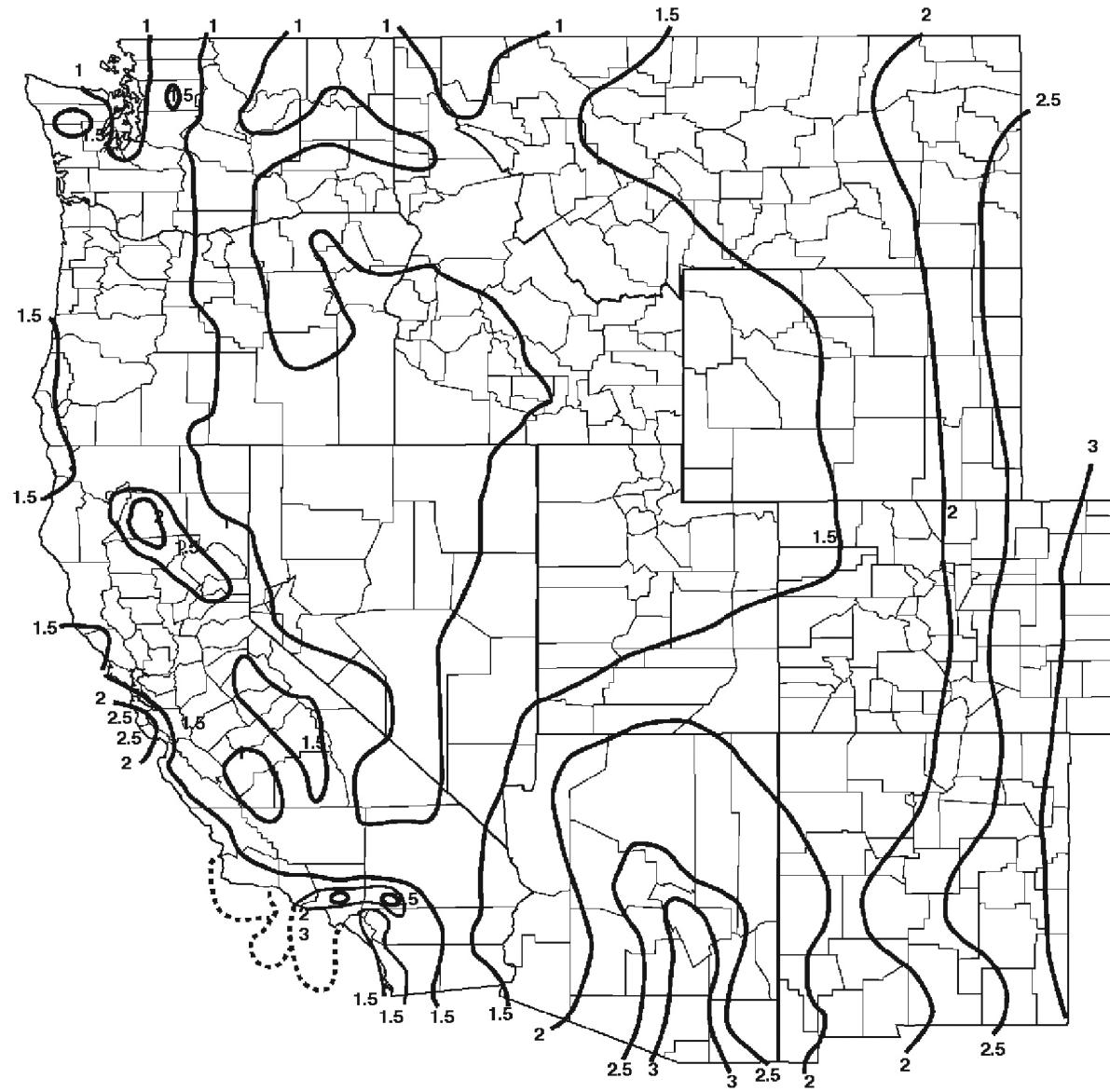
1. Obtain and reasonably utilize any design flood elevation and floodway data available from a federal, state or other source.
2. Determine the design flood elevation or floodway in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering practices used to define special flood hazard areas. Determinations shall be undertaken by a registered design professional who shall document that the technical methods used reflect currently accepted engineering practice.

**1612A.3.2 Determination of impacts.** In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, the applicant shall provide a floodway analysis that demonstrates that the proposed work will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the jurisdiction of the applicable governing authority.

**1612A.4 Flood hazard documentation.** The following documentation shall be prepared and sealed by a registered design professional and submitted to the building official:

1. For construction in flood hazard areas other than coastal high hazard areas or coastal A zones:
  - 1.1. The elevation of the lowest floor, including the basement, as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.12.1.
  - 1.2. For fully enclosed areas below the design flood elevation where provisions to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters do not meet the minimum requirements in Section 2.7.2.1 of ASCE 24, construction documents shall include a statement that the design will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces in accordance with Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.
  - 1.3. For dry floodproofed nonresidential buildings, construction documents shall include a statement that the dry floodproofing is designed in accordance with ASCE 24 and shall include the flood emergency plan specified in Chapter 6 of ASCE 24.
2. For construction in coastal high hazard areas and coastal A zones:
  - 2.1. The elevation of the bottom of the lowest horizontal structural member as required by the lowest floor elevation inspection in Section 110.3.3 and for the final inspection in Section 110.3.12.1.
  - 2.2. Construction documents shall include a statement that the building is designed in accordance with ASCE 24, including that the pile or column foundation and building or structure to be attached thereto is designed to be anchored to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement due to the effects of wind and flood loads acting simultaneously on all building components, and other load requirements of Chapter 16.
  - 2.3. For breakaway walls designed to have a resistance of more than 20 psf ( $0.96 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) determined using allowable stress design, construction documents shall include a statement that the breakaway wall is designed in accordance with ASCE 24.
  - 2.4. For breakaway walls where provisions to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters do not meet the minimum requirements in Section 2.7.2.1 of ASCE 24, construction documents shall include a statement that the design will provide for equalization of hydrostatic flood forces in accordance with Section 2.7.2.2 of ASCE 24.

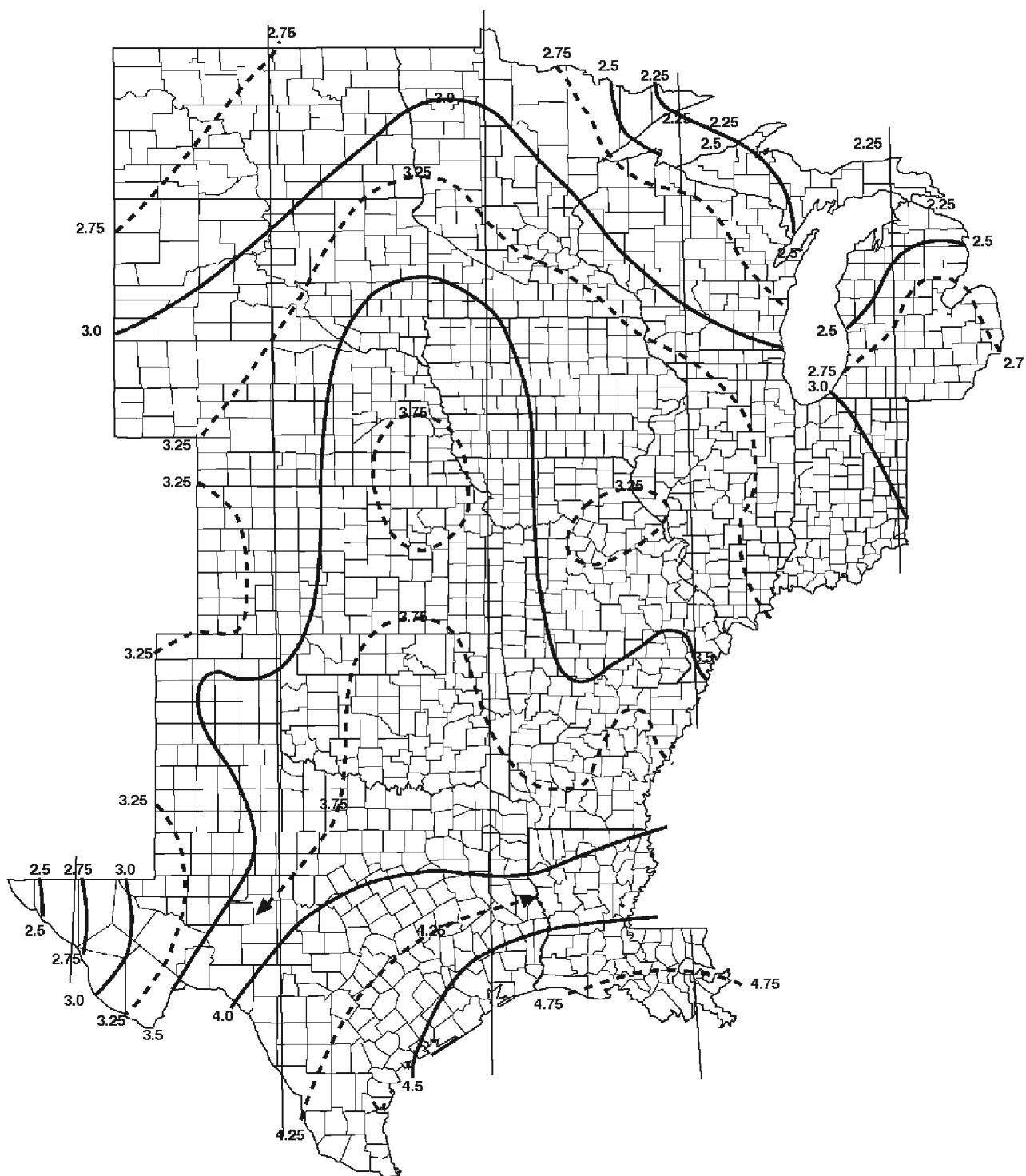
## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

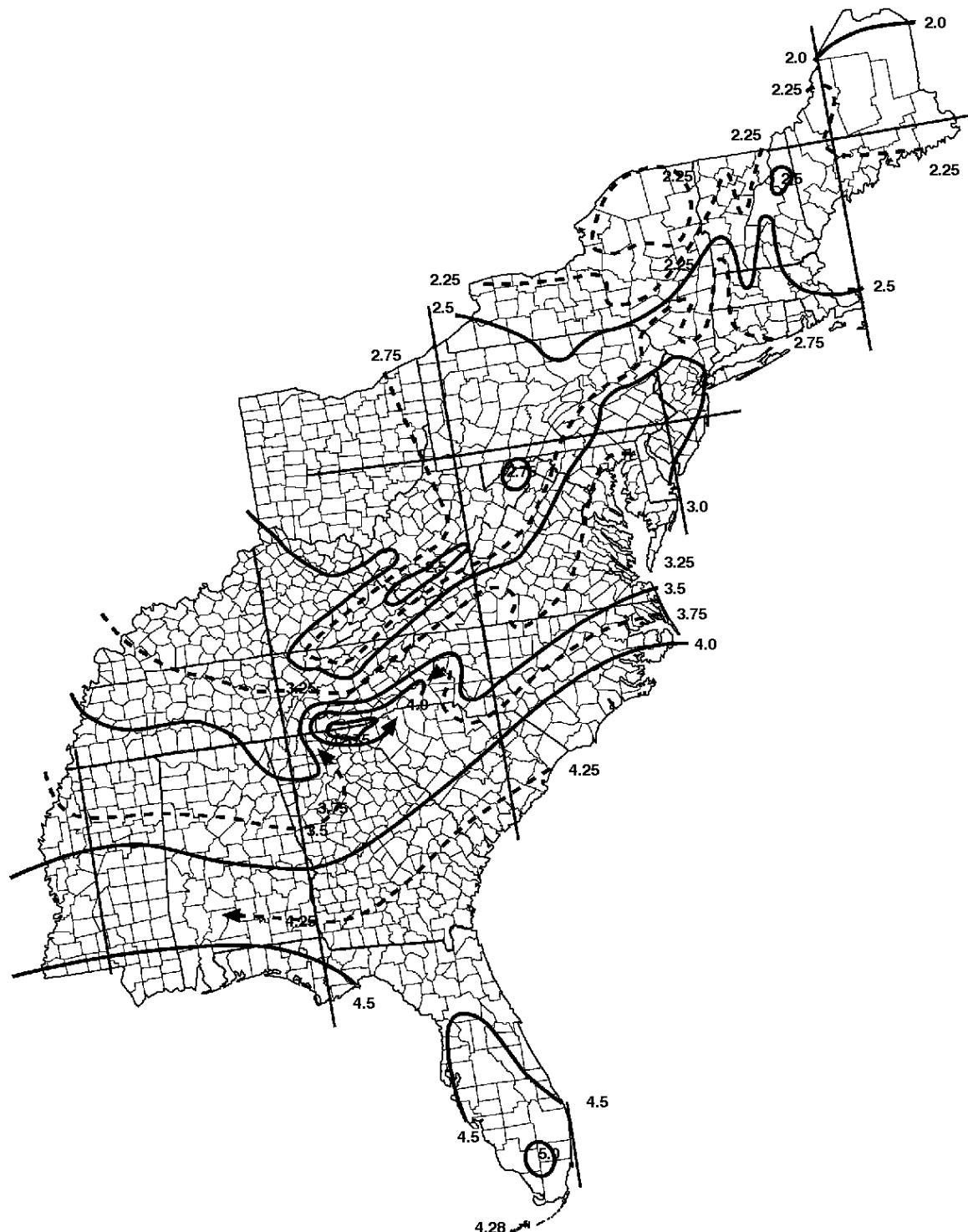


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

**FIGURE 1611A.1(1)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) WESTERN UNITED STATES**

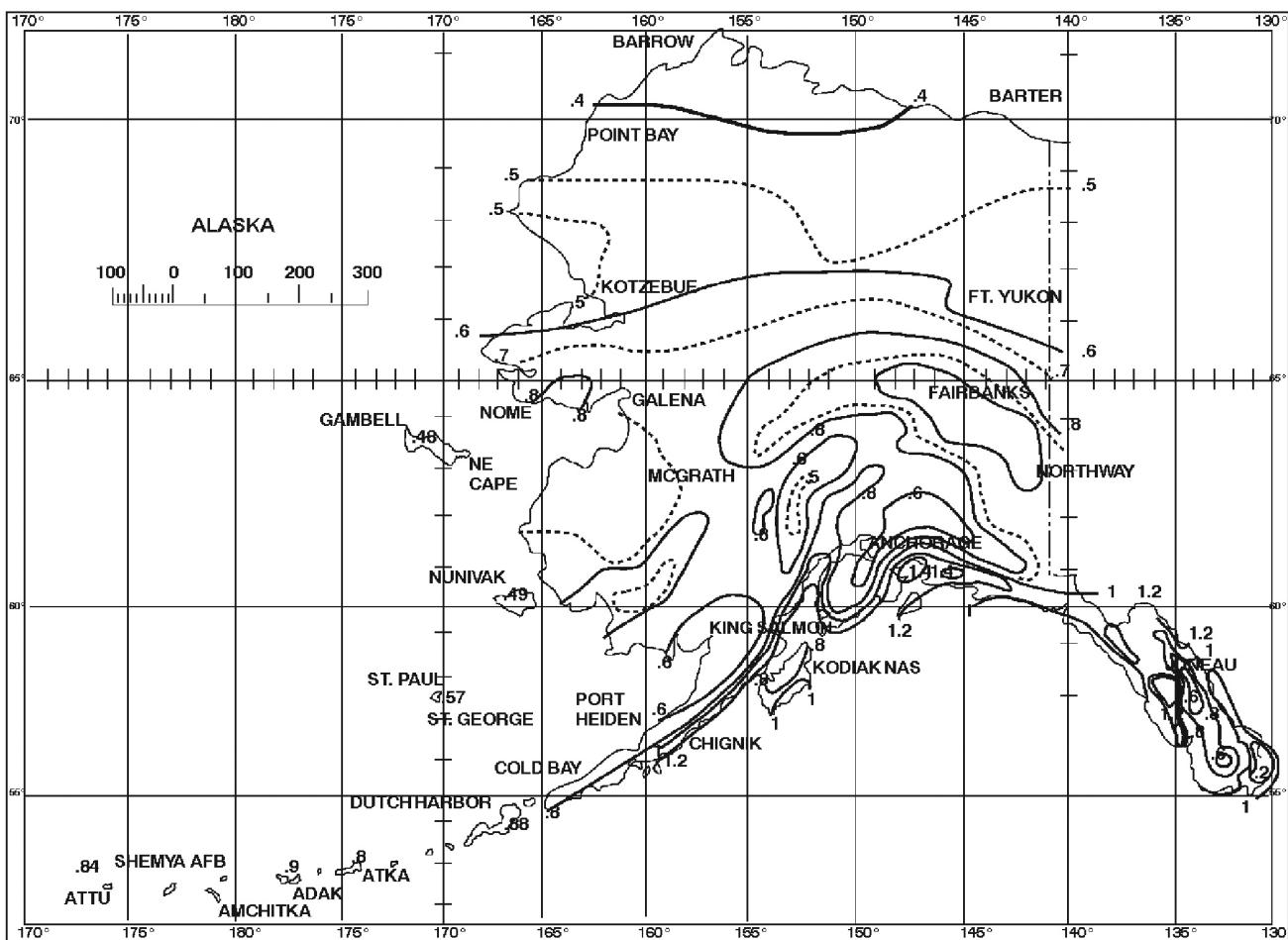




For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

**FIGURE 1611A.1(3)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) EASTERN UNITED STATES**

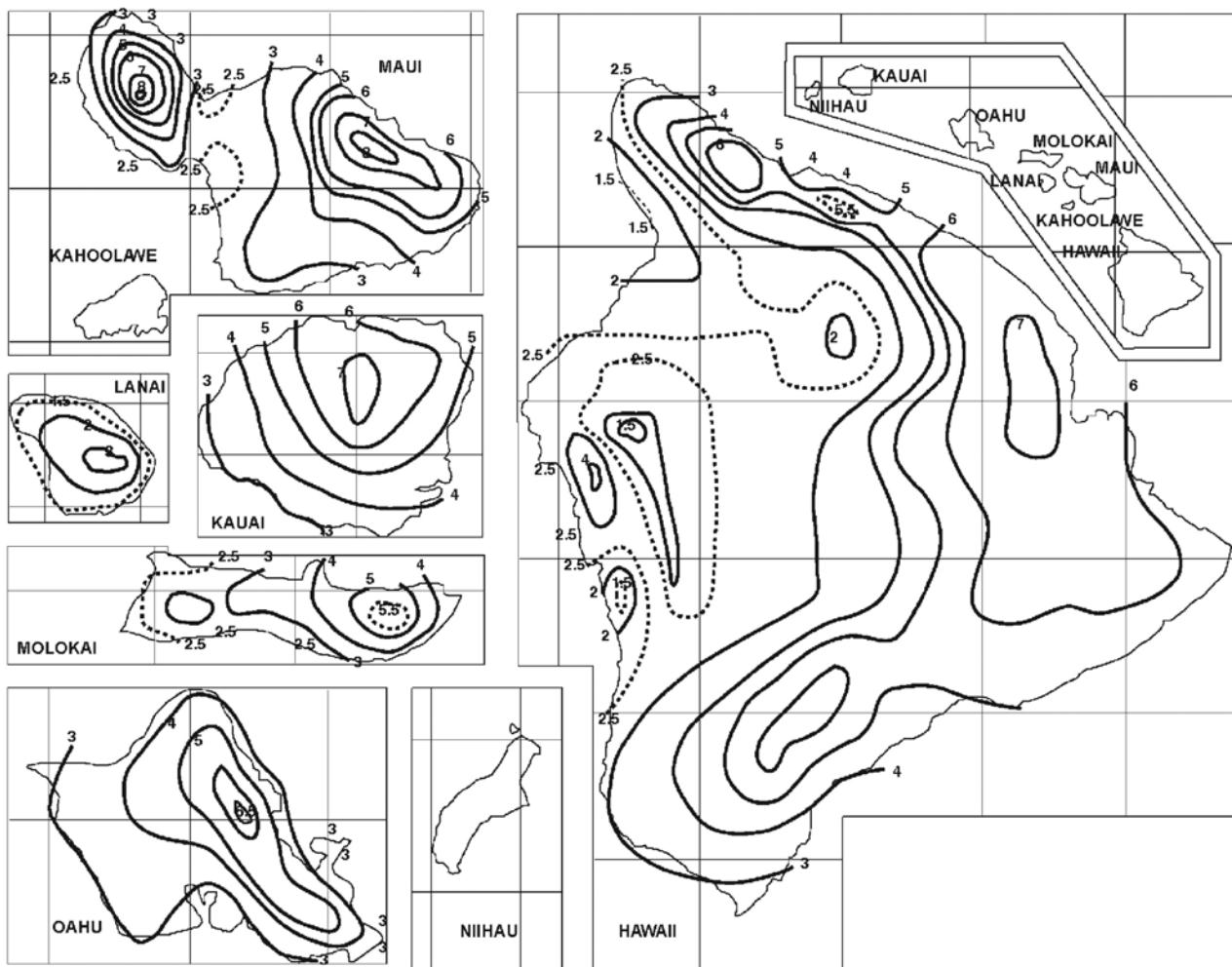


For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

Source: National Weather Service, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Washington, DC.

**FIGURE 1611A.1(4)**  
**100-YEAR, 1-HOUR RAINFALL (INCHES) ALASKA**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN



## SECTION 1613A EARTHQUAKE LOADS

**1613A.1 Scope.** Every structure, and portion thereof, including nonstructural components that are permanently attached to structures and their supports and attachments, shall be designed and constructed to resist the effects of earthquake motions in accordance with Chapters 11, 12, 13, 15, 17 and 18 of ASCE 7, as applicable. The seismic design category for a structure *shall* be determined in accordance with Section 1613A.

**1613A.2 Seismic ground motion values.** Seismic ground motion values shall be determined in accordance with this section.

**1613A.2.1 Mapped acceleration parameters.** The parameters  $S_s$  and  $S_1$  shall be determined from the 0.2 and 1-second spectral response accelerations shown on Figures 1613.2.1(1) through 1613.2.1(10).

**1613A.2.2 Site class definitions.** Based on the site soil properties, the site shall be classified as Site Class A, B, C, D, E or F in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7.

Where the soil properties are not known in sufficient detail to determine the site class, Site Class D, subjected to the requirements of Section 1613A.2.3, shall be used unless the building official or geotechnical data determines that Site Class E or F soils are present at the site.

Where site investigations that are performed in accordance with Chapter 20 of ASCE 7 reveal rock conditions consistent with Site Class B, but site-specific velocity measurements are not made, the site coefficients  $F_a$  and  $F_v$  shall be taken at unity (1.0).

**1613A.2.3 Site coefficients and adjusted maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration parameters.** The maximum considered earthquake spectral response acceleration for short periods,  $S_{MS}$ , and at 1-second period,  $S_{MI}$ , adjusted for site class effects shall be determined by Equations 16A-20 and 16-21, respectively:

$$S_{MS} = F_a S_s \quad (\text{Equation 16A-20})$$

$$S_{MI} = F_v S_1 \quad (\text{Equation 16A-21})$$

but  $S_{MS}$  shall not be taken less than  $S_{MI}$  except when determining the seismic design category in accordance with Section 1613A.2.5.

where:

$F_a$  = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613A.2.3(1).

$F_v$  = Site coefficient defined in Table 1613A.2.3(2).

$S_s$  = The mapped spectral accelerations for short periods as determined in Section 1613A.2.1.

$S_1$  = The mapped spectral accelerations for a 1-second period as determined in Section 1613A.2.1.

Where Site Class D is selected as the default site class per Section 1613A.2.2, the value of  $F_a$  shall be not less than 1.2.

**1613A.2.4 Design spectral response acceleration parameters.** Five-percent damped design spectral response acceleration at short periods,  $S_{DS}$ , and at 1-second period,  $S_{DI}$ , shall be determined from Equations 16-22 and Equation 16-23, respectively:

$$S_{DS} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MS} \quad (\text{Equation 16A-22})$$

$$S_{DI} = \frac{2}{3} S_{MI} \quad (\text{Equation 16A-23})$$

where:

$S_{MS}$  = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for short period as determined in Section 1613A.2.3.

$S_{MI}$  = The maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations for 1-second period as determined in Section 1613A.2.3.

**1613A.2.5 Determination of seismic design category.** Structures classified as Risk Category I, II or III that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period,  $S_1$ , is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category E. Structures classified as Risk Category IV that are located where the mapped spectral response acceleration parameter at 1-second period,  $S_1$ , is greater than or equal to 0.75 shall be assigned to Seismic Design Category F. Other structures shall be assigned to *Seismic Design Category D*.

**1613A.2.5.1 Alternative seismic design category determination.** Not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.

**1613A.2.5.2 Simplified design procedure.** Not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.

**1613A.3 Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems.** Ballasted, roof-mounted photovoltaic panel systems need not be rigidly attached to the roof or supporting structure.

[DSA-SS] Ballasted, roof-mounted photovoltaic panel systems shall comply with ASCE 7 13.6.12.

[OSHPD 1 & 4] Ballasted photovoltaic panel systems shall be considered as an alternative system.

## SECTION 1614A ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS

**1614A.1 General.** Ice-sensitive structures shall be designed for atmospheric ice loads in accordance with Chapter 10 of ASCE 7.

**TABLE 1613A.2.3(1)**  
**VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT  $F_a^a$**

SITE CLASS	MAPPED RISK TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE <sub>R</sub> ) SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETER AT SHORT PERIOD					
	$S_s \leq 0.25$	$S_s = 0.50$	$S_s = 0.75$	$S_s = 1.00$	$S_s = 1.25$	$S_s \geq 1.5$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9	0.9
C	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2
D	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.1	1.0	1.0
E	2.4	1.7	1.3	1.2 <sup>c</sup>	1.2 <sup>c</sup>	1.2 <sup>c</sup>
F	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at short period,  $S_s$ .

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7.

c. See requirements for site-specific ground motions in Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7. These values of  $F_a$  shall only be used for calculation of  $T_s$ , determination of Seismic Design Category, linear interpolation for intermediate values of  $S_s$ , and when taking the exception under Item 2 within Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7.

**TABLE 1613A.2.3(2)**  
**VALUES OF SITE COEFFICIENT  $F_v^a$**

SITE CLASS	MAPPED RISK TARGETED MAXIMUM CONSIDERED EARTHQUAKE (MCE <sub>R</sub> ) SPECTRAL RESPONSE ACCELERATION PARAMETER AT 1-SECOND PERIOD					
	$S_1 \leq 0.1$	$S_1 = 0.2$	$S_1 = 0.3$	$S_1 = 0.4$	$S_1 = 0.5$	$S_1 \geq 0.6$
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
C	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4
D	2.4	2.2 <sup>c</sup>	2.0 <sup>c</sup>	1.9 <sup>c</sup>	1.8 <sup>c</sup>	1.7 <sup>c</sup>
E	4.2	3.3 <sup>c</sup>	2.8 <sup>c</sup>	2.4 <sup>c</sup>	2.2 <sup>c</sup>	2.0 <sup>c</sup>
F	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b	Note b

a. Use straight-line interpolation for intermediate values of mapped spectral response acceleration at 1-second period,  $S_1$ .

b. Values shall be determined in accordance with Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7.

c. See requirements for site-specific ground motions in Section 11.4.8 of ASCE 7. These values of  $F_v$  shall only be used for calculation of  $T_s$ , determination of Seismic Design Category, linear interpolation for intermediate values of  $S_1$ , and when taking the exceptions under Items 1 and 2 of Section 11.4.8 for the calculation of  $S_{D1}$ .

## SECTION 1615A TSUNAMI LOADS

**1615A.1 General.** The design and construction of Risk Category III and IV buildings and structures located in the Tsunami Design Zones defined in the ASCE Tsunami Design Geodatabase, or other data determined applicable by the enforcement agency, shall be in accordance with Chapter 6 of ASCE 7, except as modified by this code. [DSA-SS] *Tsunami Risk Category for public school, community college and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings and structures shall be identified and submitted for acceptance by DSA. Determination of the Tsunami Risk Category shall be proposed by the design professional in general responsible charge in coordination with the owner and local community based upon the relative importance of that facility to provide vital services, provide important functions and protect special populations. The determination of relative importance shall include consideration of a tsunami warning and evacuation plan and procedure when adopted by the local community.*

## SECTION 1616A STRUCTURAL INTEGRITY

**1616A.1 General.** High-rise buildings that are assigned to Risk Category III or IV shall comply with the requirements of Section 1616A.2 if they are frame structures, or Section 1616A.3 if they are bearing wall structures.

**1616A.2 Frame structures.** Frame structures shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**1616A.2.1 Concrete frame structures.** Frame structures constructed primarily of reinforced or prestressed concrete, either cast-in-place or precast, or a combination of these, shall conform to the requirements of Section 4.10 of ACI 318. Where ACI 318 requires that nonprestressed reinforcing or prestressing steel pass through the region bounded by the longitudinal column reinforcement, that reinforcing or prestressing steel shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength equal to two-thirds of the required one-way vertical strength of the connection of the floor or roof system to the column in each direc-

tion of beam or slab reinforcement passing through the column.

**Exception:** Where concrete slabs with continuous reinforcement having an area not less than 0.0015 times the concrete area in each of two orthogonal directions are present and are either monolithic with or equivalently bonded to beams, girders or columns, the longitudinal reinforcing or prestressing steel passing through the column reinforcement shall have a nominal tensile strength of one-third of the required one-way vertical strength of the connection of the floor or roof system to the column in each direction of beam or slab reinforcement passing through the column.

**1616A.2.2 Structural steel, open web steel joist or joist girder, or composite steel and concrete frame structures.** Frame structures constructed with a structural steel frame or a frame composed of open web steel joists, joist girders with or without other structural steel elements or a frame composed of composite steel or composite steel joists and reinforced concrete elements shall conform to the requirements of this section.

**1616A.2.2.1 Columns.** Each column splice shall have the minimum design strength in tension to transfer the design dead and live load tributary to the column between the splice and the splice or base immediately below.

**1616A.2.2.2 Beams.** End connections of all beams and girders shall have a minimum nominal axial tensile strength equal to the required vertical shear strength for allowable stress design (ASD) or two-thirds of the required shear strength for load and resistance factor

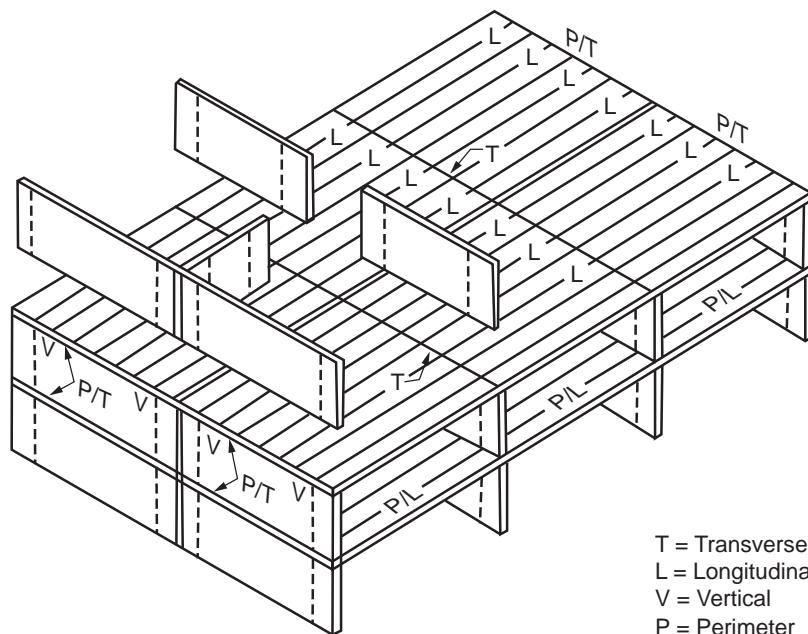
design (LRFD) but not less than 10 kips (45 kN). For the purpose of this section, the shear force and the axial tensile force need not be considered to act simultaneously.

**Exception:** Where beams, girders, open web joist and joist girders support a concrete slab or concrete slab on metal deck that is attached to the beam or girder with not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-diameter (9.5 mm) headed shear studs, at a spacing of not more than 12 inches (305 mm) on center, averaged over the length of the member, or other attachment having equivalent shear strength, and the slab contains continuous distributed reinforcement in each of two orthogonal directions with an area not less than 0.0015 times the concrete area, the nominal axial tension strength of the end connection shall be permitted to be taken as half the required vertical shear strength for ASD or one-third of the required shear strength for LRFD, but not less than 10 kips (45 kN).

**1616A.3 Bearing wall structures.** Bearing wall structures shall have vertical ties in all load-bearing walls and longitudinal ties, transverse ties and perimeter ties at each floor level in accordance with this section and as shown in Figure 1616A.3.

**1616A.3.1 Concrete wall structures.** Precast bearing wall structures constructed solely of reinforced or prestressed concrete, or combinations of these shall conform to the requirements of Sections 16.2.4 and 16.2.5 of ACI 318.

**1616A.3.2 Other bearing wall structures.** Ties in bearing wall structures other than those covered in Section 1616A.3.1 shall conform to this section.



**FIGURE 1616A.3**  
**LONGITUDINAL, PERIMETER, TRANSVERSE AND VERTICAL TIES**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**1616A.3.2.1 Longitudinal ties.** Longitudinal ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Longitudinal ties shall extend across interior load-bearing walls and shall connect to exterior load-bearing walls and shall be spaced at not greater than 10 feet (3038 mm) on center. Ties shall have a minimum nominal tensile strength,  $T_r$ , given by Equation 16A-24. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_r = w LS \leq \alpha_r S \quad (\text{Equation 16A-24})$$

where:

$L$  = The span of the horizontal element in the direction of the tie, between bearing walls, feet (m).

$w$  = The weight per unit area of the floor or roof in the span being tied to or across the wall, psf ( $N/m^2$ ).

$S$  = The spacing between ties, feet (m).

$\alpha_r$  = A coefficient with a value of 1,500 pounds per foot (2.25 kN/m) for masonry bearing wall structures and a value of 375 pounds per foot (0.6 kN/m) for structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

**1616A.3.2.2 Transverse ties.** Transverse ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Transverse ties shall be placed not farther apart than the spacing of load-bearing walls. Transverse ties shall have minimum nominal tensile strength  $T_r$ , given by Equation 16A-24. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

**1616A.3.2.3 Perimeter ties.** Perimeter ties shall consist of continuous reinforcement in slabs; continuous or spliced decks or sheathing; continuous or spliced members framing to, within or across walls; or connections of continuous framing members to walls. Ties around the perimeter of each floor and roof shall be located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the edge and shall provide a nominal strength in tension not less than  $T_p$ , given by Equation 16A-25. For ASD the minimum nominal tensile strength shall be permitted to be taken as 1.5 times the allowable tensile stress times the area of the tie.

$$T_p = 200w \leq \beta_T \quad (\text{Equation 16A-25})$$

For SI:  $T_p = 90.7w \leq \beta_T$

where:

$w$  = As defined in Section 1616A.3.2.1.

$\beta_T$  = A coefficient with a value of 16,000 pounds (7200 kN) for structures with masonry bearing walls and a value of 4,000 pounds (1300 kN) for

structures with bearing walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

**1616A.3.2.4 Vertical ties.** Vertical ties shall consist of continuous or spliced reinforcing, continuous or spliced members, wall sheathing or other engineered systems. Vertical tension ties shall be provided in bearing walls and shall be continuous over the height of the building. The minimum nominal tensile strength for vertical ties within a bearing wall shall be equal to the weight of the wall within that story plus the weight of the diaphragm tributary to the wall in the story below. Not fewer than two ties shall be provided for each wall. The strength of each tie need not exceed 3,000 pounds per foot (450 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of masonry construction or 750 pounds per foot (140 kN/m) of wall tributary to the tie for walls of cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

## SECTION 1617A MODIFICATIONS TO ASCE 7

**1617A.1 General.** The text of ASCE 7 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1617A.1.1 through 1617A.1.40.

**1617A.1.1 ASCE 7, Section 1.3.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 1.3 by adding Section 1.3.8 as follows:

**1.3.8 Structural design criteria.** Where design is based on ASCE 7, Chapters 16, 17 or 18, the ground motion, analysis and design methods, material assumptions, testing requirements and acceptance criteria proposed by the engineer shall be submitted to the enforcement agency in the form of structural design criteria for approval. [OSHA-SS] Structural design criteria including wind tunnel design recommendations are required where design is based on ASCE 7, Chapter 31.

[OSHA-SS] Peer review requirements in Section 322 of the California Existing Building Code shall apply to design reviews required by ASCE 7, Chapters 17 and 18.

[OSHPD 1 & 4] Peer review requirements in Section 1617A.1.41 of this code shall apply to design reviews required by ASCE 7, Chapters 17 and 18.

**1617A.1.2 ASCE 7, Section 11.1.3.** Replace last paragraph of ASCE 7, Section 11.1.3, by the following:

Non-building structures similar to buildings shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Chapter 12.

**1617A.1.3 ASCE 7, Section 11.4.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 11.4 to include the following:

Seismic ground motion values shall include updated subsections in Supplement 3. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Use of the 2020 NEHRP Provisions for multi-period spectra shall be permitted, where all of the following are included.

1. A detailed seismic design criterion shall be submitted to and approved by the AHJ.
2. Seismic Ground Motion values shall be determined using the 2020 NEHRP Provisions, Section 11.4.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

3. *Geologic Hazard and Geotechnical Investigation shall be performed using the 2020 NEHRP Provisions, Section 11.8.*
4. *Vertical Ground Motions, where required, shall be determined using the 2020 NEHRP Provisions, Section 11.9.*
5. *Site Classification shall be determined using the 2020 NEHRP Provisions, Chapter 20.*
6. *Site-Specific Ground Motion Procedures shall be determined using the 2020 NEHRP Provisions, Chapter 21.*
7. *Seismic Ground Motion and Long-period Transition Maps shall be used from Chapter 22 of the 2020 NEHRP Provisions.*
8.  *$S_{DS}$  and  $S_{DI}$  obtained from the multi-period spectra determined using the 2020 NEHRP Provisions shall be used, where required in Chapter 12, 13 and 15 of ASCE 7-16.*

**1617A.1.4 ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1.** Modify ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1 as follows:

#### A. BEARING WALL SYSTEMS

5. Intermediate Precast Shear Walls—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
17. Light-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials—*Not permitted by OSHPD and DSA-SS.*

#### B. BUILDING FRAME SYSTEMS

3. Ordinary steel concentrically braced frames—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
8. Intermediate Precast Shear Walls—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
24. Light-framed walls with shear panels of all other materials—*Not permitted by OSHPD and DSA-SS.*
26. Special steel plate shear wall—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*

#### C. MOMENT-RESISTING FRAME SYSTEMS

2. Special steel truss moment frames—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
3. Intermediate steel moment frames—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
4. Ordinary steel moment frames—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
12. Cold-formed steel—special bolted moment frame—*Not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.*

#### G. CANTILEVER COLUMN SYSTEMS DETAILED TO CONFORM WITH THE REQUIREMENTS FOR:

1. Steel special cantilever column systems—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*
3. Special reinforced concrete moment frames—*Not permitted by OSHPD.*

#### Exceptions:

1. Systems listed in this section can be used as an alternative system when preapproved by the enforcement agency.
2. Rooftop or other supported structures not exceeding two stories in height and 10 percent of the total structure weight can use the systems in this section when designed as components per ASCE 7, Chapter 13.
3. Systems listed in this section can be used for seismically isolated buildings, when permitted by ASCE 7, Section 17.2.5.4.

**1617A.1.5 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3, 12.2.3.1 and 12.2.3.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Sections 12.2.3, 12.2.3.1 and 12.2.3.2 as follows:

**1617A.1.5.1 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3 with the following:

Where different seismic force-resisting systems are used in combinations to resist seismic forces in the same direction, other than those combinations considered as dual systems, the design shall comply with the requirements of this section. The most stringent applicable structural system limitations contained in Table 12.2-1 shall apply, except as otherwise permitted by this section.

**1617A.1.5.2 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.1.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.1, Items 1 and 2, by the following:

The value of the response modification coefficient,  $R$ , used for design at any story shall not exceed the lowest value of  $R$  that is used in the same direction at any story above that story. Likewise, the deflection amplification factor,  $C_d$ , and the system over strength factor,  $\Omega_0$ , used for the design at any story shall not be less than the largest value of these factors that are used in the same direction at any story above that story.

**1617A.1.5.3 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.2.3.2 by modifying Item a and adding Items f, g and h, as follows:

- a. The stiffness of the lower portion shall be at least 10 times the stiffness of the upper portion. For purposes of determining this ratio, the base shear shall be computed and distributed vertically according to Section 12.8. Using these forces, the stiffness for each portion shall be computed as the ratio of the base shear for that portion to the elastic displacement,  $\delta_{xe}$ , computed at the top of that portion, considering the portion fixed at its base. For the lower portion, the applied forces shall include the reactions from the upper portion, modified as required in Item d.
- f. The structural height of the upper portion shall not exceed the height limits of Table 12.2-1 for the seismic force-resisting system used, where the height is measured from the base of the upper portion. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Not permitted by OSHPD.

**STRUCTURAL DESIGN**

- g. Where Horizontal Irregularity Type 4 or Vertical Irregularity Type 4 exists at the transition from the upper to the lower portion, the reactions from the upper portion shall be amplified in accordance with Sections 12.3.3.3, 12.10.1.1 and 12.10.3.3 as applicable, in addition to amplification required by Item d.
- h. Where design of vertical elements of the upper portion is governed by special seismic load combinations, the special loads shall be considered in the design of the lower portion.

**1617A.1.6 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.7 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.5.6.1 [DSA-SS]** The exception after the first paragraph is not permitted by DSA-SS.

**1617A.1.8 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.5.7.1 [DSA-SS]** The exception after the first paragraph is not permitted by DSA-SS.

**1617A.1.9 ASCE 7, Section 12.2.5.7.2 [DSA-SS]** The exception after the first paragraph is not permitted by DSA-SS.

**1617A.1.10 ASCE 7, Section 12.3.3.1.** Modify first sentence of ASCE 7, Section 12.3.3.1 and add exceptions as follows:

**12.3.3.1 Prohibited horizontal and vertical irregularities for Seismic Design Categories D through F.** Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F having horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b of Table 12.3-1 or vertical structural irregularities Type 1b, 5a or 5b of Table 12.3-2 shall not be permitted.

**Exceptions:**

1. Structures with reinforced concrete or reinforced masonry shear wall systems and rigid or semi-rigid diaphragms, consisting of concrete slabs or concrete-filled metal deck having a span-to-depth ratio of 3 or less, having a horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b of Table 12.3-1 are permitted, provided that the maximum story drift in the direction of the irregularity, computed including the torsional amplification factor from Section 12.8.4.3, is less than 10 percent of the allowable story drift in ASCE 7, Table 12.12-1.
2. Structures having a horizontal structural irregularity Type 1b of Table 12.3-1 are permitted, provided a redundancy factor,  $\rho$ , of 1.3 as defined in ASCE 7 12.3.4 is assigned to the seismic force-resisting system in both orthogonal directions and the structure is designed for one of the orthogonal procedures as defined in ASCE 7, Section 12.5.3.1.
6. Where buildings provide lateral support for walls retaining earth, and the exterior grades on opposite

sides of the building differ by more than 6 feet (1829 mm), the load combination of the seismic increment of earth pressure due to earthquake acting on the higher side, as determined by a geotechnical engineer qualified in soils engineering plus the difference in earth pressures shall be added to the lateral forces provided in this section.

**1617A.1.12 Reserved.****1617A.1.13 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.14 ASCE 7, Section 12.12.3. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** Replace ASCE 7 Equation 12.12-1 by the following:

$$\delta_M = C_d \delta_{max} \quad (\text{Equation 12.12-1})$$

**1617A.1.15 ASCE 7, Section 12.13.1.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.13.1 by adding Section 12.13.1.1 as follows:

**12.13.1.1 Foundations and superstructure-to-foundation connections.** The foundation shall be capable of transmitting the design base shear and the overturning forces from the structure into the supporting soil. Stability against overturning and sliding shall be in accordance with Section 1605A.1.1.

In addition, the foundation and the connection of the superstructure elements to the foundation shall have the strength to resist, in addition to gravity loads, the lesser of the following seismic loads:

1. The strength of the superstructure elements.
2. The maximum forces that can be delivered to the foundation in a fully yielded structural system.
3. Forces from the load combinations with overstrength factor in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.4.3.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where referenced standards specify the use of higher design loads.
2. When it can be demonstrated that inelastic deformation of the foundation and superstructure-to-foundation connection will not result in a weak story or cause collapse of the structure.
3. Where seismic force-resisting system consists of light framed walls with shear panels, unless the reference standard specifies the use of higher design loads.

Where the computation of the seismic overturning moment is by the equivalent lateral-force method or the modal analysis method, reduction in overturning moment permitted by section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7 may be used.

Where moment resistance is assumed at the base of the superstructure elements, the rotation and flexural deformation of the foundation as well as deformation of the superstructure-to-foundation connection shall be considered in the drift and deformation compatibility analyses.

**1617A.1.16 ASCE 7, Section 12.13.9.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 12.13.9.2 by the following sentence added to the end of Item b as follows:

*Seismic load effects determined in accordance with Section 12.4 need not be considered in this check.*

**1617A.1.17 ASCE 7, Section 13.1.3. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.1.3 by the following:

*All nonstructural components shall have a component importance factor,  $I_p$ , equal to 1.5.*

**Exception:** Hospital buildings rated SPC-1 and SPC-2 not providing services/systems, utilities or access/egress to general acute care buildings designated as SPC 3 or higher in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Administrative Code, shall be permitted to use component importance factor,  $I_p$ , as given in ASCE 7, Section 13.3.1.

**1617A.1.18 ASCE 7, Section 13.1.4.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.1.4, with the following:

**13.1.4.** The following nonstructural components and equipment shall be anchored in accordance with this section. Design and detailing shall be in accordance with Chapter 13 except as modified by this section.

1. **Fixed Equipment:** Equipment shall be anchored if it is directly attached to the building utility services such as electricity, gas or water. For the purposes of this requirement, "directly attached" shall include all electrical connections except plugs for 110/220-volt receptacles having a flexible cable/cord. Equipment that is connected to the building plumbing system with a shut-off valve in proximity to the equipment shall not be considered as directly attached provided the inside diameter of the pipe/tubing is less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
2. **Movable Equipment:** Equipment is subject to the same requirement as fixed equipment, but is permitted to be anchored by re-attachable anchors or restraints in a manner approved by the enforcement agency. Utilities and services at the equipment shall have flexible connections to allow for necessary movement.

3. **[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5] Mobile Equipment:** Equipment heavier than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) that has a center of mass located 4 feet (1219 mm) or more above the adjacent floor or roof level that directly supports the equipment shall be restrained in a manner approved by the enforcement agency when stored and not in use, unless the equipment is stored in an equipment storage room.

**[DSA-SS] Mobile Equipment:** Equipment heavier than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) or has a center of mass located 4 feet (1219 mm) or more above the adjacent floor or roof level that directly supports the equipment shall be restrained in a manner approved by the enforcement agency. Mobile equipment shall be restrained when not in use and is stored, unless the equipment is stored in a storage room that does not house hazardous

materials or any facility systems or fixed equipment that can be affected by mobile equipment lacking restraint.

**4. [OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5] Countertop Equipment:** Countertop equipment shall be subject to the same anchorage or restraint requirements for fixed, movable, mobile or other equipment, as applicable.

**[DSA-SS] Countertop Equipment:** Countertop equipment shall be subject to the same anchorage or restraint requirements for fixed or movable equipment, as applicable. Countertop equipment shall also be subject to the same requirements as mobile or other equipment if weight of equipment is greater than 100 pounds (45 kg) and has a center of mass located 4 feet (1219 mm) or more above the adjacent floor level or if equipment could fall and block a required means of egress.

**5. [OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5] Temporary Equipment:** Equipment for uses greater than 30 days but less than or equal to 180 days and where this section requires supports and attachments, the following shall apply:

- a. Seismic design for supports and attachments for temporary equipment shall meet the requirements of Chapter 13; however, the calculated  $F_p$  may be reduced by 50 percent. It is acceptable to use ballasts for seismic bracing supports and attachments and to limit the design criteria to overturning unless directly or indirectly supported by the building structure.
- b. Wind design speeds may be reduced as prescribed in ASCE 37-14 or other standard approved by OSHPD.
- c. Temporary piping, conductors and ductwork shall be supported. Seismic design for supports and attachments of temporary piping, conductors and ductwork is not required.

**6. [OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5] Interim Equipment:**

a. Seismic design for supports and attachments for interim equipment shall meet the requirements of Chapter 13. It is acceptable to use ballasts for seismic or wind bracing supports and attachments.

b. Wind design speeds may be reduced as prescribed in ASCE 37-14 or other standard approved by OSHPD.

c. Piping, conductors and ductwork shall be supported. Seismic design for supports and attachments of piping, conductors and ductwork is not required.

**7. Other Equipment:** Equipment shall be anchored where any of the following apply:

a. **[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5] Essential to hospital operations and weight of equipment is greater than 100 pounds (45 kg).**

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

**[DSA-SS]** Weight of equipment is greater than 100 pounds (45 kg) and essential to operations for emergency preparedness, communications and operations centers, and other facilities required for emergency response of state-owned essential services buildings as defined in the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1, CCR) Section 4-207 and all structures required for their continuous operation or access/egress.

- b. **[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** Could fall within the patient care vicinity as defined in Article 517.2 of the California Electrical Code.
- c. Could fall and block a required means of egress. **[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** Weight of equipment is greater than 400 pounds (181.4 kg).
- d. **[DSA-SS]** Weight of equipment is greater than 400 pounds (181.4 kg) or center of mass is located greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) above the finished floor or roof level that directly supports the component.

**[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** Weight of equipment is greater than 200 pounds (90 kg) and center of mass located greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured from the finished floor.

- 8. Equipment with hazardous contents.
- 9. Other architectural, mechanical and electrical components stated in Chapter 13.
- 10. Wall-, Roof- or Floor-Hung Equipment: Seismic design and seismic details shall be provided for wall-, roof- or floor-hung nonstructural components and equipment when the component weighs more than 20 pounds (9 kg) **[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5]** or, in the case of a distributed system, more than 5 pounds per foot (73 N/m).

**[OSHPD 1, 2, 4 & 5] Exemptions:**

- 1. Furniture except storage cabinets as noted in Table 13.5-1.
- 2. Nonstructural components and equipment, that are attached to the building, provided that the component weighs 20 pounds (9 kg) or less or, in the case of a distributed system, 5 pounds per foot (73 N/m) or less. Seismic design and seismic details need not be provided.
- 3. Seismic design need not be provided for discrete architectural, mechanical and electrical components and equipment that are attached to the building and anchorage is detailed on the plans, provided that the component weighs 400 pounds (181.4 kg) or less, and the center of mass is located 4 feet (1219 mm) or less above the adjacent floor or roof level that directly support the component and

flexible connections are provided between the component and associated ductwork, piping and conduit where required.

**[DSA-SS] Exemptions:** The following nonstructural components are exempt from the requirements of ASCE 7, Chapter 13:

1. Furniture except storage cabinets as noted in Table 13.5-1.
2. Discrete architectural, mechanical and electrical components and fixed equipment that are positively attached to the structure, provided that none of the conditions in this section apply, and flexible connections are provided between the component and associated ductwork, piping and conduit where required.

**1617A.1.19 ASCE 7, Section 13.4** Replace ASCE 7, Sections 13.4.2.3, with the following:

**13.4.2.3 Prequalified post-installed anchors and specialty inserts in concrete and masonry.**

Post-installed anchors and specialty inserts in concrete that are pre-qualified for seismic applications in accordance with ACI 355.2, ACI 355.4, ICC-ES AC193, ICC-ES AC232, ICC-ES AC308 or ICC-ES AC446 shall be permitted. Post-installed anchors in masonry shall be pre-qualified for seismic applications in accordance with ICC-ES AC01, AC58 or AC106.

Use of screw anchors shall be limited to dry interior conditions and shall not be used in building enclosures. Re-use of screw anchors or screw anchor holes shall not be permitted.

**Exception:** **[DSA-SS]** Screw anchors are permitted for use in building enclosures and may also be used in exterior conditions when permitted in accordance with a valid evaluation report.

**1617A.1.20 ASCE 7, Section 13.4.5** Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.4.5 by adding Section 13.4.5.1 as follows:

**13.4.5.1 Power actuated fasteners.** Power actuated fasteners qualified in accordance with ICC ES AC 70 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of Section 13.4.5.

Power actuated fasteners shall be permitted in seismic shear for components exempt from permit requirements by Section 1617A.1.18 of this code and for interior non-bearing non-shear wall partitions only. Power actuated fastener shall not be used to anchor seismic bracing, exterior cladding or curtain wall systems.

**Exception:** Power actuated fasteners in steel to steel connections prequalified for seismic application by cyclic tests in accordance with ICC ES AC 70 shall be permitted for seismic design.

**1617A.1.21 ASCE 7, Section 13.5.6.2.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.5.6.2 by the following exception added to the

end of Section 13.5.6.2.2 and by adding Section 13.5.6.2.3 as follows:

*Exception to Section 13.5.8.1 shall not be used in accordance with ASTM E580 Section 5.5.*

**13.5.6.2.3 Modification to ASTM E580.** Modify ASTM E580 by the following:

1. **Exitways.** Lay-in ceiling assemblies in exitways shall be installed with a main runner or cross runner surrounding all sides of each piece of tile, board or panel and each light fixture or grille. A cross runner that supports another cross runner shall be considered as a main runner for the purpose of structural classification. Splices or intersections of such runners shall be attached with through connectors such as pop rivets, screws, pins, plates with end tabs or other approved connectors. Lateral force diagonal bracing may be omitted in the short or transverse direction of exitways, not exceeding 8 feet wide, when perimeter support in accordance with ASTM E580 Sections 5.2.2 and 5.2.3 is provided and the perimeter wall laterally supporting the ceiling in the short or transverse direction is designed to carry the ceiling lateral forces. The connections between the ceiling grid, wall angle and the wall shall be designed to resist the ceiling lateral forces.
2. **Corridors and lobbies.** Expansion joints shall be provided in the ceiling at intersections of corridors and at junctions of corridors and lobbies or other similar areas.
3. **Lay-in panels.** Metal panels and panels weighing more than  $\frac{1}{2}$  pounds per square foot ( $24 \text{ N/m}^2$ ) other than acoustical tiles shall be positively attached to the ceiling suspension runners.
4. **Lateral force bracing.** Lateral force bracing is required for all ceiling areas except that they shall be permitted to be omitted in rooms with floor areas up to 144 square feet when perimeter support in accordance with ASTM E580, Sections 5.2.2 and 5.2.3, are provided and perimeter walls are designed to carry the ceiling lateral forces. The connections between the ceiling grid, wall angle and the wall shall be designed to resist the ceiling lateral forces. Horizontal restraint point spacing shall be justified by analysis or test and shall not exceed a spacing of 12 feet by 12 feet. Bracing wires shall be secured with four tight twists in  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches, or an approved alternate connection.
5. Ceiling support and bracing wires shall be spaced a minimum of 6 inches from all pipes, ducts, conduits and equipment that are not braced for horizontal forces, unless approved otherwise by the building official.

**1617A.1.22 ASCE 7, Section 13.5.7. [OSHPD 1 & 4]**  
Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.5.7, by the following:

All access floors shall be special access floors in accordance with Section 13.5.7.2, except for raised roof or exterior floor paver systems.

**1617A.1.23 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.2.1 and ASCE 7, Tables 13.5-1 and 13.6-1.** Modify Section 13.6.2.1 by adding the following to the end of the section:

**[OSHPD 1 & 4]** Use of this section shall be considered as an alternative system. Alternatively, HVACR systems shall require special seismic certification in accordance with Section 1705A.13.3.

**ASCE 7, Tables 13.5-1 and 13.6-1.** Modify ASCE 7, Tables 13.5-1 & 13.6-1 by the following:

Where  $I_p = 1.5$ , overstrength factor ( $\Omega_0$ ) need not exceed the values of  $R_p$  for design of anchorage to concrete.

**1617A.1.24 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.5.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.5 as follows:

**13.6.5 Distribution Systems: Conduit, Cable Tray and Raceways.** Cable trays and raceways shall be designed for seismic forces and seismic relative displacements as required in Section 13.3. Conduit equal to or greater than 2.5 inches (64 mm) trade size and attached to panels, cabinets or other equipment subject to seismic relative displacement,  $D_{pb}$  shall be provided with flexible connections or designed for seismic forces and seismic relative displacements as required in Section 13.3.

#### Exceptions:

1. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required for raceways where flexible connections or other assemblies are provided between the cable tray or raceway and associated components to accommodate the relative displacement, where the cable tray or raceway is positively attached to the structure, and one of the following apply:
  - a. Trapeze assemblies with  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13-mm) in diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the conduit, cable tray or raceway support point to the connection at the supporting structure are used to support the cable tray or raceway, and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is 100 pounds (445 N) or less;
  - b. The conduit, cable tray or raceway is supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, and each hanger in the raceway run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the conduit, cable tray or raceway support point connection to the supporting structure, and the total weight supported by any single rod is 50 pounds (220 N) or less.

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

2. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required for conduit, regardless of the value of  $I_p$ , where the conduit is less than 2.5 inches (64 mm) trade size.

Design for the displacements across seismic joints shall be required for conduit, cable trays and raceways with  $I_p = 1.5$  without consideration of conduit size.

**1617A.1.25 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.6.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.6 with the following:

**13.6.6 Distribution Systems: Duct Systems.** HVACR and other duct systems shall be designed for seismic forces and seismic relative displacements as required in Section 13.3.

**Exceptions:** The following exceptions pertain to ductwork not designed to carry toxic, highly toxic or flammable gases or not used for smoke control:

1. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required for duct systems where flexible connections or other assemblies are provided to accommodate the relative displacement between the duct system and associated components, the duct system is positively attached to the structure, and where one of the following apply:

- a. Trapeze assemblies with  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the duct support point to the connection at the supporting structure are used to support duct, and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is less than 10 lb/ft (146 N/m) and 100 pounds or less; or

- b. The duct is supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, and each hanger in the duct run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the duct support point to the connection at the supporting structure, and the total weight supported by any single rod is 50 pounds (220 N) or less.

2. Design for the seismic forces and relative displacements of Section 13.3 shall not be required where provisions are made to avoid impact with other ducts or mechanical components or to protect the ducts in the event of such impact, the distribution system is positively attached to the structure; and HVACR ducts have a cross-sectional area of less than 6 square feet ( $0.557 \text{ m}^2$ ) and weigh 20 lb/ft (292 N/m) or less.

Components that are installed in line with the duct system and have an operating weight greater than 75 pounds (334 N), such as fans, terminal units, heat exchangers and humidifiers, shall be supported and

laterally braced independent of the duct system, and such braces shall meet the force requirements of Section 13.3.1. Components that are installed in line with the duct system, have an operating weight of 75 pounds (334 N) or less, such as small terminal units, dampers, louvers and diffusers, and are otherwise not independently braced shall be positively attached with mechanical fasteners to the rigid duct on both sides. Piping and conduit attached to in-line equipment shall be provided with adequate flexibility to accommodate the seismic relative displacements of Section 13.3.2.

**1617A.1.26 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.7.3.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.7.3 with the following:

**13.6.7.3 Additional Provisions for Piping and Tubing Systems.**

A) Design for the seismic forces of Section 13.3 shall not be required for piping systems where flexible connections, expansion loops or other assemblies are provided to accommodate the relative displacement between component and piping, where the piping system is positively attached to the structure, and where any of the following conditions apply:

1. Trapeze assemblies are supported by  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the pipe support point to the connection at the supporting structure, and no single pipe exceeds the diameter limits set forth in item 2b below or 2 inches (50 mm) <  
where  $I_p$  is greater than 1.0 and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is 100 pounds (445 N) or less; or

2. Piping that has an  $R_p$  in Table 13.6-1 of 4.5 or greater supported by rod hangers and provisions are made to avoid impact with other structural or nonstructural components or to protect the piping in the event of such impact, or pipes with  $I_p = 1.0$  supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, where each hanger in the pipe run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the pipe support point to the connection at the supporting structure; and the total weight supported by any single hanger is 50 pounds (220 N) or less. In addition, the following limitations on the size of piping shall be observed:

- a. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F where  $I_p$  is greater than 1.0, the nominal pipe size shall be 1 inch (25 mm) or less.
- b. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D, E or F where  $I_p = 1.0$ , the nominal pipe size shall be 3 inches (80 mm) or less.

3. Pneumatic tube systems supported with trapeze assemblies using  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) in diameter rod hangers not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in length from the tube support point to the connection at the supporting structure and the total weight supported by any single trapeze is 100 pounds (445 N) or less.
4. Pneumatic tube systems supported by individual rod hangers  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, and each hanger in the run is 12 inches (305 mm) or less in length from the tube support point to the connection at the supporting structure, and the total weight supported by any single rod is 50 pounds (220 N) or less.

B) Flexible connections in piping required in Section 13.6.7.3 are not required where pipe is rigidly attached to the same floor or wall that provides vertical and lateral support for the equipment, or to a fixture.

C) Flexible connections in piping are required at seismic separation joints and shall be detailed to accommodate the seismic relative displacements at connections.

**1617A.1.27 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1, by adding Section 13.6.11.1.1 as follows:

**13.6.11.1.1 Elevators guide rail support.** The design of guide rail support-bracket fastenings and the supporting structural framing shall use the weight of the counterweight or maximum weight of the car plus not less than 40 percent of its rated load. The seismic forces shall be assumed to be distributed one third to the top guiding members and two thirds to the bottom guiding members of cars and counterweights, unless other substantiating data are provided. In addition to the requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1, the minimum seismic forces shall be 0.5g allowable stress design load acting in any horizontal direction.

**1617A.1.28 ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.4.** Replace ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.4, as follows:

**13.6.11.4 Retainer plates.** Retainer plates are required at the top and bottom of the car and counterweight, except where safety devices acceptable to the enforcement agency are provided which meet all requirements of the retainer plates, including full engagement of the machined portion of the rail. The design of the car, cab stabilizers, counterweight guide rails and counterweight frames for seismic forces shall be based on the following requirements:

1. The seismic force shall be computed per the requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.6.11.1. The minimum horizontal acceleration shall be 0.5g allowable stress design load for all buildings.
2.  $W_p$  shall equal the weight of the counterweight or the maximum weight of the car plus not less than 40 percent of its rated load.

3. With the car or counterweight located in the most adverse position, the stress in the rail shall not exceed the limitations specified in these regulations, nor shall the deflection of the rail relative to its supports exceed the deflection listed below:

RAIL SIZE (weight per foot of length, pounds)	WIDTH OF MACHINED SURFACE (inches)	ALLOWABLE RAIL DEFLECTION (inches)
8	$1\frac{1}{4}$	0.20
11	$1\frac{1}{2}$	0.30
12	$1\frac{3}{4}$	0.40
15	$1\frac{31}{32}$	0.50
$18\frac{1}{2}$	$1\frac{31}{32}$	0.50
$22\frac{1}{2}$	2	0.50
30	$2\frac{1}{4}$	0.50

For SI: 1 inch = 25 mm, 1 foot = 305 mm, 1 pound = 0.454 kg.

**Note:** Deflection limitations are given to maintain a consistent factor of safety against disengagement of retainer plates from the guide rails during an earthquake.

4. Where guide rails are continuous over supports and rail joints are within 2 feet (610 mm) of their supporting brackets, a simple span may be assumed.
5. The use of spreader brackets is allowed.
6. Cab stabilizers and counterweight frames shall be designed to withstand computed lateral load with a minimum horizontal acceleration of 0.5g allowable stress design load.

**1617A.1.29 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.30 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.31 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.32 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.33 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.34 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.35 ASCE 7, Section 17.2.4.7.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 17.2.4.7, by adding the following:

The effects of uplift shall be explicitly accounted for in the testing of the isolator units.

**1617A.1.36 ASCE 7, Section 17.4.** Modify ASCE 7, Section 17.4.2, by adding the following:

**17.4.2.3 Linear procedures.** Linear procedures shall not be used in Seismic Design Category E & F structures.

**1617A.1.37 Reserved.**

**1617A.1.38 ASCE 7, Section 18.3.** Replace exception to ASCE 7, Section 18.3 with the following:

**Exception:** If the calculated force in an element of the seismic force-resisting system does not exceed 1.5 times its nominal strength for the Risk-Targeted Maximum Considered Earthquake ( $MCE_R$ ) the element is permitted to be modeled as linear. For this section, the  $MCE_R$  response shall be based on largest response due to a

## STRUCTURAL DESIGN

*single ground motion and not the average response of suite of ground motions.*

**1617A.1.39 Earthquake Motion Measuring Instrumentation and Post-earthquake Structural Monitoring/Verification. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** Modify ASCE 7 by the following:

**Scope:** For buildings with a seismic isolation system, a damping system or a lateral force-resisting system (LFRS) not listed in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, earthquake motion measuring instrumentation and monitoring shall be required. For buildings with welded steel moment frames constructed under a permit issued prior to October 25, 1994 post-earthquake verification shall be in accordance with this section.

**Instrumentation:** Earthquake monitoring instrumentation shall be installed in accordance with Section 104.11.4.

**Monitoring:** After every significant seismic event, where the ground shaking acceleration at the site exceeds 0.3g or the acceleration at any monitored building level exceeds 0.8g as measured by the seismic monitoring system in the building, the owner shall retain a structural engineer to make an inspection of the structural system. The inspection shall include viewing the performance of the building, reviewing the strong motion records, and a visual examination of the isolators, dampers and connections for deterioration, offset or physical damage. A report for each inspection, including conclusions on the continuing adequacy of the structural system, shall be submitted to the enforcement agency.

**Verification:** After every seismic event that generates ground motions specified in the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6, Section 4.2.0.1 or the damage indicators specified in the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6, Section 4.2.0.2 at a welded steel moment frame building constructed under a permit issued prior to October 25, 1994, the owner shall retain a structural engineer to perform detailed joint evaluations required to meet the following requirements:

1. A detailed joint evaluation program shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for approval prepared in accordance with the requirements of the California Administrative Code, Chapter 6, Section 4.2.0.3.
2. Upon approval of the joint evaluation program required by Item 1 above for the joint inspections, a project to perform the joint inspections, detailed in the program, shall be submitted and a building permit shall be obtained by the owner no later than 6 months from the date of occurrence of the seismic event.

**Exception:** Where the ground motions at the building site are less than 0.4g, the permit shall be obtained no later than 12 months from the date of occurrence of the seismic event.

3. A detailed joint evaluation report shall be submitted to the enforcement agency no later than 6

months of obtaining the building permit. The report shall document the findings from the inspections of the joints and include conclusions on the adequacy of the structural system. Where unsafe conditions are discovered, the provisions of Section 116 shall apply.

Where the detailed joint evaluation report is not submitted within the timeframes specified above, the building shall not be issued a building permit for any projects except for those for seismic compliance, maintenance and repair until the detailed joint evaluation work is complete.

**1617A.1.40 Operational nonstructural performance level requirements. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** New general acute care hospitals and new building(s) required for general acute care services shall satisfy Operational Nonstructural Performance Level (NPC-5) requirements.

**Exception:** A new building which is required for general acute care services that is added to an existing general acute care hospital and which has a building area of 4,000 square feet ( $371\text{ m}^2$ ) or less, need not satisfy the NPC-5 requirements until the deadline specified in California Administrative Code (Part 1, Title 24 CCR), Chapter 6.

Hospitals and buildings designed and constructed to the provisions of this code for new construction shall be deemed to satisfy Operational Nonstructural Performance Level (NPC-5) requirements when:

1. The facility has on-site supplies of water and holding tanks for sewage and liquid waste, sufficient to support 72 hours of emergency operations for the hospital or building, which are integrated into the building plumbing systems in accordance with the California Plumbing Code.
2. An on-site emergency system as defined in the California Electrical Code is incorporated into the building electrical system for critical care areas. Additionally, the system shall provide for radiological service and an onsite fuel supply for 72 hours of acute care operation.

Emergency and standby generators shall not be located below the higher of the Design Flood Elevation (DFE) or Base Flood Elevation (BFE) plus two feet ( $BFE + 2\text{ ft.}$ ) or 500 year flood elevation, whichever is higher, and shall be located at an elevation close to grade for easy accessibility from outside for maintenance.

**1617A.1.41 Peer Review Requirements. [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4, & 5]**

1. **General.** Independent peer review is an objective technical review by knowledgeable reviewer(s) experienced in structural design, analysis and performance issues involved. The reviewer(s) shall examine the available information on the condition of the building, basic engineering concept employed and recommendations for action.
2. **Timing of Independent Review.** The independent reviewer (s) shall be selected prior to initiation of sub-

- stantial portion of the design and analysis work that is to be reviewed, and review shall start as soon as practical and sufficient information defining the project is available.*
- 3. Qualifications and Terms of Employment.** The reviewer shall be independent from the design and construction team.
- 3.1. The reviewer(s) shall have no other involvement in the project before, during or after the review, except in a review capacity.*
  - 3.2. The reviewer shall be selected and paid by owner and shall have technical expertise similar to the project being reviewed, as determined by enforcement agent.*
  - 3.3. The reviewer (in case of review team, the chair) shall be a California-licensed structural engineer who is familiar with technical issues and regulations governing the work to be reviewed.*
  - 3.4. The reviewer shall serve through completion of the project and shall not be terminated except for failure to perform the duties specified herein. Such termination shall be in writing with copies to enforcement agent, owner and the engineer of record. When a reviewer is terminated or resigns, a qualified replacement shall be appointed within 10 working days or a timeframe mutually agreed to by the Owner, Registered Design Professional (RDP) and the Office.*
- 4. Scope of Review.** Review activities shall include, where appropriate, available construction documents, design criteria, observation of the condition of structure, all new and original inspection reports, including methods of sampling, analyses prepared by the engineer of record and consultants, and the new, retrofit or repair design. Review shall include consideration of the proposed design approach, method, materials and details.
- 5. Reports.** The reviewer(s) shall prepare a written report to the owner and responsible enforcement agent that covers all aspect of the review performed including conclusions reached by the reviewer. Report shall be issued after the schematic phase, during design development, and at the completion of construction documents, but prior to their issuance of permit. Such report shall include, at the minimum, statement of the following:
- a. Scope of engineering design peer review with limitations defined.*
  - b. The status of the project documents at each review stage.*
  - c. Ability of selected materials and framing systems to meet the performance criteria with given loads and configuration.*
  - d. Degree of structural system redundancy and the deformation compatibility among structural and nonstructural elements.*
  - e. Basic constructability of the new, retrofit or repair system.*
  - f. Other recommendation that will be appropriate for the specific project.*
  - g. Presentation of the conclusions of the reviewer identifying any areas that need further review, investigation and/or clarification.*
  - h. Recommendations.*



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 17 – SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter												X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X						X	X			X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																				
Chapter / Section																							
1701			X																				
1701.1.1											X	X				X							
1701.1.2											X	X				X							
1701.1.3											X	X				X							
1702			X																				
1703			X																				
1703.4											X	X				X							
1704.2, Exception 5			X	X																			
1704.2, Exceptions 3 & 4											X	X				X							
1704.2.3	X																						
1704.2.3 Exception											X	X				X							
1704.2.4											X	X				X							
1704.2.5.1											X	X				X							
1704.3.2											X	X				X							
1705.1			X																				
1705.2.1											X	X				X							
1705.2.3.1											X	X				X							
1705.2.4.1											X	X				X							
1705.2.5											X	X				X							
1705.2.6											X	X				X							
1705.3			X																				
1705.3 Exception											X	X				X							
1705.3.3											X	X				X							
1705.3.3.1											X	X				X							
Table 1705.3											X	X				X							
1705.3.4											X	X				X							
1705.3.5											X	X				X							
1705.3.6											X	X				X							
1705.3.7											X	X				X							
1705.3.8											X	X				X							
1705.3.9											X	B				X							
1705.3.9.1											X	B				X							
1705.3.9.2											X	B				X							
1705.4											X	X				X							
1705.4.1											X	X				X							
1705.5.3			X																				
Table 1705.5.3			X																				
1705.5.5											X	B				X							
1705.5.6											X	X				X							
1705.6.1											X	X				X							

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 17 – SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter														X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X						X	X		X									
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																				
Chapter / Section																							
1705.7.1											X	X		X									
1705.12.1				X																			
1705.12.2			X																				
1705.13.1.1 <i>Exception</i>											X	X		X									
1705.13.1.2 <i>Exception</i>											X	X		X									
1705.13.2			X																				
1705.13.3			X																				
1705.13.3.1											X	X		X									
1705.15			X																				
1705.16			X																				
1705.17											X	X		X									
1705.18			X																				
1705.19			X																				
1705.20			X																				
1707.1	X			X	X																		

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

(A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.

## CHAPTER 17

# SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 17 provides a variety of procedures and criteria for testing materials and assemblies, and labeling materials and assemblies. Its key purposes are to establish where additional inspections/observations and testing must be provided, and the submittals and verifications that must be provided to the building official. This chapter expands on the inspections of Chapter 1 by requiring special inspection by a qualified individual where indicated and, in some cases, structural observation by a registered design professional. Quality assurance measures that verify proper assembly of structural components and the suitability of the installed materials are intended to provide a building that, once constructed, complies with the minimum structural and fire-resistance code requirements as well as the approved design. To determine this compliance often requires frequent inspections and testing at specific stages of construction.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BF] will be considered by the IBC—Fire Safety Code Development Committee during the 2021 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. Sections preceded by the designation [F] will be considered by the International Fire Code Development Committee during the 2021 (Group A) Code Development Cycle. All other code change proposals will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the Group B cycle.

## SECTION 1701 GENERAL

**1701.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the quality, workmanship and requirements for materials covered. Materials of construction and tests shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this code.

**1701.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 17 is as follows:*

*Structures regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), which include hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings and acute psychiatric hospital buildings as listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2 and 1.10.5.*

**1701.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** OSHPD adopts this chapter and all amendments.

*Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 129725 need not comply with [OSHPD 2] amendments, except those in Sections 1701.1, 1703.4, 1704.2, 1705.3.3, 1705.5.3, 1705.13.3.1.*

**1701.1.3 Identification of amendments.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD) amendments appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:

**[OSHPD 1R]** – For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** – For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 5]** – For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

## SECTION 1702 NEW MATERIALS

**1702.1 General.** New building materials, equipment, appliances, systems or methods of construction not provided for in this code, and any material of questioned suitability proposed

for use in the construction of a building or structure, shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in this chapter and in the approved rules to determine character, quality and limitations of use.

## SECTION 1703 APPROVALS

**1703.1 Approved agency.** An approved agency shall provide all information as necessary for the building official to determine that the agency meets the applicable requirements specified in Sections 1703.1.1 through 1703.1.3.

**1703.1.1 Independence.** An approved agency shall be objective, competent and independent from the contractor responsible for the work being inspected. The agency shall disclose to the building official and the registered design professional in responsible charge possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed.

**1703.1.2 Equipment.** An approved agency shall have adequate equipment to perform required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated.

**1703.1.3 Personnel.** An approved agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests and special inspections.

**1703.2 Written approval.** Any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction meeting the requirements of this code shall be approved in writing after satisfactory completion of the required tests and submission of required test reports.

**1703.3 Record of approval.** For any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction that has been approved, a record of such approval, including the conditions and limitations of the approval, shall be kept on file in the building official's office and shall be available for public review at appropriate times.

**1703.4 Performance.** Specific information consisting of test reports conducted by an approved agency in accordance with

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

the appropriate referenced standards, or other such information as necessary, shall be provided for the building official to determine that the product, material or assembly meets the applicable code requirements.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** *Tests performed by an independent approved testing agency/laboratory or under the responsible charge of a competent approved independent Registered Design Professional shall be deemed to comply with requirements of this section. Test reports for structural tests shall be reviewed and accepted by an independent California licensed structural engineer.*

**1703.4.1 Research and investigation.** Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to the building official to substantiate the proposed use of any product, material or assembly. If it is determined that the evidence submitted is satisfactory proof of performance for the use intended, the building official shall approve the use of the product, material or assembly subject to the requirements of this code. The costs, reports and investigations required under these provisions shall be paid by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

**1703.4.2 Research reports.** Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of products, materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

**1703.5 Labeling.** Products, materials or assemblies required to be labeled shall be labeled in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 1703.5.1 through 1703.5.4.

**1703.5.1 Testing.** An approved agency shall test a representative sample of the product, material or assembly being labeled to the relevant standard or standards. The approved agency shall maintain a record of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

**1703.5.2 Inspection and identification.** The approved agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the product or material that is to be labeled. The inspection shall verify that the labeled product, material or assembly is representative of the product, material or assembly tested.

**1703.5.3 Label information.** The label shall contain the manufacturer's identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the performance characteristics of the product, material or assembly and the approved agency's identification.

**1703.5.4 Method of labeling.** Information required to be permanently identified on the product, material or assembly shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

**1703.6 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services.** Where structural components or other items regulated by this code are not visible for inspection after completion of a prefabricated assembly, the owner or the owner's authorized agent shall submit a report of each prefabricated assembly. The report shall indicate the complete details of the assembly, including a description of the assembly and its components,

the basis upon which the assembly is being evaluated, test results and similar information and other data as necessary for the building official to determine conformance to this code. Such a report shall be approved by the building official.

**1703.6.1 Follow-up inspection.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall provide for special inspections of fabricated items in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.

**1703.6.2 Test and inspection records.** Copies of necessary test and special inspection records shall be filed with the building official.

## SECTION 1704 SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS, CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY AND STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION

**1704.1 General.** Special inspections and tests, statements of special inspections, responsibilities of contractors, submittals to the building official and structural observations shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

**1704.2 Special inspections and tests.** Where application is made to the building official for construction as specified in Section 105, or 1.8.4, as applicable, the owner or the owner's authorized agent, other than the contractor, shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests during construction on the types of work specified in Section 1705 and identify the approved agencies to the building official. These special inspections and tests are in addition to the inspections by the building official that are identified in Section 110.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** *In addition, the approved agencies shall provide special inspections and tests during construction on the types of work listed under Chapters 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23 and 25, and noted in the Test, Inspection and Observation (TIO) program as required by the Office.*

*The inspectors shall act under the direction of the architect or structural engineer or both, and be responsible to the Owner. Where California Administrative Code Section 7-115 (a) 2 permits construction documents to be prepared under the responsible charge of a mechanical, electrical or civil engineer, inspectors shall be permitted to work under the direction of an engineer in the appropriate branch as permitted therein.*

### Exceptions:

1. Special inspections and tests are not required for construction of a minor nature or as warranted by conditions in the jurisdiction as approved by the building official.
2. Unless otherwise required by the building official, special inspections and tests are not required for Group U occupancies that are accessory to a residential occupancy including, but not limited to, those listed in Section 312.1.
3. Special inspections and tests are not required for portions of structures designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction provisions of Section 2211.1.2 or the

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308. *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.*

4. The contractor is permitted to employ the approved agencies where the contractor is also the owner. *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.*
5. *[HCD 1] The provisions of Health and Safety Code Division 13, Part 6 and the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, commencing with Section 3000, shall apply to the construction and inspection of factory-built housing as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 19971.*

**1704.2.1 Special inspector qualifications.** Prior to the start of the construction, the approved agencies shall provide written documentation to the building official demonstrating the competence and relevant experience or training of the special inspectors who will perform the special inspections and tests during construction. Experience or training shall be considered to be relevant where the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of special inspection or testing activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities. These qualifications are in addition to qualifications specified in other sections of this code.

The registered design professional in responsible charge and engineers of record involved in the design of the project are permitted to act as an approved agency and their personnel are permitted to act as special inspectors for the work designed by them, provided they qualify as special inspectors.

**1704.2.2 Access for special inspection.** The construction or work for which special inspection or testing is required shall remain accessible and exposed for special inspection or testing purposes until completion of the required special inspections or tests.

**1704.2.3 Statement of special inspections.** The applicant shall submit a statement of special inspections in accordance with Section 107.1, *Chapter 1, Division II*, as a condition for permit issuance. This statement shall be in accordance with Section 1704.3.

**Exception:** A statement of special inspections is not required for portions of structures designed and constructed in accordance with the cold-formed steel light-frame construction provisions of Section 2211.1.2 or the conventional light-frame construction provisions of Section 2308. *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.*

**1704.2.4 Report requirement.** Approved agencies shall keep records of special inspections and tests. The approved agency shall submit reports of special inspections and tests to the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge. Reports shall indicate that work inspected or tested was or was not completed in conformance to approved construction documents. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If they are not

corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required special inspections and tests, and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections or tests, shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon prior to the start of work by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to the building official. *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Report requirement shall be per 1704A.2.4.*

**1704.2.5 Special inspection of fabricated items.** Where fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies is being conducted on the premises of a fabricator's shop, special inspections of the fabricated items shall be performed during fabrication, except where the fabricator has been approved to perform work without special inspections in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.

**1704.2.5.1 Fabricator approval.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Special inspections during fabrication are not required where the work is done on the premises of a fabricator approved to perform such work without special inspection. Approval shall be based on review of the fabricator's written fabrication procedures and quality control manuals that provide a basis for control of materials and workmanship, with periodic auditing of fabrication and quality control practices by an approved agency or the building official. At completion of fabrication, the approved fabricator shall submit a certificate of compliance to the owner or the owner's authorized agent for submittal to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5 stating that the work was performed in accordance with the approved construction documents.

**1704.3 Statement of special inspections.** Where special inspections or tests are required by Section 1705, the registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a statement of special inspections in accordance with Section 1704.3.1 for submittal by the applicant in accordance with Section 1704.2.3.

**Exception:** The statement of special inspections is permitted to be prepared by a qualified person approved by the building official for construction not designed by a registered design professional.

**1704.3.1 Content of statement of special inspections.** The statement of special inspections shall identify the following:

1. The materials, systems, components and work required to have special inspections or tests by the building official or by the registered design professional responsible for each portion of the work.
2. The type and extent of each special inspection.
3. The type and extent of each test.
4. Additional requirements for special inspections or tests for seismic or wind resistance as specified in Sections 1705.12, 1705.13 and 1705.14 .

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

5. For each type of special inspection, identification as to whether it will be continuous special inspection, periodic special inspection or performed in accordance with the notation used in the referenced standard where the inspections are defined.

**1704.3.2 Seismic requirements in the statement of special inspections.** Where Section 1705.13 or 1705.14 specifies special inspections or tests for seismic resistance, the statement of special inspections shall identify the designated seismic systems and seismic force-resisting systems that are subject to the special inspections or tests. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5J Where Section 1705.12 or 1705.13 specifies special inspections or tests for seismic resistance, the statement of special inspections shall identify the equipment/components that require special seismic certification and seismic force-resisting systems that are subject to the special inspection or tests.*

**1704.3.3 Wind requirements in the statement of special inspections.** Where Section 1705.12 specifies special inspection for wind resistance, the statement of special inspections shall identify the main windforce-resisting systems and wind-resisting components that are subject to special inspections.

**1704.4 Contractor responsibility.** Each contractor responsible for the construction of a main wind- or seismic force-resisting system, designated seismic system or a wind- or seismic force-resisting component listed in the statement of special inspections shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the building official and the owner or the owner's authorized agent prior to the commencement of work on the system or component. The contractor's statement of responsibility shall contain acknowledgement of awareness of the special requirements contained in the statement of special inspections.

**1704.5 Submittals to the building official.** In addition to the submittal of reports of special inspections and tests in accordance with Section 1704.2.4, reports and certificates shall be submitted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to the building official for each of the following:

1. Certificates of compliance for the fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies on the premises of an approved fabricator in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.1.
2. Certificates of compliance for the seismic qualification of nonstructural components, supports and attachments in accordance with Section 1705.14.2.
3. Certificates of compliance for designated seismic systems in accordance with Section 1705.14.3.
4. Reports of preconstruction tests for shotcrete in accordance with ACI 318.
5. Certificates of compliance for open web steel joists and joist girders in accordance with Section 2207.5.
6. Reports of material properties verifying compliance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for weldability as specified in Section 26.6.4 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars in concrete complying with a standard other than ASTM A706 that are to be welded.

7. Reports of mill tests in accordance with Section 20.2.2.5 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars complying with ASTM A615 and used to resist earthquake-induced flexural or axial forces in the special moment frames, special structural walls or coupling beams connecting special structural walls of seismic force-resisting systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F.

**1704.6 Structural observations.** Where required by the provisions of Section 1704.6.1, the owner or the owner's authorized agent shall employ a registered design professional to perform structural observations. The structural observer shall visually observe representative locations of structural systems, details and load paths for general conformance to the approved construction documents. Structural observation does not include or waive the responsibility for the inspections in Section 110 or the special inspections in Section 1705 or other sections of this code. Prior to the commencement of observations, the structural observer shall submit to the building official a written statement identifying the frequency and extent of structural observations. At the conclusion of the work included in the permit, the structural observer shall submit to the building official a written statement that the site visits have been made and identify any reported deficiencies that, to the best of the structural observer's knowledge, have not been resolved.

**1704.6.1 Structural observations for structures.** Structural observations shall be provided for those structures where one or more of the following conditions exist:

1. The structure is classified as Risk Category III or IV.
2. The structure is a high-rise building.
3. The structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category E, and is greater than two stories above the grade plane.
4. Such observation is required by the registered design professional responsible for the structural design.
5. Such observation is specifically required by the building official.



## SECTION 1705 REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705.1 General.** Special inspections and tests of elements and nonstructural components of buildings and structures shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

**1705.1.1 Special cases.** Special inspections and tests shall be required for proposed work that is, in the opinion of the building official, unusual in its nature, such as, but not limited to, the following examples:

1. Construction materials and systems that are alternatives to materials and systems prescribed by this code.
2. Unusual design applications of materials described in this code.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

3. Materials and systems required to be installed in accordance with additional manufacturer's instructions that prescribe requirements not contained in this code or in standards referenced by this code.

**1705.2 Steel construction.** The special inspections and nondestructive testing of steel construction in buildings, structures, and portions thereof shall be in accordance with this section.

**Exception:** Special inspections of the steel fabrication process shall not be required where the fabrication process for the entire building or structure does not include any welding, thermal cutting or heating operation of any kind. In such cases, the fabricator shall be required to submit a detailed procedure for material control that demonstrates the fabricator's ability to maintain suitable records and procedures such that, at any time during the fabrication process, the material specification and grade for the main stress-carrying elements are capable of being determined. Mill test reports shall be identifiable to the main stress-carrying elements where required by the approved construction documents.

**1705.2.1 Structural steel.** Special inspections and nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of AISC 360.

**Exception:** Special inspection of railing systems composed of structural steel elements shall be limited to welding inspection of welds at the base of cantilevered rail posts.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Special inspections and nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of AISC 360, Chapter 22 and quality control requirements of AISC 360, AISC 341 and AISC 358.

AISC 360, Chapter N and AISC 341, Chapter J are adopted, except as noted below:

The following provisions of AISC 360, Chapter N are not adopted:

1. N4, Item 2 (Quality Assurance Inspector Qualifications).
2. N5, Item 2 (Quality Assurance).
3. N5, Item 3 (Coordinated Inspection).

4. N5, Item 4 (Inspection of Welding).

5. N6 (Approved Fabricators and Erectors).

6. N7 (Nonconforming Material and Workmanship).

**1705.2.2 Cold-formed steel deck.** Special inspections and qualification of welding special inspectors for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.

**1705.2.3 Open-web steel joists and joist girders.** Special inspections of open-web steel joists and joist girders in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Table 1705.2.3.

**1705.2.3.1 Steel joist and joist girder inspection.** **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Special inspection is required during the manufacture and welding of steel joists or joist girders. The approved agency shall verify that proper quality control procedures and tests have been employed for all materials and the manufacturing process, and shall perform visual inspection of the finished product. The approved agency shall place a distinguishing mark, and/or tag with this distinguishing mark, on each inspected joist or joist girder. This mark or tag shall remain on the joist or joist girder throughout the job site receiving and erection process.

**1705.2.4 Cold-formed steel trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** Where a cold-formed steel truss clear span is 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

**1705.2.4.1 Light-framed steel truss inspection and testing.** **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Regardless of truss span, the manufacture of cold-formed light-framed steel trusses shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency. The approved agency shall verify conformance of materials and manufacture with approved plans and specifications. The approved agency shall place a distinguishing mark, and/or tag with this distinguishing mark, on each inspected truss. This mark or tag shall remain on the truss throughout the job site receiving and erection process. Refer to Section 2211.1.3.3 for requirements applicable to manufactured trusses specified therein.

TABLE 1705.2.3  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS OF OPEN-WEB STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD <sup>a</sup>
1. Installation of open-web steel joists and joist girders.			
a. End connections – welding or bolted.	—	X	SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
b. Bridging – horizontal or diagonal.	—	—	—
1. Standard bridging.	—	X	SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
2. Bridging that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.	—	X	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where applicable, see Section 1705.13.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705.2.5 Inspection and tests of structural welding.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5]* Inspection and testing (including nondestructive testing) of all shop and field welding operations shall be in accordance with this section and Section 1705.2.1. Inspections shall be made by a qualified welding inspector approved by the enforcement agency. The minimum requirements for a qualified welding inspector shall be as those for an AWS Certified Welding Inspector (CWI), as defined in the provisions of the AWS QCI.

The welding inspector shall make a systematic daily record of all welds. This record shall include:

1. Identification marks of welders.
2. List of defective welds.
3. Manner of correction of defects.

The welding inspector shall check the material, details of construction and procedure, as well as workmanship of the welds. The inspector shall verify that the installation of end-welded stud shear connectors is in accordance with the requirements of Section 2213.2 and the approved plans and specifications. The approved agency shall furnish the architect, structural engineer and the enforcement agency with a verified report that the welding has been done in conformance with AWS D1.1, D1.3, D1.4, D1.8, and the approved construction documents.

**1705.2.6 Special inspection and tests of high-strength fastener assemblies.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5]* Special inspections and tests for high-strength fasteners shall be in accordance with this section and Section 2213.1.

**1705.3 Concrete construction.** Special inspections and tests of concrete construction shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705.3.

**Exceptions:** Special inspections and tests shall not be required for: *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5]* Exceptions 1 through 4 are not permitted by OSHPD.

1. Isolated spread concrete footings of buildings three stories or less above grade plane that are fully supported on earth or rock.
2. Continuous concrete footings supporting walls of buildings three stories or less above grade plane that are fully supported on earth or rock where:
  - 2.1. The footings support walls of light-frame construction.
  - 2.2. The footings are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.
  - 2.3. The structural design of the footing is based on a specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , not more than 2,500 pounds per square inch (psi) (17.2 MPa), regardless of the compressive strength specified in the approved construction documents or used in the footing construction.
3. Nonstructural concrete slabs supported directly on the ground, including prestressed slabs on grade, where the effective prestress in the concrete is less than 150 psi (1.03 MPa).

4. Concrete foundation walls constructed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.2.

5. Concrete patios, driveways and sidewalks, on grade.

**1705.3.1 Welding of reinforcing bars.** Special inspections of welding and qualifications of special inspectors for reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for special inspection and of AWS D1.4 for special inspector qualification.

**1705.3.2 Material tests.** In the absence of sufficient data or documentation providing evidence of conformance to quality standards for materials in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318, the building official shall require testing of materials in accordance with the appropriate standards and criteria for the material in Chapters 19 and 20 of ACI 318.

**1705.3.3 Batch plant inspection.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5]* Except as provided under this section, the quality and quantity of materials used in transit-mixed concrete and in batched aggregates shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency at the location where materials are measured.

**1705.3.3.1 Waiver of continuous batch plant inspection.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5]* Continuous batch plant inspection may be waived by the registered design professional, subject to approval by the enforcement agency under either of the following conditions:

1. The concrete plant complies fully with the requirements of ASTM C94, Sections 9 and 10, and has a current certificate from the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association or another agency acceptable to the enforcement agency. The certification shall indicate that the plant has automatic batching and recording capabilities.
2. For single-story light-framed construction (without basement or retaining walls higher than 6 feet in height measured from bottom of footing to top of wall) and isolated foundations supporting equipment only, where deep foundation elements are not used.

When continuous batch plant inspection is waived, the following requirements shall apply and shall be described in the construction documents:

1. An approved agency shall check the first batch at the start of the day to verify materials and proportions conform to the approved mix design.
2. A licensed weighmaster shall positively identify quantity of materials and certify each load by a batch ticket.
3. Batch tickets, including material quantities and weights, shall accompany the load, shall be transmitted to the inspector of record by the truck driver with load identified thereon. The load shall not be placed without a batch ticket identifying the mix. The inspector of record shall keep a daily record of placements, identifying each truck, its load, time of receipt at the job site and approximate location of deposit in the structure and shall maintain a copy of the daily record as required by the enforcement agency.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**TABLE 1705.3**  
**REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD <sup>a</sup>	CBC REFERENCE
1. Inspect reinforcement, including prestressing tendons, and verify placement.	—	X	ACI 318: Ch. 20, 25.2, 25.3, 26.6.1-26.6.3	—
2. Reinforcing bar welding:				
a. Verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A706;	—	X	AWS D1.4	—
b. Inspect single-pass fillet welds, maximum $\frac{5}{16}$ "; and	—	X	ACI 318: 26.6.4	—
c. Inspect all other welds.	X	—		
3. Inspect anchors cast in concrete.	—	X	ACI 318: 17.8.2	—
4. Inspect anchors post-installed in hardened concrete members. <sup>b</sup>	X	—	ACI 318: 17.8.2.4	—
a. Adhesive anchors installed in horizontally or upwardly inclined orientations to resist sustained tension loads. <sup>c</sup>	—	X	ACI 318: 17.8.2	—
b. Mechanical anchors and adhesive anchors not defined in 4.a.	—			
5. Verify use of required design mix.	—	X	ACI 318: Ch. 19, 26.4.3, 26.4.4	1904.1, 1904.2
6. Prior to concrete placement, fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of the concrete.	X	—	ASTM C31 ASTM C172 ACI 318: 26.5, 26.12	—
7. Inspect concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques.	X	—	ACI 318: 26.5	—
8. Verify maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.5.3-26.5.5	—
9. Inspect prestressed concrete for:				
a. Application of prestressing forces; and	X	—	ACI 318: 26.10	—
b. Grouting of bonded prestressing tendons.	X	—		
10. Inspect erection of precast concrete members.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.9	—
11. For precast concrete diaphragm connections or reinforcement at joints classified as moderate or high deformability elements (MDE or HDE) in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, inspect such connections and reinforcement in the field for:				
a. Installation of the embedded parts	X	—	ACI 318: 26.13.1.3	—
b. Completion of the continuity of reinforcement across joints.	X	—	ACI 550.5	—
c. Completion of connections in the field.	X	—		
12. Inspect installation tolerances of precast concrete diaphragm connections for compliance with ACI 550.5.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.13.1.3	—
13. Verify in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post-tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.11.2	—
14. Inspect formwork for shape, location and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.11.1.2(b)	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. Where applicable, see Section 1705.13.
- b. Specific requirements for special inspection shall be included in the research report for the anchor issued by an approved source in accordance with 17.8.2 in ACI 318, or other qualification procedures. Where specific requirements are not provided, special inspection requirements shall be specified by the registered design professional and shall be approved by the building official prior to the commencement of the work.
- c. *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Installation of all adhesive anchors in horizontal and upwardly inclined positions shall be performed by an ACI/CRSI Certified Adhesive Anchor Installer, except where the factored design tension on the anchors is less than 100 pounds and those anchors are clearly noted on the approved construction documents or where the anchors are shear dowels across cold joints in slabs on grade where the slab is not part of the lateral force-resisting system.*

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705.3.4 Inspection and testing of prestressed concrete.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Inspections and tests for prestressed concrete work shall be in accordance with this section. Tests for prestressing steel and anchorage shall be per Section 1910A.3. Inspection shall be in accordance with the following:

1. In addition to the general inspection required for concrete work, all plant fabrication of prestressed concrete members or tensioning of post-tensioned members constructed at the site shall be continuously inspected by an inspector specially approved for this purpose by the enforcement agency.

**Exception:** The special inspector need not be continuously present for the placement of prestress or post-tensioned cables or tendons.

2. The prestressed concrete plant fabrication inspector shall check the materials, equipment, tensioning procedure and construction of the prestressed members and prepare daily written reports. The approved agency shall make a verified report identifying the members by mark and shall include such pertinent data as lot numbers of tendons used, tendon jacking forces, age and strength of concrete at time of tendon release and such other information that may be required.
3. The inspector of prestressed members post-tensioned at the site shall check the condition of the prestressing tendons, anchorage assemblies and concrete in the area of the anchorage, the tensioning equipment and the tensioning procedure and prepare daily written reports. The approved agency shall make a verified report of the prestressing operation identifying the members or tendons by mark and including such pertinent data as the initial cable slack, net elongation of tendons, jacking force developed and such other information as may be required.
4. The verified reports of construction shall show that of the inspector's own personal knowledge, the work covered by the report has been performed and materials used and installed in every material respect in compliance with the duly approved plans and specifications for plant fabrication inspection. The verified report shall be accompanied by test reports required for materials used. For site post-tensioning inspections the verified report shall be accompanied by copies of calibration charts, certified by an approved testing laboratory, showing the relationship between gage readings and force applied by the jacks used in the prestressing procedure

**1705.3.5 Concrete pre-placement inspection.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Concrete shall not be placed until the forms and reinforcement have been inspected, all preparations for the placement have been completed, and the preparations have been checked by the Inspector of Record.

**1705.3.6 Placing record.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] A record shall be kept on the site of the time and date of placing the concrete in each portion of the structure. Such record shall be kept until the completion of the structure and shall be open to the inspection of the enforcement agency.

**1705.3.7 Composite construction cores.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Composite construction cores shall be taken and tested in accordance with Section 1910A.4.

**1705.3.8 Special Inspections and tests for post-installed anchors in concrete.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Special inspections and tests for post-installed anchors in concrete shall be in accordance with Table 1705.3 and Section 1901.3.

**1705.3.9 Shotcrete.** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] All shotcrete work shall be continuously inspected during placing by an approved agency. The special shotcrete inspector shall check the materials, placing equipment, details of construction and construction procedure. The approved agency shall furnish a verified report that of his or her own personal knowledge the work covered by the report has been performed and materials have been used and installed in every material respect in compliance with the duly approved plans and specifications. Preconstruction and strength tests of shotcrete shall be in accordance with Sections 1908.5 and 1908.10, respectively.

**1705.3.9.1 Visual examination for structural soundness of in-place shotcrete.** Completed shotcrete work shall be checked visually for reinforcing bar embedment, voids, rock pockets, sand streaks and similar deficiencies by examining a minimum of three 3-inch (76 mm) cores taken from three areas chosen by the design engineer which represent the worst congestion of reinforcing bars occurring in the project. Extra reinforcing bars may be added to noncongested areas and cores may be taken from these areas. The cores shall be examined by the special inspector and a report submitted to the enforcement agency prior to final approval of the shotcrete.

**Exception:** Shotcrete work fully supported on earth, minor repairs, and when, in the opinion of the enforcement agency, no special hazard exists.

**1705.3.9.2 Preconstruction tests.** A shotcrete mockup panel shall be shot, cured, cored or sawn, examined and tested prior to commencement of the project. The mockup panel shall be representative of the project and simulate job conditions as closely as possible. The mockup panel thickness and reinforcing shall reproduce the thickest and most congested area specified in the structural design. It shall be shot at the same angle, using the same nozzleman and with the same concrete mix design that will be used on the project. Adequate encasement of bars larger than No. 5 shall be demonstrated by the mockup panels. The equipment used in preconstruction testing shall be the same equipment used in the work requiring such testing, unless substitute equipment is approved by the building official. Reports of preconstruction tests shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5.

**1705.4 Masonry construction.** Special inspections and tests of masonry construction shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance program requirements of TMS 402 and TMS 602. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] as set forth in Tables 3 and 4, Level 3 requirements and Chapter 21. Testing shall be performed in accordance with Section 2105. Special inspec-

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

*tion and testing of post-installed anchors in masonry shall be required in accordance with requirements for concrete in Chapters 17 and 19.*

**Exception:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD. Special inspections and tests shall not be required for:

1. Empirically designed masonry, glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2109, Section 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as Risk Category I, II or III.
2. Masonry foundation walls constructed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(1), 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4).
3. Masonry fireplaces, masonry heaters or masonry chimneys installed or constructed in accordance with Section 2111, 2112 or 2113, respectively.

**1705.4.1 Glass unit masonry and masonry veneer in Risk Category IV.** Special inspections and tests for glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as Risk Category IV shall be performed in accordance with TMS 602 Level 2. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.

[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] *Glass unit masonry and masonry veneer in Risk Category II, III or IV. Special inspections and tests for glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed by Section 2110 or Chapter 14, respectively, in structures classified as Risk Category II, III or IV, shall be performed in accordance with TMS 602 Tables 3 and 4, Level 2 Quality Assurance.*

**1705.4.2 Vertical masonry foundation elements.** Special inspections and tests of vertical masonry foundation elements shall be performed in accordance with Section 1705.4.

**1705.5 Wood construction.** Special inspections of prefabricated wood structural elements and assemblies shall be in

accordance with Section 1704.2.5. Special inspections of site-built assemblies shall be in accordance with this section.

**1705.5.1 High-load diaphragms.** High-load diaphragms designed in accordance with Section 2306.2 shall be installed with special inspections as indicated in Section 1704.2. The special inspector shall inspect the wood structural panel sheathing to ascertain whether it is of the grade and thickness shown on the approved construction documents. Additionally, the special inspector must verify the nominal size of framing members at adjoining panel edges, the nail or staple diameter and length, the number of fastener lines and that the spacing between fasteners in each line and at edge margins agrees with the approved construction documents.

**1705.5.2 Metal-plate-connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** Where a truss clear span is 60 feet (18288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

**1705.5.3 Mass timber construction.** Special inspections of mass timber elements in Types IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction shall be in accordance with Table 1705.5.3.

**1705.5.4 [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Manufactured trusses and assemblies.** The fabrication of trusses and other assemblages constructed using wood and metal members, or using light metal plate connectors, shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency. The approved agency shall furnish the architect, structural engineer and the enforcement agency with a report that the lumber species, grades and moisture content; type of glue, temperature and gluing procedure; type of metal members and metal plate connectors; and the workmanship conform in every material respect with the duly approved construction documents. Each inspected truss shall be stamped by the approved agency with an identifying mark.

TABLE 1705.5.3  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS OF MASS TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Inspection of anchorage and connections of mass timber construction to timber deep foundation systems.	—	X
2. Inspect erection of mass timber construction.	—	X
3. Inspection of connections where installation methods are required to meet design loads.		
Threaded fasteners		
Verify use of proper installation equipment.	—	X
Verify use of pre-drilled holes where required.	—	X
Inspect screws, including diameter, length, head type, spacing, installation angle and depth.	—	X
Adhesive anchors installed in horizontal or upwardly inclined orientation to resist sustained tension loads.	X	—
Adhesive anchors not defined in preceding cell.	—	X
Bolted connections.	—	X
Concealed connections.	—	X

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705.5.5 Structural glued laminated and cross-laminated timber.** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] Manufacture of all structural glued laminated and cross-laminated timber shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency.

The approved agency shall verify that proper quality control procedures and tests have been employed for all materials and the manufacturing process, and shall perform visual inspection of the finished product. Each inspected member shall be stamped by the approved agency with an identification mark.

**Exception:** Special Inspection is not required for non-custom prismatic glued laminated members identified on drawings and sourced from stock or general inventory of 5 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (140 mm) maximum width and 18-inch (457 mm) maximum depth, and with a maximum clear span of 32 feet (9754 mm), manufactured and marked in accordance with ANSI A190.1 Section 13.1 for non-custom members.

**1705.5.6 Manufactured open web trusses.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] The manufacture of open web trusses shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency.

The approved agency shall verify that proper quality control procedures and tests have been employed for all materials and the manufacturing process, and shall perform visual inspection of the finished product. Each inspected truss shall be stamped with an identification mark by the approved agency.

**1705.5.7 Timber connectors.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] The installation of all split ring and shear plate timber connectors and timber rivets shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency. The approved agency shall furnish the architect, structural engineer and the enforcement agency with a report verifying that the materials, timber connectors and workmanship conform to the approved construction documents.

**1705.6 Soils.** Special inspections and tests of existing site soil conditions, fill placement and load-bearing requirements shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705.6. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

**Exception:** Where Section 1803 does not require reporting of materials and procedures for fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that the in-place dry density

of the compacted fill is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.

**1705.6.1 Soil fill.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] All fills used to support the foundations of any building or structure shall be continuously inspected by the geotechnical engineer or his or her qualified representative. It shall be the responsibility of the geotechnical engineer to verify that fills meet the requirements of the approved construction documents and to coordinate all fill inspection and testing during construction involving such fills.

The duties of the geotechnical engineer or his or her qualified representative shall include, but need not be limited to, the inspection of cleared areas and benches prepared to receive fill; inspection of the removal of all unsuitable soils and other materials; the approval of soils to be used as fill material; the inspection of placement and compaction of fill materials; the testing of the completed fills; and the inspection or review of geotechnical drainage devices, buttress fills or other similar protective measures in accordance with the approved construction documents.

A verified report shall be submitted by the geotechnical engineer as required by the California Administrative Code. The report shall indicate that all tests and inspections required by the approved construction documents were completed and whether the tested materials and/or inspected work meet the requirements of the approved construction documents.

**1705.7 Driven deep foundations.** Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of driven deep foundation elements as specified in Table 1705.7. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

**1705.7.1 Driven deep foundations observation.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] The installation of driven deep foundations shall be continuously observed by a qualified representative of the geotechnical engineer responsible for that portion of the project.

The representative of the geotechnical engineer shall make a report of the deep foundation pile-driving operation giving such pertinent data as the physical characteristics of the deep foundation pile-driving equipment,

TABLE 1705.6  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF SOILS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity.	—	X
2. Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material.	—	X
3. Perform classification and testing of compacted fill materials.	—	X
4. During fill placement, verify use of proper materials and procedures in accordance with the provisions of the approved geotechnical report. Verify densities and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of compacted fill.	X	—
5. Prior to placement of compacted fill, inspect subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly.	—	X

**TABLE 1705.7**  
**REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF DRIVEN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Verify element materials, sizes and lengths comply with the requirements.	X	—
2. Determine capacities of test elements and conduct additional load tests, as required.	X	—
3. Inspect driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	X	—
4. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required penetrations to achieve design capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any damage to foundation element.	X	—
5. For steel elements, perform additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.2.	In accordance with Section 1705.2	
6. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.3.	In accordance with Section 1705.3	
7. For specialty elements, perform additional inspections as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.	In accordance with Statement of Special Inspections	

*identifying marks for each deep foundation pile, total depth of embedment for each deep foundation; and when the allowable deep foundation pile loads are determined by a dynamic load formula, the design formula used, and the permanent penetration under the last 10 blows. One copy of the report shall be sent to the enforcement agency.*

**1705.8 Cast-in-place deep foundations.** Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of cast-in-place deep foundation elements as specified in Table 1705.8. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

**1705.9 Helical pile foundations.** Continuous special inspections shall be performed during installation of helical pile foundations. The information recorded shall include installation equipment used, pile dimensions, tip elevations, final depth, final installation torque and other pertinent installation data as required by the registered design professional in responsible charge. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professional shall be used to determine compliance.

**1705.10 Structural integrity of deep foundation elements.** Whenever there is a reasonable doubt as to the structural integrity of a deep foundation element, an engineering assessment shall be required. The engineering assessment shall include tests for defects performed in accordance with ASTM D4945, ASTM D5882, ASTM D6760 or ASTM D7949, or other approved method.

**1705.11 Fabricated items.** Special inspections of fabricated items shall be performed in accordance with Section 1704.2.5.

**1705.12 Special inspections for wind resistance.** Special inspections for wind resistance specified in Sections 1705.12.1 through 1705.12.3, unless exempted by the exceptions to Section 1704.2, are required for buildings and structures constructed in the following areas:

1. In wind Exposure Category B, where V is 150 miles per hour (67 m/sec) or greater.
2. In wind Exposure Category C or D, where V is 140 mph (62.6 m/sec) or greater.

**1705.12.1 Structural wood.** Continuous special inspection is required during field gluing operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. Periodic special inspection is required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces and hold-downs.

**Exception:** Special inspections are not required for wood shear walls, shear panels and diaphragms, including nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to other elements of the main windforce-resisting system, where the lateral resistance is provided by structural sheathing and the specified fastener spacing at panel edges is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**1705.12.2 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.** Periodic special inspection is required for welding operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. Periodic special inspection is required for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

**Exception:** Special inspections are not required for cold-formed steel light-frame shear walls and diaphragms, including screwing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to components of the windforce-resisting system, where either of the following applies:

1. The sheathing is gypsum board or fiberboard.
2. The sheathing is wood structural panel or steel sheets on only one side of the shear wall, shear panel or diaphragm assembly and the specified fastener spacing at the panel or sheet edges is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center (o.c.).

**1705.12.3 Wind-resisting components.** Periodic special inspection is required for fastening of the following systems and components:

1. Roof covering, roof deck and roof framing connections.
2. Exterior wall covering and wall connections to roof and floor diaphragms and framing.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**TABLE 1705.8**  
**REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CAST-IN-PLACE DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Inspect drilling operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	X	—
2. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm element diameters, bell diameters (if applicable), lengths, embedment into bedrock (if applicable) and adequate end-bearing strata capacity. Record concrete or grout volumes.	X	—
3. For concrete elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.3.	In accordance with Section 1705.3	

**1705.13 Special inspections for seismic resistance.** Special inspections for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705.13.1 through 1705.13.9, unless exempted by the exceptions of Section 1704.2.

**Exception:** The special inspections specified in Sections 1705.13.1 through 1705.13.9 are not required for structures designed and constructed in accordance with one of the following:

1. The structure consists of light-frame construction; the design spectral response acceleration at short periods,  $S_{DS}$ , as determined in Section 1613.2.4, does not exceed 0.5; and the building height of the structure does not exceed 35 feet (10 668 mm).
2. The seismic force-resisting system of the structure consists of reinforced masonry or reinforced concrete; the design spectral response acceleration at short periods,  $S_{DS}$ , as determined in Section 1613.2.4, does not exceed 0.5; and the building height of the structure does not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm).
3. The structure is a detached one- or two-family dwelling not exceeding two stories above grade plane and does not have any of the following horizontal or vertical irregularities in accordance with Section 12.3 of ASCE 7:
  - 3.1. Torsional or extreme torsional irregularity.
  - 3.2. Nonparallel systems irregularity.
  - 3.3. Stiffness-soft story or stiffness-extreme soft story irregularity.
  - 3.4. Discontinuity in lateral strength-weak story irregularity.

**1705.13.1 Structural steel.** Special inspections for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705.13.1 or 1705.13.1.2, as applicable.

**1705.13.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems.** Special inspections of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems in buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**Exceptions:**

1. In buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, special inspec-

tions are not required for structural steel seismic force-resisting systems where the response modification coefficient, R, designated for "Steel systems not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, excluding cantilever column systems" in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, has been used for design and detailing.

2. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, special inspections are not required for structural steel seismic force-resisting systems where design and detailing in accordance with AISC 360 is permitted by ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

**1705.13.1.2 Structural steel elements.** Special inspections of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705.13.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**Exceptions:**

1. In buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, special inspections of structural steel elements are not required for seismic force-resisting systems with a response modification coefficient, R, of 3 or less.
2. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, special inspections of structural steel elements are not required for seismic force-resisting systems where design and detailing other than AISC 341 is permitted by ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1. Special inspection shall be in accordance with the applicable referenced standard listed in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

**1705.13.2 Structural wood.** For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F:

1. Continuous special inspection shall be required during field gluing operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system.

2. Periodic special inspection shall be required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces, shear panels and hold-downs.

**Exception:** Special inspections are not required for wood shear walls, shear panels and diaphragms, including nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to other elements of the seismic force-resisting system, where the lateral resistance is provided by structural sheathing, and the specified fastener spacing at the panel edges is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

#### 1705.13.3 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, periodic special inspection shall be required for both:

1. Welding operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system.
2. Screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

**Exception:** Special inspections are not required for cold-formed steel light-frame shear walls and diaphragms, including screw installation, bolting, anchoring and other fastening to components of the seismic force-resisting system, where either of the following applies:

1. The sheathing is gypsum board or fiberboard.
2. The sheathing is wood structural panel or steel sheets on only one side of the shear wall, shear panel or diaphragm assembly and the specified fastener spacing at the panel or sheet edge is more than 4 inches (102 mm) on center.

**1705.13.4 Designated seismic systems.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, the special inspector shall examine designated seismic systems requiring seismic qualification in accordance with Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 and verify that the label, anchorage and mounting conform to the certificate of compliance.

**1705.13.5 Architectural components.** Periodic special inspection is required for the erection and fastening of exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls and interior and exterior veneer in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**Exception:** Periodic special inspection is not required for the following:

1. Exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls and interior and exterior veneer 30 feet (9144 mm) or less in height above grade or walking surface.
2. Exterior cladding and interior and exterior veneer weighing 5 psf (0.24 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) or less.

3. Interior nonbearing walls weighing 15 psf (0.72 kN/m<sup>2</sup>) or less.

**1705.13.5.1 Access floors.** Periodic special inspection is required for the anchorage of access floors in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**1705.13.6 Plumbing, mechanical and electrical components.** Periodic special inspection of plumbing, mechanical and electrical components shall be required for the following:

1. Anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency and standby power systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
2. Anchorage of other electrical equipment in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F.
3. Installation and anchorage of piping systems designed to carry hazardous materials and their associated mechanical units in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
4. Installation and anchorage of ductwork designed to carry hazardous materials in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
5. Installation and anchorage of vibration isolation systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F where the approved construction documents require a nominal clearance of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) or less between the equipment support frame and restraint.
6. Installation of mechanical and electrical equipment, including duct work, piping systems and their structural supports, where automatic sprinkler systems are installed in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F to verify one of the following:
  - 6.1. Minimum clearances have been provided as required by Section 13.2.3 ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 6.2. A nominal clearance of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) has been provided between automatic sprinkler system drops and sprigs and structural members not used collectively or independently to support the sprinklers; equipment attached to the building structure; and other systems' piping.

Where flexible sprinkler hose fittings are used, special inspection of minimum clearances is not required.

**1705.13.7 Storage racks.** Steel storage racks and steel cantilevered storage racks that are 8 feet (2438 mm) in height or greater and assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be provided with periodic special inspection as required by Table 1705.13.7.

**1705.13.8 Seismic isolation systems.** Periodic special inspection shall be provided for seismic isolation systems in seismically isolated structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F during the fabrication and installation of isolator units and energy dissipation devices.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**TABLE 1705.13.7**  
**REQUIRED INSPECTIONS OF STORAGE RACK SYSTEMS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS INSPECTION	PERIODIC INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD	CBC REFERENCE
1. Materials used, to verify compliance with one or more of the material test reports in accordance with the approved construction documents.	—	X	—	—
2. Fabricated storage rack elements.	—	X	—	Section 1704.2.5
3. Storage rack anchorage installation.	—	X	ANSI/MH16.1 Section 7.3.2	—
4. Completed storage rack system, to indicate compliance with the approved construction documents.	—	X	—	—

**1705.13.9 Cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames.** Periodic special inspection shall be provided for the installation of cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames in the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**1705.14 Testing for seismic resistance.** Testing for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705.14.1 through 1705.14.4, unless exempted from special inspections by the exceptions of Section 1704.2.

**1705.14.1 Structural steel.** Nondestructive testing for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705.14.1.1 or 1705.14.1.2, as applicable.

**1705.14.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems.** Nondestructive testing of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems in buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**Exceptions:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.

1. In buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, nondestructive testing is not required for structural steel seismic force-resisting systems where the response modification coefficient, R, designated for "Steel systems not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, excluding cantilever column systems" in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, has been used for design and detailing.
2. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, nondestructive testing is not required for structural steel seismic force-resisting systems where design and detailing in accordance with AISC 360 is permitted by ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

**1705.14.1.2 Structural steel elements.** Nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705.14.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be

performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**Exceptions:** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.

1. In buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, nondestructive testing of structural steel elements is not required for seismic force-resisting systems with a response modification coefficient, R, of 3 or less.
2. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, nondestructive testing of structural steel elements is not required for seismic force-resisting systems where design and detailing other than AISC 341 is permitted by ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1. Nondestructive testing of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with the applicable referenced standard listed in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.

**1705.14.2 Nonstructural components.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F, where the requirements of Section 13.2.1 of ASCE 7 for nonstructural components, supports or attachments are met by seismic qualification as specified in Item 2 therein, the registered design professional shall specify on the approved construction documents the requirements for seismic qualification by analysis, testing or experience data. Certificates of compliance for the seismic qualification shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Seismic sway bracing components satisfying requirements of FM 1950 or using an alternative testing protocol approved by the building official shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1705.14.3 Designated seismic systems.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F and with designated seismic systems that are subject to the requirements of Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 for certification, the registered design professional shall specify on the approved construction documents the requirements to be met by analysis, testing or experience data as specified

therein. Certificates of compliance documenting that the requirements are met shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5.

**1705.14.3.1 Special seismic certification. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]**

1. *Special seismic certification shall be required for life-safety components, such as emergency and standby power systems, mechanical smoke removal systems and fire sprinkler/fire protection systems.*
2. *Medical, mechanical and electrical equipment and components required for life support for patients shall have special seismic certification in accordance with Section 1705A.14.3.*

**1705.14.4 Seismic isolation systems.** Seismic isolation systems in seismically isolated structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall be tested in accordance with Section 17.8 of ASCE 7.

**[BF] 1705.15 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.** Special inspections and tests of sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1705.15.1 through 1705.15.6. Special inspections shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the approved construction documents. The tests set forth in this section shall be based on samplings from specific floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members. Special inspections and tests shall be performed during construction with an additional visual inspection after the rough installation of electrical, automatic sprinkler, mechanical and plumbing systems and suspension systems for ceilings, and before concealment where applicable. The required sample size shall not exceed 110 percent of that specified by the referenced standards in Sections 1705.15.4.1 through 1705.15.4.9.

**[BF] 1705.15.1 Physical and visual tests.** The special inspections and tests shall include the following to demonstrate compliance with the listing and the fire-resistance rating:

1. Condition of substrates.
2. Thickness of application.
3. Density in pounds per cubic foot ( $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ ).
4. Bond strength adhesion/cohesion.
5. Condition of finished application.

**[BF] 1705.15.2 Structural member surface conditions.** The surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the approved fire-resistance design and the written instructions of approved manufacturers. The prepared surface of structural members to be sprayed shall be inspected by the special inspector before the application of the sprayed fire-resistant material.

**[BF] 1705.15.3 Application.** The substrate shall have a minimum ambient temperature before and after application as specified in the written instructions of approved manufacturers. The area for application shall be ventilated during and after application as required by the written instructions of approved manufacturers.

**[BF] 1705.15.4 Thickness.** Not more than 10 percent of the thickness measurements of the sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be less than the thickness required by the approved fire-resistance design, and none shall be less than the minimum allowable thickness required by Section 1705.15.4.1.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.1 Minimum allowable thickness.** For design thicknesses 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). For design thicknesses less than 1 inch (25 mm), the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus 25 percent. Thickness shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Samples of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected in accordance with Sections 1705.15.4.2 and 1705.15.4.3.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.2 Floor, roof and wall assemblies.** The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605, making not less than four measurements for each 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each story.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.3 Cellular decks.** Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. Not fewer than four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.4 Fluted decks.** Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. Not fewer than four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area, including one each of the following: valley, crest and sides. The average of the measurements shall be reported.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.5 Structural members.** The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to structural members shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Thickness testing shall be performed on not less than 25 percent of the structural members on each floor.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.6 Beams and girders.** At beams and girders thickness measurements shall be made at nine locations around the beam or girder at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.7 Joists and trusses.** At joists and trusses, thickness measurements shall be made at seven locations around the joist or truss at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.8 Wide-flanged columns.** At wide-flanged columns, thickness measurements shall be made at 12 locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705.15.4.9 Hollow structural section and pipe columns.** At hollow structural section and pipe columns, thickness measurements shall be made at not

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

fewer than four locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705.15.5 Density.** The density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall be not less than the density specified in the approved fire-resistance design. Density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. The test samples for determining the density of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected as follows:

1. From each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) or portion thereof of the sprayed area in each story.
2. From beams, girders, trusses and columns at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.

**[BF] 1705.15.6 Bond strength.** The cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the cured sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be not less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) ( $7.18 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ). The cohesive/adhesive bond strength shall be determined in accordance with the field test specified in ASTM E736 by testing in-place samples of the sprayed fire-resistant material selected in accordance with Sections 1705.15.6.1 through 1705.15.6.3.

**[BF] 1705.15.6.1 Floor, roof and wall assemblies.** The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each story.

**[BF] 1705.15.6.2 Structural members.** The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from beams, girders, trusses, columns and other structural members at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.

**[BF] 1705.15.6.3 Primer, paint and encapsulant bond tests.** Bond tests to qualify a primer, paint or encapsulant shall be conducted where the sprayed fire-resistant material is applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface for which acceptable bond-strength performance between these coatings and the fire-resistant material has not been determined. A bonding agent approved by the SFRM manufacturer shall be applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface where the bond strengths are found to be less than required values.

**[BF] 1705.16 Mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings.** Special inspections and tests for mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings applied to structural elements and

decks shall be performed in accordance with AWCI 12-B. Special inspections and tests shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the approved construction documents. Special inspections and tests shall be performed during construction. Additional visual inspection shall be performed after the rough installation and, where applicable, prior to the concealment of electrical, automatic sprinkler, mechanical and plumbing systems.

**1705.17 Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS).** Special inspections shall be required for all EIFS applications.

### Exceptions:

1. Special inspections shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over a water-resistive barrier with a means of draining moisture to the exterior.
2. Special inspections shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over masonry or concrete walls.

**1705.17.1 Water-resistive barrier coating.** A water-resistive barrier coating complying with ASTM E2570 requires special inspection of the water-resistive barrier coating where installed over a sheathing substrate.

**[BF] 1705.18 Fire-resistant penetrations and joints.** In high-rise buildings, in buildings assigned to *Risk Category III* or *IV*, or in fire areas containing Group R occupancies with an occupant load greater than 250, special inspections for through-penetrations, membrane penetration firestops, fire-resistant joint systems and perimeter fire containment systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 714.4.1.2, 714.5.1.2, 715.3.1 and 715.4 shall be in accordance with Section 1705.18.1 or 1705.18.2.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Buildings assigned to all Risk Categories shall be subject to special inspections for fire-resistant penetrations and joints.**

**[BF] 1705.18.1 Penetration firestops.** Inspections of penetration firestop systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 714.4.1.2 and 714.5.1.2 shall be conducted by an approved agency in accordance with ASTM E2174.

**[BF] 1705.18.2 Fire-resistant joint systems.** Inspection of fire-resistant joint systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 715.3.1 and 715.4 shall be conducted by an approved agency in accordance with ASTM E2393.

**[F] 1705.19 Testing for smoke control.** Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector.

**[F] 1705.19.1 Testing scope.** The test scope shall be as follows:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.
2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification.

**[F] 1705.19.2 Qualifications.** Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

**1705.20 Sealing of mass timber.** Periodic special inspections of sealants or adhesives shall be conducted where sealant or adhesive required by Section 703.7 is applied to mass timber building elements as designated in the approved construction documents.

## SECTION 1706 DESIGN STRENGTHS OF MATERIALS

**1706.1 Conformance to standards.** The design strengths and permissible stresses of any structural material that are identified by a manufacturer's designation as to manufacture and grade by mill tests, or the strength and stress grade is otherwise confirmed to the satisfaction of the building official, shall conform to the specifications and methods of design of accepted engineering practice or the approved rules in the absence of applicable standards.

**1706.2 New materials.** For materials that are not specifically provided for in this code, the design strengths and permissible stresses shall be established by tests as provided for in Section 1707.

## SECTION 1707 ALTERNATIVE TEST PROCEDURE

**1707.1 General.** In the absence of approved rules or other approved standards, the building official shall make, or cause to be made, the necessary tests and investigations; or the building official shall accept duly authenticated reports from approved agencies in respect to the quality and manner of use of new materials or assemblies as provided for in Sections 104.11 or 1.8.7, as applicable. The cost of all tests and other investigations required under the provisions of this code shall be borne by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

*[BSC] In the absence of approved rules or other approved standards, the building official shall make, or cause to be made, the necessary tests and investigations; or the building official shall accept duly authenticated reports from approved agencies in respect to the quality and manner of use of new materials or assemblies as provided for in Section 1.2.1, Chapter 1, Division I. The cost of all tests and other investigations required under the provisions of this code shall be borne by the applicant.*

## SECTION 1708 IN-SITU LOAD TESTS

**1708.1 General.** Whenever there is a reasonable doubt as to the stability or load-bearing capacity of a completed building, structure or portion thereof for the expected loads, an engineering assessment shall be required. The engineering assessment shall involve either a structural analysis or an in-situ load test, or both. The structural analysis shall be based on actual material properties and other as-built conditions that affect stability

or load-bearing capacity, and shall be conducted in accordance with the applicable design standard. The in-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.2. If the building, structure or portion thereof is found to have inadequate stability or load-bearing capacity for the expected loads, modifications to ensure structural adequacy or the removal of the inadequate construction shall be required.

**1708.2 In-situ load tests.** In-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708.2.1 or 1708.2.2 and shall be supervised by a registered design professional. The test shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16 as necessary to address the concerns regarding structural stability of the building, structure or portion thereof.

**1708.2.1 Load test procedure specified.** Where a referenced material standard contains an applicable load test procedure and acceptance criteria, the test procedure and acceptance criteria in the standard shall apply. In the absence of specific load factors or acceptance criteria, the load factors and acceptance criteria in Section 1708.2.2 shall apply.

**1708.2.2 Load test procedure not specified.** In the absence of applicable load test procedures contained within a material standard referenced by this code or acceptance criteria for a specific material or method of construction, such existing structure shall be subjected to an approved test procedure developed by a registered design professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, at a minimum the test load shall be equal to the specified factored design loads. For materials such as wood that have strengths that are dependent on load duration, the test load shall be adjusted to account for the difference in load duration of the test compared to the expected duration of the design loads being considered. For statically loaded components, the test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. For components that carry dynamic loads (for example, machine supports or fall arrest anchors), the load shall be left in place for a period consistent with the component's actual function. The structure shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements where the following criteria are satisfied:

1. Under the design load, the deflection shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 1604.3.
2. Within 24 hours after removal of the test load, the structure shall have recovered not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection.
3. During and immediately after the test, the structure shall not show evidence of failure.

## SECTION 1709 PRECONSTRUCTION LOAD TESTS

**1709.1 General.** Where proposed construction is not capable of being designed by approved engineering analysis, or where proposed construction design method does not comply with the applicable material design standard, the system of

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

construction or the structural unit and the connections shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in Section 1709. The building official shall accept certified reports of such tests conducted by an approved testing agency, provided that such tests meet the requirements of this code and approved procedures.

**1709.2 Load test procedures specified.** Where specific load test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria are included in the applicable referenced standards, such test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria shall apply. In the absence of specific test procedures, load factors or acceptance criteria, the corresponding provisions in Section 1709.3 shall apply.

**1709.3 Load test procedures not specified.** Where load test procedures are not specified in the applicable referenced standards, the load-bearing and deformation capacity of structural components and assemblies shall be determined on the basis of a test procedure developed by a registered design professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components and assemblies that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, the test shall be as specified in Section 1709.3.1. Load tests shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16.

**1709.3.1 Test procedure.** The test assembly shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load equal to not less than two times the superimposed design load. The test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. The tested assembly shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements if the assembly recovers not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection within 24 hours after the removal of the test load. The test assembly shall then be reloaded and subjected to an increasing superimposed load until either structural failure occurs or the superimposed load is equal to two and one-half times the load at which the deflection limitations specified in Section 1709.3.2 were reached, or the load is equal to two and one-half times the superimposed design load. In the case of structural components and assemblies for which deflection limitations are not specified in Section 1709.3.2, the test specimen shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load until structural failure occurs or the load is equal to two and one-half times the desired superimposed design load. The allowable superimposed design load shall be taken as the least of:

1. The load at the deflection limitation given in Section 1709.3.2.
2. The failure load divided by 2.5.
3. The maximum load applied divided by 2.5.

**1709.3.2 Deflection.** The deflection of structural members under the design load shall not exceed the limitations in Section 1604.3.

**1709.4 Wall and partition assemblies.** Load-bearing wall and partition assemblies shall sustain the test load both with and without window framing. The test load shall include all design load components. Wall and partition assemblies shall be tested both with and without door and window framing.

**1709.5 Exterior window and door assemblies.** The design pressure rating of exterior windows and doors in buildings shall be determined in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2. For exterior windows and doors tested in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2, required design wind pressures determined from ASCE 7 shall be permitted to be converted to allowable stress design by multiplying by 0.6.

**Exception:** Structural wind load design pressures for window or door assemblies other than the size tested in accordance with Section 1709.5.1 or 1709.5.2 shall be permitted to be different than the design value of the tested assembly, provided that such pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis or validated by an additional test of the window or door assembly to the alternative allowable design pressure in accordance with Section 1709.5.2. Components of the alternate size assembly shall be the same as the tested or labeled assembly. Where engineering analysis is used, it shall be performed in accordance with the analysis procedures of AAMA 2502.

**1709.5.1 Exterior windows and doors.** Exterior windows and sliding doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440. The label shall state the name of the manufacturer, the approved labeling agency and the product designation as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440. Exterior side-hinged doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 or comply with Section 1709.5.2. Products tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 shall not be subject to the requirements of Sections 2403.2 and 2403.3.

**1709.5.2 Exterior windows and door assemblies not provided for in Section 1709.5.1.** Exterior window and door assemblies shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E330. Exterior window and door assemblies containing glass shall comply with Section 2403. The design pressure for testing shall be calculated in accordance with Chapter 16. Each assembly shall be tested for 10 seconds at a load equal to 1.5 times the design pressure.

**1709.5.2.1 Garage doors and rolling doors.** Garage doors and rolling doors shall be tested in accordance with either ASTM E330 or ANSI/DASMA 108, and shall meet the pass/fail criteria of ANSI/DASMA 108. Garage doors and rolling doors shall be labeled with a permanent label identifying the door manufacturer, the door model/series number, the positive and negative design wind pressure rating, the installation instruction drawing reference number, and the applicable test standard.

**1709.5.3 Windborne debris protection.** Protection of exterior glazed openings in buildings located in windborne debris regions shall be in accordance with Section 1609.2.

**1709.5.3.1 Impact protective systems testing and labeling.** Impact protective systems shall be tested for impact resistance by an approved independent laboratory for compliance with ASTM E1886 and ASTM E1996 and for design wind pressure for compliance

**SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS**

with ASTM E330. Required design wind pressures shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7, and for the purposes of this section, multiplied by 0.6 to convert to allowable stress design.

Impact protective systems shall have a permanent label applied in accordance with Section 1703.5.4, identifying the manufacturer, product designation, performance characteristics, and approved inspection agency.

**1709.6 Skylights and sloped glazing.** Skylights and sloped glazing shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24.

**1709.7 Test specimens.** Test specimens and construction shall be representative of the materials, workmanship and details normally used in practice. The properties of the materials used to construct the test assembly shall be determined on the basis of tests on samples taken from the load assembly or on representative samples of the materials used to construct the load test assembly. Required tests shall be conducted or witnessed by an approved agency.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 17A – SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter								X	X	X				X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

*The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †*

*The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.*



## CHAPTER 17A

# SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

### **SECTION 1701A GENERAL**

**1701A.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the quality, workmanship and requirements for materials covered. Materials of construction and tests shall conform to the applicable standards listed in this code.

**1701A.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 17A is as follows:*

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety, which include those applications listed in Sections 1.9.2.1 (DSA-SS) and 1.9.2.2 (DSA-SS/CC). These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*
2. *Structures regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), which include those applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 and 1.10.4. These applications include hospitals and correctional treatment centers.*

**1701A.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exceptions:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. *Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety:*
  - [DSA-SS] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.
  - [DSA-SS/CC] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:*
  - [OSHPD 1] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.
  - [OSHPD 4] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

**1701A.1.3 Reference to other chapters.**

**1701A.1.3.1 [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 16A, 19A, 21A, 22A and 23, the provisions in Chapters 16, 19, 21, 22 and 23, respectively, shall apply instead as defined in Section 1.9.2.2. Referenced sections may not directly correlate, but the corresponding DSA-SS/CC sections to such references still apply.

**1701A.3 Special inspections and tests. [OSHPD 1 and 4]** In addition to the inspector(s) of record required by the California Administrative Code (CCR, Title 24, Part 1), Section 7-144, the owner shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests during construction

*on the types of work listed under Chapters 17A, 18A, 19A, 20, 21A, 22A, 23 and 25, and noted in the Test, Inspection and Observation (TIO) program required by Sections 7-141, 7-145 and 7-149, of the California Administrative Code. Test, Inspection and Observation (TIO) program shall satisfy requirements of Section 1704A.*

**1701A.4 Special inspections and tests. [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC]** *In addition to the project inspector required by the California Administrative Code (CCR, Title 24, Part 1), Section 4-333, the owner shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests as required by the enforcement agency during construction on the types of work listed under Chapters 17A, 18A, 19A, 20, 21A, 22A, 23 and 25 and the California Existing Building Code and noted in the special test, inspection and observation plan required by Section 4-335 of the California Administrative Code.*

### **SECTION 1702A NEW MATERIALS**

**1702A.1 General.** New building materials, equipment, appliances, systems or methods of construction not provided for in this code, and any material of questioned suitability proposed for use in the construction of a building or structure, shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in this chapter and in the approved rules to determine character, quality and limitations of use.

### **SECTION 1703A APPROVALS**

**1703A.1 Approved agency.** An approved agency shall provide all information as necessary for the building official to determine that the agency meets the applicable requirements specified in Sections 1703A.1.1 through 1703A.1.3.

**1703A.1.1 Independence.** An approved agency shall be objective, competent and independent from the contractor responsible for the work being inspected. The agency shall disclose to the building official and the registered design professional in responsible charge possible conflicts of interest so that objectivity can be confirmed.

**1703A.1.2 Equipment.** An approved agency shall have adequate equipment to perform required tests. The equipment shall be periodically calibrated.

**1703A.1.3 Personnel.** An approved agency shall employ experienced personnel educated in conducting, supervising and evaluating tests and special inspections.

**1703A.2 Written approval.** Any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction meeting the requirements of this code shall be approved in writing after satisfactory completion of the required tests and submission of required test reports.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1703A.3 Record of approval.** For any material, appliance, equipment, system or method of construction that has been approved, a record of such approval, including the conditions and limitations of the approval, shall be kept on file in the building official's office and shall be available for public review at appropriate times.

**1703A.4 Performance.** Specific information consisting of test reports conducted by an approved agency in accordance with the appropriate referenced standards, or other such information as necessary, shall be provided for the building official to determine that the product, material or assembly meets the applicable code requirements.

*[OSHPD 1 & 4] Tests performed by an independent approved testing agency/laboratory or under the responsible charge of a competent approved independent Registered Design Professional shall be deemed to comply with requirements of this section. Test reports for structural tests shall be reviewed and accepted by an independent California licensed structural engineer.*

**1703A.4.1 Research and investigation.** Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to the building official to substantiate the proposed use of any product, material or assembly. If it is determined that the evidence submitted is satisfactory proof of performance for the use intended, the building official shall approve the use of the product, material or assembly subject to the requirements of this code. The costs, reports and investigations required under these provisions shall be paid by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

**1703A.4.2 Research reports.** Supporting data, where necessary to assist in the approval of products, materials or assemblies not specifically provided for in this code, shall consist of valid research reports from approved sources.

**1703A.5 Labeling.** Products, materials or assemblies required to be labeled shall be labeled in accordance with the procedures set forth in Sections 1703A.5.1 through 1703A.5.4.

**1703A.5.1 Testing.** An approved agency shall test a representative sample of the product, material or assembly being labeled to the relevant standard or standards. The approved agency shall maintain a record of the tests performed. The record shall provide sufficient detail to verify compliance with the test standard.

**1703A.5.2 Inspection and identification.** The approved agency shall periodically perform an inspection, which shall be in-plant if necessary, of the product or material that is to be labeled. The inspection shall verify that the labeled product, material or assembly is representative of the product, material or assembly tested.

**1703A.5.3 Label information.** The label shall contain the manufacturer's identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the performance characteristics of the product, material or assembly and the approved agency's identification.

**1703A.5.4 Method of labeling.** Information required to be permanently identified on the product, material or assembly shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser

etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

**1703A.6 Evaluation and follow-up inspection services.** Where structural components or other items regulated by this code are not visible for inspection after completion of a prefabricated assembly, the owner or the owner's authorized agent shall submit a report of each prefabricated assembly. The report shall indicate the complete details of the assembly, including a description of the assembly and its components, the basis upon which the assembly is being evaluated, test results and similar information and other data as necessary for the building official to determine conformance to this code. Such a report shall be approved by the building official.

**1703A.6.1 Follow-up inspection.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall provide for special inspections of fabricated items in accordance with Section 1704A.2.5.

**1703A.6.2 Test and inspection records.** Copies of necessary test and special inspection records shall be filed with the building official.

## SECTION 1704A SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS, CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITY AND STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION

**1704A.1 General.** Special inspections and tests, statements of special inspections, responsibilities of contractors, submissions to the building official and structural observations shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

**1704A.2 Special inspections and tests.** Where application is made to the building official for construction as specified in Section 105, the owner shall employ one or more approved agencies to provide special inspections and tests during construction on the types of work specified in Section 1705A and identify the approved agencies to the building official. These special inspections and tests are in addition to the inspections by the building official that are identified in Section 110.

*[OSHPD 1 & 4] The inspectors shall act under the direction of the architect or structural engineer or both, and be responsible to the Owner. Where the California Administrative Code (CAC) Section 7-115 (a) 2 permits construction documents to be prepared under the responsible charge of a mechanical, electrical or civil engineer, inspectors shall be permitted to work under the direction of engineer in appropriate branch as permitted therein.*

### Exceptions:

1. Special inspections and tests are not required for construction of a minor nature or as warranted by conditions in the jurisdiction as approved by the building official.

2. *[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Reference to Section 105 and Section 110 shall be to the California Administrative Code instead.*

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1704A.2.1 Special inspector qualifications.** Prior to the start of the construction, the approved agencies shall provide written documentation to the building official demonstrating the competence and relevant experience or training of the special inspectors who will perform the special inspections and tests during construction. Experience or training shall be considered to be relevant where the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of special inspection or testing activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities. These qualifications are in addition to qualifications specified in other sections of this code.

The registered design professional in responsible charge and engineers of record involved in the design of the project are permitted to act as an approved agency and their personnel are permitted to act as special inspectors for the work designed by them, provided they qualify as special inspectors.

**1704A.2.2 Access for special inspection.** The construction or work for which special inspection or testing is required shall remain accessible and exposed for special inspection or testing purposes until completion of the required special inspections or tests.

**1704A.2.3 Statement of special inspections.** The applicant shall submit a statement of special inspections *prepared by the registered design professional in general responsible charge* in accordance with Section 107.1 as a condition for *construction documents review*. This statement shall be in accordance with Section 1704A.3.

*[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CCJ Reference to Section 107.1 shall be to the California Administrative Code instead.]*

**1704A.2.4 Report requirement.** *The inspector(s) of record and approved agencies shall keep records of special inspections and tests. The inspector of record and approved agency shall submit reports of special inspections and tests to the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge as required by the California Administrative Code.* Reports shall indicate that work inspected or tested was or was not completed in conformance to approved construction documents *as required by the California Administrative Code and this code*. Discrepancies shall be brought to the immediate attention of the contractor for correction. If they are not corrected, the discrepancies shall be brought to the attention of the building official and to the registered design professional in responsible charge prior to the completion of that phase of the work. A final report documenting required special inspections and tests, and correction of any discrepancies noted in the inspections or tests, shall be submitted at a point in time agreed upon prior to the start of work by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to the building official.

**1704A.2.5 Special inspection of fabricated items.** Where fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies is being conducted on the premises of a fabricator's shop, special inspections of the fabricated items shall be performed during fabrication.

**1704A.2.5.1 Fabricator approval.** *Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.*

**1704A.3 Statement of special inspections.** Where special inspections or tests are required by Section 1705A, the registered design professional in responsible charge shall prepare a statement of special inspections in accordance with Section 1704A.3.1 for submittal by the applicant in accordance with Section 1704A.2.3.

**Exception:** The statement of special inspections is permitted to be prepared by a qualified person approved by the building official for construction not designed by a registered design professional.

**1704A.3.1 Content of statement of special inspections.** The statement of special inspections shall identify the following:

1. The materials, systems, components and work required to have special inspections or tests by the building official or by the registered design professional responsible for each portion of the work.
2. The type and extent of each special inspection.
3. The type and extent of each test.
4. Additional requirements for special inspections or tests for seismic or wind resistance as specified in Sections 1705A.12, 1705.13 and 1705A.14.
5. For each type of special inspection, identification as to whether it will be continuous special inspection, periodic special inspection or performed in accordance with the notation used in the referenced standard where the inspections are defined.

**1704A.3.2 Seismic requirements in the statement of special inspections.** Where Section 1705A.13 or 1705A.14 specifies special inspections or tests for seismic resistance, the statement of special inspections shall identify the *equipment/components that require special seismic certification* and seismic force-resisting systems that are subject to the special inspections or tests.

**1704A.3.3 Wind requirements in the statement of special inspections.** Where Section 1705A.12 specifies special inspection for wind resistance, the statement of special inspections shall identify the main windforce-resisting systems and wind-resisting components that are subject to special inspections.

**1704A.4 Contractor responsibility.** Each contractor responsible for the construction of a main wind- or seismic force-resisting system, *installation of equipment/components requiring special seismic certification* or a wind- or seismic force-resisting component listed in the statement of special inspections shall submit a written statement of responsibility to the building official and the owner or the owner's authorized agent prior to the commencement of work on the system or component. The contractor's statement of responsibility shall contain acknowledgement of awareness of the special requirements contained in the statement of special inspections.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1704A.5 Submittals to the building official.** In addition to the submittal of reports of special inspections and tests in accordance with Section 1704A.2.4, reports and certificates shall be submitted by the owner or the owner's authorized agent to the building official for each of the following:

- || 1. *[OSHPD 1 & 4]* Certificates of compliance for the fabrication of structural, load-bearing or lateral load-resisting members or assemblies on the premises of an approved fabricator in accordance with Section 1704A.2.5.1.
- || 2. Certificates of compliance for the *manufacturer's certification* of nonstructural components, supports and attachments in accordance with Section 1705A.14.2.
- || 3. Certificates of compliance for *equipment/components requiring special seismic certification* in accordance with Section 1705A.14.3.
- || 4. Reports of preconstruction tests for shotcrete in accordance with ACI 318 and 1705A.3.9.2.
- || 5. Certificates of compliance for open web steel joists and joist girders in accordance with Section 2207A.5.
- || 6. Reports of material properties verifying compliance with the requirements of AWS D1.4 for weldability as specified in Section 26.6.4 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars in concrete complying with a standard other than ASTM A706 that are to be welded.
- || 7. Reports of mill tests in accordance with Section 20.2.2.5 of ACI 318 for reinforcing bars complying with ASTM A615 and used to resist earthquake-induced flexural or axial forces in the special moment frames, special structural walls or coupling beams connecting special structural walls of seismic force-resisting systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**1704A.6 Structural observations.** The owner shall employ a registered design professional to perform structural observations. The structural observer shall visually observe representative locations of structural systems, details and load paths for general conformance to the approved construction documents. Structural observation does not include or waive the responsibility for the inspections in Section 110 or the special inspections in Section 1705A or other sections of this code. Prior to the commencement of observations, the structural observer shall submit to the building official a written statement identifying the frequency and extent of structural observations. At the conclusion of the work included in the permit, the structural observer shall submit to the building official a written statement that the site visits have been made and identify any reported deficiencies that, to the best of the structural observer's knowledge, have not been resolved.

*[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Reference to Section 110 shall be to the California Administrative Code instead.*

## SECTION 1705A REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705A.1 General.** Special inspections and tests of elements and nonstructural components of buildings and structures shall meet the applicable requirements of this section.

**1705A.1.1 Special cases.** Special inspections and tests shall be required for proposed work that is, in the opinion of the building official, unusual in its nature, such as, but not limited to, the following examples:

1. Construction materials and systems that are alternatives to materials and systems prescribed by this code.
2. Unusual design applications of materials described in this code.
3. Materials and systems required to be installed in accordance with additional manufacturer's instructions that prescribe requirements not contained in this code or in standards referenced by this code.

**1705A.2 Steel construction.** The special inspections and nondestructive testing of steel construction in buildings, structures, and portions thereof shall be in accordance with this section.

**Exception:** Special inspections of the steel fabrication process shall not be required where the fabrication process for the entire building or structure does not include any welding, thermal cutting or heating operation of any kind. In such cases, the fabricator shall be required to submit a detailed procedure for material control that demonstrates the fabricator's ability to maintain suitable records and procedures such that, at any time during the fabrication process, the material specification and grade for the main stress-carrying elements are capable of being determined. Mill test reports shall be identifiable to the main stress-carrying elements where required by the approved construction documents.

**1705A.2.1 Structural steel.** Special inspections and nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of *this section, Chapter 22A and quality control requirements of AISC 360, AISC 341 and AISC 358*.

**Exception:** Special inspection of railing systems composed of structural steel elements shall be limited to welding inspection of welds at the base of cantilevered rail posts.

*AISC 360, Chapter N and AISC 341, Chapter J are adopted, except as noted below:*

*The following provisions of AISC 360, Chapter N are not adopted:*

1. N4, Item 2 (*Quality Assurance Inspector Qualifications*).
2. N5, Item 2 (*Quality Assurance*).
3. N5, Item 3 (*Coordinated Inspection*).
4. N5, Item 4 (*Inspection of Welding*).

5. N6 (Approved Fabricators and Erectors).

6. N7 (Nonconforming Material and Workmanship).

Additionally, the requirements of Table 1705A.2.1 of the California Building Code shall apply.

In addition to the quality assurance requirements contained in AISC 341, Chapter J, Section J5 (Inspection Tasks), the requirements of Section 1704A.3 and Table 1705A.2.1 of the California Building Code shall apply.

[**DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC**] Modify AISC 360, Section N5.5(b), as follows:

For structures in Risk Category II, III or IV, UT shall be performed by QA on all complete-joint-penetration (CJP) groove welds subject to transversely applied tension loading in butt, T- and corner joints, in material  $\frac{5}{16}$  in. (8 mm) thick or greater.

**1705A.2.2 Cold-formed steel deck.** Special inspections for cold-formed steel floor and roof deck shall be in accordance with the quality assurance inspection requirements of SDI QA/QC.

Deck weld special inspection and testing shall also satisfy requirements in Table 1705A.2.1 and Section 1705A.2.5.

**1705A.2.3 Open-web steel joists and joist girders.** Special inspections of open-web steel joists and joist girders in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Table 1705A.2.3.

**1705A.2.3.1 Steel joist and joist girder inspection.** Special inspection is required during the manufacture and welding of steel joists or joist girders. The approved agency shall verify that proper quality control procedures and tests have been employed for all materials and the manufacturing process, and shall perform visual inspection of the finished product. The approved agency shall place a distinguishing mark, and/or tag with this distinguishing mark, on each inspected joist or joist girder. This mark or tag shall remain on the joist or joist girder throughout the job site receiving and erection process.

**1705A.2.4 Cold-formed steel trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** Where a cold-formed steel truss clear span is 60 feet (18288 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

**1705A.2.4.1 Light-framed steel truss inspection and testing.** Regardless of truss span, the manufacture of cold-formed light framed steel trusses shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency. The approved agency shall verify conformance of materials and manufacture with approved plans and specifications. The approved agency shall place a distinguishing mark, and/or tag with this distinguishing mark, on each inspected truss. This mark or tag shall remain on the truss throughout the job site receiving and erection process. Refer to Section

2211A.1.3.3 for requirements applicable to manufactured trusses specified therein.

#### **1705A.2.5 Inspection and tests of structural welding.**

Inspection and testing (including nondestructive testing) of all shop and field welding operations shall be in accordance with this section, Section 1705A.2.1 and Table 1705A.2.1. Inspections shall be made by a qualified welding inspector approved by the enforcement agency. The minimum requirements for a qualified welding inspector shall be as those for an AWS certified welding inspector (CWI), as defined in the provisions of the AWS QC1.

[**DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC**] Welding inspector approval by the enforcement agency shall occur when specified in the California Administrative Code. Nondestructive testing shall be performed by qualified NDT Level II personnel employed by the approved agency.

The welding inspector shall make a systematic daily record of all welds. In addition to other required records, this record shall include:

1. Identification marks of welders.
2. List of defective welds.
3. Manner of correction of defects.

The welding inspector shall check the material, details of construction and procedure, as well as workmanship of the welds. The inspector shall verify that the installation and testing of end-welded stud shear connectors is in accordance with the requirements of Section 2213A.2 [**DSA-SS/CC**] 2212.6.2) and the approved plans and specifications. The approved agency shall furnish the architect, structural engineer and the enforcement agency with a verified report that the welding has been done in conformance with AWS D1.1, D1.3, D1.4, D1.8 and the approved construction documents.

**1705A.2.6 Special inspection and tests of high-strength fastener assemblies.** Special inspections and tests for high-strength fasteners shall be in accordance with this section, Section 1705A.2.1 and Table 1705A.2.1. High-strength bolts, nuts and washers shall be sampled and tested by an approved agency for conformance with the requirements of applicable ASTM standards [**OSHPD 1 & 4**] and in accordance with Section 2213A.1.

[**DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC**] The minimum requirements for a qualified high-strength bolting special inspector shall be an International Code Council certified Structural Steel and Bolting Special Inspector (S1).

**1705A.3 Concrete construction.** Special inspections and tests of concrete construction shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705A.3.

**Exception:** Special inspections and tests shall not be required for concrete patios, driveways and sidewalks, on grade.

**1705A.3.1 Welding of reinforcing bars.** Special inspections of welding and qualifications of special inspectors for reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with 1705A.2.5, the requirements of AWS D1.4 for special inspection and of AWS D1.4 for special inspector qualification.

SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**TABLE 1705A.2.1  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF STEEL CONSTRUCTION**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD	CBC REFERENCE <sup>a</sup>
<i>1. Material identification and testing of high-strength bolts, nuts and washers:</i>				
a. Identification markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the approved construction documents.	—	X	RCSC: 1.5, AISC 360: A3.3, J3.1 and applicable ASTM material standards	2202A.1, [DSA-SS/CC] 2202.1
b. Manufacturer's certificate of compliance required.	—	X	RCSC: 1.5 & 2.1; AISC 360: A3.3 & N3.2	—
c. Testing of high-strength bolts, nuts and washers.	—	—	RCSC: 7.2, Applicable ASTM material standards	<b>1705A.2.6,</b> <b>[OSHPD 1 &amp; 4]</b> 2213A.1
<i>2. Inspection of high-strength bolting:</i>				
a. Snug-tight joints.	—	X	RCSC: 7-9, AISC 360: J3.1, J3.2, M2.5 & N5.6	1705A.2.6, 2204A.2, [DSA-SS/CC] 2204.2
b. Pretensioned and slip-critical joints using turn-of-nut with matchmarking, twist-off bolt or direct tension indicator methods of installation	—	X		
c. Pretensioned and slip-critical joints using turn-of-nut without matchmarking or calibrated wrench methods of installation.	X	—		
<i>3. Material identification and testing of structural steel and cold-formed steel deck:</i>				
a. For structural steel, identification markings to conform to AISC 360.	—	X	AISC 360: A3.1	2202A.1, [DSA-SS/CC] 2202.1
b. For other steel, identification markings to conform to ASTM standards specified in the approved construction documents.	—	X	Applicable ASTM material standards	2202A.1, [DSA-SS/CC] 2202.1
c. Manufacturer's certified test reports.	—	X	AISC 360: A3.1 & N3.2	—
d. Testing of unidentified steel.	—	—	Applicable ASTM material standards	2202A.1, [DSA-SS/CC] 2202.1
<i>4. Material identification of welding consumables and testing of welded elements:</i>				
a. Identification markings to conform to AWS specification in the approved construction documents.	—	X	AISC 360, A3.5 & N3.2 and applicable AWS A5 documents	—
b. Manufacturer's certificate of compliance required.	—	X	AISC 360: N3.2	—
c. Nondestructive testing of welded joints.	—	—	AISC 360: N5.5	—
<i>5. Inspection of welding:</i>				
a. Structural steel and cold-formed steel deck:				
1. Complete and partial joint penetration groove welds	X	—	AISC 360: J2, M2.4, & M4.5, AWS D1.1 AWS D1.8	1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.5
2. Multipass fillet welds.	X	—		
3. Single-pass fillet welds $> \frac{5}{16}$ "	X	—		
4. Plug and slot welds.	X	—		
5. Single-pass fillet welds $\leq \frac{5}{16}$ "	—	X		
6. Floor and roof deck welds.	—	X	AWS D1.3, SDI QA/QC	1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.2 1705A.2.5
7. End-welded studs.	—	X	AWS D1.1	1705A.2.5, 2213A.2, [DSA-SS/CC] 2212.6.2
8. Welded sheet steel for cold-formed framing members	—	X	AWS D1.3	1705A.2.5, 1705A.2.4.1
b. Reinforcing steel				
<i>6. Inspection of steel frame joint details for compliance:</i>				
a. Details such as bracing and stiffening.	—	X	AISC 360: N5.8	1705A.2.1
b. Member locations.	—	X		
c. Application of joint details at each connection.	—	X		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where applicable, see also Section 1705A.13, Special inspections for seismic resistance.

**TABLE 1705A.2.3**  
**REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS OF OPEN-WEB STEEL JOISTS AND JOIST GIRDERS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD <sup>a</sup>
1. Installation of open-web steel joists and joist girders.			
a. End connections – welding or bolted.	—	X	SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
b. Bridging – horizontal or diagonal.	—	—	—
1. Standard bridging.	—	X	SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
2. Bridging that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.	—	X	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Where applicable, see Section 1705A.13.

**1705A.3.2 Material tests.** In the absence of sufficient data or documentation providing evidence of conformance to quality standards for materials in Chapters 19, 20 and 26 of ACI 318, as modified by Chapter 19A, the building official shall require testing of materials in accordance with the appropriate standards and criteria for the material in Chapters 19, 20 and 26 of ACI 318 as modified by Chapter 19A. Cementitious materials shall be in accordance with 1910A.1 ([DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.3). Tests of reinforcing bars shall be in accordance with Section 1910A.2 ([DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.4).

**1705A.3.3 Batch plant inspection.** Except as provided under this section, the quality and quantity of materials used in transit-mixed concrete and in batched aggregates shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency at the location where materials are measured.

**1705A.3.3.1 Waiver of continuous batch plant inspection.** Continuous batch plant inspection may be waived by the registered design professional, subject to approval by the enforcement agency under either of the following conditions:

1. The concrete plant complies fully with the requirements of ASTM C94, Sections 9 and 10, and has a current certificate from the National Ready Mixed Concrete Association or another agency acceptable to the enforcement agency. The certification shall indicate that the plant has automatic batching and recording capabilities.
2. For single-story light-framed construction (without basement or retaining walls higher than 6 feet in height measured from bottom of footing to top of wall) and isolated foundations supporting equipment only, where deep foundation elements are not used.

When continuous batch plant inspection is waived, the following requirements shall apply and shall be described in the construction documents:

1. An approved agency shall check the first batch at the start of the day to verify materials and proportions conform to the approved mix design.
2. A licensed weighmaster shall positively identify quantity of materials and certify each load by a batch ticket.

3. Batch tickets, including material quantities and weights shall accompany the load, shall be transmitted to the inspector of record by the truck driver with load identified thereon. The load shall not be placed without a batch ticket identifying the mix. The inspector of record shall keep a daily record of placements, identifying each truck, its load, and time of receipt at the jobsite, and approximate location of deposit in the structure and shall maintain a copy of the daily record as required by the enforcement agency.

**1705A.3.3.2 Batch plant inspection not required.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Batch plant inspection is not required for any of the following conditions, provided they are identified on the approved construction documents and the licensed weighmaster and batch ticket requirements of Section 1705A.3.3.1 are implemented:

1. Site flatwork
2. Unenclosed site structures, including but not limited to lunch or car shelters, bleachers, solar structures, flag or light poles, or retaining walls.
3. Controlled low-strength material backfill.
4. Single-story relocatable buildings less than 2,160 square feet.

**1705A.3.4 Inspection and testing of prestressed concrete.** Inspections and tests for prestressed concrete work shall be in accordance with this section. Tests for prestressing steel and anchorage shall be per Section 1910A.3 ([DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.5). Inspection shall be in accordance with the following:

1. In addition to the general inspection required for concrete work, all plant fabrication of prestressed concrete members or tensioning of posttensioned members constructed at the site shall be continuously inspected by an inspector specially approved for this purpose by the enforcement agency.

**Exception:** The special inspector need not be continuously present for the placement of pre-stressing or post-tensioned cables or tendons.

[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Special inspector approval by the enforcement agency shall occur when specified in the California Administrative Code.

**SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS**
**TABLE 1705A.3  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD <sup>a</sup>	CBC REFERENCE
1. Inspect and test reinforcement, including prestressing tendons, and verify placement. a. Reinforcement in special moment frames, boundary elements of special structural walls and coupling beams. b. All other reinforcement	X —	— X	ACI 318: Ch. 20, 25.2, 25.3, 25.5.1, 26.6.1–26.6.3, 26.13.1, 26.13.3.2, 26.13.3.3	1705A.3.9, 1908A.1, 1910A.2, 1910A.3; [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.4, 1909.2.5, 1909.4.1
2. Reinforcing bar welding: a. Verify weldability of reinforcing bars other than ASTM A706; b. Inspect single-pass fillet welds, maximum $\frac{5}{16}$ "; not defined in 2.d or 2.e. c. Inspect all other welds. d. Reinforcing steel resisting flexural and axial forces in intermediate and special moment frames, and boundary elements and coupling beams of special structural walls of concrete and shear reinforcement. e. Shear reinforcement.	— — X X X	X X — — —	AWS D1.4 ACI 318: 18.2.8, 25.5.7, 26.6.4, 26.13.1.4, 26.13.3.2, 26.13.3.3	1705A.3.1, 1903A.8
3. Inspect anchors cast in concrete.	—	X	ACI 318: 17.8.2, 26.7.2, 26.8.2, 26.13.1, 26.13.3.3	—
4. Inspect and test anchors post-installed in hardened concrete members. <sup>b</sup> a. Adhesive anchors installed in horizontally or upwardly inclined orientations to resist sustained tension loads. b. Mechanical anchors and adhesive anchors not defined in 4.a.	X —	— X	ACI 318: 17.8.2.4 26.7.2, 26.13.1, 26.13.3.2 ACI 318: 17.8.2 26.7.2, 26.13.1, 26.13.3.3	1705A.3.8, 1910A.5, [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.7 1705A.3.8, 1910A.5, [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.7
5. Verify use of required design mix.	X	—	ACI 318: Ch. 19, 26.4, 26.13.3.2	1903A.5, 1903A.6, 1903A.7, 1904A.1, 1904A.2, 1910A.1, [OSHPD 1 & 4] 1908A.1, [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.2.1, 1909.2.2, 1909.2.3
6. Prior to and during concrete placement, fabricate specimens for strength tests, perform slump and air content tests, and determine the temperature of the concrete.	X	—	ASTM C31 ASTM C172, ACI 318: 26.4, 26.5, 26.12	1705A.3.5, 1705A.3.6, 1705A.3.9, 1905A.1.17, [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.3.9
7. Inspect concrete and shotcrete placement for proper application techniques.	X	—	ACI 318: 26.5 26.13, ACI 506: 3.4	1705A.3.9, 1905A.1.15, 1905A.1.16, [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.3.7, 1909.3.8
8. Verify maintenance of specified curing temperature and techniques.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.5.3-26.5.5, 26.13.3.3	—
9. Inspect prestressed concrete for: a. Application of prestressing forces; and b. Grouting of bonded prestressing tendons.	X X	— —	ACI 318: 26.10.2, 26.13.1, 26.13.3.2	1705A.3.4
10. Inspect erection of precast concrete members.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.9, 26.13.1, 26.13.3.3	—
11. For precast concrete diaphragm connections or reinforcement at joints classified as moderate or high deformability elements (MDE or HDE) in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, inspect such connections and reinforcement in the field for: a. Installation of the embedded parts b. Completion of the continuity of reinforcement across joints. c. Completion of connections in the field.	X X X	— — —	ACI 318: 26.13.1.3 ACI 550.5	—
12. Inspect installation tolerances of precast concrete diaphragm connections for compliance with ACI 550.5.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.13.1.3	—
13. Verify in-situ concrete strength, prior to stressing of tendons in post-tensioned concrete and prior to removal of shores and forms from beams and structural slabs.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.10.2, 26.11.2, 26.13.3.3	—
14. Inspect formwork for shape, location and dimensions of the concrete member being formed.	—	X	ACI 318: 26.11.1.2(b), 26.13.3.3	1908A.3, [DSA-SS/CC] 1909.4.3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. Where applicable, see Section 1705A.13.
- b. Specific requirements for special inspection shall be included in the research report for the anchor issued by an approved source in accordance with 17.8.2 in ACI 318, or other qualification procedures. Where specific requirements are not provided, special inspection requirements shall be specified by the registered design professional and shall be approved by the building official prior to the commencement of the work.
- c. Installation of all adhesive anchors in horizontal and upwardly inclined positions shall be performed by an ACI/CRSI Certified Adhesive Anchor Installer, except where the design tension on the anchors is less than 100 pounds and those anchors are clearly noted on the approved construction documents or where the anchors are shear dowels across cold joints in slabs on grade where the slab is not part of the lateral force-resisting system.

2. The prestressed concrete plant fabrication inspector shall check the materials, equipment, tensioning procedure and construction of the prestressed members and prepare daily written reports. The approved agency shall make a verified report identifying the members by mark and shall include such pertinent data as lot numbers of tendons used, tendon jacking forces, age and strength of concrete at time of tendon release and such other information that may be required.
3. The inspector of prestressed members post-tensioned at the site shall check the condition of the prestressing tendons, anchorage assemblies and concrete in the area of the anchorage, the tensioning equipment and the tensioning procedure and prepare daily written reports. The approved agency shall make a verified report of the prestressing operation identifying the members or tendons by mark and including such pertinent data as the initial cable slack, net elongation of tendons, jacking force developed, and such other information as may be required.
4. The verified reports of construction shall show that of the inspector's own personal knowledge, the work covered by the report has been performed and materials used and installed in every material respect in compliance with the duly approved plans and specifications for plant fabrication inspection. The verified report shall be accompanied by test reports required for materials used. For site post-tensioning inspections the verified report shall be accompanied by copies of calibration charts, certified by an approved testing laboratory, showing the relationship between gage readings and force applied by the jacks used in the prestressing procedure.

**1705A.3.5 Concrete preplacement inspection.** Concrete shall not be placed until the forms and reinforcement have been inspected, all preparations for the placement have been completed, and the preparations have been checked by the inspector of record.

**1705A.3.6 Placing record.** A record shall be kept on the site of the time and date of placing the concrete in each portion of the structure. Such record shall be kept until the completion of the structure and shall be open to the inspection of the enforcement agency.

**1705A.3.7 Composite construction cores.** Composite construction cores shall be taken and tested in accordance with Section 1910A.4 (**[DSA-SS/CC]** 1909.2.6).

**1705A.3.8 Special Inspections and tests for post-installed anchors in concrete.** Special inspections and tests for post-installed anchors in concrete shall be in accordance with Table 1705A.3 and Section 1910A.5 (**[DSA-SS/CC]** 1909.2.7).

**1705A.3.9 Shotcrete.** All shotcrete work shall be continuously inspected during placing by an approved agency. The special shotcrete inspector shall check the materials, placing equipment, details of construction and construction procedure. The approved agency shall furnish a verified

report that of his or her own personal knowledge the work covered by the report has been performed and materials used and installed in every material respect in compliance with the duly approved plans and specifications.

**[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** Testing requirements per ACI 318 and ACI 506.2 shall also apply.

**1705A.3.9.1 Visual examination for structural soundness of in-place shotcrete.** Completed shotcrete work shall be checked visually for reinforcing bar embedment, voids, rock pockets, sand streaks and similar deficiencies by examining a minimum of three 3-inch (76 mm) cores taken from three areas chosen by the design engineer which represent the worst congestion of reinforcing bars occurring in the project. Extra reinforcing bars may be added to noncongested areas and cores may be taken from these areas. The cores shall be examined by the special inspector and a report submitted to the enforcement agency prior to final approval of the shotcrete.

**Exception:** Shotcrete work fully supported on earth, minor repairs, and when, in the opinion of the enforcement agency, no special hazard exists.

**1705A.3.9.2 Preconstruction tests.** A shotcrete mockup panel shall be shot, cured, cored or sawn, examined and tested prior to commencement of the project. The mockup panel shall be representative of the project and simulate job conditions as closely as possible. The mockup panel thickness and reinforcing shall reproduce the thickest and most congested area specified in the structural design. It shall be shot at the same angle, using the same nozzleman and with the same concrete mix design that will be used on the project. Adequate encasement of bars larger than No. 5 shall be demonstrated by the mockup panel. The equipment used in preconstruction testing shall be the same equipment used in the work requiring such testing, unless substitute equipment is approved by the building official. Reports of preconstruction tests shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704A.5. Approval from the enforcement agency must be obtained prior to performing shotcrete mockup panels.

**1705A.4 Masonry construction.** Special inspections and tests of masonry construction shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance program requirements of TMS 402 and TMS 602, as set forth in Tables 3 and 4, Level 3 requirements and Chapter 21A. Testing shall be performed in accordance with Section 2105A (**[DSA-SS/CC]** 2115.8). Special inspection and testing of post-installed anchors in masonry shall be required in accordance with requirements for concrete in Chapters 17A and 19A.

**1705A.4.1 Glass unit masonry and masonry veneer in Risk Category II, III or IV.** Special inspections and tests for glass unit masonry or masonry veneer designed in accordance with Section 2110A or Chapter 14, respectively, where they are part of a structure classified as Risk Category II, III or IV shall be performed in accordance with TMS 602 Tables 3 and 4, Level 2.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705A.4.2 Vertical masonry foundation elements.** Special inspections and tests of vertical masonry foundation elements shall be performed in accordance with Section 1705A.4.

**1705A.5 Wood construction.** Special inspections of prefabricated wood structural elements and assemblies shall be in accordance with Section 1704A.2.5 *except as modified in this section*. Special inspections of site-built assemblies shall be in accordance with this section.

**1705A.5.1 High-load diaphragms.** High-load diaphragms designed in accordance with Section 2306A.2 shall be installed with special inspections as indicated in Section 1704A.2. The special inspector shall inspect the wood structural panel sheathing to ascertain whether it is of the grade and thickness shown on the approved construction documents. Additionally, the special inspector must verify the nominal size of framing members at adjoining panel edges, the nail or staple diameter and length, the number of fastener lines and that the spacing between fasteners in each line and at edge margins agrees with the approved construction documents.

**1705A.5.2 Metal-plate-connected wood trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** Where a truss clear span is 60 feet (1828 mm) or greater, the special inspector shall verify that the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing are installed in accordance with the approved truss submittal package.

**1705A.5.3 Mass timber construction.** Special inspections of mass timber elements in Types IV-A, IV-B and IV-C construction shall be in accordance with Table 1705A.5.3.

**1705A.5.4 Wood structural elements and assemblies.** Special inspection of wood structural elements and assemblies is required, as specified in this section, to ensure conformance with approved construction documents and applicable standards.

The approved agency shall furnish a verified report to the design professional in general responsible charge of construction observation, the structural engineer and the enforcement agency, in accordance with the California Administrative Code and this chapter. The verified report shall list all inspected members or trusses, and shall indicate whether or not the inspected members or trusses conform with applicable standards and the approved drawings and specifications. Any nonconforming items shall be indicated on the verified report.

**1705A.5.5 Structural glued laminated and cross-laminated timber.** Manufacture of all structural glued laminated and cross-laminated timber shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency.

The approved agency shall verify that proper quality control procedures and tests have been employed for all materials and the manufacturing process, and shall perform visual inspection of the finished product. Each inspected member shall be stamped by the approved agency with an identification mark.

**Exception:** Special Inspection is not required for non-custom prismatic glued laminated members identified on drawings and sourced from stock or general inventory of 5½-inch maximum width and 18-inch maximum depth, and with a maximum clear span of 32 feet, manufactured and marked in accordance with ANSI A190.1 Section 13.1 for noncustom members.

**1705A.5.6 Manufactured open web trusses.** The manufacture of open web trusses shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency.

The approved agency shall verify that proper quality control procedures and tests have been employed for all materials and the manufacturing process, and shall perform visual inspection of the finished product. Each inspected truss shall be stamped with an identification mark by the approved agency.

TABLE 1705A.5.3  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS OF MASS TIMBER CONSTRUCTION

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Inspection of anchorage and connections of mass timber construction to timber deep foundation systems.	—	X
2. Inspect erection of mass timber construction.	—	X
3. Inspection of connections where installation methods are required to meet design loads.		
3.1. Threaded fasteners.	—	—
3.1.1. Verify use of proper installation equipment.	—	X
3.1.2. Verify use of pre-drilled holes where required.	—	X
3.1.3. Inspect screws, including diameter, length, head type, spacing, installation angle and depth.	—	X
3.2. Adhesive anchors installed in horizontal or upwardly inclined orientation to resist sustained tension loads.	X	—
3.3. Adhesive anchors not defined in 3.2.	—	X
3.4. Bolted connections.	—	X
3.5. Concealed connections.	—	X

**1705A.5.7 Timber connectors.** The installation of all split ring and shear plate timber connectors, and timber rivets shall be continuously inspected by an approved agency. The approved agency shall furnish the architect, structural engineer and the enforcement agency with a report verifying that the materials, timber connectors and workmanship conform to the approved construction documents.

**1705A.6 Soils.** Special inspections and tests of existing site soil conditions, fill placement and load-bearing requirements shall be performed in accordance with this section and Table 1705A.6. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

**Exception:** Where Section 1803 does not require reporting of materials and procedures for fill placement, the special inspector shall verify that the in-place dry density of the compacted fill is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557.

**1705A.6.1 Soil fill.** All fills used to support the foundations of any building or structure shall be continuously inspected by the geotechnical engineer or his or her qualified representative. It shall be the responsibility of the geotechnical engineer to verify that fills meet the requirements of the approved construction documents and to coordinate all fill inspection and testing during the construction involving such fills.

The duties of the geotechnical engineer or his or her qualified representative shall include, but need not be limited to, the inspection of cleared areas and benches prepared to receive fill; inspection of the removal of all unsuitable soils and other materials; the approval of soils to be used as fill material; the inspection of placement and compaction of fill materials; the testing of the completed fills; the inspection or review of geotechnical drainage devices, buttress fills or other similar protective measures in accordance with the approved construction documents.

A verified report shall be submitted by the geotechnical engineer as required by the California Administrative Code. The report shall indicate that all tests and inspection required by the approved construction documents

were completed and that the tested materials and/or inspected work meet the requirements of the approved construction documents.

**1705A.6.2 Earth-retaining shoring.** Special inspections and tests of earth-retaining shoring shall be in accordance with applicable portions of Section 1812A.

**1705A.6.3 Vibro stone columns.** Special inspections and tests of vibro stone columns for ground improvement shall be in accordance with Section 1813A.5.

**1705A.7 Driven deep foundations.** Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of driven deep foundation elements as specified in 1810A.3.3.1.2 and Table 1705A.7. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

**1705A.7.1 Driven deep foundations observation.** The installation of driven deep foundations shall be continuously observed by a qualified representative of the geotechnical engineer responsible for that portion of the project.

The representative of the geotechnical engineer shall make a report of the deep foundation pile-driving operation giving such pertinent data as the physical characteristics of the deep foundation pile-driving equipment, identifying marks for each deep foundation pile, the total depth of embedment for each deep foundation; and when the allowable deep foundation pile loads are determined by a dynamic load formula, the design formula used and the permanent penetration under the last 10 blows. One copy of the report shall be sent to the enforcement agency.

**1705A.8 Cast-in-place deep foundations.** Special inspections and tests shall be performed during installation of cast-in-place deep foundation elements as specified in 1810A.3.3.1.2 and Table 1705A.8. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professionals shall be used to determine compliance.

**1705A.8.1 Micropile tests.** Micropile preproduction and production load tests shall be in accordance with Section 1810A.3.10.4.

TABLE 1705A.6  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF SOILS

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Verify materials below shallow foundations are adequate to achieve the design bearing capacity.	—	X
2. Verify excavations are extended to proper depth and have reached proper material.	—	X
3. Perform classification and testing of compacted fill materials.	—	X
4. During fill placement, verify use of proper materials and procedures in accordance with the provisions of the approved geotechnical report. Verify densities and lift thicknesses during placement and compaction of compacted fill.	X	—
5. Prior to placement of compacted fill, inspect subgrade and verify that site has been prepared properly.	—	X

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**TABLE 1705A.7  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF DRIVEN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Verify element materials, sizes and lengths comply with the requirements.	X	—
2. Determine capacities of test elements and conduct additional load tests, as required.	X	—
3. Inspect driving operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	X	—
4. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm type and size of hammer, record number of blows per foot of penetration, determine required penetrations to achieve design capacity, record tip and butt elevations and document any damage to foundation element.	X	—
5. For steel elements, perform additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705A.2.	In accordance with Section 1705A.2	
6. For concrete elements and concrete-filled elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705A.3.	In accordance with Section 1705A.3	
7. For specialty elements, perform additional inspections as determined by the registered design professional in responsible charge.	In accordance with Statement of Special Inspections	

**TABLE 1705A.8  
REQUIRED SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS OF CAST-IN-PLACE DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS SPECIAL INSPECTION	PERIODIC SPECIAL INSPECTION
1. Inspect drilling operations and maintain complete and accurate records for each element.	X	—
2. Verify placement locations and plumbness, confirm element diameters, bell diameters (if applicable), lengths, embedment into bedrock (if applicable) and adequate end-bearing strata capacity. Record concrete or grout volumes.	X	—
3. For concrete elements, perform tests and additional special inspections in accordance with Section 1705A.3.	In accordance with Section 1705A.3	

**1705A.9 Helical pile foundations.** Continuous special inspections shall be performed during installation of helical pile foundations. The information recorded shall include installation equipment used, pile dimensions, tip elevations, final depth, final installation torque and other pertinent installation data as required by the registered design professional in responsible charge. The approved geotechnical report and the construction documents prepared by the registered design professional shall be used to determine compliance.

**1705A.9.1 Helical pile tests.** *Helical pile preproduction and production load tests shall be in accordance with Section 1810A.3.1.5.1.*

**1705A.10 Structural integrity of deep foundation elements.** Whenever there is a reasonable doubt as to the structural integrity of a deep foundation element, an engineering assessment shall be required. The engineering assessment shall include tests for defects performed in accordance with ASTM D4945, ASTM D5882, ASTM D6760 or ASTM D7949, or other approved method.

**1705A.11 Fabricated items.** Special inspections of fabricated items shall be performed in accordance with Section 1704A.2.5.

**1705A.12 Special inspections for wind resistance.** Special inspections for wind resistance specified in Sections 1705A.12.1 through 1705A.12.3, unless exempted by the

exceptions to Section 1704A.2, are required for buildings and structures constructed in the following areas:

1. In wind Exposure Category B, where V is 150 miles per hour (67 m/sec) or greater.
2. In wind Exposure Category C or D, where V is 140 mph (62.6 m/sec) or greater.

**1705A.12.1 Structural wood.** Continuous special inspection is required during field gluing operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. Periodic special inspection is required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces and hold-downs.

**1705A.12.2 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.** Periodic special inspection is required for welding operations of elements of the main windforce-resisting system. Periodic special inspection is required for screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the main windforce-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

**1705A.12.3 Wind-resisting components.** Periodic special inspection is required for fastening of the following systems and components:

1. Roof covering, roof deck and roof framing connections.

**SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS**

2. Exterior wall covering and wall connections to roof and floor diaphragms and framing.

**1705A.13 Special inspections for seismic resistance.**

Special inspections for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705A.13.1 through 1705A.13.9, unless exempted by the exceptions of Section 1704A.2.

- 1705A.13.1 Structural steel.** Special inspections for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705A.13.1 or 1705A.13.1.2, as applicable.

**1705A.13.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems.** Special inspections of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems in buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341 as modified by Section 1705A.2.1 of this code.

**1705A.13.1.2 Structural steel elements.** Special inspections of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705A.13.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341 as modified by Section 1705A.2.1 of this code.

- 1705A.13.2 Structural wood.** For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F:

1. Continuous special inspection shall be required during field gluing operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system.
2. Periodic special inspection shall be required for nailing, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including wood shear walls, wood diaphragms, drag struts, braces, shear panels and hold-downs.

**1705A.13.3 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.**

For the seismic force-resisting systems of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, periodic special inspection shall be required for both:

1. Welding operations of elements of the seismic force-resisting system.
2. Screw attachment, bolting, anchoring and other fastening of elements of the seismic force-resisting system, including shear walls, braces, diaphragms, collectors (drag struts) and hold-downs.

**1705A.13.4 Special inspection for special seismic certification.**

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the special inspector shall examine equipment and components requiring special seismic certification in accordance with Section 1705A.14.3 or ASCE 7, Section 13.2.2 and verify that the label, anchorage and mounting conform to the certificate of compliance.

- 1705A.13.5 Architectural components.** Periodic special inspection is required for the erection and fastening of

exterior cladding, interior and exterior nonbearing walls, ceilings and interior and exterior veneer in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**[OSHPD 1] Exception:** Periodic special inspection is not required where continuous inspection of the work is performed in accordance with Section 7-145 of the CAC.

**1705A.13.5.1 Access floors.** Periodic special inspection is required for the anchorage of access floors in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

**1705A.13.5.2 Structural sealant glazing.** Special inspection shall be in accordance with Section 2410.2 Item 9.

**1705A.13.6 Plumbing, mechanical and electrical components.** Periodic special inspection of plumbing, mechanical and electrical components shall be required for the following:

1. Anchorage of electrical equipment for emergency and standby power systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
2. Anchorage of other electrical equipment in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
3. Installation and anchorage of piping systems designed to carry hazardous materials and their associated mechanical units in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
4. Installation and anchorage of ductwork designed to carry hazardous materials in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.
5. Installation and anchorage of vibration isolation systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F where the approved construction documents require a nominal clearance of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) or less between the equipment support frame and restraint.
6. Installation of mechanical and electrical equipment, including duct work, piping systems and their structural supports, where automatic sprinkler systems are installed in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F to verify one of the following:
  - 6.1. Minimum clearances have been provided as required by Section 13.2.3 ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 6.2. A nominal clearance of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) has been provided between automatic sprinkler system drops and sprigs and: structural members not used collectively or independently to support the sprinklers; equipment attached to the building structure; and other systems' piping.

Where flexible sprinkler hose fittings are used, special inspection of minimum clearances is not required.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

**1705A.13.7 Storage racks.** Steel storage racks and steel cantilevered storage racks that are 8 feet (2438 mm) in height or greater and assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be provided with periodic special inspection as required by Table 1705A.13.7.

**1705A.13.8 Seismic isolation and damping systems.** Periodic special inspection shall be provided for seismic isolation and damping systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F during the fabrication and installation of isolator units and energy dissipation devices. *Continuous special inspection is required for prototype and production testing of isolator units and damping devices.*

**1705A.14 Testing for seismic resistance.** Testing for seismic resistance shall be required as specified in Sections 1705A.14.1 through 1705A.14.4, unless exempted from special inspections by the exception of Section 1704A.2.

**1705A.14.1 Structural steel.** Nondestructive testing for seismic resistance shall be in accordance with Section 1705A.14.1.1 or 1705A.14.1.2, as applicable.

**1705A.14.1.1 Seismic force-resisting systems.** Nondestructive testing of structural steel in the seismic force-resisting systems in buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**1705A.14.1.2 Structural steel elements.** Nondestructive testing of structural steel elements in the seismic force-resisting systems of buildings and structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F other than those covered in Section 1705A.14.1.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be performed in accordance with the quality assurance requirements of AISC 341.

**1705A.14.2 Nonstructural components.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, where the requirements of Section 13.2.1 of ASCE 7 for nonstructural components, supports or attachments are met by manufacturer's certification as specified in Item 2 therein, the registered design professional shall specify on the approved construction documents the requirements for seismic certification by analysis or testing. Certificates of compliance for the manufacturer's certification shall be

submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704A.5.

*Seismic sway bracing components satisfying requirements of FM 1950 or using an alternative testing protocol approved by the building official shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of this section.*

**1705A.14.2.1 Structural sealant glazing testing.** Testing and the manufacturer's certification shall be in accordance with Section 2410.1.2.

**1705A.14.3 Special seismic certification.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F equipment and components that are subject to the requirements of Section 13.2.2 of ASCE 7 for special seismic certification, the registered design professional shall specify on the approved construction documents the requirements to be met by analysis or testing as specified therein. Certificates of compliance documenting that the requirements are met shall be submitted to the building official as specified in Section 1704A.5.

*Active or energized equipment and components shall be certified exclusively on the basis of approved shake table testing in accordance with ICC-ES AC 156 or equivalent shake table testing criteria approved by the building official. Minimum of two equipment/components shall be tested for a product line with similar structural configuration. Where a range of products are tested, the two equipment/components shall be either the largest and a small unit, or approved alternative representative equipment/components.*

**Exception:** When a single product (and not a product line with more than one product with variations) is certified and manufacturing process is ISO 9001 certified, one test shall be permitted.

*For a multi-component system, where active or energized components are certified by tests, connecting elements, attachments and supports can be justified by supporting analysis.*

**1705A.14.3.1 [OSHPD 1 & 4] Special seismic certification shall be required for the following systems, equipment and components:**

1. Emergency and standby power systems.
2. Elevator equipment (excluding elevator cabs).

**TABLE 1705A.13.7  
REQUIRED INSPECTIONS OF STORAGE RACK SYSTEMS**

TYPE	CONTINUOUS INSPECTION	PERIODIC INSPECTION	REFERENCED STANDARD	CBC REFERENCE
1. Materials used, to verify compliance with one or more of the material test reports in accordance with the approved construction documents.	—	X	—	—
2. Fabricated storage rack elements.	—	X	—	Section 1704A.2.5
3. Storage rack anchorage installation.	—	X	ANSI/MH16.1 Section 7.3.2	—
4. Completed storage rack system, to indicate compliance with the approved construction documents.	—	X	—	—

**SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS**

3. Components with hazardous contents.
  4. Exhaust and smoke control fans.
  5. Switchgear and switchboards.
  6. Motor control centers.
  7. Imaging equipment needed for diagnostic services of emergency/trauma patients, a minimum of one such equipment.
  8. Air conditioning units excluding Variable/Constant Air Volume (VAV/CAV) boxes up to 75 lbs.
  9. Air handling units.
  10. Chillers, including associated evaporators, and condensers.
  11. Cooling towers.
  12. Transformers.
  13. Electrical substations.
  14. UPS and batteries.
  15. Panelboards as defined in the California Electrical Code (CEC) Article 100.
  16. Industrial control panels as defined in the California Electrical Code (CEC) Article 100.
  17. Power isolation and correction systems.
  18. Motorized surgical lighting systems.
  19. Motorized operating table systems.
  20. Internal communication servers, routers and switches failure of which could impair the continued operation of the facility.
  21. Medical gas and vacuum systems.
  22. Electrical busways as defined in UL 857.
  23. Electrical control panels powered by the life safety branch in accordance with the California Electrical Code (CEC) Article 517.33 or the critical branch in accordance with the California Electrical Code (CEC) Article 517.34.
- Exceptions:**
1. Equipment and components weighing not more than 50 lbs. supported directly on structures or surface mounted on equipment or components that are not required to have special seismic certification by this section.
  2. Mobile equipment/components.
  3. Pipes, ducts, conduits and cable trays, excluding in-line equipment and components.
  4. Underground tanks.
  5. Electric motors, base-mounted horizontal pumps and compressors.
  6. Based-mounted vertical pumps up to 20 hp.
  7. Certified subcomponents up to operating weight of 10 lbs.
  8. Components where importance factor,  $I_p$ , is permitted to be 1.0 by this code.
9. Emergency generators up to 25 kilowatts.
  10. Equipment and components used for clinical trials only.
  11. Elevator machines and governors.
  12. Temporary and Interim equipment.
- For Exceptions 5, 6 and 7:*
- Exempt subcomponents, which are an integral part of equipment that require special seismic certification, shall be tested attached to the equipment. Exempt subcomponents shall be permitted to be substituted without testing, provided that the substituted subcomponent relative to the certified subcomponent has:*
1. Similar configuration with equivalent function.
  2. Supports and attachments of similar configuration with equivalent strength and stiffness.
  3. Same attachment location.
  4. Changes in dimensions, center of gravity and mass, of not more than 10 percent of the certified subcomponent and still meets Exception 5, 6 or 7.
  5. Manufacturing process with ISO 9001 certification.
- 1705A.14.4 Seismic isolation and damping systems.** Seismic isolation and damping systems in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be tested in accordance with Section 17.8 and 18.6 of ASCE 7.
- Prototype and production testing and associated acceptance criteria for isolator units and damping devices shall be subject to preapproval by the building official. Testing exemption for similar units shall require approval by the building official.*
- [BF] 1705A.15 Sprayed fire-resistant materials.** Special inspections and tests of sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be performed in accordance with Sections 1705A.15.1 through 1705A.15.6. Special inspections shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the approved construction documents. The tests set forth in this section shall be based on samplings from specific floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members. Special inspections and tests shall be performed during construction with an additional visual inspection after the rough installation of electrical, automatic sprinkler, mechanical and plumbing systems and suspension systems for ceilings, and before concealment where applicable. The required sample size shall not exceed 110 percent of that specified by the referenced standards in Sections 1705A.15.4.1 through 1705A.15.4.9.
- [BF] 1705A.15.1 Physical and visual tests.** The special inspections and tests shall include the following to demonstrate compliance with the listing and the fire-resistance rating:
1. Condition of substrates.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

2. Thickness of application.
3. Density in pounds per cubic foot ( $\text{kg}/\text{m}^3$ ).
4. Bond strength adhesion/cohesion.
5. Condition of finished application.

**[BF] 1705A.15.2 Structural member surface conditions.** The surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the approved fire-resistance design and the written instructions of approved manufacturers. The prepared surface of structural members to be sprayed shall be inspected by the special inspector before the application of the sprayed fire-resistant material.

**[BF] 1705A.15.3 Application.** The substrate shall have a minimum ambient temperature before and after application as specified in the written instructions of approved manufacturers. The area for application shall be ventilated during and after application as required by the written instructions of approved manufacturers.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4 Thickness.** Not more than 10 percent of the thickness measurements of the sprayed fire-resistant materials applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be less than the thickness required by the approved fire-resistance design, and none shall be less than the minimum allowable thickness required by Section 1705A.15.4.1.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.1 Minimum allowable thickness.** For design thicknesses 1 inch (25 mm) or greater, the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm). For design thicknesses less than 1 inch (25 mm), the minimum allowable individual thickness shall be the design thickness minus 25 percent. Thickness shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Samples of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected in accordance with Sections 1705A.15.4.2 and 1705A.15.4.3.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.2 Floor, roof and wall assemblies.** The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605, making not less than four measurements for each 1,000 square feet ( $93 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each story.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.3 Cellular decks.** Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. Not fewer than four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.4 Fluted decks.** Thickness measurements shall be selected from a square area, 12 inches by 12 inches (305 mm by 305 mm) in size. Not fewer than four measurements shall be made, located symmetrically within the square area, including one each of the following: valley, crest and sides. The average of the measurements shall be reported.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.5 Structural members.** The thickness of the sprayed fire-resistant material applied to

structural members shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. Thickness testing shall be performed on not less than 25 percent of the structural members on each floor.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.6 Beams and girders.** At beams and girders thickness measurements shall be made at nine locations around the beam or girder at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.7 Joists and trusses.** At joists and trusses, thickness measurements shall be made at seven locations around the joist or truss at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.8 Wide-flanged columns.** At wide-flanged columns, thickness measurements shall be made at 12 locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705A.15.4.9 Hollow structural section and pipe columns.** At hollow structural section and pipe columns, thickness measurements shall be made at not fewer than four locations around the column at each end of a 12-inch (305 mm) length.

**[BF] 1705A.15.5 Density.** The density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall be not less than the density specified in the approved fire-resistance design. Density of the sprayed fire-resistant material shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E605. The test samples for determining the density of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected as follows:

1. From each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) or portion thereof of the sprayed area in each story.
2. From beams, girders, trusses and columns at the rate of not less than one sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.

**[BF] 1705A.15.6 Bond strength.** The cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the cured sprayed fire-resistant material applied to floor, roof and wall assemblies and structural members shall be not less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) ( $7.18 \text{ kN}/\text{m}^2$ ). The cohesive/adhesive bond strength shall be determined in accordance with the field test specified in ASTM E736 by testing in-place samples of the sprayed fire-resistant material selected in accordance with Sections 1705A.15.6.1 through 1705A.15.6.3.

**[BF] 1705A.15.6.1 Floor, roof and wall assemblies.** The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from each floor, roof and wall assembly at the rate of not less than one sample for every 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the sprayed area, or portion thereof, in each story.

**[BF] 1705A.15.6.2 Structural members.** The test samples for determining the cohesive/adhesive bond strength of the sprayed fire-resistant materials shall be selected from beams, girders, trusses, columns and other structural members at the rate of not less than one

sample for each type of structural member for each 2,500 square feet ( $232 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area or portion thereof in each story.

**[BF] 1705A.15.6.3 Primer, paint and encapsulant bond tests.** Bond tests to qualify a primer, paint or encapsulant shall be conducted where the sprayed fire-resistant material is applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface for which acceptable bond-strength performance between these coatings and the fire-resistant material has not been determined. A bonding agent approved by the SFRM manufacturer shall be applied to a primed, painted or encapsulated surface where the bond strengths are found to be less than required values.

**[BF] 1705A.16 Mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings.** Special inspections and tests for mastic and intumescent fire-resistant coatings applied to structural elements and decks shall be performed in accordance with AWCI 12-B. Special inspections and tests shall be based on the fire-resistance design as designated in the approved construction documents. Special inspections and tests shall be performed during construction. Additional visual inspection shall be performed after the rough installation and, where applicable, prior to the concealment of electrical, automatic sprinkler, mechanical and plumbing systems.

**1705A.17 Exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS).** Special inspections shall be required for all EIFS applications.

#### Exceptions:

1. Special inspections shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over a water-resistive barrier with a means of draining moisture to the exterior.
2. Special inspections shall not be required for EIFS applications installed over masonry or concrete walls.

**1705A.17.1 Water-resistive barrier coating.** A water-resistive barrier coating complying with ASTM E2570 requires special inspection of the water-resistive barrier coating where installed over a sheathing substrate.

**[BF] 1705A.18 Fire-resistant penetrations and joints.** In high-rise buildings, in buildings assigned to Risk Category III or IV, or in fire areas containing Group R occupancies with an occupant load greater than 250, special inspections for through-penetrations, membrane penetration firestops, fire-resistant joint systems and perimeter fire containment systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 714A.4.1.2, 714A.5.1.2, 715A.3.1 and 715A.4 shall be in accordance with Section 1705A.18.1 or 1705A.18.2.

*[DSA SS, DSA-SS/CC] Buildings assigned to Risk Category II, III or IV shall be subject to special inspections for fire-resistant penetrations and joints.*

**[BF] 1705A.18.1 Penetration firestops.** Inspections of penetration firestop systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 714A.4.1.2 and 714A.5.1.2 shall be conducted by an approved agency in accordance with ASTM E2174.

**[BF] 1705A.18.2 Fire-resistant joint systems.** Inspection of fire-resistant joint systems that are tested and listed in accordance with Sections 715A.3.1 and 715A.4 shall be conducted by an approved agency in accordance with ASTM E2393.

**[F] 1705A.19 Testing for smoke control.** Smoke control systems shall be tested by a special inspector.

**[F] 1705A.19.1 Testing scope.** The test scope shall be as follows:

1. During erection of ductwork and prior to concealment for the purposes of leakage testing and recording of device location.
2. Prior to occupancy and after sufficient completion for the purposes of pressure difference testing, flow measurements and detection and control verification.

**[F] 1705A.19.2 Qualifications.** Approved agencies for smoke control testing shall have expertise in fire protection engineering, mechanical engineering and certification as air balancers.

**1705.20 Sealing of mass timber.** Periodic special inspections of sealants or adhesives shall be conducted where sealant or adhesive required by Section 703.7 is applied to mass timber building elements as designated in the approved construction documents.

## SECTION 1706A DESIGN STRENGTHS OF MATERIALS

**1706A.1 Conformance to standards.** The design strengths and permissible stresses of any structural material that are identified by a manufacturer's designation as to manufacture and grade by mill tests, or the strength and stress grade is otherwise confirmed to the satisfaction of the building official, shall conform to the specifications and methods of design of accepted engineering practice or the approved rules in the absence of applicable standards.

**1706A.2 New materials.** For materials that are not specifically provided for in this code, the design strengths and permissible stresses shall be established by tests as provided for in Section 1707A.

## SECTION 1707A ALTERNATIVE TEST PROCEDURE

**1707A.1 General.** In the absence of approved rules or other approved standards, the building official shall make, or cause to be made, the necessary tests and investigations; or the building official shall accept duly authenticated reports from approved agencies in respect to the quality and manner of use of new materials or assemblies as provided for in Section 104.11. The cost of all tests and other investigations required under the provisions of this code shall be borne by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

## SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

### SECTION 1708A IN-SITU LOAD TESTS

**1708A.1 General.** Whenever there is a reasonable doubt as to the stability or load-bearing capacity of a completed building, structure or portion thereof for the expected loads, an engineering assessment shall be required. The engineering assessment shall involve either a structural analysis or an in-situ load test, or both. The structural analysis shall be based on actual material properties and other as-built conditions that affect stability or load-bearing capacity, and shall be conducted in accordance with the applicable design standard. The in-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708A.2. If the building, structure or portion thereof is found to have inadequate stability or load-bearing capacity for the expected loads, modifications to ensure structural adequacy or the removal of the inadequate construction shall be required.

**1708A.2 In-situ load tests.** In-situ load tests shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1708A.2.1 or 1708A.2.2 and shall be supervised by a registered design professional. The test shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16 as necessary to address the concerns regarding structural stability of the building, structure or portion thereof.

**1708A.2.1 Load test procedure specified.** Where a referenced material standard contains an applicable load test procedure and acceptance criteria, the test procedure and acceptance criteria in the standard shall apply. In the absence of specific load factors or acceptance criteria, the load factors and acceptance criteria in Section 1708A.2.2 shall apply.

**1708A.2.2 Load test procedure not specified.** In the absence of applicable load test procedures contained within a material standard referenced by this code or acceptance criteria for a specific material or method of construction, such existing structure shall be subjected to an approved test procedure developed by a registered design professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, at a minimum the test load shall be equal to the specified factored design loads. For materials such as wood that have strengths that are dependent on load duration, the test load shall be adjusted to account for the difference in load duration of the test compared to the expected duration of the design loads being considered. For statically loaded components, the test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. For components that carry dynamic loads (for example, machine supports or fall arrest anchors), the load shall be left in place for a period consistent with the component's actual function. The structure shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements where the following criteria are satisfied:

1. Under the design load, the deflection shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 1604.3.
2. Within 24 hours after removal of the test load, the structure shall have recovered not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection.

3. During and immediately after the test, the structure shall not show evidence of failure.

### SECTION 1709A PRECONSTRUCTION LOAD TESTS

**1709A.1 General.** Where proposed construction is not capable of being designed by approved engineering analysis, or where proposed construction design method does not comply with the applicable material design standard, the system of construction or the structural unit and the connections shall be subjected to the tests prescribed in Section 1709A. The building official shall accept certified reports of such tests conducted by an approved testing agency, provided that such tests meet the requirements of this code and approved procedures.

**1709A.2 Load test procedures specified.** Where specific load test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria are included in the applicable referenced standards, such test procedures, load factors and acceptance criteria shall apply. In the absence of specific test procedures, load factors or acceptance criteria, the corresponding provisions in Section 1709A.3 shall apply.

**1709A.3 Load test procedures not specified.** Where load test procedures are not specified in the applicable referenced standards, the load-bearing and deformation capacity of structural components and assemblies shall be determined on the basis of a test procedure developed by a registered design professional that simulates applicable loading and deformation conditions. For components and assemblies that are not a part of the seismic force-resisting system, the test shall be as specified in Section 1709A.3.1. Load tests shall simulate the applicable loading conditions specified in Chapter 16.

**1709A.3.1 Test procedure.** The test assembly shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load equal to not less than two times the superimposed design load. The test load shall be left in place for a period of 24 hours. The tested assembly shall be considered to have successfully met the test requirements if the assembly recovers not less than 75 percent of the maximum deflection within 24 hours after the removal of the test load. The test assembly shall then be reloaded and subjected to an increasing superimposed load until either structural failure occurs or the superimposed load is equal to two and one-half times the load at which the deflection limitations specified in Section 1709A.3.2 were reached, or the load is equal to two and one-half times the superimposed design load. In the case of structural components and assemblies for which deflection limitations are not specified in Section 1709A.3.2, the test specimen shall be subjected to an increasing superimposed load until structural failure occurs or the load is equal to two and one-half times the desired superimposed design load. The allowable superimposed design load shall be taken as the least of:

1. The load at the deflection limitation given in Section 1709A.3.2.
2. The failure load divided by 2.5.
3. The maximum load applied divided by 2.5.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1709A.3.2 Deflection.** The deflection of structural members under the design load shall not exceed the limitations in Section 1604.3.

**1709A.4 Wall and partition assemblies.** Load-bearing wall and partition assemblies shall sustain the test load both with and without window framing. The test load shall include all design load components. Wall and partition assemblies shall be tested both with and without door and window framing.

**1709A.5 Exterior window and door assemblies.** The design pressure rating of exterior windows and doors in buildings shall be determined in accordance with Section 1709A.5.1 or 1709A.5.2. For exterior windows and doors tested in accordance with Section 1709A.5.1 or 1709A.5.2, required design wind pressures determined from ASCE 7 shall be permitted to be converted to allowable stress design by multiplying by 0.6.

**Exception:** Structural wind load design pressures for window or door assemblies other than the size tested in accordance with Section 1709A.5.1 or 1709A.5.2 shall be permitted to be different than the design value of the tested assembly, provided that such pressures are determined by accepted engineering analysis or validated by an additional test of the window or door assembly to the alternative allowable design pressure in accordance with Section 1709A.5.2. Components of the alternate size assembly shall be the same as the tested or labeled assembly. Where engineering analysis is used, it shall be performed in accordance with the analysis procedures of AAMA 2502.

**1709A.5.1 Exterior windows and doors.** Exterior windows and sliding doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440. The label shall state the name of the manufacturer, the approved labeling agency and the product designation as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440. Exterior side-hinged doors shall be tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA101/I.S.2/A440 or comply with Section 1709A.5.2. Products tested and labeled as conforming to AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 shall not be subject to the requirements of Sections 2403A.2 and 2403A.3.

**1709A.5.2 Exterior windows and door assemblies not provided for in Section 1709A.5.1.** Exterior window and door assemblies shall be tested in accordance with ASTM E330. Exterior window and door assemblies containing glass shall comply with Section 2403A. The design pressure for testing shall be calculated in accordance with Chapter 16. Each assembly shall be tested for 10 seconds at a load equal to 1.5 times the design pressure.

**1709A.5.2.1 Garage doors and rolling doors.** Garage doors and rolling doors shall be tested in accordance with either ASTM E330 or ANSI/DASMA 108, and shall meet the pass/fail criteria of ANSI/DASMA 108. Garage doors and rolling doors shall be labeled with a permanent label identifying the door manufacturer, the door model/series number, the positive and negative design wind pressure rating, the installation instruction drawing reference number, and the applicable test standard.

**1709A.5.3 Windborne debris protection.** Protection of exterior glazed openings in buildings located in windborne debris regions shall be in accordance with Section 1609A.2.

**1709A.5.3.1 Impact protective systems testing and labeling.** Impact protective systems shall be tested for impact resistance by an approved independent laboratory for compliance with ASTM E1886 and ASTM E1996 and for design wind pressure for compliance with ASTM E330. Required design wind pressures shall be determined in accordance with ASCE 7, and for the purposes of this section, multiplied by 0.6 to convert to allowable stress design.

Impact protective systems shall have a permanent label applied in accordance with Section 1703A.5.4, identifying the manufacturer, product designation, performance characteristics, and approved inspection agency.

**1709A.6 Skylights and sloped glazing.** Skylights and sloped glazing shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24.

**1709A.7 Test specimens.** Test specimens and construction shall be representative of the materials, workmanship and details normally used in practice. The properties of the materials used to construct the test assembly shall be determined on the basis of tests on samples taken from the load assembly or on representative samples of the materials used to construct the load test assembly. Required tests shall be conducted or witnessed by an approved agency.

#### Notation for [DSA-SS]

**Authority:** Education Code §17310 and 81142, and H&S Code §16022.

**Reference:** Education Code §§17280 through 17317, and 81130 through 81147, and Health and Safety Code §§16000 through 16023.

#### Notation for [DSA-SS/CC]

**Authority:** Education Code §81053.

**Reference:** Education Code §81052, 81053, and 81130 through 81147.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 18 – SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X											X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X						X	X			X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							
1801.1.1– 1801.1.3											X	X			X								
1802.1						X																	
1803.1											X	X			X								
1803.1.1– 1803.1.1.5						X																	
1803.2												X											
1803.3.1											X	X			X								
1803.5.4 Exception											X	X			X								
1803.6											X	X			X								
1803.7											X	X			X								
1804.4.1						X																	
1805.2											X	X			X								
1805.4.1, Exception 2						X																	
1805.4.3																							
1807.1.3											X	X			X								
1807.1.4											X	X			X								
1807.1.5 Exception											X	X			X								
1807.1.6											X	X			X								
1807.2											X	X			X								
1807.2.2											X	X			X								
1807.2.5											X	X			X								
1808.8 Exception											X	X			X								
Table 1808.8.1											X	X			X								
1808.8.6											X	X			X								
1809.3											X	X			X								
1809.7											X	X			X								
1809.8											X	X			X								
1809.9											X	X			X								
1809.12											X	X			X								
1809.14											X	X			X								
1810.3.1.5.1											X	B			X								
1810.3.3.1.9 #3											X	B			X								
1810.3.2.4											X	X			X								
1810.3.5.3.3											X	X			X								
1810.3.8 Exceptions											X	B			X								
1810.3.8.3.3 Exception											X	X			X								
1810.3.9.4.2.1											X	X			X								
1810.3.10.4	X				X																		
1810.3.10.4.1											X	B			X								
1810.3.11											X	X			X								

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE  
CHAPTER 18 – SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X													X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X						X	X			X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							
1810.3.11.2 #3, <i>Exception #2</i>											X	B			X								
1810.3.12 <i>Exception</i>											X	B			X								
1810.4.1.5											X	X			X								
1811											X	B			X								
1812											X	B			X								
1813											X	X			X								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

(A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.

# CHAPTER 18

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 18 provides criteria for geotechnical and structural considerations in the selection, design and installation of foundation systems to support the loads imposed by the structure above. This chapter includes requirements for soils investigation and site preparation for receiving a foundation, including the load-bearing values for soils and protection for the foundation from frost and water intrusion. Section 1808 addresses the basic requirements for all foundation types while subsequent sections address foundation requirements that are specific to shallow foundations and deep foundations.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC-Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 1801 GENERAL

**1801.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall apply to building and foundation systems.

**1801.1.1 Application.** The scope of application of Chapter 18 is as follows:

Structures regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), which include those applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2 and 1.10.5. These applications include: Hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.

**1801.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** OSHPD adopts this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments not adopted or adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency.

**1801.1.3 Identification of amendments.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD) amendments appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:

[OSHPD 1R] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

[OSHPD 2] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

[OSHPD 5] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

### SECTION 1802 DESIGN BASIS

**1802.1 General.** Allowable bearing pressures, allowable stresses and design formulas provided in this chapter shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2. The quality and design of materials used structurally in excavations and foundations shall comply with the requirements specified in Chapters 16, 19, 21, 22 and 23. Excavations and fills shall comply with Chapter 33.

**[HCD 1]** For limited-density owner-built rural dwellings, pier foundations, stone masonry footings and foundations, pressure-treated lumber, poles or equivalent foundation materials or designs may be used, provided that the bearing is sufficient for the purpose intended.

### SECTION 1803 GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATIONS

**1803.1 General.** Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1803.2 and reported in accordance with Section 1803.6. Where required by the building official or where geotechnical investigations involve in-situ testing, laboratory testing or engineering calculations, such investigations shall be conducted by a registered design professional. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** The classification, testing and investigation of the soil shall be made under the responsible charge of a California registered geotechnical engineer. All recommendations contained in geotechnical and geohazard reports shall be subject to the approval of the enforcement agency. All reports shall be prepared and signed by a registered geotechnical engineer, certified engineering geologist and a registered geophysicist, where applicable.

**1803.1.1 General and where required for applications listed in Section 1.8.2.1.1 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development.** **[HCD 1]** Foundation and soils investigations shall be conducted in conformance with Health and Safety Code Sections 17953 through 17957 as summarized below.

**1803.1.1.1 Preliminary soil report.** Each city, county, or city and county shall enact an ordinance which requires a preliminary soil report, prepared by a civil engineer who is registered by the state. The report shall be based upon adequate test borings or excavations, of every subdivision, where a tentative and final map is required pursuant to Section 66426 of the Government Code.

The preliminary soil report may be waived if the building department of the city, county, or city and county, or other enforcement agency charged with the administration and enforcement of the provisions of Section 1803.1.1, shall determine that, due to the

*knowledge such department has as to the soil qualities of the soil of the subdivision or lot, no preliminary analysis is necessary.*

**1803.1.1.2 Soil investigation by lot, necessity, preparation and recommendations.** If the preliminary soil report indicates the presence of critically expansive soils or other soil problems which, if not corrected, would lead to structural defects, such ordinance shall require a soil investigation of each lot in the subdivision.

The soil investigation shall be prepared by a civil engineer who is registered in this state. It shall recommend corrective action which is likely to prevent structural damage to each dwelling proposed to be constructed on the expansive soil.

**1803.1.1.3 Approval, building permit conditions, appeal.** The building department of each city, county, or city and county, or other enforcement agency charged with the administration and enforcement of the provisions of Section 1803.1.1, shall approve the soil investigation if it determines that the recommended action is likely to prevent structural damage to each dwelling to be constructed. As a condition to the building permit, the ordinance shall require that the approved recommended action be incorporated in the construction of each dwelling. Appeal from such determination shall be to the local appeals board.

**1803.1.1.4 Liability.** A city, county, city and county, or other enforcement agency charged with the administration and enforcement of the provisions of Section 1803.1.1, is not liable for any injury which arises out of any act or omission of the city, county, city and county, other enforcement agency, or a public employee or any other person under Section 1803.1.1.

**1803.1.1.5 Alternate procedures.** The governing body of any city, county, or city and county may enact an ordinance prescribing an alternate procedure which is equal to or more restrictive than the procedure specified in Section 1803.1.1.

**1803.2 Investigations required.** Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Sections 1803.3 through 1803.5.

**Exception:** The building official shall be permitted to waive the requirement for a geotechnical investigation where satisfactory data from adjacent areas is available that demonstrates an investigation is not necessary for any of the conditions in Sections 1803.5.1 through 1803.5.6 and Sections 1803.5.10 and 1803.5.11.

**[OSHPD 2]** Geotechnical reports are not required for one-story, wood-frame and light-steel-frame buildings of Type V construction and 4,000 square feet ( $371 \text{ m}^2$ ) or less in floor area, not located within Earthquake Fault Zones or Seismic Hazard Zones as shown in the most recently published maps from the California Geological Survey (CGS). Allowable foundation and lateral soil pressure values may be determined from Table 1806.2.

**1803.3 Basis of investigation.** Soil classification shall be based on observation and any necessary tests of the materials

disclosed by borings, test pits or other subsurface exploration made in appropriate locations. Additional studies shall be made as necessary to evaluate slope stability, soil strength, position and adequacy of load-bearing soils, the effect of moisture variation on soil-bearing capacity, compressibility, liquefaction and expansiveness.

**1803.3.1 Scope of investigation.** The scope of the geotechnical investigation including the number and types of borings or soundings, the equipment used to drill or sample, the in-situ testing equipment and the laboratory testing program shall be determined by a registered design professional.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** There shall not be less than one boring or exploration shaft for each 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) of building area at the foundation level with a minimum of two provided for any one building. A boring may be considered to reflect subsurface conditions relevant to more than one building, subject to the approval of the enforcement agency.

Borings shall be of sufficient size to permit visual examination of the soil in place or, in lieu thereof, cores shall be taken.

Borings shall be of sufficient depth and size to adequately characterize subsurface conditions.

**Exception:** Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel frame construction.

**1803.4 Qualified representative.** The investigation procedure and apparatus shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice. The registered design professional shall have a fully qualified representative on site during all boring or sampling operations.

**1803.5 Investigated conditions.** Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted as indicated in Sections 1803.5.1 through 1803.5.12.

**1803.5.1 Classification.** Soil materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D2487.

**1803.5.2 Questionable soil.** Where the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil is in doubt or where a load-bearing value superior to that specified in this code is claimed, the building official shall be permitted to require that a geotechnical investigation be conducted.

**1803.5.3 Expansive soil.** In areas likely to have expansive soil, the building official shall require soil tests to determine where such soils do exist.

Soils meeting all four of the following provisions shall be considered to be expansive, except that tests to show compliance with Items 1, 2 and 3 shall not be required if the test prescribed in Item 4 is conducted:

1. Plasticity index (PI) of 15 or greater, determined in accordance with ASTM D4318.
2. More than 10 percent of the soil particles pass a No.200 sieve ( $75 \mu\text{m}$ ), determined in accordance with ASTM D422.

3. More than 10 percent of the soil particles are less than 5 micrometers in size, determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
4. Expansion index greater than 20, determined in accordance with ASTM D4829.

**1803.5.4 Ground-water table.** A subsurface soil investigation shall be performed to determine whether the existing ground-water table is above or within 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the lowest floor level where such floor is located below the finished ground level adjacent to the foundation.

**Exception:** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* A subsurface soil investigation to determine the location of the ground-water table shall not be required where waterproofing is provided in accordance with Section 1805.

**1803.5.5 Deep foundations.** Where deep foundations will be used, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following, unless sufficient data on which to base the design and installation is otherwise available:

1. Recommended deep foundation types and installed capacities.
2. Recommended center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements.
3. Driving criteria.
4. Installation procedures.
5. Field inspection and reporting procedures (to include procedures for verification of the installed bearing capacity where required).
6. Load test requirements.
7. Suitability of deep foundation materials for the intended environment.
8. Designation of bearing stratum or strata.
9. Reductions for group action, where necessary.

**1803.5.6 Rock strata.** Where subsurface explorations at the project site indicate variations in the structure of rock on which foundations are to be constructed, a sufficient number of borings shall be drilled to sufficient depths to assess the competency of the rock and its load-bearing capacity.

**1803.5.7 Excavation near foundations.** Where excavation will reduce support from any foundation, a registered design professional shall prepare an assessment of the structure as determined from examination of the structure, available design documents, available subsurface data, and, if necessary, excavation of test pits. The registered design professional shall determine the requirements for support and protection of any existing foundation and prepare site-specific plans, details and sequence of work for submission. Such support shall be provided by underpinning, bracing, excavation retention systems, or by other means acceptable to the building official.

**1803.5.8 Compacted fill material.** Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material more than 12 inches (305 mm) in depth, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of compacted fill material.
2. Specifications for material to be used as compacted fill.
3. Test methods to be used to determine the maximum dry density and optimum moisture content of the material to be used as compacted fill.
4. Maximum allowable thickness of each lift of compacted fill material.
5. Field test method for determining the in-place dry density of the compacted fill.
6. Minimum acceptable in-place dry density expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density determined in accordance with Item 3.
7. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 6.

**1803.5.9 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM).** Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of the CLSM.
2. Specifications for the CLSM.
3. Laboratory or field test method(s) to be used to determine the compressive strength or bearing capacity of the CLSM.
4. Test methods for determining the acceptance of the CLSM in the field.
5. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 4.

**1803.5.10 Alternate setback and clearance.** Where setbacks or clearances other than those required in Section 1808.7 are desired, the building official shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation by a registered design professional to demonstrate that the intent of Section 1808.7 would be satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slope gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.

**1803.5.11 Seismic Design Categories C through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted, and shall include an evaluation of all of the following potential geologic and seismic hazards:

1. Slope instability.
2. Liquefaction.
3. Total and differential settlement.
4. Surface displacement due to faulting or seismically induced lateral spreading or lateral flow.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1803.5.12 Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the geotechnical investigation required by Section 1803.5.11 shall include all of the following as applicable:

1. The determination of dynamic seismic lateral earth pressures on foundation walls and retaining walls supporting more than 6 feet (1.83 m) of backfill height due to design earthquake ground motions.
2. The potential for liquefaction and soil strength loss evaluated for site peak ground acceleration, earthquake magnitude and source characteristics consistent with the maximum considered earthquake ground motions. Peak ground acceleration shall be determined based on one of the following:
  - 2.1. A site-specific study in accordance with Chapter 21 of ASCE 7.
  - 2.2. In accordance with Section 11.8.3 of ASCE 7.
3. An assessment of potential consequences of liquefaction and soil strength loss including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 3.1. Estimation of total and differential settlement.
  - 3.2. Lateral soil movement.
  - 3.3. Lateral soil loads on foundations.
  - 3.4. Reduction in foundation soil-bearing capacity and lateral soil reaction.
  - 3.5. Soil downdrag and reduction in axial and lateral soil reaction for pile foundations.
  - 3.6. Increases in soil lateral pressures on retaining walls.
  - 3.7. Flotation of buried structures.
4. Discussion of mitigation measures such as, but not limited to, the following:
  - 4.1. Selection of appropriate foundation type and depths.
  - 4.2. Selection of appropriate structural systems to accommodate anticipated displacements and forces.
  - 4.3. Ground stabilization.
  - 4.4. Any combination of these measures and how they shall be considered in the design of the structure.

**1803.6 Reporting.** Where geotechnical investigations are required, a written report of the investigations shall be submitted to the building official by the permit applicant at the time of permit application. This geotechnical report shall include, but need not be limited to, the following information:

1. A plot showing the location of the soil investigations.
2. A complete record of the soil boring and penetration test logs and soil samples.
3. A record of the soil profile.
4. Elevation of the water table, if encountered.

5. Recommendations for foundation type and design criteria, including but not limited to: bearing capacity of natural or compacted soil; provisions to mitigate the effects of expansive soils; mitigation of the effects of liquefaction, differential settlement and varying soil strength; and the effects of adjacent loads.
6. Expected total and differential settlement.
7. Deep foundation information in accordance with Section 1803.5.5.
8. Special design and construction provisions for foundations of structures founded on expansive soils, as necessary.
9. Compacted fill material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803.5.8.
10. Controlled low-strength material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803.5.9.
11. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] The report shall consider the effects of seismic hazard in accordance with Section 1803.7.*

**1803.7 Geohazard reports.** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Geohazard reports shall be required for all proposed construction.*

### Exceptions:

1. *Reports are not required for one-story, wood-frame and light-steel-frame buildings of Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities construction and 4,000 square feet (371 m<sup>2</sup>) or less in floor area, not located within Earthquake Fault Zones or Seismic Hazard Zones as shown in the most recently published maps from the California Geological Survey (CGS); nonstructural, associated structural or voluntary structural alterations and incidental structural additions or alterations, and structural repairs for other than earthquake damage.*
2. *A previous report for a specific site may be resubmitted, provided that a reevaluation is made and the report is found to be currently appropriate.*

*The purpose of the geohazard report shall be to identify geologic and seismic conditions that may require project mitigations. The reports shall contain data which provide an assessment of the nature of the site and potential for earthquake damage based on appropriate investigations of the regional and site geology, project foundation conditions and the potential seismic shaking at the site. The report shall be prepared by a California-certified engineering geologist in consultation with a California-registered geotechnical engineer.*

*The preparation of the geohazard report shall consider the most recent CGS Note 48; Checklist for the Review of Engineering Geology and Seismology Reports for California Public School, Hospitals and Essential Services Buildings. In addition, the most recent version of CGS Special Publication 42, Fault Rupture Hazard Zones in California, shall be considered for project sites proposed within an Alquist-Priolo Earthquake Fault Zone. The most recent version of CGS Special Publication 117, Guidelines for Evaluating and Mitigating Seismic Hazards in California,*

shall be considered for project sites proposed within a Seismic Hazard Zone. All conclusions shall be fully supported by satisfactory data and analysis.

In addition to requirements in Sections 1803.5.11 and 1803.5.12, the report shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:

1. Site geology.
2. Evaluation of the known active and potentially active faults, both regional and local.
3. Ground-motion parameters, as required by Section 1613 and ASCE 7.

## SECTION 1804 EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL

**1804.1 Excavation near foundations.** Excavation for any purpose shall not reduce vertical or lateral support for any foundation or adjacent foundation without first underpinning or protecting the foundation against detrimental lateral or vertical movement, or both, in accordance with Section 1803.5.7.

**1804.2 Underpinning.** Where underpinning is chosen to provide the protection or support of adjacent structures, the underpinning system shall be designed and installed in accordance with provisions of this chapter and Chapter 33.

**1804.2.1 Underpinning sequencing.** Underpinning shall be installed in a sequential manner that protects the neighboring structure and the working construction site. The sequence of installation shall be identified in the approved construction documents.

**1804.3 Placement of backfill.** The excavation outside the foundation shall be backfilled with soil that is free of organic material, construction debris, cobbles and boulders or with a controlled low-strength material (CLSM). The backfill shall be placed in lifts and compacted in a manner that does not damage the foundation or the waterproofing or dampproofing material.

**Exception:** CLSM need not be compacted.

**1804.4 Site grading.** The ground immediately adjacent to the foundation shall be sloped away from the building at a slope of not less than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm) measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. If physical obstructions or lot lines prohibit 10 feet (3048 mm) of horizontal distance, a 5-percent slope shall be provided to an approved alternative method of diverting water away from the foundation. Swales used for this purpose shall be sloped not less than 2 percent where located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped not less than 2 percent away from the building.

### Exceptions:

1. Where climatic or soil conditions warrant, the slope of the ground away from the building foundation

shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 1 unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).

2. Impervious surfaces shall be permitted to be sloped less than 2 percent where the surface is a door landing or ramp that is required to comply with Section 1010.1.4, 1012.3 or 1012.6.1.

The procedure used to establish the final ground level adjacent to the foundation shall account for additional settlement of the backfill.

**1804.4.1 [HCD 1] Construction plans.** Construction plans shall indicate how the site grading or drainage system will manage all surface water flows to keep water from entering buildings in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.1.

**1804.5 Grading and fill in flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3, grading, fill, or both, shall not be approved:

1. Unless such fill is placed, compacted and sloped to minimize shifting, slumping and erosion during the rise and fall of flood water and, as applicable, wave action.
2. In floodways, unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed by a registered design professional in accordance with standard engineering practice that the proposed grading or fill, or both, will not result in any increase in flood levels during the occurrence of the design flood.
3. In coastal high hazard areas, unless such fill is conducted or placed to avoid diversion of water and waves toward any building or structure.
4. Where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, unless it has been demonstrated that the cumulative effect of the proposed flood hazard area encroachment, when combined with all other existing and anticipated flood hazard area encroachment, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point.

**1804.6 Compacted fill material.** Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material, the compacted fill shall comply with the provisions of an approved geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803.

**Exception:** Compacted fill material 12 inches (305 mm) in depth or less need not comply with an approved report, provided that the in-place dry density is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557. The compaction shall be verified by special inspection in accordance with Section 1705.6.

**1804.7 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM).** Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), the CLSM shall comply with the provisions of an approved geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

### SECTION 1805 DAMPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING

**1805.1 General.** Walls or portions thereof that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be waterproofed and damproofed in accordance with this section, with the exception of those spaces containing groups other than residential and institutional where such omission is not detrimental to the building or occupancy.

Ventilation for crawl spaces shall comply with Section 1202.4.

**1805.1.1 Story above grade plane.** Where a basement is considered a story above grade plane and the finished ground level adjacent to the basement wall is below the basement floor elevation for 25 percent or more of the perimeter, the floor and walls shall be damproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2 and a foundation drain shall be installed in accordance with Section 1805.4.2. The foundation drain shall be installed around the portion of the perimeter where the basement floor is below ground level. The provisions of Sections 1803.5.4, 1805.3 and 1805.4.1 shall not apply in this case.

**1805.1.2 Under-floor space.** The finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall not be located below the bottom of the footings. Where there is evidence that the ground-water table rises to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ground level at the outside building perimeter, or that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site, the ground level of the under-floor space shall be as high as the outside finished ground level, unless an approved drainage system is provided. The provisions of Sections 1803.5.4, 1805.2, 1805.3 and 1805.4 shall not apply in this case.

**1805.1.2.1 Flood hazard areas.** For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level on one side or more.

**Exception:** Under-floor spaces of Group R-3 buildings that meet the requirements of FEMA TB 11.

**1805.1.3 Ground-water control.** Where the ground-water table is lowered and maintained at an elevation not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the bottom of the lowest floor, the floor and walls shall be damproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2. The design of the system to lower the ground-water table shall be based on accepted principles of engineering that shall consider, but not necessarily be limited to, permeability of the soil, rate at which water enters the drainage system, rated capacity of pumps, head against which pumps are to operate and the rated capacity of the disposal area of the system.

**1805.2 Damproofing.** Where hydrostatic pressure will not occur as determined by Section 1803.5.4, floors and walls for other than wood foundation systems shall be damproofed in accordance with this section. *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Wood foundation systems are not permitted by OSHPD. Wood*

foundation systems shall be constructed in accordance with AWC PWF.

**1805.2.1 Floors.** Damproofing materials for floors shall be installed between the floor and the base course required by Section 1805.4.1, except where a separate floor is provided above a concrete slab.

Where installed beneath the slab, damproofing shall consist of not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm), or other approved methods or materials. Where permitted to be installed on top of the slab, damproofing shall consist of mopped-on bitumen, not less than 4-mil (0.004 inch; 0.102 mm) polyethylene, or other approved methods or materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1805.2.2 Walls.** Damproofing materials for walls shall be installed on the exterior surface of the wall, and shall extend from the top of the footing to above ground level.

Damproofing shall consist of a bituminous material, 3 pounds per square yard ( $16 \text{ N/m}^2$ ) of acrylic modified cement,  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) coat of surface-bonding mortar complying with ASTM C887, any of the materials permitted for waterproofing by Section 1805.3.2 or other approved methods or materials.

**1805.2.2.1 Surface preparation of walls.** Prior to application of damproofing materials on concrete walls, holes and recesses resulting from the removal of form ties shall be sealed with a bituminous material or other approved methods or materials. Unit masonry walls shall be parged on the exterior surface below ground level with not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) of Portland cement mortar. The parging shall be coved at the footing.

**Exception:** Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is approved for direct application to the masonry.

**1805.3 Waterproofing.** Where the ground-water investigation required by Section 1803.5.4 indicates that a hydrostatic pressure condition exists, and the design does not include a ground-water control system as described in Section 1805.1.3, walls and floors shall be waterproofed in accordance with this section.

**1805.3.1 Floors.** Floors required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete and designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures to which the floors will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be accomplished by placing a membrane of rubberized asphalt, butyl rubber, fully adhered/fully bonded HDPE or polyolefin composite membrane or not less than 6-mil [0.006 inch (0.152 mm)] polyvinyl chloride with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) or other approved materials under the slab. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1805.3.2 Walls.** Walls required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete or masonry and shall be designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures and other lateral loads to which the walls will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be applied from the bottom of the wall to not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the maximum elevation of the ground-water table. The remainder of the wall shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805.2.2. Waterproofing shall consist of two-ply hot-mopped felts, not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyvinyl chloride, 40-mil (0.040 inch; 1.02 mm) polymer-modified asphalt, 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene or other approved methods or materials capable of bridging nonstructural cracks. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1805.3.2.1 Surface preparation of walls.** Prior to the application of waterproofing materials on concrete or masonry walls, the walls shall be prepared in accordance with Section 1805.2.2.1.

**1805.3.3 Joints and penetrations.** Joints in walls and floors, joints between the wall and floor and penetrations of the wall and floor shall be made watertight utilizing approved methods and materials.

**1805.4 Subsoil drainage system.** Where a hydrostatic pressure condition does not exist, dampproofing shall be provided and a base shall be installed under the floor and a drain installed around the foundation perimeter. A subsoil drainage system designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1805.1.3 shall be deemed adequate for lowering the ground-water table.

**1805.4.1 Floor base course.** Floors of basements, except as provided for in Section 1805.1.1, shall be placed over a floor base course not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10 percent of material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a floor base course is not required.
2. *[HCD 1] When a capillary break is installed in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.5.*

**1805.4.2 Foundation drain.** A drain shall be placed around the perimeter of a foundation that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10-percent material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. The drain shall extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the outside edge of the footing. The thickness shall be such that the bottom of the drain is not higher than the bottom of the base under the floor, and that the top of the drain is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of the footing. The top of the drain shall be covered with an approved filter membrane material. Where a drain tile or perforated pipe is used, the invert of the pipe or tile shall not be higher than the floor elevation. The top of

joints or the top of perforations shall be protected with an approved filter membrane material. The pipe or tile shall be placed on not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of gravel or crushed stone complying with Section 1805.4.1, and shall be covered with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of the same material.

**1805.4.3 Drainage discharge.** The floor base and foundation perimeter drain shall discharge by gravity or mechanical means into an approved drainage system that complies with the *California Plumbing Code*.

**Exception:** Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a dedicated drainage system is not required.

## SECTION 1806 PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES OF SOILS

**1806.1 Load combinations.** The presumptive load-bearing values provided in Table 1806.2 shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2. The values of vertical foundation pressure and lateral bearing pressure given in Table 1806.2 shall be permitted to be increased by one-third where used with the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2 that include wind or earthquake loads.

**1806.2 Presumptive load-bearing values.** The load-bearing values used in design for supporting soils near the surface shall not exceed the values specified in Table 1806.2 unless data to substantiate the use of higher values are submitted and approved. Where the building official has reason to doubt the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil, the requirements of Section 1803.5.2 shall be satisfied.

Presumptive load-bearing values shall apply to materials with similar physical characteristics and dispositions. Mud, organic silt, organic clays, peat or unprepared fill shall not be assumed to have a presumptive load-bearing capacity unless data to substantiate the use of such a value are submitted.

**Exception:** A presumptive load-bearing capacity shall be permitted to be used where the building official deems the load-bearing capacity of mud, organic silt or unprepared fill is adequate for the support of lightweight or temporary structures.

**1806.3 Lateral load resistance.** Where the presumptive values of Table 1806.2 are used to determine resistance to lateral loads, the calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1806.3.1 through 1806.3.4.

**1806.3.1 Combined resistance.** The total resistance to lateral loads shall be permitted to be determined by combining the values derived from the lateral bearing pressure and the lateral sliding resistance specified in Table 1806.2.

**1806.3.2 Lateral sliding resistance limit.** For clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt, the lateral sliding resistance shall not exceed one-half the dead load.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**TABLE 1806.2  
PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES**

CLASS OF MATERIALS	VERTICAL FOUNDATION PRESSURE (psf)	LATERAL BEARING PRESSURE (psf/ft below natural grade)	LATERAL SLIDING RESISTANCE	
			Coefficient of friction <sup>a</sup>	Cohesion (psf) <sup>b</sup>
1. Crystalline bedrock	12,000	1,200	0.70	—
2. Sedimentary and foliated rock	4,000	400	0.35	—
3. Sandy gravel and gravel (GW and GP)	3,000	200	0.35	—
4. Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel (SW, SP, SM, SC, GM and GC)	2,000	150	0.25	—
5. Clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt (CL, ML, MH and CH)	1,500	100	—	130

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. Coefficient to be multiplied by the dead load.

b. Cohesion value to be multiplied by the contact area, as limited by Section 1806.3.2.

**1806.3.3 Increase for depth.** The lateral bearing pressures specified in Table 1806.2 shall be permitted to be increased by the tabular value for each additional foot (305 mm) of depth to a value that is not greater than 15 times the tabular value.

**1806.3.4 Increase for poles.** Isolated poles for uses such as flagpoles or signs and poles used to support buildings that are not adversely affected by a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) motion at the ground surface due to short-term lateral loads shall be permitted to be designed using lateral bearing pressures equal to two times the tabular values.

## SECTION 1807 FOUNDATION WALLS, RETAINING WALLS AND EMBEDDED POSTS AND POLES

**1807.1 Foundation walls.** Foundation walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1807.1.1 through 1807.1.6. Foundation walls shall be supported by foundations designed in accordance with Section 1808.

**1807.1.1 Design lateral soil loads.** Foundation walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads set forth in Section 1610.

**1807.1.2 Unbalanced backfill height.** Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab on grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, the unbalanced backfill height shall be permitted to be measured from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab.

**1807.1.3 Rubble stone foundation walls.** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Foundation walls of rough or random rubble stone shall be not less than 16 inches (406 mm) thick. Rubble stone shall not be used for foundation walls of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

**1807.1.4 Permanent wood foundation systems.** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Permanent wood foundation systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with AWC PWF. Lumber and plywood shall be preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Special Requirement 4.2) and shall be identified in accordance with Section 2303.1.9.1.

**1807.1.5 Concrete and masonry foundation walls.** Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 19 or 21, as applicable.

**Exception:** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1807.1.6.

**1807.1.6 Prescriptive design of concrete and masonry foundation walls.** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Concrete and masonry foundation walls that are laterally supported at the top and bottom shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with this section.

**1807.1.6.1 Foundation wall thickness.** The thickness of prescriptively designed foundation walls shall be not less than the thickness of the wall supported, except that foundation walls of not less than 8-inch (203 mm) nominal width shall be permitted to support brick veneered frame walls and 10-inch-wide (254 mm) cavity walls provided that the requirements of Section 1807.1.6.2 or 1807.1.6.3 are met.

**1807.1.6.2 Concrete foundation walls.** Concrete foundation walls shall comply with the following:

1. The thickness shall comply with the requirements of Table 1807.1.6.2.
2. The size and spacing of vertical reinforcement shown in Table 1807.1.6.2 are based on the use of reinforcement with a minimum yield strength of 60,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (414 MPa). Vertical reinforcement with a minimum yield strength of 40,000 psi (276 MPa) or 50,000

psi (345 MPa) shall be permitted, provided that the same size bar is used and the spacing shown in the table is reduced by multiplying the spacing by 0.67 or 0.83, respectively.

3. Vertical reinforcement, where required, shall be placed nearest the inside face of the wall a distance,  $d$ , from the outside face (soil face) of the wall. The distance,  $d$ , is equal to the wall thickness,  $t$ , minus 1.25 inches (32 mm) plus one-half the bar diameter,  $d_b$ , [ $d = t - (1.25 + d_b / 2)$ ]. The reinforcement shall be placed within a tolerance of  $\pm \frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) where  $d$  is less than or equal to 8 inches (203 mm) or  $\pm \frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) where  $d$  is greater than 8 inches (203 mm).
4. In lieu of the reinforcement shown in Table 1807.1.6.2, smaller reinforcing bar sizes with

closer spacings that provide an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per unit length shall be permitted.

5. Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the inside face of the wall shall be not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm). Concrete cover for reinforcement measured from the outside face of the wall shall be not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) for No. 5 bars and smaller, and not less than 2 inches (51 mm) for larger bars.
6. Concrete shall have a specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , of not less than 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa).
7. The unfactored axial load per linear foot of wall shall not exceed  $1.2 f'_c t$  where  $t$  is the specified wall thickness in inches.

TABLE 1807.1.6.2  
CONCRETE FOUNDATION WALLS<sup>b, c</sup>

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT <sup>e</sup> (feet)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)								
		Design lateral soil load <sup>a</sup> (psf per foot of depth)								
		30 <sup>d</sup>			45 <sup>d</sup>			60		
		7.5	9.5	11.5	7.5	9.5	11.5	7.5	9.5	11.5
5	4	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	5	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
6	4	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	5	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	6	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
7	4	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	5	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	6	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 48	PC	PC
	7	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 46	PC	PC	#6 at 48	PC	PC
8	4	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	5	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	6	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 43	PC	PC
	7	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 41	PC	PC	#6 at 43	PC	PC
	8	#5 at 47	PC	PC	#6 at 43	PC	PC	#6 at 32	#6 at 44	PC
9	4	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	5	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	6	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 39	PC	PC
	7	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 37	PC	PC	#6 at 38	#5 at 37	PC
	8	#5 at 41	PC	PC	#6 at 38	#5 at 37	PC	#7 at 39	#6 at 39	#4 at 48
	9 <sup>d</sup>	#6 at 46	PC	PC	#7 at 41	#6 at 41	PC	#7 at 31	#7 at 41	#6 at 39
10	4	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	5	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC
	6	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	PC	#5 at 37	PC	PC
	7	PC	PC	PC	#6 at 48	PC	PC	#6 at 35	#6 at 48	PC
	8	#5 at 38	PC	PC	#7 at 47	#6 at 47	PC	#7 at 35	#7 at 47	#6 at 45
	9 <sup>d</sup>	#6 at 41	#4 at 48	PC	#7 at 37	#7 at 48	#4 at 48	#6 at 22	#7 at 37	#7 at 47
	10 <sup>d</sup>	#7 at 45	#6 at 45	PC	#7 at 31	#7 at 40	#6 at 38	#6 at 22	#7 at 30	#7 at 38

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.2.

c. PC = Plain Concrete.

d. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable (see Section 1610).

e. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1807.1.6.2.1 Seismic requirements.** Based on the seismic design category assigned to the structure in accordance with Section 1613, concrete foundation walls designed using Table 1807.1.6.2 shall be subject to the following limitations:

1. Seismic Design Categories A and B. Not less than one No. 5 bar shall be provided around window, door and similar sized openings. The bar shall be anchored to develop  $f_y$  in tension at the corners of openings.
2. Seismic Design Categories C, D, E and F. Tables shall not be used except as allowed for plain concrete members in Section 1905.1.7.

**1807.1.6.3 Masonry foundation walls.** Masonry foundation walls shall comply with the following:

1. The thickness shall comply with the requirements of Table 1807.1.6.3(1) for plain masonry walls or Table 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4) for masonry walls with reinforcement.
2. Vertical reinforcement shall have a minimum yield strength of 60,000 psi (414 MPa).
3. The specified location of the reinforcement shall equal or exceed the effective depth distance,  $d$ , noted in Tables 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) and 1807.1.6.3(4) and shall be measured from the face of the exterior (soil) side of the wall to the center of the vertical reinforcement. The reinforcement shall be placed

within the tolerances specified in TMS 602, Article 3.4.B.11, of the specified location.

4. Grout shall comply with Section 2103.3.
5. Concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C90.
6. Clay masonry units shall comply with ASTM C652 for hollow brick, except compliance with ASTM C62 or ASTM C216 shall be permitted where solid masonry units are installed in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(1) for plain masonry.
7. Masonry units shall be laid in running bond and installed with Type M or S mortar in accordance with Section 2103.2.1.
8. The unfactored axial load per linear foot of wall shall not exceed  $1.2 t f'_m$  where  $t$  is the specified wall thickness in inches and  $f'_m$  is the specified compressive strength of masonry in pounds per square inch.
9. Not less than 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry shall be provided at girder supports at the top of hollow masonry unit foundation walls.
10. Corbeling of masonry shall be in accordance with Section 2104.1. Where an 8-inch (203 mm) wall is corbeled, the top corbel shall not extend higher than the bottom of the floor framing and shall be a full course of headers not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length or the top course bed joint shall be tied to the vertical wall

**TABLE 1807.1.6.3(1)**  
**PLAIN MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT <sup>e</sup> (feet)	MINIMUM NOMINAL WALL THICKNESS (inches)		
		Design lateral soil loads <sup>a</sup> (psf per foot of depth)		
		30' <sup>f</sup>	45' <sup>f</sup>	60
7	4 (or less)	8	8	8
	5	8	10	10
	6	10	12	10 (solid <sup>c</sup> )
	7	12	10 (solid <sup>c</sup> )	10 (solid <sup>c</sup> )
8	4 (or less)	8	8	8
	5	8	10	12
	6	10	12	12 (solid <sup>c</sup> )
	7	12	12 (solid <sup>c</sup> )	Note d
	8	10 (solid <sup>c</sup> )	12 (solid <sup>c</sup> )	Note d
9	4 (or less)	8	8	8
	5	8	10	12
	6	12	12	12 (solid <sup>c</sup> )
	7	12(solid <sup>c</sup> )	12 (solid <sup>c</sup> )	Note d
	8	12(solid <sup>c</sup> )	Note d	Note d
	9 <sup>f</sup>	Note d	Note d	Note d

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. Solid grouted units or solid masonry units.

d. A design in compliance with Chapter 21 or reinforcement in accordance with Table 1807.1.6.3(2) is required.

e. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

f. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable (see Section 1610).

projection. The tie shall be W2.8 (4.8 mm) and spaced at a maximum horizontal distance of 36 inches (914 mm). The hollow space behind the corbelled masonry shall be filled with *mortar* or grout.

**1807.1.6.3.1 Alternative foundation wall reinforcement.** In lieu of the reinforcement provisions for masonry foundation walls in Table 1807.1.6.3(2), 1807.1.6.3(3) or 1807.1.6.3(4), alternative reinforcing bar sizes and spacings having an equivalent cross-sectional area of reinforcement per linear foot (mm) of wall shall be permitted to be used, provided that the spacing of reinforcement does not exceed 72 inches (1829 mm) and reinforcing bar sizes do not exceed No. 11.

**1807.1.6.3.2 Seismic requirements.** Based on the seismic design category assigned to the structure in accordance with Section 1613, masonry foundation

walls designed using Tables 1807.1.6.3(1) through 1807.1.6.3(4) shall be subject to the following limitations:

1. Seismic Design Categories A and B. No additional seismic requirements.
2. Seismic Design Category C. A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(1) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.3 of TMS 402.
3. Seismic Design Category D. A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(2) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.4 of TMS 402.
4. Seismic Design Categories E and F. A design using Tables 1807.1.6.3(2) through 1807.1.6.3(4) is subject to the seismic requirements of Section 7.4.5 of TMS 402.

**TABLE 1807.1.6.3(2)**  
**8-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE  $d \geq 5$  INCHES<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT <sup>d</sup> (feet-inches)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load <sup>a</sup> (psf per foot of depth)		
		30°	45°	60
7-4	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5-0	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	6-0	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#5 at 48
	7-4	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#7 at 48
8-0	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5-0	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	6-0	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#5 at 48
	7-0	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#7 at 48
	8-0	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#7 at 48
8-8	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5-0	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#5 at 48
	6-0	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
	7-0	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#7 at 48
	8-8 <sup>e</sup>	#6 at 48	#7 at 48	#8 at 48
	9-4 <sup>e</sup>	#7 at 48	#8 at 48	#9 at 48
9-4	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5-0	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#5 at 48
	6-0	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
	7-0	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#7 at 48
	8-0	#6 at 48	#7 at 48	#8 at 48
	9-4 <sup>e</sup>	#7 at 48	#8 at 48	#9 at 48
	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#4 at 48
	5-0	#4 at 48	#4 at 48	#5 at 48
	6-0	#4 at 48	#5 at 48	#6 at 48
10-0	7-0	#5 at 48	#6 at 48	#7 at 48
	8-0	#6 at 48	#7 at 48	#8 at 48
	9-0 <sup>e</sup>	#7 at 48	#8 at 48	#9 at 48
	10-10 <sup>e</sup>	#7 at 48	#9 at 48	#9 at 48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.

d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1807.2 Retaining walls.** Retaining walls shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1807.2.1 through 1807.2.5. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Freestanding cantilever walls shall be designed in accordance with Section 1807.2.5.

**1807.2.1 General.** Retaining walls shall be designed to ensure stability against overturning, sliding, excessive foundation pressure and water uplift.

**1807.2.2 Design lateral soil loads.** Retaining walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads set forth in Section 1610. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Retaining wall lateral soil loads determined by a geotechnical investigation report in accordance with Section 1803.5.12 and shall not be less than 80 percent of the lateral soil loads determined in accordance with Section 1610. For use with the load combinations, lateral soil loads due to gravity load surcharge shall be considered gravity loads and seismic earth pressure increases due to earthquake shall be considered as seismic loads. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, the design of retain-

ing walls supporting more than 6 feet (1829 mm) of backfill height shall incorporate the additional seismic lateral earth pressure in accordance with the geotechnical investigation where required in Section 1803.2.

**1807.2.3 Safety factor.** Retaining walls shall be designed to resist the lateral action of soil to produce sliding and overturning with a minimum safety factor of 1.5 in each case. The load combinations of Section 1605 shall not apply to this requirement. Instead, design shall be based on 0.7 times nominal earthquake loads, 1.0 times other nominal loads, and investigation with one or more of the variable loads set to zero. The safety factor against lateral sliding shall be taken as the available soil resistance at the base of the retaining wall foundation divided by the net lateral force applied to the retaining wall.

**Exception:** Where earthquake loads are included, the minimum safety factor for retaining wall sliding and overturning shall be 1.1.

TABLE 1807.1.6.3(3)  
10-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE  $d \geq 6.75$  INCHES<sup>a, b, c</sup>

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT <sup>d</sup> (feet-inches)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load <sup>a</sup> (psf per foot of depth)		
		30°	45°	60
7-4	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#5 at 56
	7-4	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
8-0	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#5 at 56
	7-0	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
	8-0	#5 at 56	#6 at 56	#7 at 56
8-8	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#5 at 56
	7-0	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
	8-8 <sup>e</sup>	#5 at 56	#7 at 56	#8 at 56
9-4	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6-0	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#5 at 56
	7-0	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#6 at 56
	8-0	#5 at 56	#6 at 56	#7 at 56
	9-4 <sup>e</sup>	#6 at 56	#7 at 56	#7 at 56
10-0	4-0 (or less)	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	5-0	#4 at 56	#4 at 56	#4 at 56
	6-0	#4 at 56	#5 at 56	#5 at 56
	7-0	#5 at 56	#6 at 56	#7 at 56
	8-0	#5 at 56	#7 at 56	#8 at 56
	9-0 <sup>e</sup>	#6 at 56	#7 at 56	#9 at 56
	10-0 <sup>e</sup>	#7 at 56	#8 at 56	#9 at 56

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 1.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.

d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

**1807.2.4 Segmental retaining walls.** Dry-cast concrete units used in the construction of segmental retaining walls shall comply with ASTM C1372.

**1807.2.5 Freestanding cantilever walls. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** A stability check against the possibility of overturning shall be performed for isolated spread footings which support freestanding cantilever walls. The stability check shall be made by dividing  $R_p$  used for the wall by 2.0. The allowable soil pressure may be doubled for this evaluation.

**Exception:** For overturning about the principal axis of rectangular footings with symmetrical vertical loading and the design lateral force applied, a triangular or trapezoidal soil pressure distribution which covers the full width of the footing will meet the stability requirement.

**1807.3 Embedded posts and poles.** Designs to resist both axial and lateral loads employing posts or poles as columns

embedded in earth or in concrete footings in earth shall be in accordance with Sections 1807.3.1 through 1807.3.3.

**1807.3.1 Limitations.** The design procedures outlined in this section are subject to the following limitations:

1. The frictional resistance for structural walls and slabs on silts and clays shall be limited to one-half of the normal force imposed on the soil by the weight of the footing or slab.
2. Posts embedded in earth shall not be used to provide lateral support for structural or nonstructural materials such as plaster, masonry or concrete unless bracing is provided that develops the limited deflection required.

Wood poles shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for sawn timber posts (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) and for round timber posts (Commodity Specification B, Use Category 4B).

TABLE 1807.1.6.3(4)  
12-INCH MASONRY FOUNDATION WALLS WITH REINFORCEMENT WHERE  $d \geq 8.75$  INCHES<sup>a, b, c</sup>

MAXIMUM WALL HEIGHT (feet-inches)	MAXIMUM UNBALANCED BACKFILL HEIGHT <sup>d</sup> (feet-inches)	MINIMUM VERTICAL REINFORCEMENT-BAR SIZE AND SPACING (inches)		
		Design lateral soil load <sup>a</sup> (psf per foot of depth)		
		30°	45°	60
7-4	4 (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
	7-4	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
8-0	4 (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
	7-0	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
	8-0	#5 at 72	#6 at 72	#8 at 72
8-8	4 (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#5 at 72
	7-0	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
	8-8 <sup>e</sup>	#5 at 72	#7 at 72	#8 at 72
	9-4 <sup>e</sup>	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
9-4	4 (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6-0	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#5 at 72
	7-0	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#6 at 72
	8-0	#5 at 72	#6 at 72	#7 at 72
	9-4 <sup>e</sup>	#6 at 72	#7 at 72	#8 at 72
	4 (or less)	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	5-0	#4 at 72	#4 at 72	#4 at 72
	6-0	#4 at 72	#5 at 72	#5 at 72
10-0	7-0	#4 at 72	#6 at 72	#6 at 72
	8-0	#5 at 72	#6 at 72	#7 at 72
	9-0 <sup>e</sup>	#6 at 72	#7 at 72	#8 at 72
	10-0 <sup>e</sup>	#7 at 72	#8 at 72	#9 at 72

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. For design lateral soil loads, see Section 1610.

b. Provisions for this table are based on design and construction requirements specified in Section 1807.1.6.3.

c. For alternative reinforcement, see Section 1807.1.6.3.1.

d. For height of unbalanced backfill, see Section 1807.1.2.

e. Where unbalanced backfill height exceeds 8 feet and design lateral soil loads from Table 1610.1 are used, the requirements for 30 and 45 psf per foot of depth are not applicable. See Section 1610.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1807.3.2 Design criteria.** The depth to resist lateral loads shall be determined using the design criteria established in Sections 1807.3.2.1 through 1807.3.2.3, or by other methods approved by the building official.

**1807.3.2.1 Nonconstrained.** The following formula shall be used in determining the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where lateral constraint is not provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or rigid ground surface pavement, and where lateral constraint is not provided above the ground surface, such as by a structural diaphragm.

$$d = 0.5A \{1 + [1 + (4.36h/A)]^{1/2}\} \quad (\text{Equation 18-1})$$

where:

$$A = 2.34P/(S_1b).$$

$b$  = Diameter of round post or footing or diagonal dimension of square post or footing, feet (m).

$d$  = Depth of embedment in earth in feet (m) but not over 12 feet (3658 mm) for purpose of computing lateral pressure.

$h$  = Distance in feet (m) from ground surface to point of application of " $P$ ".

$P$  = Applied lateral force in pounds (kN).

$S_1$  = Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth of one-third the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (psf) (kPa).

**1807.3.2.2 Constrained.** The following formula shall be used to determine the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where lateral constraint is provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or pavement.

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{4.25Ph}{S_3b}} \quad (\text{Equation 18-2})$$

or alternatively

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{4.25M_g}{S_3b}} \quad (\text{Equation 18-3})$$

where:

$M_g$  = Moment in the post at grade, in foot-pounds (kN-m).

$S_3$  = Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806.2 based on a depth equal to the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (kPa).

**1807.3.2.3 Vertical load.** The resistance to vertical loads shall be determined using the vertical foundation pressure set forth in Table 1806.2.

**1807.3.3 Backfill.** The backfill in the annular space around columns not embedded in poured footings shall be by one of the following methods:

1. Backfill shall be of concrete with a specified compressive strength of not less than 2,000 psi (13.8

MPa). The hole shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diameter of the column at its bottom or 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diagonal dimension of a square or rectangular column.

2. Backfill shall be of clean sand. The sand shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping in layers not more than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth.
3. Backfill shall be of controlled low-strength material (CLSM).

## SECTION 1808 FOUNDATIONS

**1808.1 General.** Foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1808.2 through 1808.9. Shallow foundations shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1809. Deep foundations shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1810.

**1808.2 Design for capacity and settlement.** Foundations shall be so designed that the allowable bearing capacity of the soil is not exceeded, and that differential settlement is minimized. Foundations in areas with expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1808.6.

**1808.3 Design loads.** Foundations shall be designed for the most unfavorable effects due to the combinations of loads specified in Section 2.3 or 2.4 of ASCE 7 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2. The dead load is permitted to include the weight of foundations and overlying fill. Reduced live loads, as specified in Sections 1607.12 and 1607.14, shall be permitted to be used in the design of foundations.

**1808.3.1 Seismic overturning.** Where foundations are proportioned using the load combinations of Section 2.3 or 2.4 of ASCE 7 and the computation of seismic overturning effects is by equivalent lateral force analysis or modal analysis, the proportioning shall be in accordance with Section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7.

**1808.3.2 Surcharge.** Fill or other surcharge loads shall not be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or the surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that will be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against detrimental lateral or vertical movement or both.

**Exception:** Minor grading for landscaping purposes shall be permitted where done with walk-behind equipment, where the grade is not increased more than 1 foot (305 mm) from original design grade or where approved by the building official.

**1808.4 Vibratory loads.** Where machinery operations or other vibrations are transmitted through the foundation, consideration shall be given in the foundation design to prevent detrimental disturbances of the soil.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**1808.5 Shifting or moving soils.** Where it is known that the shallow subsoils are of a shifting or moving character, foundations shall be carried to a sufficient depth to ensure stability.

**1808.6 Design for expansive soils.** Foundations for buildings and structures founded on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2.

**Exceptions:** Foundation design need not comply with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2 where one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. The soil is removed in accordance with Section 1808.6.3.
2. The building official approves stabilization of the soil in accordance with Section 1808.6.4.

**1808.6.1 Foundations.** Foundations placed on or within the active zone of expansive soils shall be designed to resist differential volume changes and to prevent structural damage to the supported structure. Deflection and racking of the supported structure shall be limited to that which will not interfere with the usability and serviceability of the structure.

Foundations placed below where volume change occurs or below expansive soil shall comply with the following provisions:

1. Foundations extending into or penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to prevent uplift of the supported structure.
2. Foundations penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to resist forces exerted on the foundation due to soil volume changes or shall be isolated from the expansive soil.

**1808.6.2 Slab-on-ground foundations.** Moments, shears and deflections for use in designing slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be determined in accordance with WRI/CRSI *Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations* or PTI DC 10.5. Using the moments, shears and deflections determined above, nonprestressed slabs-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with WRI/CRSI *Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations* and post-tensioned slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with PTI DC 10.5. It shall be

permitted to analyze and design such slabs by other methods that account for soil-structure interaction, the deformed shape of the soil support, the plate or stiffened plate action of the slab as well as both center lift and edge lift conditions. Such alternative methods shall be rational and the basis for all aspects and parameters of the method shall be available for peer review.

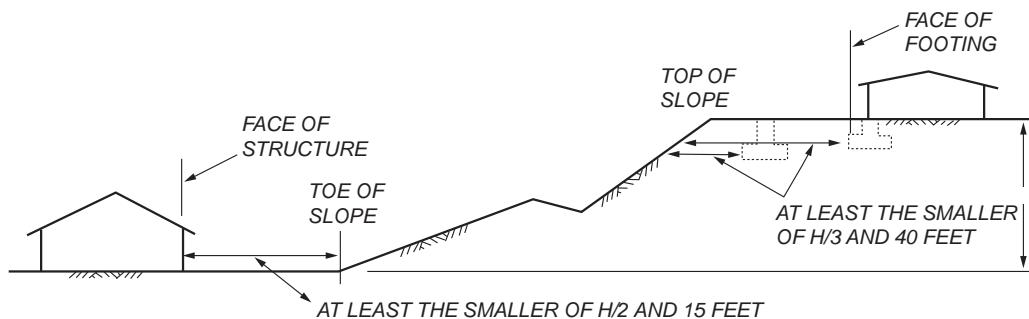
**1808.6.3 Removal of expansive soil.** Where expansive soil is removed in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be removed to a depth sufficient to ensure a constant moisture content in the remaining soil. Fill material shall not contain expansive soils and shall comply with Section 1804.5 or 1804.6.

**Exception:** Expansive soil need not be removed to the depth of constant moisture, provided that the confining pressure in the expansive soil created by the fill and supported structure exceeds the swell pressure.

**1808.6.4 Stabilization.** Where the active zone of expansive soils is stabilized in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808.6.1 or 1808.6.2, the soil shall be stabilized by chemical, dewatering, presaturation or equivalent techniques.

**1808.7 Foundations on or adjacent to slopes.** The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall comply with Sections 1808.7.1 through 1808.7.5.

**1808.7.1 Building clearance from ascending slopes.** In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 1808.7.1  
FOUNDATION CLEARANCES FROM SLOPES**

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1808.7.2 Foundation setback from descending slope surface.** Foundations on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in firm material with an embedment and set back from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the foundation without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 1808.7.5 and Figure 1808.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

**1808.7.3 Pools.** The setback between pools regulated by this code and slopes shall be equal to one-half the building footing setback distance required by this section. That portion of the pool wall within a horizontal distance of 7 feet (2134 mm) from the top of the slope shall be capable of supporting the water in the pool without soil support.

**1808.7.4 Foundation elevation.** On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an approved drainage device not less than 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the building official, provided that it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

**1808.7.5 Alternate setback and clearance.** Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the building official. The building official shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.5.10.

**1808.8 Concrete foundations.** The design, materials and construction of concrete foundations shall comply with Sections 1808.8.1 through 1808.8.6 and the provisions of Chapter 19.

**Exception:** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Where concrete footings supporting walls of light-frame construction are designed in accordance with Table 1809.7, a specific design in accordance with Chapter 19 is not required.

**1808.8.1 Concrete or grout strength and mix proportioning.** Concrete or grout in foundations shall have a specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ) not less than the largest applicable value indicated in Table 1808.8.1.

Where concrete or grout is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pumpable mixture.

**1808.8.2 Concrete cover.** The concrete cover provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement in foundations shall be not less than the largest applicable value specified in Table 1808.8.2. Longitudinal bars spaced less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) clear distance apart shall be considered to be bundled bars for which the concrete cover provided shall be not less than that required by Section 20.5.1.3.5 of ACI 318. Concrete cover shall be measured from the concrete surface to the outermost surface of the steel to which the cover requirement applies. Where concrete is placed in a temporary or permanent casing or a mandrel, the inside face of the casing or mandrel shall be considered to be the concrete surface.

**1808.8.3 Placement of concrete.** Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-size foundation. Concrete shall not be placed through water unless a tremie or other method approved by the building official is used. Where placed under or in the presence of water, the concrete shall be deposited by approved means to ensure minimum segregation of the mix and negligible turbulence of the water. Where depositing concrete from the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete shall be chuted directly into smooth-sided pipes or tubes or placed in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the element.

**1808.8.4 Protection of concrete.** Concrete foundations shall be protected from freezing during depositing and for a period of not less than 5 days thereafter. Water shall not be allowed to flow through the deposited concrete.

**1808.8.5 Forming of concrete.** Concrete foundations are permitted to be cast against the earth where, in the opinion of the building official, soil conditions do not require formwork. Where formwork is required, it shall be in accordance with Section 26.11 of ACI 318.

TABLE 1808.8.1  
MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH  $f'_c$  OF CONCRETE OR GROUT

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, $f'_c$
1. Foundations for structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A, B or C <i>[OSHPD IR, 2 &amp; 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.</i>	2,500 psi
2a. Foundations for Group R or U occupancies of light-frame construction, two stories or less in height, assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F <i>[OSHPD IR, 2 &amp; 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.</i>	2,500 psi
2b. Foundations for other structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F	3,000 psi
3. Precast nonprestressed driven piles	4,000 psi
4. Socketed drilled shafts	4,000 psi
5. Micropiles	4,000 psi
6. Precast prestressed driven piles	5,000 psi

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

**TABLE 1808.8.2  
MINIMUM CONCRETE COVER**

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	MINIMUM COVER
1. Shallow foundations	In accordance with Section 20.5 of ACI 318
2. Precast nonprestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Not manufactured under plant conditions Manufactured under plant control conditions	3 inches 2 inches In accordance with Section 20.5.1.3.3 of ACI 318
3. Precast prestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Other	2.5 inches In accordance with Section 20.5.1.3.3 of ACI 318
4. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements not enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2.5 inches
5. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	1 inch
6. Structural steel core within a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2 inches
7. Cast-in-place drilled shafts enclosed by a stable rock socket	1.5 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**1808.8.6 Seismic requirements. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** See Section 1905 for additional requirements for foundations of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318 shall apply where not in conflict with the provisions of Sections 1808 through 1810.

**Exceptions:** *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.*

1. Detached one- and two-family dwellings of light-frame construction and two stories or less above grade plane are not required to comply with the provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318.
2. Section 18.13.4.3(a) of ACI 318 shall not apply.

**1808.9 Vertical masonry foundation elements.** Vertical masonry foundation elements that are not foundation piers as defined in Section 202 shall be designed as piers, walls or columns, as applicable, in accordance with TMS 402.

## SECTION 1809 SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

**1809.1 General.** Shallow foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1809.2 through 1809.13.

**1809.2 Supporting soils.** Shallow foundations shall be built on undisturbed soil, compacted fill material or controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Compacted fill material shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.5. CLSM shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804.6.

**1809.3 Stepped footings.** The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall be permitted to have a slope not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footing or where the surface of the ground slopes more than 1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope).

*[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Individual steps in continuous footings shall not exceed 18 inches (457 mm) in height and the slope of a series of such steps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope) unless otherwise recommended by a geotechnical report. The steps shall be detailed on the drawings. The local effects due to the discontinuity of the steps shall be considered in the design of the foundation.*

**1809.4 Depth and width of footings.** The minimum depth of footings below the undisturbed ground surface shall be 12 inches (305 mm). Where applicable, the requirements of Section 1809.5 shall be satisfied. The minimum width of footings shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

**1809.5 Frost protection.** Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.
2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.
3. Erecting on solid rock.

**Exception:** Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be required to be protected:

1. Assigned to Risk Category I.
2. Area of 600 square feet ( $56\text{ m}^2$ ) or less for light-frame construction or 400 square feet ( $37\text{ m}^2$ ) or less for other than light-frame construction.
3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

Shallow foundations shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a permanent character.

**1809.5.1 Frost protection at required exits.** Frost protection shall be provided at exterior landings for all required exits with outward-swinging doors. Frost protection shall only be required to the extent necessary to ensure the unobstructed opening of the required exit doors.

**1809.6 Location of footings.** Footings on granular soil shall be so located that the line drawn between the lower edges of adjoining footings shall not have a slope steeper than 30

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

degrees (0.52 rad) with the horizontal, unless the material supporting the higher footing is braced or retained or otherwise laterally supported in an approved manner or a greater slope has been properly established by engineering analysis.

**1809.7 Prescriptive footings for light-frame construction.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Where a specific design is not provided, concrete or masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

**TABLE 1809.7  
PRESCRIPTIVE FOOTINGS SUPPORTING  
WALLS OF LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION<sup>a, b, c, d, e</sup>**

NUMBER OF FLOORS SUPPORTED BY THE FOOTING <sup>f</sup>	WIDTH OF FOOTING (inches)	THICKNESS OF FOOTING (inches)
1	12	6
2	15	6
3	18	8 <sup>g</sup>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Depth of footings shall be in accordance with Section 1809.4.
- b. The ground under the floor shall be permitted to be excavated to the elevation of the top of the footing.
- c. Interior stud-bearing walls shall be permitted to be supported by isolated footings. The footing width and length shall be twice the width shown in this table, and footings shall be spaced not more than 6 feet on center.
- d. See Section 1905 for additional requirements for concrete footings of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.
- e. For thickness of foundation walls, see Section 1807.1.6.
- f. Footings shall be permitted to support a roof in addition to the stipulated number of floors. Footings supporting roof only shall be as required for supporting one floor.
- g. Plain concrete footings for Group R-3 occupancies shall be permitted to be 6 inches thick.

**1809.8 Plain concrete footings.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* The edge thickness of plain concrete footings supporting walls of other than light-frame construction shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) where placed on soil or rock.

**Exception:** For plain concrete footings supporting Group R-3 occupancies, the edge thickness is permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend beyond a distance greater than the thickness of the footing on either side of the supported wall.

**1809.9 Masonry-unit footings.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* The design, materials and construction of masonry-unit footings shall comply with Sections 1809.9.1 and 1809.9.2, and the provisions of Chapter 21.

**Exception:** Where a specific design is not provided, masonry-unit footings supporting walls of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with Table 1809.7.

**1809.9.1 Dimensions.** Masonry-unit footings shall be laid in Type M or S mortar complying with Section 2103.2.1 and the depth shall be not less than twice the projection beyond the wall, pier or column. The width shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) wider than the wall supported thereon.

**1809.9.2 Offsets.** The maximum offset of each course in brick foundation walls stepped up from the footings shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) where laid in single courses, and 3 inches (76 mm) where laid in double courses.

**1809.10 Pier and curtain wall foundations.** Except in Seismic Design Categories D, E and F, pier and curtain wall foundations shall be permitted to be used to support light-frame construction not more than two stories above grade plane, provided that the following requirements are met:

1. All load-bearing walls shall be placed on continuous concrete footings bonded integrally with the exterior wall footings.
2. The minimum actual thickness of a load-bearing masonry wall shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal or 3½ inches (92 mm) actual thickness, and shall be bonded integrally with piers spaced 6 feet (1829 mm) on center (o.c.).
3. Piers shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 21 and the following:
  - 3.1. The unsupported height of the masonry piers shall not exceed 10 times their least dimension.
  - 3.2. Where structural clay tile or hollow concrete masonry units are used for piers supporting beams and girders, the cellular spaces shall be filled solidly with concrete or Type M or S mortar.

**Exception:** Unfilled hollow piers shall be permitted where the unsupported height of the pier is not more than four times its least dimension.

- 3.3. Hollow piers shall be capped with 4 inches (102 mm) of solid masonry or concrete or the cavities of the top course shall be filled with concrete or grout.
4. The maximum height of a 4-inch (102 mm) load-bearing masonry foundation wall supporting wood frame walls and floors shall not be more than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.
5. The unbalanced fill for 4-inch (102 mm) foundation walls shall not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) for solid masonry, nor 12 inches (305 mm) for hollow masonry.

**1809.11 Steel grillage footings.** Grillage footings of structural steel elements shall be separated with approved steel spacers and be entirely encased in concrete with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) on the bottom and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) at all other points. The spaces between the shapes shall be completely filled with concrete or cement grout.

**1809.12 Timber footings.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Timber footings shall be permitted for buildings of Type V construction and as otherwise approved by the building official. Such footings shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B). Treated timbers are not required where placed entirely below permanent water level, or where used as capping for wood piles that project above the water level over submerged or marsh lands. The compressive stresses

perpendicular to grain in untreated timber footings supported on treated piles shall not exceed 70 percent of the allowable stresses for the species and grade of timber as specified in the ANSI/AWC NDS.

**1809.13 Footing seismic ties.** Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, individual spread footings founded on soil defined in Chapter 20 of ASCE 7 as Site Class E or F shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger footing design gravity load times the seismic coefficient,  $S_{DS}$ , divided by 10 and 25 percent of the smaller footing design gravity load.

**1809.14 Pipes and Trenches. [OSHPD IR, 2 & 5]** *Unless otherwise recommended by the soils report, open or back-filled trenches parallel with a footing shall not be below a plane having a downward slope of 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50-percent slope) from a line 9 inches (229 mm) above the bottom edge of the footing, and not closer than 18 inches (457 mm) from the face of such footing.*

*Where pipes cross under footings, the footings shall be specially designed. Pipe sleeves shall be provided where pipes cross through footings or footing walls and sleeve clearances shall provide for possible footing settlement, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) all around pipe.*

**Exception:** Alternate trench locations and pipe clearances shall be permitted when approved by registered design professional in responsible charge and the enforcement agent.

## SECTION 1810 DEEP FOUNDATIONS

**1810.1 General.** Deep foundations shall be analyzed, designed, detailed and installed in accordance with Sections 1810.1 through 1810.4.

**1810.1.1 Geotechnical investigation.** Deep foundations shall be designed and installed on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803.

**1810.1.2 Use of existing deep foundation elements.** Deep foundation elements left in place where a structure has been demolished shall not be used for the support of new construction unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the building official, which indicates that the elements are sound and meet the requirements of this code. Such elements shall be load tested or redriven to verify their capacities. The design load applied to such elements shall be the lowest allowable load as determined by tests or redriving data.

**1810.1.3 Deep foundation elements classified as columns.** Deep foundation elements standing unbraced in air, water or fluid soils shall be classified as columns and designed as such in accordance with the provisions of this code from their top down to the point where adequate

lateral support is provided in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

**Exception:** Where the unsupported height to least horizontal dimension of a cast-in-place deep foundation element does not exceed three, it shall be permitted to design and construct such an element as a pedestal in accordance with ACI 318.

**1810.1.4 Special types of deep foundations.** The use of types of deep foundation elements not specifically mentioned herein is permitted, subject to the approval of the building official, upon the submission of acceptable test data, calculations and other information relating to the structural properties and load capacity of such elements. The allowable stresses for materials shall not in any case exceed the limitations specified herein.

**1810.2 Analysis.** The analysis of deep foundations for design shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.2.1 through 1810.2.5.

**1810.2.1 Lateral support.** Any soil other than fluid soil shall be deemed to afford sufficient lateral support to prevent buckling of deep foundation elements and to permit the design of the elements in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the applicable provisions of this code.

Where deep foundation elements stand unbraced in air, water or fluid soils, it shall be permitted to consider them laterally supported at a point 5 feet (1524 mm) into stiff soil or 10 feet (3048 mm) into soft soil unless otherwise approved by the building official on the basis of a geotechnical investigation by a registered design professional.

**1810.2.2 Stability.** Deep foundation elements shall be braced to provide lateral stability in all directions. Three or more elements connected by a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced, provided that the elements are located in radial directions from the centroid of the group not less than 60 degrees (1 rad) apart. A two-element group in a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced along the axis connecting the two elements. Methods used to brace deep foundation elements shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

Deep foundation elements supporting walls shall be placed alternately in lines spaced not less than 1 foot (305 mm) apart and located symmetrically under the center of gravity of the wall load carried, unless effective measures are taken to provide for eccentricity and lateral forces, or the foundation elements are adequately braced to provide for lateral stability.

### Exceptions:

1. Isolated cast-in-place deep foundation elements without lateral bracing shall be permitted where the least horizontal dimension is not less than 2 feet (610 mm), adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 is provided for the entire height and the height does not exceed 12 times the least horizontal dimension.
2. A single row of deep foundation elements without lateral bracing is permitted for one- and two-

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

family dwellings and lightweight construction not exceeding two stories above grade plane or 35 feet (10 668 mm) in building height, provided that the centers of the elements are located within the width of the supported wall.

**1810.2.3 Settlement.** The settlement of a single deep foundation element or group thereof shall be estimated based on approved methods of analysis. The predicted settlement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

**1810.2.4 Lateral loads.** The moments, shears and lateral deflections used for design of deep foundation elements shall be established considering the nonlinear interaction of the shaft and soil, as determined by a registered design professional. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the element to its least horizontal dimension is less than or equal to six, it shall be permitted to assume the element is rigid.

### 1810.2.4.1 Seismic Design Categories D through F.

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, deep foundation elements on Site Class E or F sites, as determined in Section 1613.2.2, shall be designed and constructed to withstand maximum imposed curvatures from earthquake ground motions and structure response. Curvatures shall include free-field soil strains modified for soil-foundation-structure interaction coupled with foundation element deformations associated with earthquake loads imparted to the foundation by the structure.

**Exception:** Deep foundation elements that satisfy the following additional detailing requirements shall be deemed to comply with the curvature capacity requirements of this section.

1. Precast prestressed concrete piles detailed in accordance with Section 1810.3.8.
2. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005 extending the full length of the element and detailed in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 as required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2.2.

**1810.2.5 Group effects.** The analysis shall include group effects on lateral behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements in the direction of lateral force is less than eight times the least horizontal dimension of an element. The analysis shall include group effects on axial behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements is less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element. Group effects shall be evaluated using a generally accepted method of analysis; the analysis for uplift of grouped elements with center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.6.

**1810.3 Design and detailing.** Deep foundations shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.1 through 1810.3.13.

**1810.3.1 Design conditions.** Design of deep foundations shall include the design conditions specified in Sections 1810.3.1.1 through 1810.3.1.6, as applicable.

#### 1810.3.1.1 Design methods for concrete elements.

Where concrete deep foundations are laterally supported in accordance with Section 1810.2.1 for the entire height and applied forces cause bending moments not greater than those resulting from accidental eccentricities, structural design of the element using the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2 and the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted. Otherwise, the structural design of concrete deep foundation elements shall use the strength load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3 and approved strength design methods.

**1810.3.1.2 Composite elements.** Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section of the composite assembly shall satisfy the applicable requirements of this code, and the maximum allowable load in each section shall be limited by the structural capacity of that section.

**1810.3.1.3 Mislocation.** The foundation or superstructure shall be designed to resist the effects of the mislocation of any deep foundation element by not less than 3 inches (76 mm). To resist the effects of mislocation, compressive overload of deep foundation elements to 110 percent of the allowable design load shall be permitted.

**1810.3.1.4 Driven piles.** Driven piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by handling, driving and service loads.

**1810.3.1.5 Helical piles.** Helical piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by installation into the ground and service loads.

**1810.3.1.5.1 Helical piles seismic requirements.**  
*[OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, capacities of helical piles shall be determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.3 by at least two project specific pre-production tests for each soil profile, size and depth of helical pile. At least two percent of all production piles shall be proof tested to design strength determined by using load combinations in ASCE 7, Section 2.3.6.*

*Helical piles shall satisfy corrosion resistance requirements of ICC-ES AC 358. In addition, all helical pile materials that are subject to corrosion shall include at least  $\frac{1}{16}$  inch corrosion allowance.*

*Helical piles shall not be considered as carrying any horizontal loads.*

**1810.3.1.6 Casings.** Temporary and permanent casings shall be of steel and shall be sufficiently strong to resist

collapse and sufficiently watertight to exclude any foreign materials during the placing of concrete. Where a permanent casing is considered reinforcing steel, the steel shall be protected under the conditions specified in Section 1810.3.2.5. Horizontal joints in the casing shall be spliced in accordance with Section 1810.3.6.

**1810.3.2 Materials.** The materials used in deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1810.3.2.1 through 1810.3.2.8, as applicable.

**1810.3.2.1 Concrete.** Where concrete is cast in a steel pipe or where an enlarged base is formed by compacting concrete, the maximum size for coarse aggregate shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm). Concrete to be compacted shall have a zero slump.

**1810.3.2.1.1 Seismic hooks.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, the ends of hoops, spirals and ties used in concrete deep foundation elements shall be terminated with seismic hooks, as defined in ACI 318, and shall be turned into the confined concrete core.

**1810.3.2.1.2 ACI 318 Equation (25.7.3.3).** Where this chapter requires detailing of concrete deep foundation elements in accordance with Section 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318, compliance with Equation (25.7.3.3) of ACI 318 shall not be required.

**1810.3.2.2 Prestressing steel.** Prestressing steel shall conform to ASTM A416.

**1810.3.2.3 Steel.** Structural steel H-piles and structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A6. Steel pipe piles shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A252. Fully welded steel piles shall be fabricated from plates that conform to the material requirements in ASTM A36, ASTM A283, ASTM A572, ASTM A588 or ASTM A690.

**1810.3.2.4 Timber. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.** Timber deep foundation elements shall be designed as piles or poles in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS. Round timber elements shall conform to ASTM D25. Sawn timber elements shall conform to DOC PS-20.

**1810.3.2.4.1 Preservative treatment.** Timber deep foundation elements used to support permanent structures shall be treated in accordance with this section unless it is established that the tops of the untreated timber elements will be below the lowest ground-water level assumed to exist during the life of the structure. Preservative and minimum final retention shall be in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification E, Use Category 4C) for round timber elements and AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) for sawn timber elements. Preservative-treated timber elements shall be subject to a quality control program administered by an approved agency. Element cutoffs shall be treated in accordance with AWPA M4.

**1810.3.2.5 Protection of materials.** Where boring records or site conditions indicate possible deleterious action on the materials used in deep foundation elements because of soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors, the elements shall be adequately protected by materials, methods or processes approved by the building official. Protective materials shall be applied to the elements so as not to be rendered ineffective by installation. The effectiveness of such protective measures for the particular purpose shall have been thoroughly established by satisfactory service records or other evidence.

**1810.3.2.6 Allowable stresses.** The allowable stresses for materials used in deep foundation elements shall not exceed those specified in Table 1810.3.2.6.

**1810.3.2.7 Increased allowable compressive stress for cased mandrell-driven cast-in-place elements.** The allowable compressive stress in the concrete shall be permitted to be increased as specified in Table 1810.3.2.6 for those portions of permanently cased cast-in-place elements that satisfy all of the following conditions:

1. The design shall not use the casing to resist any portion of the axial load imposed.
2. The casing shall have a sealed tip and be mandrel driven.
3. The thickness of the casing shall be not less than manufacturer's standard gage No.14 (0.068 inch) (1.75 mm).
4. The casing shall be seamless or provided with seams of strength equal to the basic material and be of a configuration that will provide confinement to the cast-in-place concrete.
5. The ratio of steel yield strength ( $F_y$ ) to specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be not less than six.
6. The nominal diameter of the element shall not be greater than 16 inches (406 mm).

**1810.3.2.8 Justification of higher allowable stresses.** Use of allowable stresses greater than those specified in Section 1810.3.2.6 shall be permitted where supporting data justifying such higher stresses is filed with the building official. Such substantiating data shall include the following:

1. A geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.
2. Load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2, regardless of the load supported by the element.

The design and installation of the deep foundation elements shall be under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations who shall submit a report to the building official stating that the elements as installed satisfy the design criteria.

**SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS**

**TABLE 1810.3.2.6**  
**ALLOWABLE STRESSES FOR MATERIALS USED IN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS**

MATERIAL TYPE AND CONDITION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS <sup>a</sup>
1. Concrete or grout in compression <sup>b</sup>	
Cast-in-place with a permanent casing in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.7 or Section 1810.3.5.3.4	0.4 $f'_c$
Cast-in-place in other permanent casing or rock	0.33 $f'_c$
Cast-in-place without a permanent casing	0.3 $f'_c$
Precast nonprestressed	0.33 $f'_c$
Precast prestressed	0.33 $f'_c$ - 0.27 $f_{pc}$
2. Nonprestressed reinforcement in compression	0.4 $f_y \leq 30,000$ psi
3. Steel in compression	
Cores within concrete-filled pipes or tubes	0.5 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi
Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8	0.5 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi
Pipes or tubes for micropiles	0.4 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi
Other pipes, tubes or H-piles	0.35 $F_y \leq 24,000$ psi
Helical piles	0.6 $F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
4. Nonprestressed reinforcement in tension	
Within micropiles	0.6 $f_y$
Other conditions	
For load combinations that do not include wind or seismic loads	0.5 $f_y \leq 30,000$ psi
For load combinations that include wind or seismic loads	0.5 $f_y \leq 40,000$ psi
5. Steel in tension	
Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8	0.5 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi
Other pipes, tubes or H-piles	0.35 $F_y \leq 24,000$ psi
Helical piles	0.6 $F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
6. Timber	In accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS

a.  $f'_c$  is the specified compressive strength of the concrete or grout;  $f_{pc}$  is the compressive stress on the gross concrete section due to effective prestress forces only;  $f_y$  is the specified yield strength of reinforcement;  $F_y$  is the specified minimum yield stress of steel;  $F_u$  is the specified minimum tensile stress of structural steel.

b. The stresses specified apply to the gross cross-sectional area of the concrete for precast prestressed piles and to the net cross-sectional area for all other piles. Where a temporary or permanent casing is used, the inside face of the casing shall be considered the outer edge of the concrete cross-section.

**1810.3.3 Determination of allowable loads.** The allowable axial and lateral loads on deep foundation elements shall be determined by an approved formula, load tests or method of analysis.

**1810.3.3.1 Allowable axial load.** The allowable axial load on a deep foundation element shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1810.3.3.1.1 through 1810.3.3.1.9.

**Exception:** Where approved by the building official, load testing is not required.

**1810.3.3.1.1 Driving criteria.** The allowable compressive load on any driven deep foundation element where determined by the application of an approved driving formula shall not exceed 40 tons (356 kN). For allowable loads above 40 tons (356 kN), the wave equation method of analysis shall be used to estimate driveability for both driving stresses and net displacement per blow at the ultimate load. Allowable loads shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The formula or wave equation load shall be determined for gravity-drop or power-actuated hammers and the hammer energy used shall be the maximum consistent with the size, strength and weight of the driven elements.

The use of a follower is permitted only with the approval of the building official. The introduction of fresh hammer cushion or pile cushion material just prior to final penetration is not permitted.

**1810.3.3.1.2 Load tests.** Where design compressive loads are greater than those determined using the allowable stresses specified in Section 1810.3.2.6, where the design load for any deep foundation element is in doubt, or where cast-in-place deep foundation elements have an enlarged base formed either by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base, control test elements shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D1143 or ASTM D4945. One element or more shall be load tested in each area of uniform subsoil conditions. Where required by the building official, additional elements shall be load tested where necessary to establish the safe design capacity. The resulting allowable loads shall not be more than one-half of the ultimate axial load capacity of the test element as assessed by one of the published methods listed in Section 1810.3.3.1.3 with consideration for the test type, duration and subsoil. The ultimate axial load capacity shall be determined by a registered design professional with consideration given to tolerable total and differential

settlements at design load in accordance with Section 1810.2.3. In subsequent installation of the balance of deep foundation elements, all elements shall be deemed to have a supporting capacity equal to that of the control element where such elements are of the same type, size and relative length as the test element; are installed using the same or comparable methods and equipment as the test element; are installed in similar subsoil conditions as the test element; and, for driven elements, where the rate of penetration (for example, net displacement per blow) of such elements is equal to or less than that of the test element driven with the same hammer through a comparable driving distance.

**1810.3.3.1.3 Load test evaluation methods.** It shall be permitted to evaluate load tests of deep foundation elements using any of the following methods:

1. Davisson Offset Limit.
2. Brinch-Hansen 90-percent Criterion.
3. Butler-Hoy Criterion.
4. Other methods approved by the building official.

**1810.3.3.1.4 Allowable shaft resistance.** The assumed shaft resistance developed by any uncased cast-in-place deep foundation element shall not exceed one-sixth of the bearing value of the soil material at minimum depth as set forth in Table 1806.2, up to 500 psf (24 kPa), unless a greater value is allowed by the building official on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as specified in Section 1803 or a greater value is substantiated by a load test in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. Shaft resistance and end-bearing resistance shall not be assumed to act simultaneously unless determined by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803.

**1810.3.3.1.5 Uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element.** Where required by the design, the uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element shall be determined by an approved method of analysis based on a minimum factor of safety of three or by load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689. The maximum allowable uplift load shall not exceed the ultimate load capacity as determined in Section 1810.3.3.1.2, using the results of load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689, divided by a factor of safety of two.

**Exception:** Where uplift is due to wind or seismic loading, the minimum factor of safety shall be two where capacity is determined by an analysis and one and one-half where capacity is determined by load tests.

**1810.3.3.1.6 Allowable uplift load of grouped deep foundation elements.** For grouped deep foundation elements subjected to uplift, the allowable uplift load for the group shall be calculated by a generally accepted method of analysis. Where the deep founda-

tion elements in the group are placed at a center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of the largest single element, the allowable uplift load for the group is permitted to be calculated as the lesser of:

1. The proposed individual allowable uplift load times the number of elements in the group.
2. Two-thirds of the effective weight of the group and the soil contained within a block defined by the perimeter of the group and the length of the element, plus two-thirds of the ultimate shear resistance along the soil block.

**1810.3.3.1.7 Load-bearing capacity.** Deep foundation elements shall develop ultimate load capacities of not less than twice the design working loads in the designated load-bearing layers. Analysis shall show that soil layers underlying the designated load-bearing layers do not cause the load-bearing capacity safety factor to be less than two.

**1810.3.3.1.8 Bent deep foundation elements.** The load-bearing capacity of deep foundation elements discovered to have a sharp or sweeping bend shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by load testing a representative element.

**1810.3.3.1.9 Helical piles.** The allowable axial design load,  $P_a$ , of helical piles shall be determined as follows:

$$P_a = 0.5 P_u \quad (\text{Equation 18-4})$$

where  $P_u$  is the least value of:

1. Base capacity plus shaft resistance of the helical pile. The base capacity is equal to the sum of the areas of the helical bearing plates times the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil or rock comprising the bearing stratum. The shaft resistance is equal to the area of the shaft above the uppermost helical bearing plate times the ultimate skin resistance.
2. Ultimate capacity determined from well-documented correlations with installation torque.
3. Ultimate capacity determined from load tests where required by Section 1810.3.3.1.2. *[OSHPD IR, 2B & 5J Load tests are required to determine the ultimate capacity.]*
4. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft.
5. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft couplings.
6. Sum of the ultimate axial capacity of helical bearing plates affixed to pile.

**1810.3.3.2 Allowable lateral load.** Where required by the design, the lateral load capacity of a single deep foundation element or a group thereof shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by lateral load tests to not less than twice the proposed design working load. The resulting allowable load shall not be more than one-half of the load that produces a gross lateral movement of 1 inch (25 mm) at the lower of the

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

top of foundation element and the ground surface, unless it can be shown that the predicted lateral movement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

**1810.3.4 Subsiding soils or strata.** Where deep foundation elements are installed through subsiding soils or other subsiding strata and derive support from underlying firmer materials, consideration shall be given to the downward frictional forces potentially imposed on the elements by the subsiding upper strata.

Where the influence of subsiding soils or strata is considered as imposing loads on the element, the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted to be increased where satisfactory substantiating data are submitted.

**1810.3.5 Dimensions of deep foundation elements.** The dimensions of deep foundation elements shall be in accordance with Sections 1810.3.5.1 through 1810.3.5.3, as applicable.

**1810.3.5.1 Precast.** The minimum lateral dimension of precast concrete deep foundation elements shall be 8 inches (203 mm). Corners of square elements shall be chamfered.

**1810.3.5.2 Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place.** Cast-in-place and grouted-in-place deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1810.3.5.2.1 Cased.** Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place deep foundation elements with a permanent casing shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

**1810.3.5.2.2 Uncased.** Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place deep foundation elements without a permanent casing shall have a specified diameter of not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The element length shall not exceed 30 times the specified diameter.

**Exception:** The length of the element is permitted to exceed 30 times the specified diameter, provided that the design and installation of the deep foundations are under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations. The registered design professional shall submit a report to the building official stating that the elements were installed in compliance with the approved construction documents.

**1810.3.5.2.3 Micropiles.** Micropiles shall have a nominal diameter of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. The minimum diameter set forth elsewhere in Section 1810.3.5 shall not apply to micropiles.

**1810.3.5.3 Steel.** Steel deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1810.3.5.3.1 Structural steel H-piles.** Sections of structural steel H-piles shall comply with the requirements for HP shapes in ASTM A6, or the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall be not less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.
2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm).
3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, design and detailing of H-piles shall also conform to the requirements of AISC 341.

**1810.3.5.3.2 Fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates.** Sections of fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates shall comply with the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall be not less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.
2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm).
3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

**1810.3.5.3.3 Structural steel sheet piling.** Individual sections of structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the profile indicated by the manufacturer, and shall conform to the general requirements specified by ASTM A6.

*[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Installation of sheet piling shall satisfy inspection, monitoring and observation requirements in Sections 1812.6 and 1812.7.*

**1810.3.5.3.4 Steel pipes and tubes.** Steel pipes and tubes used as deep foundation elements shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm). Where steel pipes or tubes are driven open ended, they shall have not less than 0.34 square inch ( $219 \text{ mm}^2$ ) of steel in cross section to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 Nm) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 MPa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer. Where a pipe or tube with wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, a suitable cutting shoe shall be provided. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C,

D, E or F shall have a wall thickness of not less than  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (5 mm). The pipe or tube casing for socketed drilled shafts shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), a wall thickness of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) and a suitable steel driving shoe welded to the bottom; the diameter of the rock socket shall be approximately equal to the inside diameter of the casing.

**Exceptions:**

1. There is no minimum diameter for steel pipes or tubes used in micropiles.
2. For mandrel-driven pipes or tubes, the minimum wall thickness shall be  $\frac{1}{10}$  inch (2.5 mm).

**1810.3.5.3.5 Helical piles.** Dimensions of the central shaft and the number, size and thickness of helical bearing plates shall be sufficient to support the design loads.

**1810.3.6 Splices.** Splices shall be constructed so as to provide and maintain true alignment and position of the component parts of the deep foundation element during installation and subsequent thereto and shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces and moments occurring at the location of the splice during driving and for design load combinations. Where deep foundation elements of the same type are being spliced, splices shall develop not less than 50 percent of the bending strength of the weaker section. Where deep foundation elements of different materials or different types are being spliced, splices shall develop the full compressive strength and not less than 50 percent of the tension and bending strength of the weaker section. Where structural steel cores are to be spliced, the ends shall be milled or ground to provide full contact and shall be full-depth welded.

**Exception:** For buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, splices need not comply with the 50-percent tension and bending strength requirements where justified by supporting data.

Splices occurring in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the embedded portion of an element shall be designed to resist at allowable stresses the moment and shear that would result from an assumed eccentricity of the axial load of 3 inches (76 mm), or the element shall be braced in accordance with Section 1810.2.2 to other deep foundation elements that do not have splices in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of embedment.

**1810.3.6.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F splices of deep foundation elements shall develop the lesser of the following:

1. The nominal strength of the deep foundation element.
2. The axial and shear forces and moments from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7.

**1810.3.7 Top of element detailing at cutoffs.** Where a minimum length for reinforcement or the extent of closely spaced confinement reinforcement is specified at the top of a deep foundation element, provisions shall be made so that those specified lengths or extents are maintained after cutoff.

**1810.3.8 Precast concrete piles.** Precast concrete piles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with ACI 318.

**Exceptions:**

1. For precast prestressed piles in Seismic Design Category C, the minimum volumetric ratio of spirals or circular hoops required by Section 18.13.5.10.4 of ACI 318 shall not apply in cases where the design includes full consideration of load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3.6 or Section 2.4.5 and the applicable overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ . In such cases, minimum transverse reinforcement index shall be as specified in Section 13.4.5.6 of ACI 318. [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] not permitted by OSHPD.
2. For precast prestressed piles in Seismic Design Categories D through F, the minimum volumetric ratio of spirals or circular hoops required by Section 18.13.5.10.5(c) of ACI 318 shall not apply in cases where the design includes full consideration of load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3.6 or Section 2.4.5 and the applicable overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ . In such cases, minimum transverse reinforcement shall be as specified in Section 13.4.5.6 of ACI 318. [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] not permitted by OSHPD.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] Exception:** Where the axial load from seismic forces is amplified by the applicable overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ , the axial load limits in Section 18.13.5.10.6 of ACI 318 may be increased by two times.

**1810.3.9 Cast-in-place deep foundations.** Cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.9.1 through 1810.3.9.6.

**1810.3.9.1 Design cracking moment.** The design cracking moment ( $\phi M_n$ ) for a cast-in-place deep foundation element not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be determined using the following equation:

$$\phi M_n = 3 \sqrt{f'_c} S_m \quad (\text{Equation 18-5})$$

For SI:  $\phi M_n = 0.25 \sqrt{f'_c} S_m$

where:

$f'_c$  = Specified compressive strength of concrete or grout, psi (MPa).

$S_m$  = Elastic section modulus, neglecting reinforcement and casing, cubic inches ( $\text{mm}^3$ ).

**1810.3.9.2 Required reinforcement.** Where subject to uplift or where the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3 exceeds the design cracking moment determined in

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1, cast-in-place deep foundations not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be reinforced.

**1810.3.9.3 Placement of reinforcement.** Reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the deep foundation element as a unit before the reinforced portion of the element is filled with concrete.

### Exceptions:

1. Steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less shall be permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semiliquid state.
2. For deep foundation elements installed with a hollow-stem auger, tied reinforcement shall be placed after elements are concreted, while the concrete is still in a semiliquid state. Longitudinal reinforcement without lateral ties shall be placed either through the hollow stem of the auger prior to concreting or after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semiliquid state.
3. For Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, reinforcement is permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semiliquid state, and the concrete cover requirement is permitted to be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm), provided that the construction method can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the building official.

**1810.3.9.4 Seismic reinforcement.** Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category C, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.1. Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.4.2.

### Exceptions:

1. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.
2. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts and bracing from decks and patios appurtenant to Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where the lateral load,  $E$ , to the top of the ele-

ment does not exceed 200 pounds (890 N) and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.

3. Deep foundation elements supporting the concrete foundation wall of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than two No. 4 bars, without ties or spirals, where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7 and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810.2.1.
4. Closed ties or spirals where required by Section 1810.3.9.4.2 shall be permitted to be limited to the top 3 feet (914 mm) of deep foundation elements 10 feet (3048 mm) or less in depth supporting Group R-3 and U occupancies of Seismic Design Category D, not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction.

**1810.3.9.4.1 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

Not fewer than four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.0025, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined in this section starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-third of the element length.
2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. Three times the least element dimension.
4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals with a minimum  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the smaller of 6 inches (152 mm) or 8-longitudinal-bar diameters, within a distance of three times the least element dimension from the bottom of the pile cap. Spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed 16 longitudinal bar

diameters throughout the remainder of the reinforced length.

**Exceptions:**

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.
2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than the manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

**1810.3.9.4.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

Not fewer than four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined in this section starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-half of the element length.
2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. Three times the least element dimension.
4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals not smaller than No. 3 bars for elements with a least dimension up to 20 inches (508 mm), and No. 4 bars for larger elements. Throughout the remainder of the reinforced length outside the regions with transverse confinement reinforcement, as specified in Section 1810.3.9.4.2.1 or 1810.3.9.4.2.2, the spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the least of the following:

1. 12 longitudinal bar diameters.
2. One-half the least dimension of the element.
3. 12 inches (305 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.

2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

**1810.3.9.4.2.1 Site Classes A through D.** For Site Class A, B, C or D sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within three times the least element dimension at the bottom of the pile cap. A transverse spiral reinforcement ratio of not less than one-half of that required in Table 18.10.6.4(g) of ACI 318 shall be permitted.  
*[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] A transverse spiral reinforcement ratio of not less than one-half of that required in Section 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 shall be permitted for concrete deep foundation elements.*

**1810.3.9.4.2.2 Site Classes E and F.** For Site Class E or F sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within seven times the least element dimension of the pile cap and within seven times the least element dimension of the interfaces of strata that are hard or stiff and strata that are liquefiable or are composed of soft- to medium-stiff clay.

**1810.3.9.5 Belled drilled shafts.** Where drilled shafts are belled at the bottom, the edge thickness of the bell shall be not less than that required for the edge of footings. Where the sides of the bell slope at an angle less than 60 degrees (1 rad) from the horizontal, the effects of vertical shear shall be considered.

**1810.3.9.6 Socketed drilled shafts.** Socketed drilled shafts shall have a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock, both filled with concrete. Socketed drilled shafts shall have reinforcement or a structural steel core for the length as indicated by an approved method of analysis.

The depth of the rock socket shall be sufficient to develop the full load-bearing capacity of the element with a minimum safety factor of two, but the depth shall be not less than the outside diameter of the pipe or tube casing. The design of the rock socket is permitted to be predicated on the sum of the allowable load-bearing pressure on the bottom of the socket plus bond along the sides of the socket.

Where a structural steel core is used, the gross cross-sectional area of the core shall not exceed 25 percent of the gross area of the drilled shaft.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1810.3.10 Micropiles.** Micropiles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810.3.10.1 through 1810.3.10.4.

**1810.3.10.1 Construction.** Micropiles shall develop their load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock. Micropiles shall be grouted and have either a steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement at every section along the length. It shall be permitted to transition from deformed reinforcing bars to steel pipe or tube reinforcement by extending the bars into the pipe or tube section by not less than their development length in tension in accordance with ACI 318.

**1810.3.10.2 Materials.** Reinforcement shall consist of deformed reinforcing bars in accordance with ASTM A615 Grade 60 or 75 or ASTM A722 Grade 150.

The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum wall thickness of  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm). Splices shall comply with Section 1810.3.6. The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi (310 MPa) and a minimum elongation of 15 percent as shown by mill certifications or two coupon test samples per 40,000 pounds (18 160 kg) of pipe or tube.

**1810.3.10.3 Reinforcement.** For micropiles or portions thereof grouted inside a temporary or permanent casing or inside a hole drilled into bedrock or a hole drilled with grout, the steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement shall be designed to carry not less than 40 percent of the design compression load. Micropiles or portions thereof grouted in an open hole in soil without temporary or permanent casing and without suitable means of verifying the hole diameter during grouting shall be designed to carry the entire compression load in the reinforcing steel. Where a steel pipe or tube is used for reinforcement, the portion of the grout enclosed within the pipe is permitted to be included in the determination of the allowable stress in the grout.

**1810.3.10.4 Seismic reinforcement.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, a permanent steel casing shall be provided from the top of the micro-pile down to the point of zero curvature. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the micropile shall be considered as an alternative system in accordance with Sections 104.11 or 1.8.7, as applicable. The alternative system design, supporting documentation and test data shall be submitted to the building official for review and approval.

**1810.3.10.4.1 Seismic requirements.** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, a permanent steel casing having a minimum thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch shall be provided from the top of the micropile down to a minimum of 120 percent of the point of zero curvature. Capacity of micropiles shall be determined in accordance with Section 1810.3.3 by at least two project specific pre-production tests for each soil profile, size and depth of micropile. At least two percent of all production piles shall be proof tested to

design strength determined by using load combinations in ASCE 7, Section 2.3.6.

Steel casing length in soil shall be considered as unbonded and shall not be considered as contributing to friction. Casing shall provide confinement at least equivalent to hoop reinforcing required by ACI 318 Section 18.13.5.

Reinforcement shall have Class 1 corrosion protection in accordance with PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors. Steel casing design shall include at least  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch corrosion allowance.

Micropiles shall not be considered as carrying any horizontal loads.

**1810.3.11 Pile caps.** Pile caps shall conform with ACI 318 and this section. Pile caps shall be of reinforced concrete, and shall include all elements to which vertical deep foundation elements are connected, including grade beams and mats. The soil immediately below the pile cap shall not be considered as carrying any vertical load, with the exception of a combined pile raft. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] A combined pile raft foundation shall be an alternative system. The tops of vertical deep foundation elements shall be embedded not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into pile caps and the caps shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the edges of the elements. The tops of elements shall be cut or chipped back to sound material before capping.

**1810.3.11.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, concrete deep foundation elements shall be connected to the pile cap in accordance with ACI 318.

For resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipes, tubes or H-piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes shall have reinforcement of not less than 0.01 times the cross-sectional area of the concrete fill developed into the cap and extending into the fill a length equal to two times the required cap embedment, but not less than the development length in tension of the reinforcement.

**1810.3.11.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, deep foundation element resistance to uplift forces or rotational restraint shall be provided by anchorage into the pile cap, designed considering the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pile cap. Anchorage shall develop not less than 25 percent of the strength of the element in tension. Anchorage into the pile cap shall comply with the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the anchorage shall be capable of developing the least of the following:
  - 1.1. The nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete element.

- 1.2. The nominal tensile strength of a steel element.
  - 1.3. The frictional force developed between the element and the soil multiplied by 1.3.
- Exception:** The anchorage is permitted to be designed to resist the axial tension force resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7.
2. In the case of rotational restraint, the anchorage shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces, and moments resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7 or the anchorage shall be capable of developing the full axial, bending and shear nominal strength of the element.
  3. The connection between the pile cap and the steel H-piles or unfilled steel pipe piles in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be designed for a tensile force of not less than 10 percent of the pile compression capacity.

**Exceptions:**

1. Connection tensile capacity need not exceed the strength required to resist seismic load effects including overstrength of ASCE 7, Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2.
2. Connections need not be provided where the foundation or supported structure does not rely on the tensile capacity of the piles for stability under the design seismic force. *[OSHPD IR, 2B & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.*

Where the vertical lateral-force-resisting elements are columns, the pile cap flexural strengths shall exceed the column flexural strength. The connection between batter piles and pile caps shall be designed to resist the nominal strength of the pile acting as a short column. Batter piles and their connection shall be designed to resist forces and moments that result from the application of seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7.

**1810.3.12 Grade beams.** Grade beams shall comply with the provisions of ACI 318.

**Exception:** Grade beams designed to resist the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7. *[OSHPD IR, 2B & 5] Need not comply with Section 18.13.3 of ACI 318.*

**1810.3.13 Seismic ties.** Seismic ties shall comply with the provisions of ACI 318.

**Exception:** In Group R-3 and U occupancies of light-frame construction, deep foundation elements supporting foundation walls, isolated interior posts detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads or exterior

decks and patios are not subject to interconnection where the soils are of adequate stiffness, subject to the approval of the building official.

**1810.4 Installation.** Deep foundations shall be installed in accordance with Section 1810.4. Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section shall satisfy the applicable conditions of installation.

**1810.4.1 Structural integrity.** Deep foundation elements shall be installed in such a manner and sequence as to prevent distortion or damage that would adversely affect the structural integrity of adjacent structures or of foundation elements being installed or already in place and as to avoid compacting the surrounding soil to the extent that other foundation elements cannot be installed properly.

**1810.4.1.1 Compressive strength of precast concrete piles.** A precast concrete pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of not less than 75 percent of the specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

**1810.4.1.2 Shafts in unstable soils.** Where cast-in-place deep foundation elements are formed through unstable soils, the open hole shall be stabilized by a casing, slurry, or other approved method prior to placing the concrete. Where the casing is withdrawn during concreting, the level of concrete shall be maintained above the bottom of the casing at a sufficient height to offset any hydrostatic or lateral soil pressure. Driven casings shall be mandrel driven their full length in contact with the surrounding soil.

**1810.4.1.3 Driving near uncased concrete.** Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within six element diameters center to center in granular soils or within one-half the element length in cohesive soils of an uncased element filled with concrete less than 48 hours old unless approved by the building official. If driving near uncased concrete elements causes the concrete surface in any completed element to rise or drop significantly or bleed additional water, the completed element shall be replaced.

**1810.4.1.4 Driving near cased concrete.** Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within four and one-half average diameters of a cased element filled with concrete less than 24 hours old unless approved by the building official. Concrete shall not be placed in casings within heave range of driving.

**1810.4.1.5 Defective timber piles.** *[OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.* Any substantial sudden change in rate of penetration of a timber pile shall be investigated for possible damage. If the sudden change in rate of penetration cannot be correlated to soil strata, the pile shall be removed for inspection or rejected.

**1810.4.2 Identification.** Deep foundation materials shall be identified for conformity to the specified grade with this identity maintained continuously from the point of manufacture to the point of installation or shall be tested

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

by an approved agency to determine conformity to the specified grade. The approved agency shall furnish an affidavit of compliance to the building official.

**1810.4.3 Location plan.** A plan showing the location and designation of deep foundation elements by an identification system shall be filed with the building official prior to installation of such elements. Detailed records for elements shall bear an identification corresponding to that shown on the plan.

**1810.4.4 Preexcavation.** The use of jetting, augering or other methods of preexcavation shall be subject to the approval of the building official. Where permitted, preexcavation shall be carried out in the same manner as used for deep foundation elements subject to load tests and in such a manner that will not impair the carrying capacity of the elements already in place or damage adjacent structures. Element tips shall be advanced below the preexcavated depth until the required resistance or penetration is obtained.

**1810.4.5 Vibratory driving.** Vibratory drivers shall only be used to install deep foundation elements where the element load capacity is verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2. The installation of production elements shall be controlled according to power consumption, rate of penetration or other approved means that ensure element capacities equal or exceed those of the test elements.

### Exceptions:

1. The pile installation is completed by driving with an impact hammer in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.1.
2. The pile is to be used only for lateral resistance.

**1810.4.6 Heaved elements.** Deep foundation elements that have heaved during the driving of adjacent elements shall be redriven as necessary to develop the required capacity and penetration, or the capacity of the element shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810.3.3.1.2.

**1810.4.7 Enlarged base cast-in-place elements.** Enlarged bases for cast-in-place deep foundation elements formed by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base shall be formed in or driven into granular soils. Such elements shall be constructed in the same manner as successful prototype test elements driven for the project. Shafts extending through peat or other organic soil shall be encased in a permanent steel casing. Where a cased shaft is used, the shaft shall be adequately reinforced to resist column action or the annular space around the shaft shall be filled sufficiently to reestablish lateral support by the soil. Where heave occurs, the element shall be replaced unless it is demonstrated that the element is undamaged and capable of carrying twice its design load.

**1810.4.8 Hollow-stem augered, cast-in-place elements.** Where concrete or grout is placed by pumping through a hollow-stem auger, the auger shall be permitted to rotate in a clockwise direction during withdrawal. As the auger is

withdrawn at a steady rate or in increments not to exceed 1 foot (305 mm), concreting or grouting pumping pressures shall be measured and maintained high enough at all times to offset hydrostatic and lateral earth pressures. Concrete or grout volumes shall be measured to ensure that the volume of concrete or grout placed in each element is equal to or greater than the theoretical volume of the hole created by the auger. Where the installation process of any element is interrupted or a loss of concreting or grouting pressure occurs, the element shall be redrilled to 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the tip of the auger when the installation was interrupted or concrete or grout pressure was lost and reformed. Augered cast-in-place elements shall not be installed within six diameters center to center of an element filled with concrete or grout less than 12 hours old, unless approved by the building official. If the concrete or grout level in any completed element drops due to installation of an adjacent element, the element shall be replaced.

**1810.4.9 Socketed drilled shafts.** The rock socket and pipe or tube casing of socketed drilled shafts shall be thoroughly cleaned of foreign materials before filling with concrete. Steel cores shall be bedded in cement grout at the base of the rock socket.

**1810.4.10 Micropiles.** Micropile deep foundation elements shall be permitted to be formed in holes advanced by rotary or percussive drilling methods, with or without casing. The elements shall be grouted with a fluid cement grout. The grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe extending to the bottom of the element until grout of suitable quality returns at the top of the element. The following requirements apply to specific installation methods:

1. For micropiles grouted inside a temporary casing, the reinforcing bars shall be inserted prior to withdrawal of the casing. The casing shall be withdrawn in a controlled manner with the grout level maintained at the top of the element to ensure that the grout completely fills the drill hole. During withdrawal of the casing, the grout level inside the casing shall be monitored to verify that the flow of grout inside the casing is not obstructed.
2. For a micropile or portion thereof grouted in an open drill hole in soil without temporary casing, the minimum design diameter of the drill hole shall be verified by a suitable device during grouting.
3. For micropiles designed for end bearing, a suitable means shall be employed to verify that the bearing surface is properly cleaned prior to grouting.
4. Subsequent micropiles shall not be drilled near elements that have been grouted until the grout has had sufficient time to harden.
5. Micropiles shall be grouted as soon as possible after drilling is completed.
6. For micropiles designed with a full-length casing, the casing shall be pulled back to the top of the bond

zone and reinserted or some other suitable means employed to ensure grout coverage outside the casting.

**1810.4.11 Helical piles.** Helical piles shall be installed to specified embedment depth and torsional resistance criteria as determined by a registered design professional. The torque applied during installation shall not exceed the manufacturer's rated maximum installation torque resistance of the helical pile.

**1810.4.12 Special inspection.** Special inspections in accordance with Sections 1705.7 and 1705.8 shall be provided for driven and cast-in-place deep foundation elements, respectively. Special inspections in accordance with Section 1705.9 shall be provided for helical piles.

## SECTION 1811 PRESTRESSED ROCK AND SOIL FOUNDATION ANCHORS [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]

**1811.1 General.** The requirements of this section address the use of vertical rock and soil anchors in resisting seismic or wind overturning forces, resulting in tension on shallow foundations.

**1811.2 Adoption.** Except for the modifications as set forth in Sections 1811.3 and 1811.4, all prestressed rock and soil foundation anchors shall comply with PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors.

**1811.3 Geotechnical requirements.** The geotechnical report for the Prestressed Rock & Soil Foundation Anchors shall address the following:

1. Minimum diameter and minimum spacing for the anchors including consideration of group effects.
2. Maximum unbonded length and minimum bonded length of the tendon.
3. Maximum recommended anchor tension capacity based upon the soil or rock strength/grout bond and anchor depth/spacing.
4. Allowable bond stress at the ground/grout interface and applicable factor of safety for ultimate bond stress.
5. Anchor axial tension stiffness recommendations at the anticipated anchor axial tension displacements, when required for structural analysis.
6. Minimum grout pressure for installation and post-grout pressure.
7. Class I corrosion protection is required for all permanent and extended temporary anchors in service more than 2 years. A minimum of Class II corrosion protection is required for temporary anchors in service less than or equal to 2 years.
8. Performance test shall be at a minimum of 1.6 times the design loads, but shall not exceed 80 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons. There shall be a minimum of two preproduction test anchors. Preproduction test anchors shall be tested to ultimate load or a maximum of 0.80 times the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendon. A creep test is

required for all prestressed anchors with greater than 10 kips of lock-off prestressing load.

9. Lock-off prestressing load requirements.
10. Acceptable drilling methods.
11. Geotechnical observation and monitoring requirements.

### 1811.4 Structural Requirements.

1. Tendons shall be thread-bar anchors conforming to ASTM A722.
2. The anchors shall be placed vertical.
3. Design loads shall be based upon the load combinations in Section 2.4 of ASCE 7 and shall not exceed 60 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons.
4. Ultimate load shall be based upon the lesser of the strength of the superstructure elements, the maximum forces from a fully yielded structural system and forces from the load combinations with overstrength factor in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 12.4.3 and shall not exceed 80 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons.
5. The anchor shall be designed to fail in grout bond to the soil or rock before pullout of the soil wedge by group effect.
6. Foundation design shall incorporate the effect of lock-off loads.
7. Design shall account for as-built locations of soil anchors considering all the acceptable construction tolerances.
8. Design shall account for both short- and long-term deformation.
9. Enforcement agency may require consideration of anchor deformation in evaluating deformation compatibility or building drift where it may be significant.

## SECTION 1812 EARTH RETAINING SHORING [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]

**1812.1 General.** The requirements of this section shall apply to temporary and permanent earth-retaining shoring using soldier piles and lagging with or without tie-back anchors in soil or rock, only when existing or new facilities are affected. Shoring used as construction means and methods only, which does not affect existing or new facilities, is not regulated by this section and shall satisfy the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.

Design, construction, testing and inspection shall satisfy the requirements of this code except as modified in Sections 1812.2 through 1812.8.

**1812.2 Duration.** Shoring shall be considered temporary when elements of the shoring will be exposed to site conditions for a period of less than or equal to 2 years, and shall be considered permanent otherwise. Permanent shoring shall account for the increase in lateral soil pressure due to earthquake. At the end of the construction period, the existing and new structures shall not rely on the temporary shoring for

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

*support in anyway. Wood components shall not be used for permanent shoring lasting more than 2 years. Wood components of the temporary shoring that may affect the performance of permanent structure shall be removed after the shoring is no longer required.*

*All components of the shoring shall have corrosion protection or preservative treatment for their expected duration. Wood components of the temporary shoring that will not be removed shall be treated in accordance with AWPA UI (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B and Section 5.2), and shall be identified in accordance with Section 2303.1.9.*

**1812.3 Surcharge.** *Surcharge pressure due to footings, traffic or other sources shall be considered in the design. If the footing surcharge is located within the semicircular distribution or bulb of earth pressure (when shoring is located close to a footing), lagging shall be designed for lateral earth pressure due to footing surcharge. Soil arching effects may be considered in the design of lagging. Underpinning of the footing may be used in lieu of designing the shoring and lagging for surcharge pressure. Alternatively, continuously contacting drilled pier shafts near the footings shall be permitted. The lateral surcharge design pressure shall be derived using Boussinesq equations modified for the distribution of stresses in an elastic medium due to a uniform, concentrated or line surface load as appropriate and soil arching effects.*

**1812.4 Design and testing.** *Except for the modifications as set forth in Sections 1812.4.1 through 1812.4.3, all Prestressed Rock and Soil Tie-back Anchors shall comply with PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors.*

**1812.4.1 Geotechnical requirements.** *The geotechnical report for the earth retaining shoring shall address the following:*

1. *Minimum diameter and minimum spacing for the anchors including consideration of group effects.*
2. *Maximum unbonded length and minimum bonded length of the tie-back anchors.*
3. *Maximum recommended anchor tension capacity based upon the soil or rock strength/grout bond and anchor depth/spacing.*
4. *Allowable bond stress at the ground/grout interface and applicable factor of safety for ultimate bond stress for the anchor. For permanent anchors, a minimum factor of safety of 2.0 shall be applied to the ground soil interface as required by PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors Section 6.6.*
5. *Minimum grout pressure for installation and post-grout pressure for the anchor. The presumptive post-grout pressure of 300 psi may be used for all soil types.*
6. *Class I corrosion protection is required for all permanent and extended temporary anchors in service more than 2 years. A minimum of Class II corrosion protection is required for temporary anchors in service less than or equal to 2 years.*

7. *Performance test for the anchors shall be at a minimum of two times the design loads and shall not exceed 80 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the anchor rod. A creep test is required for all prestressed anchors that are performance tested. All production anchors shall be tested at 150 percent of design loads and shall not be greater than 70 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the anchor rod.*

8. *Earth pressure, surcharge pressure and the seismic increment of earth pressure loading, when applicable.*

9. *Maximum recommended lateral deformation at the top of the soldier pile, at the tie-back anchor locations and the drilled pier concrete shafts at the lowest grade level.*

10. *Allowable vertical soil bearing pressure, friction resistance and lateral passive soil resistance for the drilled pier concrete shafts and associated factors of safety for these allowable capacities.*

11. *Soil-pier shaft/pile interaction assumptions and lateral soil stiffness to be used in design for drilled pier concrete shaft or pile lateral loads.*

12. *Acceptable drilling methods.*

13. *Geotechnical observation and monitoring recommendations.*

### 1812.4.2 Structural requirements:

1. *Tendons shall be thread-bar anchors conforming to ASTM A722.*
2. *Anchor design loads shall be based upon the load combinations in Section 2.4 of ASCE 7 and shall not exceed 60 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons.*
3. *The anchor shall be designed to fail in grout bond to the soil or rock before pullout of the soil wedge.*
4. *Design of shoring system shall account for as-built locations of soil anchors considering all specified construction tolerances in Section 1812.8*
5. *Design of shoring system shall account for both short- and long-term deformation.*

### 1812.4.3 Testing of tie-back anchors:

1. *The geotechnical engineer shall keep a record at the job site of all test loads and total anchor movement, and report their accuracy.*
2. *If a tie-back anchor initially fails the testing requirements, the anchor shall be permitted to be regrouted and retested. If the anchor continues to fail, the following steps shall be taken:
 
  - a. *The contractor shall determine the cause of failure: (variations of the soil conditions, installation methods, materials, etc.).*
  - b. *The contractor shall propose a solution to remedy the problem. The proposed solution will need to be reviewed and approved by geotechnical engineer, shoring design engineer and the building official.**

3. After a satisfactory test, each anchor shall be locked off in accordance with PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors Section 8.4.
4. The shoring design engineer shall specify design loads for each anchor.

**1812.5 Construction:** The construction procedure shall address the following:

1. Holes drilled for piles/tie-back anchors shall be done without detrimental loss of ground, sloughing or caving of materials and without endangering previously installed shoring members or existing foundations.
2. Drilling of earth anchor shafts for tie-backs shall occur when the drill bench reaches 2 to 3 feet below the level of the tie-back pockets.
3. Casing or other methods shall be used where necessary to prevent loss of ground and collapse of the hole.
4. Drill cuttings from the earth anchor shaft shall be removed prior to anchor installation.
5. Unless tremie methods are used, all water and loose materials shall be removed from the holes prior to installing piles/tie-backs.
6. Tie-back anchor rods with attached centralizing devices shall be installed into the shaft or through the drill casing. Centralizing devices shall not restrict movement of the grout.
7. After lagging installation, voids between lagging and soil shall be backfilled immediately to the full height of lagging.
8. The soldier piles shall be placed within specified tolerances in the drilled hole and braced against displacement during grouting. Fill shafts with concrete up to top of footing elevation, rest of the shaft can generally be filled with lean concrete. Excavation for lagging shall not be started until concrete has achieved sufficient strength for all anticipated loads as determined by the shoring design engineer.
9. Where boulders and/or cobbles have been identified in the geotechnical reports, the contractor shall be prepared to address boulders and/or cobbles that may be encountered during the drilling of soldier piles and tie-back anchors.
10. The grouting equipment shall produce grout free of lumps and indispensed cement. The grouting equipment shall be sized to enable the grout to be pumped in continuous operation. The mixer shall be capable of continuously agitating the grout.
11. The quantity of grout and grout pressure shall be recorded. The grout pressure shall be controlled to prevent excessive heave in soils or fracturing rock formations.
12. If post-grouting is required, post-grouting operation shall be performed after initial grout has set for 24 hours in the bond length only. Tie-backs shall be grouted over a sufficient length (anchor bond length)

to transfer the maximum anchor force to the anchor grout.

13. Testing of anchors may be performed after post-grouting operations, provided that grout has reached a strength of 3,000 psi as required by PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors Section 6.11.
14. Anchor rods shall be tensioned straight and true. Excavation directly below the anchors shall not continue before those anchors are tested.

**1812.6 Inspection, survey monitoring and observation.**

1. The shoring design engineer or his designee shall make periodic inspections of the job site for the purpose of observing the installation of the shoring system, testing of tie-back anchors and monitoring of the survey.
2. Testing, inspection and observation shall be in accordance with testing, inspection and observation requirements approved by the building official. The following activities and materials shall be tested, inspected or observed by the special inspector and geotechnical engineer:
  - a. Sampling and testing of concrete in soldier pile and tie-back anchor shafts.
  - b. Fabrication of tie-back anchor pockets on soldier beams
  - c. Installation and testing of tie-back anchors.
  - d. Survey monitoring of soldier pile and tie-back load cells.
  - e. Survey monitoring of existing buildings.
3. A complete and accurate record of all soldier pile locations, depths, concrete strengths, tie-back locations and lengths, tie-back grout strength, quantity of concrete per pile, quantity of grout per tie-back and applied tie-back loads shall be maintained by the special inspector and geotechnical engineer. The shoring design engineer shall be notified of any unusual conditions encountered during installation.
4. Calibration data for each test jack, pressure gauge and master pressure gauge shall be verified by the special inspector and geotechnical engineer. The calibration tests shall be performed by an independent testing laboratory and within 120 calendar days of the data submitted.
5. Monitoring points shall be established at the top and at the anchor heads of selected soldier piles and at intermediate intervals as considered appropriate by the geotechnical engineer.
6. Control points shall be established outside the area of influence of the shoring system to ensure the accuracy of the monitoring readings.
7. The periodic basis of shoring monitoring, at a minimum, shall be as follows:
  - a. Initial monitoring shall be performed prior to any excavation.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

- b. Once excavation has begun, the periodic readings shall be taken weekly until excavation reaches the estimated subgrade elevation and the permanent foundation is complete.
- c. If performance of the shoring is within established guidelines, shoring design engineer may permit the periodic readings to be biweekly. Once initiated, biweekly readings shall continue until the building slab at ground floor level is completed and capable of transmitting lateral loads to the permanent structure. Thereafter, readings can be monthly.
- d. Where the building has been designed to resist lateral earth pressures, the periodic monitoring of the soldier piles and adjacent structure can be discontinued once the ground floor diaphragm and subterranean portion of the structure is capable of resisting lateral soil loads and approved by the shoring design engineer, geotechnical engineer and the building official.
- e. Additional readings shall be taken when requested by special inspector, shoring design engineer, geotechnical engineer or the building official.
- 8. Monitoring readings shall be submitted to shoring design engineer, engineer in responsible charge, and the building official within 3 working days after they are conducted. Monitoring readings shall be accurate to within 0.01 feet. Results are to be submitted in tabular form showing at least the initial date of monitoring and reading, current monitoring date and reading and difference between the two readings.
- 9. If the total cumulative horizontal or vertical movement (from start of construction) of the existing buildings reaches  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch or soldier piles movement reaches 1 inch all excavation activities shall be suspended. The geotechnical and shoring design engineers shall determine the cause of movement, if any, and recommend corrective measures, if necessary, before excavation continues.
- 10. If the total cumulative horizontal or vertical movement (from start of construction) of the existing buildings reaches  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch or soldier piles movement reaches  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches all excavation activities shall be suspended until the causes, if any, can be determined. Supplemental shoring shall be devised to eliminate further movement and the building official shall review and approve the supplemental shoring before excavation continues.
- 11. Monitoring of tie-back anchor loads:
  - a. Load cells shall be installed at the tie-back heads adjacent to buildings at maximum interval of 50 feet, with a minimum of one load cell per wall.
  - b. Load cell readings shall be taken once a day during excavation and once a week during the remainder of construction.

- c. Load cell readings shall be submitted to the geotechnical engineer, shoring design engineer, engineer in responsible charge and the building official.
- d. Load cell readings can be terminated once the temporary shoring no longer provides support for the buildings.

### 1812.7 Monitoring of existing OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 and 5 structures.

1. The contractor shall complete a written and photographic log of all existing OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5 structures within 100 feet or three times depth of shoring, prior to construction. A licensed surveyor shall document all existing substantial cracks in adjacent existing structures.
2. The contractor shall document the existing condition of wall cracks adjacent to shoring walls prior to start of construction.
3. The contractor shall monitor existing walls for movement or cracking that may result from adjacent shoring.
4. If excessive movement or visible cracking occurs, the contractor shall stop work and shore/reinforce excavation and contact the shoring design engineer and the building official.
5. Monitoring of the existing structure shall be at reasonable intervals as required by the registered design professional, subject to approval of the building official. Monitoring shall be performed by a licensed surveyor and shall consist of vertical and lateral movement of the existing structures. Prior to starting shoring installation a preconstruction meeting shall take place between the contractor, shoring design engineer, surveyor, geotechnical engineer and the building official to identify monitoring locations on existing buildings.
6. If in the opinion of the building official or shoring design engineer, monitoring data indicate excessive movement or other distress, all excavation shall cease until the geotechnical engineer and shoring design engineer investigate the situation and make recommendations for remediation or continuing.
7. All reading and measurements shall be submitted to the building official and shoring design engineer.

### 1812.8 Tolerances. The following tolerances shall be specified on the construction documents.

1. Soldier piles:
  - i. Horizontal and vertical construction tolerances for the soldier pile locations.
  - ii. Soldier pile plumbness requirements (angle with vertical line).
2. Tie-back anchors:
  - i. Allowable deviation of anchor projected angle from specified vertical and horizontal design projected angle.
  - ii. Anchor clearance to the existing/new utilities and structures.

**SECTION 1813**  
**VIBRO STONE COLUMNS FOR GROUND**  
**IMPROVEMENT [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]**

**1813.1 General.** This section shall apply to Vibro Stone Columns (VSCs) for ground improvement using unbound aggregate materials. Vibro stone column provisions in this section are intended to increase bearing capacity, reduce settlements and mitigate liquefaction for shallow foundations. These requirements shall not be used for grouted or bonded stone columns, ground improvement for deep foundation elements or changing site class. VSCs shall not be considered as a deep foundation element.

Ground improvement shall be installed under the entire building/structure footprint and not under isolated foundation elements only.

Design, construction, testing and inspection shall satisfy the requirements of this code except as modified in Sections 1813.2 through 1813.5.

**1813.2 Geotechnical report.** The geotechnical report shall specify vibro stone column requirements to ensure uniformity in total and differential immediate settlement, long-term settlement and earthquake-induced settlement. The report shall address the following:

1. Soil compaction shall be sufficient to mitigate potential for liquefaction as described in California Geological Survey (CGS) Special Publication 117A (SP-117A): Guidelines for Evaluating and Mitigating Seismic Hazard in California.
2. The area replacement ratio for the compaction elements and the basis of its determination shall be explained. Minimum factor of safety for soil compaction shall be in accordance with SP-117A.
3. The depth of soil compaction elements and extent beyond the footprint of structures/foundation shall be defined. Extent beyond the foundation shall be half the depth of the VSCs with a minimum of 10' or an approved alternative.
4. The minimum diameter and maximum spacing of soil compaction elements shall be specified. VSCs shall not be less than 2 feet in diameter and center to center spacing shall not exceed 8 feet.
5. The modulus of subgrade reactions for shallow foundations shall account for the presence of compaction elements.
6. The modulus of subgrade reactions, long-term settlement and post-earthquake settlement shall be specified along with expected total and differential settlements for design.
7. The acceptance criteria for friction cone and piezocene penetration testing in accordance with ASTM D5778 complemented by a standard penetration test (SPT) in accordance with ASTM D1586, if necessary, to verify soil improvement shall be specified

8. The requirements for special inspection and observation by the geotechnical engineer shall be specified.

9. A Final Verified Report (FVR) documenting the installation of the ground improvement system and confirming that the ground improvement acceptance criteria have been met shall be prepared by the geotechnical engineer and submitted to the enforcement agency for review and approval.

**1813.3 Shallow Foundations.** VSCs under the shallow foundation shall be located symmetrically around the centroid of the footing or load, and:

1. There shall be a minimum of four stone columns under each isolated or continuous/combined footing or an approved equivalent.
2. The VSCs or deep foundation elements shall not be used to resist tension or overturning uplift from the shallow foundations.
3. The foundation design for the shallow foundation shall consider the increased vertical stiffness of the VSCs as point supports for analysis, unless it is substantiated that the installation of the VSCs results in improvement of the surrounding soils such that the modulus of sub-grade reaction, long-term settlement and post-earthquake settlement can be considered uniform throughout.

**1813.4 Installation.** VSCs shall be installed with vibratory probes. Vertical columns of compacted unbound aggregate shall be formed through the soils to be improved by adding gravel near the tip of the vibrator and progressively raising and re-penetrating the vibrator, which will results in the gravel being pushed into the surrounding soil.

Gravel aggregate for VSCs shall be well graded with a maximum size of 6 inches and not more than 10 percent smaller than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch after compaction.

**1813.5 Construction Documents.** Construction documents for VSCs, at a minimum, shall include the following:

1. Size, depth and location of VSCs.
2. The extent of soil improvements along with building/structure foundation outlines.
3. Field verification requirements and acceptance criteria using CPT/SPT.
4. The locations where CPT/SPT shall be performed.
5. A Testing, Inspection and Observation (TIO) program indicating the inspection and observation required for the VSCs.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 18A – SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter							X	X	X				X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

*The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †*

*The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.*



# CHAPTER 18A

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

### **SECTION 1801A GENERAL**

**1801A.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall apply to building and foundation systems.

**1801A.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 18A is as follows:*

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety, which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1 (DSA-SS) and 1.9.2.2 (DSA-SS/CC). These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings*
2. *Applications listed in Section 1.10.1 and 1.10.4 regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals and correctional treatment centers.*

**1801A.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. *Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety:*
  - [DSA-SS] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.
  - [DSA-SS/CC] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:*
  - [OSHPD 1] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.
  - [OSHPD 4] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

#### **1801A.1.3 Reference to other chapters.**

**1801A.1.3.1 [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 16A, 19A, 21A and 22A, the provisions in Chapters 16, 19, 21 and 22, respectively shall apply instead as defined in Section 1.9.2.2. Referenced sections may not directly correlate, but the corresponding DSA-SS/CC sections to such references still apply.

### **SECTION 1802A DESIGN BASIS**

**1802A.1 General.** Allowable bearing pressures, allowable stresses and design formulas provided in this chapter shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2. The qual-

ity and design of materials used structurally in excavations and foundations shall comply with the requirements specified in Chapters 16, 19, 21, 22 and 23. Excavations and fills shall comply with Chapter 33.

### **SECTION 1803A GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATIONS**

**1803A.1 General.** Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Section 1803A.2 and reported in accordance with Section 1803A.7. *The classification and investigation of the soil shall be made under the responsible charge of a California registered geotechnical engineer. All recommendations contained in geotechnical and geohazard reports shall be subject to the approval of the enforcement agency. All reports shall be prepared and signed by a registered geotechnical engineer, a certified engineering geologist and a registered geophysicist, where applicable.*

**1803A.2 Investigations required.** Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted in accordance with Sections 1803A.3 through 1803A.6.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. *Geotechnical reports are not required for one-story, wood-frame and light-steel-frame buildings of Type II or Type V construction and 4,000 square feet ( $371\text{ m}^2$ ) or less in floor area, not located within Earthquake Fault Zones or Seismic Hazard Zones as shown in the most recently published maps from the California Geological Survey (CGS) or in seismic hazard zones as defined in the Safety Element of the local General Plan. Allowable foundation and lateral soil pressure values may be determined from Table 1806A.2.*
2. *A previous report for a specific site may be resubmitted, provided that a reevaluation is made and the report is found to be currently appropriate.*

**1803A.3 Basis of investigation.** Soil classification shall be based on observation and any necessary tests of the materials disclosed by borings, test pits or other subsurface exploration made in appropriate locations. Additional studies shall be made as necessary to evaluate slope stability, soil strength, position and adequacy of load-bearing soils, the effect of moisture variation on soil-bearing capacity, compressibility, liquefaction and expansiveness.

**1803A.3.1 Scope of investigation.** The scope of the geotechnical investigation including the number and types of borings or soundings, the equipment used to drill or sample, the in-situ testing equipment and the laboratory testing program shall be determined by a registered design professional.

*There shall not be less than one boring or exploration shaft for each 5,000 square feet ( $465\text{ m}^2$ ) of building area*

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

*at the foundation level with a minimum of two provided for any one building. A boring may be considered to reflect subsurface conditions relevant to more than one building, subject to the approval of the enforcement agency.*

*Borings shall be of sufficient size to permit visual examination of the soil in place or, in lieu thereof, cores shall be taken.*

*Borings shall be of sufficient depth and size to adequately characterize sub-surface conditions.*

**1803A.4 Qualified representative.** The investigation procedure and apparatus shall be in accordance with generally accepted engineering practice. The registered design professional shall have a fully qualified representative on site during all boring or sampling operations.

**1803A.5 Investigated conditions.** Geotechnical investigations shall be conducted as indicated in Sections 1803A.5.1 through 1803A.5.12.

**1803A.5.1 Classification.** Soil materials shall be classified in accordance with ASTM D2487.

**1803A.5.2 Questionable soil.** Where the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil is in doubt or where a load-bearing value superior to that specified in this code is claimed, the building official shall be permitted to require that a geotechnical investigation be conducted.

**1803A.5.3 Expansive soil.** In areas likely to have expansive soil, the building official shall require soil tests to determine where such soils do exist.

Soils meeting all four of the following provisions shall be considered to be expansive, except that tests to show compliance with Items 1, 2 and 3 shall not be required if the test prescribed in Item 4 is conducted:

1. Plasticity index (PI) of 15 or greater, determined in accordance with ASTM D4318.
2. More than 10 percent of the soil particles pass a No.200 sieve ( $75 \mu\text{m}$ ), determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
3. More than 10 percent of the soil particles are less than 5 micrometers in size, determined in accordance with ASTM D422.
4. Expansion index greater than 20, determined in accordance with ASTM D4829.

**1803A.5.4 Ground-water table.** A subsurface soil investigation shall be performed to determine whether the existing ground-water table is above or within 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the lowest floor level where such floor is located below the finished ground level adjacent to the foundation.

**1803A.5.5 Deep foundations.** Where deep foundations will be used, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following, unless sufficient data on which to base the design and installation is otherwise available:

1. Recommended deep foundation types and installed capacities.

2. Recommended center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements.
3. Driving criteria.
4. Installation procedures.
5. Field inspection and reporting procedures (to include procedures for verification of the installed bearing capacity where required).
6. Load test requirements.
7. Suitability of deep foundation materials for the intended environment.
8. Designation of bearing stratum or strata.
9. Reductions for group action, where necessary.

**1803A.5.6 Rock strata.** Where subsurface explorations at the project site indicate variations in the structure of rock on which foundations are to be constructed, a sufficient number of borings shall be drilled to sufficient depths to assess the competency of the rock and its load-bearing capacity.

**1803A.5.7 Excavation near foundations.** Where excavation will reduce support from any foundation, a registered design professional shall prepare an assessment of the structure as determined from examination of the structure, available design documents, available subsurface data, and, if necessary, excavation of test pits. The registered design professional shall determine the requirements for support and protection of any existing foundation and prepare site-specific plans, details and sequence of work for submission. Such support shall be provided by underpinning, bracing, excavation retention systems, or by other means acceptable to the building official.

**1803A.5.8 Compacted fill material.** Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material more than 12 inches (305 mm) in depth, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of compacted fill material.
2. Specifications for material to be used as compacted fill.
3. Test methods to be used to determine the maximum dry density and optimum moisture content of the material to be used as compacted fill.
4. Maximum allowable thickness of each lift of compacted fill material.
5. Field test method for determining the in-place dry density of the compacted fill.
6. Minimum acceptable in-place dry density expressed as a percentage of the maximum dry density determined in accordance with Item 3.
7. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 6.

**1803A.5.9 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM).** Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-strength material (CLSM), a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted and shall include all of the following:

1. Specifications for the preparation of the site prior to placement of the CLSM.
2. Specifications for the CLSM.
3. Laboratory or field test method(s) to be used to determine the compressive strength or bearing capacity of the CLSM.
4. Test methods for determining the acceptance of the CLSM in the field.
5. Number and frequency of field tests required to determine compliance with Item 4.

**1803A.5.10 Alternate setback and clearance.** Where setbacks or clearances other than those required in Section 1808A.7 are desired, the building official shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation by a registered design professional to demonstrate that the intent of Section 1808A.7 would be satisfied. Such an investigation shall include consideration of material, height of slope, slope gradient, load intensity and erosion characteristics of slope material.

**1803A.5.11 Seismic Design Categories C through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, a geotechnical investigation shall be conducted, and shall include an evaluation of all of the following potential geologic and seismic hazards:

1. Slope instability.
2. Liquefaction.
3. Total and differential settlement.
4. Surface displacement due to faulting or seismically induced lateral spreading or lateral flow.

**1803A.5.12 Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the geotechnical investigation required by Section 1803A.5.11 shall include all of the following as applicable:

1. The determination of dynamic seismic lateral earth pressures on foundation walls and retaining walls supporting more than 6 feet (1.83 m) of backfill height due to design earthquake ground motions.
2. The potential for liquefaction and soil strength loss evaluated for site peak ground acceleration, earthquake magnitude and source characteristics consistent with the maximum considered earthquake ground motions. Peak ground acceleration shall be determined based on one of the following:
  - 2.1. A site-specific study in accordance with Chapter 21 of ASCE 7.
  - 2.2. In accordance with Section 11.8.3 of ASCE 7.
3. An assessment of potential consequences of liquefaction and soil strength loss including, but not limited to, the following:

- 3.1. Estimation of total and differential settlement.
- 3.2. Lateral soil movement.
- 3.3. Lateral soil loads on foundations.
- 3.4. Reduction in foundation soil-bearing capacity and lateral soil reaction.
- 3.5. Soil downdrag and reduction in axial and lateral soil reaction for pile foundations.
- 3.6. Increases in soil lateral pressures on retaining walls.
- 3.7. Flotation of buried structures.

4. Discussion of mitigation measures such as, but not limited to, the following:

- 4.1. Selection of appropriate foundation type and depths.
- 4.2. Selection of appropriate structural systems to accommodate anticipated displacements and forces.
- 4.3. Ground stabilization.
- 4.4. Any combination of these measures and how they shall be considered in the design of the structure.

**1803A.6 Geohazard reports.** Geohazard reports shall be required for all proposed construction.

#### Exceptions:

1. Reports are not required for one-story, wood-frame and light-steel-frame buildings of Type II or Type V construction and 4,000 square feet ( $371\text{ m}^2$ ) or less in floor area, not located within Earthquake Fault Zones or Seismic Hazard Zones as shown in the most recently published maps from the California Geological Survey (CGS) or in seismic hazard zones as defined in the Safety Element of the local General Plan; nonstructural, associated structural or voluntary structural alterations, and incidental structural additions or alterations, and structural repairs for other than earthquake damage.
2. A previous report for a specific site may be resubmitted, provided that a reevaluation is made and the report is found to be currently appropriate.

The purpose of the geohazard report shall be to identify geologic and seismic conditions that may require project mitigations. The reports shall contain data which provide an assessment of the nature of the site and potential for earthquake damage based on appropriate investigations of the regional and site geology, project foundation conditions and the potential seismic shaking at the site. The report shall be prepared by a California-certified engineering geologist in consultation with a California-registered geotechnical engineer.

The preparation of the geohazard report shall consider the most recent CGS Note 48: Checklist for the Review of Engineering Geology and Seismology Reports for California Public School, Hospitals, and Essential Services Build-

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

ings. In addition, the most recent version of CGS Special Publication 42, *Fault Rupture Hazard Zones in California*, shall be considered for project sites proposed within an Alquist-Priolo Earthquake Fault Zone. The most recent version of CGS Special Publication 117, *Guidelines for Evaluating and Mitigating Seismic Hazards in California*, shall be considered for project sites proposed within a Seismic Hazard Zone. All conclusions shall be supported by satisfactory data and analysis.

In addition to requirements in Sections 1803A.5.11 and 1803A.5.12, the report shall include, but shall not be limited to, the following:

1. Site geology.
2. Evaluation of the known active and potentially active faults, both regional and local.
3. Ground-motion parameters, as required by Sections 1613A and 1617A, and ASCE 7.

The Next Generation Attenuation West 2 (NGA-West 2) relations used for the 2014 USGS seismic hazards maps for Western United States (WUS) shall be utilized to determine the site-specific ground motion. When supported by data and analysis, and approved by the enforcement agency, other attenuation relations that were not used for the 2014 USGS maps shall be permitted as additions or substitutions. No fewer than three NGA attenuation relations shall be utilized.

**1803A.7 Geotechnical reporting.** Where geotechnical investigations are required, a written report of the investigations shall be submitted to the building official by the permit applicant at the time of permit application. The geotechnical report shall provide completed evaluations of the foundation conditions of the site and the potential geologic/seismic hazards affecting the site. The geotechnical report shall include, but shall not be limited to, site-specific evaluations of design criteria related to the nature and extent of foundation materials, groundwater conditions, liquefaction potential, settlement potential and slope stability. The report shall contain the results of the analyses of problem areas identified in the geohazard report. The geotechnical report shall incorporate estimates of the characteristics of site ground motion provided in the geohazard report. This geotechnical report shall include, but need not be limited to, the following information:

1. A plot showing the location of the soil investigations.
2. A complete record of the soil boring and penetration test logs and soil samples.
3. A record of the soil profile.
4. Elevation of the water table, if encountered. *Historic high ground water elevations shall be addressed in the report to adequately evaluate liquefaction and settlement potential.*
5. Recommendations for foundation type and design criteria, including but not limited to: bearing capacity of natural or compacted soil; provisions to mitigate the effects of expansive soils; mitigation of the effects of liquefaction, differential settlement and varying soil strength; and the effects of adjacent loads.

6. Expected total and differential settlement.
7. Deep foundation information in accordance with Section 1803A.5.5.
8. Special design and construction provisions for foundations of structures founded on expansive soils, as necessary.
9. Compacted fill material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803A.5.8.
10. Controlled low-strength material properties and testing in accordance with Section 1803A.5.9.
11. *The report shall consider the effects of stepped footings addressed in Section 1809A.3.*
12. *The report shall consider the effects of seismic hazards in accordance with Section 1803A.6 and shall incorporate the associated geohazard report.*

**1803A.8 Geotechnical peer review. [DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** When alternate foundations designs or ground improvements are employed or where slope stabilization is required, a qualified peer review by a California-licensed geotechnical engineer, in accordance with Section 322 of Part 10, Title 24, CCR, may be required by the enforcement agency. In Section 322 of Part 10, Title 24, CCR, where reference is made to structural or seismic-resisting system, it shall be replaced with geotechnical, foundation or ground improvement, as appropriate.

## SECTION 1804A EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL

**1804A.1 Excavation near foundations.** Excavation for any purpose shall not reduce vertical or lateral support for any foundation or adjacent foundation without first underpinning or protecting the foundation against detrimental lateral or vertical movement, or both, in accordance with Section 1803A.5.7.

**1804A.2 Underpinning.** Where underpinning is chosen to provide the protection or support of adjacent structures, the underpinning system shall be designed and installed in accordance with provisions of this chapter and Chapter 33.

**1804A.2.1 Underpinning sequencing.** Underpinning shall be installed in a sequential manner that protects the neighboring structure and the working construction site. The sequence of installation shall be identified in the approved construction documents.

**1804A.3 Placement of backfill.** The excavation outside the foundation shall be backfilled with soil that is free of organic material, construction debris, cobbles and boulders or with a controlled low-strength material (CLSM). The backfill shall be placed in lifts and compacted in a manner that does not damage the foundation or the waterproofing or dampproofing material.

**Exception:** CLSM need not be compacted.

**1804A.4 Site grading.** The ground immediately adjacent to the foundation shall be sloped away from the building at a slope of not less than 1 unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) for a minimum distance of 10 feet (3048 mm)

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

measured perpendicular to the face of the wall. If physical obstructions or lot lines prohibit 10 feet (3048 mm) of horizontal distance, a 5-percent slope shall be provided to an approved alternative method of diverting water away from the foundation. Swales used for this purpose shall be sloped not less than 2 percent where located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation. Impervious surfaces within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the building foundation shall be sloped not less than 2 percent away from the building.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where climatic or soil conditions warrant, the slope of the ground away from the building foundation shall be permitted to be reduced to not less than 1 unit vertical in 48 units horizontal (2-percent slope).
2. Impervious surfaces shall be permitted to be sloped less than 2 percent where the surface is a door landing or ramp that is required to comply with Section 1010A.1.4, 1012A.3 or 1012A.6.1.

The procedure used to establish the final ground level adjacent to the foundation shall account for additional settlement of the backfill.

**1804A.5 Grading and fill in flood hazard areas.** In flood hazard areas established in Section 1612A.3, grading, fill, or both, shall not be approved:

1. Unless such fill is placed, compacted and sloped to minimize shifting, slumping and erosion during the rise and fall of flood water and, as applicable, wave action.
2. In floodways, unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed by a registered design professional in accordance with standard engineering practice that the proposed grading or fill, or both, will not result in any increase in flood levels during the occurrence of the design flood.
3. In coastal high hazard areas, unless such fill is conducted or placed to avoid diversion of water and waves toward any building or structure.
4. Where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated, unless it has been demonstrated that the cumulative effect of the proposed flood hazard area encroachment, when combined with all other existing and anticipated flood hazard area encroachment, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point.

**1804A.6 Compacted fill material.** Where shallow foundations will bear on compacted fill material, the compacted fill shall comply with the provisions of an approved geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803A.

**Exception:** Compacted fill material 12 inches (305 mm) in depth or less need not comply with an approved report, provided that the in-place dry density is not less than 90 percent of the maximum dry density at optimum moisture content determined in accordance with ASTM D1557. The compaction shall be verified by special inspection in accordance with Section 1705A.6.

**1804A.7 Controlled low-strength material (CLSM).** Where shallow foundations will bear on controlled low-

strength material (CLSM), the CLSM shall comply with the provisions of an approved geotechnical report, as set forth in Section 1803A.

## SECTION 1805A DAMPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING

**1805A.1 General.** Walls or portions thereof that retain earth and enclose interior spaces and floors below grade shall be waterproofed and damproofed in accordance with this section, with the exception of those spaces containing groups other than residential and institutional where such omission is not detrimental to the building or occupancy.

Ventilation for crawl spaces shall comply with Section 1202.4.

**1805A.1.1 Story above grade plane.** Where a basement is considered a story above grade plane and the finished ground level adjacent to the basement wall is below the basement floor elevation for 25 percent or more of the perimeter, the floor and walls shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805A.2 and a foundation drain shall be installed in accordance with Section 1805A.4.2. The foundation drain shall be installed around the portion of the perimeter where the basement floor is below ground level. The provisions of Sections 1803A.5.4, 1805A.3 and 1805A.4.1 shall not apply in this case.

**1805A.1.2 Under-floor space.** The finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall not be located below the bottom of the footings. Where there is evidence that the ground-water table rises to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the ground level at the outside building perimeter, or that the surface water does not readily drain from the building site, the ground level of the under-floor space shall be as high as the outside finished ground level, unless an approved drainage system is provided. The provisions of Sections 1803A.5.4, 1805A.2, 1805A.3 and 1805A.4 shall not apply in this case.

**1805A.1.2.1 Flood hazard areas.** For buildings and structures in flood hazard areas as established in Section 1612.3, the finished ground level of an under-floor space such as a crawl space shall be equal to or higher than the outside finished ground level on one side or more.

**Exception:** Under-floor spaces of Group R-3 buildings that meet the requirements of FEMA TB 11.

**1805A.1.3 Ground-water control.** Where the ground-water table is lowered and maintained at an elevation not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the bottom of the lowest floor, the floor and walls shall be dampproofed in accordance with Section 1805A.2. The design of the system to lower the ground-water table shall be based on accepted principles of engineering that shall consider, but not necessarily be limited to, permeability of the soil, rate at which water enters the drainage system, rated capacity of pumps, head against which pumps are to operate and the rated capacity of the disposal area of the system.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1805A.2 Damproofing.** Where hydrostatic pressure will not occur as determined by Section 1803A.5.4, floors and walls shall be damproofed in accordance with this section.

**1805A.2.1 Floors.** Damproofing materials for floors shall be installed between the floor and the base course required by Section 1805A.4.1, except where a separate floor is provided above a concrete slab.

Where installed beneath the slab, damproofing shall consist of not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm), or other approved methods or materials. Where permitted to be installed on top of the slab, damproofing shall consist of mopped-on bitumen, not less than 4-mil (0.004 inch; 0.102 mm) polyethylene, or other approved methods or materials. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1805A.2.2 Walls.** Damproofing materials for walls shall be installed on the exterior surface of the wall, and shall extend from the top of the footing to above ground level.

Damproofing shall consist of a bituminous material, 3 pounds per square yard ( $16 \text{ N/m}^2$ ) of acrylic modified cement,  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) coat of surface-bonding mortar complying with ASTM C887, any of the materials permitted for waterproofing by Section 1805A.3.2 or other approved methods or materials.

**1805A.2.2.1 Surface preparation of walls.** Prior to application of damproofing materials on concrete walls, holes and recesses resulting from the removal of form ties shall be sealed with a bituminous material or other approved methods or materials. Unit masonry walls shall be parged on the exterior surface below ground level with not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) of Portland cement mortar. The parging shall be coved at the footing.

**Exception:** Parging of unit masonry walls is not required where a material is approved for direct application to the masonry.

**1805A.3 Waterproofing.** Where the ground-water investigation required by Section 1803A.5.4 indicates that a hydrostatic pressure condition exists, and the design does not include a ground-water control system as described in Section 1805A.1.3, walls and floors shall be waterproofed in accordance with this section.

**1805A.3.1 Floors.** Floors required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete and designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures to which the floors will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be accomplished by placing a membrane of rubberized asphalt, butyl rubber, fully adhered/fully bonded HDPE or polyolefin composite membrane or not less than 6-mil [0.006 inch (0.152 mm)] polyvinyl chloride with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) or other approved materials under the slab. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1805A.3.2 Walls.** Walls required to be waterproofed shall be of concrete or masonry and shall be designed and constructed to withstand the hydrostatic pressures and other lateral loads to which the walls will be subjected.

Waterproofing shall be applied from the bottom of the wall to not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the maximum elevation of the ground-water table. The remainder of the wall shall be damproofed in accordance with Section 1805A.2.2. Waterproofing shall consist of two-ply hot-mopped felts, not less than 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyvinyl chloride, 40-mil (0.040 inch; 1.02 mm) polymer-modified asphalt, 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.152 mm) polyethylene or other approved methods or materials capable of bridging nonstructural cracks. Joints in the membrane shall be lapped and sealed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**1805A.3.2.1 Surface preparation of walls.** Prior to the application of waterproofing materials on concrete or masonry walls, the walls shall be prepared in accordance with Section 1805A.2.2.1.

**1805A.3.3 Joints and penetrations.** Joints in walls and floors, joints between the wall and floor and penetrations of the wall and floor shall be made watertight utilizing approved methods and materials.

**1805A.4 Subsoil drainage system.** Where a hydrostatic pressure condition does not exist, damproofing shall be provided and a base shall be installed under the floor and a drain installed around the foundation perimeter. A subsoil drainage system designed and constructed in accordance with Section 1805A.1.3 shall be deemed adequate for lowering the ground-water table.

**1805A.4.1 Floor base course.** Floors of basements, except as provided for in Section 1805A.1.1, shall be placed over a floor base course not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10 percent of material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

**Exception:** Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a floor base course is not required.

**1805A.4.2 Foundation drain.** A drain shall be placed around the perimeter of a foundation that consists of gravel or crushed stone containing not more than 10-percent material that passes through a No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve. The drain shall extend not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the outside edge of the footing. The thickness shall be such that the bottom of the drain is not higher than the bottom of the base under the floor, and that the top of the drain is not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of the footing. The top of the drain shall be covered with an approved filter membrane material. Where a drain tile or perforated pipe is used, the invert of the pipe or tile shall not be higher than the floor elevation. The top of joints or the top of perforations shall be protected with an approved filter membrane material. The pipe or tile shall be placed on not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of gravel or crushed stone complying with Section 1805A.4.1, and

shall be covered with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) of the same material.

**1805A.4.3 Drainage discharge.** The floor base and foundation perimeter drain shall discharge by gravity or mechanical means into an approved drainage system that complies with the *California Plumbing Code*.

**Exception:** Where a site is located in well-drained gravel or sand/gravel mixture soils, a dedicated drainage system is not required.

## SECTION 1806A PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES OF SOILS

**1806A.1 Load combinations.** The presumptive load-bearing values provided in Table 1806A.2 shall be used with the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605A.2. The values of vertical foundation pressure and lateral bearing pressure given in Table 1806A.2 shall be permitted to be increased by one-third where used with the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605A.2 that include wind or earthquake loads.

**1806A.2 Presumptive load-bearing values.** The load-bearing values used in design for supporting soils near the surface shall not exceed the values specified in Table 1806A.2 unless data to substantiate the use of higher values are submitted and approved. Where the building official has reason to doubt the classification, strength or compressibility of the soil, the requirements of Section 1803A.5.2 shall be satisfied.

Presumptive load-bearing values shall apply to materials with similar physical characteristics and dispositions. Mud, organic silt, organic clays, peat or unprepared fill shall not be assumed to have a presumptive load-bearing capacity unless data to substantiate the use of such a value are submitted.

**Exception:** A presumptive load-bearing capacity shall be permitted to be used where the building official deems the load-bearing capacity of mud, organic silt or unprepared

fill is adequate for the support of lightweight or temporary structures.

**1806A.3 Lateral load resistance.** Where the presumptive values of Table 1806A.2 are used to determine resistance to lateral loads, the calculations shall be in accordance with Sections 1806A.3.1 through 1806A.3.4.

**1806A.3.1 Combined resistance.** The total resistance to lateral loads shall be permitted to be determined by combining the values derived from the lateral bearing pressure and the lateral sliding resistance specified in Table 1806A.2.

**1806A.3.2 Lateral sliding resistance limit.** For clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt, the lateral sliding resistance shall not exceed one-half the dead load.

**1806A.3.3 Increase for depth.** The lateral bearing pressures specified in Table 1806A.2 shall be permitted to be increased by the tabular value for each additional foot (305 mm) of depth to a value that is not greater than 15 times the tabular value.

**1806A.3.4 Increase for poles.** Isolated poles for uses such as flagpoles or signs and poles used to support buildings that are not adversely affected by a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) motion at the ground surface due to short-term lateral loads shall be permitted to be designed using lateral bearing pressures equal to two times the tabular values.

## SECTION 1807A FOUNDATION WALLS, RETAINING WALLS AND EMBEDDED POSTS AND POLES

**1807A.1 Foundation walls.** Foundation walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1807A.1.1 through 1807A.1.6. Foundation walls shall be supported by foundations designed in accordance with Section 1808A.

**1807A.1.1 Design lateral soil loads.** Foundation walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads *determined by a geotechnical investigation, in accordance with Section 1803A.*

**TABLE 1806A.2  
PRESUMPTIVE LOAD-BEARING VALUES**

CLASS OF MATERIALS	VERTICAL FOUNDATION PRESSURE (psf)	LATERAL BEARING PRESSURE (psf/ft below natural grade)	LATERAL SLIDING RESISTANCE	
			Coefficient of friction <sup>a</sup>	Cohesion (psf) <sup>b</sup>
1. Crystalline bedrock	12,000	1,200	0.70	—
2. Sedimentary and foliated rock	4,000	400	0.35	—
3. Sandy gravel and gravel (GW and GP)	3,000	200	0.35	—
4. Sand, silty sand, clayey sand, silty gravel and clayey gravel (SW, SP, SM, SC, GM and GC)	2,000	150	0.25	—
5. Clay, sandy clay, silty clay, clayey silt, silt and sandy silt (CL, ML, MH and CH)	1,500	100	—	130

For SI: 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479kPa, 1 pound per square foot per foot = 0.157 kPa/m.

a. Coefficient to be multiplied by the dead load.

b. Cohesion value to be multiplied by the contact area, as limited by Section 1806A.3.2.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1807A.1.2 Unbalanced backfill height.** Unbalanced backfill height is the difference in height between the exterior finish ground level and the lower of the top of the concrete footing that supports the foundation wall or the interior finish ground level. Where an interior concrete slab on grade is provided and is in contact with the interior surface of the foundation wall, the unbalanced backfill height shall be permitted to be measured from the exterior finish ground level to the top of the interior concrete slab.

→ **1807A.1.3 Rubble stone foundation walls.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

→ **1807A.1.4 Permanent wood foundation systems.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

→ **1807A.1.5 Concrete and masonry foundation walls.** Concrete and masonry foundation walls shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 19A or 21A, as applicable.

→ **1807A.2 Retaining walls.** Retaining walls shall be designed in accordance with Sections 1807A.2.1 through 1807A.2.4. *Freestanding cantilever walls shall be designed in accordance with Section 1807A.2.5.*

**1807A.2.1 General.** Retaining walls shall be designed to ensure stability against overturning, sliding, excessive foundation pressure and water uplift.

→ **1807A.2.2 Design lateral soil loads.** Retaining walls shall be designed for the lateral soil loads *determined by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803A and shall not be less than eighty percent of the lateral soil loads determined in accordance with Section 1610A. For use with the load combinations, lateral soil loads due to gravity loads surcharge shall be considered gravity loads and seismic earth pressure increases due to earthquake shall be considered as seismic loads.* For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F, the design of retaining walls supporting more than 6 feet (1829 mm) of backfill height shall incorporate the additional seismic lateral earth pressure in accordance with the geotechnical investigation where required in Section 1803A.2.

**1807A.2.3 Safety factor.** Retaining walls shall be designed to resist the lateral action of soil to produce sliding and overturning with a minimum safety factor of 1.5 in each case. The load combinations of Section 1605A shall not apply to this requirement. Instead, design shall be based on 0.7 times nominal earthquake loads, 1.0 times other nominal loads, and investigation with one or more of the variable loads set to zero. The safety factor against lateral sliding shall be taken as the available soil resistance at the base of the retaining wall foundation divided by the net lateral force applied to the retaining wall.

**Exception:** Where earthquake loads are included, the minimum safety factor for retaining wall sliding and overturning shall be 1.1.

**1807A.2.4 Segmental retaining walls.** Dry-cast concrete units used in the construction of segmental retaining walls shall comply with ASTM C1372.

**1807A.2.5 Freestanding cantilever walls.** Freestanding cantilever walls shall comply with Section 15.6.8 of ASCE 7. [OSHPD 1 & 4]. A stability check against the possibility of overturning shall be performed for isolated spread footings which support freestanding cantilever walls. The allowable soil pressure may be doubled for this evaluation.

**Exception [OSHPD 1 & 4]:** For overturning about the principal axis of rectangular footings with symmetrical vertical loading and the design lateral force applied, a triangular or trapezoidal soil pressure distribution which covers the full width of the footing will meet the stability requirement.

**1807A.3 Embedded posts and poles.** Designs to resist both axial and lateral loads employing posts or poles as columns embedded in earth or in concrete footings in earth shall be in accordance with Sections 1807A.3.1 through 1807A.3.3.

**1807A.3.1 Limitations.** The design procedures outlined in this section are subject to the following limitations:

1. The frictional resistance for structural walls and slabs on silts and clays shall be limited to one-half of the normal force imposed on the soil by the weight of the footing or slab.
2. Posts embedded in earth shall not be used to provide lateral support for structural or nonstructural materials such as plaster, masonry or concrete unless bracing is provided that develops the limited deflection required.

Wood poles shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for sawn timber posts (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) and for round timber posts (Commodity Specification B, Use Category 4B).

**1807A.3.2 Design criteria.** The depth to resist lateral loads shall be determined using the design criteria established in Sections 1807A.3.2.1 through 1807A.3.2.3, or by other methods approved by the building official.

**1807A.3.2.1 Nonconstrained.** The following formula shall be used in determining the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where lateral constraint is not provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or rigid ground surface pavement, and where lateral constraint is not provided above the ground surface, such as by a structural diaphragm.

$$d = 0.5A\{1 + [1 + (4.36h/A)]^{1/2}\} \quad (\text{Equation 18A-1})$$

where:

$$A = 2.34P/(S_1 b)$$

$b$  = Diameter of round post or footing or diagonal dimension of square post or footing, feet (m).

$d$  = Depth of embedment in earth in feet (m) but not over 12 feet (3658 mm) for purpose of computing lateral pressure.

$h$  = Distance in feet (m) from ground surface to point of application of " $P$ ".

$P$  = Applied lateral force in pounds (kN).

$S_1$  = Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806A.2 based on a depth of one-third the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (psf) (kPa).

**1807A.3.2.2 Constrained.** The following formula shall be used to determine the depth of embedment required to resist lateral loads where lateral constraint is provided at the ground surface, such as by a rigid floor or pavement.

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{4.25Ph}{S_3b}} \quad (\text{Equation 18A-2})$$

or alternatively

$$d = \sqrt{\frac{4.25M_g}{S_3b}} \quad (\text{Equation 18A-3})$$

where:

$M_g$  = Moment in the post at grade, in foot-pounds (kN-m).

$S_3$  = Allowable lateral soil-bearing pressure as set forth in Section 1806A.2 based on a depth equal to the depth of embedment in pounds per square foot (kPa).

**1807A.3.2.3 Vertical load.** The resistance to vertical loads shall be determined using the vertical foundation pressure set forth in Table 1806A.2.

**1807A.3.3 Backfill.** The backfill in the annular space around columns not embedded in poured footings shall be by one of the following methods:

1. Backfill shall be of concrete with a specified compressive strength of not less than 2,000 psi (13.8 MPa). The hole shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diameter of the column at its bottom or 4 inches (102 mm) larger than the diagonal dimension of a square or rectangular column.
2. Backfill shall be of clean sand. The sand shall be thoroughly compacted by tamping in layers not more than 8 inches (203 mm) in depth.
3. Backfill shall be of controlled low-strength material (CLSM).

## SECTION 1808A FOUNDATIONS

**1808A.1 General.** Foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1808A.2 through 1808A.9. Shallow foundations shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1809A. Deep foundations shall satisfy the requirements of Section 1810A.

**1808A.2 Design for capacity and settlement.** Foundations shall be so designed that the allowable bearing capacity of the soil is not exceeded, and that differential settlement is mini-

mized. Foundations in areas with expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Section 1808A.6.

*The enforcing agency may require an analysis of foundation elements to determine subgrade deformations in order to evaluate their effect on the superstructure, including story drift.*

**1808A.3 Design loads.** Foundations shall be designed for the most unfavorable effects due to the combinations of loads specified in Section 2.3 or 2.4 of ASCE 7 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605.2. The dead load is permitted to include the weight of foundations and overlying fill. Reduced live loads, as specified in Sections 1607A.12 and 1607A.14, shall be permitted to be used in the design of foundations.

**1808A.3.1 Seismic overturning.** Where foundations are proportioned using the load combinations of Section 2.3 or 2.4 of ASCE 7 and the computation of seismic overturning effects is by equivalent lateral force analysis or modal analysis, the proportioning shall be in accordance with Section 12.13.4 of ASCE 7.

**1808A.3.2 Surcharge.** Fill or other surcharge loads shall not be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or the surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that will be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against detrimental lateral or vertical movement or both.

**Exception:** Minor grading for landscaping purposes shall be permitted where done with walk-behind equipment, where the grade is not increased more than 1 foot (305 mm) from original design grade or where approved by the building official.

**1808A.4 Vibratory loads.** Where machinery operations or other vibrations are transmitted through the foundation, consideration shall be given in the foundation design to prevent detrimental disturbances of the soil.

**1808A.5 Shifting or moving soils.** Where it is known that the shallow subsoils are of a shifting or moving character, foundations shall be carried to a sufficient depth to ensure stability.

**1808A.6 Design for expansive soils.** Foundations for buildings and structures founded on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with Section 1808A.6.1 or 1808A.6.2.

**Exceptions:** Foundation design need not comply with Section 1808A.6.1 or 1808A.6.2 where one of the following conditions is satisfied:

1. The soil is removed in accordance with Section 1808A.6.3.
2. The building official approves stabilization of the soil in accordance with Section 1808A.6.4.

**1808A.6.1 Foundations.** Foundations placed on or within the active zone of expansive soils shall be designed to resist differential volume changes and to prevent structural

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

damage to the supported structure. Deflection and racking of the supported structure shall be limited to that which will not interfere with the usability and serviceability of the structure.

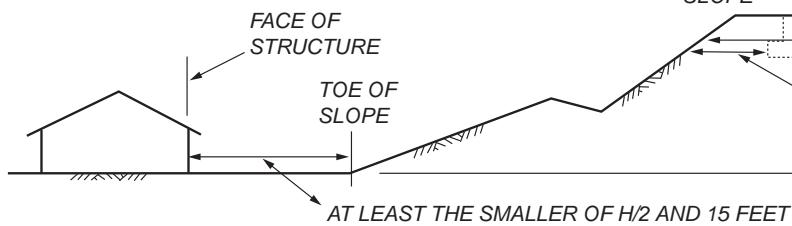
Foundations placed below where volume change occurs or below expansive soil shall comply with the following provisions:

1. Foundations extending into or penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to prevent uplift of the supported structure.
2. Foundations penetrating expansive soils shall be designed to resist forces exerted on the foundation due to soil volume changes or shall be isolated from the expansive soil.

**1808A.6.2 Slab-on-ground foundations.** Moments, shears and deflections for use in designing slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be determined in accordance with WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations or PTI DC 10.5. Using the moments, shears and deflections determined above, nonprestressed slabs-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with WRI/CRSI Design of Slab-on-Ground Foundations and post-tensioned slab-on-ground, mat or raft foundations on expansive soils shall be designed in accordance with PTI DC 10.5. It shall be permitted to analyze and design such slabs by other methods that account for soil-structure interaction, the deformed shape of the soil support, the plate or stiffened plate action of the slab as well as both center lift and edge lift conditions. Such alternative methods shall be rational and the basis for all aspects and parameters of the method shall be available for peer review.

**1808A.6.3 Removal of expansive soil.** Where expansive soil is removed in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808A.6.1 or 1808A.6.2, the soil shall be removed to a depth sufficient to ensure a constant moisture content in the remaining soil. Fill material shall not contain expansive soils and shall comply with Section 1804A.5 or 1804A.6.

**Exception:** Expansive soil need not be removed to the depth of constant moisture, provided that the confining pressure in the expansive soil created by the fill and supported structure exceeds the swell pressure.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 1808A.7.1  
FOUNDATION CLEARANCES FROM SLOPES**

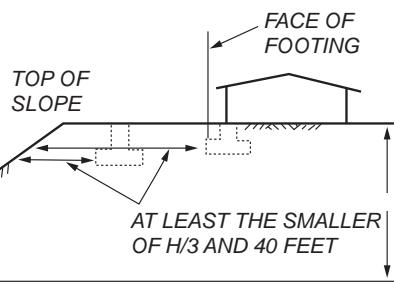
**1808A.6.4 Stabilization.** Where the active zone of expansive soils is stabilized in lieu of designing foundations in accordance with Section 1808A.6.1 or 1808A.6.2, the soil shall be stabilized by chemical, dewatering, presaturation or equivalent techniques.

**1808A.7 Foundations on or adjacent to slopes.** The placement of buildings and structures on or adjacent to slopes steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33.3-percent slope) shall comply with Sections 1808A.7.1 through 1808A.7.5.

**1808A.7.1 Building clearance from ascending slopes.** In general, buildings below slopes shall be set a sufficient distance from the slope to provide protection from slope drainage, erosion and shallow failures. Except as provided in Section 1808A.7.5 and Figure 1808A.7.1, the following criteria will be assumed to provide this protection. Where the existing slope is steeper than one unit vertical in one unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the toe of the slope shall be assumed to be at the intersection of a horizontal plane drawn from the top of the foundation and a plane drawn tangent to the slope at an angle of 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal. Where a retaining wall is constructed at the toe of the slope, the height of the slope shall be measured from the top of the wall to the top of the slope.

**1808A.7.2 Foundation setback from descending slope surface.** Foundations on or adjacent to slope surfaces shall be founded in firm material with an embedment and set back from the slope surface sufficient to provide vertical and lateral support for the foundation without detrimental settlement. Except as provided for in Section 1808A.7.5 and Figure 1808A.7.1, the following setback is deemed adequate to meet the criteria. Where the slope is steeper than 1 unit vertical in 1 unit horizontal (100-percent slope), the required setback shall be measured from an imaginary plane 45 degrees (0.79 rad) to the horizontal, projected upward from the toe of the slope.

**1808A.7.3 Pools.** The setback between pools regulated by this code and slopes shall be equal to one-half the building footing setback distance required by this section. That portion of the pool wall within a horizontal distance of 7 feet (2134 mm) from the top of the slope shall be capable of supporting the water in the pool without soil support.



**1808A.7.4 Foundation elevation.** On graded sites, the top of any exterior foundation shall extend above the elevation of the street gutter at point of discharge or the inlet of an approved drainage device not less than 12 inches (305 mm) plus 2 percent. Alternate elevations are permitted subject to the approval of the building official, provided that it can be demonstrated that required drainage to the point of discharge and away from the structure is provided at all locations on the site.

**1808A.7.5 Alternate setback and clearance.** Alternate setbacks and clearances are permitted, subject to the approval of the building official. The building official shall be permitted to require a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803A.5.10.

**1808A.8 Concrete foundations.** The design, materials and construction of concrete foundations shall comply with Sections 1808A.8.1 through 1808A.8.6 and the provisions of Chapter 19A.

**1808A.8.1 Concrete or grout strength and mix proportioning.** Concrete or grout in foundations shall have a specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ) not less than the largest applicable value indicated in Table 1808A.8.1.

Where concrete or grout is to be pumped, the mix design including slump shall be adjusted to produce a pumpable mixture.

**1808A.8.2 Concrete cover.** The concrete cover provided for prestressed and nonprestressed reinforcement in foundations shall be not less than the largest applicable value specified in Table 1808A.8.2. Longitudinal bars spaced less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) clear distance apart shall be considered to be bundled bars for which the concrete cover provided shall be not less than that required by Section 20.5.1.3.5 of ACI 318. Concrete cover shall be measured from the concrete surface to the outermost surface of the steel to which the cover requirement applies. Where concrete is placed in a temporary or permanent casing or a mandrel, the inside face of the casing or mandrel shall be considered to be the concrete surface.

**1808A.8.3 Placement of concrete.** Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to ensure the exclusion of any foreign matter and to secure a full-size foundation. Concrete shall not be placed through water unless a tremie or other method approved by the building official is used. Where placed under or in the presence of water, the concrete shall be deposited by approved means to ensure minimum segregation of the mix and negligible turbulence of the water. Where depositing concrete from the top of a deep foundation element, the concrete shall be chuted directly into smooth-sided pipes or tubes or placed in a rapid and continuous operation through a funnel hopper centered at the top of the element.

**TABLE 1808A.8.1  
MINIMUM SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH  $f'_c$  OF CONCRETE OR GROUT**

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	SPECIFIED COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH, $f'_c$
1. Foundations for structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F	3,000 psi
2. Precast nonprestressed driven piles	4,000 psi
3. Socketed drilled shafts	4,000 psi
4. Micropiles	4,000 psi
5. Precast prestressed driven piles	5,000 psi

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

**TABLE 1808A.8.2  
MINIMUM CONCRETE COVER**

FOUNDATION ELEMENT OR CONDITION	MINIMUM COVER
1. Shallow foundations	In accordance with Section 20.5 of ACI 318
2. Precast nonprestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Not manufactured under plant conditions Manufactured under plant control conditions	3 inches 2 inches In accordance with Section 20.5.1.3.3 of ACI 318
3. Precast prestressed deep foundation elements Exposed to seawater Other	2.5 inches In accordance with Section 20.5.1.3.3 of ACI 318
4. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements not enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2.5 inches
5. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements enclosed by a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	1 inch
6. Structural steel core within a steel pipe, tube or permanent casing	2 inches
7. Cast-in-place drilled shafts enclosed by a stable rock socket	1.5 inches

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1808A.8.4 Protection of concrete.** Concrete foundations shall be protected from freezing during depositing and for a period of not less than 5 days thereafter. Water shall not be allowed to flow through the deposited concrete.

**1808A.8.5 Forming of concrete.** Concrete foundations are permitted to be cast against the earth where, in the opinion of the building official, soil conditions do not require formwork. Where formwork is required, it shall be in accordance with Section 26.11 of ACI 318.

**1808A.8.6 Seismic requirements.** See Section 1905A for additional requirements for foundations of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, provisions of Section 18.13 of ACI 318 shall apply where not in conflict with the provisions of Sections 1808A through 1810A.

→ **1808A.9 Vertical masonry foundation elements.** Vertical masonry foundation elements that are not foundation piers as defined in Section 202 shall be designed as piers, walls or columns, as applicable, in accordance with TMS 402.

## SECTION 1809A SHALLOW FOUNDATIONS

**1809A.1 General.** Shallow foundations shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 1809A.2 through 1809A.13.

**1809A.2 Supporting soils.** Shallow foundations shall be built on undisturbed soil, compacted fill material or controlled low-strength material (CLSM). Compacted fill material shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804A.5. CLSM shall be placed in accordance with Section 1804A.6.

**1809A.3 Stepped footings.** The top surface of footings shall be level. The bottom surface of footings shall be permitted to have a slope not exceeding 1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope). Footings shall be stepped where it is necessary to change the elevation of the top surface of the footing or where the surface of the ground slopes more than 1 unit vertical in 10 units horizontal (10-percent slope).

*Individual steps in continuous footings shall not exceed 18 inches (457 mm) in height and the slope of a series of such steps shall not exceed 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50 percent slope) unless otherwise recommended by a geotechnical report. The steps shall be detailed on the drawings. The local effects due to the discontinuity of the steps shall be considered in the design of the foundation.*

**1809A.4 Depth and width of footings.** The minimum depth of footings below the undisturbed ground surface shall be 12 inches (305 mm). Where applicable, the requirements of Section 1809A.5 shall be satisfied. The minimum width of footings shall be 12 inches (305 mm).

**1809A.5 Frost protection.** Except where otherwise protected from frost, foundations and other permanent supports of buildings and structures shall be protected from frost by one or more of the following methods:

1. Extending below the frost line of the locality.

2. Constructing in accordance with ASCE 32.

3. Erecting on solid rock.

**Exception:** Free-standing buildings meeting all of the following conditions shall not be required to be protected:

1. Assigned to Risk Category I.
2. Area of 600 square feet ( $56 \text{ m}^2$ ) or less for light-frame construction or 400 square feet ( $37 \text{ m}^2$ ) or less for other than light-frame construction.
3. Eave height of 10 feet (3048 mm) or less.

Shallow foundations shall not bear on frozen soil unless such frozen condition is of a permanent character.

**1809A.5.1 Frost protection at required exits.** Frost protection shall be provided at exterior landings for all required exits with outward-swinging doors. Frost protection shall only be required to the extent necessary to ensure the unobstructed opening of the required exit doors.

**1809A.6 Location of footings.** Footings on granular soil shall be so located that the line drawn between the lower edges of adjoining footings shall not have a slope steeper than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) with the horizontal, unless the material supporting the higher footing is braced or retained or otherwise laterally supported in an approved manner or a greater slope has been properly established by engineering analysis.

**1809A.7 Prescriptive footings for light-frame construction.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

**1809A.8 Plain concrete footings.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

**1809A.9 Masonry-unit footings.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

**1809A.10 Pier and curtain wall foundations.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

**1809A.11 Steel grillage footings.** Grillage footings of structural steel elements shall be separated with approved steel spacers and be entirely encased in concrete with not less than 6 inches (152 mm) on the bottom and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) at all other points. The spaces between the shapes shall be completely filled with concrete or cement grout.

**1809A.12 Timber footings.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

**1809A.13 Footing seismic ties.** Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, individual spread footings founded on soil defined in Chapter 20 of ASCE 7 as Site Class E or F shall be interconnected by ties. Unless it is demonstrated that equivalent restraint is provided by reinforced concrete beams within slabs on grade or reinforced concrete slabs on grade, ties shall be capable of carrying, in tension or compression, a force equal to the lesser of the product of the larger footing design gravity load times the seismic coefficient,  $S_{DS}$ , divided by 10 and 25 percent of the smaller footing design gravity load.

**1809A.14 Pipes and trenches.** Unless otherwise recommended by the soils report, open or backfilled trenches parallel with a footing shall not be below a plane having a downward slope of 1 unit vertical to 2 units horizontal (50

*percent slope) from a line 9 inches (229 mm) above the bottom edge of the footing, and not closer than 18 inches (457 mm) from the face of such footing.*

*Where pipes cross under footings, the footings shall be specially designed. Pipe sleeves shall be provided where pipes cross through footings or footing walls and sleeve clearances shall provide for possible footing settlement, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) all around pipe.*

**Exception:** *Alternate trench locations and pipe clearances shall be permitted when approved by registered design professional in responsible charge and the enforcement agent.*

> || **1809A.15 Grade beams. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** *Where grade beams in shallow foundations are provided, they shall comply with Section 1810A.3.12.*

## SECTION 1810A DEEP FOUNDATIONS

**1810A.1 General.** Deep foundations shall be analyzed, designed, detailed and installed in accordance with Sections 1810A.1 through 1810A.4.

**1810A.1.1 Geotechnical investigation.** Deep foundations shall be designed and installed on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as set forth in Section 1803A.

**1810A.1.2 Use of existing deep foundation elements.** Deep foundation elements left in place where a structure has been demolished shall not be used for the support of new construction unless satisfactory evidence is submitted to the building official, which indicates that the elements are sound and meet the requirements of this code. Such elements shall be load tested or redriven to verify their capacities. The design load applied to such elements shall be the lowest allowable load as determined by tests or redriving data.

**1810A.1.3 Deep foundation elements classified as columns.** Deep foundation elements standing unbraced in air, water or fluid soils shall be classified as columns and designed as such in accordance with the provisions of this code from their top down to the point where adequate lateral support is provided in accordance with Section 1810A.2.1.

**Exception:** Where the unsupported height to least horizontal dimension of a cast-in-place deep foundation element does not exceed three, it shall be permitted to design and construct such an element as a pedestal in accordance with ACI 318.

**1810A.1.4 Special types of deep foundations.** The use of types of deep foundation elements not specifically mentioned herein is permitted, subject to the approval of the building official, upon the submission of acceptable test data, calculations and other information relating to the structural properties and load capacity of such elements. The allowable stresses for materials shall not in any case exceed the limitations specified herein.

**1810A.2 Analysis.** The analysis of deep foundations for design shall be in accordance with Sections 1810A.2.1 through 1810A.2.5.

**1810A.2.1 Lateral support.** Any soil other than fluid soil shall be deemed to afford sufficient lateral support to prevent buckling of deep foundation elements and to permit the design of the elements in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the applicable provisions of this code.

Where deep foundation elements stand unbraced in air, water or fluid soils, it shall be permitted to consider them laterally supported at a point 5 feet (1524 mm) into stiff soil or 10 feet (3048 mm) into soft soil unless otherwise approved by the building official on the basis of a geotechnical investigation by a registered design professional.

**1810A.2.2 Stability.** Deep foundation elements shall be braced to provide lateral stability in all directions. Three or more elements connected by a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced, provided that the elements are located in radial directions from the centroid of the group not less than 60 degrees (1 rad) apart. A two-element group in a rigid cap shall be considered to be braced along the axis connecting the two elements. Methods used to brace deep foundation elements shall be subject to the approval of the building official.

Deep foundation elements supporting walls shall be placed alternately in lines spaced not less than 1 foot (305 mm) apart and located symmetrically under the center of gravity of the wall load carried, unless effective measures are taken to provide for eccentricity and lateral forces, or the foundation elements are adequately braced to provide for lateral stability.

### Exceptions:

1. Isolated cast-in-place deep foundation elements without lateral bracing shall be permitted where the least horizontal dimension is not less than 2 feet (610 mm), adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810A.2.1 is provided for the entire height and the height does not exceed 12 times the least horizontal dimension.
2. A single row of deep foundation elements without lateral bracing is permitted for one- and two-family dwellings and lightweight construction not exceeding two stories above grade plane or 35 feet (10 668 mm) in building height, provided that the centers of the elements are located within the width of the supported wall.

**1810A.2.3 Settlement.** The settlement of a single deep foundation element or group thereof shall be estimated based on approved methods of analysis. The predicted settlement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

**1810A.2.4 Lateral loads.** The moments, shears and lateral deflections used for design of deep foundation elements shall be established considering the nonlinear interaction of the shaft and soil, as determined by a registered design

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

professional. Where the ratio of the depth of embedment of the element to its least horizontal dimension is less than or equal to six, it shall be permitted to assume the element is rigid.

### **1810A.2.4.1 Seismic Design Categories D through F.**

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, deep foundation elements on Site Class E or F sites, as determined in Section 1613A.2.2, shall be designed and constructed to withstand maximum imposed curvatures from earthquake ground motions and structure response. Curvatures shall include free-field soil strains modified for soil-foundation-structure interaction coupled with foundation element deformations associated with earthquake loads imparted to the foundation by the structure.

**Exception:** Deep foundation elements that satisfy the following additional detailing requirements shall be deemed to comply with the curvature capacity requirements of this section.

1. Precast prestressed concrete piles detailed in accordance with Section 1810A.3.8.
2. Cast-in-place deep foundation elements with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005 extending the full length of the element and detailed in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 as required by Section 1810A.3.9.4.2.2.

**1810A.2.5 Group effects.** The analysis shall include group effects on lateral behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements in the direction of lateral force is less than eight times the least horizontal dimension of an element. The analysis shall include group effects on axial behavior where the center-to-center spacing of deep foundation elements is less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element. Group effects shall be evaluated using a generally accepted method of analysis; the analysis for uplift of grouped elements with center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of an element shall be evaluated in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.6.

**1810A.3 Design and detailing.** Deep foundations shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810A.3.1 through 1810A.3.13.

**1810A.3.1 Design conditions.** Design of deep foundations shall include the design conditions specified in Sections 1810A.3.1.1 through 1810A.3.1.6, as applicable.

### **1810A.3.1.1 Design methods for concrete elements.**

Where concrete deep foundations are laterally supported in accordance with Section 1810A.2.1 for the entire height and applied forces cause bending moments not greater than those resulting from accidental eccentricities, structural design of the element using the allowable stress design load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.4 or the alternative allowable stress design load combinations of Section 1605A.2 and the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be

permitted. Otherwise, the structural design of concrete deep foundation elements shall use the strength load combinations specified in ASCE 7, Section 2.3 and approved strength design methods.

**1810A.3.1.2 Composite elements.** Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section of the composite assembly shall satisfy the applicable requirements of this code, and the maximum allowable load in each section shall be limited by the structural capacity of that section.

**1810A.3.1.3 Mislocation.** The foundation or superstructure shall be designed to resist the effects of the mislocation of any deep foundation element by not less than 3 inches (76 mm). To resist the effects of mislocation, compressive overload of deep foundation elements to 110 percent of the allowable design load shall be permitted.

**1810A.3.1.4 Driven piles.** Driven piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by handling, driving and service loads.

**1810A.3.1.5 Helical piles.** Helical piles shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist all stresses induced by installation into the ground and service loads.

**1810A.3.1.5.1 Helical piles seismic requirements.**  
For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, capacities of helical piles shall be determined in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3 by at least two project-specific preproduction tests for each soil profile, size and depth of helical pile. At least two percent of all production piles shall be proof tested to the load determined in accordance with Section 1617A.1.15.

Helical piles shall satisfy corrosion resistance requirements of ICC-ES AC 358. In addition, all helical pile materials that are subject to corrosion shall include at least  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch corrosion allowance.

Helical piles shall not be considered as carrying any horizontal loads.

**1810A.3.1.6 Casings.** Temporary and permanent casings shall be of steel and shall be sufficiently strong to resist collapse and sufficiently watertight to exclude any foreign materials during the placing of concrete. Where a permanent casing is considered reinforcing steel, the steel shall be protected under the conditions specified in Section 1810A.3.2.5. Horizontal joints in the casing shall be spliced in accordance with Section 1810A.3.6.

**1810A.3.2 Materials.** The materials used in deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of Sections 1810A.3.2.1 through 1810A.3.2.8, as applicable.

**1810A.3.2.1 Concrete.** Where concrete is cast in a steel pipe or where an enlarged base is formed by compact-

ing concrete, the maximum size for coarse aggregate shall be  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19.1 mm). Concrete to be compacted shall have a zero slump.

**1810A.3.2.1.1 Seismic hooks.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, the ends of hoops, spirals and ties used in concrete deep foundation elements shall be terminated with seismic hooks, as defined in ACI 318, and shall be turned into the confined concrete core.

→ **1810A.3.2.2 Prestressing steel.** Prestressing steel shall conform to ASTM A416.

**1810A.3.2.3 Steel.** Structural steel H-piles and structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A6. Steel pipe piles shall conform to the material requirements in ASTM A252. Fully welded steel piles shall be fabricated from plates that conform to the material requirements in ASTM A36, ASTM A283, ASTM A572, ASTM A588 or ASTM A690.

**1810A.3.2.4 Timber.** Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.

→ **1810A.3.2.5 Protection of materials.** Where boring records or site conditions indicate possible deleterious action on the materials used in deep foundation

elements because of soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors, the elements shall be adequately protected by materials, methods or processes approved by the building official. Protective materials shall be applied to the elements so as not to be rendered ineffective by installation. The effectiveness of such protective measures for the particular purpose shall have been thoroughly established by satisfactory service records or other evidence.

**1810A.3.2.6 Allowable stresses.** The allowable stresses for materials used in deep foundation elements shall not exceed those specified in Table 1810A.3.2.6.

**1810A.3.2.7 Increased allowable compressive stress for cased mandrell-driven cast-in-place elements.** The allowable compressive stress in the concrete shall be permitted to be increased as specified in Table 1810A.3.2.6 for those portions of permanently cased cast-in-place elements that satisfy all of the following conditions:

1. The design shall not use the casing to resist any portion of the axial load imposed.
2. The casing shall have a sealed tip and be mandrel driven.

**TABLE 1810A.3.2.6  
ALLOWABLE STRESSES FOR MATERIALS USED IN DEEP FOUNDATION ELEMENTS**

MATERIAL TYPE AND CONDITION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS <sup>a</sup>
1. Concrete or grout in compression <sup>b</sup> Cast-in-place with a permanent casing in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.7 or Section 1810.3.5.3.4 Cast-in-place in other permanent casing or rock Cast-in-place without a permanent casing Precast non prestressed Precast prestressed	0.4 $f'_c$ 0.33 $f'_c$ 0.3 $f'_c$ 0.33 $f'_c$ 0.33 $f'_c$ - 0.27 $f_{pc}$
2. Non prestressed reinforcement in compression	0.4 $f_y \leq 30,000$ psi
3. Steel in compression Cores within concrete-filled pipes or tubes Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8 Pipes or tubes for micropiles Other pipes, tubes or H-piles Helical piles	0.5 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi 0.5 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi 0.4 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi 0.35 $F_y \leq 24,000$ psi 0.6 $F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
4. Non prestressed reinforcement in tension Within micropiles Other conditions For load combinations that do not include wind or seismic loads For load combinations that include wind or seismic loads	0.6 $f_y$  0.5 $f_y \leq 30,000$ psi 0.5 $f_y \leq 40,000$ psi
5. Steel in tension Pipes, tubes or H-piles, where justified in accordance with Section 1810.3.2.8 Other pipes, tubes or H-piles Helical piles	0.5 $F_y \leq 32,000$ psi 0.35 $F_y \leq 24,000$ psi 0.6 $F_y \leq 0.5 F_u$
6. Timber	In accordance with the ANSI/AWC NDS

- a.  $f'_c$  is the specified compressive strength of the concrete or grout;  $f_{pc}$  is the compressive stress on the gross concrete section due to effective prestress forces only;  $f_y$  is the specified yield strength of reinforcement;  $F_y$  is the specified minimum yield stress of steel;  $F_u$  is the specified minimum tensile stress of structural steel.
- b. The stresses specified apply to the gross cross-sectional area of the concrete for precast prestressed piles and to the net cross-sectional area for all other piles. Where a temporary or permanent casing is used, the inside face of the casing shall be considered the outer edge of the concrete cross-section.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

3. The thickness of the casing shall be not less than manufacturer's standard gage No.14 (0.068 inch) (1.75 mm).
4. The casing shall be seamless or provided with seams of strength equal to the basic material and be of a configuration that will provide confinement to the cast-in-place concrete.
5. The ratio of steel yield strength ( $F_y$ ) to specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ) shall be not less than six.
6. The nominal diameter of the element shall not be greater than 16 inches (406 mm).

**1810A.3.2.8 Justification of higher allowable stresses.** Use of allowable stresses greater than those specified in Section 1810.3.2.6 shall be permitted where supporting data justifying such higher stresses is filed with the building official. Such substantiating data shall include the following:

1. A geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803A.
2. Load tests in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.2, regardless of the load supported by the element.

The design and installation of the deep foundation elements shall be under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations who shall submit a report to the building official stating that the elements as installed satisfy the design criteria.

**1810A.3 Determination of allowable loads.** The allowable axial and lateral loads on deep foundation elements shall be determined by an approved formula, load tests or method of analysis.

**1810A.3.3.1 Allowable axial load.** The allowable axial load on a deep foundation element shall be determined in accordance with Sections 1810A.3.3.1.1 through 1810A.3.3.1.9.

**Exception:** Where approved by the building official, load testing is not required.

**1810A.3.3.1.1 Driving criteria.** The allowable compressive load on any driven deep foundation element where determined by the application of an approved driving formula shall not exceed 40 tons (356 kN). For allowable loads above 40 tons (356 kN), the wave equation method of analysis shall be used to estimate driveability for both driving stresses and net displacement per blow at the ultimate load. Allowable loads shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.2. The formula or wave equation load shall be determined for gravity-drop or power-actuated hammers and the hammer energy used shall be the maximum consistent with the size, strength and weight of the driven elements. The use of a follower is permitted only with the approval of the building official. The introduction of

fresh hammer cushion or pile cushion material just prior to final penetration is not permitted.

**1810A.3.3.1.2 Load tests.** Where design compressive loads are greater than those determined using the allowable stresses specified in Section 1810A.3.2.6, where the design load for any deep foundation element is in doubt, *where driven deep foundation elements are installed by means other than a pile hammer*, or where cast-in-place deep foundation elements have an enlarged base formed either by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base, control test elements shall be tested in accordance with ASTM D1143 *including Procedure G: Cyclic Loading Test* or ASTM D4945. One element or more shall be load tested in each area of uniform subsoil conditions. Where required by the building official, additional elements shall be load tested where necessary to establish the safe design capacity. The resulting allowable loads shall not be more than one-half of the ultimate axial load capacity of the test element as assessed by one of the published methods listed in Section 1810A.3.3.1.3 with consideration for the test type, duration and subsoil. The ultimate axial load capacity shall be determined by a registered design professional with consideration given to tolerable total and differential settlements at design load in accordance with Section 1810A.2.3. In subsequent installation of the balance of deep foundation elements, all elements shall be deemed to have a supporting capacity equal to that of the control element where such elements are of the same type, size and relative length as the test element; are installed using the same or comparable methods and equipment as the test element; are installed in similar subsoil conditions as the test element; and, for driven elements, where the rate of penetration (for example, net displacement per blow) of such elements is equal to or less than that of the test element driven with the same hammer through a comparable driving distance, *or where the downward pressure and torque on such elements is greater than or equal to that applied to the test element that determined the ultimate axial load capacity at a comparable driving distance*.

**1810A.3.3.1.3 Load test evaluation methods.** It shall be permitted to evaluate load tests of deep foundation elements using any of the following methods:

1. Davisson Offset Limit.
2. Brinch-Hansen 90-percent Criterion.
3. Butler-Hoy Criterion.
4. Other methods approved by the building official.

**1810A.3.3.1.4 Allowable shaft resistance.** The assumed shaft resistance developed by any uncased cast-in-place deep foundation element shall not exceed one-sixth of the bearing value of the soil material at minimum depth as set forth in Table 1806A.2, up to 500 psf (24 kPa), unless a greater

value is allowed by the building official on the basis of a geotechnical investigation as specified in Section 1803 or a greater value is substantiated by a load test in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.2. Shaft resistance and end-bearing resistance shall not be assumed to act simultaneously unless determined by a geotechnical investigation in accordance with Section 1803A.

**1810A.3.3.1.5 Uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element.** Where required by the design, the uplift capacity of a single deep foundation element shall be determined by an approved method of analysis based on a minimum factor of safety of three or by load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689. The maximum allowable uplift load shall not exceed the ultimate load capacity as determined in Section 1810A.3.3.1.2, using the results of load tests conducted in accordance with ASTM D3689, *including the cyclic loading procedure*, divided by a factor of safety of two.

**Exception:** Where uplift is due to wind or seismic loading, the minimum factor of safety shall be two where capacity is determined by an analysis and one and one-half where capacity is determined by load tests.

**1810A.3.3.1.6 Allowable uplift load of grouped deep foundation elements.** For grouped deep foundation elements subjected to uplift, the allowable uplift load for the group shall be calculated by a generally accepted method of analysis. Where the deep foundation elements in the group are placed at a center-to-center spacing less than three times the least horizontal dimension of the largest single element, the allowable uplift load for the group is permitted to be calculated as the lesser of:

1. The proposed individual allowable uplift load times the number of elements in the group.
2. Two-thirds of the effective weight of the group and the soil contained within a block defined by the perimeter of the group and the length of the element, plus two-thirds of the ultimate shear resistance along the soil block.

**1810A.3.3.1.7 Load-bearing capacity.** Deep foundation elements shall develop ultimate load capacities of not less than twice the design working loads in the designated load-bearing layers. Analysis shall show that soil layers underlying the designated load-bearing layers do not cause the load-bearing capacity safety factor to be less than two.

**1810A.3.3.1.8 Bent deep foundation elements.** The load-bearing capacity of deep foundation elements discovered to have a sharp or sweeping bend shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by load testing a representative element.

**1810A.3.3.1.9 Helical piles.** The allowable axial design load,  $P_a$ , of helical piles shall be determined as follows:

$$P_a = 0.5 P_u \quad (\text{Equation 18A-4})$$

where  $P_u$  is the least value of:

1. Base capacity plus shaft resistance of the helical pile. The base capacity is equal to the sum of the areas of the helical bearing plates times the ultimate bearing capacity of the soil or rock comprising the bearing stratum. The shaft resistance is equal to the area of the shaft above the uppermost helical bearing plate times the ultimate skin resistance.
2. Ultimate capacity determined from well-documented correlations with installation torque.
3. Ultimate capacity determined from load tests.
4. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft.
5. Ultimate axial capacity of pile shaft couplings.
6. Sum of the ultimate axial capacity of helical bearing plates affixed to pile.

**1810A.3.3.2 Allowable lateral load.** Where required by the design, the lateral load capacity of a single deep foundation element or a group thereof shall be determined by an approved method of analysis or by lateral load tests *in accordance with ASTM D3966, including the cyclic loading procedure*, to not less than twice the proposed design working load. The resulting allowable load shall not be more than one-half of the load that produces a gross lateral movement of 1 inch (25 mm) at the lower of the top of foundation element and the ground surface, unless it can be shown that the predicted lateral movement shall cause neither harmful distortion of, nor instability in, the structure, nor cause any element to be loaded beyond its capacity.

**1810A.3.4 Subsiding soils or strata.** Where deep foundation elements are installed through subsiding soils or other subsiding strata and derive support from underlying firmer materials, consideration shall be given to the downward frictional forces potentially imposed on the elements by the subsiding upper strata.

Where the influence of subsiding soils or strata is considered as imposing loads on the element, the allowable stresses specified in this chapter shall be permitted to be increased where satisfactory substantiating data are submitted.

**1810A.3.5 Dimensions of deep foundation elements.** The dimensions of deep foundation elements shall be in accordance with Sections 1810A.3.5.1 through 1810A.3.5.3, as applicable.

**1810A.3.5.1 Precast.** The minimum lateral dimension of precast concrete deep foundation elements shall be 8 inches (203 mm). Corners of square elements shall be chamfered.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

**1810A.3.5.2 Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place.** Cast-in-place and grouted-in-place deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1810A.3.5.2.1 Cased.** Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place deep foundation elements with a permanent casing shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

**1810A.3.5.2.2 Uncased.** Cast-in-place or grouted-in-place deep foundation elements without a permanent casing shall have a specified diameter of not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The element length shall not exceed 30 times the specified diameter.

**Exception:** The length of the element is permitted to exceed 30 times the specified diameter, provided that the design and installation of the deep foundations are under the direct supervision of a registered design professional knowledgeable in the field of soil mechanics and deep foundations. The registered design professional shall submit a report to the building official stating that the elements were installed in compliance with the approved construction documents.

**1810A.3.5.2.3 Micropiles.** Micropiles shall have a nominal diameter of 12 inches (305 mm) or less. The minimum diameter set forth elsewhere in Section 1810A.3.5 shall not apply to micropiles.

**1810A.3.5.3 Steel.** Steel deep foundation elements shall satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1810A.3.5.3.1 Structural steel H-piles.** Sections of structural steel H-piles shall comply with the requirements for HP shapes in ASTM A6, or the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall be not less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.
2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm).
3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, design and detailing of H-piles shall also conform to the requirements of AISC 341.

**1810A.3.5.3.2 Fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates.** Sections of fully welded steel piles fabricated from plates shall comply with the following:

1. The flange projections shall not exceed 14 times the minimum thickness of metal in either the flange or the web and the flange widths shall be not less than 80 percent of the depth of the section.

2. The nominal depth in the direction of the web shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm).

3. Flanges and web shall have a minimum nominal thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

**1810A.3.5.3.3 Structural steel sheet piling.** Individual sections of structural steel sheet piling shall conform to the profile indicated by the manufacturer, and shall conform to the general requirements specified by ASTM A6.

*Installation of sheet piling shall satisfy inspection, monitoring and observation requirements in Sections 1812A.6 and 1812A.7.*

**1810A.3.5.3.4 Steel pipes and tubes.** Steel pipes and tubes used as deep foundation elements shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 8 inches (203 mm). Where steel pipes or tubes are driven open ended, they shall have not less than 0.34 square inch ( $219 \text{ mm}^2$ ) of steel in cross section to resist each 1,000 foot-pounds (1356 Nm) of pile hammer energy, or shall have the equivalent strength for steels having a yield strength greater than 35,000 psi (241 MPa) or the wave equation analysis shall be permitted to be used to assess compression stresses induced by driving to evaluate if the pile section is appropriate for the selected hammer. Where a pipe or tube with wall thickness less than 0.179 inch (4.6 mm) is driven open ended, a suitable cutting shoe shall be provided. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall have a wall thickness of not less than  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (5 mm). The pipe or tube casing for socketed drilled shafts shall have a nominal outside diameter of not less than 18 inches (457 mm), a wall thickness of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) and a suitable steel driving shoe welded to the bottom; the diameter of the rock socket shall be approximately equal to the inside diameter of the casing.

### Exceptions:

1. There is no minimum diameter for steel pipes or tubes used in micropiles.
2. For mandrel-driven pipes or tubes, the minimum wall thickness shall be  $\frac{1}{10}$  inch (2.5 mm).

**1810A.3.5.3.5 Helical piles.** Dimensions of the central shaft and the number, size and thickness of helical bearing plates shall be sufficient to support the design loads.

**1810A.3.6 Splices.** Splices shall be constructed so as to provide and maintain true alignment and position of the component parts of the deep foundation element during installation and subsequent thereto and shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces and moments occurring at the location of the splice during driving and for design load combinations. Where deep foundation elements of

the same type are being spliced, splices shall develop not less than 50 percent of the bending strength of the weaker section. Where deep foundation elements of different materials or different types are being spliced, splices shall develop the full compressive strength and not less than 50 percent of the tension and bending strength of the weaker section. Where structural steel cores are to be spliced, the ends shall be milled or ground to provide full contact and shall be full-depth welded.

Splices occurring in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of the embedded portion of an element shall be designed to resist at allowable stresses the moment and shear that would result from an assumed eccentricity of the axial load of 3 inches (76 mm), or the element shall be braced in accordance with Section 1810A.2.2 to other deep foundation elements that do not have splices in the upper 10 feet (3048 mm) of embedment.

#### **1810A.3.6.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.**

For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F splices of deep foundation elements shall develop the lesser of the following:

1. The nominal strength of the deep foundation element.
2. The axial and shear forces and moments from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7.

**1810A.3.7 Top of element detailing at cutoffs.** Where a minimum length for reinforcement or the extent of closely spaced confinement reinforcement is specified at the top of a deep foundation element, provisions shall be made so that those specified lengths or extents are maintained after cutoff.

**1810A.3.8 Precast concrete piles.** Precast concrete piles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with ACI 318.

**Exception:** Where the axial load from seismic forces is amplified by the applicable overstrength factor,  $\Omega_o$ , the axial load limits in Section 18.13.5.10.6 of ACI 318 may be increased by two times.

**1810A.3.9 Cast-in-place deep foundations.** Cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810A.3.9.1 through 1810A.3.9.6.

**1810A.3.9.1 Design cracking moment.** The design cracking moment ( $\phi M_n$ ) for a cast-in-place deep foundation element not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be determined using the following equation:

$$\phi M_n = 3 \sqrt{f'_c} S_m \quad (\text{Equation 18A-5})$$

For SI:  $\phi M_n = 0.25 \sqrt{f'_c} S_m$

where:

$f'_c$  = Specified compressive strength of concrete or grout, psi (MPa).

$S_m$  = Elastic section modulus, neglecting reinforcement and casing, cubic inches ( $\text{mm}^3$ ).

**1810A.3.9.2 Required reinforcement.** Where subject to uplift or where the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3 exceeds the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810A.3.9.1, cast-in-place deep foundations not enclosed by a structural steel pipe or tube shall be reinforced.

**1810A.3.9.3 Placement of reinforcement.** Reinforcement where required shall be assembled and tied together and shall be placed in the deep foundation element as a unit before the reinforced portion of the element is filled with concrete.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Steel dowels embedded 5 feet (1524 mm) or less shall be permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.
2. For deep foundation elements installed with a hollow-stem auger, tied reinforcement shall be placed after elements are concreted, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state. Longitudinal reinforcement without lateral ties shall be placed either through the hollow stem of the auger prior to concreting or after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state.
3. For Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction, reinforcement is permitted to be placed after concreting, while the concrete is still in a semifluid state, and the concrete cover requirement is permitted to be reduced to 2 inches (51 mm), provided that the construction method can be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the building official.

**1810A.3.9.4 Seismic reinforcement.** Where a structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, reinforcement shall be provided in accordance with Section 1810A.3.9.4.2.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals, where detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810A.2.1.
2. Isolated deep foundation elements supporting posts and bracing from decks and patios appurtenant to Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than one No. 4 bar, without ties or spirals,

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

where the lateral load,  $E$ , to the top of the element does not exceed 200 pounds (890 N) and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810A.2.1.

3. Deep foundation elements supporting the concrete foundation wall of Group R-3 and U occupancies not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction shall be permitted to be reinforced as required by rational analysis but with not less than two No. 4 bars, without ties or spirals, where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810A.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations with overstrength factor in Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7 and the soil provides adequate lateral support in accordance with Section 1810A.2.1.
4. Closed ties or spirals where required by Section 1810A.3.9.4.2 shall be permitted to be limited to the top 3 feet (914 mm) of deep foundation elements 10 feet (3048 mm) or less in depth supporting Group R-3 and U occupancies of Seismic Design Category D, not exceeding two stories of light-frame construction.

**1810A.3.9.4.1 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Category C.** *Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.*

**1810A.3.9.4.2 Seismic reinforcement in Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, cast-in-place deep foundation elements shall be reinforced as specified in this section. Reinforcement shall be provided where required by analysis.

Not fewer than four longitudinal bars, with a minimum longitudinal reinforcement ratio of 0.005, shall be provided throughout the minimum reinforced length of the element as defined in this section starting at the top of the element. The minimum reinforced length of the element shall be taken as the greatest of the following:

1. One-half of the element length.
2. A distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. Three times the least element dimension.
4. The distance from the top of the element to the point where the design cracking moment determined in accordance with Section 1810A.3.9.1 exceeds the required moment strength determined using the load combinations of ASCE 7, Section 2.3.

Transverse reinforcement shall consist of closed ties or spirals not smaller than No. 3 bars for elements with a least dimension up to 20 inches (508 mm), and No. 4 bars for larger elements. Throughout the remainder of the reinforced length outside the regions with transverse confinement reinforcement, as specified in Section 1810A.3.9.4.2.1 or

1810A.3.9.4.2.2, the spacing of transverse reinforcement shall not exceed the least of the following:

1. 12 longitudinal bar diameters.
2. One-half the least dimension of the element.
3. 12 inches (305 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. The requirements of this section shall not apply to concrete cast in structural steel pipes or tubes.
2. A spiral-welded metal casing of a thickness not less than manufacturer's standard No. 14 gage (0.068 inch) is permitted to provide concrete confinement in lieu of the closed ties or spirals. Where used as such, the metal casing shall be protected against possible deleterious action due to soil constituents, changing water levels or other factors indicated by boring records of site conditions.

**1810A.3.9.4.2.1 Site Classes A through D.** For Site Class A, B, C or D sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within three times the least element dimension *at the bottom* of the pile cap. A transverse spiral reinforcement ratio of not less than one-half of that required in Table 18.10.6.4(g) of ACI 318 shall be permitted for concrete deep foundation elements.

**1810A.3.9.4.2.2 Site Classes E and F.** For Site Class E or F sites, transverse confinement reinforcement shall be provided in the element in accordance with Sections 18.7.5.2, 18.7.5.3 and 18.7.5.4 of ACI 318 within seven times the least element dimension *at the bottom* of the pile cap and within seven times the least element dimension *at the interfaces of strata that are hard or stiff and strata that are liquefiable or are composed of soft- to medium-stiff clay*.

**1810A.3.9.5 Bellied drilled shafts.** Where drilled shafts are belled at the bottom, the edge thickness of the bell shall be not less than that required for the edge of footings. Where the sides of the bell slope at an angle less than 60 degrees (1 rad) from the horizontal, the effects of vertical shear shall be considered.

**1810A.3.9.6 Socketed drilled shafts.** Socketed drilled shafts shall have a permanent pipe or tube casing that extends down to bedrock and an uncased socket drilled into the bedrock, both filled with concrete. Socketed drilled shafts shall have reinforcement or a structural steel core for the length as indicated by an approved method of analysis.

The depth of the rock socket shall be sufficient to develop the full load-bearing capacity of the element with a minimum safety factor of two, but the depth shall be not less than the outside diameter of the pipe or

tube casing. The design of the rock socket is permitted to be predicated on the sum of the allowable load-bearing pressure on the bottom of the socket plus bond along the sides of the socket.

Where a structural steel core is used, the gross cross-sectional area of the core shall not exceed 25 percent of the gross area of the drilled shaft.

**1810A.3.10 Micropiles.** Micropiles shall be designed and detailed in accordance with Sections 1810A.3.10.1 through 1810A.3.10.4.

**1810A.3.10.1 Construction.** Micropiles shall develop their load-carrying capacity by means of a bond zone in soil, bedrock or a combination of soil and bedrock. Micropiles shall be grouted and have either a steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement at every section along the length. It shall be permitted to transition from deformed reinforcing bars to steel pipe or tube reinforcement by extending the bars into the pipe or tube section by not less than their development length in tension in accordance with ACI 318.

**1810A.3.10.2 Materials.** Reinforcement shall consist of deformed reinforcing bars in accordance with ASTM A615 Grade 60 or 75 or ASTM A722 Grade 150.

The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum wall thickness of  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm). Splices shall comply with Section 1810A.3.6. The steel pipe or tube shall have a minimum yield strength of 45,000 psi (310 MPa) and a minimum elongation of 15 percent as shown by mill certifications or two coupon test samples per 40,000 pounds (18 160 kg) of pipe or tube.

**1810A.3.10.3 Reinforcement.** For micropiles or portions thereof grouted inside a temporary or permanent casing or inside a hole drilled into bedrock or a hole drilled with grout, the steel pipe or tube or steel reinforcement shall be designed to carry not less than 40 percent of the design compression load. Micropiles or portions thereof grouted in an open hole in soil without temporary or permanent casing and without suitable means of verifying the hole diameter during grouting shall be designed to carry the entire compression load in the reinforcing steel. Where a steel pipe or tube is used for reinforcement, the portion of the grout enclosed within the pipe is permitted to be included in the determination of the allowable stress in the grout.

**1810A.3.10.4 Seismic requirements.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, a permanent steel casing having a minimum thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch shall be provided from the top of the micropile down to a minimum of 120 percent of the point of zero curvature. Capacity of micropiles shall be determined in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3 by at least two project-specific preproduction tests for each soil profile, size and depth of micropile. At least two percent of all production piles shall be proof tested to the load determined in accordance with Section 1617A.1.15.

*Steel casing length in soil shall be considered as unbonded and shall not be considered as contributing to friction. Casing shall provide confinement at least equivalent to hoop reinforcing required by ACI 318 Section 18.13.5.*

*Reinforcement shall have Class 1 corrosion protection in accordance with PTI Recommendations for Pre-stressed Rock and Soil Anchors. Steel casing design shall include at least  $\frac{1}{16}$ -inch corrosion allowance.*

*Micropiles shall not be considered as carrying any horizontal loads.*

**1810A.3.11 Pile caps.** Pile caps shall conform with ACI 318 and this section. Pile caps shall be of reinforced concrete, and shall include all elements to which vertical deep foundation elements are connected, including grade beams and mats. The soil immediately below the pile cap shall not be considered as carrying any vertical load, with the exception of a combined pile raft. A *combined pile raft foundation shall be an alternate system*. The tops of vertical deep foundation elements shall be embedded not less than 3 inches (76 mm) into pile caps and the caps shall extend not less than 4 inches (102 mm) beyond the edges of the elements. The tops of elements shall be cut or chipped back to sound material before capping.

**1810A.3.11.1 Seismic Design Categories C through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F, concrete deep foundation elements shall be connected to the pile cap in accordance with ACI 318.

For resistance to uplift forces, anchorage of steel pipes, tubes or H-piles to the pile cap shall be made by means other than concrete bond to the bare steel section. Concrete-filled steel pipes or tubes shall have reinforcement of not less than 0.01 times the cross-sectional area of the concrete fill developed into the cap and extending into the fill a length equal to two times the required cap embedment, but not less than the development length in tension of the reinforcement.

**1810A.3.11.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F.** For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, deep foundation element resistance to uplift forces or rotational restraint shall be provided by anchorage into the pile cap, designed considering the combined effect of axial forces due to uplift and bending moments due to fixity to the pile cap. Anchorage shall develop not less than 25 percent of the strength of the element in tension. Anchorage into the pile cap shall comply with the following:

1. In the case of uplift, the anchorage shall be capable of developing the least of the following:
  - 1.1. The nominal tensile strength of the longitudinal reinforcement in a concrete element.
  - 1.2. The nominal tensile strength of a steel element.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

- 1.3. The frictional force developed between the element and the soil multiplied by 1.3.

**Exception:** The anchorage is permitted to be designed to resist the axial tension force resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7.

2. In the case of rotational restraint, the anchorage shall be designed to resist the axial and shear forces, and moments resulting from the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7 or the anchorage shall be capable of developing the full axial, bending and shear nominal strength of the element.
3. The connection between the pile cap and the steel H-piles or unfilled steel pipe piles in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be designed for a tensile force of not less than 10 percent of the pile compression capacity.

### Exceptions:

1. Connection tensile capacity need not exceed the strength required to resist seismic load effects including overstrength of ASCE 7, Section 12.4.3 or 12.14.3.2.

Where the vertical lateral-force-resisting elements are columns, the pile cap flexural strengths shall exceed the column flexural strength. The connection between batter piles and pile caps shall be designed to resist the nominal strength of the pile acting as a short column. Batter piles and their connection shall be designed to resist forces and moments that result from the application of seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7.

**1810A.3.12 Grade beams.** Grade beams shall comply with the provisions of ACI 318.

**Exception:** Grade beams designed to resist the seismic load effects including overstrength factor in accordance with Section 2.3.6 or 2.4.5 of ASCE 7 *need not comply with Section 18.13.3 of ACI 318.*

**1810A.3.13 Seismic ties.** Seismic ties shall comply with the provisions of ACI 318.

**Exception:** In Group R-3 and U occupancies of light-frame construction, deep foundation elements supporting foundation walls, isolated interior posts detailed so the element is not subject to lateral loads or exterior decks and patios are not subject to interconnection where the soils are of adequate stiffness, subject to the approval of the building official.

**1810A.4 Installation.** Deep foundations shall be installed in accordance with Section 1810A.4. Where a single deep foundation element comprises two or more sections of different materials or different types spliced together, each section shall satisfy the applicable conditions of installation.

**1810A.4.1 Structural integrity.** Deep foundation elements shall be installed in such a manner and sequence as to prevent distortion or damage that would adversely affect the structural integrity of adjacent structures or of foundation elements being installed or already in place and as to avoid compacting the surrounding soil to the extent that other foundation elements cannot be installed properly.

**1810A.4.1.1 Compressive strength of precast concrete piles.** A precast concrete pile shall not be driven before the concrete has attained a compressive strength of not less than 75 percent of the specified compressive strength ( $f'_c$ ), but not less than the strength sufficient to withstand handling and driving forces.

**1810A.4.1.2 Shafts in unstable soils.** Where cast-in-place deep foundation elements are formed through unstable soils, the open hole shall be stabilized by a casing, slurry, or other approved method prior to placing the concrete. Where the casing is withdrawn during concreting, the level of concrete shall be maintained above the bottom of the casing at a sufficient height to offset any hydrostatic or lateral soil pressure. Driven casings shall be mandrel driven their full length in contact with the surrounding soil.

**1810A.4.1.3 Driving near uncased concrete.** Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within six element diameters center to center in granular soils or within one-half the element length in cohesive soils of an uncased element filled with concrete less than 48 hours old unless approved by the building official. If driving near uncased concrete elements causes the concrete surface in any completed element to rise or drop significantly or bleed additional water, the completed element shall be replaced.

**1810A.4.1.4 Driving near cased concrete.** Deep foundation elements shall not be driven within four and one-half average diameters of a cased element filled with concrete less than 24 hours old unless approved by the building official. Concrete shall not be placed in casings within heave range of driving.

**1810A.4.1.5 Defective timber piles.** *Not permitted by DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC or OSHPD.*

**1810A.4.2 Identification.** Deep foundation materials shall be identified for conformity to the specified grade with this identity maintained continuously from the point of manufacture to the point of installation or shall be tested by an approved agency to determine conformity to the specified grade. The approved agency shall furnish an affidavit of compliance to the building official.

**1810A.4.3 Location plan.** A plan showing the location and designation of deep foundation elements by an identification system shall be filed with the building official prior to installation of such elements. Detailed records for elements shall bear an identification corresponding to that shown on the plan.

**1810A.4.4 Preexcavation.** The use of jetting, augering or other methods of preexcavation shall be subject to the

approval of the building official. Where permitted, preexcavation shall be carried out in the same manner as used for deep foundation elements subject to load tests and in such a manner that will not impair the carrying capacity of the elements already in place or damage adjacent structures. Element tips shall be advanced below the preexcavated depth until the required resistance or penetration is obtained.

**1810A.4.5 Vibratory driving.** Vibratory drivers shall only be used to install deep foundation elements where the element load capacity is verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.2. The installation of production elements shall be controlled according to power consumption, rate of penetration or other approved means that ensure element capacities equal or exceed those of the test elements.

#### Exceptions:

1. The pile installation is completed by driving with an impact hammer in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.1.
2. The pile is to be used only for lateral resistance.

**1810A.4.6 Heaved elements.** Deep foundation elements that have heaved during the driving of adjacent elements shall be redriven as necessary to develop the required capacity and penetration, or the capacity of the element shall be verified by load tests in accordance with Section 1810A.3.3.1.2.

**1810A.4.7 Enlarged base cast-in-place elements.** Enlarged bases for cast-in-place deep foundation elements formed by compacting concrete or by driving a precast base shall be formed in or driven into granular soils. Such elements shall be constructed in the same manner as successful prototype test elements driven for the project. Shafts extending through peat or other organic soil shall be encased in a permanent steel casing. Where a cased shaft is used, the shaft shall be adequately reinforced to resist column action or the annular space around the shaft shall be filled sufficiently to reestablish lateral support by the soil. Where heave occurs, the element shall be replaced unless it is demonstrated that the element is undamaged and capable of carrying twice its design load.

**1810A.4.8 Hollow-stem augered, cast-in-place elements.** Where concrete or grout is placed by pumping through a hollow-stem auger, the auger shall be permitted to rotate in a clockwise direction during withdrawal. As the auger is withdrawn at a steady rate or in increments not to exceed 1 foot (305 mm), concreting or grouting pumping pressures shall be measured and maintained high enough at all times to offset hydrostatic and lateral earth pressures. Concrete or grout volumes shall be measured to ensure that the volume of concrete or grout placed in each element is equal to or greater than the theoretical volume of the hole created by the auger. Where the installation process of any element is interrupted or a loss of concreting or grouting pressure occurs, the element shall be redrilled to 5 feet (1524 mm) below the elevation of the tip of the auger when the installation was interrupted or concrete or grout pressure was lost and reformed. Augered

cast-in-place elements shall not be installed within six diameters center to center of an element filled with concrete or grout less than 12 hours old, unless approved by the building official. If the concrete or grout level in any completed element drops due to installation of an adjacent element, the element shall be replaced.

**1810A.4.9 Socketed drilled shafts.** The rock socket and pipe or tube casing of socketed drilled shafts shall be thoroughly cleaned of foreign materials before filling with concrete. Steel cores shall be bedded in cement grout at the base of the rock socket.

**1810A.4.10 Micropiles.** Micropile deep foundation elements shall be permitted to be formed in holes advanced by rotary or percussive drilling methods, with or without casing. The elements shall be grouted with a fluid cement grout. The grout shall be pumped through a tremie pipe extending to the bottom of the element until grout of suitable quality returns at the top of the element. The following requirements apply to specific installation methods:

1. For micropiles grouted inside a temporary casing, the reinforcing bars shall be inserted prior to withdrawal of the casing. The casing shall be withdrawn in a controlled manner with the grout level maintained at the top of the element to ensure that the grout completely fills the drill hole. During withdrawal of the casing, the grout level inside the casing shall be monitored to verify that the flow of grout inside the casing is not obstructed.
2. For a micropile or portion thereof grouted in an open drill hole in soil without temporary casing, the minimum design diameter of the drill hole shall be verified by a suitable device during grouting.
3. For micropiles designed for end bearing, a suitable means shall be employed to verify that the bearing surface is properly cleaned prior to grouting.
4. Subsequent micropiles shall not be drilled near elements that have been grouted until the grout has had sufficient time to harden.
5. Micropiles shall be grouted as soon as possible after drilling is completed.
6. For micropiles designed with a full-length casing, the casing shall be pulled back to the top of the bond zone and reinserted or some other suitable means employed to ensure grout coverage outside the casing.

**1810A.4.11 Helical piles.** Helical piles shall be installed to specified embedment depth and torsional resistance criteria as determined by a registered design professional. The torque applied during installation shall not exceed the manufacturer's rated maximum installation torque resistance of the helical pile.

**1810A.4.12 Special inspection.** Special inspections in accordance with Sections 1705A.7 and 1705A.8 shall be provided for driven and cast-in-place deep foundation elements, respectively. Special inspections in accordance with Section 1705A.9 shall be provided for helical piles.

## **SECTION 1811A PRESTRESSED ROCK AND SOIL FOUNDATION ANCHORS**

**1811A.1 General.** The requirements of this section address the use of vertical rock and soil anchors in resisting seismic or wind overturning forces resulting in tension on shallow foundations.

**1811A.2 Adoption.** Except for the modifications as set forth in Sections 1811A.3 and 1811A.4, all prestressed rock and soil foundation anchors shall comply with PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors.

**1811A.3 Geotechnical requirements.** Geotechnical report for the prestressed rock and soil foundation anchors shall address the following:

1. Minimum diameter and minimum spacing for the anchors including consideration of group effects.
2. Maximum unbonded length and minimum bonded length of the tendon.
3. Maximum recommended anchor tension capacity based upon the soil or rock strength/grout bond and anchor depth/spacing.
4. Allowable bond stress at the ground/grout interface and applicable factor of safety for ultimate bond stress.
5. Anchor axial tension stiffness recommendations at the anticipated anchor axial tension displacements, when required for structural analysis.
6. Minimum grout pressure for installation and post-grout pressure.
7. Class I corrosion protection is required for all permanent and extended temporary anchors in service more than 2 years. A minimum of Class II corrosion protection is required for temporary anchors in service less than or equal to 2 years.
8. Performance test shall be at a minimum of 1.6 times the design loads, but shall not exceed 80 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons. There shall be a minimum of two preproduction test anchors. Preproduction test anchors shall be tested to ultimate load or maximum of 0.80 times the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendon. A creep test is required for all prestressed anchors with greater than 10 kips of lock-off prestressing load.
9. Lock-off prestressing load requirements.
10. Acceptable drilling methods.
11. Geotechnical observation and monitoring requirements.

**1811A.4 Structural Requirements.**

1. Tendons shall be thread-bar anchors conforming to ASTM A722.
2. The anchors shall be placed vertical.
3. Design loads shall be based upon the load combinations in Section 2.4 of ASCE 7 and shall not exceed 60

percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons.

4. Ultimate load shall be based upon Section 1617A.1.16 and shall not exceed 80 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons.
5. The anchor shall be designed to fail in grout bond to the soil or rock before pullout of the soil wedge by group effect.
6. Foundation design shall incorporate the effect of lock-off loads.
7. Design shall account for as-built locations of soil anchors considering all the acceptable construction tolerances.
8. Design shall account for both short and long term deformation.
9. Enforcement agency may require consideration of anchor deformation in evaluating deformation compatibility or building drift where it may be significant.

## **SECTION 1812A EARTH RETAINING SHORING**

**1812A.1 General.** The requirements of this section shall apply to temporary and permanent earth retaining shoring using soldier piles and lagging with or without tie-back anchors in soil or rock, only when existing or new facilities are affected. Shoring used as construction means and methods only, which does not affect existing or new facilities, are not regulated by this section and shall satisfy the requirements of the authorities having jurisdiction.

Design, construction, testing and inspection shall satisfy the requirements of this code except as modified in Sections 1812A.2 through 1812A.8.

**1812A.2 Duration.** Shoring shall be considered temporary when elements of the shoring will be exposed to site conditions for a period of less than or equal to 2 years, and shall be considered permanent otherwise. Permanent shoring shall account for the increase in lateral soil pressure due to earthquake. At the end of the construction period, the existing and new structures shall not rely on the temporary shoring for support in any way. Wood components shall not be used for permanent shoring lasting more than 2 years. Wood components of the temporary shoring that may affect the performance of permanent structure shall be removed after the shoring is no longer required.

All components of the shoring shall have corrosion protection or preservative treatment for their expected duration. Wood components of the temporary shoring that will not be removed shall be treated in accordance with AWPA U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B and Section 5.2), and shall be identified in accordance with Section 2303.1.9.1.

**1812A.3 Surcharge.** Surcharge pressure due to footings, traffic or other sources shall be considered in design. If the footing surcharge is located within the semicircular distribution or bulb of earth pressure (when shoring is located close

*to a footings), lagging shall be designed for lateral earth pressure due to footing surcharge. Soil arching effects may be considered in the design of lagging. Underpinning of the footing may be used in lieu of designing the shoring and lagging for surcharge pressure. Alternatively, continuously contacting drilled pier shafts near the footings shall be permitted. The lateral surcharge design pressure shall be derived using Boussinesq equations modified for the distribution of stresses in an elastic medium due to a uniform, concentrated or line surface load as appropriate and soil arching effects.*

**1812A.4 Design and testing:** Except for the modifications as set forth in Sections 1812A.4.1 through 1812A.4.3, all Prestressed Rock and Soil Tie-back Anchors shall comply with PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors.

**1812A.4.1 Geotechnical requirements:** The geotechnical report for the earth retaining shoring shall address the following:

1. Minimum diameter and minimum spacing for the anchors including consideration of group effects.
2. Maximum unbonded length and minimum bonded length of the tie-back anchors.
3. Maximum recommended anchor tension capacity based upon the soil or rock strength/grout bond and anchor depth/spacing.
4. Allowable bond stress at the ground/grout interface and applicable factor of safety for ultimate bond stress for the anchor. For permanent anchors, a minimum factor of safety of 2.0 shall be applied to ground soil interface as required by PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors Section 6.6.
5. Minimum grout pressure for installation and post-grout pressure for the anchor. The presumptive post grout pressure of 300 psi may be used for all soil type.
6. Class I corrosion protection is required for all permanent and extended temporary anchors in service more than 2 years. A minimum of Class II corrosion protection is required for temporary anchors in service less than or equal to 2 years.
7. Performance test for the anchors shall be at a minimum of two (2) times the design loads and shall not exceed 80 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the anchor rod. A creep test is required for all prestressed anchors that are performance tested. All production anchors shall be tested at 150 percent of design loads and shall not be greater than 70 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the anchor rod.
8. Earth pressure, surcharge pressure and the seismic increment of earth pressure loading, when applicable.
9. Maximum recommended lateral deformation at the top of the soldier pile, at the tie-back anchor

*locations and the drilled pier concrete shafts at the lowest grade level.*

10. Allowable vertical soil bearing pressure friction resistance, and lateral passive soil resistance for the drilled pier concrete shafts and associated factors of safety for these allowable capacities.
11. Soil-pier shaft/pile interaction assumptions and lateral soil stiffness to be used in design for drilled pier concrete shaft or pile lateral loads.
12. Acceptable drilling methods.
13. Geotechnical observation and monitoring recommendations.

#### **1812A.4.2 Structural requirements:**

1. Tendons shall be thread-bar anchors conforming to ASTM A722.
2. Anchor design loads shall be based upon the load combinations in Section 2.4 of ASCE 7 and shall not exceed 60 percent of the specified minimum tensile strength of the tendons.
3. The anchor shall be designed to fail in grout bond to the soil or rock before pullout of the soil wedge.
4. Design of shoring system shall account for as-built locations of soil anchors considering all specified construction tolerances in Section 1812A.8.
5. Design of shoring system shall account for both short and long-term deformation.

#### **1812A.4.3 Testing of tie-back anchors:**

1. The geotechnical engineer shall keep a record at job site of all test loads, total anchor movement, and report their accuracy.
2. The shoring design engineer shall specify design loads for each anchor.

**1812A.5 Construction.** The construction procedure shall address the following:

1. Holes drilled for piles/tie-back anchors shall be done without detrimental loss of ground, sloughing or caving of materials and without endangering previously installed shoring members or existing foundations.
2. Drilling of earth anchor shafts for tie-backs shall occur when the drill bench reaches two to three feet below the level of the tie-back pockets.
3. Casing or other methods shall be used where necessary to prevent loss of ground and collapse of the hole.
4. The drill cuttings from earth anchor shaft shall be removed prior to anchor installation.
5. Unless tremie methods are used, all water and loose materials shall be removed from the holes prior to installing piles/tie-backs.
6. Tie-back anchor rods with attached centralizing devices shall be installed into the shaft or through the drill casing. Centralizing device shall not restrict movement of the grout.

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

7. After lagging installation, voids between lagging and soil shall be backfilled immediately to the full height of lagging.
8. The soldier piles shall be placed within specified tolerances in the drilled hole and braced against displacement during grouting. Fill shafts with concrete up to top of footing elevation, rest of the shaft can generally be filled with lean concrete. Excavation for lagging shall not be started until concrete has achieved sufficient strength for all anticipated loads as determined by the shoring design engineer.
9. Where boulders and/or cobbles have been identified in the geotechnical reports, contractor shall be prepared to address boulders and/or cobbles that may be encountered during the drilling of soldier piles and tie-back anchors.
10. The grouting equipment shall produce grout free of lumps and indispensed cement. The grouting equipment shall be sized to enable the grout to be pumped in continuous operation. The mixer shall be capable of continuously agitating the grout.
11. The quantity of grout and grout pressure shall be recorded. The grout pressure shall be controlled to prevent excessive heave in soils or fracturing rock formations.
12. If post-grouting is required, post-grouting operation shall be performed after initial grout has set for 24 hours in the bond length only. Tie-backs shall be grouted over a sufficient length (anchor bond length) to transfer the maximum anchor force to the anchor grout.
13. Testing of anchors in accordance with Section 1812A.4.1, Item 7 may be performed after post-grouting operations, provided grout has reached strength of 3,000 psi as required by PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors Section 6.11.
14. Anchor rods shall be tensioned straight and true. Excavation directly below the anchors shall not continue before those anchors are tested.
15. If a tie-back anchor initially fails the testing requirements, the anchor shall be permitted to be regROUTed and retested. If anchor continues to fail, the following steps shall be taken:
  - a. The contractor shall determine the cause of failure—variations of the soil conditions, installation methods, materials, etc.
  - b. The contractor shall propose a solution to remedy the problem. The proposed solution will need to be reviewed and approved by the geotechnical engineer, shoring design engineer and building official.
16. After a satisfactory test, each anchor shall be locked-off in accordance with Section 8.4 of PTI Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors.

### **1812A.6 Inspection, survey monitoring and observation.**

1. The shoring design engineer or his designee shall make periodic visits to the job site for the purpose of observing the installation of shoring system, testing of tie-back anchors and monitoring of survey.
2. Testing, inspection and observation shall be in accordance with testing, inspection and observation requirements approved by the building official. The following activities and materials shall be tested, inspected or observed by the special inspector and geotechnical engineer:
  - a. Sampling and testing of concrete in soldier pile and tie-back anchor shafts.
  - b. Fabrication of tie-back anchor pockets on soldier beams
  - c. Installation and testing of tie-back anchors.
  - d. Survey monitoring of soldier pile and tie-back load cells.
  - e. Survey monitoring of existing buildings.
3. A complete and accurate record of all soldier pile locations, depths, concrete strengths, tie-back locations and lengths, tie-back grout strength, quantity of concrete per pile, quantity of grout per tie-back and applied tie-back loads shall be maintained by the special inspector and geotechnical engineer. The shoring design engineer shall be notified of any unusual conditions encountered during installation.
4. Calibration data for each test jack, pressure gauge and master pressure gauge shall be verified by the special inspector and geotechnical engineer. The calibration tests shall be performed by an independent testing laboratory and within 120 calendar days of the data submitted.
5. Monitoring points shall be established at the top and at the anchor heads of selected soldier piles and at intermediate intervals as considered appropriate by the geotechnical engineer.
6. Control points shall be established outside the area of influence of the shoring system to ensure the accuracy of the monitoring readings.
7. The periodic basis of shoring monitoring, as a minimum, shall be as follows:
  - a. Initial monitoring shall be performed prior to any excavation.
  - b. Once excavation has begun, the periodic readings shall be taken weekly until excavation reaches the estimated subgrade elevation and the permanent foundation is complete.
  - c. If performance of the shoring is within established guidelines, shoring design engineer may permit the periodic readings to be bi-weekly. Once initiated, bi-weekly readings shall continue until the building slab at ground floor level is

*completed and capable of transmitting lateral loads to the permanent structure. Thereafter, readings can be monthly.*

- d. *Where the building has been designed to resist lateral earth pressures, the periodic monitoring of the soldier piles and adjacent structure can be discontinued once the ground floor diaphragm and subterranean portion of the structure is capable of resisting lateral soil loads and approved by the shoring design engineer, geotechnical engineer and building official.*
- e. *Additional readings shall be taken when requested by the special inspector, shoring design engineer, geotechnical engineer or building official.*
- 8. *Monitoring reading shall be submitted to the shoring design engineer, engineer in responsible charge and building official within three working days after they are conducted. Monitoring readings shall be accurate to within 0.01 feet. Results are to be submitted in tabular form showing at least the initial date of monitoring and reading, current monitoring date and reading and difference between the two readings.*
- 9. *If the total cumulative horizontal or vertical movement (from start of construction) of the existing buildings reaches  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch or soldier piles reaches 1 inch all excavation activities shall be suspended. The geotechnical and shoring design engineer shall determine the cause of movement, if any, and recommend corrective measures, if necessary, before excavation continues.*
- 10. *If the total cumulative horizontal or vertical movement (from start of construction) of the existing buildings reaches  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch or soldier piles reaches  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches all excavation activities shall be suspended until the causes, if any, can be determined. Supplemental shoring shall be devised to eliminate further movement and the building official shall review and approve the supplemental shoring before excavation continues.*
- 11. *Monitoring of tie-back anchor loads:*
  - a. *Load cells shall be installed at the tie-back heads adjacent to buildings at maximum interval of 50 feet, with a minimum of one load cells per wall.*
  - b. *Load cell readings shall be taken once a day during excavation and once a week during the remainder of construction.*
  - c. *Load cell readings shall be submitted to the geotechnical engineer, shoring design engineer, engineer in responsible charge and building official.*
  - d. *Load cell readings can be terminated once the temporary shoring no longer provides support for the buildings.*

#### > 1812A.7 Monitoring of existing structures.

- 1. *The contractor shall complete a written and photographic log of all existing structures within 100 ft or three times depth of shoring, prior to construction. A*

*licensed surveyor shall document all existing substantial cracks in adjacent existing structures.*

- 2. *The contractor shall document existing condition of wall cracks adjacent to shoring walls prior to start of construction.*
- 3. *The contractor shall monitor existing walls for movement or cracking that may result from adjacent shoring.*
- 4. *If excessive movement or visible cracking occurs, the contractor shall stop work and shore/reinforce excavation and contact the shoring design engineer and building official.*
- 5. *Monitoring of the existing structure shall be at reasonable intervals as required by the registered design professional subject to approval of the building official. Monitoring shall be performed by a licensed surveyor and shall consist of vertical and lateral movement of the existing structures. Prior to starting shoring installation a preconstruction meeting shall take place between the contractor, shoring design engineer, surveyor, geotechnical engineer and building official to identify monitoring locations on existing buildings.*
- 6. *If in the opinion of the building official or shoring design engineer, monitoring data indicate excessive movement or other distress, all excavation shall cease until the geotechnical engineer and shoring design engineer investigate the situation and make recommendations for remediation or continuing.*
- 7. *All reading and measurements shall be submitted to the building official and shoring design engineer.*

**1812A.8 Tolerances.** *The following tolerances shall be specified on the construction documents.*

- 1. *Soldier piles:*
  - i. *Horizontal and vertical construction tolerances for the soldier pile locations.*
  - ii. *Soldier pile plumbness requirements (angle with vertical line).*
- 2. *Tie-back anchors:*
  - i. *Allowable deviation of anchor projected angle from specified vertical and horizontal design projected angle.*
  - ii. *Anchor clearance to the existing/new utilities and structures.*

## SECTION 1813A VIBRO STONE COLUMNS FOR GROUND IMPROVEMENT

**1813A.1 General.** *This section shall apply to vibro stone columns (VSCs) for ground improvement using unbound aggregate materials. Vibro stone column provisions in this section are intended to increase bearing capacity, reduce settlements and mitigate liquefaction for shallow foundations. These requirements shall not be used for grouted or bonded stone columns, ground improvement for deep foundation elements or changing site class. VSCs shall not be considered a deep foundation element. Ground improvement shall be*

## SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS

*installed under the entire building/structure footprint and not under isolated foundation elements only. Design, construction, testing and inspection shall satisfy the requirements of this code except as modified in Sections 1813A.2 through 1813A.5.*

**1813A.2 Geotechnical report.** The geotechnical report shall specify vibro stone column requirements to ensure uniformity in total and differential immediate settlement, long term settlement and earthquake induced settlement.

1. Soil compaction shall be in accordance with California Geological Survey (CGS) Special Publication 117A (SP-117A): Guidelines for Evaluating and Mitigating Seismic Hazard in California.
2. Area replacement ratio for the compaction elements and the basis of its determination shall be explained. Minimum factor of safety for soil compaction shall be in accordance with SP-117A.
3. Depth of soil compaction elements and extent beyond the footprint of structures/foundation shall be defined. Extent beyond the foundation shall be half the depth of the VSCs with a minimum of 10 ft or an approved alternative.
4. Minimum diameter and maximum spacing of soil compaction elements shall be specified. VSCs shall not be less than 2 feet in diameter, and center to center spacing shall not exceed 8 feet.
5. The modulus of subgrade reactions for shallow foundations shall account for the presence of compaction elements.
6. The modulus of subgrade reactions, long-term settlement and post-earthquake settlement shall be specified along with expected total and differential settlements for design.
7. The acceptance criteria for Friction Cone and Piezocone Penetration Testing in accordance with ASTM D5778 complemented by the standard penetration test (SPT) in accordance with ASTM D1586, if necessary, to verify soil improvement shall be specified.
8. The requirements for special inspection and observation by the geotechnical engineer shall be specified.
9. A final verified report (FVR) documenting the installation of the ground improvement system and confirming that the ground improvement acceptance criteria have been met shall be prepared by the geotechnical engineer and submitted to the enforcement agency for review and approval.

**1813A.3 Shallow foundations.** VSCs under the shallow foundation shall be located symmetrically around the centroid of the footing or load.

1. There shall be a minimum of four stone columns under each isolated or continuous/combined footing or approved equivalent.

2. The VSCs shall not be used to resist tension or overturning uplift from the shallow foundations.
3. The foundation design for the shallow foundation shall consider the increased vertical stiffness of the VSCs as point supports for analysis, unless it is substantiated that the installation of the VSCs result in improvement of the surrounding soils such that the modulus of subgrade reaction, long term settlement and post-earthquake settlement can be considered uniform throughout.

**1813A.4 Installation.** VSCs shall be installed with vibratory probes. Vertical columns of compacted unbound aggregate shall be formed through the soils to be improved by adding gravel near the tip of the vibrator and progressively raising and repenetrating the vibrator which will results in the gravel being pushed into the surrounding soil. Gravel aggregate for VSCs shall be well graded with a maximum size of 6 inches and not more than 10 percent smaller than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch after compaction.

**1813A.5 Construction documents.** Construction documents for VSCs, as a minimum, shall include the following:

1. Size, depth and location of VSCs.
2. Extent of soil improvements along with building/structure foundation outlines.
3. Field verification requirements and acceptance criteria using CPT/SPT.
4. The locations where CPT/SPT shall be performed.
5. The testing, inspection and observation (TIO) program shall indicate the inspection and observation required for the VSCs.
6. A note indicating foundation construction shall not commence until the final verified report specified in Section 1813A.2 Item 9 has been submitted to and approved by the enforcement agency.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 19 – CONCRETE

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter														X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)	X			X	X					X		X	X			X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							
1901.1.1										X		X	X			X							
1901.1.2										X		X	X			X							
1901.1.3										X		X	X			X							
1901.1.4										X		X	X			X							
1901.3.1												X	X			X							
1901.3.2												X	X			X							
1901.3.3												X	X			X							
1901.3.4												X	B			X							
1901.3.4 Exception 6												B											
1901.3.4.2												X	X			X							
1901.3.4.5 Exception												X	X			X							
1903.2												X	X			X							
1903.4												X	X			X							
1903.5												X	X			X							
1903.7												X	X			X							
1903.8												X	X			X							
1905.1.2	X																						
1905.1.3	X																						
1905.1.7												X	B			X							
1905.1.8	X																						
1906												X	X			X							
1907.1.1							X																
1908.1												X	B			X							
1908.2												X	B			X							
1908.3												X	B			X							
1908.5												X	X			X							
1908.7												X	X			X							
1908.9												X	X			X							
1908.10.2												X	X			X							
1909												X											
1910												X	B			X							
1911												X	X			X							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

(A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.



# CHAPTER 19

## CONCRETE

*Italics are used for text within Sections 1903 through 1905 of this code to indicate model code provisions that differ from ACI 318.*

*State of California amendments in these sections are shown in italics and underlined.*



### User notes:

**About this chapter:** Chapter 19 provides minimum accepted practices for the design and construction of buildings and structural components using concrete—both plain and reinforced. Chapter 19 relies primarily on the reference to American Concrete Institute (ACI) 318, Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete. Structural concrete must be designed and constructed to comply with this code and all listed standards. There are also specific provisions addressing concrete slabs and shotcrete.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 1901 GENERAL

**1901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, quality control, design and construction of concrete used in structures.

**1901.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** The scope of application of Chapter 19 is as follows:

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.*
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development*

*Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2 and 1.10.5, regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.*

**1901.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** DSA-SS/CC adopts this chapter and all amendments.

**Exceptions:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. *Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges:*

*[DSA-SS/CC] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.*

2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development*

*[OSHPD 1R] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.*

*[OSHPD 2] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.*

*[OSHPD 5] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.*

**1901.1.3 Reference to other chapters. [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 17 and 18, the provisions in Chapters 17A and 18A respectively shall apply instead.

#### **1901.1.4 Amendments. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]**

1. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] See Section 1910 for additional requirements applicable to hospital buildings that have been removed from acute care service, skilled nursing and intermediate care facility buildings, and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.*

2. *[DSA-SS/CC] See Section 1909 for additional requirements applicable to community colleges.*

**1901.2 Plain and reinforced concrete.** Structural concrete shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905 of this code. Except for the provisions of Sections 1904 and 1907, the design and construction of slabs on grade shall not be governed by this chapter unless they transmit vertical loads or lateral forces from other parts of the structure to the soil.

**1901.3 Anchoring to concrete.** Anchoring to concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905, and applies to cast-in (headed bolts, headed studs and hooked J- or L-bolts), post-installed expansion (torque-controlled and displacement-controlled), undercut, screw, and adhesive anchors.

#### **1901.3.1 Power actuated fasteners. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]**

*Power actuated fasteners qualified in accordance with ICC-ES AC 70 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.4.5.*

*Power actuated fasteners shall be permitted in seismic shear for components exempt from construction documents review by ASCE 7, Section 13.1.4 and for interior non-bearing non-shear wall partitions only. Power actuated fastener shall not be used to anchor seismic bracing, exterior cladding or curtain wall systems.*

**Exception:** Power actuated fasteners in steel to steel connections prequalified for seismic application by

## CONCRETE

cyclic tests in accordance with ICC-ES AC 70 shall be permitted for seismic design.

**1901.3.2 Mechanical anchors and specialty inserts.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Mechanical anchors qualified in accordance with ICC-ES AC 193 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of this section.

Specialty inserts, including cast-in-place specialty inserts, tested in accordance with ICC-ES AC 232 or AC 446 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1901.3.3 Post-installed adhesive anchors.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Adhesive anchors qualified in accordance with ICC-ES AC 308 shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements of this section.

**1901.3.4 Tests for post-installed anchors in concrete.** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] When post-installed anchors are used in lieu of cast-in place bolts, the installation verification test loads, frequency and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with this section.

**1901.3.4.1 General.** Test loads or torques and acceptance criteria shall be shown on the construction documents.

If any anchor fails testing, all anchors of the same type shall be tested, which are installed by the same trade, not previously tested until twenty (20) consecutive anchors pass, then resume the initial test frequency.

**1901.3.4.2 Testing procedure.** The test procedure shall be as permitted by an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code. All post-installed anchors shall be tension tested. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Tension testing to verify proper installation shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E3121.

**Exception:** Torque controlled post installed anchors shall be permitted to be tested using torque based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

Alternatively, manufacturer's recommendation for testing may be approved by the enforcement agency based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

**1901.3.4.3 Test frequency.** When post-installed anchors are used for sill plate bolting applications, 10 percent of the anchors shall be tested.

When post-installed anchors are used for other structural applications, all such anchors shall be tested.

When post-installed anchors are used for nonstructural components, such as equipment anchorage, 50 percent or alternate bolts in a group, including at least one-half the anchors in each group, shall be tested.

The testing of the post-installed anchors shall be done in the presence of the special inspector and a

report of the test results shall be submitted to the enforcement agency.

### Exceptions:

1. Undercut anchors that allow visual confirmation of full set shall not require testing.
2. Where the design tension on anchors is less than 100 pounds and those anchors are clearly noted on the approved construction documents, only 10 percent of those anchors shall be tested.
3. Where adhesive anchor systems are used to install reinforcing dowel bars in hardened concrete, only 25 percent of the dowels shall be tested if all of the following conditions are met:
  - a. The dowels are used exclusively to transmit shear forces across joints between existing and new concrete.
  - b. The number of dowels in any one member equals or exceeds twelve (12).
  - c. The dowels are uniformly distributed across seismic force resisting members (such as shear walls, collectors and diaphragms).

Anchors to be tested shall be selected at random by the special inspector/inspector of record (IOR).

4. Testing of shear dowels across cold joints in slabs on grade, where the slab is not part of the lateral force-resisting system shall not be required.
5. Testing is not required for power actuated fasteners used to attach tracks of interior non-shear wall partitions for shear only, where there are at least three fasteners per segment of track.
6. [OSHPD 2B] In state detention and correctional facilities, tension testing is not required for post-installed anchors used for attaching nonstructural components, such as grab bars and shower seats, to concrete walls if the components do not contribute to security/detainment, life safety and the continuous operation of the institution following an event of extreme environmental loading from flood, wind, snow or earthquakes, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**1901.3.4.4 Test loads.** Required test loads shall be determined by one of the following methods:

1. Twice the maximum allowable tension load or one and a quarter ( $1\frac{1}{4}$ ) times the maximum design strength of anchors as provided in approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code or determined in accordance with Chapter 17 of ACI 318.

*Tension test load need not exceed 80 percent of the nominal yield strength of the anchor element ( $= 0.8 A_{se} f_{ya}$ ).*

2. *The manufacturer's recommended installation torque based on approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.*

**1901.3.4.5 Test acceptance criteria.** Acceptance criteria for post-installed anchors shall be based on approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code. Field test shall satisfy following minimum requirements.

1. **Hydraulic ram method:**

*Anchors tested with a hydraulic jack or spring loaded devices shall maintain the test load for a minimum of 15 seconds and shall exhibit no discernable movement during the tension test, e.g., as evidenced by loosening of the washer under the nut.*

*The testing device shall not restrict the concrete shear cone type failure mechanism from occurring.*

**Exception:** When denoted accordingly on the approved construction documents, adhesive anchors complying with ACI 318 Equation 17.8.2a and for which concrete breakout does not control the design tensile strength may be tested with apparatus support locations closer than 1.5 times the anchor embedment depth.

2. **Torque wrench method:**

*Torque-controlled post-installed anchors tested with a calibrated torque wrench shall attain the specified torque within  $\frac{1}{2}$  turn of the nut; or one-quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ) turn of the nut for a  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch sleeve anchor only.*

**1901.4 Composite structural steel and concrete structures.** Systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with Section 2206 of this code.

**1901.5 Construction documents.** The construction documents for structural concrete construction shall include:

1. The specified compressive strength of concrete at the stated ages or stages of construction for which each concrete element is designed.
2. The specified strength or grade of reinforcement.
3. The size and location of structural elements, reinforcement and anchors.
4. Provision for dimensional changes resulting from creep, shrinkage and temperature.
5. The magnitude and location of prestressing forces.
6. Anchorage length of reinforcement and location and length of lap splices.
7. Type and location of mechanical and welded splices of reinforcement.
8. Details and location of contraction or isolation joints specified for plain concrete.

9. Minimum concrete compressive strength at time of posttensioning.
10. Stressing sequence for posttensioning tendons.
11. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, a statement if slab on grade is designed as a structural diaphragm.

**1901.6 Special inspections and tests.** Special inspections and tests of concrete elements of buildings and structures and concreting operations shall be as required by Chapter 17.

**1901.7 Tolerances for structural concrete.** Where not indicated in construction documents, structural tolerances for concrete structural elements shall be in accordance with this section.

**1901.7.1 Cast-in-place concrete tolerances.** Structural tolerances for cast-in-place concrete structural elements shall be in accordance with ACI 117.

#### Exceptions:

1. Group R-3 detached one- or two-family dwellings are not required to comply with this section.
2. Shotcrete is not required to comply with this section.

**1901.7.2 Precast concrete tolerances.** Structural tolerances for precast concrete structural elements shall be in accordance with ACI ITG-7.

**Exception:** Group R-3 detached one- or two-family dwellings are not required to comply with this section.

## SECTION 1902 COORDINATION OF TERMINOLOGY

**1902.1 General.** Coordination of terminology used in ACI 318 and ASCE 7 shall be in accordance with Sections 1902.1.1 and 1902.1.2.

**1902.1.1 Design displacement.** Design displacement at each level shall be the total lateral deflection at the level calculated for the design earthquake using the procedures defined in Section 12.8.6 of ASCE 7.

**1902.1.2 Special structural wall.** Special structural walls made of cast-in-place or precast concrete shall comply with the requirements of Sections 18.2.4 through 18.2.8, 18.10 and 18.11 of ACI 318, as applicable, in addition to the requirements for ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls or ordinary precast structural walls, as applicable. Where ASCE 7 refers to a "special reinforced concrete shear wall," it shall be deemed to mean a "special structural wall."

## SECTION 1903 SPECIFICATIONS FOR TESTS AND MATERIALS

**1903.1 General.** Materials used to produce concrete, concrete itself and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in ACI 318.

**Exception:** *The following standards as referenced in Chapter 35 shall be permitted to be used.*

1. ASTM C150

**CONCRETE**

2. ASTM C595
3. ASTM C1157

**1903.2 Special inspections.** Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 51 and Section 1901.]

**1903.3 Glass fiber-reinforced concrete.** Glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) and the materials used in such concrete shall be in accordance with the PCI MNL 128 standard.

**1903.4 Flat wall insulating concrete form (ICF) systems.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 51 Not Permitted by OSHPD.] Insulating concrete form material used for forming flat concrete walls shall conform to ASTM E2634.

**1903.5 Aggregates - [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 51 Modify ACI 318 Section 26.4.1.2.1(a).](1) as follows:**

- (1) Normal weight aggregate: Aggregate shall be non-reactive as determined by one of the methods in ASTM C33 Appendix X1: Methods for Evaluating Potential for Deleterious Expansion Due to Alkali Reactivity of an Aggregate. Aggregates deemed to be deleterious or potentially deleterious may be used with the addition of a material that has been shown to prevent harmful expansion in accordance with Appendix X1 of ASTM C33, when approved by the building official.

**1903.6 Limits on Cementitious Materials.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 51 Modify ACI 318 Section 26.4.2.2(b) and Table 26.4.2.2(b)] as follows:

The maximum percentage of pozzolans, including fly ash and silica fume, and slag cement in concrete assigned to all exposure categories shall be in accordance with Table 26.4.2.2(b) and Section 26.4.2.2(b) Items (1) and (2).

Where pozzolans are used as cementitious materials, duration for minimum specified compressive strength of concrete ( $f'_c$ ) that exceeds 28 days shall be considered an alternative system.

**1903.7 Steel fiber reinforcement - [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 51 Not permitted by OSHPD.]**

**1903.8 Welding of reinforcing bars - [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 51 Modify ACI 318 Section 26.6.4.1(b)]** by adding the following:

Subject to prior approval of the enforcing agency, longitudinal holding wires conforming to ASTM A1064, of maximum wire size W5, that are machine resistance welded to stirrup/tie cage (or spiral assemblies) consisting of low alloy steel reinforcing conforming to ASTM A706 are permitted when performed under continuous competent control in a fabrication shop. Tack welding of primary reinforcing bars together or to stirrups/ties is not permitted. Holding wire weld locations shall not occur on any longitudinal or primary reinforcing nor on any portion of a reinforcing bar that is or will be bent in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.3 for the extents specified in AWS D1.4 Section 4.2.6.

Quality control tests shall be performed on shop welded specimens by the fabricator. Reinforcing steel specimens containing the holding wire shall be tested for yield and ten-

sile strength at the frequency required by Section 1910.2. Test reports shall be available on request to the approved agency, design professional and enforcement agency.

## SECTION 1904 DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS

**1904.1 Structural concrete.** Structural concrete shall conform to the durability requirements of ACI 318.

**Exception:** For Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies not more than three stories above grade plane, the specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , for concrete in basement walls, foundation walls, exterior walls and other vertical surfaces exposed to the weather shall be not less than 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa).

**1904.2 Nonstructural concrete.** The registered design professional shall assign nonstructural concrete a freeze-thaw exposure class, as defined in ACI 318, based on the anticipated exposure of nonstructural concrete. Nonstructural concrete shall have a minimum specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) for Class F0; 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for Class F1; and 3,500 psi (24.1 MPa) for Classes F2 and F3. Nonstructural concrete shall be air entrained in accordance with ACI 318.

## SECTION 1905 MODIFICATIONS TO ACI 318

**1905.1 General.** The text of ACI 318 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1905.1.1 through 1905.1.8.

**1905.1.1 ACI 318, Section 2.3.** Modify existing definitions and add the following definitions to ACI 318, Section 2.3.

**DETAILED PLAIN CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, including 14.6.2.

**ORDINARY PRECAST STRUCTURAL WALL.** A precast wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

**ORDINARY REINFORCED CONCRETE STRUCTURAL WALL.** A cast-in-place wall complying with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 13, 15, 16 and 19 through 26.

**ORDINARY STRUCTURAL PLAIN CONCRETE WALL.** A wall complying with the requirements of Chapter 14, excluding 14.6.2.

**1905.1.2 ACI 318, Section 18.2.1.** Modify ACI 318 Sections 18.2.1.2 and 18.2.1.6 to read as follows:

- 18.2.1.2 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A shall satisfy requirements of Chapters 1 through 17 and 19 through 26; Chapter 18 does not apply. Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D, E or F shall satisfy 18.2.1.3 through 18.2.1.7, as applicable. Except for structural elements of plain concrete complying with Section 1905.1.7 of the California Building Code, structural

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

*elements of plain concrete are prohibited in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.*

- 18.2.1.6 – Structural systems designated as part of the *seismic force-resisting system* shall be restricted to those *permitted by ASCE 7*. Except for *Seismic Design Category A*, for which Chapter 18 does not apply, the following provisions shall be satisfied for each structural system designated as part of the *seismic force-resisting system*, regardless of the *seismic design category*:
  - (a) Ordinary moment frames shall satisfy 18.3.
  - (b) *Ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls and ordinary precast structural walls* need not satisfy any provisions in Chapter 18.
  - (c) Intermediate moment frames shall satisfy 18.4.
  - (d) Intermediate precast *structural walls* shall satisfy 18.5.
  - (e) Special moment frames shall satisfy 18.6 through 18.9.
  - (f) Special structural walls shall satisfy 18.10.
  - (g) Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy 18.11.

Special moment frames and special structural walls shall also satisfy 18.2.4 through 18.2.8.

**1905.1.3 ACI 318, Section 18.5.** Modify ACI 318, Section 18.5 by adding new Section 18.5.2.2 and renumbering existing Sections 18.5.2.2 and 18.5.2.3 to become 18.5.2.3 and 18.5.2.4, respectively.

*18.5.2.2 – Connections that are designed to yield shall be capable of maintaining 80 percent of their design strength at the deformation induced by the design displacement or shall use Type 2 mechanical splices.*

*18.5.2.3 – Elements of the connection that are not designed to yield shall develop at least  $1.5 S_y$ .*

*18.5.2.4 – In structures assigned to SDC D, E or F, wall piers shall be designed in accordance with 18.10.8 or 18.14 in ACI 318.*

**1905.1.4 ACI 318, Section 18.11.** Modify ACI 318, Section 18.11.2.1 to read as follows:

*18.11.2.1 – Special structural walls constructed using precast concrete shall satisfy all the requirements of 18.10 for *cast-in-place special structural walls* in addition to 18.5.2.*

**1905.1.5 ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1.** Modify ACI 318, Section 18.13.1.1 to read as follows:

*18.13.1.1 – Foundations resisting earthquake-induced forces or transferring earthquake-induced forces between a structure and ground shall comply with the requirements of 18.13 and other applicable provisions of ACI 318 unless modified by Chapter 18 of the California Building Code.*

**1905.1.6 ACI 318, Section 14.6.** Modify ACI 318, Section 14.6 by adding new Section 14.6.2 to read as follows:

*14.6.2 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls.*

*14.6.2.1 – Detailed plain concrete structural walls are walls conforming to the requirements of ordinary structural plain concrete walls and 14.6.2.2.*

*14.6.2.2 – Reinforcement shall be provided as follows:*

- *Vertical reinforcement of at least 0.20 square inch ( $129 \text{ mm}^2$ ) in cross-sectional area shall be provided continuously from support to support at each corner, at each side of each opening and at the ends of walls. The continuous vertical bar required beside an opening is permitted to substitute for one of the two No. 5 bars required by 14.6.1.*
- *Horizontal reinforcement at least 0.20 square inch ( $129 \text{ mm}^2$ ) in cross-sectional area shall be provided:*
  1. *Continuously at structurally connected roof and floor levels and at the top of walls.*
  2. *At the bottom of load-bearing walls or in the top of foundations where doweled to the wall.*
  3. *At a maximum spacing of 120 inches (3048 mm).*

*Reinforcement at the top and bottom of openings, where used in determining the maximum spacing specified in Item 3 above, shall be continuous in the wall.*

**1905.1.7 ACI 318, Section 14.1.4.** Delete ACI 318, Section 14.1.4 and replace with the following:

**IOSHPD 1R, 2B & 51 Plain concrete shall not be permitted for a structure assigned to Seismic Design Category (SDC) D, E and F.**

*14.1.4 – Plain concrete in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F.*

*14.1.4.1 – Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C, D, E or F shall not have elements of structural plain concrete, except as follows:*

- *Structural plain concrete basement, foundation or other walls below the base as defined in ASCE 7 are permitted in detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls. In dwellings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, the height of the wall shall not exceed 8 feet (2438 mm), the thickness shall be not less than  $7\frac{1}{2}$  inches (190 mm), and the wall shall retain no more than 4 feet (1219 mm) of unbalanced fill. Walls shall have reinforcement in accordance with 14.6.1.*
- *Isolated footings of plain concrete supporting pedestals or columns are permitted, provided the projection of the footing beyond the face of the*

## CONCRETE

*supported member does not exceed the footing thickness.*

**Exception:** In detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height, the projection of the footing beyond the face of the supported member is permitted to exceed the footing thickness.

- Plain concrete footings supporting walls are permitted, provided the footings have at least two continuous longitudinal reinforcing bars. Bars shall not be smaller than No. 4 and shall have a total area of not less than 0.002 times the gross cross-sectional area of the footing. For footings that exceed 8 inches (203 mm) in thickness, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top and bottom of the footing. Continuity of reinforcement shall be provided at corners and intersections.

**Exceptions:**

1. In Seismic Design Categories A, B and C, detached one- and two-family dwellings three stories or less in height constructed with stud-bearing walls are permitted to have plain concrete footings without longitudinal reinforcement.
2. For foundation systems consisting of a plain concrete footing and a plain concrete stemwall, a minimum of one bar shall be provided at the top of the stemwall and at the bottom of the footing.
3. Where a slab on ground is cast monolithically with the footing, one No. 5 bar is permitted to be located at either the top of the slab or bottom of the footing.

**1905.1.8 ACI 318, Section 17.2.3.** Modify ACI 318 Sections 17.10.5.2, 17.10.5.3(d) and 17.10.6.2 to read as follows:

- 17.10.5.2 – Where the tensile component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor tensile force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.10.5.3. The anchor design tensile strength shall be determined in accordance with 17.10.5.4.

**Exception:** Anchors designed to resist wall out-of-plane forces with design strengths equal to or greater than the force determined in accordance with ASCE 7 Equation 12.11-1 or 12.14-10 shall be deemed to satisfy Section 17.10.5.3(d).

- 17.10.5.3(d) – The anchor or group of anchors shall be designed for the maximum tension obtained from design load combinations that include  $E$ , with  $E$  increased by  $\Omega_0$ . The anchor design tensile strength shall be calculated from 17.10.5.4.

- 17.10.6.2 – Where the shear component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor shear force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.10.6.3. The anchor design shear strength for resisting earthquake forces shall be determined in accordance with 17.7.

**Exceptions:**

1. For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching wood sill plates of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame wood structures to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.7.2 and 17.7.3 need not be computed and 17.10.6.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:

- 1.1. The allowable in-plane shear strength of the anchor is determined in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS Table 12E for lateral design values parallel to grain.
- 1.2. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is  $5/8$  inch (16 mm).
- 1.3. Anchor bolts are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).
- 1.4. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the wood sill plate.
- 1.5. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the wood sill plate.
- 1.6. The sill plate is 2-inch (51 mm) or 3-inch (76 mm) nominal thickness.

2. For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching cold-formed steel track of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame construction to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.7.2 and 17.7.3 need not be computed and 17.10.6.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:

- 2.1. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is  $5/8$  inch (16 mm).
- 2.2. Anchors are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).

- 2.3. Anchors are located a minimum of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the track.
- 2.4. Anchors are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the track.
- 2.5. The track is 33 to 68 mil (0.84 mm to 1.73 mm) designation thickness.

*Allowable in-plane shear strength of exempt anchors, parallel to the edge of concrete, shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with AISI S100 Section J3.3.1.*

3. In light-frame construction bearing or non-bearing walls, shear strength of concrete anchors less than or equal to 1 inch [25 mm] in diameter attaching sill plate or track to foundation or foundation stem wall need not satisfy 17.10.6.3(a) through (c) when the design strength of the anchors is determined in accordance with 17.7.2.1(c).

## SECTION 1906

### FOOTINGS FOR LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION

*[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Not permitted by OSHPD.*

**1906.1 Plain concrete footings.** For Group R-3 occupancies and buildings of other occupancies less than two stories above grade plane of light-frame construction, the required thickness of plain concrete footings is permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm), provided that the footing does not extend more than 4 inches (102 mm) on either side of the supported wall.

## SECTION 1907

### MINIMUM SLAB PROVISIONS

**1907.1 General.** The thickness of concrete floor slabs supported directly on the ground shall be not less than  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm). A 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the base course or subgrade and the concrete floor slab, or other approved equivalent methods or materials shall be used to retard vapor transmission through the floor slab.

**Exception:** A vapor retarder is not required:

1. For detached structures accessory to occupancies in Group R-3, such as garages, utility buildings or other unheated facilities.
2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet ( $6.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) and carports attached to occupancies in Group R-3.
3. For buildings of other occupancies where migration of moisture through the slab from below will not be detrimental to the intended occupancy of the building.

4. For driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork that will not be enclosed at a later date.
5. Where approved based on local site conditions.

**1907.1.1 [HCD 1] Capillary break.** When a vapor retarder is required, a capillary break shall be installed in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.5.

## SECTION 1908

### SHOTCRETE

**1908.1 General.** Shotcrete shall be in accordance with the requirements of ACI 318 *[OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]* and the provisions of ACI 506R. The evaluation of the shotcrete mockup panel to qualify bar clearance dimensions in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.2.7 or contact lap splices in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.5.1.7 shall be in accordance with the requirements of ACI 506.4R with a core quality category of Very Good given in ACI 506.6T.

**1908.2 Tests and inspections.** *[OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]* Pre-construction tests of one or more shotcrete mockup panels prepared in accordance with Section 1705.3.9.2 are required. In addition to testing requirements in ACI 318, special inspection and testing shall be in accordance with Section 1705.3.9.

**1908.3 Forms and ground wires for shotcrete.** *[OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]* Forms for shotcrete shall be substantial and rigid. Forms shall be built and placed so as to permit the escape of air and rebound.

Adequate ground wires, which are to be used as screeds, shall be placed to establish the thickness, surface planes and form of the shotcrete work. All surfaces shall be rodded to these wires.

## SECTION 1909

### ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNITY COLLEGES [DSA-SS/CC]

#### 1909.1 General.

**1909.1.1 Construction documents.** Openings larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in any dimension shall be detailed on the structural drawings.

**1909.2 Tests and materials.** Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17A and this section.

**1909.2.1 Aggregates - Modify ACI 318 Section 26.4.1.2.1(a).(1) as follows:**

**(1) Normal weight aggregate:** Aggregate shall be non-reactive as determined by one of the methods in ASTM C33 Appendix XI Methods for Evaluating Potential for Deleterious Expansion Due to Alkali Reactivity of an Aggregate. Aggregates deemed to be deleterious or potentially deleterious may be used with the addition of a material that has been shown to prevent harmful expansion in accordance with Appendix XI of ASTM C33, when approved by the building official.

## CONCRETE

### **1909.2.2 Steel fiber reinforcement - Not permitted.**

**1909.2.3 Cementitious material.** The concrete supplier shall furnish to the enforcement agency certification that the cement proposed for use on the project has been manufactured and tested in compliance with the requirements of ASTM C150 for portland cement and ASTM C595 or ASTM C1157 for blended hydraulic cement, whichever is applicable. When a mineral admixture or ground granulated blast-furnace slag is proposed for use, the concrete supplier shall furnish to the enforcement agency certification that they have been manufactured and tested in compliance with ASTM C618 or ASTM C989, whichever is applicable. The concrete producer shall provide copies of the cementitious material supplier's certificate of compliance that represents the materials used by date of shipment for concrete. Cementitious materials without certification of compliance shall not be used.

**1909.2.4 Tests of reinforcing bars.** Samples shall be taken from bundles as delivered from the mill, with the bundles identified as to heat number and the accompanying mill certificate. One tensile test and one bend test shall be made from a sample from each 10 tons (9080 kg) or fraction thereof of each size of reinforcing steel.

Where positive identification of the heat number cannot be made or where random samples are to be taken, one series of tests shall be made from each  $2\frac{1}{2}$  tons (2270 kg) or fraction thereof of each size of reinforcing steel.

Tests of reinforcing bars may be waived by the structural engineer with the approval of the Building Official for one-story buildings or non-building structures provided they are identified in the construction documents and certified mill test reports are provided to the inspector of record for each shipment of such reinforcement.

**1909.2.5 Tests for prestressing steel and anchorage.** All wires or bars of each size from each mill heat and all strands from each manufactured reel to be shipped to the site shall be assigned an individual lot number and shall be tagged in such a manner that each lot can be accurately identified at the job site. Each lot of tendon and anchorage assemblies and bar couplers to be installed shall be likewise identified.

The following samples of materials and tendons selected by the engineer or the designated testing laboratory from the prestressing steel at the plant or job site shall be furnished by the contractor and tested by an approved independent testing agency:

1. For wire, strand or bars, 7-foot-long (2134 mm) samples shall be taken of the coil of wire or strand reel or rods. A minimum of one random sample per 5,000 pounds (2270 kg) of each heat or lot used on the job shall be selected.
2. For prefabricated prestressing tendons other than bars, one completely fabricated tendon 10 feet (3048 mm) in length between grips with anchorage assembly at one end shall be furnished for each size and type of tendon and anchorage assembly.

Variations of the bearing plate size need not be considered.

The anchorages of unbonded tendons shall develop at least 95 percent of the minimum specified ultimate strength of the prestressing steel. The total elongation of the tendon under ultimate load shall not be less than 2 percent measured in a minimum gage length of 10 feet (3048 mm).

Anchorage of bonded tendons shall develop at least 90 percent of the minimum specified strength of the prestressing steel tested in an unbonded state. All couplings shall develop at least 95 percent of the minimum specified strength of the prestressing steel and shall not reduce the elongation at rupture below the requirements of the tendon itself.

3. If the prestressing tendon is a bar, one 7-foot (2134 mm) length complete with one end anchorage shall be furnished and, in addition, if couplers are to be used with the bar, two 4-foot (1219 mm) lengths of bar fabricated to fit and equipped with one coupler shall be furnished.
4. Mill tests of materials used for end anchorages shall be furnished. In addition, at least one Brinnell hardness test shall be made of each thickness of bearing plate.

**1909.2.6 Composite construction cores.** Cores of the completed composite concrete construction shall be taken to demonstrate the shear strength along the contact surfaces. The cores shall be tested when the cast-in-place concrete is approximately 28 days old and shall be tested by a shear loading parallel to the joint between the precast concrete and the cast-in-place concrete. The minimum unit shear strength of the contact surface area of the core shall not be less than 100 psi (689 kPa).

At least one core shall be taken from each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) of area of composite concrete construction and not less than three cores shall be taken from each project. The architect or structural engineer in responsible charge of the project or his or her representative shall designate the location for sampling.

**1909.2.7 Tests for post-installed anchors in concrete.** When post-installed anchors are used in lieu of cast-in-place bolts, the installation verification test loads frequency and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with this section.

**1909.2.7.1 General.** Test loads or torques and acceptance criteria shall be shown on the construction documents.

If any anchor fails testing, all anchors of the same type shall be tested, which are installed by the same trade, not previously tested until twenty (20) consecutive anchors pass, then resume the initial test frequency.

**1909.2.7.2 Testing procedure.** The test procedure shall be as permitted by an approved evaluation report using

criteria adopted in this code. All post-installed anchors shall be tension tested.

**Exception:** Torque-controlled post-installed anchors and screw type anchors shall be permitted to be tested using torque based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

Alternatively, the manufacturer's recommendation for testing may be approved by the enforcement agency based on approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

**1909.2.7.3 Test frequency.** When post-installed anchors are used for sill plate bolting applications, 10 percent of the anchors shall be tested.

When post-installed anchors are used for other structural applications, all such anchors shall be tested.

When post-installed anchors are used for nonstructural applications such as equipment anchorage, 50 percent or alternate bolts in a group, including at least one-half the anchors in each group, shall be tested.

The testing of the post-installed anchors shall be done in the presence of the special inspector and a report of the test results shall be submitted to the enforcement agency.

#### Exceptions:

1. Undercut anchors that allow visual confirmation of full set shall not require testing.
2. Where the design tension on anchors is less than 100 pounds and those anchors are clearly noted on the approved construction documents, only 10 percent of those anchors shall be tested.
3. Where adhesive anchor systems are used to install reinforcing dowel bars in hardened concrete, only 25 percent of the dowels shall be tested if all the following conditions are met:
  - a. The dowels are used exclusively to transmit shear forces across joints between existing and new concrete.
  - b. The number of dowels in any one member equals or exceeds 12.
  - c. The dowels are uniformly distributed across seismic force resisting members (such as shear walls, collectors and diaphragms).
4. Testing of shear dowels across cold joints in slabs on grade, where the slab is not part of the lateral force-resisting system shall not be required.
5. Testing is not required for power actuated fasteners used to attach tracks of interior non-

shear wall partitions for shear only where there are at least three fasteners per segment of track.

**1909.2.7.4 Test loads.** Required test loads shall be determined by one of the following methods:

1. Twice the maximum allowable tension load or one and a quarter ( $1\frac{1}{4}$ ) times the maximum design strength of anchors as provided in an approved test report using criteria adopted in this code or determined in accordance with Chapter 17 of ACI 318.

Tension test load need not exceed 80 percent of the nominal yield strength of the anchor element ( $= 0.8 A_{se} f_{ya}$ ).

2. The manufacturer's recommended installation torque based on an approved test report using criteria adopted in this code.

**1909.2.7.5 Test acceptance criteria.** Acceptance criteria for post-installed anchors shall be based on an approved test report using criteria adopted in this code. Field tests shall satisfy the following minimum requirements.

#### 1. Hydraulic ram method:

Anchors tested with a hydraulic jack or spring loaded apparatus shall maintain the test load for a minimum of 15 seconds and shall exhibit no discernible movement during the tension test, e.g., as evidenced by loosening of the washer under the nut.

The testing apparatus support locations shall not be within 1.5 times the anchor's embedment depth to avoid restricting the concrete shear cone type failure mechanism from occurring.

**Exception:** When denoted accordingly on the approved construction documents, adhesive anchors complying with ACI 318 Equation 17.8.2a and for which concrete breakout does not control the design tensile strength may be tested with apparatus support locations closer than 1.5 times the anchor embedment depth.

#### 2. Torque wrench method:

Torque-controlled post-installed anchors tested with a calibrated torque wrench shall attain the specified torque within  $\frac{1}{2}$  turn of the nut; or one-quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ) turn of the nut for a  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch sleeve anchor only.

Screw-type anchors tested with a calibrated torque wrench shall attain the specified torque within one-quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ) turn of the screw after initial seating of the screw head.

**1909.2.8 Flat wall insulating concrete form (ICF) systems.** ICF systems shall be considered alternative systems. Concrete constructed using ICF systems and attachments to ICF shall be designed for loads in accordance with this code and shall comply with manufacturer's instructions and industry standards deter-



## CONCRETE

mined applicable by the enforcement agency. Calculations and drawings shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for review and approval prior to construction.

### 1909.3 Modifications to ACI 318

#### 1909.3.1 ACI 318, Section 11.9. Modify ACI 318 by adding Section 11.9 as follows:

**11.9 - Foundation walls.** Horizontal reinforcing of concrete foundation walls for wood-frame or light-steel buildings shall consist of the equivalent of not less than one No. 5 bar located at the top and bottom of the wall. Where such walls exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height, intermediate horizontal reinforcing shall be provided at spacing not to exceed 2 feet (610 mm) on center. Minimum vertical reinforcing shall consist of No. 3 bars at 24 inches (610 mm) on center.

Where concrete foundation walls or curbs extend above the floor line and support wood-frame or light-steel exterior, bearing or shear walls, they shall be dowelled to the foundation wall below with a minimum of No. 3 bars at 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Where the height of the wall above the floor line exceeds 18 inches (457 mm), the wall above and below the floor line shall meet the requirements of ACI 318 Section 11.6 and 11.7.

#### 1909.3.2 ACI 318, Section 12.7.3. Add Section 12.7.3.4 to ACI 318 as follows:

**12.7.3.4** – At least two No. 5 bars in diaphragms having two layers of reinforcement in both directions and one No. 5 bar in diaphragms having a single layer of reinforcement in both directions shall be provided around openings larger than 12 inches in any dimension in addition to the minimum reinforcement required by Section 12.6.

#### 1909.3.3 ACI 318, Chapter 14. Plain concrete is not permitted.

#### 1909.3.4 ACI 318, Section 18.10.6.5. Modify ACI 318, Section 18.10.6.5 by adding the following:

Where boundary members are not required by ACI 318 Section 18.10.6.2 or 18.10.6.3, minimum reinforcement parallel to the edges of all structural walls and the boundaries of all openings shall consist of twice the cross-sectional area of the minimum shear reinforcement required per lineal foot of wall. Horizontal extent of boundary element shall be per ACI 318 Section 18.10.6.4 (a), (b) and (c).

#### 1909.3.5 ACI 318, Section 18.12.6. Add Section 18.12.6.2 to ACI 318 as follows:

Collector and boundary elements in topping slabs placed over precast floor and roof elements shall not be less than 3 inches (76 mm) or  $6 d_b$  thick, where  $d_b$  is the diameter of the largest reinforcement in the topping slab.

**1909.3.6 ACI 318, Table 21.2.2.** Replace Table 21.2.2 as follows:

TABLE 21.2.2  
STRENGTH REDUCTION FACTOR  $\phi$  FOR MOMENT,  
AXIAL FORCE, OR COMBINED MOMENT AND AXIAL FORCE

NET TENSILE STRAIN $\epsilon_t$	CLASSIFICATION	$\phi$			
		Type of transverse reinforcement			
		Spirals conforming to 25.7.3	Other		
$\epsilon_t \leq \epsilon_{ty}$	Compression-controlled	0.75	(a)	0.65	(b)
$\epsilon_{ty} < \epsilon_t < (\epsilon_{ty} + 0.003)$	Transition <sup>1,2</sup>	$0.75 + 0.15 \frac{\epsilon_t - \epsilon_{ty}}{\epsilon_t^* - \epsilon_{ty}}$	(c)	$0.65 + 0.25 \frac{\epsilon_t - \epsilon_{ty}}{\epsilon_t^* - \epsilon_{ty}}$	(d)
$\epsilon_t \geq (\epsilon_{ty} + 0.003)$	Tension-controlled <sup>3</sup>	0.9	(e)	0.9	(f)

1. For sections classified as transition, it shall be permitted to use  $\phi$  corresponding to compression-controlled sections.

2.  $\epsilon_t^*$  is the greater of net tensile strain calculated for  $P_n = 0.1A_f'c$  and  $(\epsilon_{ty} + 0.003)$ .

3. For sections with factored axial compression force  $P_u \geq 0.1A_f'c$ ,  $\phi$  shall be calculated using equation (c) or (d) for sections classified as transition, as applicable.

#### 1909.3.7 ACI 318, Section 25.2.10. Modify ACI 318 Section 25.2.10 as follows:

25.2.10 - For ties and hoops in columns to be placed with shotcrete, minimum clear spacing shall be 3 in. Shotcrete shall not be applied to spirally tied columns.

#### 1909.3.8 ACI 318, Section 26.5.2. Modify ACI 318 Section 26.5.2.1 by replacing Items (l), (m) and (n) and adding item (q) as follows:

(l) Shotcrete surfaces intended to receive subsequent shotcrete placement following an interruption of 30 minutes or more shall be roughened to a full amplitude of approximately  $1/4$  in. before the shotcrete has reached final set. The film of laitance which forms on the surface of the shotcrete shall be removed within approximately 2 hours after application by brushing with a stiff broom. If this film is not removed within 2 hours, it shall be removed by thorough wire brushing or a mechanical method acceptable to the enforcement agency.

(m) Before placing additional material onto hardened shotcrete, laitance shall be removed, joints shall be cleaned and the surface shall be dampened. Construction joints over 8 hours old shall be thoroughly cleaned with air and water prior to receiving shotcrete.

(n) In-place fresh concrete that exhibits sags, sloughs, segregation, honeycombing, sand pockets, or other obvious defects shall be removed and replaced. Shotcrete above sags and sloughs shall be removed and replaced while still plastic.

(q) Surface preparation: Concrete or masonry to receive shotcrete shall have the entire surface thoroughly cleaned and roughened by a mechanical method acceptable to the enforcement agency, and just prior to receiving shotcrete, shall be thoroughly cleaned of all

debris, dirt and dust. Concrete and masonry shall be brought to a saturated surface-dry (SSD) before shotcrete is deposited.

**1909.3.9 ACI 318, Section 26.12.2.1(a).** Replace ACI 318 Section 26.12.2.1(a) by the following:

**26.12.2.1(a)** - Samples for strength tests of each class of concrete placed each day shall be taken not less than once a day, or not less than once for each 50 cubic yards ( $38.2 \text{ m}^3$ ) of concrete, or not less than once for each 2,000 square feet ( $186 \text{ m}^2$ ) of surface area for slabs or walls. Additional samples for seven-day compressive strength tests shall be taken for each class of concrete at the beginning of the concrete work or whenever the mix or aggregate is changed.

#### 1909.4 Shotcrete.

**1909.4.1 General.** Shotcrete shall also conform to the provisions of ACI 506.2 and ACI 506R. The specified compressive strength of shotcrete shall not be less than 4,000 psi (27.6 MPa). The use of a shotcrete mockup panel to qualify bar clearance dimensions in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.2.7.1 or contact lap splices in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.5.1.7 is subject to the approval of the building official. Tolerances for shotcrete construction shall be defined by the construction documents.

**1909.4.2 Tests and inspections.** Preconstruction tests of one or more shotcrete mockup panels prepared in accordance with Section 1705A.3.9.2 are required. In addition to testing requirements in ACI 318, special inspection and testing shall be in accordance with Section 1705A.3.9.

**1909.4.3 Forms and ground wires for shotcrete.** Forms for shotcrete shall be substantial and rigid. Forms shall be built and placed so as to permit the escape of air and rebound.

Adequate ground wires, which are to be used as screeds, shall be placed to establish the thickness, surface planes and form of the shotcrete work. All surfaces shall be rodded to these wires.

**1909.5 Existing concrete structures.** The structural use of existing concrete with a core strength less than 1,500 psi (10.3MPa) is not permitted in rehabilitation work.

For existing concrete structures, sufficient cores shall be taken at representative locations throughout the structure, as designated by the architect or structural engineer, so that knowledge will be had of the in-place strength of the concrete. At least three cores shall be taken from each building for each 4,000 square feet ( $372 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area, or fraction thereof. Cores shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Cores as small as 2.75 inches (70 mm) in diameter may be allowed by the enforcement agency when reinforcement is closely spaced and the coarse aggregate does not exceed  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm).

## SECTION 1910

### ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SKILLED NURSING FACILITIES, INTERMEDIATE CARE FACILITIES, ACUTE PSYCHIATRIC AND NON-GAC BUILDINGS [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]

#### 1910.1 General.

**1910.1.1 Construction documents.** Openings larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in any dimension shall be detailed on the structural drawings.

**1910.2 Tests and materials.** Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17 and this section.

**1910.2.1 Cementitious material.** The concrete supplier shall furnish to the enforcement agency certification that the cement proposed for use on the project has been manufactured and tested in compliance with the requirements of ASTM C150 for Portland cement and ASTM C595 or ASTM C1157 for blended hydraulic cement, whichever is applicable. When a mineral admixture or ground granulated blast-furnace slag is proposed for use, the concrete supplier shall furnish to the enforcement agency certification that they have been manufactured and tested in compliance with ASTM C618 or ASTM C989, whichever is applicable. The concrete producer shall provide copies of the cementitious material supplier's certificate of compliance that represents the materials used by date of shipment for concrete. Cementitious materials without certification of compliance shall not be used.

**1910.2.2 Tests of reinforcing bars.** Samples shall be taken from bundles as delivered from the mill, with the bundles identified as to heat number and the accompanying mill certificate. One tensile test and one bend test shall be made from a sample from each 10 tons (9080 kg) or fraction thereof of each size of reinforcing steel.

Where positive identification of the heat number cannot be made or where random samples are to be taken, one series of tests shall be made from each  $2\frac{1}{2}$  tons (2270 kg) or fraction thereof of each size of reinforcing steel.

Tests of reinforcing bars may be waived by the structural engineer with the approval of the building official for one-story buildings or nonbuilding structures, provided that they are identified in the construction documents and certified mill test reports are provided to the inspector of record for each shipment of such reinforcement.

**1910.2.3 Tests for prestressing steel and anchorage.** All wires or bars of each size from each mill heat and all strands from each manufactured reel to be shipped to the site shall be assigned an individual lot number and shall be tagged in such a manner that each lot can be accurately identified at the job site. Each lot of tendon and anchorage assemblies and bar couplers to be installed shall be likewise identified.

The following samples of materials and tendons selected by the engineer or the designated testing laboratory from the prestressing steel at the plant or job site

## CONCRETE

shall be furnished by the contractor and tested by an approved independent testing agency:

1. For wire, strand or bars, 7-foot-long (2134 mm) samples shall be taken of the coil of wire or strand reel or rods. A minimum of one random sample per 5,000 pounds (2270 kg) of each heat or lot used on the job shall be selected.
2. For prefabricated prestressing tendons other than bars, one completely fabricated tendon 10 feet (3048 mm) in length between grips with the anchorage assembly at one end shall be furnished for each size and type of tendon and anchorage assembly.

Variations of the bearing plate size need not be considered.

The anchorages of unbonded tendons shall develop at least 95 percent of the minimum specified ultimate strength of the prestressing steel. The total elongation of the tendon under ultimate load shall not be less than 2 percent measured in a minimum gage length of 10 feet (3048 mm).

Anchorage of bonded tendons shall develop at least 90 percent of the minimum specified strength of the prestressing steel tested in an unbonded state. All couplings shall develop at least 95 percent of the minimum specified strength of the prestressing steel and shall not reduce the elongation at rupture below the requirements of the tendon itself.

3. If the prestressing tendon is a bar, one 7-foot (2134 mm) length complete with one end anchorage shall be furnished and, in addition, if couplers are to be used with the bar, two 4-foot (1219 mm) lengths of bar fabricated to fit and equipped with one coupler shall be furnished.
4. Mill tests of materials used for end anchorages shall be furnished. In addition, at least one Brinnell hardness test shall be made of each thickness of bearing plate.

**1910.2.4 Composite construction cores.** Cores of the completed composite concrete construction shall be taken to demonstrate the shear strength along the contact surfaces. The cores shall be tested when the cast-in-place concrete is approximately 28 days old and shall be tested by a shear loading parallel to the joint between the precast concrete and the cast-in-place concrete. The minimum unit shear strength of the contact surface area of the core shall not be less than 100 psi (689 kPa).

At least one core shall be taken from each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) of area of composite concrete construction and not fewer than three cores shall be taken from each project. The architect or structural engineer in responsible charge of the project or his or her representative shall designate the location for sampling.

### 1910.3 Modifications to ACI 318

**1910.3.1 ACI 318, Section 12.7.3.** Add Section 12.7.3.4 to ACI 318 as follows:

**12.7.3.4** – At least two No. 5 bars in diaphragms having two layers of reinforcement in both directions and one No. 5 bar in diaphragms having a single layer of reinforcement in both directions shall be provided around openings larger than 12 inches in any dimension in addition to the minimum reinforcement required by Section 12.6.

**1910.3.2 ACI 318, Section 18.12.6.** Add Section 18.12.6.2 to ACI 318 as follows:

Collector and boundary elements in topping slabs placed over precast floor and roof elements shall not be less than 3 inches (76 mm) or  $6 d_b$  thick, where  $d_b$  is the diameter of the largest reinforcement in the topping slab.

**1910.3.3 ACI 318, Table 19.2.1.1.** Modify ACI 318 Table 19.2.1.1 as follows:

For concrete designed and constructed in accordance with this chapter,  $f'_{c,}$  shall not be less than 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa). Reinforced normal weight concrete with specified compressive strength higher than 8,000 psi (55 MPa) shall require prior approval of structural design method and acceptance criteria by the enforcement agency.

**1910.3.4 ACI 318, Table 21.2.2.** Replace Table 21.2.2 as follows:

**TABLE 21.2.2  
STRENGTH REDUCTION FACTOR  $\phi$  FOR MOMENT,  
AXIAL FORCE, OR COMBINED MOMENT AND AXIAL FORCE**

NET TENSILE STRAIN $\epsilon_t$	CLASSIFICATION	$\phi$			
		Type of transverse reinforcement			
		Spirals conforming to 25.7.3	Other		
$\epsilon_t \leq \epsilon_{ty}$	Compression-controlled	0.75	(a)	0.65	(b)
$\epsilon_{ty} < \epsilon_t < \epsilon_{ty} + 0.003$	Transition <sup>1, 2</sup>	$0.75 + 0.15 \frac{\epsilon_t - \epsilon_{ty}}{\epsilon_t^* - \epsilon_{ty}}$	(c)	$0.65 + 0.25 \frac{\epsilon_t - \epsilon_{ty}}{\epsilon_t^* - \epsilon_{ty}}$	(d)
$\epsilon_t \geq \epsilon_{ty} + 0.003$	Tension-controlled <sup>3</sup>	0.9	(e)	0.9	(f)

1. For sections classified as transition, it shall be permitted to use  $\phi$  corresponding to compression-controlled sections.

2.  $\epsilon_t^*$  is the greater of net tensile strain calculated for  $P_n = 0.1A_g f'_c$  and  $\epsilon_{ty} + 0.003$ .

3. For sections with factored axial compression force  $P_u \geq 0.1A_g f'_c$ ,  $\phi$  shall be calculated using equation (c) or (d) for sections classified as transition, as applicable.

## SECTION 1911

### EXISTING CONCRETE STRUCTURES [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]

**1911.1 Concrete Core Sampling.** Where concrete cores are required to be taken for material property determination, cores shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Cores as small as 2.75 inches (70 mm) in diameter may be allowed by the enforcement agency when reinforcement is closely spaced and the coarse aggregate does not exceed  $3/4$  inch (19 mm).

**1911.2 Crack repair by epoxy injection.** Crack Repair of concrete and masonry member by epoxy injection shall conform to all requirements of ACI 503.7.

**1911.3 Concrete strengthening by externally bonded fiber reinforced polymer (FRP).** Design and construction of externally bonded FRP systems for strengthening concrete structures shall be in accordance with ACI 440.2R.

**Exceptions:**

1. Near-Surface Mounted (NSM) FRP bars shall not be permitted.
2. Strengthening of shear walls and diaphragms (including chords and collectors) shall be considered as an alternative system.

Design capacities, reliability and serviceability of FRP materials shall be permitted to be established in accordance with ICC-ES AC 125. Minimum inspection requirements of FRP composite systems shall be in accordance with ICC-ES AC 178.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 19A – CONCRETE

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter							X		X				X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X																	
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

&lt;



# CHAPTER 19A

## CONCRETE

*Italics are used for text within Sections 1903A through 1905A of this code to indicate model code provisions that differ from ACI 318.* || |  
*State of California amendments in these sections are shown in italics and underlined.*

### SECTION 1901A GENERAL

**1901A.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, quality control, design and construction of concrete used in structures.

**1901A.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 19A is as follows:*

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (DSA-SS), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1. These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*
2. *Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 and 1.10.4, regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals and correctional treatment centers.*

**1901A.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** *Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:*

1. *Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety:  
[DSA-SS] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.*
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:  
[OSHPD 1] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.  
[OSHPD 4] – For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.*

>|| **1901A.2 Reinforced concrete.** Structural concrete shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter and ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905A of this code, *except that plain concrete is not permitted.* Except for the provisions of Sections 1904A and 1907A, the design and construction of slabs on grade shall not be governed by this chapter unless they transmit vertical loads or lateral forces from other parts of the structure to the soil.

**1901A.3 Anchoring to concrete.** Anchoring to concrete shall be in accordance with ACI 318 as amended in Section 1905A,

and applies to cast-in (headed bolts, headed studs and hooked J- or L-bolts), post-installed expansion (torque-controlled and displacement-controlled), undercut, screw, and adhesive anchors.

**1901A.4 Composite structural steel and concrete structures.** Systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with Section 2206A of this code.

**1901A.5 Construction documents.** The construction documents for structural concrete construction shall include:

1. The specified compressive strength of concrete at the stated ages or stages of construction for which each concrete element is designed.
2. The specified strength or grade of reinforcement.
3. The size and location of structural elements, reinforcement and anchors.
4. Provision for dimensional changes resulting from creep, shrinkage and temperature.
5. The magnitude and location of prestressing forces.
6. Anchorage length of reinforcement and location and length of lap splices.
7. Type and location of mechanical and welded splices of reinforcement.
8. Details and location of contraction or isolation joints specified for plain concrete.
9. Minimum concrete compressive strength at time of posttensioning.
10. Stressing sequence for posttensioning tendons.
11. For structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, a statement if slab on grade is designed as a structural diaphragm.
12. *Openings larger than 12 inches (305 mm) in any dimension shall be detailed on the structural drawings.*

**1901A.6 Special inspections and tests.** Special inspections and tests of concrete elements of buildings and structures and concreting operations shall be as required by Chapter 17A and Section 1910A.

**1901A.7 Tolerances for structural concrete.** Where not indicated in construction documents, structural tolerances for concrete structural elements shall be in accordance with this section.

**CONCRETE**

**1901A.7.1 Cast-in-place concrete tolerances.** Structural tolerances for cast-in-place concrete structural elements shall be in accordance with ACI 117.

**Exceptions:**

1. Group R-3 detached one- or two-family dwellings are not required to comply with this section.
2. Shotcrete is not required to comply with this section. *[DSA-SS] Tolerances for shotcrete construction shall be defined by the construction documents.*

**1901A.7.2 Precast concrete tolerances.** Structural tolerances for precast concrete structural elements shall be in accordance with ACI ITG-7.

**Exception:** Group R-3 detached one- or two-family dwellings are not required to comply with this section.

## **SECTION 1902A COORDINATION OF TERMINOLOGY**

**1902A.1 General.** Coordination of terminology used in ACI 318 and ASCE 7 shall be in accordance with Sections 1902A.1.1 and 1902A.1.2.

**1902A.1.1 Design displacement.** Design displacement at each level shall be the total lateral deflection at the level calculated for the design earthquake using the procedures defined in Section 12.8.6 of ASCE 7.

**1902A.1.2 Special structural wall.** Special structural walls made of cast-in-place or precast concrete shall comply with the requirements of Sections 18.2.4 through 18.2.8, 18.10 and 18.11 of ACI 318, as applicable, in addition to the requirements for *ordinary reinforced concrete structural walls* or *ordinary precast structural walls*, as applicable. Where ASCE 7 refers to a “special reinforced concrete shear wall,” it shall be deemed to mean a “special structural wall.”

## **SECTION 1903A SPECIFICATIONS FOR TESTS AND MATERIALS**

**1903A.1 General.** Materials used to produce concrete, concrete itself and testing thereof shall comply with the applicable standards listed in ACI 318.

**1903A.2 Special inspections.** *Where required, special inspections and tests shall be in accordance with Chapter 17A and Section 1910A.*

**1903A.3 Glass fiber-reinforced concrete.** *Glass fiber-reinforced concrete (GFRC) and the materials used in such concrete shall be in accordance with the PCI MNL 128 standard.*

**1903A.4 Flat wall insulating concrete form (ICF) systems.** *Insulating concrete form material used for forming flat concrete walls shall conform to ASTM E2634. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Not Permitted by OSHPD. [DSA-SS] ICF systems shall be considered alternative systems. Concrete constructed using ICF systems and attachments to ICF shall be designed for*

*loads in accordance with this code and shall comply with manufacturer's instructions and industry standards determined applicable by the enforcement agency. Calculations and drawings shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for review and approval prior to construction.*

**1903A.5 Aggregates** – *Modify ACI 318 Section 26.4.1.2.1(a).(1) as follows:*

*(1) Normal weight aggregate: Aggregate shall be non-reactive as determined by one of the methods in ASTM C33 Appendix XI: Methods for Evaluating Potential for Deleterious Expansion Due to Alkali Reactivity of an Aggregate. Aggregates deemed to be deleterious or potentially deleterious may be used with the addition of a material that has been shown to prevent harmful expansion in accordance with Appendix XI of ASTM C33, when approved by the building official.*

**1903A.6 [OSHPD 1 & 4] Limits on cementitious materials.** *Modify ACI 318 Section 26.4.2.2(b) and Table 26.4.2.2(b) as follows:*

*The maximum percentage of pozzolans, including fly ash and silica fume, and slag cement in concrete assigned to all exposure categories shall be in accordance with Table 26.4.2.2(b) and Section 26.4.2.2(b) Items (1) and (2).*

*Where pozzolans are used as cementitious materials, duration for minimum specified compressive strength of concrete ( $f_c$ ) that exceeds 28 days shall be considered an alternative system.*

**1903A.7 Steel fiber reinforcement** – *Not permitted*

**1903A.8 Welding of reinforcing bars** - *Modify ACI 318 Section 26.6.4.2(b) by adding the following:*

*Subject to prior approval of the enforcing agency, longitudinal holding wires, conforming to ASTM A1064 of maximum wire size W5, that are machine resistance welded to stirrup/tie cage (or spiral assemblies) consisting of low alloy steel reinforcing conforming to ASTM A706 are permitted when performed under continuous competent control in a fabrication shop. Tack welding of primary reinforcing bars together or to stirrups/ties is not permitted. Holding wire weld locations shall not occur on any longitudinal or primary reinforcing nor on any portion of a reinforcing bar that is or will be bent in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.3 for the extents specified in AWS D1.4 Section 4.2.6.*

*[DSA-SS] Exception: Mat reinforcing for slabs or isolated footings shall be permitted to have holding wires located no more than six bar diameters from the free end of reinforcing. Such free ends shall not be associated with any welded splices, couplers or other free-end modifications involving reinforcement development.*

*Quality control tests shall be performed on shop-welded specimens by the fabricator. Reinforcing steel specimens containing the holding wire shall be tested for yield and tensile strength at the frequency required by Section 1910A.2. Test reports shall be available on request to the approved agency, design professional and enforcement agency.*

## SECTION 1904A DURABILITY REQUIREMENTS

**1904A.1 Structural concrete.** Structural concrete shall conform to the durability requirements of ACI 318.

→ **1904A.2 Nonstructural concrete.** The registered design professional shall assign nonstructural concrete a freeze-thaw exposure class, as defined in ACI 318, based on the anticipated exposure of nonstructural concrete. Nonstructural concrete shall have a minimum specified compressive strength,  $f'_c$ , of 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa) for Class F0; 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for Class F1; and 3,500 psi (24.1 MPa) for Classes F2 and F3. Nonstructural concrete shall be air entrained in accordance with ACI 318.

## SECTION 1905A MODIFICATIONS TO ACI 318

**1905A.1 General.** The text of ACI 318 shall be modified as indicated in Sections 1905A.1.1 through 1905A.1.17.

→ **1905A.1.1 ACI 318, Section 4.12.2.2. Modify ACI 318, Section 4.12.2.2 by adding the following:**

*Where prestressed concrete elements are restrained from movement, an analysis of the stresses in the prestressed elements and loads in the adjoining structural system induced by the above-described effects shall be made in accordance with PCI Design Handbook.*

→ **1905A.1.2 ACI 318, Section 4.12.2.3. Modify ACI 318, Section 4.12.2.3 by adding the following:**

*For prestressed concrete members with recessed or dapped ends, an analysis of the connections shall be made in accordance with procedures given in PCI Design Handbook.*

→ **1905A.1.3 ACI 318, Section 9.6.1.3. Modify ACI 318, Section 9.6.1.3 by adding the following:**

*This section shall not be used for members that resist seismic loads, except for either of the following conditions:*

1. *Foundation members for one-story wood-frame or one-story light steel buildings.*
2. *Foundation members designed for seismic load combinations including the overstrength factor. [OSHPD 1 & 4] The A provided shall not be less than that required by 1.2 times the cracking load based upon  $f_c$  defined in Section 19.2.3.*

→ **1905A.1.4 ACI 318, Section 11.2.4.1. Replace ACI 318, Section 11.2.4.1 as follows:**

*11.2.4.1 – Walls shall be anchored to intersecting elements such as floors or roofs; or to columns, pilasters, buttresses, or intersecting walls and footings with reinforcement at least equivalent to No. 4 bars at 12 inches (305 mm) on center for each layer of reinforcement.*

→ **1905A.1.5 ACI 318, Section 11.7. Add Section 11.7.6 to ACI 318.1 as follows:**

*11.7.6 – Reinforcement. Perimeters of precast walls shall be reinforced continuously with a minimum of one*

*No. 5 bar extending the full height and width of the wall panel. Where wall panels do not connect to columns or other wall panels to develop at least 75 percent of the horizontal wall steel as noted below, vertical perimeter bars shall be retained by hooked wall bars.*

*A continuous tie or bond beam shall be provided at the roof line either as a part of the roof structure or part of the wall panels as described in the next paragraph below. This tie may be designed as the edge member of the roof diaphragm but, in any case, shall not be less than equivalent to two No. 6 bars continuous. A continuous tie equivalent to two No. 5 bars minimum shall also be provided either in the footing or with an enlarged section of the floor slab.*

*Wall panels of shear wall buildings shall be connected to columns or to each other in such a manner as to develop at least 75 percent of the horizontal wall steel. No more than half of this continuous horizontal reinforcing shall be concentrated in bond or tie beams at the top and bottom of the walls and at points of intermediate lateral support. If possible, cast-in-place joints with reinforcing bars extending from the panels into the joint a sufficient distance to meet the splice requirements of ACI 318, Section 25.5.2, for Class A shall be used. The reinforcing bars or welded tie details shall not be spaced over eight times the wall thickness vertically nor fewer than four used in the wall panel height. Where wall panels are designed for their respective overturning forces, the panel connections need not comply with the requirements of this paragraph.*

**Exception:** *Nonbearing, nonshear panels such as nonstructural architectural cladding panels or column covers are not required to meet the provisions of this section.*

→ **1905A.1.6 ACI 318, Section 11.9. Modify ACI 318 by adding Section 11.9 as follows:**

*11.9 – Foundation walls. Horizontal reinforcing of concrete foundation walls for wood-frame or light-steel buildings shall consist of the equivalent of not less than one No. 5 bar located at the top and bottom of the wall. Where such walls exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in height, intermediate horizontal reinforcing shall be provided at spacing not to exceed 2 feet (610 mm) on center. Minimum vertical reinforcing shall consist of No. 3 bars at 24 inches (610 mm) on center.*

*Where concrete foundation walls or curbs extend above the floor line and support wood-frame or light-steel exterior, bearing or shear walls, they shall be dowled to the foundation wall below with a minimum of No. 3 bars at 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Where the height of the wall above the floor line exceeds 18 inches (457 mm), the wall above and below the floor line shall meet the requirements of ACI 318, Section 11.6 and 11.7.*

→ **1905A.1.7 ACI 318, Section 12.7.3. Add Section 12.7.3.4 to ACI 318 as follows:**

*12.7.3.4 – At least two No. 5 bars in diaphragms having two layers of reinforcement in both directions and one*

## CONCRETE

No. 5 bar in diaphragms having a single layer of reinforcement in both directions shall be provided around openings larger than 12 inches in any dimension in addition to the minimum reinforcement required by Section 12.6.

|| **1905A.1.8 ACI 318, Section 17.10.** Modify ACI 318 Sections 17.10.5.2, 17.10.5.3(d) and 17.10.6.2 to read as follows:

- 17.10.5.2 – Where the tensile component of the strength-level earthquake-induced force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor tensile force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.10.5.3. The anchor design tensile strength shall be determined in accordance with 17.10.5.4.

**Exception:** Anchors designed to resist wall out-of-plane forces with design strengths equal to or greater than the force determined in accordance with ASCE 7, Equation 12.11-1 or 12.14-10, and Section 1604A.8.2 of this code shall be deemed to satisfy Section 17.10.5.3(d).

- 17.10.5.3(d) – The anchor or group of anchors shall be designed for the maximum tension obtained from design load combinations that include  $E$ , with  $E$  increased by  $\Omega_0$ . The anchor design tensile strength shall be calculated in accordance with 17.10.5.4.
- 17.10.6.2 – Where the shear component of the strength-level earthquake force applied to anchors exceeds 20 percent of the total factored anchor shear force associated with the same load combination, anchors and their attachments shall be designed in accordance with 17.10.6.3. The anchor design shear strength for resisting earthquake forces shall be determined in accordance with 17.7.

**Exceptions:**

1. For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching wood sill plates of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame wood structures to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.7.2 and 17.7.3 need not be computed and 17.10.6.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:

- 1.1. The allowable in-plane shear strength of the anchor is determined in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS Table 12E for lateral design values parallel to grain.
- 1.2. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm).
- 1.3. Anchor bolts are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).
- 1.4. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (45 mm) from the edge

of the concrete parallel to the length of the wood sill plate.

- 1.5. Anchor bolts are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the wood sill plate.
- 1.6. The sill plate is 2-inch (51 mm) or 3-inch (76 mm) nominal thickness.
2. For the calculation of the in-plane shear strength of anchor bolts attaching cold-formed steel track of bearing or nonbearing walls of light-frame construction to foundations or foundation stem walls, the in-plane shear strength in accordance with 17.7.2 and 17.7.3 need not be computed and 17.10.6.3 shall be deemed to be satisfied provided all of the following are met:
  - 2.1. The maximum anchor nominal diameter is  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (16 mm).
  - 2.2. Anchors are embedded into concrete a minimum of 7 inches (178 mm).
  - 2.3. Anchors are located a minimum of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (45 mm) from the edge of the concrete parallel to the length of the track.
  - 2.4. Anchors are located a minimum of 15 anchor diameters from the edge of the concrete perpendicular to the length of the track.
  - 2.5. The track is 33 to 68 mil (0.84 mm to 1.73 mm) designation thickness.

Allowable in-plane shear strength of exempt anchors, parallel to the edge of concrete, shall be permitted to be determined in accordance with AISI S100 Section J3.3.1.

3. In light-frame construction bearing or nonbearing walls, shear strength of concrete anchors less than or equal to 1 inch [25 mm] in diameter attaching sill plate or track to foundation or foundation stem wall need not satisfy 17.10.6.3(a) through (c) when the design strength of the anchors is determined in accordance with 17.7.2.1(c).

|| **1905A.1.9 ACI 318, Section 18.5. IDSA-SSI Modify ACI 318, Section 18.5, by replacing Section 18.5.2.1, adding new Section 18.5.2.2 and renumbering existing Sections 18.5.2.2 and 18.5.2.3 to become 18.5.2.3 and 18.5.2.4, respectively:**

18.5.2.1 – In connections between wall panels, yielding shall be restricted to steel elements or reinforcement. In connections between wall panels and the foundation, they shall be designed per Section 1617A.1.16.

18.5.2.2 – Connections that are designed to yield shall be capable of maintaining 80 percent of their design strength at deformation induced by the design displacement or shall use type 2 mechanical splices.

18.5.2.3 – Elements of the connection that are not designed to yield shall develop at least  $1.5 S_y$ .

18.5.2.4 – In structures assigned to SDC D, E or F, wall piers shall be designed in accordance with 18.10.8 or 18.14 in ACI 318.

**1905A.1.10 ACI 318, Section 18.10.6.5.** Modify ACI 318, Section 18.10.6.5 by adding the following:

(c) Where boundary members are not required by ACI 318 Section 18.10.6.2 or 18.10.6.3 minimum reinforcement parallel to the edges of all structural walls and the boundaries of all openings shall consist of twice the cross-sectional area of the minimum shear reinforcement required per lineal foot of wall. Horizontal extent of boundary element shall be in accordance with ACI 318 Section 18.10.6.4 (a), (b) and (c).

**1905A.1.11 ACI 318, Section 18.12.6.** Add Section 18.12.6.2 to ACI 318 as follows:

18.12.6.2 – Collector and boundary elements in topping slabs placed over precast floor and roof elements shall not be less than 3 inches (76 mm) or  $6 d_b$  thick, where  $d_b$  is the diameter of the largest reinforcement in the topping slab.

**1905A.1.12 ACI 318, Section 19.2.1.1 and Table 19.2.1.1.** Modify ACI 318, Section 19.2.1.1 and Table 19.2.1.1 as follows:

19.2.1.1 The value of  $f'_c$  shall be in accordance with (a) through (e):

- Limits for  $f'_c$  in Table 19.2.1.1. Limits apply to both normalweight and lightweight concrete.
- Durability requirements in Table 19.3.2.1.
- Structural strength requirements.
- $f'_c$  for lightweight concrete in special moment frames and special structural walls, and their foundations, shall not exceed 5000 psi, unless demonstrated by experimental evidence that members made with lightweight concrete provide strength and toughness equal to or exceeding those of comparable members made with normalweight concrete of the same strength.
- Reinforced normal weight concrete with specified compressive strength higher than 8,000 psi (55 MPa) shall require prior approval of structural design method and acceptance criteria by the enforcement agency.

APPLICATION	MINIMUM $f'_c$ , psi
General	<u>3000</u>
Special moment frames	
Special structural walls with Grade 60 or 80 reinforcement	3000
Special structural walls with Grade 100 reinforcement	5000
Precast-nonprestressed driven piles	
Drilled shafts	4000
Precast-prestressed driven piles	5000
<u>Shotcrete</u>	<u>4000</u>

**1905A.1.13 ACI 318, Table 21.2.2.** Replace Table 21.2.2 as follows:

TABLE 21.2.2  
STRENGTH REDUCTION FACTOR  $\phi$  FOR MOMENT,  
AXIAL FORCE, OR COMBINED MOMENT AND AXIAL FORCE

NET TENSILE STRAIN $\epsilon_t$	CLASSIFICATION	$\phi$			
		Type of transverse reinforcement			
		Spirals conforming to 25.7.3	Other		
$\epsilon_t \leq \epsilon_{ty}$	Compression-controlled	0.75	(a)	0.65	(b)
$\epsilon_{ty} < \epsilon_t < \epsilon_{ty} + 0.003$	Transition <sup>1, 2</sup>	$0.75 + 0.15 \frac{\epsilon_t - \epsilon_{ty}}{\epsilon_{ty}^* - \epsilon_{ty}}$	(c)	$0.65 + 0.25 \frac{\epsilon_t - \epsilon_{ty}}{\epsilon_{ty}^* - \epsilon_{ty}}$	(d)
$\epsilon_t \geq \epsilon_{ty} + 0.003$	Tension-controlled <sup>3</sup>	0.9	(e)	0.9	(f)

1. For sections classified as transition, it shall be permitted to use  $\phi$  corresponding to compression-controlled sections.

2.  $\epsilon_{ty}^*$  is the greater of net tensile strain calculated for  $P_u = 0.1 A_g f'_c$  and  $\epsilon_{ty} + 0.003$ .

3. For sections with factored axial compression force  $P_u \geq 0.1 A_g f'_c \phi$  shall be calculated using equation (c) or (d) for sections classified as transition, as applicable.

**1905A.1.14 ACI 318, Section 24.2.1.** Add Section 24.2.1.1 to ACI 318 as follows:

24.2.1.1 – Span to depth ratio. Prestressed beam and slab span to depth ratios for continuous prestressed concrete members shall not exceed the following, except when calculations of deflections and vibration effects prove that greater values may be used without adverse effects:

<u>Beams.....</u>	<u>30</u>
<u>One-way slabs.....</u>	<u>40</u>
<u>Two-way floor slabs.....</u>	<u>40</u>
<u>Two-way roof slabs.....</u>	<u>44</u>

These ratios should be decreased for special conditions such as heavy loads and simple spans.

Maximum deflection criteria shall be in accordance with ACI 318 Section 24.2.2.

**1905A.1.15 ACI 318, Section 25.2.10.** Replace ACI 318 Section 25.2.10 by the following:

25.2.10 For ties and hoops in columns to be placed with shotcrete, minimum clear spacing shall be 3 in. Shotcrete shall not be applied to spirally tied columns.

**1905A.1.16 ACI 318, Section 26.5.2.** Modify ACI 318 Section 26.5.2.1 by replacing items (l), (m) and (n) and adding item (q) as follows:

- Shotcrete surfaces intended to receive subsequent shotcrete placement following an interruption of 30 minutes or more shall be roughened to a full amplitude of approximately  $1/4$  in. before the shotcrete has reached final set. The film of laitance which forms on the surface of the shotcrete shall be removed within approximately 2 hours after application by brushing with a stiff broom. If this film is not removed within 2 hours, it shall be removed by thorough wire brushing or a mechanical method acceptable to the enforcement agency.

## CONCRETE

- (m) Before placing additional material onto hardened shotcrete, laitance shall be removed, joints shall be cleaned, and the surface shall be dampened. *Construction joints over 8 hours old shall be thoroughly cleaned with air and water prior to receiving shotcrete.*
- (n) In-place fresh concrete that exhibits sags, sloughs, segregation, honeycombing, sand pockets, or other obvious defects shall be removed and replaced. *Shotcrete above sags and sloughs shall be removed and replaced while still plastic.*
- (q) *Surface preparation: Concrete or masonry to receive shotcrete shall have the entire surface thoroughly cleaned and roughened by a mechanical method acceptable to the enforcement agency, and just prior to receiving shotcrete shall be thoroughly cleaned of all debris, dirt and dust. Concrete and masonry shall be brought to a saturated surface-dry (SSD) condition before shotcrete is deposited.*

**1905A.1.17 ACI 318, Section 26.12.2.1(a). Replace ACI 318 Section 26.12.2.1(a) by the following:**

*26.12.2.1(a) Samples for strength tests of each class of concrete placed each day shall be taken not less than once a day, or not less than once for each 50 cubic yards ( $345 \text{ m}^3$ ) of concrete, or not less than once for each 2,000 square feet ( $186 \text{ m}^2$ ) of surface area for slabs or walls. Additional samples for 7-day compressive strength tests shall be taken for each class of concrete at the beginning of the concrete work or whenever the mix or aggregate is changed.*

## SECTION 1906A FOOTINGS FOR LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION

Not permitted by OSHPD and DSA-SS.

## SECTION 1907A MINIMUM SLAB PROVISIONS

**1907A.1 General.** The thickness of concrete floor slabs supported directly on the ground shall be not less than  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm). A 6-mil (0.006 inch; 0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the base course or subgrade and the concrete floor slab, or other approved equivalent methods or materials shall be used to retard vapor transmission through the floor slab.

**Exception:** A vapor retarder is not required:

1. For detached structures accessory to occupancies in Group R-3, such as garages, utility buildings or other unheated facilities.
2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet ( $6.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) and carports attached to occupancies in Group R-3.
3. For buildings of other occupancies where migration of moisture through the slab from below will not be

detrimental to the intended occupancy of the building.

4. For driveways, walks, patios and other flatwork that will not be enclosed at a later date.
5. Where approved based on local site conditions.

## SECTION 1908A SHOTCRETE

**1908A.1 General.** Shotcrete shall be in accordance with the requirements of ACI 318 and the provisions of ACI 506R. **[OSHPD 1 & 4]** The evaluation of the shotcrete mockup panel to qualify bar clearance dimensions in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.2.7 or contact lap splices in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.5.1.7 shall be in accordance with the requirements of ACI 506.4R with a core quality category of Very Good given in ACI 506.6T. **[DSA-SS]** The use of a shotcrete mockup panel to qualify bar clearance dimensions in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.2.7.1 or contact lap splices in accordance with ACI 318 Section 25.5.1.7, is subject to the approval of the building official.

**[DSA-SS] Exception:** The reference to ACI 506R shall be to ACI 506.2, unless otherwise approved by the enforcing agent.

**1908A.2 Tests and inspections.** Preconstruction tests of one or more shotcrete mockup panels prepared in accordance with Section 1705A.3.9.2 are required. In addition to testing requirements in ACI 318, special inspection and testing shall be in accordance with Section 1705A.3.9.

**1908A.3 Forms and ground wires for shotcrete.** Forms for shotcrete shall be substantial and rigid. Forms shall be built and placed so as to permit the escape of air and rebound.

Adequate ground wires, which are to be used as screeds, shall be placed to establish the thickness, surface planes and form of the shotcrete work. All surfaces shall be rodded to these wires.

## SECTION 1909A RESERVED

## SECTION 1910A CONCRETE, REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHOR TESTING

**1910A.1 Cementitious material.** The concrete supplier shall furnish to the enforcement agency certification that the cement proposed for use on the project has been manufactured and tested in compliance with the requirements of ASTM C150 for portland cement and ASTM C595 or ASTM C1157 for blended hydraulic cement, whichever is applicable. When a mineral admixture or ground granulated blast-furnace slag is proposed for use, the concrete supplier shall furnish to the enforcement agency certification that they have been manufactured and tested in compliance with ASTM C618 or ASTM C989, whichever is applicable. The concrete producer shall provide copies of the cementitious material supplier's Certificate of Compliance that represents the materials used by date of shipment for

concrete. Cementitious materials without Certification of Compliance shall not be used.

**1910A.2 Tests of reinforcing bars.** Samples shall be taken from bundles as delivered from the mill, with the bundles identified as to heat number and the accompanying mill certificate. One tensile test and one bend test shall be made from a sample from each 10 tons (9080 kg) or fraction thereof of each size of reinforcing steel.

Where positive identification of the heat number cannot be made or where random samples are to be taken, one series of tests shall be made from each  $2\frac{1}{2}$  tons (2270 kg) or fraction thereof of each size of reinforcing steel.

Tests of reinforcing bars may be waived by the structural engineer with the approval of the Building Official for one-story buildings or non-building structures provided they are identified in the construction documents and certified mill test reports are provided to the inspector of record for each shipment of such reinforcement.

**1910A.3 Tests for prestressing steel and anchorage.** All wires or bars of each size from each mill heat and all strands from each manufactured reel to be shipped to the site shall be assigned an individual lot number and shall be tagged in such a manner that each lot can be accurately identified at the jobsite. Each lot of tendon and anchorage assemblies and bar couplers to be installed shall be likewise identified.

The following samples of materials and tendons selected by the engineer or the designated testing laboratory from the prestressing steel at the plant or jobsite shall be furnished by the contractor and tested by an approved independent testing agency:

1. For wire, strand or bars, 7-foot-long (2134 mm) samples shall be taken of the coil of wire or strand reel or rods. A minimum of one random sample per 5,000 pounds (2270 kg) of each heat or lot used on the job shall be selected.
2. For prefabricated prestressing tendons other than bars, one completely fabricated tendon 10 feet (3048 mm) in length between grips with anchorage assembly at one end shall be furnished for each size and type of tendon and anchorage assembly.

Variations of the bearing plate size need not be considered.

The anchorages of unbonded tendons shall develop at least 95 percent of the minimum specified ultimate strength of the pre-stressing steel. The total elongation of the tendon under ultimate load shall not be less than 2 percent measured in a minimum gage length of 10 feet (3048 mm).

Anchorages of bonded tendons shall develop at least 90 percent of the minimum specified strength of the prestressing steel tested in an unbonded state. All couplings shall develop at least 95 percent of the minimum specified strength of the prestressing steel and shall not reduce the elongation at rupture below the requirements of the tendon itself.

3. If the prestressing tendon is a bar, one 7-foot (2134 mm) length complete with one end anchorage shall be furnished and, in addition, if couplers are to be used with the bar, two 4-foot (1219 mm) lengths of bar fabricated to fit and equipped with one coupler shall be furnished.

4. Mill tests of materials used for end anchorages shall be furnished. In addition, at least one Brinnell hardness test shall be made of each thickness of bearing plate.

**1910A.4 Composite construction cores.** Cores of the completed composite concrete construction shall be taken to demonstrate the shear strength along the contact surfaces. The cores shall be tested when the cast-in-place concrete is approximately 28 days old and shall be tested by a shear loading parallel to the joint between the precast concrete and the cast-in-place concrete. The minimum unit shear strength of the contact surface area of the core shall not be less than 100 psi (689 kPa).

At least one core shall be taken from each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465m^2$ ) of area of composite concrete construction and not less than three cores shall be taken from each project. The architect or structural engineer in responsible charge of the project or his or her representative shall designate the location for sampling.

**1910A.5 Tests for post-installed anchors in concrete.** When post-installed anchors are used in lieu of cast-in place bolts, the installation verification test loads, frequency and acceptance criteria shall be in accordance with this section.

**1910A.5.1 General.** Test loads or torques and acceptance criteria shall be shown on the construction documents.

If any anchor fails testing, all anchors of the same type shall be tested, which are installed by the same trade, not previously tested until twenty (20) consecutive anchors pass, then resume the initial test frequency.

**1910A.5.2 Testing procedure.** The test procedure shall be as permitted by an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code. All post-installed anchors shall be tension tested. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Tension testing to verify proper installation shall be performed in accordance with ASTM E3121.

**Exception:** [OSHPD 1 & 4] Torque-controlled post-installed anchors shall be permitted to be tested using torque based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

**Exception:** [DSA-SS] Torque-controlled post-installed anchors and screw type anchors shall be permitted to be tested using torque based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

Alternatively, manufacturer's recommendation for testing may be approved by the enforcement agency, based on an approved test report using criteria adopted in this code.

**1910A.5.3 Test frequency.** When post-installed anchors are used for sill plate bolting applications, 10 percent of the anchors shall be tested.

## CONCRETE

*When post-installed anchors are used for other structural applications, all such anchors shall be tested.*

*When post-installed anchors are used for nonstructural components, such as equipment anchorage, 50 percent or alternate bolts in a group, including at least one-half the anchors in each group, shall be tested.*

*The testing of the post-installed anchors shall be done in the presence of the special inspector and a report of the test results shall be submitted to the enforcement agency.*

### Exceptions:

1. Undercut anchors that allow visual confirmation of full set shall not require testing.
2. Where the design tension on anchors is less than 100 lbs and those anchors are clearly noted on the approved construction documents, only 10 percent of those anchors shall be tested.
3. Where adhesive anchor systems are used to install reinforcing dowel bars in hardened concrete, only 25 percent of the dowels shall be tested if all of the following conditions are met:
  - a. The dowels are used exclusively to transmit shear forces across joints between existing and new concrete.
  - b. The number of dowels in any one member equals or exceeds 12.
  - c. The dowels are uniformly distributed across seismic force resisting members (such as shear walls, collectors and diaphragms).

*Anchors to be tested shall be selected at random by the special inspector/inspector of record (IOR).*

4. Testing of shear dowels across cold joints in slabs on grade, where the slab is not part of the lateral force-resisting system shall not be required.
5. Testing is not required for power actuated fasteners used to attach tracks of interior non-shear wall partitions for shear only, where there are at least three fasteners per segment of track.
6. [OSHPD 4] In state detention and correctional facilities, tension testing is not required for post-installed anchors used for attaching nonstructural components, such as grab bars and shower seats, to concrete walls if the components do not contribute to security/detainment, life safety and the continuous operation of the institution following an event of extreme environmental loading from flood, wind, snow or earthquakes, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**1910A.5.4 Test loads.** Required test loads shall be determined by one of the following methods:

1. Twice the maximum allowable tension load or one and a quarter ( $1\frac{1}{4}$ ) times the maximum design strength of anchors as provided in an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code

*or determined in accordance with Chapter 17 of ACI 318.*

*Tension test load need not exceed 80 percent of the nominal yield strength of the anchor element (= 0.8  $A_{se}f_{ya}$ ).*

2. The manufacturer's recommended installation torque based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code.

**1910A.5.5 Test acceptance criteria.** Acceptance criteria for post-installed anchors shall be based on an approved evaluation report using criteria adopted in this code. Field tests shall satisfy the following minimum requirements.

1. Hydraulic ram method:

*Anchors tested with a hydraulic jack or spring loaded apparatus shall maintain the test load for a minimum of 15 seconds and shall exhibit no discernible movement during the tension test, e.g., as evidenced by loosening of the washer under the nut.*

*The testing apparatus support locations shall not be within 1.5 times the anchor's embedment depth to avoid restricting the concrete shear cone type failure mechanism from occurring.*

**Exception:** When denoted accordingly on the approved construction documents, adhesive anchors complying with ACI 318 Equation 17.8.2a and for which concrete breakout does not control the design tensile strength may be tested with apparatus support locations closer than 1.5 times the anchor embedment depth.

2. Torque wrench method:

*Torque-controlled post-installed anchors tested with a calibrated torque wrench shall attain the specified torque within  $\frac{1}{2}$  turn of the nut; or one-quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ) turn of the nut for a  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch sleeve anchor only.*

**[DSA-SS]** Screw-type anchors tested with a calibrated torque wrench shall attain the specified torque within one-quarter ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ) turn of the screw after initial seating of the screw head.

## SECTION 1911A EXISTING CONCRETE STRUCTURES

### 1911A.1 Existing concrete structures.

*The structural use of existing concrete with a core strength less than 1,500 psi (10.3MPa) is not permitted in rehabilitation work.*

*For existing concrete structures, sufficient cores shall be taken at representative locations throughout the structure, as designated by the architect or structural engineer, so that knowledge will be had of the in-place strength of the concrete. At least three cores shall be taken from each building for each 4,000 square feet ( $372 \text{ m}^2$ ) of floor area, or fraction thereof. Cores shall be at least 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter. Cores as small as 2.75 inches (70 mm) in diameter may be allowed by the enforcement agency when reinforcement is*

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

*closely spaced and the coarse aggregate does not exceed  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm).*

**1911A.2 Crack repair by epoxy injection.** Crack repair of concrete and masonry member by epoxy injection, shall conform to all requirements of ACI 503.7.

**1911A.3 Concrete strengthening by externally bonded fiber reinforced polymer (FRP).** Design and construction of externally bonded FRP systems for strengthening concrete structures shall be in accordance with ACI 440.2R.

**Exceptions:**

1. Near-Surface Mounted (NSM) FRP bars shall not be permitted.
2. Strengthening of shear walls and diaphragms (including chords and collectors) shall be considered as an alternative system.

*Design capacities, reliability, serviceability of FRP materials shall be permitted to be established in accordance with ICC-ES AC 125. Minimum inspection requirements of FRP composite systems shall be in accordance with ICC-ES AC 178.*



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 20 – ALUMINUM

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X			X	X								X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2001.1.1								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
2001.1.2								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
2002								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						
2003								X	X	X	X	X			X	X						

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

||

|||



# CHAPTER 20

## ALUMINUM

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 20 contains standards for the use of aluminum in building construction. Only the structural applications of aluminum are addressed so it would not apply to the use of aluminum in specialty products such as storefront or window framing or architectural hardware. The use of aluminum in heating, ventilating or air-conditioning systems is addressed in the California Mechanical Code®. This chapter references national standards from the Aluminum Association for use of aluminum in building construction, AA ASM 35, Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction, and AA ADM, Aluminum Design Manual.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 2001 GENERAL

**2001.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of aluminum.

**2001.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]**  
The scope of application of Chapter 20 is as follows:

1. Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2, 1.10.4 and 1.10.5 regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals, hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings, correctional treatment centers and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.
2. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety, which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1 [DSA-SS] and 1.9.2.2 [DSA-SS/CC]. These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.

**2001.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. **[OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD) amendments appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:

**[OSHPD 1]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 1R]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 4]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

**[OSHPD 5]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

2. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety:

**[DSA-SS]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

**[DSA-SS/CC]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

### SECTION 2002 MATERIALS

**2002.1 General.** Aluminum used for structural purposes in buildings and structures shall comply with AA ASM 35 and AA ADM. The nominal loads shall be the minimum design loads required by Chapter 16.

**Exception:** [DSA – SS] The reference to Chapter 16 shall be to Chapter 16A.

### SECTION 2003 TESTING AND INSPECTION

**2003.1 Testing and Inspection. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1 & 4]** Testing and inspection of aluminum shall be required in accordance with the requirements for steel in Chapter 17A, except references to AWS D1.1 shall be to AWS D1.2.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Testing and inspection of aluminum shall be required in accordance with the requirements for steel in Chapter 17, except references to AWS D1.1 shall be to AWS D1.2.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 21 – MASONRY

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter	X			X	X							X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)										X		X	X			X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																	X			
Chapter / Section																							
2101.1.1										X													
2101.1.2										X		X	X			X							
2101.1.3										X													
2101.1.4										X													
2101.2											X	X				X							
2101.2.2											X	B				X							
2103.4											X	B				X							
2103.5											X	B				X							
2104.1											X	B				X							
2104.2											X	B				X							
2104.3											X	X				X							
2105.2											X	B				X							
2105.3											X	B				X							
2105.4											X	B				X							
2106.1.1											X	B				X							
2106.1.2											X	B				X							
2106.1.3											X	B				X							
2107.1											X	B				X							
2107.4											X	X				X							
2107.5											X	B				X							
2107.6											X	X				X							
2107.7											X	B				X							
Table 2107.5											X	X				X							
2108.4											X	B				X							
2109											X	X				X							
2109.2.4.8.2																							
2110.1											X	X				X							
2113.9.2				X																			
2115										X													

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

(A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.



# CHAPTER 21

## MASONRY

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 21 establishes minimum requirements for masonry construction. The provisions address: material specifications and test methods; types of wall construction; criteria for engineered and empirical designs; and required details of construction, including the execution of construction. The provisions provide a framework for applying applicable standards to the design and construction of masonry structures. Masonry design methodologies including allowable stress design, strength design and empirical design are covered by the provisions of this chapter. Also addressed are masonry fireplaces and chimneys, masonry heaters and glass unit masonry.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 2101 GENERAL

**2101.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of masonry.

**2101.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** The scope of application of Chapter 21 is as follows:

1. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC) which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.
2. Office of Statewide health planning and development (OSHPD). Buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings and acute psychiatric hospital buildings regulated by OSHPD. Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2 and 1.10.5.

**2101.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. **[DSA-SS/CC]** – For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:*

**[OSHPD 1R]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 5]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

**2101.1.3 Reference to other chapters. [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 17 and 18, the provisions in Chapters 17A and 18A respectively shall apply instead.

**2101.1.4 Amendments. [DSA-SS/CC]** See Section 2115 for additional requirements.

**2101.2 Design methods.** Masonry shall comply with the provisions of TMS 402, TMS 403 or TMS 404 as well as applicable requirements of this chapter. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** *TMS 403 Not permitted by OSHPD.*

**2101.2.1 Masonry veneer.** Masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 14.

**2101.2.2 Prohibition. [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]** The following design methods, systems and materials in TMS402/602 are not permitted by OSHPD:

1. Unreinforced masonry.
2. Autoclaved Aerated Concrete (AAC) Masonry.
3. Empirical design of masonry and prescriptive design of masonry partition walls.
4. Adobe construction.
5. Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls.
6. Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls.
7. Prestressed masonry shear walls.
8. Direct design of masonry.

**2101.3 Special inspection.** The special inspection of masonry shall be as defined in Chapter 17, or an itemized testing and inspection program shall be provided that meets or exceeds the requirements of Chapter 17.

### SECTION 2102 NOTATIONS

**2102.1 General.** The following notations are used in the chapter:

#### NOTATIONS.

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| $d_b$      | = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).  |
| $F_s$      | = Allowable tensile or compressive stress in reinforcement, psi (MPa).   |
| $f_r$      | = Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).   |
| $f'_{AAC}$ | = Specified compressive strength of AAC masonry, the minimum compressive strength for a class of AAC masonry as specified in TMS 602, psi (MPa). |

**MASONRY**

$f'_{m}$	= Specified compressive strength of masonry at age of 28 days, psi (MPa).
$f'_{mi}$	= Specified compressive strength of masonry at the time of prestress transfer, psi (MPa).
$K$	= The lesser of the masonry cover, clear spacing between adjacent reinforcement, or five times $db$ , inches (mm).
$L_s$	= Distance between supports, inches (mm).
$l_d$	= Required development length or lap length of reinforcement, inches (mm).
$P$	= The applied load at failure, pounds (N).
$S_t$	= Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).
$S_w$	= Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).

## SECTION 2103 MASONRY CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

**2103.1 Masonry units.** Concrete masonry units, clay or shale masonry units, stone masonry units, glass unit masonry and AAC masonry units shall comply with Article 2.3 of TMS 602. Architectural cast stone shall conform to ASTM C1364 and TMS 504. Adhered manufactured stone masonry veneer

units shall conform to ASTM C1670. **[OSHPD IR, 2B & 5]**  
*Architectural cast stone construction shall be considered as an alternative system.*

**Exception:** Structural clay tile for nonstructural use in fireproofing of structural members and in wall furring shall not be required to meet the compressive strength specifications. The fire-resistance rating shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and shall comply with the requirements of Table 705.5.

**2103.1.1 Second-hand units.** Second-hand masonry units shall not be reused unless they conform to the requirements of new units. The units shall be of whole, sound materials and free from cracks and other defects that will interfere with proper laying or use. Old mortar shall be cleaned from the unit before reuse.

**2103.2 Mortar.** Mortar for masonry construction shall comply with Section 2103.2.1, 2103.2.2, 2103.2.3 or 2103.2.4.

**2103.2.1 Masonry mortar.** Mortar for use in masonry construction shall conform to Articles 2.1 and 2.6 A of TMS 602.

**2103.2.2 Surface-bonding mortar.** Surface-bonding mortar shall comply with ASTM C887. Surface bonding of concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C946.

**2103.2.3 Mortars for ceramic wall and floor tile.** Portland cement mortars for installing ceramic wall and floor tile shall comply with ANSI A108.1A and ANSI A108.1B and be of the compositions indicated in Table 2103.2.3.

**2103.2.3.1 Dry-set Portland cement mortars.** Premixed prepared Portland cement mortars, which require only the addition of water and are used in the installation of ceramic tile, shall comply with ANSI

A118.1. The shear bond strength for tile set in such mortar shall be as required in accordance with ANSI A118.1. Tile set in dry-set Portland cement mortar shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

**TABLE 2103.2.3  
CERAMIC TILE MORTAR COMPOSITIONS**

LOCATION	MORTAR	COMPOSITION
Walls	Scratchcoat	1 cement; $\frac{1}{5}$ hydrated lime; 4 dry or 5 damp sand
	Setting bed and leveling coat	1 cement; $\frac{1}{2}$ hydrated lime; 5 damp sand to 1 cement; 1 hydrated lime, 7 damp sand
Floors	Setting bed	1 cement; $\frac{1}{10}$ hydrated lime; 5 dry or 6 damp sand; or 1 cement; 5 dry or 6 damp sand
Ceilings	Scratchcoat and sand bed	1 cement; $\frac{1}{2}$ hydrated lime; $2\frac{1}{2}$ dry sand or 3 damp sand

**2103.2.3.2 Latex-modified Portland cement mortar.**

Latex-modified Portland cement thin-set mortars in which latex is added to dry-set mortar as a replacement for all or part of the gauging water that are used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.4. Tile set in latex-modified Portland cement shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

**2103.2.3.3 Epoxy mortar.** Ceramic tile set and grouted with chemical-resistant epoxy shall comply with ANSI A118.3. Tile set and grouted with epoxy shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.6.

**2103.2.3.4 Furan mortar and grout.** Chemical-resistant furan mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.5. Tile set and grouted with furan shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.8.

**2103.2.3.5 Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout.** Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.8. Tile set and grouted with modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.9.

**2103.2.3.6 Organic adhesives.** Water-resistant organic adhesives used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A136.1. The shear bond strength after water immersion shall be not less than 40 psi (275 kPa) for Type I adhesive and not less than 20 psi (138 kPa) for Type II adhesive when tested in accordance with ANSI A136.1. Tile set in organic adhesives shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.4.

**2103.2.3.7 Portland cement grouts.** Portland cement grouts used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.6. Portland cement grouts for tile work shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.10.

**2103.2.4 Mortar for adhered masonry veneer.** Mortar for use with adhered masonry veneer shall conform to ASTM C270 for Type N or S, or shall comply with ANSI A118.4 for latex-modified Portland cement mortar.

**2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

**2103.3 Grout.** Grout shall comply with Article 2.2 of TMS 602.

**2103.4 Metal reinforcement and accessories.** Metal reinforcement and accessories shall conform to Article 2.4 of TMS 602. Where unidentified reinforcement [*OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5J, or bar reinforcement without mill certification*], is approved for use, not less than three tension and three bending tests shall be made on representative specimens of the reinforcement from each shipment and grade of reinforcing steel proposed for use in the work. [*OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5J*] Alternatively, the frequency of sampling for unidentifiable reinforcing bars specified in Section 1910.2 can be used.

**2103.5 Air entrainment.** [*OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5J*] Air-entraining materials or air-entraining admixtures shall not be used in grout.

## SECTION 2104 CONSTRUCTION

**2104.1 Masonry construction.** Masonry construction shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104.1.1 and 2104.1.2 and with the requirements of either TMS 602 or TMS 604.

**2104.1.1 Support on wood.** Masonry shall not be supported on wood girders or other forms of wood construction except as permitted in Section 2304.12.

**2104.1.2 Molded cornices.** Unless structural support and anchorage are provided to resist the overturning moment, the center of gravity of projecting masonry or molded cornices shall lie within the middle one-third of the supporting wall. Terra cotta and metal cornices shall be provided with a structural frame of approved noncombustible material anchored in an approved manner.

**2104.2 Reinforced Grouted masonry.** [*OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5J*]

**2104.2.1 TMS 602, Article 3.3 B Placing mortar and units.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.3 B.2.c as follows:

- c. Remove masonry protrusions extending greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) into cells or cavities to be grouted.

**2104.2.2 TMS 602, Article 3.4 B Reinforcement.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.4 B.1 and Article 3.4 B.3 as follows:

1. Support reinforcement to prevent displacement caused by construction loads or by placement of grout or mortar, beyond the allowable tolerances. *Reinforcement and embedded items shall be clean, properly positioned and securely anchored against movement prior to grouting. Bolts shall be accurately set with templates or by approved equivalent means and held in place to prevent dislocation during grouting.*

3. Maintain a clear distance between reinforcing bars and the interior of masonry unit or formed surface of at least  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) for fine grout and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) for coarse grout, and the space between masonry unit surfaces and reinforcement shall be a minimum of one bar diameter, except where cross

webs of hollow units are used as supports for horizontal reinforcement. *Reinforcement, embedded items and bolts shall be solidly embedded in grout.*

**2104.2.3 TMS 602, Article 3.4 D Anchor bolts.** Replace TMS 602, Article 3.4 D.3 and add Articles 3.4 D.5 and 3.4 D.6 as follows:

3. *Anchor bolts in the wythe or face shells of hollow masonry units shall be positioned to maintain a minimum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of grout between the bolt circumference, the wythe or the face shell. For the portion of the bolt that is within the grouted cell, maintain a clear distance between the bolt and the face of masonry unit and between the head of the bolt and the formed surface of grout of at least  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) when using fine grout and at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) when using coarse grout. Bolts shall be solidly embedded in grout.*

5. *Bent bar anchor bolts shall not be allowed. The maximum size anchor shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter for 6-inch (152 mm) nominal masonry,  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19 mm) diameter for 8-inch (203 mm) nominal masonry,  $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch (22 mm) diameter for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal masonry, and 1-inch (25 mm) diameter for 12-inch (304.8 mm) nominal masonry.*

6. *Bolts shall be accurately set with templates or by approved equivalent means and held in place to prevent dislocation during grouting.*

**2104.2.4 TMS 602, Article 3.5 C Grout pour height.** Add to TMS 602, Article 3.5 C the following:

1. *For grout pours not greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry, the top of grout pour shall be at the top of constructed masonry, or within 8 inches (200 mm) of the top of the constructed masonry. After construction of each grout lift height of wall, column, pier or beam, masonry cells or cavities shall be inspected prior to placement of grout. Grout pours not terminated at the top of constructed masonry shall comply with TMS 602, Articles 3.5 C.3.a through 3.5 C.3.e.*

2. *Grout pours in excess of 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry shall be subject to approval of the enforcement agency.*

a. *Grout pours in excess of 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry shall be subject to the following:*

*Grouting shall be done in a continuous pour in lifts not exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry.*

b. *An approved admixture of a type that reduces early water loss and produces an expansive action shall be used.*

**MASONRY**

- c. The grouting of any section of a wall between control barriers shall be completed in 1 day with no interruptions greater than 1 hour.
- d. For multiple grout lifts within a grout pour, each grout lift height of wall, column, pier or beam shall be inspected before placement of additional units.
- e. Cleanout openings shall be provided at the bottom of each pour of grout.

**2104.2.5 TMS 602, Article 3.5 F.1 Grout key.** Replace TMS 602, Article 3.5 F.1 as follows:

1. Between grout pours or where grouting has been stopped more than an hour, a horizontal construction joint shall be formed by terminating grout a minimum of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) below a mortar joint, except at the top of the wall. Where bond beams occur, the grout pour shall be terminated a minimum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) below the mortar joint. Horizontal reinforcement shall be placed in bond beam units with a minimum grout cover of 1 inch (25 mm) above reinforcing steel for each grout pour.

**2104.3 Aluminum equipment.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Grout shall not be handled nor pumped utilizing aluminum equipment unless it can be demonstrated with the materials and equipment to be used that there will be no deleterious effect on the strength of the grout.

## SECTION 2105 QUALITY ASSURANCE

**2105.1 General.** A quality assurance program shall be used to ensure that the constructed masonry is in compliance with the approved construction documents.

The quality assurance program shall comply with the inspection and testing requirements of Chapter 17 and TMS 602.

**2105.2 Compressive strength,  $f'_{m}$ .** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] The minimum specified compressive strength,  $f'_{m}$ , in the design shall be 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa) for all structural masonry construction using materials and details of construction required herein. Testing of masonry shall be provided in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.

**Exception:** Where values of  $f'_{m}$  greater than 2,000 psi (13.79 MPa) are used in the design of reinforced grouted multi-wythe masonry and reinforced hollow-unit masonry, they shall be based on prism test results in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3 submitted by the architect or engineer to the enforcement agency which demonstrate the ability of the proposed construction to meet prescribed performance criteria for strength exceed 3,000 psi (20.7MPa).

The architect or structural engineer shall establish a method of quality control of the masonry construction acceptable to the enforcement agency which shall be described in the contract documents. Verification of compliance with the requirements for the specified strength of masonry during construction shall be provided using the prism test method in accordance with TMS 602, Article

1.4 B.3. Verification of compliance with the specified compressive strength prior to the start of construction shall be obtained by using the prism test method in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3.

**2105.3 Mortar and grout tests.** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] TMS 602, Article 1.4 B Compressive strength determination. Modify TMS 602, Article 1.4 B as follows by adding:

5. Additional testing requirements:

a. At the beginning of all masonry work, at least one test sample of the mortar shall be taken on 3 successive working days and at 1-week intervals thereafter. Where mortar is based on a proportion specification, mortar shall be sampled and tested during construction in accordance with ASTM C780, including Annex 4, to verify the proportions specified in ASTM C270, Table 2. Where mortar is based on a property specification, mortar shall be laboratory prepared and tested prior to construction in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify the properties specified in ASTM C270, Table 1 and field sampled and tested during construction in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify the proportions with the laboratory tests.

b. Samples of grout shall be taken for each mix design, each day grout is placed, and not less than every 5,000 square feet ( $464.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) of masonry wall area. They shall meet the minimum strength requirement given in ASTM C476/TMS 602 Section 2.2 or greater as specified.

c. Additional samples shall be taken whenever any change in materials or job conditions occur, as determined by the building official.

d. Test specimens for mortar and grout shall be made as set forth in ASTM C780/C1586 and ASTM C1019. When the prism test method is used in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3 during construction, the tests in this section are not required.

**Exception:** For nonbearing nonshear masonry walls not exceeding total wall height of 12 feet (3658 mm) above top of foundation, mortar test shall be permitted to be limited to those at the beginning of masonry work for each mix design.

**2105.4 Masonry core testing.** [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] Not less than two cores shall be taken from each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the masonry wall area or fraction thereof. The approved agency shall perform or observe the coring of the masonry walls and sample locations shall be subject to approval of the registered design professional.

Core samples shall comply with the following:

1. Cored no sooner than 7 days after grouting of the selected area;
2. Be a minimum of  $3\frac{3}{4}$  inch (95.25 mm) nominal diameter; and
3. Sampled in such a manner as to exclude any masonry unit webs, mortar joint or reinforcing steel. If all cells contain reinforcement, alternate core locations or means to detect voids or delamination shall be selected

**MASONRY**

by the registered design professional and approved by the building official.

Visual examination of all cores shall be made by an approved agency and the condition of the cores reported as required by the California Administrative Code. Shear tests of both joints between the grout core and the outside wythes or face shell of the masonry shall be made 28 days after grouting of the sample area using a shear test apparatus acceptable to the enforcement agency. Core samples shall not be soaked before testing. Core samples to be tested shall be stored in sealed plastic bags or nonabsorbent containers immediately after coring and for at least 5 days prior to testing. The average unit shear value for each pair of cores (4 shear tests) from each 5,000 square feet of wall area (or less) on the cross section of core shall not be less than  $2.5 \sqrt{f'_m}$  psi.

All cores shall be submitted to an approved agency for examination, even where the core specimens failed during the cutting operation. The approved agency shall report the location where each core was taken, report the findings of their visual examination of each core, identify which cores were selected for shear testing, and report the results of the shear tests.

**Exceptions:**

1. Core sampling and testing is not required for non-bearing nonshear masonry walls, not exceeding total wall height of 12 feet above the top of the foundation, built with single-wythe hollow unit concrete masonry that attaches opposite face shells using webs cast as single unit, when designed using an  $f'_m$  not exceeding 2,000 psi (13.79MPa).
2. An infrared thermographic survey or other nondestructive test procedures shall be permitted to be approved as an alternative system to detect voids or delamination in grouted masonry in conjunction with reduced core sampling and testing. A minimum of two cores shall be taken from each building for each 10,000 square feet ( $930 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the wall.

## SECTION 2106 SEISMIC DESIGN

**2106.1 Seismic design requirements for masonry.** Masonry structures and components shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 7 of TMS 402 depending on the structure's seismic design category.

**2106.1.1 [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] TMS 402, Sections 5.3.1.4(a) and 5.3.1.4(b).** Replace TMS 402, Sections 5.3.1.4(a) and 5.3.1.4(b) as follows:

- a. Ties shall be at least  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.525 mm) in diameter and shall be embedded in grout. Top tie shall be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top of the column or of the bottom of the horizontal bar in the supported beam.
- b. The spacing of column ties shall be as follows: not greater than eight bar diameters, one half the least

dimension of the column for the full column height, or 8 inches (203 mm).

**2106.1.2 [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] TMS 402, Chapter 5.** Add TMS 402, Section 5.6 as follows:

**5.6 – Lateral Support of Members**

5.6.1 – Lateral support of masonry may be provided by cross walls, columns, pilasters, counterforts or buttresses where spanning horizontally, or by floors, beams, girts or roofs where spanning vertically. Where walls are supported laterally by vertical elements, the stiffness of each vertical element shall exceed that of the tributary area of the wall.

**2106.1.3 [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] TMS 402, Sections 7.4.4.1 and 7.4.5.1.** Replace TMS 402, Section 7.4.4.1 as follows and delete Section 7.4.5.1:

**7.4.4.1 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry walls.** The total area of reinforcement in reinforced masonry walls shall not be less than 0.003 times the sectional area of the wall. Neither the horizontal nor the vertical reinforcement shall be less than one third of the total. Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be spaced at not more than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center. Where stack bond is used in reinforced hollow-unit masonry, the open-end type of unit shall be used with vertical reinforcement spaced a maximum of 16 inches (406 mm) on center.

All cells shall be solidly filled with grout.

**Exception:** Reinforced hollow-unit masonry used for freestanding site walls or interior nonbearing nonshear wall partitions shall have horizontal reinforcing spaced not more than 4'-0" on center, except for locations in Seismic Design Category F, and may be grouted only in cells containing vertical and horizontal reinforcement.

**7.4.4.1.1** The minimum reinforcing shall be No. 4, except that No. 3 bars may be used for ties and stirrups. Vertical wall reinforcement shall have dowels of equal size and equally matched spacing in all footings. Reinforcement shall be continuous around wall corners and through intersections. Only reinforcement which is continuous in the wall shall be considered in computing the minimum area of reinforcement. Reinforcement with splices conforming to TMS 402 shall be considered as continuous reinforcement.

**7.4.4.1.2** Horizontal reinforcing bars in bond beams shall be provided in the top of footings, at the top of wall openings, at roof and floor levels, and at the top of parapet walls. For walls 12 inches (nominal) (305 mm) or more in thickness, horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be equally divided into two layers, except where designed as retaining walls. Where reinforcement is added above the minimum requirements, such additional reinforcement need not be so divided.

**MASONRY**

**7.4.4.1.3** In bearing walls of every type of reinforced masonry, there shall be trim reinforcement of not less than one No. 5 bar or two No. 4 bars on all sides of, and adjacent to, every opening which exceeds 16 inches (406 mm) in either direction, and such bars shall extend not less than 48 diameters, but in no case less than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the corners of the opening. The bars required by this paragraph shall be in addition to the minimum reinforcement required elsewhere.

**7.4.4.1.4** When the reinforcement in bearing walls is designed, placed and anchored in position as for columns, the allowable stresses shall be as for columns.

**7.4.4.1.5** Joint reinforcement shall not be used as principal reinforcement in masonry.

## SECTION 2107 ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN

**2107.1 General.** The design of masonry structures using allowable stress design shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 8 of TMS 402 except as modified by Sections 2107.2 through 2107.3. [OSHPD IR, 2B & 5] through 2107.7.

**2107.2 TMS 402, Section 6.1.6.1.1, lap splices.** As an alternative to Section 6.1.6.1.1, it shall be permitted to design lap splices in accordance with Section 2107.2.1.

**2107.2.1 Lap splices.** The minimum length of lap splices for reinforcing bars in tension or compression,  $l_d$ , shall be:

$$l_d = 0.002d_{bf_s} \quad (\text{Equation 21-1})$$

For SI:  $l_d = 0.29d_{bf_s}$

but not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The length of the lapped splice shall be not less than 40 bar diameters. where:

$d_b$  = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm)

$f_s$  = Computed stress in reinforcement due to design loads, psi (MPa).

In regions of moment where the design tensile stresses in the reinforcement are greater than 80 percent of the allowable steel tension stress,  $F_s$ , the lap length of splices shall be increased not less than 50 percent of the minimum required length, but need not be greater than  $72 d_b$ . Other equivalent means of stress transfer to accomplish the same 50 percent increase shall be permitted. Where epoxy coated bars are used, lap length shall be increased by 50 percent.

**2107.3 TMS 402, Section 6.1.6.1, splices of reinforcement.** Modify Section 6.1.6.1 as follows:

6.1.6.1 – Splices of reinforcement. Lap splices, welded splices or mechanical splices are permitted in accordance with the provisions of this section. Welding shall conform to AWS D1.4. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Reinforcement larger than No. 9 (M

#29) shall be spliced using mechanical connections in accordance with Section 6.1.6.1.3.

**2107.4 [OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] TMS 402, Section 8.3.7, maximum bar size.** [OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Add the following to Chapter 8:

8.3.7 – Maximum bar size. The maximum bar diameter shall conform to the requirements of TMS 402, Section 9.3.3.1.

**2107.5 [OSHPD IR, 2B & 5] TMS 402, Section 8.3.4.4 Walls.** Modify TMS 402 by adding Section 8.3.4.4 as follows by adding:

**8.3.4.4.1** The minimum thickness of walls is given in this section. Stresses shall be determined on the basis of the net thickness of the masonry, with consideration for reduction, such as raked joints.

**8.3.4.4.2** The thickness of masonry walls shall be designed so that allowable maximum stresses specified in this chapter are not exceeded. Masonry walls shall not exceed the height or length-to-thickness ratio or the minimum thickness as specified in this chapter and as set forth in Table 8.3.4.4.

**8.3.4.4.3** Every pier or wall section with a width less than three times its thickness shall be designed and constructed as required for columns if such pier is a structural member. Every pier or wall section with a width between three and five times its thickness or less than one half the height of adjacent openings shall have all horizontal steel in the form of ties except that in walls 12 inches (305 mm) or less in thickness such steel may be in the form of hair-pins.

**TABLE 8.3.4.4  
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF MASONRY WALLS<sup>1,2</sup>**

TYPE OF MASONRY	MAXIMUM RATIO UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OR LENGTH TO THICKNESS <sup>2,3</sup>	NOMINAL MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
<b>BEARING OR SHEAR WALLS:</b>		
1. Stone masonry	14	16
2. Reinforced grouted masonry	25	6
3. Reinforced hollow-unit masonry	25	6
<b>NONBEARING WALLS:</b>		
4. Exterior reinforced walls	30	6
5. Interior partitions reinforced	36	4

1. For walls of varying thickness, use the least thickness when determining the height or length to thickness ratio.

2. In determining the height or length-to-thickness ratio of a cantilevered wall, the dimension to be used shall be twice the dimension of the end of the wall from the lateral support.

3. Cantilevered walls not part of a building and not carrying applied vertical loads need not meet these minimum requirements but their design must comply with stress and overturning requirements.

**2107.6 [OSHPD IR, 2 & 5] Modify TMS 402, Section 8.3.4.4 by the following:**

Reinforced masonry walls, columns, pilasters, beams and lintels that are subjected to in-plane forces shall have a maximum flexural tensile reinforcement ratio,  $\rho_{max}$ , not greater than that computed by Equation 8-20.

**2107.7 Masonry Compressive Strength. [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5]** The specified compressive strength of structural masonry,  $f'_{m}$ , shall be equal to or exceed 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa). The value of  $f'_{m}$  used to determine nominal strength values in this chapter shall not exceed 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for concrete masonry and shall not exceed 4,500 psi (31.03 MPa) for clay masonry.

## SECTION 2108 STRENGTH DESIGN OF MASONRY

**2108.1 General.** The design of masonry structures using strength design shall comply with Section 2106 and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 and Chapter 9 of TMS 402, except as modified by Sections 2108.2 through 2108.4.

**2108.2 TMS 402, Section 6.1.5.1.1, development.** Modify the second paragraph of Section 6.1.5.1.1 as follows:

The required development length of reinforcement shall be determined by Equation (6-1), but shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and need not be greater than  $72 d_b$ .

**2108.3 TMS 402, Section 6.1.6.1.1, splices.** Modify Sections 6.1.6.1.2 and 6.1.6.1.3 as follows:

6.1.6.1.2 – A welded splice shall have the bars butted and welded to develop not less than 125 percent of the yield strength,  $f_y$ , of the bar in tension or compression, as required. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Welded splices shall not be permitted in plastic hinge zones of intermediate or special reinforced walls.

6.1.6.1.3 – Mechanical splices shall be classified as Type 1 or 2 in accordance with Section 18.2.7.1 of ACI 318. Type 1 mechanical splices shall not be used within a plastic hinge zone or within a beam-column joint of intermediate or special reinforced masonry shear walls. Type 2 mechanical splices are permitted in any location within a member.

**2108.4 [OSHPD 1R, 2B & 5] TMS 402, Section 9.1.9.1.1.** Modify TMS 402, Section 9.1.9.1.1 as follows:

**9.1.9.1.1 Masonry Compressive Strength.** The specified compressive strength of structural masonry,  $f'_{m}$ , shall be equal to or exceed 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa). The value of  $f'_{m}$  used to determine nominal strength values in this chapter shall not exceed 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for concrete masonry and shall not exceed 4,500 psi (31.03 MPa) for clay masonry.

## SECTION 2109 EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF ADOBE MASONRY

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Not permitted by OSHPD.

**2109.1 General.** Empirically designed adobe masonry shall conform to the requirements of Appendix A of TMS 402, except where otherwise noted in this section.

**2109.1.1 Limitations.** The use of empirical design of adobe masonry shall be limited as noted in Section A.1.2 of TMS 402. In buildings that exceed one or more of the

limitations of Section A.1.2 of TMS 402, masonry shall be designed in accordance with the engineered design provisions of Section 2101.2 or the foundation wall provisions of Section 1807.1.5.

Section A.1.2.2 of TMS 402 shall be modified as follows:

A.1.2.2 – **Wind.** Empirical requirements shall not apply to the design or construction of masonry for buildings, parts of buildings, or other structures to be located in areas where  $V_{asd}$  as determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1 of the *California Building Code* exceeds 110 mph.

**2109.2 Adobe construction.** Adobe construction shall comply with this section and shall be subject to the requirements of this code for Type V construction, Appendix A of TMS 402, and this section.

**2109.2.1 Unstabilized adobe.** Unstabilized adobe shall comply with Sections 2109.2.1.1 through 2109.2.1.4.

**2109.2.1.1 Compressive strength.** Adobe units shall have an average compressive strength of 300 psi (2068 kPa) when tested in accordance with ASTM C67. Five samples shall be tested and individual units are not permitted to have a compressive strength of less than 250 psi (1724 kPa).

**2109.2.1.2 Modulus of rupture.** Adobe units shall have an average modulus of rupture of 50 psi (345 kPa) when tested in accordance with the following procedure. Five samples shall be tested and individual units shall not have a modulus of rupture of less than 35 psi (241 kPa).

**2109.2.1.2.1 Support conditions.** A cured unit shall be simply supported by 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylindrical supports located 2 inches (51 mm) in from each end and extending the full width of the unit.

**2109.2.1.2.2 Loading conditions.** A 2-inch-diameter (51 mm) cylinder shall be placed at midspan parallel to the supports.

**2109.2.1.2.3 Testing procedure.** A vertical load shall be applied to the cylinder at the rate of 500 pounds per minute (37 N/s) until failure occurs.

**2109.2.1.2.4 Modulus of rupture determination.** The modulus of rupture shall be determined by the equation:

$$f_r = 3 PL_s / [2 S_w (S_t^2)] \quad (\text{Equation 21-2})$$

where, for the purposes of this section only:

$S_w$  = Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).

$f_r$  = Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).

$L_s$  = Distance between supports, inches (mm).

$S_t$  = Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).

$P$  = The applied load at failure, pounds (N).

**MASONRY**

**2109.2.1.3 Moisture content requirements.** Adobe units shall have a moisture content not exceeding 4 percent by weight.

**2109.2.1.4 Shrinkage cracks.** Adobe units shall not contain more than three shrinkage cracks and any single shrinkage crack shall not exceed 3 inches (76 mm) in length or  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) in width.

**2109.2.2 Stabilized adobe.** Stabilized adobe shall comply with Section 2109.2.1 for unstabilized adobe in addition to Sections 2109.2.2.1 and 2109.2.2.2.

**2109.2.2.1 Soil requirements.** Soil used for stabilized adobe units shall be chemically compatible with the stabilizing material.

**2109.2.2.2 Absorption requirements.** A 4-inch (102 mm) cube, cut from a stabilized adobe unit dried to a constant weight in a ventilated oven at 212°F to 239°F (100°C to 115°C), shall not absorb more than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  percent moisture by weight when placed on a constantly water-saturated, porous surface for seven days. Not fewer than five specimens shall be tested and each specimen shall be cut from a separate unit.

**2109.2.3 Allowable stress.** The allowable compressive stress based on gross cross-sectional area of adobe shall not exceed 30 psi (207 kPa).

**2109.2.3.1 Bolts.** Bolt values shall not exceed those set forth in Table 2109.2.3.1.

**2109.2.4 Detailed requirements.** Adobe construction shall comply with Sections 2109.2.4.1 through 2109.2.4.9.

**2109.2.4.1 Number of stories.** Adobe construction shall be limited to buildings not exceeding one story, except that two-story construction is allowed where designed by a registered design professional.

**2109.2.4.2 Mortar.** Mortar for adobe construction shall comply with Sections 2109.2.4.2.1 and 2109.2.4.2.2.

**TABLE 2109.2.3.1  
ALLOWABLE SHEAR ON BOLTS IN ADOBE MASONRY**

DIAMETER OF BOLTS (inches)	MINIMUM EMBEDMENT (inches)	SHEAR (pounds)
$\frac{1}{2}$	—	—
$\frac{5}{8}$	12	200
$\frac{3}{4}$	15	300
$\frac{7}{8}$	18	400
1	21	500
$1\frac{1}{8}$	24	600

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

**2109.2.4.2.1 General.** Mortar for adobe units shall be in accordance with Section 2103.2.1, or be composed of adobe soil of the same composition and stabilization as the adobe brick units. Unstabilized adobe soil mortar is permitted in conjunction with unstabilized adobe brick units.

**2109.2.4.2.2 Mortar joints.** Adobe units shall be laid with full head and bed joints and in full running bond.

**2109.2.4.3 Parapet walls.** Parapet walls constructed of adobe units shall be waterproofed.

**2109.2.4.4 Wall thickness.** The minimum thickness of exterior walls in one-story buildings shall be 10 inches (254 mm). The walls shall be laterally supported at intervals not exceeding 24 feet (7315 mm). The minimum thickness of interior load-bearing walls shall be 8 inches (203 mm). The unsupported height of any wall constructed of adobe units shall not exceed 10 times the thickness of such wall.

**2109.2.4.5 Foundations.** Foundations for adobe construction shall be in accordance with Sections 2109.2.4.5.1 and 2109.2.4.5.2.

**2109.2.4.5.1 Foundation support.** Walls and partitions constructed of adobe units shall be supported by foundations or footings that extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above adjacent ground surfaces and are constructed of solid masonry (excluding adobe) or concrete. Footings and foundations shall comply with Chapter 18.

**2109.2.4.5.2 Lower course requirements.** Stabilized adobe units shall be used in adobe walls for the first 4 inches (102 mm) above the finished first-floor elevation.

**2109.2.4.6 Isolated piers or columns.** Adobe units shall not be used for isolated piers or columns in a load-bearing capacity. Walls less than 24 inches (610 mm) in length shall be considered to be isolated piers or columns.

**2109.2.4.7 Tie beams.** Exterior walls and interior load-bearing walls constructed of adobe units shall have a continuous tie beam at the level of the floor or roof bearing and meeting the following requirements.

**2109.2.4.7.1 Concrete tie beams.** Concrete tie beams shall be 6 inches (152 mm) or more in depth and 10 inches (254 mm) or more in width. Concrete tie beams shall be continuously reinforced with not fewer than two No. 4 reinforcing bars. The specified compressive strength of concrete shall be not less than 2,500 psi (17.2 MPa).

**2109.2.4.7.2 Wood tie beams.** Wood tie beams shall be solid or built up of lumber having a nominal thickness of not less than 1 inch (25 mm), and shall have a depth of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) and a width of not less than 10 inches (254 mm). Joints in wood tie beams shall be spliced not less than 6 inches (152 mm). Splices shall not be allowed within 12 inches (305 mm) of an opening. Wood used in tie beams shall be approved naturally decay-resistant or preservative-treated wood.

**2109.2.4.8 Exterior finish.** Exterior finishes applied to adobe masonry walls shall be of any type permitted by this section or Chapter 14, except where stated otherwise in this section.

**2109.2.4.8.1 Where required.** Unstabilized adobe masonry walls shall receive a weather protective exterior finish in accordance with Section 2109.2.4.8.

**2109.2.4.8.2 Vapor permeance.** Plaster and finish assemblies shall have a vapor permeance of not less than 5 perms.

**Exception:** Insulation products applied to the exterior of stabilized adobe masonry walls in Climate Zones 2B, 3B, 4B and 5B shall not have a vapor permeance requirement. *Comparison of IECC and California Energy Code climate zones is shown in Chapter 12, Table 1202.3.1.*

**2109.2.4.8.3 Plaster thickness and coats.** Plaster applied to adobe masonry shall be not less than  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch (22 mm) and not greater than 2 inches (51 mm) thick. Plaster shall be applied in not less than two coats.

**2109.2.4.8.4 Plaster application.** Where plaster is applied directly to adobe masonry walls, no intermediate membrane shall be used.

**2109.2.4.8.5 Lath for plaster.** Lath shall be provided for all plasters, except where not required elsewhere in Section 2109.2.4.8. Fasteners shall be corrosion resistant and spaced at a maximum of 16 inches (406 mm) on center with a minimum  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm) penetration into the adobe wall. Metal lath shall comply with ASTM C1063, as modified by this section, and shall be corrosion resistant. Plastic lath shall comply with ASTM C1788, as modified by this section. Wood substrates shall be protected with No. 15 asphalt felt, an approved wood preservative or other protective coating prior to lath application.

**2109.2.4.8.6 Cement plaster.** Cement plaster shall conform to ASTM C926 and shall comply with Chapter 25, except that the proportion of lime in plaster coats shall be not less than 1 part lime to 4 parts cement. The combined thickness of cement plaster coats shall not exceed 1 inch (25 mm).

**2109.2.4.8.7 Lime plaster.** Lime plaster is any plaster with a binder composed of calcium hydroxide, including Type N or S hydrated lime, hydraulic lime, natural hydraulic lime, or slaked quicklime. Hydrated lime shall comply with ASTM C206. Hydraulic lime shall comply with ASTM C1707. Natural hydraulic lime shall comply with ASTM C141 and EN 459. Quicklime shall comply with ASTM C5.

**2109.2.4.8.8 Cement-lime plaster.** Cement-lime plaster shall be any plaster mix type CL, F or FL, as described in ASTM C926.

**2109.2.4.8.9 Clay plaster.** Clay plaster shall comply with this section.

**2109.2.4.8.9.1 General.** Clay plaster shall be any plaster having a clay or clay subsoil binder. Such

plaster shall contain sufficient clay to fully bind the aggregate and shall be permitted to contain reinforcing fibers. Acceptable reinforcing fibers include chopped straw, sisal, and animal hair.

**2109.2.4.8.9.2 Clay subsoil requirements.** The suitability of clay subsoil shall be determined in accordance with the Figure 2 Ribbon Test and the Figure 3 Ball Test in the appendix of ASTM E2392/E2392M.

**2109.2.4.8.9.3 Weather-exposed locations.** Clay plaster exposed to water from direct or wind-driven rain or snow shall be finished with an approved erosion-resistant finish. The use of clay plasters shall not be permitted on weather-exposed parapets.

**2109.2.4.8.9.4 Prohibited finish coat.** Plaster containing Portland cement shall not be permitted as a finish over clay plaster.

**2109.2.4.8.9.5 Conditions where lathing is not required.** For unstabilized adobe walls finished with unstabilized clay plaster, lathing shall not be required.

**2109.2.4.9 Lintels.** Lintels shall be considered to be structural members and shall be designed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 16.

## SECTION 2110 GLASS UNIT MASONRY

**2110.1 General.** [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Masonry glass block walls or panels shall be designed for seismic forces. Stresses in glass block shall not be utilized. Glass unit masonry construction shall comply with Chapter 13 of TMS 402 and this section.

**2110.1.1 Limitations.** Solid or hollow approved glass block shall not be used in fire walls, party walls, fire barriers, fire partitions or smoke barriers, or for load-bearing construction. Such blocks shall be erected with mortar and reinforcement in metal channel-type frames, structural frames, masonry or concrete recesses, embedded panel anchors as provided for both exterior and interior walls or other approved joint materials. Wood strip framing shall not be used in walls required to have a fire-resistance rating by other provisions of this code.

### Exceptions:

1. Glass-block assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour shall be permitted as opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 in fire barriers, fire partitions and smoke barriers that have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less and do not enclose exit stairways and ramps or exit passageways.
2. Glass-block assemblies as permitted in Section 404.6, Exception 2.

**MASONRY**

## **SECTION 2111** **MASONRY FIREPLACES**

**2111.1 General.** The construction of masonry fireplaces, consisting of concrete or masonry, shall be in accordance with this section.

**2111.2 Fireplace drawings.** The construction documents shall describe in sufficient detail the location, size and construction of masonry fireplaces. The thickness and characteristics of materials and the clearances from walls, partitions and ceilings shall be indicated.

**2111.3 Footings and foundations.** Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) beyond the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

**2111.3.1 Ash dump cleanout.** Cleanout openings, located within foundation walls below fireboxes, where provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed, except when in use. Cleanouts shall be accessible and located so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

**2111.4 Seismic reinforcement.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2111.4.1, 2111.4.2 and 2111.5. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108.

**2111.4.1 Vertical reinforcing.** For fireplaces with chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars, anchored in the foundation, shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103.3. For fireplaces with chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

**2111.4.2 Horizontal reinforcing.** Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) ties or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete; or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry at not less than every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

**2111.5 Seismic anchorage.** Masonry fireplaces and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two  $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked

around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to not fewer than four floor joists with two  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

**Exception:** Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B.
2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely within the exterior walls.

**2111.6 Firebox walls.** Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness or other approved lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and side-walls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall be not greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm). Where a lining is not provided, the total minimum thickness of back and side-walls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of solid masonry. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C27 or ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199.

**2111.6.1 Steel fireplace units.** Steel fireplace units are permitted to be installed with solid masonry to form a masonry fireplace provided that they are installed according to either the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in thickness, and an air-circulating chamber that is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with solid masonry to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of solid masonry or concrete. Circulating air ducts employed with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

**2111.7 Firebox dimensions.** The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a minimum depth of 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in depth. The cross-sectional area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall be not less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

**Exception:** Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, and the throat is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel, and not less than  $\frac{1}{20}$  the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

**2111.8 Lintel and throat.** Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening.

**2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

**2111.8.1 Damper.** Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or at the top of the flue venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace. Damper controls shall be permitted to be located in the fireplace.

**2111.9 Smoke chamber walls.** Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C315.

**2111.9.1 Smoke chamber dimensions.** The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall be not greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.76 rad) from vertical where prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or where the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. Where the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

**2111.10 Hearth and hearth extension.** Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. Combustible material shall not remain against the underside of hearths or hearth extensions after construction.

**2111.10.1 Hearth thickness.** The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

**2111.10.2 Hearth extension thickness.** The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

**Exception:** Where the bottom of the firebox opening is raised not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick (9.5 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other approved noncombustible material is permitted.

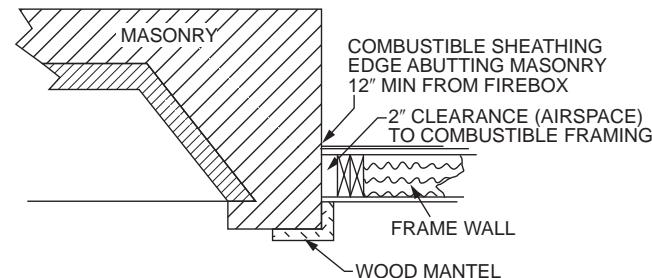
**2111.11 Hearth extension dimensions.** Hearth extensions shall extend not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in front of, and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet ( $0.557 \text{ m}^2$ ) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in front of, and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening.

**2111.12 Fireplace clearance.** Any portion of a masonry fireplace located in the interior of a building or within the exterior wall of a building shall have a clearance to combustibles of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces

and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2111.13.

#### Exceptions:

1. Masonry fireplaces listed and labeled for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where masonry fireplaces are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, flooring and drywall, are permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls and hearth extension, in accordance with Figure 2111.12, provided that such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
4. Exposed combustible mantels or trim is permitted to be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening, provided that such combustible materials shall not be placed within 6 inches (153 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material directly above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such opening. Combustible materials located along the sides of the fireplace opening that project more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) from the face of the fireplace shall have an additional clearance equal to the projection.



Note: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

**FIGURE 2111.12  
ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION TO  
FIREPLACE CLEARANCE PROVISION**

**2111.13 Fireplace fireblocking.** All spaces between fireplaces and floors and ceilings through which fireplaces pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and shall only be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid

## MASONRY

across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

**2111.14 Exterior air.** Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this section shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

**2111.14.1 Factory-built fireplaces.** Exterior combustion air ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be listed components of the fireplace, and installed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

**2111.14.2 Masonry fireplaces.** Listed combustion air ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed according to the terms of their listing and manufacturer's instructions.

**2111.14.3 Exterior air intake.** The exterior air intake shall be capable of providing all combustion air from the exterior of the dwelling. The exterior air intake shall not be located within a garage, attic, basement or crawl space of the dwelling nor shall the air intake be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

**2111.14.4 Clearance.** Unlisted combustion air ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

**2111.14.5 Passageway.** The combustion air passageway shall be not less than 6 square inches ( $3870 \text{ mm}^2$ ) and not more than 55 square inches ( $0.035 \text{ m}^2$ ), except that combustion air systems for listed fireplaces or for fireplaces tested for emissions shall be constructed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

**2111.14.6 Outlet.** The exterior air outlet is permitted to be located in the back or sides of the firebox chamber or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the firebox opening on or near the floor. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

## SECTION 2112 MASONRY HEATERS

**2112.1 Definition.** A masonry heater is a heating appliance constructed of concrete or solid masonry, hereinafter referred to as "masonry," which is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox includes flow in either a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and which delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

**2112.2 Installation.** Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E1602.

2. Masonry heaters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**2112.3 Footings and foundation.** The firebox floor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of noncombustible material and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section 2113.2.

**2112.4 Seismic reinforcing.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, masonry heaters shall be anchored to the masonry foundation in accordance with Section 2113.3. Seismic reinforcing shall not be required within the body of a masonry heater with a height that is equal to or less than 3.5 times its body width and where the masonry chimney serving the heater is not supported by the body of the heater. Where the masonry chimney shares a common wall with the facing of the masonry heater, the chimney portion of the structure shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 2113.

**2112.5 Masonry heater clearance.** Combustible materials shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) or the distance of the allowed reduction method from the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211, Section 12.6, and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

### Exceptions:

1. Where the masonry heater wall thickness is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry and the wall thickness of the heat exchange channels is not less than 5 inches (127 mm) of solid masonry, combustible materials shall not be placed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A clearance of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.
2. Masonry heaters listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

## SECTION 2113 MASONRY CHIMNEYS

**2113.1 General.** The construction of masonry chimneys consisting of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete shall be in accordance with this section.

**2113.2 Footings and foundations.** Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

**2113.3 Seismic reinforcement.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic reinforcement is

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

not required. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2113.3.1, 2113.3.2 and 2113.4. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108 and anchored in accordance with Section 2113.4.

**2113.3.1 Vertical reinforcement.** For chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars anchored in the foundation shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103.3. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

**2113.3.2 Horizontal reinforcement.** Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) ties, or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete, or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry, at not less than every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

**2113.4 Seismic anchorage.** Masonry chimneys and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two  $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to not less than four floor joists with two  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

**Exception:** Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B.
2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely within the exterior walls.

**2113.5 Corbeling.** Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) in thickness unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second story of a two-story dwelling, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls is permitted to equal the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

**2113.6 Changes in dimension.** The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

**2113.7 Offsets.** Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an approved manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section 2113.5.

**2113.8 Additional load.** Chimneys shall not support *loads* other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Masonry chimneys are permitted to be constructed as part of the masonry walls or concrete walls of the building.

**2113.9 Termination.** Chimneys shall extend not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

**2113.9.1 Chimney caps.** Masonry chimneys shall have a concrete, metal or stone cap, sloped to shed water, a drip edge and a caulked bond break around any flue liners in accordance with ASTM C1283.

**2113.9.2 Spark arrestors. [SFM]** All chimneys attached to any appliance or fireplace that burns solid fuel shall be equipped with an approved spark arrester. The spark arrester shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the spark arrester shall not be less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney.
2. The spark arrester screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 12-gage wire, 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.
3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).
4. The spark arrester shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

**2113.9.3 Rain caps.** Where a masonry or metal rain cap is installed on a masonry chimney, the net free area under the cap shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

**2113.10 Wall thickness.** Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of concrete, solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal thickness.

**2113.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys.** Where masonry is used as veneer for a framed chimney, through flashing and weep holes shall be provided as required by Chapter 14.

**2113.11 Flue lining (material).** Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of

**MASONRY**

appliance connected, according to the terms of the appliance listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

**2113.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general).** Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315.
2. Listed chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units listed for installation within masonry chimneys.
4. Other approved materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

**2113.11.1.1 Flue linings for specific appliances.** Flue linings other than those covered in Section 2113.11.1 intended for use with specific appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.11.1.2 through 2113.11.1.4, 2113.11.2 and 2113.11.3.

**2113.11.1.2 Gas appliances.** Flue lining systems for gas appliances shall be in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**2113.11.1.3 Pellet fuel-burning appliances.** Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113.11.1 and pellet vents listed for installation within masonry chimneys (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

**2113.11.1.4 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with L-vent.** Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113.11.1 and listed chimney liners complying with UL 641 (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

**2113.11.1.5 Notice of usage.** When a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section 2113.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a label attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The label shall include the following message or equivalent language: "This chimney is for use only with (type or category of appliance) that burns (type of fuel). Do not connect other types of appliances."

**2113.11.2 Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall comply with Sections 2113.11.2.1 through 2113.11.2.5.

**2113.11.2.1 Construction.** Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of solid masonry units or of concrete with walls not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick, or with stone masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick.

**2113.11.2.2 Lining.** Concrete and masonry chimneys shall be lined with an approved medium-duty refractory brick not less than  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) thick laid on

the  $4\frac{1}{2}$ -inch bed (114 mm) in an approved medium-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start 2 feet (610 mm) or more below the lowest chimney connector entrance. Chimneys terminating 25 feet (7620 mm) or less above a chimney connector entrance shall be lined to the top.

**2113.11.2.3 Multiple passageway.** Concrete and masonry chimneys containing more than one passageway shall have the liners separated by a minimum 4-inch-thick (102 mm) concrete or solid masonry wall.

**2113.11.2.4 Termination height.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm).

**2113.11.2.5 Clearance.** A minimum clearance of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be provided between the exterior surfaces of a concrete or masonry chimney for medium-heat appliances and combustible material.

**2113.11.3 Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall comply with 2113.11.3.1 through 2113.11.3.4.

**2113.11.3.1 Construction.** Chimneys for high-heat appliances shall be constructed with double walls of solid masonry units or of concrete, each wall to be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick with a minimum airspace of 2 inches (51 mm) between the walls.

**2113.11.3.2 Lining.** The inside of the interior wall shall be lined with an approved high-duty refractory brick, not less than  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) thick laid on the  $4\frac{1}{2}$ -inch bed (114 mm) in an approved high-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start at the base of the chimney and extend continuously to the top.

**2113.11.3.3 Termination height.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall extend not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**2113.11.3.4 Clearance.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall have approved clearance from buildings and structures to prevent overheating combustible materials, permit inspection and maintenance operations on the chimney and prevent danger of burns to persons.

**2113.12 Clay flue lining (installation).** Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a maximum slope not greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty nonwater-soluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an airspace or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue lining shall be sup-

ported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

### 2113.13 Additional requirements.

**2113.13.1 Listed materials.** Listed materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

**2113.13.2 Space around lining.** The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance.

**Exception:** This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**2113.14 Multiple flues.** Where two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

**Exception:** Where venting only one appliance, two flues are permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**2113.15 Flue area (appliance).** Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than the area of the connector from the appli-

ance. Chimney flues connected to more than one appliance shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

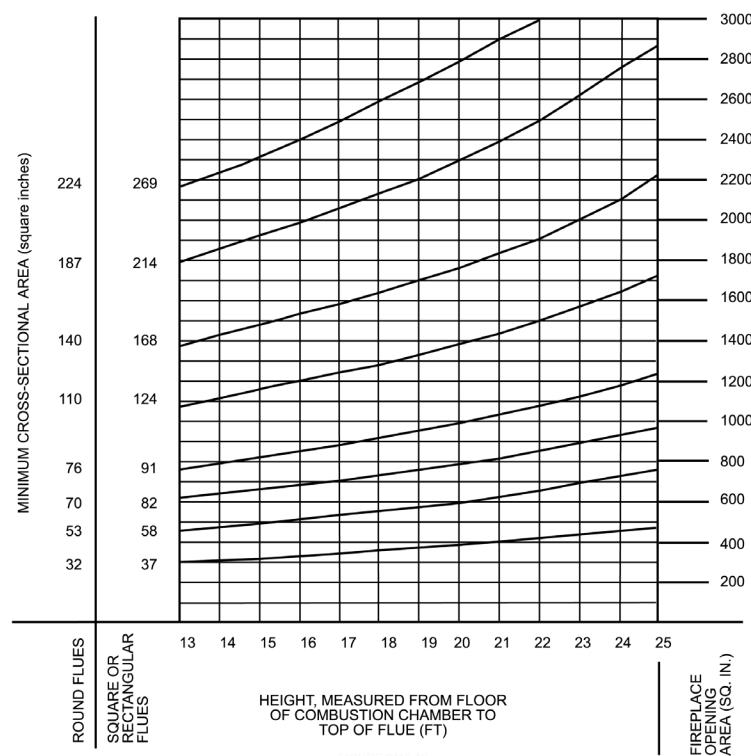
### Exceptions:

- Chimney flues serving oil-fired appliances sized in accordance with NFPA 31.
- Chimney flues serving gas-fired appliances sized in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**2113.16 Flue area (masonry fireplace).** Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section 2113.16.1 or 2113.16.2.

**2113.16.1 Minimum area.** Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  of the fireplace opening.

**2113.16.2 Determination of minimum area.** The minimum net cross-sectional area of the flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure 2113.16. A flue size



Note: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm<sup>2</sup>.

**FIGURE 2113.16**  
**FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS**

**MASONRY**

providing not less than the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are as provided in Tables 2113.16(1) and 2113.16(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.

**TABLE 2113.16(1)**  
**NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES<sup>a</sup>**

FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
6	28
7	38
8	50
10	78
10 <sup>3/4</sup>	90
12	113
15	176
18	254

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>.

a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C315.

**TABLE 2113.16(2)**  
**NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF  
SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES**

FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
4.5 × 8.5	23
4.5 × 13	34
8 × 8	42
8.5 × 8.5	49
8 × 12	67
8.5 × 13	76
12 × 12	102
8.5 × 18	101
13 × 13	127
12 × 16	131
13 × 18	173
16 × 16	181
16 × 20	222
18 × 18	233
20 × 20	298
20 × 24	335
24 × 24	431

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>.

**2113.17 Inlet.** Insets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Insets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

**2113.18 Masonry chimney cleanout openings.** Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper

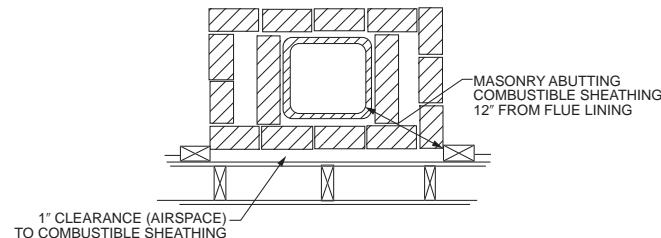
edge of the cleanout shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

**Exception:** Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces, where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

**2113.19 Chimney clearances.** Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the exterior walls of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2113.20.

**Exceptions:**

1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system listed and labeled for use in chimneys in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, are permitted to abut the masonry chimney sidewalls, in accordance with Figure 2113.19, provided that such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining. Combustible material and trim shall not overlap the corners of the chimney by more than 1 inch (25 mm).



**FIGURE 2113.19**  
**ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION THREE  
CHIMNEY CLEARANCE PROVISION**

**2113.20 Chimney fireblocking.** All spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

**MASONRY**

## SECTION 2114 DRY-STACK MASONRY

**2114.1 General.** The design of dry-stack masonry structures shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 8 of TMS 402 except as modified by Sections 2114.2 through 2114.5.

**2114.2 Limitations.** Dry-stack masonry shall be prohibited in *Risk Category IV* structures.

**2114.3 Materials.** Concrete masonry units complying with ASTM C90 shall be used.

**2114.4 Strength.** Dry-stack masonry shall be of adequate strength and proportions to support all superimposed loads without exceeding the allowable stresses listed in Table 2114.4. Allowable stresses not specified in Table 2114.4 shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 8 of TMS 402.

**TABLE 2114.4  
GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA  
ALLOWABLE STRESS FOR DRY-STACK MASONRY**

DESCRIPTION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS (psi)
Compression	45
Flexural tension	
Horizontal span	30
Vertical span	18
Shear	10

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.006895 MPa.

**2114.5 Construction.** Construction of dry-stack masonry shall comply with ASTM C946.

## SECTION 2115 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNITY COLLEGES [DSA-SS/CC]

**2115.1 General.** In addition to the provisions of this chapter, the following requirements shall apply to community college buildings regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC).

**2115.1.1 Prohibitions.** The following design, systems and materials in TMS 402/602 are not permitted by DSA:

1. Unreinforced masonry.
2. Autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) masonry.
3. Empirical design of masonry and prescriptive design of masonry partition walls.
4. Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls.
5. Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls.
6. Prestressed masonry shear walls.
7. Direct design of masonry.

**2115.2 Metal reinforcement and accessories.** The frequency of sampling for unidentifiable reinforcing bars may alternatively be in accordance with Section 1909.2.4.

**2115.3 Air entrainment.** Air-entraining substances shall not be used in grout.

**2115.4 Masonry construction.** Architectural cast stone construction shall be considered as an alternative system.

**2115.5 Reinforced grouted masonry.**

**2115.5.1 TMS 602, Article 3.3 B Placing mortar and units.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.3 B.2.c as follows:

- c. Remove masonry protrusions extending greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) into cells or cavities to be grouted.

**2115.5.2 TMS 602, Article 3.4 B Reinforcement.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.4 B.1 and Article 3.4 B.3 as follows:

1. Support reinforcement to prevent displacement caused by construction loads or by placement of grout or mortar, beyond the allowable tolerances. *Reinforcement and embedded items shall be clean, properly positioned and securely anchored against moving prior to grouting.*
3. Maintain a clear distance between reinforcing bars and the interior of masonry unit or formed surface of at least  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) for fine grout and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) for coarse grout, except where cross webs of hollow units are used as supports for horizontal reinforcement. *Reinforcement and embedded items shall be solidly embedded in grout.*

**2115.5.3 TMS 602, Article 3.4 D Anchor bolts.** Replace TMS 602, Article 3.4 D.3 and add Articles 3.4 D.5 and 3.4 D.6 as follows:

3. *Anchor bolts in the wythe or face shells of hollow masonry units shall be positioned to maintain a minimum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of grout between the bolt circumference, the wythe or the face shell. For the portion of the bolt that is within the grouted cell, maintain a clear distance between the bolt and the face of masonry unit and between the head of the bolt and the formed surface of grout of at least  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) when using fine grout and at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) when using coarse grout. Bolts shall be solidly embedded in grout.*

5. *Bent bar anchor bolts shall not be allowed. The maximum size anchor shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter for 6-inch (152 mm) nominal masonry,  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19 mm) diameter for 8-inch (203 mm) nominal masonry,  $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch (22 mm) diameter for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal masonry, and 1-inch (25 mm) diameter for 12-inch (304.8 mm) nominal masonry.*

6. *Bolts shall be accurately set with templates or by approved equivalent means and held in place to prevent dislocation during grouting.*

**MASONRY**

**2115.5.4 TMS 602, Article 3.5 A Placing time.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.5 A by adding Article 3.5 A.3 as follows:

3. The grouting of any section of a wall between control barriers shall be completed in one day with no interruptions greater than one hour.

**2115.5.5 TMS 602, Article 3.5 B Confinement.** Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.5 B:

2. All cells shall be solidly filled with grout in reinforced hollow unit masonry.

**Exception:** Reinforced hollow-unit masonry laid in running bond used for freestanding site walls or interior nonbearing non-shear wall partitions may be grouted only in cells containing vertical and horizontal reinforcement.

**2115.5.6 TMS 602, Article 3.5 E Consolidation.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.5 E.1.b as follows:

- b. Consolidate pours exceeding 12 in. (305 mm) in height by mechanical vibration, and reconsolidate by mechanical vibration after initial water loss and settlement has occurred, but before plasticity is lost.

**2115.5.7 TMS 602, Article 3.5 F.1 Grout key.** Replace TMS 602, Article 3.5 F.1 as follows:

1. Between grout pours or where grouting has been stopped more than an hour, a horizontal construction joint shall be formed by terminating grout a minimum of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) below a mortar joint, except at the top of the wall. Where bond beams occur, the grout pour shall be terminated a minimum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) below the mortar joint.

**2115.6 TMS 602, Article 3.5 Grout placement.** Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.5:

**3.5 I. Additional grouting requirements:**

1. Grout shall be placed by pumping or an approved alternate method before initial set of hardening occurs.
2. Grout shall be placed so that all spaces to be grouted do not contain voids.
3. Grout shall not be handled nor pumped utilizing aluminum equipment unless it can be demonstrated with the materials and equipment to be used that there will be no deleterious effect on the strength of the grout.

**2115.7 Compressive strength,  $f'_m$ .** The minimum specified compressive strength,  $f'_m$ , in the design shall be not less than 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa) for all structural masonry construction using materials and details of construction required herein. The value of  $f'_m$  used to determine nominal strength value in this chapter shall not exceed 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for concrete masonry and shall not exceed 4,500 psi (31.03 MPa) for clay masonry.

**2115.8 Additional testing requirements.**

**2115.8.1 Mortar and grout tests. TMS 602, Article 1.4 B Compressive Strength Determination.** Modify TMS 602, Article 1.4 B as follows by adding:

**5. Additional testing requirements:**

- a. At the beginning of all masonry work, at least one test sample of the mortar shall be taken on three successive working days and at least at one-week intervals thereafter. Where mortar is based on a proportion specification, mortar shall be sampled and tested during construction in accordance with ASTM C780, including Annex 4, to verify the proportions specified in ASTM C270, Table 2. Where mortar is based on a property specification, mortar shall be laboratory prepared and tested prior to construction in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify the properties specified in ASTM C270, Table 1 and field sampled and tested during construction in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify the proportions with the laboratory tests. Mortar sampling and testing is not required for preblended mortars in conformance with ASTM C270 with a valid evaluation report.

- b. Samples of grout shall be taken for each mix design, each day grout is placed, and not less than every 5,000 square feet of masonry wall area. The grout shall meet the minimum strength requirement given in ASTM C476/TMS 602 Section 2.2, or greater as specified.

- c. Additional samples shall be taken whenever any change in materials or job conditions occur, as determined by the building official.

- d. Test specimens for mortar and grout shall be made as set forth in ASTM C780/C1586 and ASTM C1019. When the prism test method is used in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3 during construction, the tests in this section are not required.

**Exception:** For nonbearing nonshear masonry walls not exceeding total wall height of 12 feet above the top of the foundation, mortar test shall be permitted to be limited to those at the beginning of masonry work for each mix design.

**2115.8.2 Masonry core testing.** Not less than two cores shall be taken from each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the masonry wall area or fraction thereof. The approved agency shall perform or observe the coring of the masonry walls and sample locations shall be subject to approval of the registered design professional.

Core samples shall comply with the following:

1. Cored no sooner than 7 days after grouting of the selected area;
2. Be a minimum of  $3\frac{3}{4}$  inches (96 mm) in nominal diameter; and

3. Sampled in such a manner as to exclude any masonry unit webs, mortar joint, or reinforcing steel. If all cells contain reinforcement, alternate core locations or means to detect void or delamination shall be selected by the registered design professional and approved by the building official.

Visual examination of all cores shall be made by an approved agency and the condition of the cores reported as required by the California Administrative Code. Shear test shall test both joints between the grout core and the outside wythes or face shell of the masonry 28 days after grouting of the sample area using a shear test apparatus acceptable to the enforcement agency. Core samples shall not be soaked before testing. Core samples to be tested shall be stored in sealed plastic bags or non-absorbent containers immediately after coring and for at least 5 days prior to testing. The average unit shear value for each pair of cores (4 shear tests) from each 5,000 square feet of wall area (or less) on the cross section of the cores shall not be less than  $2.5 \sqrt{f'_m}$  psi.

All cores shall be submitted to an approved agency for examination, even where the core specimens failed during the cutting operation. The approved agency shall report the location where each core was taken, the findings of their visual examination of each core, identify which cores were selected for shear testing, and the results of the shear tests.

#### **Exceptions:**

1. Core sampling and testing is not required for nonbearing nonshear masonry walls, not exceeding a total wall height of 12 feet above top of foundation, built with single-wythe hollow unit concrete masonry that attaches opposite face shells using webs cast as single unit, when designed using an  $f'_m$  not exceeding 2,000 psi (13.79 MPa).
2. An infrared thermographic survey or other non-destructive test procedures, shall be permitted to be approved as an alternative system to detect voids or delamination in grouted masonry in-lieu of core sampling and testing.

### **2115.9 Modifications to TMS 402.**

**2115.9.1 TMS 402, Sections 5.3.1.4(a) and 5.3.1.4(b).** Replace TMS 402, Sections 5.3.1.4(a) and 5.3.1.4(b) as follows:

- a. Ties shall be at least  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) in diameter and shall be embedded in grout. Top tie shall be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top of the column or of the bottom of the horizontal bar in the supported beam.
- b. The spacing of column ties shall be as follows: not greater than 8 bar diameters, 24 tie diameters, or one half the least dimension of the column, or 8 inches (203 mm) for the full column height.

**2115.9.2 2106A.1.3 TMS 402, Sections 7.4.4.1 and 7.4.5.1.** Replace TMS 402, Section 7.4.4.1 as follows and delete Section 7.4.5.1:

**7.4.4.1 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry walls.** The total area of reinforcement in reinforced masonry walls shall not be less than 0.003 times the sectional area of the wall. Neither the horizontal nor the vertical reinforcement shall be less than one third of the total. Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be spaced at not more than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center.

**Exception:** Reinforced hollow-unit masonry used for freestanding site walls or interior nonbearing nonshear wall partitions shall have horizontal reinforcing spaced not more than 4'-0" on center, except for locations in Seismic Design Category F, and may be grouted only in cells containing vertical and horizontal reinforcement..

**7.4.4.1.1** The minimum reinforcing shall be No. 4, except that No. 3 bars may be used for ties and stirrups. Vertical wall reinforcement shall have dowels of equal size and equally matched spacing in all footings. Reinforcement shall be continuous around wall corners and through intersections. Only reinforcement which is continuous in the wall shall be considered in computing the minimum area of reinforcement. Reinforcement with splices conforming to TMS 402 shall be considered as continuous reinforcement.

**7.4.4.1.2** Horizontal reinforcing bars in bond beams shall be provided in the top of footings, at the top of wall openings, at roof and floor levels, and at the top of parapet walls. For walls 12 inches (nominal) (305 mm) or more in thickness, horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be equally divided into two layers, except where designed as retaining walls. Where reinforcement is added above the minimum requirements, such additional reinforcement need not be so divided.

**7.4.4.1.3** In bearing walls of every type of reinforced masonry, there shall be trim reinforcement of not less than one No. 5 bar or two No. 4 bars on all sides of, and adjacent to, every opening which exceeds 16 inches (406 mm) in either direction, and such bars shall extend not less than 48 diameters, but in no case less than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the corners of the opening. The bars required by this paragraph shall be in addition to the minimum reinforcement required elsewhere.

**7.4.4.1.4** When the reinforcement in bearing walls is designed, placed and anchored in position as for columns, the allowable stresses shall be as for columns.

**7.4.4.1.5** Joint reinforcement shall not be used as principal reinforcement in masonry.

**MASONRY****2115.10 Additional requirements for allowable stress design.**

**2115.10.1 TMS 402. Section 8.3.4.4 Walls.** Modify TMS 402, Section 8.3.4.4 as follows by adding:

## 8.3.8 – Walls and piers.

> **Thickness of walls.** Stresses shall be determined on the basis of the net thickness of the masonry, with consideration for reduction, such as raked joints.

>|| *The thickness of masonry walls shall be designed so that allowable maximum stresses specified in this chapter are not exceeded. Masonry walls shall not exceed the height or length-to-thickness ratio nor be less than the minimum thickness as specified in this chapter and as set forth in Table 8.3.4.4.*

**Piers.** Every pier or wall section which width is less than three times its thickness shall be designed and constructed as required for columns if such pier is a structural member. Every pier or wall section which width is between three and five times its thickness or less than one half the height of adjacent openings shall have all horizontal steel in the form of ties except that in walls 12 inches (305 mm) or less in thickness such steel may be in the form of hair-pins.

**2115.11 Glass unit masonry construction.** Masonry glass block walls or panels shall be designated for seismic forces. Stresses in glass block shall not be utilized.

|| **TABLE 8.3.4.4**  
**MINIMUM THICKNESS OF MASONRY WALLS<sup>1,2</sup>**

TYPE OF MASONRY	MAXIMUM RATIO UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OR LENGTH TO THICKNESS <sup>2,3</sup>	NOMINAL MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
<i>BEARING OR SHEAR WALLS:</i>		
1. Stone masonry	14	16
2. Reinforced grouted masonry	25	6
3. Reinforced hollow-unit masonry	25	6
<i>NONBEARING WALLS:</i>		
4. Exterior reinforced walls	30	6
5. Interior partitions reinforced	36	4

1. For walls of varying thickness, use the least thickness when determining the height or length to thickness ratio.
2. In determining the height or length-to-thickness ratio of a cantilevered wall, the dimension to be used shall be twice the dimension of the end of the wall from the lateral support.
3. Cantilevered walls not part of a building and not carrying applied vertical loads need not meet these minimum requirements but their design must comply with stress and overturning requirements.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 21A – MASONRY

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter							X			X			X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2113A.9.2																						

*The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †*

*The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.*



# CHAPTER 21A

## MASONRY

### SECTION 2101A GENERAL

**2101A.1 Scope.** This chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of masonry.

**2101A.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 21A is as follows:*

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (DSA-SS), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1. These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*
2. *Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 and 1.10.4 regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals and correctional treatment centers.*

**2101A.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS and OSHPD 1 & 4 adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. *Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety:  
[DSA-SS] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.*
2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:  
[OSHPD 1] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.  
[OSHPD 4] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.*

**2101A.1.3 Prohibition.** *The following design methods, systems and materials in TMS 402/602 are not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD:*

1. *Unreinforced masonry.*
2. *Autoclaved aerated concrete (AAC) masonry.*
3. *Empirical design of masonry and prescriptive design of masonry partition walls.*
4. *Adobe construction.*
5. *Ordinary reinforced masonry shear walls.*
6. *Intermediate reinforced masonry shear walls.*
7. *Prestressed masonry shear walls.*
8. *Direct design of masonry.*



**2101A.2 Design methods.** Masonry shall comply with the provisions of TMS 402 or TMS 404 as well as applicable requirements of this chapter.

**2101A.2.1 Masonry veneer.** Masonry veneer shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 14.

**2101A.3 Special inspection.** The special inspection of masonry shall be as defined in Chapter 17A, or an itemized testing and inspection program shall be provided that meets or exceeds the requirements of Chapter 17A.

### SECTION 2102A NOTATIONS

**2102A.1 General.** The following notations are used in the chapter:

#### NOTATIONS.

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| $d_b$      | = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm).  |
| $F_s$      | = Allowable tensile or compressive stress in reinforcement, psi (MPa).   |
| $f_r$      | = Modulus of rupture, psi (MPa).   |
| $f'_{AAC}$ | = Specified compressive strength of AAC masonry, the minimum compressive strength for a class of AAC masonry as specified in TMS 602, psi (MPa). |
| $f'_{m}$   | = Specified compressive strength of masonry at age of 28 days, psi (MPa).  |
| $f'_{mi}$  | = Specified compressive strength of masonry at the time of prestress transfer, psi (MPa).  |
| $K$        | = The lesser of the masonry cover, clear spacing between adjacent reinforcement, or five times $d_b$ , inches (mm).                              |
| $L_s$      | = Distance between supports, inches (mm).  |
| $l_d$      | = Required development length or lap length of reinforcement, inches (mm).   |
| $P$        | = The applied load at failure, pounds (N).   |
| $S_t$      | = Thickness of the test specimen measured parallel to the direction of load, inches (mm).  |
| $S_w$      | = Width of the test specimen measured parallel to the loading cylinder, inches (mm).   |

### SECTION 2103A MASONRY CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

**2103A.1 Masonry units.** Concrete masonry units, clay or shale masonry units, stone masonry units and glass unit masonry shall comply with Article 2.3 of TMS 602. Architectural cast stone shall conform to ASTM C1364 and TMS 504. Adhered manufactured stone masonry veneer units shall conform to ASTM C1670. *Architectural cast stone construction shall be considered as an alternative system.*

**Exception:** Structural clay tile for nonstructural use in fireproofing of structural members and in wall furring shall not be required to meet the compressive strength specifications. The fire-resistance rating shall be deter-

**MASONRY**

mined in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 and shall comply with the requirements of Table 705.5.

**2103A.1.1 Second-hand units.** Second-hand masonry units shall not be reused unless they conform to the requirements of new units. The units shall be of whole, sound materials and free from cracks and other defects that will interfere with proper laying or use. Old mortar shall be cleaned from the unit before reuse.

**2103A.2 Mortar.** Mortar for masonry construction shall comply with Section 2103A.2.1, 2103A.2.2, 2103A.2.3 or 2103A.2.4.

**2103A.2.1 Masonry mortar.** Mortar for use in masonry construction shall conform to Articles 2.1 and 2.6 A of TMS 602.

**2103A.2.2 Surface-bonding mortar.** Surface-bonding mortar shall comply with ASTM C887. Surface bonding of concrete masonry units shall comply with ASTM C946.

**2103A.2.3 Mortars for ceramic wall and floor tile.** Portland cement mortars for installing ceramic wall and floor tile shall comply with ANSI A108.1A and ANSI A108.1B and be of the compositions indicated in Table 2103A.2.3.

**TABLE 2103A.2.3  
CERAMIC TILE MORTAR COMPOSITIONS**

LOCATION	MORTAR	COMPOSITION
Walls	Scratchcoat	1 cement; $\frac{1}{5}$ hydrated lime; 4 dry or 5 damp sand
	Setting bed and leveling coat	1 cement; $\frac{1}{2}$ hydrated lime; 5 damp sand to 1 cement; 1 hydrated lime, 7 damp sand
Floors	Setting bed	1 cement; $\frac{1}{10}$ hydrated lime; 5 dry or 6 damp sand; or 1 cement; 5 dry or 6 damp sand
Ceilings	Scratchcoat and sand bed	1 cement; $\frac{1}{2}$ hydrated lime; $2\frac{1}{2}$ dry sand or 3 damp sand

**2103A.2.3.1 Dry-set Portland cement mortars.** Premixed prepared Portland cement mortars, which require only the addition of water and are used in the installation of ceramic tile, shall comply with ANSI A118.1. The shear bond strength for tile set in such mortar shall be as required in accordance with ANSI A118.1. Tile set in dry-set Portland cement mortar shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

**2103A.2.3.2 Latex-modified Portland cement mortar.** Latex-modified Portland cement thin-set mortars in which latex is added to dry-set mortar as a replacement for all or part of the gauging water that are used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.4. Tile set in latex-modified Portland cement shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.5.

**2103A.2.3.3 Epoxy mortar.** Ceramic tile set and grouted with chemical-resistant epoxy shall comply with ANSI A118.3. Tile set and grouted with epoxy shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.6.

**2103A.2.3.4 Furan mortar and grout.** Chemical-resistant furan mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.5. Tile set and grouted with furan shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.8.

**2103A.2.3.5 Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout.** Modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout that are used to install ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.8. Tile set and grouted with modified epoxy-emulsion mortar and grout shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.9.

**2103A.2.3.6 Organic adhesives.** Water-resistant organic adhesives used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A136.1. The shear bond strength after water immersion shall be not less than 40 psi (275 kPa) for Type I adhesive and not less than 20 psi (138 kPa) for Type II adhesive when tested in accordance with ANSI A136.1. Tile set in organic adhesives shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.4.

**2103A.2.3.7 Portland cement grouts.** Portland cement grouts used for the installation of ceramic tile shall comply with ANSI A118.6. Portland cement grouts for tile work shall be installed in accordance with ANSI A108.10.

**2103A.2.4 Mortar for adhered masonry veneer.** Mortar for use with adhered masonry veneer shall conform to ASTM C270 for Type N or S, or shall comply with ANSI A118.4 for latex-modified Portland cement mortar.

**2103A.3 Grout.** Grout shall comply with Article 2.2 of TMS 602.

**2103A.3.1 Aggregate.** Coarse grout shall be used in grout spaces between wythes of 2 inches (51 mm) or more in width as determined in accordance with TMS 602 Table 6, footnote 3, and in all grouted cells of hollow unit masonry construction.

**2103A.4 Metal reinforcement and accessories.** Metal reinforcement and accessories shall conform to Article 2.4 of TMS 602. Where unidentified reinforcement, or bar reinforcement without mill certification, is approved for use, not less than three tension and three bending tests shall be made on representative specimens of the reinforcement from each shipment and grade of reinforcing steel proposed for use in the work. Alternatively, the frequency of sampling for unidentifiable reinforcing bars specified in Section 1910A.2 can be used.

**2103A.5 Air entrainment.** Air-entraining substances shall not be used in grout.

## SECTION 2104A CONSTRUCTION

**2104A.1 Masonry construction.** Masonry construction shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2104A.1.1 through 2104A.1.3 and with the requirements of either TMS 602 or TMS 604.

**2104A.1.1 Support on wood.** Masonry shall not be supported on wood girders or other forms of wood construction except as permitted in Section 2304.13.

**2104A.1.2 Molded cornices.** Unless structural support and anchorage are provided to resist the overturning moment, the center of gravity of projecting masonry or molded cornices shall lie within the middle one-third of the supporting wall. Terra cotta and metal cornices shall be provided with a structural frame of approved noncombustible material anchored in an approved manner.

#### 2104A.1.3 Reinforced grouted masonry.

**2104A.1.3.1 TMS 602, Article 3.2 F Cleanouts.** Replace TMS 602, Article 3.2 F with the following:

1. *Cleanout openings in hollow unit masonry shall be provided in every cell at the bottom of each pour of grout. Alternatively, if the course at the bottom of the pour is constructed entirely of inverted double open-end bond beam units, cleanout openings need only be provided for access to every reinforced cell at the bottom of each pour of grout.*
2. *Cleanouts in multi-wythe masonry shall be provided for each pour by leaving out every other unit in the bottom wythe of the section being poured or by cleanout openings in the foundation.*
3. *The foundation or other horizontal construction joints at the cleanouts shall be cleaned of all loose material and mortar droppings before each pour. The cleanouts shall be sealed after inspection and before grouting.*

**2104A.1.3.2 TMS 602, Article 3.3 B Placing mortar and units.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.3 B.2.c as follows:

- c. Remove masonry protrusions extending greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) into cells or cavities to be grouted.

**2104A.1.3.3 TMS 602, Article 3.4 B Reinforcement.** Modify TMS 602, Article 3.4 B.1 and Article 3.4 B.3 as follows:

1. Support reinforcement to prevent displacement caused by construction loads or by placement of grout or mortar, beyond the allowable tolerances. *Reinforcement and embedded items shall be clean, properly positioned and securely anchored against moving prior to grouting.*
3. Maintain a clear distance between reinforcing bars and the interior of masonry unit or formed surface of at least  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) for fine grout and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) for coarse grout, *and the space between masonry unit surfaces and reinforcement shall be a minimum of one bar diameter, except where cross webs of hollow units are used as supports for horizontal reinforcement.*

*Reinforcement and embedded items shall be solidly embedded in grout.*

#### 2104A.1.3.4 TMS 602, Article 3.4 D Anchor bolts.

Replace TMS 602, Article 3.4 D.3 and add Articles 3.4 D.5 and 3.4 D.6 as follows:

3. *Anchor bolts in the wythe or face shells of hollow masonry units shall be positioned to maintain a minimum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) of grout between the bolt circumference, the wythe or the face shell. For the portion of the bolt that is within the grouted cell, maintain a clear distance between the bolt and the face of masonry unit and between the head of the bolt and the formed surface of grout of at least  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) when using fine grout and at least  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) when using coarse grout. Bolts shall be solidly embedded in grout.*
5. *Bent bar anchor bolts shall not be allowed. The maximum size anchor shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (13 mm) diameter for 6-inch (152 mm) nominal masonry,  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19 mm) diameter for 8-inch (203 mm) nominal masonry,  $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch (22 mm) diameter for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal masonry, and 1-inch (25 mm) diameter for 12-inch (304.8 mm) nominal masonry.*

6. *Bolts shall be accurately set with templates or by approved equivalent means and held in place to prevent dislocation during grouting.*

**2104A.1.3.5 TMS 602, Article 3.5 C Grout pour height.** Add to TMS 602, Article 3.5 C the following:

1. *For grout pours not greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry, the top of grout pour shall be at the top of constructed masonry, or within 8 inches (200 mm) of the top of the constructed masonry. Grout pours not terminated at the top of constructed masonry shall comply with TMS 602, Articles 3.5 C.3.a through 3.5 C.3.e. [OSHPD 1 & 4] After construction of each grout lift height of wall, column, pier or beam, masonry cells or cavities shall be inspected prior to placement of grout.*
2. *Grout pours in excess of 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry shall be subject to approval of the enforcement agency.*
3. *Grout pours in excess of 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry shall be subject to the following:*
  - a. *Grouting shall be done in a continuous pour in lifts not exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) or 5 feet 4 inches (1651 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal or wider hollow unit masonry.*

**MASONRY**

- b. An approved admixture of a type that reduces early water loss and produces an expansive action shall be used.
- c. The grouting of any section of wall shall be completed in one day with no interruptions greater than one hour.
- d. For multiple grout lifts within a grout pour, each grout lift height of wall, column, pier or beam shall be inspected before placement of additional units.
- e. Cleanout openings shall be provided at the bottom of each pour of grout.

**2104A.1.3.6 TMS 602, Article 3.5 D Grout lift height.**  
Modify TMS 602, Article 3.5 D as follows:

- 3. In no case shall lifts exceed 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.

**Exception:** The 4 feet (1219 mm) maximum lift height may be increased to 5 feet 4 inches (1625.6 mm) for 10-inch (254 mm) nominal and larger hollow-unit masonry.

**2104A.1.3.7 TMS 602, Article 3.5 E Consolidation.**  
Modify TMS 602, Article 3.5 E.1.b as follows:

- b. Consolidate pours exceeding 12 inch (305 mm) in height by mechanical vibration, and reconsolidate by mechanical vibration after initial water loss and settlement has occurred, *but before plasticity is lost*.

**2104A.1.3.8 TMS 602, Article 3.5 F.1 Grout key.**  
Replace TMS 602, Article 3.5 F.1 as follows:

- 1. Between grout pours or where grouting has been stopped more than an hour, a horizontal construction joint shall be formed by terminating grout a minimum of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) below a mortar joint, except at the top of the wall. Where bond beams occur, the grout pour shall be terminated a minimum of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) below the mortar joint. Horizontal reinforcement shall be placed in bond beam units with a minimum grout cover of 1 inch (25 mm) above reinforcing steel for each grout pour.

**2104A.1.3.9 TMS 602, Article 3.5 Grout placement.**  
Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.5:**3.5 I. Additional grouting requirements:**

- 1. Grout shall be placed by pumping or an approved alternate method before initial set of hardening occurs.
- 2. Grout shall be placed so that all spaces to be grouted do not contain voids.
- 3. Grout shall not be handled nor pumped utilizing aluminum equipment unless it can be demonstrated with the materials and equipment to be

used that there will be no deleterious effect on the strength of the grout.

**2104A.1.3.10 Reinforced grouted multi-wythe masonry.**

**2104A.1.3.10.1 General.** Reinforced grouted multi-wythe masonry is that form of composite construction made with clay or shale brick or made with solid concrete building brick in which interior spaces of masonry are filled by pouring grout around reinforcement therein as the work progresses.

**2104A.1.3.10.2 TMS 402, Section 5.1.4.2.2 Masonry headers.** Replace TMS 402, Section 5.1.4.2.2 as follows:

**5.1.4.2.2 Masonry headers shall not project into the grout space and shall not be permitted to bond wythes of masonry.**

**2104A.1.3.10.3 TMS 602, Article 3.3 B.5 Placing masonry units – Solid units.** Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.3 B.5:

- d. Tothing of masonry walls is prohibited. Racking is to be held to a minimum.

**2104A.1.3.10.4 TMS 602, Article 3.4 C.2 Wall ties.**  
Replace TMS 602, Article 3.4 C.2 as follows:

- 2. The two wythes shall be bonded together with wall ties. Ties shall not be less than No. 9 (WJ.7) wire in the form of rectangles 4 inches (102 mm) wide and 2 inches (51 mm) in length less than the overall wall thickness. Kinks, water drips or deformations shall not be permitted in the ties. One wythe of the wall shall be built up not more than 16 inches (406 mm) ahead of the other wythe. Ties shall be laid not to exceed 24 inches (610 mm) on center horizontally and 16 inches (406 mm) on center vertically for running bond, and not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center horizontally and 12 inches (305 mm) on center vertically for stack bond.

**2104A.1.3.10.5 TMS 602, Article 3.5 B Confinement.** Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.5 B:

- 1. Vertical grout barriers or dams of solid masonry shall be built across the grout space the entire height of the wall to control the flow of the grout horizontally. Grout barriers shall be spaced not more than 30 feet (9144 mm) apart.

**2104A.1.3.10.6 TMS 602, Article 3.5 C Grout pour height.** Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.5 C:

- 4. The minimum clear width of grout space for multi-wythe masonry for pours not exceeding 4 feet (1.2 m) shall be  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm). The clear width of grout space for pours exceeding 4 feet (1.2 m) shall be a minimum of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm).

**MASONRY****2104A.1.3.11 Reinforced hollow-unit masonry.**

**2104A.1.3.11.1 TMS 602, Article 2.3 A & 2.3 B Masonry unit materials.** Add the following to TMS 602, Articles 2.3 A and 2.3 B:

1. The depth of the bond beam channel below the top of the unit in hollow-unit masonry shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) minimum and the width shall be 3 inches (76 mm) minimum.

**2104A.1.3.11.2 TMS 602, Article 3.5 B Confinement.** Add the following to TMS 602, Article 3.5 B:

1. All cells shall be solidly filled with grout in reinforced hollow-unit masonry [OSHPD 1 & 4] and shall be constructed using single or double open-end units, except single open-end units shall be used at wall intersections, corners and similar conditions.

**Exception:** Reinforced hollow-unit masonry laid in running bond used for freestanding site walls or interior nonbearing non-shear wall partitions may be grouted only in cells containing vertical and horizontal reinforcement.

2. Vertical cells to be filled shall have vertical alignment sufficient to maintain a clear grout space dimension of not less than that given in Section 2103A.3.1.

prism test method in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3. Verification of compliance with the specified compressive strength prior to the start of construction shall be obtained by using the prism test method in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3.

**2105A.3 Mortar and grout tests. TMS 602, Article 1.4 B Compressive Strength Determination.** Modify TMS 602, Article 1.4 B as follows by adding:

5. Additional testing requirements:

a. At the beginning of all masonry work, at least one test sample of the mortar shall be taken on 3 successive working days and at least at 1-week intervals thereafter. Where mortar is based on a proportion specification, mortar shall be sampled and tested during construction in accordance with ASTM C780, including Annex 4, to verify the proportions specified in ASTM C270, Table 2. Where mortar is based on a property specification, mortar shall be laboratory prepared and tested prior to construction in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify the properties specified in ASTM C270, Table 1 and field sampled and tested during construction in accordance with ASTM C780 to verify the proportions with the laboratory tests. [DSA-SS] Mortar sampling and testing is not required for preblended mortars in conformance with ASTM C270 with a valid evaluation report.

b. Samples of grout shall be taken for each mix design, each day grout is placed, and not less than every 5,000 square feet of masonry wall area. They shall meet the minimum strength requirement given in ASTM C476/TMS 602, Section 2.2, or greater as specified.

c. Additional samples shall be taken whenever any change in materials or job conditions occur, as determined by the building official.

d. Test specimens for mortar and grout shall be made as set forth in ASTM C780/C1586 and ASTM C1019. When the prism test method is used in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3 during construction, the tests in this section are not required.

**Exception:** For nonbearing non-shear masonry walls not exceeding total wall height of 12 feet above top of foundation, mortar tests shall be permitted to be limited to those at the beginning of masonry work for each mix design.

**2105A.4 Masonry core testing.** Not less than two cores shall be taken from each building for each 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the masonry wall area or fraction thereof. The approved agency shall perform or observe the coring of the masonry walls and sample locations shall be subject to approval of the registered design professional.

Core samples shall comply with the following:

1. Cored no sooner than 7 days after grouting of the selected area;
2. Be a minimum of  $3\frac{3}{4}$  inches in nominal diameter; and
3. Sampled in such a manner as to exclude any masonry unit webs, mortar joint, or reinforcing

## SECTION 2105A QUALITY ASSURANCE

**2105A.1 General.** A quality assurance program shall be used to ensure that the constructed masonry is in compliance with the approved construction documents.

The quality assurance program shall comply with the inspection and testing requirements of Chapter 17A and TMS 602 and Sections 2105A.2 through 2105A.4.

**2105A.2 Compressive strength,  $f'_{m}$ .** The minimum specified compressive strength,  $f'_{m}$ , in the design shall be 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa) for all structural masonry construction using materials and details of construction required herein. Testing of masonry shall be provided in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.

**Exception:** Where values of  $f'_{m}$  greater than 2000 psi (13.79 MPa) are used in the design of reinforced grouted multi-wythe masonry and reinforced hollow-unit masonry, they shall be based on prism test results in accordance with TMS 602, Article 1.4 B.3 submitted by the architect or engineer to the enforcement agency which demonstrate the ability of the proposed construction to meet prescribed performance criteria for strength.

The architect or structural engineer shall establish a method of quality control of the masonry construction acceptable to the enforcement agency which shall be described in the contract documents. Verification of compliance with the requirements for the specified strength of masonry during construction shall be provided using

## MASONRY

steel. If all cells contain reinforcement, alternate core locations or means to detect void or delamination shall be selected by the registered design professional and approved by the building official.

Visual examination of all cores shall be made by an approved agency and the condition of the cores reported as required by the California Administrative Code. Shear test both joints between the grout core and the outside wythes or face shell of the masonry 28 days after grouting of the sample area using a shear test apparatus acceptable to the enforcement agency. Core samples shall not be soaked before testing. Core samples to be tested shall be stored in sealed plastic bags or non-absorbent containers immediately after coring and for at least 5 days prior to testing. The average unit shear value for each pair of cores (4 shear tests) from each 5,000 square feet of wall area (or less) on the cross section of core shall not be less than  $2.5 \text{ ft}'_m \text{ psi}$ .

All cores shall be submitted to an approved agency for examination, even where the core specimens failed during the cutting operation. The approved agency shall report the location where each core was taken, the findings of their visual examination of each core, identify which cores were selected for shear testing, and the results of the shear tests.

### Exceptions:

1. Core sampling and testing is not required for non-bearing nonshear masonry walls, not exceeding a total wall height of 12 feet above top of foundation, built with single-wythe hollow unit concrete masonry that attaches opposite face shells using webs cast as single unit, when designed using an  $f'_m$  not exceeding 2,000 psi (13.79 MPa).
2. An infrared thermographic survey or other nondestructive test procedures, shall be permitted to be approved as an alternative system to detect voids or delamination in grouted masonry in-lieu of core sampling and testing. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Infrared thermographic surveys or other nondestructive test procedures shall also include core tests with a minimum of two cores taken from each building for each 10,000 square feet ( $930 \text{ m}^2$ ) of the wall.

## SECTION 2106A SEISMIC DESIGN

**2106A.1 Seismic design requirements for masonry.** Masonry structures and components shall comply with the requirements in Chapter 7 of TMS 402 depending on the structure's seismic design category.

**2106A.1.1 TMS 402, Sections 5.3.1.4(a) and 5.3.1.4(b).** Replace TMS 402, Sections 5.3.1.4(a) and 5.3.1.4(b) as follows:

- a. Ties shall be at least  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (10 mm) in diameter and shall be embedded in grout. Top tie shall be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top of the column or of the bottom of the horizontal bar in the supported beam.

b. The spacing of column ties shall be as follows: not greater than 8 bar diameters, 24 tie diameters, or one half the least dimension of the column, or 8 inches (203 mm) for the full column height.

**2106A.1.2 TMS 402, Chapter 5.** Add TMS 402, Section 5.6 as follows:

### 5.6 – Lateral Support of Members

5.6.1 – Lateral support of masonry may be provided by cross walls, columns, pilasters, counterforts or buttresses where spanning horizontally, or by floors, beams, girts or roofs where spanning vertically. Where walls are supported laterally by vertical elements, the stiffness of each vertical element shall exceed that of the tributary area of the wall.

**2106A.1.3 TMS 402, Sections 7.4.4.1 and 7.4.5.1.** Replace TMS 402, Section 7.4.4.1 as follows and delete Section 7.4.5.1:

**7.4.4.1 Minimum reinforcement requirements for masonry walls.** The total area of reinforcement in reinforced masonry walls shall not be less than 0.003 times the sectional area of the wall. Neither the horizontal nor the vertical reinforcement shall be less than one third of the total. Horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be spaced at not more than 24 inches (610 mm) center to center. Where stack bond is used in reinforced hollow-unit masonry, the open-end type of unit shall be used with vertical reinforcement spaced a maximum of 16 inches (406 mm) on center.

**Exception:** Reinforced hollow-unit masonry used for freestanding site walls or interior nonbearing nonshear wall partitions shall have horizontal reinforcing spaced not more than 4'-0" on center, except for locations in Seismic Design Category F, and may be grouted only in cells containing vertical and horizontal reinforcement.

**7.4.4.1.1** The minimum reinforcing shall be No. 4, except that No. 3 bars may be used for ties and stirrups. Vertical wall reinforcement shall have dowels of equal size and equally matched spacing in all footings. Reinforcement shall be continuous around wall corners and through intersections. Only reinforcement which is continuous in the wall shall be considered in computing the minimum area of reinforcement. Reinforcement with splices conforming to TMS 402 shall be considered as continuous reinforcement.

**7.4.4.1.2** Horizontal reinforcing bars in bond beams shall be provided in the top of footings, at the top of wall openings, at roof and floor levels, and at the top of parapet walls. For walls 12 inches (nominal) (305 mm) or more in thickness, horizontal and vertical reinforcement shall be equally divided into two layers, except where designed as retaining walls. Where reinforcement is added above the minimum requirements, such additional reinforcement need not be so divided.

**7.4.4.1.3** In bearing walls of every type of reinforced masonry, there shall be trim reinforcement of not less

**MASONRY**

than one No. 5 bar or two No. 4 bars on all sides of, and adjacent to, every opening which exceeds 16 inches (406 mm) in either direction, and such bars shall extend not less than 48 diameters, but in no case less than 24 inches (610 mm) beyond the corners of the opening. The bars required by this paragraph shall be in addition to the minimum reinforcement required elsewhere.

**7.4.4.1.4** When the reinforcement in bearing walls is designed, placed and anchored in position as for columns, the allowable stresses shall be as for columns.

**7.4.4.1.5** Joint reinforcement shall not be used as principal reinforcement in masonry.

## **SECTION 2107A ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN**

**2107A.1 General.** The design of masonry structures using allowable stress design shall comply with Section 2106A and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 8 of TMS 402 except as modified by Sections 2107A.2 through 2107A.6.

**2107A.2 TMS 402, Section 6.1.6.1.1, lap splices.** As an alternative to Section 6.1.6.1.1, it shall be permitted to design lap splices in accordance with Section 2107A.2.1.

**2107.2.1 Lap splices.** The minimum length of lap splices for reinforcing bars in tension or compression,  $l_d$ , shall be:

$$l_d = 0.002d_b f_s \quad (\text{Equation 21A-1})$$

For SI:  $l_d = 0.29d_b f_s$

but not less than 12 inches (305 mm). The length of the lapped splice shall be not less than 40 bar diameters, where:

$d_b$  = Diameter of reinforcement, inches (mm)

$f_s$  = Computed stress in reinforcement due to design loads, psi (MPa).

In regions of moment where the design tensile stresses in the reinforcement are greater than 80 percent of the allowable steel tension stress,  $F_s$ , the lap length of splices shall be increased not less than 50 percent of the minimum required length, but need not be greater than  $72 d_b$ . Other equivalent means of stress transfer to accomplish the same 50 percent increase shall be permitted. Where epoxy coated bars are used, lap length shall be increased by 50 percent.

**2107A.3 TMS 402, Section 6.1.6.1, splices of reinforcement.** Modify Section 6.1.6.1 as follows:

6.1.6.1 – Splices of reinforcement. Lap splices, welded splices or mechanical splices are permitted in accordance with the provisions of this section. Welding shall conform to AWS D1.4. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Reinforcement larger than No. 9 (M #29) shall be spliced using mechanical connections in accordance with Section 6.1.6.1.3.

**2107A.4 TMS 402, Section 8.3.4.4 Walls.** Modify TMS 402, Section 8.3.4.4 as follows by adding:

**8.3.4.4.1** The minimum thickness of walls is given in this section. Stresses shall be determined on the basis of the net thickness of the masonry, with consideration for reduction, such as raked joints.

**8.3.4.4.2** The thickness of masonry walls shall be designed so that allowable maximum stresses specified in this chapter are not exceeded. Masonry walls shall not exceed the height or length-to-thickness ratio nor be less than the minimum thickness as specified in this chapter and as set forth in Table 8.3.4.4.

**8.3.4.4.3** Every pier or wall section with a width less than three times its thickness shall be designed and constructed as required for columns if such pier is a structural member. Every pier or wall section with a width between three and five times its thickness or less than one half the height of adjacent openings shall have all horizontal steel in the form of ties except that in walls 12 inches (305 mm) or less in thickness such steel may be in the form of hairpins.

**TABLE 8.3.4.4  
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF MASONRY WALLS<sup>1,2</sup>**

TYPE OF MASONRY	MAXIMUM RATIO UNSUPPORTED HEIGHT OR LENGTH TO THICKNESS <sup>2,3</sup>	NOMINAL MINIMUM THICKNESS (inches)
<b>BEARING OR SHEAR WALLS:</b>		
1. Stone masonry	14	16
2. Reinforced grouted masonry	25	6
3. Reinforced hollow-unit masonry	25	6
<b>NONBEARING WALLS:</b>		
4. Exterior reinforced walls	30	6
5. Interior partitions reinforced	36	4

1. For walls of varying thickness, use the least thickness when determining the height or length to thickness ratio.

2. In determining the height or length-to-thickness ratio of a cantilevered wall, the dimension to be used shall be twice the dimension of the end of the wall from the lateral support.

3. Cantilevered walls not part of a building and not carrying applied vertical loads need not meet these minimum requirements but their design must comply with stress and overturning requirements.

**2107A.5 [OSHPD 1 & 4] Modify TMS402, Section 8.3.4.4 by the following:**

All reinforced masonry components that are subjected to in-plane forces shall have a maximum reinforcement ratio,  $\rho_{max}$ , not greater than that computed by Equation 8-20.

**2107A.6 Masonry Compressive Strength.** The specified compressive strength of structural masonry,  $f'_m$ , shall be equal to or exceed 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa). The value of  $f'_m$  used to determine nominal strength value in this chapter shall not exceed 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for concrete masonry and shall not exceed 4,500 psi (31.03 MPa) for clay masonry.

## MASONRY

### SECTION 2108A STRENGTH DESIGN OF MASONRY

**2108A.1 General.** The design of masonry structures using strength design shall comply with Section 2106A and the requirements of Chapters 1 through 7 and Chapter 9 of TMS 402, except as modified by Sections 2108A.2 through 2108A.3.

→ **2108A.2 TMS 402, Section 6.1.5.1.1, development.** Modify the second paragraph of Section 6.1.5.1.1 as follows:

The required development length of reinforcement shall be determined by Equation (6-1), but shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and need not be greater than  $72 d_b$ .

**2108A.3 TMS 402, Section 6.1.6.1.1, splices.** Modify Sections 6.1.6.1.2 and 6.1.6.1.3 as follows:

6.1.6.1.2 – A welded splice shall have the bars butted and welded to develop not less than 125 percent of the yield strength,  $f_y$ , of the bar in tension or compression, as required. Welded splices shall be of ASTM A706 steel reinforcement. Welded splices shall not be permitted in plastic hinge zones of intermediate or special reinforced walls.

6.1.6.1.3 – Mechanical splices shall be classified as Type 1 or 2 in accordance with Section 18.2.7.1 of ACI 318. Type 1 mechanical splices shall not be used within a plastic hinge zone or within a beam-column joint of intermediate or special reinforced masonry shear walls. Type 2 mechanical splices are permitted in any location within a member.

**2108A.4 TMS 402, Section 9.1.9.1.1.** Modify TMS 402, Section 9.1.9.1.1 as follows:

**9.1.9.1.1 Masonry compressive strength.** The specified compressive strength of structural masonry,  $f'_{m}$ , shall be equal to or exceed 1,500 psi (10.34 MPa). The value of  $f'_{m}$  used to determine nominal strength values in this chapter shall not exceed 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa) for concrete masonry and shall not exceed 4,500 psi (31.03 MPa) for clay masonry.

### SECTION 2109A EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF ADOBE MASONRY

*Not permitted by OSHPD and DSA.*

### SECTION 2110A GLASS UNIT MASONRY

**2110A.1 General.** Glass unit masonry construction shall comply with Chapter 13 of TMS 402 and this section.

*Masonry glass block walls or panels shall be designed for seismic forces. Stresses in glass block shall not be utilized.*

**2110A.1.1 Limitations.** Solid or hollow approved glass block shall not be used in fire walls, party walls, fire barriers, fire partitions or smoke barriers, or for load-bearing construction. Such blocks shall be erected with mortar and reinforcement in metal channel-type frames, structural frames, masonry or concrete recesses, embedded panel

anchors as provided for both exterior and interior walls or other approved joint materials. Wood strip framing shall not be used in walls required to have a fire-resistance rating by other provisions of this code.

#### Exceptions:

1. Glass-block assemblies having a fire protection rating of not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  hour shall be permitted as opening protectives in accordance with Section 716 in fire barriers, fire partitions and smoke barriers that have a required fire-resistance rating of 1 hour or less and do not enclose exit stairways and ramps or exit passageways.
2. Glass-block assemblies as permitted in Section 404.6, Exception 2.

### SECTION 2111A MASONRY FIREPLACES

**2111A.1 General.** The construction of masonry fireplaces, consisting of concrete or masonry, shall be in accordance with this section.

**2111A.2 Fireplace drawings.** The construction documents shall describe in sufficient detail the location, size and construction of masonry fireplaces. The thickness and characteristics of materials and the clearances from walls, partitions and ceilings shall be indicated.

**2111A.3 Footings and foundations.** Footings for masonry fireplaces and their chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (153 mm) beyond the face of the fireplace or foundation wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

**2111A.3.1 Ash dump cleanout.** Cleanout openings, located within foundation walls below fireboxes, where provided, shall be equipped with ferrous metal or masonry doors and frames constructed to remain tightly closed, except when in use. Cleanouts shall be accessible and located so that ash removal will not create a hazard to combustible materials.

**2111A.4 Seismic reinforcement.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2111A.4.1, 2111A.4.2 and 2111A.5. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry fireplaces shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108A.

**2111A.4.1 Vertical reinforcing.** For fireplaces with chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars, anchored in the foundation, shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103A.3. For fireplaces with chim-

neys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

**2111A.4.2 Horizontal reinforcing.** Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) ties or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete; or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry at not less than every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

**2111A.5 Seismic anchorage.** Masonry fireplaces and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two  $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to not fewer than four floor joists with two  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

**Exception:** Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B.
2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely within the exterior walls.

**2111A.6 Firebox walls.** Masonry fireboxes shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness or other approved lining is provided, the minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall each be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. The width of joints between firebricks shall be not greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm). Where a lining is not provided, the total minimum thickness of back and sidewalls shall be 10 inches (254 mm) of solid masonry. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C27 or ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with medium-duty refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199.

**2111A.6.1 Steel fireplace units.** Steel fireplace units are permitted to be installed with solid masonry to form a masonry fireplace provided that they are installed according to either the requirements of their listing or the requirements of this section. Steel fireplace units incorporating a steel firebox lining shall be constructed with steel not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in thickness, and an air-circulating chamber that is ducted to the interior of the building. The firebox lining shall be encased with solid masonry to provide a total thickness at the back and sides of not less than 8 inches (203 mm), of which not less than 4 inches (102 mm) shall be of solid masonry or concrete. Circulating air ducts employed with steel fireplace units shall be constructed of metal or masonry.

**2111A.7 Firebox dimensions.** The firebox of a concrete or masonry fireplace shall have a minimum depth of 20 inches (508 mm). The throat shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the fireplace opening. The throat opening shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in depth. The cross-sectional

area of the passageway above the firebox, including the throat, damper and smoke chamber, shall be not less than the cross-sectional area of the flue.

**Exception:** Rumford fireplaces shall be permitted provided that the depth of the fireplace is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and not less than one-third of the width of the fireplace opening, and the throat is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the lintel, and not less than  $\frac{1}{20}$  the cross-sectional area of the fireplace opening.

**2111A.8 Lintel and throat.** Masonry over a fireplace opening shall be supported by a lintel of noncombustible material. The minimum required bearing length on each end of the fireplace opening shall be 4 inches (102 mm). The fireplace throat or damper shall be located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening.

**2111A.8.1 Damper.** Masonry fireplaces shall be equipped with a ferrous metal damper located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the fireplace opening. Dampers shall be installed in the fireplace or at the top of the flue venting the fireplace, and shall be operable from the room containing the fireplace. Damper controls shall be permitted to be located in the fireplace.

**2111A.9 Smoke chamber walls.** Smoke chamber walls shall be constructed of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete. The total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry. The inside surface shall be parged smooth with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Where a lining of firebrick not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick, or a lining of vitrified clay not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) thick, is provided, the total minimum thickness of front, back and sidewalls shall be 6 inches (152 mm) of solid masonry, including the lining. Firebrick shall conform to ASTM C1261 and shall be laid with refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199. Vitrified clay linings shall conform to ASTM C315.

**2111A.9.1 Smoke chamber dimensions.** The inside height of the smoke chamber from the fireplace throat to the beginning of the flue shall be not greater than the inside width of the fireplace opening. The inside surface of the smoke chamber shall not be inclined more than 45 degrees (0.76 rad) from vertical where prefabricated smoke chamber linings are used or where the smoke chamber walls are rolled or sloped rather than corbeled. Where the inside surface of the smoke chamber is formed by corbeled masonry, the walls shall not be corbeled more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from vertical.

**2111A.10 Hearth and hearth extension.** Masonry fireplace hearths and hearth extensions shall be constructed of concrete or masonry, supported by noncombustible materials, and reinforced to carry their own weight and all imposed loads. Combustible material shall not remain against the underside of hearths or hearth extensions after construction.

**2111A.10.1 Hearth thickness.** The minimum thickness of fireplace hearths shall be 4 inches (102 mm).

## MASONRY

**2111A.10.2 Hearth extension thickness.** The minimum thickness of hearth extensions shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

**Exception:** Where the bottom of the firebox opening is raised not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the top of the hearth extension, a hearth extension of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick (9.5 mm) brick, concrete, stone, tile or other approved noncombustible material is permitted.

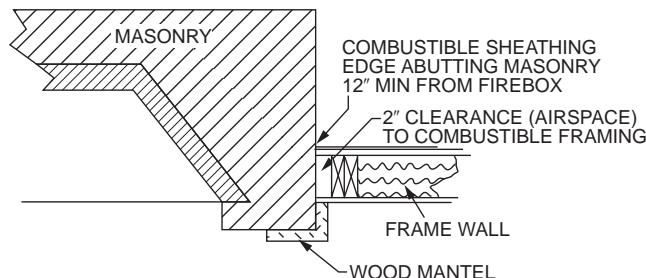
**2111A.11 Hearth extension dimensions.** Hearth extensions shall extend not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in front of, and not less than 8 inches (203 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening. Where the fireplace opening is 6 square feet ( $0.557 \text{ m}^2$ ) or larger, the hearth extension shall extend not less than 20 inches (508 mm) in front of, and not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond, each side of the fireplace opening.

**2111A.12 Fireplace clearance.** Any portion of a masonry fireplace located in the interior of a building or within the exterior wall of a building shall have a clearance to combustibles of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the front faces and sides of masonry fireplaces and not less than 4 inches (102 mm) from the back faces of masonry fireplaces. The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2111A.13.

### Exceptions:

1. Masonry fireplaces listed and labeled for use in contact with combustibles in accordance with UL 127 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.
2. Where masonry fireplaces are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete walls less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, flooring and drywall, are permitted to abut the masonry fireplace sidewalls and hearth extension, in accordance with Figure 2111.12, provided that such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (306 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest firebox lining.
4. Exposed combustible mantels or trim is permitted to be placed directly on the masonry fireplace front surrounding the fireplace opening, provided that such combustible materials shall not be placed within 6 inches (153 mm) of a fireplace opening. Combustible material directly above and within 12 inches (305 mm) of the fireplace opening shall not project more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm) for each 1-inch (25 mm) distance from such opening. Combustible materials located along the sides of the fireplace opening that project more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm)

from the face of the fireplace shall have an additional clearance equal to the projection.



Note: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

**FIGURE 2111A.12  
ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION TO FIREPLACE CLEARANCE PROVISION**

**2111A.13 Fireplace fireblocking.** All spaces between fireplaces and floors and ceilings through which fireplaces pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be to a depth of 1 inch (25 mm) and shall only be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

**2111A.14 Exterior air.** Factory-built or masonry fireplaces covered in this section shall be equipped with an exterior air supply to ensure proper fuel combustion unless the room is mechanically ventilated and controlled so that the indoor pressure is neutral or positive.

**2111A.14.1 Factory-built fireplaces.** Exterior combustion air ducts for factory-built fireplaces shall be listed components of the fireplace, and installed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

**2111A.14.2 Masonry fireplaces.** Listed combustion air ducts for masonry fireplaces shall be installed according to the terms of their listing and manufacturer's instructions.

**2111A.14.3 Exterior air intake.** The exterior air intake shall be capable of providing all combustion air from the exterior of the dwelling. The exterior air intake shall not be located within a garage, attic, basement or crawl space of the dwelling nor shall the air intake be located at an elevation higher than the firebox. The exterior air intake shall be covered with a corrosion-resistant screen of  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) mesh.

**2111A.14.4 Clearance.** Unlisted combustion air ducts shall be installed with a minimum 1-inch (25 mm) clearance to combustibles for all parts of the duct within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the duct outlet.

**2111A.14.5 Passageway.** The combustion air passageway shall be not less than 6 square inches ( $3870 \text{ mm}^2$ ) and not more than 55 square inches ( $0.035 \text{ m}^2$ ), except that combustion air systems for listed fireplaces or for fireplaces tested for emissions shall be constructed according to the fireplace manufacturer's instructions.

**2111A.14.6 Outlet.** The exterior air outlet is permitted to be located in the back or sides of the firebox chamber or within 24 inches (610 mm) of the firebox opening on or near the floor. The outlet shall be closable and designed to prevent burning material from dropping into concealed combustible spaces.

## SECTION 2112A MASONRY HEATERS

**2112A.1 Definition.** A masonry heater is a heating appliance constructed of concrete or solid masonry, hereinafter referred to as “masonry,” which is designed to absorb and store heat from a solid fuel fire built in the firebox by routing the exhaust gases through internal heat exchange channels in which the flow path downstream of the firebox includes flow in either a horizontal or downward direction before entering the chimney and which delivers heat by radiation from the masonry surface of the heater.

**2112A.2 Installation.** Masonry heaters shall be installed in accordance with this section and comply with one of the following:

1. Masonry heaters shall comply with the requirements of ASTM E1602.
2. Masonry heaters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

**2112A.3 Footings and foundation.** The firebox floor of a masonry heater shall be a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) of noncombustible material and be supported on a noncombustible footing and foundation in accordance with Section 2113A.2.

**2112A.4 Seismic reinforcing.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, masonry heaters shall be anchored to the masonry foundation in accordance with Section 2113A.3. Seismic reinforcing shall not be required within the body of a masonry heater with a height that is equal to or less than 3.5 times its body width and where the masonry chimney serving the heater is not supported by the body of the heater. Where the masonry chimney shares a common wall with the facing of the masonry heater, the chimney portion of the structure shall be reinforced in accordance with Section 2113A.

**2112A.5 Masonry heater clearance.** Combustible materials shall not be placed within 36 inches (914 mm) or the distance of the allowed reduction method from the outside surface of a masonry heater in accordance with NFPA 211, Section 12.6, and the required space between the heater and combustible material shall be fully vented to permit the free flow of air around all heater surfaces.

### Exceptions:

1. Where the masonry heater wall thickness is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) of solid masonry and the wall thickness of the heat exchange channels is not less than 5 inches (127 mm) of solid masonry, combustible materials shall not be placed within 4 inches

(102 mm) of the outside surface of a masonry heater. A clearance of not less than 8 inches (203 mm) shall be provided between the gas-tight capping slab of the heater and a combustible ceiling.

2. Masonry heaters listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1482 or EN 15250 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

## SECTION 2113A MASONRY CHIMNEYS

**2113A.1 General.** The construction of masonry chimneys consisting of solid masonry units, hollow masonry units grouted solid, stone or concrete shall be in accordance with this section.

**2113A.2 Footings and foundations.** Footings for masonry chimneys shall be constructed of concrete or solid masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick and shall extend not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the face of the foundation or support wall on all sides. Footings shall be founded on natural undisturbed earth or engineered fill below frost depth. In areas not subjected to freezing, footings shall be not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below finished grade.

**2113A.3 Seismic reinforcement.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B, seismic reinforcement is not required. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category C or D, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced and anchored in accordance with Sections 2113A.3.1, 2113A.3.2 and 2113A.4. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category E or F, masonry chimneys shall be reinforced in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2101 through 2108 and anchored in accordance with Section 2113A.4.

**2113A.3.1 Vertical reinforcement.** For chimneys up to 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, four No. 4 continuous vertical bars anchored in the foundation shall be placed in the concrete between wythes of solid masonry or within the cells of hollow unit masonry and grouted in accordance with Section 2103A.3. Grout shall be prevented from bonding with the flue liner so that the flue liner is free to move with thermal expansion. For chimneys greater than 40 inches (1016 mm) wide, two additional No. 4 vertical bars shall be provided for each additional 40 inches (1016 mm) in width or fraction thereof.

**2113A.3.2 Horizontal reinforcement.** Vertical reinforcement shall be placed enclosed within  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) ties, or other reinforcing of equivalent net cross-sectional area, spaced not to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) on center in concrete, or placed in the bed joints of unit masonry, at not less than every 18 inches (457 mm) of vertical height. Two such ties shall be provided at each bend in the vertical bars.

**2113A.4 Seismic anchorage.** Masonry chimneys and foundations shall be anchored at each floor, ceiling or roof line more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above grade with two  $\frac{3}{16}$ -inch by 1-inch (4.8 mm by 25 mm) straps embedded not less than 12 inches (305 mm) into the chimney. Straps shall be hooked around the outer bars and extend 6 inches (152 mm) beyond

## MASONRY

the bend. Each strap shall be fastened to not less than four floor joists with two  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) bolts.

**Exception:** Seismic anchorage is not required for the following:

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category A or B.
2. Where the masonry fireplace is constructed completely within the exterior walls.

**2113A.5 Corbeling.** Masonry chimneys shall not be corbeled more than half of the chimney's wall thickness from a wall or foundation, nor shall a chimney be corbeled from a wall or foundation that is less than 12 inches (305 mm) in thickness unless it projects equally on each side of the wall, except that on the second story of a two-story dwelling, corbeling of chimneys on the exterior of the enclosing walls is permitted to equal the wall thickness. The projection of a single course shall not exceed one-half the unit height or one-third of the unit bed depth, whichever is less.

**2113A.6 Changes in dimension.** The chimney wall or chimney flue lining shall not change in size or shape within 6 inches (152 mm) above or below where the chimney passes through floor components, ceiling components or roof components.

**2113A.7 Offsets.** Where a masonry chimney is constructed with a fireclay flue liner surrounded by one wythe of masonry, the maximum offset shall be such that the centerline of the flue above the offset does not extend beyond the center of the chimney wall below the offset. Where the chimney offset is supported by masonry below the offset in an approved manner, the maximum offset limitations shall not apply. Each individual corbeled masonry course of the offset shall not exceed the projection limitations specified in Section 2113.5.

**2113A.8 Additional load.** Chimneys shall not support loads other than their own weight unless they are designed and constructed to support the additional load. Masonry chimneys are permitted to be constructed as part of the masonry walls or concrete walls of the building.

**2113A.9 Termination.** Chimneys shall extend not less than 2 feet (610 mm) higher than any portion of the building within 10 feet (3048 mm), but shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point where the chimney passes through the roof.

**2113A.9.1 Chimney caps.** Masonry chimneys shall have a concrete, metal or stone cap, sloped to shed water, a drip edge and a caulked bond break around any flue liners in accordance with ASTM C1283.

**2113A.9.2 Spark arrestors.** *[SFM] All chimneys attached to any appliance or fireplace that burns solid fuel shall be equipped with an approved spark arrestor.* Where a spark arrestor is installed on a masonry chimney, the spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. The net free area of the arrestor shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

2. The arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.

3. Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).
4. The spark arrestor shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.

**2113A.9.3 Rain caps.** Where a masonry or metal rain cap is installed on a masonry chimney, the net free area under the cap shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney flue it serves.

**2113A.10 Wall thickness.** Masonry chimney walls shall be constructed of concrete, solid masonry units or hollow masonry units grouted solid with not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal thickness.

**2113A.10.1 Masonry veneer chimneys.** Where masonry is used as veneer for a framed chimney, through flashing and weep holes shall be provided as required by Chapter 14.

**2113A.11 Flue lining (material).** Masonry chimneys shall be lined. The lining material shall be appropriate for the type of appliance connected, according to the terms of the appliance listing and the manufacturer's instructions.

**2113A.11.1 Residential-type appliances (general).** Flue lining systems shall comply with one of the following:

1. Clay flue lining complying with the requirements of ASTM C315.
2. Listed chimney lining systems complying with UL 1777.
3. Factory-built chimneys or chimney units listed for installation within masonry chimneys.
4. Other approved materials that will resist corrosion, erosion, softening or cracking from flue gases and condensate at temperatures up to 1,800°F (982°C).

**2113A.11.1.1 Flue linings for specific appliances.** Flue linings other than those covered in Section 2113A.11.1 intended for use with specific appliances shall comply with Sections 2113A.11.1.2 through 2113A.11.1.4, 2113A.11.2 and 2113A.11.3.

**2113A.11.1.2 Gas appliances.** Flue lining systems for gas appliances shall be in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**2113A.11.1.3 Pellet fuel-burning appliances.** Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with pellet fuel-burning appliances shall be limited to flue lining systems complying with Section 2113A.11.1 and pellet vents listed for installation within masonry chimneys (see Section 2113A.11.1.5 for marking).

**2113A.11.1.4 Oil-fired appliances approved for use with L-vent.** Flue lining and vent systems for use in masonry chimneys with oil-fired appliances approved for use with Type L vent shall be limited to flue lining

**MASONRY**

systems complying with Section 2113A.11.1 and listed chimney liners complying with UL 641 (see Section 2113.11.1.5 for marking).

**2113A.11.1.5 Notice of usage.** When a flue is relined with a material not complying with Section 2113A.11.1, the chimney shall be plainly and permanently identified by a label attached to a wall, ceiling or other conspicuous location adjacent to where the connector enters the chimney. The label shall include the following message or equivalent language: "This chimney is for use only with (type or category of appliance) that burns (type of fuel). Do not connect other types of appliances."

**2113A.11.2 Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall comply with Sections 2113A.11.2.1 through 2113A.11.2.5.

**2113A.11.2.1 Construction.** Chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of solid masonry units or of concrete with walls not less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick, or with stone masonry not less than 12 inches (305 mm) thick.

**2113A.11.2.2 Lining.** Concrete and masonry chimneys shall be lined with an approved medium-duty refractory brick not less than  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) thick laid on

the  $4\frac{1}{2}$ -inch bed (114 mm) in an approved medium-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start 2 feet (610 mm) or more below the lowest chimney connector entrance. Chimneys terminating 25 feet (7620 mm) or less above a chimney connector entrance shall be lined to the top.

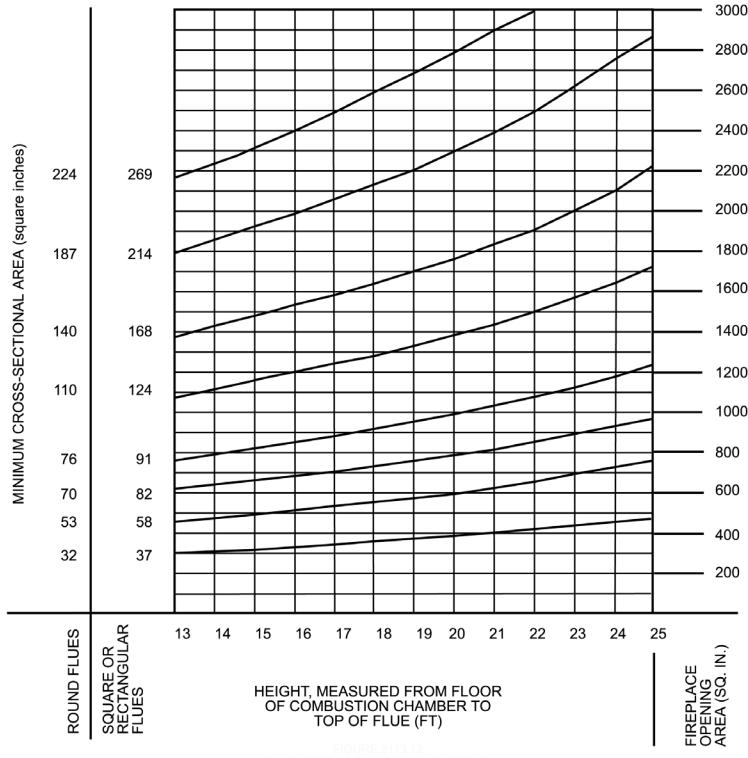
**2113A.11.2.3 Multiple passageway.** Concrete and masonry chimneys containing more than one passageway shall have the liners separated by a minimum 4-inch-thick (102 mm) concrete or solid masonry wall.

**2113A.11.2.4 Termination height.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for medium-heat appliances shall extend not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 25 feet (7620 mm).

**2113A.11.2.5 Clearance.** A minimum clearance of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be provided between the exterior surfaces of a concrete or masonry chimney for medium-heat appliances and combustible material.

**2113A.11.3 Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall comply with 2113A.11.3.1 through 2113A.11.3.4.

**2113A.11.3.1 Construction.** Chimneys for high-heat appliances shall be constructed with double walls of solid masonry units or of concrete, each wall to be not



Note: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645 mm<sup>2</sup>.

**FIGURE 2113A.16**  
**FLUE SIZES FOR MASONRY CHIMNEYS**

## MASONRY

less than 8 inches (203 mm) thick with a minimum airspace of 2 inches (51 mm) between the walls.

**2113A.11.3.2 Lining.** The inside of the interior wall shall be lined with an approved high-duty refractory brick, not less than  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches (114 mm) thick laid on the  $4\frac{1}{2}$ -inch bed (114 mm) in an approved high-duty refractory mortar. The lining shall start at the base of the chimney and extend continuously to the top.

**2113A.11.3.3 Termination height.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall extend not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) higher than any portion of any building within 50 feet (15 240 mm).

**2113A.11.3.4 Clearance.** Concrete and masonry chimneys for high-heat appliances shall have approved clearance from buildings and structures to prevent overheating combustible materials, permit inspection and maintenance operations on the chimney and prevent danger of burns to persons.

**2113A.12 Clay flue lining (installation).** Clay flue liners shall be installed in accordance with ASTM C1283 and extend from a point not less than 8 inches (203 mm) below the lowest inlet or, in the case of fireplaces, from the top of the smoke chamber to a point above the enclosing walls. The lining shall be carried up vertically, with a maximum slope not greater than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from the vertical.

Clay flue liners shall be laid in medium-duty nonwater-soluble refractory mortar conforming to ASTM C199 with tight mortar joints left smooth on the inside and installed to maintain an airspace or insulation not to exceed the thickness of the flue liner separating the flue liners from the interior face of the chimney masonry walls. Flue lining shall be supported on all sides. Only enough mortar shall be placed to make the joint and hold the liners in position.

### 2113A.13 Additional requirements.

**2113A.13.1 Listed materials.** Listed materials used as flue linings shall be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and the manufacturer's instructions.

**2113A.13.2 Space around lining.** The space surrounding a chimney lining system or vent installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent any other appliance.

**Exception:** This shall not prevent the installation of a separate flue lining in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**2113A.14 Multiple flues.** Where two or more flues are located in the same chimney, masonry wythes shall be built between adjacent flue linings. The masonry wythes shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) thick and bonded into the walls of the chimney.

**Exception:** Where venting only one appliance, two flues are permitted to adjoin each other in the same chimney with only the flue lining separation between them. The joints of the adjacent flue linings shall be staggered not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**2113A.15 Flue area (appliance).** Chimney flues shall not be smaller in area than the area of the connector from the appliance. Chimney flues connected to more than one appliance shall be not less than the area of the largest connector plus 50 percent of the areas of additional chimney connectors.

#### Exceptions:

1. Chimney flues serving oil-fired appliances sized in accordance with NFPA 31.
2. Chimney flues serving gas-fired appliances sized in accordance with the *California Mechanical Code*.

**2113A.16 Flue area (masonry fireplace).** Flue sizing for chimneys serving fireplaces shall be in accordance with Section 2113A.16.1 or 2113A.16.2.

**2113A.16.1 Minimum area.** Round chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the fireplace opening. Square chimney flues shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio less than 2 to 1 shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the fireplace opening. Rectangular chimney flues with an aspect ratio of 2 to 1 or more shall have a minimum net cross-sectional area of not less than  $\frac{1}{8}$  of the fireplace opening.

**2113A.16.2 Determination of minimum area.** The minimum net cross-sectional area of the flue shall be determined in accordance with Figure 2113A.16. A flue size providing not less than the equivalent net cross-sectional area shall be used. Cross-sectional areas of clay flue linings are as provided in Tables 2113A.16(1) and 2113A.16(2) or as provided by the manufacturer or as measured in the field. The height of the chimney shall be measured from the firebox floor to the top of the chimney flue.

**2113A.17 Inlet.** Insets to masonry chimneys shall enter from the side. Insets shall have a thimble of fireclay, rigid refractory material or metal that will prevent the connector from pulling out of the inlet or from extending beyond the wall of the liner.

**2113A.18 Masonry chimney cleanout openings.** Cleanout openings shall be provided within 6 inches (152 mm) of the base of each flue within every masonry chimney. The upper edge of the cleanout shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the lowest chimney inlet opening. The height of the opening shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm). The cleanout shall be provided with a noncombustible cover.

**Exception:** Chimney flues serving masonry fireplaces, where cleaning is possible through the fireplace opening.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**MASONRY**

**TABLE 2113A.16(1)**  
**NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF ROUND FLUE SIZES<sup>a</sup>**

FLUE SIZE, INSIDE DIAMETER (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
6	28
7	38
8	50
10	78
10 <sup>3/4</sup>	90
12	113
15	176
18	254

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>.

a. Flue sizes are based on ASTM C315.

**TABLE 2113A.16(2)**  
**NET CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA OF  
SQUARE AND RECTANGULAR FLUE SIZES**

FLUE SIZE, OUTSIDE NOMINAL DIMENSIONS (inches)	CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA (square inches)
4.5 × 8.5	23
4.5 × 13	34
8 × 8	42
8.5 × 8.5	49
8 × 12	67
8.5 × 13	76
12 × 12	102
8.5 × 18	101
13 × 13	127
12 × 16	131
13 × 18	173
16 × 16	181
16 × 20	222
18 × 18	233
20 × 20	298
20 × 24	335
24 × 24	431

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>.

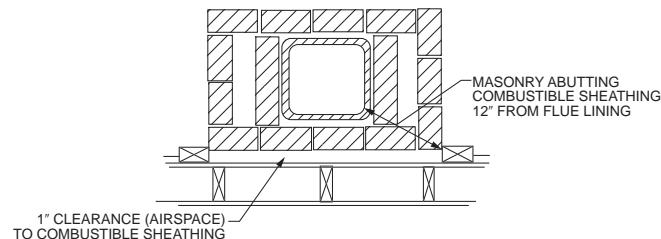
**2113A.19 Chimney clearances.** Any portion of a masonry chimney located in the interior of the building or within the exterior wall of the building shall have a minimum airspace clearance to combustibles of 2 inches (51 mm). Chimneys located entirely outside the exterior walls of the building, including chimneys that pass through the soffit or cornice, shall have a minimum airspace clearance of 1 inch (25 mm). The airspace shall not be filled, except to provide fireblocking in accordance with Section 2113A.20.

**Exceptions:**

1. Masonry chimneys equipped with a chimney lining system listed and labeled for use in chimneys in con-

tact with combustibles in accordance with UL 1777, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, are permitted to have combustible material in contact with their exterior surfaces.

2. Where masonry chimneys are constructed as part of masonry or concrete walls, combustible materials shall not be in contact with the masonry or concrete wall less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining.
3. Exposed combustible trim and the edges of sheathing materials, such as wood siding, are permitted to abut the masonry chimney sidewalls, in accordance with Figure 2113A.19, provided that such combustible trim or sheathing is not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from the inside surface of the nearest flue lining. Combustible material and trim shall not overlap the corners of the chimney by more than 1 inch (25 mm).



**FIGURE 2113A.19**  
**ILLUSTRATION OF EXCEPTION THREE  
CHIMNEY CLEARANCE PROVISION**

**2113A.20 Chimney fireblocking.** All spaces between chimneys and floors and ceilings through which chimneys pass shall be fireblocked with noncombustible material securely fastened in place. The fireblocking of spaces between wood joists, beams or headers shall be self-supporting or be placed on strips of metal or metal lath laid across the spaces between combustible material and the chimney.

**SECTION 2114A**  
**DRY-STACK MASONRY**

**2114A.1 General.** The design of dry-stack masonry structures shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 1 through 8 of TMS 402 except as modified by Sections 2114A.2 through 2114A.5.

**2114A.2 Limitations.** Dry-stack masonry shall be prohibited in Risk Category IV structures.

**2114A.3 Materials.** Concrete masonry units complying with ASTM C90 shall be used.

**2114A.4 Strength.** Dry-stack masonry shall be of adequate strength and proportions to support all superimposed loads without exceeding the allowable stresses listed in Table 2114A.4. Allowable stresses not specified in Table 2114A.4 shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 8 of TMS 402.

**MASONRY**

**TABLE 2114A.4**  
**GROSS CROSS-SECTIONAL AREA**  
**ALLOWABLE STRESS FOR DRY-STACK MASONRY**

DESCRIPTION	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS (psi)
Compression	45
Flexural tension	
Horizontal span	30
Vertical span	18
Shear	10

For SI: 1 pound per square inch = 0.006895 MPa.

**2114A.5 Construction.** Construction of dry-stack masonry shall comply with ASTM C946.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 22 – STEEL

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X			X	X										X							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)										X		X	X			X						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2201.1.1										X		X	X			X						
2201.1.2										X		X	X			X						
2201.1.3										X												
2201.1.4										X		X	X			X						
2204.1.1											X	X				X						
2204.4											X	X				X						
2205.1											X	X				X						
2205.2.1.2											X	X				X						
2205.3											X	X				X						
2205.4											X	X				X						
2206.2.1											X	X				X						
2207.4											X	X				X						
2207.6											X	X				X						
2208.1											X	X				X						
2210.1.1.2											X	X				X						
2210.2											X	X				X						
2211.1.1.2											X	X				X						
2211.1.3											X	X				X						
2211.2												X	X			X						
2212											X											
2213												X	X			X						

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

| |<  
||



# CHAPTER 22

## STEEL

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 22 provides the minimum requirements for the design and construction of structural steel (including composite construction), cold-formed steel, steel joists, steel cable structures and steel storage racks. This chapter specifies appropriate design and construction standards for these types of structures. It also provides a road map of the applicable technical requirements for steel structures. Chapter 22 requires that the design and use of steel structures and components be in accordance with the applicable specifications and standards of the American Institute of Steel Construction, the American Iron and Steel Institute, the Steel Joist Institute and the American Society of Civil Engineers.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 2201 GENERAL

**2201.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of steel construction.

**2201.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** The scope of application of Chapter 22 is as follows:

1. Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD).

*Buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings and acute psychiatric hospital buildings regulated by OSHPD. Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2 and 1.10.5.*

2. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety/Community Colleges (DSA-SS/CC), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

**2201.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:

**[OSHPD 1R]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 5]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5

2. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety/Community Colleges:

**[DSA-SS/CC]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2

**2201.1.3 Reference to other chapters. [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapter 17, the provisions in Chapter 17A shall apply instead.

**2201.1.4 Amendments. [DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** See Section 2212 for additional requirements.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** See Section 2213 for additional requirements.

### SECTION 2202 IDENTIFICATION OF STEEL FOR STRUCTURAL PURPOSES

**2202.1 General.** Identification of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Identification of cold-formed steel members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. Identification of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall also comply with the requirements contained in AISI S240 or AISI S220, as applicable. Other steel furnished for structural load-carrying purposes shall be properly identified for conformity to the ordered grade in accordance with the specified ASTM standard or other specification and the provisions of this chapter. Where the steel grade is not readily identifiable from marking and test records, the steel shall be tested to verify conformity to such standards.

### SECTION 2203 PROTECTION OF STEEL FOR STRUCTURAL PURPOSES

**2203.1 General.** Painting of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Painting of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with SJI 100 and SJI 200. Individual structural members and assembled panels of cold-formed steel construction shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with the requirements contained in AISI S100. Protection of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be in accordance with AISI S240 or AISI S220, as applicable.

### SECTION 2204 CONNECTIONS

**2204.1 Welding.** The details of design, workmanship and technique for welding and qualification of welding personnel shall be in accordance with the specifications listed in

**STEEL**

Sections 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2210 and 2211. For special inspection of welding, see Section 1705.2.

**2204.1.1 Restrained welded connections. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Welded structural steel connections having a medium or high level of restraint, as defined by AWS D1.1 Annex H, shall have a minimum pre-heat temperature of not less than 150°F (66°C). Welded structural steel connections with welds to flange, web, wall or plate having a high level of restraint shall maintain a post-heat temperature of 300°F (149°C) for a minimum of 1 hour after completion of welding.

**2204.2 Bolting.** The design, installation and inspection of bolts shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2205, 2206, 2207, 2210 and 2211. For special inspection of the installation of high-strength bolts, see Section 1705.2.

**2204.3 Anchor rods.** Anchor rods shall be set in accordance with the approved construction documents. The protrusion of the threaded ends through the connected material shall fully engage the threads of the nuts but shall not be greater than the length of the threads on the bolts.

**2204.4 Column base plate. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** When shear and / or tensile forces are intended to be transferred between column base plates and anchor bolts, provisions shall be made in the design to eliminate the effects of oversized holes permitted in base plates by AISC 360 by use of shear lugs into the reinforced concrete foundation element and/or welded shear transfer plates or other means acceptable to the enforcement agency, when the oversized holes are larger than the anchor bolt by more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm). When welded shear transfer plates and shear lugs or other means acceptable to the enforcement agency are not used, the anchor bolts shall be checked for the induced bending stresses in combination with the shear stresses.

## **SECTION 2205 STRUCTURAL STEEL**

**2205.1 General.** The design, fabrication and erection of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with AISC 360.

**Exceptions: [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]**

1. For members designed on the basis of tension, the slenderness ratio ( $L/r$ ) shall not exceed 300, except for the design of hangers and bracing in accordance with NFPA 13 and for rod hangers in tension.
2. For members designed on the basis of compression, the slenderness ratio ( $KL/r$ ) shall not exceed 200, except for the design of hangers and bracing in accordance with NFPA 13.

**2205.2 Seismic design.** Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Section 2205.2.1 or 2205.2.2, as applicable.

**2205.2.1 Structural steel seismic force-resisting systems.** The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel seismic force-resisting systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2205.2.1 or 2205.2.1.2, as applicable.

**2205.2.1.1 Seismic Design Category B or C.** Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C shall be of any construction permitted in Section 2205. Where a response modification coefficient,  $R$ , in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341. Beam-to-column moment connections in special moment frames and intermediate moment frames shall be prequalified in accordance with AISC 341, Section K1, qualified by testing in accordance with AISC 341, Section K2, or shall be prequalified in accordance with AISC 358.

**Exception:** The response modification coefficient,  $R$ , designated for "Steel systems not specifically detailed for seismic resistance, excluding cantilever column systems" in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, shall be permitted for systems designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 360, and need not be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341.

**2205.2.1.2 Seismic Design Category D, E or F.** Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341, except as permitted in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1. Beam-to-column moment connections in special moment frames and intermediate moment frames shall be prequalified in accordance with AISC 341, Section K1, qualified by testing in accordance with AISC 341, Section K2, or shall be prequalified in accordance with AISC 358. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** All structural steel seismic force-resisting systems in ASCE 7 Table 15.4-1 shall be designed in accordance with AISC 341.

**2205.2.2 Structural steel elements.** The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel elements in seismic force-resisting systems other than those covered in Section 2205.2.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be in accordance with AISC 341 where either of the following applies:

1. The structure is assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, except as permitted in ASCE 7, Table 15.4-1.
2. A response modification coefficient,  $R$ , greater than 3 in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of the structure assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C.

**2205.3 Modifications to AISC 341. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]**

**2205.3.1 Section A4.** Replace Section A4.1 Item (c) as follows:

(c) Locations and dimensions of protected zones. The fabricator shall permanently mark protected zones of structural elements in the seismic force-resisting system in the building that are designated on the construction documents. If these markings are obscured during construction, such as after the application of fire protection, the owner's designated representative shall re-mark the protected zones as they are designated on the construction

documents. Primers or paints used to mark protected zones on steel surfaces, which are to receive sprayed fire-resistance material, shall comply with California Building Code Section 704.13.3.2.

**2205.3.2 Section I2.** Replace Section I2.1 item (d) as follows:  
(d) Decking attachments that penetrate the beam flange shall not be placed on beam flanges within the protected zone, except power-actuated fasteners up to 0.18 in. diameter are permitted, provided that the penetration is less than 85% of beam flange thickness.

#### 2205.4 Modifications to AISC 358. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]

**2205.4.1 Design Requirements, 2.1 Special and Intermediate Moment Frame Connection Types, Table 2-1 Pre-qualified Moment Connections modifications.** The prequalified bolted moment connections are not permitted in buildings.

##### Exceptions:

1. Erection bolts are permitted.
2. The approved bolted moment connection in accordance with AISC 358 Chapter 10 as permitted by the exception to Section 2206.2 and AISC 358-16 Supplement No. 1, Chapter 11.
3. Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

**2205.4.2 Moment Connection - Chapter 11.** The welded sideplate steel moment connection shall be permitted provided:

1. The beams shall consist of either rolled or built-up wide flange sections.
2. The biaxial dual-strong axis and column minor axis configurations of the moment connection shall be considered as an alternative system.
3. For SMF and IMF systems, U-shaped cover plates shall be used and the hinge-to-hinge span to beam depth,  $L_h/d$ , shall be greater than or equal to 5.
4. The width-to-thickness ratios for beam flanges shall not be less than 3.
5. The spacing for lateral bracing of wide flange beams,  $L_b$ , shall include the length of the side plate at beam ends.
6. The extension of the side plates beyond the face of the column shall be within the range of  $0.77d$  to  $1.0d$ .
7. The gap-to-side plate thickness ratio shall range from 2.1 to 2.3.
8. Demand critical fillet welds {2}, {5}, {5a} and {8} shall have Magnetic Particle Testing (MT) in accordance with AWS D1.1 for procedure, technique and acceptance. Inspect the beginning and end of these welds for a 6-inch (152 mm) length, plus any location along the length of the weld where a start and restart is visually noted for a distance of 6 inches on either side of the start/stop location.

**2205.4.3 Bolted Moment Connection - Chapter 11, Supplement No. 1.** The bolted sideplate steel moment connec-

tion in accordance with AISC 358-16 Supplement No. 1 shall be permitted provided:

1. A linear analysis procedure shall be used for design of the SMF and IMF systems using the bolted sideplate connection when permitted in accordance with ASCE 7. Nonlinear procedures will be considered as an alternative system.
2. The beams shall consist of either rolled or built-up wide flange sections. Columns shall consist of rolled or built-up wide flange sections or noncomposite built-up box or HSS with a minimum wall thickness of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm), or satisfy the requirements of width-to-thickness ratios of highly ductile members in AISC 341-16.
3. The biaxial dual-strong axis and column minor axis configurations of the moment connection shall be considered as an alternative system.
4. For SMF and IMF systems, on the sideplate standard or configuration A the U-shaped cover plates shall be used with the k dimension extension. The k dimension extension length is defined as beam depth  $d_b/6$ , rounded to the nearest  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
5. The hinge-to-hinge span to beam depth,  $L_h/d$ , shall be greater than or equal to 4.5.
6. The width-to-thickness ratios for beam flanges shall not be less than 3.5.

- Exception:** For width-to-thickness ratios less than 3.5 the  $C_{pr}$  shall be calculated in accordance with that for welded sideplate connections but in no case shall the width-to-thickness ratio be less than 3.0.
7. The minimum bolt-to-bolt spacing shall not be less than 3 bolt diameters.
  8. The extension of the side plates beyond the face of the column shall be within the range of  $0.65d$  to  $1.5d$ .
  9. The gap-to-side plate thickness ratio shall range from 2.1 to 2.3.
  10. Demand Critical fillet welds {2}, {5}, {5a} and {8} shall have Magnetic Particle Testing (MT) in accordance with AWS D1.1 for procedure, technique and acceptance. Inspect the beginning and end of these welds for a 6-inch (152 mm) length, plus any location along the length of the weld where a start and restart is visually noted for a distance of 6 inches (152 mm) on either side of the start/stop location.
  11. The connection specific factor to account for peak connection strength,  $C_{pr}$ , shall be between 1.15 and 1.35. Calculations shall be submitted to OSHPD for review and approval.
  12. For in-plane collectors transferring axial loads into the sideplate connection, coordination between sideplate and the registered design professional in responsible charge will be required to confirm the collector connection is sufficient to transfer the load into the moment frame system. This requirement shall be satisfied by designing the sideplate connec-

**STEEL**

*tions in the first bay of a multi-bay sideplate moment frame or an end bay to have a minimum connection capacity, including combined shear ( $V_u + V_g$ ) and moment ( $M_{pr}$ ) demands, of at least 1.2 times the  $M_{pr}$  at the plastic hinge location when the axial load, as determined by ASCE 7, Section 12.10.2.1 without  $\Omega_o$ , exceeds 0.1  $F_y A_g$  of the sideplate beam.*

13. A complete frame analysis for gravity and design wind loading using LRFD load combinations in Section 1605.1 shall be performed including Demand/Capacity Ratios. Frame beam member nominal moment strengths ( $M_n$ ) used for gravity and design wind loading for the bolted sideplate connection using Class A or Class B faying surfaces shall be taken as  $0.80F_yZ$  for frame beams up to 300 plf and  $0.60F_yZ$  for frame beams greater than 300 plf.
14. For moment frame beams with maximum beam shear greater than 90 percent of the vertical bolt shear capacity, a secondary check is to be provided to confirm the vertical bolt shear capacities are sufficient.
15. Bolted sideplate connections used on heavy-shallow frame beams for beams greater than 200 plf and shallower than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth shall be considered as an alternative system.
16. Skewed beams shall utilize the link-beam fabrication method with CJP welded splices for skew angles. The skew angle shall be less than 15 degrees.
17. For two-sided bolted sideplate connections sharing the same side plates at the same height and depth across the column, the vertical offset in the beams shall not exceed 10 inches (254 mm).

## **SECTION 2206 COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE STRUCTURES**

**2206.1 General.** Systems of structural steel elements acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with AISC 360 and ACI 318, excluding ACI 318 Chapter 14.

**2206.2 Seismic design.** Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of composite steel and concrete systems shall be in accordance with Section 2206.2.1.

**2206.2.1 Seismic requirements for composite structural steel and concrete construction.** Where a response modification coefficient,  $R$ , in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Seismic requirements for composite structural steel and concrete construction shall be considered as an alternative system.**

**Exception:**

*Steel and concrete composite special moment frame with the approved moment connection in accor-*

*dance with AISC 358 Chapter 10 shall be permitted provided:*

- a. Beams are provided with Reduced Beam Sections (RBS);
- b. Web extension to beam web two-sided fillet welds are sized to develop expected strength of the beam web and shall not be less than a  $1/4$  inch fillet weld; and
- c. The built-up box column wall thickness shall not be less than 1.25 inches and the HSS column wall thickness shall not be less than  $1/2$  inch.

## **SECTION 2207 STEEL JOISTS**

**2207.1 General.** The design, manufacture and use of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with either SJI 100 or SJI 200, as applicable.

**2207.1.1 Seismic design.** Where required, the seismic design of buildings shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2205.2 or 2211.1.1.

**2207.2 Design.** The registered design professional shall indicate on the construction documents the steel joist and steel joist girder designations from the specifications listed in Section 2207.1; and shall indicate the requirements for joist and joist girder design, layout, end supports, anchorage, bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, bridging termination connections and bearing connection design to resist uplift and lateral loads. These documents shall indicate special requirements as follows:

1. Special loads including:
  - 1.1. Concentrated loads.
  - 1.2. Nonuniform loads.
  - 1.3. Net uplift loads.
  - 1.4. Axial loads.
  - 1.5. End moments.
  - 1.6. Connection forces.
2. Special considerations including:
  - 2.1. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
  - 2.2. Oversized or other nonstandard web openings.
  - 2.3. Extended ends.
3. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

**2207.3 Calculations.** The steel joist and joist girder manufacturer shall design the steel joists and steel joist girders in accordance with the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1 to support the load requirements of Section 2207.2. The registered design professional shall be permitted to require submission of the steel joist and joist girder calcula-

## **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

tions as prepared by a registered design professional responsible for the product design. Where requested by the registered design professional, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit design calculations with a cover letter bearing the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's registered design professional. In addition to the design calculations submitted under seal and signature, the following shall be included:

1. Bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, such as cantilevered conditions and net uplift.
2. Connection design for:
  - 2.1. Connections that differ from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1, such as flush-framed or framed connections.
  - 2.2. Field splices.
  - 2.3. Joist headers.

**2207.4 Steel joist drawings.** Steel joist placement plans shall be provided to show the steel joist products as specified on the approved construction documents and are to be utilized for field installation in accordance with specific project requirements as stated in Section 2207.2. Steel joist placement plans shall include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Listing of applicable loads as stated in Section 2207.2 and used in the design of the steel joists and joist girders as specified in the approved construction documents.
2. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
3. Connection requirements for:
  - 3.1. Joist supports.
  - 3.2. Joist girder supports.
  - 3.3. Field splices.
  - 3.4. Bridging attachments.
4. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
5. Size, location and connections for bridging.
6. Joist headers.

Steel joist placement plans do not require the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's registered design professional. **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Not permitted by OSHPD.

**2207.5 Certification.** At completion of manufacture, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit a certificate of compliance to the owner or the owner's authorized agent for submittal to the building official as specified in Section 1704.5 stating that work was performed in accordance with approved construction documents and with SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.

**2207.6 Joist chord bracing.** **[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** The chords of all joists shall be laterally supported at all points where the chords change direction.

## SECTION 2208 STEEL CABLE STRUCTURES

**2208.1 General.** The design, fabrication and erection including related connections, and protective coatings of steel cables for buildings shall be in accordance with ASCE 19.

**2208.1 General.** The design, fabrication and erection including related connections, and protective coatings of steel cables for buildings shall be in accordance with ASCE 19.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Steel cables with glass or polymer fabric material acting as a tensile membrane structure is an alternative system.

## SECTION 2209 STEEL STORAGE RACKS

**2209.1 Steel storage racks.** The design, testing and utilization of steel storage racks made of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members shall be in accordance with RMI ANSI/MH 16.1. Where required by ASCE 7, the seismic design of steel storage racks shall be in accordance with Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

**2209.2 Steel cantilevered storage racks.** The design, testing and utilization of steel cantilevered storage racks made of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members shall be in accordance with RMI ANSI/MH 16.3. Where required by ASCE 7, the seismic design of steel cantilevered storage racks shall be in accordance with Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

**2209.3 Certification.** For rack storage structures that are 8 feet (2438 mm) in height or greater to the top load level and assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F at completion of the storage rack installation, a certificate of compliance shall be submitted to the owner or the owner's authorized agent stating that the work was performed in accordance with approved construction documents.

## SECTION 2210 COLD-FORMED STEEL

**2210.1 General.** The design of cold-formed carbon and low-alloy steel structural members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. The design of cold-formed stainless-steel structural members shall be in accordance with ASCE 8. Cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall comply with Section 2211. Where required, the seismic design of cold-formed steel structures shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2210.2.

**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** Modify AISI S100 Chapter J (Connections and Joints, Section J7.2) by the following: Power-actuated fastener allowable design strength shall not exceed that permitted in the evaluation report qualified by ICC AC 70 or ASCE 7, Section 13.4.5.

**2210.1.1 Steel decks.** The design and construction of cold-formed steel decks shall be in accordance with this section.

**2210.1.1 Noncomposite steel floor decks.** Noncomposite steel floor decks shall be permitted to be

**STEEL**

designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-NC1.0.

**2210.1.1.2 Steel roof deck.** Steel roof decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-RD1.0. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] The base material thickness of the steel deck shall not be less than 0.0359 inch (0.9 mm) (20 gage).*

**Exception:** For single-story, nonbuilding structures similar to buildings, the minimum deck thickness need not apply if the steel roof deck is not being used as the diaphragm and there are no suspended hangers or bracing for nonstructural components attached to the deck.

**2210.1.1.3 Composite slabs on steel decks.** Composite slabs of concrete and steel deck shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with SDI-C.

**2210.2 Seismic requirements for cold-formed steel structures.** Where a response modification coefficient,  $R$ , in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of cold-formed steel structures, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISI S100, ASCE 8, or, for cold-formed steel special-bolted moment frames, AISI S400. *[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Cold-formed steel structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISI S100 and AISI S400. Cold-formed steel special bolted moment frames are not permitted by OSHPD.*

## **SECTION 2211 COLD-FORMED STEEL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION**

**2211.1 Structural framing.** For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, the design and installation of the following structural framing systems, including their members and connections, shall be in accordance with AISI S240, and Sections 2211.1.1 through 2211.1.3, as applicable:

1. Floor and roof systems.
2. Structural walls.
3. Shear walls, strap-braced walls and diaphragms that resist in-plane lateral loads.
4. Trusses.

**2211.1.1 Seismic requirements for cold-formed steel structural systems.** The design of cold-formed steel light-frame construction to resist seismic forces shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2211.1.1 or 2211.1.2, as applicable.

**2211.1.1.1 Seismic Design Categories B and C.** Where a response modification coefficient,  $R$ , in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1 is used for the design of cold-formed steel light-frame construction assigned to Seismic Design Category B or C, the seismic force-resisting system shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISI S400.

**Exception:** The response modification coefficient,  $R$ , designated for "Steel systems not specifically

detailed for seismic resistance, excluding cantilever column systems" in ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, shall be permitted for systems designed and detailed in accordance with AISI S240 and need not be designed and detailed in accordance with AISI S400

**2211.1.1.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F.** In cold-formed steel light-frame construction assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the seismic force-resisting system shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISI S400.

*[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]:*

1. *Cold-formed steel stud foundation plates or sills shall be bolted or fastened to the foundation or foundation wall in accordance with Section 2304.3.4, Item 2.*
2. *Shear wall assemblies in accordance with Sections E5, E6 and E7 of AISI S400 are not permitted within the seismic force-resisting system of buildings.*

**2211.1.2 Prescriptive framing.** Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, less than or equal to three stories above grade plane, shall be permitted to be constructed in accordance with AISI S230 subject to the limitations therein.

**2211.1.3 Truss design.** Cold-formed steel trusses shall comply with the additional provisions of Sections 2211.1.3.1. through 2211.1.3.3.

*[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] Complete engineering analysis and truss design drawings shall accompany the construction documents submitted to the enforcement agency for approval. When load testing is required, the test report shall be submitted with the truss design drawings and engineering analysis to the enforcement agency.*

**2211.1.3.1 Truss design drawings.** The truss design drawings shall conform to the requirements of Section I1 of AISI S202 and shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. The truss design drawings shall include the details of permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing in accordance with Section I1.6 of AISI S202 where these methods are utilized to provide restraint/bracing.

**2211.1.3.2 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall contract with a registered design professional for the design of the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing for trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater. Special inspection of trusses over 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length shall be in accordance with Section 1705.2.

**2211.1.3.3 Truss quality assurance.** Trusses not part of a manufacturing process that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency in accordance with AISI S240 Chapter D shall be fabricated in compliance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1705.2, as applicable.

**2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

**2211.2 Nonstructural members.** For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, the design and installation of nonstructural members and connections shall be in accordance with AISI S220. [OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5] for noncomposite assembly design. Where nonstructural members do not qualify for design under AISI S220, the design and installation of nonstructural members and connections shall be in accordance with AISI S240 or S100.

## SECTION 2212 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNITY COLLEGES [DSA-SS/CC]

### 2212.1 Connections.

**2212.1.1 Column base plate.** When shear and/or tensile forces are intended to be transferred between column base plates and anchor bolts, provisions shall be made in the design to eliminate the effects of oversized holes permitted in base plates by AISC 360 by use of shear lugs into the reinforced concrete foundation element and/or welded shear transfer plates or other means acceptable to the enforcement agency, when the oversized holes are larger than the anchor bolt by more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm). When welded shear transfer plates and shear lugs or other means acceptable to the enforcement agency are not used, the anchor bolts shall be checked for the induced bending stresses in combination with the shear stresses.

### 2212.2 Modifications to AISC 341.

**2212.2.1 Section B5.** Modify Section B5.2(a) as follows:

(a) The forces specified in this section need not be applied to the diagonal members of the truss diaphragms and their connections, where each diagonal bracing member resists no more than 30 percent of the diaphragm shear at each line of resistance and where these members and connections conform to the requirements of Sections F2.4a, F2.5a, F2.5b and F2.6c. Braces in K- or V- configurations and braces supporting gravity loads other than self-weight are not permitted under this exception.

**2212.2.2 Section D2.** Modify Section D2.6c(b)(2) as follows:

(2) the moment calculated using the load combinations of the applicable building code, including the amplified seismic load, provided the connection or other mechanism within the column base is designed to have the ductility necessary to accommodate the column base rotation resulting from the design story drift.

**2212.3 Seismic requirements for composite structural steel and concrete construction.** In addition to the requirements of Section 2206.2, steel and concrete composite special moment frame with the approved moment connections in accordance with AISC 358 Chapter 10 shall be permitted provided:

1. Beams are provided with reduced beam sections (RBS);
2. Web extension to beam web two-sided fillet welds are sized to develop expected strength of the beam web and shall not be less than a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch fillet weld; and
3. The built-up box column wall thickness shall not be less than 1.25 inches and the HSS column wall thickness shall not be less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

### 2212.4 Steel joists.

**2212.4.1 Design approval.** Joist and joist girder design calculations and profiles with member sizes and connection details, and joist placement plans shall be provided to the enforcement agency and approved prior to joist fabrication, in accordance with Title 24, Part 1. Joist and joist girder design calculations and profiles with member sizes and connection details shall bear the signature and stamp or seal of the registered engineer or licensed architect responsible for the joist design. Alterations to the approved joist and joist girder design calculations and profiles with member sizes and connection details, or to fabricated joists are subject to the approval of the enforcement agency.

**2212.4.2 Joist chord bracing.** The chords of all joists shall be laterally supported at all points where the chords change direction.

### 2212.5 Cold-formed steel light-frame construction.

#### 2212.5.1 Trusses.

**2212.5.1.1 Analysis submittals.** Complete engineering analysis and truss design drawings shall accompany the construction documents submitted to the enforcement agency for approval. When load testing is required the test report shall be submitted with the truss design drawings and engineering analysis to the enforcement agency.

**2212.5.1.2 Deferred submittals.** Deferred submittal per Section II.4.2 of AISI 202 is not permitted by DSA-SS/CC.

**2212.5.2 Anchorage for shear.** Cold-formed steel stud foundation plates or sills shall be bolted or fastened to the foundation or foundation wall in accordance with Section 2304.3.4, Item 2.

**2212.5.3 Limitations on shear wall assemblies.** Shear wall assemblies in accordance with Sections E5, E6 and E7 of AISI-S400 are not permitted within the seismic force-resisting system of buildings or structures assigned to Risk Category II, III, IV or buildings designed to be relocatable.

### 2212.6 Testing.

**2212.6.1 Tests of high-strength bolts, nuts and washers.** High-strength bolts, nuts and washers shall be sampled and tested in accordance with Section 1705A.2.6.

**2212.6.2 Tests of end-welded studs.** End-welded studs shall be sampled and tested in accordance with the requirements of the AWS D1.1.

**STEEL**

**SECTION 2213**  
**TESTING AND FIELD VERIFICATION**  
**[OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]**

**2213.1 Tests of high-strength bolts, nuts and washers.** High-strength bolts, nuts and washers shall be sampled and tested by an approved agency for conformance with the requirements of applicable ASTM standards.

A minimum of nine samples per lot, as defined in the ASTM standards for bolts [not nuts and washers], shall be tested for tensile properties in accordance with ASTM F606, but need not exceed three samples per 400 bolts.

**2213.2 Tests of end-welded studs.** End-welded studs shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of the AWS D1.1, Sections 7.7 and 7.8.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 22A – STEEL

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter							X			X				X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

*The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †*

*The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.*



# CHAPTER 22A

## STEEL

### **SECTION 2201A GENERAL**

**2201A.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter govern the quality, design, fabrication and erection of steel construction.

**2201A.1.1 Application.** *The scope of application of Chapter 22A is as follows:*

1. *Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety (DSA-SS), which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1. These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.*
2. *Structures regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD), which include those applications listed in Sections 1.10.1 and 1.10.4. These applications include hospitals and correctional treatment centers.*

**2201A.1.2 Amendments in this chapter.** DSA-SS and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. *Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety: [DSA-SS] For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.*
  2. *Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:*
- [OSHPD 1]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.
- [OSHPD 4]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

### **SECTION 2202A IDENTIFICATION OF STEEL FOR STRUCTURAL PURPOSES**

**2202A.1 General.** Identification of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Identification of cold-formed steel members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. Identification of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall also comply with the requirements contained in AISI S240 or AISI S220, as applicable. Other steel furnished for structural load-carrying purposes shall be properly identified for conformity to the ordered grade in accordance with the specified ASTM standard or other specification and the provisions of this chapter. Where the steel grade is not readily identifiable from marking and test records, the steel shall be tested to verify conformity to such standards.

### **SECTION 2203A PROTECTION OF STEEL FOR STRUCTURAL PURPOSES**

**2203A.1 General.** Painting of structural steel elements shall be in accordance with AISC 360. Painting of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with SJI 100 and SJI 200. Individual structural members and assembled panels of cold-formed steel construction shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with the requirements contained in AISI S100. Protection of cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall be in accordance with AISI S240 or AISI S220, as applicable.

### **SECTION 2204A CONNECTIONS**

**2204A.1 Welding.** The details of design, workmanship and technique for welding and qualification of welding personnel shall be in accordance with the specifications listed in Sections 2205A, 2206A, 2207A, 2208A, 2210A and 2211A. For special inspection of welding, see Section 1705A.2.

**2204A.1.1 Restrained welded connections. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** Welded structural steel connections having a medium or high level of restraint, as defined by AWS D1.1 Annex H, shall have a minimum pre-heat temperature of not less than 150°F (66°C). Welded structural steel connections with welds to flange, web, wall or plate having a high level of restraint shall maintain a post-heat temperature of 300°F (149°C) for a minimum of 1 hour after completion of welding.

**2204A.2 Bolting.** The design, installation and inspection of bolts shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2205A, 2206A, 2207A, 2210A and 2211A. For special inspection of the installation of high-strength bolts, see Section 1705A.2.

**2204A.3 Anchor rods.** Anchor rods shall be set in accordance with the approved construction documents. The protrusion of the threaded ends through the connected material shall fully engage the threads of the nuts but shall not be greater than the length of the threads on the bolts.

**2204A.4 Column base plate.** When shear and/or tensile forces are intended to be transferred between column base plates and anchor bolts, provisions shall be made in the design to eliminate the effects of oversized holes permitted in base plates by AISC 360 by use of shear lugs into the reinforced concrete foundation element and/or welded shear transfer plates or other means acceptable to the enforcement agency, when the oversized holes are larger than the anchor bolt by more than  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm). When welded shear transfer plates and shear lugs or other means acceptable to the enforcement agency are not used, the anchor bolts shall be checked for the induced bending stresses in combination with the shear stresses.

**STEEL**

## **SECTION 2205A STRUCTURAL STEEL**

**2205A.1 General.** The design, fabrication and erection of structural steel elements in buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with AISC 360.

**Exceptions: [OSHPD 1 & 4]**

1. For members designed on the basis of tension, the slenderness ratio ( $L/r$ ) shall not exceed 300, except for design of hangers and bracing in accordance with NFPA 13 and for rod hangers in tension.
2. For members designed on the basis of compression, the slenderness ratio ( $KL/r$ ) shall not exceed 200, except for design of hangers and bracing in accordance with NFPA 13.

**2205A.2 Seismic design.** Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of buildings, structures and portions thereof shall be in accordance with Section 2205A.2.1 or 2205A.2.2, as applicable.

**2205A.2.1 Structural steel seismic force-resisting systems.** The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel seismic force-resisting systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2205A.2.1.1 or 2205A.2.1.2, as applicable.

**2205A.2.1.1 Seismic Design Category B or C. Not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.**

**2205A.2.1.2 Seismic Design Category D, E or F.** Structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISC 341. Beam-to-column moment connections in special moment frames and intermediate moment frames shall be prequalified in accordance with AISC 341, Section K1, qualified by testing in accordance with AISC 341, Section K2, or shall be prequalified in accordance with AISC 358.

**2205A.2.2 Structural steel elements.** The design, detailing, fabrication and erection of structural steel elements in seismic force-resisting systems other than those covered in Section 2205A.2.1, including struts, collectors, chords and foundation elements, shall be in accordance with AISC 341.

**2205A.3 Modifications to AISC 341. [DSA-SS]**

**2205A.3.1 Section B5.** Modify Section B5.2(a) as follows:

(a) The forces specified in this section need not be applied to the diagonal members of the truss diaphragms and their connections, where each diagonal bracing member resists no more than 30 percent of the diaphragm shear at each line of resistance and where these members and connections conform to the requirements of Sections F2.4a, F2.5a, F2.5b and F2.6c. Braces in K- or V- configurations and braces supporting gravity loads other than self-weight are not permitted under this exception.

**2205A.3.2 Section D2.** Modify Section D2.6c(b)(2) as follows:

(2) the moment calculated using the *load combinations of the applicable building code, including the amplified seismic load, provided the connection or other mechanism within the column base is designed to have the ductility necessary to accommodate the column base rotation resulting from the design story drift.*

**2205A.4 Modifications to AISC 341. [OSHPD 1 and 4]**

**2205A.4.1 Glossary.** Modify glossary by adding the following:

**Inelastic Rotation:** The permanent or plastic portion of the rotation angle between a beam and the column, or between a link and the column of the test specimen, measured in radians. The inelastic rotation shall be computed based upon an analysis of the test specimen deformations. Sources of inelastic rotation include yielding of members and connectors, yielding of connection elements and slip between members and connection elements. For beam-to-column moment connections in special moment frames, the inelastic rotation is represented by the plastic chord rotation angle calculated as the plastic deflection of the beam or girder, at the center of its span divided by the distance between the center of the beam span and the centerline of the panel zone of the beam-column connection. For link-to-column connections in eccentrically braced frames, inelastic rotation shall be computed based upon the assumption that inelastic action is concentrated at a single point located at the intersection of the centerline of the link with the face of the column.

**2205A.4.2 Section A4.** Replace Section A4.1 Item (c) as follows:

(c) Locations and dimensions of protected zones. The fabricator shall permanently mark protected zones of structural elements in the seismic force-resisting system in the building that are designated on the construction documents. If these markings are obscured during construction, such as after the application of fire protection, the owner's designated representative shall re-mark the protected zones as they are designated on the construction documents. [OSHPD 1 & 4] Primers or paints used to mark protected zones on steel surfaces, which are to receive sprayed fire-resistance material, shall comply with California Building Code Section 704.13.3.2.

**2205A.4.3 Section I2. [OSHPD 1 & 4]** Replace Section I2.1 Item (d) as follows:

(d) Decking attachments that penetrate the beam flange shall not be placed on beam flanges within the protected zone, except power-actuated fasteners up to 0.18 inch in diameter are permitted, provided that the penetration is less than 85 percent of beam flange thickness.

**2205A.4.4 Section E2.** Replace Section E2.6c Item (a) by the following:

- (a) Use of IMF connections designed in accordance with ANSI/AISC 358 shall be as modified in Section 2205A.5.2.

**2205A.4.5 Section E3.** Replace Section E3.6b Item (a) by the following:

- (a) The connection shall be capable of sustaining an interstory drift angle of at least 0.04 radians and an inelastic rotation of 0.03 radians.

**2205A.4.6 Section E3.** Replace Section E3.6c Item (a) by the following:

- (a) Use of SMF connections designed in accordance with ANSI/AISC 358 shall be as modified in Section 2205A.5.

**2205A.4.7 Section F2.** Special concentrically braced frames (SCBF) modifications

5b. Diagonal braces, Add a new section as follows.

- (d) The use of rectangular or square HSS are not permitted for bracing members, unless filled solid with cement grout having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi at 28 days. The effects of composite action in the filled composite brace shall be considered in the sectional properties of the system where it results in the more severe loading condition or detailing.

**2205A.4.8 Section F3.** Modify Section F3.6e Item 2 as follows:

Exception is not permitted.

**2205A.4.9 Section K2.** Replace Section K2.3b as follows:

The size of the beam or link used in the test specimen shall be within the following limits:

1. The test beams or links shall be no less than 100 percent of the depth of the prototype beam or link.
2. The test beams or links shall be no less than 100 percent of the weight per foot of the prototype beam or link.

The size of the column used in the test specimen shall properly represent the inelastic action in the column, as per the requirements in Section K2.3a. In addition, the depth of the test column shall be no less than 90 percent of the depth of the prototype column.

Extrapolation beyond the limitations stated in this section shall be permitted subject to peer review and approval by the enforcement agency.

**2205A.4.10 Section K2.** Modify Section K2.8 by the following:

The test specimen must sustain the required inter-story drift angle, or link rotation angle, and inelastic rotation for at least two complete loading cycles.

#### 2205A.5 Modifications to AISC 358. [OSHPD 1 and 4]

**2205A.5.1.** Design Requirements, 2.1 Special and Intermediate Moment Frame Connection Types, Table 2-1 Pre-qualified Moment Connections modifications.

The prequalified bolted moment connections are not permitted in buildings.

#### Exceptions:

1. Erection bolts are permitted.
2. The approved bolted moment connection in accordance with AISC 358 Chapter 10 as permitted by the exception to Section 2206A.2 and AISC 358-16 Supplement No. 1, Chapter 11.

**2205A.5.2 Moment Connection - Chapter 11.** The welded side plate steel moment connection shall be permitted provided:

1. The beams shall consist of either rolled or built-up wide flange sections.
2. The biaxial dual-strong axis and column minor axis configurations of the moment connection shall be considered as an alternative system.
3. For SMF and IMF systems, U-shaped cover plates shall be used and the hinge-to-hinge span to beam depth,  $L_h/d$ , shall be greater than or equal to 5.
4. The width-to-thickness ratios for beam flanges shall not be less than 3.
5. The spacing for lateral bracing of wide flange beams,  $L_b$ , shall include the length of the side plate at beam ends.
6. The extension of the side plates beyond the face of the column shall be within the range of 0.77d to 1.0d.
7. The gap-to-side plate thickness ratio shall range from 2.1 to 2.3.
8. Demand critical fillet welds {2}, {5}, {5a} and {7} shall have Magnetic Particle Testing (MT) in accordance with AWS D1.1 for procedure, technique and acceptance. Inspect the beginning and end of these welds for a 6-inch length, plus any location along the length of the weld where a start and restart is visually noted for a distance of 6 inches on either side of the start/stop location.

**2205A.5.3 Bolted Moment Connection - Chapter 11, Supplement No. 1.** The bolted sideplate steel moment connection in accordance with AISC 358-16 Supplement No. 1 shall be permitted provided:

1. A linear analysis procedure shall be used for design of the SMF and IMF systems using the bolted side-plate connection when permitted in accordance with ASCE 7. Nonlinear procedures will be considered as an alternative system.
2. The beams shall consist of either rolled or built-up wide flange sections. Columns shall consist of rolled or built-up wide flange sections or noncomposite built-up box or HSS with a minimum wall thickness of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (19 mm), or satisfy the requirements of width-to-thickness ratios of highly ductile members in AISC 341-16.
3. The biaxial dual-strong axis and column minor axis configurations of the moment connection shall be considered as an alternative system.

**STEEL**

4. For SMF and IMF systems, on the sideplate standard or configuration A the U-shaped cover plates shall be used with the  $k$  dimension extension. The  $k$  dimension extension length is defined as beam depth  $d_b/6$ , rounded to the nearest  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).
5. The hinge-to-hinge span to beam depth,  $L_h/d$ , shall be greater than or equal to 4.5.
6. The width-to-thickness ratios for beam flanges shall not be less than 3.5.  
**Exception:** For width-to-thickness ratios less than 3.5 the  $C_{pr}$  shall be calculated in accordance with that for welded sideplate connections but in no case shall the width-to-thickness ratio be less than 3.0.
7. The minimum bolt-to-bolt spacing shall not be less than 3 bolt diameters.
8. The extension of the side plates beyond the face of the column shall be within the range of  $0.65d$  to  $1.5d$ .
9. The gap-to-side plate thickness ratio shall range from 2.1 to 2.3.
10. Demand Critical fillet welds {2}, {5}, {5a} and {8} shall have Magnetic Particle Testing (MT) in accordance with AWS D1.1 for procedure, technique and acceptance. Inspect the beginning and end of these welds for a 6-inch (152 mm) length, plus any location along the length of the weld where a start and restart is visually noted for a distance of 6 inches (152 mm) on either side of the start/stop location.
11. The connection specific factor to account for peak connection strength,  $C_{pr}$  shall be between 1.15 and 1.35. Calculations shall be submitted to OSHPD for review and approval.
12. For in-plane collectors transferring axial loads into the sideplate connection, coordination between sideplate and the registered design professional in responsible charge will be required to confirm the collector connection is sufficient to transfer the load into the moment frame system. This requirement shall be satisfied by designing the sideplate connections in the first bay of a multi-bay sideplate moment frame or an end bay to have a minimum connection capacity, including combined shear ( $V_u + V_g$ ) and moment ( $M_{pr}$ ) demands, of at least 1.2 times the  $M_{pr}$  at the plastic hinge location when the axial load, as determined by ASCE 7, Section 12.10.2.1 without  $\Omega_o$  exceeds  $0.1 F_y A_g$  of the sideplate beam.
13. A complete frame analysis for gravity and design wind loading using LRFD load combinations in Section 1605A.1 shall be performed including Demand/Capacity Ratios. Frame beam member nominal moment strengths ( $M_n$ ) used for gravity and design wind loading for the bolted sideplate connection using Class A or Class B faying surfaces shall be taken as  $0.80 F_Z$  for frame beams up to 300 plf and  $0.60 F_Z$  for frame beams greater than 300 plf.

14. For moment frame beams with maximum beam shear greater than 90 percent of the vertical bolt shear capacity, a secondary check is to be provided to confirm the vertical bolt shear capacities are sufficient.
15. Bolted sideplate connections used on heavy-shallow frame beams for beams greater than 200 plf and shallower than 24 inches (610 mm) in depth shall be considered as an alternative system.
16. Skewed beams shall utilize the link-beam fabrication method with CJP welded splices for skew angles. The skew angle shall be less than 15 degrees.
17. For two-sided bolted sideplate connections sharing the same side plates at the same height and depth across the column, the vertical offset in the beams shall not exceed 10 inches (254 mm).

## **SECTION 2206A COMPOSITE STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE STRUCTURES**

**2206A.1 General.** Systems of structural steel elements acting compositely with reinforced concrete shall be designed in accordance with AISC 360 and ACI 318, excluding ACI 318 Chapter 14.

**2206A.2 Seismic design.** Where required, the seismic design, fabrication and erection of composite steel and concrete systems shall be in accordance with Section 2206A.2.1.

**2206A.2.1 Seismic requirements for composite structural steel and concrete construction.** Where a response modification coefficient,  $R$ , in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of systems of structural steel acting compositely with reinforced concrete, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISC 341 and shall be considered as an alternative system.

**Exception:** Steel and concrete composite special moment frame with the approved moment connections in accordance with AISC 358 Chapter 10 shall be permitted, provided:

1. Beams are provided with reduced beam sections (RBS);
2. Web extension to beam web two-sided fillet welds are sized to develop expected strength of the beam web and shall not be less than a  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch fillet weld; and
3. The built-up box column wall thickness shall not be less than 1.25 inches and the HSS column wall thickness shall not be less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

## **SECTION 2207A STEEL JOISTS**

**2207A.1 General.** The design, manufacture and use of open-web steel joists and joist girders shall be in accordance with either SJI 100 or SJI 200, as applicable.

## **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

**2207A.1.1 Seismic design.** Where required, the seismic design of buildings shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2205A.2 or 2211A.1.1.

**2207A.2 Design.** The registered design professional shall indicate on the construction documents the steel joist and steel joist girder designations from the specifications listed in Section 2207A.1; and shall indicate the requirements for joist and joist girder design, layout, end supports, anchorage, bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1, bridging termination connections and bearing connection design to resist uplift and lateral loads. These documents shall indicate special requirements as follows:

1. Special loads including:

- 1.1. Concentrated loads.
- 1.2. Nonuniform loads.
- 1.3. Net uplift loads.
- 1.4. Axial loads.
- 1.5. End moments.
- 1.6. Connection forces.

2. Special considerations including:

- 2.1. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1.
- 2.2. Oversized or other nonstandard web openings.
- 2.3. Extended ends.
3. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1.

**2207A.3 Calculations.** The steel joist and joist girder manufacturer shall design the steel joists and steel joist girders in accordance with the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1 to support the load requirements of Section 2207A.2. The registered design professional shall be permitted to require submission of the steel joist and joist girder calculations as prepared by a registered design professional responsible for the product design. Where requested by the registered design professional, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit design calculations with a cover letter bearing the seal and signature of the joist manufacturer's registered design professional. In addition to the design calculations submitted under seal and signature, the following shall be included:

1. Bridging design that differs from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1, such as cantilevered conditions and net uplift.

2. Connection design for:

- 2.1. Connections that differ from the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1, such as flush-framed or framed connections.
- 2.2. Field splices.
- 2.3. Joist headers.

**2207A.4 Steel joist drawings.** Steel joist placement plans shall be provided to show the steel joist products as specified on the approved construction documents and are to be utilized for field installation in accordance with specific project requirements as stated in Section 2207A.2. Steel joist placement plans shall include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Listing of applicable loads as stated in Section 2207A.2 and used in the design of the steel joists and joist girders as specified in the approved construction documents.
2. Profiles for joist and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207.1.
3. Connection requirements for:
  - 3.1. Joist supports.
  - 3.2. Joist girder supports.
  - 3.3. Field splices.
  - 3.4. Bridging attachments.
4. Live and total load deflection criteria for joists and joist girder configurations that differ from those defined by the SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1.
5. Size, location and connections for bridging.
6. Joist headers.

**2207A.4.1 Design approval.** *[IDSA-SS]* Joist and joist girder design calculations and profiles with member sizes and connection details, and joist placement plans shall be provided to the enforcement agency and approved prior to joist fabrication, in accordance with the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1). Joist and joist girder design calculations and profiles with member sizes and connection details shall bear the signature and stamp or seal of the registered engineer or licensed architect responsible for the joist design. Alterations to the approved joist and joist girder design calculations and profiles with member sizes and connection details, or to fabricated joists are subject to the approval of the enforcement agency.

**2207A.5 Certification.** At completion of manufacture, the steel joist manufacturer shall submit a certificate of compliance to the owner or the owner's authorized agent for submittal to the building official as specified in Section 1704A.5 stating that work was performed in accordance with approved construction documents and with SJI specifications listed in Section 2207A.1.

**2207A.6 Joist chord bracing.** The chords of all joists shall be laterally supported at all points where the chords change direction.

## SECTION 2208A STEEL CABLE STRUCTURES

**2208A.1 General.** The design, fabrication and erection including related connections, and protective coatings of steel cables for buildings shall be in accordance with ASCE 19. Steel cables with glass or polymer fabric material acting as a tensile membrane structure is an alternative system.

**STEEL**

## **SECTION 2209A STEEL STORAGE RACKS**

**2209A.1 Steel storage racks.** The design, testing and utilization of steel storage racks made of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members shall be in accordance with RMI ANSI/MH 16.1. Where required by ASCE 7, the seismic design of steel storage racks shall be in accordance with Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

**2209A.2 Steel cantilevered storage racks.** The design, testing and utilization of steel cantilevered storage racks made of cold-formed or hot-rolled steel structural members shall be in accordance with RMI ANSI/MH 16.3. Where required by ASCE 7, the seismic design of steel cantilevered storage racks shall be in accordance with Section 15.5.3 of ASCE 7.

**2209A.3 Certification.** For rack storage structures that are 8 feet (2438 mm) in height or greater to the top load level and assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E, or F at completion of the storage rack installation, a certificate of compliance shall be submitted to the owner or the owner's authorized agent stating that the work was performed in accordance with approved construction documents.

## **SECTION 2210A COLD-FORMED STEEL**

**2210A.1 General. [DSA-SS, OSHPD 1 & 4]** The design of cold-formed carbon and low-alloy steel structural members shall be in accordance with AISI S100. The design of cold-formed stainless-steel structural members shall be in accordance with ASCE 8. Cold-formed steel light-frame construction shall comply with Section 2211A. Where required, the seismic design of cold-formed steel structures shall be in accordance with the additional provisions of Section 2210A.2.

*Modify AISI S100 Chapter J (Connections and Joints, Section J7.2) by the following: Power-actuated fastener available strength shall not exceed those strengths determined in accordance with Section 1617A.1.20 of this code.*

**2210A.1.1 Steel decks.** The design and construction of cold-formed steel decks shall be in accordance with this section.

**2210A.1.1.1 Noncomposite steel floor decks.** Noncomposite steel floor decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-NC1.0.

**2210A.1.1.2 Steel roof deck.** Steel roof decks shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with ANSI/SDI-RD1.0. *The base material thickness of steel deck shall not be less than 0.0359 inch (0.9 mm) (20 gage).*

**Exception:** *[DSA-SS] For single-story open structures, the minimum deck thickness may be waived if the steel roof deck need not be used as the diaphragm and there are no suspended hangers or bracing for nonstructural components attached to the deck.*

**2210A.1.1.3 Composite slabs on steel decks.** Composite slabs of concrete and steel deck shall be permitted to be designed and constructed in accordance with SDI-C.

**2210A.2 Seismic requirements for cold-formed steel structures.** Where a response modification coefficient,  $R$ , in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1, is used for the design of cold-formed steel structures, the structures shall be designed and detailed in accordance with the requirements of AISI S100 and AISI S400.

## **SECTION 2211A COLD-FORMED STEEL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION**

**2211A.1 Structural framing.** For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, the design and installation of the following structural framing systems, including their members and connections, shall be in accordance with AISI S240, and Sections 2211A.1.1 through 2211A.1.3, as applicable:

1. Floor and roof systems.
2. Structural walls.
3. Shear walls, strap-braced walls and diaphragms that resist in-plane lateral loads.
4. Trusses.

**2211A.1.1 Seismic requirements for cold-formed steel structural systems.** The design of cold-formed steel light-frame construction to resist seismic forces shall be in accordance with the provisions of Section 2211A.1.1.1 or 2211A.1.1.2, as applicable.

**2211A.1.1.1 Seismic Design Categories B and C. Not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.**

**2211A.1.1.2 Seismic Design Categories D through F.**

In cold-formed steel light-frame construction assigned to Seismic Design Category D, E or F, the seismic force-resisting system shall be designed and detailed in accordance with AISI S400. *The following additional requirements apply:*

1. *Cold-formed steel stud foundation plates or sills shall be bolted or fastened to the foundation or foundation wall in accordance with Section 2304.3.4, Item 2.*
2. *Shear wall assemblies in accordance with Sections E5, E6 and E7 of AISI 400 are not permitted within the seismic force-resisting system of buildings.*

**2211A.1.2 Prescriptive framing. Not permitted by DSA-SS and OSHPD.**

**2211A.1.3 Truss design.** Cold-formed steel trusses shall comply with the additional provisions of Sections 2211A.3.1. through 2211A.1.3.3.

*Complete engineering analysis and truss design drawings shall accompany the construction documents submitted to the enforcement agency for approval. When load testing is required, the test report shall be submitted with*

## **2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

the truss design drawings and engineering analysis to the enforcement agency.

**2211A.1.3.1 Truss design drawings.** The truss design drawings shall conform to the requirements of Section II of AISI S202 and shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. The truss design drawings shall include the details of permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing in accordance with Section I1.6 of AISI S202 where these methods are utilized to provide restraint/bracing. *Deferred submittal per Section I1.4.2 is not permitted by DSA-SS.*

**2211A.1.3.2 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall contract with a registered design professional for the design of the temporary installation restraint/bracing and the permanent individual truss member restraint/bracing for trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater. Special inspection of trusses over 60 feet (18 288 mm) in length shall be in accordance with Section 1705A.2.

**2211A.1.3.3 Truss quality assurance.** Trusses not part of a manufacturing process that provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency in accordance with AISI S240 Chapter D shall be fabricated in compliance with Sections 1704A.2.5 and 1705A.2, as applicable.

**2211A.2 Nonstructural members.** For cold-formed steel light-frame construction, the design and installation of nonstructural members and connections shall be in accordance with AISI S220 for noncomposite assembly design. Where nonstructural members do not qualify for design under AISI S220, the design and installation of nonstructural members and connections shall be in accordance with AISI S240 or S100.

## SECTION 2212A [DSA-SS] LIGHT MODULAR STEEL MOMENT FRAMES FOR PUBLIC ELEMENTARY AND SECONDARY SCHOOLS, AND COMMUNITY COLLEGES

### 2212A.1 General.

**2212A.1.1 Configuration.** Light modular steel moment frame buildings shall be constructed of factory-assembled modules comprising a single-story moment-resisting space frame supporting a floor and roof. Individual modules shall not exceed a width of 14 feet (4.25 m) nor a length of 72 feet (22 m). All connections of beams to corner columns shall be designed as moment-resisting in accordance with the criteria of Section 2212A.2. Modules may be stacked to form multistory structures not exceeding 35 feet or two stories in height. When stacked modules are evaluated separately, seismic forces on each module shall be distributed in accordance with Section 12.8.3 of ASCE 7, considering the modules in the stacked condition. See Section 2212A.2.5 of this code.

**2212A.1.2 Design, fabrication and erection.** The design, fabrication and erection of light modular steel moment-

frame buildings shall be in accordance with the AISC Specification for Structural Steel Buildings (ANSI/AISC 360) and the AISI North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members (AISI S100), as applicable, and the requirements of this section. The maximum dead load of the roof and elevated floor shall not exceed 25 psf and 50 psf (1197 Pa and 2394 Pa), respectively. The maximum dead load of the exterior walls shall not exceed 45 psf (2155 Pa).

**2212A.2 Seismic requirements.** In addition to the other requirements of this code, the design, materials and workmanship of light modular steel moment frames shall comply with the requirements of this section. The response modification coefficient  $R$  shall be equal to  $3\frac{1}{2}$ .  $C_d$  and  $\Omega_0$  shall be equal to 3.0.

**2212A.2.1 Base materials.** Beams, columns and connection materials shall be limited to those materials permitted under the AISC Specification for Structural Members (ANSI/AISC 360) and the AISI North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members (AISI S100).

**2212A.2.2 Beam-to-column strength ratio.** At each moment-resisting connection the following shall apply:

$$\frac{\sum S_{bi}F_{ybi}}{\sum S_{cj}F_{ycj}} \geq 1.4 \quad (\text{Equation 22A-1})$$

where:

$F_{ybi}$  = The specified yield stress of beam "i."

$F_{ycj}$  = The specified yield stress of column "j."

$S_{bi}$  = The flexural section modulus of each beam "i" that is moment connected to the column "j" at the connection.

$S_{cj}$  = The flexural section modulus of each column "j" that is moment connected to the beam "i" at the connection.

#### Exceptions:

1. Beam-to-column connections at the floor level beams of first or second-story modules need not comply with this requirement.
2. Beam-to-column strength ratios less than 1.4 are allowed if proven to be acceptable by analysis or testing.

**2212A.2.3 Welding.** Weld filler metals shall be capable of producing weld metal with a minimum Charpy V-Notch toughness of 20 ft-lb at 0°F. Where beam bottom flanges attach to columns with complete joint penetration groove welds and weld backing is used at the bottom surface of the beam flange, such backing shall be removed and the root pass back-gouged, repaired and reinforced with a minimum  $3\frac{1}{16}$  inch (5 mm) fillet weld.

**2212A.2.4 Connection design.** Connections of beams to columns shall have the design strength to resist the maximum seismic load effect,  $E_m$ , calculated in accordance with Section 12.4.3 of ASCE 7.

**STEEL**

**2212A.2.5 Multistory assemblies.** Analysis of multistory assemblies shall be permitted to consider the stacked modules as a single assembly, with restraint conditions between the stacked units that represent the actual method of attachment. Alternatively, it shall be permitted to analyze the individual modules of stacked assemblies independently, with lateral and vertical reactions from modules above applied as concentrated loads at the top of the supporting module.

### **SECTION 2213A TESTING AND FIELD VERIFICATION**

**2213A.1 Tests of high-strength bolts, nuts and washers.**

High-strength bolts, nuts and washers shall be sampled and tested in accordance with Section 1705A.2.6 [**OSHPD 1 & 4**] and this section.

[**OSHPD 1 and 4**] A minimum of nine samples per lot, as defined in the ASTM standards for bolts [not nuts and washers], shall be tested for tensile properties in accordance with ASTM F606, but need not exceed three samples per 400 bolts.

**2213A.2 Tests of end-welded studs.** End-welded studs shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of the AWS D1.1, Sections 7.7 and 7.8.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 23 – WOOD

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X													X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X			X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																			X	
Chapter / Section																							
2301.1				X																			
2301.1.1								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2301.1.2								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2301.1.3								X	X	X						X							
2301.1.3.1								X		X						X							
2301.1.3.2									X														
2301.1.4								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2303.1.3.1								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2303.1.4.1								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2303.2 – 2303.2.9			X																				
2303.4.1.4.1, <i>Exception 3</i>								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2303.4.3.1								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2304.3.1.1				X																			
2304.3.4								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2304.4.1								X	X	X	X	X					X						
2304.10.2.1								X		X	X	B				X	X						
2304.12.1.1.1																						X	
2304.12.1.2, <i>Exception</i>								X		X	X	X				X	X						
2304.12.1.4.1								X		X	X	X				X	X						
2304.12.8																						X	
2304.12.9																						X	
2305.1.2								X	X	X	X	X				X	X						
2308.2.7								X	X		X	X					X						
2309.1.1								X	X		X	X					X						

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

(A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.



# CHAPTER 23

## WOOD

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 23 provides minimum requirements for the design of buildings and structures that use wood and wood-based products. The chapter is organized around three design methodologies: allowable stress design (ASD), load and resistance factor design (LRFD) and conventional light-frame construction. In addition it allows the use of the American Wood Council Wood Frame Construction Manual for a limited range of structures. Included in the chapter are references to design and manufacturing standards for various wood and wood-based products; general construction requirements; design criteria for lateral force-resisting systems and specific requirements for the application of the three design methods.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 2301 GENERAL

**2301.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of wood members and their fasteners.

**[HCD 1]** For limited-density owner-built rural dwellings, owner-produced or used materials and appliances may be utilized unless found not to be of sufficient strength or durability to perform the intended function; owner-produced or used lumber, or shakes and shingles may be utilized unless found to contain dry rot, excessive splitting or other defects obviously rendering the material unfit in strength or durability for the intended purpose.

**2301.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** The scope of application of Chapter 23 is as follows:

1. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect-Structural Safety, which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1 (DSA-SS) and 1.9.2.2 (DSA-SS/CC). These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.
2. Applications listed in Section 1.10, regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals, skilled nursing facilities, intermediate care facilities and correctional treatment centers.

**Exception:** For applications listed in Section 1.10.3 (Licensed Clinics), the provisions of this chapter without OSHPD amendments identified in accordance with Section 2301.1.2 shall apply.

**2301.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety:

[DSA-SS] - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

[DSA-SS/CC] - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

2. Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development:

[OSHPD 1] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

[OSHPD 1R] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

[OSHPD 2] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

[OSHPD 4] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

[OSHPD 5] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

#### 2301.1.3 Reference to other chapters.

**2301.1.3.1 [DSA-SS and OSHPD 1 & 4]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 16, 17, 18, 19, 21 and 22, the provisions in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A, respectively shall apply instead.

**2301.1.3.2 [DSA-SS/CC]** Where reference within this chapter is made to sections in Chapters 17 and 18, the provisions in Chapters 17A and 18A respectively shall apply instead.

**2301.1.4 Prohibition. [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** The following design methods, systems and materials are not permitted by DSA and OSHPD:

1. Straight-sheathed horizontal lumber diaphragms.
2. Gypsum-based sheathing shear walls and portland cement plaster shear walls.
3. Shear wall foundation anchor bolt washers in accordance with exception to AWC SDPWS Section 4.3.6.4.3.
4. Wood structural panel shear walls and diaphragms using staples as fasteners.
5. Unblocked shear walls.

**WOOD**

6. Any wood structural panel sheathing used for diaphragms and shear walls that are part of the seismic force-resisting system, not applied directly to framing members.
7. Single and double diagonally sheathed lumber walls used to resist seismic forces.
8. Log structures in accordance with ICC 400.
9. Cross-laminated timber used as part of the seismic force-resisting system, unless approved as an alternative system in accordance with Section 104.11.

**2301.2 Nominal sizes.** For the purposes of this chapter, where dimensions of lumber are specified, they shall be deemed to be nominal dimensions unless specifically designated as actual dimensions (see Section 2304.2).

## SECTION 2302 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

**2302.1 General.** The design of structural elements or systems, constructed partially or wholly of wood or wood-based products, shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

1. Allowable stress design in accordance with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2306.
2. Load and resistance factor design in accordance with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2307.
3. Conventional light-frame construction in accordance with Sections 2304 and 2308.
4. AWC WFCM in accordance with Section 2309.
5. The design and construction of log structures in accordance with the provisions of ICC 400.

## SECTION 2303 MINIMUM STANDARDS AND QUALITY

**2303.1 General.** Structural sawn lumber; end-jointed lumber; prefabricated wood I-joists; structural glued-laminated timber; wood structural panels; fiberboard sheathing (where used structurally); hardboard siding (where used structurally); particleboard; preservative-treated wood; structural log members; structural composite lumber; round timber poles and piles; fire-retardant-treated wood; hardwood plywood; wood trusses; joist hangers; nails; and staples shall conform to the applicable provisions of this section.

**2303.1.1 Sawn lumber.** Sawn lumber used for load-supporting purposes, including end-jointed or edge-glued lumber, machine stress-rated or machine-evaluated lumber, shall be identified by the grade mark of a lumber grading or inspection agency that has been approved by an accreditation body that complies with DOC PS 20 or equivalent. Grading practices and identification shall comply with rules published by an agency approved in accordance with the procedures of DOC PS 20 or equivalent procedures.

**2303.1.1 Certificate of inspection.** In lieu of a grade mark on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber grading or inspec-

tion agency meeting the requirements of this section is permitted to be accepted for precut, remanufactured or rough-sawn lumber and for sizes larger than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal thickness.

**2303.1.2 End-jointed lumber.** Approved end-jointed lumber is permitted to be used interchangeably with solid-sawn members of the same species and grade. End-jointed lumber used in an assembly required to have a fire-resistance rating shall have the designation "Heat Resistant Adhesive" or "HRA" included in its grade mark.

**2303.1.2 Prefabricated wood I-joists.** Structural capacities and design provisions for prefabricated wood I-joists shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5055.

**2303.1.3 Structural glued-laminated timber.** Glued-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified as required in ANSI/APA 190.1 and ASTM D3737.

**2303.1.3.1 Additional requirements.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] The construction documents shall indicate the following:

1. Dry or wet service conditions.
2. Laminating combinations and stress requirements.
3. Species group.
4. Preservative material and retention, when preservative treatment is required.
5. Provisions for protection during shipping and field handling, such as sealing and wrapping in accordance with AITC 111.

*When mechanical reinforcement such as radial tension reinforcement is required, such reinforcement shall comply with AITC 404 and shall be detailed accordingly in the construction documents. Construction documents shall specify that the moisture content of laminations at the time of manufacture shall not exceed 12 percent for dry conditions of use.*

*The design of fasteners and connections shall comply with AITC 117, Section 1, Item 6 (Connection Design), and NDS Appendix E.*

**2303.1.4 Structural glued cross-laminated timber.** Cross-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified in accordance with ANSI/APA PRG 320.

**2303.1.4.1 Additional requirements.** [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Requirements in Section 2303.1.3.1 shall apply to glued cross-laminated timber.

**2303.1.5 Wood structural panels.** Wood structural panels, where used structurally (including those used for siding, roof and wall sheathing, subflooring, diaphragms and built-up members), shall conform to the requirements for their type in DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210. Each panel or member shall be identified for grade, bond classification, and Performance Category by the trademarks of an approved testing and grading agency. The Performance Category value shall be used as the "nominal panel thickness" or "panel thickness" whenever

referenced in this code. Wood structural panel components shall be designed and fabricated in accordance with the applicable standards listed in Section 2306.1 and identified by the trademarks of an approved testing and inspection agency indicating conformance to the applicable standard. In addition, wood structural panels where permanently exposed in outdoor applications shall be of exterior type, except that wood structural panel roof sheathing exposed to the outdoors on the underside is permitted to be Exposure 1 type.

**2303.1.6 Fiberboard.** Fiberboard for its various uses shall conform to ASTM C208. Fiberboard sheathing, where used structurally, shall be identified by an approved agency as conforming to ASTM C208.

**2303.1.6.1 Jointing.** To ensure tight-fitting assemblies, edges shall be manufactured with square, shiplapped, beveled, tongue-and-groove or U-shaped joints.

**2303.1.6.2 Roof insulation.** Where used as roof insulation in all types of construction, fiberboard shall be protected with an approved roof covering.

**2303.1.6.3 Wall insulation.** Where installed and fire-blocked to comply with Chapter 7, fiberboards are permitted as wall insulation in all types of construction. In fire walls and fire barriers, unless treated to comply with Section 803.1 for Class A materials, the boards shall be cemented directly to the concrete, masonry or other noncombustible base and shall be protected with an approved noncombustible veneer anchored to the base without intervening airspaces.

**2303.1.6.3.1 Protection.** Fiberboard wall insulation applied on the exterior of foundation walls shall be protected below ground level with a bituminous coating.

**2303.1.7 Hardboard.** Hardboard siding shall conform to the requirements of ANSI A135.6 and, where used structurally, shall be identified by the label of an approved agency. Hardboard underlayment shall meet the strength requirements of  $\frac{7}{32}$ -inch (5.6 mm) or  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) service class hardboard planed or sanded on one side to a uniform thickness of not less than 0.200 inch (5.1 mm). Prefinished hardboard paneling shall meet the requirements of ANSI A135.5. Other basic hardboard products shall meet the requirements of ANSI A135.4. Hardboard products shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

**2303.1.8 Particleboard.** Particleboard shall conform to ANSI A208.1. Particleboard shall be identified by the grade mark or certificate of inspection issued by an approved agency. Particleboard shall not be utilized for applications other than indicated in this section unless the particleboard complies with the provisions of Section 2306.3.

**2303.1.8.1 Floor underlayment.** Particleboard floor underlayment shall conform to Type PBU of ANSI A208.1. Type PBU underlayment shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) thick and shall be installed in accordance with the instructions of the Composite Panel Association.

**2303.1.9 Preservative-treated wood.** Lumber, timber, plywood, piles and poles supporting permanent structures required by Section 2304.12 to be preservative treated shall conform to AWPA U1 and M4. Lumber and plywood used in permanent wood foundation systems shall conform to Chapter 18.

**2303.1.9.1 Identification.** Wood required by Section 2304.12 to be preservative treated shall bear the quality mark of an inspection agency that maintains continuing supervision, testing and inspection over the quality of the preservative-treated wood. Inspection agencies for preservative-treated wood shall be listed by an accreditation body that complies with the requirements of the American Lumber Standards Treated Wood Program, or equivalent. The quality mark shall be on a stamp or label affixed to the preservative-treated wood, and shall include the following information:

1. Identification of treating manufacturer.
2. Type of preservative used.
3. Minimum preservative retention (pcf).
4. End use for which the product is treated.
5. AWPA standard to which the product was treated.
6. Identity of the accredited inspection agency.

**2303.1.9.2 Moisture content.** Where preservative-treated wood is used in enclosed locations where drying in service cannot readily occur, such wood shall be at a moisture content of 19 percent or less before being covered with insulation, interior wall finish, floor covering or other materials.

**2303.1.10 Structural composite lumber.** Structural capacities for structural composite lumber shall be established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5456.

**2303.1.11 Structural log members.** Stress grading of structural log members of nonrectangular shape, as typically used in log buildings, shall be in accordance with ASTM D3957. Such structural log members shall be identified by the grade mark of an approved lumber grading or inspection agency. In lieu of a grade mark on the material, a certificate of inspection as to species and grade issued by a lumber grading or inspection agency meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted.

**2303.1.12 Round timber poles and piles.** Round timber poles and piles shall comply with ASTM D3200 and ASTM D25, respectively.

**2303.1.13 Engineered wood rim board.** Engineered wood rim boards shall conform to ANSI/APA PRR 410 or shall be evaluated in accordance with ASTM D7672. Structural capacities shall be in accordance with ANSI/APA PRR 410 or established in accordance with ASTM D7672. Rim boards conforming to ANSI/APA PRR 410 shall be marked in accordance with that standard.

**2303.2 Fire-retardant-treated wood.** Fire-retardant-treated wood is any wood product that, when impregnated with

**WOOD**

chemicals by a pressure process or other means during manufacture, shall have, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, a listed flame spread index of 25 or less. Additionally, the ASTM E84 or UL 723 test shall be continued for a 20-minute period and the flame front shall not progress more than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  feet (3200 mm) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

**2303.2.1 Pressure process.** For wood products impregnated with chemicals by a pressure process, the process shall be performed in closed vessels under pressures not less than 50 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (345 kPa).

**2303.2.2 Other means during manufacture.** For wood products impregnated with chemicals by other means during manufacture, the treatment shall be an integral part of the manufacturing process of the wood product. The treatment shall provide permanent protection to all surfaces of the wood product. The use of paints, coating, stains or other surface treatments is not an approved method of protection as required in this section.

**2303.2.3 Fire testing of wood structural panels.** Wood structural panels shall be tested with a ripped or cut longitudinal gap of  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).

**2303.2.4 Labeling.** In addition to the labels required in Section 2303.1.1 for sawn lumber and Section 2303.1.5 for wood structural panels, each piece of fire-retardant-treated lumber and wood structural panels shall be labeled. The label shall contain the following items:

1. The identification mark of an approved agency in accordance with Section 1703.5.
2. Identification of the treating manufacturer.
3. The name of the fire-retardant treatment.
4. The species of wood treated.
5. Flame spread and smoke-developed index.
6. Method of drying after treatment.
7. Conformance with appropriate standards in accordance with Sections 2303.2.5 through 2303.2.8.
8. For fire-retardant-treated wood exposed to weather, damp or wet locations, include the words "No increase in the listed classification when subjected to the Standard Rain Test" (ASTM D2898).

**2303.2.5 Strength adjustments.** Design values for untreated lumber and wood structural panels, as specified in Section 2303.1, shall be adjusted for fire-retardant-treated wood. Adjustments to design values shall be based on an approved method of investigation that takes into consideration the effects of the anticipated temperature and humidity to which the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and redrying procedures.

**2303.2.5.1 Wood structural panels.** The effect of treatment and the method of redrying after treatment, and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the flexure properties of fire-retardant-treated softwood plywood shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5516. The test data developed by ASTM

D5516 shall be used to develop adjustment factors, maximum loads and spans, or both, for untreated plywood design values in accordance with ASTM D6305. Each manufacturer shall publish the allowable maximum loads and spans for service as floor and roof sheathing for its treatment.

**2303.2.5.2 Lumber.** For each species of wood that is treated, the effects of the treatment, the method of redrying after treatment and exposure to high temperatures and high humidities on the allowable design properties of fire-retardant-treated lumber shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D5664. The test data developed by ASTM D5664 shall be used to develop modification factors for use at or near room temperature and at elevated temperatures and humidity in accordance with ASTM D6841. Each manufacturer shall publish the modification factors for service at temperatures of not less than 80°F (27°C) and for roof framing. The roof framing modification factors shall take into consideration the climatological location.

**2303.2.6 Exposure to weather, damp or wet locations.** Where fire-retardant-treated wood is exposed to weather, or damp or wet locations, it shall be identified as "Exterior" to indicate there is no increase in the listed flame spread index as defined in Section 2303.2 when subjected to ASTM D2898.

**2303.2.7 Interior applications.** Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall have moisture content of not over 28 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201 procedures at 92-percent relative humidity. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood shall be tested in accordance with Section 2303.2.5.1 or 2303.2.5.2. Interior fire-retardant-treated wood designated as Type A shall be tested in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**2303.2.8 Moisture content.** Fire-retardant-treated wood shall be dried to a moisture content of 19 percent or less for lumber and 15 percent or less for wood structural panels before use. For wood kiln-dried after treatment (KDAT), the kiln temperatures shall not exceed those used in kiln drying the lumber and plywood submitted for the tests described in Section 2303.2.5.1 for plywood and 2303.2.5.2 for lumber.

**2303.2.9 Types I and II construction applications.** See Section 603.1 for limitations on the use of fire-retardant-treated wood in buildings of Type I or II construction.

**2303.3 Hardwood and plywood.** Hardwood and decorative plywood shall be manufactured and identified as required in HPVA HP-1.

**2303.4 Trusses.** Wood trusses shall comply with Sections 2303.4.1 through 2303.4.7.

**2303.4.1 Design.** Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of this code and accepted engineering practice. Members are permitted to be joined by nails, glue, bolts, timber connectors, metal connector plates or other approved framing devices.

**2303.4.1.1 Truss design drawings.** The written, graphic and pictorial depiction of each individual truss

shall be provided to the building official for approval prior to installation. Truss design drawings shall be provided with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss design drawings shall include, at a minimum, the following information:

1. Slope or depth, span and spacing.
2. Location of all joints and support locations.
3. Number of plies if greater than one.
4. Required bearing widths.
5. Design loads as applicable, including:
  - 5.1. Top chord live load.
  - 5.2. Top chord dead load.
  - 5.3. Bottom chord live load.
  - 5.4. Bottom chord dead load.
  - 5.5. Additional loads and locations.
  - 5.6. Environmental design criteria and loads (such as wind, rain, snow, seismic).
6. Other lateral loads, including drag strut loads.
7. Adjustments to wood member and metal connector plate design value for conditions of use.
8. Maximum reaction force and direction, including maximum uplift reaction forces where applicable.
9. Joint connection type and description, such as size and thickness or gage, and the dimensioned location of each joint connector except where symmetrically located relative to the joint interface.
10. Size, species and grade for each wood member.
11. Truss-to-truss connections and truss field assembly requirements.
12. Calculated span-to-deflection ratio and maximum vertical and horizontal deflection for live and total load as applicable.
13. Maximum axial tension and compression forces in the truss members.
14. Required permanent individual truss member restraint location and the method and details of restraint and diagonal bracing to be used in accordance with Section 2303.4.1.2.

**2303.4.1.2 Permanent individual truss member restraint (PITMR) and permanent individual truss member diagonal bracing (PITMDB).** Where the truss design drawings designate the need for permanent individual truss member restraint, it shall be accomplished by one of the following methods:

1. *PITMR* and *PITMDB* installed using standard industry lateral restraint and diagonal bracing details in accordance with TPI 1, Section 2.3.3.1.1, accepted engineering practice, or Figures 2303.4.1.2(1), (3), and (5).
2. Individual truss member reinforcement in place of the specified lateral restraints (i.e., buckling

reinforcement such as T-reinforcement, L-reinforcement, proprietary reinforcement, etc.) such that the buckling of any individual truss member is resisted internally by the individual truss. The buckling reinforcement of individual truss members shall be installed as shown on the truss design drawing, on supplemental truss member buckling reinforcement details provided by the truss designer or in accordance with Figures 2303.4.1.2 (2) and (4).

3. A project-specific *PITMR* and *PITMDB* design provided by any registered design professional.

**2303.4.1.2.1 Trusses installed without a diaphragm.** Trusses installed without a diaphragm on the top or bottom chord shall require a project specific *PITMR* and *PITMDB* design prepared by a registered design professional.

**Exception:** Group U occupancies.

**2303.4.1.3 Trusses spanning 60 feet or greater.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall contract with any qualified registered design professional for the design of the temporary installation restraint and diagonal bracing and the *PITMR* and *PITMDB* for all trusses with clear spans 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater.

**2303.4.1.4 Truss designer.** The individual or organization responsible for the design of trusses.

**2303.4.1.4.1 Truss design drawings.** Where required by the registered design professional, the building official or the statutes of the jurisdiction in which the project is to be constructed, each individual truss design drawing shall bear the seal and signature of the truss designer.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where a cover sheet and truss index sheet are combined into a single sheet and attached to the set of truss design drawings, the single cover/truss index sheet is the only document required to be signed and sealed by the truss designer.
2. Where a cover sheet and a truss index sheet are separately provided and attached to the set of truss design drawings, the cover sheet and the truss index sheet are the only documents required to be signed and sealed by the truss designer.
3. *[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]* Exceptions 1 and 2 are not permitted by DSA and OSHPD.

**2303.4.2 Truss placement diagram.** The truss manufacturer shall provide a truss placement diagram that identifies the proposed location for each individually designated truss and references the corresponding truss design drawing. The truss placement diagram shall be provided as part of the truss submittal package, and with the shipment of trusses delivered to the job site. Truss placement diagrams that serve only as a guide for installation and do not deviate

**WOOD**

from the *permit* submittal drawings shall not be required to bear the seal or signature of the truss designer.

**2303.4.3 Truss submittal package.** The truss submittal package provided by the truss manufacturer shall consist of each individual truss design drawing, the truss placement diagram, the permanent *individual truss member restraint/bracing* method and details and any other structural details germane to the trusses; and, as applicable, the cover/truss index sheet.

**2303.4.3.1 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** In addition to Sections 2303.4.1 and 2303.4.2, the following requirements apply:

**1. Construction documents.** The construction documents prepared by the registered engineer or licensed architect for the project shall indicate all requirements for the truss design, including:

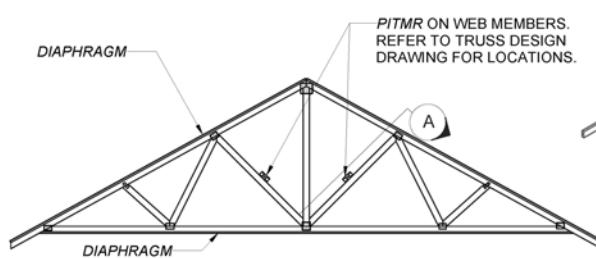
1.1 Deflection criteria.

1.2 Connection details to structural and non-structural elements (e.g. non-bearing partitions).

**2. Requirements for approval.** The truss design drawings and engineering analysis shall be provided to the enforcement agency and approved prior to truss fabrication, in accordance with the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1). Alterations to the approved truss design drawings or manufactured trusses are subject to the approval of the enforcement agency.

**2303.4.4 Anchorage.** The design for the transfer of loads and anchorage of each truss to the supporting structure is the responsibility of the registered design professional.

**2303.4.5 Alterations to trusses.** Truss members and components shall not be cut, notched, drilled, spliced or otherwise altered in any way without written concurrence and approval of a registered design professional. Alterations resulting in the addition of loads to any member (for example, HVAC equipment, piping, additional roofing or insulation) shall not be permitted without verification that the truss is capable of supporting such additional loading.

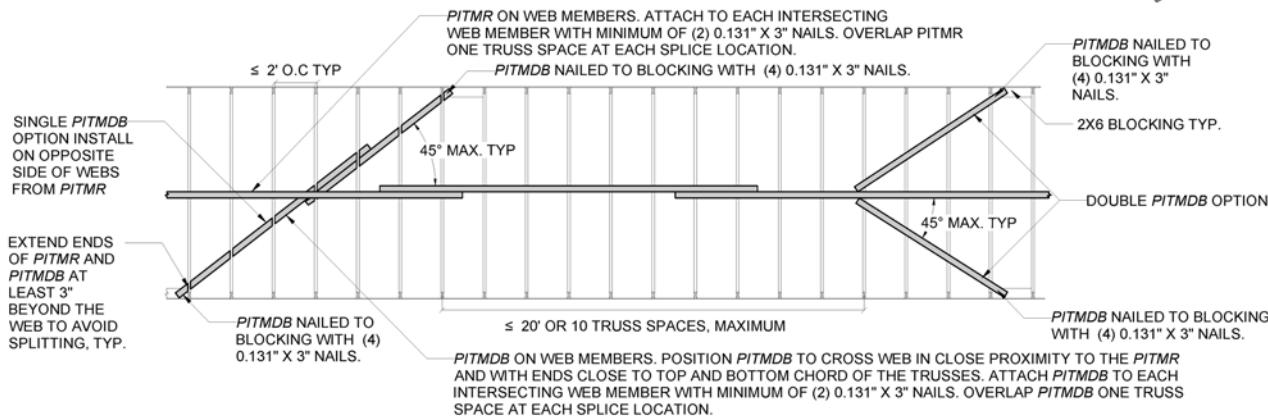
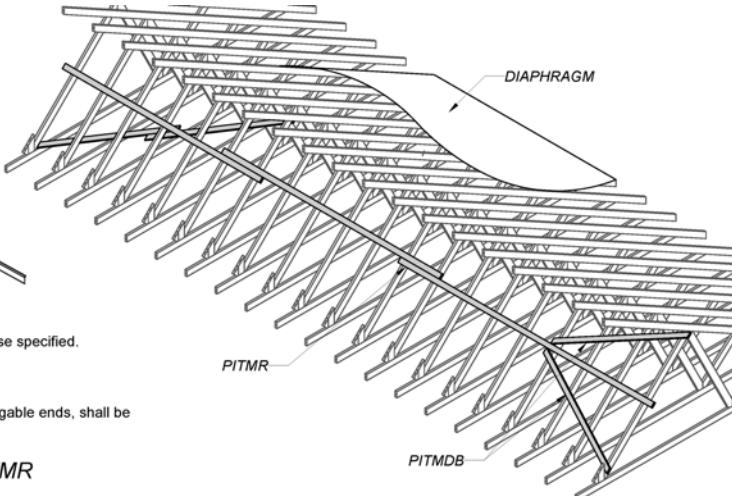


a.) Use minimum 2x4 stress - graded lumber for *PITMR* and *PITMDB* unless otherwise specified.

b.) Truss top chord and bottom chord members shall be restrained and braced.

c.) Bracing to resist forces applied perpendicular to the truss, such as wind bracing at gable ends, shall be specified by the building designer.

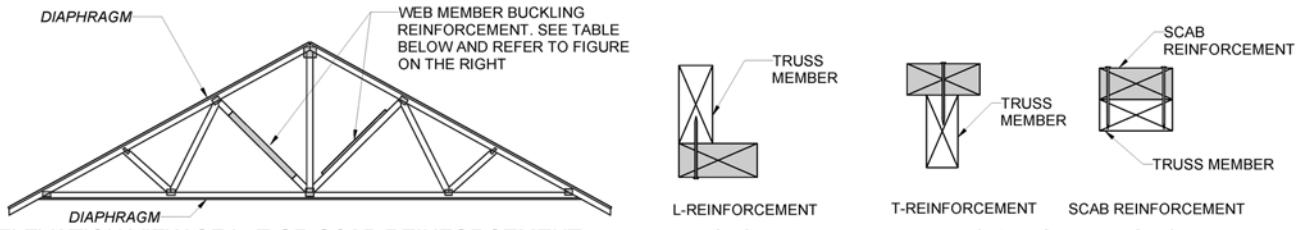
#### ELEVATION VIEW OF TRUSS WITH SINGLE ROW, *PITMR*



#### A SECTION (EXAMPLE OF SINGLE ROW OF *PITMR* WITH *PITMDB* ON WEB MEMBERS)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2303.4.1.2 (1)**  
**PITMR AND PITMDB FOR TRUSS WEB MEMBERS REQUIRING ONE ROW OF PITMR**



#### ELEVATION VIEW OF L, T OR SCAB REINFORCEMENT

- a.) Truss top chord and bottom chord members shall be restrained and braced.
- b.) Bracing to resist forces applied perpendicular to the truss, such as wind bracing at gable ends, shall be specified by the building designer.
- c.) Use the table below unless project specific web member reinforcement is provided on the truss design drawing or supplemental truss buckling reinforcement details are provided by the truss designer.

NUMBER OF ROWS OF PITMR SPECIFIED ON WEB MEMBER	SIZE OF TRUSS WEB	TYPE AND SIZE OF WEB REINFORCEMENT <sup>1</sup> FOR T, L OR SCAB <sup>2</sup>	GRADE OF WEB REINFORCEMENT	MINIMUM LENGTH OF WEB REINFORCEMENT	MINIMUM CONNECTION OF WEB REINFORCEMENT TO WEB
ONE	2x4	2x4	Same species and grade or better than web member	90% of web or extend to within 6" of end of web member, whichever is greater	(0.131" x 3") nails at 6" on-center <sup>2</sup>
	2x6	2x6			
	2x8	2x8			

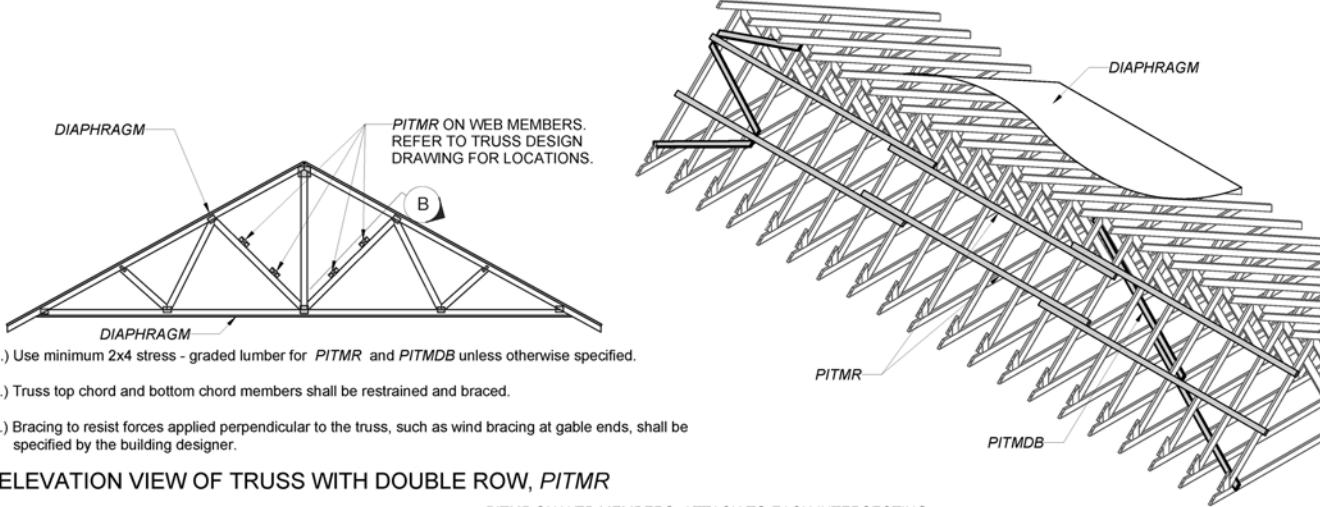
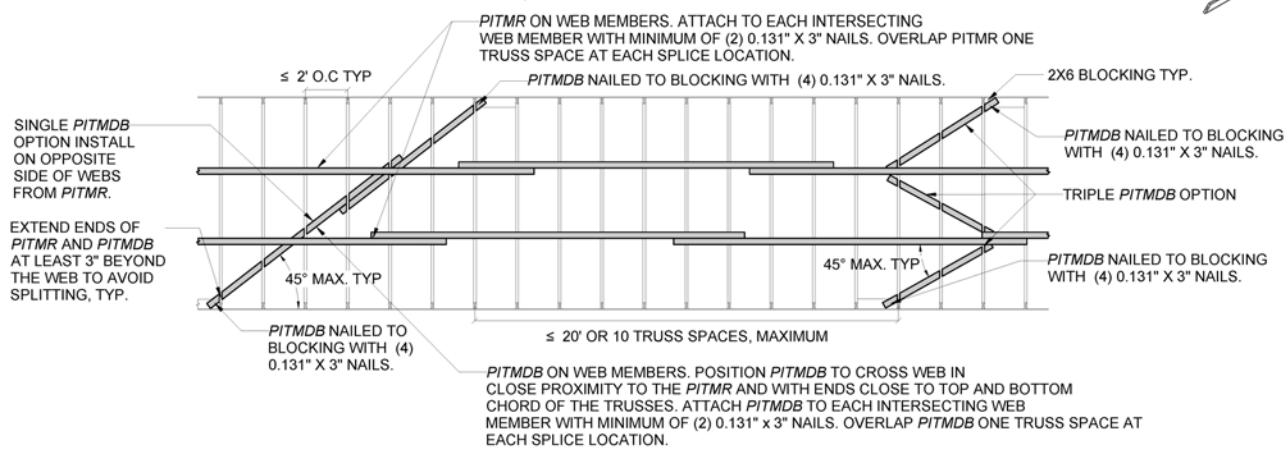
<sup>1</sup>Maximum allowable web length is 14"

<sup>2</sup>Attach Scab reinforcement to web with two rows of minimum 0.131" x 3" nails at 6" on-center

For SI: 1 inch - 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

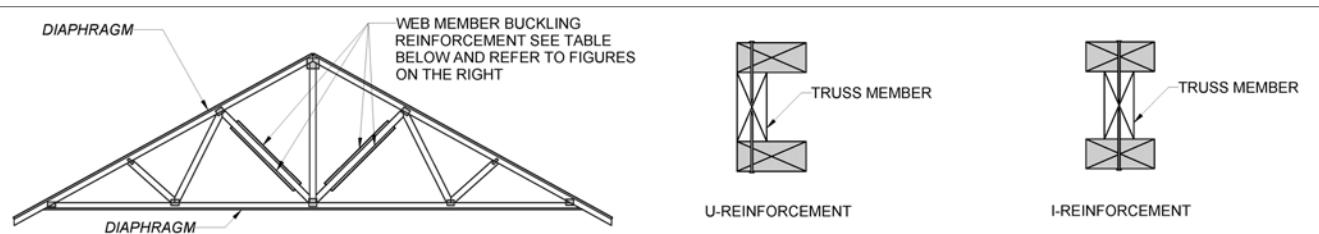
**FIGURE 2303.4.1.2(2)**  
**ALTERNATIVE INSTALLATION USING BUCKLING REINFORCEMENT FOR TRUSS WEB MEMBERS IN LIEU OF ONE ROW OF PITMR**

## WOOD

ELEVATION VIEW OF TRUSS WITH DOUBLE ROW, *PITMR*B SECTION (EXAMPLE OF DOUBLE ROW OF *PITMR* WITH *PITMDB* ON WEB MEMBERS)

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2303.4.1.2(3)**  
**PITMR AND PITMDB FOR TRUSS WEB MEMBERS REQUIRING TWO ROWS OF PITMR**

**ELEVATION VIEW OF I OR U REINFORCEMENT**

a.) Truss top chord and bottom chord members shall be restrained and braced.

b.) Bracing to resist forces applied perpendicular to the truss, such as wind bracing at gable ends, shall be specified by the building designer.

c.) Use the table below unless project specific web member reinforcement is provided on the truss design drawing or supplemental truss buckling reinforcement details are provided by the truss designer.

NUMBER OF ROWS OF PITMR SPECIFIED ON WEB MEMBER	SIZE OF TRUSS WEB	TYPE AND SIZE OF WEB FOR I OR U REINFORCEMENT <sup>1</sup>	GRADE OF WEB REINFORCEMENT	MINIMUM LENGTH OF WEB REINFORCEMENT	MINIMUM CONNECTION OF WEB REINFORCEMENT TO WEB
TWO	2x4	(2)-2x4	Same species and grade or better than web member	90% of web or extend to within 6" of end of web member, whichever is greater	(0.131" x 3") nails at 6" on-center
	2x6	(2)-2x6			
	2x8	(2)-2x8			

<sup>1</sup>Maximum allowable web length is 14'

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2303.4.1.2(4)**

**ALTERNATIVE INSTALLATION USING BUCKLING REINFORCEMENT FOR TRUSS WEB MEMBERS IN LIEU OF TWO ROWS OF PITMR**

**WOOD**

*PITMR* INSTALLED ON TOP CHORD OF SUPPORTING TRUSSES. REFER TO TRUSS DESIGN DRAWINGS FOR SPACING AND LOCATION. ATTACH TO EACH TOP CHORD WITH MINIMUM (2) 0.131" X 3" NAILS. LAP *PITMR* AT LEAST ONE TRUSS SPACE AT EACH SPLICING LOCATION.

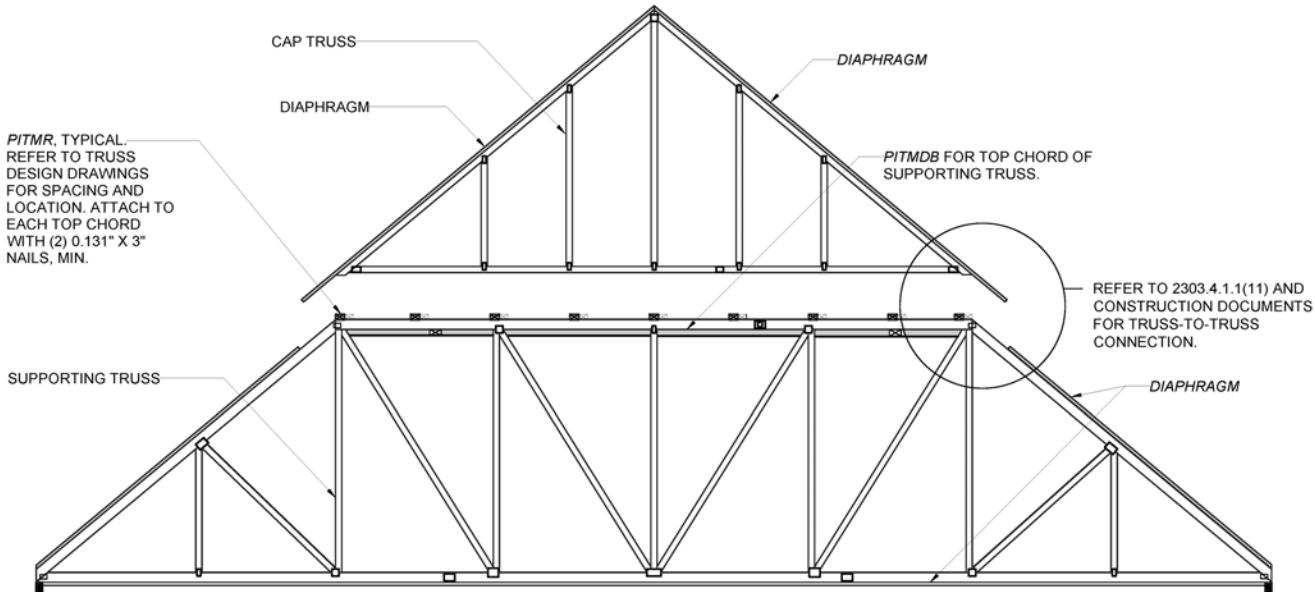
*PITMDB* INSTALLED ON BOTTOM EDGE OF TOP CHORD OF THE SUPPORTING TRUSSES. ATTACH TO EACH TOP CHORD WITH MINIMUM (2) 0.131" X 3" NAILS. REPEAT *PITMDB* AT  $\leq 10'$  OR 5 TRUSS SPACES MAXIMUM.

EXTEND ENDS OF *PITMR* AND *PITMDB* AT LEAST 3" BEYOND THE TOP CHORD TO AVOID SPLITTING, TYP.

$\leq 10'$  OR 5 TRUSS SPACES, MAXIMUM

DIAPHRAGM

LAP *PITMDB* AT LEAST ONE TRUSS SPACE AT EACH SPLICE LOCATION.

**PLAN VIEW**

- a.) Use minimum 2x4 stress - graded lumber for *PITMR* and *PITMDB* unless otherwise specified.
- b.) Web *PITMR* and *PITMDB* not shown for clarity.
- c.) Truss top chord and bottom chord members shall be restrained and braced.
- d.) Bracing to resist forces applied perpendicular to the truss, such as wind bracing at gable ends, shall be specified by the building designer.

**SECTION AT A**

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2303.4.1.2(5)**  
**PITMR AND PITMDB FOR FLAT PORTION OF TOP CHORD IN A PIGGYBACK ASSEMBLY**

**2303.4.6 TPI 1 specifications.** In addition to Sections 2303.4.1 through 2303.4.5, the design, manufacture and quality assurance of metal-plate-connected wood trusses shall be in accordance with TPI 1. Job-site inspections shall be in compliance with Section 110.4, as applicable.

**2303.4.7 Truss quality assurance.** Trusses not part of a manufacturing process in accordance with either Section 2303.4.6 or a referenced standard, which provides requirements for quality control done under the supervision of a third-party quality control agency, shall be manufactured in compliance with Sections 1704.2.5 and 1705.5, as applicable.

**2303.5 Test standard for joist hangers.** Joist hangers shall be in accordance with ASTM D7147.

**2303.6 Nails and staples.** Nails and staples shall conform to requirements of ASTM F1667, including Supplement 1. Nails used for framing and sheathing connections shall have minimum average bending yield strengths as follows: 80 kips per square inch (ksi) (551 MPa) for shank diameters larger than 0.177 inch (4.50 mm) but not larger than 0.254 inch (6.45 mm), 90 ksi (620 MPa) for shank diameters larger than 0.142 inch (3.61 mm) but not larger than 0.177 inch (4.50 mm) and 100 ksi (689 MPa) for shank diameters of not less than 0.099 inch (2.51 mm) but not larger than 0.142 inch (3.61 mm). Staples used for framing and sheathing connections shall have minimum average bending moments as follows: 3.6 in.-lbs (0.41 N·m) for No. 16 gage staples, 4.0 in.-lbs (0.45 N·m) for No. 15 gage staples, and 4.3 in.-lbs (0.49 N·m) for No. 14 gage staples.

**2303.7 Shrinkage.** Consideration shall be given in design for the effects of wood cross-grain dimensional changes that occur as a result of changes in the wood moisture content after installation.

## SECTION 2304 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

**2304.1 General.** The provisions of this section apply to design methods specified in Section 2302.1.

**2304.2 Size of structural members.** Computations to determine the required sizes of members shall be based on the net dimensions (actual sizes) and not nominal sizes.

**2304.3 Wall framing.** The framing of exterior and interior walls shall be in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 2308 unless a specific design is furnished.

**2304.3.1 Bottom plates.** Studs shall have full bearing on a 2-inch-thick (actual 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch, 38 mm) or larger plate or sill having a width not less than equal to the width of the studs.

**2304.3.1.1 [HCD 1] Rodent proofing.** Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in bottom/sole plates at exterior walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such openings in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.4.

**2304.3.2 Framing over openings.** Headers, double joists, trusses or other approved assemblies that are of adequate size to transfer loads to the vertical members shall be provided over window and door openings in load-bearing walls and partitions.

**2304.3.3 Shrinkage.** Wood walls and bearing partitions shall not support more than two floors and a roof unless an analysis satisfactory to the building official shows that shrinkage of the wood framing will not have adverse effects on the structure or any plumbing, electrical or mechanical systems or other equipment installed therein due to excessive shrinkage or differential movements caused by shrinkage. The analysis shall show that the roof drainage system and the foregoing systems or equipment will not be adversely affected or, as an alternate, such systems shall be designed to accommodate the differential shrinkage or movements.

**2304.3.4 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** The following additional requirements apply:

1. Engineering analysis shall be furnished that demonstrates compliance of wall framing elements and connections with Section 2302.1, Item 1 or 2.
2. Construction documents shall include detailing of sill plate anchorage to supporting masonry or concrete for all exterior and interior bearing, nonbearing and shear walls. Unless specifically designed in accordance with Item 1 above, sills under exterior walls, bearing walls and shear walls shall be bolted to masonry or concrete with  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch diameter by 12-inch (16 mm by 305 mm) bolts spaced not more than four (4) feet (1219 mm) on center, with a minimum of two (2) bolts for each piece of sill plate. Anchor bolts shall have a 4 inch minimum and a 12-inch maximum clearance to the end of the sill plate, and 7-inch minimum embedment into concrete or masonry.

Unless specifically designed in accordance with Item 1 above, sill plates under nonbearing interior partitions on concrete floor slabs shall be anchored at not more than four (4) feet (1219 mm) on center to resist a minimum allowable stress shear of 100 pounds per linear foot (1.4 kN/m) acting either parallel or perpendicular to the wall.

3. Construction documents shall include detailing and limitations for notches and bored holes in wall studs, plates and sills.

**2304.4 Floor and roof framing.** The framing of wood-joisted floors and wood-framed roofs shall be in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 2308 unless a specific design is furnished.

**2304.4.1 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** The following additional requirements apply:

1. Engineering analysis shall be furnished that demonstrates compliance of floor, roof and ceiling framing elements and connections with Section 2302.1, Items 1 or 2.

2. Construction documents shall include detailing and limitations for notches and bored holes in floor and roof framing members.

**2304.5 Framing around flues and chimneys.** Combustible framing shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm), but shall be not less than the distance specified in Sections 2111 and 2113 and the *California Mechanical Code*, from flues, chimneys and fireplaces, and 6 inches (152 mm) away from flue openings.

**2304.6 Exterior wall sheathing.** Wall sheathing on the outside of exterior walls, including gables, and the connection of the sheathing to framing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and shall be capable of resisting wind pressures in accordance with Section 1609.

**2304.6.1 Wood structural panel sheathing.** Where wood structural panel sheathing is used as the exposed finish on the outside of exterior walls, it shall have an exterior exposure durability classification. Where wood structural panel sheathing is used elsewhere, but not as the exposed finish, it shall be of a type manufactured with exterior glue (Exposure 1 or Exterior). Wood structural panel sheathing, connections and framing spacing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.6.1 for the applicable wind speed and exposure category where used in enclosed buildings with a mean roof height not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm) and a topographic factor ( $K_z$ ) of 1.0.

**2304.7 Interior paneling.** Softwood wood structural panels used for interior paneling shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 8 and shall be installed in accordance with Table 2304.10.2. Panels shall comply with DOC PS 1, DOC PS 2 or ANSI/APA PRP 210. Prefinished hardboard paneling shall meet the requirements of ANSI A135.5. Hardwood plywood shall conform to HPVA HP-1.

**2304.8 Floor and roof sheathing.** Structural floor sheathing and structural roof sheathing shall comply with Sections 2304.8.1 and 2304.8.2, respectively.

**2304.8.1 Structural floor sheathing.** Structural floor sheathing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code.

Floor sheathing conforming to the provisions of Table 2304.8(1), 2304.8(2), 2304.8(3) or 2304.8(4) shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this section.

**2304.8.2 Structural roof sheathing.** Structural roof sheathing shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and the special provisions in this section.

Roof sheathing conforming to the provisions of Table 2304.8(1), 2304.8(2), 2304.8(3) or 2304.8(5) shall be deemed to meet the requirements of this section. Wood structural panel roof sheathing shall be of a type manufactured with exterior glue (Exposure 1 or Exterior).

**2304.9 Lumber decking.** Lumber decking shall be designed and installed in accordance with the general provisions of this code and Sections 2304.9.1 through 2304.9.5.3. Other lumber decking patterns and connection designs shall be substantiated through engineering analysis.

**2304.9.1 General.** Each piece of lumber decking shall be square-end trimmed. Where random lengths are furnished, each piece shall be square end trimmed across the face so that not less than 90 percent of the pieces are within 0.5 degrees (0.00873 rad) of square. The ends of the pieces shall be permitted to be beveled up to 2 degrees (0.0349 rad) from the vertical with the exposed face of the piece slightly longer than the opposite face of the piece. Tongue-and-groove decking shall be installed with the tongues up on sloped or pitched roofs with pattern faces down.

**TABLE 2304.6.1**  
**MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN WIND SPEED,  $V_{asd}$ , PERMITTED FOR**  
**WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING USED TO RESIST WIND PRESSURES<sup>a, b, c</sup>**

MINIMUM NAIL		MINIMUM WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SPAN RATING	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inches)	MAXIMUM WALL STUD SPACING (inches)	PANEL NAIL SPACING		MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V_{asd}$ (MPH) <sup>d</sup>		
Size	Penetration (inches)				Edges (inches o.c.)	Field (inches o.c.)	B	C	D
6d common (2.0" × 0.113")	1.5	24/0	3/8	16	6	12	110	90	85
		24/16	7/16	16	6	12	110	100	90
	1.75	24/16	7/16	16		6	150	125	110
				6	12	130	110	105	
					24		6	150	125
				6	12	110	90	85	
					6	110	90	85	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

- a. Panel strength axis shall be parallel or perpendicular to supports. Three-ply plywood sheathing with studs spaced more than 16 inches on center shall be applied with panel strength axis perpendicular to supports.
- b. The table is based on wind pressures acting toward and away from building surfaces in accordance with Section 30.7 of ASCE 7. Lateral requirements shall be in accordance with Section 2305 or 2308.
- c. Wood structural panels with span ratings of wall-16 or wall-24 shall be permitted as an alternative to panels with a 24/0 span rating. Plywood siding rated 16 on center or 24 on center shall be permitted as an alternative to panels with a 24/16 span rating. Wall-16 and plywood siding 16 on center shall be used with studs spaced not more than 16 inches on center.
- d.  $V_{asd}$  shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2304.8(1)**  
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR LUMBER FLOOR AND ROOF SHEATHING**

SPAN (inches)	MINIMUM NET THICKNESS (inches) OF LUMBER PLACED			
	Perpendicular to supports		Diagonally to supports	
	Surfaced dry <sup>a</sup>	Surfaced unseasoned	Surfaced dry <sup>a</sup>	Surfaced unseasoned
<b>Floors</b>				
24	3/4	25/32	3/4	25/32
16	5/8	11/16	5/8	11/16
<b>Roofs</b>				
24	5/8	11/16	3/4	25/32

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Maximum 19-percent moisture content.

**TABLE 2304.8(2)**  
**SHEATHING LUMBER, MINIMUM GRADE REQUIREMENTS: BOARD GRADE**

SOLID FLOOR OR ROOF SHEATHING	SPACED ROOF SHEATHING	GRADING RULES
Utility	Standard	NLGA, WCLIB, WWPA
4 common or utility	3 common or standard	NLGA, WCLIB, WWPA, NSLB or NELMA
No. 3	No. 2	SPIB
Merchantable	Construction common	RIS

**TABLE 2304.8(3)**  
**ALLOWABLE SPANS AND LOADS FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEATHING AND SINGLE-FLOOR GRADES CONTINUOUS OVER TWO OR MORE SPANS WITH STRENGTH AXIS PERPENDICULAR TO SUPPORTS<sup>a</sup>**

SHEATHING GRADES		ROOF <sup>b</sup>				FLOOR <sup>c</sup>
Panel span rating roof/floor span	Panel thickness (inches)	Maximum span (inches)		Load <sup>d</sup> (psf)		Maximum span (inches)
		With edge support <sup>e</sup>	Without edge support	Total load	Live load	
16/0	3/8	16	16	40	30	0
20/0	3/8	20	20	40	30	0
24/0	3/8, 7/16, 1/2	24	20 <sup>f</sup>	40	30	0
24/16	7/16, 1/2	24	24	50	40	16
32/16	15/32, 1/2, 5/8	32	28	40	30	16 <sup>g</sup>
40/20	19/32, 5/8, 3/4, 7/8	40	32	40	30	20 <sup>g,h</sup>
48/24	23/32, 3/4, 7/8	48	36	45	35	24
54/32	7/8, 1	54	40	45	35	32
60/32	7/8, 1 1/8	60	48	45	35	32
SINGLE FLOOR GRADES		ROOF <sup>b</sup>				FLOOR <sup>c</sup>
Panel span rating	Panel thickness (inches)	Maximum span (inches)		Load <sup>d</sup> (psf)		Maximum span (inches)
		With edge support <sup>e</sup>	Without edge support	Total load	Live load	
16 o.c.	1/2, 19/32, 5/8	24	24	50	40	16 <sup>g</sup>
20 o.c.	19/32, 5/8, 3/4	32	32	40	30	20 <sup>g,h</sup>
24 o.c.	23/32, 3/4	48	36	35	25	24
32 o.c.	7/8, 1	48	40	50	40	32
48 o.c.	1 3/32, 1 1/8	60	48	50	40	48

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>.

- a. Applies to panels 24 inches or wider.
- b. Uniform load deflection limitations  $1/_{180}$  of span under live load plus dead load,  $1/_{240}$  under live load only.
- c. Panel edges shall have approved tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking unless  $1/4$ -inch minimum thickness underlayment or  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches of approved cellular or lightweight concrete is placed over the subfloor, or finish floor is  $3/4$ -inch wood strip. Allowable uniform load based on deflection of  $1/_{360}$  of span is 100 pounds per square foot except the span rating of 48 inches on center is based on a total load of 65 pounds per square foot.
- d. Allowable load at maximum span.
- e. Tongue-and-groove edges, panel edge clips (one midway between each support, except two equally spaced between supports 48 inches on center), lumber blocking or other. Only lumber blocking shall satisfy blocked diaphragm requirements.
- f. For  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch panel, maximum span shall be 24 inches.
- g. Span is permitted to be 24 inches on center where  $3/4$ -inch wood strip flooring is installed at right angles to joist.
- h. Span is permitted to be 24 inches on center for floors where  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches of cellular or lightweight concrete is applied over the panels.

**TABLE 2304.8(4)**  
**ALLOWABLE SPAN FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL COMBINATION SUBFLOOR-UNDERLayment (SINGLE FLOOR)<sup>a</sup>**  
**(Panels Continuous Over Two or More Spans and Strength Axis Perpendicular to Supports)**

IDENTIFICATION	MAXIMUM SPACING OF JOISTS (inches)				
	16	20	24	32	48
<b>Species group<sup>b</sup></b>	<b>Thickness (inches)</b>				
1	1/2	5/8	3/4	—	—
2, 3	5/8	3/4	7/8	—	—
4	3/4	7/8	1	—	—
Single floor span rating <sup>c</sup>	16 o.c.	20 o.c.	24 o.c.	32 o.c.	48 o.c.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Spans limited to value shown because of possible effects of concentrated loads. Allowable uniform loads based on deflection of 1/360 of span is 100 pounds per square foot except allowable total uniform load for 1 1/8-inch wood structural panels over joists spaced 48 inches on center is 65 pounds per square foot. Panel edges shall have approved tongue-and-groove joints or shall be supported with blocking, unless 1/4-inch minimum thickness underlayment or 1 1/2 inches of approved cellular or lightweight concrete is placed over the subfloor, or finish floor is 3/4-inch wood strip.

b. Applicable to all grades of sanded exterior-type plywood. See DOC PS 1 for plywood species groups.

c. Applicable to Underlayment grade, C-C (Plugged) plywood, and Single Floor grade wood structural panels.

**TABLE 2304.8(5)**  
**ALLOWABLE LOAD (PSF) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL ROOF SHEATHING CONTINUOUS**  
**OVER TWO OR MORE SPANS AND STRENGTH AXIS PARALLEL TO SUPPORTS**  
**(Plywood structural panels are five-ply, five-layer unless otherwise noted)<sup>a</sup>**

PANEL GRADE	THICKNESS (inch)	MAXIMUM SPAN (inches)	LOAD AT MAXIMUM SPAN (psf)	
			Live	Total
Structural I sheathing	7/16	24	20	30
	15/32	24	35 <sup>b</sup>	45 <sup>b</sup>
	1/2	24	40 <sup>b</sup>	50 <sup>b</sup>
	19/32, 5/8	24	70	80
	23/32, 3/4	24	90	100
Sheathing, other grades covered in DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2	7/16	16	40	50
	15/32	24	20	25
	1/2	24	25	30
	19/32	24	40 <sup>b</sup>	50 <sup>b</sup>
	5/8	24	45 <sup>b</sup>	55 <sup>b</sup>
	23/32, 3/4	24	60 <sup>b</sup>	65 <sup>b</sup>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Uniform load deflection limitations 1/180 of span under live load plus dead load, 1/240 under live load only. Edges shall be blocked with lumber or other approved type of edge supports.

b. For composite and four-ply plywood structural panel, load shall be reduced by 15 pounds per square foot.

**2304.9.2 Layup patterns.** Lumber decking is permitted to be laid up following one of five standard patterns as defined in Sections 2304.9.2.1 through 2304.9.2.5.

**2304.9.2.1 Simple span pattern.** All pieces shall be supported on their ends (in other words, by two supports).

**2304.9.2.2 Two-span continuous pattern.** All pieces shall be supported by three supports, and all end joints shall occur in line on alternating supports. Supporting members shall be designed to accommodate the *load* redistribution caused by this pattern.

**2304.9.2.3 Combination simple and two-span continuous pattern.** Courses in end spans shall be alternating simple-span pattern and two-span continu-

ous pattern. End joints shall be staggered in adjacent courses and shall bear on supports.

**2304.9.2.4 Cantilevered pieces intermixed pattern.**

The decking shall extend across not fewer than three spans. Pieces in each starter course and every third course shall be simple span pattern. Pieces in other courses shall be cantilevered over the supports with end joints at alternating quarter or third points of the spans. Each piece shall bear on one support or more.

**2304.9.2.5 Controlled random pattern.** The decking shall extend across not fewer than three spans. End joints of pieces within 6 inches (152 mm) of the end joints of the adjacent pieces in either direction shall be

## WOOD

separated by not fewer than two intervening courses. In the end bays, each piece shall bear on one support or more. Where an end joint occurs in an end bay, the next piece in the same course shall continue over the first inner support for not less than 24 inches (610 mm). The details of the controlled random pattern shall be as specified for each decking material in Section 2304.9.3.3, 2304.9.4.3 or 2304.9.5.3.

Decking that cantilevers beyond a support for a horizontal distance greater than 18 inches (457 mm), 24 inches (610 mm) or 36 inches (914 mm) for 2-inch (51 mm), 3-inch (76 mm) and 4-inch (102 mm) nominal thickness decking, respectively, shall comply with the following:

1. The maximum cantilevered length shall be 30 percent of the length of the first adjacent interior span.
2. A structural fascia shall be fastened to each decking piece to maintain a continuous, straight line.
3. End joints shall not be in the decking between the cantilevered end of the decking and the centerline of the first adjacent interior span.

**2304.9.3 Mechanically laminated decking.** Mechanically laminated decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.3.1 through 2304.9.3.3.

**2304.9.3.1 General.** Mechanically laminated decking consists of square-edged dimension lumber laminations set on edge and nailed to the adjacent pieces and to the supports.

**2304.9.3.2 Nailing.** The length of nails connecting laminations shall be not less than two and one-half times the net thickness of each lamination. Where decking supports are 48 inches (1219 mm) on center or less, side nails shall be installed not more than 30 inches (762 mm) on center alternating between top and bottom edges, and staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. Where supports are spaced more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center, side nails shall be installed not more than 18 inches (457 mm) on center alternating between top and bottom edges and staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. For mechanically laminated decking constructed with laminations of 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness, nailing in accordance with Table 2304.9.3.2 shall be permitted. Two side nails shall be installed at each end of butt-jointed pieces.

Laminations shall be toenailed to supports with 20d or larger common nails. Where the supports are 48 inches (1219 mm) on center or less, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to alternate supports; where supports are spaced more than 48 inches (1219 mm) on center, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to every support. For mechanically laminated decking constructed with laminations of 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness, toenailing in accordance with Table 2304.9.3.2 shall be permitted.

**2304.9.3.3 Controlled random pattern.** There shall be a minimum distance of 24 inches (610 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. The pieces in the first and second courses shall bear on not fewer than two supports with end joints in these two courses occurring

**TABLE 2304.9.3.2  
FASTENING SCHEDULE FOR MECHANICALLY LAMINATED DECKING USING LAMINATIONS OF 2-INCH NOMINAL THICKNESS**

MINIMUM NAIL SIZE (Length x Diameter) (inches)	MAXIMUM SPACING BETWEEN FACE NAILS <sup>a,b</sup> (inches)		NUMBER OF TOENAILS INTO SUPPORTS <sup>c</sup>
	Decking Supports ≤ 48 inches o.c.	Decking Supports > 48 inches o.c.	
4 × 0.192	30	18	1
4 × 0.162	24	14	2
4 × 0.148	22	13	2
3½ × 0.162	20	12	2
3½ × 0.148	19	11	2
3½ × 0.135	17	10	2
3 × 0.148	11	7	2
3 × 0.128	9	5	2
2¾ × 0.148	10	6	2
2¾ × 0.131	9	6	3
2¾ × 0.120	8	5	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm

- a. Nails shall be driven perpendicular to the lamination face, alternating between top and bottom edges.
- b. Where nails penetrate through two laminations and into the third, they shall be staggered one-third of the spacing in adjacent laminations. Otherwise, nails shall be staggered one-half of the spacing in adjacent laminations.
- c. Where supports are 48 inches on center or less, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to alternate supports; where supports are spaced more than 48 inches on center, alternate laminations shall be toenailed to every support.

on alternate supports. Not more than seven intervening courses shall be permitted before this pattern is repeated.

**2304.9.4 Two-inch sawn tongue-and-groove decking.** Two-inch (51 mm) sawn tongue-and-groove decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.4.1 through 2304.9.4.3.

**2304.9.4.1 General.** Two-inch (51 mm) decking shall have a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Decking shall be machined with a single tongue-and-groove pattern. Each decking piece shall be nailed to each support.

**2304.9.4.2 Nailing.** Each piece of decking shall be toenailed at each support with one 16d common nail through the tongue and face-nailed with one 16d common nail.

**2304.9.4.3 Controlled random pattern.** There shall be a minimum distance of 24 inches (610 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. The pieces in the first and second courses shall bear on not fewer than two supports with end joints in these two courses occurring on alternate supports. Not more than seven intervening courses shall be permitted before this pattern is repeated.

**2304.9.5 Three- and four-inch sawn tongue-and-groove decking.** Three- and four-inch (76 mm and 102 mm) sawn tongue-and-groove decking shall comply with Sections 2304.9.5.1 through 2304.9.5.3.

**2304.9.5.1 General.** Three-inch (76 mm) and four-inch (102 mm) decking shall have a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Decking shall be machined with a double tongue-and-groove pattern. Decking pieces shall be interconnected and nailed to the supports.

**2304.9.5.2 Nailing.** Each piece shall be toenailed at each support with one 40d common nail and face-nailed with one 60d common nail. Courses shall be spiked to each other with 8-inch (203 mm) spikes at maximum intervals of 30 inches (762 mm) through predrilled edge holes penetrating to a depth of approximately 4 inches (102 mm). One spike shall be installed at a distance not exceeding 10 inches (254 mm) from the end of each piece.

**2304.9.5.3 Controlled random pattern.** There shall be a minimum distance of 48 inches (1219 mm) between end joints in adjacent courses. Pieces not bearing on a support are permitted to be located in interior bays provided that the adjacent pieces in the same course continue over the support for not less than 24 inches (610 mm). This condition shall not occur more than once in every six courses in each interior bay.

**2304.10 Connectors and fasteners.** Connectors and fasteners shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.10.1 through 2304.10.8.

**2304.10.1 Connection fire-resistance rating.** Fire-resistance ratings for connections in Type IV-A, IV-B, or IV-C construction shall be determined by one of the following:

1. Testing in accordance with Section 703.2 where the connection is part of the fire resistance test.
2. Engineering analysis that demonstrates that the temperature rise at any portion of the connection is limited to an average temperature rise of 250°F (139°C), and a maximum temperature rise of 325°F (181°C), for a time corresponding to the required fire-resistance rating of the structural element being connected. For the purposes of this analysis, the connection includes connectors, fasteners, and portions of wood members included in the structural design of the connection.

**2304.10.2 Fastener requirements.** Connections for wood members shall be designed in accordance with the appropriate methodology in Section 2302.1. The number and size of fasteners connecting wood members shall be not less than that set forth in Table 2304.10.2.

**2304.10.2.1 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2B, 4 & 5]** Fasteners used for the attachment of exterior wall coverings shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. The coating weights for hot-dipped zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153. The coating weights for mechanically deposited zinc coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.

**2304.10.3 Sheathing fasteners.** Sheathing nails or other approved sheathing connectors shall be driven so that their head or crown is flush with the surface of the sheathing.

**2304.10.4 Joist hangers and framing anchors.** Connections depending on joist hangers or framing anchors, ties and other mechanical fastenings not otherwise covered are permitted where approved. The vertical load-bearing capacity, torsional moment capacity and deflection characteristics of joist hangers shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D7147.

**2304.10.5 Other fasteners.** Clips, staples, glues and other approved methods of fastening are permitted where approved.

**2304.10.6 Fasteners and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood.** Fasteners, including nuts and washers, and connectors in contact with preservative-treated and fire-retardant-treated wood shall be in accordance with Sections 2304.10.6.1 through 2304.10.6.4. The coating weights for zinc-coated fasteners shall be in accordance with ASTM A153. Stainless steel driven fasteners shall be in accordance with the material requirements of ASTM F1667.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2304.10.2**  
**FASTENING SCHEDULE**

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER <sup>g</sup>	SPACING AND LOCATION
<b>Roof</b>		
1. Blocking between ceiling joists, rafters or trusses to top plate or other framing below	4-8d box ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.113"); or 3-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 3-3" x 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Each end, toenail
Blocking between rafters or truss not at the wall top plate, to rafter or truss	2-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.131") 2-3" x 0.131" nails 2-3" 14 gage staples 2-16 d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.162") 3-3" x 0.131" nails 3-3" 14 gage staples	Each end, toenail End nail
Flat blocking to truss and web filler	16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.162") @ 6" o.c. 3" x 0.131" nails @ 6" o.c. 3" x 14 gage staples @ 6" o.c.	Face nail
2. Ceiling joists to top plate	4-8d box ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.113"); or 3-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 3-3" x 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Each joist, toenail
3. Ceiling joist not attached to parallel rafter, laps over partitions (no thrust) (see Section 2308.7.3.1, Table 2308.7.3.1)	3-16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 4-3" x 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Face nail
4. Ceiling joist attached to parallel rafter (heel joint) (see Section 2308.7.3.1, Table 2308.7.3.1)	Per Table 2308.7.3.1	Face nail
5. Collar tie to rafter	3-10d common (3" x 0.148"); or 4-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 4-3" x 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Face nail
6. Rafter or roof truss to top plate (See Section 2308.7.5, Table 2308.7.5)	3-10 common (3" x 0.148"); or 3-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.135"); or 4-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 4-3" x 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	2 toenails on one side and 1 toenail on opposite side of rafter or truss <sup>c</sup>
7. Roof rafters to ridge valley or hip rafters; or roof rafter to 2-inch ridge beam	2-16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.162"); or 3-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.135"); or 3-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 3-3" x 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown 3-10d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.148"); or 4-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.135"); or 4-10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 4-3" x 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	End nail Toenail
<b>Wall</b>		
8. Stud to stud (not at braced wall panels)	16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.162"); 10d box (3" x 0.128"); or 3" x 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	24" o.c. face nail 16" o.c. face nail

*(continued)*

## WOOD

**TABLE 2304.10.2—continued  
FASTENING SCHEDULE**

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER <sup>g</sup>	SPACING AND LOCATION
<b>Wall</b>		
9. Stud to stud and abutting studs at intersecting wall corners (at braced wall panels)	16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162"); 16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.135"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	16" o.c. face nail 12" o.c. face nail
10. Built-up header (2" to 2" header)	16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162") 16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.135")	16" o.c. each edge, face nail 12" o.c. each edge, face nail
11. Continuous header to stud	4-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.131"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 5-8d box ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.113")	Toenail
12. Top plate to top plate	16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162") 10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	16" o.c. face nail 12" o.c. face nail
13. Top plate to top plate, at end joints	8-16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162"); or 12-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.135"); or 12-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 12-3" × 0.131" nails; or 12-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Each side of end joint, face nail (minimum 24" lap splice length each side of end joint)
14. Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking (not at braced wall panels)	16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162") 16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.135"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	16" o.c. face nail 12" o.c. face nail
15. Bottom plate to joist, rim joist, band joist or blocking at braced wall panels	2-16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162"); or 3-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.135"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	16" o.c. face nail
16. Stud to top or bottom plate	3-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.135"); or 4-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.131"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-8d box ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.113"); or 4-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Toenail
17. Top plates, laps at corners and intersections	2-16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162"); or 3-16d box ( $3\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.135"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	End nail
18. 1" brace to each stud and plate	3-8d box ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.113"); or 2-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-3" × 0.131" nails; or 2-3" 14 gage staples, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown	Face nail
19. 1" × 6" sheathing to each bearing	3-8d box ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " x 0.113"); or 2-8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-1 $\frac{3}{4}$ " 16 gage staples, 1" crown	Face nail

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2304.10.2—continued  
FASTENING SCHEDULE**

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER <sup>g</sup>	SPACING AND LOCATION
<b>Wall</b>		
20. 1" × 8" and wider sheathing to each bearing	3-8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or 3-8d box (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.113"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " 16 gage staples, 1" crown	Face nail
	Wider than 1" × 8" 3-8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or 4-8d box (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.113"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " 16 gage staples, 1" crown	
<b>Floor</b>		
21. Joist to sill, top plate, or girder	4-8d box (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.113"); or 3-8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or floor 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	Toenail
	8d box (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.113")	
22. Rim joist, band joist, or blocking to top plate, sill or other framing below	8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or 10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	6" o.c., toenail
	8d box (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.113")	
23. 1" × 6" subfloor or less to each joist	3-8d box (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.113"); or 2-8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " 16 gage staples, 1" crown	Face nail
	3-16d box (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.135"); or 2-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162")	
24. 2 subfloor to joist or girder	3-16d box (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.135"); or 2-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162")	Blind and face nail
	3-16d box (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.135"); or 2-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162")	
25. 2" planks (plank & beam – floor & roof)	20d common (4" × 0.192")	32" o.c., face nail at top and bottom staggered on opposite sides
	10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3" × 0.131" nails; or 3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	
26. Built-up girders and beams, 2" lumber layers	And: 2-20d common (4" × 0.192"); or 3-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 3-3" × 0.131" nails; or 3-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	Ends and at each splice, face nail
	3-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162"); or 4-16d box (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.135"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	
27. Ledger strip supporting joists or rafters	3-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162"); or 4-16d box (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.135"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	Each joist or rafter, face nail
	3-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	
28. Joist to band joist or rim joist	3-16d common (3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.162"); or 4-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 4-3" × 0.131" nails; or 4-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	End nail
	2-8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-3" × 0.131" nails; or 2-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	
29. Bridging or blocking to joist, rafter or truss	2-8d common (2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 0.131"); or 2-10d box (3" × 0.128"); or 2-3" × 0.131" nails; or 2-3" 14 gage staples, 7/ <sub>16</sub> " crown	Each end, toenail

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2304.10.2—continued**  
**FASTENING SCHEDULE**

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER <sup>a</sup>	SPACING AND LOCATION	
<b>Wood structural panels (WSP), subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing<sup>b</sup></b>			
		Edges (inches)	Intermediate supports (inches)
30. $\frac{3}{8}'' - \frac{1}{2}''$	6d common or deformed ( $2'' \times 0.113''$ ); or $2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113''$ nail (subfloor and wall)  8d common or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'' \times 0.281''$ head) (roof) or RSRS-01 ( $2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113''$ ) nail (roof) <sup>d</sup>  $1\frac{3}{4}''$ 16 gage staple, $\frac{7}{16}''$ crown (subfloor and wall) $2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113'' \times 0.266''$ head nail (roof) $1\frac{3}{4}''$ 16 gage staple, $\frac{7}{16}''$ crown (roof)	6  6 <sup>e</sup>  4  $3\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{1}{2}$	12  6 <sup>e</sup>  8  $3\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{1}{2}$
31. $\frac{19}{32}'' - \frac{3}{4}''$	8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131''$ ); or deformed ( $2'' \times 0.113''$ ) (subfloor and wall)  8d common or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'' \times 0.281''$ head) (roof) or RSRS-01 ( $2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113''$ ) nail (roof) <sup>d</sup>  $2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.113'' \times 0.266''$ head nail; or $2''$ 16 gage staple, $\frac{7}{16}''$ crown	6  6 <sup>e</sup>  4	12  6 <sup>e</sup>  8
32. $\frac{7}{8}'' - 1\frac{1}{4}''$	10d common ( $3'' \times 0.148''$ ); or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131'' \times 0.281''$ head)	6	12
<b>Other exterior wall sheathing</b>			
33. $\frac{1}{2}''$ fiberboard sheathing <sup>b</sup>	$1\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.120''$ , galvanized roofing nail ( $\frac{7}{16}''$ head diameter); or $1\frac{1}{4}''$ 16 gage staple with $\frac{7}{16}''$ or 1" crown	3	6
34. $\frac{25}{32}''$ fiberboard sheathing <sup>b</sup>	$1\frac{3}{4}'' \times 0.120''$ galvanized roofing nail ( $\frac{7}{16}''$ diameter head); or $1\frac{1}{2}''$ 16 gage staple with $\frac{7}{16}''$ or 1" crown	3	6
<b>Wood structural panels, combination subfloor underlayment to framing</b>			
35. $\frac{3}{4}''$ and less	8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131''$ ); or deformed ( $2'' \times 0.113''$ ); or deformed ( $2'' \times 0.120''$ )	6	12
36. $\frac{7}{8}'' - 1''$	8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131''$ ); or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131''$ ); or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.120''$ )	6	12
37. $1\frac{1}{8}'' - 1\frac{1}{4}''$	10d common ( $3'' \times 0.148''$ ); or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.131''$ ); or deformed ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.120''$ )	6	12
<b>Panel siding to framing</b>			
38. $\frac{1}{2}''$ or less	6d corrosion-resistant siding ( $1\frac{7}{8}'' \times 0.106''$ ); or 6d corrosion-resistant casing ( $2'' \times 0.099''$ )	6	12
39. $\frac{5}{8}''$	8d corrosion-resistant siding ( $2\frac{3}{8}'' \times 0.128''$ ); or 8d corrosion-resistant casing ( $2\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.113''$ )	6	12

*(continued)*

**TABLE 2304.10.2—continued**  
**FASTENING SCHEDULE**

DESCRIPTION OF BUILDING ELEMENTS	NUMBER AND TYPE OF FASTENER <sup>a</sup>	SPACING AND LOCATION	
<b>Wood structural panels (WSP), subfloor, roof and interior wall sheathing to framing and particleboard wall sheathing to framing<sup>b</sup></b>			
		Edges (inches)	Intermediate supports (inches)
<b>Interior paneling</b>			
40. $\frac{1}{4}$ "	4d casing ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times$ 0.080"); or 4d finish ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times$ 0.072")	6	12
41. $\frac{3}{8}$ "	6d casing (2" $\times$ 0.099"); or 6d finish (2" $\times$ 0.092") (Panel supports at 24 inches)	6	12

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- a. Nails spaced at 6 inches at intermediate supports where spans are 48 inches or more. For nailing of wood structural panel and particleboard diaphragms and shear walls, refer to Section 2305. Nails for wall sheathing are permitted to be common, box or casing.
- b. Spacing shall be 6 inches on center on the edges and 12 inches on center at intermediate supports for nonstructural applications. Panel supports at 16 inches (20 inches if strength axis in the long direction of the panel, unless otherwise marked).
- c. Where a rafter is fastened to an adjacent parallel ceiling joist in accordance with this schedule and the ceiling joist is fastened to the top plate in accordance with this schedule, the number of toenails in the rafter shall be permitted to be reduced by one nail.
- d. RSRS-01 is a Roof Sheathing Ring Shank nail meeting the specifications in ASTM F1667.
- e. Tabulated fastener requirements apply where the ultimate design wind speed is less than 140 mph. For wood structural panel roof sheathing attached to gable-end roof framing and to intermediate supports within 48 inches of roof edges and ridges, nails shall be spaced at 4 inches on center where the ultimate design wind speed is greater than 130 mph in Exposure B or greater than 110 mph in Exposure C. Spacing exceeding 6 inches on center at intermediate supports shall be permitted where the fastening is designed per the AWC NDS.
- f. Fastening is only permitted where the ultimate design wind speed is less than or equal to 110 mph.
- g. Nails and staples are carbon steel meeting the specifications of ASTM F1667. Connections using nails and staples of other materials, such as stainless steel, shall be designed by acceptable engineering practice or approved under Section 104.11.

**2304.10.6.1 Fasteners and connectors for preservative-treated wood.** Fasteners, including nuts and washers, in contact with preservative-treated wood shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Staples shall be of stainless steel. Fasteners other than nails, staples, timber rivets, wood screws and lag screws shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum. Connectors that are used in exterior applications and in contact with preservative-treated wood shall have coating types and weights in accordance with the treated wood or connector manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, not less than ASTM A653, Type G185 zinc-coated galvanized steel, or equivalent, shall be used.

**Exception:** Plain carbon steel fasteners, including nuts and washers, in SBX/DOT and zinc borate preservative-treated wood in an interior, dry environment shall be permitted.

**2304.10.6.2 Fastenings for wood foundations.** Fastenings, including nuts and washers, for wood foundations shall be as required in AWC PWF.

**2304.10.6.3 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations.** Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for fire-retardant-treated wood used in exterior applications or wet or damp locations shall be of hot-dipped zinc-coated galvanized steel, stainless steel, silicon bronze or copper. Staples shall be of stainless steel. Fasteners other than nails, staples, timber rivets, wood

screws and lag screws shall be permitted to be of mechanically deposited zinc-coated steel with coating weights in accordance with ASTM B695, Class 55 minimum.

**2304.10.6.4 Fasteners for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior applications.** Fasteners, including nuts and washers, for fire-retardant-treated wood used in interior locations shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In the absence of manufacturer's recommendations, Section 2304.10.6.3 shall apply.

**2304.10.7 Load path.** Where wall framing members are not continuous from the foundation sill to the roof, the members shall be secured to ensure a continuous load path. Where required, sheet metal clamps, ties or clips shall be formed of galvanized steel or other approved corrosion-resistant material not less than 0.0329-inch (0.836 mm) base metal thickness.

**2304.10.8 Framing requirements.** Wood columns and posts shall be framed to provide full end bearing. Alternatively, column-and-post end connections shall be designed to resist the full compressive loads, neglecting end-bearing capacity. Column-and-post end connections shall be fastened to resist lateral and net induced uplift forces.

**2304.11 Heavy timber construction.** Where a structure, portion thereof or individual structural elements are required by provisions of this code to be of heavy timber, the building elements therein shall comply with the applicable provisions of Sections 2304.11.1 through 2304.11.4. Minimum dimensions of heavy timber shall comply with the applicable requirements in Table 2304.11 based on roofs or floors supported and the configuration of each structural element, or

**WOOD**

in Sections 2304.11.2 through 2304.11.4. Lumber decking shall be in accordance with Section 2304.9.

**2304.11.1 Details of heavy timber structural members.**

Heavy timber structural members shall be detailed and constructed in accordance with Sections 2304.11.1 through 2304.11.1.3.

**2304.11.1.1 Columns.** Minimum dimensions of columns shall be in accordance with Table 2304.11. Columns shall be continuous or superimposed throughout all stories and connected in an approved manner. Girders and beams at column connections shall be closely fitted around columns and adjoining ends shall be cross tied to each other, or intertied by caps or ties, to transfer horizontal loads across joints. Wood bolsters shall not be placed on tops of columns unless the columns support roof loads only. Where traditional heavy timber detailing is used, connections shall be by means of reinforced concrete or metal caps with brackets, by properly designed steel or iron caps, with pintles and base plates, by timber splice plates affixed to the columns by metal connectors housed within the contact faces, or by other approved methods.

**2304.11.1.2 Floor framing.** Minimum dimensions of floor framing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.11. Approved wall plate boxes or hangers shall be provided where wood beams, girders or trusses rest on masonry or concrete walls. Where intermediate beams are used to support a floor, they shall rest on top of girders, or shall be supported by an approved metal hanger into which the ends of the beams shall be closely fitted. Where traditional heavy timber detailing is used, these connections shall be permitted to be

supported by ledgers or blocks securely fastened to the sides of the girders.

**2304.11.1.3 Roof framing.** Minimum dimensions of roof framing shall be in accordance with Table 2304.11. Every roof girder and not less than every alternate roof beam shall be anchored to its supporting member to resist forces as required in Chapter 16.

**2304.11.2 Partitions and walls.** Partitions and walls shall comply with Section 2304.11.2.1 or 2304.11.2.2.

**2304.11.2.1 Exterior walls.** Exterior walls shall be permitted to be cross-laminated timber not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness meeting the requirements of Section 2303.1.4.

**2304.11.2.2 Interior walls and partitions.** Interior walls and partitions shall be of solid wood construction formed by not less than two layers of 1-inch (25 mm) matched boards or laminated construction 4 inches (102 mm) thick, or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

**2304.11.3 Floors.** Floors shall be without concealed spaces or with concealed spaces complying with Section 602.4.4.3. Wood floors shall be constructed in accordance with Section 2304.11.3.1 or 2304.11.3.2.

**2304.11.3.1 Cross-laminated timber floors.** Cross-laminated timber shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in actual thickness. Cross-laminated timber shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another. Cross-laminated timber shall be permitted to be connected to walls without a shrinkage gap providing swelling or shrinking is

**TABLE 2304.11**  
**MINIMUM DIMENSIONS OF HEAVY TIMBER STRUCTURAL MEMBERS**

SUPPORTING	HEAVY TIMBER STRUCTURAL ELEMENTS	MINIMUM NOMINAL SOLID SAWN SIZE		MINIMUM GLUED-LAMINATED NET SIZE		MINIMUM STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER NET SIZE	
		Width, inch	Depth, inch	Width, inch	Depth, inch	Width, inch	Depth, inch
Floor loads only or combined floor and roof loads	Columns; Framed sawn or glued-laminated timber arches that spring from the floor line; Framed timber trusses	8	8	6 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	7	7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
	Wood beams and girders	6	10	5	10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	9 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
Roof loads only	Columns (roof and ceiling loads); Lower half of: wood-frame or glued-laminated arches that spring from the floor line or from grade	6	8	5	8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	7 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
	Upper half of: wood-frame or glued-laminated arches that spring from the floor line or from grade	6	6	5	6	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>
	Framed timber trusses and other roof framing; <sup>a</sup> Framed or glued-laminated arches that spring from the top of walls or wall abutments	4 <sup>b</sup>	6	3 <sup>b</sup>	6 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> <sup>b</sup>	5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Spaced members shall be permitted to be composed of two or more pieces not less than 3 inches nominal in thickness where blocked solidly throughout their intervening spaces or where spaces are tightly closed by a continuous wood cover plate of not less than 2 inches nominal in thickness secured to the underside of the members. Splice plates shall be not less than 3 inches nominal in thickness.

b. Where protected by approved automatic sprinklers under the roof deck, framing members shall be not less than 3 inches nominal in width.

considered in the design. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used.

**2304.11.3.2 Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors.** Sawn or glued-laminated plank floors shall be one of the following:

1. Sawn or glued-laminated planks, splined or tongue-and-groove, of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension tongue-and-groove flooring, laid crosswise or diagonally,  $\frac{15}{32}$ -inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.
2. Planks not less than 4 inches (102 mm) nominal in width set on edge close together and well spiked and covered with 1-inch (25 mm) nominal dimension flooring or  $\frac{15}{32}$ -inch (12 mm) wood structural panel or  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) particleboard.

The lumber shall be laid so that continuous lines of joints will occur only at points of support. Floors shall not extend closer than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) to walls. Such  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) space shall be covered by a molding fastened to the wall and so arranged that it will not obstruct the swelling or shrinkage movements of the floor. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used in place of molding.

**2304.11.4 Roof decks.** Roofs shall be without concealed spaces or with concealed spaces complying with Section 602.4.4.3. Roof decks shall be constructed in accordance with Section 2304.11.4.1 or 2304.11.4.2. Other types of decking shall be an alternative that provides equivalent fire resistance and structural properties. Where supported by a wall, roof decks shall be anchored to walls to resist forces determined in accordance with Chapter 16. Such anchors shall consist of steel bolts, lags, screws or approved hardware of sufficient strength to resist prescribed forces.

**2304.11.4.1 Cross-laminated timber roofs.** Cross-laminated timber roofs shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another.

**2304.11.4.2 Sawn, wood structural panel, or glued-laminated plank roofs.** Sawn, wood structural panel, or glued-laminated plank roofs shall be one of the following:

1. Sawn or glued laminated, splined or tongue-and-groove plank, not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness.
2.  $1\frac{1}{8}$ -inch-thick (32 mm) wood structural panel (exterior glue).
3. Planks not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width, set on edge close together and laid as required for floors.

**2304.12 Protection against decay and termites.** Wood shall be protected from decay and termites in accordance with the

applicable provisions of Sections 2304.12.1 through 2304.12.4.

**2304.12.1 Locations requiring waterborne preservatives or naturally durable wood.** Wood used above ground in the locations specified in Sections 2304.12.1.1 through 2304.12.1.5 shall be naturally durable wood or preservative-treated wood using waterborne preservatives, in accordance with AWPA U1 for above-ground use.

**2304.12.1.1 Joists, girders and subfloor.** Wood joists or wood structural floors that are closer than 18 inches (457 mm) or wood girders that are closer than 12 inches (305 mm) to the exposed ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas located within the perimeter of the building foundation shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**2304.12.1.1.1 [SPCB]** There shall be a clearance of at least 18 inches (457 mm) between the underside of wood floor joists and the finished surface of the ground, and at least 12 inches (305 mm) between the underside of any other wood horizontal framing member and the finished surface of the ground. The ground underneath floor joists shall be leveled or smoothed off so as to maintain a reasonably even surface.

**Exception:** For purposes of structural pest control inspection, a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) of clearance under-floor joists shall be considered adequate except that such clearance shall not be necessary where the subarea soil is of such a nature as to prevent excavation or where excavation would create a hazard from shifting soil or other causes.

**2304.12.1.2 Wood supported by exterior foundation walls.** Wood framing members, including wood sheathing, that are in contact with exterior foundation walls and are less than 8 inches (203 mm) from exposed earth shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**Exception:** [DSA-SS and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] At exterior walls where the earth is paved with an asphalt or concrete slab at least 18 inches (457 mm) wide and draining away from the building, the bottom of sills are permitted to be 6 inches (152 mm) above the top of such slab. Other equivalent means of termite and decay protection may be accepted by the enforcement agency.

**2304.12.1.3 Exterior walls below grade.** Wood framing members and furring strips in direct contact with the interior of exterior masonry or concrete walls below grade shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**2304.12.1.4 Sleepers and sills.** Sleepers and sills on a concrete or masonry slab that is in direct contact with earth shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**2304.12.1.4.1 Additional requirements.** [DSA-SS and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Stud walls or parti-

**WOOD**

*tions at shower or toilet rooms with more than two plumbing fixtures, excluding floor drains, and stud walls adjacent to unroofed paved areas shall rest on a concrete curb extending at least 6 inches (152 mm) above finished floor and pavement level.*

**2304.12.1.5 Wood siding.** Clearance between wood siding and earth on the exterior of a building shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) or less than 2 inches (51 mm) vertical from concrete steps, porch slabs, patio slabs and similar horizontal surfaces exposed to the weather except where siding, sheathing and wall framing are of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**2304.12.2 Other locations.** Wood used in the locations specified in Sections 2304.12.2.1 through 2304.12.2.8 shall be naturally durable wood or preservative-treated wood in accordance with AWPA U1. Preservative-treated wood used in interior locations shall be protected with two coats of urethane, shellac, latex epoxy or varnish unless waterborne preservatives are used. Prior to application of the protective finish, the wood shall be dried in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**2304.12.2.1 Girder ends.** The ends of wood girders entering exterior masonry or concrete walls shall be provided with a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) airspace on top, sides and end, unless naturally durable or preservative-treated wood is used.

**2304.12.2.2 Posts or columns.** Posts or columns supporting permanent structures and supported by a concrete or masonry slab or footing that is in direct contact with the earth shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood.

**Exception:** Posts or columns that meet all of the following:

1. Are not exposed to the weather, or are protected by a roof, eave, overhang, or other covering if exposed to the weather.
2. Are supported by concrete piers or metal pedestals projected not less than 1 inch (25 mm) above the slab or deck and are separated from the concrete pier by an impervious moisture barrier.
3. Are located not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above exposed earth.

**2304.12.2.3 Supporting member for permanent appurtenances.** Naturally durable or preservative-treated wood shall be utilized for those portions of wood members that form the structural supports of buildings, balconies, porches or similar permanent building appurtenances where such members are exposed to the weather without adequate protection from a roof, eave, overhang or other covering to prevent moisture or water accumulation on the surface or at joints between members.

**Exception:** Sawn lumber in buildings located in a geographical region where experience has demonstrated that climatic conditions preclude the need to

use durable materials where the structure is exposed to the weather.

**2304.12.2.4 Supporting members for permeable floors and roofs.** Wood structural members that support moisture-permeable floors or roofs that are exposed to the weather, such as concrete or masonry slabs, shall be of naturally durable or preservative-treated wood unless separated from such floors or roofs by an impervious moisture barrier. The impervious moisture barrier system protecting the structure supporting floors shall provide positive drainage of water that infiltrates the moisture-permeable floor topping.

**2304.12.2.5 Ventilation beneath balcony or elevated walking surfaces.** Enclosed framing in exterior balconies and elevated walking surfaces that have weather-exposed surfaces shall be provided with openings that provide a net free cross-ventilation area not less than  $\frac{1}{150}$  of the area of each separate space.

**2304.12.2.6 Wood in contact with the ground or fresh water.** Wood used in contact with exposed earth shall be naturally durable for both decay and termite resistance or preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for soil or fresh water use.

**Exception:** Untreated wood is permitted where such wood is continuously and entirely below the groundwater level or submerged in fresh water.

**2304.12.2.6.1 Posts or columns.** Posts and columns that are supporting permanent structures and embedded in concrete that is exposed to the weather or in direct contact with the earth shall be of preservative-treated wood.

**2304.12.2.7 Termite protection.** In geographical areas where hazard of termite damage is known to be very heavy, wood floor framing in the locations specified in Section 2304.12.1.1 and exposed framing of exterior decks or balconies shall be of naturally durable species (termite resistant) or preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for the species, product preservative and end use or provided with approved methods of termite protection.

**2304.12.2.8 Wood used in retaining walls and cribs.** Wood installed in retaining or crib walls shall be preservative treated in accordance with AWPA U1 for soil and fresh water use.

**2304.12.3 Attic ventilation.** For attic ventilation, see Section 1202.2.2.

**2304.12.4 Under-floor ventilation (crawl space).** For under-floor ventilation (crawl space), see Section 1202.4.

**2304.12.8 Separate wood framing. [SPCB]** Correct the conditions in frame and stucco walls and similar appurtenant construction so that the wood framing is separate from the main structure by a complete concrete or masonry plug with no voids that will allow infestations to enter the structure from the wall. If there is no plug, the foundation shall be 2 inches (51 mm) or more above the grade levels and at least as high as the adjoining slabs or 4-inch (102 mm) concrete barrier seat off installed.

**2304.12.9 Earth fills.** [SPCB] Separate the earth fills such as under porches or paving from all woodwork by concrete, masonry, good quality cement plaster or other material approved by local building codes. Chemical treatment of earth fills is considered adequate if the foundation adjoining the fill meets standards of the current building codes.

**2304.13 Long-term loading.** Wood members supporting concrete, masonry or similar materials shall be checked for the effects of long-term loading using the provisions of the ANSI/AWC NDS. The total deflection, including the effects of long-term loading, shall be limited in accordance with Section 1604.3.1 for these supported materials.

**Exception:** Horizontal wood members supporting masonry or concrete nonstructural floor or roof surfacing not more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick need not be checked for long-term loading.

## SECTION 2305 GENERAL DESIGN REQUIREMENTS FOR LATERAL FORCE-RESISTING SYSTEMS

**2305.1 General.** Structures using wood-frame shear walls or wood-frame diaphragms to resist wind, seismic or other lateral loads shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS and the applicable provisions of Sections 2305, 2306 and 2307.

**2305.1.1 Openings in shear panels.** Openings in shear panels that materially affect their strength shall be detailed on the plans and shall have their edges adequately reinforced to transfer all shearing stresses.

**2305.1.2 Additional requirements.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] See Section 2301.1.4 for modifications to AWC SDPWS.

**2305.2 Diaphragm deflection.** The deflection of wood-frame diaphragms shall be determined in accordance with AWC SDPWS. The deflection ( $\Delta_{dia}$ ) of a blocked wood structural panel diaphragm uniformly fastened throughout with staples is permitted to be calculated in accordance with Equation 23-1. If not uniformly fastened, the constant 0.188 (For SI: 1/1627) in the third term shall be modified by an approved method.

$$\Delta_{dia} = \frac{5vL^3}{8EAW} + \frac{vL}{4Gt} + 0.188Le_n + \sum(x\Delta_c)/2W \quad (\text{Equation 23-1})$$

For SI:  $\Delta_{dia} = \frac{0.052vL^3}{EAW} + \frac{vL}{4Gt} + Le_n/1627 + \sum(x\Delta_c)/2W$

where:

$A$  = Area of chord cross section, in square inches ( $\text{mm}^2$ ).

$E$  = Modulus of elasticity of diaphragm chords, in pounds per square inch ( $\text{N/mm}^2$ ).

$e_n$  = Staple slip, in inches (mm) [see Table 2305.2(1)].

$Gt$  = Panel rigidity through the thickness, in pounds per inch ( $\text{N/mm}$ ) of panel width or depth [see Table 2305.2(2)].

$L$  = Diaphragm length (dimension perpendicular to the direction of the applied load), in feet (mm).

$v$  = Induced unit shear in pounds per linear foot (plf) ( $\text{N/mm}$ ).

$W$  = Diaphragm width [in the direction of applied force, in feet (mm)].

$x$  = Distance from chord splice to nearest support, in feet (mm).

$\Delta_c$  = Diaphragm chord splice slip at the induced unit shear, in inches (mm).

$\Delta_{dia}$  = Maximum mid-span diaphragm deflection determined by elastic analysis, in inches (mm).

**TABLE 2305.2(1)**  
 **$e_n$  VALUES (inches) FOR USE IN CALCULATING DIAPHRAGM AND SHEAR WALL DEFLECTION DUE TO FASTENER SLIP (Structural I)<sup>a,c</sup>**

LOAD PER FASTENER <sup>b</sup> (pounds)	FASTENER DESIGNATIONS
	14-Ga staple x 2 inches long
60	0.011
80	0.018
100	0.028
120	0.04
140	0.053
160	0.068

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

a. Increase  $e_n$  values 20 percent for plywood grades other than Structural I.

b. Load per fastener = maximum shear per foot divided by the number of fasteners per foot at interior panel edges.

c. Decrease  $e_n$  values 50 percent for seasoned lumber (moisture content < 19 percent).

**2305.3 Shear wall deflection.** The deflection of wood-frame shear walls shall be determined in accordance with AWC SDPWS. The deflection ( $\Delta_{sw}$ ) of a blocked wood structural panel shear wall uniformly fastened throughout with staples is permitted to be calculated in accordance with Equation 23-2.

$$\Delta_{sw} = \frac{8vh^3}{EAB} + \frac{vh}{4Gt} + 0.75he_n + d_a h/b \quad (\text{Equation 23-2})$$

$$\text{For SI: } \Delta_{sw} = \frac{vh^3}{3EAb} + \frac{vh}{Gt} + \frac{he_n}{407.6} + d_a h/b$$

where:

$A$  = Area of end-post cross section in square inches ( $\text{mm}^2$ ).

$b$  = Shear wall length, in feet (mm).

$d_a$  = Total vertical elongation of wall anchorage system (such as fastener slip, device elongation, rod elongation) in inches (mm), at the induced unit shear in the shear wall ( $v$ ).

$E$  = Modulus of elasticity of end posts, in pounds per square inch ( $\text{N/mm}^2$ ).

$e_n$  = Staple slip, in inches (mm) [see Table 2305.2(1)].

$Gt$  = Panel rigidity through the thickness, in pounds per inch ( $\text{N/mm}$ ) of panel width or depth [see Table 2305.2(2)].

$h$  = Shear wall height, in feet (mm).

$v$  = Induced unit shear, in pounds per linear foot ( $\text{N/mm}$ ).

$\Delta_{sw}$  = Maximum shear wall deflection determined by elastic analysis, in inches (mm).

**WOOD**

**TABLE 2305.2(2)**  
**VALUES OF  $G_t$  FOR USE IN CALCULATING DEFLECTION OF WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEAR WALLS AND DIAPHRAGMS**

PANEL TYPE	SPAN RATING	VALUES OF $G_t$ (lb/in. panel depth or width)							
		Structural Sheathing			Structural I				
		Plywood		OSB	Plywood			OSB	
Sheathing	3-ply	4-ply	5-ply <sup>a</sup>		3-ply	4-ply	5-ply <sup>a</sup>		
	24/0	25,000	32,500	37,500	77,500	32,500	42,500	41,500	77,500
	24/16	27,000	35,000	40,500	83,500	35,000	45,500	44,500	83,500
	32/16	27,000	35,000	40,500	83,500	35,000	45,500	44,500	83,500
	40/20	28,500	37,000	43,000	88,500	37,000	48,000	47,500	88,500
Single Floor	48/24	31,000	40,500	46,500	96,000	40,500	52,500	51,000	96,000
	16 o.c.	27,000	35,000	40,500	83,500	35,000	45,500	44,500	83,500
	20 o.c.	28,000	36,500	42,000	87,000	36,500	47,500	46,000	87,000
	24 o.c.	30,000	39,000	45,000	93,000	39,000	50,500	49,500	93,000
	32 o.c.	36,000	47,000	54,000	110,000	47,000	61,000	59,500	110,000
Sanded Ply-wood	48 o.c.	50,500	65,500	76,000	155,000	65,500	85,000	83,500	155,000
	Structural Sheathing				Structural I				
	Thickness (in.)	A-A, A-C	Marine	All Other Grades	A-A, A-C	Marine	All Other Grades		
	1/4	24,000	31,000	24,000	31,000	31,000	31,000		
	11/32	25,500	33,000	25,500	33,000	33,000	33,000		
	3/8	26,000	34,000	26,000	34,000	34,000	34,000		
	15/32	38,000	49,500	38,000	49,500	49,500	49,500		
	1/2	38,500	50,000	38,500	50,000	50,000	50,000		
	19/32	49,000	63,500	49,000	63,500	63,500	63,500		
	5/8	49,500	64,500	49,500	64,500	64,500	64,500		
	23/32	50,500	65,500	50,500	65,500	65,500	65,500		
	3/4	51,000	66,500	51,000	66,500	66,500	66,500		
	7/8	52,500	68,500	52,500	68,500	68,500	68,500		
	1	73,500	95,500	73,500	95,500	95,500	95,500		
	1 1/8	75,000	97,500	75,000	97,500	97,500	97,500		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound/inch = 0.1751 N/mm.

a. 5-ply applies to plywood with five or more layers. For 5-ply plywood with three layers, use values for 4-ply panels.

## SECTION 2306 ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN

**2306.1 Allowable stress design.** The design and construction of wood elements in structures using allowable stress design shall be in accordance with the applicable standards listed in Table 2306.1.

**2306.1.1 Joists and rafters.** The design of rafter spans is permitted to be in accordance with the AWC STJR.

**2306.1.2 Plank and beam flooring.** The design of plank and beam flooring is permitted to be in accordance with the AWC Wood Construction Data No. 4.

**2306.1.3 Treated wood stress adjustments.** The allowable unit stresses for preservative-treated wood need not be adjusted for treatment, but are subject to other adjustments.

The allowable unit stresses for fire-retardant-treated wood, including fastener values, shall be developed from an approved method of investigation that considers the effects of anticipated temperature and humidity to which

the fire-retardant-treated wood will be subjected, the type of treatment and the redrying process. Other adjustments are applicable except that the impact load duration shall not apply.

**2306.1.4 Lumber decking.** The capacity of lumber decking arranged according to the patterns described in Section 2304.9.2 shall be the lesser of the capacities determined for moment and deflection according to the formulas in Table 2306.1.4.

**2306.2 Wood-frame diaphragms.** Wood-frame diaphragms shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS. Where panels are fastened to framing members with staples, requirements and limitations of AWC SDPWS shall be met and the allowable shear values set forth in Table 2306.2(1) or 2306.2(2) shall be permitted. The allowable shear values in Tables 2306.2(1) and 2306.2(2) are permitted to be increased 40 percent for wind design.

**2306.2.1 Gypsum board diaphragm ceilings.** Gypsum board diaphragm ceilings shall be in accordance with Section 2508.6.

**TABLE 2306.1  
STANDARDS FOR DESIGN AND  
CONSTRUCTION OF WOOD ELEMENTS  
IN STRUCTURES USING ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN**

STANDARDS PROMULGATOR	STANDARD	TITLE
<b>American Wood Council</b>		
	ANSI/AWC NDS	National Design Specification for Wood Construction
	SDPWS	Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic
<b>American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers</b>		
	ASABE EP 484.3	Diaphragm Design of Metal-clad, Wood-Frame Rectangular Buildings
	ASABE EP 486.3	Shallow Post and Pier Foundation Design
	ASABE EP 559.1	Design Requirements and Bending Properties for Mechanically Laminated Wood Assemblies
<b>APA—The Engineered Wood Association</b>		
	ANSI 117	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species
	ANSI A190.1	Structural Glued Laminated Timber
		Panel Design Specification
		Plywood Design Specification Supplement 1—Design & Fabrication of Plywood Curved Panel
		Plywood Design Specification Supplement 2—Design & Fabrication of Glued Plywood-lumber Beams
		Plywood Design Specification Supplement 3—Design & Fabrication of Plywood Stressed-skin Panels
		Plywood Design Specification Supplement 4—Design & Fabrication of Plywood Sandwich Panels
		Plywood Design Specification Supplement 5—Design & Fabrication of All-plywood Beams
	APA T300	Glulam Connection Details
	APA S560	Field Notching and Drilling of Glued Laminated Timber Beams
	APA S475	Glued Laminated Beam Design Tables
	APA X450	Glulam in Residential Construction
	APA X440	Product and Application Guide: Glulam
	APA R540	Builders Tips: Proper Storage and Handling of Glulam Beams
<b>Truss Plate Institute, Inc.</b>		
	TPI 1	National Design Standard for Metal Plate Connected Wood Truss Construction
<b>West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau</b>		
	AITC 104	Typical Construction Details
	AITC 110	Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber
	AITC 113	Standard for Dimensions of Structural Glued Laminated Timber
	AITC 119	Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Hardwood Species
	AITC 200	Inspection Manual

**TABLE 2306.1.4  
ALLOWABLE LOADS FOR LUMBER DECKING**

PATTERN	ALLOWABLE AREA LOAD <sup>a</sup>	
	Moment	Deflection
Simple span	$w_b = \frac{8F'_b d^2}{l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{384\Delta E' d^3}{5l^4 12}$
Two-span continuous	$w_b = \frac{8F'_b d^2}{l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{185\Delta E' d^3}{l^4 12}$
Combination simple- and two-span continuous	$w_b = \frac{8F'_b d^2}{l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{131\Delta E' d^3}{l^4 12}$
Cantilevered pieces intermixed	$w_b = \frac{20F'_b d^2}{3l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{105\Delta E' d^3}{l^4 12}$
<b>Controlled random layup</b>		
Mechanically laminated decking	$w_b = \frac{20F'_b d^2}{3l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{100\Delta E' d^3}{l^4 12}$
2-inch decking	$w_b = \frac{20F'_b d^2}{3l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{100\Delta E' d^3}{l^4 12}$
3-inch and 4-inch decking	$w_b = \frac{8F'_b d^2}{l^2 6}$	$w_\Delta = \frac{116\Delta E' d^3}{l^4 12}$

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a.  $w_b$  = Allowable total uniform load limited by moment.

$w_\Delta$  = Allowable total uniform load limited by deflection.

$d$  = Actual decking thickness.

$l$  = Span of decking.

$F'_b$  = Allowable bending stress adjusted by applicable factors.

$E'$  = Modulus of elasticity adjusted by applicable factors.

**2306.3 Wood-frame shear walls.** Wood-frame shear walls shall be designed and constructed in accordance with AWC SDPWS. Where panels are fastened to framing members with staples, requirements and limitations of AWC SDPWS shall be met and the allowable shear values set forth in Table 2306.3(1), 2306.3(2) or 2306.3(3) shall be permitted. The allowable shear values in Tables 2306.3(1) and 2306.3(2) are permitted to be increased 40 percent for wind design. Panels complying with ANSI/APA PRP-210 shall be permitted to use design values for Plywood Siding in the AWC SDPWS.

TABLE 2306.2(1)

ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL DIAPHRAGMS UTILIZING STAPLES WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH, OR SOUTHERN PINE<sup>a</sup> FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING<sup>f</sup>

PANEL GRADE	STAPLE LENGTH AND GAGE <sup>d</sup>	MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)	MINIMUM NOMINAL WIDTH OF FRAMING MEMBERS AT ADJOINING PANEL EDGES AND BOUNDARIES <sup>e</sup> (inches)	BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS				UNBLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS	
					Fastener spacing (inches) at diaphragm boundaries (all cases) at continuous panel edges parallel to load (Cases 3, 4), and at all panel edges (Cases 5, 6) <sup>b</sup>				Fasteners spaced 6 inches max. at supported edges <sup>b</sup>	
					6	4	2½ <sup>c</sup>	2 <sup>c</sup>	Case 1 (No unblocked edges or continuous joints parallel to load)	
					Fastener spacing (inches) at other panel edges (Cases 1, 2, 3 and 4) <sup>b</sup>				All other configurations (Cases 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6) <sup>g</sup>	
Structural I grades	1½ 16 gage	1	¾/8	2	175	235	350	400	155	115
				3	200	265	395	450	175	130
			15/32	2	175	235	350	400	155	120
				3	200	265	395	450	175	130
Sheathing, single floor and other grades covered in DOC PS 1 and PS 2	1½ 16 gage	1	¾/8	2	160	210	315	360	140	105
				3	180	235	355	400	160	120
			7/16	2	165	225	335	380	150	110
				3	190	250	375	425	165	125
			15/32	2	160	210	315	360	140	105
				3	180	235	355	405	160	120
			19/32	2	175	235	350	400	155	115
				3	200	265	395	450	175	130

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples find shear value from table for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
- b. Space fasteners maximum 12 inches on center along intermediate framing members (6 inches on center where supports are spaced 48 inches on center).
- c. Framing at adjoining panel edges shall be 3 inches nominal or wider.
- d. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of  $\frac{7}{16}$  inch and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
- e. The minimum nominal width of framing members not located at boundaries or adjoining panel edges shall be 2 inches.
- f. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.
- g. For Case 1 through 6 descriptions see Figure 2306.2(1).

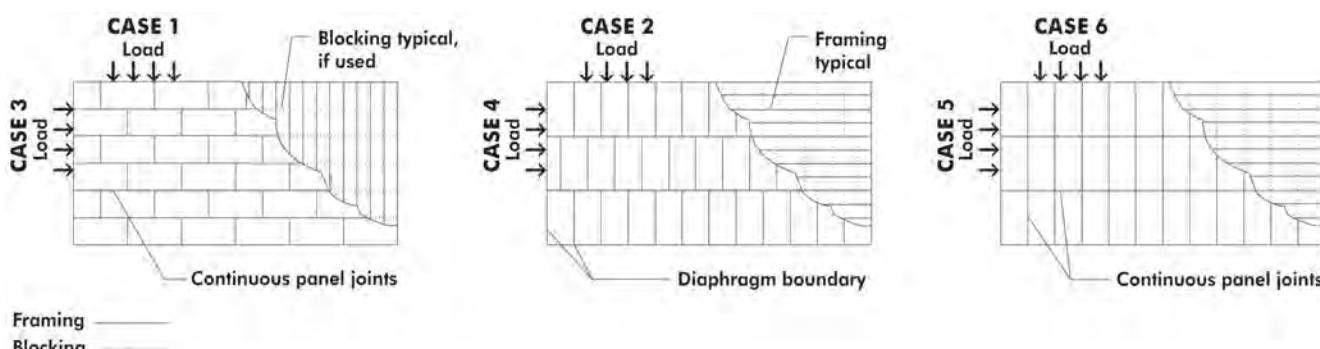


FIGURE 2306.2(1)  
CASES 1 THROUGH 6 FOR USE WITH TABLE 2306.2(1)

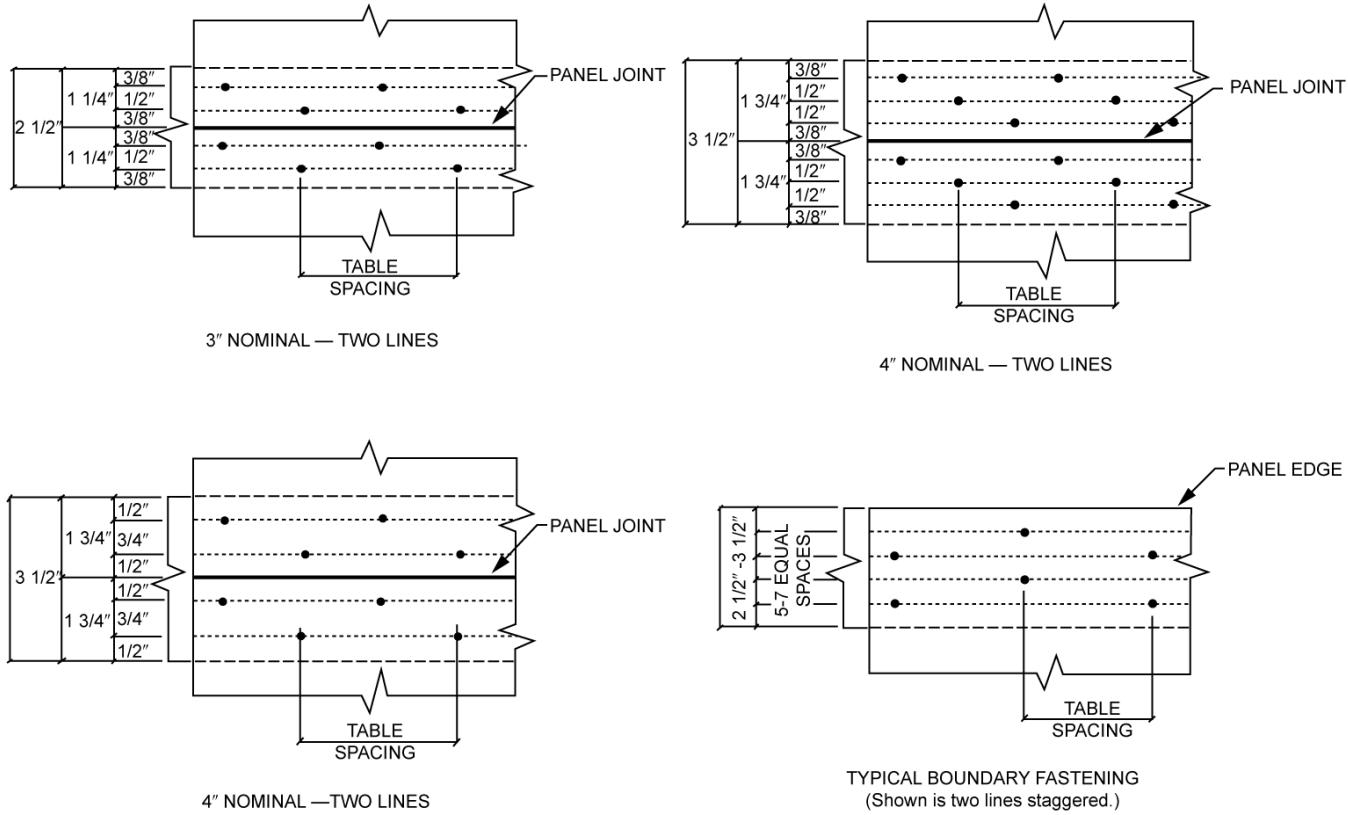
**TABLE 2306.2(2)**  
**ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS**  
**UTILIZING MULTIPLE ROWS OF STAPLES (HIGH-LOAD DIAPHRAGMS) WITH FRAMING OF**  
**DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE<sup>a</sup> FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING<sup>b, g, h</sup>**

<b>PANEL GRADE<sup>c</sup></b>	<b>STAPLE GAGE<sup>f</sup></b>	<b>MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)</b>	<b>MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)</b>	<b>MINIMUM NOMINAL WIDTH OF FRAMING MEMBER AT ADJOINING PANEL EDGES AND BOUNDARIES<sup>e</sup></b>	<b>LINES OF FASTENERS</b>	<b>BLOCKED DIAPHRAGMS</b>					
						<b>Cases 1 and 2<sup>d</sup></b>					
						<b>Fastener Spacing Per Line at Boundaries (inches)<sup>i</sup></b>					
						4	2½	2			
						<b>Fastener Spacing Per Line at Other Panel Edges (inches)<sup>i</sup></b>					
						6	4	4	3	3	2
Structural I grades	14 gage staples	2	$\frac{15}{32}$	3	2	600	600	860	960	1,060	1,200
				4	3	860	900	1,160	1,295	1,295	1,400
			$\frac{19}{32}$	3	2	600	600	875	960	1,075	1,200
				4	3	875	900	1,175	1,440	1,475	1,795
Sheathing single floor and other grades covered in DOC PS 1 and PS 2	14 gage staples	2	$\frac{15}{32}$	3	2	540	540	735	865	915	1,080
				4	3	735	810	1,005	1,105	1,105	1,195
			$\frac{19}{32}$	3	2	600	600	865	960	1,065	1,200
				4	3	865	900	1,130	1,430	1,370	1,485
			$\frac{23}{32}$	4	3	865	900	1,130	1,490	1,430	1,545

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of framing lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, find shear value from table for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
- b. Fastening along intermediate framing members: Space fasteners not greater than 12 inches on center, except 6 inches on center for spans greater than 32 inches.
- c. Panels conforming to DOC PS 1 or PS 2.
- d. This table gives shear values for Cases 1 and 2 as shown in Table 2306.2(1). The values shown are applicable to Cases 3, 4, 5 and 6 as shown in Table 2306.2(1), providing fasteners at all continuous panel edges are spaced in accordance with the boundary fastener spacing.
- e. The minimum nominal depth of framing members shall be 3 inches nominal. The minimum nominal width of framing members not located at boundaries or adjoining panel edges shall be 2 inches.
- f. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of  $\frac{7}{16}$  inch, and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
- g. High-load diaphragms shall be subject to special inspection in accordance with Section 1705.5.1.
- h. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.
- i. For fastener spacing diagrams see Figure 2306.2(2).

## WOOD



NOTE: SPACE PANEL END AND EDGE JOINT 1/8-INCH. REDUCE SPACING BETWEEN LINES OF NAILS AS NECESSARY TO MAINTAIN MINIMUM 3/8=INCH FASTENER EDGE MARGINS, MINIMUM SPACING BETWEEN LINES IS 3/8-INCH

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 2306.2(2)**  
**FASTENER SPACING DIAGRAMS FOR USE WITH TABLE 2306.2(2)**

TABLE 2306.3(1)

**ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (POUNDS PER FOOT) FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL SHEAR WALLS UTILIZING STAPLES WITH FRAMING OF DOUGLAS FIR-LARCH OR SOUTHERN PINE<sup>a</sup> FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING<sup>b, f, g, i</sup>**

PANEL GRADE	MINIMUM NOMINAL PANEL THICKNESS (inch)	MINIMUM FASTENER PENETRATION IN FRAMING (inches)	PANELS APPLIED DIRECT TO FRAMING	PANELS APPLIED OVER $\frac{1}{2}$ " OR $\frac{5}{8}$ " GYPSUM SHEATHING									
				Staple length and gage <sup>h</sup> (inches)	Fastener spacing at panel edges (inches)				Staple length and gage <sup>h</sup> (inches)	Fastener spacing at panel edges (inches)			
					6	4	3	2 <sup>d</sup>		6	4	3	2 <sup>d</sup>
Structural I sheathing	$\frac{3}{8}$	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$ 16 Gage	155	235	315	400	2 16 Gage	155	235	310	400	
	$\frac{7}{16}$			170	260	345	440		155	235	310	400	
	$\frac{15}{32}$			185	280	375	475		155	235	300	400	
Sheathing, plywood siding <sup>e</sup> except Group 5 Species, ANSI/APA PRP 210siding <sup>e</sup>	$\frac{5}{16}$ <sup>c</sup> or $\frac{1}{4}$ <sup>c</sup>	1	$1\frac{1}{2}$ 16 Gage	145	220	295	375	2 16 Gage	110	165	220	285	
	$\frac{3}{8}$			140	210	280	360		140	210	280	360	
	$\frac{7}{16}$			155	230	310	395		140	210	280	360	
	$\frac{15}{32}$			170	255	335	430		140	210	280	360	
	$\frac{19}{32}$		$1\frac{3}{4}$ 16 Gage	185	280	375	475	—	—	—	—	—	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- a. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples find shear value from table for Structural I panels (regardless of actual grade) and multiply value by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
- b. Panel edges backed with 2-inch nominal or wider framing. Install panels either horizontally or vertically. Space fasteners maximum 6 inches on center along intermediate framing members for  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch and  $\frac{7}{16}$ -inch panels installed on studs spaced 24 inches on center. For other conditions and panel thickness, space fasteners maximum 12 inches on center on intermediate supports.
- c.  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch panel thickness or siding with a span rating of 16 inches on center is the minimum recommended where applied directly to framing as exterior siding. For grooved panel siding, the nominal panel thickness is the thickness of the panel measured at the point of fastening.
- d. Framing at adjoining panel edges shall be 3 inches nominal or wider.
- e. Values apply to all-veneer plywood. Thickness at point of fastening on panel edges governs shear values.
- f. Where panels are applied on both faces of a wall and fastener spacing is less than 6 inches on center on either side, panel joints shall be offset to fall on different framing members, or framing shall be 3 inches nominal or thicker at adjoining panel edges.
- g. In Seismic Design Category D, E or F, where shear design values exceed 350 pounds per linear foot, all framing members receiving edge fastening from abutting panels shall be not less than a single 3-inch nominal member, or two 2-inch nominal members fastened together in accordance with Section 2306.1 to transfer the design shear value between framing members. Wood structural panel joint and sill plate nailing shall be staggered at all panel edges. See AWC SDPWS for sill plate size and anchorage requirements.
- h. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of  $\frac{7}{16}$  inch and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
- i. For shear loads of normal or permanent load duration as defined by the ANSI/AWC NDS, the values in the table shall be multiplied by 0.63 or 0.56, respectively.

TABLE 2306.3(2)

**ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (plf) FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING ON SHEAR WALLS OF FIBERBOARD SHEATHING BOARD CONSTRUCTION UTILIZING STAPLES FOR TYPE V CONSTRUCTION ONLY<sup>a, b, c, d, e</sup>**

THICKNESS AND GRADE (inches)	STAPLE GAGE AND DIMENSIONS	ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUE (pounds per linear foot) STAPLE SPACING AT PANEL EDGES (inches) <sup>a</sup>		
		4	3	2
$\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{25}{32}$ Structural	No. 16 gage galvanized staple, $\frac{7}{16}$ " crown $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches long	150	200	225
	No. 16 gage galvanized staple, 1" crown $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches long	220	290	325

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- a. Fiberboard sheathing shall not be used to brace concrete or masonry walls.
- b. Panel edges shall be backed with 2-inch or wider framing of Douglas Fir-larch or Southern pine. For framing of other species: (1) Find specific gravity for species of framing lumber in ANSI/AWC NDS. (2) For staples, multiply the shear value from the table by 0.82 for species with specific gravity of 0.42 or greater, or 0.65 for all other species.
- c. Values shown are for fiberboard sheathing on one side only with long panel dimension either parallel or perpendicular to studs.
- d. Fastener shall be spaced 6 inches on center along intermediate framing members.
- e. Values are not permitted in Seismic Design Category D, E or F.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2306.3(3)**  
**ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES FOR WIND OR SEISMIC FORCES FOR SHEAR WALLS OF LATH AND  
 PLASTER OR GYPSUM BOARD WOOD FRAMED WALL ASSEMBLIES UTILIZING STAPLES**

TYPE OF MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL	WALL CONSTRUCTION	STAPLE SPACING <sup>b</sup> MAXIMUM (inches)	SHEAR VALUE <sup>a,c</sup> (plf)	MINIMUM STAPLE SIZE <sup>f,g</sup>
1. Expanded metal or woven wire lath and Portland cement plaster	$\frac{7}{8}$ "	Unblocked	6	180	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $\frac{7}{8}$ " legs
2. Gypsum lath, plain or perforated	$\frac{3}{8}$ " lath and $\frac{1}{2}$ " plaster	Unblocked	5	100	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1\frac{1}{8}$ " long
3. Gypsum sheathing	$\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times 2' \times 8'$ $\frac{1}{2}$ " $\times 4'$	Unblocked	4	75	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1\frac{3}{4}$ " long
		Blocked <sup>d</sup> Unblocked	4 7	175 100	
4. Gypsum board, gypsum veneer base or water-resistant gypsum backing board	$\frac{1}{2}$ "	Unblocked <sup>d</sup> Unblocked <sup>d</sup> Unblocked Unblocked Blocked <sup>e</sup> Blocked <sup>e</sup>	7 4 7 4 7 4	75 110 100 125 125 150	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1\frac{1}{2}$ " long
		Unblocked <sup>d</sup>	7	115	
		Unblocked <sup>d</sup>	4	145	
		Blocked <sup>e</sup>	7	145	
		Blocked <sup>e</sup>	4	175	
		Blocked <sup>e</sup> Two-ply	Base ply: 9 Face ply: 7	250	
	$\frac{5}{8}$ "	Unblocked <sup>d</sup>	7	115	No. 16 gage galv. staple, $1\frac{5}{8}$ " long
		Unblocked <sup>d</sup>	4	145	
		Blocked <sup>e</sup>	7	145	
		Blocked <sup>e</sup>	4	175	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.5939 N/m.

- a. These shear walls shall not be used to resist loads imposed by masonry or concrete walls (see AWC SDPWS). Values shown are for short-term loading due to wind or seismic loading. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7. Values shown shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.
- b. Applies to fastening at studs, top and bottom plates and blocking.
- c. Except as noted, shear values are based on a maximum framing spacing of 16 inches on center.
- d. Maximum framing spacing of 24 inches on center.
- e. All edges are blocked, and edge fastening is provided at all supports and all panel edges.
- f. Staples shall have a minimum crown width of  $\frac{7}{16}$  inch, measured outside the legs, and shall be installed with their crowns parallel to the long dimension of the framing members.
- g. Staples for the attachment of gypsum lath and woven-wire lath shall have a minimum crown width of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch, measured outside the legs.

## SECTION 2307 LOAD AND RESISTANCE FACTOR DESIGN

**2307.1 Load and resistance factor design.** The design and construction of wood elements and structures using load and resistance factor design shall be in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS and AWC SDPWS.

## SECTION 2308 CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION

**2308.1 General.** The requirements of this section are intended for conventional light-frame construction. Other construction methods are permitted to be used, provided that a satisfactory design is submitted showing compliance with other provisions of this code. Interior nonload-bearing partitions, ceilings and curtain walls of conventional light-frame construction are not subject to the limitations of Section 2308.2.

**2308.1.1 Portions exceeding limitations of conventional light-frame construction.** Where portions of a building of otherwise conventional light-frame construction exceed the limits of Section 2308.2, those portions and the supporting load path shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code. For the purposes of this section, the term "portions" shall mean parts of buildings containing volume and area such as a room or a series of rooms. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of the nonconventional light-framed elements with other applicable provisions of this code and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventional light-framed system.

**2308.1.2 Connections and fasteners.** Connectors and fasteners used in conventional construction shall comply with the requirements of Section 2304.10.

**2308.2 Limitations.** Buildings are permitted to be constructed in accordance with the provisions of conventional light-frame construction, subject to the limitations in Sections 2308.2.1 through 2308.2.6.

**2308.2.1 Stories.** Structures of conventional light-frame construction shall be limited in story height in accordance with Table 2308.2.1.

**TABLE 2308.2.1  
ALLOWABLE STORY HEIGHT**

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	ALLOWABLE STORY ABOVE GRADE PLANE
A and B	Three stories
C	Two stories
D and E <sup>a</sup>	One story

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. For the purposes of this section, for buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, cripple walls shall be considered to be a story unless cripple walls are solid blocked and do not exceed 14 inches in height.

**2308.2.2 Allowable floor-to-floor height.** Maximum floor-to-floor height shall not exceed 11 feet, 7 inches (3531 mm). Exterior bearing wall and interior braced wall heights shall not exceed a stud height of 10 feet (3048 mm).

**2308.2.3 Allowable loads.** Loads shall be in accordance with Chapter 16 and shall not exceed the following:

1. Average dead loads shall not exceed 15 psf (718 N/m<sup>2</sup>) for combined roof and ceiling, exterior walls, floors and partitions.

**Exceptions:**

1. Subject to the limitations of Section 2308.6.10, stone or masonry veneer up to the less of 5 inches (127 mm) thick or 50 pounds per square foot (2395 N/m<sup>2</sup>) and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 is permitted to a height of 30 feet (9144 mm) above a noncombustible foundation, with an additional 8 feet (2439) permitted for gable ends.
2. Concrete or masonry fireplaces, heaters and chimneys shall be permitted in accordance with the provisions of this code.
2. Live loads shall not exceed 40 psf (1916 N/m<sup>2</sup>) for floors.

**Exception:** Live loads for concrete slab-on-ground floors in Risk Categories I and II shall be not more than 125 psf.

3. Ground snow loads shall not exceed 50 psf (2395 N/m<sup>2</sup>).

**2308.2.4 Basic wind speed.**  $V$  shall not exceed 130 miles per hour (57 m/s) (3-second gust).

**Exceptions:**

1.  $V$  shall not exceed 140 mph (63 m/s) (3-second gust) for buildings in Exposure Category B that are not located in a hurricane-prone region.
2. Where  $V$  exceeds 130 mph (3-second gust), the provisions of either AWC WFCM or ICC 600 are permitted to be used.

**2308.2.5 Allowable roof span.** Ceiling joist and rafter framing constructed in accordance with Section 2308.7 and trusses shall not span more than 40 feet (12 192 mm) between points of vertical support. A ridge board in accordance with Section 2308.7 or 2308.7.3.1 shall not be considered a vertical support.

**2308.2.6 Risk category limitation.** The use of the provisions for conventional light-frame construction in this section shall not be permitted for Risk Category IV buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category B, C, D or F.

**2308.2.7 Additional requirements [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** The use of conventional light-frame construction provisions in this section is permitted, subject to the following conditions:

1. The design and construction shall also comply with Section 2304 and Section 2305.
2. In conjunction with the use of provisions in Section 2308.6 (Wall bracing), engineering analysis shall be furnished that demonstrates compliance of lateral-force-resisting systems with Section 2305.

3. In addition to the use of provisions in Section 2308.4 (Floor framing), engineering analysis shall be furnished that demonstrates compliance of floor framing elements and connections with Section 2302.1, Item 1 or 2.
4. In addition to the use of provisions in Section 2308.5 (Wall construction), engineering analysis shall be furnished that demonstrates compliance of wall framing elements and connections with Section 2302.1, Item 1 or 2.
5. In addition to the use of provisions in Section 2308.7 (Roof and Ceiling Framing), engineering analysis shall be furnished demonstrating compliance of roof and ceiling framing elements and connections with Section 2302.1, Item 1 or 2.

**2308.3 Foundations and footings.** Foundations and footings shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter 18. Connections to foundations and footings shall comply with this section.

**2308.3.1 Foundation plates or sills.** Foundation plates or sills resting on concrete or masonry foundations shall comply with Section 2304.3.1. Foundation plates or sills shall be bolted or anchored to the foundation with not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-diameter (12.7 mm) steel bolts or approved anchors spaced to provide equivalent anchorage as the steel bolts. Bolts shall be embedded not less than 7 inches (178 mm) into concrete or masonry. The bolts shall be located in the middle third of the width of the plate. Bolts shall be spaced not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) on center and there shall be not less than two bolts or anchor straps per piece with one bolt or anchor strap located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) or less than 4 inches (102 mm) from each end of each piece. Bolts in sill plates of braced wall lines in structures over two stories above grade shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. A properly sized nut and washer shall be tightened on each bolt to the plate.

**2308.3.1.1 Braced wall line sill plate anchorage in Seismic Design Category D.** Sill plates along braced wall lines in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category D shall be anchored with not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) diameter anchor bolts with steel plate washers between the foundation sill plate and the nut, or approved anchor straps load-rated in accordance with Section 2304.10.4 and spaced to provide equivalent anchorage. Plate washers shall be not less than 0.229 inch by 3 inches by 3 inches (5.82 mm by 76 mm by 76 mm) in size. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.76 mm) larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (44 mm), provided that a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

**2308.3.1.2 Braced wall line sill plate anchorage in Seismic Design Category E.** Sill plates along braced wall lines in buildings assigned to Seismic Design Category E shall be anchored with not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch diameter (15.9 mm) anchor bolts with steel plate washers between the foundation sill plate and the nut, or

approved anchor straps load-rated in accordance with Section 2304.10.4 and spaced to provide equivalent anchorage. Plate washers shall be not less than 0.229 inch by 3 inches by 3 inches (5.82 mm by 76 mm by 76 mm) in size. The hole in the plate washer is permitted to be diagonally slotted with a width of up to  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.76 mm) larger than the bolt diameter and a slot length not to exceed  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (44 mm), provided that a standard cut washer is placed between the plate washer and the nut.

**2308.4 Floor framing.** Floor framing shall comply with this section.

**2308.4.1 Girders.** Girders for single-story construction or girders supporting loads from a single floor shall be not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) for spans 6 feet (1829 mm) or less, provided that girders are spaced not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center. Other girders shall be designed to support the loads specified in this code. Girder end joints shall occur over supports.

Where a girder is spliced over a support, an adequate tie shall be provided. The ends of beams or girders supported on masonry or concrete shall not have less than 3 inches (76 mm) of bearing.

**2308.4.1.1 Allowable girder spans.** The allowable spans of girders that are fabricated of dimension lumber shall not exceed the values set forth in Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2).

**2308.4.2 Floor joists.** Floor joists shall comply with this section.

**2308.4.2.1 Span.** Spans for floor joists shall be in accordance with Table 2308.4.2.1(1), Table 2308.4.2.1(2) or the AWC STJR.

**2308.4.2.2 Bearing.** The ends of each joist shall have not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) of bearing on wood or metal, or not less than 3 inches (76 mm) on masonry, except where supported on a 1-inch by 4-inch (25 mm by 102 mm) ribbon strip and nailed to the adjoining stud.

**2308.4.2.3 Framing details.** Joists shall be supported laterally at the ends and at each support by solid blocking except where the ends of the joists are nailed to a header, band or rim joist or to an adjoining stud or by other means. Solid blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness and the full depth of the joist. Joist framing from opposite sides of a beam, girder or partition shall be lapped not less than 3 inches (76 mm) or the opposing joists shall be tied together in an approved manner. Joists framing into the side of a wood girder shall be supported by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

**2308.4.2.4 Notches and holes.** Notches on the ends of joists shall not exceed one-fourth the joist depth. Notches in the top or bottom of joists shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle third of the span. Holes bored in joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top or bottom of the joist and the diameter of any such hole shall not exceed one-third the depth of the joist.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.4.1.1(1)**  
**HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS<sup>a,b</sup> FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS**  
**(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine-fir and required number of jack studs)**

GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf) <sup>e</sup>																			
		30						50						70							
		Building width <sup>c</sup> (feet)																			
		12		24		36		12		24		36		12		24		36			
Roof and ceiling	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>			
	1-2 × 6	4-0	1	3-1	2	2-7	2	3-5	1	2-8	2	2-3	2	3-0	2	2-4	2	2-0	2		
	1-2 × 8	5-1	2	3-11	2	3-3	2	4-4	2	3-4	2	2-10	2	3-10	2	3-0	2	2-6	3		
	1-2 × 10	6-0	2	4-8	2	3-11	2	5-2	2	4-0	2	3-4	3	4-7	2	3-6	3	3-0	3		
	1-2 × 12	7-1	2	5-5	2	4-7	3	6-1	2	4-8	3	3-11	3	5-5	2	4-2	3	3-6	3		
	2-2 × 4	4-0	1	3-1	1	2-7	1	3-5	1	2-7	1	2-2	1	3-0	1	2-4	1	2-0	1		
	2-2 × 6	6-0	1	4-7	1	3-10	1	5-1	1	3-11	1	3-3	2	4-6	1	3-6	2	2-11	2		
	2-2 × 8	7-7	1	5-9	1	4-10	2	6-5	1	5-0	2	4-2	2	5-9	1	4-5	2	3-9	2		
	2-2 × 10	9-0	1	6-10	2	5-9	2	7-8	2	5-11	2	4-11	2	6-9	2	5-3	2	4-5	2		
	2-2 × 12	10-7	2	8-1	2	6-10	2	9-0	2	6-11	2	5-10	2	8-0	2	6-2	2	5-2	3		
	3-2 × 8	9-5	1	7-3	1	6-1	1	8-1	1	6-3	1	5-3	2	7-2	1	5-6	2	4-8	2		
	3-2 × 10	11-3	1	8-7	1	7-3	2	9-7	1	7-4	2	6-2	2	8-6	1	6-7	2	5-6	2		
	3-2 × 12	13-2	1	10-1	2	8-6	2	11-3	2	8-8	2	7-4	2	10-0	2	7-9	2	6-6	2		
	4-2 × 8	10-11	1	8-4	1	7-0	1	9-4	1	7-2	1	6-0	1	8-3	1	6-4	1	5-4	2		
	4-2 × 10	12-11	1	9-11	1	8-4	1	11-1	1	8-6	1	7-2	2	9-10	1	7-7	2	6-4	2		
	4-2 × 12	15-3	1	11-8	1	9-10	2	13-0	1	10-0	2	8-5	2	11-7	1	8-11	2	7-6	2		
Roof, ceiling and center- bearing floor	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>			
	1-2 × 6	3-3	1	2-7	2	2-2	2	3-0	2	2-4	2	2-0	2	2-9	2	2-2	2	1-10	2		
	1-2 × 8	4-1	2	3-3	2	2-9	2	3-9	2	3-0	2	2-6	3	3-6	2	2-9	2	2-4	3		
	1-2 × 10	4-11	2	3-10	2	3-3	3	4-6	2	3-6	3	3-0	3	4-1	2	3-3	3	2-9	3		
	1-2 × 12	5-9	2	4-6	3	3-10	3	5-3	2	4-2	3	3-6	3	4-10	3	3-10	3	3-3	4		
	2-2 × 4	3-3	1	2-6	1	2-2	1	3-0	1	2-4	1	2-0	1	2-8	1	2-2	1	1-10	1		
	2-2 × 6	4-10	1	3-9	1	3-3	2	4-5	1	3-6	2	3-0	2	4-1	1	3-3	2	2-9	2		
	2-2 × 8	6-1	1	4-10	2	4-1	2	5-7	2	4-5	2	3-9	2	5-2	2	4-1	2	3-6	2		
	2-2 × 10	7-3	2	5-8	2	4-10	2	6-8	2	5-3	2	4-5	2	6-1	2	4-10	2	4-1	2		
	2-2 × 12	8-6	2	6-8	2	5-8	2	7-10	2	6-2	2	5-3	3	7-2	2	5-8	2	4-10	3		
	3-2 × 8	7-8	1	6-0	1	5-1	2	7-0	1	5-6	2	4-8	2	6-5	1	5-1	2	4-4	2		
	3-2 × 10	9-1	1	7-2	2	6-1	2	8-4	1	6-7	2	5-7	2	7-8	2	6-1	2	5-2	2		
	3-2 × 12	10-8	2	8-5	2	7-2	2	9-10	2	7-8	2	6-7	2	9-0	2	7-1	2	6-1	2		
	4-2 × 8	8-10	1	6-11	1	5-11	1	8-1	1	6-4	1	5-5	2	7-5	1	5-11	1	5-0	2		
	4-2 × 10	10-6	1	8-3	2	7-0	2	9-8	1	7-7	2	6-5	2	8-10	1	7-0	2	6-0	2		
	4-2 × 12	12-4	1	9-8	2	8-3	2	11-4	2	8-11	2	7-7	2	10-4	2	8-3	2	7-0	2		
Roof, ceiling and one clear span floor	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>			
	1-2 × 6	2-11	2	2-3	2	1-11	2	2-9	2	2-1	2	1-9	2	2-7	2	2-0	2	1-8	2		
	1-2 × 8	3-9	2	2-10	2	2-5	3	3-6	2	2-8	2	2-3	3	3-3	2	2-6	3	2-2	3		
	1-2 × 10	4-5	2	3-5	3	2-10	3	4-2	2	3-2	3	2-8	3	3-11	2	3-0	3	2-6	3		
	1-2 × 12	5-2	2	4-0	3	3-4	3	4-10	3	3-9	3	3-2	4	4-7	3	3-6	3	3-0	4		
	2-2 × 4	2-11	1	2-3	1	1-10	1	2-9	1	2-1	1	1-9	1	2-7	1	2-0	1	1-8	1		
	2-2 × 6	4-4	1	3-4	2	2-10	2	4-1	1	3-2	2	2-8	2	3-10	1	3-0	2	2-6	2		
	2-2 × 8	5-6	2	4-3	2	3-7	2	5-2	2	4-0	2	3-4	2	4-10	2	3-9	2	3-2	2		
	2-2 × 10	6-7	2	5-0	2	4-2	2	6-1	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	5-9	2	4-5	2	3-9	3		
	2-2 × 12	7-9	2	5-11	2	4-11	3	7-2	2	5-7	2	4-8	3	6-9	2	5-3	3	4-5	3		
	3-2 × 8	6-11	1	5-3	2	4-5	2	6-5	1	5-0	2	4-2	2	6-1	1	4-8	2	4-0	2		
	3-2 × 10	8-3	2	6-3	2	5-3	2	7-8	2	5-11	2	5-0	2	7-3	2	5-7	2	4-8	2		
	3-2 × 12	9-8	2	7-5	2	6-2	2	9-0	2	7-0	2	5-10	2	8-6	2	6-7	2	5-6	3		
	4-2 × 8	8-0	1	6-1	1	5-1	2	7-5	1	5-9	2	4-10	2	7-0	1	5-5	2	4-7	2		
	4-2 × 10	9-6	1	7-3	2	6-1	2	8-10	1	6-10	2	5-9	2	8-4	1	6-5	2	5-5	2		
	4-2 × 12	11-2	2	8-6	2	7-2	2	10-5	2	8-0	2	6-9	2	9-10	2	7-7	2	6-5	2		

(continued)

**TABLE 2308.4.1.1(1)—continued**  
**HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS<sup>a,b</sup> FOR EXTERIOR BEARING WALLS**  
**(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine-fir and required number of jack studs)**

GIRDERS AND HEADERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	GROUND SNOW LOAD (psf) <sup>e</sup>																	
		30						50						70					
		Building width <sup>c</sup> (feet)																	
		12		24		36		12		24		36		12		24		36	
Roof, ceiling and two center-bearing floors	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>f</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	
	1-2 × 6	2-8	2	2-1	2	1-10	2	2-7	2	2-0	2	1-9	2	2-5	2	1-11	2	1-8	2
	1-2 × 8	3-5	2	2-8	2	2-4	3	3-3	2	2-7	2	2-2	3	3-1	2	2-5	3	2-1	3
	1-2 × 10	4-0	2	3-2	3	2-9	3	3-10	2	3-1	3	2-7	3	3-8	2	2-11	3	2-5	3
	1-2 × 12	4-9	3	3-9	3	3-2	4	4-6	3	3-7	3	3-1	4	4-3	3	3-5	3	2-11	4
	2-2 × 4	2-8	1	2-1	1	1-9	1	2-6	1	2-0	1	1-8	1	2-5	1	1-11	1	1-7	1
	2-2 × 6	4-0	1	3-2	2	2-8	2	3-9	1	3-0	2	2-7	2	3-7	1	2-10	2	2-5	2
	2-2 × 8	5-0	2	4-0	2	3-5	2	4-10	2	3-10	2	3-3	2	4-7	2	3-7	2	3-1	2
	2-2 × 10	6-0	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	5-8	2	4-6	2	3-10	3	5-5	2	4-3	2	3-8	3
	2-2 × 12	7-0	2	5-7	2	4-9	3	6-8	2	5-4	3	4-6	3	6-4	2	5-0	3	4-3	3
	3-2 × 8	6-4	1	5-0	2	4-3	2	6-0	1	4-9	2	4-1	2	5-8	2	4-6	2	3-10	2
	3-2 × 10	7-6	2	5-11	2	5-1	2	7-1	2	5-8	2	4-10	2	6-9	2	5-4	2	4-7	2
	3-2 × 12	8-10	2	7-0	2	5-11	2	8-5	2	6-8	2	5-8	3	8-0	2	6-4	2	5-4	3
	4-2 × 8	7-3	1	5-9	1	4-11	2	6-11	1	5-6	2	4-8	2	6-7	1	5-2	2	4-5	2
	4-2 × 10	8-8	1	6-10	2	5-10	2	8-3	2	6-6	2	5-7	2	7-10	2	6-2	2	5-3	2
	4-2 × 12	10-2	2	8-1	2	6-10	2	9-8	2	7-8	2	6-7	2	9-2	2	7-3	2	6-2	2
Roof, ceiling and two clear span floors	1-2 × 6	2-3	2	1-9	2	1-5	2	2-3	2	1-9	2	1-5	3	2-2	2	1-8	2	1-5	3
	1-2 × 8	2-10	2	2-2	3	1-10	3	2-10	2	2-2	3	1-10	3	2-9	2	2-1	3	1-10	3
	1-2 × 10	3-4	2	2-7	3	2-2	3	3-4	3	2-7	3	2-2	4	3-3	3	2-6	3	2-2	4
	1-2 × 12	4-0	3	3-0	3	2-7	4	4-0	3	3-0	4	2-7	4	3-10	3	3-0	4	2-6	4
	2-2 × 4	2-3	1	1-8	1	1-4	1	2-3	1	1-8	1	1-4	1	2-2	1	1-8	1	1-4	2
	2-2 × 6	3-4	1	2-6	2	2-2	2	3-4	2	2-6	2	2-2	2	3-3	2	2-6	2	2-1	2
	2-2 × 8	4-3	2	3-3	2	2-8	2	4-3	2	3-3	2	2-8	2	4-1	2	3-2	2	2-8	3
	2-2 × 10	5-0	2	3-10	2	3-2	3	5-0	2	3-10	2	3-2	3	4-10	2	3-9	3	3-2	3
	2-2 × 12	5-11	2	4-6	3	3-9	3	5-11	2	4-6	3	3-9	3	5-8	2	4-5	3	3-9	3
	3-2 × 8	5-3	1	4-0	2	3-5	2	5-3	2	4-0	2	3-5	2	5-1	2	3-11	2	3-4	2
	3-2 × 10	6-3	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	6-3	2	4-9	2	4-0	2	6-1	2	4-8	2	4-0	3
	3-2 × 12	7-5	2	5-8	2	4-9	3	7-5	2	5-8	2	4-9	3	7-2	2	5-6	3	4-8	3
	4-2 × 8	6-1	1	4-8	2	3-11	2	6-1	1	4-8	2	3-11	2	5-11	1	4-7	2	3-10	2
	4-2 × 10	7-3	2	5-6	2	4-8	2	7-3	2	5-6	2	4-8	2	7-0	2	5-5	2	4-7	2
	4-2 × 12	8-6	2	6-6	2	5-6	2	8-6	2	6-6	2	5-6	2	8-3	2	6-4	2	5-4	3

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Spans are given in feet and inches.

b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine fir.

c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.

d. NJ = Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.

e. Use 30 psf ground snow load for cases in which ground snow load is less than 30 psf and the roof live load is equal to or less than 20 psf.

f. Spans are calculated assuming the top of the header or girder is laterally braced by perpendicular framing. Where the top of the header or girder is not laterally braced (for example, cripple studs bearing on the header), tabulated spans for headers consisting of 2 × 8, 2 × 10, or 2 × 12 sizes shall be multiplied by 0.70 or the header or girder shall be designed.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.4.1.1(2)**  
**HEADER AND GIRDER SPANS<sup>a,b</sup> FOR INTERIOR BEARING WALLS**  
**(Maximum spans for Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine-fir and required number of jack studs)**

HEADERS AND GIRDERS SUPPORTING	SIZE	BUILDING WIDTH <sup>c</sup> (feet)					
		12		24		36	
		Span <sup>e</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>e</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>	Span <sup>e</sup>	NJ <sup>d</sup>
One floor only	2-2 × 4	4-1	1	2-10	1	2-4	1
	2-2 × 6	6-1	1	4-4	1	3-6	1
	2-2 × 8	7-9	1	5-5	1	4-5	2
	2-2 × 10	9-2	1	6-6	2	5-3	2
	2-2 × 12	10-9	1	7-7	2	6-3	2
	3-2 × 8	9-8	1	6-10	1	5-7	1
	3-2 × 10	11-5	1	8-1	1	6-7	2
	3-2 × 12	13-6	1	9-6	2	7-9	2
	4-2 × 8	11-2	1	7-11	1	6-5	1
	4-2 × 10	13-3	1	9-4	1	7-8	1
Two floors	4-2 × 12	15-7	1	11-0	1	9-0	2
	2-2 × 4	2-7	1	1-11	1	1-7	1
	2-2 × 6	3-11	1	2-11	2	2-5	2
	2-2 × 8	5-0	1	3-8	2	3-1	2
	2-2 × 10	5-11	2	4-4	2	3-7	2
	2-2 × 12	6-11	2	5-2	2	4-3	3
	3-2 × 8	6-3	1	4-7	2	3-10	2
	3-2 × 10	7-5	1	5-6	2	4-6	2
	3-2 × 12	8-8	2	6-5	2	5-4	2
	4-2 × 8	7-2	1	5-4	1	4-5	2
	4-2 × 10	8-6	1	6-4	2	5-3	2
	4-2 × 12	10-1	1	7-5	2	6-2	2

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Spans are given in feet and inches.
- b. Spans are based on minimum design properties for No. 2 grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, Southern pine and spruce-pine fir.
- c. Building width is measured perpendicular to the ridge. For widths between those shown, spans are permitted to be interpolated.
- d. NJ = Number of jack studs required to support each end. Where the number of required jack studs equals one, the header is permitted to be supported by an approved framing anchor attached to the full-height wall stud and to the header.
- e. Spans are calculated assuming the top of the header or girder is laterally braced by perpendicular framing. Where the top of the header or girder is not laterally braced (for example, cripple studs bearing on the header), tabulated spans for headers consisting of 2 × 8, 2 × 10, or 2 × 12 sizes shall be multiplied by 0.70 or the header or girder shall be designed.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.4.2.1(1)**  
**FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
(Residential sleeping areas, live load = 30 psf, L/Δ = 360)

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum floor joist spans								
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	12-6	16-6	21-0	25-7	12-6	16-6	21-0	25-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	12-0	15-10	20-3	24-8	12-0	15-7	19-0	22-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	11-10	15-7	19-10	23-0	11-6	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Hem-Fir	SS	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	11-7	15-2	18-6	21-6
	Hem-Fir	#2	11-0	14-6	18-6	22-6	11-0	14-4	17-6	20-4
	Hem-Fir	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
	Southern Pine	SS	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1
	Southern Pine	#1	11-10	15-7	19-10	24-2	11-10	15-7	18-7	22-0
	Southern Pine	#2	11-3	14-11	18-1	21-4	10-9	13-8	16-2	19-1
	Southern Pine	#3	9-2	11-6	14-0	16-6	8-2	10-3	12-6	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	11-3	14-11	19-0	23-0	11-3	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	11-3	14-11	19-0	23-0	11-3	14-7	17-9	20-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-11	14-5	18-5	21-4	10-8	13-6	16-5	19-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-9	14-1	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-6	13-10	17-8	20-9	10-4	13-1	16-0	18-7
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-0	13-2	16-10	19-8	9-10	12-5	15-2	17-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6
	Southern Pine	SS	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10
	Southern Pine	#1	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-4	10-9	13-9	16-1	19-1
	Southern Pine	#2	10-3	13-3	15-8	18-6	9-4	11-10	14-0	16-6
	Southern Pine	#3	7-11	10-10	12-1	14-4	7-1	8-11	10-10	12-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-3	13-6	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-3	13-6	17-2	19-11	9-11	12-7	15-5	17-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-5	10-8	13-0	15-1	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.4.2.1(1)—continued**  
**FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Residential sleeping areas, live load = 30 psf, L/Δ = 360)**

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf			
		2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
		Maximum floor joist spans							
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-8	14-1	18-0	21-10	10-8	14-1	18-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-4	13-7	16-9	19-6	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-1	12-10	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-1	13-4	17-0	20-8	10-1	13-4	17-0
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-10	13-0	16-4	19-0	9-6	12-0	14-8
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-5	12-5	15-6	17-1	8-11	11-4	13-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7
	Southern Pine	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8
	Southern Pine	#1	10-1	13-4	16-5	19-6	9-11	12-7	14-8
	Southern Pine	#2	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10	8-6	10-10	12-10
	Southern Pine	#3	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1	6-5	8-2	9-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-10	13-0	16-7	20-2	9-10	13-0	16-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-8	12-9	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-8	12-9	15-8	18-3	9-1	11-6	14-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9	6-10	8-8	10-7
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-11	13-1	16-8	20-3	9-11	13-1	16-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-7	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-8	11-0	13-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-4	12-4	15-9	19-2	9-4	12-4	15-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-2	12-0	14-8	17-0	8-6	10-9	13-1
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-9	11-4	13-10	16-1	8-0	10-2	12-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6
	Southern Pine	SS	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	9-9	12-10	16-5
	Southern Pine	#1	9-4	12-4	14-8	17-5	8-10	11-3	13-1
	Southern Pine	#2	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1	7-7	9-8	11-5
	Southern Pine	#3	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8	5-9	7-3	8-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9	9-2	12-1	15-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-11	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-11	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-1	10-3	12-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-2	7-9	9-6

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**Note:** Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.4.2.1(2)**  
**FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum floor joist spans								
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	23-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-11	14-5	18-5	22-0	10-11	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-9	14-2	17-9	20-7	10-6	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	16-11	19-7
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-0	13-2	16-10	20-4	10-0	13-1	16-0	18-6
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Southern Pine	SS	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10
	Southern Pine	#1	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	10-9	14-2	16-11	20-1
	Southern Pine	#2	10-3	13-6	16-2	19-1	9-10	12-6	14-9	17-5
	Southern Pine	#3	8-2	10-3	12-6	14-9	7-5	9-5	11-5	13-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6	10-6	13-10	17-8	21-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-3	13-6	17-3	20-7	10-3	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-3	13-6	17-3	20-7	10-3	13-3	16-3	18-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-4	13-7	17-4	21-1	10-4	13-7	17-4	21-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-11	13-1	16-5	19-1	9-8	12-4	15-0	17-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-9	12-7	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-6	12-7	16-0	18-7	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-1	12-0	15-2	17-7	8-11	11-4	13-10	16-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9
	Southern Pine	#1	9-9	12-10	16-1	19-1	9-9	12-7	14-8	17-5
	Southern Pine	#2	9-4	11-10	14-0	16-6	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1
	Southern Pine	#3	7-1	8-11	10-10	12-10	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-4	12-3	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-4	12-3	15-5	17-10	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-6	9-6	11-8	13-6	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.4.2.1(2)—continued**  
**FLOOR JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Residential living areas, live load = 40 psf, L/Δ = 360)**

JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum floor joist spans								
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-8	12-10	16-4	19-10	9-8	12-10	16-4	19-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-4	12-4	15-0	17-5	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-1	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9	9-2	12-1	15-5	18-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-0	11-10	14-8	17-0	8-8	10-11	13-4	15-6
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-7	11-3	13-10	16-1	8-2	10-4	12-8	14-8
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
	Southern Pine	SS	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-6
	Southern Pine	#1	9-2	12-1	14-8	17-5	9-0	11-5	13-5	15-11
	Southern Pine	#2	8-6	10-10	12-10	15-1	7-9	9-10	11-8	13-9
	Southern Pine	#3	6-5	8-2	9-10	11-8	5-11	7-5	9-0	10-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-0	11-10	15-1	18-4	9-0	11-10	15-1	17-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#	8-9	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-9	11-6	14-1	16-3	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-10	8-8	10-7	12-4	6-3	7-11	9-8	11-3
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-0	11-11	15-2	18-5	9-0	11-11	14-9	17-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-8	11-0	13-5	15-7	7-11	10-0	12-3	14-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-6	11-3	14-4	17-5	8-6	11-3	14-4	16-10 <sup>a</sup>
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-4	10-9	13-1	15-2	7-9	9-9	11-11	13-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-11	10-2	12-5	14-4	7-4	9-3	11-4	13-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1
	Southern Pine	SS	8-10	11-8	14-11	18-1	8-10	11-8	14-11	18-0
	Southern Pine	#1	8-6	11-3	13-1	15-7	8-1	10-3	12-0	14-3
	Southern Pine	#2	7-7	9-8	11-5	13-6	7-0	8-10	10-5	12-4
	Southern Pine	#3	5-9	7-3	8-10	10-5	5-3	6-8	8-1	9-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-4	11-0	14-0	17-0	8-4	11-0	13-8	15-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7	7-5	9-5	11-6	13-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-2	7-9	9-6	11-0	5-7	7-1	8-8	10-1

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

**Note:** Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

a. End bearing length shall be increased to 2 inches.

**WOOD**

**2308.4.3 Engineered wood products.** Engineered wood products shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glued-laminated members or I-joists are not permitted except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

**2308.4.4 Framing around openings.** Trimmer and header joists shall be doubled, or of lumber of equivalent cross section, where the span of the header exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). The ends of header joists more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in length shall be supported by framing anchors or joist hangers unless bearing on a beam, partition or wall. Tail joists over 12 feet (3658 mm) in length shall be supported at the header by framing anchors or on ledger strips not less than 2 inches by 2 inches (51 mm by 51 mm).

**2308.4.4.1 Openings in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E.** Openings in horizontal diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E with a dimension that is greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed with metal ties and blocking in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.4.4.1(1). Metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] in thickness by  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) in width and shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 Mpa). Blocking shall extend not less than the dimension of the opening in the direction of the tie and blocking. Ties shall be attached to blocking in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but with not

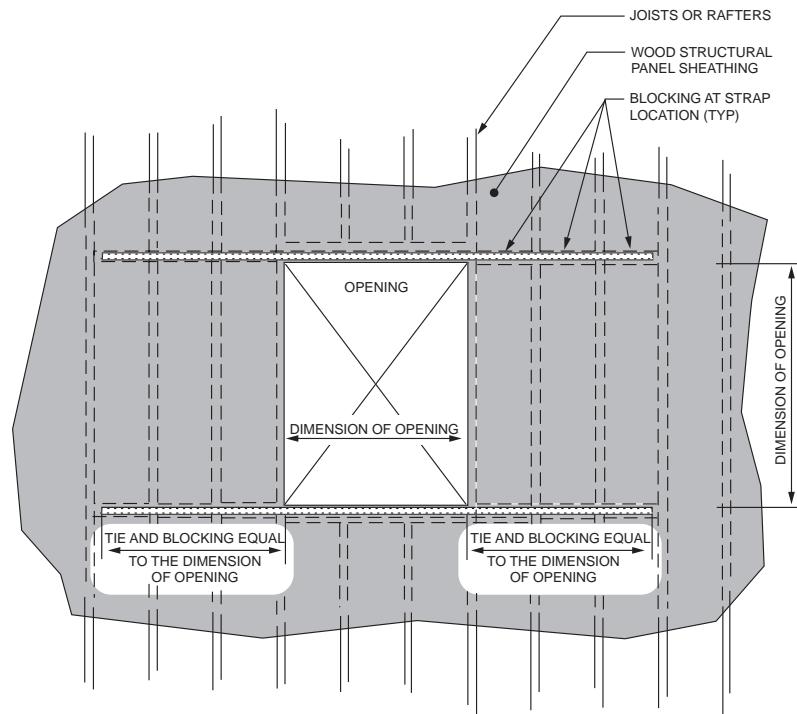
less than eight 16d common nails on each side of the header-joist intersection.

Openings in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories D and E shall not have any dimension exceeding 50 percent of the distance between braced wall lines or an area greater than 25 percent of the area between orthogonal pairs of braced wall lines [see Figure 2308.4.4.1(2)]; or the portion of the structure containing the opening shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice to resist the forces specified in Chapter 16, to the extent such irregular opening affects the performance of the conventional framing system.

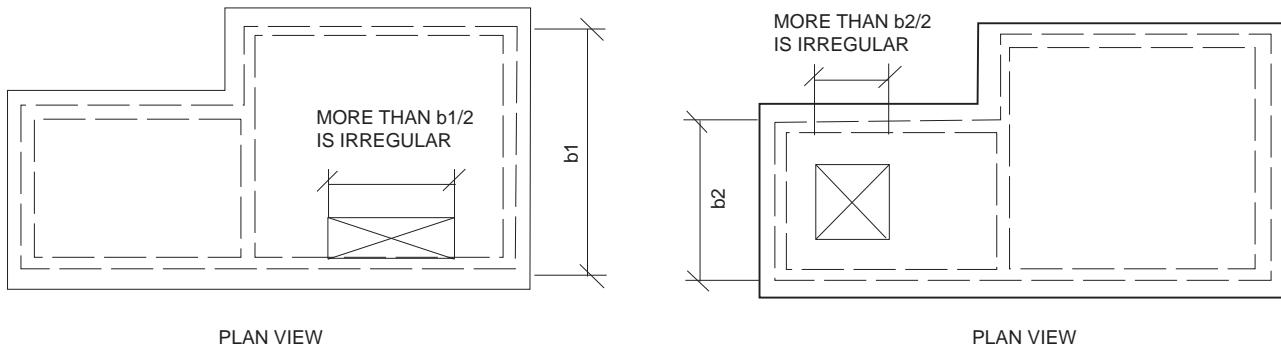
**2308.4.4.2 Vertical offsets in floor diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories D and E.** In Seismic Design Categories D and E, portions of a floor level shall not be vertically offset such that the framing members on either side of the offset cannot be lapped or tied together in an approved manner in accordance with Figure 2308.4.4.2 unless the portion of the structure containing the irregular offset is designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**Exception:** Framing supported directly by foundations need not be lapped or tied directly together.

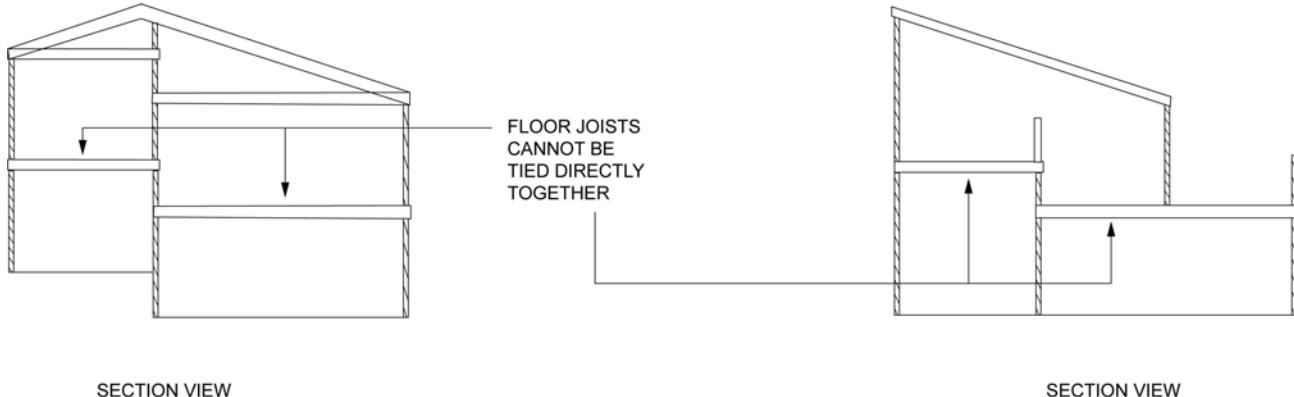
**2308.4.5 Joists supporting bearing partitions.** Bearing partitions parallel to joists shall be supported on beams, girders, doubled joists, walls or other bearing partitions. Bearing partitions perpendicular to joists shall not be offset from supporting girders, walls or partitions more than the joist depth unless such joists are of sufficient size to carry the additional load.



**FIGURE 2308.4.4.1(1)**  
**OPENINGS IN FLOOR AND ROOF DIAPHRAGMS**



**FIGURE 2308.4.4.1(2)**  
OPENING LIMITATIONS FOR FLOOR AND ROOF DIAPHRAGMS



**FIGURE 2308.4.4.2**  
PORTIONS OF FLOOR LEVEL OFFSET VERTICALLY

**2308.4.6 Lateral support.** Floor and ceiling framing with a nominal depth-to-thickness ratio not less than 5 to 1 shall have one edge held in line for the entire span. Where the nominal depth-to-thickness ratio of the framing member exceeds 6 to 1, there shall be one line of bridging for each 8 feet (2438 mm) of span, unless both edges of the member are held in line. The bridging shall consist of not less than 1-inch by 3-inch (25 mm by 76 mm) lumber, double nailed at each end, or equivalent metal bracing of equal rigidity, full-depth solid blocking or other approved means. A line of bridging shall be required at supports where equivalent lateral support is not otherwise provided.

**2308.4.7 Structural floor sheathing.** Structural floor sheathing shall comply with the provisions of Section 2304.8.1.

**2308.4.8 Under-floor ventilation.** For under-floor ventilation, see Section 1202.4.

**2308.4.9 Floor framing supporting braced wall panels.** Where braced wall panels are supported by cantilevered floors or are set back from the floor joist support, the floor framing shall comply with Section 2308.6.7.

**2308.4.10 Anchorage of exterior means of egress components in Seismic Design Categories D and E.**

Exterior egress balconies, exterior stairways and ramps and similar means of egress components in structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E shall be positively anchored to the primary structure at not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) on center or shall be designed for lateral forces. Such attachment shall not be accomplished by use of toenails or nails subject to withdrawal.

**2308.5 Wall construction.** Walls of conventional light-frame construction shall be in accordance with this section.

**2308.5.1 Stud size, height and spacing.** The size, height and spacing of studs shall be in accordance with Table 2308.5.1.

Studs shall be continuous from a support at the sole plate to a support at the top plate to resist loads perpendicular to the wall. The support shall be a foundation or floor, ceiling or roof diaphragm or shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**Exception:** Jack studs, trimmer studs and cripple studs at openings in walls that comply with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2).

**2308.5.2 Framing details.** Studs shall be placed with their wide dimension perpendicular to the wall. Not less than

**WOOD**

three studs shall be installed at each corner of an exterior wall.

**Exceptions:**

1. In interior nonbearing walls and partitions, studs are permitted to be set with the long dimension parallel to the wall.
2. At corners, two studs are permitted, provided that wood spacers or backup cleats of  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch-thick (9.5 mm) wood structural panel,  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) Type M "Exterior Glue" particleboard, 1-inch-thick (25 mm) lumber or other approved devices that will serve as an adequate backing for the attachment of facing materials are used. Where fire-resistance ratings or shear values are involved, wood spacers, backup cleats or other devices shall not be used unless specifically approved for such use.

**2308.5.3 Plates and sills.** Studs shall have plates and sills in accordance with this section.

**2308.5.3.1 Bottom plate or sill.** Studs shall have full bearing on a plate or sill. Plates or sills shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness and have a width not less than the width of the wall studs.

**2308.5.3.2 Top plates.** Bearing and exterior wall studs shall be capped with double top plates installed to provide overlapping at corners and at intersections with other partitions. End joints in double top plates shall be offset not less than 48 inches (1219 mm), and shall be nailed in accordance with Table 2304.10.2. Plates shall be a nominal 2 inches (51 mm) in depth and have a width not less than the width of the studs.

**Exception:** A single top plate is permitted, provided that the plate is adequately tied at corners and intersecting walls by not less than the equivalent of 3-inch by 6-inch (76 mm by 152 mm) by 0.036-inch-thick (0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by six 8d [ $2\frac{1}{2}$ "]  $\times$  0.113" (64-mm by 2.87 mm) box nails or equivalent on each side of the joint. For the butt-joint splice

between adjacent single top plates, not less than the equivalent of a 3-inch by 12-inch (76 mm by 304 mm) by 0.036-inch-thick (0.914 mm) galvanized steel plate that is nailed to each wall or segment of wall by 12 8d [ $2\frac{1}{2}$ "]  $\times$  0.113-inch (64 mm by 2.87 mm) box nails on each side of the joint shall be required, provided that the rafters, joists or trusses are centered over the studs with a tolerance of not more than 1 inch (25 mm). The top plate shall not be required over headers that are in the same plane and in line with the upper surface of the adjacent top plates and are tied to adjacent wall sections as required for the butt joint splice between adjacent single top plates.

Where bearing studs are spaced at 24-inch (610 mm) intervals, top plates are less than two 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) or two 3-inch by 4-inch (76 mm by 102 mm) members and the floor joists, floor trusses or roof trusses that they support are spaced at more than 16-inch (406 mm) intervals, such joists or trusses shall bear within 5 inches (127 mm) of the studs beneath or a third plate shall be installed.

**2308.5.4 Nonload-bearing walls and partitions.** In nonload-bearing walls and partitions, that are not part of a braced wall panel, studs shall be spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) on center. In interior nonload-bearing walls and partitions, studs are permitted to be set with the long dimension parallel to the wall. Where studs are set with the long dimensions parallel to the wall, use of utility grade lumber or studs exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) is not permitted. Interior nonload-bearing partitions shall be capped with not less than a single top plate installed to provide overlapping at corners and at intersections with other walls and partitions. The plate shall be continuously tied at joints by solid blocking not less than 16 inches (406 mm) in length and equal in size to the plate or by  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch by  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm by 38 mm) metal ties with spliced sections fastened with two 16d nails on each side of the joint.

**TABLE 2308.5.1  
SIZE, HEIGHT AND SPACING OF WOOD STUDS<sup>c</sup>**

STUD SIZE (inches)	BEARING WALLS				NONBEARING WALLS	
	Laterally unsupported stud height <sup>a</sup> (feet)	Supporting roof and ceiling only	Supporting one floor, roof and ceiling	Supporting two floors, roof and ceiling	Laterally unsupported stud height <sup>a</sup> (feet)	Spacing (inches)
		Spacing (inches)				
2 $\times$ 3 <sup>b</sup>	—	—	—	—	10	16
2 $\times$ 4	10	24	16	—	14	24
3 $\times$ 4	10	24	24	16	14	24
2 $\times$ 5	10	24	24	—	16	24
2 $\times$ 6	10	24	24	16	20	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Listed heights are distances between points of lateral support placed perpendicular to the plane of the wall. Increases in unsupported height are permitted where justified by an analysis.
- b. Shall not be used in exterior walls.
- c. Utility-grade studs shall not be spaced more than 16 inches on center or support more than a roof and ceiling, or exceed 8 feet in height for exterior walls and load-bearing walls or 10 feet for interior nonload-bearing walls.

## WOOD

**2308.5.5 Openings in walls and partitions.** Openings in exterior and interior walls and partitions shall comply with Sections 2308.5.5.1 through 2308.5.5.3.

**2308.5.5.1 Openings in exterior bearing walls.** Headers shall be provided over each opening in exterior bearing walls. The size and spans in Table 2308.4.1.1(1) are permitted to be used for one- and two-family dwellings. Headers for other buildings shall be designed in accordance with Section 2302.1, Item 1 or 2. Headers of two or more pieces of nominal 2-inch (51 mm) framing lumber set on edge shall be permitted in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) and nailed together in accordance with Table 2304.10.2 or of solid lumber of equivalent size.

Single-member headers of nominal 2-inch (51 mm) thickness shall be framed with a single flat 2-inch-nominal (51 mm) member or wall plate not less in width than the wall studs on the top and bottom of the header in accordance with Figures 2308.5.5.1(1) and 2308.5.5.1(2) and face nailed to the top and bottom of the header with 10d box nails [3 inches × 0.128 inches (76 mm × 3.3 mm)] spaced 12 inches (305 mm) on center.

Wall studs shall support the ends of the header in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1). Each end of a lintel or header shall have a bearing length of not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) for the full width of the lintel.

**2308.5.5.2 Openings in interior bearing partitions.** Headers shall be provided over each opening in interior bearing partitions as required in Section 2308.5.5.1. The spans in Table 2308.4.1.1(2) are permitted to be used. Wall studs shall support the ends of the header in accordance with Table 2308.4.1.1(1) or 2308.4.1.1(2), as applicable.

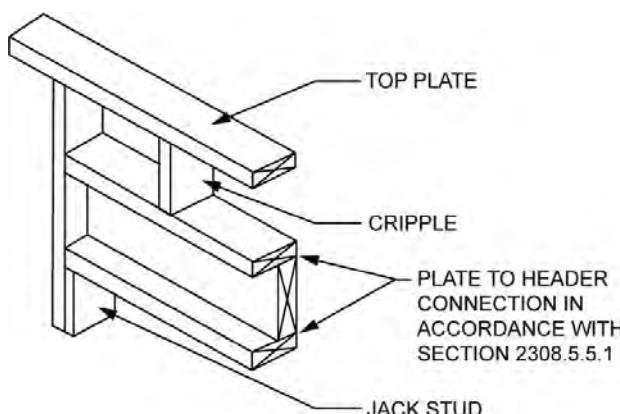
**2308.5.5.3 Openings in interior nonbearing partitions.** Openings in nonbearing partitions are permitted to be framed with single studs and headers. Each end of a lintel or header shall have a bearing length of not less than 1½ inches (38 mm) for the full width of the lintel.

**2308.5.6 Cripple walls.** Foundation cripple walls shall be framed of studs that are not less than the size of the studing above. Exterior cripple wall studs shall be not less than 14 inches (356 mm) in length, or shall be framed of solid blocking. Where exceeding 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, such walls shall be framed of studs having the size required for an additional story. See Section 2308.6.6 for cripple wall bracing.

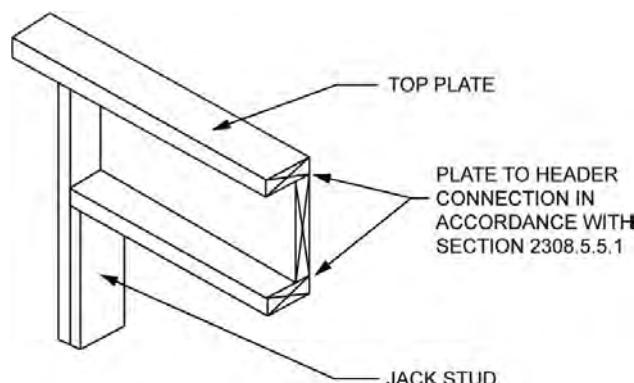
**2308.5.7 Bridging.** Unless covered by interior or exterior wall coverings or sheathing meeting the minimum requirements of this code, stud partitions or walls with studs having a height-to-least-thickness ratio exceeding 50 shall have bridging that is not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in thickness and of the same width as the studs fitted snugly and nailed thereto to provide adequate lateral support. Bridging shall be placed in every stud cavity and at a frequency such that studs so braced shall not have a height-to-least-thickness ratio exceeding 50 with the height of the stud measured between horizontal framing and bridging or between bridging, whichever is greater.

**2308.5.8 Pipes in walls.** Stud partitions containing plumbing, heating or other pipes shall be framed and the joists underneath spaced to provide proper clearance for the piping. Where a partition containing piping runs parallel to the floor joists, the joists underneath such partitions shall be doubled and spaced to permit the passage of pipes and shall be bridged. Where plumbing, heating or other pipes are placed in, or partly in, a partition, necessitating the cutting of the soles or plates, a metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.47 mm) (16 galvanized gage) and 1½ inches (38 mm) in width shall be fastened to each plate across and to each side of the opening with not less than six 16d nails.

**2308.5.9 Cutting and notching.** In exterior walls and bearing partitions, a wood stud shall not be cut or notched in excess of 25 percent of its depth. In nonbearing partitions that do not support loads other than the weight of the partition, a stud shall not be cut or notched in excess of 40 percent of its depth.



**FIGURE 2308.5.5.1(1)**  
**SINGLE-MEMBER HEADER IN EXTERIOR BEARING WALL**



**FIGURE 2308.5.5.1(2)**  
**ALTERNATIVE SINGLE-MEMBER HEADER WITHOUT CRIPPLE**

**WOOD**

**2308.5.10 Bored holes.** The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 40 percent of the stud depth. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in nonbearing partitions. The diameter of bored holes in wood studs shall not exceed 60 percent of the stud depth in any wall where each stud is doubled, provided that not more than two such successive doubled studs are so bored. The edge of the bored hole shall not be closer than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) to the edge of the stud. Bored holes shall not be located at the same section of stud as a cut or notch.

**2308.5.11 Exterior wall sheathing.** Except where stucco construction that complies with Section 2510 is installed, the outside of exterior walls, including gables, of enclosed buildings shall be sheathed with one of the materials of the nominal thickness specified in Table 2308.5.11 with fasteners in accordance with the requirements of Section 2304.10 or fasteners designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice. Alternatively, sheathing materials and fasteners complying with Section 2304.6 shall be permitted.

**2308.6 Wall bracing.** Buildings shall be provided with exterior and interior braced wall lines as described in Sections 2308.6.1 through 2308.6.10.2.

**2308.6.1 Braced wall lines.** For the purpose of determining the amount and location of bracing required along each story level of a building, braced wall lines shall be designated as straight lines through the building plan in both the longitudinal and transverse direction and placed in accordance with Table 2308.6.1 and Figure 2308.6.1. Braced wall line spacing shall not exceed the distance specified in Table 2308.6.1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D or E, braced wall lines shall intersect perpendicularly to each other.

**2308.6.2 Braced wall panels.** Braced wall panels shall be placed along braced wall lines in accordance with Table 2308.6.1 and Figure 2308.6.1 and as specified in Table 2308.6.3(1). A braced wall panel shall be located at each end of the braced wall line and at the corners of intersecting braced wall lines or shall begin within the maximum distance from the end of the braced wall line in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Braced wall panels in a braced wall

line shall not be offset from each other by more than 4 feet (1219 mm). Braced wall panels shall be clearly indicated on the plans.

**2308.6.3 Braced wall panel methods.** Construction of braced wall panels shall be by one or a combination of the methods in Table 2308.6.3(1). Braced wall panel length shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.4 or 2308.6.5.

**2308.6.4 Braced wall panel construction.** For Methods DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP and HPS, each panel must be not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length, covering three stud spaces where studs are spaced 16 inches (406 mm) on center and covering two stud spaces where studs are spaced 24 inches (610 mm) on center. Braced wall panels less than 48 inches (1219 mm) in length shall not contribute toward the amount of required bracing. Braced wall panels that are longer than the required length shall be credited for their actual length. For Method GB, each panel must be not less than 96 inches (2438 mm) in length where applied to one side of the studs or 48 inches (1219 mm) in length where applied to both sides.

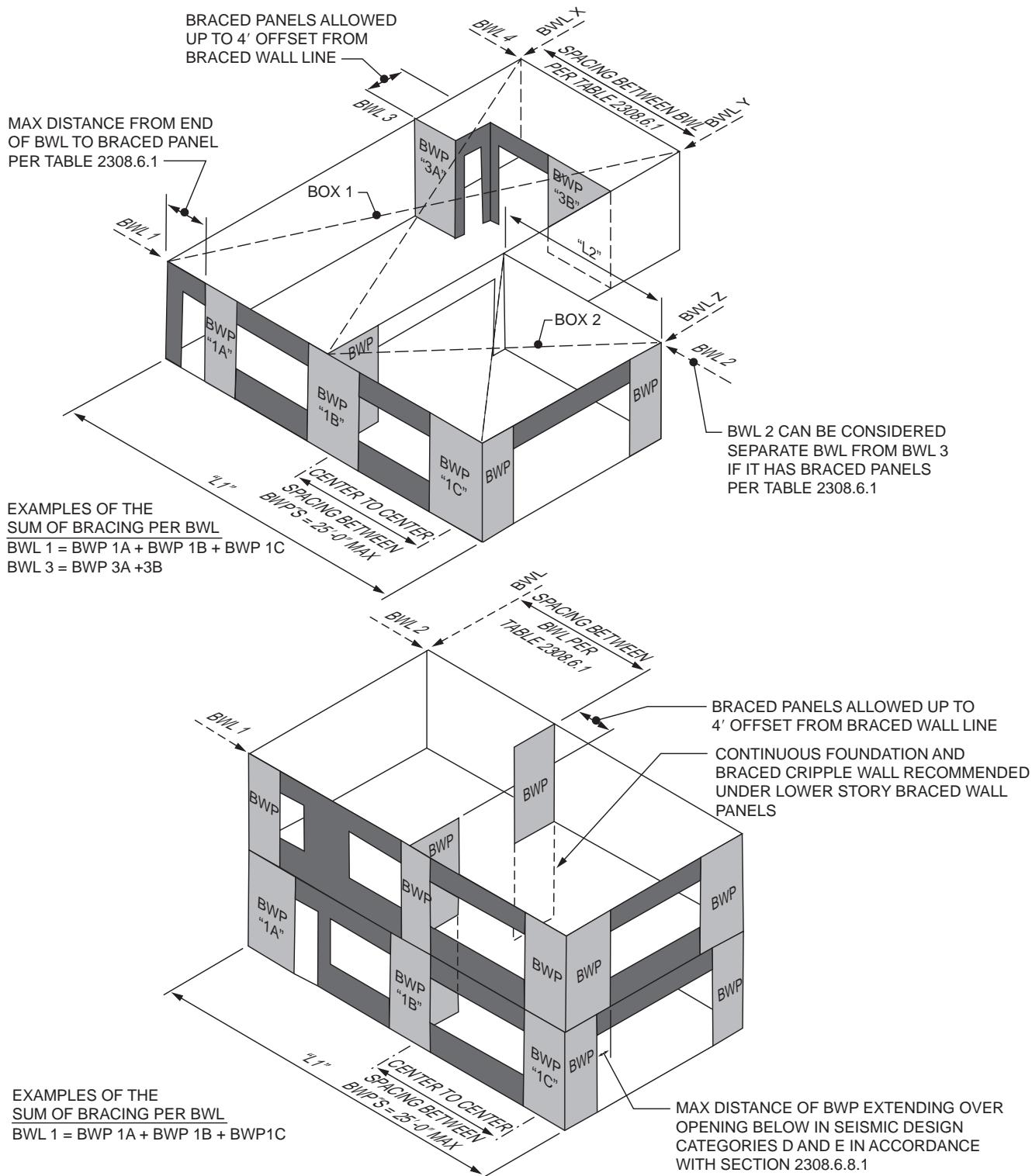
Vertical joints of panel sheathing shall occur over studs and adjacent panel joints shall be nailed to common framing members. Horizontal joints shall occur over blocking or other framing equal in size to the studding except where waived by the installation requirements for the specific sheathing materials. Sole plates shall be nailed to the floor framing in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 and top plates shall be connected to the framing above in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2. Where joists are perpendicular to braced wall lines above, blocking shall be provided under and in line with the braced wall panels.

**2308.6.5 Alternative bracing.** An alternate braced wall (ABW) or a portal frame with hold-downs (PFH) described in this section is permitted to substitute for a 48-inch (1219 mm) braced wall panel of Method DWB, WSP, SFB, PBS, PCP or HPS. For Method GB, each 96-inch (2438 mm) section (applied to one face) or 48-inch (1219 mm) section (applied to both faces) or portion thereof required by Table 2308.6.1 is permitted to be replaced by one panel constructed in accordance with Method ABW or PFH.

**TABLE 2308.5.11  
MINIMUM THICKNESS OF WALL SHEATHING**

SHEATHING TYPE	MINIMUM THICKNESS	MAXIMUM WALL STUD SPACING
Diagonal wood boards	$\frac{5}{8}$ inch	24 inches on center
Structural fiberboard	$\frac{1}{2}$ inch	16 inches on center
Wood structural panel	In accordance with Tables 2308.6.3(2) and 2308.6.3(3)	—
M-S "Exterior Glue" and M-2 "Exterior Glue" particleboard	In accordance with Section 2306.3 and Table 2308.6.3(4)	—
Gypsum sheathing	$\frac{1}{2}$ inch	16 inches on center
Reinforced cement mortar	1 inch	24 inches on center
Hardboard panel siding	In accordance with Table 2308.6.3(5)	—

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

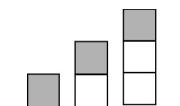
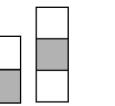
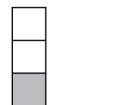


For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2308.6.1**  
**BASIC COMPONENTS OF THE LATERAL BRACING SYSTEM**

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.6.1  
WALL BRACING REQUIREMENTS<sup>a</sup>**

SEISMIC DESIGN CATEGORY	STORY CONDITION (SEE SECTION 2308.2)	MAXIMUM SPACING OF BRACED WALL LINES	BRACED PANEL LOCATION, SPACING (O.C.) AND MINIMUM PERCENTAGE (X)			MAXIMUM DISTANCE OF BRACED WALL PANELS FROM EACH END OF BRACED WALL LINE	
			Bracing method <sup>b</sup>				
			LIB	DWB, WSP	SFB, PBS, PCP, HPS, GB <sup>c, d</sup>		
A and B		35'- 0"	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	12'- 6"	
		35'- 0"	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	12'- 6"	
		35'- 0"	NP	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	12'- 6"	
C		35'- 0"	NP	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c.	12'- 6"	
		35'- 0"	NP	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 25% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 25% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	12'- 6"	
D and E		25'- 0"	NP	$S_{DS} < 0.50$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 21% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	$S_{DS} < 0.50$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 43% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	8'- 0"	
				$0.5 \leq S_{DS} < 0.75$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 32% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	$0.5 \leq S_{DS} < 0.75$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 59% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>		
				$0.75 \leq S_{DS} \leq 1.00$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 37% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	$0.75 \leq S_{DS} \leq 1.00$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 75% of wall length)		
				$S_{DS} > 1.00$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 48% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>	$S_{DS} > 1.00$ : Each end and ≤ 25'- 0" o.c. (minimum 100% of wall length) <sup>e</sup>		

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

NP = Not Permitted.

a. This table specifies minimum requirements for braced wall panels along interior or exterior braced wall lines.

b. See Section 2308.6.3 for full description of bracing methods.

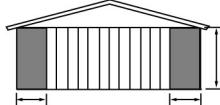
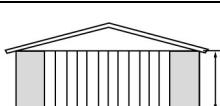
c. For Method GB, gypsum wallboard applied to framing supports that are spaced at 16 inches on center.

d. The required lengths shall be doubled for gypsum board applied to only one face of a braced wall panel.

e. Percentage shown represents the minimum amount of bracing required along the building length (or wall length if the structure has an irregular shape).

## WOOD

TABLE 2308.6.3(1)  
BRACING METHODS

METHODS, MATERIAL	MINIMUM THICKNESS	FIGURE	CONNECTION CRITERIA <sup>a</sup>	
			Fasteners	Spacing
<b>LIB<sup>a</sup></b> Let-in-bracing	1" × 4" wood or approved metal straps attached at 45° to 60° angles to studs at maximum of 16" o.c.		Table 2304.10.2	Wood: per stud plus top and bottom plates
			Metal strap: installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations	Metal strap: installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations
<b>DWB</b> Diagonal wood boards	$\frac{3}{4}$ " thick (1" nominal) × 6" minimum width to studs at maximum of 24" o.c.		Table 2304.10.2	Per stud
<b>WSP</b> Wood structural panel	$\frac{3}{8}$ " in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(2) or 2308.6.3(3)		Table 2304.10.2	6" edges 12" field
<b>SFB</b> Structural fiber-board sheathing	$\frac{1}{2}$ " in accordance with Table 2304.10.2 to studs at maximum 16" o.c.		Table 2304.10.2	3" edges 6" field
<b>GB</b> Gypsum board (Double sided)	$\frac{1}{2}$ " or $\frac{5}{8}$ " by not less than 4" wide to studs at maximum of 24" o.c.		Section 2506.2 for exterior and interior sheathing: 5d annual ringed cooler nails ( $1\frac{5}{8}$ " × 0.086") or $1\frac{1}{4}$ " screws (Type W or S) for $\frac{1}{2}$ " gypsum board or $1\frac{5}{8}$ " screws (Type W or S) for $\frac{5}{8}$ " gypsum board	For all braced wall panel locations: 7" o.c. along panel edges (including top and bottom plates) and 7" o.c. in the field
<b>PBS</b> Particleboard sheathing	$\frac{3}{8}$ " or $\frac{1}{2}$ " in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(4) to studs at maximum of 16" o.c.		6d common (2" long × 0.113" dia.) nails for $\frac{3}{8}$ " thick sheathing or 8d common ( $2\frac{1}{2}$ " long × 0.131" dia.) nails for $\frac{1}{2}$ " thick sheathing	3" edges 6" field
<b>PCP</b> Portland cement plaster	Section 2510 to studs at maximum of 16" o.c.		$1\frac{1}{2}$ " long, 11 gage, 0.120" dia., $\frac{7}{16}$ " dia. head nails or $\frac{7}{8}$ " long, 16 gage staples	6" o.c. on all framing members
<b>HPS</b> Hardboard panel siding	$\frac{7}{16}$ " in accordance with Table 2308.6.3(5)		Table 2304.10.2	4" edges 8" field
<b>ABW</b> Alternate braced wall	$\frac{3}{8}$ "		Figure 2308.6.5.1 and Section 2308.6.5.1	Figure 2308.6.5.1
<b>PFH</b> Portal frame with hold-downs	$\frac{3}{8}$ "		Figure 2308.6.5.2 and Section 2308.6.5.2	Figure 2308.6.5.2

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.01745 rad.

a. Method LIB shall have gypsum board fastened to one or more side(s) with nails or screws

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.6.3(2)**  
**EXPOSED PLYWOOD PANEL SIDING**

MINIMUM THICKNESS <sup>a</sup> (inch)	MINIMUM NUMBER OF PLIES	STUD SPACING (inches)
		Plywood siding applied directly to studs or over sheathing
3/8	3	16 <sup>b</sup>
1/2	4	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Thickness of grooved panels is measured at bottom of grooves.

b. Spans are permitted to be 24 inches if plywood siding applied with face grain perpendicular to studs or over one of the following: 1-inch board sheathing; 7/16 - inch wood structural panel sheathing; or 3/8-inch wood structural panel sheathing with strength axis (which is the long direction of the panel unless otherwise marked) of sheathing perpendicular to studs.

**TABLE 2308.6.3(3)**  
**WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL WALL SHEATHING<sup>b</sup>**  
**(Not exposed to the weather, strength axis parallel or perpendicular to studs except as indicated)**

MINIMUM THICKNESS (inch)	PANEL SPAN RATING	STUD SPACING (inches)		
		Siding nailed to studs	Nailable sheathing	
			Sheathing parallel to studs	Sheathing perpendicular to studs
3/8, 15/32, 1/2	16/0, 20/0, 24/0, 32/16 Wall—24" o.c.	24	16	24
7/16, 15/32, 1/2	24/0, 24/16, 32/16 Wall—24" o.c.	24	24 <sup>a</sup>	24

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Plywood shall consist of four or more plies.

b. Blocking of horizontal joints shall not be required except as specified in Section 2308.6.4.

**TABLE 2308.6.3(4)**  
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR PARTICLEBOARD WALL SHEATHING**  
**(Not exposed to the weather, long dimension of the panel parallel or perpendicular to studs)**

GRADE	THICKNESS (inch)	STUD SPACING (inches)	
		Siding nailed to studs	Sheathing under coverings specified in Section 2308.6.3 parallel or perpendicular to studs
M-S "Exterior Glue" and M-2 "Exterior Glue"	3/8	16	—
	1/2	16	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.6.3(5)**  
**HARDBOARD SIDING**

SIDING	MINIMUM NOMINAL THICKNESS (inch)	2 x 4 FRAMING MAXIMUM SPACING	NAIL SIZE <sup>a, b, d</sup>	NAIL SPACING	
				General	Bracing panels <sup>c</sup>
<b>1. Lap siding</b>					
Direct to studs	$\frac{3}{8}$	16" o.c.	8d	16" o.c.	Not applicable
Over sheathing	$\frac{3}{8}$	16" o.c.	10d	16" o.c.	Not applicable
<b>2. Square edge panel siding</b>					
Direct to studs	$\frac{3}{8}$	24" o.c.	6d	6" o.c. edges; 12" o.c. at intermediate supports	4" o.c. edges; 8" o.c. at intermediate supports
Over sheathing	$\frac{3}{8}$	24" o.c.	8d	6" o.c. edges; 12" o.c. at intermediate supports	4" o.c. edges; 8" o.c. at intermediate supports
<b>3. Shiplap edge panel siding</b>					
Direct to studs	$\frac{3}{8}$	16" o.c.	6d	6" o.c. edges; 12" o.c. at intermediate supports	4" o.c. edges; 8" o.c. at intermediate supports
Over sheathing	$\frac{3}{8}$	16" o.c.	8d	6" o.c. edges; 12" o.c. at intermediate supports	4" o.c. edges; 8" o.c. at intermediate supports

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Nails shall be corrosion resistant.

b. Minimum acceptable nail dimensions:

	Panel Siding (inch)	Lap Siding (inch)
Shank diameter	0.092	0.099
Head diameter	0.225	0.240

c. Where used to comply with Section 2308.6.

d. Nail length must accommodate the sheathing and penetrate framing  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches.

**2308.6.5.1 Alternate braced wall (ABW).** An ABW shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.6.5.1. In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 2 feet 8 inches (813 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (3.2 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Table 2304.10.2 and blocked at wood structural panel edges. Two anchor bolts installed in accordance with Section 2308.3.1 shall be provided in each panel. Anchor bolts shall be placed at each panel outside quarter points. Each panel end stud shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation, capable of providing an approved uplift capacity of not less than 1,800 pounds (8006 N). The hold-down device shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The ABW shall be supported directly on a foundation or on floor framing supported directly on a foundation that is continuous across the entire length of the braced wall line. This foundation shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. Where the continuous foundation is required to have a depth greater than 12 inches (305 mm), a minimum 12-inch by 12-inch (305 mm by 305 mm) continuous footing or turned-down slab edge is permitted at door openings in the braced wall line. This continuous footing or turned-down slab edge shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. This reinforcement shall be lapped 15 inches (381 mm) with the reinforcement

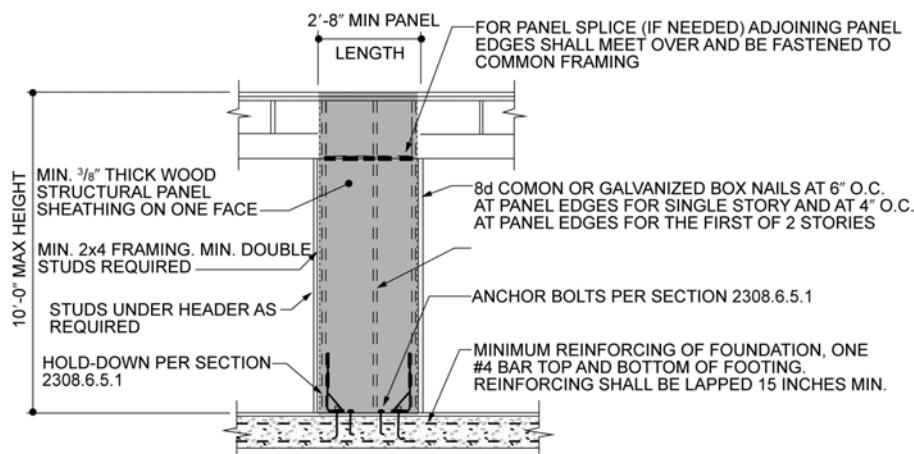
required in the continuous foundation located directly under the braced wall line.

Where the ABW is installed at the first story of two-story buildings, the wood structural panel sheathing shall be provided on both faces, three anchor bolts shall be placed at one-quarter points and tie-down device uplift capacity shall be not less than 3,000 pounds (13 344 N).

**2308.6.5.2 Portal frame with hold-downs (PFH).** A PFH shall be constructed in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.6.5.2. The adjacent door or window opening shall have a full-length header.

In one-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 16 inches (406 mm) and a height of not more than 10 feet (3048 mm). Each panel shall be sheathed on one face with a single layer of  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) minimum-thickness wood structural panel sheathing nailed with 8d common or galvanized box nails in accordance with Figure 2308.6.5.2. The wood structural panel sheathing shall extend up over the solid sawn or glued-laminated header and shall be nailed in accordance with Figure 2308.6.5.2. A built-up header consisting of not fewer than two 2-inch by 12-inch (51 mm by 305 mm) boards, fastened in accordance with Item 24 of Table 2304.10.2 shall be permitted to be used. A spacer, if used, shall be placed on the side of the built-up beam opposite the wood structural panel sheathing. The header shall extend between the inside faces of the first full-length outer studs of each panel.

## WOOD



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2308.6.5.1  
ALTERNATE BRACED WALL PANEL (ABW)**

The clear span of the header between the inner studs of each panel shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) and not more than 18 feet (5486 mm) in length. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4,400 N) shall fasten the header to the inner studs opposite the sheathing. One anchor bolt not less than  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) diameter and installed in accordance with Section 2308.3.1 shall be provided in the center of each sill plate. The studs at each end of the panel shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not less than 3,500 pounds (15 570 N).

Where a panel is located on one side of the opening, the header shall extend between the inside face of the first full-length stud of the panel and the bearing studs at the other end of the opening. A strap with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N) shall fasten the header to the bearing studs. The bearing studs shall have a hold-down device fastened to the foundation with an uplift capacity of not less than 1,000 pounds (4400 N). The hold-down devices shall be an embedded strap type, installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The PFH panels shall be supported directly on a foundation that is continuous across the entire length of the braced wall line. This foundation shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. Where the continuous foundation is required to have a depth greater than 12 inches (305 mm), a minimum 12-inch by 12-inch (305 mm by 305 mm) continuous footing or turned-down slab edge is permitted at door openings in the braced wall line. This continuous footing or turned-down slab edge shall be reinforced with not less than one No. 4 bar top and bottom. This reinforcement shall be lapped not less than 15 inches (381 mm) with the reinforcement required in the continuous foundation located directly under the braced wall line.

Where a PFH is installed at the first *story* of two-story buildings, each panel shall have a length of not less than 24 inches (610 mm).

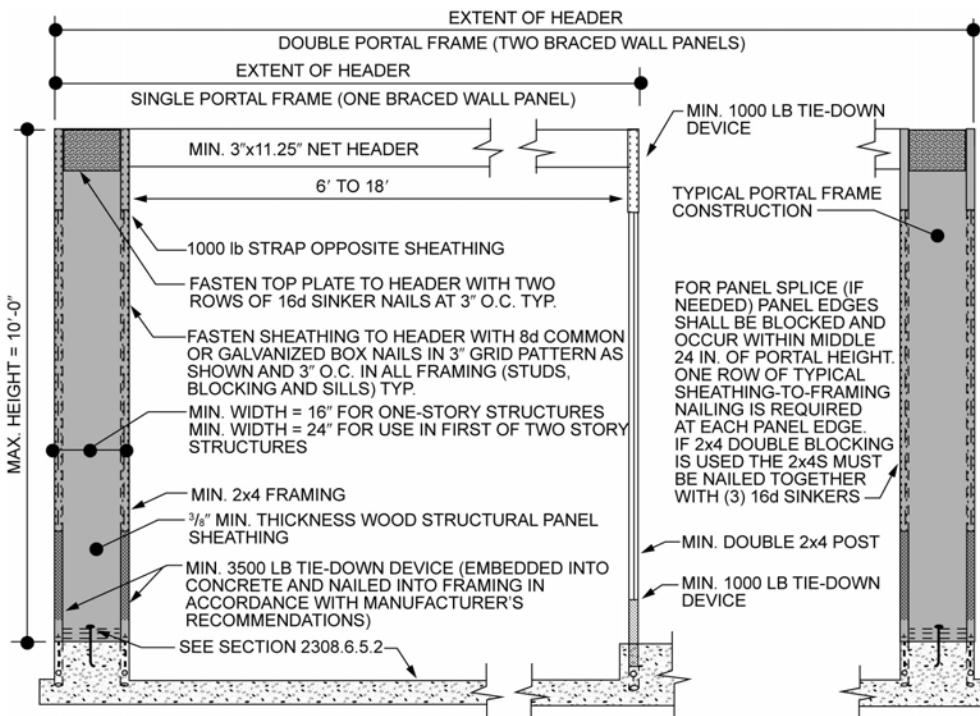
**2308.6.6 Cripple wall bracing.** Cripple walls shall be braced in accordance with Section 2308.6.6.1 or 2308.6.6.2.

**2308.6.6.1 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C.** For the purposes of this section, cripple walls in Seismic Design Categories A, B and C having a stud height exceeding 14 inches (356 mm) shall be considered to be a story and shall be braced in accordance with Table 2308.6.1. Spacing of edge nailing for required cripple wall bracing shall not exceed 6 inches (152 mm) on center along the foundation plate and the top plate of the cripple wall. Nail size, nail spacing for field nailing and more restrictive boundary nailing requirements shall be as required elsewhere in the code for the specific bracing material used.

**2308.6.6.2 Cripple wall bracing in Seismic Design Categories D and E.** For the purposes of this section, cripple walls in Seismic Design Categories D and E shall not have a stud height exceeding 14 inches (356 mm), and studs shall be solid blocked in accordance with Section 2308.5.6 for the full dwelling perimeter and for the full length of interior braced walls lines supported on foundations, excepting ventilation and access openings.

**2308.6.7 Connections of braced wall panels.** Braced wall panel joints shall occur over studs or blocking. Braced wall panels shall be fastened to studs, top and bottom plates and at panel edges. Braced wall panels shall be applied to nominal 2-inch-wide [actual  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (38 mm)] or larger stud framing.

**2308.6.7.1 Bottom plate connection.** Braced wall line bottom plates shall be connected to joists or full-depth blocking below in accordance with Table 2304.10.2, or to foundations in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.3.



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N.

**FIGURE 2308.6.5.2  
PORTAL FRAME WITH HOLD-DOWNS (PFH)**

**2308.6.7.2 Top plate connection.** Where joists or rafters are used, braced wall line top plates shall be fastened over the full length of the braced wall line to joists, rafters, rim boards or full-depth blocking above in accordance with Table 2304.10.2, as applicable, based on the orientation of the joists or rafters to the braced wall line. Blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness and shall be fastened to the braced wall line top plate as specified in Table 2304.10.2. Notching or drilling of holes in blocking in accordance with the requirements of Section 2308.4.2.4 or 2308.7.4 shall be permitted.

At exterior gable end walls, braced wall panel sheathing in the top story shall be extended and fastened to the roof framing where the spacing between parallel exterior braced wall lines is greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm).

Where roof trusses are used and are installed perpendicular to an exterior braced wall line, lateral forces shall be transferred from the roof diaphragm to the braced wall over the full length of the braced wall line by blocking of the ends of the trusses or by other approved methods providing equivalent lateral force transfer. Blocking shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in nominal thickness and equal to the depth of the truss at the wall line and shall be fastened to the braced wall line top plate as specified in Table 2304.10.2. Notching or drilling of holes in blocking in accordance

with the requirements of Section 2308.4.2.4 or 2308.7.4 shall be permitted.

**Exception:** Where the roof sheathing is greater than 9 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches (235 mm) above the top plate, solid blocking is not required where the framing members are connected using one of the following methods:

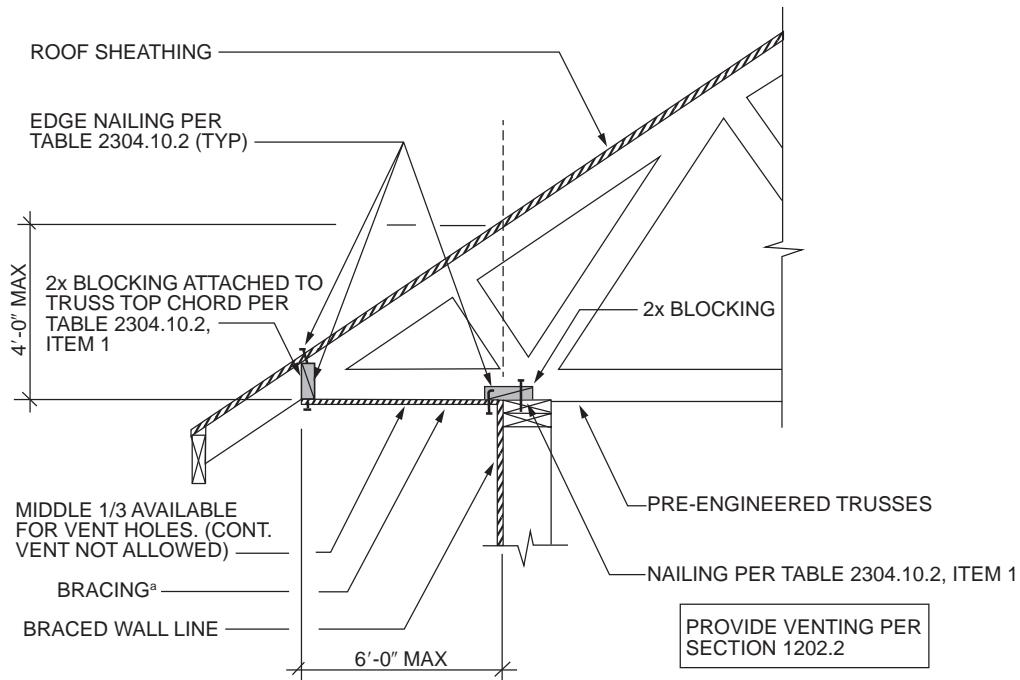
1. In accordance with Figure 2308.6.7.2(1).
2. In accordance with Figure 2308.6.7.2(2).
3. Full-height engineered blocking panels designed for values listed in AWC WFCM.
4. A design in accordance with accepted engineering methods.

**2308.6.7.3 Sill anchorage.** Where foundations are required by Section 2308.6, braced wall line sills shall be anchored to concrete or masonry foundations. Such anchorage shall conform to the requirements of Section 2308.3. The anchors shall be distributed along the length of the braced wall line. Other anchorage devices having equivalent capacity are permitted.

**2308.6.7.4 Anchorage to all-wood foundations.** Where all-wood foundations are used, the force transfer from the braced wall lines shall be determined based on calculation and shall have a capacity that is not less than the connections required by Section 2308.3.

**2308.6.8 Braced wall line and diaphragm support.** Braced wall lines and floor and roof diaphragms shall be supported in accordance with this section.

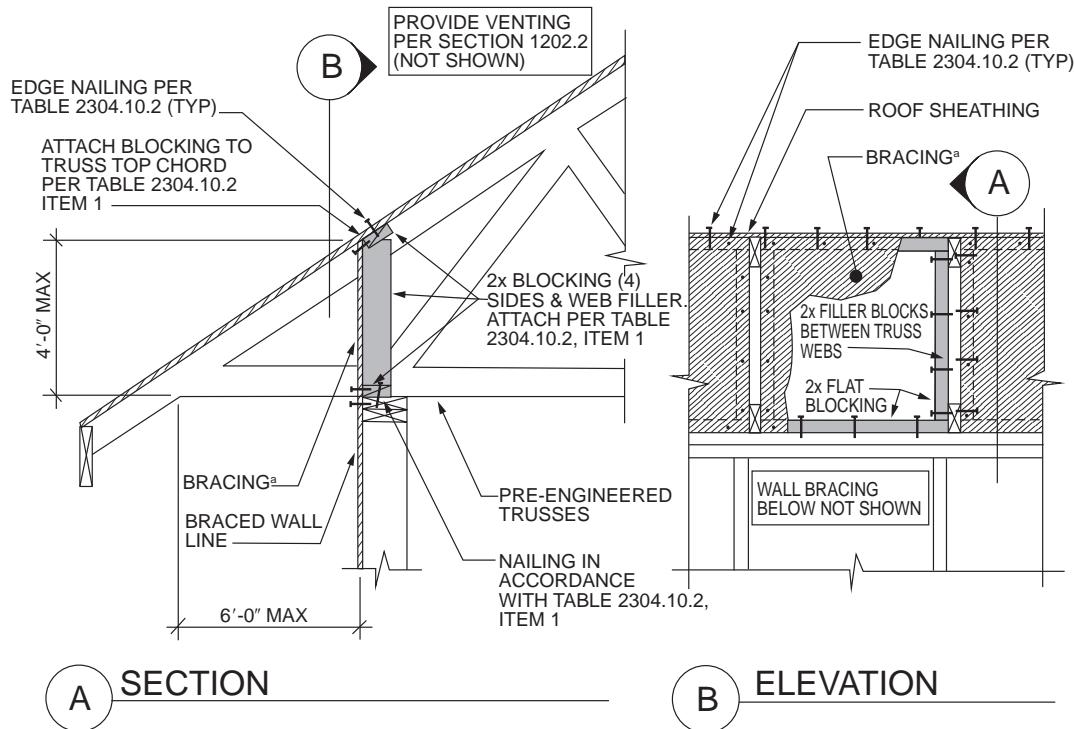
## WOOD



For SI:1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a.Methods of bracing shall be as described in Table 2308.6.3(1) DWB, WSP, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP or HPS.

**FIGURE 2308.6.7.2(1)  
BRACED WALL LINE TOP PLATE CONNECTION**



For SI:1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a.Methods of bracing shall be as described in Table 2308.6.3(1) DWB, WSP, SFB, GB, PBS, PCP or HPS.

**FIGURE 2308.6.7.2(2)  
BRACED WALL PANEL TOP PLATE CONNECTION**

**2308.6.8.1 Foundation requirements.** Braced wall lines shall be supported by continuous foundations.

**Exception:** For structures with a maximum plan dimension not more than 50 feet (15 240 mm), continuous foundations are required at exterior walls only.

For structures in Seismic Design Categories D and E, exterior braced wall panels shall be in the same plane vertically with the foundation or the portion of the structure containing the offset shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and Section 2308.1.1.

**Exceptions:**

1. Exterior braced wall panels shall be permitted to be located not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the foundation below where supported by a floor constructed in accordance with all of the following:
  - 1.1. Cantilevers or setbacks shall not exceed four times the nominal depth of the floor joists.
  - 1.2. Floor joists shall be 2 inches by 10 inches (51 mm by 254 mm) or larger and spaced not more than 16 inches (406 mm) on center.
  - 1.3. The ratio of the back span to the cantilever shall be not less than 2 to 1.
  - 1.4. Floor joists at ends of braced wall panels shall be doubled.
  - 1.5. A continuous rim joist shall be connected to the ends of cantilevered joists. The rim joist is permitted to be spliced using a metal tie not less than 0.058 inch (1.47 mm) (16 galvanized gage) and 1½ inches (38 mm) in width fastened with six 16d common nails on each side. The metal tie shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 MPa).
  - 1.6. Joists at setbacks or the end of cantilevered joists shall not carry gravity loads from more than a single story having uniform wall and roof loads nor carry the reactions from headers having a span of 8 feet (2438 mm) or more.
2. The end of a required braced wall panel shall be allowed to extend not more than 1 foot (305 mm) over an opening in the wall below. This requirement is applicable to braced wall panels offset in plane and braced wall panels offset out of plane as permitted by Exception 1.

Braced wall panels are permitted to extend over an opening not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in width where the header is a 4-inch by 12-inch (102 mm by 305 mm) or larger member.

**2308.6.8.2 Floor and roof diaphragm support in Seismic Design Categories D and E.** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Categories D or E, floor and roof diaphragms shall be laterally supported by braced wall lines on all edges and connected in accordance with Section 2308.6.7 [see Figure 2308.6.8.2(1)].

**Exception:** Portions of roofs or floors that do not support braced wall panels above are permitted to extend up to 6 feet (1829 mm) beyond a braced wall line [see Figure 2308.6.8.2(2)] provided that the framing members are connected to the braced wall line below in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.

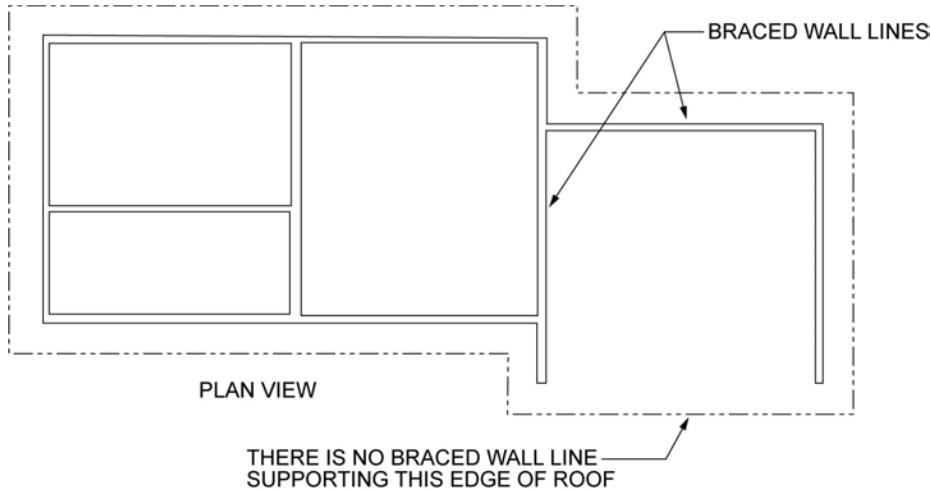
**2308.6.8.3 Stepped footings in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E.** In Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E, where the height of a required braced wall panel extending from foundation to floor above varies more than 4 feet (1219 mm), the following construction shall be used:

1. Where the bottom of the footing is stepped and the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to the footings, the sill shall be anchored as required in Section 2308.3.
2. Where the lowest floor framing rests directly on a sill bolted to a footing not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length along a line of bracing, the line shall be considered to be braced. The double plate of the cripple stud wall beyond the segment of footing extending to the lowest framed floor shall be spliced to the sill plate with metal ties, one on each side of the sill and plate. The metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] by 1½ inches (38 mm) in width by 48 inches (1219 mm) with eight 16d common nails on each side of the splice location (see Figure 2308.6.8.3). The metal tie shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 pounds per square inch (psi) (227 MPa).
3. Where cripple walls occur between the top of the footing and the lowest floor framing, the bracing requirements for a story shall apply.

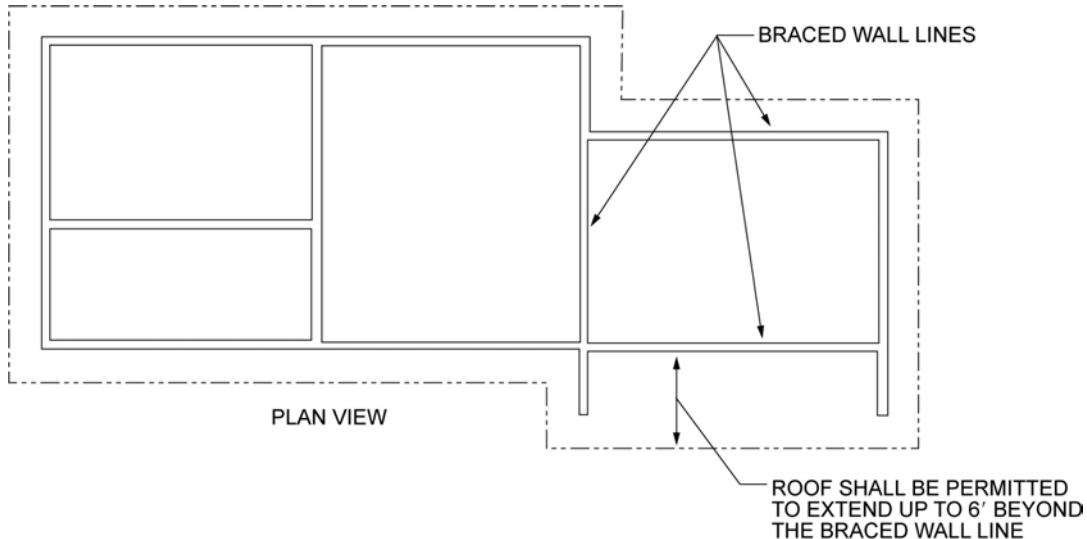
**2308.6.9 Attachment of sheathing.** Fastening of braced wall panel sheathing shall be not less than that prescribed in Tables 2308.6.1 and 2304.10.2. Wall sheathing shall not be attached to framing members by adhesives.

**2308.6.10 Limitations of concrete or masonry veneer.** Concrete or masonry veneer shall comply with Chapter 14 and this section.

## WOOD

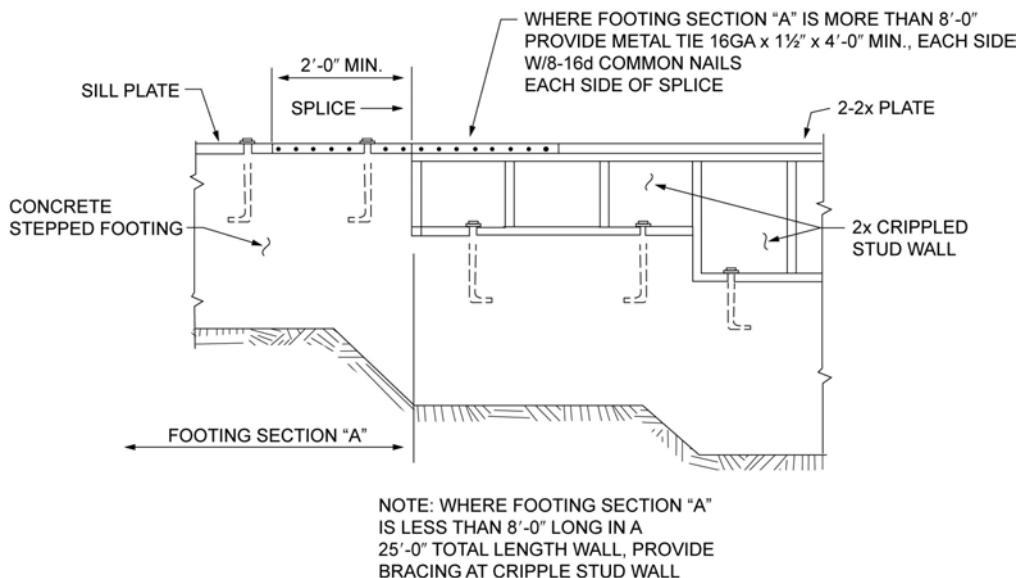


**FIGURE 2308.6.8.2(1)**  
**ROOF IN SDC D OR E NOT SUPPORTED ON ALL EDGES**



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2308.6.8.2(2)**  
**ROOF EXTENSION IN SDC D OR E BEYOND BRACED WALL LINE**



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 2308.6.8.3  
STEPPED FOOTING CONNECTION DETAILS**

**2308.6.10.1 Limitations of concrete or masonry veneer in Seismic Design Category B or C.** In Seismic Design Categories B and C, concrete or masonry walls and stone or masonry veneer shall not extend above a basement.

**Exceptions:**

1. In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category B, stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first two stories above grade plane or the first three stories above grade plane where the lowest story has concrete or masonry walls, provided that wood structural panel wall bracing is used and the length of bracing provided is one and one-half times the required length specified in Table 2308.6.1.
2. Stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first story above grade plane or the first two stories above grade plane where the lowest story has concrete or masonry walls.
3. Stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in both stories of buildings with two stories above grade plane, provided that the following criteria are met:
  - 3.1. Type of brace in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 shall be WSP and the allowable shear capacity in accordance with Section 2306.3 shall be not less than 350 plf (5108 N/m).
  - 3.2. Braced wall panels in the second story shall be located in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of braced wall

panels shall be not less than 25 percent of the braced wall line length. Braced wall panels in the first story shall be located in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of braced wall panels shall be not less than 45 percent of the braced wall line length.

- 3.3. Hold-down connectors with an allowable capacity of 2,000 pounds (8896 N) shall be provided at the ends of each braced wall panel for the second story to the first story connection. Hold-down connectors with an allowable capacity of 3,900 pounds (17 347 N) shall be provided at the ends of each braced wall panel for the first story to the foundation connection. In all cases, the hold-down connector force shall be transferred to the foundation.

- 3.4. Cripple walls shall not be permitted.

**2308.6.10.2 Limitations of concrete or masonry in Seismic Design Categories D and E.** In Seismic Design Categories D and E, concrete or masonry walls and stone or masonry veneer shall not extend above a basement.

**Exception:** In structures assigned to Seismic Design Category D, stone and masonry veneer is permitted to be used in the first story above grade plane, provided that the following criteria are met:

1. Type of brace in accordance with Section 2308.6.1 shall be WSP and the allowable shear

- capacity in accordance with Section 2306.3 shall be not less than 350 plf (5108 N/m).
2. The braced wall panels in the first story shall be located at each end of the braced wall line and not more than 25 feet (7620 mm) on center, and the total length of braced wall panels shall be not less than 45 percent of the braced wall line length.
  3. Hold-down connectors shall be provided at the ends of braced walls for the first floor to foundation with an allowable capacity of 2,100 pounds (9341 N).
  4. Cripple walls shall not be permitted.

**2308.7 Roof and ceiling framing.** The framing details required in this section apply to roofs having a slope of not less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope). Where the roof slope is less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope), members supporting rafters and ceiling joists such as ridge board, hips and valleys shall be designed as beams.

**2308.7.1 Ceiling joist spans.** Spans for ceiling joists shall be in accordance with Table 2308.7.1(1) or 2308.7.1(2). For other grades and species, and other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR.

**2308.7.2 Rafter spans.** Spans for rafters shall be in accordance with Table 2308.7.2(1), 2308.7.2(2), 2308.7.2(3), 2308.7.2(4), 2308.7.2(5) or 2308.7.2(6). For other grades and species and other loading conditions, refer to the AWC STJR. The span of each rafter shall be measured along the horizontal projection of the rafter.

**2308.7.3 Ceiling joist and rafter framing.** Rafters shall be framed directly opposite each other at the ridge. There shall be a ridge board not less than 1-inch (25 mm) nominal thickness at ridges and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. At valleys and hips, there shall be a single valley or hip rafter not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter.

**2308.7.3.1 Ceiling joist and rafter connections.** Ceiling joists and rafters shall be nailed to each other and the assembly shall be nailed to the top wall plate in accordance with Tables 2304.10.2 and 2308.7.5. Ceiling joists shall be continuous or securely joined where they meet over interior partitions and be fastened to adjacent rafters in accordance with Tables 2304.10.2 and 2308.7.3.1 to provide a continuous rafter tie across the building where such joists are parallel to the rafters. Ceiling joists shall have a bearing surface of not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) on the top plate at each end.

Where ceiling joists are not parallel to rafters, an equivalent rafter tie shall be installed in a manner to provide a continuous tie across the building, at a spacing of not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center. The connections shall be in accordance with Tables 2308.7.3.1 and 2304.10.2, or connections of equivalent capacities shall be provided. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are not provided at the top of the rafter support walls, the ridge formed by these rafters shall be supported by a girder

conforming to Section 2308.8. Rafter ties shall be spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center.

Rafter tie connections shall be based on the equivalent rafter spacing in Table 2308.7.3.1. Rafter-to-ceiling joist connections and rafter tie connections shall be of sufficient size and number to prevent splitting from nailing.

Roof framing member connection to braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

**2308.7.4 Notches and holes.** Notching at the ends of rafters or ceiling joists shall not exceed one-fourth the depth. Notches in the top or bottom of the rafter or ceiling joist shall not exceed one-sixth the depth and shall not be located in the middle one-third of the span, except that a notch not more than one-third of the depth is permitted in the top of the rafter or ceiling joist not further from the face of the support than the depth of the member. Holes bored in rafters or ceiling joists shall not be within 2 inches (51 mm) of the top and bottom and their diameter shall not exceed one-third the depth of the member.

**2308.7.5 Wind uplift.** The roof construction shall have rafter and truss ties to the wall below. Resultant uplift loads shall be transferred to the foundation using a continuous load path. The rafter or truss to wall connection shall comply with Tables 2304.10.2 and 2308.7.5.

**2308.7.6 Framing around openings.** Trimmer and header rafters shall be doubled, or of lumber of equivalent cross section, where the span of the header exceeds 4 feet (1219 mm). The ends of header rafters that are more than 6 feet (1829 mm) in length shall be supported by framing anchors or rafter hangers unless bearing on a beam, partition or wall.

**2308.7.6.1 Openings in roof diaphragms in Seismic Design Categories B, C, D and E.** In buildings classified as Seismic Design Category B, C, D or E, openings in horizontal diaphragms with a dimension that is greater than 4 feet (1219 mm) shall be constructed with metal ties and blocking in accordance with this section and Figure 2308.4.4.1(1). Metal ties shall be not less than 0.058 inch [1.47 mm (16 galvanized gage)] in thickness by  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) in width and shall have a yield stress not less than 33,000 psi (227 Mpa). Blocking shall extend not less than the dimension of the opening in the direction of the tie and blocking. Ties shall be attached to blocking in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but with not less than eight 16d common nails on each side of the header-joist intersection.

**2308.7.7 Purlins.** Purlins to support roof loads are permitted to be installed to reduce the span of rafters within allowable limits and shall be supported by struts to bearing walls. The maximum span of 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) purlins shall be 4 feet (1219 mm). The maximum span of the 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) purlin shall be 6 feet (1829 mm), but the purlin shall not be smaller than the supported rafter. Struts shall be not less than 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) members. The unbraced length of struts shall not exceed 8 feet (2438

mm) and the slope of the struts shall be not less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal.

**2308.7.8 Blocking.** Roof rafters and ceiling joists shall be supported laterally to prevent rotation and lateral displacement in accordance with Section 2308.4.6 and connected to braced wall lines in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

**2308.7.9 Engineered wood products.** Prefabricated wood I-joints, structural glued-laminated timber and structural composite lumber shall not be notched or drilled except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

**2308.7.10 Roof sheathing.** Roof sheathing shall be in accordance with Tables 2304.8(3) and 2304.8(5) for wood structural panels, and Tables 2304.8(1) and 2304.8(2) for lumber and shall comply with Section 2304.8.2.

**2308.7.11 Joints.** Joints in lumber sheathing shall occur over supports unless approved end-matched lumber is used, in which case each piece shall bear on not fewer than two supports.

**2308.7.12 Roof planking.** Planking shall be designed in accordance with the general provisions of this code.

In lieu of such design, 2-inch (51 mm) tongue-and-groove planking is permitted in accordance with Table 2308.7.12. Joints in such planking are permitted to be randomly spaced, provided that the system is applied to not

less than three continuous spans, planks are center matched and end matched or splined, each plank bears on one support or more, and joints are separated by not less than 24 inches (610 mm) in adjacent pieces.

**2308.7.13 Wood trusses.** Wood trusses shall be designed in accordance with Section 2303.4. Connection to braced wall lines shall be in accordance with Section 2308.6.7.2.

**2308.7.14 Attic ventilation.** For attic ventilation, see Section 1202.2.1.

**2308.8 Design of elements.** Combining of engineered elements or systems and conventionally specified elements or systems shall be permitted subject to the limits of Sections 2308.8.1 and 2308.8.2.

**2308.8.1 Elements exceeding limitations of conventional construction.** Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements exceeding the limits of Section 2308.2, these elements and the supporting *load* path shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code.

**2308.8.2 Structural elements or systems not described herein.** Where a building of otherwise conventional construction contains structural elements or systems not described in Section 2308, these elements or systems shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice and the provisions of this code. The extent of such design need only demonstrate compliance of the noncon-

TABLE 2308.7.5  
REQUIRED RATING OF APPROVED UPLIFT CONNECTORS (pounds)<sup>a, b, c, e, f, g, h</sup>

NOMINAL DESIGN WIND SPEED, $V_{asd}^i$	ROOF SPAN (feet)							OVERHANGS (pounds/feet) <sup>d</sup>
	12	20	24	28	32	36	40	
85	-72	-120	-145	-169	-193	-217	-241	-38.55
90	-91	-151	-181	-212	-242	-272	-302	-43.22
100	-131	-281	-262	-305	-349	-393	-436	-53.36
110	-175	-292	-351	-409	-467	-526	-584	-64.56

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 mile per hour = 1.61 km/hr, 1 pound = 0.454 Kg, 1 pound/foot = 14.5939 N/m.

a. The uplift connection requirements are based on a 30-foot mean roof height located in Exposure B. For Exposure C or D and for other mean roof heights, multiply the loads by the following adjustment coefficients:

EXPOSURE	Mean Roof Height (feet)									
	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
B	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.00	1.05	1.09	1.12	1.16	1.19	1.22
C	1.21	1.29	1.35	1.40	1.45	1.49	1.53	1.56	1.59	1.62
D	1.47	1.55	1.61	1.66	1.70	1.74	1.78	1.81	1.84	1.87

b. The uplift connection requirements are based on the framing being spaced 24 inches on center. Multiply by 0.67 for framing spaced 16 inches on center and multiply by 0.5 for framing spaced 12 inches on center.

c. The uplift connection requirements include an allowance for 10 pounds of dead load.

d. The uplift connection requirements do not account for the effects of overhangs. The magnitude of the loads shall be increased by adding the overhang loads found in the table. The overhang loads are based on framing spaced 24 inches on center. The overhang loads given shall be multiplied by the overhang projection and added to the roof uplift value in the table.

e. The uplift connection requirements are based on wind loading on end zones as defined in Figure 28.5-1 of ASCE 7. Connection loads for connections located a distance of 20 percent of the least horizontal dimension of the building from the corner of the building are permitted to be reduced by multiplying the table connection value by 0.7 and multiplying the overhang load by 0.8.

f. For wall-to-wall and wall-to-foundation connections, the capacity of the uplift connector is permitted to be reduced by 100 pounds for each full wall above. (For example, if a 500-pound rated connector is used on the roof framing, a 400-pound rated connector is permitted at the next floor level down).

g. Interpolation is permitted for intermediate values of  $V_{asd}$  and roof spans.

h. The rated capacity of approved tie-down devices is permitted to include up to a 60-percent increase for wind effects where allowed by material specifications.

i.  $V_{asd}$  shall be determined in accordance with Section 1609.3.1.

**WOOD**

ventional elements with other applicable provisions of this code and shall be compatible with the performance of the conventionally framed system.

## **SECTION 2309 WOOD FRAME CONSTRUCTION MANUAL**

**2309.1 Wood Frame Construction Manual.** Structural design in accordance with the AWC WFCM shall be permitted for buildings assigned to *Risk Category I or II* subject to

the limitations of Section 1.1.3 of the AWC WFCM and the *load* assumptions contained therein. Structural elements beyond these limitations shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**2309.1.1 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1R, 2 & 5]** The use of the AWC WFCM is permitted provided the design and construction also comply with Sections 2304, 2305 and 2302.1, Item 1 or 2, and engineering analysis is furnished demonstrating compliance.

**TABLE 2308.7.1(1)  
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES  
(Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 5 psf			
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10
		Maximum ceiling joist spans			
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	13-2	20-8	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	12-8	19-11	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	12-5	19-6	25-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1
	Hem-Fir	SS	12-5	19-6	25-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	12-2	19-1	25-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	11-7	18-2	24-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1
	Southern Pine	SS	12-11	20-3	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	12-5	19-6	25-8
	Southern Pine	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7
	Southern Pine	#3	10-1	14-11	18-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	12-2	19-1	25-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	11-10	18-8	24-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	11-10	18-8	24-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	10-10	15-10	20-1
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-11	18-9	24-8

16	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	11-6	18-1	23-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	11-3	17-8	23-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4
	Hem-Fir	#1	11-0	17-4	22-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-6	16-6	21-9
	Hem-Fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5
	Southern Pine	SS	11-9	18-5	24-3
	Southern Pine	#1	11-3	17-8	23-4
	Southern Pine	#2	10-9	16-11	21-7
	Southern Pine	#3	8-9	12-11	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-9	16-11	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-9	16-11	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	9-5	13-9	17-5

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.1(1)—continued  
CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES  
(Uninhabitable attics without storage, live load = 10 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 5 psf				
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	
		Maximum ceiling joist spans				
		(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-3	17-8	23-3	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-7	16-7	21-0	25-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-11	15-7	20-6	25-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Southern Pine	SS	11-0	17-4	22-10	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	10-7	16-8	22-0	Note a
	Southern Pine	#2	10-2	15-7	19-8	23-5
	Southern Pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-4	16-4	21-6	Note a
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-2	15-11	21-0	25-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	14-10	18-9	22-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern Pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern Pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.1(2)**  
**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	
		Maximum ceiling joist spans				
		(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note a
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	14-10	18-9	22-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note a
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-5	18-6	22-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note a
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	24-0
	Southern Pine	#2	9-3	13-11	17-7	20-11
	Southern Pine	#3	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-9	18-9	22-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-9	13-5	16-10	20-8
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-4	12-8	16-0	19-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0
	Southern Pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7
	Southern Pine	#1	8-11	14-0	17-9	20-9
	Southern Pine	#2	8-0	12-0	15-3	18-1
	Southern Pine	#3	6-2	9-2	11-6	14-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-8	9-8	12-4	15-0

(continued)

**TABLE 2308.7.1(2)—continued**  
**CEILING JOIST SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Uninhabitable attics with limited storage, live load = 20 psf, L/Δ = 240)**

CEILING JOIST SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf				
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	
		Maximum ceiling joist spans				
		(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-3	12-3	15-6	18-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-10	11-7	14-8	17-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
	Southern Pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1
	Southern Pine	#1	8-5	12-9	16-2	18-11
	Southern Pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6
	Southern Pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-1	20-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-6
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-6	10-11	13-10	16-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-1	10-4	13-1	16-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3
	Southern Pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6
	Southern Pine	#1	7-8	11-5	14-6	16-11
	Southern Pine	#2	6-7	9-10	12-6	14-9
	Southern Pine	#3	5-1	7-5	9-5	11-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-2	10-6	13-3	16-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-5	7-11	10-0	12-3

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(1)**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	11-6	18-0	23-9	Note b	Note b	11-6	18-0	23-5	Note b	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	11-1	17-4	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-6	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	10-10	16-7	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b	10-10	17-0	22-5	Note b	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	10-7	16-8	21-10	Note b	Note b	10-3	14-11	18-11	23-2	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#2	10-1	15-11	20-8	25-3	Note b	9-8	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Southern Pine	SS	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b	11-3	17-8	23-4	Note b	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	10-10	17-0	22-5	26-0	26-0	10-6	15-8	19-10	23-2	Note b
	Southern Pine	#2	10-4	15-7	19-8	23-5	26-0	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10
	Southern Pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	10-7	16-8	21-11	Note b	Note b	10-7	16-8	21-9	Note b	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	10-4	16-3	21-0	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-0	20-3	24-9	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7	23-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	19-11	24-4	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	14-11	18-11	23-2	Note b	8-10	12-11	16-5	20-0	23-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11	25-5	8-5	12-3	15-6	18-11	22-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	25-7	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2	26-0	9-1	13-7	17-2	20-1	23-10
	Southern Pine	#2	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6	20-8
	Southern Pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6	16-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	14-10	18-10	23-0	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10

*(continued)*

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(1)—continued**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-10	15-5	20-4	25-11	Note b	9-10	14-7	18-6	22-7	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-5	14-0	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-11	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-4	18-2	22-3	25-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-1	13-8	17-4	21-1	24-6	8-1	11-10	15-0	18-4	21-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-8	12-11	16-4	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Southern Pine	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-7	23-4	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-3	14-3	18-1	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern Pine	#2	8-2	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern Pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-1	14-3	18-9	23-11	Note b	9-1	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-10	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	23-4	Note b	8-11	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-4	12-3	15-6	18-11	21-11	7-3	10-7	13-5	16-4	19-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-11	11-7	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern Pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	13-10	17-6	20-10	24-8
	Southern Pine	#1	8-7	12-9	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern Pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern Pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.2(7).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(2)**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters,  $L/\Delta = 240$ )

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>									
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b	Note b	10-5	16-4	21-7	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	10-0	15-9	20-10	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-4	19-5	23-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-10	15-6	20-5	25-8	Note b	9-10	14-4	18-2	22-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	14-11	18-11	23-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	9-2	14-5	19-0	24-3	Note b	9-2	14-2	17-11	21-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9
	Southern Pine	SS	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b	Note b	10-3	16-1	21-2	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-10	15-6	20-5	26-0	26-0	9-10	15-6	19-10	23-2
	Southern Pine	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	23-5	26-0	9-0	13-6	17-1	20-3
	Southern Pine	#3	8-0	11-9	14-10	18-0	21-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5	Note b	9-8	15-2	19-11	25-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-5	14-9	19-6	24-10	Note b	9-5	14-4	18-2	22-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-6	14-11	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-11	19-7	24-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-1	14-4	18-11	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-3	16-10	20-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-11	14-1	18-2	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	12-11	16-5	20-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-4	13-1	17-3	21-11	25-5	8-4	12-3	15-6	18-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6
	Southern Pine	SS	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7	Note b	9-4	14-7	19-3	24-7
	Southern Pine	#1	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-2	26-0	8-11	13-7	17-2	20-1
	Southern Pine	#2	8-7	13-5	17-1	20-3	23-10	7-9	11-8	14-9	17-6
	Southern Pine	#3	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-7	18-6	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-1	23-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-7	13-5	17-9	22-3	25-9	8-6	12-5	15-9	19-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(2)—continued  
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES  
(Roof live load = 20 psf, ceiling attached to rafters,  $L/\Delta = 240$ )**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-11	14-0	18-5	23-7	Note b	8-11	14-0	18-5	22-7	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-7	13-6	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-5	13-1	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	25-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-1	24-6	8-1	11-10	15-0	18-4	21-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-10	12-4	16-3	20-0	23-2	7-8	11-2	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Southern Pine	SS	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b	8-9	13-9	18-2	23-1	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	21-2	25-2	8-4	12-4	15-8	18-4	21-9
	Southern Pine	#2	8-1	12-3	15-7	18-6	21-9	7-1	10-8	13-6	16-0	18-10
	Southern Pine	#3	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-3	16-10	5-6	8-1	10-2	12-4	14-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-9	Note b	8-3	12-11	17-1	21-0	24-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-1	12-8	16-7	20-3	23-6	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-9	9-11	12-7	15-4	17-9	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	16-7	20-3	23-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-0	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-10	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-6	18-11	21-11	7-3	10-7	13-5	16-4	19-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-8	17-10	20-9	6-10	10-0	12-8	15-6	17-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Southern Pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	20-10	24-8
	Southern Pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	18-11	22-6	7-5	11-1	14-0	16-5	19-6
	Southern Pine	#2	7-4	11-0	13-11	16-6	19-6	6-4	9-6	12-1	14-4	16-10
	Southern Pine	#3	5-8	8-4	10-6	12-9	15-1	4-11	7-3	9-1	11-0	13-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-6	11-9	14-10	18-2	21-0	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-1	8-10	11-3	13-8	15-11	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.2(7).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(3)**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	10-0	15-9	20-9	Note b	Note b	10-0	15-9	20-1	24-6	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	9-8	14-9	18-8	22-9	Note b	9-0	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	9-5	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-Fir	SS	9-6	14-10	19-7	25-0	Note b	9-6	14-10	19-7	24-1	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	9-3	14-4	18-2	22-2	25-9	8-9	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-10	13-7	17-2	21-0	24-4	8-4	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern Pine	SS	9-10	15-6	20-5	Note b	Note b	9-10	15-6	20-5	25-4	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	9-6	14-10	19-0	22-3	26-0	9-0	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern Pine	#2	8-7	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern Pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	9-3	14-7	19-2	24-6	Note b	9-3	14-7	18-8	22-9	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	23-9	Note b	9-1	13-9	17-5	21-3	24-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-9	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-1	20-10	24-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-5	12-5	15-9	19-3	22-3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-0	11-9	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern Pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-5	21-11	25-11
	Southern Pine	#1	8-7	13-0	16-6	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern Pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern Pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-1	25-7	8-5	12-9	16-2	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-2	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6

(continued)

**TABLE 2308.7.2(3)—continued**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-7	13-6	17-9	21-8	25-2	8-7	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-1	12-9	16-9	21-4	24-8	8-1	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-9	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-4	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Southern Pine	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	16-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern Pine	#1	8-0	11-10	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern Pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-11	12-5	16-5	20-2	23-4	7-11	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-5	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-11	12-6	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-8	11-3	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-1	22-1	7-6	11-0	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-0	16-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern Pine	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-0	23-7	7-10	11-10	15-0	17-11	21-2
	Southern Pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-4	11-7	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.2(7).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

**TABLE 2308.7.2(4)**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-5	13-3	17-6	22-4	26-0	8-5	13-3	17-0	20-9	24-0
	Douglas Fir-larch	#1	8-2	12-0	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-7	11-2	14-1	17-3	20-0
	Douglas Fir-larch	#2	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-larch	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-0	12-6	16-6	21-1	25-6	8-0	12-6	16-6	20-4	23-7
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-10	11-9	14-10	18-1	21-0	7-5	10-10	13-9	16-9	19-5
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-5	11-1	14-0	17-2	19-11	7-0	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Southern Pine	SS	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-11	Note b	8-4	13-1	17-2	21-5	25-3
	Southern Pine	#1	8-0	12-3	15-6	18-2	21-7	7-7	11-4	14-5	16-10	20-0
	Southern Pine	#2	7-0	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8	17-3
	Southern Pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4	13-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-1	7-10	12-3	15-9	19-3	22-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-8	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-10	19-5	22-6	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-11	20-10
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11	17-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-1	22-1	7-3	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6	16-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3
	Southern Pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	23-7	7-6	11-10	15-7	18-6	21-10
	Southern Pine	#1	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7	17-3
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9	15-0
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10	11-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-9	13-8	15-11	19-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6	12-3

(continued)

**TABLE 2308.7.2(4)—continued**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling not attached to rafters, L/Δ = 180)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>									
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-3	11-4	14-6	17-8	20-6	7-3	10-7	13-5	16-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	17-5	20-2	6-10	10-5	13-2	16-1
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-4	9-3	11-9	14-4	16-7	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-0	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7
	Southern Pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-3	21-7	7-1	11-2	14-2	16-11
	Southern Pine	#1	6-6	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4
	Southern Pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7
	Southern Pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-5	16-5	19-1	6-8	9-10	12-5	15-3
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	6-8	10-3	13-0	15-10	18-4	6-6	9-6	12-0	14-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-4	9-11	12-9	15-7	18-0	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5
	Hem-Fir	#1	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10
	Hem-Fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7
	Southern Pine	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	16-4	19-3	6-7	10-0	12-8	15-2
	Southern Pine	#1	5-10	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11
	Southern Pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5
	Southern Pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-2	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.2(7).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(5)**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b	9-1	14-4	18-10	24-1	Note b
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-9	13-9	18-2	22-9	Note b	8-9	13-2	16-8	20-4	23-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	8-7	13-6	17-5	21-4	24-8	8-5	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Hem-Fir	SS	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-9	Note b
	Hem-Fir	#1	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-2	25-9	8-5	12-10	16-3	19-10	23-0
	Hem-Fir	#2	8-0	12-7	16-7	21-0	24-4	8-0	12-2	15-4	18-9	21-9
	Hem-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Southern Pine	SS	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b	8-11	14-1	18-6	23-8	Note b
	Southern Pine	#1	8-7	13-6	17-10	22-3	Note b	8-7	13-5	17-0	19-11	23-7
	Southern Pine	#2	8-3	12-11	16-4	19-5	22-10	7-8	11-7	14-8	17-4	20-5
	Southern Pine	#3	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-0	17-9	5-11	8-9	11-0	13-5	15-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b	8-5	13-3	17-5	22-3	Note b
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	8-3	12-11	17-0	21-4	24-8	8-3	12-4	15-7	19-1	22-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-10	Note b	8-3	13-0	17-2	21-3	24-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	8-0	12-6	16-2	19-9	22-10	7-10	11-5	14-5	17-8	20-5
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-10	11-11	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	25-1	7-10	12-3	16-2	20-8	24-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-8	12-0	15-9	19-3	22-3	7-7	11-1	14-1	17-2	19-11
	Hem-Fir	#2	7-3	11-5	14-11	18-2	21-1	7-2	10-6	13-4	16-3	18-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6
	Southern Pine	SS	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	Note b	8-1	12-9	16-10	21-6	25-11
	Southern Pine	#1	7-10	12-3	16-2	19-3	22-10	7-10	11-7	14-9	17-3	20-5
	Southern Pine	#2	7-6	11-2	14-2	16-10	19-10	6-8	10-0	12-8	15-1	17-9
	Southern Pine	#3	5-9	8-6	10-8	13-0	15-4	5-2	7-7	9-7	11-7	13-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	19-9	22-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-6	11-9	15-1	18-5	21-5	7-3	10-8	13-6	16-6	19-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11	16-2	5-6	8-1	10-3	12-6	14-6

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(5)—continued**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 30 psf, ceiling attached to rafters,  $L/\Delta = 240$ )**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
		(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	(ft. - in.)	
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-9	12-3	16-1	20-7	25-0	7-9	12-3	15-10	19-5	22-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-6	11-8	14-9	18-0	20-11	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-4	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-5	23-7	7-4	11-7	15-3	19-1	22-1
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-2	11-4	14-4	17-7	20-4	6-11	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-10	10-9	13-7	16-7	19-3	6-7	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Southern Pine	SS	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-2	24-7	7-8	12-0	15-10	20-0	23-7
	Southern Pine	#1	7-4	11-7	15-1	17-7	20-11	7-1	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-10	10-2	12-11	15-4	18-1	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2
	Southern Pine	#3	5-3	7-9	9-9	11-10	14-0	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-2	11-4	14-11	19-0	23-1	7-2	11-4	14-9	18-0	20-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	7-0	10-11	13-9	16-10	19-6	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-3	11-4	15-0	19-1	22-6	7-3	11-3	14-2	17-4	20-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-0	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-4	9-4	11-9	14-5	16-8
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-8	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-0	21-11	6-10	10-9	13-11	17-0	19-9
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-8	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-2	9-1	11-6	14-0	16-3
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-4	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10
	Southern Pine	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	17-11	21-2
	Southern Pine	#1	6-10	10-7	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-1	16-8
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-5	8-2	10-4	12-3	14-6
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-2	6-2	7-10	9-6	11-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-8	10-6	13-10	17-8	20-11	6-8	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-6	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	5-11	8-8	11-0	13-6	15-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-6	6-7	8-4	10-2	11-10

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.2(7).

b. Span exceeds 26 feet in length.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(6)**  
**RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES**  
**(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters, L/Δ = 240)**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf				
		2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12	2 × 4	2 × 6	2 × 8	2 × 10	2 × 12
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>									
12	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3	24-8	7-8	12-1	15-11	20-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	7-5	11-7	15-3	18-7	21-7	7-5	11-2	14-1	17-3
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	7-3	11-3	14-3	17-5	20-2	7-1	10-5	13-2	16-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2	23-4	7-3	11-5	15-0	19-2
	Hem-Fir	#1	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-1	21-0	7-1	10-10	13-9	16-9
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-9	10-8	14-0	17-2	19-11	6-9	10-3	13-0	15-10
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2
	Southern Pine	SS	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11	24-3	7-6	11-10	15-7	19-11
	Southern Pine	#1	7-3	11-5	15-0	18-2	21-7	7-3	11-4	14-5	16-10
	Southern Pine	#2	6-11	10-6	13-4	15-10	18-8	6-6	9-9	12-4	14-8
	Southern Pine	#3	5-5	8-0	10-1	12-3	14-6	5-0	7-5	9-4	11-4
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9	22-10	7-1	11-2	14-8	18-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-11	10-11	14-3	17-5	20-2	6-11	10-5	13-2	16-1
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2
16	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	7-0	11-0	14-5	18-5	22-5	7-0	11-0	14-5	17-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	6-9	10-5	13-2	16-1	18-8	6-7	9-8	12-2	14-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-7	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5	21-2	6-7	10-4	13-8	17-5
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-5	10-2	12-10	15-8	18-2	6-5	9-5	11-11	14-6
	Hem-Fir	#2	6-2	9-7	12-2	14-10	17-3	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9
	Hem-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6
	Southern Pine	SS	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1	22-0	6-10	10-9	14-2	18-1
	Southern Pine	#1	6-7	10-4	13-5	15-9	18-8	6-7	9-10	12-5	14-7
	Southern Pine	#2	6-1	9-2	11-7	13-9	16-2	5-8	8-5	10-9	12-9
	Southern Pine	#3	4-8	6-11	8-9	10-7	12-6	4-4	6-5	8-1	9-10
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	6-4	9-9	12-4	15-1	17-6	6-2	9-0	11-5	13-11
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2	4-8	6-10	8-8	10-6

(continued)

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.2(6)—continued  
RAFTER SPANS FOR COMMON LUMBER SPECIES  
(Ground snow load = 50 psf, ceiling attached to rafters,  $L/\Delta = 240$ )**

RAFTER SPACING (inches)	SPECIES AND GRADE	DEAD LOAD = 10 psf					DEAD LOAD = 20 psf					
		2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	2 x 4	2 x 6	2 x 8	2 x 10	2 x 12	
		Maximum rafter spans <sup>a</sup>										
19.2	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	6-7	10-4	13-7	17-4	20-6	6-7	10-4	13-5	16-5	19-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	6-4	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-1	6-0	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	6-1	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
	Hem-Fir	SS	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-5	19-11	6-2	9-9	12-10	16-1	18-8
	Hem-Fir	#1	6-1	9-3	11-9	14-4	16-7	5-10	8-7	10-10	13-3	15-5
	Hem-Fir	#2	5-9	8-9	11-1	13-7	15-9	5-7	8-1	10-3	12-7	14-7
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
	Southern Pine	SS	6-5	10-2	13-4	17-0	20-9	6-5	10-2	13-4	16-11	20-0
	Southern Pine	#1	6-2	9-8	12-3	14-4	17-1	6-0	9-0	11-4	13-4	15-9
	Southern Pine	#2	5-7	8-4	10-7	12-6	14-9	5-2	7-9	9-9	11-7	13-8
	Southern Pine	#3	4-3	6-4	8-0	9-8	11-5	4-0	5-10	7-4	8-11	10-7
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	6-1	9-6	12-7	16-0	19-1	6-1	9-6	12-5	15-3	17-8
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	5-11	8-11	11-3	13-9	15-11	5-7	8-3	10-5	12-9	14-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-7	6-9	8-6	10-5	12-1	4-3	6-3	7-11	9-7	11-2
24	Douglas Fir-Larch	SS	6-1	9-7	12-7	15-10	18-4	6-1	9-6	12-0	14-8	17-0
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#1	5-10	8-6	10-9	13-2	15-3	5-5	7-10	10-0	12-2	14-1
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Douglas Fir-Larch	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Hem-Fir	SS	5-9	9-1	11-11	15-2	18-0	5-9	9-1	11-9	14-5	15-11
	Hem-Fir	#1	5-8	8-3	10-6	12-10	14-10	5-3	7-8	9-9	11-10	13-9
	Hem-Fir	#2	5-4	7-10	9-11	12-1	14-1	4-11	7-3	9-2	11-3	13-0
	Hem-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0
	Southern Pine	SS	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-10	19-3	6-0	9-5	12-5	15-2	17-10
	Southern Pine	#1	5-9	8-8	11-0	12-10	15-3	5-5	8-0	10-2	11-11	14-1
	Southern Pine	#2	5-0	7-5	9-5	11-3	13-2	4-7	6-11	8-9	10-5	12-3
	Southern Pine	#3	3-10	5-8	7-1	8-8	10-3	3-6	5-3	6-7	8-0	9-6
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	SS	5-8	8-10	11-8	14-8	17-1	5-8	8-10	11-2	13-7	15-9
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#1	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#2	5-5	7-11	10-1	12-4	14-3	5-0	7-4	9-4	11-5	13-2
	Spruce-Pine-Fir	#3	4-1	6-0	7-7	9-4	10-9	3-10	5-7	7-1	8-7	10-0

Check sources for availability of lumber in lengths greater than 20 feet.

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

- a. The tabulated rafter spans assume that ceiling joists are located at the bottom of the attic space or that some other method of resisting the outward push of the rafters on the bearing walls, such as rafter ties, is provided at that location. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic space, the rafter spans shall be multiplied by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.2(7).

**TABLE 2308.7.2(7)  
RAFTER SPAN ADJUSTMENT FACTOR**

$H_c/H_R^a$	RAFTER SPAN ADJUSTMENT FACTOR
1/3	0.67
1/4	0.76
1/5	0.83
1/6	0.90
1/7.5 or less	1.00

a.  $H_c$  = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls;

$H_R$  = Height of roof ridge measured vertically above the top of the rafter support walls.

**TABLE 2308.7.3.1**  
**RAFTER TIE CONNECTIONS<sup>i</sup>**

RAFTER SLOPE	TIE SPACING (inches)	LIVE LOAD ONLY <sup>g</sup>		GROUND SNOW LOAD (pounds per square foot)						
				30 pounds per square foot			50 pounds per square foot			
		Roof span (feet)								
		12	24	36	12	24	36	12	24	36
Required number of 16d common ( $3\frac{1}{2}'' \times 0.162''$ ) nails per connection <sup>a, b, c, d, e, f, h</sup>										
3:12	12	3	5	8	3	6	9	5	9	13
	16	4	7	10	4	8	12	6	12	17
	19.2	4	8	12	5	10	14	7	14	21
	24	5	10	15	6	12	18	9	17	26
	32	7	13	20	8	16	24	12	23	34
	48	10	20	29	12	24	35	17	34	51
4:12	12	3	4	6	3	5	7	4	7	10
	16	3	5	8	3	6	9	5	9	13
	19.2	3	6	9	4	7	11	6	11	16
	24	4	8	11	5	9	13	7	13	19
	32	5	10	15	6	12	18	9	17	26
	48	8	15	22	9	18	26	13	26	38
5:12	12	3	3	5	3	4	6	3	6	8
	16	3	4	6	3	5	7	4	7	11
	19.2	3	5	7	3	6	9	5	9	13
	24	3	6	9	4	7	11	6	11	16
	32	4	8	12	5	10	14	7	14	21
	48	6	12	18	7	14	21	11	21	31
7:12	12	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	4	6
	16	3	3	5	3	4	5	3	5	8
	19.2	3	4	5	3	4	6	3	6	9
	24	3	5	7	3	5	8	4	8	11
	32	3	6	9	4	7	10	5	10	15
	48	5	9	13	5	10	15	8	15	22
9:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	5
	16	3	3	4	3	3	4	3	4	6
	19.2	3	3	4	3	4	5	3	5	7
	24	3	4	5	3	4	6	3	6	9
	32	3	5	7	3	6	8	4	8	12
	48	4	7	10	4	8	12	6	12	17
12:12	12	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	4
	16	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	5
	19.2	3	3	3	3	3	4	3	4	6
	24	3	3	4	3	3	5	3	5	7
	32	3	4	5	3	4	6	3	6	9
	48	3	5	8	3	6	9	5	9	13

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 47.8 N/m<sup>2</sup>.

- a. 10d common (3" × 0.148") nails shall be permitted to be substituted for 16d common (3 $\frac{1}{2}$ " × 0.162") nails where the required number of nails is taken as 1.2 times the required number of 16d common nails, rounded up to the next full nail.
- b. Rafter tie heel joint connections are not required where the ridge is supported by a load-bearing wall, header or ridge beam.
- c. Where intermediate support of the rafter is provided by vertical struts or purlins to a load-bearing wall, the tabulated heel joint connection requirements are permitted to be reduced proportionally to the reduction in span.
- d. Equivalent nailing patterns are required for ceiling joist to ceiling joist lap splices.
- e. Connected members shall be of sufficient size to prevent splitting due to nailing.
- f. For snow loads less than 30 pounds per square foot, the required number of nails is permitted to be reduced by multiplying by the ratio of actual snow load plus 10 divided by 40, but not less than the number required for no snow load.
- g. Applies to roof live load of 20 psf or less.
- h. Tabulated heel joint connection requirements assume that ceiling joists or rafter ties are located at the bottom of the attic space. Where ceiling joists or rafter ties are located higher in the attic, heel joint connection requirements shall be increased by the adjustment factors in Table 2308.7.3.1(1).
- i. Tabulated requirements are based on 10 psf roof dead load in combination with the specified roof snow load and roof live load.

## WOOD

**TABLE 2308.7.3.1(1)**  
**HEEL JOINT CONNECTION ADJUSTMENT FACTORS**

$H_c/H_R^{a,b}$	HEEL JOINT CONNECTION ADJUSTMENT FACTOR
1/3	1.5
1/4	1.33
1/5	1.25
1/6	1.2
1/10 or less	1.11

a.  $H_c$  = Height of ceiling joists or rafter ties measured vertically from the top of the rafter support walls to the bottom of the ceiling joists or rafter ties;  
 $H_R$  = Height of roof ridge measured vertically from the top of the rafter support walls to the bottom of the roof ridge.

b. Where  $H_c/H_R$  exceeds 1/3, connections shall be designed in accordance with accepted engineering practice.

**TABLE 2308.7.12**  
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR 2-INCH TONGUE-AND-GROOVE DECKING**

SPAN <sup>a</sup> (feet)	LIVE LOAD (pounds per square foot)	DEFLECTION LIMIT	BENDING STRESS (f) (pounds per square inch)	MODULUS OF ELASTICITY (E) (pounds per square inch)
<b>Roofs</b>				
4	20	1/240	160	170,000
		1/360		256,000
	30	1/240	210	256,000
4.5	30	1/240	270	384,000
		1/360		340,000
	40	1/240	270	512,000
5.0	20	1/240	200	242,000
		1/360		305,000
	30	1/240	270	363,000
5.5	30	1/240	350	405,000
		1/360		484,000
	40	1/240	350	725,000
6.0	20	1/240	250	332,000
		1/360		500,000
	30	1/240	330	495,000
6.0	30	1/240	420	742,000
		1/360		660,000
	40	1/240	420	1,000,000
6.0	20	1/240	300	442,000
		1/360		660,000
	30	1/240	400	662,000
6.0	30	1/240	500	998,000
		1/360		884,000
	40	1/240	500	1,330,000
6.0	20	1/240	360	575,000
		1/360		862,000
	30	1/240	480	862,000
6.0	30	1/240	600	1,295,000
		1/360		1,150,000
	40	1/240	600	1,730,000

(continued)

**WOOD**

**TABLE 2308.7.12—continued**  
**ALLOWABLE SPANS FOR 2-INCH TONGUE-AND-GROOVE DECKING**

SPAN <sup>a</sup> (feet)	LIVE LOAD (pounds per square foot)	DEFLECTION LIMIT	BENDING STRESS (f) (pounds per square inch)	MODULUS OF ELASTICITY (E) (pounds per square inch)
<b>Roofs</b>				
6.5	20	1/240	420	595,000
		1/360		892,000
	30	1/240	560	892,000
7.0	30	1/240	700	1,340,000
		1/360		1,190,000
	40	1/240	700	1,730,000
7.5	20	1/240	490	910,000
		1/360		1,360,000
	30	1/240	650	1,370,000
8.0	30	1/240	810	2,000,000
		1/360		1,820,000
	40	1/240	810	2,725,000
<b>Floors</b>				
4			840	1,000,000
4.5	40	1/360	950	1,300,000
5.0			1,060	1,600,000

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kN/m<sup>2</sup>, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

a. Spans are based on simple beam action with 10 pounds per square foot dead load and provisions for a 300-pound concentrated load on a 12-inch width of decking. Random layup is permitted in accordance with the provisions of Section 2308.7.12. Lumber thickness is 1½ inches nominal.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 24 – GLASS AND GLAZING

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X		X	X	X							X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)								X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							
2401.1.1								X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
2401.1.2								X	X														
2401.1.2, Exception 1										X	X	X			X	X							
2403.2.1								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
Table 2403.2.1								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
2410.1, Exception												X											
2410								X	X	X	X	B			X	X							
2411										X	X	X			X	X							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

(A & B) – OSHPD (HCAI) delineates that OHSPD 2 is either designated as an OSHPD 2A or 2B. See Ch. 1, Div. I, Section 1.10 for additional information.



# CHAPTER 24

## GLASS AND GLAZING

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 24 establishes regulations for glass and glazing used in buildings and structures. Engineering and design requirements are included in the chapter for glazing that is subjected to wind and snow loads. Another concern of this chapter is glass and glazing used in areas where it is likely to be impacted by the occupants. Section 2406 identifies hazardous locations where glazing must either be safety glazing or protected to prevent impacts by occupants. Safety glazing must meet stringent standards and be appropriately marked or identified. Additional requirements are provided for glass and glazing in guards, handrails, elevator hoistways and elevator cars, as well as in athletic facilities.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 2401 GENERAL

**2401.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of glass, light-transmitting ceramic and light-transmitting plastic panels for exterior and interior use in both vertical and sloped applications in buildings and structures. Light-transmitting plastic glazing shall also meet the applicable requirements of Chapter 26.

**2401.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** The scope of application of Chapter 24 is as follows:

1. Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2, 1.10.4 and 1.10.5 regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals, hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings, correctional treatment centers and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.
2. Applications listed in Sections 1.9.2.1 and 1.9.2.2, regulated by the Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety (DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC). These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings.

**2401.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. OSHPD amendments appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:
  - [OSHPD 1] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.
  - [OSHPD 1R] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.
  - [OSHPD 2] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

[OSHPD 4] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

[OSHPD 5] - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

2. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety:  
[DSA-SS] - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

[DSA-SS/CC] - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

### SECTION 2402 GLAZING REPLACEMENT

**2402.1 General.** The installation of replacement glass shall be as required for new installations.

### SECTION 2403 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR GLASS

**2403.1 Identification.** Each pane shall bear the manufacturer's mark designating the type and thickness of the glass or glazing material. The identification shall not be omitted unless approved and an affidavit is furnished by the glazing contractor certifying that each light is glazed in accordance with approved construction documents that comply with the provisions of this chapter. Safety glazing shall be identified in accordance with Section 2406.3.

Each pane of tempered glass, except tempered spandrel glass, shall be permanently identified by the manufacturer. The identification mark shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that, once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed.

Tempered spandrel glass shall be provided with a removable paper marking by the manufacturer.

**2403.2 Glass supports.** Where one or more sides of any pane of glass are not firmly supported, or are subjected to unusual load conditions, detailed construction documents, detailed shop drawings and analysis or test data ensuring safe performance for the specific installation shall be prepared by a registered design professional.

## GLASS AND GLAZING

**2403.2.1 Additional Requirements.** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5] In addition to the requirements of Section 2403.2, glass supports shall comply with the following:

1. The construction documents and analysis or test data required per Section 2403.2 shall be submitted to the enforcement agency for approval.
2. Glass firmly supported on all four edges shall be glazed with minimum laps and edge clearances set forth in Table 2403.2.1.

**Exception:** Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

**2403.3 Glass framing.** To be considered firmly supported, the framing members for each individual pane of glass shall be designed so that the deflection of the edge of the glass perpendicular to the glass pane does not exceed  $\frac{1}{175}$  of the glass edge length where the glass edge length is not more than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm), or  $\frac{1}{240}$  of the glass edge length +  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) where the glass edge length is greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm), when subjected to the larger of the positive or negative load where loads are combined as specified in Section 1605.

**2403.4 Interior glazed areas.** Where interior glazing is installed adjacent to a walking surface, the differential deflection of two adjacent unsupported edges shall be not greater than the thickness of the panels when a force of 50 pounds per linear foot (plf) (730 N/m) is applied horizontally to one panel at any point up to 42 inches (1067 mm) above the walking surface.

**2403.5 Louvered windows or jalousies.** Float, wired and patterned glass in louvered windows and jalousies shall be not thinner than nominal  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) and not longer than 48 inches (1219 mm). Exposed glass edges shall be smooth.

Wired glass with wire exposed on longitudinal edges shall not be used in louvered windows or jalousies.

Where other glass types are used, the design shall be submitted to the building official for approval.

## SECTION 2404 WIND, SNOW, SEISMIC AND DEAD LOADS ON GLASS

**2404.1 Vertical glass.** Glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , in Section 1609 for components and cladding. Glass in glazed curtain walls, glazed storefronts and glazed partitions shall meet the seismic requirements of ASCE 7, Section 13.5.9. The load resistance of glass under uniform load shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The design of vertical glazing shall be based on Equation 24-1.

$$0.6F_{gw} \leq F_{ga} \quad (\text{Equation 24-1})$$

where:

$F_{gw}$  = Wind load on the glass due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , computed in accordance with Section 1609.

$F_{ga}$  = Short duration load on the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300.

**TABLE 2403.2.1  
MINIMUM GLAZING REQUIREMENTS**

<b>FIXED WINDOWS AND OPENABLE WINDOWS OTHER THAN HORIZONTAL SIDING</b>							
<b>Glass Area</b>	<b>Up to 6 sq. ft.</b>	<b>6 to 14 sq. ft.</b>	<b>14 to 32 sq. ft.</b>	<b>32 to 50 sq. ft.</b>	<b>Over 50 sq. ft.</b>		
	<b><math>\times 0.0929 \text{ for m}^2, \times 25.4 \text{ for mm}</math></b>						
1. Minimum Frame Lap	$\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{5}{16}$ "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "	$\frac{1}{2}$ "		
2. Minimum Glass Edge Clearance	$\frac{1}{8}$ " <sup>1,2</sup>	$\frac{1}{8}$ " <sup>1,2</sup>	$\frac{3}{16}$ " <sup>1</sup>	$\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{1}{4}$ " <sup>1</sup>		
3. Continuous Glazing Rabbet and Glass Retainer <sup>3</sup>				Required			
4. Resilient Setting Material <sup>4</sup>	Not Required		Required				
<b>SLIDING DOORS AND HORIZONTAL SLIDING WINDOWS</b>							
<b>Glass Area</b>		<b>Up to 14 sq. ft.</b>	<b>14 to 32 sq. ft.</b>	<b>32 to 50 sq. ft.</b>	<b>Over 50 sq. ft.</b>		
	<b><math>\times 0.0929 \text{ for m}^2, \times 25.4 \text{ for mm}</math></b>						
5. Minimum Glass Frame Lap		$\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{5}{16}$ "	$\frac{3}{8}$ "	$\frac{1}{2}$ "		
6. Minimum Glass Edge Clearance		$\frac{1}{8}$ " <sup>2</sup>	$\frac{3}{16}$ "	$\frac{1}{4}$ "	$\frac{1}{4}$ "		
7. Continuous Glazing Rabbet and Glass Retainer <sup>3</sup>		Required above third story		Required			
8. Resilient Setting Material <sup>4</sup>		Not Required		Required			

1. Glass edge clearance in fixed openings shall not be less than required to provide for wind and earthquake drift.
2. Glass edge clearance at all sides of pane shall be a minimum of  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) where height of glass exceeds 3 feet (914 mm).
3. Glass retainers such as metal, wood or vinyl face stops, glazing beads, gaskets, glazing clips and glazing channels shall be of sufficient strength and fixation to serve this purpose.
4. Resilient setting material shall include preformed rubber or vinyl plastic gaskets or other materials which are proved to the satisfaction of the building official to remain resilient.

**2404.2 Sloped glass.** Glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunrooms, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical combinations of loads determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

$$F_g = 0.6W_o - D \quad (\text{Equation 24-2})$$

$$F_g = 0.6W_i + D + 0.5S \quad (\text{Equation 24-3})$$

$$F_g = 0.3W_i + D + S \quad (\text{Equation 24-4})$$

where:

$D$  = Glass dead load psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ).

For glass sloped 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from horizontal,

=  $13t_g$  (For SI:  $0.0245t_g$ ).

For glass sloped more than 30 degrees (0.52 rad) from horizontal,

=  $13t_g \cos \theta$  (For SI:  $0.0245t_g \cos \theta$ ).

$F_g$  = Total load, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) on glass.

$S$  = Snow load, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) as determined in Section 1608.

$t_g$  = Total glass thickness, inches (mm) of glass panes and plies.

$W_i$  = Inward wind force, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , as calculated in Section 1609.

$W_o$  = Outward wind force, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , as calculated in Section 1609.

$\theta$  = Angle of slope from horizontal.

**Exception:** The performance grade rating of unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be determined in accordance with Section 2405.5.

The design of sloped glazing shall be based on Equation 24-5.

$$F_g \leq F_{ga} \quad (\text{Equation 24-5})$$

where:

$F_g$  = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

$F_{ga}$  = Short duration load resistance of the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300 for Equations 24-2 and 24-3; or the long duration load resistance of the glass as determined in accordance with ASTM E1300 for Equation 24-4.

#### 2404.3 Wired, patterned and sandblasted glass.

**2404.3.1 Vertical wired glass.** Wired glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to the following equation:

$$0.6F_{gw} < 0.5F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-6})$$

where:

$F_{gw}$  = Wind load on the glass due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , computed in accordance with Section 1609.

$F_{ge}$  = Nonfactored load from ASTM E1300 using a thickness designation for monolithic glass that is not greater than the thickness of wired glass.

**2404.3.2 Sloped wired glass.** Wired glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunspaces, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical of the combinations of loads from Section 2404.2.

For Equations 24-2 and 24-3:

$$F_g < 0.5F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-7})$$

For Equation 24-4:

$$F_g < 0.3F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-8})$$

where:

$F_g$  = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

$F_{ge}$  = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

**2404.3.3 Vertical patterned glass.** Patterned glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in windows, curtain and window walls, doors and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to Equation 24-9.

$$F_{gw} < 1.0F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-9})$$

where:

$F_{gw}$  = Wind load on the glass due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , computed in accordance with Section 1609.

$F_{ge}$  = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

**2404.3.4 Sloped patterned glass.** Patterned glass sloped more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from vertical in skylights, sunspaces, sloped roofs and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the most critical of the combinations of loads from Section 2404.2.

For Equations 24-2 and 24-3:

$$F_g < 1.0F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-10})$$

For Equation 24-4:

$$F_g < 0.6F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-11})$$

where:

$F_g$  = Total load on the glass as determined by Equations 24-2, 24-3 and 24-4.

$F_{ge}$  = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300.

The value for patterned glass shall be based on the thinnest part of the glass. Interpolation between the nonfactored load charts in ASTM E1300 shall be permitted.

**2404.3.5 Vertical sandblasted glass.** Sandblasted glass sloped 15 degrees (0.26 rad) or less from vertical in

## GLASS AND GLAZING

windows, curtain and window walls, doors, and other exterior applications shall be designed to resist the wind loads in Section 1609 for components and cladding according to Equation 24-12.

$$0.6F_{gw} < 0.5 F_{ge} \quad (\text{Equation 24-12})$$

where:

$F_g$  = Wind load on the glass due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , computed in accordance with Section 1609.

$F_{ge}$  = Nonfactored load in accordance with ASTM E1300. The value for sandblasted glass is for moderate levels of sandblasting.

**2404.4 Other designs.** For designs outside the scope of this section, an analysis or test data for the specific installation shall be prepared by a registered design professional.

## SECTION 2405 SLOPED GLAZING AND SKYLIGHTS

**2405.1 Scope.** This section applies to the installation of glass and other transparent, translucent or opaque glazing material installed at a slope of more than 15 degrees (0.26 rad) from the vertical plane, including glazing materials in skylights, roofs and sloped walls.

**2405.2 Allowable glazing materials and limitations.** Sloped glazing shall be any of the following materials, subject to the listed limitations.

1. For monolithic glazing systems, the glazing material of the single light or layer shall be laminated glass with a minimum 30-mil (0.76 mm) polyvinyl butyral (or equivalent) interlayer, wired glass, light-transmitting plastic materials meeting the requirements of Section 2607, heat-strengthened glass or fully tempered glass.
2. For multiple-layer glazing systems, each light or layer shall consist of any of the glazing materials specified in Item 1.

Annealed glass is permitted to be used as specified in Exceptions 2 and 3 of Section 2405.3.

Laminated glass and plastic materials described in Items 1 and 2 shall not require the screening or height restrictions provided in Section 2405.3.

For additional requirements for plastic skylights, see Section 2610. Glass-block construction shall conform to the requirements of Section 2110.1.

**2405.3 Screening.** Where used in monolithic glazing systems, annealed, heat-strengthened, fully tempered and wired glass shall have broken glass retention screens installed below the glazing material. The screens and their fastenings shall be: capable of supporting twice the weight of the glazing; firmly and substantially fastened to the framing members; and installed within 4 inches (102 mm) of the glass. The screens shall be constructed of a noncombustible material not thinner than No. 12 B&S gage (0.0808 inch) with mesh not larger than 1 inch by 1 inch (25 mm by 25 mm). In a corrosive atmosphere, structurally equivalent noncorrosive screen materials shall be used. Annealed, heat-

strengthened, fully tempered and wired glass, where used in multiple-layer glazing systems as the bottom glass layer over the walking surface, shall be equipped with screening that conforms to the requirements for monolithic glazing systems.

**Exception:** In monolithic and multiple-layer sloped glazing systems, the following applies:

1. Fully tempered glass installed without protective screens where glazed between intervening floors at a slope of 30 degrees (0.52 rad) or less from the vertical plane shall have the highest point of the glass 10 feet (3048 mm) or less above the walking surface.
2. Screens are not required below any glazing material, including annealed glass, where the walking surface below the glazing material is permanently protected from the risk of falling glass or the area below the glazing material is not a walking surface.
3. Any glazing material, including annealed glass, is permitted to be installed without screens in the sloped glazing systems of commercial or detached noncombustible greenhouses used exclusively for growing plants and not open to the public, provided that the height of the greenhouse at the ridge does not exceed 30 feet (9144 mm) above grade.
4. Screens shall not be required in individual dwelling units in Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 where fully tempered glass is used as single glazing or as both panes in an insulating glass unit, and the following conditions are met:
  - 4.1. Each pane of the glass is 16 square feet (1.5 m<sup>2</sup>) or less in area.
  - 4.2. The highest point of the glass is 12 feet (3658 mm) or less above any walking surface or other accessible area.
  - 4.3. The glass thickness is  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) or less.
5. Screens shall not be required for laminated glass with a 15-mil (0.38 mm) polyvinyl butyral (or equivalent) interlayer used in individual dwelling units in Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 within the following limits:
  - 5.1. Each pane of glass is 16 square feet (1.5 m<sup>2</sup>) or less in area.
  - 5.2. The highest point of the glass is 12 feet (3658 mm) or less above a walking surface or other accessible area.

**2405.4 Framing.** In Types I and II construction, sloped glazing and skylight frames shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. In structures where acid fumes deleterious to metal are incidental to the use of the buildings, approved pressure-treated wood or other approved noncorrosive materials are permitted to be used for sash and frames. Framing supporting sloped glazing and skylights shall be designed to resist the tributary roof loads in Chapter 16. Skylights set at an angle of less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal plane shall be mounted not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof on a curb

constructed as required for the frame. Skylights shall not be installed in the plane of the roof where the roof pitch is less than 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the horizontal.

**Exception:** Installation of a skylight without a curb shall be permitted on roofs with a minimum slope of 14 degrees (three units vertical in 12 units horizontal) in Group R-3 occupancies. Unit skylights installed in a roof with a pitch flatter than 14 degrees (0.25 rad) shall be mounted not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed as required for the frame unless otherwise specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**2405.5 Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices.** Unit skylights and tubular daylighting devices shall be tested and labeled as complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S./A440. The label shall state the name of the manufacturer, the approved labeling agency, the product designation and the performance grade rating as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440. Where the product manufacturer has chosen to have the performance grade of the skylight rated separately for positive and negative design pressure, then the label shall state both performance grade ratings as specified in AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 and the skylight shall comply with Section 2405.5.2. Where the skylight is not rated separately for positive and negative pressure, then the performance grade rating shown on the label shall be the performance grade rating determined in accordance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for both positive and negative design pressure and the skylight shall conform to Section 2405.5.1.

**2405.5.1 Skylights rated for the same performance grade for both positive and negative design pressure.** The design of skylights shall be based on Equation 24-13.

$$F_g \leq PG \quad (\text{Equation 24-13})$$

where:

$F_g$  = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-2 through 24-4 in Section 2404.2.

$PG$  = Performance grade rating of the skylight.

**2405.5.2 Skylights rated for separate performance grades for positive and negative design pressure.** The design of skylights rated for performance grade for both positive and negative design pressures shall be based on Equations 24-14 and 24-15.

$$F_{gi} \leq PG_{Pos} \quad (\text{Equation 24-14})$$

$$F_{go} \leq PG_{Neg} \quad (\text{Equation 24-15})$$

where:

$PG_{Pos}$  = Performance grade rating of the skylight under positive design pressure;

$PG_{Neg}$  = Performance grade rating of the skylight under negative design pressure; and

$F_{gi}$  and  $F_{go}$  are determined in accordance with the following:

For  $0.6W_o \geq D$ ,

where:

$W_o$  = Outward wind force, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , as calculated in Section 1609.

$D$  = The dead weight of the glazing, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) as determined in Section 2404.2 for glass, or by the weight of the plastic, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) for plastic glazing.

$F_{gi}$  = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-3 and 24-4 in Section 2404.2.

$F_{go}$  = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equation 24-2.

For  $0.6W_o < D$ ,

where:

$W_o$  = The outward wind force, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) due to basic design wind speed,  $V$ , as calculated in Section 1609.

$D$  = The dead weight of the glazing, psf ( $\text{kN}/\text{m}^2$ ) as determined in Section 2404.2 for glass, or by the weight of the plastic for plastic glazing.

$F_{gi}$  = Maximum load on the skylight determined from Equations 24-2 through 24-4 in Section 2404.2.

$F_{go} = 0$ .

## SECTION 2406 SAFETY GLAZING

**2406.1 Human impact loads.** Individual glazed areas, including glass mirrors, in hazardous locations as defined in Section 2406.4 shall comply with Sections 2406.1.1 through 2406.1.4.

**Exception:** Mirrors and other glass panels mounted or hung on a surface that provides a continuous backing support.

**2406.1.1 Impact test.** Except as provided in Sections 2406.1.2 through 2406.1.4, all glazing shall pass the impact test requirements of Section 2406.2.

**2406.1.2 Plastic glazing.** Plastic glazing shall meet the weathering requirements of ANSI Z97.1.

**2406.1.3 Glass block.** Glass-block walls shall comply with Section 2110.

**2406.1.4 Louvered windows and jalousies.** Louvered windows and jalousies shall comply with Section 2403.5.

**2406.2 Impact test.** Where required by other sections of this code, glazing shall be tested in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Category II, unless otherwise indicated in Table 2406.2(1).

**Exception:** Glazing not in doors or enclosures for hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers shall be permitted to be tested in accordance with ANSI Z97.1. Glazing shall comply with the test criteria for Class A, unless otherwise indicated in Table 2406.2(2).

## GLASS AND GLAZING

**TABLE 2406.2(1)**  
**MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING CPSC 16 CFR PART 1201**

EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE	GLAZING IN STORM OR COMBINATION DOORS (Category class)	GLAZING IN DOORS (Category class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.3 (Category class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.2 (Category class)	DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.5 (Category class)	SLIDING GLASS DOORS PATIO TYPE (Category class)
9 square feet or less	I	I	No requirement	I	II	II
More than 9 square feet	II	II	II	II	II	II

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

**TABLE 2406.2(2)**  
**MINIMUM CATEGORY CLASSIFICATION OF GLAZING USING ANSI Z97.1**

EXPOSED SURFACE AREA OF ONE SIDE OF ONE LITE	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.3 (Category class)	GLAZED PANELS REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.2 (Category class)	DOORS AND ENCLOSURES REGULATED BY SECTION 2406.4.5 <sup>a</sup> (Category class)
9 square feet or less	No requirement	B	A
More than 9 square feet	A	A	A

For SI: square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. Use is only permitted by the exception to Section 2406.2.

**2406.3 Identification of safety glazing.** Except as indicated in Section 2406.3.1, each pane of safety glazing installed in hazardous locations shall be identified by a manufacturer's designation specifying who applied the designation, the manufacturer or installer and the safety glazing standard with which it complies, as well as the information specified in Section 2403.1. The designation shall be acid etched, sand blasted, ceramic fired, laser etched, embossed or of a type that once applied, cannot be removed without being destroyed. A label meeting the requirements of this section shall be permitted in lieu of the manufacturer's designation.

**Exceptions:**

1. For other than tempered glass, manufacturer's designations are not required, provided that the building official approves the use of a certificate, affidavit or other evidence confirming compliance with this code.
2. Tempered spandrel glass is permitted to be identified by the manufacturer with a removable paper designation.

**2406.3.1 Multipane assemblies.** Multipane glazed assemblies having individual panes not exceeding 1 square foot (0.09 m<sup>2</sup>) in exposed areas shall have one pane or more in the assembly marked as indicated in Section 2406.3. Other panes in the assembly shall be marked "CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201" or "ANSI Z97.1," as appropriate.

**2406.4 Hazardous locations.** The locations specified in Sections 2406.4.1 through 2406.4.7 shall be considered to be specific hazardous locations requiring safety glazing materials.

**2406.4.1 Glazing in doors.** Glazing in all fixed and operable panels of swinging, sliding and bifold doors shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

**Exceptions:**

1. Glazed openings of a size through which a 3-inch-diameter (76 mm) sphere is unable to pass.

2. Decorative glazing.

3. Glazing materials used as curved glazed panels in revolving doors.

4. Commercial refrigerated cabinet glazed doors.

**2406.4.2 Glazing adjacent to doors.** Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel adjacent to a door where the nearest vertical edge of the glazing is within a 24-inch (610 mm) arc of either vertical edge of the door in a closed position and where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the walking surface shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

**Exceptions:**

1. Decorative glazing.
2. Where there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and glazing.
3. Where access through the door is to a closet or storage area 3 feet (914 mm) or less in depth. Glazing in this application shall comply with Section 2406.4.3.
4. Glazing in walls on the latch side of and perpendicular to the plane of the door in a closed position in one- and two-family dwellings or within dwelling units in Group R-2.

**2406.4.3 Glazing in windows.** Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel that meets all of the following conditions shall be considered to be a hazardous location:

1. The exposed area of an individual pane is greater than 9 square feet (0.84 m<sup>2</sup>).
2. The bottom edge of the glazing is less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor.
3. The top edge of the glazing is greater than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor.

4. One or more walking surface(s) are within 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the plane of the glazing.

**Exceptions:**

1. Decorative glazing.
2. Where a horizontal rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal *load* of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and be not less than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) in cross-sectional height.
3. Outboard panes in insulating glass units or multiple glazing where the bottom exposed edge of the glass is 25 feet (7620 mm) or more above any grade, roof, walking surface or other horizontal or sloped (within 45 degrees of horizontal) (0.79 rad) surface adjacent to the glass exterior.

**2406.4.4 Glazing in guards and railings.** Glazing in guards and railings, including structural baluster panels and nonstructural in-fill panels, regardless of area or height above a walking surface shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

**2406.4.5 Glazing and wet surfaces.** Glazing in walls, enclosures or fences containing or facing hot tubs, spas, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs, showers and indoor or outdoor swimming pools where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) measured vertically above any standing or walking surface shall be considered to be a hazardous location. This shall apply to single glazing and all panes in multiple glazing.

**Exception:** Glazing that is more than 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, from the water's edge of a bathtub, hot tub, spa, whirlpool or swimming pool.

**2406.4.6 Glazing adjacent to stairways and ramps.** Glazing where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the plane of the adjacent walking surface of stairways, landings between flights of stairs and ramps shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

**Exceptions:**

1. The side of a stairway, landing or ramp that has a guard complying with the provisions of Sections 1015 and 1607.9, and the plane of the glass is greater than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing.
2. Glazing 36 inches (914 mm) or more measured horizontally from the walking surface.

**2406.4.7 Glazing adjacent to the bottom stairway landing.** Glazing adjacent to the landing at the bottom of a stairway where the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the landing and within a 60-inch (1524 mm) horizontal arc that is less than 180 degrees (3.14 rad) from

the bottom tread nosing shall be considered to be a hazardous location.

**Exception:** Glazing that is protected by a guard complying with Sections 1015 and 1607.9 where the plane of the glass is greater than 18 inches (457 mm) from the guard.

**2406.5 Fire department access panels.** Fire department glass access panels shall be of tempered glass. For insulating glass units, all panes shall be tempered glass.

## SECTION 2407 GLASS IN HANDRAILS AND GUARDS

**2407.1 Materials.** Glass used in a handrail or a guard shall be laminated glass constructed of fully tempered or heat-strengthened glass and shall comply with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1. Glazing in a handrail or a guard shall be of an approved safety glazing material that conforms to the provisions of Section 2406.1.1. For all glazing types, the minimum nominal thickness shall be  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm).

**Exception:** Single fully tempered glass complying with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1 shall be permitted to be used in handrails and guards where there is no walking surface beneath them or the walking surface is permanently protected from the risk of falling glass.

**2407.1.1 Loads.** Glass handrails and guards and their support systems shall be designed to withstand the loads specified in Section 1607.9. Glass handrails and guards shall be designed using a factor of safety of four.

**2407.1.2 Guards with structural glass balusters.** Guards with structural glass balusters, whether vertical posts, columns or panels, shall be installed with an attached top rail or handrail. The top rail or handrail shall be supported by not fewer than three glass balusters, or shall be otherwise supported to remain in place should one glass baluster fail.

**Exception:** An attached top rail or handrail is not required where the glass baluster panels are laminated glass with two or more glass plies of equal thickness and of the same glass type. The balusters shall be tested to remain in place as a barrier following impact or glass breakage in accordance with ASTM E2353.

**2407.1.3 Parking garages.** Glazing materials shall not be installed in handrails or guards in parking garages except for pedestrian areas not exposed to impact from vehicles.

**2407.1.4 Glazing in windborne debris regions.** Glazing installed in exterior handrails or guards in windborne debris regions shall be laminated glass complying with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1. Where the top rail is supported by glass, the assembly shall be tested according to the impact requirements of Section 1609.2 and the top rail shall remain in place after impact.

## GLASS AND GLAZING

### SECTION 2408 GLAZING IN ATHLETIC FACILITIES

**2408.1 General.** Glazing in athletic facilities and similar uses subject to impact loads, which forms whole or partial wall sections or which is used as a door or part of a door, shall comply with this section.

#### 2408.2 Racquetball and squash courts.

**2408.2.1 Testing.** Test methods and loads for individual glazed areas in racquetball and squash courts subject to impact loads shall conform to those of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or ANSI Z97.1 with impacts being applied at a height of 59 inches (1499 mm) above the playing surface to an actual or simulated glass wall installation with fixtures, fittings and methods of assembly identical to those used in practice.

Glass walls shall comply with the following conditions:

1. A glass wall in a racquetball or squash court, or similar use subject to impact loads, shall remain intact following a test impact.
2. The deflection of such walls shall be not greater than  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm) at the point of impact for a drop height of 48 inches (1219 mm).

Glass doors shall comply with the following conditions:

1. Glass doors shall remain intact following a test impact at the prescribed height in the center of the door.
2. The relative deflection between the edge of a glass door and the adjacent wall shall not exceed the thickness of the wall plus  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) for a drop height of 48 inches (1219 mm).

**2408.3 Gymnasiums and basketball courts.** Glazing in multipurpose gymnasiums, basketball courts and similar athletic facilities subject to human impact loads shall comply with Category II of CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201 or Class A of ANSI Z97.1.

### SECTION 2409

#### GLASS IN WALKWAYS,

#### ELEVATOR HOISTWAYS AND ELEVATOR CARS

**2409.1 Glass walkways.** Glass installed as a part of a floor/ceiling assembly as a walking surface and constructed with laminated glass shall comply with ASTM E2751 or with the load requirements specified in Chapter 16. Such assemblies shall comply with the fire-resistance rating and marking requirements of this code where applicable.

**2409.2 Glass in elevator hoistway enclosures.** Glass in elevator hoistway enclosures and hoistway doors shall be laminated glass conforming to ANSI Z97.1 or CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

**2409.2.1 Fire-resistance-rated hoistways.** Glass installed in hoistways and hoistway doors where the hoistway is required to have a fire-resistance rating shall comply with Section 716.

**2409.2.2 Glass hoistway doors.** The glass in glass hoistway doors shall be not less than 60 percent of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the landing side.

**2409.3 Visions panels in elevator hoistway doors.** Glass in vision panels in elevator hoistway doors shall be permitted to be any transparent glazing material not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in thickness conforming to Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201. The area of any single vision panel shall be not less than 24 square inches ( $15\ 484\ mm^2$ ) and the total area of one or more vision panels in any hoistway door shall be not more than 85 square inches ( $54\ 839\ mm^2$ ).

**2409.4 Glass in elevator cars.** Glass in elevator cars shall be in accordance with this section.

**2409.4.1 Glass types.** Glass in elevator car enclosures, glass elevator car doors and glass used for lining walls and ceilings of elevator cars shall be laminated glass conforming to Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

**Exception:** Tempered glass shall be permitted to be used for lining walls and ceilings of elevator cars provided that:

1. The glass is bonded to a nonpolymeric coating, sheeting or film backing having a physical integrity to hold the fragments when the glass breaks.
2. The glass is not subjected to further treatment such as sandblasting; etching; heat treatment or painting that could alter the original properties of the glass.
3. The glass is tested to the acceptance criteria for laminated glass as specified for Class A in accordance with ANSI Z97.1 or Category II in accordance with CPSC 16 CFR Part 1201.

**2409.4.2 Surface area.** The glass in glass elevator car doors shall be not less than 60 percent of the total visible door panel surface area as seen from the car side of the doors.

### SECTION 2410

#### [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] STRUCTURAL SEALANT GLAZING (SSG)

**2410.1 General.** The requirements of this section address the use of structural sealant glazing (SSG). These requirements shall not be used for butt joint glazing, point supported glass and glass fins.

*Design, construction, testing and inspection shall satisfy the requirements of this code except as modified in Sections 2410.1.1 through 2410.1.4.*

**Exception: [OSHPD 2]** Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

**2410.1.1 Design.** Design of SSG shall satisfy the following requirements:

1. SSG shall be weather tight and serviceable, as defined in AAMA 501.4, under design story drifts associated with the design earthquake and no glass fallout shall occur at the drifts determined by ASCE 7, Section 13.5.9.
2. The sealant utilized in the insulated glass units used in SSG shall be designed in accordance with ASTM C1249. The insulated glass unit design shall be in accordance with ASTM C1249, Section 6.7.2.
3. Allowable stress for SSG shall not exceed 20 psi and shall have a minimum factor of safety of 5 as required by ASTM C1401.
4. Design methodology shall address seismic movement in accordance with ASTM C1401, Section 30.3.4.
5. SSG systems shall be supported for self-weight and lateral loading at each floor level of the building.
6. Unitized SSG framing shall be anchored to the building floor bearing plate by screws or bolts and shall not rely upon gravity or frictional forces for attachment.
7. Framing shall satisfy the out-of-plane deflection requirements of this code.

**2410.1.2 Testing and inspection.** Testing and inspection of SSG shall satisfy the following requirements:

1. The seismic drift capability of SSG shall be determined by tests in accordance with AAMA 501.6 and AAMA 501.4. Analysis as an alternative to testing is not acceptable for the purposes of satisfying the seismic drift requirements of the SSG system.

**Exception:** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] In Risk Category I, II and III buildings the seismic drift capacity can be determined by engineering analysis in accordance with ASCE 7, Section 13.5.9 for two-sided SSG systems in which the other two sides of each glazing unit are mechanically captured by mullions such that glass fallout is prevented even in the event of the structural sealant failure.

2. The applicability of the specific AAMA 501.6 and AAMA 501.4 testing shall be subject to approval by the building official.
3. The panel test specimens used in the AAMA 501.6 and AAMA 501.4 testing shall include all glass types (annealed, heat strengthened, laminated, tempered) and insulated glass units that comprise more than 5 percent of the total glass curtain wall area used in the building.
4. AAMA 501.4 test specimen shall include the same materials, sections, connections and attachment details to the test apparatus as used in the building.
5. Serviceability tests of SSG test specimen shall be performed in accordance with AAMA 501.4 after seismic displacement tests to the design story drift.

6. The window wall system using structural sealant by different manufacturer/product category shall be qualified in accordance with AAMA 501.6 and AAMA 501.4 testing for the seismic drift required. ||| <

7. Where unitized SSG is used with horizontal stack joints at each floor level and split vertical mullions that can move independently, only a story height single unit need to be tested under AAMA 501.6. Where continuous horizontal bands of SSG are used in the building, either two or four sided, the aspect ratio (height-to-length) of the test specimen shall be less than 1.0, contain not less than two interior vertical joints and all joints (vertical in the case of two sided), including the perimeter of the glass, shall be glazed with SSG. |||
8. Where SSG continues around corners, the AAMA 501.4 test specimen shall include one corner panel to verify the kinematics of the corner condition under seismic drift. |||
9. Quality assurance and inspection requirements shall include formalized post-installation tests using the point load testing procedure in accordance with ASTM C1392. The point load tests shall be done after the initial installation. |||

10. Where the SSG is field assembled, hand pull tab tests in accordance with ASTM C1401, Section X2.1, one test every 100 linear feet, but not less than one test for each building elevation view shall be required. |||

Existing AAMA 501.4 and 501.6 test results satisfying the requirements of this section shall be permitted, in lieu of project specific tests, when approved by the building official.

**2410.1.3 Monitoring.** Short- and long-term periodic performance monitoring shall be provided in accordance with ASTM C1401, C1392 and C1394. Inspection frequencies recommended in ASTM C1394 shall be followed. |||

**2410.1.4 Construction documents.** Complete design of the SSG system for gravity, wind and seismic forces shall be subject to review by the enforcement agency. Construction documents shall show descriptive notes and structural details of glass and curtain wall system including: |||

1. A design narrative explaining how the SSG is supported by the building and the mechanism used to accommodate seismic racking.
2. Type of SSG and whether field or shop built.
3. The means of supporting the glass during structural sealant curing time.
4. Typical curtain wall panel elevation, plan view and sections.
5. Details of building corner joint to verify how the corner vertical mullion will move to accommodate the seismic drift.
6. Joints between panel and floors at top and bottom.

## GLASS AND GLAZING

7. Joints between panels, including vertical and horizontal stack joints at intermediate and edge mullion.
8. Member sizes for curtain wall panels.
9. Glass pane sizes, thickness and type of glass.
10. Contact width and thickness of structural sealant and sealant materials for shop and field installation/reglazing.
11. Glass to aluminum joints (including primers, if any).
12. Maximum roof/floor dead and live load deflection of the roof/floor framing members supporting the exterior curtain wall system.
13. Required seismic separation or gap distance between the SSG curtain wall and other adjacent cladding units.
14. Mitigation of galvanic reactions between the roof/floor slab anchors, steel screw connections of aluminum sections and the aluminum anchorage components, if any.
15. Monitoring requirements per Section 2410.1.3.

## SECTION 2411 [OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] THERMAL BARRIERS IN ALUMINUM MULLION SYSTEMS

**2411.1 General.** The requirements of this section address the use of thermal barriers composite in aluminum mullion systems. The thermal barriers shall consist of either poured and debrided or mechanically locked pre-formed construction. The thermal barrier systems used shall be those tested and complying with AAMA TIR-A8. The thermal barrier manufacturer, formulation number or insulating strut size/material and aluminum extrusions shall be consistent between testing, design and construction.

**Exception:** Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

**2411.1.1 Structural Design.** Structural design of thermal barrier mullions shall satisfy the following requirements:

1. The allowable design stresses for thermal barrier materials composite with aluminum extrusions shall be determined by AAMA TIR-A8 testing for in-plane shear, tension and eccentric load at a minimum of ambient and high temperature using a factor of safety determined by AAMA TIR-A8 Section 6.7.
2. The shear modulus,  $G_c$ , of the thermal barrier in similar composite aluminum extrusions shall be determined by AAMA TIR-A8 testing for flexure in AAMA TIR-A8 Section 7.2 at a minimum of ambient and high temperature.
3. The aluminum extrusions used to determine allowable stresses in the thermal barriers and the shear modulus,  $G_c$ , shall be from a specific aluminum extrusion manufacturer and the aluminum sections used in the project. The similarity of the composite

aluminum extrusions shall be subject to approval by the building official.

4. The effective moment of inertia of the in-plane composite thermal barrier-aluminum section used in flexural design, based upon the tested  $G_c$ , shall not exceed 85 percent of the moment of inertia of the combined unbridged aluminum portions of the composite section, unless substantiated and approved by the building official.
5. A high temperature of not less than 120°F shall be used for composite section flexure design for wind pressure where the historical high temperature exceeds 100°F. The minimum high temperature for in-plane shear, tension and eccentric load thermal barrier design shall be determined by AAMA TIR-A8 Section 6.5.
6. The lowest allowable stress value and shear modulus,  $G_c$ , from the ambient and high temperature testing shall be used for design.
7. Structural analysis and design for loads on pour and debrided thermal barriers with skip-debriding that has not been tested under AAMA TIR-A8 with skip-debrided test specimens for the specific actions or load direction shall be based upon the relative stiffness between the remaining aluminum bridge and the thermal barrier material and size.
8. Reactions on supporting thermal barrier mullions where the thermal barrier resists the concentrated load, the load shall not be assumed to be distributed over a length greater than 12 inches (305 mm) on the supporting mullion.
9. Mechanically locked, preformed thermal barriers shall be designed and used in pairs.

**2411.1.2 Testing and Inspection.** Testing and Inspection of thermal barrier mullions shall satisfy the following requirements:

1. Thermal barrier material properties shall be tested in accordance with AAMA TIR-A8 Section 6.1 by the manufacturer. All other testing shall be done by an approved testing laboratory or agency.
2. Testing shall include AAMA TIR-A8 Section 7.2 for the flexural tests using the composite section under ambient and high temperature. Thermocouples shall be placed on the outside and interior surfaces and in the middle of the thermal barrier for high temperature testing. Test cycles shall be in accordance with AAMA TIR-A8 Section 7.2.3.
3. Testing shall include AAMA TIR-A8 Section 7.3 for in-plane shear, tension and eccentric load using the composite section under ambient and high temperature.
4. The flexural test for the composite section shall include a span length of 12 feet (3660 mm). The maximum  $P$  load in the test shall generate close to a  $L/175$  deflection, where  $L$  is the span length, center to center of supports, but shall not exceed the allowable design stresses for the aluminum composite

- section in meeting that deflection. Permanent deflection shall not exceed the requirement in AAMA TIR-A8 Section 7.2.2.5.*
5. *A minimum of two different simple span lengths shall be used to determine  $G_e$  under the flexural test. The span lengths tested shall include a short span.*
  6. *The shear modulus,  $G_e$ , of the thermal barrier shall be determined using the lowest average  $I_{et}$  from the flexural testing for each composite aluminum extrusion, temperature and span length tested.*
  7. *Each different composite aluminum extrusion in the project shall be tested to the requirements of AAMA TIR-A8. The magnitude of eccentricity of load on the thermal barrier shall be considered in selecting composite aluminum extrusions for testing.*
  8. *The applicability of existing AAMA TIR-A8 testing of thermal barrier mullions that satisfy the requirements of this section shall be permitted, in lieu of project-specific tests, when approved by the building official.*
  9. *Periodic special inspection to ensure compliance with the AAMA TIR-A8 processing for the thermal isolator material shall be performed. Inspections shall include tests of thermal barrier material properties per the manufacturer's recommendation and AAMA TIR-A8 Section 6.1 and composite performance requirements per AAMA TIR-A8 Sections 7.2 and 7.3.*
  10. *Periodic special inspection of pour and debridge thermal barrier shall include:*
    - a. *Verification that the thermal barrier formulation being used matches that in the design and construction documents.*
    - b. *Verification that poured wet or dry shrinkage as set forth in AAMA TIR-A8 Section 4.1.3.1 does not occur.*
    - c. *Proper adhesion of poured thermal barrier material per AAMA TIR-A8 Section 4.2.1.*
    - d. *Confirmation of proper manufacturing process per the manufacturer's recommendations and AAMA TIR-A8 Section 4.3.*
    - e. *Inspection of fabrication and handling practices in accordance with AAMA TIR-A8 Sections 4.3 and 4.4.*
    - f. *Testing for thermal barrier material properties per the manufacturer's recommendation and AAMA TIR-A8 Section 6.1.*
    - g. *Periodic special inspection of the removal of the temporary thermal bridge shall be provided to ensure that no thermal barrier material is removed in the process.*
  11. *Periodic special inspection of mechanically locked, preformed thermal barriers shall include:*
    - a. *Verification that the insulating struts being used match those in the design and construction documents.*
- b. Verification that the mechanical lock cavity distortion and locking distortion does not exist as set forth in AAMA TIR-A8 Sections 4.1.3.3 and 4.1.3.4.*
- c. Verification of proper knurling of the aluminum and crimping of the insulating struts per AAMA TIR-A8 Section 4.2.2.*
- d. Confirmation of proper manufacturing process per the manufacturer's recommendations and AAMA TIR-A8 Section 4.5.*
- e. Inspection of fabrication and handling practices in accordance with AAMA TIR-A8 Sections 4.5 and 4.6.*



**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 25 – GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER**

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
 See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X			X	X									X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																				X			
Chapter / Section																							
2501.1.1								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2501.1.2								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2501.1.3								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2503.2								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2503.2, <i>Exception</i>														X									
2504.2								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2504.2.1, <i>Exception</i>														X									
2505.3								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2505.3, <i>Exception</i>														X									
2507.3								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2507.3, <i>Exception</i>														X									
2508.6.6								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							
2508.6.6, <i>Exception</i>														X									
2510.6.3																					X		
2514.1 <i>Exception</i>								X		X	X	X	X		X	X							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

||

||

|| &lt;



## CHAPTER 25

# GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 25 contains the provisions and referenced standards that regulate the design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products and plaster and, in addition, addresses reinforced gypsum concrete. These materials are some of the most commonly used interior and exterior finish materials in the building industry. This chapter primarily addresses quality-control-related issues with regard to material specifications and installation requirements. Most products are manufactured in accordance with industry standards. The building official or inspector needs to verify that the appropriate product is used and properly installed for the intended use and location. Proper design and installation of these materials are necessary to provide weather resistance and required fire protection for both structural and nonstructural building components.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this chapter will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 2501 GENERAL

**2501.1 Scope.** Provisions of this chapter shall govern the materials, design, construction and quality of gypsum board, gypsum panel products, lath, gypsum plaster, cement plaster and reinforced gypsum concrete.

**2501.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD]**  
*The scope of application of Chapter 25 is as follows:*

1. Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2, 1.10.4 and 1.10.5 regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals, hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings, correctional treatment centers and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.
2. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety, which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1 (DSA-SS) and 1.9.2.2 (DSA-SS/CC). These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings

**2501.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD]** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. OSHPD amendments appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:

**[OSHPD 1]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 1R]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 4]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

**[OSHPD 5]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

2. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety:

**[DSA-SS]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

**[DSA-SS/CC]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

**2501.1.3 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5]** Details of attachment for wall and ceiling coverings which are not provided for in this code shall be detailed in the approved construction documents.

**Exception:** Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

**2501.2 Other materials.** Other approved wall or ceiling coverings shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and the conditions of approval.

### SECTION 2502 PERFORMANCE

**2502.1 General.** Lathing, plastering and gypsum board and gypsum panel product construction shall be done in the manner and with the materials specified in this chapter and, where required for fire protection, shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 7.

### SECTION 2503 INSPECTION

**2503.1 Inspection.** Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be inspected in accordance with Section 110.3.6.

## GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

### **2503.2 Additional requirements for inspection and testing. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]**

1. Lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be inspected in accordance with Chapter 17A and the California Administrative Code.
2. No lath, gypsum board and gypsum panel products or their attachments shall be covered or finished until it has been inspected and approved by the inspector of record and/or special inspector.
3. The enforcement agency may require tests in accordance with Table 2506.2 to determine compliance with the provisions of this code.
4. The testing of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform with standards listed in Table 2506.2

**Exception:** [OSHPD 2] Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

## SECTION 2504 VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES

**2504.1 Scope.** The following requirements shall be met where construction involves gypsum board, gypsum panel products or lath and plaster in vertical and horizontal assemblies.

**2504.1.1 Wood framing.** Wood supports for lath, gypsum board or gypsum panel products, as well as wood striping or furring, shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal thickness in the least dimension.

**Exception:** The minimum nominal dimension of wood furring strips installed over solid backing shall be not less than 1 inch by 2 inches (25 mm by 51 mm).

**2504.1.2 Studless partitions.** The minimum thickness of vertically erected studless solid plaster partitions of  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) and  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19.1 mm) rib metal lath,  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (12.7 mm) gypsum lath, gypsum board or gypsum panel product shall be 2 inches (51 mm).

**2504.2 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** In addition to the requirements of this section, the horizontal and vertical assemblies of plaster, gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be designed to resist the loads specified in this code.

**2504.2.1 Wood furring strips.** Wood furring strips for ceilings fastened to floor or ceiling joist shall be nailed at each bearing with two common wire nails, one of which shall be a slant nail and the other a face nail, or by one nail having spirally grooved or annular grooved shanks approved by the enforcement agency for this purpose. All stripping nails shall penetrate not less than  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches (44.5 mm) into the member receiving the point. Holes in stripping at joints shall be subdrilled to prevent splitting.

Where common wire nails are used to support horizontal wood striping for plaster ceilings, such striping shall be wire tied to the joists 4 feet (1219 mm) on center with two strands of No. 18 W&M gage galvanized annealed wire to an 8d common wire nail driven into

each side of the joist 2 inches (51 mm) above the bottom of the joist or to each end of a 16d common wire nail driven horizontally through the joist 2 inches (51 mm) above the bottom of the joist, and the ends of the wire secured together with three twists of the wire.

**Exception:** [OSHPD 2] Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

## SECTION 2505 SHEAR WALL CONSTRUCTION

**2505.1 Resistance to shear (wood framing).** Wood-frame shear walls sheathed with gypsum board, gypsum panel products or lath and plaster shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section 2306.3 and are permitted to resist wind and seismic loads. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7.

**2505.2 Resistance to shear (steel framing).** Cold-formed steel-frame shear walls sheathed with gypsum board or gypsum panel products and constructed in accordance with the materials and provisions of Section 2211.1.1 are permitted to resist wind and seismic loads. Walls resisting seismic loads shall be subject to the limitations in Section 12.2.1 of ASCE 7.

**2505.3 [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** Section 2505.1 and 2505.2 are not permitted.

**Exception:** [OSHPD 2] Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

## SECTION 2506 GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCT MATERIALS

**2506.1 General.** Gypsum board, gypsum panel products and accessories shall be identified by the manufacturer's designation to indicate compliance with the appropriate standards referenced in this section and stored to protect such materials from the weather.

**2506.2 Standards.** Gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall conform to the appropriate standards listed in Table 2506.2 and Chapter 35 and, where required for fire protection, shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 7.

**2506.2.1 Other materials.** Metal suspension systems for acoustical and lay-in panel ceilings shall comply with ASTM C635 listed in Chapter 35 and Section 13.5.6 of ASCE 7 for installation in high seismic areas.

## SECTION 2507 LATHING AND PLASTERING

**2507.1 General.** Lathing and plastering materials and accessories shall be marked by the manufacturer's designation to indicate compliance with the appropriate standards referenced in this section and stored in such a manner to protect them from the weather.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

**TABLE 2506.2**  
**GYPSUM BOARD AND GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Accessories for gypsum board	ASTM C1047
Adhesives for fastening gypsum board	ASTM C557
Cold-formed steel studs and track, structural	AISI S240
Cold-formed steel studs and track, nonstructural	AISI S220
Elastomeric joint sealants	ASTM C920
Expandable foam adhesives for fastening gypsum wallboard	ASTM D6464
Factory-laminated gypsum panel products	ASTM C1766
Fiber-reinforced gypsum panels	ASTM C1278
Glass mat gypsum backing panel	ASTM C1178
Glass mat gypsum panel 5	ASTM C1658
Glass mat gypsum substrate	ASTM C1177
Joint reinforcing tape and compound	ASTM C474; C475
Nails for gypsum boards	ASTM C514, F547, F1667
Steel screws	ASTM C954; C1002
Standard specification for gypsum board	ASTM C1396
Testing gypsum and gypsum products	ASTM C22; C472; C473

**2507.2 Standards.** Lathing and plastering materials shall conform to the standards listed in Table 2507.2 and Chapter 35 and, where required for fire protection, shall conform to the provisions of Chapter 7.

**2507.3 Lath attachment to horizontal wood supports. [DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** Where interior or exterior lath is attached to horizontal wood supports, either of the following attachments shall be used in addition to the methods of attachment described in referenced standards listed in Table 2507.2.

- Secure lath to alternate supports with ties consisting of a double strand of No. 18 W & M gage galvanized annealed wire at one edge of each sheet of lath. Wire ties shall be installed not less than 3 inches (76 mm) back from the edge of each sheet and shall be looped around stripping, or attached to an 8d common wire nail driven into each side of the joist 2 inches (51 mm) above the bottom of the joist or to each end of a 16d common wire nail driven horizontally through the joist 2 inches (51 mm) above the bottom of the joist and the ends of the wire secured together with three twists of the wire.
- Secure lath to each support with  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-wide (12.7 mm),  $1\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-long (38mm) No. 9 W & M gage, ring shank, hook staple placed around a 10d common nail laid flat under the surface of the lath not more than 3 inches (76 mm) from edge of each sheet. Such staples may be placed over ribs of  $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) rib lath or over back wire of welded wire fabric or other approved lath, omitting the 10d nails.

**Exception:** [OSHPD 2] Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.

## SECTION 2508 GYPSUM CONSTRUCTION

**2508.1 General.** Gypsum board, gypsum panel products and gypsum plaster construction shall be of the materials listed in Tables 2506.2 and 2507.2. These materials shall be assembled and installed in compliance with the appropriate standards listed in Tables 2508.1 and 2511.1.1 and Chapter 35.

**TABLE 2508.1**  
**INSTALLATION OF GYPSUM CONSTRUCTION**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Gypsum board and gypsum panel products	GA 216; ASTM C840
Gypsum sheathing and gypsum panel products	ASTM C1280
Gypsum veneer base	ASTM C844
Interior lathing and furring	ASTM C841
Steel framing for gypsum board and gypsum panel products	ASTM C754; C1007

**2508.2 Limitations.** Gypsum wallboard or gypsum plaster shall not be used in any exterior surface where such gypsum construction will be exposed directly to the weather. Gypsum wallboard shall not be used where there will be direct exposure to water or continuous high humidity conditions. Gypsum sheathing shall be installed on exterior surfaces in accordance with ASTM C1280.

**2508.2.1 Weather protection.** Gypsum wallboard, gypsum lath or gypsum plaster shall not be installed until weather protection for the installation is provided.

**GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER**

**TABLE 2507.2  
LATH, PLASTERING MATERIALS AND ACCESSORIES**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Accessories for gypsum veneer base	ASTM C1047
Blended cement	ASTM C595
Cold-formed steel studs and track, structural	AISI S240
Cold-formed steel studs and track, nonstructural	AISI S220
Exterior plaster bonding compounds	ASTM C932
Hydraulic cement	ASTM C1157; C1600
Gypsum casting and molding plaster	ASTM C59
Gypsum Keene's cement	ASTM C61
Gypsum plaster	ASTM C28
Gypsum veneer plaster	ASTM C587
Interior bonding compounds, gypsum	ASTM C631
Lime plasters	ASTM C5; C206
Masonry cement	ASTM C91
Metal lath	ASTM C847
Plaster aggregates	
Sand	ASTM C35; C897
Perlite	ASTM C35
Vermiculite	ASTM C35
Plastic cement	ASTM C1328
Portland cement	ASTM C150
Steel screws	ASTM C1002; C954
Welded wire lath	ASTM C933
Woven wire plaster base	ASTM C1032

**2508.3 Single-ply application.** Edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall occur on the framing members, except those edges and ends that are perpendicular to the framing members. Edges and ends of gypsum board and gypsum panel products shall be in moderate contact except in concealed spaces where fire-resistance-rated construction, shear resistance or diaphragm action is not required.

**2508.3.1 Floating angles.** Fasteners at the top and bottom plates of vertical assemblies, or the edges and ends of horizontal assemblies perpendicular to supports, and at the wall line are permitted to be omitted except on shear resisting elements or fire-resistance-rated assemblies. Fasteners shall be applied in such a manner as not to fracture the face paper with the fastener head.

**2508.4 Adhesives.** Gypsum board and gypsum panel products secured to framing with adhesives in ceiling assemblies shall be attached using an approved fastening schedule. Expandable foam adhesives for fastening gypsum wallboard shall conform to ASTM D6464. Other adhesives for the installation of gypsum wallboard shall conform to ASTM C557.

**2508.5 Joint treatment.** Gypsum board and gypsum panel product fire-resistance-rated assemblies shall have joints and fasteners treated.

**Exception:** Joint and fastener treatment need not be provided where any of the following conditions occur:

- Where the gypsum board or the gypsum panel product is to receive a decorative finish such as wood paneling,

battens, acoustical finishes or any similar application that would be equivalent to joint treatment.

- On single-layer systems where joints occur over wood framing members.
- Square edge or tongue-and-groove edge gypsum board (V-edge), gypsum panel products, gypsum backing board or gypsum sheathing.
- On multilayer systems where the joints of adjacent layers are offset.
- Assemblies tested without joint treatment.

**2508.6 Horizontal gypsum board or gypsum panel product diaphragm ceilings.** Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall be permitted to be used on wood joists to create a horizontal diaphragm ceiling in accordance with Table 2508.6.

**2508.6.1 Diaphragm proportions.** The maximum allowable diaphragm proportions shall be  $1\frac{1}{2}:1$  between shear resisting elements. Rotation or cantilever conditions shall not be permitted.

**2508.6.2 Installation.** Gypsum board or gypsum panel products used in a horizontal diaphragm ceiling shall be installed perpendicular to ceiling framing members. End joints of adjacent courses of gypsum board shall not occur on the same joist.

**TABLE 2508.6  
SHEAR CAPACITY FOR HORIZONTAL WOOD-FRAME GYPSUM BOARD DIAPHRAGM CEILING ASSEMBLIES**

MATERIAL	THICKNESS OF MATERIAL (MINIMUM) (inches)	SPACING OF FRAMING MEMBERS (inches)	SHEAR VALUE <sup>a,b</sup> (PLF OF CEILING)	MIMIMUM FASTENER SIZE
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	1/2	16 o.c.	90	5d cooler or wallboard nail; 1 5/8-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; 15/64-inch head <sup>c</sup>
Gypsum board or gypsum panel product	1/2	24 o.c.	70	5d cooler or wallboard nail; 1 5/8-inch long; 0.086-inch shank; 15/64-inch head <sup>c</sup>

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per foot = 14.59 N/m.

a. Values are not cumulative with other horizontal diaphragm values and are for short-term wind or seismic loading. Values shall be reduced 25 percent for normal loading.

b. Values shall be reduced 50 percent in Seismic Design Categories D, E and F.

c. 1 1/4-inch, No. 6 Type S or W screws are permitted to be substituted for the listed nails.

**2508.6.3 Blocking of perimeter edges.** Perimeter edges shall be blocked using a wood member not less than 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) nominal dimension. Blocking material shall be installed flat over the top plate of the wall to provide a nailing surface not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in width for the attachment of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

**2508.6.4 Fasteners.** Fasteners used for the attachment of gypsum board or gypsum panel products to a horizontal diaphragm ceiling shall be as defined in Table 2508.6. Fasteners shall be spaced not more than 7 inches (178 mm) on center at all supports, including perimeter blocking, and not more than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from the edges and ends of the gypsum board or gypsum panel product.

**2508.6.5 Lateral force restrictions.** Gypsum board or gypsum panel products shall not be used in diaphragm ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by masonry or concrete construction.

**2508.6.6 Diaphragm ceiling connection to partitions.** *[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]* Gypsum board shall not be used in diaphragm ceilings to resist lateral forces imposed by partitions. Connection of diaphragm ceiling to the vertical lateral force resisting elements shall be designed and detailed to transfer lateral forces.

**Exception:** *[OSHPD 2J] Single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.*

## SECTION 2509 SHOWERS AND WATER CLOSETS

**2509.1 Wet areas.** Showers and public toilet walls shall conform to Section 1210.2.

**2509.2 Base for tile.** Materials used as a base for wall tile in tub and shower areas and wall and ceiling panels in shower areas shall be of materials listed in Table 2509.2 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall be used as a base for tile in water closet compartment walls when installed in accordance with GA 216 or ASTM C840 and the manufacturer's recommendations. Regular gypsum wallboard is permitted under tile

or wall panels in other wall and ceiling areas when installed in accordance with GA 216 or ASTM C840.

**TABLE 2509.2  
BACKERBOARD MATERIALS**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Glass mat gypsum backing panel	ASTM C1178
Nonasbestos fiber-cement backer board	ASTM C1288 or ISO 8336, Category C
Nonasbestos fiber-mat reinforced cementitious backer unit	ASTM C1325

**2509.3 Limitations.** Water-resistant gypsum backing board shall not be used in the following locations:

1. Over a vapor retarder in shower or bathtub compartments.
2. Where there will be direct exposure to water or in areas subject to continuous high humidity.

## SECTION 2510 LATHING AND FURRING FOR CEMENT PLASTER (STUCCO)

**2510.1 General.** Exterior and interior cement plaster and lathing shall be done with the appropriate materials listed in Table 2507.2 and Chapter 35.

**2510.2 Weather protection.** Materials shall be stored in such a manner as to protect them from the weather.

**2510.3 Installation.** Installation of these materials shall be in compliance with ASTM C926 and ASTM C1063.

**2510.4 Corrosion resistance.** Metal lath and lath attachments shall be of corrosion-resistant material.

**2510.5 Backing.** Backing or a lath shall provide sufficient rigidity to permit plaster applications.

**2510.5.1 Support of lath.** Where lath on vertical surfaces extends between rafters or other similar projecting members, solid backing shall be installed to provide support for lath and attachments.

**2510.5.2 Use of gypsum backing board.** Gypsum backing for cement plaster shall be in accordance with Section 2510.5.2.1 or 2510.5.2.2.

## GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

**2510.5.2.1 Gypsum board as a backing board.** Gypsum lath or gypsum wallboard shall not be used as a backing for cement plaster.

**Exception:** Gypsum lath or gypsum wallboard is permitted, with a water-resistive barrier, as a backing for self-furred metal lath or self-furred wire fabric lath and cement plaster where either of the following conditions occur:

1. On horizontal supports of ceilings or roof soffits.
2. On interior walls.

**2510.5.2.2 Gypsum sheathing backing.** Gypsum sheathing is permitted as a backing for metal or wire fabric lath and cement plaster on walls. A water-resistive barrier shall be provided in accordance with Section 2510.6.

**2510.5.3 Backing not required.** Wire backing is not required under expanded metal lath or paperbacked wire fabric lath.

**2510.6 Water-resistive barriers.** Water-resistive barriers shall be installed as required in Section 1403.2 and, where applied over wood-based sheathing, shall comply with Section 2510.6.1 or 2510.6.2.

**2510.6.1 Dry climates.** One of the following shall apply for dry (B) climate zones:

1. The water-resistive barrier shall be two layers of 10-minute Grade D paper or have a water resistance equal to or greater than two layers of water-resistive barrier complying with ASTM E2556, Type I. The individual layers shall be installed independently such that each layer provides a separate continuous plane and any flashing, installed in accordance with Section 1404.4 and intended to drain to the water-resistive barrier, is directed between the layers.
2. The water-resistive barrier shall be 60-minute Grade D paper or have a water resistance equal to or greater than one layer of water-resistive barrier complying with ASTM E2556, Type II. The water-resistive barrier shall be separated from the stucco by a layer of foam plastic insulating sheathing or other nonwater absorbing layer, or a drainage space.

**2510.6.2 Moist or marine climates.** In moist (A) or marine (C) climate zones, water-resistive barrier shall comply with one of the following:

1. In addition to complying with Item 1 or 2 of Section 2510.6.1, a space or drainage material not less than  $\frac{3}{16}$  inch (4.8 mm) in depth shall be applied to the exterior side of the water-resistive barrier.
2. In addition to complying with Item 2 of Section 2510.6.1, drainage on the exterior side of the water-resistive barrier shall have a minimum drainage efficiency of 90 percent as measured in accordance with ASTM E2273 or Annex A2 of ASTM E2925.

**2510.6.3 California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones.** The IECC climate zones used by this section differ from those used by the California Energy Code to determine applicability of energy efficiency measures. Comparison of IECC and California Energy Code climate zones is shown in Chapter 12, Table 1202.3.1.

**2510.7 Preparation of masonry and concrete.** Surfaces shall be clean, free from efflorescence, sufficiently damp and rough for proper bond. If the surface is insufficiently rough, approved bonding agents or a Portland cement dash bond coat mixed in proportions of not more than two parts volume of sand to one part volume of Portland cement or plastic cement shall be applied. The dash bond coat shall be left undisturbed and shall be moist cured not less than 24 hours.

## SECTION 2511 INTERIOR PLASTER

**2511.1 General.** Plastering gypsum plaster or cement plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath or wire fabric lath and not less than two coats where applied over other bases permitted by this chapter.

**Exception:** Gypsum veneer plaster and cement plaster specifically designed and approved for one-coat applications.

**2511.1.1 Installation.** Installation of lathing and plaster materials shall conform to Table 2511.1.1 and Section 2507.

**TABLE 2511.1.1  
INSTALLATION OF PLASTER CONSTRUCTION**

MATERIAL	STANDARD
Cement plaster	ASTM C926
Gypsum plaster	ASTM C842
Gypsum veneer plaster	ASTM C843
Interior lathing and furring (gypsum plaster)	ASTM C841
Lathing and furring (cement plaster)	ASTM C1063
Steel framing	ASTM C754; C1007

**2511.2 Limitations.** Plaster shall not be applied directly to fiber insulation board. Cement plaster shall not be applied directly to gypsum lath or gypsum plaster except as specified in Sections 2510.5.1 and 2510.5.2.

**2511.3 Grounds.** Where installed, grounds shall ensure the minimum thickness of plaster as set forth in ASTM C842 and ASTM C926. Plaster thickness shall be measured from the face of lath and other bases.

**2511.4 Interior masonry or concrete.** Condition of surfaces shall be as specified in Section 2510.7. Approved specially prepared gypsum plaster designed for application to concrete surfaces or approved acoustical plaster is permitted. The total thickness of base coat plaster applied to concrete ceilings shall be as set forth in ASTM C842 or ASTM C926. Should

ceiling surfaces require more than the maximum thickness permitted in ASTM C842 or ASTM C926, metal lath or wire fabric lath shall be installed on such surfaces before plastering.

**2511.5 Wet areas.** Showers and public toilet walls shall conform to Sections 1210.2 and 1210.3. Where wood frame walls and partitions are covered on the interior with cement plaster or tile of similar material and are subject to water splash, the framing shall be protected with an approved moisture barrier.

## SECTION 2512 EXTERIOR PLASTER

**2512.1 General.** Plastering with cement plaster shall be not less than three coats where applied over metal lath or wire fabric lath or gypsum board backing as specified in Section 2510.5 and shall be not less than two coats where applied over masonry or concrete. If the plaster surface is to be completely covered by veneer or other facing material, or is completely concealed by another wall, plaster application need only be two coats, provided that the total thickness is as set forth in ASTM C926.

**2512.1.1 On-grade floor slab.** On wood frame or steel stud construction with an on-grade concrete floor slab system, exterior plaster shall be applied in such a manner as to cover, but not to extend below, the lath and paper. The application of lath, paper and flashing or drip screeds shall comply with ASTM C1063.

**2512.1.2 Weep screeds.** A minimum 0.019-inch (0.48 mm) (No. 26 galvanized sheet gage), corrosion-resistant weep screed with a minimum vertical attachment flange of 3 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) shall be provided at or below the foundation plate line on exterior stud walls in accordance with ASTM C926. The weep screed shall be placed not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the earth or 2 inches (51 mm) above paved areas and be of a type that will allow trapped water to drain to the exterior of the building. The water-resistive barrier shall lap the attachment flange. The exterior lath shall cover and terminate on the attachment flange of the weep screed.

**2512.2 Plasticity agents.** Only approved plasticity agents and approved amounts thereof shall be added to Portland cement or blended cements. Where plastic cement or masonry cement is used, additional lime or plasticizers shall not be added. Hydrated lime or the equivalent amount of lime putty used as a plasticizer is permitted to be added to cement plaster or cement and lime plaster in an amount not to exceed that set forth in ASTM C926.

**2512.3 Limitations.** Gypsum plaster shall not be used on exterior surfaces.

**2512.4 Cement plaster.** Plaster coats shall be protected from freezing for a period of not less than 24 hours after set has occurred. Plaster shall be applied when the ambient temperature is higher than 40°F (4°C), unless provisions are made to keep cement plaster work above 40°F (4°C) during application and 48 hours thereafter.

**2512.5 Second-coat application.** The second coat shall be brought out to proper thickness, rodded and floated sufficiently rough to provide adequate bond for the finish coat. The second coat shall not have variations greater than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in any direction under a 5-foot (1524 mm) straight edge.

**2512.6 Curing and interval.** First and second coats of *cement plaster* shall be applied and moist cured as set forth in ASTM C926 and Table 2512.6.

TABLE 2512.6  
CEMENT PLASTERS

COAT	MINIMUM PERIOD MOIST CURING	MINIMUM INTERVAL BETWEEN COATS
First	48 hours <sup>a</sup>	48 hours <sup>b</sup>
Second	48 hours	7 days <sup>c</sup>
Finish	—	Note c

- a. The first two coats shall be as required for the first coats of exterior plaster, except that the moist-curing time period between the first and second coats shall be not less than 24 hours. Moist curing shall not be required where job and weather conditions are favorable to the retention of moisture in the cement plaster for the required time period.
- b. Twenty-four-hour minimum interval between coats of interior cement plaster. For alternative method of application, see Section 2512.8.
- c. Finish coat plaster is permitted to be applied to interior cement plaster base coats after a 48-hour period.

**2512.7 Application to solid backings.** Where applied over gypsum backing as specified in Section 2510.5 or directly to unit masonry surfaces, the second coat is permitted to be applied as soon as the first coat has attained sufficient hardness.

**2512.8 Alternate method of application.** The second coat is permitted to be applied as soon as the first coat has attained sufficient rigidity to receive the second coat.

**2512.8.1 Admixtures.** Where using this method of application, calcium aluminate cement up to 15 percent of the weight of the Portland cement is permitted to be added to the mix.

**2512.8.2 Curing.** Curing of the first coat is permitted to be omitted and the second coat shall be cured as set forth in ASTM C926 and Table 2512.6.

**2512.9 Finish coats.** Cement plaster finish coats shall be applied over base coats that have been in place for the time periods set forth in ASTM C926. The third or finish coat shall be applied with sufficient material and pressure to bond and to cover the brown coat and shall be of sufficient thickness to conceal the brown coat.

## SECTION 2513 EXPOSED AGGREGATE PLASTER

**2513.1 General.** Exposed natural or integrally colored aggregate is permitted to be partially embedded in a natural or colored bedding coat of cement plaster or gypsum plaster, subject to the provisions of this section.

**2513.2 Aggregate.** The aggregate shall be applied manually or mechanically and shall consist of marble chips, pebbles or

## GYPSUM BOARD, GYPSUM PANEL PRODUCTS AND PLASTER

similar durable, moderately hard (three or more on the Mohs hardness scale), nonreactive materials.

**2513.3 Bedding coat proportions.** The bedding coat for interior or exterior surfaces shall be composed of one part Portland cement and one part Type S lime; or one part blended cement and one part Type S lime; or masonry cement; or plastic cement and not more than three parts of graded white or natural sand by volume. The bedding coat for interior surfaces shall be composed of 100 pounds (45.4 kg) of neat gypsum plaster and not more than 200 pounds (90.8 kg) of graded white sand. A factory-prepared bedding coat for interior or exterior use is permitted. The bedding coat for exterior surfaces shall have a minimum compressive strength of 1,000 pounds per square inch (6895 kPa).

**2513.4 Application.** The bedding coat is permitted to be applied directly over the first (scratch) coat of plaster, provided that the ultimate overall thickness is not less than  $\frac{7}{8}$  inch (22 mm), including lath. Over concrete or masonry surfaces, the overall thickness shall be not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm).

**2513.5 Bases.** Exposed aggregate plaster is permitted to be applied over concrete, masonry, cement plaster base coats or gypsum plaster base coats installed in accordance with Section 2511 or 2512.

**2513.6 Preparation of masonry and concrete.** Masonry and concrete surfaces shall be prepared in accordance with the provisions of Section 2510.7.

**2513.7 Curing of base coats.** Cement plaster base coats shall be cured in accordance with ASTM C926. Cement plaster bedding coats shall retain sufficient moisture for hydration (hardening) for 24 hours minimum or, where necessary, shall be kept damp for 24 hours by light water spraying.

## SECTION 2514 REINFORCED GYPSUM CONCRETE

**2514.1 General.** Reinforced gypsum concrete shall comply with the requirements of ASTM C317 and ASTM C956.

*Exception: [DSA-SS and OSHPD 1, 1R, 2, 4 & 5] Reinforced gypsum concrete shall be considered as an alternative system, except for [OSHPD 2] single-story Type V skilled nursing or intermediate care facilities utilizing wood-frame or light-steel-frame construction.*

**2514.2 Minimum thickness.** The minimum thickness of reinforced gypsum concrete shall be 2 inches (51 mm) except the minimum required thickness shall be reduced to  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches (38 mm), provided that the following conditions are satisfied:

1. The overall thickness, including the formboard, is not less than 2 inches (51 mm).
2. The clear span of the gypsum concrete between supports does not exceed 33 inches (838 mm).
3. Diaphragm action is not required.
4. The design live load does not exceed 40 pounds per square foot (psf) (1915 Pa).

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 26 – PLASTIC

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X		X	X	X							X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2601.1.1							X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
2601.1.2							X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
2603.11.1							X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
2603.12.3							X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
2603.13.3							X	X	X	X	X		X	X								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

| &lt;

<  
<  
<  
<  
<



# CHAPTER 26

## PLASTIC

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** The use of plastics in building construction and components is addressed in Chapter 26. This chapter provides standards addressing foam plastic insulation, foam plastics used as interior finish and trim, and other plastic veneers used on the inside or outside of a building. This chapter addresses the use of light-transmitting plastics in various configurations such as walls, roof panels, skylights, signs and glazing. Requirements for the use of fiber-reinforced polymers, fiberglass-reinforced polymers and reflective plastic core insulation are also contained in this chapter. Additionally, requirements specific to the use of wood-plastic composites and plastic lumber are contained in this chapter.

### SECTION 2601 GENERAL

**2601.1 Scope.** These provisions shall govern the materials, design, application, construction and installation of foam plastic, foam plastic insulation, plastic veneer, interior plastic finish and trim, light-transmitting plastics and plastic composites, including plastic lumber.

**2601.1.1 Application. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD]**  
The scope of application of Chapter 26 is as follows:

1. Applications listed in Sections 1.10.1, 1.10.2, 1.10.4 and 1.10.5 regulated by the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (OSHPD). These applications include hospitals, hospital buildings removed from general acute care service, skilled nursing facility buildings, intermediate care facility buildings, correctional treatment centers and acute psychiatric hospital buildings.
2. Structures regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Structural Safety, which include those applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1 (DSA-SS) and 1.9.2.2 (DSA-SS/CC). These applications include public elementary and secondary schools, community colleges and state-owned or state-leased essential services buildings

**2601.1.2 Amendments in this chapter. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD]** DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC and OSHPD adopt this chapter and all amendments.

**Exception:** Amendments adopted by only one agency appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym of the adopting agency, as follows:

1. OSHPD amendments appear in this chapter preceded with the appropriate acronym, as follows:

**[OSHPD 1]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 1R]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.1.

**[OSHPD 2]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.2.

**[OSHPD 4]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.4.

**[OSHPD 5]** - For applications listed in Section 1.10.5.

2. Division of the State Architect - Structural Safety:

**[DSA-SS]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.1.

**[DSA-SS/CC]** - For applications listed in Section 1.9.2.2.

### SECTION 2602 FINISH AND TRIM

**2602.1 Exterior wall covering and architectural trim.** See Chapter 14 for requirements for exterior wall covering and architectural trim.

**2602.2 Interior finish and trim.** See Section 2604 for requirements for interior finish and trim.

### SECTION 2603 FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION

**2603.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of foam plastic insulation in buildings and structures.

**2603.1.1 Spray-applied foam plastic.** Single- and multiple-component spray-applied foam plastic insulation shall comply with the provisions of Section 2603 and ICC 1100-2018.

**2603.2 Labeling and identification.** Packages and containers of foam plastic insulation and foam plastic insulation components delivered to the job site shall bear the label of an approved agency showing the manufacturer's name, product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

**2603.2.1 Labeling of polystyrene foam insulation without flame retardants.** In addition to the requirements of Section 2603.2, polystyrene foam insulation boards manufac-

tured with no flame retardants added shall be labeled in accordance with this section.

1. Each board shall be labeled on each face every 8 square feet in red  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch text with the following information:

**WARNING - FIRE HAZARD**

*This product is required to be installed below a minimum 3.5-inch-thick concrete slab on grade.*

**NOT FOR VERTICAL OR ABOVE-GRADE APPLICATIONS**

*This product contains NO flame retardants.*

*Not tested for flame spread or smoke development requirements of the model building codes*

2. Each package shall be labeled on at least two sides in red  $\frac{1}{2}$ -text with the following information:

**WARNING – COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL**

*Keep away from ignition sources.*

*Maintain code required separation between product storage and structures under construction (minimum 30 feet).*

**2603.3 Surface-burning characteristics.** Unless otherwise indicated in this section, foam plastic insulation and foam plastic cores of manufactured assemblies shall have a flame spread index of not more than 75 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 where tested in the maximum thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. Loose fill-type foam plastic insulation shall be tested as board stock for the flame spread and smoke-developed indices.

**Exceptions:**

1. Smoke-developed index for interior trim as provided for in Section 2604.2.
2. In cold storage buildings, ice plants, food plants, food processing rooms and similar areas, foam plastic insulation where tested in a thickness of 4 inches (102 mm) shall be permitted in a thickness up to 10 inches (254 mm) where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in both the room and that part of the building in which the room is located.
3. Foam plastic insulation that is a part of a Class A, B or C roof-covering assembly provided that the assembly with the foam plastic insulation satisfactorily passes NFPA 276 or UL 1256. The smoke-developed index shall not be limited for roof applications.
4. Foam plastic insulation greater than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness shall have a maximum flame spread index of 75 and a smoke-developed index of 450 where tested at a minimum thickness of 4 inches (102 mm), provided that the end use is approved in accordance with Section 2603.9 using the maximum thickness and density intended for use.

5. Flame spread and smoke-developed indices for foam plastic interior signs in covered and open mall buildings provided that the signs comply with Section 402.6.4.

6. Polystyrene foam insulation boards with a maximum thickness of 2 inches when installed below a minimum 3.5-inch-thick concrete slab on grade.

**2603.4 Thermal barrier.** Except as provided for in Sections 2603.4.1 and 2603.9, foam plastic shall be separated from the interior of a building by an approved thermal barrier of  $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum wallboard, heavy timber in accordance with Section 602.4 or a material that is tested in accordance with and meets the acceptance criteria of both the Temperature Transmission Fire Test and the Integrity Fire Test of NFPA 275. Combustible concealed spaces shall comply with Section 718.

**2603.4.1 Thermal barrier not required.** The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is not required under the conditions set forth in Sections 2603.4.1.1 through 2603.4.1.14.

**2603.4.1.1 Masonry or concrete construction.** A thermal barrier is not required for foam plastic installed in a masonry or concrete wall, floor or roof system where the foam plastic insulation is covered on each face by not less than 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

**2603.4.1.2 Cooler and freezer walls.** Foam plastic installed in a maximum thickness of 10 inches (254 mm) in cooler and freezer walls shall:

1. Have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, where tested in a minimum 4-inch (102 mm) thickness.
2. Have flash ignition and self-ignition temperatures of not less than 600°F and 800°F (316°C and 427°C), respectively.
3. Have a covering of not less than 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.
4. Be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. Where the cooler or freezer is within a building, both the cooler or freezer and that part of the building in which it is located shall be sprinklered.

**2603.4.1.3 Walk-in coolers.** In nonsprinklered buildings, foam plastic having a thickness that does not exceed 4 inches (102 mm) and a maximum flame spread index of 75 is permitted in walk-in coolers or freezer units where the aggregate floor area does not exceed 400 square feet ( $37 \text{ m}^2$ ) and the foam plastic is covered by a metal facing not less than 0.032-inch-thick (0.81 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.41 mm). A thickness of up to 10 inches (254 mm) is permitted where protected by a thermal barrier.

**2603.4.1.4 Exterior walls, one-story buildings.** For one-story buildings, foam plastic having a flame spread index of 25 or less, and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, shall be permitted without thermal barriers in or on exterior walls in a thickness not more than 4 inches (102 mm) where the foam plastic is covered by a thickness of not less than 0.032-inch-thick (0.81 mm) aluminum or corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.0160 inch (0.41 mm) and the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**2603.4.1.5 Roofing.** A thermal barrier is not required for foam plastic insulation that is a part of a Class A, B or C roof-covering assembly that is installed in accordance with the code and the manufacturer's instructions and is either constructed as described in Item 1 or tested as described in Item 2.

1. The roof assembly is separated from the interior of the building by wood structural panel sheathing not less than 0.47 inch (11.9 mm) in thickness bonded with exterior glue, with edges supported by blocking, tongue-and-groove joints, other approved type of edge support or an equivalent material.
2. The assembly with the foam plastic insulation satisfactorily passes NFPA 276 or UL 1256.

**2603.4.1.6 Attics and crawl spaces.** Within an attic or crawl space where entry is made only for service of utilities, foam plastic insulation shall be protected against ignition by 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (38 mm) mineral fiber insulation; 1 $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch-thick (6.4 mm) wood structural panel, particleboard or hardboard; 3 $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch (9.5 mm) gypsum wallboard, corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.4 mm); 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (38 mm) self-supported spray-applied cellulose insulation in attic spaces only or other approved material installed in such a manner that the foam plastic insulation is not exposed. The protective covering shall be consistent with the requirements for the type of construction.

**2603.4.1.7 Doors not required to have a fire protection rating.** Where pivoted or side-hinged doors are permitted without a fire protection rating, foam plastic insulation, having a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450, shall be permitted as a core material where the door facing is of aluminum not less than 0.032 inch (0.8 mm) in thickness or steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.016 inch (0.4 mm) at any point.

**2603.4.1.8 Exterior doors in buildings of Group R-2 or R-3.** In occupancies classified as Group R-2 or R-3, foam-filled exterior entrance doors to individual dwelling units that do not require a fire-resistance rating shall be faced with aluminum, steel, fiberglass, wood or other approved materials.

**2603.4.1.9 Garage doors.** Where garage doors are permitted without a fire-resistance rating and foam plastic is used as a core material, the door facing shall

be metal having a minimum thickness of 0.032-inch (0.8 mm) aluminum or 0.010-inch (0.25 mm) steel or the facing shall be minimum 0.125-inch-thick (3.2 mm) wood. Garage doors having facings other than those described in this section shall be tested in accordance with, and meet the acceptance criteria of, DASMA 107.

**Exception:** Garage doors using foam plastic insulation complying with Section 2603.3 in detached and attached garages associated with one- and two-family dwellings need not be provided with a thermal barrier.

**2603.4.1.10 Siding backer board.** Foam plastic insulation of not more than 2,000 British thermal units per square feet (Btu/sq. ft.) (22.7 mJ/m<sup>2</sup>) as determined by NFPA 259 shall be permitted as a siding backer board with a maximum thickness of 1 $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm), provided that it is separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of mineral fiber insulation or equivalent or where applied as insulation with re-siding over existing wall construction.

**2603.4.1.11 Interior trim.** Foam plastic used as interior trim in accordance with Section 2604 shall be permitted without a thermal barrier.

**2603.4.1.12 Interior signs.** Foam plastic used for interior signs in covered mall buildings in accordance with Section 402.6.4 shall be permitted without a thermal barrier. Foam plastic signs that are not affixed to interior building surfaces shall comply with Chapter 8 of the *California Fire Code*.

**2603.4.1.13 Type V construction.** Foam plastic spray applied to a sill plate, joist header and rim joist in Type V construction is subject to all of the following:

1. The maximum thickness of the foam plastic shall be 3 $\frac{1}{4}$  inches (82.6 mm).
2. The density of the foam plastic shall be in the range of 1.5 to 2.0pcf (24 to 32 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).
3. The foam plastic shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less and an accompanying smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**2603.4.1.14 Floors.** The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is not required to be installed on the walking surface of a structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation where the foam plastic is covered by a minimum nominal 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch-thick (12.7 mm) wood structural panel or approved equivalent. The thermal barrier specified in Section 2603.4 is required on the underside of the structural floor system that contains foam plastic insulation where the underside of the structural floor system is exposed to the interior of the building.

**Exception:** Foam plastic used as part of an interior floor finish.

**PLASTIC**

**2603.5 Exterior walls of buildings of any height.** Exterior walls of buildings of Type I, II, III or IV construction of any height shall comply with Sections 2603.5.1 through 2603.5.7. Exterior walls of cold storage buildings required to be constructed of noncombustible materials, where the building is more than one story in height, shall comply with the provisions of Sections 2603.5.1 through 2603.5.7. Exterior walls of buildings of Type V construction shall comply with Sections 2603.2, 2603.3 and 2603.4. Fireblocking shall be in accordance with Section 718.2.

**2603.5.1 Fire-resistance-rated walls.** Where the wall is required to have a fire-resistance rating, data based on tests conducted in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 shall be provided to substantiate that the fire-resistance rating is maintained.

**2603.5.2 Thermal barrier.** Any foam plastic insulation shall be separated from the building interior by a thermal barrier meeting the provisions of Section 2603.4, unless special approval is obtained on the basis of Section 2603.9.

**Exception:** One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

**2603.5.3 Potential heat.** The potential heat of foam plastic insulation in any portion of the wall or panel shall not exceed the potential heat expressed in Btu per square feet ( $\text{mJ}/\text{m}^2$ ) of the foam plastic insulation contained in the wall assembly tested in accordance with Section 2603.5.5. The potential heat of the foam plastic insulation shall be determined by tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 259 and the results shall be expressed in Btu per square feet ( $\text{mJ}/\text{m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.

**2603.5.4 Flame spread and smoke-developed indices.** Foam plastic insulation, exterior coatings and facings shall be tested separately in the thickness intended for use, but not to exceed 4 inches (102 mm), and shall each have a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**Exception:** Prefabricated or factory-manufactured panels having minimum 0.020-inch (0.51 mm) aluminum facings and a total thickness of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) or less are permitted to be tested as an assembly where the foam plastic core is not exposed in the course of construction.

**2603.5.5 Vertical and lateral fire propagation.** The exterior wall assembly shall be tested in accordance with and comply with the acceptance criteria of NFPA 285.

**Exceptions:**

1. One-story buildings complying with Section 2603.4.1.4.
2. Wall assemblies where the foam plastic insulation is covered on each face by not less than 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete and meeting one of the following:
  - 2.1. There is no airspace between the insulation and the concrete or masonry.

2.2. The insulation has a flame spread index of not more than 25 as determined in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 and the maximum airspace between the insulation and the concrete or masonry is not more than 1 inch (25 mm).

**2603.5.6 Label required.** The edge or face of each piece, package or container of foam plastic insulation shall bear the label of an approved agency. The label shall contain the manufacturer's or distributor's identification, model number, serial number or definitive information describing the product or materials' performance characteristics and approved agency's identification.

**2603.5.7 Ignition.** Exterior walls shall not exhibit sustained flaming where tested in accordance with NFPA 268. Where a material is intended to be installed in more than one thickness, tests of the minimum and maximum thickness intended for use shall be performed.

**Exception:** Assemblies protected on the outside with one of the following:

1. A thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4.
2. A minimum 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of concrete or masonry.
3. Glass-fiber-reinforced concrete panels of a minimum thickness of  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).
4. Metal-faced panels having minimum 0.019-inch-thick (0.48 mm) aluminum or 0.016-inch-thick (0.41 mm) corrosion-resistant steel outer facings.
5. A minimum  $\frac{7}{8}$ -inch (22.2 mm) thickness of stucco complying with Section 2510.
6. A minimum  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) thickness of fiber-cement lap, panel or shingle siding complying with Section 1404.16 and Section 1404.16.1 or 1404.16.2.

**2603.6 Roofing.** Foam plastic insulation meeting the requirements of Sections 2603.2, 2603.3 and 2603.4 shall be permitted as part of a roof-covering assembly, provided that the assembly with the foam plastic insulation is a Class A, B or C roofing assembly where tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.

**2603.7 Foam plastic in plenums as interior finish or interior trim.** Foam plastic in plenums used as interior wall or ceiling finish, or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 50 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, and shall be tested in accordance with NFPA 286 and meet the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1. As an alternative to testing to NFPA 286, the foam plastic shall be approved based on tests conducted in accordance with Section 2603.9.

**Exceptions:**

1. Foam plastic in plenums used as interior wall or ceiling finish, or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with

ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the plenum by a thermal barrier complying with Section 2603.4.

2. Foam plastic in plenums used as interior wall or ceiling finish, or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the plenum by corrosion-resistant steel having a base metal thickness of not less than 0.0160 inch (0.4 mm).
3. Foam plastic in plenums used as interior wall or ceiling finish, or interior trim, shall exhibit a flame spread index of 75 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 at the maximum thickness and density intended for use, where it is separated from the airflow in the plenum by not less than a 1-inch (25 mm) thickness of masonry or concrete.

**2603.8 Protection against termites.** In areas where the probability of termite infestation is very heavy in accordance with Figure 2603.8, extruded and expanded polystyrene, polyisocyanurate and other foam plastics shall not be installed on the exterior face or under interior or exterior foundation walls or slab foundations located below grade. The clearance between foam plastics installed above grade and exposed earth shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings where the structural members of walls, floors, ceilings and roofs are entirely of noncombustible materials or preservative-treated wood.

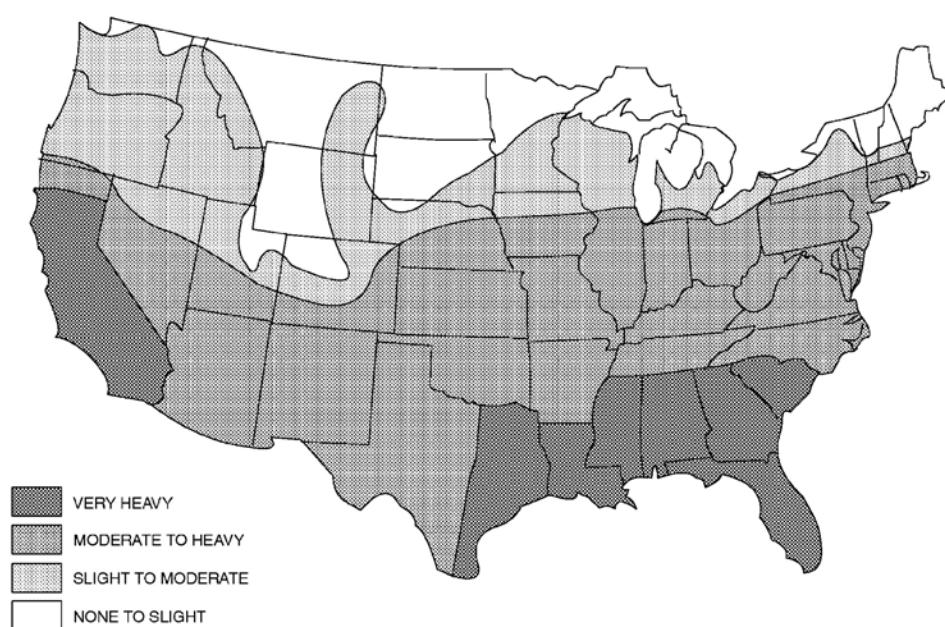
2. An approved method of protecting the foam plastic and structure from subterranean termite damage is provided.

3. On the interior side of basement walls.

**2603.9 Special approval.** Foam plastic shall not be required to comply with the requirements of Section 2603.4 or those of Section 2603.6 where specifically approved based on large-scale tests such as, but not limited to, NFPA 286 (with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1), FM 4880, UL 1040 or UL 1715. Such testing shall be related to the actual end-use configuration and be performed on the finished manufactured foam plastic assembly in the maximum thickness intended for use. Foam plastics that are used as interior finish on the basis of special tests shall conform to the flame spread and smoke-developed requirements of Chapter 8. Assemblies tested shall include seams, joints and other typical details used in the installation of the assembly and shall be tested in the manner intended for use.

**[BS] 2603.10 Wind resistance.** Foam plastic insulation complying with ASTM C578 and ASTM C1289 and used as exterior wall sheathing on framed wall assemblies shall comply with ANSI/FS 100 for wind pressure resistance.

**[BS] 2603.11 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to masonry or concrete wall construction.** Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer's installation instructions or an approved design. Foam sheathing shall be attached to masonry or concrete construction in accordance with the insulation manufacturer's installation instructions or an approved design. Furring and furring attachments through foam sheathing shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16, including support of cladding weight as applicable. Fasteners used to attach clad-



**FIGURE 2603.8  
TERMIT INFESTATION PROBABILITY MAP**

ding or furring through foam sheathing to masonry or concrete substrates shall be approved for application into masonry or concrete material and shall be installed in accordance with the fastener manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing and connection to a masonry or concrete substrate, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 1407.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1404.

**2603.11.1 Additional requirements. [OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** In addition to the requirements of Section 2603.11, cladding and foam sheathing supports and attachments shall be designed and submitted to the enforcement agency for approval.

**[BS] 2603.12 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to cold-formed steel framing.** Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer's approved installation instructions, including any limitations for use over foam plastic sheathing, or an approved design. Where used, furring and furring attachments shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to cold-formed steel framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Sections 2603.12.1 and

2603.12.2, or an approved design for support of cladding weight.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 1407.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1404.

**[BS] 2603.12.1 Direct attachment.** Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, cladding minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.12.1.

**[BS] 2603.12.2 Furred cladding attachment.** Where steel or wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.12.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section 2303.1.9 or naturally durable wood and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance with Section 2304.10.6. Steel furring shall have a minimum G60 galvanized coating.

**2603.12.3 Additional requirements. [OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5, DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC]** In addition to the requirements of Section 2603.12, 2603.12.1 and 2603.12.2, cladding and foam sheathing supports and attachments shall be designed and submitted to the enforcement agency for approval.

**[BS]TABLE 2603.12.1  
CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT  
ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT<sup>a</sup>**

CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING INTO:	CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE <sup>b</sup>	CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING <sup>c</sup> (inches)							
			16" o.c. fastener horizontal spacing				24" o.c. fastener horizontal spacing			
			Cladding weight				Cladding weight			
			3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Cold-formed steel framing (minimum penetration of steel thickness plus 3 threads)	#8 screw into 33 mil steel or thicker	6	3.00	2.95	2.20	1.45	3.00	2.35	1.25	DR
		8	3.00	2.55	1.60	0.60	3.00	1.80	DR	DR
		12	3.00	1.80	DR	DR	3.00	0.65	DR	DR
	#10 screw into 33 mil steel	6	4.00	3.50	2.70	1.95	4.00	2.90	1.70	0.55
		8	4.00	3.10	2.05	1.00	4.00	2.25	0.70	DR
		12	4.00	2.25	0.70	DR	3.70	1.05	DR	DR
	#10 screw into 43 mil steel or thicker	6	4.00	4.00	4.00	3.60	4.00	4.00	3.45	2.70
		8	4.00	4.00	3.70	3.00	4.00	3.85	2.80	1.80
		12	4.00	3.85	2.80	1.80	4.00	3.05	1.50	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

DR = design required, o.c. = on center.

a. Cold-formed steel framing shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil steel and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.

b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of AISI S240.

c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

**[BS]TABLE 2603.12.2**  
**FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR**  
**APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT<sup>a</sup>**

FURRING MATERIAL	FRAMING MEMBER	FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE <sup>b</sup>	MINIMUM PENETRATION INTO WALL FRAMING (inches)	FASTENER SPACING IN FURRING (inches)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING <sup>d</sup> (inches)							
					16" o.c. furring <sup>e</sup>				24" o.c. furring <sup>e</sup>			
					Cladding weight				Cladding weight			
					3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Minimum 33 mil steel furring or minimum 1x wood furring <sup>c</sup>	33 mil cold-formed steel stud	#8 screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	3.00	1.80	DR	DR	3.00	0.65	DR	DR
				16	3.00	1.00	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR
				24	2.85	DR	DR	DR	2.20	DR	DR	DR
		#10 screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	4.00	2.25	0.70	DR	3.70	1.05	DR	DR
				16	3.85	1.45	DR	DR	3.40	DR	DR	DR
				24	3.40	DR	DR	DR	2.70	DR	DR	DR
	43 mil or thicker cold-formed steel stud	#8 Screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	3.00	1.80	DR	DR	3.00	0.65	DR	DR
				16	3.00	1.00	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR
				24	2.85	DR	DR	DR	2.20	DR	DR	DR
		#10 screw	Steel thickness plus 3 threads	12	4.00	3.85	2.80	1.80	4.00	3.05	1.50	DR
				16	4.00	3.30	1.95	0.60	4.00	2.25	DR	DR
				24	4.00	2.25	DR	DR	4.00	0.65	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

DR = Design Required, o.c. = on center.

- a. Wood furring shall be spruce-pine-fir or any softwood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater. Steel furring shall be minimum 33 ksi steel. Coldformed steel studs shall be minimum 33 ksi steel for 33 mil and 43 mil thickness and 50 ksi steel for 54 mil steel or thicker.
- b. Screws shall comply with the requirements of AISI S240.
- c. Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds 3/4 inch and is not more than 11/2 inches, a minimum 2-inch nominal wood furring or an approved design shall be used.
- d. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 pounds per square inch in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.
- e. Furring shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center, in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

**[BS] 2603.13 Cladding attachment over foam sheathing to wood framing.** Cladding shall be specified and installed in accordance with Chapter 14 and the cladding manufacturer's installation instructions. Where used, furring and furring attachments shall be designed to resist design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 16. In addition, the cladding or furring attachments through foam sheathing to framing shall meet or exceed the minimum fastening requirements of Section 2603.13.1 or 2603.13.2, or an approved design for support of cladding weight.

#### Exceptions:

1. Where the cladding manufacturer has provided approved installation instructions for application over foam sheathing, those requirements shall apply.
2. For exterior insulation and finish systems, refer to Section 1407.
3. For anchored masonry or stone veneer installed over foam sheathing, refer to Section 1404.

**[BS] 2603.13.1 Direct attachment.** Where cladding is installed directly over foam sheathing without the use of furring, minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.13.1.

**[BS] 2603.13.2 Furred cladding attachment.** Where wood furring is used to attach cladding over foam

sheathing, furring minimum fastening requirements to support the cladding weight shall be as specified in Table 2603.13.2. Where placed horizontally, wood furring shall be preservative-treated wood in accordance with Section 2303.1.9 or naturally durable wood and fasteners shall be corrosion resistant in accordance with Section 2304.10.6.

**2603.13.3 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, OSHPD 1, IR, 2, 4 & 5]** In addition to the requirements of Section 2603.13, 2603.13.1 and 2603.13.2, cladding and foam sheathing supports and attachments shall be designed and submitted to the enforcement agency for approval.

## SECTION 2604 INTERIOR FINISH AND TRIM

**2604.1 General.** Plastic materials installed as interior finish or trim shall comply with Chapter 8. Foam plastics shall only be installed as interior finish where approved in accordance with the special provisions of Section 2603.9. Foam plastics that are used as interior finish shall meet the flame spread and smoke-developed index requirements for interior finish in accordance with Chapter 8. Foam plastics installed as interior trim shall comply with Section 2604.2.

**[BS]TABLE 2603.13.1**  
**CLADDING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR DIRECT  
ATTACHMENT OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT<sup>a</sup>**

CLADDING FASTENER THROUGH FOAM SHEATHING INTO:	CLADDING FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE <sup>b</sup>	CLADDING FASTENER VERTICAL SPACING (INCHES)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING <sup>c</sup> (INCHES)							
			16" o.c. fastener horizontal spacing				24" o.c. fastener horizontal spacing			
			Cladding weight:				Cladding weight:			
Wood Framing (minimum 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> - inch penetration)	0.113" diameter nail	6	2.00	1.45	0.75	DR	2.00	0.85	DR	DR
		8	2.00	1.00	DR	DR	2.00	0.55	DR	DR
		12	2.00	0.55	DR	DR	1.85	DR	DR	DR
	0.120" diameter nail	6	3.00	1.70	0.90	0.55	3.00	1.05	0.50	DR
		8	3.00	1.20	0.60	DR	3.00	0.70	DR	DR
		12	3.00	0.70	DR	DR	2.15	DR	DR	DR
	0.131" diameter nail	6	4.00	2.15	1.20	0.75	4.00	1.35	0.70	DR
		8	4.00	1.55	0.80	DR	4.00	0.90	DR	DR
		12	4.00	0.90	DR	DR	2.70	0.50	DR	DR
	0.162" diameter nail	6	4.00	3.55	2.05	1.40	4.00	2.25	1.25	0.80
		8	4.00	2.55	1.45	0.95	4.00	1.60	0.85	0.50
		12	4.00	1.60	0.85	0.50	4.00	0.95	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa.

DR = Design Required, o.c. = on center.

a. Wood framing shall be spruce-pine-fir or any wood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS.

b. Nail fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667, except nail length shall be permitted to exceed ASTM F1667 standard lengths.

c. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

**[BS]TABLE 2603.13.2**  
**FURRING MINIMUM FASTENING REQUIREMENTS FOR  
APPLICATION OVER FOAM PLASTIC SHEATHING TO SUPPORT CLADDING WEIGHT<sup>a, b</sup>**

FURRING MATERIAL	FRAMING MEMBER	FASTENER TYPE AND MINIMUM SIZE	MINIMUM PENETRATION INTO WALL FRAMING (INCHES)	FASTENER SPACING IN FURRING (INCHES)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS OF FOAM SHEATHING <sup>d</sup> (INCHES)							
					16" o.c. furring <sup>e</sup>				24" o.c. furring <sup>e</sup>			
					Siding weight:				Siding weight:			
					3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf	3 psf	11 psf	18 psf	25 psf
Minimum 1x Wood Furring <sup>c</sup>	Minimum 2x Wood Stud	0.131" diameter nail	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	8	4.00	2.45	1.45	0.95	4.00	1.60	0.85	DR
				12	4.00	1.60	0.85	DR	4.00	0.95	DR	DR
				16	4.00	1.10	DR	DR	3.05	0.60	DR	DR
		0.162" diameter nail	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	8	4.00	4.00	2.45	1.60	4.00	2.75	1.45	0.85
				12	4.00	2.75	1.45	0.85	4.00	1.65	0.75	DR
				16	4.00	1.90	0.95	DR	4.00	1.05	DR	DR
		No. 10 wood screw	1	12	4.00	2.30	1.20	0.70	4.00	1.40	0.60	DR
				16	4.00	1.65	0.75	DR	4.00	0.90	DR	DR
				24	4.00	0.90	DR	DR	2.85	DR	DR	DR
		1/ <sub>4</sub> " lag screw	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub>	12	4.00	2.65	1.50	0.90	4.00	1.65	0.80	DR
				16	4.00	1.95	0.95	0.50	4.00	1.10	DR	DR
				24	4.00	1.10	DR	DR	3.25	0.50	DR	DR

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot (psf) = 0.0479 kPa, 1 pound per square inch = 0.00689 MPa.

DR = Design Required, o.c. = on center.

a. Wood framing and furring shall be spruce-pine-fir or any wood species with a specific gravity of 0.42 or greater in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS.

b. Nail fasteners shall comply with ASTM F1667, except nail length shall be permitted to exceed ASTM F1667 standard lengths.

c. Where the required cladding fastener penetration into wood material exceeds 3/4 inch and is not more than 1 1/2 inches, a minimum 2-inch nominal wood furring or an approved design shall be used.

d. Foam sheathing shall have a minimum compressive strength of 15 psi in accordance with ASTM C578 or ASTM C1289.

e. Furring shall be spaced not greater than 24 inches on center in a vertical or horizontal orientation. In a vertical orientation, furring shall be located over wall studs and attached with the required fastener spacing. In a horizontal orientation, the indicated 8-inch and 12-inch fastener spacing in furring shall be achieved by use of two fasteners into studs at 16 inches and 24 inches on center, respectively.

**2604.1.1 Plenums.** Foam plastics installed in plenums as interior wall or ceiling finish shall comply with Section 2603.7. Foam plastics installed in plenums as interior trim shall comply with Sections 2604.2 and 2603.7.

[F] **2604.2 Interior trim.** Foam plastic used as interior trim shall comply with Sections 2604.2.1 through 2604.2.4.

[F] **2604.2.1 Density.** The minimum density of the interior trim shall be 20pcf (320 kg/m<sup>3</sup>).

[F] **2604.2.2 Thickness.** The maximum thickness of the interior trim shall be  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) and the maximum width shall be 8 inches (204 mm).

[F] **2604.2.3 Area limitation.** The interior trim shall not constitute more than 10 percent of the specific wall or ceiling areas to which it is attached.

[F] **2604.2.4 Flame spread.** The flame spread index shall not exceed 75 where tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The smoke-developed index shall not be limited.

**Exception:** Where the interior trim material has been tested as an interior finish in accordance with NFPA 286 and complies with the acceptance criteria in Section 803.1.1.1, it shall not be required to be tested for flame spread index in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

## SECTION 2605 PLASTIC VENEER

**2605.1 Interior use.** Where used within a building, plastic veneer shall comply with the interior finish requirements of Chapter 8.

**2605.2 Exterior use.** Exterior plastic veneer, other than plastic siding, shall be permitted to be installed on the exterior walls of buildings of any type of construction in accordance with all of the following requirements:

1. Plastic veneer shall comply with Section 2606.4.
2. Plastic veneer shall not be attached to any exterior wall to a height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above grade.
3. Sections of plastic veneer shall not exceed 300 square feet (27.9 m<sup>2</sup>) in area and shall be separated by not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) vertically.

**Exception:** The area and separation requirements and the smoke-density limitation are not applicable to plastic veneer applied to buildings constructed of Type VB construction, provided that the walls are not required to have a fire-resistance rating.

**2605.3 Plastic siding.** Plastic siding shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1403 and 1404.

## SECTION 2606 LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTICS

**2606.1 General.** The provisions of this section and Sections 2607 through 2611 shall govern the quality and methods of application of light-transmitting plastics for use as light-

transmitting materials in buildings and structures. Foam plastics shall comply with Section 2603. Light-transmitting plastic materials that meet the other code requirements for walls and roofs shall be permitted to be used in accordance with the other applicable chapters of the code.

**2606.2 Approval for use.** Sufficient technical data shall be submitted to substantiate the proposed use of any light-transmitting material, as approved by the building official and subject to the requirements of this section.

**2606.3 Identification.** Each unit or package of light-transmitting plastic shall be identified with a mark or decal satisfactory to the building official, which includes identification as to the material classification.

**2606.4 Specifications.** Light-transmitting plastics, including thermoplastic, thermosetting or reinforced thermosetting plastic material, shall have a self-ignition temperature of 650°F (343°C) or greater where tested in accordance with ASTM D1929; a smoke-developed index not greater than 450 where tested in the manner intended for use in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, or a maximum average smoke density rating not greater than 75 where tested in the thickness intended for use in accordance with ASTM D2843 and shall conform to one of the following combustibility classifications:

**Class CC1:** Plastic materials that have a burning extent of 1 inch (25 mm) or less where tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM D635.

**Class CC2:** Plastic materials that have a burning rate of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inches per minute (1.06 mm/s) or less where tested at a nominal thickness of 0.060 inch (1.5 mm), or in the thickness intended for use, in accordance with ASTM D635.

[BS] **2606.5 Structural requirements.** Light-transmitting plastic materials in their assembly shall be of adequate strength and durability to withstand the loads indicated in Chapter 16. Technical data shall be submitted to establish stresses, maximum unsupported spans and such other information for the various thicknesses and forms used as deemed necessary by the building official.

[BS] **2606.6 Fastening.** Fastening shall be adequate to withstand the loads in Chapter 16. Proper allowance shall be made for expansion and contraction of light-transmitting plastic materials in accordance with accepted data on the coefficient of expansion of the material and other material in conjunction with which it is employed.

**2606.7 Light-diffusing systems.** Unless the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, light-diffusing systems shall not be installed in the following occupancies and locations:

1. Group A with an occupant load of 1,000 or more.
2. Theaters with a stage and proscenium opening and an occupant load of 700 or more.
3. Group I-2.
4. Group I-3.
5. Interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways.

**PLASTIC**

**2606.7.1 Support.** Light-transmitting plastic diffusers shall be supported directly or indirectly from ceiling or roof construction by use of noncombustible hangers. Hangers shall be not less than No. 12 steel-wire gage (0.106 inch) galvanized wire or equivalent.

**2606.7.2 Installation.** Light-transmitting plastic diffusers shall comply with Chapter 8 unless the light-transmitting plastic diffusers will fall from the mountings before igniting, at an ambient temperature of not less than 200°F (111°C) below the ignition temperature of the panels. The panels shall remain in place at an ambient room temperature of 175°F (79°C) for a period of not less than 15 minutes.

**2606.7.3 Size limitations.** Individual panels or units shall not exceed 10 feet (3048 mm) in length nor 30 square feet (2.79 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.

**2606.7.4 Automatic sprinkler system.** In buildings that are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, plastic light-diffusing systems shall be protected both above and below unless the sprinkler system has been specifically approved for installation only above the light-diffusing system, or the light-diffusing system is listed and labeled in accordance with UL 723S. Areas of light-diffusing systems that are protected in accordance with this section shall not be limited.

**2606.7.5 Electrical luminaires.** Light-transmitting plastic panels and light-diffuser panels that are installed in approved electrical luminaires shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 8 unless the light-transmitting plastic panels conform to the requirements of Section 2606.7.2. The area of approved light-transmitting plastic materials that is used in required exits or corridors shall not exceed 30 percent of the aggregate area of the ceiling in which such panels are installed, unless the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

**2606.8 Partitions.** Light-transmitting plastics used in or as partitions shall comply with the requirements of Chapters 6 and 8.

**2606.9 Bathroom accessories.** Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted as glazing in shower stalls, shower doors, bathtub enclosures and similar accessory units. Safety glazing shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 24.

**2606.10 Awnings, patio covers and similar structures.** Awnings constructed of light-transmitting plastics shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions specified in Section 3105 and Chapter 32 for projections. Patio covers constructed of light-transmitting plastics shall comply with Section 2606. Light-transmitting plastics used in canopies at motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Section 2606, except as modified by Section 406.7.2.

**2606.11 Greenhouses.** Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted in lieu of glass in greenhouses.

**2606.12 Solar collectors.** Light-transmitting plastic covers on solar collectors having noncombustible sides and bottoms

shall be permitted on buildings not over three stories above grade plane or 9,000 square feet (836.1 m<sup>2</sup>) in total floor area, provided that the light-transmitting plastic cover does not exceed 33.33 percent of the roof area for CC1 materials or 25 percent of the roof area for CC2 materials.

**Exception:** Light-transmitting plastic covers having a thickness of 0.010 inch (0.3 mm) or less shall be permitted to be of any plastic material provided that the area of the solar collectors does not exceed 33.33 percent of the roof area.

## **SECTION 2607** **LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS**

**2607.1 General.** Light-transmitting plastics shall not be used as wall panels in exterior walls in occupancies in Groups A-1, A-2, H, I-2 and I-3. In other groups, light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted to be used as wall panels in exterior walls, provided that the walls are not required to have a fire-resistance rating and the installation conforms to the requirements of this section. Such panels shall be erected and anchored on a foundation, waterproofed or otherwise protected from moisture absorption and sealed with a coat of mastic or other approved waterproof coating. Light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall comply with Section 2606.

**2607.2 Installation.** Exterior wall panels installed as provided for herein shall not alter the type of construction classification of the building.

**2607.3 Height limitation.** Light-transmitting plastics shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above grade plane.

**2607.4 Area limitation and separation.** The maximum area of a single wall panel and minimum vertical and horizontal separation requirements for exterior light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall be as provided for in Table 2607.4. The maximum percentage of wall area of any story in light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall not exceed that indicated in Table 2607.4 or the percentage of unprotected openings permitted by Section 705.8, whichever is smaller.

### **Exceptions:**

1. In structures provided with approved flame barriers extending 30 inches (760 mm) beyond the exterior wall in the plane of the floor, a vertical separation is not required at the floor except that provided by the vertical thickness of the flame barrier projection.
2. Veneers of approved weather-resistant light-transmitting plastics used as exterior siding in buildings of Type V construction in compliance with Section 1405.
3. The area of light-transmitting plastic wall panels in exterior walls of greenhouses shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2607.4 but shall be limited as required for unprotected openings in accordance with Section 705.8.

**TABLE 2607.4**  
**AREA LIMITATION AND SEPARATION REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC WALL PANELS<sup>a</sup>**

FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE (feet)	CLASS OF PLASTIC	MAXIMUM PERCENTAGE AREA OF EXTERIOR WALL IN PLASTIC WALL PANELS	MAXIMUM SINGLE AREA OF PLASTIC WALL PANELS (square feet)	MINIMUM SEPARATION OF PLASTIC WALL PANELS (feet)	
				Vertical	Horizontal
Less than 6	—	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	—	—
6 or more but less than 11	CC1	10	50	8	4
	CC2	Not Permitted	Not Permitted	—	—
11 or more but less than or equal to 30	CC1	25	90	6	4
	CC2	15	70	8	4
Over 30	CC1	50	Not Limited	3 <sup>b</sup>	0
	CC2	50	100	6 <sup>b</sup>	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. For combinations of plastic glazing and plastic wall panel areas permitted, see Section 2607.6.

b. For reductions in vertical separation allowed, see Section 2607.4.

**2607.5 Automatic sprinkler system.** Where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the maximum percentage area of exterior wall in any story in light-transmitting plastic wall panels and the maximum square footage of a single area given in Table 2607.4 shall be increased 100 percent, but the area of light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall not exceed 50 percent of the wall area in any story, or the area permitted by Section 705.8 for unprotected openings, whichever is smaller. These installations shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above grade plane.

**2607.6 Combinations of glazing and wall panels.** Combinations of light-transmitting plastic glazing and light-transmitting plastic wall panels shall be subject to the area, height and percentage limitations and the separation requirements applicable to the class of light-transmitting plastic as prescribed for light-transmitting plastic wall panel installations.

## SECTION 2608 LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC GLAZING

**2608.1 Buildings of Type VB construction.** Openings in the exterior walls of buildings of Type VB construction, where not required to be protected by Section 705, shall be permitted to be glazed or equipped with light-transmitting plastic. Light-transmitting plastic glazing shall comply with Section 2606.

**2608.2 Buildings of other types of construction.** Openings in the exterior walls of buildings of types of construction other than Type VB, where not required to be protected by Section 705, shall be permitted to be glazed or equipped with light-transmitting plastic in accordance with Section 2606 and all of the following:

1. The aggregate area of light-transmitting plastic glazing shall not exceed 25 percent of the area of any wall face of the story in which it is installed. The area of a single pane of glazing installed above the first story above grade plane shall not exceed 16 square feet (1.5 m<sup>2</sup>) and

the vertical dimension of a single pane shall not exceed 4 feet (1219 mm).

**Exception:** Where an automatic sprinkler system is provided throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the area of allowable glazing shall be increased to not more than 50 percent of the wall face of the story in which it is installed with no limit on the maximum dimension or area of a single pane of glazing.

2. Approved flame barriers extending 30 inches (762 mm) beyond the exterior wall in the plane of the floor, or vertical panels not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height, shall be installed between glazed units located in adjacent stories.

**Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

3. Light-transmitting plastics shall not be installed more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above grade level.

**Exception:** Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

## SECTION 2609 LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS

**2609.1 General.** Light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall comply with this section and Section 2606. Light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall not be installed in Groups H, I-2 and I-3. In all other groups, light-transmitting plastic roof panels shall comply with any one of the following conditions:

1. The building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The roof construction is not required to have a fire-resistance rating by Table 601.
3. The roof panels meet the requirements for roof coverings in accordance with Chapter 15.

**PLASTIC**

**2609.2 Separation.** Individual roof panels shall be separated from each other by a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured in a horizontal plane.

**Exceptions:**

1. The separation between roof panels is not required in a building equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The separation between roof panels is not required in low-hazard occupancy buildings complying with the conditions of Section 2609.4, Exception 2 or 3.

**2609.3 Location.** Where exterior wall openings are required to be protected by Section 705.8, a roof panel shall not be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of such exterior wall.

**2609.4 Area limitations.** Roof panels shall be limited in area and the aggregate area of panels shall be limited by a percentage of the floor area of the room or space sheltered in accordance with Table 2609.4.

**Exceptions:**

1. The area limitations of Table 2609.4 shall be permitted to be increased by 100 percent in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. Low-hazard occupancy buildings, such as swimming pool shelters, shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4, provided that the buildings do not exceed 5,000 square feet ( $465 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area and have a minimum fire separation distance of 10 feet (3048 mm).
3. Greenhouses that are occupied for growing or maintaining plants, without public access, shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4 provided that they have a minimum fire separation distance of 4 feet (1220 mm).
4. Roof coverings over terraces and patios in occupancies in Group R-3 shall be exempt from the area limitations of Table 2609.4 and shall be permitted with light-transmitting plastics.

**TABLE 2609.4  
AREA LIMITATIONS FOR  
LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC ROOF PANELS**

CLASS OF PLASTIC	MAXIMUM AREA OF INDIVIDUAL ROOF PANELS (square feet)	MAXIMUM AGGREGATE AREA OF ROOF PANELS (percent of floor area)
CC1	300	30
CC2	100	25

For SI: 1 square foot =  $0.0929 \text{ m}^2$ .

## **SECTION 2610 LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC SKYLIGHT GLAZING**

**2610.1 Light-transmitting plastic glazing of skylight assemblies.** Skylight assemblies glazed with light-transmitting plastic shall conform to the provisions of this section and Section 2606.

**Exception:** Skylights in which the light-transmitting plastic conforms to the required roof-covering class in accordance with Section 1505.

**2610.1.1 Unit skylights.** Unit skylights glazed with light-transmitting plastic shall comply with Section 2405.5.

**2610.2 Mounting.** The light-transmitting plastic shall be mounted above the plane of the roof on a curb constructed in accordance with the requirements for the type of construction classification, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the plane of the roof. Edges of the light-transmitting plastic skylights or domes shall be protected by metal or other approved noncombustible material, or the light transmitting plastic dome or skylight shall be shown to be able to resist ignition where exposed at the edge to a flame from a Class B brand as described in ASTM E108 or UL 790. The Class B brand test shall be conducted on a skylight that is elevated to a height as specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm).

**Exceptions:**

1. Curbs shall not be required for skylights used on roofs having a minimum slope of three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope) in occupancies in Group R-3 and on buildings with a nonclassified roof covering.
2. The metal or noncombustible edge material is not required where nonclassified roof coverings are permitted.

**2610.3 Slope.** Flat or corrugated light-transmitting plastic skylights shall slope not less than four units vertical in 12 units horizontal (4:12). Dome-shaped skylights shall rise above the mounting flange a minimum distance equal to 10 percent of the maximum width of the dome but not less than 3 inches (76 mm).

**Exception:** Skylights that pass the Class B Burning Brand Test specified in ASTM E108 or UL 790.

**2610.4 Maximum area of skylights.** Each skylight shall have a maximum area within the curb of 100 square feet ( $9.3 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** The area limitation shall not apply where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or the building is equipped with smoke and heat vents in accordance with Section 910.

**2610.5 Aggregate area of skylights.** The aggregate area of skylights shall not exceed  $33\frac{1}{3}$  percent of the floor area of the room or space sheltered by the roof in which such skylights are installed where Class CC1 materials are utilized, and 25 percent where Class CC2 materials are utilized.

**Exception:** The aggregate area limitations of light-transmitting plastic skylights shall be increased 100 percent beyond the limitations set forth in this section where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or the building is equipped with smoke and heat vents in accordance with Section 910.

**2610.6 Separation.** Skylights shall be separated from each other by a distance of not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) measured in a horizontal plane.

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

2. In Group R-3, multiple skylights located above the same room or space with a combined area not exceeding the limits set forth in Section 2610.4.

**2610.7 Location.** Where exterior wall openings are required to be protected in accordance with Section 705, a skylight shall not be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of such exterior wall.

**2610.8 Combinations of roof panels and skylights.** Combinations of light-transmitting plastic roof panels and skylights shall be subject to the area and percentage limitations and separation requirements applicable to roof panel installations.

## SECTION 2611

### LIGHT-TRANSMITTING PLASTIC INTERIOR SIGNS

**2611.1 General.** Light-transmitting plastic interior signs shall be limited as specified in Sections 2606 and 2611.2 through 2611.4.

**Exception:** Light-transmitting plastic interior wall signs in covered and open mall buildings shall comply with Section 402.6.4.

**2611.2 Maximum area.** The aggregate area of all light-transmitting plastics shall not exceed 24 square feet ( $2.23 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**Exception:** In buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the aggregate area of light-transmitting plastics shall not exceed 100 square feet ( $9.29 \text{ m}^2$ ), provided that all plastics are Class CC1 in accordance with Section 2606.4.

**2611.3 Separation.** Signs exceeding the aggregate area of Section 2611.2 shall be separated from each other by not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) horizontally and 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically.

**2611.4 Encasement.** Backs of wall-mounted signs and non-illuminated portions of all signs regulated by this section shall be fully encased in metal.

## SECTION 2612

### PLASTIC COMPOSITES

**[BS] 2612.1 General.** Plastic composites shall consist of either wood/plastic composites or plastic lumber. Plastic composites shall comply with the provisions of this code and with the additional requirements of Section 2612.

**[BS] 2612.2 Labeling.** Plastic composite deck boards and stair treads, or their packaging, shall bear a label that indicates compliance with ASTM D7032 and includes the allowable load and maximum allowable span determined in accordance with ASTM D7032. Plastic composite handrails and guards, or their packaging, shall bear a label that indicates compliance with ASTM D7032 and includes the maximum allowable span determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

**2612.3 Flame spread index.** Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards shall exhibit a flame spread index not exceeding 200 when tested in accordance with

ASTM E84 or UL 723 with the test specimen remaining in place during the test.

**Exception:** Materials determined to be noncombustible in accordance with Section 703.3.

**[BS] 2612.4 Termite and decay resistance.** Where required by Section 2304.12, plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards containing wood, cellulosic or any other biodegradable materials shall be termite and decay resistant as determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

**[BS] 2612.5 Construction requirements.** Plastic composites meeting the requirements of Section 2612 shall be permitted to be used as exterior deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards where combustible construction is permitted.

**[BS] 2612.5.1 Span rating.** Plastic composites used as exterior deck boards shall have a span rating determined in accordance with ASTM D7032.

**[BS] 2612.6 Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards.** Plastic composite deck boards, stair treads, handrails and guards shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's instructions.

## SECTION 2613

### FIBER-REINFORCED POLYMER

**2613.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of fiber-reinforced polymer in and on buildings and structures.

**2613.2 Labeling and identification.** Packages and containers of fiber-reinforced polymer and their components delivered to the job site shall bear the label of an approved agency showing the manufacturer's name, product listing, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

**2613.3 Interior finishes.** Fiber-reinforced polymer used as interior finishes, decorative materials or trim shall comply with Chapter 8.

**2613.3.1 Foam plastic cores.** Fiber-reinforced polymer used as interior finish and that contains foam plastic cores shall comply with Chapter 8 and this chapter.

**2613.4 Light-transmitting materials.** Fiber-reinforced polymer used as light-transmitting materials shall comply with Sections 2606 through 2611 as required for the specific application.

**2613.5 Exterior use.** Fiber-reinforced polymer shall be permitted to be installed on the exterior walls of buildings of any type of construction where such polymers meet the requirements of Section 2603.5. Fireblocking shall be installed in accordance with Section 718.

#### Exceptions:

1. Compliance with Section 2603.5 is not required where all of the following conditions are met:

- 1.1. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall not exceed an aggregate total of 20 percent of the area of the specific wall to which it is attached, and single architectural elements

**PLASTIC**

shall not exceed 10 percent of the area of the specific wall to which it is attached, and no contiguous sets of architectural elements shall not exceed 10 percent of the area of the specific wall to which they are attached.

- 1.2. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less. The flame spread index requirement shall not be required for coatings or paints having a thickness of less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) that are applied directly to the surface of the fiber-reinforced polymer.
- 1.3. Fireblocking complying with Section 718.2.6 shall be installed.
- 1.4. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall be installed directly to a noncombustible substrate or be separated from the exterior wall by one of the following materials: corrosion-resistant steel having a minimum base metal thickness of 0.016 inch (0.41 mm) at any point, aluminum having a minimum thickness of 0.019 inch (0.5 mm) or other approved noncombustible material.
2. Compliance with Section 2603.5 is not required where the fiber-reinforced polymer is installed on buildings that are 40 feet (12190 mm) or less above grade and the following conditions are met:
  - 2.1. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall meet the requirements of Section 1405.1.
  - 2.2. Where the fire separation distance is 5 feet (1524 mm) or less, the area of the fiber-reinforced polymer shall not exceed 10 percent of the wall area. Where the fire separation distance is greater than 5 feet (1524 mm), the area of the exterior wall coverage using fiber-reinforced polymer shall not be limited.
  - 2.3. The fiber-reinforced polymer shall have a flame spread index of 200 or less. The flame spread index requirements do not apply to coatings or paints having a thickness of less than 0.036 inch (0.9 mm) that are applied directly to the surface of the fiber-reinforced polymer.
  - 2.4. Fireblocking complying with Section 718.2.6 shall be installed.

## **SECTION 2614**

### **REFLECTIVE PLASTIC CORE INSULATION**

**2614.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall govern the requirements and uses of reflective plastic core insulation in buildings and structures. Reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with the requirements of Section 2614 and of Section 2614.3 or 2614.4.

**2614.2 Identification.** Packages and containers of reflective plastic core insulation delivered to the job site shall show the manufacturer's or supplier's name, product identification and information sufficient to determine that the end use will comply with the code requirements.

**2614.3 Surface-burning characteristics.** Reflective plastic core insulation shall have a flame spread index of not more than 25 and a smoke-developed index of not more than 450 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723. The reflective plastic core insulation shall be tested at the maximum thickness intended for use. Test specimen preparation and mounting shall be in accordance with ASTM E2599.

**2614.4 Room corner test heat release.** Reflective plastic core insulation shall comply with the acceptance criteria of Section 803.1.1.1 when tested in accordance with NFPA 286 or UL 1715 in the manner intended for use and at the maximum thickness intended for use.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 27 – ELECTRICAL

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2702.1.2			X																			
2702.2.11			X																			
2702.2.12.1			X																			
2702.2.13			X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.





# CHAPTER 27

## ELECTRICAL

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Electrical systems and components are integral to most structures; therefore, it is necessary for the code to address their installation and protection. Structures depend on electricity for the operation of many life safety systems including fire alarm, smoke control and exhaust, fire suppression, fire command and communication systems. Since power supply to these systems is essential, Chapter 27 addresses where standby and emergency power must be provided.

### SECTION 2701 GENERAL

**2701.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter and the *California Electrical Code* shall govern the design, construction, erection and installation of the electrical components, appliances, equipment and systems used in buildings and structures covered by this code. The *California Fire Code*, the *International Property Maintenance Code* and the *California Electrical Code* shall govern the use and maintenance of electrical components, appliances, equipment and systems. The *California Existing Building Code* and the *California Electrical Code* shall govern the alteration, repair, relocation, replacement and addition of electrical components, appliances, or equipment and systems.

### SECTION 2702 EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

**[F] 2702.1 General.** Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall comply with Sections 2702.1.1 through 2702.1.8.

**[F] 2702.1.1 Stationary generators.** Stationary emergency and standby power generators required by this code shall be listed in accordance with UL 2200.

**[F] 2702.1.2 Fuel-line piping protection.** Fuel lines supplying a generator set inside a high-rise building or new Group I-2 occupancy having occupied floors located more than 75 feet (23 m) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access shall be separated from areas of the building other than the room the generator is located in by one of the following methods:

1. A fire-resistant pipe-protection system that has been tested in accordance with UL 1489. The system shall be installed as tested and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and shall have a rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.
2. An assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.

3. Other approved methods.

**[F] 2702.1.3 Installation.** Emergency power systems and standby power systems required by this code or the *California Fire Code* shall be installed in accordance with the *California Fire Code*, the *California Electrical Code*, NFPA 110 and NFPA 111.

**[F] 2702.1.4 Load transfer.** Emergency power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 10 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code. Standby power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 60 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code.

**[F] 2702.1.5 Load duration.** Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall be designed to provide the required power for a minimum duration of 2 hours without being refueled or recharged, unless specified otherwise in this code.

**[F] 2702.1.6 Uninterruptable power source.** An uninterrupted source of power shall be provided for equipment where required by the manufacturer's instructions, the listing, this code or applicable referenced standards.

**[F] 2702.1.7 Interchangeability.** Emergency power systems shall be an acceptable alternative for installations that require standby power systems.

**[F] 2702.1.8 Group I-2 occupancies.** In Group I-2 occupancies located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3, where new essential electrical systems are installed, and where new essential electrical system generators are installed, the systems and generators shall be located and installed in accordance with ASCE 24. Where connections for hookup of temporary generators are provided, the connections shall be located at or above the elevation required in ASCE 24.

**[F] 2702.2 Where required.** Emergency and standby power systems shall be provided where required by Sections 2702.2.1 through 2702.2.19.

**[F] 2702.2.1 Ambulatory care facilities.** Essential electrical systems for ambulatory care facilities shall comply with Section 422.6.

**[F] 2702.2.2 Elevators and platform lifts.** Standby power shall be provided for elevators and platform lifts as

**ELECTRICAL**

required in Sections 1009.4.1, 1009.5, 3003.1, 3007.8 and 3008.8.

**[F] 2702.2.3 Emergency responder communication coverage systems.** Standby power shall be provided for in-building 2-way emergency responder communication coverage systems required in Section 918 and the *California Fire Code*. The standby power supply shall be capable of operating the in-building 2-way emergency responder communication coverage system at 100-percent system operation capacity for a duration of not less than 12 hours.

**[F] 2702.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems.** Standby power shall be provided for emergency voice/alarm communication systems in accordance with NFPA 72.

**[F] 2702.2.5 Exhaust systems.** Standby power shall be provided for common exhaust systems for domestic kitchens located in multistory structures as required in Section 505.5 of the *California Mechanical Code*. Standby power shall be provided for common exhaust systems for clothes dryers located in multistory structures as required in Section 504.11 of the *California Mechanical Code* and Section 614.11 of the *International Fuel Gas Code*.

**[F] 2702.2.6 Exit signs.** Emergency power shall be provided for exit signs as required in Section 1013.6.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

**[F] 2702.2.7 Gas detection system.** Emergency or standby power shall be provided for gas detection systems in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 2702.2.8 Group I-2 occupancies.** Essential electrical systems for Group I-2 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 407.11.

**[F] 2702.2.9 Group I-3 occupancies.** Emergency power shall be provided for power-operated doors and locks in Group I-3 occupancies as required in Section 408.4.2.

**[F] 2702.2.10 Hazardous materials.** Emergency or standby power shall be provided in occupancies with hazardous materials where required by the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 2702.2.11 High-rise buildings.** Emergency and standby power shall be provided in high-rise buildings as required in Section 403.4.8.

**[F] 2702.2.12 Hydrogen fuel gas rooms.** Standby power shall be provided for hydrogen fuel gas rooms as required by the *California Fire Code*.

**2702.2.12.1 Group L Occupancy.** Secondary power shall be provided in Group L occupancies in accordance with this chapter and Section 453.4.6 and 453.4.6.1.

**[F] 2702.2.13 Laboratory suites.** Standby or emergency power shall be provided in accordance with Section 5004.7 of the *California Fire Code* where laboratory suites are located above the sixth story above grade plane or located in a story below grade plane.

**[F] 2702.2.14 Means of egress illumination.** Emergency power shall be provided for means of egress illumination as required in Section 1008.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

**[F] 2702.2.15 Membrane structures.** Standby power shall be provided for auxiliary inflation systems in permanent membrane structures as required in Section 3102.8.2. Standby power shall be provided for a duration of not less than 4 hours. Auxiliary inflation systems in temporary air-supported and air-inflated membrane structures shall be provided in accordance with Section 3103.10.4 of the *California Fire Code*.

**[F] 2702.2.16 Semiconductor fabrication facilities.** Emergency power shall be provided for semiconductor fabrication facilities as required in Section 415.11.11.

**[F] 2702.2.17 Smoke control systems.** Standby power shall be provided for smoke control systems as required in Sections 404.7, 909.11, 909.20.7.2 and 909.21.5.

**[F] 2702.2.18 Special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors.** Standby power shall be provided for special purpose horizontal sliding, accordion or folding doors as required in Section 1010.3.3. The standby power supply shall have a capacity to operate not fewer than 50 closing cycles of the door.

**[F] 2702.2.19 Underground buildings.** Emergency and standby power shall be provided in underground buildings as required in Section 405.

**[F] 2702.3 Critical circuits.** Required critical circuits shall be protected using one of the following methods:

1. Cables, used for survivability of required critical circuits, that are listed in accordance with UL 2196 and have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
2. Electrical circuit protective systems having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Electrical circuit protective systems are installed in accordance with their listing requirements.
3. Construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

**[F] 2702.4 Maintenance.** Emergency and standby power systems shall be maintained and tested in accordance with the *California Fire Code*.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 28 – MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X																			
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2802			X																			

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



# CHAPTER 28

## MECHANICAL SYSTEMS

---

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Mechanical systems are a key element of any building. Chapter 28 regulates such systems by linking to the California Mechanical Code and International Fuel Gas Code®, where details of mechanical system requirements are provided.

---

### SECTION 2801

#### GENERAL

**[M] 2801.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter, the *California Mechanical Code* and the *International Fuel Gas Code* shall govern the design, construction, erection and installation of mechanical appliances, equipment and systems used in buildings and structures covered by this code. Masonry chimneys, fireplaces and barbecues shall comply with the *California Mechanical Code* and Chapter 21 of this code. The *California Fire Code*, the *International Property Maintenance Code*, the *California Mechanical Code* and the *International Fuel Gas Code* shall govern the use and maintenance of mechanical components, appliances, equipment and systems. The *California Existing Building Code*, the *California Mechanical Code* and the *International Fuel Gas Code* shall govern the alteration, repair, relocation, replacement and addition of mechanical components, appliances, equipment and systems.

**2802 Spark Arrestor.** *[SFM] All chimneys attached to any appliance or fireplace that burns solid fuel shall be equipped with an approved spark arrester. The spark arrestor shall meet all of the following requirements:*

1. *The net free area of the spark arrestor shall be not less than four times the net free area of the outlet of the chimney.*
2. *The spark arrestor screen shall have heat and corrosion resistance equivalent to 19-gage galvanized steel or 24-gage stainless steel.*
3. *Openings shall not permit the passage of spheres having a diameter larger than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) nor block the passage of spheres having a diameter of less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).*
4. *The spark arrestor shall be accessible for cleaning and the screen or chimney cap shall be removable to allow for cleaning of the chimney flue.*



## CHAPTER 29

# PLUMBING SYSTEMS

*(Not Adopted by the State of California)*

*Refer to California Plumbing Code, Title 24, Part 5*

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Plumbing systems are another key element of any building. Chapter 29 provides the necessary number of plumbing fixtures, including water closets, lavatories, bathtubs and showers. The quality and design of each fixture must be in accordance with the California Plumbing Code.

### SECTION 2901 GENERAL

**[P] 2901.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter and the *California Plumbing Code* shall govern the design, construction, erection and installation of plumbing components, appliances, equipment and systems used in buildings and structures covered by this code. Toilet and bathing rooms shall be constructed in accordance with Section 1210. Private sewage disposal systems shall conform to the *International Private Sewage Disposal Code*. The *California Fire Code*, the *International Property Maintenance Code* and the *California Plumbing Code* shall govern the use and maintenance of plumbing components, appliances, equipment and systems. The *California Existing Building Code* and the *California Plumbing Code* shall govern the alteration, repair, relocation, replacement and addition of plumbing components, appliances, equipment and systems.

*For minimum plumbing fixture requirements, see Table 422.1 of the California Plumbing Code.*

### SECTION 2902 MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

**[P] 2902.1 Minimum number of fixtures.** Plumbing fixtures shall be provided in the minimum number as shown in Table 2902.1 based on the actual use of the building or space. Uses not shown in Table 2902.1 shall be considered individually by the code official. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code.

**[P] 2902.1.1 Fixture calculations.** To determine the occupant load of each sex, the total occupant load shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the occupant load of each sex in accordance with Table 2902.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 2902.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers

for each occupancy shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

**Exceptions:**

1. The total occupant load shall not be required to be divided in half where approved statistical data indicates a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.
2. Where multiple-user facilities are designed to serve all genders, the minimum fixture count shall be calculated 100 percent, based on total occupant load. In such multiple-user user facilities, each fixture type shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 and each urinal that is provided shall be located in a stall.
3. Distribution of the sexes is not required where single-user water closets and bathing room fixtures are provided in accordance with Section 2902.1.2.

**[P] 2902.1.2 Single-user toilet and bathing room fixtures.** The plumbing fixtures located in single-user toilet and bathing rooms, including family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms that are required by Section 1110.2.1, shall contribute toward the total number of required plumbing fixtures for a building or tenant space. Single-user toilet and bathing rooms, and family or assisted-use toilet rooms and bathing rooms shall be identified as being available for use by all persons regardless of their sex.

The total number of fixtures shall be permitted to be based on the required number of separate facilities or based on the aggregate of any combination of single-user or separate facilities.

**[P] 2902.1.3 Lavatory distribution.** Where two or more toilet rooms are provided for each sex, the required number of lavatories shall be distributed proportionately to the required number of water closets.

**PLUMBING SYSTEMS**

**[P] TABLE 2902.1**  
**MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES<sup>a</sup> (See Sections 2902.1.1 and 2902.2)**

No.	CLASSIFICATION	DESCRIPTION	WATER CLOSETS (URINALS SEE SECTION 424.2 OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE)		LAVATORIES		BATHTUBS/ SHOWERS	DRINKING FOUNTAINS (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE)	OTHER
			Male	Female	Male	Female			
1	Assembly	Theaters and other buildings for the performing arts and motion pictures <sup>d</sup>	1 per 125	1 per 65	1 per 200		—	1 per 500	1 service sink
		Nightclubs, bars, taverns, dance halls and buildings for similar purposes <sup>d</sup>	1 per 40	1 per 40	1 per 75		—	1 per 500	1 service sink
		Restaurants, banquet halls and food courts <sup>d</sup>	1 per 75	1 per 75	1 per 200		—	1 per 500	1 service sink
		Casino gaming areas	1 per 100 for the first 400 and 1 per 250 for the remainder exceeding 400	1 per 50 for the first 400 and 1 per 150 for the remainder exceeding 400	1 per 250 for the first 750 and 1 per 500 for the remainder exceeding 750	—	—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink
		Auditoriums without permanent seating, art galleries, exhibition halls, museums, lecture halls, libraries, arcades and gymnasiums <sup>d</sup>	1 per 125	1 per 65	1 per 200		—	1 per 500	1 service sink
		Passenger terminals and transportation facilities <sup>d</sup>	1 per 500	1 per 500	1 per 750		—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink
		Places of worship and other religious services <sup>d</sup>	1 per 150	1 per 75	1 per 200		—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink
		Coliseums, arenas, skating rinks, pools and tennis courts for indoor sporting events and activities	1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500	1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520	1 per 200	1 per 150	—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink
		Stadiums, amusement parks, bleachers and grandstands for outdoor sporting events and activities <sup>f</sup>	1 per 75 for the first 1,500 and 1 per 120 for the remainder exceeding 1,500	1 per 40 for the first 1,520 and 1 per 60 for the remainder exceeding 1,520	1 per 200	1 per 150	—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink

(continued)

## PLUMBING SYSTEMS

[P] TABLE 2902.1—continued

MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES<sup>a</sup> (See Sections 2902.1.1 and 2902.2)

No.	CLASSIFICATION	DESCRIPTION	WATER CLOSETS (URINALS SEE SECTION 424.2 OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE)		LAVATORIES		BATHTUBS/ SHOWERS	DRINKING FOUNTAINS (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE)	OTHER
			Male	Female	Male	Female			
2	Business	Buildings for the transaction of business, professional services, other services involving merchandise, office buildings, banks, light industrial, ambulatory care and similar uses	1 per 25 for the first 50 and 1 per 50 for the remainder exceeding 50		1 per 40 for the first 80 and 1 per 80 for the remainder exceeding 80		—	1 per 100	1 service sink <sup>e</sup>
3	Educational	Educational facilities	1 per 50		1 per 50		—	1 per 100	1 service sink
4	Factory and industrial	Structures in which occupants are engaged in work fabricating, assembly or processing of products or materials	1 per 100		1 per 100		—	1 per 400	1 service sink
5	Institutional	Custodial care facilities	1 per 10		1 per 10		1 per 8	1 per 100	1 service sink
		Medical care recipients in hospitals and nursing homes <sup>b</sup>	1 per room <sup>c</sup>		1 per room <sup>c</sup>		1 per 15	1 per 100	1 service sink
		Employees in hospitals and nursing homes <sup>b</sup>	1 per 25		1 per 35		—	1 per 100	—
		Visitors in hospitals and nursing homes	1 per 75		1 per 100		—	1 per 500	—
		Prisons <sup>b</sup>	1 per cell		1 per cell		1 per 15	1 per 100	1 service sink
		Reformatories, detention centers and correctional centers <sup>b</sup>	1 per 15		1 per 15		1 per 15	1 per 100	1 service sink
		Employees in reformatories, detention centers and correctional centers <sup>b</sup>	1 per 25		1 per 35		—	1 per 100	—
		Adult day care and child day care	1 per 15		1 per 15		1	1 per 100	1 service sink
6	Mercantile	Retail stores, service stations, shops, salesrooms, markets and shopping centers	1 per 500		1 per 750		—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink <sup>e</sup>

(continued)

**PLUMBING SYSTEMS****[P] TABLE 2902.1—continued****MINIMUM NUMBER OF REQUIRED PLUMBING FIXTURES<sup>a</sup> (See Sections 2902.1.1 and 2902.2)**

No.	CLASSIFICATION	DESCRIPTION	WATER CLOSETS (URINALS SEE SECTION 424.2 OF THE <i>INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE</i> )		LAVATORIES		BATHTUBS/ SHOWERS	DRINKING FOUNTAINS (SEE SECTION 410 OF THE <i>INTERNATIONAL PLUMBING CODE</i> )	OTHER
			Male	Female	Male	Female			
7	Residential	Hotels, motels, boarding houses (transient)	1 per sleeping unit		1 per sleeping unit		1 per sleeping unit	—	1 service sink
		Dormitories, fraternities, sororities and boarding houses (not transient)	1 per 10		1 per 10		1 per 8	1 per 100	1 service sink
		Apartment house	1 per dwelling unit		1 per dwelling unit		1 per dwelling unit	—	1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per 20 dwelling units
		One- and two-family dwellings and lodging houses with five or fewer guestrooms	1 per dwelling unit		1 per 10		1 per dwelling unit	—	1 kitchen sink per dwelling unit; 1 automatic clothes washer connection per dwelling unit
		Congregate living facilities with 16 or fewer persons	1 per 10		1 per 10		1 per 8	1 per 100	1 service sink
8	Storage	Structures for the storage of goods, warehouses, storehouses and freight depots, low and moderate hazard	1 per 100		1 per 100		—	1 per 1,000	1 service sink

- a. The fixtures shown are based on one fixture being the minimum required for the number of persons indicated or any fraction of the number of persons indicated. The number of occupants shall be determined by this code.
- b. Toilet facilities for employees shall be separate from facilities for inmates or care recipients.
- c. A single-occupant toilet room with one water closet and one lavatory serving not more than two adjacent patient sleeping units shall be permitted, provided that each patient sleeping unit has direct access to the toilet room and provisions for privacy for the toilet room user are provided.
- d. The occupant load for seasonal outdoor seating and entertainment areas shall be included when determining the minimum number of facilities required.
- e. For business and mercantile classifications with an occupant load of 15 or fewer, a service sink shall not be required.
- f. The required number and type of plumbing fixtures for outdoor swimming pools shall be in accordance with Section 609 of the *International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*.

**[P] 2902.2 Separate facilities.** Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

**Exceptions:**

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer.
3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or fewer.
4. Separate facilities shall not be required in business occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 25 or fewer.
5. Separate facilities shall not be required to be designated by sex where single-user toilets rooms are provided in accordance with Section 2902.1.2.
6. Separate facilities shall not be required where rooms having both water closets and lavatory fixtures are designed for use by both sexes and privacy for water closets are installed in accordance with Section 405.3.4 of the *California Plumbing Code*. Urinals shall be located in an area visually separated from the remainder of the facility or each urinal that is provided shall be located in a stall.

**[P] 2902.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet facilities serving as separate facilities.** Where a building or tenant space requires a separate toilet facility for each sex and each toilet facility is required to have only one water closet, two family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall be permitted to serve as the required separate facilities. Family or assisted-use toilet facilities shall not be required to be identified for exclusive use by either sex as required by Section 2902.4.

**[P] 2902.3 Employee and public toilet facilities.** For structures and tenant spaces intended for public utilization, customers, patrons and visitors shall be provided with public toilet facilities. Employees associated with structures and tenant spaces shall be provided with toilet facilities. The number of plumbing fixtures located within the required toilet facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2902 for all users. Employee toilet facilities shall be either separate or combined employee and public toilet facilities.

**Exception:** Public toilet facilities shall not be required for:

1. Parking garages where operated without parking attendants.
2. Structures and tenant spaces intended for quick transactions, including takeout, pickup and drop-off, having a public access area less than or equal to 300 square feet ( $28 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**[P] 2902.3.1 Access.** The route to the public toilet facilities required by Section 2902.3 shall not pass through kitchens, storage rooms or closets. Access to the required facilities shall be from within the building or from the exterior of the building. The public shall have access to the

required toilet facilities at all times that the building is occupied.

**[P] 2902.3.2 Prohibited toilet room location.** Toilet rooms shall not open directly into a room used for the preparation of food for service to the public.

**[P] 2902.3.3 Location of toilet facilities in occupancies other than malls.** In occupancies other than covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 500 feet (152 m).

**Exceptions:**

1. The location and maximum distances of travel to required employee facilities in factory and industrial *occupancies* shall be permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum distances of travel are approved.
2. The location and maximum distances of travel to required public and employee facilities in Group S occupancies shall be permitted to exceed that required by this section, provided that the location and maximum distances of travel are approved.

**[P] 2902.3.4 Location of toilet facilities in malls.** In covered and open mall buildings, the required public and employee toilet facilities shall be located not more than one story above or below the space required to be provided with toilet facilities, and the path of travel to such facilities shall not exceed a distance of 300 feet (91 m). In mall buildings, the required facilities shall be based on total square footage ( $\text{m}^2$ ) within a covered mall building or within the perimeter line of an open mall building, and facilities shall be installed in each individual store or in a central toilet area located in accordance with this section. The maximum distance of travel to central toilet facilities in mall buildings shall be measured from the main entrance of any store or tenant space. In mall buildings, where employees' toilet facilities are not provided in the individual store, the maximum distance of travel shall be measured from the employees' work area of the store or tenant space.

**[P] 2902.3.5 Pay facilities.** Where pay facilities are installed, such facilities shall be in excess of the required minimum facilities. Required facilities shall be free of charge.

**[P] 2902.3.6 Door locking.** Where a toilet room is provided for the use of multiple occupants, the egress door for the room shall not be lockable from the inside of the room. This section does not apply to family or assisted-use toilet rooms.

**[P] 2902.4 Signage.** Required public facilities shall be provided with signs that designate the sex as required by Section 2902.2. Signs shall be readily visible and located near the entrance to each toilet facility. Signs for accessible toilet facilities shall comply with Section 1112.

## PLUMBING SYSTEMS

**[P] 2902.4.1 Directional signage.** Directional signage indicating the route to the required public toilet facilities shall be posted in a lobby, corridor, aisle or similar space, such that the sign can be readily seen from the main entrance to the building or tenant space.

**[P] 2902.5 Drinking fountain location.** Drinking fountains shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces provided that public drinking fountains are located within a distance of travel of 500 feet (152 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Where the tenant space is in a covered or open mall, such distance shall not exceed 300 feet (91 m).

**[P] 2902.6 Small occupancies.** Drinking fountains shall not be required for an occupant load of 15 or fewer.

**[P] 2902.7 Service sink location.** Service sinks shall not be required to be located in individual tenant spaces in a covered mall provided that service sinks are located within a distance of travel of 300 feet (91 m) of the most remote location in the tenant space and not more than one story above or below the tenant space. Service sinks shall be located on an accessible route.

## [P] SECTION 2903 INSTALLATION OF FIXTURES

**[P] 2903.1 Setting.** Fixtures shall be set level and in proper alignment with reference to adjacent walls.

**[P] 2903.1.1 Water closets, urinals, lavatories and bidets.** A water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet shall not be set closer than 15 inches (381 mm) from its center to any side wall, partition, vanity or other obstruction. Where partitions or other obstructions do not separate adjacent fixtures, fixtures shall not be set closer than 30 inches (762 mm) center to center between adjacent fixtures. There shall be not less than a 21-inch (533 mm) clearance in front of a water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet to any wall, fixture or door. Water closet compartments shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width and not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) in depth for floor-mounted water closets and not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width and 56 inches (1422 mm) in depth for wall-hung water closets.

**Exception:** An accessible children's water closet shall be set not closer than 12 inches (305 mm) from its center to the required partition or to the wall on one side.

**[P] 2903.1.2 Public lavatories.** In employee and public toilet rooms, the required lavatory shall be located in the same room as the required water closet.

**[P] 2903.1.3 Location of fixtures and piping.** Piping, fixtures or equipment shall not be located in such a manner as to interfere with the normal operation of windows, doors or other means of egress openings.

**[P] 2903.1.4 Water closet compartment.** Each water closet utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate compartment with walls or partitions and a door enclosing the fixtures to ensure privacy.

### Exceptions:

1. Water closet compartments shall not be required in a single-occupant toilet room with a lockable door.
2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more water closets shall be permitted to have one water closet without an enclosing compartment.
3. This provision is not applicable to toilet areas located within Group I-3 housing areas.

**[P] 2903.1.5 Urinal partitions.** Each urinal utilized by the public or employees shall occupy a separate area with walls or partitions to provide privacy. The horizontal dimension between walls or partitions at each urinal shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm). The walls or partitions shall begin at a height not greater than 12 inches (305 mm) from and extend not less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the finished floor surface. The walls or partitions shall extend from the wall surface at each side of the urinal not less than 18 inches (457 mm) or to a point not less than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the outermost front lip of the urinal measured from the finished backwall surface, whichever is greater.

### Exceptions:

1. Urinal partitions shall not be required in a single-occupant or family/assisted-use toilet room with a lockable door.
2. Toilet rooms located in child day care facilities and containing two or more urinals shall be permitted to have one urinal without partitions.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 30 – ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X							X	X		X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X							X												
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X	X															
Chapter / Section																						
3001.3				X																		
3001.4					X		X	X														
3001.5				X																		
3001.6				X																		
3002.4a – 3002.4.6a				X																		
3002.5				X																		
3002.6.1				X																		
3002.9				X																		
3002.10 – 3002.11				X																		
3003.1				X																		
3003.1.5				X																		
3003.2				X																		
3003.2.1.2				X																		
3003.4 – 3003.4.4				X																		
3005.1 – 3005.2				X																		
3005.4.1				X																		
3006.2				X																		
3006.3				X																		
3007.1				X																		
3007.6.1				X																		
3008.1				X																		
3008.2.1				X																		
3008.7.1				X																		
3009														X								

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



## CHAPTER 30

# ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 30 contains the provisions that regulate vertical and horizontal transportation and material-handling systems installed in buildings. This chapter also provides several elements that protect occupants and assist emergency responders during fires.

### SECTION 3001 GENERAL

**3001.1 Scope.** This chapter governs the design, construction, installation, alteration and repair of elevators and conveying systems and their components.

**3001.2 Emergency elevator communication systems for the deaf, hard of hearing and speech impaired.** An emergency two-way communication system shall be provided. The system shall provide visible text and audible modes that meet all of the following requirements:

1. When operating in each mode, include a live interactive system that allows back and forth conversation between the elevator occupants and emergency personnel.
2. Is operational when the elevator is operational.
3. Allows elevator occupants to select the text-based or audible mode depending on their communication needs to interact with emergency personnel.

**3001.3 Referenced standards.** Except as otherwise provided for in this code, the design, construction, installation, alteration, repair and maintenance of elevators and conveying systems and their components shall conform to *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*, and the applicable standard specified in Table 3001.3 and ASCE 24 for construction in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3.

**TABLE 3001.3**

**ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS AND COMPONENTS**

TYPE	STANDARD
Automotive lifts	ALI ALCTV
Belt manlifts	ASME A90.1
Conveyors and related equipment	ASME B20.1
Elevators, escalators, dumbwaiters, moving walks, material lifts	ASME A17.1/CSA B44, ASME A17.7/CSA B44.7
Industrial scissor lifts	ANSI MH29.1
Platform lifts, stairway chairlifts, wheelchair lifts	ASME A18.1

**3001.4 Accessibility.** Passenger elevators and platform (wheelchair) lifts required to be accessible or to serve as part of an accessible means of egress shall comply with Sections

1009 and either *Chapter 11A for applications listed in Section 1.8.2.1.2 regulated by the Department of Housing and Community Development* or *Chapter 11B for applications listed in Section 1.9.1 regulated by the Division of the State Architect—Access Compliance*.

**3001.5 Change in use.** A change in use of an elevator from freight to passenger, passenger to freight, or from one freight class to another freight class shall comply with *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*.

**3001.6 Elevators utilized to transport hazardous materials.** Elevators utilized to transport hazardous materials shall also comply with the *California Fire Code Sections 5003.10.2.2, 5003.10.4 through 5003.10.7*.

### SECTION 3002 HOISTWAY ENCLOSURES

**3002.1 Hoistway enclosure protection.** Elevator, dumbwaiter and other hoistway enclosures shall be shaft enclosures complying with Sections 712 and 713.

**3002.1.1 Opening protectives.** Openings in hoistway enclosures shall be protected as required in Chapter 7.

**Exception:** The elevator car doors and the associated hoistway enclosure doors at the floor level designated for recall in accordance with Section 3003.2 shall be permitted to remain open during Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.

**3002.1.2 Hardware.** Hardware on opening protectives shall be of an approved type installed as tested, except that approved interlocks, mechanical locks and electric contacts, door and gate electric contacts and door-operating mechanisms shall be exempt from the fire test requirements.

**3002.2 Number of elevator cars in a hoistway.** Where four or more elevator cars serve all or the same portion of a building, the elevators shall be located in not fewer than two separate hoistways. Not more than four elevator cars shall be located in any single hoistway enclosure.

**3002.3 Emergency signs.** An approved pictorial sign of a standardized design shall be posted adjacent to each elevator call station on all floors instructing occupants to use the exit stairways and not to use the elevators in case of fire. The sign

## ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

shall read: IN CASE OF FIRE, ELEVATORS ARE OUT OF SERVICE. USE EXIT STAIRS.

### **Exceptions:**

1. The emergency sign shall not be required for elevators that are part of an accessible means of egress complying with Section 1009.4.
2. The emergency sign shall not be required for elevators that are used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with Section 3008.

**3002.4 Elevator car to accommodate ambulance stretcher.** Where elevators are provided in buildings four or more stories above, or four or more stories below, grade plane, not fewer than one elevator shall be provided for fire department emergency access to all floors. The elevator car shall be of such a size and arrangement to accommodate an ambulance stretcher 24 inches by 84 inches (610 mm by 2134 mm) with not less than 5-inch (127 mm) radius corners, in the horizontal, open position and shall be identified by the international symbol for emergency medical services (star of life). The symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height and shall be placed inside on both sides of the hoistway door frame.

*The following California sections replace the corresponding model code section for applications specified in section 1.11 for the Office of the State Fire Marshal.*

**3002.4a General stretcher requirements.** All buildings and structures with one or more passenger service elevators shall be provided with not less than one medical emergency service elevator to all landings meeting the provisions of Section 3002.4a. The medical emergency service elevator(s) shall be identified in the construction documents specified in Section 107 or the California Administrative Code.

### **Exceptions:**

1. Elevators in structures used only by maintenance and operating personnel.
2. Elevators in jails and penal institutions.
3. Elevators in buildings or structures where each landing is at ground level or is accessible at grade level or by a ramp.
4. Elevator(s) in two-story buildings or structures equipped with stairs of a configuration that will accommodate the carrying of the gurney or stretcher as permitted by the local jurisdictional authority.
5. Elevators in buildings or structures less than four stories in height for which the local jurisdictional authority has granted an exception in the form of a written document.

**3002.4.1a Gurney size.** The medical emergency service elevator shall accommodate the loading and transport of two emergency personnel, each requiring a minimum clear 21-inch (533 mm) diameter circular area and an ambulance gurney or stretcher [minimum size 24 inches by 84 inches (610 mm by 2134 mm) with not less than 5-

inch (127 mm) radius corners] in the horizontal, open position.

**3002.4.2a Hoistway doors.** The hoistway landing openings shall be provided with power-operated doors.

**3002.4.3a Elevator recall.** The elevator(s) designated the medical emergency elevator shall be equipped with a key switch to recall the elevator nonstop to the main floor. For the purpose of this section, elevators in compliance with Section 3003.2 shall be acceptable.

**3002.4.4a Designation.** Medical emergency elevators shall be identified by the international symbol (Star of Life) for emergency medical services.

**3002.4.5a Symbol size.** The symbol shall not be less than 3 inches (76 mm) in size.

**3002.4.6a Symbol location.** A symbol shall be permanently attached to each side of the hoistway door frame on the portion of the frame at right angles to the hallway or landing area. Each symbol shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm) and not more than 84 inches (2134 mm) above the floor level at the threshold.

**3002.5 Emergency doors.** Where an elevator is installed in a single blind hoistway or on the outside of a building, emergency doors shall be in conformance with the California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders.

**3002.6 Prohibited doors.** Doors, other than hoistway doors and the elevator car door, shall be prohibited at the point of access to an elevator car unless such doors are readily openable from the car side without a key, tool, special knowledge or effort.

**3002.6.1 Prohibited hoistway access doors and panels.** The following types of access doors and panels are prohibited in accordance with the California Code Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders:

1. Access panels or doors to working platforms in the line of movement of the car counterweight in the hoistway.
2. Access panels or doors in the hoistway for access to car or hoistway transparent enclosures.

**3002.7 Common enclosure with stairway.** Elevators shall not be in a common shaft enclosure with a stairway.

**Exception:** Elevators within open parking garages need not be separated from stairway enclosures.

**3002.8 Glass in elevator enclosures.** Glass in elevator enclosures shall comply with Section 2409.2.

**3002.9 Plumbing and mechanical systems.** Plumbing and mechanical systems shall not be located in an elevator hoistway enclosure unless permitted by California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders.

**Exception:** Floor drains and sumps shall be permitted at the base of the hoistway enclosure provided that they are indirectly connected to the plumbing system.



**3002.10 Photoelectric tube bypass switch.**

**3002.10.1** Elevators equipped with photoelectric tube devices which control the closing of automatic, power-operated car or hoistway doors, or both, shall have a switch in the car which, when actuated, will render the photoelectric tube device ineffective.

**3002.10.2** The switch shall be constant-pressure type, requiring not less than 10 pounds (44.5N) or more than 15 pounds (66.7 N) pressure to actuate.

**3002.10.3** The switch shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) or more than 6 feet 6 inches (1981 mm) above the car floor and shall be located in or adjacent to the operating panel.

**3002.10.4** The switch shall be clearly labeled TO BE USED IN CASE OF FIRE ONLY.

**3002.10.5** Switches shall be kept in working order or be removed when existing installations are arranged to comply with Section 3002.10.5, Exception 1 or 2.

**Exceptions:**

1. Elevators installed and maintained in compliance with Section 3003.
2. Where alternate means acceptable to the fire authority having jurisdiction are provided that will ensure the doors can close under adverse smoke conditions.

**3002.11 Pit access door.** Where separate pit access door(s) are required for access to pit(s) located below the bottom hoistway door landing, permanent stairway access shall be provided to the access door.

## SECTION 3003 EMERGENCY OPERATIONS

**[F] 3003.1 Standby power.** In buildings and structures where standby power is required or furnished to operate an elevator, the operation shall be in accordance with Section 1203 of the California Fire Code and Sections 3003.1.1 through 3003.1.5 of this code.

**[F] 3003.1.1 Manual transfer.** Standby power shall be manually transferable to all elevators in each bank.

**[F] 3003.1.2 One elevator.** Where only one elevator is installed, the elevator shall automatically transfer to standby power within 60 seconds after failure of normal power.

**[F] 3003.1.3 Two or more elevators.** Where two or more elevators are controlled by a common operating system, all elevators shall automatically transfer to standby power within 60 seconds after failure of normal power where the standby power source is of sufficient capacity to operate all elevators at the same time. Where the standby power source is not of sufficient capacity to operate all elevators at the same time, all elevators shall transfer to standby power in sequence, return to the designated landing and disconnect from the standby power source. After all elevators have been returned to the designated level, not less

than one elevator shall remain operable from the standby power source.

**[F] 3003.1.4 Temperature and humidity control.** Where standby power is connected to elevators, the machine room machine space, control room and control space ventilation or air conditioning system shall be connected to the standby power source.

**3003.1.5 Emergency hoistway venting.** Where standby power is connected to elevators, the emergency hoistway ventilation system, if required, shall be connected to the standby power source.

**[F] 3003.2 Fire fighters' emergency operation.** Elevators shall be provided with Phase I emergency recall operation and Phase II emergency in-car operation in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders.

**3003.2.1 Floor numbers.** Elevator hoistways shall have a floor number not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height, placed on the walls and/or doors of the hoistway at intervals such that a person in a stalled elevator, upon opening the car door, can determine the floor position.

**3003.2.1.1 Fire signs.** All automatic elevators shall have not less than one sign at each landing printed on a contrasting background in letters not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) high to read: IN CASE OF FIRE USE STAIRWAY FOR EXIT. DO NOT USE ELEVATOR.

**3003.2.1.2 Call and car operation buttons.** Automatic passenger elevators shall have call and car operation buttons within 60 inches (1524 mm) of the floor. Emergency telephones shall also be within 60 inches (1524 mm) of the floor.

**[F] 3003.3 Standardized fire service elevator keys.** All elevators shall be equipped to operate with a standardized fire service elevator key in accordance with the California Fire Code.

**3003.4 Emergency hoistway venting.** Elevator hoistways containing the driving machine shall be provided with a means for venting smoke and hot gases to the outer air in case of fire.

**3003.4.1 Location of vents.** Vents shall be located at the top of the hoistway and shall open either directly to the outer air or through noncombustible ducts to the outer air.

**3003.4.2 Area of vents.** Except as provided for in Section 3003.1.4.4, the area of the vents shall be not less than  $3\frac{1}{2}$  percent of the area of the hoistway nor less than 3 square feet ( $0.28 m^2$ ) for each elevator car.

**3003.4.3 Operation of vents.** Vent openings shall automatically open upon detection of smoke in the elevator hoistway and upon activation of a manual override control. The manual override control shall be capable of opening and closing the vents and shall be located in an approved location. Smoke detectors provided in elevator hoistways to activate the hoistway ventilation system, shall also be required to activate the elevator Phase I emergency recall operation function in accordance with Cali-

## ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

*fornia Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders.*

**3003.4.4 Reduced vent area.** Where mechanical ventilation conforming to the California Mechanical Code is provided, a reduction in the required vent area is allowed provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The vents required by Section 3003.1.4.1 of the California Building Code do not have outside exposure.
2. The hoistway does not extend to the top of the building.
3. The hoistway exhaust fan is automatically reactivated by thermostatic means.
4. Equivalent venting of the hoistway is accomplished.

## SECTION 3004 CONVEYING SYSTEMS

**3004.1 General.** Escalators, moving walks, conveyors, personnel hoists and material hoists shall comply with the provisions of Sections 3004.2 through 3004.4.

**3004.2 Escalators and moving walks.** Escalators and moving walks shall be constructed of approved noncombustible and fire-retardant materials. This requirement shall not apply to electrical equipment, wiring, wheels, handrails and the use of  $\frac{1}{28}$ -inch (0.9 mm) wood veneers on balustrades backed up with noncombustible materials.

**3004.2.1 Enclosure.** Escalator floor openings shall be enclosed with shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

**3004.2.2 Escalators.** Where provided in below-grade transportation stations, escalators shall have a clear width of not less than 32 inches (815 mm).

**3004.3 Conveyors.** Conveyors and conveying systems shall comply with ASME B20.1.

**3004.3.1 Enclosure.** Conveyors and related equipment connecting successive floors or levels shall be enclosed with shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

**3004.3.2 Conveyor safeties.** Power-operated conveyors, belts and other material-moving devices shall be equipped with automatic limit switches that will shut off the power in an emergency and automatically stop all operation of the device.

**3004.4 Personnel and material hoists.** Personnel and material hoists shall be designed utilizing an approved method that accounts for the conditions imposed during the intended operation of the hoist device. The design shall include, but is not limited to, anticipated loads, structural stability, impact, vibration, stresses and seismic restraint. The design shall account for the construction, installation, operation and inspection of the hoist tower, car, machinery and control equipment, guide members and hoisting mechanism. Additionally, the design of personnel hoists shall include provisions for field testing and maintenance that will demonstrate that the hoist device functions in accordance with the design. Field tests shall be conducted upon the completion of an installation or following a major alteration of a personnel hoist.

## SECTION 3005 MACHINE ROOMS

**3005.1 Access.** A permanent and approved means of access shall be provided to elevator machine rooms, control rooms, control spaces and machinery spaces.

**3005.2 Temperature and humidity control.** Elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces that contain the driving machine, and control rooms or spaces that contain the operation or motion controller for elevator operation shall be provided with an independent ventilation or air-conditioning system to protect against the overheating of the electrical equipment. The system shall maintain the temperature and humidity within the range established by the manufacturer of the elevator equipment.

**3005.3 Pressurization.** The elevator machine room, control rooms or control space with openings into a pressurized elevator hoistway shall be pressurized upon activation of a heat or smoke detector located in the elevator machine room, control room or control space.

**3005.4 Machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces, and control spaces.** The following rooms and spaces shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both:

1. Machine rooms
2. Control rooms
3. Control spaces
4. Machinery spaces outside of the hoistway enclosure

The fire-resistance rating shall be not less than the required rating of the hoistway enclosure served by the machinery. Openings in the fire barriers shall be protected with assemblies having a fire protection rating not less than that required for the hoistway enclosure doors.

### Exceptions:

1. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, where machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and do not have openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both, shall be permitted to be reduced to a 1-hour fire-resistance rating.
2. For other than fire service access elevators and occupant evacuation elevators, in buildings four stories or less above grade plane where machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces do not abut and do not have openings to the hoistway enclosure they serve, the machine room, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces are not required to be fire-resistance rated.

**3005.4.1 Automatic sprinkler system.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be required to be installed in the elevator hoistway, elevator machine room, elevator machinery

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

*space, elevator control space or elevator control room where all the following are met:*

1. *The requirements of NFPA 13, Section 8.15.5.3.*
2. *The elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space or elevator control room shall be enclosed with fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. The fire-resistance rating shall not be less than the required rating of the hoistway enclosure served by the machinery. Openings in the fire barriers shall be protected with assemblies having a fire protection rating not less than that required for the hoistway enclosure doors. The exceptions to Section 3005.4 shall not apply.*

**3005.5 Shunt trip.** Where elevator hoistways, elevator machine rooms, control rooms and control spaces containing elevator control equipment are protected with automatic sprinklers, a means installed in accordance with Section 21.4 of NFPA 72 shall be provided to automatically disconnect the main line power supply to the affected elevator prior to the application of water. This means shall not be self-resetting. The activation of automatic sprinklers outside the hoistway, machine room, machinery space, control room or control space shall not disconnect the main line power supply.

**3005.6 Plumbing systems.** Plumbing systems shall not be located in elevator equipment rooms.

## SECTION 3006 ELEVATOR LOBBIES AND HOISTWAY OPENING PROTECTION

**3006.1 General.** Elevator hoistway openings and enclosed elevator lobbies shall be provided in accordance with the following:

1. Where hoistway opening protection is required by Section 3006.2, such protection shall be in accordance with Section 3006.3.
2. Where enclosed elevator lobbies are required for underground buildings, such lobbies shall comply with Section 405.4.3.
3. Where an area of refuge is required and an enclosed elevator lobby is provided to serve as an area of refuge, the enclosed elevator lobby shall comply with Section 1009.6.
4. Where fire service access elevators are provided, enclosed elevator lobbies shall comply with Section 3007.6.
5. Where occupant evacuation elevators are provided, enclosed elevator lobbies shall comply with Section 3008.6.

**3006.2 Hoistway opening protection required.** Elevator hoistway door openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 3006.3 where an elevator hoistway connects more than two stories in Group A, E, H, I, L, R-1, R-2, R-2.1 and R-2.2 occupancies, high-rise buildings and other applications

*listed in Section 1.11 regulated by the Office of the State Fire Marshal, and more than three stories for all other occupancies. Hoistway opening protection is required to be enclosed within a shaft enclosure in accordance with Section 712.1.1 and any of the following conditions apply:*

1. *The building is not protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2.*
2. *Group A occupancies.*
3. *Group E occupancies.*
4. *Group H occupancies.*
5. *Group I occupancies.*
6. *Group L occupancies.*
7. *Group R-1, R-2, R-2.1 and R-2.2 occupancies.*
8. *High-rise buildings.*

*See Section 403.6 for additional requirements for high-rise buildings.*

### Exceptions:

1. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required where the elevator serves only open parking garages in accordance with Section 406.5.
2. Protection of elevator hoistway door openings is not required at the level(s) of exit discharge, provided that the level(s) of exit discharge is equipped with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. Enclosed elevator lobbies and protection of elevator hoistway door openings are not required on levels where the elevator hoistway opens to the exterior.

**3006.2.1 Rated corridors.** Where corridors are required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 1020.2, elevator hoistway openings shall be protected in accordance with Section 3006.3.

**3006.3 Hoistway opening protection.** Where Section 3006.2 requires protection of the elevator hoistway door opening, the protection shall be provided by one of the following:

1. An enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided at each floor to separate the elevator hoistway shaft enclosure doors from each floor by fire partitions in accordance with Section 708. In addition, doors protecting openings in the elevator lobby enclosure walls shall comply with Section 716.2.2.1 as required for corridor walls. Penetrations of the enclosed elevator lobby by ducts and air transfer openings shall be protected as required for corridors in accordance with Section 717.5.4.1.
2. An enclosed elevator lobby shall be provided at each floor to separate the elevator hoistway shaft enclosure doors from each floor by smoke partitions in accordance with Section 710 where the building is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2. In addition, doors protecting openings in the smoke partitions shall comply with Sections 710.5.2.2, 710.5.2.3 and 716.2.6.1. Penetrations of the enclosed elevator lobby by ducts and air transfer openings shall be pro-

## ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

tected as required for corridors in accordance with Section 717.5.4.1.

3. Additional doors shall be provided at each elevator hoistway door opening in accordance with Section 3002.6. Such door shall comply with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements in Section 716.2.2.1.1 when tested in accordance with UL 1784 without an artificial bottom seal.
4. *[SFM] When approved, in other than Group I-2 occupancies* elevator hoistway shall be pressurized in accordance with Section 909.21.
5. *[SFM] Enclosed elevator lobbies are not required where the hoistway door has a fire-protection rating as required by Section 708.6 and the hoistway door opening is also protected by a listed and labeled smoke containment system complying with ICC ES AC 77.*

**3006.4 Means of egress.** Elevator lobbies shall be provided with not less than one means of egress complying with Chapter 10 and other provisions in this code. Egress through an enclosed elevator lobby shall be permitted in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

## SECTION 3007

### FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATOR

**3007.1 General.** Where required by Section 403.6.1, every floor shall be served by fire service access elevators complying with Sections 3007.1 through 3007.9. Except as modified in this section, fire service access elevators shall be installed in accordance with this chapter and *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*.

**Exceptions:**

1. *Below grade parking garage floors* shall not be required to be served by fire service access elevators.
2. The elevator shall not be required to serve the top floor of a building where that floor is utilized only for equipment for building systems.

**3007.2 Automatic sprinkler system.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3007.2.1.

**3007.2.1 Prohibited locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways of fire service access elevators.

**3007.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.** The sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve supervisory switch and water-flow-initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building's fire alarm system.

**3007.3 Water protection.** Water from the operation of an automatic sprinkler system outside the enclosed lobby shall be prevented from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure in accordance with an approved method.

**3007.4 Shunt trip.** Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed on elevator systems used for fire service access elevators.

**3007.5 Hoistway enclosures.** The fire service access elevator hoistway shall be located in a shaft enclosure complying with Section 713.

**3007.5.1 Structural integrity of hoistway enclosures.**

The fire service access elevator hoistway enclosure shall comply with Sections 403.2.2.1 through 403.2.2.4.

**3007.5.2 Hoistway lighting.** When fire-fighters' emergency operation is active, the entire height of the hoistway shall be illuminated at not less than 1 footcandle (11 lux) as measured from the top of the car of each fire service access elevator.

**3007.6 Fire service access elevator lobby.** The fire service access elevator shall open into an enclosed fire service access elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3007.6.1 through 3007.6.5. Egress is permitted through the enclosed elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

**Exception:** Where a fire service access elevator has two entrances onto a floor, the second entrance shall be permitted to be protected in accordance with Section 3006.3.

**3007.6.1 Access to smokeproof enclosure.** The enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to a *smokeproof enclosure* complying with Section 909.20.

**Exception:** Access to a *smokeproof enclosure* shall be permitted to be through a protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance Section 716.2.2.1.

**3007.6.2 Lobby enclosure.** The fire service access elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a smoke barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby doorways shall comply with Section 3007.6.3.

**Exception:** Enclosed fire service access elevator lobbies are not required at the levels of exit discharge.

**3007.6.3 Lobby doorways.** Other than doors to the hoistway, elevator control room or elevator control space, each doorway to an enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be provided with a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour fire door assembly complying with Section 716. The fire door assembly shall comply with the smoke and draft control door assembly requirements of Section 716.2.2.1.1 and be tested in accordance with UL 1784 without an artificial bottom seal.

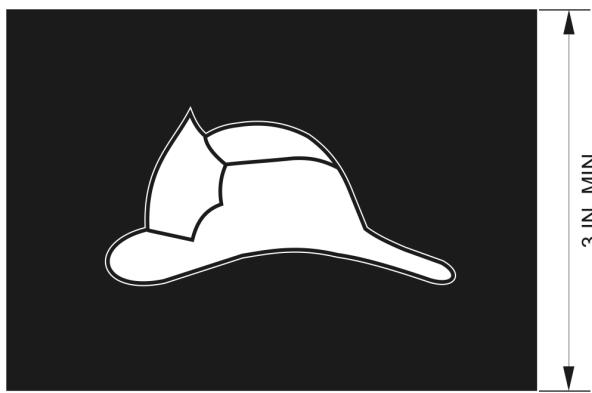
**3007.6.4 Lobby size.** Regardless of the number of fire service access elevators served by the same elevator lobby, the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby shall be not less than 150 square feet ( $14 \text{ m}^2$ ) in an area with a dimension of not less than 8 feet (2440 mm).

**3007.6.5 Fire service access elevator symbol.** A pictorial symbol of a standardized design designating which elevators are fire service access elevators shall be installed on each side of the hoistway door frame on the portion of the

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

frame at right angles to the fire service access elevator lobby. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be designed as shown in Figure 3007.6.5 and shall comply with the following:

1. The fire service access elevator symbol shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height.
2. The helmet shall contrast with the background, with either a light helmet on a dark background or a dark helmet on a light background.
3. The vertical center line of the fire service access elevator symbol shall be centered on the hoistway door frame. Each symbol shall be not less than 78 inches (1981 mm), and not more than 84 inches (2134 mm) above the finished floor at the threshold.



For S.I. 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

**FIGURE 3007.6.5  
FIRE SERVICE ACCESS ELEVATOR SYMBOL**

**3007.7 Elevator system monitoring.** The fire service access elevator shall be continuously monitored at the fire command center by a standard emergency service interface system meeting the requirements of NFPA 72.

**3007.8 Electrical power.** The following features serving each fire service access elevator shall be supplied by both normal power and Type 60/Class 2/Level 1 standby power:

1. Elevator equipment.
2. Elevator hoistway lighting.
3. Ventilation and cooling equipment for elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machine spaces and control spaces.
4. Elevator car lighting.

**3007.8.1 Protection of wiring or cables.** Wires or cables that are located outside of the elevator hoistway and machine room and that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, ventilation and fire-detecting systems to fire service access elevators shall be protected using one of the following methods:

1. Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196 and

shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

2. Electrical circuit protective systems shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.
3. Construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

**Exception:** Wiring and cables to control signals are not required to be protected provided that wiring and cables do not serve Phase II emergency in-car operations.

**3007.9 Standpipe hose connection.** A Class I standpipe hose connection in accordance with Section 905 shall be provided in the interior exit stairway and ramp having direct access from the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby.

**3007.9.1 Access.** The exit enclosure containing the standpipe shall have access to the floor without passing through the enclosed fire service access elevator lobby.

## SECTION 3008 OCCUPANT EVACUATION ELEVATORS

**3008.1 General.** Where elevators are to be used for occupant self-evacuation during fires, all passenger elevators for general public use shall comply with Sections 3008.1 through 3008.10. Where other elevators are used for occupant self-evacuation, those elevators shall comply with these sections.

### 3008.1.1 Reserved.

**3008.1.2 Additional exit stairway.** Where an additional means of egress is required in accordance with Section 403.5.2, an additional exit stairway shall not be required to be installed in buildings provided with occupant evacuation elevators complying with Section 3008.1.

**3008.1.3 Fire safety and evacuation plan.** The building shall have an approved fire safety and evacuation plan in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 404 of the *California Fire Code*. The fire safety and evacuation plan shall incorporate specific procedures for the occupants using evacuation elevators.

**3008.1.4 Operation.** The occupant evacuation elevators shall be used for occupant self-evacuation in accordance with the occupant evacuation operation requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and the building's fire safety and evacuation plan.

**3008.2 Automatic sprinkler system.** The building shall be equipped throughout with an approved, electrically supervised automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, except as otherwise permitted by Section 903.3.1.1.1 and as prohibited by Section 3008.2.1.

**3008.2.1 Prohibited locations.** Automatic sprinklers shall not be installed in elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces and elevator hoistways of occupant evacuation elevators *in accordance with this section and Section 3005.4.1*.

**3008.2.2 Sprinkler system monitoring.** The automatic sprinkler system shall have a sprinkler control valve super-

## ELEVATORS AND CONVEYING SYSTEMS

visory switch and water-flow-initiating device provided for each floor that is monitored by the building's fire alarm system.

**3008.3 Water protection.** Water from the operation of an automatic sprinkler system outside the enclosed lobby shall be prevented from infiltrating into the hoistway enclosure in accordance with an approved method.

**3008.4 Shunt trip.** Means for elevator shutdown in accordance with Section 3005.5 shall not be installed on elevator systems used for occupant evacuation elevators.

**3008.5 Hoistway enclosure protection.** Occupant evacuation elevator hoistways shall be located in shaft enclosures complying with Section 713.

**3008.5.1 Structural integrity of hoistway enclosures.** Occupant evacuation elevator hoistway enclosures shall comply with Sections 403.2.2.1 through 403.2.2.4.

**3008.6 Occupant evacuation elevator lobby.** Occupant evacuation elevators shall open into an enclosed elevator lobby in accordance with Sections 3008.6.1 through 3008.6.6. Egress is permitted through the elevator lobby in accordance with Item 1 of Section 1016.2.

**3008.6.1 Access to interior exit stairway or ramp.** The occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall have direct access from the enclosed elevator lobby to an interior exit stairway or ramp.

### Exceptions:

1. Access to an interior exit stairway or ramp shall be permitted to be through a protected path of travel that has a level of fire protection not less than the elevator lobby enclosure. The protected path shall be separated from the enclosed elevator lobby through an opening protected by a smoke and draft control assembly in accordance Section 716.2.2.1.
2. Elevators that only service an open parking garage and the lobby of the building shall not be required to provide direct access.

**3008.6.2 Lobby enclosure.** The occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be enclosed with a smoke barrier having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, except that lobby doorways shall comply with Section 3008.6.3.

**Exception:** Enclosed occupant evacuation elevator lobbies are not required at the levels of exit discharge.

**3008.6.3 Lobby doorways.** Other than the doors to the hoistway, elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms and control spaces within the lobby enclosure smoke barrier, each doorway to an occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall be provided with a  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour fire door assembly complying with Section 716. The fire door assembly shall comply with the smoke and draft control assembly requirements of Section 716.2.2.1.1 and be tested in accordance with UL 1784 without an artificial bottom seal.

**3008.6.3.1 Vision panel.** A vision panel shall be installed in each fire door assembly protecting the lobby doorway. The vision panel shall consist of fire-protection-rated glazing, shall comply with the requirements of Section 716 and shall be located to furnish clear vision of the occupant evacuation elevator lobby.

**3008.6.3.2 Door closing.** Each fire door assembly protecting the lobby doorway shall be automatic-closing upon receipt of any fire alarm signal from the emergency voice/alarm communication system serving the building.

**3008.6.4 Lobby size.** Each occupant evacuation elevator lobby shall have minimum floor area as follows:

1. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby floor area shall accommodate, at 3 square feet ( $0.28 \text{ m}^2$ ) per person, not less than 25 percent of the occupant load of the floor area served by the lobby.
2. The occupant evacuation elevator lobby floor area shall accommodate one wheelchair space of 30 inches by 52 inches (760 mm by 1320 mm) for each 50 persons, or portion thereof, of the occupant load of the floor area served by the lobby.

**Exception:** The size of lobbies serving multiple banks of elevators shall have the minimum floor area approved on an individual basis and shall be consistent with the building's fire safety and evacuation plan.

**3008.6.5 Signage.** An approved sign indicating elevators are suitable for occupant self-evacuation shall be posted on all floors adjacent to each elevator call station serving occupant evacuation elevators.

**3008.6.6 Two-way communication system.** A two-way communication system shall be provided in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby for the purpose of initiating communication with the fire command center or an alternate location approved by the fire department. The two-way communication system shall be designed and installed in accordance with Sections 1009.8.1 and 1009.8.2.

**3008.7 Elevator system monitoring.** The occupant evacuation elevators shall be continuously monitored at the fire command center or a central control point approved by the fire department and arranged to display all of the following information:

1. Floor location of each elevator car.
2. Direction of travel of each elevator car.
3. Status of each elevator car with respect to whether it is occupied.
4. Status of normal power to the elevator equipment, elevator machinery and electrical apparatus cooling equipment where provided, elevator machine room, control room and control space ventilation and cooling equipment.
5. Status of standby or emergency power system that provides backup power to the elevator equipment, elevator machinery and electrical cooling equipment where pro-

- vided, elevator machine room, control room and control space ventilation and cooling equipment.
6. Activation of any fire alarm initiating device in any elevator lobby, elevator machine room, machine space containing a motor controller or electric driving machine, control space, control room or elevator hoistway.
- 3008.7.1 Elevator recall.** The fire command center or an alternate location approved by the fire department shall be provided with the means to manually initiate a Phase I Emergency Recall of the occupant evacuation elevators in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*.
- 3008.8 Electrical power.** The following features serving each occupant evacuation elevator shall be supplied by both normal power and Type 60/Class 2/Level 1 standby power:
1. Elevator equipment.
  2. Ventilation and cooling equipment for elevator machine rooms, control rooms, machinery spaces and control spaces.
  3. Elevator car lighting.
- 3008.8.1 Determination of standby power load.** Standby power loads shall be based on the determination of the number of occupant evacuation elevators in Section 3008.1.1.
- 3008.8.2 Protection of wiring or cables.** Wires or cables that are located outside of the elevator hoistway, machine room, control room and control space and that provide normal or standby power, control signals, communication with the car, lighting, heating, air conditioning, ventilation and fire-detecting systems to occupant evacuation elevators shall be protected using one of the following methods:
1. Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196 and shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
  2. Electrical circuit protective systems shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.
  3. Construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.
- Exception:** Wiring and cables to control signals are not required to be protected provided that wiring and cables do not serve Phase II emergency in-car operation.
- 3008.9 Emergency voice/alarm communication system.** The building shall be provided with an emergency voice/alarm communication system. The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be accessible to the fire department. The system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.
- 3008.9.1 Notification appliances.** Not fewer than one audible and one visible notification appliance shall be installed within each occupant evacuation elevator lobby.
- 3008.10 Hazardous material areas.** Building areas shall not contain hazardous materials exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area as addressed in Section 414.2.

## SECTION 3009 SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELEVATORS IN HOSPITALS

**3009.1 General. [OSHPD 1]** In hospital buildings, all elevators shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**3009.1.1 Seismic switch.** The seismic switch, as required by ASME A17.1, shall be connected to the essential electrical system.

**3009.1.2 Annunciator.** Either a visible or an audible annunciator shall be connected to the essential electrical system and be located in the elevator machine room. The annunciator will indicate if the seismic switch is inoperative due to a loss of power. If a visual annunciator is used, it shall be clearly visible in the room.

**3009.1.3 Travel speed.** After a seismic switch has been triggered, the elevator shall have the ability to operate at a "go slow" speed until the elevator can be inspected. "Go slow" speed is defined as a travel speed of not more than 150 feet per minute (45.72 meters per minute).

**3009.1.4 Cable-operated elevators.** For cable-operated elevators, an additional sensor switch shall be installed on the governor rope/sheave. The sensor shall prevent car movement when the governor tail sheave is dislodged from its normal position.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 31 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter										X	X	X	X	X	X							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X			X	X													
Adopt only those sections that are listed below	X		X			X	X															
Chapter / Section																						
3101					X																	
3102.1						X																
3102.3	X		X																			
3102.3.1						X																
3102.6.1.1	X		X																			
3103					X																	
3104					X																	
3104.2, <i>Exception 2</i>							X	X														
3105						X																
3106						X																
3109							†	†														
3109.1										X	X											
3109.2, <i>Note</i>	X																					
3110					X																	
3111					X																	
3111.1.1						X	X															
3111.1.1, <i>Exception</i>						X	X			X	X											
3111.3										X	X											
3111.3.5 - 3111.3.5.2					X																	
3111.3.6 - 3111.3.6.1					X																	
3112.2						X																
3112.3, <i>Exception</i>									X	X												
3113							†	†														
3113.1						X	X			X	X											
3113.1.1									X	X												
3113.2, <i>Exception</i>									X	X												
3113.3, <i>Exception</i>									X	X												
3113.4, <i>Exception</i>									X	X												
3115					X										†	†	†	†	†	†		
3115.1, <i>Exception</i>						X	X		X	X												
3115.6, <i>Exception</i>									X	X												
3115.8.2									X	X												
3115.8.4.1 – 3115.8.4.3									X	X												
3115.8.5									X	X												
3115.9									X	X												

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



# CHAPTER 31

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

---

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** Chapter 31 provides regulations for unique buildings and building elements. Those include buildings such as membrane structures, greenhouses and relocatable buildings. Special elements include pedestrian walkways and tunnels, awnings, canopies and marquees, vehicular gates, solar energy systems, public use restrooms in flood hazard areas, and intermodal shipping containers.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BS] will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

### SECTION 3101 GENERAL

**3101.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern special building construction including membrane structures, temporary structures, pedestrian walkways and tunnels, automatic vehicular gates, awnings and canopies, marquees, signs, towers, antennas, relocatable buildings, swimming pool enclosures and safety devices, solar energy systems, public use restroom buildings on publicly owned lands in flood hazard areas and intermodal shipping containers.

### SECTION 3102 MEMBRANE STRUCTURES

**3102.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 3102.1 through 3102.8 shall apply to air-supported, air-inflated, membrane-covered cable, membrane-covered frame and tensile membrane structures, collectively known as membrane structures, erected for a period of 180 days or longer. Those erected for a shorter period of time shall comply with the *California Fire Code*. Membrane structures covering water storage facilities, water clarifiers, water treatment plants, sewage treatment plants, greenhouses and similar facilities not used for human occupancy are required to meet only the requirements of Sections 3102.3.1 and 3102.7. Membrane structures erected on a building, balcony, deck or other structure for any period of time shall comply with this section.

**3102.2 Tensile membrane structures and air-supported structures.** Tensile membrane structures and air-supported structures, including permanent and temporary structures, shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 55. The provisions in Sections 3102.3 through 3102.6 shall apply.

**3102.3 Type of construction.** Noncombustible membrane structures shall be classified as Type IIB construction. Noncombustible frame or cable-supported structures covered by an approved membrane in accordance with Section 3102.3.1 shall be classified as Type IIB construction. Heavy timber frame-supported structures covered by an approved membrane in accordance with Section 3102.3.1 shall be clas-

sified as Type IV-HT construction. Other membrane structures shall be classified as Type V construction.

**Exception:** Plastic less than 30 feet (9144 mm) above any floor used in greenhouses, where occupancy by the general public is not authorized, and for aquaculture pond covers is not required to meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

**3102.3.1 Membrane and interior liner material.** Membranes and interior liners shall be either noncombustible as set forth in Section 703.3 *shall be flame resistant in accordance with the provisions set forth in CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8. Tops and sidewalls shall be made either from fabric that has been flame resistant treated with an approved exterior chemical process by an approved application concern, or from inherently flame resistant fabric approved and listed by the State Fire Marshal (see CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8).*

**Exception:** Plastic less than 20 mil (0.5 mm) in thickness used in greenhouses, where occupancy by the general public is not authorized, and for aquaculture pond covers is not required to meet the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.

**3102.4 Allowable floor areas.** The area of a membrane structure shall not exceed the limitations specified in Section 506.

**3102.5 Maximum height.** Membrane structures shall not exceed one story nor shall such structures exceed the height limitations in feet specified in Section 504.3.

**Exception:** Noncombustible membrane structures serving as roofs only.

**3102.6 Mixed construction.** Membrane structures shall be permitted to be utilized as specified in this section as a portion of buildings of other types of construction. Height and area limits shall be as specified for the type of construction and occupancy of the building.

**3102.6.1 Noncombustible membrane.** A noncombustible membrane shall be permitted for use as the roof or as a skylight of any building or atrium of a building of any type

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

of construction provided that the membrane is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above any floor, balcony or gallery.

**3102.6.1.1 Membrane.** A membrane meeting the fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 shall be permitted to be used as the roof or as a skylight on buildings of Type IIB, III, IV-HT and V construction, provided that the membrane is not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above any floor, balcony or gallery.

**3102.7 Engineering design.** The structure shall be designed and constructed to sustain dead loads; loads due to tension or inflation; live loads including wind, snow or flood and seismic loads and in accordance with Chapter 16.

**3102.7.1 Lateral restraint.** For membrane-covered frame structures, the membrane shall not be considered to provide lateral restraint in the calculation of the capacities of the frame members.

**3102.8 Inflation systems.** Air-supported and air-inflated structures shall be provided with primary and auxiliary inflation systems to meet the minimum requirements of Sections 3102.8.1 through 3102.8.3.

**3102.8.1 Equipment requirements.** The inflation system shall consist of one or more blowers and shall include provisions for automatic control to maintain the required inflation pressures. The system shall be so designed as to prevent overpressurization of the system.

**3102.8.1.1 Auxiliary inflation system.** In addition to the primary inflation system, in buildings larger than 1,500 square feet ( $140 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, an auxiliary inflation system shall be provided with sufficient capacity to maintain the inflation of the structure in case of primary system failure. The auxiliary inflation system shall operate automatically when there is a loss of internal pressure and when the primary blower system becomes inoperative.

**3102.8.1.2 Blower equipment.** Blower equipment shall meet all of the following requirements:

1. Blowers shall be powered by continuous-rated motors at the maximum power required for any flow condition as required by the structural design.
2. Blowers shall be provided with inlet screens, belt guards and other protective devices as required by the building official to provide protection from injury.
3. Blowers shall be housed within a weather-protecting structure.
4. Blowers shall be equipped with backdraft check dampers to minimize air loss when inoperative.
5. Blower inlets shall be located to provide protection from air contamination. The location of inlets shall be approved.

**3102.8.2 Standby power.** Wherever an auxiliary inflation system is required, an approved standby power-generating

system shall be provided. The system shall be equipped with a suitable means for automatically starting the generator set upon failure of the normal electrical service and for automatic transfer and operation of all of the required electrical functions at full power within 60 seconds of such service failure. Standby power shall be capable of operating independently for not less than 4 hours.

**3102.8.3 Support provisions.** A system capable of supporting the membrane in the event of deflation shall be provided for in air-supported and air-inflated structures having an occupant load of 50 or more or where covering a swimming pool regardless of occupant load. The support system shall be capable of maintaining membrane structures used as a roof for Type I construction not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) above floor or seating areas. The support system shall be capable of maintaining other membranes not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) above the floor, seating area or surface of the water.

## SECTION 3103 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

**3103.1 General.** The provisions of Sections 3103.1 through 3103.4 shall apply to structures erected for a period of less than 180 days. Special event structures, tents, umbrella structures and other membrane structures erected for a period of less than 180 days shall also comply with the *California Fire Code*. Those erected for a longer period of time shall comply with applicable sections of this code.

**3103.1.1 Conformance.** Temporary structures and uses shall conform to the structural strength, fire safety, means of egress, accessibility, light, ventilation and sanitary requirements of this code as necessary to ensure public health, safety and general welfare.

**3103.1.2 Permit required.** Temporary structures that cover an area greater than 120 square feet ( $11.16 \text{ m}^2$ ), including connecting areas or spaces with a common means of egress or entrance that are used or intended to be used for the gathering together of 10 or more persons, shall not be erected, operated or maintained for any purpose without obtaining a permit from the building official.

**3103.2 Construction documents.** A permit application and construction documents shall be submitted for each installation of a temporary structure. The construction documents, shall include a site plan indicating the location of the temporary structure and information delineating the means of egress and the occupant load.

**3103.3 Location.** Temporary structures shall be located in accordance with the requirements of Table 705.5 based on the fire-resistance rating of the exterior walls for the proposed type of construction.

**3103.4 Means of egress.** Temporary structures shall conform to the means of egress requirements of Chapter 10 and shall have an exit access travel distance of 100 feet (30 480 mm) or less.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## SECTION 3104 PEDESTRIAN WALKWAYS AND TUNNELS

**3104.1 General.** This section shall apply to connections between buildings such as pedestrian walkways or tunnels, located at, above or below grade level, that are used as a means of travel by persons. The pedestrian walkway shall not contribute to the building area or the number of stories or height of connected buildings.

**3104.1.1 Application.** Pedestrian walkways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 3104.2 through 3104.9. Tunnels shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Sections 3104.2 and 3104.10.

**3104.2 Separate structures.** Buildings connected by pedestrian walkways or tunnels shall be considered to be separate structures.

**Exceptions:**

1. Buildings that are on the same lot and considered as portions of a single building in accordance with Section 503.1.2.
2. *[DSA-AC and HCD 1-AC] For purposes of accessibility in residential facilities as required by Chapters 11A and 11B, structurally connected buildings, buildings connected by stairs, walkways or roofs, and buildings with multiple wings shall be considered one structure.*

**3104.3 Construction.** The pedestrian walkway shall be of noncombustible construction.

**Exceptions:**

1. Combustible construction shall be permitted where connected buildings are of combustible construction.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood, in accordance with Section 603.1, Item 1.3, shall be permitted for the roof construction of the pedestrian walkway where connected buildings are not less than Type I or II construction.

**3104.4 Contents.** Only materials and decorations approved by the building official shall be located in the pedestrian walkway.

**3104.5 Connections of pedestrian walkways to buildings.** The connection of a pedestrian walkway to a building shall comply with Section 3104.5.1, 3104.5.2, 3104.5.3 or 3104.5.4.

**Exception:** Buildings that are on the same lot and considered as portions of a single building in accordance with Section 503.1.2.

**3104.5.1 Fire barriers.** Pedestrian walkways shall be separated from the interior of the building by not less than 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 and Sections 3104.5.1.1 through 3104.5.1.3.

**3104.5.1.1 Exterior walls.** Exterior walls of buildings connected to pedestrian walkways shall be 2-hour fire-resistance rated. This protection shall extend not less

than 10 feet (3048 mm) in every direction surrounding the perimeter of the pedestrian walkway.

**3104.5.1.2 Openings in exterior walls of connected buildings.** Openings in exterior walls required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 3104.5.1.1 shall be equipped with opening protectives providing a not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$ -hour fire protection rating in accordance with Section 716.

**3104.5.1.3 Supporting construction.** The fire barrier shall be supported by construction as required by Section 707.5.1.

**3104.5.2 Alternative separation.** The wall separating the pedestrian walkway and the building shall comply with Section 3104.5.2.1 or 3104.5.2.2 where:

1. The distance between the connected buildings is more than 10 feet (3048 mm).
2. The pedestrian walkway and connected buildings are equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, and the roof of the walkway is not more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade connecting to the fifth, or lower, story above grade plane, of each building.

**Exception:** Open parking garages need not be equipped with an automatic sprinkler system.

**3104.5.2.1 Passage of smoke.** The wall shall be capable of resisting the passage of smoke.

**3104.5.2.2 Glass.** The wall shall be constructed of a tempered, wired or laminated glass and doors separating the interior of the building from the pedestrian walkway. The glass shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 that, when actuated, shall completely wet the entire surface of interior sides of the wall or glass. Obstructions shall not be installed between the sprinkler heads and the wall or glass. The glass shall be in a gasketed frame and installed in such a manner that the framing system will deflect without breaking (loading) the glass before the sprinkler operates.

**3104.5.3 Open sides on walkway.** Where the distance between the connected buildings is more than 10 feet (3048 mm), the walls at the intersection of the pedestrian walkway and each building need not be fire-resistance rated provided that both sidewalls of the pedestrian walkway are not less than 50 percent open with the open area uniformly distributed to prevent the accumulation of smoke and toxic gases. The roof of the walkway shall be located not more than 40 feet (12 160 mm) above grade plane, and the walkway shall only be permitted to connect to the third or lower story of each building.

**Exception:** Where the pedestrian walkway is protected with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the roof of the walkway shall be located not more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade plane and the walkway shall only be permitted to connect to the fifth or lower story of each building.

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

**3104.5.4 Exterior walls greater than 2 hours.** Where exterior walls of connected buildings are required by Section 705 to have a fire-resistance rating greater than 2 hours, the walls at the intersection of the pedestrian walkway and each building need not be fire-resistance rated provided:

1. The pedestrian walkway is equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
2. The roof of the walkway is not located more than 55 feet (16 764 mm) above grade plane and the walkway connects to the fifth, or lower, story above grade plane of each building.

**3104.6 Public way.** Pedestrian walkways over a public way shall comply with Chapter 32.

**3104.7 Egress.** Access shall be provided at all times to a pedestrian walkway that serves as a required exit.

**3104.8 Width.** The unobstructed width of pedestrian walkways shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm). The total width shall be not greater than 30 feet (9144 mm).

**3104.9 Exit access travel.** The length of exit access travel shall be 200 feet (60 960 mm) or less.

### Exceptions:

1. Exit access travel distance on a pedestrian walkway equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 shall be 250 feet (76 200 mm) or less.
2. Exit access travel distance on a pedestrian walkway constructed with both sides not less than 50 percent open shall be 300 feet (91 440 mm) or less.
3. Exit access travel distance on a pedestrian walkway constructed with both sides not less than 50 percent open, and equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, shall be 400 feet (122 m) or less.

**3104.10 Tunneled walkway.** Separation between the tunneled walkway and the building to which it is connected shall be not less than 2-hour fire-resistant construction and openings therein shall be protected in accordance with Section 716.

## SECTION 3105 AWNINGS AND CANOPIES

**3105.1 General.** Awnings and canopies shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3105.2 and 3105.3 and other applicable sections of this code.

**3105.2 Design and construction.** Awnings and canopies shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind or other lateral loads and live loads as required by Chapter 16 with due allowance for shape, open construction and similar features that relieve the pressures or loads. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration. Awnings shall have frames of noncombustible material, fire-retardant-treated wood, heavy timber complying with Section 2304.11,

or 1-hour construction with combustible or noncombustible covers and shall be either fixed, retractable, folding or collapsible.

**3105.3 Awnings and canopy materials.** Awnings and canopies shall be provided with an approved covering that complies with one of the following:

1. The fire propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701.
2. Has a flame spread index not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
3. Meets all of the following criteria when tested in accordance with NFPA 286:
  - 3.1. During the 40 kW exposure, flames shall not spread to the ceiling.
  - 3.2. Flashover, as defined in NFPA 286, shall not occur.
  - 3.3. The flame shall not spread to the outer extremity of the sample on any wall or ceiling.
  - 3.4. The peak heat release rate throughout the test shall not exceed 800 kW.

*All fabrics and all interior decorative fabrics or materials shall be flame resistant in accordance with the provisions set forth in CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8. Tops and side-walls shall be made either from fabric that has been flame resistant treated with an approved exterior chemical process by an approved application concern, or from inherently flame resistant fabric approved and listed by the State Fire Marshal (see CCR, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 8).*

**Exception:** The fire propagation performance and flame spread index requirements shall not apply to awnings installed on detached one- and two-family dwellings.

## SECTION 3106 MARQUEES

**3106.1 General.** Marquees shall comply with Sections 3106.2 through 3106.5 and other applicable sections of this code.

**3106.2 Thickness.** The height or thickness of a marquee measured vertically from its lowest to its highest point shall be not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) where the marquee projects more than two-thirds of the distance from the lot line to the curb line, and shall be not greater than 9 feet (2743 mm) where the marquee is less than two-thirds of the distance from the lot line to the curb line.

**3106.3 Roof construction.** Where the roof or any part thereof is a skylight, the skylight shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 24. Every roof and skylight of a marquee shall be sloped to downspouts that shall conduct any drainage from the marquee in such a manner so as not to spill over the sidewalk.

**3106.4 Location prohibited.** Every marquee shall be so located as not to interfere with the operation of any exterior standpipe, and such that the marquee does not obstruct the

clear passage of stairways or exit discharge from the building or the installation or maintenance of street lighting.

**3106.5 Construction.** A marquee shall be supported entirely from the building and constructed of noncombustible materials. Marquees shall be designed as required in Chapter 16. Structural members shall be protected to prevent deterioration.

## SECTION 3107 SIGNS

**3107.1 General.** Signs shall be designed, constructed and maintained in accordance with this code.

## SECTION 3108 TELECOMMUNICATION AND BROADCAST TOWERS

**[BS] 3108.1 General.** Towers shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of TIA 222. Towers shall be designed for seismic loads; exceptions related to seismic design listed in Section 2.7.3 of TIA 222 shall not apply. In Section 2.6.6.2 of TIA 222, the horizontal extent of Topographic Category 2, escarpments, shall be 16 times the height of the escarpment.

**Exception:** Single free-standing poles used to support antennas not greater than 75 feet (22 860 mm), measured from the top of the pole to grade, shall not be required to be noncombustible.

**[BS] 3108.2 Location and access.** Towers shall be located such that guy wires and other accessories shall not cross or encroach on any street or other public space, or over above-ground electric utility lines, or encroach on any privately owned property without the written consent of the owner of the encroached-upon property, space or above-ground electric utility lines. Towers shall be equipped with climbing and working facilities in compliance with TIA 222. Access to the tower sites shall be limited as required by applicable OSHA, FCC and EPA regulations.

## SECTION 3109 SWIMMING POOLS, SPAS AND HOT TUBS

**3109.1 General.** The design and construction of swimming pools, spas and hot tubs shall comply with the *International Swimming Pool and Spa Code*. **[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** Swimming pools utilized for public school purposes shall also be designed, constructed and inspected in accordance with this code.

### 3109.2 California swimming pool safety act (statewide).

**NOTE:** These regulations are subject to local government modification. You should verify the applicable local government requirements at the time of application for a building permit.

The following text in this section contains the statutory language in the Swimming Pool Safety Act (HS Code, §§ 115920 – 115929) that is required to be duplicated and published in

*California Code of Regulations, Title 24. As such, the section numbers reflect those within the Health and Safety Code.*

**115920.** This act shall be known and may be cited as the Swimming Pool Safety Act.

(Added by Stats. 1996, Ch. 925, Sec. 3.5. Effective January 1, 1997.)

**115921.** As used in this article the following terms have the following meanings:

(a) "Swimming pool" or "pool" means any structure intended for swimming or recreational bathing that contains water over 18 inches deep. "Swimming pool" includes in-ground and aboveground structures and includes, but is not limited to, hot tubs, spas, portable spas and nonportable wading pools.

(b) "Public swimming pool" means a swimming pool operated for the use of the general public with or without charge, or for the use of the members and guests of a private club. Public swimming pool does not include a swimming pool located on the grounds of a private single-family home.

(c) "Enclosure" means a fence, wall or other barrier that isolates a swimming pool from access to the home.

(d) "Approved safety pool cover" means a manually or power-operated safety pool cover that meets all of the performance standards of the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), in compliance with standard F1346-91.

(e) "Exit alarms" means devices that make audible, continuous alarm sounds when any door or window, that permits access from the residence to the pool area that is without any intervening enclosure, is opened or is left ajar. Exit alarms may be battery operated or may be connected to the electrical wiring of the building.

(f) "ANSI/APSP performance standard" means a standard that is accredited by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and published by the Association of Pool and Spa Professionals (APSP).

(g) "Suction outlet" means a fitting or fixture typically located at the bottom or on the sides of a swimming pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump.

[Amended by Stats. 2012, Ch. 679, Sec. 1. (AB 2114) Effective January 1, 2013.]

**115922.** (a) Except as provided in Section 115925, when a building permit is issued for the construction of a new swimming pool or spa or the remodeling of an existing swimming pool or spa at a private single-family home, the respective swimming pool or spa shall be equipped with at least two of the following seven drowning prevention safety features:

(1) An enclosure that meets the requirements of Section 115923 and isolates the swimming pool or spa from the private single-family home.

(2) Removable mesh fencing that meets American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) Specifications F2286 standards in conjunction with a gate that is self-closing and self-latching and can accommodate a key lockable device.

(3) An approved safety pool cover, as defined in subdivision (d) of Section 115921.

(4) Exit alarms on the private single-family home's doors that provide direct access to the swimming pool or spa. The exit alarm may cause either an alarm noise or a verbal warning, such as a repeating notification that "the door to the pool is open."

(5) A self-closing, self-latching device with a release mechanism placed no lower than 54 inches above the floor on the private single-family home's doors providing direct access to the swimming pool or spa.

(6) An alarm that, when placed in a swimming pool or spa, will sound upon detection of accidental or unauthorized entrance into the water. The alarm shall meet and be independently certified to the ASTM Standard F2208 "Standard Safety Specification for Residential Pool Alarms," which includes surface motion, pressure, sonar, laser and infrared type alarms. A swimming protection alarm feature designed for individual use, including an alarm attached to a child that sounds when the child exceeds a certain distance or becomes submerged in water, is not a qualifying drowning prevention safety feature.

(7) Other means of protection, if the degree of protection afforded is equal to or greater than that afforded by any of the features set forth above and has been independently verified by an approved testing laboratory as meeting standards for those features established by the ASTM or the American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME).

(b) Before the issuance of a final approval for the completion of permitted construction or remodeling work, the local building code official shall inspect the drowning safety prevention features required by this section and, if no violations are found, shall give final approval.

[Amended by Stats. 2017, Ch. 670, Sec. 4. (SB 442) Effective January 1, 2018.]

**115923.** An enclosure shall have all of the following characteristics:

(a) Any access gates through the enclosure open away from the swimming pool, and are self-closing with a self-latching device placed no lower than 60 inches above the ground.

(b) A minimum height of 60 inches.

(c) A maximum vertical clearance from the ground to the bottom of the enclosure of two inches.

(d) Gaps or voids, if any, do not allow passage of a sphere equal to or greater than four inches in diameter.

(e) An outside surface free of protrusions, cavities or other physical characteristics that would serve as handholds or footholds that could enable a child below the age of five years to climb over.

(Added by Stats. 1996, Ch. 925, Sec. 3.5. Effective January 1, 1997.)

**115924.** (a) Any person entering into an agreement to build a swimming pool or spa, or to engage in permitted work on a

pool or spa covered by this article, shall give the consumer notice of the requirements of this article.

(b) Pursuant to existing law, the Department of Health Services shall have available on the department's Web site, commencing January 1, 2007, approved pool safety information available for consumers to download. Pool contractors are encouraged to share this information with consumers regarding the potential dangers a pool or spa poses to toddlers. Additionally, pool contractors may provide the consumer with swimming pool safety materials produced from organizations such as the United States Consumer Product Safety Commission, Drowning Prevention Foundation, California Coalition for Children's Safety & Health, Safe Kids Worldwide, Association of Pool and Spa Professionals, or the American Academy of Pediatrics.

(Amended by Stats. 2006, Ch. 478, Sec. 3. Effective January 1, 2007.)

**115925.** The requirements of this article do not apply to any of the following:

(a) Public swimming pools.

(b) Hot tubs or spas with locking safety covers that comply with the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM F1346).

(c) An apartment complex or any residential setting other than a single-family home.

[Amended by Stats. 2017, Ch. 670, Sec. 5. (SB 442) Effective January 1, 2018.]

**115926.** This article does not apply to any facility regulated by the State Department of Social Services even if the facility is also used as the private residence of the operator. Pool safety in those facilities shall be regulated pursuant to regulations adopted therefor by the State Department of Social Services.

(Added by Stats. 1996, Ch. 925, Sec. 3.5. Effective January 1, 1997.)

**115927.** Notwithstanding any other provision of law, this article shall not be subject to further modification or interpretation by any regulatory agency of the state, this authority being reserved exclusively to local jurisdictions, as provided for in paragraph (7) subdivision (a) of Section 115922 and subdivision (c) of Section 115925.

(Amended by Stats. 2018, Ch. 957, Sec. 13. (SB 1078) Effective January 1, 2019.)

**115928.** Whenever a building permit is issued for the construction of a new swimming pool or spa, the pool or spa shall meet all of the following requirements:

(a) (1) The suction outlets of the pool or spa for which the permit is issued shall be equipped to provide circulation throughout the pool or spa as prescribed in paragraphs (2) and (3).

(2) The swimming pool or spa shall either have at least two circulation suction outlets per pump that shall be hydraulically balanced and symmetrically plumbed through one or more "T" fittings, and that are separated by a distance of at least three feet in any dimension between the suction outlets, or be designed to use

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

*alternatives to suction outlets, including, but not limited to, skimmers or perimeter overflow systems to conduct water to the recirculation pump.*

*(3) The circulation system shall have the capacity to provide a complete turnover of pool water, as specified in Section 3124B of Chapter 31B of the California Building Standards Code (Title 24 of the California Code of Regulations).*

*(b) Suction outlets shall be covered with antientrapment grates, as specified in the ANSI/APSP-16 performance standard or successor standard designated by the federal Consumer Product Safety Commission, that cannot be removed except with the use of tools. Slots or openings in the grates or similar protective devices shall be of a shape, area and arrangement that would prevent physical entrapment and would not pose any suction hazard to bathers.*

*(c) Any backup safety system that an owner of a new swimming pool or spa may choose to install in addition to the requirements set forth in subdivisions (a) and (b) shall meet the standards as published in the document, "Guidelines for Entrapment Hazards: Making Pools and Spas Safer," Publication Number 363, March 2005, United States Consumer Product Safety Commission.*

[Amended by Stats. 2012, Ch. 679, Sec. 2. (AB 2114) Effective January 1, 2013.]

**115928.5.** Whenever a building permit is issued for the remodel or modification of an existing swimming pool, toddler pool or spa, the permit shall require that the suction outlet or suction outlets of the existing swimming pool, toddler pool or spa be upgraded so as to be equipped with antientrapment grates, as specified in the ANSI/APSP-16 performance standard or a successor standard designated by the federal Consumer Product Safety Commission.

[Amended by Stats. 2012, Ch. 679, Sec. 3. (AB 2114) Effective January 1, 2013.]

**115929.** (a) The Legislature encourages a private entity, in consultation with the Epidemiology and Prevention for Injury Control Branch of the department, to produce an informative brochure or booklet, for consumer use, explaining the child drowning hazards of, possible safety measures for, and appropriate drowning hazard prevention measures for, home swimming pools and spas, and to donate the document to the department.

(b) The Legislature encourages the private entity to use existing documents from the United States Consumer Product Safety Commission on pool safety.

(c) If a private entity produces the document described in subdivisions (a) and (b) and donates it to the department, the department shall review and approve the brochure or booklet.

(d) Upon approval of the document by the department, the document shall become the property of the state and a part of the public domain. The department shall place the document on its Web site in a format that is readily available for downloading and for publication. The department shall review the document in a timely and prudent fashion

*and shall complete the review within 18 months of receipt of the document from a private entity.*

(Added by Stats. 2003, Ch. 422, Sec. 3. Effective January 1, 2004.)

## SECTION 3110 AUTOMATIC VEHICULAR GATES

**3110.1 General.** Automatic vehicular gates shall comply with the requirements of Sections 3110.2 and 3110.3 and other applicable sections of this code.

**3110.2 Vehicular gates intended for automation.** Vehicular gates intended for automation shall be designed, constructed and installed to comply with the requirements of ASTM F2200.

**3110.3 Vehicular gate openers.** Vehicular gate openers, where provided, shall be listed in accordance with UL 325.

## SECTION 3111 SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEMS

**3111.1 General.** Solar energy systems shall comply with the requirements of this section.

**3111.1.1 Wind resistance.** Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems and solar thermal collectors shall be designed in accordance with Section 1609.

**Exception:** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC, HCD-1, HCD-2]  
Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems and solar thermal collectors shall be designed in accordance with Section 1511.9 of this code.

**3111.1.2 Roof live load.** Roof structures that provide support for solar energy systems shall be designed in accordance with Section 1607.14.4.

**3111.2 Solar thermal systems.** Solar thermal systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with this section, the California Plumbing Code, the California Mechanical Code and the California Fire Code. Where light-transmitting plastic covers are used, solar thermal collectors shall be designed in accordance with Section 2606.12.

**3111.2.1 Equipment.** Solar thermal systems and components shall be listed and labeled in accordance with ICC 900/SRCC 300 and ICC 901/SRCC 100.

**3111.3 Photovoltaic solar energy systems.** Photovoltaic solar energy systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with this section, the California Fire Code, the California Electrical Code and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

**3111.3.1 Equipment.** Photovoltaic panels and modules shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1703 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2. Inverters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1741. Systems connected to the utility grid shall use inverters listed for utility interaction.

**3111.3.2 Fire classification.** Rooftop-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems shall have a fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.9. Building-integrated

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

photovoltaic (BIPV) systems installed as roof coverings shall have a fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.8.

**3111.3.3 Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) systems.** BIPV systems installed as roof coverings shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 1507.

**3111.3.4 Access and pathways.** Roof access, pathways and spacing requirements shall be provided in accordance with Section 1205 of the *California Fire Code*.

**3111.3.5 Elevated photovoltaic (PV) support structures.** Elevated PV support structures shall comply with either 3111.3.5.1 or 3111.3.5.2.

**Exception:** Elevated PV support structures that are installed over agricultural use.

**3111.3.5.1 PV panels installed over open grid framing or noncombustible deck.** Elevated PV support structures with PV panels installed over open grid framing or over a noncombustible deck shall have PV panels tested, listed and labeled with a fire type rating in accordance with UL 1703 or with both UL 61730-1 and UL 61730-2. Photovoltaic panels marked "not fire rated" shall not be installed on elevated PV support structures.

**3111.3.5.2 PV panels installed over a roof assembly.** Elevated PV support structures with a PV panel system installed over a roof assembly shall have a fire classification in accordance with Section 1505.9.

**3111.3.6 Ground-mounted photovoltaic (PV) panel systems.** Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 16 and the *California Fire Code*.

**3111.3.6.1 Fire separation distances.** Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems shall be subject to the fire separation distance requirements determined by the local jurisdiction.

## SECTION 3112 GREENHOUSES

**3112.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall apply to greenhouses that are designed and used for the cultivation, maintenance, or protection of plants.

**3112.2 Accessibility.** Greenhouses shall be accessible in accordance with Chapter 11. **[HCD 1]** Greenhouses accessory to covered multifamily dwellings, as defined in Chapter 2, used as a common use facility, shall be on an accessible route in accordance with Chapter 11A.

**3112.3 Structural design.** Greenhouses shall comply with the structural design requirements for greenhouses in Chapter 16.

**Exception:** **[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** Greenhouses considered to be school buildings shall comply with the structural design requirements in Chapter 16A and in accordance with Part 1, California Administrative Code, Title 24, CCR.

**3112.4 Glass and glazing.** Glass and glazing used in greenhouses shall comply with Section 2405.

**3112.5 Light-transmitting plastics.** Light-transmitting plastics shall be permitted in lieu of plain glass in greenhouses and shall comply with Section 2606.

**3112.6 Membrane structures.** Greenhouses that are membrane structures shall comply with Section 3102.

**3112.6.1 Plastic film.** Plastic films used in greenhouses shall comply with Section 3102.3.

## SECTION 3113 RELOCATABLE BUILDINGS

**3113.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall apply to relocatable buildings. Relocatable buildings manufactured after the effective date of this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of this code. **[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** as enforced by the enforcement agency.

**Exception:** This section shall not apply to manufactured housing used as dwellings.

**[HCD]** The provisions of Section 3113 are not applicable to commercial modulars, manufactured homes, mobilehomes, multi-unit manufactured housing and special purpose commercial modulars as defined in Health and Safety Code Sections 18001.8, 18007, 18008, 18008.7 and 18012.5, respectively. These structures are subject to installation/reinstallation requirements specified in the Mobile-home Parks Act (Health and Safety Code Section 18200 et seq.) and the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 2. Manufactured homes must meet unit identification (data plate) and certification label requirements as specified in the Code of Federal Regulations, Title 24, Subtitle B, Chapter XX, Part 3280 and Health and Safety Code Section 18032. Commercial modulars and special purpose commercial modulars must meet identification requirements in the California Code of Regulations, Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 2.

**3113.1.1 Compliance.** A newly constructed relocatable building shall comply with the requirements of this code for new construction. **[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** as enforced by the enforcement agency. An existing relocatable building that is undergoing alteration, addition, change of occupancy or relocation shall comply with Chapter 14 of the *California Existing Building Code*.

**Exception:** **[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** An existing relocatable public school building that is undergoing alteration, addition or change of occupancy shall comply with Chapter 3 of the *California Existing Building Code*.

**3113.2 Supplemental information.** Supplemental information specific to a relocatable building shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction. It shall, as a minimum, include the following in addition to the information required by Section 105:

**Exception:** **[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]** Supplemental information specific to a relocatable building shall be submitted to the enforcement agency. It shall, as a minimum,

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

include the following in addition to the information required by Section 1603A:

1. Manufacturer's name and address.
2. Date of manufacture.
3. Serial number of module.
4. Manufacturer's design drawings.
5. Type of construction in accordance with Section 602.
6. Design loads including: roof live load, roof snow load, floor live load, wind load and seismic site class, use group and design category.
7. Additional building planning and structural design data.
8. Site-built structure or appurtenance attached to the relocatable building.

**3113.3 Manufacturer's data plate.** Each relocatable module shall have a data plate that is permanently attached on or adjacent to the electrical panel, and shall include the following information:

1. Occupancy group.
2. Manufacturer's name and address.
3. Date of manufacture.
4. Serial number of module.
5. Design roof live load, design floor live load, snow load, wind and seismic design.
6. Approved quality assurance agency or approved inspection agency.
7. Codes and standards of construction.
8. Envelope thermal resistance values.
9. Electrical service size.
10. Fuel-burning equipment and size.
11. Special limitations if any.

**Exception:** [DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC] Each relocatable module shall have two metal identification labels permanently attached to the structure as enforced by the enforcement agency.

**3113.4 Inspection agencies.** The building official is authorized to accept reports of inspections conducted by approved inspection agencies during off-site construction of the relocatable building, and to satisfy the applicable requirements of Sections 110.3 through 110.3.12.1.

**Exception:** [DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC] Each relocatable module shall be inspected during construction and installation at the project site by project inspectors acceptable to the enforcement agency in accordance with Part 1, California Administrative Code, Title 24, CCR.

## SECTION 3114 PUBLIC USE RESTROOM BUILDINGS IN FLOOD HAZARD AREAS

**3114.1 General.** For the purpose of this section, public restroom buildings are located on publicly owned lands in

flood hazard areas and intended for public use. Public restroom buildings and portions of other buildings that contain public restrooms are limited to toilet rooms, bathrooms, showers and changing rooms. Public restroom buildings and portions of buildings that contain public restrooms shall comply with the requirements of this section. Public-use restrooms that are not elevated or dry flood-proofed in accordance with Section 1612 shall comply with Section 3114.2. Portions of buildings that include uses other than public-use toilet rooms, bathrooms, showers and changing rooms shall comply with Section 1612.

**3114.2 Flood resistance.** Public-use restrooms on publicly owned lands in flood hazard areas shall comply with the requirements of ASCE 24, except for elevation requirements, and shall comply with all of the following criteria:

1. The building footprint is not more than 1,500 square feet ( $139\text{ m}^2$ ).
2. Located, designed and constructed to resist the effects of flood hazards and flood loads to minimize flood damage from a combination of wind and water loads associated with the base flood.
3. Anchored to prevent flotation, collapse or lateral movement resulting from hydrodynamic and hydrostatic loads, including the effects of buoyancy during conditions of the base flood.
4. Constructed of flood-damage-resistant materials.
5. Where enclosed by walls, the walls have flood openings.
6. Mechanical and electrical systems are located above the base flood elevation.
7. Plumbing fixtures and plumbing connections are located above the base flood elevation.
8. An emergency plan, approved by the jurisdiction, is submitted to the building official and includes building design documents specifying implementation of protection measures prior to the onset of flooding conditions.

### Exceptions:

1. Minimum necessary electric equipment required to address health, life safety and electric code requirements is permitted below the base flood elevation in accordance with ASCE 24 provisions for electric elements installed below the minimum elevations.
2. Plumbing fixtures and connections are permitted below the base flood elevation provided that the fixtures and connections are designed and installed to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into the sanitary sewage system and discharges from sanitary sewage systems into floodwaters.

## SECTION 3115 INTERMODAL SHIPPING CONTAINERS

*Not permitted by OSHPD.*

**3115.1 General.** The provisions of Section 3115 and other applicable sections of this code shall apply to intermodal

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

shipping containers that are repurposed for use as buildings or structures, or as a part of buildings or structures.

**Exceptions:** *[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Not permitted by DSA.*

1. Intermodal shipping containers previously approved as existing relocatable buildings complying with Chapter 14 of the *California Existing Building Code*.
2. Stationary storage battery arrays located in intermodal shipping containers complying with Chapter 12 of the *California Fire Code*.
3. Intermodal shipping containers that are listed as equipment complying with the standard for equipment, such as air chillers, engine generators, modular data centers, and other similar equipment.
4. Intermodal shipping containers housing or supporting experimental equipment are exempt from the requirements of Section 3115, provided that they comply with all of the following:
  - 4.1. Such units shall be single stand-alone units supported at grade level and used only for occupancies as specified under Risk Category I in Table 1604.5.
  - 4.2. Such units are located a minimum of 8 feet (2438 mm) from adjacent structures, and are not connected to a fuel gas system or fuel gas utility.
  - 4.3. In hurricane-prone regions and flood hazard areas, such units are designed in accordance with the applicable provisions of Chapter 16.

5. *[HCD] Shipping containers constructed or converted off-site that meet the definition of Factory-built Housing in Health and Safety Code Section 19971 or Commercial Modular(s) as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18001.8 shall be approved by the Department of Housing and Community Development.*

**3115.2 Construction documents.** The construction documents shall contain information to verify the dimensions and establish the physical properties of the steel components and wood floor components of the intermodal shipping container, in addition to the information required by Sections 107 and 1603.

**3115.3 Intermodal shipping container information.** Intermodal shipping containers shall bear an existing data plate containing the following information as required by ISO 6346 and verified by an approved agency. A report of the verification process and findings shall be provided to the building owner.

1. Manufacturer's name or identification number.
2. Date manufactured.
3. Safety approval number.
4. Identification number.
5. Maximum operating gross mass or weight (kg) (lbs).

6. Allowable stacking load for 1.8G (kg) (lbs).
7. Transverse racking test force (Newtons).
8. Valid maintenance examination date.

Where approved by the building official, the markings and existing data plate are permitted to be removed from the intermodal shipping containers before they are repurposed for use as buildings or structures or as a part of buildings or structures.

**3115.4 Protection against decay and termites.** Wood structural floors of intermodal shipping containers shall be protected from decay and termites in accordance with the applicable provisions of Section 2304.12.1.1.

**3115.5 Under-floor ventilation.** The space between the bottom of the floor joists and the earth under any intermodal shipping container, except spaces occupied by basements and cellars, shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section 1202.4.

**3115.6 Roof assemblies.** Intermodal shipping container roof assemblies shall comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 15.

**Exception:** Single-unit, stand-alone intermodal shipping containers not attached to, or stacked vertically over, other intermodal shipping containers, buildings or structures.

*[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] Not permitted by DSA.*

**3115.7 Joints and voids.** Joints and voids that create concealed spaces between connected or stacked intermodal shipping containers at fire-resistance-rated walls, floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies shall be protected by an approved fire-resistant joint system in accordance with Section 715.

**3115.8 Structural.** Intermodal shipping containers that conform to ISO 1496-1 and are repurposed for use as buildings or structures, or as a part of buildings or structures, shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 16 and this section.

**3115.8.1 Foundations.** Intermodal shipping containers repurposed for use as a permanent building or structure shall be supported on foundations or other supporting structures designed and constructed in accordance with Chapters 16 through 23.

**3115.8.1.1 Anchorage.** Intermodal shipping containers shall be anchored to foundations or other supporting structures as necessary to provide a continuous load path for all applicable design and environmental loads in accordance with Chapter 16.

**3115.8.2 Welds.** New welds and connections shall be equal to or greater than the original connections.

*[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CC] The strength of new welds and connections shall be no less than the strength provided by the original connections. All new welds and connections shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapters 16, 17 and 22.*

**3115.8.3 Structural design.** The structural design for the intermodal shipping containers repurposed for use as a building or structure, or as part of a building or structure, shall comply with Section 3115.8.4 or 3115.8.5.

**3115.8.4 Detailed design procedure.** A structural analysis meeting the requirements of this section shall be provided to the building official to demonstrate the structural adequacy of the intermodal shipping containers.

**Exception:** Intermodal shipping containers designed in accordance with Section 3115.8.5.

**3115.8.4.1 Material properties.** Structural material properties for existing intermodal shipping container steel components shall be established by material testing where the steel grade and composition cannot be identified by the manufacturer's designation as to manufacture and mill test. *[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CCJ Not permitted by DSA]*

**3115.8.4.2 Seismic design parameters.** The seismic force-resisting system shall be designed and detailed in accordance with *[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CCJ ASCE 7 and one of the following:*

1. Where all or portions of the corrugated steel container sides are considered to be the seismic force-resisting system, design and detailing shall be in accordance with the ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1 requirements for light-frame bearing-wall systems with shear panels of all other materials. *[DSA-SS & DSA-SS/CCJ Not permitted by DSA]*
2. Where portions of the corrugated steel container sides are retained, but are not considered to be the seismic force-resisting system, an independent seismic force-resisting system shall be selected, designed and detailed in accordance with ASCE 7, Table 12.2-1.
3. Where portions of the corrugated steel container sides are retained and integrated into a seismic force-resisting system other than as permitted by Item 1, seismic design parameters shall be developed from testing and analysis in accordance with Section 104.11 and ASCE 7, Section 12.2.1.1 or 12.2.1.2.

**3115.8.4.3 Allowable shear value.** The allowable shear values for the intermodal shipping container corrugated steel sheet panel side walls and end walls shall be demonstrated by testing and analysis *in accordance with Section 104.11*. Where penetrations are made in the side walls or end walls designated as part of the lateral force-resisting system, the penetrations shall be substantiated by rational analysis.

**3115.8.5 Simplified structural design of single-unit containers.** Single-unit intermodal shipping containers conforming to the limitations of Section 3115.8.5.1 shall be permitted to be designed in accordance with the simplified structural design provisions of Section 3115.8.5.2. *[DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CCJ Not permitted by DSA]*

**3115.8.5.1 Limitations.** The use of Section 3115.8.5 is subject to the following limitations:

1. The intermodal shipping container shall be a single-unit, stand-alone unit supported on a foundation and shall not be in contact with or supporting any other shipping container or other structure.

2. The intermodal shipping container top and bottom rails, corner castings, and columns or any portion thereof shall not be notched, cut, or removed in any manner.
3. The intermodal shipping container shall be erected in a level and horizontal position with the floor located at the bottom.
4. The intermodal shipping container shall be located in Seismic Design Category A, B, C or D.

**3115.8.5.2 Simplified structural design.** Where permitted by Section 3115.8.5.1, single-unit, stand-alone intermodal shipping containers shall be designed using the following assumptions for the corrugated steel shear walls:

1. The appropriate detailing requirements contained in Chapters 16 through 23.
2. Response modification coefficient,  $R = 2$ .
3. Overstrength factor,  $\Omega_0 = 2.5$ .
4. Deflection amplification factor,  $C_d = 2$ .
5. Limits on structural height,  $h_n = 9.5$  feet (2900 mm).

**3115.8.5.3 Allowable shear.** The allowable shear for the corrugated steel side walls (longitudinal) and end walls (transverse) for wind design and seismic design using the coefficients of Section 3115.8.5.2 shall be in accordance with Table 3115.8.5.3, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The total linear length of all openings in any individual side wall or end wall shall be limited to not more than 50 percent of the length of that side wall or end wall, as shown in Figure 3115.8.5.3(1).
2. Any full-height wall length, or portion thereof, less than 4 feet (305 mm) shall not be considered as a portion of the lateral force-resisting system, as shown in Figure 3115.8.5.3(2).
3. All side walls or end walls used as part of the lateral force-resisting system shall have an existing or new boundary element on all sides to form a continuous load path, or paths, with adequate strength and stiffness to transfer all forces from the point of application to the final point of resistance, as shown in Figure 3115.8.5.3(3).
4. Where openings are made in container walls, floors or roofs, for doors, windows and other openings:
  - 4.1 The openings shall be framed with steel elements that are designed in accordance with Chapters 16 and 22.
  - 4.2 The cross section and material grade of any new steel element shall be equal to or greater than the steel element removed.

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

5. A maximum of one penetration not greater than 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter for conduits, pipes, tubes or vents, or not greater than 16 square inches (10 323 mm<sup>2</sup>) for electrical boxes, is permitted for each individual 8-foot (2438 mm) length of lateral force-resisting wall. Penetrations located in walls that are not part of the lateral force-resisting system shall not be limited in size or quantity. Existing intermodal shipping container vents shall not be considered a penetration, as shown in Figure 3115.8.5.3(4).
6. End wall doors designated as part of the lateral force-resisting system shall be welded closed.

### 3115.9 Additional requirements. [DSA-SS and DSA-SS/CC]

#### 3115.9.1 General.

1. Intermodal shipping containers shall not have been manufactured earlier than 24 months from the date of DSA approval of the site-specific or stockpile building design drawings.
2. Intermodal shipping containers shall be undamaged and have no previous repairs. The acceptable tolerances shall not exceed those given in the ANSI/AISC 303—16: Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges.
3. Intermodal shipping container type shall be standard dry cargo container, used for the transportation of dry goods only. Containers shall not have

*been used for transporting hazardous materials. Containers shall not have been painted with paint containing lead.*

4. All structural elements and details shall be justified through engineering calculations in accordance with the California Administrative Code (Title 24, Part 1, CCR) Section 4-317(d).

**3115.9.2 Structural integrity verification.** Each intermodal shipping container shall have selection, structural integrity verification, general condition assessment, inspection and testing as enforced by the enforcement agency.

#### 3115.9.3 Seismic design requirements.

1. The container steel frame contribution to the lateral force resistance shall be neglected even in cases where the container siding is removed.
2. Deformation compatibility of structural elements that are not included in the seismic force-resisting system shall be considered in the analysis and when evaluating stiffness irregularities.
3. The total length of siding (less openings) along a line in a lower story shall not be less than 80 percent of the total length of siding (less openings) along the same line in the story immediately above.

**TABLE 3115.8.5.3**  
**ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES FOR INTERMODAL**  
**SHIPPING CONTAINER CORRUGATED STEEL WALLS FOR WIND OR SEISMIC LOADING**

CONTAINER DESIGNATION <sup>b</sup>	CONTAINER DIMENSION (nominal length)	CONTAINER DIMENSION (nominal height)	ALLOWABLE SHEAR VALUES (PLF) <sup>a,c</sup>	
			Side Wall	End Wall
1EEE	45 feet	9.5 feet	75	
1EE		8.5 feet		
1AAA	40 feet	9.5 feet	84	
1AA		8.5 feet		
1A		8.0 feet		
1AX		< 8.0 feet		
1BBB	30 feet	9.5 feet	112	843
1BB		8.5 feet		
1B		8.0 feet		
1BX		< 8.0 feet		
1CC	20 feet	8.5 feet	168	
1C		8.0 feet		
1CX		< 8.0 feet		
1D	10 feet	8.0 feet	337	
1DX		< 8.0 feet		

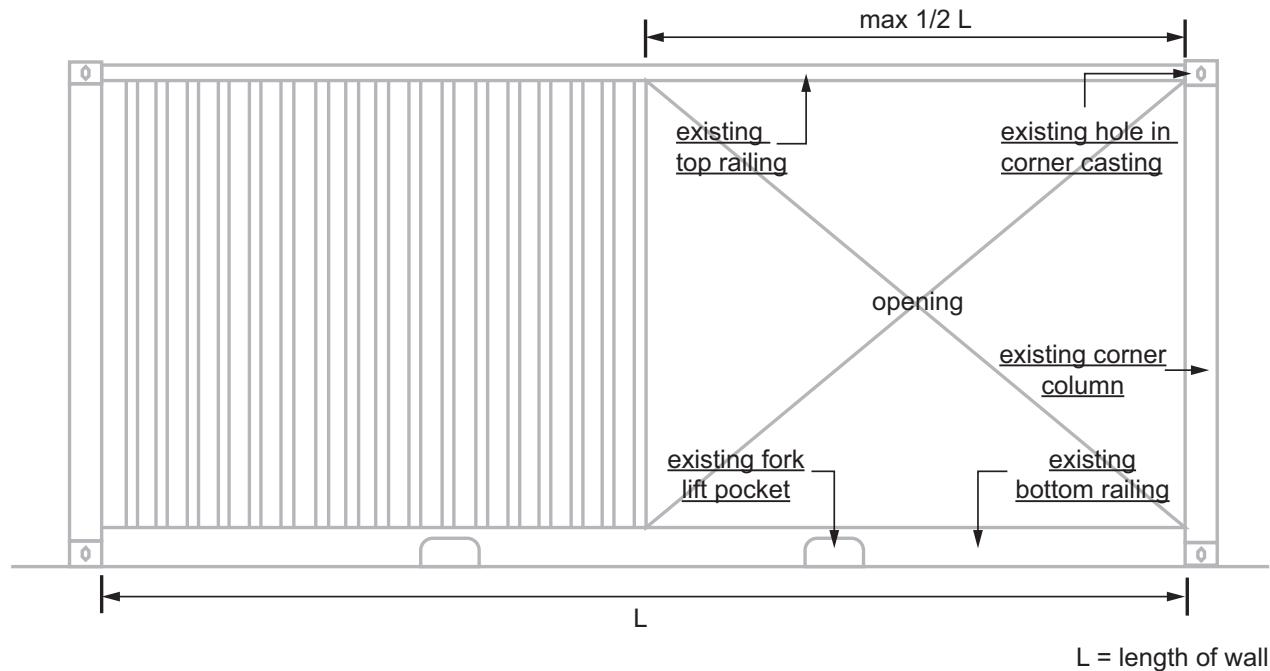
For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

a. The allowable strength shear for the side walls and end walls of the intermodal shipping containers are derived from ISO 1496-1 and reduced by a factor of safety of 5.

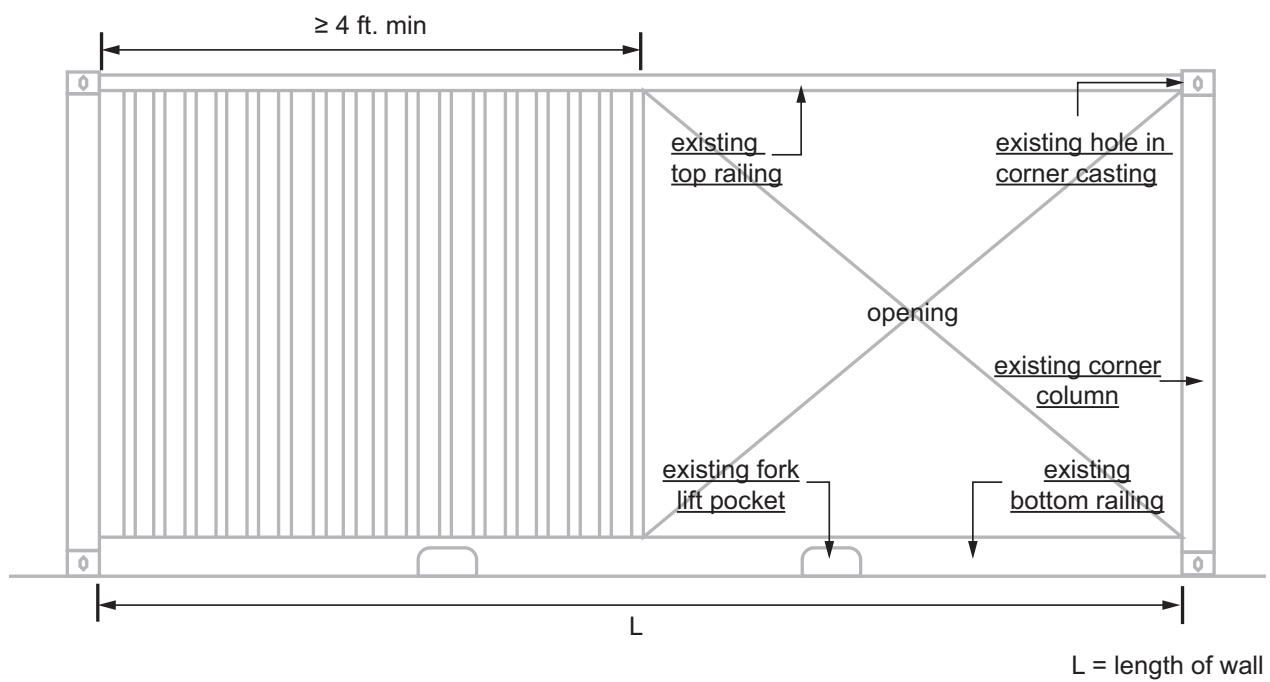
b. Container designation type is derived from ISO 668.

c. Limitations of Section 3115.8.5.1 shall apply.

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION



**FIGURE 3115.8.5.3(1)**  
**BRACING UNIT DISTRIBUTION—MAXIMUM LINEAR LENGTH**



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE 3115.8.5.3(2)**  
**BRACING UNIT DISTRIBUTION—MINIMUM LINEAR LENGTH**

## SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION

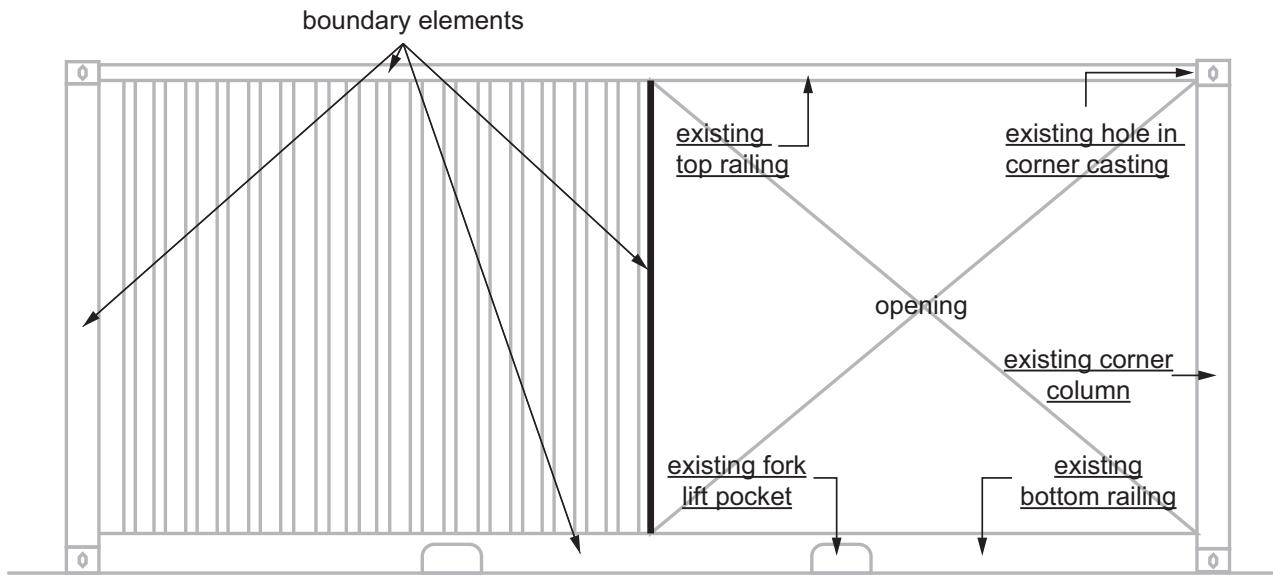
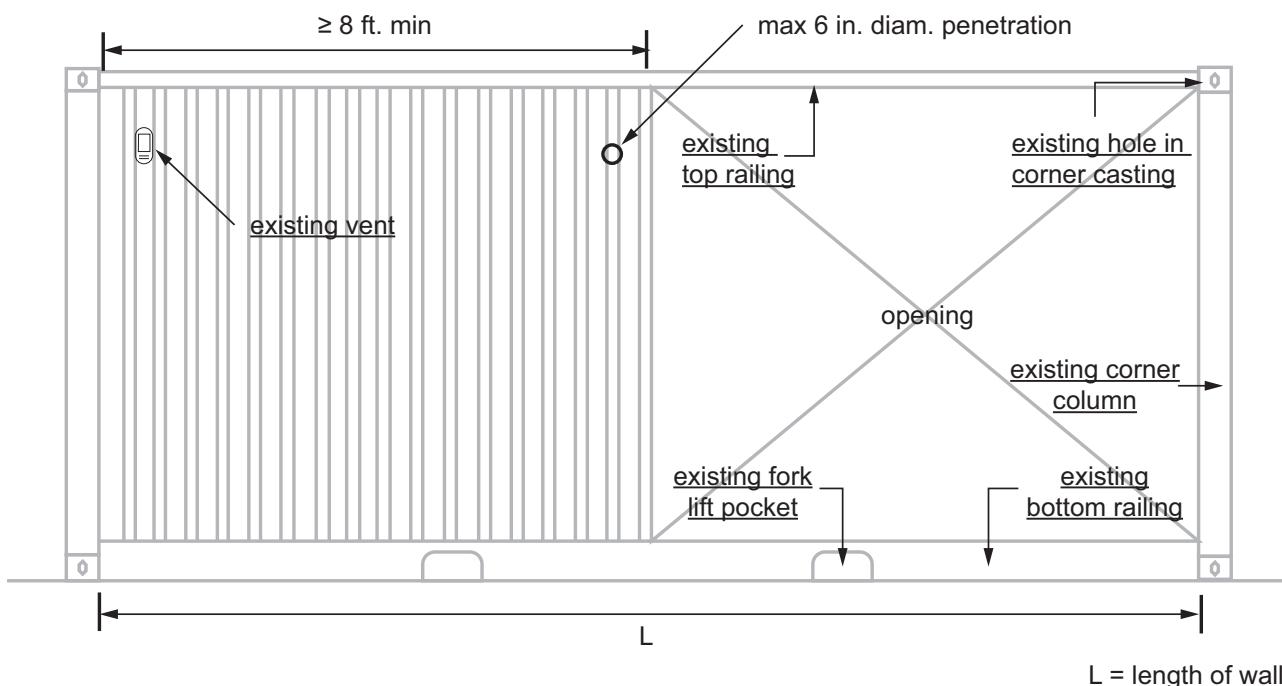


FIGURE 3115.8.5.3(3)  
BRACING UNIT DISTRIBUTION—BOUNDARY ELEMENTS



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE 3115.8.5.3(4)  
BRACING UNIT DISTRIBUTION—PENETRATION LIMITATIONS

**CHAPTER 31A**

**SYSTEMS FOR WINDOW CLEANING OR  
EXTERIOR BUILDING MAINTENANCE**

*See Title 8, California Code of Regulations, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 7,  
General Industry Safety Orders, Group 1, Articles 5 and 6.*



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 31B – PUBLIC POOLS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																	X					
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below					X		X															
Chapter / Section																						
3101B					X																	
3101B (last paragraph only)							X															
3102B					X																	

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

|||



## CHAPTER 31B [DPH]

# PUBLIC POOLS

### **Division I—GENERAL**

#### **SECTION 3101B SCOPE**

The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the construction, installation, renovation, alteration, addition, relocation, replacement or use of any public pool and to its ancillary facilities, mechanical equipment and related piping. Public pools include those located in or designated as the following: commercial building, hotel, motel, resort, recreational vehicle or mobile home park, campground, apartment house, condominium, townhouse, homeowner association, club, community building or area, public or private school, health club or establishment, water park, swim school, medical facility, bed and breakfast, licensed day-care facility, recreation and park district and municipal pools.

**[HCD 2]** This chapter, as specified, shall apply to swimming pools in Mobilehome Parks as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18214 and Special Occupancy Parks as defined in Health and Safety Code Section 18862.43.

**Note:** Existing law limits application of building standards. Please see Health and Safety Code Sections 18938.5 and 116050.

**[DSA-AC]** Refer to Chapter 11B for accessibility provisions applicable to public accommodations, commercial buildings and public housing.

#### **SECTION 3102B DEFINITIONS**

**ANCILLARY FACILITY** is any area used in conjunction with or for the operation of a pool such as public dressing rooms, lockers, shower or bathroom areas, drinking fountains, equipment room, pool deck area, pool enclosure or building space that is intended to be used by pool users.

**BACKWASH** is the process of reversing the flow of water through the filter to thoroughly clean the filter media and/or elements and remove the debris from the contents of the filter vessel.

**CANTILEVERED DECKING** is the part of the deck which extends over a top edge of a pool or spa.

**CLEAN POOL WATER** is pool water that is free of dirt, oils, scum, algae, floating materials or visible organic and inorganic materials that would pollute the water.

**CLEAR POOL WATER** is pool water that is free from cloudiness and is transparent.

**COPING** is a slip-resistant cap installed on the top edge of a pool or spa.

**CORROSION RESISTANT** is capable of maintaining original surface characteristics under the prolonged influence of the use environment.

**DECK** is an area surrounding a pool which is specifically constructed or installed for use by pool users.

**DIATOMACEOUS EARTH** is a filtering media consisting of microscopic fossilized skeletons of diatoms.

**EASILY CLEANABLE** is a characteristic of a surface or material that allows removal of dirt, stains or residue by normal cleaning methods.

**EFFECTIVE PARTICLE SIZE** is the theoretical size of a sieve in mm that will pass 10 percent by weight of sand.

**ENFORCING AGENT** is the health officer, director of environmental health, registered environmental health specialist or environmental health specialist trainee.

**[HCD 2] ENFORCING AGENT OR ENFORCING AGENCY** is the Department of Housing and Community Development, local building department or other local agency that has assumed responsibility for the enforcement of Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.1 commencing with Section 18200 for mobilehome parks and Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2.3 commencing with Section 18860 for special occupancy parks.

**EQUIPMENT AREA** is an area where the recirculation system and all related appurtenances are located.

**HANDHOLD** is a structure located at or above the water line around the perimeter of the pool wall that allows a pool user to hold onto the poolside for support.

**INLET** is a fitting or fixture through which recirculated water enters the pool.

**LADDER** is a series of vertically separate treads or rungs either connected by vertical rail members or independently fastened to an adjacent vertical pool wall.

**LIVING UNIT** is any building or portion thereof that contains living facilities including provisions for sleeping.

**MAIN DRAIN** is a submerged suction outlet typically located at the bottom of a pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump.

**MEDICAL POOL** is a special-purpose pool used by a State-recognized medical institution engaged in the healing arts under the direct supervision of licensed medical personnel for treatment of the infirm.

**OUTLET** is a fitting or fixture through which recirculated water is removed from the pool which may or may not be connected to the pump.

**PERFORMANCE STANDARD** is a standard that is accredited and published. Products compliant with a standard may be listed by any authorized nationally recognized testing laboratory.

## PUBLIC POOLS

**PERIMETER OVERFLOW SYSTEM** is a system which includes perimeter-type overflow gutters, surge basin or similar surface water collective system components and their interconnecting piping.

**PERMISSIBLE EXPOSURE LIMIT** is the maximum amount or concentration of a chemical that a worker may be exposed to under United States Occupational Safety and Health Administration regulations.

**POOL OR PUBLIC POOL** is an artificial basin, chamber or tank constructed or prefabricated with impermeable surfaces that is used, or intended to be used, for public swimming, diving or recreational activities but does not include individual therapeutic tubs or baths where the main purpose is the cleaning of the body. Any manmade lake or swimming lagoon with a sand beach or sand bottom is not a public pool.

**POOL OPERATOR or OPERATOR** is a person who is responsible for maintaining compliance with all requirements relating to pool operation, maintenance and safety of pool users.

**POOL USER** is a person using a pool and ancillary facilities for the purpose of water activities such as diving, swimming or wading.

**RADIUS OF CURVATURE** is the radius arc which denotes the curved surface from the point of departure from the springline of the pool to the pool bottom.

**READILY ACCESSIBLE** is capable of being reached easily for cleaning, repair, replacement or inspection without the necessity of removing a panel, door or similar obstruction and without requiring a person to climb over or remove obstacles or to use devices such as portable ladders.

**READILY DISASSEMBLED** means capable of being taken apart by hand or by using only simple tools such as a screwdriver, pliers or open-end wrench.

**RECESSED STEPS** are a series of vertically spaced cavities in the pool wall creating riser and tread areas for pool ingress and egress.

**RECIRCULATION SYSTEM** is the system of hydraulic components designed to remove, filter, disinfect and return water to the pool.

**RIM FLOW GUTTER** is a perimeter overflow system in which the overflow rim is at the same elevation with the deck.

**SKIMMER EQUALIZER LINE** is a submerged suction outlet located below the waterline and connected to the body of a skimmer that prevents air from being drawn into the pump if the water level drops below the skimmer weir or the skimmer is blocked by debris. A skimmer equalizer line is not a main drain.

**SLIP RESISTANT** is a rough finish that is not abrasive to the bare foot.

**SPA POOL OR SPA** is a pool that incorporates a water jet system, an aeration system or a combination of the two systems used in conjunction with heated water.

**SPECIAL PURPOSE POOL** is a pool constructed exclusively for a specific purpose, such as instruction, diving, competition or medical treatment.

**SPLASH ZONE** is the maximum distance the water from a spray ground can project horizontally.

**SPRAY GROUND** is a pool with no standing water in the splash zone and consists of a surge basin with a recirculation system from which water is directed through water features for contact with pool users.

**SPRINGLINE** is the point from which the pool wall breaks from vertical and begins its arc in the radius of curvature.

**STAIRS** are a series of two or more steps.

**STEP** is a riser and tread.

**SUCTION OUTLET** is any outlet that is connected to the pump through which water is removed from the pool.

**SURGE BASIN** is a reservoir or surge trench open to the atmosphere that receives water via gravity flow from the main drain, spray ground or perimeter overflow system and from which the recirculation system operates.

**TEMPERED WATER** is water between 100°F and 110°F.

**TURNOVER TIME** is the maximum time allowed to circulate one complete volume of the pool water through the recirculation system.

**UNIFORMITY COEFFICIENT** is the ratio of the theoretical size of a sieve in mm that will pass 60 percent of the sand to the theoretical size of a sieve in mm that will pass 10 percent of the sand.

**WADING POOL** is a pool intended to be used for wading by small children and having a maximum water depth of 18 inches (457 mm) at the deepest point.

**WATER FEATURE** means an interactive device or structure through which water is directed to the pool user such as a water fountain, water spray, dancing water jet, waterfall, dumping bucket or shooting water cannon.

**WATERLINE** shall be defined as one of the following:

1. Skimmer system. The waterline shall be the midpoint of the operating range of the skimmers.
2. Overflow system. The waterline shall be the top edge of the overflow rim.

## PLAN REVIEW, PERMITS, CONSTRUCTION AND FIELD INSPECTIONS

### SECTION 3103B PLAN REVIEW

**3103B.1** A person proposing to construct, renovate or alter a pool, ancillary facilities or equipment and appurtenances shall submit plans and specifications detailing compliance with this chapter to the enforcing agent for review and written approval prior to commencing construction and shall first be cleared by the enforcing agent before substitution if not an exact duplicate of the units being changed or replaced. A local building department shall not issue a permit for a public pool or ancillary facility until the plans have been approved by the enforcing agent.

### 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**3103B.2** Plans submitted for approval pursuant to this section shall be drawn to a scale of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) equals 1 foot (305 mm), except that plans for spa pools shall be drawn to a scale of 1 inch (25 mm) equals 1 foot (305 mm), unless otherwise approved by the enforcing agent.

**3103B.3** The enforcing agent shall notify the person submitting the plans and specifications of approval or disapproval.

**3103B.4** The enforcing agent shall retain one copy of the approved plans and specifications and any subsequent changes or modifications. The approved plans shall be valid for a period of two years from the date of approval or as extended by the enforcing agent.

## SECTION 3104B CONSTRUCTION

Pools and all ancillary facilities, equipment and appurtenances shall be constructed, renovated or altered in compliance with plans approved pursuant to Section 3103B.

## SECTION 3105B PLAN COMPLIANCE INSPECTIONS

**3105B** The pool owner, operator or designated agent shall notify the enforcing agent prior to scheduling the following inspections:

1. Exposed plumbing; and
2. Prior to applying pneumatically placed concrete; and
3. Prior to applying the final surface to the pool shell; and
4. At the completion of construction. No pool shall be opened to the public without the written approval of the enforcing agent.

## POOL STRUCTURE

### SECTION 3106B

#### SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRAY GROUNDS

**3106B** Spray grounds. All applicable provisions of this chapter shall apply to a spray ground unless specifically addressed in this section.

**3106B.1** All parts of the spray ground shall be designed and constructed so that there are no safety hazards.

**3106B.2** Walking surface. A minimum 4-foot wide walking surface shall extend around the perimeter of the splash zone of a spray ground.

**3106B.3** The recirculation system shall be in operation at all times that the spray ground is open for use and shall have a minimum of four turnover cycles prior to opening for proper disinfection and filtration.

**3106B.4** There shall be no standing water within the splash zone.

**3106B.5** Nozzles that spray from the ground level shall be flush with the ground with openings no greater than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

Spray ground water features that extend above the ground must be clearly visible.

**3106B.6** The splash zone shall be sloped so that only water from the spray ground water feature flows back to the surge basin. Areas adjacent to the splash zone shall be sloped away from the spray ground to deck drains or other surface water disposal systems.

**3106B.7** All foggers and misters that produce finely atomized mists shall be supplied directly from a potable water source and not from the surge basin.

**3106B.8** When multiple pumps are used the control systems for the spray ground water feature pump and recirculation system pump shall be electrically interconnected so that when the recirculation pump is off the spray ground water feature pump also is off.

**3106B.9** The spray ground shall have a surge basin or treatment tank constructed of materials which are inert, corrosion resistant, nontoxic and watertight including materials such as concrete, fiberglass, high density polyethylene, stainless steel or other materials as approved by the enforcing agent which can withstand all anticipated loadings under full and empty conditions as determined by an engineer or architect who has experience working on public pools.

**3106B.10** The total volume of the surge basin shall be at least 4,000 gallons or a minimum of three times the gallons per minute flow rate of all the spray ground pumps and the recirculation pump combined, whichever is higher.

**3106B.11** The turnover time shall be one-half hour or less.

**3106B.12** The suction intake for the spray ground or water feature pump in the surge basin shall be located adjacent to the recirculation return line.

**3106B.13** When separate pumps are used, the suction intake for the recirculation pump shall be located in the lowest portion of the surge basin and on the opposite side from the suction intake for the spray ground pump.

**3106B.14** The surge basin shall be designed to have easy access for cleaning and inspection. The basin shall have at least one ladder access and shall have at least one 3-foot by 3-foot access opening. Lids shall be locked or require a tool to open.

**3106B.15** The surge basin shall be equipped with an automatic make up water fill device through an air gap or be protected by an approved backflow prevention device in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Plumbing Code.

**3106B.16** Ultraviolet light disinfection shall be used to supplement disinfection methods required in this chapter unless another treatment process is provided that has been determined by a nationally recognized testing laboratory to be capable of providing at least the equivalent level of reduction of cryptosporidium as the ultraviolet light disinfection system specified in this section. The ultraviolet light disinfection unit shall comply with the applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2010 performance standard effective August 2010.

**3106B.17** An accurately calibrated ultraviolet light intensity meter that has been properly filtered to restrict its sensitivity

*to the disinfection spectrum shall be installed in the wall of the disinfection chamber at the point of greatest water depth from the light source.*

**3106B.18** *The ultraviolet light unit shall be located on the recirculation system and shall be installed to provide treated water directly to the spray features.*

**3106B.19** *The ultraviolet light disinfection system must be equipped with an automatic shutdown system that inactivates the water feature pump if the ultraviolet dosage rate drops below 40 mJ/cm<sup>2</sup>.*

**3106B.20** *Artificial lighting shall be provided at all spray ground pads which are used at night or which do not have adequate natural lighting so that all portions of the spray pad and deck may be seen easily. Lighting that may be exposed to the feature pool water shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and the California Electrical Code.*

**3106B.21** *A means of diverting runoff from the splash zone shall be installed on the spray ground drainage piping before the surge basin to divert water to the storm drainage system when the spray ground is not in operation.*

**3106B.22** *A removable and cleanable catch screen or basket shall be installed on the spray ground drainage system before it enters the reservoir to prevent larger debris from collecting in the surge basin.*

## SECTION 3107B ALTERNATIVE EQUIPMENT, MATERIALS AND METHODS OF CONSTRUCTION

**3107B.1** *The enforcing agent may approve an alternative equipment, material or method of construction provided it finds that the proposed design is satisfactory and complies with the provisions of this chapter, that the equipment, material, method or work offered is, for the purpose intended, at least equivalent to that prescribed in suitability, strength, effectiveness, fire resistance, durability, safety and sanitation or that the methods of installation proposed conform to other acceptable nationally recognized standards.*

**3107B.2** *The enforcing agent shall require that sufficient evidence or proof be submitted to substantiate claims that may be made regarding the use of alternative equipment, material or method of construction.*

**3107B.3** *Whenever there is insufficient evidence of compliance with the provisions of this chapter, the enforcing agent may require tests as proof of compliance to be made at no expense to the enforcing agent. Tests shall be made in accordance with approved standards, but in the absence of such standards the enforcing agent may specify the test procedure.*

## SECTION 3108B POOL CONSTRUCTION

**3108B.1** *Pool shell.* *The pool shall be built of reinforced concrete or material equivalent in strength, watertight and able to withstand anticipated stresses under both full and empty conditions taking into consideration factors such as climatic*

*effects, geological conditions and integration of the pool with other structures.*

**3108B.2** *Finish.* *The finished pool shell shall be lined with a smooth waterproof interior finish that will withstand repeated brushing, scrubbing and cleaning procedures. The interior pool finish shall completely line the pool to the tile lines, coping or cantilevered deck.*

**3108B.3** *Finish color.* *The finish color shall be white except for the following which shall be of contrasting color:*

1. Lane and other required pool markings described in Section 3110B; and
2. The top surface edges of benches in spa pools; and
3. The edge of pool steps; and
4. Tiles installed at the waterline; and
5. Tiles installed at the 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ -foot (1372 mm) depth line.

**Exception:** *A spa pool may be finished in a light color other than white when approved by the enforcing agent.*

**3108B.4** *Projections and recessed areas.* *The pool shell shall not have projections or recessed areas except for pool inlets and outlets as specified in Section 3137B.*

**Exception:** *This section shall not apply to handholds, recessed steps, ladders, stairs, handrails, skimmers or perimeter overflow systems.*

## SECTION 3109B POOL GEOMETRY

**3109B.1** *General.* *A pool shall conform to the appropriate criteria in Figures 31B-1 through 31B-7.*

**Exception:** *A special purpose pool may be exempted from construction standards that are not applicable to the proposed use.*

**3109B.2** *Dimensional tolerances.* *A construction tolerance shall be permitted on all dimensions in Figures 31B-1 through 31B-3 not to exceed 2 inches (51 mm) except that the tolerance of the water level of a pool with a nonadjustable overflow system shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch (3.2 mm).*

**3109B.3** *Bottom slope break.* *Any portion of a pool having a water depth of 4 $\frac{1}{2}$  feet (1372 mm) or less shall have a uniform slope that shall not exceed 1 foot (305 mm) of vertical in 10 feet (3050 mm) of horizontal. In pools with water depths greater than 4 $\frac{1}{2}$  feet (1372 mm) the slope shall meet the requirements in Figures 31B-1 through 31B-3. There shall be a uniform water depth along the entire base of the stairs.*

## SECTION 3110B PERMANENT MARKINGS

**3110B.1** *General.* *No markings, designs or lettering shall be permitted on the pool shell except for slip resistant lane markings, depth marking lines and safety markings.*

**3110B.2** *Lane markings.* *Slip resistant lane lines at the bottom of the pool shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) in width.*

**3110B.3 Depth marking line.** There shall be installed a straight line of slip resistant tile a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) and not greater than 6 inches (152 mm) wide of a color contrasting with the background of the pool shell across the bottom of the pool where the water depth is 4 $\frac{1}{2}$  feet (1372 mm).

**Exception:** Pools having a maximum water depth of 5 feet (1524 mm) or less shall not be required to have a depth marking line.

#### 3110B.4 Water depth markers.

**3110B.4.1 Location.** The water depth shall be clearly marked at the following locations:

1. Maximum depth; and
2. Minimum depth; and
3. Each end; and
4. Both sides at the shallowest and deepest part of the pool; and
5. At the break in the bottom slope between the shallow and deep portions of the pool (see also Section 3109B.3); and
6. Along the perimeter of the pool at distances not to exceed 25 feet (7620 mm).

**Exception:** A spa or wading pool shall have a minimum of two depth markers indicating the maximum depth.

**Note:** For an illustration diagram pertaining to this section see Figure 31B-8.

**3110B.4.2 Position.** Where required by Section 3110B.4.1, depth markers shall be located in the following positions:

1. On the coping or on the deck, the depth markers shall be placed as close as possible but no more than 3 feet (914 mm) from the pool water; and
2. For pools with skimmer systems the depth markers shall be high at the waterline which typically will result in the depth markers being submerged approximately 50 percent; or
3. For pools with perimeter overflow systems where coping cantilevers over the gutter depth markers may be positioned at the face of the cantilevered coping, the back wall above the gutter or immediately below the waterline which will result in the depth markers being completely submerged; or
4. For pools with rim flow gutters, depth markers shall be positioned immediately below the waterline which will result in the depth markers being completely submerged.

**3110B.4.3 Tolerance.** Depth markers shall be positioned to indicate the water depth accurate to the nearest 6 inches (152 mm) as measured at the waterline.

**3110B.4.4 Size of markers.** Depth markers shall:

1. Have numerals a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) in height and of a color contrasting with the back-

ground and be marked in units of feet and inches. Abbreviations of FT and IN may be used in lieu of feet and inches; and

2. Be made of a durable material that is resistant to weathering; and
3. Be slip resistant when they are located on the pool deck.

**3110B.5 No diving markers.** For pool water depths 6 feet (1830 mm) or less no diving markers with the universal symbol of no diving, which is a red circle with a slash through it superimposed over the image of a diver, shall be installed on the deck directly adjacent to the depth markers required by Section 3110B.4.1. No diving markers shall comply with Section 3110B.4.4(2-3).

### SECTION 3111B STEPS, RECESSED STEPS, LADDERS AND STAIRS

**3111B.1 Construction.** A means of entry and exit to and from the pool shall consist of steps, recessed steps, ladders, stairs, ramps or a combination of these. Stairs or ramps shall be provided in the shallowest portion of a pool if the vertical distance from the bottom of the pool to the deck is over 1 foot (305 mm). In pools with more than one shallow end, stairs or ramps shall be provided at a minimum at one shallow end. A second means of entry and exit shall be provided in the deep portion of a pool having a depth greater than 4 $\frac{1}{2}$  feet (1372 mm). Where the width of the pool exceeds 30 feet (9144 mm), such means of entry and exit shall be provided at each side, not more than 100 feet (30,480 mm) apart.

**Note:** For illustrated diagrams pertaining to this section see Figures 31B-6 and 31B-7.

**3111B.2 Ladders.** Ladders shall be corrosion resistant and shall be equipped with slip resistant tread surfaces. Ladders shall be rigidly installed and shall provide a clearance of not less than 3 inches (76 mm) or more than 5 inches (127 mm) between any part of the ladder and the pool wall.

**3111B.3 Stairs.** Each step of a stair shall have a tread in accordance with Figure 31B-7. Risers shall conform to Figure 31B-7. At least one hand rail shall be provided extending from the deck to not less than a point above the top of the lowest step installed in accordance with Figure 31B-7.

**3111B.4 Ladder and recessed step dimensions.** Ladder treads and recessed steps shall have a minimum tread of 5 inches (127 mm) and a width of 14 inches (356 mm) and shall be designed to be readily cleaned. Step risers shall be uniform and shall not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) in height. The first riser shall be measured from the deck.

**3111B.5 Handrails for ladders and recessed steps.** Handrails shall be provided at the top of both sides of each ladder and recessed steps and shall extend over the coping or edge of the deck.

**3111B.6 Handrails for spas.** Two hand rails shall be provided extending from the deck to not less than a point above the top of the lowest step in accordance with Figure 31B-7. The steps shall be located where the deck is at least 4 feet (1219 mm) wide.

## PUBLIC POOLS

**3111B.7 Dimensional tolerances.** Finished step tread and riser construction tolerances shall be  $\pm \frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.5 mm).

[**DSA-AC**] Additional requirements may apply. Refer to Chapter 11B for accessibility provisions applicable to public accommodations, commercial buildings and public housing.

## SECTION 3112B HANDHOLDS

**3112B.1 General.** Every pool shall be provided with handholds (perimeter overflow system, bull-nosed coping or cantilevered decking) around the entire perimeter installed not greater than 9 inches (229 mm) above the waterline.

**Exception:** Handholds are not required for wading pools.

**3112B.2** For special purpose pools used for instruction or competitive swimming, a handhold at water level similar to the rim of a perimeter overflow system is required.

**3112B.3** Where perimeter overflow systems are not provided, a bull-nosed coping or cantilevered decking of reinforced concrete, or material equivalent in strength and durability, with rounded slip resistant edges shall be provided. The overhang for either bull-nosed coping or cantilevered decking shall not exceed 2 inches (51 mm) or be less than 1 inch (25 mm) and shall not exceed  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) in thickness.

**Exception:** The enforcing agent may accept other handholds for spa pools.

## SECTION 3113B DIVING BOARDS AND PLATFORMS

**3113B.1 General.** Diving boards and platforms shall be anchored to the pool deck, constructed of corrosion resistant material, designed and constructed to be easily cleanable and finished with a durable slip resistant material.

**3113B.2 Rails and steps.** Diving boards or platforms greater than 18 inches (456 mm) in height above the deck shall be provided with a ladder or stairs for access. Hand rails shall be provided at all ladders and stairs leading to diving boards or platforms more than 1 meter above the water. Diving boards and platforms that are over 1 meter above the water shall have guard rails on both sides of the diving board or platform that extend to a point on the platform directly above the water's edge. Guard rails shall be 36 inches (914 mm) above the diving board or platform.

**3113B.3 Dimensions.** Dimensions and clearances for the use of diving boards or platforms shall conform to those shown in Figures 31B-1 and 31B-2. Platforms and diving boards shall conform to the USA Diving Rules and Codes, Part 1, Subpart A and Appendix B, effective January 1, 2010.

## SECTION 3114B POOL DECKS

**3114B.1 General.** A minimum continuous and unobstructed 4-foot wide (1219 mm) slip resistant, cleanable, nonabrasive

deck area of concrete or like material shall be provided flush with the top of the pool coping extending completely around the pool, and the deck area shall further extend 4 feet (1219 mm) on both sides and rear of any diving board, fixed disabled access assistance device or slide and their appurtenances. The deck width shall be measured from the poolside edge of the coping lip.

**Exception:** A deck at least 4 feet (1219 mm) in width shall extend around a continuous 50 percent or more of the perimeter of a spa pool.

**3114B.2 Deck between pools and/or spas.** Where multiple pools and/or spas are built adjacent to each other, the deck width separating them shall be a minimum of 6 feet (1830 mm).

**3114B.3 Deck slope.** The pool's deck surface shall have a slope of no less than 1 percent ( $\frac{1}{8}$  inch per foot) but no more than 2 percent ( $\frac{1}{4}$  inch per foot) away from the pool to a deck drainage system and shall be constructed and finished to prevent standing water.

**3114B.4 Deck covering.** Deck coverings or other materials that are not equivalent to concrete in strength, durability and slip resistance and are not able to withstand repeated brushing, scrubbing or cleaning procedures shall not be installed or used within 4 feet (1219 mm) of the pool.

**3114B.5 Unpaved areas.** Landscape plants, flower beds or similar unpaved areas shall not be located within 4 feet (1219 mm) of a spa pool.

## SECTION 3115B POOL LIGHTING

**3115B.1 General.** Pools shall have underwater and deck lighting such that lifeguards or other persons may observe, without interference from direct and reflected glare from the lighting sources, every part of the underwater area and pool surface, all diving boards or other pool appurtenances. If underwater or deck surface lighting is not operational, the operator of the pool shall secure the pool area and not permit any use of the pool after dark and shall post the same sign as required in Section 3120B.9.

**Note:** See Part 3, Article 3-680, Title 24, California Code of Regulations for electrical installation requirements.

**3115B.2 Nighttime use.** Pools used at night shall be equipped with underwater lighting fixtures that will provide complete illumination to all underwater areas of the pool with no blind spots. Illumination shall enable a lifeguard or other persons to determine whether:

1. A pool user is lying on the bottom of the pool; and
2. The pool water conforms to the definition of "clear pool water."

**Exception:** Pools provided with a system of overhead lighting fixtures where it can be demonstrated to the enforcing agent that the system is equivalent to the underwater lighting fixture system.

**3115B.3 Deck area lighting.** When the pool is to be used at night, pool deck areas and emergency egress areas shall be

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

provided with lighting so that persons walking on the deck can identify hazards. Lighting fixtures shall be aimed towards the deck area and away from the pool surface insofar as practical.

## ANCILLARY FACILITIES

### SECTION 3116B DRESSING, SHOWER AND TOILET FACILITIES

**3116B.1** Shower and dressing facilities shall be provided for users of a pool.

**Exceptions:**

1. Shower and dressing facilities may not be required when pool users have access to such facilities in adjacent living quarters.
2. Public toilet facilities may be omitted when pool users have access to toilet facilities either in living quarters located not more than 300 feet (91,440 mm) in travel distance from the pool or in an adjacent building such as a recreational facility, clubhouse or cabana.

**3116B.2 Number of sanitary facilities.** For the purpose of this subsection, one pool user shall be considered for every 15 square feet ( $1.39\text{ m}^2$ ) of pool water surface area and/or spray ground splash zone area.

**3116B.2.1 Showers.** One shower shall be provided for every 50 pool users.

**3116B.2.2 Toilets.** Separate toilet facilities shall be provided for each sex. One toilet shall be provided for every 60 women or less and one toilet plus one urinal for every 75 men or less.

**3116B.2.3 Lavatories.** One lavatory shall be provided for every 80 pool users.

**3116B.3 Construction.**

**3116B.3.1 Floors.** Floors shall have a hard, nonabsorbent surface, such as portland cement concrete, ceramic tile or other approved material, which extends upwards onto the wall at least 5 inches (127 mm) with a coved base. Floors which may be walked on by a wet pool user shall be slip resistant. Floors shall be sloped not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) per foot to floor drains or other approved surface water disposal areas. Carpeting and other similar artificial floor covering shall not be permitted on shower and toilet room floors.

**3116B.3.2 Interior surfaces.** The materials used in the walls, except for structural elements, shall be of a type which is not adversely affected by moisture.

**3116B.3.3 Privacy.** All doors and windows shall be arranged to prevent viewing of the interior from any portion of the building used by the opposite sex and from view from the outdoors. View screens shall be permitted for this purpose.

**3116B.4 Water supply.**

**3116B.4.1** Showers and lavatories shall be provided with hot and cold water faucets.

**3116B.4.2** Tempered water shall be permitted in lieu of individual hot and cold water faucets.

**3116B.4.3** A means to limit the hot water to 110°F (43°C) maximum shall be provided to prevent scalding. This temperature limit control shall not be adjustable by the pool user.

### SECTION 3117B DRINKING FOUNTAINS

One guarded jet drinking fountain shall be provided for the first 250 pool users and an additional fountain shall be provided for each additional 200 pool users or fraction thereof. The number of pool users shall be determined according to Section 3116B.2.

**Exception:** Drinking fountains shall not be required when drinking water is available at adjacent living quarters, or in an adjacent building such as a bathhouse, cabana, clubhouse or recreational facility.

### SECTION 3118B HOSE BIBBS

Potable water outlets with hose attachments shall be protected by a nonremovable hose bibb backflow preventer, a nonremovable hose bibb vacuum breaker or by an atmospheric vacuum breaker installed not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the highest point of usage located on the discharge side of the last valve as required by the California Plumbing Code. In climates where freezing temperatures occur, a listed self-draining frost-proof hose bibb with an integral backflow preventer or vacuum breaker shall be used. Hose bibbs shall be provided so that all portions of the pool deck area may be reached with a 75 foot length of hose attached to the hose bibb. A hose bibb shall be provided in the equipment area. Hose bibbs shall be located so that they do not constitute a hazard.

### SECTION 3119B POOL ENCLOSURE

**3119B.1 Enclosure.** The pool shall be enclosed by one or a combination of the following: a fence, portion of a building, wall or other approved durable enclosure. Doors, openable windows, gates of living units or associated private premises shall not be permitted as part of the pool enclosure. The enclosure, doors and gates shall meet all of the following specifications:

1. The enclosure shall have a minimum effective perpendicular height of 5 feet (1524 mm) as measured from the outside as depicted in Figure 31B-4; and
2. Openings, holes or gaps in the enclosure, doors and/or gates shall not allow the passage of a 4-inch (102 mm) diameter sphere. The enclosure shall be constructed over a hard and permanent material equivalent to concrete; and
3. The enclosure shall be designed and constructed so that it cannot be readily climbed by small children.

## PUBLIC POOLS

*Horizontal and diagonal member designs which might serve as a ladder for small children are prohibited. Horizontal members shall be spaced at least 48 inches (1219 mm) apart. No planters or other structures that can be climbed shall be permitted within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the outside of the pool enclosure or within a 5 foot (1524 mm) arc as depicted in Figure 31B-5. The area 5 feet (1524 mm) outside of the pool enclosure shall be a common area open to the public; and*

4. *Chain link may be used, provided that the openings are not greater than 1 $\frac{3}{4}$  inches (44 mm) measured horizontally.*

**3119B.2 Gates.** Gates and doors opening into the pool enclosure also shall meet the following specifications:

1. *Gates and doors shall be equipped with self-closing and self-latching devices. The self-latching device shall keep the gate or door securely closed. Gates and doors shall open outwardly away from the pool except where otherwise prohibited by law. Hand activated door or gate opening hardware shall be located at a height no lower than 42 inches (1067 mm) but no higher than 44 inches (1179 mm) above the deck or walkway; and*
2. *Gates and doors shall be capable of being locked during times when the pool is closed. Exit doors which comply with Chapter 10, Title 24, California Code of Regulations shall be considered as meeting these requirements; and*
3. *The pool enclosure shall have at least one means of egress without a key for emergency purposes. Unless all gates or doors are so equipped, those gates and/or doors which will allow egress without a key shall have a sign in letters at least 4 inches (102 mm) high stating EMERGENCY EXIT; and*
4. *The enclosure shall be constructed so that all persons will be required to pass through common pool enclosure gates or doors in order to gain access to the pool area. All gates and doors exiting the pool area shall open into a public area or a walkway accessible by all patrons of the pool.*

**3119B.3 Retroactivity.** Sections 3119B.1 and 3119B.2 shall apply only to public pool enclosures constructed on or after July 1, 1994. Notwithstanding the foregoing effective date, no fence enclosure shall be less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in height.

**3119B.4 Enclosure of pools constructed prior to July 1, 1994.** The enforcing agent may allow the installation of an enclosure which reduces the pool deck to less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in width when the physical characteristics of a site preclude providing a 4-foot (1219 mm) wide deck around the perimeter of an existing pool.

## SECTION 3120B REQUIRED SIGNS

**3120B.1 General.** All signs shall have clearly legible letters or numbers not less than 4 inches (102 mm) high, unless oth-

erwise required in this section, affixed to a wall, pole, gate or similar permanent structure in a location visible to all pool users.

**3120B.2 Pool user capacity sign.** A sign shall indicate the maximum number of pool users permitted for each pool.

**3120B.2.1 Spa pool.** The pool user capacity of a spa pool shall be based on one pool user for every 10 square feet (0.929 m<sup>2</sup>) of pool water surface area.

**3120B.2.2 Other pools.** The pool user capacity for all other pools shall be based on one pool user for every 20 square feet (1.858 m<sup>2</sup>) of pool water surface area.

**Exception:** Pool user capacity requirements do not apply to wading pools or spray grounds.

**3120B.3 No diving sign.** Signs shall be posted in conspicuous places and shall state, "NO DIVING" at pools with a maximum water depth of 6 feet or less.

**3120B.4 No lifeguard sign.** Where no lifeguard service is provided, a sign shall be posted stating, "NO LIFEGUARD ON DUTY." The sign also shall state in letters at least 1 inch (25 mm) high, "Children should not use pool without adult supervision."

**Exception:** "No lifeguard sign" requirement does not apply to spray grounds that have no standing water.

**3120B.5 Artificial respiration and cardiopulmonary resuscitation sign.** An illustrated diagram with text at least 1 $\frac{3}{4}$  inches (6 mm) high of artificial respiration and cardiopulmonary resuscitation procedures shall be posted.

**3120B.6 Emergency sign.** The emergency telephone number 911 with numbers not less than 4 inches (102 mm), the number of the nearest emergency services and the name and street address of the pool facility with numbers and text not less than 1 inch (25 mm) shall be posted.

**3120B.7 Warning sign for a spa pool.** A warning sign for spa pools shall be posted stating, "CAUTION" and shall include the following language in letters at least 1 inch (25 mm) high:

1. *Elderly persons, pregnant women, infants and those with health conditions requiring medical care should consult with a physician before entering the spa.*
2. *Children should not use spa without adult supervision.*
3. *Hot water immersion while under the influence of alcohol, narcotics, drugs or medicines may lead to serious consequences and is not recommended.*
4. *Do not use alone.*
5. *Long exposure may result in hyperthermia, nausea, dizziness or fainting.*

**3120B.8 Emergency shut off.** In letters at least one inch (25 mm) high a sign shall be posted at the spa emergency shut off switch stating, "EMERGENCY SHUT OFF SWITCH."

**3120B.9 No use after dark.** Where pools were constructed for which lighting was not required, a sign shall be posted at each pool entrance on the outside of the gate(s) stating, "NO USE OF POOL ALLOWED AFTER DARK."

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**3120B.10 Keep closed.** A sign shall be posted on the exterior side of gates and doors leading into the pool enclosure area stating, "KEEP GATE CLOSED." or "KEEP DOOR CLOSED."

[**DSA-AC**] Additional requirements may apply. Refer to Chapter 11B for accessibility provisions applicable to public accommodations, commercial buildings and public housing.

**3120B.11 Diarrhea.** The pool operator shall post at the entrance area of a public pool a sign in letters at least 1 inch (25 mm) high that clearly states that persons with diarrhea and persons who have had diarrhea within the prior 14 days shall not enter the pool water.

**3120B.12 Wave pools.** A sign in letters at least 1 inch (25 mm) high shall be posted that describes the requirements for wave pools as described in Section 115952, Health and Safety Code.

**3120B.13 Spray ground sign.** A sign shall be posted at each spray ground and be visible from any part of the spray ground that states, "CAUTION: WATER IS RECIRCULATED. DO NOT DRINK."

**3120B.14 Exit.** Where automatic gaseous chlorine chemical feeders are used, a sign shall be posted at the pool area entrance which shows in a diagrammatic form an emergency evacuation procedure. Designated emergency exits shall be marked "EXIT."

**3120B.15 Gaseous oxidizer.** Where automatic gaseous chlorine chemical feeders are used, a warning sign with the appropriate hazard identification symbol shall be posted on the exterior side of the door entering the chemical feeder room or area. The sign shall state, "DANGER: GASEOUS OXIDIZER - (specific chemical name)" or as otherwise required by the California Fire Code.

**3120B.16 Turn on before entering.** Where automatic gaseous chemical feeders are used, a sign shall be posted at the switch to the light and ventilation system for the gaseous chemical feeder room stating, "TURN ON BEFORE ENTERING," or as otherwise required by the California Fire Code or the California Electrical Code.

#### 3120B.17 Direction of flow.

**3120B.17.1.** The direction of flow for the recirculation equipment shall be labeled clearly with directional symbols such as arrows on all piping in the equipment area.

**3120B.17.2.** Where the recirculation equipment for more than one pool is located on site, the equipment shall be marked as to which pool the system serves.

**3120B.17.3.** Valves and plumbing lines shall be labeled clearly with the source or destination descriptions.

### SECTION 3121B INDOOR POOL VENTILATION

Indoor pools, dressing rooms and toilet rooms shall be ventilated according to the requirements in Chapter 4 of the California Mechanical Code.

### SECTION 3122B POOL EQUIPMENT ENCLOSURE

For pools constructed on or after January 1, 2013, pool equipment shall be enclosed as follows:

1. All equipment installed for recirculation, filtration and disinfection of pool water shall be installed so that access is limited to persons authorized by the pool owner or operator; and
2. Pool equipment shall be mounted on a continuous slab of concrete or other equivalent easily cleanable and nonabsorbent material; and
3. Floors shall be sloped a minimum of  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) per foot to a drain.

### SECTION 3123B GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

**3123B.1 System description.** Each pool shall be provided with a separate recirculation system designed for the continuous recirculation, filtration and disinfection of the pool water. The system shall consist of pumps, filters, chemical feeders, skimmers or perimeter overflow systems, valves, pipes, connections, fittings and appurtenances.

**Exception:** Pools using fresh water equivalent in flow to the requirements of Section 3124B.

**Note:** Fresh makeup pool water shall conform to the water quality standards of Section 65531, Chapter 20, Title 22, California Code of Regulations.

**3123B.2 Equipment.** All pumps, filters, chemical feeders, skimmers and supplemental equipment shall comply with the applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2012 performance standard effective September 2012.

**3123B.3 Installation.** All equipment related to pool operations shall be installed and maintained according to this chapter and in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's written instructions.

**3123B.4 Equipment access.** All filters, valves, pumps, strainers and equipment shall be readily accessible for repair and replacement.

### SECTION 3124B TURNOVER TIME

The recirculation system shall have the capacity to provide a complete turnover of pool water in:

1. One-half hour or less for a spa pool; and
2. One-half hour or less for a spray ground; and
3. One hour or less for a wading pool; and
4. Two hours or less for a medical pool; and
5. Six hours or less for all other types of public pools.

## PUBLIC POOLS

### SECTION 3125B RECIRCULATION PIPING SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS

**3125B.1 Line sizes.** Pipes shall be sized so flow velocity of piping systems including all pipes and fittings other than inlet devices or venturi throats shall not exceed 6 feet per second (1.829 m/s) in any suction or copper piping and 8 feet per second (2.438 m/s) in any portion of the return system.

**3125B.1.1 Materials.** All piping, tubing and fittings shall comply with the applicable standards for potable water system materials set forth in Chapter 6 of the California Plumbing Code.

**3125B.2 Gauges.** A pressure and vacuum gauge shall be provided for each pump system. Each gauge shall have a scale range approximately  $1\frac{1}{4}$  times the maximum anticipated working pressure or vacuum and shall be accurate within 2 percent of scale. The pressure gauge located on the filter shall be marked with the clean start up pressure reading.

**3125B.3 Flow meter.** A flow meter shall be provided on each recirculation system accurate to within 10 percent of flow and installed according to the manufacturer's written instructions with increments in the range of normal flow.

**3125B.4 Basket strainer.** A basket strainer shall be provided on the suction side of the recirculation pump. A basket strainer will not be required on pumps connected to vacuum filters where the filter elements are not removed for cleaning.

**3125B.5 Backwash piping.** Piping, including necessary valves conforming to Section 3125B.1, shall be provided for each filter vessel or element which requires periodic backwashing.

**3125B.6 Valves.** Valves shall not be located in any deck area surrounding a pool. Valves shall be installed on all recirculation, backwashing and drain system lines which require shut-off isolation, adjustment or control of the rate of flow. Each valve shall be installed in the equipment area and labeled as to its purpose.

### SECTION 3126B RECIRCULATION PUMP CAPACITY

**3126B.1** Pool recirculation pumps shall have the following total dynamic head capacities:

1. **Pressure diatomaceous earth filters.** At least 60 feet (18,288 mm); and
2. **Vacuum diatomaceous earth filters.** Twenty inches (508 mm) vacuum on the suction side and 40 feet (12,192 mm) total dynamic head; and
3. **Rapid sand filters.** At least 45 feet (13,716 mm); and
4. **High rate sand filters.** At least 60 feet (18,288 mm); and
5. **Cartridge filters.** At least 60 feet (18,288 mm).

**3126B.2.** Pumps with other total dynamic head capacities shall be permitted provided the turnover times are maintained as required in Section 3124B.

### SECTION 3127B WATER SUPPLY INLETS

**3127B.1 General.** Each pool shall be supplied with potable water by means of a permanently installed pipeline from a public water supply system holding a permit from the California Department of Public Health or from a source approved by the enforcing agent.

**3127B.2 Backflow prevention.** There shall be no direct connection between any potable water supply system and the pool or its piping system unless protected by a backflow prevention device in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Plumbing Code.

**3127B.3 Makeup water.** Automatic makeup water flow controls with a manual override control shall be provided to maintain the proper pool water level.

### SECTION 3128B FILTERS (ALL TYPES)

**3128B.1 General requirements.** All filters, regardless of type, shall be designed and constructed according to the applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2012 performance standard effective September 2012.

**3128B.2 Installation.** Each filter vessel shall be installed, piped and provided with valves so that it can be isolated from the recirculation system for repairs and backwashing.

### SECTION 3129B RAPID SAND PRESSURE FILTERS

In addition to the requirements for all filters as indicated in Section 3128B, the following apply to rapid sand pressure filters.

**3129B.1 Flow rates.** The filtration rate shall not exceed 3 gallons per minute per square foot (122.24 L/m per m<sup>2</sup>) of filter area. The backwash rate shall not be less than 15 gallons per minute per square foot (611.2 L/m per m<sup>2</sup>) of filter area.

**3129B.2 Filter media.** The filter shall contain not less than a 20-inch (508 mm) depth of media and not less than a 10-inch (254 mm) depth of filter gravel above the underdrain system.

**3129B.2.1** The filter media shall have an effective particle size between 0.40 and 0.55 millimeters and a uniformity coefficient not exceeding 1.75.

**3129B.2.2** The filter gravel shall be sized and placed to provide uniform flow distribution from the underdrain system and to support the bed of filter sand without loss of sand to the pool or without development of jet streams or channeling in the filtration media.

### SECTION 3130B DIATOMACEOUS EARTH FILTERS

In addition to the requirements for all filters as indicated in Section 3128B, the following applies to diatomaceous earth filters.

#### 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**3130B.1 Flow rates.** The filtration rate for both pressure and vacuum diatomaceous earth filters shall not exceed 2 gallons per minute per square foot ( $81.49 \text{ L/m per m}^2$ ) of filter area.

## **SECTION 3131B HIGH-RATE SAND FILTERS**

In addition to the requirements for all filters as indicated in Section 3128B, the following apply to high rate sand filters.

**3131B.1 Flow rates.** Maximum and minimum flow rates for backwash and filtration shall be maintained according to the applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2010 performance standard effective August 2010.

**3131B.2** The filter media shall have an effective particle size between 0.40 and 0.55 mm and a uniformity coefficient not exceeding 1.75.

**3131B.3** The backwash rate for a high rate sand filter shall be a minimum of 15 gallons per minute per square foot of filter area.

## **SECTION 3132B CARTRIDGE FILTERS**

In addition to the requirements for all filters as indicated in Section 3128B, the following apply to cartridge filters.

**3132B.1** The filtration rate shall not exceed 0.375 gallons per minute per square foot of filter area.

**3132B.2** An approved wash down area equipped with potable water shall be provided in the pool equipment area with permanently installed drainage piping discharging to the public sewer or wastewater system approved by the enforcing wastewater agency. The filter vessel shall be capable of being drained and shall be equipped with an indirect drain for the purpose of draining the entire contents of the filter vessel. Drainage and backwash piping shall be considered indirect waste and installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 8 of the California Plumbing Code.

**3132B.3** An additional set of filter elements shall be available for installation while the existing filter elements are cleaned.

## **SECTION 3133B CHEMICAL FEEDERS**

All chemical feeders including disinfectant feeders and the auxiliary feeders used for solutions, slurries or solids, along with components such as pumps, strainers, tubing connections, tanks and injection fittings shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**3133B.1 General design requirements.** The chemical feeder equipment shall:

1. Be maintained and repaired according to manufacturers' specifications; and
2. Be constructed with an adjustable output rate device to permit repeated adjustments without loss of output rate

accuracy and adjusted by an automatic chemical monitoring and control system that regulates, at a minimum, pH and disinfectant; and

3. Meet the applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2012 performance standard effective September 2012.

**3133B.2 Piping.** Piping used for the chemical feeder and its auxiliary equipment shall be resistant to corrosion or chemical deterioration.

**3133B.3 Installation.** Chemical feeders and associated components shall be constructed and installed to prevent uncontrolled discharge or siphoning of chemicals and fumes directly into the pool, its recirculation system, the pool area or ancillary facilities.

## **SECTION 3134B DISINFECTANT FEEDERS**

Disinfectant feeders shall comply with applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2010 performance standard effective August 2010 for disinfectant feeders. In addition to the requirements for chemical feeders as indicated in Section 3133B, the following apply to disinfectant feeders.

**3134B.1 Minimum capacity.** All feeders shall be capable of supplying not less than the equivalent of 3 pounds (1 kg) of 100 percent available chlorine per day per 10,000 gallons (37,850 L) of pool water capacity.

**3134B.2 Rate of flow adjustment.** A visible means of determining the rate of flow through the device shall be provided for each disinfectant feeder.

**3134B.3 Compressed chlorine gas disinfectant equipment.** Chlorine gas shall not be dispensed directly into the water of a pool except as an aqueous solution through the return line of the recirculation system.

**3134B.3.1 Compressed gas containers.** Each container or cylinder shall be secured to prevent accidental movement. A valve protection cap shall be provided to cover the discharge valve at all times when the cylinder is not connected to the dispensing system.

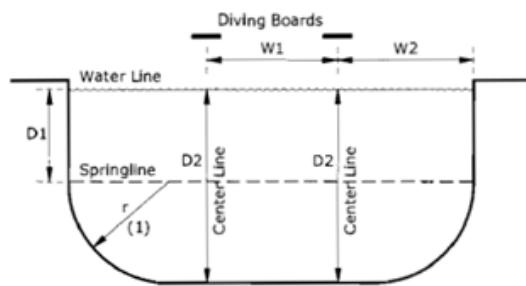
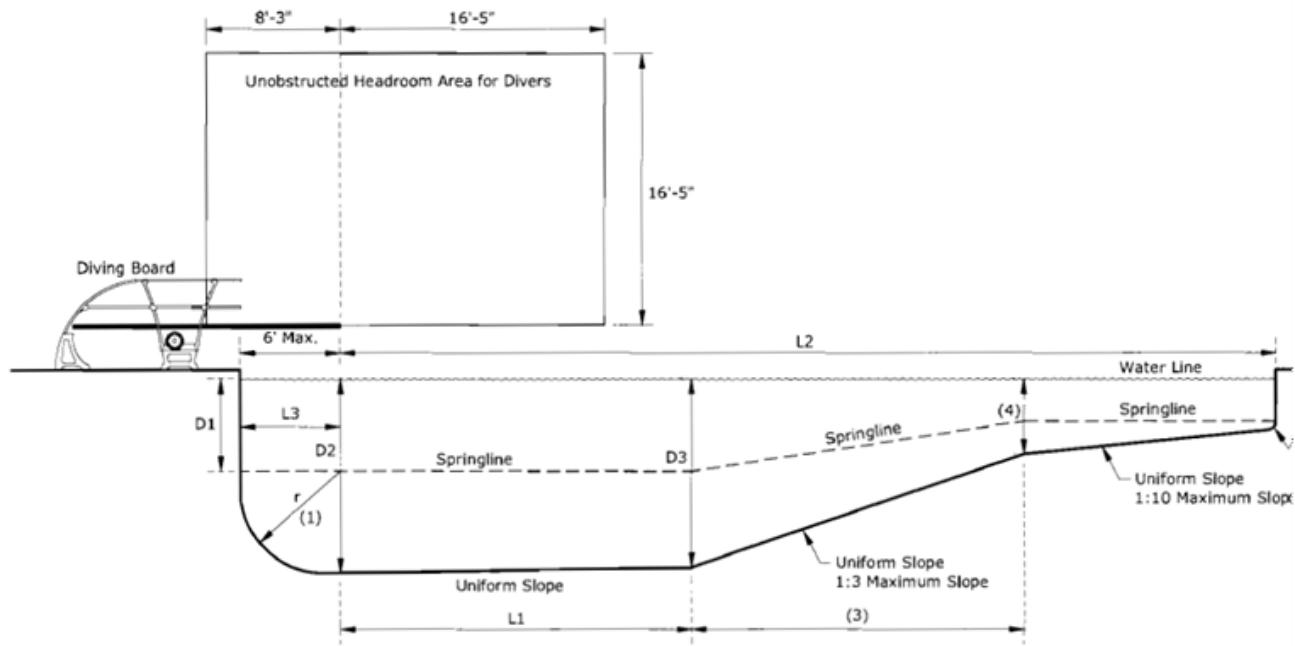
**3134B.3.2 Container scale.** Compressed gas chlorine containers in use shall be on a scale in the gas chlorinator room.

**3134B.3.3 Chlorine feeding device.** The chlorine feeding device shall be capable of delivering chlorine in an aqueous solution at the maximum design rate. The device shall not allow the backflow of pool water into the chlorine container. The device shall not allow the release of chlorine gas to the atmosphere under normal operating conditions. The device shall be designed and installed to conduct chlorine gas leaks to the outdoors during a release of chlorine gas or an interruption of the water supply.

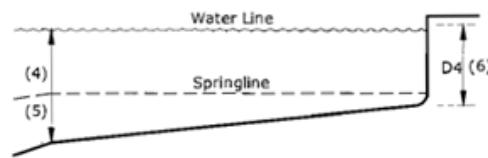
**3134B.3.4 Piping.** Piping carrying chlorine gas under pressure shall not be located outside the gas chlorination equipment room.

## PUBLIC POOLS

### LONGITUDINAL SECTION



Transverse Section Deep End



Transverse Section Shallow End

**FIGURE 31B-1  
DEPTHES AND CLEARANCES FOR POOLS WITH DIVING BOARDS GREATER THAN 30 INCHES (762 mm) ABOVE THE WATER LINE**

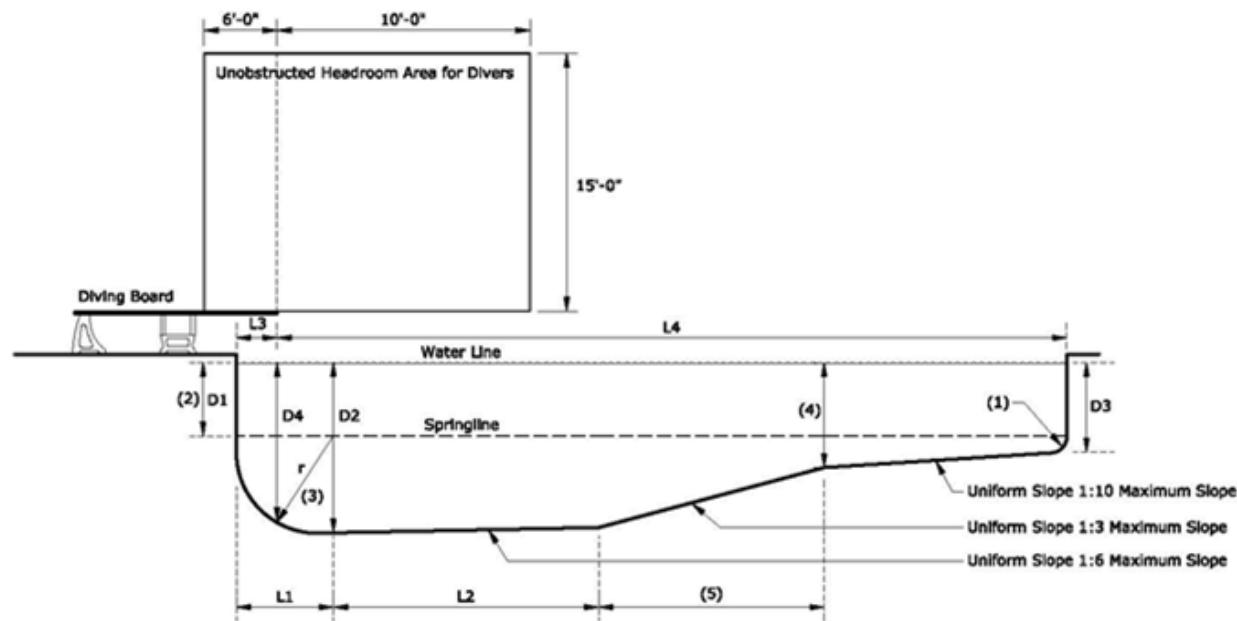
**TABLE 31B-1**

BOARDS AND PLATFORMS	DEPTH OF WATER					LENGTH OF SECTION				
	DIM	D1	D2	D3	D4	L1	L2	L3	W1	W2
1-meter board	Min.	5'-6"	11'-6"	11'-2"	0'-0"	16'-5"	29'-7"	5'-11"	7'-11"	8'-3"
3-meter board	Min.	6'-6"	12'-6"	12'-2"	0'-0"	19'-9"	33'-8"	5'-11"	8'-7"	11'-6"

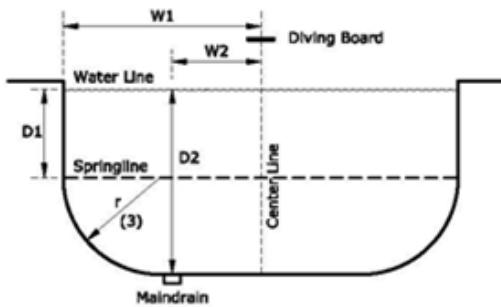
Notes for Figure 31B-1 and Table 31B-1:

1. Maximum radius shall equal D2 minus D1 dimensions.
2. Radius at the shallow end shall not be more than 12 inches.
3. The length of a section is based on the maximum slope and other maximum and minimum dimensions.
4. Where there is a break in slope, the break shall be located at a water depth equal to 4'-6".
5. The springline depth at (4) shall not be more than 4'-0".
6. The maximum water depth shall be 3'-6".
7. Each pool shall be provided with a main drain submerged suction outlet typically located at the bottom of the pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump.

## LONGITUDINAL SECTION



## TRANSVERSE SECTION AT D2



**FIGURE 31B-2  
DEPTHES AND CLEARANCES FOR POOLS WITH DIVING BOARDS 30 INCHES (762 MM) OR LESS ABOVE THE WATER LINE**

**TABLE 31B-2**

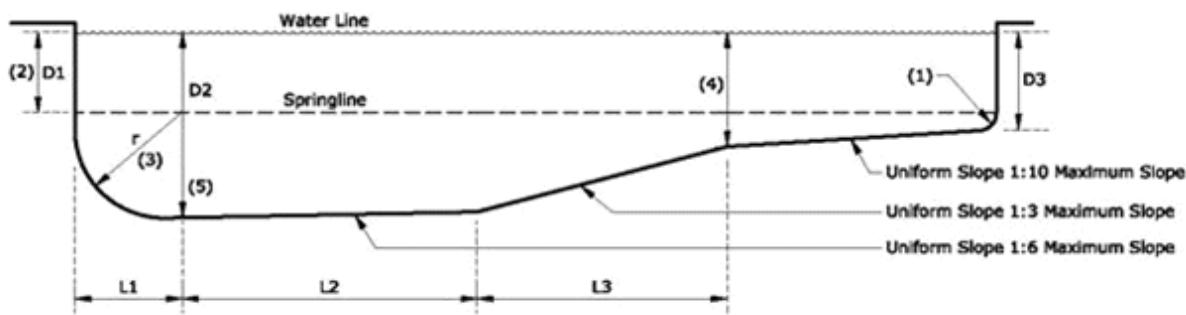
DIMENSION	DEPTH OF WATER				LENGTH OF SECTION					
	D1	D2	D3	D4	L1	L2	L3		W1	W2
Minimum	2'-6"	8'-6"	0'-0"	7'-0"	6'-0"	6'-0"	2'-6"	30'-0"	9'-0"	3'-0"
Maximum	—	—	3'-6"	—	10'-0"	—	4'-0"	—	—	—

Notes for Figure 31B-2 and Table 31B-2:

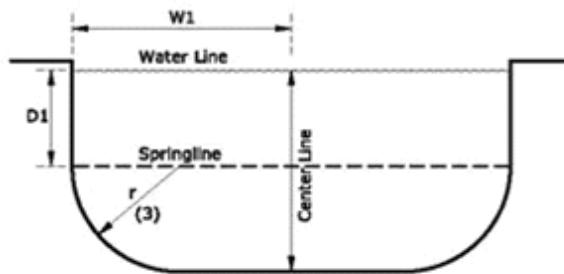
1. Radius at the shallow end shall be a maximum of 1'-0".
2. Springline D1 shall extend to the break in slope between the shallow area and the deep area.
3. Maximum radius shall equal D2 minus D1 dimensions.
4. Where there is a break in slope, the break shall be located at a water depth equal to 4'-6".
5. Length of section is based on maximum slope and other maximum or minimum dimensions.
6. Each pool shall be provided with a main drain submerged suction outlet typically located at the bottom of the pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump.

## PUBLIC POOLS

### LONGITUDINAL SECTION



### TRANSVERSE SECTION AT D2



**FIGURE 31B-3  
DEPTHES AND CLEARANCES FOR POOLS WITHOUT DIVING BOARDS**

**TABLE 31B-3A  
POOLS WITH MAXIMUM WATER DEPTH  $\leq 6'0''$**

DIMENSION	DEPTH OF WATER			LENGTH OF SECTION			
	D1	D2	D3	L1	L2	L3	W1
Minimum	2'-6"	—	0'-0"	3'-6"	3'-0"	3'-0"	6'-0"
Maximum	—	6'-0"	3'-6"	—	—	—	—

**TABLE 31B-3B  
POOLS WITH MAXIMUM WATER DEPTH  $> 6'0''$**

DIMENSION	DEPTH OF WATER			LENGTH OF SECTION		
	D1	D2	D3	L1	L2	W1
Minimum	2'-6"	> 6'-0"	0'-0"	3'-6"	3'-0"	7'-6"
Maximum	—	—	3'-6"	—	—	—

Notes for Figure 31B-3 and Tables 31B-3a and 31B-3b.

1. Radius at the shallow end shall be a maximum of 1'-0".
2. Springline D1 shall extend to the break in slope between the shallow area and deep area.
3. Maximum radius shall equal D2 minus D1 dimensions.
4. Where there is a break in slope, the break shall be located at a water depth equal to 4'-6".
5. Each pool shall be provided with a main drain submerged suction outlet typically located at the bottom of the pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump.

## **SECTION 3135B GAS CHLORINATION EQUIPMENT ROOM**

Compressed chlorine gas storage containers and auxiliary components shall be installed indoors in a separate room of not less than 1-hour fire resistant construction and shall comply with the California Fire Code and all of the following.

**3135B.1 Location.** The gas chlorination equipment room shall not be located in any habitable building, above the first floor or below ground level.

**3135B.2. Exit.** Required exit doors shall swing in the direction of exit of travel and shall not open directly toward the pool or pool deck.

**3135B.3 Ventilation.** Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems shall be in compliance with the California Mechanical Code.

**3135B.4 Alarm.** An audible and visible chlorine detection alarm system shall be located in the room containing the gas chlorine equipment. The sensor shall be located within 6 inches (152 mm) of the floor level. The system shall continually monitor the room and shall activate when chlorine concentrations in the room exceed a Permissible Exposure Limit of 0.5 ppm. Activation of the alarm shall shut off the chlorine at the source and turn on the lights and ventilation system. The alarm system shall consist of the following:

1. An audible alarm capable of producing a sound level of at least 90 decibels; and
2. A visible alarm consisting of a strobe light which is mounted directly over the entrance to the chlorine equipment room. The light shall be visible during daylight hours.

**3135B.5 Illumination.** Artificial illumination of at least 50 footcandles as measured 30 inches (750 mm) from the floor shall be provided in the room.

**3135B.6 Switches.** Switches for the control of mechanical ventilation and lighting fixtures shall be located adjacent to the entry door outside the room.

**3135B.7 Equipment interlocks.** The gas chlorine feeding device shall be interlocked with the pool recirculating pump so that the gas chlorine feeding device shall not operate when the recirculating pump is off or during the filter backwash.

**3135B.8 Storage.** The gas chlorine room shall not be used for the storage of items not related to the use of the gas chlorine equipment.

## **SECTION 3136B POOL SKIMMING SYSTEMS**

The pool shall be equipped with one or more skimming methods to provide continuous skimming of the pool water and shall be capable of continually withdrawing not less than 100 percent of the flow rate.

**3136B.1 Surface skimmers.** Each surface skimmer shall comply with the following provisions:

1. The skimmer shall be recessed into the pool wall; and

2. The skimmer shall be individually adjustable for the rate of flow with either an external or internal device; and
3. If used, a skimmer equalizer suction outlet shall be connected to at least two suction grate assemblies that meet the ANSI/APSP-16 2011 performance standard and are located at least 3 feet (915 mm) apart in any dimension between the suction outlets; and
4. The skimmer weir shall automatically adjust to variations in the pool water level over a range of not less than 4 inches (102 mm); and
5. Each skimmer shall be provided with a removable and cleanable screen or basket to trap objects. The screen or basket shall be accessible through an opening in the deck above the skimmer; and
6. There shall be a minimum of one skimmer for every 500 square feet or less of pool water surface area or an adequate number to meet 100 percent of pump flow at the manufacturer's maximum flow rating, whichever is greater; and
7. Each skimmer shall be located in relation to pool inlets to aid recirculation and surface skimming; and
8. All surface skimmers shall comply with applicable requirements established by the NSF/ANSI 50-2012 performance standard effective September 2012.

**3136B.2 Perimeter overflow systems.** A perimeter overflow system shall be required in pools whose water surface area equals or exceeds 5,000 square feet ( $464.52\text{ m}^2$ ). Perimeter overflow systems shall be designed by an engineer or architect who has experience working on public pools and shall comply with the following provisions:

1. **Location.** The overflow system shall be integrated with the pool structure and extend completely around the pool parallel to the pool deck except where an entry or exit may require interruption; and
2. **Channel detail.** The overflow channel shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) deep, the section shall not diverge with depth of the channel, and the width of the bottom shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm). The opening beneath the coping into the overflow system shall be a minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) beneath the coping in any direction measured radially from the inner edge of the overflow channel lip; and
3. **Channel lip.** The overflow channel lip shall be not more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the level of the coping or deck. The lip edge shall be rounded and shall be not thicker than  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (64 mm) or thinner than 1 inch (25 mm) for the top 2 inches (51 mm); and
4. **Channel covering.** Covered overflow channels shall be permitted provided the openings do not exceed  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch in the smaller dimension; and
5. **Channel outlets.** Channel outlet spacing and channel bottom slope shall be hydraulically designed by an engineer or architect who has experience working on public pools; and

6. **Channel outlet covers.** Overflow channel outlet covers shall be accessible for cleaning and maintenance. Openings of the channel outlet covers shall not pass a  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) sphere in the smaller dimension; and
7. **Channel drain piping.** Channel drain piping shall provide drainage of the overflow system, carry overflow water to a surge basin and return to skimming within 10 minutes after being flooded by a sudden displacement of the pool water by pool users; and
8. **Surge storage capacity.** A perimeter overflow system shall be provided with a minimum surge storage capacity of not less than 1 gallon per square foot (40.75 L/m<sup>2</sup>) of pool water surface area. Surge storage shall be permitted in the surge basin, perimeter overflow channel and in the channel drain piping returning to the surge basin.

## SECTION 3137B POOL FITTINGS

**3137B.1 Outlets.** Each pool shall be provided with a main drain submerged suction outlet typically located at the bottom of a pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump. Suction outlets shall comply with all of the following provisions:

1. Each pump on a pool system shall be connected to at least two suction outlets. The suction outlets shall be hydraulically balanced and symmetrically plumbed through one or more "T" fittings and shall be separated by a distance of at least 3 feet (915 mm) in any dimension between the suction outlets; and
2. All suction outlets shall be equipped with suction fittings that meet the ANSI/APSP-16 2011 performance standard; and
3. The velocity of the suction piping installed between the suction outlets shall not exceed 3 feet per second (.91 mps) under normal operation, or 6 feet per second (1.82 mps) if one outlet is blocked; and
4. Hydrostatic relief devices. In areas with a high ground-water table, or as required by local plumbing codes, a hydrostatic relief device shall be installed. When used in conjunction with a safety vacuum release system, the hydrostatic relief device must meet the manufacturer's installation requirements for the safety vacuum release system.

**Exception:** Alternative outlet locations that have been designed by a licensed engineer who has experience working on public pools may be used if approved by the enforcing agent.

**3137B.2 Inlet fittings.** Each pool shall be provided with not less than two recirculation system inlets for the first 10,000 gallon (37,850 L) capacity and one additional inlet for each additional 10,000 gallon (37,850 L) or less capacity.

**3137B.2.1 Construction.** Inlet fittings shall not protrude greater than  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inches (32 mm) into the pool and shall be shaped, rounded and smooth.

**3137B.2.2 Location.** Inlet fittings shall be located no less than 18 inches (457 mm) below the waterline, except for a

spa pool or wading pool. Inlet fittings shall be separated by at least 10 feet (3048 mm) and shall be located so as to ensure uniform circulation.

**3137B.2.3 Adjustment.** Provisions shall be made for adjusting the volume of flow through each inlet. Wall inlets shall be capable of adjusting the direction of flow and to produce sufficient velocity to impart a substantial circulatory movement to the pool water.

**3137B.2.4 Floor inlets.** Pools that are greater than 40 feet (12,192 mm) in width or 3,000 square feet (278.7 m<sup>2</sup>) in surface area shall have floor-mounted return inlets. The number of floor inlets shall be in compliance with Section 3137B.2. All floor inlet fittings shall be located to provide uniform circulation and shall be installed so as to be flush with the surface of the pool bottom.

## SECTION 3138B SPA POOL SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

**3138B.1 Aeration system.** A spa pool aeration and/or jet system shall be completely separate from the recirculation system and shall not be interconnected with any other pool.

**3138B.2 Maximum operating temperature.** The allowable water temperature of a spa pool shall not exceed 104° F (40° C).

**3138B.3 Surface area.** The water surface area of a spa pool shall not exceed 250 square feet (23.23 m<sup>2</sup>).

**3138B.4 Maximum depth.** The water depth in a spa pool shall not exceed 4 feet (1220 mm).

**3138B.5 Emergency shut off switch.** A clearly labeled emergency shut off switch for the control of both the recirculation system and the aeration and/or jet system shall be installed adjacent to the spa pool.

## SECTION 3139B SOLAR HEATING INSTALLATIONS

**3139B.1** Solar heating systems shall comply with the following:

1. Solar heating system suction outlets shall comply with Section 3137B; and
2. Solar heating system suction outlets shall be located no closer than 5 feet (1525 mm) to any pool inlet fitting; and
3. The installation of a solar heating system on a new or existing pool shall not interfere with the required turnover rate as specified in Section 3124B nor exceed the pipe flow velocities as specified in Section 3125B.1.

## SECTION 3140B CLEANING SYSTEMS

A vacuum cleaning system shall be available which is capable of removing sediment from all parts of the pool floor. A cleaning system using potable water shall be protected by a backflow prevention device in accordance with Chapter 6 of the California Plumbing Code. No cleaning system shall operate in the pool when the pool is open or available for use by pool users. Built-in vacuum suction lines shall not be installed in the pool.

## **SECTION 3141B WASTEWATER DISPOSAL**

**3141B.1 General requirements.** Material cleaned from filters and backwash water from any recirculation system shall be disposed in a manner that is acceptable to the local wastewater agency and will not create a nuisance. Backwash water shall not be returned to a pool. Pipes carrying wastewater from pools including pool drainage and backwash from filters shall be installed as an indirect waste in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 8 of the California Plumbing Code. Where a pump is used to discharge waste pool water to the drainage system, the pump discharge shall be installed as an indirect waste.

**3141B.2 Diatomaceous earth filters.** The backwash from a diatomaceous earth filter shall discharge into a separation tank that has been installed to collect the waste diatomaceous earth mixture. The wastewater from the separation tank shall discharge into a sanitary sewer or other disposal system acceptable to the local wastewater agency.

**3141B.3 Piping.** Sumps and drain piping shall have sufficient capacity to receive recirculation system backwash without overflow of the sump receiver. The sump shall not permit sewage to enter the surge basin or the pool in the event of a sewage backup.

**3141B.4 Visual indicator.** Where direct observation of the backwash discharge is not visible to the operator during backwash operations, a sight glass shall be installed on the wastewater discharge line.

**3141B.5 Prohibited connection.** There shall be no direct connection between the pool, its recirculation system or overflow drain to any sanitary sewer, storm drain or drainage system.

## **SECTION 3142B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3143B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3144B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3145B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3146B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3147B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3148B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3149B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3150B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3151B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3152B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3153B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3154B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3155B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3156B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3157B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3158B Reserved**

## **SECTION 3159B Reserved**

## **Division II – PUBLIC SWIMMING POOLS**

**Note:** These building standards are in statute but have not been adopted through the regulatory process. Enforcement of these standards set forth in this section does not depend upon adoption of regulations; therefore, enforcement agencies shall enforce the standards pursuant to the timeline set forth in this section prior to adoption of related regulations.

## **SECTION 3160B GROUND FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTERS**

1. “Public swimming pool,” as used in this section, means any swimming pool operated for the use of the general public with or without charge, or for the use of the members and guests of a private club, including any swimming pool located on the grounds of a hotel, motel, inn, an apartment complex or any residential setting other than a single-family home. For purposes of this section, “public swimming pool” shall not include a swimming pool located on the grounds of a

## PUBLIC POOLS

*private single-family home, or a swimming pool owned or operated by the state or any local governmental entity as set forth in Section 116049 of the Health and Safety Code.*

2. All dry-niche light fixtures, and all underwater wet-niche light fixtures operating at more than 15 volts in public swimming pools, as defined in this section, shall be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter in the branch circuit, and all light fixtures in public swimming pools shall have encapsulated terminals.

3. Any public swimming pool that does not meet the requirements specified in Item 2 by January 1, 1998, shall be retrofitted to comply with these requirements by July 1, 1998.

4. The ground-fault circuit interrupter required pursuant to this section shall comply with Underwriter's Laboratory standards.

5. The owner or operator of a public swimming pool shall have its public swimming pool inspected by a qualified inspector on or before September 1, 1998, to determine compliance with this section.

6. All electrical work required for compliance with this section shall be performed by an electrician licensed pursuant to Chapter 9 (commencing with Section 7000) of Division 3 of the Business and Professions Code.

Authority: Health and Safety Code Section 116064 (e)

Reference: Health and Safety Code Section 116049 SB 1360, (Statutes 1995, c. 415).

## SECTION 3161B WADING POOLS

1. "Public wading pool" means a pool that meets all of the following criteria:

- 1.1. It has a maximum water depth not exceeding 18 inches (457 mm).

- 1.2. It is a pool other than a pool that is located on the premises of a one-unit or two-unit residence, intended solely or the use of the residents or guests.

2. "Public wading pool" includes, but is not limited to, a pool owned or operated by private persons or agencies, or by state or local governmental agencies.

3. "Public wading pool" includes, but is not limited to, a pool located in an apartment house, hotel or similar setting that is intended for the use of residents or guests.

4. "Alteration" means any of the following:

- 4.1. To change, modify or rearrange the structural parts or the design.

- 4.2. To enlarge.

- 4.3. To move the location of.

- 4.4. To install a new water circulation system.

- 4.5. To make any repairs costing fifty dollars (\$50) or more to an existing circulation system.

5. A public wading pool shall have at least two circulation drains per pump that are hydraulically balanced and symmetrically plumbed through one or more T fittings, and are separated by a distance of at least 3 feet (914 mm) in any dimension between drains.

6. All public wading pool main drain suction outlets that are under 12 inches (305 mm) across shall be covered with antivortex grates or similar protective devices. All main drain suction outlets shall be covered with grates or antivortex plates that cannot be removed except with the use of tools. Slots or openings in the grates or similar protective devices shall be of a shape, area and arrangement that would prevent physical entrapment and would not pose any suction hazard to bathers.

7. The maximum velocity in the pump suction hydraulic system shall not exceed 6 feet per second (1.8 m/s) when 100 percent of the pump's flow comes from the main drain system and any main drain suction fitting in the system is completely blocked.

8. On or after January 1, 1998, all newly constructed public wading pools shall be constructed in compliance with this section.

9. Commencing January 1, 1998, whenever a construction permit is issued for alteration of an existing public wading pool, it shall be retrofitted so as to be in compliance with this section.

10. By January 1, 2000, every public wading pool, regardless of the date of original construction, shall be retrofitted to comply with this section.

Authority: Health and Safety Code Section 116064 (e)

Reference: Health and Safety Code Section 116064 AB 2114, (Statutes 1995, c. 415).

## SECTION 3162B ANTI-ENTRAPMENT DEVICES AND SYSTEMS

1. The Legislature finds and declares that the public health interest requires that there be uniform statewide health and safety standards for public swimming pools to prevent physical entrapment and serious injury to children and adults. It is the intent of the Legislature to occupy the whole field of health and safety standards for public swimming pools and the requirements established in this article and the regulations adopted pursuant to this article shall be exclusive of all local health and safety standards relating to public swimming pools.

2. As used in this section, the following words have the following meanings:

- (a) "ANSI/APSP performance standard" means a standard that is accredited by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) and published by the Association of Pool and Spa Professionals (APSP).

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

**PUBLIC POOLS**

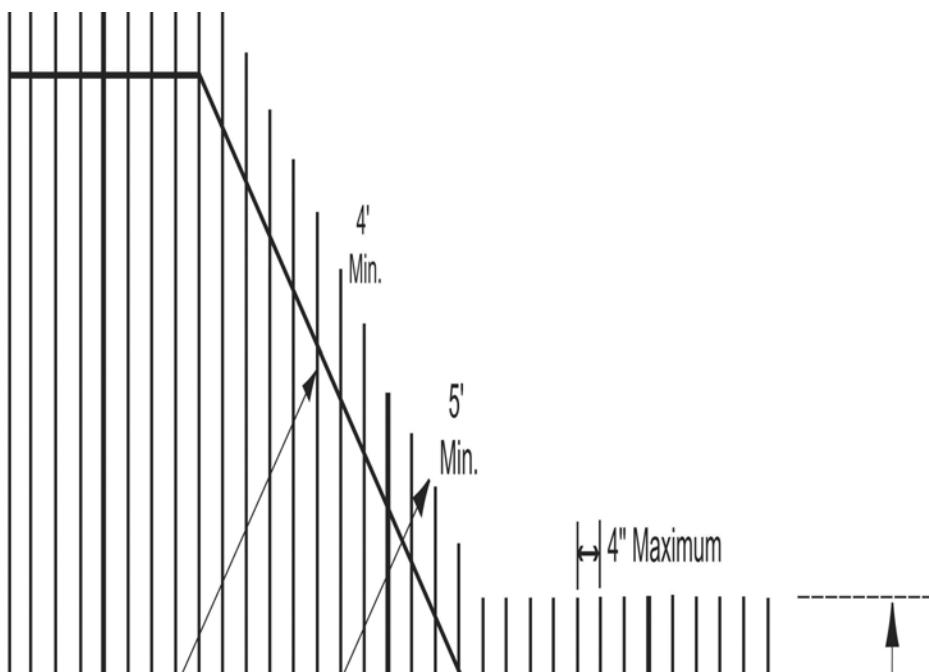
- (b) "ASME/ANSI performance standard" means a standard that is accredited by the American National Standards Institute and published by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
- (c) "ASTM performance standard" means a standard that is developed and published by ASTM International.
- (d) "Public swimming pool" means an outdoor or indoor structure, whether in-ground or above-ground, intended for swimming or recreational bathing, including a swimming pool, hot tub, spa or nonportable wading pool, that is any of the following:
- (i) Open to the public generally, whether for a fee or free of charge.
  - (ii) Open exclusively to members of an organization and their guests, residents of a multiunit apartment building, apartment complex, residential real estate development or other multifamily residential area, or patrons of a hotel or other public accommodations facility.
  - (iii) Located on the premises of an athletic club, or public or private school.
- (e) "Qualified individual" means a contractor who holds a current valid license issued by the State of California or a professional engineer licensed in the State of California who has experience working on public swimming pools.
- (f) "Safety vacuum release system" means a vacuum release system that ceases operation of the pump, reverses the circulation flow, or otherwise provides a vacuum release at a suction outlet when a blockage is detected.
- (g) "Skimmer equalizer line" means a suction outlet located below the waterline, typically on the side of the pool, and connected to the body of a skimmer that prevents air from being drawn into the pump if the water level drops below the skimmer weir. However, a skimmer equalizer line is not a suction outlet for purposes of Subdivisions (4) and (6).
- (h) "Suction outlet" means a fitting or fixture of a swimming pool that conducts water to a recirculating pump.
- (i) "Unblockable suction outlet" means a suction outlet, including the sump, that has a perforated (open) area that cannot be shadowed by the area of the 18-inch by 23-inch body blocking element of the ANSI/APSP-16 performance standard, and that the rated flow through any portion of the remaining open area cannot create a suction force in excess of the removal force values in Table 1 of that standard.
3. Subject to Subdivision (6), every public swimming pool shall be equipped with anti-entrapment devices or systems that comply with ANSI/APSP-16 performance standard or successor standard designated by the Federal Consumer Product Safety Commission.
- a. A public swimming pool that has a suction outlet in any location other than on the bottom of the pool shall be designed so that the recirculation system shall have the capacity to provide a complete turnover of pool water within the following time:
- (i) One-half hour or less for a spa pool.
  - (ii) One-half hour or less for a spray ground.
  - (iii) One hour or less for a wading pool.
  - (iv) Two hours or less for a medical pool.
  - (v) Six hours or less for all other types of public pools.
4. Subject to Subdivisions (5) and (6), every public swimming pool with a single suction outlet that is not an unblockable suction outlet shall be equipped with at least one or more of the following devices or systems that are designed to prevent physical entrapment by pool drains:
- (a) A safety vacuum release system that has been tested by a nationally recognized testing laboratory and found to conform to ASME/ANSI Performance Standard A112.19.17, as in effect on December 31, 2009, or ASTM Performance Standard F2387, as in effect on December 31, 2009.
  - (b) A suction-limiting vent system with a tamper-resistant atmospheric opening, provided that it conforms to any applicable ASME/ANSI or ASTM performance standard.
  - (c) A gravity drainage system that utilizes a collector tank, provided that it conforms to any applicable ASME/ANSI or ASTM performance standard.
  - (d) An automatic pump shut-off system tested by a department-approved independent third party and found to conform to any applicable ASME/ANSI or ASTM performance standard.
  - (e) Any other system that is deemed, in accordance with federal law, to be equally effective as, or more effective than, the systems described in paragraph (a) at preventing or eliminating the risk of injury or death associated with the circulation system of the pool and suction outlets.
5. Every public swimming pool constructed on or after January 1, 2010, shall have at least two suction outlets per pump that are hydraulically balanced and symmetrically plumbed through one or more "T" fittings, and that are separated by a distance of at least three feet in any dimension between the suction outlets. A public swimming pool constructed on or after January 1, 2010, that meets the requirements of this subdivision, shall be exempt from the requirements of Subdivision (4).

## PUBLIC POOLS

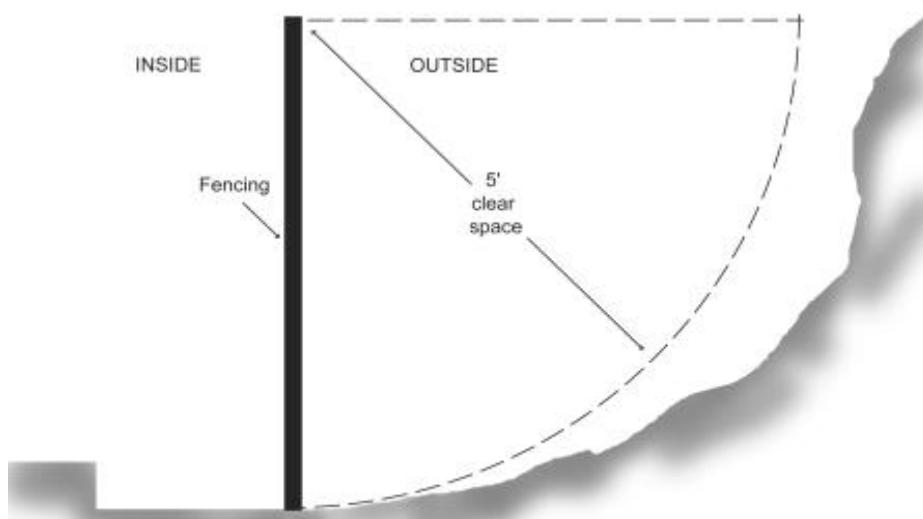
6. A public swimming pool constructed prior to January 1, 2010, shall be retrofitted to comply with Subdivisions (3) and (4) by no later than July 1, 2010, except that no further retrofitting is required for a public swimming pool that completed a retrofit between December 19, 2007, and January 1, 2010, that complied with the Virginia Graeme Baker Pool and Spa Safety Act (15 U.S.C. Sec. 8001 et seq.) as in effect on the date of issue of the construction permit, or for a nonportable wading pool that completed a retrofit prior to January 1, 2010, that complied with state law on the date of issue of the construction permit. A public swimming pool owner who meets the exception described in this subdivision shall do one of the following prior to September 30, 2010:
  - a. File the form issued by the department pursuant to subdivision (g), as otherwise provided in subdivision (h).
  - b. File a signed statement attesting that the required work has been completed.
  - c. Provide a document containing the name and license number of the qualified individual who completed the required work.
  - d. Provide either a copy of the final building permit, if required by the local agency, or a copy of one of the following documents if no permit was required:
    - (i) A document that describes the modification in a manner that provides sufficient information to document the work that was done to comply with federal law.
    - (ii) A copy of the final paid invoice. The amount paid for the services may be omitted or redacted from the final invoice prior to submission.
7. Prior to March 31, 2010, the department shall issue a form for use by an owner of a public swimming pool to indicate compliance with this section. The department shall consult with county health officers and directors of departments of environmental health in developing the form and shall post the form on the department's Internet Web site. The form shall be completed by the owner of a public swimming pool prior to filing the form with the appropriate city, county, or city and county department of environmental health. The form shall include, but not be limited to, the following information:
  - a. A statement of whether the pool operates with a single suction outlet or multiple suction outlets that comply with Subdivision (5).
  - b. Identification of the type of anti-entrapment devices or systems that have been installed pursuant to Subdivision (4) and the date or dates of installation.
  - c. Identification of the type of devices or systems designed to prevent physical entrapment that have been installed pursuant to Subdivision (4) in a public swimming pool with a single suction outlet that is not an unblockable suction outlet and the date or dates of installation or the reason why the requirement is not applicable.
  - d. A signature and license number of a qualified individual who certifies that the factual information provided on the form in response to paragraphs (a) to (c), inclusive, is true to the best of his or her knowledge.
8. A qualified individual who improperly certifies information pursuant to Paragraph (d) of Subdivision (7) shall be subject to potential disciplinary action at the discretion of the licensing authority.
9. Except as provided in Subdivision (6), each public swimming pool owner shall file a completed copy of the form issued by the department pursuant to this section with the city, county, or city and county department of environmental health in the city, county, or city and county in which the swimming pool is located. The form shall be filed within 30 days following the completion of the swimming pool construction or installation required pursuant to this section or, if the construction or installation is completed prior to the date that the department issues the form pursuant to this section, within 30 days of the date that the department issues the form. The public swimming pool owner or operator shall not make a false statement, representation, certification, record, report or otherwise falsify information that he or she is required to file or maintain pursuant to this section.
10. In enforcing this section, health officers and directors of city, county, or city and county departments of environmental health shall consider documentation filed on or with the form issued pursuant to this section by the owner of a public swimming pool as evidence of compliance with this section. A city, county, or city and county department of environmental health may verify the accuracy of the information filed on or with the form.
11. To the extent that the requirements for public wading pools imposed by Section 116064 conflict with this section, the requirements of this section shall prevail.
12. The department shall have no authority to take any enforcement action against any person for violation of this section and has no responsibility to administer or enforce the provisions of this section.

Authority: Health and Safety Code Section 116064 (e)

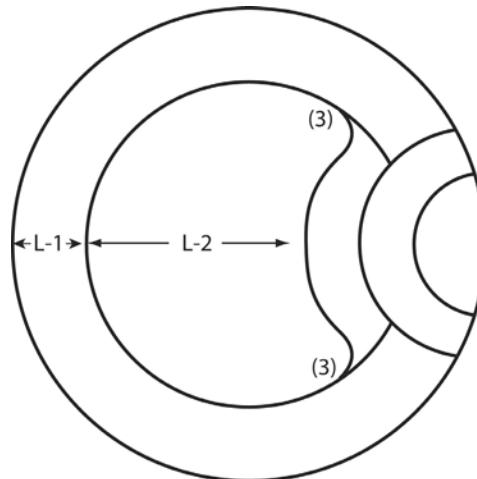
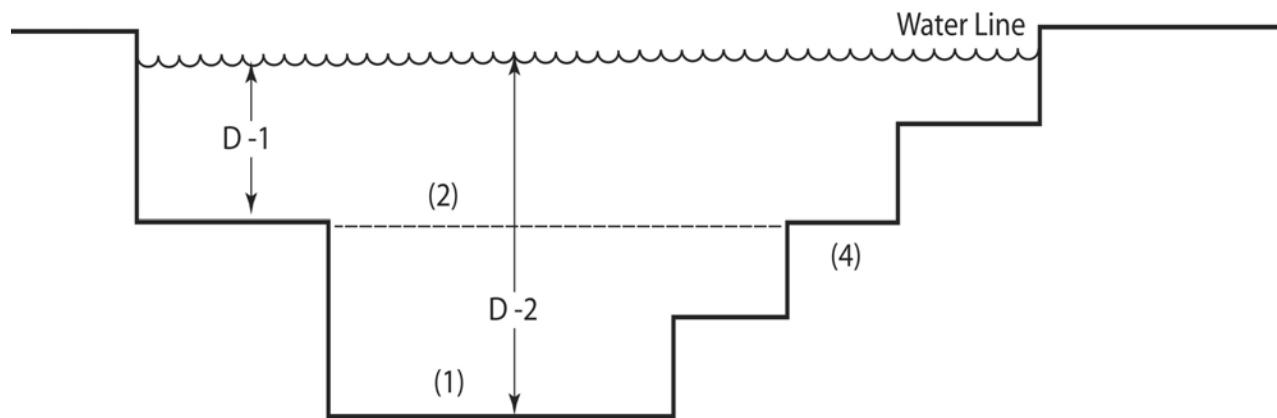
Reference: Health and Safety Code Section 116064.2 AB 2114, (Statutes 2012, c. 679).

**PUBLIC POOLS**

**FIGURE 31B-4**  
**PERPENDICULAR FENCING DIMENSIONS ON SLOPING GROUND**



**FIGURE 31B-5**  
**EFFECTIVE FENCING HEIGHT**

**PUBLIC POOLS****TOP VIEW****TRANSVERSE SECTION**

**FIGURE 31B-6  
DEPTHS AND DIMENSIONS FOR SPA POOLS**

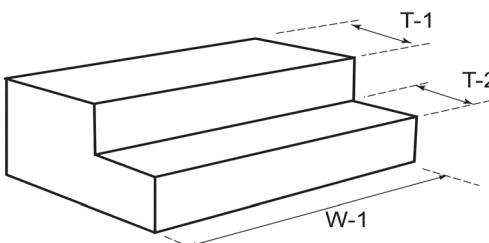
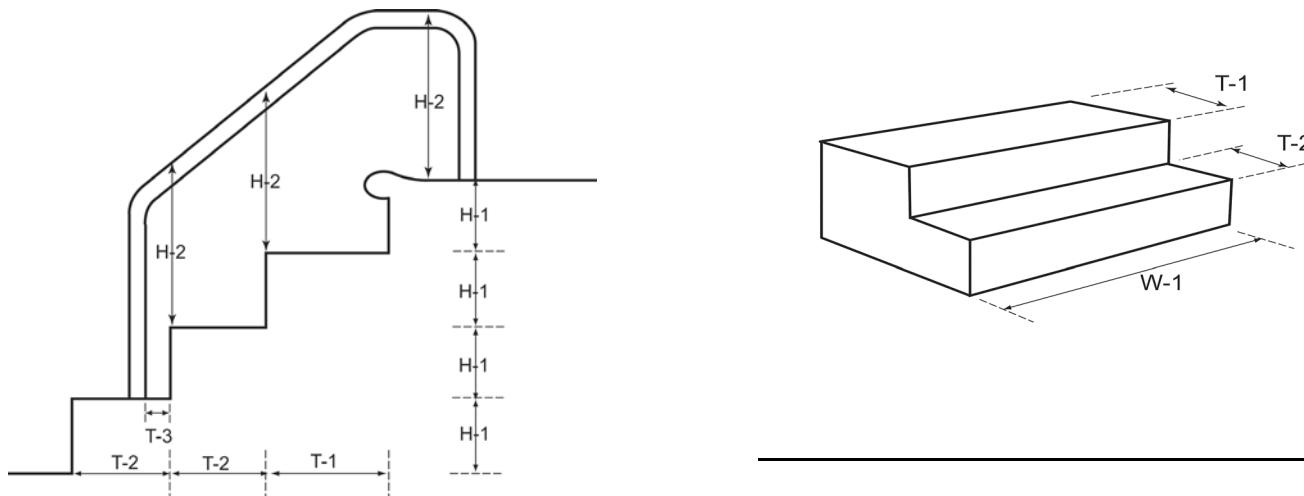
## PUBLIC POOLS

TABLE 31B-6

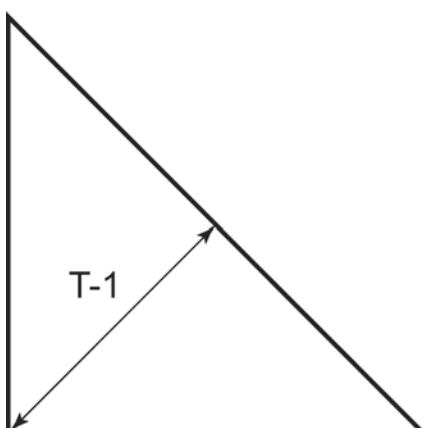
DIMENSION	DEPTH OF WATER		LENGTH OF SECTION	
	D1	D2	L1	L2
Minimum	—	24"	12"	24"
Maximum	24"	—	24"	—

Notes for Figure 31B-6 and Table 31B-6:

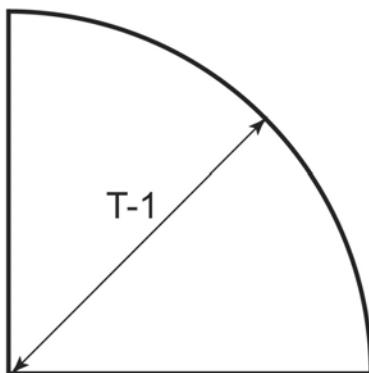
1. Bottom slope shall not exceed 1:10 and must be uniform.
2. Bench ramping shall not exceed 1:10 uniform slope, measured at the inner circumference of the bench.
3. Six inch minimum radius at "pinch points."
4. See Section 3111B for step and handrail dimensions.



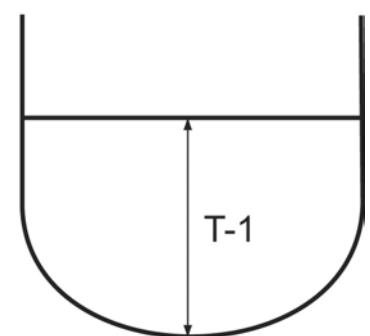
Standard Step



Triangular Step



Corner Step



Concave Step

FIGURE 31B-7  
STAIR AND HANDRAIL DIMENSIONS

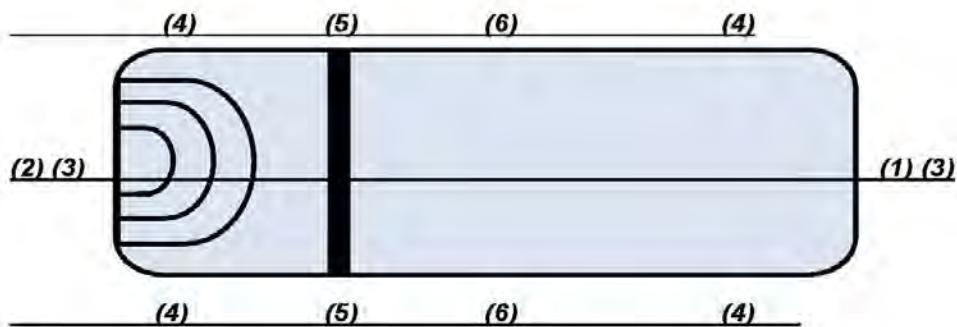
## PUBLIC POOLS

**TABLE 31B-7**

DIMENSION	T-1 STANDARD <i>TRIANGULAR, CONCAVE, CONVEX</i>	T-2	T-3	W-1	H-1	H-2
Minimum	14"	21"	12"	3"	24"	6"
Maximum	18"	24"	16"	—	—	12"

Note for Table 31B-7:

1. Six-inch minimum radius at "pinch points".



**FIGURE 31B-8**  
**DEPTH MARKER LOCATIONS**

Notes:

1. Maximum depth.
2. Minimum depth.
3. Each end of pool.
4. Both sides at the shallowest and deepest parts of pool.
5. At the break in the bottom slope between the shallow and deep end.
6. Along the perimeter of the pool at distances not to exceed 25 feet.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 31C – RADIATION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter																X						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2113A.9.2																						



## CHAPTER 31C [DPH]

# RADIATION

### **SECTION 3101C SCOPE**

*For the purpose of this chapter, the following terms shall have the meaning indicated:*

**PRIMARY PROTECTIVE BARRIER** is a barrier to attenuate the useful beam.

**SECONDARY PROTECTIVE BARRIER** is a barrier to attenuate stray radiation.

**STRAY RADIATION** is radiation not serving any useful purpose, which includes leakage and scattered radiation.

**USEFUL BEAM** is the radiation which passes through the window, aperture, cone or other collimating device of the tube housing.

### **SECTION 3102C RADIATION SHIELDING BARRIERS**

All radiation shielding barriers in rooms and enclosures housing machines shall meet the requirements of Section 12-31C-101, Chapter 12-31C, Part 12, California Referenced Standards Code. The Department of Health Services is the only agency that may grant a variance or exception to these standards.

### **SECTION 3103C MEDICAL RADIOGRAPHIC AND PHOTOFLUOROGRAPHIC INSTALLATIONS**

**3103C.1 Operator station.** The operator's station at the control shall be behind a protective barrier either in a separate room, in a protected booth or behind a shield which will intercept the useful beam and any radiation which has been scattered only once.

**3103C.2 Patient observation and communication.** Provision shall be made for the operator to observe and communicate with the patient without leaving the shielded position at the control panel. When an observation window is used, it must provide radiation attenuation equal to that required in the surrounding barrier.

### **SECTION 3104C MEDICAL THERAPEUTIC X-RAY INSTALLATIONS**

**3104C.1 General.** All wall, floor and ceiling areas that can be struck by the useful beam, plus a border of 1 foot (305 mm), shall be provided with primary protective barriers.

**3104C.2 Equipment operating above 50 kVp.** Equipment operating above 50 kVp shall conform with the following:

1. The control station shielding shall either be an integral part of the building or anchored to the building.
2. The control station shall be provided with a window having radiation attenuation equal to that required by the adjacent barrier, or a mirror system, or a closed-circuit television viewing screen. The patient area must be visible to the operator without having to leave the protected area during exposure.

**3104C.3 Equipment operating above 150 kVp.** Equipment operating above 150 kVp shall conform to the following:

1. The treatment room shall be provided with interlocks so that when any door of the treatment room is opened, either the machine will shut off automatically or the radiation level within the room will be reduced to an average of not more than 2 milliroentgens per hour and a maximum of 10 milliroentgens per hour at a distance of one meter in any direction from the target. After such shutoff or reduction in output, it shall be possible to restore the machine to full operation only from the control panel.
2. The control station shall be within a protective booth or in an adjacent room.

**3104C.4** A minimum of one door shall be provided with an auxiliary means for being opened in case of power failure or mechanical breakdown, where large power-driven doors offer the only access to the room.

**3104C.5** A flashing red warning signal light energized only when the useful beam is on shall be located adjacent to the entrance(s) to a therapy room with equipment capable of operating above 500 kVp.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 31D – FOOD ESTABLISHMENTS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter							X	X	X				X			X						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
2113A.9.2																						



## **CHAPTER 31D [DPH]**

# **FOOD ESTABLISHMENTS**

### **SECTION 3101D**

#### **SCOPE**

*The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the construction of commissaries serving mobile food preparation units.*

### **SECTION 3102D**

#### **DEFINITION**

*For the purpose of this chapter, the following term shall have the meaning indicated:*

**COMMISSARIES SERVING MOBILE FOOD PREPARATION UNITS** are food establishments in which food, containers, equipment or supplies are stored or handled for use in vehicles, mobile food preparation units, food carts or vending machines.

### **SECTION 3103D**

#### **BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES**

**3103D.1 Light.** Ten foot candles (107.6 lux) of uniformly distributed light as measured 30 inches (762 mm) above the floor shall be provided in all rooms and areas in commissaries serving mobile food preparation units.



***CHAPTER 31E***  
***RESERVED***



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 31F – MARINE OIL TERMINALS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter																							X
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



# CHAPTER 31F [SLC]

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

### *Division I*

#### **SECTION 3101F [SLC] INTRODUCTION**

**3101F.1 Authority.** The Lempert-Keene-Seastrand oil spill prevention and response act of 1990 (act), as amended, authorizes the California State Lands Commission (SLC) to regulate marine terminals, herein referred to as marine oil terminals (MOTs), in order to protect public health, safety and the environment. The authority for this regulation is contained in Sections 8750 through 8760 of the California Public Resources Code. This act defines “oil” as any kind of petroleum, liquid hydrocarbons, or petroleum products or any fraction or residues thereof, including but not limited to, crude oil, bunker fuel, gasoline, diesel fuel, aviation fuel, oil sludge, oil refuse, oil mixed with waste and liquid distillates from unprocessed natural gas. The provisions of this chapter regulate onshore and offshore MOTs as defined under this act, including marine terminals that transfer liquefied natural gas (LNG).

The Marine Environmental Protection Division (Division) administers this code on behalf of the SLC.

**3101F.2 Purpose.** The purpose of this code is to establish minimum engineering, inspection and maintenance criteria for MOTs in order to prevent oil spills and to protect public health, safety and the environment. This code does not specifically address terminal siting, systems onboard vessels, processing facilities or operational requirements. Relevant provisions from existing codes, industry standards, recommended practices, regulations and guidelines have been incorporated directly or through reference, as part of this code.

Where there are differing requirements between this code and/or references cited herein, the choice of application shall be subject to Division approval.

In circumstances where technologies proposed for use are not covered by this code and/or references cited herein, prevention of oil spills and equivalent or better protection of the public health, safety and the environment must be demonstrated, and the choice of application shall be subject to Division approval.

**3101F.3 Applicability.** The provisions of this chapter are applicable to the evaluation of existing MOTs and design of new MOTs in California. Each provision is classified as New (N), Existing (E), or Both (N/E) and shall be applied accordingly. If no classification is indicated, the classification shall be considered to be (N/E).

Existing (E) requirements apply to MOTs that were in operation on the date this code became effective (February 6, 2006). For these MOTs, equivalent or in-kind replacement of existing equipment, short pipeline sections or minor modification of existing components shall also be subject to the existing (E) requirements.

New (N) requirements apply to:

1. A MOT or berthing system (Subsection 3102F.1.3) that commences or recommences operation with a new or modified operations manual after adoption of this code.
2. Addition of new structural components or systems at an existing MOT that are structurally independent of existing components or systems.
3. Addition of new (nonreplacement) equipment, piping, pipelines, components or systems to an existing MOT.
4. Major repairs or substantially modified in-place systems.
5. Any associated major installations or modifications.

**3101F.4 Overview.** This Code ensures that a MOT can be safely operated within its inherent structural and equipment-related constraints.

Section 3102F defines minimum requirements for audit, inspection and evaluation of the structural, electrical and mechanical systems on a prescribed periodic basis, or following a significant, potentially damage-causing event.

Section 3103F, 3104F and 3107F provide criteria for structural loading, deformation and performance-based evaluation considering earthquake, wind, wave, current, seiche and tsunami effects.

Section 3105F provides requirements for the safe mooring and berthing of tank vessels and barges.

Section 3106F describes requirements for geotechnical hazards and foundation analyses, including consideration of slope stability and soil failure.

Section 3108F provides requirements for fire prevention, detection and suppression including appropriate water and foam volumes.

Sections 3109F through 3111F provide requirements for piping/ pipelines, mechanical and electrical equipment and electrical systems.

Section 3112F provides requirements specific to marine terminals that transfer LNG.

Generally, English units are typically prescribed herein; however, System International (SI) units are utilized in Section 3112F and in many of the references.

**3101F.5 Spill prevention.** Each MOT shall utilize up-to-date Risk and Hazards Analysis results developed per CCPS “Guidelines for Hazard Evaluation Procedures” [1.1] and [1.2], to identify the hazards associated with operations at the MOT, including operator error, the use of the facility by various types of vessels (e.g., multi-use transfer operations), equipment failure and external events likely to cause an oil spill.

If there are changes made to the built MOT or subsequently any new hazard is identified with significant impact, the updated Risk and Hazards Analysis shall be used.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

*Assessed magnitude of potential oil spill releases and consequences shall be mitigated by implementing appropriate designs using best achievable technologies, subject to Division approval. The residual risks are addressed by operational and administrative means via 2 CCR 2385 [1.3].*

*Risk and Hazards Analysis requirements specific to marine terminals that transfer LNG are discussed in Section 3112F.2.*

**3101F.6 Oil spill exposure classification.** Each MOT shall be categorized into one of three oil spill exposure classifications (high, medium or low) as shown in Table 31F-1-1, based on all of the following:

1. Exposed total volume of oil ( $V_T$ ) during transfer.
2. Maximum number of oil transfer operations per berthing system (defined in Section 3102F.1.3) per year.
3. Maximum vessel size (DWT capacity) that may call at the MOT.

*During a pipeline leak, a quantity of oil is assumed to spill at the maximum cargo flow rate until the ESD is fully effective. The total volume ( $V_T$ ) of potential exposed oil is equal to the sum of the stored and flowing volumes ( $V_s + V_f$ ) at the MOT, prior to the emergency shutdown (ESD) system(s) stopping the flow of oil. All potential spill scenarios shall be evaluated and the governing scenario clearly identified. The stored volume ( $V_s$ ) is the non-flowing oil. The flowing volume ( $V_f$ ) shall be calculated as follows:*

$$V_f = Q_c \times \Delta t \times (1/3,600) \quad (1-1)$$

*where:*

$V_f$  = Flowing volume of potential exposed oil [bbl]

$Q_c$  = Maximum cargo transfer rate [bbl/hr]

$\Delta t$  = For MOTs that first transferred oil on or before January 1, 2017,  $\Delta t$  may be taken as (ESD time, 30 or 60 seconds). For MOTs that first transfer oil after January 1, 2017,  $\Delta t$  shall be taken as ((ESD closure time) + (time required to activate ESD)) [seconds].

*If spill reduction strategies, (e.g. pipeline segmentation devices, system flexibility and spill containment devices) are adopted, such that the maximum volume of exposed oil during transfer is less than 1,200 barrels, the spill classification of the facility may be lowered.*

*This classification does not apply to marine terminals that transfer LNG.*

**3101F.7 Management of Change.** Whenever physical changes are made to the built MOT that significantly impact operations, a Management of Change (MOC) process shall be followed per Section 6.6 of API Standard 2610 [1.4].

### 3101F.8 Review requirements.

**3101F.8.1 Quality assurance.** All audits, inspections, engineering analyses or design shall be reviewed by a professional having similar or higher qualifications as the person who performed the work, to ensure quality assurance. This review may be performed in-house and shall include a concluding statement of compliance with this code.

**3101F.8.2 Peer review.** The Division may require peer review of advanced engineering analyses and designs, including, but not limited to, nonlinear dynamic structural analyses, alternative lateral force procedures, complex geotechnical evaluations, subsea pipeline analyses and designs and fatigue analyses. Peer review shall be performed by an external independent source to maintain the integrity of the process.

The peer reviewer(s) and their affiliated organization shall have no other involvement in the project, except in a review capacity. The peer reviewer(s) shall be a California registered engineer(s) familiar with regulations governing the work and have technical expertise in the subject matter to a degree of at least that needed for the original work. The peer reviewer(s)' credentials shall be presented to the Division for approval prior to commencement of the review.

Upon completion of the review process, the peer reviewer(s) shall submit a written report directly to the Division that covers all aspects of the review process, including, but not limited to:

1. Scope, extent and limitations of the review.
2. Status of the documents reviewed at each stage (i.e. revision number and date).
3. Findings.
4. Recommended corrective actions and resolutions, if necessary.
5. Conclusions.
6. Certification by the peer reviewer(s), including whether or not the final reviewed work meets the requirements of this code.

**TABLE 31F-1-1  
MOT OIL SPILL EXPOSURE CLASSIFICATION**

SPILL CLASSIFICATION	EXPOSED TOTAL VOLUME OF OIL ( $V_T$ ) (bbls)	MAXIMUM NUMBER OF TRANSFERS PER BERTHING SYSTEM PER YEAR	MAXIMUM VESSEL SIZE (DWT×1,000)
High	$\geq 1200$	N.A.	N.A.
Moderate	$< 1200$	$\geq 90$	$\geq 30$
Low	$< 1200$	$< 90$	$< 30$

- 7. Formal documentation of important peer review correspondence, including requests for information and written responses.*

*The owner and operator shall cooperate in the review process, but shall not influence the peer review. If the original work requires modification after completion of the peer review, the final analyses and designs shall be submitted to the Division.*

**3101F.8.3 Division review.** *The following will be subject to review for compliance with this code by the Division or its authorized representative(s):*

1. Any audit, inspection, analysis or evaluation of MOTs.
2. Any significant change, modification or re-design of a structural, mooring, fire, piping/pipelines, mechanical or electrical system at an MOT, prior to use or reuse.
3. Engineering analysis and design for any new MOT prior to construction. Also see Section 3102F.3.3.1.
4. Construction inspection team and the construction inspection report(s).

**3101F.9 Alternatives.** *In special circumstances where certain requirements of these standards cannot be met, alternatives that provide an equal or better protection of the public health, safety and the environment shall be subject to Division Chief approval with concurrence of the Division's lead engineer in responsible charge.*

#### **3101F.10 Symbols.**

- DWT = Dead weight tonnage*  
 *$Q_C$  = Maximum cargo transfer rate [bbl/hr]*  
 *$V_F$  = Flowing volume of potential exposed oil [bbl]*  
 *$V_S$  = Stored volume of potential exposed oil [bbl]*  
 *$V_T$  = Total volume of potential exposed oil [bbl]*  
 *$\Delta t$  = ESD closure and activation time (if applicable) [sec]*

#### **3101F.11 References.**

- [1.1]Center for Chemical Process Safety (CCPS), 2008, "Guidelines for Hazard Evaluation Procedures", 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., New York.
- [1.2]California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 14, Division 1, Chapter 3, Oil Spill Contingency Plans (14 CCR 815.01 through 818.03), Section 817.02(c)(1) – Risk and Hazard Analysis.
- [1.3]California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 2, Division 3, Chapter 1, Article 5 – Marine Terminals Inspection and Monitoring (2 CCR 2300 et seq.)
- [1.4]American Petroleum Institute (API), 2005, API Standard 2610 (R2010), "Design, Construction, Operation, Maintenance, and Inspection of Terminal and Tank Facilities," 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Washington, D.C.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code. Section 8670.28(a)(7), Government Code.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

## Division 2

### SECTION 3102F AUDIT AND INSPECTION

#### 3102F.1 General.

**3102F.1.1 Purpose.** Section 3102F defines minimum requirements for audit, inspection and evaluation of the structural, mechanical and electrical components and systems.

**3102F.1.2 Audit and inspections types.** The audit and inspections described in this Chapter (31F) are:

1. Annual compliance inspection
2. Audits
3. Post-event inspection

Each has a distinct purpose and is conducted either at a defined interval (see Table 31F-2-1 and Section 3102F.3.3), for a significant change in operations, or as a result of a significant, potentially damage-causing event. In the time between audits and inspections, operators are expected to conduct periodic walk-down examinations of the MOT to detect potentially unsafe conditions.

**3102F.1.3 Berthing systems.** For the purpose of assigning structural ratings and documenting the condition of mechanical and electrical systems, an MOT shall be divided into independent “berthing systems.” A berthing system consists of the wharf and supporting structure, mechanical and electrical components that serve the berth and pipeline systems.

For example, a MOT consisting of wharves with three berths adjacent to the shoreline could contain three independent “berthing systems” if the piping does not route through adjacent berths. Therefore, a significant defect that would restrict the operation of one berth would have

no impact on the other two berths. Conversely, if a T-head Pier, with multiple berths sharing a trestle that supports all piping to the shoreline, had a significant deficiency on the common trestle, the operation of all berths could be adversely impacted. This configuration is classified as a single berthing system.

The physical boundaries of a berthing system may exclude unused sections of a structure. Excluded sections must be physically isolated from the berthing system. Expansion joints may provide this isolation.

**3102F.1.4 Records.** All MOTs shall have records reflecting current, “as-built” conditions for all berthing systems. Records shall include, but not be limited to modifications and/or replacement of structural components, electrical or mechanical equipment or relevant operational changes, new construction including design drawings, calculations, engineering analyses, soil borings, equipment manuals, specifications, shop drawings, technical and maintenance manuals and documents.

Chronological records and reports of annual inspections, audits and post-event inspections and documentation of equipment or structural changes shall be maintained.

Records shall be indexed and be readily accessible to the Division (see 2 CCR Section 2320 (c) (2)) [2.1].

**3102F.1.5 Baseline assessment.** If “as-built” or subsequent modification drawings are not available, incomplete or inaccurate, a baseline inspection is required to gather data in sufficient detail for adequate evaluation.

The level of detail required shall be such that structural member sizes, connection and reinforcing details are documented, if required in the structural analysis. In addition,

**TABLE 31F-2-1  
MAXIMUM INTERVAL BETWEEN UNDERWATER INSPECTIONS (YEARS)<sup>1</sup>**

INSPECTION CONDITION ASSESSMENT RATING (ICAR) <sup>6</sup>	CONSTRUCTION MATERIAL				CHANNEL BOTTOM OR MUDLINE—SCOUR <sup>4</sup>	
	Unwrapped Timber or Unprotected Steel (no coating or cathodic protection) <sup>4</sup>		Concrete, Wrapped Timber, Protected Steel or Composite Materials (FRP, plastic, etc.) <sup>4</sup>		Benign <sup>2</sup> Environment	Aggressive <sup>3</sup> Environment
	Benign <sup>2</sup> Environment	Aggressive <sup>3</sup> Environment	Benign <sup>2</sup> Environment	Aggressive <sup>3</sup> Environment		
6 (Good)	6	4	6	5	6	5
5 (Satisfactory)	6	4	6	5	6	5
4 (Fair)	5	3	5	4	6	5
3 (Poor)	4	3	5	4	6	5
2 (Serious)	2	1	2	2	2	2
1 (Critical)	N/A <sup>5</sup>	N/A <sup>5</sup>	N/A <sup>5</sup>	N/A <sup>5</sup>	N/A <sup>5</sup>	N/A <sup>5</sup>

1. The maximum interval between Underwater Inspections shall be changed as appropriate, with the approval of the Division, based on the extent of deterioration observed on a structure, the rate of further anticipated deterioration or other factors.
2. Benign environments include fresh water and maximum current velocities less than 1.5 knots for the majority of the days in a calendar year.
3. Aggressive environments include brackish or salt water, polluted water or waters with current velocities greater than 1.5 knots for the majority of the days in the calendar year.
4. For most structures, two maximum intervals will be shown in this table, one for the assessment of construction material (timber, concrete, steel, etc.) and one for scour (last 2 columns). The shorter interval of the two should dictate the maximum interval used.
5. MOTs rated “Critical” will not be operational; and Emergency Action shall be required in accordance with Table 31F-2-6.
6. ICARs shall be assigned in accordance with Table 31F-2-4.

*the strength and/or ductility characteristics of construction materials shall be determined, as appropriate. Nondestructive testing, partially destructive testing and/or laboratory testing methods may be used.*

*All fire, piping, mechanical and electrical systems shall be documented as to location, capacity, operating limits and physical conditions in the equipment layout diagram(s).*

**3102F.2 Annual compliance inspection.** *The Division may carry out annual inspections to determine the compliance status of the MOT with this code, based on the terminal's audit and inspection findings and action plan implementation (see Section 3102F.3.9).*

*These inspections may include a visual and tactile assessment of structural, mechanical and electrical systems of the topside and underside areas of the dock, including the splash zone. Subject to operating procedures, a boat shall be provided to facilitate the inspection of the dock undersides and piles down to the splash zone.*

### **3102F.3 Audits.**

**3102F.3.1 Objective.** *The objective of the audit is to review structural, mechanical and electrical systems on a prescribed periodic basis to verify that each berthing system is fit for its specific defined purpose. The audit includes above water and underwater inspections, engineering evaluation, documentation and recommended follow-up actions.*

**3102F.3.2 Overview.** *The audit shall include above water and underwater inspections, and structural, electrical and mechanical systems evaluations, with supporting documentation, drawings and follow-up actions. Structural systems shall include seismic, operational, mooring, berthing and geotechnical considerations. Mechanical systems shall include fire, piping/pipelines and mechanical equipment considerations. The audit is performed by a multidisciplinary team of engineers, qualified inspectors and may include Division representatives.*

*The above water inspection involves an examination of all structural, mechanical and electrical components above the waterline. Structural defects and their severity shall be documented, but the exact size and location of each deficiency is typically not required.*

*The underwater inspection involves an examination of all structural, mechanical and electrical components below the waterline. A rational and representative underwater sampling of piles may be acceptable with Division approval, for cases of limited visibility, heavy marine growth, restricted inspection times because of environmental factors (currents, water temperatures, etc.) or a very large number of piles.*

*Global operational structural assessment rating(s) (OSAR), global seismic structural assessment rating(s) (SSAR) and global inspection condition assessment rating(s) (ICAR) shall be assigned to each structure and overall berthing system, where appropriate (Table 31F-2-4).*

*Remedial action priorities (RAP) shall be assigned for component deficiencies (Table 31F-2-5). Recommenda-*

*tions for remediation and/or upgrading shall be prescribed as necessary.*

*An audit is not considered complete until the audit report is received (in electronic and hard copy formats) by the Division.*

#### **3102F.3.3 Schedule.**

**3102F.3.3.1 Initial audit.** *For a new MOT or new berthing system(s), the initial audit of the "as-built" systems(s) shall be performed prior to commencement of operations.*

**3102F.3.3.2 Subsequent audits.** *A subsequent audit of each terminal shall be completed concurrently with the inspections (see Section 3102F.3.5). The audit team leader shall recommend either: (1) a default subsequent audit interval of 4 years, or (2) an alternate interval, based on assessments of the structural, mechanical and electrical systems, and consideration of:*

- 1. The extent of the latest deterioration and/or disrepair,*
- 2. The rate of future anticipated deterioration and/or disrepair,*
- 3. The underwater inspection guidance provided in Table 31F-2-1, and*
- 4. Other specified factors.*

*Based on independent assessment of these factors, the Division may accept the audit team leader's recommendation or require a different subsequent audit interval.*

*If there are no changes in the defined purpose (see Section 3102F.3.6.1) of the berthing system(s), relevant prior analyses may be referenced. However, if there is a significant change in the operations or condition of berthing system(s), a new analysis may be required.*

*The Division may require an audit, inspection or supplemental evaluations to justify changes in the use of the berthing system(s).*

#### **3102F.3.4 Audit team.**

**3102F.3.4.1 Project manager.** *The audit shall be conducted by a multidisciplinary team under the direction of a project manager representing the MOT. The project manager shall have specific knowledge of the MOT and may serve other roles on the audit team.*

**3102F.3.4.2 Audit team leader.** *The audit team leader shall lead the on-site audit team and shall be responsible for directing field activities, including the inspection of all structural, mechanical and electrical systems. The team leader shall be a California registered civil or structural engineer and may serve other roles on the audit team.*

**3102F.3.4.3 Structural inspection team.** *The structural inspection shall be conducted under the direction of a registered civil or structural engineer.*

*All members of the structural inspection team shall be graduates of a 4-year civil/structural engineering,*

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

or closely related (ocean/coastal) engineering curriculum, and shall have been certified as an Engineer-in-Training; or shall be technicians who have completed a course of study in structural inspections. The minimum acceptable course in structural inspections shall include 80 hours of instruction specifically related to structural inspection, followed by successful completion of a comprehensive examination. An example of an acceptable course is the U.S. Department of Transportation's "Safety Inspection of In-Service Bridges." Certification as a Level IV Bridge Inspector by the National Institute of Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) shall also be acceptable [2.2].

For underwater inspections, the registered civil or structural engineer directing the underwater structural inspection shall also be a commercially trained diver or equivalent and shall actively participate in the inspection, by personally conducting a minimum of 25 percent of the underwater examination [2.2].

Each underwater team member shall also be a commercially trained diver, or equivalent. Divers performing manual tasks such as cleaning or supporting the diving operation, but not conducting or reporting on inspections, may have lesser technical qualifications [2.2].

**3102F.3.4.4 Structural analyst.** A California registered civil or structural engineer shall be in responsible charge of the structural evaluations.

**3102F.3.4.5 Electrical inspection team.** A registered electrical engineer shall direct the on-site team performing the inspection and evaluation of electrical components and systems.

**3102F.3.4.6 Mechanical inspection team.** A registered engineer shall direct the on-site team performing the inspection and evaluation of piping/pipeline, mechanical and fire components and systems, except the Fire Protection Assessment in accordance with Section 3108F.2.2.

**3102F.3.4.7 Corrosion specialist.** The corrosion specialist shall be a chemical engineer, corrosion engineer, chemist or other professional with expertise in the types and causes of corrosion, and available means to prevent, monitor and mitigate associated damage. The specialist shall perform the corrosion assessment (Section 3102F.3.6.5) and may be directly involved in corrosion inspection (Section 3102F.3.5.4).

**3102F.3.4.8 Geotechnical analyst.** A California registered civil engineer with a California authorization as a geotechnical engineer shall perform the geotechnical evaluation required for the audit and all other geotechnical evaluations.

**3102F.3.4.9 Division representation.** The Division representative(s) may participate in any audit or inspection as observer(s). The Division shall be notified in advance of audit-related inspections.

### 3102F.3 Scope of inspections.

#### 3102F.3.5.1 Structural inspections.

**3102F.3.5.1.1 Above water structural inspection.** The above water inspection shall include all accessible components above and below deck that are reachable without the need for excavation or extensive removal of materials that may impair visual inspection. The above water inspection shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Piles
2. Pile caps
3. Beams
4. Deck soffit
5. Bracing
6. Retaining walls and bulkheads
7. Connections
8. Seawalls
9. Slope protection
10. Deck topsides and curbing
11. Expansion joints
12. Fender system components
13. Dolphins and deadmen
14. Mooring points and hardware
15. Navigation aids
16. Platforms, ladders, stairs, handrails and gangways
17. Backfill (sinkholes/differential settlement)

**3102F.3.5.1.2 Underwater structural inspection.** The underwater inspection shall include all components below deck to the mudline, including the slope and slope protection, in areas immediately surrounding the MOT. The water depth at the berth(s) shall be evaluated, verifying the maximum or loaded draft specified in the MOT's Operations Manual (2 CCR 2385) [2.1].

The underwater structural inspection shall include the Level I, II and III inspection efforts, as shown in Tables 31F-2-2 and 31F-2-3. The underwater inspection levels of effort are described below, per [2.2]:

**Level I**—Includes a close visual examination, or a tactile examination using large sweeping motions of the hands where visibility is limited. Although the Level I effort is often referred to as a "swim-by" inspection, it must be detailed enough to detect obvious major damage or deterioration due to overstress or other severe deterioration. It should confirm the continuity of the full length of all members and detect undermining or exposure of normally buried elements. A Level I effort may also include limited probing of the substructure and adjacent channel bottom.

**Level II**—A detailed inspection which requires marine growth removal from a representative sampling of components within the structure. For piles, a 12-inch high band shall be cleaned at designated locations, generally near the low waterline, at the

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

mudline, and midway between the low waterline and the mudline. On a rectangular pile, the marine growth removal should include at least three sides; on an octagon pile, at least six sides; on a round pile, at least three-fourths of the perimeter. On large diameter piles, 3 ft or greater, marine growth removal should be effected on 1 ft by 1 ft areas at four locations approximately equally spaced around the perimeter, at each elevation. On large solid faced elements such as retaining structures, marine growth removal should be effected on 1 ft by 1 ft areas at the three specified elevations. The inspection should also focus on typical areas of weakness, such as attachment points and welds. The Level II effort is intended

to detect and identify damaged and deteriorated areas that may be hidden by surface biofouling. The thoroughness of marine growth removal should be governed by what is necessary to discern the condition of the underlying structural material. Removal of all biofouling staining is generally not required.

**Level III**—A detailed inspection typically involving nondestructive or partially-destructive testing, conducted to detect hidden or interior damage, or to evaluate material homogeneity. Level III testing is generally limited to key structural areas, areas which are suspect or areas which may be representative of the underwater structure.

**TABLE 31F-2-2  
UNDERWATER INSPECTION LEVELS OF EFFORT [2.2]**

LEVEL	PURPOSE	DETECTABLE DEFECTS			
		Steel	Concrete	Timber	Composite
I	General visual/tactile inspection to confirm as-built condition and detect severe damage	Extensive corrosion, holes Severe mechanical damage	Major spalling and cracking Severe reinforcement corrosion Broken piles	Major loss of section Broken piles and bracings Severe abrasion or marine borer attack	Permanent deformation Broken piles Major cracking or mechanical damage
II	To detect surface defects normally obscured by marine growth	Moderate mechanical damage Corrosion pitting and loss of section	Surface cracking and spalling Rust staining Exposed reinforcing steel and/or prestressing strands	External pile damage due to marine borers Splintered piles Loss of bolts and fasteners Rot or insect infestation	Cracking Delamination Material degradation
III	To detect hidden or interior damage, evaluate loss of cross-sectional area or evaluate material homogeneity	Thickness of material Electrical potentials for cathodic protection	Location of reinforcing steel Beginning of corrosion of reinforcing steel Internal voids Change in material strength	Internal damage due to marine borers (internal voids) Decrease in material strength	N/A

**TABLE 31F-2-3  
SCOPE OF UNDERWATER INSPECTION [2.2]**

LEVEL		SAMPLE SIZE AND METHODOLOGY*							
		Steel		Concrete		Timber		Composite	Slope Protection, Channel Bottom or Mudline-Scour
		Piles	Bulkheads/Retaining Walls	Piles	Bulkheads/Retaining Walls	Piles	Bulkheads/Retaining Walls	Piles	
I	Sample Size: Method:	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile	100% Visual/Tactile
II	Sample Size: Method:	10% Visual: Removal of marine growth in 3 bands	Every 100 LF Visual: Removal of marine growth in 1 SF areas	10% Visual: Removal of marine growth in 3 bands	Every 100 LF Visual: Removal of marine growth in 3 bands	10% Visual: Removal of marine growth on 3 bands Measurement: Remaining diameter	Every 50 LF Visual: Removal of marine growth in 1 SF areas	10% Visual: Removal of marine growth in 3 bands	As necessary
III	Sample Size: Method:	5% Remaining thickness measurement; electrical potential measurement; corrosion profiling as necessary	Every 200 LF Remaining thickness measurement; electrical potential measurement; corrosion profiling as necessary	0% N/A	0% N/A	5% Internal marine borer infestation evaluation	Every 100 LF Internal marine borer infestation evaluation	0%	Sonar imaging as necessary

1. The minimum inspection sampling size for small structures shall include at least two components.

LF = Linear Feet; SF = Square Feet; N/A = Not Applicable

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

### **3102F.3.5.2 Special inspection considerations.**

**3102F.3.5.2.1 Coated components.** For coated steel components, Level I and Level II efforts should focus on the evaluation of the integrity and effectiveness of the coating. The piles should be inspected without damaging the coating. Level III efforts should include ultrasonic thickness measurements without removal of the coating, where feasible.

**3102F.3.5.2.2 Encased components.** For steel, concrete or timber components that have been encased, the Level I and II efforts should focus on the evaluation of the integrity of the encasement. If evidence of significant damage to the encasement is present, or if evidence of significant deterioration of the underlying component is present, then the damage evaluation should consider whether the encasement was provided for protection and/or structural capacity. Encasements should not typically be removed for an audit.

For encasements on which the formwork has been left in place, the inspection should focus on the integrity of the encasement, not the formwork. Level I and Level II efforts in such cases should concentrate on the top and bottom of the encasement. For concrete components, if deterioration, loss of bonding or other significant problems with the encasement are suspected, it may be necessary to conduct a special inspection, including coring of the encasement and laboratory evaluation of the materials.

**3102F.3.5.2.3 Wrapped components.** For steel, concrete or timber components that have been wrapped, the Level I and II efforts should focus on the evaluation of the integrity of the wrap. Since the effectiveness of a wrap may be compromised by removal, and since the removal and re-installation of wraps is time-consuming, it should not be routinely done. However, if evidence of significant damage exists, or if the effectiveness of the wraps is in question, then samples should be removed to facilitate the inspection and evaluation. The samples may be limited to particular zones or portions of members if damage is suspected, based on the physical evidence of potential problems. A minimum sample size of three members should be used. A five-percent sample size, up to 30 total members, may be adequate as an upper limit.

For wrapped timber components, Level III efforts should consist of removal of the wraps from a representative sample of components in order to evaluate the condition of the timber beneath the wrap. The sample may be limited to particular zones or portions of the members if damage is suspected (e.g., at the mudline/ bottom of wrap or in the tidal zone). The sample size should be determined based on the physical evidence of potential problems and the aggressiveness of the environment. A minimum sample size of three members should be used. A five-

percent sample size, up to 30 total members, may be adequate as an upper limit.

### **3102F.3.5.3 Mechanical and electrical inspections.** The mechanical and electrical inspections shall include but not be limited to the following:

1. Loading arms
2. Cranes and lifting equipment, including cables
3. Piping/manifolds and supports
4. Oil transfer hoses
5. Fire detection and suppression systems
6. Vapor control system
7. Sumps/sump tanks
8. Vent systems
9. Pumps and pump systems
10. Lighting
11. Communications equipment
12. Gangways
13. Electrical switches and junction boxes
14. Emergency power equipment
15. Air compressors
16. Meters
17. Cathodic protection systems
18. Winches
19. ESD and other control systems
20. Ladders

All alarms, limit switches, load cells, current meters, anemometers, leak detection equipment, etc., shall be operated and/or tested to the extent feasible, to ensure proper function.

Utility, auxiliary and fire protection piping shall have external visual inspections, similar to that defined in Section 10.1 of API RP 574 [2.3] (N/E).

**3102F.3.5.4 Corrosion inspection.** During each audit, a comprehensive corrosion inspection shall be performed by a qualified engineer or technician. This inspection shall include all steel and metallic components, and any installed cathodic protection system (CPS). CPS inspection during the audit is not intended to substitute for required testing and maintenance performed on a more frequent schedule per Section 3111F.10. All inspection results shall be documented, and shall be used in the corrosion assessment (Section 3102F.3.6.5).

Submerged wharf structures and associated cathodic protection equipment (if installed) shall be inspected per [2.2]. Above water structures, ancillary equipment, supports and hardware shall be visually inspected. Corrosion inspection of utility, auxiliary and fire pipelines shall be done per Section 3102F.3.5.3.

For oil pipelines in an API 570 [2.4] inspection program, a corrosion inspection is not required as part

of the audit; however, the latest inspection results, calculations and conclusions shall be reviewed, and any significant results shall be included in the corrosion assessment.

### **3102F.3.6 Evaluation and assessment.**

**3102F.3.6.1 Terminal operating limits.** The physical boundaries of the facility shall be defined by the berthing system operating limits, along with the vessel size limits and environmental conditions.

The audit shall include “Terminal Operating Limits” (TOLs) diagrams, which provide a concise statement of the purpose of each berthing system in terms of operating limits for representative vessel size ranges and mooring configurations approved to call and/or conduct transfer operations at the MOT. This description shall include, the minimum and maximum vessel sizes, including Length Overall (LOA), beam and maximum draft with associated displacement (see Figure 31F-2-1).

In establishing limits for both the minimum and maximum vessel sizes, due consideration shall be given to water depths, dolphin spacing, fender system limitations, manifold height and hose/loading arm reach, with allowances for tidal fluctuations, surge and drift.

Maximum wind, current or wave conditions, or combinations thereof, shall be clearly defined as limiting conditions for vessels at each berth, both with and without active product transfer.

The TOLs shall be explicitly presented to facilitate implementation by the MOT operator, such as through incorporation in the MOT’s Operations Manual (2 CCR 2385 [2.1]). The TOLs shall allow for direct comparison of operating limits and output from monitoring systems and instrumentation (i.e., anemometers, current meters, tension monitoring systems, velocity monitoring systems). Design and implementation considerations shall include, but not be limited to:

1. Units of measurement (i.e., English vs. System International units)
2. Directionality (i.e., current restrictions “to”, wind restrictions “from”, true or magnetic north)
3. Parameters of monitoring systems and instrumentation (i.e., duration/averaging of readings, elevation/depth of readings, distance/location of readings)

**3102F.3.6.2 Mooring and berthing.** Mooring and berthing analyses shall be performed in accordance with Section 3105F. The analyses shall be consistent with the terminal operating limits and the structural configuration of the wharf and/or dolphins and associated hardware.

Based on inspection results, analyses and engineering judgment, mooring and berthing OSARs shall be assigned on a global basis, independently for each

structure and overall berthing system. The OSARs defined in Table 31F-2-4 shall be used for this purpose. The mooring and berthing OSARs document the berthing system(s) fitness-for-purpose.

**3102F.3.6.3 Structure.** A structural evaluation, including a seismic analysis, shall be performed in accordance with Sections 3103F through 3107F. Such evaluation shall consider local or global reduction in capacity, as determined from the inspection.

Based on inspection results, structural analyses and engineering judgment, OSARs (for operational loading) and SSARs shall be assigned on a global basis, independently for each structure, structural system(s) and berthing system(s), as appropriate. The OSARs and SSARs defined in Table 31F-2-4 shall be used for this purpose and document the structural and/or berthing system(s) fitness-for-purpose.

Based on inspection results and engineering judgment, ICARs shall be assigned on a global basis, independently for each above and underwater structure, structural system and berthing system, as appropriate. The ICARs defined in Table 31F-2-4 shall be used for this purpose.

Structural component deficiencies assigned RAPs as per Table 31F-2-5 shall be considered in the OSARs, SSARs and ICARs. The assigned ratings shall remain in effect until all the significant corrective action has been completed to the satisfaction of the Division, or until completion of the next audit.

**3102F.3.6.4 Mechanical and electrical systems.** An evaluation of all mechanical and electrical systems and components shall be performed in accordance with Sections 3108F through 3111F of these standards. Forces and imposed seismic displacements resulting from the structural analysis shall be considered in the pipeline stress analyses (Section 3109F.3), and the piping/pipelines shall be assigned SSARs in Table 31F-2-7B. Mechanical and electrical component deficiencies shall be assigned ratings from Table 31F-2-5.

**3102F.3.6.5 Corrosion assessment (N/E).** A comprehensive assessment shall be performed by the corrosion specialist (Section 3102F.3.4.7), to determine the existing and potential corrosion using “as-built” drawings and specifications. This assessment shall comprise all steel and metallic components, including the structure, pipelines, supports and other MOT ancillary equipment. This assessment shall also include prestressed and reinforced concrete structures.

If cathodic protection is installed to protect wharf structures and/or pipelines, the following records shall be evaluated for each system:

1. CPS equipment condition and maintenance
2. Impressed current readings (as applicable)
3. Potential survey results

**TABLE 31F-2-4  
ASSESSMENT RATINGS**

<b>RATING</b>		<b>DESCRIPTION OF STRUCTURE(S) AND/OR SYSTEMS<sup>4</sup></b>	
		<b>OSAR<sup>1</sup> and SSAR<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>ICAR<sup>3</sup></b>
6	<i>Good</i>	<p><i>The capacity of the structure or system meets the requirements of this standard.</i></p> <p><i>The structure or system should be considered fit-for-purpose. No repairs or upgrades are required.</i></p>	<p><i>No problems or only minor problems noted. Structural elements may show very minor deterioration, but no overstressing observed.</i></p> <p><i>No repairs or upgrades are required.</i></p>
5	<i>Satisfactory</i>	<p><i>The capacity of the structure or system meets the requirements of this standard.</i></p> <p><i>The structure or system should be considered fit-for-purpose. No repairs or upgrades are required.</i></p>	<p><i>Limited minor to moderate defects or deterioration observed, but no overstressing observed.</i></p> <p><i>No repairs or upgrades are required.</i></p>
4	<i>Fair</i>	<p><i>The capacity of the structure or system is no more than 15 percent below the requirements of this standard, as determined from an engineering evaluation.</i></p> <p><i>The structure or system should be considered as marginal. Repair and/or upgrade measures may be required to remain operational. Facility may remain operational, provided a plan and schedule for remedial action is presented to and accepted by the Division.</i></p>	<p><i>All primary structural elements are sound, but minor to moderate defects or deterioration observed. Localized areas of moderate to advanced deterioration may be present, but do not significantly reduce the load bearing capacity of the structure.</i></p> <p><i>Repair and/or upgrade measures may be required to remain operational. Facility may remain operational, provided a plan and schedule for remedial action is presented to and accepted by the Division.</i></p>
3	<i>Poor</i>	<p><i>The capacity of the structure or system is no more than 25 percent below the requirements of this standard, as determined from an engineering evaluation.</i></p> <p><i>The structure or system is not fit-for-purpose. Repair and/or upgrade measures may be required to remain operational. The facility may be allowed to remain operational on a restricted or contingency basis until the deficiencies are corrected, provided a plan and schedule for such work is presented to and accepted by the Division.</i></p>	<p><i>Advanced deterioration or overstressing observed on widespread portions of the structure, but does not significantly reduce the load bearing capacity of the structure.</i></p> <p><i>Repair and/or upgrade measures may be required to remain operational. The facility may be allowed to remain operational on a restricted or contingency basis until the deficiencies are corrected, provided a plan and schedule for such work is presented to and accepted by the Division.</i></p>
2	<i>Serious</i>	<p><i>The capacity of the structure or system is more than 25 percent below the requirements of this standard, as determined from an engineering evaluation.</i></p> <p><i>The structure or system is not fit-for-purpose. Repairs and/or upgrade measures may be required to remain operational. The facility may be allowed to remain operational on a restricted basis until the deficiencies are corrected, provided a plan and schedule for such work is presented to and accepted by the Division.</i></p>	<p><i>Advanced deterioration, overstressing or breakage may have significantly affected the load bearing capacity of primary structural components. Local failures are possible and loading restrictions may be necessary.</i></p> <p><i>Repairs and/or upgrade measures may be required to remain operational. The facility may be allowed to remain operational on a restricted basis until the deficiencies are corrected, provided a plan and schedule for such work is presented to and accepted by the Division.</i></p>
1	<i>Critical</i>	<p><i>The capacity of the structure or system is critically deficient relative to the requirements of this standard.</i></p> <p><i>The structure or system is not fit-for-purpose. The facility shall cease operations until deficiencies are corrected and accepted by the Division.</i></p>	<p><i>Very advanced deterioration, overstressing or breakage has resulted in localized failure(s) of primary structural components. More widespread failures are possible or likely to occur and load restrictions should be implemented as necessary.</i></p> <p><i>The facility shall cease operations until deficiencies are corrected and accepted by the Division.</i></p>

1. OSAR = Operational Structural Assessment Ratings

2. SSAR = Seismic Structural Assessment Ratings

3. ICAR = Inspection Condition Assessment Ratings [2.2]; Ratings shall be assigned comparing the observed condition to the as-built condition.

4. Structural, mooring or berthing systems

**TABLE 31F-2-5  
COMPONENT DEFICIENCY REMEDIAL ACTION PRIORITIES (RAP)**

<b>REMEDIAL PRIORITIES</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION AND REMEDIAL ACTIONS</b>
P1	<p><i>Specified whenever a condition that poses an immediate threat to public health, safety or the environment is observed. <u>Emergency Actions</u> may consist of barricading or closing all or portions of the berthing system, evacuating product lines and ceasing transfer operations.</i></p> <p><i>The berthing system is not fit-for-purpose. <u>Immediate remedial actions are required prior to the continuance of normal operations.</u></i></p>
P2	<p><i>Specified whenever defects or deficiencies pose a potential threat to public health, safety and the environment. Actions may consist of limiting or restricting operations until remedial measures have been completed.</i></p> <p><i>The berthing system is not fit-for-purpose. This priority requires investigation, evaluation and <u>urgent action</u>.</i></p>
P3	<p><i>Specified whenever systems require upgrading in order to comply with the requirement of these standards or current applicable codes. These deficiencies <u>do not require emergency or urgent actions</u>.</i></p> <p><i>The MOT may have limitations placed on its operational status.</i></p>
P4	<p><i>Specified whenever damage or defects requiring repair are observed.</i></p> <p><i>The berthing system is fit-for-purpose. <u>Repair can be performed during normal maintenance cycles, but not to exceed one year.</u></i></p>
R	<p><i>Recommended action is a good engineering/maintenance practice, but not required by these standards.</i></p> <p><i>The berthing system is fit-for-purpose.</i></p>

**TABLE 31F-2-6**  
**FOLLOW-UP ACTIONS [2.2]**

FOLLOW-UP ACTION	DESCRIPTION
Emergency Action	<i>Specified whenever a condition which poses an immediate threat to public health, safety or the environment is observed. Emergency Actions may consist of barricading or closing all or portions of the berthing system, limiting vessel size, placing load restrictions, evacuating product lines, ceasing transfer operations, etc.</i>
Engineering Evaluation	<i>Specified whenever damage or deficiencies are observed which require further investigation or evaluation to determine appropriate follow-up actions.</i>
Repair Design Inspection	<i>Specified whenever damage or defects requiring repair are observed. The repair design inspection is performed to the level of detail necessary to prepare appropriate repair plans, specifications and estimates.</i>
Upgrade Design and Implementation	<i>Specified whenever the system requires upgrading in order to comply with the requirements of these standards and current applicable codes.</i>
Special Inspection	<i>Typically specified to determine the cause or significance of nontypical deterioration, usually prior to designing repairs. Special testing, laboratory analysis, monitoring or investigation using nonstandard equipment or techniques are typically required.</i>
Develop and Implement Repair Plans	<i>Specified when the Repair Design Inspection and required Special Inspections have been completed. Indicates that the structure is ready to have repair plans prepared and implemented.</i>
No Action	<i>Specified when no further action is necessary until the next scheduled audit or inspection.</i>

**3102F.3.7 Follow-up actions.** Follow-up actions per Table 31F-2-6 shall be prescribed by the audit team. Multiple follow-up actions may be assigned; however, guidance shall be provided as to the order in which the follow-up actions should be carried out.

If an assessment rating of "1", "2" or "3" (Table 31F-2-4) or a RAP of "P1" or "P2" (Table 31F-2-5) or "Emergency Action" using Table 31F-2-6, is assigned to a structure, berthing system or critical component, the Division shall be notified immediately. The Executive Summary Table ES-2 (see Example Table 31F-2-8) shall include implementation schedules for all follow-up and remedial actions. Follow-up and remedial actions and implementation schedules are subject to Division approval.

For action plan implementation between audits, see Section 3102F.3.9.

**3102F.3.8 Documentation and reporting.** The audit reports shall be signed and stamped by the audit team leader. The inspection and other reports and drawings shall be signed and stamped by the engineers in responsible charge.

Each audit and inspection, whether partial or complete, shall be adequately documented. Partial inspections cover only specific systems or equipment examined. The resulting reports shall summarize and reference relevant previous ratings and deficiencies. Inspection reports shall be included in subsequent audits.

The contents of the audit and inspection reports for each berthing system shall, at a minimum, include the following as appropriate:

**Executive summary**—a concise narrative of the audit or inspection results and analyses conclusions. It shall include summary information for each berthing system, including an overview of the assigned follow-up actions. The Executive Summary Tables shall also be included (see Example Tables 31F-2-7A through 31F-2-7C and 31F-2-8).

#### **Table of contents**

**Introduction**—a brief description of the purpose and scope of the audit or inspection, as well as a description of the inspection/evaluation methodology used.

**Existing conditions**—a description, along with a summary, of the observed conditions. Subsections shall be used to describe the above water structure, underwater structure, fire, piping/pipeline, mechanical and electrical systems, to the extent each are included in the scope of the audit. Photos, plan views and sketches shall be utilized as appropriate to describe the structure and the observed conditions. Details of the inspection results such as test data, measurements data, etc., shall be documented in an appendix.

**Evaluation and assessment**—assessment ratings shall be assigned to all structures and/or berthing systems. Also, see Section 3102F.3.6. All supporting calculations, as-built drawings and documentation shall be included in appendices as appropriate to substantiate the ratings. However, the results and recommendations of the engineering analyses shall be included in this section. Component deficiencies shall be described and a corresponding RAP assigned.

**Follow-up actions**—Specific follow-up actions (Table 31F-2-6) shall be documented (Table 31F-2-8), and remedial schedules included, for each audited system. Audit team leaders shall specify which follow-up actions require a California registered engineer to certify that the completion is acceptable.

**Appendices**—When appropriate, the following appendices shall be included:

1. Background data on the terminal - description of the service environment (wind/waves/currents), extent and type of marine growth, unusual environmental conditions, etc.
2. Inspection/testing data

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

3. Mooring and berthing analyses
4. Structural and seismic analyses and calculations
5. Geotechnical report
6. MOT Fire Protection Assessment
7. Pipeline stress and displacement analyses
8. Mechanical and electrical system documentation
9. Corrosion assessment
10. Photographs, sketches and supporting data shall be included to document typical conditions and referenced deficiencies, and to justify the assessment ratings and the remedial action priorities RAPs assigned.

**3102F.3.9 Action plan implementation between audits.** The operator is responsible for correction of deficiencies between audits. Prior to implementation, projects shall be submitted for Division review in accordance with Section 3101F.8.3. During project implementation, the Division shall be informed of any significant changes. After project completion, "as-built" documentation, including drawings, calculations and analyses, shall be submitted to the Division.

Executive Summary Tables shall be updated by the operator and submitted to the Division at least annually.

**3102F.4 Post-event notification and inspection.** A post-event inspection is a focused inspection following a significant, potentially damage-causing event such as an earthquake, storm, vessel impact, fire, explosion, construction incident or tsunami. The primary purpose is to assess the integrity of structural, mechanical and electrical systems. This assessment will determine the operational status and/or any remedial measures required.

**3102F.4.1 Notification and action plan.** Notification as per 2 CCR 2325(e) [2.1] shall be provided to the local area Division field office. The notification shall include, as a minimum:

1. Brief description of the event
2. Brief description of the nature, extent and significance of any damage observed as a result of the event
3. Operational status and any required restrictions
4. Statement as to whether a Post-Event inspection will be carried out

The Division may carry out or cause to be carried out, a post-event inspection. In the interim, the Division may direct a change in the operations manual, per 2 CCR 2385(f)(3) [2.1].

If a post-event inspection is required, an action plan shall be submitted to the Division within five (5) days after the event. This deadline may be extended in special circumstances. The action plan shall include the scope of the inspection (above water, underwater, electrical, mechanical systems, physical limits, applicable berthing systems, etc.) and submission date of the final report. The action plan is subject to Division approval.

**3102F.4.2 Inspection team.** The qualifications of the inspection team shall be the same as those prescribed in Section 3102F.3.4. Division representatives may participate in any post-event inspection, as observers, and may provide guidance.

**3102F.4.3 Scope.** The post-event inspection shall focus on the possible damage caused by the event. General observations of long-term or preexisting deterioration such as significant corrosion-related damage or other deterioration should be made as appropriate, but should not be the focus of the inspection. The inspection shall always include an above-water assessment of structural, mechanical and electrical components.

The inspection team leader shall determine the need for, and methodology of, an underwater structural assessment, in consultation with the Division. Above water observations, such as shifting or differential settlement, misalignments, significant cracking or spalling, bulging, etc., shall be used to determine whether or not an underwater assessment is required. Similarly, the inspection team leader shall determine, in consultation with the Division, the need for, and methodology of, any supplemental inspections (e.g., special inspections (see Section 3102F.3.5.3).

The following information may be important in determining the need for, and methodology of, the post-event inspection:

1. Earthquakes or vessel or debris impact typically cause damage both above and below the waterline. Following a major earthquake, the inspection should focus on components likely to attract highest lateral loads (batter or shorter piles in the rear of the structure, etc.). In case of vessel or debris impact, the inspection effort should focus on components in the path of the impact mass.
2. Major floods or tsunamis may cause undermining of the structure and/or scouring at the mudline.
3. Fire damage varies significantly with the type of construction materials but all types may be adversely affected. Special inspections (sampling and laboratory testing) shall be conducted, as determined by the inspection team leader, in order to determine the nature and extent of damage.
4. High wind or wave events often cause damage both above and below the waterline. An underwater inspection may be required if damage is visible above the waterline. Structural damage may be potentially increased if a vessel was at the berth during the event. The effects of high wind may be most prevalent on equipment and connections of such equipment to the structure.

The methodology of conducting an underwater post-event inspection should be established with due consideration of the structure type and type of damage anticipated. Whereas slope failures or scour may be readily apparent in waters of adequate visibility, overstressing cracks on

piles covered with marine growth will not be readily apparent. Where such hidden damage is suspected, marine growth removal should be performed on a representative sampling of components in accordance with the Level II effort requirements described in Section 3102F.3.5.2. The cause of the event will determine the appropriate sample size and locations.

**3102F.4.4 Post-event ratings.** A post-event rating [2.2] shall be assigned to each berthing system upon completion of the inspection (see Table 31F-2-9). All observations of the above and under water structure, mechanical and electrical components and systems shall be considered in assigning a post-event rating.

Ratings should consider only damage that was likely caused by the event. Pre-existing deterioration such as corrosion damage should not be considered unless the structural integrity is immediately threatened or safety systems or protection of the environment may be compromised.

Assignment of ratings should reflect an overall characterization of the berthing system being rated. The rating shall consider both the severity of the deterioration and the extent to which it is widespread throughout the facility. The fact that the facility was designed for loads that are lower than the current standards for design should have no influence upon the ratings.

**3102F.4.5 Follow-up actions.** Follow-up actions shall be assigned upon completion of the post-event inspection of each berthing system. Table 31F-2-5 specifies remedial action priorities for deficiencies. Table 31F-2-6 specifies various follow-up actions. Multiple follow-up actions may be assigned; however, guidance should be provided as to the order in which the follow-up actions should be carried out. Follow-up actions shall be subject to Division approval.

**3102F.4.6 Documentation and reporting.** Documentation of the specific attributes of each defect shall not be required during a post-event inspection. However, a narrative description of significant damage shall be used. The description shall be consistent with and shall justify the post-event rating assigned.

A report shall be prepared and submitted to the Division upon completion of the post-event inspection and shall, at a minimum, include:

1. Brief description of the facility including the physical limits of the structure, type of construction material(s), and the mechanical and electrical systems present
2. Brief description of the event triggering the inspection
3. Scope of the inspection (above water, underwater, electrical or mechanical)
4. Date of the inspection
5. Names and affiliations of inspection team
6. Description of the nature, extent and significance of any observed damage resulting from the event

7. Photographs should be provided to substantiate the descriptions and justify the condition rating
8. Assignment of a post-event rating
9. Statement regarding whether the facility is fit to resume operations and, if so, under what conditions
10. Assignment of follow-up action(s)
11. Inspection data, drawings, calculations and other relevant engineering materials
12. Signature and stamp of team leader(s)

**3102F.4.7 Action Plan Report.** Upon completion of all actions delineated in the action plan, a final report shall be submitted to the Division to document the work completed. Supporting documentation such as calculations or other relevant data shall be provided in appendices.

#### 3102F.5 References.

- [2.1] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 2, Division 3, Chapter 1, Article 5 – Marine Terminals Inspection and Monitoring (2 CCR 2300 et seq.)
- [2.2] Childs, K.M., editor, 2001, “Underwater Investigations - Standard Practice Manual,” American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA.
- [2.3] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2009, API Recommended Practice 574 (API RP 574), “Inspection Practices for Piping System Components,” 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Washington, D.C.
- [2.4] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2009, API 570, “Piping Inspection Code: In-service Inspection, Rating, Repair, and Alteration of Piping Systems,” 3<sup>rd</sup> ed., Washington, D.C.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

TABLE 31F-2-7A

EXAMPLE	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY TABLE (ES-1A) GLOBAL OPERATIONAL STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT RATINGS (OSAR)									REV. # MM/YYYY
	Berth(s) <sup>1</sup>	Structure(s) <sup>1</sup>	Type of analysis <sup>2</sup>	OSAR rating <sup>4</sup>	Last audit date (MM/YYYY)	Next audit due date (MM/YYYY)	Last analysis date (MM/YYYY) <sup>5</sup>	Repair/replacement due date (MM/YYYY) <sup>6</sup>	Fit-for-purpose (Y/N)	
Berthing system										
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	O	5	08/2008	08/2011	02/2008	N/A	Y	None
North Wharf	Berth 1	Mooring Dolphin	M	3	08/2008	08/2011	05/2008	12/2008	N	Hook capacity inadequate
North Wharf	Berth 1	Breasting Dolphin	B	2	08/2008	08/2011	06/2008	02/2010	N	Berthing velocity restrictions required. Velocity monitoring system operational. Fender system to be upgraded. See Terminal Operating Limits.
North Wharf	Berth 1	Overall	O	4	08/2008	08/2011	02/2008	N/A	Y	None
North Wharf	Berth 1	Dolphins, Trestles, Catwalks, Bulkhead walls, etc.			08/2008	08/2011				
South Wharf	Berth 2				08/2008	08/2011				

TABLE 31F-2-7B

EXAMPLE	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY TABLE (ES-1B) GLOBAL SEISMIC STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT RATINGS (SSAR)									REV. # MM/YYYY
	Berth(s) <sup>1</sup>	Structure(s) <sup>1</sup>	SSAR rating <sup>4</sup>	Last audit date (MM/YYYY)	Next audit due date (MM/YYYY)	Last analysis date (MM/YYYY) <sup>5</sup>	Repair/replacement due date (MM/YYYY) <sup>6</sup>	Fit-for-purpose (Y/N)	Description or comments <sup>7</sup>	
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	2	08/2008	08/2011	05/2008	02/2010	N	Level 1 – OK; SAP2000 Pushover Analysis Level 2 – NG; SAP2000 Pushover Analysis displacements too large and liquefaction	
North Wharf	Berth 1	Trestle	5	08/2008	08/2011	05/2008	N/A	Y	Level 1 – OK; SAP2000 Linear Analysis Level 2 – OK; SAP2000 Linear Analysis	
North Wharf	Berth 1	30" Crude line	5	08/2008	08/2011	05/2008	N/A	Y	Level 1 – N/A Level 2 – OK; CAESAR Analysis	
North Wharf	Overall	Overall								
North Wharf	Berth 1	Dolphins, Pipeline, Trestles, Bulkhead walls, etc.								
South Wharf	Berth 2									

TABLE 31F-2-7C

EXAMPLE	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY TABLE (ES-1C) GLOBAL INSPECTION CONDITION ASSESSMENT RATINGS (ICAR) <sup>8</sup>							REV. # MM/YYYY
	Berthing system	Berth(s) <sup>1</sup>	Structure(s) <sup>1</sup>	Type of inspection <sup>3</sup>	ICAR rating <sup>4,9</sup>	Last inspection date (MM/YYYY) <sup>10</sup>	Inspection interval (YRS.)	
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	AW	5	02/2008	3	02/2011	General satisfactory condition. See RAPs in Table ES-2 for details.
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	UW	4	02/2008	5	02/2013	Pile damage; 10 serve, 15 minor See RAPs in Table ES-2 for details.
North Wharf	Berth 1	Breasting Dolphin BD-1	AW	6	02/2008	3	02/2011	See RAPs in Table ES-2
North Wharf	Berth 1	Breasting Dolphin BD-1	UW	5	02/2008	5	02/2013	See RAPs in Table ES-2
North Wharf	Berth 1	Dolphins, Trestle, Catwalks, Bulkhead walls, etc.						
South Wharf	Berth 2							

These notes apply to Tables 31F-2-7A through 7C:

1. The term "Overall" shall be input in this field when the assessment ratings are summarized for a berth.
2. "Types of Analyses": "O" = Operational Loading Analysis, "M" = Mooring Analysis, "B" = Berthing Analysis
3. "Types of Inspections": "AW" = Above Water Inspection, "UW" = Underwater Inspection
4. All assessment ratings shall be assigned in accordance with Table 31F-2-4.
5. The "Analysis Dates" are defined by the month and year in which the final design package is submitted to the Division.
6. The "Repair/Replacement Dates" are defined by the month and year in which the repair/replacement is to be completed and operational.
7. The "Description or Comments" shall reference all MOT operating limits. For OSARs, this includes berthing velocity restrictions, load limits, etc. For SSARs, this includes a brief list of the findings for each Seismic Performance Level.
8. Inspection findings may trigger a structural reassessment (see Tables 31F-2-7A and 31F-2-7B).
9. Ratings shall be assigned comparing the observed condition to the as-built condition.
10. The "Inspection Dates" are defined by the month and year in which the last day of formal field inspection is conducted.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

TABLE 31F-2-8

EXAMPLE	EXECUTIVE SUMMARY TABLE (ES-2) COMPONENT DEFICIENCY REMEDIAL ACTION PRIORITIES (RAP) <sup>1</sup>											REV. # MM/YYYY	
	Berthing system	Berth(s)	Structure(s) or location(s)	Deficiency item label <sup>2</sup>	Component: deficiency description	Remedial action priority (RAP) <sup>3</sup>	CBC section reference	Audit checklist reference (optional)	Description of planned remedial action	P.E. review required? (Y/N) <sup>4</sup>	Repair/replacement due date (MM/YYYY)	Completion date (MM/YYYY)	
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	02.0001.001	<i>Piles: 10 piles have severe damage; 15 piles have minor damage.</i>	P2	3102F.3.5.2		Replace 10 severe piles. Monitor 15 minor piles.	Y	05/2008	04/2008	10 piles replaced	
North Wharf	Berth 1	Mooring Dolphin MD-1	02.0001.002	<i>Curb: Spalling of concrete curb w/o exposed reinforcement.</i>	R	3102F.3.5.2		Repair concrete curbs.	N	02/2009			
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	08.0001.002	<i>International Shore Fire Connection: Connections available, but not connected.</i>	P3	3108F.6.3.4	8.6.22	Install International Shore Fire Connections.	N	10/2008			
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	11.0001.001	<i>Conduit Seals near Manifold: Conduit seals inadequate for Class 1, Division 1 location.</i>	P1	3111F.2		Replace conduit seals with seals adequate for Class 1, Division 1 location within 30 days.	Y	04/2008	04/2008	Seals replaced	
North Wharf	Berth 1	Wharfhead	11.0001.001	<i>Pressurized Instrumentation Panel near Shelter: Pressure gauge reads "low" and will not hold pressure in Class 1, Division 2 location.</i>	P2	3111F.2	3111F.4.5	Repair pressurized instrumentation panel in Class 1, Division 2 Location within 60 days.	Y	05/2008	05/2008	Pressurized instrumentation panel could not be repaired and was replaced.	

These notes apply to Table 31F-2-8:

- After a deficiency is corrected/completed, the row of text corresponding to that deficiency may be grayed out in subsequent ES-2 tables, and removed entirely in the subsequent audit.
- The "Deficiency Item Labels" shall be assigned in the format shown above with the first series of numbers representing the Code Division/Section number ("XX"), a period (".") for separation, the second series of numbers representing the deficiency item number ("XXXX"), a period (".") for separation, and the third series of numbers representing the ES-2 table revision number ("XXX") in which the deficiency was first reported. Note that the deficiency item numbering will start from "0001" for the first deficiency in each section of the audit, and will increase consecutively in all future ES-2 tables.
- RAPs shall be assigned in accordance with Table 31F-2-5.
- Professional engineering review required in accordance with Section 3102F.3.8 under "Follow-up Actions."

TABLE 31F-2-9  
POST-EVENT RATINGS AND REMEDIAL ACTIONS [2.2]

RATING	SUMMARY OF DAMAGE	REMEDIAL ACTIONS
A	No significant event-induced damage observed.	No further action required. The berthing system may continue operations.
B	Minor to moderate event-induced damage observed but all primary structural elements and electrical/mechanical systems are sound.	Repairs or mitigation may be required to remain operational. The berthing system may continue operations.
C	Moderate to major event-induced damage observed which may have significantly affected the load bearing capacity of primary structural elements or the functionality of key electrical/mechanical systems.	Repairs or mitigation may be necessary to resume or remain operational. The berthing system may be allowed to resume limited operations.
D	Major event-induced damage has resulted in localized or widespread failure of primary structural components; or the functionality of key electrical/mechanical systems has been significantly affected. Additional failures are possible or likely to occur.	The berthing system may not resume operations until the deficiencies are corrected.

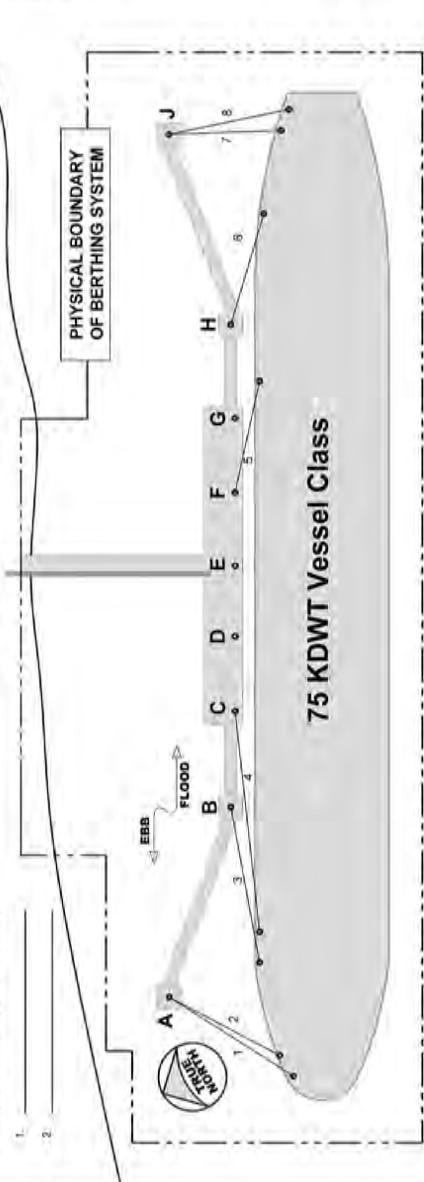
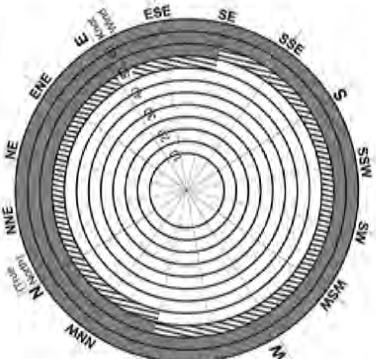
<b>GENERAL INFORMATION</b>																															
REFERENCE CALCULATION(S): NAME OF REPORT(S) / PREPARER(S) / DATE(S)																															
ALTERNATIVE(S) APPROVED: 1. _____ 2. _____																															
<b>TERMINAL OPERATING LIMITS</b> <b>Terminal Name &amp; Location</b> <b>50 to 75 KDWT Vessel Starboard Side</b>																															
																															
<b>ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITION LIMITS</b> 																															
<b>WIND RESTRICTION DIAGRAM</b> (WIND DIRECTION FROM)																															
<b>MOORING DEVICE INFORMATION</b> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>MOORING POINT</th> <th>DEVICE TYPE</th> <th>CAPACITY (KIPS)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>DOUBLE HOOK</td> <td>300/150 PER HOOK</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>DOUBLE HOOK</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td>BOULLARD</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D</td> <td>BOULLARD</td> <td>OUT OF SERVICE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>E</td> <td>BOULLARD</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>F</td> <td>BOULLARD</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>G</td> <td>BOULLARD</td> <td>OUT OF SERVICE</td> </tr> <tr> <td>H</td> <td>DOUBLE HOOK</td> <td>300/150 PER HOOK</td> </tr> <tr> <td>J</td> <td>TRIPLE HOOK</td> <td>450/150 PER HOOK</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		MOORING POINT	DEVICE TYPE	CAPACITY (KIPS)	A	DOUBLE HOOK	300/150 PER HOOK	B	DOUBLE HOOK	200	C	BOULLARD	200	D	BOULLARD	OUT OF SERVICE	E	BOULLARD	200	F	BOULLARD	200	G	BOULLARD	OUT OF SERVICE	H	DOUBLE HOOK	300/150 PER HOOK	J	TRIPLE HOOK	450/150 PER HOOK
MOORING POINT	DEVICE TYPE	CAPACITY (KIPS)																													
A	DOUBLE HOOK	300/150 PER HOOK																													
B	DOUBLE HOOK	200																													
C	BOULLARD	200																													
D	BOULLARD	OUT OF SERVICE																													
E	BOULLARD	200																													
F	BOULLARD	200																													
G	BOULLARD	OUT OF SERVICE																													
H	DOUBLE HOOK	300/150 PER HOOK																													
J	TRIPLE HOOK	450/150 PER HOOK																													
<b>VESSEL DESCRIPTION:</b> DWT CAPACITY: 74,800 LT MAXIMUM ARRIVAL DISPLACEMENT: 75,100 LT MAXIMUM DRAFT: 47.0 FT MAXIMUM ARRIVAL DRAFT: 38.0 FT MAXIMUM LOA: 755.0 FT MAXIMUM BEAM: 105.0 FT																															
<b>BERTH DESCRIPTION:</b> MINIMUM WATER DEPTH: 40.0 FT @ MLW MINIMUM UNDERKEEL CLEARANCE: 2.0 FT																															
<b>BERTHING NOTES:</b> 1. MAXIMUM IMPACT VELOCITY = 0.33 FPS. 2. BERTHING IS NOT ALLOWED AT AN APPROACH ANGLE GREATER THAN 6 DEGREES. 3. NO BERTHING OPERATION WILL TAKE PLACE WITH WIND VELOCITIES GREATER THAN 38 KNOTS (43.7 MPH).																															
<b>MOORING NOTES:</b> 1. PASSING VESSEL EFFECTS ARE CONSIDERED IN THE MOORING ANALYSIS. 2. MAXIMUM ALLOWED: SURGE : +/- 10 FT, SWAY : +/- 2.0 FT 3. STOP OPERATIONS IF A PASSING VESSEL WITH LOA > 250 FT IS WITHIN 300 FT 4. DO NOT EXCEED ONE LINE PIER HOOK.																															
<b>MOORING LINE DESCRIPTION :</b> MINIMUM NO. OF LINES: 5 NO. OF HEAD LINES: 0 NO. OF AFT LINES: 0 NO. OF BREAST LINES: 0 NO. OF SPRINGS LINES: 2 FORWARD, 2 AFT  MINIMUM BREAKING LOAD, WEB: 105 KIPS ACTUAL LINE LOADS NOT TO EXCEED ____ % OF MSL																															
REV. NO. & DATE																															

FIGURE 31F-2-1

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

### Division 3

#### SECTION 3103F STRUCTURAL LOADING CRITERIA

**3103F.1 General.** Section 3103F establishes the environmental and operating loads acting on the marine oil terminal (MOT) structures and on moored vessel(s). The analysis procedures are presented in Sections 3104F – 3107F.

##### 3103F.2 Dead loads.

**3103F.2.1 General.** Dead loads shall include the weight of the entire structure, including permanent attachments such as loading arms, pipelines, deck crane, fire monitor tower, gangway structure, vapor control equipment and mooring hardware. Unit weights specified in Section 3103F.2.2 may be used for MOT structures if actual weights are not available.

**3103F.2.2 Unit weights.** The unit weights in Table 31F-3-1 may be used for both existing and new MOTs.

TABLE 31F-3-1  
UNIT WEIGHTS

MATERIAL	UNIT WEIGHT (pcf)*
Steel or cast steel	490
Cast iron	450
Aluminum alloys	175
Timber (untreated)	40-50
Timber (treated)	45-60
Concrete, reinforced (normal weight)	145-160
Concrete, reinforced (lightweight)	90-120
Asphalt paving	150

\* pounds per cubic foot

**3103F.2.3 Equipment and piping area loads.** The equipment and piping area loads in Table 31F-3-2 may be used, as a minimum, in lieu of detailed as-built data.

TABLE 31F-3-2  
EQUIPMENT AND PIPING AREA LOADS

LOCATION	AREA LOADS (psf)***
Open areas	20*
Areas containing equipment and piping	35**
Trestle roadway	20*

\* Allowance for incidental items such as railings, lighting, miscellaneous equipment, etc.

\*\*35 psf is for miscellaneous general items such as walkways, pipe supports, lighting and instrumentation. Major equipment weight shall be established and added into this weight for piping manifold, valves, deck crane, fire monitor tower, gangway structure and similar ma/or equipment.

\*\*\* pounds per square foot

**3103F.3 Live loads and buoyancy.** The following vertical live loading shall be considered, where appropriate: uniform loading, truck loading, crane loading and buoyancy. Additionally, MOT specific, nonpermanent equipment shall be identified and used in loading computations.

##### 3103F.4 Earthquake loads.

**3103F.4.1 General.** Earthquake loads are described in terms of Peak Ground Acceleration (PGA), spectral acceleration and earthquake magnitude. The required seismic analysis procedures (Tables 31F-4-1 and 31F-4-2) are dependent on the spill classification obtained from Table 31F-1-1.

**3103F.4.2 Design earthquake motion parameters.** The earthquake ground motion parameters of peak ground acceleration, spectral acceleration and earthquake magnitude are modified for site amplification and near fault directivity effects. The resulting values are the Design Peak Ground Acceleration (DPGA), Design Spectral Acceleration (DSA) and Design Earthquake Magnitude (DEM).

For Site Classes A through E (Section 3103F.4.2.1), peak ground and design spectral accelerations shall be obtained from:

1. U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) published data as discussed in Section 3103F.4.2.2, or
2. A site-specific probabilistic seismic hazard analysis (PSHA) as discussed in Section 3103F.4.2.3.

Site-specific PSHA is required for Site Class F.

Unless stated otherwise, the DSA values are for 5 percent damping; values at other levels may be obtained as per Section 3103F.4.2.9.

The appropriate probability levels associated with DPGA and DSA for different seismic performance levels are provided in Table 31F-4-1. Deterministic earthquake motions, which are used only for comparison to the probabilistic results, are addressed in Section 3103F.4.2.7.

The evaluation of Design Earthquake Magnitude (DEM), is discussed in Section 3103F.4.2.8. This parameter is required when acceleration time histories (Section 3103F.4.2.10) are addressed or if liquefaction potential (Section 3106F.4) is being evaluated.

**3103F.4.2.1 Site classes.** The following Site Classes, defined in Section 3106F.2.1, shall be used in developing values of DSA and DPGA:

A, B, C, D, E and F

For Site Class F, a site-specific response analysis is required per Section 3103F.4.2.5.

**3103F.4.2.2 Earthquake motions from USGS maps.** Earthquake ground motion parameters can be obtained directly from the US Seismic Design Maps tool available at the USGS website (<http://earthquake.usgs.gov>) for the site condition(s) appropriate for the MOT site and the selected probability of exceedance. For this purpose, select the ASCE/SEI 41 [3.1] as the design code reference document, and specify the appropriate custom parameters, including but not limited to, location, required Probability of Exceedance (in 50 years), and appropriate Site Soil Classification(s) for the MOT

site. The USGS tool directly provides the peak ground and spectral accelerations for the selected hazard level and site condition(s).

The alternative method of obtaining earthquake ground motion parameters, from the most current USGS data for selected hazard level and site condition(s), is permitted. If needed, the data for appropriate probability of exceedance may be obtained using the procedure described in Chapter 1 of FEMA 356 [3.2], and corrected for the MOT site as discussed in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5.

**3103F.4.2.3 Earthquake motions from site-specific probabilistic seismic hazard analyses.** Site-specific Probabilistic Seismic Hazard Analysis (PSHA) shall use appropriate seismic sources and their characterization, attenuation relationships, probability of exceedance and site soil conditions. Site-specific PSHA shall be conducted by a qualified California registered civil engineer with a California authorization as a geotechnical engineer per Section 3102F.3.4.8.

If site-specific PSHA is used for Site Classes A, B, C, D or E, results from the site-specific PSHA shall be compared with those from the USGS published data as described in Section 3103F.4.2.2. If the two sets of values differ significantly, a justification for using the characterization chosen shall be provided. If DPGA and DSA from site-specific PSHA are less than 80 percent of the values from USGS data, a peer review may be required.

**3103F.4.2.4 Simplified evaluation of site amplification effects.** When the MOT site class is different from the Site Classes B to C boundary, site amplification effects shall be incorporated in peak ground accelerations and spectral accelerations. This may be accomplished using a simplified method or a site-specific evaluation (Section 3103F.4.2.5).

For a given site class, the following procedure from Chapter 1 of FEMA 356 [3.2] presents a simplified method that may be used to incorporate the site amplification effects for peak ground acceleration and spectral acceleration computed for the Site Classes B and C boundary.

1. Calculate the spectral acceleration values at 0.20 and 1.0 second period:

$$S_{XS} = F_a S_S \quad (3-1)$$

$$S_{XI} = F_v S_I \quad (3-2)$$

where:

$F_a$  = site coefficient obtained from Table 31F-3-3

$F_v$  = site coefficient obtained from Table 31F-3-4

$S_S$  = short period (usually at 0.20 seconds) spectral acceleration value (for the boundary of Site Classes B and C) obtained using Section 3103F.4.2.2, or at

the period corresponding to the peak in spectral acceleration values when obtained from Section 3103F.4.2.3

$S_I$  = spectral acceleration value (for the boundary of Site Classes B and C) at 1.0 second period

$S_{XS}$  = spectral acceleration value obtained using the short period  $S_S$  and factored by Table 31F-3-3 for the site class under consideration.

$S_{XI}$  = spectral acceleration value obtained using the 1.0 second period  $S_I$  and factored by Table 31F-3-4 for the site class under consideration.

$$2. \text{ Set } PGA_X = 0.4S_{XS} \quad (3-3)$$

where:

$PGA_X$  = peak ground acceleration corresponding to the site class under consideration.

When the value of  $PGA_X$  is less than the peak ground acceleration obtained following Section 3103F.4.2.2 or Section 3103F.4.2.3, an explanation of the results shall be provided.

3.  $PGA_X$ ,  $S_{XS}$  and  $S_{XI}$  constitute three spectral acceleration values for the site class under consideration corresponding to periods of 0,  $S_S$  (usually 0.2 seconds), and 1.0 second, respectively.

4. The final response spectra, without consideration for near-fault directivity effects, values of  $S_a$  for the site class under consideration may be obtained using the following equations (for 5 percent critical damping):

For  $0 < T < 0.2T_0$

$$S_a = (S_{XS})(0.4 + 3T/T_0) \quad (3-4)$$

where:

$T$  = Period corresponding to calculated  $S_a$

$T_0$  = Period at which the constant acceleration and constant velocity regions of the design spectrum intersect

For  $0.2T_0 < T < T_0$

$$S_a = S_{XS} \quad (3-5)$$

For  $T > T_0$

$$S_a = S_{XI}/T \quad (3-6)$$

where:

$$T_0 = S_{XI}/S_{XS} \quad (3-7)$$

The resulting  $PGA_X$  is the DPGA. However, the  $S_a$  shall be modified for near-fault directivity effects, per Section 3103F.4.2.6 to obtain the final DSAs.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**TABLE 31F-3-3  
VALUES OF  $F_a$** 

SITE CLASS	$S_s$				
	< 0.25	0.5	0.75	1.0	> 1.25
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
C	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.0	1.0
D	1.6	1.4	1.2	1.1	1.0
E	2.5	1.7	1.2	0.9	0.9
F	*	*	*	*	*

**Note:** Linear interpolation can be used to estimate values of  $F_a$  for intermediate values of  $S_s$ .

\* Site-specific dynamic site response analysis shall be performed.

**TABLE 31F-3-4  
VALUES OF  $F_v$** 

SITE CLASS	$S_v$				
	< 0.1	0.2	0.3	0.4	> 0.5
A	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8	0.8
B	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
C	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.3
D	2.4	2.0	1.8	1.6	1.5
E	3.5	3.2	2.8	2.4	2.4
F	*	*	*	*	*

**Note:** Linear interpolation can be used to estimate values of  $F_v$  for intermediate values of  $S_v$ .

\* Site-specific dynamic site response analysis shall be performed.

**3103F.4.2.5 Site-specific evaluation of amplification effects.** As an alternative to the procedure presented in Section 3103F.4.2.4, a site-specific response analysis may be performed. For Site Class F a site-specific response analysis is required. The analysis shall be either an equivalent linear or nonlinear analysis. Appropriate acceleration time histories as discussed in Section 3103F.4.2.10 shall be used.

In general, an equivalent linear analysis using, for example, SHAKE91 [3.3] is acceptable when the strength and stiffness of soils are unlikely to change significantly during the seismic shaking and the level of shaking is not large. A nonlinear analysis should be used when the strength and/or stiffness of soils could significantly change during the seismic shaking or significant nonlinearity of soils is expected because of high seismic shaking levels.

The choice of the method used in site response analysis shall be justified considering the expected stress-strain behavior of soils under the shaking level considered in the analysis.

Site-specific site response analysis may be performed using one-dimensional analysis. However, to the extent that MOTs often involve slopes or earth retaining structures, the one-dimensional analysis should be used judiciously. When one-dimensional analysis cannot be justified or is not adequate, two-dimensional equivalent linear or nonlinear response

analysis shall be performed. Site-specific response analysis results shall be compared to those based on the simplified method of Section 3103F.4.2.4 for reasonableness.

The peak ground accelerations obtained from this site-specific evaluation are DPGAs and the spectral accelerations are DSAs as long as the near-fault directivity effects addressed in Section 3103F.4.2.6 are appropriately incorporated into the time histories (Section 3103F.4.2.10).

**3103F.4.2.6 Directivity effects.** When the site is 15 km (9.3 miles) or closer to a seismic source that can significantly affect the site, near-fault directivity effects shall be reflected in the spectral acceleration values and in the deterministic spectral acceleration values of Section 3103F.4.2.7.

Two methods are available for incorporating directivity effects:

1. Directivity effects may be reflected in the spectral acceleration values in a deterministic manner by using well established procedures such as that described in Somerville, et al. [3.4]. The critical seismic sources and their characterization developed as part of the deterministic ground motion parameters (Section 3103F.4.2.7) should be used to evaluate the directivity effects. The resulting adjustments in spectral acceleration values may be applied in the probabilistic spectral acceleration values developed per Section 3103F.4.2.4 or 3103F.4.2.5. Such adjustment can be independent of the probability levels of spectral accelerations.
2. Directivity effects may be incorporated in the results of site specific PSHA per Section 3103F.4.2.3. In this case, the directivity effects will also depend on the probability level of spectral accelerations.

If spectral accelerations are obtained in this manner, the effects of site amplification using either Section 3103F.4.2.4, 3103F.4.2.5 or an equivalent method (if justified) shall be incorporated.

**3103F.4.2.7 Deterministic earthquake motions.** Deterministic ground motions from “scenario” earthquakes may be used for comparison purposes. Deterministic peak ground accelerations and spectral accelerations may be obtained using the “Critical Seismic Source” with maximum earthquake magnitude and its closest appropriate distance to the MOT. “Critical Seismic Source” is that which results in the largest computed median peak ground acceleration and spectral acceleration values when appropriate attenuation relationships are used. The values obtained from multiple attenuation relationships should be used to calculate the median peak ground acceleration and spectral acceleration values.

For comparison, the values of peak ground accelerations and spectral accelerations may be obtained from

the USGS maps, corresponding to the Maximum Considered Earthquake (MCE). In this case, the median values of peak ground acceleration and spectral acceleration values shall be 2/3 (see Section 1.6 of FEMA 356 [3.2]) of the values shown on the USGS maps.

**3103F.4.2.8 Design Earthquake Magnitude.** The Design Earthquake Magnitude used in developing site-specific acceleration time histories (Section 3103F.4.2.10) or liquefaction assessment (Section 3106F.4) is obtained using either of the following two methods:

1. The design earthquake may be selected as the largest earthquake magnitude associated with the critical seismic source. The distance shall be taken as the closest distance from the source to the site. The resulting design earthquake shall be associated with all DPGA values for the site, irrespective of probability levels.
2. The design earthquake (DEQ) may be obtained for each DPGA or DSA value and associated probability level by determining the corresponding dominant distance and magnitude. These are the values of the distance and magnitude that contribute the most to the mean seismic hazards estimates for the probability of interest. They are usually determined by locating the summits of the 3-D surface of contribution of each small interval of magnitude and distance to the total mean hazards estimate. If this 3-D surface shows several modes with approximate weight of more than 20 percent of the total, several DEQs may be considered, and the DEQ leading to the most conservative design parameters shall be used.

**3103F.4.2.9 Design Spectral Acceleration for various damping values.** Design Spectral Acceleration (DSA) values at damping other than 5 percent shall be obtained by using a procedure given in Chapter 1 of FEMA 356 [3.2], and is denoted as  $DSA_d$ . The following procedure does not include near-fault directivity effects.

For  $0 < T < 0.2 T_0$

$$DSA_d = S_{XS} [(5/B_s - 2) T/T_0 + 0.4] \quad (3-8)$$

For  $0.2 T_0 < T < T_0$

$$DSA_d = DSA/B_s \quad (3-9)$$

For  $T > T_0$

$$DSA_d = S_I/(B_I T) \quad (3-10)$$

where:

$T$  = period

$T_0$  =  $S_{X1}/S_{XS}$

$B_s$  = Coefficient used to adjust the short period spectral response, for the effect of viscous damping.

$B_I$  = Coefficient used to adjust one-second period spectral response, for the effect of viscous damping

Values of  $B_s$  and  $B_I$  are obtained from Table 31F-3-5.

Such a procedure shall incorporate the near-fault directivity effects when the MOT is 15 km (9.3 miles) or closer to a significant seismic source.

**TABLE 31F-3-5  
VALUES OF  $B_s$  AND  $B_I$  [3.2]**

DAMPING (%)	$B_s$	$B_I$
< 2	0.8	0.8
5	1.0	1.0
10	1.3	1.2
20	1.8	1.5
30	2.3	1.7
40	2.7	1.9
> 50	3.0	2.0

Note: Linear interpolation should be used for damping values not specifically listed.

**3103F.4.2.10 Development of acceleration time histories.** When acceleration time histories are utilized, target spectral acceleration values shall be initially selected corresponding to the DSA values at appropriate probability levels. For each set of target spectral acceleration values corresponding to one probability level, at least three sets of horizontal time histories (one or two horizontal acceleration time histories per set) shall be developed.

Initial time histories shall consider magnitude, distance and the type of fault that are reasonably similar to those associated with the conditions contributing most to the probabilistic DSA values. Preferred initial time histories should have their earthquake magnitude and distance to the seismic source similar to the mode-magnitude and mode-distance derived from the PSHA or from appropriate maps. When an adequate number of recorded time histories are not available, acceleration time histories from simulations may be used as supplements.

Scaling or adjustments, either in the frequency domain or in the time domain (preferably), prior to generating acceleration time histories should be kept to a minimum. When the target spectral accelerations include near-fault directivity effects (Section 3103F.4.2.6), the initial time histories should exhibit directivity effects.

When three sets of time histories are used in the analysis, the envelope of the spectral acceleration values from each time history shall be equal to or higher than the target spectral accelerations. If the envelope values fall below the target values, adjustments shall be made to ensure that the spectral acceleration envelope is higher than target spectral accelerations. If the envelope is not higher, then a justification shall be provided.

When seven or more sets of time histories are used, the average of the spectral acceleration values from the

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

set of time histories shall be equal or higher than the target spectral acceleration values. If the average values fall below the target values, adjustments shall be made to ensure that average values are higher than the target spectral accelerations. If this is not the case, then an explanation for the use of these particular spectral acceleration values shall be provided.

When three sets of time histories are used in the analysis, the maximum value of each response parameter shall be used in the design, evaluation and rehabilitation. When seven or more sets of time histories are used in the analysis, the average value of each response parameter may be used.

### 3103F.5 Mooring loads on vessels.

**3103F.5.1 General.** Forces acting on a moored vessel may be generated by wind, waves, current, tidal variations, tsunamis, seiches and hydrodynamic effects of passing vessels. Forces from wind and current acting directly on the MOT structure (not through the vessel in the form of mooring and/or breasting loads) shall be determined in Section 3103F.7.

The vessel's moorings shall be strong enough to hold during all expected environmental and passing vessel conditions (see Section 3105F), while adequately accommodating changes in draft, surge, sway, yaw and tide.

**3103F.5.2 Wind loads.** Wind loads on a vessel, moored at a MOT, shall be determined using procedures described in this section. Wind speed measured at an elevation of 33 feet (10 meters) above the water surface, with duration of 30 seconds shall be used to determine the design wind speed and wind limits for moored vessels. If these conditions are not met, adjustment factors shall be applied per Sections 3103F.5.2.2.

**3103F.5.2.1 Design wind speed.** For new MOTs, the 25-year return period shall be used to establish the design wind speed for each direction. The design wind speed is the maximum wind speed of 30-second duration used in the mooring analysis (see Section 3105F). The 30-second duration wind speed shall be determined from the annual maximum wind data. Average annual summaries cannot be used. Maximum wind speed data for a minimum of eight directions (45-degree increments) shall be obtained. If other duration wind data is available, it shall be adjusted to a 30-second duration, in accordance with Equation (3-12).

**3103F.5.2.2 Wind limits for moored vessels.** Wind loads shall be calculated for each of the load cases identified in Section 3105F.2. Wind velocity limits for moored vessels shall be presented in the Terminal Operating Limits (see Section 3102F.3.6.1 and Figure 31F-2-1) for each of the conditions given below.

**3103F.5.2.2.1 Operational condition.** The operational condition is defined as the wind envelope in which a vessel may conduct transfer operations, as determined from the mooring analysis (Section 3105F). Transfer operations shall cease when the wind exceeds the maximum velocity of the envelope.

**3103F.5.2.2.2 Survival condition.** The survival condition is defined as the state wherein a vessel can remain safely moored at the berth during severe winds; however, loading arms and hoses shall be disconnected (see Sections 3110F.2 and 3110F.3 regarding movement limits of loading arms and hoses, respectfully). The survival condition is the wind zone between the operational condition and the departure condition (defined in Section 3103F.5.2.2). In this wind zone, the vessel must prepare to depart the berth.

**3103F.5.2.2.3 Departure condition.** The departure condition is defined as the wind state above which a vessel can no longer remain safely moored at the berth during severe winds, as determined from the mooring analysis (Section 3105F). For a new MOT, the departure condition threshold is the maximum wind velocity, for a 30-second gust and a 25-year return period, obtained from historical data. If the wind rises above these levels, the vessel must depart the berth.

**3103F.5.2.3 Wind speed corrections.** Wind speed measured at an elevation of 33 feet (10 meters) above the water surface, with duration of 30 seconds shall be used to determine the design wind speed. If these conditions are not met, the following corrections shall be applied.

The correction for elevation is obtained from the equation:

$$V_w = V_h \left( \frac{33}{h} \right)^{1/7} \quad (3-11)$$

where:

$V_w$  = wind speed at elevation 33 ft. (10 m.)

$V_h$  = wind speed at elevation  $h$

$h$  = elevation above water surface of wind data [feet]

The available wind duration shall be adjusted to a 30-second value, using the following formula:

$$V_{t=30\ sec} = \frac{V_t}{c_t} \quad (3-12)$$

where:

$V_{t=30\ sec}$  = wind speed for a 30-second duration

$V_t$  = wind speed over a given duration

$c_t$  = conversion factor from Figure 31F-3-1

If wind data is available over land only, the following equation shall be used to convert the wind speed from over-land to over-water conditions [3.5]:

$$V_w = 1.10 V_L \quad (3-13)$$

where:

$V_w$  = over water wind speed

$V_L$  = over land wind speed

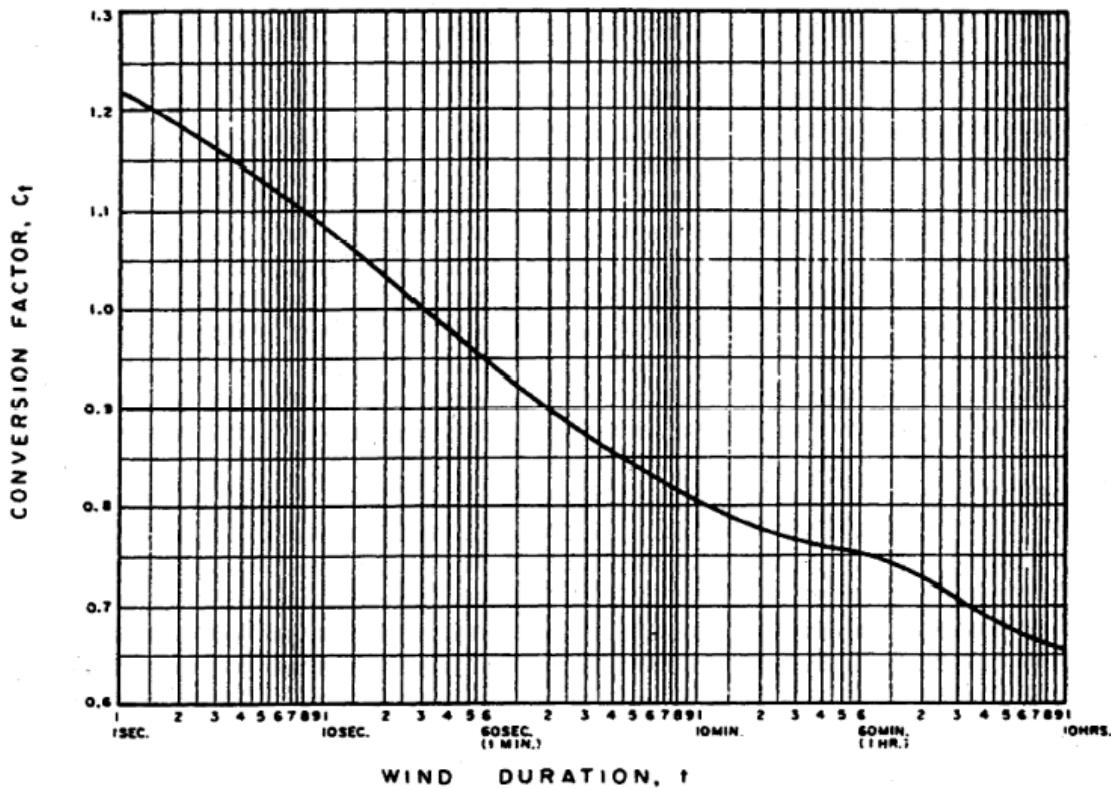


FIGURE 31F-3-1 WIND SPEED CONVERSION FACTOR [3.5]

**3103F.5.2.4 Static wind loads on vessels.** The OCIMF MEG3 [3.6] shall be used to determine the wind loads for all tank vessels.

Alternatively, wind loads for any type of vessel may be calculated using the guidelines in Ferritto et al. [3.7].

#### 3103F.5.3 Current loads.

**3103F.5.3.1 Design current velocity.** Maximum ebb and flood currents, annual river runoffs and controlled releases shall be considered when establishing the design current velocities for both existing and new MOTs.

Local current velocities may be obtained from NOAA [3.8] or other sources, but must be supplemented by site-specific data, if the current velocity is higher than 1.5 knots.

Site-specific data shall be obtained by real time measurements over a one-year period. If this information is not available, a safety factor of 1.25 shall be applied to the best available data until real time measurements are obtained.

If the facility is not in operation during annual river runoffs and controlled releases, the current loads may be adjusted.

Operational dates need to be clearly stated in the definition of the Terminal Operating Limits (see Section 3102F.3.6.1 and Figure 31F-2-1).

**3103F.5.3.2 Current velocity adjustment factors.** An average current velocity ( $V_c$ ) shall be used to compute

forces and moments. If the current velocity profile is known, the average current velocity can be obtained from the following equation:

$$V_c^2 = (1/T) \int (v_c)^2 ds \quad (3-14)$$

where:

$V_c$  = average current velocity (knots)

$T$  = draft of vessel

$v_c$  = current velocity as a function of depth (knots)

$s$  = water depth measured from the surface

If the velocity profile is not known, the velocity at a known water depth shall be adjusted by the factors provided in Figure 31F-3-2 to obtain the equivalent average velocity over the draft of the vessel.

**3103F.5.3.3 Static current loads.** The OCIMF MEG3 [3.6] or the UFC 4-159-03 [3.9] procedures shall be used to determine current loads for moored tank vessels.

**3103F.5.3.4 Sea level rise (SLR).** All MOTs shall consider the predicted SLR over the remaining life of the terminal, due to subsidence or climate change combined with maximum high tide and storm surge. Consideration shall include but not be limited to variation in fender locations, additional berthing loads (deeper draft vessels) and any components near the splash zone.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

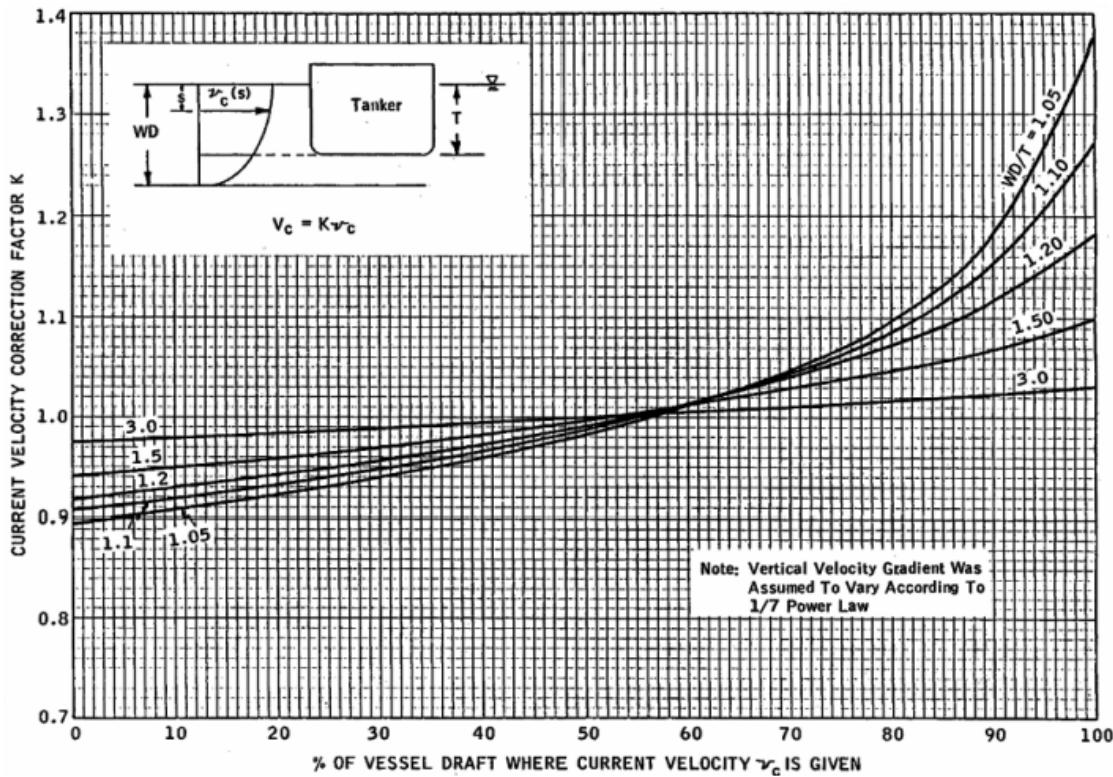


FIGURE 31F-3-2 CURRENT VELOCITY CORRECTION FACTOR (p. 23 [3.6])

**3103F.5.4 Wave loads.** When the significant wave period,  $T_s$ , is greater than 4 seconds (see Section 3105F.3.1), the transverse wave induced vessel reactions shall be calculated using a simplified dynamic mooring analysis described below.

The horizontal water particle accelerations shall be calculated for the various wave conditions, taken at the mid-depth of the loaded vessel draft. The water particle accelerations shall then be used to calculate the wave excitation forces to determine the static displacement of the vessel. The Froude-Krylov method discussed in Chakrabarti's Chapter 7 [3.10] may be used to calculate the wave excitation forces, by conservatively approximating the vessel as a rectangular box with dimensions similar to the actual dimensions of the vessel. The horizontal water particle accelerations shall be calculated for the various wave conditions, taken at the mid-depth of the loaded vessel draft. The computed excitation force assumes a 90-degree incidence angle with the longitudinal axis of the vessel, which will result in forces that are significantly greater than the forces that will actually act upon the vessel from quartering seas. A load reduction factor may be used to account for the design wave incidence angle from the longitudinal axis of the ship. The overall excursion of the vessel shall be determined for each of the wave conditions by calculating the dynamic response of the linear spring mass system.

**3103F.5.5 Passing vessels.** When required in Section 3105F.3, the sway and surge forces, as well as yaw

moment, on a moored vessel, due to passing vessels, shall be established considering the following:

1. Ratio of length of moored vessel to length of passing vessel.
2. Distance from moored vessel to passing vessel.
3. Ratio of midship section areas of the moored and passing vessels.
4. Underkeel clearances of the moored and passing vessels.
5. Draft and trim of the moored vessel and draft of the passing vessel.
6. Mooring line tensions.

The passing vessel's speed should take into consideration the ebb or flood current. Normal operating wind and current conditions can be assumed when calculating forces due to a passing vessel. Either method of Kriebel [3.11] or Wang [3.12] may be used to determine forces on a moored vessel. Kriebel's recent wave tank study improves on an earlier work of Seelig [3.13].

**3103F.5.6 Seiche.** The penetration of long period low amplitude waves into a harbor can result in resonant standing wave systems, when the wave forcing frequency coincides with a natural frequency of the harbor. The resonant standing waves can result in large surge motions if this frequency is close to the natural frequency of the mooring system. Section 3105F.3.3 prescribes the procedure for the evaluation of these effects.

**3103F.5.7 Tsunamis.** A tsunami may be generated by an earthquake or a subsea or coastal landslide, which may induce large wave heights and excessive currents. The large wave or surge and the excessive currents are potentially damaging, especially if there is a tank vessel moored alongside the MOT wharf.

Tsunamis can be generated either by a distant or near source. A tsunami generated by a distant source (far field event) may allow operators to have an adequate warning for mitigating the risk by allowing the vessels to depart the MOT and go into deep water. For near-field events, with sources less than 500 miles away, the vessel may not have adequate time to depart. Each MOT shall have a "tsunami plan" describing what actions will be performed, in the event of a distant tsunami.

Recent tsunami studies have been completed for both Southern and Northern California. For the Ports of Los Angeles and Long Beach, one of these recent studies focused on near field tsunamis with predicted return periods of 5,000 to 10,000 years [3.14]. These maximum water levels (run-up) would not normally be used for MOT design. However, because the study also provides actual tidal records from recent distant tsunamis, it should be used for design.

The run-up value for Port Hueneme was obtained from an earlier study by Synolakis et al. [3.15].

Run up-values: Port of Los Angeles and Long Beach = 8 ft.

Port Hueneme = 11 ft.

For the San Francisco Bay, a recent study provides the maximum credible tsunami water levels and current speeds. These results are deterministic and are based on the most severe seismic sources that could reasonably impact MOTs in the San Francisco Bay [3.16]. Table 31F-3-6 provides values for the marine oil terminal locations within San Francisco Bay. Water levels could be positive or negative and current velocities may vary in direction. In order to determine the maximum run-up at a MOT, the largest values should be added to the mean high tide. Further details are available in [3.16].

Loads from tsunami-induced waves can be calculated for various structural configurations [3.17]. Tsunami wave heights in shallow water and particle kinematics can also be obtained. Other structural considerations include uplift and debris impact.

**TABLE 31F-3-6**  
**TSUNAMI RUN-UP VALUES (ft) AND CURRENT SPEEDS (ft/sec)**  
**IN THE SAN FRANCISCO BAY AREA (AFTER [3.16])**

S.F. BAY LOCALE	MAXIMUM WATER LEVELS (ft.)	CURRENT VELOCITY (ft/sec)
Richmond, outer	7.5	4.9
Richmond, inner	7.9	8.9
Martinez	2.3	1.3
Selby	2.6	1.6
Rodeo	2.6	2.0
Benicia	2.0	1.0

### 3103F.6 Berthing Loads.

**3103F.6.1 General.** Berthing loads are quantified in terms of transfer of kinetic energy of the vessel into potential energy dissipated by the fender(s). The terms and equations below are based on those in UFC 4-152-01 [3.18] and PIANC [3.19].

Kinetic energy shall be calculated from the following equation:

$$E_{vessel} = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{W}{g} \cdot V_n^2 \quad (3-15)$$

where:

$E_{vessel}$  = Berthing energy of vessel [ft-lbs]

$W$  = Total weight of vessel and cargo in pounds [long tons  $\times$  2240]

$g$  = Acceleration due to gravity [32.2 ft/sec<sup>2</sup>]

$V_n$  = Berthing velocity normal to the berth [ft/sec]

The following correction factors shall be used to modify the actual energy to be absorbed by the fender system for berthing operations:

$$E_{fender} = F_A \cdot C_b \cdot C_m \cdot E_{vessel} \quad (3-16)$$

where:

$E_{fender}$  = Energy to be absorbed by the fender system

$F_A$  = Accidental factor accounting for abnormal conditions such as human error, malfunction, adverse environmental conditions or a combination of these factors. For existing berthing systems,  $F_A$  may be taken as 1.0. For new berthing systems,  $F_A$  shall be determined in accordance with Section 5-1.5.3 of UFC 4-152-01 [3.18] or PIANC Section 4.2.8 [3.19].

$C_b$  = Berthing Coefficient

$C_m$  = Effective mass or virtual mass coefficient (see Section 3103F.6.6)

The berthing coefficient,  $C_b$ , is given by:

$$C_b = C_e \cdot C_g \cdot C_d \cdot C_c \quad (3-17)$$

where:

$C_e$  = Eccentricity Coefficient

$C_c$  = Configuration Coefficient

$C_g$  = Geometric Coefficient

$C_d$  = Deformation Coefficient

These coefficients are defined in Sections 3103F.6.2 through 3103F.6.5.

The approximate displacement of the vessel (when only partially loaded) at impact,  $DT$ , can be determined from an extension of an equation from Gaythwaite [3.20]:

$$DT = 1.25 DWT(d_{actual}/d_{max}) \quad (3-18)$$

where:

$DWT$  = Dead Weight Tonnage (in long tons)

$d_{actual}$  = Actual arrival draft of the vessel

$d_{max}$  = Maximum loaded vessel draft

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

The berthing load shall be based on the fender reaction due to the kinetic berthing energy. The structural capacity shall be established based on allowable concrete, steel or timber properties in the structural components, as defined in Section 3107F.

For fender system selection, Section 3105F.4.5 shall be followed.

**3103F.6.2 Eccentricity coefficient ( $C_e$ ).** During the berthing maneuver, when the vessel is not parallel to the berthing line (usually the wharf face), not all the kinetic energy of the vessel will be transmitted to the fenders. Due to the reaction from the fender(s), the vessel will start to rotate around the contact point, thus dissipating part of its energy. Treating the vessel as a rigid rod of negligible width in the analysis of the energy impact on the fenders leads to the equation:

$$C_e = \frac{k^2}{a^2 + k^2} \quad (3-19)$$

where:

- $k$  = Longitudinal radius of gyration of the vessel [ft]
- $a$  = Distance between the vessel's center of gravity and the point of contact on the vessel's side, projected onto the vessel's longitudinal axis [ft]

**3103F.6.3 Geometric coefficient ( $C_g$ ).** The geometric coefficient,  $C_g$ , depends upon the geometric configuration of the ship at the point of impact. It varies from 0.85 for an increasing convex curvature to 1.25 for concave curvature. Generally, 0.95 is recommended for the impact point at or beyond the quarter points of the ship, and 1.0 for broadside berthing in which contact is made along the straight side [3.18].

**3103F.6.4 Deformation coefficient ( $C_d$ ).** This accounts for the energy reduction effects due to local deformation of the ship's hull and deflection of the whole ship along its longitudinal axis. The energy absorbed by the ship depends on the relative stiffness of the ship and the obstruction. The deformation coefficient varies from 0.9 for a nonresilient fender to nearly 1.0 for a flexible fender. For larger ships on energy-absorbing fender systems, little or no deformation of the ship takes place; therefore, a coefficient of 1.0 is recommended.

**3103F.6.5 Configuration coefficient ( $C_c$ ).** This factor accounts for the difference between an open pier or wharf and a solid pier or wharf. In the first case, the movements of the water surrounding the berthing vessel is not (or is

hardly) affected by the berth. In the second case, the water between the berthing vessel and the structure introduces a cushion effect that represents an extra force on the vessel away from the berth and reduces the energy to be absorbed by the fender system.

For open berth and corners of solid piers,  $C_c = 1.0$

For solid piers with parallel approach,  $C_c = 0.8$

For berths with different conditions,  $C_c$  may be interpolated between these values [3.18].

**3103F.6.6 Effective mass or virtual mass coefficient ( $C_m$ ).** In determining the kinetic energy of a berthing vessel, the effective or the virtual mass is the sum of vessel mass and hydrodynamic mass. The hydrodynamic mass does not necessarily vary with the mass of the vessel, but is closely related to the projected area of the vessel at right angles to the direction of motion.

Other factors, such as the form of vessel, water depth, berthing velocity and acceleration or deceleration of the vessel, will have some effect on the hydrodynamic mass. Taking into account both model and prototype experiments, the effective or virtual mass coefficient can be estimated as:

$$C_m = 1 + 2 \cdot \frac{d_{actual}}{B} \quad (3-20)$$

where:

$d_{actual}$  = Actual arrival draft of the vessel

$B$  = Beam of vessel

The value of  $C_m$  for use in design should be a minimum of 1.5 and need not exceed 2.0 [3.18].

**3103F.6.7 Berthing velocity and angle.** The berthing velocity,  $V_n$ , is influenced by a large number of factors such as environmental conditions of the site (wind, current and wave), method of berthing (with or without tugboat assistance), condition of the vessel during berthing (ballast or fully laden) and human factors (experience of the tugboat captain).

The berthing velocity, normal to berth, shall be in accordance with Table 31F-3-7. Site condition is determined from Table 31F-3-8.

Subject to Division approval, if an existing MOT can demonstrate lower velocities by utilizing velocity monitoring equipment, then such a velocity may be used temporarily until the berthing system is compliant with this Code.

**TABLE 31F-3-7  
BERTHING VELOCITY  $V_n$  (NORMAL TO BERTH)<sup>1</sup>**

VESSEL SIZE (DWT)	TUG BOAT ASSISTANCE	SITE CONDITIONS		
		Unfavorable	Moderate	Favorable
$\leq 10,000$	No	1.31 ft/sec	0.98 ft/sec	0.53 ft/sec
$\leq 10,000$	Yes	0.78 ft/sec	0.66 ft/sec	0.33 ft/sec
50,000	Yes	0.53 ft/sec	0.39 ft/sec	0.26 ft/sec
$\geq 100,000$	Yes	0.39 ft/sec	0.33 ft/sec	0.26 ft/sec

1. For vessel sizes not shown, interpolation between velocities may be used.

**TABLE 31F-3-8  
SITE CONDITIONS**

SITE CONDITIONS	DESCRIPTION	WIND SPEED <sup>1</sup>	SIGNIFICANT WAVE HEIGHT	CURRENT SPEED <sup>2</sup>
Unfavorable	Strong Wind Strong Currents High Waves	> 38 knots	> 6.5 ft	> 2 knots
Moderate	Strong Wind Moderate Current Moderate Waves	≥ 38 knots	≤ 6.5 ft	≤ 2 knots
Favorable	Moderate Wind Moderate Current Moderate Waves	< 38 knots	< 6.5 ft	< 2 knots

1. A 30-second duration measured at a height of 33 ft.

2. Taken at 0.5 x water depth

In order to obtain the normal berthing velocity,  $V_n$ , an approach angle, defined as the angle formed by the fender line and the longitudinal axis of the vessel must be determined. The berthing angles, used to compute the normal berthing velocity, for various vessel sizes are shown in Table 31F-3-9.

**TABLE 31F-3-9  
BERTHING ANGLE**

VESSEL SIZE (DWT)	ANGLE (degrees)
Barge	15
< 10,000	10
10,000-50,000	8
> 50,000	6

### 3103F.7 Wind and current loads on structures.

**3103F.7.1 General.** This section provides methods to determine the wind and current loads acting on the structure directly, as opposed to wind and current forces acting on the structure from a moored vessel.

**3103F.7.2 Wind loads.** Chapter 29 of ASCE/SEI 7 [3.21] shall be used to establish minimum wind loads on the structure. Additional information about wind loads may be obtained from Simiu and Scanlan [3.22].

**3103F.7.3 Current loads.** The current forces acting on the structure may be established using the current velocities, per Section 3103F.5.3.

**3103F.8 Load combinations.** As a minimum, each component of the structure shall be analyzed for all applicable load combinations given in Table 31F-3-10 or Table 31F-3-11, depending on component type. For additional load combinations, see UFC 4-152-01 [3.18].

The “vacant condition” is the case wherein there is no vessel at the berth. The “mooring and breasting condition” exists after the vessel is securely tied to the wharf. The “berthing condition” occurs as the vessel impacts the wharf, and the “earthquake condition” assumes no vessel is at the berth, and there is no wind or current forces on the structure.

The use of various load types is discussed below:

**3103F.8.1 Dead load (D).** Upper and lower bound values of dead load are applied for the vacant condition to

check the maximum moment and shear with minimum axial load.

**3103F.8.2 Live load (L).** Typically, the live load on MOTs is small and may be neglected for combinations including earthquake loads. However, in some cases, a higher value of live load may be warranted depending on MOT use, and an appropriate value of live load shall be considered for combinations including earthquake loads.

**3103F.8.3 Buoyancy load (B).** Buoyancy forces shall be considered for any submerged or immersed substructures (including pipelines, sumps and structural components).

**3103F.8.4 Wind (W) and current (C) on the structure.** Wind and currents on the vessel are included in the mooring and breasting condition. The wind and current loads acting on the structure are therefore additional loads that can act simultaneously with the mooring, breasting and/or berthing loads.

**3103F.8.5 Earth pressure on the structure (H).** The soil pressure on end walls, typically concrete cut-off walls, steel sheet pile walls on wharf type structures and/or piles shall be considered.

**3103F.8.6 Mooring line/breasting loads (M).** Mooring line and breasting loads can occur simultaneously or individually, depending on the combination of wind and current. Multiple load cases for operating and survival conditions may be required (see Sections 3103F.5.2 and 3105F.2). In addition, loads caused by passing vessels shall be considered for the “mooring and breasting condition.” Refer to Sections 3105F.2 and 3105F.3 for the determination of mooring line and breasting loads.

**3103F.8.7 Berthing load (B<sub>b</sub>).** Berthing is a frequent occurrence, and shall be considered as a normal operating load. No increase in allowable stresses shall be applied for ASD.

**3103F.8.8 Earthquake loads (E).** Performance based seismic analysis methodology requires that the actual displacement demand be limited to defined strains in concrete, steel and timber. For the deck and pile evaluation, two cases of dead load (upper and lower bound) shall be considered in combination with the seismic load.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**TABLE 31F-3-10**  
**LRFD LOAD FACTORS FOR LOAD COMBINATIONS [3.18]**

LOAD TYPE	VACANT CONDITION	MOORING & BREASTING CONDITION	BERTHING CONDITION	EARTHQUAKE CONDITION <sup>a</sup>
Dead Load (D)	1.2	0.9	1.2	1.2
Live Load (L)	1.6	—	1.6 <sup>2</sup>	1.0
Buoyancy (B)	1.2	0.9	1.2	1.2 <sup>1</sup>
Wind on Structure (W)	1.6	1.6	1.6	—
Current on Structure (C)	1.2	0.9	1.2	1.2
Earth Pressure on the Structure (H)	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.6 <sup>4</sup>
Mooring/Breasting Load (M)	—	—	1.6	—
Berthing Load ( $B_e$ )	—	—	—	—
Earthquake Load (E)	—	—	—	1.0

1.  $k = 0.50$  (PGA) The  $k$  factor ( $k=0.5(PGA)$ ) and buoyancy (B) shall be applied to the vertical dead load (D) only, and not to the inertial mass of the structure.

2. The load factor for live load (L) may be reduced to 1.3 for the maximum outrigger float load from a truck crane.

3. For Level 1 and 2 earthquake conditions with strain levels defined in Division 7, the current on structure (C) may not be required.

4. An earth pressure on the Structure factor (H) of 1.0 may be used for pile or bulkhead structures.

**TABLE 31F-3-11**  
**SERVICE OR ASD LOAD FACTORS FOR LOAD COMBINATIONS [3.18]**

LOAD TYPE	VACANT CONDITION	MOORING & BREASTING CONDITION	BERTHING CONDITION	EARTHQUAKE CONDITION
Dead Load (D)	1.0	1.0	1.0	$1 + 0.7k^1$
Live Load (L)	1.0	1.0	0.75	0.75
Buoyancy (B)	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Wind on Structure (W)	1.0	1.0	0.75	—
Current on Structure (C)	1.0	1.0	1.0	—
Earth Pressure on the Structure (H)	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0
Mooring/Breasting Load (M)	—	1.0	—	—
Berthing Load ( $B_e$ )	—	—	1.0	—
Earthquake Load (E)	—	—	—	0.7
% Allowable Stress	100	100	100	100 <sup>2</sup>

1.  $k = 0.5$  (PGA)

2. Increase in allowable stress shall not be used with these load combinations unless it can be demonstrated that such increase is justified by structural behavior caused by rate or duration of load. See ASCE/SEI 7 [3.21]

**3103F.9 Miscellaneous loads.** Handrails and guardrails shall be designed for 25 plf with a 200-pound minimum concentrated load in any location or direction.

**3103F.10 Symbols.**

- $a$  = Distance between the vessel's center of gravity and the point of contact on the vessel's side, projected onto the vessel's longitudinal axis [ft]
- A = Site Class A as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- B = Beam of vessel
- B = Site Class B as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- $B_1$  = Coefficient used to adjust one-second period spectral response, for the effect of viscous damping
- $B_s$  = Coefficient used to adjust the short period spectral response, for the effect of visous damping.
- C = Site Class C as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- $C_b$  = Berthing Coefficient

- $C_c$  = Configuration Coefficient
- $C_g$  = Geometric Coefficient
- $C_d$  = Deformation Coefficient
- $C_e$  = Eccentricity Coefficient
- $C_m$  = Effective mass or virtual mass coefficient
- $C_t$  = Windspeed conversion factor
- D = Site Class D as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- DSA = Design Spectral Acceleration
- $DSA_d$  = DSA values at damping other than 5 percent
- DT = Displacement of vessel
- DWT = Dead weight tons
- $d_{actual}$  = Arrival maximum draft of vessel at berth
- $d_{max}$  = Maximum vessel draft (in open seas)
- E = Site Class E as defined in Table 31F-6-1

$E_{fender}$  = Energy to be absorbed by the fender system  
 $E_{vessel}$  = Berthing energy of vessel [ft-lbs]  
 $F$  = Site Class F as defined in Table 31F-6-1  
 $F_a F_v$  = Site coefficients from Tables 31F-3-3 and 31F-3-4, respectively  
 $F_A$  = Accidental factor accounting for abnormal conditions  
 $g$  = Acceleration due to gravity [32.2 ft/sec<sup>2</sup>]  
 $h$  = Elevation above water surface [feet]  
 $k$  = Radius of longitudinal gyration of the vessel [ft]  
 $K$  = Current velocity correction factor (Fig 31F-3-2)  
 $PGA_X$  = Peak ground acceleration corresponding to the site class under consideration.  
 $s$  = Water depth measured from the surface  
 $S_a$  = Spectral acceleration  
 $S_1$  = Spectral acceleration value (for the boundary of Site Classes B and C) at 1.0 second  
 $S_s$  = Spectral acceleration value (for the boundary of Site Classes B and C) at 0.2 seconds  
 $S_{X1}$  = Spectral acceleration value at 1.0 second corresponding to the period of  $S_1$  and the site class under consideration  
 $S_{Xs}$  = Spectral acceleration value at 0.2 seconds corresponding to the period of  $S_s$  and the site class under consideration  
 $T$  = Draft of vessel (see Figure 31F-3-2)  
 $T$  = Period [sec]  
 $T_0$  = Period at which the constant acceleration and constant velocity regions of the design spectrum intersect  
 $V_c$  = Average current velocity [knots]  
 $v_c$  = Current velocity as a function of depth [knots]  
 $V_h$  = Wind speed (knots) at elevation  $h$   
 $V_L$  = Over land wind speed  
 $V_n$  = Berthing velocity normal to the berth [ft/sec]  
 $v_t$  = Velocity over a given time period  
 $V_{t=30sec}$  = Wind speed for a 30 second interval  
 $V_w$  = Wind speed at 33-foot (10 m) elevation [knots]  
 $W$  = Total weight of vessel and cargo in pounds [displacement tonnage × 2240]  
 $WD$  = Water Depth (Figure 31F-3-2)

### 3103F.11 References.

- [3.1] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2017, ASCE/SEI 41-17 (ASCE/SEI 41), "Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings," Reston, VA.
- [3.2] Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), Nov. 2000, FEMA 356, "Prestandard and Commentary for the Seismic Rehabilitation of Buildings," Washington, D.C.
- [3.3] Idriss, I.M. and Sun, J.I., 1992, "User's Manual for SHAKE91, A Computer Program for Conducting Equivalent Linear Seismic Response Analyses of Horizontally Layered Soil Deposits," Center for Geotechnical Modeling, Department of Civil and Environmental Engineering, University of California, Davis, CA.
- [3.4] Somerville, Paul G., Smith, Nancy F., Graves, Robert W., and Abrahamson, Norman A., 1997, "Modification of Empirical Strong Ground Motion Attenuation Relations to Include the Amplitude and Duration Effects of Rupture Directivity," Seismological Research Letters, Volume 68, Number 1, pp.199-222.
- [3.5] Pile Buck Inc., 1992, "Mooring Systems, A Pile Buck Production," Jupiter, FL.
- [3.6] Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), 2008, "Mooring Equipment Guidelines (MEG3)," 3rd ed., London, England.
- [3.7] Ferritto, J., Dickenson, S., Priestley N., Werner, S., Taylor, C., Burke, D., Seelig, W., and Kelly, S., 1999, "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals," Vol. 1 and Vol. 2, Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA.
- [3.8] National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Contact: National PORTS Program Manager, Center for Operational Oceanographic Products and Services, 1305 EW Highway, Silver Spring, MD 20910.
- [3.9] Department of Defense, 3 October 2005 (Change 2, 23 June 2016), Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-159-03, "Design: Moorings," Washington, D.C.
- [3.10] Chakrabarti, S. K., 1987, "Hydrodynamics of Offshore Structures," Computational Mechanics.
- [3.11] Kriebel, David, "Mooring Loads Due to Parallel Passing Ships," Technical Report TR-6056-OCN, US Naval Academy, 30 September 2005.
- [3.12] Wang, Shen, August 1975, "Dynamic Effects of Ship Passage on Moored Vessels," Journal of the Waterways, Harbors and Coastal Engineering Division, Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. 101, WW3, Reston, VA.
- [3.13] Selig, William N., 20 November 2001, "Passing Ship Effects on Moored Ships," Technical Report TR-6027-OCN, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Washington, D.C.
- [3.14] Moffatt & Nichol, April 2007, "Tsunami Hazard Assessment for the Ports of Long Beach and Los Angeles – FINAL REPORT," prepared for the Ports of Long Beach and Los Angeles.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

- [3.15] Synolakis, C., "Tsunami and Seiche," Chapter 9 in *Earthquake Engineering Handbook*, Chen, W., Scawthorn, C. S. and Arros, J. K., editors, 2002, CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL.
- [3.16] Borrero, Jose, Dengler, Lori, Uslu, Burak and Synolakis, Costas, June 2006, "Numerical Modeling of Tsunami Effects at Marine Oil Terminals in San Francisco Bay," Report for the Marine Facilities Division of the California State Lands Commission.
- [3.17] Camfield, Frederick E., February 1980, "Tsunami Engineering," U.S. Army, Corps of Engineers, Coastal Research Center, Special Report No. 6.
- [3.18] Department of Defense, 24 January 2017, Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-152-01, "Design: Piers and Wharves," Washington, D.C.
- [3.19] Permanent International Association of Navigation Congresses (PIANC), 2002, "Guidelines for the Design of Fender Systems: 2002," Brussels.
- [3.20] Gaythwaite, John, 2004, "Design of Marine Facilities for the Berthing, Mooring and Repair of Vessels," American Society of Civil Engineers, Reston, VA.
- [3.21] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2016, ASCE/SEI 7-16 (ASCE/SEI 7), "Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures," Reston, VA.
- [3.22] Simiu, E. and Scanlan, R., 1978, "Wind Effects on Structures: An Introduction to Wind Engineering," Wiley-Interscience Publications, New York.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## Division 4

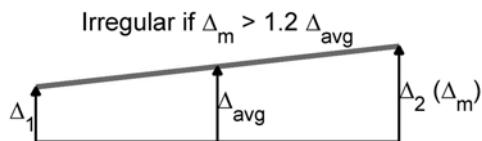
### **SECTION 3104F SEISMIC ANALYSIS AND STRUCTURAL PERFORMANCE**

#### **3104F.1 General.**

**3104F.1.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this section is to establish minimum standards for seismic analysis and structural performance. Seismic performance is evaluated at two criteria levels. Level 1 requirements define a performance criterion to ensure MOT functionality. Level 2 requirements safeguard against major damage, collapse or major oil spill.

**3104F.1.2 Applicability.** Section 3104F applies to all new and existing MOTs. Structures supporting loading arms, pipelines, oil transfer and storage equipment, critical systems and vessel mooring structures, such as mooring and breasting dolphins are included. Catwalks and similar components that are not part of the lateral load carrying system and do not support oil transfer equipment may be excluded.

**3104F.1.3 Configuration classification of MOT structure.** Each MOT structure shall be designated as regular or irregular based on torsional irregularity criteria presented in ASCE/SEI 7 [4.1]. An MOT structure is defined to be irregular when maximum displacement at one end of the MOT structure transverse to an axis is more than 1.2 times the average of the displacement at the two ends of the MOT structure, as described in Figure 31F-4-1. For MOTs with multiple segments separated by expansion joints, each segment shall be designated as regular or irregular using criteria in this section. Expansion joints in this context are defined as joints that separate each structural segment in such a manner that each segment will move independently during an earthquake.



**FIGURE 31F-4-1  
DEFINITION OF IRREGULAR MOT**

#### **3104F.2 Existing MOTs**

**3104F.2.1 Seismic Performance Criteria.** Two levels of seismic performance shall be considered, except for critical systems (Section 3104F.5.1). These levels are defined as follows:

##### **Level 1 Seismic Performance:**

- Minor or no structural damage
- Temporary or no interruption in operations

##### **Level 2 Seismic Performance:**

- Controlled inelastic behavior with repairable damage

- Prevention of collapse
- Temporary loss of operations, restorable within months
- Prevention of major spill ( $\geq 1200$  bbls)

The Level 1 and Level 2 seismic performance criteria are defined in Table 31F-4-1.

**3104F.2.2 Basis for evaluation.** Component capacities shall be based on existing conditions, calculated as “best estimates,” taking into account the mean material strengths, strain hardening and degradation overtime. The capacity of components with little or no ductility, which may lead to brittle failure scenarios, shall be calculated based on lower bound material strengths. Methods to establish component strength and deformation capacities for typical structural materials and components are provided in Section 3107F. Geotechnical considerations are discussed in Section 3106F.

**3104F.2.3 Analytical procedures.** The objective of the seismic analysis is to verify that the displacement capacity of the structure is greater than the displacement demand, for each performance level defined in Table 31F-4-1. For this purpose, the displacement capacity of each element of the structure shall be checked against its displacement demand including the orthogonal effects of Section 3104F.4.2. The required analytical procedures are summarized in Table 31F-4-2.

The displacement capacity of the structure shall be calculated using the nonlinear static (pushover) procedure. For the nonlinear static (pushover) procedure, the pushover load shall be applied at the target node defined as the center of mass (CM) of the MOT structure. It is also acceptable to use a nonlinear dynamic procedure for capacity evaluation, subject to peer review in accordance with Section 3101F.8.2.

Methods used to calculate the displacement demand are linear modal, nonlinear static and nonlinear dynamic.

Mass to be included in the displacement demand calculation shall include mass from self-weight of the structure, weight of the permanent equipment, and portion of the live load that may contribute to inertial mass during earthquake loading, such as a minimum of 25% of the floor live load in areas used for storage.

Any rational method, subject to the Division's approval, can be used in lieu of the required analytical procedures shown in Table 31F-4-2.

**3104F.2.3.1 Nonlinear static capacity procedure (push-over).** To assess displacement capacity, two-dimensional nonlinear static (pushover) analyses shall be performed; three-dimensional analyses are optional. A model that incorporates the nonlinear load deformation characteristics of all components for the lateral force-resisting system shall be used in the pushover analysis.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**TABLE 31F-4-1  
SEISMIC PERFORMANCE CRITERIA<sup>1,2</sup>**

SPILL CLASSIFICATION <sup>3</sup>	SEISMIC PERFORMANCE LEVEL	PROBABILITY OF EXCEEDANCE	RETURN PERIOD
High	Level 1	50% in 50 years	72 years
	Level 2	10% in 50 years	475 years
Medium	Level 1	65% in 50 years	48 years
	Level 2	15% in 50 years	308 years
Low	Level 1	75% in 50 years	36 years
	Level 2	20% in 50 years	224 years

1. For new MOTs, see Section 3104F.3.

2. For marine terminals transferring LNG, return periods of 72 and 475 years shall be used for Levels 1 and 2, respectively.

3. See Section 3101F.6 for spill classification.

**TABLE 31F-4-2  
MINIMUM REQUIRED ANALYTICAL PROCEDURES**

SPILL CLASSIFICATION <sup>1</sup>	CONFIGURATION	SUBSTRUCTURE MATERIAL	DISPLACEMENT DEMAND PROCEDURE	DISPLACEMENT CAPACITY PROCEDURE
High/Medium	Irregular	Concrete/Steel	Linear Modal	Nonlinear Static
High/Medium	Regular	Concrete/Steel	Nonlinear Static <sup>2</sup>	Nonlinear Static
Low	Regular/Irregular	Concrete/Steel	Nonlinear Static	Nonlinear Static
High/Medium/Low	Regular/Irregular	Timber	Nonlinear Static	Nonlinear Static

1. See Section 3101F.6 for spill classification.

2. Linear modal demand procedure may be required for cases where more than one mode is expected to contribute to the displacement demand.

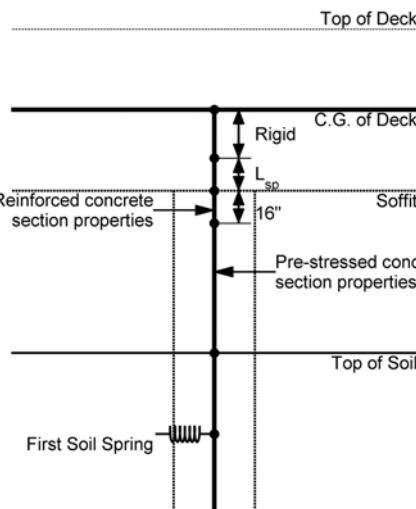
Alternatively, displacement capacity of a pile in the MOT structure may be estimated from pushover analysis of an individual pile with appropriate axial load and pile-to-deck connection.

The displacement capacity of a pile from the pushover analysis shall be defined as the displacement that can occur at the top of the pile without exceeding plastic rotation (or material strain) limits, either at the pile-deck hinge or in-ground hinge, as defined in Section 3107F. If pile displacement has components along two axes, as may be the case for irregular MOTs, the pile displacement capacity shall be defined as the resultant of its displacement components along the two axes.

**3104F.2.3.1.1 Modeling.** A series of nonlinear pushover analyses may be required depending on the complexity of the MOT structure. At a minimum, pushover analysis of a two-dimensional model shall be conducted in both the longitudinal and transverse directions. The piles shall be represented by nonlinear elements that capture the moment-curvature/rotation relationships for components with expected inelastic behavior in accordance with Section 3107F. The effects of connection flexibility shall be considered in pile-to-deck connection modeling. For prestressed concrete piles, Figure 31F-4-2 may be used. A nonlinear element is not required to represent each pile location. Piles with similar lateral force-deflection behavior may be lumped in fewer larger springs, provided that the overall torsional effects are captured.

Linear material component behavior is acceptable where nonlinear response will not occur. All components shall be based on effective moment of

inertia calculated in accordance with Section 3107F. Specific requirements for timber pile structures are discussed in the next section.



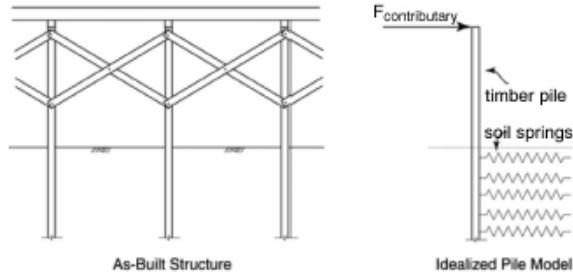
**FIGURE 31F-4-2  
PILE-DECK CONNECTION MODELING FOR  
PRESTRESSED CONCRETE PILE (ADAPTED FROM [4.2])**

**3104F.2.3.1.2 Timber pile supported structures.** For all timber pile supported structures, linear elastic procedures may be used. Alternatively, the nonlinear static procedure may be used to estimate the target displacement demand,  $\Delta_d$ .

A simplified single pile model for a typical timber pile supported structure is shown in Figure 31F-4-3. The pile-deck connections may be assumed to be "pinned." The lateral bracing can often be

ignored if it is in poor condition. These assumptions shall be used for the analysis, unless a detailed condition assessment and lateral analysis indicate that the existing bracing and connections may provide reliable lateral resistance.

A series of single pile analyses may be sufficient to establish the nonlinear springs required for the pushover analysis.



**FIGURE 31F-4-3  
SIMPLIFIED SINGLE PILE MODEL OF A  
TIMBER PILE SUPPORTED STRUCTURE**

**3104F.2.3.2 Nonlinear static demand procedure.** A nonlinear static procedure shall be used to determine the displacement demand for all concrete and steel structures, with the exception of irregular configurations with high or moderate spill classifications. A linear modal procedure is required for irregular structures with high or moderate spill classifications, and may be used for all other classifications in lieu of the nonlinear static procedure.

In the nonlinear static demand procedure, deformation demand in each element shall be computed at the target node displacement demand. The analysis shall be conducted in each of the two orthogonal directions and results combined as described in Section 3104F.4.2.

The target displacement demand of the structure,  $\Delta_d$ , shall be calculated from:

$$\Delta_d = S_A(T_e^2/4\pi^2) \quad (4-1)$$

where:

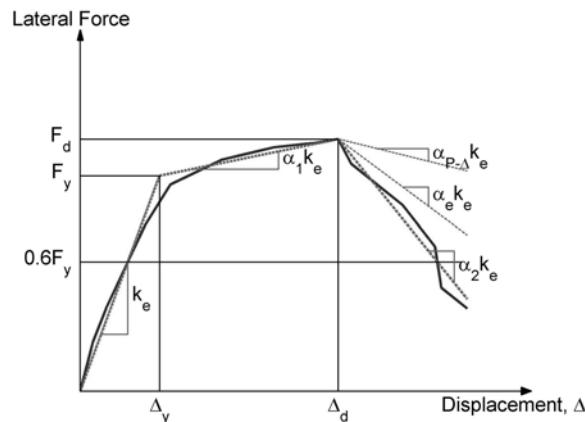
$T_e$  = effective elastic structural period defined in Equation (4-3) or Equation (4-9)

$S_A$  = spectral response acceleration corresponding to  $T_e$

If  $T_e < T_0$ , where  $T_0$  is the period corresponding to the peak of the acceleration response spectrum, a refined analysis (see Section 3104F.2.3.2.1 or 3104F.2.3.2.2) shall be used to calculate the displacement demand. In the refined analysis, the target node displacement demand may be computed from the Coefficient Method (Section 3104F.2.3.2.1) or the Substitute Structure Method (Section 3104F.2.3.2.2). Both of these methods utilize the pushover curve developed in Section 3104F.2.3.1.

**3104F.2.3.2.1 Coefficient Method.** The Coefficient Method is based on the procedures presented in ASCE/SEI 41 [4.3] and FEMA 440 [4.4].

The first step in the Coefficient Method requires idealization of the pushover curve to calculate the effective elastic lateral stiffness,  $k_e$ , and effective yield strength,  $F_y$ , of the structure as shown in Figure 31F-4-4.



**FIGURE 31F-4-4  
IDEALIZATION OF PUSHOVER  
CURVE (ADAPTED FROM [4.3])**

The first line segment of the idealized pushover curve shall begin at the origin and have a slope equal to the effective elastic lateral stiffness,  $k_e$ . The effective elastic lateral stiffness,  $k_e$ , shall be taken as the secant stiffness calculated at the lateral force equal to 60 percent of the effective yield strength,  $F_y$ , of the structure. The effective yield strength,  $F_y$ , shall not be taken as greater than the maximum lateral force at any point along the pushover curve.

The second line segment shall represent the positive post-yield slope ( $\alpha_1 k_e$ ) determined by a point ( $F_d, \Delta_d$ ) and a point at the intersection with the first line segment such that the area above and below the actual curve area approximately balanced. ( $F_d, \Delta_d$ ) shall be a point on the actual pushover curve at the calculated target displacement, or at the displacement corresponding to the maximum lateral force, whichever is smaller.

The third line segment shall represent the negative post-yield slope ( $\alpha_2 k_e$ ), determined by the point at the end of the positive post-yield slope ( $F_d, \Delta_d$ ) and the point at which the lateral force degrades to 60 percent of the effective yield strength.

The target displacement shall be calculated from:

$$\Delta_d = C_1 C_2 S_A \frac{T_e^2}{4\pi^2} \quad (4-2)$$

where:

$S_A$  = spectral acceleration of the linear-elastic system at vibration period, which is computed from:

$$T_e = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m}{k_e}} \quad (4-3)$$

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**where:**

$m$  = seismic mass as defined in Section 3104F.2.3

$k_e$  = effective elastic lateral stiffness from idealized pushover

$C_1$  = modification factor to relate maximum inelastic displacement to displacement calculated for linear elastic response. For period less than 0.2 s,  $C_1$  need not be taken greater than the value at  $T_e = 0.2$  s. For period greater than 1.0 s,  $C_1 = 1.0$ . For all other periods:

$$C_1 = 1 + \frac{\mu_{strength} - 1}{aT_e^2} \quad (4-4)$$

**where:**

$a$  = Site class factor

= 130 for Site Class A or B,

= 90 for Site Class C, and

= 60 for Site Class D, E or F.

$\mu_{strength}$  = ratio of elastic strength demand to yield strength coefficient calculated in accordance with Equation (4-6). The Coefficient Method is not applicable where  $\mu_{strength}$  exceeds  $\mu_{max}$  computed from Equation (4-7).  $\mu_{strength}$  shall not be taken as less than 1.0.

$C_2$  = modification factor to represent the effects of pinched hysteresis shape, cyclic stiffness degradation and strength deterioration on the maximum displacement response. For periods greater than 0.7s,  $C_2 = 1.0$ . For all other periods:

$$C_2 = 1 + \frac{1}{800} \left( \frac{\mu_{strength} - 1}{T_e} \right)^2 \quad (4-5)$$

The strength ratio  $\mu_{strength}$  shall be computed from:

$$\mu_{strength} = \frac{mS_A}{F_y} \quad (4-6)$$

**where:**

$F_y$  = effective yield strength of the structure in the direction under consideration from the idealized pushover curve.

For structures with negative post-yield stiffness, the maximum strength ratio  $\mu_{max}$  shall be computed from:

$$\mu_{max} = \frac{\Delta_d}{\Delta_y} + \frac{|\alpha_e|^{-h}}{4} \quad (4-7)$$

**where:**

$\Delta_d$  = larger of target displacement or displacement corresponding to the maximum pushover force,

$\Delta_y$  = displacement at effective yield strength

$$h = 1 + 0.15 \ln T_e \quad (4-8)$$

$\alpha_e$  = effective negative post-yield slope ratio which shall be computed from:

$$\alpha_e = \alpha_{p-\Delta} + \lambda(\alpha_2 - \alpha_{p-\Delta}) \quad (4-9)$$

**where:**

$\alpha_{p-\Delta}$  and the maximum negative post-elastic stiffness ratio,  $\alpha_2$ , are estimated from the idealized force-deformation curve, and  $\lambda$  is a near-field effect factor equal to 0.8 for sites with 1 second spectral value,  $S_1$  greater than or equal to 0.6g and equal to 0.2 for sites with 1 second spectral value,  $S_1$  less than 0.6g.

**3104F.2.3.2.2 Substitute Structure Method.** The Substitute Structure Method is based on the procedure presented in Priestley et al. [4.5] and ASCE/COPRI 61 [4.2]. This method is summarized below.

1. Idealize the pushover curve from nonlinear pushover analysis, as described in Section 3104F.2.3.2.1, and estimate the effective yield strength,  $F_y$ , and yield displacement,  $\Delta_y$ .
2. Compute the effective elastic lateral stiffness,  $k_e$ , as the effective yield strength,  $F_y$ , divided by the yield displacement,  $\Delta_y$ .
3. Compute the structural period in the direction under consideration from:

$$T_e = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m}{k_e}} \quad (4-10)$$

**where:**

$m$  = seismic mass as defined in Section 3104F.2.3

$k_e$  = effective elastic lateral stiffness in direction under consideration

4. Determine target displacement,  $\Delta_d$ , of the effective linear elastic system from:

$$\Delta_d = S_A \frac{T_e^2}{4\pi^2} \quad (4-11)$$

**where:**

$S_A$  = the 5 percent damped spectral displacement corresponding to the linear elastic structural period,  $T_e$

Select the initial estimate of the displacement demand as  $\Delta_{d,i} = \Delta_d$ .

5. The ductility level,  $\mu_{\Delta,i}$ , is found from  $\Delta_{d,i}/\Delta_y$ . Use the appropriate relationship between ductility and damping, for the component undergoing inelastic deformation, to estimate the effective structural damping,  $\xi_{eff,i}$ . In lieu of more detailed analysis, Equation (4-12) may be used for concrete and steel piles connected to the deck through dowels embedded in the concrete. Note that the idealized pushover curves in Figure 31F-4-4 shall be utilized in Figure 31F-4-5, which illustrates the iterative procedure.

$$\xi_{eff,i} = 0.05 + \frac{1}{\pi} \left( 1 - \frac{1 - \alpha_1}{\sqrt{\mu_{\Delta,i}}} - \alpha_1 \sqrt{\mu_{\Delta,i}} \right) \quad (4-12)$$

where:

$\alpha_1$  = ratio of second slope over elastic slope (see Figures 31F-4-4 and 31F-4-5)

Equation (4-12) for effective damping was developed by Kowalsky et al. [4.6] for the Takeda hysteresis model of system's force-displacement relationship.

6. Compute the force,  $F_{d,p}$  on the force-deformation relationship associated with the estimated displacement,  $\Delta_{d,i}$  (see Figure 31F-4-5).
7. Compute the effective stiffness,  $k_{eff,p}$  as the secant stiffness from:

$$k_{eff,i} = \frac{F_{d,i}}{\Delta_{d,i}} \quad (4-13)$$

8. Compute the effective period,  $T_{eff,p}$  from:

$$T_{eff,i} = 2\pi \sqrt{\frac{m}{k_{eff,i}}} \quad (4-14)$$

where:

$m$  = seismic mass as defined in Section 3104F.2.3

9. For the effective structural period,  $T_{eff,p}$  and the effective structural damping,  $\xi_{eff,p}$  compute the spectral acceleration  $S_A(T_{eff,p}, \xi_{eff,p})$  from an appropriately damped design acceleration response spectrum.
10. Compute the new estimate of the displacement,  $\Delta_{d,j}$  from:

$$\Delta_{d,j} = \frac{T_{eff,i}^2}{4\pi^2} S_A(T_{eff,i}, \xi_{eff,i}) \quad (4-15)$$

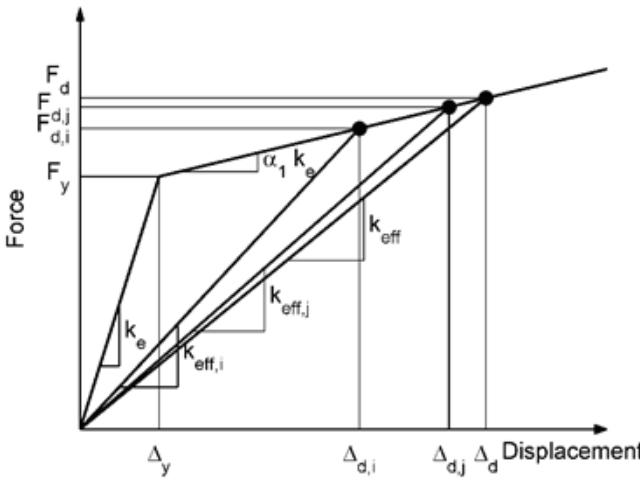


FIGURE 31F-4-5  
EFFECTIVE STIFFNESS FOR  
SUBSTITUTE STRUCTURE METHOD

11. Repeat steps 5 to 10 with  $\Delta_{d,i} = \Delta_{d,j}$  until displacement,  $\Delta_{d,p}$  computed in step 10 is sufficiently close to the starting displacement,  $\Delta_{d,p}$  in step 5 (Figure 31F-4-5).

**3104F.2.3.3 Linear modal demand procedure.** For irregular concrete/steel structures with moderate or high spill classifications, a linear modal analysis is required to predict the global displacement demands. A 3-D linear elastic response analysis shall be used, with effective moment of inertia applied to components to establish lateral displacement demands, to compute displacement components of an element along each axis of the system.

Sufficient modes shall be included in the analysis such that 90 percent of the participating mass is captured in each of the principal horizontal directions for the structure. For modal combinations, the Complete Quadratic Combination rule shall be used. Multidirectional excitation shall be accounted for in accordance with Section 3104F.4.2.

The lateral stiffness of the linear elastic response model shall be based on the initial stiffness of the nonlinear pushover curve as shown in Figure 31F-4-6 (also see Section 3106F.9). The p-y springs shall be adjusted based on the secant method approach. Most of the p-y springs will typically be based on their initial stiffness; no iteration is required.

If the fundamental period is  $T < T_0$ , where  $T_0$  is the period corresponding to the peak of the acceleration response spectrum, the displacement demand from the linear modal analysis shall be amplified to account for nonlinear system behavior by an amplification factor. The amplification factor shall be equal to either  $C_1 \times C_2$  per Section 3104F.2.3.2.1, or the ratio of the final target displacement and the initial elastic displacement of Equation (4-11) per Section 3104F.2.3.2.2.

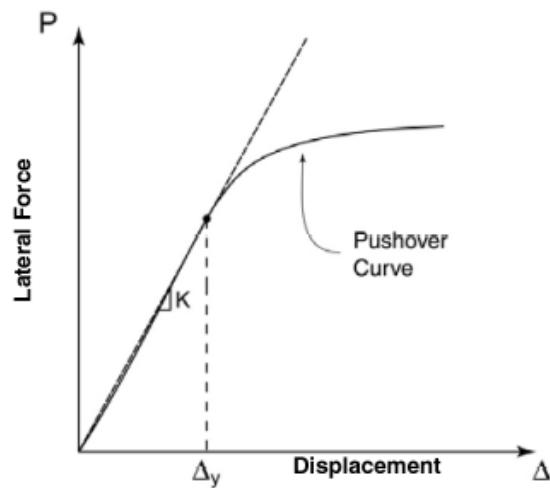


FIGURE 31F-4-6  
STIFFNESS FOR LINEAR MODAL ANALYSIS

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**3104F.2.3.4 Nonlinear dynamic analysis.** Nonlinear dynamic time history analysis is optional, and if performed, a peer review is required (see Section 3101F.8.2). Multiple acceleration records shall be used, as explained in Section 3103F.4.2.10. The following assumptions may be made:

1. Equivalent “super piles” can represent groups of piles.
2. If the deck has sufficient rigidity (both in-plane and out-of-plane) to justify its approximation as a rigid element, a 2-D plan simulation may be adequate.

A time-history analysis should always be compared with a simplified approach to ensure that results are reasonable. Displacements calculated from the nonlinear time history analyses may be used directly in design, but shall not be less than 80 percent of the values obtained from Section 3104F.2.3.2.

**3104F.2.3.5 Alternative procedures.** Alternative lateral-force procedures using rational analyses based on well-established principles of mechanics may be used in lieu of those prescribed in these provisions. As per Section 3101F.8.2, peer review is required.

**3104F.3 New MOTs.** The analysis and design requirements described in Section 3104F.2 shall also apply to new MOTs. However, new MOTs shall comply with the seismic performance criteria for high spill classification, as defined in Table 31F-4-1. Additional requirements are as follows:

1. Site-specific response spectra analysis (see Section 3103F.4.2.3).
2. Soil parameters based on site-specific and new borings (see Section 3106F.2.2).

### 3104F.4 General analysis and design requirements.

**3104F.4.1 Load combinations.** Earthquake loads shall be used in the load combinations described in Section 3103F.8.

**3104F.4.2 Combination of orthogonal seismic effects.** The design displacement demand at an element,  $\delta_d$ , shall be calculated by combining the longitudinal,  $\delta_x$ , and transverse,  $\delta_y$ , displacements in the horizontal plane (Figure 31F-4-7):

$$\delta_d = \sqrt{\delta_x^2 + \delta_y^2} \quad (4-16)$$

where:

$$\delta_x = \delta_{xy} + 0.3\delta_{xx} \quad (4-17)$$

and

$$\delta_y = 0.3\delta_{yx} + \delta_{yy} \quad (4-18)$$

OR

$$\delta_y = \delta_{yx} + 0.3\delta_{yy} \quad (4-19)$$

and

$$\delta_x = 0.3\delta_{xy} + \delta_{xx} \quad (4-20)$$

whichever results in the greater design displacement demand.

**3104F.4.3 P-Δ Effects.** The P-Δ effect (i.e., the additional moment induced by the total vertical load multiplied by the lateral deck deflection) shall be considered unless the following relationship is satisfied (see Figure 31F-4-8):

$$\frac{V}{W} \geq 4 \frac{\Delta_d}{H} \quad (4-21)$$

where:

$V$  = base shear strength of the structure obtained from a plastic analysis

$W$  = dead load of the frame

$\Delta_d$  = displacement demand

$H$  = distance from the location of maximum in-ground moment to center of gravity of the deck

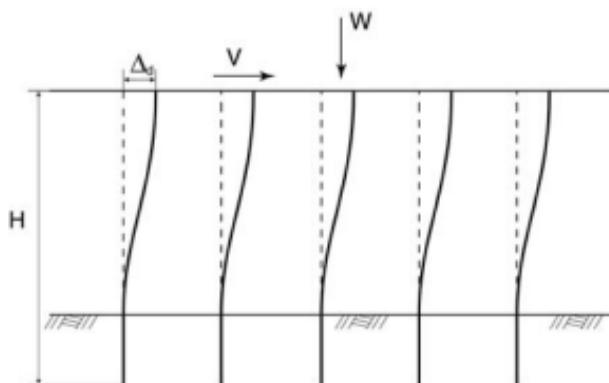


FIGURE 31F-4-8  
P-Δ EFFECT

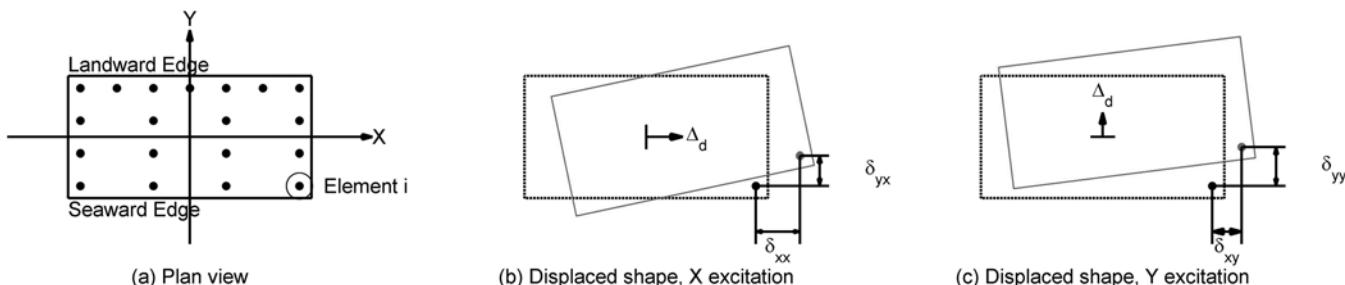


FIGURE 31F-4-7  
PLAN VIEW OF WHARF SEGMENT UNDER X AND Y SEISMIC EXCITATIONS

For wharf structures where the lateral displacement is limited by almost fully embedded piles,  $P-\Delta$  effects may be ignored; however, the individual stability of the piles shall be checked in accordance with Section 3107F.2.5.2.

If the landside batter piles are allowed to fail in a Level 2 evaluation, the remaining portion of the wharf shall be checked for  $P-\Delta$  effects.

**3104F.4.4 Expansion joints.** The effect of expansion joints shall be considered in the seismic analysis.

**3104F.4.5 Shear key forces.** Shear force across shear keys connecting adjacent wharf segments,  $V_{sk}$  (approximate upper bound to the shear key force [4.7]) shall be calculated as follows:

$$V_{sk} = 1.5(e/L_l)V_{\Delta T} \quad (4-22)$$

where:

$V_{\Delta T}$  = total segment lateral force found from a push-over analysis

$L_l$  = segment length

$e$  = eccentricity between the center of rigidity and the center of mass

**3104F.4.6 Connections.** For an existing wharf, the deteriorated conditions at the junction between the pile top and pile cap shall be considered in evaluating the moment capacity. Connection detail between the vertical pile and pile cap shall be evaluated to determine whether full or partial moment capacity can be developed under seismic action.

For new MOTs, the connection details shall develop the full moment capacities.

The modeling shall simulate the actual moment capacity (full or partial) of the joint in accordance with Section 3107F.2.7.

**3104F.4.7 Batter piles.** Batter piles primarily respond to earthquakes by developing large axial compression or tension forces. Bending moments are generally of secondary importance. Failure in compression may be dictated by the deck-pile connection (most common type), material compression, buckling or by excessive local shear in deck members adjacent to the batter pile. Failure in tension may be dictated by connection strength or by pile pull out (p. 3-83 of Ferritto et al. [4.7]).

When the controlling failure scenario is reached and the batter pile fails, the computer model shall be adjusted to consist of only the vertical pile acting either as a full or partial moment frame based on the connection details between the pile top and pile cap. The remaining displacement capacity, involving vertical piles, before the secondary failure stage develops, shall then be established (see Section 3107F.2.8).

Axial  $p-z$  curves shall be modeled. In compression, displacement capacity should consider the effect of the reduction in pile modulus of elasticity at high loads and the increase in effective length for friction piles. This procedure allows the pile to deform axially before reaching ultimate loads, thereby increasing the displacement ductility [4.7].

Horizontal nonlinear  $p-y$  springs are only applied to batter piles with significant embedment, such as for landside batter piles in a wharf structure. Moment fixity can be assumed for batter piles that extend well above the ground such as waterside batter piles in a wharf structure or batter piles in a pier type structure.

**3104F.5 Nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures.** Nonstructural components, non-building structures and building structures at MOTs shall be assessed for Level 2 seismic performance (see Section 3104F.2.1). Consideration shall be given to the adequacy and condition of supports and attachments (or anchorage), strength, flexibility, relative displacement,  $P$ -delta effects, and seismically-induced interaction with other components and structures.

**3104F.5.1 General.** Nonstructural components are mechanical, electrical and architectural components (such as piping/pipelines, loading arms, lifting equipment (winches and cranes), spill prevention equipment, pumps, instrumentation and storage cabinets, and lighting fixtures) that may be required to resist the effects of earthquake.

Nonbuilding structures (such as gangways, hose towers and racks) are self-supporting structures that carry gravity loads and may be required to resist the effects of earthquake, but are not building structures (such as control rooms). For building structures, see Section 3104F.5.6.

Critical systems are nonstructural components, non-building structures or building structures that shall remain operational or those whose failure could impair emergency operations following an earthquake, to prevent major oil spills and to protect public health, safety and the environment. A seismic assessment of the survivability and continued operation (related to personnel safety, oil spill prevention or response) during a Level 2 earthquake (see Table 31F-4-1) shall be performed for critical systems, including but not limited to, fire protection, emergency shutdown and electrical power systems.

**3104F.5.2 Seismic assessment.** For existing (E) nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures and their supports and attachments, seismic assessment shall be performed in accordance with CalARP [4.8] or ASCE Guidelines [4.9], except for piping/pipelines which shall be evaluated per Section 3109F. If seismic evaluation and/or strengthening are required, it shall be performed in accordance with Section 3104F.5.2.1.

For new (N) nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures and their supports and attachments, seismic evaluation and design shall be performed in accordance with Section 3104F.5.2.1, except for piping/pipelines which shall be evaluated per Section 3109F.

**3104F.5.2.1 Seismic evaluation, strengthening and design.** For evaluation, strengthening and design of nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures, seismic forces (demands) shall be obtained from Section 3104F.5. The seismic adequacy

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

of nonstructural components shall be demonstrated as specified in ASCE/SEI 7 [4.1]. Structures shall be analyzed in accordance with Section 3107F.5. Supports and attachments shall be assessed in accordance with Sections 3107F.7.

**3104F.5.3 Contribution to global response of MOT structures.** Nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures permanently attached to MOT structures, including, but not limited to, pipelines, loading arms, hose towers/racks, raised platforms, control rooms and vapor control equipment, may affect the global structural response. In such cases, the seismic characteristics (mass and/or stiffness) of the nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures shall be considered in computing global seismic response of the MOT structures. If the seismic response of nonstructural components is determined to be out of phase (e.g. pipelines) with the global structural response, then the mass contribution can be neglected in the seismic structural analysis.

**3104F.5.4 Nonstructural components and nonbuilding structures permanently attached to MOT structures.** This section covers nonstructural components and nonbuilding structures having a significant mass and/or importance to the operability and safety of the MOT, and that are permanently attached to MOT structures (e.g., wharves, trestles, dolphins). The weight of nonstructural components and nonbuilding structures shall be included in the dead load of the structure per Section 3103F.2.

Computation of seismic effects shall consider:

1. Amplification of acceleration from ground to location of attachment of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure to the deck due to flexibility of the MOT structure, and
2. Amplification of acceleration due to flexibility of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure.

The following are not covered in this section and shall be assessed using rational approach that includes consideration of strength, stiffness, ductility and seismic interaction with all other connected components and with the supporting structures or systems, subject to Division approval:

1. Nonstructural component supported by other nonstructural system permanently attached to MOT structure;
2. Nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure supported by other structure permanently attached to MOT structure;
3. Nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure attached to multiple MOT structures;
4. Nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure attached to structure and ground.

**3104F.5.4.1 Seismic loads.** This section specifies the procedure to compute seismic loads on nonstructural components and nonbuilding structures permanently attached to a MOT structure.

The following nonstructural components are exempt from the requirements of this section:

1. Temporary or movable equipment unless part of a critical system (Section 3104F.5.1);
2. Mechanical and electrical components that are attached to the MOT structure and have flexible connections to associated piping and conduit; and either:
  - (a) The component weighs 400 lb or less, the center of mass is located 4 ft or less above the MOT deck, and the component Importance Factor,  $I_p$ , is equal to 1.0; or
  - (b) The component weighs 20 lb or less, or in the case of a distributed system, 5 lb/ft or less.

**3104F.5.4.1.1 Simplified Procedure.** The Simplified Procedure may be used to estimate seismic loads on nonstructural components and nonbuilding structures permanently attached to a MOT structure. The Simplified Procedure shall not be used if any of the following apply:

1. Mass of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure exceeds 25 percent of the combined mass of the MOT structure plus nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure;
2. Multiple nonstructural components or nonbuilding structures of similar type (or natural period) when their combined mass exceeds 25 percent of the total mass of the MOT structure plus nonstructural components or nonbuilding structures;
3. Concrete/Steel MOT structure with irregular configuration (Section 3104F.1.3 and Table 31F-4-2) and high or medium spill exposure classification.

The horizontal seismic force,  $F_p$ , shall be computed as follows [4.10]:

$$F_p = \frac{1.2S_{xs}a_p I_p W_p}{R_p} \quad (4-23)$$

$$0.3S_{xs}I_pW_p \leq F_p \leq 1.6S_{xs}I_pW_p$$

where:

$S_{xs}$  = spectral acceleration in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5

$a_p$  = amplification factor for nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure (Table 31F-4-3)

$I_p$  = importance factor for nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure (Table 31F-4-4)

$W_p$  = weight of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure

$R_p$  = response modification factor for nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure (Table 31F-4-5)

Alternatively, when dynamic properties of the MOT structure are available, the horizontal seismic force,  $F_p$ , may be computed from [4.10]:

$$F_p = \frac{a_p S_A I_p A_x W_p}{R_p} \quad (4-24)$$

$$0.3S_{xs}I_pW_p \leq F_p \leq 1.6S_{xs}I_pW_p$$

where:

$S_A$  = spectral acceleration in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5, at the period equal to the elastic fundamental period of the MOT structure,  $T$ , in direction under consideration

$A_x$  = torsional amplification factor given by:

$$A_x = \left( \frac{\Delta_m}{1.2\Delta_{avg}} \right)^2 \quad (4-25)$$

$$1 \leq A_x \leq 3$$

where:

$\Delta_m$  = maximum displacement at one end of the MOT structure transverse to an axis

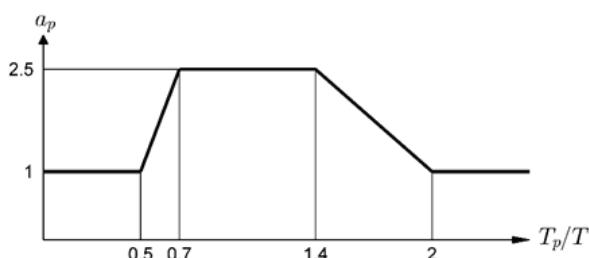
$\Delta_{avg}$  = average of the displacements at the extreme points of the MOT structure (see Figure 31F-4-1)

**TABLE 31F-4-3  
AMPLIFICATION FACTORS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL  
COMPONENTS AND NONBUILDING STRUCTURES**

COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE	$a_p^{1,2}$
Rigid components or structures (period less than 0.06 seconds)	1.0
Rigidly attached components or structures	1.0
Flexible components or structures (period longer than 0.06 seconds)	2.5
Flexibly attached components or structures	2.5

1. A lower value shall not be used unless justified by detailed dynamic analysis, and shall in no case be less than 1.0.

2. If the fundamental period of the MOT structure,  $T$ , and the period of the flexible nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure,  $T_p$ , is known,  $a_p$  may be estimated from Figure 31F-4-9.



**FIGURE 31F-4-9  
AMPLIFICATION FACTOR,  $a_p$  [4.10]**

**TABLE 31F-4-4  
IMPORTANCE FACTORS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL COMPONENTS  
AND NONBUILDING STRUCTURES**

COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE	$I_p$
Critical <sup>1,2</sup>	1.5
Other	1.0

1. See Section 3104F.5.1 for definition of critical system.

2. A lower value may be utilized, subject to Division approval.

**TABLE 31F-4-5  
RESPONSE MODIFICATION FACTORS FOR NONSTRUCTURAL  
COMPONENTS AND NONBUILDING STRUCTURES**

COMPONENT OR STRUCTURE	$R_p^t$
Loading arms	3.0
Piping/pipelines (welded)	12.0
Piping/pipelines (threaded or flanged)	6.0
Pumps	2.5
Skids	2.5
Tanks and totes	2.5
Light fixtures (or luminaries)	1.5
Electrical conduits and cable trays	6.0
Mooring hardware	2.5
Velocity monitoring equipment	2.5
Instrumentation or storage cabinets	6.0
Cranes	2.5
Gangway (column systems)	3.0
Gangways (truss systems)	Use $R_p$ from frame systems
Hose towers and racks	Use $R_p$ from frame systems
<b>Frame systems:</b>	
Steel special concentrically braced frames	6.0
Steel ordinary concentrically braced frames	3.5
Steel special moment frames	8.0
Steel intermediate moment frames	4.5
Steel ordinary moment frames	3.5
Lighframe wood sheathed with wood structural panels	6.5
Lighframe cold-formed steel sheathed with wood structural panels	6.5
Lighframe walls with shear panels of other materials	2.0
Other	Subject to Division approval

1. A higher value may be utilized, subject to Division approval.

The horizontal seismic force,  $F_p$ , in the direction under consideration shall be applied at the center of gravity and distributed relative to the mass distribution of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure.

The horizontal seismic force,  $F_p$ , shall be applied independently in at least two orthogonal horizontal directions in combination with service or operating loads associated with the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure, as appropriate. For vertically cantilevered systems, however,  $F_p$  shall be assumed to act in any horizontal direction.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

The concurrent vertical seismic force,  $F_v$ , shall be applied at the center of gravity and distributed relative to the mass distribution of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure, as follows:

$$F_v = \pm 0.2S_{xs}W_p \quad (4-26)$$

**3104F.5.4.1.2 Linear modal demand procedure.** The linear modal demand procedure (Section 3104F.2.3.3) may always be used and shall be used to estimate seismic forces when the Simplified Procedure (Section 3104F.5.4.1.1) is not permitted. The MOT structure and nonstructural components and/or nonbuilding structures shall be modeled explicitly. The seismic forces obtained from the linear modal demand procedure shall be adjusted for appropriate importance factors and response modification factors as specified in Table 31F-4-4 and Table 31F-4-5.

**3104F.5.5 Nonstructural components and nonbuilding structures permanently attached to the ground.** The seismic load shall be computed using the procedures in ASCE/SEI 7 [4.1], except that Level 2 design earthquake motion parameters defined in Section 3103F.4 shall be used in lieu of those specified in ASCE/SEI 7 [4.1].

**3104F.5.6 Building structures.** For buildings permanently attached to MOT structure, Section 3104F.5.4.1 shall be used to compute seismic loads. Computation of seismic effects shall consider:

1. Amplification of acceleration from ground to location of attachment of the building to the deck due to flexibility of the MOT structure, and
2. Amplification of acceleration due to flexibility of the building.

For buildings permanently attached to the ground, seismic loads shall be computed using the procedures in ASCE/SEI 7 [4.1], as amended by the local enforcing agency requirements, subject to Division approval.

## 3104F.6 Symbols.

$a$	= Site class factor
$a_p$	= Amplification factor for nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure
$A_x$	= Torsional amplification factor
$C_1$	= Modification factor to relate expected maximum inelastic displacement to displacement calculated for linear elastic response
$C_2$	= Modification factor to represent the effects of pinched hysteresis shape, cyclic stiffness degradation and strength deterioration on the maximum displacement response
$e$	= Eccentricity between center of mass and center of rigidity
$F_{d,i}$	= Force at step $i$ of iteration
$F_{d,j}$	= Force at step $j$ of iteration

$F_p$	= Horizontal seismic force on nonstructural component, nonbuilding structure or building structure supported on MOT
$F_v$	= Vertical seismic force on nonstructural component, nonbuilding structure or building structure supported on MOT
$F_y$	= Effective yield strength
$H$	= Distance from maximum in-ground moment to center of gravity of the deck
$I_p$	= Importance factor for nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure
$k_e$	= Effective elastic lateral stiffness
$k_{eff,i}$	= Effective secant lateral stiffness at step $i$ of iteration
$k_{eff,j}$	= Effective secant lateral stiffness at step $j$ of iteration
$L_l$	= Longitudinal length between wharf expansion joints
$m$	= Seismic mass
$R_p$	= Response modification factor for nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure
$S_A$	= Spectral response acceleration at $T$
$S_{xs}$	= Spectral acceleration in Section 3103F.4.2.4 or Section 3103F.4.2.5
$S_I$	= 1-second spectral response acceleration
$T$	= Fundamental period of the elastic structure
$T_e$	= Effective elastic structural period
$T_{eff,i}$	= Effective structural period at step $i$ of iteration
$T_p$	= Period of flexible nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure
$T_0$	= Period at peak of the acceleration response spectrum
$V$	= Base shear strength of the structure obtained from a plastic analysis
$V_{sk}$	= Shear force across shear keys
$V_{\Delta T}$	= Total segment lateral force
$W$	= Dead load of the frame
$W_p$	= Weight of the nonstructural component or nonbuilding structure
$\Delta_d$	= Target displacement demand
$\Delta_{d,i}$	= Target displacement demand at step $i$ of iteration
$\Delta_{d,j}$	= Target displacement demand at step $j$ of iteration
$\alpha_i$	= Positive post-yield slope ratio equal to positive post-yield stiffness divided by the effective stiffness

$\alpha_2$	= Negative post-yield slope ratio equal to negative post-yield stiffness divided by the effective stiffness
$\alpha_e$	= Effective negative post-yield slope ratio equal to effective post-yield negative stiffness divided by the effective stiffness
$\alpha_{p-\Delta}$	= Negative slope ratio caused by $P-\Delta$ effects
$\Delta_{avg}$	= Average of displacements, $\Delta_1$ and $\Delta_2$ , at ends of the MOT transverse to an axis
$\Delta_d$	= Target displacement
$\Delta_m$	= Maximum of displacements, $\Delta_1$ and $\Delta_2$ , at ends of the MOT transverse to an axis
$\Delta_y$	= Displacement at yield strength
$\Delta_1, \Delta_2$	= Displacement at ends of the MOT transverse to an axis
$\delta_d$	= Design displacement demand at an element
$\delta_x$	= Displacement of an element in X direction
$\delta_y$	= Displacement of an element in Y direction
$\delta_{xx}$	= X displacement under X direction excitation
$\delta_{xy}$	= X displacement under Y direction excitation
$\delta_{yx}$	= Y displacement under X direction excitation
$\delta_{yy}$	= Y displacement under Y direction excitation
$\lambda$	= Near-field effect factor
$\mu_{max}$	= Maximum strength ratio
$\mu_{strength}$	= Ratio of elastic strength demand to yield strength
$\mu_{\Delta,t}$	= Initial ductility level
$\xi_{eff,i}$	= Effective structural damping at step $i$ of iteration

### 3104F.7 References.

- [4.1] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2016, ASCE/SEI 7-16 (ASCE/SEI 7), "Minimum Design Loads and Associates Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures," Reston, VA.
- [4.2] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2014, ASCE/COPRI 61-14 (ASCE/COPRI 61), "Seismic Design of Piers and Wharves," Reston, VA.
- [4.3] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2017, ASCE/SEI 41-17 (ASCE/SEI 41), "Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings," Reston, VA.
- [4.4] Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), June 2005, FEMA 440, "Improvement of Nonlinear Static Seismic Analysis Procedures," Redwood City, CA.
- [4.5] Priestley, M.J.N., Seible, F., Calvi, G.M., 1996, "Seismic Design and Retrofit of Bridges," John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York.
- [4.6] Kowalsky, M.J., Priestley, M.J.N., MacRae, G.A., 1994, "Displacement-Based Design – A Methodology for Seismic Design Applied to Single Degree of Freedom Reinforced Concrete Structures," Report

No. SSRP – 94/16, University of California, San Diego.

- [4.7] Ferritto, J., Dickenson, S., Priestley N., Werner, S., Taylor, C., Burke, D., Seelig, W., and Kelly, S., 1999, "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals," Vol. 1 and Vol. 2, Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA.
- [4.8] CalARP Program Seismic Guidance Committee, December 2013, "Guidance for California Accidental Release Prevention (CalARP) Program Seismic Assessments," Sacramento, CA.
- [4.9] American Society of Civil Engineers, 2011, "Guidelines for Seismic Evaluation and Design of Petrochemical Facilities," 2nd ed., New York.
- [4.10] Goel, R. K., 2017, "Estimating Seismic Forces in Ancillary Components and Nonbuilding Structures Supported on Piers, Wharves, and Marine Oil Terminals," Earthquake Spectra, <https://doi.org/10.1193/041017EQS068M>.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

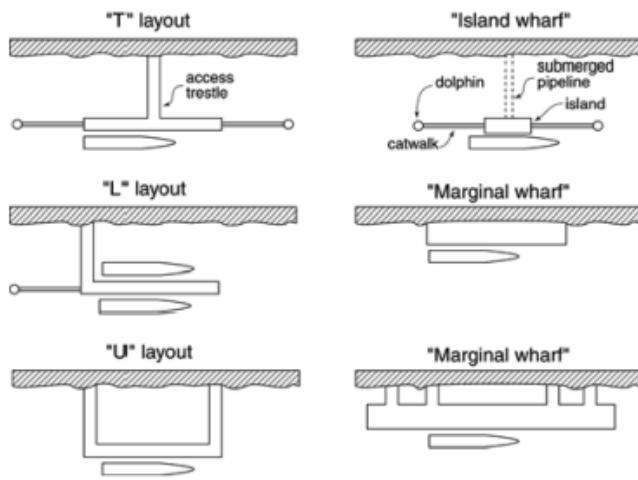
## Division 5

### SECTION 3105F MOORING AND BERTHING ANALYSIS AND DESIGN

**3105F.1 General.**

**3105F.1.1 Purpose.** This section establishes minimum standards for safe mooring and berthing of vessels at MOTs.

**3105F.1.2 Applicability.** This section applies to onshore MOTs; Figure 31F-5-1 shows typical pier and wharf configurations.



**FIGURE 31F-5-1**  
**TYPICAL PIER AND WHARF CONFIGURATIONS**

**3105F.1.3 Mooring/berthing requirements.** Multiple berth MOTs shall use the same environmental input conditions for each berth unless it can be demonstrated that there are significant differences.

MOTs shall have the following equipment in operation:

1. An anemometer (N/E).
2. A current meter in high velocity current ( $>1.5$  knots) areas (N/E).
3. Remote reading tension load devices in high velocity current ( $>1.5$  knots) areas and/or with passing vessel effects for new MOTs.
4. Mooring hardware in accordance with Section 3105F.8 (N/E).

Berthing systems shall be in accordance with Section 3105F.4 (N/E).

Monitoring systems and instrumentation shall be implemented considering the parameters in Section 3102F.3.6.1, and shall be installed, maintained and calibrated in accordance with Section 3111F.9.3.

**3105F.1.4 New MOTs.** Quick release hooks are required at all new MOTs, except for spring line fittings. Quick release hooks shall be sized in accordance with Section 3105F.8 To avoid accidental release, the freeing mechanism shall be activated by a two-step process. Quick

release hooks shall be insulated electrically from the mooring structure, and shall be supported so as not to contact the deck.

Section 3105F.5 and the OCIMF guidelines [5.4] shall be used in designing the mooring layout.

**3105F.1.5 Analysis and design of mooring components.** The existing condition of the MOT shall be used in the mooring analysis (see Section 3102F). Structural characteristics of the MOT, including type and configuration of mooring fittings such as bollards, bitts, hooks and capstans and material properties and condition, shall be determined in accordance with Sections 3107F.7 and 3105F.8.

The analysis and design of mooring components shall be based on the loading combinations and safety factors defined in Sections 3103F.8, 3105F.7 and 3105F.8, and in accordance with ACI 318 [5.1], AISC 325 [5.2] and ANSI/AWC NDS [5.3], as applicable.

**3105F.2 Mooring analyses.** A mooring analysis shall be performed for each berthing system, to justify the safe mooring of the various vessels at the MOT. Review of vessels calling at the MOT shall be performed to identify representative vessel size ranges and mooring configurations. Vessels analyzed shall be representative of the upper bound of each vessel size range defined by DWT capacity (see Section 3101F.6). The Terminal Operating Limits (TOLs) shall be generated based on the mooring analyses (see Section 3102F.3.6.1 and Figure 31F-2-1).

The forces acting on a moored vessel shall be determined in accordance with Section 3103F.5. Mooring line and breasting load combinations shall be in accordance with Section 3103F.8.

Two procedures, manual and numerical, are available for performing mooring analyses. These procedures shall conform to either the OCIMF (MEG 3) [5.4] or UFC 4-159-03 [5.5]. The manual procedure (Section 3105F.2.1) may be used for barges. In order to simplify the analysis for barges (or other small vessels), they may be considered to be solid free-standing walls (Chapter 29 of ASCE/SEI 7 [5.6]). This will eliminate the need to perform a computer assisted mooring analysis.

A new mooring assessment shall be performed when conditions change, such as any modification in the mooring configuration, vessel size or new information indicating greater wind, current or other environmental loads.

The most severe combination of the environmental loads and limiting conditions shall be justified based on site-specific evaluation, and considered in the mooring analyses. At a minimum, the following shall be considered and documented:

1. Two current directions (maximum ebb and flood; See Section 3103F.5.3)
2. Two tide levels (highest high and lowest low)
3. Two vessel loading conditions (ballast and maximum draft at the terminal)

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

4. Eight wind directions (45 degree increments)
5. Vessel motion limits (as applicable)
6. Fender properties
7. Mooring hardware capacities
8. Minimum mooring line properties (such as MBL of the weakest line permitted for vessel size range)
9. Passing vessel forces

In general, vessels shall remain in contact with the breasting or fendering system. Vessel motion (sway) of up to 2 feet off the breasting structure may be allowed under the most severe environmental loads, unless greater movement can be justified by an appropriate mooring analysis that accounts for potential dynamic effects. The allowable movement shall be consistent with mooring analysis results, indicating that forces in the mooring lines and their supports are within the allowable safety factors. Also, a check shall be made as to whether the movement is within the limitations of the cargo transfer equipment.

The mooring analyses outputs define the wind load and other limitations.

Upon completion of the mooring analyses, the following shall be checked, as applicable:

1. The fender system compression/deflection performance.
2. Anchorage capacity of each mooring hardware component.
3. Capacity of supporting structure(s) exceed each mooring line demand.
4. Maximum allowable capacities for mooring lines.
5. Vessel motion does not exceed the maximum allowable extension limits of the loading arms and/or hoses.

**3105F.2.1 Manual procedure.** Simplified calculations may be used to determine the mooring forces for barges with Favorable Site Conditions (see Table 31F-3-8) and no passing vessel effects (see Section 3105F.3.2), except if any of the following conditions exist (Figures 31F-5-2 and 31F-5-3).

1. Mooring layout is significantly asymmetrical
2. Horizontal mooring line angles ( $\alpha$ ) on bow and stern exceed 45 degrees
3. Horizontal breast mooring line angles exceed 15 normal to the hull
4. Horizontal spring mooring line angles exceed 10 degrees from a line parallel to the hull
5. Vertical mooring line angles ( $\theta$ ) exceed 25 degrees
6. Mooring lines for lateral loads not grouped at bow and stern

When the forces have been determined and the distance between the bow and stern mooring points is known, the yaw moment can be resolved into lateral loads at the bow and stern. The total environmental loads on a moored vessel are comprised of the lateral load at the vessel bow, the

lateral load at the vessel stern and the longitudinal load. Line pretension loads must be added.

Four load cases shall be considered:

1. Entire load is taken by mooring lines
2. Entire load is taken by breasting structures
3. Load is taken by combination of mooring lines and breasting structures
4. Longitudinal load is taken only by spring lines

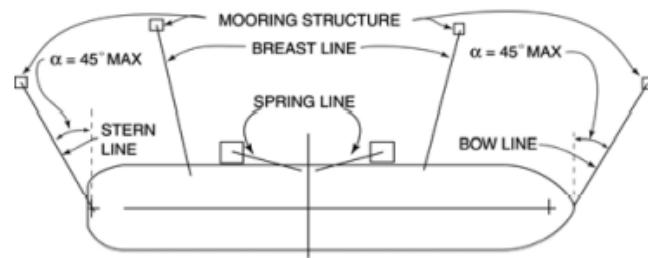


FIGURE 31F-5-2  
HORIZONTAL LINE ANGLES [5.4]

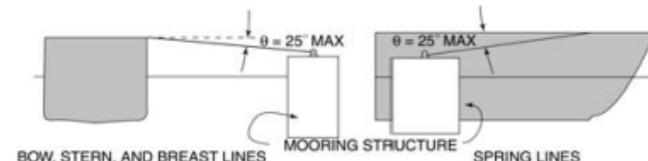


FIGURE 31F-5-3  
VERTICAL LINE ANGLES [5.4]

**3105F.2.2 Numerical procedure.** A numerical procedure is required to obtain mooring forces for MOTs that cannot use manual procedure. Computer program(s) shall be based on mooring analysis procedures that consider the characteristics of the mooring system, calculate the environmental loads and provide resulting mooring line forces and vessel motions (surge and sway).

### 3105F.3 Wave, passing vessel, seiche and tsunami.

**3105F.3.1 Wind waves.** MOTs are generally located in sheltered waters such that typical wind waves can be assumed not to affect the moored vessel if the significant wave period,  $T_s$ , is less than 4 seconds. However, if the period is equal to or greater than 4 seconds, then a simplified dynamic analysis (See Section 3103F.5.4) is required. The wave period shall be established based on a 1-year significant wave height,  $H_s$ . For MOTs within a harbor basin, the wave period shall be based on the locally generated waves with relatively short fetch.

**3105F.3.2 Passing vessels.** These forces generated by passing vessels are due to pressure gradients associated with the flow pattern. These pressure gradients cause the moored vessel to sway, surge and yaw, thus imposing forces on the mooring lines.

Passing vessel analysis shall be conducted when all of the following conditions exist (See Figure 31F-5-4):

1. Passing vessel size is greater than 25,000 DWT.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

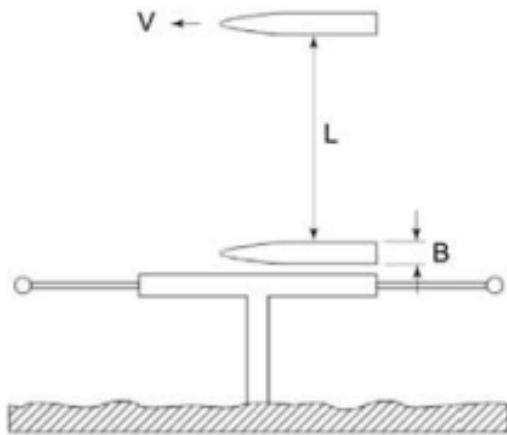
2. Distance  $L$  is 500 feet or less
3. Vessel speed  $V$  is greater than  $V_{crit}$

where:

$$V_{crit} = 1.5 + \frac{L - 2B}{500 - 2B} \quad 4.5(\text{knots}) \quad (5-1)$$

**Exception:** If  $L \leq 2B$ , passing vessel loads shall be considered.

$L$  and  $B$  are shown in Figure 31F-5-4, in units of feet.  $V$  is defined as the speed of vessel over land minus the current velocity, when traveling with the current, or the speed of vessel over land plus the current velocity, when traveling against the current.



**FIGURE 31F-5-4  
PASSING VESSEL**

When such conditions (1, 2 and 3 above) exist, the surge and sway forces and the yaw moment acting on the moored vessel shall, as a minimum, be established in accordance with Section 3103F.5.5 or by dynamic analysis.

For MOTs located in ports, the passing distance,  $L$ , may be established based on channel width and vessel traffic patterns. The guidelines established in Figure 5-17 of UFC 4-150-06 [5.7] for interior channels may be used. The "vertical bank" in Figure 5-17 of UFC 4-150-06 [5.7] shall be replaced by the side of the moored vessel when establishing the distance, "L."

For MOTs, not located within a port, the distance, "L," must be determined from observed traffic patterns.

The following passing vessel positions shall be investigated:

1. Passing vessel is centered on the moored ship. This position produces maximum sway force.
2. The midship of the passing vessel is fore or aft of the centerline of the moored ship by a distance of 0.40 times the length of the moored ship. This position is assumed to produce maximum surge force and yaw moment at the same time.

The mooring loads due to a passing vessel shall be added to the mooring loads due to wind and current.

**3105F.3.3 Seiche.** A seiche analysis is required for existing MOTs located within a harbor basin and which have historically experienced seiche. A seiche analysis is required for new MOTs inside a harbor basin prone to penetration of ocean waves.

The standing wave system or seiche is characterized by a series of "nodes" and "antinodes." Seiche typically has wave periods ranging from 20 seconds up to several hours, with wave heights in the range of 0.1 to 0.4 ft [5.7].

The following procedure may be used, as a minimum, in evaluating the effects of seiche within a harbor basin. In more complex cases where the assumptions below are not applicable, dynamic methods are required.

1. Calculate the natural period of oscillation of the basin. The basin may be idealized as rectangular, closed or open at the seaward end. Use Chapter 2 of UFC 4-150-06 [5.7] to calculate the wave period and length for different modes. The first three modes shall be considered in the analysis.
2. Determine the location of the moored ship with respect to the antinode and node of the first three modes to determine the possibility of resonance.
3. Determine the natural period of the vessel and mooring system. The calculation shall be based on the total mass of the system and the stiffness of the mooring lines in surge. The surge motion of the moored vessel is estimated by analyzing the vessel motion as a harmonically forced linear single degree of freedom spring mass system. Methods outlined in a paper by F.A. Kilner [5.8] can be used to calculate the vessel motion.
4. Vessels are generally berthed parallel to the channel; therefore, only longitudinal (surge) motions shall be considered, with the associated mooring loads in the spring lines. The loads on the mooring lines (spring lines) are then determined from the computed vessel motion and the stiffness of those mooring lines.

**3105F.3.4 Tsunami.** Run-up and current velocity shall be considered in the tsunami assessment. Section 3103F.5.7 and Table 31F-3-6 provides run-up values for the San Francisco Bay area, Los Angeles/Long Beach Harbors and Port Hueneme.

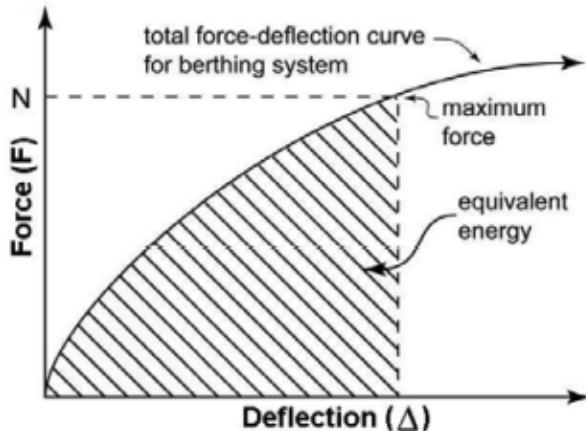
**3105F.4 Berthing analysis and design.** The analysis and design of berthing components shall be based on the loading combinations and safety factors defined in Sections 3103F.8 and 3105F.7, and in accordance with ACI 318 [5.1], AISC 325 [5.2] and ANSI/AWC NDS [5.3], as applicable.

**3105F.4.1 Berthing energy demand.** The kinetic berthing energy demand shall be determined in accordance with Section 3103F.6.

**3105F.4.2 Berthing energy capacity.** For existing MOTs, the berthing energy capacity shall be calculated as the area under the force-deflection curve for the combined structure

and fender system as indicated in Figure 31F-5-5. Fender piles may be included in the lateral analysis to establish the total force-deflection curve for the berthing system. Load-deflection curves for other fender types shall be obtained from manufacturer's data. The condition of fenders shall be taken into account when performing the analysis.

When batter piles are present, the fender system typically absorbs most of the berthing energy. This can be established by comparing the force-deflection curves for the fender system and batter piles. In this case only the fender system energy absorption shall be considered.



**FIGURE 31F-5-5  
BERTHING ENERGY CAPACITY**

#### 3105F.4.3 Tanker contact length.

**3105F.4.3.1 Continuous fender system.** A continuous fender system consists of fender piles, chocks, wales, and rubber or spring fender units.

The contact length of a ship during berthing depends on the spacing of the fender piles and fender units, and the connection details of the chocks and wales to the fender piles.

The contact length,  $L_c$ , can be calculated using rational analysis considering curvature of the bow and berthing angle.

In lieu of detailed analysis to determine the contact length, Table 31F-5-1 may be used. The contact length for a vessel within the range listed in the table can be obtained by interpolation.

**TABLE 31F-5-1  
CONTACT LENGTH**

VESSEL SIZE (DWT)	CONTACT LENGTH
330	25 ft
1,000 to 2,500	35 ft
5,000 to 26,000	40 ft
35,000 to 50,000	50 ft
65,000	60 ft
100,000 to 125,000	70 ft

**3105F.4.3.2 Discrete fender system.** For discrete fender systems (i.e., not continuous), one fender unit or breasting dolphin shall be able to absorb the entire berthing energy.

**3105F.4.4 Longitudinal and vertical berthing forces.** The longitudinal and vertical components of the horizontal berthing force shall be calculated using appropriate coefficients of friction between the vessel and the fender. In lieu of as-built data, the values in Table 31F-5-2 may be used for typical fender/vessel materials:

**TABLE 31F-5-2  
COEFFICIENT OF FRICTION**

CONTACT MATERIALS	FRICTION COEFFICIENT
Timber to Steel	0.4 to 0.6
Urethane to Steel	0.4 to 0.6
Steel to Steel	0.25
Rubber to Steel	0.6 to 0.7
UHMW* to Steel	0.1 to 0.2

\*Ultra-high molecular weight plastic rubbing strips.

Longitudinal and vertical forces shall be determined by:

$$F = \mu N \quad (5-3)$$

where:

$F$  = longitudinal or vertical component of horizontal berthing force

$\mu$  = coefficient of friction of contact materials

$N$  = maximum horizontal berthing force (normal to fender)

**3105F.4.5 Design and selection of new fender systems.** For guidelines on new fender designs, refer to UFC 4-152-01 [5.9] and PIANC [5.10]. Velocity and temperature factors, contact angle effects and manufacturing tolerances shall be considered (see Appendices A and B of PIANC [5.10]). Also, see Section 3103F.6.

**3105F.5 Layout of new MOTs.** Guidelines for layout of new MOTs are provided in OCIMF MEG3 [5.4]. The final layout of the mooring and breasting dolphins shall be determined based on the results of the mooring analysis that provides optimal mooring line and breasting forces for the range of vessels to be accommodated.

**3105F.6 Offshore moorings.** Offshore MOT moorings shall be designed and analyzed considering the site water depth, metocean environment and class of vessels calling per OCIMF MEG3 [5.4] or UFC 4-159-03 [5.5].

**3105F.6.1 Mooring analyses.** Analysis procedures shall conform to the OCIMF MEG3 [5.4] or UFC 4-159-03 [5.5], and the following:

1. A mooring analysis shall be performed for the range of tanker classes and barges calling at each offshore berth.
2. Forces acting on moored vessels shall be determined according to Section 3103F.5 and analysis shall consider all possible vessel movements, contri-

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

- bution of buoys, sinkers, catenaries affecting mooring line stiffness and anchorages.
3. Correlation of winds, waves and currents shall be considered. The correlation may be estimated by probabilistic analysis of metocean data.
  4. The actual expected displacement of the vessels shall be used in the analysis.
  5. Underwater inspections and bathymetry shall be considered.
  6. Both fully laden and ballast conditions shall be considered.
  7. Dynamic analysis shall be used to evaluate moorings performance.

**3105F.6.2 Design of mooring components.** Design of mooring components shall be based on loading combinations and safety factors defined in Sections 3103F.8, 3105F.7 and 3105F.8 and follow the guidelines provided in either the OCIMF MEG3 [5.4] or UFC 4-159-03 [5.5].

**3105F.7 Safety factors for mooring lines.** Safety factors for different material types of mooring lines are given in Table 31F-5-3. The safety factors should be applied to the minimum number of lines specified by the mooring analysis, using the highest loads calculated for the environmental conditions. The minimum breaking load (MBL) of new ropes is obtained from the certificate issued by the manufacturer. If polyamide tails are used in combination with wire mooring lines, the safety factor shall be based on the weaker of the two ropes.

**TABLE 31F-5-3  
SAFETY FACTORS FOR ROPES [5.4]**

Steel Wire Rope	1.82
Polyamide	2.22
Other Synthetic	2.00
Polyamide Tail for Wire Mooring Lines	2.50
Other Synthetic Tail for Wire Mooring Lines	2.28
Polyamide Tail for Synthetic Mooring Lines	2.75
Other Synthetic Tail for Synthetic Mooring Lines	2.50
Joining Shackles	2.00

**3105F.8 Mooring hardware (N/E).** Mooring hardware shall include, but not be limited to, bollards, quick release hooks, other mooring fittings and base bolts. All mooring hardware shall be clearly marked with their safe working loads (or allowable working loads) [5.4]. The certificate issued by the manufacturer normally defines the safe working loads of this hardware.

**3105F.8.1 Quick release hooks.** For new MOTs or berthing systems, a minimum of three quick release hooks are required for each berthing line location for tankers greater than or equal to 50,000 DWT. At least two hooks at each location shall be provided for berthing lines for tankers less than 50,000 DWT. Remote release may be considered for emergency situations.

All hooks and supporting structures shall withstand the minimum breaking load (MBL) of the strongest line with a

safety factor of 1.2 or greater. Only one mooring line shall be placed on each quick release hook (N/E).

For multiple quick release hooks, the minimum horizontal load for the design of the tie-down shall be:

$$F_d = 1.2 \times MBL \times [1 + 0.75(n-1)] \quad (5-4)$$

where:

$F_d$  = Minimum factored demand for assembly tie-down.

$n$  = Number of hooks on the assembly.

The capacity of the supporting structures must be larger than  $F_d$  (See Section 3107F.6).

**3105F.8.2 Other fittings.** Other fittings include cleats, bitts and bollards.

If the allowable working loads for existing fittings are not available, the values listed in Table 31F-5-4 may be used for typical sizes, bolt patterns and layout. The allowable working loads are defined for mooring line angles up to 60 degrees from the horizontal. The combination of vertical and horizontal loads shall be considered.

**TABLE 31F-5-4  
ALLOWABLE WORKING LOADS**

TYPE OF FITTINGS	NO. OF BOLTS	BOLT SIZE (in)	WORKING LOAD (kips)
30 inch Cleat	4	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	20
42 inch Cleat	6	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	40
Low Bitt	10	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub>	60 per column
High Bitt	10	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	75 per column
44 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> inch Fit. Bollard	4	1 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	70
44 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> inch Fit. Bollard	8	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	200
48 inch Fit. Bollard	12	2 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>4</sub>	450

Note: This table is modified from Table 6-11 of UFC 4-159-03 [5.5]

**3105F.8.3 Base bolts.** Base bolts are subjected to both shear and uplift. Forces on bolts shall be determined using the following factors:

1. Height of load application on bitts or bollards.
2. Actual vertical angles of mooring lines for the highest and lowest tide and vessel draft conditions, for all sizes of vessels at each particular berth.
3. Actual horizontal angles from the mooring line configurations, for all vessel sizes and positions at each particular berth.
4. Simultaneous loads from more than one vessel.

For existing MOTs, the deteriorated condition of the base bolts and supporting members shall be considered in determining the capacity of the fitting.

**3105F.9 Symbols.**

$\alpha$  = Horizontal mooring line angles

$\Delta$  = Deflection

$\theta$  = Vertical mooring line angles

$B$  = Beam of vessel

*DWT = Dead Weight Tonnage*  
*F = Longitudinal or vertical component of horizontal normal berthing force*  
*F<sub>d</sub> = Minimum factored demand for assembly tie-down*  
*L = Distance between passing and moored vessels*  
*MBL = Minimum breaking load*  
*n = Number of hooks on the assembly*  
*N = Maximum horizontal berthing force*  
*μ = Coefficient of friction of contact materials*  
*V = Ground speed (knots)*  
*V<sub>c</sub> = Maximum current (knots).*  
*V<sub>crit</sub> = Ground speed (knots) above which passing loads must be considered*

[5.10] Permanent International Association of Navigation Congresses (PIANC), 2002, "Guidelines for the Design of Fender Systems: 2002," Brussels.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

### 3105F.10 References.

- [5.1] American Concrete Institute (ACI), 2014, ACI 318-14 (ACI 318), "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)," Farmington Hills, MI.
- [5.2] American Institute of Steel Construction, Inc. (AISC), 2017, AISC 325-17 (AISC 325), "Steel Construction Manual," 15th ed., Chicago, IL.
- [5.3] American Wood Council (AWC), 2017, ANSI/AWC NDS-2018 (ANSI/AWC NDS), "National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction," Washington, D.C.
- [5.4] Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), 2008, "Mooring Equipment Guidelines (MEG3)," 3rd Ed., London, England.
- [5.5] Department of Defense, 3 October 2005 (Change 2, 23 June 2016), Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-159-03, "Design: Moorings," Washington D.C.
- [5.6] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2016, ASCE/SEI 7-16 (ASCE/SEI 7), "Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures," Reston, VA.
- [5.7] Department of Defense, 12 December 2001 (Change 1, 19 October 2010), Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-150-06, "Military Harbors and Coastal Facilities," Washington D.C.
- [5.8] Kilner F.A., 1961, "Model Tests on the Motion of Moored Ships Placed on Long Waves." Proceedings of 7th Conference on Coastal Engineering, August 1960, The Hague, Netherlands, published by the Council on Wave Research - The Engineering Foundation.
- [5.9] Department of Defense, 24 January 2017, Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-152-01, "Design: Piers and Wharves," Washington D.C.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

## Division 6

### **SECTION 3106F GEOTECHNICAL HAZARDS AND FOUNDATIONS**

#### **3106F.1 General.**

**3106F.1.1 Purpose.** This section provides minimum standards for analyses and evaluation of geotechnical hazards and foundations under static and seismic conditions.

**3106F.1.2 Applicability.** The requirements provided herein apply to all new and existing MOTs.

**3106F.1.3 Loading.** The loading for geotechnical hazard assessment and foundation analyses under static and seismic conditions is provided in Sections 3103F and 3104F.

**3106F.2 Site characterization.** Site characterization shall be based on site-specific geotechnical information. If existing information is used, the geotechnical engineer of record shall provide adequate justification.

**3106F.2.1 Site classes.** Each MOT shall be assigned at least one site class. Site Classes A, B, C, D and E are defined in Table 31F-6-1, and Site Class F is defined by any of the following:

1. Soils vulnerable to significant potential loss of stiffness, strength and/or volume under seismic loading due to liquefiable soils, quick and highly sensitive clays and/or collapsible weakly cemented soils.
2. Peats and/or highly organic clays, where the thickness of peat or highly organic clay exceeds 10 feet.
3. Very high plasticity clays with a plasticity index (PI) greater than 75, where the thickness of clay exceeds 25 feet.
4. Very thick soft/medium stiff clays with undrained shear strength less than 1,000 psf, where the thickness of clay exceeds 120 feet.

#### **3106F.2.2 Site-specific information.**

1. Site-specific investigations shall include adequate borings and/or cone penetration tests (CPTs) and other appropriate field methods, to enable the determination of geotechnical parameters.

**TABLE 31F-6-1  
SITE CLASSES**

<b>SITE CLASS</b>	<b>SOIL PROFILE</b>	<b>AVERAGE VALUES FOR TOP 100 FEET OF SOIL PROFILE<sup>3</sup></b>		
		<b>Shear Wave Velocity, <math>V_s</math> [ft/sec]</b>	<b>Standard Penetration Test, SPT [blows/ft]</b>	<b>Undrained Shear Strength, <math>S_u</math> [psf]</b>
A	Hard Rock	> 5,000		
B	Rock	2,500 to 5,000		
C	Very Stiff/Very Dense Soil and Soft Rock	1,200 to 2,500	> 50	> 2,000
D	Soft/Dense Soil Profile	600 to 1,200	15 to 50	1,000 to 2,000
E <sup>1,2</sup>	Soft/Loose Soil Profile	< 600	< 15	< 1,000
F	Defined in Section 3106F.2.1			

1. Site Class E also includes any soil profile with more than 10 feet of soft clay (defined as a soil with a plasticity index, PI > 20, water content > 40 percent and  $S_u < 500$  psf).

2. The plasticity index, PI, and the moisture content shall be determined in accordance with ASTM D4318 [6.1] and ASTM D2216 [6.2], respectively.

3. Conversion of CPT data to estimate equivalent  $V_s$ , SPT blow count, or  $S_u$  is allowed.

low the procedures outlined in NCEER report [6.3], SCEC [6.4] and CGS Special Publication 117A [6.5].

If liquefaction is shown to be initiated in the above evaluations, the particular liquefiable strata and their thicknesses shall be clearly shown on site profiles. Resulting hazards associated with liquefaction shall be addressed including translational or rotational deformations of slopes or embankment systems and post liquefaction settlement of slopes or embankment systems and underlying foundation soils, as noted below. If such analyses indicate the potential for partial or gross (flow) failure of a slope or embankment, adequate evaluations shall be performed to confirm such a condition exists, together with analyses to evaluate potential slope displacements (lateral spreads). In these situations and for projects where more detailed numerical analyses are performed, a peer review (see Section 3101F.8.2) may be required.

**3106F.5 Slope or embankment stability and seismically induced lateral spreading.** Slope or embankment stability related to the MOT facility, shall be evaluated for static and seismic loading conditions.

**3106F.5.1 Static slope stability.** Static stability analysis using conventional limit equilibrium methods shall be performed for site related slope or embankment systems. Live load surcharge shall be considered in analyses based on project-specific information. The long-term static factor of safety of the slope or embankment shall not be less than 1.5.

**3106F.5.2 Pseudo-static seismic slope stability.** Pseudo-static seismic slope or embankment stability analyses shall be performed to estimate the horizontal yield acceleration for the slope for the Level 1 and Level 2 earthquakes. During the seismic event, appropriate live load surcharge shall be considered.

If liquefaction and/or strength loss of the site soils is likely, the following shall be used in the analyses, as appropriate:

1. Residual strength of liquefied soils
2. Strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils
3. Potential strength reduction of clays

The residual strength of liquefied soils shall be estimated using guidelines outlined in SCEC [6.4] or other appropriate documents as noted in CGS Special Publication 117A [6.5].

Pseudo-static analysis shall be performed without considering the presence of the foundation system. Using a horizontal seismic coefficient of one-half of the PGA, if the estimated factor of safety is greater than or equal to 1.1, then no further evaluation of lateral spreading or kinematic loading from lateral spreading is required.

**3106F.5.3 Post-earthquake static slope stability.** The static factor of safety immediately following a design earthquake event shall not be less than 1.1 when any of the following are used in static stability analysis:

1. Post-earthquake residual strength of liquefied soils

2. Strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils
3. Potential strength reduction of clays

**3106F.5.4 Lateral spreading – Free field.** The earthquake-induced lateral deformations of the slope or embankment and associated foundations soils shall be determined for the Level 1 and Level 2 earthquakes using the associated PGA at the ground surface (not modified for liquefaction). If liquefaction and/or strength loss of the site soils is likely, the following shall be used in the analyses, as appropriate:

1. Residual strength of liquefied soils
2. Strengths compatible with the pore-pressure generation of potentially liquefiable soils
3. Potential strength reduction of clays

The presence of the foundation system shall not be included in the “free field” evaluations.

Initial lateral spread estimates shall be made using the Newmark displacement approach documented in NCHRP Report 611 [6.6] or other appropriate but similar procedures.

**3106F.6 Seismically induced settlement.** Seismically induced settlement shall be evaluated. Based on guidelines outlined in SCEC [6.4] or other appropriate documents such as CGS Special Publication 117A [6.5]. If seismically induced settlement is anticipated, the resulting design impacts shall be considered, including the potential development of downdrag loads on piles.

**3106F.7 Earth pressures.** Both static and seismic earth pressures acting on MOT structures shall be evaluated.

**3106F.7.1 Earth pressures under static loading.** The effect of static active earth pressures on structures resulting from static loading of backfill soils shall be considered where appropriate. Backfill sloping configuration, if applicable, and backland loading conditions shall be considered in the evaluations. The loading considerations shall be based on project-specific information. The earth pressures under static loading should be based on guidelines outlined in NAVFAC DM7-02 [6.7] or other appropriate documents.

**3106F.7.2 Earth pressures under seismic loading.** The effect of earth pressures on structures resulting from seismic loading of backfill soils, including the effect of pore-water pressure build-up in the backfill, shall be considered. The seismic coefficients used for this analysis shall be based on the Level 1 and Level 2 earthquake PGA values.

Evaluation of earth pressures under seismic loading, should be based on NCHRP Report 611 [6.6] or other appropriate methods.

**3106F.8 Pile axial behavior.**

**3106F.8.1 Axial pile capacity.** Axial geotechnical capacity of piles under static loading shall be evaluated using guidelines for estimating axial pile capacities provided in POLB WDC [6.8] or other appropriate documents. A min-

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

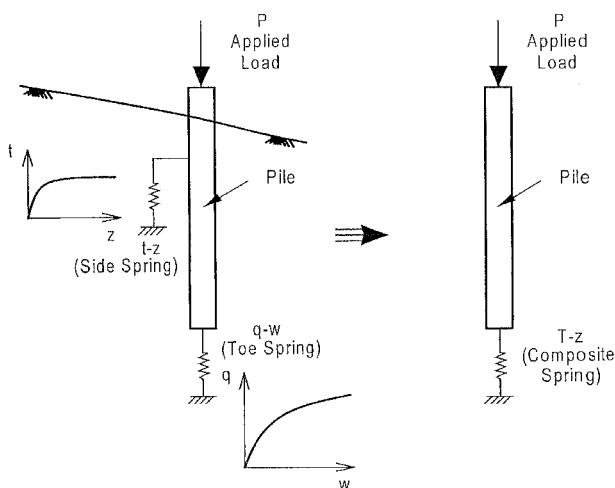
imum factor of safety of 2.0 shall be achieved on the ultimate capacity of the pile using appropriate MOT loading.

If liquefaction or seismically-induced settlement is anticipated, the ultimate axial geotechnical capacity of piles under seismic conditions shall be evaluated for the effects of liquefaction and/or downdrag forces on the pile. The ultimate geotechnical capacity of the pile during liquefaction shall be determined on the basis of the residual strength of the soil for those layers where the factor of safety for liquefaction is determined to be less than 1.0.

When seismically-induced settlements are predicted to occur during design earthquakes, the downdrag loads shall be computed, and the combination of downdrag load and static load determined. Only the tip resistance of the pile and the side friction resistance below the lowest layer contributing to the downdrag shall be used in the capacity evaluation. The ultimate axial geotechnical capacity of the pile shall not be less than the combination of the seismically induced downdrag force and the maximum static load.

**3106F.8.2 Axial springs for piles.** The geotechnical analyst (see Section 3102F.3.4.8) shall coordinate with the structural analyst (see Section 3102F.3.4.4) and develop axial springs ( $T-z$ ) for piles. The  $T-z$  springs may be developed either at the top or at the tip of the pile (see Figure 31F-6-1). If the springs are developed at the pile tip, the tip shall include both the friction resistance along the pile (i.e., side springs [ $t-z$ ]) and tip resistance at the pile tip (i.e. tip springs [ $q-w$ ]), as illustrated in Figure 31F-6-1. If  $T-z$  springs are developed at the pile top, the appropriate elastic shortening of the pile shall be included in the springs. Linear or nonlinear springs may be developed if requested by the structural analyst.

Due to the uncertainties associated with the development of axial springs, such as the axial soil capacities, load distributions along the piles and simplified spring stiffnesses, both upper-bound and lower-bound limits shall be estimated and utilized in the analyses.



**FIGURE 31F-6-1  
AXIAL SOIL SPRINGS [6.8]**

**3106F.9 Soil springs for lateral pile loading.** For design of piles under loading associated with the inertial response of the superstructure, level-ground inelastic lateral springs ( $p-y$ ) shall be developed. The lateral springs within the shallow portion of the piles (generally within 10 pile diameters below the ground surface) tend to dominate the inertial behavior. Geotechnical parameters for developing lateral soil springs shall follow guidelines provided in API RP 2A-WSD [6.9] or other appropriate documents.

Due to uncertainties associated with the development of  $p-y$  curves for dike structures, upper-bound and lower-bound  $p-y$  springs shall be developed for use in superstructure inertial response analyses.

**3106F.10 Soil-pile interaction.** Two separate loading conditions for the piles shall be considered:

1. Inertial loading under seismic conditions
2. Kinematic loading from lateral ground spreading

Inertial loading is associated with earthquake-induced lateral loading on a structure, while kinematic loading refers to loading on foundation piles from earthquake induced lateral deformations of the slope/embankment/dike system. Simultaneous application of these loading conditions shall be evaluated with due consideration of the phasing and locations of these loads on foundation elements. The foundation shall be designed such that the structural performance is acceptable when subjected to both inertial and kinematic loadings.

**3106F.10.1 Inertial loading under seismic conditions.** The lateral soil springs shall be used in inertial loading response analyses. The evaluation of inertial loading can be performed by ignoring potential slope/embankment/dike system deformations (i.e., one end of the lateral soil spring at a given depth is attached to the corresponding pile node and the other end is assumed fixed).

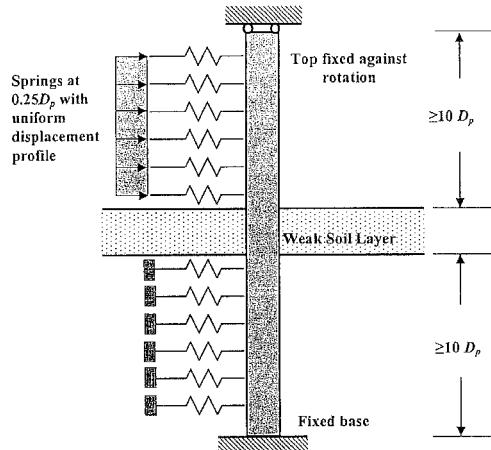
**3106F.10.2 Kinematic loading from lateral spreading.** Kinematic pile loading from permanent lateral spread ground deformation in deep seated levels of slope/embankment/dike foundation soils shall be evaluated. The lateral deformations shall be restricted such that the structural performance of foundation piles is not compromised.

The lateral deformation of the embankment or dike and associated piles and foundation soils shall be determined using analytical methods as follows:

1. Initial estimates of free field lateral spread deformations (in the absence of piles) may be determined using the simplified Newmark sliding block method as described in Section 3106F.5.4. The geotechnical analyst shall provide the structural analyst with level-ground  $p-y$  curves for the weak soil layer controlling the lateral spread and soil layers above and below the weak layer. Appropriate overburden pressures shall be used in simplified pushover analyses, to estimate the pile displacement capacities and corresponding pile shear within the weak soil zone.
2. For the pushover analysis, the estimated displacements may be uniformly distributed within the thickness of the weak soil layer (i.e., zero at and below the bottom of the layer to the maximum value at and

above the top of the weak layer). The thickness of the weak soil layer used in the analysis (failure zone) shall not be more than five times the pile diameter or 10 feet, whichever is smaller.

- For a simplified analysis (see Figure 31F-6-2), the pile shall be fixed against rotation and translation relative to the soil displacement at some distance above and below the weak soil layer. Between these two points, lateral soil springs are provided, which allow deformation of the pile relative to the deformed soil profile.



**FIGURE 31F-6-2  
SLIDING LAYER MODEL [6.8]**

#### 3106F.11 Soil-structure interaction – Shallow foundations and underground structures.

**3106F.11.1 Shallow foundations.** Shallow foundations shall be assumed to move with the ground. Springs and dashpots may be evaluated as per Gazetas [6.10].

**3106F.11.2 Underground structures.** Buried flexible structures or buried portions of flexible structures including piles and pipelines shall be assumed to deform with estimated ground movement at depth.

As the soil settles, it shall be assumed to apply shear forces to buried structures or buried portions of structures including deep foundations.

**3106F.12 Underwater seafloor pipelines.** Geotechnical evaluations of underwater pipelines shall include static stability of the seafloor ground supporting the pipeline and settlement and lateral deformation of the ground under earthquakes. If the pipeline is buried, the potential for uplift of the pipeline under earthquakes shall also be evaluated.

#### 3106F.13 Symbols.

- A = Site Class A as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- B = Site Class B as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- C = Site Class C as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- CPT = Cone Penetration Test
- D = Site Class D as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- $D_p$  = Pile diameter

- E = Site Class E as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- F = Site Class F as defined in Table 31F-6-1
- P = Applied load
- PI = Plasticity index
- p-y = Lateral soil spring
- $S_u$  = Undrained shear strength
- SPT = Standard Penetration Test
- t-z = Axial soil spring along the side of pile
- T-z = Composite axial soil spring at pile tip
- q-w = Axial soil spring at pile tip
- $V_s$  = Shear wave velocity

#### 3106F.14 References.

- [6.1] American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), 2014, ASTM D4318-10 (ASTM D4318), "Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils," West Conshohocken, PA.
- [6.2] American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), 2014, ASTM D2216-10 (ASTM D2216), "Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass," West Conshohocken, PA.
- [6.3] Youd, T.L., Idriss, I.M., Andrus, R.D., Arango, I., Castro, G., Christian, J.T., Dobry, R., Finn, W.D.L., Harder, L.F. Jr., Hynes, M.E., Ishihara, K., Koester, J.P., Liao, S.S.C., Marcuson, W.F., III, Martin, G.R., Mitchell, J.K., Moriwaki, Y., Power, M.S., Robertson, P.K., Seed, R.B., and Stokoe, K.H., II, 2001, "Liquefaction Resistance of Soils: Summary Report from the 1996 NCEER and 1998 NCEER/NSF Workshops on Evaluation of Liquefaction Resistance of Soils," Journal of Geotechnical and Geoenvironmental Engineering, ASCE, Volume 127, No. 10, p. 817-833.
- [6.4] Southern California Earthquake Center (SCEC), March 1999, "Recommended Procedures for Implementation of DMG Special Publication 117 Guidelines for Analyzing and Mitigating Liquefaction in California," University of Southern California, Los Angeles.
- [6.5] California Department of Conservation, California Geological Survey (CGS), 11 September 2008, "Guidelines for Evaluating and Mitigating Seismic Hazards in California," Special Publication 117A, Revised Release.
- [6.6] National Cooperative Highway Research Program (NCHRP), 2008, "NCHRP Report 611: Seismic Analysis and Design of Retaining Walls, Buried Structures, Slopes, and Embankments," Washington, D.C.
- [6.7] Naval Facilities Engineering Command (NAVFAC), 1986, NAVFAC DM7-02, "Foundation and Earth Structures," Alexandria, VA.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

- [6.8] Port of Long Beach (POLB), 2012 February 29, "Wharf Design Criteria (WDC)," Version 3.0, Long Beach, CA.
- [6.9] American Petroleum Institute (API), November 2014, API Recommended Practice 2A-WSD (API RP 2A-WSD), "Recommended Practice for Planning, Designing and Constructing Fixed Offshore Platforms – Working Stress Design," 22nd ed., Washington, D.C.
- [6.10] Gazetas, G., September 1991, "Formulas and Charts for Impedances of Surface and Embedded Foundations," Journal of Geotechnical Engineering, ASCE, Vol. 117, No. 9.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## Division 7

### **SECTION 3107F STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS AND DESIGN OF COMPONENTS**

#### **3107F.1 General.**

**3107F.1.1 Purpose.** This section establishes the minimum performance standards for structural and nonstructural components. Evaluation procedures for seismic performance, strength and deformation characteristics of concrete, steel and timber components are prescribed herein. Analytical procedures for seismic assessment are presented in Section 3104F.

**3107F.1.2 Applicability.** This section addresses MOT structures constructed using the following structural components:

1. Reinforced concrete decks supported by batter and/or vertical concrete piles
2. Reinforced concrete decks supported by batter and/or vertical steel piles, including pipe piles filled with concrete
3. Reinforced concrete decks supported by batter and/or vertical timber piles
4. Timber decks supported by batter or vertical timber, concrete or steel pipe piles
5. Retaining structures constructed of steel, concrete sheet piles or reinforced concrete

Additionally, this section addresses structural and non-structural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures comprised of steel, concrete or timber.

#### **3107F.2 Concrete deck with concrete or steel piles.**

**3107F.2.1 Component strength.** The following parameters shall be established in order to compute the component strength:

1. Specified concrete compressive strengths
2. Concrete and steel modulus of elasticity
3. Yield and tensile strength of mild reinforcing and prestressed steel and corresponding strains
4. Confinement steel strength and corresponding strains
5. Embedment length
6. Concrete cover
7. Yield and tensile strength of structural steel
8. Ductility

In addition, for "existing" components, the following conditions shall be considered:

9. Environmental effects, such as reinforcing steel corrosion, concrete spalling, cracking and chemical attack
10. Fire damage

11. Past and current loading effects, including over-load, fatigue or fracture
12. Earthquake damage
13. Discontinuous components
14. Construction deficiencies

**3107F.2.1.1 Material properties.** Material properties of existing components, not determined from testing procedures, and of new components, shall be established using the following methodology.

The strength of structural components shall be evaluated based on the following values (Section 5.3 of [7.1] and pp. 3-73 and 3-74 of [7.2]):

Specified material strength shall be used for non-ductile components (shear controlled), all mechanical, electrical and mooring equipment (attachments to the deck) and for all non seismic load combinations:

$$f'_c = 1.0 f_c' \quad (7-1a)$$

$$f_y' = 1.0 f_y \quad (7-1b)$$

$$f_p' = 1.0 f_p \quad (7-1c)$$

In addition, these values (7-1a, 7-1b and 7-1c) may be used conservatively as alternatives to determine the nominal strength of ductile components ( $N$ ).

Expected lower bound estimates of material strength shall be used for determination of moment-curvature relations and nominal strength of all ductile components:

$$f'_c = 1.3 f_c' \quad (7-2a)$$

$$f_y' = 1.1 f_y \quad (7-2b)$$

$$f_p' = 1.0 f_p \quad (7-2c)$$

Upper bound estimates of material strength shall be used for the determination of moment-curvature relations, to obtain the feasible maximum demand on capacity protected members.

$$f'_c = 1.7 f_c' \quad (7-3a)$$

$$f_y' = 1.3 f_y \quad (7-3b)$$

$$f_p' = 1.1 f_p \quad (7-3c)$$

**where:**

$f'_c$  = Specified compressive strength of concrete

$f_y'$  = Specified yield strength of reinforcement or specified minimum yield stress steel

$f_p'$  = Specified yield strength of prestress strands

"Capacity Design" (Section 5.3 of [7.1]) ensures that the strength at protected components (such as pile caps and decks), joints and actions (such as shear), is greater than the maximum feasible demand (over strength), based on realistic upper bound estimates of plastic hinge flexural strength. An additional series of nonlinear analyses using moment curvature characteristics of pile hinges may be required.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

Alternatively, if a moment-curvature analysis is performed that takes into account the strain hardening of the steel, the demands used to evaluate the capacity protected components may be estimated by multiplying the moment-curvature values by 1.25.

Based on a historical review of the building materials used in the twentieth century, guidelines for tensile and yield properties of concrete reinforcing bars and the compressive strength of structural concrete have been established (see Tables 10-2 to 10-4 of ASCE/SEI 41 [7.3]). The values shown in these tables can be used as default properties, only if as-built information is not available and testing is not performed. The values in Tables 31F-7-1 and 31F-7-2, are adjusted according to Equations (7-1) through (7-3).

**3107F.2.1.2 Knowledge factor (*k*).** Knowledge factor, *k*, shall be applied on a component basis.

The following information is required, at a minimum, for a component strength assessment:

1. Original construction records, including drawings and specifications.
2. A set of "as-built" drawings and/or sketches, documenting both gravity and lateral systems (Section 3102F.1.5) and any postconstruction modification data.
3. A visual condition survey, for structural components including identification of the size, location and connections of these components.

**TABLE 31F-7-1  
COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH OF STRUCTURAL CONCRETE (psi)<sup>1</sup>**

TIME FRAME	PILING	BEAMS	SLABS
1900-1919	2,500-3,000	2,000-3,000	1,500-3,000
1920-1949	3,000-4,000	2,000-3,000	2,000-3,000
1950-1965	4,000-5,000	3,000-4,000	3,000-4,000
1966-present	5,000-6,000	3,000-5,000	3,000-5,000

1. Concrete strengths are likely to be highly variable for an older structure.

**TABLE 31F-7-2  
TENSILE AND YIELD PROPERTIES OF REINFORCING BARS FOR VARIOUS ASTM SPECIFICATIONS AND PERIODS  
(after Table 6-2 of [7.3])**

ASTM	STEEL TYPE	YEAR RANGE <sup>3</sup>	GRADE	STRUCTURAL <sup>1</sup>	INTERMEDIATE <sup>1</sup>	HARD <sup>1</sup>			
				33	40	50	60	70	75
				Minimum Yield <sup>2</sup> (psi)	33,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000
A15	Billet	1911-1966		X	X	X			
A16	Rail <sup>4</sup>	1913-1966				X			
A61	Rail <sup>4</sup>	1963-1966						X	
A160	Axle	1936-1964		X	X	X			
A160	Axle	1965-1966		X	X	X	X		
A408	Billet	1957-1966		X	X	X			
A431	Billet	1959-1966							X
A432	Billet	1959-1966						X	
A615	Billet	1968-1972			X		X		X
A615	Billet	1974-1986			X		X		
A615	Billet	1987-1997			X		X		X
A616	Rail <sup>4</sup>	1968-1997						X	
A617	Axle	1968-1997			X		X		
A706	Low-Alloy <sup>5</sup>	1974-1997							X
A955	Stainless	1996-1997			X		X		X

General Note: An entry "X" indicates that grade was available in those years.

1. The terms structural, intermediate and hard became obsolete in 1968.
2. Actual yield and tensile strengths may exceed minimum values.
3. Until about 1920, a variety of proprietary reinforcing steels were used. Yield strengths are likely to be in the range from 33,000 psi to 55,000 psi, but higher values are possible. Plain and twisted square bars were sometimes used between 1900 and 1949.
4. Rail bars should be marked with the letter "R."
5. ASTM steel is marked with the letter "W."

4. In the absence of material properties, values from limited in-situ testing or conservative estimates of material properties (Tables 31F-7-1 and 31F-7-2).
5. Assessment of component conditions, from an in-situ evaluation, including any observable deterioration.
6. Detailed geotechnical information, based on recent test data, including risk of liquefaction, lateral spreading and slope stability.

The knowledge factor,  $k$ , is 1.0 when comprehensive knowledge as specified above is utilized. Otherwise, the knowledge factor shall be 0.75 (see Section 5.2.6 of ASCE/SEI 41 [7.3]).

**3107F.2.2 Component stiffness.** Stiffness that takes into account the stress and deformation levels experienced by the component shall be used. Nonlinear load-deformation relations shall be used to represent the component load-deformation response. However, in lieu of using nonlinear methods to establish the stiffness and moment curvature relation of structural components, the equations of Table 31F-7-3 may be used to approximate the effective elastic stiffness,  $EI_e$ , for lateral analyses (see Section 3107F.8 for definition of symbols).

**TABLE 31F-7-3  
EFFECTIVE ELASTIC STIFFNESS**

CONCRETE COMPONENT	$EI_e/EI_g$
Reinforced Pile	$0.3 + N/(f'_c A_g)$
Pile/Deck Dowel Connection <sup>1</sup>	$0.3 + N/(f'_c A_g)$
Prestressed Pile <sup>1</sup>	$0.6 < EI_e/EI_g < 0.75$
Steel Pile	1.0
Concrete w/ Steel Casing	$\frac{E_s I_s + 0.25 E_c I_c}{(E_s I_s + E_c I_c)}$
Deck	0.5

1. The pile/deck connection and prestressed pile may also be approximated as one member with an average stiffness of  $0.42 EI_e/EI_g$  (Ferritto et al, 1999 [7.2]).

$N$  = is the axial load level.

$E_s$  = Young's modulus for steel

$I_s$  = Moment of inertia for steel section

$E_c$  = Young's modulus for concrete

$I_c$  = Moment of inertia for uncracked concrete section

**3107F.2.3 Deformation capacity of flexural members.** Stress-strain models for confined and unconfined concrete, mild and prestressed steel presented in Section 3107F.2.4 shall be used to perform the moment-curvature analysis.

The stress-strain characteristics of steel piles shall be based on the actual steel properties. If as-built information is not available, the stress-strain relationship may be obtained per Section 3107F.2.4.2.

For concrete in-filled steel piles, the stress-strain model for confined concrete shall be in accordance with Section 3107F.2.4.1.

Each structural component expected to undergo inelastic deformation shall be defined by its moment-curvature

relation. The displacement demand and capacity shall be calculated per Sections 3104F.2 and 3104F.3, as appropriate.

The moment-rotation relationship for concrete components shall be derived from the moment-curvature analysis per Section 3107F.2.5.4 and shall be used to determine lateral displacement limitations of the design. Connection details shall be examined per Section 3107F.2.7.

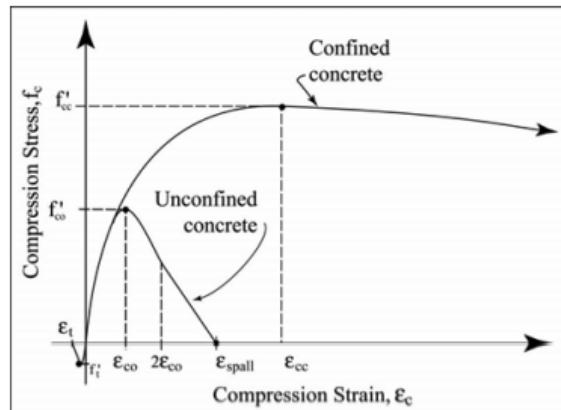
### 3107F.2.4 Stress-Strain models.

**3107F.2.4.1 Concrete.** The stress-strain model and terms for confined and unconfined concrete are shown in Figure 31F-7-1.

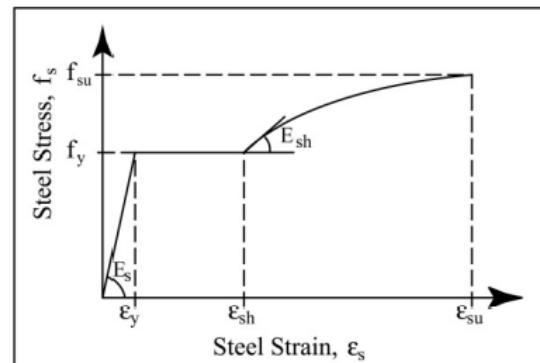
**3107F.2.4.2 Reinforcement steel and structural steel.** The stress-strain model and terms for reinforcing and structural steel are shown in Figure 31F-7-2.

**3107F.2.4.3 Prestressed steel.** The stress-strain model of Blakeley and Park [7.4] may be used for prestressed steel. The model and terms are illustrated in Figure 31F-7-3.

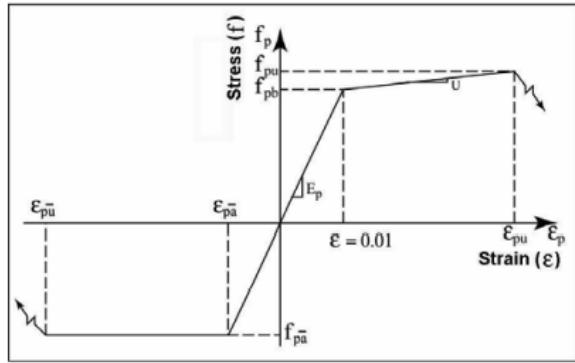
**3107F.2.4.4 Alternative stress-strain models.** Alternative stress-strain models are acceptable if adequately documented and supported by test results, subject to Division approval.



**FIGURE 31F-7-1  
STRESS-STRAIN CURVES FOR CONFINED AND UNCONFINED CONCRETE [7.1]**



**FIGURE 31F-7-2  
STRESS-STRAIN CURVE FOR MILD REINFORCING STEEL OR STRUCTURAL STEEL [7.1]**



**FIGURE 31F-7-3**  
**STRESS-STRAIN CURVE FOR PRESTRESSED STEEL [7.4]**

### 3107F.2.5 Concrete piles.

**3107F.2.5.1 General.** The capacity of concrete piles is based on permissible concrete and steel strains corresponding to the desired performance criteria.

Different values may apply for plastic hinges forming at in-ground and pile-top locations. These procedures are applicable to circular, octagonal, rectangular and square pile cross sections.

**3107F.2.5.2 Stability.** Stability considerations are important to pier-type structures. The moment-axial load interaction shall consider effects of high slenderness ratios ( $kl/r$ ). An additional bending moment due to axial load eccentricity shall be incorporated unless:

$$e/h \leq 0.10 \quad (7-4)$$

where:

$e$  = eccentricity of axial load

$h$  = width of pile in considered direction

**3107F.2.5.3 Plastic hinge length.** The plastic hinge length is required to convert the moment-curvature relationship into a moment-plastic rotation relationship for the nonlinear pushover analysis.

The pile's plastic hinge length,  $L_p$  (above ground) for reinforced concrete piles, when the plastic hinge forms against a supporting member is:

$$L_p = 0.08L + 0.15f_{ye}d_b \geq 0.3f_{ye}d_b \quad (7-5)$$

where:

$L$  = distance from the critical section of the plastic hinge to the point of contraflexure

$d_b$  = diameter of the longitudinal reinforcement or dowel, whichever is used to develop the connection

$f_{ye}$  = design yield strength of longitudinal reinforcement or dowel, whichever is used to develop the connection (ksi)

If a large reduction in moment capacity occurs due to spalling, then the plastic hinge length shall be:

$$L_p = 0.3f_{ye}d_b \quad (7-6)$$

The plastic hinge length,  $L_p$  (above ground), for prestressed concrete piles may also be computed from Table 31F-7-4 for permitted pile-to-deck connections as described in ASCE/COPRI 61 [7.5].

When the plastic hinge forms in-ground, the plastic hinge length may be determined using Equation (7-7) [7.5]:

$$L_p = 2D \quad (7-7)$$

where:

$D$  = pile diameter or least cross-sectional dimension

**TABLE 31F-7-4**  
**PLASTIC HINGE LENGTH FOR PRESTRESSED CONCRETE PILES [7.5]**

CONNECTION TYPE	$L_p$ AT DECK (in.)
Pile Buildup	$0.15f_{ye}d_b \leq L_p \leq 0.30f_{ye}d_b$
Extended Strand	$0.20f_{pye}d_{st}$
Embedded Pile	$0.5D$
Dowelled	$0.25f_{ye}d_b$
Hollow Dowelled	$0.20f_{ye}d_b$
External Confinement	$0.30f_{ye}d_b$
Isolated Interface	$0.25f_{ye}d_b$

$d_b$  = diameter of the prestressing strand or dowel, whichever is used to develop the connection (in.)

$f_{ye}$  = design yield strength of prestressing strand or dowel, as appropriate (ksi)

$D$  = pile diameter or least cross-sectional dimension

$d_{st}$  = diameter of the prestressing strand (in.)

$f_{pye}$  = design yield strength of prestressing strand (ksi)

**3107F.2.5.4 Plastic rotation.** The plastic rotation is:

$$\theta_p = L_p \phi_p = L_p (\phi_m - \phi_y) \quad (7-8)$$

where:

$L_p$  = plastic hinge length

$\phi_p$  = plastic curvature

$\phi_m$  = maximum curvature

$\phi_y$  = yield curvature

The maximum curvature,  $\phi_m$  shall be determined by the concrete or steel strain limit state at the prescribed performance level, whichever comes first.

Alternatively, the maximum curvature,  $\phi_m$  may be calculated as:

$$\phi_m = \frac{\epsilon_{cm}}{c_u} \quad (7-9)$$

where:

$\epsilon_{cm}$  = maximum limiting compression strain for the prescribed performance level (Table 31F-7-5)

$c_u$  = neutral-axis depth, at ultimate strength of section

**TABLE 31F-7-5  
LIMITS OF STRAIN**

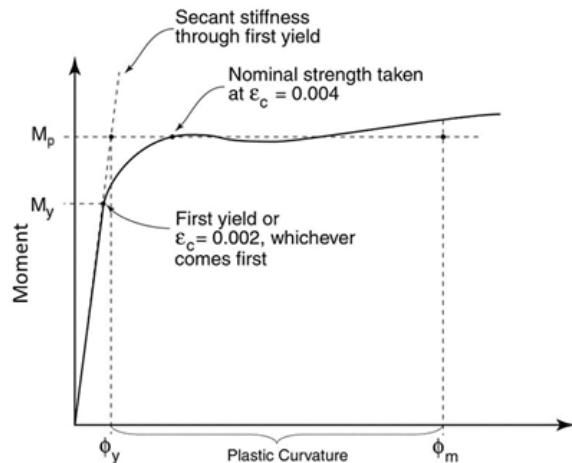
COMPONENT STRAIN	LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2
MCCS Pile/deck hinge	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.025$
MCCS In-ground hinge	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.004$	$\epsilon_c \leq 0.008$
MRSTS Pile/deck hinge	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.01$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.05$
MRSTS In-ground hinge	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.01$	$\epsilon_s \leq 0.025$
MPSTS In-ground hinge	$\epsilon_p \leq 0.005$ (incremental)	$\epsilon_p \leq 0.025$ (total strain)

MCCS = Maximum Concrete Compression Strain,  $\epsilon_c$ MRSTS = Maximum Reinforcing Steel Tension Strain,  $\epsilon_s$ MPSTS = Maximum Prestressing Steel Tension Strain,  $\epsilon_p$ 

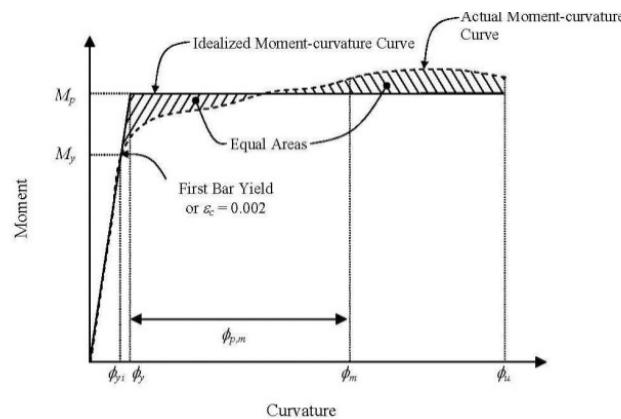
Either Method A or B may be used for idealization of the moment-curvature curve.

**3107F.2.5.4.1 Method A.** For Method A, the yield curvature,  $\phi_y$  is the curvature at the intersection of the secant stiffness,  $EI_c$  through first yield and the nominal strength, ( $\epsilon_c = 0.004$ ).

$$\phi_y = \frac{M_y}{EI_c} \quad (7-10)$$

**FIGURE 31F-7-4  
METHOD A – MOMENT CURVATURE ANALYSIS**

**3107F.2.5.4.2 Method B.** For Method B, the elastic portion of the idealized moment-curvature curve is the same as in Method A (see Section 3107F.2.5.4.1). However, the idealized plastic moment capacity,  $M_p$ , and the yield curvature,  $\phi_y$ , is obtained by balancing the areas between the actual and the idealized moment-curvature curves beyond the first yield point (see Figure 31F-7-5). Method B applies to moment-curvature curves that do not experience reduction in section moment capacity.

**FIGURE 31F-7-5  
METHOD B – MOMENT CURVATURE ANALYSIS [7.6]**

**3107F.2.5.5 Ultimate concrete and steel flexural strains.** Strain values computed in the nonlinear push-over analysis shall be compared to the following limits.

**3107F.2.5.5.1 Unconfined concrete piles:** An unconfined concrete pile is defined as a pile having no confinement steel or one in which the spacing of the confinement steel exceeds 12 inches.

Ultimate concrete compressive strain:

$$\epsilon_{cu} = 0.005 \quad (7-11)$$

**3107F.2.5.5.2 Confined concrete piles:** Ultimate concrete compressive strain [7.1]:

$$\epsilon_{cu} = 0.004 + (1.4\rho_s f_{yh} \epsilon_{sm})/f'_{cc} \geq 0.005 \quad (7-12)$$

$$\epsilon_{cu} \leq 0.025$$

where:

$\rho_s$  = effective volume ratio of confining steel

$f_{yh}$  = yield stress of confining steel

$\epsilon_{sm}$  = strain at peak stress of confining reinforcement, 0.15 for grade 40, 0.10 for grade 60

$f'_{cc}$  = confined strength of concrete approximated by  $1.5f'_c$

**3107F.2.5.6 Component acceptance/damage criteria.** The maximum allowable concrete strains may not exceed the ultimate values defined in Section 3107F.2.5.5. The limiting values (Table 31F-7-5) apply for each performance level for both existing and new structures. The "Level 1 or 2" refer to the seismic performance criteria (see Section 3104F.2.1).

For all non-seismic loading combinations, concrete components shall be designed in accordance with the ACI 318 [7.7] requirements.

Note that for existing facilities, the pile/deck hinge may be controlled by the capacity of the dowel reinforcement in accordance with Section 3107F.2.7.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**3107F.2.5.7 Shear design.** If expected lower bound of material strength Section 3107F.2.1.1 Equations (7-2a, 7-2b, 7-2c) are used in obtaining the nominal shear strength, a new nonlinear analysis utilizing the upper bound estimate of material strength Section 3107F.2.1.1 Equations (7-3a, 7-3b, 7-3c) shall be used to obtain the plastic hinge shear demand. An alternative conservative approach is to multiply the maximum shear demand,  $V_{max}$  from the original analysis by 1.4 (Section 8.16.4.4.2 of ATC-32 [7.8]):

$$V_{design} = 1.4V_{max} \quad (7-13)$$

If moment curvature analysis that takes into account strain-hardening, an uncertainty factor of 1.25 may be used:

$$V_{design} = 1.25V_{max} \quad (7-14)$$

Shear capacity shall be based on nominal material strengths, and reduction factors according to ACI 318 [7.7].

As an alternative, the method of Kowalski and Priestley [7.9] may be used. Their method is based on a three-parameter model with separate contributions to shear strength from concrete ( $V_c$ ), transverse reinforcement ( $V_s$ ), and axial load ( $V_p$ ) to obtain nominal shear strength ( $V_n$ ):

$$V_n = V_c + V_s + V_p \quad (7-15)$$

A shear strength reduction factor of 0.85 shall be applied to the nominal strength,  $V_n$ , to determine the design shear strength. Therefore:

$$V_{design} \leq 0.85V_n \quad (7-16)$$

The equations to determine  $V_c$ ,  $V_s$  and  $V_p$  are:

$$V_c = k\sqrt{f'_c}A_e \quad (7-17)$$

where:

$k$  = factor dependent on the curvature ductility  $\mu_\phi = \frac{\phi}{\phi_y}$ , within the plastic hinge region, from Figure 31F-7-6. For regions greater than  $2D_p$  (see Equation 7-18) from the plastic hinge location, the strength can be based on  $m_f = 1.0$  (see Ferritto et. al. [7.2]).

$f'_c$  = concrete compressive strength

$A_e = 0.8A_g$  is the effective shear area

Circular spirals or hoops [7.2]:

$$V_s = \frac{\frac{\pi}{2}A_{sp}f_{yh}(D_p - c - c_o)\cot(\theta)}{s} \quad (7-18)$$

where:

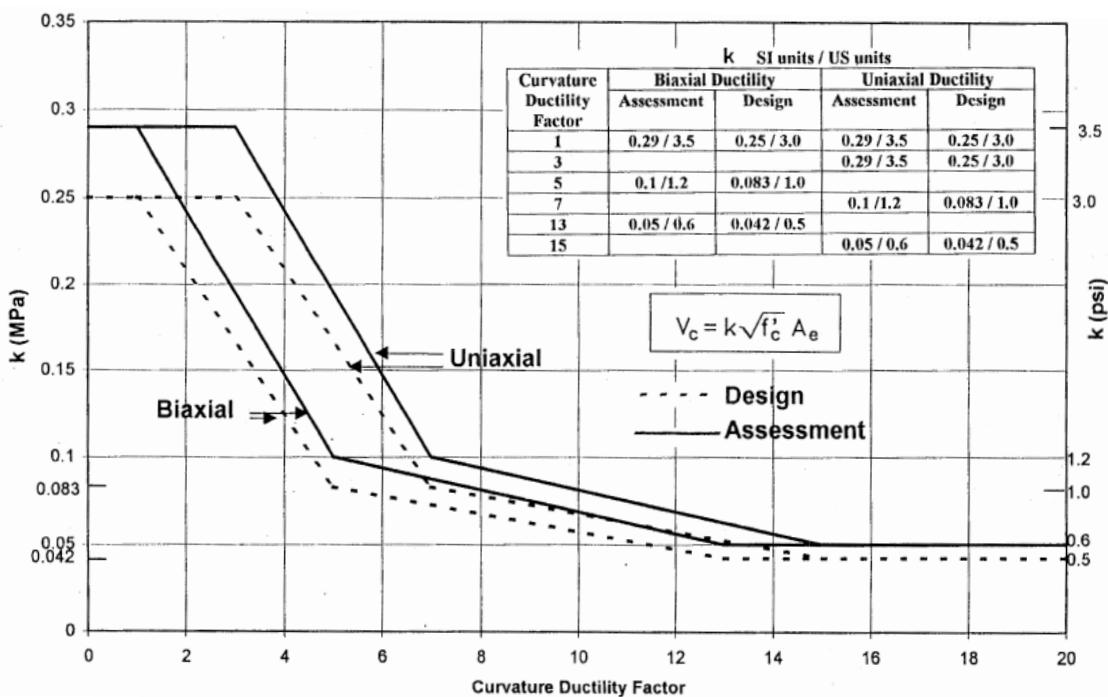
$A_{sp}$  = spiral or hoop cross section area

$f_{yh}$  = yield strength of transverse or hoop reinforcement

$D_p$  = pile diameter or gross depth (in case of a rectangular pile with spiral confinement)

$c$  = depth from extreme compression fiber to neutral axis (N.A.) at flexural strength (see Figure 31F-7-7)

$c_o$  = distance from concrete cover to center of hoop or spiral (see Figure 31F-7-7)



**FIGURE 31F-7-6  
CONCRETE SHEAR MECHANISM**  
(from Fig. 3-30 of [7.2])

$\theta$  = angle of critical crack to the pile axis (see Figure 31F-7-7) taken as  $30^\circ$  for existing structures, and  $35^\circ$  for new design  
 $s$  = spacing of hoops or spiral along the pile axis

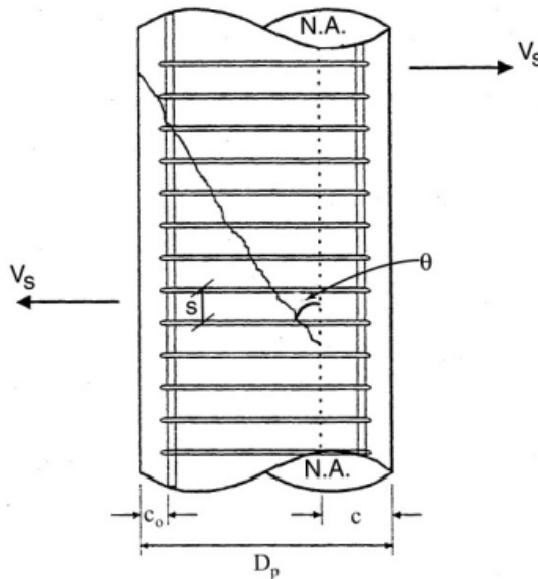


FIGURE 31F-7-7  
TRANSVERSE SHEAR MECHANISM

Rectangular hoops or spirals [7.2]:

$$V_s = \frac{A_h f_{vh} (D_p - c - c_o) \cot(\theta)}{s} \quad (7-19)$$

where:

$A_h$  = total area of transverse reinforcement, parallel to direction of applied shear cut by an inclined shear crack

Shear strength from axial mechanism,  $V_p$  (see Figure 31F-7-8):

$$V_p = \Phi (N_u + F_p) \tan \alpha \quad (7-20)$$

where:

$N_u$  = external axial compression on pile including seismic load. Compression is taken as positive; tension as negative

$F_p$  = prestress compressive force in pile

$\alpha$  = angle between line joining centers of flexural compression in the deck/pile and in-ground hinges, and the pile axis

$\Phi$  = 1.0 for existing structures, and 0.85 for new design

#### 3107F.2.6 Steel piles.

**3107F.2.6.1 General.** The capacity of steel piles is based on allowable strains corresponding to the desired performance criteria and design earthquake.

**3107F.2.6.2 Stability.** Section 3107F.2.5.2 applies to steel piles.

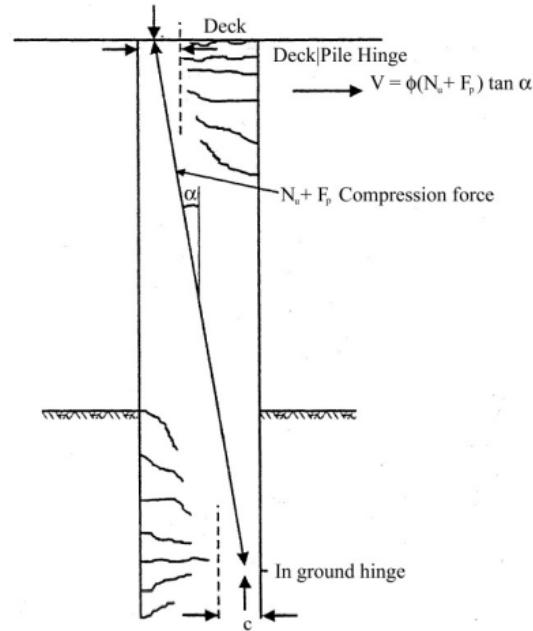


FIGURE 31F-7-8  
AXIAL FORCE SHEAR MECHANISM

**3107F.2.6.3 Plastic hinge length.** The plastic hinge length,  $L_p$  (above ground), for steel piles may be computed from Table 31F-7-6 for pile-to-deck connections.

When the plastic hinge forms in-ground, the plastic hinge length may be determined using Equation (7-21) [7.5]:

$$L_p = 2D \quad (7-21)$$

where:

$D$  = pile diameter

TABLE 31F-7-6  
PLASTIC HINGE LENGTH FOR STEEL PILES [7.5]

CONNECTION TYPE	$L_p$ AT DECK (in.)
Embedded Pile	$0.5D$
Concrete Plug	$0.30f_{ye}d_b$
Isolated Shell	$0.30f_{ye}d_b + g$
Welded Embed	$0.5D$

$d_b$  = diameter of the dowel (in.)

$f_{ye}$  = design yield strength of dowel (ksi)

$D$  = pile diameter (in.)

$g$  = gap distance from bottom of the deck to edge of pipe pile or external confinement (in.)

**3107F.2.6.4 Ultimate flexural strain capacity.** The following limiting value applies:

Strain at extreme-fiber,  $\epsilon_u \leq 0.035$

**3107F.2.6.5 Component acceptance/damage criteria.** The maximum allowable strain may not exceed the ultimate value defined in Section 3107F.2.6.4. Table 31F-7-7 provides limiting strain values for each performance level, for both new and existing structures.

Steel components for noncompact hollow piles ( $D_p/t < 0.07 \times E/f_y$ ) and for all nonseismic loading combinations shall be designed in accordance with AISC 325 [7.10].

**TABLE 31F-7-7**  
**STRUCTURAL STEEL STRAIN LIMITS,  $\epsilon_u$**

COMPONENTS	LEVEL 1	LEVEL 2
Concrete Filled Pipe	0.008	0.030
Hollow Pipe	0.008	0.025

Level 1 or 2 refer to the seismic performance criteria (Section 3104F.2.1).

**3107F.2.6.6 Shear design.** The procedures of Section 3107F.2.5.7, which are used to establish  $V_{design}$  are applicable to steel piles.

The shear capacity shall be established from the AISC 325 [7.10]. For concrete filled pipe, Equation (7-15) may be used to determine shear capacity; however,  $V_{pile}$  must be substituted for  $V_s$ .

$$V_{pile} = (\pi/2) t f_{y,pile} (D_p - c - c_o) \cot \theta \quad (7-22)$$

where:

$t$  = steel pile wall thickness

$f_{y,pile}$  = yield strength of steel pile

$c_0$  = distance from outside of steel pipe to center of hoop or spiral

[All other terms are as listed for Equation (7-18)].

### 3107F.2.7 Pile/deck connection strength.

**3107F.2.7.1 Joint shear capacity.** The joint shear capacity shall be computed in accordance with ACI 318 [7.7]. For existing MOTs, the method [7.1, 7.2] given below may be used:

1. Determine the nominal shear stress in the joint region corresponding to the pile plastic moment capacity.

$$v_j = \frac{0.9M_o}{\sqrt{2}l_{dv}D_p^2} \quad (7-23)$$

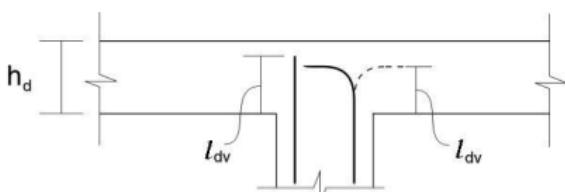
where:

$v_j$  = Nominal shear stress

$M_o$  = Overstrength moment demand of the plastic hinge (the maximum possible moment in the pile) as determined from the procedure of Section 3107F.2.5.7.

$l_{dv}$  = Vertical development length, see Figure 31F-7-9

$D_p$  = Diameter of pile



**FIGURE 31F-7-9**  
**DEVELOPMENT LENGTH**

2. Determine the nominal principal tension  $p_t$ , stress in the joint region:

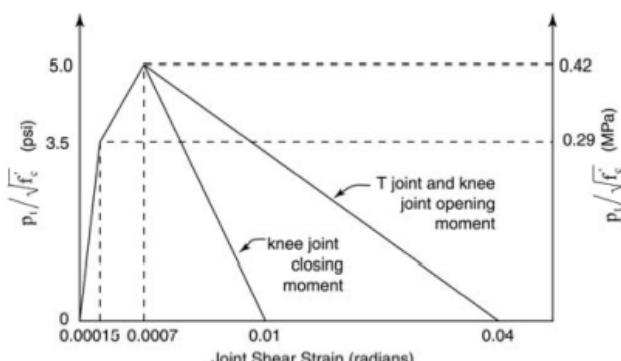
$$p_t = \frac{-f_a}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{f_a}{2}\right)^2 + v_j^2} \quad (7-24)$$

where:

$$f_a = \frac{N}{(D_p + h_d)^2} \quad (7-25)$$

is the average compressive stress at the joint center caused by the pile axial compressive force  $N$  and  $h_d$  is the deck depth. Note, if the pile is subjected to axial tension under seismic load, the value of  $N$ , and  $f_a$  will be negative.

If  $p_t > 5.0 \sqrt{f'_c}$ , psi, joint failure will occur at a lower moment than the column plastic moment capacity  $M_p$ . In this case, the maximum moment that can be developed at the pile/deck interface will be limited by the joint principal tension stress capacity, which will continue to degrade as the joint rotation increases, as shown in Figure 31F-7-10. The moment capacity of the connection at which joint failure initiates can be established from Equations (7-27) and (7-28).



**FIGURE 31F-7-10**  
**DEGRADATION OF EFFECTIVE PRINCIPAL TENSION STRENGTH WITH JOINT SHEAR STRAIN (rotation) [7.1, pg. 564]**

For  $p_t = 5.0 \sqrt{f'_c}$ , determine the corresponding joint shear stress,  $v_j$ :

$$v_j = \sqrt{p_t(p_t - f_a)} \quad (7-26)$$

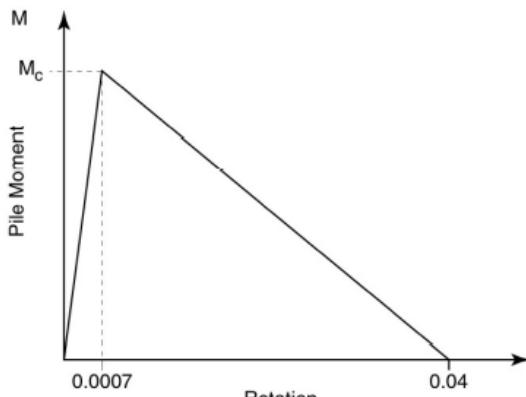
3. The moment capacity of the connection can be approximated as:

$$M_c = \left(\frac{1}{0.9}\right) \sqrt{2}v_j l_{dv} D_p^2 \leq M_o \quad (7-27)$$

This will result in a reduced strength and effective stiffness for the pile in a pushover analysis. The maximum displacement capacity of the pile should be based on a drift angle of 0.04 radians.

If no mechanisms are available to provide residual strength, the moment capacity will decrease to zero as the joint shear strain

increases to 0.04 radians, as shown in Figure 31F-7-11.



**FIGURE 31F-7-11  
REDUCED PILE MOMENT CAPACITY**

If deck stirrups are present within  $h_d/2$  of the face of the pile, the moment capacity,  $M_{c,r}$  at the maximum plastic rotation of 0.04 radians may be increased from zero to the following (see Figure 31F-7-12):

$$M_{c,r} = 2A_s f_y(h_d - d_c) + N\left(\frac{D_p}{2} - d_c\right) \quad (7-28)$$

where:

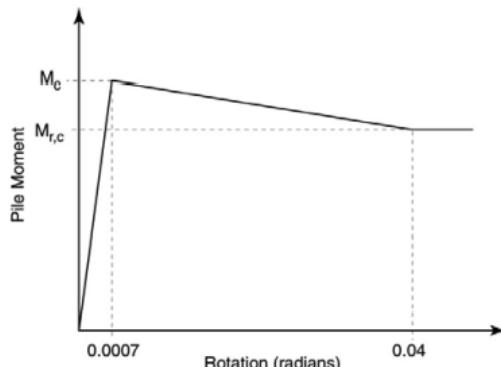
$A_s$  = Area of slab stirrups on one side of joint

$h_d$  = See Figure 31F-7-9 (deck thickness)

$d_c$  = Depth from edge of concrete to center of main reinforcement

In addition, the bottom deck steel ( $A_{s, \text{deckbottom}}$ ) area within  $h_d/2$  of the face of the pile shall satisfy:

$$A_{s, \text{deckbottom}} \geq 0.5 \cdot A_s \quad (7-29)$$



**FIGURE 31F-7-12  
JOINT ROTATION**

4. Using the same initial stiffness as in Section 3107F.2.5.4, the moment-curvature relationship established for the pile top can now be adjusted to account for the joint degradation.

The adjusted yield curvature,  $\phi'_y$ , can be found from:

$$\phi'_y = \frac{\phi_y M_c}{M_p} \quad (7-30)$$

where:

$M_p$  = Idealized plastic moment capacity from Method A or B (see Figure 31F-7-4 or 31F-7-5, respectively)

The plastic curvature,  $\phi_p$ , corresponding to a joint rotation of 0.04 can be calculated as:

$$\phi_p = \frac{0.04}{L_p} \quad (7-31)$$

where:

$L_p$  = Plastic hinge length as determined from Equation (7-5)

The adjusted ultimate curvature,  $\phi'_u$ , can now be calculated as:

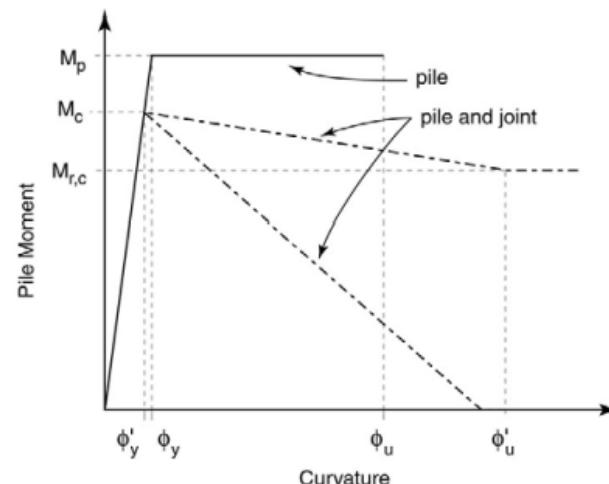
$$\phi'_u = \phi_p + \frac{\phi_y M_{c,r}}{M_p} \quad (7-32)$$

where:

$M_p$  = Idealized plastic moment capacity from Method A or B (see Figure 31F-7-4 or 31F-7-5, respectively)

$M_{c,r} = 0$ , unless deck stirrups are present as discussed above.

Examples of adjusted moment curvature relationships are shown in Figure 31F-7-13.



**FIGURE 31F-7-13  
EQUIVALENT PILE CURVATURE**

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

**3107F.2.7.2 Development length.** The minimum development length,  $l_{dc}$ , is:

$$l_{dc} \geq \frac{0.025 \cdot d_b \cdot f_{ye}}{\sqrt{f'_c}} \quad (7-33)$$

where:

$d_b$  = dowel bar diameter

$f_{ye}$  = expected yield strength of dowel

$f'_c$  = compressive strength of concrete

In assessing existing details, actual or estimated values for  $f_{ye}$  and  $f'_c$  rather than nominal strength should be used in accordance with Section 3107F.2.1.1.

When the development length is less than that calculated by the Equation (7-33), the moment capacity shall be calculated using a proportionately reduced yield strength,  $f_{ye,r}$  for the vertical pile reinforcement:

$$f_{ye,r} = f_{ye} \cdot \frac{l_d}{l_{dc}} \quad (7-34)$$

where:

$l_d$  = actual development length

$f_{ye}$  = expected yield strength of dowel

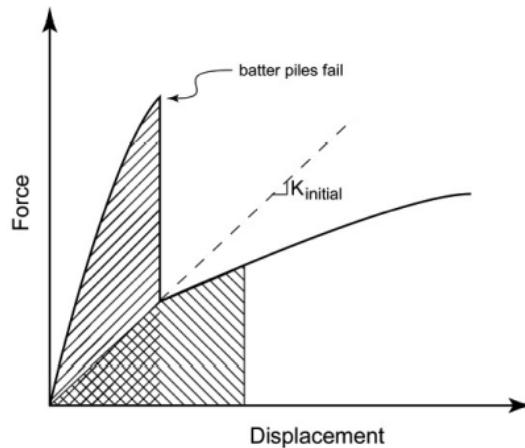
## 3107F.2.8 Batter piles.

**3107F.2.8.1 Existing ordinary batter piles.** Wharves or piers with ordinary (not fused, plugged or having a seismic release mechanism) batter piles typically have a very stiff response when subjected to lateral loads in the direction of the batter. The structure often maintains most of its initial stiffness all the way to failure of the first row of batter piles. Since batter piles most likely will fail under a Level 2 seismic event, the following method may be used to evaluate the post-failure behavior of the wharf or pier:

1. Identify the failure mechanism of the batter pile-deck connection (refer to Section 3104F.4.7) for typical failure scenarios and the corresponding lateral displacement.
2. Release the lateral load between the batter pile and the deck when the lateral failure displacement is reached.
3. Push on the structure until subsequent failure(s) have been identified.

As an example, following these steps will result in a force-displacement (pushover) curve similar to the one

shown in Figure 31F-7-14 for a wharf supported by one row of batter piles.



**FIGURE 31F-7-14  
PUSHOVER CURVE FOR ORDINARY BATTER PILES**

When the row of batter piles fail in tension or shear, stored energy will be released. The structure will therefore experience a lateral displacement demand following the nonductile pile failures. If the structure can respond to this displacement demand without exceeding other structural limitations, it may be assumed that the structure is stable and will start to respond to further shaking with a much longer period and corresponding lower seismic demands. The wharf structure may therefore be able to sustain larger seismic demands following the loss of the batter piles than before the loss of pile capacity, because of a much softer seismic response.

The area under the pushover curve before the batter pile failures is compared to the equivalent area under the post failure pushover curve (refer to Figure 31F-7-14). If no other structural limitations are reached with the new displacement demand, it is assumed that the structure is capable of absorbing the energy. It should be noted that even though the shear failure is nonductile, it is expected that energy will be absorbed and the damping will increase during the damage of the piles. The above method is, therefore, considered conservative.

Following the shear failure of a batter pile row, the period of the structure increases such that equal displacement can be assumed when estimating the post-failure displacement demand. The new period may be estimated from the initial stiffness of the post-failure system as shown in Figure 31F-7-14. A new displacement demand can then be calculated in accordance with Section 3104F.2.

**3107F.2.8.2 Nonordinary batter piles.** For the case of a plugged batter pile system, an appropriate displacement force relationship considering plug friction may be used in modeling the structural system.

For fused and seismic release mechanism batter pile systems, a nonlinear modeling procedure shall be used and peer reviewed (Section 3101F.8.2).

**3107F.2.9 Concrete pile caps with concrete deck.** Pile caps and decks are capacity protected components. Use the procedure of Section 3107F.2.5.7 to establish the over strength demand of the plastic hinges. Component capacity shall be based on nominal material strengths, and reduction factors according to ACI 318 [7.7].

**3107F.2.9.1 Component acceptance/damage criteria.**

For new pile caps and deck, Level 1 seismic performance shall utilize the design methods in ACI 318 [7.7]; Level 2 seismic performance shall be limited to the following strains:

$$\text{Deck/pile cap:} \quad \epsilon_c \leq 0.005$$

$$\text{Reinforcing steel tension strain:} \quad \epsilon_s \leq 0.01$$

For existing pile caps and deck, the limiting strain values are defined in Table 31F-7-5.

Concrete components for all nonseismic loading combinations shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318 [7.7].

**3107F.2.9.2 Shear capacity (strength).** Shear capacity shall be based on nominal material strengths; reduction factors shall be in accordance with ACI 318 [7.7].

**3107F.2.10 Concrete detailing.** For new MOTs, the required development splice length, cover and detailing shall conform to ACI 318 [7.7], with the following exceptions:

1. For pile/deck dowels, the development length may be calculated in accordance with Section 3107F.2.7.2.
2. The minimum concrete cover for prestressed concrete piles shall be three inches, unless corrosion inhibitors are used, in which case a cover of two-and-one-half inches is acceptable.
3. The minimum concrete cover for wharf beams and slabs, and all concrete placed against soil shall be three inches, except for headed reinforcing bars (pile dowels or shear stirrups) the cover may be reduced to two-and-one-half inch cover at the top surface only. If corrosion inhibitors are used, a cover of two-and-one-half inches is acceptable.

**3107F.3 Timber piles and deck components.**

**3107F.3.1 Component strength.** The following parameters shall be established in order to assess component strength:

New and existing components:

1. Modulus of rupture
2. Modulus of elasticity
3. Type and grade of timber

Existing components only:

1. Original cross-section shape and physical dimensions
2. Location and dimension of braced frames
3. Current physical condition of members including visible deformation
4. Degradation may include environmental effects (e.g., decay, splitting, fire damage, biological and chemical attack) including its effect on the moment of inertia, I
5. Loading and displacement effects (e.g., overload, damage from earthquakes, crushing and twisting)

Section 3104F.2.2 discusses existing material properties. At a minimum, the type and grade of wood shall be established. The adjusted reference design values per Section 6 of ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11] may be used.

For deck components, the adjusted design stresses shall be limited to the values of ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11]. Piling deformation limits shall be calculated based on the strain limits in accordance with Section 3107F.3.3.3.

The values shown in the ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11] are not developed specifically for MOTs and can be used as default properties only if as-built information is not available, the member is not damaged and testing is not performed. To account for the inherent uncertainty in establishing component capacities for existing structures with limited knowledge about the actual material properties, a reduction (knowledge) factor of  $k = 0.75$  shall be included in the component strength and deformation capacity analyses in accordance with Section 3107F.2.1.2.

The modulus of elasticity shall be based on tests or Section 4 for deck components and Section 6 for timber piles of ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11].

**3107F.3.2 Deformation capacity of flexural members.** The displacement demand and capacity of existing timber structures may be established per Section 3104F.2.

The soil spring requirements for the lateral pile analysis shall be in accordance with Section 3106F.

A linear curvature distribution may be assumed along the full length of a timber pile.

The displacement capacity of a timber pile can then be established per Section 3107F.3.3.2.

**3107F.3.3 Timber piles.**

**3107F.3.3.1 Stability.** Section 3107F.2.5.2 shall apply to timber piles.

**3107F.3.3.2 Displacement capacity.** A distinction shall be made between a pier-type pile, with a long unsupported length and a wharf-landside-type pile with a short unsupported length between the deck and soil. The effective length, L, is the distance between the pinned deck/pile connection and in-ground fixity as shown in Figure 31F-7-15. For pier-type (long unsupported length) vertical piles, three simplified proce-

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

dures to determine fixity or displacement capacity are described in UFC 4-151-10 [7.12], UFC 3-220-01 [7.13] and Chai [7.14].

In order to determine fixity in soft soils, another alternative is to use Table 31F-7-8.

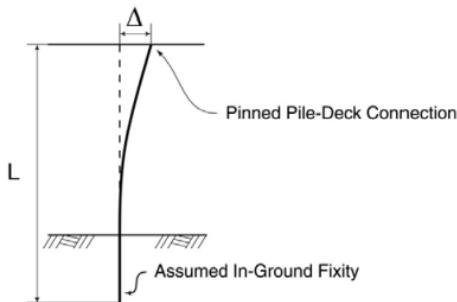
The displacement capacity,  $\Delta$ , for a pile pinned at the top, with effective length,  $L$ , (see Table 31F-7-8 and UFC 4-151-10 [7.12]), and moment,  $M$ , is:

$$\Delta = \frac{ML^2}{3EI} \quad (7-35)$$

where:

$E$  = Modulus of elasticity

$I$  = Moment of inertia



**FIGURE 31F-7-15  
ASSUMED IN-GROUND FIXITY**

**TABLE 31F-7-8  
DISTANCE BELOW GROUND TO POINT OF FIXITY**

PILE $EI_g$	SOFT CLAYS	LOOSE GRANULAR & MEDIUM CLAYS
$< 10^{10}$ lb in <sup>2</sup>	10 feet	8 feet
$> 10^{10}$ lb in <sup>2</sup>	12 feet	10 feet

Assuming linear curvature distribution along the pile, the allowable curvature,  $\phi_a$ , can be established from:

$$\phi_a = \frac{\epsilon_a}{c} \quad (7-36)$$

where:

$\epsilon_a$  = allowable strain limit according to Section 3107F.3.3.3

$c$  = distance to neutral axis which can be taken as  $D_p/2$ , where  $D_p$  is the diameter of the pile

The curvature is defined as:

$$\phi = \frac{M}{EI} \quad (7-37)$$

The maximum allowable moment therefore becomes:

$$M = \frac{2\epsilon_a E I}{D_p} \quad (7-38)$$

The displacement capacity is therefore given by:

$$\Delta = \frac{2\epsilon_a L^2}{3D_p} \quad (7-39)$$

**3107F.3.3.3 Component acceptance/damage criteria.**  
The following limiting strain values apply for each seismic performance level for existing structures:

**TABLE 31F-7-9  
LIMITING STRAIN VALUES FOR TIMBER**

EARTHQUAKE LEVEL	MAX. TIMBER STRAIN
Level 1	0.002
Level 2	0.004

For new and alternatively, for existing structures ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11] may be used.

Timber components for all non-seismic loading combinations shall be designed in accordance with ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11].

**3107F.3.3.4 Shear design.** To account for material strength uncertainties, the maximum shear demand,  $V_{max}$  established from the single pile lateral analysis shall be multiplied by 1.2:

$$V_{demand} = 1.2V_{max} \quad (7-40)$$

The factored maximum shear stress demand  $\tau_{max}$  in a circular pile can then be determined:

$$\tau_{max} = \frac{10}{9} \frac{V_{demand}}{\pi \cdot r^2} \quad (7-41)$$

where:

$r$  = radius of pile

For the seismic load combinations, the maximum allowable shear stress,  $\tau_{capacity}$ , is the design shear strength,  $\tau_{design}$ , from the ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11] multiplied by a factor of 2.8.

$$\tau_{capacity} = 2.8\tau_{design} \quad (7-42)$$

The shear capacity must be greater than the maximum demand.

**3107F.4 Retaining structures.** Retaining structures constructed of steel or concrete shall conform to AISC 325 [7.10] or ACI 318 [7.7], respectively. For the determination of static and seismic loads on the sheet pile and sheet pile behavior, the following references are acceptable: Ebeling and Morrison [7.15], Strom and Ebeling [7.16], and PIANC TC-7 (Technical Commentary - 7) [7.17]. The applied loads and analysis methodology shall be determined by a California registered geotechnical engineer, and may be subject to peer review.

**3107F.5 Nonbuilding structures and building structures.** The analysis of nonbuilding structures and building structures shall be based on the load combinations defined in Section 3103F.8 with seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5. The component strength in nonbuilding structures and building structures shall be established in accordance with AISC [7.10], ACI-318 [7.7] and ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11], accounting for existing condition with knowledge factors applied, as appropriate. For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.

**3107F.6 Mooring and berthing components.** Mooring components include bitts, bollards, cleats, pelican hooks, capstans, mooring dolphins and quick release hooks. The maximum mooring line forces (demand) shall be established per Section 3105F. Applicable safety factors to be applied to the demand are provided in Section 3105F.8. Multiple lines may be attached to the mooring component at varying horizontal and vertical angles. Mooring components shall therefore be checked for all mooring analysis load cases.

Berthing components include fender piles and fenders, which may be camels, fender panels or wales. The maximum berthing forces (demand) on breasting dolphins and fender piles shall be established according to Section 3105F.

Mooring and berthing components analyses shall be based on the load combinations defined in Section 3103F.8 with seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5. The component strength shall account for existing condition with knowledge factors applied, as appropriate. For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.

Mooring and berthing component capacities may be governed by the strength of the deck, structure and/or soil. Therefore, a check of the deck, structural and geotechnical capacities to withstand component loads shall be performed, as appropriate.

**3107F.7 Supports and attachments (or anchorage).** The evaluation of supports and attachments for nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures shall be based on the load combinations defined in Section 3103F.8 with seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5. The strength of supports and attachments for nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures shall be assessed in accordance with AISC [7.10], ACI-318 [7.7] and ANSI/AWC NDS [7.11], accounting for existing condition with knowledge factors applied, as appropriate. The following parameters shall be established to calculate strength:

New and existing components:

1. Yield and tensile strength of structural steel
2. Structural steel modulus of elasticity
3. Yield and tensile strength of bolts
4. Concrete infill compressive strength
5. Concrete infill modulus of elasticity

Additional parameters for existing components:

1. Condition of steel including corrosion
2. Effective cross-sectional areas
3. Condition of embedment material such as concrete slab or timber deck

The analysis and design shall include the load transfer to supporting deck/pile structures or foundation elements. A check of the deck capacity to withstand support and attachment loads shall be performed for all nonstructural components, nonbuilding structures and building structures.

#### **3107F.8 Symbols.**

- $A_e$  = Effective shear area  
 $A_g$  = Uncracked, gross section area

$A_h$	= Total area of transverse reinforcement, parallel to direction of applied shear cut by an inclined shear crack
$A_s$	= Area of slab stirrups on one side of joint
$A_{s, deckbottom}$	= Area of bottom deck steel
$A_{sp}$	= Spiral or hoop cross section area
$c$	= Depth from extreme compression fiber to neutral axis at flexural strength
$c_0$	= Distance from outside of steel pipe to center of hoop or spiral, or distance from concrete cover to center of hoop or spiral
$c_u$	= Neutral axis depth at ultimate strength of section
$d_b$	= Diameter of the longitudinal reinforcement, prestressing strand or dowel, as appropriate
$d_c$	= Depth from edge of concrete to center of main reinforcement
$d_{st}$	= Diameter of the prestressing strand (in.)
$D$	= Pile diameter or least cross-sectional dimension
$D_p$	= Pile diameter or gross depth (in case of a rectangular pile with spiral confinement)
$e$	= Eccentricity of axial load
$\epsilon_a$	= Allowable strain limit
$\epsilon_c$	= Concrete compressive strain
$\epsilon_{cm}$	= Maximum extreme fiber compression strain
$\epsilon_{cu}$	= Ultimate concrete compressive strain
$\epsilon_p$	= Prestressing steel tension strain
$\epsilon_s$	= Reinforcing steel tension strain
$\epsilon_{sm}$	= Strain at peak stress of confining reinforcement
$\epsilon_u$	= Ultimate steel strain
$E$	= Modulus of elasticity
$E_c$	= Modulus of elasticity for concrete
$E_s$	= Modulus of elasticity for steel
$f'_c$	= Concrete compression strength
$f'_{cc}$	= Confined strength of concrete
$F_p$	= Prestress compression force in pile
$f_p$	= Yield strength of prestressing strand
$f_{pye}$	= Design yield strength of prestressing strand (ksi)
$f_y$	= Yield strength of steel
$f_{ye}$	= Design yield strength of longitudinal reinforcement, prestressing strand or dowel, as appropriate (ksi)
$f_{yh}$	= Yield stress of confining steel
$f_{yh}$	= Yield strength of transverse or hoop reinforcement
$f_{y,pile}$	= Yield strength of steel pile
$f_{ye,r}$	= Reduced dowel yield strength
$g$	= Gap distance from bottom of the deck to edge of pipe pile or external confinement (in.)
$h$	= Width of pile in considered direction

**MARINE OIL TERMINALS**

$h_d$	= Deck depth	$\tau_{capacity}$	= Maximum allowable shear stress
$I$	= Moment of inertia	$\tau_{design}$	= Design shear strength
$I_c$	= Moment of inertia of uncracked section	$\tau_{max}$	= Maximum shear stress
$I_e$	= Effective moment of inertia	$V_c$	= Concrete shear strength
$I_g$	= Gross moment of inertia	$v_j$	= Nominal joint shear stress
$I_s$	= Moment of inertia for steel section	$V_{design}$	= Design shear strength
$k$	= Factor dependent on the curvature ductility $\mu_\phi = \phi/\phi_y$ , within the plastic hinge region	$V_{max}$	= Maximum shear demand
$k$	= Knowledge factor	$V_n$	= Nominal shear strength
$L$	= Distance from the critical section of the plastic hinge to the point of contraflexure (Section 3107F.2.5.3), or effective length (Section 3107F.3.3.2)	$V_p$	= Contribution to shear strength from axial loads
$L_p$	= Plastic hinge length	$V_s$	= Transverse reinforcement shear strength
$l_{dc}$	= Minimum development length	$V_{pile}$	= Shear strength of steel pile
$l_d$	= Actual development length		
$l_{dv}$	= Vertical development length		
$M$	= Maximum allowable moment		
$M_c$	= Moment capacity of the connection		
$M_{c,r}$	= Moment capacity at maximum plastic rotation		
$M_o$	= Overstrength moment demand of the plastic hinge (Section 3107F.2.7)		
$M_p$	= Idealized plastic moment capacity from Method A or B (Section 3107F.2.5)		
$M_y$	= Moment at first yield		
$N$	= Pile axial compressive force		
$N_u$	= External axial compression on pile including seismic load		
$\rho_s$	= Effective volume ratio of confining steel		
$p_t$	= Nominal principal tension		
$r$	= Radius of circular pile		
$s$	= Spacing of hoops or spiral along the pile axis		
$t$	= Steel pile wall thickness		
$\Delta$	= Displacement capacity		
$\theta$	= Angle of critical crack to the pile axis		
$\theta_p$	= Plastic rotation		
$\alpha$	= Angle between line joining centers of flexural compression in the deck/pile and in-ground hinges, and the pile axis		
$\phi_a$	= Allowable curvature		
$\phi_m$	= Maximum curvature		
$\phi_p, \phi_{p,m}$	= Plastic curvature		
$\phi_u$	= Ultimate curvature		
$\phi'_{u}$	= Adjusted ultimate curvature		
$\phi_y$	= Yield curvature		
$\phi'_{y}$	= Adjusted yield curvature		

**3107F.9 References.**

- [7.1] Priestley, M.J.N., Seible, F. and Calvi, G.M. "Seismic Design and Retrofit of Bridges," 1996, New York.
- [7.2] Ferritto, J., Dickenson, S., Priestley N., Werner, S., Taylor, C., Burke D., Seelig W., and Kelly, S., 1999, "Seismic Criteria for California Marine Oil Terminals, Vol.1 and Vol.2," Technical Report TR-2103-SHR, Naval Facilities Engineering Service Center, Port Hueneme, CA.
- [7.3] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2017, ASCE/SEI 41-17 (ASCE/SEI 41), "Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings," Reston, VA.
- [7.4] Blakeley, J.P., Park, R., "Prestressed Concrete Sections with Cyclic Flexure," Journal of the Structural Division, American Society of Civil Engineers, Vol. 99, No. ST8, August 1973, pp. 1717-1742, Reston, VA.
- [7.5] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2014, ASCE/COPRI 61-14 (ASCE/COPRI 61), "Seismic Design of Piers and Wharves," Reston, VA.
- [7.6] Port of Long Beach (POLB), 2012 February 29, "Wharf Design Criteria," Version 3.0, Long Beach, CA.
- [7.7] American Concrete Institute (ACI), 2014, ACI 318-14 (ACI 318), "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-14) and Commentary (ACI 318R-14)," Farmington Hills, MI.
- [7.8] Applied Technology Council (ATC), 1996, ATC-32, "Improved Seismic Design Criteria for California Bridges: Provisional Recommendations," Redwood City, CA.
- [7.9] Kowalski, M.J. and Priestley, M.J.N., June 1998, "Shear Strength of Ductile Bridge Columns," Proc. 5th Caltrans Seismic Design Workshop, Sacramento, CA.
- [7.10] American Institute of Steel Construction Inc. (AISC), 2017, AISC 325-17 (AISC 325), "Steel Construction Manual," 15th ed., Chicago, IL.

- [7.11] American Wood Council (AWC), 2017, ANSI/AWC NDS-2018 (ANSI/AWC NDS) "National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction," Washington, D.C.
- [7.12] Department of Defense, 10 September 2001 (Revised 1 September 2012), Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-151-10, "General Criteria for Waterfront Construction," Washington, D.C.
- [7.13] Department of Defense, 01 November 2012, Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 3-220-01, "Geotechnical Engineering," Washington, D.C.
- [7.14] Chai, Y.H., "Flexural Strength and Ductility of Extended Pile-Shafts, I: Analytical Model," *Journal of Structural Engineering*, May 2002, pp. 586–594.
- [7.15] Ebeling, Robert M. and Morrison, Ernest E., Jr., November 1992, "The Seismic Design of Waterfront Retaining Structures", U.S. Army Technical Report ITL-92-11/U.S. Navy Technical Report NCEL TR 939, Dept. of Army, Corps of Engineers, Waterways Experiment Station, Vicksburg, MS.
- [7.16] Strom, Ralph W. and Robert M. Ebeling, December 2001, "State of the Practice in the Design of Tall, Stiff, and Flexible Tieback Retaining Walls," Information Technology Laboratory, Engineer Research and Development Center, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, MS.
- [7.17] Permanent International Association of Navigation Congresses (PIANC), "Seismic Design Guidelines for Port Structures," Technical Commentary-7, Working Group No. 34 of the Maritime Navigation Commission International Navigation Association, A.A. Balkema, Lisse, Netherlands. 2001.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## Division 8

### **SECTION 3108F FIRE PREVENTION, DETECTION AND SUPPRESSION**

**3108F.1 General.** This section provides minimum standards for fire prevention, detection and suppression at MOTs. See Section 3101F.3 for definitions of “new” (N) and “existing” (E).

**3108F.2 Hazard assessment and risk analysis.**

**3108F.2.1 Fire hazard assessment and risk analysis (N/E).** A fire hazard assessment and risk analysis shall be performed, considering the loss of commercial power, earthquake and other relevant events.

**3108F.2.2 Fire Protection Assessment (N/E).** A site-specific Fire Protection Assessment shall be prepared by a registered engineer or a competent fire protection professional. The assessment shall consider the hazards and risks identified per Section 3108F.2.1 and shall include, but not be limited to, the elements of pre-fire planning as discussed in Section 9 of API RP 2001 [8.1] and Chapter 19 of ISGOTT [8.2]. MOT operational and training requirements, as related to fire protection, shall be considered (see 2 CCR 2385 [8.3]). The Fire Protection Assessment shall include goals, resources, organization, strategy and tactics, including the following:

1. MOT characteristics (e.g., tanker/manifold, product pipelines, etc.)
2. Product types and fire scenarios, including products not regulated by the Division that may impact development of fire scenarios
3. Possible collateral fire damage to adjacent facilities
4. Firefighting capabilities, including availability of water (flow rates and pressure), foam type and associated shelf life, proportioning equipment and vehicular access
5. The selection of appropriate extinguishing agents
6. Calculation of water and foam capacities, as applicable, consistent with area coverage requirements
7. Coordination of emergency efforts
8. Emergency escape routes
9. Requirements for fire drills, training of personnel, and the use of equipment
10. Life safety
11. Rescue for terminal and vessel personnel
12. Cooling water for pipelines and valves exposed to the heat
13. Contingency planning when supplemental fire support is not available. Mutual aid agreements can apply to water and land based support.
14. Consideration of adverse conditions, such as electrical power failure, steam failure, fire pump fail-

ure, an earthquake or other damage to the fire water system.

The audit team shall review and field verify the firefighting equipment locations and condition to ensure operability.

**3108F.2.3 Cargo liquid volatility ratings and fire hazard classifications (N/E).** The cargo liquid volatility ratings are defined in Table 31F-8-1, as either High ( $H_C$ ) or Low ( $L_C$ ), depending on the flash point.

Fire hazard classifications (Low, Medium or High) are defined in Table 31F-8-2, and are based on the cargo liquid volatility ratings and the sum of all stored and flowing volumes ( $V_T$ ), prior to the emergency shutdown (ESD) system stopping the flow of oil.

The stored ( $V_S$ ) volume is the sum of the  $H_C$  and  $L_C$  volumes ( $V_{SH}$  and  $V_{SL}$ , respectively).

During a leak, a quantity of oil is assumed to spill at the maximum cargo flow rate until the ESD is fully effective. The ESD valve closure time shall conform with 2 CCR 2380 [8.3]. The flowing volume ( $V_F$ ), calculated in Equation (1-1), is the sum of the  $H_C$  and  $L_C$  liquid volumes ( $V_{FH}$  and  $V_{FL}$ , respectively).

**3108F.3 Fire prevention.**

**3108F.3.1 Ignition source control.**

**3108F.3.1.1** Protection from ignition by static electricity, lightning or stray currents shall be in accordance with API RP 2003 [8.4](N/E).

**3108F.3.1.2** Requirements to prevent electrical arcing shall be in conformity with 2 CCR 2341 [8.3] (N/E).

**3108F.3.1.3** Multi-berth terminal piers shall be constructed so as to provide a minimum of 100 ft between adjacent manifolds (N).

**3108F.3.2 Emergency shutdown (ESD) systems.** Emergency shutdown systems are essential to oil spill and fire prevention. These systems may include, but are not limited to, ESD valves, shore isolation valves (SIVs), automatic pump shutdown, controls, actuators and alarms. The ESD systems shall conform to 2 CCR 2380 [8.3] and 33 CFR 154.550 [8.5], and provide:

1. Remote actuation stations strategically located, so that ESD valve(s) may be shut within required times (N).
2. Multiple actuation stations installed at strategic locations, so that one such station is located more than 100 ft from areas classified as Class I, Group D, Division 1 or 2 per the California Electrical Code [8.6]. Actuation stations shall be wired in parallel to achieve redundancy and arranged so that fire damage to one station will not disable the ESD system (N).
3. Communications or control circuits to synchronize simultaneous closure of the shore isolation valves (SIVs) with the shutdown of loading pumps (N).

**TABLE 31F-8-1  
CARGO LIQUID VOLATILITY RATINGS**

VOLATILITY RATING	CRITERION	REFERENCE	EXAMPLES
Low ( $L_C$ )	Flash Point <sup>1</sup> $\geq 140^{\circ}\text{F}$	ISGOTT (Chapter 1), [8.2]—Nonvolatile	#6 Heavy Fuel Oil, residuals, bunker
High ( $H_C$ )	Flash Point <sup>1</sup> $< 140^{\circ}\text{F}$	ISGOTT (Chapter 1), [8.2]—Volatile	Gasoline, JP4, crude oils

1. Flash Point is defined per ISGOTT [8.2].

**TABLE 31F-8-2  
FIRE HAZARD CLASSIFICATIONS**

FIRE HAZARD CLASSIFICATION	STORED VOLUME (bbls)			FLOWING VOLUME (bbls)		CRITERIA (bbls)*
	Stripped	$V_{SL}$	$V_{SH}$	$V_{FL}$	$V_{FH}$	
LOW	y	n	n	y	y	$V_{FL} \geq V_{FH}$ and $V_T \leq 1200$
LOW	n	y	n	y	n	$V_{SL} + V_{FL} \leq 1200$
MEDIUM	n	n	y	n	y	$V_{SH} + V_{FH} \leq 1200$
MEDIUM	y	n	n	y	y	$V_{FH} > V_{FL}$ and $V_T \leq 1200$
HIGH	y	n	n	y	y	$V_T > 1200$
HIGH	n	y	y	y	y	$V_T > 1200$
HIGH	n	y	n	y	n	$V_{SL} + V_{FL} > 1200$
HIGH	n	n	y	n	y	$V_{SH} + V_{FH} > 1200$

y = yes

n = no

Stripped = product purged from pipeline following product transfer event.

$V_{SL}$  = stored volume of low volatility product

$V_{SH}$  = stored volume of high volatility product

$V_{FL}$  = volume of low volatility product flowing through transfer line during ESD.

$V_{FH}$  = volume of high volatility product flowing through transfer line during ESD.

$V_T = V_{SL} + V_{SH} + V_{FL} + V_{FH}$  = Total Volume (stored and flowing)

\* Quantities are based on maximum flow rate, including simultaneous transfers.

4. A manual reset to restore the ESD system to an operational state after each initiation (N).
  5. An alarm to indicate failure of the primary power source (N).
  6. A secondary (emergency) power source (N).
  7. Periodic testing of the system (N/E).
  8. Fire proofing of motors and control-cables that are installed in areas classified as Class I, Group D, Division 1 or 2 per the California Electrical Code [8.6]. Fire proofing shall, at a minimum, comply with the recommendations in Section 6 of API RP 2218 [8.7] (N).
- 3108F.3.2.1 Emergency shutdown (ESD) valves.** ESD valves shall conform to the requirements in Section 3109F.5, as applicable, and the following:
1. Be located near the dock manifold connection or loading arm (N/E).
  2. Have “Local” and “Remote” actuation capabilities (N).
- 3108F.3.2.2 Shore isolation valves (SIVs).** Shore isolation valve(s) shall conform to the requirements in Section 3109F.5, as applicable, and the following:
1. Be located onshore for each cargo pipeline. All SIVs shall be clustered together, for easy access (N).

2. Be clearly identified together with associated pipeline (N/E).
3. Have adequate lighting (N/E).
4. Be provided with communications or control circuits to synchronize simultaneous closure of the ESD system with the shutdown of loading pumps (N).
5. Have a manual reset to restore the SIV system to an operational state after each shut down event (N).
6. Be provided with thermal expansion relief to accommodate expansion of the liquid when closed. Thermal relief piping shall be properly sized and routed around the SIV, into the downstream segment of the pipeline or into other containment (N/E).
7. SIVs installed in pipelines carrying  $H_C$  liquids, or at a MOT with a spill classification “Medium” or “High” (see Table 31F-1-1), shall be equipped with “Local” and “Remote” actuation capabilities. Local control SIVs may be motorized and/or operated manually (N).

**3108F.4 Automated fire detection system.** An MOT shall have a permanently installed automated fire detection or sensing system (N).

Fire detection systems shall be tested and maintained per the manufacturer or the local enforcing agency requirements.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

Specifications shall be retained. The latest testing and maintenance records shall be readily accessible to the Division (N/E).

**3108F.5 Fire alarms.** Automatic and manual fire alarms shall be provided at strategic locations. The fire alarm system shall be arranged to provide a visual and audible alarm that can be readily discerned by all personnel at the MOT and vessel personnel involved in the transfer operations. Additionally, visual and audible alarms shall be displayed at the MOT's control center (N/E).

If the fire alarm system is integrated with the ESD system, the operation shall be coordinated with the closure of SIVs, block valves and pumps to avoid adverse hydraulic conditions (N/E).

Fire alarms shall be tested and maintained in accordance with NFPA 72 [8.8] or the local enforcing agency requirements. Specifications shall be retained. The latest testing and maintenance records shall be readily accessible to the Division (N/E).

**3108F.6 Fire suppression.** Table 31F-8-3 gives the minimum provisions for fire-water flow rates and fire extinguishers. The table includes consideration of the fire hazard classification (Low, Medium or High), the cargo liquid volatility rating (Low or High) and the vessel or barge size. The minimum provisions may have to be augmented for multi-berth terminals or those conducting simultaneous transfers, in accordance with the risks identified in the Fire Protection Assessment. For fire water and foam piping and fittings, see Section 3109F.7.

**3108F.6.1 Coverage (N/E).** The fire suppression system shall provide coverage for:

1. Marine structures including the pier/wharf and approach trestle

2. Terminal cargo manifold
3. Cargo transfer system including loading arms, hoses and hose racks
4. Vessel manifold
5. Sumps
6. Pipelines
7. Control stations

**3108F.6.2 Fire hydrants.** Hydrants shall be located not greater than 150 ft apart, along the wharf and not more than 300 ft apart on the approach trestle [8.2] (N).

Additional hose connections shall be provided at the base of fixed monitors and upstream of the water and foam isolation valves. Connections shall be accessible to fire trucks or mutual aid equipment as identified in the Fire Protection Assessment (N/E).

Hydrants and hoses shall be capable of applying two independent water streams covering the cargo manifold, transfer system, sumps and vessel manifold (N/E).

**3108F.6.3 Fire water.** The source of fire water shall be reliable and provide sufficient rated capacity as determined in the Fire Protection Assessment. Water-based fire protection systems shall be tested and maintained per California NFPA 25 [8.9], as adopted and amended by the State Fire Marshal, or the local enforcing agency requirements. Specifications shall be retained. The latest testing and maintenance records shall be readily accessible to the Division (N/E).

1. All wet systems shall be kept pressurized (jockey pump or other means) (N/E).
2. Wet system headers shall be equipped with a low-pressure alarm wired to the control room (N).

**TABLE 31F-8-3  
MINIMUM FIRE SUPPRESSION PROVISIONS (N/E)**

FIRE HAZARD CLASSIFICATION (From Table 31F-8-2)	VESSEL AND CARGO LIQUID VOLATILITY RATING (From Table 31F-8-1)	MINIMUM PROVISIONS
LOW	Barge with $L_c$ (including drums)	<b>500 gpm of water</b> 2 x 20 lb portable dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent. 2 x 110 lb wheeled dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent.
	Barge with $H_c$ (including drums) Tankers < 50 KDWT, handling $L_c$ or $H_c$	<b>1,500 gpm of water</b> 2 x 20 lb portable dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent. 2 x 165 lb wheeled dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent
MEDIUM	Tankers < 50 KDWT handling $L_c$	<b>1,500 gpm of water</b> 2 x 20 lb portable dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent. 2 x 165 lb wheeled dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent
	Tankers < 50 KDWT, handling $H_c$	<b>2,000 gpm of water</b> 4 x 20 lb portable dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent. 2 x 165 lb wheeled dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent
HIGH	Tankers < 50 KDWT, handling $L_c$ or $H_c$	<b>3,000 gpm of water</b> 4 x 20 lb portable dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent. 2 x 165 lb wheeled dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent
LOW, MEDIUM, HIGH	Tankers > 50 KDWT, handling $L_c$ or $H_c$	<b>3,000 gpm of water</b> 6 x 20 lb portable dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent. 4 x 165 lb wheeled dry chemical extinguishers or the equivalent

Notes:  $L_c$  and  $H_c$  are defined in Table 31F-8-1. KDWT = Dead Weight Tons (Thousands)

3. Fire pumps shall be installed at a distance of at least 100 ft from the nearest cargo manifold area (N).
4. Hose connections for fireboats or tugboats shall be provided on the MOT fire water line, and at least one connection shall be an international shore fire connection at each berth [8.2]. Connections shall be installed at a safe access distance from the sumps, manifolds and loading arms (N/E).

**3108F.6.4 Foam supply (N/E).** Product flammability, foam type, water flow rates and application duration shall be considered in foam supply calculations.

Fixed foam proportioning equipment shall be located at a distance of at least 100 ft from the sumps, manifolds and loading arms, except where hydraulic limits of the foam delivery system require closer proximity.

MOTs shall have a program to ensure that foam is replaced according to the manufacturer's recommendations.

**3108F.6.5 Fire monitor systems.** Fire monitors shall be located to provide coverage of MOT cargo manifolds, loading arms, hoses and vessel manifold areas. This coverage shall provide at least two independent streams of water/foam. Monitors shall be located to provide an unobstructed path between the monitor and the target area (N/E).

If the vessel manifold is more than 30 ft above the wharf deck, the following factors shall be considered, in order to determine if monitors located on elevated masts or towers are required (N/E):

1. Maximum tanker freeboard
2. Tidal variations
3. Pier/wharf/loading platform elevation
4. Winds
5. Fire water line pressure

Sprinklers and/or remotely controlled water/foam monitors shall be installed to protect personnel, escape routes, shelter locations and the fire water system (N).

Isolation valves shall be installed in the fire water and the foam lines in order to segregate damaged sections without disabling the entire system. Readily accessible isolation valves shall be installed 100–150 ft from the manifold and the loading arm/hose area (N).

**3108F.6.6 Supplemental fire suppression systems (E).** A supplemental system is an external waterborne or land-based source providing suppressant and equipment. Supplemental systems may not provide more than one-quarter of the total water requirements specified in the Fire Protection Assessment.

Additionally, supplementary systems shall not be considered in a Fire Protection Assessment, unless available within 20 minutes following the initiation of a fire alarm. Mutual aid may be considered as part of the supplemental system.

**3108F.7 Fire systems seismic assessment (N/E).** Fire detection and protection systems, and emergency shutdown systems shall have a seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5. For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.

For firewater piping and pipeline systems, see Section 3109F.7.

#### **3108F.8 References.**

- [8.1] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2012, API Recommended Practice 2001 (API RP 2001), "Fire Protection in Refineries," 9th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [8.2] International Chamber of Shipping (ICS), Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), International Association of Ports and Harbors (IAPH), 2006, "International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT)," 5th ed., Witherby, London.
- [8.3] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 2, Division 3, Chapter 1, Article 5 – Marine Terminals Inspection and Monitoring (2 CCR 2300 et seq.)
- [8.4] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2008, API Recommended Practice 2003 (API RP 2003), "Protection Against Ignitions Arising Out of Static, Lightning, and Stray Currents," 7th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [8.5] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Section 154.550 – Emergency Shutdown (33 CFR 154.550)
- [8.6] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 3, California Electrical Code (Article 500),
- [8.7] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2013, API Recommended Practice 2218 (API RP 2218), "Fireproofing Practices in Petroleum and Petrochemical Processing Plants," 3rd ed., Washington, D.C.
- [8.8] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), NFPA 72, "National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code," Quincy, MA. For edition, see California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.
- [8.9] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), California NFPA 25, "Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems," California ed., Quincy, MA. For edition, see California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

## Division 9

### SECTION 3109F PIPING AND PIPELINES

**3109F.1 General.** This section provides minimum engineering standards for piping, pipelines, valves, supports and related appurtenances at MOTs. This section applies to piping and pipelines used for transferring:

1. Oil (see Section 3101F.1) to or from tank vessels or barges
2. Oil within the MOT
3. Vapors, including Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs)
4. Inerting or enriching gases to vapor control systems

Additionally, it also applies to piping or pipelines providing services, which includes stripping, sampling, venting, vapor control and fire water.

See Section 3101F.3 for definitions of "new" (N) and "existing" (E).

**3109F.2 Oil piping and pipeline systems.** All pressure piping and pipelines for oil service shall conform to the provisions of API Standard 2610 [9.1], ASME B31.3 [9.2] or B31.4 [9.3] as appropriate, including the following:

1. All piping/pipelines shall be documented on current P&IDs (N/E).
2. Piping and pipeline systems shall be installed above deck (N).
3. The systems shall be arranged in a way not to obstruct access to and removal of other piping components and equipment (N).
4. Flexibility shall be achieved through adequate expansion loops or joints (N/E).
5. A guide or lateral restraint shall be provided just past the elbow where a pipe changes direction in order to minimize excessive axial stress (N).
6. Piping shall be routed to allow for movement due to thermal expansion and seismic displacement, without exceeding the allowable stresses in the supports, and anchor connections (see Section 3109F.3) (N/E).
7. Plastic piping shall not be used unless designated for oil service (N/E).
8. If a flanged connection exists within 20 pipe diameters from the end of any replaced section, the pipe shall be replaced up to and including the flange.
9. Pipelines shall be seamless, electric-resistance-welded or electric-fusion-welded (N).
10. Piping greater than 2 inches in diameter shall be butt-welded. Piping 2 inches and smaller shall be socket welded or threaded.

11. Pipeline connections directly over the water shall be welded (N). Flanged connections not over water shall have secondary containment (N).
12. Pipelines that do not have a valid and certified Static Liquid Pressure Test (SLPT) [9.4] shall be marked "OUT OF SERVICE." Out-of-service piping and pipelines shall be purged, gas-free and physically isolated from sources of oil.
13. If a pipeline is "out-of-service" for 3 or more years, it will require a valid and certified Static Liquid Pressure Test (SLPT) and API 570 inspection [9.4] prior to Division approval for re-use (E).
14. New piping and pipeline systems require a valid and certified Static Liquid Pressure Test (SLPT) [9.4] and Division approval, prior to operation.

**3109F.3 Pipeline stress analysis (N/E).** Pipeline stress analysis shall be performed for:

1. New piping and pipelines
2. Significant rerouting/relocation of existing piping
3. Any replacement of "not in-kind" piping
4. Any significant rearrangement or replacement of "not in-kind" anchors and/or supports
5. Significant seismic displacements calculated from the structural and/or geotechnical assessments

Pipeline stress analysis shall be performed in accordance with ASME B31.4 [9.3], considering all relevant loads and corresponding displacements determined from the structural analysis and/or geotechnical analysis described in Sections 3104F and 3106F, respectively. Seismic loading of above-grade pipelines may be analyzed in accordance with ASME B31.E [9.5] with seismic loads computed from Section 3104F.5.4.1.

For pipelines spanning between seismically isolated structures (Section 3104F.1.3) and/or varying geotechnical conditions, evaluation of the relative movement of pipelines and supports and varying seismic accelerations shall be considered, including phase differences.

Flexibility analysis for piping, considering supports, shall be performed in accordance with ASME B31.4 [9.3] by using the largest temperature differential imposed by normal operation, start-up, shutdown or abnormal conditions. Thermal loads shall be based upon maximum and minimum local temperatures; heat traced piping shall use the maximum attainable temperature of the heat tracing system.

Section 3106F.12 provides additional considerations for underwater seafloor pipelines.

To determine forces at sliding surfaces, the coefficients of static friction shown in Table 31F-9-1 shall be used.

**TABLE 31F-9-1  
COEFFICIENTS OF STATIC FRICTION**

SLIDING SURFACE MATERIALS	COEFFICIENT OF STATIC FRICTION
Teflon on Teflon	0.10
Plastic on Steel	0.35
Steel on Steel	0.40
Steel on Concrete	0.45
Steel on Timber	0.49

**3109F.4 Piping and pipelines supports and attachments (or anchorage).** Supports and attachments shall conform to ASME B31.3 [9.2], ASME B31.4 [9.3], API Standard 2610 [9.1] and the ASCE Guidelines [9.6] (N).

A seismic assessment shall be performed for existing supports and attachments using recommendations in Section 7 of CalARP [9.7], as appropriate (E).

For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7. If a pipeline analysis has been performed and support reactions are available, they may be used to determine the forces on the support structure.

#### **3109F.5 Appurtenances.**

**3109F.5.1 Valves and fittings.** Valves and fittings shall meet the following requirements:

1. Conform to ASME B31.3 [9.2], ASME B31.4 [9.3], API Standard 609 [9.8] and ASME B16.34 [9.9], as appropriate, based on their service (N).
2. Conform to Section 10 of API Standard 2610 [9.1] (N/E).
3. Stems shall be oriented in a way not to pose a hazard in operation or maintenance (N/E).
4. Nonductile iron, cast iron and low-melting temperature metals shall not be used in any hydrocarbon service (N/E).
5. Double-block and bleed valves shall be used for manifold valves (N/E).
6. Isolation valves shall be fire-safe in accordance with API Standard 607 [9.10] (N).
7. Swing check valves shall not be installed in vertical down-flow piping (N/E).
8. Pressure relief devices shall be used in any closed piping system that has the possibility of being over pressurized due to temperature increase (thermal relief valves) (N/E).
9. Pressure relief devices shall be used in any piping system that has the possibility of being over pressurized due to surging, considering all plausible normal and abnormal operational scenarios in accordance with ASME B31.4 [9.3] (N/E).
10. Pressure relief devices shall be sized in accordance with API RP 520 [9.11] (N). Set pressures and accumulating pressures shall be in accordance with API RP 520 [9.11] (N/E).

11. Discharge from pressure relief valves shall be directed into lower pressure piping for recycling or proper disposal. Discharge shall never be directed into the open environment, unless secondary containment is provided (N/E).

12. Threaded, socket-welded, flanged and welded fittings shall conform to Section 8 of API Standard 2610 [9.1] (N/E).

13. ESD valves and SIVs shall also conform to the requirements of Sections 3108F.3.2.1 and 3108F.3.2.2.

#### **3109F.5.2 Valve actuators (N/E).**

1. Actuators shall have a readily accessible, manually operated overriding device to operate the valve during a power loss.
2. Torque switches shall be set to stop the motor closing operation at a specified torque setting.
3. Limit switches shall be set to stop the motor opening operation at a specified limit switch setting.
4. Critical valves shall be provided with thermal insulation. The insulation shall be inspected and maintained at periodic intervals. Records of thermal insulation inspections and condition shall be maintained for at least 6 years.
5. Electrical insulation for critical valves shall be measured for resistance following installation and retested periodically. These records shall be maintained for at least 6 years.
6. ESD valve and SIV actuators shall also conform to the requirements of Section 3108F.3.2.

**3109F.6 Utility and auxiliary piping and pipeline systems.** Utility and auxiliary piping includes service for:

1. Stripping and sampling
2. Vapor control
3. Natural gas
4. Compressed air, venting and nitrogen

Stripping and sampling piping shall conform to Section 3109F.2 (N/E).

Vapor return lines and VOC vapor inerting and enriching (natural gas) piping shall conform to 33 CFR 154.2100(b) [9.12] (N/E).

Compressed air, venting and nitrogen piping and fittings shall conform to ASME B31.3 [9.2] (N).

**3109F.7 Fire piping and pipeline systems.** Firewater and foam piping and fittings shall meet the following requirements:

1. Conform to NFPA 11 [9.13], NFPA 24 [9.14] and ASME B16.5 [9.15] (N/E).
2. Fire mains shall be carbon steel pipe (N/E).
3. High density polyethylene (HDPE) piping may be used for buried pipelines (N/E).

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

4. Piping and appurtenances shall be color-coded per local jurisdiction requirements or per ASME A13.1 [9.16] (N/E).
5. Pipeline stress analysis shall be performed for firewater piping and pipelines per Section 3109F.3 (N/E).
6. Firewater piping and pipelines supports and attachments shall be assessed per Section 3109F.4.
7. External visual inspection shall be performed per Section 3102F.3.5.3 (N/E).

### 3109F.8 References.

- [9.1] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2005, API Standard 2610 (R2010), "Design, Construction, Operation, Maintenance, and Inspection of Terminal and Tank Facilities," 2<sup>nd</sup> ed., Washington, D.C.
- [9.2] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2015, ASME B31.3-2014 (ASME B31.3), "Process Piping," New York.
- [9.3] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2012, ASME B31.4-2012 (ASME B31.4), "Pipeline Transportation Systems for Liquid Hydrocarbons and Other Liquids," New York.
- [9.4] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 2, Division 3, Chapter 1, Article 5.5 – Marine Terminal Oil Pipelines (2 CCR 2560 et seq.)
- [9.5] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2008, ASME B31E, "Standard for the Seismic Design and Retrofit of Above-Ground Piping Systems," New York.
- [9.6] American Society of Civil Engineers, 2011, "Guidelines for Seismic Evaluation and Design of Petrochemical Facilities," 2nd ed., New York.
- [9.7] CalARP Program Seismic Guidance Committee, December 2013, "Guidance for California Accidental Release Prevention (CalARP) Program Seismic Assessments," Sacramento, CA.
- [9.8] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2009, API Standard 609, "Butterfly Valves: Double Flanged, Lug- and Wafer-Type," 7th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [9.9] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2013, ASME B16.34-2013 (ASME B16.34), "Valves Flanged Threaded and Welding End," New York.
- [9.10] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2010, API Standard 607, "Fire Test for Quarter-Turn Valves and Valves Equipped with Nonmetallic Seats," 6th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [9.11] American Petroleum Institute (API), API Recommended Practice 520 P1 and P2 (API 520), "Sizing, Selection, and Installation of Pressure-relieving Devices, Part 1 —Sizing and Selection," 2014, 9th ed., and "Sizing, Selection, and Installation of Pressure-Relieving Devices in Refineries – Part 2 – Installation," 2015, 6th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [9.12] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Section 154.2100 – Vapor Control System, General (33 CFR 154.2100)
- [9.13] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), NFPA 11, "Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam," Quincy, MA. For edition, see California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.
- [9.14] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), NFPA 24, "Standard for the Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances," Quincy, MA. For edition, see California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.
- [9.15] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2013, ASME B16.5-2013 (ASME B16.5), "Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings," New York.
- [9.16] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2007, ASME A13.1-2007 (R2013) (ASME A13.1), "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," New York.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## Division 10

### **SECTION 3110F MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT**

**3110F.1 General.** This section provides the minimum standards for mechanical and electrical equipment at MOTs.

See Section 3101F.3 for definitions of "new" (N) and "existing" (E).

**3110F.2 Marine loading arms.**

**3110F.2.1 General criteria.** Marine loading arms and ancillary systems shall conform to ASME B31.3 [10.1], 33 CFR 154.510 [10.2] and OCIMF "Design and Construction Specification for Marine Loading Arms" [10.3]. Each loading arm used for transferring oil shall have a means of being drained or closed before being disconnected.

The following shall be considered when determining the loading arm maximum allowable extension limits:

1. Vessel sizes and manifold locations
2. Lowest-low water level (datum)
3. Highest-high water level
4. Maximum vessel surge and sway
5. Maximum width of fendering system

For each loading arm, the maximum allowable movement envelope limits shall comply with 2 CCR 2380 [10.4].

Loading arms and ancillary systems shall have a seismic assessment in accordance with Section 3104F.5. For seismic evaluation, design and strengthening of loading arms and ancillary equipment, seismic loads shall be computed per Section 3104F.5.4.1 and the procedure in Section 8.5.3 of ASCE/COPRI 61 [10.5]. For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.

**3110F.2.2 Electrical and hydraulic power systems.**

**3110F.2.2.1 Pressure and control systems (N).**

1. Pressure gauges shall be mounted in accordance with ASME B40.100 [10.6].
2. The hydraulic drive cylinders shall be mounted and meet either the mounting requirements of NFPA T3.6.7 R3 [10.7] or equivalent.
3. In high velocity current (>1.5 knots) areas, all new marine loading arms shall be fitted with quick disconnect couplers and emergency quick release systems in conformance with Sections 6.0 and 7.0 of [10.3]. In complying with this requirement, attention shall be paid to the commentary and guidelines in Part III of reference [10.3].
4. Out-of-limit, balance and the approach of out-of-limit alarms shall be located at or near the loading arm console.

**3110F.2.2.2 Electrical components (N).** The following criteria shall be implemented:

1. Equipment shall be provided with a safety disconnecting device to isolate the entire electrical system from the electrical mains in accordance with Article 430 of the California Electrical Code [10.8].

2. Motor controllers and 3-pole motor overload protection shall be installed and sized in accordance with Article 430 of the California Electrical Code [10.8].

3. Control circuits shall be limited to 120 volts and shall comply with Articles 500 and 501 of the California Electrical Code [10.8]. Alternatively, intrinsically safe wiring and controls may be provided in accordance with Article 504 of the California Electrical Code [10.8] and UL Std. No. 913 [10.9].

4. Grounding and bonding shall comply with the requirements of Article 430 of the California Electrical Code [10.8] and Section 3111F.

Section 3111F includes requirements for electrical equipment, wiring, cables, controls and electrical auxiliaries located in hazardous areas.

**3110F.2.2.3 Remote operation.** The remote control system, where provided, shall conform to the recommendations of the OCIMF [10.3]. The remote operation shall be facilitated by either a pendant control system or by a hand-held radio controller (N).

The pendant control system shall be equipped with a plug-in capability to an active connector located either in the vicinity of the loading arms, or at the loading arm outboard end on the triple swivel, and hard-wired into the control console. The umbilical cord running from the triple swivel to the control console shall be attached to the loading arm. Other umbilical cords shall have sufficient length to reach the maximum operational limits (N).

The radio controller if installed shall comply with 2 CCR 2370 [10.4] and 47 CFR Part 15 [10.10] requirements for transmitters operating in an industrial environment (N/E).

**3110F.3 Oil transfer hoses (N/E).** Hoses for oil transfer service shall be in compliance with 2 CCR 2380 [10.4] and 33 CFR 154.500 [10.11].

Hoses with nominal diameters of 6 inches or larger shall have flanges that meet ASME B16.5 [10.12], or hoses with nominal diameters of 6 inches or less may have quick disconnect fittings provided that they meet ASTM F1122 [10.13].

The minimum hose length shall safely accommodate the vessel's size and maximum movements during transfer operations and mooring (see Section 3105F.2).

**3110F.4 Lifting equipment: winches and cranes.** Lifting equipment for oil service activities, other activities (if operation or failure could cause an oil release) or spill response,

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

shall conform to the provisions in Sections 3110F.4.1 and 3110F.4.2.

Lifting equipment inspection and maintenance shall conform to ASME B30.4 [10.14], ASME B30.7 [10.15] and ASME HST-4 [10.16], as applicable. Inspections by qualified personnel shall be performed annually. Inspection and maintenance records shall be retained.

### **3110F.4.1 Winches.**

1. Winches and ancillary equipment shall be suitable for a marine environment (N/E).
2. Winches shall be provided with a fail-safe braking system, capable of holding the load under all conditions, including a power failure (N/E).
3. Winches shall be fully reversible (N).
4. Shock, transient and abnormal loads shall be considered when selecting winch systems (N).
5. Winches shall have limit switches and automatic trip devices to prevent over-travel of the drum in either direction. Limit switches shall be tested and demonstrated to function correctly under operating conditions without inducing undue tensions or slack in the winch cables (N/E).
6. Under all operating conditions, there shall be at least two full turns of cable on grooved drums, and at least three full turns on ungrooved drums (N/E).
7. Moving winch parts which present caught-in hazards to personnel shall be guarded (N/E).
8. Winches shall have clearly identifiable and readily accessible stop controls (N/E).

### **3110F.4.2 Cranes (N/E).**

1. Cranes shall not be loaded in excess of the manufacturer's rating except during performance tests.
2. Drums on load-hoisting equipment shall be equipped with positive holding devices.
3. Under all operating conditions, there shall be at least two full turns of cable on grooved drums, and at least three full turns on ungrooved drums.
4. Braking equipment shall be capable of stopping, lowering and holding a load of at least the full test load.
5. When not in use, crane booms shall be lowered to ground level or secured to a rest support against displacement by wind loads or other outside forces.
6. Safety systems including devices that affect the safe lifting and handling, such as interlocks, limit switches, load/moment and overload indicators with shutdown capability [10.17], emergency stop switches, radius and locking indicators, shall be provided.

**3110F.5 Shore-to-vessel access for personnel.** This section applies to shore-to-vessel means of access for personnel and equipment provided by the terminal. This includes ancillary

structures and equipment, which support, supplement, deploy and maneuver such vessel access systems.

Shore-to-vessel access for personnel shall conform to 29 CFR 1918.22 [10.18], Sections 19.B and 21.E of USACE EM 385-1-1 [10.19], Chapter 16.4 of ISGOTT [10.20] and the following:

1. Shore-to-vessel access systems shall be designed to withstand the forces from dead, live, wind, vibration, impact loads and the appropriate combination of these loads. The design shall consider all the critical positions of the system in the stored, maintenance, maneuvering and deployed positions, where applicable (N).
2. The minimum live load shall be 50 psf on walkways and 25 plf with a 200 pounds minimum concentrated load in any location or direction on handrails (N).
3. The walkway shall be not less than 36 inches in width (N) and not less than 20 inches for existing walkways (E).
4. The shore-to-vessel access system shall be positioned so as to not interfere with the safe passage or evacuation of personnel (N/E).
5. Guardrails shall be provided on both sides of the access systems with a clearance between the inner most surfaces of the guardrails of not less than 36 inches and shall be maintained for the full length of the walkway (N).
6. Guardrails shall be at a height not less than 33 inches above the walkway surface and shall include an intermediate rail located midway between the walkway surface and the top rail (N/E).
7. The walkway surface, including self-leveling treads, if so equipped, shall be finished with a safe nonslip footing accommodating all operating gangway inclinations (N/E).
8. The undersides of aluminum gangways shall be protected with hard plastic or wooden strips to prevent being dragged or rubbed across any steel deck or component (N/E).

### **3110F.6 Oil sumps and ancillary equipment.** Oil sumps and ancillary equipment shall conform to the following:

1. Sumps for oil drainage shall be equipped with pressure/vacuum vents, automatic draining pumps and shall be tightly covered (N/E).
2. Sumps which provide drainage for more than one berth should be equipped with liquid seals so that a fire on one berth does not spread via the sump (N/E).
3. Sumps shall be located at least 25 ft from the manifolds, base of the loading arms or hose towers (N).
4. Conduct periodic integrity testing of the sump containers and periodic integrity and leak testing of the related valves and piping.

**3110F.7 Vapor control systems.** Vapor control systems shall conform to 33 CFR 154.2000 through 154.2181 [10.21] and API Standard 2610 [10.22]. The effects of seismic, wind, dead, live and other loads shall be considered in the analysis

and design of individual tie-downs of components, such as of steel skirt, vessels, controls and detonation arresters.

**3110F.8 Spill prevention equipment and systems maintenance (N/E).** Mechanical and electrical equipment critical to oil spill prevention and safety, such as, but not limited to: mooring line quick release and loading arm quick disconnect systems, shall be maintained and tested as per the manufacturer's recommendations (N/E). The latest records shall be readily accessible to the Division (N/E).

**3110F.9 Pumps (N/E).** Specification information for all MOT pumps providing oil and fire water service to wharf pipeline systems shall be retained. Information shall include, but not be limited to, pump make and model, motor make and model, flow rate, pressure rating and pump performance curves.

Hydrocarbon pumps that serve the oil transfer operations at the berthing system must be maintained per API Standard 2610 [10.22]. Firewater pumps providing the wharf fire protection shall be maintained in accordance with Section 3108F.6.3.

**3110F.10 Mechanical and electrical equipment seismic assessment (N/E).** Mechanical and electrical equipment shall have a seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5. For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.

#### 3110F.11 References.

- [10.1] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2015, ASME B31.3-2014 (ASME B31.3), "Process Piping," New York.
- [10.2] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Section 154.510 – Loading Arms (33 CFR 154.510)
- [10.3] Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), 1999, "Design and Construction Specification for Marine Loading Arms," 3rd ed., Witherby, London.
- [10.4] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 2, Division 3, Chapter 1, Article 5 – Marine Terminals Inspection and Monitoring (2 CCR 2300 et seq.)
- [10.5] American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), 2014, ASCE/COPRI 61-14 (ASCE/COPRI 61), "Seismic Design of Piers and Wharves", Reston, VA.
- [10.6] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2013, ASME B40.100-2013 (ASME B40.100), "Pressure Gauges and Gauge Attachments," New York.
- [10.7] National Fluid Power Association (NFPA), 2009, NFPA T3.6.7 R3-2009 (R2017) (NFPA T3.6.7 R3), "Fluid Power Systems and Products — Square Head Industrial Cylinders - Mounting Dimensions," Milwaukee, WI.
- [10.8] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 3, California Electrical Code.
- [10.9] Underwriters Laboratory, Inc., 2013, UL Standard No. 913, "Standard for Intrinsically Safe Apparatus

and Associated Apparatus for Use in Class I, II, III, Division 1, Hazardous (Classified) Locations," 8th ed., Northbrook, IL.

- [10.10] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 47, Part 15 – Radio Frequency Devices (47 CFR 15)
- [10.11] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Section 154.500 – Hose Assemblies (33 CFR 154.500)
- [10.12] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2013, ASME B16.5-2013 (ASME B16.5), "Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings," 13th ed., New York.
- [10.13] American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), 2010, ASTM F1122-04(2010) (ASTM F1122), "Standard Specification for Quick Disconnect Couplings (6 in. NPS and Smaller)," 4th ed., West Conshohocken, PA.
- [10.14] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2010, ASME B30.4-2010 (ASME B30.4), "Portal Tower and Pedestal Cranes," 10th ed., New York.
- [10.15] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2011, ASME B30.7-2011 (ASME B30.7), "Winches," 11th ed., New York.
- [10.16] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME) 1999, ASME HST-1999 (R2010) (ASME HST-4), "Performance Standard for Overhead Electric Wire Rope Hoists," New York.
- [10.17] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 29, Section 1917.46 – Load Indicating Devices (29 CFR 1917.46)
- [10.18] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 29, Section 1918.22 – Gangways (29 CFR 1918.22)
- [10.19] US Army Corps of Engineers (USACE), 2008 (05 Jul 11), EM 385-1-1, "Safety and Health Requirements Manual, Sections 19.B and 21.E, Washington, D.C.
- [10.20] International Chamber of Shipping (ICS), Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), International Association of Ports and Harbors (IAPH), 2010, "International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT)," 5th ed., Witherby, London.
- [10.21] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Sections 154.2000 through 154.2250 – Vapor Control Systems (33 CFR 154.2000 et. seq.)
- [10.22] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2005, API Standard 2610 (R2010), "Design, Construction, Operation, Maintenance, and Inspection of Terminal and Tank Facilities," 2nd ed., Washington, D.C.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

## Division 11

### SECTION 3111F ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

**3111F.1 General.** This section provides minimum standards for electrical systems at marine oil terminals.

Electrical systems include the incoming electrical service and components, the electrical distribution system, branch circuit cables and the connections, including, but not limited to:

1. Lighting, for operations, security and navigation
2. Controls for mechanical and electrical equipment
3. Supervision and instrumentation systems for mechanical and electrical equipment
4. Grounding and bonding
5. Corrosion protection through cathodic protection
6. Communications and data handling systems
7. Fire detection systems
8. Fire alarm systems
9. Emergency shutdown systems (ESD)

All electrical systems shall conform to API RP 540 [11.1] and the California Electrical Code [11.2].

See Section 3101F.3 for definitions of "new" (N) and "existing" (E).

**3111F.2 Hazardous area designations and plans (N/E).** Area classifications shall be determined in accordance with API RP 500 [11.3], API RP 540 [11.1] and Articles 500, 501, 504, 505 and 515 of the California Electrical Code [11.2]. A marine oil terminal shall have a current set of scaled plan drawings, with clearly designated areas showing the hazard class, division and group. The plan view shall be supplemented with sections, elevations and details to clearly delineate the area classification at all elevations starting from low water level. The drawings shall be certified by a professional electrical engineer. The plans shall be reviewed and revised when modifications to the structure, product or equipment change hazardous area identifications or boundaries.

**3111F.3 Identification and tagging.** All electrical equipment, cables and conductors shall be clearly identified by means of tags, plates, color coding or other effective means to facilitate troubleshooting and improve safety, and shall conform to the identification carried out for the adjacent on-shore facilities (N). Topics for such identification are found in Articles 110, 200, 210, 230, 384, 480 and 504 of the California Electrical Code [11.2]. Existing electrical equipment (E) shall be tagged.

Where identification is necessary for the proper and safe operation of the equipment, the marking shall be clearly visible and illuminated (N/E). A coded identification system shall apply to all circuits, carrying low or high voltage power, control, supervisory or communication (N).

**3111F.4 Purged or pressurized enclosures for equipment in hazardous locations (N/E).** Purged or pressurized enclo-

sures shall be capable of preventing the entry of combustible gases into such spaces, in accordance with NFPA 496 [11.4]. Special emphasis shall be placed on reliability and ease of operation. The pressurizing equipment shall be electrically monitored and alarms shall be provided to indicate failure of the pressurizing or purging systems.

Pressurized control rooms shall conform to Chapter 7 of NFPA 496 [11.4].

**3111F.5 Electrical service.** Where critical circuits are used for spill prevention, fire control or life safety, an alternative service derived from a separate source and conduit system, shall be located at a safe distance from the main power service. A separate feeder from a double-ended substation or other source backed up by emergency generators will meet this requirement. A stored energy emergency power system (SEEPS) shall be provided for control and supervisory circuits associated with ESD systems (N), see Section 3111F.5.1.

1. Electrical, instrument and control systems used to activate equipment needed to control a fire or mitigate its consequences shall be protected from fire and remain operable for 15 minutes in a 2000°F fire, unless designed to fail-safe during fire exposure. The temperature around these critical components shall not exceed 200°F during 15 minutes of fire exposure (N).
2. Wiring in fireproofed conduits shall be derated 15 percent to account for heat buildup during normal operation. Type MI (mineral insulated, metal sheathed per the California Electrical Code [11.2]) cables may be used in lieu of fireproofing of wiring (N).
3. Emergency cables and conductors shall be located where they are protected from damage caused by traffic, corrosion or other sources (N).
4. Allowance shall be made for electrical faults, overvoltages and other abnormalities (N).

Where solid state motor controls are used for starting and speed control, corrective measures shall be incorporated for mitigating the possible generation of harmonic currents that may affect the ESD or other critical systems (N).

**3111F.5.1 Emergency power systems.** Emergency power systems shall be installed (N) and maintained (N/E) per NFPA 110 [11.5]. This does not include stored energy systems. Stored energy emergency power systems (SEEPS) shall be installed (N) when necessary to maintain continuous uninterruptable power to critical systems. SEEPS shall be installed (N) and maintained (N/E) per NFPA 111 [11.6].

**3111F.6 Grounding and bonding (N/E).**

1. All electrical equipment shall be effectively grounded as per Article 250 of the California Electrical Code [11.2]. All noncurrent carrying metallic equipment, structures, piping and other elements shall also be effectively grounded.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

2. Grounding shall be considered in any active corrosion protection system for on-shore piping, submerged support structures or other systems. Insulation barriers, including flanges or nonconducting hoses shall be used to isolate cathodic protection systems from other electrical/static sources. None of these systems shall be compromised by grounding or bonding arrangements that may interconnect the corrosion protection systems or interfere with them in any way that would reduce their effectiveness.
3. Bonding of vessels to the MOT structure is not permitted.
4. Whenever flanges of pipelines with cathodic protection are to be opened for repair or other work, the flanges shall be bonded prior to separation.
5. Direct wiring to ground shall be provided from all towers, loading arms or other high structures that are susceptible to lightning surges or strikes.

**3111F.7 Equipment specifications (N).** All electrical systems and components shall conform to National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) standards or be certified by a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).

#### **3111F.8 Illumination (N/E).**

**3111F.8.1 Illumination Locations.** At a minimum, MOTs shall provide fixed lighting (or luminaires) that illuminates the following areas:

1. Transfer connection points on the MOT
2. Transfer connection points on any barge moored at the MOT that may transfer oil
3. Transfer operations work areas on the MOT
4. Transfer operations work areas on any barge moored at the MOT that may transfer oil
5. Areas defined in Sections 17.4 and 24.6.4 of ISGOTT [11.7], as appropriate

Lighting shall be located or shielded so as not to mislead or otherwise interfere with off-site areas as governed by federal, state and local agency requirements.

**3111F.8.2 Illumination Levels.** The minimum illumination levels shall be as follows:

1. 5.0 footcandles (54 lux) at transfer connection points
2. 1.0 footcandle (11 lux) in transfer operations work and other areas

Where the illumination appears to the Division to be inadequate, the Division may require verification by instrument of the levels of illumination. The illumination levels shall be verified by measurement at the locations defined in Section 3111F.8.1, if required. All measurements shall be taken on a horizontal plane, 3 feet above the MOT and barge deck or walking surface (33 CFR 154.570 (b) [11.8]).

**3111F.8.3 Emergency Power for Illumination (N).** In the event of power supply failure, the emergency power system (Section 3111F.5.1) shall automatically illuminate all

of the areas defined in Section 3111F.8.1, and fire pump, hydrant, monitor, foam and hose connection points on the MOT. The emergency power system shall provide power for a duration of not less than 60 minutes at a level of not less than an average of 0.5 footcandle (5.5 lux).

#### **3111F.9 Communications, control and monitoring systems.**

**3111F.9.1 Communication systems (N/E).** Communications systems shall comply with 2 CCR 2370 [11.7] and Section 6 of OCIMF "Guide on Marine Terminal Fire Protection and Emergency Evacuation" [11.9].

**3111F.9.2 Overfill monitoring and controls (N/E).** Overfill protection systems shall conform to Appendix C of API Standard 2350 [11.10]. These systems shall be tested before each transfer operation or monthly, whichever is less frequent. Where vessel or barge overfill sensors and alarms are provided, they shall comply with 33 CFR 154.2102 [11.11].

All sumps shall be provided with level sensing devices to initiate an alarm to alert the operator at the approach of a high level condition. A second alarm shall be initiated at a high-high level to alert the operator. Unless gravity drainage is provided, sumps must have an automatic pump, programmed to start at a predetermined safe level.

**3111F.9.3 Monitoring systems (N/E).** All monitoring systems and instrumentation such as, but not limited to: velocity monitoring systems, tension monitoring systems, anemometers and current meters, shall be installed, maintained and calibrated per the manufacturer's recommendations. Specifications shall be retained. The latest records shall be readily accessible to the Division.

**3111F.10 Cathodic Protection Systems (CPS) (N/E).** CPS operating, testing and maintenance criteria for underwater structures shall conform to UFC 3-570-01 [11.12]. Structure-to-electrolyte potential measurements shall be taken at least annually. CPS operating, testing and maintenance criteria for buried and submerged pipelines shall conform to API 570 [11.13].

All electrical insulating and isolating devices for protection against static, stray and impressed currents shall be tested in accordance with 2 CCR 2341 and 2380 [11.7].

CPS design criteria and location of anodes, electrical leads and rectifiers shall be documented and retained. Periodic CPS measurements, test data and inspection findings shall be retained.

**3111F.11 Electrical systems seismic assessment (N/E).** Electrical systems shall have a seismic assessment per Section 3104F.5. For strength evaluation of supports and attachments, see Section 3107F.7.

#### **3111F.12 References.**

[11.1] American Petroleum Institute (API), 1999, API Recommended Practice 540 (R2004) (API RP 540), "Electrical Installations in Petroleum Processing Plants," 4th ed., Washington, D.C.

[11.2] California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 3, California Electrical Code.

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

- [11.3] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2012 (Errata January 2014), API Recommended Practice 500 (API RP 500), “Recommended Practice for Classification of Locations for Electrical Installations at Petroleum Facilities Classified as Class I, Division 1 and Division 2,” 3rd ed., Washington, D.C.
- [11.4] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 2012, NFPA 496, “Standard for Purged and Pressurized Enclosures for Electrical Equipment,” 2013 ed., Quincy, MA.
- [11.5] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), NFPA 110, “Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems,” Quincy, MA. For edition, see California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.
- [11.6] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), NFPA 111, “Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems,” Quincy, MA. For edition, see California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 24, Part 2, Chapter 35 – Referenced Standards.
- [11.7] International Chamber of Shipping (ICS), Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), International Association of Ports and Harbors (IAPH), 2006, “International Safety Guide for Oil Tankers and Terminals (ISGOTT),” 5th ed., Witherby, London.
- [11.8] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Section 154.570 – Lighting (33 CFR 154.570)
- [11.9] Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), 1987, “Guide on Marine Terminal Fire Protection and Emergency Evacuation,” 1st ed., Witherby, London.
- [11.10] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2012, API Standard 2350, “Overfill Protection for Storage Tanks in Petroleum Facilities,” 4th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [11.11] Code of Federal Regulations (CFR), Title 33, Section 154.2102 – Facility Requirements for Vessel Liquid Overfill Protection (33 CFR 154.2102)
- [11.12] Department of Defense, 28 November 2016, Unified Facilities Criteria (UFC) 3-570-01, “Cathodic Protection,” Washington, D.C.
- [11.13] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2009, API 570, “Piping Inspection Code: In-service Inspection, Repair, and Alteration of Piping Systems,” 3rd ed., Washington, D.C.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

## Division 12

### **SECTION 3112F REQUIREMENTS SPECIFIC TO MARINE TERMINALS THAT TRANSFER LNG**

**3112F.1 Purpose and applicability.** Section 3112F provides minimum requirements specific to onshore marine terminals that transfer LNG. Sections 3101F through 3111F are also applicable, as appropriate. Offshore marine terminals that transfer LNG are subject to a case-by-case review and approval by the Division.

#### **3112F.2 Risk and Hazards Analyses.**

1. Prior to LNG transfer at marine terminal, a hazards identification exercise shall be carried out to isolate potential internal and external events that may cause a spill and/or impact to public health, safety and the environment.
2. Hazards analysis shall consider every component, part of a structure, equipment item, and system, whose failure could cause a major accident, result in unacceptable incident escalation beyond the design basis, or adversely affect the potential for the passive and active systems to control or shutdown the facility. Safety Critical Components and Safety Critical Systems shall be identified.
3. Consequence models shall be developed for credible scenarios to identify Lower Flammability Limit (LFL) hazard regions. Release diameters shall include, at a minimum, 3mm, 10mm and 50 mm sizes. Scenarios involving the marine loading arms shall consider a full bore release.
4. Consequence models shall develop radiant heat zones from jet and pool fires for the 25 kW/m<sup>2</sup>, 12.5 kW/m<sup>2</sup>, 5 kW/m<sup>2</sup> and 1.6 kW/m<sup>2</sup> thermal endpoints.
5. A Cryogenic Exposure Analysis (CEA) shall be conducted to identify equipment and structures susceptible to cryogenic spray and pool exposure due to LNG releases from different size holes.
6. A Facility Essential Systems Survivability Assessment (ESSA) shall be conducted to determine the survivability of the Safety Critical Components.
7. Impact on Safety Critical Components and Systems shall be mitigated.

**3112F.3 Specific berthing and mooring considerations.** In addition to the minimum design requirements for berthing and mooring in Sections 3103F, 3105F and 3107F of this code, the following shall be satisfied:

1. Wind force and moment coefficients for LNG vessels shall be used in accordance with Appendix A of OCIMF MEG 3 [12.1], as appropriate.
2. The limiting environmental criteria for which the LNG carrier may safely remain berthed at the terminal shall be determined using dynamic mooring analysis.

3. Real time monitoring and recording of environmental conditions including wind, current and waves shall be conducted to assist in mooring system management.

4. Vessel hull pressure shall be considered in fender analyses and design.

**3112F.4 Fire protection.** A Fire and Explosion Hazard Analysis (FEHA) for potential pool fires, jet fires and flash fires, considering LNG releases from different size holes, as specified in Section 3112F.2, shall be conducted and result in recommendations regarding:

1. Type, quantity and location of fire and gas detection devices to detect potential fires and/or gas releases in a specified time frame
2. Fire suppression coverage, including fixed and portable systems, and equipment necessary to allow the design scenarios to be mitigated and/or extinguished
3. Design application rates for required fire protection systems
4. Firefighting requirements, including an analysis of the capability of response by other facilities, USCG and federal, state and local agencies

Critical structural supports and equipment within the fire exposed areas identified in the FEHA shall be provided with passive fire protection designed for the duration identified in the analysis.

Emergency shutdown (ESD) systems shall be provided, in accordance with API RP 14C [12.2] and Section 12.3 of NFPA 59A [12.3], to shut down the flow of LNG to/from the terminal and shut down equipment whose continued operation could add to or prolong an emergency event.

The ESD system shall be of a failsafe design or shall be otherwise installed, located or protected to minimize the possibility that it becomes inoperative in the event of an emergency or failure at the primary control system. ESD system components that may be exposed to fire effects shall be evaluated to confirm that the actuator operation will not be impaired.

#### **3112F.5 LNG pipelines.**

1. All pipe specified for use in cryogenic service shall be furnished in accordance with Paragraph 323.2.2A and Table A-1 of ASME B31.3 [12.4]. The extreme thickness of insulation on cryogenic piping shall be taken into consideration during piping design.

2. All piping materials, including gaskets and thread compounds, shall be selected appropriate to the range of temperatures to which subjected. Piping that may be exposed to the low temperature of LNG or to the heat of an ignited spill, during an emergency where such exposure could result in a failure of the piping, shall comply with at least one of the following:

- (a) Made of material(s) that can withstand both the normal operating temperature and extreme

## MARINE OIL TERMINALS

- temperature to which the piping may be subjected during the emergency*
- (b) *Protected by insulation or other means to delay failure due to extreme temperatures until corrective action can be taken by the operator.*
  - (c) *Capable of being isolated and having the flow stopped where piping is exposed only to the heat of an ignited spill during the emergency*
3. *LNG pipelines shall be designed for cool-down with liquid nitrogen where the use of LNG is not possible.*
  4. *All LNG drains should be located within a containment area or piped to a collection system or containment area.*
  5. *LNG lines shall be analyzed for a start-up case where the top of the pipe is 90 degrees F warmer than the bottom of the pipe. The upward bowing of the pipe shall be limited to 1.25 inches.*
  6. *Pipe supports, including any insulation systems used to support pipe whose stability is essential, shall be resistant to or protected against fire exposure, escaping cold liquid, or both if they are subject to such exposure.*
  7. *Pipe supports for cold lines shall be designed to minimize excessive heat transfer, which can result in piping failure by ice formations or embrittlement of supporting steel. If icing up of piping and components is unavoidable, the weight of the accumulated ice shall be considered during piping and support design.*
  8. *Valves shall comply with ASME B31.5 [12.5].*
  9. *Cryogenic valves in liquid cryogenic service shall not be installed in vertical lines. Valves in liquid cryogenic service shall be installed in horizontal lines with the stem in the vertical position or at least 45 degrees vertically from the horizontal centerline of the pipe.*
  10. *All cryogenic valves (except butterfly valves, check valves and globe valves) shall have a body cavity relief to the "safe" side of the valve. All cryogenic valves with a body cavity relief shall be marked on the exterior of the body with a letter "V" and an arrow pointing to the direction of the venting side.*
  11. *Thermal relief valves shall be installed to protect the equipment and piping from over pressuring as a result of ambient heat input to blocked in LNG or other light hydrocarbon liquids.*
  12. *Cryogenic subsea pipeline designs shall be qualified by a certifying agency, acceptable to the Division, in a qualification program that demonstrates that the system has been designed, fabricated and can function as intended with safeguards provided as determined to be necessary.*

### 3112F.6 Mechanical components and systems.

1. *The CEA analysis shall be used to recommend acceptable cryogenic exposure durations for Safety Critical Components to produce CEA drawings.*

2. *ESD system components, which are exposed to cryogenic effects, shall be evaluated to confirm that the actuators will not be impaired by the potential exposures, thereby preventing the components from failing to a safe position.*
3. *Critical structural supports and equipment within the cryogenically exposed areas shall be provided with cryogenic insulation. The cryogenic insulation and passive fire protection shall be designed for sufficient incident duration.*
4. *For marine loading arms in LNG service, ice formation on non-insulated arms and hoses must be taken into account. Mechanisms for venting, apex venting, purging and cool down of the marine loading arms shall be identified on the P&IDs.*
5. *Areas beneath marine arms shall have restricted access during and after product transfer, until there is no longer danger of falling ice.*

### 3112F.7 References.

- [12.1] Oil Companies International Marine Forum (OCIMF), 2008, "Mooring Equipment Guidelines (MEG3)," 3rd ed., London, England.
- [12.2] American Petroleum Institute (API), 2001 (Reaffirmed 2007), API Recommended Practice 14C (API RP 14C), "Recommended Practice for Analysis, Design, Installation, and Testing of Basic Surface Safety Systems for Offshore Production Platforms," 7th ed., Washington, D.C.
- [12.3] National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 2012, NFPA 59A, "Standard for the Production, Storage, and Handling of Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG)," 2013 ed., Quincy, MA.
- [12.4] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2015, ASME B31.3-2014 (ASME B31.3), "Process Piping," New York.
- [12.5] American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), 2013, ASME B31.5-2013 (ASME B31.5), "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components," New York.

**Authority:** Sections 8750 through 8760, Public Resources Code.

**Reference:** Sections 8750, 8751, 8755 and 8757, Public Resources Code.

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 32 – ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY**

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
 See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X		X	X				X	X	X				X								X
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.



## CHAPTER 32

# ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY

**User note:**

**About this chapter:** From time to time it is necessary or appropriate for a portion of a building to encroach onto an adjoining public right-of-way. Chapter 32 establishes parameters for such encroachments not only at grade but also above and below grade.

### **SECTION 3201 GENERAL**

**3201.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern the encroachment of structures into the public right-of-way.

**3201.2 Measurement.** The projection of any structure or portion thereof shall be the distance measured horizontally from the *lot line* to the outermost point of the projection.

**3201.3 Other laws.** The provisions of this chapter shall not be construed to permit the violation of other laws or ordinances regulating the use and occupancy of public property.

**3201.4 Drainage.** Drainage water collected from a roof, awning, canopy or marquee, and condensate from mechanical equipment shall not flow over a public walking surface.

### **SECTION 3202 ENCROACHMENTS**

**3202.1 Encroachments below grade.** Encroachments below grade shall comply with Sections 3202.1.1 through 3202.1.3.

**3202.1.1 Structural support.** A part of a building erected below grade that is necessary for structural support of the building or structure shall not project beyond the lot lines, except that the footings of street walls or their supports that are located not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) below grade shall not project more than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond the street lot line.

**3202.1.2 Vaults and other enclosed spaces.** The construction and utilization of vaults and other enclosed spaces below grade shall be subject to the terms and conditions of the applicable governing authority.

**3202.1.3 Areaways.** Areaways shall be protected by grates, guards or other approved means.

**3202.2 Encroachments above grade and below 8 feet in height.** Encroachments into the public right-of-way above grade and below 8 feet (2438 mm) in height shall be prohibited except as provided for in Sections 3202.2.1 through 3202.2.3. Doors and windows shall not open or project into the public right-of-way.

**3202.2.1 Steps.** Steps shall not project more than 12 inches (305 mm) and shall be guarded by approved devices not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in height, or shall be located between columns or pilasters.

**3202.2.2 Architectural features.** Columns or pilasters, including bases and moldings, shall not project more than

12 inches (305 mm). Belt courses, lintels, sills, architraves, pediments and similar architectural features shall not project more than 4 inches (102 mm).

**3202.2.3 Awnings.** The vertical clearance from the public right-of-way to the lowest part of any awning, including valances, shall be not less than 7 feet (2134 mm).

**3202.3 Encroachments 8 feet or more above grade.** Encroachments 8 feet (2438 mm) or more above grade shall comply with Sections 3202.3.1 through 3202.3.4.

**3202.3.1 Awnings, canopies, marquees and signs.** Awnings, canopies, marquees and signs shall be constructed so as to support applicable loads as specified in Chapter 16. Awnings, canopies, marquees and signs with less than 15 feet (4572 mm) of clearance above the sidewalk shall not extend into or occupy more than two-thirds the width of the sidewalk measured from the building. Stanchions or columns that support awnings, canopies, marquees and signs shall be located not less than 2 feet (610 mm) in from the curb line.

**3202.3.2 Windows, balconies, architectural features and mechanical equipment.** Where the vertical clearance above grade to projecting windows, balconies, architectural features or mechanical equipment is more than 8 feet (2438 mm), 1 inch (25 mm) of encroachment is permitted for each additional 1 inch (25 mm) of clearance above 8 feet (2438 mm), but the maximum encroachment shall be 4 feet (1219 mm).

**3202.3.3 Encroachments 15 feet or more above grade.** Encroachments 15 feet (4572 mm) or more above grade shall not be limited.

**3202.3.4 Pedestrian walkways.** The installation of a pedestrian walkway over a public right-of-way shall be subject to the approval of the applicable governing authority. The vertical clearance from the public right-of-way to the lowest part of a pedestrian walkway shall be not less than 15 feet (4572 mm).

**3202.4 Temporary encroachments.** Where allowed by the applicable governing authority, vestibules and storm enclosures shall not be erected for a period of time exceeding 7 months in any 1 year and shall not encroach more than 3 feet (914 mm) nor more than one-fourth of the width of the sidewalk beyond the street lot line. Temporary entrance awnings shall be erected with a clearance of not less than 7 feet (2134 mm) to the lowest portion of the hood or awning where supported on removable steel or other approved noncombustible support.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### CHAPTER 33 – SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter	X		X					X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below				X	X		X															
Chapter / Section																						
3301				X	X																	
3302				X	X																	
3303				X	X																	
3304				X	X																	
3304.1.5				X																		
3305				X	X																	
3306				X	X																	
3306.2				X			X															
3307				X	X																	
3307.1, Note				X	X																	
3308				X	X																	
3310																						

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

||  
||



## CHAPTER 33

# SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

**User notes:**

**About this chapter:** While the balance of the chapters in this code specify how a building is to be designed and constructed in order to be in compliance with the code, Chapter 33 looks to the actual construction process. Parameters are provided for demolition and for protecting adjacent property during demolition and construction. This chapter also addresses the need for a fire watch during nonworking hours for certain buildings once the construction has progressed significantly. Issues such as how to provide egress while the building is growing, the timing of standpipe and sprinkler installation, and protection of pedestrians are addressed.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to sections preceded by the designation [BS] will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

### SECTION 3301 GENERAL

**3301.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter shall govern safety during construction and the protection of adjacent public and private properties.

**3301.2 Storage and placement.** Construction equipment and materials shall be stored and placed so as not to endanger the public, the workers or adjoining property for the duration of the construction project.

\*\*

**[BS] 3301.2.1 Structural and construction loads.** Structural roof components shall be capable of supporting the roof-covering system and the material and equipment loads that will be encountered during installation of the system.

### SECTION 3302 CONSTRUCTION SAFEGUARDS

**3302.1 Alterations, repairs and additions.** Required exits, existing structural elements, fire protection devices and sanitary safeguards shall be maintained at all times during alterations, repairs or additions to any building or structure.

**Exceptions:**

1. Where such required elements or devices are being altered or repaired, adequate substitute provisions shall be made.
2. Maintenance of such elements and devices is not required where the existing building is not occupied.

**3302.2 Manner of removal.** Waste materials shall be removed in a manner that prevents injury or damage to persons, adjoining properties and public rights-of-way.

**3302.3 Fire safety during construction.** Fire safety during construction shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the *California Fire Code*.

### SECTION 3303 DEMOLITION

**3303.1 Construction documents.** Construction documents and a schedule for demolition shall be submitted where required by the building official. Where such information is required, work shall not be done until such construction documents or schedule, or both, are approved.

**3303.2 Pedestrian protection.** The work of demolishing any building shall not be commenced until pedestrian protection is in place as required by this chapter.

**3303.3 Means of egress.** A horizontal exit shall not be destroyed unless and until a substitute means of egress has been provided and approved.

**3303.4 Vacant lot.** Where a structure has been demolished or removed, the vacant lot shall be filled and maintained to the existing grade or in accordance with the ordinances of the jurisdiction having authority.

**3303.5 Water accumulation.** Provision shall be made to prevent the accumulation of water or damage to any foundations on the premises or the adjoining property.

**3303.6 Utility connections.** Service utility connections shall be discontinued and capped in accordance with the approved rules and the requirements of the applicable governing authority.

**3303.7 Fire safety during demolition.** Fire safety during demolition shall comply with the applicable requirements of this code and the applicable provisions of Chapter 33 of the *California Fire Code*.

### SECTION 3304 SITE WORK

**3304.1 Excavation and fill.** Excavation and fill for buildings and structures shall be constructed or protected so as not to endanger life or property. Stumps and roots shall be removed

## SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

from the soil to a depth of not less than 12 inches (305 mm) below the surface of the ground in the area to be occupied by the building. Wood forms that have been used in placing concrete, if within the ground or between foundation sills and the ground, shall be removed before a building is occupied or used for any purpose. Before completion, loose or casual wood shall be removed from direct contact with the ground under the building.

**3304.1.1 Slope limits.** Slopes for permanent fill shall be not steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). Cut slopes for permanent excavations shall be not steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope). Deviation from the foregoing limitations for cut slopes shall be permitted only upon the presentation of a soil investigation report acceptable to the building official.

**3304.1.2 Surcharge.** Fill or other surcharge loads shall not be placed adjacent to any building or structure unless such building or structure is capable of withstanding the additional loads caused by the fill or surcharge. Existing footings or foundations that can be affected by any excavation shall be underpinned adequately or otherwise protected against settlement and shall be protected against lateral movement.

**3304.1.3 Footings on adjacent slopes.** For footings on adjacent slopes, see Chapter 18.

**3304.1.4 Fill supporting foundations.** Fill to be used to support the foundations of any building or structure shall comply with Section 1804.6. Special inspections of compacted fill shall be in accordance with Section 1705.6.

**3304.1.5 [HCD 1] Storm water drainage and retention during construction.** Projects which disturb less than one acre of soil and are not part of a larger common plan of development which in total disturbs one acre or more, shall manage storm water drainage during construction in accordance with the California Green Building Standards Code (CALGreen), Chapter 4, Division 4.1.

## SECTION 3305 SANITARY

**3305.1 Facilities required.** Sanitary facilities shall be provided during construction, remodeling or demolition activities in accordance with the *California Plumbing Code*.

TABLE 3306.1  
PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

HEIGHT OF CONSTRUCTION	DISTANCE FROM CONSTRUCTION TO LOT LINE	TYPE OF PROTECTION REQUIRED
8 feet or less	Less than 5 feet	Construction railings
	5 feet or more	None
More than 8 feet	Less than 5 feet	Barrier and covered walkway
	5 feet or more, but not more than one-fourth the height of construction	Barrier and covered walkway
	5 feet or more, but between one-fourth and one-half the height of construction	Barrier
	5 feet or more, but exceeding one-half the height of construction	None

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

## SECTION 3306 PROTECTION OF PEDESTRIANS

**[BS] 3306.1 Protection required.** Pedestrians shall be protected during construction, remodeling and demolition activities as required by this chapter and Table 3306.1. Signs shall be provided to direct pedestrian traffic.

**[BS] 3306.2 Walkways.** A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel in front of every construction and demolition site unless the applicable governing authority authorizes the sidewalk to be fenced or closed. A walkway shall be provided for pedestrian travel that leads from a building entrance or exit of an occupied structure to a public way. Walkways shall be of sufficient width to accommodate the pedestrian traffic, but shall be not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) in width. Walkways shall be provided with a durable walking surface. Walkways shall be accessible in accordance with Chapter 11A or 11B as applicable, and shall be designed to support all imposed loads, and the design live load shall be not less than 150 pounds per square foot (psf) (7.2 kN/m<sup>2</sup>).

**[BS] 3306.3 Directional barricades.** Pedestrian traffic shall be protected by a directional barricade where the walkway extends into the street. The directional barricade shall be of sufficient size and construction to direct vehicular traffic away from the pedestrian path.

**[BS] 3306.4 Construction railings.** Construction railings shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) in height and shall be sufficient to direct pedestrians around construction areas.

**[BS] 3306.5 Barriers.** Barriers shall be not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height and shall be placed on the side of the walkway nearest the construction. Barriers shall extend the entire length of the construction site. Openings in such barriers shall be protected by doors that are normally kept closed.

**[BS] 3306.6 Barrier design.** Barriers shall be designed to resist loads required in Chapter 16 unless constructed as follows:

1. Barriers shall be provided with 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) top and bottom plates.
2. The barrier material shall be boards not less than  $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (19.1 mm) thick or wood structural panels not less than  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch (6.4 mm) thick.
3. Wood structural use panels shall be bonded with an adhesive identical to that for exterior wood structural use panels.

4. Wood structural use panels  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) or  $\frac{5}{16}$  inch (23.8 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.
5. Wood structural use panels  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) or  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (12.7 mm) in thickness shall have studs spaced not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) on center provided that a 2-inch by 4-inch (51 mm by 102 mm) stiffener is placed horizontally at mid-height where the stud spacing is greater than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.
6. Wood structural use panels  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) or thicker shall not span over 8 feet (2438 mm).

**[BS] 3306.7 Covered walkways.** Covered walkways shall have a clear height of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) as measured from the floor surface to the canopy overhead. Adequate lighting shall be provided at all times. Covered walkways shall be designed to support all imposed loads. The design live load shall be not less than 150 psf ( $7.2 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) for the entire structure.

**Exception:** Roofs and supporting structures of covered walkways for new, light-frame construction not exceeding two stories above grade plane are permitted to be designed for a live load of 75 psf ( $3.6 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) or the loads imposed on them, whichever is greater. In lieu of such designs, the roof and supporting structure of a covered walkway are permitted to be constructed as follows:

1. Footings shall be continuous 2-inch by 6-inch (51 mm by 152 mm) members.
2. Posts not less than 4 inches by 6 inches (102 mm by 152 mm) shall be provided on both sides of the roof and spaced not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) on center.
3. Stringers not less than 4 inches by 12 inches (102 mm by 305 mm) shall be placed on edge upon the posts.
4. Joists resting on the stringers shall be not less than 2 inches by 8 inches (51 mm by 203 mm) and shall be spaced not more than 2 feet (610 mm) on center.
5. The deck shall be planks not less than 2 inches (51 mm) thick or wood structural panels with an exterior exposure durability classification not less than  $\frac{23}{32}$  inch (18.3 mm) thick nailed to the joists.
6. Each post shall be knee braced to joists and stringers by members not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm); 4 feet (1219 mm) in length.
7. A curb that is not less than 2 inches by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) shall be set on edge along the outside edge of the deck.

**[BS] 3306.8 Repair, maintenance and removal.** Pedestrian protection required by this chapter shall be maintained in place and kept in good order for the entire length of time pedestrians are subject to being endangered. The owner or the owner's authorized agent, on completion of the construction activity, shall immediately remove walkways, debris and other obstructions and leave such public property in as good a condition as it was before such work was commenced.

**[BS] 3306.9 Adjacent to excavations.** Every excavation on a site located 5 feet (1524 mm) or less from the street lot line shall be enclosed with a barrier not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height. Where located more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the street lot line, a barrier shall be erected where required by the building official. Barriers shall be of adequate strength to resist wind pressure as specified in Chapter 16.

## SECTION 3307 PROTECTION OF ADJOINING PROPERTY

**[BS] 3307.1 Protection required.** Adjoining public and private property shall be protected from damage during construction, remodeling and demolition work. Protection shall be provided for footings, foundations, party walls, chimneys, skylights and roofs. Provisions shall be made to control water runoff and erosion during construction or demolition activities. The person making or causing an excavation to be made shall provide written notice to the owners of adjoining buildings advising them that the excavation is to be made and that the adjoining buildings should be protected. Said notification shall be delivered not less than 10 days prior to the scheduled starting date of the excavation.

**[BS] 3307.2 Excavation retention systems.** Where a retention system is used to provide support of an excavation for protection of adjacent structures, the system shall conform to the requirements in Sections 3307.2.1 through 3307.2.3.

**[BS] 3307.2.1 Excavation retention system design.** Excavation retention systems shall be designed by a registered design professional to provide vertical and lateral support.

**[BS] 3307.2.2 Excavation retention system monitoring.** The retention system design shall include requirements for monitoring of the system and adjacent structures for horizontal and vertical movement.

**[BS] 3307.2.3 Retention system removal.** Elements of the system shall only be removed or decommissioned where adequate replacement support is provided by backfill or by the new structure. Removal or decommissioning shall be performed in such a manner that protects the adjacent property.

**[HCD 1 & HCD 2] Note:** See Civil Code Section 832 for additional requirements related to adjoining properties and excavations.

## SECTION 3308 TEMPORARY USE OF STREETS, ALLEYS AND PUBLIC PROPERTY

**3308.1 Storage and handling of materials.** The temporary use of streets or public property for the storage or handling of materials or of equipment required for construction or demolition, and the protection provided to the public shall comply with the provisions of the applicable governing authority and this chapter.

**3308.1.1 Obstructions.** Construction materials and equipment shall not be placed or stored so as to obstruct access

## SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION

to fire hydrants, standpipes, fire or police alarm boxes, catch basins or manholes, nor shall such material or equipment be located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of a street intersection, or placed so as to obstruct normal observations of traffic signals or to hinder the use of public transit loading platforms.

**3308.2 Utility fixtures.** Building materials, fences, sheds or any obstruction of any kind shall not be placed so as to obstruct free approach to any fire hydrant, fire department connection, utility pole, manhole, fire alarm box or catch basin, or so as to interfere with the passage of water in the gutter. Protection against damage shall be provided to such utility fixtures during the progress of the work, but sight of them shall not be obstructed.

## SECTION 3309 FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

**[F] 3309.1 Where required.** Structures under construction, alteration or demolition shall be provided with not fewer than one approved portable fire extinguisher in accordance with Section 906 and sized for not less than ordinary hazard as follows:

1. At each stairway on all floor levels where combustible materials have accumulated.
2. In every storage and construction shed.
3. Additional portable fire extinguishers shall be provided where special hazards exist, such as the storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids.

**[F] 3309.2 Fire hazards.** The provisions of this code and the *California Fire Code* shall be strictly observed to safeguard against all fire hazards attendant upon construction operations.

## SECTION 3310 MEANS OF EGRESS

**3310.1 Stairways required.** Where building construction exceeds 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access, a temporary or permanent stairway shall be provided. As construction progresses, such stairway shall be extended to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.

**[F] 3310.2 Maintenance of means of egress.** Means of egress and required accessible means of egress shall be maintained at all times during construction, demolition, remodeling or alterations and additions to any building.

**Exception:** Existing means of egress need not be maintained where approved temporary means of egress systems and facilities are provided.

## SECTION 3311 STANDPIPES

**[F] 3311.1 Where required.** In buildings required to have standpipes by Section 905.3.1, not fewer than one standpipe shall be provided for use during construction. Such stand-

pipes shall be installed prior to construction exceeding 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access. Such standpipes shall be provided with fire department hose connections at locations adjacent to stairways complying with Section 3310.1. As construction progresses, such standpipes shall be extended to within one floor of the highest point of construction having secured decking or flooring.

**[F] 3311.2 Buildings being demolished.** Where a building is being demolished and a standpipe exists within such a building, such standpipe shall be maintained in an operable condition so as to be available for use by the fire department. Such standpipe shall be demolished with the building but shall not be demolished more than one floor below the floor being demolished.

**[F] 3311.3 Detailed requirements.** Standpipes shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 9.

**Exception:** Standpipes shall be either temporary or permanent in nature, and with or without a water supply, provided that such standpipes conform to the requirements of Section 905 as to capacity, outlets and materials.

## SECTION 3312 AUTOMATIC SPRINKLER SYSTEM

**[F] 3312.1 Completion before occupancy.** In buildings where an automatic sprinkler system is required by this code, it shall be unlawful to occupy any portion of a building or structure until the automatic sprinkler system installation has been tested and approved, except as provided in Section 111.3.

**[F] 3312.2 Operation of valves.** Operation of sprinkler control valves shall be permitted only by properly authorized personnel and shall be accompanied by notification of duly designated parties. When the sprinkler protection is being regularly turned off and on to facilitate connection of newly completed segments, the sprinkler control valves shall be checked at the end of each work period to ascertain that protection is in service.

## SECTION 3313 WATER SUPPLY FOR FIRE PROTECTION

**[F] 3313.1 Where required.** An approved water supply for fire protection, either temporary or permanent, shall be made available as soon as combustible building materials arrive on the site, on commencement of vertical combustible construction, and on installation of a standpipe system in buildings under construction, in accordance with Sections 3313.2 through 3313.5.

**Exception:** The fire code official is authorized to reduce the fire-flow requirements for isolated buildings or a group of buildings in rural areas or small communities where the development of full fire-flow requirements is impractical.

**[F] 3313.2 Combustible building materials.** When combustible building materials of the building under construction are delivered to a site, a minimum fire flow of 500 gallons per

minute (1893 L/m) shall be provided. The fire hydrant used to provide this fire flow supply shall be within 500 feet (152 m) of the combustible building materials, as measured along an approved fire apparatus access lane. Where the site configuration is such that one fire hydrant cannot be located within 500 feet (152 m) of all combustible building materials, additional fire hydrants shall be required to provide coverage in accordance with this section.

**[F] 3313.3 Vertical construction of Types III, IV and V construction.** Prior to commencement of vertical construction of Type III, IV or V buildings that utilize any combustible building materials, the fire flow required by Sections 3313.3.1 through 3313.3.3 shall be provided, accompanied by fire hydrants in sufficient quantity to deliver the required fire flow and proper coverage.

**[F] 3313.3.1 Fire separation up to 30 feet.** Where a building of Type III, IV or V construction has a fire separation distance of less than 30 feet (9144 mm) from property lot lines, and an adjacent property has an existing structure or otherwise can be built on, the water supply shall provide either a minimum of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m), or the entire fire flow required for the building when constructed, whichever is greater.

**[F] 3313.3.2 Fire separation of 30 feet up to 60 feet.** Where a building of Type III, IV or V construction has a fire separation distance of 30 feet (9144 mm) up to 60 feet (18 288 mm) from property lot lines, and an adjacent property has an existing structure or otherwise can be built on, the water supply shall provide a minimum of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m), or 50 percent of the fire flow required for the building when constructed, whichever is greater.

**[F] 3313.3.3 Fire separation of 60 feet or greater.** Where a building of Type III, IV or V construction has a fire separation of 60 feet (18 288 mm) or greater from a property lot line, a water supply of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m) shall be provided.

**[F] 3313.4 Vertical construction, Types I and II construction.** If combustible building materials are delivered to the construction site, water supply in accordance with Section 3313.2 shall be provided. Additional water supply for fire flow is not required prior to commencing vertical construction of Type I and II buildings.

**[F] 3313.5 Standpipe supply.** Regardless of the presence of combustible building materials, the construction type or the fire separation distance, where a standpipe is required in accordance with Section 3311, a water supply providing a minimum flow of 500 gallons per minute (1893 L/m) shall be provided. The fire hydrant used for this water supply shall be located within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of the fire department connection supplying the standpipe.

## SECTION 3314 FIRE WATCH DURING CONSTRUCTION

**[F] 3314.1 Fire watch during combustible construction.** A fire watch shall be provided during nonworking hours for construction that exceeds 40 feet (12 192 mm) in height above the lowest adjacent grade at any point along the building perimeter, for new multistory construction with an aggregate area exceeding 50,000 square feet (4645 m<sup>2</sup>) per story or as required by the fire code official.



## CHAPTER 34

# RESERVED

*Note: Provisions of former Chapter 34, Existing Structures, are now located in Part 10, California Existing Building Code. This change is in keeping with modifications to the 2021 editions of the International Building Code and International Existing Building Code by the International Code Council. See Section 101.4.7.*



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X														X								
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below							X																X
Chapter/Section																							
AAMA 501.4-18								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
AAMA 501.6-18								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
AAMA TIR A8-16								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 355.2-19								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 355.4-19								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 440.2R-08								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 503.7-07								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 506R-16								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 506.2-13								X	X	†	†	†			†	†							
ACI 506.4R-94								†	†	X	X	X			X	X							
ACI 506.6T-17								†	†	X	X	X			X	X							
AISC 358-16/s1-18/s2-20								X	X														
ANSI/DASMA 103-2017					X	X																	
ANSI S3.41				X																			
ASCE/SEI 7-16									X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASCE/SEI 19-10										X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASCE/SEI 41-13									†	†	X	X	X		X	X							
ASCE/SEI 41-17									X	X	†	†	†		†	†							
ASME A17.1/CSA B44			X				X																
ASME A18.1-2014								X															
ASME BPE-2009			X																				
ASTM A227/A227M-17				X	X																		
ASTM A229/A229M-17				X	X																		
ASTM A722/A722M-15										X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM A1064-17									X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C618-15									†	†	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C618-19									X	X	†	†	†		†	†							
ASTM C635/C635M-13a									†	†	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C636/C636M-17								X	X														
ASTM C989-16e1								†	†	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C989-18a								X	X	†	†	†	†		†	†							
ASTM C1019-16								X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C1249-18								X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C1392-20									X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C1394-20									X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM C1401-14								X	X	X	X	X	X		X	X							

*(continued)*

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter	X											X										
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X																X
Chapter / Section																						
ASTM C1586-05 (2011)								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM D1586-20								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM D3966-07 (2013)								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM D5778-20								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM E580/E580M-17								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM E662-17a	X							X	X													
ASTM E2632/E2632M-13	X																					
ASTM E2707-15	X																					
ASTM E2726/E2726-12a	X																					
ASTM E3121-17								†	†	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM F606/F606M-16								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ASTM F1292-99								X														
ASTM F1292-04								X														
ASTM F1487-01								X														
ASTM F1951-99								X														
ASTM F2374	X																					
AWS D1.1/D1.1M-15								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
AWS D1.2/D1.2M-14								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
AWS D1.3/D1.3M-08								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
AWS D1.8/D1.8M-16								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
AWS QCI-16								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
BHMA A156.10-2011								X														
BHMA A156.19-2013								X														
FEMA P-2082-1								†	†	X	X	X		X	X							
FM 1950-16								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
FM 3011-99	X																					
FM 3260-00	X																					
FM 4430-80	X																					
ICC-ES AC01-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC58-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC70-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC77	X																					
ICC-ES AC106-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC125-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC156-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC178-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC193-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC232-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							
ICC-ES AC308-21*								X	X	X	X	X		X	X							

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X													X									
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X																	X
Chapter / Section																							
<i>ICC ES AC331</i>			X																				
<i>ICC-ES AC358-21*</i>								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
<i>ICC-ES AC446-21*</i>								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
<i>ISO 9001-15</i>								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
<i>NFPA 10-21</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 11-16</i>																							X
<i>NFPA 13-22</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 13D-22</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 13R-22</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 14-19</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 24-19</i>			X																				X
<i>NFPA 25-13CA</i>			X																				X
<i>NFPA 32-16</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 37-18</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 54-18</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 72-22</i>			X			X																	X
<i>NFPA 110-16</i>																							X
<i>NFPA 111-13</i>																							X
<i>NFPA 130-20</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 502-20</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 1124-17</i>			X																				
<i>NFPA 2001-18</i>			X																				
<i>PCI MNL 120-17</i>								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
<i>PTI DC35.1-14</i>								X	X	X	X	X			X	X							
<i>SFM 12-3</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7-3</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7A-1</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7A-2</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7A-3</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7A-4</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7A-4A</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-7A-5</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-8-100</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-10-1</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-10-2</i>			X																				
<i>SFM 12-10-3</i>			X																				
<i>UBC 15-2</i>			X																				
<i>UBC 15-3</i>			X																				
<i>UBC 15-4</i>			X																				
<i>UL 13-96</i>			X																				
<i>UL 38-99</i>			X																				

(continued)

**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**CHAPTER 35 – REFERENCED STANDARDS—continued**

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC -CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DHS	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter	X											X											
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)			X	X	X	X		X	X	X	X	X		X	X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below						X																	X
Chapter / Section																							
<i>UL 193-04</i>			X																				
<i>UL 199-95</i>			X																				
<i>UL 228-97</i>			X																				
<i>UL 260-04</i>			X																				
<i>UL 262-04</i>			X																				
<i>UL 268A-09</i>			X																				
<i>UL 312-04</i>			X																				
<i>UL 346-05</i>			X																				
<i>UL 464-03</i>			X																				
<i>UL 497B-04</i>			X																				
<i>UL 521-99</i>			X																				
<i>UL 539-00</i>			X																				
<i>UL 632-00</i>			X																				
<i>UL 753-04</i>			X																				
<i>UL 813-96</i>			X																				
<i>UL 857-13</i>										†	†	X	X	X		X	X						
<i>UL 864-2014</i>			X																				

The state agency does not adopt sections identified with the following symbol: †

The Office of the State Fire Marshal's adoption of this chapter or individual sections is applicable to structures regulated by other state agencies pursuant to Section 1.11.

## CHAPTER 35

# REFERENCED STANDARDS

**User note:**

*About this chapter: The California Building Code contains numerous references to standards promulgated by other organizations that are used to provide requirements for materials and methods of construction. This chapter contains a comprehensive list of all standards that are referenced in this code. These standards, in essence, are part of this code to the extent of the reference to the standard.*

*This chapter lists the standards that are referenced in various sections of this document. The standards are listed herein by the promulgating agency of the standard, the standard identification, the effective date and title, and the section or sections of this document that reference the standard. The application of the referenced standards shall be as specified in Chapter 1, Scope and Administration, Division 1, Sections 1.1.5 and 1.1.7, and in Chapter 1, Scope and Administration, Division II, Section 102.4, as applicable.*

**[DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC & OSHPD 1 & 4] Reference to other chapters.** In addition to the code sections referenced, the standards listed in this chapter are applicable to the respective code sections in Chapters 16A, 17A, 18A, 19A, 21A and 22A.

## AA

Aluminum Association  
1400 Crystal Drive, Suite 430  
Arlington, VA 22202

**ADM—2020: Aluminum Design Manual**  
1604.3.5, 2002.1

**ASM 35—00: Aluminum Sheet Metal Work in Building Construction (Fourth Edition)**  
2002.1

## AAMA

American Architectural Manufacturers Association  
1900 E Golf Road, Suite 1250  
Schaumburg, IL 60173

**711—20: Voluntary Specification for Self Adhering Flashing Used for Installation of Exterior Wall Fenestration Products**  
1404.4

**714—19: Voluntary Specification for Liquid Applied Flashing Used to Create a Water-resistive Seal around Exterior Wall Openings in Buildings**  
1404.4

**1402—09: Standard Specifications for Aluminum Siding, Soffit and Fascia**  
1403.5.1

**2502—19: Comparative Analysis Procedure for Window and Door Products**  
1709.5

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Skylights**  
1709.5.1, 2405.5

**501.4-18: Recommended Static Test Method for Evaluating Curtain Wall and Storefront Systems Subjected to Seismic and Wind Induced Interstory Drifts**  
2410.1

**501.6-18: Recommended Dynamic Test Method for Determining the Seismic Drift Causing Glass Fallout from a Wall System**  
2410.1

**TIR A8-16: Structural Performance of Composite Thermal Barrier Framing Systems**  
2411.1



## REFERENCED STANDARDS

# ACI

American Concrete Institute  
38800 Country Club Drive  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331-3439

### 117—10: Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials

1901.7.1

### 216.1—14: Code Requirements for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies

Table 721.1(2), 722.1

### 318—19: Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete

722.2.4.3, 1604.3.2, 1616.2.1, 1616.3.1, 1704.5, Table 1705.3, 1705.3.2, *Table 1705A.2.1, Table 1705A.3*, 1808.8.2, Table 1808.8.2, 1808.8.5, 1808.8.6, 1810.1.3, 1810.2.4.1, 1810.3.2.1.1, 1810.3.2.1.2, 1810.3.8, 1810.3.9.4.2.1, 1810.3.9.4.2.2, 1810.3.10.1, 1810.3.11, 1810.3.11.1, 1810.3.12, 1810.3.13, 1810A.3.10.4, 1901.2, 1901.3, 1901.3.4.4, 1902.1, 1903A, 1903.1, 1904A, 1904.1, 1904.2, 1905A, 1905.1, 1905.1.1, 1905.1.2, 1905.1.3, 1905.1.4, 1905.1.5, 1905.1.6, 1905.1.7, 1905.1.8, 1908.1, 1909.2, 1909.3, 1910A.5.4, 2108.3, 2206.1

### 355.2—19: Qualification of Post-Installed Mechanical Anchors in Concrete and Commentary

1617A.1.19, 1901.3.2

### 355.4—19: Qualification of Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete and Commentary

1617A.1.19, 1901.3.3

### 440.2R-08: Guide for the Design and Construction of Externally Bonded FRP Systems for Strengthening Concrete Structures

1911.3, 1911A.3

### 503.7—07: Specification for Crack Repair by Epoxy Injection

1911.2, 1911A.2

### 506R—16: Guide to Shotcrete

> 1908.1, 1908A.1

### 506.2—13: [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Guide to Shotcrete

1908A.1, 1908A.9

### 506.4R—94: [OSHPD] Guide for the Evaluation of Shotcrete

1908.1, 1908A.1

### 506.6T—17: [OSHPD] Visual Shotcrete Core Quality Evaluation

1908.1, 1908A.1

### 550.5—18: Code Requirements for the Design of Precast Concrete Diaphragms for Earthquake Motions

Table 1705.3

### ITG—7-09: Specification for Tolerances for Precast Concrete

1901.7.2

# AISC

American Institute of Steel  
130 East Randolph Street, Suite 2000  
Chicago, IL 60601-6219

### ANSI/AISC 341—16: Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings

1705.13.1.1, 1705.13.1.2, 1705.14.1.1, 1705.14.1.2, 1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.5, 1810.3.5.3.1, 2205A, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2205.2.2, 2205.3, 2206A, 2206.2.1, 2212.2

### > ANSI/AISC 358—16/s1—18: Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications, Including Supplement No. 1

1705A.2.1, 2205A, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2205.4, 2206A.2, 2206.2.1

### > ANSI/AISC 358—16/s1—18/s2—20: [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment Frames for Seismic Applications, Including Supplement No. 1 and No. 2

1705A.2.1, 2205A, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2206A.2, 2212.3

### > ANSI/AISC 360—16: Specification for Structural Steel Buildings

722.5.2.2.1, 1604.3.3, 1705.2.1, 1705A.2.1, *Table 1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.5, 2202.1, 2203.1, 2204.4, 2204A.4*, 2205.1, 2205.2.1.1, 2206.1, 2212.1.1, 2212A.1.2, 2212A.2.1

---

**AISI**

American Iron and Steel Institute  
25 Massachusetts Avenue, NW Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20001

**AISI S100—16(2020) w/S2—20: North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members, 2016 Edition (Reaffirmed 2020), with Supplement 2, 2020 Edition**

1604.3.3, 1905.1.8, 2202.1, 2203.1, 2210.1, 2210.2, 2211A.2

**AISI S202—20: Code of Standard Practice for Cold-formed Steel Framing, 2020**

2211.1.3.1

**AISI S220—20: North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Nonstructural Framing**

2202.1, 2203.1, 2211.2, Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

**AISI S230—2019: Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing—Prescriptive Method for One- and Two-family Dwellings, 2019**

1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2211.1.2

**AISI S240—20: North American Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Structuring Framing, 2020**

2202.1, 2203.1, 2211.1, 2211.1.1.1, 2211.1.3.3, Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2, Table 2603.12.1, Table 2603.12.2

**AISI S400—20: North American Standard for Seismic Design of Cold-formed Steel Structural Systems, 2020**

2210.2, 2211.1.1.1, 2211.1.1.2

---

**ALI**

Automotive Lift Institute, Inc.  
P.O. Box 85  
Cortland, NY 13045

**ALI ALCTV—2017: Standard for Automotive Lifts—Safety Requirements for Construction, Testing and Validation (ANSI)**

Table 3001.3

---

**AMCA**

Air Movement and Control Association International  
30 West University Drive  
Arlington Heights, IL 60004

**540—13: Test Method for Louvers Impacted by Wind Borne Debris**

1609.2.1

---

**ANSI**

American National Standards Institute  
25 West 43rd Street, Fourth Floor  
New York, NY 10036

**A13.1—2020: Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems**

415.11.7.5

**A108.1A—17: Installation of Ceramic Tile in the Wet-set Method, with Portland Cement Mortar**

2103.2.3

**A108.1B—17: Installation of Ceramic Tile, Quarry Tile on a Cured Portland Cement Mortar Setting Bed with Dry-set or Latex-Portland Mortar**

2103.2.3

**A108.4—09: Installation of Ceramic Tile with Organic Adhesives or Water-cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive**

2103.2.3.6

**A108.5—19: Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex-Portland Cement Mortar**

2103.2.3.1, 2103.2.3.2

**A108.6—99 (reaffirmed 2019): Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant, Water Cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy**

2103.2.3.3

**A108.8—99 (reaffirmed 2019): Installation of Ceramic Tile with Chemical-resistant Furan Resin Mortar and Grout**

2103.2.3.4

**A108.9—19: Installation of Ceramic Tile with Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout**

2103.2.3.5

**A108.10—17: Installation of Grout in Tilework**

2103.2.3.7

---

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### ANSI—continued

- A118.1—18: American National Standard Specifications for Dry-set Portland Cement Mortar**  
2103.2.3.1
- A118.3—13: American National Standard Specifications for Chemical-resistant, Water-cleanable Tile-setting and -grouting Epoxy and Water Cleanable Tile-setting Epoxy Adhesive**  
2103.2.3.3
- A118.4—18: American National Standard Specifications for Modified Dry-set Cement Mortar**  
2103.2.3.2, 2103.2.4
- A118.5—99: American National Standard Specifications for Chemical Resistant Furan Mortar and Grouts for Tile Installation**  
2103.2.3.4
- A118.6—19: American National Standard Specifications for Cement Grouts for Tile Installation**  
2103.2.3.7
- A118.8—99: American National Standard Specifications for Modified Epoxy Emulsion Mortar/Grout**  
2103.2.3.5
- A136.1—20: American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile**  
2103.2.3.6
- A137.1—19: American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile**  
202
- A137.3—17: American National Standard Specifications for Gauged Porcelain Tiles and Gauged Porcelain Tile Panel/Slabs**  
202
- S3.41: American National Standard Specifications for Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal**  
907.5.2.1.3
- Z 97.1—14: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings—Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test**  
2406.1.2, 2406.2, Table 2406.2(2), 2406.3.1, 2407.1, 2407.1.4, 2408.2.1, 2408.3, 2409.2, 2409.3, 2409.4.1

## APA

APA - Engineered Wood Association  
7011 South 19th Street  
Tacoma, WA 98466-7400

- ANSI 117—2020: Standard Specification for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Softwood Species**  
2306.1
- ANSI/APA A190.1—2017: Structural Glued Laminated Timber**  
1705.5.5, 2303.1.3, 2306.1
- ANSI/APA PRG 320—2019: Standard for Performance-rated Cross-laminated Timber**  
602.4, 2303.1.4
- ANSI/APA PRP 210—2019: Standard for Performance-Rated Engineered Wood Siding**  
2303.1.5, 2304.7, 2306.3, Table 2306.3(1)
- ANSI/APA PRR 410—16: Standard for Performance-Rated Engineered Wood Rim Boards**  
2303.1.13
- APA PDS Supplement 1—12: Design and Fabrication of Plywood Curved Panels (revised 2013)**  
2306.1
- APA PDS Supplement 2—12: Design and Fabrication of Plywood-lumber Beams (revised 2013)**  
2306.1
- APA PDS Supplement 3—12: Design and Fabrication of Plywood Stressed-skin Panels (revised 2013)**  
2306.1
- APA PDS Supplement 4—12: Design and Fabrication of Plywood Sandwich Panels (revised 2013)**  
2306.1
- APA PDS Supplement 5—16: Design and Fabrication of All-plywood Beams (revised 2013)**  
2306.1
- APA PDS—20: Panel Design Specification**  
2306.1
- APA R540—19: Builder Tips: Proper Storage and Handling of Glulam Beams**  
2306.1
- APA S475—20: Glued Laminated Beam Design Tables**  
2306.1

**APA—continued**

**APA S560—20: Field Notching and Drilling of Glued Laminated Timber Beams**  
2306.1

**APA T300—16: Glulam Connection Details**  
2306.1

**APA X440—17: Product Guide: Glulam**  
2306.1

**APA X450—18: Glulam in Residential Construction—Building—Construction Guide**  
2306.1

**ASABE**

American Society of Agricultural and Biological Engineers  
2950 Niles Road  
St. Joseph, MI 49085

**EP 484.3 DEC2017: Diaphragm Design of Metal-clad, Wood-frame Rectangular Buildings**  
2306.1

**EP 486.3 SEP2017: Shallow-post and Pier Foundation Design**  
2306.1

**EP 559.1 AUG2010(R2019): Design Requirements and Bending Properties for Mechanically Laminated Wood Assemblies**  
2306.1

**ASCE/SEI**

American Society of Civil Engineers  
Structural Engineering Institute  
1801 Alexander Bell Drive  
Reston, VA 20191

**7—16 with Supplements 1, 2 and 3: Minimum Design Loads and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures** ||<  
104.11, 202, Table 1504.2, *Table 1504.8, 1510.7.1, 1602.1, 1603A.1.5, 1603A.2, Table 1604.3, 1604.4, 1604A.4, 1604.5, Table 1604.5, 1604.8.2, 1604.9, 1605.1, 1605.1.1, 1605.2, 1606.3, 1607.9.1, 1607.9.1.1, 1607.9.1.2, 1607.10, 1607.14.1, 1607.17, 1608.1, 1608.2, Figure 1608.2(1), 1608.3, 1609.1.1, 1609.2, 1609.3, Figure 1609.3(5), Figure 1609.3(6), Figure 1609.3(7), Figure 1609.3(8), Figure 1609.3(9), Figure 1609.3(10), Figure 1609.3(11), Figure 1609.3(12), 1609.5.1, 1609.5.3, 1611.1, 1611.2, 1612.2, 1613.1, 1613.2.2, 1613.2.3, Table 1613.2.3(1), Table 1613.2.3(2), 1613.2.5, 1613.2.5.1, 1613.2.5.2, 1613.3, 1614.1, 1615.1, 1617, 1617A, 1705.13, 1705.13.1.1, 1705.13.1.2, 1705.13.4, 1705.14.1.1, 1705.14.1.2, 1705.14.2, 1705.14.3, 1705.14.4, 1709.5, 1709.5.3.1, 1802.1, 1803.5.12, 1803A.6, 1806.1, 1807A.2.5, 1811A.4, 1808.3, 1808.3.1, 1809.13, 1810.3.1.1, 1810.3.6.1, 1810.3.8, 1810.3.9.2, 1810.3.9.4, 1810.3.9.4.1, 1810.3.9.4.2, 1810.3.11.2, 1810.3.12, 1811A.4, 1902.1, 1905.1.2, 1905.1.7, 1905.1.8, 2205.2.1.1, 2205.2.1.2, 2205.2.2, 2206.2.1, 2209.1, 2209.2, 2210.2, 2210A.2, 2211.1.1, 2212A.1.1, 2212A.2.4, Table 2304.6.1, Table 2306.3(3), Table 2308.7.5, 2404.1, 2410.1.1, 2410.1.2, 2505.1, 2505.2, 2506.2.1, 3115.8.4.2*

**8—02: Standard Specification for the Design of Cold-formed Stainless Steel Structural Members**  
1604.3.3, 2210.1, 2210.2

**19—16: Structural Applications of Steel Cables for Buildings**  
2208.1

**24—14: Flood Resistant Design and Construction**  
1202.4.2, 1202.4.4, 1612.2, 1612.4, 2702.1.8, 3001.3

**29—17: Standard Calculation Methods for Structural Fire Protection**  
722.1

**32—01: Design and Construction of Frost Protected Shallow Foundations**  
1809.5

**41—13: [OSHPD] Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings** ||  
1603A.2

**41—17: [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Seismic Evaluation and Retrofit of Existing Buildings** <  
1603A.2

**49—12: Wind Tunnel Testing for Buildings and Other Structures**  
1609.1.1

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****ASCE/SEI—continued**

**55—16: Tensile Membrane Structures**  
3102.2

**ASHRAE**

**170—2017: Ventilation of Health Care Facilities**  
1020.6

ASHRAE  
1791 Tullie Circle NE  
Atlanta, GA 30329USA

**ASME**

American Society of Mechanical Engineers  
Two Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10016

> **A17.1—2019/CSA B44: the edition as referenced in: California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators**

907.3.3, 911.1.6, 1009.4.1, 11B-407.1, 11B-407.1.1, 11B-407.4.9, 11B-408.1, 11B-409.1, 11B-411.1,  
11B-810.9, 1607.11.1, 3001.2, Table 3001.3, 3001.4, 3001.5, 3002.5, 3003.2, 3007.1, 3008.1.4, 3008.7.1

**A17.7—2007/CSA B44—07(R2017): Performance-based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators**  
Table 3001.3, 3001.5, 3002.5

**A18.1—2020: Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts**  
1110.9, Table 3001.3

**A90.1—2015: Safety Standard for Belt Manlifts**  
Table 3001.3

**B16.18—2018: Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings**  
909.13.1

**B16.22—2018: Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings**  
909.13.1

**B20.1—2021: Safety Standard for Conveyors and Related Equipment**  
Table 3001.3, 3004.3

**BPE—2009: Bio-processing Equipment Standard**

**B31.3—2014: [SLC] Process Piping**  
415.11.6

**B31.3—2020: Process Piping**  
415.11.7

**ASSP**

American Society of Safety Professionals  
520 N. Northwest Highway  
Park Ridge, IL 60068

**ANSI/ASSE Z359.1—2020: The Fall Protection Code**  
1015.6, 1015.7

**ASTM**

ASTM International  
100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700  
West Conshohocken, PA 19428

**A6/A6M—2017A: Standard Specification for General Requirements for Rolled Structural Steel Bars, Plates, Shapes and Sheet Piling**  
1810.3.2.3, 1810.3.5.3.1, 1810.3.5.3.3

**A36/A36M—14: Specification for Carbon Structural Steel**  
1810.3.2.3

**A153/A153M—2016A: Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware**  
2304.10.2.1, 2304.10.6

**A227/A227M—17: Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Cold-Drawn for Mechanical Springs**  
1211.1.1

**ASTM—continued**

**A229/A229M—17: Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Quenched and Tempered for Mechanical Springs**  
1211.1.1

||

**A240/A240M—17: Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications**

Table 1507.4.3(1)

**A252—2010(2018): Specification for Welded and Seamless Steel Pipe Piles**  
1810.3.2.3

**A283/A283M—2018: Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates**  
1810.3.2.3

**A416/A416M—2017A: Specification for Steel Strand, Uncoated Seven-wire for Prestressed Concrete**  
1810.3.2.2

**A463/A463M—15: Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Aluminum-coated, by the Hot-dip Process**  
Table 1507.4.3(2)

**A572/A572M—2018: Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel**  
1810.3.2.3

**A588/A588M—15: Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Structural Steel with 50 ksi (345 MPa) Minimum Yield Point with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance**  
1810.3.2.3

**A615/A615M—15ae1: Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement**  
1704.5, 1810.3.10.2

**A653/A653M—2017: Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-coated Galvanized or Zinc-iron Alloy-coated Galvannealed by the Hot-dip Process**  
Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2), 2304.10.6.1

**A690/A690M—13a(2018): Standard Specification for High-strength Low-alloy Nickel, Copper, Phosphorus Steel H-piles and Sheet Piling with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance for Use in Marine Environments**  
1810.3.2.3

**A706/A706M—2016: Specification for Low-alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement**  
1704.5, Table 1705.3, 2107.3, 2108.3

**A722/A722M—2015: [OSHPD]: Specification for High-strength Steel Bars for Prestressed Concrete**  
1810.3.10.2, 1811.4, 1811A.4, 1812.4.2, 1812A.4.2

||

**A722/A722M—2018: Specification for High-strength Steel Bars for Prestressed Concrete**  
1810.3.10.2

**A755/A755M—2016E1: Specification for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process and Preprinted by the Coil-coating Process for Exterior Exposed Building Products**  
Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2)

**A792/A792M—10(2015): Specification for Steel Sheet, 55% Aluminum-zinc Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process**  
Table 1507.4.3(1), Table 1507.4.3(2)

**A875/A875M—13: Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-5%, Aluminum Alloy-coated by the Hot-dip Process**  
Table 1507.4.3(2)

**A924/A924M—2017A: Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-coated by the Hot-dip Process**  
Table 1507.4.3(1)

**A1064—17: Standard Specification for Carbon-steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete**  
1903.8, 1903A.8

||

**B42—2015A: Specification for Seamless Copper Pipe, Standard Sizes**  
909.13.1

**B43—15: Specification for Seamless Red Brass Pipe, Standard Sizes**  
909.13.1

**B68/B68M—11: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube, Bright Annealed (Metric)**  
909.13.1

**B88—2016: Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube**  
909.13.1

**B101—12: Specification for Lead-coated Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction**  
1403.5.3, Table 1507.2.8.2, Table 1507.4.3(1)

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### ASTM—continued

- B209—14: Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Steel and Plate**  
Table 1507.4.3(1)
- B251—2017: Specification for General Requirements for Wrought Seamless Copper and Copper-alloy Tube**  
909.13.1
- B280—2018: Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service**  
909.13.1
- B370—12: Specification for Copper Sheet and Strip for Building Construction**  
1403.5.2, Table 1507.2.8.2, Table 1507.4.3(1)
- B695—2004(2016): Standard Specification for Coatings of Zinc Mechanically Deposited on Iron and Steel Strip for Building Construction**
- || 2304.10.2.1, 2304.10.6.1, 2304.10.6.3
- C5—2018: Specification for Quicklime for Structural Purposes**  
2109.2.4.8.7, Table 2507.2
- C22/C22M—2015: Specification for Gypsum**  
Table 2506.2
- C27—1998(2018): Specification for Classification of Fireclay and High-alumina Refractory Brick**  
2111.6
- C28/C28M—10(2015): Specification for Gypsum Plasters**  
Table 2507.2
- C31/C31M—2018B: Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field**  
Table 1705.3
- C33/C33M—2018: Specification for Concrete Aggregates**  
722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
- C35/C35—01(2014): Specification for Inorganic Aggregates for Use in Gypsum Plaster**  
Table 2507.2
- C55—2017: Specification for Concrete Building Brick**  
Table 722.3.2
- C59/C59M—00(2015): Specification for Gypsum Casting Plaster and Molding Plaster**  
Table 2507.2
- C61/C61M—00(2015): Specification for Gypsum Keene's Cement**  
Table 2507.2
- C62—2017: Standard Specification for Building Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)**  
1807.1.6.3
- C67/C67M—2018: Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile**  
722.4.1.1.1, 2109.2.1.1
- C73—2017: Specification for Calcium Silicate Brick (Sand-lime Brick)**  
Table 722.3.2
- C90—2016A: Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units**  
Table 722.3.2, 1807.1.6.3, 2114.3
- C91/C91M—2018: Specification for Masonry Cement**  
Table 2507.2
- C94/C94M—2017: Specification for Ready-mixed Concrete**  
110.3.1, 1705A.3.3.1
- C140/C140M—2018: Test Method Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units**  
722.3.1.2
- C141/C141M—14: Standard Specification for Hydrated Hydraulic Lime for Structural Purposes**  
2109.2.4.8.7
- C150/C150M—2018: Specification for Portland Cement**  
1909.2.3, 1910A.1, 1910.2.1, Table 2507.2
- C172/C172M—2017: Practice for Sampling Freshly Mixed Concrete**  
Table 1705.3

**ASTM—continued**

- C199—1984(2016): Test Method for Pier Test for Refractory Mortars**  
2111.6, 2111.9, 2113.12
- C206—14: Specification for Finishing Hydrated Lime**  
2109.2.4.8.7, Table 2507.2
- C208—2012(2017)E1: Specification for Cellulosic Fiber Insulating Board**  
Table 1508.2, 2303.1.6
- C216—2017A: Specification for Facing Brick (Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)**  
Table 721.1(2), 1807.1.6.3
- C270—14a: Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry**  
2105.3, 2105A.3
- C315—2007(2016): Specification for Clay Flue Liners and Chimney Pots**  
2111.9, 2113.11.1, Table 2113.16(1)
- C317/C317M—2000(2015): Specification for Gypsum Concrete**  
2514.1
- C330/C330M—2017A: Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete**  
202
- C331/C331M—2017: Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Concrete Masonry Units**  
722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
- C406/C406M—15: Specification for Roofing Slate**  
1507.7.5
- C472—99(2014): Standard Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum, Gypsum Plasters and Gypsum Concrete**  
Table 2506.2
- C473—2017: Test Methods for Physical Testing of Gypsum Panel Products**  
Table 2506.2
- C474—15: Test Methods for Joint Treatment Materials for Gypsum Board Construction**  
Table 2506.2
- C475/C475M—2017: Specification for Joint Compound and Joint Tape for Finishing Gypsum Board**  
Table 2506.2
- C514—04(2014): Specification for Nails for the Application of Gypsum Board**  
Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3), Table 2506.2
- C516—2008(2014)E1: Specifications for Vermiculite Loose Fill Thermal Insulation**  
722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
- C547—2017: Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation**  
Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3)
- C549—06(2012): Specification for Perlite Loose Fill Insulation**  
722.3.1.4, 722.4.1.1.3
- C552—2017E1: Standard Specification for Cellular Glass Thermal Insulation**  
Table 1508.2
- C557—2003(2017): Specification for Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing**  
Table 2506.2, 2508.4
- C578—2018: Standard Specification for Rigid, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation**  
Table 1508.2, 2603.10, Table 2603.12.1, Table 2603.12.2, Table 2603.13.1, Table 2603.13.2
- C587—2004(2018): Specification for Gypsum Veneer Plaster**  
Table 2507.2
- C595/C595M—2018: Specification for Blended Hydraulic Cements**  
1909.2.3, 1910A.1
- C618—15: [OSHPD] Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete**  
1910A.1
- C618—19: [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Standard Specification for Coal Fly Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete**  
1909.2.3, 1910A.1
- C631—09(2014): Specification for Bonding Compounds for Interior Gypsum Plastering**  
Table 2507.2



## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### ASTM—continued

**C635/C635M—13a: [OSHPD] Specification for the Manufacture, Performance and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings**

1617A.1.21

> **C635/C635M—2017: Specification for the Manufacture, Performance and Testing of Metal Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panel Ceilings**

2506.2.1, 1617A.1.21

**C636/C636M—13: Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels**

808.1.1.1, 1617A.1.21

**C636/C636M—17: [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Practice for Installation of Metal Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels**

808.1.1.1, 1617.10.16, 1617A.1.21

**C652—2017A: Specification for Hollow Brick (Hollow Masonry Units Made from Clay or Shale)**

1807.1.6.3

**C726—2017: Standard Specification for Mineral Wool Roof Insulation Board**

Table 1508.2

**C728—2017A: Standard Specification for Perlite Thermal Insulation Board**

Table 1508.2

**C744—2016: Specification for Prefaced Concrete and Calcium Silicate Masonry Units**

Table 722.3.2

**C754—2018: Specification for Installation of Steel Framing Members to Receive Screw-attached Gypsum Panel Products**

Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1

**C836/C836M—2018: Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane for Use with Separate Wearing Course**

1507.14.2

**C840—2018A: Specification for Application and Finishing of Gypsum Board**

Table 2508.1, 2509.2

**C841—2003(2018): Specification for Installation of Interior Lathing and Furring**

Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1

**C842—05(2015): Specification for Application of Interior Gypsum Plaster**

Table 2511.1.1, 2511.3, 2511.4

**C843—2017: Specification for Application of Gypsum Veneer Plaster**

Table 2511.1.1

**C844—2015: Specification for Application of Gypsum Base to Receive Gypsum Veneer Plaster**

Table 2508.1

**C847—14a: Specification for Metal Lath**

Table 2507.2

**C887—13: Specification for Packaged, Dry Combined Materials for Surface Bonding Mortar**

1805.2.2, 2103.2.2

**C897—15: Specification for Aggregate for Job-mixed Portland Cement-based Plaster**

Table 2507.2

**C920—2018: Standard for Specification for Elastomeric Joint Sealants**

703.7, Table 2506.2

**C926—2018B: Specification for Application of Portland Cement-based Plaster**

2109.2.4.8.6, 2109.2.4.8.8, 2510.3, Table 2511.1.1, 2511.3, 2511.4, 2512.1, 2512.1.2, 2512.2, 2512.6, 2512.8.2, 2512.9, 2513.7

**C932—06(2013): Specification for Surface-applied Bonding Compounds for Exterior Plastering**

Table 2507.2

**C933—2018: Specification for Welded Wire Lath**

Table 2507.2

**C946—2018: Specification for Construction of Dry-stacked, Surface-bonded Walls**

2103.2.2, 2114.5

## ASTM—continued

**C954—2018:** Specification for Steel Drill Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Steel Studs from 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) to 0.112 inch (2.84 mm) in Thickness

Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

**C956—04(2015):** Specification for Installation of Cast-in-place Reinforced Gypsum Concrete  
2514.1

**C957/C957M—2017:** Specification for High-solids Content, Cold Liquid-applied Elastomeric Waterproofing Membrane with Integral Wearing Surface

1507.14.2

**C989—16e1:** [OSHPD] Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars  
1910.2.1, 1910A.1

**C989—18a:** [DSA-SS, DSA-SS/CC] Standard Specification for Slag Cement for Use in Concrete and Mortars  
1909.2.3, 1910A.1

**C1002—2018:** Specification for Steel Self-piercing Tapping Screws for the Application of Gypsum Panel Products or Metal Plaster Bases to Wood Studs or Steel Studs

722.7.2.2, Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

**C1007—11a(2015):** Specification for Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories  
Table 2508.1, Table 2511.1.1

**C1019—16:** Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout  
2105A.3, 2105.3, 2115.8.1

**C1029—15:** Specification for Spray-applied Rigid Cellular Polyurethane Thermal Insulation  
1507.13.2

**C1032—2018:** Specification for Woven Wire Plaster Base  
Table 2507.2

**C1047—2014a:** Specification for Accessories for Gypsum Wallboard and Gypsum Veneer Base  
Table 2506.2, Table 2507.2

**C1063—2018B:** Specification for Installation of Lathing and Furring to Receive Interior and Exterior Portland Cement-based Plaster  
2109.2.4.8.5, 2510.3, Table 2511.1.1, 2512.1.1

**C1088—2018:** Specification for Thin Veneer Brick Units Made from Clay or Shale  
Table 721.1(2)

**C1157/C1157M—2017:** Standard Performance Specification for Hydraulic Cement  
1909.2.3, 1910.2.1, 1910A.1, Table 2507.2

**C1167—2011(2017):** Specification for Clay Roof Tiles  
1507.3.4

**C1177/C1177M—2017:** Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Substrate for Use as Sheathing  
Table 1508.2, Table 2506.2

**C1178/C1178M—2018:** Specification for Coated Mat Water-resistant Gypsum Backing Panel  
Table 2506.2, Table 2509.2

**C1186—2008(2016):** Specification for Flat Fiber Cement Sheets  
1403.10, 1404.16.1, 1404.16.2

**C1249—18:** Standard Guide for Secondary Seal for Sealed Insulated Glass Units for Structural Sealant Glazing Applications  
2410.1.1

**C1261—2013(2017)E1:** Specification for Firebox Brick for Residential Fireplaces  
2111.6, 2111.9

**C1278/C1278M—2017:** Specification for Fiber-reinforced Gypsum Panel  
Table 1508.2, Table 2506.2

**C1280—13a:** Specification for Application of Exterior Gypsum Panel Products for Use as Sheathing  
Table 2508.1, 2508.2

**C1283—2015:** Practice for Installing Clay Flue Lining  
2113.9.1, 2113.12

**C1288—2017:** Standard Specification for Discrete Nonasbestos Fiber-cement Interior Substrate Sheets  
Table 2509.2

**C1289—2018:** Standard Specification for Faced Rigid Cellular Polyisocyanurate Thermal Insulation Board  
Table 1508.2, 2603.10, Table 2603.12.1, Table 2603.12.2

||

||

||

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### ASTM—continued

**C1313/C1313M—13:** Standard Specification for Sheet Radiant Barriers for Building Construction Applications  
1510.4

**C1325—2018:** Standard Specification for Nonasbestos Fiber-mat Reinforced Cement Backer Units  
Table 2509.2

**C1328/C1328M—12:** Specification for Plastic (Stucco Cement)  
Table 2507.2

**C1364—2017:** Standard Specification for Architectural Cast Stone  
2103.1

**C1372—17:** Standard Specification for Dry-Cast Segmental Retaining Wall Units  
1807.2.4

|| **C1392—20:** Standard Guide for Evaluating Failure of Structural Sealant Glazing  
2410.1.2, 2410.1.3

|| **C1394—20:** Standard Guide for In-Situ Structural Silicone Glazing Evaluation  
2410.1.3

**C1396/C1396M—2017:** Specification for Gypsum Board  
Figure 722.5.1(2), Figure 722.5.1(3), Table 2506.2

**C1401—14:** Standard Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing  
2410.1

**C1492—2003(2016):** Standard Specification for Concrete Roof Tile  
1507.3.5

**C1568—08(2013):** Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Concrete and Clay Roof Tiles (Mechanical Uplift Resistance Method)  
1504.3.1.1

**C1569—03(2016):** Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Concrete and Clay Roof Tiles (Wind Tunnel Method)  
1504.3.1.2

**C1570—03(2016):** Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Concrete and Clay Roof Tiles (Air Permeability Method)  
1504.3.1.3

**C1586—05(2011):** Standard Guide for Quality Assurance of Mortars  
2105.3

**C1600/C1600M—2017:** Standard Specification for Rapid Hardening Hydraulic Cement  
Table 2507.2

**C1629/C1629M—2018A:** Standard Classification for Abuse-resistant Nondecorated Interior Gypsum Panel Products and Fiber-reinforced Cement Panels  
403.2.2.1, 403.2.2.2, 403.2.2.4

**C1658/C1658M—2018:** Standard Specification for Glass Mat Gypsum Panels  
Table 2506.2

**C1670/C1670M—2018:** Standard Specification for Adhered Manufactured Stone Masonry Veneer Units  
2103.1

**C1707—18:** Standard Specification for Pozzolanic Hydraulic Lime for Structural Purposes  
2109.2.4.8.7

**C1766—2015:** Standard Specification for Factory-laminated Gypsum Panel Products  
Table 2506.2

**C1788—14:** Standard Specification for Non Metallic Plaster Bases (Lath) Used with Portland Cement Based Plaster in Vertical Wall Applications  
2109.2.4.8.5

**D25—2012(2017):** Specification for Round Timber Piles  
1810.3.2.4, 2303.1.12

**D41/D41M—2011(2016):** Specification for Asphalt Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing  
Table 1507.10.2

**D43/D43M—2000(2018):** Specification for Coal Tar Primer Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing  
Table 1507.10.2

**D56—2016A:** Test Method for Flash Point by Tag Closed Cup Tester  
202

**ASTM—continued**

- D86—2017: Test Method for Distillation of Petroleum Products and Liquid Fuels at Atmospheric Pressure**  
202
- D92—2018: Test Method for Flash and Fire Points by Cleveland Open Cup Tester**  
202
- D93—2018: Test Methods for Flash Point by Pensky-Martens Closed Cup Tester**  
202
- D226/D226M—2017: Specification for Asphalt-saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing**  
1403.2, 1505.2, 1507.1.1, Table 1507.1.1(1), 1507.3.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.9.5, Table 1507.10.2,  
1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1
- D227/D227M—2003(2018): Specification for Coal-tar-saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D312/D312M—2016M: Specification for Asphalt Used in Roofing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D422—63(2007)e2: Test Method for Particle-size Analysis of Soils**  
1803.5.3
- D448—2012(2017): Standard Classification for Sizes of Aggregate for Road and Bridge Construction**  
1507.12.3
- D450/D450M—2017(2018): Specification for Coal-tar Pitch Used in Roofing, Dampproofing and Waterproofing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D635—14: Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position**  
2606.4
- D1143/D1143M—2007(2013)E1: Test Methods for Deep Foundations Under Static Axial Compressive Load**  
1810.3.3.1.2
- D1227—13: Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Used as a Protective Coating for Roofing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D1557—12e1: Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort [56,000 ft-lb/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN m/m<sup>3</sup>)]**  
1705.6, 1804.6
- D1586—20: Standard Test Method for Standard Penetration Test (SPT) and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils**  
1813, 1813A.2
- D1863/D1863M—2005(2018): Specification for Mineral Aggregate Used on Built-up Roofs**  
Table 1504.9, Table 1507.10.2
- D1929—16: Standard Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperature of Plastics**  
402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 2606.4
- D1970/D1970M—2017A: Specification for Self-adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roof Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection**  
1507.1.1, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9, 1507.11.2.1, 1507.17.4.1
- D2178/D2178M—15A: Specification for Asphalt Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D2487—2017: Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)**  
Table 1610.1, 1803.5.1
- D2626/D2626M—04(2012)e1: Specification for Asphalt Saturated and Coated Organic Felt Base Sheet Used in Roofing**  
Table 1507.1.1(1), 1507.3.3, Table 1507.10.2
- D2822/D2822M—2005(2011): Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D2823/D2823M—05(2011)e1: Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings, Asbestos Containing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D2824/D2824M—2018: Standard Specification for Aluminum-pigmented Asphalt Roof Coatings, Nonfibered and Fibered without Asbestos**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D2843—16: Standard Test Method for Density of Smoke from the Burning or Decomposition of Plastics**  
2606.4
- D2859—2016: Standard Test Method for Ignition Characteristics of Finished Textile Floor Covering Materials**  
804.4.1, 804.4.2

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### ASTM—continued

- D2898—2010(2017): Test Methods for Accelerated Weathering of Fire-retardant-treated Wood for Fire Testing**  
1505.1, 2303.2.4, 2303.2.6
- D3019/D3019M—2017: Specification for Lap Cement Used with Asphalt Roll Roofing, Nonfibered, Asbestos Fibered and Nonasbestos Fibered**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D3161/D3161M—2016A: Test Method for Wind Resistance of Steep Slope Roofing Products (Fan Induced Method)**  
1504.2, Table 1504.2, 1504.4.3
- D3200—1974(2017): Standard Specification and Test Method for Establishing Recommended Design Stresses for Round Timber Construction Poles**  
2303.1.12
- D3201/D3201M—13: Test Method for Hygroscopic Properties of Fire-retardant-treated Wood and Wood-based Products**  
2303.2.7
- D3278—96(2011): Test Methods for Flash Point of Liquids by Small Scale Closed-cup Apparatus**  
202
- D3462/D3462M—2016: Specification for Asphalt Shingles Made from Glass Felt and Surfaced with Mineral Granules**  
1507.2.4
- D3468/D3468M—99(2013)e1: Specification for Liquid-applied Neoprene and Chlorosulfonated Polyethylene Used in Roofing and Waterproofing**  
1507.14.2
- D3498—03(2011): Standard Specification for Adhesives for Field-Gluing Plywood to Lumber Framing for Floor Systems**  
703.7
- D3679—2017: Specification for Rigid Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Siding**  
1403.9, 1404.14
- D3689/D3698M—07(2013)e1: Test Methods for Deep Foundations under Static Axial Tensile Load**  
1810.3.3.1.5
- D3737—2018E1: Practice for Establishing Allowable Properties for Structural Glued Laminated Timber (Glulam)**  
2303.1.3
- D3746/D3746M—1985(2015)E1: Test Method for Impact Resistance of Bituminous Roofing Systems**  
1504.8
- D3747—79(2007): Specification for Emulsified Asphalt Adhesive for Adhering Roof Insulation**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D3909/D3909M—14: Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Glass Felt) Surfaced with Mineral Granules**  
1507.2.8.2, 1507.6.5, Table 1507.10.2
- D3957—2009(2015): Standard Practices for Establishing Stress Grades for Structural Members Used in Log Buildings**  
2303.1.11
- D3966—07(2013): Standard Test Method for Deep Foundations Under Lateral Loads**  
1810A.3.3.2
- D4022/D4022M—07(2012)e1: Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos Containing**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D4272—15: Test Method for Total Energy Impact of Plastic Films by Dart Drop**  
1504.8
- D4318—2017E1: Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit and Plasticity Index of Soils**  
1803.5.3
- D4434/D4434M—2015: Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) Sheet Roofing**  
Table 1507.12.2
- D4479/D4479M—2007(2018): Specification for Asphalt Roof Coatings—Asbestos-free**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D4586/D4586M—2007(2018): Specification for Asphalt Roof Cement—Asbestos-free**  
Table 1507.10.2
- D4601/D4601M—04(2012)e1: Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Base Sheet Used in Roofing**  
Table 1507.10.2, 1507.11.2.1

**ASTM—continued**

**D4637/D4637M—2015: Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-ply Roof Membrane**  
Table 1507.12.2

**D4829—11: Test Method for Expansion Index of Soils**  
1803.5.3

**D4869/D4869M—2016A: Specification for Asphalt-saturated (Organic Felt) Underlayment Used in Steep Slope Roofing**  
1507.1.1, Table 1507.1.1(1), 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1

**D4897/D4897M—2016: Specification for Asphalt-coated Glass Fiber Venting Base Sheet Used in Roofing**  
Table 1507.10.2

**D4945—2017: Test Method for High-strain Dynamic Testing of Deep Foundations**  
1705.10, 1810.3.3.1.2

**D4990—97a(2013): Specification for Coal Tar Glass Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing**  
Table 1507.10.2

**D5019—07a: Specification for Reinforced Nonvulcanized Polymeric Sheet Used in Roofing Membrane**  
Table 1507.12.2

**D5055—2016: Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-joists**  
2303.1.2

**D5456—2018: Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products**  
2303.1.10

**D5516—2018: Test Method of Evaluating the Flexural Properties of Fire-retardant Treated Softwood Plywood Exposed to Elevated Temperatures**  
2303.2.5.1

**D5643/D5643M—2006(2018): Specification for Coal Tar Roof Cement, Asbestos-free**  
Table 1507.10.2

**D5664—2017: Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Effects of Fire-retardant Treatment and Elevated Temperatures on Strength Properties of Fire-retardant Treated Lumber**  
2303.2.5.2

**D5665/D5665M—99a(2014)e1: Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Cold-applied Roofing and Waterproofing**  
Table 1507.10.2

**D5726—98(2013): Specification for Thermoplastic Fabrics Used in Hot-applied Roofing and Waterproofing**  
Table 1507.10.2

**D5778—20: Standard Test Method for Electronic Friction Cone and Piezocone Penetration Testing of Soils**  
1813, 1813A.2

**D5882—16: Standard Test Method for Low Strain Impact Integrity Testing of Deep Foundations**  
1705.10

**D6083/D6083M—2018: Specification for Liquid Applied Acrylic Coating Used in Roofing**  
Table 1507.10.2, Table 1507.13.3

**D6162/D6162M—2016: Specification for Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements**  
1507.11.2

**D6163/D6163M—2016: Specification for Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements**  
1507.11.2

**D6164/D6164M—2016: Specification for Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheet Metal Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements**  
1507.11.2

**D6222/D6222M—2016: Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using Polyester Reinforcements**  
1507.11.2

**D6223/D6223M—2016: Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Using a Combination of Polyester and Glass Fiber Reinforcements**  
1507.11.2

||

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### ASTM—continued

**D6298—2016: Specification for Fiberglass Reinforced Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Sheets with a Factory Applied Metal Surface**

1507.11.2

**D6305—08(2015)e1: Practice for Calculating Bending Strength Design Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant-treated Plywood Roof Sheathing**

2303.2.5.1

**D6380/D6380M—2003(2018): Standard Specification for Asphalt Roll Roofing (Organic) Felt**

Table 1507.1.1(1), 1507.2.8.2, 1507.3.3, 1507.6.5

**D6464—2003A(2017): Standard Specification for Expandable Foam Adhesives for Fastening Gypsum Wallboard to Wood Framing**

Table 2506.2, 2508.4

**D6509/D6509M—2016: Standard Specification for Atactic Polypropylene (APP) Modified Bituminous Base Sheet Materials Using Glass Fiber Reinforcements**

1507.11.2

**D6694/D6694M—08(2013)e1: Standard Specification for Liquid-applied Silicone Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing Systems**

Table 1507.13.3

**D6754/D6754M—2015: Standard Specification for Ketone Ethylene Ester Based Sheet Roofing**

Table 1507.12.2

**D6757—2018: Specification for Underlayment Felt Containing Inorganic Fibers Used in Steep Slope Roofing**

1507.1.1, Table 1507.1.1(1), 1507.17.3, 1507.17.4.1

**D6760—16: Standard Test Method for Integrity Testing of Concrete Deep Foundations by Ultrasonic Crosshole Testing**

1705.10

**D6841—2016: Standard Practice for Calculating Design Value Treatment Adjustment Factors for Fire-retardant Treated Lumber**

2303.2.5.2

**D6878/D6878M—2017: Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Polyolefin Based Sheet Roofing**

Table 1507.12.2

**D6947/D6947M—2016: Standard Specification for Liquid Applied Moisture Cured Polyurethane Coating Used in Spray Polyurethane Foam Roofing System**

Table 1507.13.3

**D7032—2017: Standard Specification for Establishing Performance Ratings for Wood, Plastic Composite Deck Boards and Guardrail Systems (Guards or Rails)**

705.2.3.1, 2612.2, 2612.4, 2612.5.1

**D7147—2011(2018): Specification for Testing and Establishing Allowable Loads of Joist Hangers**

2303.5, 2304.10.4

**D7158/D7158M—2019: Standard Test Method for Wind Resistance of Asphalt Shingles (Uplift Force/Uplift Resistance Method)**

1504.2 , Table 1504.2

**D7254—2017: Standard Specification for Polypropylene (PP) Siding**

1403.12

**D7425/D7425M—13: Standard Specification for Spray Polyurethane Foam Used for Roofing Applications**

1507.13.2

**D7655/D7655M—2012(2017): Standard Classification for Size of Aggregate Used as Ballast for Roof Membrane Systems**

1507.12.3

**D7672—14E1: Standard Specification for Evaluating Structural Capacities of Rim Board Products and Assemblies**

2303.1.13

**D7949—14: Standard Test Methods for Thermal Integrity Profiling of Concrete Deep Foundations**

1705.10

**E84—2018B: Standard Test Methods for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials**

202, 402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 424.2, 602.4.1.1, 602.4.2.1, 602.4.3.1, 720.1, 720.4, 803.1.2, 803.5.2, 803.10, 803.11, 803.12, 803.13, 806.7, 1402.5, 1403.12.1, 1406.9, 1406.10.1, 1408.9, 1408.10.1, 1511.6.2, 1511.6.3, 2303.2, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.13, 2603.5.4, 2603.5.5, 2603.7, 2604.2.4, 2606.4, 2612.3, 2614.3, 3105.3

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

## ASTM—continued

- E90—2009(2016): Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements**  
1206.2, 1206.2.1
- E96/E96M—2016: Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials**  
202, 1202.3, 1404.3.1
- E108—2017: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings**  
1505.1, 2603.6, 2610.2, 2610.3
- E119—2018B: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials**  
703.2.1.1, 703.2.1.3, 703.2.1.4, 703.2.1.5, 703.2.2, 703.4, 703.6, 704.12, 705.7, 705.8.5, 707.6, 712.1.13.2, 714.4.1, 714.5.1, 715.3, 715.4, 715.4.1, Table 716.1(1), Table 716.1(2), Table 716.1(3), 716.1.2.3, 716.2.5.1.1, 716.2.5.4, 716.3.2.1.1, 717.3.1, 717.5.2, 717.5.3, 717.6.1, 717.6.2, Table 721.1(1), 2103.1, 2603.5.1
- E136—2019: Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750°C**  
703.3.1
- E283—04(2012): Standard Test Method for Determining Rate of Air Leakage through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls and Doors Under Specified Pressure Differences across the Specimen**  
202
- E330/E330M—14: Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference**  
1709.5.2, 1709.5.2.1, 1709.5.3.1
- E331—2000(2016): Standard Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference**  
1402.2, 1403.2
- E336—19a: Standard Test Method for Measurement of Airborne Sound Attenuation between Rooms in Buildings**  
1206.2
- E492—2009(2016)E1: Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-ceiling Assemblies Using the Tapping Machine**  
1206.3
- E580/E580M—17: Standard Practice for Installation of Ceiling Suspension Systems for Acoustical Tile and Lay-in Panels in Areas Subject to Earthquake Ground Motions**  
1617.11.16, 1617A.1.21
- E605/E605M—93(2015)e1: Test Method for Thickness and Density of Sprayed Fire-resistive Material (SFRM) Applied to Structural Members**  
1705.15
- E648—2017A: Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor-covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source**  
406.2.4, 424.2, 804.2, 804.3, 804.4.1, 804.4.2
- E662—17a: Standard Test Method for Specific Optical Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials**  
804.4.1, 804.4.2
- E681—09(2015): Test Methods for Concentration Limits of Flammability of Chemical Vapors and Gases**  
202
- E736/E736M—2017: Test Method for Cohesion/Adhesion of Sprayed Fire-resistive Materials Applied to Structural Members**  
704.13.3.2, 1705.15.6
- E814—2013A(2017): Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems**  
202, 714.4.1.2, 714.4.2, 714.5.1.2
- E970—2017: Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Exposed Attic Floor Insulation Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source**  
720.3.1
- E1007—16: Test Method for Field Measurement of Tapping Machine Impact Sound Transmission Through Floor-Ceiling Assemblies and Associated Support Structures**  
1206.3
- E1300—2016: Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings**  
2404.1, 2404.2, 2404.3.1, 2404.3.2, 2404.3.3, 2404.3.4, 2404.3.5



**REFERENCED STANDARDS****ASTM—continued**

**E1354—2017: Standard Test Method for Heat and Visible Smoke Release Rates for Materials and Products Using an Oxygen Consumption Calorimeter**

424.2, 602.4.1.1, 602.4.2.1, 602.4.3.1, 1402.5

**E1592—2005(2017): Test Method for Structural Performance of Sheet Metal Roof and Siding Systems by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference**

1504.4.2

**E1602—2003(2017): Guide for Construction of Solid Fuel-burning Masonry Heaters**

2112.2

**E1886—2013A: Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials**

1609.2, 1709.5.3.1

**E1966—2015: Standard Test Method for Fire-resistive Joint Systems**

202, 715.3.1, 1709.5.3.1

**E1996—2017: Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes**

1609.2, 1609.2.2, 1709.5.3.1

**E2072—14: Standard Specification for Photoluminescent (Phosphorescent) Safety Markings**

1025.4

**E2174—2018: Standard Practice for On-site Inspection of Installed Fire Stops**

1705.18.1

**E2178—13: Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials**

202

**E2273—2018: Standard Test Method for Determining the Drainage Efficiency of Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) Clad Wall Assemblies**

1407.4.1, 2510.6.2

**E2307—15BE1: Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Perimeter Fire Barriers Using the Intermediate-scale, Multistory Test Apparatus**

715.4

**E2353—2016: Standard Test Methods for Performance of Glazing in Permanent Railing Systems, Guards and Balustrades**

2407.1.2

**E2392 / E2392M—10(2016): Standard Guide for Design of Earthen Wall Building Systems**

2109.2.4.8.9.2

**E2393—10a(2015): Standard Practice for On-site Inspection of Installed Fire Resistive Joint Systems and Perimeter Fire Barriers**

1705.18.2

**E2404—2017: Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Textile, Paper or Polymeric (Including Vinyl) and Wood Wall or Ceiling Coverings, Facing and Veneers to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics**

803.5.2, 803.12, 1402.5

**E2556/E2556M—2010(2016): Standard Specification for Vapor Permeable Flexible Sheet Water-resistive Barriers Intended for Mechanical Attachment**

1403.2, 2510.6.1

**E2568—2017A: Standard Specification for PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems**

1407.2

**E2570/E2570M—07(2014)e1: Standard Test Method for Evaluating Water-resistive Barrier (WRB) Coatings Used under Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) for EIFS with Drainage**

1407.4.1.1, 1705.17.1

**E2573—2017: Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Site-fabricated Stretch Systems to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics**

803.10

**E2579—2015: Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Wood Products to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics**

803.11

**ASTM—continued**

**E2599—2018: Standard Practice for Specimen Preparation and Mounting of Reflective Insulation, Radiant Barrier and Vinyl Stretch Ceiling Materials for Building Applications to Assess Surface Burning Characteristics**

2614.3

**E2632/E2632M—13: Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Under-Deck Fire Test Response of Deck Materials**

709A.3, 709A.4, 709A.4.1, 709A.5

**E2634—2018: Standard Specification for Flat Wall Insulating Concrete Form (ICF) Systems**

1903.4

**E2652—16: Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Tube Furnace with a Cone-shaped Airflow Stabilizer at 750°C**

703.3.1

**E2707—15: Standard Test Method for Determining Fire Penetration of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Direct Flame Impingement Exposure**

707A.3, 707A.3.1, 708A.3

**E2726/E2726—12a: Standard Test Method for Evaluating the Fire-Test-Response of Deck Structures to Burning Brands**

709A.3, 709A.4, 709A.4.2

**E2751/E2751M—2017A: Practice for Design and Performance of Supported Laminated Glass Walkways**

2409.1

**E2925—17: Standard Specification for Manufactured Polymeric Drainage and Ventilation Materials Used to Provide a Rainscreen Function**

2510.6.2

**E3121—17: [OSHPD] Standard Test Methods for Field Testing of Anchors in Concrete or Masonry**

1901.3.4.2, 1910A.5.2

**F547—2017: Terminology of Nails for Use with Wood and Wood-base Materials**

Table 2506.2

**F606/F606M—16: Standard Test Methods for Determining the Mechanical Properties of Externally and Internally Threaded Fasteners, Washers, Direct Tension Indicators, and Rivets**

2213.1, 2213A.1

**F1292—99: Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment**

11B-1008.2.6.2

**F1292—04: Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment**

11B-1008.2.6.2

**F1487—01: Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use**

202-USE ZONE

**F1667—2018: Specification for Driven Fasteners: Nails, Spikes and Staples**

Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3), 1507.2.5, 1507.16.5, 2303.6, Table 2304.10.2, 2304.10.6, Table 2506.2,  
Table 2603.13.1, Table 2603.13.2

**F1951—99: Standard Specification for Determination of Accessibility of Surface Systems Under and Around Playground Equipment**

11B-1008.2.6.1

**F2006—17: Standard/Safety Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices for Nonemergency Escape (Egress) and Rescue (Ingress) Windows**

1015.8

**F2090—17: Specification for Window Fall Prevention Devices with Emergency Escape (Egress) Release Mechanisms**

1015.8, 1015.8.1

**F2200—2017: Standard Specification for Automated Vehicular Gate Construction**

3110.2

**F2374—2021: Standard Practice for Design, Manufacture, Operation, and Maintenance of Inflatable Amusement Devices**

3102

**G152—13: Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials**

1504.7

**G154—2016A: Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials**

1504.7

**G155—13: Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials**

1504.7



## REFERENCED STANDARDS

# AWC

American Wood Council  
222 Catoctin Circle SE, Suite 201  
Leesburg, VA 20175

### **ANSI/AWC NDS—2018: National Design Specification (NDS) for Wood Construction—with 2018 NDS Supplement**

202, 722.1, Table 1604.3, 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4, Table 1810.3.2.6, 1905.1.8, 2304.13, 2306.1, Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2), Table 2306.3(1), Table 2306.3(2), 2307.1, Table 2603.13.2

### **ANSI/AWC PWF—2021: Permanent Wood Foundation Design Specification**

1805.2, 1807.1.4, 2304.10.6.2

### **ANSI/AWC SDPWS—2021: Special Design Provisions for Wind and Seismic**

202, 2305.1, 2305.2, 2305.3, 2306.1, 2306.2, 2306.3, Table 2306.3(1), Table 2306.3(3), 2307.1

### **ANSI/AWC WFCM—2018: Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings**

1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2302.1, 2308.2.4, 2308.6.7.2, 2309.1

### **AWC STJR—2021: Span Tables for Joists and Rafters**

2306.1.1, 2308.4.2.1, 2308.7.1, 2308.7.2

### **AWC WCD No. 4—2003: Wood Construction Data—Plank and Beam Framing for Residential Buildings**

2306.1.2

# AWCI

Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry  
513 West Broad Street, Suite 210  
Falls Church, VA 22046

### **12-B—14: Technical Manual 12B, Third Edition; Standard Practice for the Testing and Inspection of Field Applied Thin Film Intumescent Fire-resistive Materials; an Annotated Guide**

1705.16

# AWPA

American Wood Protection Association  
P.O. Box 361784  
Birmingham, AL 35236-1784

### **C1—03: All Timber Products—Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes**

1505.6

### **M4—15: Standard for the Care of Preservative-treated Wood Products**

1810.3.2.4.1, 2303.1.9

### **U1—20: USE CATEGORY SYSTEM: User Specification for Treated Wood Except Commodity Specification H**

Table 1507.9.6, 1807.1.4, 1807.3.1, 1809.12, 1810.3.2.4.1, 1812.2, 1812A.2, 2303.1.9, 2304.12.1, 2304.12.2, 2304.12.2.6, 2304.12.2.7, 2304.12.2.8

# AWS

American Welding Society  
8669 NW 36 Street, #130  
Miami, FL 33166-6672

### **D1.1/D1.1M—15: Structural Welding Code—Steel**

Table 1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.5, 2204.1.1, 2204A.1.1, 2212.6.2, 2213.2, 2213A.2

### **D1.2/D1.2M—14: Structural Welding Code—Aluminum**

2003.1

### **D1.3/D1.3M—08: Structural Welding Code—Sheet Steel**

Table 1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.5

### **D1.4/D1.4M—2018: Structural Welding Code—Steel Reinforcing Bars**

1704.5, 1704A.5, Table 1705A.2.1, 1705A.2.5, Table 1705.3, 1705.3.1, 1705A.3.1, 1903.8, 1903A.8, 2107.3

### **D1.8/D1.8M—2016: Structural Welding Code—Seismic Supplement**

Table 1705A.2.1, 1705.2.5, 1705A.2.5

### **QC1—2016: Specification for AWS Certification of Welding Inspectors**

1705.2.5, 1705A.2.5

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****BHMA**

Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association  
355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor  
New York, NY 10017

**A 156.10—2017: Power Operated Pedestrian Doors**  
1010.3.2, 11B-404.2.9, 11B-404.3

**A 156.19—2019: Standard for Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors**  
1010.3.2, 11B-404.2.9, 11B-404.3, 11B-408.3.2.1, 11B-409.3.1

**A 156.27—2019: Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors**  
1010.3.1.1

**A 156.38—2019: Low Energy Power Operated Sliding and Folding Doors**  
1010.3.2

**CEN**

European Committee for Standardization (CEN)  
Rue de la Science 23  
Brussels, Belgium 1000

**BS EN 15250—2007: Slow Heat Release Appliances Fired by Solid Fuel Requirements and Test Methods**  
2112.2, 2112.5

**EN 1081—98: Resilient Floor Coverings—Determination of the Electrical Resistance**  
406.7.1

**CPA**

Composite Panel Association  
19465 Deerfield Avenue, Suite 306  
Leesburg, VA 20176

**ANSI A135.4—2012: Basic Hardboard**  
1403.3.1, 2303.1.7

**ANSI A135.5—2012: Prefinished Hardboard Paneling**  
2303.1.7, 2304.7

**ANSI A135.6—2012: Engineered Wood Siding**  
1403.3.2, 2303.1.7

**ANSI A208.1—2016: Particleboard**  
2303.1.8, 2303.1.8.1

**CPSC**

Consumer Product Safety Commission  
4330 East/West Highway  
Bethesda, MD 20814

**16 CFR Part 1201 (2002): Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Material**  
2406.2, Table 2406.2(1), 2406.3.1, 2407.1, 2407.1.4, 2408.2.1, 2408.3, 2409.2, 2409.4.1

**16 CFR Part 1209 (2002): Interim Safety Standard for Cellulose Insulation**  
720.6

**16 CFR Part 1404 (2002): Cellulose Insulation**  
720.6

**16 CFR Part 1500 (2009): Hazardous Substances and Articles; Administration and Enforcement Regulations**  
202

**16 CFR Part 1500.44 (2009): Method for Determining Extremely Flammable and Flammable Solids**  
202

**16 CFR Part 1507 (2002): Fireworks Devices**  
202

**16 CFR Part 1630 (2007): Standard for the Surface Flammability of Carpets and Rugs**  
804.4.1

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### CSA

Canadian Standards Association  
8501 East Pleasant Valley Road  
Cleveland, OH 44131

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440—17: North American Fenestration Standard/Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**

1709.5.1, 2405.5

**ASME A17.1—2019/CSA B44—2019** *the edition as referenced in: Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators, California Code of Regulations, Title 8, Division 1, Chapter 4, Subchapter 6, Elevator Safety Orders*

907.3.3, 911.1.6, 1009.4.1, 1607.11.1, 3001.2, Table 3001.3, 3001.5, 3002.5, 3003.2, 3007.1, 3008.1.4, 3008.7.1

**ASME A17.7—2007/CSA B44.7—07(R2017): Performance-based Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators**

Table 3001.3, 3001.5, 3002.5

### CSSB

Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau  
P. O. Box 1178  
Sumas, WA 98295-1178

**CSSB—97: Grading and Packing Rules for Western Red Cedar Shakes and Western Red Shingles of the Cedar Shake and Shingle Bureau**

Table 1507.8.5, Table 1507.9.6

### DASMA

Door & Access Systems Manufacturers Association International  
1300 Sumner Avenue  
Cleveland, OH 44115

**ANSI/DASMA 103—2017: Standard for Counterbalance Systems on Residential Sectional Garage Doors**

1210.4

**ANSI/DASMA 107—2017: Room Fire Test Standard for Garage Doors Using Foam Plastic Insulation**

2603.4.1.9

**ANSI/DASMA 108—2017: Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference**

1709.5.2.1

**ANSI/DASMA 115—2017: Standard Method for Testing Sectional Garage Doors, Rolling Doors and Flexible Doors: Determination of Structural Performance Under Missile Impact and Cyclic Wind Pressure**

1609.2.3

### DHA

Decorative Hardwoods Association  
42777 Trade West Dr  
Sterling, VA 20166

**ANSI/HPVA HP-1—2016: American National Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood**

2303.3, 2304.7

### DOC

U.S. Department of Commerce  
National Institute of Standards and Technology  
100 Bureau Drive  
Gaithersburg, MD 20899

**PS 1—19: Structural Plywood**

2303.1.5, 2304.7, Table 2304.8(4), Table 2304.8(5), Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2)

**PS 2—18: Performance Standard for Wood-based Structural-use Panels**

2303.1.5, 2304.7, Table 2304.8(5), Table 2306.2(1), Table 2306.2(2)

**PS 20—05: American Softwood Lumber Standard**

202, 1810.3.2.4, 2303.1.1

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****DOL**

U.S. Department of Labor  
 Occupational Safety and Health Administration  
 c/o Superintendent of Documents  
 U.S. Government Printing Office  
 Washington, DC 20210

**29 CFR Part 1910.1000 (2015): Air Contaminants**

202

**DOTn**

U.S. Department of Transportation  
 Office of Hazardous Material Safety  
 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE  
 East Building, 2nd Floor  
 Washington, DC 20590

**49 CFR 173.192—2011: Packaging for Certain Toxic Gases in Hazard Zone A**

Table 415.6.5

**49 CFR Parts 100–185—2015: Hazardous Materials Regulations**

202

**49 CFR Parts 173–178—2015: Specification of Transportation of Explosive and Other Dangerous Articles, UN 0335, UN 0336****Shipping Containers**

202

**49 CFR Parts 173.137—(2009): Shippers—General Requirements for Shipments and Packaging—Class 8—Assignment of Packing Group**

202

**EN**

European Committee for Standardization  
 Rue de la Science 23 B  
 Brussels, Belgium 1040 Belgium

**EN 459-1—15: Building Lime. Definitions, Specifications and Conformity Criteria**

2109.2.4.8.7

**FEMA**

Federal Emergency Management Agency  
 500 C Street S.W.  
 Washington, DC 20472

**FEMA-TB-11—01: Crawlspace Construction for Buildings Located in Special Flood Hazard Areas**

1805.1.2.1

**FM**

FM Approvals  
 Headquarters Office  
 1151 Boston-Providence Turnpike  
 P.O. Box 9102  
 Norwood, MA 02062

**FM 1950—2016: American National Standard for Seismic Sway Braces for Pipe, Tubing and Conduit**

1705.14.2, 1705A.14.2

||

**3260—00: Radiant Energy-Sensing Fire Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling****3011—99: Approval Standard for Central Station Service for Fire Alarm and Protective Equipment Supervision**

907.6.6.3

||

**FM 4430—12: Approved Standard for Smoke and Heat Vents**

910.3.2

**4430—80: Acceptance Criteria for Smoke and Heat Vents**

910.3.1

**4430—2012: Approval Standard for Heat and Smoke Vents**

910.3.1

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### FM—continued

- 4450—(1989): Approval Standard for Class 1 Insulated Steel Deck Roofs—with Supplements through July 1992**  
1510.2
- 4470—2016: Approval Standard for Single-ply Polymer-modified Bitumen Sheet, Built-up Roof (BUR) and Liquid Applied Roof Assemblies for Use in Class 1 and Noncombustible Roof Deck Construction**  
1504.8
- 4474—2011: American National Standard for Evaluating the Simulated Wind Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies Using Static Positive and/or Negative Differential Pressures**  
1504.4.1, 1504.4.2, 1504.4.3
- 4880—2017: American National Standard for Evaluating the Fire Performance Insulated Building Panel Assemblies and Interior Finish Materials**  
2603.4, 2603.9

## GA

Gypsum Association  
962 Wayne Avenue, Suite 620  
Silver Spring, MD 20910

**GA 216—2018: Application and Finishing of Gypsum Panel Products**

Table 2508.1, 2509.2

**GA 600—2018: Fire-resistance and Sound Control Design Manual, 22nd Edition**

Table 721.1(1), Table 721.1(2), Table 721.1(3)

## ICC

International Code Council, Inc.  
500 New Jersey Ave NW 6th Floor  
Washington, DC 20001

**ICC 300—17: ICC Standard on Bleachers, Folding and Telescopic Seating and Grandstands**

1030.1.1, 1030.7, 1607.19

**ICC 400—17: Standard on Design and Construction of Log Structures**

2302.1

**ICC 500—2020: ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters**

202, 423.1, 423.2, 423.3.1, 423.3.2, 423.4, 423.5, 1031.2, 1604.5.1, 1604.10

**ICC 600—2020: Standard for Residential Construction in High-wind Regions**

1609.1.1, 1609.1.1.1, 2308.2.4

**ICC 900/SRCC 300—2020: Solar Thermal System Standard**

3111.2.1

**ICC 901/SRCC 100—2020: Solar Thermal Collector Standard**

3111.2.1

|| **ICC-ES AC 01—21\*: Acceptance Criteria for Expansion Anchors in Masonry Elements**  
1617A.1.19

|| **ICC-ES AC 58—21\*: Acceptance Criteria for Adhesive Anchors in Masonry Elements**  
1617A.1.19

|| **ICC-ES AC 70—21\*: Acceptance Criteria for Fasteners Power-Driven into Concrete, Steel and Masonry Elements**  
1617A.1.20

**ICC-ES AC 77: Acceptance Criteria for Smoke Containment Systems Used with Fire-resistance-rated Elevator Hoistway Doors and Frames**  
707.14.1

|| **ICC-ES AC 106—21\*: Acceptance Criteria for Predrilled Fasteners (Screw Anchors) in Masonry**  
1617A.1.19

|| **ICC-ES AC 125—21\*: Acceptance Criteria for Concrete and Reinforced and Unreinforced Masonry Strengthening Using Externally Bonded Fiber-Reinforced Polymer (FRP) Composite Systems**  
1911A.3, 1911.3

|| **ICC-ES AC 156—21\*: Acceptance Criteria for Seismic Certification by Shake-Table Testing of Nonstructural Components**  
1705A.14.3

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

## ICC—continued

<b>ICC-ES AC 178—21*</b> : <i>Acceptance Criteria for Inspection and Verification of Concrete, and Reinforced and Unreinforced Masonry Strengthening Using Fiber-Reinforced Polymer (FRP) Composite Systems</i>	
1911A.3, 1911.3	
<b>ICC-ES AC 193—21*</b> : <i>Acceptance Criteria for Mechanical Anchors in Concrete Elements</i>	
1617A.1.19, 1901.3.2	
<b>ICC-ES AC 232—21*</b> : <i>Acceptance Criteria for Anchor Channels in Concrete Elements</i>	
1617A.1.19, 1901.3.2	
<b>ICC-ES AC 308—21*</b> : <i>Acceptance Criteria for Post-Installed Adhesive Anchors in Concrete Elements</i>	
1617A.1.19, 1901.3.3	
<b>ICC-ES AC 331: Acceptance Criteria for Smoke and Heat Vents</b>	
910.3.1	
<b>ICC-ES AC 358—21*</b> : <i>Acceptance Criteria for Helical Foundation Systems and Devices</i>	
1810A.3.1.5.1, 1810.3.1.5.1	
<b>ICC-ES AC 446—21*</b> : <i>Acceptance Criteria for Headed Cast-in Specialty Inserts in Concrete</i>	
1617A.1.19, 1901.3.2	
<b>ICC 1100—18: Standard for Spray-applied Foam Plastic Insulation</b>	
2603.1.1	
<b>ICC A117.1—17: Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities</b>	
202, 907.5.2.3.3, 1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11, 1010.2.13.1, 1012.1, 1012.6.5, 1012.10, 1013.4, 1023.9, 1102.1, 1108.2, 1110.1, 1110.2, 1110.5.1, 1110.5.2, 1112.3, 1112.4, 1112.5, 1112.5.2, 1207.1	
<b>SBCCI SSTD 11—97: Test Standard for Determining Wind Resistance of Concrete or Clay Roof Tiles</b>	◀
1504.3.1.1, 1504.3.1.2, 1504.3.1.3	

\*Refers to International Building Code, 2021 as a reference standard.

**ISO**

International Organization for Standardization  
Chemin de Blandonnet 8  
CP 401 1214 Vernier  
Geneva, Switzerland

**ISO 668—2013: Series 1 Freight Containers—Classifications, Dimensions and Ratings**  
Table 3115.8.5.3

**ISO 1496-1—2013: Series 1 Freight Containers—Specification and Testing - Part 1: General Cargo Containers for General Purposes**  
3115.8, Table 3115.8.5.3

**ISO 6346—1995: Freight Containers—Code, Identification and Marking with Amendment 3 - 2012**  
3115.3

**ISO 8115—86: Cotton Bales—Dimensions and Density**  
Table 307.1(1), Table 415.11.1.1.1

**ISO 8336—09: Fiber-cement Flat Sheets—Product Specification and Test Methods**  
1403.10, 1404.16.1, 1404.16.2, Table 2509.2

**ISO 9001—15: Quality Management Systems - Requirements**  
1705A.14.3

**MHI**

Material Handling Institute  
8720 Red Oak Blvd. Suite 201  
Charlotte, NC 28217

**ANSI MH29.1—08: Safety Requirements for Industrial Scissors Lifts**  
Table 3001.3

**ANSI/MH16.1—12: Specification for the Design, Testing and Utilization of Industrial Steel Storage Racks**  
Table 1705.13.7

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NAAMM**

National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers  
800 Roosevelt Road, Bldg. C, Suite 312  
Glen Ellyn, IL 60137

**FP 1001—07: Guide Specifications for Design of Metal Flag Poles**  
1609.1.1

**NCMA**

National Concrete Masonry Association  
13750 Sunrise Valley  
Herndon, VA 20171

**TEK 5—8B(2005): Details for Concrete Masonry Fire Walls**  
Table 721.1(2)

**NEHRP**

*Building Seismic Safety Council  
National Institute of Building Sciences  
1090 Vermont Avenue NW  
Suite 700  
Washington, DC 20005*

**FEMA P-2082—1: Recommended Seismic Provisions for New Building and Other Structures, Volume 1, September 2020**  
1617A.1.3

**NFPA**

National Fire Protection Association  
1 Batterymarch Park  
Quincy, MA 02169-7471

**04—21: Standard for Integrated Fire Protection and Life Safety System Testing**  
901.6.2.1, 901.6.2.2

**10—21: Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers**  
906.2, Table 906.3(1), Table 906.3(2), 906.3.2, 906.3.4

**11—16: Standard for Low-, Medium, and High Expansion Foam**  
904.7, 3109F

**12—15: Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems**  
904.8, 904.13

**12A—18: Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems**  
904.9

**13—22: Standard for Installation of Sprinkler Systems as amended\***  
403.3.3, 712.1.3.1, 903.3.1.1, 903.3.2, 903.3.8.2, 903.3.8.5, 904.13, 905.3.4, 907.6.4, 1019.3

\*NFPA 13, Amended Sections as follows:

*Revise Section 2.2 and add publications as follows:  
2.2 NFPA Publications.*

NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California edition.*

*Revise Section 6.4.3.1.1\* as follows:*

**6.4.3.1.1\*** Pipe joints shall not be located under foundation footings. The pipe under the building or building foundation shall not contain mechanical joints.

*Exceptions:*

2. Where allowed in accordance with Section 6.4.3.1.
3. Alternate designs may be utilized where designed by a registered professional engineer and approved by the enforcing agency.

*Delete Sections 8.15.5.1 and 8.15.5.2*

**8.15.5.1\*** Reserved.

**8.15.5.2** Reserved.

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued**

**Revise Section 9.2.1.16 as follows:**

**9.2.1.16** Exterior columns under 10 ft<sup>2</sup> (0.93 m<sup>2</sup>) in total area, formed by studs or wood joist, with no sources of ignition within the column, supporting exterior canopies that are fully protected with a sprinkler system, shall not require sprinkler protection.

**Revise Section 9.2.3.1\* as follows:**

**9.2.3.1\*** Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted where the exterior canopies, roofs, portecocheres, balconies, decks or similar projections are constructed with materials that are noncombustible, limited-combustible or fire retardant treated wood as defined in NFPA 703, Standard for Fire Retardant-Treated Wood and Fire-Retardant Coatings for Building Materials.

**Delete Section A.9.2.3.1 of Annex**

**Revise Section 9.2.3.2**

**9.2.3.2** Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted from below the canopies, roofs, balconies, decks or similar projections are combustible construction, provided the exposed finish material on the roof, or canopy is noncombustible, limited-combustible or fire retardant treated wood as defined in NFPA 703, Standard for Fire Retardant-Treated Wood and Fire-Retardant Coatings for Building Materials, and the roofs or canopies contains only sprinklered concealed spaces or any of the following unsprinklered combustible concealed spaces:

- (1) Combustible concealed spaces filled entirely with noncombustible insulation.
- (2) Light or ordinary hazard occupancies where noncombustible or limited-combustible ceilings are directly attached to the bottom of solid wood joists so as to create enclosed joist spaces 160 ft<sup>3</sup> (4.5 m<sup>3</sup>) or less in volume, including space below insulation that is laid directly on top or within the ceiling joists in an otherwise sprinklered attic [See 11.2.3.1.5.2(9)].
- (3) Concealed spaces over isolated small roofs or canopies not exceeding 55 ft<sup>2</sup> (5.1 m<sup>2</sup>).

**Delete language to section 9.2.3.3 and reserve section number.**

**9.2.3.3 Reserved.**

**Revise Section 9.3.6.1 as follows:**

**9.3.6.1** Automatic fire sprinklers shall not be required in elevator machine rooms, elevator machinery spaces, control spaces or hoistways of traction elevators installed in accordance with the applicable provisions in the *California Building Code*, where all of the following conditions are met:

- (1) The elevator machine room, machinery space, control room, control space or hoistway of traction elevator is dedicated to elevator equipment only.
- (2) The elevator machinery space, control room, control space or hoistway of traction elevators is separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies having a fire resistance rating of not less than that specified by the applicable building code.
- (3) No materials unrelated to elevator equipment are permitted to be stored in elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces or hoistways of traction elevators.
- (4) The elevator machinery is not of the hydraulic type.

**Add new Section 9.3.6.1.1 as follows:**

**9.3.6.1.1** The sprinkler required at the top and bottom of the elevator hoistway by 8.15.5.6 shall not be required where permitted by Chapter 30 of the *California Building Code*.

**Revise Section 9.3.19.1\* as follows:**

**9.3.19.1\*** Unless the requirements of 9.2.3.1 or 9.2.3.2 are met, sprinklers shall be installed under exterior roofs, canopies, portecochere, balconies, decks or similar projections exceeding 4 ft (1.2 m) in width.

**Revise Annex Section A9.3.19.2 as follows:**

**A9.3.19.2** The presence of planters, newspaper machines and similar items, should not be considered storage.

**Add Section 9.3.19.3 as follows:**

**9.3.19.3** Sprinklers may be omitted for following structures:

- (1) Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.
- (2) Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued**

**Add new Sections 16.9.3.1.3.4 and 16.9.3.1.3.5 as follows:**

**16.9.3.1.3.4** Where a system includes floor control valves, a hydraulic design information sign containing information for the floor shall be provided at each floor control valve. A hydraulic design information sign shall be provided for each area calculated. The installing contractor shall identify a hydraulically designed sprinkler system with a permanently marked weatherproof metal or rigid plastic sign secured with corrosion resistant wire, chain or other approved means. Such signs shall be placed at the alarm valve, dry pipe valve, preaction valve or deluge valve supplying the corresponding hydraulically designed area.

**16.9.3.1.3.5** Control valves, check valves, drain valves, antifreeze valves shall be readily accessible for inspection, testing and maintenance. Valves located more than 7 feet above the finished floor shall be provided with a means of opening and closing the valve from the floor level.

**Add new Sections 16.9.10.5, 16.9.10.5.1, 16.9.10.5.1.1, 16.9.10.5.1.2, 16.9.10.5.1.3, 16.9.10.5.1.4, 16.9.10.5.2 as follows:**

**16.9.10.5 Sectional Valves.**

**16.9.10.5.1** Private fire service main systems shall have sectional control valves at appropriate points in order to permit sectionalizing the system in the event of a break or for the making of repairs or extensions.

**16.9.10.5.1.1** Sectional control valves are not required when the fire service main system serves less than six fire appurtenances.

**16.9.10.5.1.2** Sectional control valves shall be indicating valves in accordance with Section 16.9.3.2.

**16.9.10.5.1.3** Sectional control valves shall be located so that no more than five fire appurtenances are affected by shut-down of any single portion of the fire service main. Each fire hydrant, fire sprinkler system riser, and standpipe riser shall be considered a separate fire appurtenance. In-rack sprinkler systems shall not be considered as a separate appurtenance.

**16.9.10.5.1.4** The number of fire appurtenances between sectional control valves is allowed to be modified by the authority having jurisdiction.

**16.9.10.5.2** A valve shall be provided on each bank where a main crosses a body of water or outside the building foundation(s) where the main or section of main runs under a building.

**Add new Section 17.2.2.9.1 as follows:**

**17.2.2.9.1** Powder-driven studs used for attaching hangers to the building structure are prohibited in Seismic design Categories C, D, E and F.

**Revise Section 18.5.11.4 as follows:**

**18.5.11.4** Where threaded pipe is used for sway bracing, it shall have a wall thickness of not less than Schedule 40.

**Replace Section 18.5.12.5 as follows:**

**18.5.12.5** Lag screws or power-driven fasteners shall not be used to attach braces to the building structure.

**Replace Section 18.5.12.6.1 as follows:**

**18.5.12.6.1** Fastening methods other than those identified in 9.3.5.12 shall not apply to other fastening methods, which shall be acceptable for use if certified by a registered professional engineer to support the loads determined in accordance with the criteria in 18.5.9. Calculations shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction.

**Revise Section 18.5.12.7.4 as follows:**

**18.5.12.7.4** Concrete anchors when identified in 18.5.11.11 shall be acceptable for use where designed in accordance with the requirements of the building code and certified by a registered professional engineer.

**Revise Section 18.6.1(3) as follows:**

**18.6.1\*(3)** No. 12, 440 lb (200 Kg) wire installed at least 45 degrees from the vertical plane and anchored on both sides of the pipe. Powder-driven fasteners for attaching restraint is allowed to be used provided that the restraint component does not support the dead load.

**Revise Section 19.2.3.1.5.2(9) as follows:**

**19.2.3.1.5.2(9)** Exterior columns under 10 ft<sup>2</sup> (0.93m<sup>2</sup>) in total area, formed by studs or wood joist, with no sources of ignition within the column, supporting exterior canopies that are fully protected with a sprinkler system.

**Revise Section 19.2.3.2.3.1 as follows:**

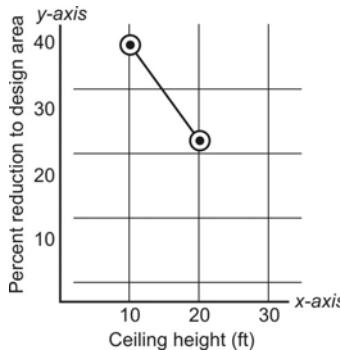
**19.2.3.2.3.1** Where listed quick-response sprinklers, excluding extended coverage quick-response sprinklers, are used throughout a system or portion of a system having the same hydraulic design basis, the system area of operation shall be permitted to be reduced without revising the density as indicated in Figure 19.2.3.2.3.1 when all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (1) Wet pipe system
- (2) Light hazard occupancy

**NFPA—continued**

- (3) 20 ft (6.1 m) maximum ceiling height
- (4) There are no unprotected ceiling pockets as allowed by 10.2.9 and 11.2.7 exceeding 32 ft<sup>2</sup> (3 m<sup>2</sup>)

**FIGURE 19.2.3.2.3.1  
DESIGN AREA REDUCTION FOR QUICK-RESPONSE SPRINKLERS**



Note:  $y = \frac{-3x}{2} + 55$

For ceiling height  $\geq 10$  ft and  $\leq 20$  ft,  $y = \frac{-3x}{2} + 55$

For ceiling height  $< 10$  ft,  $y = 40$

For ceiling height  $> 20$  ft,  $y = 0$

For SI units, 1 ft = 0.31 m.

**Revise Section 19.2.3.2.3.2 as follows:**

**19.2.3.2.3.2** The number of sprinklers in the design area shall never be less than seven.

**Revise Section 20.9.5.2 as follows:**

**20.9.5.2** Early suppression fast-response (ESFR) sprinklers shall not be used in buildings with automatic heat or smoke vents unless the vents use a standard-response operating mechanism with a minimum temperature rating of 360°F (182°C) or 100°F (56°C) above the operating temperature of the sprinklers, whichever is higher.

**23.8.1.2 Positive Alarm Sequence**

**23.8.1.2.1** Systems that have positive alarm features complying with 23.8.1.2 shall be permitted if approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Operation of a patient room smoke detector in Group I-2 and R-2.1 occupancies shall not include a positive alarm sequence feature.

**Add Section 28.1.3(18)(e) as follows:**

**28.1.3(18)(e)** Where a waterflow test is used for the purposes of system design, the test shall be conducted no more than 6 months prior to working plan submittal unless otherwise approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

**Revise Section 29.1 as follows:**

**29.1 Approval of Sprinkler Systems and Private Fire Service Mains.** The installing contractor shall do the following:

- (1) Notify the authority having jurisdiction and the property owner or property owner's authorized representative of the time and date testing will be performed.
- (2) Perform all required testing (see Section 29.2).
- (3) Complete and sign the appropriate contractor's material and test certificate(s) (see Figure A.29.1).
- (4) Remove all caps and straps prior to placing the sprinkler system in service.
- (5) Upon system acceptance by the authority having jurisdiction a label prescribed by Title 19 California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5 shall be affixed to each system riser.

**Revise Section 29.3 as follows:**

**29.3 Instructions.** The installing contractor shall provide the property owner or the property owner's authorized representative with the following:

- (1) All literature and instructions provided by the manufacturer describing proper operation and maintenance of any equipment and devices installed.
- (2) NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, testing, and maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California Edition.
- (3) Title 19, California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5, "Fire Extinguishing Systems."

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued**

**|| Revise Section 29.4.1 as follows:**

**29.4.1** The installing contractor shall identify a hydraulically designed sprinkler system with a permanently marked weatherproof metal or rigid plastic sign secured with corrosion resistant wire, chain or other approved means. Such signs shall be placed at the alarm valve, dry pipe valve, preaction valve or deluge valve supplying the corresponding hydraulically designed area. Pipe schedule systems shall be provided with a sign indicating that the system was designed and installed as a pipe schedule system and the hazard classification(s) included in the design.

**|| Revise Section 29.4.3 as follows:**

**29.4.3** The sign shall include the following information:

- (1) Location of the design area or areas
- (2) Discharge densities over the design area or areas
- (3) Required flow and pressure of the system at the base of the riser.
- (4) Occupancy classification or commodity classification and maximum permitted storage height and configuration
- (5) Hose stream allowance included in addition to the sprinkler demand
- (6) The name of the installing contractor
- (7) Required flow and pressure of the system at the water supply source.
- (8) Required flow and pressure of the system at the discharge side of the fire pump where a fire pump is installed.
- (9) Type or types and number of sprinklers or nozzles installed including the orifice size, temperature rating, orientation, K-Factor, sprinkler identification number (SIN) for sprinkler heads when applicable, and response type.
- (10) The minimum discharge flow rate and pressure required from the hydraulically most demanding sprinkler.
- (11) The required pressure settings for pressure reducing valves.
- (12) For deluge sprinkler systems, the required flow and pressure at the hydraulically most demanding sprinkler or nozzle.
- (13) The protection area per sprinkler based on the hydraulic calculations.
- (14) The edition of NFPA 13 to which the system was designed and installed.

**|| Revise Section 29.6.1 as follows:**

**29.6.1** The installing contractor shall provide a general information sign used to determine system design basis and information relevant to the inspection, testing and maintenance requirements required by NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California Edition.

**|| 13D—22: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One- and Two-family Dwellings and Manufactured Homes, as amended\***  
903.3.1.3

**\*NFPA 13D, Amended Sections as follows:**

**Revise Section 6.2.2 to read as follows:**

**6.2.2** Where a well, pump, tank or combination thereof is the source of supply for a fire sprinkler system, the configuration for the system shall be one of the following:

- (1) The water supply shall serve both domestic and fire sprinkler systems.
  - (a) A test connection shall be provided downstream of the pump that creates a flow of water equal to the smallest sprinkler on the system. The connection shall return water to the tank.
  - (b) Any disconnecting means for the pump shall be approved.
  - (c) A method for refilling the tank shall be piped to the tank.
  - (d) A method of seeing the water level in the tank shall be provided without having to open the tank.
  - (e) The pump shall not be permitted to sit directly on the floor.
- (2) A stand-alone tank is permitted if the following conditions are met:
  - (a) The pump shall be connected to a 220-volt circuit breaker shared with a common household appliance (e.g., range, oven, dryer),
  - (b) The pump shall be a stainless steel 240-volt pump,
  - (c) A valve shall be provided to exercise the pump. The discharge of the exercise valve shall drain to the tank, and
  - (d) A sign shall be provided stating: "Valve must be opened monthly for 5 minutes."
  - (e) A means for automatically refilling the tank level, so that the tank capacity will meet the required water supply duration in minutes, shall be provided.
  - (f) A test connection shall be provided downstream of the pump that creates a flow of water equal to the smallest sprinkler on the system. The connection shall return water to the tank.
  - (g) Any disconnecting means for the pump shall be approved.
  - (h) A method for refilling the tank shall be piped to the tank.
  - (i) A method of seeing the water level in the tank shall be provided without having to open the tank.
  - (j) The pump shall not be permitted to sit directly on the floor.

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued**

**Add new Section 6.2.2.1 as follows:**

**6.2.2.1** Where a fire sprinkler system is supplied by a stored water source with an automatically operated means of pressurizing the system other than an electric pump, the water supply may serve the sprinkler system only.

**Add new Section 6.2.4 as follows:**

**6.2.4** Where a water supply serves both domestic and fire sprinkler systems, 5 gpm (19 L/min) shall be added to the sprinkler system demand at the point where the systems are connected, to determine the size of common piping and the size of the total water supply requirements where no provision is made to prevent flow into the domestic water system upon operation of a sprinkler. For multipurpose piping systems, the 5 gpm (19 L/min) demand shall be added at the domestic connection nearest the design area. This demand may be split between two domestic connections at 2.5 gpm (10 L/min) each.

**Revise Section 8.3.4 as follows:**

**8.3.4\*** Sprinklers shall not be required in detached garages, open attached porches, carports with no habitable space above, and similar structures.

**Add new Sections 8.3.11 and 8.3.11.1 as follows:**

**8.3.11 Solar photovoltaic panel structures**

**8.3.11.1** Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted from the following structures:

(1) Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.

(2) Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**13R—22: Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Low-rise Residential Occupancies, as amended\***

903.3.1.2, 903.3.5.2, 903.4

**\*NFPA 13R, Amended Sections as follows:**

**Revise Section 2.2 and add publications as follows:**

**2.2 NFPA Publications.**

NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California edition.

**Add new Sections 6.6.10 and 6.10.1 as follows:**

**6.6.10 Solar photovoltaic panel structures**

**6.6.10.1** Sprinklers shall be permitted to be omitted from the following structures:

(1) Solar photovoltaic panel structures with no use underneath. Signs may be provided, as determined by the enforcing agency prohibiting any use underneath including storage.

(2) Solar photovoltaic (PV) panels supported by framing that have sufficient uniformly distributed and unobstructed openings throughout the top of the array (horizontal plane) to allow heat and gases to escape, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**Revise Section 11.4 as follows:**

**11.4 Instructions.**

The installing contractor shall provide the property owner or the property owner's authorized representative with the following:

(1) All literature and instructions provided by the manufacturer describing proper operation and maintenance of any equipment and devices installed.

(2) NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems 2013 California Edition and Title 19, California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5.

(3) Once the system is accepted by the authority having jurisdiction a label as prescribed by Title 19, California Code of Regulations, Chapter 5, shall be affixed to each system riser.

**14—19: Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose System, as amended\***

905.2, 905.3.4, 905.4.2, 905.6.2, 905.8

**\*NFPA 14, Amended Sections as follows:**

**Replace Section 6.3.7.1**

**6.3.7.1** System water supply valves, isolation control valves and other valves in fire mains shall be supervised in an approved manner in the open position by one of the following methods:

(1) Where a building has a fire alarm system or a sprinkler monitoring system installed, the valve shall be supervised by:

(a) a central station, proprietary or remote supervising station, or

(b) a local signaling service that initiates an audible signal at a constantly attended location.

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued**

- (2) Where a building does not have a fire alarm system or a sprinkler monitoring system installed, the valve shall be supervised by:
- Locking the valves in the open position, or
  - Sealing of valves and an approved weekly recorded inspection where valves are located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner.

**16—19: Standard for the Installation of Foam-water Sprinkler and Foam-water Spray Systems**

904.7, 904.13

**17—21: Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems**

904.6, 904.13

**17A—21: Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems**

904.5, 904.13

**20—19: Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection**

412.2.4.1, 913.1, 913.2, 913.2.1, 913.5

**|| 24—19: Standard for Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances, as amended\***  
3109F

\*NFPA 24, Amended Sections as follows:

**Amend Section 4.2.1 as follows:**

**Section 4.2.1.** Installation work shall be done by fully experienced and responsible contractors. Contractors shall be appropriately licensed in the State of California to install private fire service mains and their appurtenances.

**Revise Section 4.2.2 as follows:**

**4.2.2** Installation or modification of private fire service mains shall not begin until plans are approved and appropriate permits secured from the authority having jurisdiction.

**Add Section 4.2.2.1 as follows:**

**4.2.2.1** As approved by the authority having jurisdiction, emergency repair of existing system may start immediately, with plans being submitted to the authority having jurisdiction within 96 hours from the start of the repair work.

**Revise Section 5.9.5.1 as follows:**

**5.9.5.1** Fire department connections shall be on the street side of buildings and as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

**Add Sections 6.6.1.1, 6.6.1.2, 6.6.1.3 and 6.6.1.4 as follows:**

**6.6.1.1** Sectional control valves are not required when the fire service main system serves less than six fire appurtenances.

**6.6.1.2** Sectional control valves shall be indicating valves in accordance with NFPA 13, Section 6.7.1.3.

**6.6.1.3** Sectional control valves shall be located so that no more than five fire appurtenances are affected by shut-down of any single portion of the fire service main. Each fire hydrant, fire sprinkler system riser and standpipe riser shall be considered a separate fire appurtenance. In-rack sprinkler systems shall not be considered as a separate appurtenance.

**6.6.1.4** The number of fire appurtenances between sectional control valves is allowed to be modified by the authority having jurisdiction.

**Revise Section 10.4.3.1.1 as follows:**

**10.4.3.1.1** Pipe joints shall not be located under foundation footings. The pipe under the building or building foundation shall not contain mechanical joints.

**Exceptions:**

- Where allowed in accordance with 10.4.3.2.
- Alternate designs may be utilized where designed by a registered professional engineer and approved by the enforcing agency.

**Revise Section 10.9.1 as follows:**

**10.9.1** Backfill shall be well tamped in layers or puddle under and around pipes to prevent settlement or lateral movement. Backfill shall consist of clean fill sand or pea gravel to a minimum 6" below and to a minimum of 12" above the pipe and shall contain no ashes, cinders, refuse, organic matter or other corrosive materials. Other backfill materials and methods are permitted where designed by a registered professional engineer and approved by the enforcing agency.

**25—I3CA: California NFPA 25 Edition (Based on the 2011 Edition) Inspection, Testing and Maintenance of Water-based Fire Protection Systems**  
Chapter 31F, 3108F

**30—21: Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code**

415.6.1, 415.6.2, 507.8.1.1.1, 507.8.1.1.2

**30A—21: Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages**

406.2.9.2

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

**NFPA—continued****31—20: Standard for the Installation of Oil-burning Equipment**

2113.15

**32—16: Standard for Dry Cleaning Facilities, *as amended\****

415.9.3, 2101.1.1

*\*NFPA 32, Amended Sections as follows:**Delete the following publications from Section 2.2:***2.2 NFPA Publications.**NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*, 2010 edition.NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems*, 2011 edition.NFPA 70, *National Electrical Code*<sup>®</sup>, 2011 edition.NFPA 101<sup>®</sup>, *Life Safety Code*<sup>®</sup>, 2009 edition.NFPA 5000<sup>®</sup>, *Building Construction and Safety Code*<sup>®</sup>, 2009 edition.*Revise Section 4.4.1.1 as follows:***4.4.1.1** General building and structure design and construction shall be in accordance with *California Building Code*.*Delete language to Sections 4.4.1.2 and 4.4.1.3 and reserve section numbers.***4.4.1.2 Reserved****4.4.1.3 Reserved***Revise Section 4.4.4 as follows:***4.4.4 Means of Egress.** Means of egress shall conform with the provisions of *the California Building Code*.*Revise Section 4.6.2 as follows:***4.6.2 Automatic Sprinkler Systems.** Where required by this standard, automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, and periodically inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 5*.*Revise Section 4.6.4 as follows:***4.6.4 Portable Fire Extinguishers.** Suitable numbers and types of portable fire extinguishers shall be installed and maintained throughout the drycleaning plant in accordance with *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 3*.*Revise Section 7.3.2 as follows:***7.3.2 Electrical Installations.** Electrical equipment and wiring in a Type II drycleaning room shall comply with the provisions of *California Electrical Code*, for use in Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations.**37—18: Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines****40—19: Standard for the Storage and Handling of Cellulose Nitrate Film**

409.1

**54—18: National Fuel Gas Code****58—20: Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code**

415.9.2

**61—20: Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Product Facilities**

426.1

**68—13: Standard on Explosion Protection by Deflagration Venting***Table 414.5.1***70—20: National Electrical Code**

108.3, 406.2.7, 406.2.9, 412.5.7, 415.11.1.8, Table 509.1, 904.3.1, 907.6.1, 909.12.2, 909.16.3, 910.4.6, 1204.4.1, 2701.1, 2702.1.3, 3111.3

**72—22: National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code, *as amended\****

407.4.4.5, 407.4.4.5.1, 901.6, 903.4.1, 904.3.5, 907.1.2, 907.2, 907.2.6, 907.2.9.3, 907.2.11, 907.2.13.2, 907.3, 907.3.3, 907.3.4, 907.5.2.1.2, 907.5.2.2, 907.5.2.2.5, 907.6, 907.6.1, 907.6.2, 907.6.6, 907.7, 907.7.1, 907.7.2, 911.1.6, 915.4.1, 915.5.2, 915.7, 917.1, 2702.2.4, 3005.5, 3007.7, 3108F

||

IT

||

||

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued**

**\*NFPA 72, Amended Sections as follows:**

**Revise Section 10.3.1 as follows:**

**10.3.1** Equipment constructed and installed in conformity with this Code shall be listed for the purpose for which it is used. *Fire alarm systems and components shall be California State Fire Marshal approved and listed in accordance with California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1.*

**Revise Section 10.3.3 as follows:**

**10.3.3** All devices and appliances that receive their power from the initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit of a control unit shall be *California State Fire Marshal* listed for use with the control unit.

&gt;

**Revise Section 12.3.8.1 as follows:**

**12.3.8.1** The outgoing and return (redundant) circuit conductors shall be permitted in the same cable assembly (i.e., multiconductor cable), enclosure or raceway only under the following conditions:

- (1) For a distance not to exceed 10 ft (3.0 m) where the outgoing and return conductors enter or exit the initiating device, notification appliance or control unit enclosures.
- (2) Single drops installed in the raceway to individual devices or appliances.
- (3)\*In a single room not exceeding 1000 ft<sup>2</sup> (93 m<sup>2</sup>) in area, a drop installed in the raceway to multiple devices or appliances that does not include any emergency control function devices.
- (4) Where the vertically run conductors are contained in a 2-hour rated cable assembly, or enclosed (installed) in a 2-hour rated enclosure or a listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a 2-hour fire-resistive rating.

**Revise Section 14.4.6.1 as follows:**

**14.4.6.1 Testing,** Household fire alarm systems shall be tested in *accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions* according to the methods of Table 14.4.3.2.

||

**Revise Section 17.16 as follows:**

**17.16 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device.** A fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device shall indicate those conditions for a specific fire extinguisher required by *California Code of Regulations, Title 19, Division 1, Chapter 1, Section 574.2 (c) and California Fire Code to a fire alarm control unit.*

&gt;||

**Delete the amendments to Section 21.3.6 and adopt the model text.**

||

**Revise Section 12.3.8 as follows:**

**12.3.8 (5)** Where the vertically run conductors are contained in a 2-hour rated cable assembly, or enclosed (installed) in a 2-hour rated enclosure or a listed circuit integrity (C.I.) cable, which meets or exceeds a 2-hour fire resistive rating.

||

**23.8.1.2 Positive Alarm Sequence**

**23.8.1.2.1** Systems that have positive alarm features complying with 23.8.1.2 shall be permitted if approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Operation of a patient room smoke detector in Group I-2 and R-2.1 occupancies shall not include a positive alarm sequence feature.

||

**Revise Section 23.8.5.1.2 as follows:**

**23.8.5.1.2\*** Where connected to a supervising station, fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices shall include a manual fire alarm box to initiate a signal to the supervising station.

||

**Exception:** Fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control, supervisory service and fire sprinkler monitoring as permitted in Section 17.15 of NFPA 72.

||

**Revise Section 23.8.5.4.1 as follows:**

**23.8.5.4.1** Systems equipped with alarm verification features shall be permitted under the following conditions:

- (1) The alarm verification feature is not initially enabled unless conditions or occupant activities that are expected to cause nuisance alarms are anticipated in the area that is protected by the smoke detectors. Enabling of the alarm verification feature shall be protected by password or limited access.
- (2) A smoke detector that is continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold does not delay the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1 or 21.2.1 by more than 30 seconds.
- (3) Actuation of an alarm-initiating device other than a smoke detector causes the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1 or 21.2.1 without additional delay.
- (4) The current status of the alarm verification feature is shown on the record of completion (*see Figure 7.8.2(a), Item 4.3*).
- (5) Operation of a patient room smoke detector in I-2 and R-2.1 occupancies shall not include an alarm verification feature.

**Revise Section 29.3.1 as follows:**

**29.3.1** All devices, combinations of devices and equipment to be installed in conformity with this chapter shall be approved and listed by the *California State Fire Marshal* for the purposes for which they are intended.

**NFPA—continued**

**Revise Section 29.8.2.1.1 as follows:**

**29.8.2.1.1\*** *Smoke and Heat Alarms.* Where connected to a supervising station unless exempted by applicable laws, codes or standards, smoke or heat alarms used to provide a fire-warning function, and when two or more alarms are installed within a dwelling unit, suite of rooms or similar area, shall be arranged so that the operation of any smoke or heat alarm causes all alarms within these locations to sound.

*Note: Exception to 29.8.2.1.1 not adopted by the SFM.*

**Add Section 29.10.2.1 as follows:**

**29.10.2.1** *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

**Add Section 29.10.6.8.1 as follows:**

**29.10.6.8.1** *The alarm verification feature shall not be used for household fire warning equipment.*

**80—19: Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives**

410.2.5, 509.4.2, 716.1, 716.2.5.1, 716.2.6.4, 716.2.9, 716.3.4.1, 716.3.5, 716.4.3, 1010.3.3

**82—19: Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment**

713.13

**85—19: Boiler and Combustion System Hazards Code**

426.1

**92—18: Standard for Smoke Control Systems**

909.7, 909.8

**99—21: Health Care Facilities Code**

407.11, 422.6, 425.1

**101—21: Life Safety Code**

1030.6.2

**105—19: Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives**

405.4.2, 710.5.2.2, 716.2.10, 909.20.4.1

**110—19: Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems**

2702.1.3, 3111F

**111—19: Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems**

2702.1.3, 3111F

**120—20: Standard for Fire Prevention and Control in Coal Mines**

426.1

**130—20: Standard for Fixed Guideway Transit and Passenger Rail Systems: 443**

*\*NFPA 130, Amended Sections as follows:*

*Amend Section 2.2 and amend publications to read as follows:*

**2.2 NFPA Publications.**

NFPA 25, Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems, 2013 California edition.

Amend Section 3.3.44.2 and amend publications to read as follows:

**3.3.44.2\*** *Open Station.* A station that is constructed such that it is directly open to the atmosphere and smoke and heat are allowed to disperse directly into the atmosphere.

*The following enclosed areas in open stations are permitted:*

1. *Ticket/pass booths not exceeding 150 square feet (13.9 m<sup>2</sup>) in area.*
2. *Mechanical and electrical spaces typically not used for human occupancy and necessary for the operation of a fixed guideway transit system. Such spaces shall be limited to two per level.*
3. *Restrooms not exceeding 150 square feet (13.9 m<sup>2</sup>) in area. A maximum of four restrooms are permitted per level.*

*Add a new definition as 3.3.44.3 to read as follows:*

**3.3.44.1.1 Underground Station.** A station or portion thereof that is located beneath the surface of the earth or of the water.

*Amend Section 5.2.2.1 to read as follows:*

**5.2.2.1** Building construction for all new enclosed stations shall be not less than Type IA, Type IB or Type IIA construction and shall not exceed in area or height the limits specified in the California Building Code Table 503, for the station configuration or as determined by fire hazard analysis of potential fire exposure hazards to the structure.

## REFERENCED STANDARDS

### NFPA—continued

**Add Section 5.2.2.1.1 –5.2.2.1.3 to read as follows:**

**5.2.2.1.1** Underground stations shall be a minimum Type IA or Type IB constructions.

**5.2.2.1.2** Open stations may be of Type IIB construction and shall not exceed in area or height as required by Table 503 for Type II A.

**5.2.2.1.3** Open at grade stations may be of any construction type allowed by the California Building Code.

**Delete Section 5.2.2.2.**

**Amend Section 5.2.4.3 to read as follows:**

**5.2.4.3 Ancillary Spaces.** Fire resistance ratings of separations between ancillary occupancies shall be established as required by the California Building Code.

**Amend Section 5.2.4.3.1 to read as follows:**

**5.2.4.3.1** The following areas shall be separated by a two-hour fire barrier:

1. Electrical control rooms, auxiliary electrical rooms and associated battery rooms
2. Trash rooms
3. Train control rooms and associated battery rooms
4. Fan rooms
5. Emergency generator rooms

**Amend Section 5.2.4.5 to read as follows:**

**5.2.4.5\*** **Separation Between System and Nonsystem Occupancies.** All station public areas shall be fire separated from adjacent non-system occupancies by a one hour fire barrier, unless otherwise required by other provisions of the California Building Code.

**Amend Section 5.3.1.1 to read as follows:**

**5.3.1.1** The provisions for means of egress for a station shall comply with Chapter 10 of the California Building Code, except as herein modified.

**Amend Section 5.3.2.1 to read as follows:**

**5.3.2.1\*** The occupant load for a station shall be based on the train load of trains simultaneously entering the station on all tracks in normal traffic direction plus the simultaneous entraining load awaiting trains.

- (1) The train load shall consider only one train at any one track.
- (2) The basis for calculating train and entraining loads shall be the peak period ridership figures as projected for design of a new system or as updated for an operating system.
- (3) *Exiting shall be provided for occupant loads recalculated upon increase in service and/or every five years.*

**Amend Section 5.3.3.5 to read as follows:**

**5.3.3.5 Travel Distance.** The maximum travel distance on the platform to a point at which a means of egress route leaves the platform shall not exceed 91 440 mm (300 feet).

**Amend Section 5.3.3.7 to read as follows:**

**5.3.3.7 Alternate Egress.** At least two means of egress remote from each other shall be provided from each station platform as follows:

- (1)\*A means of egress used as a public circulation route shall be permitted to provide more than 50 percent of the required egress capacity from a station platform or other location.
- (2) Means of egress from separate platforms shall be permitted to converge.
- (3) Where means of egress routes from separate platforms converge, the subsequent capacity of the egress route shall be sufficient to maintain the required evacuation time from the incident platform.
- (4) *Enclosed station platforms shall have a minimum of one exit within 2.5 times the least width of the enclosed station platform up to a maximum of 50 feet (insert mm) from each end.*
- (5) *Routes from platform ends into the underground guideway shall not be considered as exits for calculating exiting requirements.*

**Amend Section 5.3.11.1 to read as follows:**

**5.3.11.1** Illumination of the means of egress in stations, including escalators that are considered a means of egress, shall be in accordance with Chapter 10 of the California Building Code.

**Amend Section 5.3.11.2 to read as follows:**

**5.3.11.2** Means of egress, including escalators considered as means of egress, shall be provided with a system of emergency lighting in accordance with Chapter 10 of the California Building Code.

**NFPA—continued*****Amend Section 5.4.1.1 to read as follows:*****5.4.1.1** Enclosed stations shall be provided with a fire command center in accordance with *Section 911.1.1 through 911.5 of the California Building Code*.***Amend Section 5.4.4.1 to read as follows:*****5.4.4.1\*** An automatic sprinkler protection system shall be provided *where required by Section 903 of the California Building Code*.***Delete Section 5.4.4.2.******Amend Section 5.4.5.1 to read as follows:*****5.4.5.1\*** Class I standpipes shall be installed *where required by Chapter 9 of the California Building Code* in accordance with NFPA 14 except as modified herein.***Amend Section 7.3.2.1 to read as follows:*****7.3.2.1** The fan inlet airflow hot temperature shall be determined by an engineering analysis, however, this temperature shall not be less than 482°C (250°F). *Ventilation fans and related components shall be capable of withstanding the maximum anticipated plus/minus pressure transients induced by train operations.****Add Section 7.6.1.1 to read as follows:*****7.6.1.1** Ventilation of stations shall not terminate at grade on any vehicle roadway.***Amend Section 7.7.1 to read as follows:*****7.7.1** Operation of the emergency ventilation system components shall be *capable of automatic and manual initiation in accordance with 909.12.3 of the California Building Code*.***Amend Section 7.8.1 to read as follows:*****7.8.1** The design of the power for the emergency ventilation system shall comply with the requirements of Article 700 of *the California Electrical Code and Section 909 of the California Building Code*.**170—18: Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols**

1025.2.6.1

**211—19: Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances**

2112.5

**221—21: Standard for High Challenge Fire Walls, Fire Walls and Fire Barrier Walls**

706.2, Table 716.1(2)

**252—17: Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies**Table 716.1(1), 716.1.1, 716.1.2.2.1, 716.2.1.1, 716.2.1.2, 716.2.2.1, 716.2.2.2, 716.2.2.3.1,  
716.2.5.1.1**253—19: Standard Method of Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source**

406.2.4, 424.2, 804.2, 804.3

**257—17: Standard for Fire Test for Window and Glass Block Assemblies**

Table 716.1(1), 716.1.1, 716.1.2.2.2, 716.3.1.1, 716.3.1.2, 716.3.2.1.3, 716.3.4

**NFPA—continued****259—18: Standard Test Method for Potential Heat of Building Materials**

2603.4.1.10, 2603.5.3

**265—19: Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile or Expanded Vinyl Wall Coverings on Full Height Panels and Walls**

803.5.1, 803.5.1.1

**268—19: Standard Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source**

1405.1.1.1, 1405.1.1.1.1, 1405.1.1.1.2, 2603.5.7

**275—17: Standard Method of Fire Tests for the Evaluation of Thermal Barriers**

508.4.4.1, 509.4.1.1, 1406.10.2, 1408.10.2, 2603.4

**276—19: Standard Method of Fire Tests for Determining the Heat Release Rate of Roofing Assemblies with Combustible Above-deck Roofing Components**

1508.1, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.5

**285—19: Standard Fire Test Method for the Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Nonload-bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components**

718.2.6, 1402.5, 1406.10.3, 1408.10.4, 1511.6.2, 2603.5.5

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****NFPA—continued****286—15: Standard Methods of Fire Test for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth**

402.6.4.4, 424.2, 803.1.1, 803.1.1.1, 803.11, 803.12, 803.13, 1406.10.2, 1408.10.3, 2603.7, 2603.9,  
2604.2.4, 2614.4, 3105.3

**288—17: Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Horizontal Fire Door Assemblies Installed in Horizontal in Fire-resistance-rated Floor Systems**

712.1.13.1

**289—19: Standard Method of Fire Test for Individual Fuel Packages**

402.6.2, 402.6.4.5, 424.2, 806.4

**409—16: Standard for Aircraft Hangars**

412.3.6, Table 412.3.6, 412.3.6.1, 412.5.5

**418—16: Standard for Heliports**

412.7.4

**484—19: Standard for Combustible Metals**

426.1

**502—20: Standard for Road Tunnels, Bridges, and Other Limited Access Highways**

429

**652—19: Standard on the Fundamentals of Combustible Dust**

426.1

**654—20: Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids**

426.1

**655—17: Standard for the Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions**

426.1

**664—20: Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities**

426.1

**701—19: Standard Methods of Fire Tests for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films**

410.2.6, 424.2, 806.4, 3102.3, 3102.3.1, 3102.6.1.1, 3105.3

**704—17: Standard System for the Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response**

202, 415.5.2

**750—19: Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems**

202, 904.11.1.1, 904.13

**1124—17: Code for the Manufacture, Transportation and Storage and Retail Sales of Fireworks and Pyrotechnic Articles**

415.6.4.1

**2001—18: Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems, as amended\***

904.10

\*NFPA 2001, Amended Sections as follows:

Add Sections 4.3.5.1.1 and 4.3.5.2.1 to read as follows:

**4.3.5.1.1** Alarms signals from the fire extinguishing system shall not interfere with the building fire alarm signal.

**4.3.5.2.1** The lens on visual appliances shall be “red” in color.

**Exception:** Other lens colors are permitted where approved by the enforcing agency.

**2010—20: Standard for Fixed Aerosol Fire-extinguishing Systems**

904.12

**PCI**

Precast Prestressed Concrete Institute  
8770 West Bryn Mawr, Suite 1150  
Chicago, IL 60631-3517

**PCI 124—18: Specification for Fire Resistance of Precast Prestressed Concrete**

722.1, 722.2.3.1

**PCI 128—19: Specification for Glass Fiber Reinforced Concrete Panels**

1903.3

**MNL 120—17: PCI Design Handbook 8th Edition**

1905A.1.1, 1905A.1.2

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****PTI**

Post-Tensioning Institute  
38800 Country Club Drive  
Farmington Hills, MI 48331

***PTI DC35.1—14: Recommendations for Prestressed Rock and Soil Anchors***

1810A.3.10.4, 1811A.2, 1812A.4, 1812A.5, 1810.3.10.4.1, 1811.2, 1812.4, 1812.5, 1813.2

**PTI DC—10.5-19: Standard Requirements for Design and Analysis of Shallow Post-Tensioned Concrete Foundations on Expansive and Stable Soils**

1808.6.2

**RMI**

Rack Manufacturers Institute  
8720 Red Oak Boulevard, Suite 201  
Charlotte, NC 28217

**ANSI/MH16.1—12: Specification for Design, Testing and Utilization of Industrial Steel Storage Racks**

2209.1

**ANSI/MH16.3—16: Specification for the Design, Testing and Utilization of Industrial Steel Cantilevered Storage Racks**

2209.2

**SBCA**

Structural Building Components Association  
6300 Enterprise Lane  
Madison, WI 53719

**ANSI/FS 100—12(R2018): Standard Requirements for Wind Pressure Resistance of Foam Plastic Insulating Sheathing Used in Exterior Wall Covering Assemblies**

2603.10

**SDI**

Steel Deck Institute  
2661 Clearview Road #3  
Allison Park, PA 15101

**SDI NC—2017: Standard for Noncomposite Steel Floor Deck**

2210.1.1.1

**SDI—continued****SDI RD—2017: Standard for Steel Roof Deck**

2210.1.1.2

**SDI-C—2017: Standard for Composite Steel Floor Deck—Slabs**

2210.1.1.3

**SDI-QA/QC—2017: Standard for Quality Control and Quality Assurance for Installation of Steel Deck**

1705.2.2

**SFM**

*State of California*  
*Department of Forestry and Fire Protection*  
*Office of the State Fire Marshal*  
*P.O. Box 944246*  
*Sacramento, CA 94246-2460*

**12-3: Releasing Systems for Security Bars in Dwellings**

1029.4

**12-7-3: Fire-testing Furnaces**

NA

**12-7A-1: Exterior Wall Siding and Sheathing**

703A.7, 707A.2

**12-7A-2: Exterior Window**

703A.7, 708A.2.1

**12-7A-3: Under Eave**

703A.7, 707A.8

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****SFM—continued****12-7A-4: Decking**

703A.7, 709A.3

**12-7A-4A: Decking Alternate Method A**

703A.7, 709A.3

**12-7A-5: Ignition Resistant Building Material**

703A.7, 709A.3

**12-8-100: Room Fire Tests for Wall and Ceiling Materials**

NA

**12-10-1: Power Operated Exit Doors**

NA

**12-10-2: Single Point Latching or Locking Devices**

NA

**12-10-3: Emergency Exit and Panic Hardware**

NA

*(The Office of the State Fire Marshal standards referred to above are found in the California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 12.)***SJI**

Steel Joist Institute  
140 Evans Street, Suite 203  
Florence, SC 29501

**SJI 100—20: 45th Edition Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for K-Series, LH-Series, DLH-Series and Joist Girders**

1604.3.3, 2203.1, 2207.1

**SJI 200—15: 2nd Edition Standard Specifications, Weight Tables and Bridging Tables for CJ-Series Composite Steel Joists**

1604.3.3, 2203.1, 2207.1

**SPRI**

Single-Ply Roofing Institute  
465 Waverly Oaks Road, Suite 421  
Waltham, MA 02452

**ANSI/SPRI RP-4—19: Wind Design Guide for Ballasted Single-ply Roofing Systems**

1504.5

**ANSI/SPRI VF-1—17: External Fire Design Standard for Vegetative Roofs**

1505.10

**ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435-ES-1—17: Wind Test Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roofing Systems**

1504.6

**ANSI/SPRI GT-1—2016: Test Standard for Gutter Systems**

1504.6.1

**SRCC**

Solar Rating & Certification Corporation  
400 High Point Drive, Suite 400  
Cocoa, FL 32926

**ICC 900/SRCC 300—2020: Solar Thermal System Standard**

3111.2.1

**ICC 901/SRCC 100—2020: Solar Thermal Collector Standard**

3111.2.1

**TIA**

Telecommunications Industry Association  
1320 N. Courthouse Road #200  
Arlington, VA 22201

**ANSI/TIA 222-H—2017: Structural Standard for Antenna Supporting Structures, Antennas and Small Wind Turbine Support Structures**

1609.1.1, 3108.1, 3108.2

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****TMS**

The Masonry Society  
105 South Sunset Street, Suite Q  
Longmont, CO 80501-6172

**216—2014: Standard Method for Determining Fire Resistance of Concrete and Masonry Construction Assemblies**  
Table 721.1(2), 722.1

**302—2018: Standard Method for Determining the Sound Transmission Class Rating for Masonry Walls**  
1208.2.1

**402—2016: Building Code for Masonry Structures**

1404.6, 1404.6.2, 1404.10, 1410.2.1, 1604.3.4, 1705.4, 1807.1.6.3.2, 1808.9, 2101.2, 2101.2.2,  
2101A.1.3, 2104A.1.3, 2106.1, 2106A.1, 2107.1, 2107.2, 2107.3, 2107.4, 2107A.4, 2107.5, 2107A.5,  
2107.6, 2108.1, 2108.2, 2108.3, 2108.4, 2108A.4, 2109.1, 2109.1.1, 2109.2, 2110.1, 2114.1, 2114.4,  
2115.1.1

**403—2017: Direct Design Handbook for Masonry Structures**  
2101.2

**404—2016: Standard for the Design of Architectural Cast Stone**  
2101.2

**504—2016: Standard for the Fabrication of Architectural Cast Stone**  
2103.1

**602—2016: Specification for Masonry Structures**  
1404.6.1, 1705.4, 1705A.4, 1705.4.1, 1807.1.6.3, 2101.2.2, 2101A.1.3, 2103.1, 2103.2.1, 2103.3,  
2103A.3.1, 2103.4, 2104.1, 2104.2, 2104A.1, 2105.1, 2105A.1, 2105.2, 2105A.2, 2105.3, 2105A.3,  
2106.6, 2115.1.1, 2115.8

**604—2016: Standard for the Installation of Architectural Cast Stone**  
2104.1

**TPI**

Truss Plate Institute  
2670 Crain Highway, Suite 203  
Waldorf, MD 20601

**TPI 1—2014: National Design Standard for Metal-plate-connected Wood Truss Construction**  
2303.4.6, 2306.1

**UBC**

International Code Council, Inc.  
500 New Jersey Avenue, NW 6th Floor  
Washington, DC 20001

**UBC Standard 15-2: Test Standard for Determining the Fire Retardancy of Roof-Covering Materials**  
1505.6

**UBC Standard 15-3: Wood Shakes**  
1505.6

**UBC Standard 15-4: Wood Shingles**  
1505.6

**UL**

UL LLC  
333 Pfingsten Road  
Northbrook, IL 60062

**9—2009: Fire Tests of Window Assemblies—with Revisions through February 2015**  
Table 716.1(1), 716.1.1, 716.1.2.2.2, 716.2.1.3, 716.3.1.1, 716.3.1.2, 716.3.2.1.3, 716.3.4, 1013.5

**10A—2009: Tin Clad Fire Doors—with Revisions through July 2018**  
716.2.1

**10B—2008: Fire Tests of Door Assemblies—with Revisions through February 2015**  
Table 716.1(1), 716.1.1, 716.1.2.2.1, 716.2.1.2, 716.2.2.2, 716.2.2.3.1, 716.2.5.1.1

**10C—2016: Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies**  
Table 716.1(1), 716.1.1, 716.1.2.2.1, 716.2.1.1, 716.2.2.1, 716.2.2.2, 716.2.2.3.1, 716.2.5.1.1, 1010.2.9.3

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****UL—continued****10D—2017: Standard for Fire Tests of Fire Protective Curtain Assemblies**

716.4

**13—96: Power-limited Circuit Cables****14B—2008: Sliding Hardware for Standard Horizontally Mounted Tin Clad Fire Doors—with Revisions through July 2017**

716.2.1

**14C—2006: Swinging Hardware for Standard Tin Clad Fire Doors Mounted Singly and in Pairs—with Revisions through July 2017**

716.2.1

**38—99: Manually Actuated Signaling Boxes—with Revisions through February 2, 2005, as amended.\*****\*Amend Section 14.1.5 as follows:**

**14.1.5** A signaling box having a glass panel, disc, rod or similar part that must be broken to operate it for a signal or for access to its actuating means shall satisfactorily complete five part-breaking operations using the means provided with the box, without jamming of the mechanism or other interference by broken particles. It shall be practicable to remove and replace the broken parts. A signaling box shall not have a glass panel, disc, rod or similar part requiring a striking action by grasping a tool to operate it for a signal. The force required to activate controls shall be no greater than 5 pounds (22 N) of force.

**\*Add Appendix B chapter to UL 38 (1999) as follows:****Appendix B,**

**14.1.5 Operation.** Controls and operating mechanisms shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist.

**55A—2004: Materials for Built-up Roof Coverings**

1507.10.2

**103—2010: Factory-built Chimneys, for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances—with Revisions through March 2017**

718.2.5.1

**127—2011: Factory-built Fireplaces—with Revisions through July 2016**

718.2.5.1, 2111.12

**193—04: Alarm Valves for Fire-Protection Service****199—95: Automatic Sprinklers for Fire Protection Service—with Revisions through August 19, 2005****199E—2004: Outline of Investigation for Fire Testing of Sprinklers and Water Spray Nozzles for Protection of Deep Fat Fryers**

904.13.4.1

**217—2015: Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms—with Revisions through November 2016**

907.2.11

**228—97: Door Closers/Holders, with or without Integral Smoke Detectors—with Revisions through January 26, 2006****260—04: Dry Pipe and Deluge Valves for Fire Protection Service****262—04: Gate Valves for Fire Protection Service****263—11: Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials—with Revisions through March 2018**

703.2, 703.2.1.3, 703.2.1.5, 703.2.2, 703.4, 703.4, 704.12, 705.7, 705.8.5, 707.6, 712.1.13.2, 714.4.1, 714.5.1, 715.3, Table 716.1(1), Table 716.1(3), 716.1.2.3, 716.2.5.1.1, 716.2.5.4, 716.3.2.1.1, 717.3.1, 717.5.2, 717.5.3, 717.6.1, 717.6.2, Table 721.1(1), 2103.1, 2603.5.1

**268—2016: Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems-with revisions through July 2016**

407.9, 907.2.6.2, 907.2.11.7

**268A—09: Smoke Detectors for Duct Application—with Revisions through October 22, 2003****294—2018: Access Control System Units—with Revisions through October 2018**

1010.2.11, 1010.2.12, 1010.2.13.1, 1010.2.14

**300—2005(R2010): Fire Testing of Fire Extinguishing Systems for Protection of Commercial Cooking Equipment—with Revisions through December 2014**

904.13

**300A—2006: Outline of Investigation for Extinguishing System Units for Residential Range Top Cooking Surfaces**

904.14.1.1

**305—2012: Panic Hardware—with Revisions through March 2017**

1010.2.9.3

**312—04: Check Valves for Fire-Protection Service****325—2017: Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver and Window Operations and Systems**

406.2.1, 3110.3

**UL—continued****346—05: Waterflow Indicators for Fire Protective Signaling Systems****464—03: Audible Signal Appliances—with Revisions through October 10, 2003****497B—04: Protectors for Data Communication and Fire Alarm Circuits****521—99: Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems—with Revisions through July 20, 2005****539—00: Single- and Multiple-Station Heat Detectors—with Revisions through August 15, 2005****555—2006: Fire Dampers—with Revisions through October 2016**

717.3.1

**555C—2014: Ceiling Dampers—with Revisions through May 2017**

717.3.1

**555S—2014: Smoke Dampers—with Revisions through October 2016**

717.3.1

**580—2006: Test for Uplift Resistance of Roof Assemblies—with Revisions through October 2018**

1504.4.1, 1504.4.2

**632—00: Electrically Actuated Transmitters****641—2010: Type L Low-temperature Venting Systems—with Revisions through April 2018**

2113.11.1.4

**710B—2011: Recirculating Systems—with Revisions through August 2014**

904.13

**723—2018: Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials**

202, 402.6.4.4, 406.7.2, 720.1, 720.4, 803.1.2, 803.5.2, 803.10, 803.11, 803.12, 803.13, 806.7, 1402.5, 1403.12.1, 1406.9, 1406.10.1, 1408.9, 1408.10.1, 1511.6.2, 1511.6.3, 2303.2, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.13, 2603.5.4, 2603.5.5, 2603.7, 2604.2.4, 2606.4, 2612.3, 2614.3, 3105.3

**723S—2006: Drop-Out Ceilings Installed Beneath Automatic Sprinklers**

2606.7.4

**753—04: Alarm Accessories for Automatic Water Supply Valves for Fire Protection Service****790—2004: Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Roof Coverings—with Revisions through October 2018**

1505.1, 2603.6, 2610.2, 2610.3

**793—2008: Automatically Operated Roof Vents for Smoke and Heat—with Revisions through March 2017**

910.3.1

**813—96: Commercial Audio Equipment—with Revisions through December 7, 1999****857—13: Busways**

1705A.14.3.1

**864—2014: Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems as amended\*—with Revisions through March 2018**

909.12

||

**\*Amend No. 55.1 as follows:****RETARD-RESET-RESTART PERIOD – MAXIMUM 30 SECONDS** —No alarm obtained from control unit. Maximum permissible time is 30 seconds.**\*Amend Section 55.2.2 as follows:**

Where an alarm verification feature is provided, the maximum retard-reset-restart period before an alarm signal can be confirmed and indicated at the control unit, including any control unit reset time and the power-up time for the detector to become operational for alarm, shall not exceed 30 seconds. (The balance of the section text is to remain unchanged).

**\*Add Section 55.2.9 as follows:**

Smoke detectors connected to an alarm verification feature shall not be used as releasing devices.

**Exception:** Smoke detectors which operate their releasing function immediately upon alarm actuation independent of alarm verification feature.**\*Amend Section 89.1.10 as follows:**

The existing text of this section is to remain as printed with one editorial amendment as follows:

**THE TOTAL DELAY (CONTROL UNIT PLUS SMOKE DETECTORS) SHALL NOT EXCEED 30 SECONDS.**

(The balance of the section text is to remain unchanged).

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****UL—continued**

- 924—2016: Safety Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment—with Revisions through May 2018**  
1013.5
- 1040—1996: Fire Test of Insulated Wall Construction—with Revisions through April 2017**  
1406.10.2, 2603.9
- 1256—02: Fire Test of Roof Deck Construction—with Revisions through August 2018**  
1508.1, 2603.3, 2603.4.1.5
- 1479—2015: Fire Tests of Penetration Firestops**  
202, 714.4.1.2, 714.4.2, 714.5.1.2, 714.5.4
- 1482—2011: Solid-fuel Type Room Heaters—with Revisions through August 2015**  
2112.2, 2112.5
- 1489—2016: Fire Resistant Pipe Protection Systems Carrying Combustible Liquids**  
403.4.8.2
- 1703—2002: Flat-plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels—with Revisions through September 2018**  
1507.17.5, 3111.3.1
- 1715—97: Fire Test of Interior Finish Material—with Revisions through April 2017**  
1406.10.2, 2603.9, 2614.4
- 1741—2010: Inverters, Converters, Controllers and Interconnection System Equipment for Use with Distributed Energy Resources—with Revisions through February 2018**  
3111.3.1
- 1777—2007: Chimney Liners—with Revisions through April 2014**  
2113.11.1, 2113.19
- 1784—2015: Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies**  
405.4.3, 710.5.2.2, 710.5.2.2.1, 716.2.1.4, 716.2.9.1, 716.2.9.3, 3006.3, 3007.6.3, 3008.6.3
- 1897—2015: Uplift Tests for Roof Covering Systems**  
1504.4.1, 1504.4.3
- 1975—06: Fire Tests for Foamed Plastics Used for Decorative Purposes**  
402.6.2, 402.6.4.5, 424.2
- 1994—2015: Luminous Egress Path Marking Systems**  
411.6, 1008.2.1, 1025.2.1, 1025.2.3, 1025.2.4, 1025.2.5, 1025.4
- 2034—2017: Single- and Multiple-station Carbon Monoxide Alarms—with Revisions through September 2018**  
915.4.2, 915.4.4
- 2075—2013: Standard for Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors—with Revisions through December 2017**  
915.5.1, 915.5.3
- 2079—2015: Tests for Fire Resistance of Building Joint Systems**  
202, 715.3.1, 715.8
- 2196—2017: Standard for Fire Test for Circuit Integrity of Fire-Resistive Power, Instrumentation, Control and Data Cables**  
909.20.7.1, 913.2.2, 2702.3, 3007.8.1, 3008.8.2
- 2200—2012: Stationary Engine Generator Assemblies—with Revisions through October 2015**  
2702.1.1
- 2202—2009: Electric Vehicle (EV) Charging System Equipment—with Revisions through February 2018**  
406.2.7
- 2594—2016: Electric Vehicle Supply Equipment**  
406.2.7
- 2703—2014: Mounting Systems, Mounting Devices, Clamping/Retention Devices and Ground Lugs for Use with Flat-plate Photovoltaic Modules and Panels—with Revisions through December 2019**  
1505.9
- 7103—19: Outline of Investigation for Building-Integrated Photovoltaic Roof Coverings**  
Table 1504.2, 1507.16.6
- 61730-1—2017: Photovoltaic (PV) Module Safety Qualification - Part 1: Requirements for Construction**  
1507.16.6, 1507.17.5, 1511.9, 3111.3.1
- 61730-2—2017: Photovoltaic (PV) Module Safety Qualification - Part 2: Requirements for Testing**  
1507.16.6, 1507.17.5, 1511.9, 3111.3.1

**REFERENCED STANDARDS****ULC**

Underwriters Laboratories of Canada  
13775 Commerce Parkway  
Richmond, BC V6V 2V4

**CAN/ULC S 102.2—2018: Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Flooring, Floor Coverings and Miscellaneous Materials and Assemblies**

720.2, 720.3, 720.4

**USC**

United States Code  
732 North Capitol Street NW  
Washington, DC 20401-0003

**18 USC Part 1, Ch. 40: Importation, Manufacture, Distribution and Storage of Explosive Materials**

202

**WCLIB**

West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau  
P.O. Box 23145  
Portland, OR 97223

**AITC 104—03: Typical Construction Details**

2306.1

**AITC 110—01: Standard Appearance Grades for Structural Glued Laminated Timber**

2306.1

**AITC 111—05: Recommended Practice for Protection of Structural Glued Laminated Timber During Transit, Storage and Erection**  
2303.1.3.1

**AITC 113—10: Standard for Dimensions of Structural Glued Laminated Timber**

2306.1

**WCLIB—continued**

**AITC 119—96: Standard Specifications for Structural Glued Laminated Timber of Hardwood Species**

2306.1

**AITC 200—09: Manufacturing Quality Control Systems Manual for Structural Glued Laminated Timber**

2306.1

**AITC 404—05: Standard for Radially Reinforcing Curved Glued Laminated Timber Members to Resist Radial Tension**  
2303.1.3.1

**WDMA**

Window and Door Manufacturers Association  
2025 M Street NW, Suite 800  
Washington, DC 20006

**AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/L.S.2/A440—17: Specifications for Windows, Doors and Unit Skylights**

1709.5.1, 2405.5

**WRI**

Wire Reinforcement Institute, Inc.  
942 Main Street, Suite 300  
Hartford, CT 06103

**WRI/CRSI—81: Design of Slab-on-ground Foundations—with 1996 Update**

1808.6.2



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX A – EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## APPENDIX A

### EMPLOYEE QUALIFICATIONS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

---

**User notes:**

**About this appendix:** Appendix A provides optional criteria for the qualifications for jurisdictions to consider when hiring personnel to enforce the building code. Criteria for the building official, plan reviewers and inspectors are provided.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

#### SECTION A101 BUILDING OFFICIAL QUALIFICATIONS

**[A] A101.1 Building official.** The building official shall have not fewer than 10 years' experience or equivalent as an architect, engineer, inspector, contractor or superintendent of construction, or any combination of these, 5 years of which shall have been supervisory experience. The building official should be certified as a building official through a recognized certification program. The building official shall be appointed or hired by the applicable governing authority.

**[A] A101.2 Chief inspector.** The building official can designate supervisors to administer the provisions of this code and the *California Mechanical and Plumbing Codes* and *International Fuel Gas Code*. Each supervisor shall have not fewer than 10 years experience or equivalent as an architect, engineer, inspector, contractor or superintendent of construction, or any combination of these, 5 years of which shall have been in a supervisory capacity. They shall be certified through a recognized certification program for the appropriate trade.

**[A] A101.3 Inspector and plans examiner.** The building official shall appoint or hire such number of officers, inspectors, assistants and other employees as shall be authorized by the jurisdiction. A person who has fewer than 5 years of experience as a contractor, engineer, architect, or as a superintendent, foreman or competent mechanic in charge of construction shall not be appointed or hired as inspector of

construction or plans examiner. The inspector or plans examiner shall be certified through a recognized certification program for the appropriate trade.

**[A] A101.4 Termination of employment.** Employees in the position of building official, chief inspector or inspector shall not be removed from office except for cause after full opportunity has been given to be heard on specific charges before such applicable governing authority.

#### SECTION A102 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**[A] A102.1 General.** See Table A102.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

**TABLE A102.1  
REFERENCED STANDARDS**

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
CBC—22	<i>California Building Code</i>	A101.2
CMC—22	<i>California Mechanical Code</i>	A101.2
CPC—22	<i>California Plumbing Code</i>	A101.2
IFGC—21	<i>International Fuel Gas Code</i>	A101.2



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX B – BOARD OF APPEALS

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## APPENDIX B

### BOARD OF APPEALS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** Appendix B provides criteria for Board of Appeals members. Also provided are procedures by which the Board of Appeals should conduct its business.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

#### SECTION B101 GENERAL

**[A] B101.1 Scope.** A board of appeals shall be established within the jurisdiction for the purpose of hearing applications for modification of the requirements of this code pursuant to the provisions of Section 113. The board shall be established and operated in accordance with this section, and shall be authorized to hear evidence from appellants and the building official pertaining to the application and intent of this code for the purpose of issuing orders pursuant to these provisions.

**[A] B101.2 Application for appeal.** Any person shall have the right to appeal a decision of the building official to the board. An application for appeal shall be based on a claim that the intent of this code or the rules legally adopted hereunder have been incorrectly interpreted, the provisions of this code do not fully apply or an equally good or better form of construction is proposed. The application shall be filed on a form obtained from the building official within 20 days after the notice was served.

**[A] B101.2.1 Limitation of authority.** The board shall not have authority to waive requirements of this code or interpret the administration of this code.

**[A] B101.2.2 Stays of enforcement.** Appeals of notice and orders, other than Imminent Danger notices, shall stay the enforcement of the notice and order until the appeal is heard by the board.

**[A] B101.3 Membership of board.** The board shall consist of five voting members appointed by the chief appointing authority of the jurisdiction. Each member shall serve for [INSERT NUMBER OF YEARS] years or until a successor has been appointed. The board members' terms shall be staggered at intervals, so as to provide continuity. The building official shall be an ex officio member of said board but shall not vote on any matter before the board.

**[A] B101.3.1 Qualifications.** The board shall consist of five individuals, who are qualified by experience and training to pass on matters pertaining to building construction and are not employees of the jurisdiction.

**[A] B101.3.2 Alternate members.** The chief appointing authority is authorized to appoint two alternate members who shall be called by the board chairperson to hear appeals during the absence or disqualification of a member. Alternate members shall possess the qualifications required for board membership, and shall be appointed for the same term or until a successor has been appointed.

**[A] B101.3.3 Vacancies.** Vacancies shall be filled for an unexpired term in the same manner in which original appointments are required to be made.

**[A] B101.3.4 Chairperson.** The board shall annually select one of its members to serve as chairperson.

**[A] B101.3.5 Secretary.** The chief appointing authority shall designate a qualified clerk to serve as secretary to the

## APPENDIX B—BOARD OF APPEALS

board. The secretary shall file a detailed record of all proceedings, which shall set forth the reasons for the board's decision, the vote of each member, the absence of a member and any failure of a member to vote.

**[A] B101.3.6 Conflict of interest.** A member with any personal, professional or financial interest in a matter before the board shall declare such interest and refrain from participating in discussions, deliberations and voting on such matters.

**[A] B101.3.7 Compensation of members.** Compensation of members shall be determined by law.

**[A] B101.3.8 Removal from the board.** A member shall be removed from the board prior to the end of their term only for cause. Any member with continued absence from regular meeting of the board may be removed at the discretion of the chief appointing authority.

**[A] B101.4 Rules and procedures.** The board shall establish policies and procedures necessary to carry out its duties consistent with the provisions of this code and applicable state law. The procedures shall not require compliance with strict rules of evidence, but shall mandate that only relevant information be presented.

**[A] B101.5 Notice of meeting.** The board shall meet upon notice from the chairperson, within 10 days of the filing of an appeal or at stated periodic intervals.

**[A] B101.5.1 Open hearing.** All hearings before the board shall be open to the public. The appellant, the appellant's representative, the building official and any person whose interests are affected shall be given an opportunity to be heard.

**B101.5.2 Quorum.** Three members of the board shall constitute a quorum.

**[A] B101.5.3 Postponed hearing.** When five members are not present to hear an appeal, either the appellant or the appellant's representative shall have the right to request a postponement of the hearing.

**[A] B101.6 Legal counsel.** The jurisdiction shall furnish legal counsel to the board to provide members with general legal advice concerning matters before them for consideration. Members shall be represented by legal counsel at the jurisdiction's expense in all matters arising from service within the scope of their duties.

**[A] B101.7 Board decision.** The board shall only modify or reverse the decision of the building official by a concurring vote of three or more members.

**[A] B101.7.1 Resolution.** The decision of the board shall be by resolution. Every decision shall be promptly filed in writing in the office of the *building official* within three days and shall be open to the public for inspection. A certified copy shall be furnished to the appellant or the appellant's representative and to the *building official*.

**[A] B101.7.2 Administration.** The *building official* shall take immediate action in accordance with the decision of the board.

**[A] B101.8 Court review.** Any person, whether or not a previous party of the appeal, shall have the right to apply to the appropriate court for a writ of certiorari to correct errors of law. Application for review shall be made in the manner and time required by law following the filing of the decision in the office of the chief administrative officer.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX C – GROUP U – AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## APPENDIX C

### GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

**User note:**

**About this appendix:** Agricultural buildings are given special consideration in Appendix C. Often such buildings have unique uses and structural needs. Where an agricultural building is surrounded by 60 feet of open area on all sides, size limits are waived. Automatic sprinkler protection may be required.

#### SECTION C101 GENERAL

**C101.1 Scope.** The provisions of this appendix shall apply exclusively to agricultural buildings. Such buildings shall be classified as Group U and shall include the following uses:

1. Livestock shelters or buildings, including shade structures and milking barns.
2. Poultry buildings or shelters.
3. Barns.
4. Storage of equipment and machinery used exclusively in agriculture.

5. Horticultural structures, including detached production greenhouses and crop protection shelters.
6. Sheds.
7. Grain silos.
8. Stables.

#### SECTION C102 ALLOWABLE HEIGHT AND AREA

**C102.1 General.** Buildings classified as Group U Agricultural shall not exceed the area or height limits specified in Table C102.1.

**TABLE C102.1**  
**BASIC ALLOWABLE AREA FOR A GROUP U, ONE STORY IN HEIGHT AND MAXIMUM HEIGHT OF SUCH OCCUPANCY**

I		II		III and IV		V	
A	B	A	B	III A and IV	III B	A	B
ALLOWABLE AREA (square feet) <sup>a</sup>							
Unlimited	60,000	27,100	18,000	27,100	18,000	21,100	12,000
MAXIMUM HEIGHT IN STORIES							
Unlimited	12	4	2	4	2	3	2
MAXIMUM HEIGHT IN FEET							
Unlimited	160	65	55	65	55	50	40

For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.

a. See Section C102 for unlimited area under certain conditions.

## APPENDIX C—GROUP U—AGRICULTURAL BUILDINGS

**C102.2 One-story unlimited area.** The area of a one-story Group U agricultural building shall not be limited if the building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width.

**C102.3 Two-story unlimited area.** The area of a two-story Group U agricultural building shall not be limited if the building is surrounded and adjoined by public ways or yards not less than 60 feet (18 288 mm) in width and is provided with an approved automatic sprinkler system throughout in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

## SECTION C103 MIXED OCCUPANCIES

**C103.1 Mixed occupancies.** Mixed occupancies shall be protected in accordance with Section 508.

## SECTION C104 EXITS

**C104.1 Exit facilities.** Exits shall be provided in accordance with *Chapter 11A or 11B as applicable*.

**Exceptions:**

1. The maximum travel distance from any point in the building to an approved exit shall not exceed 300 feet (91 440 mm).
2. One exit is required for each 15,000 square feet ( $1393.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) of area or fraction thereof.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX D – FIRE DISTRICTS

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							

## APPENDIX D

### FIRE DISTRICTS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

**User note:**

**About this appendix:** Appendix D establishes a framework by which a jurisdiction can establish a portion of a jurisdiction as a fire district. Fire districts are often designated in a more densely developed portion of a city where limiting the potential spread of fire is a key consideration. Specific construction types and users are prohibited in a fire district.

#### SECTION D101 GENERAL

**D101.1 Scope.** The fire district shall include such territory or portion as outlined in an ordinance or law entitled “An Ordinance (Resolution) Creating and Establishing a Fire District.” Wherever, in such ordinance creating and establishing a fire district, reference is made to the fire district, it shall be construed to mean the fire district designated and referred to in this appendix.

**D101.1.1 Mapping.** The fire district complying with the provisions of Section D101.1 shall be shown on a map that shall be available to the public.

**D101.2 Establishment of area.** For the purpose of this code, the fire district shall include that territory or area as described in Sections D101.2.1 through D101.2.3.

**D101.2.1 Adjoining blocks.** Two or more adjoining blocks, exclusive of intervening streets, where not less than 50 percent of the ground area is built upon and more than 50 percent of the built-on area is devoted to hotels and motels of Group R-1; Group B occupancies; theaters, nightclubs, restaurants of Group A-1 and A-2 occupancies; garages, express and freight depots, warehouses and storage buildings used for the storage of finished products (not located with and forming a part of a manufactured or industrial plant); or Group S occupancy. Where the average height of a building is two and one-half stories or more, a block should be considered if the ground area built upon is not less than 40 percent.

**D101.2.2 Buffer zone.** Where four contiguous blocks or more comprise a fire district, there shall be a buffer zone of 200 feet (60 960 mm) around the perimeter of such district. Streets, rights-of-way and other open spaces not subject to building construction can be included in the 200- foot (60 960 mm) buffer zone.

**D101.2.3 Developed blocks.** Where blocks adjacent to the fire district have developed to the extent that not less than 25 percent of the ground area is built upon and 40 percent or more of the built-on area is devoted to the occupancies specified in Section D101.2.1, they can be considered for inclusion in the fire district, and can form all or a portion of the 200-foot (60 960 mm) buffer zone required in Section D101.2.2.

#### SECTION D102 BUILDING RESTRICTIONS

**D102.1 Types of construction permitted.** Within the fire district every building hereafter erected shall be Type I, II, III or IV, except as permitted in Section D104.

**D102.2 Other specific requirements.**

**D102.2.1 Exterior walls.** Exterior walls of buildings located in the fire district shall comply with the requirements in Table 601 except as required in Section D102.2.6.

## APPENDIX D—FIRE DISTRICTS

**D102.2.2 Group H prohibited.** Group H occupancies shall be prohibited from location within the fire district.

**D102.2.3 Construction type.** Every building shall be constructed as required based on the type of construction indicated in Chapter 6.

**D102.2.4 Roof covering.** Roof covering in the fire district shall conform to the requirements of Class A or B roof coverings as defined in Section 1505.

**D102.2.5 Structural fire rating.** Walls, floors, roofs and their supporting structural members shall be not less than 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

### Exceptions:

1. Buildings of Type IV-HT construction.
2. Buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.
3. Automobile parking structures.
4. Buildings surrounded on all sides by a permanently open space of not less than 30 feet (9144 mm).
5. Partitions complying with Section 603.1, Item 11.

**D102.2.6 Exterior walls.** Exterior load-bearing walls of Type II buildings shall have a fire-resistance rating of 2 hours or more where such walls are located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a common property line or an assumed property line. Exterior nonload-bearing walls of Type II buildings located within 30 feet (9144 mm) of a common property line or an assumed property line shall have fire-resistance ratings as required by Table 601, but not less than 1 hour. Exterior walls located more than 30 feet (9144 mm) from a common property line or an assumed property line shall comply with Table 601.

**Exception:** In the case of one-story buildings that are 2,000 square feet ( $186 \text{ m}^2$ ) or less in area, exterior walls located more than 15 feet (4572 mm) from a common property line or an assumed property line need only comply with Table 601.

**D102.2.7 Architectural trim.** Architectural trim on buildings located in the fire district shall be constructed of approved noncombustible materials or fire-retardant-treated wood.

**D102.2.8 Permanent canopies.** Permanent canopies are permitted to extend over adjacent open spaces provided that all of the following are met:

1. The canopy and its supports shall be of noncombustible material, fire-retardant-treated wood, Type IV construction or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

**Exception:** Any textile covering for the canopy shall be flame resistant as determined by tests conducted in accordance with NFPA 701 after

both accelerated water leaching and accelerated weathering.

2. Any canopy covering, other than textiles, shall have a flame spread index not greater than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723 in the form intended for use.
3. The canopy shall have one long side open.
4. The maximum horizontal width of the canopy shall be not greater than 15 feet (4572 mm).
5. The fire resistance of exterior walls shall not be reduced.

**D102.2.9 Roof structures.** Structures, except aerial supports 12 feet (3658 mm) high or less, flagpoles, water tanks and cooling towers, placed above the roof of any building within the fire district shall be of noncombustible material and shall be supported by construction of noncombustible material.

**D102.2.10 Plastic signs.** The use of plastics complying with Section 2611 for signs is permitted provided that the structure of the sign in which the plastic is mounted or installed is noncombustible.

**D102.2.11 Plastic veneer.** Exterior plastic veneer is not permitted in the fire district.

## SECTION D103 CHANGES TO BUILDINGS

**D103.1 Existing buildings within the fire district.** An existing building shall not be increased in height or area unless it is of a type of construction permitted for new buildings within the fire district or is altered to comply with the requirements for such type of construction. Nor shall any existing building be extended on any side, nor square footage or floors added within the existing building unless such modifications are of a type of construction permitted for new buildings within the fire district.

**D103.2 Other alterations.** Nothing in Section D103.1 shall prohibit other alterations within the fire district provided that such alterations do not create a change of occupancy that is otherwise prohibited or increase the fire hazard.

**D103.3 Moving buildings.** Buildings shall not hereafter be moved into the fire district or to another lot in the fire district unless the building is of a type of construction permitted in the fire district.

## SECTION D104 BUILDINGS LOCATED PARTIALLY IN THE FIRE DISTRICT

**D104.1 General.** Any building located partially in the fire district shall be of a type of construction required for the fire district, unless the major portion of such building lies outside of the fire district and all portions of it extend not more than 10 feet (3048 mm) inside the boundaries of the fire district.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

## APPENDIX D—FIRE DISTRICTS

## SECTION D105 EXCEPTIONS TO RESTRICTIONS IN FIRE DISTRICT

**D105.1 General.** The preceding provisions of this appendix shall not apply in the following instances:

1. Temporary buildings used in connection with duly authorized construction.
2. A private garage used exclusively as such, not more than one story in height, nor more than 650 square feet ( $60 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area, located on the same lot with a dwelling.
3. Fences not over 8 feet (2438 mm) high.
4. Coal tipples, material bins and trestles of Type IV construction.
5. Water tanks and cooling towers conforming to Sections 1510.3 and 1510.4.
6. Greenhouses less than 15 feet (4572 mm) high.
7. Porches on dwellings not over one story in height, and not over 10 feet (3048 mm) wide from the face of the building, provided that such porch does not come within 5 feet (1524 mm) of any property line.
8. Sheds open on a long side not over 15 feet (4572 mm) high and 500 square feet ( $46 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area.
9. One- and two-family dwellings where of a type of construction not permitted in the fire district can be extended 25 percent of the floor area existing at the time of inclusion in the fire district by any type of construction permitted by this code.
10. Wood decks less than 600 square feet ( $56 \text{ m}^2$ ) where constructed of 2-inch (51 mm) nominal wood, pressure treated for exterior use.
11. Wood veneers on exterior walls conforming to Section 1404.5.
12. Exterior plastic veneer complying with Section 2605.2 where installed on exterior walls required to have a fire-resistance rating not less than 1 hour, provided that the exterior plastic veneer does not exhibit sustained flaming as defined in NFPA 268.

## SECTION D106 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**D106.1 General.** See Table D106.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

**TABLE D106.1  
REFERENCED STANDARDS**

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASTM E84—2018B	<i>Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials</i>	D102.2.8
NFPA 268—17	<i>Test Method for Determining Ignitability of Exterior Wall Assemblies Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source</i>	D105.1
NFPA 701—19	<i>Methods of Fire Tests for Flame-Propagation of Textiles and Films</i>	D102.2.8
UL 723—2018	<i>Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials</i>	D102.2.8



## APPENDIX E

# *RESERVED*



**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**APPENDIX F – RODENTPROOFING**  
(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5								
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							

**APPENDIX F**  
**RODENTPROOFING**

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

**User notes:**

**About this appendix:** The provisions of Appendix F are minimum mechanical methods to prevent the entry of rodents into a building. These standards, when used in conjunction with cleanliness and maintenance programs, can significantly reduce the potential of rodents invading a building.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

**SECTION F101**  
**GENERAL**

**F101.1 General.** Buildings or structures and the walls enclosing habitable or occupiable rooms and spaces in which persons live, sleep or work, or in which feed, food or food-stuffs are stored, prepared, processed, served or sold, shall be constructed in accordance with the provisions of this section.

**F101.2 Foundation wall ventilation openings.** Foundation wall ventilation openings shall be covered for their height and width with perforated sheet metal plates not less than 0.070 inch (1.8 mm) thick, expanded sheet metal plates not less than 0.047 inch (1.2 mm) thick, cast-iron grills or grating, extruded aluminum load-bearing vents or with hardware cloth of 0.035 inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier. The openings therein shall not exceed  $\frac{1}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm).

**F101.3 Foundation and exterior wall sealing.** Annular spaces around pipes, electric cables, conduits or other openings in the walls shall be protected against the passage of rodents by closing such openings with cement mortar, concrete masonry or noncorrosive metal.

**F101.4 Doors.** Doors on which metal protection has been applied shall be hinged so as to be free swinging. When closed, the maximum clearance between any door, door jambs and sills shall be not greater than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

**F101.5 Windows and other openings.** Windows and other openings for the purpose of light or ventilation located in exterior walls within 2 feet (610 mm) above the existing ground level immediately below such opening shall be covered for their entire height and width, including frame, with hardware cloth of not less than 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire or heavier.

**F101.5.1 Rodent-accessible openings.** Windows and other openings for the purpose of light and ventilation in the exterior walls not covered in this chapter, accessible to rodents by way of exposed pipes, wires, conduits and other appurtenances, shall be covered with wire cloth of at least 0.035-inch (0.89 mm) wire. In lieu of wire cloth covering, said pipes, wires, conduits and other appurtenances shall be blocked from rodent usage by installing solid sheet metal guards 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick or heavier. Guards shall be fitted around pipes, wires, conduits or other appurtenances. In addition, they shall be fastened securely to and shall extend perpendicularly from the exterior wall for not less than 12 inches (305 mm) beyond and on either side of pipes, wires, conduits or appurtenances.

**F101.6 Pier and wood construction.**

**F101.6.1 Sill less than 12 inches above ground.** Buildings not provided with a continuous foundation shall be

## APPENDIX F—RODENTPROOFING

provided with protection against rodents at grade by providing either an apron in accordance with Section F101.6.1.1 or a floor slab in accordance with Section F101.6.1.2.

**F101.6.1.1 Apron.** Where an apron is provided, the apron shall be not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above, nor less than 24 inches (610 mm) below, grade. The apron shall not terminate below the lower edge of the siding material. The apron shall be constructed of an approved nondecayable, water-resistant rodentproofing material of required strength and shall be installed around the entire perimeter of the building. Where constructed of masonry or concrete materials, the apron shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness.

**F101.6.1.2 Grade floors.** Where continuous concrete-grade floor slabs are provided, open spaces shall not be left between the slab and walls, and openings in the slab shall be protected.

**F101.6.2 Sill at or above 12 inches above ground.** Buildings not provided with a continuous foundation and that have sills 12 inches (305 mm) or more above ground level shall be provided with protection against rodents at grade in accordance with any of the following:

1. Section F101.6.1.1 or F101.6.1.2.
2. By installing solid sheet metal collars not less than 0.024 inch (0.6 mm) thick at the top of each pier or pile and around each pipe, cable, conduit, wire or other item that provides a continuous pathway from the ground to the floor.
3. By encasing the pipes, cables, conduits or wires in an enclosure constructed in accordance with Section F101.6.1.1.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX G – FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## APPENDIX G

### FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** Appendix G is intended to provide the additional floodplain management and administrative requirements of the National Flood Insurance Program (NFIP) that are not included in the code. Communities that adopt the International Building Code® and Appendix G will meet the minimum requirements of NFIP as set forth in Title 44 of the Code of Federal Regulations.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

#### SECTION G101 ADMINISTRATION

**G101.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this appendix is to promote the public health, safety and general welfare and to minimize public and private losses due to flood conditions in specific flood hazard areas through the establishment of comprehensive regulations for management of flood hazard areas designed to:

1. Prevent unnecessary disruption of commerce, access and public service during times of flooding.
2. Manage the alteration of natural flood plains, stream channels and shorelines.
3. Manage filling, grading, dredging and other development that may increase flood damage or erosion potential.
4. Prevent or regulate the construction of flood barriers that will divert floodwaters or that can increase flood hazards.
5. Contribute to improved construction techniques in the flood plain.

**G101.2 Objectives.** The objectives of this appendix are to protect human life, minimize the expenditure of public

money for flood control projects, minimize the need for rescue and relief efforts associated with flooding, minimize prolonged business interruption, minimize damage to public facilities and utilities, help maintain a stable tax base by providing for the sound use and development of flood-prone areas, contribute to improved construction techniques in the flood plain and ensure that potential owners and occupants are notified that property is within flood hazard areas.

**G101.3 Scope.** The provisions of this appendix shall apply to all proposed development in a flood hazard area established in Section 1612 of this code, including certain building work exempt from permit under Section 105.2.

**G101.4 Violations.** Any violation of a provision of this appendix, or failure to comply with a permit or variance issued pursuant to this appendix or any requirement of this appendix, shall be handled in accordance with Section 114.

**G101.5 Designation of floodplain administrator.** The [INSERT JURISDICTION'S SELECTED POSITION TITLE] is designated as the floodplain administrator and is authorized and directed to enforce the provisions of this appendix. The floodplain administrator is authorized to delegate performance of certain duties to other employees of the jurisdiction. Such designation shall not alter any duties and powers of the building official.

## APPENDIX G—FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

### SECTION G102 DEFINITIONS

**G102.1 General.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

**DEVELOPMENT.** Any man-made change to improved or unimproved real estate, including but not limited to, buildings or other structures, temporary structures, temporary or permanent storage of materials, mining, dredging, filling, grading, paving, excavations, operations and other land-disturbing activities.

**FUNCTIONALLY DEPENDENT FACILITY.** A facility that cannot perform its intended purpose unless it is located or carried out in close proximity to water. The term includes only docking facilities, port facilities necessary for the loading or unloading of cargo or passengers, and shipbuilding and ship repair facilities. The term does not include long-term storage, manufacture, sales or service facilities.

**MANUFACTURED HOME.** A structure that is transportable in one or more sections, built on a permanent chassis, designed for use with or without a permanent foundation when attached to the required utilities, and constructed to the Federal Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standards and rules and regulations promulgated by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development. The term also includes mobile homes, park trailers, travel trailers and similar transportable structures that are placed on a site for 180 consecutive days or longer.

**MANUFACTURED HOME PARK OR SUBDIVISION.** A parcel (or contiguous parcels) of land divided into two or more manufactured home lots for rent or sale.

**RECREATIONAL VEHICLE.** A vehicle that is built on a single chassis, 400 square feet ( $37.16\text{ m}^2$ ) or less when measured at the largest horizontal projection, designed to be self-propelled or permanently towable by a light-duty truck, and designed primarily not for use as a permanent dwelling but as temporary living quarters for recreational, camping, travel or seasonal use. A recreational vehicle is ready for highway use if it is on its wheels or jacking system, is attached to the site only by quick disconnect-type utilities and security devices and has no permanently attached additions.

**VARIANCE.** A grant of relief from the requirements of this section that permits construction in a manner otherwise prohibited by this section where specific enforcement would result in unnecessary hardship.

**VIOLATION.** A development that is not fully compliant with this appendix or Section 1612, as applicable.

### SECTION G103 APPLICABILITY

**G103.1 General.** This appendix, in conjunction with this code, provides minimum requirements for development located in flood hazard areas, including:

1. The subdivision of land.
2. Site improvements and installation of utilities.

3. Placement and replacement of manufactured homes.
4. Placement of recreational vehicles.
5. New construction and repair, reconstruction, rehabilitation or additions to new construction.
6. Substantial improvement of existing buildings and structures, including restoration after damage.
7. Installation of tanks.
8. Temporary structures.
9. Temporary or permanent storage, utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures.
10. Certain building work exempt from permit under Section 105.2 and other buildings and development activities.

**G103.2 Establishment of flood hazard areas.** Flood hazard areas are established in Section 1612.3 of this code, adopted by the applicable governing authority on [INSERT DATE].

### SECTION G104 POWERS AND DUTIES

**G104.1 Permit applications.** All applications for permits shall comply with the following:

1. The floodplain administrator shall review all permit applications to determine whether proposed development is located in flood hazard areas established in Section G103.2.
2. Where a proposed development site is in a flood hazard area, all development to which this appendix is applicable as specified in Section G103.1 shall be designed and constructed with methods, practices and materials that minimize flood damage and that are in accordance with this code and ASCE 24.

**G104.2 Other permits.** It shall be the responsibility of the floodplain administrator to ensure that approval of a proposed development shall not be given until proof that necessary permits have been granted by federal or state agencies having jurisdiction over such development.

**G104.3 Determination of design flood elevations.** If design flood elevations are not specified, the floodplain administrator is authorized to require the applicant to meet one of the following:

1. Obtain, review and reasonably utilize data available from a federal, state or other source.
2. Determine the design flood elevation in accordance with accepted hydrologic and hydraulic engineering techniques. Such analyses shall be performed and sealed by a registered design professional. Studies, analyses and computations shall be submitted in sufficient detail to allow review and approval by the floodplain administrator. The accuracy of data submitted for such determination shall be the responsibility of the applicant.

**G104.4 Activities in riverine flood hazard areas.** In riverine flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are

specified but floodways have not been designated, the floodplain administrator shall not permit any new construction, substantial improvement or other development, including fill, unless the applicant submits an engineering analysis prepared by a registered design professional, demonstrating that the cumulative effect of the proposed development, when combined with all other existing and anticipated flood hazard area encroachment, will not increase the design flood elevation more than 1 foot (305 mm) at any point within the community.

**G104.5 Floodway encroachment.** Prior to issuing a permit for any floodway encroachment, including fill, new construction, substantial improvements and other development or land-disturbing activity, the floodplain administrator shall require submission of a certification, prepared by a registered design professional, along with supporting technical data, demonstrating that such development will not cause any increase of the base flood level.

**G104.5.1 Floodway revisions.** A floodway encroachment that increases the level of the base flood is authorized if the applicant has applied for a conditional *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM) revision and has received the approval of the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA).

**G104.6 Watercourse alteration.** Prior to issuing a permit for any alteration or relocation of any watercourse, the floodplain administrator shall require the applicant to provide notification of the proposal to the appropriate authorities of all adjacent government jurisdictions, as well as appropriate state agencies. A copy of the notification shall be maintained in the permit records and submitted to FEMA.

**G104.6.1 Engineering analysis.** The floodplain administrator shall require submission of an engineering analysis, prepared by a registered design professional, demonstrating that the flood-carrying capacity of the altered or relocated portion of the watercourse will not be decreased. Such watercourses shall be maintained in a manner that preserves the channel's flood-carrying capacity.

**G104.7 Alterations in coastal areas.** Prior to issuing a permit for any alteration of sand dunes and mangrove stands in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, the floodplain administrator shall require submission of an engineering analysis, prepared by a registered design professional, demonstrating that the proposed alteration will not increase the potential for flood damage.

**G104.8 Records.** The floodplain administrator shall maintain a permanent record of all permits issued in flood hazard areas, including supporting certifications and documentation required by this appendix and copies of inspection reports, design certifications and documentation of elevations required in Section 1612 of this code and Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*.

**G104.9 Inspections.** Development for which a permit under this appendix is required shall be subject to inspection. The floodplain administrator or the floodplain administrator's designee shall make, or cause to be made, inspections of all development in flood hazard areas authorized by issuance of a permit under this appendix.

**G104.10 Use of changed technical data.** The floodplain administrator and the applicant shall not use changed flood hazard area boundaries or base flood elevations for proposed buildings or developments unless the floodplain administrator or applicant has applied for a conditional *Flood Insurance Rate Map* (FIRM) revision and has received the approval of the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA).

## SECTION G105 PERMITS

**G105.1 Required.** Any person, owner or owner's authorized agent who intends to conduct any development in a flood hazard area shall first make application to the floodplain administrator and shall obtain the required permit.

**G105.2 Application for permit.** The applicant shall file an application in writing on a form furnished by the floodplain administrator. Such application shall:

1. Identify and describe the development to be covered by the permit.
2. Describe the land on which the proposed development is to be conducted by legal description, street address or similar description that will readily identify and definitely locate the site.
3. Include a site plan showing the delineation of flood hazard areas, floodway boundaries, flood zones, design flood elevations, ground elevations, proposed fill and excavation and drainage patterns and facilities.
4. Include in subdivision proposals and other proposed developments with more than 50 lots or larger than 5 acres ( $20\ 234\ m^2$ ), base flood elevation data in accordance with Section 1612.3.1 if such data are not identified for the flood hazard areas established in Section G103.2.
5. Indicate the use and occupancy for which the proposed development is intended.
6. Be accompanied by construction documents, grading and filling plans and other information deemed appropriate by the floodplain administrator.
7. State the valuation of the proposed work.
8. Be signed by the applicant or the applicant's authorized agent.

**G105.3 Validity of permit.** The issuance of a permit under this appendix shall not be construed to be a permit for, or approval of, any violation of this appendix or any other ordinance of the jurisdiction. The issuance of a permit based on submitted documents and information shall not prevent the floodplain administrator from requiring the correction of errors. The floodplain administrator is authorized to prevent occupancy or use of a structure or site that is in violation of this appendix or other ordinances of this jurisdiction.

**G105.4 Expiration.** A permit shall become invalid if the proposed development is not commenced within 180 days after its issuance, or if the work authorized is suspended or abandoned for a period of 180 days after the work commences. Extensions shall be requested in writing and

## APPENDIX G—FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

| justifiable cause demonstrated. The floodplain administrator is authorized to grant, in writing, one or more extensions of time, for periods not more than 180 days each.

**G105.5 Suspension or revocation.** The floodplain administrator is authorized to suspend or revoke a permit issued under this appendix wherever the permit is issued in error or on the basis of incorrect, inaccurate or incomplete information, or in violation of any ordinance or code of this jurisdiction.

### SECTION G106 VARIANCES

**G106.1 General.** The board of appeals established pursuant to Section 113, or other established or designed board, shall hear and decide requests for variances. The board shall base its determination on technical justifications, and has the right to attach such conditions to variances as it deems necessary to further the purposes and objectives of this appendix and Section 1612.

**G106.2 Records.** The floodplain administrator shall maintain a permanent record of all variance actions, including justification for their issuance.

**G106.3 Historic structures.** A variance is authorized to be issued for the repair or rehabilitation of a historic structure upon a determination that the proposed repair or rehabilitation will not preclude the structure's continued designation as a historic structure, and the variance is the minimum necessary to preserve the historic character and design of the structure.

**Exception:** Within flood hazard areas, historic structures that do not meet one or more of the following designations:

1. Listed or preliminarily determined to be eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places.
2. Determined by the Secretary of the U.S. Department of Interior as contributing to the historical significance of a registered historic district or a district preliminarily determined to qualify as an historic district.
3. Designated as historic under a state or local historic preservation program that is approved by the Department of Interior.

**G106.4 Functionally dependent facilities.** A variance is authorized to be issued for the construction or substantial improvement of a functionally dependent facility provided that the criteria in Section 1612.1 are met and the variance is the minimum necessary to allow the construction or substantial improvement, and that all due consideration has been given to methods and materials that minimize flood damages during the design flood and do not create additional threats to public safety.

**G106.5 Restrictions.** The board shall not issue a variance for any proposed development in a floodway if any increase in flood levels would result during the base flood discharge.

**G106.6 Considerations.** In reviewing applications for variances, the board shall consider all technical evaluations, all relevant factors, all other portions of this appendix and the following:

1. The danger that materials and debris may be swept onto other lands resulting in further injury or damage.
2. The danger to life and property due to flooding or erosion damage.
3. The susceptibility of the proposed development, including contents, to flood damage and the effect of such damage on current and future owners.
4. The importance of the services provided by the proposed development to the community.
5. The availability of alternate locations for the proposed development that are not subject to flooding or erosion.
6. The compatibility of the proposed development with existing and anticipated development.
7. The relationship of the proposed development to the comprehensive plan and flood plain management program for that area.
8. The safety of access to the property in times of flood for ordinary and emergency vehicles.
9. The expected heights, velocity, duration, rate of rise and debris and sediment transport of the floodwaters and the effects of wave action, if applicable, expected at the site.
10. The costs of providing governmental services during and after flood conditions including maintenance and repair of public utilities and facilities such as sewer, gas, electrical and water systems, streets and bridges.

**G106.7 Conditions for issuance.** Variances shall only be issued by the board where all of the following criteria are met:

1. A technical showing of good and sufficient cause that the unique characteristics of the size, configuration or topography of the site renders the elevation standards inappropriate.
2. A determination that failure to grant the variance would result in exceptional hardship by rendering the lot undevelopable.
3. A determination that the granting of a variance will not result in increased flood heights, additional threats to public safety, extraordinary public expense, nor create nuisances, cause fraud on or victimization of the public or conflict with existing local laws or ordinances.
4. A determination that the variance is the minimum necessary, considering the flood hazard, to afford relief.
5. Notification to the applicant in writing over the signature of the floodplain administrator that the issuance of a variance to construct a structure below the base flood level will result in increased premium rates for flood insurance up to amounts as high as \$25 for \$100 of insurance coverage, and that such construction below the base flood level increases risks to life and property.

## APPENDIX G—FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

### **SECTION G107 SUBDIVISIONS**

**G107.1 General.** Any subdivision proposal, including proposals for manufactured home parks and subdivisions, or other proposed new development in a flood hazard area shall be reviewed to verify all of the following:

1. Such proposals are consistent with the need to minimize flood damage.
2. Public utilities and facilities, such as sewer, gas, electric and water systems, are located and constructed to minimize or eliminate flood damage.
3. Adequate drainage is provided to reduce exposure to flood hazards.

**G107.2 Subdivision requirements.** The following requirements shall apply in the case of any proposed subdivision, including proposals for manufactured home parks and subdivisions, any portion of which lies within a flood hazard area:

1. The flood hazard area, including floodways, coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, as appropriate, shall be delineated on tentative and final subdivision plats.
2. Design flood elevations shall be shown on tentative and final subdivision plats.
3. Residential building lots shall be provided with adequate buildable area outside the floodway.
4. The design criteria for utilities and facilities set forth in this appendix and appropriate International Codes shall be met.

### **SECTION G108 SITE IMPROVEMENT**

**G108.1 Development in floodways.** Development or land-disturbing activity shall not be authorized in the floodway unless it has been demonstrated through hydrologic and hydraulic analyses performed in accordance with standard engineering practice, and prepared by a registered design professional, that the proposed encroachment will not result in any increase in the base flood level.

**G108.2 Coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.** In coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones:

1. New buildings and buildings that are substantially improved shall only be authorized landward of the reach of mean high tide.
2. The use of fill for structural support of buildings is prohibited.

**G108.3 Sewer facilities.** All new or replaced sanitary sewer facilities, private sewage treatment plants (including all pumping stations and collector systems) and on-site waste disposal systems shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 7, ASCE 24, to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into the facilities and discharge from the facil-

ties into floodwaters, or impairment of the facilities and systems.

**G108.4 Water facilities.** All new or replacement water facilities shall be designed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 7, ASCE 24, to minimize or eliminate infiltration of floodwaters into the systems.

**G108.5 Storm drainage.** Storm drainage shall be designed to convey the flow of surface waters to minimize or eliminate damage to persons or property.

**G108.6 Streets and sidewalks.** Streets and sidewalks shall be designed to minimize potential for increasing or aggravating flood levels.

### **SECTION G109 MANUFACTURED HOMES**

**G109.1 Elevation.** All new and replacement manufactured homes to be placed or substantially improved in a flood hazard area shall be elevated such that the lowest floor of the manufactured home is elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

**G109.2 Foundations.** All new and replacement manufactured homes, including substantial improvement of existing manufactured homes, shall be placed on a permanent, reinforced foundation that is designed in accordance with Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*.

**G109.3 Anchoring.** All new and replacement manufactured homes to be placed or substantially improved in a flood hazard area shall be installed using methods and practices that minimize flood damage. Manufactured homes shall be securely anchored to an adequately anchored foundation system to resist flotation, collapse and lateral movement. Methods of anchoring are authorized to include, but are not limited to, use of over-the-top or frame ties to ground anchors. This requirement is in addition to applicable state and local anchoring requirements for resisting wind forces.

**G109.4 Protection of mechanical equipment and outside appliances.** Mechanical equipment and outside appliances shall be elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

**Exception:** Where such equipment and appliances are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within their components and the systems are constructed to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding up to the elevation required by Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*, the systems and equipment shall be permitted to be located below the elevation required by Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*. Electrical wiring systems shall be permitted below the design flood elevation provided that they conform to the provisions of the *California Electrical Code*.

**G109.5 Enclosures.** Fully enclosed areas below elevated manufactured homes shall comply with the requirements of Section R322 of the *California Residential Code*.

## APPENDIX G—FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

### SECTION G110 RECREATIONAL VEHICLES

**G110.1 Placement prohibited.** The placement of recreational vehicles shall not be authorized in coastal high-hazard areas and in floodways.

**G110.2 Temporary placement.** Recreational vehicles in flood hazard areas shall be fully licensed and ready for highway use, or shall be placed on a site for less than 180 consecutive days.

**G110.3 Permanent placement.** Recreational vehicles that are not fully licensed and ready for highway use, or that are to be placed on a site for more than 180 consecutive days, shall meet the requirements of Section G109 for manufactured homes.

### SECTION G111 TANKS

**G111.1 Tanks.** Underground and above-ground tanks shall be designed, constructed, installed and anchored in accordance with ASCE 24.

### SECTION G112 OTHER BUILDING WORK

**G112.1 Garages and accessory structures.** Garages and accessory structures shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**G112.2 Fences.** Fences in floodways that have the potential to block the passage of floodwaters, such as stockade fences and wire mesh fences, shall meet the requirement of Section G104.5.

**G112.3 Oil derricks.** Oil derricks located in flood hazard areas shall be designed in conformance with the flood loads in Sections 1603.1.7 and 1612.

**G112.4 Retaining walls, sidewalks and driveways.** Retaining walls, sidewalks and driveways shall meet the requirements of Section 1804.5.

**G112.5 Swimming pools.** Swimming pools shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24. Above-ground swimming pools, on-ground swimming pools and in-ground swimming pools that involve placement of fill in *floodways* shall also meet the requirements of Section G104.5.

**G112.6 Decks, porches, and patios.** Decks, porches and patios shall be designed and constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**G112.7 Nonstructural concrete slabs in coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones.** In coastal high-hazard areas and coastal A zones, nonstructural concrete slabs used as parking pads, enclosure floors, landings, decks, walkways, patios and similar nonstructural uses are permitted beneath or adjacent to buildings and structures provided that the concrete slabs shall be constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**G112.8 Roads and watercourse crossings in regulated floodways.** Roads and watercourse crossings that encroach

into regulated floodways, including roads, bridges, culverts, low-water crossings and similar means for vehicles or pedestrians to travel from one side of a watercourse to the other, shall meet the requirement of Section G104.5.

### SECTION G113 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND TEMPORARY STORAGE

**G113.1 Temporary structures.** Temporary structures shall be erected for a period of less than 180 days. Temporary structures shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse or lateral movement resulting from hydrostatic loads, including the effects of buoyancy, during conditions of the design flood. Fully enclosed temporary structures shall have flood openings that are in accordance with ASCE 24 to allow for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters.

**G113.2 Temporary storage.** Temporary storage includes storage of goods and materials for a period of less than 180 days. Stored materials shall not include hazardous materials.

**G113.3 Floodway encroachment.** Temporary structures and temporary storage in floodways shall meet the requirements of G104.5.

### SECTION G114 UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS GROUP U

**G114.1 Utility and miscellaneous Group U.** Utility and miscellaneous Group U includes buildings that are accessory in character and miscellaneous structures not classified in any specific occupancy in this code, including, but not limited to, agricultural buildings, aircraft hangars (accessory to a one- or two-family residence), barns, carports, fences more than 6 feet (1829 mm) high, grain silos (accessory to a residential occupancy), greenhouses, livestock shelters, private garages, retaining walls, sheds, stables and towers.

**G114.2 Flood loads.** Utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures, including substantial improvement of such buildings and structures, shall be anchored to prevent flotation, collapse or lateral movement resulting from flood loads, including the effects of buoyancy, during conditions of the design flood.

**G114.3 Elevation.** Utility and miscellaneous Group U buildings and structures, including substantial improvement of such buildings and structures, shall be elevated such that the lowest floor, including basement, is elevated to or above the design flood elevation in accordance with Section 1612 of this code.

**G114.4 Enclosures below design flood elevation.** Fully enclosed areas below the design flood elevation shall be constructed in accordance with ASCE 24.

**G114.5 Flood-damage-resistant materials.** Flood-damage-resistant materials shall be used below the design flood elevation.

**G114.6 Protection of mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems.** Mechanical, plumbing and electrical systems,

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

### APPENDIX G-6

## APPENDIX G—FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION

including plumbing fixtures, shall be elevated to or above the design flood elevation.

**Exception:** Electrical systems, equipment and components; heating, ventilating, air conditioning and plumbing appliances; plumbing fixtures, duct systems and other service equipment shall be permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided that they are designed and installed to prevent water from entering or accumulating within the components and to resist hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loads and stresses, including the effects of buoyancy, during the occurrence of flooding to the design flood elevation in compliance with the flood-resistant construction requirements of this code. Electrical wiring systems shall be permitted to be located below the design flood elevation provided that they conform to the provisions of the *California Electrical Code*.

## SECTION G115 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**G115.1 General.** See Table G115.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix referenced in the standard.

**TABLE G115.1  
REFERENCED STANDARDS**

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASCE 24—14	<i>Flood Resistant Design and Construction</i>	G104.1, G108.3, G108.4, G111.1, G112.1, G112.5, G112.6, G112.7, G113.1, G114.4
HUD 24 CFR Part 3285 (2008)	<i>Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standards</i>	G102
CBC—22	<i>California Building Code</i>	G103.2, G114.1, G114.3
CRC—22	<i>California Residential Code</i>	G109.2, G109.4, G109.5
NFPA 70—20	<i>California Electrical Code</i>	G109.4, G114.6



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX H – SIGNS

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## APPENDIX H

### SIGNS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

---

**User notes:**

**About this appendix:** Appendix H gathers in one place the various standards that regulate the construction and protection of outdoor signs. Wherever possible, the appendix provides standards in performance language, thus allowing the widest possible application.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

#### SECTION H101 GENERAL

**H101.1 General.** A sign shall not be erected in a manner that would confuse or obstruct the view of or interfere with exit signs required by Chapter 10 or with official traffic signs, signals or devices. Signs and sign support structures, together with their supports, braces, guys and anchors, shall be kept in repair and in proper state of preservation. The display surfaces of signs shall be kept neatly painted or posted at all times.

**H101.2 Signs exempt from permits.** The following signs are exempt from the requirements to obtain a permit before erection:

1. Painted nonilluminated signs.
2. Temporary signs announcing the sale or rent of property.
3. Signs erected by transportation authorities.
4. Projecting signs not exceeding 2.5 square feet (0.23 m<sup>2</sup>).
5. The changing of moveable parts of an approved sign that is designed for such changes, or the repainting or repositioning of display matter shall not be deemed an alteration.

#### SECTION H102 DEFINITIONS

**H102.1 General.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

**COMBINATION SIGN.** A sign incorporating any combination of the features of pole, projecting and roof signs.

**DISPLAY SIGN.** The area made available by the sign structure for the purpose of displaying the advertising message.

**ELECTRIC SIGN.** A sign containing electrical wiring, but not including signs illuminated by an exterior light source.

**GROUND SIGN.** A billboard or similar type of sign that is supported by one or more uprights, poles or braces in or upon the ground other than a combination sign or pole sign, as defined by this code.

**POLE SIGN.** A sign wholly supported by a sign structure in the ground.

**PORTABLE DISPLAY SURFACE.** A display surface temporarily fixed to a standardized advertising structure that is regularly moved from structure to structure at periodic intervals.

**PROJECTING SIGN.** A sign other than a wall sign that projects from and is supported by a wall of a building or structure.

## APPENDIX H—SIGNS

**ROOF SIGN.** A sign erected on or above a roof or parapet of a building or structure.

**SIGN.** Any letter, figure, character, mark, plane, point, marquee sign, design, poster, pictorial, picture, stroke, stripe, line, trademark, reading matter or illuminated service, which shall be constructed, placed, attached, painted, erected, fastened or manufactured in any manner whatsoever, so that the same shall be used for the attraction of the public to any place, subject, person, firm, corporation, public performance, article, machine or merchandise, whatsoever, which is displayed in any manner outdoors. Every sign shall be classified and conform to the requirements of that classification as set forth in this chapter.

**SIGN STRUCTURE.** Any structure that supports or is capable of supporting a sign as defined in this code. A sign structure is permitted to be a single pole and is not required to be an integral part of the building.

**WALL SIGN.** Any sign attached to or erected against the wall of a building or structure, with the exposed face of the sign in a plane parallel to the plane of said wall.

### SECTION H103 LOCATION

**H103.1 Location restrictions.** Signs shall not be erected, constructed or maintained so as to obstruct any fire escape or any window or door or opening used as a means of egress or so as to prevent free passage from one part of a roof to any other part thereof. A sign shall not be attached in any form, shape or manner to a fire escape, nor be placed in such manner as to interfere with any opening required for ventilation.

### SECTION H104 IDENTIFICATION

**H104.1 Identification.** Every outdoor advertising display sign hereafter erected, constructed or maintained, for which a permit is required, shall be plainly marked with the name of the person, firm or corporation erecting and maintaining such sign and shall have affixed on the front thereof the permit number issued for said sign or other method of identification approved by the building official.

### SECTION H105 DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

**H105.1 General requirements.** Signs shall be designed and constructed to comply with the provisions of this code for use of materials, loads and stresses.

**H105.2 Permits, drawings and specifications.** Where a permit is required, as provided in Chapter 1, construction documents shall be required. These documents shall show the dimensions, material and required details of construction, including loads, stresses and anchors.

**H105.3 Wind load.** Signs shall be designed and constructed to withstand wind pressure as provided for in Chapter 16.

**H105.4 Seismic load.** Signs designed to withstand wind pressures shall be considered capable of withstanding earthquake loads, except as provided for in Chapter 16.

**H105.5 Working stresses.** In outdoor advertising display signs, the allowable working stresses shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 16. The working stresses of wire rope and its fastenings shall not exceed 25 percent of the ultimate strength of the rope or fasteners.

#### Exceptions:

1. The allowable working stresses for steel and wood shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapters 22 and 23.
2. The working strength of chains, cables, guys or steel rods shall not exceed one-fifth of the ultimate strength of such chains, cables, guys or steel.

**H105.6 Attachment.** Signs attached to masonry, concrete or steel shall be safely and securely fastened by means of metal anchors, bolts or approved expansion screws of sufficient size and anchorage to safely support the loads applied.

### SECTION H106 ELECTRICAL

**H106.1 Illumination.** A sign shall not be illuminated by other than electrical means, and electrical devices and wiring shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of *the California Electrical Code*. Any open spark or flame shall not be used for display purposes unless specifically approved.

**H106.1.1 Internally illuminated signs.** Except as provided for in Section 2611, where internally illuminated signs have facings of wood or of approved plastic complying with the requirements of Section 2606.4, the area of such facing section shall be not more than 120 square feet ( $11.16 \text{ m}^2$ ) and the wiring for electric lighting shall be entirely enclosed in the sign cabinet with a clearance of not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from the facing material. The dimensional limitation of 120 square feet ( $11.16 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall not apply to sign facing sections made from flame-resistant-coated fabric (ordinarily known as “flexible sign face plastic”) that weighs less than 20 ounces per square yard ( $678 \text{ g/m}^2$ ) and that, when tested in accordance with NFPA 701, meets the fire propagation performance requirements of both Test 1 and Test 2 or that, when tested in accordance with an approved test method, exhibits an average burn time of 2 seconds or less and a burning extent of 5.9 inches (150 mm) or less for 10 specimens.

**H106.2 Electrical service.** Signs that require electrical service shall comply with NFPA 70.

### SECTION H107 COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS

**H107.1 Use of combustibles.** Wood, plastics complying with the requirements of Section H107.1.1 or plastic veneer panels as provided for in Chapter 26, or other materials of combustible characteristics similar to wood, used for moldings,

cappings, nailing blocks, letters and latticing, shall comply with Section H109.1 and shall not be used for other ornamental features of signs, unless approved.

**H107.1.1 Plastic materials.** Notwithstanding any other provisions of this code, plastics that burn at a rate not faster than 2.5 inches per minute (64 mm/s) when tested in accordance with ASTM D635 shall be approved for use as the display surface material and for the letters, decorations and facings on signs and outdoor display structures.

**H107.1.2 Electric sign faces.** Individual plastic facings of electric signs shall not exceed 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) in area.

**H107.1.3 Area limitation.** If the area of a display surface exceeds 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ), the area occupied or covered by plastics complying with the requirements of Section H107.1.1 shall be limited to 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) plus 50 percent of the difference between 200 square feet ( $18.6 \text{ m}^2$ ) and the area of display surface. The area of plastic on a display surface shall not in any case exceed 1,100 square feet ( $102 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**H107.1.4 Plastic appurtenances.** Letters and decorations mounted on a plastic facing or display surface can be made of plastics complying with the requirements of Section H107.1.1.

## SECTION H108 ANIMATED DEVICES

**H108.1 Fail-safe device.** Signs that contain moving sections or ornaments shall have fail-safe provisions to prevent the section or ornament from releasing and falling or shifting its center of gravity more than 15 inches (381 mm). The fail-safe device shall be in addition to the mechanism and the mechanism's housing that operate the movable section or ornament. The fail-safe device shall be capable of supporting the full dead weight of the section or ornament when the moving mechanism releases.

## SECTION H109 GROUND SIGNS

**H109.1 Height restrictions.** The structural frame of ground signs shall not be erected of combustible materials to a height of more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the ground. Ground signs constructed entirely of noncombustible material shall not be erected to a height of greater than 100 feet (30 480 mm) above the ground. Greater heights are permitted where approved and located so as not to create a hazard or danger to the public.

**H109.2 Required clearance.** The bottom coping of every ground sign shall be not less than 3 feet (914 mm) above the ground or street level, which space can be filled with platform decorative trim or light wooden construction.

**H109.3 Wood anchors and supports.** Where wood anchors or supports are embedded in the soil, the wood shall be pressure treated with an approved preservative.

## SECTION H110 ROOF SIGNS

**H110.1 General.** Roof signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other approved noncombustible material except as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1. Provisions shall be made for electric grounding of metallic parts. Where combustible materials are permitted in letters or other ornamental features, wiring and tubing shall be kept free and insulated therefrom. Roof signs shall be so constructed as to leave a clear space of not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) between the roof level and the lowest part of the sign and shall have not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) clearance between the vertical supports thereof. Roof sign structures shall not project beyond an exterior wall.

**Exception:** Signs on flat roofs with every part of the roof accessible.

**H110.2 Bearing plates.** The bearing plates of roof signs shall distribute the load directly to or on masonry walls, steel roof girders, columns or beams. The building shall be designed to avoid overstress of these members.

**H110.3 Height of solid signs.** A roof sign having a solid surface shall not exceed, at any point, a height of 24 feet (7315 mm) measured from the roof surface.

**H110.4 Height of open signs.** Open roof signs in which the uniform open area is not less than 40 percent of total gross area shall not exceed a height of 75 feet (22 860 mm) on buildings of Type 1 or Type 2 construction. On buildings of other construction types, the height shall not exceed 40 feet (12 192 mm). Such signs shall be thoroughly secured to the building on which they are installed, erected or constructed by iron, metal anchors, bolts, supports, chains, stranded cables, steel rods or braces and they shall be maintained in good condition.

**H110.5 Height of closed signs.** A closed roof sign shall not be erected to a height greater than 50 feet (15 240 mm) above the roof of buildings of Type 1 or 2 construction or more than 35 feet (10 668 mm) above the roof of buildings of Type 3, 4 or 5 construction.

## SECTION H111 WALL SIGNS

**H111.1 Materials.** Wall signs that have an area exceeding 40 square feet ( $3.72 \text{ m}^2$ ) shall be constructed of metal or other approved noncombustible material, except for nailing rails and as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1.

**H111.2 Exterior wall mounting details.** Wall signs attached to exterior walls of solid masonry, concrete or stone shall be safely and securely attached by means of metal anchors, bolts or expansion screws of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) diameter and shall be embedded not less than 5 inches (127 mm). Wood blocks shall not be used for anchorage, except in the case of wall signs attached to buildings with walls of wood. A wall sign shall not be supported by anchorages secured to an unbraced parapet wall.

## APPENDIX H—SIGNS

**H111.3 Extension.** Wall signs shall not extend above the top of the wall or beyond the ends of the wall to which the signs are attached unless such signs conform to the requirements for roof signs, projecting signs or ground signs.

### SECTION H112 PROJECTING SIGNS

**H112.1 General.** Projecting signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other noncombustible material and securely attached to a building or structure by metal supports such as bolts, anchors, supports, chains, guys or steel rods. Staples or nails shall not be used to secure any projecting sign to any building or structure. The dead load of projecting signs not parallel to the building or structure and the load due to wind pressure shall be supported with chains, guys or steel rods having net cross-sectional dimension of not less than  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm) diameter. Such supports shall be erected or maintained at an angle of not less than 45 percent (0.78 rad) with the horizontal to resist the dead load and at angle of 45 percent (0.78 rad) or more with the face of the sign to resist the specified wind pressure. If such projecting sign exceeds 30 square feet ( $2.8 \text{ m}^2$ ) in one facial area, there shall be provided not fewer than two such supports on each side not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) apart to resist the wind pressure.

**H112.2 Attachment of supports.** Supports shall be secured to a bolt or expansion screw that will develop the strength of the supporting chains, guys or steel rods, with a minimum  $\frac{5}{8}$ -inch (15.9 mm) bolt or lag screw, by an expansion shield. Turnbuckles shall be placed in chains, guys or steel rods supporting projecting signs.

**H112.3 Wall mounting details.** Chains, cables, guys or steel rods used to support the live or dead load of projecting signs are permitted to be fastened to solid masonry walls with expansion bolts or by machine screws in iron supports, but such supports shall not be attached to an unbraced parapet wall. Where the supports must be fastened to walls made of wood, the supporting anchor bolts must go through the wall and be plated or fastened on the inside in a secure manner.

**H112.4 Height limitation.** A projecting sign shall not be erected on the wall of any building so as to project above the roof or cornice wall or, on buildings without a cornice wall, above the roof level except that a sign erected at a right angle to the building, the horizontal width of which sign is perpendicular to such a wall and does not exceed 18 inches (457 mm), is permitted to be erected to a height not exceeding 2 feet (610 mm) above the roof or cornice wall or above the roof level where there is no cornice wall. A sign attached to a corner of a building and parallel to the vertical line of such corner shall be deemed to be erected at a right angle to the building wall.

**H112.5 Additional loads.** Projecting sign structures that will be used to support an individual on a ladder or other servicing device, whether or not specifically designed for the servicing device, shall be capable of supporting the anticipated addi-

tional load, but not less than a 100-pound (445 N) concentrated horizontal load and a 300-pound (1334 N) concentrated vertical load applied at the point of assumed or most eccentric loading. The building component to which the projecting sign is attached shall be designed to support the additional loads.

### SECTION H113 MARQUEE SIGNS

**H113.1 Materials.** Marquee signs shall be constructed entirely of metal or other approved noncombustible material except as provided for in Sections H106.1.1 and H107.1.

**H113.2 Attachment.** Marquee signs shall be attached to approved marquees that are constructed in accordance with Section 3106.

**H113.3 Dimensions.** Marquee signs, whether on the front or side, shall not project beyond the perimeter of the marquee.

**H113.4 Height limitation.** Marquee signs shall not extend more than 6 feet (1829 mm) above, or 1 foot (305 mm) below such marquee. Signs shall not have a vertical dimension greater than 8 feet (2438 mm).

### SECTION H114 PORTABLE SIGNS

**H114.1 General.** Portable signs shall conform to requirements for ground, roof, projecting, flat and temporary signs where such signs are used in a similar capacity. The requirements of this section shall not be construed to require portable signs to have connections to surfaces, tie-downs or foundations where provisions are made by temporary means or configuration of the structure to provide stability for the expected duration of the installation.

### SECTION H115 THICKNESS OF SIGNS

**H115.1 General.** Tables H115.1(1) and H115.1(2) provide requirements for the size, thicknesses and types of glass panels and projection signs, respectively.

TABLE H115.1(1)  
SIZE, THICKNESS AND TYPE OF GLASS PANELS IN SIGNS

Any dimension (inches)	Area (square inches)	MAXIMUM SIZE OF EXPOSED PANEL	MINIMUM THICKNESS OF GLASS (inches)	TYPE OF GLASS
30	500	$\frac{1}{8}$	Plain, plate or wired	
45	700	$\frac{3}{16}$	Plain, plate or wired	
144	3,600	$\frac{1}{4}$	Plain, plate or wired	
> 144	> 3,600	$\frac{1}{4}$	Wired glass	

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 square inch = 645.16 mm<sup>2</sup>.

## APPENDIX H—SIGNS

**TABLE H115.1(2)**  
**THICKNESS OF PROJECTION SIGN**

PROJECTION (feet)	MAXIMUM THICKNESS (feet)
5	2
4	2.5
3	3
2	3.5
1	4

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**SECTION H116**  
**REFERENCED STANDARDS**

**H116.1 General.** See Table H116.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

**TABLE H116.1**  
**REFERENCED STANDARDS**

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASTM D635—14	<i>Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position</i>	H107.1.1
NFPA 70—20	<i>California Electrical Code</i>	H106.1, H106.2
NFPA 701—19	<i>Methods of Fire Test for Flame Propagation of Textiles and Films</i>	H106.1.1



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX I – PATIO COVERS

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter				X																		
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below			X																			
Chapter / Section																						
I101			X																			
I102			X																			
I103			X																			

## APPENDIX I

### PATIO COVERS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

---

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** Appendix I provides standards applicable to the construction and use of patio covers. It is limited in application to patio covers accessory to dwelling units. Covers of patios and other outdoor areas associated with restaurants, mercantile buildings, offices, nursing homes or other nondwelling occupancies would be subject to standards in the main code and not this appendix.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

#### SECTION I101 GENERAL

**I101.1 General.** Patio covers shall be permitted to be detached from or attached to dwelling units. Patio covers shall be used only for recreational, outdoor living purposes and not as carports, garages, storage rooms or habitable rooms.

#### SECTION I102 DEFINITION

**I102.1 General.** The following term shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meaning shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

**PATIO COVER.** A structure with open or glazed walls that is used for recreational, outdoor living purposes associated with a dwelling unit.

#### SECTION I103 EXTERIOR WALLS AND OPENINGS

**I103.1 Enclosure walls.** Enclosure walls shall be permitted to be of any configuration, provided that the open or glazed area of the longer wall and one additional wall is equal to not less than 65 percent of the area below not less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm) of each wall, measured from the floor. Openings shall be permitted to be enclosed with insect screening, translucent or transparent plastic conforming to the provisions of Sections 2606 through 2610, glass conforming to the provisions of Chapter 24 or any combination of the foregoing.

**I103.2 Light, ventilation and emergency egress.** Exterior openings of the dwelling unit required for light and ventilation shall be permitted to open into a patio structure. However, the patio structure shall be unenclosed if such openings are serving as emergency egress or rescue openings from sleeping rooms. Where such exterior openings serve as

## APPENDIX I—PATIO COVERS

an exit from the dwelling unit, the patio structure, unless unenclosed, shall be provided with exits conforming to the provisions of Chapter 10.

### SECTION I104 HEIGHT

**I104.1 Height.** Patio covers shall be limited to one-story structures not more than 12 feet (3657 mm) in height.

### SECTION I105 STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

**I105.1 Design loads.** Patio covers shall be designed and constructed to sustain, within the stress limits of this code, all dead loads plus a minimum vertical live load of 10 pounds per square foot ( $0.48 \text{ kN/m}^2$ ) except that snow loads shall be used where such snow loads exceed this minimum. Such patio covers shall be designed to resist the minimum wind and seismic loads set forth in this code.

**I105.2 Footings.** In areas with a frost depth of zero, a patio cover shall be permitted to be supported on a concrete slab on grade without footings, provided that the slab conforms to the provisions of Chapter 19 of this code and is not less than  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches (89 mm) thick, and the columns do not support loads in excess of 750 pounds (3.36 kN) per column.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX J – GRADING

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)				X	X																	
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
J104.1				X	X																	

## APPENDIX J

### GRADING

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

---

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** Appendix J provides standards for the grading of properties. The appendix also provides standards for the administration and enforcement of a grading program, including permit and inspection requirements. Appendix J was originally developed in the 1960s and used for many years in jurisdictions throughout the western United States. It is intended to provide consistent and uniform code requirements anywhere grading is considered an issue.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

#### SECTION J101 GENERAL

**J101.1 Scope.** The provisions of this chapter apply to grading, excavation and earthwork construction, including fills and embankments. Where conflicts occur between the technical requirements of this chapter and the geotechnical report, the geotechnical report shall govern.

**J101.2 Flood hazard areas.** Unless the applicant has submitted an engineering analysis, prepared in accordance with standard engineering practice by a registered design professional, that demonstrates the proposed work will not result in any increase in the level of the base flood, grading, excavation and earthwork construction, including fills and embankments, shall not be permitted in floodways that are in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 or in flood hazard areas where design flood elevations are specified but floodways have not been designated.

#### SECTION J102 DEFINITIONS

**J102.1 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

**BENCH.** A relatively level step excavated into earth material on which fill is to be placed.

**COMPACTION.** The densification of a fill by mechanical means.

**CUT.** See “Excavation.”

**DOWN DRAIN.** A device for collecting water from a swale or ditch located on or above a slope, and safely delivering it to an approved drainage facility.

**EROSION.** The wearing away of the ground surface as a result of the movement of wind, water or ice.

**EXCAVATION.** The removal of earth material by artificial means, also referred to as a cut.

## APPENDIX J—GRADING

**FILL.** Deposition of earth materials by artificial means.

**GRADE.** The vertical location of the ground surface.

**GRADE, EXISTING.** The grade prior to grading.

**GRADE, FINISHED.** The grade of the site at the conclusion of all grading efforts.

**GRADING.** An excavation or fill or combination thereof.

**KEY.** A compacted fill placed in a trench excavated in earth material beneath the toe of a slope.

**SLOPE.** An inclined surface, the inclination of which is expressed as a ratio of horizontal distance to vertical distance.

**TERRACE.** A relatively level step constructed in the face of a graded slope for drainage and maintenance purposes.

### SECTION J103 PERMITS REQUIRED

**J103.1 Permits required.** Except as exempted in Section J103.2, grading shall not be performed without first having obtained a permit therefor from the building official. A grading permit does not include the construction of retaining walls or other structures.

**J103.2 Exemptions.** A grading permit shall not be required for the following:

1. Grading in an isolated, self-contained area, provided that the public is not endangered and that such grading will not adversely affect adjoining properties.
2. Excavation for construction of a structure permitted under this code.
3. Cemetery graves.
4. Refuse disposal sites controlled by other regulations.
5. Excavations for wells, or trenches for utilities.
6. Mining, quarrying, excavating, processing or stockpiling rock, sand, gravel, aggregate or clay controlled by other regulations, provided that such operations do not affect the lateral support of, or significantly increase stresses in, soil on adjoining properties.
7. Exploratory excavations performed under the direction of a registered design professional.

Exemption from the permit requirements of this appendix shall not be deemed to grant authorization for any work to be done in any manner in violation of the provisions of this code or any other laws or ordinances of this jurisdiction.

### SECTION J104 PERMIT APPLICATION AND SUBMITTALS

**J104.1 Submittal requirements.** In addition to the provisions of Sections 105.3 and 1.8.4, as applicable, the applicant shall state the estimated quantities of excavation and fill.

**J104.2 Site plan requirements.** In addition to the provisions of Section 107, a grading plan shall show the existing grade and finished grade in contour intervals of sufficient clarity to

indicate the nature and extent of the work and show in detail that it complies with the requirements of this code. The plans shall show the existing grade on adjoining properties in sufficient detail to identify how grade changes will conform to the requirements of this code.

**J104.3 Geotechnical report.** A geotechnical report prepared by a registered design professional shall be provided. The report shall contain not less than the following:

1. The nature and distribution of existing soils.
2. Conclusions and recommendations for grading procedures.
3. Soil design criteria for any structures or embankments required to accomplish the proposed grading.
4. Where necessary, slope stability studies, and recommendations and conclusions regarding site geology.

**Exception:** A geotechnical report is not required where the building official determines that the nature of the work applied for is such that a report is not necessary.

**J104.4 Liquefaction study.** For sites with mapped maximum considered earthquake spectral response accelerations at short periods ( $S_s$ ) greater than 0.5g as determined by Section 1613, a study of the liquefaction potential of the site shall be provided and the recommendations incorporated in the plans.

**Exception:** A liquefaction study is not required where the building official determines from established local data that the liquefaction potential is low.

### SECTION J105 INSPECTIONS

**J105.1 General.** Inspections shall be governed by Section 110, Chapter 1, Division II of this code.

**J105.2 Special inspections.** The special inspection requirements of Section 1705.6 shall apply to work performed under a grading permit where required by the building official.

### SECTION J106 EXCAVATIONS

**J106.1 Maximum slope.** The slope of cut surfaces shall be not steeper than is safe for the intended use, and shall be not more than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope) unless the owner or the owner's authorized agent furnishes a geotechnical report justifying a steeper slope.

#### Exceptions:

1. A cut surface shall be permitted to be at a slope of 1.5 units horizontal to 1 unit vertical (67-percent slope) provided that all of the following are met:
  - 1.1. It is not intended to support structures or surcharges.
  - 1.2. It is adequately protected against erosion.

## APPENDIX J-2

- 1.3. It is not more than 8 feet (2438 mm) in height.
- 1.4. It is approved by the building code official.
- 1.5. Ground water is not encountered.
2. A cut surface in bedrock shall be permitted to be at a slope of 1 unit horizontal to 1 unit vertical (100-percent slope).

## SECTION J107 FILLS

**J107.1 General.** Unless otherwise recommended in the geotechnical report, fills shall comply with the provisions of this section.

**J107.2 Surface preparation.** The ground surface shall be prepared to receive fill by removing vegetation, topsoil and other unsuitable materials, and scarifying the ground to provide a bond with the fill material.

**J107.3 Benching.** Where existing grade is at a slope steeper than one unit vertical in five units horizontal (20-percent slope) and the depth of the fill exceeds 5 feet (1524 mm) benching shall be provided in accordance with Figure J107.3. A key shall be provided that is not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) in width and 2 feet (610 mm) in depth.

**J107.4 Fill material.** Fill material shall not include organic, frozen or other deleterious materials. Rock or similar irreducible material greater than 12 inches (305 mm) in any dimension shall not be included in fills.

**J107.5 Compaction.** All fill material shall be compacted to 90 percent of maximum density as determined by ASTM

D1557, Modified Proctor, in lifts not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) in depth.

**J107.6 Maximum slope.** The slope of fill surfaces shall be not steeper than is safe for the intended use. Fill slopes steeper than one unit vertical in two units horizontal (50-percent slope) shall be justified by a geotechnical report or engineering data.

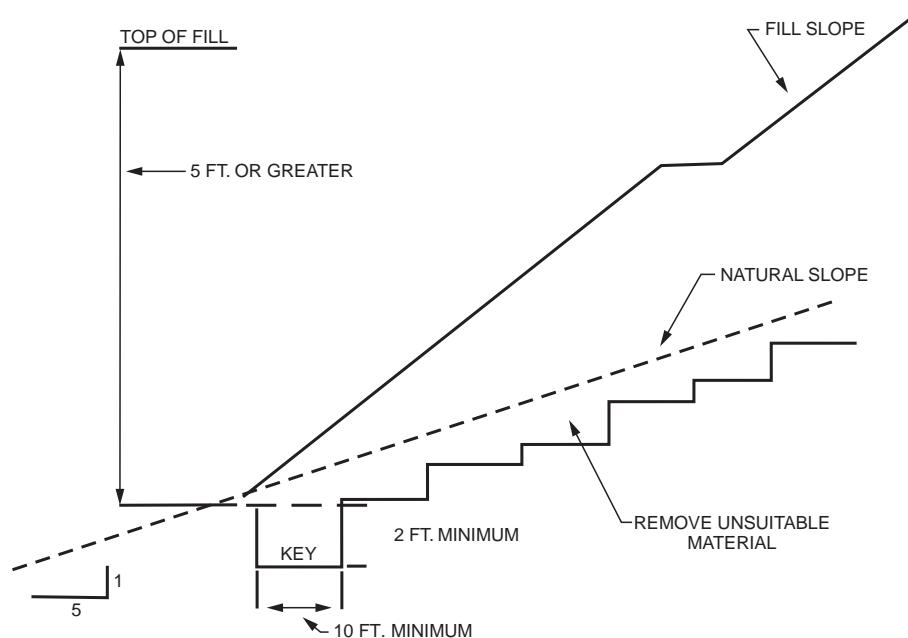
## SECTION J108 SETBACKS

**J108.1 General.** Cut and fill slopes shall be set back from the property lines in accordance with this section. Setback dimensions shall be measured perpendicular to the property line and shall be as shown in Figure J108.1, unless substantiating data is submitted justifying reduced setbacks.

**J108.2 Top of slope.** The setback at the top of a cut slope shall be not less than that shown in Figure J108.1, or than is required to accommodate any required interceptor drains, whichever is greater.

**J108.3 Slope protection.** Where required to protect adjacent properties at the toe of a slope from adverse effects of the grading, additional protection, approved by the building official, shall be included. Examples of such protection include but are not be limited to:

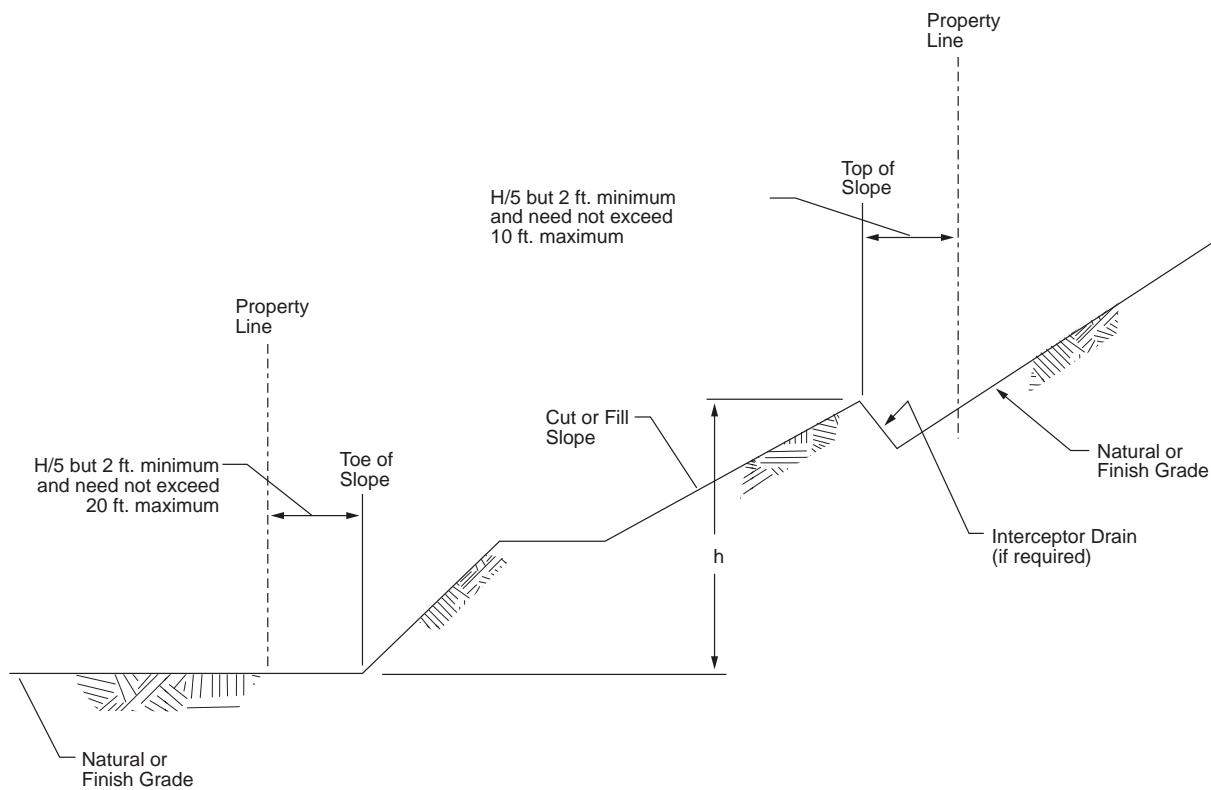
1. Setbacks greater than those required by Figure J108.1.
2. Provisions for retaining walls or similar construction.
3. Erosion protection of the fill slopes.
4. Provision for the control of surface waters.



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE J107.3  
BENCHING DETAILS

## APPENDIX J—GRADING



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

**FIGURE J108.1  
DRAINAGE DIMENSIONS**

### SECTION J109 DRAINAGE AND TERRACING

**J109.1 General.** Unless otherwise recommended by a registered design professional, drainage facilities and terracing shall be provided in accordance with the requirements of this section.

**Exception:** Drainage facilities and terracing need not be provided where the ground slope is not steeper than one unit vertical in three units horizontal (33-percent slope).

**J109.2 Terraces.** Terraces not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in width shall be established at not more than 30-foot (9144 mm) vertical intervals on all cut or fill slopes to control surface drainage and debris. Suitable access shall be provided to allow for cleaning and maintenance.

Where more than two terraces are required, one terrace, located at approximately mid-height, shall be not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) in width.

Swales or ditches shall be provided on terraces. They shall have a minimum gradient of one unit vertical in 20 units horizontal (5-percent slope) and shall be paved with concrete not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness, or with other materials suitable to the application. They shall have a

depth not less than 12 inches (305 mm) and a width not less than 5 feet (1524 mm).

A single run of swale or ditch shall not collect runoff from a tributary area exceeding 13,500 square feet (1256 m<sup>2</sup>) (projected) without discharging into a down drain.

**J109.3 Interceptor drains.** Interceptor drains shall be installed along the top of cut slopes receiving drainage from a tributary width greater than 40 feet (12 192 mm), measured horizontally. They shall have a minimum depth of 1 foot (305 mm) and a minimum width of 3 feet (915 mm). The slope shall be approved by the building official, but shall be not less than one unit vertical in 50 units horizontal (2-percent slope). The drain shall be paved with concrete not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in thickness, or by other materials suitable to the application. Discharge from the drain shall be accomplished in a manner to prevent erosion and shall be approved by the building official.

**J109.4 Drainage across property lines.** Drainage across property lines shall not exceed that which existed prior to grading. Excess or concentrated drainage shall be contained on site or directed to an approved drainage facility. Erosion of the ground in the area of discharge shall be prevented by installation of nonerosive down drains or other devices.

## APPENDIX J—GRADING

## SECTION J110 EROSION CONTROL

**J110.1 General.** The faces of cut and fill slopes shall be prepared and maintained to control erosion. This control shall be permitted to consist of effective planting.

**Exception:** Erosion control measures need not be provided on cut slopes not subject to erosion due to the erosion-resistant character of the materials.

Erosion control for the slopes shall be installed as soon as practicable and prior to calling for final inspection.

**J110.2 Other devices.** Where necessary, check dams, cribbing, riprap or other devices or methods shall be employed to control erosion and provide safety.

## SECTION J111 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**J111.1 General.** See Table J111.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

**TABLE J111.1  
REFERENCED STANDARDS**

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASTM D1557—12E1	<i>Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Modified Effort [56,000 ft-lb/ft<sup>3</sup> (2,700 kN-m/m<sup>3</sup>)].</i>	J107.5



**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE  
APPENDIX K – GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES  
PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN**

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.

See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter										X									X			
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

**APPENDIX K**

**GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES  
PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL  
VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN**

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

**SECTION K101  
SCOPE**

**K101.1 General.** The provisions of this section shall apply to new construction, changes of use and to substantial improvement and restoration of substantial damage as defined in Section 1612, of Group R-3 and R-3.1 Occupancies in areas protected by the facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan where flood levels are anticipated to exceed three feet for the 200-year flood event. Except as specifically required by this section, buildings and structures shall meet applicable provisions of this code.

**Exception:** Changes of use of Group R-3 to Group R-3.1 Occupancies, including any substantial improvement done under the same permit.

**K101.1.1 Construction documents.** If the land on which the proposed work is to be constructed is located in an area protected by the facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan, the construction documents shall include the WSEL200 and the elevation(s) of the floor(s), and, as applicable, the elevation(s) and slopes of roofs, of the building or structure.

**SECTION K102  
DEFINITIONS**

**K102.1 General.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this section, have the meanings shown.

**AREAS PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN WHERE**

**FLOOD LEVELS ARE ANTICIPATED TO EXCEED THREE FEET FOR THE 200-YEAR FLOOD EVENT.** Geographical areas identified by the state as “Areas Protected by the Facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan where Flood Levels are Anticipated to Exceed Three Feet for the 200-Year Flood Event” in accordance with Health and Safety Code Section 50465. Published data from the California Department of Water Resources can be obtained online at the following website: [www.water.ca.gov/BuildingCodes](http://www.water.ca.gov/BuildingCodes).

**Note:** The facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan are identified in the following counties: Butte, Colusa, Fresno, Glenn, Lake, Madera, Merced, Plumas, Sacramento, San Joaquin, Solano, Stanislaus, Sutter, Tehama, Yolo and Yuba. Determination of additional facilities is ongoing.

**CENTRAL VALLEY.** Any lands in the bed or along or near the banks of the Sacramento River and the San Joaquin River, and any of their tributaries or connected therewith, or upon any land adjacent thereto, or within any of the overflow basins thereof, or upon any land susceptible to overflow therefrom. The following counties and the incorporated municipalities within these counties, in whole or in part, are in the Central Valley: Alpine, Amador, Butte, Calaveras, Colusa, El Dorado, Fresno, Glenn, Lake, Lassen, Madera, Mariposa, Merced, Modoc, Napa, Nevada, Placer, Plumas, Sacramento, San Benito, San Joaquin, Shasta, Sierra, Siskiyou, Solano, Stanislaus, Sutter, Tehama, Tuolumne, Yolo and Yuba. A map that delineates the Central Valley can be

obtained online at the following website: [www.water.ca.gov/BuildingCodes](http://www.water.ca.gov/BuildingCodes).

**EVACUATION LOCATION.** A location no less than one (1) foot (0.30 meter) above the WSEL200 where occupants are expected to congregate pending evacuation and from which occupants may be evacuated during conditions of flooding, such as a space within the building that has an exit door or operable window; a deck, balcony, porch, rooftop platform or rooftop area, or combinations thereof.

**FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN.** The facilities referenced herein include the facilities of State Plan of Flood Control and other flood management facilities in the Central Valley evaluated under the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan, which will be completed in 2012 and updated every 5 years thereafter. The facilities of State Plan of Flood Control include the state and federal flood control works (levees, weirs, channels and other features) of the Sacramento River Flood Control Project described in Water Code Section 8350, and flood control projects in the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River watersheds authorized pursuant to Article 2 (commencing with Water Code section 12648) of Chapter 2 of Part 6 of Division 6 for which the Central Valley Flood Protection Board or the Department of Water Resources has provided the assurances of nonfederal cooperation to the United States, and those facilities identified in Water Code Section 8361.

**ROUTE TO THE EVACUATION LOCATION.** The path through and along which occupants move from the habitable areas of a building or structure that are below the WSEL200 to the evacuation location.

**WSEL200.** The water surface elevation (WSEL) of the 200-year flood event that is identified by the state when it identifies areas that receive protection from the facilities of the Central Valley Flood Protection Plan.

## SECTION K103 STRUCTURAL STABILITY

**K103.1 General.** Portions of buildings and structures supporting evacuation locations shall be designed, constructed, connected and anchored to resist flotation, collapse or permanent lateral movement resulting from the hydrostatic loads anticipated during conditions of flooding anticipated for the 200-year flood event.

**K103.2 Determination of loads.** Hydrostatic loads, based on the depth of water determined by the WSEL200, shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 5 of ASCE 7. Reduction of hydrostatic loads may be accomplished by allowing for the automatic entry and exit of floodwaters to minimize unbalanced loads. Such means shall be designed by a registered design professional and include, but are not limited to, openings, valves and panels designed to yield under load.

**Exception:** When two flood vents are installed on opposite sides of the building or structure, one on each side, that comply with Figure K103.1.

## SECTION K104 EVACUATION LOCATIONS

**K104.1 General.** An evacuation location and a route to the evacuation location shall be provided for Group R-3 and R-3.1 Occupancies.

**K104.2 Route to evacuation location.** A route shall be allowed through any number of intervening rooms or spaces. Doors along the route shall be openable without the use of a key or lock, special knowledge or effort.

**Exception:** Doors in individual dwelling or sleeping units having an occupant load of 10 or less are permitted to be equipped with a night latch, dead bolt or security chain, provided such devices are openable from the inside without the use of a key or tool.

**K104.2.1 Group R-3.1 Occupancies.** The route to an evacuation location shall meet the accessibility requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B as applicable.

**K104.3 Minimum size requirements.** Evacuation locations shall provide a minimum gross floor area of 7 square feet ( $0.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) per occupant, based on the occupant load of the portions of the building that are below the WSEL200. The area provided shall be adequate to accommodate the occupant load of the upper levels as well as the anticipated occupant load from the area below the WSEL200.

## SECTION K105 SPACE WITHIN THE BUILDING

**K105.1 General.** If the evacuation location is a space within a building, the evacuation location shall be provided with a means for occupants to be evacuated out of the building specified in Sections K105.1.1, K105.1.2 or K105.1.3.

**K105.1.1 Windows, minimum size and dimensions.** A minimum of one window shall be provided that meets the minimum size, minimum dimensions and operational constraints of Section 1026. The number of such windows shall be appropriate for the occupancy or occupancies of the portions of the building that are below the WSEL200.

**Note:** It is the intent of this section that windows are of sufficient number, sizes and dimensions to reasonably accommodate the needs and limitations of the occupants of the building. Reasonable judgment in the application of this requirement must be exercised by the building official.

**K105.1.2 Exterior doors to decks, balconies and porches.** Exterior doors to decks, balconies and porches shall be sized in accordance with Section 1008.

**Exception:** In Group R-3.1 Occupancies that are subject to the requirements of Chapters 11A or 11B, doors to decks, balconies or porches shall comply with Section 1132A.1.

**K105.1.3 Means of escape to rooftops from spaces within a building.** The means of escape to rooftops shall be permitted to be provided by a stairway, ramp, alternating

## APPENDIX K—GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN

*tread device, fixed ladder or other means approved by the building official.*

**Exception:** In Group R-3.1 occupancies that are subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B, such accessibility requirements shall apply to the means of escape to rooftops.

### **SECTION K106 DECKS AND BALCONIES THAT ARE EVACUATION LOCATIONS**

**K106.1 General.** Decks and balconies that have finish floors no less than one (1) foot (0.30 meter) above the WSEL200 shall be permitted to be evacuation locations. When a deck or balcony used as an evacuation location is not at the same level as a floor within the building, it shall be permitted to be accessed by a stairway, ramp, alternating tread device, fixed ladder or other means approved by the building official.

**K106.2 Live load.** Decks and balconies that are evacuation locations shall be designed for the live load required for the occupancy as required in Table 1607.2.

**K106.3 Evacuation route.** Evacuation routes to decks and balconies that are evacuation locations shall be permitted to be provided by a stairway, ramp, alternating tread device, fixed ladder or other means approved by the building official.

**Exception:** In Group R-3.1 Occupancies that are subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B, such requirements shall apply to the evacuation routes to decks and balconies.

### **SECTION K107 ROOFTOP EVACUATION LOCATIONS**

**K107.1 General.** Rooftop evacuation locations shall be permitted to include rooftop platforms and rooftop areas provided that they are no less than one (1) foot (0.30 meter) above the WSEL200. A minimum horizontal distance of three (3) feet (0.91 meter) shall be provided between the lower edge of the rooftop evacuation location access point and the evacuation location lower perimeter.

**K107.2 Rooftop platforms required.** A rooftop platform shall be provided if the roof covering materials are:

1. Clay tile, concrete tile, slate shingles, wood shingles or wood shakes, and the roof slope is three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25 percent slope) or greater.
2. Metal roof panels or metal roof shingles, and the roof slope is one unit vertical in 12 units horizontal (8.33 percent slope) or greater.

**K107.3 Roof live loads.** Roof areas that are rooftop evacuation locations and roofs that support rooftop platforms that are evacuation locations shall be designed for the roof live load required for the occupancy as required in Table 1607.2.

**K107.4 Evacuation routes to rooftop evacuation locations.** Evacuation routes to rooftop evacuation locations shall be permitted to be provided by a stairway, ramp, alternating tread device, fixed ladder or other means approved by the building official.

**Exception:** In Group R-3.1 occupancies that are subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B, such requirements shall apply to the evacuation routes to rooftops.

**K107.5 Perimeter protection.** For Group R-3 and R-3.1 occupancies, the perimeter of rooftop evacuation locations shall be protected by:

1. Guards per Section 1013 if a rooftop platform is provided; or
2. A railing that is 12 inches (305 mm) in height if a sloped roof is provided.

**K107.6 Utility/equipment buffer zone.** A separation of 48 inches shall be provided between a rooftop evacuation location and any mechanical equipment, photovoltaic system, utility service drop or other utility line. Electrical service lines shall not pass over evacuation locations.

### **SECTION K108 ATTICS THAT ARE EVACUATION LOCATIONS**

**K108.1 General.** Attics that have finish floors no less than one (1) foot (0.30 meter) above the WSEL200 shall be permitted to be evacuation locations.

**K108.2 Headroom.** When an attic is used as an evacuation location, the minimum headroom of the required area shall be 30 inches (762 mm) with 50 percent of the required area having a headroom of 60 inches (1524 mm).

**K108.3 Attic flooring.** The required area of the evacuation location shall be solidly sheathed.

**K108.4 Attic live loads.** Attic areas that are used as evacuation locations shall be designed for the floor live load required for the occupancy as required in Table 1607.2.

**K108.5 Evacuation routes to attic evacuation locations.** Evacuation routes to attic evacuation locations shall be permitted to be provided by a stairway, ramp, alternating tread device, fixed ladder or other means approved by the building official.

**Exception:** In Group R-3.1 occupancies that are subject to the requirements of Chapter 11A or 11B, such requirements shall apply to the evacuation routes to attics.

**K108.6 Means of escape from attics.** The means of escape from attics shall comply with Section K105.

### **SECTION K109 ALTERNATE MEANS OF PROTECTION**

**K109.1 Request for approval of alternate means of protection.** Requests for approval to use an alternative means of protection shall be made in writing to the building official by the owner or the owner's authorized representative. The request shall be accompanied by a full statement of the conditions and sufficient evidence that the proposed alternate means of protection provides reasonable protection to occupants. The building official shall require the owner to obtain a written statement from the applicable emergency management authority regarding plans and processes related to notification of anticipated conditions of flooding, warnings, evacuations and other pertinent conditions relative to the

**APPENDIX K—GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN**

*proximity of nearby levees. The building official shall also require the owner to obtain a written statement and findings from the entity that has jurisdiction over the management, maintenance, monitoring and control of flood protection works in the vicinity of the location of the owner's property; such statement shall comment on the viability of the proposed alternate means of protection. The building official may request written statements from the Central Valley Flood Protection Board, the California Department of Water Resources, and the California Emergency Management Agency.*

*Approval of a request for use of an alternative means of protection made pursuant to these provisions shall be limited to the particular case covered by the request and shall not be construed as establishing any precedent for any future request except in substantially equivalent situations.*

**Note:** Contact information for the California Department of Water Resources and the Department's Directory of Flood Officials, which includes levee and reclamation district boundary maps, is available on-line at the following web site: [www.water.ca.gov/BuildingCodes](http://www.water.ca.gov/BuildingCodes). The Department of Water Resources Building Code Project Engineer can be contacted at 916-574-1451. The Central Valley Flood Control Board Chief Engineer can be contacted at 916- 574-0609. The California Emergency Management Agency Inland Region Program Manager can be contacted at 916-845-8488.

**K109.2 Appeals.** When a request for an alternate means of protection has been denied by the building official, the applicant may file a written appeal with the board of appeals. In considering such appeal, the board of appeals may provide additional information to, and request additional written statements from, the Central Valley Flood Protection Board, the California Department of Water Resources, and the California Emergency Management Agency. If such additional written statements are provided, the board of appeals shall consider those statements.

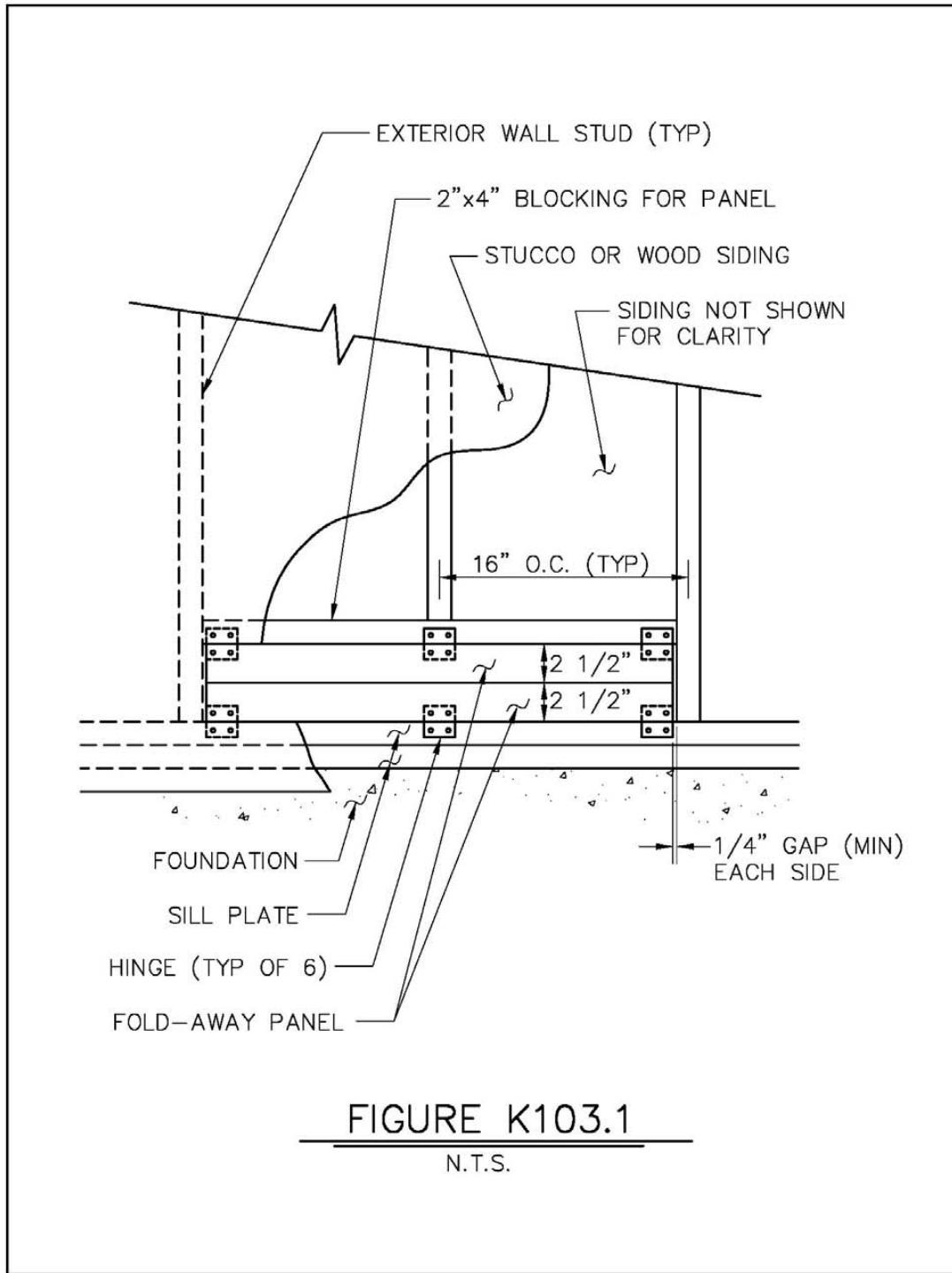
**APPENDIX K-4**



**2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE**

Copyright © 2022 ICC. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. Accessed by Kevin Leatham (kleatham@egnyte.com), (-) Order Number #101697556 on Jan 08, 2024 02:26 PM (CST) pursuant to License Agreement with ICC. No further reproduction, no further reproductions by any third party, or distribution authorized. Single user only, copying and networking prohibited. ANY UNAUTHORIZED REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION IS A VIOLATION OF THE FEDERAL COPYRIGHT ACT AND THE LICENSE AGREEMENT, AND SUBJECT TO CIVIL AND CRIMINAL PENALTIES THEREUNDER.

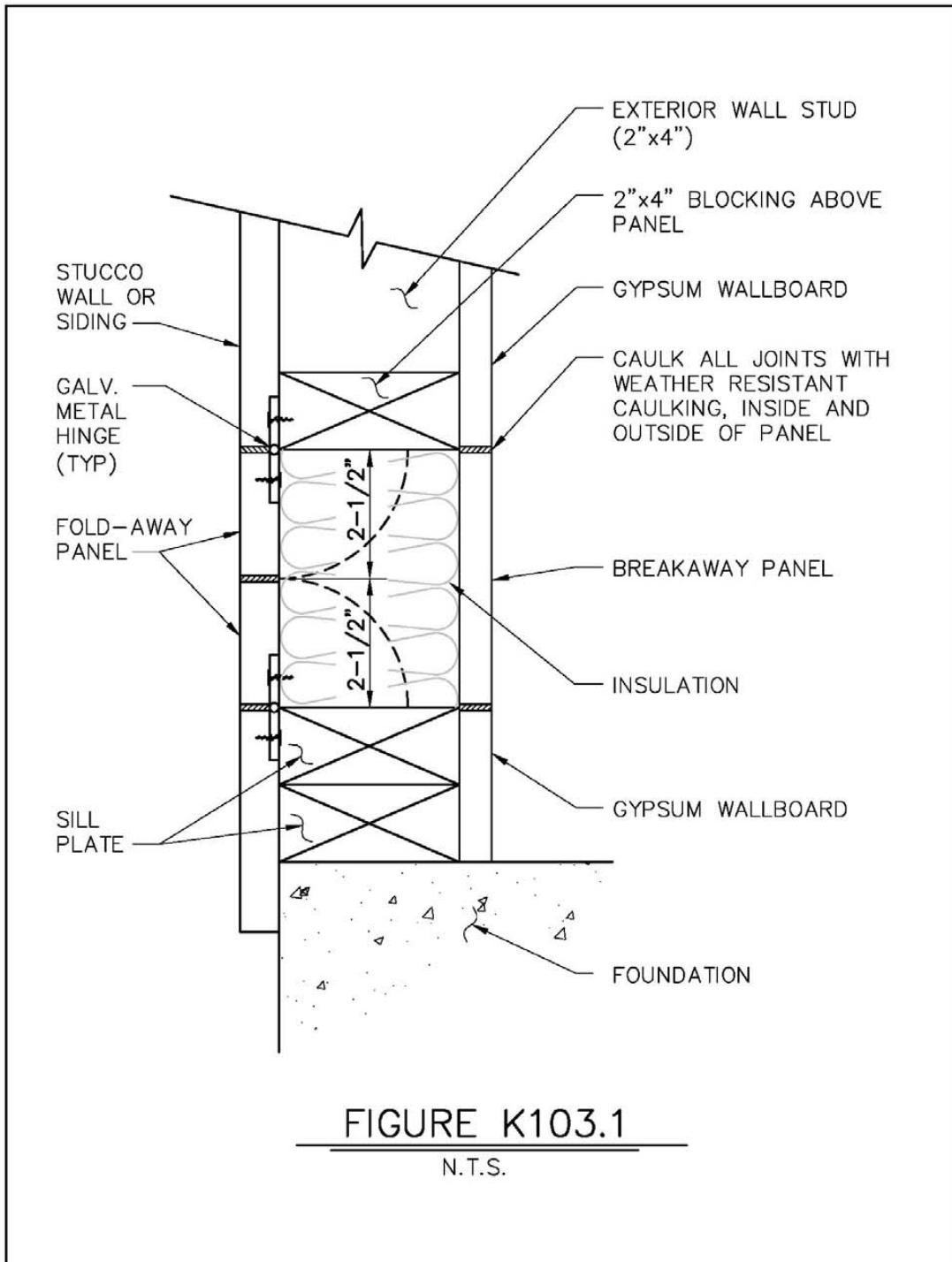
**APPENDIX K—GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN**



**FIGURE K103.1**

N.T.S.

**APPENDIX K—GROUP R-3 AND GROUP R-3.1 OCCUPANCIES PROTECTED BY THE FACILITIES OF THE CENTRAL VALLEY FLOOD PROTECTION PLAN**



**FIGURE K103.1**

N.T.S.

## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX L – EARTHQUAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4								
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)										X				X								
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						
L101.1										X				X								
L101.2										X				X								
L101.3										X												

## APPENDIX L

### EARTHQUAKE RECORDING INSTRUMENTATION

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

---

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** The purpose of Appendix L is to foster the collection of ground motion data, particularly from strong-motion earthquakes. When this ground motion data is synthesized, it may be useful in developing future improvements to the earthquake provisions of the code.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

#### SECTION L101 GENERAL

**L101.1 General.** Every structure located where the 1-second spectral response acceleration,  $S_1$ , determined in accordance with Section 1613.2, is greater than 0.40 and either exceeds six stories in height with an aggregate floor area of 60,000 square feet ( $5574 \text{ m}^2$ ) or more, or exceeds 10 stories in height regardless of floor area, shall be equipped with not fewer than three approved recording accelerographs. The accelerographs shall be interconnected for common start and common timing.

**[OSHPD 1 & 4]** There shall be a sufficient number of instruments to characterize the response of the building during an earthquake and shall include at least one tri-axial free field instrument or equivalent.

**L101.2 Location.** As a minimum, instruments shall be located at the lowest level, mid-height, and near the top of the structure. Each instrument shall be located so that access is maintained at all times and is unobstructed by room contents. A sign stating “MAINTAIN CLEAR ACCESS TO THIS INSTRUMENT” in 1-inch (25 mm) block letters shall be posted in a conspicuous location.

**[OSHPD 1 & 4]** A proposal for instrumentation and equipment specifications shall be forwarded to the enforcement agency for review and approval.

**L101.3 Maintenance.** Maintenance and service of the instrumentation shall be provided by the owner of the structure. Data produced by the instrument shall be made available to the building official on request.

Maintenance and service of the instruments shall be performed annually by an approved testing agency. The owner shall file with the building official a written report from an approved testing agency certifying that each instrument has been serviced and is in proper working condition. This report shall be submitted when the instruments are installed and annually thereafter. Each instrument shall have affixed to it an externally visible tag specifying the date of the last maintenance or service and the printed name and address of the testing agency.

**[OSHPD 1]** Data retrieval from the instrument and processing of the records shall be the responsibility of the enforcement agency.



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX M – TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARD

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter																						
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## APPENDIX M

### TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARDS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** Appendix M allows the adoption of guidelines for constructing vertical evacuation refuge structures within areas that are considered tsunami hazard zones.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

#### SECTION M101 REFUGE STRUCTURES FOR VERTICAL EVACUATION FROM TSUNAMI-GENERATED FLOOD HAZARDS

**M101.1 General.** The purpose of this appendix is to provide tsunami vertical evacuation planning criteria for those coastal communities that have a tsunami hazard as shown in a *Tsunami Design Zone Map*.

**M101.2 Definitions.** The following term shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meaning shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

**TSUNAMI DESIGN ZONE MAP.** A map that designates the extent of inundation by a Maximum Considered Tsunami, as defined by Chapter 6 of ASCE 7.

**M101.3 Establishment of tsunami design zone.** Where applicable, the *Tsunami Design Zone Map* shall meet or exceed the inundation limit given by the ASCE 7 *Tsunami Design Geodatabase*.

**M101.4 Planning of tsunami vertical evacuation refuge structures within the tsunami design zone.** Tsunami Vertical Evacuation Refuge Structures located within a tsunami hazard design zone shall be planned, sited, and developed in general accordance with the planning criteria of the FEMA P646 guidelines.

**Exception:** These criteria shall not be considered mandatory for evaluation of existing buildings for evacuation planning purposes.

#### SECTION M102 REFERENCED STANDARDS

**M102.1 General.** See Table M102.1 for standards that are referenced in various sections of this appendix. Standards are listed by the standard identification with the effective date, standard title, and the section or sections of this appendix that reference the standard.

**TABLE M102.1**  
**REFERENCED STANDARDS**

STANDARD ACRONYM	STANDARD NAME	SECTIONS HEREIN REFERENCED
ASCE 7—16 with Supplement 1	<i>Minimum Design Load and Associated Criteria for Buildings and Other Structures</i>	M101.2, M101.3
FEMA P646—12	<i>Guidelines for Design of Structures for Vertical Evacuation from Tsunamis</i>	M101.4



## CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE

### APPENDIX N – REPLICABLE BUILDINGS

(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							

## APPENDIX N

### REPLICABLE BUILDINGS

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

---

#### User notes:

**About this appendix:** Appendix N provides jurisdictions with a means of incorporating guidelines for replicable buildings into their building code adoption process. The intent of these provisions is to give jurisdictions a means of streamlining their document review process while verifying code compliance.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the IBC—Structural Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

---

#### SECTION N101 ADMINISTRATION

**N101.1 Purpose.** The purpose of this appendix is to provide a format and direction regarding the implementation of a replicable building program.

**N101.2 Objectives.** Such programs allow a jurisdiction to recover from a natural disaster faster and allow for consistent application of the codes for replicable building projects. It will result in faster turnaround for the end user, and a quicker turnaround through the plan review process.

#### SECTION N102 DEFINITIONS

**N102.1 Definitions.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein.

**REPLICABLE BUILDING.** A building or structure utilizing a replicable design.

**REPLICABLE DESIGN.** A prototypical design developed for application in multiple locations with minimal variation or modification.

#### SECTION N103 REPLICABLE DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

**N103.1 Prototypical construction documents.** A replicable design shall establish prototypical construction documents for application at multiple locations. The construction documents shall include details appropriate to each wind region, seismic design category, and climate zone for locations in which the replicable design is intended for application. Application of replicable design shall not vary with regard to the following, except for allowable variations in accordance with Section N106.

1. Use and occupancy classification.
2. Building heights and area limitations.
3. Type of construction classification.
4. Fire-resistance ratings.
5. Interior finishes.
6. Fire protection system.
7. Means of egress.
8. Accessibility.
9. Structural design criteria.
10. Energy efficiency.
11. Type of mechanical and electrical systems.
12. Type of plumbing system and number of fixtures.

## APPENDIX N—REPLICABLE BUILDINGS

### SECTION N104 REPLICABLE DESIGN SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

**N104.1 General.** A summary description of the replicable design and related construction documents shall be submitted to an approved agency. Where approval is requested for elements of the replicable design that is not within the scope of the *California Building Code*, the construction documents shall specifically designate the codes for which review is sought. Construction documents shall be signed, sealed and dated by a registered design professional.

**N104.1.1 Architectural plans and specifications.** Where approval of the architectural requirements of the replicable design is sought, the submittal documents shall include architectural plans and specifications as follows:

1. Description of uses and the proposed occupancy groups for all portions of the building.
2. Proposed type of construction of the building.
3. Fully dimensioned drawings to determine building areas and height.
4. Adequate details and dimensions to evaluate means of egress, including occupant loads for each floor, exit arrangement and sizes, corridors, doors and stairs.
5. Exit signs and means of egress lighting, including power supply.
6. Accessibility scoping provisions.
7. Description and details of proposed special occupancies such as a covered mall, high-rise, mezzanine, atrium and public garage.
8. Adequate details to evaluate fire-resistance-rated construction requirements, including data substantiating required ratings.
9. Details for plastics, insulation and safety glazing installation.
10. Details of required fire protection systems.
11. Material specifications demonstrating fire-resistance criteria.

**N104.1.2 Structural plans, specifications and engineering details.** Where approval of the structural requirements of the replicable design is sought, the submittal documents shall include details for each wind region, seismic design category and climate zone for which approval is sought; and shall include the following:

1. Signed and sealed structural design calculations that support the member sizes on the drawings.
2. Design load criteria, including: frost depth, live loads, snow loads, wind loads, earthquake design date, and other special loads
3. Details of foundations and superstructure.
4. Provisions for special inspections.

**N104.1.3 Energy conservation details.** Where approval of the energy conservation requirements of the replicable design is sought, the submittal documents shall include details for each climate zone for which approval is sought; and shall include the following:

1. Climate zones for which approval is sought.
2. Building envelope details.
3. Building mechanical system details.
4. Details of electrical power and lighting systems.
5. Provisions for system commissioning.

### SECTION N105 REVIEW AND APPROVAL OF REPLICABLE DESIGN

**N105.1 General.** Proposed replicable designs shall be reviewed by an approved agency. The review shall be applicable only to the replicable design features submitted in accordance with Section N104. The review shall determine compliance with this code and additional codes specified in Section N104.1.

**N105.2 Documentation.** The results of the review shall be documented indicating compliance with the code requirements.

**N105.3 Deficiencies.** Where the review of the submitted construction documents identifies elements where the design is deficient and will not comply with the applicable code requirements, the approved agency shall notify the proponent of the replicable design, in writing, of the specific areas of noncompliance and request correction.

**N105.4 Approval.** Where the review of the submitted construction documents determines that the design is in compliance with the codes designated in Section N104.1, and where deficiencies identified in Section N105.3 have been corrected the approved agency shall issue a summary report of Approved Replicable Design. The summary report shall include any limitations on the approved replicable design including, but not limited to climate zones, wind regions and seismic design categories.

### SECTION N106 SITE-SPECIFIC APPLICATION OF APPROVED REPLICABLE DESIGN

**N106.1 General.** Where site-specific application of a replicable design that has been approved under the provisions of Section N105 is sought, the construction documents submitted to the building official shall comply with this section.

**N106.2 Submittal documents.** A summary description of the replicable design and related construction document shall be submitted. Construction documents shall be signed, sealed and dated by the registered design professional. A statement, signed, sealed and dated by the registered design professional, that the replicable design submitted for local review is the same as the replicable design reviewed by the approved agency, shall be submitted.

## 2022 CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE

### APPENDIX N-2

**APPENDIX N—REPLICABLE BUILDINGS**

**N106.2.1 Architectural plans and specifications.** Architectural plans and specifications shall include the following:

1. Construction documents for variations from the replicable design.
2. Construction for portions that are not part of the replicable design.
3. Documents for local requirements as identified by the building official.
4. Construction documents detailing the foundation system.

**SECTION N107  
SITE-SPECIFIC REVIEW AND  
APPROVAL OF REPLICABLE DESIGN**

**N107.1 General.** Proposed site-specific application of replicable design shall be submitted to the building official in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1 and Appendix N.

**N107.2 Site-specific review and approval of replicable design.** The building official shall verify that the replicable design submitted for site-specific application is the same as the approved replicable design reviewed by the approved agency. In addition, the building official shall review the following for code compliance.

1. Construction documents for variations from the replicable design.
2. Construction for portions of the building that are not part of the replicable design.
3. Documents for local requirements as identified by the building official.



**CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**  
**APPENDIX O – PERFORMANCE-BASED APPLICATION**  
(Not adopted by state agencies)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC	
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4									
Adopt entire chapter																							
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																							
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																							
Chapter / Section																							

**[A] APPENDIX O**  
**PERFORMANCE-BASED APPLICATION**

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically adopted by a state agency or referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

**User notes:**

**About this appendix:** Appendix O provides an optional design, review and approval framework for use by the building official. Typical uses would include cases of alternate methods in Chapter 1, select areas of the code that require a rational analysis such as Section 909 and elsewhere. It simply extracts the relevant administrative provisions from the ICC Performance Code into a more concise, usable appendix format for a jurisdiction confronted with such a need. Currently there are multiple, varying jurisdictional rules and procedures in many communities regarding procedure and none in even more. The building official is often left alone to reach decisions not just on the merits of a design, but must first also decide on the submittal and review process. As an appendix, the provisions herein are entirely optional to a jurisdiction. This appendix can be adopted, adopted with local modifications, or even used on a case-by-case basis as part of a Memorandum of Understanding or similar legal agreement between the jurisdiction and the owner/design team. It simply represents another tool for the jurisdiction to reach for in cases of need; it neither encourages nor creates any additional opportunity for performance-based design.

**Code development reminder:** Code change proposals to this appendix will be considered by the Administrative Code Development Committee during the 2022 (Group B) Code Development Cycle.

**[A] SECTION O101  
GENERAL**

**O101.1 Introduction.** The following administrative provisions are excerpted from the *ICC Performance Code for Buildings and Facilities* and can be used in conjunction with the Alternate Methods provisions in Chapter 1, or for a review of submittals requiring a rational analysis or performance-based design. These provisions provide an established framework for the building official in terms of the design expertise needed, the necessary submittals, a review framework and related items.

**O101.2 Qualifications.** Registered design professionals shall possess the knowledge, skills and abilities necessary to demonstrate compliance with this code.

**O101.3 Construction document preparation.** Construction documents required by this code shall be prepared in adequate detail and submitted for review and approval in accordance with Section 107.

**O101.3.1 Review.** Construction documents submitted in accordance with this code shall be reviewed for code compliance with the appropriate code provisions in accordance with Section 107.

**O101.4 Construction.** Construction shall comply with the approved construction documents submitted in accordance with this code, and shall be verified and approved to demonstrate compliance with this code.

**O101.4.1 Facility operating policies and procedures.** Policies, operations, training and procedures shall comply with approved documents submitted in accordance with this code, and shall be verified and approved to demonstrate compliance with this code.

**O101.4.2 Maintenance.** Maintenance of the performance-based design shall be ensured throughout the life of the building or portion thereof.

**O101.4.3 Changes.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible to ensure that any change to the facility, process, or system does not increase the hazard

## APPENDIX O—PERFORMANCE-BASED APPLICATION

level beyond that originally designed without approval and that changes shall be documented in accordance with the code.

**O101.5 Documentation.** The registered design professional shall prepare appropriate documentation for the project, clearly detailing the approach and rationale for the design submittal, the construction and the future use of the building, facility or process.

**O101.5.1 Reports and manuals.** The design report shall document the steps taken in the design analysis, clearly identifying the criteria, parameters, inputs, assumptions, sensitivities and limitations involved in the analysis. The design report shall clearly identify bounding conditions, assumptions and sensitivities that clarify the expected uses and limitations of the performance analysis. This report shall verify that the design approach is in compliance with the applicable codes and acceptable methods and shall be submitted for concurrence by the building official prior to the construction documents being completed. The report shall document the design features to be incorporated based on the analysis.

The design report shall address the following:

1. Project scope.
2. Goals and objectives.
3. Performance criteria.
4. Hazard scenarios.
5. Design fire loads and hazards.
6. Final design.
7. Evaluation.
8. Bounding conditions and critical design assumptions.
9. Critical design features.
10. System design and operational requirements.
11. Operational and maintenance requirements.
12. Commissioning testing requirements and acceptance criteria.
13. Frequency of certificate renewal.
14. Supporting documents and references.
15. Preliminary site and floor plans.

**O101.5.2 Design submittal.** Applicable construction documents shall be submitted to the building official for review. The documents shall be submitted in accordance with the jurisdiction's procedures and in sufficient detail to obtain appropriate permits.

**O101.6 Review.** Construction documents submitted in accordance with this code shall be reviewed for code compliance with the appropriate code provisions.

**O101.6.1 Peer review.** The owner or the owner's authorized agent shall be responsible for retaining and furnishing the services of a registered design professional or recognized expert, who will perform as a peer reviewer, where required and approved by the building official.

**O101.6.2 Costs.** The costs of special services, including contract review, where required by the building official, shall be borne by the owner or the owner's authorized agent.

**O101.7 Permits.** Prior to the start of construction, appropriate permits shall be obtained in accordance with the jurisdiction's procedures and applicable codes.

**O101.8 Verification of compliance.** Upon completion of the project, documentation shall be prepared that verifies performance and prescriptive code provisions have been met. Where required by the building official, the registered design professional shall file a report that verifies bounding conditions are met.

**O101.9 Extent of documentation.** Approved construction documents, the operations and maintenance manual, inspection and testing records, and certificates of occupancy with conditions shall be included in the project documentation of the building official's records.

**O101.10 Analysis of change.** The registered design professional shall evaluate the existing building, facilities, premises, processes, and contents, and the applicable documentation of the proposed change as it affects portions of the building, facility, premises, processes and contents that were previously designed for compliance under a performance-based code. Prior to any change that was not documented in a previously approved design, the registered design professional shall examine the applicable design documents, bounding conditions, operation and maintenance manuals, and deed restrictions.

## **CALIFORNIA BUILDING CODE – MATRIX ADOPTION TABLE**

### **APPENDIX P – EMERGENCY HOUSING**

||

(Matrix Adoption Tables are nonregulatory, intended only as an aid to the code user.  
See Chapter 1 for state agency authority and building applications.)

Adopting agency	BSC	BSC-CG	SFM	HCD			DSA			OSHPD					BSCC	DPH	AGR	DWR	CEC	CA	SL	SLC
				1	2	1/AC	AC	SS	SS/CC	1	1R	2	3	4	5							
Adopt entire chapter				X	X																	
Adopt entire chapter as amended (amended sections listed below)																						
Adopt only those sections that are listed below																						
Chapter / Section																						

## **APPENDIX P**

### **EMERGENCY HOUSING**

*The provisions contained in this appendix are not mandatory unless specifically referenced in the adopting ordinance.*

#### **SECTION P101**

#### **GENERAL**

**P101.1 Scope.** This appendix shall be applicable to emergency housing and emergency housing facilities, as defined in Section P102.

#### **SECTION P102**

#### **DEFINITIONS**

**P102.1 General.** The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this appendix, have the meanings shown herein. Refer to Chapter 2 of this code for general definitions.

**DECLARATION OF SHELTER CRISIS.** The duly proclaimed existence of a situation in which a significant number of persons are without the ability to obtain shelter, resulting in a threat to their health and safety. (See Government Code Section 8698.)

**DEPENDENT UNIT.** Emergency housing not equipped with a kitchen area, toilet and sewage disposal system. Recreational vehicles that are not self-contained and without utility service connections shall be considered dependent units.

**EMERGENCY HOUSING.** Housing in a permanent or temporary structure(s), occupied during a declaration of state of emergency, local emergency or shelter crisis. Emergency housing may include, but is not limited to, buildings and structures constructed in accordance with the California Building Standards Code; and emergency sleeping cabins, emergency transportable housing units and tents constructed in accordance with this appendix.

**EMERGENCY HOUSING FACILITIES.** On-site common use facilities supporting emergency housing. Emergency housing facilities include, but are not limited to, kitchen areas, toilets, showers and bathrooms with running water. The use of

emergency housing facilities is limited exclusively to the occupants of the emergency housing, personnel involved in operating the housing and other emergency personnel.

**EMERGENCY HOUSING SITE.** A site containing emergency housing and emergency housing facilities supporting the emergency housing.

**EMERGENCY SLEEPING CABIN.** Relocatable hard-sided structure constructed in accordance with this appendix, which may be occupied only for emergency housing if allowed by the enforcing agency.

**EMERGENCY TRANSPORTABLE HOUSING UNIT.** A single- or multiple-section prefabricated structure that is transportable by a vehicle and that can be installed on a permanent or temporary site in response to a need for emergency housing. Emergency transportable housing units include, but are not limited to, manufactured homes, mobile-homes, multifamily manufactured homes, recreational vehicles and park trailers. For the purposes of this appendix, emergency transportable housing units may also include commercial modulars as defined in the Health and Safety Code Section 18001.8, if approved by the enforcing agency.

Emergency transportable housing units do not include factory-built housing as defined in the Health and Safety Code Section 19971.

**LANDING PLATFORM.** A landing provided as the top step of a stairway accessing a loft.

**LOCAL EMERGENCY.** Local Emergency as defined in the Government Code, Section 8558.

**LOFT.** A floor level located more than 30 inches (762 mm) above the main floor and open to it on at least one side with a ceiling height of less than 6 feet 8 inches (2032 mm), used as a living or sleeping space.

**MANUFACTURED HOME.** A structure designed to be used as a single-family dwelling, as defined in the Health and Safety Code, Section 18007.

**MEMBRANE STRUCTURE.** An air-inflated, air-supported, cable or frame-covered structure, not otherwise defined as a tent. (See Chapter 31 of this code.)

**MOBILEHOME.** A structure designed to be used as a single-family dwelling, as defined in the Health and Safety Code, Section 18008.

**MULTIFAMILY MANUFACTURED HOME.** A structure designed to contain not less than two dwelling units, as defined in the Health and Safety Code, Section 18008.7.

**PARK TRAILER.** A trailer designed for human habitation that meets all requirements in the Health and Safety Code, Section 18009.3.

**RECREATIONAL VEHICLE.** A motor home, travel trailer, truck camper or camping trailer, with or without motive power, designed for human habitation, that meets all requirements in the Health and Safety Code, Section 18010.

**STATE OF EMERGENCY.** State of Emergency as defined in the Government Code, Section 8558.

**TENT.** A structure, enclosure or shelter, with or without sidewalls or drops, constructed of fabric or pliable material supported by any manner except by air or the contents that it protects.

## SECTION P103 EMERGENCY HOUSING

**P103.1 General.** Emergency sleeping cabins, emergency transportable housing units, membrane structures and tents constructed and/or assembled in accordance with this appendix, shall be occupied only during declaration of state of emergency, local emergency or shelter crisis.

Buildings and structures constructed in accordance with the California Building Standards Code, used as emergency housing, shall be permitted to be permanently occupied.

**P103.2 Existing buildings.** Existing residential and nonresidential buildings or structures shall be permitted to be used as emergency housing and emergency housing facilities provided such buildings or structures comply with the building code provisions and/or other regulations in effect at the time of original construction and/or alteration. Existing buildings or structures used as emergency housing shall not become or continue to be substandard buildings, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**P103.2.1 New additions, alterations and change of occupancy.** New additions, alterations and change of occupancy to existing buildings shall comply with the requirements of the California Building Standards Code effective at the time of addition, alteration or change of occupancy. The requirements shall apply only to and/or within the specific area of the addition, alteration or change of occupancy.

**Exception:** Existing buildings and structures used for emergency housing and emergency housing facilities may not be required to comply with the California Energy Code, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**P103.3 Occupant load.** Except as otherwise stated in this appendix, the maximum occupant load allowed in buildings and structures used as emergency housing shall be determined by the enforcing agency, but the interior floor area shall not be less than 70 square feet ( $6.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) for one occupant. Where more than one person occupies the building/structure, the required floor area shall be increased at the rate of 50 square feet ( $4.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each occupant in excess of one.

### Exceptions:

1. Tents.
2. Recreational vehicles and park trailers designed for human habitation that meet the requirements in the Health and Safety Code, Sections 18009.3 and 18010, as applicable.
3. For emergency housing, including emergency sleeping cabins, the minimum interior floor area may be reduced to 53 square feet ( $4.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) if the enforcing agency determines that 53 square feet ( $4.9 \text{ m}^2$ ) is adequate space for a single-occupancy sleeping unit.

**P103.4 Fire and life safety requirements not addressed in this appendix.** If not otherwise addressed in this appendix, fire and life safety measures, including, but not limited to, means of egress, fire separation, fire sprinklers, smoke alarms and carbon monoxide alarms, shall be determined and enforced by the enforcing agency.

**P103.5 Privacy.** Emergency housing shall be provided with a privacy lock on each entrance door and all windows for use by the occupants.

**P103.6 Heating.** All sleeping areas shall be provided with adequate heating as determined by the enforcing agency.

## SECTION P104 EMERGENCY SLEEPING CABINS

**P104.1 General.** Emergency sleeping cabins shall have an interior floor area of not less than 70 square feet ( $6.5 \text{ m}^2$ ) for one occupant. Where more than one person occupies the cabin, the required floor area shall be increased at the rate of 50 square feet ( $4.65 \text{ m}^2$ ) for each occupant in excess of one. The interior floor area shall not exceed 400 square feet ( $37 \text{ m}^2$ ), excluding lofts.

**P104.2 Live loads.** Emergency sleeping cabins shall be designed to resist intrusion of wind, rain, and to support the following live loads:

1. Floor live loads not less than 40 pounds per square foot (1.92 kPa) of floor area.
2. Horizontal live loads not less than 15 pounds per square foot (718 Pa) of vertical wall and roof area.
3. Roof live loads not less than 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa) of horizontal roof area.
4. In areas where snow loads are greater than 20 pounds per square foot (958 Pa), the roof shall be designed and constructed to resist these additional loads.

**P104.3 Minimum ceiling height.** Habitable space and hallways in emergency sleeping cabins shall have a ceiling height of not less than 80 inches (2032 mm). Bathrooms, toilet rooms and kitchens, if provided, shall have a ceiling height of not less than 76 inches (1930 mm). Obstructions

shall not extend below these minimum ceiling heights including beams, girders, ducts, lighting and other obstructions.

**Exception:** Ceiling heights in lofts constructed in accordance with Section P108 are permitted to be less than 80 inches (2032 mm).

**P104.4 Means of egress.** Emergency sleeping cabins shall be provided with at least two forms of egress placed remotely from each other. One form of egress may be an egress window complying with Section P104.4.1. When a loft is provided, one form of egress shall be an egress window complying with Section P104.4.1, provided in the loft space.

**P104.4.1 Egress window.** The bottom of the clear opening of the egress window shall not be more than 44 inches (1118 mm) above the floor. The egress window shall have a minimum net clear opening height of 24 inches (610 mm), and a minimum net clear opening width of 20 inches (508 mm). The egress window shall have a minimum net clear opening area of 5 square feet (0.465 m<sup>2</sup>).

**P104.5 Plumbing and gas service.** If an emergency sleeping cabin contains plumbing or gas service, it shall comply with all applicable requirements of the California Plumbing Code and the California Mechanical Code.

**P104.6 Electrical.** Emergency sleeping cabins shall be provided with all of the following installed in compliance with the California Electrical Code:

1. Continuous source of electricity.

**Exception:** The source of electricity may be an emergency generator or renewable source of power such as solar or wind power.

2. At least one interior lighting fixture.

3. Electrical heating equipment listed for residential use and a dedicated receptacle outlet for the electrical heating equipment.

**Exception:** Electrical heating equipment and a dedicated receptacle outlet for the electrical heating equipment are not required if a nonelectrical source of heating is provided.

4. At least one GFCI-protected receptacle outlet for use by the occupant(s).

**P104.7 Ventilation.** Emergency sleeping cabins shall be provided with means of ventilation (natural and/or mechanical) allowing for adequate air replacement, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**P104.8 Smoke alarms.** Emergency sleeping cabins shall be provided with at least one smoke alarm installed in accordance with the California Residential Code, Section R314.

**P104.9 Carbon monoxide alarms.** If an emergency sleeping cabin contains a fuel-burning appliance(s) or a fireplace(s), a carbon monoxide alarm shall be installed in accordance with the California Residential Code, Section R315.

## SECTION P105

### EMERGENCY TRANSPORTABLE HOUSING UNITS

**P105.1 General.** In addition to the requirements in this appendix, manufactured homes, mobilehomes, multifamily manufactured homes, commercial modulars, recreational vehicles and park trailers used as emergency transportable housing shall comply with all applicable requirements in the Health and Safety Code, Division 13, Part 2; and Title 25, Division 1, Chapter 3, Subchapter 2.

## SECTION P106

### TENTS AND MEMBRANE STRUCTURES

**P106.1 General.** Tents shall not be used to house occupants for more than 7 days unless such tents are maintained with tight wooden floors raised at least 4 inches (101.6 mm) above the ground level and are equipped with baseboards on all sides to a height of at least 6 inches (152.4 mm). Tents may be maintained with concrete slabs with the finished surface at least 4 inches (101.6 mm) above grade and equipped with curbs on all sides at least 6 inches (152.4 mm) high.

A tent shall not be considered a suitable sleeping place when it is found necessary to provide heating facilities in order to maintain a minimum temperature of 50 degrees Fahrenheit (10 degrees Celsius) within such tent during the period of occupancy.

Membrane structures installed and/or assembled in accordance with Chapter 31 of this code, may be permitted to be used as emergency housing and emergency housing facilities, as determined by the enforcing agency.

## SECTION P107

### ACCESSIBILITY

**P107.1 General.** Emergency housing shall comply with the applicable requirements in Chapter 11B and/or the US Access Board Final Guidelines for Emergency Transportable Housing.

**Note:** The Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board (US Access Board) issued the Final Guidelines for Emergency Transportable Housing on May 7, 2014. The final guidelines amended the 2004 ADA Accessibility Guidelines (2004 ADAAG) and the 2004 Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines (2004 ABAAG) to specifically address emergency transportable housing units provided to disaster survivors by entities subject to the ADA or ABA. The final rule ensures that the emergency transportable housing units are readily accessible to and usable by disaster survivors with disabilities.

## SECTION P108

### LOFTS IN EMERGENCY HOUSING

**P108.1 Minimum loft area and dimensions.** Lofts used as a sleeping or living space shall meet the minimum area and dimension requirements of Sections P108.1.1 through P108.1.3.

## APPENDIX P—EMERGENCY HOUSING

**P108.1.1 Minimum area.** Lofts shall have a floor area of not less than 35 square feet ( $3.25 \text{ m}^2$ ).

**P108.1.2 Minimum dimensions.** Lofts shall be not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) in any horizontal dimension.

**P108.1.3 Height effect on loft area.** Portions of a loft with a sloping ceiling measuring less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum required area for the loft.

**Exception:** Under gable roofs with a minimum slope of 6:12, portions of a loft with a sloping ceiling measuring less than 16 inches (406 mm) from the finished floor to the finished ceiling shall not be considered as contributing to the minimum required area for the loft.

**P108.2 Loft access.** The access to and primary egress from lofts shall be any type described in Sections P108.2.1 through P108.2.4.

**P108.2.1 Stairways.** Stairways accessing lofts shall comply with the California Residential Code or with Sections P108.2.1.1 through P108.2.1.6.

**P108.2.1.1 Width.** Stairways accessing a loft shall not be less than 17 inches (432 mm) in clear width at or above the handrail. The minimum width below the handrail shall be not less than 20 inches (508 mm).

**P108.2.1.2 Headroom.** The headroom in stairways accessing a loft shall be not less than 74 inches (1880 mm), as measured vertically, from a sloped line connecting the tread or landing platform nosings in the middle of their width.

**P108.2.1.3 Treads and risers.** Risers for stairs accessing a loft shall be not less than 7 inches (178 mm) and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) in height. Tread depth and riser height shall be calculated in accordance with one of the following formulas:

1. The tread depth shall be 20 inches (508 mm) minus 4/3 of the riser height, or
2. The riser height shall be 15 inches (381 mm) minus 3/4 of the tread depth.

**P108.2.1.4 Landing platforms.** The top step of stairways accessing lofts shall be constructed as a landing platform where the loft ceiling height is less than 74 inches (1880 mm). The landing platform shall be 18 inches (457 mm) to 22 inches (559 mm) in depth measured from the nosing of the landing platform to the edge of the loft, and 16 inches (406 mm) to 18 inches (457 mm) in height measured from the landing platform to the loft floor.

**P108.2.1.5 Handrails.** Handrails shall comply with the California Residential Code, Section R311.7.8.

**P108.2.1.6 Stairway guards.** Guards at open sides of stairways shall comply with the California Residential Code, Section R312.1.

**P108.2.2 Ladders.** Ladders accessing lofts shall comply with Sections P108.2.2.1 and P108.2.2.2.

**P108.2.2.1 Size and capacity.** Ladders accessing lofts shall have a rung width of not less than 12 inches (305

mm), and 10 inches (254 mm) to 14 inches (356 mm) spacing between rungs. Ladders shall be capable of supporting a 200 pound (90.7 kg) load on any rung. Rung spacing shall be uniform within  $\frac{3}{8}$  inch (9.5 mm).

**P108.2.2.2 Incline.** Ladders shall be installed at 70 to 80 degrees from horizontal.

**P108.2.3 Alternating tread devices.** Alternating tread devices are acceptable as allowed by the enforcing agency.

**P108.2.4 Loft guards.** Loft guards shall be located along the open side of lofts. Loft guards shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in height or one-half of the clear height to the ceiling, whichever is less. Loft guards shall not have openings from the walking surface to the required guard height that allow passage of a sphere 4 inches (102 mm) in diameter.

## SECTION P109

### LOCATION, MAINTENANCE AND IDENTIFICATION

**P109.1 Maintenance.** Emergency housing and emergency housing facilities shall be maintained in a safe and sanitary condition, and free from vermin, vectors and other matter of an infectious or contagious nature. The grounds within emergency housing sites shall be kept clean and free from accumulation of debris, filth, garbage and deleterious matter. Emergency housing and emergency housing facilities shall not be occupied if a substandard condition exists, as determined by the enforcing agency.

**P109.1.1 Fire hazards.** Dangerous materials or materials that create a fire hazard, as determined by the enforcing agency, shall not be allowed on the grounds within emergency housing sites.

**P109.2 Identification.** Emergency housing shall be designated by address numbers, letters or other suitable means of identification. The identification shall be in a conspicuous location facing the street or driveway fronting the building or structure. Each identification character shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height and not less than 0.5 inch (12.7 mm) in width, installed/painted on a contrasting background.

## SECTION P110

### EMERGENCY HOUSING FACILITIES

**P110.1 Drinking water.** Potable drinking water shall be provided for all occupants of emergency housing.

**P110.2 Kitchens.** Where occupants of dependent units are permitted or required to cook for themselves, a separate area shall be equipped and maintained as a common use kitchen. Refrigerated storage shall be provided for safe storage of food.

**P110.3 Toilet and bathing facilities.** When dependent units are used as emergency housing, the emergency housing site shall be provided with one toilet and one bathing facility for every 15 occupants of each gender. The enforcing agency may permit different types and ratios of toilet and bathing facilities. The approval shall be based upon a finding that the type and ratio of toilet and bathing facilities are sufficient to process the anticipated volume of sewage and waste water,

**APPENDIX P—EMERGENCY HOUSING**

*while maintaining sanitary conditions for the occupants of the emergency housing.*

*Bathing facilities shall be provided with heating equipment which shall be capable of maintaining a temperature of 70 degrees F (21.0 degrees Celsius) within such facilities.*

*Lavatories with running water shall be installed and maintained in the toilet facilities or adjacent to the toilet facilities.*

**P110.4 Garbage, waste and rubbish disposal.** All garbage, kitchen waste and rubbish shall be deposited in approved covered receptacles, which shall be emptied when filled and the contents shall be disposed of in a sanitary manner acceptable to the enforcing agency.



# INDEX

## A

### **ACCESS OPENINGS**

- Attic . . . . . 1209.2
- Crawl space . . . . . 1209.1
- Doors . . . . . 712.1.13.2
- Fire damper . . . . . 717.4
- Fire department . . . . . 402.7.5
- Mechanical appliances . . . . . 1209.3
- Refuse/laundry chutes . . . . . 713.13.3

### **ACCESSIBILITY** . . . . . 1009, Chapter 11A, 11B

- Accessible means of egress* . . . . . 1009, 11B-207
- Accessible routes* . . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B-206, Chapter 11B Division 4, 11B-402
  - Airport control towers . . . . . 412.2.6
  - Amusement rides . . . . . 11B-234, 11B-1002
  - Application . . . . . 1.9.1, Chapter 11B Division 1
- Assembly . . . . . 1009.1
- Assembly areas . . . . . 11B-221, 11B-802
- Assistive listening systems . . . . . 11B-219, 11B-706
- Automatic teller machines, fare machines  
and point-of-sale machines . . . . . 11B-220, 11B-707
- Bathroom . . . . . 202, 1127A, 1134A
- Benches . . . . . 11B-903
- Bus stops . . . . . 11B-209
- Controls . . . . . Chapter 11A  
*Changes in level* . . . . . 1111A, 1121A, 1131A, 11B-303
- Clear floor or ground space . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B-305
- Controls . . . . . Chapter 11A  
Covered multifamily dwellings . . . . 202, Chapter 11A
- Curb ramps, blended transitions  
and islands . . . . . 202, 1112A, 11B-406
- Destination-oriented elevators . . . . . 11B-206.6, 11B-411
- Detectable warnings . . . . . 202, 1112A.9, 1116A.5  
11B-247, 11B-705
- Detention facilities and  
correctional facilities . . . . . 11B-232, 11B-807
- Dimensions for adults and children . . . . . 11B-102
- Dining surfaces  
and work surfaces . . . . . 11B-226, 11B-902
- Doors, doorways and gates . . . . . 1126A, 1132A,  
11B-404
- Dressing, fitting and locker rooms . . . . . 11B-222,  
11B-803
- Drinking fountains and bottle-filling stations . . . . . 1139A,  
11B-211, 11B-602, 11B-602.10
- Dwelling units . . . . . Chapter 11A

### Egress

(see ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS) . . . . . 1009

- Electric vehicle charging stations* . . . . . 11B-228, 11B-812
- Elevators . . . . . 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 1009.7.3, 1124A,  
11B-206.6, 11B-407, 3001.2, 3001.4
- Emergency housing* . . . . . Appendix P
- Entrances . . . . . 1105, Chapter 11A, 11B-206.4
- Equivalent facilitation* . . . . . 202, Chapter 11A
- Exercise machines and equipment* . . . . . 11B-236,  
11B-1004
- Existing buildings . . . . . 1102A, 11B-202, 1009.1
- Fire alarm systems* . . . . . 11B-215, 11B-702
- Fishing piers and platforms* . . . . . 11B-237, 11B-1005
- Floor or ground surfaces* . . . . . 11B-302
- General exceptions* . . . . . 11B-203
- Golf facilities . . . . . 11B-238, 11B-1006
- Grab bar . . . . . 202, 1127A, 1134A
- Ground floor . . . . . 202, Chapter 11A
- Guard (or guardrail)* . . . . . 1114A, 1116A,  
1122A, 1125A
- Handrails . . . . . 1114A, 1115A,  
1122A, 1123A, 11B-505
- Hazard . . . . . 1116A, 1125A
- International symbol of accessibility* . . . . . 202,  
Chapter 11A, 11B-703.7.2.1
- Judicial facilities . . . . . 11B-231, 11B-808
- Kitchens, kitchenettes and wet bars . . . . . 1133A
- Knee and toe clearance . . . . . 11B-306
- Knee and toe space . . . . . 1127A, 1133A,  
1134A, 1138A
- Laundry . . . . . 1127A, 1135A
- Lifts . . . . . 1009.5
- Limited-use/limited-application elevators* . . . . . 11B-206.6, 11B-408
- Live/work unit . . . . . 508.5.9
- Mail boxes . . . . . 11B-228
- Maintenance of accessible features . . . . . 11B-108
- Mechanical access parking garages . . . . . 11B-209.5
- Medical care and long term care facilities . . . . . 11B-223,  
11B-805
- Miniature golf facilities . . . . . 11B-239, 11B-1007
- Multistory dwelling unit . . . . . 202, 1102A
- Operable parts . . . . . 11B-205, 11B-309
- Outdoor developed areas . . . . . 11B-246
- Parking spaces . . . . . 11B-208, 11B-502
- Passenger loading zones and  
bus stops . . . . . 11B-209, 11B-503



Finishing . . . . .	412.3.5
Fire suppression . . . . .	412.2.4, 412.3.6, 412.5.5
Separation . . . . .	412.3.6.2, 412.4.1
<b>AIR-INFLATED OR AIR-SUPPORTED STRUCTURES . . . . .</b>	<b>202,</b> <b>2702.2.14, 3102</b>
<b>AISLE . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 1018, 1030.9, 1030.14</b>
Aisle accessways . . . . .	202, 1018.4, 1030.13
Assembly seating . . . . .	1018.2, 1030.6
Bleachers . . . . .	1030.1.1
Business . . . . .	1018.3
Construction . . . . .	1030.12
Converging . . . . .	1030.9.3
Egress . . . . .	1018, 1030
Folding and telescopic seating . . . . .	1030.1.1
Grandstands . . . . .	1030.1.1
Mercantile . . . . .	1018.3, 1018.4
Obstructions . . . . .	1030.9.6.1
Tables . . . . .	1030.13.1
Temporary structures . . . . .	3103.4
Transitions . . . . .	1030.10
Width . . . . .	1030.9.1
<b>ALARM SYSTEMS, EMERGENCY . . . . .</b>	<b>908</b>
<b>ALARMS, FIRE (see FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS)</b>	
<b>ALARMS, VISIBLE . . . . .</b>	<b>907.5.2.3</b>
Common areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1
Employee work areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1
Group I-1 . . . . .	907.5.2.3.2
Group R-1 . . . . .	907.5.2.3.2
Group R-2 . . . . .	907.5.2.3.3
Public areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1
<b>ALARMS, VOICE . . . . .</b>	<b>907.5.2.2</b>
Amusement areas, special . . . . .	411.4, 907.2.13.3
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.7.4, 907.2.21
Emergency power . . . . .	2702.2
High-rise buildings . . . . .	403.4.4, 907.2.14
Occupant evacuation elevators . . . . .	3008.9
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.8.2, 907.2.20
<b>ALLOWABLE STRESS DESIGN . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
Load combinations . . . . .	1605, 1605.2
Masonry design . . . . .	2107
Wood design . . . . .	2102.1, 2306
<b>ALTERATIONS . . . . .</b>	<b>101.4.7, 202, D103.1</b>
Means of egress . . . . .	3302.1, 3310.2
<b>ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 1011.14</b>
Construction . . . . .	1011.14.2
Equipment platform . . . . .	505.3
Heliports . . . . .	412.7.3
Technical production areas . . . . .	410.5.3.4
<b>ALTERNATIVE MATERIALS, DESIGN AND METHODS . . . . .</b>	<b>104.11, Appendix O</b>
<b>ALUMINUM . . . . .</b>	<b>Chapter 20, 1403.5.1, 1604.3.5</b>
<b>AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 304.1, 422, Table 509.1, 709.5, Table 1020.3</b>
Emergency and standby power . . . . .	2702.2
Fire protection and detection . . . . .	903.2.2, 903.3.2, 907.2.2.1
Incapable of self-preservation . . . . .	202
Medical gas systems . . . . .	427
Smoke compartment . . . . .	422.2, 422.3, 909.5.3, 1026.4.1
<b>AMUSEMENT AREA, SPECIAL . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 411</b>
Alarm and detection . . . . .	411.2, 411.4, 907.2.13
Classification . . . . .	411.1
Emergency voice/alarm communications system . . . . .	411.4, 907.2.13.3
Exit marking . . . . .	411.6, 411.6.1
Interior finish . . . . .	411.7
Puzzle room . . . . .	411.5
Sprinklers protection . . . . .	411.2
<b>AMUSEMENT PARK STRUCTURES . . . . .</b>	<b>303</b>
Accessibility . . . . .	1111.4.8
<b>ANCHOR BUILDING (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDING) . . . . .</b>	<b>202, 402</b>
Construction type . . . . .	402.4.1.2, 507.13
Means of egress . . . . .	402.8.4.1
Occupant load . . . . .	402.8.2.3
Separation . . . . .	402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	402.5
<b>ANCHORAGE . . . . .</b>	<b>1604.8</b>
Braced wall line sills . . . . .	2308.3.1.1, 2308.3.1.2, 2308.6.7, 2308.6.7.3
Concrete . . . . .	1901.3
Conventional light-frame construction . . . . .	2308.3.1, 2308.4.10
Decks . . . . .	1604.8.3
Seismic anchorage for masonry chimneys . . .	2113.4
Seismic anchorage for masonry fireplaces . .	2111.5
Walls . . . . .	1604.8.2
Wood sill plates . . . . .	2308.3.1
<b>APARTMENT HOUSES . . . . .</b>	<b>310.3</b>
<b>APPEALS . . . . .</b>	<b>113, 1.8.8, Appendix B, G106</b>
<b>APPROVED (definition) . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>APPROVED AGENCY . . . . .</b>	<b>104.4, 202, 1703.1</b>
<b>APPROVED LISTING AGENCY (definition) . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>
<b>APPROVED TESTING AGENCY (definition) . . . . .</b>	<b>202</b>

**INDEX**

<b>ARCHITECT (see definitions for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL and REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL IN RESPONSIBLE CHARGE)</b>	
→ <b>ARCHITECTURAL TRIM</b> . . . . .	603.1, 1408.3
<b>AREA, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	Chapter 5, 202, 506, Table 506.2
Accessory uses . . . . .	508.2.3
Aircraft hangars, residential . . . . .	412.4.5
Allowable area determination . . . . .	506.2, 506.3
Basements . . . . .	506.1.3
Buildings on same lot . . . . .	503.1.2
Covered and open mall building . .	402.4.1, 402.4.1.1
Enclosed parking garage . . . . .	406.6.1, 510.3
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3.1
Frontage bonus . . . . .	506.3
Incidental uses . . . . .	509.3
Limitations . . . . .	503, 506
Membrane structures . . . . .	3102.4
Mezzanines . . . . .	505.2.1
Mixed construction types . . . . .	3102.6
Mixed occupancy . . . . .	508.2.3, 508.3.2, 508.4.2
Modifications . . . . .	506, 510
Occupied roof . . . . .	503.1.4
Open mall building . . . . .	402.4.1
Open parking garage . . . . .	406.5.4, 406.5.4.1, 406.5.5, 510.2, 510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Private garages and carports . . . . .	406.3.1
Special provisions . . . . .	510
Unlimited area . . . . .	503.1.1, 503.1.3, 506.1.1, 506.2, 507
<b>AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE, EXTERIOR (see EXTERIOR AREA FOR ASSISTED RESCUE)</b>	
<b>AREA OF REFUGE (see also ACCESSIBLE MEANS OF EGRESS)</b> . . . . .	202
Requirements . . . . .	709.4.2, 1009.6
Signage . . . . .	1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11, 1013.4, 1143A, 11B-216, 11B-703
Two-way communication . . . . .	1009.6.5, 1009.8
Where required . . . . .	1009.2, 1009.3.3, 1009.4.2
<b>ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A)</b> . . . . .	303, 1030
→ Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.1
Area . . . . .	503, 506, 507, 508
Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)	
Folding and telescopic seating (see BLEACHERS)	
General . . . . .	303.1
Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)	
Group-specific provisions	
A-1 . . . . .	303.2
A-2 . . . . .	303.3
A-3 . . . . .	303.4
A-4 . . . . .	303.5
A-5 . . . . .	303.6
Motion picture theater . . . . .	409, 507.12
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.2, 1030.9, 1030.10, 1030.11
Assembly spaces . . . . .	1030
Exit signs . . . . .	1013.1
Guards . . . . .	1015.2, 1030.17
Main exit . . . . .	1030.3
Open air . . . . .	1005.3.1, 1005.3.2, 1006.3, 1009.6.4, 1019.3, 1027, 1030.6.2
Panic hardware . . . . .	1010.2.9, 1010.4.1
Smoke-protected . . . . .	1005.3.1, 1005.3.2, 1006.3, 1009.6.4, 1019.3, 1027, 1030.6.2
Travel distance . . . . .	1017.2, 1006.3, 1030.7, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	508.2
Education . . . . .	303.1.3
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Mall buildings . . . . .	402
Other occupancies . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3
Parking below/above . . . . .	510.7, 510.9
Religious facilities . . . . .	303.1.4
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Motion picture theaters . . . . .	409, 507.12
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 303.1.3, 303.1.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5
Seating, fixed (see SEATING, FIXED)	
Seating, open-air assembly seating . . . . .	1030.6.3
Seating, smoke-protected . . . . .	1030.6.2
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	410, 504.3, 506.2, 507.4 507.6, 507.7, 507.12, 903.2.1
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410, 905.3.4
Standpipes . . . . .	905.3.2, 905.3.4, 905.5.1
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.4, 507.4.1, 507.6, 507.7, 507.12
<b>ASSISTED LIVING (see GROUP I-1 and GROUP R-4)</b> . . . . .	308.2, 310.5, 420
<b>ATMOSPHERIC ICE LOADS</b> . . . . .	1614



**INDEX**

<b>BOLTS</b> . . . . .	2204.2
Anchor rods . . . . .	1901.3, 1905, 2204.3
<b>BONDING, MASONRY</b> . . . . .	1805.2.2, 2103.2.2, 2113.3.1, 2510.7
<b>BOTTLE-FILLING STATIONS</b> . . . . .	202
<b>BRACED WALL LINE</b> . . . . .	202
Bracing . . . . .	2308.6
Seismic requirements . . . . .	2308.6.6.2, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10.2
Sill anchorage . . . . .	2308.6.7.3
Spacing . . . . .	2308.6.1
Support . . . . .	2308.6.8
<b>BRACED WALL PANEL</b> . . . . .	202
Alternative bracing . . . . .	2308.6.5.1, 2308.6.5.2
Connections . . . . .	2308.6.7
Length . . . . .	2308.6.4
Location . . . . .	2308.6.2
Method . . . . .	2308.6.3
<b>BRICK (see MASONRY)</b>	
<b>BUILDING</b>	
Area (see AREA, BUILDING) . . . . .	202, 502.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508, 510
Demolition . . . . .	3303
Existing . . . . .	101.4.7
Fire walls . . . . .	706.1
Height (see HEIGHT, BUILDING) . . . . .	502.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Occupancy classification . . . . .	Chapter 3
Party walls . . . . .	706.1.1
Replicable . . . . .	Appendix N
<b>BUILDING DEPARTMENT</b> . . . . .	103
<b>BUILDING OFFICIAL</b> . . . . .	202
Duties and powers . . . . .	103, 104
Qualifications . . . . .	Appendix A
Records . . . . .	104.7
Termination . . . . .	A101.4
<b>BUILT-UP ROOFS</b> . . . . .	202, 1507.10
<b>BUSINESS OCCUPANCY (GROUP B)</b> . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 304
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.2
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	304, 422
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Higher education laboratories . . . . .	428, 2702.2
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.3
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019

Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3, 1017.2, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.2, 508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	303.1.2, 508.2
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422
Assembly . . . . .	303.1.2
Educational . . . . .	303.1, 304.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Mall buildings . . . . .	402
Parking below/above . . . . .	510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.2
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.4, 507.5, 507.13

**C**

<b>CABLES, STEEL STRUCTURAL</b> . . . . .	2208
<b>CALCULATED FIRE RESISTANCE (see FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED)</b>	
<b>CALIFORNIA ADMINISTRATION</b> . . . . .	Chapter 1, Division I
<b>CANOPIES</b> . . . . .	202, 706.5.2, 3105
Design and construction . . . . .	3105.2
Drainage, water . . . . .	3201.4
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.3.1
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.8
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 1607.14.2.1
Materials . . . . .	3105.3
Motor vehicle related . . . . .	406.2.2, 406.7.2
Permanent . . . . .	3105, D102.2.8
Plastic . . . . .	2606.10
<b>CAPILLARY BREAK</b> . . . . .	1805.4.1, 1907.1.1
<b>CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS AND DETECTION</b> . . . . .	202, 915
<b>CARE FACILITIES (see HEALTH CARE)</b>	
<b>CARE PROVIDER STATIONS</b> . . . . .	407.2.2
<b>CARE SUITES</b> . . . . .	202, 407.4.4
<b>CARPET</b> . . . . .	105.2
Floor covering . . . . .	804.2, 804.3
Textile ceiling finish . . . . .	803.6
Textile wall coverings . . . . .	803.5
<b>CATWALKS (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</b>	
Construction . . . . .	410.2.2
Live Load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress . . . . .	410.5, 1011.16
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	410.6
<b>CEILING</b>	
Acoustical . . . . .	808

Height . . . . .	406.2.2, 409.2, 909.20.4.3, 1003.2, 1011.3, 1012.5.2, 1204.2.2, 1208.2	
Interior finish . . . . .	803	
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	713.4, 716.1.2.3, 716.3.4	
Suspended acoustical . . . . .	808.1.1, 2506.2.1	
<b>CELLULOSE NITRATE FILM</b> . . . . .	409.1, 903.2.5.3	
<b>CERAMIC TILE</b>		
Mortar . . . . .	2103.2.3	
<b>CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY</b> . . . . .	106.2, 111	
<b>CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY</b> . . . . .	101.4.7, 111.1, 116.5, 202, 3113.1.1, D103.2	
<b>CHILD CARE</b> . . . . .	305.2, 310.3, 308.5, 452	
<b>CHIMNEYS</b> . . . . .	202	
Factory-built . . . . .	718.2.5	
Flashing . . . . .	1503.5, 1507.7.7	
Masonry . . . . .	2111, 2112, 2113	
Protection from adjacent construction . . . . .	3307.1	
<b>CHURCHES</b> (see <b>RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF</b> )		
<b>CLAY ROOF TILE</b> . . . . .	1507.3, 1513	
Testing . . . . .	1504.3	
<b>CLIMATE ZONE</b> . . . . .	1202.3.1, Table 1202.3.1, 1404.3.3	
<b>CLINIC</b>		
Hospital [see <b>INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-2)</b> ] . . . . .	308.2	
Outpatient (see <b>AMBULATORY CARE FACILITIES</b> ) . . . . .	202, 304.1, 422	
<b>CLINICS [OSHPD 3]</b> . . . . .	1226	
Application . . . . .	1226.2	
Definitions . . . . .	1226.3	
Scope . . . . .	1226.1	
<b>CLINICS—GENERAL CONSTRUCTION</b> . . . . .	1226.4	
Ceiling heights . . . . .	1226.4.6	
Compactors . . . . .	1226.4.10	
Corridors . . . . .	1226.4.3	
Doors and door openings . . . . .	1226.4.4	
Elevators . . . . .	1226.4.8	
Examination and treatment areas . . . . .	1226.4.1	
General support services and facilities . . . . .	1226.4.15	
Garbage, solid waste, medical waste and trash storage . . . . .	1226.4.9	
Housekeeping room . . . . .	1226.4.11	
Interior finishes . . . . .	1226.4.7	
Laundry and trash chutes . . . . .	1226.4.12	
Miscellaneous requirements . . . . .	1226.4.2	
Public and administrative areas . . . . .	1226.4.16	
Support areas for examination and treatment rooms . . . . .	1226.4.13	
Support areas for patients . . . . .	1226.4.14	
Support areas for staff . . . . .	1226.4.17	
Windows . . . . .	1226.4.5	
<b>CLINICS—OUTPATIENT CLINICAL SERVICES OF A HOSPITAL</b>		
Cancer treatment/infusion therapy . . . . .	1226.5.13	
Gastrointestinal endoscopy . . . . .	1226.5.11	
General support areas for outpatient clinical services . . . . .	1226.5	
Hyperbaric therapy service space . . . . .	1226.5.14	
Nuclear medicine . . . . .	1226.5.12	
Radiological/imaging service space . . . . .	1226.5.5	
<b>CLINICS—PRIMARY CARE AND SPECIALTY CLINICS</b>		
Alternative birthing clinics . . . . .	1226.11	
Chronic dialysis clinics . . . . .	1226.9	
Primary care clinics . . . . .	1226.6	
Rehabilitation clinics . . . . .	1226.10	
Surgical clinics . . . . .	1226.8	
Psychology clinics . . . . .	1226.12	
<b>COAL POCKETS</b> . . . . .	426.1.6	
<b>CODES</b> . . . . .	Chapter 35, 101.2, 101.4, 102.2, 102.4, 102.6	
<b>COLD-FORMED STEEL</b> . . . . .	202, 2210	
Light-frame construction . . . . .	2211	
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.2.2, 1705.2.4, 1705.12.2, 1705.13.3	
<b>COMBUSTIBLE DUSTS</b> . . . . .	202, 307.4, 414.5.1, 426.1	
<b>COMBUSTIBLE LIQUIDS</b> . . . . .	202, 307.1, 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2, 415.10.1, 418.6	
<b>COMBUSTIBLE MATERIAL</b>		
Concealed spaces . . . . .	413.2, 718.5	
Exterior side of exterior wall . . . . .	1405	
High-pile stock or rack storage . . . . .	413.1, 910.2.2	
Type I and Type II . . . . .	603, 805	
<b>COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS</b> . . . . .	705.2, 705.2.3.1	
<b>COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE</b> . . . . .	413, 910.2.2	
<b>COMMON PATH OF EGRESS TRAVEL</b> . . . . .	1006.2.1	
<b>COMPARTMENTATION</b>		
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.2, 422.3	
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.5, 407.6	
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.6	
Laboratory suites . . . . .	428.3	
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.4, 405.5.2	
<b>COMPRESSED GAS</b> . . . . .	307.2, 415.11.8	
<b>CONCEALED SPACES</b> . . . . .	413.2, 718	
<b>CONCRETE</b> . . . . .	Chapter 19, Chapter 19A	
ACI . . . . .	1901.2, 1903.1, 1905	
Anchorage . . . . .	1901.3	
Calculated fire resistance . . . . .	722.2	
Cellular . . . . .	202, 721.2	
Construction documents . . . . .	1901.5	

**INDEX**

Durability . . . . .	1904
Footings . . . . .	1809
Foundation walls . . . . .	1807.1.5, 1808.8
Materials . . . . .	1705.3.2, 1903
Plain, structural . . . . .	1906
Reinforced gypsum concrete . . . . .	2514
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
Roof tile . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Shotcrete . . . . .	1908
Slab, minimum . . . . .	1907
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.3, Table 1705.3
Specifications . . . . .	1903
Strength testing . . . . .	1705.3.2
Wood support . . . . .	2304.13
<b>CONCRETE MASONRY</b>	
Calculated fire resistance . . . . .	722.3
Construction . . . . .	2104
Design . . . . .	2101.2, 2108, 2109
Materials . . . . .	2103.1
Surface bonding . . . . .	2103.2.2, 2109.2
Wood support . . . . .	2304.13
<b>CONCRETE ROOF TILE</b> . . . . .	
Wind resistance . . . . .	1504.3, 1609.5.3
<b>CONDOMINIUM (see APARTMENT HOUSES)</b>	
<b>CONDUIT,</b> <b>PENETRATION PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	
713.3, 1023.5	
<b>CONFLICTS IN CODE</b> . . . . .	
102, 104.10.1	
<b>CONGREGATE</b>	
<b>LIVING FACILITIES</b> . . . . .	202, 310.2, 310.3, 310.4
<b>CONSTRUCTION (see SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION)</b>	
<b>CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS</b> . . . . .	
107, 202, 1603	
1616.1	
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.1.1
Balconies . . . . .	107.2.5
Concrete construction . . . . .	1901.5
Design load-bearing capacity . . . . .	1803.6
Exterior walls . . . . .	107.2.4
Fire protection . . . . .	107.2.2
Fire-resistant joint systems . . . . .	715
Flood . . . . .	107.2.6.1, 1603.1.7
Floor live load . . . . .	1603.1.1
Geotechnical . . . . .	1603.1.6
Means of egress . . . . .	107.2.3
Penetrations . . . . .	714
Permit application . . . . .	105.1
Relocation . . . . .	107.2.8
Retention . . . . .	107.5
Review . . . . .	107.3
Roof assemblies . . . . .	1503
Roof live load . . . . .	1603.1.2

Roof rain load data . . . . .	1603.1.9
Roof snow load . . . . .	1603.1.3
Seismic . . . . .	1603.1.5, 1705.14.2, 1705.14.3
Site plan . . . . .	107.2.6
Special loads . . . . .	1603.1.8
Temporary structures . . . . .	3103.2
Wind data . . . . .	1603.1.4

**CONSTRUCTION JOINTS**

Shotcrete . . . . .	1908
<b>CONSTRUCTION TYPES</b> . . . . .	
Aircraft-related occupancies . . . . .	Chapter 6, 202
Classification . . . . .	412.2.1, Table 412.3.6, 412.5.2

Combustible material in	
Type I and Type II construction . . . . .	603, 805
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.4.1
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.3
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601, Table 705.5
High-rise . . . . .	403.2
Type I . . . . .	Table 601, 602.2, 603
Type II . . . . .	Table 601, 602.2, 603
Type III . . . . .	Table 601, 602.3
Type IV . . . . .	Table 601, 602.4
Type V . . . . .	Table 601, 602.5
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.2

<b>CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES</b> . . . . .	
901.5, 1704.4	

<b>CONTROL AREA</b> . . . . .	
414.2, 707.3.8	
Construction . . . . .	414.2.1
Fire-resistance rating . . . . .	414.2.4
Maximum allowed quantities . . . . .	414.2.2
Number . . . . .	414.2.3

<b>CONVENTIONAL LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION</b> . . . . .	
202, 2302.1, 2308	
Additional seismic requirements . . . . .	2308
Braced wall lines . . . . .	2308.6
Connections and fasteners . . . . .	2308.1.2
Design of elements . . . . .	2308.8
Floor joists . . . . .	2308.4.2
Foundation plates or sills . . . . .	2308.3
Girders . . . . .	2308.4.1
Limitations . . . . .	2308.2
Roof and ceiling framing . . . . .	2308.7
Wall framing . . . . .	2308.5

<b>CONVEYING SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	
3004	

**CORNICES**

Definition . . . . .	202
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.2.6
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Masonry . . . . .	2104.1.2
Projection . . . . .	705.2, 705.2.3.1

Public right-of-way encroachments .....	3202.3.2, 3202.3.3
<b>CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS [OSHPD 4]</b> .....	
Application .....	1227.2
Ceiling heights .....	1227.8
Corridors .....	1227.5
Definitions .....	1227.3
Doors and door openings .....	1227.6
Elevators .....	1227.10
Garbage-soiled waste and trash storage .....	1227.11
General construction .....	1227.4
Interior finishes .....	1227.9
Scope .....	1227.1
Windows and screens .....	1227.7
Interior finishes .....	1227.9
<b>CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS—BASIC SERVICES</b> .....	
Administration space .....	1227.16
Central sterile supply .....	1227.17
Dietetic service space .....	1227.14
Employee dressing rooms and lockers .....	1227.19
Housekeeping room .....	1227.20
Nursing service space .....	1227.12
Offices .....	1227.15
Pharmaceutical service space .....	1227.13
Storage .....	1227.18
<b>CORRECTIONAL TREATMENT CENTERS—OPTIONAL SERVICES</b> .....	
24-hour mental health care services .....	1227.23
Outpatient services .....	1227.22
Service spaces .....	1227.21
<b>CORRIDOR (see CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS, FIRE PARTITIONS and SERVICE CORRIDORS)</b> .....	
Air movement .....	1020.5
Continuity .....	1020.6
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402.8.1, 402.8.6
Dead end .....	1020.4
Elevation change .....	1003.5
Encroachment .....	1020.3
Group H-5 .....	415.11.2
Group I-1 .....	420.7, 420.8
Group I-2 .....	407.2, 407.3, 407.4.1, 407.4.3
Headroom .....	1003.2, 1003.3
HPM service .....	903.2.5.2
Live load .....	Table 1607.1
Walls .....	708.1, 1020.1
Width/capacity .....	1003.3.3, 1003.6, 1005.3.2, 1005.7, 1020.3, 1020.4
<b>CORRIDOR PROTECTION, EXIT ACCESS</b> .....	
Construction, fire protection .....	708.1, Table 1020.2, 1020.7
Doors .....	716.2.2.1
Elevator hoistway opening .....	3006.2.1
Glazing .....	716.2.5.3
Group I-1 .....	420.7, 420.8
Group I-2 .....	407.3
Interior finish .....	Table 803.13, 804.4
Opening protection .....	716
Ventilation .....	1020.6, 1020.6.1
<b>CORROSIVES</b> .....	
202, 307.2, 307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3, 415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1	
<b>COURTS (see YARDS OR COURTS)</b> .....	
<b>COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS</b> .....	
Alarms and detection .....	402.7.4, 907.2.21, 2702.2
Anchor buildings .....	402.4.1.2, 402.4.2.2, 402.4.2.3, 402.5, 402.8.2.3, 402.8.4.1
Construction type .....	402.4
Fire department .....	402.3, 402.7.5
Interior finish .....	402.6.1
Kiosk .....	402.6.2
Means of egress .....	402.8
Occupant load .....	402.8.2
Open mall construction .....	402.4.3
Open space .....	402.2
Parking structures .....	402.4.1.3, 402.4.2.3
Perimeter line .....	402.1.1
Play structures .....	402.6.3, 424
Separation .....	402.4.2
Signs .....	402.6.4
Smoke control .....	402.7.2
Sprinkler protection .....	402.5
Standby power .....	402.7.3
Standpipe system .....	402.7.1, 905.3.3
Travel distance .....	402.8.5, 1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1017.2, 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3, 2902.5
<b>COVERED WALKWAY (see PEDESTRIAN WALKWAY)</b> .....	
<b>CRAWL SPACE</b> .....	
Access .....	1209.1
Drainage .....	1805.1.2
Unusable space fire protection .....	711.2.6
Ventilation .....	1202.4
<b>CRIPPLE WALL</b> .....	
202, 2308.5.6, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8.3	

**INDEX**

<b>CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER</b> . . . . .	602.4, 602.4.4.2, 2303.1.4
Floors. . . . .	2304.11.3.1
Roofs . . . . .	2304.11.4.1
<b>CRYOGENIC</b> . . . . .	202, Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5, Table 414.5.1, Table 415.11.1.1.1
 <b>D</b>	
<b>DAMPROOFING AND WATERPROOFING</b> . . .	1805
Required . . . . .	1805.2, 1805.3
Subsoil drainage system . . . . .	1805.4
<b>DAY CARE</b> . . . . .	305.2, 308.5, 310.4.1
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Adult care. . . . .	308.5
Child care. . . . .	308.5, 310.4.1
Egress . . . . .	308.5, Table 1004.5, 1006.2.2.4
<b>DEAD END</b> . . . . .	415.11.3.3, 1020.5, 1021.1
<b>DEAD LOAD</b> . . . . .	202, 1606
Foundation design load . . . . .	1808.3
<b>DECK</b>	
Anchorage . . . . .	1604.8.3
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1
<b>DEFLECTIONS</b> . . . . .	1604.3.1
Framing supporting glass . . . . .	2403.3
Preconstruction load tests . . . . .	1709.3.1
Wood diaphragms . . . . .	2305
Wood shear walls . . . . .	2305
<b>DEMOLITION</b> . . . . .	3303
<b>DESIGN STRENGTH</b> . . . . .	202
Conformance to standards . . . . .	1706.1
New materials . . . . .	1706.2
<b>DESIGNATED SEISMIC SYSTEM</b> . . . . .	202, 1704.3.2, 1704.4, 1704.5
Seismic certification . . . . .	1705.14.3
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.13.4
<b>DETACHED SINGLE-FAMILY DWELLING</b> . . . . .	202
<b>DIAPHRAGMS</b> . . . . .	202
Analysis . . . . .	1604.4
Ceilings . . . . .	2508.6
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.5.1, 1705.12.1, 1705.13.2
Wood . . . . .	2305, 2306.2
<b>DOORS</b> . . . . .	1010
Atrium enclosures . . . . .	404.6
Configuration . . . . .	1007
Delayed egress . . . . .	1010.2.13
Dwelling unit separations . . . . .	406.3.2, 412.4.1
Education . . . . .	1010.2.8
Emergency escape . . . . .	1031.2
Fabrication (HPM) areas . . . . .	415.11.1.2

<b>Fire</b>	
(see OPENING PROTECTIVES) . . . . .	716.2, 1023.4
<b>Glazing</b> . . . . .	715.7, 716.2.5, 716.3, 1404.13
<b>Hardware</b> (see LOCKS AND LATCHES) . . . . .	1005.7.1, 1010.2, 1010.2.9
<b>Hazardous storage</b> . . . . .	415.11.6.7
<b>Horizontal sliding</b> . . . . .	1010.3.3
<b>I-1 occupancies</b> . . . . .	1010.2.14
<b>I-2 occupancies</b> . . . . .	407.3.1, 1010.2.14
<b>I-3 occupancies</b> . . . . .	408.3, 408.4, 408.8.4, 1010.2.15
<b>Landings</b> . . . . .	1010.1.4, 1010.1.5
<b>Locks for toilet facilities</b> . . . . .	2902.4
<b>Operation</b> . . . . .	1010.1.3, 1010.2, 1010.2.9
<b>Panic and fire exit hardware</b> . . . . .	1010.2.9, 1010.4.1
<b>Power-operated</b> . . . . .	1010.3.2
<b>Revolving</b> . . . . .	1010.3.1
<b>Security</b> . . . . .	402.8.8, 1010.2.10, 1010.3.4
<b>Sensor release</b> . . . . .	1010.2.12
<b>Side swinging</b> . . . . .	1010.1.2
<b>Smoke</b> . . . . .	710.5
<b>Stairways</b> . . . . .	1010.2.7
<b>Stairways, high-rise</b> . . . . .	403.5.3
<b>Structural testing, exterior</b> . . . . .	1709.5
<b>Thresholds</b> . . . . .	1003.5, 1010.1.4, 1010.1.6
<b>Vestibule</b> . . . . .	1010.1.7
<b>Width</b> . . . . .	1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1
<b>DORMITORIES</b> . . . . .	202, 310.3, 310.4, 420.11.1
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Cooking . . . . .	420.11, 904.14
Fire alarms and smoke alarms . . . . .	420.5
Separations . . . . .	420.2, 420.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	420.4
<b>DRAFTSTOPPING</b> . . . . .	202
Attics . . . . .	718.4
Floor-ceiling assemblies . . . . .	718.3
<b>DRINKING FOUNTAINS</b> . . . . .	1110.5, 2902.5, 2902.6
Accessibility . . . . .	1110.5.1, 1110.5.2, 1110.6, 1112.3
<b>DRY CLEANING PLANTS</b> . . . . .	415.9.3
<b>DRYING ROOMS</b> . . . . .	417
<b>DUMBWAITERS</b> . . . . .	713.14
<b>DWELLING UNITS</b> . . . . .	202, 310.3, 310.4
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Alarms and detection . . . . .	420.5, 907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.12
Area . . . . .	1208.3, 1208.4
Efficiency dwelling unit . . . . .	202, 1208.4
Group R . . . . .	310
Live/work units (see LIVE/WORK UNITS)	
Plumbing fixtures required . . . . .	Table 2902.1
Scoping . . . . .	101.2
Separation . . . . .	420.2, 420.3

Sound transmission . . . . .	1206	Conveying systems . . . . .	3004
Sprinkler protection. . . . .	420.4, 903.2.8	Emergency communication. . . . .	3001.2
<b>E</b>			
<b>EARTHQUAKE LOADS (see SEISMIC)</b> . . . . .	1613	Emergency operations . . . . .	3002.3, 3002.5, 3003, 3007.1, 3008.1.4
<b>EARTHQUAKE RECORDING EQUIPMENT</b> . . . . .	Appendix L	Fire service access . . . . .	403.6.1, 3007
<b>EAVES (see COMBUSTIBLE PROJECTIONS AND CORNICES)</b>		Glass. . . . .	2409, 3002.8
<b>EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E)</b> . . . . .	305	High-rise . . . . .	403.2.2, 403.4.8, 403.6
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	Hoistway enclosures. . . . .	403.2.2, 713, 1023.4, 1024.3, 3002, 3007.5, 3008.5
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.3	Hoistway lighting . . . . .	3007.5.2
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508	Hoistway pressurization . . . . .	909.21
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508	Hoistway rated corridor opening . . . . .	3006.2.1
Incidental uses . . . . .	509	Keys . . . . .	3003.3
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804	Lobby . . . . .	1009.4, 1009.8, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1	Machine rooms . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 3005
Locking . . . . .	1010.2.8	Means of egress . . . . .	403.6, 1003.7, 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3008
Means of egress . . . . .		Number of elevator cars in hoistway . . . . .	3002.2
Aisles . . . . .	1018.2, 1018.5	Occupant evacuation elevators . . . . .	403.6.2, 3008
Corridors . . . . .	1020.2, 1020.3	Personnel and material hoists . . . . .	3004.4
Panic hardware . . . . .	1010.2.9	Pit access door . . . . .	3002.11
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	Roof access . . . . .	1011.12.2
Travel distance . . . . .	1017.2, 1006.3.3, 1006.2.1	Shaft enclosure . . . . .	712, 3006
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4	Signs . . . . .	914, 1009.10, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
Accessory . . . . .	303.1.3, 508.2	Stairway to elevator equipment . . . . .	1011.12.1
Assembly . . . . .	303.1.3	Standards . . . . .	3001.3
Child care . . . . .	305.2, 308.4, 310.4.1	Standby power . . . . .	2702.2, 3007.8, 3008.8
Education for students . . . . .		System monitoring . . . . .	3007.7, 3008.7
above the 12th grade . . . . .	304, 307.1, 427	Underground . . . . .	405.4.3
Gyms (see GYMNASIUMS) . . . . .	303.1.3	<b>EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS</b>	
Libraries (see LIBRARIES) . . . . .	303.4	Accessible means of egress . . . . .	1009.8
Religious facilities . . . . .	305.2	Alarms (see FIRE ALARMS) . . . . .	
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410	Elevator . . . . .	3001.2
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902	Elevators, occupant evacuation . . . . .	3008.6.6
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5	Fire command center . . . . .	403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
Sprinkler protection. . . . .	903.2.3	Radio coverage . . . . .	403.4.5, 916
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.11	<b>EMERGENCY ESCAPE AND RESCUE OPENINGS</b> . . . . .	
<b>EFFICIENCY DWELLING UNIT</b> . . . . .	1208.4	202, 1031	
<b>EGRESS (see MEANS OF EGRESS)</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 10</i>	Required . . . . .	Table 1006.3.4(1), Table 1006.3.4(2), 1031.2
<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING</b> . . . . .	420.14	Window wells . . . . .	1031.5, 1031.6
<b>ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING STATION</b> . . . . .	202, 406.2.7, 1107	<b>EMERGENCY HOUSING</b> . . . . .	
<b>ELECTRICAL</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 27</i> , 105.2, 112,	Appendix P	
Table 509.1, Appendix K			
<b>ELEVATOR</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 30</i>	<b>EMERGENCY LIGHTING</b> . . . . .	
Accessibility . . . . .	1009.2.1, 1009.4,	1008.3, 1204.5	
1009.8, <i>Chapter 11A</i> , 11B, 3001.4		<b>EMERGENCY POWER</b> . . . . .	
Car size . . . . .	403.6.1, 3001.4, 3002.4	2702	
Construction . . . . .	713.14, 1607.11.1	Exit signs . . . . .	1013.6.3, 2702.2

**INDEX**

Semiconductor fabrication . . . . .	415.11.11, 2702.2
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.8, 2702.2
<b>EMERGENCY RESPONDERS</b>	
Additional exit stairway . . . . .	403.5.2
Elevators . . . . .	403.6, 1009.2.1, 3002.4, 3003, 3007, 3008
Fire command center. . . . .	403.4.6, 911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
Mall access . . . . .	402.7.5
Radio coverage . . . . .	403.4.5, 918
Roof access. . . . .	1011.12
Safety features. . . . .	914
<b>EMPIRICAL DESIGN OF MASONRY</b>	
Adobe construction . . . . .	2109
Dry-stack masonry. . . . .	2114
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.4
<b>EMPLOYEE</b>	
Accessibility for work areas . . . . .	907.5.2.3.1, <i>Chapter 11B</i>
Deputies to building official . . . . .	103.3
Liability. . . . .	104.8
Qualifications . . . . .	A101
Termination of employment. . . . .	A101.4
Toilet facilities . . . . .	2902.3
<b>ENCROACHMENTS INTO THE PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 32</i>
<b>END-JOINTED LUMBER</b> . . . . .	2303.1.1.2
Relocated structures . . . . .	101.4.7, D103.3
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
<b>ENERGY EFFICIENCY</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 13</i> , 101.4.6, 110.3.9
<b>ENFORCING AGENCY</b> . . . . .	202
<i>Housing and Community Development</i> . . . . .	1.8
<b>ENGINEER (see definition for REGISTERED DESIGN PROFESSIONAL)</b>	
<b>EQUIPMENT</b>	
<i>Countertop Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Essential Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Fixed Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Interim Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Mobile Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Movable Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Other Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<i>Temporary Equipment</i> . . . . .	202
<b>EQUIPMENT PLATFORM</b> . . . . .	505.3
Area limitation . . . . .	505.2.1, 505.2.1.1, 505.3.1
Automatic sprinkler system . . . . .	505.3.2
<b>EQUIVALENT OPENING FACTOR</b> . . . . .	Figure 705.7
<b>ESCALATORS</b> . . . . .	3004
Floor opening protection . . . . .	712.1.3
Means of egress . . . . .	1003.7

<b>ESSENTIAL FACILITIES</b>	
(see RISK CATEGORY) . . . . .	202, Table 1604.5
<b>EXCAVATION, GRADING AND FILL</b> . . . . .	1804, 3304
<b>EXISTING BUILDING</b> . . . . .	101.4.7, 102.6, 202, 705.3, 912.2.2, 915.1
Additions . . . . .	D103.1
Alteration . . . . .	D103.1
Change of occupancy . . . . .	D103.2
Flood-resistant . . . . .	104.2.1, Appendix G
Historic. . . . .	101.4.7
Relocated structures . . . . .	D103.3
Repairs. . . . .	101.4.7, 116.5
Rodentproofing. . . . .	Appendix F
<b>EXIT (see MEANS OF EGRESS)</b> . . . . .	1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1027
Atrium. . . . .	404.10, 1023.2
Boiler room. . . . .	1006.2.1.1
Configuration . . . . .	1007
Construction. . . . .	713.2, 1019, 1023.2
Doorways. . . . .	1007
Dwellings . . . . .	1006.2.2.6, 1006.3.4.1
Electrical rooms. . . . .	1006.2.2.4
Enclosure. . . . .	707.3.2, 1023.2
Fire resistance . . . . .	707.3, 1019, 1023.2
Furnace rooms. . . . .	1006.2.2.1
Group H-5 . . . . .	415.11.6.6
High rise. . . . .	403.5, 403.6, 1025
Horizontal. . . . .	707.3.5, 1026
Incinerator rooms. . . . .	1006.2.2.1
Interior finish. . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Luminous . . . . .	403.5.5, 411.6.1, 1008.2.1, 1013.5, 1025
Mall buildings. . . . .	402.8
Number, minimum . . . . .	402.8.3, 403.5, 1006
Occupant load . . . . .	402.8.2, 1004.2, 1006.3.2
Passageway. . . . .	707.3.4, 1024
Ramps, exterior . . . . .	1027
Ramps, interior. . . . .	1023
Refrigerated room . . . . .	1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3
Refuge area . . . . .	407.5.3, 408.6.2, 420.6.1, 422.3.2
Stairways, exterior . . . . .	1027
Stairways, interior. . . . .	1023
Stories . . . . .	1004.2.3, 1006.3, 1017.3.1
Travel distance. . . . .	404.9, 407.5.2, 410.5.3.2, 412.6
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.7
<b>EXIT ACCESS</b>	
(see MEANS OF EGRESS) . . . . .	1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021
Aircraft related . . . . .	412.2.2, 412.4.2, 412.7.3
Aisles . . . . .	1018

Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.3	Where required . . . . .	1009.2
Atrium . . . . .	404.9, 404.10, 404.11,		
	1006.3.2, 1017.3.2, 1019.3		
Balconies . . . . .	1017.2.1, 1021		
Common path . . . . .	1006.2.1		
Corridors . . . . .	1020		
Doors . . . . .	1005.7, 1006.2, 1007, 1010, 1022.2		
Group H . . . . .	415.11.3.3		
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.4, 407.5.4		
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.2, 408.3, 408.6.3		
High rise . . . . .	403.5		
Higher education laboratories . . . . .	428.3.5		
Intervening space . . . . .	1016.2		
Malls . . . . .	402.8		
Motor-vehicle-related occupancies . . . . .	406.5.7		
Path of egress travel, common . . . . .	1006.2.1		
Play structures . . . . .	424.4		
Ramps . . . . .	1019		
Seating at tables . . . . .	1030.13.1		
Single exit . . . . .	1006.2, 1006.3.3		
Stages, Platforms and			
Technical Production Areas . . . . .	410.5		
Stairways, exit access . . . . .	1019		
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.7		
<b>EXIT DISCHARGE</b>			
( <b>see MEANS OF EGRESS</b> ) . . . . .	1023.3, 1023.12.1,		
	1024.4, 1028, 1029		
Atrium . . . . .	404.11		
Barriers . . . . .	1023.8		
Courts . . . . .	1029		
Exit passageway . . . . .	1024.4		
Horizontal exit . . . . .	1028.2		
Lobbies . . . . .	1028.2		
Marquees . . . . .	3106.4		
Public way . . . . .	1028.5		
Termination . . . . .	1023.3		
Vestibules . . . . .	1028.2		
<b>EXIT SIGNS</b> . . . . .	1013		
Accessibility . . . . .	1013.4		
Floor level exit signs . . . . .	1013.2		
Group R-1 . . . . .	1013.2		
Illumination . . . . .	1013.3, 1013.5, 1013.6		
Required . . . . .	1013.1		
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.6		
<b>EXPLOSIVES</b> . . . . .	202, Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.5		
Detached building . . . . .	415.6.5, 415.8		
Explosion control . . . . .	414.5.1		
<b>EXPOSURE CATEGORY</b> ( <b>see WIND LOAD</b> ) . . . . .	1609.4		
<b>EXTERIOR AREAS FOR ASSISTED RESCUE</b>			
Requirements . . . . .	1009.7		
Signage . . . . .	1009.9, 1009.10, 1009.11		
<b>EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEMS (EIFS)</b> . . . . .	1407		
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.17		
<b>EXTERIOR WALL</b>			
( <b>see WALLS, EXTERIOR</b> ) . . . . .	107.2.4, 202		
	Table 601, 602, 705,		
	Chapter 7A, Chapter 14		
<b>F</b>			
<b>FACTORY OCCUPANCY (GROUP F)</b> . . . . .	306		
Alarm and detection . . . . .	907.2.4		
Area . . . . .	503, 503.1.1, 505, 506, 507, 508		
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3		
Groups			
Low-hazard occupancy . . . . .	306.3		
Moderate-hazard occupancy . . . . .	306.2		
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508		
Incidental uses . . . . .	509		
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804		
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1		
Means of Egress			
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5		
Dead end corridor . . . . .	1020.5		
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019		
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.2, 1006.3, 1017.2,		
	1017.2.2, 1006.2.1		
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.2, 508.3, 508.4		
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902		
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5		
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.4		
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.3, 507.4, 507.5		
<b>FARM BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	Table 1604.3, Appendix C		
<b>FEES, PERMIT</b> . . . . .	109		
Refunds . . . . .	109.6		
Related fees . . . . .	109.5		
Work commencing before issuance . . . . .	109.4		
<b>FENCES</b> . . . . .	105.2, 312.1		
<b>FIBERBOARD</b> . . . . .	202, 2303.1.6		
Shear wall . . . . .	Table 2306.3(2)		
<b>FILL MATERIAL</b> . . . . .	1804, 3304		
<b>FINGER-JOINTED LUMBER</b>			
( <b>see END-JOINTED LUMBER</b> )			
<b>FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS</b>			
Aerosol storage . . . . .	907.2.17		
Aircraft hangars, residential . . . . .	412.4.3, 907.2.22		
Airport traffic control towers . . . . .	412.2.3.1, 907.2.23		
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.5, 907.2.2.1		
Assembly . . . . .	907.2.1		
Atriums . . . . .	404.4, 907.2.15		
Audible alarm . . . . .	907.5.2.1		

**INDEX**

- Battery room . . . . . 907.2.23  
 Construction documents . . . . . 907.1.1  
 Covered and open mall buildings . . . . . 402.7, 907.2.21  
 Education . . . . . 907.2.3  
 Emergency alarm system . . . . . 908  
 Factory . . . . . 907.2.4  
 Group H . . . . . 907.2.5  
 Group I . . . . . 907.2.6, 907.5.2.3.2  
 Group M . . . . . 907.2.7  
 Group R . . . . . 420.5, 907.2.8, 907.2.9,  
     907.2.11, 907.2.12,  
     907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3  
 High-rise . . . . . 403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.14  
 Live/work . . . . . 508.5.7  
 Lumber mills . . . . . 907.2.18  
 Occupancy requirements . . . . . 907.2  
 Play structure . . . . . 424.3  
 Special amusement areas . . . . . 411.3,  
     411.4, 907.2.11  
 Special amusement buildings . . . . . 411.2, 411.4,  
     907.2.13  
 Underground buildings . . . . . 405.6, 907.2.19, 907.2.20  
 Visible alarm . . . . . 907.5.2.3, 1009.12
- FIRE ALARM BOX, MANUAL** . . . . . 907.4.2  
**FIRE AREA** . . . . . 202, 901.7  
 Ambulatory care facilities . . . . . 903.2.2, 907.2.2  
 Assembly . . . . . 903.2.1  
 Education . . . . . 903.2.3  
 Enclosed parking garages . . . . . 903.2.10  
 Factory . . . . . 903.2.4  
 Institutional . . . . . 903.2.6  
 Mercantile . . . . . 903.2.7  
 Residential . . . . . 903.2.8  
 Storage . . . . . 903.2.9, 903.2.10
- FIRE BARRIERS** . . . . . 202, 707  
 Continuity . . . . . 707.5, 713.5  
 Exterior walls . . . . . Table 705.5, 707.4, 713.6  
 Fire-resistance rating of walls . . . . . 603.1, 703,  
     707.3, 713.4  
 Glazing, rated . . . . . 716.3.4  
 Incidental . . . . . 509.4.1  
 Inspection . . . . . 110.3.8  
 Joints . . . . . 707.8, 713.9, 715, 2508.5  
 Marking . . . . . 703.5  
 Materials . . . . . 707.2, 713.3  
 Opening protection . . . . . 707.6, 707.10, 713.7,  
     713.10, 714.4, 716, 717.5.2  
 Penetrations . . . . . 707.7, 713.8  
 Shaft enclosure . . . . . 713.1  
 Special provisions  
     Aircraft hangars . . . . . 412.3.4, 412.4.1  
     Atriums . . . . . 404.3, 404.6  
     Covered and open mall buildings . . . . . 402.4.2  
     Fire pumps . . . . . 403.3.4, 913.2.1  
     Flammable finishes . . . . . 416.2  
     Group H-2 . . . . . 415.9.1.2, 426.1.2  
     Group H-3 and H-4 . . . . . 415.10  
     Group H-5 . . . . . 415.11.1.2, 415.11.1.5,  
         415.11.6.1, 415.11.7.4  
     Group I-3 . . . . . 408.5, 408.7  
     Hazardous materials . . . . . 414.2.1  
     Higher education laboratories . . . . . 428.3  
     High-rise . . . . . 403.2.1.2, 403.2.2, 403.3, 403.4.8.1  
     Organic coating . . . . . 418.4, 418.5, 418.6  
     Stages and platforms . . . . . 410.5.1, 410.5.2
- FIRE COMMAND CENTER** . . . . . 403.4.6, 412.2.3.2,  
     911, 3007.7, 3008.6.6, 3008.7
- FIRE DAMPERS** . . . . . 202, 717.2, 717.3, 717.4, 717.5
- FIRE DEPARTMENT**  
 (see **EMERGENCY RESPONDERS**)
- FIRE DETECTION SYSTEM** (see **FIRE ALARM AND SMOKE DETECTION SYSTEMS**)
- FIRE DISTRICT** . . . . . Appendix D
- FIRE DOOR**  
 (see **OPENING PROTECTIVES**) . . . . . 716, 1023.4
- FIRE ESCAPE** . . . . . 412.7.3
- FIRE EXTINGUISHERS, PORTABLE** . . . . . 906, 3309
- FIRE EXTINGUISHING SYSTEMS** . . . . . 416.5, 417.4,  
     903, 904
- FIRE PARTITION** . . . . . 202, 708  
 Continuity . . . . . 708.4  
 Elevator lobby . . . . . 3006.3  
 Exterior walls . . . . . Table 705.5, 708.5  
 Fireblocks and draftstops . . . . . 708.4.2  
 Fire-resistance rating . . . . . 603.1, 703, 708.3  
 Glazing, rated . . . . . 716.3.4  
 Inspection . . . . . 110.3.8  
 Joint treatment gypsum . . . . . 2508.5  
 Joints . . . . . 708.8, 715  
 Marking . . . . . 703.5  
 Materials . . . . . 708.2  
 Opening protection . . . . . 708.5, 714.4, 716, 717.5.4  
 Penetrations . . . . . 708.7, 708.9, 714, 717  
 Special provisions  
     Covered and open mall buildings . . . . . 402.4.2.1  
     Group I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3, R-4 . . . . . 420.2  
     Group I-3 . . . . . 408.7  
     Supporting construction . . . . . 708.4.1
- FIRE PREVENTION** . . . . . 101.4.5
- FIRE PROTECTION**  
 Explosion control . . . . . 414.5.1, 415.6, 421.6, 426.1.4  
 Fire extinguishers, portable . . . . . 906

**INDEX**

Glazing, rated.....	716.1.2.3
Smoke and heat removal .....	910
Smoke control systems .....	909
Sprinkler systems, automatic .....	903
<b>FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEMS</b> .. Chapter 9, 107.2.2	
<b>FIRE PROTECTIVE CURTAIN ASSEMBLY</b> .....	202, 716.4
<b>FIRE PUMPS</b> .....	403.3.2, 902.1, 913, 914.2
<b>FIRE RESISTANCE</b>	
Calculated.....	722
Conditions of restraint.....	703.2.1.3
Ducts and air transfer openings .....	717
Exterior walls .....	705.5, Table 705.5, 708.5
Fire district .....	D102.2.5
High-rise .....	403.2
Joint systems .....	715
Multiple use fire assemblies .....	702.1
Prescriptive.....	721
Ratings .....	Chapter 6, 703, 705.5, 707.3.10
Roof assemblies.....	1505
Structural members .....	704
Tests.....	703
Thermal and sound insulating materials.....	720.1
<b>FIRE RESISTANCE, CALCULATED</b> .....	722
Clay brick and tile masonry .....	722.4
Concrete assemblies .....	722.2
Concrete masonry .....	722.3
Steel assemblies .....	722.5
Wood assemblies .....	722.6
<b>FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE</b> .. 202, Table 705.5	
Exterior walls .....	1405.1.1.1.1, 1405.1.1.1.2
Ground-mounted photovoltaic systems .....	3111.3.5
<b>FIRE SERVICE</b>	
<b>ACCESS ELEVATORS</b> .....	403.6.1, 3007
<b>FIRE WALLS</b> .....	202, 706
Aircraft hangar .....	412.3.6.2
Combustible framing.....	706.7
Continuity .....	706.5, 706.6
Exterior walls .....	Table 705.5, 706.5.1
Fire-resistance rating .....	703, 706.4
Glazing, rated.....	716.3.4
Inspection .....	110.3.8
Joints .....	706.10, 715
Materials.....	706.3
Opening protection .....	706.8, 706.11, 714.4, 716, 717.5.1
Penetration .....	706.9, 714.4
Special provisions	
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402.4.2.2
Group H-5 .....	415.11.1.6
Structural stability .....	706.2
<b>FIRE WINDOWS (see OPENING PROTECTIVES)</b>	
<b>FIREBLOCKING</b> .....	718.2
Chimneys .....	718.2.5.1, 2113.20
Fireplaces .....	2111.13
Wood construction .....	718.2.1, 718.2.7, 1405.1.3
Wood stairways.....	718.2.4
<b>FIREPLACES, FACTORY-BUILT</b> .....	2111.14.1
<b>FIREPLACES, MASONRY</b> .....	202
Clearance to combustibles .....	2111.12
Drawings.....	2111.2
General provisions .....	2111
Hearth extension.....	2111.10, 2111.11
Steel units .....	2111.6.1
<b>FIRE-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION</b> .....	701.1
<b>FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED WOOD</b> .. 202, 2303.2	
Awnings .....	3105.2
Balconies .....	705.2.3.1
Canopies.....	3105.3
Concealed spaces .....	718.5
Fastening .....	2304.10.6
Fire wall vertical continuity .....	706.6
Partitions .....	603.1
Platforms .....	410.3
Projections .....	705.2.3
Roof construction .....	Table 601, 705.11, 706.6, 1505
Shakes and shingles.....	1505.6
Type I and II construction .....	603.1
Type III construction .....	602.3
Type IV construction .....	602.4
Veneer .....	1404.5
<b>FIREWORKS</b> .....	202, 307.2, 307.3, 307.5
<b>FLAMESPREAD</b> .....	202, 803.1.2, Table 803.13
<b>FLAMMABLE FINISHES</b> .....	307.1, 416
<b>FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS</b> .....	307.4, 307.5, 406.8.2, 412, 414, 415
<b>FLAMMABLE SOLIDS</b> .....	307.5, 415
<b>FLASHING</b>	
Roof .....	1503.2, 1507.2.8, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9, 1512.5
Wall, veneer .....	1404.4, 1404.12.7, 1404.10.1.2
<b>FLOOD HAZARD AREAS</b> .....	202, 1612.3, 3114, Appendix G
Coastal A zone .....	202, 1402.7, 1603.1.7, 1612.2, 1612.4
Coastal high hazard area .....	202, 1402.7, 1603.1.7, 1612.2, 1612.4
Flood insurance rate map .....	202, 1603.1.7, 1612.3
<b>FLOOD-RESISTANT CONSTRUCTION</b> .. Appendix G	
Administration .....	107.2.6.1, G101, G106
Elevation certification .....	110.3.3

**INDEX**

Existing . . . . .	101.4.7
Flood elevation . . . . .	107.2.6.1, 1612
Flood loads . . . . .	1603.1, 1603.1.7, 1612, 3001.2
Flood resistance . . . . .	1402.6, 1402.7
Grading and fill. . . . .	1804.5, 1805.1.2.1
Historic buildings . . . . .	G106.3
Interior finishes . . . . .	802.4
Manufactured homes . . . . .	G109
Modifications . . . . .	104.10.1
Public restrooms . . . . .	3114
Recreation vehicles . . . . .	G110
Site improvements . . . . .	G108
Site plan . . . . .	107.2.6
Subdivisions . . . . .	G107
Tank . . . . .	G111
Temporary . . . . .	G113
Utility . . . . .	G114
<b>FLOOR CONSTRUCTION</b>	
(see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)	
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.3
Finishes . . . . .	804, 805, 1003.4, 1209.1
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601, 711
Loads (see FLOOR LOADS)	
Materials . . . . .	Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	711, 714.5, 717.2, 717.6
<b>FLOOR CONSTRUCTION, WOOD</b>	
Beams and girders . . . . .	2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1
Bridging/blocking . . . . .	2308.4.6, 2308.7.8
Diaphragms . . . . .	2305.1
Fastening schedule . . . . .	2304.10.2
Framing . . . . .	2304.4, 2304.11.1.2, 2304.11.3, Table 2304.11, 2308.4
Joists . . . . .	2308.4.2
Sheathing . . . . .	2304.8
<b>FLOOR LEVEL</b> . . . . .	
1003.5, 1010.1.4	
<b>FLOOR LOADS</b>	
Construction documents . . . . .	107.2
Live . . . . .	1603.1.1, 1607
Posting . . . . .	106.1
<b>FLOOR OPENING PROTECTION</b>	
(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)	
<b>FLOOR/CEILING</b>	
(see FLOOR CONSTRUCTION)	
<b>FOAM PLASTICS</b>	
Attics . . . . .	720.1, 2603.4.1.6
Cladding attachment . . . . .	2603.11, 2603.12, 2603.13
Cold storage . . . . .	2603.3, 2603.4.1.2, 2603.5
Concealed . . . . .	603
Covered mall and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.6.2, 402.6.4.5

Crawl space . . . . .	2603.4.1.6
Doors . . . . .	2603.4.1.7, 2603.4.1.9
Exterior wall covering . . . . .	Chapter 14, 806.5
Exterior walls of multistory buildings . . . . .	1403.13, 2603.5
Interior finish . . . . .	2603.9, 2604
Label/identification . . . . .	2603.2
Metal composite materials (MCM) . . . . .	1406.12
Plenums . . . . .	2603.7, 2604.1.1
Roofing . . . . .	2603.4.1.5
Siding backer board . . . . .	2603.4.1.10
Stages and platform scenery . . . . .	410.2.6
Surface burning characteristics . . . . .	2603.3
Termites, protection from . . . . .	2603.8
Thermal barrier requirements . . . . .	2603.5.2
Trim . . . . .	806.5, 2604.2
Type I and II construction . . . . .	603.1
Walk-in coolers . . . . .	2603.4.1.3
Wind resistance . . . . .	2603.10
<b>FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING</b>	
(see BLEACHERS) . . . . .	202, 1030.1.1
<b>FOOD COURT</b> . . . . .	
Occupant load . . . . .	402.8.2.4
Separation . . . . .	402.4.2
<b>FOUNDATION</b> (see FOUNDATION, DEEP and FOUNDATION, SHALLOW) . . . . .	
Basement . . . . .	1610, 1805.1.1, 1806.3, 1807
Concrete . . . . .	1808.8, 1809.8, 1810.3.2.1
Dampproofing . . . . .	1805.2
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.1
Formwork . . . . .	3304.1
Geotechnical investigation (see SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS) . . . . .	1803
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.1
Load-bearing value . . . . .	1806, 1808, 1810
Masonry . . . . .	1808.9
Pedestrian protection . . . . .	3306.9
Pier (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)	
Pile (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)	
Plates or sills . . . . .	2308.3.1
Protection from adjacent construction . . . . .	3303.5, 3307.1
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.3, 1705.4.2, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Steel . . . . .	1809.11, 1810.3.2.2, 1810.3.5.3
Timber . . . . .	1809.12, 1810.3.2.4
Waterproofing . . . . .	1805.3

<b>FOUNDATION, DEEP</b>	202, 1810	
Drilled shaft	202	
Existing	1810.1.2	
Geotechnical investigation	1803.5.5	
Grade beams	1810.3.12	
Helical pile	202, 1810.3.1.5, Table 1810.3.2.6, 1810.3.3.1.9, 1810.3.5.3, 1810.4.11, 1810.4.12	
Micropile	202, Table 1808.8.1, Table 1810.3.2.6, 1810.3.5.2.3, 1810.3.10, 1810.4.10	
Piles	Table 1808.8.1, 1810	
<b>FOUNDATION, SHALLOW</b>	202, 1809	
Pier and curtain wall	1809.10	
Slab-on-ground	1808.6.2	
Strip footing	1808.8, 1809	
<b>FOYERS</b>		
Assembly occupancy	1030.4, 1030.9.5	
Corridors	1020.7	
Covered and open mall building	402.1	
<b>FRAME INSPECTION</b>	110.3.4	
<b>FRATERNITIES</b>	310.4	
<b>FROST PROTECTION</b>	1809.5	
<b>FURNACE ROOMS</b>	1006.2.2.1	
 <b>G</b>		
<b>GALLERIES (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</b>		
<b>GAMING</b>	202, 303.3, Table 1004.5, 1110.16, Table 2902.1, E105.3	
<b>GARAGE, AUTOMOBILE PARKING (see PARKING GARAGES)</b>		
<b>GARAGE, REPAIR</b>	406.8	
Floor surface	406.2.4	
Gas detection system	406.8.2, 916	
Sprinkler protection	406.8.3, 903.2.9.1	
Ventilation	406.8.1	
<b>GARAGES, TRUCK AND BUS</b>		
Live load	1607.8	
Sprinkler protection	903.2.10.1	
<b>GARAGES AND CARPORTS, PRIVATE</b>		
Area limitations	406.3.1	
Classification	406.3.1	
Door openers	406.2.1	
Door springs	1211	
Parking surfaces	406.2.4	
Separation	406.2.5, 406.3.2	
<b>GAS</b>	101.4.1, 105.2, 112	
Gas detection system	406.8.2, 415.11.8, 421.5, 916	
Hydrogen cutoff room	421.6	
Motor fuel-dispensing	406.7	
<b>GATES</b>	1010.4	
Vehicular	406.2.1, 3110	
<b>GIFT SHOPS</b>	407.2.4	
<b>GIRDERS</b>		
Fire resistance	Table 601	
Materials	Chapter 6	
Wood construction	2304.12.1.1, 2308.4.1	
<b>GLASS (see GLAZING)</b>		
<b>GLASS BLOCK (see GLASS UNIT MASONRY)</b>		
<b>GLASS UNIT MASONRY</b>	202, 2110	
Atrium enclosure	404.6	
Fire resistance	2110.1.1	
Hazardous locations	2406.1.3	
<b>GLAZING</b>		
Athletic facilities	2408	
Atrium enclosure	404.6	
Doors	705.8, 709.5, 710.5, 716.2.5.3, 1404.13, 1709.1	
Elevator hoistway and car	2409.2, 2409.3, 2409.4	
Fire doors	716.2.2.3.1, 716.2.5	
Fire windows	703.3, 716.2.1	
Group I-3	408.7	
Guards	1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407	
Handrail	1011.11, 2407	
Identification	2403.1, 2406.3	
Impact loads	2406.1, 2408.2.1, 2408.3	
Impact resistant	1609.2	
Jalousies	2403.5	
Label/identification	716.1.2.2.1, 716.1.2.2.2, 716.2.9.1, 716.2.9.5, 716.3.5.2	
Loads	2404	
Louvered windows	2403.5	
Opening protection	716.1.2.3	
Replacement	2402	
Safety	716.1.2.1, 2406	
Security	408.7	
Skylights	2405	
Sloped	2404.2, 2405	
Supports	2403.2	
Swimming pools	2406.4.5	
Testing	1709.5, 2406.1.1, 2408.2.1	
Veneer	1404.12	
Vertical	2404.1	
Walkways	2409.1	
<b>GRADE (ADJACENT GROUND ELEVATION)</b>	202	
<b>GRADING</b>	Appendix J	
<b>GRAIN ELEVATORS</b>	426.1.5	
<b>GRANDSTANDS (see BLEACHERS)</b>	202, 1030.1.1	
<b>GREENHOUSES</b>	303.4, 309.1, 312.1.1, 3112	
Accessibility	3112.2	

**INDEX**

Area . . . . .	503, 506, Table 506.2, 508
Definition . . . . .	202
Deflections . . . . .	Table 1604.3
Glazing, glass and lighting . . . . .	2405, 3112.4
Live load . . . . .	1607.14.2.1
Membrane structure . . . . .	3102, 3112.6
Plastic . . . . .	2606.11, 3112.5
Wind load . . . . .	1609.2
<b>GRIDIRON (see TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS)</b>	
<b>GRINDING ROOMS</b> . . . . .	426.1.2
<b>GROSS LEASABLE AREA</b> (see COVERED and OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)	
<b>GROUP HOME [see RESIDENTIAL (GROUP R-4)]</b>	
<b>GROUT</b> . . . . .	714.4.1.1, 714.5.1
<b>GUARDS</b> . . . . .	1015
Assembly seating . . . . .	1030.1.1, 1030.17
Equipment platform . . . . .	505.3.3
Exceptions . . . . .	1015.2
Glazing . . . . .	1015.2.1, 2406.4.4, 2407
Height . . . . .	1015.3
Loads . . . . .	1607.9
Mechanical equipment . . . . .	1015.6
Opening limitations . . . . .	1015.4
Parking garage . . . . .	406.4.1
Ramps . . . . .	1012.9
Residential . . . . .	1015.3
Roof access . . . . .	1015.7
Screen porches . . . . .	1015.5
Stairs . . . . .	1015.2
Vehicle barrier . . . . .	406.4.2, 1607.10
Windows . . . . .	1015.8
<b>GUTTERS</b> . . . . .	1502.4
<b>GYMNASIUMS</b> . . . . .	303.4
Group E . . . . .	303.1.3
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Occupant load . . . . .	1004.5
<b>GYPSUM</b> . . . . .	Chapter 25
Board . . . . .	Chapter 25, 202
Ceiling diaphragms . . . . .	2508.6
Concrete, reinforced gypsum . . . . .	2514
Construction . . . . .	2508
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.3.1
Exterior soffit . . . . .	Table 2506.2
Fastening . . . . .	Table 2306.3(3), 2508.1
Fire resistance . . . . .	719, 722.2.1.4, 722.6.2
Fire-resistant joint treatment . . . . .	2508.5
Inspection . . . . .	2503
Lath . . . . .	2507, 2510
Lathing and furring for cement plaster . . . . .	719, 2510

Lathing and plastering . . . . .	2507
Materials . . . . .	2506
Panel products . . . . .	Chapter 25, 202
Performance . . . . .	2502
Plaster, exposed aggregate . . . . .	2513
Plaster, exterior . . . . .	2512
Plaster, interior . . . . .	2511
Shear wall construction . . . . .	2211.1.1, Table 2306.3(3), 2308.6.3, 2505
Sheathing . . . . .	Table 2308.5.11
Showers and water closets . . . . .	2509
Stucco . . . . .	2510
Veneer base . . . . .	2507.2
Veneer plaster . . . . .	2507.2
Vertical and horizontal assemblies . . . . .	2504
Wallboard . . . . .	Table 2506.2
Water-resistant backing board . . . . .	2506.2, 2509.2

**H**

<b>HANDRAILS</b> . . . . .	1014
Alternating tread devices . . . . .	1011.14
Assembly aisles . . . . .	1030.16
Construction . . . . .	1014.4, 1014.5, 1014.6
Extensions . . . . .	1014.6
Glazing . . . . .	2407
Graspability . . . . .	1014.3
Guards . . . . .	1015.3
Height . . . . .	1014.2
Loads . . . . .	1607.9
Location . . . . .	1014.1, 1014.7, 1014.8, 1014.9
Ramps . . . . .	1012.8
Stairs . . . . .	1011.11
<b>HARDBOARD</b> . . . . .	202, 1403.3.2, 2303.1.7
<b>HARDWARE</b> (see DOORS and LOCKS AND LATCHING)	
<b>HARDWOOD</b>	
Fastening . . . . .	2304.10
Quality . . . . .	2303.3
Veneer . . . . .	1403.3.2
<b>HAZARDOUS MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	307, 414, 415
Compliance with International Fire Code . . . . .	307.2
Control areas . . . . .	414.2
Explosion control . . . . .	414.5.1, Table 414.5.1, 415.11.6.5, 426.1.4
Mercantile occupancies . . . . .	309.2
Reporting . . . . .	414.1.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 415.4, 415.11.12, 903.2.5

Ventilation.....	414.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2, 415.11.6.8, 415.11.7.4, 415.11.8, 415.11.11, 1202.6
Weather protection.....	414.6.1
<b>HAZARDOUS OCCUPANCY (GROUP H), (see HAZARDOUS MATERIALS)</b>	307, 414, 415
Alarms and detection .....	415.3, 415.5, 415.11.2, 415.11.4, 415.11.6.9, 415.11.8, 901.6.3, 907.2.5, 908.1, 908.2
Area .....	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Dispersing.....	414.5, 414.6, 415.6
Gas detection systems.....	415.11.7
Group provisions	
H-1 (detonation) .....	307.3, 415.6.2, 415.7, 415.6.4.1, 415.7.1
H-2 (deflagration) .....	307.4, 415.8, 415.9
H-3 (physical hazard) .....	415.10, 307.5, 415.8
H-4 (health hazard).....	307.6, 415.10
H-5 (semiconductor).....	307.7, 415.11
Height.....	415.7, 415.8.1, 415.9.1.1, 426.1.1, 503, 504, 505, 506
Incidental uses .....	509
Interior finishes.....	416.2.1, 416.3.1, Table 803.13, 804
Live load.....	Table 1607.1
Location on property.....	414.6.1.2, 415.6
Low hazard.....	306.3, 311.3
Means of egress	
Corridors .....	415.11.2
One means of egress .....	Table 1006.3.4(1), Table 1006.3.4(2)
Panic hardware.....	1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3, 1006.2.2.4, 1010.2.9
Stairway, exit access .....	1019
Travel distance .....	1006.3, 1006.2.1, Table 1017.2
Mixed occupancies.....	508.3, 508.4
Accessory .....	508.2
Moderate hazard .....	306.2, 311.2
Multiple hazards .....	306.2, 311.2
Occupancy exceptions .....	307.1
Plumbing fixtures .....	Chapter 29
Risk category .....	Table 1604.5
Separation from other occupancies .....	415.6.1, 508.1, 508.2.4, 508.3.3, 508.4
Smoke and heat removal .....	910.2
Special provisions based on materials	
Combustible liquids.....	Table 307.1(1), 307.4, 307.5, 414.2.5, 414.5.3, 415.9.2
Corrosives .....	307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 414.3, 415.10.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Explosives .....	202, 307.3, 307.3.1, Table 415.6.5
Flammable liquids .....	307.4, 307.5, 415.9.1,
Flammable solids .....	307.5, 415.11.1.1.1
Health-hazard materials .....	202, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.6, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 415.11.6.1, 415.11.7.2
Irritants .....	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 415.11.1.1.1
Liquid, highly toxic and toxic .....	307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.8.3, 415.9.3, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 418
Oxidizers, liquid and solid .....	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.5.1, 415.8.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Pyrophoric materials .....	Table 307.1(1), 307.4, Table 414.5.1, 415.7.1, 415.8.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Sensitizers.....	Table 415.11.1.1.1
Solids, highly toxic and toxic .....	307.6, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.10.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1, 908.3
Unstable materials.....	307.3, Table 414.2.5(1), 415.5.4, Table 415.11.1.1.1, Table 414.5.1
Water-reactive materials .....	Table 414.5.1, 415.8.3, 415.8.4, 415.8.5, 415.11, Table 415.11.1.1.1
Special provisions—General	
Detached buildings .....	202, 415.6.2, 415.8
Dry cleaning (see DRY CLEANING PLANTS)	
Equipment platforms .....	505.3
Fire district	
Fire separation distance .....	415.6
Grain elevators .....	426.1, 426.1.5
Grinding rooms .....	426.1.2
Higher education laboratories .....	426
Sprinkle protection .....	415.4, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.9, 415.11.10.1, 415.11.11, 705.8.1, 903.2.5
Standby, emergency power .....	2702.2
Storage .....	413, 414.1, 414.2.5, 414.5, 414.6, 415.6, Table 415.6.5, 415.7.1, 415.9.1, 426.1
Unlimited area.....	507.8, 507.9, 507.10
<b>HEADROOM</b> .....	406.2.2, 505.2, 1003.2, 1003.3, 1010.1.1, 1010.1.1.1, 1011.3, 1012.5.2, 1208.2
<b>HEALTH CARE</b>	
(see INSTITUTIONAL I-1 and INSTITUTIONAL I-2)	
Ambulatory care facilities .....	202, 422

**INDEX**

Clinic, outpatient . . . . .	304.1
Hospitals . . . . .	308.3
<b>HEALTH-HAZARD MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	307.2
Table 414.2.5(1), 415.2,	
415.11.1.1.1	
<b>HEAT VENTS</b> . . . . .	910
<b>HEATING (see MECHANICAL)</b> . . . . .	101.4.2
Aircraft hangars . . . . .	412.3.4
Fire pump rooms . . . . .	913.3
Fireplace . . . . .	2111
Masonry heaters . . . . .	2112
Parking garages . . . . .	406.2.9
Repair garages . . . . .	406.2.9
<b>HEIGHT, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Limitations . . . . .	503
Mixed construction types . . . . .	510
Modifications . . . . .	504
Roof structures . . . . .	504.3, 1511
<b>HELIPORT</b>	
Definition . . . . .	202
Live loads . . . . .	1607.6
<b>HIGHER EDUCATION LABORATORIES</b> . . . . .	202, 428
<b>HIGH-PILED COMBUSTIBLE STORAGE</b> . . . . .	413, 907.2.16, 910.2.2
<b>HIGH-PRESSURE DECORATIVE EXTERIOR-GRADE COMPACT LAMINATES</b> . . . . .	1408
<b>HIGH-RISE BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	403
Alarms and detection . . . . .	403.4.1, 403.4.2, 907.2.14
Application . . . . .	403.1
Construction . . . . .	403.2
Elevators . . . . .	403.6, 1009.2.1, 3007, 3008
Emergency power . . . . .	403.4.8, 2702.2
Emergency systems . . . . .	403.4
Fire command station . . . . .	403.4.6
Fire department communication . . . . .	403.4.4, 403.4.5
Fire service elevators . . . . .	403.6.1, 3007
Occupant evacuation elevators . . . . .	403.6.2, 3008
Smoke removal . . . . .	403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosure . . . . .	403.5.4, 1023.12
Sprayed fire-resistant materials (SFRM) . . . . .	403.2.3
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	403.3, 903.2.11.3
Stairways . . . . .	403.5, 1023, 1025
Standby power . . . . .	403.4.8, 2702.2
Structural integrity . . . . .	403.2.2, 1616
Super high-rise (over 420 feet) . . . . .	403.2.1, 403.2.2, 403.2.3, 403.3.1, 403.5.2
Voice alarm . . . . .	403.4.4, 907.2.14
Zones . . . . .	907.6.3, 907.6.4
<b>HISTORIC BUILDINGS</b> . . . . .	101.4.7
Flood provisions . . . . .	G106.3
<b>HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLY</b> . . . . .	711
Continuity . . . . .	509.4.1, 711.2.2, 711.2.3, 713.11, 713.12
Fire-resistance rating . . . . .	603.1, 703, 704.4.2, 707.3.10, 711.2.4
Glazing, rated . . . . .	716.3.4
Group I-1 . . . . .	420.3
Group R . . . . .	420.3
Incidental . . . . .	509.4
Insulation . . . . .	720, 807, 808
Joints . . . . .	715, 2508.4
Nonfire-resistance rating . . . . .	711.3
Opening protection . . . . .	712.1.13.1, 714.5, 716, 717.6
Shaft enclosure . . . . .	713.1
Special provisions	
Atrium . . . . .	404.3, 404.6
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.4.2.3, 402.8.7
Fire pumps . . . . .	913.2.1
Flammable finishes . . . . .	416.2
Group H-2 . . . . .	415.9.1.1, 415.9.1.2
Group H-5 . . . . .	415.11.1.2, 415.11.6.1
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.5
Groups H-3 and H-4 . . . . .	415.10.2
Groups I-1, R-1, R-2, R-3 and R-4 . . . . .	420.3
Hazardous materials . . . . .	414.2
High-rise . . . . .	403.2.1, 403.3
Organic coating . . . . .	418.4, 418.5, 418.6
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410.3, 410.4.1
<b>HORIZONTAL EXIT</b> . . . . .	1026
Accessible means of egress . . . . .	1009.2, 1009.2.1, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1009.6, 1009.6.2
Doors . . . . .	1026.3
Exit discharge . . . . .	1028.2
Fire resistance . . . . .	1026.2
Institutional I-2 occupancy . . . . .	407.4, 1026.1
Institutional I-3 occupancy . . . . .	408.2, 1026.1
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREAS)	
<b>HORIZONTAL FIRE SEPARATION (see HORIZONTAL ASSEMBLIES)</b>	
<b>HOSE CONNECTIONS (see STANDPIPE REQUIRED)</b>	
<b>HOSPITALS AND PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS (see INSTITUTIONAL, GROUP I-2)</b> . . . . .	308.3, 407
<b>HOSPITALS [OSHPD 1]</b> . . . . .	1224
Application . . . . .	1224.2
Communications systems . . . . .	1224.5
Definitions . . . . .	1224.3
General construction . . . . .	1224.4
Reserved . . . . .	1224.6–1224.13
Scope . . . . .	1224.1

**INDEX**

<b>HOSPITALS—BASIC SERVICES</b>	
Anesthesia/recovery service space . . . . .	1224.16
Clinical laboratory service space . . . . .	1224.17
Dietetic service space . . . . .	1224.20
Nursing service space . . . . .	1224.14
Pharmaceutical service space . . . . .	1224.19
Radiological/diagnostic imaging service space . . . . .	1224.18
Surgical service space . . . . .	1224.15
<b>HOSPITALS—SUPPORT SERVICES</b>	
Administrative space . . . . .	1224.21
Central sterile supply . . . . .	1224.22
Employee dressing rooms and lockers. . . . .	1224.25
Housekeeping rooms . . . . .	1224.26
Laundry. . . . .	1224.27
Morgue and autopsy facilities. . . . .	1224.24
Storage. . . . .	1224.23
<b>HOSPITALS—SUPPLEMENTAL SERVICES</b>	
Emergency service. . . . .	1224.33
Intensive care units. . . . .	1224.29
Intermediate-care service space . . . . .	1224.38
Nuclear medicine . . . . .	1224.34
Obstetrical facilities (perinatal unit space) . .	1224.32
Outpatient service space . . . . .	1224.39
Pediatric and adolescent unit . . . . .	1224.30
Psychiatric nursing unit. . . . .	1224.31
Rehabilitation therapy department . . . . .	1224.35
Renal dialysis service space (acute and chronic). . . . .	1224.36
Respiratory therapy service space. . . . .	1224.37
Skilled nursing service space . . . . .	1224.40
Social service space. . . . .	1224.41
Supplemental surgery and special procedure services . . . . .	1224.28
<b>HOTEL (or MOTEL) (definition)</b> . . . . .	202
<b>HPM ROOM</b> . . . . .	415.11.5
<b>HURRICANE SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)</b>	
<b>HURRICANE SHUTTERS</b> . . . . .	1609.2
<b>HYDROGEN FUEL GAS ROOMS</b> . .	421, Table 509.1
<b>HYPERBARIC FACILITIES</b> . . . . .	425
I	
<b>ICE-SENSITIVE STRUCTURE</b> . . . . .	202
Atmospheric ice loads . . . . .	1614.1
<b>IDENTIFICATION, REQUIREMENTS FOR</b>	
Fire barriers . . . . .	703.4
Fire partitions . . . . .	703.4
Fire wall . . . . .	703.4
Glazing . . . . .	2403.1, 2406.3
Inspection certificate. . . . .	202
<b>Labeling</b> . . . . .	1703.5
<b>Preservative-treated wood</b> . . . . .	2303.1.9.1
<b>Smoke barrier</b> . . . . .	703.4
<b>Smoke partition</b> . . . . .	703.4
<b>Steel</b> . . . . .	2202.1
<b>IMPACT LOAD</b> . . . . .	202, 1603.1.1, 1607.11, 2406.1
<b>INCIDENTAL USES</b>	
Area . . . . .	509.3
Occupancy classification. . . . .	509.2
Separation and protection. . . . .	509.4
<b>INCINERATOR ROOMS</b> . . . . .	Table 509.1, 713.13, 1006.2.2.1
<b>INDUSTRIAL</b>	
[see FACTORY OCCUPANCY (see GROUP F)]	
<b>INFLATABLE AMUSEMENT DEVICE</b>	
Definition. . . . .	202
<b>INSPECTIONS</b> . . . . .	110, 1704, 1705
Alternative methods and materials . . . . .	1705.1.1
Approval required . . . . .	110.6
Concrete construction. . . . .	110.3.1, 110.3.2, 110.3.11, 1705.3
Concrete slab . . . . .	110.3.2
EIFS . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.17
Energy efficiency. . . . .	110.3.9
Fabricators . . . . .	1704.2.5
Fees . . . . .	109
Final . . . . .	110.3.12
Fire-extinguishing systems . . . . .	904.4
Fire-resistant materials . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.15, 1705.16
Fire-resistant penetrations . . . . .	110.3.8, 1705.18
Flood hazard. . . . .	110.3.3, 110.3.12.1
Footing or foundation . . . . .	110.3.1, 110.3.11, 1705.3, 1705.4, 1705.7, 1705.8, 1705.9
Frame . . . . .	110.3.4
Lath gypsum board and gypsum panel products . . . . .	110.3.6, 2503
Liability . . . . .	104.8
Mass timber construction . . . . .	1705.5.7, Table 1705.5.7, 1705A.5.7, Table 1705A.5.7
Masonry . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.4
Preliminary . . . . .	110.2
Required . . . . .	110.3
Right of entry. . . . .	104.6
Sealing of mass timber . . . . .	1705.20
Seismic . . . . .	1705.13
Smoke control. . . . .	909.18.8, 1705.19
Soils . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.6
Special (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS) . . . . .	110.3.11, 1704, 1705
Sprayed fire-resistant materials . . . . .	1705.15

**INDEX**

Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.5		Sprinkler protection . . . . .	407.7, 903.2.6, 903.3.2
Steel. . . . .	110.3.4, 110.3.11, 1705.2		Technology equipment center . . . . .	407.12
Third party . . . . .	110.4		Yards . . . . .	407.10
Type IV-A, IV-B and IV-C connection protection inspection. . . . .	110.3.12	<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-3 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (see GROUP I)]</b>	. . . . .	308.4, 408
Welding . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.2, 2204.1	Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	
Wind. . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.12	Alarm and detection . . . . .	408.10, 907.2.6.3	
Wood . . . . .	110.3.11, 1705.5	Combustible decorations . . . . .	806.1	
<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-1 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (see GROUP I) and RESIDENTIAL (see GROUP R-4)]</b>		Maximum floor area allowances for I-3 facilities. . . . .	Table 408.3.13	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	Means of egress . . . . .	408.2, 408.3, 408.4	
Alarm and detection . . . . .	420.5, 907.2.6.1, 907.2.10, 907.2.11.2, 907.5.2.3.2	Occupancy condition . . . . .	308.4	
Combustible decorations . . . . .	806.1	Security glazing . . . . .	408.7	
Cooking . . . . .	420.8, 420.9	Separation . . . . .	408.5, 408.6	
Means of egress		Smoke barrier . . . . .	408.6	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5	Smoke compartment . . . . .	408.4.1, 408.6, 408.9	
Corridors . . . . .	1020.2	Sprinkler protection . . . . .	408.11, 903.2.6	
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	Standby/emergency power . . . . .	2702.2	
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3, 1017.2	<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-4 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)]</b>	. . . . .	308.5
Occupancy conditions . . . . .	308.2.1, 308.2.2	Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	308.2.3, 308.2.4	Adult care . . . . .	308.5	
Separation . . . . .	420.2, 420.3, 420.6	Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.6	
Spaces open to corridors . . . . .	420.7, 420.8	Child care . . . . .	308.5	
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	420.5, 903.2.6, 903.3.2	Educational . . . . .	308.5.1	
<b>INSTITUTIONAL I-2 and GROUP I-2.1 [see INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (see GROUP I)]</b>	. . . . .	Egress . . . . .	1006.2.2.4	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	Means of egress . . . . .	Table 1006.2.1, Table 1017.2	
Alarms and detection . . . . .	407.8, 407.9	Corridor . . . . .	1020.2	
Care suites . . . . .	407.4.4	Hardware . . . . .	1010.2.8, 1010.2.13.1	
Combustible decorations . . . . .	806.1	Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.6	
Cooking . . . . .	407.2.6, 407.2.7	<b>INSTITUTIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP I)</b>	. . . . .	308
Electrical systems . . . . .	407.11, 2702.2	Accessory . . . . .	508.2	
Hyperbaric facilities . . . . .	425	Adult care . . . . .	308.5	
Means of egress . . . . .	407.4	Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5	Child care . . . . .	303.1.3, 308.5, 310.4	
Corridors . . . . .	407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1020.3, 407.4.3	Group specific provisions		
Doors . . . . .	407.3.1, 407.2.6, 1010.2.14, 1010.2.12, 407.4.4.3, 407.4.4.4, 407.6	Group I-1 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-1) . . . . .	308.2	
Hardware . . . . .	1010.2.10, 1010.2.14, 407.4.1.1	Group I-2 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-2) . . . . .	407, 308.3	
Lighting . . . . .	1008.2, 1008.3	Group I-3 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-3) . . . . .	408, 308.4	
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019.4	Group I-4 (see INSTITUTIONAL I-4) . . . . .	308.1, 308.5	
Stairways, exterior exit . . . . .	1027.2	Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508	
Travel distance . . . . .	407.4.2	Incidental uses . . . . .	509	
Medical gas systems . . . . .	427	Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804	
Occupancy condition . . . . .	308.3.1	Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1	
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	308.3.2	Means of egress		
Smoke barriers . . . . .	407.5	Corridors . . . . .	1020.3	
Smoke compartment . . . . .	407.2.1, 407.2.3, 407.5	Day care . . . . .	436.1.1, Table 1004.5, 1006.2.2.8	
Smoke partitions . . . . .	407.3	Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	

## INDEX

Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	303.1.1, 303.1.2, 308.2.3, 308.2.4, 308.3.2, 308.5.1, 308.5.4, 310.4.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	Table 1604.5
Standby, emergency power . . . . .	2702.2
<b>INSULATION</b>	
Concealed . . . . .	720.2
Duct insulation . . . . .	720.1
Exposed . . . . .	720.3
Fiberboard . . . . .	720.1, Table 1508.2, 2303.1.6.2, 2303.1.6.3
Foam plastic (see FOAM PLASTICS) . . . . .	720.1
Loose fill . . . . .	720.4, 720.6
Pipe insulation . . . . .	720.1, 720.7
Reflective plastic core. . . . .	2614
Roof . . . . .	720.5, 1508
Sound . . . . .	720, 807, 1206
Thermal . . . . .	720, 807, 1508
<b>INTERIOR ENVIRONMENT</b>	
Lighting . . . . .	1204
Rodentproofing . . . . .	Appendix F
Sound transmission . . . . .	1206
Space dimensions . . . . .	1208
Temperature control . . . . .	1203
Ventilation . . . . .	409.3, 414.3, 415.9.1.7, 1202.5
Yards or courts . . . . .	1205.2, 1205.3
<b>INTERIOR FINISHES</b> . . . . . Chapter 8	
Acoustical ceiling systems . . . . .	807, 808
Application . . . . .	803.13, 804.4
Atriums . . . . .	404.8
Children's play structures . . . . .	424
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.6
Decorative materials . . . . .	419, 802.3, 806
Floor finish . . . . .	804, 805
Foam plastic insulation . . . . .	2603.3, 2603.4
Foam plastic trim . . . . .	806.5, 2604.2
Insulation . . . . .	807
Light-transmitting plastics . . . . .	2606
Signs . . . . .	402.6.4, 2611
Trim . . . . .	806.7, 806.8
Wall and ceiling finishes . . . . .	803
Wet location . . . . .	1210
<b>INTERMODAL SHIPPING CONTAINER</b> . . . . . 202, 3115	
<b>INTERPRETATION, CODE</b> . . . . . 104.1	
<b>J</b>	
<b>JAILS</b>	
[see INSTITUTIONAL (see GROUP I-3)]	
308.5, 408	
<b>JOINT</b>	
Gypsum board . . . . .	2508.5
<b>K</b>	
Lumber sheathing . . . . .	2308.7.11
Waterproofing . . . . .	1805.3.3
<b>JOINTS, FIRE-RESISTANT SYSTEMS</b> . . . . . 715	
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.18
<b>KIOSKS</b> . . . . . 402.6.2	
<b>KITCHENS</b> . . . . . 303.3, 306.2	
Accessibility . . . . .	1133A
Dimensions . . . . .	1209
Means of egress . . . . .	1016.2
Occupant load . . . . .	Table 1004.5
Sinks . . . . .	Table 2902.1
<b>L</b>	
<b>LABORATORIES</b>	
Classification of . . . . .	304.1, 307.1.1
Hazardous materials . . . . .	414, 415
Higher education laboratories . . . . .	304.4, 428
Incidental uses . . . . .	Table 509.1
<b>LADDERS</b>	
Boiler, incinerator and furnace rooms . . . . .	1006.2.2.1
Construction . . . . .	1011.15, 1011.16, 1014.2, 1014.6, 1015.3, 1015.4
Emergency escape window wells . . . . .	1031.5.2
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.3.5, 1011.15, 1011.16
Heliport . . . . .	412.7.3
Refrigeration machinery room . . . . .	1006.2.2.2
Ships ladders . . . . .	408.3.5, 1011.15
Stage . . . . .	410.5.3.4
<b>LAMINATED TIMBER, STRUCTURAL GLUED</b> . . . . . 602.4, 2303.1, 2303.1.3, 2304.12.2.4, 2306.1, 2308.4.3, 2308.7.9	
<b>LANDINGS</b>	
Doors . . . . .	1010.1.5
Ramp . . . . .	1012.6
Stair . . . . .	1011.6
<b>LATH, METAL OR WIRE</b> . . . . . Table 2507.2	
<b>LAUNDRIES</b> . . . . . 304.1, 306.2, Table 509.1	
<b>LAUNDRY CHUTE</b> . . . . . 713.13, 903.2.11.2	
<b>LEGAL</b>	
Federal and state authority . . . . .	102.2
Liability . . . . .	104.8
Notice of violation . . . . .	114.2, 116.3
Registered design professional . . . . .	107.1, 107.3.4
Right of entry . . . . .	104.6
Unsafe buildings or systems . . . . .	116
Violation penalties . . . . .	114.4

**INDEX****LIBRARIES**

- Classification, other than school . . . . . 303.1.3, 303.4
- Classification, school . . . . . 303.1.3, 305.1
- Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1

**LIGHT, REQUIRED** . . . . . 1204

- Artificial . . . . . 1204.3
- Emergency (see EMERGENCY LIGHTING)
- Means of egress . . . . . 1008.2
- Natural . . . . . 1204.2
- Stairways . . . . . 1204.4
- Yards and courts . . . . . 1205

**LIGHT-FRAME CONSTRUCTION**

- Cold-formed steel . . . . . 2211
- Conventional (wood) . . . . . 2308
- Definition . . . . . 202

**LIGHTS, PLASTIC CEILING DIFFUSERS** . . . . . 2606.7**LINEN CHUTE** . . . . . 713.13, 903.2.11.2**LINTEL**

- Adobe . . . . . 2109.2.4.9
- Fire resistance . . . . . 704.11
- Masonry, wood support . . . . . 2304.13

**LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS** . . . . . Table 414.5.1, 415.9.2**LISTED (definition)** . . . . . 202**LISTING AGENCY (definition)** . . . . . 202**LIVE LOADS** . . . . . 202, 1607

- Construction documents . . . . . 107.2, 1603.1.1
- Posting of . . . . . 106.1

**LIVE/WORK UNITS** . . . . . 202, 310.3, 508.5

- || Accessibility . . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B
- Separation . . . . . 508.1

**LOAD AND RESISTANCE****FACTOR DESIGN (LRFD)** . . . . . 1602.1

- Factored load . . . . . 202, 1604.2

- Limit state . . . . . 202, 1604.2

- Load combinations . . . . . 1605

- Load factor . . . . . 202

- Resistance factor . . . . . 202

- Wood design . . . . . 2302.1, 2307

**LOAD COMBINATIONS** . . . . . 1605

- Allowable stress design . . . . . 1605, 1605.2

- Alternative allowable stress load combinations . . . . . 1605.2

- Load and resistance factor design . . . . . 1605

- Strength design . . . . . 1605

**LOADS** . . . . . 106, 202

- Atmospheric ice . . . . . 1614

- Combinations . . . . . 1605

- Dead . . . . . 202, 1606

- Factored load . . . . . 202, 1604.2

- Flood . . . . . 1603.1.7, 1612
- Impact . . . . . 202, 1607.11
- Live . . . . . 508.5.8, 1603.1.1, 1607
- Load effects . . . . . 202
- Nominal load . . . . . 202, 1604.2
- Rain . . . . . 1603.1.9, 1611
- Seismic . . . . . 1603.1.5, 1613
- Snow . . . . . 1603.1.3, 1608
- Soil lateral . . . . . 1610
- Tsunami . . . . . 1615
- Wind . . . . . 1603.1.4, 1609

**LOBBIES**

- Assembly occupancy . . . . . 1030.4
- Elevator . . . . . 405.4.3, 1009.2.1, 1009.4, 3006, 3007.6, 3008.6

- Exit discharge . . . . . 1028.2

- Underground buildings . . . . . 405.4.3

**LOCAL ENFORCING AGENCY** . . . . . 1.8.3**LOCKS AND LATCHES** . . . . . 1010.2, 1010.2.9

- Delayed egress locks . . . . . 1010.2.13
- Electromagnetically locked . . . . . 1010.2.11
- Group I-2 . . . . . 407.4.1.1, 1010.2.14
- Group I-3 . . . . . 408.4, 1010.2.15
- High-rise . . . . . 403.5.3
- Sensor release . . . . . 1010.2.12
- Toilet rooms . . . . . 2902.3.5

**LODGING HOUSES** . . . . . 202, 310.4, 310.4.2**LUMBER**

- General provisions . . . . . Chapter 23
- Quality standards . . . . . 2303

**M****MAIL RECEPTACLES, LOCKING** . . . . . 420.13.1 ||**MAINTENANCE**

- Means of egress . . . . . 1002.1, 3310.2
- Property . . . . . 101.4.4

**MALL (see COVERED MALL AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)****MANUAL FIRE ALARM BOX** . . . . . 907.4.2**MANUFACTURED HOMES**

- Flood resistant . . . . . G109

**MARQUEES** . . . . . 202, 3106, H113

- Construction . . . . . 3106.5

- Drainage, water . . . . . 3201.4

- Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1, 1607.13

- Prohibited location . . . . . 3106.4

- Roof construction . . . . . 3106.3

**MASONRY** . . . . . Chapter 21, Chapter 21A

- Adhered veneer . . . . . 1404.10

Adobe .....	2109
Anchorage .....	1604.8.2
Anchored veneer .....	1404.6
Architectural cast stone .....	2103.1
Calculated fire resistance .....	722.4
Chimneys .....	2113
Construction .....	2104
Damproofing.....	1805.2.2
Design, methods.....	2101.2, 2107, 2108, 2109
Fire resistance, calculated .....	722.3.2, 722.3.4
Fireplaces.....	2111
Floor anchorage .....	1604.8.2
Foundation walls.....	1807.1.5
Foundations, adobe .....	2109.2.4.5
Glass unit .....	2110
Grouted.....	202
Heaters.....	2112
Inspection, special .....	1705.4
Joint reinforcement.....	2103.4
Materials.....	2103
Penetrations .....	714
Quality assurance.....	2105
Rodentproofing.....	Appendix F
Roof anchorage .....	1604.8.1
Seismic provisions .....	2106
Serviceability .....	1604.3.4
Supported by wood.....	2304.13
Surface bonding .....	2103.2.2
Veneer .....	1404.6, 1404.10, 2101.2.1, 2308.6.10
Wall, composite .....	202
Wall, hollow .....	202
Wall anchorage.....	1604.8.2
Waterproofing.....	1805.3.2
Wythe .....	202
<b>MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEMS</b> .....	917
<b>MASS TIMBER</b> .....	202, 508, 509, 602, 703, 718, 722
<b>MATERIALS</b>	
Alternates .....	104.11
Aluminum .....	Chapter 20
Concrete .....	Chapter 19, Chapter 19A
Glass and glazing.....	Chapter 24
Gypsum .....	Chapter 25
Masonry .....	Chapter 21, Chapter 21A
Noncombustible .....	703.4
Plastic.....	Chapter 26
Steel .....	Chapter 22, Chapter 22A
Testing (see TESTING) .....	1707
Wood .....	Chapter 23
<b>MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION METHODS FOR EXTERIOR WILDFIRE EXPOSURE</b> .....	Chapter 7A
<b>MEANS OF APPEALS</b> .....	113, Appendix B
<b>MEANS OF EGRESS</b> .....	Chapter 10, 202
Accessible.....	1009, 2702.2
Aircraft related.....	412.2.2, 412.2.5.1, 412.4.2, 412.6.1, 412.7.3
Alternating tread device .....	412.7.3, 1006.2.2.1, 1006.2.2.2, 1011.14
Ambulatory care facilities .....	422.3.1, 422.3.3
Assembly .....	1009.1, 1030
Atrium .....	404.9, 404.11, 707.3.6
Capacity .....	1005.3
Ceiling height .....	1003.2
Child care facilities (see DAY CARE)	
Configuration.....	1007
Construction drawings .....	107.2.3
Convergence.....	1005.6
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402.8
Day care facilities .....	308.5, 310.4.1, 1006.2.2.4
Distribution .....	1005.5
Doors .....	1005.7, 1006.2, 1010, 1022.2, 2702.2
During construction.....	3303.3, 3310
Elevation change .....	1003.5
Elevators.....	403.5.2, 403.6.2, 1003.7, 1009, 3008
Emergency escape and rescue .....	1031
Encroachment.....	1005.7
Equipment platform.....	505.3
Escalators .....	1003.7
Evacuation plans.....	1002.2
Existing buildings .....	3310
Exit (see EXIT) .....	1022, 1027
Exit access (see EXIT ACCESS) .....	1016, 1021
Exit discharge (see EXIT DISCHARGE).....	1028
Exit enclosures .....	1023.2
Exit passageway (see EXIT PASSAGWAY).....	1024
Exit signs .....	1013, 2702.2
Fire escapes .....	412.7.3
Fire safety plans .....	1002.2
Floor surface .....	804, 1003.4
Gates .....	1010.4
Group I-2.....	407.2, 407.3, 407.4, 1019.4
Group I-3.....	408.2, 408.3, 408.4, 408.6, 408.8, 1019.4
Guards .....	1015
Handrails .....	1014
Hazardous materials .....	414.6.1.2, 415.11.2, 415.11.6.6
Headroom .....	1003.2, 1003.3
Heliports, Helistops .....	412.7.3
High-hazard Group H .....	415.11.2
High-rise .....	403.5, 403.6
Illumination .....	1008, 2702.2
Interior finish .....	803.13, 804

**INDEX**

Ladders (see LADDERS)	
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5.3
Mezzanines . . . . .	505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1004.2.2, 1009.1
Moving walk . . . . .	1003.7
Number . . . . .	1001.2, 1006
Occupant load . . . . .	1004
Parking . . . . .	406.5.7
Protruding objects . . . . .	1003.3, 1005.7
Ramps . . . . .	1012, 1019, 1027
Scoping . . . . .	101.3, 108.2, 1001.1
Seating, fixed . . . . .	1009.1, 1030
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.6
Stages . . . . .	410.2.3, 410.5
Stairways . . . . .	403.5, 404.6, 1005.3.1, 1011, 1019, 1023, 1027
Temporary structures . . . . .	3103.4
Travel distance (see TRAVEL DISTANCE) . . . . .	1006.2.1, 1017
Turnstile . . . . .	1010.5
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.5.1, 405.7
Width . . . . .	1005.1, 1005.2, 1005.4, 1011.2, 1012.5.1, 1020.3, 1030.6, 1030.8
<b>MECHANICAL (see AIR CONDITIONING, HEATING, REFRIGERATION AND VENTILATION)</b> . . . . .	101.4.2
Access . . . . .	1011.12, 1208.3
Air transfer openings . . . . .	705.10, 706.11, 707.10, 708.9, 709.8, 712.1.6, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
Chimneys (see CHIMNEYS)	
Code . . . . .	Chapter 28
Disconnected . . . . .	3303.6
Ducts . . . . .	704.8, 705.10, 706.11, 707.10, 708.9, 709.8, 710.8, 712.1.6, 712.1.10.3, 713.10, 714.1.1, 717
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.3.2
Equipment on roof . . . . .	1510, 1511.2
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3
Fireplaces . . . . .	2111
Incidental use room . . . . .	Table 509.1
Motion picture projection room . . . . .	409.3
Permit required . . . . .	105.1, 105.2
Roof access . . . . .	1011.12
Seismic inspection and testing .	1704.3.2, 1705.13.7
Smoke control system . . . . .	909
Systems . . . . .	Chapter 28, 202
<b>MECHANICALLY LAMINATED DECKING</b> . . . . .	2304.9.3
<b>MEDICAL GAS SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	427
<b>MEMBRANE ROOF COVERINGS</b> . . . . .	1507.11, 1507.12, 1507.13
<b>MEMBRANE STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	2702.2, 3102
<b>MERCANTILE OCCUPANCY (GROUP M)</b> . . . . .	309
Accessible . . . . .	1110.13
Alarm and detection . . . . .	907.2.7
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402
Hazardous material display and storage . . . . .	414.2.5
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804
Live load . . . . .	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.3, 1018.4
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019
Travel distance . . . . .	402.8, 1006.3, 1017.2, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	508.2
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Mall buildings . . . . .	402
Parking below/above .	510.2, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Occupancy exceptions . . . . .	307.1.1
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.7
Standpipes . . . . .	905.3.3
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.4, 507.5, 507.13
<b>METAL</b>	
Aluminum . . . . .	Chapter 20
Roof coverings . . . . .	1504.4.2, 1507.4, 1507.5
Steel . . . . .	Chapter 22
Veneer . . . . .	1403.5, 1404.11
<b>METAL COMPOSITE MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	1406
<b>MEZZANINES</b> . . . . .	505
Accessibility . . . . .	Chapter 11A, 11B
Area limitations . . . . .	505.2.1, 505.2.1.1, 505.3.1
Egress . . . . .	505.2.2, 505.2.3, 1009.1
Equipment platforms . . . . .	505.3
Guards . . . . .	505.3.3, 1015.1
Height . . . . .	505.2
Occupant load . . . . .	1004.2.2
Stairways . . . . .	712.1.11, 1011.14, 1019, 1023.2
<b>MIRRORS</b> . . . . .	1010.1, 2406.1
<b>MIXED OCCUPANCY</b> (see OCCUPANCY SEPARATION)	
<b>MODIFICATIONS</b> . . . . .	104.4, 104.10
<b>MOISTURE PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	1210, 1402.2, 1503
<b>MONASTERIES</b> . . . . .	310.3
<b>MORTAR</b> . . . . .	202
Ceramic tile . . . . .	2103.2.3
Damproofing . . . . .	1805.2.2
Fire resistance . . . . .	714.4.1, 715.5

Glass unit masonry.....	2110.1.1
Masonry .....	2103.2
Rodentproofing.....	Appendix f
<b>MOTELS .....</b>	<b>310.2, 310.3</b>
<b>MOTION PICTURE PROJECTION ROOMS.....</b>	<b>409</b>
Construction .....	409.2
Exhaust air .....	409.3.2, 409.3.3
Lighting control.....	409.4
Projection room .....	409.3
Supply air .....	409.3.1
Ventilation.....	409.3
<b>MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING SYSTEM .....</b>	<b>406.7</b>
Accessibility .....	1107.3
<b>MOTOR VEHICLE FACILITIES .....</b>	<b>304, 311, 406</b>
<b>MOVING, BUILDINGS.....</b>	<b>101.4.7, D103.3</b>
<b>MOVING WALKS .....</b>	<b>3004.2</b>
Means of egress.....	1003.7
<b>N</b>	
<b>NAILING .....</b>	<b>202, 2303.6, 2304, 2304.10</b>
<b>NONCOMBUSTIBLE BUILDING MATERIAL...</b>	<b>703.4</b>
<b>NONCOMBUSTIBLE PROTECTION     (FOR MASS TIMBER).....</b>	<b>202, 602.4, 722.7</b>
<b>NURSE STATIONS     (see CARE PROVIDER STATIONS)</b>	
<b>NURSING HOMES     [see INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-2)].....</b>	<b>308.3, 407</b>
<b>O</b>	
<b>OCCUPANCY</b>	
Accessory.....	507.1.1, 508.2
Certificates (see CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY)	
Change (see CHANGE OF OCCUPANCY)	
Floor loads .....	Table 1607.1
Height in mixed occupancy buildings .....	504.2
Roofs	
Special .....	Chapter 4
<b>OCCUPANCY CLASSIFICATION.....</b>	<b>Chapter 3</b>
Covered and open mall buildings .....	402
Detailed requirements .....	Chapter 4
Exceptions .....	303.1.1, 303.1.4, 305.1.1,
	305.2.1, 305.2.3, 307.1.1, 308.2.3,
	308.2.4, 308.3.2, 308.5.1,
	308.5.4, 310.4.1, 311.1.1
HPM .....	415.11
Mixed .....	508, 510
Occupied roofs .....	302.1, 503.1.4
<b>OCCUPANCY SEPARATION</b>	
Accessory.....	508.2
Aircraft related .....	412.4.1
Nonseparated use method.....	508.3
Separated use method .....	508.4
Special provisions.....	510
Unlimited area buildings .....	507.1.1, 507.4.1, 507.8
<b>OCCUPANT EVACUATION</b>	
<b>ELEVATORS .....</b>	<b>403.5.2, 403.6.2, 3008</b>
<b>OCCUPANT LOAD</b>	
Business .....	Table 1004.5, 1004.8
Calculated.....	1004.5
Certificate of occupancy .....	111
Covered and open mall building .....	402.8.2
Cumulative .....	1004.2
Increased .....	1004.5.1
Multiple function .....	1004.3
Multiple occupancies.....	1004.4
Outdoors .....	1004.7
Seating, fixed .....	1004.6
Signs.....	1004.9
<b>OCCUPIED ROOFS .....</b>	<b>503.1.4</b>
<b>OFFICE BUILDINGS (see GROUP B OCCUPANCIES)</b>	
Classification.....	304
Live loads .....	Table 1607.1, 1607.5
<b>OPEN MALL BUILDINGS     (see COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS)</b>	
<b>OPENING PROTECTION,     EXTERIOR WALLS .....</b>	<b>705.8</b>
<b>OPENING PROTECTION, FLOORS     (see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION)</b>	
<b>OPENING PROTECTIVES .....</b>	<b>705.8, 706.8, 707.6,</b>
	<b>708.6, 709.5, 712.1.13.1, 713.7, 716</b>
Automatic-closing devices .....	909.5.3
Fire door and shutter assemblies ..	705.8.2, 712.1.13.1, 716.2.1
Fire windows.....	716.3.4
Glass unit masonry (see GLASS UNIT MASONRY). .....	2110.1.1
Glazing .....	716.1.2
<b>ORGANIC COATINGS .....</b>	<b>418</b>
<b>ORGANIC PEROXIDES .....</b>	<b>307.4, 307.5</b>
<b>OXIDIZERS, LIQUID     AND SOLID .....</b>	<b>307.3, 307.4, 307.5</b>
<b>P</b>	
<b>PANIC HARDWARE .....</b>	<b>202, 1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.4,</b>
	<b>1010.2.8, 1010.2.9, 1010.4.1</b>
<b>PARAPET, EXTERIOR WALL .....</b>	<b>705.11, 2109.2.4.3</b>
Construction .....	705.11.1
Fire wall .....	706.6
Height .....	705.11.1
<b>PARKING, ACCESSIBLE .....</b>	<b>Chapter 11A, 11B</b>
<b>PARKING GARAGES .....</b>	<b>406.4, 406.5, 406.6</b>
Accessibility .....	<b>Chapter 11A, 11B</b>
Barriers, vehicle .....	<b>202, 406.4.2, 1607.10</b>

**INDEX**

Classification . . . . .	311, 312, 406.3, 406.4
Construction type . . . . .	406.5.1, Table 601
<i>Door openers</i> . . . . .	406.2.1
<i>Door springs</i> . . . . .	1211
Enclosed (see PARKING GARAGE, ENCLOSED) . . . . .	406.6
Gates . . . . .	406.2.1, 3110
Guards . . . . .	406.4.1, 2407.1.3
Height, clear . . . . .	406.2.2
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 1607.12.1.3
Means of egress . . . . .	1006.2.2.5, 1006.3, 1019
<i>Mechanical-access enclosed     parking garages</i> . . . . .	406.6.4
Occupancy separation . . . . .	508, 510
Open (see PARKING GARAGE, OPEN) . . . . .	406.5
Special provisions . . . . .	510
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.10
Underground . . . . .	405
Vertical openings . . . . .	712.1.10
<b>PARKING GARAGES, ENCLOSED</b> . . . . .	406.6
Area and height [see STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] . . . . .	406.6.1
Means of egress . . . . .	1006.2.2.5, 1006.3, 1012.1
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	406.6.3
Ventilation . . . . .	406.6.2
<b>PARKING GARAGES, OPEN</b> . . . . .	202, 406.5
Area and height [see STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)] . . . . .	406.5, 406.5.1, Table 406.5.4
Construction type . . . . .	406.5.1
Means of egress . . . . .	406.5.7, Table 1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1009.3, 1009.4, 1012.1, 1017.3, 1019, 1020.2, 1028.2
Mixed occupancy . . . . .	406.5.3
Standpipes . . . . .	406.5.8
Ventilation . . . . .	406.5.10
<b>PARTICLEBOARD</b> . . . . .	202
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.3.1
Moisture protection . . . . .	1402.2, 1404.2
Quality . . . . .	2303.1.8
Veneer . . . . .	1404.5
Wall bracing . . . . .	2308.6.3
<b>PARTITIONS</b>	
Fabric partition . . . . .	202, 1607.16.1
Fire (see FIRE PARTITION)	
Live loads . . . . .	1607.5, 1607.16
Materials . . . . .	602.4, 603.1
Occupancy, specific . . . . .	708.1
Smoke (see SMOKE PARTITION)	
Toilets . . . . .	1210

<b>PARTY WALLS</b>	
(see FIRE WALLS) . . . . .	706.1.1, Table 716.1(3)
<b>PASSAGEWAY, EXIT (see EXIT)</b> . . . . .	1024
<b>PASSENGER STATIONS</b> . . . . .	303.4
<b>PATIO COVERS</b> . . . . .	2606.10, Appendix I
<b>PEDESTRIAN</b>	
Protection at construction site . . . . .	3303.2, 3306
Walkways and tunnels . . . . .	3104, 3202.3.4
<b>PENALTIES</b> . . . . .	114.4
<b>PENETRATION-FIRESTOP SYSTEM</b>	
Fire-rated horizontal assemblies . . . . .	714.5.2
Fire-rated walls . . . . .	714.4.2
<b>PENETRATIONS</b> . . . . .	714, 717
Fire-resistant assemblies	
Exterior wall . . . . .	705.10
Fire barrier . . . . .	707.7, 707.10
Fire partition . . . . .	708.7, 708.9
Fire wall . . . . .	706.9, 706.11
Horizontal assemblies . . . . .	714.5
Installation . . . . .	714.2
Shaft enclosures . . . . .	712.1, 713.1, 713.8, 713.10
Smoke barriers . . . . .	709.6, 709.8, 714.5.4
Smoke partitions . . . . .	710.6, 710.7
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.18
Walls . . . . .	714.4
Nonfire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	714.6
<b>PERFORMANCE CATEGORY</b>	
Definition . . . . .	202
Wood structural panels . . . . .	2303.1.5
<b>PERFORMANCE-BASED</b>	Appendix O
<b>PERLITE</b> . . . . .	Table 721.1(1), Table 2507.2
<b>PERMITS</b> . . . . .	105
Application for . . . . .	104.2, 105.1, 105.3
Drawings and specifications . . . . .	107.2.1
Expiration . . . . .	105.5
Fees . . . . .	109
Liability for issuing . . . . .	104.8
Placement of permit . . . . .	105.7
Plan review . . . . .	104.2, 107.3
Suspension or revocation . . . . .	105.6
Time limitations . . . . .	105.3.2, 105.5
<b>PHOTOVOLTAIC (PV) SUPPORT STRUCTURE, ELEVATED</b> . . . . .	202
<b>PHOTOVOLTAIC PANEL SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	202
Ballasted, seismic design . . . . .	1613.3
<i>Ground mounted</i> . . . . .	202
Fire classification . . . . .	1505.8, 1505.9
Panels/modules . . . . .	1512
Photovoltaic module . . . . .	202
Photovoltaic panel . . . . .	202
Power systems . . . . .	903.3.1.1.3

Roof live loads . . . . .	1607.14.4	
Rooftop mounted . . . . .	1511.7, 1511.9, 1511.9.1	
<b>PIER FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION, SHALLOW)</b>		
<b>PILE FOUNDATIONS (see FOUNDATION, DEEP)</b>		
<b>PIPES</b>		
Embedded in fire protection . . . . .	704.8	
Insulation covering . . . . .	720.1, 720.7	
Penetration protection . . . . .	714, 1023.5	
Under platform . . . . .	410.3	
<b>PLAN REVIEW</b> . . . . .	107.3	
<b>PLASTER</b>		
Fire-resistance requirements . . . . .	719	
Gypsum . . . . .	719.1, 719.2	
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.6	
Portland cement . . . . .	719.5, Table 2507.2, Table 2511.1.1	
<b>PLASTIC</b> . . . . .	Chapter 26	
Approval for use . . . . .	2606.2	
Composites . . . . .	2612	
Core insulation, reflective plastic . . . . .	2614	
Decking . . . . .	1409, 2612	
Fiber-reinforced polymer . . . . .	2613	
Finish and trim, exterior . . . . .	2602.1	
Finish and trim, interior . . . . .	2602, 2604	
Light-transmitting panels . . . . .	2401.1, 2607	
Roof panels . . . . .	2609	
Signs . . . . .	402.6.4, 2611, D102.2.10, H107.1.1	
Thermal barrier . . . . .	2603.4	
Veneer . . . . .	1403.8, 2605, D102.2.11	
Walls, exterior . . . . .	2603.4.1.4, 2603.5	
<b>PLASTIC, FOAM</b>		
Insulation (see FOAM PLASTICS) . . . . .	2603	
Interior finish . . . . .	803.4, 2603.9	
Malls . . . . .	402.6.2, 402.6.4.5	
Play structures . . . . .	424.2	
Stages and platforms . . . . .	410.2.6	
<b>PLASTIC, LIGHT-TRANSMITTING</b>		
Awnings and patio covers . . . . .	2606.10	
Bathroom accessories . . . . .	2606.9	
Exterior wall panels . . . . .	2607	
Fiberglass-reinforced polymer . . . . .	2613.4	
Fiber-reinforced polymer . . . . .	2613.4	
Glazing . . . . .	2608	
Greenhouses . . . . .	2609	
Light-diffusing systems . . . . .	2606.7	
Roof panels . . . . .	2609	
Signs, interior . . . . .	2611	
Skylight . . . . .	2610	
Solar collectors . . . . .	2606.12	
Structural requirements . . . . .	2606.5	
Unprotected openings . . . . .	2608.1, 2608.2	
<b>Veneer, exterior . . . . .</b>	603.1, 2605	
<b>Wall panels . . . . .</b>	2607	
<b>PLATFORM (see STAGES AND PLATFORMS)</b> . . . . .	410	
Construction . . . . .	410.3	
Temporary . . . . .	410.3.1	
<b>PLATFORM, EQUIPMENT (see EQUIPMENT PLATFORM)</b>		
<b>PLATFORM LIFTS, WHEELCHAIR</b>		
Accessibility . . . . .	Chapter 11A, 11B	
Accessible means of egress . . . . .	1009.2, 1009.5, Chapter 11A, 11B, 2702.2	
<b>PLAY STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	424	
Covered and open mall building . . . . .	402.6.3	←
<b>POLLUTANT CONTROL</b> . . . . .	1212	
<b>PRESCRIPTIVE FIRE RESISTANCE</b> . . . . .	721	
<b>PRESERVATIVE-TREATED WOOD</b> . . . . .	202	
Fastenings . . . . .	2304.10.6	
Quality . . . . .	2303.1.9	
Required . . . . .	2304.12	
Shakes, roof covering . . . . .	1507.9.6, 1507.9.8	
<b>PRIVATE GARAGE</b> . . . . .	202, 406.3, 1010.1.2, 1502.4	
Accessibility . . . . .	Chapter 11A, 11B	
<b>PROJECTION ROOMS</b>		
Motion picture . . . . .	409	
<b>PROJECTIONS, COMBUSTIBLE</b> . . . . .	705.2.3, 705.2.3.1	
<b>PROPERTY LINE</b> (see FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE) . . . . .	705.3	
<b>PROPERTY MAINTENANCE</b> . . . . .	101.4.4	
<b>PROSCENIUM</b>		
Opening protection . . . . .	410.2.5	
Wall . . . . .	410.2.4	
<b>PSYCHIATRIC HOSPITALS</b> (see INSTITUTIONAL (see GROUP I-2)) . . . . .	308.4	
<b>PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEM</b> (see EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS)		
Covered and open mall buildings . . . . .	402.7, 907.2.20, 2702.2	
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.4	
<b>PUBLIC PROPERTY</b> . . . . .	Chapter 32, Chapter 33	
<b>PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY</b>		
Encroachments . . . . .	Chapter 32	
<b>PUZZLE ROOM</b> . . . . .	202, 411.5	
<b>PYROPHORIC MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	Table 307.1(1), 307.4	
<b>R</b>		
<b>RAILING (see GUARDS and HANDRAILS)</b>		
<b>RAMPS</b> . . . . .	1012	
Assembly occupancy . . . . .	1030.14	
Construction . . . . .	1012.2, 1012.5.3, 1012.7, 1012.10	
Exit . . . . .	1023	

**INDEX**

Exit access . . . . .	1019
Exterior . . . . .	1027
Guards . . . . .	1012.9, 1015, 1607.9
Handrails . . . . .	1012.8, 1014, 1607.9
Interior . . . . .	1012.2
Landings . . . . .	1012.6
Parking garage . . . . .	406.4.3
Slope . . . . .	1012.2
<b>RECREATIONAL FACILITIES</b>	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Amusement rides . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Play structure . . . . .	402.6.3, 424
Special amusement areas (see AMUSEMENT AREAS, SPECIAL)	
<b>REFERENCED STANDARDS</b> . . . . .	
Applicability . . . . .	102.3, 102.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	703.2
List . . . . .	<i>Chapter 35</i>
Organizations . . . . .	<i>Chapter 35</i>
<b>REFORMATORIES</b>	
[see INSTITUTIONAL (GROUP I-3)] . . . . .	308.4
<b>REFRIGERATION</b> (see MECHANICAL) . . . . .	
Machinery room . . . . .	1006.2.2.2
<b>REFUGE AREAS</b> (see HORIZONTAL EXIT, SMOKE COMPARTMENTS, STORM SHELTERS) . . . . .	
407.5.3, 408.6.2, 420.6.1, 422.3.2, 423, 423.3, 423.4, 1026.4	
<b>REFUSE CHUTE</b> . . . . .	
713.13	
<b>REINFORCEMENT</b>	
Masonry . . . . .	2103.4
Shotcrete . . . . .	1908
<b>RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, PLACES OF</b>	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>
Alarms and detection . . . . .	907.2.1
Balcony . . . . .	1030.5, 1109.2.4
Classification . . . . .	303.1.4, 303.4, 305.1.1, 305.2.1, 308.5.2
Door operations . . . . .	1010.2.10
Egress . . . . .	1030
Interior finishes . . . . .	<i>Table 803.13, 804</i>
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.6, 507.7
<b>RELOCATING, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	
101.4.7, 107.2.8, 3113	
Compliance . . . . .	3113.1.1
Inspection agencies . . . . .	3113.4
Manufacturer's data plate . . . . .	3113.3
Supplemental information . . . . .	3113.2
<b>REPAIRS, BUILDING</b> . . . . .	
101.4.7, 202	
Flood . . . . .	1612.1
Minor . . . . .	105.2.2
Permit required . . . . .	105.1

<b>RESIDENTIAL HOTELS (mail receptacles)</b> . . . . .	
420.8	
<b>RESIDENTIAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP R)</b> . . . . .	
310	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>     ←
Alarm and detection . . . . .	907.2.8, 907.2.9, 907.2.11, 907.2.12, 907.5.2.3.2, 907.5.2.3.3
Area . . . . .	503, 505, 506, 508, 510
Carbon monoxide alarms . . . . .	915
Cooking . . . . .	420.10, 420.11
Draftstopping . . . . .	708.4.2, 718.4
Group provisions	
Group R-1 (transient) . . . . .	310.2
Group R-2 (apartment) . . . . .	310.3
Group R-3 (two dwellings per building) . . . . .	310.4
Group R-4 (group homes) . . . . .	310.5
Height . . . . .	503, 504, 505, 508, 510
Incidental uses . . . . .	509
Interior finishes . . . . .	<i>Table 803.13, 804</i>
Live load . . . . .	<i>Table 1607.1</i>
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Means of egress	
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5
Corridors . . . . .	1020.2, 1020.3
Doors . . . . .	1010.1.1
Emergency escape and rescue . . . . .	1031.2
Exit signs . . . . .	1013.1, 1013.2
Single exits . . . . .	1006.3
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3.3, 1017.2, 1006.2.1
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4
Accessory . . . . .	508.2, G112.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5
Parking, private . . . . .	406.2.8, 406.3
Parking below/above . . . . .	510.4, 510.7, 510.9
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902
Risk category . . . . .	<i>Table 1604.5</i>
Special provisions . . . . .	510.2, 510.5, 510.6
Separation . . . . .	419, 420, 508.2.4, 508.3.3
Swimming pools . . . . .	3109.1
Sprinkler protection . . . . .	903.2.8, 903.3.2
<b>RETAINING WALLS</b> . . . . .	
1807.2, 2304.12.2.8	
Flood provisions . . . . .	G112.4
Seismic . . . . .	1803.5.12
<b>REVIEWING STANDS</b>	
(see BLEACHERS AND GRANDSTANDS)	
<b>RISERS, STAIR</b> (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)	
Alternating tread devices . . . . .	1011.14
Assembly . . . . .	1011.5.2, 1030.10, 1030.14
Closed . . . . .	1011.5.5.3
General . . . . .	1011.5

**INDEX**

Spiral . . . . .	1011.10
Uniformity . . . . .	1011.5.4
<b>RISK CATEGORY (Structural Design)</b> . . . . .	202, 1604.5
Multiple occupancies . . . . .	1604.5.1
<b>RODENTPROOFING</b> . . . . .	2304.3.1.1, 1201.1, Appendix F
<b>ROLL ROOFING</b> . . . . .	1507.6
<b>ROOF, OCCUPIED</b> . . . . .	503.1.4
<b>ROOF ACCESS</b> . . . . .	1011.12
<b>ROOF ASSEMBLIES AND ROOFTOP STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	202
Cooling towers . . . . .	1511.4
Drainage . . . . .	1504, 3201.4
Fire classification . . . . .	1505
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.9
Height modifications . . . . .	504.3
Impact resistance . . . . .	1504.8
Insulation . . . . .	1508
Materials . . . . .	1506
Mechanical equipment screen . . . . .	1511.6
Parapet walls . . . . .	1503.2, 1503.3
Penthouses . . . . .	1511.2
Photovoltaic panels and modules . . . . .	202, 1511.9, 1511.9.1
Radiant barrier . . . . .	202, 1510
Roof ventilation . . . . .	202
Tanks . . . . .	1511.3
Towers, spires, domes and cupolas . . . . .	1511.5
Weather protection . . . . .	1503
Wind resistance . . . . .	1504.1, 1504.3, 1504.4, 1609.5
<b>ROOF CONSTRUCTION</b>	
Construction walkways . . . . .	3306.7
Coverings (see ROOF COVERINGS) . . . . .	1609.5.2
Deck . . . . .	1609.5.1
Draftstopping . . . . .	718.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601
Fireblocking . . . . .	718.2
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1, 1607.13, 3111.1.2
Materials . . . . .	Chapter 6
Penetration of fire-resistant assemblies . . . . .	714
Protection from adjacent construction . . . . .	3307.1
Rain loads . . . . .	1611
Roof structures . . . . .	504.3, 1510, D102.2.9
Signs, roof mounted . . . . .	H110
Slope, minimum . . . . .	Chapter 15
Snow load . . . . .	1608
Solar systems, rooftop-mounted . . . . .	3111.1, 3111.3.2
Trusses . . . . .	2211.1.3, 2303.4, 2308.7.13
Ventilation . . . . .	1202.2
Wood (see ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD)	
<b>ROOF CONSTRUCTION, WOOD</b> . . . . .	602.4, 602.5
Anchorage to walls . . . . .	1604.8.2
Attic access . . . . .	1209.2
Ceiling joists . . . . .	2308.7.1
Diaphragms . . . . .	2305.1, 2306.2
Fastening requirements . . . . .	2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated . . . . .	Table 601, 603.1
Framing . . . . .	2304.11.4, 2308.7
Rafters . . . . .	2306.1.1, 2308.7.2
Sheathing . . . . .	2304.8.2, 2308.7.10
Trusses . . . . .	2303.4, 2308.7.13
Ventilation, attic . . . . .	1202.2
Wind uplift . . . . .	2308.7.5
<b>ROOF COVERINGS</b> . . . . .	1507
Asphalt shingles . . . . .	1507.2
Built up . . . . .	1507.10
Clay tile . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Concrete tile . . . . .	1507.3, 1513
Fire district . . . . .	D102.2.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	603.1, 1505
Flashing . . . . .	1503.2, 1503.5, 1507.2.8, 1507.3.9, 1507.5.7, 1507.7.7, 1507.8.8, 1507.9.9
Impact resistance . . . . .	1504.8
Insulation . . . . .	1508
Liquid-applied coating . . . . .	1507.14
Membrane . . . . .	3102
Metal roof panels . . . . .	1507.4
Metal roof shingles . . . . .	1507.5
Modified bitumen . . . . .	1507.11
Photovoltaic roof panels, building-integrated . . . . .	1507.17
Photovoltaic shingles . . . . .	1507.16
Plastics, light-transmitting panels . . . . .	2609
Reroofing . . . . .	202, 1512
Roll . . . . .	1507.6
Roof recover . . . . .	202, 1512.2.1
Roof replacement . . . . .	202, 1512.2
Single-ply membrane . . . . .	202, 1507.12
Slate shingles . . . . .	1507.7, 1513
Sprayed polyurethane foam . . . . .	1507.13
Thermoplastic single-ply . . . . .	1507.13
Wind loads . . . . .	1504.1, 1609.5
Wood shakes . . . . .	1507.9
Wood shingles . . . . .	1507.8
<b>ROOF DRAINAGE</b> . . . . .	1502
Scuppers . . . . .	202, 1502.3
<b>ROOF REPLACEMENT/RECOVERING</b> . . . . .	1512.2

**INDEX**

**ROOF STRUCTURE (see ROOF ASSEMBLIES and ROOFTOP STRUCTURES)**

**ROOM DIMENSIONS** . . . . . 1209

**ROOMING HOUSE (see BOARDING HOUSE)** . . . 310

**S**

**SAFEGUARDS DURING CONSTRUCTION** . . . . . Chapter 33

Accessibility . . . . . *Chapter 11A, 11B*

Adjoining property protection . . . . . 3307

Construction . . . . . 3302

Demolition . . . . . 3303

Excavations . . . . . 1804.1

Fire extinguishers . . . . . 3309

Fire watch . . . . . 3314

Means of egress . . . . . 3310

Protection of pedestrians . . . . . 3306

Sanitary facilities . . . . . 3305

Site work . . . . . 3304

Sprinkler protection . . . . . 3312

Standpipes . . . . . 3308.1.1, 3311

Temporary use of streets, alleys and public property . . . . . 3308

**SAFETY GLAZING** . . . . . 716.1.2.1, 2406

**SCHOOLS**

[see EDUCATIONAL OCCUPANCY (GROUP E)]

**SEATING**

Accessibility . . . . . *Chapter 11B*

Tables . . . . . 1030.9, 1030.13.1

**SEATING, FIXED** . . . . . 1030

Accessibility . . . . . *Chapter 11B*

Aisles . . . . . 1030.9, 1030.13

Bleachers (see BLEACHERS)

Grandstands (see GRANDSTANDS)

Guards . . . . . 1030.17

Live load . . . . . Table 1607.1

Occupant load . . . . . 1004.6

Stability . . . . . 1030.15

Temporary . . . . . 108

**SECURITY GLAZING** . . . . . 408.7

**SECURITY GRILLES** . . . . . 402.8.8, 1010.3.4

**SEISMIC** . . . . . 1613

Cold-formed steel . . . . . 2210.2, 2211.1.1

Construction documents . . . . . 107, 1603.1.5  
1616.1.2

Earthquake recording equipment . . . . . Appendix I

Fire resistance . . . . . 704.12

Geotechnical investigation . . . . . 1803.5.11, 1803.5.12

Glazing . . . . . 2404

Loads . . . . . 1613

Mapped acceleration parameters . . . . . 1613.2.1  
Figures 1613.2.1(1) through 1613.2.1(6) ||

Masonry . . . . . 2106

Membrane structure . . . . . 3102.7

Seismic design category . . . . . 202, 1613.2.5

Seismic detailing . . . . . 1604

Site class . . . . . 202, 1613.2.2

Site coefficients . . . . . 202, 1613.2.4

Special inspection . . . . . 1705.13

Statement of special inspections . . . . . 1704.3.2

Steel . . . . . 2205.2, 2206.2

Structural observations . . . . . 1704.6.1

Structural testing . . . . . 1705.14

Wood . . . . . 2305, 2308.6.6, 2308.6.8, 2308.6.10

**SERVICE SINKS** . . . . . Table 2902.1 ←

**SERVICE STATION**

(see MOTOR FUEL-DISPENSING FACILITIES)

**SHAFT ENCLOSURE**

(see VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION) . . . . . 713

Continuity . . . . . 713.5, 713.11, 713.12

Elevators . . . . . 713.14

Exceptions . . . . . 712.1, 1019, 1023

Exterior walls . . . . . 713.6

Fire-resistance rating . . . . . 707.3.1, 713.4

Group I-3 . . . . . 408.5

High-rise buildings . . . . . 403.2.1.2, 403.2.3,  
403.3.1.1, 403.5.1

Joints . . . . . 713.9, 715

Materials . . . . . 713.3

Opening protection . . . . . 713.8, 713.10, 714, 717.5.3

Penetration . . . . . 713.8

Refuse and laundry chutes . . . . . 713.13

Required . . . . . 712.1

**SHEAR WALL**

Gypsum board and plaster . . . . . 2505

Masonry . . . . . 202

Wood . . . . . 202, 2305.1, 2306.3

**SHEATHING**

Clearance from earth . . . . . 2304.12.1.2

Fastening . . . . . 2304.10

Fiberboard . . . . . Table 2306.3(2)

Floor . . . . . 2304.8, 2308.4.7

Gypsum . . . . . Table 2506.2, 2508

Moisture protection . . . . . 2304.12.1.2

Roof . . . . . 2304.8

Roof sheathing . . . . . 2308.7.10

Wall . . . . . 2304.6, 2308.5.11

Wood structural panels . . . . . 2303.1.5

**SHIPPING CONTAINERS**

(see INTERMODAL SHIPPING CONTAINERS)

<b>SHOPPING CENTERS</b>	
(see <b>COVERED AND OPEN MALL BUILDINGS</b> )	
<b>SHOTCRETE</b>	1908
<b>SHUTTERS, FIRE</b>	
(see <b>OPENING PROTECTIVES</b> )	716.2.1
<b>SIDEWALKS</b>	105.2, G112.4
Live loads	Table 1607.1
<b>SIGNS</b>	3107, Appendix H
→   Accessibility	1013.4, <i>Chapter 11B</i>
Accessible means of egress	1009.8.2, 1009.9, 1009.11
Animated devices	.H108
Construction	H105, H107
Covered and open mall building	402.6.4
Doors	1010.2.4, 1010.2.12, 1010.2.13
Electrical	.H106
Elevators	1124A, 3002.3, 3007.6.5, 3008.6.5
Encroachment, public right-of-way	3202.3.1
Exit	1013, 2702.2
Floor loads	106.1
Ground	.H109
Height limitation	H109.1, H112.4
Illumination	H106.1
Luminous	403.5.5, 1013.5, 1025
Marquee	.H113
Obstruction	1003.3.2, 1003.3.3, H103
Occupant load, assembly	1004.9
Plastic	.2611, D102.2.10
Portable	.H114
Projecting	.H112
Protruding objects	1003.3
Roof	.H110
→ Stairway identification	1023.8, 1023.9
Standpipe control valve	905.7.1
Toilet room	2902.4, 2902.4.1
Walls	703.4, H111
<b>SITE DRAWINGS</b>	107.2.6
<b>SITE WORK</b>	3304
<b>SKILLED NURSING AND INTERMEDIATE-CARE FACILITIES [OSHPD 2] 1225</b>	
Application	1225.2
Definitions	1225.3
Scope	1225.1
<b>COMMON ELEMENTS</b>	1225.4
Administration space	1225.4.3
Dietetic service space	1225.4.2
Employee dressing rooms and lockers	1225.4.8
Housekeeping rooms	1225.4.6
Laundry	1225.4.7
Nursing service space	1225.4.1
Sterile supplies	1225.4.4
Storage	1225.4.5
<b>OPTIONAL SERVICES</b>	1225.6
General	1225.6.1
Occupational therapy service	1225.6.3
Physical therapy service	1225.6.2
Social work space	1225.6.5
Special treatment program service	1225.6.6
Speech pathology and/or audiology service	1225.6.4
<b>SKILLED NURSING UNIT MODELS</b>	1225.5
<b>HOUSEHOLD MODEL</b>	1225.5.2
Cluster/household unit and resident unit	1225.5.2.2
General construction	1225.5.2.1
Resident living area	1225.5.2.5
Resident room	1225.5.2.3
Resident support area	1225.5.2.4
Staff support area	1225.5.2.6
<b>MEDICAL MODEL</b>	1225.5.1
Activity programming space	1225.5.1.4
General construction	1225.5.1.1
Nursing service space	1225.5.1.2
Pharmaceutical service space	1225.5.1.3
<b>SKYLIGHTS</b>	2405, 3106.3
Light, required	1204.2
Loads	2404
Plastic	.2610
Protection from adjacent construction	3307.1
Vertical opening protective	712.1.15
<b>SLAB ON GROUND, CONCRETE</b>	1907, 2304.12.1.4
<b>SLATE SHINGLES</b>	1507.7, 1513
<b>SLEEPING UNITS</b>	202
Accessibility	<i>Chapter 11A, 11B</i>
Cooking appliances	420.11, 420.11.2
Group I	308
Group R	310
Scoping	101.2
Separation	420.2, 420.3
<b>SMOKE ALARMS</b>	202
Bathrooms	907.2.11.4
Cooking appliances	907.2.11.3
Live/work unit	508.5.7, 907.2.11.2
Multiple-station	907.2.11
Residential aircraft hangars	412.4.3, 412.4.4, 907.2.22
Residential occupancies	420.6, 907.2.11
Single-station	907.2.11
<b>SMOKE BARRIERS</b>	202
Construction	407.5, 709.4, 909.5
Doors	709.5, 716.2.2.1, 909.5.3
Fire-resistance rating	703, 709.3

**INDEX**

Glazing, rated . . . . .	716.3.4
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.8
Joints . . . . .	709.7, 715
Marking . . . . .	703.4, 703.5
Materials . . . . .	709.2
Opening protection . . . . .	709.5, 714.4, 714.5.4, 716, 717.5.5, 909.5.3
Penetrations. . . . .	709.6, 714
Smoke control . . . . .	909.5
Special provisions	
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.2, 422.3, 709.5.1
Group I-1 . . . . .	420.6, 709.5.1
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.5
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.6, 408.7
Underground . . . . .	405.4.2, 405.4.3
<b>SMOKE COMPARTMENT</b> . . . . .	202, 407, 408, 422
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)	
<b>SMOKE CONTROL</b> . . . . .	909
Amusement areas, special . . . . .	411.1
Atrium buildings . . . . .	404.5
Covered and open mall building . . . . .	402.7.2
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.9
High-rise (smoke removal). . . . .	403.4.7, 1023.12
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.19
Stages . . . . .	410.2.7.2
Standby power systems. . . . .	909.11, 909.20.7.2, 2702.2
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.5
<b>SMOKE DAMPERS</b> . . . . .	202, 717.2, 717.3, 717.4, 717.5
<b>SMOKE DETECTORS</b> . . . . .	202
Covered and open mall building .	402.8.6.1, 907.2.21
High-rise buildings . . . . .	403.4.1, 907.2.14
HPM . . . . .	415.11.10.3
Institutional I-2 . . . . .	407.8
Smoke-activated doors . . . . .	716.2.6.6
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.3
Underground buildings. . . . .	907.2.19
<b>SMOKE DEVELOPMENT</b> . . . . .	202, 803.1.2, Table 803.13
<b>SMOKE EXHAUST SYSTEMS</b>	
Underground buildings. . . . .	405.5, 907.2.19, 909.2
<b>SMOKE PARTITIONS</b> . . . . .	202, 710
Continuity . . . . .	710.4
Doors . . . . .	710.5
Ducts and air transfer openings. . . . .	710.8
Fire-resistance rating . . . . .	710.3
Inspection . . . . .	110.3.8
Joints . . . . .	710.7
Marking . . . . .	703.4, 703.5
Materials . . . . .	710.2
Opening protection . . . . .	710.5, 717.5.7
Penetrations. . . . .	710.6
Special provisions	
Atriums . . . . .	404.6
Group I-2 . . . . .	407.3
<b>SMOKE REMOVAL (High rise)</b> . . . . .	403.4.7
<b>SMOKE VENTS</b> . . . . .	410.2.7.1, 910
<b>SMOKEPROOF ENCLOSURES</b> . . . . .	202, 403.5.4, 1023.12
Design . . . . .	909.20
<b>SNOW LOAD</b> . . . . .	1608
Glazing . . . . .	2404
<b>SOILS AND FOUNDATIONS</b>	
(see FOUNDATION) . . . . .	Chapter 18, <i>Chapter 18A</i>
Depth of footings . . . . .	1809.4
Evacuation, grading and fill . . . . .	1804, 3304, J106, J107
Expansive. . . . .	1803.5.3, 1808.6
Flood hazard . . . . .	1804.5
Footing and foundations. . . . .	1808
Footing on or adjacent to slopes . . . . .	1808.7, 3304.1.3
Foundation walls . . . . .	1807.1.5, 3304.1.4
Geotechnical investigations . . . . .	1803
Grading . . . . .	1804.4, Appendix j
Load-bearing values. . . . .	1806
Soil boring and sampling . . . . .	1803.4
Soil lateral load. . . . .	1610
Special inspection . . . . .	1705.6
<b>SOLAR ENERGY SYSTEMS</b> . . . . .	3111
Photovoltaic systems . . . . .	3111.3
Roof live load . . . . .	3111.1.2
Solar thermal systems . . . . .	3111.2
Wind resistance . . . . .	3111.1.1
<b>SORORITIES</b> . . . . .	310.3
<b>SOUND TRANSMISSION</b> . . . . .	1206
<b>SOUND-INSULATING MATERIALS</b>	
(see INSULATON) . . . . .	720
<b>SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION</b> . . . . .	Chapter 31
Automatic vehicular gates . . . . .	3110
Awnings and canopies (see AWNINGS and CANOPIES) . . . . .	3105
Marquees (see MARQUEES) . . . . .	3106
Membrane structures (see MEMBRANE STRUCTURES) . . . . .	3102
New materials . . . . .	1702
Pedestrian walkways and tunnels (see WALKWAYS and TUNNELED WALKWAYS) . . . . .	3104
Signs (see SIGNS) . . . . .	3107
Solar energy systems. . . . .	3111
Swimming pool enclosures and safety devices (see SWIMMING POOL) . . . . .	3109
Telecommunication and broadcast towers (see TOWERS) . . . . .	3108

Temporary structures . . . . .	3103	413
(see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES) . . . . .		
<b>SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS</b>		
(see INSPECTIONS) . . . . .	Chapter 17,	
	110.3.10	
Alternative test procedure . . . . .	1707	
Approvals . . . . .	1703	
Continuous special inspection . . . . .	202	
Contractor responsibilities . . . . .	1704.4	
Design strengths of materials . . . . .	1706	
General . . . . .	1701	
In-situ load tests . . . . .	1708	
Periodic special inspection . . . . .	202	
<i>Mass timber construction</i> . . . . .	1705.5.7, 1705A.5.7	
<i>Periodic special inspection</i> . . . . .	202	
Preconstruction load tests . . . . .	1709	
<i>Special inspections</i> . . . . .	1705	
Special inspections . . . . .	1705	
Statement of special inspections . . . . .	1704.3	
Structural observations . . . . .	1704.6	
Testing seismic resistance . . . . .	1705.13	
<b>SPECIAL INSPECTOR</b> . . . . .	202	
Qualifications . . . . .	1704.2.1	
<b>SPRAL STAIRWAYS</b> . . . . .	1011.10	
Construction . . . . .	1011.2, 1011.3, 1011.10	
Exceptions . . . . .	1011.5.2, 1011.5.3, 1011.5.5.3, 1011.10	
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.3.4	
Live/work . . . . .	508.5.5	
Stages . . . . .	410.5.3.4	
<b>SPORTS ACTIVITY, AREA OF</b>		
(see RECREATIONAL FACILITIES) . . . . .	202	
<b>SPRAY APPLICATION OF FLAMMABLE FINISHES</b> . . . . .	416	
<b>SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTANT MATERIALS</b> . . . . .	202	
Application . . . . .	704.13	
Inspection . . . . .	1705.15, 1705.16	
Steel column calculated fire resistance . . .	722.5.2.2	
<b>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, AUTOMATIC</b> . . . . .	903, 3312	
Exempt locations . . . . .	903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2	
Fire department location . . . . .	912	
Limited area sprinkler systems . . . . .	903.3.8	
Signs . . . . .	914.2	
<b>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, REQUIRED</b> . . . . .	903	
Aircraft related . . . . .	412.2.4, 412.3.6, 412.4.5	
Ambulatory care facilities . . . . .	422.4, 903.2.2	
Amusement areas, special . . . . .	411.2	
Assembly . . . . .	903.2.1, 1030.6.2.3	
Atrium . . . . .	404.3	
Basements . . . . .	903.2.11.1	
Building area . . . . .	506.2	
Combustible storage . . . . .	413	
Commercial kitchen . . . . .	903.2.11.5	
Construction . . . . .	903.2.12	
Covered and open mall building . . . . .	402.5	
Drying rooms . . . . .	417.4	
Education . . . . .	903.2.3	
Exempt locations . . . . .	903.3.1.1.1, 903.3.1.1.2	
Factory . . . . .	903.2.4	
Fire areas . . . . .	707.3.10	
Hazardous materials . . . . .	Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.2.5(2), 903.2.11.4	
Hazardous occupancies . . . . .	415.4, 415.11.7.4, 415.11.12, 705.8.1, 903.2.5	
Height increase . . . . .	Table 504.3	
High-rise buildings . . . . .	403.3, 903.2.11.3	
Incidental uses . . . . .	Table 509.1	
Institutional . . . . .	407.7, 408.11, 420.5, 903.2.6, 903.3.2	
Laundry chutes, refuse chutes, termination rooms and incinerator rooms . . . . .	713.13, 903.2.11.2	
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5.7, 903.2.8	
Mercantile . . . . .	903.2.7	
Mezzanines . . . . .	505.2.1, 505.2.3, 505.3.2	
Multistory buildings . . . . .	903.2.11.3	
Occupied roofs . . . . .	503.1.4	
Parking garages . . . . .	406.6.3, 903.2.9.1, 903.2.10.1	
Play structures . . . . .	424.3	
Residential . . . . .	420.4, 903.2.8, 903.3.2	
Solar photovoltaic power systems . . . . .	903.3.1.1.3	
Special amusement areas . . . . .	411.2	
Spray finishing booth . . . . .	416.5	
Stages . . . . .	410.6	
Storage . . . . .	903.2.9, 903.2.10	
Supervision (see SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION) . . . . .	903.4	
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.3, 903.2.11.1	
Unlimited area . . . . .	507	
<b>SPRINKLER SYSTEM, SUPERVISION</b> . . . . .	903.4	
Service . . . . .	901.6	
Underground buildings . . . . .	405.3	
<b>STAGES AND PLATFORMS</b> . . . . .	202, 303, 410	
Dressing rooms . . . . .	410.4	
Fire barrier wall . . . . .	410.4.1, 410.4.2	
Floor finish and floor covering . . . . .	410.2, 410.3, 804.4, 805.1	
Horizontal assembly . . . . .	410.4.1, 410.4.2	
Means of egress . . . . .	410.5	
Platform, temporary . . . . .	410.3.1	
Platform construction . . . . .	410.3, 603.1	
Proscenium curtain . . . . .	410.2.5	

## INDEX

Proscenium wall.....	410.2.4
Roof vents .....	410.2.7.1
Scenery .....	410.2.6
Smoke control .....	410.2.7.2
Sprinkler protection .....	410.6
Stage construction.....	410.2, 603.1
Standpipes.....	410.7, 905.3.4
Technical production areas ..	202, 410.2.2, 410.5.3
Ventilation .....	410.2.7
<b>STAIRWAY (see ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES, SPIRAL STAIRWAYS, STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION and STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE)</b>	
<b>STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION</b>	
Alternating tread .....	1011.14
Circular (see Curved)	
Construction.....	1011.7
Curved.....	1011.4, 1011.9
Discharge barrier.....	1023.8
During construction .....	3310.1
Elevators .....	1011.12.1, 1023.4, 1023.10, 3002.7
Enclosure under.....	1011.7.3, 1011.7.4
Exit access.....	1019
Exterior exit .....	1027, 1028.2
Fireblocking .....	718.2.4
Guards.....	1015.2, 1015.3, 1607.8, 1607.9
Handrails .....	1011.11, 1014, 1607.8, 1607.9
Headroom .....	1011.3
Illumination.....	1008.2, 1204.4, 1204.5
Interior exit.....	1023
Ladders .....	408.3.5, 410.5.3.4, 1011.15, 1011.16
Landings .....	1011.6, 1011.8
Live load .....	Table 1607.1, 1607.9
Locking .....	1010.2.7
Luminous.....	403.5.5, 411.6.1, 1025
Roof access.....	1011.12
Seismic anchorage .....	2308.4.10
Spiral (see SPIRAL STAIRWAYS).....	408.3.4, 410.5.3.4, 508.5.5, 1011.10
Stepped aisles .....	1030.14.2
Transitions .....	1030.9.7, 1030.9.8, 1030.10
Travel distance .....	1017.3.1
Treads and risers.....	1011.4, 1011.5
Width/capacity .....	1005.3.1, 1011.2
Winders .....	1011.4, 1011.5, 1011.10
<b>STAIRWAY ENCLOSURE</b> .....	713.1, 1019, 1023
Accessibility .....	1009.3
Construction.....	1019, 1023.2
Discharge.....	1023.3.1, 1028.2
Doors .....	716.2.6.1, 1010.2.7
Elevators within .....	1023.4, 3002.7
Exit access.....	1019
Exterior walls .....	705.2, 707.4, 708.5, 713.6, 1023.2, 1027.6
Fire-resistant construction .....	1019.2, 1023.2
Group I-2 .....	1019.4
Group I-3 .....	408.3.8, 1019.4
High-rise.....	403.5
Penetrations.....	1023.5
Pressurization .....	909.6, 909.20.5, 1023.12
Smokeproof .....	403.5.4, 405.7.2, 909.20, 1023.12
Space below, use.....	1011.7.3, 1011.7.4
Ventilation .....	1023.6
<b>STANDARDS (see REFERENCED STANDARDS)</b>	
<b>STANDBY POWER</b> .....	2702.1, 2702.2, 2702.4
Atriums.....	404.7, 2702.2
Covered and open mall buildings.....	402.7.3, 2702.2
Elevators .....	1009.4, 2702.2, 3003.1, 3007.8, 3008.8
Fuel line piping protection .....	2702.1.2
Hazardous occupancy .....	414.5.2, 415.11.11, 421.7, 2702.2
High-rise.....	403.4.8, 2702.2
Horizontal sliding doors .....	1010.3.3, 2702.2
Membrane structures .....	2702.2
Platform lifts .....	1009.5, 2702.2
Smoke control .....	909.11, 2702.2
Smokeproof enclosure .....	909.20.7.2, 2702.2
Special inspection .....	1705.13.6
Underground buildings.....	405.8, 2702.2
<b>STANDPIPE AND HOSE SYSTEMS</b>	
(see STANDPIPES, REQUIRED) .....	905, 3106.4, 3308.1.1, 3311
Cabinet locks .....	905.7.2
Dry .....	905.8
Hose connection location.....	905.1, 905.4, 905.5, 905.6, 912
<b>STANDPIPES, REQUIRED</b>	
Assembly .....	905.3.1, 905.3.2, 905.3.4
Covered and open mall buildings.....	402.7.1, 905.3.3
During construction .....	905.10, 3311
Elevators, fire service access.....	3007.9
Helistops .....	905.3.6
Marinas .....	905.3.7
Parking garages .....	406.5.8
Roof gardens and landscaped roofs .....	905.3.8
Stages .....	410.7, 905.3.4
Underground buildings.....	405.9, 905.3.5
<b>STATE LAW</b> .....	102.2
<b>STEEL</b> .....	Chapter 22, Chapter 22A
Bolting .....	2204.2
Cable structures .....	2208
Calculated fire resistance .....	722.5

## INDEX

Cold-formed . . . . .	202, 2210, 2211	423
Composite structural steel and concrete . . . . .	2206	
Conditions of restraint . . . . .	703.2.1.3	
Decks . . . . .	2210.1.1	
Identification . . . . .	2202	
Joists . . . . .	202, 2207	
Open-web joist . . . . .	2207	
Parapet walls . . . . .	1503.3, 1503.5	
Protection . . . . .	2203	
Seismic provisions . . . . .	2205.2, 2206.2, 2207.1.1, 2210.2, 2211.1.1	
Special inspections . . . . .	1705.3	
Storage racks . . . . .	2209	
Structural steel . . . . .	2205	
Welding . . . . .	2204.1	
<b>STONE VENEER</b> . . . . .	1404.7	
Slab-type . . . . .	1404.8	
<b>STOP WORK ORDERS</b> . . . . .	115	
<b>STORAGE OCCUPANCY (GROUP S)</b> . . . . .	311	
Accessibility . . . . .	<i>Chapter 11B</i>	
Accessory . . . . .	311.1.1	
Area . . . . .	406.5.4, 406.5.5, 406.6.1, 503, 505, 506, 507, 508	
Equipment platforms. . . . .	505.2	
Group provisions		
Hazard storage, low, Group S-2 . . . . .	311.3	
Hazard storage, moderate, Group S-1 . . . . .	311.2	
Hazardous material display and storage . . . . .	414.2.5	
Height . . . . .	406.5.4, 406.6.1, 503, 504, 505, 508, 510	
Incidental uses . . . . .	509	
Interior finishes . . . . .	Table 803.13, 804	
Live loads . . . . .	Table 1607.1	
Means of egress		
Aisles . . . . .	1018.5	
Stairway, exit access . . . . .	1019	
Travel distance . . . . .	1006.3, 1017.2, 1017.2.2, 1006.2.1	
Mixed occupancies . . . . .	508.3, 508.4	
Accessory . . . . .	311.1.1, 508.2	
Parking above/below . . . . .	510.3, 510.4, 510.7, 510.8, 510.9	
Special mixed . . . . .	510.2	
Occupancy exception . . . . .	311.1.1	
Plumbing fixtures . . . . .	2902	
Special provisions		
Aircraft related occupancies . . . . .	412	
High-piled combustible . . . . .	413	
Parking garages . . . . .	406, 510	
Sprinkler protection. . . . .	903.2.10	
Unlimited area . . . . .	507.3, 507.4, 507.5	
<b>STORM SHELTER</b> . . . . .	423	
Education . . . . .	423.5	
Emergency operation facilities . . . . .	423.4	
Refuge area (see REFUGE AREA)		
Risk category . . . . .	1604.5.1	
<b>STRENGTH</b>		
Design requirements . . . . .	1604.2	
Masonry . . . . .	202	
Nominal . . . . .	202	
Required . . . . .	202	
<b>STRENGTH DESIGN</b> . . . . .	202, 1604.1	
Factored load . . . . .	202	
Limit state . . . . .	202	
Load combinations . . . . .	1605	
Load factor . . . . .	202	
Masonry . . . . .	2108	
<b>STRUCTURAL DESIGN</b> . . . . .	<i>Chapter 16, 107.2.7</i> <i>Chapter 16A</i>	
Aluminum . . . . .	<i>Chapter 20</i>	
Concrete . . . . .	<i>Chapter 19, Chapter 19A</i>	
Foundations . . . . .	<i>Chapter 18, Chapter 18A</i>	
Masonry . . . . .	<i>Chapter 21, Chapter 21A</i>	
Steel . . . . .	<i>Chapter 22, Chapter 22A</i>	
Wood. . . . .	<i>Chapter 23</i>	
<b>STRUCTURAL OBSERVATION</b> . . . . .	202, 1704.6	
<b>STUCCO</b> . . . . .	2512	
<b>SUSCEPTIBLE BAY</b> . . . . .	202	
Ponding instability . . . . .	1611.2	
<b>SWIMMING POOL</b> . . . . .	3109	
Flood provisions . . . . .	<i>G112.5</i>	
Glass. . . . .	2406.4	
Toilet facilities for public pools . . . . .	2902.1.1, Table 2902.1	
<b>T</b>		
<b>TECHNICAL PRODUCTION AREAS</b> . . . . .	410.2.2, 410.5.3	
<b>TELEPHONE EXCHANGES</b> . . . . .	304	
<b>TELESCOPIC SEATING</b> (see FOLDING AND TELESCOPIC SEATING)		
<b>TEMPORARY STRUCTURES</b> . . . . .	3103	
Certificate of occupancy . . . . .	108.3, 111.3	
Conformance . . . . .	108.2, 3103.1.1	
Construction documents . . . . .	3103.2	
Encroachment, public rights-of-way . . . . .	3202.3	
Flood provisions . . . . .	<i>G113</i>	
Means of egress . . . . .	3103.4	
Permit . . . . .	108.1, 3103.1.2	
Power, temporary . . . . .	108.3, 112.2	
Termination of approval . . . . .	108.4	

**INDEX****TENANT SEPARATION**

Covered and open mall building . . . 402.4.2.1, 708.1

**TENTS (see TEMPORARY STRUCTURES)****TERMITES, PROTECTION FROM** . . . . . 2304.12**TERRA COTTA** . . . . . 1404.9, 1411**TESTING**

Automatic fire-extinguishing systems . . . . . 904.4

Automatic water mist systems . . . . . 904.11.3

Building official required. . . . . 104.11.1

Carbon dioxide systems . . . . . 904.8

Clean agent system. . . . . 904.10

Dry chemical systems . . . . . 904.6

Emergency and standby power . . . . . 2702.4

Fire alarm systems . . . . . 907.7, 907.8

Fire pumps. . . . . 913.5

Fire-resistant materials . . . . . 703.2

Foam systems . . . . . 904.7

Glazing. . . . . 2406, 2408.2.1

Halon systems . . . . . 904.9

Personnel and material hoists . . . . . 3004.4

Roof tile . . . . . 1504.3.1

Seismic . . . . . 1704.2

Smoke control . . . . . 909.3, 909.5.2, 909.10.2,

909.12.1, 909.13.3, 909.18,

909.20.7.3, 909.21.7, 1705.19

Soils. . . . . 1803

Sound transmission. . . . . 1208

Sprinkler protection . . . . . 903.5

Structural (see SPECIAL INSPECTIONS AND TESTS)

Wet chemical systems . . . . . 904.5

**TESTING AGENCY (definition)** . . . . . 202**THEATERS [see ASSEMBLY OCCUPANCY (GROUP A), PROJECTION ROOMS and STAGES AND PLATFORMS]****THERMAL BARRIER,  
FOAM PLASTIC INSULATION** . . . . . 2603.4, 2603.5.2**THERMAL-INSULATING MATERIALS  
(see INSULATION)** . . . . . 712**TILE** . . . . . 202

Ceramic (see CERAMIC TILE)

Fire resistance, clay or shale . . . . . 721.1

**TODDLER** . . . . . 202**TOILETS and TOILET ROOMS** . . . Chapter 29, 3305

Accessible . . . . . 1127A, 1134A, 1607.9.2

Construction/finish materials . . . . . 1210

Door locking . . . . . 2902.3.5

Family or assisted-use. . . . . 2902.1.3, 2902.2.1

Fixture count . . . . . Table 2902.1

Grab bar live loads. . . . . 1607.9.2

Lavatory distribution. . . . . 2902.1.4

Location . . . . . 2902.3.1, 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3, 2903.3.6

Partitions . . . . . 1210.3

Privacy . . . . . 1210.3

Public facilities . . . . . 2902.3, 3114

Signs . . . . . Chapter 11A, 11B, 1143A, 2902.4, 2902.4.1

Single user . . . . . 2902.1.3

Ventilation . . . . . 1202.5.2.1

**TORNADO SHELTER (see STORM SHELTER)****TOWERS**

Airport traffic control . . . . . 412.2

Cooling . . . . . 1511.4

Location and access . . . . . 3108.2

Radio . . . . . 3108

Television . . . . . 3108

**TOXIC MATERIALS****(see HIGH-HAZARD OCCUPANCY (GROUP H))**

Classification . . . . . 307.6, 414, 415

Gas detection system. . . . . 415.11.7, 421.5, 908.3

**TRANSIENT LODGING (definition)** . . . . . 202**TRAVEL DISTANCE**

Area of refuge . . . . . 1009.6.1

Assembly seating. . . . . 1030.7

Atrium. . . . . 404.9

Balcony, exterior . . . . . 1017.2.1

Care suites (Group I-2) . . . . . 407.4.2, 407.4.4

Common path of travel. . . . . 1006.2.1

Drinking fountains . . . . . 2902.5

Exit access. . . . . 1017.2

Mall. . . . . 402.8.5, 402.8.6

Measurement. . . . . 1017.3

Refrigeration machinery/  
refrigerated rooms . . . . . 1006.2.2.2, 1006.2.2.3Smoke compartments  
(Group I-2 and I-3) . . . . . 407.5, 408.6, 408.9

Special amusement areas . . . . . 411.2

Stories with one exit. . . . . 1006.3.4

Toilet facilities. . . . . 2902.3.2, 2902.3.3

**TREADS, STAIR (see STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION)**

Concentrated live load. . . . . Table 1607.1

**TREATED WOOD** . . . . . 202

Fire-retardant-treated wood . . . . . 2303.2

Pressure-treated wood. . . . . 2303.1.9

Stress adjustments. . . . . 2306.1.3

**TRUSSES**

Cold-formed steel . . . . . 2211.1.3

Fire resistance. . . . . 704.5

Materials . . . . . Chapter 6

Metal-plate-connected wood . . . . . 2303.4.6

Wood . . . . . 2303.4

**TSUNAMI** . . . . . 202

Flood hazard . . . . . Appendix M

Loads . . . . . 1615

**TUNNELED WALKWAY** . . . . . 3104, 3202.1

**INDEX**

<b>TURNSTILES</b> .....	1010.5
<b>U</b>	
<b>UMBRELLA STRUCTURE</b> .....	202, 3103
<b>UNDERGROUND BUILDINGS</b> .....	405
Alarms and detection .....	405.6
Compartmentation .....	405.4
Construction type .....	405.2
Elevators.....	405.4.3
Emergency power loads.....	405.8, 2702.2
Means of egress.....	405.7
Smoke barrier.....	405.4.2, 405.4.3
Smoke exhaust/control.....	405.5
Smokeproof enclosure .....	405.7.2, 1023.12
Sprinkler protection.....	405.3
Standby power .....	405.8, 2702.2
Standpipe system.....	405.9, 905.3.5
<b>UNDERLAYMENT</b> .....	202, 1507.1.1, 1507.2.3, 1507.3.3, 1507.4.5, 1507.5.3, 1507.6.3, 1507.7.3, 1507.8.3, Table 1507.8, 1507.9.3, 1507.16.3, 1507.17.3
Application .....	1507.1.1, 1507.3.3, 1507.17.4
Ice barrier .....	1507.1.2, 1507.2.7, 1507.5.4, 1507.6.4, 1507.7.4, 1507.8.4, 1507.9.4, 1507.16.4
<b>UNLIMITED AREA BUILDINGS</b> .....	507
<b>UNSAFE STRUCTURES AND EQUIPMENT</b> <i>(see STRUCTURES, UNSAFE)</i> .....	116
Appeals.....	113, Appendix B
Revocation of permit.....	105.6
Stop work orders .....	115
Utilities disconnection.....	112.3
<b>UNSTABLE MATERIALS</b> .....	307.3, Table 414.2.5(1), Table 414.5.1, Table 415.6.5, 415.7.1, 415.9
<b>UNUSABLE SPACE</b> .....	711.2.6
<b>USE AND OCCUPANCY</b> .....	Chapter 3
Accessory.....	508.2
Classification .....	302.1
Detailed requirements based on occupancy and use.....	Chapter 4
Incidental uses .....	509, Table 509.1
Mixed .....	508.3, 508.4
Use designation .....	302.2
<b>UTILITIES</b> .....	112
Service connection .....	112.1
Service disconnection.....	112.3
Temporary connection .....	112.2

<b>UTILITY AND MISCELLANEOUS</b>	
<b>OCCUPANCY (GROUP U)</b> .....	312
Accessibility .....	Chapter 11A, 11B
Agricultural buildings.....	Appendix C
Area .....	503, 505, 506, 507, 508
Flood provisions .....	Appendix G
Height .....	503, 504, 508
Incidental uses .....	509
Live loads .....	Table 1607.1
Means of egress	
Exit signs.....	1013.1
Stairway, exit access.....	1019
Mixed occupancies .....	508.3, 508.4
Special provisions	
Private garages and carports .....	406.3
Residential aircraft hangars.....	412.4
Sprinkler protection.....	903.2.11
Travel distance .....	1006.2.1, 1006.3, 1017.1
<b>V</b>	
<b>VALUATION OR VALUE (see FEES, PERMIT)</b> .....	109.3
<b>VEGETATIVE</b>	
Artificial decorative .....	419, 419.1
Vegetative roofs .....	202, 1507.15
<b>VAPOR RETARDERS</b> .....	1405
<b>VEHICLE BARRIER SYSTEMS</b> .....	202, 406.4.2, 1607.10
<b>VEHICLE SHOW ROOMS</b> .....	304
<b>VEHICULAR FUELING</b> .....	406.7
<b>VEHICULAR GATES</b> .....	202, 3110
<b>VEHICULAR REPAIR</b> .....	406.8
<b>VENEER</b>	
Cement plaster .....	1404.15, 1411
Fastening .....	1404.17
Fiber-cement siding .....	1404.16, 1411
Glazing .....	1404.12, 1411
Masonry, adhered.....	1404.10, 2101.2.1, 2103.2.4
Masonry, anchored.....	1404.6, 1411, 2101.2.1
Metal.....	1404.11
Plastic .....	1411, 2605
Slab-type.....	1404.8, 1411
Stone.....	1404.7, 1411
Terra cotta.....	1404.9, 1411
Vinyl .....	1404.14, 1411
Wood.....	1404.5
<b>VENTILATION (see MECHANICAL)</b> .....	101.4.2
Aircraft paint hangars .....	412.5.6
Attic.....	1202.2, 1503.4
Bathrooms.....	1202.5.2.1

**INDEX**

<b>California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones</b> . . . . .	1202.3.1, Table 1202.3.1
Crawl space . . . . .	1202.4
Exhaust, hazardous . . . . .	1202.6
Exhaust, HPM . . . . .	415.11.1.6
Hazardous . . . . .	414.3, 415.9.1.7, 415.11.1.6, 415.11.1.8.1, 415.11.3.2, 415.11.6.4, 415.11.6.8, 415.11.7.4, 415.11.11.1, 415.11.11.2
High-rise stairways . . . . .	1023.11
HPM service corridors . . . . .	415.11.3.2
Live/work unit . . . . .	508.5.10
Mechanical . . . . .	1202.1
Natural . . . . .	1202.5
Parking . . . . .	406.5.2, 406.5.5, 406.5.10, 406.6.2
Projection rooms . . . . .	409.3
Repair garages . . . . .	406.8.1
Roof . . . . .	1202.2
Smoke exhaust . . . . .	910
Smoke removal, high-rise buildings . . . . .	403.4.7
Smokeproof enclosure . . . . .	909.20.3, 909.20.4, 909.20.6, 1023.12
Spray rooms and spaces . . . . .	416.2.2, 416.3
Stages . . . . .	410.2.5, 410.2.7
Under-floor ventilation . . . . .	1202.4
<b>VENTS, PENETRATION PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	714
<b>VERMICULITE, FIRE RESISTANT</b> . . . . .	721
<b>VERTICAL OPENING PROTECTION</b>	
Atriums . . . . .	404.6
Duct penetrations . . . . .	717.1
Elevators . . . . .	713.14, 3007.6.1, 3008.6.1
Exceptions . . . . .	1019, 1023.2
Group I-3 . . . . .	408.5
High-rise . . . . .	403.2.1.2, 403.2.2, 403.5.1
Live/work units . . . . .	508.5.6
Open parking garages . . . . .	406.5.9
Permitted vertical openings . . . . .	712
Shaft enclosure . . . . .	713, 1019, 1023.2
<b>VESTIBULES, EXIT DISCHARGE</b> . . . . .	1028.2
<b>VINYL</b>	
Expanded . . . . .	202, 803.7, 803.8
Rigid . . . . .	1404.14
<b>VIOLATIONS</b> . . . . .	114
<b>VOICE ALARM (see ALARMS, VOICE)</b>	
<b>W</b>	
<b>WALKWAY</b> . . . . .	3104
During construction . . . . .	3306
Encroachment, public right-of-way . . . . .	3202.3.4
Fire resistance . . . . .	Table 601
<b>LIVE LOAD</b> . . . . .	Table 1607.1
<b>MATERIALS PER CONSTRUCTION TYPE</b> . . . . .	Chapter 6
<b>OPENING PROTECTION</b> . . . . .	716, 717
<b>WALL, EXTERIOR</b> . . . . .	705, 1401
Bearing . . . . .	Chapter 6
<i>California Energy Code and International Energy Conservation Code Climate Zones</i> . . . . .	1404.3.3
Combustible wall covering . . . . .	1405
Coverings . . . . .	1404
Drawings . . . . .	107.2.4
Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS) . . . . .	1407
Exterior structural members . . . . .	704.10
Fire district . . . . .	D102.1, D102.2.6
Fire-resistance ratings . . . . .	703, 705.5, Table 705.5, 706.5.1, 707.4, 1402.4
Flashing, veneered walls . . . . .	1404.4, 1404.10.1, 1405.10.1.2
Foam plastic insulation . . . . .	2603.4.1.4, 2603.5
Glazing, rated . . . . .	715.7
Joints . . . . .	705.9, 714
Light-transmitting plastic panels . . . . .	2607
Materials . . . . .	705.4, 1403.1, 1405
Metal Composite Materials (MCM) . . . . .	1406
Nonbearing . . . . .	Chapter 6
Opening protection . . . . .	705.8, 705.10, 716.2.5.4
Parapets . . . . .	705.11
Performance requirements . . . . .	1402
Projections . . . . .	705.2
Structural stability . . . . .	705.6
Vapor retarders . . . . .	1404.3
Veneer (see VENEER)	
Weather resistance . . . . .	1402.2, 1404.2, 1406.6, 1407.4
Weather-resistant barriers . . . . .	1404.2, 1409.6
<b>WALL, FIRE (see FIRE WALLS)</b>	
<b>WALL, FOUNDATION (see FOUNDATIONS)</b>	
<b>WALL, INTERIOR</b>	
Finishes . . . . .	803, 1210.2
Opening protection . . . . .	716, 717
<b>WALL, INTERIOR NONBEARING (see PARTITIONS)</b>	
<b>WALL, MASONRY</b> . . . . .	202
Wood contact . . . . .	2304.12.1.3, 2304.12.2.1
<b>WALL, PARAPET</b> . . . . .	705.11, 1503.3, 2109.2.4.3
<b>WALL, PARTY (see FIRE WALLS)</b>	
<b>WALL, PENETRATIONS</b> . . . . .	714.4
<b>WALL, RETAINING (see RETAINING WALL)</b>	
<b>WALL, VENEERED (see VENEER)</b> . . . . .	Chapter 14
<b>WALL, WOOD CONSTRUCTION</b>	
Bracing . . . . .	2308.6



**INDEX****WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS**

(see WOOD) .....	202, 2303.1.5
Bracing .....	2308.6
Decorative .....	2303.3
Diaphragms .....	2305.2, 2306.2
Fastening .....	2304.10
Fire-retardant-treated .....	2303.2
Performance category .....	202
Quality .....	2303.1.5
Roof sheathing .....	2304.8, 2308.7.10
Seismic shear panels .....	2305.1, 2308.6.6.2
Shear walls .....	2306.3
Sheathing .....	2304.6.1
Standards .....	2306.1
Subfloors .....	805.1.1
Veneer .....	1404.5

**Y**

<b>YARDS OR COURTS</b> .....	202, 1201.1, 1205
Exit discharge .....	1027.4, 1029.1
Group I-2 .....	407.10
Group I-3 .....	408.3.6, 408.6.2
Light, natural .....	1204
Occupant load .....	1004.7
Parking garage, open .....	406.5.5
Unlimited area building .....	507.2, 507.2.1

# HISTORY NOTE APPENDIX

## 2022 California Building Code California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2 Volume 2

||

### HISTORY:

For prior code history, see the History Note Appendix to the *California Building Code* 2019 Triennial Edition, effective January 1, 2020.

1. (BSC 05/21, CEC 03/21, HCD 05/21, DSA/AC 01/21, DSA-SS/CC 05/21, SFM 04/21, OSHPD 04/21 and OSHPD 06/21)—Adoption by reference of the 2021 *International Building Code* with necessary amendments to become the 2022 *California Building Code*, and repeal of the 2018 edition of the *International Building Code*; effective on January 1, 2023.





ICC  
EVALUATION  
SERVICE®

# Specify and Approve *with Confidence*



**When facing new or unfamiliar materials, look for an ICC-ES Evaluation Report or Listing before approving for installation.**

ICC-ES® **Evaluation Reports** are the most widely accepted and trusted technical reports for code compliance.

ICC-ES **Building Product Listings** and **PMG Listings** show product compliance with applicable standard(s) referenced in the building and plumbing codes as well as other applicable codes.

When you specify or approve products or materials with an ICC-ES report, building product listing or PMG listing, you avoid delays on projects and improve your bottom line.

ICC-ES is a subsidiary of ICC®, the publisher of the codes used throughout the U.S. and many global markets, so you can be confident in their code expertise.

[www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org) | 800-423-6587



Look for the Trusted Marks of Conformity



A subsidiary of



INTERNATIONAL  
CODE  
COUNCIL®

20-18859



# S. K. Ghosh Associates LLC, Seismic and Building Code Consulting

S. K. Ghosh Associates LLC (SKGA) serves as a technical resource on structural codes and standards.

Our technical support includes:

- **Publications** – various code support materials to aid in the learning and comprehension of specific codes.
- **Code Masters** – a condensed explanation of difficult code requirements on a particular structural topic in a durable reference tool.
- **Seminars** – continuing education (with PDH).
- **Computer Programs** – tools that make code-compliance quick and simple with intuitive interfaces, easy-to-use workflow, and detailed output reports.
- **Seismic and Building Code Consultancy** – on code compliance and other aspects of structural design.

Learn more about our robust list of services and support material at **skghoshassociates.com** or call **847-991-2700**.



S. K. GHOSH  
ASSOCIATES™